TE LINDE'S
OPERATIVE
GYNECOLOGY
TO DR. GEORGE W. MORLEY

This tenth edition of Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology is dedicated to our friend, admired and respected colleague, and contributor to previous editions of this book, Dr. George W. Morley, who passed away February 20, 2005 at age 81.

The last century was filled with spectacular progress in gynecologic surgery. Through his enthusiastic teaching, writings, mentoring to hundreds, compassionate and competent care of patients in the operating room and beyond, and especially his wise leadership of almost every national organization in gynecology and obstetrics, George was an active participant and contributor to this progress. Always totally loyal to his specialty, his institution, and the truth, he was fond of saying that we see farther by standing on the shoulders of giants who have gone before us. Now, we who knew George are able to see farther, do more, and do better for those we serve by having stood on his shoulders.

Dr. Te Linde and all the editors, authors, and publishers of Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology since its beginning in 1946, are pleased and honored to dedicate this new edition to the memory of a gentle giant, George W. Morley, with our promise that the path of progress in gynecologic surgery will continue in this new century.
CONTENTS

Contributors xi
Foreword xv
Preface xvii

SECTION I  GENERAL TOPICS AFFECTING GYNECOLOGIC SURGERY PRACTICE

1  Operative Gynecology Before the Era of Laparoscopy: A Brief History  02
Gert H. Brieger

2  The Ethics of Pelvic Surgery  15
Ruth M. Farrell, Eli A. Rybak, and Edward Wallach

3  Psychological Aspects of Pelvic Surgery  26
Betty Ruth Sperr

4  Professional Liability and Risk Management for the Gynecologic Surgeon  42
Charles J. Ward

5  The Changing Environment in Which We Practice Gynecologic Surgery  62
Eric J. Butler and Edie L. Derian

6  Training the Gynecologic Surgeon  73
Robert M. Rogers, Jr.

SECTION II  PRINCIPLES OF ANATOMY AND PERIOPERATIVE CONSIDERATIONS

7  Surgical Anatomy of the Female Pelvis  82
John O. L. DeLancey

8  Preoperative Care  113
Samford M. Markham and John A. Rock

9  Postanesthesia and Postoperative Care  133
Alexander Duncan, Ira R. Horowitz, and Kenneth Kalassian

10  Water, Electrolyte, and Acid–Base Metabolism  162
Jack B. Basil

11  Postoperative Infections: Prevention and Management  190
W. David Hager and John W. Larsen

12  Shock in the Gynecologic Patient  203
Harriet O. Smith and Heather M. Greene

13  Wound Healing, Suture Material, and Surgical Instrumentation  226
Gary H. Lipscomb

SECTION III  PRINCIPLES OF GYNECOLOGIC SURGICAL TECHNIQUES AND MANAGEMENT OF ENDOSCOPY

14  Incisions for Gynecologic Surgery  246
James J. Burke II and Donald G. Gallup

15  Principles of Electrosurgery as Applied to Gynecology  280
Richard M. Soderstrom and Andrew J. Brill

16  Application of Laser Gynecology  298
John L. Marlowe

17  Diagnostic and Operative Laparoscopy  319
Howard T. Sharp, Sean L. Francis, and Ana Alvarez Murphy

18  Operative Hysteroscopy  336
Michael S. Baggish

19  Control of Pelvic Hemorrhage  371
Howard W. Jones III and William A. Rock, Jr.

SECTION IV  SURGERY FOR FERTILITY

20  The Impact of Assisted Reproductive Technology on Gynecological Surgery  398
Howard W. Jones, Jr.

21  Reconstructive Tubal Surgery  403
Victor Gomel and Elizabeth Taylor

vii
Contents

22 Endometriosis 438
   John S. Hesla and John A. Rock

SECTION V ■ SURGERY FOR BENIGN GYNECOLOGIC CONDITIONS

23 Surgical Conditions of the Vulva 480
   Ira R. Horowitz, Joseph Buscema, and Bhagirath Majmudar

24 Surgical Conditions of the Vagina and Urethra 508
   Celia E. Dominguez, John A. Rock, and Ira R. Horowitz

25 Surgery for Anomalies of the Müllerian Ducts 539
   John A. Rock and Lesley L. Breech

26 Normal and Abnormal Uterine Bleeding 585
   William J. Butler and David E. Carnovale

27 Tubal Sterilization 609
   Herbert B. Peterson, Amy E. Pollack, and Jeffrey S. Warshaw

28 Surgery for Benign Disease of the Ovary 629
   Joseph S. Sanfilippo and John A. Rock

29 Persistent or Chronic Pelvic Pain 648
   John F. Steege

30 Pelvic Inflammatory Disease 660
   Mark G. Martens

31 Leiomyomata Uteri and Myomectomy 687
   Lesley L. Breech and John A. Rock

32A Abdominal Hysterectomy 727
   Howard W. Jones III

32B Vaginal Hysterectomy 744
   S. Robert Kovac

32C Laparoscopic Hysterectomy 763
   Fred M. Howard

SECTION VI ■ SURGERY FOR OBSTETRICS

33 Management of Abortion 776
   Melissa J. Kotbke and Mani Zaiman

34 Ectopic Pregnancy 798
   Mark A. Damario and John A. Rock

35A Obstetric Problems 825
   Cornelia R. Gravas

35B Ovarian Tumors Complicating Pregnancy 842
   Cornelia R. Gravas and Lynn Parker

SECTION VII ■ SURGERY FOR CORRECTIONS OF DEFECTS IN PELVIC SUPPORT AND PELVIC FISTULAS

36A Pelvic Organ Prolapse—Basic Principles 854
   Carl W. Zimmerman

36B Site-Specific Repair of Cystourethrocele 874
   Carl W. Zimmerman

36C Paravaginal Defect Repair 882
   Bobby Shull

36D Posterior Compartment Defects 892
   Thomas M. Julian

36E Vaginal Vault Prolapse 911
   Steven D. Kleeman and Mickey M. Karram

36F The Nonsurgical Management of Pelvic Organ Prolapse: The Use of Vaginal Pessaries 936
   Rony A. Adam

37 Stress Urinary Incontinence 942
   Alfred E. Bent

38 Operative Injuries to the Ureter 960
   Paul Underwood, Jr.

39 Vesicovaginal Fistula and Urethrovaginal Fistula 973
   G. Rodney Meeks and Ted M. Roth

40 Anal Incontinence and Rectovaginal Fistulas 994
   Michael P. Aronson and Raymond A. Lee

SECTION VIII ■ RELATED SURGERY

41 Breast Diseases: Benign and Malignant 1030
   Victoria L. Green

42 The Vermiform Appendix in Relation to Gynecology 1084
   Barry K. Jarnagin

43 Intestinal Tract in Gynecologic Surgery 1097
   Kelly L. Melpus

44 Nongynecologic Conditions Encountered by the Gynecologic Surgeon 1131
   James R. Dolan and Michael D. Moen

SECTION IX ■ GYNECOLOGIC ONCOLOGY

45 Malignancies of the Vulva 1151
   Mitchel S. Hoffman

46 Cervical Cancer Precursors and Their Management 1208
   Howard W. Jones III
CONTRIBUTORS

Nadeem R. Abu-Rustum, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Weill Medical College of Cornell University
New York, New York

Rony A. Adam, MD
Assistant Professor
Director, Division of Gynecologic Specialties
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Emory University School of Medicine
Atlanta, Georgia

Michael P. Aronson, MD
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Massachusetts Medical School
Director of Women’s Health Services
University of Massachusetts Medical Center
Worcester, Massachusetts

Michael Baggish, MD
Chairman
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Good Samaritan Hospital
Director of Obstetrics and Gynecology
and Residency Training
TriHealth (Good Samaritan and Bethesda Hospitals)
Cincinnati, Ohio

Jack Baill, MD
Associate Director of Gynecologic Oncology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Good Samaritan Hospital
Cincinnati, Ohio

Alfred E. Bent, MD
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Dalhousie University
Chief, Division of Gynecology
IWK Health Centre
Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada

Eric J. Bieber, MD, MSHCM
Chair
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Geisinger Health System
Danville, Pennsylvania
Chief Medical Officer
Geisinger Wyoming Valley
Wilkes-Barre, Pennsylvania

Lesley L. Breech, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pediatrics and Obstetrics
and Gynecology
University of Cincinnati College of Medicine
Chief, Pediatric and Adolescent Gynecology
Department of Pediatrics
Cincinnati Children’s Hospital Medical Center
Cincinnati, Ohio

Gert H. Brieger, MD, PhD
Distinguished Service Professor
Department of History of Medicine
Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine
Baltimore, Maryland

Andrew J. Brull, MD
Director
Minimally Invasive Gynecology, Reparative Pelvic Surgery, and Surgical Education
California Pacific Medical Center
San Francisco, California

James J. Burke II, MD
Associate Professor and Director
Gynecologic Oncology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Mercy University School of Medicine
Attending Gynecologic Surgeon
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Memorial Health University Medical Center
Savannah, Georgia

Thomas W. Burke, MD
Professor
Department of Gynecologic Oncology
University of Texas
M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Joseph Buscema, MD
Fellow
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine
Baltimore, Maryland
Physician
Gynecologic Oncology and Obstetrics
and Gynecology
Tucson, Arizona

William J. Butler, MD
Professor and Chairman
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Mercer University School of Medicine
Director
Central Georgia Fertility Institute
Medical Center of Central Georgia
Macon, Georgia

David E. Carnovale, MD
Associate Professor
Clinic Director
Mercer University School of Medicine
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Director of Assisted Reproductive Technologies
Central Florida Fertility Institute
The Medical Center of Central Georgia
Macon, Georgia

Dennis S. Chi, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Weill Cornell Medical College of Cornell University
Associate Attending Surgeon
Gynecology Service, Department of Surgery
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York

Marta Ann Crispens, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Vanderbilt University Medical Center
Nashville, Tennessee

Mark A. Damario, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology
and Women’s Health
University of Minnesota
Medical Director
Reproductive Medical Center
University of Minnesota Physicians
Minneapolis, Minnesota
xii Contributors

John O. L. DeLancey, MD
Northeast Ohio Universities College of Medicine
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Cleveland, Ohio

Ede L. Derian, MD
Resident
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Kaiser PermanenteAtlanta HealthCare
Atlanta, Georgia

James R. Dolan, MD
Division Director, Gynecology Oncology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Advocate Lutheran General Hospital
Park Ridge, Illinois

Celia E. Dominguez, MD
Division Director, Reproductive Endocrinology and Infertility
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Atlanta, Georgia

Alexander Duncan, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Emory University School of Medicine
Atlanta, Georgia

Ruth M. Farrell, MD, MA
Assistant Professor of Surgery
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Cleveland Clinic
Lerner College of Medicine
Cleveland, Ohio

Sean L. Francis, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Medical College of Georgia
Augusta, Georgia

Donald G. Gallup, MD
Professor and Chair
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Mercer University School of Medicine
Savannah, Georgia

John B. Gehlert, MD, MS
Assistant Professor, Division of Gynecologic Surgery
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Northwestern University Feinberg School of Medicine
Chicago, Illinois

David M. Gershenson, MD
J. Taylor Wharton, MD Distinguished Chair in Gynecologic Oncology
Professor and Chairman
Department of Gynecologic Oncology
University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center
Houston, Texas

Victor Gomel, MD
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Faculty of Medicine, University of British Columbia
Active Staff
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
BC Women’s Hospital and Health Centre
Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada

Cornelia R. Graves, MD
Medical Director
Tennessee Maternal Fetal Medicine
Medical Director, Mater-Fetal Medicine
Baptist Hospital
Nashville, Tennessee

Victoria L. Green, MD, JD, MBA
Associate Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Emory University
Director, Gynecology Breast Clinic
Winship Cancer Institute at Grady Memorial Hospital; Avon Comprehensive Breast Center
Atlanta, Georgia

Heather M. Greene, BA
Research Coordinator
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of New Mexico Health Sciences Center
Albuquerque, New Mexico

W. David Hager, MD
Clinical Professor
Division of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Kentucky College of Medicine
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Kentucky College of Medicine
Lexington, Kentucky

John S. Hesla, MD
Medical Director
Oregon Reproductive Medicine
Portland, Oregon

Mitchel S. Hoffman, MD
Professor and Director
Division of Gynecologic Oncology
University of South Florida
Medical Director
Gynecologic Oncology Program
Tampa General Hospital
Tampa, Florida

Ira R. Horowitz, MD, SM
Willard Damon Leach and Vice Chairman of Clinical Affairs
Director, Division of Gynecologic Oncology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Emory University School of Medicine
Chief Medical Officer
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Emory University Hospital
Atlanta, Georgia

Fred Howard, MD
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Rochester School of Medicine and Dentistry
Division Director, Gynecologic Specialties
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Strong Memorial Hospital
Rochester, New York

Barry K. Jarnagin, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Vanderbilt University School of Medicine
Nashville, Tennessee

Howard W. Jones, Jr., MD
Professor Emeritus
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
East Carolina University School of Medicine
Nashville, Virginia

Howard W. Jones III, MD
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Vanderbilt University School of Medicine
Director
Gynecologic Oncology Program
Vanderbilt University Medical Center
Nashville, Tennessee

Thomas M. Julian, MD
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Wisconsin
Madison, Wisconsin
Kenneth Kalassian, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine
Emory University
Atlanta, Georgia

Mickey M. Karram, MD
Professor of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Cincinnati
Director of Urogynecology and Reconstructive Pelvic Surgery
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Good Samaritan Hospital
Cincinnati, Ohio

Steven D. Kleiman, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Cincinnati
Assistant Director, Division of Urogynecology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Good Samaritan Hospital
Cincinnati, Ohio

Melissa Kottke, MD
Clinical Instructor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Emory University
Atlanta, Georgia

S. Robert Kooce, MD
J. D. Thompson Distinguished Professor of Gynecologic Surgery
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecologic Surgery
Emory University
Director, Emory Center for Pelvic Reconstructive Surgery and Urogynecology
Department of Gynecology and Obstetrics
Emory University Hospital
Atlanta, Georgia

John W. Larson, MD
Oscar J. and Mildred S. Dodick Professor and Chair
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
The George Washington University
Attending Physician and Chair
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
The George Washington University Hospital
Washington, DC

Raymond A. Lee, MD
Emeritus Professor
Division of Gynecologic Surgery
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Mayo Clinic
Rochester, Minnesota

Gary H. Lipcomb, MD
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Tennessee Health Science Center
Chief of Gynecology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
The Regional Medical Center
Memphis, Tennessee

Bhagirath M. Majmudar, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Emory University School of Medicine
Surgical Pathologist, Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Cindy Memorial Hospital
Atlanta, Georgia

Sanford M. Markham, MD
Executive Associate Dean for Student Affairs
Professor of Obstetrics and Gynecology
College of Medicine
Florida International University
Miami, Florida

John L. Marlow, MD
Clinical Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
George Washington University School of Medicine
Washington, DC

Mark G. Martens, MD
Vice-President and Chief Medical Officer for Research
Planned Parenthood of Arkansas and Eastern Oklahoma
Tulsa, Oklahoma

G. Rodney Meeks, MD
Winstead L. Wiese Chair of Gynecologic Surgery
Director, Division of Gynecology
University of Mississippi Medical Center
Jackson, Mississippi

Luis E. Mendez, MD
Director of Gynecologic Oncology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Florida International University College of Medicine
Physician
South Florida Gynecologic Oncology
Coral Gables, Florida

Michael D. Moen, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Illinois
Director of Urogynecology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Advocate Lutheran General Hospital
Park Ridge, Illinois

Kelly L. Molpus, MD
Director of Gynecologic Oncology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Halifax Medical Center
Daytona Beach, Florida

Ana Alvarez Murphy, MD
Associate Professor and Chair
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Medical College of Georgia
Clinical Service Chief
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
MCG Health System
Augusta, Georgia

Lynn Parker, MD
Assistant Professor/Division Director of Gynecologic Oncology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Louisville Health Sciences Center
Louisville, Kentucky

Manuel Penalver, MD
Professor and Chairman
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Miami
Florida International University
College of Medicine
South Florida Gynecologic Oncology
Coral Gables, Florida

Herbert B. Peterson, MD
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of North Carolina School of Medicine
Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Marie Plante, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Laval University
Chief, Division of Gynecologic Oncology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
L’Hôpital Civil de Québec
Québec City, Québec, Canada

Amy E. Pollack, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor
School of Public Health
Columbia University
New York, New York

John A. Rock, MD
Senior Vice President, Medical Affairs
Dean, College of Medicine
Florida International University
Miami, Florida

William A. Rock, Jr., MD
Professor
Department of Pathology
University of Mississippi Medical Center
Medical Director, Clinical Laboratory
Department of Pathology
University Hospital and Clinics
Jackson, Mississippi

Contributors xiii
Contributors

Robert M. Rogers, Jr., MD
Staff Gynecologist
Kalispell Regional Medical Center
Kalispell, Montana

Ted M. Roth, MD
Director, Bladder Control Center
Department of Women’s Specialty Center
Central Maine Medical Center
Lewiston, Maine

Michel Roy, MD
Professor
Department of Gynecology
Laval University
Gynecologist and Oncologist
Department of Gynecology
CHUQ-Hotel-Dieu
Quebec City, Quebec, Canada

Eli A. Rybak, MD, MPH
Assistant Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
and Women’s Health Fellows
Division of Reproductive Endocrinology
and Infertility
Albert Einstein College of Medicine
Montefiore Medical Center
Bronx, New York

Joseph S. SanFilippo, MD, MBA
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Reproductive
Services
Vice Chair
Department of Reproductive Endocrinology
and Infertility
University of Pittsburgh Physicians
Magee Women’s Hospital
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

Howard T. Sharp, MD
Chief, General Division of Obstetrics
and Gynecology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Utah School of Medicine
Salt Lake City, Utah

Bobby Shull, MD
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Texas A & M University Health
Science Center
Professor, Interim Chairman
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Scott and White Memorial Hospital
Temple, Texas

Harriet O. Smith, MD
Director
Department of Gynecologic Oncology
University of New Mexico Health Science
Center
Albuquerque, New Mexico

Richard M. Soderstrom, MD
Professor Emeritus
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Washington School of Medicine
Seattle, Washington

Betty Ruth Speir, MD
Clinical Associate Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Clinical Professor
Department of General Surgery
University of South Alabama
Mobile, Alabama

John F. Steege, MD
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Wisconsin
Attending Physician
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of North Carolina Hospitals
Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Elizabeth L. Taylor, MD
Clinical Instructor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of British Columbia
Active Staff
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Vancouver General Hospital
Vancouver, British Columbia

Paul Underwood, Jr., MD
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Medical University of South Carolina
Charleston, South Carolina

John R. Van Nagel, Jr., MD
Professor and Director
Division of Gynecologic Oncology
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Kentucky Medical Center—Markey Cancer Center
Lexington, Kentucky

Edward Wallach, MD
J. Donald Woodruff Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Johns Hopkins University of Medicine
Lutherville, Maryland

Charles J. Ward, MD
Clinical Professor (Retired)
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Emory University School of Medicine
Atlanta, Georgia
Clinical Risk Advisor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Rotunda Hospital
Dublin, Ireland

Jeffrey S. Warshaw, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Minnesota
Director
Division of Urogynecology
Hennepin County Medical Center
Minneapolis, Minnesota

Paul Michael Yandell, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Texas A & M Health Science Center
and College of Medicine
College Station, Texas
Staff Member
Division of Female Medicine and Pelvic
Reconstructive Surgery
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Scott and White Hospital and Clinic
Temple, Texas

Mimi Zisman, MD
Clinical Associate Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Emory University
Atlanta, Georgia

Carl W. Zimmerman, MD
Professor
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Vanderbilt University School of Medicine
Nashville, Tennessee
Foreword

Once again, the editors, authors, artists, and publishers have collaborated to produce a completely updated revision of Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology, the most widely read textbook on this subject in the world. It has been translated into several foreign languages, and the eighth edition was the first to be translated into Chinese. This textbook is essential to the care of women with gynecologic disease.

There is a long history of publication of classic textbooks by distinguished members of the faculty of the Department of Gynecology and Obstetrics at Johns Hopkins. The list includes William Obstetrics and notable literary works of Kelly, Cullen, Novak, Wharton, Everett, Woodruff, Howard and Georgeanna Jones, Rock, and others. Many of these textbooks have been carried on in succeeding editions in the last 100 years. By describing and emphasizing “the Hopkins way” of caring for patients, these books have had great influence on the practice of gynecologists and obstetricians. Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology is a prime example of this Hopkins tradition.

In the first edition in 1947, Dr. Te Linde wrote only about gynecologic operations that he had personal experience with, and advised subsequent editors to do the same. Since then, the subject of gynecologic surgery has become so large that it is no longer possible for any one or two gynecologic surgeons to be masters of the entire field, partly the result of development of subspecialties in gynecologic surgery. Therefore, it has been necessary to include authors other than the Hopkins authors who also qualify as experts in various aspects of the subject. The current edition includes 75 authors. This has resulted in a more complete national and even international presentation. This venerable textbook includes not only the usual and customary problems in gynecology that may require surgery for relief, but also the special, difficult, complicated, and unusual problems encountered occasionally.

The last century saw spectacular advances in the surgical treatment of gynecologic diseases. Consider that a tumor as common as uterine leiomyomata was a lethal disease in some women when the 20th century began. Because of the heroic surgical innovations of Howard Kelly and Thomas Cullen and others at Johns Hopkins and elsewhere, women who live in countries where modern gynecologic surgery is practiced no longer endure long suffering or die of this benign tumor. Similarly advances have also been made in the management of cervical cancer, endometriosis, ectopic pregnancy, pelvic infections, uterine prolapse and vaginal relaxations, urinary incontinence, fistulas, infertility, congenital anomalies, etc. Throughout the century, progress in gynecologic surgery was chronicled by many textbooks. For example, Kelly’s Operative Gynecology was the helpful companion of gynecologic surgeons in the first half of the 20th century, and Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology served a similar function in the second half.

In addition to the scholarly work of the authors of chapters, one must also pay tribute to the brilliant artwork that has accompanied and explained the text. Originally, in Dr. Kelly’s Operative Gynecology, the highest standard was set by the close collaboration, often in the operating room, between Dr. Kelly and his choice of Max Brodel as his personal artist. Their work together produced many masterpieces that are still outstanding teaching aids today. Brodel started the Hopkins School of Art in Medicine, and many of the graduates of this school, especially Leon Schlossberg, have contributed to every edition of Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology and other texts. One cannot underestimate the value of their work in teaching gynecologic surgery. Because of the numerous illustrations, Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology could qualify as an atlas of surgical technique, but it is much more.

Although an important part of the education and training of the gynecologic surgeon, Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology cannot alone teach technical skills or substitute for spending years at the elbow of a seasoned, wise, and experienced mentor working in a proper health care facility, both of which are a necessary minimum in creating and maintaining an environment in which gynecologic surgery can be studied and learned and practiced. Proper technical skills are important in the successful performance of even the simplest operation. However, the most serious mistakes in the practice of gynecologic surgery may be made by those who know “how,” but have not learned “when” and “why.” The ability to perform a large number of gynecologic operations with a low morbidity and mortality rate, although desirable, is not ipso facto evidence that gynecologic surgery is being practiced correctly. The gynecologic surgeon must first study and understand the basic-science aspects of female reproductive organ function and the pathology, clinical manifestations, and psychosocial aspects of gynecologic disease. It takes time to evaluate patients properly, some more so than others. This may be difficult in a busy gynecologic practice, but it is necessary in order that proper recommendations can be made for or against surgery. And, after one chooses the right patient for operation, one must choose the right operation for the patient. It is a mistake to do an abdominal hysterectomy when a vagi- nal hysterectomy would have significant advantages. One must select from a variety of operations available, and the one that most properly fits the needs of the individual patient depends upon many variables. It is a serious mistake to know only one operation and do it on every patient regardless of the circumstances. And remember always the admonition of John Burch that the golden rule of pelvic surgery is the conservation of useful
function—for example, the conservation of normal ovaries at the time of hysterectomy in most premenopausal women.

When indicated, alternatives to surgical therapy should be offered. As an advocate for patients and as a guardian of professional integrity and responsibility, gynecologic surgeons must insist on working in a proper health care environment, evaluate the results of care carefully, and change indications for surgery and surgical techniques as warranted and based on valid data. New methods and innovations in surgical therapy must be subjected to proper analysis before adopted as standard practice. Arrangements should be made for long-term follow-up to determine the results of treatment. As Dr. Te Linde was fond of saying, “Never take a young gynecologic surgeon’s opinion about the value of a new operation because he/she has not yet been able to follow patients long enough.”

Although the decision to operate may at times seem complicated, it can be simplified. According to Dr. J.M.T. Finney, there are only three valid reasons to operate:

■ To save life (as in ruptured ectopic pregnancy, cervical cancer, etc.)
■ To relieve suffering (as in pain from endometriosis, urinary incontinence, etc.)
■ To correct significant anatomical deformities (as in uterine prolapse, Meyer-Rokitansky-Kuster-Hauser Syndrome, etc.)

Now, modern gynecologic surgery can offer a fourth reason to operate:

■ To allow the creation of life (as in tubal reconstructive surgery, various in vitro fertilization operations, etc.)

This is an indication that is unique to gynecologic surgery and a great gift to humankind.

If, in making the decision to operate, one cannot fit the patient into one of these categories, perhaps the decision is wrong and needs review, and even review by a consultant.

*Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology* will help the gynecologic surgeon learn the important details of performing procedures correctly. More importantly, it will help the gynecologic surgeon learn how to evaluate patients correctly. Today, such great emphasis is placed on learning to use new technology and new instruments that basic fundamentals of clinical evaluation of the patient care are forgotten or ignored. The greatest improvements in the practice of gynecologic surgery will come from listening to the patient rather than mastering new technology. In my judgment, the absolutely most important chapter ever written about gynecologic surgery is Chapter 3 on Psychosocial Aspects of Pelvic Surgery, written first by Dr. Malcolm Freeman and now by Dr. Betty Ruth Speir. This chapter should be required reading for anyone practicing gynecologic surgery.

And what of the future? Gynecologic surgery is a dynamic field of medicine, always changing to benefit the health of women by curing or alleviating the symptoms of gynecologic disease. We can expect exciting new developments in the 21st century, although it will be difficult for the next century to exceed the fantastic progress made in the last century. Gynecologic surgery will change and benefit because the future of biomedical science is wide open. Incredible discoveries in the past 50 years will inevitably effect gynecologic surgery, discoveries including massive improvements in technology, new and better vaccines, stem-cell research, DNA research, nanoscience, etc. We can look forward to new developments such as the implantation of a tissue-engineered product which, once implanted, slowly disappears while the host replaces it with his or her own tissue. The knowledge and skills required of gynecologic surgeons will be completely different by the end of the 21st century.

In the current tenth edition, each chapter is well written, well illustrated, easy to read and understand, and comprehensive yet specific, with the most modern, up-to-date information. It is hard to imagine a more thorough review of gynecologic surgery. It is also hard to imagine anyone who plans to learn, practice, and teach gynecologic surgery without this textbook. It can be used as a ready reference, a ready consultant with ease. It can be considered as a partner or companion in practice.

All who contributed to this new edition of Te Linde’s deserve our congratulations for a job well done. It will be a great help to those who work to improve and maintain the quality of life for women.

*John D. Thompson, MD*
The rapid pace of the introduction of new surgical techniques for the treatment of gynecologic disease has required the timely revision of *Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology*. Until 1992 the text was revised every 7 to 9 years. Since then the interval to revision has significantly shortened to 4 to 5 years due to the rapid advances in the field of surgery. Dr. Richard Te Linde wrote the first edition. Today up to 72 contributors have shared their personal insights and surgical approaches for the treatment to improve the health of women. *Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology* has been, and hopefully will continue to be, a major influence in maintaining and improving the quality of gynecologic surgery.

The tenth edition of *Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology* presents the basic, sound principles for established gynecologic surgical technique. Major advances in the field of education of the gynecologic surgeon and the changing environment in which we practice gynecologic surgery are presented. John Deutsh, P. L. Malone, Leon Schlossburg, and others have contributed excellent medical illustrations throughout the last 10 editions. We appreciate the new medical illustrations prepared by Jennifer Smith in Chapters 17, Diagnostic and Operative Laparoscopy; 19, Control of Pelvic Hemorrhage; 23, Surgical Conditions of the Vulva; 32A, Abdominal Hysterectomy; 32C, Laparoscopic Hysterectomy; 34, Ectopic Pregnancy; 35A, Obstetric Problems; 36C, Paravalvaral Defect Repair; 36D, Posterior Compartment Defects; 37, Stress Urinary Incontinence; 43, Intestinal Tract in Gynecologic Surgery; 50, Pelvic Exenteration; and 51, Surgical Reconstruction of the Pelvis in Gynecologic Cancer Patients; and by Joe Chovan in Chapter 18, Operative Hysteroscopy. The addition of color to the text offsets important figures and tables.

In view of the major focus on best surgical practices in surgical specialties, we have introduced a new section in each chapter that discusses the major take-home points. These best surgical practices present the opinion of the authors. Each clinical situation is unique, and readers should exercise their professional judgment accordingly. The information presented in the best practices is educational in nature and not a set of guidelines for use in any given situation. The authors, editors, and publisher are not responsible for errors or omissions or for any consequences from application of this or any other information in this book and make no warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the contents of the publication.

Also new to this edition are definitions, which have been added as a part of the introduction of each chapter. The self-test questions in the Appendix have been revised and will allow the reader to “self test” after reviewing a specific topic. Perhaps more importantly, the editors have added for the first time a DVD of several surgical procedures previously introduced as “surgery in the retroperitoneal space,” with accompanying text. Hopefully this will be a regular feature of future editions and will add an appreciation of the “Art of Surgical Techniques.”

The authors wish to sincerely thank all the contributors and gratefully acknowledge the assistance of Barbara Schmidt, Lynne Black, Patsy Shepard, and the Lippincott Williams & Wilkins editorial team of Sonya Seigafuse, Ryan Shaw, Nicole Dernoski, Mark Flinders, and Rosanne Hallowell for their attention to details and hard work in the preparation of this book. As always, we are deeply indebted to those authors and editors who have labored to write the previous editions of this text. The current edition would not exist without their dedication. We owe a sincere debt of gratitude to Drs. Richard W. TeLinde, Richard F. Mattingly, and John D. Thompson.

John A. Rock, MD
Howard W. Jones, III, MD
SECTION I  GENERAL TOPICS AFFECTING
GYNECOLOGIC SURGERY PRACTICE
CHAPTER 1 OPERATIVE GYNECOLOGY BEFORE THE ERA OF LAPAROSCOPY: A BRIEF HISTORY

GERT H. BRIEGER AND HOWARD W. JONES, Jr.

Gynecology, spelled gynaecology, is defined by the Oxford English Dictionary as “that department of medical science which treats of the functions and diseases peculiar to women.” The word was first used as such in the middle of the 19th century. In 1867, gynecology represented the physiology and pathology of the nonpregnant state. Although most histories of gynecology trace its roots back to antiquity, the field of medicine we call by that name today really has had a fairly recent origin. The successful removal of an ovarian tumor by Ephraim McDowell in 1809 was as rare an event as it was a spectacular one. In the preceding centuries, the history of gynecologic surgery was closely tied to the history of general surgery, and the obstacles that had to be overcome were the same. Infection, hemorrhage and shock, and pain were all effective barriers to any but emergency surgical procedures in the days before anesthesia.

"The history of gynecology," Howard Kelly wrote in 1912, "seems to me more full of dramatic interest than the evolution of any other medical or surgical specialty." Himself an accomplished historian of medicine, among his many other skills, Kelly noted that, "It was, notably, anesthesia which accomplished historian of medicine, among his many other skills, Kelly noted that, "It was, notably, anesthesia which enabled the operator to discriminate between malignant and non-malignant growths." Here, in a nutshell, we have the landmarks of much of the history of gynecology of the last 150 years. Ann Dally was correct when she noted that until recently, much of what has been written about the history of gynecology was written by gynecologists themselves, who picked their own heroes. With the rise of the new history of women and the social history of medicine since the 1970s, a much more balanced view has emerged.

There are many ways to approach the history of a medical and surgical specialty such as gynecology. The usual practice in textbooks that make an attempt to include some history is to tell the story in terms of who discovered what and who did which operation first. These facts are of interest but hardly constitute the history of the field. Besides the surgical operations of gynecology, the techniques devised, and the instruments to carry them out, there is much to be learned from the changing picture of diseases and their diagnoses; from the professionalization of the field, including the societies, journals, and textbooks that have been created; and from the education required to master the science and practice of operative gynecology. It is in these terms, rather than in tracing simply the great ideas and their creators, that this historical introduction proceeds.

Any major medical textbook can itself serve as a convenient window through which we can see history unfold.

Robert Hahn has vividly described the changing world view of obstetrics by examining the succeeding editions of William's Obstetrics since its first edition in 1903. Likewise, the 50 years that have elapsed since the first edition of Richard Wesley Te Linde's Operative Gynecology provide an equal opportunity to describe the major developments in the companion field of gynecology.

BARRIERS TO SURGICAL PROGRESS

In ancient times, the lack of real anatomic knowledge was a barrier to the development of surgery. It is sometimes said that because the ancient Egyptians had effective techniques for the eversionation of bodies for mummification, they must have had a good knowledge of the body. However, removal of the internal organs during the embalming process was performed by technicians who did not concern themselves with the structure of the bodies they were preparing.

Anatomy was pursued in Alexandria during the Hellenistic period, but it had few, if any, practical applications until a later time. By the end of the 13th century, anatomic dissection again became more common, but often it was limited to one or two public dissections a year or the study of animals. Surgeons were responsible for the few autopsies that were performed to determine the cause of death. This was especially important if a crime was suspected or drowning had to be established.

Soranus, the Roman physician and writer who practiced in the reign of the Emperors Trajan (98–117) and Hadrian (117–138), is perhaps best known for his text entitled Gynecology. This book is somewhat mistitled because it is mostly devoted to what we would call obstetrics. Soranus wrote about prenatal and postnatal problems, as well as those associated with delivery itself. This ancient text has been translated and has an excellent introduction by Owsei Temkin. Recently, it has been reissued in a paperback edition.

Although Soranus's Gynecology still makes interesting reading, it hardly qualifies as an early text on the subject of operative gynecology. However, like other physicians of his time, Soranus clearly noted that the best midwife was one who was trained in all branches of therapy; “... for some cases must be treated by diet, others by surgery, while still others must be cured by drugs.”

Although there were instances of anatomical study in earlier times, we generally begin the story with the work of Andreas Vesalius and the publication of his De humani corporis fabrica in 1543. Before this time, anatomic knowledge was not tied
to the teaching and practice of medicine. The tradition of the
surgeon-anatomists, of whom Vesalius was a stellar example,
culminated in the late 18th century with the work of the En-
grish surgical teacher John Hunter (1728–1793) and his older
brother William (1718–1783). It was William's classic book
about the gravid uterus with its detailed engravings that shed
new light on the structures of the female pelvis.

In the 19th century, for all types of surgery, the problems of
pain, hemorrhage, and infection had to be solved before op-
erations could be undertaken safely. The problems of surgical
dressings and postoperative infections were generally a matter
of trial and error. The Scottish surgeon and gynecologist Sir
James Simpson (1811–1870) urged his surgical colleagues
to perform their operations on the kitchen tables of their patients
to avoid the dangers of hospital infections, or “hospitalism” as
it came to be called.

In the 1840s, the Hungarian obstetrician Ignaz Semmelweis
(1818–1865) showed clearly that puerperal fever could be pre-
vented by disinfecting the hands of doctors before they exam-
nined their patients during the course of delivery. Despite good
statistical evidence, his method of washing hands in chlori-
nated lime solution was not widely adopted. In fact, it met
with outright resistance from most physicians. In this coun-
try, the Harvard anatomist and writer Oliver Wendell Holmes
(1809–1894) met similar disbelief and resistance when he sug-
gested in 1842 that it was the physicians themselves who were
performing the dreaded puerperal infections to their patients.

In the middle 1860s, Joseph Lister (1827–1912), while
working in Glasgow, began experimenting with carbolic acid, a
phenol derivative, to clean the instruments, sutures, and dress-
ings he was using in his operations. He based his work on an
understanding of the germ theory of disease, which was then
just in its infancy as a major theory of disease causation. Lister
had been able to demonstrate the importance of preventing the
germs present in the air or on instruments and sutures from enter-
ing the wound, which would prevent the formation of the hereto-
fore much desired laudable pus. Lister, too, met much opposition to his method
of antisepsis. Partly because of the frequent changes in the sys-
tem he was developing, which made it difficult for others to
follow him, and because of the inadequate understanding of
the germ theory by most surgeons, it took nearly two decades
for antiseptic surgery to become routine. In Lister's case, as was
also true for Holmes and Semmelweis, some of the resistance
undoubtedly stemmed from the fact that doctors never like be-
ing told that what they are doing is actually causing harm to
their patients.

Lister encountered a great deal of opposition, particu-
larly in his own country. Lawson Tait (1845–1899), an active
and polemical gynecologist who settled in Birmingham, was
strangely opposed to Lister's system of antisepsis. Tait paid
much attention to general cleanliness when he was operating,
and he actually achieved quite good results. However, his older
colleague, Spencer Wells (1818–1887) of London, was a de-
voted follower of the antiseptic system in his many ovarian
operations, perhaps because he had a clear grasp of the role
of microbes. In 1864, the year before Lister began using car-
bonic acid in Glasgow and 3 years before he published his first
results, Wells published a paper in the British Medical Jour-
nal entitled “Some Causes of Excessive Mortality after Surgi-
cal Operations.” Wells clearly described the recent work on
germs by Louis Pasteur (1822–1895) in France. There is no
definite proof that Lister was aware of the paper, but it is hard
to imagine that he did not know what was appearing in the
national medical journal. Thus, gynecologists probably had a
much greater hand in the development of safe surgery in the
last century than is usually acknowledged.

BEGINNINGS OF GYNECOLOGIC-
SURGERY IN 19TH-CENTURY
AMERICA

Opening the abdominal cavity to remove extrauterine pregnan-
cies was successfully accomplished several times in the later
19th century but did not become routine until the advent of
anesthesia and antisepsis. Ephraim McDowell (1771–
1830) (Fig. 1.1) made surgical history with his successful re-
moval of a large ovarian cyst in his patient Jane Todd Crawford,
who in 1809 rode 60 miles to her doctor's house in Danville,
Kentucky, to undergo an untreed operation without any assur-
ance of care and without the benefit of anesthesia. Although
McDowell is often referred to as a backwoods physician, he
was in fact a well-trained surgeon. His Edinburgh training
probably gave him confidence in his diagnosis and courage to
attempt a surgical cure rather than have his patient face certain
death from her relentlessly growing tumor. During his study
tour in Scotland, he probably heard that in the previous cen-
tury, the popular surgical teacher John Hunter had suggested
such an operation, believing that “women could bear spaying
just as well as did animals.”

The drama of McDowell's case is best described in the words
of the surgeon himself:

In December, 1809, I was called to see a Mrs. Crawford, who had
for several months thought herself pregnant. She was affected with
pains similar to labor pains, from which she could find no relief.
So strong was the presumption of her being in the last stage of
pregnancy, that two physicians, who were consulted on her case,
requested my aid in delivering her. The abdomen was considerably
enlarged, and had the appearance of pregnancy, though the inclina-
tion of the tumor was to one side, admitting of an easy removal to
the other. Upon examination, per vagina, I found nothing in the
uterus, which induced the conclusion that it must be an enlarged
ovarium. Having never seen so large a substance extracted, nor
heard of an attempt, or success attending any operation, such as
this required, I gave to the unhappy woman information of her

FIGURE 1.1. Ephraim McDowell (1771–1830). One of the earliest
abdominal surgeons.
dangerous situation. She appeared willing to undergo an experiment, which I promised to perform if she would come to Danville... With the assistance of my nephew and colleague, James McDowell, M.D., I commenced the operation, which was concluded as follows: Having placed her on a table of the ordinary height, on her back, and removed all her dressing which might in any way impede the operation, I made an incision about three inches from the musculus rectus abdominis, on the left side, continuing the same in nine inches in length, parallel with the fibres of the above named muscle, extending into the cavity of the abdomen. The patient, which were a good deal constricted, which we ascribed to the resting of the tumor on the horn of the saddle during her journey. The tumor then appeared in full view, but was so large that we could not take it away entire. We put a strong ligature around the fallopian tube near to the uterus; we then cut open the tumor, which was the ovarium and fibrous part of the fallopian tube very much enlarged. We took out fifteen pounds of a dirty, gelatinous looking substance. After which we cut through the fallopian tube, and extracted the sack, which weighed seven pounds and one half. As soon as the external opening was made, the intestines rushed upon the table; and so completely was the abdomen filled by the tumor, that they could not be replaced during the operation, which was terminated in about twenty-five minutes. We then turned her upon her left side, so as to permit the blood to escape; after which, we closed the external opening with the interrupted suture, leaving out, at the lower end of the incision, the ligature which surrounded the fallopian tube. Between every stitches we put a strip of adhesive plaster, which, by keeping the parts in contact, hastened the healing of the incision. We then applied the usual dressing, put her to bed, and prescribed a strict observance of the antiphlogistic regimen. In five days I visited her, and much to my astonishment found her engaged in making up her bed. I gave her particular caution for the future; and in twenty five days, she returned home as she came, in good health, which she continues to enjoy.

McDowell’s patient long outlived her surgeon. He did not publish his feat until 1846, by which time he had performed several more oophorotomies. McDowell is sometimes cited as a pioneer of early abdominal, unwitting as it was in his case. If his first patient had not recovered so well, her failure would surely have been blamed on rising too early from her bed after such extensive surgery. McDowell also did not mention the intense drama of this Christmas day operation. When the townsfolk of Danville heard about his plan, they were incensed. They gathered in a tense group outside his house, with a rope slung over a tree, ready to lynch the surgeon if his “experiment” proved a failure. McDowell certainly had the nature of a true pioneer.

T. G. Thomas, in his 1876 centennial review of obstetrics and gynecology, reported that Alexander Dunlap of Springfield, Ohio, claimed he did his first ovarian operation in 1843. Dunlap said he sent the report of this case to a medical journal, which sent it back to him saying that they “could not publish the case of such an unjustifiable operation.”

By 1876, Thomas wrote, “It is to estimate the amount of good this operation has bestowed upon humanity. Practised today in every civilized country in the world, yielding the statistics of seventy to seventy-five per cent of recoveries, and daily being improved in its various steps, it may well be regarded as one of the greatest surgical triumphs of the century.”

In the middle decades of the 19th century, another American surgeon working in the South helped to popularize gynecologic surgery by another set of pioneering feats. James Marion Sims (1813–1883) told the dramatic tale of his development of a successful technique to repair vesicovaginal fistulas in his widely read autobiography The Story of My Life, which was published the year after his death (Fig. 1.2). He described his repeated attempts to achieve a permanent closure of these fistulas in a few of his young slave-women patients. Sims began his experiments in 1845 and continued them for 4 years. In these preanesthesia and preantisepctic days, Sims produced remarkable results. He had had no experience in pelvic surgery, and in fact claimed that he disliked it. It was his custom to turn away patients with pelvic disorders, referring them to other doctors in his Alabama neighborhood. Many of his planter friends owned slaves, some of whom suffered from vesicovaginal fistulas as a result of traumatic births. These wounds were considered incurable and made the young women unacceptable for household work. After several entreaties to help one of his planter friends who had such a slave, Sims began with a small group of women, operating on some of them repeatedly over the course of 4 years. Sims’s many failures only increased his determination to succeed. The colleagues who at first assisted him at the operations abandoned him, and his friends, he claimed, begged him to give up what was considered to be a hopeless effort. He trained other young slave patients to assist him, and on his 29th operation on one of the patients, he finally succeeded. In reviewing his work in 1852, Sims did cite several successful cases by other American surgeons between 1839 and 1849. He claimed originality for:

1st. for the discovery of a method by which the vagina can be thoroughly explored, and the operation easily performed (the Sims, or lateral position). 2nd. For the introduction of a new suture apparatus, which lies imbedded in the tissues for an indefinite period without danger of cutting its way out, as do silk ligatures. 3rd. For the invention of a self-retaining catheter, which can be worn with the greatest comfort by the patient during the whole process of treatment.

The new “suture apparatus” used silver wire. This provided the breakthrough needed for the successful repair of vesicovaginal fistulae. Sims used silver in many of his other operations. In a 10th anniversary lecture at the New York Academy of Medicine in 1857, Sims somewhat immodestly told his august audience that the use of silver suture was one of the great achievements of 19th-century surgery. Sims wrote and spoke frequently about his development of a successful procedure for the definitive care of vesicovaginal fistula, but never more eloquently than in his Anniversary Address in November

FIGURE 1.2. James Marion Sims (1813–1883).
1857, in which he described his work with silver sutures over the previous 12 years. The audience included several past presidents of the academy and most of the distinguished colleagues at the Woman’s Hospital. After four years of fruitless effort, Sims proclaimed a new dawn on 21 June 1849. Since that day, he claimed, he had used no other suture in any of his surgical work.

It is worth noting that Sims’s early patients—the slave women of Montgomery, Alabama, and the poor Irish servant girls who were predominant patients of the Woman’s Hospital in New York—were equally vulnerable, so it is not hard to see why some recent historians have been very critical of Sims and his contemporaries. Yet with the advent of anesthesia and the use of antisepic techniques, such surgery became increasingly routine. The repair of vesicovaginal fistulas and the removal of ovaries for a wide variety of indications were the beginning of the field of operative gynecology as it is known today. The story is, of course, not purely an American one. The English, French, and German contributions were important and can be found in any general history of medicine or of obstetrics and gynecology. In 1876, Sims became president of the American Medical Association, and in the same year, he and others founded the American Gynecological Association.

Even with the advent of effective and relatively safe anesthesia after 1846, it was several decades before surgeons were ready to increase the number of their operations. At midcentury and during the Civil War in the 1860s, surgery was generally confined to amputations after accidents, hernia repair when the intestine became incarcerated in the hernia sac, thus threatening life; an occasional ligation of a major vessel for aneurysm; and cystotomy for bladder stones. Therefore, Sims, operating in the 1840s, was truly a pioneer.

Also pioneers in the field of gynecologic surgery by mid-century were the Atlee brothers of Lancaster, Pennsylvania. They rediscovered oophorectomy, which was also being done in England by the 1860s, and were among the early leaders who performed myomectomy for fibroid tumors of the uterus.

Of semantic interest is the changing terminology for ovarian operations between 1843 and 1883, with 64 recoveries and only 14 deaths. Thus, he validated McDowell’s work of the previous 12 years. The audience included several past presidents of the academy and most of the distinguished colleagues at the Woman’s Hospital. After four years of fruitless effort, Sims proclaimed a new dawn on 21 June 1849. Since that day, he claimed, he had used no other suture in any of his surgical work.

Ovariotomy, often used imprecisely to refer to removal of the ovary, actually was first used in that way in the 1830s by James Simpson and other British gynecologists. Ovariotomy means to cut into the ovary for removal of a cyst or tumor. In the 1870s, gynecologists such as Edmund Peaslee of New York, in his book on ovarian tumors, stated that oophorectomy was a more precise and distinctive term for removal of the ovary.

John Light Atlee (1799–1885) actively practiced medicine and surgery in New York—were equally vulnerable, so it is not hard to see why some recent historians have been very critical of Sims and his contemporaries. Yet with the advent of anesthesia and the use of antisepic techniques, such surgery became increasingly routine. The repair of vesicovaginal fistulas and the removal of ovaries for a wide variety of indications were the beginning of the field of operative gynecology as it is known today. The story is, of course, not purely an American one. The English, French, and German contributions were important and can be found in any general history of medicine or of obstetrics and gynecology. In 1876, Sims became president of the American Medical Association, and in the same year, he and others founded the American Gynecological Association.

By the 1880s, the specialty of gynecology, or the science of women, as some historians have called it, was well on its way to being established as one of the subdivisions of medical labor. Ornella Moscucci, in her perceptive history of gynecology in Britain, quotes the eminent surgeon from Birmingham, Lawson Tait, in his aptly entitled book of 1889, Diseases of Women and Abdominal Surgery:

The great function of woman’s life has for years made her the subject of specialists, male and female, the obstetrician. The subsidiary relations of her special organs and the special requirements of her physique, based upon these, have necessitated the establishment of another class of specialist, the gynecologist.

The growth of interest in women’s diseases began long before the 19th century. In the Renaissance, for instance, the publication of a large, encyclopedic work entitled Gynaecia, by Gaspar Wolf (1532–1603), and later similar collections represented what had been written since antiquity. The mere existence of such texts, however, does not mean that much attention was given to the treatment of women, except as it related to childbirth.

Any discussion of the treatment of women’s diseases since the latter half of the 19th century must take into account a
variety of interpretations of women’s role in society and both professional and lay views of women's health. Historical as-
sessments in our own time have contributed to the further-
ing of interest in the issues of women's health. Today's dis-
cussions are best understood in the light of their historical
roots.

Historians of the family and the role of women in the
19th century have written much about the separate spheres for
women and the cult of domesticity in which there was a rigid
distinction between the home, where it was thought women
belonged, and the economic world outside. Thus, the "cult of
true womanhood," as historians have called it, made sharp dis-
tinctions between women's place in the family and the working
world of men. As the social role of women was increasingly de-
dined, they were, in a sense, held hostage in the home. Women
were judged by the male world and themselves according to
four cardinal virtues: piety, purity, submissiveness, and domes-
ticy.

To these social distinctions between men and women were
added the biologic differences. The biologic notions of women
in the 19th century ranged widely, but they included the idea
that women were not only physically weaker than men (al-
though morally superior), but inherently diseased or patho-
logic. Their cyclical physiology was believed to make women
unsuitable for sustained work or learning. Feminist historians
of recent times have taken doctors of an earlier era to task for
casting women as frail creatures entirely dependent on their
biology, destined to be kept from the male world of education,
politics, the professions, and any but domestic work. As Or-
nella Moscucci points out, however, the medical ideas about
the social destiny of women were far more complex than has
been assumed.

On both sides of the Atlantic, the view of Victorian
women was influenced by the writings of eminent physicians.
In Boston, a Harvard Medical School professor, Edward H.
Clarke (1820–1877), wrote a book in 1873 entitled Sex in Edu-
cation; or, A Fair Chance for the Girls. This book was widely re-
viewed and discussed. Similarly, Henry Maudsley (1835–1918)
in England, an influential psychiatrist and medical teacher, also
wrote about the supposed harm of higher education on the
physiologic development of postpubescent girls. Clarke's book,
which has become known as a uterine manifesto, clearly set the
brain and the uterus in opposition. Higher education, Clarke
claimed, might be good for developing the intellect, but that oc-
curred at the expense of the reproductive organs, thus dooming
the woman to a state of stunted womanhood and lifelong in-
validism.

Sex in Education went through 17 printings and editions in
the space of a few years. Because of its popularity and notoriety,
it is worth citing one of Clarke's case reports:

![Figure 1.4](image-url)

FIGURE 1.4. This famous illustration of “the touch” in
a gynecologic examination is from a 19th-century French
text frequently used in America. Note the avoidance of eye
contact between doctor and patient and the dress shielding
the woman’s body from view. (From: Wertz WR, Wertz
WC. Lying-in: a history of childbirth in America, expanded
with permission.)
Miss D—went to college in good physical condition. During the four years of her college life, her parents and the college faculty required her to get what is popularly called an education. Nature required her, during the same period, to build and put in working order a large and complicated reproductive mechanism a matter that is popularly ignored—shoved out of sight like a disgrace. She naturally obeyed the requirements of the faculty, which she could see, rather than the requirements of the mechanism within her, that she could not see. Subjected to the college regimen, she worked four years in getting a liberal education. Her way of work was sustained and continuous, and out of harmony with the rhythmic periodicity of the female organization. The stream of vital and constructive force evolved within her was turned steadily to the brain, and away from the ovaries and their accessories. The result of this sort of education was, that these last-mentioned organs, deprived of sufficient opportunity and nutriment, first began to perform their functions with pain, a warning of error that was unheeded; then, to cease to grow; . . . And so Miss D—spent the few years next succeeding her graduation in conflict with dysmenorrhea, headache, neuralgia, and hysteria.

Many writings in the 1870s and 1880s attempted to refute the medical notions of physicians such as Clarke and Maudsley. In this country, Mary Putnam Jacobi (1842–1906), a physician and future champion of women in higher education and the professions, submitted a prize-winning essay that refuted Clarke’s contentions that work by the brain interfered with uterine function and the menses. In Britain, the pioneer woman-physician Elizabeth Garrett Anderson (1836–1917) claimed that it was boredom that caused the medical symptoms of middle-class women, not higher education.

By the middle of the 19th century, even the use of the speculum as a diagnostic instrument stirred controversy. The speculum was known to the ancients, but it fell into disuse by the early modern period. Early in the 19th century, Joseph Re- camarier (1774-1832) reintroduced it in Paris, and soon the speculum was routinely used in treating inflammatory disease. It was also used in the routine examination of prostitutes in France and England.

In the Victorian climate of concern about women and their diseases, as well as their moral sensibilities, vaginal examinations were not routine. When they were performed, great efforts were made to preserve the patient’s privacy and dignity, as the accompanying illustrations show (Figs. 1.4 and 1.5). A battle over the morality of the use of the speculum also ensued. The speculum, opponents of its use believed, could lead to sexual stimulation and sexual excesses. The term “speculum rape” was used in the debates over the Contagious Disease Acts in England in the 1860s.

Meanwhile, the surgeons went about debating the advisability of oophorectomy. One of the most prominent proponents of ovarian surgery for symptoms not just associated with demonstrable ovarian disease was an American surgeon named Robert Battey (1828–1895) of Georgia. In 1872, he removed the ovaries of a 32-year-old woman who had claimed invalidism for 16 years. Battey reported that his patient was cured after the bilateral oophorectomy. (Cured of what remains the intriguing question.) In succeeding years, the Battey operation became popular with some surgeons. Battey himself tried a vaginal approach to the ovaries but soon reverted to abdominal section. He advocated bilateral removal of the ovaries, whether or not they revealed any sign of disease, to ameliorate menstrual difficulties or psychological symptoms.

With historical examples such as the Battey operation, it is no surprise that feminist historians today level charges of male physicians’ exploitation of their female patients. One of the most drastic charges claimed that most of the gynecological surgery of the late 19th century was a calculated plot against women, a tacit conspiracy between insecure husbands and anxious gynecologists.

Ann Douglas, a literary historian and feminist, was one of the earliest to invoke the notion of a conspiracy of male physicians to subject their female patients to mutilating, harmful, and unnecessary surgery. She simply dismissed 19th-century doctors as ignorant because they did not receive the kind
of medical training we have now come to take for granted. However, because the physician of 1870 did not yet have the understanding of physiology or pathology physiology enjoyed by his colleagues a century later, calling most earlier doctors ignorant, callous, or worse was not warranted.

Those with a less conspiratorial view of history have shown that other views of both husbands and male physicians existed in the late part of the last century. The economist Thorstein Veblen, for instance, believed that nonworking wives served as status symbols for their husbands rather than as threats or temptations to eager surgeons.

Women learned and taught surgery, including gynecologic procedures, at the Women’s Medical College of Pennsylvania from its founding in 1850. But it is also fair to say that there were few women actively practicing gynecologic surgery until well into this century. A notable exception was Mary Dixon Jones of Brooklyn, who by the 1890s had won respect from her male colleagues. Her story has recently been told by Regina Morantz-Sanchez, whose observations of Dixon Jones’s career help us to understand how a woman made it in a man’s world. Morantz-Sanchez, in her book about the liberal trial of Dixon-Jones in the early 1890s, charts the development of gynecologic surgery as a specialty. Dixon-Jones was unusual because she was a successful woman surgeon, but also because she was on the cusp of the developments in gynecology and its evolution from a field that viewed women in their social as well as their biological roles to a 20th-century surgical specialty that concentrated on the pathology of diseased organs and the most appropriate and effective surgical techniques.

Morantz-Sanchez nicely illustrates this evolution of gynecology by framing the developments by the textbooks of Thomas Addis Emmet and J. C. Skene of the 1880s, still using the language of women as “other” than men, with the 1909 text of Howard Kelly and Charles Noble, Gynecology and Abdominal Surgery, in which there is no discussion of women’s social roles because the focus is on surgical technique. Thus, the language of medicine can be used to trace the changes in medicine itself.

THE RELATION BETWEEN SURGERY AND GYNECOLOGY

The complex relation between general surgery and gynecology played a continuing role in the professional definition of gynecology as a 20th-century specialty. Moreover, several important contributions to surgery, such as chloroform anesthesia, rubber gloves, and early amputation, were influenced by gynecologists as well as surgeons. The latter two items are discussed subsequently.

By 1905, the Chicago gynecologist Franklin H. Martin (1857–1935) was convinced that the three closely allied fields—surgery, gynecology, and obstetrics—were making sufficient progress to warrant a new journal. There was a shared feeling, Martin wrote in the opening editorial of Surgery, Gynecology, and Obstetrics, “...that the field of the three allied specialties represented by its title is not over-cultivated, and that there is already a place for a creditable magazine representing in one publication these three divisions of surgery.”

Another of the founding editors of the journal, the gynecologist J. Clarence Webster, wrote a provocative editorial in the first issue on “The Future of Gynecology.” Webster firmly laid the ground for general surgery as a specialty. Webster assured his readers that contrary to what some had claimed, much advance had occurred in the preceding decades, and, moreover, “...it is very evident that almost all the important advances have resulted from the work of men who have given their entire energies to the specialty. At the present day the leading authorities everywhere are those who still limit their attention to this sphere of work.”

In a programmatic statement to the American Gynecological Society in 1920, Robert L. Dickinson (1861–1950) contended that gynecologists promote surgery. “But if we be just surgeons, by surgeons we may be displaced.” In this presidential address to the society, Dickinson claimed that gynecologic procedures constituted one-fourth of all surgery, but this hardly accounted for the extent of the field, “...since operation is needed by less than one-tenth of the patients that come to the doctor for ailments peculiar to women (childbearing not included).” It was true, of course, that for much of the preceding century, gynecology was a medical rather than a surgical discipline, often taught in medical schools as part of the course on diseases of women and children.

In the early decades of the 20th century, the professional battles between the general surgeons (who increasingly dominated the field of abdominal surgery) and the gynecologists (who wished to lay claim to the same territory) waxed and waned. Dr. Howard Longyear of Detroit noted in 1917 that general surgeons tended to scorn the area of the pelvis, whereas this area was being increasingly perfected by gynecologists. These surgeons wanted to move upward in the body from surgery of the female genitalia and the pelvis to the abdomen. Longyear also noted that the Sims operation for vesicovaginal fistula did more to establish operative gynecology as a specialty than did any other single procedure or development.

The complex relations between surgery and gynecology also can be traced by following the name changes in the American Medical Association specialty section. In 1903, at its founding, it was called Section on Obstetrics and Gynecology. From 1912 until 1936, it was called Section on Obstetrics, Gynecology, and Abdominal Surgery. Then the name was changed once again, dropping the abdominal surgery component.

One area of joint progress forged by surgeons and gynecologists was the introduction of the use of rubber gloves, which helped to expand the work of all surgeons. The idea of using some form of protective covering for the surgeon’s hands occasionally appeared in the medical literature in the early decades of the 19th century, but it was not until the end of the century that some of the associates of Dr. William S. Halsted (1852–1922) at the Johns Hopkins Hospital in Baltimore began to use gloves routinely. About two decades after their introduction, Dr. Halsted recalled the story:

In the winter of 1889 and 1890— I cannot recall the month—the nurse in charge of my operating room complained that the solutions of mercuric chloride produced a dermatitis of her arms and hands. As she was an unusually efficient woman, I gave the matter my consideration and arranged an interview with John Goodyear, President of the Goodyear Rubber Company to make as an experiment two pair of thin rubber gloves with gauntlets. On trial these proved to be so satisfactory that additional gloves were ordered. In the summer, on my return to town, the assistant who passed the instruments and threaded the needles was also provided with rubber gloves to wear at the operations. At first the operator wore them only when exploratory incisions into joints were made. After a time the assistants became so accustomed to working in gloves that they also wore them as operators and would remark that they
Gynecologists were also closely involved in the form of post-operative care we have now come to take for granted: early ambulation after surgery. With the change from 2 or 3 weeks of enforced bed rest after surgery to active ambulation within a few hours of the operation, we have improved recovery, shortened hospital stays, and reduced costs, as well as postoperative complications. But like all new techniques or practices, early rising after surgery did not win rapid acceptance.

Ephraim McDowell's patient in 1809 not only was ambulant early, but also engaged in physical tasks such as making her own bed. Her surgeon clearly was not pleased with her activity, which was not in keeping with customary and usual practices of the day.

What we call early ambulation was not found again in the medical literature until the very last year of the 19th century, when Emil Ries, a professor of gynecology in Chicago, published a landmark paper, which soon disappeared from view. It was rediscovered four decades later. Ries noted in his 1899 paper that he wanted to change treatment radically by freeing patients from “... many unsightly and disagreeable features of convalescence following vaginal and abdominal surgery.” Ries found that his patients could be fed and allowed out of bed much sooner than was the usual custom. “Very soon I found,” he wrote, “that the period for which it was advisable to confine such cases to bed could be counted by hours instead of days, so that of late I have allowed my patients to get up within twenty-four to forty-eight hours and to leave the hospital four to six days after their vaginal celiotomy.” These patients, Ries also noted, did not have the listlessness or muscular weakness that was usually seen after 2 or 3 weeks in bed.

In the preoperative preparation of his patients, Ries also went against the usual custom of completely emptying the bowel. Most textbooks, he said, claimed that early action of the bowels helped to prevent peritonitis. However, in most patients with an empty intestinal tract, regular movements did not resume after they were eating a regular diet. Ries maintained that cause and effect were confused because it was not movement of the bowels that prevented peritonitis, but freedom from inflammation that allowed the bowels to move.

At the meeting of the Southern Surgical and Gynecological Society in Baltimore in 1906, H. J. Boldt described 384 cases of early ambulation that he had accumulated since 1890. All recovered well. Interestingly, Boldt reported, the most serious objection raised by his colleagues was that early ambulation increased the risk of thrombosis. This was clearly wrong, he said, from both a theoretic and an empirical point of view, because patients had a better circulation from exercising.

Early ambulation was discussed repeatedly in the succeeding decades, but it received far from universal acceptance. Even Howard Kelly, the country’s leading teacher of gynecology, noted in 1911 that great progress was made as a result of Boldt’s and Ries’s work, but that it was far from standard practice. Early ambulation really became a routine practice with the exigencies of World War II (which resulted in a shortage of hospital personnel) and with the work of Daniel J. Leithauser, a general surgeon from Detroit who rediscovered Boldt and Ries.

In the 1890s, when Thomas Cullen (1868–1953) was a medical student in Toronto, he recalled that “... there were antepartum complications, anteflexions, retroflexions, and retroversions and that some of the displacements might be relieved by appropriate measures.” Abdominal gynecologic operations, Cullen continued, “... were limited almost entirely to the removal of large ovarian cysts. An occasional myomatous uterus was removed, but the fatality in this class of cases was so high that the operation was rarely attempted.” Cullen also said that he did hear of cancers of the uterus in his student days, but only cautery or curettage was performed. Entire removal of the uterus was not yet being done.

By the turn of the 20th century, the leadership of gynecology in this country had clearly moved to the new Johns Hopkins Hospital, where Howard A. Kelly (1858–1943) (Fig. 1.6) began to train a series of young men who put gynecology on a strong academic footing in the next two generations. Kelly received both his bachelor’s and medical degrees from the University of Pennsylvania. After his medical graduation in 1882, Kelly spent some time in Germany learning the latest surgical techniques.
and pathologic techniques. Back in Philadelphia at Kensington Hospital, he soon acquired a reputation as a brilliant operator. When his fellow Philadelphian William Osler became chief of medicine at the opening of the Johns Hopkins Hospital in 1889, he urged the trustees to hire Kelly as chief of obstetrics and gynecology.

At age 31, the youthful-appearing Kelly, who many patients thought was still a student or resident, initiated a residency program in gynecology with a strong link to the pathology department. Even more than half a century later, the leading texts in the field—Eastman’s (Williams’) Obstetrics, Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology, and Novak’s Gynecologic and Obstetric Pathology—were written by professors in Baltimore who had received their training at Hopkins with Kelly and his assistants.

Kelly soon found that his interests and skills were in gynecologic surgery; therefore, he turned the obstetric service over to J. Whitridge Williams (1866–1931), who became a leader in that field and the author of the most widely used textbook of the time. Kelly had a great interest in the female urinary system, realizing that the symptomatology of urinary tract disease is often intertwined with that of the reproductive organs. He invented the air cystoscope and devised ureteral catheters. He was the first to plicate the vesical sphincter for stress incontinence of urine. Physicians from all over the world came to Baltimore to watch him operate (Figs. 1.7 and 1.8).

Kelly’s legendary operative skill was well described by Cullen, who later became one of Kelly’s outstanding residents and successors to the chair at Hopkins. Kelly and Hunter Robb,
his earlier resident, went to the Toronto General Hospital not long after Kelly became chief at Hopkins. Cullen was an intern in Toronto at the time and handled the instruments during an operation that Kelly and Robb had agreed to perform. Cullen’s description speaks for itself:

I turned around to thread a needle and when I turned back found to my amazement that the operator had the abdomen open. Operators in the General often took ten minutes to get that far. After cutting through the skin, fat and fascia they were apt to get lost in the muscles. Kelly and Robb working together used dissecting forceps as I had never seen them used. One man pulling each way, the cleavage between the muscles was seen at once and the opening in the abdomen could be completed without difficulty. I watched, fascinated, while Kelly went ahead and finished that operation and did the second, working with clock-like precision and at a speed I had not imagined possible. By the time he had finished, the course of my professional life was decided. Up to that afternoon I had intended to be a physician. From that afternoon I knew I had to be a surgeon.

Chance often determines the course of one’s life, so it was fortunate for Cullen that he had to wait 6 months for his residency with Kelly to start. He used this time to begin the study of pathology with William H. Welch at Hopkins, and it was the close alliance of gynecology and pathology, begun by Kelly and continued by Cullen, that shaped the careers of many future gynecologists at Hopkins and elsewhere and determined the course of the field itself.

In 1898, Kelly published a two-volume textbook called Operative Gynecology, certainly the direct ancestor of the volume you have in your hands. Kelly wrote in the preface, “My aim in writing this book has been to place in the hands of the many friends who have from time to time visited me and followed my work, a convenient summary of the various gynecological operations I have found best in my own practice.”

Although gynecology at the end of the last century was still a very young science, in Kelly’s words, change was at hand: “Although I have spent several years in the preparation of my book, so rapid have been the changes in the gynecological field that I have found it necessary to rewrite some of the chapters two and even three times.” A little more than a dozen years later, in the preface to his text entitled Medical Gynecology, Kelly reiterated the pace of the changes: “What a transformation two generations have witnessed in the field of gynecology! From modest beginnings, as a sort of minor specialty coupled with diseases of children and often professed by general practitioners with no special training, it has grown to the dignity of a major surgical specialty, so extensive that many gynecologists of today [1912] claim the entire field of abdominal surgery as their proper domain by right of discovery and conquest.” This was also a time when radical or complete removal of tumors and repair of hernias became increasingly common. Kelly and his residents were pioneers in radical hysterectomy when Hugh Young of Hopkins introduced radical prostatectomy.

What imparted even greater value to all of Kelly’s texts were the illustrations of Max Böttel, a German medical illustrator brought to Hopkins by Kelly (Fig. 1.9). Böttel’s contributions to operative gynecology, including Te Linde’s text 50 years after Kelly’s, were portraits of operative techniques, pelvic anatomy, and pathologic conditions. He set a standard for medical illustration never attained before or surpassed since.

As long ago as 1905, in his classic text, Cancer of the Uterus, Thomas Cullen, student of and successor to Kelly (Fig. 1.10), wrote that “The number of cases of cancer of the genital tract coming too late for operation is so appalling that the surgeon
General Topics Affecting Gynecologic Surgery Practice

Herbert Traut (1894–1963) published their seminal monograph entitled Diagnosis of Uterine Cancer by the Vaginal Smear. Papanicolaou had worked on this technique since the 1920s, but, like many other innovations in medicine, it took years to find widespread acceptance. Further publications by Papanicolaou and others, notably Ruth Graham, demonstrated beyond a doubt that cytologic studies could almost unfailingly detect cervical cancer.

Cancer in situ was recognized early in the century by Cullen and in 1912 by J. Schottlander and F. Kermanner, but its relation to invasive cancer was not well understood. This relation was more clearly described in 1944 by G. A. Galvin and Te Linde. Since then, the relation has been amply confirmed, and early cervical cancer has become a detectable and curable disease. Since its inception by Hans Hinselmann in Germany in the 1920s, colposcopy has given a new dimension to the assessment of cervical carcinoma, making blind, random cervical biopsies unnecessary and providing more accuracy in finding and treating localized lesions.

By the early 1970s, the editor of a new journal, Gynecologic Oncology, pointed out that "...the scientific importance of gynecologic oncology may be gained from the observation that the tumors that we study and treat are prototypes for cancer in other areas of the body, for the histogenesis of the two principal uterine cancers is probably understood better than that of any other tumor in the body."

The immediate post–World War II years were a period of truly astounding medical developments and saw the explosive growth of medical research funding and new hospital construction. After 1945, penicillin became available for civilian use, and this was soon followed by other antibiotics. Hormone replacement became increasingly possible, and in 1946, the year that Richard Te Linde published the first edition of this textbook, Congress passed the Hill-Burton Act, making federal money available for new hospital construction.

Although the emphasis of this historical chapter is on developments before the introduction of laparoscopy, the ability to visualize and subsequently to intervene by the less invasive laparoscopic technique surely represents an important milestone in the history of operative gynecology. The details of the history of the various endoscopic possibilities are discussed in the chapters devoted to these techniques, but a few general historical reflections may be in order at this point.

Laparoscopy seems to have been developed more or less independently in the United States and in various countries in Europe. In 1911, Bertram Bernheim, a general surgeon at Johns Hopkins, reported two cases in which, through a small abdominal incision, he introduced a proctoscope to examine the upper abdomen in a procedure he called organoscopy. The source of the illumination was an incandescent light on a band around his head. The experience must not have been satisfactory, as there were no follow-up reports.

In the mid-1930s at the same Johns Hopkins, in a trial of a small series of patients that was never published, Richard Te Linde introduced a Kelly air cystoscope into the abdomen through a small subumbilical incision with the patient in a deep Trendelenburg position. The Kelly air cystoscope was simply a 10-cm-long tube, which came in various diameters up to 2 cm, with a flange at the distal end and a suitable handle. It was routinely used at Hopkins to examine the bladder. The patient was in the knee-chest position for the cystoscopic examination. The bladder distended with air and when the instrument, which normally was also a part of the instrument, was removed. The light source was an incandescent bulb placed just above the patient's buttocks and a conical head mirror with a central hole to direct the light along the line of sight. The illumination was very good with this technique. Although the pelvic organs could be seen with the introduction of the cystoscope into the abdomen, the area of inspection was so small that the concept was abandoned.

It is curious indeed that Te Linde apparently did not think of introducing the cystoscope through the posterior fornix with the patient in the knee-chest position, especially as this was the exact position used to cystoscope the bladder with the Kelly cystoscope and was a technique commonly and frequently used at Johns Hopkins during this era. At that time, female urology was part of the division of gynecology.

It remained for Albert Decker with T. H. Cherry to use the knee-chest position to introduce a lens cystoscope with a miniaturized incandescent bulb at the tip through the posterior fornix to visualize the pelvic organs. Thus, culdoscopy was born and was widely used in the United States during the era of 1950 to 1970, especially after the adoption of the fiberoptic cold light system, which gave far better illumination than the miniaturized incandescent bulb. During this era, it was not unusual at Johns Hopkins to have five or six patients per day listed in the operating room for a culdoscopic examination.

After about 1970, laparoscopy, with its fiberoptic cold light system, superseded the culdoscopic approach. About this time, operative laparoscopy blossomed, and one of the first widely used procedures was the ligation of the fallopian tubes by various techniques.

In Europe, in contrast to the United States, there was no great use of the culdoscope. The development of observational and operative laparoscopy continued uninterruptedly from about 1912, when, according to Cohen, the Swedish Hans Christian Jacobaeus described 109 laparoscopies in 69 patients using an electric cystoscope. As previously mentioned, the historical details of procedures are included in the appropriate chapters. However, two general observations may be made.

First, developmental progress in endoscopy of the abdominal cavity has been a function of development of the physical sciences: optics, mechanics, electronics, etc. Thus, the current popular robotic laparoscopic procedures resulted not only from medical ingenuity but from participation of the capitalistic industrial complex. The consequence of this is that the use of the laparoscopic instrumentation is greatly encouraged by commercial interests. The danger is—if there is a danger—that physicians may be unduly influenced by commercial as opposed to scientific priorities.

Second, the laparoscopic operative procedures have been widely adopted, often without randomized clinical trials to scientifically define and evaluate their role in operative gynecology.

These two points are made as an observation and not necessarily as a criticism, as the advantages of a shortened hospital stay and less patient discomfort are obvious. However, the fact is that there are few data on the short- and long-term results that are designed to evaluate results from laparoscopy with alternate procedures. The adoption of laparoscopic operative procedures progressed in spite of the recent emphasis on the importance of evidence-based medicine. Rock and Warshaw have elaborated on this aspect of operative laparoscopy.

THE BEGINNING OF THE ERA OF LAPAROSCOPY

Although the emphasis of this historical chapter is on developments before the introduction of laparoscopy, the ability to visualize and subsequently to intervene by the less invasive laparoscopic technique surely represents an important milestone in the history of operative gynecology. The details of the history of the various endoscopic possibilities are discussed in the chapters devoted to these techniques, but a few general historical reflections may be in order at this point.

Laparoscopy seems to have been developed more or less independently in the United States and in various countries in Europe. In 1911, Bertram Bernheim, a general surgeon at Johns Hopkins, reported two cases in which, through a small abdominal incision, he introduced a proctoscope to examine the upper abdomen in a procedure he called organoscopy. The source of the illumination was an incandescent light on a band around his head. The experience must not have been satisfactory, as there were no follow-up reports.

In the mid-1930s at the same Johns Hopkins, in a trial of a small series of patients that was never published, Richard Te Linde introduced a Kelly air cystoscope into the abdomen through a small subumbilical incision with the patient in a deep Trendelenburg position. The Kelly air cystoscope was simply a 10-cm-long tube, which came in various diameters up to 2 cm, with a flange at the distal end and a suitable handle. It was routinely used at Hopkins to examine the bladder. The patient was in the knee-chest position for the cystoscopic examination. The bladder distended with air and when the instrument, which normally was also a part of the instrument, was removed. The light source was an incandescent bulb placed just above the patient's buttocks and a conical head mirror with a central hole to direct the light along the line of sight. The illumination was very good with this technique. Although the pelvic organs could be seen with the introduction of the cystoscope into the abdomen, the area of inspection was so small that the concept was abandoned.

It is curious indeed that Te Linde apparently did not think of introducing the cystoscope through the posterior fornix with the patient in the knee-chest position, especially as this was the exact position used to cystoscope the bladder with the Kelly cystoscope and was a technique commonly and frequently used at Johns Hopkins during this era. At that time, female urology was part of the division of gynecology.

It remained for Albert Decker with T. H. Cherry to use the knee-chest position to introduce a lens cystoscope with a miniaturized incandescent bulb at the tip through the posterior fornix to visualize the pelvic organs. Thus, culdoscopy was born and was widely used in the United States during the era of 1950 to 1970, especially after the adoption of the fiberoptic cold light system, which gave far better illumination than the miniaturized incandescent bulb. During this era, it was not unusual at Johns Hopkins to have five or six patients per day listed in the operating room for a culdoscopic examination.

Aafter about 1970, laparoscopy, with its fiberoptic cold light system, superseded the culdoscopic approach. About this time, operative laparoscopy blossomed, and one of the first widely used procedures was the ligation of the fallopian tubes by various techniques.

In Europe, in contrast to the United States, there was no great use of the culdoscope. The development of observational and operative laparoscopy continued uninterruptedly from about 1912, when, according to Cohen, the Swedish Hans Christian Jacobaeus described 109 laparoscopies in 69 patients using an electric cystoscope. As previously mentioned, the historical details of procedures are included in the appropriate chapters. However, two general observations may be made.

First, developmental progress in endoscopy of the abdominal cavity has been a function of development of the physical sciences: optics, mechanics, electronics, etc. Thus, the current popular robotic laparoscopic procedures resulted not only from medical ingenuity but from participation of the capitalistic industrial complex. The consequence of this is that the use of the laparoscopic instrumentation is greatly encouraged by commercial interests. The danger is—if there is a danger—that physicians may be unduly influenced by commercial as opposed to scientific priorities.

Second, the laparoscopic operative procedures have been widely adopted, often without randomized clinical trials to scientifically define and evaluate their role in operative gynecology.

These two points are made as an observation and not necessarily as a criticism, as the advantages of a shortened hospital stay and less patient discomfort are obvious. However, the fact is that there are few data on the short- and long-term results that are designed to evaluate results from laparoscopy with alternate procedures. The adoption of laparoscopic operative procedures progressed in spite of the recent emphasis on the importance of evidence-based medicine. Rock and Warshaw have elaborated on this aspect of operative laparoscopy.
Knowledge of the history of operative gynecology is not only of intrinsic interest but also allows us to appreciate our innovative predecessors and may stimulate some of us to be the subject of future historians.

OPERATIVE GYNECOLOGY, FIRST EDITION, 1946

Richard Wesley Te Linde was born in Wisconsin in 1894 and, except for the years that he attended a small liberal arts college in Holland, Michigan, he spent all his formative years in Wisconsin. When he was ready to go to medical school, he went to Madison, but in 1916, the University of Wisconsin had only a 2-year school. Te Linde completed the 2 preclinical years and then transferred to Johns Hopkins for the final 2 years. He graduated with the class of 1920 and spent the rest of his professional career associated with Hopkins, where he became chief of the gynecology division of the department of surgery and then chair of the separate department of gynecology in 1939. He held that post until his retirement in 1960, when the newly reunified department of obstetrics and gynecology was reestablished.

Just as his teacher Howard Kelly had felt the need to compile a textbook of operative gynecology half a century earlier, Te Linde believed that the many-sided specialty that gynecology had become by World War II required a new text. With Kelly’s earlier text as a model, Te Linde wished to incorporate the vast changes that had occurred in the period separating the two books. During this 50-year span, there were changes in our knowledge of hormones, new surgical techniques, and the ability to visualize the abdominal and pelvic organs.

Te Linde chose the same simple title for his own text. Although Kelly’s had been published by Appleton in New York, Te Linde chose Lippincott in Philadelphia. Gynecology, Te Linde wrote in the preface in 1946, was no longer to be considered simply a branch of general surgery. The gynecologist, he stressed, must still be a good surgeon but must also master the pathology of gynecologic disorders and the newly burgeoning field of endocrinology. New books were appearing in all these fields except gynecologic surgery, and it was the void that Te Linde wished to fill.

Te Linde wrote his text with the “… primary purpose of describing the technique of the usual and some of the rarer operative procedures. It also includes indications for and against operations as well as pre- and postoperative care of patients.” Gynecologic pathology, Te Linde stressed in the Hopkins tradition, is the bedrock of good gynecologic surgery. “Without an understanding of it, surgery becomes merely a mechanical job, and errors in surgical judgment are inevitable.” In the organization of his text and in the subsequent editions over the succeeding half century to the present edition, one can readily see important landmarks in the history of operative gynecology. Some of these were discussed in a previous section.

The 751-page first edition of 1946, all of it written by Te Linde, had a first printing of 5,000 copies, which quickly sold out. A second printing was equally successful. The reviews have always been laudatory. Of the sixth edition of 1985, edited by Richard Martingly and John Thompson, the Journal of the American Medical Association reviewer ended by saying, “I cannot imagine any gynecologist who performs surgery doing without it, first as a primer and then as a reminder.” By 1962, when the third edition appeared and Te Linde had retired from the chairmanship of his department, he decided that, like all the other major medical textbooks of the time, his book needed a group of authors to bring out new revisions. In the preface to that edition, he states that his book has never been simply a manual of surgical technique—that surgical philosophy is equally important. “What does it profit a woman if the operation is technically perfect and the procedure unnecessary or even harmful?” One reason unnecessary procedures still prevailed, Te Linde noted, was the lack of knowledge of gynecologic pathology, still the “bedrock upon which good surgery is done.” Therefore, Te Linde justified including a considerable amount of pathology in his text. Pathology is what has differentiated gynecologic surgery from general surgery since Howard Kelly’s years at the turn of the 20th century. Surgeon and gynecologic texts, and by implication their surgical readers, have generally not devoted nearly as much attention to pathology as have gynecologists, some of whose leaders have actually been very well versed in pathology.

The fact that Te Linde could produce three editions, each larger than the first, is a testament to his broad knowledge of his field, his ability as a writer, and his stamina for hard work. He died in Baltimore in 1989 at the age of 95.

In the decades since the third edition of 1962, the world of medicine and the society in which it is practiced has seen much change. By the mid-1960s, when significant advances in the treatment of infections, malignancies, and hormonal disorders had become evident, these successes had an impact on gynecology just as they did in other areas of medicine. The reduction in mastoid infections, for instance, has changed the practice of the otolaryngologist considerably. In gynecology, the reduction in major pelvic inflammatory disease forced gynecologists to focus more of their attention on other disorders. Also affecting gynecologic surgery by the middle of this century were significant improvements in obstetric practices, which sharply reduced injuries to the bladder and rectum. Hysterectomy and suspensory operations were not performed for vague symptoms of illness as often as they had been.

We have also lived through social revolutions that have changed the way our society carries on its business and dispenses its social prerogatives. Especially prominent in the 1960s, a civil rights movement, greater concern for our environment, a resurgence of consumer rights, and a revitalized women’s movement profoundly affected our social institutions, including medicine. Within medicine, no specialty has been more touched by these trends than obstetrics and gynecology.

The new feminism viewed abortion, childbirth, contraception, and gynecologic surgery as a means of social control of female patients by doctors, most of whom were men. The feminist movement challenged not only the domination of doctors but also the supposed benevolence of their knowledge and practice.

As the world has changed, so have our expectations. In the decades after the first edition of Te Linde’s book appeared, when wonder drugs were touted as curing previously untreatable illnesses, the public began to expect much from its doctors, and we were not shy in claiming that ever-greater investments in medical research would lead to more cures. It is hardly surprising, then, that in those last few decades, as we began to spend increasing amounts of our gross national product for health, those who paid the bill became increasingly interested in seeing just what their money was actually buying. Like most other social institutions, medicine lost much of the autonomy it had for so long taken for granted. Although as a profession we did not want the public to know exactly how much money we were making, we were now willing to tolerate efforts for decades amazingly adept at preventing those things we did not want. Now that, too, has changed, as has the practice of medicine.
The division of labor in all areas of medicine grew as the 20th century progressed. In the last decades of the century, what used to be called general practice became the specialty of family practice. In the Anglo-American world of the late 20th century, both gynecology and obstetrics were caught in the middle of the battles between specialists and generalists. Likewise, they became involved in the tensions among primary, secondary, and tertiary medical care. Similar strife occurred in earlier centuries among those vying for a place and for status among physicians caring for women in childbirth and in disease. If one looks at the table of contents of this edition and compares it with a similar sample of period of half a century ago, one will see what great breadth the field of operative gynecology continues to enjoy.

Bibliography

Cullen TS. The relation of obstetrics, gynaecology and abdominal surgery to the public welfare. JAMA 1915;66:239.
Dickinson RL. Original communications: a program for American Gynecology Society presidential address. JAMA 1921;2:2.
Hewes E. Some radical changes in the after-treatment of obstetrical cases. JAMA 1915;53:454.
CHAPTER 2 ■ THE ETHICS OF PELVIC SURGERY
RUTH M. FARRELL, ELI A. RYBAK, AND EDWARD WALLACH

DEFINITIONS

Autonomy—The concept describing an individual’s self-determination and the right to direct his or her own life through his or her own decisions, actions, and beliefs.

Informed consent—A process of communication between a physician and a patient that addresses the risks, benefits, and alternatives of a proposed medical intervention while meeting the core criteria of competence, exchange of information, understanding of exchanged information, and voluntary authorization.

Nonmaleficence—Literally translated as “do no harm,” this concept describes the need to both prevent harm and refrain from harmful acts.

Beneficence—The duty to do good on the behalf of others through an active promotion of the good of the patient and shelter from harm.

THEORY AND PRACTICE OF ETHICS IN MEDICINE

The practice of medicine is governed by a system of beliefs that guide the actions of physicians and other health care professionals to act and make decisions that are regarded as ethically acceptable. Throughout the practice of medicine, different sets of standards and concepts of ethically acceptable behavior have existed as the predominant code for health care professionals. Codes such as those set by the Hippocratic oath served as the mainstay of professional behavior for centuries until a different system took its place in the first half of the 20th century. This transition is a reflection of changing societal values of health and well-being that evolved over time as a result of political, cultural, scientific, and technological advancement. The field of bioethics emerged in the 1950s. Before that time, ethical principles of the Hippocratic oath were regarded as the ethical standards for medicine. The guiding principle of physician action was primum non nocere—first do no harm. In the Hippocratic tradition, the model of paternalism structured the therapeutic relationship. The physician was designated as the most qualified person to make decisions about treatment options for a patient. As such, it was the physician’s judgment that determined what was to be considered as harm or benefit resulting from a medical procedure, not that of the patient or the patient’s family. This was based on the belief that only an expert in science and medicine was qualified enough to make the best choice among treatment options for patients. During a time when medical therapies were limited and choices were few, this was not viewed as a problematic approach to patient care. However, as changes in society, science, and medicine unfolded, patients and the general public began to question these traditional views of the physician-patient relationship.

With the introduction of significant scientific and cultural revolutions that characterized the post–World War II period in the United States, these standards set by the Hippocratic oath were considered to be ineffectual to meet the growing demands of medicine and ethics. Movements advancing civil rights, women’s issues, and the growing recognition of individual rights and autonomy dominated the social climate. Carried over into medicine and science, a new set of health care innovations introduced new moral debates to society and the medical profession about the purpose of medical care, the definition of health, and the ability of mankind to regulate the physiology of the human body. The birth control pill, organ transplant, and dialysis are just a few examples of the significant life-altering innovations of the time. The ethical questions raised in response to the cultural and scientific climate challenged the previous notions of ethical behavior of physicians. In particular, the notion that physicians were the most appropriate members in the therapeutic relationship to make choices for the patient was rejected. Decisions about the vast array of available medical therapies and choices seemed inherently incongruent with the concept of paternalism. With the rise in the importance of autonomy and individual rights, society campaigned to replace the paternalistic structure of medicine with a model that established the patient as the primary decision maker.

This movement resulted in the establishment of a system of principle-based ethics as the driving force behind modern medicine. In 1977, the Belmont Report outlined what these standards, also known as principles, should be. This massive effort to reshape modern bioethics resulted in the establishment of the following principles as the cornerstone of contemporary medical ethics: autonomy, beneficence, nonmaleficence, and justice.

Autonomy—The concept of autonomy embodies the ideal of self-determination—that a person shapes his or her own life through his or her own decisions, actions, and beliefs. As such, individuals have the right to make decisions about their lives that reflect their own beliefs of well-being and values. Inherent in the principle of autonomy is the requirement that others (i.e., physicians) must respect a patient’s right of self-determination.

Nonmaleficence—Nonmaleficence, defined as “do no harm,” has its origins in the original tenets of the Hippocratic oath. This principle encompasses both the need to prevent harm and to refrain from harmful acts.

Beneficence—The definition of the principle of beneficence is to do good on the behalf of others. In the case of the principle of beneficence, physicians are expected to actively promote the good of the patient, not just shelter him or her from harm. Though this may seem to be a subtle
distinction from the principle of nonmaleficence, it is criti-
cal to the principle-based theory of ethics, as it requires the
performance of positive acts to advance the well-being of
others.

Justice—The principle of justice addresses the need to
treat all persons fairly. In the case of health care, this per-
tains to both the physician–patient relationship and also the
public health obligation of physicians in the allocation of
scarce medical resources.

In this principle-based ethics model, all four core elements hold,
in theory, equal importance. In many of the clinical situations
that physicians currently address, the solution to complex eth-
cical dilemmas requires the balancing of these principles and,
only times, a prioritization of one over the others. An example
of this is in an emergent medical situation when the principle
of beneficence may temporarily override autonomy. However
these principles are weighted, they must, ultimately, must be
used in a way that results in medical choices serving the good
of the patient by reflecting his or her values and beliefs.

Though the system of principle-based ethics as established
by the Belmont Report is the forerunner of ethical standards
of behavior in modern medicine, other legitimate models of
bioethical theory exist. They are broad in nature and are guid-
ing principles, but all come from the view that the system of
principle-based ethics does not offer enough to guide behavior
in the complex setting of health care. Two examples of this are
feminist ethics and casuistry. Feminist ethics is based on the
notion that decisions are made in the context of relationships
and personal virtues, such as compassion, friendship, and love.
Principle-based ethics does not take these factors into consider-
ation, neglecting the problems raised in a society in which men
and women are not viewed as equals and, as a result, does not
serve the interests of the patient. A second example is casu-
istry, or case-based ethics. This theory is founded on the prin-
ciple that moral lessons gained from the resolution of actual
cases in medicine have more value than a set of theoretic and
unchanging principles. Using this model, ethical reasoning re-
sults from weighing the outcomes of real cases as examples and
forming a set of modifiable principles from those conclusions.

These are just two examples of the diversity of ethical theories
that guide medicine and serve as solutions to ethical puzzles
that cannot be solved using the standard principle-based ethics
commonly in place today.

The very nature of the field of obstetrics and gynecology sets
the stage for a variety of ethical dilemmas. Issues surrounding
the beginnings of human life and reproductive function natu-
really facilitate profound and often controversial questions and
debate. In addition, the women’s rights movement has raised
other issues specific to the care of women, such as subjugation
and control of women’s bodies through society and medicine.

Despite this broad range of issues, ethical discussions in ob-
stetrics and gynecology are often perceived in terms of a sin-
gle controversial issue: abortion. Yet the field of bioethics in
women’s health has a rich and broad set of important impli-
cations for the practice of medicine and the health of women.

Recent advances in medicine and science have introduced novel
therapeutic options to many of the conditions that gynecolo-
gists face on a daily basis, such as cervical cancer, fibroids, and
infertility. Genetic and pharmaceutical therapies, new diagno-
sic modalities, and noninvasive surgical options set the stage
for a multitude of multifaceted ethical questions and debates.

This chapter will present some of the foundational concepts in
bioethics and women’s health that serve as a launching point
for addressing the more complex and novel ethical issues as they
arise in the present setting of medicine and the future.

THE PATIENT’S AUTONOMY AND
INFORMED CONSENT

Autonomy is one of the four cornerstones of the physician-
patient relationship. Informed consent is a mechanism whereby
the autonomy of a patient is recognized, respected, and pre-
served in health care decisions. It is the result of a process
whereby a patient makes a voluntary decision to proceed with
a medical intervention with a good understanding of the nature
and risks of the procedure, in addition to alternative therapies
if the procedure is declined. The respect of informed consent
has two purposes. On the one hand, the process of achieving
informed consent respects and recognizes the patient’s auton-
omy as a good in and of itself. On the other hand, patients
benefit when they make decisions on their own behalf because
they themselves are the most familiar with their own values, be-
liefs, and ideas of well-being and health. When patients make
informed and voluntary decisions about their health care, they
can make choices that meet their concept of good and benefi-
cial.

The term informed consent has legal and ethical dimensions.
Legally, informed consent can be viewed as an end point. The
legal requirements of informed consent are met when the con-
versation between the physician and the patient is documented,
either on an informed consent form or in the medical record.

Often, getting a signature on a form is synonymous with achiev-
ing informed consent, but informed decision making goes well
beyond the legal form. Ethically, informed decision making
involves a process of communication between the physician
and the patient, through which the patient is able to make an
autonomous decision either to authorize the intervention (in-
formed consent) or reject the intervention (informed refusal).

The legal and ethical dimensions of informed consent are of-
ten used interchangeably but can have very different meanings
and implications. Unfortunately, the function and meaning of
informed consent is often misinterpreted, and it is viewed pri-
marily as a legal document with a patient’s signature denoting
full understanding and authorization. It is important to keep in
mind that both the legal and ethical requirements of informed
consent are essential in health care. However important legal
documentation is, it should always be placed before the ethical
duties to the patient. Legal documentation in a chart or on a
form is not a substitute for the process of communication and
autonomous decision making. It is important to keep in
mind that not all legal documents with a patient’s signature
reflect that an adequate informed consent process has taken
place.

A valid informed consent is both informed and au-
tonomously authorized. To achieve this, the physician must en-
sure that five core components are met in the decision-making
process: (i) competence, (ii) voluntariness, (iii) disclosure, (iv)
understanding, and (v) authorization or refusal. These core
components serve as a guide for physicians when discussing
medical interventions with patients to ensure that a patient
makes the most appropriate decision possible. Without satis-
fying all five of these core components, an adequate informed
consent process has not been achieved.

Competency

In the usual clinical setting, other than situations involving
formal psychiatric evaluation, the determination of compe-
tence tends to be more of a working judgment than a formal
assessment. Often the terms competence and decision-making
Informed refusal can be defined as the decision of the patient to decline the proposed medical intervention, even when the decision is made against the recommendation of the physician. Informed refusal is the decision by a patient to refuse treatment, even when the decision is made against the recommendation of the physician. It is not sufficient merely to meet the criteria of decision-making capacity, disclosure, and understanding. The patient must make a decision based on an understanding of the information provided. It is not sufficient to mention or list the possible risks, including the possible risks to an intervention. The patient must comprehend the ramifications of these risks when considering whether he or she believes it to be harmful or incongruous with his or her personal beliefs.

A balance must be met between respect for the autonomy of the patient and the physician’s duty to beneficence. It is the job of the physician to be as certain as possible that this decision is informed and consistent with the values and beliefs of the patient. In situations when the refusal may result in significant impairment, pain, or death, the physician should make every attempt to ensure that these decisions are consistent with the patient’s beliefs and have been so over time. Physicians may still be considering their patient’s best interest by giving preference to his or her spiritual or personal convictions over the medical good. Another important aspect of informed refusal is that it can occur either at the initiation of a treatment or later during the course of the treatment. This becomes apparent when a patient refuses to continue a treatment or undergo a similar or identical intervention. The willingness of the patient to undergo a therapy in the past does not mean that consent is implied in the future.

There are circumstances when a physician must proceed with a medical intervention without the informed consent of the patient. Generally, these circumstances involve emergent situations. For example, the patient may be suddenly incapacitated or unconscious and therefore incapable of providing any sort of autonomous authorization. Alternatively, the patient may be conscious and otherwise able to make decisions but, because of the emergent and critical nature of her condition, it is medically necessary to initiate an immediate intervention, and there is no time to engage in a discussion with the patient. In the first situation, there may be time to obtain authorization from an appropriate family member or designated medical decision maker. In the second situation (and sometimes in the first), there is no time, and the physician must make a decision on behalf of the patient. This decision should be made based on what is judged to be in the medical best interest of the patient and usually assumes most people would opt on the side of instituting lifesaving measures.

Informed consent plays a vital role in the practice of obstetrics and gynecology because this field of medicine pertains to the anatomy and function of the women’s reproductive system and sexuality. Issues specific to women’s health have been brought to the forefront because of concerns of historical control and subjugation of women and their bodies through society and medicine. In addition, there is a growing trend to recognize the vital role of relationships in a patient’s medical decision making about reproductive issues. Patients rarely make decisions about their sexuality and reproduction in a vacuum but instead do so within the context of relationships with others, whether friends, partners, or families. It is critical to recognize these qualities inherent in obstetrics and gynecology when obtaining informed consent for a medical therapy or procedure to maximize the autonomous expression of the patient’s personal preferences.

**ETHICAL ISSUES IN SURGICAL TRAINING**

Competence of the surgeon is a moral commitment to the patient, especially before undertaking a novel surgical procedure.
Adequate preparation in the basic and clinical sciences and training in surgical techniques must have been accomplished before any new surgical procedure is introduced into clinical medicine. An illustrative example of an overenthusiastic rush into a procedure was the sudden popularity of cardiac transplantation in the 1960s. The preparatory laboratory work in cardiac transplantation started in 1953, but the first successful experiment by Dr. Christian Barnard took place in 1960. Immune suppression, which is crucial to the procedure, was introduced in 1918, and long-term survival of grafts occurred by 1965. T. H. H. H. heart transplantsations had been performed by 64 surgical groups in 22 countries. Most patients improved briefly and then died of rejection of the transplant or infections. In 2 years, the procedure was largely discredited, and it took more than 10 additional years to reestablish wide acceptance of the operation. This experience illustrates the need to limit difficult and complex procedures to specialized centers that have the resources and adequately trained surgeons to perform them.

This is equally true for complex pelvic surgery. The advent of subspecialty boards by the American Board of Obstetrics and Gynecology, each with requirements for postresidency fellowship training and evaluation standards for certification, have helped to emphasize the need for specialized training in surgical techniques for pelvic surgeons. The rapid expansion of the use of laparoscopic surgery training procedures means the responsibility of providing future obstetricians and gynecologists who are technically skilled to serve society effectively and safely. In addition to underlying knowledge, clinical experience, training, and practice, the competent surgeon operates with the attentiveness and focus commensurate with the surgical task. In surgical settings, legitimate concerns regarding the potential impairment of overfattigued house staff managing and operating on patients have facilitated changes in house staff work hours and training. Training programs are now charged with the simultaneous challenge of vigilantly protecting the welfare of the patients from potentially suboptimal care while ensuring that those surgeons, after completion of training, operate competently under emergent and suboptimal conditions.

Many surgeons trained before World War II participated in residency programs affiliated with large inner-city hospitals where patients without adequate resources or health insurance received care. It was accepted that these patients would receive treatment or even surgery by physicians-in-training (including senior medical students, interns, and residents), preferably under the supervision of skilled volunteers or paid clinical faculty and only when the trainee had reached the necessary level of competence. When health care became an entitlement under Medicare and Medicaid government-funded health insurance became more prevalent, many patients sought the services of private physicians. The so-called free care or resident services were often unable to recruit sufficient patients to provide adequate training for new surgeons. This was peculiarly true in pelvic surgery; given the choice, these patients sought treatment from the clinic, where privacy and dignity were hard to maintain, and fled in large numbers to private doctors’ offices. Surgical teaching thereafter often involved the private patient, with the resident now performing complete procedures.

The problem with this arrangement was that patients were either poorly informed or uninformed about the participation of physicians-in-training, and thus often became apparent only when complications arose or the medical records were reviewed during litigation. Although patients are typically better informed now, it remains ethically necessary to inform them about teaching or training in each case so that objections can be dealt with before the planned procedure or other arrangements made. Most surgeons involved in teaching programs inform their patients that surgery demands a team effort and that residents may be involved in assisting or operating with them, but that, as the private surgeons of record, they not only will be present but also will be in charge and responsible for everything that takes place during the procedure. Teaching should not take place in the operating room without such a disclosure and the patient’s informed consent. The resident’s role, status, and experience should be clear to the patient. We are long past introducing medical students to patients as doctors rather than revealing their actual status.

Because of the limitation on the number of hours a doctor in training may work, producing competent surgeons today has become even more challenging than in the past. This situation has necessitated approaches to supplement and amplify the residency program specifically as it affects surgical training. Novel training methods designed to accelerate the learning curve have been devised. These are directed at familiarizing the trainee with instrument handling and the handling of surgical instruments, improving manual dexterity, sharpening hand-eye coordination, and heightening awareness of pelvic anatomy. In addition, decision-making skills and essentials of emergency management need to be developed during the course of residency training. One of the valuable approaches that has recently been resurrected is the animal surgical laboratory. Obviously, the size of structures in laboratory animals does not precisely simulate that in humans, and anatomic relationships do not reflect those of a human patient. Simulators for endoscopic surgical procedures use mannequins or human models. Fabricated pelvic models are used to teach and practice skills for simulating maneuvers for normal and operative delivery. These innovative exercises assist in preparing the student for experiences encountered in the operating room and may even succeed in refreshing the already practicing surgeon in performance of specific techniques. The final arbiter for gaining surgical skills is the surgical procedure itself, carried out in actual patients under the guidance and supervision of an accomplished surgeon who has the ability to communicate effectively about both the procedure and techniques. The only way to learn to manage surgical complexities adversity is through personally encountering such complications while under the direct tutelage of a preceptor who has himself experienced these very complications. Simulated programs have also been developed that incorporate computerized lessons for improving history-taking skills and for simulating emergency management in the form of skill stations.

In addition to foundational medical and surgical knowledge, clinical experience, training, and practice, the competent physician must act in a responsible and professional manner, whether in the clinical or surgical setting. Impairment of a physician’s skills must be fully evaluated so that he may be given assistance to improve and injury to his patients is avoided. Health care institutions must have peer accessible mechanisms in place to facilitate this process.
medical students were performing preoperative pelvic examinations on anesthetized patients without having obtained specific prior consent, and, because of public concern, both the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) and the Association of American Medical Colleges released statements emphasizing the predominance of patient autonomy and appropriate informed consent over the exigencies of medical education.

In actual practice, examination under anesthesia (EUA) is routinely performed only by members of the surgical team to enable better appreciation of the patient's pelvic anatomy. The surgical team typically numbers between one to four members; at its largest, it includes an attending surgeon, senior resident, junior resident/intern, and medical student. Although the major portions of the surgery are performed by the senior experienced surgeons, the junior assistants, such as the medical student, perform the essential and ancillary tasks of retraction, exposure, and minor suturing.

The ACOG statement issued in 2003 noted: ‘If a pelvic examination that is planned for an anesthetized woman undergoing surgery offers her no personal benefit and is performed solely for teaching purposes, it should be performed only with her specific informed consent, obtained when she has full decision-making capacity.’ One can legitimately argue that all surgeons and surgical assistants, including the medical student, require maximum appreciation of the surgical field to optimize their performances during the procedure. Accordingly, the pelvic examinations should not be construed as offering “no personal benefit” to the patient. Furthermore, the EUA should not be considered as separate from the rest of the procedure but as a necessary adjunct. This ability of the members of the house staff that provide intraoperative and postoperative assistance should not be curtailed by exclusion from an essential component of the gynecologic procedure.

At least three steps can be taken to ensure that the rights of the patient are respected while ensuring appropriate surgical care: (i) explicitly incorporating the EUA on the operative consent form, (ii) openly discussing with the patient the importance and participation of all team-members in the EUA, and (iii) ensuring an atmosphere of patient respect and dignity by agreeing in advance to a specific number of pelvic examinations.

MEDICAL LEGAL ASPECTS OF GYNECOLOGIC CARE

In addressing the issue of professional liability among obstetricians and gynecologists, the ACOG survey in 2003 indicated the mean number of claims among practicing obstetricians/gynecologists during their professional careers to date was 2.6. Of the respondents to the survey, 76% had experienced one or more claims. Obstetricians and gynecologists pay among the highest premiums for professional liability insurance of all medical specialties. In many states, this factor has led to early retirement, elimination of obstetric and/or surgical procedures from practice, or relocation to another state. Being named in a malpractice suit leads to endless hours of effort unrelated to medical practice, undesired anxiety, and, in some instances, withdrawal from practice. A number of factors contribute to the cost of insurance premiums. Obstetricians and gynecologists can exercise control over some of these factors to minimize the chances of being cited in a claim. Two simple principles are helpful in preventing a legal claim or in providing a defense should a claim be filed. These two concepts form the basis of all risk-management and loss-prevention strategies. Plaintiffs and defense attorneys have reached consensus that two factors, documentation and communication, improve the odds that a lawsuit will not be filed or that a lawsuit, once filed, can be successfully defended.

By way of documentation, the following basic and simple initiatives should be a component of each physician’s protocol for charting and record keeping.

1. Recording of date and time of each entry in the chart
2. Legible handwriting
3. Contemporary entry of all notes in the chart
4. Appropriate correction of inaccurate entries
5. Avoidance of conflict among physicians and nurses in the charting of patient information

The altruism with which a physician responds to a patient’s symptom or concern can be established with certainty if notes are complete, properly dated, and timed. This chronology is instrumental in establishing a timeline for a patient’s care and will be more credible in a courtroom or in a hearing than a plaintiff’s client’s recollection weeks or months after the fact. Because an adverse surgical outcome is not synonymous with negligence, expression of reasons for clinical judgment in choice of a diagnostic or treatment plan demonstrates that alternatives have been considered by the physician. The physician should document these alternatives in the chart and indicate that they were each discussed with the patient before treatment.

Entries in the chart should clearly demonstrate the course of care rendered and rationale underlying the choice of a specific treatment plan. These notes should be legible and interpretable by anyone who reviews the chart. An inability to read one’s own handwriting can only negatively affect the physician’s credibility. The time frame of management is crucial, and proper recording of events will prevent doubt when events occurring before a complication are documented only after the complication has occurred. Notations regarding telephone conversations with consulting physicians or family members should also be entered in the chart with the date and time of contact. An incorrect entry in the chart should be corrected properly by striking out the erroneous entry and initialing and dating the changes. If a supplemental note is written, it should be listed as an addendum. A patient’s chart should not be used as a vehicle for expressing opinions on the intelligence of or decision rendered by another health care provider or for the purpose of criticism.

When an unanticipated adverse event occurs, the insurance company or risk-management representative should be notified promptly. The communication of a physician with legal and/or insurance representatives and health care providers is important in anticipating legal problems. However, a cornerstone of medical care is the physician’s sensitivity in communicating with the patient with understanding and compassion. She should be given ample time to ask questions, and these inquiries should be answered truthfully. Breakdown of communications in the physician-patient relationship is a recurring theme in the pathway leading to litigation.

A physician may appear in court to testify in three possible scenarios: as a defendant, as a material witness, or as an expert witness on behalf of either the plaintiff or the defendant. Although each instance has its unique aspects, in all cases the physician will have an opportunity to prepare the testimony with the attorney who is trying the case. As a defendant at either a sworn deposition or in a courtroom, the physician will have received general and specific instructions from the attorney representing him/her with regard to how
to respond to questions. Each response should be concise, to the point, and directed only at the specific question raised by the plaintiff’s attorney. Most of all, the answers must be honest and forthright, as well as accurate with respect to the patient’s clinical course and management as described in the medical records. The defendant should request the opportunity to view the medical record at any time should there be need to recall specific details such as dates, times, and sequences of events.

A physician may be called as a material witness because of his/her association with the specific case as a participant or observer, but not as a defendant. The same principles of demeanor apply as for an appearance as a participant. Second, the expert witness is called on to do so because of his/her personal experience and training with the particular clinical situation under consideration. The role of an expert witness carries with it significant responsibilities. First and foremost is the possession of knowledge, skills, and experience to fulfill this role. Second, the expert witness should be objective and unbiased, and able to discuss standards of care on a broad scale rather than be constrained by his/her personal approach. It is clearly unethical for an expert witness to lack the appropriate credentials and/or to misrepresent the standard of care reflected in the case for which he/she is testifying. Fundamentally, standard of care refers to a level of care that is generally thought to represent the norm. Standard of care rendered in specific conditions may differ from one locale or group of physicians to another, simply because standards are arbitrarily developed and not universally held. If an adverse event occurs, a distinction must be made between a bad outcome that is independent of the quality of rendered care and a bad outcome that is clearly due to negligence or substandard care.

A number of safeguards exist to protect patients from faulty or unethical clinical practice. At the local level, hospital credentials committees, as required by the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Hospitals and Health Care Organizations, are given the responsibility for reviewing the credentials of applicants for initial and continuing staff privileges. This responsibility mandates attention to the volume of cases attended and the quality of care rendered. Privileges can be curtailed for performance of specific procedures or may be suspended for practice in general in cases in which the physician provides inappropriate care or exhibits ethical infractions. The American Board of Obstetrics and Gynecology credentials specialists and subspecialists on the basis of training, experience, and performance on examinations. Over the past three decades, a periodic reexamination is required for maintenance of specialty certification. This maintenance-of-certification process involves evaluation of performance on didactic examinations and assessment of cognitive skills. Recently, the Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME) and the American Board of Medical Specialties (ABMS) have stressed the importance of education and achievement of core competencies (patient care, medical knowledge, communication, decision-making, practice-based learning and improvement, and systems-based practice). In addition, certifying boards require proof of licensure in good standing for certification and recertification. State medical societies are empowered to review patients’ complaints and charges of unethical behavior of physicians. The National Practitioners Data Bank receives and makes available data regarding infractions of practice standards. This device was established by Congress to prevent physicians with past disciplinary action and malpractice awards from relocating from one state to another without detection.

Unfortunately, there are too few safeguards aside from legal observation that can monitor surgical technique and/or interaction with patients. The physician’s ability to practice safely and effectively is implicitly implicit in day-to-day behavior and self-assessment. A recent publication that addressed the issue of discipline action against physicians with unprofessional behavior in medical school emphasized the importance of professionalism as a core competency. The conclusion in the report was that disciplinary action among practicing physicians by state medical licensing boards correlated strongly with a history of unprofessional behavior in medical school. The strongest association was in those who had demonstrated irresponsible behavior or diminished ability to improve their behavior as students earlier on.

PRIVACY AND THE HEALTH PORTABILITY AND ACCOUNTABILITY ACT

In 1996, Congress passed the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA), establishing minimal national standards to ensure confidentiality of protected health information (also referred to as individually identifiable health information). This move was due, in part, to the mainstream use of electronic technology in health care, which promoted concern over patient confidentiality. The subsequent additions to the original HIPAA provisions included the Privacy Rules, extending jurisdiction to health plans, billing services, hospitals, and individual health care providers. At the time of compliance deadlines, all of these covered entities were required to implement the established standards to protect patients’ individually identifiable health information. The caveat to the Privacy Rules was that the protection of patients’ privacy could not negatively interfere with the quality of care or create unnecessary burdens to patient care.

Quoting from the guidelines published by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS), the HIPPA Privacy Rule:

- Gives patients control over their health information;
- Sets boundaries on the use and release of health records;
- Establishes appropriate safeguards that the majority of health care providers and others must achieve to protect the privacy of health information;
- Holds violators accountable with civil and criminal penalties that can be imposed if they violate patients’ privacy rights;
- Strikes a balance when public health responsibilities support disclosure of certain forms of data;
- Enables patients to make informed choices based on how individual health information may be used;
- Enables patients to find out how their information may be used and what disclosures of their information have been made;
- Generally limits release of information to the minimum reasonably needed for the purpose of the disclosure.
Generally gives patients the right to obtain a copy of their own health records and request corrections; and
Empowers individuals to control certain uses and disclosures of their health information.

The complexity of the HIPAA regulations has made their implementation challenging and controversial. Specific confusion regarding disclosures to family members about, particularly in cases when the patient has authorized his or her family to be an active participant in health care. This also arises among health care providers when seeking information about their patients to provide continuity of care. Ultimately, HIPAA does afford latitude to professional judgment as to the “best interests” of the particular patient, so long as the disclosures conform to the “minimum necessary standards.” In addition, the Privacy Rule does not replace federal or state laws and makes an allowance for individual institutions to adopt more stringent policies to protect patients’ privacy.

CONFIDENTIALITY

The foundation of the physician-patient relationship is trust. This is based on the premises that a patient has the right to privacy and respect of privacy allows for patients to disclose the necessary information to be assisted by their physician. This is particularly relevant in gynecology, in which patients share sensitive information with their physicians about intimacy and sexuality. For this reason, confidentiality is one of the most essential aspects to the successful therapeutic relationship.

It is the exception, more than the rule, for patient confidentiality to be violated. Tension and ambiguity, however, have long surrounded the parameters wherein breaches of patient confidentiality are justified. The Code of Ethics of the American Medical Association (AMA), revised in 1957, stated:

“A physician may not reveal the confidences entrusted to him in the course of medical attendance, or the confidences he may observe in the character of patients, unless he is required to do so by law or unless it becomes necessary to protect the welfare of the individual or of the community.” Exceptions to the breach of confidentiality include times when the withholding of information may harm a third party or threaten public health. Mandatory exceptions include cases of violence and voluntary crime and the neglect and abuse of individuals, including women, children, and the elderly. Some states also require mandatory reporting of infectious diseases that may pose a serious public health risk, such as certain sexually transmitted diseases and tuberculosis. A notable case of the need to violate patient confidentiality is Tarasoff v. Regents of the University of California. In this case, a court found the University of California negligent for failing to forewarn murder victim Tatiana Tarasoff and her family after Prosenjit Poddar confided in one of his therapists that he intended to kill her. Two months after the temporary detainment of Poddar for this initial threat, he acted on it by murdering Tarasoff. As the majority opinion in the 1976 Tarasoff case emphasized: “The protective privilege ends where the public peril begins.”

Gynecologists are confronted with a variety of complex and difficult scenarios in the clinical and surgical arenas when it comes to maintaining or breaking patient confidentiality. In this setting, physicians must balance their legal obligations with their professional duties, a hospital ethics committee may be required to intervene. Ultimately, however, in the absence of a counter-balancing public health or legal mandate, the obligation of patient confidentiality predominates.

ETHICAL ISSUES IN RESEARCH ON HUMAN SUBJECTS

Although the Nuremberg medical war crimes trials of Nazi doctors and the ensuing Nuremberg Code in 1949 represent a landmark in research ethics involving human subjects, they made little impact on research practices in the United States. Biomedical research expanded exponentially after World War II without significant regulation or oversight. The Nuremberg Code established the need for the “voluntary consent of the human subject.” It covered such other matters as the need to justify a study in terms of expected beneficial results and risks, avoiding harm and injury to subjects, freedom for the subject to withdraw, and obligation of the investigator to stop a study if continuation would likely cause injury, disability, or death.

In 1966, the U.S. Public Health Service introduced the requirement that all human subject research funded by the government must be peer reviewed by a local institutional review board. The objective was to protect the rights of the individuals involved and review the quality of the informed consent and the risks and benefits of research. This regulation was the result of a growing awareness that these kinds of safeguards often were not followed even in the best academic institutions in the United States.

Indeed, in 1966, Dr. Henry K. Beecher, professor of anesthesiology at Harvard University, published an article in the New England Journal of Medicine describing ethically troubling studies from prestigious institutions published in reputable journals. One disturbing publication described transplantation of a malignant melanoma from a terminally ill daughter to her consenting mother to look for tumor antibodies. The mother died of diffuse melanoma just more than a year later.

Several unethical studies reached the attention of the public during the 1960s and 1970s. In the Willowbrook study, for example, new residents on admission to an institution for the retarded were infected with hepatitis virus to study the course of the disease and search for a vaccine. Of highest notoriety was the Tuskegee study, which was organized by the U.S. Public Health Service to follow the natural history of syphilis in a cohort of 400 rural African American men. The lack of meaningful informed consent in 1932, when the study began, and the subsequent withholding of penicillin treatment until the study was exposed and halted in 1972 shocked the public and spurred Congress into action. The end result, as described above, was the issuance of the Belmont Report and its articulation of the prevailing principles of bioethics: autonomy, justice, and beneficence.

Federal regulations mandate the creation of ongoing institutional review boards (IRBs) with appropriate oversight of human subject research. Pursuant to the doctrine of autonomy, informed consent procurement is now a formalized process. In randomized controlled trials, potential participants must be notified of the risks, benefits, and alternatives to the care provided
Extensive, confidential preoperative counseling to ascertain
preoperative consultation with the anesthesiologist.
Consultation, as needed, with the hospital ethics committee.

INFORMED REFUSAL AND THE
JEHOVAH’S WITNESS PATIENT

Founded in the late nineteenth century, the Jehovah’s Witness
community is governed by the Watchtower Society, which is-
sues doctrinal positions via its official journal, the Watchtower.
On July 1, 1943, an article in that journal established the famil-
iar Jehovah’s Witness prohibition against blood transfusions.
The biblical sources cited—Genesis 9:4, Leviticus 17:13–14,
and Acts 15:19–21—are understood by conventional Juda-
Christian theology as proscriptions against consuming the
blood of animals. Nevertheless, Jehovah’s Witnesses forbid
transfusion of whole blood or of any of its components:
packed red blood cells, platelets, and white blood cells. The penalty
for transgression is severe: eternal damnation and, more im-
mEDIATELY, social ostracism and “disfellowshipping” by other
Witnesses. In the June 15, 2004, edition of the Watchtower,
however, explicit clarifications were issued revealing that trans-
fusion of fractionated components of plasma, packed red blood
cells, platelets, and white blood cells were permissible and sub-
ject to the individual’s discretion.

The wrenching ethical quandary arises when a Jehovah’s
Witness patient asserts her autonomy to refuse transfusion,
thereby risking exsanguination during surgery or from med-
ical conditions such as dysfunctional uterine bleeding. Could
or should physician beneficence override a competent patient’s
refusal of treatment? When locked in conflict, which bioethical
principle prevails: autonomy or beneficence? In these instances,
it is also important for physicians to consider the concept of
good and well-being from the perspective of the patient. Physi-
cians often are in situations in which they cannot provide med-
cal beneficence, but that does not prevent them from assisting
in spiritual or emotional beneficence. In the case of a Jehovah’s
Witness, a physician may appeal to the principle of beneficence
while withholding treatment at the request of a competent
patient.

American courts have not reached consensus concerning the
withholding of blood products for Jehovah’s Witnesses, but
several dominant trends appear. Surgeons who choose to re-
spect the wishes of a competent Jehovah’s Witness patient to
refuse blood products in the face of imminent exsanguination are
not considered negligent, provided that the patient is not at risk of
dying from a wrongful death lawsuit. Likewise, courts generally endorse a patient’s right to refuse treat-
ment. However, when the patient has dependents who would
be otherwise abandoned, or in obstetric situations in which the
fetal well-being will be placed in jeopardy, courts have inter-
vened to order transfusions.

From an ethical perspective, a gynecologist contemplating a
surgical procedure for a Jehovah’s Witness should take the
following steps to ensure that the patient and surgical team
are prepared for the potential decision to withhold blood products:

■ Extensive, confidential preoperative counseling to ascertain
informed consent. Specifically, the surgeon should verify the
patient’s understanding and acceptance of Watchtower soci-
ety doctrine, understanding of the potential repercussions of
refusing transfusion, and the patient’s views of discordant
views of Jehovah’s Witnesses. This should be thoroughly documented
in the chart. In cases in which the patient’s decision-making
capacity may be in question, the physicians should request
additional professional input from a psychiatrist.

■ Consultation, as needed, with the hospital ethics committee.

■ Preoperative consultation with the anesthesiologist.

There are several prophylactic steps that can be taken to
avoid the likelihood of a transfusion. These include pre-
operative iron and/or recombinant erythropoietin therapy
and intraoperative use of vasopressor, volume expanders,
hypotensive anesthesia, hypothermia, and ligation of major
vessels.

ADVANCED PLANNING AND END-OF-LIFE DECISION MAKING

Policies and regulations regarding death and dying have been
set largely by the courts on a case-by-case basis when in-
tractable controversies have arisen with doctors, patients, pa-
tients’ families, or hospital administrators that must be re-
solved before a judge. The introduction of life-sustaining
technology—such as the respirator that can keep the human
body functioning biologically even in cases when the prospect
of a return to normalcy is unlikely—has introduced a host of
dilemmas and questions about medical decisions at the end
of life. When terminally ill patients, their families, and their
health care teams all agree on the use and withholding of treat-
ment at the end of life, there is usually no overt dilemma, except
the question of the prudent use of scarce resources. When there
is agreement among all parties, there is seldom a need to go to
court, and courts discourage bringing these cases before them.

When there is disagreement among the patient, the patient’s
family, the physician or team of physicians, and/or the hospi-
tal, the stage is set for conflict that often must be decided by
an arbitrator. The courts have traditionally provided guidance
in these types of cases. However, these rulings often are not
universal and are influenced by contemporary public attitudes.

Although not every case and its outcome are comparable, the
general consensus is that the patient’s autonomous choices are
binding and that the ultimate goal of medicine is not to preserve
life at any cost, but to relieve pain and suffering in keeping with
the patient’s wishes.

Since the development of these life-sustaining interventions,
there have been several landmark cases: Karen Ann Quinlan,
Nancy Cruzan, and Terri Schiavo. Each of these cases rep-
resents a different scenario in which physicians and family
members struggle to make difficult decisions in surrogate for
their loved one. The situation of Karen Ann Quinlan was an
example of the type of disagreement that can occur between
a patient’s family and the providing health care institution.
Karen Ann Quinlan was a 21-year-old woman who had been
be...
in a prolonged coma and sustained on a respirator. When the
likelihood of recovery disappeared, her family’s request to re-
move the respirator was challenged by the hospital. The courts
ultimately ordered the removal of the respirator, and she died
10 years later.

In the case of Nancy Cruzan, a difficult decision had to be
made when the wishes of the patient were unknown. Nancy
Cruzan suffered a myocardial infarction resulting in se-
vere cerebral cortex injury leaving only minimal brain stem
function intact. At the time of this initial event, Schiavo did
not have a living will or written documentation of her medical
care wishes. Her husband and parents worked together to care
for her with the hope that she would recover all or part of her
cognitive functions, having a feeding tube inserted and placing
her in a skilled nursing facility. Eight years later, Terri’s husband
came to the conclusion that her status had not and would not
improve. Stating that his wife had previously expressed her
wishes to not live under such circumstances, he appealed to
the court to take on the role of the ward’s surrogate to re-
move the feeding tube and allow her to die. A court order to
remove the feeding tube in April 2001 was immediately fol-
towed by an appeal by her parents claiming that they had evi-
dence that Schiavo would want to live. Furthermore, they be-
lieved that novel medical therapies would be able to improve
Schiavo’s condition and restore some of her ability to function.
They based this on the belief that Schiavo was conscious and
responsive and, given the ability to speak for herself, would
express her desire to live.

In response to this new information, the court reversed its
inguad clinic. In 1990, Terri Schiavo suffered a myocardial infarction resulting in se-
vere cerebral cortex injury leaving only minimal brain stem
function intact. At the time of this initial event, Schiavo did
not have a living will or written documentation of her medical
care wishes. Her husband and parents worked together to care
for her with the hope that she would recover all or part of her
cognitive functions, having a feeding tube inserted and placing
her in a skilled nursing facility. Eight years later, Terri’s husband
came to the conclusion that her status had not and would not
improve. Stating that his wife had previously expressed her
wishes to not live under such circumstances, he appealed to
the court to take on the role of the ward’s surrogate to re-
move the feeding tube and allow her to die. A court order to
remove the feeding tube in April 2001 was immediately fol-
towed by an appeal by her parents claiming that they had evi-
dence that Schiavo would want to live. Furthermore, they be-
lieved that novel medical therapies would be able to improve
Schiavo’s condition and restore some of her ability to function.

ETHELICAL CHALLENGES SPECIFIC TO GYNECOLOGIC CARE

Several issues specific to the care of women and their re-
productive health are ethical dilemmas unique to gynecology.
These include abortion, examination under anesthesia before
surgery, and assisted reproductive technologies. In each case,
the nuances of addressing the health care issues of women
require additional consideration to ethical topics mentioned
above.

Abortion

The termination of pregnancy is encountered in a variety of
settings in obstetrics and gynecology. A patient may seek an
abortion for a broad spectrum of circumstances, ranging from
an unintended and undesired pregnancy (failure or nonuse of
birth control, sexual assault, failure of emergency contracep-
tion), severe fetal anomalies (aneuploidy, congenital abnormal-
ites incompatible with life), or threatened maternal health (pre-
eclampsia, severe hyperemesis gravidarum, cardiomyopathy).
Because of the many diverse clinical scenarios for the termina-
tion of a pregnancy, it benefits physicians to be aware of the
issues surrounding abortion, whether or not they have personal
objections to the procedure.

The core ethical and legal issues surrounding abortion in-
clude the right of the woman to control her own body and
reproduction, the moral and legal status of the fetus, the rights
and interests of the fetus to be protected from harm, and the
degree to which outside parties such as national and state
governments have authority in the protection or restriction of
these rights. These issues tend to divide the general public and

who are terminally ill and suddenly incapacitated. These are
referred to as advanced directives, and they include a vari-
ety of different mechanisms whereby a patient can direct his
medical care in the case of his sudden or gradual decline in
decisional capacity. The different forms of advanced directives
include:

- Durable power of attorney for health care—This is a
  legal document in which a patient designates a specific in-
dividual to make health care decisions in the setting of loss
of decisional capacity.

- Living will—This is a legal document in which the pa-
tient describes his/her treatment preferences in the setting
of decisional capacity, such as the continuation of nutrition, hydration, or ventilator support.

- Health care proxy (attorney-in-fact for health care)—
This is the individual designated by the patient to make
surrogate decisions in the case of loss of decision-making
capacity.

- Do not resuscitate (DNR)—This is one type of advanced
directive that specifically directs the withholding of lifesav-
ing procedures in the case of cardiopulmonary arrest, such
as cardiopulmonary resuscitation and dehilation.

Gynecologists should familiarize themselves with different
forms of advance directives and the applicable laws. They
should also discuss these issues with their patients and their
families to ensure that the best arrangement can be made. The
ideal time to do this is preferably before such decisions are
actually needed for implementation, such as before significant
illness or surgery.
government into two polarized camps: prolife or prochoice. Because of the two extremes of positions that exist in the debate about abortion, very little headway has been made to find a common ground since the beginning of abortion law in the United States.

The two major legal cases that have shaped most abortion law in the United States in the past century are Roe v. Wade and Planned Parenthood v. Casey. Although these deicides do not encompass all laws pertaining to abortion, they are the two most well known and influential. In 1973, Roe v. Wade recognized the following rights: the fundamental right of privacy, protection of an individual’s bodily integrity, and protection of an individual’s decisional autonomy. The rights outlined in Roe v. Wade were weighed against the interests of the state in terms of the protection of a potential human life and the health of the mother. However, Roe v. Wade did not address questions such as the moral or legal status of the fetus. Under these three rights, the Supreme Court interpreted the Constitution as granting significant protections to an individual’s right not to have a child. As such, a woman’s choice to terminate a pregnancy was given to her and not to the government. At the same time, the Supreme Court recognized the states’ interests in protecting both women’s health and the potential life of the fetus, giving the individual states the authority to enact laws imposing strict safeguards and even restricting procedures.

Roe v. Wade also accomplished several other legal milestones. It set out to limit states’ restrictions on a woman’s right to terminate a pregnancy by instituting a “strict scrutiny standard.” By this standard, individual states that proposed laws such as mandatory husband consent requirements and mandatory waiting periods were determined to be unconstitutional. In addition, Roe v. Wade established a trimester framework for evaluating the extent of the state’s interests in abortion law. During the first trimester, the woman’s interests had precedence above the interests of the state to protect the potential life. During the second trimester, a woman’s privacy interests and the state’s interest in the protection of the woman’s life and the potential life of the fetus were balanced. After the time of viability, the state’s interest in protecting the potential life had priority unless the life of the woman is at stake. Minors were also addressed under the Roe framework. Under Roe v. Wade, minors were required to inform or involve their parent or guardian in the decision to terminate the pregnancy. In cases when this was not possible, either because of fear of the consequences of disclosure or an unavailable guardian, minors were required to obtain a waiver of parental involvement mandate from the court, also known as a judicial bypass. Finally, Roe v. Wade placed federal and state limitations on the use of public funding of abortions for Medicaid patients.

Planned Parenthood v. Casey (1992) reaffirmed the central tenets of Roe v. Wade but changed the law significantly by removing the trimester framework based on the notion that it did not adequately recognize the state’s interest in the potential life before viability. Under Casey, the state’s interests take priority from the outset of pregnancy, not just during later gestations, and, as such, states were permitted to make laws to restrict abortion in the process of protecting their interests. These individual state-by-state laws were constitutional only if they met the “undue burden” standard. Under this, the state’s restrictions could not place an undue burden on the woman to make a decision to terminate a pregnancy, such as a restriction that has the purpose or effect of placing a substantial obstacle in the path of a woman seeking an abortion of a nonviable fetus. Many states have interpreted “undue burden” in different ways, creating restrictions—such as increased parental involvement, mandatory waiting periods, and counseling biased toward continuing the pregnancy—that are deemed constitutional.

Abortion is one of the few medical procedures from which physicians may opt out in nonemergent situations because of ethical or religious objections. Under this situation, legislatures have recognized that physicians may legally refuse to provide abortion services. “Conscience” or “refusal” clauses make abortion services one of the few areas in which a physician legally may opt out of performing a medically indicated procedure because of personal objections; however, the scope of such rights to opt out differs from state to state. Legally, under the protections of conscientious objection, no physician is required to do a procedure if it is in conflict with his or her ethical, moral, or religious beliefs. This applies only in situations in which the patient’s life is not at stake. In cases when the life of the woman is threatened by the ongoing pregnancy and no other providers are immediately available, a physician cannot refuse to treat the woman.

The statutes of conscientious objection do not exempt physicians from making a responsible, truthful, and timely referral to another practitioner or health care facility that provides the service or from rendering care in a life-threatening emergency when an alternate health care provider is not available. Failure to provide an appropriate referral can constitute malpractice (i.e., fall below the legal standard of care) and also may violate ethical standards of care. Many states have patient abandonment laws that put specific burdens on physicians to refer or transfer care of patients before terminating a relationship. At minimum, the physician is expected to guide the patient to valid resources to find an abortion provider.

The most recent debates about abortion pertain to the issues of partial birth abortion and RU-486. Partial birth abortion is a nonmedical term sometimes referring to a particular abortion procedure known as intact dilation and extraction (intact D&E) or D&E—which is a variant of the more common procedure known as dilation and evacuation (D&E)—and including procedures that would be used for terminations in the early second trimester, beginning at 13 weeks of gestation. Many professional organizations for women’s health have rebuked the validity of the partial birth bans. Legislation addressing partial birth abortion has been described by ACOG as “inappropriate, ill advised, and dangerous” because “intact D&E may be the best or most appropriate procedure in a particular circumstance to save the life or preserve the health of a woman, and only the doctor, in consultation with the patient, based upon the woman’s particular circumstances, can make this decision.” Arguments against partial birth abortion have been criticized for being simply a rhetorical strategy to place greater restrictions on the present abortion statutes. To date, all proposed bans on partial birth abortion have been deemed unconstitutional because it does not make exceptions for the health of the woman. The issue is still in question as an appeal to these rulings is expected.

A second area of controversy addresses new agents that facilitate access to abortion. In 2000, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved mifepristone, also known as RU-486, for pregnancy termination. RU-486 had been established as a safe method of pregnancy termination in Europe for several years before it was marketed in the United States. However, the controversy that surrounded the introduction of this country by several years. Concerns about increased access and ease to abortion services fueled much of the debate. Despite this, RU-486 has been accepted as a safe
and effective option to women considering termination of a pregnancy.

CONCLUSION

This chapter has presented a sample of the issues pertinent to the practice of gynecology. As a field that combines the challenges of medicine, surgery, and the complex issues specific to the care of women and their reproductive health, there are several other important ethical aspects that have not been addressed here. In addition, innovative technologies and therapeutic procedures present new dilemmas to the practicing physician on a regular basis. Physicians have many resources with which to approach some of the difficult questions that may arise in their own practices. Institution or individual practice ethics committees, oversight committees, and ethics consult services are available for multidisciplinary and peer review of challenging ethical cases. Physicians at all levels of practice should feel confident to turn to these mechanisms for guidance in the case of difficult ethical situations.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Informed consent is a mechanism whereby the patient’s autonomy is respected.
- Physicians are responsible for maintaining medical and surgical competence.
- The confidentiality of the patient should be protected. Only in special circumstances can it be overridden.
- Physicians should be familiar with the different forms of advance directives and discuss end-of-life decision making with their patients.
- Gynecologists should be aware that several issues specific to the care of women and their reproductive health present ethical dilemmas that are often unique to gynecology.

Bibliography


Grotts LO. Deciding life and death in the courtroom. JAMA 1997;276:1323.


CHAPTER 3 ■ PSYCHOLOGICAL ASPECTS OF PELVIC SURGERY

BETTY RUTH SPEIR

DEFINITIONS

Anxiety—A feeling of apprehension, uncertainty, and fear without apparent stimulus and associated with physiological changes (tachycardia, sweating, tremor, etc.).

Grief—The normal emotional response to an external and consciously recognized loss; it is self-limited, gradually subsiding within a reasonable time.

Insanity—Mental derangement or disorder. The term is a social and legal rather than medical one, and indicates a condition that renders the affected person unfit to enjoy liberty of action because of the unreliability of his behavior with concomitant danger to himself and others.

Regression—A return to a former or earlier state; a subsidence of symptoms or of a disease process; the turning backward of the libido to an early fixation at infantile levels because of inability to function in terms of reality.

PSYCHOLOGICAL ASPECTS OF PELVIC SURGERY

Neuroscientific research over the past decade continues to validate the oneness of the psyche and soma. Gynecological surgery does not simply alter the soma, but temporarily and sometimes permanently alters the psyche of the patient.

The modern gynecologist needs to be more than a skilled technician and must be willing and able to identify the potential psychological effects of the surgery performed and be prepared with the knowledge and skills to address these effects with the patient.

The technological revolution has presented today's surgeon with a vast array of sophisticated equipment. In capable hands, miraculous surgical feats can be performed on a woman's body, but at what cost to her psychological self? The removal or reconstruction of diseased or dysfunctional anatomy may set off a chain reaction of parallel events in a woman's psyche.

For a surgeon, the gynecologic operation may be an ordinary event of usually simple dimension. For the patient, each procedure is a unique experience. Her sense of well-being and health may be threatened. She may lose control over her body for some indefinite period of time. She may perceive the planned procedure as temporarily or even permanently affecting her sexual identity.

As complicated procedures become routine, the surgeon risks losing perspective about the impact of surgery on the life of the individual woman. The patient who experiences ablative genital (or breast) surgery is strongly influenced by her emotions. These vary in degree but are usually cumulative. As the patient passes through the presurgical, surgical, and postsurgical experiences, she may be stressed beyond her capacity to compensate. If help is not available to facilitate emotional healing and rehabilitation, permanent psychological damage may result.

The majority of women do heal and take up their lives, raise their children, work at their jobs, and relate well to their husbands or lovers. For them, the healing interval is relatively quick, and the stress is modest. Do not underestimate what can be learned from this segment of psychologically healthy women patients. In the 1940s, Abraham Maslow studied people with exceptional mental health to develop his hierarchy of needs theory. He discovered that these people's potential had never been weakened by negative thinking, destructive outlook, or destructive self-image. "The rest of us," he declared, "exist at a lower level because someone or thing has implanted notions of limitations."

Once you become cognizant of the success statistics in your own patient population, you may discover why most women recover after gynecologic surgery to zestfully reembrace life, whereas others begin to slowly turn away from its possibilities.

It will never be enough for a surgeon to be a trained mechanic, able only to diagnose and repair. He or she must also be prepared to predict, recognize, and begin treatment of the psychological consequences of gynecologic disorders. This chapter is designed to help surgeons and other physicians better understand the female perspective and to use that knowledge to facilitate multidimensional healing.

ANKH

The ankh cross, Egyptian emblem of generation, symbol for life and soul and eternity, is a mark universally designated to depict feminality (Fig. 3.2). By using this hieroglyph, modern scientists continue an ancient tradition of respect and reverence for women. Within the inner sanctum of every woman's mind lie symbols that are powerful and personal. These feminine identity markers are guarded and guided by her instincts, and no surgeon can successfully maneuver in this labyrinth of psychological and psychosexual emotion and cause no harm unless the female patient acts as a guide.

Egyptian writings from 2,000 years ago in the Kahan Papyrus depict the uterus as having an important and powerful effect on mental life, and current research tends to agree with the ancient scribes. The uterus has great symbolic value for many modern women, too. Beginning with the rite of passage called menstruation, a strong invisible bond is formed between a woman and her body. Her biological clock has been set. For the next 40 years or so, she will be reminded each month that...
she is a woman, and menstruation is regarded by many as palpable proof of their femininity.

Others believe that menstruation is part of a natural cleansing cycle that purges the body of poisons that accumulate during the month. They know from experience that the premenstrual symptoms of edema, bloating, headaches, and emotional tension will be washed away in the tide of their monthly flow.

For some, the rhythm of the menstrual cycle is used as a way to time and order their lives. Like the phases of the moon, this cycle bestows a sense of routine, regularity, and predictability that has emotional significance. With the onset of menstruation, a woman is forever changed. Surgical removal of any of the reproductive organs will change her again, but how?

The effect of a woman’s menstrual cycle on many medical conditions is well documented. Medical suppression of ovulation is commonly used as a way to evaluate and treat such chronic conditions as migraine headache, epilepsy, asthma, rheumatoid arthritis, irritable bowel syndrome, and diabetes. Research at the National Institutes of Health and other leading institutions has shown “how nerves, molecules and hormones connect the brain and immune system, how the immune system signals the brain and affects our emotions, and documents how our brain can signal the immune system, making us more vulnerable to illnesses.” What we have known intuitively is now understood scientifically. Hormones secreted during a woman’s menstrual cycle affect her mood. Could the decline of these hormones during the natural aging process contribute to dementia? The future is alive with fascinating neuroscientific and neuroimmunomodulation elucidation, but today’s woman is backlit by the skepticism of some scientists. Her concerns about her body and the way it will work after surgery are immediate and quite often heartrending.

A woman about to undergo a hysterectomy might wonder if her lover will be able to detect the absence of her uterus. After the surgery, will she be thought of as less of a woman? Will her partner abandon her for someone who is still complete, either in the sense of being able to offer the possibility of a child or complete in the sense of having experienced no unnatural surgical transformations?

Will orgasm be as pleasurable for her after the surgery? For many women, the uterus has symbolic significance as a sexual organ. The uterus contracts during orgasm. Some women perceive this as most pleasurable. If the patient believes the uterus is essential to sexual response, then, in fact, it often becomes so, and women with this mind-set may become sexually dysfunctional when it is removed.

Once the procedure is accomplished, will she still look and sound like a woman, or will she become noticeably more masculine? For others, the uterus is closely tied to feelings of attractiveness and sexual desirability. To a few women, removal of the uterus or ovaries or both constitutes a desexualizing, a permanent destruction of female identity and function. Sadly, certain members of the medical community as well as the feminist community perpetuate this notion and increase the attendant fear when they refer to women who must have their ovaries removed as castrates.

Some women become distressed when they learn they must deal with the certainty of absolute sterility. For those who choose motherhood, the uterus, ovaries, breasts, and vagina work in harmony with other factors to attract a necessary mate and get down to the business of creating new life. These organs become vital coconspirators in the sexual and reproductive aspects of a woman’s life. Impending loss of these physical structures because of disease or dysfunction sometimes creates deep anger that must be resolved before surgery is attempted. Many women who have all the children they want and who do not wish to get pregnant again are still sometimes disturbed by the finality of the decision. The gynecologist should assure these
maternal women that, although they will no longer be able to conceive a child, the powerful urge to create will never leave them. In time, they will learn to direct this primal energy to other areas of their lives and be immensely satisfied with the results. Studies such as the ENDOW Study: Ethnicity, Needs and Decisions of Women—a 5-year, three-phase, multicenter collaboration—are focusing on many of these issues and will help the gynecologists better understand their patients.

Today’s modern woman, for the most part, is an avid information seeker. She surfs the Internet, buys the latest books, reads magazine articles, and conducts in-depth interviews with peers who have experienced similar gynecologic problems. A certain proportion of the harvested material is useful to her and perhaps even illuminating for the physician, but unfortunately, some of the sources are inherently flawed, prejudicial, illogical, or without scientific basis. It is the physician’s responsibility to separate the grains of truth from the chaff. All the information she has gathered represents her attempt to prepare herself psychologically for the ordeal ahead, and she must never be condemned or made to feel small for trying to protect herself. For the gynecologist, it is not necessary to change a patient’s basic attitude or feelings. It is, however, vital to acknowledge them. The right information, reassurance, and support usually quickly modify many negative factors and lead to a healthier attitude and understanding of the surgical process. It is crucial that the patient be allowed to vent her anxiety and speak of her fears.

COMMUNICATION

Patients in General

Diplomats the world over understand the significance of effective communication. Indeed, the prospect for world peace depends on their ability to interact efficiently. A female patient’s psychological hearing before, during, and after the gynecologic procedure can depend on the communication techniques used by her physician. You must establish rapport, speak of the real and present danger to her health, and then elaborate on your plans to protect her.

Whenever possible, provide pleasant surroundings where you and your patient can comfortably hold a private conversation. Push all other thoughts out of your mind. These few minutes belong exclusively to her, and the quality of the time you spend actively communicating will pay healthy dividends for you both.

Whether explaining the simplicity of a needle-directed breast biopsy or the intricacies of hysterectomy, you must be able to highlight the technical details of the procedure and its postsurgical realities in a nonthreatening but utterly truthful manner. Begin the presentation using simple but thorough explanations and examples of the procedures. Your patient will let you know how much information she can or wishes to process by the questions she asks.

Your patient needs confidence in your technical ability, and to know that her problem is being taken seriously and that you are qualified to competently help her cope with all of the ramifications of this new experience.

Dealing with the patient’s feelings usually is not difficult if the surgeon accepts the viewpoint that many of the patient’s emotions are part of her new experience. To the physician, the presurgical tension is predictable, familiar, transient, and simply comes with the territory, but to each new patient, the presurgical tension is predictable, familiar, transient, and perhaps even illuminating for the physician, but unfortunately, some of the sources are inherently flawed, prejudicial, illogical, or without scientific basis. It is the physician’s responsibility to separate the grains of truth from the chaff. All the information she has gathered represents her attempt to prepare herself psychologically for the ordeal ahead, and she must never be condemned or made to feel small for trying to protect herself. For the gynecologist, it is not necessary to change a patient’s basic attitude or feelings. It is, however, vital to acknowledge them. The right information, reassurance, and support usually quickly modify many negative factors and lead to a healthier attitude and understanding of the surgical process. It is crucial that the patient be allowed to vent her anxiety and speak of her fears.

To interpret the patient’s true feelings, simply listen to her. Listening well is both an art and a skill, and the surgeon who cares about the patient’s complete health as well as her quick recovery works diligently to hone a sharp edge on this valuable tool. Listen, and you will hear the woman give a name to her most profound doubts and fears. Repeat her words so that you are absolutely certain you understand what she said and is absolutely assured that you are listening to her.

Begin the communication process by finding out what the patient perceives will be done to her body and why the procedure is necessary. Find out what she believes the consequences of the surgery will be. How does she think the surgery will affect her life? As she discusses the implications of her decision, her knowledge, fears, and biases emerge. At this point, you should be able to supplement the patient’s perspective with appropriate explanations about anatomy, physiology, and pathology. After this, it is time to describe in detail the usual preoperative, operative, and postoperative routines. Address the patient’s questions and fears in as many ways as it takes for her to become confident that she understands what is about to happen to her.

Carefully explain what you are going to do to help her. If she wants to know, or needs to know, describe the common physical sensations, bandages, incisions, catheters, tubing, and medications that are associated with her particular procedure. Define the patient’s role in her own convalescence and recovery. Give her a general timetable for how long she will feel discomfort, how long she will have to use pain medication, when she will be ambulatory, and finally, when she will be discharged from the hospital or outpatient center.

Relate the most common complications that might occur as the result of her surgery. Injuries that might affect the quality of her life, even temporarily, should never come as a postsurgical surprise, nor should they be glossed over during the signing of the consent forms. Iatrogenic injury remains the most common cause of lower urinary tract trauma. An understanding of the prevention, recognition, and treatment of urologic complications is important for every surgeon performing major pelvic surgery. Injury to a woman’s genitourinary system may take 10 to 20 years to develop full-blown sequelae, about the same timeline as from multiple childbirths, but it remains a possibility. Physicians, however, disagree on whether to tell the patient that urinary incontinence after hysterectomy because of slippage to the pelvic nerves or pelvic supportive structures could be a long-term adverse effect. Only 4% of the hysterectomies performed are for relief from symptoms of incontinence.

Complications such as the formation of adhesions may occur in as many as 53% of patients after gynecologic surgery. These adhesions can become a critical issue from a standpoint of reproductive potential. Their presence is also strongly associated with pelvic pain, abnormal bowel function, and small bowel obstruction.

The mentally competent patient has a moral, legal, and ethical right to make an intelligent informed decision and can only do it if she is privy to all of the available facts concerning her situation. It is essential that you involve her in the decision-making processes, because the more committed she is to the proposed treatment, the more involved she will become in her own preparation and rehabilitation. This point is supported by the findings of the ENDOW Study.

The art of touching, the therapeutic laying on of the hands, is important. Being lonely, frightened, and sick is a reason for the patient to be touched by her physician, especially if she seems particularly overwhelmed by her situation. To hold the patient’s hand while talking to her or touch her shoul-

der is therapeutic. Even a comforting hug is appropriate if it exes the circumstances and the patient reaches out to you.
Before fetal monitoring, quality of labor was evaluated by setting at the patient’s bedside with the physician’s hand on her abdomen to feel uterine contractions. Often, the presence of the physician and a warm hand on her abdomen made the patient relax, rest, and become calmer during active labor. Cancer patients, especially, on hearing bad news, need immediate human-to-human contact to stay grounded enough to face that terrible moment. The professional boundaries of roles, time, place and space, gifts and services, chaperoned examinations, physical contact, money and formal language were never intended to be an impermeable membrane separating a doctor’s ability to administer human kindness. A healer’s touch can often comfort a distressed patient when words are inadequate.

A patient’s family is a vital part of her support system and can be a potent ally, or not, to the health care team. If your patient requests that family members be present during her consultation, allow it, but speak directly to her whenever possible.

Once the initial presurgical discussions are complete, your patient may need some time to digest all the new information she has received. After assimilation, allow her to contact you for clarification or to ask more questions. You should be available to her. You should instruct your personnel to facilitate her access to you. Too often, office personnel believe their role is to shield the physician from patients rather than to facilitate meaningful contact.

Patients from Other Cultures

Patients from other cultures abound in the United States and their numbers are increasing dramatically. These patients in many cases are often situated in dense clusters. Physicians in these areas have either multilingual assistants or have assistants who are able to act as interpreters. However, no matter where your practice is located, chances are that at some point during your career as a physician, an individual from another culture will need your help.

Mull makes the following suggestions for communicating effectively with a person whose language you do not speak and whose culture is foreign to you. Make sure that your office staff are courteous and respectful. Show the genuine concern you feel. Be friendly and helpful to build rapport and develop a repertoire of knowledge. Familiarize yourself with the general principles of their traditional medicine. Whenever possible, have an interpreter present. Learn a few key phrases from their language, and use these for initial greeting and during examinations. Electronic linguistic assistants, such as the Franklin language, and use these for initial greeting and during examinations. Electronic linguistic assistants, such as the Franklin

■ Fear of blood loss
■ Fear of cold
■ Tradition of male dominance
■ Conservatism in sexual matters relative to teenage girls
■ Poorly developed concept of preventive medicine
■ Intolerance of side effects from medication
■ Expectation of expeditious wellness
■ Reluctance to discuss emotions with people who are not family members

Matters of Life and Death, Daniel Bruns writes, “Even the strongest person can be shaken by the horrors of some medical cues. Beyond this, life anxiety is even more common in persons with pre-existing emotional difficulties or characterological disorders. These persons may go through life like eggshells, intact and functioning, but with psychological fragility. When faced with an extreme life stressor, such a person may simply shatter.” How will you, as the physician, recognize the vulnerable?

Rosko researched 13 factors related to poor prognosis for excellent mental health after hysterectomy. The following factors begin to define the patient who might react negatively to genital surgical stress:

1. Gender identity
2. Previous adverse reactions to stress

Psychological Aspects of Pelvic Surgery

Masler and Devanssa said there is an emotional response to any physical assault on the body. The magnitude of the response is expected to be proportional to the degree of emotional investment one has in the part of the body under siege. Among women, anatomic entities most vulnerable to this emotional reaction are the face, hair, breasts, genitalia, and abdominal wall.

Second only to cesarian birth, hysterectomy is the most frequently performed major surgical procedure done on reproductive-aged women. More than 600,000 women a year have a hysterectomy in the United States. Newer minimally invasive procedures have shortened hospital stays and have lessened visible disfigurement of the body. The majority recovery quickly from the procedure and enjoy the new freedom that comes to an individual when a chronic health problem has been solved. Your patients, however, are not always older, wiser women, and they do not always recover quickly. If you know the signs to look for, you will be able to help that patient who is having a harder time adjusting to pelvic surgery, especially if it was a radical, life-threatening, or unexpected event.

In his book, Matters of Life and Death, Daniel Bruns writes, “Even the strongest person can be shaken by the horrors of some medical cues. Beyond this, life anxiety is even more common in persons with pre-existing emotional difficulties or characterological disorders. These persons may go through life like eggshells, intact and functioning, but with psychological fragility. When faced with an extreme life stressor, such a person may simply shatter.” How will you, as the physician, recognize the vulnerable?

Rosko researched 13 factors related to poor prognosis for excellent mental health after hysterectomy. The following factors begin to define the patient who might react negatively to genital surgical stress:

1. Gender identity
2. Previous adverse reactions to stress
3. Previous depressive episodes
4. Family history of mental illness
5. History of multiple physical symptoms, especially lower back pain
6. Numerous hospitalizations or surgeries
7. Age less than 35 years at time of hysterectomy
8. Desire for a child or more children
9. Fear of loss of libido
10. Significant other's negative attitude toward procedure
11. Marital dissatisfaction or instability
12. Cultural or religious disapproval
13. Lack of vocation or hobbies

Barnes and Tinkham's research also indicates that patients tend to react to current stress in much the same way as they reacted to past crises and personal losses. Well-established patterns of behavior repeat themselves. By taking a patient's history, the surgeon can be forewarned about which patients are likely to have the most difficult time handling the emotional aspects of gynecologic surgery. Equipped with this information, the surgeon can prepare to offer extra support in the form of reassurance, educational information, and, if indicated or requested, the names of psychotherapists who are trained to deal with women's health issues.

### COMMON EMOTIONAL RESPONSES TO SURGERY

#### Insecurity

Giving up control of one's body, even temporarily, is uncomfortable for all of us, but it is terrifying for people who feel generally insecure. One of the most common defense mechanisms against feelings of insecurity is to institute rigid controls over all aspects of life. These patients may have no control over getting sick. They will have little if any control during the surgical procedures. The posturgical setting will be a hospital room where the staff tells the patient when to awake, take medicine, eat, bathe, walk, have visitors, and get blood drawn. The health care workers will probe such personal matters as urination, defecation, and passage of flatus. Anxiety, anger, and feelings of being assaulted combine with insecurity can produce an unhappy, fearful, and sometimes raging patient.

These feelings are greatly diminished when the patient believes the surgery will improve the quality of her life. There will eventually be relief of pain, removal of cancers, an end to heavy bleeding, restoration of fertility, or some other positive result. She will be better than she was before the surgery. The transition to becoming this healthier person is made easier when she trusts and believes in her physician.

#### Anxiety or Fear

Anxiety or fear associated with surgery is essentially universal. Most common is fear of the unknown or of what the patient imagines she will be forced to endure during hospitalization. Factual information about the surgical and recovery process and competent care by a compassionate hospital staff help to diminish this fear. Surgeons should assume responsibility for the behavior of the hospital staff toward their patients. When a patient reports ill treatment by any of the health care providers, the physician should deal with the situation personally to decrease the probability of a future recurrence of the offensive or thoughtless behavior.

Patients may fear the loss of economic competence. A woman who has worked for many years may lose her sense of usefulness when disabled for some variable length of time. Whether she plays a major or minor role, the contribution she makes to her family’s economic stability will be important to her. Her identity and self-esteem derived from her job may also be threatened by the outcome of her surgery.

Fear of anesthesia is often a thinly disguised fear of dying as well as a fear of loss of control. It may be appropriate to confront the fear of dying directly so that the patient has the opportunity to express why she is afraid. Is the fear general or specific? Did a close relative suffer from the same affliction and die during or shortly after surgery? Does the patient have a strong intuitive feeling that something will go wrong? If so, ask her what you can do to modify the surgical situation. Determine whether the scheduled date of surgery or the particular hospital is significant. The fact that you consider her feelings an important issue and a normal part of the gynecologic disease process may be enough to calm her fears.

#### Regression and Dependency

In most people who are ill or who undergo surgery, regression to a more dependent state is fairly common. Dealing with a woman who is no longer self-sufficient or emotionally stable is difficult for the patient's family and friends. These members of her supporting cast are accustomed to her presurgical roles as wage earner, wife, mother, friend, cook, advisor, shopper, housekeeper, taxi driver, entertainer, and more. When she becomes ill and can no longer function to make their lives easier, family members and friends often become frustrated and angry. They may apply overt or subtle pressure to try to force the woman to exert herself and fulfill her usual roles. A change in roles is difficult, but often the illness teaches family and friends why this particular woman is valuable to them. Those who temporarily assume her normal duties or help her cope with the surgical experience, in many cases, discover strengths of hers of which they were previously unaware.

When the disease and prospect of surgery are new to the patient, all these factors, as well as a feeling of ill health, contribute to an emotional fragility that yields extremely labile emotions, including feelings of sadness, despondency, tearfulness, and irritability. The usual defense mechanisms are often temporarily weakened or destroyed. The woman is vulnerable to attack on all personal and professional fronts. She needs time with people she cares about, and she needs time alone to sort out her thoughts and emotions.

#### Grief

Grief is a normal, natural reaction to illness or loss of any kind and is essential to emotional healing. Recognizing the normal stages of grief allows the surgeon to help the female patient understand what is happening to her.

Denial is the first and most primitive emotional response to loss and can take many forms. The patient may demonstrate denial by not going to the doctor when she feels a lump in her breast or when she notices abnormal bleeding. She may pretend the symptoms do not exist or are a temporary nuisance. Not remembering instructions the physician gave her could...
Playing in her life.

particular surgical experience, look for the role grief might be of the realm of what would usually be anticipated during her If a female patient's behavior seems bizarre, excessive, or out patiend may feel fragments of several of them at the same time.

Integration does not mean the experience is forgotten, only

The memory causes sadness and regret, but no longer the dev-

experience of loss finally becomes an accepted part of her life.

be encouraged to ventilate by talking, to establish an enjoyable

toward the resolution of her grief. The depressed patient should

the depression is lifting and the patient is beginning to move

is discussed in specific detail later in this chapter.

is the second stage of grief. Depression comes in varying degrees to most people ex-

ing grief and is characterized by feelings of helplessness,

middlete-of-the-night insomnia, nightmares, loss of appetite or excessive eating, lethargy, difficulty making decisions, psychosomatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

Ask the patient if she has any of these symptoms. Post-
surgical depression is common. Depressed patients usually ad-
mit that the sad feelings are routine and occur daily. When prolonged, they indicate the patient has been unable to work through the grief process. Something emotional has yet to be resolved.

Rage turned inward often manifests as depression. When the patient is able to identify what she is angry about, to vent-

tilate the rage, the depression usually begins to lift. When she takes charge of her life again and makes decisions, even small ones, she begins to feel better, and feelings of helplessness, hopelessness, and worthlessness abate. However, when the de-
pressed patient becomes suicidal, stringent intervention must occur. The suicidal patient presents serious challenges and so is discussed in specific detail later in this chapter.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

somatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

nears, loss of appetite or excessive eating, lethargy, difficulty making decisions, psychosomatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

Ask the patient if she has any of these symptoms. Post-
surgical depression is common. Depressed patients usually ad-
mit that the sad feelings are routine and occur daily. When prolonged, they indicate the patient has been unable to work through the grief process. Something emotional has yet to be resolved.

Rage turned inward often manifests as depression. When the patient is able to identify what she is angry about, to vent-

tilate the rage, the depression usually begins to lift. When she takes charge of her life again and makes decisions, even small ones, she begins to feel better, and feelings of helplessness, hopelessness, and worthlessness abate. However, when the de-
pressed patient becomes suicidal, stringent intervention must occur. The suicidal patient presents serious challenges and so is discussed in specific detail later in this chapter.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

somatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

nears, loss of appetite or excessive eating, lethargy, difficulty making decisions, psychosomatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

Ask the patient if she has any of these symptoms. Post-
surgical depression is common. Depressed patients usually ad-
mit that the sad feelings are routine and occur daily. When prolonged, they indicate the patient has been unable to work through the grief process. Something emotional has yet to be resolved.

Rage turned inward often manifests as depression. When the patient is able to identify what she is angry about, to vent-

tilate the rage, the depression usually begins to lift. When she takes charge of her life again and makes decisions, even small ones, she begins to feel better, and feelings of helplessness, hopelessness, and worthlessness abate. However, when the de-
pressed patient becomes suicidal, stringent intervention must occur. The suicidal patient presents serious challenges and so is discussed in specific detail later in this chapter.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

somatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

nears, loss of appetite or excessive eating, lethargy, difficulty making decisions, psychosomatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

Ask the patient if she has any of these symptoms. Post-
surgical depression is common. Depressed patients usually ad-
mit that the sad feelings are routine and occur daily. When prolonged, they indicate the patient has been unable to work through the grief process. Something emotional has yet to be resolved.

Rage turned inward often manifests as depression. When the patient is able to identify what she is angry about, to vent-

tilate the rage, the depression usually begins to lift. When she takes charge of her life again and makes decisions, even small ones, she begins to feel better, and feelings of helplessness, hopelessness, and worthlessness abate. However, when the de-
pressed patient becomes suicidal, stringent intervention must occur. The suicidal patient presents serious challenges and so is discussed in specific detail later in this chapter.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

somatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

nears, loss of appetite or excessive eating, lethargy, difficulty making decisions, psychosomatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

Ask the patient if she has any of these symptoms. Post-
surgical depression is common. Depressed patients usually ad-
mit that the sad feelings are routine and occur daily. When prolonged, they indicate the patient has been unable to work through the grief process. Something emotional has yet to be resolved.

Rage turned inward often manifests as depression. When the patient is able to identify what she is angry about, to vent-

tilate the rage, the depression usually begins to lift. When she takes charge of her life again and makes decisions, even small ones, she begins to feel better, and feelings of helplessness, hopelessness, and worthlessness abate. However, when the de-
pressed patient becomes suicidal, stringent intervention must occur. The suicidal patient presents serious challenges and so is discussed in specific detail later in this chapter.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

somatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

nears, loss of appetite or excessive eating, lethargy, difficulty making decisions, psychosomatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

Ask the patient if she has any of these symptoms. Post-
surgical depression is common. Depressed patients usually ad-
mit that the sad feelings are routine and occur daily. When prolonged, they indicate the patient has been unable to work through the grief process. Something emotional has yet to be resolved.

Rage turned inward often manifests as depression. When the patient is able to identify what she is angry about, to vent-

tilate the rage, the depression usually begins to lift. When she takes charge of her life again and makes decisions, even small ones, she begins to feel better, and feelings of helplessness, hopelessness, and worthlessness abate. However, when the de-
pressed patient becomes suicidal, stringent intervention must occur. The suicidal patient presents serious challenges and so is discussed in specific detail later in this chapter.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

somatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

nears, loss of appetite or excessive eating, lethargy, difficulty making decisions, psychosomatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

Ask the patient if she has any of these symptoms. Post-
surgical depression is common. Depressed patients usually ad-
mit that the sad feelings are routine and occur daily. When prolonged, they indicate the patient has been unable to work through the grief process. Something emotional has yet to be resolved.

Rage turned inward often manifests as depression. When the patient is able to identify what she is angry about, to vent-

tilate the rage, the depression usually begins to lift. When she takes charge of her life again and makes decisions, even small ones, she begins to feel better, and feelings of helplessness, hopelessness, and worthlessness abate. However, when the de-
pressed patient becomes suicidal, stringent intervention must occur. The suicidal patient presents serious challenges and so is discussed in specific detail later in this chapter.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

somatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

nears, loss of appetite or excessive eating, lethargy, difficulty making decisions, psychosomatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

Ask the patient if she has any of these symptoms. Post-
surgical depression is common. Depressed patients usually ad-
mit that the sad feelings are routine and occur daily. When prolonged, they indicate the patient has been unable to work through the grief process. Something emotional has yet to be resolved.

Rage turned inward often manifests as depression. When the patient is able to identify what she is angry about, to vent-

tilate the rage, the depression usually begins to lift. When she takes charge of her life again and makes decisions, even small ones, she begins to feel better, and feelings of helplessness, hopelessness, and worthlessness abate. However, when the de-
pressed patient becomes suicidal, stringent intervention must occur. The suicidal patient presents serious challenges and so is discussed in specific detail later in this chapter.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

somatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.

The stage at which the patient ventilates her anger can be difficult for those providing care, but it should be accepted as healthy. The patient may go to extremes, writing letters to

nears, loss of appetite or excessive eating, lethargy, difficulty making decisions, psychosomatic symptoms, and fatigue unexplained by activity.
who might use their position of authority to hurt, not help, them.

The Ultimate Rape: What Every Woman Should Know about Hysterectomies and Ovarian Removal was inspired after the author underwent a hysterectomy. She suffered extreme physical and emotional trauma following the surgery, but when she reported this to her physicians, they advised her to go see a psychiatrist, because the symptoms were in her head. The book’s title is evidence of the rage she felt at their pronounce- ment. Now her voice is joined by others who believe that every woman has the right to be thoroughly informed about procedures and consequences before consenting to gynecologic mod-
odifications. And certain truths are the same.

In No More Hysterectomies, touted as the first living text-
book on the Web, the reader learns how the male-dominated medical profession and the insurance industry have sanctioned millions of unwarranted hysterectomies. One testimonial to the ideas presented in the book describes the current medical envi-
ronment as a “woman’s hormonal holocaust.”

The enlightening news is that interest generated by these sources and their legions of followers has had a positive and direct effect on women’s health research. Global studies are numerous and are concentrating on traditional as well as al-
ternative methods of treatment for menopause, hysterectomy, hormone replacement therapy, cancer, endometriosis, fibroids, and dementia. For the first time in the history of medical sci-
ence, ethnic research is being conducted on a large scale to de-
termine how women in various cultures and with variances in their physiology react to menopause, gynecologic surgery, hor-

eone therapy, and sexual function. The ENDO Study has found ethnic/racial differences in women’s perceptions of hys-
terectomy and their determinants in decision making regarding elective surgery. Negative connotations were found to be more prevalent among African American women, thus indicating a need for added support and information preoperatively. Future generations of women will reap the benefits from this research, but the overwhelming aura that prevails in today’s gynecologic patient is one of confusion.

After reading just a sampling of the lay literature, some women feel that surgical removal of their female organs and commencement of hormonal therapy constitutes an unnatural, chemotherapy-like assault on their physical bodies. It is the task of the physician to admit into evidence the medical facts necessary to correct any gross misconceptions that could affect patient care. Sometimes it may seem as if the patient, armed with advice about natural remedies for her severe pelvic pain, heavy bleeding, or hot flashes, wants to drag you with her back into the Dark Ages. Be patient and also prepared, if necessary, to explain the medically sound benefits of life lived outside the cave.

Be compassionate. No matter how routine the job becomes, compassion is a vital requisite to becoming an exceptional com-
municator and healer. Empathy often follows experience, and those times when you are able to make a noticeably positive difference in your patient’s life are inestimational. To try the one new thing that might help many patients in the future, it is necessary to earn the trust of a single patient in the present. A few days are gone when a doctor was considered omnipo-
tent, when he, and rarely, she, received a hock of ham for the birth of a child, or had to tell a woman that she would have to live with the eventual hump on her back because it was a natural process of aging. Patients know about osteoporosis and its consequences before they even become aware of their physiologic needs. Even those that point to a devastating diagnosis, but never lie. In 1981, 90% of physicians surveyed in a single large urban hospital stated that they withheld the diagnosis of cancer from their patients. Today, the position had been totally reversed, with 97% reporting that they reveal the true diagnosis of cancer.

Doctors, however, are not the only members of the team with ethical considerations. Patients also have the responsibil-
ity to tell the physician the truth relative to their symptoms, medications, allergies, past medical histories, and to relate any significant traumas or family history that could bear on their current situations. Question your patient specifically about stressful life events. Did she respond to these in a positive or negative way? Of all inquiries, this is the most important indicator of how the patient will respond to any current stress. Once the physician knows the answer, psychological preparation for diagnosis or surgery can begin in earnest.

Researchers in the United Kingdom have compiled data from multiple trial studies confirming that psychological prepa-
ration for surgery is effective. The general hypothesis was that communication and counseling are important determinants of numerous factors, including the following:

• Accuracy of the diagnosis
• Effectiveness of disease management
• Disease or problem prevention
• Patient satisfaction
• Adherence to treatment
• Psychological well-being
• Patient understanding of procedures
• Professional satisfaction and levels of stress

Information about each of these parameters was compiled, and considerable evidence existed to support all the hypotheses. In review, Davis and Johnston reported that psychological prepa-
ration is effective in reducing negative effect, pain, medication, length of hospital stay, and in improving behavioral recovery and physiologic functioning.

Surgical Whispers

The surgeon should make it a point to be with the patient while anesthesia is administered. Knowing that you are there with her from the beginning will help her feel safe. At the end of each surgical procedure, whisper into your patient’s ear, “You’re going to be well very soon.” You may be surprised to find she needs less pain medication and recovers quicker than patients without the benefit of this positive prophecy, because the mind itself is a powerful force, as evidenced by neuroscientific re-
search. Dr. Esther M. Sternberg, director of integrative neural immune program and chief of the section on neuroendocrine immunology and behavior at the National Institute of Mental Health and National Institutes of Health, concludes that stress reduction endogenous opiates are produced that decrease pain. These come from the same cells in the hypothalamus that make the stress hormone CRH. “Understanding these brain-immune
connections will help the surgeon understand how his support and encouragement can decrease the patient’s pain. Youngs and colleagues believe the surgeon or a familiar associate also should be present immediately after surgery to reassure the pa-
tient, orient her to her surroundings, and make certain she has adequate pain relief. Even if the patient appears unresponsive during the immediate postoperative phase, a familiar voice and reassuring word can be immensely beneficial.

Immediate Postoperative Care

Hospital stays are much shorter. Some outpatient hysterectomies are being performed. These factors are having a pos-
tive psychological effect on patients. A patient knows that she is getting well when she no longer requires needles and is able to ambulate and urinate without assistance. It has long been known that early ambulation significantly reduces morbidity as well as the incidence of phlebitis and pneumonia. As long as intravenous therapy and urethral catheterization are maintained, the patient remains immobile and consequently at higher risk for venous stasis, ileus, and pulmonary complications. The inci-
dence of pulmonary embolus in the postoperative hysterectomy patient has decreased in the past decades with shortened stay and early ambulation.

Crisis Intervention

It is important to recognize a patient who is overwhelmed by stress. A stress crisis can occur during any phase between di-
agnosis and recuperation. A crisis has been described as an obstacle to important life goals that becomes insurmountable when the individual employs customary methods of problem solving. Kaplan highlighted the following four phases of crisis:

1. Arousal occurs, and attempts are made at problem solving.
2. Increased tension leads to distress and disorganization be-
because arousal hinders rather than promotes coping behavior.
3. Internal and external emergency resources are mobilized.
4. A state of progressive deterioration, exhaustion, and decom-
pensation ensues as the problems drag on and on without resolution.

Dennerstein and van Hall report that the types of problems dealt with in crisis therapy include loss, change in status or role, interpersonal problems, and problems of choice between two or more alternatives. As an advocate, encourage your patient to communicate her feelings, to understand the problem enough to identify and define it, and then help her rehearse alternative ways of coping.

One of the best concepts to apply during any stressful situa-
tion is to give the assurance that this particular moment, no matter how painful, is temporary. The surgical procedure and all the stages of mending that follow will have a beginning, middle, and an end.

PSYCHOSEXUAL REHABILITATION

The goal of psychosexual rehabilitation after gynecologic or breast surgery is to restore sexual function, sexual identity, body image, and self-esteem. Most of the work must be done by the patient herself, but she may need assistance from her doctor and other health care providers because the experience is new to her. She has no gauge to measure what is normal for her particular situation and what is aberrant. You do.

She may expect too much too soon from herself, or she may head off in the opposite direction and begin to assume the role of invalid, but in most cases, she will be caught somewhere between these two extremes. Once she begins to see her normal patterns of relating to others, you will know she has officially begun the process of genuine healing.

You will be able to tell when she enters the healing phase because she will become less dependent on you, the nurses, and even her family members. As her strength increases, she will want to resume her usual activities. The inevitable, nor-
mal, uncomfortable grief process will commence. Encourage the patient to talk about her feelings rather than repress them and begin to brood, because worry and rumination are forms of repetitive thought that are concommitant and predictive of depressed mood. Dreary thoughts fuel a depressed mood, turn it into something ugly and dangerous, and have the potential to cause long-term or permanent psychological damage.

The patient has the power within to effect change in herself. Family members and friends should be cautioned, at this point, to allow verbal ventilation. It’s a form of healthy discontent that frequently provides the impetus to hurry and lose the sick image and begin to see herself well and strong again.

Cosmetics, dress, and grooming are important parts of the rehabilitation process. When a postoperative patient combs her hair, puts on lipstick, and demands her own nightgown instead of hospital garb, she has begun to heal. When a patient feels that the surgery was disfiguring, she needs to compensate by learning new ways to dress or groom. She needs to feel whole and complete and responsible again as quickly as possible.

The surgical patient begins to see herself as a sexual per-
son when her sexual identity is validated by her sexual partner, friends, family, and even admiring strangers she passes on the street. The woman who has had a mastectomy or other body-altering surgery needs to know her partner still finds her at-
tractive and desirable. Without this affirmation, she may have a great deal of trouble seeing herself as a sexual being. Some sexual partners cannot accept an incomplete person. This is another potential problem.

Some surgical procedures result in loss of vulva, cititoris, or vagina. Radical pelvic surgery can leave a woman with a colostomy or urinary diversion. A severely altered body image concurrent with loss of health and vigor poses a serious threat to a woman’s self-esteem. The woman who has lost her sexual identity feels damaged beyond repair. Some report continuing pelvic pain without obvious structural cause. Interest in sex vanishes, and the patient may actually leave her sexual partner or force the partner to abandon her. As she terminates her sexual identity, she feels out of time and begins to draw in the edges of her life. These women need intense psychosexual therapy if they are ever to heal emotionally. Table 3.1 outlines the major factors that occur with psychosexual dysfunction.

Most of the time, the mate or lover of the woman is caring and considerate of her. There is genuine concern for her health, hope for a quick recovery, and willingness to assume many aspects of her role until she is well. Often there is a deepening of affection between the couple as gifts of love and concern are given and received. That special someone is in the waiting room during the surgical ordeal and by the patient’s bedside when she awakes. There are flowers and gifts and promises made and kept. There is an abundance of reciprocal love. Adjustment to new roles is relatively smooth, causing new bonds to form and old ones to strengthen.
In other cases, the woman’s partner becomes a bigger problem than her physical disability. It is possible her significant other constructed a fragile emotional bond with body parts rather than with the actual woman. If she had or has cancer, the partner may irrationally feel that the cancer is contagious. If she is receiving radiation treatment, he may feel that if he resumes sexual relations with her, he, too, might absorb radiation from her body and be burned. The couple may be accustomed to frequent sex, and any change in the woman’s availability stresses the relationship. The fear of causing pain also has an inhibiting effect. Emotional isolation and loss of nurturing occur in both circumstances, who sometimes fear they are not qualified to help, are reluctant to discuss sexual dysfunction. Many women and their physicians, who are so embarrassed. Whether from obstetric injuries, injury to the actual woman and labia, one third of the women lacked sexual interest, and one fourth were unable to experience orgasm in the general population. One third of the patients lack sex-ual interest, one fourth were unable to experience orgasm in the majority, one fifth reported lubrication difficulties, and another one fifth said they did not find sex pleasurable. These figures come from members of the population willing to discuss sexual dysfunction. Many women and their physicians, who are so embarrassed. Emotional isolation and loss of nurturing occur in both circumstances, who sometimes fear they are not qualified to help, are reluctant to speak of personal problems such as libido, arousal, coital pain, or past traumatic sexual events. Much of this reluctance can be overcome if the gynecologist knows what questions to ask when taking a sexual history, preferably during an initial or annual examination before any body-altering surgery.

Sexual Cycle Primer
Davis suggests that the physician ask the following open-ended questions to obtain a sexual history: Are you sexually active? Are you or your partner having any sexual difficulties at this time? Has there been any change in your sexual activity? Have you or your partner having any sexual difficulties at this time? Has there been any change in your sexual activity? Have you ever experienced any unwanted or harmful sexual activity? Are you or your partner having any sexual difficulties at this time? Has there been any change in your sexual activity? Have you ever experienced any unwanted or harmful sexual activity? Another good question is: What sort of sexual problems do you have? Even if the patient is initially reluctant to discuss such personal issues, she will have learned that you are willing to discuss them should the need arise. Davis also believes that a physi}-cian’s confidence in dealing with sexual issues increase when the cycles of sexual response (desire, arousal, plateau, orgasm, and resolution) are learned and factors that affect them (psy- chological, environmental, and physiologic) understood.

Davis, in a sexual and sexual dysfunction tutorial, describes the following stages: desire, arousal, plateau phase, orgasm, and resolution phase. Desire is the motivation and inclination to be sexual. It is dependent on internal (fantasies) and external sexual cues and also on adequate neuroendocrine functioning. Arousal is characterized by erotic feelings and vaginal lubrication as blood flow increases to the vagina. In addition to feelings of sexual tension, the sexually excited woman may also experience tachycardia, rapid breathing, elevated blood pressure, breast engorgement, muscle tension, nipple erection, and other physical signs of arousal such as a flush. This is the stage where the vagina lengthens, distends, and dilates, and the uterus elevates partially out of the pelvis. During the plateau phase, sexual tension, erotic feelings, and vasoscongestion reach maximum intensity. The labia become more swollen and turn dark red, and the lower third of the vagina swells and thickens to form the orgasmic platform. The clitoris becomes more swollen and elevated, and the uterus elevates fully out of the pelvis. Eventually, women reach the threshold point of orgasmic inevitability. Orgasm is a my- otonic response mediated by the sympathetic nervous system and is experienced as a sudden release of the tension built up during previous phases. Women, unlike men, experience no refractory period but can experience multiple orgasms during a single cycle. They can also experience orgasms before, dur- ing, and after intercourse provided they receive enough clitoral stimulation.

The last phase is called the resolution phase. Women experi- ence a feeling of relaxation and well-being. The body returns to a resting state. Complete uterine descent, detumescence of the clitoris and orgasmic platform, and decongestion of the vagina and labia take about 5 to 10 minutes. Sexual adjustment is often significantly improved in women after pelvic exenteration and gracilis myocutaneous vaginal reconstruction. Eighty-four percent of the patients in one of the few studies that exist, resumed sexual activity within the first year after surgery. A modified version of the Sexual Adjust- ment Questionnaire was used and the responses outlined the most common problems patients face after the surgery: self-consciousness about a urostomy or colostomy, being seen nude by their partner, vaginal dryness, and vaginal discharge. It is hoped that future modifications in surgical technique, more realistic patient counseling, and aggressive postopera- tive support will minimize these problems in the future. Less serious matters can cause self-esteem and body image prob- lems, too, if their aftermath includes or leads to bowel in-continence, urinary incontinence, vaginal vault prolapse, and scarring. Bowel incontinence is rarely discussed even with a woman’s physician because it is so embarrassing. Whether from obstet- ric injuries, injury to the anal muscles, infections, or dimin- ished muscle strength from aging, once the cause and sever- ity are determined, treatments can begin that include dietary changes, constipating medications, muscle strengthening exer- cises, biofeedback techniques, and sometimes, surgical repair of the muscle. Some or all of these remedies help the woman control the discharge of embarrassing gas or stool. It is most important to discuss possible remedies because many patients feel there is nothing that can be done for them but the fright- ening colostomy, when in actual fact, colostomy is a procedure that is rarely required.

TABLE 3.1
MAJOR FACTORS IN PSYCHOSEXUAL DYSFUNCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptomatic</th>
<th>Interpersonal (discord with significant other)</th>
<th>Organic (disease, malnutrition, dysfunction of body organs)</th>
<th>Psychiatric (anxiety, depression, schizophrenia)</th>
<th>Alcohol or drug abuse</th>
<th>Learned</th>
<th>Gynecologic disorders (damaged genitalia, loss of breasts, uteri)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Family (childhood negative sexual associations, experiences)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Religion (imposed prohibitions internalized)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Early unpleasant sexual experiences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Experienced traumas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Davis and sexual dysfunction, describes the following stages: desire, arousal, plateau phase, orgasm, and resolution phase. Desire is the motivation and inclination to be sexual. It is dependent on internal (fantasies) and external sexual cues and also on adequate neuroendocrine functioning. Arousal is characterized by erotic feelings and vaginal lubrication as blood flow increases to the vagina. In addition to feelings of sexual tension, the sexually excited woman may also experience tachycardia, rapid breathing, elevated blood pressure, breast engorgement, muscle tension, nipple erection, and other physical signs of arousal such as a flush. This is the stage where the vagina lengthens, distends, and dilates, and the uterus elevates partially out of the pelvis. During the plateau phase, sexual tension, erotic feelings, and vasoscongestion reach maximum intensity. The labia become more swollen and turn dark red, and the lower third of the vagina swells and thickens to form the orgasmic platform. The clitoris becomes more swollen and elevated, and the uterus elevates fully out of the pelvis. Eventually, women reach the threshold point of orgasmic inevitability. Orgasm is a myotonic response mediated by the sympathetic nervous system and is experienced as a sudden release of the tension built up during previous phases. Women, unlike men, experience no refractory period but can experience multiple orgasms during a single cycle. They can also experience orgasms before, during, and after intercourse provided they receive enough clitoral stimulation.

The last phase is called the resolution phase. Women experience a feeling of relaxation and well-being. The body returns to a resting state. Complete uterine descent, detumescence of the clitoris and orgasmic platform, and decongestion of the vagina and labia take about 5 to 10 minutes. Sexual adjustment is often significantly improved in women after pelvic exenteration and gracilis myocutaneous vaginal reconstruction. Eighty-four percent of the patients in one of the few studies that exist, resumed sexual activity within the first year after surgery. A modified version of the Sexual Adjustment Questionnaire was used and the responses outlined the most common problems patients face after the surgery: self-consciousness about a urostomy or colostomy, being seen nude by their partner, vaginal dryness, and vaginal discharge. It is hoped that future modifications in surgical technique, more realistic patient counseling, and aggressive postoperative support will minimize these problems in the future. Less serious matters can cause self-esteem and body image problems, too, if their aftermath includes or leads to bowel incontinence, urinary incontinence, vaginal vault prolapse, and scarring. Bowel incontinence is rarely discussed even with a woman’s physician because it is so embarrassing. Whether from obstetric injuries, injury to the anal muscles, infections, or diminished muscle strength from aging, once the cause and severity are determined, treatments can begin that include dietary changes, constipating medications, muscle strengthening exercises, biofeedback techniques, and sometimes, surgical repair of the muscle. Some or all of these remedies help the woman control the discharge of embarrassing gas or stool. It is most important to discuss possible remedies because many patients feel there is nothing that can be done for them but the frightening colostomy, when in actual fact, colostomy is a procedure that is rarely required.
As many as 50% of all women experience occasional urinary incontinence. In an attempt to lessen the blow to a woman's ego and make the event more socially acceptable, manufacturers hire movie stars to make commercials about the effectiveness of diapers for grown women. Diapers do treat the symptoms and allow for more freedom of movement, but not in an intimate setting. For many years, gynecologists have instructed patients about Kegel exercises to tighten the muscles of the pelvic floor, but this may not be enough to stop the embarrassing leakage of urine. The patient needs to know that there are tests that can determine the exact cause of the problem, and treatment using bladder retaining therapy, medica- tions, and surgery. Urinary incontinence may be more socially acceptable today, but it is never normal, no matter what the woman's age.

Both bowel and urinary incontinence can be caused by vaginal vault prolapse, and this condition must be ruled out because it drastically affects sexual functioning. The presence of a mass can cause painful intercourse, difficulty accepting penetration, and a great deal of psychological anxiety when the tissue can be seen in the vaginal opening. This condition, if left untreated, only worsens with time, but techniques that correct female organ-supporting defects in the pelvis can restore sexual functioning and with it, a woman's sense of vitality and feminine allure.

Patients who talk about their sex lives frequently describe four pleasures associated with sexuality. These universal elements are touching, genital caressing, orgasm, and gratifying a partner. When a patient is recovering from surgery or has experienced surgical loss of coital function, genital caressing as a receiver or giver can be satisfying. Once a woman learns early in life how to be orgasmic, and gratifying a partner. When a patient is recovering from surgery or has experienced surgical loss of coital function, genital caressing as a receiver or giver can be satisfying. Once a woman learns early in life how to be orgasmic, she can often learn to be so again despite major genital loss, including her clitoris. When the ability to produce an adequate response is destroyed by disease, the patient can be encouraged to experiment with alternative methods that do not conflict with her value system. Women who will never experience vaginal intercourse again can discover they are able, with education and imagination, to fulfill their feminine role as givers of pleasure if they choose to do so.

When a patient's psychosexual rehabilitation after surgery seems to be impeded and she fails to make steady progress toward resumption of her usual role, with appropriate self-esteem, energy, identity, and ability to handle stress, she should be offered help. Help should be offered as soon as she mentions the problem. Early intervention is often easy and brief. The surgeon should be the first person to help the patient, with counseling and, if necessary, suitable medications.

Hormonal Therapy

Hormone replacement therapy (HRT) remains a controversial issue. It is imperative that HRT be discussed preoperatively with the patient facing surgery and the loss of her ovaries. Initial misinterpretation of the results of the Women's Health Initiative Study (WHI) has created much fear and angst for women facing surgery and the loss of her ovaries. The harmful effects were overestimated, and the media created undue alarm regarding both the gynecologist and the patient. The WHI study recruited 68,135 women of age. It must be remembered that the WHI study recruited about 0.1% for every year of use. Six years has been observed for women younger than 60 years of age. It must be remembered that the WHI study recruited women in their late 60s.

A 16-year study that involved 60,000 postmenopausal female nurses found that those who took hormone replacement therapy for 10 years reduced their risk of dying from all causes by 37%, with the most dramatic reduction being death from breast cancer. After 10 years, the reduced risk for all causes was 16%; because of the increased risk of dying from breast cancer. That risk rose to 43%, but the women who contracted breast cancer during the first 10 years had a lower risk of dying from breast cancer than women who had never taken hormones, probably because of early detection. Chances of early detection of breast cancer are probably better for hormone users because they receive regular check-ups.

In an extensive review of current literature on the subject, dubbed “the New Science of Estrogen,” Hammond provides an overview of the risks and benefits of hormone replacement therapy and also includes information on therapeutic alternatives. Cardiovascular benefits of estrogen outweigh the risks. With combined estrogen-progestin therapy, studies have shown some increase in stroke and venous thrombembolism. Hammond feels that steroid hormonal therapy should be considered an integral part of the appropriate and necessary care of American women after menopause, and the anticipated reduction of cardiovascular disease and osteoporotic fractures by nearly 50% should be laudable goals for any health care system.

Statistics show overwhelmingly that cardiovascular disease (CVD)—not cancer—is the leading cause of mortality for postmenopausal women. In fact, one in two women will eventually die of heart disease or stroke, whereas only one in 25 women die of breast cancer. Although the incidence of heart disease, including coronary artery disease and stroke, is low in premenopausal women, heart disease is the most frequent cause of death in women older than the age of 50. Since 1984, the death rate from CVD in men has decreased, whereas the death rate for women has remained the same. Nevertheless, epidemiologic studies support the long-term benefit of estrogen in preventing CVD. Observational studies, such as the Postmenopausal Estrogen/Progestin Intervention Study sponsored by the National Institutes of Health, revealed that HRT can increase high-density lipoprotein cholesterol and decrease low-density lipoprotein cholesterol. The Nurses' Health Study demonstrated a reduction in the risk of CVD of as much as 50% among current HRT users. Women on estrogen have significantly less coronary artery stenosis than women who do not use it. Takahashi found that long-term HRT—for more than 2 years—may delay carotid intima-media thickness in healthy postmenopausal women. Moreover, patients with the most advanced coronary artery disease experience the most benefit from HRT. Only 35% of women surveyed were aware of the connection between heart disease and menopause.

Current theories indicate that estrogen has extraordinarily complex biological effects that translate into a variety of actions in diverse tissues. There is growing scientific evidence that estrogen exerts its beneficial actions on tissues of the skeletal, urogenital, digestive, cardiovascular, ocular, and nervous systems.

Estrogen replacement therapy (ERT)/HRT is also first-line therapy for osteoporosis for most women, and treatment should begin as soon as possible after the menopause. Enough time has elapsed since the WHI media scare and cessation of estrogen therapy by users that a marked and rapid loss of bone density is being noted in those who stopped their replacement therapy. Yates and Barrett-Jones studied the association between hormone therapy (HT) cessation and hip fracture rate. Concurrent with WHI, women in National Osteoporosis Risk Assessment currently on HT had a 40% lower incidence of hip fractures.
fracture compared with those who had never used HT. Women who stopped using HT more than 5 years earlier had similar hip fracture use to never users. Preliminary data suggest that even the elderly respond to estrogen replacement. However, there are therapeutic alternatives and lifestyle modifications (diet and routine exercise) that perimenopausal women must be counseled about to create a comprehensive preventive pro-

gram. It is an effort that has a significant impact on long-term morbidity and mortality associated with osteoporosis.

Women have phenomenal memories because one of their jobs is to find every needle that gets lost in the proverbial haystacks of their homes. When they become less adept at remembering where they and other people put their things, they fear the worst—that they are losing their minds, and this fear is not illogical. Women compose 72% of the population older than the age of 85 years, and roughly half of this group has Alzheimer disease (AD). Not only do women constitute a greater proportion of this older population, but AD is expressed earlier in women than men. This may be related to the estrogen loss that occurs with menopause. Hammond cites a study that found women who took estrogen for more than 1 year experienced a dramatic delay in AD onset. But even the group of women who averaged only 4 months of estrogen therapy and most likely took the medication to control symptoms such as hot flashes experienced a delay in AD onset. It has been speculated that a brief exposure to estrogen influ-

enced AD expression 20 to 30 years later by preventing an ir-

reversible loss of neurons associated with the occurrence of hot flashes. Research is ongoing, but one study found that estrogen replacement therapy in postmenopausal women is associated with a 50% reduction in the risk of developing AD because it slows the decline of visual memory. The study by Lebrun and colleagues in clinical endocrinology supports findings that endogenous estrogens protect against cognitive decline with aging.

Colon cancer occurs more often in women than men and is a leading cause of cancer incidence and deaths in women. Even though mortality rates for colon cancer have decreased 25% among women in the last 20 years, it remains the third-leading cause of cancer deaths in this group. The concept that post-

menopausal ERT may decrease the risk of colorectal cancer has received considerable attention, even though the hormone is delayed.

With ovarian preservation, the need for exogenous hormones at least age 65 because of its benefit to long-term survival.

Routinely, ERT/HRT counseling should go beyond simple symptom control to include both short- and long-term benefits, contraindications, common patient concerns, and misconcep-

Counseling women about replacement therapy must be combined with discussions about the importance of lifestyle changes, including:

- Normalization of weight
- Dietary intervention
- Smoking cessation
- Regular exercise
- Control of hypertension
- Control of diabetes
- Control of alcohol consumption
- Control of lipid elevations

Routine use of ERT/HRT counseling should be included as a measure to prevent colon cancer should be part of the Counseling should include the American Cancer Society rec-

ommendations for annual digital rectal examination and fecal occult blood testing as well as a flexible sigmoidoscopy every 5 years or colonoscopy every 10 years.

Age-related macular degeneration (AMD) may be reduced by estrogen administration. This disease is the leading cause of legal blindness in the United States, accounting for as many as 60% of all new cases. There is no medical treatment, and surgical management in the form of photocoagulation is effec-

tive in only a small percentage of patients with the wet type surgical management in the form of photocoagulation is effec-
tive in only a small percentage of patients with the wet type of disease. In the Rotterdam study, women who experi-

enced menopause at a later age. These data suggest that HRT reduces the risk of developing AMD.

The natural conjugated estrogens do not cause hypercoagulability and are safe during the immediate convalescent period.

The natural conjugated estrogens do not cause hypercoagulability and are safe during the immediate convalescent period.

Parker and colleagues, in a recent lead study in Obstet-

rics and Gynecology, recommend ovarian conservation until at least age 65 because of its benefit to long-term survival. With ovarian preservation, the need for exogenous hormones is delayed.

The long-term benefits of estrogen replacement therapy in preventing osteoporosis, cardiovascular disease, and colon can-

cer are well established. The health of the vagina and lower uri-

nary tract is maintained. The Journal of the British Menopause Society says that various studies have demonstrated the efficacy of estrogen replacement in improving urinary and stress incontin-

ence. The vagina lubricates more easily with sexual arousal, and intercourse is more comfortable with an estrogenic vaginal mucosa. Many women report an increased interest in and enjoyment of sex.

For women who do experience a loss of libido, even while taking estrogenic hormones, the new androgen therapies look promising as a way to improve sexual function and psychologi-

cal well-being. Testosterone delivered via transdermal patches or gel bypasses the liver and has no negative effect on choles-
terol. The skin serves as a constant reservoir; therefore, blood levels show fewer fluctuations.

However, there are physicians who believe that hormonal balances induced by prescription medications should only be offered for relief of extreme menopausal symptoms and only for a short while. The author of Dr. Susan Love's Hormone Book and Dr. Susan Love's Breast Book is one such physi-

ician. She is a staunch supporter of eating soybean products and...
or humiliate the senior patient by assuming her sexuality is a private business and be loath to discuss it. Do not antagonize assume she is asexual. She may simply view her sex life as her of the natural urges, even temporarily, is discomforting.

It is easy to imagine a grandmother baking cookies or rocking an energetic romp in the sack with her favorite beau. Sex after age 60 is a reality for many women and men. These people can recall the passion and sensitivity. Women in tumultuous life situations at the time of surgery present the greatest challenge.

Every patient is special and deserves to be treated with compassion and sensitivity. Women in tumultuous life situations at the time of surgery present the greatest challenge.

The Teenager
Bluestein and Starling report that 1 million teenagers per year conceive. Of these million pregnancies, 400,000 end in abortion and 100,000 in miscarriage. Childbearing teenagers face a 60% excess in maternal mortality compared with adults and are most likely to suffer toxemia, anemia, hemorrhage, cervical trauma, cephalopelvic disproportion, excessive weight gain, and premature labor. These complications are due more to social and behavioral correlates than inherent adolescent aspects. Correlates include inadequate prenatal care, poor nutrition, substance abuse, and emotional distress.

One to two teenagers per 1,000 who have first-trimester abortions experience fever, hemorrhage, and emergency abdominal surgical procedures. These numbers are lower than for older women, but the rate for cervical injury, which could affect future childbearing, is 5.5 per 1,000 teenagers, notably higher than the 1.7 to 3.1 per 1,000 for adults. Bluestein and Starling recommend recontacting the communization techniques for the teenage patient: Guarantee confidentiality to build trust. Conduct the initial interview alone. Teenage girls may want to relay private information to the physician but not in the presence of a parent. Be patient. Gear communication to the patient's emotional and intellectual development. Be nonjudgmental. Gently explore the teenager's family and social environments. Will family members and friends support or harm your patient? Discuss the teenager's long-term plans. Be aware of ethnic differences in health-related matters.

Female patients who belong to local or national gangs come to the health care system with a unique set of problems and values. It is imperative that the surgeon not add to the patient's mental trauma, cephalopelvic disproportion, excessive weight gain, and microbiologically unnecessary if competent sterilization procedures are followed. As men age, they sometimes lose hair on the head. As women age, the pubic hair sometimes thins and once shaved, may never grow back.

Many older women have managed to curtail their sexual appetites to compensate for physiologic changes that have occurred in a mate. Removal of excessive vaginal mucosa during pelvic surgery compromises the vagina, which is already losing elasticity. This inhibits penetration during coitus and can cause painful intercourse. Be understanding and helpful if solutions are possible. If the dysfunction resulting from the surgery will be permanent, encourage the couple to experiment with various ways to please each other or seek the advice of a sex therapist who is knowledgeable about creative sexual play.

Butler and colleagues instruct physicians to educate themselves about the effects of medications on sexuality. More than 200 medications have sexual dysfunction as a side effect. Many are effective in lower doses that do not harm the libido or the patient's physical ability.

The positive benefits of a healthy sex life are multiple. Emotional intimacy and the ability to connect physically with another human being brings great joy and satisfaction. This need to connect intensifies rather than diminishes with age.

The Senior Woman
It is easy to imagine a grandmother baking cookies or rocking a new baby in the family. Our culture makes it a little more difficult to imagine this same woman flushed and happy from an energetic romp in the sack with her favorite beau. Sex after age 60 is a reality for many women and men. Those people enjoyed sex when they were young, they perfected it as the years flowed by, and the thought of doing without expression of the natural urges, even temporarily, is disconcerting.

When an older woman faces gynecologic surgery, do not assume she is asexual. She may simply view her sex life as her private business and be loath to discuss it. Do not antagonize or humiliate the senior patient by assuming her sexuality is a thing of the past.

If the surgical procedure will affect her sexually, explain the consequences. Assure her that the surgery will leave her as whole and as functional as possible. Give this woman the opportunity to express her anxieties and to ask questions. If her mate or lover is present, include this person in the discussion. In the senior woman who has a large cystocele, rectocele, or uterine or vault prolapse, every effort should be made to avoid colpocleisis. Hysterectomy is not a justifiable step for a woman who wants to maintain her fertility. Colpocleisis is a novel and humbling experience.

The positive benefits of a healthy sex life are multiple. Emotional intimacy and the ability to connect physically with another human being brings great joy and satisfaction. This need to connect intensifies rather than diminishes with age.

The Sexually Assaulted Patient
According to Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) statistics, reported rapes and sexual assaults in the United States are up nearly 5% since 2000. It is estimated that only about 16% of the rapes that occur are ever reported. One in three sexually assaulted victims is younger than the age of 12. Convicted rape and sexual assault offenders testify that two thirds of their victims are younger than 18. Two thirds of the victims older than 18 knew their attacker before the rape. A sad fact is that almost one fifth of the women who are raped before the age of 18 are raped again after the age of 18. Many require medical
Attention, as many as 22% suffer genital trauma, as many as 40% incur sexually transmitted disease, and 1% to 5% become pregnant as a result of the rape. Rape survivors are 13 times more likely than the general population to attempt suicide.

Most hospital emergency rooms have strict protocols to follow when treating sexually assaulted patients. The proper collection of evidence and initial treatment of injuries is a priority. The surgeon who repairs the gynecologic damage done to these female patients should be aware of the general characteristics of psychological trauma associated with rape.

The symptoms of rape trauma syndrome compiled by Blair and Warner can be found in Table 3.2. Many of these symptoms are the same as seen in posttraumatic stress disorder. These symptoms of rape trauma syndrome compiled by Blair and Warner can be found in Table 3.2. Many of these symptoms are the same as seen in posttraumatic stress disorder. These symptoms such as anorexia, insomnia, tachycardia, fear, and panic. Acute depression is not uncommon and can lead to suicidal tendencies.

The patient is afraid of becoming unable to take care of her family members. Will she be sick for long? Will who will raise her children if she dies? Will who care for her pets? Will her loved ones be supportive, or will they begin to back away from her? If the woman is alone, without mate or family, she fears becoming unable to care for herself.

The treating surgeon can ease some of the cancer patient’s fear by free and open communication. Educate the patient about exactly what to expect, and offer reassurance if possible. Explain the procedure she is about to undergo, and offer reassurance if possible. The psychological effect of cancer on a woman is largely determined by whether the malignancy is primary, recurrent, or terminal. The surgeon must wrestle with personal ethical and moral conflicts when the surgery for the cancer patient is palliative. Should procedures be performed that extend death and not life? If she is able, the patient herself must make the choice. If the cancer patient elects to have the procedure, her care postoperatively may be shared by radiologists, chemotherapists, and others who specialize in cancer treatment. However, you as her gynecologist should maintain contact and assist in trying to get the patient well or at least enhance the quality of the remainder of her life. Meaningful psychosocial support should be based on established concepts of crisis intervention because cancer is a major life crisis. Counseling should be aimed to support adaptive behaviors and feelings that reduce the psychological stress, restore and consolidate the patient’s self-image, and normalize sexual functioning as quickly as possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMPTOMS OF RAPE TRAUMA SYNDROME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Recurrent, painful recollections or dreams of the event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suddenly acting or feeling as if the event were recurring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrations of fear, anger, or anxiety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crying, restlessness, or restlessness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlled feelings masked by a false demeanor of calmness, composure, or subdued attitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory of fact answering of questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inappropriate smiles or laughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inability to remember parts of the event because re-exposure to stimuli present during the traumatic moment reinvokes the associated pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased interest in important activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lack of future plans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limited range of affect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detachment toward others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficulty concentrating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypervigilance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irritability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anxiety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angry outbursts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Cancer Patient

Bloch cautions physicians that the manner in which the diagnosis of cancer is disclosed to the patient can determine whether the patient lives or dies. It is imperative to instill hope and the desire to fight the disease. A diagnosis of cancer by telephone can be devastating and is viewed by many physicians and patients as a form of cruelty. In her book The Balance Within: The Science Connecting Health and Emotions, Dr. Esther M. Sternberg presents evidence that the relief of stress can make you less vulnerable to illness. The cancer patient shares the same fears common to all surgical patients. She may be psychologically attached to the body part that must be removed. She may fear disfigurement, the unknown, the hospital experience and staff, debility, loss of economic competency, and sexual function. In addition to the normal realm of anxiety associated with surgery, a diagnosis of cancer brings special stresses to a woman’s life. Schain describes universal concerns experienced by people diagnosed with cancer no matter where in the body the cancer is located. These people fear death, postoperative adjuvant treatment, and recurrence.

The cancer patient is concerned about dying or being injured during the operation. Preoperative anxiety can manifest as anorexia, insomnia, tachycardia, fear, and panic. Acute depression is not uncommon and can lead to suicidal tendencies. The patient is afraid of becoming unable to take care of her family members. Will she be sick for long? Will who raise her children if she dies? Will who care for her pets? Will her loved ones be supportive, or will they begin to back away from her? If the woman is alone, without mate or family, she fears becoming unable to care for herself.

The treating surgeon can ease some of the cancer patient’s fear by free and open communication. Educate the patient about exactly what to expect, and offer reassurance if possible. Explain the procedure she is about to undergo and the positive benefits that you both hope will result.

Surgery and cancer in the urogenital region can be consciously or unconsciously interpreted as mutilation. The possibility of some degree of postoperative sexual dysfunction can create a fear of abandonment by the sexual partner. If possible, assure both the patient and her partner that they will continue to be able to bring joy, pleasure, and comfort to each other.

The psychological effect of cancer on a woman is largely determined by whether the malignancy is primary, recurrent, or terminal. The surgeon must wrestle with personal ethical and moral conflicts when the surgery for the cancer patient is palliative. Should procedures be performed that extend death and not life? If she is able, the patient herself must make the choice. If the cancer patient elects to have the procedure, her care postoperatively may be shared by radiologists, chemotherapists, and others who specialize in cancer treatment. However, you as her gynecologist should maintain contact and assist in trying to get the patient well or at least enhance the quality of the remainder of her life. Meaningful psychosocial support should be based on established concepts of crisis intervention because cancer is a major life crisis. Counseling should be aimed to support adaptive behaviors and feelings that reduce the psychological stress, restore and consolidate the patient’s self-image, and normalize sexual functioning as quickly as possible.
The Suicidal Patient

The World Health Organization (WHO) reports that suicide rates have increased 60% worldwide in the last 43 years, with 870,000 annual deaths. Approximately 30,000 people commit suicide each year in the United States. Cooper and colleagues studied more than 6,000 individuals and found that hopelessness ranked the highest of all symptoms associated with suicidal ideation in psychiatric patients and adolescents.

A surgeon probably will not know if a patient is contemplating suicide unless the patient admits to thinking about ending her life or unless a family member voices concern. Subtle warning signs include a chronic state of depression, lethargy, an inability to relate to others, weight loss or gain, lack of interest in life in general or the surgical procedure in question, a change in personal appearance, abnormal sleep patterns, or any strange behavior uncharacteristic of the particular patient. Many of these symptoms are normal for the presurgical and postsurgical patient, so it is easy to see how suicidal tendencies could hide within the maze.

To determine a patient’s suicide potential, ask: Have you been troubled with thoughts of hurting yourself? Barber advises physicians to ask directly: Have you ever thought of taking your own life? Do you feel like taking your life now? If the patient answers yes, the physician should find out if the patient has a simple, straightforward suicide plan that is likely to succeed.

A patient with low to moderate suicide potential is noticeably depressed but can identify some support system. There may be suicidal thoughts but no specific plan. A patient with a high suicide potential feels profoundly helpless. Little or no support system seems to exist. Thoughts of suicide are frequent, and a plan exists that is likely to succeed. The surgeon may be the first person to realize the patient is in emotional trouble and could be the only support system available if the patient has significantly withdrawn from others. Crisis therapy for the suicidal patient begins when the patient requests help or when the surgeon recognizes her potential for self-destruction. By showing interest in her feelings and concern for her welfare, the surgeon initiates crisis intervention.

DEALING WITH DEATH

Death is a taboo subject for most physicians. Many doctors go to great lengths to avoid discussing the eventuality, and most are uncomfortable dealing with the emotional consequences of the death of a patient. To many physicians, death is viewed as a personal failure. Regardless of any internal attitudes, the surgeon is responsible for communicating the facts of the death to the family and for being the first person to help them cope with the loss of their loved one.

When a patient dies, explain to the family, to the best of your ability, exactly what happened. Assure them that everything medically possible was done. Ufema suggests the following guidelines to make the death experience as bearable as possible for all concerned:

- Ask about donations for transplantation.
- Provide an area where the family members can say goodbye.
- If it is true, tell the family members how the patient affected you personally.
- Transfer your protective feelings for the patient to the family members.
- Begin the grief process by saying, “Jane’s body is ready for the morgue now. Would you like to say a final goodbye?”
- If family members want a lock of hair, allow them to take it.
- Give family members the patient’s belongings.
- Provide an escort for any family member who is alone.
- Help the hospital staff cope with the loss.

Remember that it is permissible for the physician to show emotion with the family if the emotion is genuine. Someone is gone and will never see tomorrow.

FUTURE TRENDS

The new millennium was heralded with great joy and celebration. Its predominant theme was one of hope, and nowhere is this more evident than in the field of medicine, specifically for women’s health issues. The hand that rocks the cradle now rules important aspects of the research world. During the next 20 years, 45 million women will enter menopause and live one third to one half of their lives postmenopausally. Research into improving the quality of their lives—and subsequently, all those they touch—has never been more important or timely.

As a multitude of women move through the life stages of maiden, mother, and crone, the health care they receive during one stage will be reflected in all those that follow. Boomer women, born between 1946 and 1964, will continue their legacy of reform by participating in medical clinical studies concerning endocrinology, gynecology, neurology, oncology, genetics, and finally, geriatrics. The daughters and sons they presented to the world will advance reproductive technology in all its genetic and social ramifications.

Robotic gynecological surgery, a recent gift of the technological world, is being performed. It is envisaged that most surgery in the future can and will be performed robotically. The systems currently in use are not intended to act independently from surgeons nor to replace them. They provide a means for the skilled surgeon to complete complex and advanced procedures with increased precision and without a minimally invasive approach. Medical students will soon be able to perfect their surgical techniques using cyberscalps, simulated lifelike patient bodies, three-dimensional models, and long-distance mentors. The space industry has also yielded a smart surgical probe that will be used for breast biopsies. The small disposable needle with multiple sensors will be able to distinguish normal tissue from tumor tissue and greatly reduce the 18,000 breast biopsies per week now performed on women with suspicious lesions. Originally conceived as a robotic tool to aid astronaut/physicians during long-duration space flights, it has already found a medical application on Earth in neurosurgery.

Voice-activated language programs are making it possible to effectively communicate with multicultural patients and international colleagues. Advances in documentation techniques have made keeping and transferring accurate records less of a burden. More ethics classes will emerge to better prepare the medical student for the real-world challenges such as end-of-life issues, fiduciary responsibilities, confidentiality, informed consent, and religious or philosophical conflicts. As surgeons, it will be your duty and privilege to witness, record, and practice the new knowledge and incorporate it with what is already known so that you can make a positive difference in the lives of women now living as well as those yet to be born.
CONCLUSION

Technology will never change the fact that women are emotional creatures by nature, even now that they have the choice whether to menstruate. Few experiences give women more satisfaction than sexuality and conception. Surgery on or near her reproductive tract is potentially fraught with emotional sequelae. The gynecologic surgeon’s responsibility transcends a stunning performance in the surgical arena. Making appropriate decisions about the surgical procedure and consequently managing the patient’s return to physical and psychological health are the hallmarks of an accomplished surgeon.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

■ The gynecologist shall treat the patient’s psyche as well as her soma.
■ Neuroscientific investigation has proven that stress contributes to unfavorable outcomes postoperatively.
■ Preoperatively, the surgeon must make every effort to answer a patient’s questions, allay her fears, and reduce her stress.

■ Unanswered questions regarding the diagnosis, the intended procedure, possible complications, and postoperative sexuality are sources of stress.
■ Cancer patients, young patients, patients living alone without family support, and patients with a language barrier should be considered special-needs patients. Extra time should be devoted to them.
■ Personal communication on a one-to-one basis between the surgeon and patient should take place. Counseling by ancillary personnel and informative booklets should only be used additively.
■ A surgeon should try to be with the patient immediately before her surgery and during the induction of anesthesia.
■ Be familiar with symptoms of depression and look for them during preoperative evaluation. Address potential problems before surgery, and make referrals when indicated.
■ When oophorectomy is anticipated in a premenopausal patient, estrogen replacement therapy should be discussed and encouraged before surgery if there are no contraindications.
■ Extra time spent listening, informing, and reassuring an anxious patient before surgery is often rewarded by a fast and uneventful recovery.

Bibliography


Barber MA. Recognizing suicide. Nursing 1993;Oct:32N.


WHO Studies from the Americas. 2006 edition Suicide and intentional self-harm (E950-959); x60-x84) p 173.


CHAPTER 4  PROFESSIONAL LIABILITY AND RISK MANAGEMENT FOR THE GYNECOLOGIC SURGEON

Charles J. Ward

DEFINITIONS

Ethical principles are the principles utilized to guide the medical profession in resolving conflicting obligations in health care. The five major ethical principles that are utilized are:

1. Autonomy—The moral right to bodily integrity and self-determination.
2. Beneficence—The duty to do good and be concerned for the medical well-being of the patient.
3. Nonmaleficence—The duty to refrain from harming the patient.
4. Justice—The right of the patient to be treated fairly and to a fair allocation of limited medical resources in the community.
5. Freedom—The ability to choose as well as to refuse treatment. Freedom also implies a lack of coercion, manipulation, or infringement on the patient's decision-making process.

Informed consent—A legal doctrine that requires physicians to obtain consent for treatment, whether it is diagnostic or therapeutic, medical or surgical, invasive or noninvasive.

Judgmental decision—A decision supported by either literature or common use that is generally defensible and not malpractice.

Medical malpractice—Occurs when the treatment rendered is constituted to be below the degree of care exercised by physicians generally under the same or similar set of circumstances. A direct cause-and-effect relationship must exist between the breach in the standard of care and the outcome to constitute malpractice.

Malocurrence—A poor clinical outcome that did not arise from a breach in the standard of care.

Standard of care—The degree of care exercised by physicians generally under the same or similar set of circumstances.

Risk management—Refers to those medical practices, protocols, and procedures that are designed to reduce patient injury and improve clinical outcomes.

In the new millennium, the gynecologic surgeon both in the United States and in Europe is not only faced with the constant threat of malpractice litigation but also with rapid advances in technology. These pressures require the need for continued education and training so that the surgeon practices within the current and evolving standard of care. This chapter outlines practical steps that should reduce the exposure to malpractice claims. It also discusses the litigation process and its emotional impact on the physician. This chapter is neither to be considered a substitute for legal counsel nor a source of legal advice. A bibliography is furnished for those who wish to explore this subject further.

The history of liability suits extends back to the 14th century. The first recorded malpractice suit in English law occurred in 1374. This case involved an action brought before the King's Bench against a surgeon, J. Mort. The plaintiff sustained an injury to the hand, and treatment of this injury left the hand maimed. The defendant surgeon was found not liable because of a legal technicality in the writ of complaint. But the rule was clearly laid down that if negligence were proven, the law would provide a remedy. The court further held that, "if the surgeon does well as he can and employs all his diligence to the care, it is not right that he should be held culpable."

The civil liability of surgeons arises out of the rule laid down in 1534 by the English jurist Sir Anthony Fitzherbert, which stated, "it is the duty of every artificer to exercise his art right and truly as he ought."

The first recorded malpractice suit in the United States occurred in Connecticut in 1794 and was also against a surgeon. In this case, Cross v. Guthrey, the patient's husband sued the surgeon, Dr. Guthrey, after the patient died from postoperative mastectomy complications. The suit alleged that the doctor was guilty of negligence in operating on the plaintiff's wife in the most unskilful, ignorant, and cruel manner, contrary to all the well-known rules and principles of practice in such cases, that the patient survived by but three hours, and that the defendant had wholly broken and violated his undertaking and promise to the plaintiff to perform and operation skillfully and with safety to his wife.

The jury found the surgeon liable and awarded damages of £40.

The 1970s and 1980s found the United States engulfed in a malpractice crisis. The malpractice trend has continued into the 21st century, both in the United States and Europe. The millennium continues to bring additional pressures to bear on the gynecologic surgeon. These pressures arise from areas such as the transformation of the practice from a fee-for-service (FFS) reimbursement to various managed care programs, third-party payer interventions, declining incomes yet increasing overhead costs, longer work hours, and sizable malpractice premiums. The 2003 survey of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) membership revealed that nationally a 53% increase in malpractice premiums had occurred in the United States since the 1999 survey. Because the obstetrician/gynecologist performs six of the 10 most common surgical procedures, it is not surprising to find
this specialty to be the most frequently sued. The 2003 ACOG survey found that 76.3% of all fellows have been sued at least one time. The obstetrician/gynecologists surveyed had an average of 2.64 claims filed against them during their career. Even resident physicians in training reported that 28.6% had at least one professional liability claim filed against them during their training. Gynecologic care involved 38.3% of all claims filed. Of the gynecologic claims, delay in or failure to diagnose was the most common allegation and accounted for 29% of gynecologic claims. Of these, failure to diagnose cancer accounted for 62.8% of the claims. Failure to diagnose breast cancer was the most frequent type of cancer involved and accounted for 19% of the claims. The second most frequent claim involved failure to diagnose cervical cancer, which accounted for 7.4% of the claims. Failure to diagnose ovarian cancer accounted for 7.3% and was third in the failure to or delay in diagnosis of cancer cases. Major patient injury accounted for 25.4% of these claims. On average, four years elapsed from the onset of the claim to its closing. Of all the claims, 49.5% were dropped or settled without any payment on behalf of the Physicians. Obstetricians/gynecologists won 73.1% of those claims that were resolved by jury or court verdict, arbitration, or other alternative dispute resolution mechanism.

Contrary to popular impressions that “bad doctors” are the cause of most malpractice actions, studies have shown that physicians who possessed higher qualifications, were board certified, and had more experience were more likely to be sued. This is in part because of the fact that such physicians manage higher-risk patients; therefore, they are more likely to encounter adverse outcomes that can be a source of litigation. Medical malpractice occurs when the treatment rendered is constituting to be below the degree of care exercised by physicians generally under the same or similar set of circumstances. Today most communities are held to a national standard of care that is defined as a duty to exercise the degree of care and skill expected of a reasonably competent practitioner in the same specialty acting under similar circumstances. Malpractice, or a poor outcome, is not malpractice unless the outcome arises from a direct effect of a breach of the standard of care. Substandard care per se does not always imply malpractice. There must exist a direct cause-and-effect relationship between the breach of the standard of care and the outcome to constitute malpractice.

RISK MANAGEMENT

Risk management refers to those medical practices and procedures that are designed to reduce patient injury and improve clinical outcomes. Risk management is an approach to the practice of medicine that minimizes the risk of lawsuits by practicing in a manner that reduces the possibility of human error, increasing the likelihood of obtaining desired results and providing a medical record that clearly outlines the treatment rendered, which in turn makes such a record very defensible. Risk management, whether in an office or hospital setting, must be a team effort. Each member of the health care team must understand that his or her actions can lead to liability for the others. This means that each member of the health care team must not only understand his or her responsibilities and duties, but also be capable of carrying out those responsibilities and duties.

Many hospitals now employ risk managers. Among their duties is the investigation of incident reports and adverse outcomes. The use of incident reports should be encouraged. An appropriate reply should be made to the author of such reports so that the author feels that they are not only contributing to the improvement of patient care but also that the hospital appreciates and considers their contributions. The risk manager should be able to establish appropriate targeted audits that help the institution identify its risks. With this knowledge, the staff and appropriate departments then can develop procedures and policies to correct the identified problems. Risk management should never be considered a punitive exercise, but rather an approach that will improve the quality of care rendered by all health care professionals.

Risk management cannot always prevent a lawsuit; however, frequently it can protect against a nonmeritorious claim or at least improve the outcome of a malpractice claim. Risk management also has been shown to decrease malpractice premiums in states where it was actively employed. The four cornerstones to solid risk management for the gynecologic surgeon are good surgical technique, appropriate knowledge of current developments and therapies, adequate documentation, and good patient communication. The former two are discussed throughout this book; the latter two are discussed in this chapter.

DOCUMENTATION

Documentation, or its absence, is a major problem in malpractice claims. The finest care given under the best of circumstances, if not documented, may be difficult if not impossible to defend in a court of law. Documentation should be made contemporaneously so that significant facts or incidents are not forgotten. Records should contain adequate documentation to provide sufficient reasons why a procedure was indicated or undertaken. Typed reports are preferred to handwritten reports because they are more legible and open to less question of interpretation. Physician notes should be factual, complete, and relevant. They should neither embellish nor appear grandiose. Only appropriate and widely accepted abbreviations are to be used. It is prudent to document both important negative findings and positive findings, especially in complicated cases. In court, those findings, positive or negative, not documented are often presumed to never have been established. Determination of statements about the patient should be avoided, but it is prudent to document inappropriate patient behavior. This includes noncompliant behavior, such as failure to get requested tests or follow given advice. Broken or missed appointments also should be recorded. Medical records, especially operative notes, should avoid the words unintentionally, inadvertently, accidentally, unfortunately, and unexplainable because they imply negligent behavior. For example, in the case of ureteral injury, the surgeon can state that the ureter was cut, and the injury recognized and repaired. However, it is important to detail difficult dissections, the presence of extensive adhesions, or any event that makes a surgical case more difficult. It is always wise to outline a plan of therapy. The surgeon should be aware that judgmental decisions, supported by either literature or common use, are defensible and are not malpractice, even if they result in a less than desirable outcome.

There is a proper way to correct a record. Draw a single line through the error, but never obliterate the error. Write the correction either in the margin or on a separate page. Then date and initial the correction. Never change a record after a suit has been filed, because such behavior can lead to loss of credibility and generally makes a case indefensible.

OFFICE SETTING

The office frequently can be the catalyst of a malpractice claim. It can begin with the telephone, which some consider to be the...
most dangerous of liability risks. Misunderstanding and miscommunication easily can occur over the telephone. Improper telephone etiquette may change a disgruntled patient into an angry one who contemplates the instigation of a malpractice claim. Make sure that messages that require a reply by the physician are delivered in a timely manner and that the advice given is documented. Telephone calls of an urgent or emergency nature must be handled appropriately, but also documented in the office chart with the date, time of call, time of response, and advice given. Prescription refills as well as patient instructions given over the telephone should be contemporaneously entered in the chart. Only standard abbreviations should be used in the medical chart. A protocol should be established to make sure that after-hour phone calls, problems, advice rendered, and prescriptions are documented in the patient’s record.

Employees of the surgeon’s office should be encouraged to provide a warm, courteous, and caring environment for patients who, for the most part, will be under considerable stress as they anticipate surgery or encounter the postoperative limitations that the surgery places on them.

New patients should be told of office policies regarding type of examination, laboratory work, and expected charges. This may be accomplished through written material. Owing to the time constraints that are often placed on the physician by managed care plans, the initial intake information is often obtained by forms filled out by the patient or a member of the office staff. The information should include not only the patient’s symptom and pertinent history, but also past medical, surgical, social, and family history. Drug allergies, identified risk factors, and current medications should be noted. The physician should review this information with the patient to clarify any questionable areas and be sure that the information is adequate for the appropriate management of the patient. Because the gynecologist is now taking care of an aging population, it is extremely important that the gynecologist be aware of all medications the patient is taking. This knowledge can decrease the risk of drug interactions and adverse reactions as new medications are added to the patient’s regimen. In this regard, physicians should be encouraged to have the names of the patient’s current practitioners, so that the gynecologist can consult with them as needed. It also is prudent for the gynecologist to have access to a pharmacist, who may be more qualified to check for drug interactions, so that he or she can discuss any questions in this area when new medications are prescribed.

Appointments should be scheduled so that long delays are avoided, and overbooking should be discouraged. Remember that the patient’s time is as valuable to her as yours is to you. Records should be kept of broken or missed appointments. This type of information is extremely helpful in establishing a noncompliant behavioral pattern. A protocol should be established for the follow-up on patients who fail to keep appointments. The patient’s confidentiality can be broken not only by employee gossip, but also by inadequate soundproofing in examination and consultation rooms. A simple test can be conducted by the surgeon by going into an examination room during working hours to see if he or she can hear conversation by the staff in the halls or other areas of the office. If such a problem exists, the staff should be made aware of it. Some simple solutions—such as background music and keeping up-to-date reading materials in the examination room to absorb the attention of patients awaiting the physician—may help to alleviate this potential breach of the patient’s confidentiality.

A protocol should be in place so that reports, such as laboratory and x-ray studies, are seen and initialed by the physician before filing. Patients should be encouraged to call for the results of their tests (especially mammograms, because such results can be lost in the mail), but the physician may be held responsible for such reports. The patient can be made aware of this responsibility through verbal reminders as well as written notices posted conspicuously in the office.

Because the failure to diagnose breast cancer is a leading cause of malpractice claims, it is prudent for the gynecologist to have a clear and sound approach to patients presenting with a breast mass or symptom. Chapter 41 outlines the risk factors, diagnosis, and treatment of breast diseases. From a risk management approach, documentation is critical. It is prudent that the patient’s medical record document the date the patient first noticed the change, the symptoms noted, and a detailed description of the physician’s findings. Drawings of the mass showing the location and exact measurements of the change are most helpful. In some malpractice claims involving breast cancer, the patient has alleged that she told the gynecologist about breast symptoms on prior visits. Thus, it would be prudent for the gynecologist to document whether the patient had any breast symptoms or symptoms or complaints on every visit. Recommended referrals, as well as follow-up and return visits, should be recorded. A system of in-office chart follow-up for these high-risk patients is prudent. Reports of mammograms or other studies should exhibit evidence of review by the physician. If the patient fails to follow advice, the office records should note this, along with all attempts to contact the patient.

Billing and financial records have no place in the medical records. They must be kept separate. A confidential area should be made available for the patient to discuss the fees, insurance matters, or the bill. It is strongly advisable that the physician review every bill before it is turned over to a collection agency. The act of turning a bill over to a collection agency has been the start of many malpractice claims. When records are requested, make sure to send only copies and only after the appropriate patient authorization has been obtained. Most states have laws that prohibit the transfer of records that deal with drug and alcohol abuse or mental illness without the express authorization of the patient. If the physician sends such information without proper authorization, a separate cause of action can be brought against the physician. Therefore, it is important to be aware of the individual state’s laws. Always retain the original copy for as long as your state requires or the statute of limitation exists. Information of this nature usually can be obtained from the state medical board or medical society.

HOSPITAL SETTING

The hospital setting is the source of most events that lead to malpractice claims involving the surgeon. Patients entering the hospital are under considerable stress and may not comprehend the full scope of their therapy. Patients should be made aware that perfect outcomes cannot be guaranteed. They should be made to understand that the chance of an unfavorable outcome is not necessarily related to the quality of care but can occur virtually in any medical encounter. Results should never be guaranteed, but realistic expectations should be given, especially when performing corrective surgery, such as procedures for the treatment of urinary incontinence.

The hospital chart is an important vehicle for communicating significant information needed by the entire health team. Because what is not written cannot be presumed to not have occurred, it is critical that the chart is complete, thorough, and that documentation be recorded contemporaneously. The chart should reflect the outline for...
the plan of management, both current and future, using only approved abbreviations. By clearly writing out the plan of management, especially in complicated cases, the entire health team is able to understand the approach to the treatment and respond in a positive and appropriate manner. Electronic medical records that contain the history, physical exam, physician progress notes, nursing notes, and lab and radiology reports, and that are readily accessible to the entire health care team have been shown to improve patient care.

Daily progress notes are generally advisable; however, more frequent notes are appropriate in complicated cases. Progress notes should not be dated, but also timed. The timing of notes can be most beneficial from a risk management point of view. When a change in the patient’s condition develops and the surgeon is notified of the patient’s status, the response time may be critical in establishing the standard of care. The surgeon should develop the habit of timing all notes so that the habit becomes well established. Thus, the surgeon is less likely to forget to time a note in a critical situation.

Consultation should be encouraged, especially in complicated cases. Most patients appreciate this concern and understand that it is impossible with today’s rapidly expanding advances in technology for one physician to have complete and superior knowledge in all situations. When consultation is obtained, to avoid confusion and lack of direction in the patient’s therapy, one physician should be appointed to coordinate therapies and supervise critical orders.

The surgeon should carefully review all nursing notes on a daily basis. When there is a discrepancy between the observations of the physician and the nurse, the differences should be discussed. Then both parties should write clarifying notes that make sure that the physician and the nurse, because mistakes can be made when what is heard was not what was intended. For example, the nurse may misinterpret an order for 16 units of insulin as 60 units of insulin, thus it is prudent to say “one-six” instead of 16 when giving a verbal numerical order. Never prescribe by ampules, vials, or volume, but rather by milligrams. Avoid the symbols < for less than and > for greater than, but rather write out the words for the symbols, as the symbols have been misinterpreted, leading to significant errors.

Abbreviations used in physician orders have led to many errors in interpretation. The Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations (JCAHO) has issued a minimum list of dangerous abbreviations that must be on every hospital’s do not use list to be in compliance with accreditation requirements (Table 4.1). These abbreviations should not be used in any of their forms, including upper- or lowercase or with or without periods. Other abbreviations that should be considered for prohibition are:

- mg (for microgram); use mcg
- D/C (for discharge); write out discharge
- H.S. (for half-strength); write out half-strength
- c.c. (for cubic centimeter); use mL
- T.I.W. (for three times a week); write out three or 3 times a week
- Q.I.D. (for four times a day); write out four or 4 times a day

Table 4.1: JCAHO FORBIDDEN ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ABBREVIATION</th>
<th>POTENTIAL PROBLEM</th>
<th>PREFERRED TERM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>U or u BU</td>
<td>Mistaken as zero, four, or cc</td>
<td>Write “unit”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q.D. and QOD</td>
<td>Mistaken as IV (intravenous) or 10 (ten)</td>
<td>Write “every day”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tailing zero (1.0 mg) or lack of leading zero (1 mg)</td>
<td>Decimal point is missed or obscured (leading to a tenfold error)</td>
<td>Never write a zero by itself after a decimal point (1 mg) and always use a zero before a decimal point (0.1 mg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS, MSO4 and MgSO4</td>
<td>Confused for one another; can mean morphine sulfate or magnesium sulfate</td>
<td>Write “morphine sulfate” or “magnesium sulfate”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

JCAHO, Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations.

It is imperative that derogatory remarks not be made in a patient’s record. Physicians should never criticize the care rendered by another physician in front of the patient, nurse, or professional liability and risk management for the gynecologic surgeon. 45
in an area where others may hear the discussion. There are proper avenues to take if one is dealing with an incompetent physician. To avoid breaching patient’s confidentiality, idle discussions with other health care providers on elevators, in halls, or in the operating theater are to be avoided.

Follow-up and discharge care should be explained thoroughly to the patient. In an outpatient surgical center, at the time of discharge, many patients may still be under the influence of anesthesia or drugs that cloud their memories. Therefore, it is prudent not only to give verbal but also written discharge instructions. These instructions should cover medication, activity, diet, wound care, and follow-up appointments. The dose of any medication as well as the duration of its use should be noted clearly. Abbreviations that may not be understood by the patient are to be avoided. The physician’s answering service and emergency phone numbers should be provided. A copy of the discharge instructions should be given to the patient, and one should be retained in the chart.

When a complication or less than desirable outcome occurs, the surgeon should promptly have a frank discussion concerning the matter with the patient and other significant family members. Spending the time and providing quality information in an honest and thorough manner is appreciated by the patient and the family and often diffuses a potential malpractice claim. Saying that you are sorry is not an admission of guilt. Most patients, when given a reasonable explanation of a less than desirable outcome, accept our human limitations, but disgruntled patients sue. It is important to convey the fact that medicine remains an art and is not an exact science.

Hospital rules and protocols are established to insure uniform quality of care. The physician or nurse’s failure to comply with these rules and protocols can be interpreted as a violation of the standard of care. Therefore, it behooves all members of the health team to know and understand the appropriate rules and protocols. If the surgeon feels that he or she needs to alter a rule or protocol for a patient’s benefit, he or she should document the reason contemporaneously in the hospital chart.

Surgeons must stay abreast of current technological advances; however, before using these advances, they must be adequately trained. A borderline skilled surgeon who is learning new procedures on private patients without the patient’s knowledge or approval is not only risking a malpractice suit, but also may be accused of practicing under questionable ethical standards.

The resident or house officer adds another potential risk to the patient’s safety. All residents or house officers practice as trainees under the supervision of the training institution and the clinical faculty, or full-time faculty, are usually held accountable for their own actions. Thus, it is important for the surgeon in a supervisory role to not only review the chart, but also assess the patient. If the supervising physician disagrees with a resident’s evaluation, a discrete discussion of the matter should be held with the resident. Then the surgeon and resident should document the appropriate findings and note the rationale behind his or her change in observations or therapy.

On initial contact with the patient, residents or house officers should convey the fact that they are trainees or residents, especially when training in a private hospital or facility. The patient has the right to refuse treatment by a resident, but most accept the advantage of such supervised training. It is prudent to document the acceptance or refusal of medical care from the resident or house officer, especially in an institution that is not directly connected with a medical school. When the patient is admitted to the hospital under the care of a resident, the resident should go over the reason for hospitalization. They should discuss the recommended therapy, appropriate alternatives, potential benefits, risks, and complications of the proposed therapy. The resident should only perform those procedures, without supervision, for which he or she has been fully trained. If a patient’s condition requires expertise beyond the resident’s capabilities, the resident must inform the supervisory physician of the nature of the patient’s condition and the need for procedures beyond the resident’s expertise. If a complication arises, the resident, preferably in the presence of the attending physician, or a nurse, or other member of the medical team should take time to thoroughly and openly discuss the complication and its impact on the patient’s subsequent treatment and hospital stay. This conversation should then be documented in the chart.

**MANAGED CARE AND SOCIALIZED MEDICINE**

Managed care was created in an effort to control the rapidly rising U.S. health care costs. The ideal goals of managed care were to reduce cost, improve clinical outcomes, and control the utilization of resources; however, these goals have not always been achieved. Managed care has become the dominant form of health care delivery in the United States and has had a tremendous impact on physicians as various types of managed care programs have rapidly replaced FFS. Managed care continues to evolve in an effort to meet the demands of the health care industry. At present, the major types of plans include: (a) health maintenance organization (HMO), which also includes independent practice associations (IPA) and preferred provider organizations (PPO); and (b) point-of-service (POS) plans. HMO plans provide or arrange coverage of specific health care services for a fixed prepaid fee. In-network providers required by the members then provide the service. In the IPA-type HMO, the plan contracts with individual physicians who maintain their own independent practice, offices, medical records, and staff but see HMO members. POS plans contract with independent providers who provide services at a discounted rate. Members in this plan generally use in-network providers but are permitted to use out-of-network providers as long as the member is willing to pay a higher out-of-pocket fee.

POS plans generally offer the cost control of an HMO plan with the choice of the FFS plans. This is accomplished by allowing members in the plan to choose from an HMO, PPO, or indemnity plan at the time the service is rendered. At present, POS plans have become the fastest growing managed care type plan.

In any managed care plan, financial conflicts can give rise to risks and liabilities for the physician not seen in an FFS form of medicine. Problems can potentially arise when a physician is paid through a capitation scheme or receives year-end bonuses or other monetary rewards for utilization of services. In capitation, the physician receives a fixed dollar amount to cover the cost of health care services for enrolled members of the plan. This per capita rate is paid on a periodic basis whether the physician does or does not provide service to all members of the plan. This is intended to reduce overuse of services. Although this system of payment is a powerful incentive for the physician to manage patients as efficiently as possible, conflicts can arise when services provided by the physician exceed the financial reimbursement from the plan. Such conflicts of
interest can impair the physician’s moral judgment, threaten the patient’s health and well-being, and threaten the physician’s professional credibility. The physician cannot jeopardize the patient’s care because of financial constraint placed on him or her by the managed care plan. Physicians must make patient-care decisions based on what is best for the patient even if such decisions adversely affect the physician’s financial status. The patient’s care should not be compromised because of financial constraints or treatment that are available, even if the plan does not cover the cost of the preferred method of treatment, drug, test, or device. In such cases, the physician must become the patient’s advocate and provide the care required to meet the patient’s needs, even if the physician is not compensated for the care rendered. Legal precedents have established that the physician should act as a patient advocate in disputes over the financial cost of appropriate treatment and should attempt to convince the managed care plan administrators that the care is not only warranted, but that the care is the most appropriate for the patient’s condition. Failure to practice within the standard of care because of the financial constraints of a managed care plan is never a defense should a malpractice suit arise from such an incident.

Under managed care plans in the United States and socialized medical plans in Europe, certain fundamental ethical values have become endangered owing to the financial constraints placed on the access to certain treatments, tests, or drugs, and the limitation to the availability of these treatments in a timely manner. These include fiduciary beneficence (the physician’s obligation to act for the benefit of the patient), patient autonomy (the patient’s right to make informed judgments regarding her care), and justice (the right to an adequate level of health care that is both available and accessible to all individuals). The physician must remain a strong advocate for the patient. The physician must have input into the decision-making process to be sure that resources are allocated in a proper and just way so that cost containment and economic efficiency are morally legitimate goals that enhance rather than undermine the quality of health care. Physicians must continue to inform the patient of the best treatment options available, whether or not these options are covered by the managed care plan or socialized medicine. They must remain a strong advocate for their patient’s rights and should refuse to participate in medical plans or schemes that have policies that are deemed unethical.

COMMUNICATION

Good communication is a major key to preventing malpractice claims. It has often been stated that satisfied patients are less likely to sue, but disgruntled patients will sue. It has been shown that even physicians with borderline skills but excellent bedside manners are less likely to be sued than well-trained board-certified specialists who lack communication skills. Initial impressions are usually long lasting. Therefore, it is important on the first visit to convey the physician’s philosophy and the nature of his or her practice. It is prudent to explain what the physician expects from the patient in this relationship because expectations and responsibilities exist for both the patient and physician. Patients are generally looking for a physician who is easy to talk to and will answer questions, be accessible, be fair, show respect, and provide good care for a reasonable cost. Inattention, indignation, and injury can be not only the cause for a suit, but in combination also dramatically increase the probability of a suit.

Surgeons should be aware that the majority of what a patient perceives is obtained through nonverbal communication. Patients generally retain only 30% of verbal communication. Body language, posture, and facial expressions all convey strong messages. For example, the surgeon who stands with his or her hand on the door and asks, do you have any questions, sends a strong message that he or she really does not have the time to answer questions; that his or her time is more important than the concerns of the patient. Simple things such as sitting in a relaxed position when the physician discusses a patient’s condition or treatment generally convey a feeling of caring and concern. If notes or prescriptions are written in the examination room, the surgeon should make every attempt to face the patient while performing this task. The surgeon’s back does not convey a sense of caring or concern.

In the hospital, the physician has to write daily progress notes and orders. The patient’s bedside is an excellent place to write them. The surgeon can explain the orders and therapy as they are written. Patients who are medicated have a slower reaction time and tend to easily forget things that are important to them. The silence that may ensue as the surgeon writes a note or thinks about the management gives the patient time to recall those important questions. This type of interaction builds trust and gives the patient the feeling that she is actively participating in her care and therapy.

Surgeons often do not realize the significant degree of stress a patient undergoes while she lies on the operating table before being anesthetized. The simple act of holding the patient’s hand at this time can not only have a calming effect, but also demonstrate the physician’s concern and care for the patient’s well-being. In the operating room, little things such as warming speculum on a heating pad in the examination table drawer, providing adequate areas to dress and undress, and having mirrors in the examination room all help to convey a sense of caring for the patient’s needs. During the preoperative visits, patients will often mention that their physicians are praying for them. The surgeon may request that prayers are also offered to guide the surgeon’s hands and judgment to bring about a cure from the malady requiring surgery. Some surgeons are known to offer a prayer at the start of an operation. Patients generally appreciate this expression of faith and sensitivity. These gestures also tend to strengthen the patient-surgeon bond.

Good communication encourages questions and involvement of family members, especially partners. Therefore, it is important that the physician, preferably, or a designated nurse or physician assistant take the necessary time to answer the patient’s questions and address concerns in a setting where respect and confidentiality can be maintained easily. Beware of the patient with the “great expectation syndrome.” Physicians have greatly oversold their abilities and have created false expectations that have led to unjustified expectations. If the surgeon feels that the patient expects more than he or she can reasonably provide, it is prudent to refer this patient to another physician.

When it becomes necessary to terminate the doctor-patient relationship, the surgeon must remember that this relationship is a contract, be it informal or implied, and certain steps are required to break the contract. The patient should be sent a letter by certified mail, return receipt requested. The letter should state a specific date for the termination to occur, usually 30 days from the date of mailing. The letter should contain a release for the patient’s records. The patient should be instructed to sign and return the release before forwarding any of the patient’s records. Always send a copy of the records, and never the original records, to the physician of her choice. The physician may include a list of other gynecologists in the patient’s area or refer her to the local medical society for appropriate referral. These letters of termination need not go into great detail as to
why the contract is being terminated. It is perfectly acceptable to say that, owing to a personality conflict, the surgeon does not feel that he or she can provide the quality of care the patient should receive. Thus, the physician is requesting that the patient seek care elsewhere. The physician is required to treat any emergency that might arise before the specified termination date.

Proper communication can result in physicians getting other physicians sued. Negative comments made about other physicians continue to be a major source of problems. As Walt Kelly's cartoon character Pogo once stated, “We have met the enemy and he is us.” Nonprofessional opinions written in the medical record can open the treating surgeon, hospital, or other health care members to malpractice actions. Careless talk, second-guessing colleagues, and open debate, carried out in public areas, regarding the patient's treatment or status can all lead to unwarranted malpractice claims.

In situations involving multiple physicians, such as a group practice, communication between those physicians is extremely important. The medical records must be a complete and thorough source of this information. The records should reflect clear and factual accounts so that confusion does not arise regarding the patient's treatment or status. Lack of such communication can increase the risk of liability claims. In group practices, it is prudent to have set aside a specific time to discuss patients, especially those with complicated courses.

A physician should know his or her limitations and not let an inflated or unrealistic ego prevent appropriate consultations when the patient's condition may exceed his or her expertise. Continuous and appropriate communication with the consulting physicians ensures that the patient receives the highest quality of care, the goal all physicians strive to achieve.

**INFORMED CONSENT**

Informed consent is a legal doctrine that requires physicians to obtain consent for treatment, whether it is diagnostic or therapeutic, medical or surgical, invasive or noninvasive. Without informed consent, the physician can be held liable for violating the patient's rights regardless of whether the treatment was appropriate and rendered within the standard of care. Failure to obtain informed consent may result in the physician being accused of battery under common law.

Failure to provide informed consent was the primary charge in 2% of malpractice claims in the 2003 ACOG survey. This was a decrease from 5% recorded in the 1999 ACOG survey. The failure to provide adequate informed consent was found to be a secondary issue in almost one third of malpractice claims. Informed consent is an ongoing process that includes the exchange of information and the development of choices. Informed consent is a process of ongoing shared information. Physicians must disclose varying amounts of information based on the individual's personal needs and peculiar circumstances for reasonable communication. A physician's biases, the patient's rights, and confidentiality may also create problems while making ethical decisions. Conflicts of interest may arise. These conflicts may occur when the patient's well-being conflicts with managed care, physician's financial interests, treatment protocols, care plans, or practice guidelines. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists has published excellent texts to address these concerns in detail.

Courts have recognized and states have adopted three different degrees of disclosure in informed consent. The first, the professional or reasonable physician standard, was prevalent before the 1970s. This degree of disclosure was based on the type and amount of information that a reasonable physician would tell the patient about the risks and benefits of a particular treatment. This paternalistic approach began to give way in the 1970s to the second type of disclosure, the materiality or reasonable patient viewpoint standard. This gave patients more input into the decision-making process. Under this standard, the physician had to disclose what a “reasonable person” would want to know under similar circumstances concerning the risks and benefits of a particular treatment. This concept is based on the patient's need rather than the professional perception of what the patient should know. The third, but not widely held, disclosure is the subjective patient viewpoint. Under this disclosure, physicians must disclose varying amounts of information based on the individual's personal needs and peculiar requirements. This form renders a standard extremely difficult for physicians to understand and apply. The need for informed consent can be suspended in an emergency situation, but specific criteria must be met for a situation to be declared an emergency. The patient must be unconscious or incapacitated and suffering from a life-threatening or serious health-threatening condition requiring immediate medical treatment. It is important in these situations for the physician to document the following: a description of the patient's condition at the time of the emergency, the reason the emergency existed, and an explanation for the need for immediate attention.

Patients have the right to refuse treatment after receiving informed consent. Under these circumstances, for legal protection, the physician should document the reason the patient gave for refusal of the proposed treatment. The reason the physician felt that the proposed treatment was indicated, and the possible jeopardy to the future health and well-being of the patient that might occur from the refusal of the treatment.
It would be prudent to have the patient sign a statement acknowledging the refusal for treatment and listing the potential adverse consequences that might occur. Another possible solution to informed refusal is to have the patient write a note in their own hand, in the clinical record, that not only states that the patient understands the consequence of refusal of treatment but goes on to list the potential adverse complications of her refusal, even during death if that is appropriate. The patient should then sign her statement, and the physician and preferably a third party—such as a nurse, or preferably a family member—should witness the note.

The office setting provides the best environment for providing informed consent for several reasons. In this setting, the time for adequate consideration and adequate discussion is provided. Family members who have a definitive influence on the patient's decision can attend or be encouraged to attend. If the physician lacks the ability or time to provide the necessary adequate informed consent, the physician can delegate this responsibility to a nurse practitioner or physician assistant who has been previously trained to provide informed consent and is able to answer the patient's questions. Pamphlets, audiovisual, and even interactive visuals can greatly assist in this process. Because people rarely retain more than 30% of verbal communications, the average patient leaves the physician's office having forgotten or not understanding most of what was shown and explained. Thus, the more the patient receives in writing or by audiovisual instruction, the better is her understanding.

Once the process of informed consent is complete, the physician can document the record to reflect when it took place, what was disclosed, that the patient had time to ask questions and have her questions answered to her satisfaction, and that the patient then requested the proposed treatment. Well-informed patients are more likely to have unrealistic expectations and sue when these expectations are not met. Therefore, the best protection to a malpractice claim may come from taking full advantage of the legal doctrine of informed consent.

The degree of disclosure in informed consent varies from state to state. Some states require elaborate consent, others much less. When a complication develops that was disclosed, that the patient had time to ask questions and have her questions answered to her satisfaction, and that the patient then requested the proposed treatment. Well-informed patients are more likely to have unrealistic expectations and sue when these expectations are not met. Therefore, the best protection to a malpractice claim may come from taking full advantage of the legal doctrine of informed consent.

There is almost universal agreement that informed consent should encompass the following six areas:

1. Diagnosis
2. Nature and purpose of the procedure
3. Risks of the procedure
4. Likelihood of success
5. Reasonable alternatives
6. Prognosis if the treatment is refused

Figure 4.1 is a general surgical informed consent form meeting these requirements. There are several particular points to note. Firstly, throughout the form, the words “I request” or “request for surgery” are included. These words are used to place greater emphasis on the patient's responsibility for her choice in selecting the proposed procedure. Next, a list of the “general risks of surgery” is provided. This list not only covers those risks that can arise from any surgical procedure but also the risks associated with anesthesia. In describing the risks and complications of the procedures, the words “may include but are not limited to such complications as” have been added and are used to indicate that the physician did not attempt to list every potential complication but rather those that a reasonable patient would expect to know before making a decision. In the section on alternative forms of treatment, the words “such as” indicate that only those alternatives considered to be appropriate need to be listed. Finally, space is provided to list any additional materials that the patient was given or might have reviewed in making her decision. If a claim is made by the patient that the decision was made in a jury the situation surrounding the alleged act of negligence and use the same material in his or her defense to show that a reasonable person was properly informed.

Figures 4.2 through 4.7 are informed consent forms covering the six most common gynecologic operative procedures. These forms describe each procedure in words that a patient can comprehend easily. A reading specialist has reviewed these informed consent forms and placed them in a language level of an individual with a sixth-grade education, which is generally that used by daily newspapers. Each of these forms covers the risks and complications as well as alternatives that apply to the specific procedure along with the “general risks of surgery.”

Figure 4.2, the informed consent and request for dilation and curettage, hysteroscopy, and cervical biopsy, lists the most common complication seen—namely, perforation of the uterus. It also notes that the procedure can have an adverse impact on subsequent pregnancies.

Figure 4.3, the informed consent and request for hysterectomy, covers complications seen, including injuries to the gastrointestinal tract, the most frequently seen complication. It also discusses the risk associated with blood transfusion.

Figure 4.4, the informed consent for laparoscopy-assisted vaginal hysterectomy or LAVH, goes over the complications of hysterectomy and the complications that laparoscopy may add to the procedure.

Figure 4.5, the informed consent and request for sterilization, clearly states that the procedure is not designed to be reversible. Many patients have a sterilization procedure performed in their twenties and, in this age of divorce and remarriage, later request that the sterilization be reversed. When the procedure cannot be reversed, patients may sue with a claim of “lost opportunities.” This statement in the informed consent is designed to cover that particular area. Ectopic pregnancy, one of the known and accepted risks of any sterilization procedure, is clearly spelled out.

Figure 4.6, the informed consent and request for diagnostic and therapeutic laparoscopy, reviews the more commonly seen complications of injury to the gastrointestinal or genitourinary tracts and vascular injury. The form also notes the risk of exploratory laparotomy. This provides an opportunity for the physician to discuss this potential extension of a laparoscopy procedure so that the physician is not hesitant to proceed with laparotomy when the findings require that procedure.

Figure 4.7, the informed consent for repair of relaxation of pelvic organs and/or the correction of urinary incontinence problems, notes that recurrence of urinary incontinence is a potential complication. This is designed so that false expectations from the surgical procedure are not created.

These procedure-specific informed consent forms are detailed but have been found to be acceptable to patients. They also have made the defense of surgical complications much easier, especially when there is no negligence.

The legal requirements of informed consent vary from state to state and jurisdiction to jurisdiction. The surgeon should be aware of the degree of specificity required in specific laws on informed consent that exist in his or her state. County or state medical societies are usually able to assist in providing this necessary information.
INFORMED CONSENT AND REQUEST FOR SURGERY

I, ___________________________________, request Dr.____________________________________________
and his/her associates / assistants to perform upon me (name of procedure):

____________________________________________________________________________

Diagnosis and Procedure: The following has been explained to me in general terms and I understand that:

My condition has been diagnosed as: _____________________________________________________________
The nature of the procedure is: __________________________________________________________________
The purpose of this procedure is to: ______________________________________________________________

General Risks of Surgery: As a result of the performance of this procedure there may be general risks involved
such as: INFECTION, ALLERGIC REACTION, DISFIGURING SCAR, SEVERE LOSS OF BLOOD, LOSS OF
FUNCTION OF ANY LIMB OR ORGAN, PARALYSIS, PARAPLEGIA OR QUADRIPLEGIA, BRAIN
DAMAGE, CARDIAC ARREST, OR DEATH. In addition to these general risks, there may be other possible risks
involved in this procedure. These risks and/or complications may include but are not limited to such complications
as: _________________________________________________________________________________________
___________________________________________________________________________________________

Likelihood of Success: The likelihood of success of the above procedure is: () Good () Fair () Poor

Prospects: If I choose not to have the above procedure, my prognosis (future medical condition) is:

Alternative Forms of Treatment, such as: __________________________________________
have been explained to me and I have chosen this surgical procedure as my method of treatment.

I understand and accept that during the procedure unexpected or unforeseen circumstances may
make it necessary to do an extension of the original procedure or another procedure that is not named above. I
request Dr. _____________________________ and his/her associates or assistants of his/her choice to perform
those procedures that they judge to be necessary.

BY SIGNING THIS FORM, I ACKNOWLEDGE THAT I HAVE READ OR HAD THIS FORM READ AND
EXPLAINED TO ME AND THAT I FULLY UNDERSTAND ITS CONTENTS.

I HAVE BEEN GIVEN AMPLE OPPORTUNITY TO ASK QUESTIONS AND ANY QUESTIONS I HAVE
ASKED HAVE BEEN ANSWERED OR EXPLAINED IN A SATISFACTORY MANNER. ALL BLANKS OR
STATEMENTS REQUIRING COMPLETION WERE FILLED IN AND ALL STATEMENTS WITH WHICH I
DISAGREE WERE MARKED OUT BEFORE I SIGNED THIS FORM.

I accept that medicine is not an exact science and understand that no guarantees can be given as to the results.

Witness ____________________________
Person giving consent

Relationship to patient if not the patient

Patient unable to sign because of:

Additional materials used, if any, during the informed consent process for this procedure include:
____________________________________________________________________________________________
____________________________________________________________________________________________

Figure 4.1. Informed consent and request for surgery.
These alternative treatments have been explained to me, and I have elected this surgical procedure as my method of treatment.

I understand and accept that during the procedure unexpected or unforeseen circumstances may make it necessary to do an extension of the original procedure or another procedure that is not named above. I request that Dr. ___________________ and associates or assistants of his/her choice to perform those procedures that they judge to be necessary.

BY SIGNING THIS FORM, I ACKNOWLEDGE THAT I HAVE READ OR HAD THIS FORM READ AND EXPLAINED TO ME AND THAT I FULLY UNDERSTAND ITS CONTENTS.

I HAVE BEEN GIVEN AMple OPPORTUNITY TO ASK QUESTIONS AND ANY QUESTIONS I HAVE ASKED HAVE BEEN ANSWERED OR EXPLAINED IN A SATISFACTORY MANNER. ALL BLANKS OR STATEMENTS REQUIRING COMPLETION WERE FILLED IN AND ALL STATEMENTS WITH WHICH I DISAGREE WERE MARKED OUT BEFORE I SIGNED THIS FORM.

I accept that medicine is not an exact science and understand that no guarantees can be given as to the results. Understanding these limitations, I request that Dr. ___________________ and his/her associates/assistants to proceed with surgery.

Alternative forms of treatment such as:
1. Office biopsy of the lining of my uterus (endometrial biopsy) or cervix (cervical biopsy)
2. Hormone therapy
3. Do-nothing and accept the consequences of my present condition

These alternative treatments have been explained to me, and I have elected this surgical procedure as my method of treatment.

I understand and accept that during the procedure unexpected or unforeseen circumstances may make it necessary to do an extension of the original procedure or another procedure that is not named above. I request that Dr. ___________________ and associates or assistants of his/her choice to perform those procedures that they judge to be necessary.

I, ______________________________________, request Dr. ___________________________________________ and his/her associates/assistants to perform upon me (Circle procedure to be performed):
1. Dilation & Curettage--stretch open the canal of my uterus and scrape the lining of my uterus to obtain tissue for study.
2. Hysteroscopy--look inside my uterus with a small telescope and possibly remove any abnormal tissue, such as fibroid tumors, polyps, or scar tissue.
3. Cervical Biopsy--remove tissue from tip of my uterus for tissue study.

Diagnosis and Procedure: The following has been explained to me in general terms and I understand that:

My condition has been diagnosed as: ________________________________________________________________

The purpose of this procedure is to: ________________________________________________________________

General Risks of Surgery: As a result of the performance of this procedure there may be general risks involved such as InfectIon, alleRgic reAction, disfiguring sARc, seveRе loss of blood, loss of function of any limb or organ, Paralysis, Paraplegia or Quadriplegia, Brain damage, Cardiac Arrest, or Death. In addition to these general risks, there may be other possible risks involved in this procedure. These risks and/or complications may include but are not limited to such complications as:

1. Perforation of my uterus (womb)—that is, one of the instruments might go through the wall of the uterus and make it necessary to do an immediate or future operation that could include the removal of my uterus and/or tubes and ovaries.
2. Biopsy of my cervix—which may make it difficult for me to get pregnant or carry a pregnancy to term or 9 months.
3. Injury to my cervix, uterus, tubes, and bowel—which could make necessary immediate and/or future surgical procedures

Likelihood of Success: The likelihood of success of the above procedure is: ( ) Good ( ) Fair ( ) Poor

Prognosis: If I choose not to have the above procedure, my prognosis (future medical condition) is:

Additional materials used, if any, during the informed consent process for this procedure include:

____________________________________________________________________________________________

____________________________________________________________________________________________

Date: _________________________ Witness: _______________________________________

FIGURE 4.2. Informed consent and request for dilation and curettage, hysteroscopy, or cervical biopsy.
General Topics Affecting Gynecologic Surgery Practice

INFORMED CONSENT And REQUEST FOR HYSTERECTOMY

I, _________________________________, request Dr. ________________________________ and his/her associates / assistants to perform upon me: (Circle procedure of choice)

1. Removal of uterus (womb)
2. Possible removal of tubes and/or ovaries
3. Possible removal of appendix

Diagnosis and Procedure: The following has been explained to me in general terms and I understand that:

My condition has been diagnosed as: _______________________________________________________________

The nature of the procedure is: __________________________________________________________________

The purpose of this procedure is: _________________________________________________________________

General Risks of Surgery: As a result of the performance of this procedure there may be general risks involved such as: INFECTION, ALLERGIC REACTION, DISFIGURING SCAR, SEVERE LOSS OF BLOOD, LOSS OF FUNCTION OF ANY LIMB OR ORGAN, PARALYSIS, PARAPLEGIA or QUADRIPLEGIA, BRAIN DAMAGE, CARDIAC ARREST, or DEATH. In addition to these general risks, there may be other possible risks involved in this procedure. These risks and/or complications may include but are not limited to such complications as:

1. Injury to bowel, bladder, or ureter, which could result in a fistula formation, an opening between bowel, bladder, ureter, and the vagina and/or skin
2. Need for a colostomy or a second operation to repair any of the above injuries
3. Possible need for hormones
4. Blood loss necessitating transfusion, which carries the risk of exposure to AIDS or the hepatitis virus
5. Pelvic pain due to adhesions, scar tissue, or residual ovary

Likelihood of Success: The likelihood of success of the above procedure is: () Good () Fair () Poor

Prognosis: If I choose not to have the hysterectomy, my prognosis (future medical condition) is: __________________________________________________________

Alternative Forms of Treatment such as:
1. Do nothing and accept the consequences of my present condition
2. Dilatation & Curettage procedure, laser treatment, or removal of fibroid tumors
3. Uterine artery embolization
4. Hormone therapy

These alternative treatments have been explained to me, and I have elected this surgical procedure as my method of treatment.

I understand and accept that during the procedure unexpected or unforeseen circumstances may make it necessary to do an extension of the original procedure or another procedure that is not named above. I request that Dr. ________________________________ and associates or assistants of his/her choice perform those procedures that they judge to be necessary.

BY SIGNING THIS FORM, I ACKNOWLEDGE THAT I HAVE READ OR HAD THIS FORM READ AND EXPLAINED TO ME AND THAT I FULLY UNDERSTAND ITS CONTENTS.

I HAVE BEEN GIVEN AMPLE OPPORTUNITY TO ASK QUESTIONS AND ANY QUESTIONS I HAVE ASKED HAVE BEEN ANSWERED OR EXPLAINED IN A SATISFACTORY MANNER. ALL BLANKS OR STATEMENTS REQUIRING COMPLETION WERE FILLED IN AND ALL STATEMENTS WITH WHICH I DISAGREE WERE MARKED OUT BEFORE I SIGNED THIS FORM.

I accept that medicine is not an exact science and understand that no guarantees can be given as to the results. Understanding these limitations, I request that Dr. ________________________________ and his/her associates/assistants to proceed with surgery.

Witness: ______________________________________________________ Person giving consent

Relationship to patient if not the patient: ______________________________

Patient unable to sign because of: ______________________________

Additional materials used, if any, during the informed consent process for this procedure include: __________________________________________________________________________

Date: _________________________ Witness: _______________________________________

FIGURE 4.3. Informed consent and request for hysterectomy.
INFORMED CONSENT AND REQUEST FOR LAPAROSCOPIC ASSISTED VAGINAL HYSTERECTOMY (LAVH)

I, _________________________________, request Dr. ________________________________ and his/her associates / assistants to perform upon me: (Circle procedure of choice)

1. Removal of uterus (womb)  
2. Possible removal of tubes and/or ovaries  
3. Possible removal of appendix  
4. Repair the following defects: _____________________________________________________

Diagnosis and Procedure: The following has been explained to me in general terms and I understand that:

My condition has been diagnosed as: _______________________________________________________________

The nature of the procedure is: __________________________________________________________________

The purpose of this procedure is to: ________________________________________________________________

General Risks of Surgery: As a result of the performance of this procedure there may be general risks involved such as: INFECTION, ALLERGIC REACTION, DISFIGURING SCAR, SEVERE LOSS OF BLOOD, LOSS OF FUNCTION OF ANY LIMB OR ORGAN, PARALYSIS, PARAPLEGIA, OR QUADRIPLEGIA, BRAIN DAMAGE, CARDIAC ARREST, OR DEATH. In addition to these general risks, there may be other possible risks involved in this procedure. These risks and/or complications may include but are not limited to such complications as:

1. Injury to blood vessels, bowel, bladder, ureter (tube that connects kidney to bladder) by way of puncture and/or burn  
2. Injury to bowel, bladder, or ureter, which could result in a fistula formation, an opening between bowel, bladder, ureter, and the vagina and/or skin  
3. Need for a colostomy or a second operation to repair any of the above injuries  
4. Possible need for hormones  
5. Blood loss necessitating transfusion, which carries the risk of exposure to AIDS or the hepatitis virus  
6. Pelvic pain due to adhesions, scar tissue, or residual ovary  
7. Embolism, which is the spreading of a gas or other fluid into other parts or organs of the body  
8. Hernia in the incision site  
9. Necessity for an exploratory laparotomy, which is the making of a larger incision through which the necessary surgery can be performed

Likelihood of Success: The likelihood of success of the above procedure is: () Good () Fair () Poor

Prognosis: If I choose not to have the hysterectomy, my prognosis (future medical condition) is: ________________________________________________________________

Alternative Forms of Treatment such as:

1. Do nothing and accept the consequences of my present condition  
2. Dilatation & Curettage procedure, laser treatment, or removal of fibroid tumors  
3. Uterine artery embolization  
4. Hormone therapy

These alternative treatments have been explained to me, and I have elected this surgical procedure as my method of treatment.

I understand and accept that during the procedure unexpected or unforeseen circumstances may make it necessary to do an extension of the original procedure or another procedure that is not named above. I request that Dr. ________________________ and associates or assistants of his/her choice perform those procedures that they judge to be necessary.

BY SIGNING THIS FORM, I ACKNOWLEDGE THAT I HAVE READ OR HAD THIS FORM READ AND EXPLAINED TO ME AND THAT I FULLY UNDERSTAND ITS CONTENTS.

I HAVE BEEN GIVEN AMple OPPORTUNITY TO ASK QUESTIONS AND ANY QUESTIONS I HAVE ASKED HAVE BEEN ANSWERED OR EXPLAINED IN A SATISFACTORY MANNER. ALL BLANKS OR STATEMENTS REQUIRING COMPLETION WERE FILLED IN AND ALL STATEMENTS WITH WHICH I DISAGREE WERE MARKED OUT BEFORE I SIGNED THIS FORM.

I accept that medicine is not an exact science and understand that no guarantees can be given as to the results. Understanding these limitations, I request that Dr. ________________________ and his/her associates/assistants to proceed with surgery.

Witness Person giving consent  
______________________________  ________________________________  
Relationship to patient if not the patient Date: _______________  Patient unable to sign because of: ________________________________

Additional materials used, if any, during the informed consent process for this procedure include: ________________________________________________________________

Date: _______________  Witness: _______________________________________

FIGURE 4.4. Informed consent and request for laparoscopic assisted vaginal hysterectomy (LAVH).
INFORMED CONSENT AND REQUEST FOR STERILIZATION

I request Dr. ____________________________ and his/her associates/assistants________________________ to perform upon me: (Circle procedure of choice)

1. Removal of a portion of the tubes through an incision in my lower abdomen
2. Laparoscopy (“band-aid” incision or incisions)
   a. Coagulation technique: ( ) Bipolar ( ) Unipolar
   b. Bands
   c. Clips
3. Hysteroscopy: insert a telescope-like instrument into my uterus (womb) and place _______________ into the opening of my tubes, inside the uterus, so that the openings will be blocked.

Diagnosis and Procedure: The following has been explained to me in general terms and I understand that:

This procedure is NOT designed to be reversible, and that I am intentionally giving up my ability to become pregnant.

The nature of the procedure is: __________________________________________________________________________

General Risks of Surgery: As a result of the performance of this procedure there may be general risks involved such as: INFECTION, ALLERGIC REACTION, DISFIGURING SCAR, SEVERE LOSS OF BLOOD, LOSS OF FUNCTION OF ANY LIMB OR ORGAN, PARALYSIS, PARAPLEGIA, or QUADRIPLEGIA, BRAIN DAMAGE, CARDIAC ARREST, or DEATH. In addition to these general risks, there may be other possible risks involved in this procedure. These risks and/or complications may include but are not limited to such complications as:

1. Failure to become sterile—that is, I could become pregnant either in my uterus (womb) or have an ectopic pregnancy in my tube or other sites
2. Injury to bowel, bladder, ureter or blood vessel by way of burn and/or perforation, fistula formation (which is an opening that develops between the bowel, bladder, ureter and the vagina and/or or skin), requiring a second operation to repair the fistula
3. Major surgery—requiring colostomy or possible removal of uterus, tubes and/or ovaries
4. Necessity for an exploratory laparotomy (opening the abdomen) to either complete the laparoscopy procedure or repair any injury
5. Blood loss necessitating transfusion, which carries the risk of exposure to AIDS or the hepatitis virus

Likelihood of Success: The likelihood of success of the above procedure is: ( ) Good ( ) Fair ( ) Poor

Prognosis: If I choose not to have the above procedure, my prognosis (future medical condition) is: __________________________________________________________

Alternative Forms of Treatment such as:
1. Diaphragm
2. Birth control pills
3. Intrauterine devices (IUD)
4. Barrier methods, (use of foams, condoms, etc.)
5. Rhythm method
6. Abstinence
7. Vasectomy (male sterilization)

These alternative treatments have been explained to me, and I have elected this surgical procedure as my method of treatment.

I understand and accept that during the procedure unexpected or unforeseen circumstances may make it necessary to do an extension of the original procedure or another procedure that is not named above. I request that Dr. ____________________________ and his/her associates or assistants of his/her choice perform those procedures that they judge to be necessary.

BY SIGNING THIS FORM, I ACKNOWLEDGE THAT I HAVE READ OR HAD THIS FORM READ AND EXPLAINED TO ME AND THAT I FULLY UNDERSTAND ITS CONTENTS.

I HAVE BEEN GIVEN AMPLE OPPORTUNITY TO ASK QUESTIONS AND ANY QUESTIONS I HAVE ASKED HAVE BEEN ANSWERED OR EXPLAINED IN A SATISFACTORY MANNER. ALL BLANKS OR STATEMENTS REQUIRING COMPLETION WERE FILLED IN AND ALL STATEMENTS WITH WHICH I DISAGREE WERE MARKED OUT BEFORE I SIGNED THIS FORM.

I accept that medicine is not an exact science and understand that no guarantees can be given as to the results. Understanding these limitations, I request that Dr. ____________________________ and his/her associates/assistants to proceed with surgery.

Witness: ____________________________
Relationship to patient if not the patient: ____________________________
Patient unable to sign because of: ____________________________

Additional materials used, if any, during the informed consent process for this procedure include: __________________________________________________________

Date: ____________________________ Witness: ____________________________

FIGURE 4.5. Informed consent and request for sterilization.
INFORMED CONSENT And REQUEST FOR LAPAROSCOPY

I, ________________________________, request Dr. ______________________________________________ 
and his/her associates/assistants to perform upon me:

Laparoscopy—which involves inserting a telescopic-like instrument into my abdomen through one or more small 
("band-aid") size incisions to diagnose and/or repair any problems

Diagnosis and Procedure: The following has been explained to me in general terms and I understand that:

My condition has been diagnosed as: ______________________________________________________________ 
The nature of the procedure is: __________________________________________________________________ 
The purpose of this procedure is to: _______________________________________________________________

I understand that treatment may require the use of laser and/or electrocautery during the performance of this surgery.

General Risks of Surgery: As a result of the performance of this procedure there may be general risks involved 
such as: INFECTION, ALLERGIC REACTION, DISFIGURING SCAR, SEVERE LOSS OF BLOOD, 
LOSS OF FUNCTION OF ANY LIMB OR ORGAN, PARALYSIS, PARAPLEGIA or QUADRIPLEGIA, BRAIN 
DAMAGE, CARDIAC ARREST, or DEATH. In addition to these general risks, there may be other possible risks 
involved in this procedure. These risks and/or complications may include but are not limited to such complications as:

1. Injury to blood vessels, bowel, bladder, uterus (tube that connects kidney to bladder) by way of puncture 
and/or burn
2. Fistula formation, which is an opening between the bowel, bladder, or urethra and the vagina and/or skin, 
that requires a second operation to repair
3. Colostomy
4. Embolism, which is the spreading of a gas or other fluid into other parts or organs of the body
5. Hernia in the incision site
6. Injury to the cervix, uterus, or tubes that might require additional surgery or might affect my ability to get 
pregnant or carry a pregnancy to full term (9 months)
7. Necessity for an exploratory laparotomy, which is the making of a larger incision through which the 
necessary surgery can be performed
8. Blood loss necessitating transfusion, which carries the risk of exposure to AIDS or the hepatitis virus

Likelihood of Success: The likelihood of success of the above procedure is: () Good () Fair () Poor

Prognosis: If I choose not to have the above procedure, my prognosis (future medical condition) is:

____________________________________________________________________________________________

Alternative Forms of Treatment 
such as:
1. Do nothing and accept the consequences of my present condition
2. Performance of surgery through a larger incision in my abdomen
4. Drug therapy

These alternative treatments have been explained to me, and I have elected this surgical procedure as my method of 
treatment.

I understand and accept that during the procedure unexpected or unforeseen circumstances may make it necessary to 
do an extension of the original procedure or another procedure that is not named above. I request that Dr. 
________________________ and associates or assistants of his/her choice to perform those 
procedures that they judge to be necessary.

BY SIGNING THIS FORM, I ACKNOWLEDGE THAT I HAVE READ OR HAD THIS FORM READ AND 
EXPLAINED TO ME AND THAT I FULLY UNDERSTAND ITS CONTENTS.

I HAVE BEEN GIVEN AMPLE OPPORTUNITY TO ASK QUESTIONS AND ANY QUESTIONS I HAVE 
ASKED HAVE BEEN ANSWERED OR EXPLAINED IN A SATISFACTORY MANNER. ALL BLANKS OR 
STATEMENTS REQUIRING COMPLETION WERE FILLED IN AND ALL STATEMENTS WITH WHICH I 
DISAGREE WERE MARKED OUT BEFORE I SIGNED THIS FORM.

I accept that medicine is not an exact science and understand that no guarantees can be given as to the results.

Understanding these limitations, I request that Dr. ______________________ and his/her associates/assistants to 
proceed with surgery.

Witness: ___________________________________________Person giving consent

Relationship to patient if not the patient: 

Patient unable to sign because of: ______________________

Additional materials used, if any, during the informed consent process for this procedure include:
____________________________________________________________________________________________
____________________________________________________________________________________________

Date: ___________________________________________Witness: ______________________

Date: ___________________________________________Witness: ______________________

FIGURE 4.6. Informed consent and request for laparoscopy.
INFORMED CONSENT
And
REQUEST FOR REPAIR OF RELAXATION OF PELVIC ORGANS
And/or
CORRECTION OF URINARY INCONTINENCE

I, _________________________________, request Dr. _________________________________ and his/her associates/assistants to perform upon me: (Circle procedure to be performed)

1. Anterior and/or posterior repair, that is, "tack up" the bladder and/or rectum
2. Enterocele repair, a repair to a hernia at the top of the vagina
3. Surgical correction of urinary incontinence problem by the following procedure(s) _____________________________________________________________________

Diagnosis and Procedure: The following has been explained to me in general terms and I understand that:

My condition has been diagnosed as: ________________________________________________________
The nature of the procedure is: _____________________________________________________________
The purpose of this procedure is to: _________________________________________________________

General Risks of Surgery: As a result of the performance of this procedure there may be general risks involved such as: INFECTION, ALLERGIC REACTION, DISFIGURING SCAR, SEVERE LOSS OF BLOOD, LOSS OF FUNCTION OF ANY LIMB OR ORGAN, PARALYSIS, PARAPLEGIA, or QUADRIPLEGIA, BRAIN DAMAGE, CARDIAC ARREST, or DEATH. In addition to these general risks, there may be other possible risks involved in this procedure. These risks and/or complications may include but are not limited to such complications as:

1. Injury to bowel, bladder, ureter (the tube from the kidney to the bladder) and urethra (tube from bladder to outside of body)
2. Fistula formation, an opening between the bowel, bladder, ureter and the vagina and/or skin, which would require a second operation to repair
3. Colostomy
4. Recurrence of my loss of control of urine
5. No improvement in my control of urine
6. Prolonged need of a catheter to drain my bladder
7. Discomfort with intercourse

Likelihood of Success: The likelihood of success of the above procedure is: () Good () Fair () Poor

Prognosis: If I choose not to have the above procedure, my prognosis (future medical condition) is: ______________________________________________________________________________________________

Alternative Forms of Treatment such as:
1. Exercise
2. Use of artificial supports (pessary)
3. Do nothing and accept my present condition and its potential risks

These alternative treatments have been explained to me, and I have elected this surgical procedure as my method of treatment.

I understand and accept that during the procedure unexpected or unforeseen circumstances may make it necessary to do an extension of the original procedure or another procedure that is not named above. I request that Dr. _________________________________ and associates or assistants of his/her choice perform those procedures that they judge to be necessary.

BY SIGNING THIS FORM, I ACKNOWLEDGE THAT I HAVE READ OR HAVE HAD THIS FORM READ AND EXPLAINED TO ME AND THAT I FULLY UNDERSTAND ITS CONTENTS.

I HAVE BEEN GIVEN AMPLE OPPORTUNITY TO ASK QUESTIONS AND ANY QUESTIONS I HAVE ASKED HAVE BEEN ANSWERED OR EXPLAINED IN A SATISFACTORY MANNER. ALL BLANKS OR STATEMENTS REQUIRING COMPLETION WERE FILLED IN AND ALL STATEMENTS WITH WHICH I DISAGREE WERE MARKED OUT BEFORE I SIGNED THIS FORM.

I accept that medicine is not an exact science and understand that no guarantees can be given as to the results. Understanding these limitations, I request that Dr. _________________________________ and his/her associates/assistants to proceed with surgery.

Witness _________________________________ Person giving consent _________________________________
Relationship to patient if not the patient _________________________________ Patient unable to sign because of: _________________________________

BY SIGNING THIS FORM, I ACKNOWLEDGE THAT I HAVE READ OR HAVE HAD THIS FORM READ AND EXPLAINED TO ME AND THAT I FULLY UNDERSTAND ITS CONTENTS.

Additional materials used, if any, during the informed consent process for this procedure include: __________________________________________________________________________________

Date: _________________________ Witness: _______________________________________

FIGURE 4.7. Informed consent and request for repair of relaxation of pelvic organs and/or correction of urinary incontinence.
Several occurrences can forewarn a physician that a legal action may be impending. These include a complication or poor outcome, a disgruntled patient or dissatisfied family member, a request for medical records, or direct contact by the plaintiff’s attorney. The physician should consult his or her insurance carrier for advice and/ or insurance carrier claim investigator. Some plaintiff attorneys have been known to call a physician and ask for the physician’s opinion about an alleged incident. The attorney may tape this conversation or later in a courtroom allege that on the date of such a contact the physician said something different from what the physician is now alleging occurred. This situation could possibly lead to the jury questioning a physician’s credibility. Thus, it is best for the physician never to respond to a plaintiff’s attorney except through his or her own defense team.

A lawsuit actually begins when a plaintiff’s attorney files a formal Complaint or Declaration. This is a legal document that lists the allegations to support a claim of medical malpractice. Some states require that an affidavit from an expert witness supporting the contention of malpractice be filed with the Complaint or Declaration. Once the filing occurs, the court serves the defendant physician with a summons. The summons is attached to the complaint and may contain questions to be answered by the physician. Responses to the complaint must be filed within a specified period of time, usually within 20 to 30 days. The defendant physician must respond within that period of time or he or she can be found guilty by default. Thus, it is critical that the physician immediately contact his or her insurance carrier and/or attorney on receiving the summons. The physician should send the original summons by certified mail or hand deliver these documents to the insurance carrier. Keep a copy of the summons in a separate file. Most insurance carriers require that the physician notify them of any incidence that might result in a claim. Failure to do so could negate the physician’s policy. It is prudent to know what the requirements of the insurance carrier are in this regard.

Once a suit has been filed, do not communicate with the plaintiff, her family, or her attorney. When records are requested, be sure that a proper authorization from the patient has been received, and then send a complete copy of the chart. Never change or alter a record once the suit has been filed, because there are many methods by which a plaintiff’s attorney can prove that records have been tampered with or altered.

Prepare a thorough chronological account of all events surrounding the incident. Include any oral communications that the physician had with the patient or her family. Gather all records, radiographs, laboratory tests, and consultant’s reports, and maintain these documents along with the complaint in a separate file.

The physician’s defense attorney will know all aspects of the law and will not be knowledgeable about the specific medical condition. Thus, it is imperative that the physician take an active role in mediating the attorney in all medical aspects of the case, discussing not only the positive aspects of the therapy, but also any questionable areas. The defense attorney should thoroughly educate the defendant physician and the physician’s reasoning behind the particular treatment chosen. The physician should research literature for articles by authors who completely support the treatment rendered. The physician should help select expert witnesses who can support his or her views on the treatment that was rendered in the case.

During the discovery process, both parties submit questions called interrogatories that are to be answered under oath within a specific period of time. The defendant physician should help prepare answers to these interrogatories.

If a physician has only peripheral involvement in a case and receives a summons requesting records, he or she may be advised by his or her attorney or the insurance claims representative to not notify the insurance carrier as well as his or her attorney before any response is given. There are times when poorly worded answers result in the physician who has only a peripheral involvement being named in the actual suit. The physician should not take unnecessary risks by either notifying his or her attorney or the insurance claims representative. Idle conversation in a surgical dressing room may be overheard by a physician who could become the plaintiff’s expert. The only people with whom it is safe to discuss a case are the defense attorney and the insurance claims representative.

**The Deposition**

The deposition is a standard legal process that takes place as part of the discovery process. A deposition is taken under oath in the presence of a court reporter and is generally admissible during the trial phase of the lawsuit. The deposition is serious in that what a defendant physician states is cast in stone and if not properly articulated can end up as a millstone about the physician’s neck. Thus, adequate preparation cannot be overemphasized. The physician should be familiar with all of the records, both office and hospital, including office and hospital protocols, rules, and regulations. The physician should insist on considerable preparation and education from the attorney about this important legal process before the deposition.

The deposition has many purposes, including to (a) discover facts, (b) lock in testimony, (c) narrow and clarify issues, (d) discover additional witnesses, and (e) provide an opportunity for settlement if appropriate. The deposition is primarily taken so that each side can learn opinions, theories, and strategies of the physician, the opposing experts, and the other parties involved in the case. The opposing attorneys can thus prepare their cases for trial with the knowledge gained.

The demeanor of the physician is important. He or she should be professional, honest, and confident. Boredom, frustration, and hostility should not be shown. Anger can disrupt a physician’s ability to concentrate, and under those circumstances, the physician may divulge things that should not be discussed. The physician should neither attempt to teach nor lecture during a deposition, remembering that the plaintiff already has an expert who stated that the physician committed malpractice. Therefore, any attempt to educate the lawyer is a frivolous and potentially dangerous act. During the deposition phase, the defendant physician is not acting as his or her own expert and thus should confine answers to short factual statements with no elaboration unless it is prompted by further questioning. Answers should be specific and simple. Do not bring into a deposition any personal notes or records that include the physician’s predeposition preparation. Such records are discoverable by the plaintiff’s attorney if they are in the room. However, the physician should have a complete set of records to refer to. Never guess about an answer. If the physician does not understand the question, then simply state, “I do not understand the question,” or “I do not know,” or “I cannot
recall.” Avoid complex questions. Make the attorney break the questions down into simple ones by stating, “I do not under-stand the question. Would you please rephrase it?” Avoid repetitive questions by noting, “I have already answered that.” When a question is asked, listen attentively, think, and organize your thoughts before responding. Then respond slowly, clearly, and as concisely as possible.

In deposition, the physician should be sure the facts are consistent with his or her case and reply only as it applies to the case. If the hypothetical situation is not applicable to the physician’s case, the physician should qualify the response and so state that the given facts are not applicable to the case. Again, remember that you are defending yourself and not acting as your own expert witness.

If the defense attorney objects to a question or the phrasing, do not answer the question until instructed to do so by the defense attorney. The physician should listen carefully to the objection raised by the defense attorney so that he or she can appropriately word the response. The physician should know the various alternative methods of therapy that might have been employed. The physician should have reasons why he or she selected the chosen therapy and be prepared to explain them in the courtroom. The deposition, however, is generally not the time to divulge any literature research that took place.

Avoid the word authoritative. Legally, it implies that every single statement in a book or journal is absolute fact. Because medicine is an art rather than an exact science, experts may have different opinions on the same subject. The physician can admit that a book is scholarly or written by intelligent, re-spected people, but should never concede that every statement in the text is absolutely correct, which would make such a text authoritative by legal definition.

Do not engage in bantering or make comments that could be used against you. Avoid saying, “I don’t recall.” The physician feels that the plaintiff’s pain is of a mental or emotional nature and not physical, never belittle the patient’s testimony. The plaintiff wants to present himself or herself to the jury as a kind, considerate, compassionate person who projects warmth and sincerity, as well as being a voice of authority. The defen-dant physician should go to the court before the trial to become familiar with the surroundings. He or she may even want to sit in on a trial to get a feel for this new and foreign environment. The physician should discuss in great detail any questions that he or she has regarding the trial, its proceedings, or the defense. Listen to your attorney’s advice! The more familiar a physician is with the court and its proceedings, the more confident and less frightened he or she will be as the trial proceeds.

Preparation for the trial is critical and should cover even demeanor and dress. Dress should be plain, conservative, and neat. Flashy or casual clothes project the wrong image. The physician wants to present himself or herself to the jury in a non-confrontational manner. Always state your case and let the jury decide. Do not make the assumption that the jury will know the facts of the case or the area of the testimony, he or she can elaborate further on a subject. Therefore, it is critically important that the physician employ all of his or her talents to be sure that the jury understands the testimony. Be polite and humble. Important words in the courtroom are Sir and Madam. When a physician uses these words they generate an air of humility that is pleasing to a jury. When a question is asked, be sure to take time to think before a response is given. Respond in non-technical language that a 12-year-old child could understand. Listen carefully, and then speak clearly and audibly. Jurors like a physician who really tries to explain what he or she did step by step. Unlike during the deposition, in the courtroom the physician should be a teacher, using a black-board or other audiovisual aids to explain complex issues. If the plaintiff’s attorney tries to be overbearing and abrasive, re-act by being humble yet dignified. Repeat significant facts often so that the jury will remember them. Remember, people generally retain only 30% of verbal communication, so repetition is essential. The physician’s body language, posture, and facial expressions also convey strong messages to the jury.

There are several things a defendant physician should do when called to the stand to testify. The physician should make and keep eye contact with the jury throughout the testimony. Physicians generally tend to focus their attention on the plaintiff’s attorney as he or she asks questions; however, this is not helpful to the physician. Physicians are trained to read people’s facial expres-sions. By maintaining eye contact with the jury, the physician can closely observe whether the jurors comprehend the testi-mony. If the physician feels that the jury does not understand an area of the testimony, he or she can elaborate further on a subject. Always state your case and let the jury decide. Do not be arrogant, pompous, or over-bearing. Never try to outsmart or manipulate the plaintiff’s attorney; this is the way attorneys make their living. Never in-stigate a fight or argue with an attorney because it will cause you to lose dignity and respect in front of the jury. Even if the physician feels that the plaintiff’s pain is of a mental or emotional nature and not physical, never belittle the patient’s injury or pain. Remember that in the patient’s mind, she is hurting, so show compassion and understanding. Never guess at an answer. If you do not know, then state, “I do not know,” or “I do not recall.” The physician should not worry if he or she missespeak. The defense attorney, with further appropriate
questions, generally is able to correct the mistake. Never get angry or show anger because anger breaks your concentration and often leads you to say things that should not be said.

The trial begins with opening statements. The plaintiff's attorney proceeds first because he or she has the burden to prove the existence of malpractice and causation of injury. Then the trial testimony phase begins. Again, the plaintiff's attorney begins with testifying to the client's history to try to establish that the defendant is negligent and the negligence caused the plaintiff's injury. During this initial presentation, the plaintiff's attorney has the right to and frequently does call the defendant physician to the stand. At this stage of the trial, the defendant's attorney can object to the physician to the stand and give a complete response so that the jury can understand the physician's position on the matter in question. Do not leave any question-able areas unexplained, because at this stage, the plaintiff's attorney is trying to establish points that are beneficial to their case. If the plaintiff's attorney asks a series of short questions that only require a yes-or-no answer and do not seem to give the physician time to explain his or her position completely, it is very important that the physician break such a sequence and take as much time as needed to clarify the answer. The physician can simply say to the plaintiff's attorney, "Sir or Madam, I did not finish my response to the last question."

During the testimony phase, the plaintiff's attorney usually employs one of four basic forms of attack on the defendant's reputation. The plaintiff's attorney may challenge the physician's competence, accuse the physician of being careless, or allege that the physician is not compassionate but rather an indifferent, uncaring, wealthy person. Finally, the attorney may challenge the physician's credibility, especially if records were altered or if the physician contradicted testimony given under oath during the deposition. This is why it is so important for a physician to know exactly what he or she said in the deposition. The physician should outline the deposition, noting significant facts from the notes or records, and provide all the evidence a plaintiff's attorney needs to raise a question of the physician's competence. If at the end of the presentation the plaintiff has not pro-duced sufficient evidence to establish the cause-and-effect re-lationship, the defense may request and be granted a directed verdict, and the suit is over.

Next, through testimony, expert witnesses, and medical documents, the defense tries to prove that the allegation of negli-gence is false and that the injuries were not a direct result of the defendant's actions. The defense attorney, on direct examina-tion, will generally have the physician elaborate in detail those issues that are important to the defense, as such repetition is still very important that the physician break such a sequence and take as much time as needed to clarify the answer. The physi-cian can simply say to the plaintiff's attorney, "Sir or Madam, I did not finish my response to the last question."

The physician's marriage also is put under considerable stress. The spouse carries a great part of the emotional burden of one's professional integrity and stirs strong feelings of anger. This anger may be so intense that it spills out in all directions, frequently in an inappropriate manner that may strain many personal and professional relationships.

An emotional impact study conducted by psychiatrist Dr. Sarah Charles of physicians who had been sued, 96% of physicians reported not only emotional reactions, but also physical problems related to the stress and emotional reaction one undergoes during the loss of a loved one. Unlike other professionals, a physician is unable to accept that a malpractice suit is part of the risk of doing business owing to the very nature of the doctor-patient relationship.

Part of the intense anger the physician experiences at the onset of a suit arises because of the shock that he or she experiences when a bond built on trust has been broken. The physician feels betrayed. The accusation of being incompetent or at least practicing one's job badly challenges the very core of one's professional integrity and stirs strong feelings of anger. This anger may be so intense that it spills out in all directions, frequently in an inappropriate manner that may strain many personal and professional relationships.

In a study conducted by psychiatrist Dr. Sarah Charles of physicians who had been sued, 96% of physicians reported that a malpractice suit is part of the risk of doing business owing to the very nature of the doctor-patient relationship.

The practice of medicine in general, and of obstetrics and gynecology in particular, is filled with daily stresses uncommon to other professions. Physicians must deal with pain and suffering, problem patients, intense interpersonal relationships, and often unrealistic expectations. A relatively new—but unfortunately rather frequent—stress is the threat of malpractice litigation. The stress of a malpractice suit has been equated to the stress and emotional reaction one undergoes during the loss of a loved one. Unlike other professionals, a physician is unable to accept that a malpractice suit is part of the risk of doing business owing to the very nature of the doctor-patient relationship.

The 2003 ACOG survey revealed that obstetrician-gynecologists win 73.1% of the claims resolved by jury, court verdict, arbitration, or other alternative dispute resolution mechanism.

Emotional Impact

The practice of medicine in general, and of obstetrics and gynecology in particular, is filled with daily stresses uncommon to other professions. Physicians must deal with pain and suffering, problem patients, intense interpersonal relationships, and often unrealistic expectations. A relatively new—but unfortunately rather frequent—stress is the threat of malpractice litigation. The stress of a malpractice suit has been equated to the stress and emotional reaction one undergoes during the loss of a loved one. Unlike other professionals, a physician is unable to accept that a malpractice suit is part of the risk of doing business owing to the very nature of the doctor-patient relationship.

Part of the intense anger the physician experiences at the onset of a suit arises because of the shock that he or she experiences when a bond built on trust has been broken. The physician feels betrayed. The accusation of being incompetent or at least practicing one's job badly challenges the very core of one's professional integrity and stirs strong feelings of anger. This anger may be so intense that it spills out in all directions, frequently in an inappropriate manner that may strain many personal and professional relationships.

In a study conducted by psychiatrist Dr. Sarah Charles of physicians who had been sued, 96% of physicians reported not only emotional reactions, but also physical problems related to the suit. Eight percent had the onset of physical ailments, of which one fourth were life-threatening, such as coronary diseases, strokes, ulcers, and hypertension. Forty percent showed symptoms suggestive of major depressive disorders. Commonly experienced reactions were anger, mood changes, depression, tension, frustration, insomnia, fatigue, and alcohol and drug abuse. Fifteen percent of physicians lost confidence in themselves. Nineteen percent lost confidence in certain clinical situations. Fear is another common emotion experienced by sued physicians. They fear the loss of their patient's respect and confidence. They fear the loss of their own self-confidence, and, in this day of excess awards, they fear the loss of financial security. The physician's reputation, ego, and self-worth are challenged. Professional training demands that the physician hold his or her reactions in check. This training becomes counterproductive at the time of a malpractice suit.

The physician's marriage also is put under considerable stress. The spouse carries a great part of the emotional burden of litigation. There are many sleepless nights and interrupted plans as depositions and trials are scheduled, postponed, and rescheduled by a seemingly uncaring legal system. Mood
changes and periods of irritability have to be handled by the spouse. These stressful situations can be the downfall of a weak or borderline marriage. Children are often disturbed by the knowledge that a parent is legally accused of malpractice. They may indeed feel that their parent has deceived or shamed them. Younger children especially may misunderstand the nature of the accusation and believe the allegations as fact, especially if the allegations are broadcast on radio, television, or in the newspaper. Physicians must take action to protect their mental health during this major period of stress, realizing that we live in a litigious environment and that the stress surrounding malpractice suits not only affects physicians, but also adversely affects all professionals and occupations. Physicians need to discuss their feelings with their spouse, loved ones, mentors, or counselor.

Physicians and their spouses should become active in support groups. These groups have received the support of both the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and American Academy of Pediatrics as outlined in their joint publication titled “Coping with Malpractice Litigations Stress.” Such forums are not intended to provide psychiatric therapy, but rather are safe and informal groups where participants can share their common stresses and experiences in a sympathetic environment. The physician should not hesitate to seek counseling if the stress becomes so great that daily functions become impaired.

An open discussion with your children that shares their feelings and concerns, as well as yours, often relieves their anxiety. This type of communication often strengthens the family relationship and ultimately results in a positive effect from the terrifying ordeal of a malpractice suit.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Risk management can lead to an improvement in clinical outcomes, reduce patient injury, reduce human errors, and provide better medical records, which not only assists the entire health care team in providing better care but can also assist the legal team in providing a better defense of an alleged medical malpractice claim.
- The cornerstones of risk management for the surgeon are good surgical technique, current knowledge and training in surgical advancements, good communication, and adequate documentation.
- Because patients rarely retain more than 30% of verbal communication, printed material can greatly assist the surgeon in providing adequate information about a surgical procedure or recommended treatment. Communication also is conveyed by body language; thus, it is prudent to sit in a relaxed posture when communicating with a patient, her significant other, or her family members.
- In the office, appropriate procedure and protocol manuals should exist that outline the duties of each employee and the proper procedure to handle phone messages, especially those of an urgent nature, so that not only a timely response occurs, but also instructions and medications are documented. The surgeon should periodically review his or her office procedures to insure that the patient’s confidentiality is respected and that proper phone etiquette is maintained.
- Documentation that is contemporaneous, factual, complete, relevant, and preferably dictated and that uses approved abbreviations is essential in providing an appropriate medical record.
- Medical errors pose a serious threat to the patient’s well-being. Using computerized orders, improving physician handwriting, using only standard approved abbreviations, and having all verbal orders read back to the surgeon by the nurse taking the orders have all been shown to reduce these errors.
- When multiple consultants are required to provide appropriate care, it is imperative that one of the consultants is designated to write critical orders, covering such things as fluids, medications, and important laboratory studies.
- Informed consent must respect the ethical principles of autonomy, beneficence, nonmaleficence, justice, and freedom. Informed consent must contain the diagnosis, nature, and purpose of the procedure; the risks; likelihood of success; and alternatives and prognosis if treatment is refused. Procedure-specific informed consent forms outline not only the risks that are specific to the procedure, but also the alternatives so that the patient is better informed. Informed consent is suspended in an emergency situation when the patient is unconscious or incapacitated. The surgeon should document the status of the patient and the fact that the situation is life-threatening and represents a serious threat to the patient’s health. When a patient refuses appropriate treatment, the surgeon should document the potential risks; the consequence of her refusal and preferably have the patient sign this documentation.
- In a managed care setting, the surgeon must be an advocate for the patient to insure that the patient does receive appropriate treatment even when the managed care plan may refuse to provide the best treatment for the condition being treated.
- Preparation for both a deposition and trial should consist of a review of the surgeon’s office records, the hospital records, and the policies and procedure manuals for both the office and hospital. The surgeon should educate the defense team and be sure that the attorney has adequately prepared the surgeon for these legally challenging events. The surgeon should also review the literature, select articles that support his and/or her treatment, and help select expert witnesses that can be used by the defense.
- The litigation process can both be extremely stressful and have an impact on the surgeon’s mental and physical health. Appropriate medical and emotional consultations may be required to get the surgeon through this adversarial process.

Bibliography


Bates DW, Teich JM, Leu J, et al. The impact of computerized physician order entry on medication error prevention. JAMA 1999;313:


Cline M. Malpractice were our national survey confirms even the best doctors are targets. Med Econ Obstet Gynecol 1999;August:29.


Gibbons RF. The top ten malpractice claims (and how to minimize them). Hosp Health Netw 2004;78:61.


Sunder AA. The history of professional liability suits in the United States. JAMA 1997;278:459.


CHAPTER 5 ■ THE CHANGING ENVIRONMENT IN WHICH WE PRACTICE GYNECOLOGIC SURGERY

ERIC J. BIEBER AND EDIE L. DERIAN

DEFINITIONS

Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI)—A not-for-profit organization founded in 1991 dedicated to improving health care throughout the globe. Initiated the 100,000 lives campaign (www.ihi.com).

Institute of Medicine (IOM)—Not-for-profit organization chartered in 1970 as part of the National Academy of Sciences to provide unbiased, evidenced-based guidance to improve health in the United States (www.iom.com).

Pay for performance (P4P)—A broad construct that attempts to pay providers or health care organizations for achieving predetermined quality thresholds.

Hospitalist—Physician/providers who dedicate all or part of their practices to providing care specifically to patients within the hospital.

Computerized physician order entry (CPOE)—Use of a computer (especially within an electronic record interface) to perform electronic entry of medical orders for patients. Can occur in an inpatient or ambulatory setting.

100,000 lives campaign (100K)—An initiative from the IHI begun in 2005 to save 100,000 patients through dissemination of six quality initiatives in hospitals throughout the United States (www.ihi.com).

As gynecologic surgeons and care providers of women, we have witnessed major changes in our practices over the years. When we think back to our days as medical students and residents, even the youngest of us is able to appreciate the palpable differences that exist today: from how we manage our offices to how we approach diagnostic testing and treatment. Few of us appreciated how profound a role the computer would play in our daily practice or how this tool might empower us to provide the best possible care in each encounter. In this chapter, we will review the changes that are occurring in medical education from residency to postgraduate training. Issues regarding credentialing, especially as it relates to novel procedures, will be discussed. The importance of connectivity between services and the relevance of this in a time of multidisciplinary diagnosis and treatment will be reviewed. The electronic health record (EHR), its implementation and daily use, and its significant benefits and pitfalls will be reviewed in part. The cornerstone of the modern practice of medicine continues to be the resounding theme of evidence-based medicine. Quality initiatives, including the Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI) recommendations, as well as many other proposals, have made attempts to promote the safest, most effective care of our patients. Additionally, pay-for-performance evaluations continue to be discussed; in some cases, they are actually included in pilot projects for surgical procedures. We are also being challenged to move from a time when surgical and other treatments were the mainstay of our practice to a new time of screening, prevention, and the promise of genomics.

One of the most significant changes in medical education has been the limitation of resident duty hours. Such regulation of work hours has been common in industries such as aviation, in which pilots and other crew are limited both in the number of hours worked as well as requirements for time off between work episodes. Although many gynecologists were trained in a time of every second or third night call, this is no longer acceptable or allowable. In July 2003, the Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME) put into effect new requirements and regulations (www.acgme.org). These new regulations limit total duty hours to 80 hours per week when averaged over 4 weeks, limit in-house call to no more than every third night with 1 day off in 7, and limit continuous patient care hours to 30, with the last 6 hours to patient handoffs and educational activities, such as grand rounds. In addition, there must be 10 hours between shifts worked. New York led the way in creating legal mandates, but the ACGME and the various specialty resident review committees have quickly followed. This paradigm shift is a dramatic departure from times past, but recent data has suggested that decision making as well as technical skills may suffer with sleep deprivation. What is less clear is how this has affected actual patient care as well as resident experience.

Hutter and colleagues evaluated the impact of changing to the 80-hour workweek on surgical residents in Boston. They noted that after implementation of the 80-hour workweek, residents had lower burnout scores and less emotional exhaustion, whereas sleep and motivation to work were improved (Table 5.1). Objective quantitative measurement demonstrated no differences in the quality of patient care. In contrast, another prospective, postduty-hour implementation study from the surgery department of University of California Irvine did not show changes in measures of burnout. They did note a decrease in yearly work hours from 100.7 to 82.6. After implementation and found a significant decrease in formal educational time (Fig. 5.1). Of interest, time in the operating room, on clinical rounds, and in the clinic were not significantly different.
In contrast to previous publications, a recent report from University of California San Francisco internal medicine residency did not demonstrate improvement in educational satisfaction with the onset of the new duty-hour regulations. Similarly, another obstetric and gynecologic survey pre- and postimplementation of duty hours at the University of Colorado demonstrated no differences in overall satisfaction with the residency. However, some key elements were found to be statistically elevated after implementation, including reading, reviewing literature, doing research, and some clinical aspects of training.

It is of interest that in the 2006 residency match, both general surgical as well as obstetric and gynecology slots were filled at a much higher percentage than previous years. Whether this is consistent with senior medical students sensing a change after the decrease in duty hours, thus creating a new perception is consistent with senior medical students sensing a change after the decrease in duty hours, thus creating a new perception of these “difficult” specialties, remains to be seen. Less investigation has been performed on the impact of the duty-hour changes to medical students and how this might affect their learning. Brasher and colleagues used completed duty-hour changes to medical students and how this might affect their learning. Brasher and colleagues used completed

| TABLE 5.1 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Residents</th>
<th>Before</th>
<th>After</th>
<th>P</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“Emotional exhaustion”</td>
<td>29.1 (high)</td>
<td>23.1 (medium)</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Depersonalization”</td>
<td>14.8 (high)</td>
<td>13.8 (high)</td>
<td>0.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Personal accomplishment”</td>
<td>37.8 (medium)</td>
<td>38.6 (medium)</td>
<td>0.57</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tabulated scores are listed as well as results, benchmarked to published cutoffs based on large national surveys (eg, “low,” “medium,” and “high” groups), with the scale specific to medical workers.


In contrast to previous publications, a recent report from University of California San Francisco internal medicine residency did not demonstrate improvement in educational satisfaction with the onset of the new duty-hour regulations. Similarly, another obstetric and gynecologic survey pre- and postimplementation of duty hours at the University of Colorado demonstrated no differences in overall satisfaction with the residency. However, some key elements were found to be statistically elevated after implementation, including reading, reviewing literature, doing research, and some clinical aspects of training.

It is of interest that in the 2006 residency match, both general surgical as well as obstetric and gynecology slots were filled at a much higher percentage than previous years. Whether this is consistent with senior medical students sensing a change after the decrease in duty hours, thus creating a new perception is consistent with senior medical students sensing a change after the decrease in duty hours, thus creating a new perception of these “difficult” specialties, remains to be seen. Less investigation has been performed on the impact of the duty-hour changes to medical students and how this might affect their learning. Brasher and colleagues used completed duty-hour changes to medical students and how this might affect their learning. Brasher and colleagues used completed

| FIGURE 5.1. Residents’ weekly activity 1 week before and 6 months after the introduction of duty-hour change. CL, clinic; ED, formal education; FL, floor work; HC, home call; OR, off duty; OR, operating room; PR, prerounds; RD, rounds. (From Gelfand DV, Podnos YD, Carmichael JC, et al. Effect of the 80-hour workweek on resident burnout. Arch Surg 2004;139:933.) |

In contrast to previous publications, a recent report from University of California San Francisco internal medicine residency did not demonstrate improvement in educational satisfaction with the onset of the new duty-hour regulations. Similarly, another obstetric and gynecologic survey pre- and postimplementation of duty hours at the University of Colorado demonstrated no differences in overall satisfaction with the residency. However, some key elements were found to be statistically elevated after implementation, including reading, reviewing literature, doing research, and some clinical aspects of training.

It is of interest that in the 2006 residency match, both general surgical as well as obstetric and gynecology slots were filled at a much higher percentage than previous years. Whether this is consistent with senior medical students sensing a change after the decrease in duty hours, thus creating a new perception is consistent with senior medical students sensing a change after the decrease in duty hours, thus creating a new perception of these “difficult” specialties, remains to be seen. Less investigation has been performed on the impact of the duty-hour changes to medical students and how this might affect their learning. Brasher and colleagues used completed duty-hour changes to medical students and how this might affect their learning. Brasher and colleagues used completed duty-hour changes to medical students and how this might affect their learning. Brasher and colleagues used completed
POSTGRADUATE TRAINING

Questions continue regarding how best to train clinicians in the postgraduate environment. Most find learning easy while in residency, with time often dedicated to didactic lectures. Few practicing physicians are afforded similar luxury, and yet significant technological and medical advances continue throughout our careers. Given the limitations that state-by-state licensure imposes, as well as malpractice constraints, it is also difficult for physicians to cross state boundaries to learn new surgical procedures and be tutored. Fortunately, there have also been advances in our ability to utilize with Web-based or computer technology. The classic forum of the in-person lecture remains the gold standard for education. However, some institutions such as our own, have moved to Web-based programs to allow transmission of grand rounds or other educational forums in real time. This allows attendees to log on and participate regardless of their location, be it at home, in the office, or in the hospital. It also allows for lecturers to limit their time away from work as they may deliver their lecture from afar with remote transmission to multiple sites. In a time of shrinking grand-round budgets and limited external support for lectures, this may be one methodology for continuing to deliver state-of-the-art education to a diverse, ever-changing audience.

As we continue our transition from open surgery to minimal invasive surgery and now to robotic surgery, there continue to be questions regarding how to best credential surgeons on new technologies. As we have discussed previously regarding limitations in postgraduate opportunities to mentor and train are the origin of some of these problems. How many preceptor cases are adequate for an individual surgeon to be able to demonstrate mastery? Unfortunately, most of us as educators realize there are profound differences between cases and surgeons. What one surgeon is able to master in 20 cases another may be able to conquer in five or fewer. At the writing of this chapter, most residents will garner adequate experience with minimal invasive techniques during their training, but few will master robotics during this time.

Previously, many gynecologic services existed in a silo, consulting other services only when specific situations existed. In the new practice of medicine, we are being faced with many multidisciplinary procedures requiring seamless transition between multiple providers and specialties to assure the best outcome. Uterine artery embolization would be one such example. Generally, gynecologists see the patient with symptomatic myomata, but on occasion, patients will self-refer to an interventional radiologist. In most cases, the interventionalist performs the procedure, but often this individual does not have admitting privileges. If the patient requires admission for pain management, the gynecologic service may be asked to admit and manage the patient. In addition, appropriate preoperative evaluation will need to be performed to decrease the risk of a failed or inappropriate procedure. Generally, all of the above are best accomplished in a setting where excellent communication exists between the services, and the patient seamlessly transitions through the treatment and is not held hostage to political or other bureaucratic issues that often exist in the complicated systems we work within. This requires physicians and surgeons from multiple specialties to decide in advance how such programs should work and what each individual team member is responsible for providing. This often requires identification of specific team leaders (physician and nursing) from each discipline, as well as a specific leader who will have proximate authority to resolve issues that will predictably arise in such complex interactions. When services work in this manner, functioning at a high level, patient care is optimized. Because of the need to act across disciplines and in a teamlike manner, resident and even medical student curriculums have begun to address the need to work as teams—a concept adopted long ago in the business world but adopted much more slowly in the world of independent thinking and functioning within medicine. In fact, team-building retreats are becoming departmental norms in many training programs around the country.

ELECTRONIC HEALTH RECORD

The advent of the electronic health record (EHR) has changed forever how medicine will be practiced. Most of us were trained in a time where orders and notes were written and charts were sent to a large repository (i.e., medical records). Many notes written by our colleagues were difficult to read or were unable to be located. Certainly, these were not often available in real time, across specialties or from home. Authentication of results was performed by hand and had to be reassociated with the correct chart, wasting significant time and resources that might be better directed. Prescriptions were written and handed to patients who then delivered them to a pharmacy. In a best-case scenario, writing was legible, charts were placed in their appropriate position within the repository, and the pharmacist could read the prescription. Unfortunately, often this was not the case.

In modern times, much of this has changed. Numerous opportunities exist with the EHR to go beyond many of the technical issues associated with handwriting, but the opportunities go well beyond legibility. In addition, groups like the American Medical Informatics Association’s College of Medical Informatics has called for integration of the EHR and personal health records (PHR) to provide the greatest value for our patients. Recent data have suggested other potential positive consequences of an EHR implementation. The Kaiser group reported that with an implementation of an EHR in the northwest United States, age-adjusted outpatient visits dropped by 9%, with only a slight increase in phone calls from patients but no change or a slight improvement in quality metrics. Embi and colleagues found that by using EHR data to define patient eligibility into a clinical trial and then causing an electronic prompt to let the provider know of patient eligibility, they were able to double study enrollment as well as improving physician referrals to their study.

There are multiple factors, which have made the adoption of the EHR difficult for some providers and groups. Likely highest amongst these is the cost to implement as well as maintain the EHR. Multiple third-party vendors exist that have various EHR platforms. These range from simple documentation and chart programs to software and hardware that integrates patient care across both inpatient and ambulatory platforms. There are currently efforts to standardize EHR language, but many of these efforts are in their infancy. It will become critical as we evolve to an all-digital-based health record that these systems are able to communicate with one another, allowing patients to have their records available anywhere and anytime. Ford and colleagues evaluated EHR adoption rates in small physician groups of 10 or fewer partners. Using models, they projected the potential for broad adoption of EHR into the future. They suggest that it may take until 2024 for small
groups to fully implement EHRs, which is much longer than is currently being called for by agencies interested in quality initiatives and cost containment (Fig. 5.2). Unfortunately, the health digital information superhighway appears to have a long way to go to be completed.

Baron and partners detail their personal experience as a small group of internists (four members) with implementing an EHR. They described alterations in workflow and the initial deterioration in their office environment for staff, patients, and physicians alike. However, they also state that in spite of the various limitations, “... none of us would go back to paper health records.” They identified five key issues that are likely relevant for both small and large groups involved with implementing an EHR:

1. Financing of the EHR
2. Interoperability, standardization, and connectivity
3. Work-flow redesign issues
4. Technical support
5. Issues of change management

More recently, there have been questions regarding whether the EHR is really the panacea for moving medicine to Six-Sigma quality. Computerized physician order entry (CPOE) has been suggested as a key element in decreasing errors and improving quality. Several papers have recently addressed this issue with different conclusions. Upperman and colleagues evaluated the rates of adverse drug events (ADE) pre- and post-CPOE implementation. They noted an improvement in verbal order regulation, as well as an elimination of transcription errors after implementation. They also noted a statistical decrease in harmful ADEs and suggested that this improvement would result in one less harmful ADE for every 64 patient days. Han and colleagues noted a different experience when implementing a CPOE system in an academic tertiary-care children’s hospital. Surprisingly, they noted that the mortality rate increased from 2.3% before CPOE implementation to 6.57% after, an increase that remained significant even after multivariate analysis. It is noteworthy that in this paper, the authors document that the CPOE training was given 3 months before implementation. They also note that the implementation itself occurred over a period of only 6 days for the entire pediatric hospital. This may be too long an interval from training and too short a period for implementation. It is interesting that two papers, both published from the same institution, could have such different conclusions.

Ash and colleagues have suggested that the mere implementation of an EHR is not in and of itself enough to insure that unexpected errors won’t occur. They suggest that these errors fall into two broad categories: “those in the process of entering and retrieving information and those in the communication and coordination process that the patient care information system is supposed to support.” The key for powering the CPOE and the EHR is likely through well-thought-out algorithms that allow us to take advantage of the computer’s ability to maintain data while attempting to best understand what a particular patient needs, and while limiting changes in underlying clinical functionality, unless that change actually improves functionality.

There has also been a push to allow patients to have access to their records. This may allow patients to participate in their own care in a way not previously thought possible. Patients might be able to view data within the EHR for accuracy, reviewing such things as current or prior medications, allergies, etc. They could also be made aware of when lab tests or studies are due or overdue, helping to improve compliance and screening. An even more novel concept that has been introduced by several groups is the ability of the patient to communicate with her care providers through Web-based messaging. Initially, providers were concerned regarding the potential for overuse or abuse, but Geisinger Health Systems now has almost 60,000 active users, and little evidence demonstrates this type of abuse. Indeed, in a time when it may be quite difficult to locate your patient during the course of a business day, asynchronous communication may be a preferable manner to communicate nonemergent information with patients. In addition, these data may be appropriately security encrypted at 128 bits and easily made part of the health record.

**QUALITY INITIATIVES**

Few clinicians would argue that quality is the most important parameter in health care today. Yet, it is becoming ever more...
evident that many patients do not receive state-of-the-art health care. In a landmark article published in 2006, Asch and colleagues demonstrated efficacy in well-performed clinical trials. These initiatives from a broad base of organizations. In December 1999, the Institute of Medicine released a report suggesting that 99,000 patients per year die secondary to inadequate care being rendered. Many subsequent debates ensued regarding the methodologies used to attain these numbers. However, this report created a call to arms, challenging those individuals and organizations who provide care to improve the quality of care delivered to all patients. It has caused a number of initiatives to join in implementing six broad initiatives that have caused a number of hospitals and large organizations to create chief quality officer (CQO) positions and implement the IHI recommendations as well as multiple other元素 to bring the various constituencies together and set goals for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ) to act as the key entity to bring the various constituencies together and set goals.

Consistent with the IHI initiatives, other initiatives have come from CMS, including recommendations for optimization of diabetic patients. These include bundles of care much like the IHI central line bundle, in which appropriate care consists of all elements being appropriately performed or delivered within the correct time frame. Unfortunately, as the bundles become more complicated, it becomes more and more difficult for the provider to remember what has or has not been done. This may be yet another opportunity for the EHR to allow both the clinician and the patient to know what tests or interventions need to be performed, thus optimizing the encounter. Pilot trials are currently under way to evaluate what level of compliance can be accomplished within this new paradigm. JCAHO has also released its latest recommendations for 2007 (Table 5.2).

How to best implement quality-improvement programs in a given setting is also continuing to be investigated. A recent evaluation of hospital quality-improvement implementation and subsequent impact on discrete patient safety metrics suggested that involvement by multiple units within a hospital might have a negative impact on results. Alternatively, having a higher percentage of hospital staff or senior management involved had no impact on any of the indicators.

Most clinicians have not been trained in how to develop and implement quality-improvement programs. Curtis and colleagues have published a how-to paper that came out of an outcomes task force of the Society of Critical Care Medicine but has wide applicability to many areas of medicine (Table 5.3). The generalized lack of education and training in quality may explain some of the lethargy that Leape and Berwick allude to in their article “Five Years after To Err Is Human: What Have We Learned?” Table 3.4, which is presented in this same paper, suggests significant quality improvements that have been achieved by implementing discrete strategies in specific environments. If each of our organizations could fractionalize achievements, the impact on patient care might be quite remarkable. Leape and Berwick additionally call for the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ) to act as the key entry to bring the various constituents together and set goals that should be reached by 2010—a lofty proposal by anyone’s standards, but well worth striving toward.

**PAY FOR PERFORMANCE**

The additional lingering question remains as to whether these measures will be subjected to pay for performance, with groups achieving higher levels of patient compliance being awarded higher levels of reimbursement. This is a marked change from...
The Changing Environment in Which We Practice Gynecologic Surgery

TABLE 5.2

2007 AMBULATORY CARE/OFFICE-BASED SURGERY NATIONAL PATIENT SAFETY GOALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Goal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Improve the accuracy of patient identification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1A</td>
<td>Use at least two patient identifiers when providing care, treatment, or services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Improve the effectiveness of communication among caregivers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A</td>
<td>For verbal or telephone orders or for telephonic reporting of critical test results, verify the complete order or test result by having the person receiving the information record and read back the complete order or test result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2B</td>
<td>Standardize a list of abbreviations, acronyms, symbols, and dose designations that are not to be used throughout the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2C</td>
<td>Measure, assess, and, if appropriate, take action to improve the timeliness of reporting—and the timeliness of receipt by the responsible licensed caregiver—of critical test results and values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2E</td>
<td>Implement a standardized approach to hand off communications, including an opportunity to ask and respond to questions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Improve the safety of using medications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B</td>
<td>Standardize and limit the number of drug concentrations used by the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3C</td>
<td>Identify and, at a minimum, annually review a list of look-alike/sound-alike drugs used by the organization, and take action to prevent errors involving the interchange of these drugs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3D</td>
<td>Label all medications, medication containers (for example, syringes, medicine cups, basins), or other solutions on and off the sterile field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Reduce the risk of health care-associated infections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7A</td>
<td>Comply with current Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) hand hygiene guidelines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7B</td>
<td>Manage as sentinel events all identified cases of unanticipated death or major permanent loss of function associated with a health care–associated infection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Improve the accuracy and completely reconcile medications across the continuum of care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8A</td>
<td>There is a process for comparing the patient’s current medications with those ordered for the patient while under the care of the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8B</td>
<td>A complete list of the patient’s medications is communicated to the next provider of service when a patient is referred or transferred to another setting, service, practitioner, or level of care within or outside the organization. The complete list of medications is also provided to the patient on discharge from the facility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Reduce the risk of surgical fires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11A</td>
<td>Educate staff, including operating licensed independent practitioners and anesthesia providers, on how to control heat sources and manage fuels with enough time for patient preparation, and establish guidelines to minimize oxygen concentration under drapes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Encourage patients’ active involvement in their own care as a patient safety strategy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13A</td>
<td>Define and communicate the means for patients and their families to report concerns about safety and encourage them to do so.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Changes to the Goals and Requirements are indicated in bold. Gaps in the numbering indicate that the goal is inapplicable to the program or has been “retired,” usually because the requirements were integrated into the standards.

From: http://www.jointcommission.org/PatientSafety/NationalPatientSafetyGoals/07ambobsnpsgs.htm, with permission.

being paid for delivery of units of health care or procedures in which disease states are being managed. As of 2004, almost 100 pay-for-performance initiatives had been started by a wide variety of sponsors, ranging from employers to the federal government. Epstein and colleagues, in an early article on the subject of paying for high quality care, called for several significant changes to facilitate adoption of pay-for-performance initiatives. These recommendations included an expansion in the scope of the efforts, as well as the amount of incentive available to the clinician or group; the importance of large groups such as CMS becoming involved; an expansion from the current small cadre of clinical indicators; an improvement in our ability to establish reliable metrics for evaluation of quality; and, finally, a call for investment in electronic infrastructure to facilitate all of the above.

A Cochrane systematic review of the subject of targeted payments to affect outcomes in primary care was unable to reach a conclusion because of limitations in prior study quality and power. Kouides and colleagues evaluated the use of financial incentives to increase rates of influenza vaccine administration and found that modest incentive increased an already high baseline administration rate. In another study on
### TABLE 5.3

**KEY STEPS FOR INITIATING, IMPROVING, EVALUATING, AND SUSTAINING A QUALITY IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM**

**Initiating or improving a quality improvement program**
1. Do background work: Identify motivation, support team work and develop strong leadership.
2. Prioritize potential projects and choose the projects to begin.
3. Prepare for the project by operationalizing the measures, building support for the project, and developing a business plan.
4. Do an environmental scan to understand the current situation (structure, process, or outcome), the potential barriers, opportunities, and resources for the project.
5. Create a data collection system to provide accurate baseline data and document improvement.
6. Create a data reporting system that will allow clinicians and other stakeholders to see and understand the problem and the improvement.
7. Introduce strategies to change clinician behavior and create the change that will produce improvement.

**Evaluating and sustaining a quality improvement program**
1. Determine whether the target is changing with ongoing observation, periodic data collection, and interpretation.
2. Modify behavior change strategies to improve, regain, or sustain improvements.
3. Focus on sustaining interdisciplinary leadership and collaboration for the quality improvement program.
4. Develop and sustain support from the hospital leadership.


### TABLE 5.4

**CLINICAL EFFECTIVENESS OF SAFE PRACTICES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perioperative antibiotic protocol</td>
<td>Surgical sites infections decreased by 93%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physician computer order entry</td>
<td>83% Reduction of medication errors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmacist rounding with team</td>
<td>66% Reduction of preventable adverse drug events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protocol enforcement</td>
<td>78% Reduction of preventable adverse drug events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid response teams</td>
<td>92% Reduction in central venous line infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconciling medication practices</td>
<td>90% Reduction in medication errors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconciling and standardizing medication practices</td>
<td>60% Reduction in adverse drug events over 12 mo (from 7.6 per 1000 doses to 3.1 per 1000 doses)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standardized insulin dosing</td>
<td>Hypoglycemic episodes decreased 63% (from 2.95% of patients to 1.1%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standardized warfarin dosing</td>
<td>90% Reduction in cardiac surgical wound infections (from 3.9% of patients to 0.4%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Team training in labor and delivery</td>
<td>Out-of-range international normalized ratio decreased by 60% (from 25% of tests to 10%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigger tool and automation</td>
<td>Adverse drug events reduced by 75% between 2001 and 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventilator bundle protocol</td>
<td>Ventilator-associated pneumonias decreased by 62%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From: Leape LL, Berwick DM. *Five years after To Err Is Human: what have we learned?* *JAMA* 2005;293:2384, with permission.
immunizations, Fairbrother and colleagues evaluated use of cash bonus, enhanced fee for service, and feedback for improving baseline vaccination rates. They found only the bonus group statistically improved (increased by 25.3%), although they believed much of this effect was due to better documentation versus actual increased administration of vaccine. Rodki and colleagues noted that in incentivized groups, documentation of tobacco use was markedly increased, as was ascertainment to counseling programs; unfortunately, other important clinical end points were not different.

A more recent investigation evaluated a pay-for-performance initiative by PacifiCare Health Systems. Three quality measures were evaluated: cervical cancer screening, mammography, and HgbA1c. Unfortunately, only in the cervical cancer screening group was there an improvement after the intervention, and in spite of $3.4 million paid in pay-for-performance incentives, only nominal gains were made. Also, physicians with the highest initial baseline performance had the least improvement but were the recipients of the greatest portion of the paid bonus. This trial demonstrates the potential limitation of identifying discrete end points to reward heterogeneous groups of providers, all of whom start from different baseline levels of efficacy. Dudley has suggested that how an incentive is offered (i.e., reward or penalty) and factors such as what percentage of patients in a provider's panel incentives are applicable to may affect the success of these programs (Table 5.5). Rosenthal and colleagues, in evaluating multiple trials and multiple industries in which pay for performance has applicability, found little evidence that paying for quality is effective. They noted that even in other industries, results are inconsistent. They raise the concern that incentives may be too low, with limited penetrance within a given provider's or group's practice panel. An additional concern is making the target for incentive so much higher than baseline that the providers feel it is unachievable and therefore do not try. This is consistent with data from Beckman and colleagues, who interviewed providers in a pay-for-performance program. Interestingly, providers reviewed their personal profiles but did not always change their functional behaviors in response to the data.

A variation on pay-for-performance is where a provider being paid only if a certain outcome of a surgical procedure has been achieved and the entire care relative to the procedure is covered under one payment. These types of programs may have the greatest initial application in the area of cardiovascular surgery, for which outcome metrics of individual surgeons and hospitals have been reported for several years. In addition, there are well-defined clinical algorithms regarding “best practice.” This may have driven the American Heart Association’s Reimbursement Coverage and Access Policy Development Workgroup to publish a statement on pay-for-performance.

In addition to the previously noted problems with pay-for-performance programs, another limitation is that most programs to date have focused on single disease states or outcomes (such as immunization, or Pap test or mammogram compliance). In reality, many patients aged 65 or older have multiple medical problems, and treating single disease states in isolation may not lead to overall improved outcomes and enhanced quality. It is not surprising that 89% of Medicare’s annual budget is consumed by patients with three or more chronic conditions. Boyd and colleagues evaluated current clinical practice guidelines (CPGs), which are often used in pay-for-performance programs, but which also focus on single disease states. In a hypothetical 79-year-old female patient with the common comorbidities of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, diabetes, osteoporosis, hypertension, and osteoarthritis, they found that following each CPG would lead to 12 prescribed medications and a potential outlay of $406 per month. There were also significant issues with the potential for drug-drug interactions if this “optimal” regimen was followed. They concluded that pay for performance based on CPGs for single disease states may create “perverse incentives” and actually decrease quality of care, and that significant effort should be placed on effectively treating the multiple chronic conditions that many of our patients have.

While these initiatives are in their infancy, there will likely be future pressures both at the state and federal level to achieve an ever-higher level of quality. In addition, pay-for-performance needs to evolve to incorporate these early findings into rationales for physicians, which align the needs of payers, providers, and our patients. It may also become quite difficult for groups and practices that do not have access to electronic data to be able to participate in such projects. Further incentives or underwriting installation of appropriate infrastructure will be critical.

### Table 5.5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics of the incentive</th>
<th>Enabling or inhibiting factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The magnitude of the incentive</td>
<td>Environmental variables such as the general approach to payment—fee-for-service vs capitation—or accreditation requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The proportion of each provider’s patients to whom the incentive applies</td>
<td>Organizational factors such as information technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The cost of improving quality</td>
<td>Patient characteristics such as educational level</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From: Dudley RA. Pay-for-performance research: how to learn what clinicians and policy makers need to know. JAMA 2005;294:1821; with permission.

### HOSPITALISTS

In the last decade, there has been a move toward some practitioners working solely within the hospital setting to care for inpatients, a practice common outside the United States for decades. This started when data suggested that in some cases, patient care might be optimized and length of stay reduced by having a single individual responsible for overseeing a patient’s stay in the hospital. Emergency department physicians have performed shift work for decades, but the change was most dramatic for hospitals who are generally interested in reducing costs. In addition, pay-for-performance needs to evolve to incorporate these early findings into rationales for physicians, which align the needs of payers, providers, and our patients. It may also become quite difficult for groups and practices that do not have access to electronic data to be able to participate in such projects. Further incentives or underwriting installation of appropriate infrastructure will be critical.
Within the general topic of gynecologic surgery practice, the range of LOS reductions was 7% to 27%, which even on the lower end often translate into significant savings to health care organizations. Several variations on the hospitalist model exist, including use of combinations of private staff, academic staff, and house staff. One study evaluated differences between community physicians, a private hospitalist service, and an academic hospitalist group within the same tertiary care hospital and found a 20% LOS and 10% cost reduction on the academic service versus 8% and 6% reductions for the private hospitalists and the community physicians, respectively. They did not note differences in mortality rates (either inpatient or 30-day) or readmission rates between the three groups. Another variation is to use the hospitalist to cover patients typically covered by surgical services. One trial evaluated use of a hospitalist in managing elderly hip fracture patients along with orthopedic surgeons. They noted decreased time to get patients to surgery, decreased length of hospitalization after surgery, and overall decreased LOS with no adverse impact on mortality or readmission. Another area of question has been how a hospitalist service might affect teaching and education for students and residents. Hauer and colleagues analyzed 1,387 house staff and student evaluations on internal medicine rotations during a 2-year period. They scored the hospitalist group (versus traditional attending physicians) higher in teaching effectiveness, knowledge, and feedback. More recently, the hospitalist trend in internal medicine and family practice has carried over to pediatric hospitals that have now created pediatric hospitalist services. Dwight and colleagues describe that with manpower reductions and limitations in house staff, among other issues, some Canadian hospitals have begun to successfully use a non-house-staff-based model effectively. Landrigan and colleagues performed a systematic review of the pediatric hospitalist literature, and consistent with nonpediatric hospitalist studies, these programs had an average LOS and cost decrease of 10%. They do note that many of the programs themselves do not generate adequate revenue to not lose money. An interesting article on keys to success for creating a pediatric hospitalist program suggests six key principles that may have broad applicability to establishment of similar programs in obstetrics and gynecology (Table 5.6).

Only recently has this trend carried over into obstetrics and gynecology. At this time, there are only a handful of hospitals in the country where “laborists” manage patients sent in from their colleagues, who are then only responsible for managing patients in the ambulatory setting. In a time when clinicians have become highly interested in balancing lifestyle and work, these programs had an average LOS and cost decrease of 10%. They do note that many of the programs themselves do not generate adequate revenue to not lose money. An interesting article on keys to success for creating a pediatric hospitalist program suggests six key principles that may have broad applicability to establishment of similar programs in obstetrics and gynecology (Table 5.6).

Only recently has this trend carried over into obstetrics and gynecology. At this time, there are only a handful of hospitals in the country where “laborists” manage patients sent in from their colleagues, who are then only responsible for managing patients in the ambulatory setting. In a time when clinicians have become highly interested in balancing lifestyle and work, these programs had an average LOS and cost decrease of 10%. They do note that many of the programs themselves do not generate adequate revenue to not lose money. An interesting article on keys to success for creating a pediatric hospitalist program suggests six key principles that may have broad applicability to establishment of similar programs in obstetrics and gynecology (Table 5.6).

Only recently has this trend carried over into obstetrics and gynecology. At this time, there are only a handful of hospitals in the country where “laborists” manage patients sent in from their colleagues, who are then only responsible for managing patients in the ambulatory setting. In a time when clinicians have become highly interested in balancing lifestyle and work, these programs had an average LOS and cost decrease of 10%. They do note that many of the programs themselves do not generate adequate revenue to not lose money. An interesting article on keys to success for creating a pediatric hospitalist program suggests six key principles that may have broad applicability to establishment of similar programs in obstetrics and gynecology (Table 5.6).

Only recently has this trend carried over into obstetrics and gynecology. At this time, there are only a handful of hospitals in the country where “laborists” manage patients sent in from their colleagues, who are then only responsible for managing patients in the ambulatory setting. In a time when clinicians have become highly interested in balancing lifestyle and work, these programs had an average LOS and cost decrease of 10%. They do note that many of the programs themselves do not generate adequate revenue to not lose money. An interesting article on keys to success for creating a pediatric hospitalist program suggests six key principles that may have broad applicability to establishment of similar programs in obstetrics and gynecology (Table 5.6).

Only recently has this trend carried over into obstetrics and gynecology. At this time, there are only a handful of hospitals in the country where “laborists” manage patients sent in from their colleagues, who are then only responsible for managing patients in the ambulatory setting. In a time when clinicians have become highly interested in balancing lifestyle and work, these programs had an average LOS and cost decrease of 10%. They do note that many of the programs themselves do not generate adequate revenue to not lose money. An interesting article on keys to success for creating a pediatric hospitalist program suggests six key principles that may have broad applicability to establishment of similar programs in obstetrics and gynecology (Table 5.6).

It has become increasingly important for physicians to evaluate the adequacy of data to which we are constantly exposed. There has been a transition in articles published in the peer-reviewed literature over the last 10 years to a significant effort toward asking and answering questions in the most rigorous manner possible. Numerous methodologies exist for evaluating these trials, which place differing values on the quality, quantity, and consistency domains expressed within each report. Given the subtleties of these differing methodologies, a paper may be deemed to be stronger or weaker. AHRQ has reported on an evaluation of these various systems and describes the differences relative to the type of trial being evaluated (e.g., randomized controlled trial versus observational). One of the most commonly used systems is seen in Table 5.7 and is described by the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. This method describes the type of trial and gives a recommendation.
regarding the strength of the conclusion. It is relevant for us as practicing surgeons to be able to differentiate between data and reports that are merely interesting and those that should cause us to reevaluate our practice patterns. It is also important to understand not only what the grading system means but how the conclusions are reached for each of these unique systems. Because there are presently a number of systems and no one is universally used in journals or textbooks, this is an even greater challenge.

In a recent review of 53 American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists practice bulletins, Chauhan and colleagues found that only 25% of 438 recommendations were level A (good and consistent evidence), whereas 33% of recommendations were level B (limited or inconsistent evidence) and 38% were level C (consensus and expert opinion). This is the quandary in medicine today: Evidence-based medicine is how all of us would like to practice, but unfortunately, all questions have not been answered to the extent needed. Because of this, panels of experts may by necessity have to revert to the best available data, which may be less than optimal. However, even in the field of medical ethics, there is an effort toward moving to formal tools for evaluating the validity of discussions and data. If the last 10 years is any indication to what will happen in the future, there will be a increasing number of randomized controlled trials that are well thought out and executed to aid us in determining how to best counsel our patients.

CONCLUSION

The examples illustrated in this chapter are but a small sampling of the numerous ongoing changes occurring daily. Many of these changes will likely affect our lives and practices—some more than others—but all are a radical departure from times not too distant. It will be interesting to evaluate how these changes evolve over editions of this textbook. Changes underscore the importance of lifelong education, not only in the functional practice of medicine but also in the art of the practice of medicine. It certainly makes our profession an exciting place to be—stay tuned!

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

■ Resident education has been transformed to being less service oriented and more competency based. The 80-hour workweek has had revolutionary changes in the mind-sets of today’s trainees and the people who train them.

■ Quality has always been important to physicians in theory, but new initiatives, such as the 100,000 lives IHI program, are making evidence-based practice a reality.

■ The EHR is only in its infancy. This modality will alter every aspect of care delivered by physicians and effect communication between providers and their patients.

■ By being dedicated providers for inpatients, hospitalists will render more efficient and timely care and therefore more effectively manage patients, with an eye to improving quality and decreasing error.

■ Pay-for-performance is being investigated as a means to reward providers and health care organizations for optimizing predefined outcomes and quality metrics.

Bibliography

Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education common program for specialty training.


Dodder RA. Pay-for-performance research: how to learn what clinicians and policy makers need to know. JAMA 2001;284:1221.


CHAPTER 6 ■ TRAINING THE GYNECOLOGIC SURGEON

ROBERT M. ROGERS, JR.

DEFINITIONS

The competent surgeon—Definition yet to be determined.

Apprenticeship model—A teacher-oriented teaching model, usually without structure, purpose, or defined goals.

Learner-oriented model—A learner-oriented teaching model with structure as well as specific and directed objectives, using observational activities and developmental hands-on surgical skills, including sound clinical judgment. The program emphasizes competency-based training in primary care and basic surgical education.

Aims for health system improvement—Safety, effectiveness, patient-oriented care, timeliness, efficiency, and equity, according to the Institute of Medicine.

Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education competencies for optimal patient care—ACGME has issued six competencies for resident physicians:

1. Patient care that is compassionate, appropriate, and effective for the treatment of health problems and the promotion of health.
2. Medical knowledge about established and evolving biomedical, clinical, and cognitive sciences and the application of this knowledge to patient care.
3. Practice-based learning and improvement that involves investigation and evaluation of their own patient care.
4. Interpersonal and communication skills that result in effective information exchange and teaming with patients, their families, and other health professionals.
5. Professionalism as manifested through a commitment to carrying out professional responsibilities, adherence to ethical principles, and sensitivity to a diverse patient population.
6. Systems-based practice as manifested by actions that demonstrate an awareness of and responsiveness to the larger context and system of health care and the ability to effectively call on system resources to provide optimal care that is of optimal value.

The goal of a surgical residency is to prepare the resident surgeon for the independent practice of surgery. Societal and governmental pressures in the United States are now requiring the practitioner of surgery to be “competent” and accountable. However, the term competent surgeon has yet to be defined. Furthermore, the curricula and strategies to train the competent surgeon are not yet developed. The Residency Review Committee for Obstetrics and Gynecology structures and certifies “adequate” training for the gynecologic surgeon. Presently, the federal and state governments in the United States, as well as in other countries, are now questioning the quality of surgical education and the competency of practicing surgeons. This is true in all surgical specialties, including the training and practice of gynecologic surgery. Medicare and Medicaid patients are now demanding monitoring of quality indicators of surgical procedures and subsequent outcomes. Soon, these data on hospitals and individual surgeons will be translated into a pay-for-performance program. These data will also become available for public scrutiny. Unfortunately, the governmental laws, rules, and regulations concerning the practice of medicine and surgery are coming much faster than medical educators have time to study, develop, and validate the coming “competency-based” surgical training programs.

This chapter briefly discusses the present state of surgical training, the present-day problems that need to be addressed, and the pressures that are moving the development of training programs that will produce the “competent” gynecologic surgeons in the near future. Where have we been and where are we now? Where must we go and why? What are we to do? The interested reader will find more depth, other views, and further specifics on this topic in the references at the end of this chapter. In particular, the reader is referred to “Teaching and Evaluating Surgical Skills,” edited by Rebecca G. Rogers, in Obstetrics and Gynecology Clinics of North America, June 2006.

WHERE HAVE WE BEEN AND WHERE ARE WE NOW?

For more than one hundred years, the apprenticeship model has been how gynecologic surgeons are transformed from medical students to resident gynecologic surgeons to independent practitioners. This system continues to be a “see one, do one, teach one” teaching model under the supervision of a surgical mentor. The surgical mentor predominantly teaches surgery based on his or her own personal experiences and modes on evidenced-based studies. The mentors in many surgical training programs today, as over the past century, have widely variable training, the present-day problems that need to be addressed, and the pressures that are moving the development of training programs that will produce the “competent” gynecologic surgeons in the near future. Where have we been and where are we now? Where must we go and why? What are we to do? The interested reader will find more depth, other views, and further specifics on this topic in the references at the end of this chapter. In particular, the reader is referred to “Teaching and Evaluating Surgical Skills,” edited by Rebecca G. Rogers, in Obstetrics and Gynecology Clinics of North America, June 2006.

For more than one hundred years, the apprenticeship model has been how gynecologic surgeons are transformed from medical students to resident gynecologic surgeons to independent practitioners. This system continues to be a “see one, do one, teach one” teaching model under the supervision of a surgical mentor. The surgical mentor predominantly teaches surgery based on his or her own personal experiences and modes on evidenced-based studies. The mentors in many surgical training programs today, as over the past century, have widely variable surgical skills and teaching styles. Thus, surgical instruction continues to be a “trial by exhaustion and humiliation, as well as a journey of harassment and abuse (Dunnington).” Surgical instructors have not been schooled in how to be effective mentors, how to teach surgery, and how to evaluate surgical skills. This is as true today as it has always been. Some instructors don’t even allow the resident any hands-on surgical experience. They allow the resident to learn by assisting at the surgery. The apprenticeship model does not offer uniform case loads with seasoned mentors to assure adequate experience in performing gynecologic surgery. The teaching of ethics, professionalism, patient care, medical knowledge, and leadership were and are rarely taught, except by the happenstance examples of the mentors.

73
Teaching in the apprenticeship model is teacher oriented rather than student oriented. Teacher-oriented teaching has been shown to be random, without structure and purpose or defined goals. The Residency Review Committee (RRC) for Obstetrics and Gynecology eventually established structure- and-process guidelines for surgical training in gynecology by defining the types of surgery with which the resident should be involved. This is, of course, a clinic-based practice and the judgment of the resident is subjectively determined by the individual residency program director.

The newly graduated gynecologic resident has simply fulfilled a requirement of time served with no defined minimum requirements of acquired surgical skills and experience.

The educators and practitioners of clinical gynecology today have seen the significant inconsistencies and weaknesses of training gynecologic surgeons by the traditional apprenticeship model. In the past 15 to 20 years in the United States, various factors have arisen to further deteriorate the quality of surgical training. Observations within the obstetric residency programs themselves show several unfortunate trends. The two most crucial are the decreasing number and variety of gynecologic procedures and the exodus of many dedicated surgical instructors from academic centers to private practice or retirement.

A third trend, being evaluated now, is the impact of the Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME) restriction on resident duty hours in clinical training and on-call experience. However, Nuthalapaty and colleagues, in studying the new restriction on residents’ working hours, report that “A reduction in resident participation in surgical care/procedures had a minimum prevalence of 38% across all clinical service types.”

Surgical cases are moving out of the teaching centers to private surgical specialty centers. This is especially significant with gynecologic procedures such as laparoscopy for hysterectomy, midurethral slings for stress urinary incontinence, and operative hysteroscopy. More and more subspecialty gynecologic surgeons have opened private centers for operative laparoscopy and operative hysteroscopy to evaluate and treat many gynecologic problems, including the need for hysterectomies, infertility, pelvic pain, and urinary incontinence. This marketing by private gynecologic surgeons is in direct competition with the teaching centers for patient population. These private practitioners are not interested in teaching because the resident will “slow me down and increase my medical-legal liability.” Historically, operative laparoscopy and laparoscopic hysterectomies among gynecologists primarily evolved in the private sector, not in the academic or teaching centers.

In addition, some traditional surgical diseases, often requiring hysterectomy and/or oophorectomy, are now increasingly managed medically without surgery or with minimally invasive procedures. Examples of such traditional surgical diseases are chronic pelvic pain, endometriosis, urinary incontinence, infertility, abnormal uterine bleeding, uterine fibroids, and ectopic pregnancy. Third-party payers have grasped hold of these medical and less invasive surgical therapies. They are more and more denying payments for the more invasive surgical procedures. These nonsurgical therapies significantly reduce financial costs but also the many departmental activities and financial obligations. These pressures urge the attending surgeon to operate himself/herself as much as possible in order to speed the case along to get done and get the next case under way as soon as possible. The goal is to do as many surgical cases as possible in a day to generate more income. Obviously, the resident becomes a technical assistant with little opportunity for verbal and hands-on instruction. In addition, the attending surgeon perceives that he/she can perform the case faster and better with less medical-legal risk. However, this perception may not be true.

Also observed has been a shift in the learning environment of many residents. In the past, the older gynecologic surgeons spoke of a sense of community, a sense of purpose, a sense of pride in their individual residency training programs. That sense of uniqueness in a residency program has disappeared with the departmental budget restraints and faculty turnover. Today, more residents appear to be overwhelmed by their patient responsibilities and lack real surgical training. There are presently no measurable standards by which to determine how well a gynecologic resident has been trained in various gynecologic surgical procedures. The surgical training method of apprenticeship with an individual mentor is no longer producing surgically qualified gynecologic surgeons. The role of “see one, do one, teach one” is wholly inadequate in this new era of laparoscopic surgery, operative hysteroscopy, and the expansion of surgical and medical knowledge needed to treat previous surgical gynecologic problems. The operating room cases available for resident training vary widely in complexity. They cannot be standardized for resident training. They may or may not be of sufficient difficulty and complexity for training, and they too often involve instructors who are not educated or experienced enough to do effective training in the operating room. In addition, the same patient may be treated and stressed, and the surgical mentor may be uninterested in teaching and more interested in getting the case done quickly without undue teaching. Surgical training has become a game of chance, a hit-or-miss lucky draw of getting good training from a good mentor during good surgical cases.

In general within our specialty, the reality exists that the present resident in gynecologic surgery is now learning surgery with less surgical experience in the operating room with less experienced surgical instructors. Therefore, in general, the present-day gynecologic surgeon leaving residency is deficient in surgical experience, knowledge, and skill. As a result, some graduated residents continue their surgical training in postgraduate surgical fellowships or subspecialty fellowships, or join practices with experienced gynecologic surgeons who are willing to mentor them. This perception is now met head-on with continued reports of medical and surgical mistakes in U.S. hospitals and the ever-increasing costs for the delivery of health care. A true crisis in the quality and quantity of gynecologic surgical training is now fully upon us. As a specialty, our own observations of surgical teaching deficiencies have now been memorialized by governmental regulation and the recent efforts to standardize the collection of surgical case data on complications and outcomes, and subsequent financial reimbursements.

General Topics Affecting Gynecologic Surgery Practice
WHERE MUST WE GO, AND WHY?

As a result of the societal and governmental outcry for top-quality medical and surgical care, the ACGME and the American Board of Medical Specialties (ABMS) have firmly moved to establish guidelines for the competency-based training for all physicians and surgeons. The former structure-and-process educational mandates are now being converted to competency-based educational programs. Unfortunately, the process toward competency-based training is neither well defined nor clear at this time. The steps in designing the new programs and curricula include (i) defining a competencies, development of a competent educational process, reliable and valid tests of knowledge and performance, and continuing assessment and evaluation of the whole process from beginning resident to “competent” practicing surgeon. In 1999, the ACGME identified in principle six general competencies upon which all graduate medical education must be based: (i) patient care, (ii) medical knowledge, (iii) practice-based learning and improvement, (iv) interpersonal and communication skills, (v) professionalism, and (vi) systems-based practice. Few guidelines and definitions have been issued since. The RRC is struggling to define and implement these six core elements of a competent residency education. The timeline for implementation is ambitious and being pressured by the federal government payers and legislature. However, there is little to implement at this time. Current professional literature is beginning to generate some articles on developing and evaluating the outcomes of competency-based educational models. However, much remains to be accomplished.

Just as clinical and surgical care should be guided by evidence-based clinical studies, gynecologic surgical education should be guided by evidence-based educational studies. The studies will directly assist the RRC in establishing requirements for how best to teach a particular clinical or surgical skill or professional attribute, including techniques, decision making, and leadership qualities. Surgical teaching methods and outcomes need to be standardized in a standardized manner. Surgical curricula need to be established and standardized to know what to teach and how to best teach the mandatory core knowledge. An important aspect of teaching operative skill is a realization that skill is a process. This final maturation process, called automization, involves the development of memory, skill, and certain intellectual skills. This framework enables the resident to perform a procedure step by step. However, fluency of these skills, along with operative judgment, demands further refined practice and experience under close critical supervision. This final maturation process, called automation, not only involves psychomotor skill development, clinical judgment, excellence, and knowledge of the literature, but also involves the development of interpersonal skills with emphasis on managing the operating room team.

WHAT ARE WE TO DO?

As Roger C. Crafts said, “You will remember a little of what you hear, considerably more of what you see, but almost all of what you understand.” This statement applies not only to the learning of scientific knowledge and principles, but also to the learning of technical skills and medical/surgical judgments. As emphasized, the training of the skilled and talented gynecologic surgeon must involve a skilled, caring, and interested mentor. The teaching quality of the surgical faculty does have an impact on positive student performance. This must also include a positive environment for immediate evaluation from a trained observer. As has been said, “Practice does not make perfect, perfect practice makes perfect.” The repetitive performance of specific skills has been shown to be much more effective in surgical training than general training involving multitask procedures.

Third, the highest-performing successful individuals have clarity, purpose, and imagination in their chosen field. “The ability to improvise, to cope skillfully with novel situations, requires vision, which takes years to develop.” As emphasized, the training of the skilled and talented gynecologic surgeon must involve a skilled, caring, and interested mentor. The teaching quality of the surgical faculty does have an impact on positive student performance. This must also include a positive environment for immediate evaluation from both self and mentor. This environment many times is delicate and balances between confidence-building positive and self-defeating negative. Reznick writes:

Surgical preceptors serve as extremely potent and influential role models. We do so in all the aspects of an operation, from our approach to tissue handling to our interpersonal relationships in the operating room. The second aspect is coaching. This role as a coach reminds us of a need to provide encouragement and discipline to the resident. In this way, we help create a scaffold upon which the resident can build.

Levels of resident surgical training include the use of the individual senses: hearing, seeing, and tactile feeling. In addition, individual surgical skills need to be practiced and then integrated into an operative framework. This framework enables the resident to perform a procedure step by step. However, fluency of these skills, along with operative judgment, demands further refined practice and experience under close critical supervision. This final maturation process, called automation, not only involves psychomotor skill development, clinical judgment, excellence, and knowledge of the literature, but also involves the development of interpersonal skills with emphasis on managing the operating room team.
RESIDENTS AND SURGICAL EDUCATION

Learning through hearing involves carefully crafted, presented, and coordinated lectures, case presentations, and discussions. Observational activities include seeing videos, watching various surgical exercises on inanimate trainers, watching cadaveric dissections, and, of course, observing live surgical procedures. The development of hand-eye coordination and hands-on surgical skills involves the use of inanimate trainers, computer simulators, animal models, human cadaveric dissections, and, of course, surgically intact patients under the careful tutelage of a surgical instructor and mentor. Obviously, the teaching and evaluation of surgical skills and clinical judgment before entering the live operating room presents several distinct ethical, medical-legal, and financial advantages. Lectures and case discussions must include patient presentations; appropriate history taking; focused physical examinations; discussion of findings; medical or surgical options, including possible benefits; and possible risks and complications. An interactive teaching environment among teacher and students with feedback and explanations is more beneficial for learning. The modern gynecologic surgeon must not have the mindset that “if you can cut it, you can cure it.” Above all, the gynecologic surgeon must become an expert in the understanding, evaluation, and treatment options of gynecologic diseases and disorders. Auditory learning must include appropriate objectives, enthusiastic lecture presentations by the teacher, and appropriate postpresentation objective testing. Individual progress is best achieved when made accountable and measurable to the individual learner.

Likewise, observational learning when observing videos or surgery on animals, human cadavers, or live patients needs to be focused and broken down into individual surgical skills and decision components. The observations by the residents again must involve individual accountability and appropriate testing and measurement. Hands-on training must focus on specific and individual tasks within each complex surgical procedure.

Beginning exercises involve minimal equipment to practice knot-tying and the ergonomic use of surgical instruments. Knot-tying boards and simple plastic trainers are available from various surgical instrument companies. In addition, video laparoscopic trainers are also available for practicing more involved laparoscopic skills. Anastakis and colleagues showed “that both bench and cadaver training were superior to text learning and that bench and cadaver training were equivalent.”

A formal surgical training program within a residency does objectively improve the resident’s surgical skills. Animal models, particularly anesthetized pigs, allow the emerging gynecologic surgeon to get the actual feel of tissue dissections, see physiologic response, and experience a physical realism of operating on a live patient, especially with the immediate feedback of hemorrhage. However, the drawback of animal models is that the anatomy is often much different and the dimensions within the pelvis are much smaller than those in the human patient. However, the cost is much more affordable than present human cadaver courses and computer simulations. Despite this, the animal model has a role: physiologic hands-on operative experience. Other animal models may include various body parts of various animals to recreate the feel and texture of various human parts. However, to work on a live animal model, the technical support aspects can be complex, just as in the human model. The animal must be properly anesthetized in a properly prepared room with appropriate lighting, equipment, instrumentation, and technical and surgical support.

Advanced Surgical Training on Unembalmed Human Cadavers

A more advanced model for surgical training is the performance of dissection techniques and procedures on unembalmed human cadavers. This excellent model has been successfully used in teaching vaginal surgery, open laparotomy, hysteroscopy, and, of course, operative laparoscopy. We are fortunate in the United States to have the opportunity to have resident and postgraduate education courses using unembalmed cadavers. The use of human cadavers for postgraduate surgical education is not allowed or feasible in most countries of the world today.

The human cadaver model is an excellent model on which to learn human pelvic anatomy, including the dimensions and relations of the various structures and tissues within the human body, proper dissection techniques, and the performance of various surgical procedures. Even though the overhead financial cost of these courses is high, the intense and concentrated nature of the learning is well worth the expense in the minds of many individuals who have taken such training. The overhead expenses include the cost of administering the willed body programs in the various states; the immediate testing of the bodies for human immunodeficiency virus, hepatitis B and C, and syphilis; the proper handling of the bodies for cold preservation; the appropriate shipping, preparation of the body at the course site, and cost of technical support personnel in setting up the body at each workstation; and setting up the appropriate audiovisual equipment, instrumentation, and appropriate universal safety precautions. Teaching institutions interested in organizing such human cadaver teaching opportunities must inquire and coordinate their programs with their local medical school and state board of anatomic gifts. They must conform to the prevailing rules, regulations, and laws that control the use of these voluntarily willed bodies. Students and their instructors must be respectful, courteous, and appreciative of these individuals who allow their bodies to be used for their learning.

The participants in such a learning exercise must realize the purpose of this teaching is not only to appreciate and understand structural and pelvic support anatomy, but more importantly, to learn and practice proper tissue dissection techniques on human tissues. The practicing surgeon must be a master of the various tissue dissection skills and techniques to safely develop the surgical fields involved with the procedure. Further hands-on exercises in the cadaver allow each student to perform various gynecologic procedures. The purpose of cadaver learning is not to learn surgical instrumentation and basic skills, such as how to handle laparoscopic instruments and knot tying; these can be mastered with inanimate trainers. The purpose of cadaver learning is to learn dissectional surgical anatomy and to integrate surgical skills, already mastered, into an entire operative procedure. The goal of cadaver training is to significantly improve the operative experience of each participating surgeon. Ideally, operative procedures on human own patients will become safer (fewer operative complications), become more efficient (smoother dissections with less wasted motion and hesitation), have less blood loss (to obscure the field), and become more effective (better long-term results).

Teaching on human cadavers must have specific and directed objectives. Most gynecologic surgeons, when left to dissect a
cadaver alone, do not have a clear understanding of the relevant anatomy and dissection techniques that need to be mastered. Dissection techniques must be taught in a specific and directed manner, likewise. The participant should already have the appropriate surgical skills to take full advantage of his or her learning on the cadaveric model. These skills can certainly be learned, as noted earlier, via training on the various simulators, animal models, and, eventually, the computer-simulated trainers.

All aspects of gynecologic surgery may be understood and practiced on the human cadaver. This includes dissection of the anterior abdominal wall, correlation with surgical incisions and laparoscopic trocar placement; and practicing of dissectional techniques, layer by layer within the pelvis itself, particularly in the retroperitoneal areas. The retroperitoneal areas include the presacral space; the pelvic brim area; the pelvic sidewall; the base of the broad ligament, where the ureter passes underneath the uterine artery; the paravesical space anteriorly; the pararectal space posteriorly; the vesicocervical and vesicouterine spaces; the rectovaginal space, including the rectovaginal septum, and, of course, a thorough dissection and understanding of the anatomy of the retroperitoneal space of Retzius. These dissections must be carried out carefully in a directed manner to find the structures contained within the dissection plane and to understand their relationships to other vital structures within the same and surrounding anatomic areas. Further dissections, whether open laparotomy or through the laparoscope, can also include appreciation of the various somatic nerves, such as the obturator nerve and even the femoral nerve in the iliohypogastric groove. Other dissections can reveal the sacrospinous ligament; the sacral plexus of nerves, including the pudendal nerve and the sciatic nerve; the vesical nerve; the internal iliac artery and vein; and the hypogastric plexus and its many branches; the cardinal ligament and uterosacral ligament complex; and the various support tissues, such as the pubocervical fascia and rectovaginal septum.

Unembalmed cadavers also allow the opportunity to understand and practice on a live patient. This enables the student to dissect and to understand the structural and relational anatomy, and to perform procedures through the vagina for understanding of anterior vaginal wall prolapse or cystocele repair, apical prolapse or enterocele repair, and posterior wall prolapse or rectocoele repair. Within the pelvic cavity, the various tissue layers—such as the peritoneum, visceral fascia, and anatomic structures—have the feel of the live patient, but neither bleeds much nor cause undue anxiety during the learning of dissectional techniques. The operating gynecologist has the opportunity to practice surgical skills in a specific, focused manner, step by step, integrating all the steps to perform an entire procedure without the pressures of medical-legal considerations.

A less effective but still viable method of learning anatomy is on the embalmed cadaver, such as is found in medical schools. However, the opportunity to have the feel of live patient tissue is lost with the embalming process.

After these human cadaver specimens have been used for learning, these individual specimens are respectfully taken to a funeral home, where they are cremated. Their remains are returned to their home states and then to their families by the respective anatomic gifts registries. Again, we are appreciative for these individuals and their families who have voluntarily allowed their bodies to be used for anatomic and surgical training.

The program involving human cadavers must also have specific goals to allow the gynecologic resident and interested attending physician to develop a base of clinical and anatomic knowledge upon which to grow and develop as more experience is obtained in surgery. This core of knowledge and understanding in anatomy and surgical procedures is important so that the independent gynecologic surgeon can understand new techniques and surgical developments as the field of gynecology progresses in the future.

### Computer-generated Simulators

Several computer companies are well on their way to developing effective computer-based simulators, or in vitro gynecologic trainers, particularly involving open surgery, laparoscopic surgery, and hysteroscopic surgery. These computer-based simulators not only give the perception of operating on a “normal” patient but also allow for anatomic and pathologic variations within the practice patient. The computer provides a virtual attending mentor that offers immediate objective and nonjudgmental feedback. These computers are being programmed to allow for realistic haptics and the true feel of instrument motion and tissue pressure. The simulators provide skills maintenance, even with the decreasing caseload of major surgical procedures found in gynecologic residencies today. They are accessible for on-demand training 24 hours a day, every day of the week, 365 days of the year. The objective, unbiased, and nonjudgmental quantitative skills assessment motivates the individual because each resident is directly accountable for his or her own measured progress. Computer-based simulators allow for objective assessment of performance and outcome before the individual resident operates on a living patient.

The development of computer-based simulators by various research computer engineers is rapidly overcoming the challenges of computer costs, virtual anatomic realism, physical realism, haptic realism, and physiologic realism. Computer costs have decreased dramatically, thereby making this teaching modality much more affordable. Visual realism compares the look of the tissues on the computer screen with the real patient. Anatomic realism deals with the structural and relational anatomy within the field of operation. Physical realism deals with the size and feel of the instruments and tissues encountered. Haptic realism pertains to how things feel, like the feel of live surgery. The feel of mass, elasticity, gravity, and moving instruments is important in peristomotor development. Physiologic realism deals with possible hemorrhage at the surgical site; various movements of the patient, such as during respiration; and even pain perception by the poorly anesthetized patient. Visual realism and haptic realism allow the individual to practice hand-eye coordination. Issues of ethics, medical-legal concerns, and patient safety in teaching gynecologic surgery will be better solved as computer-based education becomes more affordable and more available.

### Training in Laparoscopy

As a result of the need to train surgeons in complex laparoscopic procedures, various training formats have evolved in recent years in various countries around the world. Many of these training models are based on individual laparoscopic procedures (see Bibliography). However, in August 1998, Brill and Rogers published “A Comprehensive Program for Resident Training in Operative Laparoscopy.” The thesis of this outline is that the basic laparoscopic anatomy, pathology, and fundamental technical and ergonomic skills—even for the most advanced laparoscopic procedures—can be
General Topics Affecting Gynecologic Surgery Practice

Millions of dollars are spent each year by commercial airlines and by the U.S. military in training aviation pilots using computer-modulated flight simulators, as well as actual training flights. Why has gynecologic surgical training lagged so far behind in the use of these modern modalities? Is a well-trained and seasoned surgeon not worth the expense to individuals in this society?

Julian and Rogers have again proposed a 5-year program for training competent obstetricians and gynecologic surgeons. The first year, PGY-1, consists of competency-based training in primary care medicine and basic surgical education. PGY-2, PGY-3, and PGY-4 consist of core education in obstetrics, gynecology, and their contained subspecialties. Importantly, for the first time in this era of limits on residents' work hours, the time to repetitively deliver hundreds of normal, spontaneous vertex vaginal deliveries needs to be rethought and revised. The PGY-5 year is a transition period from residency to independent practice. The fifth-year resident is a minimally supervised junior faculty member and assists in teaching, supervising, and evaluating the junior residents. The best way to learn and understand a clinical subject is to practice and teach. Concurrently, the resident will generate case lists and other experiences directly leading to board certification.

Julian and Rogers also propose the designation of several academic centers for developing excellence in surgical mentors who are well trained and dedicated will become enthusiastic, competency-based mentors. Seasoned surgical training will also teach motivated surgeons how to develop the most effective use of educational time in this era of limits on residents' work hours, the time to repetitively deliver hundreds of normal, spontaneous vertex vaginal deliveries needs to be rethought and revised. The PGY-5 year is a transition period from residency to independent practice. The fifth-year resident is a minimally supervised junior faculty member and assists in teaching, supervising, and evaluating the junior residents. The best way to learn and understand a clinical subject is to practice and teach. Concurrently, the resident will generate case lists and other experiences directly leading to board certification.

Julian and Rogers also propose the designation of several centers in the United States to develop and study the best methods to teach competency-based gynecologic surgery. Academic and practical input, as well as funding, from public and private payers of health care, from national foundations, and from specialty societies should be included in the process. The goal of these centers is the development of the best teaching methods for surgical training, as well as reliable competency criteria for learning evaluation. In turn, these centers will supply the RRC with an objective tested program to guide surgical training and establish criteria for program certification. It is in the financial and patient safety interests of the federal and state governments, as well as the private insurance payers, to fund this work in training competent surgeons, who will best use the limited funds available to care for the surgical needs of future society.

Also, with the loss of many skilled and seasoned educators from academic and teaching centers, the problem of dedicated and available educators must be immediately and directly addressed. The teachers themselves need to be mentored and trained, and must have financial incentives to be the best possible teachers. This is a proven business method of developing quality. The problem of dedicated and available surgical teachers must be addressed directly, not only by teaching institutions and the specialty, but most importantly, by the health care payers and the government policy makers. Postgraduate programs must be developed to increase the numbers of quality surgical instructors. These physicians should be getting PhDs in how to teach, not MBAs.

Testing of technical skills must be clearly addressed. The residents must be accountable for their own progress. Tests must be crafted so that they can measure their progress, both quantitatively and qualitatively. These tests must be feasible, reliable, and valid. Assessment and measurement leads to personal accountability, motivation to learn, and true measurable progress.

In addition, training of the individual gynecologic surgeon must not only emphasize individual skill development but should also include training in creating effective and harmonious surgical teams, particularly involving their administration and interpersonal relationships. Teamwork in the operating room is important to realize optimal performance. Until recently, there have been no tools to measure teamwork in the surgical setting. MaKary and coauthors have demonstrated that the Safety Attitudes Questionnaire can be used to measure teamwork, identify disconnects between or within disciplines, and evaluate interventions aimed at improving patient safety. Clearly, residents will participate as team members in the operating room. Using operating room briefings and debriefings as a means of improving teamwork communication will also optimize the student learning experience.

We need to train more effective and sensitive mentors. Mentors must provide ongoing feedback in a positive and constructive manner. Without this continual feedback, deficiencies in an individual's training will not be corrected. The caring and effective mentor will have a professional yet personal relationship with the learner. The effective mentor in surgical education must be skilled in questioning, must ensure a comfortable environment for learning, and must be willing to question present surgical practices. “Without effective mentoring, students feel alone, perplexed, overwhelmed” with a decreased enthusiasm for learning (Dunnington).

Last, Resnick concludes:

What makes an excellent operative teacher is adherence to basic, almost simple principals: treat residents as adult learners; set specific objectives; realize that operative skills are multidimensional; and be there, observe, be patient, provide feed-back, be positive, take the job seriously and structure the assessment process.

The proposed academic centers for developing excellence in surgical training will also teach motivated surgeons how to become enthusiastic, competency-based mentors. Seasoned surgical mentors who are well trained and dedicated will be the engines that power the longevity and practicality in modern surgical training and practice in the United States.
BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

Although the regulatory agencies have set the parameters for education in the surgical specialties, there is considerable latitude for optimization of the learning experience. Training of the individual gynecologic surgeon must not only emphasize individual skill development, but should also include training in creating effective and harmonious surgical teams, particularly involving their administration and interpersonal skills.

The seasoned, well-trained, dedicated surgical mentor remains an important element that powers the overall progress to competency in modern surgical training and practice.
SECTION II  ■  PRINCIPLES OF ANATOMY AND PERIOPERATIVE CONSIDERATIONS
CHAPTER 7  SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE FEMALE PELVIS

JOHN O. L. DELANCEY

DEFINITIONS

Urinary trigone—The urinary trigone is a triangular visible area in the bladder, the apexes of which are the ureteral orifices and the internal urinary meatus. This is a layer of smooth muscle connecting the ureters and the urethra, the edges of which are visible cystoscopically and when the bladder is open.

Urethra and vesicle neck—The urethra is that portion of the lower urinary tract outside of the bladder that the urethral lumen traverses. That portion of the urethra lumen that is surrounded by the bladder vasculature is referred to as the vesicle neck.

Endopelvic fascia—The endopelvic fascias are those tissues outside of the muscularis of the pelvic organs that attach these organs to the pelvic sidewall. There is also some extension of loose areolar tissue over the surfaces of the organs. The surgical fascia used by gynecologists during pelvic reconstructive surgery, however, is primarily composed of the muscularis of the vaginal wall.

Pelvic spaces—The space between the bladder and the anterior portion of the pelvic walls is the perivesical space or space of Retzius. The space between the lower urinary tract and the genital tract is the vesicovaginal or vesicocervical space. This is bounded laterally by the “bladder pillars,” which is the region in which the tissues that go to the vagina separate from those that go to the bladder base. The recto-vaginal space lies between the posterior vaginal wall and the anterior surface of the rectum, and lies primarily above the top of the perineal body.

Pelvic diaphragm—The term pelvic diaphragm refers to the levator ani muscle and its covering fasciae, both the superior fascia and the inferior fascia. The term pelvic floor refers to all of the supportive structures that are involved with pelvic organ support. Sometimes the term pelvic floor and pelvic diaphragm can be used interchangeably, especially in the British literature.

VULVA AND ERECTILE STRUCTURES

The bony pelvic outlet is bordered by the ischiopubic rami anteriorly and the coccyx and sacrotuberous ligaments posteriorly. It can be divided into anterior and posterior triangles, which share a common base along a line between the ischial tuberosities. The tissues filling the anterior triangle have a layered structure similar to that of the abdominal wall (Table 7-1). There is a skin and adipose layer (vulva) overlying a fascial layer (perineal membrane) that lies superficial to a muscular layer (levator ani muscles).

Subcutaneous Tissues of the Vulva

The structures of the vulva lie on the pubic bones and extend caudally under its arch (Fig. 7.1). They consist of the mons, labia, clitoris, vestibule, and associated erectile structures and their muscles. The mons consists of hair-bearing skin over a cushion of adipose tissue that lies on the pubic bones. Extending posteriorly from the mons, the labia majora are composed of similar hair-bearing skin and adipose tissue, which contain the termination of the round ligaments of the uterus and the obliterated processus vaginalis (canal of Nuck). The round ligament can give rise to leiomomas in this region, and the obliterated processus vaginalis can be a diluted embryonic remnant in the adult.

The labia minora, vestibule, and glans clitoris can be seen between the two labia majora. The labia minora are hairless skin folds, each of which splits anteriorly to run over, and under, the glans of the clitoris. The more anterior folds unite to form the hood-shaped prepuce of the clitoris, whereas the posterior folds insert into the underside of the glans as the frenulum.

Unlike the skin of the labia majora, the cutaneous structures of the labia minora and vestibule do not lie on an adipose layer but on a connective-tissue stratum that is loosely organized and permits mobility of the skin during intercourse. This loose attachment of the skin to underlying tissues allows the skin to be easily dissected off the underlying fascia during skinning vulvectomy in the area of the labia minora and vestibule.

In the posterior lateral aspect of the vestibule, the duct of the major vestibular gland can be seen 3 to 4 mm outside the hymenal ring. The minor vestibular gland openings are found along a line extending anteriorly from this point, parallel to the hymenal ring and extending toward the urethral orifice. The urethra bulges slightly around the surrounding vestibular skin anterior to the vagina and posterior to the clitoris. Its orifice is flanked on either side by two small labia. Skene ducts open into the inner aspect of these labia and can be seen as small, punctate openings when the urethral labia are separated.

Within the skin of the vulva are specialized glands that can become enlarged and thereby require surgical removal. The holocrine sebaceous glands in the labia majora are associated with hair shafts, and in the labia minora they are freestanding. They lie close to the surface, which explains their easy recognition with minimal enlargement. In addition, lateral to the introitus and anus, there are numerous apocrine sweat glands, along with the normal eccrine sweat glands. The former structures undergo change with the menstrual cycle, having increased secretory activity in the premenstrual period. They can become chronically infected, as in hidradenitis suppurativa, or neoplastically enlarged, as in hidradenomas, both of which may require surgical therapy. The eccrine sweat glands present in the vulvar skin rarely present abnormalities, but on occasion they can form palpable masses as syringomas.
TABLE 7.1

LAYERS OF THE ANTERIOR TRIANGLE OF THE PERINEUM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Layer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subcutaneous tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camper’s fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colles fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superficial space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clitoris and its crura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ischiocavernous muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulbocavernous muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater vestibular gland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superficial transverse perineal muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep space-perineal membrane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compressor urethrae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethrovaginal sphincter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The subcutaneous tissue of the labia majora is similar in composition to that of the abdominal wall. It consists of lobules of fat interlaced with connective tissue septa. Although there are no well-defined layers in the subcutaneous tissue, regional variations in the relative quantity of fat and fibrous tissue exist. The superficial region of this tissue, where fat predominates, has been called Camper’s fascia, as it is on the abdomen. In this region, there is a continuation of fat from the anterior abdominal wall, called the digital process of fat.

In the deeper layers of the vulva, there is less fat, and the interlacing fibrous connective tissue septa are much more evident than those in Camper’s fascia. This more fibrous layer is called Colles fascia and is similar to Scarpa’s fascia on the abdomen. Its interlacing fibrous septa of the subcutaneous tissue attach laterally to the ischiopubic rami and fuse posteriorly with the posterior edge of the perineal membrane (i.e., urogenital diaphragm). Anteriorly, however, there is no connection to the pubic rami, and this permits communication between the area deep to this layer and the abdominal wall. These fibrous attachments to the ischiopubic rami and the posterior aspect of the perineal membrane limit the spread of hematomas or infection in this compartment posterolaterally but allow spread into the abdomen. This clinical observation has led to the consideration of Colles fascia as a separate entity from the superficial Camper fascia, which lacks these connections.

**Superficial Compartment**

The space between the subcutaneous tissues and perineal membrane, which contains the clitoris, crura, vestibular bulbs, and ischiocavernous and bulbocavernous muscles, is called the superficial compartment of the perineum (Fig. 7.2). The deep compartment is the region just above the perineal membrane; it is discussed later.

The erectile bodies and their associated muscles within the superficial compartment lie on the caudal surface of the perineal membrane. The clitoris is composed of a midline shaft (body) capped with the glans. This shaft lies on, and is suspended from, the pubic bones by a subcutaneous suspensory ligament. The paired crura of the clitoris bend downward from the shaft and are firmly attached to the pubic bones, continuing dorsally to lie on the inferior aspects of the pubic rami. The ischiocavernous muscles originate at the ischial tuberosities and the free surfaces of the crura to insert on the upper crura and body of the clitoris. A few muscle fibers, called the superficial transverse perineal muscles, originate in common with the ischiocavernous muscle from the ischial tuberosity and lie medial to the perineal body.

The paired vestibular bulbs lie immediately under the vestibular skin and are composed of erectile tissue. They are covered by the bulbocavernous muscles, which originate in the perineal body and lie over their lateral surfaces. These muscles, along with the ischiocavernous muscles, insert into the body of the clitoris and act to pull it downward.

The Bartholin greater vestibular gland is found at the tail end of the bulb of the vestibule and is connected to the vestibular mucosa by a duct lined with squamous epithelium. The gland lies on the perineal membrane and beneath the bulbocavernous muscle. The intimate relation between the enormously vascular erectile tissue of the vestibular bulb and the Bartholin gland is responsible for the hemorrhage associated with removal of this latter structure.

The perineal membrane and perineal body are important to the support of the pelvic organs. They are discussed in the section on the pelvic floor.

**Pudendal Nerve and Vessels**

The pudendal nerve is the sensory and motor nerve of the perineum. Its course and distribution in the perineum parallel the pudendal artery and veins that connect with the internal iliac vessels (Fig. 7.3). The course and division of the nerve are described with the understanding that the vascular channels parallel them.
84 Principles of Anatomy and Perioperative Considerations

**FIGURE 7.2.** Superficial compartment and perineal membrane.

**FIGURE 7.3.** Pudendal nerve and vessels, with the position of the ischiorectal fossa (asterisk) and the perineal body (cross) indicated. (From: Anson BJ. *An atlas of human anatomy.* Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1950, with permission.)
The pudendal nerve arises from the sacral plexus (S2–S4), and the vessels originate from the anterior division of the internal iliac artery. They leave the pelvis through the greater sciatic foramen by hooking around the ischial spine and sacrospinous ligament to enter the pudendal (Alcock’s) canal through the lesser sciatic foramen.

The nerve and vessels have three branches: the clitoral, perineal, and inferior hemorrhoidal. The clitoral branch lies on the perineal membrane along its path to supply the clitoris. The perineal branch (the largest of the three branches) enters the subcutaneous tissues of the vulva behind the perineal membrane. Here it supplies the bulbocavernous, ischiocavernous, and transverse perineal muscles. It also supplies the skin of the inner portions of the labia majora, labia minora, and vestibule. The inferior hemorrhoidal branch goes to the external anal sphincter and perianal skin.

The inferior hemorrhoidal branch goes to the external anal sphincter and perianal skin. The large saphenous vein joins the femoral vein through the saphenous opening. Within 2 cm of the inguinal ligament, several superficial blood vessels branch from the saphenous vein and femoral artery. They include the superficial epigastric vessels that supply the subcutaneous tissues of the lower abdomen; the superficial circumflex iliac vessels that course laterally to the region of the iliac crest; and the superficial external pudendal vessels that supply the mons, labia majora, and clitoral hood.

Lymphatics from the superficial nodes enter the fossa ovalis and drain into one to three deep inguinal nodes, which lie in the femoral canal of the femoral triangle. They pass through the fossa ovalis (saphenous opening) in the fascia lata, which lies approximately 1 cm below the inguinal ligament, lateral to the pubic tubercle, along with the saphenous vein on its way to the femoral vein. The membranous layer of the subcutaneous tissues spans this opening as a trabeculae layer called a fascia cribrosa, pierced by lymphatics. The deep nodes are found under this fascia in the femoral triangle.

The femoral triangle is the subfascial space of the upper one third of the thigh. It is bounded by the inguinal ligament, sartorius muscle, and adductor longus muscle. Its floor is formed by the pectineal, adductor longus, and iliopectineus muscles. The femoral artery bisects it vertically between the anterosuperior iliac spine and pubic tubercle. The femoral vein lies medial to the artery; the femoral nerve is lateral to it.

As these vessels pass under the inguinal ligament, they carry with them an extension of the transversalis fascia, which is the extraperitoneal connective tissue deep to the rectus abdominis muscle called the femoral sheath. These sheaths extend about 2 to 3 cm below the inguinal ligament before fusing with the vascular adventitia. Besides the two parts of the femoral sheath that accompany these vessels, a third portion—the femoral canal—can be found in the space medial to the vein. The abdominal opening of this is the femoral ring. The femoral canal contains the deep inguinal lymph nodes. Lymph channels from these nodes pierce the membrane filling the femoral ring to 1 cm below the inguinal ligament, with the stem extending down along the saphenous vein. The nodes are often divided into four quadrants, with the center of the division at the saphenous opening. The vulvar drainage goes primarily to the medial nodes of the upper quadrant. These nodes lie deep in the adipose layer of the subcutaneous tissues, in the membranous layer, just superficial to the fascia lata.
Principles of Anatomy and Perioperative Considerations

communicate with the external iliac nodes. Also within this region, the femoral vessels give rise to the deep external pudendal vessels. The external pudendal vessels run deep to the femoral vein over the pectineal muscle to pierce the fascia lata. Here they become subcutaneous and form anastomoses with branches of the internal pudendal vessels as well as the deep femoral and lateral circumflex femoral arteries.

THE PELVIC FLOOR

When humans assumed the upright posture, the opening in the bony pelvis came to lie at the bottom of the abdominopelvic cavity. This required the evolution of a supportive system to prevent the pelvic organs from being pushed downward through this opening. In the woman, this system must withstand these downward forces but allow for the passage of the large and cranially dominant human fetus. The supportive system that has evolved to meet these needs consists of a fibromuscular floor that forms a shelf spanning the pelvic outlet and that contains a cleft for the birth canal and excretory drainage. A series of visceral ligaments and fasciae tethers the organs and maintains their position over the closed portions of the floor. The floor consists of the levator ani muscles and perineal membrane. The openings in these structures for parturition and elimination have required the development of ancillary fibrous elements that are concentrated over open areas in the muscular floor to support the viscera in these weak areas. This section discusses the structures of the pelvic floor; the fibrous supportive system is described in the section on the pelvic viscera and cleavage planes and fascia.

Perineal Membrane (Urogenital Diaphragm)

The perineal membrane forms the inferior portion of the anterior pelvic floor. It is a triangular sheet of dense, fibromuscular tissue that spans the anterior half of the pelvic outlet (Fig. 7.2). It was previously called the urogenital diaphragm, and this change in name reflects the appreciation that it is not a two-layered structure with muscle in between, as was previously thought. It lies just caudal to the skeletal muscle of the striated urogenital sphincter (formerly the deep transverse perineal muscle). Because of the presence of the vagina, the perineal membrane cannot form a continuous sheet to close off the anterior pelvis in the woman, as it does in the man. It does provide support for the posterior vaginal wall by attaching the perineal body and vagina to the ischiopubic rami, thereby limiting their downward descent. This layer of the floor arises from the inner aspect of the inferior ischiopubic rami above the ischiovaginal muscles and the crura of the clitoris. The medial attachments of the perineal membrane are to the urethra, walls of the vagina, and perineal body. Just cephalad to the perineal membrane lie two arch-shaped muscles that begin posteriorly to arch over the urethra (Fig. 7.5). These are the compressor urethral and the urethrovaginal sphincter. They are a part of the striated urogenital sphincter muscle in the woman and are continuous with the sphincter urethrae muscle. They act to compress the distal urethra. Posteriorly, intermingled within the membrane are skeletal muscle fibers of the transverse vaginal muscle and some smooth muscle fibers. The dorsal and deep nerve and vessels of the clitoris are also found within this membrane and are described later.

The primary function of the perineal membrane is related to its attachment to the vagina and perineal body. By attaching these structures to the bony pelvic outlet, the perineal membrane supports the pelvic floor against the effects of increases in intraabdominal pressure and against the effects of gravity. The amount of downward descent that is permitted by this mechanism can be assessed by placing a finger in the rectum, hooking it forward, and pulling the perineal body downward. If the perineal membrane has been torn during parturition, then an abnormal amount of descent is detectable, and the pelvic floor sags and the introitus gapes.

Perineal Body

Within the area bounded by the lower vagina, perineal skin, and anus is a mass of connective tissue called the perineal body (Fig. 7.3). The term central tendon of the perineum has also

---

**FIGURE 7.5.** Structures visible after removal of the perineal membrane and superficial perineal muscles. (From: DeLancey, copyright 1995, with permission.)
been applied to this structure and is descriptive, suggesting its role as a central point into which many muscles insert.

The perineal body is attached to the inferior pubic rami and ischial tuberosities through the perineal membrane and superficial transverse perineal muscles. Anterolaterally, it receives the insertion of the bulbocavernous muscles. On its lateral margins, the upper portions of the perineal body are connected with some fibers of the pelvic diaphragm. Posteriorly, the perineal body is indirectly attached to the coccyx by the external anal sphincter that is embedded in the perineal body, and it is attached at its other end to the coccyx. These connections anchor the perineal body and its surrounding structures to the bony pelvis and help to keep it in place.

Posterior Triangle: Ischiorectal Fossa

In the posterior triangle of the pelvis, the ischiorectal fossa lies between the pelvic walls and the levator ani muscles (Fig. 7.5). It has an anterior recess that lies above the perineal membrane. It is bounded medially by the levator ani muscles and anterolaterally by the obturator internus muscle. The main portion of the fossa is lateral to the levator ani and external anal sphincter, and it has a posterior portion that extends above the gluteus maximus. Traversing this region is the pudendal neurovascular trunk.

Anal Sphincters

The external sphincter lies in the posterior triangle of the perineum (Fig. 7.6). It is a single mass of muscle, which has traditionally been divided into superficial and deep portions. The subcutaneous portion lies attached to the perianal skin and forms an encircling ring around the anal canal. It is responsible for the characteristic radially oriented folds in the perianal skin. The superficial part attaches to the coccyx posteriorly and sends a few fibers into the perineal body anteriorly and forms the bulk of the anal sphincter seen separated in third-degree midline obstetric tears. The fibers of the deep part generally encircle the rectum and blend indistinguishably with the puborectalis, which forms a loop under the dorsal surface of the anorectum and which is attached anteriorly to the pubic bone (Fig. 7.6).

The internal anal sphincter is a thickening in the circular smooth muscle of the anal wall. It lies just inside the external anal sphincter and is separated from it by a visible intersphincteric groove. It extends downward inside the external anal sphincter to within a few millimeters of the external sphincter’s caudal extent. The internal sphincter can be identified just beneath the anal submucosa in repair of a chronic fourth-degree laceration of the perineum as a rubbery white layer that is often erroneously been referred to as fascia during obstetrical repair of 4th degree laceration. The longitudinal smooth muscle layer of the bowel, along with some fibers of the levator ani, separates the external and internal sphincters as they descend in the intersphincteric groove.

Levator Ani and Pelvic Wall

Unfortunately, the extreme abdominal pressures generated during embalming greatly distort the levator ani muscles by forcing them downward. Most anatomy atlases therefore fail to give a true picture of the horizontal nature of this strong supportive shelf of muscle. Examination of the normal standing patient is the best way to appreciate the nature of this closure mechanism, because the lithotomy position causes some relaxation of the musculature. During routine pelvic examination of the nullipara, the effectiveness of this closure can be appreciated, because it is often difficult to insert a speculum if the muscles are contracted and not relaxed.

The opening between the bones and muscles of the pelvic wall is spanned by the muscles of the pelvic diaphragm: the pubococcygeal, iliococcygeal, puborectal, and coccygeal muscles (Fig. 7.7). The most medial of these muscles is the puborectal–pubococcygeal complex. The pubococcygeal portion of these muscles has an insertion into the anococcygeal raphe and the superior surface of the coccyx, whereas the puborectal portion represents those inferior fibers that pass behind and insert...
into the rectum. Both portions arise from the inner surface of
the pubic bones and pass the urethra without attaching to it.
Some fibers attach to the lateral vaginal wall and external anal
sphincter and form a sling around the rectum before return-
ing to a similar course on the other side. The pubococcygeal
portion passes posteriorly from its origin ventral to the ilio-
coccygeal muscle, where its fibers insert between the internal
and external anal sphincter muscles in the intersphincteric
groove, and form a sling behind the rectum. A few fibers also run on the
cephalic surface of the iliococcygeal muscle to reach the inner
surface of the sacrum and the coccyx.

The iliococcygeal muscle arises from a fibrous band overly-
ing the obturator internus called the arcus tendineus levatoris
ani. From these broad origins, the fibers of the iliococcygeal
muscle pass behind the rectum and insert into the midline
anococcygeal raphe and the coccyx. The coccygeal muscle
arises from the ischial spine and sacrospinous ligament to in-
sert into the borders of the coccyx and the lowest segment of
the sacrum.

These muscles are covered on their superior and inferior
surfaces by superior and inferior fasciae. When the levator
ansi muscles and their fasciae are considered together, they are
called the pelvic diaphragm, not to be confused with the uro-
genital diaphragm (perineal membrane).

The muscle fibers of the pelvic diaphragm form a broad
U-shaped layer of muscle with the open end of the U directed
anteriorly. The open area within the U through which the ure-
trah, vagina, and rectum pass is called the urogenital hiatus.

The normal tone of the muscles of the pelvic diaphragm keep
the base of the U pressed against the backs of the pubic bones,
keeping the vagina and rectum closed. The region of the levator
ani between the anus and coccyx formed by the anococcygeal
raphé (see previous discussion) is clinically called the levator
plate. It forms a supportive shelf on which the rectum, upper
vagina, and uterus can rest. The relatively horizontal position
of this shelf is determined by the anterior traction on the fibrous
levator plate by the pubococcygeal and pubococcygeal muscles
and is important to vaginal and uterine support.

The iliococcygeal and coccygeal muscles receive their innerv-
ation from an anterior branch of the ventral ramus of the third
and fourth sacral nerves, whereas the medial portions of the pu-
borot and pubococcygeal muscles are probably supplied by the
pudendal nerve.

THE PELVIC VISCERA

This section on the pelvic viscera discusses the structure of
the individual pelvic organs and considers specific aspects of
their interrelations (Fig. 7.8). Those aspects of blood supply,
nervation, and lymphatic drainage that are idiosyncratic to
the specific pelvic viscera are covered here. However, the section
on the retroperitoneum, where the overall description of these
systems is given, provides the general consideration of these
latter three topics.

Genital Structures

Vagina

The vagina is a pliable hollow viscus with a shape that is deter-
mined by the structures surrounding it and by its attachments
to the pelvic wall. These attachments are to the lateral margins
of the vagina, so that its lumen is a transverse slit, with the
anterior and posterior walls in contact with one another. The lower portion of the vagina is constructed as it passes through the urogenital hiatus in the levator ani. The upper part is much more capacious. The vagina is bent at an angle of 120 degrees by the anterior traction of the levator ani muscles at the junction of the lower one third and upper two thirds of the vagina (Fig. 7.9). The cervix typically lies within the anterior vaginal wall, making it shorter than the posterior wall by about 3 cm. The former is about 7 to 9 cm in length, although there is great variability in this dimension.

When the lumen of the vagina is inspected through the introitus, many landmarks can be seen. The anterior and posterior walls have a midline ridge, called the anterior and posterior columns, respectively. These are caused by the impression of the urethra and bladder and the rectum on the vaginal lumen. The caudal portion of the anterior column is distinct and is called the urethral carina. The recesses in front of and behind the cervix are commonly called the anterior and posterior fornices of the vagina, and the creases along the side of the vagina, where the anterior and posterior walls meet, are called the lateral vaginal sulci.

The vagina’s relations to other parts of the body can be understood by dividing it into thirds. In the lower third, the vagina is fused anteriorly with the urethra, posteriorly with the perineal body, and laterally to each levator ani by the “fibers of Luschka.” In the middle third are the vesical neck and trigone anteriorly, the rectum posteriorly, and the levators laterally. In the upper third, the anterior vagina is adjacent to the bladder and ureters (which allow these latter structures to be palpated on pelvic examination), posterior to the cul-de-sac, and lateral to the cardinal ligaments of the vagina.

The vaginal wall contains the same layers as all hollow visera (i.e., mucosa, submucosa, muscularis, and adventitia). Except for the area covered by the cul-de-sac, it has no serosal covering. The mucosa is of the nonkeratinized stratified squamous type and lies on a dense, dermislk submucosa. The similarity...
of these layers to dermis and epidermis has resulted in their being called the “vaginal skin.”

The vaginal muscularis is fused with the submucosa, and the pattern of the muscularis is a helical arrangement. Outside the muscularis there is an adventitia that has varying degrees of development in different areas of the vagina. This layer is a portion of the connective tissue in the pelvis called the endopelvic fascia and has been given a separate name because of its unusual development. When it is dissected in the operating room, the muscularis is usually adherent to it, and this combination of specialized adventitia and muscularis is the surgeon’s “fascia,” which might better be called the fibromuscular layer of the vagina, as Nichols and Randall suggested in Vaginal Surgery.

Uterus

The uterus is a fibromuscular organ with shape, weight, and dimensions that vary considerably, depending on both estrogenic stimulation and previous parturition. It has two portions: an upper muscular corpus and a lower fibrous cervix. In a woman of reproductive age, the corpus is considerably larger than the cervix, but before menarche, and after the menopause, their sizes are similar. Within the corpus, there is a triangular-shaped endometrial cavity surrounded by a thick muscular wall. That portion of the corpus that extends above the top of the endometrial cavity (i.e., above the insertions of the fallopian tubes) is called the fundus.

The muscle fibers that make up most of the uterine corpus are not arranged in a simple layered manner, as is true in the gastrointestinal tract, but are arranged in a more complex pattern. This pattern reflects the origin of the uterus from paired paramesonephric primordia, with the fibers from each half crisscrossing diagonally with those of the opposite side. The uterus is lined by a unique mucosa, the endometrium. It has both a columnar epithelium that forms glands and a specialized stroma. The superficial portion of this layer undergoes cyclic change with the menstrual cycle. Spongy or hormonally sensitive spiral arterioles that lie within the endometrium cause shedding of this layer after each cycle, but a deeper basal layer of the endometrium remains to regenerate a new lining. Separate arteries supply the basal endometrium, explaining its preservation at the time of menses.

The cervix is divided into two portions: the portio vaginalis, which is that part protruding into the vagina; and the portio supravaginalis, which lies above the vagina and below the corpus.

The substance of the cervical wall is made up of dense fibrous connective tissue with only a small (about 10%) amount of smooth muscle. What smooth muscle there is lies on the periphery of the cervix, connecting the myometrium with the muscle of the vaginal wall. This smooth muscle and accompanying fibrous tissue are easily dissected off the fibrous cervix and form the layer reflected during infastructural hysterectomy. It is circularly arranged around the fibrous cervix and is the tissue into which the cardinal and uterosacral ligaments and subcervical fascia insert.

The portio vaginalis is covered by nonkeratinizing squamous epithelium. Its canal is lined by a columnar mucous-secreting epithelium that is thrown into a series of V-shaped folds that appear like the leaves of a palm and are therefore called plicae palmatae. These form compound clefts in the endocervical canal, not tubular racemose glands, as formerly thought.

There is little adventitia in the uterus, with the peritoneal serosa being directly attached to most of the corpus. The anterior portion of the uterine cervix is covered by the bladder; therefore, it has no serosa. Similarly, as discussed in the following, the broad ligament envelops the lateral aspects of the cervix and corpus; therefore, it has no serosal covering there. The posterior cervix does have a serosal covering.

Adnexal Structures and Broad Ligament

The fallopian tubes are paired tubular structures 7 to 12 cm in length (Fig. 7.10). Each has four recognizable portions. At the uterus, the tube passes through the cornu as an interstitial portion. On emerging from the corpus, a narrow isthmic portion begins with a narrow lumen and thick muscular wall. Proceeding toward the abdominal end, next is the ampulla, which has an expanding lumen and more convoluted mucosa. The infundibulated end of the tube has many frondlike projections to provide a wide surface for ovum pickup. The distal end of the fallopian tube is attached to the ovary by the fimbria ovarica, which is a smooth muscle band responsible for bringing the fimbria and ovary close to one another at the time of ovulation. The outer layer of the tube's muscularis is composed of longitudinal fibers; the inner layer has a circular orientation.

The lateral pole of the ovary is attached to the pelvic wall by the infundibulopelvic ligament and the ovarian artery and vein contained therein. Medially, it is connected to the uterus through the uteroovarian ligament. During reproductive life, it measures about 2.3 to 3 cm long, 1.5 to 3 cm thick, and 0.7 to 1.5 cm wide, varying with its state of activity or suppression, as with oral contraceptive medications. Its surface is mostly

FIGURE 7.9. Bead chain cystourethrogram with barium in the vagina showing normal vaginal axis in a patient in the standing position.
FIGURE 7.10. Uterine adnexa and collateral circulation of uterine and ovarian arteries. The uterine artery crosses over the ureter in the cardinal ligament and gives off cervical and vaginal branches before ascending adjacent to the wall of the uterus and anastomosing with the medial end of the ovarian artery. Note the small branch of the uterine or ovarian artery that nourishes the round ligament (Sampson artery).

The ovary has a cuboidal to columnar covering and consists of a cortex and medulla. The medullary portion is primarily fibromuscular, with many blood vessels and much connective tissue. The cortex is composed of a more specialized stroma, punctuated with follicles, corpora lutea, and corpora albicantia.

The round ligaments are extensions of the uterine musculature and represent the homolog of the gubernaculum testis. They begin as broad bands that arise on each lateral aspect of the anterior corpus. They assume a more rounded shape before they enter the retroperitoneal tissue, where they pass lateral to the deep inferior epigastric vessels and enter each internal inguinal ring. After traversing the inguinal canal, they exit the external ring and enter the subcutaneous tissue of the labia majora. They have little to do with uterine support.

The ovaries and tubes constitute the uterine adnexa. They are covered by a specialized series of peritoneal folds called the broad ligament. During embryonic development, the paired mullerian ducts and ovaries arise from the lateral abdominopelvic walls. As they migrate toward the midline, a mesentery of peritoneum is pulled out from the pelvic wall from the cervix on up. This leaves the midline uterus connected on either side to the pelvic wall by a double layer of peritoneum. Within the upper layers of these two folds, called the broad ligaments, lie the fallopian tubes, round ligaments, and ovaries (Fig. 7.11). The cardinal and uterosacral ligaments are at the lower margin of the broad ligament. These structures are visceral ligaments; therefore, they are composed of varying amounts of smooth muscle, vessels, connective tissue, and other structures. They are not the pure ligaments associated with joints in the skeleton.

The ovary, tube, and round ligament each have their own separate mesentery, called the mesovarium, mesosalpinx, and mesorectum, respectively. These are arranged in a constant pattern, with the round ligament placed ventrally, where it exits the pelvis through the inguinal ligament, and the ovary placed dorsally. The tube is in the middle and is the most cephalic of the three structures. At the lateral end of the fallopian tube and ovary, the broad ligament ends where the infundibulopelvic ligament blends with the pelvic wall. The cardinal ligaments lie at the base of the broad ligament and are described under the section on supportive tissues and cleavage planes.

**Surgical Anatomy of the Female Pelvis**

**Blood Supply and Lymphatics of the Genital Tract**

The blood supply to the genital organs comes from the ovarian arteries and uterine and vaginal branches of the internal iliac arteries. A continuous arterial arcade connects these vessels on the lateral border of the adnexa, uterus, and vagina (Fig. 7.10).

The blood supply of the upper adnexal structures comes from the ovarian arteries that arise from the anterior surface of the aorta just below the level of the renal arteries. The accompanying plexus of veins drains into the vena cava on the right and the renal vein on the left. The arteries and veins follow a long, retroperitoneal course before reaching the cephalic end of the ovary. They pass along the mesenteric surface of the ovary to connect with the upper end of the marginal artery of the uterus. Because the ovarian artery runs along the hilum of the ovary, it not only supplies the gonad but also sends many small vessels through the mesosalpinx to supply the fallopian tube, including a prominent fimbrial branch at the lateral end of the tube.

The uterine artery originates from the internal iliac artery. It usually arises independently from this source but can have a common origin with either the internal pudendal or vaginal artery. It joins the uterus near the junction of the corpus and cervix, but this position varies considerably, both with the individual and the amount of upward or downward traction placed on the uterus. Accompanying each uterine artery are several large uterine veins that drain the corpus and cervix.

On arriving at the lateral border of the uterus (after passing over the ureter and giving off a small branch to this structure), the uterine artery flows into the side of the marginal artery that...
Composition of the broad ligament.

The uterus receives its nerve supply from the uterovaginal plexus (Frankenhäuser ganglion) that lies in the connective tissue of the cardinal ligament. Details of the organization of the pelvic innervation are contained in the section on retroperitoneal structures.

**Lower Urinary Tract**

**Ureter**

The ureter is a tubular viscus about 25 cm long, divided into abdominal and pelvic portions of equal length. Its small lumen is surrounded by an inner longitudinal and outer circular muscle layer. In the abdomen, it lies in the extraperitoneal connective tissue on the posterior abdominal wall, crossed anteriorly by the left and right colic vessels. Its course and blood supply are described in the section on the retroperitoneum.

**Bladder**

The bladder can be divided into two portions: the dome and base (Fig. 7.12). The musculature of the spherical bladder does not lie in simple layers, as do the muscular walls of tubular viscera, such as the gut and ureter. It is best described as a meshwork of intertwining muscle bundles. The musculature of the...
dome is relatively thin when the bladder is distended. The base of the bladder, which is thicker and varies less with distention of the dome, consists of the urinary trigone and a thickening of the detrusor, called the detrusor loop. This is a U-shaped band of musculature, open posteriorly, that forms the bladder base anterior to the intramural portion of the ureter. The trigone is made of smooth muscle that arises from the ureters that occupy two of its three corners. It continues as the muscle of the vesical neck and urethra. There it rests on the upper vagina. The shape of the bladder depends on its state of filling. When empty, it is a somewhat flattened disk, slightly concave upward. As it fills, the dome rises off the base, eventually assuming a more spherical shape.

The distinction between the base and dome has functional importance, because they have differing innervations. The bladder base has α-adrenergic receptors that contract when stimulated and thereby favor continence. The dome is responsive to β or cholinergic stimulation, with contraction that causes bladder emptying.

Anteriorly, the bladder lies against the lower abdominal wall. It lies against the pubic bones laterally and inferiorly and abuts the obturator internus and levator ani. Posteriorly, it rests against the vagina and cervix. These relations are discussed further in consideration of the pelvic planes and spaces.

The blood supply of the bladder comes from the superior vesical artery, which comes off the obliterated umbilical artery and inferior vesical artery, which is either an independent branch of the internal pudendal artery or arises from the vaginal artery.

The urethral lumen begins at the internal urinary meatus and has a series of regional differences in its structure. It passes through the bladder base in an intramural portion for a little less than a centimeter. This region of the bladder, where the urethral lumen traverses the bladder base, is called the vesical neck.

The urethra itself begins outside the bladder wall. In its distal two thirds it is fused with the vagina (Fig. 7.12), with which it shares a common embryologic derivation. From the vesical neck to the perineal membrane, which starts at the junction of

FIGURE 7.12. Lateral view of the pelvic organs showing the urethra and bladder. Inset B: Two portions of the striated urogenital sphincter muscle, namely, the urethrovaginal sphincter and the urethral sphincter. The compressor urethra is not seen. (From: The Brédel Collection, Department of Art as Applied to Medicine, Johns Hopkins Medical Institution, Baltimore, MD, with permission.)
the middle and distal thirds of the bladder, the urethra has sev-
eral layers. An outer, circularly oriented skeletal muscle layer (urogenital sphincter) mingles with some circularly oriented
smooth muscle fibers. Inside this layer is a longitudinal layer of
smooth muscle that surrounds a remarkably vascular submu-
cosa and nonkeratinized squamous epithelium that responds
to estrogenic stimulation.

Within the submucosa is a group of tubular glands that lie
on the vaginal surface of the urethra. These paraurethral (or
Skene’s) glands empty into the lumen at several points on the
dorsal surface of the urethra, but two prominent openings on the
inner aspects of the external urethral orifice can be seen
when the orifice is opened. Chronic infection of these glands
can lead to urethral diverticula, and obstruction of their ter-
mental duct can result in cyst formation. Their location on the
dorsal surface of the urethra reflects the distribution of the
structures from which they arise.

At the level of the perineal membrane, the distal portion
of the urogenital sphincter begins. Here the skeletal muscle of
the urethra leaves the urethral wall to form the urethrovaginal
sphincter (Fig. 7.13) and compressor urethrae (formerly called
the deep transverse perineal muscle). Distal to this portion, the
urethral wall is fibrous and forms a muscle for aiming the uri-
nary stream. The mechanical support of the vesical neck and
urethra, which are so important to urinary continence, is dis-
cussed in the section of this chapter devoted to the supportive
tissues of the urogenital system.

The urethra receives its blood supply both from an inferior
extension of the vesical vessels and from the pudendal vessels.

### Sigmoid Colon and Rectum

The sigmoid colon begins its S-shaped curve at the pelvic brim.
It has the characteristic structure of the colon, with three tenia
colii lying over a circular smooth muscle layer. Unlike much
of the colon, which is retroperitoneal, the sigmoid has a def-
inite mesentery in its midportion. The length of the mesen-
tery and the pattern of the sigmoid’s curvature vary consider-
ably. It receives its blood supply from the lowestmost portion of
the inferior mesenteric artery: the branches called the sigmoid
arteries.

As it enters the pelvis, the colon straightens its course and
becomes the rectum. This portion extends from the pelvic brim
until it loses its final anterior peritoneal investment below the
col-de-sac. It has two bands of smooth muscle (anterior and
posterior). Its lumen has three transverse rectal folds that con-
tain the mucosa, submucosa, and circular layers of the bowel
wall. The most prominent fold, the middle one, lies anteriorly
on the right about 8 cm above the anus, and it must be nego-
tiated during high rectal examination or sigmoidoscopy.

As the rectum passes posterior to the vagina, it expands into
the rectal ampulla. This portion of the bowel begins under the
col-de-sac peritoneum and fills the posterior pelvis from the
side. At the distal end of the rectum, the anorectal junction is
bent at an angle of 90 degrees where it is pulled ventrally by the
puborectalis fibers’ attachment to the pubes and posteriorly by
the external anal sphincter’s dorsal attachment to the coccyx.

Below this level, the gut is called the anus. It has many
distinguishing features. There is a thickening of the circular
involuntary muscle called the internal sphincter. The canal has
a series of ridges on its inner aspect. At the lower border the mu-
cosa of the colon gives way to a transitional layer of
non-hair-bearing squamous epithelium before becoming the
hair-bearing perineal skin.

The relations of the rectum and anus can be inferred from
their course. They lie against the sacrum and levator plate pos-
teriorly and against the vagina anteriorly. Inferiorly, each half of
the levator ani abuts its lateral wall and sends fibers to mingle
with the longitudinal involuntary fibers between the internal
and external sphincters. Its distal terminus is surrounded by
the external anal sphincter.

The anorectum receives its blood supply from a number of
sources (Fig. 7.13). From above, the superior rectal (hemor-
rhoidal) branch of the inferior mesenteric artery lies within the
layers of the sigmoid mesocolon. As it reaches the beginning
of the rectum, it divides into two branches and ends in the
wall of the gut. A direct branch from the internal iliac artery
arises from the pelvic wall on either side and supplies the rec-
tum and ampulla above the pelvic floor. The anus and external
sphincter receive their blood supply from the inferior rectal
(hemorrhoidal) branch of the internal pudendal artery, which
reaches the terminus of the gastrointestinal tract through the
ischiorectal fossa.

### PELVIC CONNECTIVE TISSUE AND
CLEAVAGE PLANES

The pelvic viscera are connected to the lateral pelvic wall
by their adventitial layers and thickenings of the connective tissue
that lie over the pelvic wall muscles (Fig. 7.14). These
attachments, as well as the attachments of one organ to an-
other, separate the different surgical cleavage planes from one
another. These condensations of the adventitial layers of the
pelvic organs have assumed supportive roles, connecting the
viscera to the pelvic walls, in addition to their role in trans-
mittting the organs’ neurovascular supply from the pelvic wall.
They are somewhat like a mesentery that connects the bowel,
for example, to the body wall. It has a supportive function as
well as a role in carrying vessels and nerves to the organ. An
understanding of their disposition is important to both vaginal
and abdominal surgery.

The tissue that connects the organs to the pelvic wall has
been given the special designation of endopelvic fascia. It is
not a layer similar to the layer encountered during abdominal
incisions (rectus abdominis “fascia”). It is composed of blood
vessels and nerves, interposed with a supportive meshwork of
irregular connective tissue containing collagen and elastin.
These structures connect the muscularis of the visceral organs
to pelvic wall muscles. In some areas, there is considerable
smooth muscle within this tissue, as is true in the area of the
uterosacral ligaments. Although surgical texts often speak of
this fascia as a specific structure separate from the fascia, this
is not strictly true. These layers can be separated from the vis-
cera, just as the superficial layers of the bowel wall can be ar-
tificially separated from the deeper layers, but they are not
distinctive separate structures.

### Pelvic Connective Tissue

The term ligament is most familiar when it describes a
dense connective tissue band that links two bones, but it
also describes ridges in the peritoneum or thickenings of
the endopelvic fascia. The ligaments are somewhat like
mesenteries, extending from the gut wall to the PE-
LVIC CONNECTIVE TISSUE AND
CLEAVAGE PLANES
FIGURE 7.13. Rectosigmoid colon and anal canal, showing collateral arterial circulation from superior hemorrhoidal (inferior mesenteric), middle hemorrhoidal (hypogastric or internal iliac), and inferior hemorrhoidal (internal pudendal) arteries.

Uterine Ligaments

The broad ligaments are peritoneal folds that extend laterally from the uterus and cover the adnexal structures. They have no supportive function and were discussed in the section on the pelvic viscera.

Within the broad ligament, beginning just caudal to the uterine arteries, there is a thickening in the endopelvic fascia that attaches the cervix and upper vagina to the pelvic side walls (Fig. 7.15), consisting of the cardinal and uterosacral ligaments (parametrium). The term uterosacral ligaments refers to that portion of this tissue that forms the medial margin of the parametrium and that borders the cul-de-sac of Douglas. The term cardinal ligament is used to refer to that portion that attaches the lateral margins of the cervix and vagina to the pelvic walls. The cardinal and uterosacral ligaments, therefore, are simply two parts of a single body of suspensory tissue. The term parametrium refers to all of the tissue that attaches to the uterus (both cardinal and uterosacral ligaments), and the term paracolpium refers to the portion that attaches to the vagina (cardinal ligament of the vagina). The uterosacral ligament portion of the parametrium is composed predominantly of smooth muscle, the autonomic nerves of the pelvic organs, and some...
FIGURE 7.15. A: Suspensory ligaments of the female genital tract seen with the bladder removed. B: Close-up of the lower portion of the middle vagina (level II) shows how the lateral attachments of the vagina result in an anterior layer under the bladder (pubocervical fascia) and a posterior layer in front of the rectum (rectovaginal fascia). The cephalic surfaces of the transected distal urethra and vagina (level III) are shown. (From: DeLancey JO. Anatomic aspects of vaginal eversion after hysterectomy. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1992;166:1717, with permission.)

intermixed connective tissue and blood vessels, whereas the cardinal ligament portion consists primarily of perivascular connective tissue and the pelvic vessels. Although they are often described as extending laterally from the cervix to the pelvic wall, in the standing position they are almost vertical as one would expect for a suspensory tissue. Near the cervix, they are discrete, but they fan out in the retroperitoneal layer to have a broad, if somewhat ill-defined, area of attachment over the second, third, and fourth segments of the sacrum. These ligaments hold the cervix posteriorly in the pelvis over the levator plate of the pelvic diaphragm.

The cardinal ligaments lie at the lower edge of the broad ligaments, between their peritoneal leaves, beginning just caudal to the uterine arteries. They attach to the cervix below the isthmus and fan out to attach to the pelvic walls over the periformis muscle in the area of the greater sciatic foramen. Although when placed under tension they feel like ligamentous bands, they are composed simply of perivascular connective tissue and nerves that surround the uterine artery and veins. Nevertheless, these structures have considerable strength, and the lack of a separate “ligamentous band” in this area does not detract from their supportive role. They provide support not only to the cervix and uterus but also to the upper portion of the vagina (paracolpium) to keep these structures positioned posteriorly over the levator plate of the pelvic diaphragm and away from the urogenital hiatus.

**Vaginal Fasciae and Attachments**

The attachments of the vagina to the pelvic walls are important in maintaining the pelvic organs in their normal positions. Failure of these attachments, along with damage to the levator ani muscles, result in the clinical conditions of uterine prolapse, cystocele, rectocele, and enterocele.

The cervix and upper one third of the vagina are suspended within the pelvis by the downward extension of the cardinal ligaments (Fig. 7.15). Anterior to the vagina in this area is the vesicovaginal space; posterior to it is the cul-de-sac and rectovaginal space. In its middle third, the vagina is attached laterally to the arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis. The arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis is a fibrous band that extends from its ventral attachment at the pubic bone to its dorsal attachment to the ischial spine. These lateral attachments suspend the anterior vaginal wall across the pelvis and prevent its downward descent with increases in abdominal pressure. The structural layer formed by the vaginal wall and its lateral attachments to the arcus tendineus is clinically referred to as the pubocervical fascia.
Support of the posterior vaginal wall prevents the rectum from bulging forward in the clinical condition known as rectocele. This support varies in different levels of the vagina. In the distal 2 or 3 cm of the posterior vaginal wall, attachments of the perineal body to the ischiopubic rami hold the perineal body in place and prevent protrusion of the distal rectum (Fig. 7.16). In the midvagina above this, the vagina is attached laterally to the fascia covering the inside of the levator ani muscles (Fig. 7.17). This connection prevents the middle of the posterior vaginal wall from moving forward and downward during increases in abdominal pressure. The combination of these attachments results in a structural layer that has been referred to by the term *fascia of Denonvilliers*. Detailed histologic studies of this area, however, have failed to reveal a separate layer in the midline between the muscularis of the vagina and the rectovaginal space except in the distal vagina, where the dense connective tissue of the perineal body separates these structures.

Urethral Supports

The support of the proximal urethra is important in the maintenance of urinary continence during times of increased abdominal pressure. The distal portion of the urethra is inseparable from the vagina because of their common embryologic derivation. These tissues are fixed firmly in position by connections of the periurethral tissues and vagina to the pubic bones through the perineal membrane (Fig. 7.18). A hammock-like layer composed of the endopelvic fascia and anterior vaginal wall provides the support of the proximal urethra. This layer is stabilized by its lateral attachments both to the arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis and the medial margin of the levator ani muscles. The arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis is a fibrous band stretched from a ventral attachment at the lower portion of the pubic bones about 1 cm above the lower margin of the pubic bones and 1 cm from the midline to the ischial spine. The muscular attachment of the endopelvic fascia allows contraction and
relaxation of the levator ani muscles to elevate the urethra and to let it descend. During increases in abdominal pressure, the downward force caused by increased abdominal pressure on the ventral surface of the urethra compresses the urethra closed against the hammock-like supportive layer, thereby closing the urethral lumen against the increases in intravesical pressure. The stability of the fascial layer determines the effectiveness of this closure mechanism. If the layer is unyielding, it forms a firm backstop against which the urethra can be compressed closed; however, if it is unstable, the effectiveness of this closure is compromised. Therefore, the integrity of the attachment to the arcus tendineus and the levator ani is critical to the stress continence mechanism.

The muscular attachment is responsible for the voluntary control of vesical neck position visible during vaginal examination or fluoroscopy when the pelvic muscles are contracted and relaxed. Relaxation of these muscles with descent of the vesical neck is associated with the initiation of urination and contraction with arrest of the urinary stream. The limit of downward vesical neck motion is determined by the connective tissue elasticity in the attachments to the arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis.

**Cul-de-sacs, Cleavage Planes, and Spaces**

Each of the pelvic viscera can expand somewhat independently of its neighboring organs. The ability to do this comes from their relatively loose attachment to one another, which permits the bladder, for example, to expand without equally elongating the adjacent cervix. This allows the vesica to be easily separated from one another along these lines of cleavage. These surgical cleavage planes are called spaces, although they are not empty but rather are filled with fatty or areolar connective tissue. The pelvic spaces are separated from one another by the connections of the viscera to one another and to the pelvic walls.

**Anterior and Posterior Cul-de-sacs**

Properly termed the vesicouterine and rectouterine pouches, the anterior and posterior cul-de-sac separate the uterus from the bladder and rectum. The anterior cul-de-sac is a recess between the dome of the bladder and the anterior surface of the uterus (Fig. 7.19). The peritoneum is loosely applied in the region of the anterior cul-de-sac, unlike its dense attachment to the upper portions of the uterine corpus. This allows the bladder to expand without stretching its overlying peritoneum. This loose peritoneum forms the vesicouterine fold, which can easily be lifted and incised to create a bladder flap during abdominal hysterectomy or cesarean section. It is the point at which the vesicocervical space is normally accessed during abdominal surgery.

The posterior cul-de-sac is bordered ventrally by the vagina anteriorly, the rectosigmoid posteriorly, and the uterosacral ligaments laterally. Its peritoneum extends for approximately 4 cm along the posterior vaginal wall below the posterior vaginal fornix where the vaginal wall attaches to the cervix. This allows direct entry into the peritoneum from the vagina when performing a vaginal hysterectomy, culdoscopy, or colpotomy. The anatomy here contrasts with the anterior cul-de-sac. Anteriorly, the peritoneum lies several centimeters above the vagina whereas posteriorly, the peritoneum covers the vagina. Keeping this anatomic difference in mind facilitates entering both the anterior and the posterior cul-de-sac during vaginal hysterectomy.

**Prescervical Space**

The prescervical space of Retzius (Fig. 7.14) is separated from the undersurface of the rectus abdominus muscles by the transversalis fascia and can be entered by perforating this layer. Ventrolaterally, it is bounded by the bony pelvis and the muscles of the pelvic wall; cranially, it is bounded by the abdominal wall. The proximal urethra and bladder lie in a dorsal position. The dorsolateral limit to this space is the attachment of the bladder to the cardinal ligament and the attachment of the pubocervical fascia to the arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis. These separate
FIGURE 7.19. Sagittal section from a 28-year-old cadaver showing the anterior cul-de-sac (aCDS) and the posterior cul-de-sac (pCDS). Note how the posterior cul-de-sac peritoneum lies on the vaginal wall, whereas the anterior cul-de-sac lies several centimeters from the depth of the peritoneum in this area. (Peritoneum digitally enhanced in photograph to aid visibility.) (From: DeLancey, copyright 2001, with permission.)

Surgical Anatomy of the Female Pelvis

this space from the vesicovaginocervical space. This lateral attachment is to the arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis, which lies on the inner surface of the obturator internus and pubococcygeal and puborectal muscles.

Important structures lying within this space include the dorsal clitoral vessels under the symphysis at its lower border and the obturator nerve and vessels as they enter the obturator canal. A branch to the obturator canal often comes off the external iliac artery and lies on the pubic bone; therefore, dissection in this area should be performed with care (Fig. 7.20). Lateral to the bladder and vesical neck is a dense plexus of vessels that lie at the border of the lower urinary tract. They are deep to the pubovesical muscle, and although they bleed when sutures are placed here, this venous oozing usually stops when the sutures are tied. Also within this tissue, lateral to the bladder and urethra, lie the nerves of the lower urinary tract. The upper border of the pubic bones that form the anterior surface of this region has a ridgelike fold of peritoneum called the ilipectineal line. This is sometimes used to anchor sutures during urethral suspension operations.

Vesicovaginal and Vesicocervical Space

The space between the lower urinary tract and the genital tract is separated into the vesicovaginal and vesicocervical spaces (Fig. 7.14). The lower extent of the space is the junction of the proximal one third and distal two thirds of the urethra, where it fuses with the vagina, and it extends to lie under the peritoneum at the vesicocervical peritoneal reflection. It extends laterally to the pelvic side walls, separating the vesical and genital aspects of the cardinal ligaments.
Rectovaginal Space

On the dorsal surface of the vagina lies the rectovaginal space (Fig. 7.14). It begins at the apex of the perineal body, about 2 to 3 cm above the hymenial ring. It extends upward to the cul-de-sac and laterally around the sides of the rectum to the attachment of the rectovaginal septum to the parietal endopelvic fascia. It contains loose areolar tissue and is easily opened with finger dissection.

At the level of the cervix, some fibers of the cardinal-uterosacral ligament complex extend downward behind the vagina, connecting it to the lateral walls of the rectum and then to the sacrum. These are called the rectal pillars. They separate the midline rectovaginal space in this region from the lateral perirectal spaces. These perirectal spaces allow access to the sacrospinous ligaments (mentioned afterward). They also form the lateral boundaries of the retrorectal space between the rectum and sacrum.

Region of the Sacrospinous Ligament

The area around the sacrospinous ligament is another region that has become more important to the gynecologist operating for problems of vaginal support. The sacrospinous ligament lies on the dorsal aspect of the coccygeal muscle (Fig. 7.20). The rectal pillar separates it from the retrovaginal space.

As its name implies, the sacrospinous ligament courses from the lateral aspect of the sacrum to the ischial spine. In its medial portion, it fuses with the sacrotuberous ligament and is a distinct structure only laterally. It can be reached from the retrovaginal space by perforation of the rectal pillar to enter the pararectal space or by dissection directly under the enterocele peritoneum. This area is covered in more detail in Chapter 35. Many structures are near the sacrospinous ligament, and their location must be remembered during surgery in this region. The sacral plexus lies immediately to the ligament on the inner surface of the piriformis muscle. Just before its exit through the greater sciatic foramen, the plexus gives off the pudendal nerve, which, with its accompanying vessels, passes lateral to the sacrospinous ligament at its attachment to the ischial spine. The nerve to the levator ani muscles lies on the dorsal aspect of the coccygeal muscle (Fig. 7.20). It supplies the rectum, as described in the section concerning that viscus.

The lateral boundaries of the retrorectal space between the rectum and sacrum.

Retroperitoneal Structures of the Lower Abdomen

The aorta lies on the lumbar spine slightly to the left of the vena cava, which it overlies. The portion of this vessel below the renal vessels is encountered during retroperitoneal dissection to identify the paraaortic lymph nodes (Fig. 7.21). The renal blood vessels arise at the second lumbar vertebra. The ovarian vessels also arise from the anterior surface of the aorta in this region. In general, the branches of the vena cava follow those of the aorta, except for the vessels of the intestine, which flow into the portal veins, and the left ovarian vein, which empties into the renal vein on that side.

Below the level of the renal vessels and just below the third portion of the duodenum, the inferior mesenteric artery arises from the anterior aorta. It gives off ascending branches of the left colic artery and continues caudally to supply the sigmoid through the three or four sigmoid arteries that lie in the sigmoid mesentery. These vessels follow the bowel as it is pulled from side to side, so that their position can vary, depending on retraction.

 Inferiorly, a continuation of the inferior mesenteric artery forms the superior rectal artery. This vessel crosses over the external iliac vessels to lie on the dorsum of the lower sigmoid. It supplies the rectum, as described in the section concerning that viscus.

The aorta and vena cava have segmental branches that arise at each lumbar level and are called the lumbar arteries and veins. They are situated somewhat posteriorly to the aorta and vena cava and are not visible from the front. When the vessels are mobilized, as is done in excising the lymphatic tissue in this area, they come into view.

At the level of the fourth lumbar vertebra (just below the umbilicus), the aorta bifurcates into the left and right common iliac arteries. After about 5 cm, the common iliac arteries (and the medially placed veins) give off the internal iliac vessels from their medial side and continue toward the inguinal ligament as the external iliac arteries. These internal iliac vessels lie within the pelvic retroperitoneal region and are discussed afterward.

The aorta and vena cava in this region are surrounded by lymph nodes on all sides. Surgeons usually refer to this lumbar chain of nodes as the paraaortic nodes, reflecting their position. They receive the drainage from the common iliac nodes and are the final drainage of the pelvic viscera. In addition, they collect the lymphatic drainage from the ovaries that follows the ovarian vessels and does not pass through the iliac nodes. The nodes of the lumbar chain extend from the right side of the vena cava to the left of the aorta and can be found both anterior and posterior to the vessels.

The ureters are attached loosely to the posterior abdominal wall in this region, and when the overlying colon is mobilized, they remain on the body wall. They are crossed anteriorly by the ovarian vessels, which contribute a branch to supply the ureter. Additional blood supply to the abdominal portion comes from the renal vessels at the kidney and the common iliac artery.

This region can be exposed either by a midline peritoneal incision to the left of the small bowel mesentery or, retroperitoneally, by reflection of the colon. During embryonic development, the colon and its mesentery fuse with the abdominal wall. A cleavage plane exists here that allows the colon and its vessels to be elevated to expose the structures of the posterior abdominal wall. Because the ureter and ovarian vessels originally arise in this area, they are not elevated with the colon.
Surgical Anatomy of the Female Pelvis

The presacral space begins below the bifurcation of the aorta and is bounded laterally by the internal iliac arteries (Figs. 7.22 and 7.23). Lying directly on the sacrum are the middle sacral artery and vein, which originate from the dorsal aspect of the aorta and vena cava (and not from the point of bifurcation, as sometimes shown). Caudal and lateral to this are the lateral sacral vessels. The venous plexus of these vessels can be extensive, and bleeding from it can be considerable.

Within this area lies the most familiar part of the pelvic autonomic nervous system, the presacral nerve (superior hypogastric plexus). The autonomic nerves of the pelvic viscera can be divided into a sympathetic (thoracolumbar) and parasympathetic (craniosacral) system. The former is also called the adrenergic system, and the latter is called the cholinergic system, according to their neurotransmitters.

α-adrenergic stimulation causes increased urethral and vesical neck tone, and cholinergic stimulation increases contractility of the detrusor muscle. Similarly, adrenergic stimulation in the colon and rectum favors storage, and cholinergic stimulation favors evacuation. β-adrenergic agonists, which are used for tocolysis, suggest that these influence contractility of the uterus. As is true in the man, damage to the autonomic nerves during pelvic lymphadenectomy can have a significant influence on orgasmic function in the woman.

How these autonomic nerves reach the organs that they innervate has surgical importance. The terminology of this area is somewhat confusing, because many authors use idiosyncratic terms. However, the structure is simple: It consists of a single ganglionic midline plexus overlying the lower aorta (superior hypogastric plexus) that splits into two trunks without ganglia (hypogastric nerves), each of which connects with a plexus of nerves and ganglia lateral to the pelvic viscera (inferior hypogastric plexus).

The superior hypogastric plexus lies in the retroperitoneal connective tissue on the ventral surface of the lower aorta and
receives input from the sympathetic chain ganglia through the thoracic and lumbar splanchnic nerves. It also contains important afferent pain fibers from the pelvic viscera, which makes its transaction effective in primary dysmenorrhea. It passes over the bifurcation of the aorta and extends over the proximal sacrum before splitting into two hypogastric nerves that descend into the pelvis in the region of the internal iliac vessels. The hypogastric nerves end in the inferior hypogastric plexus. The hypogastric plexuses are broad expansions of the hypogastric nerves. Their sympathetic fibers come from the downward extensions of the superior hypogastric plexus and pelvic splanchnic nerves from the continuation of the sympathetic chain into the pelvis. Parasympathetic fibers come from sacral segments 2 through 4 by way of the pelvic splanchnic nerves (nervi erigentes) to join these ganglia. They lie in the pelvic connective tissue of the lateral pelvic wall, lateral to the uterus and vagina.

The inferior hypogastric plexus (sometimes called the pelvic plexus) is divided into three portions: the vesical plexus anteriorly, uterovaginal plexus (Frankenhäuser ganglion), and the middle rectal plexus. The uterovaginal plexus contains fibers that derive from two sources. It receives sympathetic and sensory fibers from the tenth thoracic through the first lumbar spinal cord segments. The second input comes from the second, third, and fourth sacral segments and consists primarily of parasympathetic nerves that reach the inferior hypogastric plexus through the pelvic splanchnic nerves. The uterovaginal plexus lies in the dorsal (medial) surface of the uterine vessels, lateral to the sacrouterine ligaments insertion into the uterus. It has continuations cranially along the uterus and caudally along the vagina. This latter extension contains the fibers that innervate the vestibular bulbs and clitoris. These nerves lie in the tissue just lateral to the area where the uterine artery, cardinal ligament, and uterosacral ligament pedicles are made during a hysterectomy for benign disease, and within the tissue removed during a radical hysterectomy.

The location of the sensory fibers from the uterine corpus in the superior hypogastric nerve (the presacral nerve) allows the surgeon to alleviate visceral pain from the corpus by transecting this structure. It does not provide sensory innervation to the adnexal structures or to the peritoneum and is therefore not useful for alleviating pain in those sites. Another important way in which the autonomic nervous system is involved is through damage to the inferior hypogastric plexus during radical hysterectomy. The extension of the surgical field lateral to the viscera interrupts the connection of the bladder and sometimes the rectum to their central attachments.

The ovary and uterine tube receive their neural supply from the plexus of nerves that accompany the ovarian vessels and that originate in the renal plexus. These fibers originate from the tenth thoracic segment, and the parasympathetic fibers come from extensions of the vagus.

As the lumbar and sacral nerves exit from the intervertebral and sacral foramina, they form the lumbar and sacral plexuses. The lumbar nerves and plexus lie deep within the psoas muscle on either side of the spine. The sacral plexus lies on the piriformis muscle, and its major branch, the sciatic nerve, leaves the pelvis through the lower part of the greater sciatic foramen. The
Superior hypogastric plexus
Ureter
Hypogastric artery
Sympathetic trunk
Hypogastric nerve
Second sacral nerve
Inferior hypogastric plexus
Uterine artery
Uterus
Pubis
Pouch of Douglas
Rectum
Fifth sacral nerve
S1
L5


sacral plexus supplies nerves to the muscles of the hip, pelvic diaphragm, and perineum, as well as to the lower leg (through the sciatic nerve). The femoral nerve from the lumbar plexus is primarily involved in supplying the muscles of the thigh.

Pelvic Retroperitoneal Space
Division of the internal and external iliac vessels occurs in the area of the sacroiliac joint. Just before passing under the inguinal ligament to become the femoral vessels, the external iliac vessels contribute the deep inferior epigastric and deep circumflex iliac arteries. There are no other major branches of the external iliac artery in this region.

Internal Iliac Vessels
Unlike the external iliac artery, which is constant and relatively simple in its morphology, the branching pattern of the internal iliac arteries and veins is extremely variable (Figs. 7.24 and 7.25). A description of a common variant is included here. The internal iliac artery supplies the viscera of the pelvis and many muscles of the pelvic wall and gluteal region. It usually divides into an anterior and posterior division about 3 to 4 cm after leaving the common iliac artery (Table 7.2). The vessels of the posterior division (the iliohypogastric, lateral sacral, and superior gluteal) leave the internal iliac artery from its lateral surface to provide some of the blood supply to the pelvic wall and gluteal muscles. Trauma to these hidden vessels should be avoided during internal iliac artery ligation as the suture is passed around behind vessels.

The anterior division has both parietal and visceral branches. The obturator, internal pudendal, and inferior gluteal vessels primarily supply muscles, whereas the uterine, superior vesical, vaginal (inferior vesical), and middle rectal vessels supply the pelvic organs. The internal iliac veins begin lateral and posterior to the arteries. These veins form a large and complex plexus within the pelvis, rather than having single branches, as do the arteries. They tend to be deeper in this area than the arteries, and their pattern is highly variable.

Ligation of the internal iliac artery has proved helpful in the management of postpartum hemorrhage. Burchell’s arteriographic studies showed that physiologically active anastomoses between the systemic and pelvic arterial supplies were immediately patent after ligation of the internal iliac artery (Fig. 7.25). These anastomoses, shown in Table 7.2, connected the arteries of the internal iliac system with systemic blood vessels either directly from the aorta, as is true for the lumbar and middle sacral artery, or indirectly through the inferior mesenteric artery, as with the superior hemorrhoidal vessels. These in vivo pathways were quite different from the anastomoses that had previously been hypothesized on purely anatomic grounds.
Pelvic Ureter

The course of the ureter within the pelvis is important to gynecologic surgeons and is fully considered in Chapter 37. A few of the important anatomic landmarks are considered here (Fig. 7.24). After passing over the bifurcation of the internal and external iliac arteries, just medial to the ovarian vessels, the ureter descends within the pelvis. Here it lies in a special connective tissue sheath that is attached to the peritoneum of the lateral pelvic wall and medial leaf of the broad ligament. This explains why the ureter still adheres to the peritoneum and does not remain laterally with the vessels when the peritoneal space is entered.

The ureter crosses under the uterine artery (“water flows under the bridge”) in its course through the cardinal ligament. There is a loose areolar plane around it to allow for its peristalsis here. At this point it lies along the anterolateral surface of the cervix, usually about 1 cm from it. From there it comes to lie on the anterior vaginal wall and then proceeds for a distance of about 1.5 cm through the wall of the bladder. During its pelvic course, the ureter receives blood from the vessels that it passes, specifically the common iliac, internal iliac, uterine, and vesical arteries. Within the wall of the ureter, these vessels are connected to one another by a convoluted vessel that can be seen running longitudinally along its outer surface.

Lymphatics

The lymph nodes and lymphatic vessels that drain the pelvic viscera vary in their number and distribution, but they can be organized into coherent groups. Because of the extensive interconnection of the lymph nodes, spread of lymph flow, and thus malignancy, is somewhat unpredictable. Therefore, some important generalizations about the distribution and drainage of these tissues are still helpful. Distribution of the pelvic lymph nodes is discussed further in Chapter 46 on invasive carcinoma of the cervix. Figures 46.22 through 46.25 show this anatomy.

The nodes of the pelvis can be divided into the external iliac, internal iliac, common iliac, medial sacral, and pararectal nodes. The medial sacral nodes are few and follow the middle sacral artery. The pararectal nodes drain the part of the rectosigmoid above the peritoneal reflection that is supplied by the superior hemorrhoidal artery. The medial and pararectal nodes are seldom involved in gynecologic disease.

The internal and external iliac nodes lie next to their respective blood vessels, and both end in the common iliac chain of nodes, which then drain into the nodes along the aorta. The external iliac nodes receive the drainage from the leg through the inguinal nodes. Nodes in the external iliac group can be found lateral to the artery, between the artery and vein, and on the medial aspect of the vein. These groups are called the anterosuperior, intermediate, and postero medial groups, respectively. They can be separated from the underlying muscular fascia and peristemum of the pelvic wall along with the vessels, thereby defining their lateral extent. Some nodes at the distal end of this chain lie in direct relation to the deep inferior epigastric vessels and are named according to these adjacent vessels. Similarly, nodes that lie at the point where the obturator nerve and vessels enter the obturator canal are called obturator nodes.

The internal iliac nodes drain the pelvic viscera and receive some drainage from the gluteal region along the posterior division of the internal iliac vessels as well. These nodes lie within the adipose tissue that is interspersed among the many branches of the vessels. The largest and most numerous nodes lie on the lateral pelvic wall, but many smaller nodes lie next to the

these nodes are named for the organ by which they are found (e.g., parauterine). Not only is it difficult in the operating room to make some of the fine distinctions mentioned in this anatomic discussion, but also there is little clinical importance in doing so. Surgeons generally refer to those nodes that are adjacent to the external iliac artery as the external iliac group of nodes and to those next to the internal iliac artery as the internal iliac nodes. This leaves those nodes that lie between the external iliac vein and internal artery, which are called interiliac nodes.

The direction of lymph flow from the uterus tends to follow its attachments, draining along the cardinal, uterosacral, and even round ligaments. This latter connection can lead to metastasis from the uterus to the superficial inguinal nodes, whereas the former connections are to the internal iliac nodes, with free communication to the external iliac nodes and sometimes to the lateral sacral nodes. The anastomotic connection of the uterine and ovarian vessels makes lymphatic connections between these two drainage systems likely and metastasis in this direction possible.

The vagina and lower urinary tract have a divided drainage. Superiorly (upper two thirds of the vagina and the bladder), drainage occurs along with the uterine lymphatics to the internal iliac nodes, whereas the lower one third of the vagina and distal urethra drain to the inguinal nodes. However, this demarcation is far from precise. The common iliac nodes can be found from the medial to the lateral border of the vessels of the same name. They continue above the pelvic vessels and occur around the aorta and the vena cava. These nodes can be anterior, lateral, or posterior to the vessels.

**TABLE 7.2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Internal Iliac Circulation After Internal Iliac Artery Ligation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Biolumbar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIGURE 7.25.** Collateral circulation of the pelvis.
Table 7.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE OF ABDOMINAL WALL LAYERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subcutaneous layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camper's fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musculoaponeurotic layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectus sheath—formed by conjoined aponeuroses of the external oblique muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal oblique muscle: fused in lower abdomen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse abdominal muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transversalis fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peritoneum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Abdominal Wall**

Knowledge of the layered structure of the abdominal wall allows the surgeon to enter the abdominal cavity with maximum efficiency and safety. A general summary of these layers is provided in Table 7.3. The abdomen's superior border is the lower edge of the rib cage (ribs 7 through 12). Inferiorly, it ends at the iliac crests, inguinal ligaments, and pubic bones. It ends posterolaterally at the lumbar spine and its adjacent muscles.

**Skin and Subcutaneous Tissue**

The fibers in the dermal layer of the abdominal skin are oriented in a predominantly transverse direction following a gently curving concave upward line. This predominance of transversely oriented fibers results in more tension on the skin of a vertical incision and in a wider scar.

Between the skin and musculoaponeurotic layer of the abdominal wall lie the subcutaneous tissues. It is made of globules of fat held in place and supported by a series of branching fibrous septa. In the more superficial portion of the subcutaneous layer, called Camper’s fascia, the fat predominates, and the fibrous tissue is less apparent. Closer to the rectus sheath, the fibrous tissue predominates relative to the fat in the region known as Scarpa’s fascia. Camper’s and Scarpa’s fasciae are not discrete or well-defined layers but represent regions of the subcutaneous. Scarpa’s fascia is best developed laterally and is not seen as a well-defined layer during vertical incisions.

**Musculoaponeurotic Layer**

Deep to the subcutaneous tissue is a layer of muscle and fibrous tissue that holds the abdominal viscera in place and controls movement of the lower torso (Figs. 7.26 and 7.27). Within this area are two groups of muscles: vertical muscles in the anterior abdominal wall and oblique flank muscles. The rectus abdominis muscle is found on either side of the midline.
and the pyramidalis muscle is located just above the pubes. Lateral to these are the flank muscles: the external oblique, internal oblique, and transverse abdominal. The broad, sheet-like tendons of these muscles form aponeuroses that unite with their corresponding member of the other side, forming a dense white covering of the rectus abdominis muscle properly called the rectus sheath (rectus "fascia").

Rectus Abdominis and Pyramidal Muscles

Each paired rectus abdominis muscle originates from the sternum and cartilages of ribs 5 through 7 and inserts into the anterior surface of the pubic bone. Each muscle has three tendinous inscriptions. These are fibrous interruptions within the muscle that firmly attach it to the rectus abdominis sheath. In general, they are confined to the region above the umbilicus, but they can be found below it. When this happens, the rectus sheath is attached to the rectus muscle there, and these two structures become difficult to separate during a Pfannenstiel incision.

The pyramidal muscles arise from the pubic bones and insert into the linea alba in an area several centimeters above the symphysis. Their development varies considerably among individuals. Their strong attachment to the midline makes separation of their attachment here difficult by blunt dissection.

Flank Muscles

Lateral to the rectus abdominis muscles lie the broad, flat muscles of the flank. The aponeurotic insertions of these muscles join to form the conjoined tendon, or rectus sheath, which covers the rectus abdominis. Because of its importance, it is discussed separately subsequently.

The most superficial of these muscles is the external oblique. Its fibers run obliquely anteriorly and inferiorly from their origin on the lower eight ribs and iliac crest. Unlike the external oblique muscle's fibers, which run obliquely downward, the fibers of the internal oblique muscle fan out from their origin in the anterior two thirds of the iliac crest, the lateral part of the inguinal ligament, and the thoracolumbar fascia in the lower posterior flank. In most areas, they are perpendicular to the fibers of the external oblique muscle, but in the lower abdomen, their fibers arch somewhat more caudally and run in a direction similar to those of the external oblique muscle.

As the name transversus abdominis implies, the fibers of the deepest of the three layers have a primarily transverse orientation. They arise from the lower six costal cartilages, the thoracolumbar fascia, the anterior three fourths of the iliac crest, and the lateral inguinal ligament. The caudal portion of the transverse abdominal muscle is fused with the internal oblique muscle. This explains why, during transverse incisions of the lower abdomen, only two layers are discernible at the lateral portion of the incision.

Although the fibers of the flank muscles are not strictly parallel to one another, their primarily transverse orientation and the transverse pull of their attached muscular fibers place vertical suture lines in the rectus sheath under more tension than transverse ones. For this reason, vertical incisions are more prone to dehiscence.
Cross section of lower abdominal wall.

**Neurovascular Supply of the Abdominal Wall**

**Rectus Sheath (Conjoined Tendon)**

The line of demarcation between the muscular and aponeurotic portions of the external oblique muscle in the lower abdomen occurs along a vertical line through the anterolateral iliac spine (Fig. 7.28). The internal oblique and transverse abdominal muscles extend farther toward the midline, coming closest at their inferior margin, at the pubic tubercle. Because of this, fibers of the internal oblique muscle are found underneath the aponeurotic portion of the external oblique muscle during a transverse incision. In addition, it is between the internal oblique and transverse abdominal muscles that the nerves and blood vessels of the flank are found and their injury avoided.

In forming the rectus sheath, the conjoined aponeuroses of the flank are separable lateral to the rectus muscles but fuse near the midline. As they reach the midline, these layers lose their separate directions and fuse. Many specialized aspects of the rectus sheath are important to the surgeon. In its lower one fourth, the sheath lies entirely anterior to the rectus muscle. Above that point, it splits to lie both ventral and dorsal to it. The transition between these two arrangements occurs midway between the umbilicus and the pubic tubercle. Because of this, fascia of the transverse abdominal muscle are found underneath the aponeurotic portion of the external oblique muscle during a transverse incision. A vertical peritoneal incision cuts the posterior sheath. The linea alba, unites these two layers. Sharp dissection is usually required to separate these layers during a Pfannenstiel incision. A vertical peritoneal incision cuts the posterior sheath. The lateral border of the rectus muscle is marked by the semilunar line of the rectus sheath. Above the arcuate line, this is the level at which the anterior and posterior layers of the sheath split. Below it the transversalis fascia fuses with the sheath. The semilunar line is not always where the three layers of flank muscles join. During a transverse lower abdominal incision, the external and internal oblique aponeuroses are often separable near the midline.

The inguinal canal lies at the lower edge of the musculoskeletal layer of the abdominal wall. Through the inguinal canal, in the woman, the round ligament extends to its termination in the labium majus. In addition, the ilioinguinal nerve and the genital branch of the genitofemoral nerve pass through the canal.

**Transversalis Fascia, Peritoneum, and Bladder Reflection**

Inside the muscular layers, and outside the peritoneum, lies the transversalis fascia, a layer of fibrous tissue that lines the abdominopelvic cavity. It is visible during abdominal incisions as the layer just underneath the rectus abdominis muscles superficially. It is separated from the peritoneum by a variable layer of adipose tissue. It is frequently incised or bluntly dissected off the bladder to take the tissues in this region "down by layers."

The peritoneum is a single layer of serosa. It is thrown into five vertical folds by underlying ligaments or vessels that converge toward the umbilicus. The single median umbilical fold is caused by the presence of the urachus (median umbilical ligament). Lateral to this are paired medial umbilical folds that are raised by the obliterated umbilical arteries that connected the umbilical cord to the umbilical cord in fetal life, and the corresponding lateral umbilical folds caused by the inferior epigastric arteries and veins.

The reflection of the bladder onto the abdominal wall is triangular in shape, with its apex blending into the medial umbilical ligament. Because the apex is highest in the midline, incision in the peritoneum lateral to the midline is less likely to result in bladder injury.

**Vessels of the Abdominal Wall**

Knowing the location and course of the abdominal wall blood vessels helps the surgeon anticipate their location during abdominal incisions and during the insertion of laparoscopic trocars (Fig. 7.29). The blood vessels that supply the abdominal wall can be separated into those that supply the skin and subcutaneous tissues and those that supply the musculoskeletal layer.
Although there is only one set of epigastric vessels in the subcutaneous tissues (superficial epigastric), there are both superior and inferior epigastric vessels in the musculoaponeurotic layer, so care must be taken in using these terms to avoid confusion.

The superficial epigastric vessels run a diagonal course in the subcutaneous from the femoral vessels toward the umbilicus, as a single artery that branches extensively as it nears the umbilicus. Its position can be anticipated midway between the skin and musculoaponeurotic layer, in line between the palpable femoral pulse and the umbilicus. The external pudendal artery runs a diagonal course from the femoral artery medially to supply the region of the mons pubis. It has many midline branches, and bleeding in its territory of distribution is heavier than that from the abdominal subcutaneous tissues.

The superficial circumflex iliac vessels proceed laterally from the femoral vessels toward the flank.

The blood supply to the lower abdominal wall’s musculoaponeurotic layer parallels the subcutaneous vessels. The branches of the external iliac, the inferior epigastric, and the deep circumflex iliac arteries parallel their superficial counterparts (Fig. 7.29). The circumflex iliac artery lies between the internal oblique and transverse abdominal muscles. The inferior epigastric artery and its two veins originate lateral to the rectus muscle. They run diagonally toward the umbilicus and intersect the muscle’s lateral border midway between the pubis and umbilicus. Below the point at which the vessels pass under the rectus, they are found lateral to the muscle deep to the transversalis fascia. After crossing the lateral border of the muscle, they lie on the muscle’s dorsal surface, between it and the posterior rectus sheath. As the vessels enter the rectus sheath, they branch extensively, so that they no longer represent a single trunk. The angle between the vessel and the border of the rectus muscle forms the apex of the Hesselbach triangle (inguinal triangle), the base of which is the inguinal ligament.

Lateral laparoscopic trocars are placed in a region of the lower abdomen where injury to the inferior epigastric and superficial epigastric vessels can occur easily. The inferior epigastric arteries and the superficial epigastric arteries run similar courses toward the umbilicus. Knowing the average location of these blood vessels helps in choosing insertion sites that will minimize their injury and the potential hemorrhage and hematomas that this injury can cause. Just above the pubic
symphysis, the vessels lie approximately 5.5 cm from the midline, whereas at the level of the umbilicus, they are 4.5 cm from the midline (Fig. 7.30). Therefore, placement either lateral or medial to the line connecting these points minimizes potential vascular injury. In addition, the location of the inferior epigastric vessel can often be seen (Fig. 7.31) by following the round ligament to its point of entry into the inguinal ring, recognizing that the vessel lies just lateral to this point.

Nerves of the Abdominal Wall

The innervation of the abdominal wall (Fig. 7.30) comes from the abdominal extension of intercostal nerves 7 through 11, subcostal nerves (T12), iliohypogastric nerves (T12 and L1), and ilioinguinal (L1) nerves. Dermatome T10 lies at the umbilicus.

After giving off a lateral cutaneous branch, each intercostal nerve pierces the lateral border of the rectus sheath. There it provides a lateral branch that ends in the rectus muscle. The anterior branch then passes through the muscle and perforates the rectus sheath to supply the subcutaneous tissues and skin as the anterior cutaneous branches. Incisions along the lateral border of the rectus lead to denervation of the muscle, which can render it atrophic and weaken the abdominal wall. Elevation of the rectus sheath off the muscle during the Pfannenstiel incision stretches the perforating nerve, which is sometimes ligated to provide hemostasis from the accompanying artery. This may leave an area of cutaneous anesthesia.

The iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal nerves pass medial to the anterosuperior iliac spine in the abdominal wall. The former supplies the skin of the suprapubic area. The latter supplies the lower abdominal wall, and by sending a branch through the inguinal canal, it supplies the upper portions of the labia majora and medial portions of the thigh. These nerves can be entrapped in the lateral closure of a transverse incision and may lead to chronic pain syndromes.

The genitofemoral (L1 and L2) and femorocutaneous (L2 and L3) nerves can be injured during gynecologic surgery. The
genitofemoral nerve lies on the psoas muscle (Fig. 7.31), where it innervates the psoas or by too much flexion of the hip in the lithotomy position, causing anesthesia over the anterior thigh.

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- Important anatomic relationships of the ureter include:
  - The ureter lies medial to the ovarian vessels at the bifurcation of the internal and external iliac arteries entering the pelvis.
  - The ureter courses under the uterine artery approximately 1.5 cm lateral to the cervix.
  - The ureter lies directly on the anterior vaginal wall very near the place where the vagina is detached from the cervix during the hysterectomy.
  - Branches of the ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves run in the region of the abdominal wall involved in lower abdominal transverse incision and can be involved with nerve entrapment syndromes after these incisions.

- Support of the pelvic organs comes from the combined action of the levator ani muscles that close the genital hiatus and provide a supportive layer on which the organs can rest and by the attachment of the vagina and uterus to the pelvic sidewalls.

- The internal iliac vessels supply the pelvic organs and pelvic wall and gluteal regions. The complexity of these multiple branches varies from individual to individual, but the key feature is the multiple areas of collateral circulation that come into play immediately after internal iliac artery ligation so that blood supply to the pelvic organs has diminished pulse pressure but continues to have flow even after the ligation.

- The blood supply to the female genital tract is an arcade that begins at the top with input from the ovarian vessels, lateral supply by the uterine vessels, and distal supply by the vaginal artery. There is an anastomotic artery that runs along the entire length of the genital tract. For this reason, ligation of any single one of these arteries does not diminish flow to the uterus itself.

---

**Bibliography**


Sampson JA. Ureteral fistulae as sequelae of pelvic operations. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1909;8:479.


CHAPTER 8 ■ PREOPERATIVE CARE
SANFORD M. MARKHAM AND JOHN A. ROCK

DEFINITIONS
Preoperative care—The patient management period during which time gynecologic pathology, defects, and injury are assessed and diagnosed; an accurate decision is made for a surgical intervention; the patient is appropriately apprised of the problem and need for surgery as well as options available; and necessary preoperative evaluation and preparation is accomplished.

Preoperative evaluation—The assessment of a patient before surgery for the purpose of detecting factors that could affect surgical outcome and may include, in addition to a thorough physical examination, laboratory testing, imaging procedures, and consultations.

Preoperative physical examination—A complete physical examination of the whole body with special emphasis directed toward the breast, abdomen, and the pelvis and rectum.

Preoperative laboratory and imaging assessment—An assessment that is limited to those tests that are statistically important in detecting factors that could/would alter surgical outcome and are selected based on the patient's individual history and physical examination and not on a predetermined panel for all patients.

Preoperative gynecologic surgery assessment category—A complexity categorization of gynecologic surgical cases for purposes of selecting necessary preoperative testing and predicting surgical outcome. Categories include uncomplicated gynecologic pathology with an uncomplicated medical/surgical status, complicated gynecologic pathology with uncomplicated medical/surgical status, and uncomplicated or complicated gynecologic pathology with a complicated medical/surgical status.

A thorough review of medical sources does not yet provide sufficient controlled trial data to make evidence-based decisions on most preoperative laboratory and imaging testing for gynecologic surgery. The Cochrane Library contains recent controlled trial studies on individual gynecologic surgical procedures, but it does not currently contain controlled trial studies that relate to cost-effectiveness of any gynecologic preoperative testing or procedures. However, significant other case series data do exist that support the need for minimal preoperative testing in the uncomplicated gynecologic patient as well as specific preoperative testing and imaging for the complicated case.

This chapter is designed to provide to gynecologic surgeons an in-depth understanding of the essential features of preoperative care from the preoperative examination in the office, or emergency room, to the time of surgery. Included are suggestions relating to appropriate preoperative testing and evaluation based on the experience of gynecologic surgeons and anesthesiologists. Also included are accumulated data that demonstrate the benefits of preoperative evaluation to patient care. Foremost, it is essential to keep in mind that each woman must be considered individually, based on her medical findings and needs, and that no suggestions can be completely adapted to all women preparing for gynecologic surgery.

IMPORTANT OF PREOPERATIVE CARE
Successful surgical outcomes of operative gynecologic procedures occur as the result of several factors in addition to good surgical skills and techniques. These factors include:

1. An appropriate preoperative evaluation (the ability to accurately assess and diagnose gynecologic pathology, defects, and injury)
2. An appropriate patient selection (the ability to determine when surgical intervention is a necessary course of action)
3. An appropriate discussion with the patient regarding the benefits and risks of the surgery (the ability to communicate to the patient both short- and long-term complications in a manner that can be understood)
4. An ability to work with MCO organizations in terms of obtaining preoperative approval and complying with individual health care plan guidelines

Once a gynecologic pathology or defect has been detected and surgical intervention is thought to be the appropriate course of action, surgical planning should be instituted. In nonemergent cases, this planning should include a specific time for preoperative evaluation. The purpose of the preoperative evaluation is to accomplish the following tasks as described by Fischer: (a) decrease surgical morbidity, (b) minimize expensive delays and cancellations on the day of surgery, (c) evaluate and optimize patient health status, (d) facilitate the planning of anesthesia
and perioperative care, (e) reduce patient anxiety through edu-
cation, and (f) obtain informed consent. Although these objec-
tives were presented in the context of accomplishing the tasks
in a setting of a preoperative evaluation clinic, they are equally
applicable to surgical planning in smaller communities where
preoperative evaluation clinics are not available, provided that
the major components of the operating team, specifically the
gynecologist, anesthetist, surgeons, and consultants are available.

The importance of effective preoperative evaluations should not
be underestimated. Many studies have repeatedly shown that
preoperative patient conditions are significant predic-
tors of postoperative morbidity. It is essential that all women
undergoing preoperative assessment have a complete history
and thorough physical examination as a key element in their
workup. This examination is of importance to determine fac-
tors that could affect surgical outcome. When medical status
questions arise that cannot be answered by the gynecologist,
then laboratory testing and imaging procedures, as well as con-
sultations, become essential to promote optimal outcomes.

In the past, preoperative testing developed around the use of
a history and physical examination. Batteries of “routine”
individual and multiphasic laboratory tests and imaging proce-
dures were used to detect subclinical or presymptomatic med-
ical problems that might affect the outcomes of the surgical
procedure. Additionally, it was felt that less than desirable out-
comes of gynecologic surgical procedures could be minimized
through the use of a wide battery of tests to prove or disprove
normalcy before surgery. It was also felt that this reduction
in less-than-desirable outcomes might also provide some legal
protection.

Unfortunately, the use of multiple “routine” tests has re-
sulted in considerable additional costs for surgery and has cre-
ated a problem as to what should be done when preoperative
tests results are found to be unexpectedly abnormal. It has been
reported that data from the last two decades indicate 60% to
70% of laboratory tests ordered preoperatively are not re-
quired based on a review of the history and/or physical exami-
nation. Other studies suggest that only 1% or less of routinely
ordered preoperative tests revealed abnormalities that might
have influenced perioperative management. Furthermore, be-
tween 30% and 60% of all unexpected abnormalities detected
by preoperative laboratory tests were not actually noted or in-
vestigated before surgery. This fact alone suggests that not only
does the ordering of multiple “routine” tests not provide legal
protection but quite possibly it also sets up an opportunity for
increased legal liability. Finally, the cost of accomplishing these
unnecessary preoperative “routine” tests adds many millions
of dollars to health care costs each year without any proven
benefit to patient care.

Using this information and applying it to the preoperative
assessment of gynecologic surgery patients in the future, a pre-
operative evaluation should strive to answer the following three
questions as outlined by Rosen.

1. Is the patient in optimal health?
2. Can, or should, the patient’s physical or mental condition
   be improved before surgery?
3. Does the patient have health problems or use any med-
ications that could unexpectedly influence perioperative
events?

Therefore, all preoperative assessment and care should be di-
rected toward obtaining answers to these three pre-
operative testing modalities that are expected to give informa-
tion that leads to answers, as opposed to the random “routine”
batteries of tests used in the past.

Additionally it is most important to dedicate a portion of
the preoperative care time to a discussion with the patient of
options for management of her gynecologic problem, includ-
ing both short- and long-term potential complications. All pa-
tients must be given sufficient medical information to allow
them to make an educated decision about whether to proceed
with the planned surgery. Examples of gynecologic issues that
suggest the need for further discussion include the recently
reported significant increase in urinary incontinence following
hysterectomy (60%) or the higher than previously reported
failure rate of tubal sterilization (CREST [Collaborative Re-
view of Sterilization] study: 10-year accumulative failure rate
of 18.3 per 1,000), or the common occurrence of abnormal uter-
ine bleeding leading to a subsequent hysterectomy in women
with a history of abnormal uterine bleeding controlled by oral
contraceptive pills who elect to undergo a tubal sterilization
(relative risk 1.8). Not only is the discussion time useful in fos-
tering a good physician–patient relationship, but it becomes
extremely important if outcomes of surgery are less than ex-
pected, particularly if the discussion was documented in the
patient’s record.

HISTORY AND PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

History

Preoperative care of a patient always begins by carefully tak-
ing a complete history and doing a thorough preoperative ex-
amination. For the surgeon, the process of the history and the
physical examination are fundamental to good surgical results.
The physical and mental preparation of the patient are key to
patient satisfaction after surgery. It is essential that the oper-
atng gynecologist personally take the history. This personal
contact with the patient is of value to both the patient and sur-
geon. During this time, the gynecologist can gain an individual
perspective of not only the gynecologic problems but also the
patient’s general status. The patient can, in turn, ask direct
questions relating to the surgical procedure as well as express
her concerns. This interchange gives the surgeon a unique im-
pression of the problem and allows the surgeon to better assess
the pathology or defect that requires surgery. This also places
the gynecologist in a much better position to arrive at an ac-
curate diagnosis, determine the essential preoperative testing
that will be needed, and select the most appropriate surgery to
manage the problem.

Good history taking and a thorough physical examination
require time and patience, neither of which is easily available
given the expanded demands of gynecologic practice. How-
ever, the reward for the gynecologist who takes the time to
listen to the patient and accomplish a complete physical exami-
nation is the avoidance of unnecessary surgery. Unnecessary
operations, particularly for patients already troubled by some
difficult problem of life, may prove to be unsuccessful in re-
lying the patient’s symptoms and also concentrate attention
unnecessarily on the pelvic organs. If the condition is not ur-
gent, do not make a firm decision regarding recommendation
for major pelvic surgery on the first consultation.

Emergent and urgent conditions, by necessity, require a dif-
f erent approach of rapid assessment and action. In most gyneco-
logic cases, however, the patient is counseled on the need for
surgery only after all physical and psychological aspects of her
case are thoroughly evaluated. The surgeon who does not ask
questions and offer explanations, and who does not carefully consider choices, usually has less than desirable outcomes. A patient's history should be concise, but accuracy should not be sacrificed for the sake of brevity. It has become a common practice to use a preprinted form or a computer template, if using electronic medical records, when obtaining a history. Unfortunately, no medical form is applicable to every case. Maximum efficiency can be achieved by using a standard patient-completed history form (Fig. 8.1) along with a physician-completed history and physical examination form or electronic record template (Figs. 8.2 and Fig. 8.3). The physician can use the patient-completed form to efficiently assimilate the information and direct the history and physical examination process. The physician's history and physical examination form serve as a structured reminder of the essentials of the history-taking process as well as summarize the patient's medical history to facilitate the decision to accomplish surgery. The electronic record template can be tailored to include sub-sections of any portion of the history or physical examination. These forms additionally serve as a record for Current

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B-15 DEPARTMENT OF OBSTETRICS AND GYNECOLOGY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Patient Self History</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The University of Iowa Hospitals and Clinics requests this information for the purpose of providing patient care. Some questions may seem personal or appear to be unrelated to your care, but your responses are important. Yor information will help your health care providers deliver a safe and high standard of care. Your health problems are affecting your daily life, and we feel confident they can best help you if your strengths and weaknesses are also known. Please answer all questions to the best of your ability. The blank codes (in parentheses) will be completed at the time of your visit on the form. Please talk with your health care provider if you have any questions about your answers. The information you give will be used to help you, other patients, and the University of Iowa Hospitals and Clinics improve the quality of health care.

**GYNECOLOGIC/ObSTETRIC HISTORY**

1. Age: ______
2. When was the first day of your last period? ______/______
3. Date of most recent period onset? ______/______ normal/abnormal (please circle)
4. Date of most recent Pap smear? ______/______ normal/abnormal (please circle)
5. Date of most recent mammogram? ______/______ normal/abnormal (please circle)
6. **No** (______): Have you ever been told you had an abnormal Pap smear? **Yes**: when? ______
7. How old were you when you first started your periods? ______
8. Usually, your periods come every ______ days; last ______ days.
9. Are your periods usually: ______ Regular ______ Late ______ Very early ______ Irregular ______ Very early ______
10. **No** (______): Do you have bleeding between periods? **Yes**: describe ______
11. Describe any problems you are currently having (in bed) with your periods ______

12. **No** (______): Do you need a birth control method today? **Yes**: for gynecology appointment only ______
13. Which method do you want today? ______
14. List noncontraceptive birth control methods (please): ______

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>METHODS USED</th>
<th>Year started</th>
<th>Year spot</th>
<th>Problems</th>
<th>Reason you stopped using this method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total number of pregnancies</th>
<th>Number of living children</th>
<th>Age at first pregnancy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**FIGURE 8.1.** Patient history (Hx) form. (From: University of Iowa Hospitals and Clinics, with permission.)
Procedural Terminology (CPT) coding documentation, as well as for later clinical research. Experience has shown that important omissions are much less frequent when information is compiled on a standard form. Care should be taken, however, not to allow such a form to restrict the accurate recording of the present illness. Forms always can be expanded to document an event in the patient’s history that might have an important bearing on the present illness.

A few points should be stressed concerning proper gynecologic history taking. The menstrual history must be accurate and detailed. The clue to a correct diagnosis of the gynecologic condition for which surgery is being considered often appears in the pattern of menstrual irregularity, whether the menstrual disturbance results from an organic lesion or a dysfunctional cause. In fact, differentiation between dysfunctional and early organic disease is one of the most common and difficult clinical distinctions that must be made before surgery. Accurate dates of the last and previous menstrual periods are of major importance. When there is a discrepancy between menstrual dates and pelvic findings in a patient of reproductive age, pregnancy
should be suspected and a pregnancy test accomplished. A discrepancy between menstrual dates and pelvic findings in a patient with suspected pregnancy requires a serum quantitative human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) testing to identify appropriate progression of the pregnancy, along with a pelvic ultrasound when the pelvic examination and hCG test results are at odds.

Good gynecologic history taking can also provide valuable clues relating to findings in the physical examination. In a woman younger than 50 years of age with a history of maternal diethylstilbestrol (DES) exposure, attention should be paid to the potential presence of a variety of anatomical defects of the müllerian duct system such as a "T-shaped" uterus, vaginal adenosarcoma, or cervical defects ("cock’s comb" cervix). A documented history of Type II herpes simplex viral infection of the lower genital tract has long-term implications for future recurrences and symptomatology. Of equal importance in postmenopausal women is obtaining an accurate date of the menopause. Some women are now cycling well into their fifties. Variations in vaginal bleeding in these patients may be of far different significance than vaginal bleeding in a woman 10 to 15 years postmenopausal.
The patient’s reproductive history is also of great importance, particularly a history of previous pregnancies and complications of pregnancy such as dystocia, cesarean section, postpartum infection, abortion, urinary tract infections, excessive infant size, vaginal lacerations, deep vein thrombophlebitis, and pulmonary embolization. A well-taken marital history may reveal dyspareunia and/or unsatisfactory sexual relations, which may explain some symptoms that resemble organic pelvic disease.

Because the symptoms of urinary tract disease so closely resemble those of reproductive tract disease, a urologic history is important, along with laboratory investigation of the urinary tract before a final diagnosis is determined and a decision made regarding surgery. Too often the symptoms of urinary frequency, urgency, and dysuria have been diagnosed as a mechanical support defect of the urinary bladder and treated by surgical repair with plication of the bladder neck, although the real problem of chronic urinary tract infection or neurogenic dysfunction of the bladder remains undiagnosed. Put in another way, a disorder of the lower urinary tract can produce symptoms suggestive of reproductive tract disease and vice versa.

For this reason, basic urologic training is advocated for every gynecologist. The gynecologist who is adept with a urologic workup, including cystoscopy and cystometrics, can evaluate a case better than one who must depend entirely on consultation and urology reports.
Symptomatology of gastrointestinal tract disease can also mimic disease of the reproductive tract. Thus, a proper gastrointestinal tract history along with appropriate laboratory investigation make a significant contribution toward arriving at a correct diagnosis and treatment plan before gynecologic surgical intervention. Constipation, irritable bowel syndrome, colitis, Crohn’s disease, and diverticulitis can cause abdominal and pelvic pain that is not dissimilar to the pain of endometriosis, pelvic adhesions, or ovarian neoplasms. Therefore, basic gastrointestinal training is also advocated for all gynecologists. The gynecologist experienced in accomplishing sigmoidoscopy is better prepared to assess gynecologic cases being considered for surgery than the gynecologist who lacks such experience.

Because abnormal uterine bleeding can result from a variety of endocrine and metabolic disorders, a history of hypothyroidism, hyperprolactinemia, insulin metabolism errors, as well as other endocrine and metabolic defects in the patient and in her family are of considerable importance in assessing and treating menorrhagia and metrorrhagia. A positive history followed by appropriate endocrine testing can give physicians significant insight into the etiology of the problem and allow...
them to institute proper management without always requiring surgery.

Musculoskeletal and neurologic defects of the low back, pelvis, and hips can result in pain similar to that found in gynecologic pathology and disease. Therefore, an orthopedic and neurologic history is an important addition to a thorough gynecologic history.

Finally, the common use of herbal therapy and dietary supplements have resulted in some unanticipated problems during surgery. For this reason, a gynecologic history is not complete without inquiring as to the use of herbs and dietary supplements. Experience has shown that garlic, ginger, ginkgo, and ginseng can potentiate an anticoagulant effect, and bilberry, dandelion, and garlic can potentiate hypoglycemia.

Other herbs, such as ephedra, guarana, and ginseng, can potentiate stimulants, and valerian, kava, and St. John’s wort can potentiate sedation. Knowledge of herbal and dietary supplement use in the preoperative period allows time to discontinue the therapy before surgery and thus avoid a potential adverse reaction.

General Health Examination

Experience has shown that the obstetrician/gynecologist often is the only physician to whom a patient consults, particularly if the symptoms of her problem seem to involve the reproductive tract. As such, preoperative care requires a complete
FIGURE 8.3. Physician's electronic record template history and physical form. (From: University of Iowa Hospitals and Clinics, with permission.)
physical examination and not just a focused examination on the lower abdomen and pelvis. This complete physical examination should include blood pressure assessment, weight and height measurement, temperature recording, thyroid and neck examination, auscultation of the heart and lungs, examination of the breasts, neurologic and orthopedic assessment, and examination of the abdomen and pelvis. During the physical examination, the breast should be examined for signs of abnormal sexual development; abnormal growth of hair on the face, chest, abdomen, extremities, back, and pubic regions; and to sexual ambiguity of the external and internal female genitalia. In addition, it is the responsibility of the gynecologist to carry out a critical evaluation of cardiac and pulmonary function before the accomplishment of any surgery. The need for additional medical and/or anesthesia consultation must be determined before surgical scheduling to complete the preoperative care assessment.

In any patient who presents with gynecologic disease and has symptoms remotely suggestive of urinary tract infection and/or disease, a meticulously collected, midstream clean-catch, or catheterized urine specimen should be examined and cultures obtained. Past data have suggested that complications of a single catheterization in terms of urinary tract infection or significant bacteriuria is minimal, whereas the complication of performing a gynecologic surgery in the presence of an undetected preexisting urinary tract infection offers a somewhat higher risk. Doing a transurethral catheterization in gynecologic patients with urinary tract symptoms is not considered to be a hazard to the normal bladder and can provide valuable information for the total assessment of gynecologic symptoms.

**Gynecologic Examination**

The gynecologic examination includes a thorough inspection and palpation of the breasts, abdomen, pelvis, and rectum. Ample time should be dedicated to this portion of the preoperative evaluation because defects detected during this examination affect surgical planning. This examination should be completed by the gynecologist performing the surgery rather than by other physicians or staff. In some institutions, however, a gynecologic team approach is used in the preoperative care process, and in such cases, the operating gynecologist may not always be the preoperative evaluation gynecologist. In this situation, the evaluating and the operating surgeon together must review the completed preoperative evaluation and plan, along with the patient's concerns and wishes. The operating surgeon must then make time before the surgery to meet the patient, review the plan of management with her, and respond to all of her questions.

**Breast Examination**

The breasts are inspected for symmetry, size, condition of the nipples, the presence of gross lesions, and the presence of discharge. Normal breast tissue, which feels rather spongy to the fingertips, is often erroneously suspected to be tumorous by the patient and is sometimes even misjudged by the physician who is unfamiliar with the proper method of breast palpation. The breasts are examined in both the upright and supine positions for symmetry, contour, and a palpable mass. The supine position of the breast being examined should be raised slightly to bring the lateral aspect of the breast tissue level with the remaining portion of the breast. The arm is then raised above the head to flatten the breast against the thoracic cage. This action permits easy examination of the full thickness of the breast tissue. Examination using the flat ventral surface of the fingers and palm almost always allows identification of an existent significant lesion. Any suspicious lesion is evaluated by mammography, ultrasonography, aspiration, and/or biopsy to confirm or discount the existence of significant breast pathology. The nipples and adjacent areolar tissue are gently compressed to detect the presence of discharge or secretion (galactorrhea). Cytologic examination of breast secretions has been reported in the past to be useful in the diagnosis of very early breast carcinoma before the clinical detection of a gross lesion. Current imaging techniques, along with fine needle biopsy, offer diagnostic accuracy before abnormal breast secretion is usually experienced, however. Nonetheless, the observation of bilateral secretion showing only the presence of fat cells on an unstained microscopic examination is reassuring and can be accomplished in an office setting. Minimal galactorrhea is not uncommon, particularly in parous women and those in early pregnancy. Other causes of galactorrhea must be considered and include prolactin-secreting tumors of the pituitary, dopamine-agonist medications, birth control pills, and primary hypothyroidism. In these cases, galactorrhea is usually found to be bilateral. Unilateral secretion should be evaluated by placing a drop of the secretion on a slide and sending the slide to cytology for examination and diagnosis. The importance of a thorough breast examination is not only to detect a previously undiagnosed breast pathology but also to detect other medical problems (galactorrhea) that could affect the outcome of a planned gynecologic surgery.

**Abdominal Examination**

Examination of the abdomen requires both visual inspection and palpation. Percussion and auscultation also may be useful. Bulging of the flanks suggests free abdominal fluid, but thin-walled ovarian cysts and irregularly shaped uterine leiomyomas can give a similar clinical picture. Although large ovarian cysts and leiomyomas most often cause protrusion of the anterior abdominal wall, there are a number of confusing exceptions. Palpation for a fluid wave in the lateral quadrants of the abdomen is useful. Palpation for a fluid wave in the lateral quadrants of the abdomen is useful. Percussion for areas of flatness or tympany and for shifting dullness can help determine whether distention is due to intraperitoneal fluid or to intestinal gas. Auscultation is especially useful to differentiate between a large tumor, a distended bowel, or an advanced pregnancy as the cause of abdominal enlargement. When physical findings are conflicting or inconclusive, imaging procedures such as abdominal-pelvic ultrasound, abdominal computed tomography scan, or magnetic resonance imaging are quite helpful in completing the assessment of an abnormal abdominal examination.

**Pelvis and Rectum Examination**

An accurate evaluation of the female reproductive tract is essential to establish the underlying cause of gynecologic symptoms. Although a detailed description of a pelvic examination is not provided in this chapter, it is important to stress a few of...
the steps necessary for proper evaluation of the female pelvis. Before an adequate pelvic examination can be performed, the bladder must be emptied by voiding. A clean-catch specimen is obtained for complete urinalysis and for culture and antibiotic sensitivity studies, if indicated. On the other hand, reports of urinary incontinence require examination with a full bladder in the lithotomy and in the erect position to demonstrate stress incontinence of the urethral sphincter. Inspection of the vulva for gross lesions includes examination of the Bartholin and Skene glands for evidence of cyst formation and purulent exudate as sources of gynecologic infection. Particular attention is given to the mons pubis and labia majora and minora for subtle changes in skin pigmentation, for vesicle formation, and for small, raised lesions that may be evidence of viral or bacterial infection or of early neoplasia. Particular attention is given to the mons pubis and labia majora and minora for vesicle formation, and for small, raised lesions that may be evidence of viral or bacterial infection or of early neoplasia. The outlet is closely inspected for relaxation of the anterior and posterior vaginal walls and for uterine descensus now referred to as pelvic organ prolapse. The vaginal mucosa is observed for any visible lesions, evidence of infection, and for estrogen effect. The patient is asked to bear down and cough without the use of a tenaculum to demonstrate the degree of relaxation of the anterior and posterior vaginal walls and the extent of uterine descensus. The urethra is compressed along its entire length to assess the possibility of a suburethral diverticulum, which often is manifested by a purulent discharge from the urethral meatus or a tender suburethral mass.

The cervix is evaluated for abnormal gross pathology, particularly ulceration, neoplastic growths, inflammation, and abnormal discharge. A Papanicolaou smear is obtained by a combined sampling of cells taken from the portio of the cervix by means of a flat stick, and from the endocervical canal by means of a small circular brush or by use of a cervical broom for liquid-based assessment. This type of combined cytologic smear or liquid-based cytology is extremely valuable in detecting cervical and endocervical lesions and is always a part of a complete gynecologic examination. Pelvic surgery always should be preceded by a recent cytologic study of the cervix. Patients with abnormal Papanicolaou smears showing repeated mild dysplasia, moderate to severe squamous cell dysplasia (CIN II–III), or high-risk human papillomavirus (HPV) should be evaluated by colposcopy, and suspicious lesions should be biopsied. Abnormal smears showing glandular cell dysplasia require both an endocervical and endometrial evaluation, such as an endocervical curettage and endometrial biopsy, before proceeding to pelvic surgery. A negative Papanicolaou smear does not, however, exclude the possibility of a cervical, endocervical, or endometrial neoplasm. False-negative cervical smears have been reported. Because 89% to 90% of all preclinical malignancies of the cervix demonstrate no significant gross lesion, it is impossible to be certain of the condition of the cervix without a Papanicolaou smear or a colposcopy and a colposcopically directed cervical biopsy if lesions are identified. The use of 3% acetic acid or Lugol’s (strong iodine solution) staining of the cervix may be beneficial in identifying lesions for biopsy. Some pathologists, however, caution against the use of Lugol’s because of the effect that it has on cervical cells, which sometimes interferes with an accurate pathological assessment.

The uterus is examined bimanually by the abdominal-vaginal route for position, size, mobility, irregularity, and tenderness to motion. Both adnexal regions are evaluated vaginally and by rectovaginal examination. The rectal examination should never be omitted from the routine pelvic examination. Rectal examinations provide information that cannot be obtained through the vaginal examination alone. The rectal examination provides insight into the competence of the anal sphincter as well as the presence of lesions of the anal canal and lower rectum. The rectal and vaginal examinations together are an effective method for detecting pelvic pathology and are especially useful for evaluating the broad and uterosacral ligaments, cul-de-sac of Douglas, uterus, and adnexa. The index finger is inserted into the vagina while the middle finger is inserted into the rectum to a higher level than is possible with the vaginal index finger (Fig. 8.4). This method offers the most effective opportunity of evaluating the ovaries, posterior cul-de-sac, and posterior aspect of the broad ligament. When pelvic findings are doubtful or inconclusive, imaging techniques may be helpful in determining the preoperative diagnosis. When imaging techniques are inconclusive or unavailable, however, a more adequate examination may be performed under general anesthesia before a final decision for or against gynecologic surgery.
is made. Indeed, a complete pelvic examination always should precede any gynecologic surgery, whether it be major or minor. The pelvic organ findings of this examination should be described carefully in the operative note for future reference. Suspected pelvic pathology frequently can be ruled in or out after a thorough preoperative pelvic examination, and needless laparotomy or laparoscopy can be avoided. The most common area of clinical confusion occurs in determining the presence of an ovarian cyst, which can be confused with bowel, bladder, or uterine leiomyomas. If a normal ovary is palpated and a cyst not identified by imaging techniques such as pelvic ultrasound, an unnecessary operative procedure frequently can be spared.

LABORATORY ASSESSMENT

Before the era of evidence-based medicine, most patients undergoing gynecologic surgery were assessed by a thorough history and physical examination followed by a battery of laboratory tests, the purpose of which was to detect a medical disease or defect that could adversely affect surgical outcome. These tests were accomplished on almost all patients, irrespective of age or concurrent medical or surgical pathologies, and might include (a) blood count with hemoglobin and hematocrit, (b) urinalysis, (c) coagulation studies, (d) chemistry panel, (e) chest x-ray, and (f) electrocardiogram. This relatively universal use of “routine” preoperative testing has not proven to be beneficial in terms of good patient care and, additionally, it has added significantly to the high cost of medical care. In one study, an average of 72.1% of preoperative tests ordered by surgeons were considered unnecessary based on a review of the patient’s history and physical examination. This same study suggested a medical care savings of between $4 billion and $10 billion per year in the United States by eliminating these unnecessary tests with no adverse effect on outcome.

Over the last 10 to 15 years, data have surfaced allowing gynecologists to better assess needed preoperative tests from those that in the past were labeled “routine” tests. Because of the presence of information such as this, and because of pressures from MCOs, the volume of preoperative testing has been reduced. With this reduction in the ordering of unnecessary tests, however, comes a reduction in the ordering of necessary tests. This finding emphasizes the need to accurately differentiate between indicated preoperative testing and the past practice of routine blanket testing of gynecologic patients preparing for surgery. A large portion of the remainder of this chapter focuses on the best-practice routine testing of gynecologic patients preparing for surgery. A large case series data to help guide the gynecologist when ordering appropriate preoperative tests based on the individual patient’s history and physical examination.

Key to the understanding of appropriate preoperative testing is an understanding of (a) the risk category of the patient and (b) the degree of complexity of the planned surgery. The risk category of any preoperative gynecology patient may be assessed risk of the patient based on her age, history and physical examination. In this case, an understanding of (a) the risk category of the patient and (b) the degree of complexity of the planned surgery may be divided into one of six different classes as established by the American Society of Anesthesiologists (Table 8.1). The degree of complexity of the planned surgery may be divided into one of three separate types as identified by Rozen and colleagues (Table 8.2). Preoperative testing should be planned around the assessed risk of the patient based on her age, history and physical examination.

### TABLE 8.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P1</td>
<td>A normal healthy patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2</td>
<td>A patient with mild systemic disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3</td>
<td>A patient with moderate (uncomplicated) systemic disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P4</td>
<td>A patient with severe systemic disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P5</td>
<td>A moribund patient who is not expected to survive without the operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P6</td>
<td>A declared brain-dead patient whose organs are being removed for donor purposes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CLASSIFICATION OF PHYSICAL STATUS, ESTABLISHED BY THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF ANESTHESIOLOGISTS


### TABLE 8.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>General Definition</th>
<th>Special Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type A</td>
<td>Minimally invasive procedures that have little potential to disrupt normal physiology and are associated with only rare periprocedural morbidity related to anesthesia. These procedures rarely require blood administration, invasive monitoring, and/or postoperative management in a critical care setting.</td>
<td>Cataract extraction, diagnostic arthroscopy, postpartum tubal ligation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type B</td>
<td>Moderately invasive procedures that have a modest or intermediate potential to disrupt normal physiology. These procedures may require blood administration, invasive monitoring, or postoperative management in a critical care setting</td>
<td>Carotid endarterectomy, transurethral resection of the prostate, and laparoscopic cholecystectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type C</td>
<td>Highly invasive procedures that typically produce significant disruption of normal physiology. These procedures commonly require blood administration, or postoperative management in a critical care setting.</td>
<td>Total hip replacement, open aortic aneurysm, aortic valve replacement, and posterior fossa craniotomy for aneurysm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

examination, and the degree of complexity based on the invasiveness of the proposed surgery. Current data as well as experience suggest that, rather than a routine set of tests, all preoperative testing should be inextricably related to the type and complexity of the proposed gynecologic surgery and to the presence of the confounding medical or surgical condition.

**Asymptomatic Patients**

In an extensive review of currently available evidence on the value of routine preoperative testing in healthy or asymptomatic patients, Monto and colleagues (1997) found that there were no controlled trials assessing the value of basic tests previously thought to be essential in presurgical evaluation and care. These tests included chest x-ray, electrocardiogram, blood counts and hemoglobin, coagulation studies, blood chemistries, and urinalysis. The authors further noted that all currently available evidence on preoperative testing of healthy or asymptomatic patients came only from case series studies. After reviewing all of the available case series data, they concluded that the power of preoperative tests to predict adverse postoperative outcomes in asymptomatic patients is either weak or nonexistent.

Conclusions such as these have resulted in (a) a marked reduction in the recommendation of routine testing and (b) the suggestion that the amount of routine testing of preoperative healthy asymptomatic patients be related to the patient’s age. Currently, in this category of patients, it has been recommended that a hemoglobin or hematocrit be accomplished on all patients older than the age of 40 years, an electrocardiogram (ECG) on all patients older than the age of 60; and a blood urea nitrogen (BUN) test and a glucose test on all patients older than the age of 65. Additionally, a pregnancy test should be accomplished on all reproductive-age women who are at risk of early pregnancy (sexually active, no contraception, or questionably effective contraception) (Table 8.3).

**Symptomatic Patients and Patients with Medical or Surgical Pathologies or Defects**

Women considered for gynecologic surgery who are symptomatic and/or have other medical or surgical pathologies or defects must be considered in a different light from asymptomatic, healthy women during their preoperative evaluation and testing. Preoperative testing should be accomplished to determine the current status of medical or surgical pathologies and provide data on the potential effect that the compound- ing problem will have on the outcome of the proposed surgery. This would allow, if possible, for necessary medical correction or improvement of the problem before surgery in an attempt to minimize adverse outcomes of surgical intervention.

Despite the lack of an evidence-based preoperative evaluation plan to guide preoperative testing, evidence supports adopting a diagnosis-based preoperative testing protocol when planning any gynecologic surgery. A number of diagnosed- based or clinical condition-based protocols have been suggested. Because the diagnosed-based preoperative testing evaluation recommended by Fischer (1999) considers both clinical outcomes as well as cost-effectiveness, it is most appropriate in the preoperative evaluation of gynecologic patients who are other than healthy and asymptomatic (Table 8.4). This approach links necessary preoperative laboratory and imaging testing with concurrent medical disease—including cardiovascular, pulmonary, and endocrine pathologies—as well as with malignancies and the use of many common drug therapies.

### RECOMMENDED PREOPERATIVE TESTING FOR HEALTHY ASYMPTOMATIC GYNECOLOGIC PATIENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Above Age 6 Months</th>
<th>Above Age 40</th>
<th>Above Age 65</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hct or Hgb</td>
<td>Hct or Hgb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECG</td>
<td>Hct or Hgb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy test</td>
<td>ECG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>BUN/glucose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Women in Reproductive Age, Sexually Active, Questionable Contraception</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


The outcome of pelvic surgery depends largely on four preoperative factors:

1. The skill and judgment of the gynecologic surgeon
2. The ability to surgically correct the gynecologic abnormality or disease process
3. The severity, stability, and reversibility of concurrent medical/surgical pathologies
4. The availability of experienced support professionals for consultation as indicated, specifically from anesthesiology, medicine, and surgery.

Preoperative evaluation and care of the women undergoing gynecologic surgery must include not only a thorough physical examination but also correction or stabilization of any concurrent medical or surgical pathologies that could adversely affect the surgical outcome. A skilled and appropriate gynecologic surgical procedure can have an undesirable outcome because of an unstable condition or incompletely prepared patient.

For this reason, when the preoperative history, physical examination, or laboratory testing reveals instability of the cardiovascular, pulmonary, renal, or hematologic systems, a consultation should be considered. The intent is to achieve maximal stabilization before surgery. If the patient cannot be stabilized, then delaying or postponing the surgery must be considered based on the risk and benefit of the surgical procedure for the patient. A preoperative diminished cardiac, pulmonary, or renal reserve; a blood coagulopathy; or dehydration and/or hypovolemia can play a critical role in the outcome of the surgery.

Particular attention must be given to the senior gynecologic patient. Not only does this group of women represent the fastest-growing segment of gynecologic patients, but they also are more frequently prone to have other medical issues that can affect the outcome of gynecologic surgery. The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) has recently noted that the U.S. population older than the age of 65 was growing faster than the population as a whole. They stated that currently 13 out of every 100 Americans are 65 years of age or older.


### TABLE 8.4

**DIAGNOSIS-BASED PREOPERATIVE TESTING**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preoperative Diagnosis</th>
<th>ECG</th>
<th>CXR</th>
<th>Hct/Hb</th>
<th>CBC</th>
<th>Lytes</th>
<th>Renal</th>
<th>Glucose</th>
<th>Coag</th>
<th>LFTs</th>
<th>Rx Levels</th>
<th>Ca+</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac disease</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>±</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI history</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stable angina</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>±</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTN</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic atrial fibrillation</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periph vascular disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valvular heart disease</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>±</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emphysema</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>±</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asthma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic bronchitis</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
<td></td>
<td>±</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infectious hepatitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol/drug induced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor infiltration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal disease</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hematological disorders</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coagulopathies</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS disorders</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stroke</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vascular/aneurysms</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignancy</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperthyroidism</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothyroidism</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cushing's syndrome</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addison's disease</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperparathyroidism</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoparathyroidism</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morbid obesity</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malabsorption/poor nutrition</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>±</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select drug therapies</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>±</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digoxin (Digitalis)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticoagulants</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dilantin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenobarbital</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diuretics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steroids</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemotherapy</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin/NSMID</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- X = Obtained.
- ± = Consider.

*Patients on diuretics.
*Patients on digoxin.
*Patients on theophylline.


...age or older, and in 2030 this number will increase to 20 out of 100. They additionally noted that there were significantly more women than men in this older population, with women composing 59% of the group aged 65 years and older and 71% of those aged 85 years and older. DHHS data from 2004 indicated that women born in 2002 will live to an age of 79.9 years. Additionally, if a women reached age 65 in 2002, she can expect to live an additional 19.5 years, and if she reached age 75 in 2002, she can expect to live an additional 12.4 years. Considerable data as well as experience have shown that this group of senior gynecologic patients has significantly greater health care problems and therefore will require a greater effort in the preoperative evaluation in terms of laboratory evaluation and consultation.

With this increase in concurrent medical and surgical problems, and the resulting increase in operative risks of gynecologic...
surgery in the senior population, it is important to note that chronicologic age, by itself, is not always an accurate indicator of organ function. Atherosomatous changes of the cardiovascular system are uncommon in women until well past menopause. This biologic phenomenon is just one of the many factors that promote female (compared with male) longevity. As a consequence of increased longevity, a high percentage of women are in the postmenopausal period of their life when gynecologic disease becomes more prevalent and surgery becomes more necessary. In spite of the increased concurrent medical and surgical problems and greater operative risks, excellent surgical skills, meticulous medical control of concurrent disease, and anesthesiology carefully attuned to the physiologic requirements of the senior gynecologic patient have kept the risk of surgery at a level not much greater than that for the premenopausal patient. Age alone should therefore not be a contraindication for surgery.

Guidelines for the preoperative evaluation of the gynecologic patient may be divided into three separate areas.

1. Uncomplicated gynecologic pathology with an uncomplicated medical/surgical status
2. Complicated gynecologic pathology with uncomplicated medical/surgical status
3. Uncomplicated or complicated gynecologic pathology with a complicated medical/surgical status

The following preoperative evaluation recommendations are made based on the most current data from case series studies, evidence-based medical data, and consensus opinions of gynecologic preoperative care.

### Preoperative Evaluation, Uncomplicated Gynecologic Pathology, Uncomplicated Medical/Surgical Status

A gynecologic patient who has an uncomplicated gynecologic pathology and no concurrent medical or surgical conditions that would affect surgical outcome should undergo the following preoperative evaluation.

1. Thorough history
2. Complete physical examination
3. Hematocrit or hemoglobin if older than 6 months of age
4. Electrocardiogram if older than 40 years of age
5. Blood urea nitrogen and glucose if older than 65 years of age
6. Pregnancy test if in the reproductive age, sexually active, and not on contraception or if using questionable effective contraception
7. Sexually transmitted diseases testing (chlamydia, gonococcus, syphilis, hepatitis, and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)) with suspected or documented exposure
8. Blood type and screen if the potential exists for more than minimal surgical blood loss

### Preoperative Evaluation, Complicated Gynecologic Pathology, Uncomplicated Medical/Surgical Status

A gynecologic patient who has a complicated gynecologic pathology and no concurrent medical or surgical conditions that would additionally affect surgical outcome should undergo the following preoperative evaluation (complicated gynecologic pathology includes past abdominal/pelvic surgery with evidence of or anticipation of pelvic adhesive disease, tumors, or cysts of a size making surgery more difficult or complicated; suspected or proven cancerous lesions; concurrent infection of the reproductive tract; or active or chronic bleeding from the reproductive tract, resulting in a demonstrated or highly probable hemodynamic instability).

1. Thorough history
2. Complete physical examination
3. Laboratory testing listed under uncomplicated gynecologic pathology
4. Complete blood cell (CBC) count with suspected or evidence of pelvic infection, hemorrhage, or anemia
5. Prothrombin time (PT), activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT), and either a platelet function analysis (PFA-100) or a bleeding time with hemorrhage or anemia
6. Liver function tests and renal tests with any suspected hepatic or renal pathology
7. Type and cross match in an anticipated high blood loss surgery, otherwise only a type and screen
8. Anesthesia consultation

### Preoperative Evaluation, Uncomplicated or Complicated Gynecologic Pathology, Complicated Medical/Surgical Status

A gynecologic patient who has either an uncomplicated or complicated gynecologic pathology and a concurrent medical or surgical problem offers the greatest risk for gynecologic surgery (complicating medical or surgical problem includes cardiac, pulmonary, vascular, renal, intestinal, endocrine, neurologic, and orthopedic pathologies, as well as use of medications for these defects). These patients should undergo the following preoperative evaluation:

1. Thorough history
2. Complete physical examination
3. Laboratory testing listed under uncomplicated gynecologic pathology
4. Laboratory testing listed under complicated gynecologic pathology
5. Prothrombin time (PT) and an International Normalized Ratio (INR) in women with a history of venous thrombosis or pulmonary embolism on warfarin
6. Factor V Leiden, prothrombin 20210A gene mutation, antithrombin, lupus anticoagulant, and antiphospholipid antibodies in women with a suspected thrombophilia
7. Liver function tests, renal function tests, electrolyte and/or blood sugar tests in women with renal, liver, or intestinal disease; on diuretics; with an unexplained fever; with endocrine disease, including diabetes, hypoglycemia, parathyroid disease, or adrenal and pituitary disease; or with a recent history of radiation or chemotherapy
8. Electrocardiogram with suspected or known cardiac pathology
9. Anesthesia consultation
10. Medicine, cardiology, pulmonary medicine, endocrinology, urology, and surgery consultation as indicated

### PREOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT AND PREPARATION

Preoperative care includes not only preoperative evaluation and laboratory testing, but also any medical or gynecologic evaluation and treatment in the months preceding the surgical
procedure to help achieve maximal physical status. Achieving this goal is rewarded by a less complicated surgical procedure with better outcomes. Examples of this medical or gynecologic management include a number of treatments. Ovarian suppression through the use of a gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonist in the 2 to 3 months before surgery has proven to be beneficial in hysteroscopic resection of uterine submucous leiomyomata larger than 2 cm in size and in myomectomies when the uterine volume is equivalent to or larger than a 12-week pregnant uterus size. A similar suppression is also useful in decreasing the thickness of the endometrial lining in an endometrial ablation, although an endometrial suction curettage can achieve a somewhat similar result.

Preoperative antibiotic treatment of postmenopausal women undergoing reparative surgery for genital prolapse can be beneficial in reducing recurrent cystitis but has not been shown to significantly alter the outcome of surgery.

Use of preoperative vaginal estrogen cream starting 4 to 6 weeks before surgery may help in controlling uropathogens as well as thickening the vaginal mucosa, which results in an easier dissection of the vagina and in reducing postoperative morbidity. Routine preoperative endometrial sampling before hysterectomy has not been found to be cost-effective unless there is suspicion of endometrial pathology, such as manifested by abnormal perimenopausal or menopausal bleeding or the presence of abnormal glandular cells on Papanicolaou test. In the latter case, endocervical sampling additionally is necessary.

Another area of preoperative planning requiring an experienced decision by the gynecologist and possibly the anesthesiologist is the regulation of medications taken by the patient before surgery. When and how to modify insulin in diabetic women, surgery on women taking anticoagulants, and discontinuation or discontinuation of oral contraceptive pills are some examples of issues that must be addressed in the preoperative period and conveyed to the patient in a manner that she understands. Because of the uniqueness of each patient, it is not possible to provide a table of preoperative medication management that can be applied to every patient. However, some general suggestions serve as guidelines in the preoperative management of the more common concurrent diseases.

Preoperative insulin control in patients with diabetes is thought to be essential to achieve good surgical outcome. Older animal data have shown a relationship between hyperglycemia and wound healing with reduced tensile strength and wound failure. Experience has suggested a similar relationship in the gynecologic patient. It is therefore important to continue each diabetic woman undergoing gynecologic surgery with her primary care physician or internist to achieve this optimal control, and once achieved, to continue this insulin regimen right up to the time of surgery. Every attempt should be made to schedule the diabetic patient’s surgery as a first morning case to minimize the time period between the patient’s last oral intake and the onset of the surgical procedure. A protocol for patient preoperative management of insulin regulation may be found in Table 8.5. Some patients may present with an insulin pump, in which case a decision will need to be made regarding continuing the pump at a basal rate and transitioning to an intravenous (IV) infusion, or discontinuing the pump after a subcutaneous injection of a long-acting insulin. Planning for complex insulin preoperative management should be accomplished in conjunction with the patient’s medical physician and with anesthesia. Patients who are scheduled for gynecologic surgery who are on Coumadin (warfarin), heparin, or low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH) represent another preoperative management issue. A number of options are available for converting the patient from warfarin to heparin. Experience has suggested that stopping the warfarin 3 days before the planned gynecologic surgery and converting to low-dose heparin 3,000 U subcutaneously every 12 hours 4 days preoperatively provides satisfactory anticoagulation protection. As an alternative, it has been recommended by some anesthesiologists that heparin be instituted only when the INR for prothrombin falls below 2. The low-dose heparin can be continued postoperatively until the patient is back on oral feeding, at which time the warfarin can be reinitiated. It is further suggested that these women use elastic stockings or intermittent pneumatic compression (IPC) hose at the beginning of the surgery and continue with this mechanical support through to the point of full postoperative ambulation.

Another preoperative medication issue involves the continuation or discontinuation of oral contraceptive pills before gynecologic surgery. Studies in the 1970s suggested a relationship between use of preoperative oral contraceptive pills and intraoperative or postoperative venous thrombosis. For this reason, in the past it has been the practice to discontinue oral contraceptive pills 2 to 4 weeks before surgery and convert to mechanical contraception. This practice, however, is unsupported by any current prospective controlled studies and places the patient at risk for unwanted pregnancy as well as menstrual irregularities. Therefore, routine discontinuation of oral contraception before gynecologic surgery is not recommended, but instead mechanical venous support, such as elastic stockings or IPC, be used at the time of surgery.

The immediate preoperative preparation of the patient includes the preoperative examination by the gynecologic surgeon and the anesthesia assessment in the anesthesia preoperative clinic or by an individual anesthesiologist. In most cases, the assessment for anesthesia risks is accomplished before the day of surgery. If significant anesthesia risk is present, such as cardiovascular or pulmonary pathology, this allows time for relevant information to be obtained, additional testing accomplished, other consultation carried out, and treatment instituted in an attempt to have the patient in optimal condition on the day of surgery. In some cases involving low-risk

**Table 8.5**

**RECOMMENDATION FOR PREOPERATIVE INSULIN MANAGEMENT: CLASSIC “NONIGHT CONTROL” REGIMEN OF ROIZEN**

1. Day before surgery: Patient should be given nothing by mouth after midnight; a 13-ounce glass of clear orange juice should be at the bedside or in the car for emergency use.
2. At 6 a.m. on the day of surgery, institute intravenous fluids using plastic cannula and a solution containing 5% dextrose, infused at a rate of 125 mL/h/70 kg body weight.
3. After institution of intravenous infusion, give one-half the usual morning insulin dose (and usual type of insulin) subcutaneously.
4. Continue 5% dextrose solutions through operative period, giving at least 125 mL/h/70 kg body weight.
5. In recovery room, monitor blood glucose concentration and treat on a sliding scale.

ambulatory procedures, however, the anesthesiologist regarding the planned surgery is an essential element in achieving a successful outcome with the lowest patient risk.

Most gynecologic surgical patients are admitted on the day of surgery. Because preoperative preparation and instructions for patient activity and actions at home are important and need to be made clear to every patient. The goal is to have the patient rested and in the optimal physical condition with an empty stomach and reduced contents in the lower gastrointestinal tract at the time of surgery. There is no evidence to support the idea that marked reduction of activity on the day before surgery is beneficial; however, it would be reasonable to recommend planning activities so that the patient is not over-stressed. Food intake on the day before surgery need not be restricted except for the evening meal before the morning of surgery, which should be light and easily digestible. An over-loaded intestinal tract during surgery is particularly hazardous not only because it poses an anesthetic risk but also because it increases postoperative nausea and gas formation. The patient should be instructed to not eat or drink after midnight on the evening before surgery unless the surgery is scheduled for the late afternoon. Some exceptions to this rule might occur with the taking of indicated medications with water. Such an exception should be discussed between the gynecologist and the anesthesiologist in the preoperative evaluation sessions. Women who are scheduled for a late afternoon surgery may have a light breakfast of a liquid diet if taken no fewer than 6 hours preoperatively.

Women undergoing major abdominal surgery in which bowel entry or injury is anticipated (or is a high probability) should undergo a complete bowel prep. This complete bowel preparation should consist of the single use of a commercially available cleansing preparation such as GoLYTELY or NuVITYLE (Braintree Laboratories, Inc., Braintree, MA). This impression is not universally supported, however. A 2005 Cochrane Review of bowel preparation before colon surgery failed to demonstrate convincing evidence that mechanical or complete bowel preparation reduced the rates of common complications. Nevertheless, a cleansing preparation continues to be standard of care in gynecologic surgeries involving bowel resection or repair. In all other major abdominal cases, the lower colon should be cleansed by a preoperative enema the evening before surgery. If the colon is not completely emptied, then a repeat enema may need to be given before performing the operation, allowing adequate time for evacuation. The patient needs to be given careful instructions for the use of enemas at home and the possible need for a repeat enema in the hospital before surgery. This issue is often overlooked in preoperative care and results in a more difficult surgical procedure because of space limitation and a less comfortable patient in the postoperative period. An adequate night’s rest before surgery is also important for the patient. In some cases, the use of a mild sedative may be considered.

Preoperative prophylactic broad-spectrum antibiotics or surgical antimicrobial prophylaxis has frequently been used in gynecologic surgery on the basis of the potential for vaginal flora contamination of the operative field and because of the close proximity of the rectum and intestinal tract. Data do not support the routine use of preoperative broad-spectrum antibiotics in uncomplicated, routine gynecologic laparoscopic or hysteroscopic surgery. Data, as presented in the 2003 Compendium of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, do, however, support the use of preoperative broad-spectrum antibiotics in vaginal hysterectomy or abdominal hysterectomy. In these procedures, the occurrence of postoperative cuff cellulitis and pelvic abscess has been significantly reduced with use of a preoperative antibiotic. First-, second-, or third-generation cephalosporins (e.g., cefazolin, cefotetan, or cefoxitin, 2 g IV) are effective as a prophylactic coverage. As an alternative, metronidazole 500 mg IV may be utilized. When used, the prophylactic antibiotic should be given as a single dose approximately 1 to 2 hours before beginning surgery and may be repeated if the operation lasts longer than 3 hours or if there is significant blood loss (in excess of 1,500 mL). If the preoperative examination and testing identifies vaginal infections such as bacterial vaginosis, treatment before surgery with metronidazole 500 mg orally 2 times a day for 7 days, or metronidazole intravaginal gel (0.75%) one 5-g applicator intravaginally daily for 5 days, or clindamycin vaginal cream (2%) one 5-g applicator intravaginally daily for 7 days should be accomplished. In like manner, any sexually transmitted disease discovered during preoperative examination and testing should be fully treated before surgery.

Infections occurring after surgery in the female reproductive tract arise from the introduction of normal vaginal flora into the surgical field. Surgery on the reproductive tract accomplished through a bacteriologically contaminated field (e.g., the vagina) seeds bacteria into the pedicles and surgical margins of pelvic tissues and provides an excellent nidus for infection in devitalized tissue beds. Therefore, pelvic surgery provides an ideal condition for aerobics (principally polymicrobial rather than monomicrobial) infections. Tissue destruction and sutures lower the tissue oxidation-reduction (redox) potential. Lower tissue oxygen levels enhance the growth of facultative anaerobes that normally inhabit the vagina. As tissue hypoxia progresses, primary bacterial flora become predominant and postoperative infections arise. Therefore, the more common postoperative infection in the vaginal vault, although initially polymicrobial, usually can be prevented with the use of the prophylactic antibiotic antibioticsonly the vaginal apex has been opened during a vaginal or abdominal hysterectomy.

Although prophylactic antibiotics are effective in reducing the incidence of postoperative infectious morbidity, they should never be used as a substitute for the time-honored principles of adequate hemostasis and gentle handling of tissue. Despite Wangensteen’s disparaging statement that “antibiotics will turn a second-class surgeon into a first-class surgeon,” current data suggest that even in the hands of a highly skilled surgeon, prophylactic preoperative antibiotics offer improved outcomes in gynecologic pelvic surgery such as vaginal and abdominal hysterectomy.

Preoperative Procedures in the Operating Suite

Just before surgery, the patient is brought to the operating theater and transferred either directly to the operating table in the operating room or to an operating table in the anesthesia room adjoining the surgical suite. Preoperative preparation includes any trimming of pubic hair, preparation of abdominal and vaginal skin, and placement of a catheter, if indicated. Preoperative shaving of pubic and abdominal hair before gynecologic surgery is generally not recommended. In fact, preoperative shaving is associated with a significantly higher surgical site infection (SSI) rate, particularly if completed the night before the operation. These guidelines note studies showing SSI rates of 5.6% in patients who had hair
TABLE 8.6
RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PREOPERATIVE PREPARATION OF THE PATIENT TO PREVENT SURGICAL SITE INFECTIONS

1. Whenever possible, identify and treat all infections remote to the surgical site before elective operation, and postpone elective operations on patients with remote site infections until the infection has resolved.

2. Do not remove hair preoperatively unless hair at or around the incision site will interfere with the operation.

3. If hair is removed, remove immediately before the operation, preferably with electric clippers.

4. Adequately control serum blood glucose levels in all diabetic patients, and particularly avoid hyperglycemia perioperatively.

5. Encourage tobacco cessation. At a minimum, instruct patients to abstain for at least 30 days before elective operation from smoking cigarettes, cigars, pipes, or other form of tobacco consumption.

6. Do not withhold necessary blood products from surgical patients as a means to prevent surgical site infections.

7. Require patients to shower or bathe with an antiseptic agent on at least the night before the operative day.

8. Thoroughly wash and clean at and around the incision site to remove gross contamination before performing antiseptic skin preparation.

9. Use appropriate antiseptic agent for skin preparation.

10. Apply preoperative antiseptic skin preparation in concentric circles, moving toward the periphery. The prepared area must be large enough to extend the incision or create new incisions or drain sites, if necessary.

11. Keep preoperative hospital stay as short as possible while allowing for adequate preoperative preparation of the patient.

12. No recommendation to taper or discontinue systemic steroid use (when medically permissible) before elective operation. ( unresolved issue)

13. No recommendation to enhance nutritional support for surgical patients solely as a means to prevent surgical site infection. ( unresolved issue)

14. No recommendation to preoperatively apply mupirocin to nares to prevent surgical site infection. ( unresolved issue)

15. No recommendation to provide measures that would enhance space oxygenation to prevent surgical site infections. ( unresolved issue)


removed by shaving compared with 0.6% in those who had no hair removed. Furthermore, shaving the night before surgery resulted in a significantly higher rate of SSI than shaving just before the operative procedure (7.1% versus 3.1%). Experience has shown that in some gynecologic procedures, removal of pubic and abdominal hair is useful, and in these situations, hair clipping is recommended immediately before the surgery.

After hair trimming and catheterization, the patient is usually sufficiently anesthetized for a careful bimanual pelvic examination, at which time the surgeon can obtain very valuable information not easily obtainable when the patient is awake. Detection of reduced mobility, identification of cysts or masses not previously known, and determination of the position of pelvic organs not appreciated in past examinations may prejudice the gynecologist to alter the planned surgical approach or incision type. After the pelvic examination, the perineum and vagina are cleaned, followed by the abdominal preparation.

The pelvic cleansing should be accomplished before all pelvic or abdominal surgery. There is always the possibility that findings at the time of operation may make a total abdominal hysterectomy advisable, even when the preoperative plan did not include such an extensive procedure. It is extremely disconcerting to find that a total abdominal hysterectomy must be performed at the time of a laparotomy if the vagina is not properly prepared. For this reason, it is strongly recommended that preoperative vaginal preparation be accomplished as a routine procedure. To clean the perineum and vagina, the vulva and perineum are first scrubbed by a nurse or surgical assistant with a sponge soaked in surgical soap or a povidone-iodine solution using a gloved hand. Before this preparation, Kelly pads should be placed under the buttocks and low back to catch wash and preparation solutions, and the perineum and vulva washed and wiped free of gross contamination (mucus, blood, bowel content). These pads should be removed before draping the patient to prevent contaminated fluids and concentrated iodine wash solutions from pooling and remaining under the buttocks during the operative procedure. After the perineal and vulvar preparation, the vagina is next scrubbed with a soapy sponge or a povidone-iodine sponge stick held in the gloved hand. After the vaginal scrub, the nurse or operative assistant inserts his or her fingers in the vagina and spreads the fingers to enlarge the vaginal outlet. At the same
time, the perineum is depressed to allow the soapy water or povidone-iodine solution to run out of the vagina. This solution is then flushed away with sterile water poured into the vagina. After this, the remaining cleanup is accomplished with a sterile sponge on a sponge forceps, which is used several times to clean the vagina with an appropriate antiseptic solution.

When the vaginal, vulvar, and perineal cleanup, the abdomen is prepared with a 5-minute scrub using a povidone-iodine or similar solution or with a three- to four-round application of a povidone-iodine gel sponge stick. Particular attention should be paid to cleansing the umbilicus with a Q-tip/cotton swab applicator. The surgically prepared area should extend superiorly from the inferior rib cage to the midhigh inferiorly. The lateral margins of the skin preparation should extend to the anterior iliac crest and the anterior axillary line. The actual skin washing and preparation should be accomplished using concentric circles moving toward the periphery. To additionally protect the incision from contamination, many surgeons use a clear plastic adhesive (3M Steri-Drape Ioban 2 or similar product) placed over the skin at the site of the incision.

The Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention has published Guidelines for Prevention of Surgical Site Infection (1999), which are important in gynecologic surgery and should be noted (Table 8.6).

Universal Precautions for the Prevention of Seropositivity for Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome

Because surgeons are at risk for acquiring seropositivity for the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) through contamination from body fluids and blood products, certain precautions should be taken at the time of surgery. In 1988, the Centers for Disease Control published a document recommending that blood and other body fluid precautions be consistently used for all patients, regardless of their blood-borne infectious status. This extension of blood and other body fluid precautions to all patients is referred to as Universal Blood and Fluid Precautions, or simply Universal Precautions. Under universal precautions, blood and body fluids of all patients are considered potentially infectious for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis B virus (HBV), and other blood-borne pathogens.

Universal precautions are intended to prevent parenteral, mucous membrane, and nonintact skin exposure of the surgeon to blood-borne pathogens. Immunization with HBV vaccine is also recommended as an important adjunct to the universal precautions for surgeons who are exposed to the risks. Protective barriers reduce the risk of exposure of the surgeon’s skin or mucous membrane to potentially infectious materials. In the operating room, protective barriers include gowns, gloves, masks, and protective eyewear. Masks and protective eyewear or face shields reduce the incidence of contamination of mucous membranes of the mouth, nose, and eyes. Gloves reduce the incidence of contamination of the hands, but they cannot prevent penetrating injuries, such as puncture by a needle or other sharp instrument. Special care must be taken to prevent any injury by needles, other sharp instruments or devices. Should a contamination occur in spite of these precautions, immediately and thoroughly wash the hands and other skin surfaces that have been contaminated and institute the medical institution’s policy on rapid antigen testing to determine if the surgeon should consider prophylaxis for HIV.

Gynecologic surgery encompasses a wide variety of surgical procedures from minimally invasive operations to radical and extensive dissections of pelvic pathology. No matter what the extent of the procedure, all gynecologic surgery should be considered to have three separate parts: (a) the preoperative care and management phase, (b) the surgical procedure itself, and (c) postoperative care and management phase. Each part is intricately related to the others, and each part is vital in the overall outcome of the gynecologic pathology being managed. Preoperative care and management sets the stage for a successful surgical procedure. Best outcomes are linked to a patient being in optimal physical and medical status before surgery. The preoperative process begins with an accurate diagnosis and an appropriate decision to operate. The preoperative evaluation serves to assess the patient’s overall medical status and specific gynecologic problem by a thorough history, a complete physical examination, and the ordering of appropriate laboratory testing to support the safety of the planned procedure. The preoperative evaluation additionally serves to identify other pathologies and problems that could interfere with optimal surgical outcome and to implement corrections before surgery. Suggestions for accomplishing a thorough history and physical examination have been outlined in this chapter. Preoperative testing should be based on the patient’s age, history, physical examination, and the degree of complexity of the proposed surgery. Suggestions for appropriate testing for both uncomplicated and complicated gynecologic patients have been made. Additional suggestions for management of gynecologic patients in the immediate preoperative period have also been made. Finally, of great importance is the open dialog between the gynecologic surgeon and the anesthesiologist regarding surgical planning, with consultation of other specialists when complicated medical or surgical issues are present. As a result of these actions and efforts, the gynecologic surgeon and the patient arrive in the operating room with little doubt as to the pathology, the overall medical status, and the plan for surgical correction.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

• Successful surgical outcomes of operative gynecologic procedures occur as a result of several factors, including (a) appropriate preoperative evaluation, (b) appropriate patient selection, (c) appropriate discussion with the patient regarding the benefits and risks of surgery, and (d) ability to work with managed care organizations so as to obtain required approvals.

• Preoperative patient conditions are significant predictors of postoperative morbidity. It is essential that all women undergoing preoperative assessment have a complete history and thorough physical examination as a key element of their workup.

• Key to the understanding of appropriate testing is an understanding of (a) the risk category of the patient and (b) the degree of complexity of the planned surgery.

• A close dialog should exist between the gynecologic surgeon and the anesthesiologist as well as with other medical/surgical specialties providing consultative support for the patient.
Hillis SD, Marchbanks PA, Ratliff Taylor S, et al. For the U.S. Collaborative
West J Med
Chen BH, Giudice LC. Dysfunctional uterine bleeding.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Hospital Infection Control Practices
Centers for Disease Control. Universal precautions for prevention of transmis-
Brown JS, Sawaya G, Thom DH, et al. Hysterectomy and urinary incontinence:
Golub R, Cantu R, Sorrento JJ, et al. Efficacy of preadmission testing in ambu-
Glister BC, Vigersky RA. Perioperative management of type 1 diabetes mellitus.
Hammond CB.
Goodson WH, Hunt TK. Studies of wound healing in experimental diabetes
The Cochrane Database of Systemic Reviews. Mechanical bowel preparation for
Eagle KA, Brundage BH, Chaitman BR, et al. Guidelines for perioperative cardio-
Fischer SP. Cost-effective preoperative evaluation and testing.
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Practice Bulletin. Com-
Ross AF, Tinker JH. Anesthesia risk. In: Miller RD, ed. Anesthesia, 5th ed. Phila-
Golub R. Anesthetic implications of concurrent diseases. In: Miller RD, ed. Anes-
Vessey MD, Doll R, Fairbairn AS, et al. Postoperative thromboembolism and the
Macario A, Reimn MF, Thamal RA, et al. Reassessment of preoperative lab-
Masukawa T, Loveston EF, Furst JK. The cytologic examination of breast secre-
Mittendorf R, Aronson MF, Berry RE, et al. Avoiding serious infections associ-
ated with abdominal hysterectomy: a meta-analysis of antibiotic prophyl-
Narz BJ, Hassan TR, Wieser MA. Preoperative laboratory screening in healthy
Reimn MF. More preoperative assessment by physicians and less by laboratory
Sher KD. Studies on the duration of antibiotic administration for surgical pro-
Proctor MM, DeWeese D, Thomas DA. Preoperative laboratory screening.
Table 27. Life expectancy at birth, at 65 years of age, and at 75 years of age. DHHS Publication No. 2004–1232. 2004:141.
Velanovich V. Preoperative laboratory screening based on age, grade, and con-
Wesson MD, Doll R, Faustina AS, et al. Preoperative thromboembolism and the
Zerwe MD, Doll R, Faustina AS, et al. Preoperative thromboembolism and the
Zerwe MD, Doll R, Faustina AS, et al. Preoperative thromboembolism and the
Zerwe MD, Doll R, Faustina AS, et al. Preoperative thromboembolism and the
Zerwe MD, Doll R, Faustina AS, et al. Preoperative thromboembolism and the
CHAPTER 9 ■ POSTANESTHESIA AND POSTOPERATIVE CARE
ALEXANDER DUNCAN, IRA R. HOROWITZ, AND KENNETH KALASSIAN

POSTOPERATIVE CARE

POSTOPERATIVE CARE

DEFINITIONS

Hospital-acquired pneumonia (HAP)—Pneumonia that develops 48 hours or more after hospital admission because of organisms that were not incubating at the time of admission.

Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction—Local reflex in the lung that diverts blood away from poorly oxygenated regions.

Low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH)—Product that acts by inhibiting factor Xa.

Tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA)—Compound used for nonsurgical thrombolysis.

Venous thrombotic event—A venous thromboembolism that includes vascular clots, such as deep vein thrombosis, pulmonary embolism, and arterial thromboembolism.

Virchow’s triad—Factors that increase risk of vascular thromboembolism, e.g., hypercoagulability, stasis, trauma to vessels.

V/Q abnormalities—Ventilation/perfusion abnormalities, including increased shunting to increased dead space in the lung.

Postoperative complications are the most important factors in defining the outcome of the first 72 hours following a patient’s surgical procedure. It is critical to monitor basic physiological parameters—such as renal, cardiovascular, and respiratory functions—and laboratory tests to optimize and sustain recovery from surgery and anesthesia.

Postoperative morbidity can be minimized by an appropriate preoperative assessment of the surgical patient. This should include emphasis on identifying the patient at risk for venous thromboembolism, e.g., hypercoagulability, stasis, trauma to vessels, embolic stockings and intermittent pneumatic compression stockings have significantly reduced the risk of PE in the moderate- and high-risk patients. Clarke-Pearson and colleagues, using univariate and regression analysis, designed a prognostic model to evaluate the risk of postoperative VTE for an individual patient. In a group of 411 gynecology patients, the prognostic factors they identified included type of surgery, age, leg edema, non-Caucasian ethnicity, severity of varicose veins, previous radiotherapy, and a prior history of DVT.

More than 130 years ago, Rudolph Virchow conceptualized the factors leading to postoperative thrombosis. These included venous stasis, changes in the blood constituents, and impaired function of the vessel wall. The blood clotting process is complicated (Fig. 9.1), but it is initiated by the actions of tissue factor (TF) in factor VII after injury to vessels exposes the subendothelium and promotes platelet adhesion and aggregation to form a primary platelet plug. The process is completed by the actions of multiple components and factors in the blood that generate thrombin, the potent platelet-aggregating enzyme, which then interacts with fibrinogen and factor XIII to form an insoluble clot (Fig. 9.2).

When patients have cancer or sustain venous damage from the surgical procedure, such as occurs with skeletonization of the pelvic vasculature, the up-regulation of thrombin generation has more profound effects. TF, fibrin, and thrombin all have angiogenic properties that can interfere with tissue properties by degrading matrix metalloproteinases, promoting cell migration, and enhancing metastasis. Tumors also up-regulate the production of TF and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1), again promoting the generation of procoagulant activity. This multifactorial activity helps to explain the high incidence of VTE in the gynecological cancer patient.

These tumorigenic effects on coagulation occur in addition to the typical acute postsurgical reaction of any of the hemostasis proteins. These include increases in fibrinogen, factor V, factor VIII, and von Willebrand’s factor, which promotes platelet adhesion and function. There is usually an increase in
Venous stasis is thought to be the cornerstone of postoperative thrombosis. Venous stasis in the pelvis and lower extremities results in platelet activation, promoting the adhesion of platelets to the endothelial cells lining the vessel, which are already stressed in a procoagulant mode. This results in conditions that encourage the development of a thrombus. These physiological changes in venous hemodynamics occur in the pre-, peri- and postoperative periods. Doran has shown that venous return from the lower extremities is decreased by half during surgical procedures because of the impact of muscle relaxation from anesthetic agents. Scanning using I125 fibrinogen has demonstrated that venous thrombosis is initiated during the surgery in 50% of patients who subsequently manifest a DVT. Lower-extremity blood flow has been shown to decrease to about 75% of the normal drainage flow in the immediate postoperative period. This is an important reflection of Virchow’s triad on the role of adequate vessel flow. This reduction in flow persists for about 14 days after surgery because of the loss of muscle-pumping function in the legs. The major site of thrombus formation is the soleal venous sinuses of the calf, a portion of the venous arcade that joins the posterior tibial and plantar veins draining the soleal muscle. Thrombi from these sinuses often occur posterior to valves located at the junction where these sinuses drain into the collecting veins. Thrombi often occur in these sinuses and in valve cusps in bedridden patients. Another contributing factor to venous stasis during prolonged surgery is the use of tight packing of the intestines in the upper abdomen with obstruction of the underlying vena cava. The type and length of operation are directly related to the incidence of postoperative VTE, as outlined in Table 9.1.

**COAGULATION MECHANISM**

![Coagulation Mechanism Diagram](image)

**Contact Factor Pathway**
- Factor XI
- Tissue factor

**Tissue Factor Pathway**
- Factor VII
- Factor X

Vesel injury, Hysterectomy, pelvic abscess, Tissue necrosis († Tissue factor, Collagen, Prothrombinase Complex), extrinsic pathway, Coagulation, Thrombin, Fibrinogen, Fibrin, Venous thrombosis

**Diagnosis of Venous Thromboembolism**

The traditional clinical methods used to diagnose venous thrombosis of the lower extremities are of limited value, with error rates approaching 50% for both false-negative and false-positive rates. Most of the diagnostics problems occur because of the insidious nature of venous thrombosis in the lower extremity, which takes place in the soleal veins. Modern imaging methods have evolved considerably in recent years, ranging from I125 fibrinogen scanning to venography to Doppler duplex ultrasound and impedance plethysmography. Although venography remains the gold standard, compression ultrasonography is widely used, having a good negative predictive value (98%) for proximal DVT and slightly lower (96%) for calf DVT. However, it is still inferior to venography, which remains the reference source (Table 9.2).

**Venography**

The venogram has had the most extensive and rigorous use in clinical practice of all imaging techniques. However, it is not routinely used because it is invasive, uses contrast dye, has limitations, and provides an increased risk in many patients who have renal compromise.

**1125-Labeled Fibrinogen Scanning**

This technique was first developed in the 1960s and used widely for many years. It involves the intravenous injections of isotope-labeled fibrinogen, which is expected to be incorporated into the evolving thrombus and can be imaged by a scintillation scanner. Because of the use of isotopes, it is technically cumbersome and rarely used, despite many large studies
### Table 9.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level of risk examples</th>
<th>Calf DVT, %</th>
<th>Proximal DVT, %</th>
<th>Clinical PE, %</th>
<th>Fatal PE, %</th>
<th>Successful prevention strategies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No specific measures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor surgery in patients &lt;40 yr with no additional risk factors</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate risk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor surgery in patients with additional risk factors; nonmajor surgery in patients aged 40–60 yr with no additional risk factors; major surgery in patients &lt;40 yr with no additional risk factors</td>
<td>10–20</td>
<td>2–4</td>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>0.1–0.4</td>
<td>LDUH q12h, LMWH, ES, or IPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High risk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonmajor surgery in patients &gt;60 yr or with additional risk factors; major surgery in patients &gt;40 yr or with additional risk factors</td>
<td>20–40</td>
<td>4–8</td>
<td>2–4</td>
<td>0.4–1.0</td>
<td>LDUH q8h, LMWH, or IPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highest risk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major surgery in patients &gt;40 yr plus prior VTE, cancer, or molecular hypercoagulable state; hip or knee arthroplasty; hip fracture surgery; major trauma; spinal cord injury</td>
<td>40–80</td>
<td>10–20</td>
<td>4–10</td>
<td>0.2–5</td>
<td>LMWH, oral anticoagulants, IPC/ES + LDUH/LMWH, or ADH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Validating its use in the 1970s and 1980s and a high correlation to venography.

### Impedance Plethysmography

Impedance plethysmography (IPG) is based on the principal of electrical resistance in specific areas of the body. When there is resistance to blood flow that is due to a thrombus, there is marked reduction in the electrical resistance over that vessel. IPG is most useful in proximal venous thrombosis, but is relatively poor in visualizing thrombi below the knee because of the small caliber and slow flow rates through the soleal sinuses. The technique is only about 50% accurate compared with venography in detecting DVT below the popliteal vessels.

Huisman and colleagues evaluated 471 outpatient patients clinically suspected of acute onset DVT. Four sequential IPGs were obtained on days 1, 2, 5, and 10 of the study. Of the 137 patients with abnormal results, 117 (85%) had abnormal results on day 1, with the other 20 patients becoming positive by day 10. When compared with venography, serial IPG had a specificity of 92% and a sensitivity of 100%. The use of serial testing clearly improved the ability to diagnose DVT. Another similar study by Vaccaro and associates involving 252 patients using single-test IPG gave a sensitivity of 84% and a specificity of 78%, confirming the superiority of the serial testing protocol. Given the short length of hospital stays now, it is unlikely that serial IPG would be possible despite its high correlation with venography.

### Doppler Ultrasound

The use of Doppler ultrasound, often with computer color enhancement, has become the most widely used imaging technique for diagnosis of DVT. Its major physiological use is in the measurement of flow velocity in larger blood vessels. In this technique, a reflected sound signal is converted to both an audible form and visual image on a computer screen. In the presence of a thrombosis, there is a decrease in the reflected signal that can be heard or, more likely, can be visualized. Most modern ultrasound machines use color enhancement to identify arteries (red) and veins (blue). This technique is again very useful to identify DVTs in the iliac, femoral, or popliteal veins, but again, its sensitivity falls off markedly when applied to the small vessels in the calf, usually to less than 60%.

### Real-Time Ultrasound

Real-time ultrasound has been compared with venography, and in a study by Aitken and associates, it demonstrated a sensitivity of 94% and a specificity of 100% in a small study of 46 patients. In a slightly larger study of 121 patients by Appelman and colleagues, the sensitivity was found to be 96%, and specificity was 97%.
### TABLE 9.2

**DIAGNOSIS OF DEEP VENOUS THROMBOSIS (DVT)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Sensitivity and specificity</th>
<th>Indication and comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinical history and physical examination</td>
<td>Classic symptoms often absent in proven DVT &lt;60% with suggestive symptoms proven to have DVT. Absence of symptoms does not exclude pulmonary embolism.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D-dimer ELISA (plasma)</td>
<td>Sensitivity 97%, Specificity: poor</td>
<td>Useful to exclude the diagnosis if D-dimer (ELISA) is &lt;500 mcg/mL. Many conditions increase D-dimer levels (false-positive results).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-mode compression ultrasonography ± Doppler</td>
<td>Symptomatic proximal DVT: Sensitivity 93%–97%, Specificity 98%, Asymptomatic DVT: Sensitivity 38%–39%, Specificity: high</td>
<td>Noninvasive test First-line modality for confirming diagnosis in symptomatic patients Not useful for screening of asymptomatic patients Compression component best for thigh DVT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impedance plethysmography</td>
<td>Symptomatic DVT: Sensitivity 95%, Specificity 98%, Asymptomatic DVT: Sensitivity 22%, Specificity 98%</td>
<td>Noninvasive test Limited to serial examination in symptomatic patients with proximal DVT Insensitive to calf-vein thrombi and nonocclusive thrombi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MR venography</td>
<td>Proximal DVT: Sensitivity 100%, Specificity 96%, Calf-vein DVT: Sensitivity 87%, Specificity 97%</td>
<td>Noninvasive but expensive Ability to screen for DVT in asymptomatic patients Can also image lungs for pulmonary embolism in same setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrast-enhanced CT venography</td>
<td>Distal and proximal DVT: Sensitivity 100%, Specificity 96%</td>
<td>Noninvasive test Superior to venography in evaluating the great vessels Less contrast than conventional venography Can image lungs for pulmonary embolism in same setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascending contrast venography phlebography</td>
<td>Reference standard</td>
<td>Invasive test Reference standard but expensive Risk for contrast nephropathy and allergic reactions Risk for thrombogenicity (usually superficial veins) Negative test does not exclude pulmonary embolism Equivocal results in recurrent DVT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


---

**Compression Ultrasound**

This technique has been used in some large DVT trials, such as the PREVENT trial, but there have been few studies directly comparing it with venography. In a recent small study by Tomczowski and colleagues involving 160 medically ill patients, 12 patients had venographically proven DVT. Compression ultrasound technique had a sensitivity of 28% and a specificity of 98%, but despite the small numbers of venographically confirmed patients, the method performed poorly, having both false-positive and -negative findings.

**Duplex Doppler Ultrasound**

This is a combination technique using real-time and Doppler methods in a procedure known as B mode or duplex Doppler imaging. It allows a radiologist to visualize the vessel and identify any thrombus in it. In a study by Langfeld and colleagues, 451 patients were examined; 86 patients had a DVT. This gave a sensitivity of 100%, but two false positives dropped the specificity to 78%. Technical issues may have given one incorrect result, the second patient was pregnant, and the study was considered falsely positive because of aortocaval compression from the pregnant uterus.

In a study by Kristo and associates comparing duplex Doppler, venography, and single bilateral IPG, the respective sensitivities and specificities were as follows, respectively: ultrasound, 92% and 100%; venography, 100% and 75%; and IPG, 50% and 83%. For many reasons, duplex B mode imaging has become the noninvasive imaging method of choice, essentially replacing venography as the “practical” gold standard.
Light Reflection Rheography

Light reflection rheography (LRR) uses infrared light directed at the skin. The backscattered rays are quantitated, which allows an estimation of blood volume. A decreased venous emptying rate of 0.35 is considered positive for DVT. In a study in patients with gastrointestinal problems in which 69 limbs were tested by venography and LRR, the sensitivity for LRR was 96%, the specificity was 83%, the positive predictive value was 79%, and the negative predictive value was 97%. LRR could prove to be a low-cost, sensitive tool for DVT detection. Further studies are needed to determine if the technique fulfills its early promise. However, in one study of 411 asymptomatic pregnant women in second and third trimesters who did not have DVT, the use of LRR denoted a significant false-positive rate of 25% and an inadequate study rate of 19%. This gave an overall specificity of only 45%, indicating that LRR is not for use in DVT diagnosis in pregnant women.

Radiosotope Imaging

Various imaging methods have been tried using radiosotopes to try to detect thrombus in both arteries and veins by labeling components of the clotting system, such as platelets or fibrinogen. These components would be incorporated into the developing thrombus, and the focused radioactivity would then allow “visualization” by a detector. Radioactive-tagged antibodies to both platelets and factors have also been used for DVT diagnosis.

Indium111-labeled platelets have demonstrated good success with high sensitivity and specificity. The same is true for fibrinogen125- and technetium99m-labeled platelets. Although all of these radiosotope-labeled methods have some proponents, the advances in computer and ultrasonic methods will probably outweigh significant development of radiosotopic methods for routine clinical VTE diagnosis.

Indirect Computed Tomography Venography

The new and evolving technique of indirect computed tomography (CT) venography, using intravenous contrast medium injection followed by CT scanning of the limbs or chest, has a high potential for detecting DVT or PE. Some early studies have indicated detection of thrombosis at least to calf level and perhaps lower. There are few studies comparing CT venography and CT pulmonary angiography. A recent study by Nchimi evaluated 1,408 patients with both techniques for PE detection and CT pulmonary angiography. A recent study by Wells and associates comparing ICG and D-dimer with contrast venography, the combination of ICG and a negative (normal) D-dimer test gave a negative predictive value of 97%. In this same study, the combination of positive ICG and positive D-dimer had a positive predictive value of 93% for any DVT and 90% for proximal DVT.

The use of an appropriate D-dimer assay in isolation has been shown to have about 95% negative predictive value for exclusion of DVT. Despite numerous studies, there is still no proven consistent correlation between a positive D-dimer assay and venous thrombosis. Because the diagnosis of PE can be difficult in many older patients, especially those with heart failure or other cardiovascular complications, some preliminary studies have been done using combinations of D-dimer, B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP), and cardiac troponins to determine if a better distinction can be made between a PE and an underlying cardiac complication. These studies are likely to be the forerunners for other combinations of lab tests to identify more specific negative or even positive predictive markers for VTE.

Risk Factors for Vascular Complications

Several clinical factors are known to identify the patient with an increased risk for VTE (Table 9.3). The most prevalent and important include age >40 years, obesity >20% above ideal weight, prolonged surgery, and immobility in the pre-, peri-, and postoperative periods. Pelvic malignancy, prior VTE, known thrombophilia risk, severe diabetes, heart failure, prior radiation therapy, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease all increase the VTE risk.

Age

An autopsy study by Sevitt and Gallagher demonstrated that DVT was most prevalent in patients older than 60 years. Several studies have shown a linear risk of fatal PE with increasing age. Approximately 10% of hospitalized patients’ deaths are due to PE, and only about 33% of these are diagnosed ante mortem. Contributing factors include degenerative changes in the vascular tree, increases that occur in the concentration of many coagulation factors, and, possibly, increased platelet adhesiveness.

Mobility

Prolonged inactivity in the preoperative patient promotes an impairment of venous flow in the lower extremities. Many diagnostic techniques also produce a decrease in muscle tone with a secondary decrease in venous flow. These hemodynamic changes promote shedding of red cells and activation of platelets, setting the stage for VTE during the operative period. This is one of the main risk factors described by Virchow for the etiology of thrombosis.

Studies done using 125I fibrinogen scanning pre- and immediately postsurgery have indicated that in 50% of patients who subsequently developed VTE, the initiation of clot formation occurred during the surgical procedure. This is amplified...
TABLE 9.3
PROFILE OF PATIENT AT HIGH RISK FOR VENOUS THROMBOSIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>&lt;40 Major surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>&gt;60 Nonmajor surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td>75–90 kg or &gt;20% above ideal weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morbid</td>
<td>115 kg or &gt;30% above ideal weight with reduced fibrinolysis and immobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immobility</td>
<td>Prolonged hospitalization; venous stasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preoperative</td>
<td>Prolonged operative time; loss of pump action of calf muscles; compression of vena cava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative</td>
<td>Prolonged bed confinement; venous stasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma</td>
<td>Damage of wall of pelvic veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radical pelvic surgery</td>
<td>Release of tissue thromoplastin*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignancy</td>
<td>Prior radiation therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activation of factor Xa</td>
<td>Diabetes mellitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation</td>
<td>Damage of wall of pelvic veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical diseases</td>
<td>Damage of wall of pelvic veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular disease; heart failure</td>
<td>Damage of wall of pelvic veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe varicose veins</td>
<td>Damage of wall of pelvic veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous venous thrombosis with or without embolization</td>
<td>Damage of wall of pelvic veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic pulmonary disease</td>
<td>Damage of wall of pelvic veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molecular hypercoagulable state</td>
<td>Damage of wall of pelvic veins</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Highest risk.

during prolonged anesthesia, with generalized muscle relaxation further promoting venous stasis in the lower extremities, which compounds the thromboembolic risk. For this risk, the judicious use of prophylactic anticoagulation in the high-risk patient should include the operative phase and continue at a minimum until the patient is fully ambulatory.

Postoperative immobility also promotes VTE risk by continuing venous stasis, and studies have shown that 66% of patients who develop a DVT do so in the first 48 hours after surgery. Other compounding issues include sitting with legs crossed or dangling over the bed or the exaggerated Fowler position. These positions all produce impairment of lower extremity venous return. Postoperative patients should be ambulated early and aggressively; if ambulation is not possible, they should have their legs elevated to 15 degrees above the horizontal.

**Other Factors**

Other factors include previous VTE, varicose veins, severe diabetes, cardiac failure, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and underlying thrombophilia. Given the high incidence of factor V Leiden (5%) and the G20210A prothrombin gene mutations (3%) in the Caucasian populations, which are well-recognized risk factors for venous thrombosis (Table 9.4), these genetic risk factors are common enough to make a major contribution to preoperative thrombosis, even in the patient with no prior VTE history.

Underlying malignancy is a huge contributor to risk, most likely because of the significant up-regulation of TF that is known to occur with many malignancies. Up-regulation of TF increases thrombin generation by several mechanisms and promotes platelet activation and angiogenesis, as discussed earlier.

A review of these risk factors clearly identifies the high-risk VTE patient, and it is essential that these surgical risk variables are identified and understood in designing appropriate thromboprophylaxis and monitoring parameters to prevent venous thrombosis.

**TABLE 9.4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk of Thromboembolism</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deficiency/dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antithrombin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heparin cofactor II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor V Leiden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prothrombin variant 20210A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiphospholipid antibodies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lupus anticoagulant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticardiolipin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperhomocystinemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysfibrinogenemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased levels of plasminogen activators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

and underlying thrombophilia. Given the high incidence of factor V Leiden (5%) and the G20210A prothrombin gene mutations (3%) in the Caucasian populations, which are well-recognized risk factors for venous thrombosis (Table 9.4), these genetic risk factors are common enough to make a major contribution to preoperative thrombosis, even in the patient with no prior VTE history.

Underlying malignancy is a huge contributor to risk, most likely because of the significant up-regulation of TF that is known to occur with many malignancies. Up-regulation of TF increases thrombin generation by several mechanisms and promotes platelet activation and angiogenesis, as discussed earlier.

A review of these risk factors clearly identifies the high-risk VTE patient, and it is essential that these surgical risk variables are identified and understood in designing appropriate thromboprophylaxis and monitoring parameters to prevent venous thrombosis.

**Prophylaxis**

Prevention remains the most effective tool in the treatment of VTE. Between 5% and 45% of gynecological surgery patients develop DVT in their legs; of these, 20% have popliteal or femoral involvement; and of these, 40% will progress to PE with its high mortality. It is imperative that methods for prophylaxis are planned and implemented before surgery (Table 9.5).

At the sixth American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP) Consensus Conference, Geerts and colleagues—in a review of PE in 7,000 gynecologic surgery patients in prospective clinical trials—reported a reduction in the rate of fatal PE of 75% using thromboprophylaxis (Table 9.6).

**Low-Dose Unfractionated Heparin**

Low-dose unfractionated heparin (UFH) has been the mainstay of prophylactic treatment for many years, with numerous prospective randomized clinical trials validating a risk reduction in DVT incidence from 35% to 45% to about 7% in the high-risk patient. In one large study by Kakkar and colleagues (Table 9.7) incorporating 4,000 patients at multiple centers, patients were randomized to 5,000 units USP calcium heparin subcutaneously starting 2 hours before surgery and subsequently every 8 hours thereafter for the next 7 days. The
reduction in VTE between the control group (25%) and the treatment group (8%) was highly significant. The most important finding was the decrease in fatal PE from 16 patients in the control group to two in the treatment group confirmed by autopsy. Because there is no change in the activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT) because of the low level of subcutaneous heparin, there was no increase in postoperative bleeding. This is because the main impact of the low-dose heparin is exerted via antithrombin through factor Xa, as well as directly on thrombin. There is also a secondary effect in which heparin releases tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI), which also helps to down regulate factor Xa by forming a complex involving TF:F Xa:F VIIa:TFPI.

These studies, as well as those shown in Table 9.8, clearly validate the efficacy of low-dose UFH in reducing VTE in

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Mechanism of action</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heparin</td>
<td>Combines with AT-III and neutralizes activated factors Ila (thrombin activity) Xa responsible for thrombin generation</td>
<td>Prevention and treatment of venous thromboembolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Xa, IXa, XIXa</td>
<td>Risk of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Requires monitoring (aPTT) when used for treatment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMWH</td>
<td>Combines with AT-III and prevents thrombin generation through its anti-factor Xa effect</td>
<td>Prevention and treatment of venous thromboembolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No anti-IIa activity (if molecular weight &lt;5.6 kDa)</td>
<td>Risk of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aPTT does not reflect anticoagulation state</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>More predictable pharmacokinetic profile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Renal failure and dehydration increase effective plasma concentration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heparinoid</td>
<td>Same as LMWH</td>
<td>Prevention and treatment of venous thromboembolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danaparoid</td>
<td>High anti-Xa:IIa ratio</td>
<td>Prevention and treatment of venous thromboembolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct thrombin</td>
<td>Directly inhibits thrombin activity</td>
<td>Prevention and treatment of venous thromboembolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inhibitors and hirudin</td>
<td></td>
<td>May be used for heparin-induced thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plasminogen</td>
<td>Activates plasminogen, which leads to the formation of plasmin, which dissolves fibrin clot (no effect on polymerized fibrin clot)</td>
<td>Treatment of life-threatening DVT or pulmonary embolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>activators:</td>
<td>Also degrades fibrinogen, which leads to fibrinogen degradation products and decreases in plasma fibrinogen</td>
<td>High risk of bleeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonselective</td>
<td>Activates fibrin-bound plasminogen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptokinase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urokinase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombus-selective</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tissue plasminogen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>activator</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warfarin</td>
<td>Inhibits correct synthesis of vitamin K-dependent coagulation factors II, VII, IX, X</td>
<td>Long-term treatment and prevention of venous thromboembolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>These factors cannot bind calcium and therefore remain inactive</td>
<td>Contraindicated in pregnancy (teratogenic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inhibits protein C (vitamin K-dependent)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior vena cava</td>
<td>Trap larger embolol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filters</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External pneumatic</td>
<td>Prevents venous stasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leg compression</td>
<td>Stimulates fibrinolytic system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Used as prophylaxis for DVT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Possibly contraindicated in peripheral arterial disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 9.6
PREVENTION OF DEEP VENOUS THROMBOSIS (DVT) AFTER GYNECOLOGIC SURGERY*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regimen</th>
<th>No. of trials</th>
<th>No. of patients</th>
<th>Incidence of DVT, %</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
<th>Relative % reduction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Untreated control subjects</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>945</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>14–19</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral anticoagulants</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>183</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>8–18</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPC</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>233</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>6–13</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDUH</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1,092</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>6–9</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ES</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0–3</td>
<td>“99”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Pooled data from randomized trials that used routine FUT as the primary outcome.


surgical patients using an initial dose of 5,000 units 2 hours before surgery, and then 5,000 units every 12 hours for the next 5 days. For the truly high-risk patient, such as those with a prior VTE or multiple risk factors, 5,000 units every 8 hours should be used.

Low-Dose Unfractionated Heparin/Dihydroergotamine

The combination of low-dose UFH and dihydroergotamine (DHE) treatment was shown to work well by adding the known effect of DHE as a selective venous vasoconstricting agent to the anticoagulant properties of UFH. The data in Table 9.9 support the use of this treatment modality, but none of these products are now sold in the United States.

Dextran 70/Dextran 40

In 1972, Bonnar and Walsh described the use of dextran 70 to prevent thrombosis after pelvic surgery. A subsequent study by Birnstein and colleagues involving radical hysterectomy patients using dextran 70 as prophylaxis showed a decrease in DVT incidence from 33% to 5%. Dextran works by interfering with platelet function, interacts with factor V and VIII, and inhibits fibrinolysis. Despite some comparable studies between dextran and low-dose UFH, the Sixth ACCP Consensus Conference in 2001 recommended against using dextran products in VTE prophylaxis.

Low-Molecular-Weight Heparins

LMWHs act by primarily inhibiting factor Xa with a small component of activity against thrombin. They now have become the mainstay of prophylaxis treatment and are continuing to replace all other forms of drug therapy. The drugs have a longer half-life than UFH and are much more biopredictable. If LMWH levels are measured in patients using an anti-Xa assay, there is a remarkable homogeneity of response. This has led the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to recommend against the need to monitor when used LMWHs are for VTE prophylaxis. There are currently four LMWH drugs available in the United States (Fragmin, Lovenox, Innohep, and Arixtra). They are subtly different in molecular weights and in manufacturing processes, but in essence, they are almost identical in clinical efficacy. They are not, however, dosed in the same way, some using milligrams and other units, or even units per kg. Pharmacies can provide accurate dosage information about any of the products available.

Multiple studies reported in the literature essentially show equivalence or better for the LMWHs compared with UFH in the prevention of VTE, but almost all of these show a much lower bleeding risk for the LMWH treatment groups, even with hard data for bleeding risk being quantitated by transfusion requirements. LMWHs have also been compared with dextran and used in combination with DHE with good outcomes, but the reality is that in normal clinical practice, LMWHs by themselves provide adequate protections with minimal complications. One other advantage of the LMWH preparations is their much lower incidence of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) when used as de novo therapy. However, if a patient has had HIT in the past, these preparations should not be used because there is about a 90% cross-reactivity between UFH and LMWH for the antibody causing HIT. One exception to this is Arixtra, the synthetic factor Xa inhibitor, which has not been shown to cause clinical HIT to date. It is highly likely, given the once-per-day dosage requirement and the lack of HIT risk, that LMWHs will continue to dominate in uses for thromboprophylaxis in VTE.

Compression Modalities

As long ago as 1944, Stanton et al. used static compression to decrease venous stasis by decreasing the luminal diameter of the veins, increasing blood flow velocity. In the mid-1970s, Segel
TABLE 9.8

RESULTS OF PROPHYLACTIC TREATMENT OF VENOUS THROMBOSIS AFTER GYNECOLOGIC SURGERY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigators</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Type of surgery</th>
<th>Number of patients</th>
<th>Venous Thrombosis (%)</th>
<th>Pneumatic calf compression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bonnar et al.</td>
<td>1973</td>
<td>Simple hysterectomy</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ballard et al.</td>
<td>1973</td>
<td>Major gynecologic, age 40</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McCarthy et al.</td>
<td>1974</td>
<td>Major gynecologic</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gjonnaess and Abildgaard</td>
<td>1976</td>
<td>Major gynecologic, age 50</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adolff et al.</td>
<td>1978</td>
<td>Major gynecologic</td>
<td>146</td>
<td>23.0</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarke-Pearson</td>
<td>1983a</td>
<td>Gynecologic malignant</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarke-Pearson</td>
<td>1984</td>
<td>Gynecologic malignant</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>34.6</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borrada et al.</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>Major gynecologic malignant</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Detected by 125I-labeled fibrinogen scan.

AC, anticoagulants; LMWH, low-molecular-weight heparin.

and colleagues showed an increase in blood velocity of 20% using graduated compression stockings but a 200% increase in velocity using intermittent sequential compression.

Mittelmann and colleagues showed that uniform intermittent calf compression was not as effective as intermittent sequential compression at increasing thigh blood flow. This is another example of a component of Virchow's triangle, namely, stasis being involved in the VTE protection mechanism.

It is possible that another component of the triad—the coagulation system—is also influenced by intermittent pneumatic compression (IPC) because several groups have shown that it stimulates fibrinolysis, perhaps by increasing prostacyclin production. Prostacyclin is a potent natural vasodilator and antiplatelet agent released from endothelial cells. Guyton and colleagues found increased quantities of 6-keto prostaglandin F1α in patients undergoing IPC compared with controls. The 6-keto prostaglandin F1α is a specific breakdown product of prostacyclin. Frango and associates have shown a 16-fold increase in prostacyclin production in cultured endothelial cells submitted to pulsatile shear stress compared with a twofold increase with contact shear stress.

Graduated Compression Stockings. Initial studies evaluating antithrombotic stockings proved inconclusive and relied on several different methods to diagnose VTE, which compounded the uncertainty. Sagel and colleagues designed a compression thromboembolism deterrent (TED) hose with graduated pressures of 18, 14, 12, 10, and 8 mm Hg from the ankle to the upper thigh. Scurr and associates evaluated TED hose in a study of 75 patients older than 40 years undergoing major abdominal

TABLE 9.9

THROMBOSIS PREVENTION WITH DIHYDROERGOTAMINE MESYLATE PROPHYLAXIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment and dose</th>
<th>Number of patients treated</th>
<th>Patients with DVT</th>
<th>Patients without DVT</th>
<th>P Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DHE-heparin sodium, 5,000 IU</td>
<td>214</td>
<td>18 (8.4%)</td>
<td>196 (91.6%)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHE-heparin sodium, 2,500 IU</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>32 (14.2%)</td>
<td>194 (85.8%)</td>
<td>.0396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heparin sodium, 5,000 IU</td>
<td>222</td>
<td>32 (14.4%)</td>
<td>190 (85.6%)</td>
<td>.0341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHE mesylate, 0.5 mg</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>18 (16.4%)</td>
<td>92 (83.6%)</td>
<td>.0261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placebo</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>22 (20.4%)</td>
<td>86 (79.6%)</td>
<td>.0024</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DHE, dihydroergotamine mesylate; DVT, deep venous thrombosis.

*All treatment modalities administered 2 hours before surgery and every 12 hours postoperatively for 5 days.

P level compared with DHE-heparin sodium, 5,000 IU.

surgery in which only one leg had TED hose applied. Using fiberbrinogen scanning as the diagnostic tool, 15 patients had DVTs in the control leg, and only 1 had a DVT in the TED hose leg. A subsequent similar study by Inadla and colleagues found a DVT frequency of 14.5% in the control leg and only 3.6% in the TED leg. Malignancy is a powerful predisposition to VTE secondary to stasis and TF production by the tumor. In a study by Allan and associates assessing the efficacy of TED stocking in patients undergoing abdominal surgery for malignant and benign diseases, the incidence of DVT in the benign disease group was 24.5% in the control limb and 6.1% in the TED limb. However, in the malignant disease group, the incidence of DVT was only slightly increased in the control limb at 27.9%, but the incidence of DVT in the TED limb was significantly higher at 11.5%, clearly amplifying the impact of the tumor on the DVT risk. The Sixth ACCP Consensus Conference suggested that TED hose with early ambulation was an acceptable and effective means of VTE prophylaxis in the low-risk gynecology surgery patient.

External Intermittent Pneumatic Compression. These techniques also promote increased blood flow in the lower extremities that is due to decreased stasis and improved fibrinolysis. Nicolaidis and colleagues compared intermittent sequential pneumatic compression, nonsequential (one chamber) pneumatic compression, and UFH in the prevention of DVT. Using pressures of 35, 30, and 20 mm Hg sequentially for 12 seconds at the ankle, calf, and thigh, they observed a 240% increase in peak blood velocity. In contrast, using the single-chamber device at 35 mm Hg, the increase was only 180%. The single-chamber device was more effective than the single-chamber device and was as effective as 5,000 units of UFH every 12 hours in preventing DVT. In addition, the intermittent sequential device increased the time interval for clot formation proximal to the calf compared with UFH. In another study, the same authors compared electrical calf stimulation, low-dose UFH, intermittent sequential compression, and TED hose in 150 patients older than 30 years undergoing major abdominal surgery. The incidence of proven DVT was 18%, 9%, and 4%, respectively. In a similar study in patients undergoing surgery for gynecological malignancy comparing no thromboprophylaxis to nonsequential external compression, the control group had a VTE frequency of 34.6%. In the compression treatment group, the VTE incidence was reduced to 12.7%. Diagnostic tools for VTE were IIP and I131.

**Treatment of Venous Thrombosis**

The initial treatment of VTE in most hospitals still involves the use of intravenous UFH, although some LMWHs are approved for treatment of VTE. Given the potential variability of the hypercoagulable state in these patients, continuous intravenous infusion UFH still remains the easiest drug to use. Most patients are now treated using a weight-based heparin nomogram and are given a loading dose of 80 units/kg to a maximum of 10,000 units. They are maintained on a constant infusion of 18 units/kg, and the first APTT or factor Xa assay should be done at 4 to 6 hours after the initiation of therapy. Because of the large thrombus burden these patients may have, they can or clear use UFH at an accelerated rate; thus, they are often heparinized. Patients with malignancies will typically require higher-than-average doses until the cancer has been surgically removed or treated. Care must be taken to reduce the infusion, or these patients are susceptible to bleeding that is due to heparin overtreatment. There is little place for intermittent bolus treatment with UFH in modern anticoagulation practice.

If the APTT is used to monitor efficacy of UFH therapy, it should be used in conjunction with the laboratory heparin monitoring nomogram. Because APTT reagents can vary widely between institutions, the old concept of using a ratio of 1.5 to 2 times some poorly defined control APTT value is completely outmoded and can lead to erroneous and inadequate anticoagulation therapy.

Standard clinical practices—such as leg elevation to minimize or treat leg edema after a DVT—are still appropriate. Patients should probably not be aggressively mobilized as long as they have significant leg edema. Most patients will require 3 to 7 days of UFH or LMWH treatment, and the modern trend is to rapidly introduce oral anticoagulation, usually within 24 to 48 hours after initiation of heparin therapy. This will not always be possible in this population, but any UFH or LMWH treatment should be continued until the international normalized ratio (INR) is in the therapeutic range of 2 to 3 for several days. Oral anticoagulation is usually continued for 3 to 6 months or longer, depending on the circumstances and any other complicating factors (i.e., prior VTE or congenital thrombophilia).

The patient who is found to have an asymptomatic DVT of the lower extremity poses a dilemma for some physicians. Some feel that this is not a significant risk and should not be treated, but the risk of thrombus extension into the proximal and popliteal veins remains high and is a possibility. Although this is still a small risk for most patients, the longer-term complications of postphlebitic syndrome from the damaged valves in those veins can produce significant morbidity for such patients, leading to chronic leg edema and venous stasis ulceration. For that reason, most practitioners would elect to anticoagulate women with asymptomatic DVT. With the onset of widespread DVT prophylaxis in many hospitals, the problem of whether to treat asymptomatic DVT may become moot.

**POSTOPERATIVE PULMONARY COMPLICATIONS**

Postoperative pulmonary complications (PPCs) after abdominal surgery remain an important cause of increased morbidity, mortality, and resource use. Arterectomy, pneumonia, and pulmonary thromboembolic disease following abdominal surgery continue to occur frequently despite continuing advances in anesthetic, surgical, and postoperative treatment. The incidence of PPCs has surpassed that of postoperative cardiac complications, and PPCs have a greater impact on postoperative outcomes. Gynecologic surgery is increasingly performed in patients with advanced age, multiple comorbid conditions, and increased risk for the development of PPCs. Risk factors for PPCs in patients undergoing a gynecologic surgery procedure vary among studies, but are consistent with other patient groups undergoing abdominal surgical procedures (Table 9.10). The most important PPCs in terms of incidence, morbidity, mortality, and resource use are arterectomy, pneumonia, respiratory failure, and pulmonary thromboembolic disease.

An understanding of the physiology that predisposes to PPCs, the risk factors for their development, and the preventive
The reduction in FRC is multifactorial and includes cranial movement of the diaphragm, chest wall relaxation with reduction in thoracic volume, reduction in respiratory compliance, and shift of central blood volume from the thorax into the abdomen. Reduction in FRC can have marked adverse effects on perioperative gas exchange, especially the development of hypoxemia.

Atelectasis is defined as the absence of gas from a part or the whole of the lungs that is due to the failure of expansion or resorption of gas from the alveoli. It occurs in the dependent areas of the lungs within 5 minutes of anesthetic induction in a patient with healthy lungs. Atelectasis may be caused by compression, gas resorption, or surfactant impairment. Compression occurs when the distending pressure in the alveolus is reduced to a level that causes the alveolus to collapse. In the setting of general anesthesia, compression occurs mainly as a result of impairments in diaphragmatic position and function. In addition to the cephalad movement of the diaphragm that is due to relaxation from anesthesia as described above, increased intrabdominal pressure from bowel edema, peritoneal fluid, and hematoma forces the diaphragm cephalad and contributes substantially to compressive atelectasis. The contractile function of the diaphragm is not altered as a result of an effect of anesthesia itself because diaphragmatic dysfunction, which almost always presents after upper abdominal surgery, does not arise after lower abdominal surgery.

Other factors contributing to postanesthesia pulmonary complications include reabsorption atelectasis, hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction, and ventilation/perfusion abnormalities.

Although most gynecological surgery is done in the pelvis, upper abdominal operations are sometimes done by gynecologic oncologists, and extension of the surgical incision and operative procedure into the upper abdomen produce increased respiratory effects. Respiratory muscle dysfunction is the major effect of upper abdominal surgery on respiratory physiology (Table 9.12).

An important change following upper abdominal surgery is a shift in respiratory pump function from the diaphragm to accessory inspiratory and expiratory muscles of respiration. This shift results in a change in the work of breathing which is proportional to the increase in the respiratory force produced per unit of oxygen consumed.

### Perioperative Respiratory Physiology

#### Effects of Anesthesia

General anesthesia results in important alterations in respiratory physiology (Table 9.11). Anesthetic agents influence not only the ventilatory response to oxygen and carbon dioxide but also the pattern of respiration. Inhalational agents and intravenous agents both result in a reduction of the ventilatory response, but differ in their effects on respiratory pattern. The classic breathing pattern produced by inhalational anesthetics is a rhythmic, rapid, and shallow pattern of respiration with no intermittent sighs, whereas intravenous anesthesia is associated with slow, deep respirations. Little metabolism of inhalational anesthetics occurs during surgery, with most of the anesthetic agents stored in the tissues, such as muscle and fat.

At the conclusion of anesthesia, most of the stored anesthetic agent is eliminated via the lungs. As a result of tissue stores, significant concentrations of the anesthetic agent may be present well into the recovery phase, particularly after high anesthetic doses, long anesthetic times, or the presence of cardiopulmonary disease. This prolonged anesthetic effect can lead to clinically significant respiratory depression in the postoperative period.

The number of functional alveolar units participating actively in gas exchange is directly related to the functional residual capacity (FRC). General anesthesia is associated with a reduction in FRC by approximately 16%. This reduction occurs irrespective of the anesthetic techniques used. The cause of the reduction in FRC is multifactorial and includes cranial movement of the diaphragm, chest wall relaxation with reduction in thoracic volume, reduction in respiratory compliance, and shift of central blood volume from the thorax into the abdomen. Reduction in FRC can have marked adverse effects on perioperative gas exchange, especially the development of hypoxemia.

### Tables

**Table 9.10**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk Factors for Postoperative Pulmonary Complications in Gynecologic Surgery Patients</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age &gt;60 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congestive heart failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper abdominal incision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incision length &gt;20 cm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 9.11**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Effects of Anesthesia on Respiratory Physiology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reduced ventilatory response to oxygen and carbon dioxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhythmic rapid shallow breathing pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced functional residual capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diaphragmatic dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atelectasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventilation-perfusion mismatching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blunting of hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impairment in mucociliary clearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 9.12**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Effects of Upper Abdominal Surgery on Respiratory Physiology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reduction in lung volumes: residual volume, total lung capacity, functional residual capacity, and vital capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflex inhibition of phrenic nerve activity resulting in decreased diaphragmatic function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased neck and intercostal inspiratory accessory muscle use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tonic and phasic contraction of abdominal inspiratory muscles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Postanesthesia and Postoperative Care 143
results in a rapid shallow breathing pattern of respiration. The contractile function of the diaphragm is impaired by inhibition of phrenic nerve output by stimulation of visceral and somatic nerve pathways during manipulation of the abdominal viscera and the peritoneum. The less efficient accessory muscles of inspiration, such as the intercostals and neck muscles, assume an increased share of the respiratory effort. Tonic and phasic contraction of the expiratory abdominal muscles also occurs. The net effect on respiratory mechanics is a reduction in lung volumes, including the FRC (which leads to atelectasis), V̇A/Q abnormalities, and hypoxemia. These changes may be aggravated by hypoventilation that is due to the residua of general anesthesia, postoperative sedative-hypnotic therapy, and pain. In addition to a submaximal voluntary activation of inspiratory muscles, pain may also have a direct effect, through unknown mechanisms, on inspiratory muscle function.

Atelectasis

Clinically significant atelectasis occurs in 15% to 20% of patients undergoing abdominal surgery. The pathophysiologic effects of atelectasis include decreased respiratory compliance, increased pulmonary vascular resistance, predisposition to acute lung injury, and hypoxemia. Atelectasis may also be a precursor to more serious PPCs, such as postoperative pneumonia. The definition of atelectasis is not uniform across clinical studies, with most investigations incorporating a global definition of a PPC that includes atelectasis. However, generally accepted criteria for the diagnosis of atelectasis include impaired oxygenation in a clinical setting where atelectasis is likely, unexplained temperature of greater than 38 °C, and chest radiographic evidence of volume loss or new airspace opacity. Risk factors implicated in the development of atelectasis after abdominal surgery include advanced age, obesity, intraperitoneal sepsis, prolonged anesthesia time, nasogastric tube placement, and smoking.

The risk of atelectasis may be reduced by a number of interventions (Table 9.13). Preoperative smoking cessation is effective in reducing respiratory function. Whether postoperative administration of opioid analgesia is superior to patient-controlled analgesia, there is inconclusive evidence as to whether selective gastric decompression is superior to on-demand narcotic analgesia in reducing PPCs. Laparoscopic procedures reduce postoperative pain scores, as well as have a lesser effect on postoperative respiratory function. Through these mechanisms, atelectasis is reduced with a laparoscopic as opposed to open abdominal surgical procedure. Irrespective of the procedure used, postoperative gastric decompression should be used selectively rather than routinely for postoperative nausea, symptomatic abdominal distention, or inability to tolerate oral intake. Routine nasogastric tube use significantly increases rates of atelectasis with- out reducing risk of aspiration in comparison with selective decompression.

Postoperative Pneumonia

Hospital-acquired pneumonia (HAP) is defined as pneumonia that develops 48 hours or more after hospital admission because of an organism that was not incubating at the time of hospitalization. HAP after abdominal surgery has a high attributable mortality, increases hospital length of stay by approximately 11 days, and is associated with a fourfold increase in risk of discharge to a skilled nursing facility. Women have a risk of developing HAP after abdominal surgery that is twice that of men. HAP is caused by a wide spectrum of bacterial pathogens and is occasionally due to viral or fungal pathogens in immunocompetent patients (Table 9.14). Common pathogens

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 9.13</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PREVENTION AND TREATMENT OF ATELECTASIS</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking cessation 8 weeks before effective surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopic procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep breathing exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adequate analgesia (epidural or patient-controlled analgesia preferred)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective gastric decompression</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 9.14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMON PATHOGENS CAUSING HOSPITAL-ACQUIRED PNEUMONIA</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early onset (&lt;4 days)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcus pneumoniae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methicillin-sensitive Staphylococcus aureus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemophilus influenzae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escherichia coli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Klebsiella pneumoniae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterobacter species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proteus species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serratia marcescens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late onset (&gt;5 days)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All of the above plus:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multidrug-resistant Klebsiella pneumoniae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acinetobacter species</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 9.15
RISK FACTORS FOR MULTIDRUG-RESISTANT PATHOGENS CAUSING HOSPITAL-ACQUIRED PNEUMONIA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Immunocompromised status or therapy</th>
<th>Home infusion therapy</th>
<th>Chronic dialysis</th>
<th>Residence in a nursing home or extended care facility</th>
<th>Antimicrobial therapy in the preceding 90 days</th>
<th>Current hospitalization of 5 days or more</th>
<th>Hospitalization for 2 days or more in the preceding 90 days</th>
<th>High frequency of antibiotic resistance in the community, hospital, or patient care unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

include the aerobic Gram-negative bacilli and S. aureus species. Early-onset HAP, defined as occurring within the first 4 days of hospitalization, is usually associated with a better prognosis and is more likely to be caused by antibiotic-susceptible pathogens. Late-onset HAP (occurring on or after 5 days of hospitalization) is more likely to be caused by multidrug-resistant (MDR) pathogens, which are associated with increased morbidity and mortality. The risk of HAP that is due to MDR pathogens is related to characteristics of the patient, the healthcare environment, and the prescribed medical treatment (Table 9.15).

Bacterial colonization of the lower respiratory tract under conditions that promote bacterial invasion is necessary for HAP to develop. Sources of colonization include air, water, equipment, fomites, and direct transfer from healthcare providers. Among conditions that promote invasion are severity of underlying illness, comorbid conditions, prior exposure to antimicrobials, and exposure to invasive devices, such as nasogastric tube. Risk of colonization may be modified by several means (Table 9.16). Infection control procedures, including guidelines for alcohol-based hand disinfection and appropriate barrier precautions, should strictly be observed. Early removal of invasive devices, in particular nasogastric tubes, and avoidance of endotracheal intubation when noninvasive ventilation is feasible, will reduce the risk of HAP. As one of the mechanisms for initial colonization of the lower respiratory tract includes microaspiration of gastrically residing bacteria, measures to minimize aspiration and to reduce gastric bacterial overgrowth are important preventive measures. All patients should be maintained in a least a semirecumbent position with the head elevated to 30 to 45 degrees. Restriction of the use of stress ulcer prophylaxis to patients who meet criteria (i.e., receiving mechanical ventilation or coagulopathy/therapeutic anticoagulation) is critical in controlling a possible risk factor for HAP. Implementation of a restrictive red blood cell transfusion strategy, in patients without evidence of active bleeding, is proven to reduce infectious complications of all kinds, including HAP. Adherence to such a strategy not only reduces infectious complications but reduces overall in-hospital mortality and may reduce recurrence of malignancy. In patients younger than age 55 and with an APACHE II score less than 25, a hemoglobin target of 7.0 should be adopted, with a hemoglobin target of 9.0 reserved for patients who do not meet these criteria. Strict control of hyperglycemia has been widely adopted as a means of reducing morbidity and mortality, including the risk of infection. Although the optimal glucose target and the means of achieving that target remain controversial, an attempt to limit capillary blood glucose to less than 150 mg/dl in both diabetic and nondiabetic patients appears warranted.

The clinical definition of HAP includes a new opacity on chest radiograph (posterior-anterior and lateral views preferred) plus two of the following: fever greater than 38°C, leucocytosis or leukopenia, and purulent respiratory secretions. The diagnosis of HAP should be supported by sampling of lower respiratory tract secretions, with either an endotracheal aspirate or a bronchoscopic specimen, before the initiation of empiric antibiotic therapy. The initial step in choosing antibiotic therapy for suspected HAP is determination of the patient’s risk of infection with an MDR pathogen (Fig. 9.3). One of the consequences of increasing antimicrobial resistance is an increased probability of inappropriate initial empiric treatment. Inappropriate or delayed empiric treatment results in a substantial excessive attributable mortality and hospital length of stay. Prompt institution of appropriate empiric therapy based on risk stratification for the presence of a possible MDR pathogen is crucial to improving patient outcome in HAP.

Initial therapy should be administered intravenously, with a switch to the enteral route of administration in selected patients with a good clinical response and a functional gastrointestinal tract. Combination therapy should be used initially if patients are at high risk of being infected with an MDR pathogen. Monotherapy is appropriate for those patients deemed to be low risk. Duration of therapy should be based on clinical response and may often be safely terminated before the traditional 14- to 21-day treatment period. Provided the etiologic pathogens is not Pseudomonas aeruginosa, clinical improvement usually takes 48 to 72 hours, and therapy should not be changed during this time unless there is a rapid clinical decline. The responding patient should have therapy tailored to the most focused regimen possible on the basis of microbiologic studies. The nonresponding patient should be evaluated for drug-resistant organisms, complications of pneumonia (e.g., parapneumonic effusion or empyema), extrapulmonary sites of infection, or noninfectious causes of symptoms and signs of pneumonia (e.g., drug fever with drug-induced lung injury).

Respiratory Failure

Respiratory failure denotes either the inability to maintain normal tissue oxygen transport or the normal excretion of carbon dioxide. Clinically, respiratory failure is usually diagnosed by levels of arterial PO2 and PCO2, although the levels that constitute the threshold for respiratory failure are arbitrary. An arterial PO2 of less than 60 mm Hg or an arterial PCO2 of greater than 45 mm Hg generally indicates significant
respiratory compromise in patients without preexisting lung disease. The diagnostic and therapeutic approach to the patient with respiratory failure is dictated by the underlying mechanism of abnormal gas exchange (Table 9.17).

### Table 9.17

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hypoxic respiratory failure</th>
<th>Ventilatory failure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypoventilation</td>
<td>Insufficient respiratory drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V/Q abnormalities (shunt, dead space)</td>
<td>Excessive respiratory workload</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venous admixture</td>
<td>Respiratory pump dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffusion limitation</td>
<td>Low inspired fraction of oxygen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Limited-spectrum antibiotic therapy
- **Suspected pathogens**
  - S. pneumoniae
  - H. influenzae
  - MRSA
  - E. coli
  - K. pneumoniae
- **Antibiotics**
  - Ceftriaxone
  - FQ
  - Amp/sulb
  - Beta-lactam/B-lactamase inhibitor
  - MDR = Multidrug-resistant, MRSA = Methicillin-resistant S. Aureus, AP ceph = Anti-pseudomonal cephalospo
  - Suspected pathogens
  - Antibiotics
  - MDR pathogens
  - AP ceph
  - P. aeruginosa or K. pneumoniae
  - Acinetobacter spp.
  - MSSA
  - Carbapenem
  - Linezolid or Vanc

#### Combination antibiotic therapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suspected pathogens</th>
<th>Antibiotics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MDR pathogens</td>
<td>AP ceph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRSA</td>
<td>Carbapenem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanc</td>
<td>Linezolid or Vanc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FIGURE 9.3

Algorithm for initiating empiric antibiotic therapy for hospital-acquired pneumonia (HAP).
the need for prolonged bladder drainage is anticipated, such as after radical hysterectomy. Increased CO₂ production is a by-product of overall increases in metabolism. Fever, delirium with marked agitation, severe sepsis, overfeeding, and hyperthyroidism would be examples of clinical states associated with increased CO₂ production. Increased dead space is a hallmark of severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; in patients with normal lung function, increased dead space is usually due to either pulmonary thromboembolic disease or a change in respiratory pattern. Rapid shallow breathing as a result of the physiologic changes induced by anesthesia, and upper abdominal surgery produces an increase in the proportion of ventilation to the anatomic dead space and a decrease in effective alveolar ventilation. In addition to anesthesia and upper abdominal surgery as causes of respiratory pump dysfunction in the postoperative patient, any other cause of respiratory muscle weakness may result in ventilatory failure. Endocrine disorders, such as myasthenia gravis or hypothyroidism, as well as electrolyte abnormalities, such as hypophosphatemia, are examples of conditions that could significantly contribute to respiratory muscle weakness and pump dysfunction.

Treatment of acute respiratory failure depends on the underlying cause and is best accomplished in an appropriately monitored environment, such as the intensive care unit with the aid of a specialist in critical care medicine, as mechanical support of ventilation—via either conventional endotracheal intubation/mechanical ventilation or noninvasive positive pressure ventilation—may be necessary (Fig. 9.4). Management of mechanical ventilation and its consequences has acquired a level of complexity that mandates subspecialist care and is beyond the scope of this chapter.

**POSTOPERATIVE CARE OF THE URINARY BLADDER**

The most common postoperative problem in the female bladder is atony caused by overdistention and the reluctance of the patient to initiate the voluntary phase of voiding. After abdominal/pelvic surgery, the patient is often unwilling to contract the abdominal muscles to produce sufficient intraabdominal pressure against the dome of the bladder to initiate the voiding reflex. After anterior colporrhaphy, spasms, edema, and ten-derness of the pubococcygeal muscles may obstruct the process of voiding. The operative trauma from plication of the pubovesical fascia causes edema of the urethral wall and submucosa, especially at the urethrovaginal junction, thus contributing to the urinary obstruction.

For spontaneous voiding to occur, the parasympathetic function of the bladder detrusor must be coordinated with the voluntary motor function of the abdominal wall and the levator muscles. In the past, it was customary to insert an indwelling urethral catheter for 5 or more days after vaginal plastic surgery. Although this technique is still used in many clinics, a suprapubic catheter has proved to be an effective alternative. The suprapubic technique was developed and introduced to the gynecologic literature in 1964. When inserted at the time of suprapubic bladder drainage.

**POSTOPERATIVE GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT MANAGEMENT**

Dysfunction of the gastrointestinal tract remains a challenge in postoperative management. Each patient should be treated as an individual and not placed on a standard protocol for
Symptoms and signs of acute respiratory failure:
Dyspnea, tachypnea, accessory muscle use

PaO₂ ≤ 60 mm Hg and PaCO₂ ≤ 45 mm Hg

Hypoxic respiratory failure

PaO₂ > 60 mm Hg and PaCO₂ > 45 mm Hg

Ventilatory failure

A-a O₂ difference ≥ 30 mm Hg?

Yes

No

Hypoxic and ventilatory failure

V/Q abnormality

Yes

No

Decreased mixed venous saturation

Hypoventilation

Venous admixture

Toxic-metabolic encephalopathy, ICH, Stroke, Delirium

Increased workload, Respiratory pump failure

ALOC

Yes

No

CXR WNL?

Yes

No

PE

Microatelectasis
Occult pneumonia
Pulmonary edema
Bronchospasm
Other

Atelectasis
Pneumonia
Pulmonary edema
Acute lung injury

Diffuse opacities

Normal parenchyma

Abnormal parenchyma

CT Chest with PE Protocol

Abnormal

PE

WNL

Acute coronary syndrome
Congestive heart failure

Consider:
Endocrine abnormality, Electrolyte abnormality
Overfeeding

Sepsis
Anemia
Acute coronary syndrome
Congestive heart failure

Focal opacities

WNL

Acute coronary syndrome
Congestive heart failure

CT Chest

Altered level of consciousness

FIGURE 9.4. Algorithm for the evaluation of respiratory failure. ALOC, altered level of consciousness; CT, computed tomography; CXR, Chest X-ray; ICH, intracranial hemorrhage; PE, pulmonary embolism; WNL, within normal limits.
advancing diets. Patients who have had uncomplicated surgery may be given a regular diet on the first postoperative day if bowel sounds are present, if abdominal examination reveals no distention, and if the patient is no longer nauseated from her anesthesia. Seriously ill or malnourished patients or patients requiring extensive bowel surgery may benefit from preoperative and postoperative parenteral nutrition.

It is important to differentiate between postoperative ileus and postoperative obstruction (Table 9.18) if proper therapy is to be initiated promptly with beneficial results. The distinction may be difficult. This is because partial bowel obstruction is often accompanied by a secondary ileus as part of the clinical picture. Only by close clinical monitoring of the bowel sounds, serial abdominal radiographic studies, and frequent white blood cell counts can one clearly separate these two postoperative complications. Adynamic ileus is the more common clinical entity, a fact that may mislead the surgeon into a false sense of security unless he or she remains acutely aware of the

| TABLE 9.18 | DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS BETWEEN POSTOPERATIVE ILEUS AND POSTOPERATIVE OBSTRUCTION |
|-------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Clinical feature | Postoperative ileus | Postoperative obstruction |
| Abdominal pain | Discomfort from distention but not cramping pains | Cramping progressively severe |
| Relation to previous surgery | Usually within 48–72 h of surgery | Usually delayed, may be 5–7 d for remote onset |
| Nausea and vomiting | Present | Present |
| Distention | Present | Present |
| Bowel sounds | Absent or hypoactive | Bowel sounds with peristaltic rushes and high-pitched tinkles |
| Fever | Only if related to associated peritonitis | Rarely present unless bowel becomes gangrenous |
| Abdominal radiographs | Distended loops of small and large bowels; gas usually present in colon | Single or multiple loops of distended bowel (usually small bowel) with air-fluid levels |
| Treatment | Conservative with nasogastric suction, enemas, cholinergic stimulation | Conservative management with nasogastric decompression |
| | | Surgical exploration |
or hyperlipidemia, administering low-nitrogen TPN to patients ing fat emulsion in patients with severe cardiovascular disease. TPN modification can include decreasing or eliminating or renal disease, hyperlipidemia, diabetes, and thyroid attension should be paid to identifying patients with cardiovas- obtained before parenteral nutrition is initiated. Particular at- tention to improving a poor one, the decision to use TPN should not be with renal failure, and increasing the insulin dosage in patients with diabetes mellitus.

The patient's degree of malnutrition should be assessed by taking measurements of several physical indicators, such as actual body weight (ABW) and ideal body weight (IBW), usual body weight (UBW; preillness), creatinine to height index, triceps skin fold thickness (TSFT), and arm circumference (AC). The arm muscle circumference (AMC) is calculated and used as an index of nutritional status.

Fat stores are reflected in the triceps skin fold measurement, whereas somatic proteins are evaluated by measuring muscle mass, such as the AMC. The Frisancho standards (1984) are used to interpret body weight (kg), triceps (mm), and bone-free arm muscle area (cm²). Patients found to be in the 5th to 10th percentiles are severely malnourished and require an an- abolic environment. Weight loss is significant when the (UBW – ABW)/UBW is >10%. Weight loss during starvation occurs at a rate of 0.4 kg/d. Survival also is com- promised when the ABW falls below the 70th percentile of the IBW. In addition to the preceding physical measurements, a thorough evaluation of chemical indicators is required (Table 9.19) before initiating TPN. Extensive monitoring is required while the patient is receiving TPN (Table 9.20).

### Table 9.19
**TOTAL PARENTERAL NUTRITION**

**PRETREATMENT SCREENING**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Laboratory evaluation</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complete blood count with differential</td>
<td>Weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prothrombin time/partial thromboplastin time</td>
<td>Weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrolyte panel</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albumin</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albumin</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total lymphocyte count</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triglycerides</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphorus</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 9.20
**TREATMENT MONITORING**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Electrolyte panel</td>
<td>Twice weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemistry panel</td>
<td>Weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transferrin</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triglycerides</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>Monthly or as needed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Total Parenteral Nutrition

Nutritional support has proved efficacious in patients under- going major surgery and in patients with impaired bowel func- tion, inadequate oral intake, or cancer. A few patients require total parenteral nutrition (TPN) for prolonged periods sec- ondary to their inability to obtain adequate calories orally. Parenteral nutrition may be administered through a peripheral or central access, depending on the patient's initial nutritional status and the time required on TPN.

Hospitalized patients may require TPN for disease pro- cesses such as gastrointestinal tract obstruction, prolonged ileus, short-bowel syndrome, radiation enteritis, intraabdomi- nal abscess, pancreatitis, regional enteritis, and enterocuta- neous fistula. A patient with any condition that prevents oral intake of adequate amounts of food for more than 7 to 10 days probably requires central parenteral nutrition. Because it is much easier to maintain an adequate nutritional state than to improve a poor one, the decision to use TPN should not be delayed.

TPN is not without complications. Many of these pertain to the need for central venous access. Catheter tip infection is one of the more frequently encountered problems. Meticulos- ous aseptic technique when placing the central venous catheter and adherence to aseptic technique when using the catheter mini- mizes the risk of infection. Antibiotic-coated central venous catheters have been around for more than a decade and are coming more into favor as compelling data surface suggesting decreased infection rates with their use. At the Emory Univer- sity Hospital, central venous catheters coated with chlorhex- idine and silver sulfasalazine are being used. Other potential problems with central venous catheters include catheter or air embolism and pneumothorax or hemothorax. TPN itself can cause fluid overload, electrolyte abnormalities, or metabolic disturbances.

### Patient Evaluation

A complete medical history and physical examination must be obtained before parenteral nutrition is initiated. Particular at- tention should be paid to identifying patients with cardiovas- cular or renal disease, hyperlipidemia, diabetes, and thyroid disease. TPN modification can include decreasing or eliminat- ing fat emulsion in patients with severe cardiovascular disease or hyperlipidemia, administering low-nitrogen TPN to patients.
TABLE 9.21

DESIGN OF PARENTERAL NUTRITION PROGRAMS: EXAMPLES

Nonobese patient weighing 60 kg; assume basal Harris-Benedict equation estimate of daily caloric requirements of 1,250 kcal/d

Patient characteristics
1. Euvolemic, normal urine output, and no unusual gastrointestinal losses; therefore, appropriate initial estimate of daily fluid requirement is 30 mL/kg body weight
2. Moderately stressed with normal renal and hepatic function; therefore, appropriate to provide 1.2 g protein per kg body weight
3. Nonobese; therefore, appropriate to provide Harris-Benedict estimate plus 20% for calories, i.e., 1,250 kcal plus 20% = 1,500 kcal

Program design
1. Fluid requirement: 30 mL × body weight; 30 × 60 = 1,800 mL
2. Caloric requirement: Harris-Benedict estimate plus 20%; 1,250 kcal + 250 kcal = 1,500 kcal
3. Protein requirement for moderately stressed patient: 1.2 g/kg body weight; 60 × 1.2 = 72 g protein
4. Fat requirement: 30% of total calories; 30% × 1,500 kcal = 450 kcal
5. Carbohydrate requirement: caloric requirement minus the sum of protein and fat calories; 1,500 – (280 + 450 kcal) = 770 kcal
6. Therefore, consider the following parenteral nutrition formula: 1.5 L amino acids, 5%; dextrose, 15%; plus 250 mL of 20% fat emulsion, which provides 1,250 mL, 1,460 calories, 70 g protein, 200 g carbohydrate, and 500 fat calories


The physical and chemical measurements of malnutrition are subject to many influences during illness and should be treated as confounding variables. For example, albumin values less than 3.2 g/dL are frequently used to indicate malnutrition. Starker and colleagues observed that in hospitalized patients, albumin and body weight measurements in conjunction provided better indications of sodium balance and extracellular fluid volume. In addition, albumin serum levels are required for maintenance of the intravascular colloid oncotic pressure and as a carrier protein. The half-life of albumin is 20 days and thus reflects a depletion of visceral proteins of at least 3 weeks’ duration. Transferrin, with a half-life of 8 to 9 days, provides the clinician with a measurement of recent protein status changes. Because transferrin is required to bind Fe^{2+}, its level is affected by intravascular iron status and can increase during pregnancy, in patients with hepatitis, and in patients receiving estrogen supplementation. Serum protein content can be reduced in protein-losing enteropathy, nephropathy, chronic infections, uremia, and during catabolism. Transferrin reflects recent losses and remains a better indicator of protein status and change than albumin. Total lymphocyte counts of less than 1,500 ml are indicative of an immunocompromised patient. Immunologic skin testing for recall antigens and total lymphocyte counts have been correlated with both nutritional status and morbidity and mortality. Its usefulness in the assessment of nutritional status is limited to confounding variables such as cancer, side effects of cancer treatment protocols, stress of trauma or surgery, and infection. Phosphorus and the trace elements are thoroughly evaluated before initiating TPN and during TPN because they are often depleted with many disease states and are required when alimenting (Tables 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, and 9.19–9.22).

Nutritional Requirements

TPN consists of six components: carbohydrates, fat, protein, electrolytes, vitamins, and trace elements. The Harris-Benedict basal energy expenditure (BEE) accounts for two thirds of the total daily energy requirements, with the remaining one third obtained from protein. Daily requirements for protein are between 1.5 and 2.5 g/kg/day. Patients receiving TPN who are
### TABLE 9.22

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRACE MINERALS</th>
<th>Deficiency</th>
<th>Toxicity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minerals and levels</strong></td>
<td><strong>Symptoms</strong></td>
<td><strong>Etiology</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc, 55–150 mg/dL</td>
<td>Diarrhea, mental depression, alopecia, night blindness, dermatitis, impaired taste, hypogonadism, impaired wound healing</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal (failure of ingestion, absorption, retention) Large wounds Protein-energy malnutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium, 90–150 μg/dL (synergism with vitamin E)</td>
<td>Myositis with muscle weakness Cardiomyopathy with arrhythmias and congestive heart failure</td>
<td>Unsupplemented TPN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Chromium, 50–200 μg/dL | Neuropathy Encephalopathy | Unsupplemented TPN | Respiratory | Lung cancer | Workers manufacturing products containing hexavalent chromium | Hypoxia-

#### Principles of Anatomy and Perioperative Considerations

Severely malnourished and stressed require larger amounts of protein daily.

The basal energy expenditure (BEE) is calculated as follows:

$$\text{BEE (kcal/d) } = 655 + 9.26(\text{wt}) + 1.83(\text{ht}) - 4.68(\text{age})$$

Height is in cm; weight is in kg.

Once the patient has reached the estimated daily calorie goal, a 24-hour nitrogen balance study is performed by obtaining a 24-hour urine collection and an a.m. electrolyte panel. If a large quantity of fluid from the nasogastric tube, ileostomy, fistula, or wound is present, this also should be collected and sent for nitrogen measurements. Iodine uptake is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Iodine uptake } = \frac{\text{Iodine in } \text{in} - \text{Iodine out}}{\text{Iodine in}}$$

Adding 4 to the N₂ out value accounts for nitrogenous losses in the stool and skin. This does not include an estimate of the
losses from the gastrointestinal tract and wound, as previously described.

\[
\begin{align*}
N_2 (g) \text{ balance} &= N_2 (g) \text{ in} \times \left[N_2 (g) \text{ out} + 4\right] \\
N_2 (g) \text{ out} &= \text{urine volume (mL)} \times \\
&= g \text{ protein/g nitrogen}
\end{align*}
\]

Patients with normal renal and liver function are started on standard total hyperalimentation solution THAS (Table 9.19). Each liter provides a total of 1,020 kcal, including 41 g of amino acids and 230 g of dextrose. The osmolality of this solution is 1,830 mOsm, which therefore necessitates a central venous access. The calories-to-nitrogen ratio of this solution is 137:1 and is optimal in nonstressed patients. The addition of lipids also is effective in promoting a positive nitrogen balance. The total daily sodium concentration should be equivalent to that of normal saline (150 mEq/L). This can be altered to accommodate patients who require sodium restriction or loading. Table 9.23 outlines the recommendation for daily electrolyte requirements. It should be noted that acetate serves as a precursor to bicarbonate, because the latter is not compatible in the THAS solution. Multivitamins are added daily to 1 L of THAS, whereas trace elements are divided equally in the volume to be infused during a 24-hour period. The recommended daily allowances for both fat- and water-soluble vitamins are outlined in Table 9.24.

Blood glucose levels in patients receiving TPN should be between 100 and 200 mg/dL. A minimum of 10 IU should be added to each liter when required. This permits about 50% to adhere to the plastic tubing. This can be supplemented with subcutaneous doses of regular insulin to obtain the desired blood glucose level. About one half to two thirds of the previous day’s requirements are added in divided doses to the THAS solutions.

Intravenous lipids provide a nonprotein source of energy and serve as a source of essential fatty acids. Ten percent fat emulsions (550 kcal/500 mL) and 20% fat emulsions (1,000 kcal/500 mL) are commercially available. In patients receiving standard TPN, 500 mL of 10% fat emulsion are infused twice weekly at a rate of 42 mL/h. However, when fat emulsion is used with peripheral THAS, the patient requires 2 L of peripheral THAS and 1 L of 10% fat emulsion daily. Twenty percent fat emulsions also can be used for calories in patients with glucose intolerance or patients who require a decreased protein-calorie percentage.

Patients deficient in fatty acids present with dermatitis, homocystinemia, thrombocytopenia, elevated liver enzymes, and poor wound healing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electrolyte</th>
<th>Dosage (mEq/d)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sodium</td>
<td>60–150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium</td>
<td>60–240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphate</td>
<td>30–45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>10–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>8–26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetate</td>
<td>80–120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloride</td>
<td>60–130</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To improve glucose tolerance, the first liter should be started at a rate of 42 mL/h. On the second day, the solution can be increased to 84 mL/h; on day 3, it can be increased to 124 mL/h. If the patient is unable to tolerate this schedule, increments can be decreased to 21 mL/h each day. Treatment monitoring is outlined in Table 9.20. Total nitrogen balance should be recalculated if there is a marked change in the patient’s condition or in the parenteral nutrition administered.

Recent data in the surgical literature suggest that supplementing TPN with glutamine dipeptides improves nitrogen balance, preserves intestinal permeability and absorptive function, and improves recovery of lymphocytes. These authors also demonstrated a shorter hospital stay in postoperative patients receiving glutamine dipeptide-enriched TPN compared with controls receiving TPN alone.

**Initiating Total Parenteral Nutrition**

Safe venous access is required for initiating TPN. A reliable intravenous catheter should be placed into a large central vein with the catheter tip located so that blood flow dilutes the highly concentrated nutritional fluids. The insertion site should also allow easy fixation of the catheter at the entrance site, minimum catheter movement during body movements, and easy dressing changes. A subclavian vein approach satisfies the requirements for safe catheter placement, but neither internal jugular vein nor antecubital fossa placement is optimal. The internal jugular vein should be used only if the subclavian approach has failed. Movement of the head and neck results in an increased incidence of occluding venous access when the internal jugular vein has been cannulated.

**Anatomy of Infraclavicular Subclavian Vein**

In 1952, Aubaniac, a French physician, was among the first to advocate use of the subclavian vein for intravenous infusions. Wilson and colleagues cannulated the superior vena cava through a percutaneous puncture of the subclavian vein. They reported a high percentage of successful cannulations and a low incidence of complications.

As Figure 9.6 shows, the subclavian vein is located within the costoclavicular-scapular triangle, which is bounded anteriortly by the medial end of the clavicle, posteriortly by the upper surface of the first rib, and laterally by the anterior scalene muscle. The anterior scalene muscle separates the subclavian vein from the subclavian artery, which lies beneath and along the lateral aspect of the muscle. The subclavian vein is covered by 5 cm of the clavicle medially and joins the internal jugular vein near the median border of the anterior scalene muscle to form the innominate vein. The innominate vein descends behind the sternum and joins with the opposite innominate vein to form the superior vena cava. The subclavian vein, which is about 3 or 4 cm long, continues as the auxiliary vein below the clavicle en route to the axilla. Several other significant structures occupy this region. The phrenic nerve courses across the anterior surface of the anterior scalene muscle near its attachment to the first rib and courses medially to lie posterior to the subclavian vein. It can be injured if the posterior wall of the vessel is penetrated. The internal thoracic nerve and apical pleura are in contact with the posterior surface of the subclavian vein at its junction with the internal jugular vein. The roots of the brachial plexus form by the fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth cervical and first thoracic nerves lie lateral to the anterior scalene muscle on the lateral side of the subclavian artery. If a cannulating needle is directed too far laterally, the brachial nerve plexus could be injured or the subclavian artery could be injured.
TABLE 9.24

RECOMMENDED DIETARY ALLOWANCES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient parameters</th>
<th>Fat-soluble vitamins</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age (years) or condition</td>
<td>Weight (kg)</td>
<td>Height (cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females 11–14</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15–18</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19–24</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23–30</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51+</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The allowances, expressed as average daily intakes over time, are intended to provide for individual variations among most normal persons as they live in the United States under usual environmental stresses. Diets should be based on a variety of common foods in order to provide other nutrients for which human requirements have been less well defined.

Weights and heights of Reference Adults are actual medians for the US population of the designated age, as reported by NHANES II. The median weights and heights of those under 19 years of age were taken from Hamill PV et al. *Am J Clin Nutr* 1979;32:607–629. The use of these figures does not imply that the height-to-weight ratios are ideal.

Retinol equivalents. 1 retinol equivalent = 1 mg retinol or 6 mg β-carotene.

As cholecalciferol. 10 mg cholecalciferol = 400 IU of vitamin D.

α-Tocopherol equivalents. 1 mg d-α-tocopherol = α-TE = 1.49 IU.

Water-soluble vitamins

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thiamine</th>
<th>Riboflavin</th>
<th>Niacin</th>
<th>Pyridoxine</th>
<th>Cyanocobalamin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(B1)</td>
<td>(B2)</td>
<td>(B3)</td>
<td>(B6)</td>
<td>(B12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mg</td>
<td>mg</td>
<td>mg</td>
<td>mg</td>
<td>&gt;mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Minerals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Calcium</th>
<th>Phosphorus</th>
<th>Magnesium</th>
<th>Iron</th>
<th>Zinc</th>
<th>Iodine</th>
<th>Selenium</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mg</td>
<td>mg</td>
<td>mg</td>
<td>mg</td>
<td>mg</td>
<td>mg</td>
<td>mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>2,800</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>2,800</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>2,800</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>2,800</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>2,800</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>2,800</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

posterior surface of the clavicle to ensure that the pleura is protected from puncture. By applying suction constantly, the needle passes beneath the skin and immediately aspires dark red blood, which confirms entry into the vein. If the vein is not entered, the needle is withdrawn and readvanced in a similar manner but in a slightly more cranial or caudal direction. As soon as a free flow of blood is obtained, the introduced Teflon sheath is advanced far enough to be certain that it is securely placed within the vein. The sheath is held in place by the connector, the finger is placed over the end of the needle to prevent air embolism, and the internal needle is replaced (Fig. 9.7B) by the silicone infusion catheter that accompanies the central venous pressure kit (Fig. 9.7C). A thin wire stylet inside the infusion catheter allows the catheter to be advanced easily; occasionally, the stylet must be withdrawn slightly to advance the catheter as far as possible into the innominate vein and superior vena cava. The silicone infusion catheter is advanced until the attached connector can be securely wedged into the connector of the Teflon sheath (Fig. 9.7C). After the infusion catheter is connected to an intravenous fluid line, the Teflon

![FIGURE 9.7. Insertion of subclavian catheter for monitoring central venous pressure. A: After locally anesthetizing the puncture site, the needle with overlying introducer catheter is directed medially between the first rib and the clavicle at the junction of the middle and inner third of the clavicle. The needle is held parallel to the anterior chest wall and advanced along the undersurface of the clavicle. Entry into the vein is evident with aspiration of blood in the attached syringe. B: The needle and syringe are removed from the Teflon sheath, and a finger is held over the end of the open catheter to prevent entry of air. C: The silicone infusion catheter is inserted through the introducer catheter until the two connectors meet and lock firmly. D: The intravenous fluid line is connected to the silicone infusion catheter. E: The suture sleeve is advanced to the skin surface, where the catheter is sutured firmly to the skin.]
sheath is carefully withdrawn from the vein, remaining par- 
tially in the subcutaneous tissue while leaving an ample length of the infusion catheter in the vena cava (Fig. 9.7D). A suture sleeve on the introducer sheath is slid down to the puncture site and sutured to the skin (Fig. 9.7E). The tip of the catheter is preferably positioned in the superior vena cava and should not be advanced into the right atrium or ventricle, where it could cause accidental trauma to the heart wall or cardiac arrhythm- 
as. To ensure its continued sterility and proper function, the subclavian vein should be allowed to fill with blood fluids or withdraw blood for laboratory studies, if it is at all possible to avoid these uses. A central venous line for hyperalimentation is an exception to this rule. The dressing should be changed daily, and the catheterization site cleaned with povidone-iodine or a similar antimicrobial solution.

Cardiac and Respiratory Insufficiency

Patients with congestive heart failure require decreased sodium and decreased total fluid volume. The best solution can be pre-
pared from the most concentrated solutions of glucose, amino 
acid, and fat available. Fluid-restricted solutions also may be 
beneficial for patients with respiratory failure, who should re-
ceive less total glucose in favor of more fat because the respira-
tory quotient (CO2/O2) of glucose (1.00) is greater than that of fat (0.70) and because excess glucose will increase the load of CO2, the lungs must excrete. Excessive total caloric intake resulting in fat synthesis from glucose substrate may severely compromise respiratory function because large amounts of CO2 are released (respiratory quotient 8.0).

Discontinuing Total Parenteral Nutrition

Before discontinuing TPN, the patient should tolerate an en-
teral diet that provides adequate calories. It is permissible to al-
iment patients with an enteral diet before decreasing the THAS 
solution. An abrupt discontinuation of central parental nu-
trition results in rebound hypoglycemia. Our recommendation is to decrease the THAS stepwise to 42 mL/h before contin-
uation. Some institutions recommend that the patient receive 10% dextrose for an additional 12 hours once central par-
tenteral nutrition has been discontinued.

The Team Approach to Total Parenteral Nutrition

TPN can now be safely administered to patients in many hos-
pitals because of the existence of a team of physicians, nurses, 
and health care professionals. Although the composition and 
exact function of the team members vary between hospitals, 
most teams consist of a physician, nurse, pharmacist, and nu-
tritionist. The role of the team varies in each institution from 
consultation to complete management of the patient’s nutri-
tional needs. The team approach by either method is highly 
beneficial because it provides a high concentration of personnel 
with knowledge, expertise, and interdisciplinary communica-
tion at the patient’s bedside. Team members can provide con-
tinuing education on nutrition therapy, continuously audit and 
collect quality control data, and investigate ways to improve 
the safety and efficacy of TPN as a treatment modality. Most teams operate with a standardized protocol that covers patient 
assessment, catheter insertion techniques, solutions used, and 
monitoring functions performed.

Enteral Nutrition

Enteral nutrition is preferable to TPN. The old adage “if the gut works, use it,” applies for several reasons. Ease of admin-
istration, economic considerations, and decreased number of complications are all advantages of enteral feeding over par-
enteral nutrition. Several studies have shown TPN and enteral 
nutrition equally efficacious in achieving nitrogen balance. Pa-

tients with good bowel function should receive enteral feedings. Relative contraindications to enteral feeding include gastroin-
testinal bleeding, diarrhea, and intestinal obstruction. Small-
bore nasal feeding tubes are placed in the stomach, duodenum, 
or jejunum. An abdominal radiograph should be obtained to con-
firm placement. Failure to obtain appropriate studies may result in tube placement in the trachea. Alternatively, a gas-
trostomy or jejunostomy tube could be placed for long-term 
enteral nutrition (Table 9.25). Several products are commer-
cially available (Table 9.26). Enteral tube feedings are routinely 
administered by pump, with either bolus feeds to the stomach 
or continuous feeds to the small bowel, and should be adminis-
tered by pump at 25 to 30 mL/h with gastric residuals evaluated 
every 4 hours. Table 9.27 shows the essential and nonessential 
amino acids.

### TABLE 9.25

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROTOCOL FOR ENTERAL TUBE FEEDING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nasogastric route: Use small-bore, flexible tube (8F preferred); obtain radiograph after placement to confirm position. Use feeding pump for continuous feeding. Begin with full-strength formula at 25–30 mL/h and, if tolerated, increase by 25–30 mL/h at 12-h intervals until desired total volume is reached. Check gastric residuals every 4 h; if greater than 100 mL, hold feeding, and repeat at hourly intervals until residuals are less than 100 mL before resuming feeding. Irrigate with 30–50 mL of water after each residual check or after any medications are given. (If patient requires additional free water, use greater volumes of water for irrigation.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If patient experiences diarrhea or intestinal cramping, slow rate of feeding or decrease concentration of formula.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*When using hypertonic formulas or feeding into the jejunum with a nasojejunal or jejunostomy tube, diluting the formula to one-half or three-quarter strength may improve tolerance initially. The concentration then can be increased after the desired volume is reached.*

### ROUTINE ORDERS

When the patient has fully recovered from the anesthetic and is ready for return to the nursing floor and routine postoperative care, we have found the basic postoperative orders shown in Figure 9.8 to be useful. They are a general outline. This list should be expanded to include the special needs of each postoperative patient.

It is imperative that each patient be evaluated before being transferred from the recovery room. If the patient is not ready for transfer, additional efforts are made to stabilize the patient.
TABLE 9.26

COMMONLY USED ADULT COMMERCIAL ENTERAL FEEDING FORMULAS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category formulation</th>
<th>1.0 kcal/ml</th>
<th>1.2 kcal/ml</th>
<th>1.5 kcal/ml</th>
<th>2.0 kcal/ml</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polymeric balanced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≤16% protein</td>
<td>Ensure, Resource, Isocal, Osmolite, Nutren 1.0</td>
<td>Nutren 1.5, Ensure Plus, Resource Plus, Boost Plus, Comply</td>
<td>Nutren 2.0, Deliver, Magnacal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17%–20% protein</td>
<td>Omolite HN, Isocal HN, Ensure HN, Ultracal, Jevity</td>
<td>Ensure Plus HN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥20% protein</td>
<td>Sustacal, Replete, Promote, Protein XL (22%), Isosource VHN (25%)</td>
<td>TraumaCal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modified-conventional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≤16% protein</td>
<td>Peptamen, Reabilan, Vivonex Plus, Cricicare HN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17%–20% protein</td>
<td>Vital HN, Reabilan HN, Alitra Q</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peptide based</td>
<td>Peptamen (16%), Reabilan (12.5%), Cricicare HN (14%), Peptamen VMP (25%), Reabilan HN (17.5%), Alitra Q (21%), Vital HN (16%), SandSource Peptical (20%)</td>
<td>Crucial (25%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elemental</td>
<td>Tolerex (8%), Vivonex T.E.N. (13%), Vivonex Plus (18%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modified-disease specific (% protein)a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical care</td>
<td>Immun-Aid (32%), Impact (22%), Impact/Fiber (22%)</td>
<td>Perative (20%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucose intolerance</td>
<td>Glytrol (18%), Choice DMD (17%), Glucerna (16.7%), Diabeta Source (20%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic</td>
<td>Travasorb Hepatic (11%), Hepatic-Aid (13%)</td>
<td>Hepatic Aid II (13%)</td>
<td>Nutrahep (11%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malabsorption renal</td>
<td>Travasorb Hepatic (11%), Hepatic-Aid (13%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary</td>
<td>NutriVent (18%), Respator (20%), Polumocare (16.7%)</td>
<td>NutriVent (18%), Respator (20%), Polumocare (16.7%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Modular supplements  | Casec, ProMod | Moducal, Polycose Microlipid, MCT oil |             |             |

MCT, medium-chain triglyceride.

aThis table includes only a partial listing of commercial products.

bManufacturers market these products as disease specific. The author’s use of this designation is intended neither to endorse the manufacturer’s claims of special efficacy in the disease specified nor to deny that the polymeric-balanced or modified-conventional formulas might be appropriate or even superior in these conditions.


or transfer her to an intensive care bed. On transferring, the frequency of physicians’ rounds should be based on the severity of the patient’s condition. All patients should be evaluated on the evening of surgery and appropriate documentation made in the chart. A thorough evaluation of the vital signs, catheter drainage (nasogastric, peritoneal, and Foley), and pulmonary status is required, and abdominal examination is performed. Each physician has a desired protocol for postoperative management. The routine orders outlined in this chapter provide the clinician with a framework to design patient care plans that address the individual patient’s requirements. Laboratory and radiographic evaluation of the postoperative patient also is tailored to the individual patient. Unfortunately, many physicians are predominantly concerned with quantitative test values. However, it is just as important to develop a close rapport with the patient, the patient’s family, and the nursing staff. Only through good communication can the gynecologic surgeon deliver optimum medical care.
### Principles of Anatomy and Perioperative Considerations

#### TABLE 9.27

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Essential</th>
<th>Nonessential</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arginine</td>
<td>Alanine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histidine</td>
<td>Asparaginine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isoleucine</td>
<td>Aspartic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leucine</td>
<td>Cysteine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lysine</td>
<td>Glutamic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methionine</td>
<td>Glutamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylalanine</td>
<td>Glycine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threonine</td>
<td>Proline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tryptophan</td>
<td>Serine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valine</td>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Ten percent of hospital deaths in the United States are secondary to a PE.
- Tumors up-regulate the production of TF and PAI-1, which promotes coagulation and VTE.
- Anti-factor Xa assay can be used to monitor patients who are anticoagulated with LMWHs.
- General anesthesia is associated with a reduction of FRC by approximately 16%.
- Atelectasis occurs in 15% to 20% of patients undergoing abdominal surgery.
- An arterial PO2 of less than 60 mm Hg or an arterial PCO2 of greater than 43 mm Hg indicates significant respiratory compromise in patients without preexisting lung disease.
- Increased CO2 production is a by-product of increased metabolism (i.e., fever, marked agitation, severe sepsis, overfeeding and hypothyroidism).
- During stress, urinary nitrogen levels may increase greater than or equal to 20 g in 24 hours, corresponding to a loss of 600 g of hydrated body protein.

#### BASIC POSTOPERATIVE ORDERS

- **Patient’s Name:**
  1. Admit to Unit #________.
  2. Diagnosis: ________.
  3. Allergies: ________.
  4. Condition: ________.
  5a. Vital signs: ________.
     - q 15 minutes until stable
     - q 2 hours for 24 hours
  5b. Notify Nurse Offsite (NOS) if
     - BP < 90/60, > 100/100
     - Pulse < 60, > 120
     - Temp > 38.0°C
  6. Activity: ________.
  7. Diet: ________.
  8. Intravenous fluids: ________.
  9. Incentive spirometry q 2 hours while awake
  10. Encourage deep breathing
  11. Drains: ________.
     - Nasogastric
     - Percutaneous
  12. Fluid intake and output chart
  13. Pain medication: Specify
     - (a) route of administration
     - (b) dosage
  14. Antibiotic medication: Specify
     - (a) route of administration
     - (b) dosage
  15. Antibiotics
  16. Venous thrombosis prophylaxis
  17. Other medications
  18. Catheterize q 6 hours, or sooner, if bladder is full and patient unable to void.

**FIGURE 9.8.** Sample of basic postoperative orders.
Postanesthesia and Postoperative Care

159

Bibliography


Postanesthesia and Postoperative Care


WATER, ELECTROLYTE, AND ACID–BASE METABOLISM

CHAPTER 10 WATER, ELECTROLYTE, AND ACID–BASE METABOLISM

JACK B. BASIL

DEFINITIONS

Anion gap—A concept used to estimate anion and cation levels in serum and conditions that influence them. It is estimated by subtraction of the sum of the chloride and bicarbonate anions from the sodium cations \([\text{Na}^+ - (\text{Cl}^- + \text{HCO}_3^-)]\).

Extracellular fluid (ECF)—The compartment outside of cells that contains approximately one third of the volume of body water.

Henderson-Hasselbach—An equation for stating the expression for the dissociation constant of an acid. This equation may be expressed in terms of the bicarbonate, where

\[ \text{pH} = 6.1 + \log \text{HCO}_3^- / \alpha \text{[HCO}_3^-] \]

where \( \alpha = 0.03 \text{mM/L/mm Hg at } 38^\circ \text{C} \).

At normal blood pH 7.4, the ratio of \( \text{HCO}_3^- / \alpha \text{[HCO}_3^-] \) is 20 to 1.

Metabolic acidosis—Acidosis resulting from increase in acids other than carbonic acid.

Metabolic alkalosis—Alkalosis in which plasma bicarbonate is increased and there is a rise in plasma concentration of CO2.

Oncotic pressure—The total influence of the protein on the osmotic activity of plasma water.

Osmotic pressure—The pressure that develops when two solutions of different concentrations are separated by a semipermeable membrane.

Respiratory acidosis—Acidosis secondary to pulmonary insufficiency resulting in retention of carbon dioxide.

Respiratory alkalosis—Alkalosis with an acute reduction in the partial pressure of carbon dioxide. Proper management of fluids and electrolytes in the gynecologic surgical patient is of extreme importance. Gynecological surgical patients can differ in age, baseline nutritional status, and in the complexity of medical problems that they possess. The stresses of surgery and the bodies’ complex responses to that stress need to be understood to best care for these patients. The tendency to standardize postoperative care for all patients should be avoided.

The human body is about 60% water by weight (Table 10.1). An exchange of approximately 2 liters of fluid per day exists normally. This is a balance between an intake of 1,500 mL orally and 500 mL from foodstuffs, and an output of between 750 and 1,300 mL of urine, 500 mL in insensible losses, and 300 mL in stool. Thus, total body water, body weight, osmolality, and oncotic pressure are critical concepts if one is to understand water metabolism. Comprehension of renal physiology, electrolytes, and acid-base metabolism is also important. This chapter discusses these concepts in detail.

RENAI PHYSIOLOGY

Blood enters the glomerulus by way of afferent arterioles. The filtration process begins with the filtrate passing into Bowman’s space. Filtration depends on hydrostatic pressure, which forces the filtrate out of the capillary, and oncotic pressure, which holds the filtrate in. The oncotic pressure in the glomerulus usually is negligible, resulting in net flow into Bowman’s space.

The filtrate then passes into the proximal tubule, where an isosmotic solution of sodium bicarbonate, glucose, water, and amino acids is absorbed. The filtrate (urine) enters the descending portion of the loop of Henle, where it becomes hypertonic secondary to absorption of water into the interstitium. As urine flows up the ascending limb, sodium and chloride are absorbed, making the urine more dilute. Urine then enters the distal convoluted tubule, where active absorption of sodium occurs with exchange of potassium. Under the control of antidiuretic hormone (ADH), water is absorbed from the urine (in the collecting tubule and duct) into the interstitium, causing concentration of urine. Hydrogen ions secreted from tubular cells into the lumens of the tubules help maintain pH balance. Carbonic anhydrase in the renal tubular cells causes the transformation of water and carbon dioxide to bicarbonate and free hydrogen ion (Fig. 10.3). In acidic states, bicarbonate is reabsorbed into the bloodstream, and hydrogen ions are excreted into the tubular lumen. In alkalotic states, the opposite occurs.

OSMOTIC FORCES (OSMOLALITY AND OSMOTIC PRESSURE)

If a solute is added to pure water, then the presence of the second molecular species interferes with the normal activity of water molecules. As a result, water diffuses more slowly through the solution, and the solution has a higher boiling point and lower freezing point. These effects of solute on the colligative properties of water are related principally to the number of molecules present per unit volume rather than to the specific kind of molecule or the total weight of solute present. The determination of osmolality is a measure of the number of molecules in the solution that is effective in reducing the concentration and, therefore, the chemical properties of water. The slower rate of diffusion of water caused by the solute accounts for the fact that water diffuses from zones of low osmolality (high water concentration) to zones of high osmolality (low water concentration). The hydrostatic pressure that must be applied...
FIGURE 10.1. Passive model of the concentrating mechanism in the inner medulla. Arrows indicate movements of water (H₂O), sodium chloride (NaCl), and urea between the tubule and the interstitium. In the vaso estra, there is perfect exchange between the two limbs. [From: Jamison RL, Buerkert J. The urinary concentrating mechanism. N Engl J Med 1976;295:1039, with permission.]

TABLE 10.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Total body water (%)</th>
<th>Intracellular water</th>
<th>Extracellular water*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total body water (%)</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body weight (%)</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actual volume in a 60-kg person (L)</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osmolality (mOsm/kg of water)</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The intravascular water space is about one fourth of the extracellular water space. The intravascular volume is substantially larger than the extracellular water space because of the additional space occupied by blood cell and plasma proteins. The intravascular volume (blood volume) is about 7% of body weight or slightly less than 4 L in a 60-kg person.

Just as crystalloids in solution, such as Na⁺, Cl⁻, and urea, reduce the concentration of water, so do colloids, such as albumin and globulins. In biologic solutions, however, the contribution of proteins in lowering the effective concentration of water is far less than that of crystalloids, because there are far fewer protein molecules than crystalloid molecules. One gram of albumin (molecular weight [MW] 68,000) theoretically yields 0.015 mOsm ([(1,000 mg/68,000 mg mOsm/L) × 1 mOsm mmol/L], whereas 1 g of sodium chloride theoretically yields 34.3 mOsm [(1,000 mg/58.5 mg mmol/L) × 2 mOsm mmol/L]. Thus, gram for gram, sodium chloride is theoretically 2,100 times more effective in increasing the osmolality of a solution than albumin. The oncotic pressure of solutions is expressed in millimeters of mercury (mm Hg) for the same reason that osmotic forces are expressed in units of hydrostatic pressure.

Although oncotic forces are small in relation to osmotic forces, they are important in biologic systems because plasma proteins are selectively retained in the intravascular space. Thus, the effective concentration of water and electrolytes is selectively reduced in the intravascular space compared with the interstitial space. All other things being equal, this results in diffusion of water and electrolytes from the interstitial to the intravascular space. At the capillary level, however, where these oncotic forces are at work, the capillary blood hydrostatic pressure opposes an inward diffusion of water and electrolytes. At the arterial end of the capillary, the effect of capillary blood hydrostatic pressure (1–35 mm Hg) pushing fluid outward is greater than the effect of capillary blood oncotic pressure (equivalent to 25 mm Hg), causing outward diffusion of each of these solutes to plasma osmolality can be directly determined in the clinical laboratory by measuring freezing point depression or by calculation. Calculation of plasma osmolality (P_{\text{osm}}) from the known concentration of solutes is as follows:

\[
P_{\text{osm}} = 2 \times [\text{Na}] \text{ mEq/L} + \text{glucose mmol/L} + \text{urea mmol/L} + \text{osmolar concentration of other solutes}
\]

For normal plasma:

\[
P_{\text{osm}} = 2 \times 140 \text{ mEq/L}
\]

\[
+ (900 \text{ mg glucose/L}/180 \text{ mg glucose/mOsm}) + \text{other solutes (negligible in normal plasma)} = 290 \text{ mOsm/L}
\]

Most laboratories use different units, and the formula can be shortened to:

\[
P_{\text{osm}} = 2 \times [\text{Na}] \text{ (mEq/L)} + \text{glucose (mg/dL)}
\]

\[
+ \text{BUN (mg/dL)} \times 8 = \text{mOsm/L}
\]

The osmolalities of intracellular fluid (ICF) and ECF are equal because cell walls (except for the collecting duct of the kidney) are always freely permeable to water. Potassium is the major intracellular cation and is found in concentrations of about 150 mEq/L of cell water. Thus, potassium and its accompanying anions—principally phosphate and protein—account for almost all of the osmolality of ICF. In health, Na⁺ is excluded from cells and K⁺ is maintained in cells in most cases because of the cellular Na⁺–K⁺ pump.

**ONCOTIC FORCES (ONCOTIC PRESSURE AND COLLOID OSMOTIC PRESSURE)**

Water, Electrolyte, and Acid–Base Metabolism 163
of fluid. Therefore, net outward movement of water and electrolytes occurs. At the venous end of the capillary, the capillary blood oncotic pressure (equivalent to ~23 mm Hg) exceeds capillary blood hydrostatic pressure (now ~15 mm Hg); therefore, net inward movement of water and electrolytes occurs. In health, the rate of fluid outflow from the arterial end of the capillary equals the rate of uptake at the venous end of the capillary.

**REGULATION OF WATER AND ELECTROLYTE DISTRIBUTION BETWEEN INTRACELLULAR AND EXTRACELLULAR COMPARTMENTS**

Osmotic forces regulate the distribution of water between ECF and ICF. Under all steady-state conditions, ECF osmolality equals ICF osmolality. The implications of these principles when water or solute is added to body fluids are discussed in the following sections.

**Effect of Addition of Water on Extracellular and Intracellular Fluid Volume and Osmolality**

The ingestion of water or the intravenous (IV) infusion of water, as a 5% solution of dextrose in water (D5W), results in expansion of all body fluid compartments. Because the osmolality of all body compartments is the same, the water is distributed in the body water compartments in proportion to their size. For example, 1,000 mL of D5W is infused into a normal 60-kg person with a plasma osmolality of 290 mOsm/L, an ECF of 25% of the body water, and a serum sodium level of 140 mEq/L. Assuming that no excretion of electrolytes occurs, the change in volume of the body water compartments (Table 10.1) when complete mixing has occurred is as follows: The ICF is increased by about 666 mL, and the ECF is increased by about 333 mL. The intravascular water, which is 25% of the ECF, is increased by only about 83 mL. Plasma osmolality decreases by about 2%. This is sufficient to completely suppress ADH release and cause a maximum water diuresis in a normal person.

**Effect of Addition of Solute on Extracellular and Intracellular Fluid Volume and Osmolality**

If solutes that penetrate cells slowly (e.g., glucose) are ingested, infused, or actively excluded from cells (e.g., Na+), water is obligated to remain with these solutes in the ECF so that conditions of osmotic equilibrium between ECF and ICF are met. If these solutes are given in isotonic solutions (i.e., if the osmolality of the solution equals that of body fluids), conditions of osmotic equilibrium are met without shifts of water between ECF and ICF. Thus, the ECF is selectively expanded. On the other hand, if these solutes are ingested without water or given as hypertonic solutions, ECF osmolality rises as these solutes move into the ECF, and water diffuses from ICF to ECF until osmolality in the two compartments is equal. Thus, the ECF expands as the ICF contracts.

Although certain other solutes, such as urea and ethyl alcohol, increase plasma osmolality, they do not affect the steady-state distribution of water between ECF and ICF because these solutes readily penetrate cells and rapidly distribute throughout the body water space. Nevertheless, in non-steady states, such as rapid removal of urea by hemodialysis, transient redistribution of water between ECF and ICF does occur. Such shifts of fluid in brain tissue can lead to significant changes in brain function.

**Regulation of Water and Electrolyte Distribution between the Intravascular and Interstitial Compartments**

As discussed, the regulation of fluid and electrolyte transfer at the capillary level is determined by the balance among oncotic forces, hydrostatic forces, and capillary permeability to plasma proteins. These forces can be perturbed in the following ways. Hyposalbuminemia results in a fall in plasma oncotic pressure, a rise in the effective concentration of water and electrolytes into the intravascular space, and, all other things being equal, net movement of water and electrolytes into the interstitial space. As a consequence, intravascular volume (IVV) decreases, and the kidney responds by retaining sodium and water in an attempt to restore IVV to normal. If the hyposalbuminemia is sufficiently pronounced (≤2.3 g/dL) and the expected renal retention of sodium and water occurs, edema develops before a new equilibrium between outflux and influx of fluid at the capillary level is achieved.

The sequence of events that leads to edema formation is depicted in Figure 10.2. The stimulus to renal sodium and water retention in hyposalbuminemia is a decrease in IVV. In many hyposalbuminemic patients, the retention of sodium and water does not completely restore IVV to normal. In fact, in some patients with marked hyposalbuminemia, massive edema (expansion of the interstitial volume) may be present, yet the IVV may be dangerously low, even to the point of shock. Marked edema also can develop in the presence of extensive lymphatic obstruction, distal to a venous obstruction, or because of ischemic injury. In these situations, the edema sediment accumulates at such a rate that a serious decrease in IVV becomes clinically evident. Once the edema in such patients is established, the IVV and the renal, endocrine, and hemodynamic factors regulating the IVV usually return to normal. Thus, if diuretic therapy is used to reduce the lymphedema, it can do so, but IVV is decreased below normal, possibly adversely affecting hemodynamics.

![FIGURE 10.2. Sequence of events leading to edema formation in hyposalbuminemia.](image)
REGULATION OF WATER AND SODIUM EXCHANGES WITH THE EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT

The following discussion focuses on the normal response of the kidney to perturbations of sodium or water balance because an examination of the state of renal sodium and water excretion often is key to the understanding of the pathogenesis of a disorder of fluid and electrolyte balance and usually provides the basis for planning appropriate fluid and electrolyte therapy.

Water Balance

Water balance equals water intake minus water output. Sometimes it is assumed that the measurement of fluid intake and output, as it is performed clinically, is a measure of water balance. The difficulty in assessing the state of water balance based on the measurement of intake and output is indicated in Table 10.2, which lists all the sources of intake and output of water from the body. It is evident from this table that only a few of the important components of water balance are included in the measurement of intake and output. For this reason, some serious disturbances of water balance may not be reflected in the intake and output record. Fortunately, the accurate measurement of water balance does not require that special techniques be used to measure the various sources of intake and output of water from the body. Instead, in most clinical situations, changes in water balance can be assessed simply by followings changes in body weight. In the management of a compromised postoperative patient, it is imperative to follow daily weights.

In most clinical situations, changes in water balance occur secondarily to changes in sodium balance. For example, in the pathogenesis of fluid retention in congestive heart failure (CHF), the primary event is positive sodium balance because of a decreased renal capacity to excrete sodium. The ingested water is retained as a secondary event to maintain plasma osmolality at some level set by the thirst mechanism. If sodium had not been retained, water would not have been retained. For this reason, the key to preventing fluid retention in such patients is the regulation of sodium intake and output, not water intake.

Less commonly, a change in water balance is the primary event, and changes in sodium balance are secondary to the change in water balance. To recognize such situations, it is necessary to understand the normal renal response to primary changes in water balance. Because the capacity of the kidneys to concentrate and dilute the urine is commonly evaluated by measurement of the specific gravity of urine, it is first necessary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Components of Water Balance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sources</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water intake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral intake of liquids, intravenous fluids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water in solid food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water absorbed by way of respiratory tract during use of gases hydrated by ultrasonic nebulizer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensible losses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other sensible losses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastric drainage, transudation from skin, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insensible losses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaporation from skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaporation from lung surfaces</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Water balance = water intake – water output.*
to consider the relation between urine osmolality (U_{osm}) and specific gravity.

\[
\text{specific gravity} = \frac{W_s}{W_{H_2O}}
\]

where:

\[W_{H_2O} = \text{weight of an equal volume of water; and}
\]
\[W_s = \text{weight of the solution.}
\]

On the average, in normal urine, a linear relation exists between urine osmolality and specific gravity, as shown in Figure 10.3. This relation is disturbed when molecules that have molecular weights much higher than the predominant normal urinary solutes are excreted in large amounts. Thus, in the presence of large numbers of molecules with high molecular weight, specific gravity is no longer a reliable index of osmolality. The normal, predominant urinary solutes are sodium, potassium, chloride ions, and urea, which have molecular weights of 23, 39, 35, and 60, respectively. The commonly encountered urinary solutes that cause large increases in specific gravity but small increases in urine osmolality are glucose (MW 180), mannitol (MW 181), dextran (MW 20,000 to 40,000), iodine-containing radiographic contrast (MW 600 to 800), and protein (but only with heavy proteinuria). If these substances are absent, urine specific gravity can be relied on to reflect urine osmolality. If these substances are present, urine osmolality must be measured directly to determine the true extent to which the kidneys have concentrated or diluted the urine.

Normal Renal Response to Water Deprivation

The permeability of the collecting duct to water is markedly increased when ADH is released. Thus, as the tubular fluid enters the collecting duct, water diffuses from the collecting duct into the hypertonic medullary interstitium, resulting in a marked reduction in urine volume and a marked increase in urine osmolality. In health, the osmolality of the medullary interstitium is 900 to 1,200 mOsm/L. Thus, in states of maximum water conservation, the urine osmolality approaches 900 to 1,200 mOsm/L. In such circumstances, urine flow rates approach 0.5% or less of the normal glomerular filtration rate (GFR), resulting in urine flow rates of about 20 mL/h, or 500 mL/day, when kidneys function normally. Elderly people are unable to concentrate their urine, with maximum osmolalities among the aged often below 800 mOsm/L.

FIGURE 10.3. Approximate relation between specific gravity and osmolality in normal urine.

Normal Response to Water Loading

The administration of water or hypotonic solutions results in a reduction in the osmolality of body fluids. A 2% reduction in plasma osmolality (e.g., plasma osmolality from 290 to 284 mOsm/L, serum sodium from 140 to 137 mEq/L) is sufficient to completely suppress ADH secretion. In an average, healthy adult, the ingestion of 1 L of water is more than enough to elicit such a response and to cause the formation of a maximally dilute urine. When ADH secretion is inhibited and renal function is normal, urine specific gravity usually is less than 1.005, urine osmolality is less than 100 mOsm/kg, and urine flow rates approach 13% to 20% of the GFR (i.e., 10 to 15 mL/min, 600 to 900 mL/h). Elderly patients also cannot dilute their urine as well as young persons, with the minimum osmolality being 200 mOsm/L or slightly higher.

Sodium Balance

Sodium balance equals sodium intake minus sodium output. The components of sodium balance are shown in Table 10.3. From this table, it is evident that the kidneys play the central role in the regulation of sodium balance by adjusting sodium excretion to match sodium intake. Unless there are abnormal losses of sodium through the skin or gut, sodium balance can be assessed simply by determining dietary sodium intake and by measuring the urinary excretion of sodium. These measurements usually are not necessary because if the patient has free access to water and an intact thirst mechanism, water is ingested and retained in proportion to the level of sodium retention. Thus, changes in sodium balance are reflected by changes in body weight. Occasionally, the measurement of urine sodium concentration is useful. For example, when body weight and serum sodium concentration are stable and there are no abnormal extrarenal sodium losses, the measurement of the 24-hour urinary excretion of sodium accurately reflects sodium intake.

Normal Renal Response to Sodium Restriction and Sodium Loading

When sodium intake is abruptly reduced from a normal level (e.g., 170 mEq/24 h) to a very low level (e.g., 10 mEq/24 h), it takes 3 or 4 days until maximal renal sodium conservation occurs. During this period of adjustment, renal sodium output exceeds intake, and water is lost with sodium in isosmotic proportion from the ECF. One to two liters of ECF usually is lost in the change from a normal to a very low sodium intake. Thus, normal people come into balance on a low sodium intake, but the ECF volume then may be regulated at a suboptimal level. This is potentially dangerous because the patient may be vulnerable to the potential hypotensive effects of anesthesia or additional volume losses that can occur during surgery.

The normal renal response to salt loading is analogous to that of salt restriction in that it takes several days for the renal excretion of sodium to increase in response to the higher level of sodium intake. Thus, when balance is finally achieved, ECF volume is being regulated at an expanded level, which can be
effective IVV is greater than normal. That is, because of the stance, the actual IVV could be less than normal, whereas the venous pressure (CVP) and cardiac output. Under this circumstance can develop, resulting in an abnormal increase in central example, in acute metabolic acidosis, increased venoconstriction states, the actual IVV is different from the effective IVV. For change in direct proportion, in a number of important clinical situations and can be expected to maintain an optimal cardiac output and thus maximize tissue perfusion. Although the actual IVV and the effective IVV are the same in many clinical situations and can be expected to change in direct proportion, in a number of important clinical states, the actual IVV is different from the effective IVV. For example, in acute metabolic acidosis, increased venoconstriction can develop, resulting in an abnormal increase in central venous pressure (CVP) and cardiac output. Under this circumstance, the actual IVV could be less than normal, whereas the effective IVV is greater than normal. That is, because of the increase in venous tone, an IVV that is lower than normal can maintain a normal effective IVV.

Acute changes in venous tone induced by drugs (e.g., morphine, furosemide, norepinephrine), changes in acid-base status, and the presence of bacterial endotoxin also can disrupt the normal relation between the actual IVV and the effective IVV.

The most reliable clinical means for assessing the status of the effective IVV is the pulmonary capillary wedge pressure. This measurement is an estimate of the pulmonary capillary pressure, which is a measure of the filling pressure of the left ventricle. Factors that increase pulmonary capillary wedge pressure tend to increase cardiac output by increasing capillary outflux. When effective IVV is considered within these constraints, it becomes clear that under virtually any physiologic or pathophysiologic circumstance, an optimal effective IVV is one that results in a pulmonary capillary wedge pressure that is high enough to promote optimal cardiac output but low enough to prevent pulmonary edema.

Fortunately, in most clinical situations, it is not necessary to resort to measuring pulmonary wedge pressure to assess whether a disturbance of ECF composition is associated with an effective IVV that is abnormally high, abnormally low, or normal. Instead, an accurate assessment of the effective IVV usually can be made by a careful clinical assessment using the criteria listed in Table 10.4. This table lists the bedside and laboratory means to assess volume status according to whether the findings are consistent with an effective IVV that is less than normal or an effective IVV that is nearly normal or expanded.

Also shown in Table 10.4 are the conditions under which the given means for evaluating the IVV must be qualified (i.e., the conditions that may render the meaning of the finding indeterminate with respect to the evaluation of IVV). For example, the relation between an increase in weight and a change in IVV is rendered indeterminate if, at the same time, the patient has additional fluids are administered.

**COMPONENTS OF SODIUM BALANCE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sources</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sodium intake</td>
<td>Normal adults intake of salt is about 10 g NaCl daily (~170 mEq Na⁺ and Cl⁻ or 4 g Na⁺). Restricted dietary intake usually is 2 g sodium (87 mEq NaCl) daily. 1,000 mL normal saline (0.9% saline) = 9 g NaCl = 135 mEq Na⁺ = 135 mEq Cl⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parenteral Sodium output</td>
<td>Variable. In health, reflects intake, since virtually all ingested NaCl is excreted in urine. Negligible except with sweating. Sweat contains 50–60 mEq Na⁺/L and several liters of sweat may be lost each day in hot environments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urine</td>
<td>Normally formed stool Na⁺ ~1 mEq/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrheal stool Secretory</td>
<td>Na⁺ ~130 mEq/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretory (infectious)</td>
<td>Normal adults intake of salt is about 10 g NaCl daily (~170 mEq Na⁺ and Cl⁻ or 4 g Na⁺). Restricted dietary intake usually is 2 g sodium (87 mEq NaCl) daily. 1,000 mL normal saline (0.9% saline) = 9 g NaCl = 135 mEq Na⁺ = 135 mEq Cl⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomitus or gastric aspirate</td>
<td>Na⁺ ~30 mEq/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normally acid gastric juice</td>
<td>Na⁺ ~40 mEq/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Achlorhydria</td>
<td>Na⁺ ~130 mEq/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All other secretions ( bile,</td>
<td>Na⁺ ~130 mEq/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pancreatic juice, small bowel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secretions)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Sodium balance = sodium intake – sodium output.

**CLINICAL ASSESSMENT OF DISORDERS OF WATER AND ELECTROLYTE METABOLISM**

Disorders of ECF electrolyte composition may be detected by measurement of the serum electrolyte concentrations. Identification of the process (or processes) behind the disturbance of electrolyte composition and the planning of subsequent therapy are critically dependent on the clinician’s ability to accurately assess whether the disturbance in ECF electrolyte composition is associated with volume expansion, volume contraction, or a normal volume.

In the evaluation of a patient's ECF volume status, it must be kept clearly in mind that the critical volume is that portion of the IVV that is effective in determining the filling pressure of the ventricles and, hence, the cardiac output. Hereafter, this theoretic volume is referred to as the effective IVV.

In light of this definition, the most effective IVV is that which maintains an optimal cardiac output and thus maximizes tissue perfusion. Although the actual IVV and the effective IVV are the same in many clinical situations and can be expected to change in direct proportion, in a number of important clinical states, the actual IVV is different from the effective IVV. For example, in acute metabolic acidosis, increased venoconstriction can develop, resulting in an abnormal increase in central venous pressure (CVP) and cardiac output. Under this circumstance, the actual IVV could be less than normal, whereas the effective IVV is greater than normal. That is, because of the
TABLE 10.4

ASSESSMENT OF EFFECTIVE INTRAVASCULAR VOLUME (IVV)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suggestive evidence</th>
<th>Qualifying conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Significantly decreased effective IVV</td>
<td>Difficulty in establishing by history whether the magnitude of loss or deprivation is sufficient to result in negative balance of water and electrolytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History of fluid and electrolyte deprivation or loss (e.g., vomiting, diarrhea)</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decrease in body weight below normal not explained by inadequate caloric intake</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure less than usual for patient with orthostatic hypotension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elevated serum creatinine associated with concentrated urine (Uosm/Posm &gt; 1.5), and Na⁺ conservation: (UNa &lt; 20 mEq/L) or %E/FNa &lt; 1%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low central venous pressure or pulmonary capillary wedge pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased tissue turgor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hematocrit above normal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nearly normal or expanded effective IVV (i.e., absence of significant intravascular volume depletion)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension with patient in sitting or standing position and no orthostatic fall in blood pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence of cardiac failure: Left ventricular failure: audible third heart sound or pulmonary edema</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right ventricular failure: peripheral edema with increased venous pressure (neck vein distention, increased intravenous pressure)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increase in weight above normal not explained by increased caloric intake</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased central venous pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased pulmonary capillary wedge pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edema, ascites, or pleural effusion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hematocrit less than normal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Qualifying conditions are circumstances that can render the meaning of the finding indeterminate with respect to the evaluation of the effective IVV.

---

**DATABASE FOR ASSESSMENT OF EFFECTIVE INTRAVASCULAR VOLUME**

**Body Weight**

All patients should be weighed on admission to the hospital and then periodically during their hospital stay. In patients undergoing surgery, or in whom problems in fluid and electrolyte balance are anticipated, weight must be measured daily. Alterations in body weight are the result of changes in body water content plus solid tissue content (fat, protein, bone). Gains or losses of solid tissue are almost always related to changes in caloric intake and seldom exceed 0.25 kg/24 h. For example, a patient who takes no calories for 24 hours is forced to develop a third space, as in bowel obstruction. In this instance, the entire weight gain could be caused by the accumulation of fluid outside the IVV. Thus, the finding of weight gain in this setting cannot be used as evidence of an increase in effective IVV.

I suggest that the evaluation of effective IVV, using the criteria in Table 10.4, be approached in the following manner. First, whenever a finding can be significantly qualified, it should not be used in arriving at a final decision. Second, as many independent means as practical should be used to assess the effective IVV to minimize the effect of possible error on the final decision. The greater the number of independent, unqualified findings that agree in favor of a given clinical decision, the more likely it is that the decision is correct. If such a systematic approach to clinical decision making is used, it should be possible to arrive at an accurate evaluation of volume status in most circumstances.
to consume her endogenous stores of fat and protein to meet the energy requirements for continued life. The complete oxidation of fat yields 9 cal/g, and protein yields 4 cal/g. It can be readily calculated that the complete oxidation of 0.25 kg of solid tissue (an approximation, a mixture of about 87% fat, 13% protein) yields enough calories to meet basal daily energy needs. Thus changes in weight exceeding 0.25 kg/day are almost always attributable to changes in water balance. Although the relation between body weight and effective IVV can be variable, usually the relation between changes in body weight and IVV can be correctly assessed by the application of the two guidelines. The first is that a decrease in body weight below normal (for the patient), and not explained on the basis of inadequate caloric intake, can be assumed to be accompanied by a decrease in IVV. The second is that an increase in body weight above normal not explained by increased nutrition can be assumed to be accompanied by an increase in IVV except when the weight gain develops in association with the following conditions.

- Significant hypoalbuminemia: serum albumin less than 3 g/dL.
- Venous obstruction or congestion
- Development of third spaces (e.g., obstructed or ischemic bowel)

Under these three general conditions, an increase in body weight may not reflect an increase in the effective IVV.

### Renal Function

Creatinine, a byproduct of muscle energy metabolism, is produced at a constant rate that is related to muscle mass. Normal men produce 20 to 25 mg/kg (ideal body weight)/24 h, and women produce 15 to 20 mg/kg (ideal body weight)/24 h. Nearly all of the creatinine produced is excreted by glomerular filtration. Therefore, changes in the concentration of serum creatinine reflect changes in the GFR, and the clearance of creatinine (Ccr) is an index of the GFR.

\[
\text{Ccr} = \frac{\text{Ucr} \times \text{V}}{\text{Scr}} = \text{GFR}
\]

where:
- \( \text{Scr} \) = serum creatinine,
- \( \text{Ucr} \) = urinary creatinine concentration;
- \( \text{V} \) = urine volume per unit time.

Thus, by rearranging this equation:

\[
\text{Scr} = \frac{\text{Ucr} \times \text{V}}{\text{Ccr}}
\]

Normally, as muscle mass (which is proportional to \( \text{Ucr} \times \text{V} \)) increases, the GFR increases proportionately less. Therefore, on the average, children have lower serum creatinine values than do adults, and large adults have higher serum creatinine levels than do small adults. Because of these considerations, a single range of serum creatinine values cannot be applied on the average, children have lower serum creatinine values than do adults, and large adults have higher serum creatinine levels than do small adults. Because of these considerations, a single range of serum creatinine values cannot be applied to everyone. The suggested normal ranges of serum creatinine for adults, according to ideal body weight, are shown in Table 10.5. Creatinine clearance for men can be estimated, using the formula derived by Cockcroft and Gault, from the patient’s age, body weight, and serum creatinine level as follows.

\[
\text{Ccr in mL/min} = \left( \frac{140 - \text{age}}{72} \times \text{weight in kg} \right) - 0.85 \times \text{Scr in mg/dL}
\]

This result multiplied by 0.85 provides a better estimate for women because of their relatively smaller muscle mass. Azotemia is arbitrarily defined here as a serum creatinine level greater than the upper limit of normal for body size, as shown in Table 10.5. The blood urea nitrogen level is influenced by dietary protein intake, tissue metabolism, and urine flow rate, in addition to GFR, and should not be relied on to assess changes in GFR.

The following guidelines are suggested for the evaluation of the IVV in light of the state of renal function. The azotemia can be assumed to result from decreased renal perfusion if the serum creatinine level is elevated, the urine is concentrated (\( \text{U}_{\text{osm}}/\text{P}_{\text{osm}} \) ratio greater than 1.5; specific gravity higher than 1.015), and renal sodium conservation is present (\( \text{UNa} \), level >20 mEq/L) on a random and untimed urine sample. The fractional excretion of sodium is based on serum and random urine concentrations of sodium and creatinine. If below 1%, azotemia can be attributed to decreased IVV, unless the patient has severe liver or cardiac disease.

\[
\%E = \frac{\text{U}_{\text{Na}}}{\text{Scr}} \times 100
\]

where:
- \( \text{S}_{\text{Na}} \) = serum sodium concentration in mg/dL;
- \( \text{S}_{\text{Na}} \) = serum Na+ concentration in mEq/L;
- \( \text{U}_{\text{Na}} \) = urine sodium concentration in mEq/L;
- \( \text{U}_{\text{cr}} \) = urinary Na+ concentration in mEq/L.

If severe cardiac failure and severe liver failure (hepatorenal syndrome) can be excluded, the decreased renal perfusion can be assumed to be caused by a decreased effective IVV.

### Edema, Ascites, and Pleural Effusion

Effective IVV is increased when edema, pleural effusion, or ascites occurs in the setting of CHF. Increased effective IVV cannot be assumed in the presence of edema, ascites, or pleural effusion if there is significant hypoalbuminemia or venous obstruction, or if the accumulation of fluid is in a relatively small area of capillary injury (e.g., pleural effusion caused by pulmonary infarction).

### Tissue Turgor

Tissue turgor is a function of the elasticity of the solid components of tissue and the degree of distention of the tissues by interstitial fluid. If tissue is depleted of interstitial fluid, it becomes less elastic (i.e., it less readily returns to its original shape after being deformed). Skin turgor is best assessed on the forehead and anterior chest. In patients less than 50 years of age, the turgor of the dorsum of the hand also can be used. In older patients, the elasticity of the solid components of tissue

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Normal Relation Between Body Size and Serum Creatinine Level</th>
<th>Ideal body weight</th>
<th>Expected range of serum creatinine level (mg/dL)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;33 kg (72 lb)</td>
<td>0.6–1.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35–40 kg (76–88 lb)</td>
<td>0.8–1.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;60 kg (175 lb)</td>
<td>1.0–1.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Autoanalyzer picric acid method.*

---

**TABLE 10.5**

**NORMAL RELATION BETWEEN BODY SIZE AND SERUM CREATININE LEVEL**

---

**Water, Electrolyte, and Acid–Base Metabolism**

---

**169**
is decreased, and the turgor of the skin becomes unreliable in interpreting changes in interstitial volume.

Central Venous Pressure

The measurement of CVP is a relatively simple but useful means for monitoring cardiac function and cardiovascular status. For the valid measurement of CVP, the catheter must be placed in the large intrathoracic vena cava near the right atrium (as assessed by chest radiograph), and the catheter must be patent (as assessed by the cyclic variation of CVP with ventilatory movements) to decrease CVP during inspiration, increased CVP during expiration).

In normal adults, CVP is about 5 to 12 cm H₂O. CVPs below 3 cm H₂O are commonly seen in children and young adults who have no evidence of a decreased effective IVV. In older adults and elderly persons, CVP of less than 3 cm H₂O can be assumed to reflect a significant decrease in effective IVV.

CVP is an index of the filling pressure of the right atrium, which, in turn, is an index of the filling pressure of the right ventricle. In uncomplicated circumstances, expansion of the IVV results in increased CVP, whereas contraction of the IVV results in decreased CVP. CVP cannot be used to assess the adequacy of left ventricular function in patients in whom left ventricular function may be impaired relative to right ventricular function. CVP also is unreliable when lung disease is present, because it is normally elevated. In such patients, left ventricular function can be monitored by observing for signs and symptoms of left ventricular failure (dyspnea, development of an audible third heart sound, or pulmonary edema), or by direct measurement of pulmonary capillary wedge pressure. Under normal circumstances, the pulmonary capillary wedge pressure is about equal to the CVP plus 6 mm Hg.

Pulmonary Capillary Wedge Pressure

Technical refinements of the Swan-Ganz catheter make it possible to measure pulmonary artery systolic and diastolic pressures, CVP, pulmonary wedge pressure, and cardiac output using the thermodilution technique with the same catheter. This permits a definitive assessment of the volume status of the patient, because it can be determined whether the cardiac output is appropriate for a given pulmonary wedge pressure. Specific guidelines for the interpretation of the relation between pulmonary wedge pressure and cardiac output are discussed in the following sections.

Patients with Normal Volume Status

Pulmonary wedge pressure can be expected to be between 8 and 12 mm Hg in a patient with a normal cardiopulmonary system and a normal effective IVV. Cardiac output is normal. Pulmonary wedge pressure can be less than 8 mm Hg without indicating volume contraction; in this circumstance, the cardiac output is normal despite the unusually low pulmonary wedge pressure.

Patients Who Are Volume Contracted

Patients who have a normal cardiopulmonary system but who are significantly volume depleted usually have a pulmonary wedge pressure below 8 mm Hg and their cardiac output is less than normal. In patients with chronic pulmonary hypertension (e.g., those with chronic left ventricular failure), a higher than normal pulmonary wedge pressure is needed to drive a satisfactory cardiac output. Thus, in such patients, pulmonary wedge pressure can be above the normal range but be inappropriately low for the patient. This situation can be identified by showing that: (a) cardiac output is less than normal, despite the elevated pulmonary wedge pressure; (b) volume infusion causes an increase in cardiac output toward a more favorable range; and (c) despite further increase in pulmonary wedge pressure with volume expansion, pulmonary function does not deteriorate. (Pao₂ does not decrease, Paco₂ does not increase, and pulmonary compliance does not worsen.)

Patients Who Are Volume Expanded

In patients with a normal cardiopulmonary system, pulmonary wedge pressure usually is above 18 mm Hg when volume expansion is substantial. Cardiac output is above normal. If cardiac function is impaired, cardiac output will be inappropriately low for the level of pulmonary wedge pressure.

When a given pulmonary wedge pressure is being interpreted, the serum albumin level also should be taken into consideration, because this opposes the effect of capillary hydrostatic pressure to cause migration of fluid from the capillary lumen to the interstitial space. Thus, at any given elevated pulmonary wedge pressure, pulmonary edema develops more rapidly in a patient who is hypoalbuminemic than in one who has a normal serum albumin concentration. In some patients, it is not possible to obtain a reliable pulmonary wedge pressure. In most of these patients, the pulmonary artery diastolic pressure is a good estimate of the pulmonary wedge pressure. If pulmonary hypertension is present, then pulmonary vascular resistance is increased; thus, pulmonary artery diastolic pressure may not be a good index of the pulmonary wedge pressure. In such patients, it is important to be able to obtain a wedge pressure. Finally, in patients who are being ventilated with high levels of positive end-expiratory pressure, pulmonary wedge pressure may become unreliable because the high intrapulmonary pressures may cause obstruction of the catheter orifice. Patients must be briefly taken off the ventilator for accurate measurements. Other circumstances in which pulmonary artery wedge pressure measurements may be inaccurate include the presence of mitral stenosis or pulmonary venous obstruction.

Blood Pressure

The following guidelines are suggested for the evaluation of the effective IVV from measurement of blood pressure.

1. A nearly normal or expanded effective IVV can be assumed in patients with hypertension that is demonstrated in the sitting or standing position.
2. Effective IVV may be decreased in patients who previously were hypertensive but who have become normotensive.
3. Effective IVV may be decreased in patients who develop orthostatic hypotension (a drop in systolic pressure greater than 10 mm Hg in changing from the supine to the sitting or standing position).

Orthostatic hypotension also can be present, in the absence of volume contraction, as a result of prolonged bed rest, during the use of such antihypertensive agents as methyldopa (Al-domet) or of vasodilators (Prazosin, Minoxidil). If the pulse rate does not rise as blood pressure falls when a patient stands,
autonomic neuropathy should be considered as a cause of postural hypotension.

Systemic Vascular Resistance

Other measurements of hemodynamic importance derived from Swan-Ganz readings include calculations of resistance across the pulmonary and systemic vascular beds. The calculations are as follows:

\[
\text{PVR} = \frac{\text{Paw}}{\text{QT}} \times 80
\]

\[
\text{SVR} = \frac{\text{PSA} – \text{Pra}}{\text{QT}} \times 80
\]

where:

- \( \text{Paw} \) = mean right atrial pressure;
- \( \text{Pra} \) = mean pulmonary artery wedge pressure;
- \( \text{PVR} \) = pulmonary vascular resistance;
- \( \text{PSA} \) = mean systemic arterial pressure;
- \( \text{QT} \) = cardiac output in liters per minute; and
- \( \text{SVR} \) = systemic vascular resistance.

Normal values are 60 to 150 dyne-s/cm for pulmonary vascular resistance and 800 to 1,200 dyne-s/cm for systemic vascular resistance. Pulmonary vascular resistance is elevated in hypovolemic shock, cardiogenic shock, pulmonary embolism, or airway obstruction; it is diminished in septic shock. Systemic vascular resistance is elevated in hypovolemic shock, cardiogenic shock, pulmonary embolism, and sometimes in right ventricular infarct and cardiac tamponade; it is decreased in end-stage liver disease and septic shock.

Clinical Assessment of Disorders of Extracellular Fluid Composition

Hyponatremia

The schema for the evaluation of a hyponatremic patient depends on the assessment of volume status. That is, it must first be determined whether the patient’s hyponatremia is associated with an effective IVV that is decreased, normal, or increased. Once this is decided on the basis of the assessment of IVV, a further separation, based only on the state of renal sodium and water excretion, is made. Each of the final categories contains relatively few diagnostic possibilities, and the presence or absence of each of these conditions in a given patient usually can be readily determined. The scheme for the evaluation of a hyponatremic patient is analogous, except that it depends on the assessment of the state of renal water excretion.

Clinical Assessment

In the discussion that follows, only patients with true hyponatremia are considered (i.e., hyponatremia in which serum osmolality is decreased in proportion to the reduction in serum sodium concentration, after appropriate correction for any elevation in the plasma urea nitrogen). By making this distinction, hyponatremia caused by accumulation of ECF solutes such as glucose or mannitol can be excluded. In this type of hyponatremia, the decreased concentration of ECF sodium is the result of the shift of water from cells to the ECF in response to the osmotic gradient caused by the accumulation of the solute. As a consequence, the hyponatremia is associated with an increased plasma osmolality. These patients also can be readily identified either by the presence of hyperglycemia sufficient to explain the decrease in serum sodium concentration or by a history of administration of large amounts of mannitol (0.100 g in adults), usually in the presence of a decreased capacity to excrete mannitol (decreased GFR).

Also to be excluded are patients with spurious hyponatremia that results from the abnormal accumulation of plasma lipids or proteins. In such circumstances, the concentration of sodium in plasma water is normal; however, the concentration of sodium expressed per liter of whole plasma is reduced because an abnormally large volume of whole plasma is occupied by the lipids or proteins, which do not contain plasma water and electrolytes. Thus, when aliquots of hyperlipemic or hyperproteinemic plasma are analyzed, a lower amount of sodium is determined to be present in a given volume of whole plasma. Plasma osmolality, however, is normal because lipids and proteins do not contribute importantly to plasma osmolality (see section on osmotic forces). Patients with spurious hyponatremia can be readily identified by the presence of markedly elevated total serum protein levels (e.g., multiple myeloma) or grossly hyperemic serum. The distinction can be readily made if lipemic serum is subjected to centrifugation and the lipoprotein layer is removed before evaluation, if flame photometry is being used for measurement of serum Na⁺. Spurious hyponatremia is no longer a consideration in most laboratories, because serum Na⁺ concentration is determined by ion-specific electrodes, and increased levels are not affected by lipemic serum. Symptoms of hyponatremia include increased tendon reflexes, lethargy, mental confusion, and muscle twitching, which are followed by convulsions, coma, and possibly death if levels fall beneath 115 mEq/L.

Hyponatremia and Volume Depletion Associated with Renal Sodium Wasting

The normal renal response to volume depletion and hyponatremia is the virtual elimination of sodium from the urine (Fig. 10.4; see section on Sodium Balance). Thus, the presence of an excessive amount of urinary sodium under these conditions indicates that renal sodium loss is the cause or a major contributory factor to the state of sodium depletion. A spot urine sodium concentration greater than 40 mEq/L, a %E/FNa above 1%, or a urinary sodium excretion rate greater than intake indicates such renal sodium wasting. The conditions discussed in the following sections are associated with hyponatremia, IVV depletion, and renal sodium wasting.

Chronic Renal Disease. All types of renal disease can be associated with renal salt wasting. In adults with such a disorder, the serum creatinine level is virtually always above 2 mg and usually much higher before a significant salt leak develops. These azotemic patients usually require 85 to 170 mEq of sodium daily (3 to 10 g of sodium chloride) to maintain salt balance at a normal effective IVV. Thus, if sodium intake is decreased in azotemic patients by anorexia or vomiting, or if additional sodium losses occur (e.g., diarrhea or diuretic therapy), the inability of the diseased kidneys to conserve sodium and water normally may rapidly lead to the development of significant sodium and water deficits. Water intake usually continues; therefore, sodium balance is more adversely affected than water balance. As a consequence, the patient becomes contracted with hyponatremia. With the onset of CHF or the nephrotic syndrome, the salt leak of chronic renal failure usually disappears, and salt intake must be restricted.
Hypotonic fluid losses from the skin also can occur after burns or other skin injuries. These are isotonic losses of sodium and lead to hyponatremia if the water losses are more adequately replaced than the sodium losses.

Diuretic Therapy. The diuretics include thiazide agents or loop diuretics, such as furosemide, bumetanide, and ethacrynic acid. Diuretics induce a renal salt-wasting state, and if the urinary output of sodium exceeds intake, sodium depletion ensues. Rarely, diuretics cause hyponatremia without evidence of volume depletion if severe potassium depletion has resulted from their use (Fig. 10.4).

Adrenal Insufficiency (Addison’s Disease). Destruction of the adrenal gland or sudden withdrawal of chronic, daily glucocorticoid therapy results in inadequate adrenal function. The lack of mineralocorticoid causes wasting of renal salt but retention of renal potassium and leads to sodium depletion. The lack of glucocorticoid results in a decreased capacity to excrete a water load and leads to hyponatremia but not to volume depletion or hyperkalemia.

**Hypotonic Fluid Losses**

- Gastrointestinal losses
  - If losses of fluid from the upper gastrointestinal tract (e.g., vomiting, gastric aspiration) cause the hyponatremia, and if the gastric juice is normally acid, metabolic alkalosis is present. If diarrheal losses cause the hyponatremia, metabolic acidosis may be present. In patients with gastric achlorhydria, upper gastrointestinal losses also can lead to metabolic acidosis.

- Losses of Sodium from the Skin
  - Sweat contains about 50 mEq/L of sodium and is a hypotonic fluid. If sweat losses are not replaced, then hypernatremia can develop. In most situations, the water losses from the skin are replaced more adequately than the sodium losses. Thus, most patients with significant sodium losses that are due to sweating become hyponatremic. Skin losses of fluid and electrolytes also can occur after burns or other skin injuries. These are isotonic losses of sodium and lead to hyponatremia if the water losses are more adequately replaced than the sodium losses.
losses of sodium from prior diuretic therapy. The natriuretic action of most diuretics lasts less than 24 hours. Hyponatremia is made worse if water intake is excessive.

**Hyponatremia and Normal Volume Status Associated with Water Diuresis**

In a patient with normal renal function who has become hyponatremic as a result of the administration or ingestion of excessive amounts of water, intravascular and ECF volume are normal to slightly expanded, and high rates of urine flow in association with maximally, or nearly maximally, dilute urine can be expected (see section on Water Balance). In a patient with preexisting renal functional impairment, water loading also increases urine flow rate and dilution of the urine; however, maximally dilute urine cannot be formed. Hyponatremia secondary to water loading may occur in compulsive water drinkers, who usually are severely neurotic or psychotic, or after excessive IV administration of hypotonic fluids. Many of these patients also have high levels of ADH for various reasons (e.g., drugs, psychosis). Without this elevation of ADH, presuming normal renal function, consumption of 20 L of water a day would be necessary for development of frank hyponatremia.

**Hyponatremia and Normal to Slightly Elevated Volume Status Associated with Water Conservation**

As discussed, it is appropriate to observe a brisk water diuresis in a patient with normal renal function who is hyponatremic and has evidence of normal or slightly elevated IVV without edema. When high flow rates of hypotonic urine are not observed, the patient is exhibiting an inappropriate antidiuresis. This may result from the inappropriate release of ADH, although other mechanisms also can be involved (e.g., decreased renal blood flow, certain drugs). Another characteristic of such patients is that administered sodium is promptly excreted in the urine, perhaps because of the effect of atrial natriuretic factors. On the other hand, when sodium intake is curtailed, renal sodium conservation is observed. These patients also exhibit normal adrenal and renal function, and are not edematous.

The syndrome of inappropriate antidiuresis has been associated with various clinical states, including malignant tumors (e.g., in the lung or pancreas), central nervous system (CNS) disorders (e.g., head trauma, meningitis), infections (e.g., tuberculosis, bacterial pneumonias), the postoperative state, hypopituitarism, and myxedema, as well as with many drugs (Table 10.6). Infusion of oxytocin to induce uterine contraction also can cause hyponatremia because of the antidiuretic effects of oxytocin.

Within the category of hyponatremia associated with normal IVV are three special categories. The feature that sets these apart is that patients may exhibit evidence of water conservation when water is withdrawn or an appropriate or nearly appropriate water diuresis when water is administered. That is, it appears that osmoregulation has been reset to “defend” a lowered plasma osmolality. The first special category includes patients who have an unusual response to diuretic therapy, characterized by hyponatremia, severe potassium depletion, and metabolic alkalosis. Despite the hyponatremia and normal IVV, exchangeable sodium is nearly normal, suggesting intracellular movement of sodium. Potassium replacement must be accomplished before specific treatment of hyponatremia. The second category involves patients with an unusual manifestation of a chronic illness, such as pulmonary tuberculosis, that resets the osmostat. The third category includes patients with sodium depletion resulting from any cause in whom the depletion in effective IVV is minimized by excessive water intake and retention. This effect of excessive water intake can occur in any of the causes of sodium depletion.

**Hyponatremia Associated with Increased Effective Intravascular Volume or Increased Extracellular Fluid Volume (Edema or Ascites)**

**Congestive Heart Failure.** When hyponatremia develops spontaneously in the course of chronic CHF (i.e., is not the result of excessive water administration or diuretic therapy), it usually is indicative of severe cardiac insufficiency and has a poor prognosis. The cause of the hyponatremia in such patients has been ascribed to a decreased capacity to increase renal free water clearance perhaps because of (a) increased fractional reabsorption of glomerular filtrate proximal to the renal diluting sites of the distal nephron and (b) an elevated ADH level.

**Cirrhosis of the Liver.** Patients with cirrhosis and ascites have a decreased capacity to excrete a water load, possibly because of the same mechanisms at work in patients with CHF.

**Excessive Administration of Hypotonic Fluids.** This usually is an iatrogenic situation and must be especially guarded against in postoperative patients whose ADH levels are elevated because of stress, pain, hypovolemia, or drugs, as well as in elderly patients who are unable to maximally dilute their urine.

**Hypernatremia**

All patients with hypernatremia are volume contracted, except those in whom the disorder develops as a result of excessive administration of hypertonic saline or sodium bicarbonate and the rare patients with essential hypernatremia (Fig. 10.5). The following discussion considers only the first group of patients; the latter section on treatment discusses all forms of hypernatremia. Patients with hypernatremia usually have CNS deficits, and they may also have confusion and neuroseizures. Autopsy findings often reveal hemorrhages or thromboses of brain tissue.
FIGURE 10.5. Approach to the assessment of a hypernatremic patient. This approach does not consider patients with hypernatremia secondary to excessive administration of hypertonic saline. ADH, antidiuretic hormone.

Hypernatremia Associated with Formation of Concentrated Urine

The normal renal response to decreased intake of water or increased extrarenal losses of water is the formation of maximally concentrated urine (see section on Water Balance). In most clinical situations in which hypernatremia is the result of water depletion, the expected renal response is a Uosm:Posm ratio greater than 1.5 and a specific gravity above 1.015. Thus, the finding of hypernatremia with evidence of renal conservation of water indicates that the hypernatremia is caused by excessive nonrenal losses of water or solute diuresis.

1. **Low urine output (e.g., < 35 ml/hr).** Hypernatremia is due to nonrenal losses of water (e.g., skin, lung, gut) and failure of water intake to keep pace with later losses (sensible and insensible). Sodium deficits are also usually present.

2. **Normal urine output (e.g., > 35 ml/hr).** Hypernatremia is due to solute diuresis in face of inadequate water intake (i.e., solute intake requiring renal excretion is high), thereby necessitating a high urine output relative to intake (e.g., high-protein tube feeding mixture given with inadequate amounts of "free water"), Sodium deficits are also usually present.

Hypernatremia Associated with Formation of Dilute Urine

The finding of hypernatremia in combination with isotonic or hypotonic urine indicates that, at least in part, the hypernatremia results from failure of normal renal conservation of water. Failure to concentrate the urine under these conditions may result from the lack of ADH (diabetes insipidus) or impaired renal tubular function that interferes with the development of a hypertonic medullary interstitium (renal tubular damage).

Central diabetes insipidus or nephrogenic diabetes insipidus should be suspected immediately in a patient with hypernatremia when the urine is very dilute (a Uosm:Posm ratio < 0.5, or specific gravity < 1.005).

In patients with renal tubular damage, the ability to concentrate and dilute the urine is decreased. As a result, under all conditions, the urine is isotonic or nearly isotonic with plasma. Hypertension can supervene when water losses exceed sodium losses and water intake does not keep pace with water losses. Despite the hypernatremia, significant sodium deficits usually are present because renal sodium wasting also usually is a feature of these disorders. The following sections are examples of

---

Hypernatremia Associated with Formation of Dilute Urine

The finding of hypernatremia in combination with isotonic or hypotonic urine indicates that, at least in part, the hypernatremia results from failure of normal renal conservation of water. Failure to concentrate the urine under these conditions may result from the lack of ADH (hypothalamic–pituitary diabetes insipidus) or impaired renal tubular function that interferes with the development of a hypertonic medullary interstitium (renal tubular damage).
clinical situations in which renal tubular damage can be associated with hypernatremia.

**Diuretic Phase of Acute Renal Failure.** Occasionally, in a patient recovering from acute renal injury, tubular function is more severely affected than glomerular function. Thus, an inordinately large fraction of the glomerular filtrate escapes reabsorption, resulting in high urine flow rates. The period of inappropriate diuresis can persist for a few days to several weeks.

**Postobstructive Diuresis.** The sudden release of chronic urinary tract obstruction often is followed by several days or weeks in which urine flow rates are abnormally high. Short-lived nephrogenic diabetes insipidus develops in some patients.

**MANAGEMENT OF WATER AND ELECTROLYTE BALANCE**

Water requirements should be carefully monitored, especially in hospitalized patients. Patients with known fluid deficits or excesses should be approached as demonstrated in Tables 10.7 and 10.8. Maintenance requirements can be calculated from two simple formulas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 10.7</th>
<th>GENERAL GUIDELINES FOR PLANNING FLUID AND ELECTROLYTE THERAPY IN COMPLICATED CASES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Volume-contracted patients (from water and electrolyte loss)</td>
<td>Equivalent Intravenous Fluid Orders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deficit Replacement</td>
<td>Sodium: 150 mEq/24 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate volume contraction (e.g., decreased effective IVV causing azotemia but not hypotension). Plan to replace deficits in about 24 h (e.g., 0.9% saline at 200–250 mL/h). If patient is hypernatremic, 0.9% and 0.45% saline can be alternated.</td>
<td>5% dextrose in 0.45% saline with 5% dextrose in 0.25% saline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe volume contraction (e.g., decreased effective IVV causing hypotension). Give 0.9% saline as rapidly as practicable until the hypotension is corrected.</td>
<td>Each day add: Multivitamins to first liter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimate maintenance needs and add this amount to the fluids used to correct the preexisting water and electrolyte deficits.</td>
<td>Potassium chloride 20 mEq to first and second liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For patients with normal renal function and no abnormal losses:</td>
<td>Infuse at 100–125 mL/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance</td>
<td>Nutrition (Short Term)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water: 2,500–3,000 mL/24 h</td>
<td>At least 400 carbohydrate calories/24 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium: 130 mL/24 h</td>
<td>For patients with acute renal failure with no urine output and no abnormal losses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium: 40 mL/24 h</td>
<td>Water: 600 mL/24 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrition (Long Term)</td>
<td>Sodium: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 400 carbohydrate calories/24 h</td>
<td>Potassium: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See Table 8.8: if patients have abnormal losses of water and electrolytes.</td>
<td>Nutrition (Long Term)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor patient frequently: Weigh daily.</td>
<td>At least 400 carbohydrate calories/24 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measure serum creatinine and electrolyte levels daily or more frequently if necessary.</td>
<td>See Table 8.8: if patients have abnormal losses of water and electrolytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measure CVP or pulmonary wedge pressure in complicated cases. If patient has normal cardiopulmonary function, CVP is sufficient. If cardiac disease or pulmonary hypertension is suspected, pulmonary wedge pressure measurement is preferred. Evaluate water and electrolyte needs daily or more frequently in patients with high rates of abnormal losses.</td>
<td>Evaluate water and electrolyte needs daily or more frequently in patients with high rates of abnormal losses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume-expanded patients (increased effective IVV)</td>
<td>Correct volume excess:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate (e.g., mild pulmonary vascular congestion): Induce diuresis with diuretic and allow the sodium and water losses to go unreplaced.</td>
<td>Mild (e.g., simple edema): Decrease NaCl intake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe volume excess (e.g., severe pulmonary edema): Steps 1 and 2 and phlebotomy or ultrafiltration (if the patient is anemic) and/or digitalis, vasodilators, if heart disease is present.</td>
<td>Estimate ongoing losses (as above) and begin replacing when volume excesses have been corrected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor patient frequently.</td>
<td>Monitor patient frequently.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CVP, central venous pressure; IVV, intravascular volume.
TABLE 10.8
MAJOR SOURCES, LOSS RATES, AND REPLACEMENT FLUIDS IN ABNORMAL WATER AND ELECTROLYTE LOSS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sources</th>
<th>Rate of loss</th>
<th>Replacement fluid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>Insensible water losses (normally 450 mL/24 h from skin and 450 mL/24 h from lung) increase by about 10% per degree Fahrenheit or 20% per degree Celsius for each degree of temperature above normal. Thus, the increase in alveolar ventilation required to reduce PaCO₂ from 40 to 20 mm Hg increases insensible loss from lung from 450 to 675 mL/24 h.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperventilation</td>
<td>Doubling alveolar ventilation (i.e., 50% reduction in PaCO₂) increases insensible water losses from lung by 50%. Replace with 5% dextrose in water.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastric fluid</td>
<td>Rates of loss from nasogastric suction usually are 1–2 L/24 h but can be much greater. Normal composition of gastric juice is about H⁺ 100 mEq/L; sodium 40 mEq/L; potassium 10 mEq/L; and chloride 150 mEq/L. Replace with 0.45 normal saline and potassium chloride (usually 20–40 mEq/L/L), as needed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrheal fluid</td>
<td>Losses can vary from trivial to several liters daily. In adults, diarrheal fluid usually resembles extracellular fluid except that the bicarbonate concentration is higher (about 30–50 mEq/L) and chloride concentration is lower (about 80 mEq/L). Potassium concentration is variable (10–40 mEq/L). Replace with 0.45 normal saline and 50 mEq of sodium bicarbonate/L and potassium chloride (usually 20 mEq/L), as needed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urine in acute renal failure</td>
<td>Because of tubular injury, urine sodium concentration is largely independent of urine flow rate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The rate of potassium replacement usually is determined by the serum potassium concentration rather than the rates of potassium loss. For example, even though a patient in acute renal failure may be losing 30 mEq/24 h potassium in the urine, it may not be necessary to replace this amount, since potassium may be entering the extracellular fluid at an even faster rate because of catabolism of cellular proteins. On the other hand, the potassium losses in gastric fluid may amount to only 10 to 20 mEq/24 h, yet far greater amounts of potassium may have to be administered to maintain a normal serum potassium level, since gastric aspiration may lead to metabolic alkalosis, causing renal potassium wasting and extensive diffusion of potassium into extracellular fluid.

The first is the 4–2–1 rule (Table 10.9). A more simplified method of calculation using this formula in adults would be to administer 60 mL/h of fluid for the first 20 kg of body weight. Subtract 20 from the patient’s weight (in kg), and add this difference to calculate the hourly rate. For example, a patient who weighs 65 kg has a maintenance requirement of 105 mL/h.

The second method is to calculate the body surface area and multiply by 1,000. A patient with a body surface area of 1.5 m² would require 1,500 mL of fluid daily.

TABLE 10.9
MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS BY 4-2-1 RULE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Body weight category</th>
<th>Fluid rate (mL/kg)</th>
<th>Weight category (kg)</th>
<th>Fluid rate (mL/h)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–10</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11–20</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 +</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Patient weighs 60 kg. Fluid requirement would be 100 mL/h.

Intraoperative Fluid Administration

The guidelines for fluid replacement during the perioperative period are dictated by (maintenance) basal requirements, deficits, intraoperative losses, and third-space losses. The basal requirement has been discussed. Deficits include actions of general or spinal anesthesia on effective blood volume, intestinal losses (bowel obstruction or diarrhea), perspiration, and blood loss. In some cases, a CVP or Swan-Ganz catheter may be needed to assess IVV.

Intraoperative losses of fluid occur through several routes. Evaporation from peritoneal surfaces occurs, but quantifying it is difficult. The most obvious source of fluid loss, blood loss, is first assessed by looking into the suction canister. Fluid from irrigation should be subtracted. A soaked lap pad contains about 50 mL of blood, and a 4 × 4 pad contains about 5 mL. These are crude approximations. For instance, a moistened lap pad absorbs less than a dry one. Most researchers recommend a replacement rate of 3 to 1 for blood loss using crystalloid suspension and 1 to 1 using colloid suspension. While anesthetized, patients experience third-space loss. This phenomenon is the movement of isotonic fluid from the intravascular space to the interstitial space. A replacement of 2 to 4 mL/kg/h is usually adequate to accommodate third-space losses. Actual total intraoperative losses may be difficult or impossible to monitor.
be used in the perioperative setting. Although D 5W solutions contain less sodium than lactated Ringer solution does should not be used over the following conditions:

1. Large amounts of crystalloid are needed to maintain normal hemodynamics.
2. Assessment of circulatory status is difficult.
3. The patient has an elevated pulmonary capillary wedge pressure.
4. The colloid pressure is below 12.

Colloid oncotic pressure may be difficult to ascertain in a routine clinical setting; therefore, total protein or albumin levels can be used to give a rough approximation of colloid pressure. If blood loss is more than 25% of total blood volume (in an otherwise healthy patient), transfusion of red cells must be considered. Hemoglobin concentrations can help. If the patient is elderly or suffers from lung, heart, or renal disease, then the transfusion trigger point is higher.

Experience has shown that hemoglobin levels between 7 and 8 are generally well tolerated in healthy adults. Primate experiments have demonstrated adequate perfusion of tissues with hemoglobin levels of 5 as long as the blood pressure, urine output, and pulse are satisfactory. During long and difficult surgical procedures, monitoring of vital signs and urine output (optimal, 0.5 ml/kg/h) is extremely important. Sometimes invasive monitoring can be used to guide the clinician.

Crystalloid solutions contain only sugars and electrolytes (Table 10.10). Lactated Ringer solution is usually used because its composition more closely resembles the extracellular component than does normal saline. Generally, solutions that contain less sodium than lactated Ringer solution does should not be used in the perioperative setting. Although D 5W solutions have an osmolality greater than 250, they are unsuitable as routine perioperative replacement because the sugar is metabolized. Normal saline is another popular crystalloid solution. It is preferred over lactated Ringer solutions in the perioperative period when the patient is hypotensive or if brain injury is present. Hypertonic saline is rarely used in the perioperative setting. Because water tends to follow sodium, its theoretic advantage is that water is drawn into the intravascular space from the interstitial space; hence, smaller volumes of hypertonic solution than isotonic solution are needed to provide the same intravascular expansion. Crystalloid solutions are preferentially used over colloid solutions for perioperative fluid replacement.

Colloid solutions include albumin, hetastarch, and dextran. Blood is also a colloid but is discussed in another chapter. Colloids are used primarily when patients have a low colloid oncotic pressure or when large amounts of crystalloids have been infused. For example, if a patient has suffered a significant protein loss from ascites secondary to pelvic malignancy, colloids should be used early in the fluid replacement process. If a patient’s blood pressure becomes difficult to maintain after infusion of sufficient crystalloid, colloids should be used. Albumin, hetastarch, and dextran are three commonly used colloid solutions. Albumin is the most popular of the colloid solutions. It is a blood product but has the advantage of complete absence of infectious agents. In addition, it is treated with heat, eliminating the possibility of transmission of hepatitis or human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). It comes in 5% and 2.5% concentrations. Hetastarch consists of large polymer molecules and comes in a solution of saline. It is synthetic; therefore, its use does not affect the blood supply. There is no risk for vascular transmission. Hetastarch is metabolized by the kidney and some must be used judiciously in those who have renal disease. Other disadvantages include potential volume overload, dilution hypoprothrombinemia, and decreased coagulation. The half-life of hetastarch can be as long as 13 days. Dextran is similar to hetastarch in mode of action. Additional problems with this substance are interference with cross matching and histamine release. Dextran and hetastarch should be carefully monitored. Usually no more than 1,500 ml of hetastarch or 1,000 ml of dextran should be infused during a 24-hour period.

In summary, crystalloids should be used primarily for perioperative volume replacement. Colloid solutions should be used under the following conditions:

1. Large amounts of crystalloid are needed to maintain normal hemodynamics.
2. Assessment of circulatory status is difficult.
3. The patient has an elevated pulmonary capillary wedge pressure.
4. The colloid pressure is below 12.

Colloid oncotic pressure may be difficult to ascertain in a routine clinical setting; therefore, total protein or albumin levels can be used to give a rough approximation of colloid pressure. If blood loss is more than 25% of total blood volume (in an otherwise healthy patient), transfusion of red cells must be considered. Hemoglobin concentrations can help. If the patient is elderly or suffers from lung, heart, or renal disease, then the transfusion trigger point is higher.

Experience has shown that hemoglobin levels between 7 and 8 are generally well tolerated in healthy adults. Primate experiments have demonstrated adequate perfusion of tissues with hemoglobin levels of 5 as long as the blood pressure, urine output, and pulse are satisfactory.

Correction of Volume Deficits

**Estimating the Magnitude of Sodium or Water Deficits**

If the patient has been weighed daily, the magnitude of the water deficit owing to external losses of water can be estimated from the decrease in body weight. The coexisting sodium deficits can be estimated by examining the weight deficits in light of the serum sodium concentration. For example, if the patient has acutely lost 3 kg and the serum sodium concentration is within 10% either way of normal serum sodium concentration (i.e., 126 to 154 mEq/L), little error is incurred by assuming that the patient has lost 3 L of ECF (i.e., isotonic saline); therefore, replacement therapy should be about 3 L of 0.9% saline (155 mEq/L). Using an equivalent amount of lactated Ringer solution offers no advantage, because the kidneys adjust electrolyte excretion to make up for small differences between the composition of the ECF and the isotonic saline.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPOSITION OF PARENTERAL FLUIDS*</th>
<th>Cations</th>
<th>Anions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Solutions</td>
<td>Na</td>
<td>K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extracellular fluid</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactated Ringer solution</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.9% sodium chloride</td>
<td>154</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D₅ 4% sodium chloride</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D₅W</td>
<td>253</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3% sodium chloride</td>
<td>513</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Electrolyte count in mEq/L.

**Present in solution as lactate that is converted to bicarbonate.**

**Correction of Volume Deficits**

**Estimating the Magnitude of Sodium or Water Deficits**

If the patient has been weighed daily, the magnitude of the water deficit owing to external losses of water can be estimated from the decrease in body weight. The coexisting sodium deficits can be estimated by examining the weight deficits in light of the serum sodium concentration. For example, if the patient has acutely lost 3 kg and the serum sodium concentration is within 10% either way of normal serum sodium concentration (i.e., 126 to 154 mEq/L), little error is incurred by assuming that the patient has lost 3 L of ECF (i.e., isotonic saline); therefore, replacement therapy should be about 3 L of 0.9% saline (155 mEq/L). Using an equivalent amount of lactated Ringer solution offers no advantage, because the kidneys adjust electrolyte excretion to make up for small differences between the composition of the ECF and the isotonic saline.

**Correction of Volume Deficits**

**Estimating the Magnitude of Sodium or Water Deficits**

If the patient has been weighed daily, the magnitude of the water deficit owing to external losses of water can be estimated from the decrease in body weight. The coexisting sodium deficits can be estimated by examining the weight deficits in light of the serum sodium concentration. For example, if the patient has acutely lost 3 kg and the serum sodium concentration is within 10% either way of normal serum sodium concentration (i.e., 126 to 154 mEq/L), little error is incurred by assuming that the patient has lost 3 L of ECF (i.e., isotonic saline); therefore, replacement therapy should be about 3 L of 0.9% saline (155 mEq/L). Using an equivalent amount of lactated Ringer solution offers no advantage, because the kidneys adjust electrolyte excretion to make up for small differences between the composition of the ECF and the isotonic saline.
In patients in whom sodium and water deficits cannot be documented by changes in body weight, or in whom the losses are from the IVV into internal third spaces, approximate but useful guidelines are available to estimate the magnitude of the IVV deficit. These guidelines are as follows.

1. A loss equivalent to 15% of ECF volume (about 2 to 3 L in the average adult) results in a decrease in tissue turgor, but blood pressure and renal function, as judged by serum creatinine level, usually are normal.

2. Losses of sodium and water in excess of 15% of ECF volume usually are accompanied by decreased tissue turgor, orthostatic or frank hypotension, and significant elevation of serum creatinine level.

**Correction Rates and Criteria for Assessment**

Sodium and water losses great enough to result in hypotension represent a medical emergency, and rapid IV administration of isotonic saline is indicated until the hypotension is reversed.

Therapeutically, the rate of IV therapy is guided by the adequacy of the IVV as assessed by other criteria, particularly the measurement of blood pressure and pulse in the supine and sitting positions, urine flow rate, and CVP or pulmonary wedge pressure. In patients with less severe degrees of volume depletion, salt and water deficits often can be corrected by increasing oral intake. Salt can be added to food (the salt packets commonly present on hospital trays provide slightly more than 1 g of sodium chloride), or plain sodium chloride tablets can be given, with unrestricted water allowance, letting the patient’s thirst mechanism dictate water intake. As a guide to the amount of sodium chloride that should be added to the diet to restore the deficits, 1 L of ECF contains 140 mEq of sodium, or about 9 g of sodium chloride. The adequacy of replacement therapy can be assessed over the ensuing days by measurement of change in body weight and blood pressure and by the decrease in serum creatinine level.

**Correction of Volume Excess**

Expansion of effective IVV sufficient to precipitate pulmonary edema is a medical emergency and requires the usual treatment of pulmonary edema, including placement of the patient in the sitting position or elevation of the head of the bed and administration of oxygen, vasodilators—such as nitrates, hydralazine, or angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (e.g., captopril, enalapril, lisinopril)—diuretics, and loop diuretics, as needed. If the pulmonary edema does not improve, then phlebotomy may be required to relieve the vascular congestion. If the volume excess is less severe (e.g., simple edema), the problem usually can be controlled by decreasing salt intake, adding a diuretic drug, or both. The effectiveness of treatment can be guided by the decrease in body weight and periodic measurement of serum electrolyte and creatinine levels.

**Correction of Hyponatremia**

The approach to the correction of hyponatremia depends on (a) whether the patient has significant CNS symptoms as a result of the hyponatremia (coma or seizures) and (b) the cause of the hyponatremia. If the patient has coma or seizures as a result of hyponatremia, the serum sodium level is commonly below 125 mEq/L and the reduction usually has occurred rapidly, over a few hours to days. In these situations, regardless of the cause of the hyponatremia, the serum sodium level should be rapidly raised toward normal by the IV administration of 3% saline.

The serum sodium level should be raised to 125 mEq/L at a rate of 1 to 2 mEq/h. The rate of replacement can be slowed once the serum sodium level reaches 123 mEq/L, because neurologic symptoms are rare above this concentration. Rapid elevation of the serum sodium concentration to normal or hypernatremic levels must be avoided, because it may cause central pontine myelinolysis. The correction using 3% saline (513 mEq/L) can be calculated as follows:

\[
\text{volume TBW} = 0.67 \times \text{total body weight in kg} - 60.5
\]

or

\[
\text{volume TBW} = 0.6 \times \text{total body weight in kg} - 62.5
\]

where:

\[
\text{[Na\textsuperscript{+}]} = \frac{\text{desired [Na\textsuperscript{+}]} - \text{actual [Na\textsuperscript{+}]}}{0.67 \times \text{total body weight in kg} - 60.5}
\]

or

\[
\text{[Na\textsuperscript{+}]} = \frac{\text{desired [Na\textsuperscript{+}]} - \text{actual [Na\textsuperscript{+}]}}{0.6 \times \text{total body weight in kg} - 62.5}
\]

Therefore, this patient requires 1 L of 3% saline to raise her serum sodium level by 12 mEq. The liter of hypertonic saline is administered over 6 to 12 hours. Serum electrolyte levels should be checked every few hours and rates of replacement readjusted as necessary. The infusion of hypertonic saline results in diffusion of water from ECF to ICF until isomotic conditions are restored. This results in reduction of cell volume and an increase of ECF osmolality toward normal as well as in an expansion of ECF volume. The expansion of the ECF by the hypertonic saline may precipitate or worsen CHF. Therefore, patients who receive hypertonic saline should be carefully observed for signs of pulmonary edema and, if such signs are present, vigorously treated with a loop diuretic.

**Hyponatremia Associated with Volume Depletion**

The administration of isotonic saline in amounts sufficient to replace existing sodium deficits usually results in complete correction of the hyponatremia, as discussed, in connection with the treatment of volume depletion, because restoration of effective IVV toward normal allows a water diuresis. If specific disease states, such as adrenal insufficiency or diarrhea, are associated with the development of the hyponatremia and volume depletion, these also require treatment.

**Hyponatremia Associated with Normal Intravascular Volume**

If the hyponatremia is associated with excessive intake of water, restricting water intake to normal corrects the problem. If the hyponatremia is owing to an inappropriate antidiuresis, water intake must be restricted below normal—for example, to about 800 mL of measured liquid intake daily in an average-sized adult (Table 10.2). This usually results in negative water balance, a fall in body weight, and a rise in serum sodium concentration toward normal. Excess total body water can be calculated as follows:

\[
\text{actual TBW} = 0.6 \times \text{total body weight in kg} - \text{actual serum [Na\textsuperscript{+}]} \times \text{actual TBW}
\]

where:

\[
\text{[Na\textsuperscript{+}]} = \frac{\text{desired [Na\textsuperscript{+}]} - \text{actual [Na\textsuperscript{+}]}}{0.6 \times \text{total body weight in kg} - \text{actual TBW}}
\]

\[
\text{desired TBW} - \text{actual TBW} = \text{excess TBW in L}
\]
where:
\[ [Na^+] \text{ is expressed in mEq/L} \]

If a specific cause for the inappropriate antidiuresis can be identified, it should be eliminated (Table 10.6).

**Hyponatremia Associated with Expanded Intravascular Volume and Extracellular Fluid**

The spontaneous development of hyponatremia in the course of severe congestive heart or liver failure is an ominous sign. The hyponatremia usually does not cause any clinical symptoms and although it can be successfully treated by water restriction, clinical improvement usually does not follow. Furthermore, during such treatment, patients complain bitterly of thirst. Thus, water restriction should be restricted, however, to prevent the serum sodium concentration from decreasing to less than 120 mEq/L in an effort to prevent possible CNS symptoms of hyponatremia.

**Correction of Hyponatremia**

**Hypernatremia Secondary to Water Depletion**

The amount of water needed to correct the serum sodium concentration toward normal is given in the following equation:

\[ \text{actual TBW} = 0.6 \times \text{total body weight in kg} \]
\[ \text{actual serum [Na']} = \text{actual TBW} \times \text{desired TBW} \]
\[ \text{desired TBW} = \text{water necessary to lower serum [Na']} \]

where:
\[ [Na^+] \text{ is expressed in mEq/L} \]

The rate of correction usually is 1 to 2 mEq/L. This deficit would be corrected with administration of hypotonic fluid over 24 to 48 hours along with the water and electrolytes needed to maintain day-to-day water and electrolyte balance. The underlying cause of the hyponatremia also must be corrected if possible.

**Hypernatremia Secondary to Excessive Administration of Hypertonic Saline**

In the rare instance of hypernatremia secondary to excessive administration of hypertonic saline, which occurs when intraarteriostic infusion of hypertonic saline is used to induce abortion, hypernatremia is owing solely to positive sodium chloride balance. Therefore, treatment involves simply inducing a state of negative sodium chloride balance while maintaining a slightly positive water balance. If the hyponatremia is associated with impairment of CNS function (Na' usually exceeds 160 mEq/L), 2 to 3 L of 5% solution of glucose in water should be given IV, along with sufficient furosemide to induce a urine flow rate of about 10 to 20 mL/min. About 100 mg of IV furosemide is an appropriate initial dose. This results in the excretion of urine containing about 140 mEq/L of sodium and chloride and 10 mEq/L of potassium. If, at the same time, only the water and potassium are replaced, e.g., replacement of each 1,000 mL of urine with 1,000 mL of 5% solution of glucose in water plus 10 to 20 mEq of potassium chloride, given IV, the patient is selectively depleted of sodium chloride, and plasma electrolytes can be restored to normal within several hours. During this period of correction, serum and urine electrolyte levels must be monitored frequently to assess the adequacy of IV replacement therapy, particularly the rate of potassium administration.

**POTASSIUM METABOLISM**

Disorders of potassium metabolism frequently coexist with disorders of sodium and water balance. For example, sodium and potassium losses often accompany gastrointestinal losses of water and electrolytes. The recognition and management of potassium depletion under these circumstances were discussed earlier in connection with the management of disorders of sodium and water balance. Even small movements of potassium into and out of cells can cause significant changes in the serum potassium since more than 90% of potassium resides intracellularly. It also is important to recognize disorders in which disturbances of potassium balance are the primary abnormality or the major feature of the electrolyte disturbances.

**Hyperkalemia**

Hyperkalemia is defined as a serum potassium level greater than 5 mEq/L. Serum potassium levels between 5 and 6 mEq/L usually cause little or no functional abnormality, but such levels indicate that an abnormality of potassium regulation is present. This sign should be bred and its cause investigated, because further small elevations in serum potassium concentration can seriously impair cardiac and skeletal muscle function. At a serum potassium level of 6 or 7 mEq/L, the electrocardiogram (ECG) begins to show tall, peaked T waves, and skeletal muscle weakness may be present. At a serum potassium level greater than 7 mEq/L, severe ECG abnormalities may be present, including complete suppression of atrial activity and an idioventricular rhythm that can then lead to ventricular tachycardia and fibrillation. Profound skeletal muscle weakness leading to respiratory arrest also may develop. If serious hyperkalemia is suspected, an ECG should be obtained immediately along with a blood specimen for potassium measurement. The ECG findings establish whether life-threatening hyperkalemia is present.

Table 10.11 lists the principal clinical conditions associated with hyperkalemia. Pseudohyperkalemia can result from hemolysis of red blood cells as a result of the mechanical trauma of venipuncture. Such pseudohyperkalemia should be readily recognized, because both potassium and hemoglobin are released by the damaged cells. If the serum potassium level has been significantly raised by in vitro hemolysis, the serum is easily pink because of the presence of free hemoglobin. Patients with extraordinarily high white blood cell counts or platelet counts also can exhibit pseudohyperkalemia as the result of excessive traumatic in vitro lysis of these cells. Pseudohyperkalemia can be avoided by drawing venous blood samples under low pressure into a heparinized syringe.

**Management**

**Life-Threatening Hyperkalemia.** ECG shows sine waves or loss of atrial activity and a broad QRS complex. Serum potassium level usually is higher than 7 mEq/L.

1. Infuse 10 mL of 10% calcium gluconate intravenously over a few minutes with ECG monitoring to observe for reversal of ECG changes toward normal. The same infusion of 10 mL of 10% calcium gluconate can be repeated once. Calcium ions directly antagonize the effects of potassium on...
### TABLE 10.11

**CAUSES OF HYPERKALEMIA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Excessive intake of potassium</td>
<td>Shortened life span of stored RBCs after transfusion leads to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfusion of blood stored for prolonged periods</td>
<td>excessive release of RBC potassium to ECF. Plasma potassium of stored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>blood also is increased (30 mEq/L) after 14 days of storage. Acute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ingestion of 500 mEq potassium chloride can cause fatal hyperkalemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with normal renal function. If renal function is impaired, even normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>potassium intake can cause severe hyperkalemia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive oral or intravenous intake of potassium</td>
<td>The potential for any of these conditions to cause serious hyperkalemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is greatly increased when they coexist with impaired renal function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive release of intracellular stores of potassium</td>
<td>H⁺ displaces K⁺ from intracellular sites, causing increased diffusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of K⁺ into ECF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemotherapy of malignancies</td>
<td>Almost all of filtered potassium is reabsorbed. Excreted potassium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>represents almost exclusively potassium secreted by the tubules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catabolism of hematomas</td>
<td>Nevertheless, grossly reduced glomerular filtration rate is associated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhombomyelitis</td>
<td>with grossly reduced tubular function and hence the tendency to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Succinylcholine action on muscle</td>
<td>hyperkalemia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sepsis with excessive catabolism of muscle protein</td>
<td>Some patients with normal or mildly reduced glomerular filtration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute digitalis poisoning</td>
<td>rate can have substantial impairment of potassium secretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial hyperkalemic periodic paralyses</td>
<td>(e.g., lupus patients with interstitial nephritis, mild obstructive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intravenous hypertonic glucose or mannitol</td>
<td>uropathy.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic acidosis</td>
<td>H⁺ displaces K⁺ from intracellular sites, causing increased diffusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of K⁺ into ECF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impaired renal capacity to excrete potassium</td>
<td>Increased reabsorption of potassium from jejunum causes predisposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grossly reduced glomerular filtration rate</td>
<td>to hyperkalemia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some patients with normal or mildly reduced glomerular filtration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rate can have substantial impairment of potassium secretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(e.g., lupus patients with interstitial nephritis, mild obstructive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uropathy.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impaired tubular function</td>
<td>Spirolactone competitively inhibits the action of aldosterone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperkalemic renal tubular acidosis</td>
<td>Triamterene and amiloride block potassium secretion even in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>absence of aldosterone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased aldosterone secretion</td>
<td>Increased reabsorption of potassium from jejunum causes predisposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addison’s disease</td>
<td>to hyperkalemia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary hypoadosteronism</td>
<td>Common in patients with diabetes mellitus or obstructive uropathy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyporeninemic hypoadosteronism</td>
<td>Angiotensin II causes aldosterone secretion, β-blockers and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drugs that suppress angiotensin formation</td>
<td>nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs directly suppress angiotensin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β-blocking agents (e.g., propranolol)</td>
<td>formation by suppressing renin production. Captopril prevents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostaglandin synthetase inhibitors (e.g., indomethacin,</td>
<td>angiotensin II formation by blocking conversion of angiotensin I.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diclofenac)</td>
<td>Drugs that interfere with renal potassium secretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (e.g., captopril,</td>
<td>Spirolactone competitively inhibits the action of aldosterone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enalapril, lisinopril)</td>
<td>Triamterene and amiloride block potassium secretion even in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drugs that interfere with renal potassium secretion</td>
<td>absence of aldosterone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ureteral implantation into jejunal loop</td>
<td>Increased reabsorption of potassium from jejunum causes predisposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to hyperkalemia.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ECF, extracellular fluid; RBCs, red blood cells.

---

myocardial metabolism. The onset of action is a few minutes. If the patient is taking digitalis, consider not giving the calcium, and proceed on to the next step.

2. Infuse 50 g of glucose, 10 units of regular insulin, and 50 mEq of sodium bicarbonate. The onset of action is about 15 minutes. Additionally, an IV infusion of glucose, insulin, and sodium bicarbonate (e.g., 500 mL of 10% dextrose in water plus 15 units of regular insulin plus 50 mEq of sodium bicarbonate) may be started. Infuse over several hours. This maneuver causes potassium to move intracellularly. The amount of glucose infused must be altered or omitted in hyperglycemic diabetic patients.

3. Nebulized albuterol at a dose of 10 to 20 mg is recommended. The peak action is approximately 90 minutes.

4. As soon as practical, give sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate) by mouth, nasogastric tube, or retention enema (e.g., 20 to 50 g of Kayexalate every 2 to 4 hours). An equal number of grams of sorbitol should be given if the Kayexalate is administered into the upper gastrointestinal tract. Sorbitol, a sugar that is poorly absorbed from the intestine, causes an osmotic diarrhea and prevents concretions of Kayexalate from forming within the gut. Kayexalate is an ion-exchange resin that removes potassium by binding potassium and releasing sodium into body fluids.
5. Hemodialysis may be required in patients in whom these measures fail.

Moderate Hyperkalemia. ECG shows only peaked T waves; serum potassium level usually is below 7 mEq/L.

1. Reduce potassium intake (normal potassium intake is 60 to 100 mEq/24 h). Reducing dietary potassium to 50 to 60 mEq/24 h usually is sufficient to correct mild hyperkalemia.
2. Kayexalate may be needed periodically to control the serum potassium level.
3. Correct metabolic acidosis if present.

4. Stop administration of medications that can contribute to hyperkalemia, such as angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, and potassium-sparing diuretics.

Hypokalemia

Hypokalemia is defined as a serum potassium level below 3.5 mEq/L (Table 10.12). Significant symptoms usually do not result from hypokalemia unless the serum potassium level is less than 3 mEq/L. An important exception is in patients who are receiving digitalis preparations. In such patients, hypokalemia, or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 10.12</th>
<th>CAUSES OF HYPOKALEMIA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cause</strong></td>
<td><strong>Comments on pathogenesis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased potassium intake</td>
<td>With 0 mEq potassium intake, stool potassium is about 10 mEq/24 h, urinary potassium is &lt; 30 mEq/24 h or is &lt; 20 mEq/L.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive renal losses of potassium</td>
<td>Urinary potassium usually greater than 30 mEq/24 h or 20 mEq/L. All diuretics except for spironolactone, triamterene, and amiloride cause renal potassium wasting. <strong>Mechanism:</strong> Diuretics cause increased sodium delivery to distal tubular sites where sodium is reabsorbed in exchange for potassium or hydrogen ion. <strong>Mechanism:</strong> Same as above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diuretic therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diuretic phase of acute tubular necrosis and other causes of isosmotic diuresis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic alkalosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentamicin or amphotericin B nephrotoxicity</td>
<td>Increased activity of distal tubular site, which reabsorbs sodium in exchange for potassium or H⁺.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased renal mineralocorticoid effects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineralocorticoid therapy (DOCA, 9-α-fludrocortisone)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary aldosteronism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary aldosteronism (e.g., cirrhosis of the liver, renal artery stenosis, malignant hypertension)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cushing's syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive licorice or chewing tobacco (glycyrrhizic acid)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bartter's syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal tubular acidosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive gastrointestinal losses of potassium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting, gastric drainage, diarrhea, laxative abuse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Villous adenoma of rectum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift of potassium from the extracellular to the intracellular fluid</td>
<td>H⁺ leaves cells, K⁺ enters cells during correction of metabolic acidosis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correction of metabolic acidosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correction of hyperglycemia</td>
<td>K⁺ enters cells with glucose to provide cation to balance anion that forms during metabolism of glucose Unexplained familial disorder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypokalemic periodic paralysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ureterosigmoidostomy</td>
<td>Colonic secretion of HCO₃⁻ and K⁺ with absorption of Na⁺ and Cl⁻ results in hypokalemic metabolic acidosis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
even low-normal serum potassium levels, can increase myocardial irritability and lead to serious arrhythmias. In addition to increasing myocardial irritability, hypokalemia can cause profound muscle weakness and ileus. Chronic severe hypokalemia also can cause metabolic alkalosis and decreased capacity to concentrate the urine. The ECG in hypokalemia often shows U waves, although this finding is not diagnostic of hypokalemia.

Management

Mild Asymptomatic Hypokalemia. This usually can be corrected simply by eliminating the cause of the potassium wasting or by increasing potassium intake. If the hypokalemia is caused by diuretic therapy, potassium depletion usually can be avoided by administering spironolactone or triamterene. Potassium supplementation also can be used, but if the patient is on a low sodium chloride intake, the potassium supplement must be given as potassium chloride. The use of other, more palatable potassium salts (e.g., gluconate, citrate, acetate) and all forms of potassium in food is much less effective in correcting hypokalemia, and this treatment is used primarily in patients on a normal sodium chloride intake.

Severe or Symptomatic Hypokalemia. This usually requires IV administration of potassium chloride. In general, the use of IV solutions that contain more than 40 mEq/L of potassium should be avoided, because infusing high concentrations of potassium can cause hyperkalemia or cardiac disturbance. In correcting even severe potassium deficits, it is seldom necessary to infuse more than 120 to 160 mL/24 h of potassium chloride. When higher rates are used, frequent monitoring of the patient’s ECG and serum potassium level is essential. Intravenous replacement of potassium should never run at a rate of greater than 10 mEq/h. The oral route of potassium replacement should be used whenever possible.

Calcium

Approximately 99% of body calcium is contained in bone. Up to 40% of the extracellular calcium that circulates in the bloodstream is bound to plasma proteins. However, the unbound or ionized form of calcium is the form that exerts physiologic activity. Total calcium is a measure of both the bound and unbound or ionized form. Serum albumin levels affect the total serum calcium, as albumin in the plasma protein to which the majority of calcium is bound.

Corrected calcium in mg/dL = measured calcium + [(4 – albumin in g/dL) ÷ 0.8]

Ionized or unbound calcium can be measured if specifically requested. Its concentration is affected by the serum pH. With alkalosis when the pH is increased, a decrease in ionized calcium results from the increased protein binding of calcium. Conversely, with acidosis, a decrease in protein binding causes an increase in ionized calcium.

The homeostasis of calcium is quite complex, and calcium serves many important functions. Calcium plays a role in regulation of muscle contraction and nerve conduction. Additionally, it functions in the coagulation cascade. The majority of calcium is stored in bone; however, calcium is under the control of several other organ systems, including the integument, musculoskeletal, endocrine, and renal systems. Parathyroid hormone (PTH) appears to be the major hormone effecting calcium homeostasis. Vitamin D must be present, however, for it to exert its maximal effect. PTH causes the following.

■ Mobilization of calcium and phosphorus from bone
■ Increased renal tubular reabsorption of calcium
■ Increased intestinal absorption of calcium
■ Decreased renal tubular reabsorption of phosphorus

Hypocalcemia

Clinical manifestations of hypocalcemia (defined as a calcium level below 8 to 8.5 mg/dL) are characterized by neuromuscular irritability. Symptoms can include numbness, muscle cramping, paresthesias, Chvostek (twitching of facial muscles) and Trousseau (carpal spasm) signs, tetany, and seizures. Patients can also experience psychos and sensory disturbances. On physical examination, patients may have hyperactive deep tendon reflexes. ECG findings of hypocalcemia include a prolonged QT interval, which can lead to heart block or ventricular fibrillation. Causes of hypocalcemia are shown in Table 10.13.

Treatment of hypocalcemia should be directed at its underlying cause. A low total calcium level with a normal ionized calcium level signifies a low level of plasma proteins. These patients usually are asymptomatic, and calcium replacement in this setting usually is not necessary. For patients with acute symptomatic hypocalcemia, calcium gluconate or chloride should be given intravenously. These may cause a local cellular or tissue necrosis if infiltation occurs. If infiltation occurs, especially with the chloride solution in emergent situations, 10 mL of 10% calcium gluconate can be administered intravenously over 15 minutes. In addition, 10 to 20 mL of calcium gluconate can be placed in 1 L of D5W and administered over 24 hours. If the serum albumin level is below 2 mg/dL, then it may be prudent to replace albumin, especially if the urine output is low. Because albumin is heat sensitive, there is no risk of hepatitis or HIV exposure. In cases of symptomatic hypocalcemia, magnesium levels must be checked and corrected if necessary. In those patients with metabolic acidosis and hypocalcemia, the hypocalcemia should be treated initially followed by the correction of the acidosis.

Long-term treatment of hypocalcemia involves adequate nutritional supplementation of calcium, vitamin D, or both. If the serum phosphorus level is high, hyperparathyroid disease must be suspected and the patient treated accordingly. If the serum phosphorus is normal or low, then primary bone disease (hugly bone) must be considered. It is imperative that magnesium levels be checked because replenishment of calcium cannot be accomplished in a patient who is hypomagnesemic.

Hypercalcemia

The clinical manifestations of hypercalcemia usually are seen when the total serum calcium is greater than 12 mg/dL. Common presenting symptoms include weakness, fatigue, nausea, vomiting, constipation, polyuria, polydipsia, lethargy, and confusion. Psychiatric disturbances and coma can be seen in severe hypercalcemia.

TABLE 10.13

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUSES OF HYPOCALCEMIA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deficiency or absence of parathyroid hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D deficiency—decreased intestinal absorption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequestration of parathyroid hormone products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal failure—decreased 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypomagnesemia—decreased parathyroid hormone release—and decreased renal response to calcium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperparathyreosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

182 Principles of Anatomy and Perioperative Considerations
cases of hypercalcemia. ECG changes include prolongation of PR and QR intervals with a shortening of the QT interval. Complete heart block and cardiac arrest can occur in profound hypercalcemia. Additional laboratory abnormalities can include elevations in serum amylase and creatinine levels. The phosphorus level is critical in establishing the cause of hypercalcemia. A phosphorus level below 3.5 mg/dL suggests hyperparathyroidism, whereas an elevated phosphorus level suggests an underlying malignancy.

Hypercalcemia, unlike many other electrolyte disturbances, is rarely arteriographically induced. There are several causes of hypercalcemia. The majority of hospitalized patients with hypercalcemia have an underlying malignancy, whereas the most common etiology of hypercalcemia in the ambulatory setting is hyperparathyroidism. Additional causes of hypercalcemia include thiazide diuretics, lithium, vitamin D intoxication, hyperthyroidism, and sarcoidosis. In the setting of gynecology, hypercalcemia is most often seen with malignancy. In patients with cancer, hypercalcemia results from increased bone resorption and decreased renal excretion. Metastasis to the bony skeleton causes an increase in osteoclastic activity that increases bone resorption. Some gynecologic tumors, however, may cause hypercalcemia by production of a substance similar to PTH, causing bone resorption without evidence of bony metastasis.

Volume expansion is crucial in the treatment of acute hypercalcemia. Replacement with normal saline solution decreases calcium reabsorption in the proximal renal tubule, thus improving renal function. Initial IV fluid therapy should be aggressive, with rates of 250 to 500 mL/h, as most patients are volume contracted. Addition of loop diuretics such as furosemide may aid in increasing urinary calcium excretion, but caution must be used because these drugs may result in volume contraction. After initial volume is restored, 3 to 6 L/d of normal saline solution should be given. Close monitoring of daily patient weights, intake and output, and frequent monitoring of serum electrolytes is necessary in patients with hypercalcemia.

Bisphosphonates are commonly used for the treatment of hypercalcemia. This class of drugs inhibits osteoclast precursors and induces osteoclast cytoxicity, thereby decreasing serum calcium levels. Etidronate disodium (Didronel) is given at a dose of 7.5 mg/kg IV over 2 hours daily for 3 to 7 days. Alternatively, pamidronate (Aredia) is given as a single dose of 60 to 90 mg IV over 4 to 24 hours. Peak onset of action with these medications is usually seen in 24 to 96 hours and may last 2 to 3 weeks. The single dose of 90 mg IV of pamidronate is recommended for severe cases of hypercalcemia because of its effectiveness.

Zoledronic acid (Zometa) is a new-generation, nitrogen-containing bisphosphonate that has been shown to be superior to pamidronate at inhibiting the induction of hypercalcemia of malignancy. Zometa can be given over 5 minutes in a 4-mg dose for the initial treatment of hypercalcemia and an 8-mg dose for relapsed or refractory hypercalcemia. The duration of response with zoledronic acid is approximately 32 days with a 4-mg dose and 43 days with a 8-mg dose compared with 18 days with a 90-mg dose of pamidronate.

Calcitonin increases renal excretion of calcium and inhibits osteoclastic activity. In patients with hypercalcemia, calcitonin can be given at a dose of 4 to 8 IU/kg intramuscularly (IM) or subcutaneously (SC) every 6 to 12 hours. Commercial calcitonin preparations are generally from salmon. It has a rapid onset of action, and serum calcium levels may decrease within several hours. Its effect usually subsides after several days but may be potentiated by concomitant glucocorticoid administration.

Calcitonin has minimal side effects. Tachyphylaxis is seen with calcitonin, limiting its repeated usage and causing it to be less consistently effective compared with other available hypercalcemic treatments.

Glucocorticoids decrease the intestinal absorption of calcium, promote urinary excretion of calcium, and may lower calcium levels by a direct cytolytic effect on some tumor cells. Lowering of serum calcium by glucocorticoids may take 5 to 10 days. Dosages may vary from 20 to 100 mg of oral prednisone or its IV equivalent per day. Side effects limit the long-term use of glucocorticoids for hypercalcemia.

Another potent inhibitor of bone resorption is gallium nitrate. Its onset of action is usually seen in 1 to 2 days, with a peak at 5 to 10 days after administration. Gallium nitrate is administered in a dose of 100 to 200 mg/kg per day for 5 days in a continuous drip. It is important to maintain a saline diuresis of at least 2 L/d during this therapy. Side effects are relatively uncommon, but renal toxicity may be seen. Gallium nitrate in early studies was significantly more effective than calcitonin with or without the addition of corticosteroids. Its obvious disadvantage over the bisphosphonates is that it requires continuous IV infusion over 4 to 5 days.

Oral and IV phosphorus has been used successfully to treat hypercalcemia. It has fallen out of favor, however, because it causes decreased excretion of calcium from the kidneys. Intravenous phosphorus can also lead to soft-tissue deposition of calcium compounds and renal failure. It was used in patients with serum phosphorus levels less than 3 mg/dL and normal renal function. For patients with extremely high calcium levels and severe symptoms (e.g., coma, arrhythmia), renal dialysis may be necessary for rapid correction of hypercalcemia.

Plicamycin (Mithramycin) is an antibiotic that blocks bone resorption, thus lowering serum calcium. The recommended dose of plicamycin in the treatment of hypercalcemia is 25 mg/kg IV over 4 to 6 hours and may be repeated every 24 to 48 hours. Its onset of action is relatively quick, and peak action is usually noted in 2 to 3 days. Side effects can be severe and include nausea, vomiting, bleeding, thromboctopenia, renal failure, and hepatotoxicity. These side effects are more common with repeated doses of plicamycin. Because of these side effects, plicamycin usually is reserved for hypercalcemia of malignancy or hypercalcemia refractory to other therapies.

Magnesium

Magnesium has several functions in the human body. Its primary role is in neuromuscular function, but it also serves as an enzyme cofactor in protein and carbohydrate metabolism. The majority (60%) of magnesium in the body is contained within the bone. Most of the remainder is found intracellularly, with only about 1% found in the extracellular fluid. Normal serum magnesium levels are between 1.2 and 2.2 mEq/L. Magnesium metabolism depends on potassium and calcium levels. The kidney serves as the organ primarily responsible for magnesium homeostasis. Magnesium is filtered at the glomerulus and reabsorbed in the ascending loop of Henle and to a lesser degree in the proximal and distal tubules.

Hypomagnesemia

Hypomagnesemia is more common than hypermagnesemia. Hypomagnesemia results from decreased gastrointestinal absorption of magnesium, increased urinary excretion, or both. Microalbuminuria, which is an indicator of renal dysfunction, is associated with low magnesium levels. Patients with hypomagnesemia may experience symptoms such as fatigue, weakness, and muscle cramps. Hypomagnesemia can also affect cardiac function, leading to arrhythmias and cardiac arrest. Treatment of hypomagnesemia typically involves intravenous magnesium replacement or oral supplements, depending on the severity of the condition.
absorption with conditions such as chronic diarrhea, malabsorption syndromes, and nasogastric suction. Increased renal and gastrointestinal losses from osmotic diuresis, hypercalcaemia, and medications such as cisplatin, diuretics, and aminoglycosides also can cause hypomagnesemia. Hypomagnesemia can result from decreased intake in malnutrition. For example, 10% to 15% of hospitalized patients and more than half of patients in intensive care units exhibit low magnesium levels. Lastly, patients with heavy alcohol use may have hypomagnesemia.

Symptoms and signs of hypomagnesemia are usually nonspecific but may be manifested by neuromuscular excitability, cramps, tremors, fasciculations, and seizures. Typical ECG findings are prolonged PR and QT intervals; however, atrial and ventricular arrhythmias can result.

The treatment of hypomagnesemia involves the replacement of magnesium. Mild or chronic cases may be treated with oral magnesium supplements. Oral repletion is also preferred in asymptomatic patients. This is accomplished by giving 240 mg of elemental magnesium one to four times a day. Diarrhea is the most common side effect. For severe or acute cases, IV magnesium is indicated. Obstetricians and gynecologists are familiar with the 4-g magnesium load mixed with 50 mL of D5W to infuse over 30 minutes. Deep tendon reflexes should be evaluated frequently because hyperreflexia suggests hypermagnesemia and renal insufficiency. Long-term oral therapy can be provided with magnesium oxide, 300 mg/d. Patients should receive proper nutritional counseling and be warned to avoid alcohol. Any underlying medical disorder that may contribute to magnesium losses should be treated. Hydration status should be evaluated because overhydration can lead to mild forms of hypomagnesemia. Gastrointestinal tract losses and alcohol consumption also should be addressed in the evaluation of this disease process.

**Hypermagnesemia**

Hypermagnesemia is rare and usually iatrogenic. Causes of hypermagnesemia include therapy with magnesium-containing antacids or laxatives and secondary to administration of parenteral hyperalimentation. Often hypermagnesemia is seen in patients with some degree of renal insufficiency. Lastly, it can be seen in preclamptic or preterm labor patients treated with IV magnesium. Mild to moderate hypermagnesemia usually is asymptomatic, but patients with severe cases may present with several clinical manifestations. Clinical manifestations are normally seen if magnesium levels are greater than 4 mEq/L. Signs and symptoms include nausea, vomiting, weakness, lethargy, and somnolence. A prolonged PR interval, widening of the QRS complex, and increased T-wave amplitude can be seen with levels greater than 5 mEq/L. Areflexia occurs at levels above 6 to 7 mEq/L. Respiratory arrest, bradycardia, and hypotension can be seen when levels are higher than 10 to 11 mEq/L. Finally, cardiac arrest can occur when serum magnesium is above 14 mEq/L. Discontinuation of magnesium intake is the primary therapy for symptomatic hypermagnesemia. Patients with severe cases should be given 10%calcium gluconate, 10 to 20 mL IV over 10 minutes. The calcium therapy antagonizes the effects of magnesium and is cardioprotective. Supportive therapy and mechanical ventilation may be necessary in those with respiratory failure. Hemodialysis may be required in patients with hypermagnesemia and renal insufficiency.

**Phosphorus**

As with magnesium, the majority of phosphorus is contained with the bony skeleton and the intracellular space, and only 1% is found in the extracellular fluid. As a result, serum phosphate levels may not accurately reflect total body phosphate stores. A normal range for serum phosphorus is 3 to 4.5 mg/dL. Phosphorus serves as an important energy source by means of high-energy phosphates. It is a key component to protein and lipid structure, and is a vital component for carbohydrate metabolism.

**Hypophosphatemia**

Causes of hypophosphatemia defined as a serum phosphate below 2.5 mg/dL include a redistribution of phosphate into the cells, a decrease in intestinal absorption, or an increase in renal excretion. Several causes of hypophosphatemia are listed in Table 10.14. Most patients with mild hypophosphatemia are asymptomatic. Moderate to severe hypophosphatemia causes neuromuscular abnormalities, including weakness, rhabdomyolysis, paresthesias, confusion, seizures, and coma. Erythrocyte, leukocyte, and platelet dysfunction also can be seen because of a depletion of cellular adenosine triphosphate (ATP) and 2,3-diphosphoglycerate.

Most patients with serum phosphate levels between 1 and 2.5 mg/dL usually are asymptomatic. Treatment is aimed at correcting the underlying cause. In cases of chronic hypophosphatemia, oral repletion can be instituted at a dose of 500 to 1,000 mg of elemental phosphorus two to three times per day, and the most common side effect is diarrhea. This can be given in the form of sodium/potassium phosphate tablets called Neutra-Phos or Neutra-Phos K (each contains 250 mg of elemental phosphorus). Parenteral administration of phosphorus is indicated when serum phosphate levels are below 1 mg/dL. Infusion at a dose of 2.5 to 5 mg elemental phosphorus/kg given every 6 hours is recommended. When the serum levels are greater than 1.5 to 2 mg/dL, patients may be switched to oral supplements. Care must be taken to avoid hypophosphatemia. Also, concomitant calcium supplementation often is needed to prevent hypocalcemia. Serum magnesium, calcium, and potassium levels should be monitored closely.

**Hyperphosphatemia**

Hyperphosphatemia is relatively rare and is seen with either an increased endogenous or exogenous phosphate load or with a decrease in renal clearance of phosphate. Renal failure is the most common cause of hyperphosphatemia.

**Table 10.14**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of Moderate to Severe Hypophosphatemia (&lt;1.5 mg/dL)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory alkalosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malabsorption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperalimentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperparathyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive alcohol use</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Elevated phosphorus levels also may be seen secondary to rhabdomyolysis, tumor lysis syndrome, hyperparathyroidism, and respiratory or metabolic acidosis. Clinical manifestations include numbness, tingling, muscle cramps, paresthesias, and tetany and are caused by hypocalcemia. Hyperphosphatemia causes hypocalcemia by decreasing calcium absorption from the gastrointestinal tract. Addressing the underlying cause is the cornerstone of management for hyperphosphatemia. In acute cases, saline diuresis can be used in patients with normal renal function. Additionally, administration of glucose and insulin causes a shift in phosphorus from extracellular fluid to the intracellular space. Dialysis may be required if renal failure is present. Oral phosphate binders such as calcium carbonate can be used in patients with chronic hyperphosphatemia.

**ACID–BASE METABOLISM**

Chemicals that are able to provide a hydrogen ion (H+) such as HCl and H2CO3 are defined as acids. Bases are defined as chemicals with the ability to accept a (H+). The acidity of a solution is governed by the concentration of hydrogen ions it contains. The pH of a system is defined as the negative logarithm of hydrogen ions expressed in moles per liter (mol/L). The normal pH of human ECF ranges from 7.35 to 7.45.

**Buffer Systems**

In order for optimal cellular function to occur within the body, the pH must remain in this range. Humans have the ability to absorb excess acids or alkali in circumstances of abnormal pH. The lungs correct for acid-base disorders in an acute setting until the kidneys can compensate. In acidotic states, patients will hyperventilate to decrease CO2 levels in the blood. Conversely, in alkalotic states, patients will hypoventilate, driving up the level of CO2 in the blood. Renal function will gradually compensate by retaining or releasing bicarbonate and hydrogen ions. The most important human buffer system is the bicarbonate system. It is the principal extracellular buffer. This buffer system is described by the Henderson-Hasselbach equation.

\[
pH = 6.1 + \log (\text{HCO}_3^-) / (\text{PaCO}_2)
\]

where:

- 6.1 = pK a = 0.03 mmol/L/mm Hg at 38°C (solubility coefficient).

Organic phosphates, bicarbonate, and peptides are the major intracellular buffers.

Table 10.15 shows the directional changes in acid-base parameters for the primary acid-base disorders. If the kidney detects a respiratory acidotic state, CO2 and H2O in renal tubule cells are converted by carbonic anhydrase to carbonic acid (H2CO3). This dissociates into H2CO3 which is secreted back into ECF and H2O, which is exchanged for sodium from the renal tubule. This in effect causes excretion of the hydrogen ion into the urine, where it is buffered with ammonium and phosphate ions or acted on by carbonic anhydrase (in the tubule) to ultimately form CO2 and H2O. The CO2 is absorbed back into the cell, where more bicarbonate can be generated to buffer ECF acidosis. If a patient has a respiratory alkalosis, available levels of CO2 are low, causing a decrease in hydrogen excretion. Figure 10.6 shows the expected range of arterial pH, PaCO2, and bicarbonate concentrations for primary acid-base disturbances. Figure 10.7 shows a simplified means of determining the acid-base status of patient given pH and PaCO2. A line is drawn between the pH and PaCO2 lines and extended to the line marked “fixed acids.” If the patient has a pH of 7.1 and a PaCO2 of 70, she has a respiratory acidosis, because the line

**TABLE 10.15**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acid-base disturbance</th>
<th>Primary (initiating) event</th>
<th>Secondary (compensatory) event</th>
<th>Resultant change in blood H+ and pH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic acidosis</td>
<td>↓ HCO3–</td>
<td>↑ PCO2</td>
<td>H+ ↑, pH ↓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic alkalosis</td>
<td>↑ HCO3–</td>
<td>↓ PCO2</td>
<td>H+ ↓, pH ↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory acidosis</td>
<td>↑ PaCO2</td>
<td>Negligible ↑ HCO3–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic (3-7 days or longer)</td>
<td>↑ PaCO2</td>
<td>Important ↑ HCO3–</td>
<td>H+ ↑, pH ↓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory alkalosis</td>
<td>↓ PaCO2</td>
<td>↓ HCO3–</td>
<td>H+ ↓, pH ↑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
drawn falls within the normal range of fixed acids. If, however, she has a pH of 7 and a Pa\textsubscript{co\textsubscript{2}} of 38, she would have a pure metabolic acidosis with no compensation. A pH of 7.3 with a Pa\textsubscript{co\textsubscript{2}} of 27 characterizes a patient with respiratory alkalosis with metabolic compensation.

### Anion Gap

The definition of anion gap is \(\text{Na}^+ - (\text{Cl}^- + \text{HCO}_3^-)\). The normal anion gap is approximately 12 ± 2 mEq/L. In most circumstances, the difference between serum Na\textsuperscript{+} and the combination of serum Cl\textsuperscript{−} and HCO\textsubscript{3}\textsuperscript{−} is a general measure of the combination of serum proteins, sulfate anions, inorganic phosphates, and organic acids. Anion gap calculation may aid in determining the underlying cause of both simple and mixed forms of acid/base disturbances.

### Primary Acid–Base Disorders

#### Metabolic Acidosis

Metabolic acidosis begins as a reduction in plasma HCO\textsubscript{3} and a rise in H\textsuperscript{+}. In response to these changes, alveolar ventilation is increased, resulting in a decrease in Pa\textsubscript{co\textsubscript{2}} and restoration of H\textsuperscript{+} toward normal (see Fig. 10.6 for appropriate decrease in Pa\textsubscript{co\textsubscript{2}} for given HCO\textsubscript{3}– reduction in metabolic acidosis).

Metabolic acidosis can be divided into normal anion gap and increased anion gap acidosis. Table 10.16 shows the major causes of metabolic acidosis.

**Increased Anion Gap.** Renal failure, either acute or chronic, can result in an increased anion gap metabolic acidosis resulting from the kidneys’ inability to excrete inorganic acids, such as phosphate and sulfate. Organic acid accumulation also results in an increased anion gap metabolic acidosis. In the case of lactic acidosis, cellular respiration is disturbed. This occurs as a result of anaerobic glycolysis in muscle, red blood cells, and other tissues. Conditions such as shock, hypoxemia, and septicemia can produce lactic acidosis by causing inadequate oxygen delivery to tissues. Conditions such as diabetic ketoacidosis, alcoholic ketoacidosis, and starvation cause an accelerated rate of organic acid production by lipolysis and ketogenesis. Ingestion of substances such as salicylates, methanol, ethylene glycol, and paraldehyde can result in an increased anion gap metabolic acidosis.

**Normal Anion Gap.** Normal anion gap metabolic acidosis occurs with abnormal increases in net bicarbonate losses. This can occur when the kidney fails to reabsorb bicarbonate in proximal renal tubular acidosis. The administration of carbonic anhydrase inhibitors can also cause normal anion gap metabolic acidosis. Excessive diarrhea or small bowel/pancreatic drainage can cause bicarbonate losses from the gastrointestinal tract. Hyperchloremic acidosis occurs when the kidney fails to regenerate bicarbonate in conditions such as distal renal tubular acidosis and hyporeninemic hyperaldosteronism. Lastly, administration of acid salts can result in chloremic acidosis.

### MANAGEMENT

The treatment for metabolic acidosis depends on the severity of acidosis and the underlying cause. A clinical manifestation of metabolic acidosis is hyperventilation. In the surgical patient, metabolic acidosis is commonly due to hypoxia secondary to inadequate tissue perfusion and subsequent accumulation of...
Metabolic Alkalosis

Metabolic alkalosis occurs when extracellular bicarbonate concentration is increased and renal excretion of this excess bicarbonate is decreased. This cascade may begin with the loss of a hydrogen ion. The major causes of metabolic alkalosis are listed in Table 10.17.

One of the most common causes of metabolic alkalosis is vomiting or gastric suction. Volume contraction ensues, and bicarbonate is saved in the kidneys. Hypercalcemia can result in an increase in proximal tubular bicarbonate reabsorption. The mechanism for alkalosis in these conditions is an increase in bicarbonate via mineralocorticoid excess condition such as hyperaldosteronism, Bartter syndrome, Liddle syndrome, and Cushing syndrome can cause metabolic alkalosis. The mechanism for alkalosis in these conditions is an increase in bicarbonate via the kidneys. Hypercalcemia can result in an increase in proximal tubular reabsorption of bicarbonate leading to metabolic alkalosis.

### Table 10.17

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major Causes of Metabolic Alkalosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extracellular volume depletion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineralocorticoid excess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased renal acid excretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Massive alkali administration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alkalosis can be reversed with adequate ventilation. Inadequate alveolar ventilation leads to respiratory acidosis. As the pH drops, the bicarbonate rises. This is easily reversed by adequate ventilation. The treatment for respiratory acidosis is to increase alveolar ventilation by endotracheal intubation, mechanical ventilation, or bronchodilation. Within minutes, severe respiratory acidosis can be reversed with adequate ventilation.
In patients with chronic respiratory acidosis, severe posthyperventilatory alkalosis develops if the Paco\textsubscript{2} is rapidly restored to normal and the patient is unable to initiate and sustain a bicarbonate diuresis. This inability usually results from sodium chloride or potassium chloride deficits. If sodium chloride or potassium chloride is provided to correct volume contraction and intracellular potassium deficits, a bicarbonate diuresis ensues, and correction of metabolic alkalosis is achieved.

**Respiratory Alkalosis**

Respiratory alkalosis occurs when hyperventilation decreases Paco\textsubscript{2}, resulting in an increase in pH. Hyperventilation may be secondary to conditions such as pulmonary embolism and CHF, which can cause hypoxia. Fever, sepsis, salicylate toxicity, and hepatic failure all can increase alveolar ventilation and cause respiratory alkalosis. This condition can also be iatrogenically induced by mechanical ventilation. Chronic hyperventilation can be seen in pregnancy, exposure to high altitudes, and underlying pulmonary disease.

**Management**

The symptoms of acute respiratory alkalosis (e.g., paresthesia, lightheadedness, tetany) can be rapidly controlled by raising Paco\textsubscript{2} to normal (e.g., by rebreathing into a paper bag). If the patient is being supported on a ventilator, the dead space can be increased, or tidal volume and respiratory rate can be decreased while oxygenation is maintained. Definitive treatment consists of removing the cause of hyperventilation. Respiratory alkalosis also can cause tetany and seizures and predispose to cardiac arrhythmias (by causing an intracellular shift of potassium), particularly in patients receiving digitalis. If the patient is septic, aggressive measures should be taken to alleviate this. She should be treated with appropriate antibiotics and adequate volume replacement. Surgery may be necessary if the patient has an abscess.

Mixed acid–base disturbances can commonly be seen in severely ill patients. Arterial blood gas measurements and careful evaluation of compensatory changes in the pH, HCO\textsubscript{3}–, and Pae\textsubscript{CO}\textsubscript{2} are necessary in the workup and management of these patients. The treatment of mixed acid–base disturbances is aimed at the underlying disease process.

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- Maintenance fluids in a hospitalized patient should be calculated by one of two formulas. The 4–2–1 rule recommends administering 60 mL/kg of fluid for the first 20 kg of body weight, then subtracting 20 from the patient’s weight in kg and adding this difference to calculate the hourly rate. The alternative method for calculating maintenance fluids is to take the body surface area and multiply by 1,000 to come up with the daily fluid requirement in mL.

- The initial step in correcting either hyponatremia or hypernatremia is an accurate assessment of the patient’s volume status (decreased, normal, or increased).

- In severe life-threatening hyperkalemia (ECG showing sine waves and broad QRS complexes), patients should first receive 10 mL of calcium gluconate IV for cardioprotective purposes. These patients should then receive an amp of D50, 10 units of regular insulin, and 50 mEq of sodium bicarbonate. Subsequently, these patients should then receive 20 to 50 g of Kayexalate every 2 to 4 hours and infusions of glucose and insulin.

- In the treatment of severe hypokalemia, potassium should never run at a rate greater than 10 mEq/h, and solutions should not contain more than 40 mEq/L of potassium.
Magnesium metabolism is closely related to potassium and calcium levels. In cases of symptomatic hypocalcemia, mag- nesium and potassium must be checked and corrected ac- cordingly.

For any acid-base disturbance, it is important to elucidate the underlying cause for both the diagnosis and treatment to be effective and successful.

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT**

This chapter is based on material from Water, Electrolyte, and Acid–Base Metabolism by Claire M. Fritsche, Lee A. Hebert, and Jacob LeMann Jr., which appeared in the seventh edition of Te Linde’s Operative Gynecology.

---

**Bibliography**


CHAPTER 11  ■  POSTOPERATIVE INFECTIONS: PREVENTION AND MANAGEMENT

W. DAVID HAGER AND JOHN W. LARSEN

DEFINITIONS

Bacteremia—Infection of the bloodstream can complicate any pelvic infection, but is seen more frequently in association with abscesses, peritonitis, and septic pelvic thrombophlebitis.

Cuff cellulitis—A soft tissue infection of the surgical margin in the upper vagina where the uterus was removed.

Drug fever—Elevated temperature that is due to an allergic reaction to medications.

Febrile morbidity—A temperature of 38°C (100.4°F) or greater recorded on two occasions, at least 6 hours apart, more than 24 hours after the surgical procedure.

Necrotizing fasciitis—A severe synergistic bacterial infection of the fascia, subcutaneous tissue, and skin that is usually caused by group A hemolytic streptococci, often in combination with other bacteria.

Surgical wound class—The surgical wound infection rate per 100 operations in the United States by wound class is 2.1% for clean, 3.3% for clean-contaminated, 6.4% for contaminated, and 7.1% for dirty or infected cases.

Urinary tract infection (UTI)—A collection of blood originating from an oozing vascular pedicle or along the vaginal cuff. If the collection becomes infected, it is an abscess.

Vaginal cuff hematoma/cuff abscess—A walled-off collection of blood originating from an anastomizing vascular pedicle or along the vaginal cuff. If the collection becomes infected, it is an abscess.

Wound cellulitis—Soft-tissue infection localized to the skin and adipose tissue above the fascia that is characterized by erythema, warmth, and swelling, as well as tenderness.

Wound seroma—A collection of serous fluid beneath the skin surface.

Infection complicating surgical procedures has been the conundrum of gynecologists since the first operations were performed. Even when medical and surgical care are beyond reproach, infectious morbidity can complicate the postoperative course. Unfortunately, using antibiotics prophylactically at the time of surgery does not eliminate this risk of infection.

It is imperative that the gynecologic surgeon understand basic infectious disease concepts to treat infected patients appropriately. Diagnosis and treatment are not guess work but depend on understanding basic principles.

In evaluating the incidence of postoperative infection in published studies, it is important to consider whether infectious morbidity or febrile morbidity was used to define infection, what the socioeconomic status of the population studied was, whether antibiotic prophylaxis was used, and whether there

Certain risk factors play a role in increasing postoperative infection rates. Knowledge of these factors can enable the surgeon to take action to alter those risks. There are various types of postoperative infection, each with its own unique time of onset and usual bacterial etiology. Knowledge about likely causes of a disorder can facilitate decision making when an antibiotic is empirically selected to treat the patient.

Appropriate patient evaluation, including proper culturing techniques, is critical to this diagnostic process. Steps to prevent infection must become routine with every surgeon on every case. These steps are necessary not only for the operator, but also for all personnel participating in the surgical and medical treatment of the patient. These steps are described later in this chapter.
were other confounding variables that might have influenced infection rates (e.g., multiple surgical procedures, experience of the surgeon, or site of the study).

Prospective studies report the incidence of acute pelvic infection after abdominal hysterectomy to be 3.9% to 50%. The range for infection after vaginal hysterectomy is 1.7% to 64%. The incidence of septic pelvic thrombophlebitis (SPT) after gynecologic procedures is 0.1% to 0.3%.

**VAGINAL FLORA**

The most frequent source of bacteria that cause postoperative pelvic infection among women is the vagina. The vagina is colonized by large numbers of a variety of bacteria that normally exist in a symbiotic relationship. Several factors influence the vaginal flora, including age, sexual activity, stage of the menstrual cycle, use of antibiotic or immunosuppressive agents, and any invasive procedure.

Mean bacterial counts in vaginal secretions are $10^5$ to $10^8$ bacteria/mL, with three to six different species present. The most frequent aerobic bacteria are *Lactobacilli*, *Gardnerella vaginalis*, *Staphylococcus epidermidis*, *Corynebacterium sp*, *Enterococcus faecalis*, *Enterobacteriaceae*. Anaerobes outnumber aerobes and include *Peptostreptococcus sp*, *Peptococcus sp*, *Prevotella bivia*, *Prevotella disiens*, and members of the *Bacteroides fragilis* group (Table 11.1). These same bacteria are frequently isolated from sites of pelvic infection among women who have undergone gynecologic surgery. This indicates, as Schottmueller proposed at the turn of the century, that pelvic infections are principally a result of endogenous sources of bacteria. The concepts of antibiotic prophylaxis and antiseptic douching before surgery or prophylactic and antiseptic gel are related to reducing these rates.

Prospective studies report the incidence of acute pelvic infection after vaginal hysterectomy to be 0.1% to 0.5%. The incidence of septic pelvic thrombophlebitis (SPT) after gynecologic surgery is 0.1% to 0.3%.

**RISK FACTORS FOR POSTOPERATIVE INFECTION**

Several factors may increase the infectious morbidity of postoperative patients (Table 11.2). Of all the factors mentioned, the most basic appears to be immunocompromise. Anything that plays a role in altering the host’s own defense mechanisms can result in a greater chance of infectious morbidity.

Some risk factors can be controlled by the surgeon, whereas others cannot be influenced by the surgeon or operative team and must be dealt with as they occur. Lower socioeconomic status is a risk factor for infection in gynecologic surgery. Although economic status is convenient for epidemiologic studies, the clinical effect is believed to be a result of inadequate nutrition and poor hygiene. Obesity is another risk factor for infection, probably reflecting poor hygiene, altered nutrition, risk of diabetes, and prolonged operative time. These result in altered wound healing and greater possibilities for infection.

When a hysterectomy is performed through an infected operative site, there is an increased risk of postoperative infection. Likewise, contamination of the operative field by break in sterile technique or injury to the bowel promotes infection. Young age has been considered a risk factor for posthysterectomy infection, although the exact reason is unclear. This increased risk in younger patients may result from the presence of more virulent bacteria in the vagina or increased vascularity and difficulty in obtaining adequate hemostasis. Other factors are not as clear-cut and may result from interacting effects. For example, duration of surgery is considered to be a risk for infection in most studies, but this actually may reflect experience of the operating surgeon, complexity of the case, or a greater chance of inadequate hemostasis. Lack of adequate hemostasis results in an increased risk of postoperative infection, especially of abdominal incisions. No data, however, have indicated that raising the volume of red blood cells decreases the rate of infection. Leaving an excessive amount of devitalized tissue (e.g., large, ligated pedicles) can predispose to a greater risk of infection. Pedicles should

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>BACTERIA COMPOSING NORMAL VAGINAL FLORA</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Aerobes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Staphylococcus aureus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Staphylococcus epidermidis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group B streptococci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Streptococcus viridans</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Enterococcus faecalis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bacteroides</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Corynebacterium sp</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Escherichia coli</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gardnerella vaginalis</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RISK FACTORS FOR POSTOPERATIVE INFECTION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk Factor</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Altered immunocompetence</td>
<td>Premenopausal age, obesity, radicular surgery, bacterial vaginosis, prolonged preoperative hospitalization, excessive intraoperative blood loss, hematoma or serous fluid collection, operator inexperience, lower socioeconomic status, prolonged operative time, poor nutrition, excessive devitalized tissue, foreign bodies, diabetes mellitus, systemic disease, failure to use prophylactic antibiotics, surgery in an infected operative site</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
always an element of induration, erythema, and edema in the operative course may have been completely benign. There is discharge from the hospital. These patients’ immediate post-infection usually begin late in the hospital course or even after vagina where the uterus was removed. Symptoms and signs of Cuff cellulitis is an infection of the surgical margin in the upper vagina where the uterus was removed. Aerobic gram-negative bacilli Escherichia coli Proteus mirabilis Klebsiella sp Gardnerella vaginalis Anaerobes Peptostreptococcus sp Peptococcus sp Prevotella bivia Prevotella disiens Bacteroides melaninogenicus Bacteroides capillosus Bacteroides fragilis group B fragilis B vulgatus B fragilis B distasonis B vulgatus Clostridium perfringens Fusobacterium sp PATHOGENS RESPONSIBLE FOR INFECTIONS AFTER G YNECOLOGIC SURGERY

All women have bacteria colonizing the vagina in greater or lesser numbers. Women without symptoms have a mean of 4.2 species present. It is these same bacteria normally existing in a symbiotic relationship that ultimately can invade tissue altered by surgery, leading to clinical infection. The virulence of the bacteria and the volume inoculated are countered by the host’s immune defense mechanisms and may be aided by prophylactic antibiotics to combat the occurrence of infection.

The bacteria listed in Table 11.3, which are responsible for postoperative infection after gynecologic surgery, are the same organisms that can be recovered from vaginal cultures of women before hysterectomy, according to Hemsell. The volume of bacteria present and their proximity to the operative site promote a polymicrobial infection in women who experience posthysterectomy infectious morbidity. Aerobic bacteria may initiate the infectious process; as tissue is devitalized and undrained collections of blood are ideal sites for infection to occur. Once the infection has begun, the body’s host immune defense mechanisms initiate an inflammatory response and attempt to wall off and localize the infection. Infected hematomas and abscesses can result.

**CATEGORIES OF INFECTION**

Not all women who have temperature elevation after gynecologic surgery are infected, and not all of those who are infected have the same clinical syndrome. It is important to categorize the infectious process because treatment can vary accordingly.

**Cuff Cellulitis**

Cuff cellulitis is an infection of the surgical margin in the upper vagina where the uterus was removed. Symptoms and signs of cellulitis usually begin late in the hospital course or even after discharge from the hospital. These patients’ immediate post-operative course may have been completely benign. There is always an element of induration, erythema, and edema in the vaginal cuff immediately after hysterectomy. If the patient becomes infected, she will often have initial symptoms of lower abdominal pain, pelvic pain, back pain, fever, and abnormal vaginal discharge. Examination may reveal persistent hyperemia, induration, and tenderness of the vaginal cuff and possibly purulent discharge along with fever. The parametrial and adnexal areas are nontender. The white blood cell count usually is mildly to moderately elevated. Gram-positive aerobes, facultative Gram-negative aerobes, and obligate anaerobes can all contribute to the cause of cuff cellulitis. Single- or multiple-agent broad-spectrum coverage is effective in treating this infection, although single agents usually are preferred to reduce costs and the likelihood of an allergic reaction.

**Infected Vaginal Cuff Hematoma or Cuff Abscess**

Hysterectomy can result in small amounts of oozing from vascular pedicles or along the vaginal cuff. This bleeding may result in a walled-off collection of blood called a hematoma. If this localized mass above the vaginal cuff becomes infected, an abscess may result. Bacteria, especially anaerobes, flourish in this environment. Women with a vaginal cuff abscess present with fever that is usually early in the postoperative period. Other symptoms include chills, pelvic pain, and rectal pressure. Clinical findings include temperature elevation; lower abdominal and vaginal cuff tenderness; the presence of a tender, fluctuant mass near

---

**TABLE 11.3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathogens Responsible for Infections after Gynecologic Surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aerobic gram-positive cocci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staphylococcus aureus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Staphylococcus epidermidis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcus viridans group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group B streptococci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Streptococcus faecalis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerobic gram-negative bacilli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escherichia coli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proteus mirabilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Klebsiella sp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gardnerella vaginalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaerobes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peptostreptococcus sp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Peptococcus</em> sp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevotella bivia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevotella disiens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacteroides melaninogenicus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacteroides capillosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacteroides fragilis group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B fragilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B vulgatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clostridium perfringens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Fusobacterium</em> sp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the cuff, and, occasionally, purulent drainage from the cuff. The pain and tenderness is often more predominant on one side.

As an infected cuff hematoma actually can present later in the postoperative course because an abscess is usually associated with a drop in the hemoglobin and hematocrit levels. The hematoma may not be readily palpable but can be delineated on pelvic ultrasound or computed tomographic (CT) scan.

Postoperative Ovarian Abscess

The patient who develops fever and abdominal and pelvic pain late in the postoperative hospital course or after hospital discharge may have a pelvic abscess, possibly of ovarian origin. If there is a sudden increase in abdominal or pelvic pain, a rupture may have occurred. A ruptured abscess should be managed as a surgical emergency with a laparotomy and excision or drainage of the infected mass. The inciting site for an ovarian abscess is a place of recent follicle expulsion or a site of surgical trauma to an ovary in a premenopausal woman. Ovaries should not be aspirated or probed at the time of hysterectomy for fear that bacteria from the vagina may penetrate the ovary and initiate infection. Once again, anaerobes are the predominant bacteria in an ovarian abscess.

If an ovarian abscess is suspected, then a CT scan should be ordered. The CT scan not only identifies the size and location of the abscess but also allows for visualization and evaluation of the ureters, bladder, and colon. A pelvic ultrasound also may be useful to localize the abscess. Many abscesses respond to broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy; but if a tender, fluctuant mass persists, drainage is necessary. A radiologic interventionist may be able to accomplish percutaneous drainage with a needle or catheter using CT or ultrasound guidance, or colpotomy drainage may be possible. For colpotomy drainage to be accomplished safely, the abscess must be fluctuant, fixed to the cul-de-sac, and dissecting the upper third of the rectovaginal septum. With either approach, a closed-suction drain should be placed to ensure complete and continued evacuation during the next 2 to 3 days.

Septic Pelvic Thrombophlebitis

Septic pelvic thrombophlebitis (SPT) complicates gynecologic surgery in 0.1% to 0.5% of procedures. It is usually a diagnosis of exclusion, made when a postoperative patient with febrile morbidity does not respond to appropriate parenteral antibiotic therapy in the absence of an undrained abscess or infected hematoma. The development of SPT is enhanced by venous stasis (e.g., obesity, diabetes), vascular injury, or bacterial contamination of pelvic vessels.

Two forms of SPT have been described. The classic form is seen in association with abdominal surgery. This form occurs 2 to 4 days after surgery and is characterized by fever, tachycardia, gastrointestinal distress, unilateral abdominal pain, and, in 50% to 67% of cases, a palpable abdominal cord resulting from acute thrombus formation. The enigmatic form complicates parturition or pelvic surgery and is characterized by spiking temperatures despite clinical improvement on antibiotics; tachycardia during the temperature spikes; and small, diffusely scattered thrombi in small pelvic vessels. Pelvic findings are minimal in both forms. The diagnosis often may be confirmed by CT scan or magnetic resonance imaging.

The traditional mainstream of treatment for SPT is anticoagulation with heparin for 7 to 10 days. Some experts recommend changing antibiotics or extending coverage before heparin is considered. All patients should be treated with antibiotics effective against heparinase-producing Bacteroides sp. Long-term anticoagulation is not required unless septic pulmonary emboli have occurred. Lysis of fever may occur 24 to 48 hours after starting heparin, yet other cases may require much longer for complete resolution. Treatment should be continued until the patient is afebrile for 48 hours and clinically well.

Osteomyelitis Pubis

Osteomyelitis pubis rarely complicates gynecologic procedures adjacent to the symphysis pubis, such as retroperitoneal renal suspension, radical vulvectomy, or pelvic exenteration. Direct or contiguous seeding of the peristium from pelvic bacteria results in a delayed-onset infection 6 to 8 weeks after the original procedure. Patients report pain and tenderness along the symphysis pubis, especially with ambulation. Low-grade fever, an elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate, and a moderate leukocytosis have been reported, as well as positive cultures from blood or the bone itself. Aggressive antibiotic therapy covering *Staphylococcus aureus* and facultative Gram-negative bacilli is essential for adequate recovery. If the response is not adequate, surgical debridement of the pubis is necessary.

Wound Infection

Surgical wound infection is possible with any transabdominal gynecologic procedure, but especially with those that are contaminated. Extensive study of the epidemiology of wound infections resulted in a classification of operative wounds in relation to contamination and increasing risk of infection. Because the vagina is entered during hysterectomy, even an uninfected hysterectomy is classified as a clean-contaminated operation. Fortunately, prophylactic antibiotics and minimally invasive, laparoscopic procedures have greatly reduced the risk of severe, surgical wound infections.

The rates of wound infection according to case classification of the operative wound are summarized in Table 11.5. Culver and colleagues, using the National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance System, reported the percentage of operations in the United States by wound class and the surgical wound infection rate per 100 operations to be 2.1% for clean, 3.3% for clean-contaminated, 6.8% for contaminated, and 7.1% for dirty or infected cases. The more contaminated the operative site, the greater is the risk of wound infection. Fortunately, despite polymicrobial contamination by bacteria from the vagina when it is entered at the time of hysterectomy, prophylactic antibiotics, adequate host resistance, and good surgical technique result in most patients avoiding wound infection.

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) definitions of surgical wound infection were modified by Horan et al. This system divides infections into two major categories: (a) an organ/space surgical site infection (SSI), and (b) superfi- cial and deep incision infection. An SSI may be in any anatomic area that was opened or manipulated during a surgical procedure other than the incision itself. This would include most of the infections that develop after hysterectomy. It must develop within 30 days of the procedure and be accompanied by one of the following: diagnosis by a surgeon or attending
CLASSIFICATION OF OPERATIVE WOUNDS IN RELATION TO CONTAMINATION AND INCREASING RISK OF INFECTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wound class</th>
<th>Surgical wound infection rate (per 100 operations)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clean</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contaminated</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contaminated</td>
<td>4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean-contaminated</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Wound Cellulitis
Abdominal wound infections are categorized by their location and severity. The least severe are localized to the skin and subcutaneous tissue. Wound cellulitis is characterized by erythema, warmth, and swelling, as well as tenderness. If there is no purulent drainage, antibiotic therapy alone with a cephalosporin or augmented penicillin often is effective. Staphylococcus aureus, coagulase-negative staphylococci, and streptococci cause most of these infections.

Wound Seroma
A collection of serous fluid beneath the skin surface is a seroma. A small amount of serous drainage may be managed with limited opening of the incision, drainage, and cleansing. Larger collections may require more extensive incision and drainage.

Deep Wound Infection
When purulent drainage is noted, the wound should be opened widely to allow drainage and removal of necrotic tissue. If the fascia is intact, healing is hastened by mechanical debridement followed by loose, wet-to-dry packing with gauze moistened with saline; dilute hydrogen peroxide (1:1 mixture with saline) or Dakin's solution, 0.5%. Povidone-iodine is to be discouraged because it does not promote the development of granulation tissue. An antibiotic effective against anaerobes must be used.

Necrotizing Fascitis
This severe complication results from synergistic bacterial infection of the fascia, subcutaneous tissue, and skin. This rapidly progressive infection is characterized by cyanosis of the skin and frequently blistering necrosis. It is most commonly caused by group A, beta-hemolytic streptococci, but may be a polymicrobial, synergistic infection with anaerobic bacteria or Clostridium perfringens. It is seen more frequently in diabetic and immunocompromised patients. Patients present with severe pain in the area of involvement; clinical signs of sepsis; and a viscous, cloudy, malodorous drainage. The wound edges may be purple or even necrotic. If gangrene occurs in the area of fascitis, bullae of the skin and crepitations in the subcutaneous tissue may be seen. Treatment includes antibiotics effective against streptococci and anaerobes, plus prompt and extensive resection of the tissue involved.

Urinary Tract Infection
Infection of the lower urinary tract is a frequent complication of gynecologic surgery. The patient may have low-grade fever, dysuria, frequency, and urgency, but in many situations has no symptoms. The criterion for defining a urinary tract infection
tibiotics or anesthetics, pyrogenic reactions to tissue trauma, include pulmonary atelectasis, hypersensitivity reactions to an-
fever are not infectious in origin. Possible noninfectious causes
and/or tenderness around the incision, drain, or intravenous
infusion site; leg pain; tenderness or swelling; costovertebral
angle (CVA) tenderness; cough; or dysuria. When any of these
or other signs or symptoms alerts the surgeon to the possibil-
ity of a postoperative infection, an appropriate workup is indi-
cated. A diagnosis of infection should be made or at least a high
probability of infection should be present before antibiotics are
started.

**Drug Fever**
This diagnosis should be considered when appropriate par-
enteral antibiotics have been used and there are no localizing
signs of infection and no undrained collection of fluid. Fevers
are usually steady but can fluctuate. Many patients exhibit an
eosinophilia. The antibiotic(s) should be discontinued.

**EVALUATION OF THE PATIENT WITH SUSPECTED INFECTION**
Fever is the most common sign of postoperative infection, but it is important to remember that fever is not always, or indeed
not usually, caused by infection in the postoperative patient (Table 11.6). In a large study of 537 women who underwent
major gynecologic surgery, Fanning et al. found that 39% de-
veloped postoperative fever, but only 17 patients (8%) actu-
ally had a documented infection. Other signs and symptoms
of postoperative infection can include erythema, induration,
and/or tenderness around the incision, drain, or intravenous
infusion site; leg pain; tenderness or swelling; costovertebral
angle (CVA) tenderness; cough; or dysuria. When any of these
or other signs or symptoms alerts the surgeon to the possibil-
ity of a postoperative infection, an appropriate workup is indi-
cated. A diagnosis of infection should be made or at least a high
probability of infection should be present before antibiotics are
started.

**History**
Careful history taking often can be the source of helpful clues to
the cause of postoperative infection. The time of onset of the
complicating infection is important. Ledger emphasized that
the interval between surgery and the onset of fever is helpful
in determining the cause of infection. For example, Garibaldi
and colleagues suggested that most cases of early postoperative
fever are not infectious in origin. Possible noninfectious causes
include pulmonary atelectasis, hypersensitivity reactions to an-
tibiotics or anesthetics, pyrogenic reactions to tissue trauma,
or hematoma formation. Infectious causes of early postopera-
tive fever include aspiration pneumonia, group A beta-hemolytic
streptococcal wound infection, or surgery in a previously in-
fected site (e.g., pelvic inflammatory disease or recent D&C or
cone biopsy). Other important aspects of history include the surgical procedures performed (e.g., abdominal versus vaginal
approach, whether ovaries were invaded), risk factors encoun-
tered (pelvic abscess, bowel injury), use of antibiotic prophyl-
axis, symptoms, and whether the patient had any ancillary
illnesses (smoking history, history of cardiac valvular disease, immuno suppression).

**Physical Examination**
Gynecologic surgeons tend to focus on the pelvis as the source of
all postoperative infections. Instead, a comprehensive eval-
uation of the entire patient should be carried out. The upper
respiratory tract should be examined to rule out otitis, pharyn-
gitis, and bronchitis and the lower respiratory tract to rule out
pneumonia. The gastrointestinal tract should be checked to
evaluate bowel function, distention, and tenderness. Breast
examination is usually only important in postpartum patients.
The urinary tract should be evaluated, and the possibility of
pyelonephritis must be considered. Intravenous access, espe-
cially central lines or other indwelling foreign bodies, should
be carefully inspected and palpated for evidence of infection.
The surgical wound must be examined carefully, and if the
site of infection has not been identified or symptoms suggest
a pelvic infection, a pelvic examination should be carried out.
The pelvic examination should evaluate the vaginal cuff for
discharge, erythema, and induration. Palpation for tenderness
and for masses should be done and cultures obtained if pus is
identified.
Laboratory and Imaging Evaluation

In recent years, it has become clear that a routine postoperative "fever workup"—including a variety of studies, such as a complete blood count, urine analysis, chest X-rays, and multiple cultures—is largely unwarranted in identifying the site of postoperative infections. A careful history and physical examination are the best guides to which laboratory tests, if any, are indicated. In a retrospective review of 257 patients who underwent major gynecologic surgery, Lyon et al. found that a urine culture was positive in only 9% of the patients who were febrile and only 1.5% of all febrile patients having a significant finding. Similar results were described by Fanning et al., who also noted that none of the 77 blood cultures in their series of 211 febrile postoperative patients was positive.

In a follow-up study, Schwandt et al. outlined a protocol for evaluating postoperative gynecological patients as follows: (a) record temperatures every 4 hours; (b) for temperatures greater than 38°C (100.4°F), evaluate the patient by history and physical examination; (c) when no significant signs or symptoms are identified, order no tests, and observe the patient. Antibiotics are not started at this point. The authors felt that this protocol of selectively ordering lab tests to evaluate a postoperative fever did not compromise patient care and saved considerable resources. Similar findings also have been reported in a retrospective review by McNally et al.

Although current practice discourages the use of "routine" testing to evaluate a postoperative fever, the clinician must be sensitive to special circumstances, unusual signs or symptoms, or persistent fever or other warning signs. Special circumstances could include a patient who was at high risk for infection because of immunosuppression, gross bacterial contamination at surgery, infection already present before surgery, or patient in such a frail or unstable condition that any postoperative infection could be fatal. Unusual signs or symptoms, which may provide evidence of deep-seated fasciitis or gas-forming organisms and, most common of all, persistence of fever or other signs or symptoms of infection, definitely warrant a more exhaustive evaluation and, in most cases, prompt aggressive therapy.

A complete blood count with differential usually is indicated, and electrolytes, renal function tests, and liver-associated tests may be useful if sepsis is anticipated, prior damage to these organs exists, and/or antibiotics excrated or metabolized by these organs may be used. Acute pancreatitis can be ruled out by a normal serum amylase and lipase.

Blood cultures are not frequently indicated; but in patients with high fever, those with persistent fever despite antibiotics, or those who are immunocompromised, they may be useful. This is particularly true when patients have indwelling central lines for longer than a few days, especially if these lines have been used for several functions (blood transfusions, antibiotics, electrolytes, etc.), and/or the patient had bacteremia that could seed the tip of the line. In these cases, at least one culture should be taken through the central line catheter. Other cultures of pus from an abdominal incision, the vaginal cuff, an undrained collection, or a drainage tube occasionally may be helpful in a patient who is not responding to antibiotics or in whom an unusual infection (actinomycoses) is suspected. A spumon Gram stain should be rare, but should be considered in a symptomatic, immunosuppressed patient who could have tuberculosis, coccidioidomycosis, or some other atypical pneumonia.

A number of different imaging techniques may be useful in special circumstances. A CT scan of the abdomen/pelvis should identify an abscess. In many cases, CT-guided percutaneous catheter drainage in combination with intravenous antibiotics is the treatment of choice. Renal function always should be satisfactory before administering intravenous contrast for a CT or intravenous pyelogram. Ultrasound can be used to scan the abdomen at incision and post for an abscess or hematoma. Ultrasound of the heart can diagnose valvular vegetations associated with bacterial endocarditis. It also is useful for evaluation of the jugular vein for venous thrombosis. Pelvic or abdominal vein thrombosis can be diagnosed easily in most cases using CT scanning. Radioactive-tagged white blood cell scans can be useful for localizing occult infections, but these have largely been replaced by CT scans.

TREATMENT

The following factors must be considered when making antibiotic choices for the treatment of postoperative infections.

1. Pelvic infections are polymicrobial in etiology.
2. The most frequent causative organisms are aerobic, Gram-positive cocci (streptococci, S. epidermidis, S. aureus), facultative Gram-negative rods (Escherichia coli, Klebsiella sp, Enterobacter sp), anaerobic cocci (peptostreptococci), and anaerobic rods (Prevotella sp, Bacteroides sp, B. fragilis).
3. Enterococci may occasionally cause sepsis or be a sole isolate but usually accompany other bacteria and are not principal pathogens.
4. The choice of an antibiotic is made empirically before culture results are available.
5. The timing of onset of the infection may be an indicator of a pathogen group.
6. Resistance to frequently used antibiotics is developing.
7. Single agents may be as effective as multiple agents in treating postoperative infections.

The polymicrobial nature of postoperative pelvic infections results in about 20% aerobic Gram-positive cocci, 20% Gram-negative rods, and 60% anaerobes. Infections that occur in the first 24 hours after surgery usually are caused by Gram-positive cocci or occasionally by facultative Gram-negative rods. Infections that occur after the first 48 hours more frequently have an anaerobic component. The effect of timing should be considered in making the initial choice of an antibiotic because an extended-spectrum penicillin or cephalosporin may be the best choice in early-onset infections (Table 11.7).

The gold standard for treating gynecologic postoperative infections has been gentamicin, 2 mg/kg loading dose, followed by 1.5 mg/kg maintenance dose for patients with normal renal function, plus clindamycin, 900 mg administered parenterally every 8 hours. Unfortunately, increasing resistance among anaerobic rods to clindamycin is altering the effectiveness of this regimen. The fear of nephrotoxicity or ototoxicity when gentamicin is used for short treatment courses in young, healthy women has not been borne out. Aminoglycoside serum levels may be obtained if the treatment is expected to last more than 72 hours. The addition of ampicillin to the previous combination extends the spectrum of coverage to include enterococci.

To overcome the resistance of anaerobes to clindamycin, metronidazole may be used in combination with a penicillin (ampicillin, amoxicillin, or both). Metronidazole in combination with levofloxacin, 500 mg daily, is also used frequently. The dose of metronidazole is 500 mg every 6 hours. The oral
**TABLE 11.7**

**TREATMENT CHOICES FOR GYNECOLOGIC INFECTION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Postoperative Infection</th>
<th>Recommended regimen</th>
<th>Failures</th>
<th>Penicillin allergy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mild to moderate</td>
<td>Extended-spectrum penicillin or cephalosporin (e.g., piperacillin/tazobactam, 4.3 g/6 h; [this dose goes with pip/tazo] ticarcillin/clavulanic acid, 3.1 g/6 h; metronidazole 500 mg/6 h and levofloxacin 500 mg q12h; ceftriaxone, 2 g followed by 1 g q24h; cefotaxime, 2 g q6h; ceforanate 2 g q12h; cefotaxime, 1 g/8 h [IV doses]).</td>
<td>Clindamycin/gentamicin or metronidazole/gentamicin</td>
<td>Clindamycin/gentamicin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>Clindamycin/gentamicin or metronidazole/gentamicin (e.g., clindamycin, 900 mg/8 h or metronidazole, 500 mg q6h plus gentamicin, 2 mg/kg followed by 1.5 mg/kg/8 h or a single daily dose of 3 mg/kg [ampicillin, penicillin, or vancomycin may be added to cover enterococci]).</td>
<td>Add ampicillin to clindamycin/gentamicin; imipenem</td>
<td>Clindamycin/gentamicin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic abscess</td>
<td>Meropenem 500 mg–1 g/IV q8h; clindamycin/gentamicin; metronidazole/gentamicin</td>
<td>Evaluate need for surgical drainage</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Septic pelvic thrombophlebitis</td>
<td>Meropenem 500 mg–1 g/IV q8h or metronidazole plus heparin</td>
<td></td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NA, not applicable.

Absorption of this antibiotic is such that blood levels are equivalent to parenteral administration. Metronidazole is only effective against anaerobes and has minimal to no aerobic spectrum.

Investigators have studied various extended-spectrum penicillins and cephalosporins as single agents for the treatment of mild to moderately severe postoperative pelvic infections. These agents have an extended spectrum of in vitro antibacterial activity and β-lactamase stability. Single agents—such as cefoxitin, cefotetan, cefuroxime, ticarcillin/clavulanic acid, and piperacillin/tazobactam—avoid the problems of admixture with multiple agents and the potential for aminoglycoside toxicity. In our experience, persistence of infections despite these single agents usually is caused by anaerobic infection.

If an abscess is present and medical management is used to attempt to eradicate it or allow for stabilization before drainage is undertaken, meropenem, a carbapenem, is an excellent choice in a dose of 500 mg given IV every 6 to 8 hours. Metronidazole is a good option when anaerobes are suspected. If the patient has evidence of clinical improvement and decrease in size of the abscess, antibiotics should be continued; if there is no improvement by 48 to 72 hours, surgical drainage is indicated.

Parenteral antibiotics should be continued until the patient is afebrile and clinically well for 24 to 48 hours. At that point, antibiotics may be discontinued and the patient discharged. Several studies show no benefit to the continuation of oral antibiotics after successful parenteral therapy or observing the patient for an additional 24 hours in the hospital.

If there is not a good response to appropriate antibiotic therapy within 72 hours, the patient should be completely reevaluated. After another review of the history and physical examination, imaging studies should be considered. Perhaps a chest x-ray may indicate new consolidation or an abdominal and pelvic CT scan may identify a collection or abscess or even septic thrombophlebitis. If a fever persists, antibiotics may be discontinued, and the patient recultured before new antibiotics are started. SPT should be considered.

**PREVENTION OF INFECTION**

In this modern era of antibiotics, we have become somewhat lax in our efforts to prevent infection because we assume that if infection occurs, we can easily and effectively treat it. This ignores the potential for morbidity in the patient and the tremendous economic burden imposed by postoperative infections. In a 5-year study of wound infections after abdominal hysterectomy, Kandula and Wenzel found that women with infections were hospitalized an average of 3.53 days longer, resulting in a significant financial impact. It is important to implement specific strategies aimed at preventing postoperative infection and to use these with every patient. In doing so, a significant number of infections can be prevented. Identifying risk factors is important preoperatively. Major risks are obesity, bacterial vaginosis, radical surgery, and excessive blood loss (>1,000 cc).

Some guidelines apply to all situations, and some are specific to certain types of infection. Careful hand washing, avoiding contact with septic patients before proceeding to the operating...
Prevention of Postoperative Pneumonia

All patients who undergo general endotracheal anesthesia are at risk for retention of pulmonary secretions, alveolar collapse, and in turn, atelectasis and possible pneumonia. Atelectasis is frequently a cause of immediate postoperative fever. To help prevent this complication, all patients undergoing surgery, and especially those with chronic obstructive airway disease, should be encouraged to discontinue or decrease smoking and have any upper respiratory infections treated before operation. Postoperatively, coughing, deep breathing, and devices to encourage alveolar expansions should be used. Adequate analgesia control pain that interferes with respiratory effort should be administered. Early ambulation should be encouraged.

Prevention of Urinary Tract Infection

UTIs can complicate gynecologic surgery because of the proximity of the urethra to the operative site in the vagina. This effect is augmented by the placement of an indwelling urinary catheter. To limit UTIs, appropriate placement and management of catheters is essential. Personnel should be instructed in the proper sterile placement of catheters, maintained as a closed drainage system without traction on the device. Catheters should be placed only when necessary and should be removed as soon as feasible. Routine culture of terminal urine specimens when catheters are removed has not proven cost-effective in our institution.

Prevention of Operative Site and Wound Infections

Other Considerations

Multiple studies have demonstrated that antibiotic prophylaxis significantly reduces infectious morbidity following both vaginal and abdominal hysterectomy. These results do not preclude that the important surgical principles that have been shown to reduce morbidity can be ignored, but the use of prophylactic antibiotics in many gynecologic surgical procedures has reduced the incidence of postoperative surgical site infections from 30% to 50% to about 15% in most series.

Theory of Antibiotic Prophylaxis

At the time of hysterectomy, vaginal or cervical bacteria are inoculated into the surgical site, and it is hypothesized that antibiotics in these tissues at this time augment host defense mechanisms to reduce the incidence of clinical infections. For antibiotic prophylaxis to work effectively, several important criteria must be fulfilled. First, the operative procedure must have a significant risk of bacterial contamination and, in the absence of prophylactic antibiotics, an appreciable incidence of operative site infection. Hysterectomy or other gynecologic procedures involving the cervix, vagina, or vulva all qualify for antibiotic prophylaxis to work effectively, several important criteria must be fulfilled. First, the operative procedure must have a significant risk of bacterial contamination and, in the absence of prophylactic antibiotics, an appreciable incidence of operative site infection. Hysterectomy or other gynecologic procedures involving the cervix, vagina, or vulva all qualify for antibiotic prophylaxis.

Table 11.8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RECOMMENDATIONS FOR HAND WASHING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In the absence of a true emergency, personnel should always wash their hands:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Before performing invasive procedures (Chlorhexidine gluconate 3% solution and ethyl alcohol 63% has been used to replace water-aided hand scrubs with soap in many institutions. We recommend that the initial scrub of the day be with traditional washing for 5 minutes).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Before taking care of particularly susceptible patients, such as patients who are severely immunocompromised and newborns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Before and after touching wounds, whether surgical, traumatic, or associated with an invasive device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- After situations during which microbial contamination of hands is likely to occur, particularly those involving contact with mucous membranes, blood, body fluids, secretions, or excretions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- After contact with contaminated surfaces that are likely to be contaminated with virulent or epidemiologically important microorganisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- After taking care of an infected patient or one who is likely to be colonized with microorganisms of special clinical or epidemiologic significance, such as multiple-drug resistant bacteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Between contact with different patients in high-risk units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- When moving from one patient to another</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Before and after touching wounds, whether surgical, traumatic, or associated with an invasive device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- After touching inanimate sources that are likely to be contaminated with microorganisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Before and after touching wounds, whether surgical, traumatic, or associated with an invasive device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- After touching inanimate sources that are likely to be contaminated with microorganisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- After contact with contaminated surfaces that are likely to be contaminated with virulent or epidemiologically important microorganisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- After taking care of an infected patient or one who is likely to be colonized with microorganisms of special clinical or epidemiologic significance, such as multiple-drug resistant bacteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Between contact with different patients in high-risk units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- When moving from one patient to another</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


The skin is colonized with bacteria, some of which are transient and reside on the integument for only a short time, and some of which are resident and are present continuously. One of those that are resident and are present continuously is frequently a cause of immediate postoperative fever. To help prevent this complication, all patients undergoing surgery, and especially those with chronic obstructive airway disease, should be encouraged to discontinue or decrease smoking and have any upper respiratory infections treated before operation. Postoperatively, coughing, deep breathing, and devices to encourage alveolar expansions should be used. Adequate analgesia control pain that interferes with respiratory effort should be administered. Early ambulation should be encouraged.

Prevention of Urinary Tract Infection

UTIs can complicate gynecologic surgery because of the proximity of the urethra to the operative site in the vagina. This effect is augmented by the placement of an indwelling urinary catheter. To limit UTIs, appropriate placement and management of catheters is essential. Personnel should be instructed in the proper sterile placement of catheters, maintained as a closed drainage system without traction on the device. Catheters should be placed only when necessary and should be removed as soon as feasible. Routine culture of terminal urine specimens when catheters are removed has not proven cost-effective in our institution.

Prevention of Operative Site and Wound Infections

Other Considerations

Multiple studies have demonstrated that antibiotic prophylaxis significantly reduces infectious morbidity following both vaginal and abdominal hysterectomy. These results do not preclude that the important surgical principles that have been shown to reduce morbidity can be ignored, but the use of prophylactic antibiotics in many gynecologic surgical procedures has reduced the incidence of postoperative surgical site infections from 30% to 50% to about 15% in most series.

Theory of Antibiotic Prophylaxis

At the time of hysterectomy, vaginal or cervical bacteria are inoculated into the surgical site, and it is hypothesized that antibiotics in these tissues at this time augment host defense mechanisms to reduce the incidence of clinical infections. For antibiotic prophylaxis to work effectively, several important criteria must be fulfilled. First, the operative procedure must have a significant risk of bacterial contamination and, in the absence of prophylactic antibiotics, an appreciable incidence of operative site infection. Hysterectomy or other gynecologic procedures involving the cervix, vagina, or vulva all qualify for antibiotic prophylaxis to work effectively, several important criteria must be fulfilled. First, the operative procedure must have a significant risk of bacterial contamination and, in the absence of prophylactic antibiotics, an appreciable incidence of operative site infection. Hysterectomy or other gynecologic procedures involving the cervix, vagina, or vulva all qualify for antibiotic prophylaxis.

Table 11.8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RECOMMENDATIONS FOR HAND WASHING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In the absence of a true emergency, personnel should always wash their hands:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Before performing invasive procedures (Chlorhexidine gluconate 3% solution and ethyl alcohol 63% has been used to replace water-aided hand scrubs with soap in many institutions. We recommend that the initial scrub of the day be with traditional washing for 5 minutes).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Before taking care of particularly susceptible patients, such as patients who are severely immunocompromised and newborns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Before and after touching wounds, whether surgical, traumatic, or associated with an invasive device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- After situations during which microbial contamination of hands is likely to occur, particularly those involving contact with mucous membranes, blood, body fluids, secretions, or excretions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- After contact with contaminated surfaces that are likely to be contaminated with microorganisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- After touching inanimate sources that are likely to be contaminated with microorganisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- After contact with contaminated surfaces that are likely to be contaminated with microorganisms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- After taking care of an infected patient or one who is likely to be colonized with microorganisms of special clinical or epidemiologic significance, such as multiple-drug resistant bacteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Between contact with different patients in high-risk units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- When moving from one patient to another</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


The skin is colonized with bacteria, some of which are transient and reside on the integument for only a short time, and some of which are resident and are present continuously. One of those that are resident and are present continuously is frequently a cause of immediate postoperative fever. To help prevent this complication, all patients undergoing surgery, and especially those with chronic obstructive airway disease, should be encouraged to discontinue or decrease smoking and have any upper respiratory infections treated before operation. Postoperatively, coughing, deep breathing, and devices to encourage alveolar expansions should be used. Adequate analgesia control pain that interferes with respiratory effort should be administered. Early ambulation should be encouraged.

Prevention of Urinary Tract Infection

UTIs can complicate gynecologic surgery because of the proximity of the urethra to the operative site in the vagina. This effect is augmented by the placement of an indwelling urinary catheter. To limit UTIs, appropriate placement and management of catheters is essential. Personnel should be instructed in the proper sterile placement of catheters, maintained as a closed drainage system without traction on the device. Catheters should be placed only when necessary and should be removed as soon as feasible. Routine culture of terminal urine specimens when catheters are removed has not proven cost-effective in our institution.

Prevention of Operative Site and Wound Infections

Other Considerations

Multiple studies have demonstrated that antibiotic prophylaxis significantly reduces infectious morbidity following both vaginal and abdominal hysterectomy. These results do not preclude that the important surgical principles that have been shown to reduce morbidity can be ignored, but the use of prophylactic antibiotics in many gynecologic surgical procedures has reduced the incidence of postoperative surgical site infections from 30% to 50% to about 15% in most series.

Theory of Antibiotic Prophylaxis

At the time of hysterectomy, vaginal or cervical bacteria are inoculated into the surgical site, and it is hypothesized that antibiotics in these tissues at this time augment host defense mechanisms to reduce the incidence of clinical infections. For antibiotic prophylaxis to work effectively, several important criteria must be fulfilled. First, the operative procedure must have a significant risk of bacterial contamination and, in the absence of prophylactic antibiotics, an appreciable incidence of operative site infection. Hysterectomy or other gynecologic procedures involving the cervix, vagina, or vulva all qualify for antibiotic prophylaxis to work effectively, several important criteria must be fulfilled. First, the operative procedure must have a significant risk of bacterial contamination and, in the absence of prophylactic antibiotics, an appreciable incidence of operative site infection. Hysterectomy or other gynecologic procedures involving the cervix, vagina, or vulva all qualify for antibiotic prophylaxis.
Choice of Antibiotics for Prophylaxis

As noted, the antibiotic selected for a given procedure should be effective, have few side effects, be administered in a way that results in a minimal risk of antibiotic-resistant infections, and be inexpensive. In a metaanalysis of 25 prospective, randomized trials of prophylactic antibiotics for abdominal hysterectomy, Mittenndorf et al. reported a reduction of serious postoperative infections from 21.1% to 9%. The most commonly used antibiotic for hysterectomy is cefazolin, because it meets the preceding criteria and has a relatively long half-life of 1.8 hours. Recommended prophylactic antibiotic regimens for various gynecologic procedures are listed in Table 11.9.

Cephalosporins generally should not be given to patients with a history of penicillin allergy. Metronidazole and clindamycin have been particularly effective when anaerobic contamination is anticipated in penicillin-sensitive patients. In women with damaged or artificial heart valves or others at increased risk for bacterial endocarditis, combination antibiotics such as ampicillin (2 g) and gentamicin (1.5 mg/m²) are recommended. If the patient is allergic to penicillin, vancomycin (1 g over 1 to 2 hours) is substituted for ampicillin. Unlike prophylactic antibiotics given for operative site infections when only a single dose is administered, it is recommended that a second dose be given 6 hours later.

Adverse Reactions

Although reactions to cephalosporins occur from 1% to 10%, severe side effects such as anaphylaxis have been reported in only about 0.02% of patients. The majority of reactions are skin rashes and urticaria, which usually are resolved by the time the patient has recovered from anesthesia postoperatively. Diarrhea secondary to pseudomembranous colitis associated with β-lactam antibiotics has been reported in up to 15% of patients, but it is probably not so common in women with an antiinfective agent the night before, or even immediately before surgery. Although this practice has been recommended for many years, and povidone-iodine solution gel and gel have been demonstrated to decrease vaginal bacterial counts to undetectable levels 10 minutes after application, the bacterial flora gradually return to approximately one half pretreatment levels in 2 hours. The benefit of vaginal cleansing with an antifungal agent the night before, or even immediately before surgery, has not been evaluated in a prospective, randomized trial.

Table 11.9.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Antibiotic</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal/abdominal</td>
<td>Cefazolin</td>
<td>1 or 2 single dose IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hysterecomy</td>
<td>Cefoxitin</td>
<td>2 g single dose IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cefotetan</td>
<td>1 or 2 single dose IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopy</td>
<td>Metronidazole</td>
<td>500 mg single dose IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urology</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uroscopy</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasa/ovarianlaparoscopy</td>
<td>Doxycycline</td>
<td>100 mg twice daily/5 d orally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Induced abortion/D&amp;C</td>
<td>Doxycycline</td>
<td>100 mg orally after the procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metronidazole</td>
<td>500 mg twice daily orally for 5 d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D&C, dilatation and curettage; IV, intravenously; IUD, intrauterine device.

aα-hemolysin-positive staphylococcus is now recognized to be a major cause of contamination and subsequent wound or surgical site infection, having the bowel prepared whenever possible bowel involvement is suspected is beneficial. The Condon bowel prep includes adequate use of a cathartic plus oral neomycin and erythromycin in three doses the day before surgery. The use of a povidone-iodine douche or insertion of gel has been recommended for the night before admission or the day of surgery. Although this practice has been recommended for many years, and povidone-iodine solution gel and gel have been demonstrated to decrease vaginal bacterial counts to undetectable levels 10 minutes after application, the bacterial flora gradually return to approximately one half pre-treatment levels in 2 hours. The benefit of vaginal cleansing with an antifungal agent the night before, or even immediately before surgery, has not been evaluated in a prospective, randomized trial.
Bacterial vaginosis has been found to be a risk factor for postoperative infection when present before surgery in women undergoing hysterectomy. In a prospective study of 173 women who underwent major gynecologic surgery, Lin et al. found a 36% incidence of postoperative febrile morbidity in patients who had bacterial vaginosis preoperatively and only a 20% incidence of fever among the women who had a lactobacillus-dominated vaginal flora (odds ratio = 0.045). Although some data support the benefit of treating pregnant women with bacterial vaginosis to decrease the rates of preterm labor, premature rupture of the membranes, and intraamnionic infections, no data have shown a beneficial effect of preoperative treatment of hysterectomy patients. In light of the obstetric data, some gynecologists recommend screening hysterectomy patients preoperatively and treating those who are infected with metronidazole because anaerobes play such a significant role in postoperative gynecologic infections.

All gynecologists should employ careful hand-washing techniques or Avagard use preoperatively and when seeing patients. Appropriate gowns and eye coverings should be worn. Wearing double gloves is an effective way to decrease the chances of percutaneous injury. Careful surgical technique is essential to minimize postoperative infections. Adequate hemostasis should be obtained whenever possible. The amount of dead space should be limited. Large areas of necrotic tissue should be excised, and vascular pedicles should be short. Closing the subcutaneous space has no benefit, and using suture there can actually increase the rate of superficial wound infection. If the case is dirty, consideration should be given to delayed wound closure. If drains are used, they should be closed-suction drains, not gravity drains. Draining the subcutaneous space often is helpful in large patients to eliminate serous and bloody fluid.

Multiple studies have shown that double gloving significantly reduces the risk of blood contamination to the surgeon and other members of the operative team. In a large study from Finland, Laine and Aarnio reported a 7.4% glove perforation rate for single gloves in 3,020 surgery uses. When double gloves were used, the inner glove was perforated in only 0.52% of 1,148 uses. Overall, someone in the surgical team had a glove perforation during 18.5% of the operative procedures, and the literature quotes rates of up to 63% in orthopedics and trauma surgery. The most common site of perforation is the index finger of the left hand of the surgeon; but all members of the team are at risk, and gloves can be torn in clamps or retractors as well as punctured by needlestick injuries. Manufacturing defects in the gloves themselves are uncommon but do occur and may go unnoticed until blood is seen on the finger or hand. Although double gloving does reduce dexterity and tactile sensation, it also reduces the potential for blood contamination almost 10-fold. It is a good general practice and always should be used in high-risk situations.

**UNIVERSAL PRECAUTIONS**

The epidemics of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and hepatitis B viral infection have brought to light the risks of lethal infection of the surgeon or other members of the operative team by blood or tissue fluids in association with surgery. Believing that all at-risk situations can be identified by history, physical examination, or laboratory data is naive and dangerous. To overcome this prevalent thought, universal blood and body fluid precautions were developed. This concept treats all patients’ blood and certain other body fluids capable of transmitting blood-borne pathogens as potentially infectious. Universal precautions include the following requirements: (a) the use of gloves when touching blood and body fluids, mucous membranes, or broken skin, or when handling items or surfaces soiled with blood or body fluids; (b) the use of masks and eye protection during procedures that can generate splashing or droplets in the air; (c) the use of a gown or plastic apron if splashing of blood is anticipated; (d) careful hand washing if hands are contaminated with blood or body fluids; (e) extraordinary care in handling needles or other sharp objects, and proper disposal of sharp objects in puncture-resistant containers; (f) the availability of emergency resuscitation devices to minimize the need for emergency mouth-to-mouth resuscitation; and (g) the exclusion from patient care of personnel with exudative lesions or weeping dermatitis until these conditions are resolved. Multiple studies have shown that every patient is potentially infected, using specific protocols for the safe use of invasive procedures and taking steps to avoid any and all risk-taking behavior by medical personnel can help to prevent nosocomial infections.
Some surgeons would leave the skin open for delayed closure; others would close it primarily. The use of unusual precautions to minimize the risk of the surgeon, surgical team, or health care worker acquiring a potentially fatal human immunodeficiency or hepatitis B viral infection from the patient is strongly encouraged. Although high-risk patients may be identified, all patients pose a risk to the surgeon.

Bibliography


Postoperative Infections: Prevention and Management


Principles of Anatomy and Perioperative Considerations


CHAPTER 12 ■ SHOCK IN THE GYNECOLOGIC PATIENT
HARRIET O. SMITH AND HEATHER M. GREENE

DEFINITIONS

Cardiogenic shock—Shock in which there is intrinsic pump failure.

Class I hypovolemia—Blood losses of less than 15% of the total blood volume with no measurable changes in blood pressure, resting pulse, or respiratory rates.

Class II hypovolemia—1,000 mL of blood loss, consistent with tachycardia; however, resting blood pressure is generally preserved.

Class III hypovolemia—Blood loss equivalent to 30% to 40% of plasma volume marked by insufficient perfusion, tachycardia, tachypnea, severely diminished urinary output, and cold clammy skin.

Class IV hypovolemia—Acute blood loss of more than 2,000 mL or more than 40% of circulating volume, which is immediately life threatening.

Distributive shock—Shock in which total body water is normal or slightly decreased but is pooled into the intracellular fluid compartment, resulting in intravascular volume depletion.

Extracardiac obstructive shock—Shock in which the heart is intrinsically normal and total volume is adequate, but mechanical factors interfere with pump performance.

Hypovolemic shock—Shock in which there is an inadequate circulating blood volume resulting from hemorrhage or acute volume depletion.

Infection—A pathologic process caused by the invasion of normally sterile tissue or fluid by pathogenic or potentially pathogenic microorganisms.

Neutropenic fever—Presence of three oral temperatures >38°C (100.4°F) coexistent with a low absolute neutrophil count (ANC, less than 500/mm³).

Septic shock—Sepsis with hypotension that persists despite adequate fluid resuscitation, leading to derangements in cellular and organ system function.

Systemic inflammatory response syndrome—Presence of a hyperdynamic phase of shock but no site of infection can be found.

Shock states are among the most formidable conditions that the gynecologist is likely to encounter. The morbidity and economic impact of shock are enormous, considering the costs of primary treatment, the management of multorgan failure syndrome, and providing care for long-term disabilities that may result from partial or total loss of organ function. In the United States annually, septic shock alone affects 100,000 to 200,000 patients at an annual cost of $5 billion to $10 billion. Although recent studies indicate improvements in survival, 50% to 60% of those affected with septic shock will not survive despite aggressive therapy and significant expenditure. In obstetrics, two of the three most common causes of maternal mortality are complications from hemorrhage and sepsis. Therefore, it is critical for the practicing obstetrician-gynecologist to understand the pathogenesis, clinical signs and symptoms, and management of shock because prompt recognition and early intervention significantly reduces morbidity and mortality.

Although shock can be defined as a condition in which tissue perfusion is incapable of sustaining aerobic metabolism, in practical terms shock is best defined as an acute clinical syndrome characterized by hypoperfusion and severe dysfunction of organs vital for survival. These manifestations result from an acute generalized disturbance in the normal cardiovascular circulation. Cardiac output and circulatory blood volume may be compromised by direct myocardial injury or from hypovolemia. Clinical manifestations include mean arterial hypotension and circulatory collapse. Severe hypovolemia can occur as a direct result of uncontrolled hemorrhage or, as in septic shock, may result from the pathological redistribution of circulating volume.

CLASSIFICATION AND ETIOPATHOGENESIS

Based on the underlying cause, shock can be divided into four main categories (Table 12.1):

1. Hypovolemic shock, in which there is an inadequate circulating blood volume resulting from hemorrhage or acute volume depletion.

2. Distributive shock, in which total body water is normal or slightly decreased, but is “pooled” into the intracellular fluid compartment, resulting in intravascular volume depletion.

3. Cardiogenic shock, in which there is intrinsic pump failure.

4. Extracardiac obstructive shock, in which the heart is intrinsically normal and total blood volume is adequate, but mechanical factors interfere with pump performance.

Often, shock results from more than one of these circulatory disturbances, and the apparent cause of persistent cardiovascular dysfunction can change with time and intervening therapy. For example, septic shock is generally considered the result of tissue hypoperfusion; however, endotoxins and mediators released from injured cells have additional direct myocardial depressant effects. Thus, the cardiac presentation is similar for both hypovolemic shock and cardiogenic shock from intrinsic cardiac disease. Cardiogenic shock is characterized by a low systemic blood pressure (<80 mm Hg) associated with a severely reduced cardiac index (usually <1.8 L/min/m²) and a high left ventricular filling pressure (usually >18 mm Hg). Pulmonary edema may be present or absent.
Clinical manifestations of hemorrhagic shock can vary greatly, depending on the rate and the total volume lost, and red cell loss as measured by hemoglobin and hematocrit which do not take into account total or plasma volume. Therefore, these patients may be hypovolemic, euvoicmic, or hypervolemic. Recent studies of acute hypovolemic anemia using tagged red blood cell (RBC) studies have found that in the first few hours after surgery, the hematocrit is transiently elevated by as much as 5% because of failure of the plasma volume to decrease or correct in accordance with blood loss. When the rate of loss has been gradual, as might be found with an unruptured ectopic pregnancy or a retroperitoneal bleed, plasma refilling and other compensatory mechanisms can ensure an adequate circulating volume, and the resuscitative requirements can be severely underestimated. Once initial fluid resuscitation is begun, close observation and frequent reassessment are required as these patients remain at risk for circulatory collapse.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASSIFICATION OF SHOCK STATES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypovolemic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemorrhagic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonhemorrhagic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distributive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiogenic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extracardiac obstructive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Obstructive shock is characterized by the inability of the ventricle to fill during diastole, which severely reduces stroke volume and cardiac output. In the gynecologic patient, massive pulmonary embolus is the most common example.

Regardless of the precipitating event, hypotension results from an inadequate circulating volume caused by cardiac insufficiency, loss of sympathetic tone, inadequate plasma volume, or a combination of these factors (Fig. 12.1). Prolonged hypotension and organ hypoperfusion leads to cellular injury that, if left unchecked, culminates in cardiovascular collapse and death or organ system failure. Because the most common types of shock encountered in obstetrics and gynecology are from hypovolemia (usually, resulting from hemorrhage) or sepsis, this chapter will focus on the recognition and management of these forms of shock.

### Hypovolemic Shock

Hypovolemic shock may be subdivided into four classes based on presenting signs and symptoms (Table 12.2). This classification schema is useful for understanding the pathophysiologic mechanisms responsible for the clinical presentation with progressively greater increments of blood loss and for estimating initial fluid losses or blood requirements. The clinical manifestations of hemorrhagic shock can vary greatly, depending on the rate and the total volume lost, and red cell loss as measured by hemoglobin and hematocrit which do not take into account total or plasma volume. Therefore, these patients may be hypovolemic, euvoicmic, or hypervolemic. Recent studies of acute hypovolemic anemia using tagged red blood cell (RBC) studies have found that in the first few hours after surgery, the hematocrit is transiently elevated by as much as 5% because of failure of the plasma volume to decrease or correct in accordance with blood loss. When the rate of loss has been gradual, as might be found with an unruptured ectopic pregnancy or a retroperitoneal bleed, plasma refilling and other compensatory mechanisms can ensure an adequate circulating volume, and the resuscitative requirements can be severely underestimated. Once initial fluid resuscitation is begun, close observation and frequent reassessment are required as these patients remain at risk for circulatory collapse.

Class I hypovolemia is associated with losses of less than 15% of the total blood volume (Table 12.2); usually, there are no measurable changes in blood pressure, resting pulse, or respiratory rates. Transcapillary refill and other compensatory mechanisms usually restore plasma volume within 24 hours. With class II hypovolemia, or up to 1,000 mL blood loss, the most consistent clinical finding is tachycardia. The increase in heart rate is often associated with a narrowed pulse pressure (the difference between systolic and diastolic pressures). The resting blood pressure, however, is generally preserved by compensatory mechanisms, including the renin-angiotensin system and the hypothalamic–hypophyseal–adrenal system. In response to a decrease in wall tension or sodium, or sympathetic activation, the juxtaglomerular cells release renin into plasma. Renin converts angiotensinogen into angiotensin I, an inactive polypeptide, which is metabolized in the liver to angiotensin II, a potent vasoconstrictor that stimulates aldosterone secretion from the renal cortex. Aldosterone, along with the pituitary release of antidiuretic hormone, promotes sodium and water retention. These mechanisms increase venous return and, consequently, stroke volume, cardiac output, and blood pressure. Thus, oliguria is a common manifestation of hypovolemic shock. In response to hypovolemia, norepinephrine and epinephrine are locally and systemically released. Catecholamine-mediated effects are inotropic and chronotropic, resulting in increased cardiac output. Venocclusion enhances venous return, which also increases stroke volume and cardiac output. In response to the catecholamine-mediated increase in peripheral vascular resistance, the diastolic blood pressure is increased, which leads to a narrowed pulse pressure. Typically, the resting blood pressure is normal; however, when blood pressure and pulse are recorded in the standing, sitting, or reclining position, a narrowed pulse pressure is usually observed. This is the major clinical distinction between class I and class II hypovolemic shock. As long as these compensatory mechanisms remain intact, shock is almost always eventually reversible, hence the frequently used descriptive term early shock.

Although patients with losses of 20% to 30% of their blood volume may ultimately require RBC replacement for immediate resuscitation, crystalloid is usually adequate. Crystalloid replacement is guided by the 3:1 rule: 300 mL crystalloid per 100 mL of blood (plasma volume) lost. In normal adults, approximately two thirds of the total body water is intracellular, and the remaining one third in the extracellular fluid compartment is disproportionately distributed between the intracellular extracellular compartments, with intravascular and intracellular compartments in a 3:1 ratio. Collod oncotic pressure, the effective osmotic pressure between the interstitial and intravascular compartments, is dependent on
transcapillary hydrostatic and oncotic pressures, and the relative permeability of capillary membranes that divide these spaces. Because of these forces, within 24 hours of intravenous crystalloid administration, approximately two thirds will disperse into the interstitial compartments. Although the principal determinant of oxygen delivery is hemoglobin, tissue oxygenation remains adequate as long as intravascular volume is adequate, and cardiac output appropriately increases despite major reductions in hemoglobin (<7 g/dL). This is because oxygen delivery is not dependent on hemoglobin concentration alone. However, in class III hypovolemic shock (Table 12.2), which is associated with a blood loss equivalent to 30% to 40% of the plasma volume, the physiologic compensatory mechanisms previously described begin to fail. Patients almost always present with classic signs of insufficient perfusion, including marked tachycardia, tachypnea,

**TABLE 12.2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification of Hypovolemic Shocka</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood loss (mL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood volume (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate (beats/minute)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory rate (breaths/min)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary output (mL/hr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mental status</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aIn a 70-kg, nonpregnant adult.
bMeasure heart rate and blood pressure in standing, sitting, and recumbent positions with 5 minutes between measurements to permit equilibration. Orthostatic change (+ tilt) is a postural increase in pulse of 10 to 15 beats/minute or a drop in systolic blood pressure of at least 10 mm Hg.

severely diminished urinary output, and cold, clammy skin. Importantly, in uncomplicated shock, 1,500 to 2,000 mL is the smallest amount of blood loss that is consistently associated with a drop in the systolic blood pressure. Arterial hypotension and a fall in cardiac output diminish oxygen delivery to peripheral tissues. This is shown by the following formula:

\[
\text{DO}_2 = \text{CaO}_2 \times \text{Qt} \times \text{SaO}_2/100 \times 1.39 \times \text{Hb} + 0.003 \times \text{PaO}_2
\]

Where:
- \( \text{DO}_2 \) = oxygen delivery;
- \( \text{Qt} \) = cardiac output;
- \( \text{CaO}_2 \) = arterial oxygen tension;
- \( \text{SaO}_2 \) = hemoglobin saturation; and
- \( \text{PaO}_2 \) = amount of oxygen physically dissolved in arterial blood.

As is illustrated, arterial oxygen tension is a complex formula dependent on the hemoglobin concentration, saturation, and amount of oxygen physically dissolved in arterial blood. Anemia effects must be separated from the effects of hypovolemia, as both interfere with oxygen transport. Although the lower limit of tolerated acute normovolemic anemia has not been established, most normal individuals tolerate Hb of 7 g/dL, partially as a result of improved \( \text{O}_2 \) delivery facilitated by increase in 2,3-diphosphoglycerate levels in RBCs. Tissues that can maintain their oxygen consumption accomplish this by increasing their \( \text{O}_2 \) extraction, the ratio of oxygen consumption to oxygen delivery. This results in an increase in the arterial and venous oxygen difference and reduction in \( \text{O}_2 \) extraction. Eventually, under conditions of increased oxygen demand (stress, sepsis) or insufficient oxygen delivery (severely reduced cardiac output, hypovolemia, and profound anemia), these compensatory mechanisms fail, and tissue hypoxia and lactic acidosis ensue. Cerebral and cardiac functions are maintained by diverting blood flow from the skin, muscles, gastrointestinal tract, and kidneys. Complicated shock associated with loss of compensatory physiologic mechanisms is often called intermediate shock. In this phase, reversibility is dependent on prompt crystalloid and blood product replacement to avoid irreversible ischemia of vital organs.

Class IV hypovolemic shock, defined as an acute blood loss of more than 2,000 mL, or more than 40% of the circulating volume, is immediately life threatening. Survival depends on rapid transfusion of blood and crystalloid and immediate surgical intervention before cardiac and cerebral circulation fail, resulting in ischemia in these organs. When vital organs fail, total cardiovascular collapse, coma, and eventually death or multorgan failure is likely. The transition between the intermediate stage of shock and irreversible shock (late shock, cold shock) is dependent on the duration and severity of the hypovolemia; however, once cellular injury has occurred within the brain and cardiac muscle, shock is almost always irreversible and fatal.

Septic Shock

Over the past several decades, the incidence of sepsis—the precursor to septic shock and multorgan failure—has increased. In the United States alone, sepsis and septic shock affect an estimated 750,000 patients per year with an expected 1.5% annual increase in incidence at a total annual hospital cost of $16.7 billion. Annually, there are approximately 215,000 deaths from sepsis, with mortality rates for severe sepsis and septic shock of 20% to 52% and 50% to 60%, respectively. An increasing emphasis has been placed on correct identification of the degree or severity of sepsis to more effectively prescribe treatment and evaluate response.

Sepsis represents a continuum from the preshock phase or early hypodynamic phase to the late shock phase. The early hypodynamic phase is characterized by a normal or slight decrease in blood pressure and tachycardia. The slight decrease in systemic vascular resistance (SVR) is offset by a marked increase in cardiac output. In contrast, the classic features of late shock include low SVR and low cardiac output, hypoperfusion, and lactic acidosis. In 1992, the ACCP/SCCM Consensus Conference developed widely accepted and used standard definitions of sepsis and its related conditions. This was followed by the Sepsis Definition Conference (2001), which expanded the list of signs and symptoms of sepsis to reflect clinical bedside experience that reinforced clinical definitions (Table 12.3).

Infection is defined as a pathologic process caused by the invasion of normally sterile tissue or fluid by body cavity by pathogenic or potentially pathogenic microorganisms. When early hypodynamic phase of shock is present but no site of infection can be found, the process is termed the systemic inflammatory response syndrome. Sepsis is defined as a systemic response to infection manifested by two or more of the following: fever or hypothermia, tachycardia, tachypnea, and an elevated or severely depressed white blood cell count. Septic shock is sepsis with hypotension that persists despite adequate fluid resuscitation, leading to derangements in cellular and organ system function. Although helpful in differentiating categories of sepsis, Levy and colleagues note that these definitions do not allow for precise classification and staging of patients with this condition. Therefore, a rudimentary stratification scheme termed Predisposing Factors, Infection, Response, and Organ Dysfunction (PIRO) was developed to classify patients in terms of their predisposing conditions, the nature of the insult (which in the case of sepsis is the infection), and the nature and magnitude of host response and the degree of concomitant organ dysfunction (Table 12.4). Microbial factors contribute to outcome in patients with severe sepsis. Hospital-acquired bacteremia has increased coincident with the rise in predisposing risk factors: an aging population with underlying systemic disease (diabetes mellitus, cirrhosis, malignancy, lymphoproliferative disorders), invasive devices, burns, prolonged or indiscriminate use of broad-spectrum antibiotics, aggressive cytotoxic chemotherapy, and use of corticosteroids and other immunosuppressive agents. Most nosocomial infections are associated with the use of invasive devices: 83% of pneumonias in mechanically ventilated patients, 97% of urinary tract infections in catheterized patients, and 87% of bloodstream infections in patients with central intravenous lines. Although sepsis can be caused by fungi and viruses, Gram-positive bacteria and Gram-negative bacteria are the most common isolates from patients with severe sepsis. Gram-negative organisms used to account for more than half of all episodes of bacteremia, but recent studies indicate that mortality caused by Gram-positive bacteremia now equals or exceeds that of Gram-negative bacteremia. Staphylococci, mainly Staphylococcus aureus or coagulase-negative staphylococci, and streptococci such as Streptococcus pneumoniae are the most frequent microbes involved. In obstetrics and gynecology, Gram-positive aerobes account for 31% of bacteremic episodes, and Gram-positive anaerobes, mainly group B streptococci and Peptostreptococcus, 18% of septic
### TABLE 12.3

**CLINICAL DEFINITIONS OF INFECTION SYNDROMES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syndrome</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infection</strong></td>
<td>Microbial phenomenon characterized by an inflammatory response to the presence of microorganisms or the invasion of normally sterile host tissue by those organisms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bacteremia</strong></td>
<td>Presence of viable bacteria in the blood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Systemic inflammatory response syndrome</strong></td>
<td>Systemic inflammatory response to a variety of clinical insults. The response is manifest by two or more of the following conditions: temperature $&gt;$38°C or $&lt;$36°C, heart rate $&gt;$90 beats/min, respiratory rate $&gt;$20 breaths/min or $&lt;$12,200/μL, $&lt;$4,000/μL, or more than 10% immature (band) forms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Septic shock</strong></td>
<td>Sepsis with hypotension. This response is manifest by two or more of the following conditions as a result of infection: temperature $&gt;$38°C or $&lt;$36°C, heart rate $&gt;$90 beats/min, respiratory rate $&gt;$20 breaths/min or $&lt;$12,200/μL, $&lt;$4,000/μL, or more than 10% immature (band) forms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Severe sepsis</strong></td>
<td>Sepsis associated with organ dysfunction, hypoperfusion, or hypotension. Hypoperfusion and perfusion abnormalities may include but are not limited to lactic acidosis, oliguria, or an acute alteration in mental status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Septic shock</strong></td>
<td>Sepsis with hypotension despite adequate fluid resuscitation, along with the presence of perfusion abnormalities that can include, but are not limited to, lactic acidosis, oliguria, or an acute alteration in mental status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Patients who are on isotropic or vasopressor agents may not be hypotensive at the time that perfusion abnormalities are measured.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hypotension</strong></td>
<td>A systolic blood pressure of $&lt;$90 mm Hg or a reduction of $&gt;$40 mm Hg from baseline, in the absence of other causes of hypotension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multiple organ dysfunction syndrome</strong></td>
<td>Presence of altered organ function in an acutely ill patient such that homeostasis cannot be maintained without intervention.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WBC**, white blood cell count; bpm, beats per minute.


---

**Shock in the Gynecologic Patient**

Episodes: Gram-negative microbes are responsible for 41% of all septic episodes. The most commonly isolated Gram-negative bacteria are *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, with *Escherichia coli* predominating. Less frequent isolates include *Enterobacter aerogenes*, *Acinetobacter*, *Proteus*, *Serratia*, *Aeromonas*, *Xanthomonas*, *Citrobacter*, *Achromobacter*, *Salmonella*, and *Mogella* spp.

The Gram-negative bacterial cell wall consists of an inner and outer cell membrane, the latter of which contains lipopolysaccharide (LPS), or bacterial endotoxin. LPS consists of three principal regions: the O antigen, the R core antigen, and lipid A, which is responsible for toxicity. The lipid A portion of the LPS molecule mediates the binding of CD14 and Toll-like receptors (TLRs—specifically TLR4) and perhaps other receptors with lipopolysaccharide-binding protein (LBP). This coupling enables LPS to bind to mammalian cells. Depending on the involved cell type, LPS-LBP-CD14-TLR4 receptor binding induces the release of a variety of mediators. These include cytokines, interferon-α, prothrombin, procoagulins, thromboxane A2, leukotrienes, complement component fragments (especially C3a, C5a), platelet-activating factor (PAF), and cathehalamines. Peptidoglycan and lipoteichoic acids of Gram-positive bacteria, certain polysaccharides, extracellular enzymes, and toxins are also able to induce intracellular responses similar to those of LPS (Fig. 12.2). The inflammatory cytokines interact by way of autocrine, paracrine, and endocrine mechanisms to stimulate leukocytes and vascular endothelial cells to release other cytokines, express cell-surface adhesion molecules, and increase production of arachidonic metabolites. Biologically, their effects appear to be synergistic. Tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α in particular plays an early, critical role in cellular activation and the propagation of the inflammatory response. TNF-α levels are elevated in severe sepsis, myocardial infarction, adult respiratory distress syndrome, and multiorgan failure and correlate with increased mortality rates. In contrast, interleukin (IL)-1β levels are only slightly increased in humans with severe sepsis and do not appear to correlate with severity or outcome. However, plasma concentrations of IL-6 in plasma levels can discriminate among patients who survive or die from severe sepsis/septic shock. In women with pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), cervical as well as systemic IL-6 levels are increased, and correlate with higher erythrocyte sedimentation rate and white blood cell counts. These data suggest that measurements of specific inflammatory cytokines such as IL-6 may eventually be used to evaluate response to therapy in patients with PID.

Hemostatic effects are common in sepsis and result from vascular endothelial cell injury thought to be caused by endotoxins and phospholipid-mediated mediators. The net coagulation defects in sepsis are predominantly procoagulant and override the anticoagulant effects that concomitantly occur. Prostaglandin E2 and prostacyclin are potent vasodilators, whereas thromboxane A2 is a potent vasoconstrictor that, together with PAF, promotes platelet aggregation. Blood coagulation results from activation of the intrinsic, extrinsic, and common pathways, culminating in the generation of thrombin. Thrombosis is enhanced by impairment of antithrombin III and tissue plasminogen activator, as well as by plasminogen activator inhibitors-1, released by stimulated monocytes. Neutrophils, attracted by the injured vascular epithelium, release procoagulins that inhibit thrombin formation and elastase—free oxygen radicals, proteases, and leukotrienes that are responsible for fibrinolysis. Microcirculation is further impaired by the resulting microthrombi and the cytotoxic effects of cytokines released by inflammatory cells.
Gluconeogenesis is increased, as well as glycogenolysis. As hydrolysis of pyruvate from muscles, wounds, and monocytes. Hepatic is a significant increase in the production and release of lactate jury by a process known as aerobic glycolysis. The net result of these events is an increase in basal rate and is increased in proportion to the degree of inflammation. The liver, as well as other tissues, is a major site of protein catabolism and amino acid disposal. The transfer of amino groups to α-ketoglutarate for the synthesis of glutamate occurs in the liver and is dependent on the reduced activity of the transaminase. Subsequently, glutamate is converted to glutamine, which is released into the plasma, and then reconverted to glutamate in muscle and other tissues. The latter process, as well as amino acid transport across the blood-brain barrier, is dependent on the availability of glutamine. The liver is a major site of amino acid disposal, as well as a major source of amino acids for other tissues.

Energy expenditure is often 1.5 to 2 times the basal rate, and is increased in proportion to the degree of inflammation. The liver, as well as other tissues, is a major site of protein catabolism and amino acid disposal. The transfer of amino groups to α-ketoglutarate for the synthesis of glutamate occurs in the liver and is dependent on the reduced activity of the transaminase. Subsequently, glutamate is converted to glutamine, which is released into the plasma, and then reconverted to glutamate in muscle and other tissues. The latter process, as well as amino acid transport across the blood-brain barrier, is dependent on the availability of glutamine. The liver is a major site of amino acid disposal, as well as a major source of amino acids for other tissues.

Lipolysis and ketogenesis are also increased, and in the absence of nutritional support, long-chain fatty acid deficiency can lead to profound hypoglycemia. In diabetic patients, however, impaired gluconeogenesis and increased lactic acid. Hyperglycemia can occur, especially in diabetics, patients; however, impaired gluconeogenesis and excessive insulin release can lead to profound hypoglycemia. Lipolysis and ketogenesis are also increased, and in the absence of nutritional support, long-chain fatty acid deficiency can develop.

In patients who develop irreversible organ failure, the systemic inflammatory response is maintained long after the initial injury and response have abated. Although the mechanisms for this process are poorly understood, undetected microcirculatory dysfunction may be a critical factor. More likely, at some critical point, the perpetuation of cellular and organ system hypermetabolism becomes independent of host regulatory mechanisms.

At the cellular level, differences in ionic composition between the cellular and extracellular compartment are normally maintained by semipermeable membranes, energy-dependent cell transport mechanisms, transmembrane differences in

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 12.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>THE PIRO SYSTEM FOR STAGING SEPSIS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Domain</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Rationale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Predisposition</td>
<td>Premorbid illness with reduced probability of short-term survival; cultural or religious beliefs, age, sex</td>
<td>Genetic polymorphisms in components of inflammatory response (e.g., TLR, TNF, IL-1, CD14); enhanced understanding of specific interactions between pathogens and host diseases</td>
<td>Premorbid factors impact on the potential attributable morbidity and mortality of an acute insult; deleterious consequences of insult heavily dependent on genetic predisposition (future)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insult infection</td>
<td>Culture and sensitivity of infecting pathogens; detection of disease amenable to source control</td>
<td>Assay of microbial products (LPS, mannan, bacterial DNA); gene transcript profiles</td>
<td>Specific therapies directed against infecting insult require demonstration and characterization of the insult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Response</td>
<td>SIRS, other signs of sepsis, shock, CRP</td>
<td>Non-specific markers of activated inflammation (e.g., PCT or IL-6) or impaired host responsiveness (e.g., HLA-DR); specific detection of target of therapy (e.g., protein C, TNF, PAF)</td>
<td>Both mortality risk and potential to respond to therapy vary with non-specific measures of disease severity (e.g., shock); specific mediator-targeted therapy is predicated on presence and activity of mediator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organ dysfunction</td>
<td>Organ dysfunction as a number of failing organs or composite score (e.g., MODS, SOFA, LODS, PREMOD, PELOD)</td>
<td>Dynamic measures of cellular response to insult-apoptosis, cytopathic hypoxia, cell stress</td>
<td>Response to preemptive therapy (e.g., targeting microorganism or early mediator not possible if damage already present; therapies targeting the injurious cellular process require that it be present)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PIRO, Predisposing Factors, Infection, Response, and Organ Dysfunction; TLR, Toll-like receptor; TNF, tumor necrosis factor; IL, interleukin; LPS, lipopolysaccharide; SIRS, systemic inflammatory response syndrome; CRP, C-reactive protein; PCT, procalcitonin; HLA-human leukocyte antigen-DR; PAF, platelet-activating factor; MODS, multiple organ dysfunction syndrome; SOFA, sepsis-related organ failure assessment; LODS, logistic organ dysfunction system; PREMOD, pediatric multiple organ dysfunction; PELOD, pediatric logistic organ dysfunction.


PRINCIPLES OF ANATOMY AND PERIOPERATIVE CONSIDERATIONS

Attraction to the damaged endothelium. This effect has been proposed as a possible mechanism for persistent organ system dysfunction. Thrombocytopenia is common. Although fulminant disseminated intravascular coagulation can eventually develop, the coagulation profile is usually consistent with compensated intravascular coagulation with fibrinolysis. That is, fibrinogen levels are normal or slightly decreased, prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT) are normal or slightly prolonged. However, thrombin generation is increased, and fibrin formation is accelerated. Fibrinogen levels are normal or slightly decreased, prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT) are normal or slightly prolonged. However, thrombin generation is increased, and fibrin formation is accelerated. Fibrinogen levels are normal or slightly decreased, prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT) are normal or slightly prolonged. However, thrombin generation is increased, and fibrin formation is accelerated. Fibrinogen levels are normal or slightly decreased, prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT) are normal or slightly prolonged. However, thrombin generation is increased, and fibrin formation is accelerated. Fibrinogen levels are normal or slightly decreased, prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT) are normal or slightly prolonged. However, thrombin generation is increased, and fibrin formation is accelerated. Fibrinogen levels are normal or slightly decreased, prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT) are normal or slightly prolonged. However, thrombin generation is increased, and fibrin formation is accelerated. Fibrinogen levels are normal or slightly decreased, prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT) are normal or slightly prolonged. However, thrombin generation is increased, and fibrin formation is accelerated. Fibrinogen levels are normal or slightly decreased, prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT) are normal or slightly prolonged. However, thrombin generation is increased, and fibrin formation is accelerated. Fibrinogen levels are normal or slightly decreased, prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT) are normal or slightly prolonged. However, thrombin generation is increased, and fibrin formation is accelerated.

Shock in the Gynecologic Patient

electrical potential, particle charge, and oncotic pressure. With the development of metabolic acidosis, coupled with a decreased production of intracellular cyclic adenosine triphosphate (the energy substrate for cell transport), the normal ionic composition within cells that is critical for mitochondrial function can no longer be maintained. There is an influx of sodium and water and an efflux of potassium, resulting in gradual hemococoncentration and hypotension. Although irreversible cellular injury and, ultimately, cell death can result from organ system dysfunction caused by
pressure and systemic vascular resistance. Depending on the severity of hypoperfusion and organ system reserve, cardiovascular collapse and death or multiorgan failure may ensue (Fig. 12.2).

In shock states, preservation of cardiac function is critical. Mild to moderate losses in blood volume (up to 1,500 mL) result in a temporary decrease in cardiac output and SVR. Venoconstriction increases venous return, enhancing stroke volume and cardiac output. As shock worsens, cardiac output decreases and severe vasoconstriction develops, leading to hypotension and organ hypoperfusion. Coronary artery perfusion is reduced, leading to myocardial ischemia, dysrhythmias, and further evidence of cardiac dysfunction. With progressive heart failure, the LVED pressure rises, resulting in impairment of gas exchange, tissue hypoxia, and pulmonary edema. The most common clinical presentation of cardiac involvement is tachycardia. This may be associated with a wide pulse pressure and bounding pulses, as with the acute hypodynamic phase of septic shock (systemic inflammatory response syndrome, or early shock). Weak, thready pulses typically accompany severe hemorrhagic shock and advanced septic shock (late shock). Unfortunately, tachycardia may not be a reliable sign of hypotension after trauma. Although tachycardia is independently associated with hypotension, its sensitivity and specificity limit its usefulness in the initial evaluation of trauma victims, and absence of tachycardia should not reassure the clinician about the absence of significant blood loss. Patients who are both hypotensive and tachycardic have increased mortality and warrant even more diligent evaluation. Signs and symptoms of coronary artery hypoperfusion include chest pain and dyspnea; clinical findings can include jugular neck vein distention, pulmonary rales and crackles, a new S3 or S4 gallop, and a middiastolic regurgitation murmur that signifies papillary muscle injury. Electrocardiogram changes may be consistent with myocardial ischemia.

Heart

In addition to a severe systemic vascular response, patients with sepsis and septic shock also develop severe derangements in cardiac function. Although these effects have been attributed to global myocardial ischemia, recent studies support the hypothesis that myocardial depression occurs in response to circulating myocardial depressant substances, such as a soluble catabolic product released by the pancreas, TNE–TNE, and IL-1β. Initially, patients may present with a normal or slightly reduced cardiac output. This is due to hypovolemia from arterial and venous dilatation and interstitial pooling. With adequate fluid resuscitation, the hemodynamic presentation is that of a marked increase in cardiac output (∼11 L/min), a low SVR, and a severely reduced ventricular ejection fraction. In surviving patients, there is usually a compensatory increase in the left ventricular end-diastolic volume (LVEDV) secondary to ventricular dilatation. Current evidence suggests that right ventricular dysfunction in septic shock closely parallels left ventricular dysfunction. Right ventricular function in both septics and septic shock is characterized by ventricular dilatation and decreased right ventricular ejection fraction, changes that resolve in 7 to 14 days. Patients who do not survive have persistent right ventricular dysfunction. Several studies also suggest the existence of significant right ventricular compliance abnormalities in patients with septic shock. However, the relative contribution of abnormalities of compliance and contractility to impaired cardiac function of the right ventricle is currently unknown.

The initial cardiac effects of septic shock include decreased contractility and, in survivors, compensatory ventricular dilatation. Because stroke volume is maintained and tachycardia is pronounced, cardiac output is almost always dramatically increased. In this setting, cardiac output is a poor measure of myocardial performance. In the recovery phase, the SVR returns to normal over 24 hours or so, and the cardiac index drops to near normal levels. In septic shock fatalities, little or no initial reduction in stroke volume or increase in LVEDV was found, suggesting that ventricular dilatation is absent in these patients, which accounts for the lack of compensatory increase in stroke volume or cardiac output needed to maintain arterial
perfusion defect can be partial or total, and tubular or cortical necrosis, or both, can result.

Skin and Mucous Membranes

When the skin is poorly perfused, its temperature falls and its color changes, so that it is cold to the touch and pale, dusky, or mottled in appearance. When hypoxemia is pronounced, the skin may become frankly cyanotic. Sympathetic stimulation results in increased sweat gland secretion; consequently, the skin may be moist, cold, or clammy. With mild hypovolemia, capillary refill, which is clinically assessed by compressing and then releasing pressure on the fingernail beds, remains normal. However, with losses of 30% or more of the circulating volume, patients nearly always demonstrate a positive capillary refill test (>2 seconds). The lips and oral cavity may appear dry or chapped. The conscious patient usually experiences intense thirst.

Lung

The pulmonary vasculature is particularly susceptible to injury. Clinical manifestations include dyspnea, progressive hypoxemia, diffuse bilateral pulmonary infiltrates, and reduced compliance. A condition is referred to as adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). The combination of ARDS and Gram-negative sepsis is particularly ominous, because nearly 50% of patients diagnosed with sepsis develop acute lung injury/ARDS, contributing to mortality rates of 80% to 90%. ARDS results from increased pulmonary capillary permeability and the accumulation of extravascular lung water. Inflammatory cells spill into the alveoli, destroying the delicate type I alveolar cells. This is followed by proliferation of type II pneumocytes, thickening of the alveolar–capillary membranes, and subsequent fibrosis. Clinically, ARDS is characterized by intrapulmonary shunting, widening of the alveolar–arterial oxygen gradient, and reduced pulmonary compliance and functional residual capacity. Radiographic findings are consistent with pulmonary edema, despite a normal or low pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP). Arterial PaO2 remains low (<65 mm Hg), even with supplemental oxygen, and assisted mechanical ventilation is often required.

Liver

In sepsis, the liver plays a critical role in host defense response. Kupffer cells are important for bacterial scavenging, inactivation of bacterial products, and proinflammatory cytokine production and clearance. Cytokine receptor-mediated responses within hepatocytes include gluconeogenesis, amino-acid uptake, and increased synthesis of coagulant and complement factors and protease inhibitors. Paradoxically, the acute phase protein response also contributes to a procoagulant state, inhibiting the production and function of protein C. Primary hepatic dysfunction refers to sepsis-induced derangements that typically resolve in disseminated intravascular coagulation and bleeding. Reduced perfusion appears to be the most important initiating event. Secondary hepatic dysfunction is a more frequent, silent, and at times imperceptible dysfunction that probably results from spillover of bacterial, endotoxin, and inflammatory mediators. At this juncture, most of the liver's function is clinically intact. Liver dysfunction associated with multiorgan failure is characterized by elevated bilirubin levels, rarely exceeding 10 mg/dL, approximately 80% of which is conjugated. Hyperbilirubinemia results from the breakdown of RBCs and from hepatocellular dysfunction. Although alkaline phosphatase often is 1 to 3 times that of AST or ALT, more dramatic elevations may be observed, especially in the elderly. Patients with hepatic failure secondary to sepsis continue to demonstrate progressive worsening abnormalities in plasma albumin, fat, and amino acid metabolism. The amino acid profile is typically one of decreased branched chain and increased aromatic amino acids.

Gastrointestinal Tract

Gastrointestinal failure presents as gastrointestinal stress bleeding, which is characterized clinically by “coffee-ground” staining of gastric aspirates, or frank, bright red bleeding. In addition to blood loss, the resulting mucosal injury increases the likelihood of translocation of bacteria to the blood and liver. Bacterial translocation—the movement of viable organisms from the gut lumen across intact epithelium into the mesenteric lymph nodes, liver, spleen, lungs, or the systemic circulation—has been postulated as a potential source of bacteria and sepsis. Normally, the gastrointestinal mucosa serves as an important mechanical barrier to systemic contamination by intraluminal microflora. The normal gut flora consists predominantly of anaerobic bacteria that displace more pathogenic organisms such as Escherichia coli and Candida albicans away from the gastrointestinal mucosa, a host defense mechanism termed colonization resistance. The source of Gram-negative bacteremia after trauma and hypovolemic shock is thought to be from mucosal endothelial cell injury or from bacterial translocation. The microvascular circulation of the mesenteric vili appears to be highly susceptible to mesenteric ischemia, leading to further endothelial cell injury. As with the kidney and lung, inflammatory cells are attracted to the site of endothelial cell injury. Cytokines and oxygen free radicals are released that promote additional injury that may result in mucosal ulceration or bleeding, or both.

Summary of Shock Presentation

Clinical signs and symptoms and systemic manifestations are frequently subdivided into early, usually reversible manifestations (Table 12.3) and late findings (Table 12.6). In early stages, the clinical findings of hypovolemic and septic shock differ, but are usually reversible, whereas the clinical features are essentially the same for late or irreversible shock. When diagnosis or intervention is delayed or insufficient, shock can become irreversible, resulting in permanent organ dysfunction or death. The patient may enter a chronic condition of continued mal-function of one or more organ systems—despite adequate volume restoration, the absence of persistent infection, and other identifiable insults (Fig. 12.1) termed multiorgan failure syndrome. Multiorgan failure, depending on the number of organ systems involved, carries a mortality of 30% to 100% and is the most common cause of death from shock. In addition to continued central nervous system, cardiac, and renal dysfunction, organ system failure in its classic presentation usually involves the lungs first (24 to 72 hours after the original injury), then the liver (5 to 7 days), followed by the gastrointestinal tract (10 to 15 days) and kidneys (11 to 17 days). However, many variations in clinical presentation are seen. For example, patients...
TABLE 12.5
PRESENTING FEATURES OF SHOCK: EARLY SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organ system</th>
<th>Hypovolemic (hemorrhagic) shock</th>
<th>Septic shock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Central nervous</td>
<td>Mental status changes*</td>
<td>Decreased cerebral perfusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circulatory</td>
<td>Tachycardia, rapid thready pulse</td>
<td>Myocardial ischemia, depressed cardiac function, cardiac output may be increased or decreased*; decreased SVR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart</td>
<td>Tachycardia, rapid thready pulse</td>
<td>Myocardial ischemia, depressed cardiac function, cardiac output may be increased or decreased*; decreased SVR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic</td>
<td>Normotensive or hypotensive*, decreased JVP*; narrow pulse pressure</td>
<td>Normotensive or slightly hypotensive; widened pulse pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal</td>
<td>Oliguria*</td>
<td>Oliguria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory</td>
<td>Normal or tachypneic*</td>
<td>Vasoconstriction, sympathetic stimulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>Cold, clammy</td>
<td>Fever or hypothermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SVR, systemic vascular resistance; JVD, jugular neck vein distension.

*Variable in severity, depending on the rate and volume of loss.

Febrile Neutropenia

Neutropenic fever is clinically defined by three oral temperatures of 38°C (100.4°F) or a single temperature higher than 38.5°C (101.3°F) coexistent with a low ANC (less than 500/mm³). Over the past several decades, bacteremia in febrile neutropenic patients has shifted from Gram-negative to Gram-positive organisms secondary to more frequent use of indwelling catheters, which are particularly at risk for Gram-positive colonization from skin flora. Other contributing factors include use of prophylactic antibiotics, the type of chemotherapy given, and regional climatic conditions. In the early 1970s, the empirical use of intravenous broad-spectrum antibiotics in febrile neutropenic patients significantly reduced infection-related mortality; patients were typically hospitalized and treated until their ANC had recovered and they were afebrile for at least 24 hours. However, in nearly half of neutropenic patients who receive standard antibiotic therapy, no bacterial infection is identified. Recent estimates indicate that cancer patients account for 126,209 severe sepsis cases annually in the United States—16.4 cases per 1,000 people per year. Severe sepsis is associated with 8.5% of all cancer-related deaths at a cost of 3.4 billion dollars per year; the overall mortality rate for febrile neutropenia is approximately 6%. Costs of hospitalization, risks of exposure to nosocomial infections, emergence of drug resistance, and variable compliance with antibiotic regimens formed the basis for stratification of febrile neutropenic cancer patients into high- and low-risk groups. Individual studies and systematic reviews indicate that low-risk patients with neutropenic fever may be treated safely with oral antibiotics. A metaanalysis of neutropenic patients (1980–1994) found that antibiotic prophylaxis significantly reduced the risk of death over placebo or no treatment (RR 0.67, 95% CI 0.55, 0.83) and that oral fluoroquinolone prophylaxis significantly reduced mortality (RR 0.52, 95% CI 0.35, 0.77). Despite this, quinolone prophylaxis increases the risk for harboring antibiotic-resistant organisms. A subsequent metaanalysis of the Cochrane Database of Systemic Reviews found that adding anti-Gram-positive therapy did not adversely affect survival. Overuse of Gram-positive coverage has led to the emergence of resistant enterococci and, more recently, S. aureus species. Because of concern regarding the spread of vancomycin resistance, its empirical use in this setting is specifically discouraged. In one recent study, in select low-risk
Table 12.6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organ system</th>
<th>Hypovolemic shock or septic shock</th>
<th>Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Central nervous</td>
<td>Disorientation, obtundation</td>
<td>Hypoxia, worsening cerebral edema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart</td>
<td>Cardiac dysfunction, tachycardia, and other arrhythmias</td>
<td>Irreversible ischemia, decreased cardiac index, decreased ejection fraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic</td>
<td>Jugular neck vein distention may be increased or decreased, normotension or progressive hypotension</td>
<td>Right heart failure, extravascular pooling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal</td>
<td>Oliguria progressing to anuria</td>
<td>Acute renal failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory</td>
<td>Tachypnea</td>
<td>Adult respiratory distress syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>Cold, clammy</td>
<td>Vasconstriction, sympathetic stimulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Lactic acidosis, coagulopathy, thrombocytopenia, depressed platelet function</td>
<td>Anaerobic metabolism, hepatic dysfunction; endothelial cell injury, platelet deposition, vascular thrombosis; hepatic dysfunction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Variable in severity, depending upon the rate and volume of loss.

Febrile neutropenic patients (no clinical evidence of infection, IL-8 < 60 ng/L), withholding empiric antibiotic therapy did not increase adverse events and resulted in cost savings of $572 per patient. In hospitalized febrile neutropenic patients with hematological malignancies, piperacillin-tazobactam was found to be more effective and cost-efficient than ceftriaxone plus gentamicin. The specific management of neutropenic patients must be based on the underlying malignancy, prior prophylactic therapy, institutional/community drug-resistance patterns, and patient risk factors.

**MANAGEMENT OF SHOCK**

For the gynecologist who infrequently encounters a moribund, unstable patient in shock, it may be useful to remember to restore ORDER. The mnemonic, ORDER, outlined in Table 12.7, provides the appropriate sequence of resuscitative priorities. After immediate resuscitative measures are initiated, it is highly recommended that continued management of all but the least complicated cases be carried out in a modern critical care unit. A team approach with the benefit of staff trained in intensive care medicine can greatly improve the likelihood of survival, as well as significantly reduce morbidity. General guidelines for managing shock are provided in Table 12.8.

**Oxygenate**

For patients with minimal or no respiratory distress, oxygen delivery at 1 to 6 L/min by nasal cannula may be sufficient. When respiratory distress is evident, oxygen delivery by face mask at the recommended flow rate (8–10 L/min) will increase the inspired oxygen concentrations to 80% to 100% with an oxygen reservoir, compared with 40% to 60% without a reservoir. For patients who are disoriented or obtunded, tiring, or unable to maintain sufficient arterial oxygenation (Pao₂ < 60 mm Hg), the airway must be protected. Immediate endotracheal intubation with positive pressure ventilation should be instituted. Oxygenation in patients with increased compliance and high intrapulmonary shunt fractions (e.g., ARDS, pulmonary edema) can be improved by the addition of positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) at physiologic or low levels (5–15 cm H₂O). Because high levels of PEEP can reduce venous return and, consequently, reduce cardiac output, patients needing higher levels may benefit from invasive hemodynamic monitoring to determine the "best" PEEP to optimize oxygen delivery.

**Restore Circulating Volume**

Initial fluid therapy should consist of a 1- to 2-liter fluid challenge with an isotonic electrolyte solution, preferably Ringer’s lactate. Normal or half normal saline solution can also be infused; however, prolonged use of these infusions increases the risk of hyperchloremic acidosis if renal function is impaired. Because severe hypernatremia increases the risk of brain dehydration or death, hypertonic saline is not recommended except under special circumstances and is not part of the initial management. Albumin and other colloidal solutions (high- or low-molecular-weight dextran, polyethyl starches) have been advocated to restore and maintain circulation under the premise that these agents are more likely to remain in the intravascular...
In trauma and perioperative patients, hypobutermia of some degree is almost universal, and results from crystalloid administration, increases in capillary permeability, and sequestration of albumin in the interstitial compartment. Albumin has been used in edematous patients based on ratio nale that edema fluid may be “pulled” into the intracellular compartment and excreted. This practice is not supported by scientific data and may actually be harmful. Colloids can eventually “leak” across damaged pulmonary capillary epithelium, may be lifesaving in selected clinical settings, specifically patients with cirrhosis and spontaneous bacterial peritonitis. The choice of fluid replacement also has considerable cost implications, because colloids are more expensive than crystalloid administration and more expensive than hydroxyethyl starch.

In most cases, hemorrhagic shock should be managed initially by inserting one or two large-bore (14- or 16-gauge) angiocatheters for volume replacement. Central venous catheterization is not recommended for most patients. Central venous access will not improve the rate of fluid administration and carries the risk of pneumothorax and other potentially life-threatening complications. Central circulation can also be improved by elevating the feet or by placing the patient in the Trendelenburg position. Blood can be drawn for initial laboratory assessment at the time that intravenous access is obtained and should include a complete blood count with differential and platelets, electrolytes, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), creatinine, calcium, magnesium, glucose, phosphate, and, where indicated, serum human chorionic gonadotropin β, liver function studies, clotting profiles, serum lactate, and blood cultures.

In patients with distributive shock, or shock following ischemic injury from severe or prolonged hypovolemia, damage to the capillary endothelium results in increased capillary permeability and greater interstitial losses, and larger volumes of fluid are required to restore circulatory volume than may be apparent by clinical estimation of the plasma volume. For example, 6 to 7 liters of fluid may be required for what appears to be 1 to 1.5 liters of plasma volume depletion. Most of these patients have some degree of cardiac dysfunction and are at high risk for lung injury from injurious volume expansion. Because central venous pressure and PCWP are often discordant, right heart catheterization has been advocated

**TABLE 12.7**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RESUSCITATIVE PRIORITIES IN THE MANAGEMENT OF OVERT SHOCK: RESTORE ORDER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>O:</strong> Oxygenate (assure adequate airway, tidal volume, 6–8 L/min of oxygen by closed mask, nasal catheter, or endotracheal tube)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>R:</strong> Restore circulatory volume (one or more intravenous lines, assess volume loss and replace with crystalloid; administer whole blood or packed red blood cells; with severe hemorrhage or disseminated intravascular coagulation, replace clotting factors as indicated; sterile packing until hemodynamic stability is restored; central venous monitoring; obtain cultures if indicated with intravenous access)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D:</strong> Drug therapy (pharmacologic support of blood pressure, antibiotics, miscellaneous agents for specified conditions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E:</strong> Evaluate response to therapy (identify etiology of shock; volume replacement based on right heart catheterization or central venous monitoring; reevaluate hemoglobin, coagulation profiles, serum chemistries [potassium, phosphate, acid-base, PaO2, creatinine]; modify treatment plan/pharmacologic therapy; obtain culture results; radiographic studies—abdominal films, chest x-ray, CT scan, ventilation-perfusion scan, as indicated by suspected underlying condition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>R:</strong> Remedy the underlying cause (surgical control of bleeding using selective interventional embolization or surgery; antibiotic therapy based on culture results)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**TABLE 12.8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GENERAL GUIDELINES FOR MANAGING SHOCK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cardiovascular/hemodynamic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central venous pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen saturation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 2.2 L/min/m2 (other shock states)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pulmonary</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintain:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PaO2, 80–100 mm Hg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PaCO2, 30–35 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pH &gt; 7.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Renal</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintain urine output of 20–30 mL/h (0.5 mL/kg/h); normalize blood urea nitrogen, creatinine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hepatic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintain:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serum lactate level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 2.2 mmol/L (suspect tissue hypoperfusion when elevated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mental status</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restore/maintain orientation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coagulation studies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

after immediate fluid resuscitation. Additional volume replace- ment or pressure support may then be based on determina- tions of the pulmonary artery mean and occlusive pressures, cardiac output, cardiac index, and SVR. Mixed venous oxy- gen content can be also obtained to estimate oxygen deliv- ery at the cellular level. For patients with pulmonary injury, shunt fractions and alveolar-arterial oxygen differences can be calculated to evaluate ventilatory and RBC trans- fusion requirements. Contors and colleagues, in a prospective study of 52 critically ill patients with multiorgan system dis- ease, found that clinical estimates of volume status are signific- antly different from estimates based on right heart catheter- ization parameters; in this study, major changes in therapy (altering the rate of fluid administration, or starting or stop- ping a pressor agent, or both) occurred in 48.4% of cases after catheterization.

Many cardiologists and critical care physicians believe that therapy guided by pulmonary artery catheterization (PAC) leads to improved patient outcomes. However, the “routine” use of Swan-Ganz catheters in patients with sepsis is controver- sial. One or more randomized controlled clinical trials could clarify this issue; however, attempts at randomized controlled trials have failed, mostly because of physician biases for or against their use. In the absence of controlled trials, observa- tional studies permitting, placement of right heart catheters at the discretion of the physician are being used in an attempt to clarify the risk/benefit ratios. These studies are inherently biased because the more critically ill the patient is, the more likely he is to undergo right heart catheterization, and the more likely she is to die, independent of this intervention—a selection bias has termed confounding by indication. In one observational study of 5,735 critically ill patients in five teaching hospitals, PAC use was found to be associated with increased mortality and costs with no clear benefit. A PAC Consensus Conference con- cluded that there is insufficient evidence to support the routine use of PACs in septic patients, but PAC improves outcome in patients with myocardial infarction complicated by cardio- genic shock and right ventricular infarction. In patients with respiratory failure (i.e., ARDS versus pulmonary edema), deter- minations of pulmonary artery mean and occlusive pressures, cardiac output, cardiac index, and systemic vascular resistance may be useful to determine the underlying and to guide fluid therapy, but it is uncertain that using PACs in this setting improves survival.

Specific blood component therapy has virtually replaced whole blood transfusion as the standard of care. Packed red blood cells (PRBC) have a volume of 200 to 250 mL and a hematocrit of 70%. Combined with normal saline, PRBCs are the component of choice for hemorrhagic shock. Loss of approximately 20% of blood volume is equivalent to 1,500 mL blood loss and in a normal 70-kg individual is not associ- ated with a significant reduction in oxygen-carrying capacity or ventilator filling pressures when adequate crystalloid resus- citation is given. Because the oxygen-carrying capacity is met in most healthy patients with a hemoglobin of 7 g/dL, empirical transfusion for moderate anemia (8 to 10 g/dL) is no longer recommended. Nevertheless, because most of the oxygen trans- ferred in the blood is by hemoglobin, correction of anemia is an important component in optimizing oxygen delivery at the cellular level (Table 12.8). In general, these recommendations regarding RBC transfusion have been derived from the man- agement of trauma victims that were in normal health before and at the event. In the critically ill patients and those with signif- icant underlying cardiac disease, RBC transfusions have been used liberally to maintain hemoglobin levels between 10 and 12 g/dL to reduce the potential adverse effects of oxygen debt.

The importance of weighing the benefits of RBC transfu- sion against potential adverse effects has received considerable attention. Current estimates of the risk per unit of blood in the postnuclear acid testing era are 1 in 872,000 to 7 million and in 4–8 million for hepatitis C virus and human immuno- deficiency virus (HIV), respectively. Other risks of contami- nation include human T-cell lymphotrophic virus (1/250,000– 1,000,000), acute hemolytic transfusion, delayed hemolytic (1/7,000), and transfusion-related lung inju- ry (1/5,000). Currently, bacterial contamination of platelets poses the greatest risk of transfusion transmitted disease. Of 4 million platelet units transfused annually in the United States, as many as 4,000 are bacterially contaminated, resulting in 333 to 1,000 cases of severe sepsis. Concern for infectious risks (HIV, hepatitis, shortages, and expense led many gov- ernmental agencies and advisory boards, including the Amer-ican College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, to adopt lower thresholds for empiric transfusion. In a multicenter, ran- domized controlled clinical trial of critically ill patients, there were no differences in mortality rates when hemoglobin lev- els were maintained between 7 and 9 mg/dL compared with scheduled transfusions to maintain levels between 10 and 12 mg/dL, and mortality rates among younger (<35 years) and less acutely ill patients were significantly lower for those who were not transfused. The immunomodulation effects of blood transfusion—immune suppression, allograft tolerance, and the potential development of autoimmune diseases—probably occurs secondarily to exposure and sensitization of leukocytes. Immunosuppression may contribute to postoperative infection in transfused patients and may increase recurrence for some solid tumors. Despite these risks, the benefit of leukocyte re- duction of cellular blood components is proven. Because the cost of universal leukodepletion is in excess of $500 million, this practice is unlikely to be adopted until proven beneficial.

Preoperative autologous donation, the practice of do- nating blood before surgery, accounted for 6% of blood transfused blood in 1992 but has declined to about 2%. Pre- operative autologous transfusions are also more costly than allogeic blood transfusion. HIV and hepatitis C transmis- sion risks, which spawned the wide acceptance of this prac- tice, have dramatically declined in recent years, and autolo- gous blood donation may actually be transfused to patients and include bacterial contamination, volume overload, administra- tion error/ABO incompatibility, and perioperative anemia, ne- cessitating allogeic transfusion. This practice is also waste- ful, as up to half of the blood donated for this purpose in the United States is ultimately discarded. Advantages include the prevention of transfusion-transmitted disease, red cell al- lomunization, and transfusion reaction. To transfuse preop- erative autologous blood during shock, acute normovolemic hemodilution entails the removal of whole blood from a pa- tient immediately before surgery, and volume is restored with crystalloid or colloid. After major bleeding is controlled, the blood is infused. Relative contraindications include infection, malignancy, and contaminants (amoebic fluid/patIENTCONTENTS/ASCITES/FUS) within the operative field. Despite this, both acute normovolemic hemodilution and cell salvage can be used in women undergoing cesarean section who are at risk for profound hemorrhage (placenta percreta) who will not ac- cept blood products.

A higher threshold for blood transfusion is warranted in patients with renal, coronary artery, and/or chronic obstructive lung disease because of increased risk for acute myocardial infarction and perioperative death. Most experts recommend maintaining hemoglobin levels above 10 g/dL in these patients. Survival is also improved in cervical cancer...
patients undergoing chemoradiation therapy by maintaining the hemoglobin concentration above 12 g/dL. Epoetin alfa (Procrit; Ortho Biotech Inc., Raritan, NJ) is currently approved in the United States for the treatment of anemia in patients with nonmyeloid malignancies who receive concomitant chemotherapy. In cancer patients receiving chemotherapy, epoetin alfa 10,000 U and increased to 20,000 U three times weekly, depending on hemoglobin after 4 weeks, improved patient-reported functional capacity and quality of life independent of response to chemotherapy. Epoetin alfa has become a valuable alternative to transfusion in patients with inflammatory diseases that reduce erythropoiesis (e.g., renal failure, carcinoma) or who refuse blood products. Its use can reduce the need for transfusion when given preoperatively to anemic patients. Epoetin alfa is not effective without appropriate iron intake, preferably given with vitamin C, to enhance absorption. Although there are no adverse effects recorded in cancer patients, two recent trials have shown lower survival rates in patients treated with epoetin alpha instead of transfusion. Further studies are needed to address the presence of erythropoietin on tumor cells and its impact on tumor progression, especially in this clinical setting. Red-cell substitutes are in various stages of clinical development and may become lifesaving alternatives in military and trauma settings or for patients who refuse other options.

When blood loss exceeds 25% of the blood volume, whole blood— or, in the presence of bleeding consistent with coagulopathy, PRBCs and fresh frozen plasma (FFP) in a 4:1 ratio—has been the standard of care until recently. However, 4-5 platelet concentrates, or 1 unit of single-donor apheresis platelets, or 1 unit of whole blood provides a quantity of factors similar to 1 U FFP (except for factor V and VIII) and is usually sufficient for hemostasis. True dilutional coagulopathy, which may occur with loss of 100% of blood volume has been replaced. Therefore, it is recommended that coagulation profiles be obtained in patients with microvascular bleeding and transfusion with FFP not be given unless the PT/PTT is greater than 1.5 times normal values or, in absence of lab determinations, only for massively transfused patients with ongoing microvascular bleeding or when warfarin therapy must be given. Cryoprecipitate is concentrated FFP in a small volume of 10 to 15 mL (1 bag per 5 kg in a 70-kg individual). Because cryoprecipitate is pooled factor components from multiple donors, risk of infection is significantly increased. Cryoprecipitate should be reserved for patients with deficiencies in factor VIII, von Willebrand factor, fibrinogen factor XIII, and/or fibrinogen who fail desmopressin acetate. When desmopressin intravenous coagulation is suspected based on massive transfusion and the persistence of significant outbleeding, FFP instead of cryoprecipitate is the component of choice. To avoid the risks of hemolysis, agglutination, and clotting, all blood products should be administered through clinically filtered lines with normal saline without electrolyte or drug additives. To prevent hypothermia, warming of blood products is indicated when the volume infused exceeds 50 mL/kg/h.

When transfusion is massive (10 U PRBCs in 24 h), platelets in addition to packed cell transfusion are needed. One unit of platelet concentrate will increase the count by 3,000 to 10,000/μL. Preoperative platelet and intraoperative platelet counts of 50,000/μL or less are indications for platelet transfusion when major surgery or further bleeding is anticipated. Platelet transfusions may also be indicated for platelet dysfunction. FFP is indicated in coagulopathy, without increasing microvascular coagulation, severe liver disease, or massive transfusion and for specific clotting disturbances when the factor concentrate is not available. FFP is not indicated for volume expansion or nutritional support and should not be given empirically with PRBC transfusions.

**Drug Therapy**

**Pharmacologic Support of Blood Pressure**

Inotropic agents and vaspressors recommended in the management of hypotensive shock are outlined in Table 12.9. Except for the newer agents (inamrinone, milrinone acetate), all of these sympathomimetic agents have both inotropic and vasoconstrictive effects. With these cardiosuppressive effects, dopamine hydrochloride and dobutamine hydrochloride are the preferred agents in the initial treatment of shock. Epinephrine and norepinephrine, which are potent vasoconstrictors, are usually reserved for refractory hypotension. It is important to bear in mind that these vasoactive drugs are not indicated until adequate volume replacement has been given and are seldom of benefit in the management of hemorrhagic shock. Use of vaspressors in the face of inadequate volume resuscitation can worsen preexisting ischemia, increasing cellular and organ system injury. The judicious use of sympathomimetic agents after sufficient hydration may be useful to correct inadequate cardiac function and persistent hypoperfusion.

Because they reduce myocardial oxygen requirements and improve myocardial performance, vasodilators (nitroglycerin, nitroprusside) are generally preferred in the management of patients with cardiogenic shock who have mean arterial pressures higher than 70 mm Hg. Vasodilators are not indicated in the setting of hypovolemic and septic shock associated with low arterial pressures secondary to peripheral vasodilatation. Under these circumstances, vasodilators would serve to further reduce venous return and may intensify hypotension and further reduce coronary artery perfusion.

Dopamine is the preferred catecholaminergic agent in the management of the hypotensive patient whose MAP is less than 60 mm Hg. Dopamine stimulates dopaminergic, β₂-adrenergic, and β₁-adrenergic receptors in a dose-dependent fashion. At low doses (1-3 μg/kg/min), dopamine stimulates cerebral, renal, mesenteric, and vasoconstrictive effects. Because of their cardiotropic effects, all of these sympathomimetic agents have both inotropic and vasoconstrictive effects. Because of their cardiotropic effects, all of these sympathomimetic agents have both inotropic and vasoconstrictive effects.
TABLE 12.9
PHARMACOLOGIC SUPPORT OF THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Usual dose range</th>
<th>αβ</th>
<th>Dopamine</th>
<th>Peripheral vascular effects</th>
<th>Clinical setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adrenergic effects</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Isotropic agents</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dopamine</td>
<td>1–2 μg/kg/min</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>Vasodilation (+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2–10 μg/kg/min</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>Hypertension, bradycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10–30 μg/kg/min</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>Hypertension, bradycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dobutamine</td>
<td>2.5–15 μg/kg/min</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Vasodilation (+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2–30 μg/kg/min</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Retraction bradycardia, refractory cardiac de pointes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isoproterenol</td>
<td>1–10 μg/min</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Oliguria, hypotension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vasopressors</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylephrine</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Vasoconstriction (+) (+)</td>
<td>Distributive shock, when no cardiac effect desired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levarterenol (norepinephrine)</td>
<td>2–20 μg/kg/min</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Vasoconstriction (+) (+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epinephrine</td>
<td>0.5–1 mg (1:10,000)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Vasoconstriction (+) (+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1–200 μg/min</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Severe hypertension and bradycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.3–0.5 mg</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Initial emergency treatment of hypertension of any cause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inamrinone (formerly, amrinone)</td>
<td>Load: 0.75 mg/kg IV bolus, then 5–10 μg/kg/minute (up to 40 μg/kg/minute)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Vasodilation (+)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Direct myocardial effect, at least in part secondary to inhibition of cardiac cyclic AMP</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Congestive heart failure, usually used combined with dobutamine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milrinone lactate</td>
<td>Load 30 μg/kg over 3 min, then 0.375–0.75 μg/kg/min</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Vasodilation (+)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Direct myocardial effect, at least in part secondary to inhibition of cardiac cyclic AMP</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Congestive heart failure, usually used combined with dobutamine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metaraminol bitartrate</td>
<td>Load: 0.5–5 mg, then 15 to 100 mg infusion</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Vasodilation (+)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IV, intravenous; AMP, adenosine monophosphate phosphodiesterase.
be associated with myocardial depression, an elevated LVESD, and an abnormally high PCWP; dobutamine may be preferred or needed in addition to dopamine. Used together at moderate doses, dopamine and dobutamine can maintain arterial pressure with less of an increase in pulmonary artery occlusive pressure or pulmonary congestion than when dopamine is used alone. Inamrinone is a phosphodiesterase inhibitor with positive inotropic and chronotropic effects. Although typically blocked by use of α, β, cholinergic-, or ganglionic-blocking agents, inamrinone decreases myocardial cyclic adenosine monophosphate phosphodiesterase (AMP) activity, thereby increasing cardiac cyclic AMP levels. Inamrinone improves lung compliance in mechanically ventilated patients with severe cardiogenic pulmonary edema and is currently recommended in the setting of severe acute congestive heart failure with a systolic blood pressure greater than 100 mm Hg. Inamrinone and milrinone are synergistic with dobutamine, and these agents are often used together for acute refractory congestive heart failure and cardiogenic shock.

Isoproterenol is a synthetic sympathomimetic amine with nearly pure β-adrenergic effects. Although its potent inotropic and chronotropic properties increase cardiac output, isoproterenol increases tachycardia and oxygen consumption and can induce or exacerbate myocardial ischemia. Isoproterenol is seldom used to treat shock. The vasopressors (phenylephrine, norepinephrine, and epinephrine) are used for refractory shock. Although epinephrine and norepinephrine have both β- and α-adrenergic effects, they differ in that epinephrine has more potent α-adrenergic activity. These potent agents increase blood pressure predominantly by increasing systemic and peripheral vascular resistance and must be used with great caution in patients with shock because they may induce or exacerbate myocardial ischemia.

Antibiotic Therapy

Antibiotic therapy should be initiated immediately, as soon as samples of blood and other suspected sites of infections have been obtained for culture. The agents selected should be based on the likely pathogens at the probable site of infection, recent antibiotic use, and the patterns of antimicrobial resistance within the hospital or community (Table 12.10). Empiric broad-spectrum therapy should cover both Gram-positive and Gram-negative organisms; anaerobic coverage is also indicated when a pelvic source is suspected (ubovarian abscess or septic abortion). Initially, these agents should be given at maximum doses, with dose modification for impaired renal function. Acceptable regimens include an extended-spectrum penicillin (azlocillin, mezlocillin, piperacillin) or third-generation cephalosporin (cefotaxime, ceftriaxone) combined with an aminoglycoside. Extended-spectrum penicillins combined with an aminoglycoside may be more effective than cephalosporin-aminoglycoside combinations for Gram-negative sepsis, and in the absence of a penicillin allergy, broad-spectrum β-lactam antibiotic–β-lactamase inhibitor combinations, or a carbapenem, or a fluoroquinolone, to prevent the rapid development of resistance. A parenteral coverage may consist of clindamycin or metronidazole (Flagyl), although dose modifications are required for hepatic failure. Because of the emergence of clindamycin-resistant B. fragilis, β-lactam antibiotic–β-lactamase inhibitor combinations and metronidazole are better agents for the empiric treatment of B. fragilis; clindamycin can be substituted after drug sensitivity is verified. The only available coverage for methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus is vancomycin, which requires dose adjustments in patients with renal compromise. When the suspected source of infection is a peripheral or central venous access site, vancomycin may be added to cover for Staphylococcus epidermidis. Its effects are usually observed within 24 hours, and if the patient improves, vancomycin can be stopped.

Empiric broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy should be replaced with specific therapy as soon as possible because of the significant adverse effects. These include disruption of the normal gut mucosal barrier that increases the risk for opportunistic infections including yeast species (C. albicans), enterococcal infection, and pseudomembranous enterocolitis. Clostridium difficile–induced colitis (CDIC) is a gastrointestinal disorder that results from colonization by and overgrowth of C. difficile, a Gram-positive, spore-forming anaerobic bacillus. Exposure to oral antibiotic therapy is the most common predisposing factor; an association with clindamycin use is well established, but anyone colonized with C. difficile who receives antibiotic therapy is at risk. Associated medical comorbidities include advanced age and diabetes, recent bowel preparation, admission to an intensive care unit, and chemotherapy. C. difficile infection usually presents with mild to moderate diarrhea, sometimes associated with lower abdominal cramping; systemic symptoms are usually absent. The laboratory diagnosis is made by stool culture.

Severe colitis without pseudomembrane formation is associated with profuse, debilitating diarrhea, abdominal pain, and distension. Systemic manifestations include fever, nausea, anorexia, malaise, and dehydration, and leukocytosis and fever are commonly found. Pseudomembranous colitis is characterized by worsening symptoms, and proctosigmoidoscopy reveals characteristic adherent yellow plaques. When colitis is life-threatening, patients appear acutely ill, with abdominal tenderness and distension, fever, tachycardia and hypotension, or shock. The development of a paralytic ileus and colonic dilatation can result in a paradoxical decrease in diarrhea. When C. difficile infection is suspected, antibiotic therapy should be discontinued, or agents less likely to disrupt the normal colonic microflora—such as aminoglycosides and aminoglycoside–β-lactam antibiotic–β-lactamase inhibitor combinations and the impact of these antibiotics on the incidence of C. difficile have raised additional concerns regarding the use of quinolones in the treatment of anaerobic infections. Quinolones remain an effective therapy for infections caused by enteric Gram-negative and -positive bacteria and are an important alternative to β-lactam antibiotics. Advantages include spectrum of activity, pharmacokinetics, and once-daily oral administration. Quinolones available for clinical use have been classified into four generations, mainly based on their spectrum of activity. The second generation (fluoroquinolone) has a fluorine substitute at position 6, which markedly increases activity against Gram-negative organisms. Of the fluoroquinolones, the two most widely used are ciprofloxacin and ofloxacin; ciprofloxacin is the most active against P. aeruginosa and a valuable alternative in patients with impaired renal function. Acceptable regimens include an extended-spectrum penicillin (azlocillin, mezlocillin, piperacillin) or third-generation cephalosporin (cefotaxime, ceftriaxone) combined with an aminoglycoside therapy to cover both Gram-positive and Gram-negative organisms; anaerobic coverage is also indicated when a pelvic source is suspected (ubovarian abscess or septic abortion). Initially, these agents should be given at maximum doses, with dose modification for impaired renal function. Acceptable regimens include an extended-spectrum penicillin (azlocillin, mezlocillin, piperacillin) or third-generation cephalosporin (cefotaxime, ceftriaxone) combined with an aminoglycoside.
EMPIRIC ANTIBIOTIC SELECTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suspected source of sepsis</th>
<th>Lung</th>
<th>Abdomen</th>
<th>Skin/soft tissue</th>
<th>Urinary tract</th>
<th>Central nervous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Major community-acquired pathogens</td>
<td>• Streptococcus pneumonia</td>
<td>• Escherichia coli</td>
<td>• Group A streptococcus</td>
<td>• E. coli</td>
<td>• Streptococcus pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Staphylococcus aureus</td>
<td>Bacteroides fragilis</td>
<td>• Clostridium species</td>
<td>• Neisseria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Haemophilus influenzae</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Polymicrobial enteric</td>
<td>• meningitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Legionella species</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Pseudomonas aeruginosa</td>
<td>• Listeria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Chlamydia pneumoniae</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Aerobacter species</td>
<td>• monocytothyes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pneumocystis carinii</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Proteus species</td>
<td>• Escherichia coli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empiric antibiotic therapy</td>
<td>• Macrolide and 3rd generation cephalosporin or levofloxacin</td>
<td>• Impenem-cefixime, piperacillin–tazobactam ± aminoglycoside</td>
<td>• Ceftazidime, piperacillin–tazobactam</td>
<td>• Cefopaxim ± aminoglycoside</td>
<td>• Vancomycin ± third-generation cephalosporin; meropenem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major nosocomial pathogens*</td>
<td>• Aerobic Gram-negative bacilli</td>
<td>• Aerobic Gram-negative rods</td>
<td>• Staphylococcus aureus</td>
<td>• Aerobic Gram-negative rods</td>
<td>• Pseudomonas aeruginosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enterococci</td>
<td>• Anaerobes</td>
<td>• Acinetobacter baumannii</td>
<td>• Enterococci</td>
<td>• Escherichia coli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Candida species</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Enterobacter species</td>
<td>• Klebsiella species</td>
<td>• Staphylococcus species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Staphylococcus aureus</td>
<td>• Cephalosporin</td>
<td>• Cephalosporin plus menopenem; vancomycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Escherichia coli</td>
<td>• Vancomycin</td>
<td>• Vancomycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empiric antibiotic therapy</td>
<td>• Cefepime; imipenem-cefixime, piperacillin–tazobactam ± aminoglycoside</td>
<td>• Vancomycin + cefepime</td>
<td>• Vancomycin + cefepime</td>
<td>• Vancomycin + aminoglycoside</td>
<td>• Vancomycin + third-generation cephalosporin; meropenem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Empiric antibiotic selection for invasive pneumococcal disease should be based on known antibiotic susceptibility patterns in the community.

**Empiric antibiotic selection for hospital-acquired sepsis should be based on antibiotic resistance patterns for bacteria from each specific institution or intensive care unit. Antibiotic regimen may be modified 48-72 hours later, based on culture and antibiotic susceptibility. Adapted from Simon D, Trenholme G. Antibiotic selection for patients with septic shock. Crit Care Clin 2000;16:47.

Shock in the Gynecologic Patient

renal function. Ciprofloxacin is preferable against Gram-negative bacteria, whereas moxifloxacin should be used to target Gram-positive organisms. Levofloxacin and ofloxacin show an intermediate response to Gram-positive bacteria, and non-β-lactamase is an intrinsically weak fluoroquinolone against Gram-positive organisms. The emergence of drug resistance has limited their potential against S. aureus. Quinolones are not recommended for children or breast-feeding and pregnant women and should be used with caution in the elderly.

Necrotizing fasciitis is a rare, potentially fatal infection of the subcutaneous tissue associated with progressive destruction and necrosis of fascia and fat. Culture results can differentiate the subcutaneous tissue associated with progressive destruction and should be used with caution in the elderly.

Additional Therapies

Recombinant Human-activated Protein C (Drotrecogin Alfa)

Drotrecogin alfa activated (DAA), also known as activated protein C, is an endogenous protein that promotes fibrinolysis and inhibits thrombosis and inflammation and is important modulator of coagulation and inflammation associated with severe sepsis. DAA is converted from its inactive precursor protein by thrombin coupled to thrombomodulin. The conversion of DAA is impaired during sepsis as a result of the down-regulation of thrombomodulin by inflammatory cytokines. DTTA administration of 24 μg/kg of body weight...
per hour for 96 hours has been shown to reduce coagulopathy and inflammation, decreasing mortality rates in patients with severe sepsis by 6% to 13.3%. DTTA has also been proven to decrease mortality by 15.5% in older (75+ years of age) patients. DTTA, now approved by the FDA, is marketed with the brand name Xigris (Eli Lilly and Company) and is the first therapeutic intervention specifically indicated for severe sepsis. DTTA therapy is relatively cost-effective when targeted to patients with severe sepsis of greater severity of illness and a reasonable death probability if they survive the episode of sepsis. However, the cost is high and accounts for about 9% of the average total cost of hospitalization per patient treated. Adverse effects include increased risk of bleeding or intracranial hemorrhage in patients treated with anticoagulant therapy, oral anticoagulants, glycoprotein IIB/IIa inhibitors, and low-molecular-weight heparins. Further research is needed to determine if DTTA therapy is cost-effective for patients with sepsis and less severe illness.

Intensive Insulin Therapy

Patients with severe sepsis and septic shock may develop complications associated with hyperglycemia and insulin resistance, which may increase their risks of severe infections, septicemia, and death. Recent studies have examined the effects of blood glucose normalization with intensive insulin therapy among patients with severe sepsis and septic shock. Maintaining a blood glucose level at 4 to 6.1 mmol/L compared with 10 to 11.1 mmol/L reduced the episodes of septicemia by 46% and lowered the mortality rates in patients with bacteremia from 29.5% to 12.5%.

Adrenal Replacement Therapy

The role of corticosteroid therapy in shock has recently been reevaluated. Patients with severe sepsis may develop either systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS)-induced glucocorticoid receptor resistance or relative adrenal insufficiency. The prevalence of adrenal insufficiency in septic shock has been reported to be about 30%. Consequently, it has been assumed that corticosteroids could be used as antiinflammatory agents, but short courses of high-dose corticosteroids do not appear to reduce mortality from severe sepsis and septic shock. However, one intravenous dose of stress dose hydrocortisone has been shown to improve vasopressor activities in septic shock, and prolonged therapy with low-dose hydrocortisone was associated with reversal of shock state. Benefits included improvement in systemic hemodynamics, a reduction in septic shock, and prolonged therapy with low-dose hydrocortisone was associated with reversal of shock state. Benefits included improvement in systemic hemodynamics, a reduction in septic shock, and prolonged therapy with low-dose hydrocortisone was associated with reversal of shock state.

Antacids

The risks of stress ulceration of the gastric mucosa can be significantly reduced by the use of oral antacids, intravenous H2-blocking agents, or oral sucralfate. A recently described predisposing risk factor for Gram-negative pneumonia and sepsis is a reduction in the concentration of gastric secretions of antacids or H2-blockers, such as cimetidine and ranitidine, to prevent stress-induced bleeding. Driks and associates, in a prospective randomized trial, found that the use of sucralfate, which provides equivalent prophylaxis against stress bleeding without reducing gastric acid levels, was associated with approximately half the rate of pneumonia found with H2-blockers or antacid use. Evidence that sucralfate is preferable to antacids or H2-blockers is far from conclusive. Nevertheless, one of these agents should be used to protect the gastrointestinal tract from stress ulceration.

Nutrition

Malnutrition in intensive care unit (ICU) patients has been associated with increased morbidity, mortality, and length of hospitalization that is due to increased ventilator dependency, higher rates of infection, and impaired wound healing. As many as 40% of adult patients at the time of their hospital admission are affected by poor nutrition. Nutritional support should be based on laboratory assessment of preexisting nutritional status (albumin, transferrin, thyroxine-binding prealbumin, somatomedin-C). When total parenteral nutrition (TPN) is used, the usual rule of thumb is to provide between 25 and 35 nonprotein kcal/kg/day fairly equally distributed between fat and carbohydrate. Optimal assessment of caloric requirements in the patient with shock requiring mechanical ventilation is especially important. Although underfeeding can compromise pulmonary status, increased CO2 production from excessive carbohydrate loads can exacerbate hypercapnia and complicate weaning efforts. Intralipid therapy should be used judiciously in neurogenic and immunosuppressed patients because of its depressive effects on mononuclear and polymorphonuclear monocytes, and increased risks for infection. The goal of amino acid therapy is to reduce catabolic expenditure, and usually, 1 to 1.5 g/kg is sufficient. Electrolytes, BUN, creatinine, glucose, liver function studies, calcium, magnesium, and phosphate levels should be monitored as frequently as clinically indicated to adjust carbohydrate, lipid, or protein loads and to correct specific electrolyte deficits. Trace elements (zinc, copper, chromium, and manganese) should be provided. Recent reports suggest that outcomes can be improved by providing oral glutamine to patients with systemic inflammatory response syndrome. Glutamine is a nonessential amino acid that is unstable in aqueous solutions and cannot be provided by standard TPN solutions. Special attention to nutritional needs should be provided for older, critically ill patients. It is estimated that 12% to 50% of acute ill patients of age and older are malnourished as assessed by measurements such as body mass index (BMI), biochemical indices (serum albumin, prealbumin, and transferring), and clinical parameters. Reasons for this include poor dentition, loss of appetite, and in the postoperative period, the inability to actually chew and swallow food. Although often not considered by the operating surgeon, oral health and hygiene seriously affect perioperative and overall health. A number of pathogens associated with gingivitis include P. gingivalis, S. sobrinus, and S. aureus, all three of which have been associated with aspiration pneumonia. In general, enteric rather than parenteral—nutrition is preferred, even in critically ill ICU patients, because enteric nutrition is less likely to be associated with hepatobiliary dysfunction, metabolic derangements, or infection complications, and it is less expensive.

Other Therapies

Kverner and colleagues demonstrated that antibiotic prophylaxis with oral tobramycin, amphotericin B, and polymyxin E in critically ill patients requiring ventilatory support significantly reduced the incidence of nosocomial infection rates and their associated mortality. Prophylactic use of ranitidine + omeprazole

---

**Principles of Anatomy and Perioperative Considerations**

---
and swallow" with 5 to 10 mL of nystatin (100,000 U/mL) has been found to reduce the incidence of systemic candidiasis as well as local wound infections. Hypothermic patients should be treated with warming therapy by elevating the room temperature, using radiant heat, or using convective warming therapy.

Critically ill patients with acute renal failure may benefit from continuous renal replacement therapies such as hemofiltration or hemodialysis. Electrolyte, coagulation, and complete blood count deficits may be corrected

...vention. Electrolyte, coagulation, and complete blood count abnormalities should be obtained to affirm adequate pulmonary edema, myocardial infarction, or congestive heart failure. Those who have not responded to resuscitative efforts or who have evidence of pulmonary edema, myocardial infarction, or congestive heart failure should be considered (Table 12.9), especially in those patients who have not had dynamic monitoring, if not previously initiated, may be considered. In managing the patient with septic shock, right heart catheterization with hemodynamic monitoring, if not previously initiated, may be considered (Table 12.9), especially in those patients who have not responded to resuscitative efforts or who have evidence of pulmonary edema, myocardial infarction, or congestive heart failure. Arterial blood gases should be obtained to affirm adequate ventilation. Electrolyte, coagulation, and complete blood count results should now be available, and deficits may be corrected based on specific laboratory findings. In the face of specific organ system dysfunction, such as renal or hepatic failure, doses of antibiotics, vasopressors, and fluid support should be modified. Gastrointestinal losses should be replaced based on the electrolyte and acid-base composition of the site of loss.

Hypokalemia usually results from excessive crystalloid replacement, although renal losses can be increased secondary to a high protein intake, hyperglycemia, diuretic therapy, or acute failure. Symptoms can include coma or seizures, but hypokalemia is generally asymptomatic unless severe (serum potassium <125 mEq/L). The management of mild, asymptomatic hypokalemia associated with an expanded intravascular volume is fluid restriction. Severe hypokalemia should be corrected by raising the serum sodium level to a minimum of 125 mEq/L. Hypokalemia is usually secondary to insufficient volume replacement and can be corrected using isotonic crystalloid solution, such as half normal saline.

Hypokalemia usually occurs secondary to diuretics, digitals, β-antagonists, amnoglycosides, some penicillins, and gastrointestinal losses. Intravenous replacement may be safely accomplished with 20 to 40 mEq of potassium per liter of isotonic solution. In the intensive care setting, severe, life-threatening hypokalemia may be treated by giving intravenous KCl at a rate of 20 mEq per hour in as little as 25 to 50 mL of compatible solution. Hyperkalemia can develop secondary to renal failure, excessive potassium administration, tissue destruction, and acidsosis, which shifts intracellular potassium into the extracellular fluid compartment. Shifting potassium into the intracellular compartment by infusing insulin with glucose (10 U regular insulin after 1 ampule of 50% glucose), or insulin with sodium bicarbonate or with albuterol is effective treatment. For life-threatening hyperkalemia (serum potassium >7 mEq/L), calcium gluconate, 10 mL of 10% solution, can be given intravenously over 2 to 5 minutes, followed by a second dose if needed. Finally, calcium exchange resins, such as sodium polystyrene sulfonate (15–30 g in 50–100 mL of 20% sorbitol), bind potassium in exchange for sodium within the gastrointestinal tract and are commonly used in patients with chronic renal failure.

Metabolic acidosis usually is satisfactorily corrected with appropriate ventilatory, electrolyte, and crystalloid therapy.

---

**Evaluate Response to Therapy**

Once oxygenation and restoration of the intravascular volume have been completed, it is important to reassess the patient's response to therapy (Table 12.11). Thorough investigation to determine the underlying cause should be performed so that definitive therapy may be implemented. In managing the patient with septic shock, right heart catheterization with hemodynamic monitoring, if not previously initiated, may be considered (Table 12.9), especially in those patients who have not responded to resuscitative efforts or who have evidence of pulmonary edema, myocardial infarction, or congestive heart failure. Arterial blood gases should be obtained to affirm adequate ventilation. Electrolyte, coagulation, and complete blood count results should now be available, and deficits may be corrected based on specific laboratory findings. In the face of specific organ system dysfunction, such as renal or hepatic failure, doses of antibiotics, vasopressors, and fluid support should be modified. Gastrointestinal losses should be replaced based on the electrolyte and acid-base composition of the site of loss.

Hypokalemia usually results from excessive crystalloid replacement, although renal losses can be increased secondary to a high protein intake, hyperglycemia, diuretic therapy, or acute failure. Symptoms can include coma or seizures, but hypokalemia is generally asymptomatic unless severe (serum potassium <125 mEq/L). The management of mild, asymptomatic hypokalemia associated with an expanded intravascular volume is fluid restriction. Severe hypokalemia should be corrected by raising the serum sodium level to a minimum of 125 mEq/L. Hypokalemia is usually secondary to insufficient volume replacement and can be corrected using isotonic crystalloid solution, such as half normal saline.

Hypokalemia usually occurs secondary to diuretics, digitals, β-antagonists, amnoglycosides, some penicillins, and gastrointestinal losses. Intravenous replacement may be safely accomplished with 20 to 40 mEq of potassium per liter of isotonic solution. In the intensive care setting, severe, life-threatening hypokalemia may be treated by giving intravenous KCl at a rate of 20 mEq per hour in as little as 25 to 50 mL of compatible solution. Hyperkalemia can develop secondary to renal failure, excessive potassium administration, tissue destruction, and acidsosis, which shifts intracellular potassium into the extracellular fluid compartment. Shifting potassium into the intracellular compartment by infusing insulin with glucose (10 U regular insulin after 1 ampule of 50% glucose), or insulin with sodium bicarbonate or with albuterol is effective treatment. For life-threatening hyperkalemia (serum potassium >7 mEq/L), calcium gluconate, 10 mL of 10% solution, can be given intravenously over 2 to 5 minutes, followed by a second dose if needed. Finally, calcium exchange resins, such as sodium polystyrene sulfonate (15–30 g in 50–100 mL of 20% sorbitol), bind potassium in exchange for sodium within the gastrointestinal tract and are commonly used in patients with chronic renal failure.

Metabolic acidosis usually is satisfactorily corrected with appropriate ventilatory, electrolyte, and crystalloid

---

**TABLE 12.11**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evaluation of Response to Initial Attempts at Fluid Resuscitation*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rapid response</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vital signs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Estimated blood loss (%)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Need for more crystalloid</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blood preparation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Need for operative intervention</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*2000 mL Ringer’s lactate solution in adults, 20 mg/kg in children.

administration. The routine use of bicarbonate is not recommended for mild to moderate metabolic acidosis (pH 7.35–7.4). Bicarbonate use may shift the oxygen–hemoglobin dissociation curve and reduce oxygen delivery at the cellular level. Furthermore, excessive alkalinization can induce tetanus, seizures, and cardiac arrhythmias, and increase lactate production. When acidosis is severe (pH < 7.2), intravenous bicarbonate is given by a continuous infusion (1–3 ampules of 7.5% NaHCO₃ [44.6 mL/ampule] in 500–1000 mL D₂W), with the dose based on calculation of the total deficit. Approximately one half of the deficit can be replaced in 3 to 4 hours. No further replacement is necessary once the pH is 7.2 or greater. Serum potassium and calcium levels should concomitantly be monitored, because these shift into the intracellular space as the acidosis is corrected, resulting in hypokalemia or hypocalcemia.

Remedy the Underlying Cause

Although some causes of bleeding—such as a retroperitoneal hematoma developing after hysterectomy—can resolve without surgical intervention, all patients with continued intrabdominal bleeding and bleeding associated with persistent hemodynamic instability despite appropriate colloid and blood product replacement require immediate surgical intervention. Vaginal or other lacerations, if present, should be repaired. If the underlying cause is septic abortion, prompt evacuation of the uterine contents is indicated as soon as adequate serum and tissue levels of broad-spectrum antibiotics are reached. Nonhemorrhagic causes of hypovolemic shock should be identified, and specific therapy should be directed at the underlying cause.

Investigational Agents

Several studies have looked at the clinical use of antibodies that would effectively neutralize bacterial endotoxin and mitigate its effects. Polyvalent antiserum directed against a mutant strain (J-5) of E. coli was the first of these agents subjected to clinical trial. In 1982, Ziegler and colleagues found that in subgroups of patients with Gram-negative bacteremia or without shock, immunization was associated with a significant reduction in mortality. However, immunization provided protection only for patients with Gram-negative bacteremia or septic shock associated with Gram-negative sepsisemia and did not benefit patients with sepsis or shock from other causes. J-5 antiserum did not become available for clinical use because it is difficult to manufacture and, because pooled donor serum is required, it carries the risk of blood-borne infections.

The use of monoclonal antibodies has also been investigated. The first of these, immunoglobulin IgG antibody purified from pooled plasma obtained from volunteers immunized with E. coli, did not demonstrate a significant difference in survival in patients with profound septic shock. Two additional monoclonal antibodies to endotoxin have subsequently been developed with more optimistic results. One of these, E5, an IgM antibody with reactivity to lipid A, was developed from murine splenocytes immunized with J-5 mutant E. coli cells. A second, HA-1A, a human monoclonal IgG antibody that binds to the lipid A domain of endotoxin, was also developed from J-5 mutant cells. Both of these monoclonal antibodies were able to neutralize survival and cytokine adhesion molecule expression in patients with Gram-negative sepsis. Antibodies to TNF-α and a recombinant form of IL-1 receptor antagonist (a naturally occurring protein that binds to IL-1 receptors), were especially intriguing, because it was anticipated that they could be used for patients with inflammatory response syndrome in the absence of an identifiable infection. In a pilot clinical trial, Vincent and colleagues found that anti-TNF antibody improved left ventricular function in 10 patients with septic shock; however, only 3 of the 10 patients survived. More recent trials using cytokine antagonists—including PAF- and TNF-receptor antagonists—in the treatment of shock have demonstrated little benefit.

The high mobility group box protein 1 (HMGB1), a proinflammatory cytokine that plays a vital role as a delayed and potent mediator of local and systemic inflammation, has also been investigated. Secreted by necrotic cells and macrophages or passively released from necrotic cells of any tissue type, high levels of HMGB1, like TNF-α, have been shown to increase the sensitivity of animals to endotoxins, and HMGB1 levels are significantly increased in patients with severe sepsis. Administration of neutralizing anti-HMGB1 antibodies, recombinant HMGB1 A box protein, and ethyl pyruvate in septic animals has been shown to decrease mortality. Unlike TNF-α and other previously described cytokine targets, HMGB1’s delayed kinetics may provide a greater temporal treatment window for neutralization therapy.

Other cytokines of recent interest in antiinflammatory and immunomodulatory therapies include granulocyte colony stimulating factor (G-CSF) and granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF). G-CSF differs from GM-CSF in its specificity of action on developing and mature neutrophils, effects on neutrophil kinetics, and toxicity profile. Recombinant GM-CSF has toxicity profile consistent with the priming of macrophages for increased formation and the release of inflammatory cytokines, whereas recombinant G-CSF induces the production of antiinflammatory factors such as IL-1 receptor antagonist and TNF receptors, and is protective against endotoxin- and sepsis-induced organ injury. G-CSF and GM-CSF can augment the functional antimicrobial activities of neutrophils in addition to up-regulating multiple antimicrobial mechanisms in monocytes and macrophages, enhancing pathogen eradication. In one trial, treatment with both cytokines effectively prevented the overactivation of Kupffer cells by both Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacterial substances. Although most clinical studies have examined G-CSF and GM-CSF therapy in neutropenic patients, further trials in are needed to identify the subset of patients who may benefit from G-CSF and/or GM-CSF therapy.

Polymorphisms present in cytokine genes may influence concentration of inflammatory and antiinflammatory cytokines produced in a patient’s response to infection, suggesting that genetic factors significantly contribute to a patient’s overall outcome when infected with inflammatory and infectious diseases. Recent studies have also discovered inflammatory responses associated with neutrophil defects, including alterations in pattern recognition in molecules such as CD14 and TLRs. An increased understanding of genetic influence on susceptibility to inflammatory responses may lead to individualized therapy directed at patients that may be at greater risk for hyper- or hypoinflammatory response to infection.

Nitrergic oxide (NO) and reactive oxygen species exert multiple modulating effects on inflammation and play a key role in the regulation of immune responses. Low concentrations of nitric oxide produced by constitutive and neuronal nitric oxide synthases inhibit adhesion molecule expression, cytokine and chemokine synthesis, and leukocyte migration and transmigration. Large amounts can be toxic and proinflammatory. Actions of nitric oxide are dependent on the cellular context, concentration, and initial priming of immune cells. The effects of both
Shock in the Gynecologic Patient

Bibliography


Barr JD, Glaser MP, McCarth J, et al. Prevention of gram-negative sepsis and death in surgical patients by antibody to endotoxin core lipopoly-


nitric oxide and superoxide in immune regulation are exerted through multiple mechanisms, which include interactions with diverse cell signaling pathways. Consequently, nitrous oxide has both proinflammatory and antiinflammatory effects, and both enhances and reduces phagocyte activation and function. Drugs that interfere with nitrous oxide, including statins, angiotensin receptor blockers, NAD(P)H oxidase inhibitors, and NO synthase inhibitors, are beginning to be introduced in the treatment of inflammation and sepsis.

SUMMARY

The management of patients with systemic inflammatory response syndrome and shock states remains one of the most formidable challenges facing the practicing gynecologist. However, with early recognition, prompt intervention, and continued aggressive surveillance, a satisfactory outcome is achievable in most cases. Thus, caring for the patient in shock, although challenging, may well be rewarding.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

■ Management of shock requires restoration of ORDER: oxygenation, with ventilatory support, if needed; restore circulatory volume with crystalloid and, if needed, blood products; drug therapy, with antibiotics or pressors; evaluation of response to therapy; and remedy the underlying cause.

■ Regardless of the precipitating event, the severity of hypovolemia can be estimated using guidelines established by the American College of Surgeons. Initially, crystalloid replacement should be initiated to replace volume.

■ Blood product use should be based severity of anemia, symptoms, and ongoing blood loss. In asymptomatic patients without significant cardiopulmonary or renal disease, there is no “transfusion trigger,” for which blood replacement is essential.

■ Critical care multidisciplinary teams with training and experience to address respiratory, nutritional, and other aspects of care have significantly reduced both mortality and morbidity from shock states.

■ When a patient presents with septic shock, broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy directed against Gram-positive, Gram-negative, and anaerobic organisms should be initiated after cultures are obtained. Attempt to identify the etiology; sources such as abscesses should be drained, and infected wounds should undergo debridement. Subsequent antibiotic therapy should be guided by culture results. Indiscriminate use of antibiotics has led to drug resistance; empiric use of agents such as vancomycin is discouraged because of the development of methicillin-resistant staphylococcus infections.

""


CHAPTER 13 | WOUND HEALING, SUTURE MATERIAL, AND SURGICAL INSTRUMENTATION

GARY H. LIPSCOMB

DEFINITIONS

Healing by primary intention—Wound healing that occurs if the wound layers are approximated following injury.

Healing by secondary intention—Wound healing that occurs if wounds are left open after injury and allowed to close spontaneously from the formation of granulation tissue.

Healing by third intention—Wound healing that occurs when the wound is closed after an initial period of delay of several days, also referred to as delayed primary closure.

Absorbable sutures—Sutures that lose the majority of their tensile strength before 60 days when implanted in body tissues.

Non-absorbable sutures—Sutures that maintain the majority of their tensile strength before 60 days when implanted in body tissues.

Knot-pull tensile strength—Breaking strength of a suture when tied around a plastic tube using a surgeon's flat knot and stressed from either end.

WOUND HEALING

Ideally, organic tissue lost by destruction or injury would be replaced with tissue identical in form and function. This process is known as regeneration. Although tissue regeneration does occur in lower animals (e.g., salamanders), humans have lost this ability for the most part. With the exception of the epidermis of the skin, mucosa of the intestinal tract, and liver, damaged human tissue heals by the laying down of collagen, a repair process better known as scarring.

The healing process itself directly produces disease (e.g., postoperative adhesion formation following surgical procedures or tubal occlusion after pelvic inflammatory disease). These repair mechanisms are also nonspecific. They are activated whether a wound is made with a surgical scalpel and sutured closed or by trauma and then allowed to heal without surgical closure. However, the nature of the wound influences the degree to which each individual process is involved, and this in turn can affect the ultimate success of the repair.

Inflammation

The inflammatory phase of healing is the initial response to any injury involving more than an epithelial surface. This phase can be divided into two separate but simultaneously occurring responses: a vascular and a cellular response. Both are initiated by amines, most notably histamine, as well as the kinins and proteolytic enzymes released by the injured tissue. Immediately after injury, a transient vasoconstriction of the local vasculature lasts for 5 to 10 minutes. Vasoconstriction is followed by vasodilatation and an increase in vascular permeability. Edema caused by the escape of plasma through altered vessel walls becomes clinically apparent at this point. The cellular response is characterized by the migration of leukocytes into the injured area. Although the agents responsible for this active migration of leukocytes remain unclear, chemotactic factors are thought to play a major role. Initially, the polymorphonuclear leukocytes and monocytes in the wound are present in the same concentration as in the systemic circulation. As a result, polymorphonuclear leukocytes predominate for the first 3 days. Because polymorphonuclear leukocytes are relatively short-lived compared with monocytes, the latter stages of the inflammatory phase are characterized by a predominance of monocytes that transform into macrophages. These leukocytes actively phagocytize bacteria, foreign proteins, and necrotic debris. As polymorphonuclear leukocytes die, their intracellular enzymes and debris are released into the wound and become part of the wound exudate. These released enzymes also facilitate the breakdown of material not phagocytized by the leukocytes. This accumulated exudate or pus develops even in the absence of bacteria. Even when this exudate is sterile, the presence of proteolytic enzymes, including collagenase, can interfere with epithelialization and fibroplasia, and thus, interfere with continued wound healing. Poor wound healing, however, is more common in wounds contaminated with bacteria and foreign material. In these cases, the inflammatory response may persist for long periods of time.

Physiology of Wound Healing

The healing of a wound involves several distinct biological processes: (a) inflammation, (b) epithelialization, (c) fibroplasia, (d) wound contraction, and (e) scar maturation. Although considered distinct, these processes do not occur in a strict sequence but often simultaneously with each other.

Healing may be delayed or prevented by the presence of bacteria and foreign materials. These exudates also stimulate an acute inflammatory response, characterized by an influx of leukocytes and an increase in vascular permeability. This results in the formation of granulation tissue, which is rich in fibroblasts and collagen. The healing process can be divided into four stages:

1. Inflammation
2. Epithelialization
3. Fibroplasia
4. Wound contraction

These stages may overlap, and the healing process can be complex and variable. The final outcome of wound healing depends on various factors, including the nature of the wound, the patient's health, and the presence of infections or other complications.
Epithelialization
By virtue of their exposed location, the epithelial surfaces of the gastrointestinal, urogenital, and respiratory tract as well as the skin itself are continually subjected to the physical and chemical trauma associated with the activities of daily living. An initial rapid, replacing damaged or destroyed cells through a process known as epithelialization. Epithelialization occurs by migration and subsequent maturation of immature epithelial cells from the deeper basal layers of surrounding areas. If the cellular damage is confined entirely to the epithelium, the healing response is merely an exaggerated form of the basic normal replacement process.

If an injury involves the supporting connective tissue beneath the epithelium, however, the other components of the healing processes, in addition to epithelialization, become involved. If the injury severs blood vessels, the vessels retract, and the process of hemostasis is initiated. If bleeding is not too severe, a blood clot soon forms. This clot subsequently contracts, dehydrates, and becomes a scar. Within 12 hours, basal cells from the surrounding epithelial surfaces begin migrating onto the injured surface. Epithelial cells move beneath the scar, detaching it from the wound and sealing the surface. In incised and sutured wounds, epithelialization generally produces a watertight seal within 24 hours of injury. This new layer of epithelial cells is initially thin and poorly attached to the underlying surface, rendering it susceptible to injury from even minor trauma. Final epithelial healing is accomplished by differentiation and maturation of the migrated cells and by scar formation through fibroplasia.

Fibroplasia
The process by which wounds regain strength is termed fibroplasia. Fibroplasia results in the production of the collagen necessary to form fibrous scar and ultimately determines the final strength of the healed wound. This process begins with the differentiation of mesenchymal cells into fibroblasts. Fibroblasts then migrate into the wound, apparently along fibrin strands produced during clot formation. Once at the injury site, fibroblasts multiply and manufacture the glycoproteins and mucopolysaccharides that make up the ground substance of connective tissue. Ground substance is an amorphous matrix that is believed to induce aggregation of collagen subunits and influences the final orientation of the fibers.

Once the ground substance is produced, fibroblasts begin to synthesize the basic building block of collagen—tropocollagen. Tropocollagen is a stiff elongated macromolecule of three helically intertwined chains of amino acids consisting of two identical α1 chains and one α2 chain. Within the ground substance and at the proper pH, osmolality, and temperature, tropocollagen molecules polymerize into collagen fibrils by forming covalent bonds with their neighbor. These fibrils bond with other fibrils to form collagen bundles. It is not until 4 to 5 days after injury that the wound produces enough collagen to result in a measurable increase in wound tensile strength. Before this time, the wound is held together only by fibrous adhesion. This time frame between wounding and an increase in tensile strength originally was referred to by Howes and Harvey as the “lag period” of wound healing.

Wound Contraction
The manner in which tissue heals is dependent on whether tissue integrity is simply interrupted (as in a surgical incision) or tissue is removed (as in an avulsion injury). In both types of injury, tissue seals itself, begins to reepithelialize, and synthesizes collagen for structural support. However, when large amounts of tissue are missing, the edges of the wound must be brought closer together so that the previously noted tissue responses can repair the defect. This process is known as contraction. Contraction of wound margins begins about 5 days after injury and corresponds with the fibroplasia phase of healing. Because this process can be inhibited by cytochrome poisons, such as potassium cyanide, and by smooth muscle relaxants, older theories attributing wound contraction to passive collagen changes have been discarded. Instead, wound contraction appears to be an active process produced by contractile proteins within the fibrils. If the area is too large for contraction to bring the edges together, the wound remnant covered with granulation tissue, or if small enough, it is covered with epithelium only. Epithelialization of such a wound prevents weeping, but without the normal underlying supporting stroma, it remains too fragile to provide lasting protection. Pathologic progression of skin contraction ultimately may result in restriction of joint or limb mobility. This deformity is termed contracture and should not be confused with contraction.

Scar Maturation
The bulky scar formed during the fibroplasia phase consists of randomly oriented soluble collagen fibers. This scar has little tensile strength. During scar maturation, the disordered fibers are replaced with fibers arranged in a more orderly fashion, producing a denser and stronger scar. Collagen fibers also continue to form covalent bonds within fibrils as well as between adjacent fibrils and fibers, resulting in a continued increase in wound tensile strength over time. This maturation process may continue for years.

During scar maturation and remodeling, the breakdown of old disordered collagen slightly exceeds production of new organized collagen fibers. The resulting new scar is softer and less bulky than the original scar but also is stronger because of its more organized and extensively cross-linked nature. However, if collagen production exceeds breakdown, then a keloid or hypertrophied scar results.

Surgical Wound Healing
Depending on the manner of wound closure, three types of surgical wound healing are recognized: primary, secondary, and third intention. Figure 13.1 illustrates these types of wound healing.

Primary Intention
Healing occurs by primary intention if the wound layers are reapproximated following injury. This apposition of tissue layers allows healing to occur in a minimum of time, with no separation of wound edges and with minimum scar formation. This is the desired mode of healing for surgical incisions.

Secondary Intention
It has been known for centuries that a wound has a higher resistance to infection when left open rather than closed. This was demonstrated experimentally in dogs by Bilroth, who applied dressings soaked in liquid feces and pus to wounds. Wounds left open remained healthy in appearance, whereas those that were subsequently closed became infected. As a result, contaminated or infected surgical wounds often are left unapproximated and allowed to close spontaneously. This type of wound healing is referred to as healing by secondary intention. This healing
process obviously is more complicated and prolonged than that of primary intention. The wound eventually heals by a combination of contraction and the formation of granulation tissue with the wound gradually filling in from the raw surfaces. This type of healing is slow and frequently characterized by formation of excessive scar tissue. Granulation tissue from the healing wound also may protrude above the wound margin during this process. This can prevent final epithelialization of the surface and require further treatment for complete healing.

Third Intention

Wound healing by third intention, also known as delayed primary closure, refers to the technique of wound closure after a period of delay. This method often is used after postoperative wound breakdown or as an alternative to healing by secondary intention of wounds that should not be closed primarily, such as grossly contaminated or infected wounds. The timing of closure is important. After delays of 7 to 8 days, the wound edges become increasingly difficult to approximate because of the increasing collagen content. Edlich and colleagues have suggested that closure on or after the fourth day appears to be ideal. This concept also is supported by Lowery and Curtis, who showed that wounds closed after a delay of between 3 and 6 days have the lowest infection rates. Furthermore, studies by Fogdestam revealed that wounds closed during this time frame also have greater wound strength at 20 days than wounds closed primarily.

Methods of Wound Closure

Wound dehiscence with evisceration is a serious complication of abdominal surgery. This complication is associated with prolonged morbidity and high mortality. Published mortality figures range from 18% to 33%, with a mean of 20%. Wound dehiscence occurs in 0.5% to 5% of all abdominal surgeries, but is less frequent (0.1% to 0.7%) with gynecologic abdominal procedures. Potential reasons for the decreased rate of dehiscence associated with gynecologic surgery include the use of transverse incisions, healthier patients, lower infection rates, and a lower rate of bowel enterotomies.

Traditionally, gynecologic surgeons have been taught that vertical incisions are associated with a greater likelihood of dehiscence than transverse incisions. Critical review of the earlier data supporting this conclusion reveals that significant confounding variables often were ignored. In general, vertical incisions often were performed emergently on sicker patients or those who had other risk factors for dehiscence, such as cancer. Transverse incisions typically were performed on relatively healthy patients undergoing elective surgery. At least two randomized studies by Greenall and colleagues and Stone and associates have shown no difference in hernia formation or dehiscence between vertical and transverse incisions.

Proper suture selection is critical in preventing wound dehiscence. The wound may break down if the suture has too little initial tensile strength or if the suture is absorbed too quickly before the wound regains enough strength to resist normal stress. The suture also is only as strong as the knots placed in it. The suture is tied using an improper technique or too few knots are placed, the knot can slip and the suture line fail. The issues involved with proper suture selection and knot security are discussed in detail later in this chapter. Proper surgical technique is one of the most critical factors in preventing wound dehiscence. Several studies have indicated that the most common cause of wound dehiscence is intact sutures pulling through fascia. Animal studies have confirmed that incisions closed with wide loose fascial bites have greater tensile strength than those closed using smaller fascial bites. Sanders and DiClementi also have shown that tightly tied fascial sutures result in fascial necrosis beneath the sutures. Thus, the old adage that one should “approximate and not strangulate fascia” is well taken.

Although the use of loose, wide fascial bites appears to reduce the likelihood of suture pull-through, the optimum distance sutures should be placed from the fascial edge is unknown. However, data obtained by Campbell and colleagues can provide some guidelines. When the pull-out force and
sorbed synthetic sutures has allowed the use of these sutures in the formation of suture sinuses. The development of slowly absorbable permanent suture. The use of nonabsorbable sutures for mass closure of patients at high risk for dehiscence.

The manner in which the incision is made also may influence the dehiscence rate. Although no good data are available, it has been suggested that the shearing produced when scissors are used to incise the fascia results in increased fascia necrosis and an increased breakdown rate when compared with incisions produced by a scalpel. Likewise, the use of electrosurgery to incise the fascia has been implicated by some data to result in an increase in the dehiscence rate. These factors are magnified if the fascia then is closed improperly. Because such fascia necrosis generally occurs only at the cut edge of the fascia, the use of generous fascia bites during fascial closure probably is more important in preventing fascial dehiscence than the manner of opening the fascia.

### SUTURE MATERIAL

It is unknown when humankind first learned to use strings or animal sinews to ligate bleeding vessels or approximate tissue. Any material used for this purpose is commonly referred to as suture, whereas the act of reapproximating tissue with suture is known as suturing. The first recorded use of suture and suturing dates to the 16th century B.C. in the Edwin Smith papyrus, the oldest record of a surgical procedure. Over the centuries, many different materials have been used as sutures. These materials include metals (gold, silver, and tantalum wire), plant material (linen and cotton), and animal products (horsehair, tendons, intestinal tissue, and silk).

The United States Pharmacopeia (USP) is the official compendium that defines the various classes of suture as well as sets standards for dimensions and minimum tensile strength for each class of suture marketed in the United States. Most sutures today significantly exceed the minimum tensile strength required by the USP (Table 13.1).

#### TABLE 13.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>U.S. PHARMACOPEIA-REQUIRED KNOT-PULL TENSILE STRENGTH (LB)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Absorbable sutures</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sutures are divided into size categories based on diameter as defined by the USP. Sutures progressively larger than 0 are numbered in increasing numerical order; that is, 1, 2, etc. Sizes progressively smaller than 0 are indicated by an increasing number of zeros; that is, 0, 00, 000. The smaller the suture, the more zeros. For simplicity, the smaller numbers often are written numerically as 1–0, 2–0, etc., where the first numeral refers to the number of zeros.

The USP characterizes sutures based on their rate of absorption by body tissues. Sutures initially are classified as either absorbable or nonabsorbable. Absorbable sutures lose the majority of their tensile strength before 60 days when implanted in body tissues. Absorbable sutures are further subdivided by the USP into natural and synthetic sutures. Figure 13.2 illustrates the percentages of tensile strength remaining for common absorbable sutures at various postoperative time intervals.

Nonabsorbable sutures are defined as sutures that maintain the majority of their tensile strength for more than 60 days in body tissue. These sutures are further subdivided by the USP into three classes: class I is composed of silk or synthetic fibers; class II is composed of cotton or linen fibers or coated natural or synthetic fibers, with the coating forming a cast of significant thickness but not contributing appreciably to strength (these coatings typically are added to improve handling characteristics or resist degradation); and class III sutures are composed of monofilament or multifilament metal wire.

Natural Absorbable Sutures

Plain and Chromic Catgut

One of the oldest suture materials is plain catgut. Catgut consists of highly purified strands of collagen obtained from the submucosa of animals. Despite its name, catgut normally is obtained from sheep or cattle intestines. The name is believed to have originated from the Arabic term kitgut, which referred to the strings of a musical instrument known as a kir. Kitgut was made from sheep intestines and probably served as a readily available source of suture material. Over the years, the term has evolved into catgut.

Because plain catgut is a foreign protein, it elicits a marked inflammatory response in tissue. It is rapidly degraded by proteolytic enzymes released by white blood cells. This suture loses more than 70% of its tensile strength in 7 days and is totally digested by 70 days. Plain gut is used in tissue in which strength is needed for very short periods of time. It is ideal for Pomeroy tubal ligations because it dissolves rapidly and thus allows the severed ends to fall apart. Less rapidly absorbed sutures, particularly permanent suture, are associated with higher failure rates, probably because of fibrous formation.

Chromic gut is treated with chromic acid salts that bind to the antigen sites in the collagen. The resulting suture elicits a less inflammatory response and subsequently is more resistant to degradation. Chromic catgut maintains more than half of its tensile strength at 7 to 10 days, with some measurable strength remaining up to 5 months. It is suitable for tissue in which long-term strength is not needed. Examples of such tissue include serosal, visceral, and vaginal tissues. This suture should not be used in skin because the inflammatory response can cause scarring, and the suture often serves as a nidus for infection.

Because natural absorbable sutures are degraded by the proteolytic enzymes released by inflammatory cells, these sutures lose strength more rapidly in infected tissue. Because catgut is derived from animal intestines, primarily cow and sheep, there has been increasing concerns over the possibility of the transmission of transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSE), such as “mad cow.” Intestines are currently classified as tissues of medium infectivity with regard to TSE. Furthermore, because all inactivation processes for TSE cause severe changes to catgut, it is not possible to apply these methods to these sutures to eliminate infectious agents. Risk management is only possible by restricting sources to TSE-free herds. Because of these concerns, catgut sutures have been taken off the market in many countries of Europe as well as Japan. Where available, catgut has become progressively more expensive. Because the primary advantage of catgut over many of the synthetics has been cost, many believe use of catgut sutures will soon become obsolete.

Synthetic Absorbable Sutures

Polyglycolic Acid and Polyglactin 910

During the 1970s, two synthetic absorbable sutures (polyglycolic acid and polyglactin 910) became available in the United States. These sutures were designed to be stronger, longer-lasting, and less reactive than catgut. Both sutures are composed of braided filaments of a synthetic polymer. Polyglycolic acid (Dexon: Sherwood/Davis & Geck, St. Louis, MO) is a copolymer of glycolic acid, whereas polyglactin 910 (Vicryl: Ethicon, Somerville, NJ) is a copolymer of lactic and glycolic acid. The two sutures have very similar biologic properties.
Breakdown is by hydrolysis rather than digestion by proteolytic enzymes. The result is minimal inflammatory reaction and a constant absorption rate. There essentially is no loss in tensile strength in the first 7 to 10 days after implantation. Approximately 50% to 60% of tensile strength remains after 14 days, 20% to 30% after 21 days, and almost no tensile strength at 28 days. The initial tensile strength of both these sutures is significantly greater than catgut suture of equal size. In fact, the tensile strength of the synthetic absorbable sutures is almost equal to the tensile strength of a catgut suture one size larger.

One disadvantage of the synthetic absorbable sutures is that they do not handle as well as a catgut suture. To counter this difficulty, manufacturers have attempted to enhance the handling qualities of their products by offering versions with various surface coatings or variations with finer and more tightly woven filaments. Although these refinements improve handling characteristics, they increase the tendency of knots to slip. As a result, additional throws may be needed when using these versions of polyglycolic acid or polyglactin 910. These sutures can be used in most situations in which chronic catgut would be used and have replaced catgut almost entirely for many surgeons. Because they retain tensile strength longer than natural absorbable sutures, they are acceptable for fascial closure in patients at low risk for fascial dehiscence.

Polyglyconate and Polyoxydioxanone

Sutures of polyglycolic acid and polyglactin are by necessity composed of braided filaments because the inherent rigidity of the polymers produces a monofilament suture too stiff for general surgical use. A newer class of polymers allow the production of pliable monofilament sutures. This type of suture is represented by polyglyconate (Maxon) and polyoxydioxanone (PDS). Although subtle differences exist between the two sutures, they are similar enough to consider them together when discussing the biologic properties of this suture class.

The initial tensile strength of these monofilament sutures is lower than that of the multifilament absorbable sutures. However, this class of suture undergoes absorption at a much slower rate than other absorbable sutures. As a result, tensile strength is maintained for a longer period of time. More than 90% of initial tensile strength is maintained by the end of the first postoperative week, 80% at 2 weeks, 50% at 4 weeks, and 25% at 6 weeks. As with the other synthetic sutures, inflammatory response is minimal. An additional advantage is that these monofilament sutures lack interstices that could serve as a nidus for bacterial infection. As a result, chronic inflammation is rarely seen with this class of monofilament sutures. In comparison, infected absorbable braided sutures have been shown experimentally by Buckall to contain bacteria even after 70 days of implantation. Because of their delayed absorption profile, both polyglyconate and polyoxydioxanone are excellent choices for fascial closure. Because these sutures are composed of only one fiber, care must be taken to insure that the strand is not inadvertently damaged by instruments, needles, or other sharp-edged material. Such damage may not be easily recognized in the operating room but can seriously weaken a monofilament suture and may result in suture line disruption postoperatively. This precaution is even more critical when a continuous suture line is used.

Poliglecaprone 25 and Poligleactin 910 (Rapide)

With recent advances in polymer chemistry, it is now possible to manufacture the synthetic equivalent of surgical gut. First introduced in 1993, poliglecaprone 25 (Monocryl) has the absorption similar to chronic catgut. Unlike natural collagen, poliglecapron 25 produces a highly uniform and predictable absorption pattern. Like the other synthetic sutures, poliglecaprone 25 is absorbed by hydrolysis and thus does not induce the inflammatory response of catgut. This monofilament suture retains approximately 30% to 60% of its original tensile strength at 7 days postoperatively, 20% to 30% at 14 days, and by 21 days has lost essentially all tensile strength. This particular suture has the advantages of chronic catgut suture, but without many of the disadvantages (i.e., intense inflammatory response and somewhat unpredictable absorption rate). Although it is similar to chronic catgut in tensile strength and actually maintains its tensile strength longer than chronic catgut, it is not recommended by the manufacturer for use for fascial closure or in any tissue in which absorption under stress is required.

Poligleactin 910 Rapide (Vicryl Rapid) is identical in chemical structure to polyglactin 910 but is of lower molecular weight. The result is a braided suture with performance characteristics similar to plain catgut. Absorption is rapid, with 70% of tensile strength lost in the first 7 days. After 10 to 14 days, essentially no strength remains. It is intended for use in the superficial soft tissue where only short-term support is needed. It can be used for skin closure because of its rapid absorption and minimal inflammatory response. The sutures typically begin to fall off at 7 to 10 days. Because sutures remaining in skin longer than 7 days may cause scarring, any suture remaining at this time can be wiped off with sterile gauze or, if necessary, cut. This suture is an excellent choice for first- and second-degree episiotomy and vaginal laceration closure. Because of the intense inflammatory response produced, gau sutures are associated with more significantly postepisiotomy pain than synthetic sutures, whereas long-delayed absorbable synthetic sutures are associated with the presence of unabosorbed suture and knots after the postpartum period. Although this suture does not meet USP strength requirements for synthetic absorbable sutures, its tensile strength exceeds the tensile strength specifications for similar size natural collagen suture.

Nonabsorbable Sutures

By definition, nonabsorbable sutures are suitably resistant to the action of living mammalian tissue. These sutures, however, are not completely resistant to absorption. Over time, these sutures also lose tensile strength and in the case of natural fiber sutures eventually are completely absorbed or digested. Despite beliefs to the contrary, the initial tensile strength of many nonabsorbable sutures is less than comparable-size absorbable suture (Table 13.1). Nonabsorbable sutures, however, have the advantage of maintaining tensile strength for long periods of time. Disadvantages of nonabsorbable sutures include the potential suture-related pain, palpable sutures, and occasionally the formation of suture sinus.

Natural Nonabsorbable Sutures

Modern nonabsorbable natural fiber sutures are composed of either surgical silk or cotton. Silk suture is one of the best handling sutures. The handling and knot-tying characteristics of silk suture remain the standard against which other sutures are judged. This suture has little “memory”; that is, it does not tend to return to its original form after being bent or twisted. As a result, it handles well, ties easily, and possesses excellent knot security. Silk suture loses more than half of its
tensile strength after 1 year of implantation and frequently can-
not be found after 2 years. In this respect, it can be viewed
as a delayed absorbable suture. Because silk is a foreign ani-
mal protein, it initiates the greatest inflammatory response
of the nonabsorbable sutures. The multifilament nature and the
capillary action of this suture makes it unsuitable in contami-
nated tissue or in tissues in which the potential for infection is
high.

Cotton is the other natural nonabsorbable natural suture
material still available. It is rarely used in modern sur-
gical practice. Cotton is the weakest of the nonabsorbable su-
tures. Cotton loses 50% of its original tensile strength within 6
months of implantation, but still has 30% to 40% remaining
at the end of 2 years. Unlike silk, which loses tensile strength
when exposed to moisture, wet cotton is 10% stronger than
dry cotton. Because wet cotton also is easier to handle, it is
usually moistened before use.

Synthetic Nonabsorbable Sutures

A wide variety of nonabsorbable synthetic sutures exist.
Nylon is a synthetic polyamide polymer derived from coal,
air, and water. It is available both as a braided multifilament
suture (Neuronol, Surgelon) and as a monofilament suture
(Dermalon, Ethilon). Monofilament nylon has slightly greater
tensile strength than braided nylon, but braided nylon handles
better and has better knot security than the monofilament nylon
suture. Monofilament nylon suture incites less inflammatory
reaction and is less prone to infection than the braided nylon
sutures. However, because nylon is relatively inert, all types of
nylon suture produce minimal tissue reaction. Nylon under-
goes slow hydrolysis in tissue over extended periods of time.
It loses approximately 15% to 20% of tensile strength each
year.

Polyester sutures are produced only in braided forms. Most
sutures in the properties of these sutures are determined by
whether they are coated and by the type of coating. The un-
coated forms (Maxon, Dacron) generally offer the best knot
security. As with synthetic absorbable sutures, coatings can im-
prove the handling characteristics of the polyester sutures. Knot
security of coated polyester sutures is generally poorer than
that of uncoated sutures. Coatings currently used include poly-
tetrafluoroethylene, also known as Teflon (Polydek, Ethibux,
and Tevdek) polybutyrate (Ethibond), and silicone (Ti-Cron).
Polypropylene (Prolene, Surgilon) is a monofilament su-
ture composed of a linear hydrocarbon polymer. It has the
least tissue reactivity of all nonabsorbable sutures. Although
polypropylene has a high memory, it also exhibits a small de-
gree of plasticity. If it is tied carefully and the knots set firmly, a
flattening occurs where the strands cross. This flattening helps
lock the knot and thus provides somewhat greater knot security
than is possible with many other monofilament nonabsorbable
sutures. As with the absorbable monofilament sutures, the same
precautions to prevent damage to the tissue must be observed
with the monofilament nonabsorbable sutures.

Metal Sutures

Although silver wire was used by Sims for closure of veno-
vaginal fistulas, metal sutures are rarely used in gynecologic
surgery today. Historically, metal sutures have been used in
infected sites or for repair of wound dehiscence and vesica-
tion. Stainless steel once was used routinely by the military for
repair of wounds of the abdomen, but has been abandoned after
2 and 12 days postoperatively, with a mean occurring around
day 7 to 8. Dehiscence rarely occurs after postoperative day 12
but has been reported up to day 18. This would suggest that in
most patients, fascia has regained enough strength by day 12
after surgery to resist reasonable stresses, but that in a limited
number of patients, fascia may not regain sufficient strength to
prevent dehiscence until 3 weeks postoperatively.
FIGURE 13.3. Fascial tensile strength after surgery. (Adapted from Howes EL, Sooy JW, Harvey SC. The healing of wounds as determined by their tensile strength. JAMA 1929; 92:42.)

Using the fascia pull-out data, tensile strength as measured by the knotted-loop model following various lengths of implantation in animals, and dehiscence data, the appropriate size absorbable suture for fascial closure can now be estimated. As can be seen in Figure 13.4, both 1 and 0 polydioxanone and polyglyconate retain tensile strength greater than the fascial pull-out force for 4 to 6 weeks, but polyglycolic acid sutures of the same size maintain adequate tensile strength only for 7 to 14 days. Based on this model, a 1 or 0 polydioxanone or polyglyconate suture appears to be the most appropriate absorbable suture for fascial closure. Unfortunately, although these types of data are theoretically appealing, there are little clinical data to support these conclusions. It must be realized that in most healthy patients, fascial dehiscence does not occur, even when rapidly absorbed sutures are used. Before the development of the synthetic absorbable sutures, 1 and 0 chromic catgut sutures were frequently used for fascial closure. In fact, based on a survey of obstetrics residency programs, chromic catgut still was being used for fascial closure in 16.1% of vertical fascial incisions and 23.4% of transverse fascial incisions as of 1979. Although fascial dehiscence in healthy patients remained uncommon after fascial closure with chromic catgut, dehiscence rates of up to 11% were reported for other patient populations. Likewise, polyglycolic acid and polyglactin 910 sutures have been used for fascial closure with good success, even in patients at risk for dehiscence.

Surgical Needles

Needles are necessary to carry suture material through tissue. The specific needle required for a procedure is determined by the tissue type, its location and accessibility, and the surgeon’s personal preference. All surgical needles have three basic components: the eye, the body, and the point.

The eye of the needle is the point of attachment for suture. Eyes may be classed as closed, French, or swaged. Closed eyes are similar to those on household sewing needles, whereas French eye needles have a slit with ridges inside the slit to catch and hold the suture. Swaged or eyeless needles have the suture mechanically attached to the end of the needle to form a continuous unit. Eyed needles have several disadvantages over swaged needles, including difficulties with threading and the need to pull a double loop of suture through the tissue. Swaged needles are available with either the suture permanently attached or attached in such a manner that it can be removed from the

FIGURE 13.4. The tensile strength of various implanted suture materials over time and the point at which tensile strength is less than fascial pull-out strength (14.3 to 24.2 lb).
needle by a slight straight tug on the suture. These controlled-release needles, also known as “pop-off” needles, increase the speed at which interrupted sutures can be placed.

The shape of the body or shaft of a needle determines how easily the needle performs in different applications (Fig. 13.5). The longitudinal shape of the body may be straight, half-curved, curved, or compound. Straight needles are used commonly when tissue is easily accessible. This type of needle is rarely used by gynecologists except for skin closure. Half-curved, or ski, needles may be used to close skin, but have primarily been used in gynecology to facilitate laparoscopic suturing. Curved needles require less space for maneuvering than other needles, thus are ideally suited for most surgical procedures. Curved needles are commonly named based on the percentage of a circle they complete; that is, a \( \frac{1}{2} \) circle needle is one half of a full circle. Curved needles are available in various curvatures, with the \( \frac{3}{8} \) circle the most commonly used. The less of an arc the needle completed, the more shallow a bite the needle takes. For example, a \( \frac{5}{8} \) needle is useful in deep wounds in which a deep, narrow bite is required. Compound curve needles were originally developed for anterior segment ophthalmic surgery and are not used in gynecologic surgery.

The point of the needle begins at the widest part of the needle body and extends to the extreme tip. The two types of needle points are the cutting point and the tapered point (Fig. 13.5). Tapered points are used in easily penetrated tissue, such as bowel or peritoneum. A variation of the taper point is the blunt tip, which has a rounded blunt tip at the end of a tapered shaft. This needle tip was designed for use in friable tissue, but has been advocated by some surgeons for use with other tissues because of its reduced likelihood to penetrate the surgeon’s gloves or skin. Cutting needles are used in tough tissue, such as skin. The most common cutting needle is the reverse cutting needle. Its sharp edge is on the outside of the outer curvature of the needle. Conventional cutting points have the sharp edge on the inside of the curvature. Variations of the cutting point include spatula and lancet points and are used for specialized applications such as ophthalmology.

### Needle Holders

Straight needles can be held and pushed through tissue with the fingers. Straight needles can be used only to sew in a straight line, and only then when the tissue is easily accessible. When straight needles are used, sewing is done in a direction away from the operator.

In the depths of a wound, curved needles are needed. A needle holder is required when curved needles are used. All needle holders have a broad head with a variety of surfaces to prevent the needle from slipping or rotating. Needle holders may be large and heavy, or small and delicate, depending on the size needle to be used. Many needle holders have ring finger grips and locking mechanisms. Two common types of basic needle holders used in gynecology are Wagensteen (straight) or Heaney (angled) (Fig. 13.6). Curved needle holders are especially useful in vaginal surgery, for which the angled head allows easier needle placement. The needle is loaded so that the angled tip is pointed toward the needle eye and not the tip. Sewing, using needle drivers, is performed toward the operator.

### Surgical Knots

The surgical knot has been described as the weakest link in any knotted suture, regardless of the knot configuration and the type of suture used. If tied improperly, a surgical knot will fail before the tensile strength of the suture is reached. Even when performed perfectly, the mere placement of a knot in suture reduces its overall tensile strength by 30% to 35%. Therefore, some knowledge of surgical knots is imperative for all surgeons.

All surgical knots can be divided into two basic groups: flat knots (square, surgeon’s, and granny) and sliding knots (identical and nonidentical). (Fig. 13.7). Flat knots are formed with half hitches tied with equal tension on the ends of the suture. Surgeon’s knots are formed by adding an additional loop to the first throw of the half hitch. Sliding knots are two half hitches...
either nonidentical (square knot) or identical (granny knot), tied with greater tension on one segment than the other. The term sliding knot suggests the tendency of the knot to slip compared with the flat, but this is not completely true. Simple sliding knots of two or three throws do slip often and should not be used as surgical knots. Brouwers and colleagues have shown, however, that flat knots with only two throws also tend to slip rather than break.

The flat square knot is the most secure of all the surgical knots and theoretically the most desirable knot for tying suture. However, according to a study by Trimbos, sliding knots are used more commonly by gynecologists than are square knots. It has been shown also that many surgeons actually tie sliding knots despite being convinced they tie flat knots. Sliding knots frequently are used in actual surgical practice for two reasons. The crossing of the surgeon’s hands needed to tie square knots unavoidably releases tension on the knot, and this can lead to knot slippage. The tying of deep ligatures is mostly performed by keeping constant tension on one suture. Thus, sliding knots may be preferable to square knots in certain situations. Whichever knot is used, the operator should be aware of the knot being used and the number of throws needed to obtain maximum knot capacity.

The number of throws required for knot security is frequently debated. Too few throws and the knot is weaker than the suture; additional throws above that needed to equal the sutures tensile strength adds unneeded suture to the wound and may increase the infection rate. When flat square knots are used, Brown has shown that maximum knot-holding capacity was achieved with four throws in all noncoated suture tested. In fact, three throws were sufficient to achieve maximum knot-holding capacity except for sutures composed of nylon (both monofilament and braided). The addition of coating to improve handling characteristics also decreases knot security. In a 1983 study, Rodeheaver and colleagues showed that coated suture required two additional flat throws to equal the maximum knot-holding capacity of uncoated suture. In a similar study by Van Ruiszel and colleagues, the knot-holding capacity of a sliding knot with one extra throw equaled that of square knots in smaller gauge (3-0) suture. In larger sutures (0), square knots remained stronger than sliding knots with an extra throw, but sliding knots with more than five throws were not tested. From these studies, it appears that a surgical knot of four to six throws is adequate for most sutures. The exact number of throws required, of course, depends on the type of suture and whether a flat or sliding knot is formed.

It is common practice for some surgeons to leave suture tails long to prevent knot disruption should the knot slip. As might be expected, the usefulness of this practice is dependent on the type of suture involved. It has been shown that any knot slippage in nylon, polydioxanone, and polypropylene sutures results in total knot disruption. In other sutures (polyglactin and poliglecaprone), initial knot slippage is followed by knot recomposition. The reconstituted knot remains intact until greater force is applied. A long suture tail is only helpful in preventing knot disruption in this latter class of suture. Knot security is of utmost importance when using a continuous suture line. It is common practice for many surgeons to form the terminal knot in a continuous suture line by tying the ending single strand to the last loop of suture. This “loop-to-strand” knot is a potentially weak configuration. Unless multiple square knots are used, the single strand may slip from the knot when placed under tension. As a result, the entire suture line disrupts. At reoperation, the strand may appear broken but, in fact, one of the three terminal knot ends has slipped through what appears to be an intact knot (Fig. 13.8). A safer method for tying continuous suture is to run two sutures to the midpoint of the incision and tie the two single strands to each other, thus avoiding the “loop-to-strand” knot.

**SURGICAL INSTRUMENTATION**

A multitude of surgical instruments are designed to perform one unique function or slightly improve on the performance...
of another instrument. This section is not intended to be a comprehensive list of all instruments available, but a review of the basic surgical instrumentation needed for most common gynecologic procedures.

**Scalpel**

The scalpel is the first instrument used in most surgeries and remains the best instrument for dividing tissue with minimal trauma to surrounding tissue. Scalpel blades come in various sizes and shapes to allow performance of different tasks (Fig. 13.9). The basic scalpel blade has a straight ribbed back and an oval cutting surface. This basic blade is commonly available in sizes 10, 15, 20, and 22. The 10 scalpel blade is the most versatile and the most commonly used size. The smaller blades are used for fine dissection and when precise turns are required in making the incision—that is, plastic surgery—although the larger blades are used to rapidly perform an incision. Blades such as the 11 and 12 are designed for specific purposes. The 11 blade is bayonet-shaped and used to perform stab incisions for drains and in draining abscesses. The 12 blade is hook-shaped...
Scissors

The scissors are the second most commonly used instrument to divide tissue. In addition to cutting, scissors also can be used for blunt dissection by opening the scissors after the tips have been inserted into a tissue plane. The basic scissors designs used in gynecology surgery are the Mayo, Metzenbaum, and Iris scissors. All come in both straight and curved versions (Fig. 13.10). Curved scissors allow horizontal cutting deep in a wound and thus improve visibility. Curved scissors also are used to cut tissue in a smooth curve, such as for incising the vaginal cuff in an abdominal hysterectomy.
FIGURE 13.12. Tissue clamps. (Courtesy of Zinnati Surgical Instruments, Inc., Chatsworth, CA.)
FIGURE 13.13. Hysterectomy clamps. (Courtesy of Zinnati Surgical Instruments, Inc., Chatsworth, CA.)

Mayo scissors are used when dividing tough tissue, such as the rectus fascia, parametrial tissue, or vaginal cuff. Metzenbaum scissors are more delicate than the heavier Mayo scissors and are used for cutting thinner tissue, such as peritoneum and adhesions. Metzenbaum scissors are frequently used for retroperitoneal dissection or for developing tissue planes in adhered or distorted tissue. Iris scissors are small scissors used for delicate dissection. Originally designed for ophthalmic surgery, they are used in gynecology for precise vulvar and vaginal surgery, such as fistula repair or colporrhaphy.

Suture scissors are used only to cut suture and never tissue. Suture scissors are general-purpose scissors with blunt ends to avoid the possibility that the tips will injure structures distal to the suture.

**Tissue Forceps**

Tissue or thumb forceps consist of two strips of metal joined at one end (Fig. 13.11). The opposable ends of the forceps are used to grasp and hold tissue during dissection, suturing, or cutting. These ends are of varying shapes and configuration, depending on the purpose for which the forceps are intended. The most common alteration to the ends is the addition of teeth. Smooth forceps without teeth are used when handling friable or delicate tissue. DeBakey forceps have long fine smooth tips that provide precise control of small or delicate tissue deep in the wound. They are commonly used in vascular surgery or retroperitoneal node dissection. Toothed forceps bite into tissue, providing a firm grip with minimal pressure. The teeth can vary from one to many and be fine or large. Adson forceps are equipped with fine teeth and are commonly used to approximate skin for staple or suture placement. Ring-tipped and Russian forceps increase the grasping force without using teeth by increasing the surface area of the grasping tips. These forceps are used when a secure hold is needed on structures that would be traumatized by toothed forceps. Bonney tissue forceps are heavy-toothed forceps with serrations along the shaft for maximum gripping power. They are used when sewing fascia.

**Clamps**

Grasping forceps, commonly referred to as clamps, are designed to grasp and apply traction to tissues (Fig. 13.12). All have finger rings and a locking mechanism. Babcock clamps have no teeth and are atraumatic. These clamps can grasp and hold delicate tissues such as fallopian tube or bowel without causing damage. Allis clamps have serrated edges with short teeth. This clamp has much more grasping power than the Babcock clamp. Kocher/Oschner clamps have transverse ridges...
along the shaft and interlocking teeth at the tip. Because of their design, tissue within the clamp is unlikely to slip. These clamps are frequently used to grasp heavy tissue such as fascia and occasionally as hysterectomy clamps. Ring forceps can be used like ring-tipped tissue forceps, but more commonly are used to hold folded sponges. In this fashion, they can be used to retract tissue, sponge fluid or blood, or apply solutions to the skin in preparation for surgery. Renal stone forceps were designed to remove stones from the renal pelvis but are commonly used by the gynecologic surgeon to explore the uterine cavity for polyps or retained tissue. When used in this capacity, they are inserted, opened, rotated 180 degrees, closed, and withdrawn.

Heaney, Heaney-Ballentine, and Masterson clamps are the commonly used clamps for clamping the parametrial and paracervical tissue during hysterectomy (Fig. 13.13). Hysterectomy clamps are heavy crushing clamps with ridged shafts. The classic clamps (Heaney, Heaney-Ballentine) also have toothed tips. The more recent Masterson clamp lacks a toothed tip and was designed to generate the least amount of crushing force.

Retractors

Retractors are used to hold tissue out of the operative field to improve exposure during surgical procedures (Fig. 13.14). Retractors are either held by an assistant (manual retractors) or use counterpressure from other tissue (self-retaining retractors) to hold themselves in place. Self-retaining retractors frequently are used to hold the sides of the incision apart during gynecologic surgery. Gynecologists seem to favor the O’Connor-O’Sullivan retractor when performing pelvic surgery. General surgeons, on the other hand, prefer the Balfour retractor. The O’Connor-O’Sullivan is a circular retractor with four blades, two permanently attached lateral retractors to retract the sidewalls, and a removable upper and lower blade to retract the bowel and bladder, respectively. This retractor is available with large or small lateral blades, whereas the removable blades come in several sizes. The Balfour retractor also has two lateral blades but only one additional retractor blade. This blade normally is employed as an upper blade with a manual retractor used for bladder retraction if needed. However, if the bowel is carefully packed away with laparotomy packs, the third blade can be used as a bladder retractor. All blades of the Balfour retractor are removable and available in different sizes.

The Bookwalter retractor is the most versatile of retractors, providing excellent exposure to the operative field. It consists of a circular metal ring to which a wide variety of retractors can be attached at any point. Its best use is during radical pelvic surgery or when operating on massively obese patients. In extremely obese patients, it may necessary to attach the Bookwalter retractor to the operating table. Manual retractors allow maximum flexibility in providing exposure (Fig. 13.15). They can be used alone or as a supplement to self-retaining retractors. Common manual retractors include the Heaney, Deaver, and Richardson retractors. Specialized retractors include the Briesky-Navratil (used during sacropinous vault suspension), Army-Navy, and Parker retractors (used for skin and subcutaneous tissue).

Dilators

Dilators are metal or plastic cylinders used to dilate the cervical os to sufficient size to admit other surgical instruments (Fig. 13.16). Dilators may have tapered (Hank and Pratt) or rounded (Hegar) tips. Dilators with tapered tips require less force to perform dilatation than dilators with rounded tips. The sizes are measured either by diameter or by circumference. The unit of measurement for diameter is millimeters, whereas the unit of measurement for circumference is in French calibration. The relationship of the two measurements can be calculated by the formula for the circumference of a circle where the diameter times pi (3.14) equals the circumference. For comparison purposes, approximately 3 French equals 1 mm of diameter.

CONCLUSION

This chapter has attempted to present an introduction to the mechanisms of wound healing, wound closure, suture material, and instrumentation. It is hoped that this chapter will be a useful resource not only for those embarking on a surgical career but also for experienced surgeons as well.
Principles of Anatomy and Perioperative Considerations

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Secondary wound closure should ideally be performed on Day 1.
- Proper surgical technique is one of the most critical factors in preventing wound dehiscence.
- Abdominal wall fascia should be loosely closed with suture bites of 1 to 1.5 cm.
- The use of mass closure techniques using long-delayed or permanent suture to close fascia is recommended to reduce fascial dehiscence.
- The use of catgut sutures has been limited in many countries because of increasing concerns over the possibility of theoretical infection with transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSE), such as "mad cow" disease.
- Suture knots produced by tying a loop of suture to a single strand are less secure than those tied using a strand to strand. This is particularly critical when using monofilament suture.

Bibliography

SECTION III ■ PRINCIPLES OF GYNECOLOGIC SURGICAL TECHNIQUES AND MANAGEMENT OF ENDOSCOPY
CHAPTER 14 ■ INCISIONS FOR GYNECOLOGIC SURGERY

JAMES J. BURKE II AND DONALD G. GALLUP

DEFINITIONS

Arcuate line—The demarcation above which the posterior lamella of the internal oblique aponeurosis fuses with the aponeurosis of the transversalis muscle and passes posterior to the rectus muscles. Below this line, the aponeurosis of the internal oblique passes anterior to the rectus muscles.

Cherney incision—A transverse abdominal incision in which the rectus muscles are transected at their insertion on the pubic symphysis. The fascia may or may not be dissected free from the rectus muscles. Entry into the peritoneum may be vertical or transverse.

Dehiscence—Disruption of a surgical wound, either superficial or deep. Superficial dehiscence is separation of the skin and subcutaneous tissue because of seroma, hematoma, or abscess formation. Fascial dehiscence describes the separation of the fascia without extrusion of the bowel.

Evisceration—Disruption of the fascia with extrusion of the bowel through the wound.

Gridiron incision—A muscle splitting, oblique incision, useful for a transperitoneal or extraperitoneal approach to pelvic organs, similar to a McBurney’s incision.

Herna—A late complication of wound disruption. A fascial disruption occurs with protrusion of the peritoneum, bowel, and omentum. The skin and subcutaneous tissue are intact.

Langer lines—The natural, anatomic tissue lines on the abdominal skin.

Linea alba—Where the aponeurosis of the internal and external oblique muscles insert, anterior to the rectus musculature.

Maylard incision—A transverse abdominal incision in which the rectus muscles are transected after ligation of the inferior epigastric vessels. The fascia is not dissected free of the rectus muscles. The peritoneum is usually entered in a transverse fashion.

Panniculectomy—Surgical removal of the pannus, excess skin, and subcutaneous fat, which hangs like an apron from the abdomen. Removal facillitates gynecological surgery.

Pfannenstiel incision—A commonly used transverse abdominal incision in which the rectus muscles are not cut and the fascia is dissected superiorly and inferiorly along the rectus muscles. The peritoneum is usually entered vertically.

Schuchardt incision—an incision made in the vagina along the sulcus of the vagina from the lateral fornix to the introitus and through the perineum. This incision can increase room in the vagina so as to aid in difficult vaginal surgeries.

Smead-Jones closure—An interrupted closure of the anterior abdominal wall using a far-far, near-near approach. The closure includes all of the abdominal wall structures on the far-far portion and only the fascia on the near-near portion.

One of the last marks of any abdominal surgery, and most noticeable to the patient, is the scar made by the incision. In selecting an incision, the gynecologist must take into consideration the underlying pathology prompting the surgery, the suspicion of malignancy, the absence or presence of upper abdominal disease, and the underlying comorbid state of the patient. Although there are many types of incisions for gynecological surgery, selection of any incision must be highly individualized. However, selection of an incision should not be dictated by patient choice to preserve cosmesis if it may compromise the surgical approach. Conversely, unduly large or poorly positioned incisions may increase the likelihood of infection, herniation, or dehiscence, as well as unsightly cosmesis. During the surgical consenting process, the patient should be counseled on the location of the incision, the rationale for the particular incision, and any possible complication that may arise from the planned incision. In gynecologic oncology patients, the need for urinary diversion, colostomy, or an extraperitoneal approach to node-bearing areas will dictate the type of incision to be made. This chapter presents the classic incisions used by gynecologists to perform most gynecologic surgery. In addition, incisions used for gynecologic oncology will be shown. Finally, discussion and management of common complications associated with abdominal incisions will be presented.

ANATOMY OF THE ANTERIOR ABDOMINAL WALL

To avoid injury to vessels and nerves and to close any incision with minimal chance of dehiscence, abdominal wall anatomy should be thoroughly understood. The abdominal wall protects the visceral organs and vasculature within the abdominal cavity. Cephalad, the anterior abdominal wall extends to the costal margins and the xiphoid process. The costal cartilages of the seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth ribs form a portion of the cephalad boundary. Lateral boundaries include the iliac crests; inferiorly, the abdominal wall is delineated by the inguinal ligaments, the pubic crests, and the superior border of the symphysis pubis. The principal anatomic structures of the abdominal wall include the overlying skin, subcutaneous tissue, muscles, fascia, and the nerves and vascular supply to these structures. Many factors—such as age, muscle mass and tone, obesity, intraabdominal pathology, previous pregnancies, and posture—can result in variation in the contour of the abdominal wall. These variations in contour affect abdominal wall topography and may present problems in the correct choice and placement of incisions.
Skin and Lymphatics

The skin contains small vessels, lymphatics, and nerves. A minimal loss of skin sensation can result from any abdominal incision. Numbness below a transverse incision frequently occurs. As stated in the discussion on nerve supply, laterally extended transverse abdominal incisions can result in numbness of the skin on the anterior thigh.

The lymphatic drainage of the upper abdominal wall passes directly to the axillary lymph nodes. The lymphatic drainage of the lower abdomen passes to the inguinal nodes and then to the iliac chain. Some lymphatics around the umbilicus drain toward the liver through the falciform ligament. When an incision is placed transversely in the lower abdomen, lymphatic drainage of the abdominal wall above the incision site is interrupted. Some tissue swelling may develop temporarily until collateral lymphatic drainage can be established. Patients should be counseled about this possible swelling before undergoing surgery.

In 1861, Langer, working with cadavers, described cleavage lines of the skin that pull the skin edges apart when cut across. These have become known as Langer lines (Fig. 14.1). These lines usually run horizontally across the abdomen. A vertical incision in the skin of the abdomen cuts perpendicular to Langer lines, whereas a horizontal incision cuts parallel to them. Thus, transverse incisions heal with a relatively fine scar, and vertical incisions can heal with a broad scar, particularly in the lower abdomen.

Muscles and Fascia

The abdominal muscles assist in respiration, defecation, urination, coughing, and childbirth by increasing intraabdominal pressure. They work synergistically with the muscles of the back to flex, extend, and rotate the trunk and pelvis. There are two groups of muscles that form the musculature of the anterior abdominal wall. The flat muscles include the external oblique, the internal oblique, and the transversalis. Their fibers basically run diagonally or transversely. The second group, composed of the rectus muscles and the paired pyramidalis muscles, have fibers that run vertically (Fig. 14.3). The recti, with their thin investing fascia, are muscles of locomotion and posture. The paired pyramidalis muscles arise from the crest of the pubic symphysis and insert into the pubic symphysis. Preservation of the pyramidalis muscles is not essential when making incisions. The integrity of the anterior abdominal wall is not associated with this second group of muscles.

A cross section of the lower abdominal wall shows that the fascia of the abdominal muscles envelop the anterior and posterior surfaces of the rectus muscles and anchor the external oblique, the internal oblique, and the transversalis muscles to the vertical (rectus) muscles (Fig. 14.3). There is excellent fascial support anteriorly and posteriorly to the rectus muscles above the arcuate (semicircular) line. In this location, the fascial aponeurosis of the external oblique and the split fascial aponeurosis of the internal oblique fuse together anterior to the rectus muscle and insert in the midline (linea alba). Above the arcuate line, the posterior lamella of the internal oblique muscle fuses with the posterior lamella of the transversalis muscle, passes posterior to the rectus muscle, and inserts in the midline. The lower half of the lower abdominal wall is weakened below the arcuate line, at a level about equal to the anterior superior iliac spine, where the posterior division of the rectus sheath disappears in this location, the divided lamella of the internal oblique muscle combines and passes anterior to the rectus muscle. From this lower portion of the lower abdominal wall to the pubic rami, only the attenuated transversalis fascia and the peritoneum lie adjacent to the posterior surface of the muscle. It is in this weakened section of the lower abdomen that most incisional hernias occur after pelvic surgery through lower midline incisions. In the lower abdomen, the force required to approximate edges of a vertical incision is 30 times greater than the force required to approximate edges of a transverse incision.

The external oblique muscle and its aponeurosis form the most anterior layer of the flat muscles. The external oblique muscle originates from the lower eight ribs. Superiorly, the fibers of this muscle run transversely; inferiorly, they assume an oblique downward course. A portion of the muscle gives rise to a broad fibrous aponeurosis, which courses medially, anterior to the rectus muscle. The next posterior fanlike muscle is the internal oblique, which originates primarily from the iliac crest,
the thoracolumbar fascia, and the inguinal ligament. The midportion of the muscle runs an upward oblique course and gives rise to the aponeurosis of the internal oblique. As noted, at the lateral border of the rectus musculature, the aponeurosis splits and forms a sheath around the rectus muscle, rejoining medial to the rectus to help form the linea alba. The third flat muscle, the transverse abdominis, arises from the lower six costal cartilages, thoracolumbar fascia, and internal lip of the iliac crest. It has a truly transverse course. Above the midway point between the umbilicus and pubis, the aponeurosis of this muscle passes behind the rectus muscle and contributes to the posterior rectus sheath. Below this point, the aponeurosis passes anterior to the rectus muscle, contributing to the anterior rectus sheath. Medial to the rectus muscle, the fascia of all three flat muscles insert to form the linea alba.

The major functions of the flat muscles are to assist with respirations and to assist in increasing intraabdominal pressure. Each time these muscles contract, they pull at the linea alba. Because the linea alba represents the insertion of six major abdominal muscles (three on each side), cutting it, as with lower midline incisions, actually interrupts the major portion of the insertion of these six muscles. Thus, contractions of these muscles in the postoperative period can result in considerable tension on a suture line in the linea alba and can cause considerable discomfort.

The rectus abdominis muscle arises from the pubic crest. It courses superiorly and inserts into the xiphoid process with the upper attachments being three times as broad as its pubic insertion. It has three or four fibrous insertions. One is at the level of the umbilicus; two are usually halfway between the umbilicus and the insertions, superiorly and inferiorly. Of note, the fibrous insertions are tightly adherent to the anterior rectus sheath. These limit the retraction of the muscle when it is cut. Thus, when performing a transverse-muscle cutting incision, it is not necessary to reapproximate the rectus muscle. The pyramidalis, a triangular muscle, usually lies anterior to the rectus and arises from the anterior portion of the symphysis, inserting into the inferior portion of the linea alba. The midportion of this muscle usually has an avascular raphe, which can easily be incised for adequate exposure of the Retzius space.

### Blood Supply

The abundant blood supply to the anterior abdominal wall comes from several sources. The main arterial supply consists...
FIGURE 14.3. Cross section of lower abdominal wall. A: The anterior fascial sheath of the rectus muscle from external oblique muscle (1) and split aponeurosis of internal oblique muscle (2). The posterior sheath is formed by aponeurosis of transversalis muscle (3) and split aponeurosis of internal oblique muscle. B: Lower portion of abdominal wall below arcuate line (linea semicircularis) with absence of a posterior fascial sheath of the rectus muscle and all of the fascial aponeuroses (1–3) forming the anterior rectus sheath.

of the superior epigastric, musculophrenic, deep circumflex iliac, and inferior epigastric vessels. The medial abdominal wall receives blood from the epigastric arteries, whereas the lateral wall is supplied by the musculophrenic and deep circumflex iliac arteries. The lateral wall is also supplied by the lower intercostal and lumbar arteries (T8 to T12 and L1). This freely anastomosing vascular system provides one continuous arterial and venous channel on both sides of the anterior abdominal wall, extending from the subclavian artery and vein (cephalad) to the external iliac vessels (caudad) (Fig. 14.4). Because of the rich anastomosis, vascular deficiency is usually not a complication of abdominal wall surgery. The linea alba is relatively bloodless. The limited vascular supply in this area of fascial fusion can impair wound healing when lower midline incisions are used. Thus, a secure closure is mandatory to avoid incisional hernias or eviscerations.

Conversely, the epigastric vessels are subject to injury, particularly when a muscle-splitting incision is used. Also, the deep circumflex or musculophrenic vessels can be injured when an extraperitoneal approach is chosen.

The superior epigastric artery is a continuation of the internal thoracic (mammary) artery. It enters the sheath of the rectus from behind the seventh costal cartilage and descends posterior to the rectus. It has multiple branches in the substance of the rectus muscle and anastomoses to the inferior epigastric artery. In the upper abdomen, cephalad to the umbilicus, the main branch of the artery tends to lie posterior to the midportion of the rectus muscle (Fig. 14.5). The inferior epigastric artery arises from the external iliac artery near the midinguinal point. It continues in a cephalad course along the posterior lateral portion of the rectus muscle and has an anastomosis with the superior epigastric arteries. The lower a transverse incision is made, the more lateral the inferior epigastric arteries are encountered. Bleeding from branches of the inferior epigastric vessels beneath the rectus muscle can dissect cephalad or caudad along the entire length of the posterior sheath. Below the arcuate line, bleeding can dissect laterally and inferiorly along the retroperitoneal planes and spaces, resulting in extensive hematomas of the abdominal wall and pelvis. Such bleeding can produce confusing acute abdominal signs in the postoperative patient, and large quantities of blood may be lost in these loose tissues and spaces.

The musculophrenic artery, arising from the internal thoracic, courses along the costal margin, behind the cartilages. It has an anastomosis with the deep circumflex artery, which originates from the external iliac at about the same level as the inferior epigastric artery. The deep circumflex courses behind the inguinal ligament and along the iliac crest, eventually piercing the transversus muscle and digitating between that muscle and the internal oblique. Before its anastomosis with the musculophrenic, it can be relatively large. Care must be taken when these muscles are incised laterally.

The venous drainage of the abdominal wall accompanies the arteries. The veins of the abdominal wall may be dilated in patients with obstruction of blood flow through the liver and porta hepatis.

Innervation

The nerve supply to the anterior abdominal wall is easily damaged by some incisions. The anterior abdominal wall is supplied by the thoracolumbar nerves, the iliohypogastric nerves, and the ilioinguinal nerves. The thoracolumbar nerves, which are the seventh to eleventh intercostal nerves, leave the intercostal spaces and travel caudad and anterior between the

FIGURE 14.4. The major arterial blood supply of the anterior abdominal wall consists of four major vessels. Two lateral and two medial contribute to the rich anastomosis. (From Gallup DG. Opening and closing the abdomen and wound healing. In: Gershenson D, Curry S, DeCherney A, eds. Operative gynecology. 1st ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1993:127, with permission.)
transversus and internal oblique. They supply these muscles and the external oblique. They enter the sheath of the rectus, and their branches supply the rectus and the overlying skin. Most of the nerves are supplied by several trunks. Any one nerve in the anterior abdominal wall contains fibers from the last two to three intercostal nerves. When an incision is made lateral to the midline, a transverse type is least likely to cause injury to nerves. In the upper abdomen, an obliquely caudad and laterally directed incision is least likely to cause significant nerve injury. In the lower part of the abdomen, an obliquely directed cephalad and laterally directed incision is relatively nerve sparing.

A vertical incision that passes lateral to the rectus muscle or through the muscle itself can denervate medially lying tissue. Depending on the length of the incision, atony or atrophy of the muscle can occur. A midline incision in the linea alba or a transverse incision (even through the rectus muscle), however, does not interfere with motor innervation of the abdominal musculature.

A minimal loss of skin sensation can result from abdominal incisions and is unavoidable in most cases. The iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal nerves are sensory in function (Fig. 14.6). Injury to the former, when wide transverse incisions are used, can result in sensation changes in the skin over the mons, whereas injury to the latter can result in sensation changes to the labia majora. A widely placed transverse incision can result in numbness of the skin over the upper anterior thigh. Both nerves are chiefly derived from the first lumbar nerve root. Although they lie for a distance between the internal oblique and the transversus, they do not enter the rectus sheath. They do not supply the external oblique or the rectus muscle. Both nerves supply the lower fibers of the internal oblique and transversus. If damage occurs to these nerves at the level of the anterosuperior iliac spine, these muscle fibers are denervated. A weakening
Incisions for Gynecologic Surgery


of the normal canal-controlling mechanism can occur, predisposing the patient to an inguinal hernia.

PHYSIOLOGY OF WOUND HEALING

Wound complications are a psychological and economic problem for the patient and include infections, dehiscence, and evisceration, as well as late-occurring problems such as incisional hernias and wound sinus formation. Factors negatively affecting proper wound healing include diabetes, malnutrition, prior irradiation or chemotherapy, older patient age, alcoholism, preoperative shaving the evening before the operation (instead of clipping of hair), longer duration of preoperative hospitalization, longer duration of the operation, use of Penrose-type drains brought out through the incision, ascites, malignancy, immunosuppression (including long-term corticosteroid therapy), and obesity. In addition, factors affecting wound disruption that usually occur in the absence of infection include choice of suture material, closure technique, occurrence of excessive coughing caused by pulmonary disease, retching and vomiting, and intestinal obstruction.

The four phases of wound healing are inflammation, migration, proliferation, and maturation. Breaks in the normal cycle of wound healing can occur anywhere, depending on preexisting conditions. Increases in fibroblasts during the proliferation phase, which occurs from day 5 through day 20, provide most of the strength to the wound. By day 21, most wounds have regained almost 30% of their original tensile strength. Any wound contamination or the presence of foreign bodies can cause chronic inflammation, wound sinuses, delayed incisional herniae, or the early postoperative problems of infection and dehiscence.

The risks of wound infections are directly related to the classification of wounds (Table 14.1). Obviously, few surgeons would primarily close a dirty wound. Many of the abdominal procedures performed by gynecologists include a hysterectomy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 14.1</th>
<th>WOUND CLASSIFICATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Clean-contaminated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Contaminated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Dirty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Whenever the vagina is entered, the procedure is then classified as a clean-contaminated procedure with attendant risk.

**SUTURES**

Suture choice is basically a surgeon’s prerogative, but the characteristics of suture material intended for fascial closure should be well known to the surgeon. Additionally, suture choice should be based on the patient’s condition, the type of incision, and the strength and reaction of the suture (Table 14.2). In general, the ideal suture material should have the following characteristics: knot security, inertness, adequate tensile strength, flexibility, ease in handling, smooth passage through tissue, nonallergenicity, resistance to infection, and absorbability at a predictable rate. Neither plain catgut nor chromic catgut maintains tensile strength during the critical time of wound healing. They should not be used for fascial closure of the abdominal wall, irrespective of the type of incision used. Estimation of tensile strength of chromic suture after 14 days is 34%, whereas plain gut has none.

In general, sutures are classified as nonabsorbable if they maintain tensile strength for more than 60 days. In the permanent suture group, monofilament sutures yield less inflammation than that of polyfilament sutures. Wire has been the traditional suture used by surgeons for decades in high-risk patients, particularly when infection was an associated operative finding. However, wire is difficult to tie and breaks easily if bent sharply. If placed too closely to the incisional edges, it may cut through tissues. In some patients, wire can cause a prickling sensation. Also, wire ends may penetrate the surgeon’s gloves, exposing the surgeon to body fluid–borne pathogens. Furthermore, in animal models, both monofilament nylon and monofilament polypropylene sutures have elicited less infection in contaminated tissue and may be more durable than wire. Both cotton and silk are highly tissue-reactive sutures. Although silk and cotton are considered nonabsorbable sutures, silk loses all of its tensile strength after 1 year, and cotton loses half of its tensile strength after 1 year. If a permanent suture is chosen for closure, one of the monofilament polypropylene sutures or monofilament nylon should be used.

During the past two decades, synthetic absorbable sutures have been added to the surgeon’s armamentarium. Polyglycolic acid and polyglactin have been extensively studied. They maintain an estimated 55% of their original tensile strength at 14 days but lose all their tensile strength by 30 days. A newer polyglycolic acid suture, Dexon 2, appears to have better knot security. Many surgeons use one of these for various types of transverse incision closures. In 1984, Fagniez and colleagues reported few cases of fascial dehiscence in a large series of patients who had midline incisions closed with polyglycolic acid sutures.

Polyglyconate (Maxon) and polydioxanone (PDS) represent a new class of monofilament absorbable sutures, sometimes referred to as a delayed-absorbable suture. In animal studies, both of these sutures were observed to have a much less inflammatory response than that of polyglactin sutures. In addition, these investigators estimated that Maxon and PDS retain about 90% of their tensile strength by postoperative day 14 and retain 50% by postoperative day 30. In one study of degradation patterns of Maxon and PDS in rabbit fascia, PDS was noted to be superior. Rodeheaver and associates found no significant difference in knot-breaking strength in these two sutures, but Maxon appeared to have less stiffness in handling. Another study in rabbits also revealed the tensile strength superiority of Maxon and PDS compared with polyglycolic acid and polyglactin. In this study, Maxon was thought to have the best knot security. These investigators also observed that the most

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suture type</th>
<th>Tissue reaction</th>
<th>Relative strength</th>
<th>Knot security</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Absorbable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monofilament</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plain gut</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic gut</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polydioxanone (PDS)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyglyconate (Maxon)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poly glycaperone 25 (Monocryl)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vicryl Rapid</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Braided</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyglycolic acid (Dexon, Dexon 2)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyglactin 910 (Vicryl)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poly (L-lactide-co-glycolide) (Panacryl)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonabsorbable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monofilament</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polypropylene monofilament (Surgilene, Novafil, Prolene)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless-steel wire (Flexon)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nylon (Dermalon, Ethilon, Surgilon)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Braided</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural (silk, cotton)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Dacron, Mersilea, Ti-Cron, Ethibond, Tevdeck)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Scale on 1, least; 4, most.
consistent knot security was achieved when six square knots were used. Alternatively, two surgeon's knots and two square knots can be used. Our clinical impression is that there is little difference in suture handling and knot security when Maxon and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.

Finally, knot security will depend on suture size and the tissue needing approximation. Although sliding knots, also known as nonidentical sliding knots, can be safely used for pelvic viscera, sutures used to close abdominal wall fascia should be tied with square knots. Sometimes it is convenient to tie a loop-to-strand knot as a way of terminating a continuous tape to close the skin. No drains were used, and only one and oral antibiotics, transverse incisions, copious lavage, and culi measured 6 to 11 cm in thickness. They used systemic antibiotics, including surgeon experience, the population operated on, and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.

Finally, knot security will depend on suture size and the tissue needing approximation. Although sliding knots, also known as nonidentical sliding knots, can be safely used for pelvic viscera, sutures used to close abdominal wall fascia should be tied with square knots. Sometimes it is convenient to tie a loop-to-strand knot as a way of terminating a continuous tape to close the skin. No drains were used, and only one and oral antibiotics, transverse incisions, copious lavage, and culi measured 6 to 11 cm in thickness. They used systemic antibiotics, including surgeon experience, the population operated on, and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.

Finally, knot security will depend on suture size and the tissue needing approximation. Although sliding knots, also known as nonidentical sliding knots, can be safely used for pelvic viscera, sutures used to close abdominal wall fascia should be tied with square knots. Sometimes it is convenient to tie a loop-to-strand knot as a way of terminating a continuous tape to close the skin. No drains were used, and only one and oral antibiotics, transverse incisions, copious lavage, and culi measured 6 to 11 cm in thickness. They used systemic antibiotics, including surgeon experience, the population operated on, and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.

Finally, knot security will depend on suture size and the tissue needing approximation. Although sliding knots, also known as nonidentical sliding knots, can be safely used for pelvic viscera, sutures used to close abdominal wall fascia should be tied with square knots. Sometimes it is convenient to tie a loop-to-strand knot as a way of terminating a continuous tape to close the skin. No drains were used, and only one and oral antibiotics, transverse incisions, copious lavage, and culi measured 6 to 11 cm in thickness. They used systemic antibiotics, including surgeon experience, the population operated on, and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.

Finally, knot security will depend on suture size and the tissue needing approximation. Although sliding knots, also known as nonidentical sliding knots, can be safely used for pelvic viscera, sutures used to close abdominal wall fascia should be tied with square knots. Sometimes it is convenient to tie a loop-to-strand knot as a way of terminating a continuous tape to close the skin. No drains were used, and only one and oral antibiotics, transverse incisions, copious lavage, and culi measured 6 to 11 cm in thickness. They used systemic antibiotics, including surgeon experience, the population operated on, and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.

Finally, knot security will depend on suture size and the tissue needing approximation. Although sliding knots, also known as nonidentical sliding knots, can be safely used for pelvic viscera, sutures used to close abdominal wall fascia should be tied with square knots. Sometimes it is convenient to tie a loop-to-strand knot as a way of terminating a continuous tape to close the skin. No drains were used, and only one and oral antibiotics, transverse incisions, copious lavage, and culi measured 6 to 11 cm in thickness. They used systemic antibiotics, including surgeon experience, the population operated on, and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.

Finally, knot security will depend on suture size and the tissue needing approximation. Although sliding knots, also known as nonidentical sliding knots, can be safely used for pelvic viscera, sutures used to close abdominal wall fascia should be tied with square knots. Sometimes it is convenient to tie a loop-to-strand knot as a way of terminating a continuous tape to close the skin. No drains were used, and only one and oral antibiotics, transverse incisions, copious lavage, and culi measured 6 to 11 cm in thickness. They used systemic antibiotics, including surgeon experience, the population operated on, and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.

Finally, knot security will depend on suture size and the tissue needing approximation. Although sliding knots, also known as nonidentical sliding knots, can be safely used for pelvic viscera, sutures used to close abdominal wall fascia should be tied with square knots. Sometimes it is convenient to tie a loop-to-strand knot as a way of terminating a continuous tape to close the skin. No drains were used, and only one and oral antibiotics, transverse incisions, copious lavage, and culi measured 6 to 11 cm in thickness. They used systemic antibiotics, including surgeon experience, the population operated on, and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.

Finally, knot security will depend on suture size and the tissue needing approximation. Although sliding knots, also known as nonidentical sliding knots, can be safely used for pelvic viscera, sutures used to close abdominal wall fascia should be tied with square knots. Sometimes it is convenient to tie a loop-to-strand knot as a way of terminating a continuous tape to close the skin. No drains were used, and only one and oral antibiotics, transverse incisions, copious lavage, and culi measured 6 to 11 cm in thickness. They used systemic antibiotics, including surgeon experience, the population operated on, and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.

Finally, knot security will depend on suture size and the tissue needing approximation. Although sliding knots, also known as nonidentical sliding knots, can be safely used for pelvic viscera, sutures used to close abdominal wall fascia should be tied with square knots. Sometimes it is convenient to tie a loop-to-strand knot as a way of terminating a continuous tape to close the skin. No drains were used, and only one and oral antibiotics, transverse incisions, copious lavage, and culi measured 6 to 11 cm in thickness. They used systemic antibiotics, including surgeon experience, the population operated on, and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.

Finally, knot security will depend on suture size and the tissue needing approximation. Although sliding knots, also known as nonidentical sliding knots, can be safely used for pelvic viscera, sutures used to close abdominal wall fascia should be tied with square knots. Sometimes it is convenient to tie a loop-to-strand knot as a way of terminating a continuous tape to close the skin. No drains were used, and only one and oral antibiotics, transverse incisions, copious lavage, and culi measured 6 to 11 cm in thickness. They used systemic antibiotics, including surgeon experience, the population operated on, and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.

Finally, knot security will depend on suture size and the tissue needing approximation. Although sliding knots, also known as nonidentical sliding knots, can be safely used for pelvic viscera, sutures used to close abdominal wall fascia should be tied with square knots. Sometimes it is convenient to tie a loop-to-strand knot as a way of terminating a continuous tape to close the skin. No drains were used, and only one and oral antibiotics, transverse incisions, copious lavage, and culi measured 6 to 11 cm in thickness. They used systemic antibiotics, including surgeon experience, the population operated on, and PDS II are compared. When wound healing is anticipated to take longer than 2 weeks, particularly for fascial closure of midline incisions, one of these two delayed-absorbable sutures should be highly considered. In addition, usage of one of these sutures should be considered in the presence of infection or contamination.
A neoplastic layer may diminish tension from the approximated skin with a fine (4-0) running polyglycolic acid suture in the subcutaneous, subcutaneous sutures should be avoided because the subcutaneous spaces. When a bacteria-containing organ is opened (the unprepped bowel or abscessed gynecological organs) and delayed closure is not used, copious saline irrigation of all layers for closure should be instituted. In addition, a monofilament delayed or nonabsorbable suture should be used in the closure. Systemic antibiotics can help control wound infections when pelvic infection is encountered. To be of benefit, they should be administered at least 30 minutes before the skin incision and readministered if the operation is prolonged. Currently, first- and second-generation cephalosporins are the most popular antibiotics used in the prophylactic setting.

ABDOMINAL INCISIONS

In general, abdominal incisions used for most gynecologic procedures can be divided into transverse or vertical incisions. For extraperitoneal incisions and access to organs not associated with the female genital tract, modifications of oblique incisions are sometimes used. Because of the ease and rapid entry, the abdomen was originally routinely opened by a longitudinal incision in the linea alba. One of the first successful abdominal operations was performed by McDowell in 1809. In the early days of abdominal surgery, transverse incisions were generally avoided because they were more time-consuming. Also, an ungrounded fear was that transection of the rectus muscle would leave a defect because of retraction of the muscle. As previously stated in the section on anatomy, the adherence of the rectus to the anterior rectus fascia by several transverse inscriptions prevents retraction. In the late 1880s and early 1900s, several transverse incisions were developed, such as the Küster, Pfannenstiel, Maylard, and Chernet incisions. Most of the transverse incisions used for pelvic surgery are identified by the name of the surgeon who first described them, whereas few vertical abdominal incisions have no such eponyms.

Transverse Incisions

Transverse incisions for pelvic surgery are attractive because they produce the best cosmetic results. Additionally, low transverse incisions are as much as 30 times stronger than midline incisions, are less painful, and result in less interference with postoperative respirations. Wound dehiscence is allegedly more common with vertical incisions. The older literature suggests that wound evisceration was three to five times more common and herma occurrence was two to three times more common when vertical incisions were used compared to transverse incisions. Many earlier studies reported an increased incidence of eviscerations with midline incisions that could be associated with inappropriate closures. More recent studies, however, have shown no difference in the risk of wound dehiscence or even a slight advantage for midline incisions. A large study, completed at Hutzel Hospital in Detroit by Hendrix and colleagues, found that there was no difference in fascial dehiscence between transverse (Pfannenstiel) and vertical incisions. Transverse incisions have certain associated disadvantages. They are relatively more time-consuming and result in hemorrhagic. Occasionally, nerves are divided, and division of multiple layers of fascia and muscle can result in formation of potential spaces with subsequent hematoma or seroma.
through subcutaneous fat, down to the aponeurosis of the ex-verse skin incision begins below the level of the anterior su-
neous layers, and may be made at any level suitable to the surgeon (Fig. 14.7A). It is usually 10 to 15 cm long and extends through
mally is compromised with most low transverse incisions.
entrenal oblique muscle and the anterior sheath of the recti in the
fascial incision is about 25% longer than a midline incision from
terial reverse incision that is slightly curved (concavity upward)
ligation. Occasionally, the surgeon who uses a Pfannenstiel incision finds the incision inadequate for exposure for hemostasis or not large enough to expose areas of associated abnormal conditions. Under these circumstances, the safe approach is not to transect the rectus muscles halfway but to perform a Cherney incision. Partial incision of the rectus muscle can lead to injury to the inferior epigastric vessels. Also, if conversion to a Maylard is attempted after a previous Pfannenstiel, the anterior rectus sheath will have already been widely separated from the rectus muscles. The ends of the muscle are likely to retract and will not reunite when the edges of the aponeuroses are later reapproximated. In this situation, it may be necessary to reapproximate the rectus muscle ends with horizontal mattress sutures.

even if the peritoneum is opened, the space of Retzius can be

formation. Ability to explore the upper-abdominal cavity ade-
quately is compromised with most low transverse incisions.

Pfannenstiel Incision

Most surgeons would agree that the Pfannenstiel incision pro-
vides the best wound security of all gynecologic incisions. The
cosmetic results are excellent, but exposure is limited. Thus, it
should not be used for patients with known gynecologic malig-
nancies. It should not be used when pelvic exposure is needed in
operating on patients with nonmalignant conditions, such as
severe endometriosis or large leiomyomas with distortion of the
lower uterine segment, or when reoperating on a patient for hemorrhage.
The original, true Pfannenstiel incision is described as a
transverse incision that is slightly curved (concavity upward)
and may be made at any level suitable to the surgeon (Fig. 14.7A). It is usually 10 to 15 cm long and extends through the skin and subcutaneous fat to the level of the rectus fascia. The rectus fascia is incised transversely on either side of the linea alba, which is cut separately, joining the two lateral incisions but leaving the rectus fascia intact across the midline (Fig. 14.7B). The rectus sheath is separated from the under-
lining muscle by inserting the fingers on either side of the cut
edge of the sheath and pulling the fascia in opposite directions,
with one hand toward the head and the other hand toward the
feet. This maneuver frees the fascia from the anterior surface of the rectus muscle as far as desired between the symphysis and
the umbilicus (Fig. 14.7C). The rectus muscles are then sepa-
rated in the midline, and the peritoneum is opened vertically
(Fig. 14.7D). This procedure avoids the necessity of dissect-
ing the subcutaneous fat away from the anterior rectus fascia,
as is done in the K"ustner incision. It separates the perforating
nerves and small blood vessels that enter the fascia from the un-
derlying muscles and nourishes the fascia, although it possibly
weakens the incision.

If the Pfannenstiel incision is extended laterally beyond the
edge of the rectus muscles and into the substance of the exter-
nal and internal oblique muscles, injury to the iliohypogastric
or ilioinguinal nerves can occur, with resulting neuroma forma-
tion. Ability to explore the upper-abdominal cavity ade-
quately is compromised with most low transverse incisions.

K"ustner Incision

Some surgeons advocate a K"ustner incision, incorrectly referred to as a modified Pfannenstiel incision. The slightly curved trans-
verse skin incision begins below the level of the anterior su-
perior iliac spine and extends just below the pubic hairline,
through subcutaneous fat, down to the aponeurosis of the ex-ternal oblique muscle and the anterior sheath of the recti in the
same manner as all other transverse incisions (Fig. 14.8A). The
superficial branches of the inferior epigastric artery and vein
may be encountered in the subcutaneous fat at the lateral mar-
gin of the incision. When encountered, they can be ligated or
sealed with Bovie cautery. The fascia is cleaned superiorly and
inferiorly until a sufficient area is exposed from the region of the
umbilicus to the symphysis to permit an adequate vertical inci-
sion in the linea alba. Excessive separation of the fat from the
fascia in the lateral margins of the incision is unnecessary and

can provide sites for small postoperative herniations separa-
tion of the rectus muscles and entrance into the peritoneum are
performed in the same manner in the ordinary midline incision
(Fig. 14.3B). Because of the importance of obtaining adequate
hemostasis in the subcutaneous fat of the skin flaps, this inci-
sion is definitely more time-consuming than the low midline
incision or the Pfannenstiel incision. It offers little or no ad-
vantage, and its extensibility is severely limited. If this incision
is used, strong consideration of subcutaneous, closed-suction
drainage should be given.

Cherney Incision

The Cherney differs from the muscle-dividing Maylard incision
by the location of transection of the recti. In both incisions, the
skin and fascia are divided transversely as with a Pfannen-
stiel, but Cherney advocated freeing the rectus muscles at their
tendinous insertion into the symphysis pubis. The recti are then
retracted cephalad to improve exposure. The transverse Cher-
ney incision is about 25% longer than a midline incision from
the umbilicus to the symphysis.

The Cherney incision provides excellent access to the space
of Retzius for urinary incontinence procedures. It provides ex-
cellent exposure of the pelvic side wall when needed, for ex-
ample, in patients who require hypogastric artery ligation. Occasionally, the surgeon who uses a Pfannenstiel incision finds the incision inadequate for exposure for hemostasis or not large enough to expose areas of associated abnormal conditions. Under these circumstances, the safe approach is not to transect the rectus muscles halfway but to perform a Cherney incision. Partial incision of the rectus muscle can lead to injury to the inferior epsi-
gastic vessels. Also, if conversion to a Maylard is attempted
after a previous Pfannenstiel, the anterior rectus sheath will
have already been widely separated from the rectus muscles.

The Cherney incision provides excellent access to the space
of Retzius for urinary incontinence procedures. It provides ex-
cellent exposure of the pelvic side wall when needed, for ex-
ample, in patients who require hypogastric artery ligation. Occasionally, the surgeon who uses a Pfannenstiel incision finds the incision inadequate for exposure for hemostasis or not large enough to expose areas of associated abnormal conditions. Under these circumstances, the safe approach is not to transect the rectus muscles halfway but to perform a Cherney incision. Partial incision of the rectus muscle can lead to injury to the inferior epigastric vessels. Also, if conversion to a Maylard is attempted after a previous Pfannenstiel, the anterior rectus sheath will have already been widely separated from the rectus muscles. The ends of the muscle are likely to retract and will not reunite when the edges of the aponeuroses are later reapproximated. In this situation, it may be necessary to reapproximate the rectus muscle ends with horizontal mattress sutures.

Even if the peritoneum is opened, the space of Retzius can be
bluntly dissected (Fig. 14.9). The inferior epigastric vessels, which course more laterally in the caudad portion of the ab-
dominal wall, are identified. The pyramidal muscles are sharply
dissected. The Ebrous tendinous rectus muscles are then dis-
sected sharply from their insertion into the symphysis pubis
(Fig. 14.10). Bleeding is negligible in this area, and the infe-
rior epigastric vessels do not need to be ligated. The peritoneal
incision can be extended laterally about 2 cm cephalad to the
bladder while the vessels are visualized.

As stated earlier, transverse incisions, particularly the Cher-
ney and the later-described Maylard, can result in nerve injury.
The femoral nerve is particularly at risk when a self-retaining
retractor with deep lateral blades is used in these widely ex-
tended incisions. If a self-retaining retractor is used with these
incisions, the lateral blades should be only deep enough to
fit under the edges of the incision. They should not rest on the
poas muscle.
FIGURE 14.7. A: The skin incision for a Pfannenstiel incision is elliptical just above the symphysis pubis. B: The skin, subcutaneous fat, and fascia of the abdominal wall are incised transversely. C: The fascia is separated from the rectus muscle superiorly, inferiorly, and laterally. Small perforating vessels require ligation or coagulation. D: The rectus muscles are separated, and the peritoneum is incised in the midline.
Incisions for Gynecologic Surgery

In closing a Cherney incision, we prefer to close the peritoneum separately with a running polyglycolic acid suture. Drainage of the subfascial space may be necessary. The ends of the rectus tendons are united to the inferior portion of the lower flap of the rectus sheath with five or six interrupted delayed-absorbable or permanent sutures in horizontal mattress configuration (Fig. 14.11). To avoid osteomyelitis, the rectus muscles should not be sutured to the periosteum of the symphysis pubis. Fascial closure is then accomplished with a running continuous suture of delayed-absorbable suture, as in the Pfannenstiel. Although the lines of tension favor transverse incisions as opposed to vertical incisions, running sutures should be placed at least 1.5 cm from the fascial edge and 1.5 cm from one another. The remainder of the closure is similar to the Pfannenstiel closure, depending on the surgeon’s preference.

Maylard Incision
The Maylard incision is a true transverse muscle-cutting incision in which all layers of the lower abdominal wall are incised transversely. This incision was originally described by Ernest Maylard in 1907. The incision provides excellent pelvic exposure and is used by many surgeons for radical pelvic surgery, including radical hysterectomy with pelvic lymph node dissection and pelvic extirpation. Although we prefer midline incisions for patients with suspicious adnexal masses, young patients with adnexal masses that are question-able for malignancy by radiographic and serological studies may be candidates for this cosmetic incision. Patients must be informed that if malignancy is found, the transverse incision will take the form of a “hockey stick” (i.e., a J-shaped incision; see Incisions for Extraperitoneal Approaches), or a separate upper-abdominal incision will be used to evaluate the upper-abdominal cavity and retroperitoneal paraaortic nodes.

The Maylard-Bardenheuer incision has been modified in several aspects since its original description. Before the skin incision is made, a series of three to four perpendicular markings with a sterile marking pen are made across the planned line of the incision. These markings help in later approximation of the skin edges. The transverse skin incision is made about 3 to 8 cm above the symphysis, depending on the indications for surgery and patient age and weight. The skin incision should never be made in a deep skin crease or beneath a large panniculus. The fascia is incised transversely, and the aponeurosis is not detached from the underlying muscle.

After a transverse fascial incision lateral to the borders of the rectus muscles, the inferior epigastric vessels, lying on the posterior lateral border of each muscle, are identified. (Some surgeons suggest preservation of these vessels even when the rectus muscles are transected.) The vessels are ligated before incising the rectus muscles to avoid tearing of the vessels, vessel retraction, and hematoma formation (Fig. 14.12). The fingers of the surgeon tease the overlying rectus muscle from the peritoneum, and the muscles are sectioned between the fingers by using a Bovie cautery.

FIGURE 14.10. The finger of the operator is placed posterior to the rectus muscle, and with gentle traction, the muscle is pulled cephalad. The rectus muscle can then be dissected from its insertion at the symphysis by the Bovie device. The peritoneal incision can then be extended laterally, avoiding the inferior epigastric vessels, which are positioned laterally. (From Gallup DG. Abdominal incisions and closures. In: Gallup DG, Talledo OE, eds. Surgical atlas of gynecologic oncology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1994:43, with permission.)

For better approximation of the muscles during closure, we prefer to suture the underlying muscle to the overlying fascia before entering the peritoneum. A 2-0 delayed-absorbable “U” suture is used, and the knots are placed anterior to the fascia. The peritoneum is incised transversely.

Closure of the fascia is similar to the running technique for other transverse incisions. The muscles do not need to be reaproximated with individual sutures (exception noted above), although some surgeons prefer to close the parietal peritoneum with a running polyglycolic suture. A subfascial drain is indicated if hemostasis is not absolute (Fig. 14.13).

Caution should be exercised in using the Maylard incision in patients with impaired circulation to the leg secondary to obstruction of the common iliac arteries or terminal aorta. In this situation, blood flow from the inferior epigastric artery may provide the only additional collateral circulation to the
Incisions for Gynecologic Surgery

Deep Epigastric Vessels

FIGURE 14.12. Maylard incision. The rectus muscles are incised with a knife or a Bovie device. The hand of the surgeon is withdrawn as the muscle is cut. The inferior epigastric vessels were previously isolated, sectioned, and ligated. (From Gallup DG. Opening and closing the abdomen. In: Phelan JP, Clark SL, eds. Cesarean delivery. New York: Chapman & Hall, 1988:449, with permission.)

lower extremity. Ligation of this artery could result in lower-extremity ischemia and a real vascular surgical emergency. In the gynecologic patient with clinical evidence of impaired circulation in the lower extremity, a midline incision should be used.

Vertical Incisions

Generally, vertical incisions afford excellent exposure. They can be easily extended and provide rapid entry to the abdominal cavity. Whether midline or paramedian, the resulting scar may be wide.

Midline (Median) Incision

As stated in the section on anatomy, the midline incision is the least hemorrhagic incision, as well as the incision that affords rapid entry into the abdominal/pelvic cavity. Exposure is excellent, and minimal nerve damage occurs. However, dehiscence and hernias are said to be more common, particularly in the area inferior to the arcuate line. Abdominal wound disruption is one of the most serious postoperative problems associated with gynecologic surgery. The “burst abdomen,” or evisceration, seen more frequently in general surgery patients, occurs with a frequency of 0.3% to 0.7% in gynecologic patients and is associated with a mortality of 10% to 35%. The type of incision is only one factor associated with evisceration, and wound infection is present in more than half the cases. Use of chronic cataract for fascial closure is associated with a higher incidence of dehiscence compared with that for any other class of suture. Mechanical factors—such as wound hematomas, paroxysmal coughing associated with chronic lung disease, and gastrointestinal problems (retching, vomiting, ileus)—can lead to evisceration. Newer closure techniques have been shown to have lower wound infection, dehiscence, and hernia rates and are discussed later in the chapter.

The midline incision is the most easily mastered gynecologic incision because the fascial area is relatively bloodless and the rectus muscles are usually separated in parous women. If the patient has a prior midline incision, the surgeon should incise the peritoneum more cephalad to the earlier incision to avoid injury to possibly adherent bowel. In patients undergoing radical pelvic surgery or surgery for deep-seated, adherent pelvic masses, we prefer to develop the space of Retzius to allow extension of the incision between the pyramidal muscles, providing better exposure in the deep pelvis. In nulliparous women, the midline separation between the rectus muscles may not be obvious. In such cases, the pyramidalis muscles are useful landmarks in directing the surgeon to the midline. Because this incision can easily be extended, the midline incision is the most versatile of all incisions used by gynecologists. Hemostasis from incision of more anterior layers should always be complete before the peritoneum is entered (usually done with the scalpel) (Fig. 14.14). Once the abdomen is

FIGURE 14.13. The peritoneum has been closed with 2-0 polyglycolic acid sutures. A closed drainage system is used if hemostasis is not absolute. A running delayed-absorbable suture is used, placing the bites about 1.5 cm from the fascial edge. (From Gallup DG. Abdominal incisions and closures. In: Gallup DG, Talledo OE, eds. Surgical atlas of gynecologic oncology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1994:43, with permission.)
Paramedian Incision

Paramedian incisions have been advocated over midline incisions because of alleged greater strength. In a prospective study, Guillou and coworkers found no significant difference in respiratory complications, wound infection, and dehiscence when comparing midline, medial paramedian, and lateral paramedian incisions. None of the patients with lateral paramedian incisions developed an incisional hernia. The incidence of hernia in midline and medial paramedian incisions was the same. In a randomized prospective study, however, Cox and colleagues found 22 incisional hernias in patients with midline incisions compared with two hernias in the patients who had paramedian incisions. Like the midline or median incision, the paramedian incision has excellent extensibility and exposure, particularly on the side of the pelvis where the incision is made. For example, a left paramedian incision can be useful when operating for disease that involves the sigmoid colon and/or the left pelvic sidewall.

Although advantageous in some situations, paramedian incisions have many potential problems, including increased infection rates, increased intraoperative bleeding, increased operating time, and the possibility of nerve damage with resultant atrophy to the rectus muscle. Long paramedian incisions can increase pain with respiration during the immediate postoperative period. If a paramedian incision is placed parallel to a previous midline incision, or vice versa, the blood supply between the two incisions can be inadequate, resulting in tissue slough, delayed healing, and/or incisional hernia formation.

Closure of Vertical Incisions

Although closure of transverse incisions (discussed previously) raises little controversy because of the inherent relative strength of the incision, the closure of vertical incisions is controversial. Three general comments about closure can be made:

1. Paramedian incisions, because of their location, may require layered closure. However, we tend to use a mass running closure technique as an expedient, yet safe, technique for closure of midline and lateral paramedian incisions. In closing midline incisions, some surgeons prefer a layered closure (Fig. 14.15). However, two metaanalyses (Weiland et al., and Hodgson et al.) have shown that mass closures are superior to layered closures with respect to postoperative incisional herniae, wound dehiscence, suture sinuses, infection, and wound pain. If a layered closure is used, sutures should always be loosely tied because the major cause of wound evisceration is too many sutures placed too closely together, placed too close to the fascial edge, and tied too tightly (remember, “approximate; not strangulate”). Often, at reoperation for evisceration, the sutures and knots are intact, but the suture has simply torn through the fascia. To avoid wound disruptions in high-risk patients, several investigators have advocated a Smead-Jones closure technique (Fig. 14.16). This is a far-far, near-near mass closure technique. The first (far-far) bite includes both the fascia and peritoneum on each side, and only the anterior fascia is included in the near-near bite. The widely spaced initial pass takes the tension off the healing incision, and the carefully placed near-near bites approximate the fascial edges to allow good healing without intervening fat or muscle. A No. 1 nylon or No. 1 polypropylene suture is used, with the key to the success of this closure being widely spaced far-far bites (at least 1.5 to 2 cm from the fascial edges). The main disadvantage to the Smead-Jones closure is that it is time-consuming.

2. With the advent of modern suture materials and knowledge about suturing techniques, retention sutures are rarely needed, except in some cases of evisceration.

3. With midline incisions, rectus muscles should not be sutured together unless there is sufficient diastasis to cause symptoms. In closing midline incisions, some surgeons prefer a layered closure (Fig. 14.15). However, two metaanalyses (Weiland et al., and Hodgson et al.) have shown that mass closures are superior to layered closures with respect to postoperative incisional herniae, wound dehiscence, suture sinuses, infection, and wound pain. If a layered closure is used, sutures should always be loosely tied because the major cause of wound evisceration is too many sutures placed too closely together, placed too close
FIGURE 14.16. Smead-Jones layered closure. This is a far-far, near-near suturing technique, with the anterior fascia being included in the near-near bite. A No. 1 nylon or No. 1 polypropylene suture (or some other delayed-absorbable suture) is used, with the key to the success of this closure being widely spaced far-far bites (at least 1.5 to 2 cm from the fascial edges). This closure technique may be performed in an interrupted fashion or as running suture. (From Morrow CP, Curtin JP. Incisions and wound healing. In: Gynecologic cancer surgery. Churchill Livingstone, 1996:152, with permission.)

FIGURE 14.17. Closure of a midline incision using a No. 2 polypropylene, running mass closure. The anterior fascia, muscle, posterior fascia, and peritoneum are included in the bites (inset), which are taken 1.5 to 2 cm from the fascial edge and about 1 cm apart. With permanent polypropylene suture, a hemoclip can be used on the short end to avoid suture unraveling. (From Gallup DG. Opening and closing the abdomen. In: Phelan JP, Clark SL, eds. Cesarean delivery. New York: Chapman & Hall, 1988:449, with permission.)

demonstrating no fascial dehiscence in 210 patients. However, one patient in their series later developed an incisional hernia.

Several studies using running mass closure of the abdomen have been published and are listed in Table 14.3. These studies show a fascial dehiscence rate of 0.4% with this closure technique. The patient with the fascial dehiscence reported by Sutton and Morgan eviscerated after the closure suture was transected by a Kevorkian curette during wound debridement. In a randomized prospective study, Stone and colleagues found no difference in dehiscence rates between interrupted and mass closures.

Gallup and colleagues closed the midline incisions in their study with a continuous No. 2 polypropylene suture, placing the bites 1.5 to 2 cm from the fascial edge and including all anterior abdominal wall layers (the peritoneum, if easily located, the fascial layers, and the intervening muscle) (Fig. 14.17). One suture should be started from each end of the incision, tying the ends in the middle and securing the suture with three square knots (six throws). In the original series, a small hemoclip was placed above each knot to prevent unraveling. These caveats must be kept in mind with this closure technique: (a) a double-strand suture should never be tied to a single strand, and (b) the sutures should not be pulled too tightly, as this distributes tension unequally over the incision and negates the major advantage of this closure. Not all investigators include the peritoneum in the closure, but they still report excellent results. As shown by Ellis and Heddle in 1977, closure of the peritoneum as a separate layer appears to play no significant role in wound healing when midline incisions are used.

One problem with the use of large-bore, permanent suture for mass closure is occasional, late-occurring wound sinus

| TABLE 14.3 |
| CLOSURE WITH RUNNING SUTURES IN MIDLINE INCISIONS |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigators</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Patients with fascial dehiscence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Archie and Feldman 1981</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>MFP (No. 1)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murray and Blaisdell 1978</td>
<td>255</td>
<td>PGA (No. 1)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shepherd et al. 1983</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>MFP (No. 2)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knight and Griffin 1983</td>
<td>419</td>
<td>MFP (No. 1)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallup et al. 1989</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>MFP (No. 2)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monti et al. 1991*</td>
<td>231</td>
<td>MFP (No. 0)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sutton and Morgan 1992a</td>
<td>154</td>
<td>MFPB (0)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Totals</td>
<td>1589</td>
<td></td>
<td>(0.4%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MFP, monofilament polypropylene; PGA, polyglycolic acid; MFPs, monofilament polyglyconate; MFPB, monofilament polybutane.

*Looped suture with running Smead-Jones technique.

*Looped suture.
Incisions for Gynecologic Surgery

263

Once the uterus and other organs are removed, the pelvic peritoneum is not reapproximated. However, the vaginal cuff is closed. Fascia may be closed with a Smead-Jones or running subcutaneous suture, or a continuous subcutaneous tissue suture may be used, if the patient is at low risk for infection. A running subcutaneous tissue suture is preferable for patients at high risk of infection. Any incision for obese patients, it should be made lower on the abdomen to preserve the cosmetic appearance of the abdominal wall.

Incisions for Obese Patients

Obesity, especially when the condition is morbid (>130% of ideal body weight or body mass index >30 kg/m²), presents problems with incision placement and closure. Obesity is a recognized high-risk factor for wound infections and complications. Pitkin observed a 4% wound complication rate in nonobese women undergoing abdominal hysterectomy compared with a 29% rate in obese patients. Krebs and Helmink reported a wound infection rate of 24% in massively obese pa-

The McBurney incision is an excellent choice for an uncomplicated appendectomy and can be used for the extraperitoneal drainage of an abscess from pelvic inflammatory disease. In pelvic inflammatory disease, when drainage becomes necessary for the treatment of infected pelvic abscesses, antibiotics should be administered and peritoneum incised until pus is seen. The peritoneum is generally incised transversely in the lower abdomen. In treating a large tuboovarian abscess where an incision is also possible by approaching the abscess laterally as an alternative to the McBurney incision. The incision in the lower abdomen is usually extended transversely to the anterosuperior iliac spine. This permits entrance into the site of infection without soiling the peritoneal cavity.

The gridiron incision can be used in the left lower quadrant to drain an abscess on the left side of the pelvis as well as to perform sigmoid colostomy. Closure is depicted in Figure 14.18D–E and is best made with a delayed-absorbable suture.

Rockey-Davis Incision

An alternative to the McBurney incision is the Rockey-Davis (or Elliot) incision. It is a transverse incision placed at the junction of the middle and lower thirds of a line extending from the anterosuperior iliac spine to the umbilicus. Medially, the incision extends to the border of the rectus muscle. The peritoneum is incised transversely. This incision has provided satisfactory exposure to pathology in either lower-abdominal quadrant. A similar incision made lower on the abdomen preserves the cosmetic appearance of the abdominal wall.

Oblique Incisions

Oblique incisions can be used for a transperitoneal or an extraperitoneal approach.

Gridiron (Muscle-Splitting) Incision of McBurney

The McBurney incision is an excellent choice for an uncomplicated appendectomy and can be used for the extraperitoneal drainage of an abscess from pelvic inflammatory disease. In pelvic inflammatory disease, when drainage becomes necessary for the treatment of infected pelvic abscesses, antibiotics should be administered and peritoneum incised until pus is seen. The peritoneum is generally incised transversely in the lower abdomen. In treating a large tuboovarian abscess where an incision is also possible by approaching the abscess laterally as an alternative to the McBurney incision. The incision in the lower abdomen is usually extended transversely to the anterosuperior iliac spine. This permits entrance into the site of infection without soiling the peritoneal cavity.

The gridiron incision is made obliquely downward and inward over the McBurney point (Fig. 14.18A). The location of the incision can be varied when the incision is performed for appendec-
tomy during pregnancy or when it is used for abscess drainage, as mentioned above. The incision in the skin can be made at a lower level to preserve the cosmetic appearance of the abdomi-
nal wall. The incision is carried through the skin and subcu-
taneous fat to the external oblique muscle. The fibers of the muscle are separated in the direction in which they run (Fig. 14.18B). The internal oblique and the transverse abdominis are separated in the line of their fibers (Fig. 14.18C). At this point, the internal oblique and the transversus abdominis muscles in the same direction and are closely fused. Retractors are avoided, if possible. Instead, the peritoneum should be gently reflected away from the abdominal wall inferiorly and the abscess ex-
tended for extraperitoneal drainage. Thickened indurated tissue may make this step difficult. If the parietal peritoneum is adherent to the peritoneal surface of the abscess, drainage still may be possible without transgressing free space in the peritoneal cavity. The surgeon should avoid con-
taminating the peritoneal cavity with pus, if possible.

The gridiron incision can be used in the lower left quadrant to drain an abscess on the left side of the pelvis as well as to perform sigmoid colostomy. Closure is depicted in Figure 14.18D–E and is best made with a delayed-absorbable suture.

Rockey-Davis Incision

An alternative to the McBurney incision is the Rockey-Davis (or Elliot) incision. It is a transverse incision placed at the junction of the middle and lower thirds of a line extending from the anterosuperior iliac spine to the umbilicus. Medially, the incision extends to the border of the rectus muscle. The peritoneum is incised transversely. This incision has provided satisfactory exposure to pathology in either lower-abdominal quadrant. A similar incision made lower on the abdomen preserves the cosmetic appearance of the abdominal wall.

Incisions for Obese Patients

Obesity, especially when the condition is morbid (>130% of ideal body weight or body mass index >30 kg/m²), presents problems with incision placement and closure. Obesity is a recognized high-risk factor for wound infections and complications. Pitkin observed a 4% wound complication rate in nonobese women undergoing abdominal hysterectomy compared with a 29% rate in obese patients. Krebs and Helmink reported a wound infection rate of 24% in massively obese pa-

The gridiron incision can be used in the left lower quadrant to drain an abscess on the left side of the pelvis as well as to perform sigmoid colostomy. Closure is depicted in Figure 14.18D–E and is best made with a delayed-absorbable suture.

Rockey-Davis Incision

An alternative to the McBurney incision is the Rockey-Davis (or Elliot) incision. It is a transverse incision placed at the junction of the middle and lower thirds of a line extending from the anterosuperior iliac spine to the umbilicus. Medially, the incision extends to the border of the rectus muscle. The peritoneum is incised transversely. This incision has provided satisfactory exposure to pathology in either lower-abdominal quadrant. A similar incision made lower on the abdomen preserves the cosmetic appearance of the abdominal wall.

Incisions for Obese Patients

Obesity, especially when the condition is morbid (>130% of ideal body weight or body mass index >30 kg/m²), presents problems with incision placement and closure. Obesity is a recognized high-risk factor for wound infections and complications. Pitkin observed a 4% wound complication rate in nonobese women undergoing abdominal hysterectomy compared with a 29% rate in obese patients. Krebs and Helmink reported a wound infection rate of 24% in massively obese pa-

The gridiron incision can be used in the left lower quadrant to drain an abscess on the left side of the pelvis as well as to perform sigmoid colostomy. Closure is depicted in Figure 14.18D–E and is best made with a delayed-absorbable suture.

Rockey-Davis Incision

An alternative to the McBurney incision is the Rockey-Davis (or Elliot) incision. It is a transverse incision placed at the junction of the middle and lower thirds of a line extending from the anterosuperior iliac spine to the umbilicus. Medially, the incision extends to the border of the rectus muscle. The peritoneum is incised transversely. This incision has provided satisfactory exposure to pathology in either lower-abdominal quadrant. A similar incision made lower on the abdomen preserves the cosmetic appearance of the abdominal wall.

Incisions for Obese Patients

Obesity, especially when the condition is morbid (>130% of ideal body weight or body mass index >30 kg/m²), presents problems with incision placement and closure. Obesity is a recognized high-risk factor for wound infections and complications. Pitkin observed a 4% wound complication rate in nonobese women undergoing abdominal hysterectomy compared with a 29% rate in obese patients. Krebs and Helmink reported a wound infection rate of 24% in massively obese pa-
Figure 14.18. Gridiron incision. A: Position of incision. B: Fibers of external oblique have been split. C: Internal oblique muscle being split with a Kelly clamp. D: In closing, internal oblique fibers are approximated with figure-of-eight No. 0 delayed-absorbable sutures. E: Aponeurosis of external oblique is closed with continuous or interrupted No. 0 delayed-absorbable sutures.

mass closure (our preference). Subcutaneous sutures are not used, but a Jackson-Pratt or Blake drain is placed anterior to the fascia, after irrigating the tissues with normal saline. This drain is removed in 72 hours or when the output is less than 50 mL per 24 hours. The skin is closed with staples, which are left in place for 2 weeks. Unless small bowel surgery has been done, a nasogastric tube is rarely needed. Gallup’s relatively low wound infection rate in obese patients supports this type of operative management.

Panniculectomy and Abdominoplasty

An alternate surgical approach in the massively obese patient is to remove the large panniculus before the intended pelvic surgery. As observed by Kelly in 1910, wound complications can be avoided and cosmesis can be achieved by this procedure. Exposure to the pelvic organs is certainly improved. In 1978, Pratt and Irons reported on 126 panniculectomies, and 83 of these were performed to facilitate exposure to the surgical field. The average hospital stay was only 14 days, but 34.5% of the patients had some degree of morbidity. In the series by Voss and colleagues, 5 of 76 (6.6%) patients undergoing panniculectomy and hysterectomy developed pulmonary embolism. In another series, investigators encountered excessive blood loss and acknowledged the need for transfusion in combined surgery. More recently, several series have noted the relative safety of combining abdominoplasty with other surgical
procedures. Hopkins and colleagues performed a retrospective review of patients who underwent panniculectomy at the time of gynecological surgery. They identified 78 patients (average weight 278 lb) on whom the procedure was performed. Their infection rate was a laudable 1.3%, with an equally impressive average blood loss of 71 mL. Four of the patients had minimal incisional separations.

As more sophisticated monitoring, better antibiotics, better suture material and techniques, and a safer blood supply have become more available, selective use of combined gynecologic procedures and plastic surgical removal of the panniculus is increasing. In a study of patients who had a mean weight of 261 lb, Morrow et al. found no operative mortality and a mean hospital stay of 8.2 days. Only 11% of the patients required transfusion. The investigators in this series emphasized that the panniculectomy should be performed initially to improve exposure. Although removal of a large panniculus results in better exposure, patient selection for this potentially morbid procedure should be carefully considered. Also, the patient must be counseled and must be strongly motivated to lose weight and change her nutritional habits. If the patient is not committed to these lifestyle changes, it seems impractical to perform an extensive abdominoplasty procedure and incur the associated morbidity.

If the surgical procedure is not urgent, an alternative would be to defer the procedure until the patient has achieved 40% to 50% of the planned weight loss. Patients who have large diastasis recti in association with the panniculus are also candidates for this procedure, at which time plication of the rectus fascia should be performed, either directly or using a "vest-over-pants" layered technique. In many instances, the rectus abdominoplasty is as much a cosmetic and therapeutic benefit to the patient as it is the panniculectomy. When both anatomic conditions exist, the panniculectomy alone does not give a satisfactory surgical result.

Of the various operative techniques available for panniculectomy and abdominoplasty, the elliptical transverse incision, originally described by Kelly, has proved to be the procedure of choice. Two modifications of the transverse panniculectomy can be useful. The most common procedure includes an elliptical "watermelon" incision (Fig. 14.20A), extending from the lateral aspect of the lumbar regions to about 3 to 4 cm above the umbilicus. If the patient requests the preservation of the umbilicus, it can be excised and transplanted to the upper pedicle of skin. However, as shown by Cousin and colleagues, this transplantation can lead to increased wound complications. Inferiorly, the transverse incision follows the con cave skinfold that separates the overhanging panniculus from the suprapubic skin. The underlying fat is excised deeply in a slightly wedged manner, with the deep portion of the fat extending outward and slightly beyond the skin margin to avoid necrosis of the skin edge. Meticulous attention must be given to absolute hemostasis (a time-consuming procedure) to avoid postoperative hematoma formation and infection. The excessive use of cautery, which produces a favorable environment for bacterial growth in devitalized tissue, should be avoided.

The lateral angles of the incision may require separate "V" incisions to avoid the unsightly folds of redundant fat (Fig. 14.20B). When these V-shaped wedges are closed, the angle of the incision is converted into a Y-shaped configuration, which eliminates the excessive skin in the lateral aspects of the abdominal wall. After the removal of the large panniculus, the abdomen can be opened either transversely or vertically. A vertical incision has been advocated to improve exposure. If an abdominoplasty is needed to approximate widely separated rectus muscles, a midline incision is necessary. In this way, a tight closure of the rectus fascia or a vest-over-pants repair, as shown in Figure 14.20D–E, gives additional strength to the abdominal wall. If the rectus fascia is of poor quality and does not provide adequate support to the abdominal wall, a mesh graft can be inserted at the completion of the procedure, either anterior or posterior to the rectus muscle (discussed below). If the fascia of the rectus sheath can be plicated in the midline, wide plication and anchoring of the medial margins of the rectus muscle can be used to close the diastasis, resulting in a firm abdominal wall.

A second type of transverse panniculectomy is a "W" technique, initially described by Regnault in 1973 and shown in Figure 14.20C. The incision is outlined before the operative procedure in the form of a "W" over the symphysis pubis, inside the hairline. The incision is started in the center of the mons pubis and extended laterally and downward on each side to the...
Panniculectomy incisions.

The skin is closed with staples or 3-0 polypropylene interrupted sutures, which are left in place for at least 2 weeks. Rather than being removed all at once, alternate staples can be removed over a period of several days and replaced with adhesive reinforced surgical tape (e.g., Steri-Strips). A firm elastic-based tape dressing (e.g., Elastoplast) is applied under tension over the abdominal wall in a crisscross manner, beginning at the rib cage and extending to the thighs (Fig. 14.20F). This abdominal support relieves tension on the suture line and also prevents seroma and hematoma formation beneath the skin flaps. Another technique is to use an abdominal binder (or multiple binders placed end to end) to support the anterior abdominal wall and prevent seroma and hematoma formation.

**INCISIONS FOR EXTRAPERITONEAL APPROACHES**

Although controversial as a routine surgical procedure, the value of a staging laparotomy to assess paraaortic lymph nodes in patients with advanced stage (IIIb to IV) cervical cancer has been studied extensively over the past two decades. As the stage of disease increases, the incidence of positive paraaortic nodes is progressively higher and has prompted organizations such as the Gynecologic Oncology Group to require paraaortic node sampling before placing patients with advanced cervical cancer on some phase III studies. Serious bowel complications have been observed in cervical cancer patients who have had operative evaluation through a transperitoneal approach followed by radiotherapy. When extraperitoneal approaches to evaluate paraaortic lymph nodes are compared with transperitoneal approaches before radiation therapy, more serious, later occurring small bowel problems are associated with the latter approach (Wharton et al., 1977). To avoid these complications, an extraperitoneal approach has been advocated by means of bilateral superior groin incisions, a unilateral J-shaped incision, or an upper-abdominal incision.

We use the J-shaped incision or the “sunrise” incision for staging. If bulky pelvic nodes are evident or paraaortic nodes contain metastases, these can be removed without entering the peritoneum and may improve patient response to therapy (Downey et al., 1999). Irradiation with concurrent chemotherapycan then be safely used, starting almost immediately.

**J-Shaped Incision**

A modification of the extraperitoneal inguinal incision (a modified Gibson incision) was described in the gynecologic...
Incisions for Gynecologic Surgery

FIGURE 14.21. J-shaped incision on the right is shown in relation to deeper structures, the ureter, iliac vessels, and great vessels. It is initiated about 3 cm cephalad to the umbilicus and is carried inferiorly parallel to the round ligament. (From Gallup DG, Abdominal incisions and closures. In: Gallup DG, Talledo OE, eds. Surgical atlas of gynecologic oncology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1994:43, with permission.)

literature by Berman and colleagues in 1977. These investigators prefer to make the skin incision on the left, because the left paraaortic lymphatic channels are lateral and posterior to the aorta. They believe that it is technically more feasible to dissect the precaval nodes from a left-sided incision if a single incision is to be used for extraperitoneal paraaortic node sampling. We prefer to make the incision on the right, as discussed later.

Access is gained by a vertical incision, starting just cephalad to the umbilicus and 3 cm medial to the right iliac crest. Caudad to the crest, the incision is carried medially, about 3 cm cephalad and parallel to the inguinal ligament (Fig. 14.21). The fascial layers are incised separately (Fig. 14.22). Exposure of the extraperitoneal space is achieved by rolling the peritoneum medially and cephalad (Fig. 14.23). The round ligament and inferior epigastric vessels can be ligated and transected to improve exposure. The paraaortic area is exposed by blunt dissection, and node sampling is performed by removing the precaval fat pad over the vena cava. With a Deaver retractor on the medial and cephalad portion of the incision, paraaortic nodes can be sampled to the level of the inferior mesenteric artery, directly anterior and lateral to the aorta.

In the left-sided approach, left paraaortic node dissection is more easily accomplished. Berman and colleagues described lifting the peritoneum from the underlying vena cava to resect the precaval fat pad. They cautioned that gentle traction must be used when dissecting the precaval nodes to avoid injury to the inferior mesenteric vessels and also suggested that the table should be tilted toward the patient’s right to facilitate dissection.

The inferior vena cava lies relatively posterior to the aorta, and we have experienced technical difficulties in removing precaval nodes through a left-sided approach. In a later updated report from the same institution, Ballon and associates observed that 2 of 95 patients had avulsion of the inferior mesenteric artery (repaired without sequela). In addition to the relative difficulty in sampling right-sided nodes, the lower portion of a J-shaped incision lies in future radiation fields in some patients.

Sunrise Incision

Because there is a delay in initiation of irradiation by some radiation oncologists when a midline incision is used for staging, Gallup and colleagues have subsequently used a suprapubic incision to remove paraaortic nodes extraperitoneally. In this small reported series, the mean number of paraaortic nodes removed was 12.2, and the mean operating time was 111 minutes. All but 2 of 20 patients underwent external-beam irradiation within 2 weeks of the operative procedure (Fig. 14.24).

The sunrise skin incision is initiated in a transverse manner about 4 to 6 cm cephalad to the umbilicus (Fig. 14.25). It is carried laterally in a downward fashion to the level of the iliac
FIGURE 14.22. The previously incised external oblique fascia is shown retracted with small clamps. The internal oblique muscle and transversus abdominis are then sectioned. The fingers of the operator push the peritoneum medial and posterior while these two muscles are sharply incised. The Bovie device is used to transect these muscles, with the fingers of the operator protecting the underlying peritoneum. (From Gallup DG. Abdominal incisions and closures. In: Gallup DG, Talledo OE, eds. Surgical atlas of gynecologic oncology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1994:43, with permission.)

FIGURE 14.23. With the round ligament sectioned, the peritoneum is blindly dissected by the hand of the operator. The psoas muscle is palpated, as is the external iliac artery lying medial to the psoas. The peritoneum is gently swept from lateral and caudal to medial and cephalad. This maneuver easily exposes the psoas muscle and the pelvic vessels. The ureter remains on the medial left of the retracted peritoneum. (From Gallup DG. Abdominal incisions and closures. In: Gallup DG, Talledo OE, eds. Surgical atlas of gynecologic oncology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1994:43, with permission.)
FIGURE 14.24. The sunrise incision made 3 days before this illustration shows Steri-Strips approximating the skin. The radiation field in this postoperative patient has been outlined for early irradiation after a staging procedure for carcinoma of the cervix. (From Gallup DG. Opening and closing the abdomen and wound healing. In: Gershenson D, Curry S, DeCherney A, eds. Operative gynecology. 1st ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1993:127, with permission.)

FIGURE 14.25. For an extraperitoneal approach to paraaortic nodes, we prefer to use the sunrise incision. In the center, this incision is about 6 cm above the umbilicus. The incision is carried laterally and downward to the level of the iliac crests. In the event of palpable bulky disease in the lower common iliac or pelvic nodes, the incision can be extended caudad to remove the nodes. (From Gallup DG. Abdominal incisions and closures. In: Gallup DG, Talledo OE, eds. Surgical atlas of gynecologic oncology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1994:43, with permission.)

crests. Preoperatively, the site of the supraumbilical incision can be estimated and varied by placing a radiopaque object at the level of the umbilicus during intravenous contrast computed tomography (CT) to estimate the level of the bifurcation of the aorta. In this patient, a unilateral incision, usually performed on the right side, can be used, and adequate exposure to both sides of the aorta can be obtained. In the event of bulky disease in the lower common iliac or pelvic nodes, the incision can be extended in a caudad fashion to remove these nodes. The advantage of pelvic node debulking in cervical cancer patients, who were later irradiated, has been reported by Howey and associates.

Once the skin and subcutaneous tissue are incised, the fascia is also incised transversely. After the rectus muscles are dissected free from their attachments to the anterior fascia, they are transected with a Bovie device. In relatively obese patients, the left rectus is also transected for adequate exposure to the left paraaortic nodes. Because the deep epigastric vessels lie posterior to, and in the center of, the rectus muscle at this level, the vessels do not need to be isolated separately. Any bleeding can be controlled with ligation or cautery. With the rectus transected, the transversus abdominis muscle is located on the right and is incised with scissors or cautery. The peritoneum is retracted medially and cephalad by the hand of the surgeon. The incision into the transversus is extended more inferiorly and laterally to complete the transection of this muscle without entering the peritoneum. The fingers of the surgeon stretch the wound to ensure adequate exposure.

The surgeon’s hand is inserted deep into the incision until the psoas and external iliac vessels are palpated. The peritoneum is bluntly dissected from caudad and lateral to cephalad and medial, separating it from the underlying common iliac vessels until the great vessels are exposed. This maneuver is similar to that illustrated in Fig. 14.23, except the peritoneum is swept more cephalad. If the peritoneum is entered during any of these maneuvers, it should be closed immediately. A self-retaining retractor can be inserted to retract the right ureter and ovarian vessels to avoid injury. The precaval nodes, located within the fat pad over the vena cava, are then resected in the usual manner by using vascular clips and scissors and a “clip-cut” technique.
In thin patients, the paraaortic nodes lateral and anterior to the aorta can be removed through a right abdominal approach. If exposure is limited, however, the left rectus muscle can be transected and the peritoneum mobilized from the left side as previously described.

After closure of the fascia, the wound is irrigated with copious amounts of saline. Some investigators prefer to then spray the wound with a combined broad-spectrum antibiotic spray. Vertical interrupted mattress sutures of No. 3 nylon or No. 3 monofilament polypropylene are placed 2 to 3 cm apart. They are loosely tied over dilute povidone-iodine dressing gauze.

If exposure is limited, however, the left rectus muscle can be transected and the peritoneum mobilized from the left side as previously described. If both spaces are opened, the drains are placed bilaterally in the extraperitoneal spaces, with the fascia and skin closed in the usual manner.

### DELAYED PRIMARY CLOSURE AND SECONDARY CLOSURE

The value of delayed primary wound closure in managing possible contaminated wounds has been recognized by military surgeons for many years. In 1968, Grosfeld and Solit reported that patients with perforating appendicitis had a reduction in wound infection rates from 34.1% to 2.3% when delayed closure was used. Similarly, in a high-risk group of patients—which included patients with obesity, cancer, possible contamination from above-and-below procedures, infection, and bowel content contamination—Brown and colleagues found a marked reduction in wound infection rates when delayed primary closure was used compared with immediate closure in matched patients. The infection rate for the former group was 2.1%; for the latter, 23.3%. Possible candidates for such a closure include patients with supplicative appendicitis, ruptured tuboovarian abscess, extensive bowel injury in the unprepared bowel, or diverticulitis with contamination. Delayed closure can also be of value in select patients who have gross incisions associated with cutting and cautery techniques.

After closure of the fascia, the wound is irrigated with copious amounts of saline. Some investigators prefer to then spray the wound with a combined broad-spectrum antibiotic spray. Vertical interrupted mattress sutures of No. 3 nylon or No. 3 monofilament polypropylene are placed 2 to 3 cm apart. They are loosely tied over dilute povidone-iodine dressing gauze. The dressing sponges are changed two to three times a day with a wet-to-dry technique, using sterile saline or 0.1% Dakin’s solution (sodium hypochlorite). Some surgeons use dressings, consisting of rolled gauze on the lateral borders of the incision, to support these sutures. In 4 to 5 days, depending on the appearance of granulation tissue in the subcutaneous tissues, the previously placed sutures are tied to approximate the skin edges. Tincture of benzoin is placed at the lateral edges of the closed incision, and Steri-Strips are used to approximate uneven skin edges.

Alternatively, the skin edges of the incision can be closed with widely spaced staples, “wisking” the intervening spaces with saline-soaked gauze (e.g., Na-gauze or Kerlix strips). Once adequate granulation tissue is present, the skin edges can be reaproximated with nonabsorbable monofilament sutures and local lidocaine at the patient’s bedside before discharge from the hospital.

### COMPLETE WOUND DEHISCENCE AND EVISCERATION

Technically, wound dehiscence means separation of all layers of the abdominal incision, but wound dehiscence has been
The bowel and omentum should be inspected and thoroughly moved, and aerobic and anaerobic cultures should be obtained.

Electrolyte studies should be obtained.

Necrotic tissue clots and suture material should be re-securing it with an abdominal binder. Broad-spectrum antibiotics should be initiated, and baseline blood counts and serum electrolyte studies to avoid abdominal distention, and broad-spectrum antibiotics should be continued and modified according to culture results.

Incisions for Gynecologic Surgery

Eviscerations usually occur from day 5 to 14 after operation, with a mean of about 8 days. One of the early signs of complete dehiscence and impending evisceration is the seepage of serosanguineous pink discharge from an apparently intact wound. It can be present for several days before evisceration occurs. Although occult hematomas are usually the cause of such discharge, these wounds need to be examined carefully by probing with a cotton-tipped swab to assess the integrity of the fascial closure. Frequently, the patient is conscious of something giving way, “tearing” or “popping” immediately before the burst abdomen becomes clinically apparent.

With few exceptions, complete dehiscence or eviscerations should be closed as soon as they are recognized. In case of evisceration, when a delay of several hours is anticipated because of a recent meal, the bowel can be replaced by using sterile gloves, gently packing it in place with lap pads soaked in saline, and through silver wire and preferably No. 2 polypropylene sutures. All layers are incorporated.

Secondary closure of an evisceration with through-and-through silver wire and preferably No. 2 polypropylene sutures. B: All layers are incorporated.

Cleaned with several liters of warm normal saline. If the fascial margins can be located and are not ragged, a Smead-Jones closure (Fig. 14.16) with large-bore polypropylene or nylon can be used. The subcutaneous tissue and skin are packed open for later delayed closure or VAC placement.

If the wound edges are ragged or the patient’s condition is poor, a through-and-through retention suture of No. 2 nylon or polypropylene is used. The sutures are placed at least 2.5 to 3 cm from the skin edges and are passed through all layers. To allow for edema, they are placed 2 cm apart (Fig. 14.26). To prevent inclusion of the underlying intestine in a suture, all sutures are held up before the first one is tied. Skin edges un-opposed between the through-and-through sutures can be approximated with interrupted 3.0 polypropylene. The through-and-through sutures should be left in place for 3 weeks. A nasogastric tube should be used in the immediate postoperative period to avoid abdominal distention, and broad-spectrum antibiotics should be continued and modified according to culture results.

INCISIONAL HERNIA

Incomplete healing of an operative wound will result in an incisional hernia. In this situation, the peritoneum remains intact,
and the fascial margins and adjacent muscles separate, leaving a defect beneath the subcutaneous tissue into which the bowel may herniate. Causes of herniation are similar to those of evisceration; however, the skin, subcutaneous tissue, and peritoneum remain intact. Most cases of ventral hernia follow an incisional infection, weakening the supporting tissues. Increased intraabdominal pressure from coughing and vomiting, along with necrosis of the fascial margins, permits the sutures to pull through the edge of the fascia. These changes result in separation of the wound edges and failure of fibroblastic bridging of the fascia. This complication occurs more frequently in lower-abdominal incisions because of the anatomic deficit of the posterior fascial sheet beneath the rectus in the area inferior to the semicircular line. Ventral hernias occur after low midline incisions in about 0.5% to 1% of all gynecologic operations, with the incidence rising to about 10% after a wound infection. Similarly, reclosure after dehiscence increases the chance of herniation formation to about 2.5%.

Although the initial fascial defect may be small, the size of the resultant hernia can assume varying proportions and involve the entire length of the lower-abdominal wall. The size of the hernia depends on the mobility of the bowel and omen tum and the final aperture size of the ventral defect. A large amount of small bowel and omentum can escape from a small fascial defect into an easily expandable subcutaneous space. The smaller the fascial defect through which small bowel can herniate, the greater the frequency of incarceration, obstruction, and infarction. Patients with ventral hernias often report lower-abdominal discomfort, and with large ventral hernias, the abdominal wall is distended to varying degrees (Fig. 14.27). Patients with large hernias may note bowel peristalsis beneath the skin and report that the bulge becomes smaller when they are in a recumbent position. The hernia is more noticeable during coughing and straining and can increase in size over time because of enlargement of the hernial ring or incorporation of additional segments of bowel into the hernial sac. Rarely, a ventral hernia produces acute symptoms of visceral torsion, incarceration, and infarction. Repair of the hernia is preferably done on an elective basis.

**Surgical Management of Small Hernias**

The principles of ventral hernia repair include (a) dissection of the hernia sac from the subcutaneous fat, rectus fascia, and peritoneal margin; (b) excision of the redundant hernia (peritoneal) sac; and (c) closure of the abdominal wound, using a layer-for-layer closure, an overlap repair of the rectus fascia, or the placement of a synthetic mesh prosthesis. The low midline incisional scar is excised, and the underlying subcutaneous fat is mobilized free from the adjacent hernia sac. Sharp dissection is used to separate the skin and underlying fat widely from the margins of the hernia sac (Fig. 14.28A). The surgeon should defer opening the sac until the boundaries of the hernia have been delineated and dissected, because this aids in identifying the various tissue planes. To identify the margins of the fascial ring, it is advisable to open the sac and separate any underlying bowel from the peritoneal surface of the sac (Fig. 14.28B). Loops of small bowel and adherent omentum frequently obscure the true identity of the sac, and many pockets of the peritoneal lining are formed by fibrous bands that anchor the bowel to the peritoneum. After releasing the omentum and bowel, with particular attention given to hemostasis, it is important to determine whether the hernia defect can be adequately closed with the adjacent fascia before excising the line of the sac. If adequate fascial tissue remains after the dissection, either a layer-for-layer or an overlap fascial closure should be done. If inadequate fascia is available to close, the defect must be bridged with a synthetic mesh. However, most incisional hernias can be closed without the use of a mesh support. When there has been failure of an initial hernia repair, when the hernia defect is so large that the edges cannot be adequately approximated, or when the tissues of the abdominal wall are attenuated, the use of synthetic mesh is strongly advised.

The layer-for-layer closure is accomplished after closure of the peritoneum as the initial layer. The fascial margins of the anterior rectus sheath are then sutured with nonabsorbable or delayed absorbable suture (Fig. 14.28C). Interrupted far-near, near-far pulley sutures (modified Smead-Jones) that include the inner margin of the abdominal musculature are placed to avoid subsequent pull-through of the suture from the edge of the incision. These sutures serve as internal stay sutures and increase the tensile strength of the wound while healing takes place. When there is adequate fascial margin of good strength, a vest-over-pants closure gives extra support to the defect and produces a double-layer closure of the fascia (Fig. 14.28D). The surgeon should separate the peritoneum and posterior rectus sheath from the hernia margins to permit an overlap of the anterior fascia. The peritoneum is closed separately with a continuous suture of No. 2-0 delayed-absorbable suture of polyglactin material. The anterior rectus sheath of the hernia margins is separated widely on each side of the wound. Horizontal mattress sutures of a permanent suture (such as polypropylene) are placed 3 to 4 cm distant from the fascial edge and pass through the free margin of the opposite fascia before returning to the distal portion of the anterior fascia. The sutures are held until all sutures have been placed. When the sutures are tied, the free fascial margin is drawn firmly beneath the opposite fascial layer, producing a double support to the hernia closure. The
**FIGURE 14.28.** Repair of ventral hernia. A: Wide dissection of subcutaneous fat from the lateral boundaries of the hernia. B: The hernial sac is opened, and adherent bowel and omentum are released from the peritoneal surface. C: Layer-by-layer closure of midline ventral hernia. Redundant hernial sac has been excised, and the fascial margins are sutured by far-near, near-far technique. A crown stitch at the lower pole anchors the apex of the defect to the lateral fascial margins. When possible, the peritoneum is closed as a separate layer. D: The vest-over-pants technique of midline hernia repair. The peritoneum is separated from hernia and closed. The anterior rectus fascia is dissected widely, and horizontal mattress sutures are placed distant from fascial edge and passed through the opposite fascial margin. When the sutures are tied, the fascial margins are drawn firmly beneath the opposite layer, producing a double-fascial layer closure of hernia. E: Completion of a vest-over-pants closure of midline ventral hernia, showing suture of the free margin of the fascial flap to the underlying fascial surface. Perforated plastic closed-suction drainage tubes are sutured to the fascia to permit adequate drainage.
Closure of large ventral hernia by using synthetic mesh. A: Attenuated margins of hernial sac have been freed and excised. The rectus muscles are widely separated from the underlying margins of the hernia, which include fused peritoneum and posterior fascia. The rectus margins are outlined (dashed line). B: A synthetic mesh is placed between the rectus muscle and the closed layer of peritoneum and posterior rectus sheath. Replacement of sutures through the rectus muscle and anchoring of mesh to the posterior sheath can be accomplished without entering the peritoneal cavity (inset). C: Closure of rectus muscles or fascia over mesh prosthesis by using a far-near, near-far suture. The margins of the mesh show the width of the permanent hernial support.
In the fascial partition method, relaxing incisions are made through the external oblique (EO) and transverse abdominis (TA) muscles. These relaxing incisions are made lateral to the rectus musculature, from the level of the lowest rib to the inguinal ligament. Further dissection is carried as far as possible (Fig. 14.31B). Once adequately mobilized, the peritoneum and fascia are closed in a Smead-Jones fashion (Fig. 14.31A). The sliding myofascial flap uses relaxing incisions in the external oblique fascia only (Fig. 14.31A). These relaxing incisions are made lateral to the rectus musculature, from the level of the lowest rib to the inguinal ligament. Further dissection is completed with a combination of blunt and sharp dissection and carried as far as possible (Fig. 14.31B). Once adequately mobilized, the peritoneum and fascia are closed in a Smead-Jones fashion (Fig. 14.31C).

Should the subcutaneous tissues be “wet,” a closed-suction drainage system may be placed longitudinally on either side of the fascial incision and the subcutaneous fat and skin closed separately. Suction is applied to the drainage tubes to give negative pressure beneath the skin and prevent elevation of the skin flaps by serum or blood. The drains may be removed by day 3 but must be left in place until there has been complete cessation of incisional drainage.

Postoperatively, the patient is ambulated on the day after surgery, without prolonged bed rest. The abdominal incision should be protected from excessive strain (e.g., coughing) by use of an elastic abdominal binder. If the bowel becomes distended, the use of nasogastric tube decompression should be considered (but is rarely needed). Prophylactic antibiotics are used perioperatively to prevent secondary infection in the operative site and are particularly useful in patients in whom mesh has been used for closure of a large hernia defect. Alternatively, many incisional hernias are being repaired by general surgeons using a laparoscopic approach rather than reincision.
Adequate exposure is just as important with vaginal surgery as it is with abdominal surgery. When exposure is not adequate with abdominal operations, the incision is extended, or some other measure is used to improve exposure. Certain measures also can improve exposure with vaginal operations. A tight vaginal introitus may restrict exposure of the upper vagina but can be enlarged at the beginning of the operation by making a midline or mediolateral episiotomy incision. A mediolateral incision can be made on one or both sides of the vaginal introitus. If a midline episiotomy is made and closed transversely, the vaginal introitus can be made larger than before, if that is deemed advisable. These incisions can be closed with 2-0 or 3-0 delayed-absorbable suture.

Sometimes the entire vagina is small in caliber because of virginity or nulliparity, atrophic shrunken vaginal mucosa, previous colporrhaphy, or previous irradiation or disease. The vaginal vault may be fixed in a relatively high position, with relatively little descensus. Because adequate exposure through the vagina may be impossible, some operations may require an abdominal approach. On the other hand, required exposure may be obtained by making a Schuchardt incision. The entire vagina can be enlarged with this incision, achieving remarkable improvement in exposure of the upper vagina. Therefore, a patient whose problem might otherwise have necessitated an abdominal approach can have the advantage of a perfectly satisfactory vaginal operation if a Schuchardt incision is made.

According to Speert (1958), Langenbeck made a deep relaxing incision into the perineal body in attempting vaginal hysterectomy for uterine cancer in 1828. Similar incisions were used by Oldhaussen in 1881 and Duhrssen in 1891. Karl Schuchardt described his incision in 1893:

\[\text{to make more accessible from below a uterus whose mobility is limited. . . . With the patient in the lithotomy position and her buttocks elevated, a large, essentially sagittal incision is made, somewhat convex externally, beginning between the middle and posterior third of the labium majus, . . . extending posterior toward the sacrum, and stopping two fingerbreaths [sic] from the anus. The wound is deepened only in the fatty tissue of the ischiorectal fossa, leaving the funnel of the levator ani muscle, the rectum behind it, and the sacral ligaments intact. Internally, the sidewall of the vagina is opened into the ischiorectal fossa and the vagina divided in its lateral aspect by a long incision extending up to the cervix. There thus results a surprisingly free view of all the structures under consideration.}\]

The incision is ordinarily made on the patient’s left side by a right-handed operator (Fig. 14.32). A left-handed operator may find it technically easier to make the incision on the patient’s right side. Bilateral incisions have been advocated in extreme cases. The side on which the incision is made may be dictated by the location of the pathology to be removed. Injection of the tissues to be incised with sterile saline solution can be helpful, especially beneath the vaginal mucosa in the line of the incision. The assistant pulls upward to the left with the index finger placed as deep as possible in the vagina just to the left of the urethra. The operator makes countertraction.
AB

FIGURE 14.32. A. The Schuchardt incision begins at the 4-o’clock position in the vaginal introitus and extends into the buttock and up the posterolateral wall of the vagina to the cervix. B. The ischiorectal fossa fat is exposed. The puborectalis muscle is divided. The left paravesical and pararectal spaces can be exposed through the incision.

by placing two fingers in the vagina and pulling downward to the right. This pull and counterpull in opposite directions stretches the left vaginal wall. The incision is made with the electrosurgical unit beginning at the 4-o’clock position at the introitus and extending downward in the skin of the buttck to the level of the anus. The incision is then carried upward through the vaginal mucosa into the upper third of the vagina. As the incision is deepened, the fingers of the operator’s left hand are used to displace the rectum medially to protect it from injury. The ischiorectal fossa fat is visible below the puborectalis muscle, which is incised with the electrosurgical knife (Fig. 14.32). If necessary, the left paravesical space can be developed. For the best possible exposure, the apex of the vaginal incision should intersect any incision made around the cervix, achieving hemostasis by coagulation or ligation.

At the end of the operation, the Schuchardt incision is closed with 2-0 and 3-0 delayed-absorbable sutures, attempting to reapproximate the puborectalis muscle edges and to obliterate the dead space in the ischiorectal fossa. Drainage of these incisions is usually not necessary.

The Schuchardt incision most often is used for extensive vaginal hysterectomy for early invasive cervical cancer. We also have used it when performing extensive dissections to remove endometriosis in the vaginal vault, to gain better exposure for difficult vaginal hysterectomy or vesicovaginal fistula repair, to repair injuries to the lower ureter, to remove organized hematomas just above the puborectalis muscle, to drain lymphoceles vaginally, or to remove benign cystic teratomas in the lower presacral area behind the rectum. It can convert a technically difficult, complicated, and dangerous vaginal operation into one that is simple, easy, and safe. It is difficult to understand why perineotomy incisions are so quickly performed for obstetric operations and so reluctantly for gynecologic operations.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

During counseling for surgery, location of the incision, rationale, and any potential complications must be presented to the patient.

Fascial closures (of midline and some transverse incisions) should be accomplished with delayed absorbable monofilament suture. Plain catgut or chromic catgut should never be used for fascial closures.

Closed drainage systems (i.e., Jackson-Pratt or Blake) should be used when drains are considered. Passive drains, such as Penrose drains, should not be used.

To prevent surgical site infections, hair removal should be done by clipping and not by shaving.

Monofilament sutures should be tied with either three square knots (six throws) or one surgeon’s knot and two square knots (four throws).

For superficial dehiscence, consider delayed closure or vacuum-assisted device closure over secondary-intention closure with wet to dry dressing changes for improved patient healing. Delayed closure in the office may be less expensive and more convenient for the patient compared to VAC.
Cruse PJE. Infection surveillance: identifying the problem and the high-risk pa-
Cox PJ, Ausobsky JR, Ellis H, et al. Towards no incisional hernias: lateral para-
Brown SE, Allen HH, Robins RN. The use of delayed primary wound closure in
Gallup DG. Extraperitoneal and transperitoneal approaches for removal of
Archie JP, Feldman RW. Primary wound closure with permanent continuous
Averette HE, Dudan RC, Ford JH. Exploratory celiotomy for surgical staging of
Gallup DG, Nolan TE, Smith RP. Primary mass closure of midline incisions with a
Galle PC, Homesley HD, Rhyne AL. Reassessment of the surgical scrub.
Galloph DG. Extraperitoneal and transperitoneal approaches for removal of
Ellis H, Heddle R. Does the peritoneum need to be closed at laparotomy?
Dougherty SH, Simmons RL. The biology of surgical drains.
Gallup DG. Modification of celiotomy techniques to decrease morbidity in obese
Galle PC, Homesley HD, Rhyne AL. Reassessment of the surgical scrub.
Helmkamp BF, Krebs HB, Anson MC. Correct use of surgical drains.
Hodges NC, Matheus RA, Ondrey T. The search for an ideal method of ab-
Hendriksen MJ, Morales L. Wound healing, operative incisions, and skin grafts.
Helmkamp BF, Krebs HB, Anson MC. Correct use of surgical drains.
Helmkamp BF, Krebs HB, Anson MC. Correct use of surgical drains.
Helmkamp BF, Krebs HB, Anson MC. Correct use of surgical drains.
Helmkamp BF, Krebs HB, Anson MC. Correct use of surgical drains.
Helmkamp BF, Krebs HB, Anson MC. Correct use of surgical drains.


Plantefather FA. Use of the extraperitoneal fascia lata graft for sacral resection for the gynecological fistulae. Sammel Ritter Verlag (Leipzig) 1928;113:773.


CHAPTER 15 ■ PRINCIPLES OF ELECTROSURGERY AS APPLIED TO GYNECOLOGY

RICHARD M. SODERSTROM AND ANDREW L. BRILL

DEFINITIONS

Active electrode monitoring—Technique of placing a sleeve around the electrode to detect stray energy and to carry the induced energy to ground. Stray energy generally occurs from breaks in insulation or capacitive coupling.

Ammeter—Device that measures the amount of current flowing through a conductor at a specific moment.

Amper—Quantity of electrons that move through a conductor over time (coulombs per second).

Bipolar—Type of electrode or electrical delivery system in which the active and passive electrodes are of similar sizes and, thus, similar current densities. The bipolar generators are usually calibrated against a 100-V load of resistance.

BLEND—Term used when the electrical current is interrupted between 20% and 50% of the time.

Capacitance or capacitive coupling—Ability of two conductors to transmit or receive electrical flow while separated by an insulator; one conductor carries the active current and induces a separate current in the nearby conductor. In general, it occurs in monopolar circuits consisting of two metal plates or tubes separated by air or another insulator. It does not occur during bipolar electrosurgery.

COAG—Term used to describe an interrupted electrical current. In some generators, the period of interruption of current flow can be adjusted from 10% to 50%. At the same power settings, the voltage of the waveform is always higher than it is with CUT waveforms.

Coulomb—Measure of a quantity of electrons.

Current (power) density—Surface area of an electrode in contact with tissue during electrical flow. The smaller the spot of contact, the greater is the heat effect for the same amount of time, increasing by the square root of the area of contact.

Current rate (amperes)—Flow rate of a quantity (coulombs) of electrons.

Direct coupling—Occurs when two conductive materials in the same circuit touch during electrical activation or are close enough that arcing can occur. A break in the insulation of an electrode that allows sparking to tissue is an example of direct coupling.

Edge density—Affinity of electrons to concentrate at the edges of flat or irregularly shaped electrodes as they exit the electrode. This feature enhances the cutting ability of blade-shaped electrodes.

Electricity—Movement of electrons between two oppositely charged poles, positive and negative.

Electrocautery—Transfer of energy by heat, such as a hot wire. Electrons do not move into the affected tissue; only heat is transferred.

Electrosurgery—Transfer of energy from an electrosurgical generator to tissue by means of energy packets (electrons).

Energy (joules)—Quantity of work produced over time. Energy (joules) equals work (watts) multiplied by time (seconds).

Faradic effect—Electrical stimulation of muscle responding to a frequency of electrical current that is less than 100,000 cycles per second.

Fulguration—Intentional application of sparks to tissue surface to coagulate surface bleeding. The COAG waveform is preferable.

Heat (thermal energy)—Produced as electrons move from the low resistance of an electrosurgical probe to the high resistance of tissue. This energy may boil (vaporize) or denature (coagulate) tissue, depending on the extent and rapidity with which heat is generated.

Hybrid laparoscopic trocar sleeve—Conductive trocar sleeve used in laparoscopy that is covered by an outer non-conductive locking sleeve.

Impedance (ohms)—Resistance to flow of electrons through a conductor. Although resistance refers to direct current through a uniform wire, such as copper, it is generally substituted for impedance. Impedance is correctly applied with changes in voltage (alternating or fluctuating), frequency (modulating or demodulating), or tissue type (lipid membranes, soft tissue, fibrous tissue, fat, muscle, bone, or artificial appliances). It can measure the combination of tissue resistance and capacitance. Impedance in human tissue is generally 100 to 1,000 V in the fallopian tube, it is 400 to 500 V.

Isolation ground circuitry—Safety feature that uses transformers not in contact with the parent generator so that the induced electrical flow “floats” its own separate circuit. If a break in the floating circuit occurs, all energy within that circuit stops and does not seek ground.

Kilohertz (kHz)—Measure representing 1,000 cycles of radio waves per second.
**Principles of Electrosurgery as Applied to Gynecology**

**Monopolar**—Type of electrode or electrical system in which the active electrode is small (high current density) and the passive electrode is large (low current density). Most monopolar generators are calibrated against a 500-V load of 2 million cycles per second in electrosurgery.

**Open circuit**—State in which a generator is activated before the active electrode touches tissue. This promotes higher voltage, especially in the COAG mode, than activating the generator after touching the tissue. Open circuitry is used to start fulguration.

**Patient return electrode (grounding pad)**—Large conductive pad (low current density) placed on the patient to complete an electric circuit.

**Return-electrode monitoring**—Dual-padded patient return-electrode system designed to monitor irregular separation of the ground pad.

**Sparking (arcing, fulguration)**—Result of electrical flow through gas (air, argon).

**Vaporizing**—Raising the cellular temperature rapidly above 100°C, which causes cell rupture, releasing steam.

**Watts (work)**—Amount of work produced by electron flow (current). Work (watts) equals force (volts) multiplied by current rate (amperes).

**Waveform**—Oscillating characteristic of an alternating electrical current from positive to negative.

**Waveform frequency**—Number of oscillations of an alternating electrical current, usually between 350,000 and 4 million cycles per second in electrosurgery.

Usually, little attention is paid to the applied principles of electrical physics when surgeons receive their formal training. Most training programs consider electrosurgery a skill acquired by the student through hands-on exposure, and the average faculty knowledge in the biophysical principles of electrosurgery is awarded through a “grandfather” process of credentialing. As a result, many myths about the risks of electrosurgery have been perpetrated during the past decades. Furthermore, the absence of fundamental knowledge handicaps the potential to transform science into art. The modern electrosurgical generator (ESU) is a finely tuned solid-state instrument that offers the student through hands-on exposure, and the average faculty knowledge in the biophysical principles of electrosurgery.

**Electrical Physics**

**Voltage (volts)**—Force (pressure) driving current.

**Electric current**—Number of oscillations of an alternating electrical current.

**Watts (work)**—Amount of work produced by electron flow (current). Work (watts) equals force (volts) multiplied by current rate (amperes).

**Electric power**—Result of electrical flow. Electric power equals work (watts) divided by time (seconds).

**Electric energy**—Amount of work produced by electron flow (current). Energy (joules) equals force (volts) multiplied by work (watts) multiplied by time (seconds).

**Basic Electrical Definitions**

**Electrons** are particles of energy that, when pushed (or passed) through human tissue perform work, thereby causing heat and incision. Voltage is the pressure force required to push electrons. The standard unit of measure of this electrical pressure is 1 V. Thus, in drawing an analogy of electricity to water, an electron is to a molecule of water what voltage is to water pressure.

**Water** is the volume of electrons is measured in coulombs. In the early 1970s, electrosurgery was the main energy source used during laparoscopy, and it was used with great efficacy, even though most procedures were typically sterilization and simple adhesiolysis. Anecdotal reports of bowel injuries presumed to be secondary to “sparking” of monopolar energy prompted several investigators to develop bipolar instrumentation, as they asserted these tools would reduce the bowel injuries caused by the monopolar technique. By 1980, bipolar electrosurgery had become a standard part of the surgical armamentarium of most laparoscopic surgeons. In parallel, laser instrumentation specifically designed for endoscopic procedures became available, and postgraduate education in their application became commonplace, temporarily relegating electrosurgery as a backup method. Despite the early promises of laser surgery, surgical injuries formerly attributed to monopolar electrosurgery have persisted; no study to date has demonstrated a reduction in laparoscopic complications, especially bowel injuries, in step with changes from bipolar electrosurgery to laser technology.

Near the end of the 1980s, general surgeons recognized the advantages of laparoscopic surgery, especially for cholecystectomy, and quickly became frustrated by several limitations of contemporary lasers, returning to electrosurgical generators for comparatively more versatility and power. The manufacturers responded quickly with the production of solid-state generators specifically designed for endoscopic use. Each energy source capable of destroying tissue can, in specific circumstances, lead to a surgical complication that may be unique to that energy source. But a watt is a watt, and when the output of energy of any source is matched for power density, power output in wattage, and for the same amount of time (joules), the same tissue injury occurs. Although many hazards attendant to an energy source such as electrosurgery can be reduced and managed, not all can be eliminated. Surgeons are expected to be familiar with their surgical tools and appreciate the variables inherent in each technology.
Electrophysics Definitions Equated to a Hydraulic Analogue

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electrical concept</th>
<th>Electrical unit</th>
<th>Equation</th>
<th>Hydraulic analogue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Energy</td>
<td>Joule</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charge</td>
<td>Coulomb</td>
<td>(6.3 \times 1,018) electrons</td>
<td>Volume (mass)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Watt</td>
<td>Joules/second</td>
<td>Power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage</td>
<td>Volt</td>
<td>Joules/coulomb</td>
<td>Pressure difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current</td>
<td>Ampere</td>
<td>Coulombs/second</td>
<td>Flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impedance</td>
<td>Ohm</td>
<td>Volts/ampere</td>
<td>Resistance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Electrocautery is not electrosurgery; it is a term frequently misused when physicians actually mean electrosurgery. Electrocautery involves use of a direct electrical current to heat a metal conductor with a high resistance, which makes the metal physically hot. Tissue is then directly heated or cauterized by touching the hot metal object to tissue. In contemporary surgery, few instruments employ the principles of electrocautery, because it affords no precise control over thermal effects. Electrosurgery involves manipulating electrons through living tissue by using a high-frequency alternating current with enough current concentration (current density) to create heat within a tissue cell to destroy tissue. Electrosurgical generators are machines that produce an alternating current of electricity at a frequency that does not stimulate muscle activity (500,000 to 3 million cycles per second). Whereas direct current flows in one direction only, alternating current flows to and fro, first increasing to a maximum in one direction and then increasing to a maximum in the other direction. This sinusoidal waveform can be interrupted or varied, which create different surgical effects.

The output waveform of alternating current has a negative and a positive excursion, or peak. As it passes through each cell, the electrolytic polarity is agitated, creating cellular heat (Fig. 15.1). Thus, as opposed to direct heating by electrocautery, thermal effects of electrosurgery are a secondary thermodynamic phenomenon. The measurement from zero polarity to positive or negative polarity is called the peak voltage of the waveform (the relation is the same for peak current). The measurement from plus peak to negative peak, which is twice peak voltage, is called peak-to-peak voltage. For historical reasons alone, a pure CUT current is a simple sinusoidal (undamped, uninterrupted, or nonmodulated) waveform that is produced by continuous output (Fig. 15.2), whereas a waveform produced by highly interrupted (modulated or damped) output is called COAG current (Fig. 15.3).

When there is a continuous current or waveform, the peak voltage need not be as high as with the COAG waveform to create the same wattage (i.e., power is conserved regardless of the degree of current interruption). However, when a coagulation effect must be enhanced, the interrupted COAG waveform is preferable and is created by pushing higher energy bursts of electrons through the tissue. The cooling effect of the current off time between bursts facilitates the coagulation effect. For an instant, with the interrupted waveform, a comparatively higher peak voltage than the uninterrupted waveform is present within the electrical circuit. Most electrosurgical generators also provide BLEND current, which does not result from combined CUT and COAG waveforms, as is commonly thought. Rather, the BLEND current is a waveform that is interrupted at variable intervals, delivering variable degrees of coagulating and cutting properties (Fig. 15.4). The degree to which the BLEND mode cuts or coagulates depends on the relative time interval that the current is on or off. Thus, one of the tissue effects of electrosurgery depends on the various modes of delivering electric current (Fig. 15.5).
MONOPOLAR ELECTROSURGERY

As electrons, pushed with a given voltage, are concentrated in one specific location, heat within the tissue increases rapidly. This concentration is defined as current density. The traditional diathermy generator, an example of equipment using this principle, is familiar to many physicians. Electrons are passed through the body by applying two large metal conductors or plates, of equal size, on opposite sides of the tissue to be heated. The electrons are pushed through the plate called the active electrode and then received on the other plate, the return (neutral) electrode or ground plate, as they pass through a myriad of circuits through the interposed tissues. Once the electrons enter the body (conductor), they are dispersed through the tissue toward the pathways of least resistance to the return electrode. Because current is dispersed over the entire surface area of both plates (low current density), any generated heat is of low intensity and below the burn threshold. However, if either plate is significantly reduced in size, current density (and thus heat) is correspondingly increased and a burn may then occur (Fig. 15.6).

Thus, an active electrode that concentrates current of high current density creates a burn where current enters the body; similarly, a burn will occur if this current is conducted out the body via a return electrode of small contact area (high current density). Like water, electrons flow through the path of least resistance. If tissue resistance is high but the corresponding voltage pressure is low, the current may cease to flow or may search out alternate pathways with lower resistance. When the voltage is increased, the electrons have more “push” to find an alternate pathway, such as through a vital structure where the current is concentrated, or they might seek out an alternate return electrode, like a cardiac monitor electrode. Therefore, the surgeon should use the lowest voltage necessary to accomplish a given task and must ensure that the dispersive electrode is in good contact with the patient and broad enough to reduce current density far below the level of tissue burning. Contemporay electrosurgical generators with isolated ground circuitry systems and/or return-electrode sentinel systems preclude alternate pathways and are preferable when an ineffective or incomplete return path is present.

ELECTROSURGICAL GENERATORS

Significant differences exist among electrosurgical generators. In general, instrumentation set by a number dial is calibrated to peak voltage rather than power output, as is typically found in generators that have a digital liquid-crystal display window showing the output in watts. To determine the wattage output with dial-a-number generators, the operator must refer to an output graph found in the manufacturer’s manual; some generators have these output curves imprinted on the top of
284 Principles of Gynecologic Surgical Techniques and Management of Endoscopy

FIGURE 15.5. A pure cutting/desiccation (CUT), interrupted electrical current (COAG), and BLEND set at 50 W. As the generator is switched from one waveform to another, the voltage must change to match the designated power output. The voltage increases from CUT to BLEND to COAG.

the generator box (Fig. 15.7). The power output set by the manufacturer is the power available at the start of the electrosurgical process; however, this power output decreases as tissue impedance progressively increases during the heating of cellular fluids. Hence, the power output measurement of each generator is calibrated against a fixed resistance. For monopolar use, most generators are calibrated against a 500-V load; for bipolar use, the load is usually set at 100 V (Fig. 15.8).

Each electrosurgical generator has its own power output characteristics; the proper settings can be found with attention to the manual and with experience.

For general surgical use, most generators can produce a maximum of 8,000 V in the COAG mode. An 8,000-V pressure can push electrons 3 mm through room air under certain atmospheric conditions, which means that arcing to distant tissue is improbable; most of the time, electrosurgical generators are used in the 1,000- to 3,000-V range. The waveform frequency is set above 350,000 cycles per second to prevent muscle stimulation. At frequencies below 100,000 cycles per second, tetanic muscle contraction can occur, which is known as the faradic effect and is undesirable. The higher the frequency of the generator output, the more “leakage” of current occurs, which can enhance the induction of current on nearby conductors by capacitance, potentially harmful during certain endoscopic procedures.

Most contemporary generators offer an isolated ground circuitry system to reduce the risk of monopolar energy seeking an alternative pathway to ground; older-model generators are known as ground-referenced generators. With an isolated or “floating” ground system, the electricity delivered to the patient and returned to the generator is created by an induction of current in transformers that are insulated or isolated from the frame of the generator. When a break in the circuit occurs, the electrons do not seek ground, and thus, no current flows. This also reduces the risk of an aberrant burn to the surgeon, unless the surgeon is leaning against the patient, thus becoming part of the isolated circuit.

Return-electrode safety systems use disposable return electrodes (called ground pads), which are usually composed of two conductive pads placed side by side. Built-in monitors, through low-impedance feedback to the generators, measure pad-to-skin contact stability and power-density contact by measuring the balance of contact between the two adjacent pads. If there is an imbalance or poor contact to the patient leading to higher current density, an alarm sounds, and the generator output is automatically terminated. The return electrode should be oriented so that each pad is at equal distance from the operating site and in close proximity and the largest edge faces the operative site.

The basic principles of safety during electrosurgery include the following:

1. Avoid arcing electrosurgical energy to a hemostat during coaptive coagulation: Always touch the hemostat first, and then initiate energy. Place electrode pencils in their safety holster when not in use.
2. Use a monitored return-electrode system (frequently referred to as a REM system). Place return electrode pads with the longest edge close to the operative site on a non-dependent, clean, dry, shaved area, avoiding bony prominence and scar tissue. Use the right-sized pad for the patient, but never cut a pad to size.
3. Select the lowest voltage that will create the desired effect. Activate CUT for all desiccation procedures; use COAG for fulguration procedures.
4. Activate the electrode in short bursts (over 3 seconds).
5. Use the manufacturer’s recommended connection cables. Never use metal towel clips to attach cables to drapes, as leakage current in the form of capacitance can cause a skin burn.
6. Inspect instrument insulation before each use.
7. If the patient has a pacemaker, get advice from the pacemaker representative before using monopolar energy. Consider using bipolar electrosurgery.

8. If the usual power settings are inadequate, do not increase the power until the circuit is checked, especially the contact of the return electrode.

**BIPOLAR ELECTROSURGERY**

As mentioned earlier, in monopolar electrosurgery, a ground plate or return (dispersive) electrode carries the flowing electrons back to the generator after they have passed through the patient. The electrons are first focused by the active or efferent electrode to a point of high current density generating temperatures sufficient to burn tissue, and then dispersed over the larger surface area of the return electrode, where any thermal effects are well below the threshold for burning.

The bipolar system incorporates an active (efferent) electrode and a return (afferent) electrode into a two-poled instrument, such as forceps or scissors. This eliminates the need for a ground plate, allowing the instrument to produce a high current density at each pole of the forceps (Fig. 15.9). This permits a discrete amount of desiccation that is confined primarily to the shape and size of the forceps in contact with the tissue, and eliminates the chance of stray or alternate pathways.

Although these advantages over monopolar electrosurgery seem obvious, several restrictions unique to bipolar electrosurgery need to be appreciated. First, the load of impedance (tissue resistance) used to calibrate power output is usually several times lower than that with monopolar modes in contemporary generators. In a generator that has an output-selection knob measuring volts rather than watts, the bipolar output of energy is many watts less than the same setting in the monopolar side of the generator. In generators that read power output in watts, the impedance load is three to five times less than the load used to calibrate monopolar output, so the tissue effect may be much less than the same output reading for monopolar. Therefore, in most situations, bipolar applications are limited to a discrete area held between the forceps or scissor poles, with a restricted power output but with high power density. For sterilization procedures, the manufacturer’s advice should be followed because each instrument can differ in design and ability to desiccate completely. With bipolar electrosurgery, only a CUT or continuous waveform should be used.

**BIOPHYSICAL BEHAVIOR OF ELECTROSURGERY**

Electrosurgery may be used to cut (vaporize), or to coagulate deeply (desiccate) or superficially (fulgurate). These terms are frequently interchanged but stand for specific electrosurgical end points that should be familiar to the surgeon. As mentioned earlier, at the end of an electrode, the tissue effect depends on the shape and size of the electrode, the frequency and degree of current modulation, the peak voltage, and the current coupled against output impedance. The tissue may be cut in a smooth deliberate fashion without arcing, or it can be burned and charred by carbonization.
Electrocoagulation may be performed in many different forms, from slow delicate contact coagulation (desiccation) to the charring effects of the spray coagulation mode (fulguration), at times leading to carbonization. The temperature differences can vary from 45°C to more than 500°C.

The essential characteristic of CUT waveforms is that they are continuous sine waves—that is, if the voltage output of the generator is plotted over time, a pure CUT waveform is a continuous sine wave alternating from positive to negative at the operating frequency of the generator, 500 to 3,000 kHz. The COAG waveform consists of short bursts of high-voltage radiofrequency sine waves. With the sine wave frequency of 500 kHz, the COAG bursts occur 31,250 times per second. The important feature of the COAG waveform is the pause between each burst. First, suppose that a COAG waveform had the same peak voltage as the CUT waveform. The average power delivered (heat per second) would be less because the COAG is turned off most of the time (Fig. 15.10). Then suppose that the COAG waveform had the same average voltage as the CUT waveform and thus could deliver the same heat per second. Because the COAG is turned off most of the time, it can only produce the same average voltage as the CUT by having large peak voltages and currents during the periods when the generator is on (Fig. 15.11).

A high-voltage COAG waveform can spark to tissue without significant cutting effect because the heat is more widely dispersed by the long sparks and because the heating effect is intermittent. The temperature of the water in the cells does not get high enough to flash into steam. In this way, it is possible to fulgurate long after the water is driven out of the tissue and to actually char it to carbon.

Coagulation is a general term that includes both desiccation and fulguration. Fulguration can be contrasted with desiccation in several ways. First, sparking to tissue with fulguration always produces necrosis anywhere sparks land. This is not surprising, because each cycle of voltage produces a new spark, and each spark has an extremely high current density. In desiccation, the current is no more concentrated than the area of contact between the electrode and the tissue (Fig. 15.12). As a result, desiccation may or may not produce necrosis, depending on the current density. For an equal level of current flow, fulguration is always more efficient at producing surface necrosis; however, the depth of tissue injury is superficial compared with that of contact desiccation. With fulguration, the sparks jump from one spot to another in a random fashion, and the energy is “sprayed” rather than concentrated (Fig. 15.13).

In general, fulguration requires only one fifth the average current flow of desiccation. For example, if a ball electrode is pressed against moist tissue, the electrode begins in the desiccation mode, regardless of the waveform (Fig. 15.12). The initial tissue resistance is low, and the resulting current is high, typically 0.5 to 0.8 A (average). As the tissue dries out, resistance rises until the electrical contact is broken. Because moist tissue is no longer touching the electrode, sparks jump to the nearest areas of moist tissue in the fulguration mode, as long as the voltage is high enough to make a spark. Eventually, the resistance of desiccated tissue stops the flow of electrons, self-limiting the depth of coagulation.

Electrosurgical electrodes can be sculpted to perform certain tasks. A needle electrode, a knife, a wire loop, or even a scissors can be shaped and sized to a specific duty. When the
Figure 15.11. When the power settings are equal between pure cutting/desiccation (CUT) and interrupted electrical current (COAG), the peak voltage of COAG is about three times higher than that of CUT. RMS, root mean square.

Waveform variables are added, cutters can be made to coagulate, and coagulators can be made to cut. The faster an electrode passes over or through tissue, the less is the coagulation effect, leading to more cutting. If the power setting and the electrode size remain constant, more desiccation of the adjacent tissue occurs the slower the electrode is passed through the tissue (Fig. 15.14). The more broad the electrode is, the less cutting and more coagulation effect there are (Fig. 15.15). If the electrode is touched to the tissue before keying the generator, desiccation occurs, but with more lateral charring in the COAG mode than in the CUT mode. There is a point at which the desiccation effect is limited in depth by the impedance to flow at a fixed power setting. Interwoven into these acts are the output intensity and output impedance characteristics of the different electrosurgical generators. If a constant voltage can be maintained at a given power setting, which is variable as tissue resistance changes, lateral thermal damage is controlled, giving the surgeon a predetermined surgical effect. By using “smart” generator technology that integrates feedback from the output electrode, newer generators output a constant voltage to control the depth of coagulation independent of the cutting rate.

Incisions

High electrical current that is delivered with a fine electrode of small surface area yields a high power density, which generates intense intracellular heat, causing the intracellular water to boil and thereby literally exploding or vaporizing the cell. Steam vapor occupies six times the volume of liquid water. The vaporization of the cell dissipates heat, a cooling effect that reduces thermal damage to adjacent tissue. This cooling effect, however, allows for little heat transfer to deeper tissue, resulting in minimal or no coagulation effects when electrosurgery is used at the CUT mode. To further enhance the vaporizing effects of the CUT waveform, the electrode should be activated just before touching the tissue (Fig. 15.15). The low-voltage sparks, by their high power density, produce a plume of steam and carbon particles between the electrode and the impacted tissue through which the current is rapidly conducted. This highly focused electrical energy yields the maximum power density, resulting in the most efficient cutting effects and the least thermal damage. Therefore, to incise tissue, CUT current should be used with a small or thin electrode that is activated just before making contact with the target tissue. The electrode “glides” on a layer of steam as the sparks do the cutting.

Because speed of passage and electrode size and shape determine the heat effect on tissue to be incised and the degree of lateral thermal spread, the amount of desired thermal effect decides what electrode to use and how fast the incision should be made. In addition, the chosen waveform can play a role. To compound the decision, the natural resistance of the tissue (e.g., fat has high impedance) to be incised should be considered. In cutting or vaporization, the voltage must exceed about 200 peak V to ionize the air between the electrode and tissue for sparking. Although most choose a scalpel to incise the skin, a knife or needle electrode can mimic the incision if the surgeon...
applies the principle of speed of passage and waveform. With either electrode, the speed of passage is coupled with a CUT waveform. Because a needle electrode has the highest power density, if the speed of passage is swift and the waveform is set at pure CUT, no visible desiccation of tissue occurs, but like a knife, the skin bleeds with minimal coagulation effect. A slow deliberate sweep of the electrode causes some desiccation effect, and the skin may blister and heal poorly. For that reason, only the experienced electrosurgeon should cut the skin with an active electrode.

As an example, abdominal fat, which has a high intrinsic impedance, can be readily cut using a blade electrode with a COAG waveform because of the high current density at the edge of that electrode. Small bleeders at the edge of the incision are simultaneously fulgurated. As larger vessels are exposed, such as the superficial epigastrics, the blade can then be rotated 90 degrees to desiccate these structures before incision, using its broad surface and lower current density. Thus, manipulating a particular electrode with a certain waveform can produce a spectrum of desired thermal end points.

The most common desiccation maneuver used in surgery is the coaptation of blood vessels. Coaptive coagulation involves clamping a bleeding vessel with a conductive clamp and applying a current to coagulate and promote a collagen weld of the vessel. To prevent overdesiccation of surrounding tissue, the low-voltage, uninterrupted waveform (CUT) should be applied. It is important that the generator not be activated until the electrode is in contact with tissue. With monopolar energy, deep desiccation of the tissue in the grasp of the instrument, such as a hemostat, is uniform throughout the thickness of the tissue; with bipolar energy, the output characteristics are such that the surface is heated first, leaving the center of the tissue mass to be heated last. For this reason, many recent models of bipolar electrosurgical generators are preset in the CUT mode and have a current flow meter (ammeter) to ensure that desiccation is complete. If the tissue is too thick, the bipolar current may cease to flow before deep desiccation is complete; thus, if the tissue coagulated is cut, it may bleed briskly.

CUT techniques can be used to amputate large tissue pedicles with either monopolar or bipolar modes provided that the amount of energy is sufficient. The monopolar snare-electrode, common to intracolonic surgery, can be used to amputate an ovarian pedicle with ease and with minimal lateral spread if the power setting is kept low. In addition, time must be allowed to first desiccate the tissue to be cut. Then, by increasing the pressure to tighten the snare, the cutting effect of the waveform and the wire loop transect the tissue with ease. The COAG waveform should not be used because, as previously mentioned, the voltage is increased threefold and the generator runs at less than 10% efficiency.

If the surgeon keys the generator when an electrode is not in touch with tissue, open circuitry occurs. Because the electrons cannot move to ground, there is a pressure buildup of voltage output by the generator. An analogy would be holding a finger over the end of a garden hose with the faucet valve completely open. When the finger is released from the end of the hose,
for a moment the water pressure buildup projects the water well beyond the point of projection when the current flows continuously under steady pressure.

In general, open circuitry should not be used except to initiate a fulguration of tissue or to start an incision. A common accident that occurs during routine surgery is when the surgeon keys the generator before touching a hemostat for coaptation of a blood vessel. Because of the high voltage created by open circuitry, especially in the COAG mode, the voltage drives the energy through the surgical glove of the person holding the hemostat. Before this was understood, the glove was usually blamed as being defective.

**FULGURATION TECHNIQUES**

The fulguration or COAG waveform is frequently used at the wrong time and for the wrong reasons. The generator manufacturers introduced terms that at the outset seemed to simplify the output waveform choices available to surgeons. For the most part, however, the assigned labels COAG and CUT have confused the surgeon about the science of their purposes. If the surgeon coapt tissue with a grasping electrode, either waveform begins to desiccate tissue. If, however, the tissue shrinks away from the electrode contact point, sparking (fulguration) occurs, creating surface char that acts as an insulator, preventing deeper desiccation.

If an electrode is held off the surface of the tissue and the generator is activated, sparking to tissue occurs, sending each spark in a random fashion to char the surface only because the char acts as an insulator. Surface charring is desirable to stop surface oozing, such as muscle bleeding of a venous nature. Because blood is saline rich, a bloody field is hard to coagulate because of ready conduction and diffusion of current density. Irrigating with a nonelectrolyte solution or removing the blood from the bleeders by using suction improves the task. For arterial vessels larger than 1 to 2 mm, fulguration is usually not effective, and desiccation, staples, or ligatures are usually required.

Because the tissue effect of fulguration is due to the high power density of each spark, the effect of a single spark is probably the same, independent of voltage (at least within the voltage range of current generators). Thus, during fulguration techniques, the higher output settings can be used with more efficiency, reducing the chance of touching the electrode to the tissue, which might cause an undesirable desiccation effect. It is this feature of fulguration that encouraged the development of the argon beam coagulator.

**ARGON BEAM COAGULATOR**

The argon beam coagulator is a monopolar electrode device that is housed inside a cannula through which argon gas is delivered at 12 L per minute for open laparotomy and 4 L per minute for laparoscopy (Fig. 15.17). The ionization properties of argon gas flowing over the electrode enhance the distance the spark can travel to complete the circuit to the tissue surface. Because the electrons prefer to stay in the stream of argon gas rather than pass through room air or carbon dioxide (CO₂), each having a higher resistance to electron flow, the collimation or parallel alignment of the sparks leaves a more uniform surface coagulation effect. These properties create a bright blush hue to the sparks, which makes them easy to see and aim at the bleeding surface. The gas, expelled under pressure, blows the pooled blood away from the surface bleeders, making coagulation more discrete and efficient. Flooding the field with glycine while fulgurating the tissue adds another dimension to efficient surface coagulation (see below). To create the planned fulguration effect, the wand must move like a paintbrush to prevent deep tissue damage.

**ELECTROSURGERY DURING PREGNANCY**

No data indicate that using electrosurgical techniques in a pregnant patient has any untoward effect on the fetus at any stage of development. Owing to the dispersion effect, the fetus, bathed in electrolyte-rich amniotic fluid, is protected from any concentration of electrical current. Just as the output frequency of all electrosurgical generators is above the faradic effect (the level that stimulates muscle contraction) for adult electrosurgery, the same is true for the fetus.
During a cesarean section, the only concern is the accidental touching of an activated electrode to the fetus, which causes tissue heating. This does not mean that the usual technique of making an incision in the uterus would preclude using an electrosurgical incision, but rather that a “backstop” under the incision line, between the amniotic membrane and the mus- cule wall, should be in place. Although using a nonconductive material, such as a plastic suction tip, may seem wise, a metal ribbon retractor also can be used because it has a large surface area serving to diffuse the current density. Caution should be exercised when using the gloved finger of the surgeon as a back- stop because if open circuitry is used, the voltage may create a hole in the glove.

NONELECTROLYTE IRRIGATION FLUIDS

As with operative hysteroscopy and cystoscopy, nonelectrolyte fluids, such as glycerol and sorbitol, can be used during other surgical procedures to facilitate electrical energy to desiccate or fulgurate tissue. Blood does not mix well with these fluid ication, total energy delivery is dramatically less than conven- tional bipolar systems. Consequently, sticking and charring to coagulation, tissue effects. Tonal feedback from a dedicated generator con- firms complete desiccation of the tissue bundle, after which the tissue heating. This does not mean that the usual technique of making an incision in the uterus would preclude using an electrosurgical incision, but rather that a “backstop” under the incision line, between the amniotic membrane and the mus- cule wall, should be in place. Although using a nonconductive material, such as a plastic suction tip, may seem wise, a metal ribbon retractor also can be used because it has a large surface area serving to diffuse the current density. Caution should be exercised when using the gloved finger of the surgeon as a back- stop because if open circuitry is used, the voltage may create a hole in the glove.

NONELECTROLYTE IRRIGATION FLUIDS

As with operative hysteroscopy and cystoscopy, nonelectrolyte fluids, such as glycerol and sorbitol, can be used during other surgical procedures to facilitate electrical energy to desiccate or fulgurate tissue. Blood does not mix well with these fluid ication, total energy delivery is dramatically less than conven- tional bipolar systems. Consequently, sticking and charring to coagulation, tissue effects. Tonal feedback from a dedicated generator con- firms complete desiccation of the tissue bundle, after which the tissue heating. This does not mean that the usual technique of making an incision in the uterus would preclude using an electrosurgical incision, but rather that a “backstop” under the incision line, between the amniotic membrane and the mus- cule wall, should be in place. Although using a nonconductive material, such as a plastic suction tip, may seem wise, a metal ribbon retractor also can be used because it has a large surface area serving to diffuse the current density. Caution should be exercised when using the gloved finger of the surgeon as a back- stop because if open circuitry is used, the voltage may create a hole in the glove.
Capacitance is the induction of electrical current between two conductors, each insulated from one another, can induce an electrical current from one to the other (Fig. 15.18), which can then be released or discharged. The amount of this induced transfer of energy is influenced by the length of the conductors (the longer the distance, the more effect), the distance between the conductors (the shorter the distance, the more effect), the character of the waveform (COAG waveform increases the effect), and the frequency of the waveform (the higher the frequency of the generator, the more the capacitance effect). The operating laparoscope becomes a capacitor when monopolar energy with a high-voltage interrupted current is transmitted through a long insulated electrode, especially if the electrosurgical generator emits high-frequency cycles. Because the operating channel is eccentrically located in the shell of the laparoscope, thus in close proximity, the induced current in the shell can be 50% to 80% of that current flowing through the active electrode into the laparoscope shell (Fig. 15.19).

If a metal trocar sleeve is used to transport the operating laparoscope into the abdomen, the induced current is quickly transferred through the metal sleeve, through the patient from the umbilicus, and finally to the return electrode. Because the current (power) density is broad (low) where the trocar sheath contacts the abdominal wall, no harmful heating occurs. If the trocar sheath is nonconductive (e.g., fiberglass) or radiolucent, or if a plastic securing collar is used (with either a metal or nonconductive trocar sleeve), the current remains isolated, and the laparoscope cannot deliver the induced energy via the umbilicus to the return electrode. In this scenario, if a vital structure, such as bowel, touches the laparoscope or cannula (especially when blood vessels surrounded by fat (e.g., mesenteric vessels) are coagulated with a bipolar instrument using a COAG waveform; here, cutting a presumptively desiccated vessel may lead to bleeding from a still patent lumen. When using an uninterrupted waveform, an in-line ammeter can be a valuable accessory, particularly for tubal sterilization, to ensure that all of the tissue between the forceps has been coagulated before transection.

As with laser surgery, during operative laparoscopy, smoke accumulation can occur, especially when fulguration techniques are used; for the most part, desiccation techniques create steam. Smoke can be reduced or eliminated by irrigating the field to be coagulated with glycine or sorbitol rather than with saline or lactated Ringer solution because the energy is not dispersed within the solution, as it is with electrolyte-rich fluids; in a liquid media, smoke does not develop.

In the early 1980s, it was thought that the occasional bowel perforation after a laparoscopy was the result of sparking or arcing to the bowel when electrodes were used. Because the physics of fulguration do not allow an arc to be maintained in one spot, it is now understood that at the worst, only a surface charring of the bowel could occur. To burn a hole in the bowel, the electrode must touch the bowel during the delivery of electroenergy and remain in contact with the bowel wall long enough to coagulate deep into the bowel wall. For this reason, it is best to disconnect electrodes from the generator when they are not needed for energy delivery. To prevent accidentally touching the bowel with an active electrode, the surgeon should withdraw the laparoscope from the operating field to maximize the panoramic view before keying the generator.

**CAPACITANCE IN MONOPOLAR ELECTROSURGERY**

Capacitance is a physical property of monopolar energy whereby two conductors in close proximity, each insulated from one another, can induce an electrical current from one to the other (Fig. 15.18), which can then be released or discharged. The amount of this induced transfer of energy is influenced by the length of the conductors (the longer the distance, the more effect), the distance between the conductors (the shorter the distance, the more effect), the character of the waveform (COAG waveform increases the effect), and the frequency of the waveform (the higher the frequency of the generator, the more the capacitance effect). The operating laparoscope becomes a capacitor when monopolar energy with a high-voltage interrupted current is transmitted through a long insulated electrode, especially if the electrosurgical generator emits high-frequency cycles. Because the operating channel is eccentrically located in the shell of the laparoscope, thus in close proximity, the induced current in the shell can be 50% to 80% of that current flowing through the active electrode into the laparoscope shell (Fig. 15.19).

If a metal trocar sleeve is used to transport the operating laparoscope into the abdomen, the induced current is quickly transferred through the metal sleeve, through the patient from the umbilicus, and finally to the return electrode. Because the current (power) density is broad (low) where the trocar sheath contacts the abdominal wall, no harmful heating occurs. If the trocar sheath is nonconductive (e.g., fiberglass) or radiolucent, or if a plastic securing collar is used (with either a metal or nonconductive trocar sleeve), the current remains isolated, and the laparoscope cannot deliver the induced energy via the umbilicus to the return electrode. In this scenario, if a vital structure, such as bowel, touches the laparoscope or cannula (especially

![Figure 15.18: Capacitance is the induction of electrical current between two conductors separated by insulation; one conductor carries the active current and induces, by high-frequency radio waves, a separate current in the nearby conductor.](image-url)

![Figure 15.19: Part of the formula that increases the capacitance effect as endoscopic surgery is the length (L) of the capacitor plus the diameter of the electrode (a), divided by the distance of separation or insulation (b).](image-url)
FIGURE 15.20. The Encision (formerly known as Electroshield™) device eliminates the threat of an inadvertent capacitance injury during laparoscopy by returning the capacitance-induced current back to the generator. If an insulation breakdown occurs, it alerts the surgeon.

a small portion of its surface) while energy is being activated, the energy induced into the laparoscope can burn the organ; typically, this may occur outside of the view of the laparoscopist. This same problem can occur when a secondary trocar sleeve is made of metal and uses a plastic securing collar (hybrid laparoscopic trocar sleeve) if that sleeve is used to transport a monopolar electrode. In this situation, the metal trocar sleeve becomes an active electrode by the capacitance effect. The best way to reduce this risk is to use all-metal trocar sleeves and metal securing collars; the next best way is to use all-plastic sleeves and collars. Never mix plastic with metal.

Unintended electrical injuries also can result from direct coupling or insulation failure. Direct coupling occurs when the active electrode touches other metal instruments within the abdomen, transferring the energy to the second instrument, which can injure tissue with which it comes in contact. For example, the active electrode touches the laparoscope, which then touches a small surface area and burns bowel or other organs. The only way to avoid injuries from direct coupling is never to activate the electrode until the operative field is in full panoramic view.

A device has been manufactured that eliminates the risk of capacitance regardless of the type of trocar sleeve used (Encision, Inc., Boulder, CO) (Fig. 15.20). The device is a cannula that shrugs the electrode shaft and shunts all capacitance-coupled current directly to the return plate of the generator, thereby avoiding transmission to biologic tissue. In addition, if there is a break in the insulation of the active electrode, which could promote direct coupling of the primary current to other metal instruments or adjacent tissue, this device alerts the surgeon with an audible alarm. Insulation failures occur when the insulation shield of the electrode is compromised from high voltage, abuse, poor handling, or mechanical accidents. The defect in the insulation, often too small to be recognized, can divert the full current from the generator to unintended tissue proximal to the end of the electrode. Sometimes the defect is on the part of the electrode that is within the trocar sleeve.

NUANCES OF ELECTROSURGERY TECHNIQUES

Before taking any electrosurgical action to control bleeding, accurately determine the source of bleeding and its proximity to vital anatomy. Identify the bleeders by combining mechanical tamponade with active hydrolavage. If the bowel, bladder, or ureter is in close proximity to the bleeder, mobilize that structure sufficiently before applying energy.

Because the output voltage of COAG current is very high, contact coagulation is generally limited to superficial layers because of the accelerated build-up of tissue resistance from rapid desiccation and carbonization. Conversely, electrode contact using the lower-voltage CUT current heats tissue more gradually, leading to deeper and more reliable penetration.

Coaptive sealing of the uterine and ovarian vessels using any type of monopolar current may be ineffective if the blood flow remains uninterrupted. Unless a vessel is sufficiently squeezed before electricity is applied, current density is dramatically reduced by conduction in blood, as any heat is dissipated by convection. Bipolar cautery is recommended for these longer pedicles.

Preferentially use BLEND or COAG current for a wider zone of hemostasis during incision of vascular tissues and to facilitate dissection of tissues with greater impedance, such as fatty or desiccated pedicles and adhesions. On the other hand, it is more prudent to use the lower-voltage CUT current via the edge of an electrode whenever lateral thermal spread may pose extra liability to adjacent tissues.
If bleeding in the vicinity of the bowel, bladder, or ureter cannot be controlled with pressure alone, carefully direct short bursts of noncontact COAG current with a broad-surface electrode to attain hemostasis with the least-possible amount of electrosurgical penetration. Still, vesical bleeding is best controlled by mechanical means, using the patency of pressure or suture ligature.

Although the flow of current is restricted to the tissue between the poles during bipolar electrosurgery, this does not eliminate the risk of thermal injury to tissue that is distant from the site of directed hemostasis. As current is applied between the poles, the intervening tissue gradually descimates until it becomes thoroughly dehydrated. Desiccation is complete when the tissue whitens and visible steam emission stops. If the application of current continues, the heat spreads well beyond the electrical limits of the instrument. Unwanted thermal damage can be minimized by terminating the flow of current at the end of the visible vapor phase, applying current in a pulsatile fashion to permit tissue cooling, and securing pedicles by a stepwise process that alternates between partial desiccation and incremental cutting. Because the rate of temperature generation is a direct function of the volume of tissue being desiccated, thermal spread can also be reduced by using the sides or tips of a slightly open forceps to press or lift, rather than coagulate for hemostasis.

As with contact monopolar coagulation, tissue between the electrodes of a bipolar instrument may become adherent during desiccation. Repeated attempts to shake the tissue free may lead to traumatic avulsion of a key vascular pedicle. A stuck vascular pedicle can usually be unglued by energizing the opened device while immersed in a conductive irrigant, such as saline. Once the solution is boiled by the high current density between the electrodes, the mechanical action of bubbling is usually sufficient to atraumatically free the pedicle.

**ELECTROPHYSICS APPLIED TO OPERATIVE HYSTEROSCOPY**

With endometrial ablation, the resectoscope cutting loop and a roller electrode or coagulating loop are used. Some surgeons shave the endometrial lining with the cutting loop electrode; others desiccate the endometrial lining with the roller ball or bar. A few surgeons shave first and then "paint" the shaved myometrium with the roller electrode or coagulation loop. Unfortunately, studies on the tissue effects of different techniques, electrodes, and waveforms are few in number. Even the pressure applied to the endometrial surface changes the current (power) density; the more the pressure, the broader is the contact surface of the electrode, creating a decreased current density. Because the speed of passage of the electrode unique to each surgeon is another variable, only the outcome statistics can be evaluated with any reasonable scrutiny. Some surgeons exclusively use a COAG waveform at 30 W; others have reported success using a CUT waveform at 100 W.

Typically, endomyometrial resection is accomplished using a pure uninterrupted CUT waveform while dragging the wire loop in a slow deliberate motion to a depth of 4 mm through the tissue, providing some coagulation effect in addition to the cutting. By using the CUT waveform, bubble formation on the anterior surface of the endometrial cavity is less than that in the coagulation mode. The same waveform with a light contact of the coagulation loop electrode set at 100 W is used during the painting phase. Unlike the roller-ball or roller-bar electrode, which can trap dead tissue in its axle and increase the impedance of electron flow, the coagulation loop electrode avoids that impedance. By not rolling, the surface of the electrode in contact with tissue stays clean, much like an eraser cleans itself. If the roller electrode is a bar or barrel, either slow the rolling motion or increase the power output because of lower current density. At the end of the ablation process, some surgeons switch to a COAG waveform at 75 W. With the increased peak voltage of this waveform, skipped areas are sought out by the electrons under higher pressure, ensuring complete surface coagulation.

Monopolar resectoscopic surgery is uniquely associated with accidental burns to the vagina and perineum. Because the inner and outer sheaths of the resectoscope are separated by air, which is an insulator, current can be induced into the outer sheath by capacitive coupling. Insulation breaches can divert the direct current from the proximal electrode to the outer sheath. Episodes of relatively high current density on touching small areas of genital tissue with the outer sheath can be sufficient to burn tissue. From investigations using in vitro anatomical surrogates, these injuries occur from defects in electrosurgical penetration, especially when interrupted COAG current is used and the cervix is overdilated and in contact with less than 2 cm of the outer sheath of the resectoscope. Resectoscopic monopolar electrode injury and subsequent current diversion can be promulgated by the high electrical force created by open circuit activation as well as prolonged activation along already desiccated tissue.

**BIPOLAR HYSTEROSCOPIC SURGERY**

Deprising entirely from monopolar electrosurgery, a new family of instrumentation has been recently introduced that uses bona fide bipolar technology to attain the desired electrosurgical effect. The primary advantage of bipolar electrosurgery stems from the isolation of the electrical circuit between a set of closely separated active electrodes. Nevertheless, performance is like a monopolar device, providing tissue vaporization and desiccation while retaining all of the inherent safety features of bipolar electrosurgery. The VersaPoint™ system (Gynecare/Ethicon, Somerville, NJ) consists of a dedicated bipolar electrosurgical generator and a variety of specialized hysteroscopic and resectoscopic bipolar electrodes for different tissue end points, including 1.6-mm flexible coaxial electrodes with variable tip geometry and vaporizing and cutting loop electrodes for resectoscopic surgery. A key feature of the system is its ability to adjust automatically to a default power setting for each type of electrode, which can then be adjusted by the surgeon. The patient contact end of each electrode consists of two poles separated by a ceramic insulator, referred to as the return and active tip. The active tip electrode is fabricated in a range of configurations and sizes to produce tissue effects ranging from tissue vaporization to desiccation. To function, both electrodes have to be simultaneously immersed in isotonic saline. The VERSA-POINT generator varies the output power in response to local impedance changes at the active electrode. A high-impedance vapor pocket is created that surrounds and insulates the active electrode from completing its circuit through the normal saline until tissue contact is made. Once contact occurs, current flows through the tissue, and by seeking the path of least resistance,
returns through the saline to the proximal return electrode and finally back to the generator.

**BIPOLAR ENDOMETRIAL ABLATION**

The NovaSure Global Endometrial Ablation System consists of a single-use, three-dimensional bipolar device and radiofrequency generator that enables a controlled endometrial ablation in an average of 90 seconds without the need of a hysteroscope or hysteroscopic skills (Fig. 15.21). The device is inserted transcervically into the uterine cavity; the sheath is retracted by deploying a fan-shaped bipolar electrode that conforms to the uterine cavity. Unlike the balloon concept of other devices designed for endometrial ablation, vacuum is used to ensure good electrode tissue contact. This also allows removal of blood, endometrial debris, and steam, eliminating any uncontrollable steam ablation effect. Any type of “pretreatment” of the endometrium is not necessary. The electrode consists of a conformable bipolar metallized porous fabric mounted on an expandable frame. An integral component of the handheld endometrial device is an intrauterine measuring device to evaluate uterine cavity width. Once the length is evaluated by sounding, the values are keyed into the generator, which automatically calculates the needed output power to ensure a confluent area of ablation within the uterine cavity.

A perforation detection system is an integral part of the NovaSure System. Delivered at a slow flow rate and pressure, CO₂ pressure is monitored within the uterine cavity, with the generator sensing a maintained pressure over a known period of time. Once the proper pressure is maintained, confirming good uterine wall integrity, the generator proceeds with the ablation in an automatic or semiautomatic mode.

Using a constant power output generator, the maximum power delivered is 180 W. The depth of ablation is controlled by

![Deep Ablation](image1)

![Shallow Ablation](image2)

**FIGURE 15.21.** The NovaSure Global Endometrial Ablation System is a bipolar device for endometrial ablation using a metallized mesh electrode, vacuum for firm tissue contact, and a controlled generator designed to create a shallower depth of desiccation at the cornual area and lower uterine segment, with a deeper ablation in the uterine midbody.
monitoring tissue impedance during the procedure. A shorter center-to-center distance between electrodes provides a shallower depth of desiccation at the cornual area and lower uterine segment, and a deeper ablation in the uterine midbody. Once the tissue impedance reaches 50 ohms, or after 2 minutes, the NovaSure Global Endometrial Ablation System terminates the process.

### APPLIED PHYSICS IN LOOP ELECTRODE EXCISION PROCEDURES

For almost half a century, circular and other shaped wire electrodes have been available for use as biopsy tools in dermatology and gynecology. In gynecology, these loops were used for cervical and hot-cuve biopsies. After such biopsies, anecdotal case histories of severe scarring led gynecologists to choose nonelectrical methods of cervical biopsy by the 1950s. Although the rate was not established, infertility after hot-cuve cervical biopsy occurred because of cervical stenosis.

Today, a renewed interest in electrosurgical wire loop biopsy has surfaced in the form of loop electrode excision procedure (LEEP), also referred to as large loop excision of transformation zone (LLETZ). As an outpatient procedure, LEEP or LLETZ surgery offers a one-time approach to a pesky problem plus an adequate and complete biopsy specimen. Made popular by British and French gynecologists, this excisional approach to cervical dysplasia gives a histologic confirmation of the treatment of the entire lesion, unlike the limited sampling of the lesion by colposcopic-directed biopsy followed by cryosurgery or laser ablation.

The long-term results after cervical healing are not available. No publication has evaluated different electrode loops matched with different electrosurgical generators, exploring their thermal effects on the tissue left behind the remaining viable cervix. Performing LEEP procedures is a complete exercise in the applied principles of electrosurgery. The following features of LEEP procedures should be appreciated:

**Electrode size:** The thinner the wire, the higher the power density, giving a better cutting effect. Electrode wires thicker than 0.20 mm in diameter can cause deep coagulation, up to a 10-mm depth, depending on speed of excision and waveform.

**Waveform:** There is an increasing depth of coagulation as the waveform is blended from a pure damped waveform to a 50:50 ratio of undamped-to-damped waveform.

**Power density:** In addition to the diameter or gauge of the wire used, the size and depth of the biopsy must be considered. As the electrode loop sinks deeper into the cervical tissue, the power density, as measured by the length and total surface area of wire loop penetrating the cervical tissue, decreases rapidly, losing the cutting effect created by a high power density. To compensate for this change, the operator must increase the power output from the generator during the incision process or increase the speed of the electrode incision process. If the power output is adequate (usually at 60 W) but the loop is passed through the tissue at a slow pace, deep coagulation of the cervix may occur. When possible, it is preferable to use a generator with a low-output impedance because this keeps the energy fluctuations created by different tissue densities to a minimum. Several generators that are especially helpful in LEEP procedures have been designed. They control the flow of energy through a low-impedance feedback by controlling voltage; the effect is much like a speed-control device in an automobile. If a constant voltage can be maintained at a given power setting that changes as tissue resistance changes, lateral thermal damage is controlled, giving the surgeon a predetermined surgical effect. Using constant voltage controls the depth of coagulation independent of the cutting rate.

**Speed of incision:** The more rapid the passage of the wire through the cervical tissue, the cleaner the incision, with less thermal artifact in the excised specimen. Conversely, the slower the passage, the more thermal damage to the adjacent tissue, resulting in better coagulation of the cone bed but more tissue necrosis and postoperative scarring. The loop wire should be rigid, if a loop that bends or flexes reduces the speed of incision, leading to deep coagulation even when a pure cutting waveform is used. It appears that tungsten wire, because of its rigid characteristics (especially at higher temperatures), is preferred over stainless-steel wire, unless the yoke of the loop electrode handle can be shaped so that the stainless-steel wire remains rigid.

Because the vaginal fluids are rich in electrolytes, the vagina and cervix should be rinsed with a nonelectrolytic fluid before biopsy; the acetic acid solution used during colposcopy is adequate. The generator should be keyed or activated before the electrode touches the tissue, and the energy should be delivered in a continuous mode until the biopsy is complete. If the operator turns the energy off during the excisional biopsy, deep coagulation will occur when the generator is restarted, and the power may be insufficient to cut the tissue.

Care should be taken to not touch the metal speculum with the active electrode. Because the surface area of the metal speculum (in contact with the patient) is large, the current density is too low to cause a burn, but the effective high-frequency energy delivered through the speculum is altered to a much lower frequency, which may stimulate involuntary muscle contractions of the patient. This is not painful, but it is startling and disconcerting to both patient and operator. Thus, the use of an insulated metal speculum is preferable.

It is better to cut and excise with minimal coagulation during the biopsy process and then use fulguration, not desiccation, to control spot bleeding. Use a large ball electrode held close to, yet off of, the bleeding site, and switch to a damped (coagulation) waveform with high-voltage output. If the operative field is obscured with electrolyte-rich blood, reduce the amount of blood by blotting with a dry swab or with suction during the fulguration process. As an alternative, slow irrigation with a nonelectrolytic solution (e.g., sterile or distilled water) also allows effective spot fulguration with the ball electrode.

Again, with LEEP or LLETZ procedures, it is best to choose a rigid loop electrode with a steady pace of transfer through the tissue to be excised. Choose an uninterrupted waveform with minimal, if any, higher-voltage characteristics. A pure CUT waveform delivered through an electrode, transecting the tissue at a slower rate, creates some coagulation effect. The latter may be preferable to a partially interrupted waveform (BLEND) passed through a loop electrode that may “stall” because of inadequate power as it tries to pass through the cervical tissue.

### COMPLICATIONS DURING ELECTROSURGERY

The most common complication during electrosurgery is a return-electrode burn that is due to improper application of
Electrosurgery provides the surgeon with a wide range of options: type of current, power level, monopolar or bipolar systems, mode of application, and types and sizes of electrodes. With proper equipment and a basic understanding of the electrosurgical principles, the reproductive surgeon can use electrosurgery to manipulate electrons to sufficient concentration (current density) in living tissue. The electrosurgical generator produces sinusoidal waveforms, variants of current, and voltage as either a continuous (undamped) output called CUT, a moderately interrupted (damped) output called BLEND, or a highly interrupted (damped) output called COAG. In most circumstances, the CUT waveform should be used to cut and desiccate tissue, reserving the COAG waveform for surface fulguration to control small open bleeders and for superficial coagulation.

The electrode. Because these burns account for two thirds of electrocautery accidents, each manufacturer provides specific recommendations for skin preparation and site application. Alternate site burns, such as to cardiac monitor leads, usually result from improper grounding, use of too much power, and high-voltage application.

Interspersed complications during laparotomy are rare. Following the principles of electrosurgery should prevent such occurrences. For laparoscopy, claims of sparking to adjacent organs causing burns or perforation can be refuted if one understands the principle of fulguration. Because human tissue cannot maintain an arc as metal can, the tissue effect is one of surface charring without the consequences of deep penetration. An exception is the use of the argon beam coagulator, which if held in one spot can cause deeper penetration than that of the random scatter of high-voltage fulguration. Although capacitance, described above, can lead to a serious injury when monopolar electrosurgery is used, the variables that must be present are such that the incidence is uncommon. Although monopolar electrosurgery can be used safely, the surgeon must have a thorough grasp of electrosurgical principles. Bipolar energy, with its reduced power output, can give a false sense of security. If one studies the energy physics of each tool, the adage “a watt is a watt is a watt” rings true.

With operative hysteroscopy, uterine perforation with the active electrode is the most common electrosurgical complication. Using proper technique with the admittance of never activating the electrode during a forward motion will largely eliminate perforation injuries. Understanding the tissue effect of different-shaped electrodes, coupled with the principle of using the lowest power necessary to perform the task, will also reduce complications.

**SUMMARY**

Electrosurgery provides the surgeon with a wide range of options: type of current, power level, monopolar or bipolar systems, mode of application, and types and sizes of electrodes. With proper equipment and a basic understanding of the electrosurgical principles, the reproductive surgeon can use electrosurgery in many useful ways. Faulty or improper equipment or a lack of understanding by the surgeon can result in poor surgical outcome and unnecessary complications. Just as physicians are expected to understand and prescribe drugs in a precise and logical manner, so should they have a working knowledge of the energy sources they choose to use in surgery.

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- Electrosurgery creates a desired tissue effect by delivering high-frequency alternating current with different electrodes that manipulate electrons to sufficient concentration (current density) in living tissue.
- The electrosurgical generator produces sinusoidal waveforms, variants of current, and voltage as either a continuous (undamped) output called CUT, a moderately interrupted (damped) output called BLEND, or a highly interrupted (damped) output called COAG. In most circumstances, the CUT waveform should be used to cut and desiccate tissue, reserving the COAG waveform for surface fulguration to control small open bleeders and for superficial coagulation.
- Whereas each waveform is associated with specific tissue effects, these behaviors can be altered by the shape and size of the electrode via the manipulation of current density. All of these tissue effects are also influenced by the electrode velocity through the tissue. Prudent electrosurgical techniques integrate these variables, depending on the desired result.
- The lower-voltage CUT waveform should be used to incise tissue and for coaptive sealing of larger blood vessels. The higher voltage of the COAG current produces rapid tissue desiccation and carbonization, resulting in increased tissue resistance limiting coagulation to superficial small vessels. The BLEND current may provide a satisfactory combination for cutting through fatty tissues, such as the subcutaneous tissue or omentum.
- Coaptive sealing of the uterine and ovarian vessels using any type of monopolar current may be ineffective if the blood flow remains uninterrupted. Unless a vessel is sufficiently squeezed before electricity is applied, current density is dramatically reduced by conduction in blood, as any heat is dissipated by convection. Bipolar cautery is recommended for these larger pedicles.
- Fundamental principles to reduce risk during electrosurgery include:
  - When coaptively desiccating tissue with a hemostat, always touch the hemostat first, and then initiate the energy.
  - Place electrode pencils in their safety holster when not in use.
  - With monopolar systems, use a monitored return-electrode system (frequently referred to as a REM system). Place return electrodes close to the operative site on a clean, dry, shaved area, avoiding bony prominence and scar tissue.
  - Activate CUT for all desiccation-coagulation procedures; use COAG for fulguration procedures.
  - Activate the electrode in short bursts (about 3 sec). Use the manufacturer’s recommended connection cables. Inspect instrument insulation before each use. If the usual power settings seem inadequate, do not increase the power until the circuit is checked, especially the return electrode.
  - Select the lowest voltage that will create the desired effect. Consider using bipolar methods. Bipolar systems deliver current as an uninterrupted CUT waveform calibrated against a lower resistance than monopolar systems. As such, it is wise to use a current flow meter to confirm complete desiccation of tissue, especially during tubal sterilization. In some tissues, the thermal effect will be limited such that monopolar application will be preferable.
  - The degree of thermal necrosis on tissue that is electrically incised is dependent on the velocity of passage as well as electrode size and shape and the electrosurgical waveform.
  - As one electrode is changed to another, the surgeon should adjust the generator output to match the task at hand.
  - The most common complication during electrosurgery is return-electrode burns, owing to improper application of the electrode. Prophylactic measures include proper skin preparation and site application. Alternate site burns, such as to cardiac leads, usually result from improper grounding, use of too much power, and high-voltage applications.
- **Nuances of Electrosurgery Techniques**
  - Before taking any electrosurgical action to control bleeding, accurately determine the source of bleeding and its proximity to vital anatomy. Identify the bleeders by combining mechanical tamponade with active hydrodissection. If the bowel, bladder, or ureter is in close proximity to the
Because the output voltage of COAG current is very high, contact coagulation is generally limited to superficial layers. That is because of the accelerated build-up of tissue resistance from rapid desiccation and carbonization. Conversely, electrode contact using the lower-voltage CUT current heats tissue more gradually, leading to deeper and more reliable penetration.

- Preferentially use BLEND or COAG current for a wider zone of hemostasis during incision of vascular tissues and to facilitate dissection of tissues with greater impedance, such as fatty or desiccated pedicles and adhesions. On the other hand, it is more prudent to use the lower-voltage CUT current via the edge of an electrode whenever lateral thermal spread may pose extra liability to adjacent tissues.

- If bleeding in the vicinity of the bowel, bladder, or ureter cannot be controlled with pressure alone, carefully direct short bursts of noncontact COAG current with a broad-surface electrode to attain hemostasis with the least-possible amount of electrosurgical penetration. Still, visceral bleeding is best controlled by mechanical means, using the patience of pressure or suture ligation.

- Although the flow of current is restricted to the tissue between the poles during bipolar electrosurgery, this does not eliminate the risk of thermal injury to tissue that is distant from the site of directed hemostasis. As current is applied between the poles, the intervening tissue gradually desiccates until it becomes thoroughly dehydrated. Desiccation is complete when the tissue whitens and visible steam emission stops. If the application of current continues, the heat spreads well beyond the electrical limits of the instrument. Unwanted thermal damage can be minimized by terminating the flow of current at the end of the visible vapor phase, applying current in a pulsatile fashion to permit tissue cooling, and securing pedicles by a step-wise process that alternates between partial desiccation and incremental cutting. Because the rate of temperature generation is a direct function of the volume of tissue being desiccated, thermal spread can also be reduced by using the sides or tips of a slightly open forceps to press or lift, rather than coapt for hemostasis.

- As with contact monopolar coagulation, tissue between the electrodes of a bipolar instrument may become adherent during desiccation. Repeated attempts to shake the tissue free may lead to traumatic avulsion of a key vascular pedicle. A stuck vascular pedicle can usually be unglued by energizing the opened device while immersed in a conductive irrigant, such as saline. Once the solution is boiled by the high current density between the electrodes, the mechanical action of bubbling is usually sufficient toatraumatically free the pedicle.

---

**Bibliography**


The carbon dioxide (CO\textsubscript{2}) laser generating energy at a wavelength of 690 nanometers (nm). It was stimulated to emit the first working laser, which consisted of a ruby crystal having a fied microwaves by stimulated emission of radiation. In 1958, coworkers produced a device called a maser, which amplification by an external energy source, such as electricity or light, which stimulates the active lasing medium. The active medium is designed so that light of a specific wavelength will resonate between the closed ends of the cavity, much as sound will resonate in a properly constructed chamber. The active medium is stimulated, or “pumped,” by an external energy source, such as electricity or light, which stimulates the active lasing medium to higher energy levels. As decay back to resting energy levels occurs, photons of energy are released into the optical cavity. Electrons that are still in excited higher orbital energy levels can also be stimulated by bombardment with these newly re-leased photons so that they undergo identical decay and emit an identical photon. This is called stimulated emission, because one photon has stimulated the production of another photon.
TABLE 16.1
LASER COLORS AND WAVELENGTHS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Wavelength (nm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alexandrite</td>
<td>Red or near infrared</td>
<td>755/798</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argon</td>
<td>Blue-green</td>
<td>488/515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO₂</td>
<td>Infrared</td>
<td>10,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode</td>
<td>Red-orange</td>
<td>750/950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dye laser</td>
<td>Yellow-green-red</td>
<td>577/630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erbium YAG</td>
<td>Mid infrared</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eximer</td>
<td>Ultraviolet</td>
<td>193/351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KTP-YAG</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Krypton</td>
<td>Green-yellow</td>
<td>532/568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helium neon</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>594</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orange</td>
<td>612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holmium YAG</td>
<td>Mid infrared</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gold vapor</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Krypton</td>
<td>Red, yellow, green</td>
<td>647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nd:YAG</td>
<td>Near infrared</td>
<td>1,064</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruby</td>
<td>Deep red</td>
<td>694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper vapor/green, yellow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The optical cavity of the laser tube is closed at each end by a mirror. One of these mirrors is totally reflective, but the other is semitransparent. Although photon direction in the tube is random, a certain number of photons will be emitted in the axis of the optical cavity. The others are focused by the mirrors so that most are resonating or bouncing back and forth along the axis of the cavity. Some of these photons emerge through the semitransparent mirror and are emitted from the laser as the monochromatic parallel coherent laser beam. Coherent means that the waves are all in phase or perfectly aligned. The laser thus creates a light that travels in a tight beam over long distances.

Laser power is measured in terms of watts, and laser energy is expressed in terms of joules. One joule equals 1 W of power applied for 1 second. Lasers are named for the active medium contained in their optical cavities. Many different lasers have been constructed for diverse uses. In gynecologic surgery, the CO₂ and YAG lasers are the most commonly used. Despite many efforts, fiber-optic delivery systems have never been satisfactorily adapted to CO₂ laser energy. However, other lasers produce wavelengths that are conducted along quartz fibers. The use of the fiber is of great advantage in endoscopic surgery because it can be passed down the channel of an operative telescope, suction irrigator probe, or other hollow channel within the instrument.

Power Density and Transverse Electromagnetic Mode

When laser energy passes from the laser, the photons are coherent and parallel and theoretically could travel in space in this form to infinity. This changes when laser light is focused through a lens or directed into a quartz fiber. CO₂ laser energy is usually focused by a lens to a relatively small spot: the focal point of that lens. Focal spot size varies directly with the focal length of the lens. In surgical usage, however, additional lenses or mechanical devices allow the surgeon to change the spot-size diameter with ease. For any given power setting of the CO₂ laser, the concentration or density of the power is greater as the spot size becomes smaller, and conversely, as the spot size (tissue impact area) is enlarged, the power density decreases. By focusing or defocusing the laser energy, it is used as a cutting or coagulating tool. The concentration of laser energy at its focal point is referred to as its power density (PD) and is expressed as watts per square centimeter. A simplified formula for power density is watts per square mm calculated by the formula PD = power in watts × 100/area of spot size in mm squared. Because the calculation of power density is relatively complicated, most surgeons prefer to note the power setting on the laser and the effective spot size used for surgery. Obviously, the biologic effect and type of surgical injury are varied by changing spot size.

Although the photons of laser light are parallel, laser energy is not completely uniform throughout the cross-sectional diameter of the beam (Fig. 16.1). The term transverse electromagnetic mode (TEM) refers to the energy distribution of the cross-sectional diameter. For example, in most CO₂ surgical lasers, the energy distribution is greatest at the center of the beam and decreases toward the periphery. If one graphs the energy distribution of the cross-sectional beam diameter of the CO₂ laser, the resultant curve is bell-shaped. This Gaussian distribution does not hold true in fiber-optic lasers, YAG, potassium-titanyl-phosphate (KTP), and argon, in which energy distribution tends to be more uniform. However, when energy from these lasers enters a quartz fiber, conduction alters parallelism, and beam divergence of approximately 15 degrees occurs at the fiber tip. Thus, laser energy emerging from a fiber-optic conductor is not coherent, and the greatest concentration...
of this energy exists at the fiber–air or tissue interface where the spot size is smallest—that is, the same diameter as the conductor.

**Time Dependence of Lasers**

The effect of lasers on tissue is dependent on the duration that the tissue is exposed to laser energy. In continuous wave (CW) mode delivery, the laser oscillates constantly and delivers non-varying power to the tissue. A pulsed laser can deliver energy in the form of a single pulse or a train of pulses. The duration of a pulse is typically less than 0.25 second. Pulsing the laser to the tissue for a short duration is useful to control the delivery and power of the beam. Significantly higher power density can cut tissue with minimal coagulation necrosis at the margins. A Q-switching laser is a laser that reduces its pulse time and significantly increases its peak power. In this mode, laser radiation is released in a short burst of laser light with high peak power. When the shutter of the optical cavity is rapidly opened, the laser energy is discharged in an extremely short period of time ($10^{-6}$ to $10^{-9}$ seconds). Laser energy of $10^5$ watts can be obtained using this mode. A Q-switched laser pulse is used when it is critical to minimize adjacent tissue effects, for example, in laser surgery to the eye. Pulsing lasers at extremely high peak power (e.g., 500–2500 pulses/second) permit cutting tissue with lower water content.

**MEDICAL LASERS AND TISSUE INTERACTION**

**CO2 Laser**

Laser energy interacts with tissue causing biologic, photochemical, or thermal reactions. The laser energy is absorbed, scattered, or affected by the thermal conductivity and local circulation of the tissue. The primary tissue effect of the surgical lasers used in gynecology is thermal. The beam profile for any given power setting can be altered by changing the spot size diameter (Fig. 16.2). Soft tissue is about 80% water by volume. CO2 laser is highly absorbed by water, limiting its penetration to the surface of the tissue, where it can be monitored visually. Deep penetration of this laser energy into tissue is minimal as long as intracellular and extracellular water remains to be vaporized. When heat is delivered by the laser beam, the tissue’s temperature is elevated. The area of laser impact has a shape reflecting the laser beam’s intensity profile. When tissue temperature is elevated to 57°C, irreversible damage to the cell’s proteins occurs, and the cell dies. Between 57°C and 100°C, there will be tissue death without vaporization. Above 100°C, vaporization occurs, with conversion of the fluid content of tissue to vapor and the other cellular components being converted to smoke. This product is referred to as the laser plume. When the plume is evacuated, it debrides the area and effectively removes the tissue. Additional tissue damage results from lateral conduction of heat away from the laser impact site. The amount of damage caused by heat conduction is directly proportional to the amount of time spent in lasing.

There are three zones of laser tissue damage that may be defined: (i) the area vaporized, (ii) the area of tissue death that results from the heated tissue short of vaporization, and (iii) the area of tissue damage caused by conduction of the heat away from the lased site (Fig. 16.3). Knowledge of beam geometry also plays a role in achieving a specific laser surgical effect. For example, a sharply focused laser beam with power settings of 15 to 25 W and a spot diameter of 0.2 mm produces a high power density up to 50,000 to 80,000 W/cm². This laser beam configuration produces narrow tissue vaporization comparable to an incision made by a scalpel (Fig. 16.4). Defocusing the beam enlarges the spot, and using the same settings, power density is reduced to 500 to 1,000 W/cm². This technique is used to treat a thin surface rapidly. The proper power setting and spot diameter combine to determine effect on the tissue. The surgeon can view the process through an operative microscope with little fear of deep thermal damage. This margin of safety has contributed to the popularity of CO2 laser surgery.

There are several advantages of CO2 laser over a knife and electrosurgical instruments. Laser surgery is performed with no contact to the tissue. No bacteria is transferred from the surgical instrument to the tissue. The laser beam sterilizes the operative field as it vaporizes it. Because it removes tissue with vaporization and evacuation, the suctioned plume allows the tissue base to heal without a devitalized tissue covering. Postoperative pain is reduced because nerve endings are sealed by the

![FIGURE 16.2. Beam profile variations. For any given power setting, beam profile (the shape of the Gaussian curve) can be altered by changing spot size diameter. The small spot size results in a steep curve, which is used for cutting. Larger spot sizes produce flatter curves suitable for vaporization. Tissue damage and crater shape mirror the energy distribution.](image)
FIGURE 16.3. Beam profile and tissue damage. Laser wounds produce three zones of tissue damage: the vaporization crater, the area of tissue necrosis caused by heating tissue to temperatures between 57°C and 100°C, and the area of damage resulting from heat conduction. Higher power settings produce more rapid vaporization of tissue and lessen secondary thermal damage.

APPLICATION OF LASER GYNECOLOGY

Coagulating lasers can be used in patients with bleeding disorders. The laser can be delivered for easy access to confined areas with a clear field of view.

Helium Neon

The helium neon laser (HeNe) is a gas laser with a wavelength of 633 nm in the red portion of the visible spectrum. It is a low-powered laser with output ranging from 1 to 100 mW. It is used in many common tools, including bar-code scanners. The most popular HeNe lasers produce red light. Other colored helium neon lasers include green with a wavelength of 543 nm, yellow at 594 nm, and orange at 612 nm.

Helium neon laser is used as an “aiming beam” for lasers that have nonvisible wavelengths, such as carbon dioxide. When HeNe laser is aligned with the nonvisible laser, it defines the laser’s impact site for the surgeon. This alignment of these two laser beams is checked before treatment begins.

Neodymium YAG

YAG laser energy is able to penetrate tissue to a much greater depth. Unlike CO₂ laser, the neodymium-doped yttrium aluminum garnet (Nd:YAG) laser is poorly absorbed by water. The YAG is often used in a liquid medium. Because it penetrates water so well, the YAG is not a good laser for vaporization. It is an effective coagulator, however, as it passes deeper into tissue before absorption occurs.

YAG energy scatters in tissue, so thermal damage is greater than with CO₂ laser. It is absorbed with a power density that is maximum below the tissue surface. This limits the ability to visually monitor the YAG laser’s depth of penetration and stresses the importance of the surgeon to understand the physics of each laser. YAG laser can be transmitted through quartz fibers and fluids. The depth of penetration provides excellent hemostasis. Goldrath and colleagues in 1981 recognized this and used Nd:YAG laser for the first hysteroscopic endometrial ablations. This laser is also used for removal of hair and vascular lesions in a Q-switched delivery.

Argon, KTP-YAG

The argon laser produces a blue-green light that has two distinct bands at 488 nm and 515 nm, whereas KTP-YAG is located at 532 nm on the electromagnetic spectrum. These are referred to as colored lasers because they are in the visible spectrum. These lasers can be transmitted through water or quartz fibers of 200 to 600 micron diameter. Hemoglobin and other deeply colored pigments absorb their wavelengths and are responsible for their use in vascular and pigmented lesions. Penetration into skin, typically 1 to 2 mm, is affected by the concentration of skin pigments. Argon, KTP-YAG lasers produce a moderate scatter 100 times that of CO₂ laser. This results in an excellent hemostasis. Because of the scatter, they have minimal cutting ability. The depth of tissue injury is roughly correlated with the laser power settings.
The KTP-532 laser derives its name from the potassium (K), titanyl (T), and phosphate (P) crystal used to double the frequency and halve the wavelength of the YAG laser. The 532-nm wavelength is emerald green. Its tissue effects are very similar to those produced by the argon laser. The KTP-532 is used to vaporize or to coagulate, and energy emerging from the end of the fiber can be used to cut tissue. Their greatest application has been in endoscopic surgery, because the delivery systems for their energy can be passed down the operative channel of an endoscope.

**Holmium YAG**

This laser’s wavelength is 2,100 nm. It is used in urology to disintegrate renal stones and ablate obstructing tissue within the prostate. It can be delivered through both large and small fibers. The smaller fiber of 200 microns gives access through flexible ureteroscopes to reach the lower pole of the kidney. It is pulsed at 350 to 700 microseconds at repeating intervals of 5 to 20 Hz to disintegrate the stones. The Ho:YAG laser’s depth of penetration in tissue is 0.4 mm. Like CO₂ laser, this laser is absorbed at the superficial layers of tissue. Vaporization speed, coagulation depth, and hemostasis can be precisely controlled. These properties can be particularly useful in gynecologic endoscopy. Laser treatment can be delivered through small channels to areas of difficult access. Of equal interest is its ability to limit the lateral spread of the thermal energy. The risk of injury to bowel, ureters, blood vessels, and nerves because of any lateral thermal spread is reduced.

**Dye Lasers**

Argon-pumped rhodamine-B dye lasers are tuned to produce a specific wavelength of light. They are delivered to cells that have been sensitized with hematoporphyrin derivatives (HPDs). Certain HPD drugs concentrate in malignant tissue and are activated by specific laser wavelengths. This results in a cytotoxic effect on the tumor. The release of singlet oxygen results in the death of the cancer cells. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration has approved specific HPDs for use in cancer therapy, and it is currently in use in oncologic centers.

**Aesthetic surgery**

Aesthetic surgery for women is the newest use of lasers by some gynecologic surgeons. The applications include hair removal, vein treatment, and epithelial resurfacing. Some of the lasers used are listed in Table 16.2.

| TABLE 16.2 |
| LASER USED IN AESTHETIC SURGERY |
| Carbon dioxide 1,064 nm |
| Erbium–YAG 2,940 nm |
| Diode 810 nm 100 msec long pulse 595 |
| Alexandrite 755 nm Q-switched for blue, black green tattoo removal |
| Ruby long pulse 694 nm Q-switched |
| Nd:YAG 1,064 nm long pulse, Q-switched, frequency doubled 532 nm for red or orange ink tattoo removal |

**DELIVERY SYSTEMS**

The laser beam must be delivered from its source to the tissue. Carbon dioxide laser, the first laser used in gynecology, is delivered to tissue through air in an articulated arm composed of hollow tubes and a series of internal mirrors. The mirrors are precisely aligned to keep the laser beam directed along the path of the arm. At the distal end a lens made of a special compound focuses the laser beam.

**Micromanipulator**

Gynecologists became interested in laser surgery after they observed its use in treating vocal cord papillomas in children. CO₂ laser was directed to the vocal cord tumor under magnification of an operating microscope. The delivery unit used to aim and control the laser beam is called a micromanipulator. This system allows the surgeon to precisely deliver the laser to the tissue. It was attached to the microscope for easy access by the surgeon. The beam was reflected to the tissue by a mirror controlled by a joystick. After observing the effective use with this instrumentation on children’s vocal cord papillomas, surgeons adapted the system to gynecology. They substituted a colposcope for the operating microscope and used it to treat the cervix and vulva (Fig. 16.5). Micromanipulators can be fitted with focusing lenses similar to a zoom lens of a camera. This allows the spot to be varied in size without changing the optical focus for the surgeon.
Application of Laser Gynecology

**FIGURE 16.6.** Cervical vaporization defect.
After the cervix has been vaporized to the approximate depth, an additional 3 mm of endocervical canal is vaporized to avoid endocervical prolapse and to ensure that the new squamocolumnar junction is just inside of the external os.

**Laser Hand Piece**
As CO₂ laser became popular in the 1980s, other delivery systems were developed, including the freehand mode. This system is composed of a focusing lens contained within a metal tube that is held in the hand. The lens typically has a short focal length, capable of producing a very small 0.2-mm spot size. With this narrow beam, the laser is used as a cutting instrument. By pulling the hand piece away from the tissue, the surgeon creates a larger spot size used for vaporizing tissue. Cutting and coagulating external genital surgery became its principal application (Fig. 16.6).

**ENDOSCOPY**
The next advancement was the use of lasers in laparoscopy. CO₂ laser was delivered through large channels in a single puncture operative laparoscope. The large channels were necessary to transmit the beam and avoid reflections from the channel walls. Rigid wave guides were introduced that could also be used through ancillary 3 mm or larger channels.

**FIBER OPTICS**
As fiber lasers including Nd:YAG and KTP became available, they were also delivered through small channels. Fiber delivery is less cumbersome and produces less plume and more hemostasis. It requires smaller channels. The aiming beam is easily seen. This mode of delivery is especially useful in hysteroscopy because fiber lasers could be used through fluid distending media. Neodymium and holmium YAG are delivered through optical quartz fibers 100 to 600 microns in diameter. At the tip of the fiber, the beam diverges, so power density is greatest just off the tip of the fiber. The beam also can also be defocused by moving the tip of the fiber farther away from the target tissue.

**LASER SURGERY OF THE LOWER REPRODUCTIVE TRACT**
The first use of lasers in gynecology was to treat cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) and visible condylomata of the lower reproductive tract. The precise cutting and ablative properties of CO₂ laser prompted an interest in this surgery. It was successfully used in the 1980s, and CO₂ laser was enthusiastically received by many gynecologists. Colposcopy provided an accurate means of identifying the location and size of the lesions, and CO₂ laser provided unparalleled precision to treat these conditions. Micromanipulator delivery is most popular, although another alternative is using the laser hand piece while visualizing the surgical field through a colposcope.

CIN, later also referred to as squamous intraepithelial lesions (SILs), has been treated successfully by either in situ destruction or excision. In 1968, Paluske and Townsend reported
a series in which cryosurgery was used to destroy CIN. From the beginning, however, the use of destructive procedures that did not produce a palpable specimen evoked strong criticism, fearing that lack of a complete pathologic examination of the target tissue could result in a missed diagnosis of invasion. In the late 1960s, Cartier in Paris developed a cutting loop electrode with a 2 mm tip that, when properly used, produced only a very small amount of thermal damage in the excised specimen. A larger wire loop was designed for excisional cervical surgery in the United States. Its use, known as a loop electrode excision procedure (LEEP) or a large loop excision of transformation zone (LLETZ), provided a tissue specimen as an alternative to ablation procedures.

### Laser Surgery of the Cervix

Although CIN has been described as a noninvasive surface phenomenon, it is well known that the process involves the endocervical crypts. The work of Te Linde, Danforth, Flumen, Burghardt, and others pointed out that the endocervical crypts were involved in CIN, but it was Anderson and Hartley in 1950 who really emphasized the therapeutic implications; namely, adequate depth of destruction or excision is required to achieve satisfactory results. Anderson and Hartley measured the depth of crypt involvement and found that 99% of CIN extends no further than 4 mm from the surface into the cervical crypt. A logical assumption can then be made. If an area of intraepithelial neoplasia on the cervix was either excised or vaporized to a depth greater than 4 mm, virtually all of the neoplastic process would be treated. This concept of depth-of-crypt involvement is extremely important to the surgeon, for it dictates a measurable depth of destruction to be achieved by vaporization of the transformation zone if a surgical specimen is not to be removed by conization (Fig. 16.6).

It follows that if the lesion of intraepithelial neoplasia is visualized in its entirety (i.e., if the borders of the lesion are clearly seen on the cervix, and the lesion does not extend up into the canal), then it can be biopsied and correctly diagnosed as intraepithelial neoplasia. This assumption provides the justification for all nonexcisional, ablative procedures used to destroy cervical intraepithelial disease. Laser ablation—by virtue of its ability to be delivered under colposcopic magnification and applied according to a patient’s specific, unique anatomy—is a valuable tool.

### Vaporization Conization

Conization has been defined as an operation that removes a volume of tissue from the central longitudinal axis of the cervix; this includes the external os and a certain length of endocervical canal. The actual shape of the volume of tissue removed should be determined by the distribution of the lesion and not by some preconceived geometric shape. Conization, then, is a generic term, and does not necessarily imply that a perfect cone-shaped defect has been produced in the cervix. Cones can be asymmetric and are short, long, thin, cylindrical, or any other shape that accomplishes the intended goal of complete removal of the lesion and the tissue at risk. A number of techniques have been used to perform conization operations. In laser surgery, the end result is the same. If the CIN lesion cannot be entirely visualized or a neoplasm cannot be properly diagnosed for any reason, the CIN should not be treated by an ablative procedure. The requirements for vaporization conization are listed in Table 16.3.

Vaporization conization using CO2 laser through the colposcope can be performed in the office, the clinic, or the operating room. It has the advantage of being able to vaporize intraepithelial disease occurring on unusually shaped cervices as may be seen in fetal diethylstilbestrol (DES)-exposed patients (patients with cervical-vaginal anomalies or very narrow vaginas). Using the colposcope, the laser surgeon need only be able to see the lesion to treat it. This method continues to produce a most satisfactory result. General anesthesia is usually not required for cervical vaporization if the patient has been carefully reassured about the laser surgery and the nature of her disease. Preoperative medication may include antiprostaglandins; this reduces the cramping that accompanies the laser ablation. Local anesthesia is the most preferred by colposcopists. I use intracervical lidocaine 1%, injection directly into the cervix at 12, 4, and 7 o’clock. Patients who request sedation or general anesthesia are treated on an outpatient basis.

The alignment of the CO2 laser beam and the visible aiming beam is tested on a tongue blade before its use on the patient. The area is placed in a dorsal lithotomy position, and a bivalve speculum is inserted into the vagina. A suction line with a laser filter is attached to the speculum. This is necessary to maintain a clear view of the operative site. Paper drapes and flammable material are avoided because of the risk of fire. Wet towels are placed at the margins of the operative field. No special prep is necessary. The cervix is cleaned with a 4% acetic acid solution, and the lesion to be treated is identified. The margin of the transformation zone is outlined by a series of vaporization craters, using short bursts of laser energy (Fig. 16.7). The entire transformation zone is included in the area to be vaporized. The dots are connected so that the area to be treated is completely outlined. A spot size of 2 mm is used for the vaporization operation. An experienced laser surgeon may use a higher power setting and be able to direct the laser more rapidly, shortening the operative time. Lower power settings mean greater ease of vaporization and very accurate observation of the depth of the defect. The vaporization is carried to 7 mm (Fig. 16.8). The depth can be measured with a calibrated measuring device. Often, the cervix and the area of the external os are not flush, and an accurate measurement of depth of vaporization may be difficult. For this reason, it seems more accurate to divide the cervix into sections and then destroy the tissue section by section. In this way, part of the normal cervical anatomy is preserved throughout the operation, and even though the topography of the cervix may change, the exact depth of destruction can always be measured for each section. The margin peripheral to the transformation zone is treated for a distance of 2 to 5 mm.

Cervical stenosis can occur following ablative treatment. In a series of cervical stenosis patients reported by Valle and colleagues, Marlow successfully treated cervical stenosis with CO2 and YAG lasers. Lasers have also been used to successfully treat stenosis in other organs. Laser surgery is preferred because of the minimal damage to adjacent tissue. Urologists...
treat narrowing of the prostatic urethra with holmium YAG laser. Oncologists treat obstructive stenosis of the esophagus with photodynamic therapy.

Bleeding is usually not encountered during vaporization procedures; however, if bleeding does occur, a wet cotton-tipped applicator is used to tamponade the vessel. The power density is then lowered by defocusing the beam or by slightly reducing the power, and the bleeding point is coagulated by using a rapid circular motion to surround the vessel. If bleeding is not controlled with this technique, other forms of hemostasis should be considered.

**Excision Laser Conization of the Cervix**

The goals of excisional conization are to produce a conization biopsy specimen that is adequate for pathologic examination and, if possible, excise all disease. The indications for laser excisional conization are the same as for cold-knife conization:

1. The lesion extends into the canal and cannot be entirely seen.
2. The entire transformation zone cannot be visualized.
3. Abnormal cytology is noted in the absence of a positive colposcopy.
4. There is positive endocervical curettage.
5. Invasive cancer cannot be ruled out by biopsy.

The average excisional conization penetrates the cervical struma more deeply than the vaporization conization, and the patient may experience more discomfort, as well as more bleeding, with this procedure. Although excisional conization can be satisfactorily performed with local anesthesia, I do not hesitate to perform this procedure on an outpatient basis under general anesthesia. The surgeon determines the size of the cone to fit the patient and lesion. A weighted speculum is placed in the vagina, and the anterior lip of the cervix is grasped with an atraumatic tenaculum. The cervix is painted with 4% acetic acid, and the patient is recolposcoped. The borders of the lesion are carefully noted. Following a tongue blade test of the beam, I use CO₂ laser settings of 25 to 50 W and the smallest spot size of 0.5 to 1 mm. Smoke evacuation is carried out with a filtered suction. Gentle traction with a laser conization hook allows the surgeon to tailor the cone shape to the distribution of the lesion or transformation zone. A water-soaked small cotton applicator can be inserted into the canal as a backstop to prevent deeper incision in the upper canal.

Excisional conization of the cervix by LEEP has provided an alternative procedure to laser with shorter operating time and reduced instrumentation expenses.

**Laser Combination Procedures**

One application of CO₂ laser is the combination cone. The central lesion in the cervix is removed by LEEP or knife conization. This is followed by laser vaporization of intraepithelial disease extending to the vagina. Large areas of intraepithelial neoplasia and multifocal lesions that involve much of the cervix and then extend into the vagina or even involve the vulva can be treated by this combination laser procedure. Peripheral portions of the lesion should be previously biopsied and proven to be benign. Thus, the indications for both excisional and vaporization have been met, and a conservative procedure has been performed. Combination procedures are the most conservative procedures possible because the operation is microsurgical and tailored to destroy the smallest amount of tissue.

**Postoperative Instructions**

Patients undergoing laser surgery to the cervix usually require very little postoperative care. The patient is seen in
postoperative follow-up in 2 to 4 weeks. Cotton is avoided for at least 4 weeks. Temperature elevations above 38°C and bleeding heavier than her normal menses are reported. About 15% of these patients will have some small amount of vaginal bleeding. Excessive bleeding is encountered in only about 2% of the patients. The patient is allowed to return to work within 48 hours. The very definite advantages associated with laser are listed in Table 16.4.

### TABLE 16.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADVANTAGES OF LASER CONIZATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is less bleeding than with a scalpel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is less tissue damage than with the electric cautery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The procedure has advantages over cryosurgery in that it can be done with much more precision, and the results are better for lesions of all sizes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morbidity is low.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All types and extents of intraepithelial neoplasia can be treated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The most conservative procedures can be performed by using combinations of vaporization and excision.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Results of Laser Surgery of the Cervix

Baggish and Dorsey reported a series of more than 4,000 cases of CIN treated by laser with an overall success rate between 96% and 97%. In those patients monitored by colposcopy, cytology, and biopsy for 1 year or more, vaporization procedures and excision conization procedures seem to produce about the same cure rate. In addition, cure rates do not vary when degree of CIN is taken into consideration. Persad and colleagues reported 1,126 patients with CIN treated over 13 years by laser with no evidence of recurrence or persistence in 92%. The median follow-up was 60 months. Other authors, such as Burke and colleagues, Reid (1987), and Wright, report success rates between 91% and 98%.

Laser Surgery of the Vulva

Unlike the cervix, the vulva is often the site of multifocal disease. There is no doubt that the concepts of accurate identification of disease and proper depth of destruction must also be applied to the therapy of vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia (VIN). Vulvar laser surgery should be done with the aid of the colposcope, and I usually prefer to use the micromanipulator. It is also imperative that the surgeon performing laser surgery on the vulva or the vagina has a working knowledge of vulvovaginal histology and of the variations in thickness of normal and abnormal neoplastic vulvar/vaginal epithelium.

Vulvar skin is composed of two layers, epidermis and dermis (Fig. 16.9). The margin between epidermis and dermis is an irregular one because of the rete ridges. Between the rete ridges are projections of dermis known as dermal papillae. The dermis can be divided into two layers: the superficial papillary layer and the deeper reticular layer. There are also skin appendages, such as pilosebaceous follicles, sebaceous glands, and apocrine glands, which project deep into the dermis. VIN, as well as human papillomavirus (HPV), may involve skin appendages and epidermis. Although the thickness of the epidermis may be a fraction of a millimeter, the dermis may measure 7 to 8 mm in thickness, and skin appendages may penetrate the full thickness. It is the goal of the laser surgeon to remove the involved epidermis and a portion of the skin appendage that may also be involved in the disease process.

When the epidermis is removed by the plastic surgeon’s knife in obtaining a split-thickness graft, or when the epidermis is removed by the laser surgeon during a vaporization procedure for intraepithelial neoplasia, the donor site or the vaporization site heals without replacement by a skin graft because the remaining skin appendages located in the dermis have not been completely destroyed. Each skin appendage serves as a source of squamous epithelium, so that when reepithelialization takes place, the process proceeds from the skin appendages. On the other hand, if the entire thickness of the dermis is taken and the skin appendages are completely destroyed, the operative site must be grafted or closed. It is important for the surgeon to review vulvar biopsies to judge the extent, if any, of disease into the skin appendages.

Unlike cervical vaporization, the depth of vaporization on the vulva cannot be measured. The expert laser microsurgeon is able to recognize the depth of ablation and can remove epidermis so accurately that the papillary dermis is not entirely destroyed. The papillary dermis can be identified at colposcopic magnifications. Reid (1991) has suggested that four surgical planes can be recognized. The first surgical plane represents the epidermis down to the basement membrane. The second surgical plane is described as extending into the papillary layer of the dermis so that the laser surgeon removes both the epidermis and the papillary dermis. The third surgical plane reaches well into the reticular dermis and uncovers the coarse collagen bundles that can be seen through the colposcope as grayish white fibers. The fourth surgical plane involves complete removal of the skin right down to the underlying subdermal fat. If this level is reached, healing must take place from the periphery, or a graft must be supplied.

### Condylomata Accuminata

The human papillomavirus involves the epidermis and may also involve the superficial portions of skin appendages. One of the common mistakes of the novice surgeon is to go too deeply into the dermis in an attempt to destroy condylomata. Although only the warty lesion itself plus the surrounding epidermal margin need to be destroyed, a power density that is sufficient to
accomplish this maneuver without creating excessive carbonization at the impact site must be used. Power densities below 600 W/cm² cause excessive carbonization and, although the carbonized surface of the vulva will raise laser-impact site temperatures to more than 600 °C. The power densities that I like to use are between 600 and 1,500 W/cm², and a 2- to 3-mm focal spot size with a power setting of 15 to 30 W will accomplish this. Each condyloma should be identified and the laser beam directed at this target. Laser vaporizes the condyloma directly with the beam. The char and debris are wiped away, and the proper surgical level is colposcopically identified. Vaporization is taken to the papillary dermis (second surgical plane). Cold normal saline is used to cool the vulvar skin, because cooling helps reduce the heat diffusion and, therefore, the resultant tissue injury lateral to the laser impact site.

Vulvar Intraepithelial Neoplasia

It is impossible to colposcopically differentiate between some forms of HPV lesions that occur on the vulva and significant VIN. Therefore, it is extremely important to obtain a biopsy specimen of the vulva in as many areas as necessary to correctly identify the pathology before laser surgery. Local or general anesthesia may be used for vulvar laser surgery. In the case of multiple lesions or very large areas of involvement, general anesthesia is more practical (Fig. 16.9). Despite extensive vulvar laser surgery, patients usually are allowed to return home on the day of the operation.

When laser surgery is used, the vulva is recolposcopied, and 4% acetic acid is applied to demonstrate areas and borders of neoplastic or viral involvement. The larger areas are outlined in the manner described for CIN. If a lesion is large, it may be divided into smaller areas for lasing, because this provides a more accurate approach. As soon as the laser beam is passed over the surface of the tissue, all landmarks disappear. Proper identification and marking of the limits of the disease by the laser is a highly necessary step in treatment. A spot size of 2 to 3 mm and a power setting of 15 to 30 W may be used, depending on the surgeon's skill in manipulating the beam and spot size. Although destruction must be carried to the third surgical plane (i.e., the reticular dermis), the first step in vulvar laser surgery always involves identifying the papillary dermis. When the tiny micropapules of this layer are seen, the laser surgeon again ablates through this most superficial dermis, wiping away char and identifying the underlying reticular dermis. Often intermittent pulses of laser energy can improve surgical control of the laser beam. Instead of reducing the power of the beam, it is possible to use the mechanical timer on the laser console to reduce exposure by delivering one-tenth-second to one-twentieth-second bursts of laser energy. This technique allows the surgeon time to react to the microsurgical review of the tissue and more easily control the rate of energy delivery, thus too-deep penetration, char, and residual thermal damage are also reduced to a minimum.

Postoperative Care

If the lasing has been extensive, a Foley catheter may be required to avoid the immediate discomfort caused by urinary salts on the denuded vulvar surface. Catheters can be placed either through the urethra or suprapubically. Suprapubic drainage avoids the deposit of urinary salts on the wound, reducing pain and possible infection.

Consequently, an antibacterial cream or ointment, such as sulfadine cream or bacitracin ointment, is applied to the laser treated tissue to protect the raw surface from agglutination and to help prevent superficial infection. The patient must be given instructions to keep the vulvar folds separated, and the application of this medication helps with this respect. An ice pack is placed on the vulva when the patient leaves the operating room. Sitz baths begin the first day after laser surgery and are continued two times a day until the patient is no longer uncomfortable and the vulvar area is well on its way to epithelialization. The patient is seen in a week to ensure there is no agglutination of vulvar folds.

Results of Vulvar Laser Surgery

The results of laser surgery on the vulva have been quite satisfactory, and there are some definite advantages to using the CO₂ laser for this disease as opposed to using conventional skinning vulvectomy. These again include accurate ablation of relatively large areas and a more controlled depth of removal because of colposcopically identifiable tissue planes (Fig. 16.10). Rapid healing usually occurs because of relatively little residual thermal damage. In Dorsey's series of more than 100 patients with intraepithelial neoplasia, 1-year cure rates have been more than 90%. Other lower reproductive tract laser surgeons report similar figures. One of the greatest benefits of vulvar laser surgery is that normal vulvar anatomy, particularly the labia minora and clitorus, is maintained (Fig. 16.11). This may not be possible when skinning vulvectomy is performed.

Vaginal intraepithelial neoplasia (VAIN) and associated HPV infections are among the most difficult lower reproductive tract intraepithelial neoplasias to treat for a number of reasons:

1. The vagina has a large surface area, which is difficult to visualize colposcopically.
2. There are many rugae and folds in the vagina.
3. The angle of the vaginal axis makes it difficult to treat by perpendicular beam impact.
4. The vaginal fornices are difficult to stabilize because they may vary in color from a pale grayish white to the intense whiteness produced by hyperkeratosis. Often the lesions are multifocal and the borders are usually distinct, although the lesions may be somewhat serpiginous. VAIN may appear as an iodine-free zone. In the postmenopausal patient, it is helpful to treat the patient with topical estrogen for 2 weeks before examination for optimal accuracy of the iodine test.

The laser microsurgery is particularly aggressive in obtaining adequate biopsy specimens for VAIN. If the patient has had a hysterectomy, the lateral fornix may contain a dimple that must be everted for adequate visualization and biopsy. A laser hook or skin hook can be used to evert this area and stabilize the tissue so that appropriate biopsy can be obtained. The surgeon should be certain of the noninvasive nature of the disease before vaporization is performed.

Technique for Laser Vaporization Of Vain

The squamous epithelium of the mucous membrane of the vagina rests on a basement membrane. Below this is the lamina propria of the vagina, and this layer corresponds to the dermis of the vulvar skin. Below the lamina propria is a layer of muscle,
loose connective tissue, and fat. When the vaginal epithelium is destroyed, there must be visual identification of the underlying lamina propria because, as in the case of the vulva, it is impossible to accurately measure the depth of destruction in this very irregular area. Because the vaginal squamous epithelium is only a fraction of a millimeter thick and there are no skin appendages in the vagina, ablation is a superficial operation. Exposing the vaginal epithelium by manipulating the speculum for diagnosis and laser treatment is painful for most patients. The surgeon often cocks the speculum to one side and shoots through the open sides to manipulate the target into a position that is perpendicular to the laser beam. The vaginal rugae must also be ironed out to ensure even laser energy application. All of this is most uncomfortable. For this reason, most patients with VAIN require general anesthesia on an outpatient basis.

The micromanipulator is preferred for laser VAIN treatment because it eliminates bulky and unnecessary instrumentation from the vagina. A spot size of 2 mm and power settings of 15 to 30 W are used. Large areas are subdivided so that more accurate ablation can be performed. The laser beam is rapidly passed over the area, and the epidermis is lifted away from the underlying lamina propria. A wet sponge or cotton swab is used to wipe away char and coagulated epithelium. Often the surgeon will find that the tops of rugae have been removed, but the troughs or valleys in between still contain viable dysplastic epithelium. With proper use of the speculum and other instruments, this problem is easily overcome. Adequate margins of 5 mm or more are used.

**Postoperative Care for Vaginal Laser Surgery**

Much of the discomfort encountered in postoperative vaginal laser surgery stems from laser wounds in the vaginal introitus. Because VAIN and VIN are so often multifocal diseases, many of these patients will have had extensive laser surgery of the entire lower reproductive tract. In addition to sitz baths and protective vulvar creams, we also use daily vaginal applications of either estrogen or sulfa cream or of some other bacteriostatic preparation. With extensive laser treatment, vaginal walls can touch each other. The patient should also be examined at intervals to make sure that vaginal coaptation is not occurring. Vaginal healing usually takes place from the periphery of the wound because of the lack of skin appendages in vaginal mucosa. If the laser surgeon has been thorough and the denuded area is large, healing is often delayed, and granulation tissue may result. This granulation tissue can be removed and the wound then treated with silver nitrate.
FIGURE 16.11. Laser surgery to vulva for multifocal VIN. Treatment is tailored to intraepithelial lesion’s distribution. Normal clitoral and perianal tissue is preserved.

Results of Laser Vaporization of VIN
Dorsey reported more than 80 patients treated with CO2 laser for VIN with a recurrence rates for multifocal HPV-associated VIN of 30% within the first year. Patients with unicentric VIN had a better than 90% chance of cure with one laser surgery. Townsend and colleagues have reported very satisfactory cure rates in the laser therapy of this disease.

Indications for Laser Surgery and HPV Infection
Although 1-year cure rates produced by laser surgery for lower reproductive tract intraepithelial neoplasia have been very satisfactory, particularly in cervical cases, the persistence or recurrence of wart virus lesions has been discouraging to patients and physicians alike. Our inability to cure HPV manifestations has led many laser surgeons to question the indications for laser surgery for this disease. Most agree that intraepithelial neoplasia should be treated; however, disagreement concerning the advisability or necessity of therapy for minor HPV infection prevails. For example, patients who have evidence of HPV infection on a cytologic smear or who have a whitish change in the vaginal introitus after application of acetic acid are dubious candidates for laser surgery. Because recurrence or persistence of subclinical HPV is so common, a more logical approach is to monitor these patients carefully but not subject them all to surgery unless significant change occurs.

Anal Intraepithelial Neoplasia
Because of the high frequency of multifocal disease, colposcopic examination is not complete without inspection of the perianal tissue and the anal canal. The same techniques that were described earlier are used for the diagnosis and treatment of intraepithelial neoplasia and HPV in this region. An anoscope is used to inspect the anal canal. The surgeon should be careful to avoid lasing hemorrhoids with CO2 laser because of its poor hemostasis with large vessels. A theoretic hazard of laser surgery in this region is the ignition or possible explosion of methane gas from the bowel. Some surgeons insert a wet gauze sponge in the rectum to keep stool out of the field. I have never experienced this complication.

INTRAABDOMINAL LASER SURGERY
Intraabdominal laser surgery has provided a significant and useful new tool for surgery in gynecology. It is unique and offers an alternative to the knife and electrosurgical instruments. Its use in the abdomen began in the late 1970s, and by the first part of the 1980s, there were substantial number of reports from both Europe and the United States dealing primarily using CO2 laser. Numerous reports attested to the efficacy of laser in both reproductive and reconstructive surgery (Table 16.5).

The advantages of laser surgery in the abdomen include precision, limited adjacent tissue damage, rapid healing, minimal scarring, and the ability to treat areas of difficult access from a remote site. An example of the minimal trauma of laser on tissue is the research work of Bern, who demonstrated the ability to remove intracellular chromosomal material with the carbon dioxide laser without destroying the cell. Extensive studies of laser energy in basic science preceded its use in

TABLE 16.5
LASER LAPAROSCOPY PROCEDURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fulguration or excision of endometriosis</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lysis of adhesions</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovarian cystectomy</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division of uterosacral ligaments</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presacral neuroectomy</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salpingo-oophorectomy and variations</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removal of ectopic pregnancy</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myomectomy</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neosalpingostomy</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retropubic urethropexy</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sural colpopexy</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 16.6
INFERTILITY LASER PROCEDURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adhesiolysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenestration of paraovarian and polycystic cysts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fimbrioplasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaporation of endometriosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neosalpingostomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resection of ectopic pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubal anastomosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubal implant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myomectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metroplasty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
with an operative laparoscope to treat ectopic pregnancy. The
and tissue suturing, and in 1978, Bruhat used the CO₂ laser
electrical instruments for tubal sterilization. During the 1970s,
Laparoscopy was introduced in the late 1960s with unipolar
the endoscopic delivery of the laser beam.

Free hand delivery offers an alternative
disadvantages of the microscopic delivery are
however, is limited to the viewing angle of the microscope. The
angle with which the laser beam can be delivered,
focus and microscopic focus are the same. Control of the
microscope. The greatest precision is obtained when the laser
is 300 to 350 mm to provide room between the patient and the
scopic delivery provides the greatest magnification of the sur-
microscopic delivery was used first in open abdominal infertility surgery (Table 16.6). Micro-
field for laser use. The optimum focal distance of the lens
is 300 to 350 mm to provide room between the patient and the
the microscope. The greatest precision is obtained when the laser
beam focus and microscopic focus are the same. Control of the
is in the micromanipulator, so no instrument need be in
the field. The angle with which the laser beam can be delivered,
however, is limited to the viewing angle of the microscope. The
advantages and disadvantages of the microscopic delivery are
listed in Table 16.7. Free hand delivery offers an alternative
without this limitation (Table 16.8).

Today the major interest in gynecologic surgery has shifted
to the endoscopic delivery of the laser beam.

GYNECOLOGIC LASER LAPAROSCOPY

Laparoscopy was introduced in the late 1960s with unipolar
electrical instruments for tubal sterilization. During the 1970s,
Semm described the techniques of laparoscopic vessel ligation
and tissue suturing, and in 1978, Bruhat used the CO₂ laser
with an operative laparoscope to treat ectopic pregnancy. The

TABLE 16.6
MICROSCOPIC DELIVERY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Greatest magnification</td>
<td>Delivery angle restricted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spot-size control</td>
<td>Difficult to change spot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ease of deep pelvic surgery</td>
<td>Larger spot size with a greater margin of injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument-free field</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant focus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 16.7

METHODS FOR ACHIEVING LAPAROSCOPIC HEMOSTASIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unipolar electrosurgery</th>
<th>Bipolar electrosurgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lasers coagulation</td>
<td>Extracorporeal ligatures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extracorporeal sutures</td>
<td>Intracorporeal sutures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laser coagulation</td>
<td>Endoscopy (Semm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bipolar electrocautery</td>
<td>Hemoclip</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ability to cut and vaporize tissue, and to control bleeding as
well, provided gynecologic laser surgeons with the tools nec-
essary to do complicated surgical procedures. Laser alone may
not result in hemostasis with large vessels. Conventional meth-
ods for achieving hemostasis must also be mastered by the laser
laparoskop (Table 16.9). These include ligation of vascular
pedicls and electrical surgical coagulation. The laser is a sur-
gical tool and should not be considered a complete system
of laparoscopy by itself. It should be viewed as an instrument
that forms a part of our laparoscopic armamentarium.

The CO₂ laser can be connected to an operative laparo-
scope through a laser coupler that transmits the beam through
a focusing lens and then down a special channel in the lapa-
scope. Interchangeable lenses provide focal lengths commen-
surate with the length of the laparoscope. Focal spot sizes pro-
duced by these systems are usually a bit less than a millimeter
in diameter. The CO₂ laser is an excellent laser for laparoscopic
usage because it cuts quickly, produces very little thermal dam-
age, and can be used for vaporization, coagulation, or exci-
sion. It is very safe in the hands of a knowledgeable surgeon
because of its almost complete absorption at the surface of
the tissue containing water. The mirrors in the CO₂ laser arm
must be very carefully aligned. The fiber-optic laser’s energy
through flexible small quartz fibers simplifies its use in endo-
scopic surgery. The deeper penetration of these wavelengths,
however, must always be kept in mind.

The blue or green aiming beams of these lasers are more
easily seen against the reddish background of the abdominal
organs than is the helium-neon beam. The quartz laser fibers
will pass through an 18-gauge or smaller needle, so hand pieces
designed for suction and irrigation also may have a central
channel that accommodates the fiber. This enables the surgeon
to use suction, irrigation, and laser energy through one hand
piece, and these hand pieces fit easily through a 3-mm trocar
sheath. The disadvantages of fiber-optic lasers are that they do
not cut quite as well as CO₂ lasers and are less safe because of
their penetration of both tissue and water. The safe and effective use of the laser in laparoscopy has
been demonstrated by Daniell and Brown, Daniell and Her-
ber, Feste, Martin, Kelly and Roberts, Baggish, Dorsey, and
Nezhat and colleagues. Laser laparoscopy has translated into
shorter hospital stays, reduced costs, and less scarring. The
disadvantages of laser laparoscopy include the expense of the
equipment, outdated of instrumentation, and requirement for
special training and maintenance.

YAG laser energy was first used through the laparoscope
in 1982. Some laser surgeons consider the delivery of YAG
energy by bare fiber too dangerous for use in the abdominal
cavity because of the deep penetration of the YAG beam and
danger of injury to organs below the surface.

TABLE 16.8
FREE HAND DELIVERY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can be used without magnification</td>
<td>Cumbersome equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Develops smallest spot size possible</td>
<td>Shallow depth of focus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus and defocus is easy</td>
<td>Difficult to maintain precise focus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highest power density for minimal tissue injury</td>
<td>Handpiece must be in field</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technique

Under general inhalation anesthesia, the patient is placed in a modified lithotomy position so that the thigh is almost level with the patient’s abdomen. This enables the surgeon to direct the laparoscope cephalad. This maneuver may be important not only for exploration but also for operating at the pelvic brim. If the hip is flexed and the thighs are elevated, the scope and perhaps the accessory instrumentation cannot be manipulated freely because they will be in contact with the patient’s thighs. After preparation and draping, an intratracheal manipulator device is placed into the uterus for two purposes: to elevate or maneuver the uterus during surgery without having to use intraabdominal instruments for this task and to perform chromoperturbation when necessary. If adhesions are suspected to the laparoscopy trocar insertion site, I prefer to use a technique demonstrated by Professor Palmer of Paris. Using his technique, the insertion site is selected in the midclavicular line, two finger widths below the left costal margin. The insufflation needle is attached to syringe half filled with normal saline. After inserting the needle through the abdominal wall, an aspiration is performed to rule out vessel or bowel perforation. If the aspiration is negative, the normal saline is injected and should have minimal resistance. Resistance indicates that the needle tip is not within the abdominal cavity. If this test is negative, the gas insufflation is initiated. A low opening pressure confirms correct needle placement within an open space in the peritoneum. Next, the laparoscopic trocar is inserted at the needle site. Additional trocars are inserted under direct vision.

Irrespective of the type of laser used, a superior suction-irrigation device that does not obstruct is needed. The new rapid-fill automatic insufflators are highly desirable because they can be set to maintain a constant intraabdominal pressure and will deliver a flow of CO₂ and simultaneously record intraabdominal pressure. A high-intensity light source is also of great importance. A video camera is attached to the laparoscope, and the operative endoscopy is performed while the surgeon views the video monitor (Fig. 16.12). The advantage of video usage is that the entire operating room becomes a team. The assistant is always aware of the progress of the operation, and the surgeon is able to stand erect while inspecting all parts of the abdominal cavity.

Most of our advanced operative laparoscopic procedures require three trocars. The laparoscope is most commonly inserted in the umbilicus margin. Ancillary trocars are placed according to the pathology found, the procedure planned, and the surgeon’s preferences. They are inserted under direct vision to avoid abdominal wall and deep pelvic vessel injury. The anterior pelvis should be inspected before the trocar insertion to identify the bladder margin if possible and avoid injury to this organ. Transillumination of the anterior abdominal wall helps to identify large vessels and rectus muscle margins.

I prefer to use 5-mm trocars and a 30-degree laparoscope for diagnostic use. The 30-degree laparoscope allows the surgeon to see the undersurface of the abdominal wall better. For operative laparoscopy, trocars of larger diameters are selected depending on the intended use such as the need for specimen pouches. Laparoscopic needle holders and curved needles can be passed without difficulty through larger sleeves.

After the trocars and instruments have been inserted, the laser source is attached to the laparoscope or ancillary instrument. Calibration of the laser is tested. I prefer 10 W for 0.1-second settings for this. Beam alignment, aiming beam, spot size, power setting, and continuous or pulsed delivery is tested on a tongue blade. Section, filtration of the plume, and irrigation systems are prepared.

Power setting and timing mode for the surgery to be performed is selected. Pulsed delivery is used where precise tissue effect is important. If the aiming beam is difficult to see within the pelvis, decreasing the laparoscopic light may be helpful. The operative site is inspected and a suction device positioned in close proximity to maintain visibility if significant plume is anticipated. Adequate backstops for the laser beam are checked in CO₂ is used. Care is taken not to laser tissue if it is covered with a layer of water because this will result in the fluid boiling and unnecessary thermal damage.

Carbon Dioxide Adhesiolysis

Laparoscopy has greatly increased our capacity to identify postoperative and postinflammatory pelvic adhesions. Endometriosis is the third common cause of adhesions. Laparoscopy is used to diagnose endometriosis at early stages before the development of dense adhesions. Advanced endometriosis is associated with vascular adhesions that can be treated with lasers. Omentum adhesions to the anterior abdominal wall are handled rapidly and efficiently with laser through an operative laparoscope alone without insertion of other trocars. Bowel adhesions prove a more difficult problem. A pulsed laser can be used if a backstop can be manipulated between loops of bowel, or if the loop of bowel can be held gently apart so the laser energy is directly applied to the adhesion without fear of bowel damage. Laser adhesiolysis must consider vital structures such as bowel, ureters, and major blood vessels that may be attached or in close proximity. Filmy adhesions can be vaporized and divided with low power density and pulsed for precise control. With appropriate technique, the adhesion can be vaporized without damage to underlying structures such as tube, ovary, or bowel. Thick adhesions between delicate structures such as tube and ovary may be lased with intermediate power density and spot size.

The proper power density must be selected for each laser procedure. In general, power densities used in intraabdominal laparoscopy are relatively low. Because CO₂ laser energy continues to travel once it cuts through the target tissue, the surgeon must select an appropriate backstop (Fig. 16.13). Various rods are available to use as both dissecting tools and laser...
Laparoscopy laser lysis of adhesions. The laser beam is delivered within the hollow ancillary probe to the pelvic adhesion. The distal end probe acts as a backstop and limits the laser vaporization to the pelvic adhesion. The instrument’s use must consider multiple other variables such as the patient’s anatomy.

Without a backstop, glass, Pyrex, and quartz rods should be avoided because they may shatter under the intense heat of the laser. Water that is pooled or injected retroperitoneal serves as an excellent backstop for CO2 laser. Titanium with dulled surfaces or blackened rods can also be used. Constant irrigation with body-temperature physiologic solutions washes away any char that may accumulate.

Although CO2 laser is superb for coagulating small bleeders, vessels larger than 0.5 mm in diameter may be difficult to coagulate. If it is not immediately apparent that the laser is achieving hemostasis without significant damage to tissue, conventional methods of hemostasis such as electrosurgical coagulation or suturing, should be used. A filtered evacuation system to remove the laser plume is needed to maintain a clear field of view.

Surgery using laser energy has been compared with mechanical and electrosurgical devices. Evaluation of a single instrument’s use must consider multiple other variables such as the patient’s anatomy, individual surgeon’s skill, absence of long-term follow-up, and the use of concomitant multiple adjuvant therapies. This makes evidence-based comparisons difficult if not impossible.

Laser Surgery of the Fallopian Tube

Laparoscopic tuboplasty using electrosurgical instruments was reported in 1980 by Gomel and others with successful outcomes. The ability to diagnose and treat tubal obstruction during the same procedure was attractive and spurred interest in laparoscopic tuboplasty. The shortened recovery period and the potential shortened time to conception was also attractive. Steptoe and Edwards successfully introduced in vitro fertilization in 1978 with the term cesarean delivery of Louise Brown, who weighed 5 pounds, 12 ounces. For the 20% of couples with tubal obstruction, the expansion of assisted reproductive technology (ART) has significantly reduced the number of tubal surgeries done for fertility. There remains a group of patients who for some reason may benefit from laparoscopic surgery on the tube. Examples include patients with pain associated with tubal disease and patients who chose not to use ART. They can select laser tubal surgery with its unique capabilities. The success of this procedure is related to the preoperative integrity of the tube. The technique involves using an atraumatic grasping tool to stabilize and expose the tube. Any obstruction site including the fimbria is identified. The central site of distal obstruction can be identified by observing the vascular distribution. The tube is gently distended by intrauterine injection of dilute indigo-carmine solution. The use of a backstop is not necessary. As the laser incises the distal tube, the fimbria is immediately identified as the dye appears. Three or four radial incisions are made in the closed tube with a small spot-size laser beam so that satisfactory eversion of mucosa can be accomplished without suturing. The defocused laser beam is applied to the outside of the fimbria. Heat and the resultant contraction of desiccated tissue cause the eversion of the fimbria. Flowering of the tube is accomplished using a spot size of 3 to 5 mm and a low power setting of 2 to 3 W of CO2 laser. This technique was first described by Bruhat and is referred to as Bruhat’s procedure.

Laser Myomectomy

The indications for a laparoscopic myomectomy are the same as the indications for myomectomy in general. Significant size, rapid growth, selected cases of infertility or pressure symptoms, and heavy bleeding have all been acceptable indications for surgical intervention. Pedunculated leiomyomas can be easily removed at laparoscopy, but intramural myomas that are deeply imbedded in the myometrium may pose a real challenge.

Laparoscopic myomectomy is a controversial procedure because of the need to perform careful uterine reconstruction if the patient desires future childbearing. This operation should not be attempted by any laparoscopist who is not familiar with advanced laparoscopic suturing techniques or ability to close the myometrium in layers. An injection of a dilute solution of vasopressin is made to the margins of the leiomyoma and the surrounding myometrium. Lower abdominal accessory trocars are used according to the size and location of the fibroids. Incisions to remove the fibroids are made away from the ovaries and tubes if possible to reduce postoperative adhesions to these structures. Lateral forceps are used to grasp the myometrium, and this is gently stripped away from the underlying myoma, much in the way that an orange is peeled. Laser is used to coagulate vessels on the surface of the leiomyoma and, as the base is approached, to coagulate and cut vessels in that area. If excessive bleeding is encountered, bipolar coagulation or endoscopic suturing will usually control the bleeding. Constant traction is placed on the leiomyoma as it is being removed through a small line trocar. A small myoma corkscrew instrument can be used through this trocar to stabilize and exert the necessary traction. Larger intrauterine leiomyomas 6 to 8 cm in size may require morcellation using a morcellator or minilaparotomy. The specimen can also be removed through colpotomy by minilaparotomy.

Myomectomy must be carefully performed, and hemostasis must be complete at the end of the procedure. The possibility of excessive blood loss during this operation is always present, and both patient and surgeon must be prepared for immediate laparotomy (Fig. 16.14). Carbon dioxide, KTP, argon, and YAG lasers have all been used for myomectomy. Closure of the myometrial defect is accomplished using continuous layers of absorbable sutures. An
Open free-hand laser myomectomy. Retractor surfaces are covered with wet towels to prevent reflection of the laser beam.

Laser Surgery for Endometriosis

Laparoscopy provides a diagnostic and therapeutic surgical procedure for endometriosis. Continued monitoring and management also uses laparoscopy. Small implants of mild to moderate endometriosis can be effectively vaporized, coagulated, or excised with either the CO2 or the fiber-optic laser. Even small endometrial implants are surrounded by subclinical endometriosis, so a margin of vaporization or coagulation may be needed around the endometrial implant. Dense adhesions associated with advanced endometriosis can also be treated, including those located over the ovary. Cases of severe endometriosis involving the ovary in most cases is avoided because it is rarely needed except for those cases of severe endometriosis involving the ovary at the end of the surgery.


Application of Laser Gynecology

Ovarian Cystectomy

Resection of an ovarian cyst at laparoscopy is controversial. Some surgeons are concerned that spillage of an undiagnosed malignant ovarian tumor can result in the spread of the cancer. On the other hand, gynecologic oncologists are increasingly using laparoscopy in the evaluation and treatment of pelvic cancers. Although rare, most ovarian malignancies are not discovered when they are at an early stage. On the other hand, practicing gynecologists are commonly presented with ovarian cysts for treatment. The vast majority of young women with persisting cystic adnexal masses will not have ovarian cancer. If a concern for possible ovarian cancer develops, laparoscopy provides access for histologic diagnosis. The cystic masses should always be first evaluated by noninvasive means, such as pelvic ultrasound, magnetic resonance imaging, or computed tomography. Appropriate ovarian tumor markers are also available. Symptomatic parovarian cysts can be drained easily with laser. No direct contact with the cyst is necessary unless the surgeon desires to create an enlarged window or obtain tissue for histology. Unilocular, symptomatic, persisting ovarian cysts with benign imaging profile and thin walls are best suited for laparoscopy. The surgeon can encounter cysts whose contents, if spilled, can stimulate adverse peritoneal response. This group of cysts include mucinous cystadenomas and dermoids. A means for copious irrigation with a physiologic solution should be available. To avoid recurrence, ovarian endometriomas should be excised rather than vaporized. Saturating the ovary in most cases is avoided because it is rarely needed and it can result in adhesions to the ovary. Danell published a small series of patients with polycystic ovaries unresponsive to hormone treatment that were able to achieve ovulation following laser surgery to the subcapsular cysts.

Uterosacral Ligament Surgery

Pain stimuli originating from the cervix are transmitted through the uterosacral ligaments to the sacral sympathetic plexus by way of nerve roots S2, S3, and S4. This plexus is concentrated within the uterosacral ligament at its attachment to the back of the cervix. Severance of the uterosacral was first reported by Doyle in 1963. He reported relief of dysmenorrhea in 86% of 235 patients. Feist reported relief of dysmenorrhea in 78% of the women who underwent CO2 laser division of the uterosacral ligaments and who were monitored for 5 years. Lichten in 1987, in a well-controlled series, reported a success rate of more than 80% in patients followed for more than a year. Dorsey reported 60 patients undergoing uterosacral ligament division for either primary dysmenorrhea or
TABLE 16.10
CO₂ LASER LAPAROSCOPY FOR ENDOMETRIOSIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigator</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Minimal or Mild</th>
<th>Moderate</th>
<th>Severe or Extensive</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Pregnant</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Pregnant</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Pregnant</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Pregnant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENDOMETRIOSIS IN ALL PATIENTS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kelly and Roberts, 1983</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6 (60%)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 (100%)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3 (43%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0 (0%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feste, 1983</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>82 (59%)</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>62 (58%)</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>18 (58%)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2 (67%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dunill, 1985</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>26 (54%)</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>16 (67%)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>7 (47%)</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3 (33%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martin and Diamond, 1986</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>54 (47%)</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>23 (41%)</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>22 (49%)</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>9 (64%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Davis, 1986</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>37 (58%)</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>20 (65%)</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>15 (58%)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2 (29%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nezhat, 1986</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>65 (64%)</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>18 (75%)</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>32 (63%)</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>15 (56%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adamson, 1986</td>
<td>156</td>
<td>86 (55%)</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>77 (58%)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>7 (33%)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0 (0%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowman, 1986</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>18 (51%)</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>12 (63%)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>4 (31%)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2 (67%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donnez, 1987</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>40 (57%)</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>26 (62%)</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>11 (52%)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3 (43%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paulsen, 1987</td>
<td>431</td>
<td>223 (52%)</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>144 (36%)</td>
<td>174</td>
<td>81 (47%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0 (0%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gast, 1988</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>57 (47%)</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>49 (47%)</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>8 (67%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0 (0%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nezhat, 1989</td>
<td>243</td>
<td>168 (69%)</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>28 (72%)</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>60 (70%)</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>80 (68%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Totals</td>
<td>1,536</td>
<td>864 (56%)</td>
<td>839</td>
<td>479 (57%)</td>
<td>506</td>
<td>268 (53%)</td>
<td>191</td>
<td>116 (61%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ENDOMETRIOSIS AS AN ISOLATED FACTOR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigator</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Minimal or Mild</th>
<th>Moderate</th>
<th>Severe or Extensive</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Pregnant</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Pregnant</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Pregnant</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Pregnant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Feste, 1985</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>42 (70%)</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>3 (70%)</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>10 (71%)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 (50%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martin, 1985</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>23 (67%)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>9 (69%)</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>6 (55%)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>8 (80%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nezhat, 1986</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>65 (64%)</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>18 (75%)</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>32 (63%)</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>15 (56%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adamson, 1986</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>39 (65%)</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>31 (66%)</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>7 (61%)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0 (0%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paulsen, 1987</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>169 (74%)</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>109 (78%)</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>60 (68%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0 (0%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gast, 1988</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>7 (26%)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nezhat, 1989</td>
<td>243</td>
<td>168 (69%)</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>28 (72%)</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>60 (70%)</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>80 (68%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Totals</td>
<td>754</td>
<td>513 (68%)</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>226 (74%)</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>173 (67%)</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>104 (63%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NA, not available.

Dysmenorrhea associated with endometriosis. Significant pain relief occurred in 70% of the women monitored over the course of the year. The uterosacral ligament can sometimes be confused with the ureter, so the latter structure must always be positively identified. The ureter is identified at the bifurcation of the common iliac artery and traced into the pelvis to a point at which it disappears in the cardinal ligament. At the same time that the uterosacral ligament is identified, the division is planned close to its insertion into the uterus. Uterosacral ligaments vary tremendously in size and structure. The division should begin at the posterior cervical wall. Lateral to the uterosacral ligament lies a branch of the uterine artery as well as the ureter, so one should stay medial. Power settings of 20 W may be used on the CO₂ laser; on fiber-optic lasers, 10 to 15 W will suffice (Fig. 16.4).

**Tubal Pregnancy**

Laparoscopic laser surgery for tubal pregnancy was reported by Bruhat in 1978. Ampullary ectopic pregnancies are usually intramural rather than intraluminal, and this is the perfect setting for a laser incision. A dilute solution of vasopressin can be delivered percutaneously to the tube, and the laser is used for the linear salpingostomy. Hemostasis is achieved by any of the lasers, however, bipolar coagulation may be necessary for very active bleeding. Usually the pregnancy is extruded from the tube as the incision is made. Gentle traction with an atrumatic forceps or with an irrigation stream is helpful. It is not necessary or desirable to curette the tube in an effort to remove the contents. It is always necessary to monitor any conservatively treated tubal pregnancy with postoperative human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) titers to rule out persistent trophoblastic disease.

Partial salpingectomy is sometimes necessary. This may be particularly true for isthmic tubal pregnancies. Pregnancies in this region of the tube are usually intraluminal, and although they are not encountered as frequently as ampullary pregnancies, segmental rupture may occur earlier, and recanalization of the tube is infrequent. For this reason, excision of the segment may be desirable. This can be performed by coagulation on either side of the ectopic pregnancy and then excision with laser or laparoscopic scissors. Bipolar coagulation may be necessary because of the bleeding despite the use of vasopressin. The ability to diagnose ectopic pregnancy early with sensitive hCG tests and sonograms has decreased the incidence of ruptured ectopic pregnancies. This has also resulted in an increase use of nonsurgical treatment of early unruptured ectopic pregnancy. Salpingectomy is used when the tube is destroyed or when future pregnancy is not desired.

It is essential to follow any conservatively treated tubal pregnancy with postoperative hCG titers to rule out persistent trophoblastic disease.
Salpingo-Oophorectomy and Laparoscopically Assisted Hysterectomy

These procedures are now well known to most laparoscopic surgeons, and we have found the laser to be of assistance in their performance. These operations involve securing large vascular pedicles or dividing adhesions, ablating endometrial implants, and performing other tasks related to removal of the specimen.

- Dividing large pedicles that have either been coagulated with bipolar forceps or suture ligated
- Accomplishing division of adhesions, ablating endometrial implants, and performing other tasks related to removal of the specimen
- Dividing the peritoneum over the bladder, mobilizing the bladder off of the cervix finding uterosacral ligaments, and entering the vagina from above all of these specifically in laparoscopically assisted hysterectomy

Laser through the operative laparoscope allows for rapid and safe performance of these steps without the need for constantly introducing or removing instruments through the trocar sleeves.

HYSTEROSCOPIC LASER SURGERY

Nd:YAG Laser

The first endometrial ablation series by Goldstrath and colleagues in 1981 used fiberoptic YAG laser for the energy source. Because of its ability to penetrate tissue, the YAG represents an ideal laser for endometrial ablation. Myometrium is normally about 2 to 3 cm in thickness except at the corna, where it may be significantly less. Endometrial thickness can usually be measured in terms of a few millimeters. Because YAG laser energy delivered by the unclad laser fiber penetrates about 4 mm, the YAG can be used to effectively coagulate the endometrium and the inner layers of the myometrium. The risk of damage to tissues outside the myometrium is minimal.

The YAG laser is a very effective coagulating tool, and where properly used for endometrial ablation, it gave good results. Fiber laser ablation has the advantage of being able to be delivered through small caliber hysteroscopes. The width of laser beam from the fiber, however, is narrow: less than 1 mm in diameter. The treatment of the entire uterine chamber with YAG resulted in a prolonged operative time.

All patients who are candidates for endometrial ablation should have an examination of the endometrium to rule out malignancy or premalignant lesions. Atrypal adenomatous hyperplasia should not be ablated. Patients can be given medication to suppress the endometrium. Note that one of the advantages of hysteroscopic laser surgery is that normal saline distending medium avoids the dangers associated with vascular absorption of ionomic solutions used in electrosurgery. Controlled close-loop distending systems improve visualization, even in the presence of active bleeding. An effort is made to destroy all endometrium in the uterine cavity. Care is taken in proximity to the internal os of the fallopian tubes, considering the thinning of the wall at that point and the deep penetration of the YAG laser. Division of the lower endometrial cavity, the laser treatment is extended to the internal cervical os. Laser ablation of the endocervix is avoided to reduce the risk of stenosis, hematomatia, and postoperative bleeding.

Garry and associates have reported a series of more than 600 endometrial ablations accomplished with laser without complications and with an overall success rate of more than 80%.

Continuous-flow resectoscopes with rollerball, loop, or electrosurgical tips are faster and easier to use than the fiber-optic laser. Global endometrial ablation techniques have replaced the fiber lasers for most with a few selected indications. However, the original endometrial ablation techniques are used as the gold standard for effectiveness comparisons.

Other hysteroscopic surgeries that have used laser include metroplasty, division of uterine septa, destruction of uterine synchiea, and excision of submucous leiomyomas. Small caliber hysteroscopes can be used with fiber laser because of their small operative channels, an advantage when the uterine cavity or cervical canal is very narrow.

Laser Metroplasty

Any of the fiber-optic lasers can be used for division or removal of uterine septa and synchiea. It should be emphasized that when septa are divided, concomitant laparoscopy should be performed to ensure that perforation does not occur.

Pedunculated myomas may be removed by laser division of the pedicle. Deeper submucous myomas are more easily handled by resectoscopic surgery.

LASER SAFETY

It is important that surgeons, nurses, and all those associated with laser surgery have an understanding of the potential health and safety hazards associated with the use of medical laser systems and the precautions needed to use them safely. Laser injury and potential hazards can be considered related to the organ systems at risk. The eye is considered to be the organ most vulnerable to damage by laser. The eye collects and concentrates light energy on the retina. It has a natural protective mechanism in the lid and tearing reflexes. However, many lasers are extremely intense and are delivered so rapidly that injury can occur. Lasers in the visible and near infrared bands will be transmitted through the eye to the retina. With sufficient intensity, they can cause visual loss. Laser light cannot damage a tissue unless the light energy can reach and be absorbed in that tissue. Injury to the cornea and lens may occur with lasers in specific spectral bands in the ultraviolet and infrared spectrum. The laser energy necessary to injure the cornea is much greater that that required to injure the retina. Protective measures for eye protection include spectacles, goggles, or coverall goggles to filter out the specific laser wavelength while transmitting visible light. Colposcopes and operative lenses of laparoscopes shield the laser surgeon’s eyes from CO2 laser injury when delivered through these systems. The fiber-optic lasers that penetrate water and clear glass also penetrate the eye. In endoscopic surgery, special glasses or filters specific for the laser are used for protection. The optical filter is coupled to the eyepiece of the telescope and can be activated when the surgeon steps on the foot switch. As a general rule, eye protectors are required for work with class 4 lasers. Any surgical lasers with an average power exceeding 0.5 W are class 4. Most surgical lasers are class 4.
Skin is considerably less vulnerable to laser injury than the eye. Skin injury can also occur from ignition of flammable material by the laser beam. Laser hazards to operating room personnel and patient includes accidental exposure from misdirection of the laser beam. The risk of this happening can be reduced by using the “standby” mode when not actually operating. Surgeons are not highly susceptible to laser injury. However, when using handheld laser delivery systems, one should remember that the surgeon’s hand is the closest to the laser target and subject to reflection from adjacent surgical instruments. Fortunately, most reflected beams are highly divergent because the beam is normally focused. The zone of potential hazard by reflection is referred to as a nominal hazard zone (NHZ). Service personnel may encounter laser beams that are unfocused and concentrated. Electrical hazards of laser equipment are similar to other types of electrical or electronic equipment. There is no unique electrical safety problem associated with laser use. Biomedical engineer and technicians should have no difficulty providing guidance for the control of any electrical hazards from laser equipment.

Vaporization of tissue produces smoke with potential health hazards. Careful evacuation and filtration of the laser plume will reduce any hazard of laser smoke inhalation. The evacuation of the plume is most effective if the tip of the beam is within 2 cm of the tissue being treated. It is important to remove smoke from the closed abdominal cavity during laparoscopic surgery. This allows the surgeon to see clearly as well as removing it from inhalation by the operating room personnel. Special high-efficiency masks provide additional respiratory protection. Warning or indicator signs are required by ANSI Z136.1–1990 for class 4 laser treatment controlled areas.

The zone of potential hazardous reflection is referred to as a nominal hazard zone (NHZ). Service personnel may encounter laser beams that are unfocused and concentrated. Electrical hazards of laser equipment are similar to other types of electrical or electronic equipment. There is no unique electrical safety problem associated with laser use. Biomedical engineer and technicians should have no difficulty providing guidance for the control of any electrical hazards from laser equipment.

Vaporization of tissue produces smoke with potential health hazards. Careful evacuation and filtration of the laser plume will reduce any hazard of laser smoke inhalation. The evacuation of the plume is most effective if the tip of the beam is within 2 cm of the tissue being treated. It is important to remove smoke from the closed abdominal cavity during laparoscopic surgery. This allows the surgeon to see clearly as well as removing it from inhalation by the operating room personnel. Special high-efficiency masks provide additional respiratory protection. Warning or indicator signs are required by ANSI Z136.1–1990 for class 4 laser treatment controlled areas.

One should remember that the surgeon’s hand is the closest to the laser target and subject to reflection from adjacent surgical instruments. Fortunately, most reflected beams are highly divergent because the beam is normally focused. The zone of potential hazard by reflection is referred to as a nominal hazard zone (NHZ). Service personnel may encounter laser beams that are unfocused and concentrated. Electrical hazards of laser equipment are similar to other types of electrical or electronic equipment. There is no unique electrical safety problem associated with laser use. Biomedical engineer and technicians should have no difficulty providing guidance for the control of any electrical hazards from laser equipment.

Vaporization of tissue produces smoke with potential health hazards. Careful evacuation and filtration of the laser plume will reduce any hazard of laser smoke inhalation. The evacuation of the plume is most effective if the tip of the beam is within 2 cm of the tissue being treated. It is important to remove smoke from the closed abdominal cavity during laparoscopic surgery. This allows the surgeon to see clearly as well as removing it from inhalation by the operating room personnel. Special high-efficiency masks provide additional respiratory protection. Warning or indicator signs are required by ANSI Z136.1–1990 for class 4 laser treatment controlled areas.

I have used laser surgery in gynecology for more than 32 years. Over this period, many applications of laser have been recognized and defined, as outlined in this chapter. Numerous skilled surgeons throughout the world have contributed to its literature. Lasers are unique and useful tools in the hands of trained surgeons. They are not a magic wand that can be used to accomplish all surgical tasks. The introduction of lasers to gynecologic surgery occurred at a time when laser use in the military, aerospace, and everyday life was highly publicized. This focus of attention was responsible, in part, for laser’s introduction to gynecology. The initial popularity of laser surgery in turn stimulated the development of more sophisticated electro-surgical instruments. This has resulted in the improvement of the tools using electro-surgical energy. The techniques for laser surgery performed by experienced gynecologists are presented in this chapter. The long-term benefits and future use of lasers in gynecology will require carefully designed and randomized studies. 

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- Understand the physics and tissue effects of the laser you are using.
- Implement precautions needed for laser safety.
- Set the time the laser is exposed to tissue for the optimum effect.
- Biopsy tissue before coagulation or vaporization if intraepithelial stage is in doubt.
- Select appropriate backstops if laser beam can continue through the tissue being treated.

---

**Bibliography**


Sliney DH, Trokel SL. Medical lasers and their safe use. Springer-Verlag, 1993.


CHAPTER 17 ■ DIAGNOSTIC AND OPERATIVE LAPAROSCOPY
HOWARD T. SHARP, SEAN L. FRANCIS, AND ANA ALVAREZ MURPHY

DEFINITIONS

Aqua dissection—The use of fluid, most often sterile water or saline, under force, to separate one anatomical plane from another. The laparoscopic motorized irrigation is an excellent tool for performing aqua dissection.

Chromopertubation—A procedure in which a colored dye is passed through the fallopian tubes to confirm that they are patent.

Colpotomy—A surgical incision in the vagina. The -otomy part of the word is from the Greek word tome, meaning cutting.

High definition—A term initially introduced in the 1930s to define the then-new technology that replaced the experimental systems that ranged from 15 lines to about 220 lines of resolution. High-definition television (HDTV) is now defined as resolution 1,080 or 720 lines. HD is broadcast digitally and consequently produces a more vivid and realistic picture.

Morcellate—To divide into small portions.

Reposable—A trocar/sleeve kit in which disposable trocars are used with reusable sleeves in an effort to reduce the cost of disposable products while ensuring sharp, undamaged instruments more commonly found in the disposable kits.

Veres needle—A spring-loaded needle designed to allow entry into body cavities without trauma to underlying organs during laparoscopy.

Laparoscopic surgical advances have accelerated remarkably over the past decades. What was initially a primitive tool for diagnostic purposes and simple procedures such as tubal sterilization has evolved into a more coordinated system for the repair or removal of diseased abdominal and pelvic organs. As operative laparoscopy has become more complex and technology has continued to advance, new challenges and complications have been recognized. The proper use of equipment and techniques can greatly add to patient safety and satisfaction. To this end, the purpose of the chapter is to review contemporary equipment, commonly used surgical techniques, and strategies to avoid and manage complications associated with laparoscopic surgery.

HISTORY

The first description of endoscopy is attributed to Phillip Bozzini in 1805, as he attempted to view the urethral mucosa with a simple tube and candlelight. Hysteroscopy was the first gynecologic endoscopic procedure performed when Panfletoni used a cystoscope to identify uterine polyps in 1869.

Laparoscopy was first performed by Jacobaeus of Sweden in 1910, wherein a Nitze cystoscope, composed of a candle and a hollow tube, was used to illuminate the peritoneal cavity. Kalk of Germany was instrumental in developing laparoscopy into a diagnostic and surgical procedure in the early 1930s. By the end of the 1930s, laparoscopy was being used in the diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy and the performance of tubal sterilization. Raoul Palmer of France reported the use of gaseous distention with lithotomy Trendelenburg positioning in 1947. The use of “cold light” and fiberoptics were landmark innovations credited to Fourestier, Glado, Valmiere, and Kampany and Hopkins, respectively. Monopolar electrocautery for tubal sterilization was popularized in the 1960s. Semm of Germany reported advanced-operative laparoscopic procedures such as salpingectomy, myomec tomoy, oophorectomy, ovarian cystectomy, and salpingectomy in the 1970s. These pioneers of endoscopic surgery and many others have laid the crucial groundwork that has enabled modern gynecologic surgeons to perform advanced-operative laparoscopy on a routine basis, with a variety of energy systems under increasingly ergonomic and efficient conditions.

INDICATIONS FOR LAPAROSCOPY

Diagnostic Laparoscopy
Laparoscopy can provide valuable clinical information in a number of circumstances. It can aid in the evaluation of patients with acute pelvic and abdominal pain, including ovarian torsion, ovarian cyst rupture, ectopic pregnancy, appendicitis, and pelvic inflammatory disease. In the evaluation of less emergent conditions, such as chronic pelvic pain and infertility, it is useful to identify pelvic adhesions, endometriosis, hernias, uterine fibroids, and adnexal masses. Before performing diagnostic laparoscopy, a thorough history, detailed physical examination, and appropriate imaging studies should be completed.

Operative Laparoscopy
Most surgeries traditionally performed by the abdominal or vaginal approach can now be performed laparoscopically. Studies are still needed to better define which advanced procedures are most appropriate to perform laparoscopically from an economic and safety vantage point. Operator experience is a critical factor that must be considered. Commonly performed laparoscopic procedures include adhesiolysis, treatment of endometriosis, tubal sterilization, ovarian cystectomy, oophorectomy, salpingectomy, salpingostomy, and hysterectomy.
advanced procedures include repair of pelvic organ prolapse, tubal reanastomosis, myomectomy, radical hysterectomy, and lymphadenectomy.

**EQUIPMENT**

Contemporary laparoscopy equipment consists of an imaging system comprising a telescope (laparoscope) and video camera system, an insufflation or abdominal wall lift system, and specialized surgical instruments. Digitization and robotics are areas that continue to evolve.

**Imaging Systems**

Imaging systems consist of a laparoscope, light source, fiber-optic cord, camera unit, and monitors. High-definition digital cameras are now available that are compatible with the increased resolution capabilities of high-definition flat screen monitors. Most imaging systems are also equipped with a printer, video recorder, or DVD recorder for documentation.

The laparoscope in its basic form is a telescope. Laparoscopes range from 1.8 mm to 12 mm in diameter, with a distal end (objective) available in varying viewing angles (Fig. 17.1). The 0-degree deflection-angle telescope is most commonly used and provides a straightforward view, whereas a 30-degree fore-oblique lens allows for visualization in a large frontal view but must be continuously directed to maintain field orientation. Operative laparoscopes are equipped with a central channel that allows laser, electrosurgical, or mechanical instruments to be introduced into the abdomen. Light is introduced through the laparoscope with a fiberoptic cable powered by a light source. It is important that the light source have sufficient power to deliver adequate light through the fiber-optic cable. Ideally, high-intensity light sources that use xenon or halogen are used. Though a significant amount of original light is lost from the original hot light source, the fiber-optic cable is able to transmit enough heat to burn paper drapes as well as patient’s skin; therefore, caution should be used to avoid inadvertent contact with drapes or the patient.

**Insufflation and Abdominal Lifting Systems**

Insufflation systems allow gas to fill the abdominopelvic cavity to optimize visualization. Insufflators are designed to deliver gas at low rates during initial Veres needle insertion, but are also able to provide high flow rates when gas is lost to maintain a relatively constant set intraabdominal pressure during surgery. Insufflation may be achieved with a Veres needle or the Hassan trocar, filtered tubing, an insufflator, and gas tanks. Insufflation tubing with a 0.3-micron filter is recommended to prevent intraperitoneal contamination with bacteria, microparticles, and debris from the insufflator and gas tank. A Veres needle is often used to create a pneumoperitoneum, although other methods, such as direct trocar insertion and open laparoscopy, will be discussed. The Veres needle is available in reusable or disposable models containing a springloaded tip that retracts as it pierces the abdominal wall, allowing a blunt tip to engage on entry to the peri toneal cavity (Fig. 17.2). This is designed to avoid damaging bowel or other intraabdominal organs. Though filtered room air has been used, carbon
dioxide is most commonly used today. Carbon dioxide has the advantage of being rapidly absorbed by blood. However, it is converted to carbonic acid on moist peritoneal surfaces, which can cause pain. For this reason, nitrous oxide or helium are preferred by some, especially in cases using local anesthesia or conscious sedation. Some have advocated the use of heated or hydrated gas to prevent hypothermia during laparoscopy. Insufflators that contain a heating unit have little or no effect on temperature by the time the gas has traveled 50 to 100 cm in tubing. In longer surgeries, prevention of hypothermia is better achieved by using a heated body surface blanket or the Insuflow device (Lexicon), which delivers heated and hydrated gas. Gasless laparoscopy can also be performed with the use of a mechanical lifting arm that attaches to a fanlike retractor along the peritoneal surface of the abdominal wall, obviating the need for gas distension. Some favor this approach in patients with cardiopulmonary risk factors.

**Surgical Instrumentation**

Trocars and sleeves are used to pierce the abdominal wall for placement of the laparoscope and surgical instruments (Fig. 17.3). Trocar sleeves range from 2 to 15 mm in diameter and are available as reusable, disposable, and reposable systems. Disposable systems consist of completely disposable trocars and sleeves. They offer the advantage of consistent sharpness but are more expensive. Reusable trocars offer the advantage of being the most cost-effective, but they must be maintained for sharpness. Reposable systems are composed of a disposable bladed or nonbladed trocar with a reusable sleeve. All are acceptable for use. Most sleeves contain a Luer-lock port that attaches to insufflation tubing. Trocar tips may be pyramidal, conical (reusable), bladed, blunt tipped, or have optical access (disposable). Conical and blunt-tipped trocars have the advantage of making smaller fascial defects but require greater force to place. Optical access trocars such as Optiview (Ethicon) and Visiport (U.S. Surgical) enable the surgeon to visualize the layers of the abdominal wall during placement. Expandable trocar sheaths are available that are initially placed through the abdominal wall with a Veres needle and then expanded to accept a 5- to 12-mm port (Step port, InnerDyne). These offer the advantage of creating smaller abdominal wall defects and thereby reducing the risk of hernia formation and injury to the inferior epigastric vessels.

Ancillary instruments may be placed through secondary trocar sleeves to aid in diagnostic and operative laparoscopy (Figs. 17.4 and 17.5). These include blunt probes; a variety of graspers, including toothed and atraumatic graspers; scissors; needle drivers; knot pushers; biopsy forceps; suction-irrigators; energy delivery tools; specimen retrieval bags; and tissue morcellators. A uterine manipulator may be used to improve access to the uterus, fallopian tubes, ovaries, and the posterior and anterior cul-de-sacs. These are available in reusable and disposable models. Some manipulators are inserted in a fixed position and allow limited uterine mobility, whereas others are hinged and allow the uterus to be moved anteriorly, posteriorly, and laterally. Many of these also offer the ability to perform chromotubation for evaluation of fallopian tube patency.
More advanced manipulators, such as the KOH Colpotomizer (CooperSurgical) (Fig. 17.6), provide a stainless-steel cup that engulfs the cervix, allowing the surgeon to cut against it when resecting the uterus and cervix from the vagina during a laparoscopic hysterectomy. The same device also provides a balloon that is inflated to prevent the pneumoperitoneum from escaping through the vagina once the incision has been made on the vaginal cuff. Through this instrument can significantly facilitate the hysterectomy, it is more expensive than other manipulators, and the time required to insert it can potentially contribute to the overall anesthesia time.

Energy and Hemostasis

The application of energy systems to laparoscopy has expanded laparoscopic surgeons’ ability to perform complex surgeries with the capability to rapidly divide tissues and maintain hemostasis. This technology has also introduced a new set of complications, such as unrecognized bowel burns from inadvertent direct and capacitative coupling. In an effort to reduce risks associated with monopolar electrosurgical devices, several options are available. One is the use of endomechanical energy; a second is the use of bipolar electrosurgery, lasers, or ultrasonic energy; and a third is the gaining of a better understanding of electrosurgical principles. Though our understanding of laparoscopically applied electrophysics has improved, gynecologic surgeons often have no formal electrosurgical training or credentialing in contrast to the once-common laser safety courses. Electrosurgery and laser principles are explained in Chapters 15 and 16.

Endomechanical Energy

Endomechanical energy can be used for tissue division and hemostasis in a number of ways, including suturing, stapling, and the application of vascular clips.

Suture. The simplest laparoscopic ligature to apply is the pre-tied loop, available as a slip knot on a push rod that is used to push a suture loop around a tissue pedicle for hemostasis (Fig. 17.7). The Roeder loop, which was modified by Kurt Semm for laparoscopic use, can also be tied in the operating room using standard suture. Laparoscopic suturing can be performed using stock suture, ideally 36 to 48 inches in length (Fig. 17.8). Needle drivers are used to drive needles through tissue, and knots may be tied outside the laparoscopic port (extracorporeal knot) or within the body (intracorporeal knot). Extracorporeal knots are usually performed as sliding square knots, pushed through the trocar sleeve to the tissue by multiple passes of a knot pusher, which serves as the surgeon’s finger (Fig. 17.9). Intracorporeal knots are tied within the abdomen by looping the suture material around the laparoscopic needle holders using the same technique as an “instrument tie” (Fig. 17.10). Laparoscopic suturing requires considerable practice to confidently load the needle onto the needle driver and place sutures accurately. To this end, the Endostitch (U.S. Surgical) was developed, wherein the needle is preloaded and the suture is passed through tissue up to 2 cm thick by closing a handle and a toggle switch (Fig. 17.7). The endostitch is a 10-mm instrument with jaws measuring 4 mm wide and 2 cm long. Other automated products are also available, including the Suture Assistant (Ethicon Endosurgery) (Fig. 17.7) and the Lapra-ty (Ethicon Endosurgery). In an effort to accommodate surgeons desiring to use the laparoscopic needle driver and suture, companies such as Cook produce self-righting needle drivers, which are intended to automatically fix the needle at a perpendicular or oblique position to the needle driver. Such devices facilitate suturing laparoscopically.

Staplers. The endo-GIA, originally designed for gastrointestinal anastomosis, is used in gynecologic laparoscopy as a stapling device for securing and dividing tissue. When the jaws of the instrument are closed over tissue and as the grip is fired, six staggered rows of staples, 3 cm in length and 1 cm in width, are placed. A knife blade simultaneously divides the tissue, leaving three rows of staples on each side of the incision.

Vascular Clips. Endoscopic vascular clips may be used to achieve hemostasis for bleeding vessels or pedicles (Fig. 17.7). These offer the advantage of being used near vital structures,
FIGURE 17.8. Extracorporeal knot tying with slip knot. A: With both suture ends outside the body, the suture is cut below the needle. A single throw is made. B: With the free end of the suture, three revolutions are made around both suture strands. C: The tail of the suture is inserted through the lowest loop. D: The tail is pulled to tighten the knot, the suture is cut above the knot, and the slip knot is pushed with a closed-nose knot pusher to the desired position. (Modified from Murphy AA. Operative laparoscopy. Fertil Steril 1987;47:1.)


FIGURE 17.10. Intracorporeal knot tying. A: The needle is passed through the tissue. B: A surgeon's knot is made with the instruments and pulled tight.
Monopolar and bipolar electrosurgical instruments are frequently used to perform tubal sterilization and to obtain hemostasis. Monopolar instruments use current that flows from an active electrode, through tissue, having a cutting or coagulating effect. Current travels through the patient, exiting from an active electrode, through tissue, having a cutting or coagulating effect, and returning through a return electrode within the same instrument directly back to the electrosurgical unit. There is no need for a return electrode plate (usually placed on the patient’s thigh) to the electrosurgical unit. Needlepoint electrodes, hook electrodes (Fig. 17.5), and most endoscopic scissors (Fig. 17.4) are examples of monopolar electrosurgical instruments. Bipolar instruments, such as the Kleppinger forceps (Fig. 17.4) and the newer impedance-controlled bipolar systems, use current that flows from an active electrode, through tissue having a cutting or coagulating effect, and returning through a return electrode within the same instrument directly back to the electrosurgical unit. There is no need for a return electrode plate on the patient (see Chapter 15).

Electrosurgical instruments use “household current” that is transformed into radiofrequency current. The waveform of radiofrequency current can be altered. If the waveform is not altered (undamped), it is considered continuous. This is also referred to as cutting mode or cutting waveform. Cutting waveform uses low voltage compared with damped current. Cutting current causes cells to vaporize at their boiling point (100 °C) without elevating tissue temperatures to high levels, thus minimizing lateral thermal spread. With waveform modification, current can be interrupted (damped) to varying degrees (Fig. 17.12). These modifications refer to blend 1 (80% on, 20% off), blend 2 (60% on, 40% off), blend 3 (50% on, 50% off), and coagulation (6% on, 94% off). As a result of current interruption (coagulation), bursts of energy with higher voltage (5,000 V) and therefore lower current, given a constant wattage (watts = voltage × current), will occur. This results in denaturation and charring (fulguration) to cause hemostasis with minimal cutting. Understanding the concepts of cutting and coagulation is clinically relevant when bleeding is encountered. For example, when there is a bleeding vessel or pedicle, it is best to desiccate the vessel by applying pressure to the vessel or tissue pedicle with a tissue grasper and cutting current. This causes fibrous bonding of the dehydrated cells of the endothelium without significant lateral thermal spread. It also decreases the risk of thermal bowel injury from capacitive coupling (see Chapter 15) as lower voltage is used. Conversely, when the coagulation waveform is used in this scenario, instead of causing bonding inside the vessel, superficial lateral thermal spread is more likely to occur along the tissue surface, resulting in eschar formation and subsequent bleeding.

Current density refers to the amount of current flow per cross-sectional area in the direction of current flow described in amps per meters squared. This concept has several direct applications to the use of electrosurgical energy in laparoscopy. This principle is used to safely return current from the patient to the electrosurgical unit (ESU). Because current density is described in terms of current per meters squared, applying energy to a small area of bleeding or to a bleeding tissue pedicle will result in an intended thermal effect, inversely related to the electrode size. For example, the use of a needlepoint electrode will have high-current density compared with a much larger spatula tip, resulting in greater energy applied to a small surface in the former. The current density principle is used to allow current to exit the body without causing injury, as it exits through the relatively large surface area of the return electrode, usually placed on the patient’s thigh. This does not cause an exit

**FIGURE 17.11.** Harmonic ACE cutting and coagulating shears. Courtesy of Ethicon Endosurgical.

**FIGURE 17.12.** Coagulating and cutting waveforms.

where the use of other forms of energy may otherwise result in lateral thermal damage.

**Laser Energy**

The term laser is an acronym for light amplification by spontaneous emission of radiation. Surgical lasers available for gynecologic use include CO₂, argon, potassium-titanyl-phosphate (KTP), and neodymium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet (Nd-YAG). These have the ability to vaporize, cut, and, to varying degrees, coagulate tissue (see Chapter 16). Laser energy is an acronym for ultrasonic energy. The Harmonic Scalpel (Ethicon Endosurgery) uses vibration at the rate of 55,000 cycles per second as an energy source to break hydrogen bonds in tissue, resulting in cutting or coagulation of vessels. The Harmonic Scalpel is available as a 5-mm rounded “scalpel” with a blunt or hooked edge or as a 5- to 10-mm “sheat” or Harmonic Ace (Fig. 17.11), which can be used to grasp tissue. This modality results in minimal lateral thermal spread of energy, and there is no risk of electrical injury.

**Electrosurgery**

Electrosurgical instruments use “household current” that is transformed into radiofrequency current. The waveform of radiofrequency current can be altered. If the waveform is not altered (undamped), it is considered continuous. This is also referred to as cutting mode or cutting waveform. Cutting waveform uses low voltage compared with damped current. Cutting current causes cells to vaporize at their boiling point (100 °C) without elevating tissue temperatures to high levels, thus minimizing lateral thermal spread. With waveform modification, current can be interrupted (damped) to varying degrees (Fig. 17.12). These modifications refer to blend 1 (80% on, 20% off), blend 2 (60% on, 40% off), blend 3 (50% on, 50% off), and coagulation (6% on, 94% off). As a result of current interruption (coagulation), bursts of energy with higher voltage (5,000 V) and therefore lower current, given a constant wattage (watts = voltage × current), will occur. This results in denaturation and charring (fulguration) to cause hemostasis with minimal cutting. Understanding the concepts of cutting and coagulation is clinically relevant when bleeding is encountered. For example, when there is a bleeding vessel or pedicle, it is best to desiccate the vessel by applying pressure to the vessel or tissue pedicle with a tissue grasper and cutting current. This causes fibrous bonding of the dehydrated cells of the endothelium without significant lateral thermal spread. It also decreases the risk of thermal bowel injury from capacitive coupling (see Chapter 15) as lower voltage is used. Conversely, when the coagulation waveform is used in this scenario, instead of causing bonding inside the vessel, superficial lateral thermal spread is more likely to occur along the tissue surface, resulting in eschar formation and subsequent bleeding.

Current density refers to the amount of current flow per cross-sectional area in the direction of current flow described in amps per meters squared. This concept has several direct applications to the use of electrosurgical energy in laparoscopy. This principle is used to safely return current from the patient to the electrosurgical unit (ESU). Because current density is described in terms of current per meters squared, applying energy to a small area of bleeding or to a bleeding tissue pedicle will result in an intended thermal effect, inversely related to the electrode size. For example, the use of a needlepoint electrode will have high-current density compared with a much larger spatula tip, resulting in greater energy applied to a small surface in the former. The current density principle is used to allow current to exit the body without causing injury, as it exits through the relatively large surface area of the return electrode, usually placed on the patient’s thigh. This does not cause an exit...
site burn because of low current density. Exit site burns have typically occurred when part of the return electrode has peeled away from the patient, resulting in a smaller area of surface contact, thus creating high current density at the exit site.

Bipolar instruments have undergone significant transformation in recent years. Simple bipolar systems, such as the ESU with a Kleppinger forceps, have evolved to devices that provide bipolar energy that senses tissue impedance to perform controlled energy delivery. These devices, such as Enseal (Surgical), Plasma Kinetic dissection forceps (Cyrus Medical), and Ligasure (Valleylab), use pressure and pulsed current to seal vessels with minimal lateral thermal spread. These devices can seal vessels up to 7 mm in diameter.

**Robotics**

In 1994, the first U.S. Food and Drug Administration-approved robotic surgical device called AESOP (Automatic Endoscopic System for Optimal Positioning, Computer Motion, Inc.) was introduced. With this system, the surgeon can control the orientation of the laparoscope through voice commands. The da Vinci Robotic Surgical System (Intuitive Surgical) and Zeus Robotic Surgical System (Computer Motion) allow the surgeon to operate from a remote station with hand controls that can provide increased dexterity and minimize fatigue, tremors, or incidental hand movement. These systems are being used in surgical centers but have not gained universal adoption because of technical training and cost limitations. The optimal application for these devices is continuing to be defined.

**POSITIONING THE PATIENT FOR LAPAROSCOPIC SURGERY**

The patient should be placed on the operating table in the low lithotomy position with the buttocks at or slightly over the table's edge to allow placement and use of an intravenous manipulator and to have access to the perineum if needed during surgery. The patient's thighs should be bent and elevated above the plane of the abdominal wall, it is difficult to gain access to the upper abdomen and pelvic brim without bumping into the legs because of the fulcrum effect of instruments placed into lower ports. Stirrups should have ample padding to support the lower leg without creating pressure points. Particular attention should be given to preventing injury to the perineal nerve, which is especially vulnerable to compression injury. It is preferable to use a stirrup that can be elevated without undraping the patient so that a high lithotomy position can be used for intraabdominal pressure can be viewed. Insufflation tubing, light cords, electrosurgical cords, and suction-irrigation tubing should be out of the patient's path with suction tubing if necessary. Knowledgeable operating room personnel are likewise critical to the laparoscopic mission. The scrub technician usually stands caudad to the surgical assistant. A circulating technician assists in troubleshooting equipment and obtaining supplies and equipment.

**ENTERING THE ABDOMINAL CAVITY**

The abdominal cavity may be initially entered at the umbilicus or alternative sites by Veres needle, open laparoscopy, or direct trocar insertion.

**Umbilical Site Veres Needle Technique**

When the umbilical site and Veres needle technique is used, the Veres needle is first placed into the abdominal cavity to establish a pneumoperitoneum, and a trocar is subsequently placed into the pneumoperitoneum. A metaanalysis of methods used to establish pneumoperitoneum compared open access (Hasson-type) with closed access (needle/trocar), and two types of closed access techniques (direct trocar versus needle/trocar). It was noted that deaths were only reported in the needle/trocar group. However, because of the rarity of death as an outcome, the statistical risk could not be compared meaningfully. The metaanalysis was underpowered to adequately compare the two closed techniques. Therefore, the question of which technique for initial port placement is safest has not been definitively answered to date.

A scalpel is used to make a small skin incision in accordance with the size of the trocar to be placed at the umbilicus. The umbilicus should be elevated and the scalpel held parallel to the long axis of the patient to avoid incidentally lacerating the great vessels, which lie in close proximity to the umbilicus. Having the anesthesiologist decompress the stomach with a nasogastric tube will decrease the risk of inserting the Veres needle or trocar into an overdistended stomach. The patient's abdomen should be relaxed by neuromuscular blockade if general anesthesia is being used to allow adequate elevation for Veres needle and trocar insertion. The patient should be lying in a flat or neutral position on the operating table because the use of Trendelenburg positioning may cause the trajectory of the Veres needle or trocar to be closer to the great vessels rather than the pelvic cavity. In the thin patient, the Veres needle or trocar may be inserted ventrally (90 degrees to the long axis of the patient); as long as the abdominal wall has been elevated adequately (Fig. 17.14). Placing the Veres needle close to the base of the umbilicus takes advantage of the thin natural confluence of tissue planes at the umbilicus. Separate clicks can be heard or felt as the needle traverses the rectus fascia and then peritoneum.
Correct placement of the Veres needle into the abdominal cavity can be assessed by several techniques. The hanging drop technique is used by placing a small amount of sterile saline in the top of the Veres needle to verify a negative intraabdominal pressure as it descends into the abdominal cavity. Alternatively, the syringe barrel test can be performed by watching the column of saline descend the barrel of a syringe attached to the Veres needle. Aspiration of a syringe attached to the Veres needle can test for blood or gastrointestinal contents. Low-flow insufflation should be performed at a flow rate of approximately 1 L/min until further signs of intraabdominal needle placement are confirmed, such as low intraabdominal pressure (<10 mm Hg) or loss of dullness to percussion over the right upper quadrant. If the “intraabdominal” pressure reading is higher than 10 mm Hg, the probability of extraperitoneal insufflation is high, and the approach should be reassessed. A prospective, observational study of four tests to ascertain Veres needle placement compared the double click test, the hanging drop test, the aspiration test, and the initial five insufflation pressures in 345 women. High insufflation pressures were the most sensitive for preperitoneal insufflation. High-flow insufflation may be used in the presence of reassuring signs of correct needle placement. During insufflation, intraabdominal pressures should not exceed 20 to 25 mm Hg to avoid interfering with diaphragmatic excursion and central venous return from caval compression. After an adequate pneumoperitoneum has been established, ranging from 1 to 5 liters depending on body habitus, a trocar is inserted at the umbilicus, paying attention to the angle of insertion based on body habitus, as discussed. Once the trocar is placed, the bladed or central portion is removed, and the laparoscope is placed through the trocar sleeve to ensure correct placement before attaching the insufflation tubing to the trocar sleeve.

Alternates to Umbilical Entry

When Veres needle insufflation is not successful, or in patients who are at risk for adhesions near the umbilicus, placing the Veres needle at a site other than the umbilicus is usually successful. Two commonly used sites are Palmer’s point and the left ninth intercostal space. Palmer’s point is located 3 cm from the midline and 3 cm below the left rib cage. The needle is directed 15 degrees cephalad after the skin has been stretched caudally. If the ninth intercostal space is used, the Veres needle should be placed between the ninth and tenth rib, grazing the top of the tenth rib. This grazing minimizes the risk of damaging the intercostal neurovascular bundle. The rib cage provides a natural elevation of a space devoid of bowel regardless of patient weight. There is a remote chance of pneumothorax with this technique. Before performing either of these techniques, palpation for splenomegaly should be performed. After Veres needle placement, a 5-mm trocar is usually placed at Palmer’s point.

Open Laparoscopy

Hasson described the technique of open laparoscopy in 1971 as a way of avoiding blind trocar placement. A small incision is made at the umbilicus. Allis clamps are used to grasp the fascia, which is incised, and the peritoneum is entered directly. A Hasson-type cannula is used that can be anchored to sutures in the rectus fascia. In a review of more than 5,000 cases over nearly three decades, this technique has been shown to be associated with a low complication rate.

Direct Trocar Insertion

Direct trocar placement has also been described by placing the trocar through the umbilicus initially, rather than using the Veres needle.

SECONDARY TROCAR PLACEMENT

One or two secondary ports are usually adequate for most laparoscopic procedures. More complicated surgeries may require up to five. These may be placed lateral to the inferior epigastric artery or in the midline above the bladder. The size and number of trocars will depend on the procedure and equipment to be used. A 2- to 5-mm trocar is usually used for diagnostic laparoscopy to maneuver pelvic organs for adequate visualization. Most instruments for tissue manipulation will fit through a 3-mm port. Some energy delivery systems and tissue retrieval systems require the use of larger ports (8 to 15 mm). Anticipating the need for larger ports can lead to significant cost savings when disposable trocars are used.
The placement of lateral trocars can be associated with injury to the inferior epigastric artery. Before lateral trocar placement, this vessel can usually be seen along the anterior abdominal wall as it branches off the external iliac artery. Insertion of a spinal needle through the anterior abdominal wall at the intended site of trocar insertion can help find a safe trajectory away from the inferior epigastric artery. If the vessel cannot be seen, a safe location can usually be found by measuring 3 cm superior to the pubic symphysis and 8 cm lateral. Secondary trocars should be inserted in a controlled fashion, under direct vision. Placement of suprapubic secondary trocars should be placed well above the bladder. Two finger breadths measured above the pubic symphysis has been standard terminology for midline trocar placement. Because of the significant differences in finger widths among surgeons, and considering the increased risk of bladder injury using the suprapubic location, it is also worth placing a spinal needle through the anterior abdominal wall in the midline to ensure that the port is well above the bladder. If the patient has had a prior laparotomy, the bladder may be tethered superiorly, and it may be necessary to place the trocar higher.

Tissue Removal

Small tissue fragments, such as peritoneal biopsy specimens, may be removed through 5-mm trocar sleeves. Large, dense specimens, such as leiomyoma fragments, require larger ports (10 to 15 mm). Fluid-filled specimens, such as ovarian cysts, may be placed in a plastic specimen removal bag (Fig. 17.15). Fluid is drained while in the bag to avoid spillage (Endocatch, U.S. Surgical Corp., Endopouch, Ethicon Inc.). Posterior colpotomy can also be performed for specimen removal. Colpotomy may be performed vaginally, as one would when performing vaginal hysterectomy or laparoscopically. Laparoscopic colpotomy is performed by first inserting a lubricated sponge stick into the posterior vaginal fornix for cul-de-sac elevation. An incision is then made between the uterosacral ligaments into the posterior vaginal fornix, using the sponge stick as a backstop. Laser, unipolar scissors, or the Harmonic Scalpel may be used as an energy source. An endoscopic specimen bag may be removed through the colpotomy incision. A wet lap pad may be placed vaginally to allow optimal pneumoperitoneum for laparoscopic closure of the colpotomy, or the colpotomy may be closed vaginally. Alternatively, morcellation may be performed with a handheld morcellator or an electromechanical morcellator (Fig. 17.16). For safety reasons, it is important that the tip of the morcellator be in view at all times. Keeping the cutting tip elevated and parallel with the abdominal wall adds to visualization and decreases the risk of inadvertently injuring bowel and other vital structures, as severe injuries have been reported, including injury to the pancreas. The specimen should be drawn up into the morcellator rather than pushing the morcellator into the specimen.

Diagnostic Laparoscopy

A systematic approach to diagnostic laparoscopy, like checklists for pilots, can help ensure thoroughness in what is regarded as a routine surgery. After insertion of the laparoscope, the abdomen should be carefully examined, particularly the area in the trajectory of the Veres needle or trocar, to ensure that inadvertent bowel or vascular damage was not caused.
Pelvic adhesions have been associated with infertility and chronic pelvic pain. It should be noted that chronic pelvic pain is often a complex condition, and in the absence of gastrointestinal obstructive symptoms, adhesiolysis is usually not curative of pain. To better understand the nature of symptomatic adhesion, pain mapping under conscious sedation may be a useful technique. In performing adhesiolysis, optimal results depend on the use of microsurgical technique, gentle tissue handling, and meticulous hemostasis with minimal tissue fulguration. Adhesiolysis can be performed by a number of techniques, including blunt and sharp dissection, electrodissection, aquadissection, and laser dissection.

**Aquadissection** can be used to free adhesions from the pelvic sidewall to avoid injury to ureter or the great vessels. It is also a useful technique in removing endometriotic nodules. With this technique, the peritoneum is grasped, and an incision is made large enough to place the tip of a powered suction-irrigation device. Irrigation is used to force fluid under the peritoneum, causing it to balloon out from deeper tissues. The adhesion or peritoneum can then be dissected free.

**Laser dissection** has been used in laparoscopy with great success as a result of minimal lateral thermal spread compared with most forms of electrosurgery. However, it should be noted that this form of energy is indeed still an energy source and obtains hemostasis through lateral thermal spread. The small spot size of laser makes this a useful tool for precision adhesiolysis. The CO₂ laser has a depth of penetration to 0.1 mm and is excellent for cutting. With the adhesion on tension, the CO₂ laser is introduced through the operating channel of the laparoscope or through a secondary port.
Possible incision site
Uterosacral ligament
Ureter

FIGURE 17.17. Pelvic sidewall dissection. The peritoneum has been incised so that the retroperitoneal structures can be visualized.

The Harmonic Scalpel is used with a technique similar to both bipolar dissection (laparoscopic coagulating shears and Harmonic ACE) and monopolar dissection (scalpel tip), depending on which tip is used. This technique does not use electrosurgery. These have the advantage of limited lateral thermal spread, similar to the newer bipolar electrosurgical instruments.

Sidewall and Retroperitoneal Space Dissection

It is often necessary to identify the course of ureter and iliac vessel in cases of pelvic sidewall adhesions or endometriosis. If the ureter is able to be identified at the pelvic brim but then is obscured by adhesions, endometriosis, or an ovarian mass along its caudal course, the peritoneum overlying the sidewall can be grasped and opened with scissors (Fig. 17.17). A Maryland dissector can be used to gently spread the peritoneum to view the ureter. If the anatomy is distorted, it may be necessary to start the dissection at the pelvic brim or by opening the round ligament. If the round ligament is to be opened, it should be divided with an energy source as lateral as possible, and a blunt grasper can be used to dissect the retroperitoneal space, watching for the ureter on the medial leaf of the broad ligament and avoiding the iliac vessels. Developing the pararectal space can help to define anatomic landmarks to avoid inadvertent vascular or ureteral injury. Once the ureter and uterine artery are located, adhesions can be lysed with an energy system of the surgeon’s choice.

Posterior Cul-de-sac Dissection

When endometriosis or pelvic adhesions partially or completely obliterate the posterior cul-de-sac and are associated with pelvic pain or infertility, a surgical approach is usually indicated. Cul-de-sac obliteration secondary to endometriosis often involves deep fibrotic endometriosis that may involve the rectum, rectovaginal septum, or uterosacral ligaments. Dissection of the posterior cul-de-sac may be necessary and can be performed laparoscopically by skilled surgeons. The goal is to lyse adhesions, excise large or deep endometriotic lesions, and resect or vaporize small superficial lesions.

The patient should undergo a bowel prep before surgery. A uterine manipulator is used to antever the uterus, and a rectal probe is placed in the rectum to delineate and retract the rectum posteriorly. A sponge stick placed in the vagina can further delineate the rectum from the vagina (Fig. 17.18). The anterior rectum is carefully dissected from the posterior aspect of the uterus or vagina with scissors, laser, harmonic scalpel, or tissue-controlled bipolar energy system. The use of monopolar and traditional bipolar energy can result in significant thermal injury to the rectum. Aquadissection may also be useful. Dissection should continue until the loose areolar tissue of the rectovaginal space is reached. If a ureter is near the site of dissection, the position of the ureter should be confirmed before any dissection takes place. The fibrotic endometriosis can then be excised from the posterior vagina or uterosacral ligaments. If endometriosis extends to the vaginal mucosa, this is excised, and the posterior vagina is closed vaginally or laparoscopically. Palpation of the endometriotic nodule before and after removal is helpful to ensure complete excision.

Rectum deviated posteriorly
Uterus anteverted
Sponge stick in posterior fornix

FIGURE 17.18. Dissection of the posterior cul-de-sac. Instruments in the uterus, posterior fornix of the vagina, and rectum help define the anatomy.
Oophorectomy and Salpingo-oophorectomy

Several techniques for laparoscopic oophorectomy or salpingo-oophorectomy have been described. One procedure involves the placement of three loop ligatures around the ovary and adnexa. Before placement of the loops, the structures must be free of adhesions. Incisions in the mesosalpinx are sometimes necessary to facilitate placement. The ovary or adnexa is cut distal to the three loops. Small bleeding points can be coagulated on the stump, but care must be taken not to coagulate the sutures.

Alternatively, the peritoneum is opened, and the ureter is identified (Fig. 17.19A,B). Lactated Ringer solution or saline can be injected into the retroperitoneal space to push the ureter away from the site of coagulation and increase the margin of safety. The uteroovarian ligament is coagulated or sealed with bipolar energy or ultrasonic energy and transected, and the infundibulopelvic ligament is then coagulated or sealed and transected. Pedicles are examined for hemostasis, and the ovary is removed by one of the described methods of tissue removal. If the fallopian tube is to be removed with the ovary, the proximal fallopian tube and uteroovarian ligament are coagulated or sealed before transection (Fig. 17.20A–C). After transection of the infundibulopelvic ligament, the mesosalpinx is coagulated or sealed and cut in the same manner that is used for salpingectomy. Laparoscopic stapling devices can also be used on the pedicles, but care must be used to avoid the ureter.

LAPAROSCOPIC MYOMECTOMY

Laparoscopic myomectomy is a heterogeneous procedure that can range from a simple procedure to one of the more difficult laparoscopic surgeries requiring expert laparoscopic suturing skills. For example, large pedunculated fibroids (8–10 cm) can be detached in a few minutes. Large intramural fibroids may take several hours to remove and repair in the hands of expert laparoscopic surgeons. Two case-control studies comparing open with laparoscopic myomectomy have both demonstrated significantly longer mean operating room time and shorter hospital stays with the laparoscopic group. The use of a preoperative gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) agonist may be considered in patients who are anemic. A prospective randomized study using leuprolide acetate in patients undergoing laparoscopic myomectomy also demonstrated significantly lower blood loss and operative times in the treatment group. The authors of this study noted increased operative time in the subset of markedly hypoechoic fibroids because of increased fibroid softness. Other studies have shown longer operative times and a higher conversion to laparotomy rate associated with the use of GnRH agonists in laparoscopic myomectomy because of difficult cleavage planes.

Pedunculated myomas can be resected by coagulating and transecting the base (Fig. 17.21). Morcellation can be performed with a hand morcellator or an electric morcellator, or alternatively, a posterior colpotomy may be performed to tissue extraction. It is best to avoid losing myoma pieces that become detached, as there have been reports of specimens becoming infected or continuing to grow at the trocar incision site and elsewhere in the pelvic cavity. However, loss of tissue is not necessarily an indication for laparotomy, as a case series of 12 retained specimens, three of which were myomas, resulted in no sequelae with 2-year follow-up. In the case of pedunculated myomas, the defect is not typically sutured.

Intramural and subserosal fibroids require an incision to be made with scissors, laser, needle electrode, or Harmonic Scalpel. Before incising the uterine serosa, it is possible to inject hemostatic agents into the serosa and myoma. A dilute vasopressin solution or bupivacaine plus epinephrine may be injected transabdominally into the myometrium through a spinal needle. A randomized placebo-controlled trial demonstrated significantly lower blood loss, total operative and
enucleation time, and degree of surgical difficulty associated with bupivacaine plus epinephrine compared with saline. When the whorled white appearance of the myoma is seen, the edges of the uterine serosa are held open with atraumatic graspers, and a corkscrew retractor is screwed into the myoma. Using upward traction with the corkscrew retractor, the myoma is peeled away from the uterine corpus (Fig. 17.22). Hemostasis is achieved with electrosurgery or Harmonic Scalpel. The defect is sutured closed in two or three layers, depending on the depth of the defect, using a delayed absorbable suture as described previously. Another option is to perform uterine closure through a minilaparotomy if the fundus or area to be sutured is able to be delivered through a small incision. Uterine rupture has been reported in patients undergoing laparoscopic myomectomy, and pregnancy should be monitored with the same caution given to patients who have undergone abdominal myomectomy. It is not known whether laparoscopic repairs are equivalent to repair by laparotomy.

LAPAROSCOPY USING LOCAL ANESTHESIA OR CONSCIOUS SEDATION

Laparoscopy can be performed under conscious sedation in the operating room or in a nonhospital environment, such as physician’s office, using conscious sedation or local anesthesia without the assistance of an anesthesiologist. Microlaparoscopy is often used with 2- or 3-mm instrumentation. Local anesthesia and conscious sedation has long been used to perform tubal ligation. The use of microlaparoscopic instrumentation has assisted in performing laparoscopy under conscious sedation in the office setting for pain mapping in chronic pelvic pain patients. Pain mapping may be useful in patients with chronic pelvic pain of uncertain etiology, as this enables the patient to participate in the evaluation of the pelvis while searching...
for a painful focus and to decipher between incidental versus painful adhesions and endometriosis. If conscious sedation is to be performed in the office without the presence of an anesthesiologist, it is important to follow state guidelines for conscious sedation. The American College of Surgeons has developed guidelines that have been endorsed by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists that detail requirements for resuscitation and an optimally safe environment.

Laparoscopy under conscious sedation is usually performed combining local anesthesia and intravenous sedation. Proper patient selection is important, as patients must be able to withstand lifting the abdomen at the umbilicus for trocar insertion and tolerate local infiltration at the umbilicus. The umbilicus is infiltrated at the skin and then down through the fascia with a 25-gauge needle while elevating the umbilicus, using approximately 10 mL of 1% lidocaine or 0.25% bupivacaine. If conscious sedation is used, short-acting narcotics, such as remifentanil, are ideal if pain mapping is to be performed such that the patient is awake and able to respond to intraperitoneal stimuli. If tubal sterilization is to be performed, an anxiolytic drug such as midazolam is useful.

**COMPLICATIONS**

**Nerve Injury**

Most nerve injuries occurring during laparoscopic surgery are neurapraxia or nerve contusion and will usually resolve within 6 weeks. Neurotmesis, or complete division of the nerve, is the most severe form of nerve injury, often resulting in permanent disability. Proper preoperative and intraoperative patient positioning—as well as a knowledge of known risk factors associated with mononeuropathies—is an important part of providing a safe environment for laparoscopic surgery. Femoral neuropathy occurring during laparoscopy can be associated with excessive hip flexion or abduction, or long operating times. When lithotomy positioning is used in patients undergoing vaginal or laparoscopic surgery, the thigh should be flexed no greater than 90 degrees and abducted no greater than 45 degrees. If a patient’s position is changed intraoperatively from low lithotomy to high lithotomy, these relationships should be maintained. Obturator neuropathy is most commonly associated with direct injury during radical pelvic surgery or lymphadenectomy, but it can also occur as a result of excessive hip flexion. The mechanism whereby excessive hip flexion can cause obturator nerve injury is anatomic. As the obturator nerve leaves the obturator foramen, it lies directly against bone and can become acutely angulated and deformed if the hips are excessively flexed, particularly during prolonged surgery. The obturator neurovascular bundle is also vulnerable during...
laporoscopic retropubic dissection, particularly during the paravesical repair of lateral defects of the anterior vaginal wall. Surgeons who operate in these spaces should be well versed in the anatomy of the obturator nerve. The ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves can be injured from lateral trocar use with subsequent suture ligation and fibrinocoagulation. Care should be taken to avoid extreme lateral trocar placement; however, there is no absolute consensus as to the maximum lateral trocar placement, and injury can not always be avoided. Sciatic neuropathy during laparoscopic surgery can be a result of tension caused by nerve stretching. Injury to the sciatic nerve has been reported in procedures lasting as short as 35 minutes in free-hanging limbs. The peroneal division of the sciatic nerve is under the least amount of tension when the knee and hip are flexed, as the nerve is fixed at the sacrosciatic notch and the fibular head. Tension along the nerve is increased with hip flexion when the knee joint becomes straightened or externally rotated. Patients at increased risk of sustaining sciatic nerve injury are long-legged, obese, or short in stature. In hanging-type stirrups, long-legged or obese patients have a tendency for external hip rotation, and shorter patients have less flexion at the knee. In such cases, stirrups that support the ankle and calf may be more appropriate.

**Vascular Injuries**

Of all the injuries associated with laparoscopy, vascular injuries are the most acutely life threatening, particularly in the case of injury to the aorta, vena cava, or iliac vessels. Injury can occur during Veres needle placement, trocar insertion, or during tissue dissection. Injury to the great vessels requires immediate laparotomy, manual compression, repair, and usually transfusion. Injury to smaller vessels can usually be rendered hemostatic with the use of bipolar electrosurgery, hemostatic clips, or laparoscopic suturing techniques. Injury to the inferior epigastric arteries can occur during placement of the lateral trocar. The inferior epigastric artery can usually be seen before lateral trocar placement as it branches off the external iliac artery running cephalad along the abdominal wall peritoneum. If it is injured, a bipolar forceps can be placed through the contralateral port in an attempt to coagulate. Alternatively, several endoscopic fascial closure devices are now available that allow a suture to be passed through the fascia and peritoneum that can result in vascular occlusion. Hemostasis can usually be immediately achieved by placing a 30-cc Foley catheter through the trocar site with the aid of an 8-inch clamp and inflating the balloon for tamponade. This injury can also be managed by enlarging the trocar site by a few centimeters to visualize, clamp, and ligate the bleeding vessel.

**Gastrointestinal Injury**

Gastrointestinal injury is the most lethal injury associated with laparoscopy, with a mortality rate reported as high as 3.6%. Injury may occur from Veres needle placement, trocar insertion, adhesiolysis, tissue dissection, devascularization injury, or thermal injury. As a general rule, Veres needle injury needs no repair as long as the puncture is not associated with bleeding or a subsequent rent from additional tissue manipulation. In the case of colonic puncture without tearing, nonoperative management with antibiotics, copious irrigation, and suction has been suggested. Transluminal bowel injuries are usually managed with an interrupted layer of 3-0 interrupted silk suture placed perpendicular to the long axis of the intestine to avoid stricture formation. This is usually performed by laparotomy or by minilaparotomy at the umbilical site, where the injured bowel loop is pulled through to the skin surface and repaired. Laparoscopic repair has also been reported as effective by surgeons with advanced gastrointestinal surgical skills. If the laceration to the small bowel exceeds one half of the luminal diameter, segmental resection is recommended.

Trocar injury to the colon is reported to occur with a frequency of approximately 1 per 1,000 cases. Undetected injury to the large intestine can be associated with significant morbidity compared with injury to the small intestine and stomach because of the high concentration of coliform bacteria in the large intestine. Therefore, if injury to the colon is suspected, the area should be inspected carefully using atraumatic bowel graspers, or laparotomy may be performed. The management of large intestinal injuries depends on size, site, and length of time from injury to diagnosis. In general, once the diagnosis of colonic injury is made, broad-spectrum antibiotics should be administered, and consultation should be sought with a surgeon who has experience with bowel injury. In the case of a small rent with minimal soilage, the defect can be closed in two layers with copious irrigation. When a larger injury has occurred and the bowel has not been prepared with a mechanical or antibiotic regimen, or when the injury involves the intestinal mesentery, a diverting colostomy is usually necessary. In the case of delayed (postoperative) diagnosis, a diverting colostomy should be performed. If injury to the rectosigmoid colon is suspected, filling the posterior cul-de-sac with normal saline and performing proctosigmoidoscopy, or injecting air into the rectum through a catheter-tipped bulb syringe and looking laparoscopically for bubbles, may aid in detection (flat tire test).

Thermal injuries are histologically different from traumatic injuries and therefore must be treated differently. Thermal bowel injuries can be differentiated histologically from traumatic injury by the presence of thermal necrosis and the absence of capillary ingrowth and white cell infiltrate in the former. Because of this coagulation necrosis, thermal injuries require wide resection even though the bowel may still have a
normal appearance adjacent to the injury, as it may take days for the extent of the injury to become apparent.

**Trocar Site Hernia**

In a retrospective review of more than 3,500 laparoscopies in 199 hospitals in France, trocar site hernias were reported to be 0.17%. The fascia should be closed in trocar sites that are 10 mm and larger. Although there are case reports of hernia occurring at 5-mm trocar sites, closing 5-mm trocar sites usually requires enlarging the skin incision or using laparoscopic fascial closure devices, which may not be warranted in this rare possibility. Closing the fascia may not entirely prevent hernia formation. A survey of more than 3,200 gynecologists noted that 18% of hernias occurred despite fascial closure and appeared to be related to the number of laparoscopies performed rather than the length of the surgeon's career. Trocar site hernias can present as occult or incarcerated hernias. A defect is usually palpable over the trocar site incision with Valsalva, or a mass can be seen. If the patient presents with signs of bowel obstruction, the bowel must be inspected carefully, and if there is evidence of necrosis or vascular compromise, the bowel should be resected.

**Urinary Tract Injury**

Bladder injury during laparoscopy is estimated to occur 1 in 300 cases. Higher injury rates have been reported with laparoscopic hysterectomy and bladder neck suspension. Risk factors for bladder injury include a distended bladder during suprapubic trocar insertion; previous surgery causing distortion to bladder anatomy, causing it to be pulled cephalad with the parietal peritoneum; and endometriosis obliterating the anterior cul-de-sac. Inserting a Foley catheter into the bladder before trocar placement and using lateral trocar sites will lessen the risk of bladder injury. In cases when a midline, suprapubic trocar is used, and the superior aspect of the bladder cannot be deciphered, filling the bladder with 300 mL of water or saline through a Foley catheter will define the bladder margins. Intraoperative signs of bladder injury include clear fluid in the operative field, visible bladder laceration, and gas distention of the Foley bag. To adequately make the diagnosis, the bladder wall can be inspected directly, or methylene blue or indigo carmine, diluted with 200 to 300 mL of sterile normal saline, may be instilled retrograde through the Foley catheter. Intentional cystotomy or cystoscopy may be performed for inspection in the case of doubt and to inspect the extent of the injury to ensure that there is no ureretic involvement. Recommendations for repair of bladder injuries have been reviewed in a consensus statement of the International Society of Urology (Société Internationale d’Urologie). In the acute setting, bladder injuries can be treated with catheter drainage alone if the injury is small, uncomplicated, and isolated. A cystogram should be performed on the 10th day of drainage, and more than 85% of bladder injuries will be healed. A surgical repair should be performed if the Foley catheter is unable to provide adequate drainage because of blood clots or persistent extravasation, or if there is concomitant injury to the urethra or ureter. Cystotomy closure should be performed using a watertight, multilayered repair with absorbable suture. Laparoscopic repair should be performed in the case of a small injury with adequate surgical expertise and adequate exposure, as long as the ureters and bladder neck are not compromised.

According to a nationwide Finnish record linkage study, although the overall complication rates for laparoscopy are decreasing, the rate of ureteral injury has remained steady at 1%, with the greatest risk associated with laparoscopic hysterectomy. A review of the world literature through 2003 concluded that laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy was the most frequently performed surgery associated with ureteral injury. The usual time to diagnosis in postoperative patients with ureteral injury is typically between 2 and 7 days but has been reported as late as 33 days after surgery. Patients often present with symptoms of abdominal pain, fever, hematuria, flank pain, or peritonitis. Leukocytosis is a common finding. Management of ureteral injury should be undertaken in collaboration with a surgeon trained in ureteral injury repair. In the majority of cases, percutaneous or cystoscopic stenting techniques can be used. Laparotomy is usually performed for end-to-end anastomosis or reimplantation of the ureter into the bladder, but in experienced hands, repair may be performed laparoscopically. The literature is growing in favor of intraoperative diagnostic cystoscopy after complex vaginal, laparoscopic, and abdominal pelvic surgery in an effort to avoid delayed diagnosis of injuries to the urinary tract. It appears that cases in which the diagnosis is delayed are most likely to result in the greatest morbidity and legal repercussions.

**CONCLUSION**

Laparoscopy has become a mainstay of gynecologic surgery. Laparoscopic technology continues to evolve, requiring continuing education and research. The main benefits of laparoscopic surgery have been shorter hospitalization, improved cosmesis, and, in some cases, improved safety and cost. Evidence-based surgical studies are difficult to perform but will be required to fully understand the role of each laparoscopic procedure in terms of long-term outcomes and cost.

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- A good laparoscopic surgeon should know his or her limitations and not hesitate to call for help.
- Conversion to laparotomy is not considered failure.
- Careful selection of patients is the first key to success in any surgery.
- Preparation is essential in laparoscopic surgery and may include a “pilots checklist” and/or “dress rehearsal” to avoid being caught with too few or wrong-size trocar ports.
- “Shortcuts” modifying a surgical procedure in an effort to facilitate one’s laparoscopic abilities “change” the procedure. Once the surgical technique has been changed, success rates obtained from literature or prior experience can not be attributed to the new procedure.
- Careful positioning of the patient can help avoid nerve injuries.
- Traction-countertraction and exposure are important in open and laparoscopic surgery. To maximize these, an additional trocar port is often helpful.
- Consider intraoperative cystoscopy with indigo carmine in complex pelvic surgery.
- Understand your energy source—e.g., monopolar, harmonic.
Bibliography


CHAPTER 18 ■ OPERATIVE HYSTEROSCOPY

MICHAEL S. BAGGISH

DEFINITIONS

Hysteroscopy—Direct visual inspection of the cervical canal and uterine cavity through a rigid, flexible, or contact hysteroscope.

Index of refraction—The bending of light caused by the ratio of its velocity in room air to its velocity within an optical fiber.

Resectoscope—A specialized electrosurgical endoscope that consists of an inner and outer sheath equipped with a 30° telescope. The inner sheath has a common channel for the telescope fluid medium and electrode.

Uterine synechiae—Adhesions that form between the anterior and posterior walls of the uterus as a result of trauma or infection in a milieu of estrogen deprivation.

INTRODUCTION

Hysteroscopy has become a standard part of the gynecologic surgeon's armamentarium and is now routinely taught as part of residency training curriculums and postgraduate seminars. As gynecologists have grown better acquainted with the benefits and techniques of operative hysteroscopy, and as hysteroscopy increasingly has become the method of choice for treatment of intrauterine pathology, the number of complications has also risen. Most of these complications are caused by operator error and inexperience.

Hysteroscopic procedures were first described by Panteleoni in 1869, but the technique did not excite substantial interest within the specialty until the late 1970s. There has been concern that hysteroscopy performed as a routine office procedure to diagnose the causes of abnormal uterine bleeding might spread undiagnosed endometrial carcinoma transtubally. The most vocal opponents of hysteroscopy have continued to perform dilatation and curettage (D&C) rather than hysteroscopy to diagnose the causes of abnormal uterine bleeding. The preceding are not taught within the specialty until the late 1970s. There has been concern that hysteroscopy performed as a routine office procedure to diagnose the causes of abnormal uterine bleeding might spread undiagnosed endometrial carcinoma transtubally. The most vocal opponents of hysteroscopy have continued to perform dilatation and curettage (D&C) rather than hysteroscopy to diagnose the causes of abnormal uterine bleeding.

The advantages of hysteroscopy as an accurate diagnostic technique are that it not only allows direct visual observation and accurate localization of pathology but also provides a means to sample the site most likely to yield positive results. During the 1980s, 1990s, and early 2000s, gynecology has shifted heavily toward endoscopy as a specialty.

The philosophy of least-invasive surgery is driven by the positive outcomes of shortened hospital stays and diminished recovery times and by good performance in a competitive free-market environment. Operative hysteroscopy has, in many instances, superseded even laparoscopy in meeting these strategic criteria. Hysteroscopy generally is a low-risk technique that uses the endocervical canal, the natural passageway of the body, to gain entry into the intrauterine environment. Refinements of optical and fiber-optic light instrumentation and of operative accessories allows high-resolution and excellent visual documentation by hysteroscopy, and tremendous advances still are being made. Nonhysteroscopic techniques to treat intrauterine septa and adhesions are obsolete. Ablation or resection of the endometrium is considered an acceptable alternative to hysterectomy for the management of abnormal uterine bleeding.

Submucous myomata no longer require hysterectomy because they can be satisfactorily managed conservatively by operative hysteroscopy. Cornual and interstitial tubal obstruction also are now managed hysteroscopically. Office-based, low-skilled techniques for rapidly managing abnormal uterine bleeding by means of thermal catheters are now a reality. Hysteroscopy in the 21st century has finally found its proper niche, and every gynecologist is required to learn the skills of hysteroscopy, just as every urologist surely must be an accomplished cystoscopist.

Learning how to perform an adequate hysteroscopy and then becoming competent to do hysteroscopic surgery are practice, skill-related techniques. Older methods of acquiring endoscopic skills focused on course attendance, preceptorship, and practice. During the late 1990s and continuing to the present time, simulators have been developed to facilitate hand-eye coordination exercises. Several of the computer-based models with advanced interactive graphics provide sophisticated models for the student to shave myomata, ablate endometrium, and pass cannulas into tubal ostia (Fig. 18.1A). However, the most basic skill levels a hysteroscopist must attain are the ability to insert the scope safely into the uterine cavity followed by satisfactory distension of the cavity to obtain clear visualization of that cavity. The preceding are not taught by simulation and must be learned in vivo. Without this skill set, hysteroscopy cannot be successfully performed.

INSTRUMENTATION

Telescopes

The 4-mm telescope (lens) gives the sharpest, clearest image in addition to a small outside diameter (Fig. 18.1B). The most desirable optics provide a large field that subdends an angle of approximately 105° degrees (Fig. 18.1C). However, 3-mm diameter telescopes, which have greatly improved optics, provide comparable views. These contemporary 3-mm diameter telescopes coupled to endoscopic video systems with zoom lenses are highly satisfactory for office hysteroscopy, as well as for operative hysteroscopy. Telescopes are usually available with a 0-degree straight-on or a 30-degree fore-oblique view.
Operative Hysteroscopy

(Fig. 18.1D). The major advantage of the 0-degree lens is that it allows the operator to see operative devices as a relatively distant panorama, whereas this view is lost when 30-degree lens is used. The telescope has three parts: the eyepiece, the barrel, and the objective lens (Fig. 18.1E). Surrounding the optics are numerous small-diameter incoherent fiber-optic bundles that provide intense cold illumination to the operative field. Although a few manufacturers provide focusing telescopes that permit contact hysteroscopy, the standard telescope has fixed optics. The contact hysteroscope is a highly specialized device used largely in research settings. Although magnifying hysteroscopes reached a peak of popularity in the 1980s, their full practical value has not been realized.

Light Generators

The quality and power of light delivered to the telescope depend on the wattage and characteristics of the remote light generator and the type and structural integrity of the connecting fiber-optic light cable. Three general types of light generators are available: tungsten, metal halide, and xenon. The simplest and cheapest generator is the tungsten generator, which produces an orange-yellow light; the xenon white light is a powerful generator that provides the best shower for video imaging (Fig. 18.2A). The xenon light generator is well worth the additional cost because of its superior color and intensity (Fig. 18.2B–D). Fiber-optic light cables must be intact to convey the optimal light from the generator to the telescope. Broken fibers can be easily identified by viewing the stretched-out cable against a dark background and looking for light emitting through the sides of the cable. The liquid cable conducts light effectively

Diagnostic and Operative Sheaths

A diagnostic sheath is required to deliver the distending medium into the uterine cavity. The telescope fits into the sheath and is secured by means of a watertight seal that locks into place. The sheath is 4 to 5 mm in diameter, depending on the outer diameter of the telescope, with a 3-mm clearance between the inner wall and the telescope, through which either carbon dioxide or liquid distending medium is transmitted (Fig. 18.1C). Medium instillation into the sheath is controlled by means of an external stopcock. Even the 5-mm instrument allows easy access through the narrow endocervical canal past the point of maximal constriction (i.e., the internal os). Therefore, diagnostic hysteroscopy usually can be performed without cervical canal dilatation. If the hysteroscope is inserted into the canal under direct vision (as it should be), and if the axis of the cervical and uterine canal are carefully followed until the corpus is reached, there should be no risk of perforation. Imprecise or loose coupling between the telescope and sheath will result in leakage of the medium at that interface.

Operative sheaths have a larger diameter than do diagnostic sheaths (Fig. 18.3A–C). They range in size from 7 to 10 mm and average 8 mm in diameter. The operative sheath allows space for instillation of the medium, for the 3- to 4-mm telescope, and for the insertion of operating devices. The operating channel is sealed with a rubber nipple or gasket to prevent leakage of the distending medium. The standard operating sheath consists of a single common cavity shared by the medium, telescope, and

![FIGURE 18.1. A: Computerized simulation permits the gynecologist to interact by manipulating a resectoscope and resecting a virtual submucous myoma. (From Baggish MS, Velle RF, Gaedel H. Hysteroscopy: visual perspectives of uterine anatomy, physiology and pathology. Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins, 2007, with permission.) B: Three 4-mm (outer and diameter) telescopes are shown here. Top is a 30-degree, middle is a 70-degree, and below is a 0-degree telescope. (From Baggish MS, Velle RF, Gaedel H. Hysteroscopy: visual perspectives of uterine anatomy, physiology, and pathology. Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins, 2007, with permission.) C: Telescopes must couple to a 3-mm sheath to be practically functional. The distention liquid or gaseous medium gains access to the uterine cavity via the sheath.](image-url)
operating tools. The major disadvantages of this type of sheath are that the uterine cavity cannot be flushed with the distending medium, and the operative tools cannot be accurately placed and manipulated within the cavity (Fig. 18.4A). Hysteroscopes with isolated channels overcome the problems inherent to the common cavity sheath (Fig. 18.4B). The dual operating channels permit flushing of the cavity and precise placement of operating accessories. The most recently introduced isolated-channel sheath consists of a double-flushing sheath (Fig. 18.4C) that permits media instillation by way of the inner sheath and media return by way of the perforated outer sheath. The constant flow of the fluid medium in and out of the cavity creates a
very clear operative field. The single isolated operating channel has a diameter sufficiently large (3 mm) to permit an entirely new generation of larger, sturdier operating tools to be used (Fig. 18.4D). The new sheath combines the advantages of the resectoscope with the facility of the operating hysteroscope.

The resectoscope is a specialized electrosurgical (monopolar or bipolar) endoscope that consists of an inner sheath and outer sheath (Fig. 18.3A). The outer sheath is for fluid return as described above. The inner sheath has a common channel for the telescope, fluid medium, and electrode (Fig. 18.3B). The double-armed electrode is fitted to a trigger device that pushes the electrode out beyond the sheath and then pulls it back within the sheath (Fig. 18.5C). The operating tools consist of three basic electrodes: a ball, barrel, and cutting loop (Fig. 18.3D–G). Most resectoscopes are equipped with a 30-degree telescope. The lens is angled toward the electrode to
permit a clear view of the near operative field. Vision of the electrode is lost when the electrode is fully extended outward. Most operating sheaths measure 8 mm or more outer diameter. Dilatation is usually required for insertion. Contemporary small diameter resectoscope uses a 3-mm telescope and a 7 to 7.5-mm sheath.

**ACCESSORY INSTRUMENTS**

During the late 1990s, many new accessory devices appeared on the market. The standard accessories are the 7F (i.e., 2.3 mm) alligator grasping forceps, biopsy forceps, and scissors. The small size of these fragile semirigid instruments is a disadvantage, and excessive torque at the junction of the shaft and handle frequently leads to breakage. However, flexible devices are less likely to fracture and are equally as facile compared with the semirigid variety. Development of the large isolated-channel sheath has made the use of totally flexible 3-mm operating instruments feasible. The scissors and graspers are substantially heavier and almost indestructible (Fig. 18.6A–C).

A variety of monopolar and bipolar electrodes are also now available for operative hysteroscopy. Monopolar balls, needles, shaving loops (3 mm), and ridged (vaporizing) loops can be inserted through the large operating channel (Fig. 18.7A,B). Bipolar needles for myolysis, as well as bipolar ball and cutting loop electrodes, have been manufactured (Fig. 18.7C), together with bipolar scissors and needles.

The hysteroscopic sheath has an advantage over the resectoscopic sheath, allowing insertion of an aspirating cannula (2.3 or 3 mm), which permits the operator to selectively clear the field of bubbles and debris that cannot be removed by the way of the return second sheath (Fig. 18.8). Nevertheless, the resectoscope is generally easier to use for the average gynecologist.

A complete bipolar system marketed under the trade name of Versapoint (Gynecare, Ethicon, Somerville, NJ) permits cutting and ablation via operative hysteroscopes or via a dedicated bipolar resectoscope. The mechanism for the bipolar current flow through the electrode is illustrated in Figure 18.9A. The electrodes measure 5F diameter (i.e., 2 mm) and therefore can be accommodated by standard and isolated hysteroscopic channels (Fig. 18.9B). The biggest advantage of this bipolar technology is the same that exists for the neodymium-doped yttrium-aluminum-garnet (Nd:YAG) laser; that is, saline may be used as the distending medium for the operative hysteroscopy. This obviates the risk of hyponatremia (see sections on media and complications).
FIGURE 18.4. A: A single-channel operating sheath consists of a single cavity that the telescope, distending medium, and operating instruments share. O.C., operating channel. B: A dual-channel operating sheath is constructed with (1) isolated channels for a telescope, (2 and 3) two operating devices, and (4) distending medium. C: The terminal portion of the second generation isolated-channel hysteroscope shows the channel for the 4-mm optic (top) and a 3-mm operating channel for a variety of large accessory instruments (bottom). The two channels at either side are the fluid intake channels. D: The double sheath mechanism of the isolated-channel hysteroscope. The perforations in the outer sheath are for fluid return. The uterus is continuously flushed. (A and B: From Baggish MS, Barbot J, Valle RF. Diagnostic and operative hysteroscopy. Chicago: Mosby-Year Book, 1989, with permission; C and D: From Bryan Corporation, Woburn, MA, with permission.)
The Flexible Hysteroscope

The 4.8-mm diameter fiber-optic hysteroscope consists of three sections: a soft flexible front section, a rigid rotating middle section, and a semirigid rear section. In 1990, Lin and colleagues reported their experiences with this instrument in 153 procedures, including transcervical tubocornual recanalization, chorionic villus sampling, and retrieval of lost intrauterine devices (IUDs). The flexible hysteroscope has particular advantage in its ease of aligning the catheter for tubal canalization. Several manufacturers now produce fiber-optic (flexible hysteroscopes) (Fig. 18.10).

DISTENDING MEDIA

Under normal circumstances, the uterine cavity is a potential space, and the anterior and posterior walls are in close apposition. To achieve a panoramic view within the uterus, the walls must be forcibly separated. The thick muscle of the uterine wall requires a minimum pressure of 40 mm Hg to distend the cavity sufficiently to see with a hysteroscope. The endometrium is so richly endowed with blood vessels that touching it with the sheath of the hysteroscope invariably produces bleeding. The walls of the uterus must be held more widely apart during operative hysteroscopy. Although a variety of distending media can be used to attain the desired degree of distention, it usually requires pressures approximating 70 mm Hg, which at the same time propel the medium through the oviducts into the peritoneal cavity. Overdistilation of the cervix with a loosely applied hysteroscopic sheath results in leakage of the medium, suboptimal pressure, and poor expansion of the uterine cavity. In contrast, a tight application of the sheath maintains the medium within the cavity, keeps intrauterine pressure above mean arterial pressure, and maintains a clear operative field.

Media may be conveniently divided into gaseous or liquid. The latter may be further subdivided into high-viscosity and low-viscosity fluids.
E: The ball or barrel electrode is the instrument most utilized for endometrial ablation. F: The button electrode is specifically employed for point coagulation. G: The angulated needle electrode is favored for fine cutting, e.g., adhesions or pedunculated myomas.

A: Direct vision intrauterine biopsies may be performed utilizing this flexible, fine forceps. B: Crocodile jawed forceps are ideal for grabbing and retaining devices or tissue within the uterine cavity. C: Scissors have a variety of intrauterine applications, including cutting adhesions and uterine septa.
### FIGURE 18.7

A: This straight cutting needle (insulated with Teflon) protrudes from the terminal portion of the sheath of a flushing operating hysteroscopy. This device can cut septa, adhesions, myomas, and polyps. B: The button electrode may be inserted through the operating channel and used for coagulation indications but never for cutting. C: A 3-mm bipolar needle that can be inserted into a submucous myoma for myolysis. (From Unimed, Largo, FL, with permission.)

### GASEOUS MEDIA

#### Carbon Dioxide

Carbon dioxide ($CO_2$) is a colorless gas that is highly soluble when mixed with blood. It can be used to safely distend the uterus when instilled with a proper insufflation apparatus, as described by Lindemann. This distension medium is ideal for office hysteroscopy. The hysteroscopic insufflator delivers $CO_2$ into the uterus at a flow rate measured in cubic centimeters per minute, in contrast to the laparoscopic insufflator, in which $CO_2$ flows in at the rate of liters per minute. The laparoscopic insufflator is both unsuitable and unsafe for hysteroscopic insufflation. The rate of flow of $CO_2$ into the uterus should never exceed 100 mL per minute, and pressure should be adjusted below 150 mm Hg (Fig. 18.11). Before $CO_2$ is infused, the hysteroscopic tubing and the hysteroscope must be purged of air. Additionally, the Trendelenburg position should be avoided. When $CO_2$ flow is excessive, bubbles appear and obscure the field. Bleeding and $CO_2$ gas are incompatible; the gas and blood mix, producing an obscuring bubbling foam. $CO_2$ tends to flatten the endometrium, and this artifact can obscure pathology. When $CO_2$ is improperly instilled, emboli form and can produce severe derangements in cardiovascular physiology. The best feature in favor of $CO_2$ is its neatness. It does not foul instruments, it does not mess up the office or operating room, and it allows entry evaluation of the endocervical canal. $CO_2$ is therefore an excellent diagnostic medium, perhaps the best, according to Siegler and Kemmann. However, the liquid media are superior in most aspects for operative hysteroscopy. $CO_2$ cannot be used to flush the cavity of debris, and if the pressure drops sufficiently to allow the walls of the uterus to coapt, bleeding will ensue, making this medium less than advantageous.

#### LIQUID MEDIA

##### High Viscosity

Hyskon (32% dextran 70 in dextrose) is a colorless, viscous solution that is an excellent medium for both diagnostic and operative hysteroscopy (Fig. 18.12A). Baggish and colleagues (1992)
published data on blood levels of Hyskon attained during a variety of operative procedures. Hyskon blood levels were not directly correlated with either the volume of instilled medium or the operative time. The blood levels did correlate with the degree of uterine damage created. The mean intratubercular pressure measured during Hyskon infusion was 76 mm Hg. Ruiz and Neuwirth monitored Hyskon reactions in nearly 2,000 hysteroscopies and reported a rate of pulmonary edema of 0.11% and anaphylactoid reaction of 0.05%. Although no significant correlation between volume and reaction was demonstrated, the investigators cautioned that when more than 500 mL of Hyskon were instilled, the incidence of pulmonary edema increased to 1.4%. They recommended that 500 mL represent the upper limits for Hyskon infused during a single case. Hyskon is a safe medium and has properties that other media do not share. A major advantage of Hyskon is its immiscibility with blood, which permits excellent visualization, even during active bleeding, and permits the surgeon to pinpoint the site of bleeding.

Because Hyskon is so viscid, it is difficult to instill during diagnostic hysteroscopy when the 5-mm sheath with the 1-mm clearance between the lens and sheath is used. Up to 650 mm Hg pressure may be required to push it through the sheath-lens interface. With the addition of a simple hand pump (Cook OB/GYN, Spencer, IN), a 60-mL syringe of Hyskon is easy to instill and is ideal for diagnostic office hysteroscopy (Fig. 18.12B,C). Most diagnostic hysteroscopies can be satisfactorily completed with less than 100 mL of Hyskon, whereas most operative procedures usually require 200 to 500 mL of Hyskon (Fig. 18.12B). Interestingly, Hyskon interaction with heat induced by Na-YAG laser at about the 100°C level appears to complement the thermal action of the laser.

A disadvantage of Hyskon is that dried residue tends to harden and clog hysteroscopic sheath channels. This clogging is easily prevented by immediately flushing the scope and sheath with hot water after completion of the surgery.

As we have mentioned, two types of Hyskon reactions have been reported. The rare idiosyncratic anaphylactoid reaction should be managed like any acute allergic reaction. The second reaction is caused by excessive vascular uptake of dextran, which allows a more general manifestation of its physiologic actions, including fibrinolytic action, stearic exclusion,
CO₂ must be infused by a special insufflator that measures flow rate (not to exceed 100 mL per minute) and uterine pressure (not to exceed 150 mm Hg).

A: The author’s favorite medium for viewing the uterine cavity in the clearest fashion is 32% dextran 70, Hyskon. The medium is nonmiscible with blood. B: A simple Hyskon Pump (Cook OB/GYN). This syringe driver allows Hyskon to be administered through even a diagnostic sheath with ease. C: Hyskon is pumped through the 60-mL syringe to the hysteroscopic sheath by means of special tubing that fast locks into the syringe on one end and onto the intake channel of the sheath on the other end.
alteration of platelet adhesiveness, and interference with von Willebrand’s factor (factor VIIIIR). The end result is a blinding, diastatic. The osmotic activity of dextran is such that for each gram of Hyskon instilled into the vascular space, 20 mL of interstitial water will be pulled into the circulation; 100 mL of Hyskon (32% dextran) will expand the plasma volume by 32 g × 20 mL or a total of 640 mL.

As the volume of instilled vascular Hyskon increases, a critical level is reached, and pulmonary edema occurs. Finally, dextran 70 (Hyskon) is a mixture of macromolecules ranging from 25 to 125 kd. Although the lower-weight molecules are rapidly excreted, the larger molecules can interfere with glomerular filtration and will remain in the bloodstream for 4 to 6 weeks, as detailed in the report by Mishler. Seven case reports of Hyskon-related pulmonary edema were published between 1985 and 1990. The pathogenesis of the Hyskon reaction has been incorrectly described as an example of noncardiogenic pulmonary edema, and this incorrect description has unfortunately been propagated from report to report. No evidence whatsoever supports this hypothesis. The Hyskon-induced pulmonary edema reaction is fully understood, and its actions are cardiogenic, as described earlier. Hyskon can be used universally with electro-surgical devices, lasers, and conventional equipment.

**Low Viscosity**

Several general statements regarding low viscosity fluid safety may be considered here. Low-viscosity fluids must be continuously flushed through the uterine cavity if a clear view is to be maintained. A standard diagnostic sheath does not make up for the deficit to maintain uterine distension. A standard operating table, permitting the fluid to infuse by gravity feed. A newer technology for instilling low-viscosity fluid is by rotary pump. The newest pumps weigh the fluid in real time and give the surgeon a constant readout of flow rate and total volume of fluid infused (Fig. 18.13A).

**Normal Saline, Ringer Lactate**

Normal (physiologic) saline (0.9% sodium chloride) is perhaps the safest of any hysteroscopic media. The worst results of excessive vascular absorption are fluid overload and pulmonary edema, which are managed by diuresis and support. The medium is readily available in 3-L sterile bags that can be mounted on an intravenous pole or given via an infusion pump. Cary and colleagues (1992) reported excellent safety results and precise maintenance of uterine pressure by using a pump delivery system, which was combined with one of the operating channels of the dual-channel operating sheath to provide an outflow tract and thus a constant flow rate through the uterine cavity (Fig. 18.13B–D). Unfortunately, because saline is an efficient conductor of electrons, it does not permit a current density that is high enough for tissue action when using a monopolary system. Saline is therefore not suitable for monopolar electro-surgery, although it is effective when the Nd-YAG laser, the KTP/532 laser, bipo-lar electrodes, and mechanical devices such as scissors are the hysteroscopic accessories of choice. In contrast with the Hyskon medium, saline leaks easily out of the uterus. Constant infusion and high flow rates are required to maintain distension. This medium also mixes easily with blood, which further necessitates constant flow of the medium through the operative field for flushing. The large volumes of fluid required make this medium less than ideal for office use.

The best drapes for the operating room is the urologic pock (tucked under the buttocks) with a plastic reservoir pocket into which the outflow fluid may be collected and quantitated to determine the fluid deficit (i.e., the difference between instilled fluid and returned fluid). The surgeon should be given a running account by a nurse or surgical assistant of the volume of fluid instilled (i.e., liters of fluid hung on intravenous pole minus volume of return fluid). Whenever any significant fluid deficit is calculated, the procedure should be discontinued and scheduled for completion at a later date. For purposes of this chapter, a significant overload of isotonic sodium chloride could be quantitated to 1.5 to 2 L.

**Glycine 1.5% and Sorbitol 3%**

Glycine (1.5%) and sorbitol (3%) solutions were first used in urologic surgery, principally for male patients. They were adopted later by gynecologists for use with monopolary electro-surgical devices (e.g., the resectoscope). Both glycine and sorbitol are used for hysteroscopic distension, but both have significant disadvantages inherent to their composition. Clearly, better and safer alternatives exist for uterine distension. Both solutions are hypoosmolar (sorbitol, 178 mOsm/L; glycine, 200 mOsm/L). When delivered by a high-pressure infusion pump, glycine has been reported to cause disturbances in oxygenation and coagulation. However, the principal hazards of these media relate to their vascular absorption and the creation of an acute hyponatremic, hypo-osmolar state. A fluid deficit equal to or greater than 500 mL should alert the surgeon to the likelihood of hyponatremia and hyposomolality. Two reports have presented data concerning significant complications secondary to hyponatremia. In one series of four women, two died (50% mortality); in the other, one of four women died (25% mortality). Absorption of hypo-osmolar solutions produces a gradient between the circulating blood and the brain cells. The brain cells respond by pumping cation out to give the surgeon a constant readout of flow rate and total volume of fluid infused (Fig. 18.13A).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Low Viscosity Fluid Medium</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal Saline</td>
<td>0.9% sodium chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ringer Lactate</td>
<td>0.9% sodium chloride, lactate buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycine 1.5%</td>
<td>1.5% glycine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorbitol 3%</td>
<td>3% sorbitol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For further details, please refer to the references provided in the text.
FIGURE 18.13. A: This fluid instillation stand is equipped to handle four 3-liter bottles or bags. The height is easily adjusted to provide a head of pressure to infuse into the uterus. B: The advantage of this pump relates to its ability to provide a constant flow of low-viscosity fluid and to maintain sufficient pressure to keep the uterine walls distended. C: This pump delivery system not only delivers fluid but also weighs each bag and continuously calculates fluid volume infused and volume collected. D: This apparatus is very similar to the technology shown in Figure 13C but permits the usage of multiple bags of fluid.
diminish the positive infusion of water into the brain. Unfortunately, the cation pumping mechanism of the brain is deficient in women, secondary probably to the actions of progesterone, and women are at significantly greater risk for the development of life-threatening cerebral edema when a hyposmolar state exists. When sorbitol or glycine are used as uterine distension media, we refer the reader to the papers of Arieff and Ayus and those of Baggish for a detailed discussion of the treatment of acute severe hyponatremia.

Minimally, preoperative, intraoperative, and 4-hour postoperative serum sodium determinations should be requested on a stat basis. A fact that all hysteroscopists should bear in mind is the consistent overfilling of the medium bags by the manufacturer. Typically, the bags have 150 mL more fluid than indicated.

5% Mannitol and 2.2% Glycine
Mannitol (5%) and glycine (2.2%) are safer than the former two solutions because they may be used with electrosurgical devices and are approximately isoosmolar. Mannitol has an osmolality of 285 mOsm and is an osmotic diuretic (Fig. 18.14A,B). In optical characteristics are equivalent to glycine and sorbitol; however, it is an infinitely safer medium. In a study of 181 hysteroscopic examinations using isotonic 2.2% glycine, although there was a mean decrease in sodium of 9 mmol/L in patients absorbing 1,000 mL, the serum osmolality remained normal with no significant adverse sequelae.

As already noted above, regardless of the medium used, the exact volume of fluid infused (taking into account bag overfilling) must be accurately measured and recorded. In a similar fashion, the operating room nurse must empty collection canisters to accurately measure the medium return volume; less compulsion about these measurements is unacceptable.

**DIAGNOSTIC HYSTEROSCOPY TECHNIQUES**

Diagnostic hysteroscopy can be performed in an office setting under local anesthesia. The injection of lidocaine 1%, 10 to 15 mL, directly into the cervix produces excellent anesthesia for this easy operation, and discomfort for the patient can be diminished by meperidine (Darvon), 600 to 800 mg, administered 30 minutes before the procedure. Patients who require cardiac prophylaxis (e.g., prolapsed mitral valve) should be covered by appropriate antibiotics. Patients should be given suitable information for informed consent.

Accurate knowledge of the position of the uterus is critical to facilitate the examination. The best view of the uterus is obtained during the proliferative phase of the menstrual cycle. The patient is placed in the dorsal lithotomy position. The perineum and vagina are gently swabbed with povidone-iodine or another suitable antiseptic solution. A Sims retractor is placed in the posterior vagina and retracted downward (Fig. 18.15A). The edge of the cervix comes into view and is grasped with a single toothed tenaculum (Fig. 18.15B). A suitable telescope is selected and checked by the operator for clarity of the eyepiece and objective lens. If necessary, the lens is cleansed with a soft saline-soaked or water-soaked sponge. The light generator is switched on, and the fiber-optic cable is attached to the telescope. The telescope is inserted into the diagnostic sheath, and the selected medium is flushed through the sheath to expel any air within the sheath (Fig. 18.16A,B). At Good Samaritan Hospital in Cincinnati, 60 mL of Hyskon, delivered by a Cook OB/GYN handheld pump, is routinely used for office hysteroscopy. Typically, one full syringe of this medium is ample for completion of a diagnostic examination of the uterus. The flow of Hyskon starts as the hysteroscope is engaged into the external os of the cervix.

If CO2 is the selected medium, the flow rate is adjusted to deliver 30 mL per minute. The hysteroscope is engaged into the external cervical os. As the endoscope is advanced, the gas separates the walls of the endocervix, allowing an excellent view of the endocervical folds and crypts. The internal os is seen above as the endoscope is manipulated along the axis of the canal and through the os under direct vision. Flow is adjusted to a rate 60 mL per minute when the isthmus is entered (Fig. 18.17A,B).

Routine dilatation of the cervix should be avoided because even careful and gentle insertion of cervical dilators will traumatize the endocervix and endometrium. Typically, the
endocervical canal shows longitudinal folds, papillae, and clefts. The vascular pattern of the normal endocervix reveals branching treelike vessels. These are especially well observed with a focusing hysteroscope. The internal os appears as a narrow constriction at the top of the endocervical canal. The isthmus is a cylindrical extension above the os. The corpus is a capacious cavity above the isthmus. The central point of müllerian duct fusion is seen projecting down from the fundus. The cornua occupy either side of this fused area. The tubal ostia are visible at the upper extremities of the fundal cornua and show great variation in their appearance and angle of entry into the uterine cavity. The uterine mucosa (endometrium) is smooth and pink-white in color during the proliferative phase. The gland openings appear as white-ringed elevations surrounded with netlike vessels. During the secretory phase of the cycle, the endometrium is lush and velvety; it protrudes into the cavity irregularly and can be easily mistaken for small polyps. The hue of secretory endometrium is

FIGURE 18.16. A: The diagnostic lens (telescope) and its 5-mm outer diameter diagnostic sheath are excellent instruments for office or surgicenter outpatient hysteroscopy. B: Close-up showing 0-degree 4-mm telescope engaging into the diagnostic sheath.
Operative Hysteroscopy

FIGURE 18.17. A: This view is taken within the distended cervix looking upward into the dark corpus. B: The hysteroscope's objective lens is just above the internal os. The panoramic cavity is seen. The recesses to the right and left are the cornu.

magenta. The interior of the cavity, particularly when liquid media are used, first appears cloudy, with fine debris floating in the medium.

When CO2 is the distending medium, the endometrium is artificially flattened. Although the cornua are easily recognized, the tubal ostia may not be seen during the latter phase of the menstrual cycle. The thickness of the endometrium can be easily appreciated by placing pressure on the telescope and pushing on the posterior wall of the uterus. This maneuver creates a groove in the endometrium.

OPERATIVE HYSTEROSCOPY TECHNIQUES

The telescope is inserted into the operative or resectoscope sheath. If the operative sheath is used, a proper nipple is selected and attached to the opening of the operating channel (Fig. 18.18A,B). The sheath is flushed with the distending medium, and light cable is attached. Careful dilatation with Pratt dilators should be performed until the operative sheath negotiates a tight passage through the cervix. With the medium flowing, the hysteroscope can be inserted into the uterine cavity under direct vision or coupled to the television camera. The uterine cavity is scanned, and the operator mentally notes landmarks (e.g., the tubal ostia, depth of the cornua, the location and attachments of the lesion, the proximity of the internal cervical os). The flow of the debris with the liquid medium will also help the operator locate the tubal ostia. If there is difficulty viewing the cavity clearly, the hysteroscope has probably been inserted too deeply, and the telescope has come in contact with the uterine wall. When the view is blocked, the most prudent first maneuver is to pull the instrument back with the medium flowing into the uterus.

After a clear view is obtained, the operating device (e.g., electrode or scissors) is inserted into the cavity and advanced to make contact with the endometrium for relative calibration and spatial orientation within the cavity. The knowledgeable and skilled endoscopist at this point inserts an aspirating cannula to further clear the cavity of debris. The cavity can

FIGURE 18.18. A: The telescope is secured by means of a water-tight pin and screw mechanism. A gray nipple gasket covers entry into the operating channel. B: Close-up of operating sheath. A flexible instrument has been inserted via the gray nipple into the operating channel. The two stopcocks are for (1) infusion of the distending medium and (2) return and jettison of circulating fluid. Note all stopcocks are opened.
also be further distended with a constant flow sheath by clos- ing off the return valve stopcock. The valve is then opened, and the cavity is flushed clear. No operative procedure can even be performed unless an absolutely unobstructed view is obtained. In certain cases, it is advantageous to perform a simul- taneous laparoscopy to permit an assistant to view the serosal sur- face of the uterus to provide some additional insurance against inadvertent perforation. Laparoscopy is recommended during the cutting of septa, during lysis of uterine adhesions, and dur- ing excisions for large submucous myomata.

Most experienced hysteroscopic surgeons use the endo- scopic microchip camera coupled directly to the telescope. The current state of the art technology employs digital cameras and digital recorders. Performance of hysteroscopic surgery by video monitoring has the following advantages (Fig. 18.19):

1. Some camera lenses permit sufficient magnification of the operative field for the image to fill the entire video monitor screen.
2. The video camera eliminates one source of operator fa- tigue by allowing the endoscopist to sit upright rather than hunched over.
3. An image projected clearly on the video screen helps resi- dents, nurses, and students maintain interest throughout the procedure; enables them to learn more about the technique; and allows them to render better assistance than is possible with conventional procedures.
4. The risk of an eye injury and the need for protective eyewear are obviated.

Endoscopic video camera lenses range in focal length from 25 to 38 mm. A 28- to 30-mm lens provides satisfactory magnifi- cation. The operator should first view the cavity by direct vision and should then attach the camera to the eyepiece of the lens. The view with the coupled camera provides magnifi- cation comparable to that obtained during microsurgery. If a video recorder is available, a permanent record of the proce- dure can be captured on tape. A xenon light generator provides the best illumination for video techniques, although less expen- sive light sources may be satisfactory when coupled to newer cameras, which are highly light sensitive.

Laser and Electrosurgical Devices

The Nd-YAG laser, which works by thermal energy, is the pre- ferred laser for hysteroscopic surgery. Electrosurgical devices exert their tissue actions in a similar fashion: Light energy from lasers is transformed to thermal energy by electron flow (Fig. 18.20A). Lasers and electrosurgical devices both produce coagulation at 60°C to 70°C and vaporization at 100°C (Table 18.1), and both require sufficient power density to exert the desired action. Similar tissue actions can be produced by rais- ing the power density or by keeping the power constant and increasing the tissue exposure time. A 1-mm laser fiber deliv- ering 40 watts of power to tissue will create a power density of 3,000 W/cm². A 3-mm ball electrode will need to generate 300 W of power to create a similar power density (Fig. 18.20B).

The Nd-YAG laser beam can be transmitted equally well with any distending medium, whereas monopolar electrosur- gical devices operate most effectively in an electrolyte-free medium.

Uterine perforation by either a laser fiber or an electrode is much more serious than perforation by scissors or another mechanical device because the thermal energy can inflict great damage to surrounding structures (e.g., bowel or bladder). The injury may not attain its maximum damage until 2 or 3 days after surgery. Therefore, either laparoscopy or laparotomy is indicated in such cases to determine the extent of injury.

Regardless of whether a laser, resectoscope, or handheld electrode is used, depth of tissue action is extremely important; transmural injury is possible at high-power densities or with prolonged exposure. One must keep in mind that the thickness of the distended uterine wall (0.5 to 1 cm) is considerably less than that of the nondistended uterine wall (1.5 to 2 cm) (Fig. 18.21A,B).
Operative Hysteroscopy

Fiber
Nd:YAG beam
Blood
Endometrium
Myometrium

FIGURE 18.20. A: This schematic drawing illustrates the front scatter of the Nd-YAG laser. The initial lesion occurs a few millimeters below the surface of the endometrium. Backscatter then lifts the surface of the endometrium off as the tissue is ablated. B: Electrosurgery coagulation of the endometrium with a ball electrode. As the time increases, the temperatures in the vicinity of the electrode are raised to 100° C or vaporization temperature. A vapor barrier is formed and current ceases to flow unless high voltage penetrates the insulating barrier. (From ERBE, Tubingen, Germany, with permission.)

SPECIFIC PROCEDURES IN HYSTEROSCOPIC SURGERY

Septate Uterus
Modern hysteroscopy has rendered the correction of septate uterus relatively simple and straightforward by the transcervical route, as documented by DeCherney and associates (1986) and by March and Israel (1987). Uterine septa are a treatable factor contributing to pregnancy wastage usually secondary to premature labor and late second-trimester abortion. The diagnosis of a uterine septum is usually made at hysterosalpingography or during a diagnostic hysteroscopy.

Unfortunately, neither of the studies mentioned above differentiates between septate and bicornuate uteri. A diagnostic laparoscopy is most helpful for an accurate differential diagnosis. A laparoscopic view of a septate uterus will reveal a wide but otherwise normal fundus, whereas the bicornuate uterus typically appears heart shaped. Alborzi and associates (2003) in a small study reported that sono-hysterosalpingography is sufficiently accurate to differentiate bicornuate from septate uterus, thereby eliminating the need for diagnostic laparoscopy. A bicornuate uterus, if pregnancy wastage is demonstrated, should be treated by a Jones or Strassman procedure. A septate uterus should be treated hysteroscopically. The standard technique, reported by March and colleagues (1978), is to cut the septum with scissors under direct hysteroscopic view.
TABLE 18.1
GROSS EFFECTS OF THERMAL INJURY AS CAUSED BY BOTH LASER AND ELECTROSURGERY APPARATUS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Approximate degree of heat</th>
<th>Thermal damage caused</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;40°C</td>
<td>No significant cell damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;40°C</td>
<td>Reversible cell damage, depending on the duration of exposure. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;49°C</td>
<td>Irreversible cell damage (denaturation). a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;70°C</td>
<td>Coagulation (Latin: coagulatio 5 clotting). Collagens are converted to glucose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;100°C</td>
<td>Phase transition from liquid to vapor of the intracellular and extracellular water. Tissue rapidly dries out (destruction) (Latin: ex sico 5 dehydration). Glucose has an adhesive effect after dehydration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;200°C</td>
<td>Carbonization (Latin: carbo 5 coal). Medical pathologic burns of the 4th degree.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a According to Bender and Schramm, 1968.

Cararach and colleagues compared hysteroscopic incision of septate uteri during a 5-year period (81 women) using a scissors or resectoscope approach and found only marginal benefit in favor of the former. Choe and Baggish used the Nd-YAG laser fiber to transect septa in 14 women. Of 13 patients who conceived, 10 delivered a live-born, term infant (87%), compared with a preoperative term pregnancy rate of 11%. Clearly the Nd-YAG laser, resectoscope, or needle electrodes are more appropriate for the broad and usually vascular septum. Four recent studies evaluated reproductive outcomes following hysteroscopic metroplasty (Litta et al., 2004; Pabuccu and Gomel, 2004; Saygili-Yilmaz et al., 2003; Patton and Novy, 2004). The percentage of pregnancies reaching term following metroplasty ranged from 50% to 83%.

Uterine rupture during pregnancy and more specifically in labor has been reported after hysteroscopic metroplasty without uterine perforation. It would be prudent to inform the patient who will undergo metroplasty of the subsequent risk so that she is knowledgeable and can inform her obstetrician should she become pregnant.

**Hysteroscopic Technique**

The uterine septum is viewed from the level of the internal cervical os. The endoscope is moved into each chamber of the divided uterine cavity, and the locations of the tubal ostia are noted. The hysteroscope is again withdrawn to a level just above the internal os. The appropriate operating instrument is inserted through the sheath, and the septum is cut from below and upward, as described by March (Fig. 18.22). As the fundus is approached, the operator depends on a signal without uterine perforation.
from the assistant to indicate when the quality of the hysteroscopic light demonstrates transmission through the intact uterine wall. A dialog between the hysteroscopist and laparoscopist prevents perforation. A new technique permits the operator to scan the uterus ultrasonographically to determine whether the myometrium has been entered and to monitor the amount of space existing between the operating device and the serosal surface of the uterus. It is not necessary to excise the septum completely; incising the septum is quite adequate. Transection eliminates the septum and unites the uterus into a single cavity. We take the opportunity here to stress an important technical point. The surgeon should be aware of the common tendency of the cutting instrument to drift posteriorly and should clip the septum squarely in the middle. When the drift goes unnoticed, the operating instrument invariably cuts into the myometrium and causes pulsatile bleeding. Similarily, correcting the septum too perfectly at the level of the fundus will result in deep penetration into the myometrium and subsequent hemorrhage (Fig. 18.23A–C). If a multichannel hysteroscope is used, a 3-mm ball electrode may be used to coagulate the bleeding vessel. The double-needle bipolar electrode is a safe alternative method for electrocoagulation.

If bleeding does ensue, a Foley catheter with a 10-mL balloon is inserted into the endometrial cavity at the terminus of the operation and inflated to 5 to 6 mL. The pressure exerted by the bag on the uterine walls is sufficient to control the bleeding promptly. The bag is deflated 6 to 12 hours postoperatively and is removed if no further bleeding ensues. Overinflation of a catheter bag can lead to uterine rupture; therefore, one should add increments of water, 1 to 2 mL at a time, to the catheter bag until bleeding ceases. Patients are usually advised to take 2.5 mg of estrogen daily by mouth for 30 days after surgery. Antibiotics are not routinely administered.

Uterine Synchiea

Adhesions form between the anterior and posterior walls of the uterus as a result of trauma or infection in a milieu of estrogen deprivation. Classically, this problem follows an abortion or postpartum hemorrhage, for which a vigorous curettage has been performed to control the bleeding, as reported by March and associates. Friedler and associates report the incidence of adhesions after one abortion to be 16.3%. This figure rises to 32% after three or more abortions. The severity of adhesions also typically rises as the number of abortions increase. Guida and associates reported a significant reduction in the formation of adhesions following sundry hysteroscopic operations via the postoperative instillation of hyaluronic acid.
Acid gel. Microscopic sections obtained from the curettage invariably reveal fragments of myometrium interspersed with inflamed decidua and glands. Historically, the patient does not resume menstruation; however, a minority of patients continue to menstruate normally. Because the patient is subsequently infertile or amenorrheic, a hysterosogram is performed. The radiograph reveals filling defects that vary from minimal to severe (i.e., virtually obliterating the endometrial cavity). Past treatment of uterine synechiae consisted of blind curettage; the results were predictably poor. With the advent of operative panoramic hysteroscopy, treatment progressed to identification of adhesions and sharp incision of the adhesions with scissors (Fig. 18.24A–C).

Adhesiolysis surgery is probably the most difficult of hysteroscopic operations. Because numerous vascular channels are opened up, the risk of intravascular absorption of the medium is high. Rock and colleagues reported a technique of laparoscopically injecting the uterus with leukomethylene blue dye to help identify the junction at which the anterior and posterior walls were adhered. Capella-Alloue and associates reported 31 cases of severe adhesions that underwent hysteroscopic lysis ranging over 1 to 4 operations. The number of subsequent pregnancies after treatment was 43%, and the live birth rate was 32%. A report from Belgium (2004) of 46 women with Ashermann disease, of whom one third had severe adhesions, described live births as greater than 40%.

FIGURE 18.24. A: Extensive adhesions between the anterior and posterior wall with a layered pattern. Hysteroscopic scissors are employed to cut them under direct vision. B: Thick vascularized adhesions are cut using the bipolar Thermachoice electrode. C Upper left: Extensive diaphragm-like adhesions cover the cavity of the uterus (a). The arrow points to an opening in the adhesions. Lower left: Close-up view of adhesions shown above. Note the blood vessels within the adhesions. Lower right: Following the incisions into the adhesions shown on the left, another layer was encountered (upper right). The latter was cut, exposing the main uterine cavity (c).
Hysteroscopic Technique

A thorough diagnostic hysteroscopy is performed to assess the degree of adhesion formation and deformity of the cavity. Small openings in the curtain of adhesions in which there are flow patterns of tiny blood fragments and tissue debris are helpful and should be sought out, as are any normal anatomic landmarks. Photographs, videotapes, and detailed drawings are helpful reminders in planning the strategy for cutting these adhesions.

Simultaneous laparoscopy is prudent measure to prevent perforation of the uterus. Flexible or semirigid scissors, the resectoscope, Versapoint, and the Nd-YAG laser are the operating instruments of choice, although some operators use the monopolar needle electrode at 40 to 50 W of cutting power, blend 1 or 2. The laser is initially set to deliver 30 to 50 W of power. The medium is instilled into the cavity by way of an operating sheath. Continuous maintenance of distention is one key to success. Filmy and central adhesions should be cut first, always following the fluid flow. Marginal and dense adhesions should be tackled last, always cutting from below and moving upward. A second key to success is to maintain the hysteroscope in midchannel relative to the uterine walls. The cavity can usually be restored to reasonably normal architecture. Bleeding is not uncommon during this operation, particularly when cutting marginal adhesions, because the border between adhesion and myometrium is blurred. Hyskon provides an advantage here.

The patient should be placed on conjugated estrogens, 2.5 mg daily, during postoperative recovery. Placement of an IUD within the cavity to keep the walls from adhering is clearly not based on scientific fact but has been used for so many years that it is standard postoperative measure.

Cannulation of Fallopian Tube

Novy and associates described a technique for passing a special catheter into the tubal ostium and through the obstructed interstitial portion of the tube. The procedure was successful in 92% of the cases. Dumesic and Dhillon reported a tubal cannulation procedure in which they used a flexible guiding insert to facilitate passage of the cornual cannulation catheter. These techniques are useful for treating interstitial obstruction secondary to cellular debris and tubal spasm. The obvious advantage of this cannulation technique is its usefulness in treating cases that might otherwise require tubocornual anastomosis. Pregnancy rates range from 25% to 54% in 6 months.

Hysteroscopic Technique

A 5.5F Teflon cannula with a metal obturator (Cook OB/GYN) is introduced through the operating channel of the hysteroscopic sheath. The obturator is removed. A 3F catheter with an birds eye cannula is introduced into the 5.5F cannula by way of a Y-adapter on the end of the cannula, engaged into the tubal ostium, and gently advanced into the tube. When the cornual portion of the tube is negotiated or when resistance is encountered, the guide wire is withdrawn, and leukomethylene blue or indigo carmine dye injected through the 3F catheter. Simultaneous laparoscopy allows on to see the dye exit the fimbriated end of the tube and confirm patency. Alternatively, one can place a radiologic plate beneath the patient and inject opaque dye (Fig. 18.23).

Endometrial Polyps

Functional and nonfunctional polyps produce intermenstrual bleeding, as reported by Barbot. Functional polyps tend to be smaller than nonfunctional polyps. If a hystogram is performed, then a focal filling defect will be seen. Diagnosis is directly and readily made by hysteroscopy. Polyps protrude into the endometrial cavity. A functioning polyp has a lining identical to the surrounding endometrium. The nonfunctioning polyp presents as a white protuberance covered with branching surface vessels; thick-walled vessels are usually seen within the depths of the polyps. Polyps are relatively easy to diagnose and similarly to treat.
hysteroscopy and biopsy should be performed on any woman receiving tamoxifen and reporting uterine bleeding. Garatti and colleagues compared the accuracy of blind sampling of the endometrium versus hysteroscopically directed biopsies in postmenopausal women receiving tamoxifen for breast cancer. The authors reported that sensitivity and negative predictive value of 100% with each technique. However, the specificity (80% vs. 68%) and positive predictive value (69% vs. 43%) were better for hysteroscopic versus blind sampling.

Ceci and associates confirmed that tamoxifen exerted a strong estrogenic action on the endometrium, which increased with time. Georghe and colleagues compared blind removal of uterine polyps (curettage and polyp forceps) with hysteroscopy. Polyps were diagnosed in 43% of cases by curettage. Out of 45 cases in which polyp forceps removed the polyp remnants or complete polyps remained in 31 cases. The authors concluded that hysteroscopically controlled polyp extraction was superior to blind techniques.

**Hysteroscopic Technique**

A multichannel operating hysteroscope is inserted into the uterine cavity, and a retractable electric snare loop is inserted through the 3-mm channel of the operating sheath. The polyp is encircled by the loop such that the loop encompasses the polyp base as it is tightened. The polyp is cut off at the base with 30 to 50 W. Alternatively, a polyp may be cut at its base with a needle electrode or laser fiber. The polyp may also be shaved by means of the resectoscope (Fig. 18.26).

![FIGURE 18.26. A functioning polyp on the right cornual wall of the uterus is resected by means of a resectoscopic loop electrode. Note that the technique is the same as the one employed for shaving a submucous myoma. (By permission: Baggish MS, Valle RF, Guedj H. Hysteroscopy: Visual perspectives of uterine anatomy, physiology and pathology. 3rd ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.)](image)

### Myomata Uteri

Submucous myomas characteristically appear as white spherical masses covered with a network of fragile thin-walled vessels when viewed by hysteroscopy. Myomas typically are sessile or pedunculated. A hysterosgram shows a filling defect that interferes with implantation of the fertilized ovum and become a contributing factor to subfertility.

In the past, a diagnosis of submucous myoma was usually followed by a recommendation for hysterectomy. Today, hysteroscopic surgery offers a therapeutic alternative to that radical approach. Various regimens of drug therapy (e.g., danazol [Danocrine] and gonadotropin-releasing hormone [GnRH] analogs such as leuprolide acetate [Lupron] or goserelin acetate [Zoladex]) have been recommended as supplementary preoperative medical therapy. The general plan is to treat symptomatic patients for 2 to 3 months preoperatively to reduce the size and vascularity of the lesion during surgery. All patients should be given detailed information concerning the need for typing and holding of blood and the possibility of hysterectomy if intractable bleeding occurs.

Valle (1990) reported data on 59 cases of abnormal bleeding, dysmenorrhea, and infertility that were diagnosed as submucous myomas. Hysteroscopic elimination or markedly decreased bleeding in 52 of these cases. Baggish and Sze treated 71 patients with symptomatic myomas and four patients with incidental submucous myomas. The treatment methods used with the multichannel hysteroscope were Nd-YAG laser (n = 41), monopolar loop (n = 6), monopolar needle (n = 6), bipolar needles (n = 10), and electrocautery or scissors and laser (n = 12). As with Valle’s series, results were excellent; 65 of 75 (87%) returned to normal menses postoperatively. Barbot and Parent (personal communication, 1994) performed hysteroscopic myomectomies in 825 women, of whom 83% were relieved of abnormal bleeding and suffered no recurrence. Litta et al described a technique of not only resecting the submucous component but continuing hysteroscopic resectoscopic cutting into the myometrium to remove more myoma tissue. We do not resect into the myometrium because the risks of severe hemorrhage, perforation, and subsequent dehiscence are increased.

Emmanuel and colleagues reported 285 women who underwent hysteroscopic resection of submucous myomas. The median follow-up was approximately 4 years (1–104 months), and 83.5% of the operated patients required no further surgery.

Clark and associates treated 37 women using the bipolar Versapoint electrode via ablation or excision. Improvement of bleeding symptoms was reported in 78% of the patients, and 92% were satisfied with the treatment. No significant complications were reported.

### Hysteroscopic Technique

Several variations of hysteroscopic procedures are now available to manage submucous myomas. Current resectoscopic...
Endometrial Ablation

More than 600,000 hysterectomies are performed annually in the United States, although the advent and growth of integrated health care will target this largely elective operation for reduction because of its substantial cost. The numbers will be further reduced because 40% of hysterectomies are unnecessary and 20% show no pathology; hence, cheaper alternatives are continuously sought. According to a recent study of hysterectomy by the New York State Department of Health, 10,063 hysterectomies were performed in that state during 1986, 10% of which were performed for the principal diagnosis of disorders of menstruation. A very large recent study from the United Kingdom (2005) observed that 16,100 out of a total of 37,298 hysterectomies were performed for dysfunctional uterine bleeding. Endometrial ablation or resection is the hysteroscopic alternative to hysterectomy as treatment for abnormal uterine bleeding. Two earlier reports by Doergenmauer and colleagues describe blind procedures such as cryocoagulation that were used in an attempt to control dysfunctional uterine bleeding by creating physical destruction of the endometrium without sacrificing the uterus. Unfortunately, either the techniques themselves were associated with significant side effects or the endometrium promptly regenerated.
Since the first practical method of hysteroscopic ablation was described in 1981, several thousand cases have been performed by a variety of techniques, including the Nd:YAG laser, the resectoscopic roller ball or loop, and, most recently, the long hysteroscopic ball electrodes. Garry and associates (1995) reported 600 endometrial laser ablations performed on 524 women. No major operative morbidity was reported. The success rate (mean age, 43 years) was 83.4%. Baggish and Sze have performed 568 ablations; 401 of these were performed with the Nd:YAG laser, 167 by electrosurgery. Excellent results were obtained in 89% of the women treated, and amenorrhea was achieved in 58%. Again, no major operative complications occurred.

**FIGURE 18.28.** A: The shaving technique for the elimination of a submusosal myoma is shown using an angled loop electrode via the resectoscope. (From Baggish MS, Barbot J, Valle RF. *Diagnostic and operative hysteroscopy*. 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 1999, with permission.) B: A chunk of tissue has been cut out of this myoma. The resectoscopic loop is seen above (left). The picture to the right shows the loop extended further into the cavity (arrow).

**FIGURE 18.29.** A–C: Several techniques and instruments may be used to deal with submucous myomas. A: Shows a laser fiber within an irrigation cannula cutting a myoma at its base. B: Shows an electrode shaving a myoma. C: Shows an electrosurgical needle cleaving a piece of a submucous myoma. (By permission: Baggish MS, Valle RF, Guedj H. *Hysteroscopy: Visual perspectives of uterine anatomy, physiology and pathology*. 3rd ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.)
were observed. Magos and co-workers reported 250 cases of endometrial resection with a 92% improvement in abnormal bleeding. However, data obtained from the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists’ Mistletoe (Minimally Invasive Surgical Technique Laser, Endothermal or Endoresection) Study in 1997 revealed a 6.4% rate of significant complications associated with endometrial resection alone and a rate of 11.4/1,000 with emergency hysterectomy. This compares with complication rates of 2.7% and 2.1% for laser and roller ball, respectively. The latter two techniques had emergency hysterectomy rates of 1.3/1,000 (i.e., 11 times less than endometrial resection).

Two large controlled, randomized studies compared hysterectomy with hysteroscopic ablation/resection. Dwyer and colleagues prospectively compared 100 cases of endometrial resection and 100 cases of abdominal hysterectomy for menorrhagia. Postoperative morbidity, length of hospital stay, time to return to work, normal daily activities, and sexual intercourse were significantly lower for the endometrial resection group. Dysmenorrheic premenstrual symptoms were significantly higher in the endometrial resection group. Pinion and associates randomized 204 patients to abdominal or vaginal hysterectomy (n = 99), endometrial laser ablation (n = 53), or endometrial resection (n = 52). Women treated by ablation or resection had less morbidity and a shorter recovery time. After 12 months, 89% of the hysterectomy group and 78% of the hysteroscopy group were very satisfied with the effect of surgery; 95% in the first group and 90% in the second reported acceptable improvement in symptoms. Equal numbers in each group stated that they would recommend the same operation to others. Mints and colleagues reported on 104 premenopausal women who underwent endometrial resection (1990–1995) with a mean follow-up period of 29 months: 21% reported amenorrhea postoperatively; 51% described minimal bleeding; 11% reported the postoperative onset of dysmenorrhea; and 12.5% underwent subsequent hysterectomy. Seidman and associates reported higher rates of amenorrhea in women older than 45 years of age. Lefter reported a telephone survey following resectoscopic resection followed by ball electrode ablation for 109117 women. He reported 53% amenorrhea, 19% reduced menses, and 16% subsequent hysterectomy rate. Sower and colleagues performed a metaanalysis about preoperative administration of agents producing endometrial atrophy before hysteroscopy surgery. The use of GnRH analogues was associated with shorter operative times, greater rates of amenorrhea, and reduced dysmenorrhea. GnRH produced more consistent atrophy than danazol or progestogens. Several published reports confirm the cost-effectiveness and efficacy of endometrial ablation for the control of abnormal uterine bleeding compared with hysterectomy.

Hysteroscopic Technique

All patients who might be candidates for endometrial ablation should have been managed first by hormonal treatment in an attempt to control the abnormal uterine bleeding. If this strategy

FIGURE 18.30. A: The ball electrode is dragged from side to side via moving the entire hysteroscope, thereby ablating the uterine fundus. B: The anterior and posterior walls are ablated by dragging the energized ball electrode from above downward. This creates 2- to 3-mm furrows in the endometrium. Conduction heat damage can extend another 1 to 2 mm. (By permission: Baggish MS, Valle RF, Guedj H. Hysteroscopy: Visual perspectives of uterine anatomy, physiology and pathology. 3rd ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.)
fails, and if the woman does not desire to bear children, then she is a candidate for endometrial ablation. A preoperative diagnostic hysteroscopy, endometrial sampling, or both should be performed to exclude endometrial carcinoma or atypical hyperplasia, and all pertinent hematologic studies and consultations should be performed. All patients are pretreated to atrophy the endometrium. The drugs available to accomplish this effect include Danocrine, Lupron, Zoladex, Megace, and Depo-Provera. It is our experience that the best endometrial suppression is seen after 6 weeks of drug therapy.

A simultaneous laparoscopy is not performed during endometrial ablation unless a perforation or other transmural injury is suspected. Depending on the technique selected, either 3% mannitol or 0.9% saline is used as the distending medium. The operating hysteroscope or resectoscope is inserted into the uterine cavity. With the hysteroscope, a 9F aspirating cannula (Cook OB/GYN) is inserted, and blood and debris are evacuated until the cavity is clear. We prefer to treat the fundus by dragging the laser fiber or the ball electrode from side to side (cornu to cornu) (Fig. 18.30A). The anterior and lateral walls are ablated next, before the posterior wall. Ablation should not be extended below the internal os into the cervix (Fig. 18.30B). Power settings for the electrosurgical generator range from 50 to 150 W, depending on the size of the ball, barrel, or loop electrode (Figs. 18.31 and 18.32). Laser power is set at 40 to 60 W. The goal of the ablation operation is to destroy the visible endometrium, including the cornual endometrium, to a depth of 1 to 2 mm. The conduction heat will actually spread deeper, usually to 3 to 5 mm, depending on how long the device remained on the tissue. This penetration translates into extensive superficial myometrial destruction and coagulation of the radial branches of the uterine cavity (Fig. 18.33). When the endometrium sloughs, regeneration is prevented because basal and spiral arterioles do not survive the 100°C heat exposure. Over a period of 6 to 8 weeks, the uterine walls scar and shrink. Subsequent sampling or hysteroscopy is possible after

FIGURE 18.31. The resectoscope with ball electrode attached is inserted into the uterine cavity. Initially, the cornu and fundus are carefully ablated, taking care to keep dwell time low to reduce the risk of deep heat-conduction injury. Next, the anterior wall is ablated, followed by the posterior wall. (By permission: Baggish MS, Valle RF, Guedj H. Hysteroscopy: Visual perspectives of uterine anatomy, physiology and pathology. 3rd ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.)

FIGURE 18.32. Endometrial resection is performed in a manner similar to ablation; however, instead of a ball electrode, a cutting loop is substituted. This is clearly a riskier procedure compared with ablation by either laser or ball electrode, particularly relative to deep myometrial resection with the accompanying risks of hemorrhage and/or perforation. (By permission: Baggish MS, Valle RF, Guedj H. Hysteroscopy: Visual perspectives of uterine anatomy, physiology and pathology. 3rd ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.)
Operative Hysteroscopy

endometrial ablation. The mean duration of the operation is about 30 minutes. Patients usually are sent home on the day of surgery. The operation is usually completed with little or no blood loss (Fig. 18.34A–C).

Nonhysteroscopic Minimally Invasive Techniques for Endometrial Ablation

Although these new techniques are not hysteroscopic in the strictest sense, they are nonetheless closely related and should be included in this chapter. The basis for those methods encompass the following logic:

1. Removal of the skill factor as a variable for endometrial ablation
2. Elimination of requirement for a distending medium
3. Reduction in the time required to perform the operation
4. Equivalency of efficacy compared with hysteroscopic ablation
5. Performance in an office setting

![Figure 18.33](image1.png) The uterus was removed 5 days after a Nd:YAG laser ablation. Note the extensive laser injury involving about half the thickness of the myometrium. Laser penetration depends not only on power but also on the length of time the laser beam remains in contact with the tissue.

![Figure 18.34](image2.png) A: Complete destruction of the endometrium has been afflicted by means of Nd:YAG laser ablation. The fiber is seen at the 11 o’clock position. B: Close-up view of ablated endometrium shown in Fig. 18.34A. Note the laser fiber to the left. C: Endometrial resection is performed via a shaving technique utilizing the resectoscope.
FIGURE 18.35. Innerdyne (Tyco) “Enable” cannula. The terminal mushroom fitting and the acorn seal the cervix and isolate the corporal cavity from the cervical canal. The apparatus contains an in situ heater and thermistors.

The first practical technique described by Phipps and colleagues used a microwave technique of heating the endometrium by a probe inserted into the uterine cavity, exposing the endometrium to temperatures of 60°C to 65°C for 15 minutes. Thijssen reported a large multicenter study using this technique. The report described a number of serious complications, including fistula formation and third-degree burn injuries. Several techniques using balloons containing hot water, balloons covered with monopolar electrodes, computerized continuously circulating in situ hot saline, and cryosurgical and photothermal techniques have been reported (Figs. 18.35 to 18.37). One of the first devices approved for the market was the Thermachoice balloon apparatus (Ethicon Inc., Somerville, NJ), which was developed by Neuwirth. A cannula fitted with a thermal balloon is placed in the uterine cavity (Fig. 18.38). Sterile water distends the balloon and is heated in situ to 80°C to 90°C. Thermistors mounted on the balloon give a continuous readout of temperature within the uterine cavity. NADH diaphorase staining showed destruction to a depth of 3.3 to 5 mm. The published data show efficacy to be lower than that for hysteroscopic ablation and cost to be no less than that for hysteroscopic ablation. The dream of an office-based procedure has not yet been realized.

Since the publication of the last edition of this book, several additional ablation devices have obtained approval.
from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, including HTA system (Hydro-Therm Ablation), Cavaterm, Novasure, and microwave. Cooper and colleagues published data comparing the Novasure device versus roller-ball ablation. Abbott and colleagues compared the Cavaterm and Novasure devices at 6 and 12 months relative to accomplishing amenorrhea/pomenorrhcea in menstruating women and found comparable results between the two systems. Glasser and Zimmerman evaluated the HTA system in women with irregular uteri with a control and abnormal (dysfunctional) uterine bleeding; 253 cases were treated, follow-up was available for 147 cases, and 25 cases required additional therapy to control the bleeding. Fifty-eight balloon treated and 59 roller-ball treated reported normal or less bleeding (out of 147 interviewed cases). Baggish and Savells recently published data on complications with the HTA, Novasure, Thermachoice microwave devices.

**Miscellaneous Procedures**

**Intrauterine Device Removal**

Although the number of IUD insertions has diminished over recent years, the gynecologist is occasionally called on to search for and remove a device with an indicator string that is not seen in the cervix. In such circumstances, the operating hysteroscope is a vital tool with which to locate the device and remove it under direct vision, according to Valle and colleagues. The hysteroscope is inserted, and the device is viewed. If a string is seen, an alligator-jaw forceps is inserted, and the string is grasped. The hysteroscope is withdrawn, pulling the device through the uterine cavity and the cervix to the exterior. If the IUD is embedded, then a rigid grasping forceps is required. The IUD is located, and the large jaws of the rigid instrument grab the extruded portion of the IUD itself. Strong pressure is exerted on the jaws as the sheath of the hysteroscope is slowly withdrawn from the uterus, into the cervix, and out of the vagina. When a tumor is suspected, the operative hysteroscope is inserted into the cavity, a 9F biopsy forceps is directed to the tumor site, and multiple biopsy specimens are obtained in a fashion analogous to that used with colposcopic biopsies. A 9F plastic cannula is inserted by way of the operating channel, and strong suction is applied to the mouth of the cannula by means of a 30-ml syringe. The cannula is removed, and the contents are flushed out with saline into a bottle of fixative. Similarly, a 9F Novak curette can be inserted under direct vision. Alternatively, a diagnostic hysteroscope can be inserted into the uterus. The site of pathology is noted. The endoscope is withdrawn, a Novak curette is inserted into the cavity, and biopsy specimens are taken at the previously located site. Finally, the hysteroscope is pulled back to the level of the internal cervical os, a small Novak curette is inserted alongside the hysteroscope, and a directed biopsy specimen is obtained.

**Hemangiomas and Arteriovenous Malformations**

Hemangiomas and arteriovenous malformations can be diagnosed by their characteristic hysteroscopic appearance and by a history of massive unresponsive bleeding. Historically, women with these conditions are young and of low parity. Hysteroscopic examination shows the subsurface of the endometrium to be covered with irregular blush-purple vessels that form an abnormal tangle of distended channels that differ markedly from the normal fine-capillary net pattern. The abnormal channels are not unlike the vessels that cover the surface of submucous myomas. The Nd-YAG or holmium YAG laser fiber is inserted through the operating channel, and the fiber is held several millimeters above the vascular abnormality at a power up to 50 to 60 W. The laser is discharged without touching the vessels or the surface of the endometrium (Fig. 18.39). The laser energy causes the vessels to collapse and coagulate and the surface to blanch white. The endometrium neighboring the abnormality is also treated and coagulated. The fiber is then withdrawn, the field is aspirated clear, and the hysteroscope is withdrawn. Similar treatment is repeated two to three times at 1-month intervals or until all evidence of the abnormality is obliterated. Alternatively, angomas may be managed via invasive radiologic techniques (e.g., embolization).

**Complications**

Unfortunately, accurate data concerning complications are hard to obtain, although one simple fact is clear: As greater numbers of gynecologists have begun to perform operative hysteroscopy, the rate of complications has increased. Voluntary surveys are worthless. Only state-mandated reports, such as those that are required for laparoscopic cholecystectomy in New York, have rendered any useful information. The exception to this is an excellent report by Smith and colleagues, which details complications encountered by 42 gynecologists.
Principles of Gynecologic Surgical Techniques and Management of Endoscopy

Intraoperative and Postoperative Bleeding

The most common complications inherent to hysteroscopic surgical procedures are intraoperative and postoperative bleeding. Generally speaking, intraoperative bleeding can be managed by aspirating the blood and by increasing the pressure of the distending medium so that it exceeds arterial pressure and compresses the walls of the uterus sufficiently to stop bleeding. Then the bleeding vessel may be coagulated with a 3-mm ball electrode with the use of force coagulation at 30 to 40 W of power or by multiple jabs with bipolar needles at 20 to 30 W of power with the generator set for automatic bipolar. If the counterpressure of the medium is relaxed (at the termination of the procedure) and bleeding continues, then control is best obtained by inserting an intrauterine balloon initially inflated to 2 to 5 mL. If this pressure does not promptly stop the bleeding, then a larger balloon can be distended to 10 mL until the bleeding has stopped (Fig. 18.40). More distension may be required for larger uteri. Care must be taken because overinflation of an intrauterine balloon can itself rupture the uterus. The balloon remains in place for 6 to 8 hours, is partially deflated for 6 hours, and, finally, is totally deflated before removal. When the bleeding is pulsatile, the source is arterial rather than venous. If this type of bleeding is not immediately controlled by balloon compression, then hysterectomy will usually be required. Delayed postoperative bleeding is most commonly associated with endometrial slough (after ablation), chronic endometritis, or spontaneous extrusion and expulsion of the intramyometrial portion of a previously resected submucous myoma (Figs. 18.38 and 18.39). Bleeding-clotting studies should be obtained in cases of late postoperative bleeding, particularly if these studies were not performed preoperatively in women with a diagnosis of abnormal uterine bleeding (preoperative endometrial ablation or myomectomy). A French group (2003) prospectively studied a decade of operative hysteroscopies (2116 cases). Thirteen cases of major bleeding were reported, with six requiring intrauterine catheter placements. The highest-risk procedure for associated hemorrhage was hysteroscopic adhesiolysis.

Uterine Perforation

Uterine perforation can occur during any operative hysteroscopy procedure but is most common during septum resection, myomectomy operations, and adhesion takedown. The best insurance against this complication is simultaneous laparoscopy. Among novice operators, perforation can occur even during insertion of the hysteroscope. With appropriate care, this sort of perforation should not happen, because the cervix and internal os should be negotiated under direct vision, and the cavity should likewise be entered under direct vision. Examination under anesthesia is also simple and lets the operator know the direction of the uterine axis.
FIGURE 18.41. The operator should never apply power to an energy device while advancing the electrode. The power can safely be applied as the electrode returns toward the sheath. (By permission: Baggish MS, Valle RF, Guedj H. Hysteroscopy: Visual perspectives of uterine anatomy, physiology and pathology. 3rd ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.)

As we noted above, the most dangerous perforations are those associated with lasers and electrosurgical devices. The risk of this type of injury can be reduced by not activating the energy device during a thrusting or forward movement. The foot pedal is activated only during the return phase of the laser fiber or electrosurgical electrode. If a perforation does happen with an energy device, then laparotomy is required to ensure that no injury has been inflicted on the intestine, bladder, or ureter (Fig. 18.41).

FIGURE 18.42. Perforation should be immediately suspected when the endometrial cavity depressurizes and collapses around the hysteroscope, creating a compromised view of the cavity. (By permission: Baggish MS, Valle RF, Guedj H. Hysteroscopy: Visual perspectives of uterine anatomy, physiology and pathology. 3rd ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.)

Poor Visibility in the Operative Field

Inability to see the operative field is a common problem. The usual cause of this problem is deep insertion of the hysteroscope so that the telescope lies directly in contact with the endometrium. The surgeon will see nothing but a red blur. The natural tendency is to push the hysteroscope deeper in. This strategic mistake invariably leads to perforation. Another cause of visibility problems is blood within the uterine cavity secondary to dilatation. The fastest way to deal with a bloody cavity is rapid flushing with the hysteroscopic medium combined with aspiration using a cannula placed into the cavity via the operating channel.

Overdilatation of the cervix is an equally common mistake that results in excessive leakage of distending medium and an inability to maintain distension, with the resultant inability to perform the operative hysteroscopy. Blood and debris can cloud
Abnormal uterine bleeding is most comprehensively eval-
uated by hysteroscopy and sampling as opposed to blind
curettage. Difficult cases beyond the capability of the
currently available instrumentation may require referral to the expert hys-
teroscopist. Skill in one area of endoscopy (e.g., operative la-
paroscopy) does not confer similar expertise in operative hys-
teroscopy. Indeed, the opposite may be true.

During the postoperative period, operative complications
should be the initial exclusion diagnosis for any patient who is not
recovering according to the usual pattern. Worsening post-
operative pain, fever, nausea, distension, and free intraperi-
toneal air are the signals of bowel injury. Diminished uri-
nary output, fever, and distension suggest bladder or ureteral
trauma. Falling blood pressure and rapid tachycardia, with or
without distension, should raise concerns of a vascular problem
and third-space hemorrhage.

Most negligence cases adjudicated in favor of the plaintiff
have involved delayed initiation of appropriate treatment for
an operative complication. Cases involving injury recognized
at the time of surgery and correctly managed in a timely fashion
do not usually become medicolegal problems.

Infection

The endometrium seems to be peculiarly resistant to infection,
and infection is an unlikely complication associated with or
coming after hysteroscopy. Hysteroscopy should be avoided in
the presence of gross cervical infection, uterine infection, or
salpingitis. Infection is otherwise uncommon after even exten-
sive intrauterine surgery (e.g., adhesiomyotomy or myomectomy).
Prophylactic antibiotics should be administered only when in-
dications exist such as a history of rheumatic carditis, con-
genital heart defect, or prolapsed mitral valve, or in cases of
suspected chronic endometritis (submucous myoma or imbed-
ded IUD). Baggish and colleagues (1999) observed only 13 in-
fec tions out of 5,000 cases that could be casually related to
the hysteroscopic operation. Salat-Baroux and associates re-
ported seven mild infections out of 4,000 hysteroscopic ex-
aminations. On the other hand, McCasland and co-workers
reported three cases of tuboovarian abscesses after operative hy-
teroscopy. Agostini and associates reported 30 infections asso-
ciated with 2,116 operative hysteroscopies. Eighteen of these
infections were cases of endometritis.

Operator Technique

The most serious complications happen because of operator
error. Most often, these are the result of inexperience and are
avoidable. Difficult cases beyond the capability of the
primary care gynecologist should be referred to the expert hys-
teroscopist. Gynecologists must work together to ensure that
best surgical practices are followed.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Abnormal uterine bleeding is most comprehensively eval-
uated by hysteroscopy and sampling as opposed to blind
curettage.

- A gynecologist or gynecologist in training can best learn hys-
teroscopy by performing 25 to 50 diagnostic hysteroscopic
 procedures before initiating operative procedures.

- The distending medium of choice for diagnostic hy-
teroscopy is Hyskon (32% dextran), which is easily delivered
via a handheld pump.

- Infusion of fluid, low-viscosity media during operative hy-
teroscopy must be accurately measured and recorded. The
medium infused should be isoosmolar.

- Perforation during operative hysteroscopy with an energy
device requires laparotomy to inspect intraabdominal struc-
tures for thermal injury.

- A clear, unobstructed view of the intrauterine milieu is nec-
essary before the initiation of any endo uterine surgery.
Operative Hysteroscopy

Bibliography

Abalos E, Gomes A, Hernández P, et al. A randomized trial of endome-
trial ablation versus hysterectomy for the treatment of dysfunctional uter-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-

with Nd:YAG laser versus endometrial ablation system for the treat-
Pabuccu R, Gomel V. Reproductive outcome after hysteroscopic metroplasty in
Overton C, Hargreaves J, Maresh M. A national survey of complications of
Patton PE, Novy MJ. The diagnosis and reproductive outcome after surgical
Lindemann HJ. The use of CO2 in the uterine cavity for hysteroscopy.
The prevention and control of bleeding are fundamental to the success of any operation. Preoperative, intraoperative, and postoperative hemorrhage are potential complications in every patient undergoing gynecologic surgery. Preoperative hemorrhage is encountered in a variety of circumstances, such as in women with intraperitoneal bleeding from a ruptured tubal pregnancy or in patients taking heparin who have intraperitoneal hemorrhage associated with ovulation. Intraoperative hemorrhage can result from vascular injury, and postoperative bleeding is often a carryover from failure to control bleeding during surgery that was not apparent when the abdomen was closed because of reflex vasoconstriction or hypotension.

A knowledge of the normal coagulation mechanism and potential abnormalities of this important system is important for every surgeon. Preoperative evaluation will minimize the risks of abnormal surgical bleeding. Surgical techniques and operations are designed to control bleeding and avoid hemorrhage; but, from time to time, every surgeon is confronted with heavy and uncontrolled bleeding during an operation. The surgeon who has the knowledge and experience in these difficult situations will not only have the skills required, but also will exhibit the leadership and confidence necessary to direct the whole operative team so that control of bleeding can be accomplished promptly and effectively.

Many benign gynecologic conditions are associated with an increase in menstrual blood loss (menorrhagia), an increase in the duration of menstrual flow (menometrorrhagia), an increase in the frequency of menstrual periods (polymenorrhea), or combinations of all three. Repeated small menstrual hemorrhages, such as those that occur with menorrhagia, will reduce the iron stores in the body over time. The daily dietary intake of iron is usually sufficient to replace the iron lost with normal menstruation, but it is inadequate to replace the increased loss of iron associated with heavy menstruation. In gynecologic patients with a history of heavy or prolonged menstrual blood loss, it is a good idea to check the hematocrit or hemoglobin before setting a date for elective surgery. Preoperative iron supplementation is indicated in these women because a good hematocrit level and adequate iron stores are the first step in managing perioperative hemorrhage. Transfusion before elective gynecologic surgery is rarely if ever indicated in women with chronic blood loss anemia. Menstrual blood loss may be controlled with hormonal therapy while surgery is delayed and iron supplementation given to enable the patient to replace her own hemoglobin stores.

The preoperative use of epoetin alfa (recombinant erythropoietin) for correction of preoperative anemia has been used successfully in orthopedics. Its application in gynecologic surgery remains unclear. It is probably most applicable in gynecologic patients with chronic renal failure, nonmyeloid (hematopoietic) leukemia, or human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Occasionally, other forms of anemia will be encountered that require a more extensive evaluation and treatment before elective surgery. On the other hand, some women who present with acute blood loss from a ruptured ectopic pregnancy, or blood products from another human being.

DEFINITIONS

Autologous blood transfusion—A transfusion done with the patient’s own blood. Blood is usually drawn 2-4 weeks before anticipated surgery and stored. It, or the components, can be transfused if the patient requires a blood transfusion during surgery. This minimizes the risk of a transfusion reaction.

Hemostatic clips—Small V-shaped clips of stainless steel, titanium, or plastic that can be applied on small vessels or tissue for hemostasis.

Homologous blood transfusion—Transfusion of blood or blood products from another human being.

Parachute pack—Sometimes called an umbrella pack. A towel or large sheet is inserted through the vagina into the pelvis, and it is then filled from below with gauze packing. The edges are twisted together, and the pack is pulled down against the pelvic floor to control deep pelvic bleeding after pelvic exenteration.

Peanut dissector—A long clamp with a small cotton bud placed in the tip of the jaws. It is a useful tool for blunt pressure dissection of small spaces.

Total blood volume—About 8% of total body weight or between 4.5 and 5.0 liters in the average woman. Acute blood loss of 25% of total blood volume (about 1,500 cc) produces symptoms of tachycardia, hypotension, and decreased urine output. Transfusion should be considered when operative blood loss exceeds 15% of total blood volume. This can be roughly calculated by multiplying the patient’s weight in kilograms by 10 (750 cc for a 75-kg woman).

The prevention and control of bleeding are fundamental to the success of any operation. Preoperative, intraoperative, and postoperative hemorrhage are potential complications in every patient undergoing gynecologic surgery. Preoperative hemorrhage is encountered in a variety of circumstances, such as in women with intraperitoneal bleeding from a ruptured tubal pregnancy or in patients taking heparin who have intraperitoneal hemorrhage associated with ovulation. Intraoperative hemorrhage can result from vascular injury, and postoperative bleeding is often a carryover from failure to control bleeding during surgery that was not apparent when the abdomen was closed because of reflex vasoconstriction or hypotension.

A knowledge of the normal coagulation mechanism and potential abnormalities of this important system is important for every surgeon. Preoperative evaluation will minimize the risks of abnormal surgical bleeding. Surgical techniques and operations are designed to control bleeding and avoid hemorrhage; but, from time to time, every surgeon is confronted with heavy and uncontrolled bleeding during an operation. The surgeon who has the knowledge and experience in these difficult situations will not only have the skills required, but also will exhibit the leadership and confidence necessary to direct the whole operative team so that control of bleeding can be accomplished promptly and effectively.

Many benign gynecologic conditions are associated with an increase in menstrual blood loss (menorrhagia), an increase in the duration of menstrual flow (menometrorrhagia), an increase in the frequency of menstrual periods (polymenorrhea), or combinations of all three. Repeated small menstrual hemorrhages, such as those that occur with menorrhagia, will reduce the iron stores in the body over time. The daily dietary intake of iron is usually sufficient to replace the iron lost with normal menstruation, but it is inadequate to replace the increased loss of iron associated with heavy menstruation. In gynecologic patients with a history of heavy or prolonged menstrual blood loss, it is a good idea to check the hematocrit or hemoglobin before setting a date for elective surgery. Preoperative iron supplementation is indicated in these women because a good hematocrit level and adequate iron stores are the first step in managing perioperative hemorrhage. Transfusion before elective gynecologic surgery is rarely if ever indicated in women with chronic blood loss anemia. Menstrual blood loss may be controlled with hormonal therapy while surgery is delayed and iron supplementation given to enable the patient to replace her own hemoglobin stores.

The preoperative use of epoetin alfa (recombinant erythropoietin) for correction of preoperative anemia has been used successfully in orthopedics. Its application in gynecologic surgery remains unclear. It is probably most applicable in gynecologic patients with chronic renal failure, nonmyeloid (hematopoietic) leukemia, or human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Occasionally, other forms of anemia will be encountered that require a more extensive evaluation and treatment before elective surgery. On the other hand, some women who present with acute blood loss from a ruptured ectopic pregnancy, or blood products from another human being.

DEFINITIONS

Autologous blood transfusion—A transfusion done with the patient’s own blood. Blood is usually drawn 2-4 weeks before anticipated surgery and stored. It, or the components, can be transfused if the patient requires a blood transfusion during surgery. This minimizes the risk of a transfusion reaction.

Hemostatic clips—Small V-shaped clips of stainless steel, titanium, or plastic that can be applied on small vessels or tissue for hemostasis.

Homologous blood transfusion—Transfusion of blood or blood products from another human being.

Parachute pack—Sometimes called an umbrella pack. A towel or large sheet is inserted through the vagina into the pelvis, and it is then filled from below with gauze packing. The edges are twisted together, and the pack is pulled down against the pelvic floor to control deep pelvic bleeding after pelvic exenteration.

Peanut dissector—A long clamp with a small cotton bud placed in the tip of the jaws. It is a useful tool for blunt pressure dissection of small spaces.

Total blood volume—About 8% of total body weight or between 4.5 and 5.0 liters in the average woman. Acute blood loss of 25% of total blood volume (about 1,500 cc) produces symptoms of tachycardia, hypotension, and decreased urine output. Transfusion should be considered when operative blood loss exceeds 15% of total blood volume. This can be roughly calculated by multiplying the patient’s weight in kilograms by 10 (750 cc for a 75-kg woman).

The prevention and control of bleeding are fundamental to the success of any operation. Preoperative, intraoperative, and postoperative hemorrhage are potential complications in every patient undergoing gynecologic surgery. Preoperative hemorrhage is encountered in a variety of circumstances, such as in women with intraperitoneal bleeding from a ruptured tubal pregnancy or in patients taking heparin who have intraperitoneal hemorrhage associated with ovulation. Intraoperative hemorrhage can result from vascular injury, and postoperative bleeding is often a carryover from failure to control bleeding during surgery that was not apparent when the abdomen was closed because of reflex vasoconstriction or hypotension.

A knowledge of the normal coagulation mechanism and potential abnormalities of this important system is important for every surgeon. Preoperative evaluation will minimize the risks of abnormal surgical bleeding. Surgical techniques and operations are designed to control bleeding and avoid hemorrhage; but, from time to time, every surgeon is confronted with heavy and uncontrolled bleeding during an operation. The surgeon who has the knowledge and experience in these difficult situations will not only have the skills required, but also will exhibit the leadership and confidence necessary to direct the whole operative team so that control of bleeding can be accomplished promptly and effectively.

Many benign gynecologic conditions are associated with an increase in menstrual blood loss (menorrhagia), an increase in the duration of menstrual flow (menometrorrhagia), an increase in the frequency of menstrual periods (polymenorrhea), or combinations of all three. Repeated small menstrual hemorrhages, such as those that occur with menorrhagia, will reduce the iron stores in the body over time. The daily dietary intake of iron is usually sufficient to replace the iron lost with normal menstruation, but it is inadequate to replace the increased loss of iron associated with heavy menstruation. In gynecologic patients with a history of heavy or prolonged menstrual blood loss, it is a good idea to check the hematocrit or hemoglobin before setting a date for elective surgery. Preoperative iron supplementation is indicated in these women because a good hematocrit level and adequate iron stores are the first step in managing perioperative hemorrhage. Transfusion before elective gynecologic surgery is rarely if ever indicated in women with chronic blood loss anemia. Menstrual blood loss may be controlled with hormonal therapy while surgery is delayed and iron supplementation given to enable the patient to replace her own hemoglobin stores.

The preoperative use of epoetin alfa (recombinant erythropoietin) for correction of preoperative anemia has been used successfully in orthopedics. Its application in gynecologic surgery remains unclear. It is probably most applicable in gynecologic patients with chronic renal failure, nonmyeloid (hematopoietic) leukemia, or human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Occasionally, other forms of anemia will be encountered that require a more extensive evaluation and treatment before elective surgery. On the other hand, some women who present with acute blood loss from a ruptured ectopic pregnancy, or blood products from another human being.
remedy excessive bleeding can be found. Hemostasis is a complex, intricate, integrated, complementary, and countervailing system that maintains a delicate balance between normal coagulation and hypocoagulation or hypercoagulation. Unusual clinical situations can arise that require hematologic consultation for resolution. A specialist in coagulation disorders can provide invaluable assistance in the diagnosis and treatment of many rare disorders of coagulation.

The following is a discussion of the principles and concepts of normal hemostasis, abnormal hemostasis (congenital and acquired), and management techniques.

Effective hemostasis is the result of all aspects of the coagulation system functioning together to stop bleeding. Coagulation is the working interrelation of five aspects of a complex biochemical and vascular system that causes the formation and dissolution of the fibrin platelet plug. These five aspects are (a) vasculature, (b) platelets, (c) plasma clotting proteins, (d) fibrinolysis and clot inhibition, and (e) the hypercoagulable response. How these five components interrelate in the normal setting must be understood before one can appreciate how the five relate to bleeding or abnormal clotting in disease states.

**Vasculature**

The vasculature presents an endothelial-lined flexible conduit through which red cells, white cells, platelets, and all of the plasma proteins flow. At the interface between the flowing blood and vessel wall are several inhibitory biochemical systems that prevent the generation of the platelet-thrombin clot. The antiprotein substance prostacyclin, produced in the vessel wall, inhibits platelet adhesion to the vessel wall. The surface antithrombin III–heparan sulfate complex inhibits deposition of thrombin and fibrin. A tear in the vessel wall removes the endothelial cell layer, exposing the basement membrane, smooth muscle, collagen, and supporting adventitia. These substances are biochemical activators of platelets and have their own thromboplastogenic activity, which initiates fibrin generation and deposition. Therefore, the disruption in the vessel wall removes the protective covering of the endothelial cells, exposing platelet clumping and clot-maintaining substances that produce a platelet-fibrin mass that will plug the tear in the vessel wall. A disease or medication that interferes with or intensifies this process can cause bleeding or inappropriate clotting. The vessel wall is diagrammed in Figure 19.1.

Congenital diseases associated with inadequate connective tissue and vascular dysfunction associated with bleeding are rare. The more frequently seen conditions are hereditary hemorhagic telangiectasia, Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, and Marfan syndrome, which are characterized by defects in the quality of collagen. Defective collagen is responsible for poor clot formation and platelet activation at the injured site. No disease is known to be associated with excessive inappropriate clotting related to the vasculature as a structure. The congenital diseases closest to that definition are a predisposition to artherosclerosis owing to abnormalities in lipid metabolism, such as hypercholesterolemia, homocystinemia, and diabetes mellitus.

Acquired diseases of the vessel wall associated with bleeding include deficiencies in vitamin C; Cushing syndrome; acute and chronic inflammatory diseases, such as infectious vasculitis and immune vasculitis; pyogenic purpura; embolic purpura, and anaphylactoid reactions from drugs, Mycosis fungoides, disorders, such as multiple myeloma and Waldenström macroglobulinemia, produce abnormal proteins that interfere with vascular function and therefore permit bleeding.

**Platelet Function**

Platelets are disk-shaped fragments of the large multinucleated megakaryocytes released from the bone marrow on a daily basis (normal count is 150 × 10^3/mL to 400 × 10^3/mL) (Fig. 19.2). Their life span is 8 to 10 days. These microscopic fragments have a well-defined substructure that can be directly correlated with platelet function.

**Figure 19.1.** Vessel cross section.

Routine laboratory assessment of vascular function is extremely primitive. The capillary fragility test, the only routinely available test used to assess vascular function, has limited value. It is sensitive to only the superficial vascular structure abnormalities. More in-depth studies include vascular biopsies and skin window testing procedures, which are research procedures. There are no routinely available methods for assessing increased vascular activity in the area of inappropriate clotting.
vascular trauma. Its absence results in the failure of platelets to bind normally to disruptions in the vasculature, preventing formation of the platelet plug necessary for normal hemostasis. The condition remains undetected in most patients until some form of vascular trauma occurs or surgery is performed. In addition, such patients are particularly sensitive to aspirin or other antiplatelet medications and bleed excessively in surgery while taking this kind of medication. von Willebrand disease is the most common congenital platelet disorder and is the disease most likely to go undetected until surgery. This disorder is particularly dangerous because, in its milder forms, a history of bleeding in surgery is negative and the preoperative coagulation screen is normal. Acquired defects in platelet function are much more common and can be classified into two groups: (a) those that are the result or consequence of a disease, such as renal failure, myeloproliferative disorders (polycythemia vera, chronic myelogenous leukemia), and increased fibrin split products in consumptive coagulopathies; and (b) those that are iatrogenic, such as defects caused by medications (aspirin, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, antibiotics, antihistamines, tricyclic antidepressants, dextran) and cardiopulmonary bypass surgery.

Congenitally increased platelet function has not been described. Acquired disorders associated with increased platelet function, however, are common. The stress of routine surgery or trauma (fractured hip, femur, or pelvis) can create a hypercoagulable state with thrombocytosis and increased platelet activity.

The laboratory assessment of platelet function has been expanded from the research laboratory and is more readily available to the surgeon. The routine analysis of platelet function should begin with a platelet count and PFA-100. In special cases, platelet adhesion and platelet aggregation are useful in identifying the inadequate or overstimulated platelet. In addition, biochemical markers for increased platelet use or turnover can be demonstrated with platelet factor IV and β-thromboglobulin assays. Studies by Gewirtz and colleagues confirm previous studies that the bleeding time is not a good prediction of surgical bleeding.

### Table 19.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Incidence (per million)</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Factor VIII (classic hemophilia A, sex-linked)</td>
<td>60–80</td>
<td>FVIII concentrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor IX (classic hemophilia B, sex-linked)</td>
<td>15–20</td>
<td>FIX concentrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>von Willebrand disease (dominant; autosomal)</td>
<td>5–10</td>
<td>Cryoprecipitate (DDAVP), factor VIII concentrate with von Willebrand factor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DDAVP, Deamino-8-D-arginine vasopressin. The remainder of the known congenital clotting disorders are very rare and occur with such low frequency that their discussion, diagnosis, and management can be found elsewhere. (See Harker LA. Hemostasis manual, 2nd edition. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 1974; Corriveau DM, Fritsma GA. Hemostasis and thrombosis. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott Co; 1988; Triplett DA, ed. Laboratory evaluation of coagulation. Chicago: ASCP Press; 1982.)
Plasma-clotting proteins are a group of serine proteases and cofactors that interact in a synergetic system to generate fibrin. The activation of the clotting system can be initiated in two ways: either by contact activation with factor XII or through thromboplastin activation of factor VII. The clotting cascade is diagrammed in Figure 19.3. As we will see later in the discussion of fibrinolysis and antithrombin systems, anticoagulation forces are initiated at the inception of clotting. The tear in the vessel wall, described earlier, begins the orderly activation of the plasma-clotting system. The fibrin contribution to the platelet-fibrin plug is initiated with the activation of factor XII by collagen and of factor VII by tissue juice (thromboplastin). Any congenital or acquired disorder of the clotting factors can lead to inadequate or no generation of fibrin. Each clotting factor has a different role and significance in the overall generation of fibrin. This also is true with abnormal increases in some clotting factors that are associated with inappropriate clotting.

The congenital-factor deficiencies associated with bleeding are either relatively common or rare. The relatively common group includes hemophilia A (factor VIII deficiency) and hemophilia B (factor IX deficiency). Both are seen in the male and rarely in the female disorders with sex-linked inheritance patterns. The rare group includes all the remaining factors that have an autosomal recessive inheritance pattern or a dominant pattern with variable penetrance.

The acquired factor deficiencies are common. Multiple deficiency is usually owing to iatrogenic vitamin K deficiency with loss of factors II, VII, IX, and X. This deficiency often is the result of multiple-antibiotic therapy, which kills the vitamin K-producing bacterial flora in the intestine, and the nothing-by-mouth status of many critically ill patients, which results in the loss of food sources of vitamin K. Other common acquired multifactor deficiencies are seen in acute and chronic liver disease, as in viral hepatitis and alcoholic cirrhosis; consumptive coagulopathies, as in sepsis and placenta abruptio; and major trauma, as from automobile accidents or gunshot wounds.

The laboratory assessment of the plasma clotting factors has traditionally begun with the prothrombin time (PT; factors V, VII, and X, prothrombin, and fibrinogen) and the activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT; factors VIII, IX, XI, and XII). Specific factor assays also can identify the exact deficiencies. One must remember that a factor deficiency as low as 30% can generate a normal PT and APTT. This relation is important in investigating minimal prolongations of the PT or APTT that appear insignificant but could be hiding a moderately severe deficiency. The tissue factor pathway inhibitor modulates activated factors X and VIII but is not apparently significant in disease.

The sensitivity of the PT and APTT reagents is essential to the appreciation of the proper use of these tests as preoperative...
stress, there is a response of fright or flight. This response to
With physiologic stress, such as emotional stress and surgical
lyses fibrin clots and destroys fibrinogen. This enzyme is mod-
plasmin. Plasmin is the active enzyme that if free or clot-bound
conversion of fibrinolysis normally is initiated by plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1). Sometimes direct activation is seen in liver disease and during extracorporeal bypass. This activation also can be secondary to disease, as
increased need. When this process is exaggerated, uncontrolled,
or unmodulated, inappropriate clotting can occur, which pro-
duces venous and arterial clots and all their sequelae. In gyne-
ocologic surgery, the normal physical hypercoagulable state, as
well as the inappropriate state, must be understood to appreci-
ate the diagnosis, intervention, and management of postoper-
ative vascular occlusive complications. Virchow, in 1845, was
the first to conceptualize the triad of blood flow, vessel wall,
and content of blood itself as a basis for inappropriate clotting.
An understanding of the relation of the three parts is essential
to explain what has occurred in the problem patient.

**Fibrinolysis**

The activation of the fibrinolytic system begins with the acti-
vation of the plasma substrate plasminogen. This substrate is
converted by naturally occurring activators such as urokinase,
kallikrein, and clot-activated proteases to the active enzyme
plasmin. Plasmin is the active enzyme that if free or clot-bound
lyses fibrin clots and destroys fibrinogen. This enzyme is mod-
ulated by α2-antiplasmin and antitrypsin, which destroy the
active enzyme plasmin.

This enzymatic conversion of fibrinolysis normally is initi-
at ed by clot formation or by a direct activator such as uroki-
nase or tissue plasminogen activator (tPA). tPA released from
the endothelium activates tissue plasminogen and is neutral-
ized by plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1). Sometimes
direct activation is seen in liver disease and during extracorporeal bypass. This activation also can be secondary to disease, as
in a consumptive coagulopathy—such as bacterial sepsis—or a
large abdominal aneurysm.

**Hypercoagulable State**

With physiologic stress, such as emotional stress and surgical
stress, there is a response of fright or flight. This response to

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Therapeutic ranges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prophylaxis for venous thromboembolism in high-risk surgery and in hip surgery</td>
<td>2.0–3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment of venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism</td>
<td>2.0–3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of systemic embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tissue heart valves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrial fibrillation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valvular heart disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment for mechanical prosthetic heart valves (high risk)</td>
<td>2.5–3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of recurrent systemic embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of recurrent myocardial infarction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NEWNORMALIZED RATIOS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Therapeutic ranges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prophylaxis for venous thromboembolism in high-risk surgery and in hip surgery</td>
<td>2.0–3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment of venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism</td>
<td>2.0–3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of systemic embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tissue heart valves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrial fibrillation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valvular heart disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment for mechanical prosthetic heart valves (high risk)</td>
<td>2.5–3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of recurrent systemic embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of recurrent myocardial infarction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CONGENITAL CAUSES OF INAPPROPRIATE CLOTTING**

The congenital etiology of inappropriate arterial and venous
clothing has long been ill defined. Only recently has it been more
completely elucidated (Tables 19.3 and 19.4). Procoagulants,
when increased on a congenital basis, have been associated
with a propensity to generate clots. These procoagulants in-
clude fibrinogen and factor VIII; however, they are not present
frequently enough to warrant testing every suspect case. Natu-
really occurring inhibitors of clotting are defined as those factors
that actively destroy clotting factors or substrates as they are
formed. The more common of these rare deficiencies are an-
tithrombin, protein C, protein S, factor V Leiden (R506Q),

**TABLE 19.3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Therapeutic ranges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prophylaxis for venous thromboembolism in high-risk surgery and in hip surgery</td>
<td>2.0–3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment of venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism</td>
<td>2.0–3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of systemic embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tissue heart valves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrial fibrillation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valvular heart disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment for mechanical prosthetic heart valves (high risk)</td>
<td>2.5–3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of recurrent systemic embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of recurrent myocardial infarction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 19.2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Therapeutic ranges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prophylaxis for venous thromboembolism in high-risk surgery and in hip surgery</td>
<td>2.0–3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment of venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism</td>
<td>2.0–3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of systemic embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tissue heart valves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrial fibrillation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valvular heart disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment for mechanical prosthetic heart valves (high risk)</td>
<td>2.5–3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of recurrent systemic embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of recurrent myocardial infarction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RISK FACTORS FOR ARTERIAL THROMBOSIS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Therapeutic ranges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prophylaxis for venous thromboembolism in high-risk surgery and in hip surgery</td>
<td>2.0–3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment of venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism</td>
<td>2.0–3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of systemic embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tissue heart valves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrial fibrillation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valvular heart disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment for mechanical prosthetic heart valves (high risk)</td>
<td>2.5–3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of recurrent systemic embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of recurrent myocardial infarction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fibrinolysis**

The activation of the fibrinolytic system begins with the acti-
vation of the plasma substrate plasminogen. This substrate is
converted by naturally occurring activators such as urokinase,
kallikrein, and clot-activated proteases to the active enzyme
plasmin. Plasmin is the active enzyme that if free or clot-bound
lyses fibrin clots and destroys fibrinogen. This enzyme is mod-
ulated by α2-antiplasmin and antitrypsin, which destroy the
active enzyme plasmin.

This enzymatic conversion of fibrinolysis normally is initi-
at ed by clot formation or by a direct activator such as uroki-
nase or tissue plasminogen activator (tPA). tPA released from
the endothelium activates tissue plasminogen and is neutral-
ized by plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1). Sometimes
direct activation is seen in liver disease and during extracorporeal bypass. This activation also can be secondary to disease, as
in a consumptive coagulopathy—such as bacterial sepsis—or a
large abdominal aneurysm.

**Hypercoagulable State**

With physiologic stress, such as emotional stress and surgical
stress, there is a response of fright or flight. This response to

**New**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Therapeutic ranges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prophylaxis for venous thromboembolism in high-risk surgery and in hip surgery</td>
<td>2.0–3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment of venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism</td>
<td>2.0–3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of systemic embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tissue heart valves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrial fibrillation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valvular heart disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment for mechanical prosthetic heart valves (high risk)</td>
<td>2.5–3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of recurrent systemic embolism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of recurrent myocardial infarction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 19.4
RISK FACTORS FOR VENOUS THROMBOSIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inherited</th>
<th>Common</th>
<th>Rare</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Factor V Leiden (R506Q)</td>
<td>Factor II mutation (G21201A)</td>
<td>Antithrombin III deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor VIII</td>
<td>Protein C deficiency</td>
<td>Protein C deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor II</td>
<td>Protein S deficiency</td>
<td>PAI-1 polymorphism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor X</td>
<td>Plasminogen deficiency</td>
<td>Dysfibrinogenemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor XII</td>
<td>Tissue plasminogen activator deficiency</td>
<td>Factor XII deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor XIII</td>
<td>Prekallikrein (Fletcher factor) deficiency</td>
<td>Thrombomodulin deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor XIII</td>
<td>Factor XIII</td>
<td>Factor XIII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acquired</th>
<th>Surgery and trauma</th>
<th>Prolonged immobilization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Older age</td>
<td>Myeloproliferative disorders</td>
<td>Pregnancy/puerperium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Activated protein C resistance not due to FV Leiden</td>
<td>Antithrombin III deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor VIII</td>
<td>Factor XIII</td>
<td>Factor XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor XII</td>
<td>Protein C deficiency</td>
<td>Protein C deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor XIII</td>
<td>Plasminogen deficiency</td>
<td>Tissue plasminogen activator deficiency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


factor II mutation (G21201A), PAI-1 polymorphisms 4G/5G, and methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase mutations (C677T, A1298C).

IMPAIRED FIBRINOLYSIS
A congenital decrease in the plasma substrate plasminogen results in inadequate fibrinolysis of thrombi. This deficiency can be qualitative and quantitative, with similar effects.

A congenital decrease in tPA that normally is released from the vascular endothelium is associated with impaired fibrinolysis. An abnormal increase in plasminogen activator inhibitor also will reduce the level of tPA, resulting in inappropriate clotting, elevated PAI-1 secondary to obesity, metabolic syndrome, or acute phase reactions.

The decrease or absence of Fletcher factor (prekallikrein) and factor XII also can result in impaired fibrinolysis because of a decrease in activation of circulating plasminogen at the time of clot activation.

ACQUIRED CAUSES OF INAPPROPRIATE CLOTTING
The number of acquired causes of inappropriate clotting is much greater than the number of congenital causes and is expanding every day because the same chemistry found in the congenital mechanism can be identified as a deficiency in an ongoing disease process. These include such risk factors as an elevated factor VIII, fibrinogen, metastatic cancer, myeloproliferative disorders, and diabetes/metabolic syndrome.

Iatrogenic causes of inappropriate clotting are common findings in the hospital setting and generate great concern. Such causes include the postsurgical state, medication, vascular prothropic devices, and immobilization for any reason.

As a physiologic acute-phase response to surgical stress, an exaggerated outpouring of clotting factors and platelets in combination with a decrease in physiologic inhibitors can result in clot formation. This occurs in deep leg veins, particularly in association with venous stasis.

Prosthetic devices such as grafts, shunts, and artificial heart valves can provide a clottable surface that will form a nidus for initial thrombosis quickly followed by further clot formation, resulting in obstruction or embolization.

The vascular component of acquired thrombotic disease has only recently been described in detail. It appears that decreased blood flow through a vein can decrease the contact between thrombin and thrombomodulin, diminishing the contact with protein C and predisposing the vein to thrombosis. However, the arterial side with high blood flow rates has a rich capillary bed with greater contact with protein C, lysing clots more efficiently. Local thrombus formation can be generated by direct mechanical disruption of the vascular endothelium, traumatic damage to the vessel wall, infectious or chemical damage to the vessel wall, and vasculitis.

PREOPERATIVE COAGULATION ASSESSMENT FOR SURGICAL PATIENTS
For the preoperative evaluation, gynecologic patients must of necessity be divided into two categories: those having routine or elective surgery and those having emergency surgery.

Elective Surgery
The elective gynecologic surgical patient must be evaluated in two ways: general medical history and specific nature of the surgery. The medical history taken at bedside, with review of the medical chart when available, is an excellent place to begin. Table 19.5 highlights the most important positive and negative findings to be identified.

Preoperative coagulation screening is of limited value without complete knowledge of the patient’s past and current medical history.

TABLE 19.5
PERTINENT MEDICAL HISTORY TO SCREEN FOR COAGULATION PROBLEMS

| History of spontaneous bruising or bleeding |
| History of unusual bruising or excessive bleeding after surgery |
| Family history of bruising or bleeding after surgery |
| Medication associated with bruising or bleeding |
| Current medication within past week |
| Previous coagulation testing |
| Current coagulation testing |

| History of spontaneous bruising or bleeding |
| History of unusual bruising or excessive bleeding after surgery |
| Family history of bruising or bleeding after surgery |
| Medication associated with bruising or bleeding |
| Current medication within past week |
| Previous coagulation testing |
| Current coagulation testing |
**TABLE 19.6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Reference range†</th>
<th>Level of alarm</th>
<th>Significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hematocrit (%)</td>
<td>37–47</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Tissue anoxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White cell count (mL)</td>
<td>(4 \times 10^3–12 \times 10^3)</td>
<td>3 ( \times 10^2–25 \times 10^3)</td>
<td>Susceptibility to infection, leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrinogen (mg/dL)</td>
<td>140–400</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>Bleeding, myeloproliferative disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prothrombin time (s)</td>
<td>10–13</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Bleeding factor deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activated partial thromboplastin time (s)</td>
<td>28–38</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Bleeding factor deficiency, inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFA-100</td>
<td>Collagen–epinephrine</td>
<td>Prolonged closure time</td>
<td>Screen for medication effect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Reference ranges may vary in each laboratory, reflecting method, instrumentation, and reagents.

**TABLE 19.7**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COAGULATION PROFILES</th>
<th>Brief coagulation profile</th>
<th>Complete coagulation profile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CBC (includes WBC differential)</td>
<td>CBC (includes WBC differential)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platelet count</td>
<td>Platelet count</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prothrombin time</td>
<td>Prothrombin time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial activated</td>
<td>Partial activated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thromboplastin time</td>
<td>Thromboplastin time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

†Reference ranges may vary in each laboratory, reflecting method, instrumentation, and reagents.
replacement therapy and the complications of such therapy depends on a clear understanding of the following concepts.

1. As bank blood replacement with just packed red cells corrects the blood loss problem, it may create an acquired bleeding disorder, thrombocytopenic hemophilia. Platelets and fresh-frozen plasma may be indicated.

2. The patient’s bleeding will slow and will change rapidly and frequently with the loss of blood and replacement therapy.

3. Direct monitoring before, during, and after surgery offers the best chance to diagnose and manage the bleeding. Direct monitoring also allows formulation of plans and adjustment of the replacement therapy program.

COMPONENT THERAPY FOR REPLACEMENT BEFORE SURGERY

With surgery planned, the preoperative data can be evaluated. Assuming the patient does not have hemophilia, von Willebrand disease, severe liver disease, or liver failure, a prolonged PT and APTT may suggest a less common acquired or congenital bleeding disorder. (The blood sample must be properly drawn and mixed well and must not be taken from an A-line containing heparin or from an infusion site.) Assistance from a clinical pathologist or hematologist should be requested if an intrinsic bleeding disorder is suspected.

According to Schiffman and Steinhron, when intraoperative blood loss exceeds 15% of the patient’s estimated blood volume, the surgeon should consider red blood cell transfusion to replace the acute blood loss. As a general rule, 15% of an adult’s blood volume equals the patient’s weight (in kilograms) times 10. For example, for a 50-kg woman (110 lb), 15% of blood volume is (50 × 10) 500 mL; for a 75-kg woman (165 lb), 15% of blood volume is (75 × 10) 750 mL; for a 100-kg woman (220 lb), 15% of blood volume is (100 × 10) 1,000 mL. The patient’s estimated blood volume, the estimated intraoperative blood loss, the anticipation of additional blood loss, the presence of preoperative anemia, and the risk of hypovolemic complications must all be taken into consideration when deciding whether to transfuse.

When massive blood replacement therapy is under way, intraoperative monitoring of coagulation at 2-hour intervals, or after every 10 U of blood transfused, usually is sufficient. One should remember that a patient bleeding during a surgical procedure has a higher demand for clotting factors and platelets than does a patient at bed rest. In many oncology cases in which the patient is undergoing chemotherapy, a platelet count of 50,000/mL is adequate; in a surgical case in which the patient is bleeding, a 50,000/mL platelet count is not adequate to achieve a good platelet plug. The use of blood and blood components in the management of massive bleeding that is due to a major vessel rupture has the following objectives:

1. To maintain sufficient blood volume and circulating red cells to sustain life

2. To replace blood sufficiently to achieve adequate coagulation and hemostasis, assuming there was extensive loss of plasma-clotting factors and platelets

3. To avoid falling so far behind in replacement that management involves not only bleeding from a vascular tear but also bleeding at the microvascular level because of insufficient clotting factors and platelets

Each of these objectives requires repeated assessment of the patient throughout the surgical procedure. Careful monitoring by established routine policies often is the best way to handle a crisis situation created by massive bleeding.

Formulas for blood transfusion that are applied ritualistically without the benefit of laboratory data may resolve the need to treat but do not answer the needs of the patient. The formulas described below are designed to initiate the marshaling of blood bank resources. They do not replace the thoughtful analysis of laboratory data coupled with the selection of a specific blood component to correct a specific deficit. The following guidelines are recommended for component therapy in clinical situations requiring massive blood replacement to maintain normal hemostasis.

For every 6 to 8 U of packed red blood cells, 2 U (500 mL) of fresh-frozen plasma should be given. The size and age of the patient affect blood replacement. If the patient’s blood volume can accommodate an additional 500 mL of fresh-frozen plasma, this amount should be transfused and the PT and APTT monitored.

Platelets should be given when the platelet count falls below 100,000/mL in massive hemorrhage. (Measurement error of a platelet count can be as high as 62,000/mL in a bleeding patient.) When a long surgical procedure is anticipated, or when more than 6 U of blood are given, 6 U of platelets in a volume of 300 mL should be given toward the end of the surgical procedure or when surgical hemostasis is achieved. This amount should be administered once to provide a maximum bolus effect. Because platelets are often difficult to obtain, their use should be reserved until near the end of the procedure. Otherwise, they may be lost and therefore unavailable when needed because of continued blood loss and replacement during extensive surgical repair. Pooling and transporting the platelets can take up to an hour, so the blood bank should be given sufficient notice to have them available in surgery when needed.

When massive blood replacement therapy is under way, intraoperative monitoring of coagulation at 2-hour intervals, or after every 10 U of blood transfused, usually is sufficient. Six units of platelets will achieve maximum bolus effect in an average patient (3 U in a child or small adult) and will also enable evaluation of platelet use. A platelet count of 40,000 to 60,000/mL should be expected in a 70-kg person after transfusion of 6 U of platelets. Monitoring the platelet count after transfusion and for the next several hours will reveal the success of replacement, consumption, and life of the platelets.

When the PT and APTT are prolonged (more than 14 seconds and 40 seconds, respectively) after replacement therapy, intrinsic disease must be considered initially, if only to be ruled out later. A borderline hemophilia or patient with liver disease may manifest excessive bleeding after stress, trauma, or blood replacement because of the increased coagulation needs. A mild hemophilia or liver disease is rare as an unknown, but it is possible. Therefore, administration of fresh-frozen plasma in these 2 U (500 mL) doses should begin to correct the deficiencies caused by massive red blood cell replacement. If oozing continues despite the rapid transfusion of 6 U of fresh-frozen plasma, a clotting problem or other ongoing bleeding disorder should be suspected and additional support sought.
When the fibrinogen level falls below 100 mg/dL, transfusion of 20 U of cryoprecipitate will provide about 130 mg/dL fibrinogen in a 70-kg person. A low fibrinogen level is rare because fibrinogen is stable and present in fresh-frozen plasma.

LIVER DISEASE OR INTRAVASCULAR CONSUMPTION

Liver disease or intravascular consumption must be suspected if the fibrinogen level is initially less than 100 mg/dL and remains low throughout surgery and recovery. The 20 U of cryoprecipitate will achieve therapeutic levels quickly and permit monitoring over several hours.

The goals of intraoperative monitoring are as follows:

1. To assess changes in the coagulation mechanism resulting from blood loss and replacement therapy
2. To identify the coagulation components affected and determine the correct components to initiate therapy
3. To determine the success of replacement component therapy in an extensive operative procedure
4. To enable selection of components to achieve the following values: PT less than 14 seconds, APTT less than 40 seconds, fibrinogen more than 100 mg/dL, and platelets more than 80 × 10^9/L. If surgical hemostasis appears to have been achieved from a technical viewpoint and bleeding is present but mild, one can “wait to see” for 2 hours. If bleeding is profuse and worsening, 2 to 4 U of fresh-frozen plasma and a 6- to 10-U dose of platelets are given, and then packed red cells are given as needed. The patient is monitored when the transfusion is completed. Laboratory monitoring is repeated after 1 to 2 hours, whether the patient is bleeding or not, to determine the success of replacement.

COMPONENT THERAPY FOR POSTOPERATIVE REPLACEMENT

The presurgical and intraoperative alarm levels for hematocrit, platelet count, PT, APTT, fibrinogen, and clot retraction also apply postoperatively, and a comparison of these values provides an accurate assessment of the bleeding patient. Significant clinical bleeding with good postoperative coagulation values suggests surgical bleeding. When laboratory values are abnormal, however, further surgery can be delayed until an attempt at aggressive specific component therapy is made. We have found that when abnormal coagulation studies exist, the following causes predominate, in order of frequency (most frequent first):

1. Low platelet count owing to transfusion of only packed red cells or fresh-frozen plasma
2. Prolonged PT and APTT owing to replacement with packed red cells without fresh-frozen plasma. In administering aggressive replacement therapy, it should be remembered that some patients have a meager blood volume. Careful monitoring of venous and arterial pressure, as well as cardiac output, should be considered in blood component therapy. Often a slower rate of administration can achieve hemostasis without cardiovascular overload. In rare cases, phlebotomy may be required to create needed space for transfusion. If nearly normal coagulation values are achieved but bleeding continues, surgical causes for bleeding should be considered.
3. Low fibrinogen level owing to dilution with plasma expanders or concurrent development of a disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) syndrome.

The goals of postoperative monitoring are as follows:

1. To determine whether a coagulopathy was created by blood replacement and to determine current status
2. To determine the success of specific component therapy and identify the need for additional components
3. To enable the surgeon to distinguish surgical from nonsurgical bleeding

The routine use of postoperative monitoring, whether the patient is bleeding or not, will achieve these goals. As the surgeon reviews the results of each case, he or she will develop a valuable assessment of the patient’s usual postoperative coagulation states. With this knowledge, the unexpected is recognized and resolved in a more timely manner.

RISKS OF BLOOD TRANSFUSION

Transfusions of whole blood were given sporadically before 1900, usually to treat specific diseases rather than to replace lost blood volume. Indeed, heavy bleeding was thought to be beneficial and therapeutic for many diseases. Even as late as World War I, the importance of blood loss and replacement was not recognized, because shock was thought to be owing to toxins released from traumatized tissue. It was the work of Cannon and Bayliss in 1919 and of Blalock in 1930 that proved the important factors in shock were the loss of circulating blood volume and the decreased return of venous blood to the right heart.

Landsteiner discovered the four major blood groups in 1900. Banking and storage of donated blood became possible with refrigeration and the addition of sugar and later sodium citrate as an anticoagulant. In World War II, a remarkable program was organized to collect and store large quantities of type O (so-called universal donor) blood for shipment to U.S. military hospitals throughout the world. Many lives were saved by the use of this banked blood to treat the shock associated with battle casualties. This experience firmly established the need for blood banks and the importance of blood transfusions in combatting hypovolemic shock from hemorrhage before, during, and after surgery.

To be safe, homologous blood must be collected from carefully selected volunteer donors and properly matched to the potential recipient. Although many lives have been saved by properly administered transfusions, gynecologic surgeons must be aware of the potential hazards of perioperative transfusions. The risks of red blood cell transfusion were reviewed by a National Institutes of Health and Food and Drug Administration Consensus Development Conference on Perioperative Red Cell Transfusion and published in 1988. The following excerpt is taken directly from their report.

In deciding whether to use red blood cell transfusion in the perioperative period, the need for possibly improved oxygenation must be weighed against the risks of adverse consequences, both short term and long term. The disadvantages are of two general types: transmission of infection and adverse effects attributable to immune mechanisms.

Any infectious agent that is present in the blood of a donor at the time of donation is potentially transmissible to a susceptible recipient. The consequence may be seen as clinical morbidity and mortality after an incubation period characteristic of the agent or recognized only by serological or other types of laboratory testing. If the agent produces chronic infection, clinical mortality may not be seen until years after the transfusion (Table 19.8).
Cytomegalovirus infection occurs with moderate frequency in transfusion recipients. Human T-cell lymphotropic viruses occur with low but not negligible frequency among donor populations in the United States. It is not known whether transfusion-transmitted infections with these viruses are currently occurring. Patients with cancer, in particular those receiving immunosuppressive therapy, are at increased risk for these infections. Epstein-Barr virus, and other paroviruses, are common in the United States. It is known for the human hepatitis viruses that the incidence of infection in recipients increases with the number of red blood cell units transfused. The use of the newer leukocyte reduction filters (<5 × 10^6) is under extensive clinical study and application as an alternative to cytomegalovirus-negative red blood cells. There are alternatives to blood and blood component transfusion that may be considered in critically ill patients such as those with sepsis and deseminated intravascular coagulation. The drug activated protein C, drotrecogin alfa (Xigris), is recombinant human activated protein C (drotrecogin alfa, activated). It is used in replacement therapy in sepsis and holds a great promise in the management and survival in sepsis. Replacing this essential naturally occurring anticoagulant, there is reversal of the bleeding and thrombosis seen with sepsis. Its specific application in septic gynecologic surgical patients has recently been reported in the transplant and cardiac surgery setting. It has been demonstrated to successfully manage patients with FVIII and FIX inhibitors. It has also been used in management of bleeding in cardiovascular surgery, liver failure, and in sepsis. There is limited experience with drotrecogin alfa in the treatment of similar complications in gynecologic surgery.
According to Friedman and colleagues, in every age range the mean hematocrit of men is higher than that of women. Women adapt to this relative state of anemia physiologically by a variety of mechanisms. Their red blood cells have a greater capacity than those of men to release oxygen. The erythrocyte oxygen dissociation curve of women is right-shifted when compared with that of men. Levels of 2,3-diphosphoglycerate, adenosine triphosphate (ATP), and glucose-6-phosphate are higher in the red blood cells of women than in those of men. Because of these physiologic adaptations, Friedman and colleagues suggest that a lower hematocrit support level to govern the blood transfusion of female surgical patients be considered.

There are a variety of methods to support circulating volume, but there is no available material to support oxygen transport. Future research may be successful in developing modified hemoglobin solutions and perfluorocarbon emulsions for oxygen transport, but there currently is no substitute for red blood cells for this purpose.

In a comprehensive discussion of perioperative interventions to decrease transfusion of allogeneic blood products, Ereth and associates suggest that an increased awareness of transfusion-related morbidity from allogeneic blood products has resulted in increased development and application of alternatives to allogeneic transfusion. As an indication of what can be accomplished, a program instituted by the Transfusion Committee of the Methodist Hospital of Indianapolis modified transfusion practice in the hospital by establishing new transfusion guidelines based on national standards rather than on local practices and by implementing educational and monitoring systems. As reported by Rosen and colleagues, over a 3-year period, the total decrease in donor exposures for patients was 42,072. Overall savings amounted to $3,627,148. This program was able to effect substantial cost and patient risk reductions, even though hospital services involving blood transfusion increased. A comprehensive update titled “Transfusion Medicine in Obstetrics and Gynecology” was published recently by Santoso and associates.

**AUTOLOGOUS BLOOD TRANSFUSION**

Blood collected from a patient for transfusion at a later time into the same patient is called autologous blood. Autologous blood transfusions have been endorsed by the Council on Scientific Affairs of the American Medical Association and by the Committee on Hospital Transfusion Practice of the American Association of Blood Banks. If established guidelines are followed, autologous blood is the safest type of blood for transfusion. It does not eliminate all risks associated with red blood cell transfusion, because there is still the possibility of a hemolytic reaction caused by the rare clerical error or bacterial contamination. It does eliminate the risk of alloimmunization and the risk of transferring such infections as hepatitis, malaria, cytomegalovirus, and AIDS. In patients with rare blood types who have antibodies to common blood antigens, it may be the only blood available for transfusion. Autologous blood transfusion is acceptable to most Jehovah’s Witnesses who have a variety of other patients, including gynecology/obstetric patients, were represented.

A general subject review of intraoperative autologous transfusion was published by Popovsky and associates in 1985. These investigators stated that although the technology of the earlier experiences was comparatively crude and associated with technical problems and complications, better methods have been developed in recent years to eliminate problems in the operation and maintenance of the machinery and to make intraoperative autologous transfusion safe. Our experience in gynecologic surgery reported by Shapiro and Fordko, although limited at this point to a series of 25 myomectomy operations, has demonstrated to our satisfaction that intraoperative autologous transfusion is convenient to use and does not in any way interfere with the performance of the procedure.

The Haemonetics Cell Saver operates by retrieving blood from the operative site by suctioning it into a double-lumen catheter, in which it is immediately anticoagulated with heparin. It is then collected in a cardiomyocyte reservoir, where a filter removes gross debris. The blood is then pumped to a spinning centrifuge bowl, where the red blood cells are separated, washed with normal saline solution, and then concentrated to a hematocrit of about 50%. The supernatant waste that is subsequently collected contains saline, anticoagulant, activated coagulation factors, platelets, leukocytes, free hemoglobin, and other small debris. The washed packed red blood cells are pumped into a reinfusion bag. The blood is then directly transfused to the patient through a filter. The reagents and the collecting system are sterile and disposable. The entire process takes 8 to 10 minutes to process about 250 mL of packed cells. The machine is maintained and operated by a trained technican.

At least until additional data are available to the contrary, intraoperative autologous transfusion is contraindicated in patients with malignant disease and in patients with bacterial contamination of blood in the operative field. Although the addition of antibiotic agents to the cell-washing system can reduce or eliminate contaminating bacteria, some bacteria with the potential of causing systemic infection if reinfused may remain. There is a theoretical concern that malignant cells contained in reinfused blood may be responsible for generalized seeding of the malignant process. Although there are no data to support or deny this position for medicolegal reasons at least— intraoperative autologous transfusion should be considered contraindicated in a patient with cancer unless the need is desperate. It is difficult to distinguish the hematologic changes induced by intraoperative autologous transfusion from the changes induced by hemorrhage and massive transfusion with homologous blood products for the use of component therapy are the same for both groups.
Merrill and colleagues reported the use of intraoperative autotransfusion in 38 patients with ruptured ectopic pregnancy. Transfusion-related morbidity occurred in six patients; two patients developed clinical coagulopathy, two patients developed pulmonary edema, and two patients developed minor transfusion reactions from concomitantly used bank blood. The total amount of retransfused blood was 49,473 ml, or 59% of the total amount of blood administered. This saved about 90 U of banked blood.

Merrill and colleagues reported the use of intraoperative autotransfusion in 38 patients with ruptured ectopic pregnancy. Transfusion-related morbidity occurred in six patients; two patients developed clinical coagulopathy, two patients developed pulmonary edema, and two patients developed minor transfusion reactions from concomitantly used bank blood. The total amount of retransfused blood was 49,473 ml, or 59% of the total amount of blood administered. This saved about 90 U of banked blood. It must be remembered that both autologous (intraoperative) and homologous blood are essentially packed red blood cells. One risk with autologous blood transfusions is forgetting that only the patient’s packed cells are transfused. The patient will still need fresh-frozen plasma and platelets when massive transfusion of autologous blood is used.

**Predonote Autologous Blood Transfusion**

Because blood transfusion is so rarely required in gynecologic surgery for benign disease, predonote of autologous blood for intraoperative transfusion is rarely indicated. However, certain patients may strongly desire this approach if there is any possibility of requiring a transfusion; in some patients with malignant disease or other extensive surgery, the risk of transfusion may be significant. Experience has shown that autologous blood can be collected and stored as whole blood, red blood cells, plasma, or platelets for retransfusion into the same patient during surgery if needed or at some other time. Donation can be scheduled at weekly intervals up to 3 days before surgery. Oral iron therapy is administered, and the hematocrit and hemoglobin levels must not be low. The American Association of Blood Banks’ standards for elective preoperative autologous blood donation include the following guidelines:

- A hemoglobin of no less than 11 g/dL or a packed cell volume of no less than 34%.
- Phlebotomy no more frequently than every 3 days and not within 72 hours of surgery.

If a patient’s condition is stable enough to allow elective surgery, then preoperative donation for autologous transfusion is not contraindicated. Mann and associates studied the safety of autologous blood donation before elective surgery for a variety of potentially high-risk patients. Of 300 patients in the study, 46 were at least 70 years old. Four percent of patients experienced a minor reaction to blood donation. This method of providing autologous blood should have applicability in gynecologic surgery. Experience suggests that it should be encouraged when practical.

The number of centers providing autologous blood transfusion programs will probably continue to increase as a result of AIDS and public knowledge of the possibility of spread of this disease by homologous blood transfusion, even though rare. Programs encouraging selected patients to donate their own blood before surgery are becoming increasingly popular, despite the numerous logistical problems that must be solved. Only 2% of the blood collected in the United States is for predepost autologous transfusion.

Much of gynecologic surgery is elective, and many patients are comparatively healthy. Elective gynecologic surgery often is scheduled 3 to 4 weeks in the future. During this time, many patients will have blood predonote for use during operation. Only about 2% of patients undergoing elective hysterectomy require blood transfusion, depending on the skill of the operator and the extent and nature of the gynecologic pathology.

Routine predonote of autologous blood is not recommended for hystereotomy for benign disease.

Goodnough and colleagues have found that the administration of recombinant human erythropoietin increases the amount of autologous blood that can be collected before surgery. The volume of red cells donated by patients treated with erythropoietin during the study was 41% greater than that donated by patients given placebo.

**BASIC SURGICAL PRINCIPLES TO AVOID EXCESSIVE BLEEDING IN PELVIC SURGERY**

It is easier to stay out of trouble than to get out of trouble! A good knowledge of the surgical anatomy is the basis for avoiding hemorrhage. A well-planned surgical procedure with good exposure, precise placement of the clamps, skillful dissection technique, and careful suture placement are all important. In addition to good technical ability, surgical judgment is a key ingredient to a consistently excellent surgical outcome. Should the densely adherent bladder be dissected a little more before clamping across the vagina? Should the endometriosis in the posterior cul-de-sac be dissected free from the sigmoid colon or just cauterized? These decisions occur constantly during any operation, and the surgeon who knows the patient, the disease entity being treated, the technical details of the planned surgical procedure, and his or her own technical abilities can confidently make these judgments that will result in a successful surgical outcome and avoid complications such as intraoperative hemorrhage.

Among the many contributions to surgery made by William S. Halsted, chief of surgery at Johns Hopkins Hospital, was a surgical technique that emphasized meticulousness in dissection, gentleness in the handling of tissues, accuracy in hemostasis, precision in wound approximation, and absolute asepsis. This meticulous technique has become widely known in the United States as the Halstedian technique. It promotes good tissue healing by reducing tissue damage and wound infection. The accuracy of dissection, hemostasis, and tissue approximation is emphasized rather than speed, but wasting time with unnecessary hesititation, indefiniteness, and indecision can increase blood loss and the risk of infection. The experienced surgeon will be able to finish the operative procedures in a deliberate, purposeful, timely, and precise manner. The speed with which the dissection is performed should be varied from one phase of the operation to the other, but the operation should progress in an orderly manner. For example, the incision can be fashioned with some haste, but dissection around deep pelvic veins must be performed with great caution to avoid injury and bleeding. Although shorter operative procedures are generally associated with less blood loss and lower rates of infection, the pace of the procedure should be governed by the difficulty of the surgery and the skill and experience of the surgeon. Too much haste will sooner or later result in excessive blood loss or injury to adjacent organs or structures, which will ultimately prolong the operation. Technical aspects of surgical technique, including good exposure, gentle handling of tissues, accurate clamp placement, and good suture technique—which includes secure knot tying—are all important characteristics that will minimize blood loss and contribute to a successful and well-executed operative procedure. It is impossible to place too much emphasis on the need for optimum exposure to limit blood loss. During vaginal operations, a contracted pelvic outlet will limit exposure for vaginal
Control of Pelvic Hemorrhage

A leiomyomatous uterus may require morcel-
lization to allow sufficient exposure for safe vaginal removal. A Schuchardt incision may be required to improve exposure
during vaginal operations. If exposure is inadequate, bleed-
ing from vessels in the upper broad ligament may not be
controllable from below, and an abdominal incision may be
necessary to achieve final hemostasis from above. When hem-
orrhage is not controlled by vaginal or laparoscopic surgery,
the question always arises, “When should the operation be
converted to an open abdominal procedure so that improved
exposure and better access can be used to control the bleed-
ing?” The answer to this question will vary depending on a
variety of circumstances, but good exposure will go a long way
toward solving many surgical difficulties. During abdominal
operations, the exposure achieved will depend on the choice
of incision, the method of retracting, the placement and intensity
of the lights, and the presence of willing and skilled assistants.
Suction should be available to keep the field as free of blood as
possible and is preferred over sponges for two reasons. First,
sponges can cause damage to delicate serosal surfaces. Second,
a determination of the amount of blood lost can be more accu-
rate if the largest percentage has actually been suctioned into a
calibrated bottle and measured. One can then add to this exact
amount an estimate of the amount of blood lost on the drapes,
sponges, and lap packs. The record of the amount of blood
lost should be as accurate as possible and can be of great value
in making correct decisions subsequently about the patient's
care, especially regarding the need for blood replacement in
case there is a suspicion of hypovolemia. Good lighting of the
surgical field is important. In addition to the standard surgical
lights, we have found that a headlight worn by the surgeon
and/or the assistants is very useful in providing excellent light-
depth in the pelvis. There are also lighted retractors, which
can be helpful in laparoscopy.

For pelvic laparotomy, the patient usually is placed in a mod-
est Trendelenburg position. In this position, the packs required
to keep the intestines displaced in the upper abdomen tend to
stay in place better, thereby enhancing exposure. An anesthetic
 narcotic is usually needed to keep the patient from pushing
her bowels into the operative field, especially when the dis-
section is tedious, and good exposure is mandatory for safe
performance of the operation. A retractor with an upper blade
or blades to retract the intestines out of the pelvis is very use-
ful and reduces the requirement for Trendelenburg positioning
and anesthetic muscle relaxation.

It usually is possible, and always desirable, to keep the num-
ber of clamps in the operative field to an absolute minimum.
If the field is cluttered with clamps, the operators cannot see
as well to operate. The length of the instruments must vary, de-
pending on the thickness of the abdominal wall, the depth of the
pelvis, and other variables. Pedicle clamps, tissue forceps,
dissecting scissors, needle holders, and all other instruments
must be longer for operations on obese patients and for exten-
sive operations in a deep pelvis. The handles of the instruments
must come all the way out and above the level of the incision so
as not to interfere with the operator’s view of the pelvis. There
is an unfortunate tendency for gynecologic surgeons to use in-
struments that are too short and not properly curved. The operator
must stand high enough to see down into the pelvis. The patient's abdominal
wall should be at about the level of the operator’s umbilicus,
not too high or too low.

Cushing, a neurosurgeon, introduced the hemostatic silver
clips in 1911 to occlude arterial vessels inaccessible to lig-
ation. More recently, clips have been made of stainless steel,
tantalum, and the new synthetically absorbable nonopaque poly-
dioxanone polymer. The latter has the advantage of not causing
the streaked artifact of metal clips when subsequent computed
tomography (CT) of the pelvis is performed. Clips cause little
tissue reaction, usually are easily and rapidly applied, and pro-
vide secure control of bleeding vessels in relatively inaccessible
places in the pelvis where ligature would be more difficult. A
small vessel can be quickly occluded with a clip even before the
vessel is cut, thus keeping the field dry and the tissues to be
sutured free of blood or laparoscopy. Clips are especially useful
in retroperitoneal dissections. They are available in several sizes.
Disposable applicators loaded with multiple clips are available,
obviating the need for reloading and facilitating rapid use. If
appropriately used, clips can reduce blood loss, facilitate dis-
section, and reduce operating time.

Working with Bovie, Cushing also pioneered the use of elec-
trosurgery for hemostasis. Modern electrosurgical units are
radiofrequency generators that supply 500,000 to 2 million
Hz of alternating current to the tip of the electrode. The best
techniques for use of electrosurgical equipment and important
safety information are well discussed in Chapter 15, but sev-
eral points should be emphasized. An electrosurgical instru-
ment can be used to coagulate small vessels or to cut through
fat or muscle. If a “blend” cut is used, small vessels will be
coagulated as the instrument divides the tissue.

The needlepoint electrode can be used for precise incisions
with minimal tissue injury from collateral thermal effect. Su-
perficial coagulation of small vessels can be achieved by hold-
ing the electrode close to the tissue, pressing the “coagulation”
button, and allowing the sparks to jump to the tissue surface.

The blood should not be allowed to pool. Dry surfaces are
much more effectively coagulated with the electrosurgical in-
strument. If bleeding is brisk, the vessel is grasped with a fine-
pointed clamp or forceps, and hemostasis can be achieved by
touching the metal clamp with the tip of the electrosurgical in-
strument and apply the “cutting” current. This may seem para-
doxical, but the “cutting” current actually results in a deeper
tissue effect in these circumstances, leading to better sealing
of large vessels. Bipolar electrodes built into tissue forceps are
also very effective for coagulating smaller vessels during te-
dious dissections. Experience with the electrosurgery will
result in maximum efficiency with minimum tissue damage and
a shorter operating time.

With a thorough knowledge of pelvic anatomy, the surgeon
should emphasize the development of pelvic planes and spaces.
This will avoid unnecessary bleeding and allow more accurate
placement of clamps on vessels. Certain parts of the dissection
can be delayed until later, especially if they are not needed now
and blood loss is likely to be increased. For example, when
abdominal hysterectomy is performed, dissection of the blad-
er away from the cervix and vagina may be associated with
bleed loss and should not be performed at the beginning of the
operation. Exposure of the anterior lower uterine segment and
cervix is not required until the uterine vessels and broad
ligament need to be clamped. Until then, there is no need to
start this potentially bloody dissection.

In the early days of abdominal pelvic surgery, postoperative
hemorrhage was common because an effective technique of
hemostasis was not known. The usual method of performing
abdominal hysterectomy involved use of a ligature on masse
around the lower uterus. This mass ligature saved time and
was used to occlude both uterine and ovarian vessels simulta-
neously. The uterine corpus with adnexa attached was simply
amputated above the ligature. The stump thus formed was such
a large mass of tissue that it could not be safely returned to the
peritoneal cavity because of the danger of intraperitoneal bleed-
ing. Therefore, sometimes the stump was fixed extraperi-
toneally in the incision so that it was available for hemostatic
clamping if the need arose. It was not until 1889 that Simons published a technique for secure individual ligation of the uterus and ovarian vessels that was responsible for significantly reducing the incidence of postoperative hemorrhage. Kelly published a similar technique with illustrations in 1891. The technique of ligation of large tissue pedicles with large sutures has been suggested for some types of total laparoscopic hysterectomy in recent years. In such large pedicles it is a step backward that will, sooner or later, lead to significant hemorrhage.

In abdominal operations today, all major vascular pedicles should be individually ligated, twice if technically feasible. Delayed-absorbable suture should be used and the knots firmly tied. Vascular pedicles should be small and the vessels skeletonized as much as possible so that a secure ligature with little extraneous tissue can be accomplished. A vascular pedicle where the tip of the clamp is free, such as the infundibulopelvic ligament, should always be ligated first with a free tie to occlude the vessels. The pedicle is then secured with a transfixed suture ligature placed between the previous free tie and the clamp. This technique avoids hematoma formation and the rare occurrence of a traumatic arteriovenous fistula. If a suture ligature is to be held long for traction or later identification, there is a danger that it will become loosened or be pulled off, with resulting hematoma or bleeding. Sutures used to ligate vessels should usually be cut and rarely held for traction for this reason. During vaginal hysterectomy, the upper broad ligament containing the uteroovarian ligament and the fallopian tube should be doubly clamped. The lateralmost clamp is replaced by a free tie completely around the pedicle. Tied tightly, this ligature compresses the vessels in the pedicle so that the most medial clamp (the one closest to the uterus) can then be replaced with a suture ligature placed through the pedicle, passed around the clamp and tied tightly around the pedicle. This is one vascular ligature that can be held long for identification and traction with minimal risk of bleeding.

“The finer the suture, the finer the surgeon” is an aphorism that is associated with meticulous surgical technique. The aphorism is good advice, up to a point. The newer delayed-absorbable sutures are strong, and smaller-gauge sutures are strong enough to ligate vessels. However, it is dangerous to use fine suture to ligate large pedicles. The suture may break or cut through the tissue if there is too much tension on the pedicle. Fine needles with small sutures are useful for controlling localized venous or arterial bleeding, but larger suture with bigger bites are less likely to pull through infected or malignant tissue. Proper suture selection for the specific technique and patient is an important part of obtaining the best result from any given surgical procedure.

**INTRAOPERATIVE MEASURES TO CONTROL PELVIC HEMORRHAGE**

Despite adequate technical skills and careful dissection, serious hemorrhage can suddenly complicate almost any operative procedure. These occasions call for a maximum use of a surgeon's knowledge, technical ability, and leadership to produce a happy outcome. The first task is to control the hemorrhage. A finger should immediately be placed on the bleeding point for pressure, and continue with pressure. When the blood has been suctioned out and the fingertip exposed, it may be gently rolled off the bleeding point while a fine-tipped clamp of adequate length is poised to clamp the bleeding vessel and suction is ready to provide exposure. In most instances, this will adequately control the hemorrhage, although it is often necessary to place another clamp, clip, or suture adjacent to the first clamp to control the other side of the lacerated vessel or other nearby bleeders. It is most important to avoid placing too many clamps in the area because this will obscure the bleeding site and cause additional trauma to the vessels. Multiple sutures and/or clips may also cause more bleeding and further injury to adjacent structures, such as the ureter, bladder, pelvic vessels, and nerves. Caution should not be used to attempt to control significant bleeding. It will only cause increased bleeding and more tissue injury.

If an immediate attempt to control the hemorrhage by simple means is unsuccessful, the bleeding should be controlled again with pressure, either with a fingertip, a sponge forceps, or occasionally by packing. The surgeon should step back, take a deep breath, and carefully consider the situation. The anesthesiologist should be made aware of the hemorrhage and consulted about the patient's stability, blood loss up to this point, availability of blood for transfusion, intravenous lines, and so forth. The anesthesiologist will play an important role in fluid and blood replacement, monitoring coagulation factors and ensuring perfusion of vital organs. Therefore, it is important that he or she be fully aware of the situation and an active participant in such decisions as how long to safely continue surgery. The anticipated difficulty in controlling the hemorrhage must be honestly evaluated, and the patient's overall condition and the planned operative procedures should be considered and discussed with the surgical team. If additional suction or instruments are needed, they should be requested. If additional or more experienced assistants or additional scrub and circulating nurses are needed, they should be requested. Would it be helpful to have your partner, a gynecologic oncologist, a urologist, a general surgeon, or any other gynecologic surgeon available? They are probably not immediately available, so it is important to request their help sooner rather than later.

If the patient is stable and any necessary equipment—such as a second suction, deeper retractors, or hemostats—has been readied, it is reasonable to reconsider the anatomy, obtain good exposure, and have another try at controlling the bleeding. If you are lucky, the 10 minutes or so that the hemorrhage has been controlled by pressure will result in a substantial reduction in the bleeding. Perhaps the vessel or bleeding site can be more clearly seen and controlled with a clamp and a few small sutures or a clip or two. Arterial bleeding in the pelvis usually is easily controlled. The vessels have thick walls and are not easily torn further. Blood spurting from the vessel leads to its easy identification. If the artery can be clamped, it usually can be ligated, a clip can be applied, or both. If an artery has mostly retracted from view with only one small edge still visible, that edge may be grasped with a clamp and gently twisted, thus decreasing the amount of bleeding sufficiently to allow clipping or ligation. Venous hemorrhage in the pelvis may be a much more difficult problem. Such bleeding can vary in magnitude from a trivial ooze to life-threatening hemorrhage. Pelvic veins can be fragile, tortuous, hidden from view, and distended. Blood returning through the lacerated vein can come from multiple deeper sources that are unavailable for ligation. Placing clamps and sutures blindly is dangerous and can even make the problem worse. Electrocoagulation of a laceration in a large vein should not be attempted because it will inevitably result in a larger hole that will be even more difficult to secure. Sometimes the best procedure is to hold a finger or a pack against the bleeding site for a minimum of 5 minutes, after which the bleeding may stop or decrease so that the bleeding vessel can be identified and controlled with a clip or a suture. Digital...
If coagulation factors have been depleted because of multiple transfusions, the Gelfoam can be soaked in thrombin. When the material is applied, the field should be as dry as possible. Constant pressure can be applied by placing sponges that can be tied on top of the sandwiches. There is a new commercial product made of absorbable collagen sponge coated with human coagulation factor and thrombin that sounds very good, but it is not yet U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved for use in the United States (TachoSil, Nycomed, Denmark).

Malviya and Deppe have reported the successful use of fibrin glue, a biodegradable tissue adhesive and sealant and topical hemostatic agent, to control life-threatening hemorrhage in one obstetric and two gynecologic patients. The fibrin glue (Tissel@®, Baxter Pharma, USA or Cross®®, Ethicon, USA) is prepared from equal amounts of cryoprecipitate (highly concentrated human fibrinogen) and bovine thrombin. It mimics the last stages of physiologic coagulation at the local site. It is available as a spray applicator or in a dual syringe set. This technique has been used successfully in microvascular, cardiovascular, and thoracic surgical procedures and has recently been reported in controlling hemorrhage in liver transplantation. Schwartz and colleagues compared spray on fibrin sealant to standard techniques for hemostasis in 121 patients undergoing liver resection. Time to achieve hemostasis and postoperative complications were significantly less in the patients randomized to fibrin sealant. This technique should be helpful in extensive pelvic dissections for gynecologic cancer, especially to control low-pressure pelvic vein bleeding that is not controllable by other standard measures.

Gynecologic surgeons usually do not have the luxury of using tourniquets to control bleeding. There are, however, two special procedures in which tourniquets have been used to advantage. These are myomectomy and uterine unification operations. The tourniquets are fastened to the uterus or anterior abdominal wall with sutures, and there is little literature comparing these agents with each other in human subjects.

Older agents such as oxidized, regenerated cellulose come in a thin, pliable, woven sheet (Surgicel® NuKnit®, Johnson & Johnson, USA) or a soft, multiple-layered, fuzzy pad that can be separated into thin sheets or used as a pliable pad (Surgicel® Fibrillar®, Johnson & Johnson, USA). Absorbable, gelatin foam pads (Gelfoam, Pharmacia and Upjohn, USA) are also available in several sizes, and can be cut to fit. These stiff sponges are about 4 mm thick and can be applied dry or moistened with saline to make them pliable. Both of these sheets or pads can be applied to an oozing surface and covered with a pressure pack for 5 to 15 minutes. When these techniques are not effective, various hemostatic agents may be considered. Novel techniques for controlling hypovolemic shock in nonhuman animals, and there is very little literature comparing these agents with each other in human subjects.

Special Techniques

Diffuse venous oozing, which may be associated with malignancy, inflammation, or extensive lysis of adhesions, can usually be controlled by electrocautery (sometimes on the “spray” mode) or packing for 5 to 15 minutes. When these techniques are not effective, various hemostatic agents may be considered. These are myomectomy and uterine unification operations. The tourniquets are fastened to the uterus or anterior abdominal wall with sutures, and there is little literature comparing these agents with each other in human subjects.

Older agents such as oxidized, regenerated cellulose come in a thin, pliable, woven sheet (Surgicel® NuKnit®, Johnson & Johnson, USA) or a soft, multiple-layered, fuzzy pad that can be separated into thin sheets or used as a pliable pad (Surgicel® Fibrillar®, Johnson & Johnson, USA). Absorbable, gelatin foam pads (Gelfoam, Pharmacia and Upjohn, USA) are also available in several sizes, and can be cut to fit. These stiff sponges are about 4 mm thick and can be applied dry or moistened with saline to make them pliable. Both of these sheets or pads can be applied to an oozing surface and covered with a pressure pack for 5 to 15 minutes. When these techniques are not effective, various hemostatic agents may be considered. These are myomectomy and uterine unification operations. The tourniquets are fastened to the uterus or anterior abdominal wall with sutures, and there is little literature comparing these agents with each other in human subjects.

Older agents such as oxidized, regenerated cellulose come in a thin, pliable, woven sheet (Surgicel® NuKnit®, Johnson & Johnson, USA) or a soft, multiple-layered, fuzzy pad that can be separated into thin sheets or used as a pliable pad (Surgicel® Fibrillar®, Johnson & Johnson, USA). Absorbable, gelatin foam pads (Gelfoam, Pharmacia and Upjohn, USA) are also available in several sizes, and can be cut to fit. These stiff sponges are about 4 mm thick and can be applied dry or moistened with saline to make them pliable. Both of these sheets or pads can be applied to an oozing surface and covered with a pressure pack for 5 to 15 minutes. When these techniques are not effective, various hemostatic agents may be considered. These are myomectomy and uterine unification operations. The tourniquets are fastened to the uterus or anterior abdominal wall with sutures, and there is little literature comparing these agents with each other in human subjects.

Older agents such as oxidized, regenerated cellulose come in a thin, pliable, woven sheet (Surgicel® NuKnit®, Johnson & Johnson, USA) or a soft, multiple-layered, fuzzy pad that can be separated into thin sheets or used as a pliable pad (Surgicel® Fibrillar®, Johnson & Johnson, USA). Absorbable, gelatin foam pads (Gelfoam, Pharmacia and Upjohn, USA) are also available in several sizes, and can be cut to fit. These stiff sponges are about 4 mm thick and can be applied dry or moistened with saline to make them pliable. Both of these sheets or pads can be applied to an oozing surface and covered with a pressure pack for 5 to 15 minutes. When these techniques are not effective, various hemostatic agents may be considered. These are myomectomy and uterine unification operations. The tourniquets are fastened to the uterus or anterior abdominal wall with sutures, and there is little literature comparing these agents with each other in human subjects.
Hypogastric artery ligation was later introduced by Mengert and colleagues and was then extensively investigated by Burchell. Burchell demonstrated that the pulse pressure in the artery just distal to the point of ligation was decreased significantly (77%) on the same side. If both hypogastric arteries are ligated, the pulse pressure is decreased by 85%. This reduction in pulse pressure presumably allows blood clots to form at the site of bleeding from damaged vessels. Blood flow in vessels distal to the point of ligation is decreased by only 48%.

Because it is important to preserve some of the collateral circulation to the pelvis—including the lumbar, iliolumbar, middle sacral, lateral sacral, superior and middle hemorrhoidal, and gluteal arteries—it is important to ligate the anterior division of the hypogastric artery distal to the posterior parietal branch, as demonstrated in Figure 19.4. In ligating the hypogastric artery, the peritoneum is opened over the external iliac artery from the round ligament to the infundibulopelvic ligament. The ureter is left attached to the medial peritoneal reflection to avoid disturbing its blood supply. The hypogastric artery is gently cleaned off with a fingertip or the tip of the suction. The hypogastric vein is also identified on the pelvic sidewall, if possible; but as long as the artery is well visualized and separated from the sidewall, it is not necessary to dig around risking more bleeding to isolate the hypogastric vein. The posterior branch of the hypogastric artery must be clearly identified before double ligation of the anterior division is performed. Nonabsorbable suture is passed around the artery with a right-angle clamp and tied. A second free-tie suture is placed distal to the initial ligature to avoid recanalization. Transfixion or division of the vessel is not recommended in this procedure. The hypogastric arteries should be ligated bilaterally, if possible, to obtain the best results. When possible, we believe that the arterial branch closest to the bleeding point should be ligated. Because the uterine artery is the first visceral branch of the hypogastric artery, it may be feasible to identify this artery and ligate it separately if the bleeding is from the uterus. This may be a somewhat more difficult procedure than ligating the entire anterior division of the hypogastric artery and should not be attempted in the face of massive pelvic bleeding, distorted pelvic anatomy, or shock.

When massive bleeding is present but the uterus has not been removed (as may occur in certain obstetric operations), it is important to ligate both ovarian arteries also. This procedure is easily accomplished by extending the lateral peritoneal incision up to the infundibulopelvic ligaments. The ureter must be identified. The artery should be ligated with a single, permanent ligature, but the artery should not be cut. This avoids the need for multiple ligatures and the risk of retraction and retroperitoneal bleeding of the vessel. A single hemoclip also can be placed on each ovarian artery as a quicker and easier method of occlusion. Care should be taken to avoid injury to the ovarian vein. If there is difficulty in distinguishing the artery from the ovarian vein, ligation of both the ovarian artery and vein within the infundibulopelvic ligament is acceptable. Even though ligating both the arterial and venous circulation to the ovary leads to a high incidence of postoperative cystic enlargement of the ovary, this complication is preferable to the risk of recurrent pelvic bleeding when the ovarian arteries are not ligated.

As an alternative to ligating the ovarian artery in the infundibulopelvic ligament, Cruikshank and Stoelk have described a technique of ligating this artery at the point of its anastomosis with the uterine artery in the medial mesosalpinx. This point of ligation allows maintenance of the blood flow to the tube and ovary but occludes the ovarian artery.

FIGURE 19.4. Ligation of the right hypogastric artery. The clamp is passed laterally to medial and the ligature is placed around the anterior division of the hypogastric artery. Note the ureter is attached to the peritoneum, which is reflected medially.
blood flow to the uterus (Fig. 19.5). Because this technique allows uninterrupted blood supply to the ovaries, it is probably preferable.

For post-cesarean delivery hemorrhage, Fehrman has recommended bilateral ligation of the uterine arteries as primary treatment. When this method was used in 66 patients, only 6 required hysterectomy to achieve hemostasis. If bilateral uterine ligation is not effective in controlling the uterine bleeding, Fehrman recommends supplementary ligation of the round ligaments and the ovarian ligaments at their junction with the uterine corpus. He also believes that bilateral uterine artery ligation is a more effective treatment for life-threatening uterine hemorrhage than is bilateral hypogastric artery ligation.

The vaginal artery can originate as a separate branch from the hypogastric arteries. Uncontrollable bleeding from the vagina may not be stopped by hysterectomy or by ligation of the uterine arteries. Hypogastric artery ligation is required.

Pregnancy after Hypogastric Artery Ligation. Amazingly, there are many reports of full-term deliveries after bilateral hypogastric artery ligation with and without bilateral ovarian artery ligation. This is ample testimony to the abundant collateral blood supply to the pelvis. According to Burchell, the blood flow to the pelvis is reduced by as much as 50%, and yet there remains an adequate reserve for nourish a future term pregnancy. Ischemic necrosis of pelvic tissues does not occur unless additional collateral pathways are destroyed.

The collateral circulation of the female pelvis is extensive and provides a variety of communicating sources of arterial blood from various sites along the arterial tree. These collateral vessels anastomose with the hypogastric artery and the blood supply to the uterus through a number of circuitous arterial pathways in the pelvis. During a difficult hysterectomy, the collateral circulation can create problems in achieving adequate hemostasis. Therefore, it is important to have a clear understanding of the various extrapelvic arteries that communicate with the pelvic circulation.

Packing Techniques

In rare cases, standard techniques of pressure, clipping, ligation, or application of hemostatic agents is unsuccessful for controlling bleeding. Several techniques may be considered in these cases. Trauma surgeons will occasionally pack persistent venous bleeding and close the abdomen when the procedure has been prolonged and/or the patient is unstable. The patient may be reclamped from time to time to maintain pressure on the towel as it stretches. The pack can be left in place for 24 to 48 hours until the bleeding has ceased. It is removed vaginally by first withdrawing the internal gauze and then the outside bags, sheet, or towel.

Potentially Troublesome Anatomic Locations

Iliac Vessels

One of the most dangerous places in the pelvis to dissect is in the region of the bifurcation of the common iliac artery and vein. This is the “axilla” of the pelvis, where many lymph nodes that drain the cervix are found. The hypogastric vein and its branches are at risk of injury when dissecting between the distal common iliac artery and the psoas muscle and deeper in the area of lumbar sacral nerve trunks. When the surgeon pulls on surrounding areolar tissue, a relatively loose and thin-walled vein may inadvertently be torn or pulled into the dissecting scissors. The vein wall may not be distinct, especially when the tissue is bloodstained. One is wise to proceed cautiously. Fervid hemorrhage threatening exsanguination can result from laceration of either the external iliac vein or the hypogastric vein where they join together, or from laceration of their major branches in the area. On the medial side of these veins, the lateral sacral veins disappear into the sacral foramina. False hemorrhage can result from laceration of these vessels. If they are torn where they enter the foramina, they cannot be
clamped and ligated. They cannot be clipped. They are kept open by their attachment to the walls of the foramina. Extreme measures may be required to control such bleeding. One can try to pack the foramen with bone wax, but this usually is not successful. Alternatively, multiple layers (sandwiches) of absorbable gelatin sponge (Gelfoam) and microfibrillar collagen (Avitene) can be held in place with a strong pressure pack for 20 minutes and, perhaps, ultimately the packing can be fixed with sutures. This area deserves its reputation as the “corona mortis” of the pelvis.

Obturator Fossa
Numerous variations in the branches of the hypogastric artery and vein are encountered in dissecting the obturator fossa, especially in the floor of the fossa. The “web” of paracervical tissue separating the paravesical and pararectal spaces contains branches of the hypogastric artery and vein. These vessels must be carefully ligated with clips or sutures during a radical hysterectomy. The dissection can be carried to the depths of the paravesical space and pararectal space by carefully ligating or clipping each vessel encountered. The obturator artery and vein are usually found just below the obturator nerve. In a radical hysterectomy or even a pelvic exenteration, these vessels are usually not disturbed. If injured, they may be ligated or clipped. If these vessels are allowed to retract through the obturator foramen into the upper thigh without being ligated, bleeding into the thigh may be a significant problem.

Pararectal Space
When dissecting in the pelvis, one should avoid making a deep, narrow hole with a bottom that cannot be exposed in case a deep vein might be lacerated. For example, development of the pararectal space must be done carefully because of the danger of injuring the internal iliac veins against the pelvic sidewall. The space is developed between the ureter and the hypogastric artery. The dissection is directed posteriorly at first but soon changes to a more caudal direction. Failure to make this directional change can result in laceration and bleeding from veins in the bottom of the space. If development of the pararectal space is difficult, such as after pelvic radiation therapy, the paravesical space should be opened, then the cardinal ligament or “web” can be taken down bit by bit, starting with the uterine vessels at their origin or insertion into the internal iliac vessels. As clips or small clamps are used to take down the cardinal ligament, the pararectal space gradually is opened inferiorly, with the ureter identified medially and the iliac veins visualized laterally. The pararectal space can be expanded with sharp dissections or with pressure from a small cotton bud in the tip of a long clamp (we call it a “peanut dissector” because the
for radical surgery, patients with intraoperative hemorrhage, 
tively; but a hematocrit 8 to 12 hours postop may be helpful 
cated gynecologic surgery, many experts do not recommend 
of postoperative hemorrhage is so low in routine, uncompli-
cation of postoperative bleeding or anemia. Because the risk 
of blood loss. A hematocrit can be checked if there is a sus-
of the patient. In addition to measuring the vital signs such 
occult bleeding. The intensity and duration of the monitoring 
ations. The patient will alert the vigilant recovery room or ward staff that a 
problem is present; the surgeon should be notified. Once again, a 
surgeon with good leadership and team-building skills should 
educate nurses and other caregivers responsible for the post-
operative care of the patient to be observant for these findings, 
and they should be encouraged to call too soon rather than too 
late with any concerns about the patient's postoperative 

The diagnosis of intraoperative bleeding in the postoper-
patient can be difficult. Peritoneal signs are subtle and 
can be masked by incisional pain and analgesic medications. 
Unfortunately, the initial examination of the abdomen may be 
quite benign. The peritoneal cavity has an enormous capacity 
for occult blood loss without appreciable abdominal disten-
As much as 3,000 mL of blood (about 65% of the total 

Abdominal ultrasound is a rapid, 
noninvasive, readily available method of confirming the diag-
osis of intraoperative bleeding. A rapid, low-tech method of 
testing for intraoperative blood is to insert a long 18-gauge 
spiral needle into the abdominal cavity in one of the lower 
quadrants under local anesthesia. This is definitely not a “non-
nvasive” technique and may not demonstrate intraoperative 
bleeding unless the abdomen is grossly distended. If a patient 
has experienced an unexpected drop in hematocrit postoper-
atively but is very stable, an abdominal and pelvic CT scan 
is another good way to identify (or rule out) intraabdominal 
hemorrhage or a hematoma (Fig. 19.7).

Sometimes it is difficult for the surgeon who performed the 
original operation to convince himself or herself that bleed-
ing is persistent and intervention is urgently needed. A consult 
with a colleague is often helpful. There may be a temptation 
to blame the coagulation system and look for some defect in 
clotting factors. A routine coagulation profile, ordered at the 
first suspicion, or even simple observation of clot formation in 
a tube of blood at the bedside will eliminate this possibility. 
However, the experienced surgeon knows that the most com-
mon reason for intraoperative blood and postoperative shock 
is loss of surgical hemostasis—a vessel has become disligated. 
The question now becomes: Should the patient be immediately 
operated on again to identify and control the bleeding or taken 
to the radiology suite in an attempt to control the bleeding 
by embolization? Both techniques are highly effective, and we 
have generally used the stability of the patient as a guide. For 
instance, if the patient is unstable with a rapid pulse, failing
FIGURE 19.7. Axial CT image of the pelvis in a 52-year-old woman who is 5 hours postop from a vaginal hysterectomy. Note the extravasation of contrast from an arterial injection into the right internal iliac artery.

blood pressure, and/or low urine output, or if the interval since surgery is short, suggesting fairly rapid hemorrhage, we would prefer to quickly return to the operating room where we have a team of anesthesiologists and other personnel to monitor the patient, assist with blood replacement, and treat hemorrhagic shock. On the other hand, if the patient is reasonably stable and bleeding does not appear too brisk based on time from surgery and the volume of blood in the abdomen or retroperitoneal space by ultrasound estimate, then it is reasonable to try to identify the bleeding artery and embolize it by transcatheter interventional radiological techniques.

Whichever plan is selected, one or more large-bore intravenous lines should be started, and fluid replacement should begin with packed red blood cells ordered and started as indicated and available. A Foley catheter should be inserted and urine output monitored. Broad-spectrum antibiotics should be started. If the patient is not in the recovery room, she should be transferred there or to a monitored bed with easy access to the operating room. Preop labs should be obtained, and the operating room and anesthesia service should be notified, as well as the interventional radiology team if appropriate.

Arterial Embolization

In 1969, Nusbaum and colleagues described arterial embolization to control bleeding from esophageal varices by selectively cannulating the superior mesenteric artery and infusing small doses of vasopressin into terminal vessels. The subsequent use of particulate matter to achieve hemostasis within bleeding viscera developed rapidly. Selective angiographic arterial embolization has been used to control hemorrhage after abdominal and vaginal hysterectomy and other gynecologic operations, hemorrhage from cervical cancer and gestational trophoblastic disease, postpartum hemorrhage, hemorrhage from abdominal pregnancy, and retroperitoneal hemorrhage. Experience has shown that selective pelvic artery embolization is a comparatively simple and safe procedure. Dramatic results can be seen. Clinical success rates of more than 90% are routinely reported when embolization is used for postsurgical and post-traumatic hemorrhage. Therefore, embolization rather than surgical ligation is appropriately selected as the primary procedure to control bleeding in patients who are stable or who cannot tolerate another operation.

The method of intravascular embolization is quite simple, although it requires the expertise of a skilled interventional radiologist. Percutaneous catheterization of the femoral artery under local anesthesia provides direct access in a retrograde manner to the hypogastric artery (Fig. 19.8). The brachial artery can also be used for access to the vascular system. If prior hypogastric artery ligation has obstructed this pathway, arteriography of the pelvic vasculature through one of the collateral arteries usually localizes the specific bleeding vessel or vessels, although with greater difficulty. The site of bleeding can be accurately identified with angiography and fluoroscopy if the rate of bleeding is 2 to 3 mL per minute or more. The hypogastric artery or the specific collateral vessel is cannulated for injection (Fig. 19.9A–C). A variety of materials can be used for embolization, including small pieces of Gelfoam, metal coils, small Silastic spheres, autologous clot, subcutaneous tissue, and other hemostatic materials. Gelfoam is one of the most practical and easily injected materials. It is sterile, nonantigenic, remains in the vessel for 20 to 50 days, and forms a fibrin mesh framework on which blood clots can develop. Its immediate effect is to obstruct the distal artery or arteriole and reduce pulse pressure in the bleeding vessel, thereby permitting clot formation and cessation of bleeding. Material is injected under angiographic observation. When it becomes evident by repeat angiography that the bleeding vessel has been occluded, the catheter is removed and the patient is carefully monitored for evidence of further bleeding.

Arterial Embolization

After embolization, patients usually have no complications or evidence of the effects of local ischemia. Those who have not had a hysterectomy will resume normal menstruation. Some patients will exhibit evidence of a mild postembolization syndrome, including pain, fever, leukocytosis resulting from...
vascular thrombosis, and tissue necrosis. A few isolated cases of more serious problems have been reported, including bladder necrosis, vesicovaginal fistula, neuropathies, and renal toxicity from the contrast medium. The overall complication rate should be less than 10%.

Reoperation

If reoperation is selected, the patient should be as stable as possible, with blood running or at least available in the room. Two suctions should be ready and an adequate staff and assistants involved. If the patient has previously had an abdominal operation, the incision should be reopened. A preoperative ultrasound or CT scan should have identified the bleeding as intraperitoneal or retroperitoneal. The previous procedure should be mentally reviewed to identify any possible ligatures that were tentative or any troublesome bleeding sites that may have continued to bleed. When the abdomen is opened, the clots should be evacuated and a search instituted for the bleeding sites, starting with the most likely locations. Care should be taken when removing clots from the pelvic area.

FIGURE 19.9. Selective angiogram with the catheter tip positioned in the right internal iliac artery (same patient as shown in Fig. 19.8). A: The tortuous right uterine artery is filled and some wispy extravasation is seen. B: A delayed image shows more extensive extravasation. C: After 5 microcoils have been injected, the bleeding has been controlled. No extravasation is seen with an injection of contrast in the common iliac artery. (Courtesy of Dr. Leann Stokes, Vanderbilt University.)
Bleeding sites should be carefully ligated, sutured, or clipped. It is not unusual to reopen the abdomen and find no active bleeding sites. This is somewhat disconcerting because of the concern that the problem will repeat itself after the abdomen is again closed. Every attempt should be made to get the pelvis and abdomen completely dry before closing a second time.

During reoperation, patients are at increased risk of ureteral injury. In addition to exercising care in clamping and ligating bloodstained tissue with distorted anatomy, it may be wise to prove ureteral integrity at the end of the operation. This can be done by injecting 5 mL of indigo carmine dye intravenously and observing either of dye from each ureteral orifice through the cystoscope or by opening the bladder dome (see Chapter 38).

After reoperation, patients are also at increased risk of developing postoperative complications such as pulmonary atelectasis, abdominal distention from ileus, postoperative infection, incisional complications, and coagulation disorders from multiple transfusions. The anticipation of these complications allows the adoption of measures to prevent or manage them correctly should they occur.

Postoperative hemorrhage from the vaginal vault usually comes from the vaginal artery in the lateral vaginal fornix or from one of its branches. Most often, the lateral vaginal angle, including the vaginal artery, is not properly secured or becomes disligated. To prevent such bleeding, the lateral vaginal angle stitch should be anchored in tissue lateral to the angle so that the angle cannot slip out. This stitch should not be held because traction will loosen it. Excessive vaginal bleeding may be noted in the recovery room or after the patient has returned to her room. Every attempt should be made to establish an objective measurement of the amount of blood lost and to follow vital signs and changes in hemocrit values. One must realize that larger amounts of blood lost from the vagina indicate a problem. If a clot occludes the vaginal introitus, a large amount of blood—sometimes several hundred milliliters—can distend the vagina behind it and not be evident on a perineal pad. When significant vaginal bleeding is present, the patient should be examined. Vaginal packing for significant vaginal bleeding is usually ineffective. Sometimes adequate examination can be performed in the recovery room with analgesia, but a return to the operating room for an examination under anesthesia should be used necessary.

The vaginal apex should be inspected. If the bleeding point can be seen, it should be clamped and ligated from below. Figure-of-eight no. 0 or 0 delayed-absorbable transfixed sutures should be placed to include the vaginal mucosa and underlying paravaginal tissue. Care must be taken to avoid the inadvertent placement of a suture into the musculature of the bladder wall, the ureter, or the underlying rectum. If bleeding is not controlled by this technique, it iswise to continue to add suture on suture in a frantastic effort to control the vaginal bleeding. In such cases, it is probable that the bleeding vessels have retracted well above the vaginal apex and cannot be reached by this approach.

If surgical hemostasis cannot be achieved transvaginally, laparotomy may be necessary. A vaginal pack will not control significant bleeding from the vaginal vault that has already required a return to the operating room, although a temporary pack may slow the blood loss while the patient is prepared for laparotomy. In some patients, the hemorrhage will be delayed until 10 to 14 days after surgery, when the sutures lose their tensile strength. Posthysterectomy disruption of the vaginal vault with hemorrhage can result in a hematoma.

Blending from anterior and posterior colporrhaphy usually is from veins that have not been secured. In this situation, a fairly tight vaginal pack effectively compresses these vessels and controls the bleeding. It seldom is necessary to reexplore an anterior or posterior colporrhaphy to locate and ligate a specific bleeding vessel. The patient will feel an uncomfortable sensation of urgency of urination that will be relieved when the pack is removed in 24 to 48 hours. A Foley catheter will be needed while the pack is in place.

A postoperative pelvic hematoma can cause serious morbidity, especially if it is large and becomes infected. Hematomas can develop above the vaginal vault, along the pelvic sidewall, in the retroperitoneum extending up to the kidneys, in the paravesical space, in the abdominal wall, and in the ischio-rectal fossa and vulva. A hematoma in the ischiorectal fossa and on the vulva may be obvious on examination when the patient reports discomfort in the area. If it is below the pubococcygeal muscle attachment to the vagina, it will not dissect into the pelvis above but will be limited to the perineum and buttocks. A pelvic hematoma may be recognized in a patient whose postoperative discomfort and anemia exceed what is normally expected, whose temperature is progressively increasing, and whose postoperative abdominal distention is slow to resolve. If a patient is on anticoagulant therapy, even simple coughing can spontaneously cause a tremendous postoperative pelvic hematoma. Abdominal and pelvic examinations may reveal a mass. A definitive diagnosis can be made by ultrasound or CT scan, which is helpful in delineating its exact size and location. An extended, morbid, and complicated postoperative course may be alleviated if a large hematoma can be drained. Sometimes simple drainage through the vaginal vault can be accomplished by probing with a uterine dressing forceps. A small Penrose drain can be inserted through the drainage tract and left in place for a day or so. If drainage cannot be achieved in this simple way, drainage with guidance of CT or through an abdominal incision may be necessary. In our experience, if a large hematoma can be confirmed, patient’s recovery will be expedited. But in some cases, drainage is difficult or contraindicated and infection is not present. In such a patient, it may be preferable to allow the hematoma to gradually resolve over a few months. Unfortunately, sometimes a hematoma will not resolve completely, and residual fibrosis will persist and continue to cause pain. We have removed large pieces of an organizing hematoma as late as 1 year after operation. For these reasons, we prefer to drain it if necessary.

There are a few other special circumstances. Hemorrhage after uterine curettage is extremely rare, even with perforation of the uterus. The perforation is usually caused by the uterine sound and occurs through the corpus. Under most circumstances, the curettage should be stopped and the patient’s vital signs checked for several hours. It is extremely unlikely that any problem will develop, and overnight hospital admission as a precautionary measure may be unnecessary. However, if the perforation was caused by a wide, blunt instrument (such as a curette or a suction device), if the uterus is pregnant or contains cancer, or if fatty tissue appears in the curettement specimen, then overnight observation should be considered and the patient closely observed for intraperitoneal bleeding or a broad ligament hematoma. Ultrasound, CT scan, or laparoscopy also may be performed to rule out these complications. In such cases, laparotomy or laparoscopy should be considered to evaluate and control the bleeding and evacuate the hematoma. A hysterectomy may or may not be necessary, depending on the damage to the uterus.
Hemorrhage from cervical conization can occur in the first 24 hours or 7 to 14 days later, when cervical sutures lose their tense strength. If the patient is bleeding heavily at any time after conization, the cervix should be inspected. Measures to control the bleeding include resuturing, cautery, and Monsell’s solution. If bleeding is not profuse, Monsell’s solution, Gelfoam, and/or a small pack can be tried. In taking the conization specimen, one must be certain that the apex of the cone intersects the endocervical canal. If the cervical incision is misdirected to one side or the other, the uterine vessels are in danger of laceration. An uncontrolled hemorrhage or broad ligament hematoma may result. To prevent this problem, the cervix should first be sounded to ascertain the direction of the endocervical canal and the incision planned accordingly.

SUMMARY

Careful preoperative evaluation of the patient and thoughtful preoperative planning on the part of the surgeon and surgical team will help prevent or minimize significant operative blood loss. However, intraoperative or postoperative hemorrhage does occur from time to time and represents a significant challenge to the technical skill and the emotional control of the surgeon. He or she must take charge of the situation, organize a plan to control the bleeding, instruct and motivate the other members of the surgical team, and, finally, execute the technical steps necessary to obtain hemostasis. Each part of this approach is important. We hope that the ideas and techniques discussed in this chapter will make the reader more prepared to meet this challenge.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

I Preparation to prevent and control operative bleeding starts before the surgical procedure. The patient should be thoroughly evaluated for any risk factors that may increase the possibility of hemorrhage. Congenital and acquired coagulation disorders need to be diagnosed by a careful and thorough history and appropriate lab tests. The problem to be treated surgically should be thoughtfully considered and the surgical approach devised, adjusted, or modified to suit the patient, her history, and the abilities of the surgical team. Preoperative consultations with other specialists should be sought if indicated. The medical conditions of the patient should be optimized.

II The possibility and risks of blood transfusion should always be discussed with the patient as part of informed consent before surgery. The risk of a febrile reaction to transfusion is approximately 1%. Transmission of hepatitis B via transfusion occurs about 1 in every 100,000 transfusions, whereas the risk of HIV transmission with modern blood banking procedures is approximately 1 in 1.9 million.

During the operative procedure, the surgical approach should be well planned, and possible problems and their management should be considered. Good exposure, proper use and awareness of the anatomy, and careful dissection, clamping, and suturing are all important technical skills that will reduce the risk of uncontrolled hemorrhage. Finally, and perhaps most importantly, good surgical judgment must be used to reduce risk and obtain the best outcome for the patient.

When life-threatening intraoperative hemorrhage occurs, the surgeon should control the bleeding by pressure and organize and lead the operative team in the complex task of identifying and controlling the hemorrhage. This is one of the most challenging of all emergencies and requires leadership, judgment, knowledge, and technical skill.

When intraoperative blood loss exceeds 15% of the patient’s blood volume (about 500–1,000 mL), transfusion should be considered. The patient’s medical history, her vital signs, the probability of additional blood loss, and response thus far will all determine how quickly transfusion is initiated. Packed red blood cells or other appropriate blood components should be used for transfusion rather than whole blood.

Hemostatic and coagulation factors—as well as serum calcium, electrolytes, and glucose—should be followed every 120 minutes or after 10 U of transfusion. Although it is best to use actual serum levels of coagulation factors, as a rough guide, after every 6 to 8 U of packed red cells, 2 U of fresh frozen plasma should be given. If fibrinogen levels fall below 100 mg/dL, 20 U of cryoprecipitate should be given. A bolus of 6 U of platelets should be given if the platelet count falls below 100,000 and the patient is actively bleeding.

The pelvic surgeon should be able to use special techniques such as packing, thrombotic agents, and hypogastric artery ligation and know their indications for the control of pelvic hemorrhage.

Postoperative bleeding may be difficult to diagnose. Attractive and well-trained recovery room and ward nursing personnel are essential. Abdominal and pelvic ultrasound and/or CT scanning are very helpful in making the diagnosis of postoperative bleeding and localizing the site of bleeding.

Embolization of arterial bleeders by interventional radiology techniques and reoperation are both effective techniques to manage postoperative hemorrhage. When the patient is relatively stable and an experienced interventional radiology team is available, embolization is generally preferred today because it is associated with less morbidity.

Bibliography


Blayney MA. The clinical benefit of the leukoreduction of blood products. J Trauma 2004;56:381.


CHAPTER 20 THE IMPACT OF ASSISTED REPRODUCTIVE TECHNOLOGY ON GYNECOLOGICAL SURGERY

HOWARD W. JONES, Jr.

DEFINITIONS

- Conceptus—The derivates of a fertilized oocyte at any stage of development from fertilization to birth, including extraembryonic membranes; the preembryo, embryo, or fetus; the products of conception; and all structures that develop from the zygote, both embryonic and extraembryonic. This term is commonly interchanged with the term preembryo during in vitro fertilization treatment.
- Controlled ovarian hyperstimulation—Pharmacologic stimulation of the ovaries, generally with gonadotropins and/or clomiphene citrate, with the objective of multifollicular recruitment and hence retrieval of multiple oocytes.
- Cryopreservation—Maintaining the viability of cells or tissue by storing at very low temperatures; freezing.
- Developmental states—Preembryo: The conceptus during early cleavage stages until development of the embryo. The pre-embryonic period ends at approximately 14 days after fertilization with development of the primitive streak. Morula: The 16-cell stage upward until blastocyst formation; the stage commonly observed between 72 and 96 hours postinsemination. Some authors believe that the term morula is inappropriate for mammals. Blastocyst: The conceptus in the postmorula stage possessing a fluid-filled cavity. Attached to the inner surface of the trophoblast is an inner cell mass from which the embryo develops. Embryo: The stage of the organism after development of the primitive streak; persists until major organs are developed. Once the neural groove and the first somites are present, the embryo is considered formed. In the human, the embryonic stage begins at approximately 14 days postfertilization and encompasses the period when organs and organ systems are coming into existence. Embryo transfer—Replacement of embryos after in vitro fertilization either transferviscally or via cannulation of the fallopian tubes.
- In vitro fertilization—An assisted reproductive technique wherein oocytes are retrieved from the ovaries and fertilized extracorporally with subsequent embryo replacement.
- Natural cycle in vitro fertilization—In vitro fertilization after retrieval of preovulatory oocyte(s) from unstimulated ovaries.
- Oocyte—The female gamete from inception of the first meiotic division until fertilization. In oogenesis, a cell that develops from an oogonium. Metaphase I oocyte: An oocyte with chromosomes at MI; characterized by the absence of both a first polar body and a germinal vesicle. An oocyte at an intermediate stage of maturation. Prophase I oocyte: An oocyte with chromosomes at PI; characterized by a germinal vesicle.
- Oocyte retrieval—Harvest of oocytes from the ovaries, either with laparoscopic- or ultrasound-guided follicular aspiration.
- Ovarian reserve—Biologic age of an individual’s oocyte. Diminished ovarian reserve, which may be reflected by an elevated early follicular phase follicle-stimulating hormone and/or estradiol level, correlates with reduced chances for success after in vitro fertilization.
- Prezygote—The penetrated oocyte that displays pronuclei and the second polar body; a pronuclear stage conceptus. The stage of development before syngamy. Some authors refer to this stage as an ootid. Pronuclei are commonly observed 10 to 20 hours after insemination.
- Zygote—The one-cell stage after pronuclear membrane breakdown before first cleavage. This stage is characterized by maternal and paternal chromosomes assuming positions on the first cleavage spindle, thus the lack of a nucleus. Commonly observed 18 to 24 hours after insemination. Syngamy: The union of two gametes in fertilization to form a zygote. The process or reorganization and pairing of maternal and paternal chromosomes in the zygote after pronuclear membrane breakdown.

ASSISTED REPRODUCTIVE TECHNOLOGY AND THE EXPECTATIONS OF PREGNANCY

By law, in vitro fertilization (IVF) centers are required to report their results annually to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). At this writing, results for 2003 are available. The number of reported cycles in the United States was 112,872 with 35,785 live births, for a live birth rate of 31.7%. However, the results are very much age related. This is best seen in the 91,322 cycles using fresh, nondonor eggs (the other cycles used frozen or donor eggs/preembryos). Thus, for those younger than age 35, there is a 37% chance of a live birth, but at age 41 to 42, the expectation is 11%, and older than 42, it is but 4% for a single cycle of treatment.

These are the results against which surgical results must be judged. However, the judgment is not easy—indeed, a sophisticated comparison is impossible. This is because the IVF CDC data are cycle based, and reported surgical data are patient based on results after a certain interval, usually about 2 years.
In an ideal world, in cases of tubal infertility, the relative roles of IVF and/or surgery in such situations? There has been some discussion as to whether infertility can be explained on the basis of endometriosis per se. This observer is persuaded that endometriosis per se can be closely associated with infertility. The possibility of pregnancy with a viable delivery per menstrual cycle of exposure is referred to as fecundity. Normal fecundity is in the 20% to 25% range. In the patient with endometriosis and infertility, monthly fecundity ranges from 2% to 10%. To be sure, even though pregnancy may follow removal of all visible endometriosis in patients with endometriosis as a single factor, fecundity remains below normal. In a study by Rock and colleagues, the postoperative fecundity rate was found to be but 3.2%.

The issue of the usefulness of surgery for endometriosis was prospectively tested by a Canadian collaborative group who studied the outcome in 341 patients with early disease followed for 36 weeks after laparoscopy. For those who had ablation, the fecundity rate was 4.7%, compared with 2.4% in the diagnosed but untreated group. Thus, surgery seems to be marginally helpful in the therapy of infertility that is due solely to endometriosis. The problem may well be that in peritoneal endometriosis, many lesions are not visible to the naked eye and therefore not available to treatment. Contrariwise, IVF works very well in this circumstance. For example, Suzuki and colleagues studied the outcome from IVF in 248 cycles comparing the outcome in (a) 80 cycles with ovarian endometriomas, (b) 248 cycles with endometriosis without ovarian endometriomas, and (c) 283 cycles without endometriosis but with tubal infertility. The pregnancy rates were—and these can be considered fecundity rates—25.3%, 22.1%, and 21.9%, respectively. It is true that patients with advanced endometriosis—especially with endometriomas, which destroy ovarian tissue—will make follicular aspiration difficult. In this circumstance, the IVF pregnancy outcome is diminished. There are, of course, nonsurgical options for therapy, but if the primordial goal is pregnancy, there seems little doubt that the treatment of choice for patients with endometriosis is IVF.

In patients who have pain and endometriosis, there can be little doubt that surgical ablation of all visible lesions is an attractive therapeutic option. Our concern here is with those patients who are infertile and have no other factor than endometriosis. What is the relative role of IVF and/or surgery in such situations? There has been some discussion as to whether infertility can be explained on the basis of endometriosis per se. This observer is persuaded that endometriosis per se can be closely associated with infertility. The possibility of pregnancy with a viable delivery per menstrual cycle of exposure is referred to as fecundity. Normal fecundity is in the 20% to 25% range. In the patient with endometriosis and infertility, monthly fecundity ranges from 2% to 10%.

To be sure, even though pregnancy may follow removal of all visible endometriosis in patients with endometriosis as a single factor, fecundity remains below normal. In a study by Rock and colleagues, the postoperative fecundity rate was found to be but 3.2%.

The issue of the usefulness of surgery for endometriosis was prospectively tested by a Canadian collaborative group who studied the outcome in 341 patients with early disease followed for 36 weeks after laparoscopy. For those who had ablation, the fecundity rate was 4.7%, compared with 2.4% in the diagnosed but untreated group. Thus, surgery seems to be marginally helpful in the therapy of infertility that is due solely to endometriosis. The problem may well be that in peritoneal endometriosis, many lesions are not visible to the naked eye and therefore not available to treatment. Contrariwise, IVF works very well in this circumstance. For example, Suzuki and colleagues studied the outcome from IVF in 248 cycles comparing the outcome in (a) 80 cycles with ovarian endometriomas, (b) 248 cycles with endometriosis without ovarian endometriomas, and (c) 283 cycles without endometriosis but with tubal infertility. The pregnancy rates were—and these can be considered fecundity rates—25.3%, 22.1%, and 21.9%, respectively. It is true that patients with advanced endometriosis—especially with endometriomas, which destroy ovarian tissue—will make follicular aspiration difficult. In this circumstance, the IVF pregnancy outcome is diminished. There are, of course, nonsurgical options for therapy, but if the primordial goal is pregnancy, there seems little doubt that the treatment of choice for patients with endometriosis is IVF.

In an ideal world, in cases of tubal infertility, the relative roles of surgery and/or assisted reproductive technology (ART) could be evaluated by a prospective randomized trial. Such a trial has not, nor is never likely, to be done. Indeed, no prospective trial exists comparing open surgery with laparoscopic surgery in the treatment of tubal disease. Nevertheless, on the basis of evidence and nonrandomized surgical end results, it seems to be agreed that if any surgical treatment is to be done for tubal disease, it should be done by the laparoscopic route. Thus, it is necessary, on the basis of experience and nonrandomized surgical end results, to evaluate the relative roles of surgery and ART in the treatment of infertility that is due to tubal malfunction. Interestingly enough, during the last decade, there have been far fewer end results reports from laparoscopic treatment for tubal disease than appeared in the latter decades of the 20th century. This certainly signifies that IVF has become the treatment of choice for most patients with tubal obstruction. Indeed, some authors have flat out stated that surgery has a very limited place in the treatment of tubal infection causing infertility.

After an extensive review, Sacks and Trew concluded that surgery may be an option for selected patients with some types of tubal disease. They pointed out, however, that if tubal surgery is to be done, it must be restricted to specialized centers with sufficient volume and experience to produce consistent and satisfactory results. It may be added that patients considered for tubal surgery should not be older than the early 30s to allow for IVF if the surgery fails and that there must be no other infertility factor.

This is a tricky diagnosis. There is a high false-positive rate—i.e., tubal obstruction may seem to be diagnosed by hysterosalpingogram or even hydrotubation only to discover that soon after the procedure, these patients have a spontaneous pregnancy. Debris that can be removed by catheterization—or even a hysterosalpingogram or hydrotubation that seems to fail—seems to be sufficient to explain such clinical puzzles. If the isthmic end of the tube is clear and the proximal obstruction is just distal to the isthmus, and if the remainder of the tube appears normal, such lesions are very likely to be due to a polyp or salpingitis isthmica nodosa. For such patients in a specialized center, a pregnancy rate in the 50% to 60% range has been reported. For all other circumstances with proximal tubal obstruction, and especially where experienced care is unavailable, IVF is the preferred therapy.

There are innumerable classifications of distal tubal disease that is due to an inflammatory process. However, the experienced clinician clearly understands what is meant by mild tubal disease. These cases can be considered for surgery if all other ancillary criteria are met. Thus, the peritubal adhesions must be delicate and easily lysed by laparoscopic surgery. The tube must be normal, or at the most only slightly enlarged and not thickened or subject to hydrosalpinx. The endosalpinx, if visible, must not appear to be edematous or dusky.

If an experienced reparative surgeon is available, laparoscopic treatment may give an expectation of pregnancy in the range of 50% over two years.
the cause of infertility. This one, were persuaded that fibroids per se were sometimes followed by pregnancy.

Tramural and/or subserous fibroids, the removal of which was there were patients with normal endometrial cavities with in- can cause the mischief. However, in the study referred to above, there were findings of normal endometrial cavities with intra- mammary and/or subserous fibroids, the removal of which was followed by pregnancy.

Thus, going into the days of ART, many observers, including one, were persuaded that fibroids per se were sometimes the cause of infertility. In the era of ART, the clinical problem takes a special twist. Specifically, what is the proper clinical action when a patient is required to have ART for whatever reason only to find that she also has fibroids? The author, prejudiced from the days before ART, is persuaded that removal of the fibroid before proceeding with ART is the proper course of action. Fortunately, in the ART era, there are studies directed to exactly this point. Bulhers and colleagues studied a group of patients who underwent surgical removal of myomas before in vitro fertilization (Group A) and found that such patients had a cumulative success rate of 33%. On the other hand, patients who underwent in vitro fertilization without previous surgery had a 15% clinical pregnancy rate and a 12% delivery rate. The authors were persuaded of the beneficial effects of surgical re- moval of fibroids before undergoing ART procedures. Benecke and associates studied the impact of intramural leiomyomas on pregnancy outcome as compared with the control group. They found a significant negative impact on implantation rates in the intramural myoma group versus the control group. The im- plantation rate in the myoma group was 16.4% versus 27.7% in the control group; the delivery rates 31.2% in the myoma group and 40.9% in the control group. They concluded that patients with intramural fibroids have a lesser expectation of pregnancy with the ART technology. Giaranoli and colleagues studied 129 IVF intracytoplasmic sperm injection cycles in 71 patients with one or more intramural or submucosal fibroids and compared them to 127 patients without fibroids. In the fibroid group, the implantation rate was significantly lower than in the study group, 18% as compared with 26.5%.And finally, Surrey and associates were interested in whether postmyomectomy patients had a different pregnancy rate from those patients with a normal uterus from the start. Their find- ings were that the IVF-embryo transfer results were similar in the two groups, and they concluded that posthysterectomy the IVF results that are similar to patients who do not have fibroids. The results of these studies, as well as clinical experience, clearly suggest that patients who require IVF and who are found to have fibroids would benefit from the removal of those fibroids. The only possible exception could be for very young patients—that is, younger than age 30—who when properly informed are prepared to have a trial of IVF with the under- standing that if it fails, myomectomy would be desirable before a subsequent IVF trial.

ASSISTED REPRODUCTIVE TECHNOLOGY AND UTERINE FIBROIDS

Long before the days of ART, the relation of fibroids to infertil- ity was vigorously debated. On one hand, there were certain patients who at delivery were found to have fibroids that were surely there at conception. On the other hand, every gynecol- ogist of experience with infertility patients has identified indi- viduals whose only finding was a fibroid, the removal of which was followed by a term delivery.

Attempts to quantify and characterize these observations are elusive largely because the size and localization of fibroids are of infinite variety. In pre-ART days, there were a number of studies reporting pregnancy rates of more or less 50% after myomectomy in patients with infertility when the fibroid was the only determined abnormality. Just before the ART era, the author reported one such series and reviewed others. Among 42 patients, there was a 45% term delivery rate within 2 years. For the 19 patients younger than age 30, the pregnancy rate was an interesting 76%.

Such studies do not impress those who emphasize evidence-based medicine by prospective two-arm studies, but those with experience, including the author, are persuaded that in some patients, fibroids can be the only cause of infertility. There is much speculation about why fibroids cause infertility. It is understandable that lesions that distort the endometrial cavity and therefore presumably the overlying endometrium can cause the mischief. However, in the study referred to above, there were patients with normal endometrial cavities with intra- mammary and/or subserous fibroids, the removal of which was followed by pregnancy.

In the era of ART, it was standard practice to totally re- move the uterus if adnexal ablation was required, for whatever cause. This was to prevent future mischief from diseases of the uterus, especially carcinoma of the cervix or corpus. This has changed. The uterus, if otherwise free of disease, can be left in patients requiring bilateral oophorectomy who wish to retain their reproductive potential using a donor egg or perhaps even cryopreserved oocytes or preembryos. Gener- ally speaking, donor eggs are used only for those who are of reproductive age, but donor-egg children have been reported in women in their 30s.
ASSISTED REPRODUCTIVE TECHNOLOGY AND THE PRESERVATION OF FERTILITY AFTER OVARIAN DESTRUCTION

The first decade of the 21st century has witnessed for the first time the possibility of preserving reproduction by the host's own genome after removal of the host ovary or its destruction by radiation or chemotherapy. This goal can be achieved if bits of ovarian tissue, oocytes, or fertilized eggs are cryopreserved or vitrified before the ovary is exposed to the procedure that would result in this destruction. It should be emphasized that although all procedures above have been implemented, such procedures must be considered experimental until more data accumulate and the efficiency and safety have been established. The purpose of this section is not to discuss technological details but simply to provide the gynecological surgeon with the possibilities that should be offered to appropriate patients to preserve their reproductive potential in spite of therapy which of itself would destroy any remaining ovarian tissue. It should also be pointed out that this discussion is limited to situations in which ART technology involving cryopreservation or vitrification is involved. Ir, therefore, does not discuss patients in whom it is possible to preserve a small portion of ovarian tissue in borderline ovarian tumors, for instance, or other situations whereby ovarian tissue can be preserved in situ.

To be a candidate for ovarian or oocyte harvest before treatment that will eliminate the oocytes, the patient must be relatively young, as oocytes degenerate in number and quality with age. Stating an exact age is difficult, as patients vary in regard to ovarian reserve. Indeed, a test of ovarian reserve may be in order to offer some patients more precise information. Such a test can be done by evaluating basal estradiol 17-β (E2) and follicle-stimulating hormone, as well as by challenge tests designed to evaluate ovarian reserve. Generally speaking, patients older than age 35 become poor candidates unless tests indicate a robust ovarian reserve. Furthermore, such testing and the harvest of eggs or ovarian tissue requires time, and all concerned must evaluate the delay in terms of its effect on the prognosis as far as tumor therapy is concerned. It goes without saying that those offered cryobanking should have a reason-able prognosis for their malignancy and that the gonadotropic stimulation—if used and if it causes a rise in E2—would not have an adverse stimulatory action on the neoplasm under treatment.

This entire matter has been reviewed by the Practice Committee of the American Society for Reproductive Medicine. There are three options for cryobanking.

Cryopreservation of Fertilized Eggs

Cryopreservation of fertilized eggs is a routine procedure in contemporary IVF programs. This is by far the most efficient cryobanking option. There are realities. Results are highly individualistic. However, for a patient with average ovarian reserve, there should be adequate surviving fertilized eggs to expect a pregnancy rate of about 40% following a single cycle of egg harvest. The number of harvested fertilized oocytes is the key, and if time is available to harvest eggs from more than one cycle, the pregnancy rate would be substantially increased. The feasibility of this must be obviously individualized.

Cryopreservation of Mature Oocytes

At the moment, cryopreservation of immature oocyte rather than mature (M2) oocytes is not to be considered, as this involves not only cryopreservation but the maturation of the immature oocyte or eggs, which itself is extremely inefficient. However, cryopreservation of mature oocytes either by standard slow freezing or by vitrification with fast freezing and with subsequent thawing, fertilization, and live-born children has been reported.

At the moment, this is far less efficient than the cryopres-ervation of fertilized eggs. With few exceptions, this procedure is in the case-report mode. However, a few active centers have quantified their data. Borroni and colleagues cryopreserved 927 oocytes from 146 patients with a thaw survival rate of 74.1%. There was a 90.2% fertilization rate. They reported 18 clini-cal pregnancies, for a 9.7% pregnancy rate per transfer and a 12.1% pregnancy rate per patient among those patients who had had more than one transfer. Thus, the procedure has but a modest clinical efficiency.

Cryopreservation of Ovarian Tissue

Cryopreservation of bits of ovarian tissue with later transplantation has shown maintenance of ovarian function in mice, sheep and subhuman primates. Indeed, a viable sheep from such a procedure has also been reported.

Schnorr and colleagues reported the restoration of ovarian function in the monkey by subcutaneous forearm trans-plantation, and Oktay and associates have reported the same in the human. With the same technique, a single preg-nancy followed by a miscarriage was reported by the same group.

The first human live birth after freeze-thawing and au-totransplantation of ovarian cortical tissue was reported by Donnez and colleagues in 2004. The patient at age 25 was treated by chemotherapy for Hodgkin’s lymphoma. Before treatment, five biopsy samples were removed from the left ovary. At age 32, after chemotherapy—which caused the pa-tient to be amenorrheic—the thawed fragments of ovary were returned to the ovary. Periods resumed, and 9 months after the transplant, a spontaneous pregnancy occurred. A healthy live-born girl was born at term.

A second live birth was reported from Israel in a patient treated for non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma. In this particular case, IVF was required. Other live-born children using this technique will undoubtedly be reported.

At this writing, it would seem that oocyte cryopreserva-tion is more efficient than ovarian tissue cryopreservation if premature cryopreservation is not feasible. However, the cir-cumstances surrounding a particular patient may require one or another of the techniques quite aside from their intrinsic efficiency.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- In patients whose infertility is probably due to asymptomatic endometriosis, surgery can be marginally helpful, but post-operatively the fecundity of these patients is far below normal.
- In patients with infertility who require IVF and who have asymptomatic inflammatory damage to the fallopian tubes,
no surgical procedure is required unless the patient has one or both hydrosalpinges.

In patients who require a bilateral adnexectomy for whatever reason, it may be desirable to not remove a residual normal uterus so that reproductive potential with cryopreserved donor oocytes or preembryos is retained.

Before removing normal ovarian tissue in patients whose reproductive goal has not yet been realized, it is necessary to consider whether her reproductive potential can be maintained by assisted reproductive technology.

The uterus, if otherwise free of disease, can be left behind in patients requiring bilateral oophorectomy who wish to retain their reproductive potential using a donor or cryopreserved ovaries or preembryos.

Those offered cryobanking should have a reasonable probability of ovum fertilization to ensure pregnancy success following oocyte cryopreservation if preembryo cryopreservation is not feasible.

If the primary goal is pregnancy, the treatment of choice for patients with endometriosis is in vitro fertilization.

Bibliography


Sacks G,برش G. Reconstruction, destruction and IVF: dilemmas in the art of tubal surgery. BJOC 2006;112:1174.


CHAPTER 21 ■ RECONSTRUCTIVE TUBAL SURGERY

VICTOR GOMEL AND ELIZABETH TAYLOR

DEFINITIONS

Fallopian tubes—A transvaginal endoscopic procedure to examine the fallopian tubes, especially in intramural and isthmic segments.

Fimbrioplasty—Agglutination of the fimbriae.

Hysterosalpingography (HSG)—An X-ray based contrast test to assess the uterine cavity and the fallopian tubes.

Hydrosalpinx—A distally occluded tube, usually secondary to infection, which distends with accumulation of serous fluid.

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)—An inflammatory disorder of the uterus, fallopian tubes, and adjacent pelvic structures usually secondary to a sexually transmitted infection.

Salpingoovarotomy—The division and/or excision of peritubal adhesions with the aim of restoring normal anatomy.

Salpingoscopy—An endoscopic examination of the ampullary portion of the fallopian lumen.

Salpingostomy—The creation of a new stoma in a tube with a completely occluded distal end.

Tubal cannulation—The passage of a flexible guide wire and narrow-gauge cannula through the proximal tubal ostia along the length of the tube.

Tubal sterilization—The surgical approximation of tubal segments after tubal sterilization or excision of an occluded or diseased portion of tube.

The physiologic functions of the human oviduct include proovarian sperm transport to the site of fertilization; ovum pickup and pronuclear transport of the ovum; ampullary retention of the ovum (approximately 72 hours); provision of a suitable environment for fertilization to occur and for the zygote to survive; and eventually, transport of the zygote from the ampulla to the uterine cavity. Alterations in any of these functions (caused by either damage to the ciliated epithelium or tubal distortion or occlusion) can result in tubal implantation (owing to the lack of transport of the zygote to the uterus) or infertility (owing to the prevention of sperm meeting the oocyte).

TUBAL FACTOR INFERTILITY

Much of the increase in the incidence of both infertility and tubal pregnancy in the past three decades has been the result of tubal damage after sexually transmitted pelvic infections. The most commonly isolated organisms are Chlamydia trachomatis, Neisseria gonorrhoeae, and Mycoplasma hominis. These organisms appear to account for most primary invasions; however, in 15% to 60% of cases of acute pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), aerobic or anaerobic bacteria, or both, can also be identified. The clinical picture can vary from an almost asymptomatic condition to a life-threatening event. Patients with a more severe clinical appearance often have both aerobic and anaerobic infection.

The classic clinical condition of PID, which includes pain, fever, and lower genital tract infection, occurs in less than 50% of affected patients. Gomel reported (1983a) that more than half of the patients who were investigated for infertility and were found to have a hydrosalpinx gave no previous history of acute PID. This observation has since been confirmed. Indeed, the wide variation in the clinical presentation makes the diagnosis problematic.

It has been estimated that acute PID occurs at a rate of 10 cases per 1,000 women per year in the age group 15 to 39 years, and at a rate of 20 cases per 1,000 women in the age group 15 to 24 years. Just as there is difficulty in diagnosing PID, there is difficulty in ascertaining the trend in its incidence. Chlamydia, the most frequently isolated organism in PID, is increasing. Since 1984, the rate per 100,000 population has increased annually.

The infertility rate after a single episode of PID correlates with the degree of residual tubal damage. Tubal infertility also increases with recurrent episodes of PID. Infertility occurred in 8% of patients with one episode, 20% with two episodes, and 40% in those with three or more episodes of PID. Further, up to two thirds of cases of tubal-factor infertility and one third of cases of ectopic pregnancy may be attributable to C. trachomatis infection.

Reconstructive tubal surgery, by open access, was at one time the only treatment option for infertile women with damaged fallopian tubes. This is no longer the case. Improvement in the outcomes, simplification of the techniques, and much wider availability of in vitro fertilization (IVF) and assisted reproductive technology (ART) provide such couples with a realistic therapeutic alternative. In addition, tubal cannulation has been shown to have a role in women with apparent cornual occlusion. Furthermore, it has been demonstrated that many tubal reconstructive procedures can be performed by laparoscopic access. Thorough investigation of both the male and female partners will aid in the selection of the most appropriate treatment option.
possible. In addition, the emotional needs of the couple must be recognized and addressed. This chapter will discuss only investigations specific to tubal and peritoneal factors of infertility.

**Tubal Insufflation**

Tubal insufflation is a tubal patency test that is now rarely performed. The test was first described by Rubin in 1920, and although there have been modifications of the original technique, the test rightfully bears his name: Rubin’s test. The procedure uses an endocervical cannula connected, by rubber tubing, to a mercury manometer and a source of carbon dioxide (CO\(_2\)). The rate of gas flow through the system is gradually increased to about 30 to 60 mL per minute. The cervix can be submerged in sterile water in the upper vagina to detect any leakage of the gas from the cervical canal. Tubal patency can be determined by one or more of the following: a written record of the rise and fall of gas pressure, auscultation of the lower abdomen for the gas passing through the tubes into the peritoneal cavity, or direct visualization of the pressure changes on a mercury manometer. Although normal fallopian tubes demonstrate patency by the rapid escape of gas at pressures below 100 mm Hg, the test is still considered in the normal range if patency is demonstrated below 180 mm Hg. A negative Rubin’s test cannot be interpreted as conclusive for tubal obstruction. A recent Cochrane meta-analysis concluded that use of an oil-soluble media increases subsequent pregnancy rates when compared with intervention (odds ratio 3.30; 95% CI 2.00–5.43), however there was no significant difference in the odds of pregnancy with oil-soluble versus water-soluble media (odds ratio 1.49; 95% CI 0.95–2.34). Water-soluble media are most widely used, however, as pelvic granuloma formation has been reported after use of oil-soluble media. Further, patients tolerate the water-soluble media better, and water-soluble media coat the surfaces without sticking to them, producing sharp and finely shaded images and greater visual detail of the lesions. These characteristics enable better assessment of the intraluminal architecture (Fig. 21.1). The contrast material is eliminated within 30 minutes.

After the patient has emptied her bladder, she is placed on the radiographic table. A bivalve speculum is inserted into the vagina, and the cervix and upper vagina are washed with an antiseptic solution. The appropriate cannula, which is filled with contrast material and emptied of any air, is attached to the cervix in such a way as to ensure a tight seal. The speculum is removed before the injection of contrast material. Removal of the speculum is important (especially if the metal variety is used), not only to decrease the patient’s discomfort, but also to avoid obscuring the cervical canal and vaginal fornice on the x-ray film.

**Hysterosalpingography**

Hysterosalpingography (HSG) is a contrast study of the uterine cavity and fallopian tubes. It is a simple, inexpensive, safe, and rapid diagnostic procedure that, when performed properly, provides valuable information about the uterine cavity and tubal architecture. Contraindications to HSG include pregnancy, uterine bleeding, lower genital tract infection, PID, and allergy to the contrast material. In women with a history of recurrent PID, or with any suggestion of a recent exacerbation, there is a significant risk of reactivation of quiescent PID. This occurs in about 3% of such patients. To combat this risk, some centers prophylactically administer antibiotics. During the preliminary history and physical examination, the physician must search for possible contraindications and screen for and treat any lower genital tract infections.

**Technique**

HSG must be timed to occur between the complete cessation of menstruation and ovulation. This will avoid the risk of disturbing a luteal phase pregnancy. Such timing also avoids radiation exposure to the oocyte that will resume meiosis after the luteinizing hormone surge. Administration of a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory before the procedure reduces the patient’s discomfort and diminishes errors associated with hysterosalpingography. The latter is especially applicable to errors regarding cornual occlusion. This has been clearly demonstrated in a study by Lang and Dunaway.

An oil-soluble or water-soluble contrast medium can be used. A recent Cochrane meta-analysis concluded that use of an oil-soluble media increases subsequent pregnancy rates when compared with intervention (odds ratio 3.30; 95% CI 2.00–5.43), however there was no significant difference in the odds of pregnancy with oil-soluble versus water-soluble media (odds ratio 1.49; 95% CI 0.95–2.34). Water-soluble media are most widely used, however, as pelvic granuloma formation has been reported after use of oil-soluble media. Further, patients tolerate the water-soluble media better, and water-soluble media coat the surfaces without sticking to them, producing sharp and finely shaded images and greater visual detail of the lesions. These characteristics enable better assessment of the intraluminal architecture (Fig. 21.1). The contrast material is eliminated within 30 minutes.
Selective salpingography is the injection of a contrast medium directly into the uterine tubal ostium with the use of a special radiopaque cannula inserted through the cervix. The increased pressure generated by the direct injection helps to overcome obstructions associated with mucous plugs or minor synechiae. Selective salpingography is technically possible in approximately 90% of available tubes.

Cannulation of the tube requires the use of a special flexible guide wire and narrow-gauge cannula. This cannulation system is introduced through the larger cannula, which is used for selective salpingography.

If HSG demonstrates a cornual or proximal tubal obstruction (Fig. 21.7), selective salpingography with or without tubal cannulation (Fig. 21.8) should be the next step. This is ideally performed in the same setting. These techniques are useful in differentiating true from false cornual occlusion. The benefits of this approach have been shown for apparent cornual spasm, obstructions caused by amorphous material (tubal plugs), and tubal synechiae. Indeed, half of tubes that were proximally blocked at selective salpingography were found to be normal after tubal catheterization in the largest series reported to date.

In many instances, HSG demonstrates the presence of severe tubal damage or conditions deemed inoperable. Severe intratubal adhesions and distal tubal occlusion in association with cornual lesions, such as salpingitis isthmica nodosa, are examples of contraindications of reconstructive surgery. In such instances, the couple may be advised of the significance of the findings, and IVF may be recommended as primary treatment, without recourse to laparoscopy.
## TABLE 21.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abnormality of the oviduct</th>
<th>Signs</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TUBOCORNUAL REGION</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure of contrast to enter tube</td>
<td>Simple obstruction</td>
<td>May be owing to tubal spasm; may be unilateral or bilateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salpingitis isthmica nodosa (SIN)</td>
<td>Appears as a simple obstruction or as spicules of contrast radiating from tubal lumen</td>
<td>May be unilateral or bilateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endometriosis</td>
<td>Similar to SIN, usually with more pronounced punctate pattern</td>
<td>May be unilateral or bilateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyps</td>
<td>Small globular or elongated vacuoles surrounded by contrast medium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ISTHMUS</strong></td>
<td>Occlusion</td>
<td>Contrast outlines portion of the isthmic segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AMPULLA</strong></td>
<td>Intraluminal adhesions</td>
<td>Patchy filling defects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubal pregnancy</td>
<td>Obstruction, stenosis, round defect, occasionally calcification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INFUNDIBULUM</strong></td>
<td>Hydrosalpinx</td>
<td>Obstruction usually bilateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phimosis of distal tubal ostium</td>
<td>Intraluminal retention of contrast medium and slow intraperitoneal spill from stenosed tube</td>
<td>Both conditions are usually sequelae of pelvic inflammatory disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INTRAPERITONEAL SPREAD</strong></td>
<td>Adhesions</td>
<td>Localized pooling and loculation of contrast medium around distal end of oviducts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Modified from: Gomel V, Taylor PJ. Diagnostic and operative gynecologic laparoscopy. St Louis: Mosby; 1995:105.)

*FIGURE 21.3.* Hysterosalpingogram showing bilateral proximal isthmic lesions typical of salpingitis isthmica nodosa. The right tube is occluded, whereas the left is still patent. (From: Gomel V, Taylor PJ. Diagnostic and operative gynecologic laparoscopy. St Louis: Mosby; 1995, with permission.)

FIGURE 21.5. Hysterosalpingogram showing bilateral hydrosalpinx. The longitudinal epithelial folds are preserved in the left tube. (From: Gomel V, Taylor PJ. Diagnostic and operative gynecologic laparoscopy. St Louis: Mosby; 1995, p. 106, with permission.)

Salpingoscopy

Salpingoscopy is the endoscopic examination of the ampullary portion of the tubal lumen. This can be accomplished with a rigid or flexible hysteroscope during either laparoscopy or laparotomy. If the distal tube is totally occluded (hydrosalpinx), it is necessary to make a small opening at the fimbriated end to permit the introduction of the scope. The tubal lumen is visualized while distended with physiologic solution injected through the outer sheath of the rigid hysteroscope or the channel of the flexible hysteroscope. The distal end of the tube must be appropriately manipulated to bring it into the axis of the scope. Salpingoscopy permits direct assessment of the tubal epithelium. The findings have been classified into five grades. Grade 1 refers to normal mucosal architecture. Grade 2 refers to tubes that demonstrate variable degrees of flattening of both major and minor mucosal folds, which are largely preserved. Grade 3 refers to tubes that demonstrate focal adhesions between mucosal folds. Grade 4 refers to tubes with extensive intraluminal adhesions or disseminated flattened epithelial areas. Grade 5 refers to tubes that are rigid and hollow with a complete loss of epithelial folds. Findings at salpingoscopy appear to be predictive and prognostic of pregnancy outcome, as demonstrated by Henry-Suchet et al., Brosens and Puttemans, Bowman and Cooke, Marana et al., and Marchino et al.

Microsalpingoscopy has been used to examine the integrity of the tubal mucosa more closely. Microsalpingoscopy uses an endoscope that has magnification capability enabling visualization of individual cells of the tubal epithelium. The epithelium is stained with concentrated methylene blue solution injected through the cervical cannula. It is then assessed under magnification. The level of staining of the nuclei of the tubal cells is inversely proportional to functional integrity of the mucosa. This technique is at present investigational; thus, its value remains to be determined.

Falloposcopy

Falloposcopy is a transvaginal microendoscopic technique aimed at exploring the entire length of the tube, especially the intramural and isthmic segments. A linear eversion catheter system has been used to perform falloposcopy without the need for preliminary hysteroscopy and anesthesia. The patient requires
Laparoscopy

Laparoscopy permits direct visualization of the peritoneal cavity, pelvis, and internal reproductive organs. It can also test tubal patency with the use of concomitant chromopertubation. Laparoscopy is an invasive procedure that usually requires a general anesthetic. It is the most accurate way to identify periadnexal adhesive disease and endometriosis.

There are those who argue in favor of an immediate laparoscopy bypassing HSG. An analysis of 18 published series demonstrates good congruence between laparoscopic and HSG findings. These collected data indicate that the sensitivity and specificity of HSG are approximately 76% and 83%, respectively. These studies represent a selected population of patients in whom the prevalence of tubal occlusion was 38%. This prevalence figure falls to 10% in studies of large numbers of unselected patients, which reflects more accurately the general population. If the sensitivity and specificity figures reported above are applied to a hypothetical group of patients with a 10% rate of tubal occlusion, 3% of those with a normal HSG will have an abnormal laparoscopy. Thus, the laparoscopy will be normal in about 97% of patients. These data support delaying endoscopy for 4 to 6 months in those with an apparently normal HSG, except in women of older reproductive age.

Based on the preceding information, a well-performed HSG should be the preliminary investigation for tubal factor infertility. This approach permits the identification of (a) uterine anomalies and lesions; (b) cornual occlusion or lesions, even in the presence of cornual patency; (c) distal tubal occlusion; and (d) assessment of intratubal architecture. This information is of paramount importance to the surgeon at the time of laparoscopy, especially if the condition is amenable to laparoscopic surgery, which should be performed during the same time. Indeed, with the advanced imaging techniques and newer therapeutic modalities available today, laparoscopy solely for the purpose of diagnosis should be rarely required.

Laparoscopic Survey

A thorough laparoscopic survey will identify any adhesions, along with their extent and nature, and the presence of endometriosis, its extent, and other abdominal and pelvic lesions; and permit assessment of the uterus, ovaries, and tubes. The information yielded by the prior HSG and this survey enable the surgeon to undertake reconstructive laparoscopic surgery and to recommend surgery by open access or the use of assisted reproductive technologies. These will be discussed later (see Selection of Treatment).

A bimanual pelvic examination is performed on the anesthetized patient. The cervix is then exposed, and a uterine cannula is attached to the cervix. In addition to permitting intraoperative chromopertubation, the cannula enables manipulation of the uterus and enhances laparoscopic visualization.

Once the laparoscope is inserted, the entire peritoneal cavity is inspected. Inspection commences in the upper abdomen and includes the liver and the undersurface of the diaphragm, which are inspected in a clockwise fashion. Particular attention is then focused on the lower abdomen and pelvis. To improve access to the pelvis, the patient is placed in the Trendelenburg position. The bowl is placed upward, initially by manipulating the uterus and thereafter by using the probe inserted through a second puncture, usually placed suprapubically in the midline, or in one of the lower quadrants.

A general panoramic inspection of the pelvis is performed with the laparoscope at some distance from the pelvic organs. 

Reconstructive Tubal Surgery

Tests Designed to Assess Tubal Function

Salpingography, salpingoscopy, and falloposcopy are designed to assess tubal morphology.

Procedures designed to assess function are being developed. Early attempts at using radioactive microspheres as oocyte surrogates to evaluate egg transport did not appear to be clinically valuable. Uter and colleagues have introduced biodegradable microspheres into the pouch of Douglas by either cul-de-sac puncture or laparoscopy. These microspheres, which were recognizable by fluorescence, were collected in a cervical cup 24 hours later. Microspheres were present in the cup in 66% of 69 patients with unexplained infertility and in 100% of 24 patients with male factor infertility.

Radionuclide Hysterosalpingography

Radionuclide HSG is a scintigraphic procedure designed to evaluate the spontaneous proovarian transport of microspheres in the general tract. A solution containing Tc-labeled albumin microspheres is squirted toward the external cervical os of the cervix and upper vagina. The subsequent transport of the microspheres through the cervix, uterus, and tubes is monitored by a gamma camera equipped with a pinhole collimator. The pro-ovarian transport of microspheres depends on both the anatomic patency and the functional integrity of the uterus and oviducts. This test is designed to assess primarily the sperm transport function of the uterus and tubes. This technique is still experimental but preliminary work indicates it is not predictive of fertility potential, and so this technique may have only limited use in the future.

premedication to decrease the discomfort associated with the procedure.

The system includes a linear eversion catheter with an outer plastic polymer body 2.8 mm in diameter and a sliding stainless-steel inner body 0.8 mm in diameter, containing a 0.48-mm fiber-optic endoscope. The tip of the outer catheter is angled so it can be directed toward the uterotubal junction. Once the tubal ostium is identified, the tip of the catheter is held against the ostium. The pressure within the eversion catheter is increased, and the membrane of the eversion catheter is introduced into the fallopian tube for a short distance. The endoscope is pushed down the lumen to the tip of the introduced catheter. The image obtained is displayed on a high-resolution color monitor. The eversion catheter and the endoscope it houses are advanced in the described manner, slowly and gradually, with the endoscope always maintained within the inverting membrane to prevent the tip of the endoscope from piercing the tubal wall.

Fallopometry may be used as a means of tubal catheterization and has the added benefit of permitting assessment of the lumen of the tube, especially its intramural and isthmic segments. In 1992, Kerin proposed a classification based on a scoring system that takes into account the degree of tubal patency, tubal dilatation, epithelial and vascular changes, intratubal adhesions, and other abnormal findings.

This technique, which requires expensive disposable equipment, did not gain clinical acceptance. Technical improvements, amelioration of the image quality, and parallel reduction in cost may trigger reassessment of the cost-effectiveness of this procedure in the future.

Laparoscopy

A thorough laparoscopic survey will identify any adhesions, along with their extent and nature, and the presence of endometriosis, its extent, and other abdominal and pelvic lesions; and permit assessment of the uterus, ovaries, and tubes. The information yielded by the prior HSG and this survey enable the surgeon to undertake reconstructive laparoscopic surgery and to recommend surgery by open access or the use of assisted reproductive technologies. These will be discussed later (see Selection of Treatment).

A bimanual pelvic examination is performed on the anesthetized patient. The cervix is then exposed, and a uterine cannula is attached to the cervix. In addition to permitting intraoperative chromopertubation, the cannula enables manipulation of the uterus and enhances laparoscopic visualization.

Once the laparoscope is inserted, the entire peritoneal cavity is inspected. Inspection commences in the upper abdomen and includes the liver and the undersurface of the diaphragm, which are inspected in a clockwise fashion. Particular attention is then focused on the lower abdomen and pelvis. To improve access to the pelvis, the patient is placed in the Trendelenburg position. The bowl is placed upward, initially by manipulating the uterus and thereafter by using the probe inserted through a second puncture, usually placed suprapubically in the midline, or in one of the lower quadrants.

A general panoramic inspection of the pelvis is performed with the laparoscope at some distance from the pelvic organs.
Abdominal, pelvic, and periadnexal adhesions may impede ovum pickup. Two treatment options for achieving pregnancy are available to the infertile woman with damaged fallopian tubes: reconstructive surgery and IVF. Surgery and IVF must not be regarded as competitive treatments but rather as complementary treatments necessary to achieve the desired goal. The choice of treatment is ideally dependent on various considerations, both technical and nontechnical.

**SELECTION OF TREATMENT**

Two treatment options for achieving pregnancy are available to the infertile woman with damaged fallopian tubes: reconstructive surgery and IVF. Surgery and IVF must not be regarded as competitive treatments but rather as complementary treatments necessary to achieve the desired goal. The choice of treatment is ideally dependent on various considerations, both technical and nontechnical.

**Technical Considerations**

In vitro fertilization is the only treatment option for women with inoperable fallopian tubes and tubal disease coincident with another important fertility factor, such as male factor infertility. In many instances, reconstructive tubal surgery should be the first treatment option. Specifically, patients with a tubopelvic factor whose surgical treatment will improve their fertility or increase the success rate of an IVF cycle should be offered reconstructive tubal surgery. IVF may be attempted if reconstructive tubal surgery proves unsuccessful.

The provision of accurate information regarding both IVF and tubal surgery is essential in the decision-making process of the couple. The couple must be given the live birth rate per cycle of each treatment is ideally dependent on various considerations, both technical and nontechnical.

**In Vitro Fertilization and Embryo Transfer**

Data collected prospectively for ART treatments during the year 2003 from 399 programs in the United States provided the following outcome data, which were tabulated by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). There were 112,872 cycles of ART in 2003. Of these cycles, 85,032 (74%) were standard IVF cycles (fresh, nondonor gametes), and of these standard IVF cycles started, 79,602 (90.7%) had oocyte retrieval and 74,295 (81.6%) progressed to embryo transfer. Overall, the live birth rate per cycle initiated was 28.3%, and the live birth rate per embryo transfer was 34.7%.
that resulted in a clinical pregnancy, 82.2% resulted in a live birth. Of live births, 65.8% were singleton births and 34.2% multiple births.

Of note, the number of ART cycles performed in the United States has almost doubled from 64,036 cycles in 1996 to 122,872 in 2003. The number of live babies delivered in 2003 (48,736) was almost two and a half times higher than in 1996 (20,659). The explanation for this increase is most certainly multifactorial. One important factor is the improved success rate of ART in the last decade. Whereas in 1992 the live-birth rate per cycle initiated was 14.5%, this rate in 2003 was 28.3%.

Intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) represents a very important progress in ART, especially in the treatment of male infertility. In 2003, 56% of ART cycles used ICSI for fertilization of eggs, representing an increase from previous years. This increase largely reflects the expanding use of ICSI to couples not diagnosed with male factor infertility. In male factor infertility, the use of ICSI is associated with a success rate that almost equals that of standard IVF in the absence of male factor infertility (Table 21.2).

The outcome of both standard IVF and ICSI is adversely affected by the age of the female partner. In standard IVF, with couples who had no associated male factor infertility, the live birth per oocyte retrieval rates based on the age of the female partner were as follows: 34 years or less, 42.6%; 35 to 37 years, 35.9%; 38 to 40 years, 26.2%; 41 to 42 years, 16.1%; and more than 42 years, 6.0%. The live birth per oocyte retrieval rates for IVF using ICSI in couples that had male factor infertility were approximately the same for each group, demonstrating a similar decline with increasing age. These rates were 41.8%, 35.0%, 24.1%, 13.5%, and 4.2%, respectively. This trend is also observed in couples with and without male factor infertility (Table 21.2).

Success with transfer of cryopreserved embryos has improved significantly. Frozen embryos were used in approximately 14% of all ART cycles performed in 2003 (17,517 cycles). The rate of live birth per transfer was 27% as compared with 34.7% for fresh embryo transfer. So, although replacement of frozen embryos improves the cumulative success rate for a couple, the overall net effect remains limited because not all of the cycles provide spare embryos, and not all of the frozen embryos withstand the thawing process.

IVF and embryo transfer is not risk free, especially in stimulated cycles. Although uncommon, ovarian hyperstimulation, bleeding, and infection can occur. Pregnancies resulting from IVF have an abortion rate of about 16%. The overall tubal pregnancy rate is approximately 1% to 2% of ART cycles. A study from our center demonstrated a tubal pregnancy rate of 2.6% (of clinical pregnancies) among IVF patients without tubal factor infertility. However, this rate was 12% in patients with prior tubal disease (these are the patients who must choose between IVF and tubal surgery).

ART procedures are associated with a significant increase in the rate of multiple pregnancy (relative risk: [RR] > 20). The CDC Assisted Reproductive Technology report for 2003 indicated that of the resulting live births, only 65.8% were singleton; 41.0% were twins, and 3.2% were triplets or higher order. This high rate of multiple births has a tremendous personal and social impact. Perinatal morbidity and mortality are markedly increased in pregnancies complicated by multiple gestation. The cost, both emotionally and financially, of caring for premature or abnormal children is great. It is important to note that monofetal pregnancies also are associated with elevated risk as compared with non-ART singleton pregnancies; more than 10% of monofetal births are preterm, and the perinatal mortality rate (about 19 per 1,000) is higher than non-ART singleton pregnancies. Indeed, an important study from Sweden that compared the obstetric outcomes of babies conceived with IVF (n = 5,856) to all babies born in the general population during a span of 13 years (1982–1995) demonstrated the following: Children resulting from an IVF conception had increased rates of low birth weight (RR = 5), major malformations (RR = 1.4), cerebral palsy (RR = 4), and death (RR = 2). Such elevated personal and societal costs must be considered when embarking on any ART procedure.

Reconstructive Surgery

The overall risks of reconstructive tubal surgery are small and include the recognized complications of anesthesia and surgery. Success, if successful, offers multiple cycles in which to achieve conception and the opportunity to have more than one pregnancy. The abortion rate subsequent to reconstructive tubal surgery is not increased over that of the normal population. The live birth and ectopic pregnancy rates depend on the specific nature of the tubal disease and the extent of tubal damage.

After thorough investigation of the couple, a decision must be made regarding whether to proceed with reconstructive

### Table 21.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age (years)</th>
<th>&lt;35</th>
<th>35–37</th>
<th>38–40</th>
<th>41–42</th>
<th>&gt;42</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Male factor infertility</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVF</td>
<td>42.6%</td>
<td>35.9%</td>
<td>26.2%</td>
<td>16.1%</td>
<td>6.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVF with ICSI</td>
<td>41.8%</td>
<td>35.0%</td>
<td>24.1%</td>
<td>13.5%</td>
<td>4.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No male factor infertility</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVF</td>
<td>42.6%</td>
<td>35.9%</td>
<td>26.2%</td>
<td>16.1%</td>
<td>6.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVF with ICSI</td>
<td>37.8%</td>
<td>32.2%</td>
<td>21.8%</td>
<td>11.0%</td>
<td>4.2%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ART, assisted reproductive technology; IVF, in vitro fertilization; ICSI, intracytoplasmic sperm injection.
surgery. The preceding arguments and results yielded by IVF must be taken into consideration in this decision-making pro-
cess. In addition, the results achieved by the center in which the patient will be treated must be considered. The results are
dependent on the proper selection of patients and the technical
expertise of the team and the surgeon.

Nontechnical Considerations

The nontechnical considerations include age, cost, and the
wishes of the couple. Female fecundity is adversely affected
by age. Fecundity begins to decline at about 31 years of age.
This trend has been observed both in “normal” couples and in
those with unexplained infertility. This decline becomes more
evident after 37 years of age.

In women of advanced reproductive age, the marked decline
in fecundity rate per cycle of IVF must be weighed against the
fact that reconstructive surgery offers multiple cycles during
which conception can occur. Therefore, although the younger
woman may consider surgery first and IVF thereafter (if this
becomes necessary), those between 37 and 40 years of age may
be advised to consider IVF first.

Health insurance coverage and the cost of the procedure,
depending on the jurisdiction, and the resources of the couple
play important roles in the decision-making process. Another
often underestimated potential factor is the economic impact
of a multiple pregnancy, which occurs much more frequently
with IVF.

The perceptions and wishes of the couple regarding treat-
ment options depend on many influences, including their own
values and ethical views. There may be disagreement between
partners. The physician should provide detailed information
for the couple as clearly and accurately as possible and should
abstain from interfering with their decision making except to
clarify misunderstandings and misinterpretations. The physi-
cian must advise against active treatment when the prognosis
is poor because treatment with essentially no chance of success
cannot be justified.

Selection

Periadnexal adhesive disease may be the only apparent lesion
or may be present in addition to tubal occlusion. The tubes may
be occluded at their outer end or proximally as the end result
of disease processes, or the tubes may have been interrupted by
a previous sterilization.

If periadnexal adhesive disease is the sole lesion, laparo-
scopic salpingo-oophoroscopy, performed preferably at the time
of the initial diagnostic laparoscopy, is the approach of choice.
For patients who have undergone this procedure, the reported
intrauterine pregnancy rates range from 51% to 62%, and the
etopic pregnancy rates range from 5% to 6%.

Agglutination of the fimbriae (fimbrial phimosis) necessi-
tates a fimbrioplasty, which can also be performed laparosopi-
cally. This condition often coexists with periadnexal adhesions,
which are dealt with first. The reported intrauterine pregnancy
rates after laparoscopic fimbrioplasty range from 40% to 48%,
and the ectopic pregnancy rates range from 5% to 6%.

Distal tubal occlusion (hydrosalpinx) can be treated surgi-
cally. Indeed, removal or proximal occlusion of a hydrosalpinx
is recommended by the American Fertility Society (AFS) in 1995.
A recent Cochrane meta-analysis confirms the earlier work of Strandell et al in demonstrat-
ing that the odds of ongoing pregnancy and live birth (OR 2.13, 95% CI 1.24–3.63) were increased after laparoscopic
salpingectomy for unilateral or bilateral hydrosalpinges before
IVF.

In major published series, the live birth rates after micro-
surgical salpingostomy range from 20% to 37%, and ectopic
pregnancy rates range from 5% to 18%. The improved results
achieved with the use of microsurgical techniques are much
less impressive with salpingostomy than with other tubal proce-
dures. Furthermore, salpingostomy, performed by laparoscopic
access, yields almost similar results to those achieved by open
access.

The factors that affect the outcome of salpingostomy in-
clude distal ampullary diameter, tubal wall thickness, nature
of the tubal endometrium, extent of adhesions, and periad-
nexal fibrosis. These prognostic factors have been quantified in a
numerical scoring system (approved by the American Fertility
Society in 1988). In cases deemed favorable (mild), the reported
live birth rates after microsurgical salpingostomy range from
40% to 60%. This rate drops to less than 20% in cases con-
sidered unfavorable (severe). In such cases, IVF may be the
initial treatment of choice. If surgery is the initial treatment of
choice, the decision of whether to proceed with an immediate
laparoscopic salpingostomy or undertake reconstructive mi-
rosurgery must depend on local experience and success rates
with both approaches.

In cases of proximal tubal occlusion, selective salpingogra-
phy or transcervical fallopian tube cannulation may be use-
ful in elucidating false-positive results obtained by HSG and
in overcoming obstruction associated with a mucous plug or
synechiae. True pathologic tubal occlusion resulting from sal-
ipinstis isthmic nodosa, endometriosis, or extensive post-
infarctive fibrosis may be treated by microsurgical tubocor-
nal anastomosis using a minilaparotomy as access. The re-
ported live birth rates after such procedures range from 33% to
56%, and ectopic pregnancy rates range from 5% to 7%.
Because in the vast majority of cases of reversal of tubal
sterilization the available tubal segments are normal, the out-
come of a microsurgical anastomosis is an anatomically and
physiologically normal, albeit shortened, fallopian tube. In our
institution, the intrauterine pregnancy rate in those less than
35 years of age at the time of reversal is approximately 70%,
with most pregnancies occurring within 18 months of surgery;
in those 35 years or more, it is 55%. The ectopic pregnancy
rate is approximately 2%.

Repair of Fimbriectomy

Surgical correction of a Krausen’s sterilization (fimbriectomy)
is possible, but the outcome depends on the remaining am-
pullary length. Live birth rates of about 30% have been re-
ported when more than 50% of the ampulla has been pre-
served. Tubal length, in such cases, can be determined by HSG,
and in the absence of sufficient ampullary length, IVF should
be recommended as the initial treatment. Fortunately, this type
of sterilization is now rarely performed.

Summary

The choice of the primary treatment and any subsequent treat-
ment depends on a careful consideration of both nontechnical
and technical factors. These must be individualized for each pa-
tient. Information about success and complication rates of the
available treatment options must accurately reflect local expe-
rience. Active involvement of the couple in the decision-making
process is more likely to result in resolution of the conflict of
infertility if treatment proves unsuccessful.
MICROSURGERY

Microsurgery has been defined as “surgery under magnification.” In fact, magnification is only a single facet of microsurgery, which embraces a broad concept of tissue care designed to minimize tissue damage. The basic principles of microsurgery include the following:

- Using a technique designed to minimize tissue injury. In addition to delicate handling of tissues and judicious use of electrical or laser energy, frequent intraoperative irrigation with heparinized lactated Ringer solution is performed to keep serosal surfaces moistened and prevent desiccation.
- Preventing foreign body contamination of the peritoneal cavity.
- Obtaining meticulous pinpoint hemostasis while minimizing adjacent tissue damage.
- Identifying proper cleavage planes.
- Precisely aligning and approximating tissue planes.
- Obtaining meticulous pinpoint hemostasis while minimizing adjacent tissue damage.
- Identifying proper cleavage planes.
- Completely excising abnormal tissues.

- Using magnification, which permits prompt identification of abnormal morphologic changes, recognition and avoidance of surgical injury, and application of the preceding principles with the use of fine microsurgical instruments and suture materials.
- Performing a thorough pelvic lavage at the close of the procedure to remove from the peritoneal cavity any blood clots, foreign body, or debris that may be present.

Thus, microsurgery is a surgical attitude as much as a technique.

In the late 1960s, Svolin used magnification with electrocautery for the reconstruction of distal tubal occlusion. In addition, he strived to reduce peritoneal trauma and kept the operative site wet by frequent irrigation. Magnification, including the use of an operating microscope, and microsurgical techniques were subsequently expanded and used in the correction of pathologic cornual and midtubal occlusions and in reversal of sterilization. This approach permitted us to perform tubal anastomosis as opposed to a tubouterine implantation in cases of pathologic cornual occlusion. Such an anastomosis in such cases preserves tubal integrity and thus is a more physiological approach to tubal reconstruction.

Microsurgery, in fact, finds its ultimate application in tubal anastomosis. The use of magnification, microsurgical instruments, and sutures enables the recognition of subtle abnormalities (even in the presence of tubal patency), the excision of abnormal tissues, and the correct alignment of the tubal segments and precise apposition of each layer. Indeed, the application of microsurgery has significantly improved the outcome of such procedures. However, in the treatment of distal tubal occlusion, any improvement attributable to the use of microsurgical techniques has been modest, despite the reduction in postoperative adhesions and improved tubal patency rates.

The introduction of microsurgery into gynecology has yielded benefits much greater than simple improvement in the outcome of certain fertility operations. It created a great awareness of the effects of peritoneal trauma and the resulting postoperative adhesions. It also promoted the use of conservative approaches that are now considered standard care for women undergoing surgical treatment for benign gynecologic disease. These are additional and important reasons to continue to teach reconstructive infertility surgery.

Thus, microsurgery is a surgical philosophy, a delicate surgical approach designed to minimize peritoneal trauma and tissue disruption and to prevent postoperative adhesions while increasing the accuracy of the procedure and improving the outcome.

Microsurgical techniques are equally applicable to both laparotomy and laparoscopic access. We demonstrated the applicability of microsurgical techniques by laparoscopy for adhesiolysis, salpingo-ovariolysis, fimbrioplasty, and salpingostomy as early as the mid-1970s. Microsurgical techniques can be used in all reproductive operations, irrespective of the mode of access. This is especially important today because most such procedures are performed by laparoscopy and minilaparotomy.

The laparoscope provides a degree of magnification. It is also possible to bring the distal end of the laparoscope close to the area of interest and achieve excellent visibility and illumination. There are microsurgical advantages inherent to laparoscopic access. Operating within a closed peritoneal cavity eliminates the need to use packs and prevents the introduction of foreign materials such as lint and talcum powder. The pressure effect of the pneumoperitoneum diminishes venous oozing and permits spontaneous coagulation of minor vessels. It is possible to perform intraoperative irrigation to expose any bleeding vessels and keep tissues moistened. Fine electrodes can also be used to achieve precise electrosurgical hemostasis. Like microsurgery, laparoscopic procedures are performed with few instruments. The instrument manufacturers have at last recognized the need for proper microsurgical instruments for laparoscopy; they are now readily available. We must stress, however, that the large volume of insufflation necessary in operative laparoscopy causes desiccation of the mesothelial cells that line the peritoneum. This phenomenon, which may enhance formation of postoperative adhesions, can be largely prevented by the use of warmed humidified gas, which can be accomplished with the introduction of a special apparatus into the CO₂ line. There is also evidence that CO₂ pneumoperitoneum alters the protective mechanisms of cells against free radicals. This increases with the duration of the pneumoperitoneum, insufflation pressure, and flow rate. This deleterious effect may be partly overcome by frequent irrigation with lactated Ringer solution. Experimental data in animals suggest that the addition of a small percentage of oxygen to the pneumoperitoneum reduces these local effects, as well as the systemic effects of carbonemia and acidosis.

Major Equipment and Surgical Instruments

The major equipment includes an electrosurgical generator suitable for both general and microsurgical work and, depending on the access mode used, either an operating microscope or appropriate laparoscopic equipment.

Most of the good modern electrosurgical generators can be used for both general and microsurgical work. Such generators are now standard equipment in most operating rooms.

When access to the pelvis is achieved by laparotomy or mini-laparotomy, magnification is obtained by the use of an operating microscope or loops. Loops provide low levels of fixed magnification. It is difficult to work with loops that provide magnification greater than 4 times. They are suitable for use only in simple short procedures and are quite helpful when used to divide adhesions or excise endometriotic lesions located deep in the pelvis.

Magnification is best obtained with an operating microscope that provides magnification ranging from 2 times to 40 times; coaxial illumination of a constant visual field enables precise focusing and change of the level of magnification. In gynecologic microsurgery, an objective lens with a focal length of 1.5 times magnification focused on a visual field that is doubled in size provides the best combination of features.
distance of 250 to 300 mm allows for a suitable working distance under the lens. The microscope can be mounted on the floor or ceiling. Focusing, varying the level of magnification, and other functions of the microscope can be manual or motorized. The latter version is preferable because changes can be readily accomplished through controls on a foot pedal while the surgeon’s hands remain in the operative field. Most modern operating microscopes are equipped with beam splitters, which permit the fitting of two pairs of binoculars so that both the surgeon and the assistant can simultaneously view the operative field. A miniature television camera can also be fitted to the same beam splitter, which enables the operating room personnel to follow the surgery on the monitor and allows video recordings of the procedure to be made.

When laparoscopic access is used, a good laparoscope equipped with a high-resolution mini TV camera and monitor is required. The laparoscope does not offer the stereoscopic vision and the excellent depth of field that the operating microscope provides. Nonetheless, first generations of three-dimensional laparoscopic equipment and magnification devices have been produced. Progress is under way.

Good microsurgical instruments are now available from many manufacturers. Their shape is obviously different for open and laparoscopic procedures. However, their functions are similar. The basic microsurgical instruments are few and include plain and toothed platform microforceps, microscissors, microneedle holder, and straight scissors and/or a microblade to transect the tube (Fig. 21.11). The forceps have rounded tips with a shaft designed so that they, like the scissors and needle holder, have good ergonomics and can be used comfortably. Teflon-coated probes with variable rounded tips are used for retraction.

Electromicrosurgery requires the use of a true insulated microelectrode of 100 or 150 microns in diameter with a free pointed conical tip. The microelectrode is connected to the handle of the electrosurgical unit with an adaptor. A rocker switch mounted on the handle allows delivery of current in cutting, coagulating, or blend modes. Irrigation can be performed with an appropriate laparoscopic irrigator. For open procedures, a device with a fingertip control (Gomel irrigator, Fig. 21.12) is commercially available and enables accurate irrigation.

Immediate Preoperative Preparation

Before the induction of anesthesia, the surgeon must ensure that all necessary equipment and instruments are present and in working order. After the induction of anesthesia, the patient’s bladder is catheterized with a Foley catheter, which is connected to continuous drainage. If intraoperative chromopertubation is required, either a pediatric Foley catheter or an appropriate uterine cannula is introduced through the cervix and fixed in
place. The catheter or cannula is connected either directly or by means of an extension tube to a syringe filled with dilute dye solution.

When open surgical access is used, anteverision and elevation of the uterus can be achieved either by selecting a suitable uterine cannula or by packing the vagina. With the latter option, a pediatric Foley catheter should first be placed in the uterine cavity if intraoperative chromatoperturbation is desired.

Surgical Access
As indicated earlier in the text, many reconstructive tubal operations can be performed by laparatomy, minilaparotomy, or laparoscopic access. The selection of the specific access route depends on the nature of the lesion, the type of procedure required, and the skill of the surgeon. The aim is to select the access route that will yield the best outcome for the patient.

Many reconstructive operations, especially those for distal tubal disease, can be efficiently performed by laparoscopic access. Because of the advantages inherent in undertaking such a procedure at the time of the initial diagnostic laparoscopy, it is preferable that a surgeon trained in this type of surgery perform the initial laparoscopy.

Access by Laparoscopy
Once a proper pneumoperitoneum is obtained, the principal trocar and cannula are inserted (usually intravesically), the trocar is removed, and the laparoscope is introduced through the cannula. The details of performing a laparoscopy will not be described in any detail in this chapter. A thorough laparoscopic survey is performed as described earlier in this text, and the nature and extent of the tubal and pelvic lesions is assessed. The information yielded by the prior HSG, complemented by the laparoscopic findings and the status of the other fertility parameters, permits the surgeon to select the therapeutic approach that is best for the patient.

The laparoscopic survey requires the establishment of a secondary portal for the introduction of a probe or other appropriate instrument. This ancillary portal is placed suprapublically in the midline or in one of the lower abdominal quadrants. The undertaking of reconstructive surgery will necessitate the establishment of additional portals of entry. These are placed, depending on the clinical findings and the procedure to be performed, at sites that permit easy access to the operative field.

Abdominal Incision Minilaparotomy
In reconstructive tubal surgery, a transverse suprapubic incision is the type used most often. Since 1985, we have used a small, minilaparotomy, suprapubic transverse or vertical (if a midline or paramedian scar is present) incision to gain access to the pelvis. The length of this minilaparotomy incision is usually 5 to 6 cm. The prior pelvic findings and especially the depth of the patient’s subcutaneous fat and fascia determine the length of the incision. The site of the proposed incision is infiltrated with a long-acting anesthetic agent, such as 0.25% bupivacaine (Marcaine) solution. A transverse suprapubic incision is made and extended down to the fascia. The subcutaneous fat is dissected over the fascia, in the midline upward and downward. The fascia is then incised vertically in the midline. The recti muscles are separated in the midline, and the peritoneum is incised vertically, with the incision curved laterally at the lower end to avoid the bladder. The subcutaneous tissues are reinfiltated with the same solution before closure of the skin incision. Thereafter, a bilateral ilioinguinal nerve block is established. The small size of the incision; the lack of bowel manipulation, along with gentle handling of tissues during the procedure; and the use of local anesthesia reduce postoperative discomfort and analgesia requirements. This approach permits prompt mobilization of the patient and discharge from the hospital or surgical center within 4 to 24 hours. Most of our patients are discharged on the same day. These patients return to normal activity almost as rapidly as those who have had their procedures performed laparoscopically.

It is essential that the surgical personnel thoroughly wash their gloves after they have been put on and again before mak-

ing the peritoneal incision. Once the peritoneal cavity is en-
tered, a wound protector is introduced through the incision, and a small Dennis-Brown retractor is applied. A disposable device, Protractor, combines the functions of wound protector and retractor, providing circumferential retraction with maximal exposure for the incision site. This device is preferable because it is easy to use and enhances access through mini-
laparotomy. Pads soaked in heparinized (5,000 U/L) lactated Ringer solution can be introduced into the pouch of Douglas to further elevate the uterus and isolate the bowel already dis-
placed by a mild (10- to 15-degree) Trendelenburg tilt.

Once the surgical site is well exposed, the operating micro-
scope is positioned. Although the operating microscope can be draped, we have not found this to be necessary, particularly if foot pedals control the microscope. Intraoperative irrigation is performed with heparinized lactated Ringer solution in an intra-
avenous bag that is elevated and connected with intravenous tubing to a Gostel microsurgical irrigator (Fig. 21.12). This enables periodic irrigation of the exposed peritoneal surfaces and ovaries to prevent desiccation and to visualize individual bleeders.

Pelvic Lavage
At the close of a reconstructive procedure, irrespective of the type and the mode of access, the operative site is inspected to ensure that complete hemostasis has been achieved. Any bleed-
ing vessels are electrodesiccated. A thorough pelvic lavage is then performed with the irrigation solution until the fluid re-
 mains clear. Pelvic lavage serves to remove from the peritoneal cavity any blood clots or other debris that may be present.

When laparoscopic access is used for the procedure, under-
water examination of the operative site may be performed. When the irrigation fluid remains clear, the pneumoperitoneum pressure is reduced, and the region is inspected with the distal end of the laparoscope under the surface of the fluid. This per-
mits prompt recognition of any small bleeding vessels, which can be desiccated with use of a microelectrode or microbipolar forceps.

Once the irrigation fluid is completely suctioned out of the pelvis, some investigators leave varying amounts of physio-
logic solution in the peritoneal cavity to reduce postoperative adhesions. We use 200 to 300 mL of lactated Ringer solution. Hysterectomy, which was in vogue for many years, is no longer used. There are promising new products designed to prevent adhe-
sion formation that are easy to apply by both open and lap-
aroscopic access; these are currently undergoing clinical tri-
als. The topic of ancillary measures for adhesion prevention is outside the purview of this chapter and will not be discussed further.
In this chapter, the following procedures will be discussed: salpingo-ovariolysis, fimbrioplasty, salpingostomy, tubotubal anastomosis to repair midtubal disease or to reverse a prior sterilization, tubocornual anastomosis to treat proximal tubal disease, and other procedures performed rarely in unusual circumstances.

The techniques used in these procedures are essentially the same irrespective of the access route. Whereas procedures for distal tubal disease are very amenable to laparoscopic access, anastomatic procedures are technically more difficult to accomplish by this route. Isthmic-isthmic and isthmic-ampullary anastomosis (usually used for sterilization reversal) have been performed with varying degrees of accuracy through laparoscopic access, but accomplishing other types of anastomoses (especially tubocornual) through this mode of access is much more difficult.

With microsurgical procedures, our aim has always been to keep the techniques as simple as possible in order that the results will be reproducible not only by surgical virtuosi but also by all physicians who practice in this field.

Our recent technical modifications, including access through minilaparotomy incision and the use of a Protractor, were the result of the same thought process. Although we remain enthusiastic proponents of laparoscopic access, we do not let this enthusiasm blind us to the possibility that some procedures may still be performed better by improvements in traditional methods.

**SURGICAL TECHNIQUE**

In this chapter, the following procedures will be discussed: salpingo-ovariolysis, fimbrioplasty, salpingostomy, tubotubal anastomosis to repair midtubal disease or to reverse a prior sterilization, tubocornual anastomosis to treat proximal tubal disease, and other procedures performed rarely in unusual circumstances.

The techniques used in these procedures are essentially the same irrespective of the access route. Whereas procedures for distal tubal disease are very amenable to laparoscopic access, anastomatic procedures are technically more difficult to accomplish by this route. Isthmic-isthmic and isthmic-ampullary anastomosis (usually used for sterilization reversal) have been performed with varying degrees of accuracy through laparoscopic access, but accomplishing other types of anastomoses (especially tubocornual) through this mode of access is much more difficult.

With microsurgical procedures, our aim has always been to keep the techniques as simple as possible in order that the results will be reproducible not only by surgical virtuosi but also by all physicians who practice in this field.

Our recent technical modifications, including access through minilaparotomy incision and the use of a Protractor, were the result of the same thought process. Although we remain enthusiastic proponents of laparoscopic access, we do not let this enthusiasm blind us to the possibility that some procedures may still be performed better by improvements in traditional methods.

**Salpingo-Ovariolysis**

Pelvic and periadnexal adhesions usually are the sequelae of PID. These adhesions may be broad or shallow; they are usually not too vascular and extend from one structure to another. In so doing, they tend to leave a space or potential space between the involved structures, an aspect that facilitates adhesiolysis. The space between the involved structures facilitates division. See color version of figure.

In this case, adjacent structures are intimately conglutinated. The adherent area is devoid of the superficial mesothelial layer of peritoneum. Adhesions are often composed of two layers, even though they may initially appear as a single layer. They tend to attach to an organ at two different levels. It is essential to enter the adnexa, making it possible to elevate and bring them closer to the abdominal wall. This move facilitates the remainder of the procedure.

**FIGURE 21.13.** Salpingo-ovariolysis. The space between the two involved structures facilitates division. See color version of figure.

**FIGURE 21.14.** Ovariolysis. Broad adhesions that had already been divided at their distal margins are being excised from the ovary. See color version of figure.
and the adhesion is transected. With open access, placement of a Teflon rod under the incision line enhances exposure. Damage to the peritoneum or ovarian surface is avoided by keeping the transection line 1 mm away from these surfaces. Prominent vessels along the transection line are individually electrodissected.

When a microelectrode is used for this purpose, the electro- surgical unit is put on the blend setting, which on cut mode combines coagulating current with cutting current to provide concurrent hemostasis during the division of adhesions. Pure coagulating current (COAG mode) may be used to obtain hemostasis of individual bleeders, which are exposed under a jet of irrigation fluid. With open access, an elongating adapter may be attached to the handle of the electrosurgical unit to facilitate adhesiolsysis in the deeper parts of the pelvis.

All of the broad adhesions are excised and removed from the pelvis (Fig. 21.14). Shallow adhesions are simply divided. In this case, a small opening is made on the adhesion, through which a fine instrument or Teflon rod is introduced. This permits separation of the adjacent structures and better visualization of the adhesion, which is incised without damaging these structures. The procedure is completed with a thorough pelvic lavage with the irrigation solution mentioned earlier.

The technical principles are identical when laparoscopic access is used for the procedure. In this case, however, because there is no need to lift the adnexa close to the abdominal wall, the salpingo-ovariolysis is commenced with the tube and ovary. Once again, the performance of effective and safe salpingo-ovariolysis requires clear identification of each adhesive layer, which is grasped and retracted, permitting clear identification of the attachments to the organ of interest. The adhesions are incised parallel to the organ of interest and about 1 mm away to prevent damaging its mesothelial envelope (Figs. 21.15 and 21.16). Division is accomplished electrosurgically with a microelectrode or mechanically with the use of proper scissors. We use scissors for laparoscopic salpingo-ovariolysis and electrodissection to secure obvious vessels or bleeders encountered along the incision line. As described earlier, shallow adhesions are simply divided, whereas broad adhesions are excised (by dissecting them free at all points of attachment) and removed through one of the ancillary portals (Fig. 21.16).

Cohesive adhesions require identification of the dissection plane. This is achieved by making a small incision and developing a tissue plane either by spreading the jaws of the scissors, by blunt dissection, or by hydroundissication (injecting irrigation solution into the site under pressure). It is important to abstain from using thermal energy in such cases because of the inherent danger.

It should not be necessary to do a laparotomy solely for the purpose of salpingo-ovariolysis. Our primary approach in such cases has been to perform the procedure by way of laparoscopy, usually at the time of the diagnostic survey.

**Results of Salpingo-Ovariolsysis**

The reported intrauterine pregnancy rates resulting from open microsurgical salpingo-ovariolysis range from 41% to 57%. The rates for live births are 37% to 57%, and the rates for ectopic pregnancies are 5% to 8% of operated patients. In one of these studies, 33 of 63 (52.4%) patients who underwent microsurgical salpingo-ovariolysis achieved intrauterine pregnancies, and there were three (4.8%) ectopic pregnancies at 2-year follow-up. These 63 patients had been randomized to two cutting modalities: electrosurgery (n = 33) and CO2 laser (n = 30). The results were identical in both subgroups. Indeed, there has been no demonstrable improvement in the outcome of such procedures with the use of lasers in both clinical and experimental studies.

The preexisting tubal patency and the uncontrolled nature of the salpingo-ovariolysis series reported in the literature may cast doubt on the value of this procedure. The Canadian Infertility Evaluation Study Group addressed this issue by studying treatment-dependent and treatment-independent pregnancies in patients with peritubal disease whose fallopian tubes were not completely occluded. This was a multicenter, controlled, randomized study. The cumulative pregnancy rates were 59% among 69 patients in the group who underwent microsurgical salpingo-ovariolysis and 78% among the 78 control patients who were not treated. This study confirms that pregnancies may occur in a small proportion of women with periadnexal adhesions and patent tubes and proves the therapeutic value of salpingo-ovariolysis in such cases.

In the early stages of development of operative laparoscopy, we demonstrated that laparoscopic salpingo-ovariolysis yields results similar to those obtained by microsurgery. We also stressed the importance of adhering to microsurgical principles in the performance of such procedures by laparoscopic access. We reported later a series of 92 patients who underwent salpingo-ovariolysis by laparoscopy. The duration of involuntary infertility was longer than 20 months for all patients. Peritubal adhesions were severe in 79 patients and moderate in 13. Moreover, the series included only those patients in whom ovum pickup by the tube on the side with lesser disease was deemed impossible or greatly hampered. At the time of the survey, the patients had been monitored postoperatively for a period of 9 months or longer. Of the 92 patients, 57 (62%) achieved at least one intrauterine pregnancy; 54 (59%) had one or more live births, and five (5.4%) had ectopic pregnancies. Ten of the patients who did not get pregnant had a second-look laparoscopy that demonstrated no significant residual adhesive process.

Similar results were corroborated by other centers in Europe and North America. This demonstrates that the results of laparoscopic salpingo-ovariolysis, as expected, depend on the severity of the adhesions. The reported intrauterine pregnancy rates after laparoscopic salpingo-ovariolysis range from 51% to 62%, and ectopic pregnancy rates range from 1% to 8% of operated cases. Although no prospective, randomized trials exist, these results appear similar to those yielded by laparotomy.

**FIGURE 21.15.** Salpingo-ovariolysis by laparoscopic access (same patient as in Figure 21.9). Division of adhesions parallel to the tube. See color version of figure.
Fimbrioplasty

Fimbrioplasty is the reconstruction of the fimbriae or infundibulum in a tube that exhibits fimbrial agglutination or preinfundibular phimosis, and results in partial distal occlusion. Often, the tube and ovary are involved in adhesions, in which case salpingo-ovariolysis must precede the fimbrioplasty. The technique of fimbrioplasty, which will be described further, is the same irrespective of the access route used. Our approach is invariably by laparoscopic access.

Fimbrial phimosis results from the agglutination of the fimbriae. A small opening is usually present at the distal end of the tube unless this opening is covered by fibrous tissue. The latter usually becomes evident when the tube is distended by transcervical chromopertubation. When the opening is covered by fibrous tissue, this tissue must be incised or excised to gain access to the fimbriae. Agglutination of the fimbriae can be corrected simply by introducing a fine forceps (mosquito forceps by laparotomy or a 2-mm grasping or alligator forceps by laparoscopy) with jaws closed through the phimotic fimbrial opening. The jaws of the forceps are opened within the tubal lumen, and the forceps are gently withdrawn with the jaws open. Deagglutination is achieved by repeating this movement a few times, varying the direction in which the jaws of the forceps are opened (Fig. 21.17). When sufficient gentleness is used during this manipulation, bleeding is usually negligible.

When the stenosis is located at the level of the true abdominal tubal ostium, which is located at the apex of the infundibulum, the fimbriae may have a normal appearance. However, when chromopertubation is performed, the ampullary portion of the tube distends before any exit of dye solution. In this instance, it is necessary to place an incision on the antimesosalpingeal border of the tube, which commences at the infundibulum and continues past the stenotic area into the distal ampulla. The tube is stabilized by introducing a thin Teflon probe through the stenotic opening into the distal ampulla, and the incision is made electrosurgically using a microelectrode. This is the approach we generally use. Alternatively, the area can be injected with 1 mL of dilute vasopressin solution (1 IU in 10 mL of normal saline), and the incision made mechanically with microsurgical scissors. Bleeders are desiccated electrosurgically. The edges of the two flaps thus created are folded back either by securing them to the adjacent ampullary serosa with no. 7-0 or 8-0 polyglactin 910 (Vicryl) sutures or by

A: Division of adhesions commences in a well-exposed area. B: Adhesions are stretched and are divided one layer at a time parallel to the organ of interest. C: Broad adhesions are freed at all points and removed from the peritoneal cavity. D: Salpingo-ovariolysis being completed. (From: Gomel V, Taylor PJ. Diagnostic and operative gynecologic laparoscopy. St Louis: Mosby; 1995:171, with permission.)
FIGURE 21.17. Fimbrioplasty: to free agglutinated fimbriae. A: The 3-mm alligator-jawed forceps is introduced through the stenosed opening. B: The jaws of the forceps are opened within the tube. C: The forceps is gently withdrawn while the jaws are kept open. (From: Gomel V, Taylor PJ. Diagnostic and operative gynecologic laparoscopy. St Louis: Mosby; 1995:173, with permission.)

electrosurgery (or a defocused CO₂ laser beam), which desiccates the serosal aspect of the flaps, causing them to fold backward (Fig. 21.18).

Results of Fimbrioplasty

Very few investigators have classified fimbrioplasty as an independent procedure. Most include such patients in their salpingostomy series. French and Belgian centers include fimbrioplasty (correction of partial distal tubal occlusion) as stage 1 in their salpingostomy series.

Patton and colleagues, in a series of microsurgical fimbrioplasty procedures in 40 patients, reported total intrauterine and ectopic pregnancy rates of 63% (23 patients) and 5% (2 patients), respectively, after 24 months of follow-up. The outcome of the intrauterine pregnancies and the live birth rates were not provided.

In 1983, Gomel reported 40 such patients, all treated by laparoscopic access. Live births occurred in 19 (48%), and two patients (5%) had tubal gestations. Mettler and associates reported a crude pregnancy rate of 31% among 51 women. The anatomic location and outcome of these pregnancies were not recorded. Dubuisson and colleagues reported 31 such patients. After 18 months of follow-up, eight patients (26.5%) had intrauterine pregnancies, and four (12.9%) had ectopic pregnancies. Donnez and colleagues (1986a), in a series of 100 patients, reported a total pregnancy rate of 61%. The location and outcome of these pregnancies were not recorded. Canis and colleagues included 32 such patients with their salpingostomy patients; 16 (50%) of these achieved intrauterine pregnancies, but the outcome was not reported. Surprisingly, there were no tubal pregnancies.

Laparoscopic and open microsurgical fimbrioplasty appear to be comparable with regard to intrauterine pregnancy rates; however, with the former, the ectopic rate can be up to 14%.

Salpingostomy (Salpingonocostomy)

Salpingostomy, or salpingonocostomy, is the creation of a new stoma in a tube with a completely occluded distal end (hydro-salpinx). Salpingostomy can be terminal, ampullary, or isthmic, depending on the anatomic location at which the new
stoma is fashioned. Isthmic and ampullary salpingostomy are of historic interest, except for the reversal of prior fimbriectomy (Kroener's sterilization), in which ampullary salpingostomy may have a place. We did demonstrate that success with ampullary salpingostomy in such cases is dependent on ampullary length, and suggested that reconstructive surgery should only be undertaken when more than one half of the ampulla is present. This recommendation is corroborated by a recent study, by Tourgeman and colleagues, reporting on 41 women who had fimbriectomy reversal.

Distal tubal occlusion is usually associated with varying degrees of pelvic and periadnexal adhesions that must first be lysed. Thereafter, the distal end of the tube is examined to ensure that it is not adherent to the ovary or other structures. If the distal tube is adherent, it must be dissected free until the tuboovarian ligament is exposed (Fig. 21.19). Only by freeing the tube can the surgeon ensure that the neostomy is being performed at the appropriate site.

Once the salpingo-ovariolysis is completed and the tube is totally freed, it is distended by transcervical chromopertubation. The occluded terminal end of the tube is examined under magnification, which permits recognition of the relatively avascular zones that radiate from a central punctum. The tube is entered at this central point with use of the microelectrode or microsurgical scissors, and the incision is extended toward the ovary over an avascular line (Fig. 21.20). This incision fashions a new fimbria ovarica that maintains the tuboovarian relation. At this point in the procedure, it becomes possible to view the tube from within when placing additional incisions along its circumference to complete the creation of a new stoma. These additional incisions are made between endothelial folds, over avascular areas. In so doing, one avoids cutting through vascular mucosal folds, which will be shaped as fimbriae, and bleeding is minimized as a result. Any bleeding points that occur are exposed under a jet of irrigation fluid and desiccated individually with a microelectrode or microbipolar...
forceps. Once a satisfactory stoma is achieved, the flaps created in the process are everted either by securing them without tension to the ampullary seromuscularis with interrupted no. 8-0 Vicryl sutures (Fig. 21.20) or by desiccating their serosal surface, which causes them to fold backward. Desiccation is achieved either electrosurgically with a ball-shaped electrode and a low power density or with CO₂ laser using a defocused beam. The procedure is concluded with a thorough pelvic lavage, as described earlier in this chapter.

Considering that the results of salpingostomy obtained by laparoscopy approach those obtained by open access, an open salpingostomy should be rarely indicated.

If during the initial diagnostic laparoscopy, the surgeon decides to perform the salpingostomy by open access and if the adnexa are found to be fixed by periadnexal adhesions, these adhesions can be lysed laparoscopically at their distal margins, thus mobilizing the adnexa. Such an undertaking permits the subsequent salpingostomy to be readily performed through a minilaparotomy incision. The same applies to cases of tubo-tubal anastomosis and more complex reconstructive procedures.

Results of Salpingostomy

In the major published series, the live birth rate after microsurgical salpingostomy ranges from 20% to 37%, and the ectopic pregnancy rate ranges from 5% to 18% (Table 21.3). The factors that affect the outcome of salpingostomy were reviewed earlier in this chapter. Work performed in the past 30 years has made it evident that the major determinants of the outcome of salpingostomy are the degree of preexisting tubal damage and the extent and nature of periadnexal adhesions (Figs. 21.21 and 21.22). As stated earlier in this chapter, the reported live birth rate after microsurgical salpingostomy in favorable cases (mild) ranges from 40% to 60%. This rate drops to less than 20% in unfavorable (severe damage) cases.

We reported a series of 90 patients who underwent microsurgical salpingostomy with a minilaparotomy incision. Nineteen (21.1%) were lost to follow-up and were considered failures. Twenty-seven (30%) patients achieved one or more intrauterine pregnancies, and eight (8.9%) had tubal pregnancies. Ectopic gestations occurred in two additional patients who also had intrauterine pregnancies. Twenty-three (25.6%) women were successful in having one or more live births. These 90 patients were assessed with the classification approved by

| TABLE 21.3 |
| RESULTS OF MICROSURGICAL SALPINGOSTOMY |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigators</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Intrauterine pregnancies</th>
<th>Live births</th>
<th>Ectopic pregnancies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACCESS BY LAPAROTOMY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swolin &amp;</td>
<td>1975</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8 (24.2%)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gomel</td>
<td>1978</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>11 (26.8%)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gomel</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>21 (29.2%)</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larssone</td>
<td>1982</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>17 (31.5%)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verhoefers et al.</td>
<td>1983</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>28 (19.6%)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tulandi and Villos</td>
<td>1985</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boer-Meisel et al.</td>
<td>1986</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>24 (22.2%)</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donnez and Caussade-Roux</td>
<td>1986</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kosaka and Hase</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>34 (36.6%)</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schlaff et al.</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winston and Margara</td>
<td>1991</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>74 (22.9%)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCESS BY MINILAPAROTOMY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gomel</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>23 (25.6%)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCESS BY LAPAROSCOPY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gomel</td>
<td>1977</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danelli and Herberts</td>
<td>1984</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3 (13.6%)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubuisson et al.</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canis et al.</td>
<td>1991</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McComb and Paleologou</td>
<td>1991</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5 (22.7%)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubuisson et al.</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>26 (29.9%)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oh</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Millingos et al.</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taylor et al.</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>25 (18%)</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NS, not stated.

*Follow-up period more than 8 years.
*Follow-up period more than 1 year.
*Twenty-three of these were iterative procedures; only three of these patients (13%) had live births.
*Thirty-seven of these procedures were performed with the carbon dioxide laser.
*Eight of the nine patients had prior salpingostomy by conventional techniques that resulted in mucocclusion.
*Performed with the carbon dioxide laser.
Tubotubal Anastomosis

The term tubotubal anastomosis refers to an anastomosis performed anywhere along the tube either to treat occlusions resulting from disease processes or to reverse a prior sterilization. The procedure used to repair proximal or cornual tubal disease is usually referred to as tubal reversal and will be discussed separately.

Microsurgery finds its ultimate application in tubotubal anastomosis. The precision afforded by this technique allows total excision of occluded or diseased portions, proper alignment, and excellent apposition of each layer of the proximal and distal tubal segments.

Tubotubal anastomosis is performed either to reverse a previous tubal sterilization or to reconstruct the tube after removal of a diseased portion that is often occluded and affects the tube at a site other than the fimbriated end. Depending on the tubal segments that are approximated, tubotubal anastomosis can be intramural-isthmic, intramural-ampullary, isthmic-isthmic, isthmic-ampullary, ampullary-ampullary, or ampullary-infundibular. This section first describes the fundamentals of tubotubal anastomosis and then the technical variations necessary to deal with each specific type of anastomosis.
Basic Principles of Tubotubal Anastomosis

When periadnexal adhesions are present, salpingo-oovariolysis is first completed. When access is achieved through laparotomy or minilaparotomy, the occluded segment is grasped with a strong-toothed forceps to expose the site and facilitate hemostasis.

The principles of tubotubal anastomosis are the same, irrespective of the method used. The proximal tubal segment is detangled transversely by coagulation of the mucosal spatula. The tube is transected, with appropriate scissors, adjacent to the site of occlusion or, in the case of a previous tubal sterilization, near the occluded end. The occluded or impacted segment of the tube is grasped with a strong-toothed forceps to expose the site and facilitate the transection (Fig. 21.23A), which is effected with sharp scissors or a sharp microblade. It is essential to halt the incision at the mesosalpinx, in the immediate periphery of the tubal musculature, to avoid damaging the adjacent vascular arcade. Dye solution can now escape from the transected tubal lumen (Fig. 21.23B).

The occluded tubal segment is excised from the mesosalpinx electrosurgically or with scissors, the line of incision kept close to the tube to avoid damaging the vessels mentioned earlier (Fig. 21.23C). The cut surface is examined under high magnification to ensure that the tube is normal. Healthy tube is devoid of scarring and exhibits normal muscular and vascular architecture together with intact mucosal folds (Fig. 21.23D). Hemostasis is obtained by precise electrodesiccation of the more significant bleeders, which are located between the serosa and musculature. Each is exposed by irrigation and dissected with an insulated microelectrode. If open access is used, gentle compression of the tube between thumb and forefinger facilitates this process. Desiccation of minor bleeders is unnecessary because they stop spontaneously. Desiccation of the tubal epithelium must be avoided to prevent damaging it and adversely affecting future tubal function. Major tubal vessels (such as those composing the vascular arcade) may be divided inadvertently or by necessity. These can be electrodesiccated with monopolar or bipolar current. Overzealous electrodesiccation must be avoided to prevent devitalizing the anastomosis site.

When there is no significant luminal disparity between the two segments, the distal portion is prepared in a similar manner. Before transection, the distal segment is detached by descending hydroperistalsis, which consists of injecting a few milliliters of irrigation fluid or dilute dye solution through the distal tube to identify the distal limit of the occluded portion or, in the case of a prior sterilization, to identify the extremity of the stump. The tubal segments are approximated in two layers. The first of these joins the adventitia and mucous membranes, and the second joins the serosa. We generally use no. 8-0 Vicryl sutures swaged on a 130-micron-shaft, 4- or 5-mm-long, taper-cut needle for tubal anastomosis. The first suture of the inner musculoepithelial layer is always placed at the mesosalpingeal border (6-o’clock position) to ensure proper alignment of the two segments of tube. All of the sutures are placed in a pingeal border (6-o’clock position) to ensure proper alignment of the knots peripherally.

In exceptional circumstances when the distance between the two segments is great, the mesosalpinx adjacent to the cut ends of the two tubal segments can be approximated first, using a single interrupted no. 7-0 or 8-0 suture. This step brings the tubal segments into close proximity; thus, it facilitates placement of the sutures of the inner layer and reduces the tension that would have existed when tying these sutures.

Once the 6-o’clock suture is tied, the placement of three or more additional sutures (depending on the type of anastomosis) is required to appose the inner layer. These additional sutures can be placed by using a single strand of suture as a continuous series of loops, including the muscularis and the epithelium of the two segments (Figs. 21.23E and 21.24). The sutures are tied individually, after the division of the loop between each successive suture (Fig. 21.23F). This approach facilitates and speeds up suture placement. We advise against the use of a suture on the luminal border of the tubal because this does not facilitate the procedure and may traumatize the epithelium. Instead, if necessary, the cut surface may be stained with methylene blue or indigo carmine solution to accentuate the visibility of the individual layers.

After approximation of the inner layer, chromopertubation should demonstrate tubal patency and a watertight anastomotic site (Fig. 21.23G). The serosa is then joined either with interrupted sutures or with two continuous sutures, one that runs anteriorly and the other posteriorly, starting at the time-mesosalpingeal border (12-o’clock). Finally, the defect in the mesosalpinx is repaired (Fig. 21.23H).

Tubotubal Anastomosis to Repair Midtubal Disease

The most common reason to perform a tubotubal anastomosis is reversal of sterilization. Midtubal occlusions resulting from disease processes are rare. Such lesions usually affect the intramural or proximal isthmic segments and require a tubocornual type anastomosis.

The causes of midtubal occlusion include endometriosis and tubal pregnancy, usually undiagnosed or treated by observation. A tubal pregnancy treated medically with methotrexate administration or surgically by linear salpingotomy may result in tubal occlusion at the gestational site. Treatment of tubal pregnancy by segmental excision will leave the tube in two segments, as with tubal sterilization. Rare causes of occlusion include congenital absence of a midtubal segment and tubal ectopic pregnancy at the gestational site. Treatment of tubal pregnancy treated medically with methotrexate administration or surgically by linear salpingotomy may result in tubal occlusion at the gestational site. Treatment of tubal pregnancy by segmental excision will leave the tube in two segments, as with tubal sterilization. Rare causes of occlusion include congenital absence of a midtubal segment and tubal ectopic pregnancy at the gestational site. Treatment of tubal pregnancy treated medically with methotrexate administration or surgically by linear salpingotomy may result in tubal occlusion at the gestational site. Treatment of tubal pregnancy treated medically with methotrexate administration or surgically by linear salpingotomy may result in tubal occlusion at the gestational site. Treatment of tubal pregnancy treated medically with methotrexate administration or surgically by linear salpingotomy may result in tubal occlusion at the gestational site.
FIGURE 21.23. Microsurgical tubotubal anastomosis for reversal of Fallope-ring sterilization. A: The occluded end of the isthmus is grasped, and the tube is transected with scissors. B: Dye solution escapes from the lumen. C: The occluded tubal segment is excised from the mesosalpinx electrosurgically by use of a microelectrode. D: The cut surface of the patent tube is assessed under high magnification. E: Once the 6-o’clock suture is tied, subsequent sutures can be placed with use of a single strand of suture as a continuous series of loops. F: Each suture is tied individually after the division of the loop between successive sutures. G: The apposition of the inner musculoepithelial layer is complete. H: The anastomosis is completed with approximation of the serosa. See color version of figure.

Reconstructive Tubal Surgery

chromoperturbation distends this small segment of isthmus, facilitating identification of its distal margin and its dissection from the uterus. The dissection must be effected carefully to avoid damaging the tube itself and the vessels supplying it. The conservation and appropriate preparation of this segment, even when very small, convert the anastomosis to an isthmic–isthmic type and facilitate the procedure.

In the absence of any isthmus (as may be the case subsequent to either a tubal sterilization or excision of an isthmic pregnancy), maintenance of uterine distention by chromoperturbation will indicate the site where the intramural segment should be sought, between the uterine insertion points of the round and ovarian ligaments. Excision of the serosa and underlying scar tissue over the distended area may permit the dye solution to stream out of the intramural segment. In some instances, it is also necessary to dissect the muscularis of this segment from the surrounding uterine muscle for 1 or 2 mm with microscissors or a microelectrode. After this, the tube is transected with microscissors. This process may have to be repeated until the patent tube is reached, at which point dye solution should stream out of the lumen (see Fig. 21.30).

Because of extensive vascularity, dissection in the cornua usually causes significant ooze that hinders visibility. When more than superficial dissection of this region is anticipated, initial infiltration with dilute vasopressin solution (1 U of vasopressin in 10 mL of normal saline) significantly decreases capillary ooze and facilitates the procedure. With use of a 30-gauge needle on a 3-mL syringe, the cornual region of the uterus is injected with 2 mL of this solution in a circular fashion under the serosa 1 cm medial to the uterotubal junction. The resulting vasoconstriction is recognized by serosal blanching.

In this type of anastomosis, there is no significant luminal disparity between the two segments of tube. Hence, the isthmus is simply transected near the occluded end and prepared, as described earlier. A two-layer anastomosis is then performed. Once the inner layer has been joined, the serosa and superficial muscle of the cornual region are approximated to the serosa of the isthmus. The defect under the tube is repaired by suturing the mesosalpinx to the serosa of the lateral edge of the uterus.

Intramural–Ampullary Anastomosis

The salient feature of intramural–ampullary anastomosis is the considerable luminal disparity that exists between the intramural and ampullary segments. The key technical issue lies in the preparation of the occluded proximal end of the ampulla, where an opening into the ampullary lumen, which is not much larger than that of the intramural segment, must be fashioned.

The intramural segment is first prepared as described under intramural–isthmic anastomosis. To identify the occluded end of the ampulla, which may be buried between the leaves of the mesosalpinx, the tube is distended with a few milliliters of dye or irrigation solution introduced through the fimbriated end. Alternatively, a malleable blunt probe can be introduced through the infundibulum and gently threaded toward the occluded end. With the use of microscissors, the serosa over the tip of the ampullary stump is incised in a circular manner. The serosa and any scar tissue under it are then excised to expose the muscularis of the occluded end. The center point of the exposed muscularis is grasped with toothed microforceps, and a small incision is made into the ampullary lumen with the microscissors. This opening is enlarged to correspond in size to the lumen of the proximal tubal segment by excising a tiny circular portion of muscularis and epithelium (Figs. 21.25A and 21.26). The resulting opening is slightly larger than the intramural lumen, but because of the absence of significant disparity, anastomosis of the two segments can be performed as described for isthmic–isthmic anastomosis.

Isthmic–Isthmic Anastomosis

Isthmic–isthmic anastomosis is the simplest type of anastomosis to perform. The lumina are comparable in size. The technique is the same as that described earlier under the basic principles of tubotubal anastomosis.

Isthmic–Ampullary Anastomosis

The salient feature of this type of anastomosis is also the considerable luminal disparity that usually exists between the lumina
of the isthmic and ampullary segments. The isthmic stump is prepared as described under the basic principles of tubotubal anastomosis. In most instances, the occluded end of the ampullary stump will be free, enabling a lumen of appropriate diameter (comparable in size to that of the isthmic segment) to be fashioned, as described under intramural–ampullary anastomosis (Figs. 21.25A and 24.26). A two-layer anastomosis is then performed as described under the basic principles of tubotubal anastomosis (Fig. 21.25B). Although the muscularis of the ampulla is considerably thinner than that of the isthmus, this poses no problem in approximating the epithelium and muscularis of the two segments.

Occasionally, circumstances will not permit the use of the technique described earlier in the preparation of the occluded ampullary end. The ampullary stump may be occluded by a permanent suture or clip, and removal of this suture or clip may lead to the creation of an opening that is much larger than the isthmic lumen and through which lush epithelial folds will prolapse.

If the opening into the ampullary lumen is made significantly larger than that of the isthmic segment (either inadvertently or by necessity), it will be necessary to either enlarge the isthmic lumen or narrow the ampullary lumen. To enlarge the lumen of the isthmic segment, a 2- to 3-mm slit is made with scissors at its antimesosalpingeal border. Partial excision of the corners thus created results in an enlarged oval opening (Fig. 21.27A). To approximate the inner muscular epithelial layer, the 6-o’clock suture is placed first and tied. Five additional sutures are usually required, and these are placed as described earlier. The 12-o’clock suture must incorporate the muscularis and epithelium of the ampulla and the same tissues at the apex of the isthmic slit (Fig. 21.27B). Approximation of the serosa and closure of the defect in the mesosalpinx complete the anastomosis. An alternative approach is to reduce the size of the large ampullary opening. This is achieved by plicating the muscular layer surrounding the opening with interrupted sutures, after which the prolapsing epithelium is invaginated.

Ampullary–Ampullary Anastomosis

The proximal ampullary segment is transected near the occluded end, which is then excised from the mesosalpinx as previously described. An opening that corresponds in size to the lumen of the proximal segment is made in the occluded end of the distal ampullary segment, as described under isthmic–ampullary anastomosis.

In this type of anastomosis, the major difficulty to be overcome is the propensity of the ampullary epithelium to prolapse through the lumen. Although investigators such as Winston have advocated excision of these epithelial fronds, we advise against this approach because there could potentially be

---


A

B

FIGURE 21.26. Preparation of the ampulla in intramural–ampullary or isthmic–ampullary anastomosis. A: The serosa over the tip of the ampullary stump is incised in a circular manner and excised. B: The center point of the exposed muscularis is grasped and a small opening is made into the lumen.
Isthmic–ampullary anastomosis in the presence of a tubal gestation, leaving distally the infundibular segment, which are interrelated factors; the presence of single versus double reconstructed oviducts; the status of the tubes (presence or absence of disease); the extent and nature of adhesions and the presence of other pelvic disease; the age of the patient; the status of other fertility parameters, especially that of the male partner; last, but not least, the surgical technique used. Therefore, the outcome depends on the degree of rigor in selection criteria and the quality of the surgical technique. This is also corroborated by recent reports on sterilization reversal, which include two large series from Korea (Table 21.4). In our experience, in the absence of a male factor, the two most important parameters that predict outcome are the age of the female partner and the length of the reconstructed tube. A reconstructed tubal length of less than 4 cm adversely affects outcome; this likely reflects the loss of ampullary length and consequent loss of oviductal oocyte retention.

Tubotubal anastomosis by laparoscopic access to reconstruct a previous tubal sterilization or a prior segmental excision for tubal pregnancy is being performed in several centers. Whereas some investigators obtain satisfactory outcomes with this approach, others report significantly inferior results in comparison with open access. This is largely due to modification of the recognized microsurgical technique to make the laparoscopic procedure simpler to perform.

The first report on laparoscopic tubotubal anastomosis was a case report; instead of microsurgical suturing for the apposition of the tubal segments, they used a biologic glue over a stent. Pregnancy outcome was not reported. Early reports on tubotubal anastomosis were on small series, performed with simplified techniques, and although most of the cases were simpler forms of sterilization reversal, the results were relatively poor.

Most surgeons who attempted tubotubal anastomosis by laparoscopic access using the microsurgical technique described earlier found that operating times are prolonged. Many attempted to simplify the technique by using glue as described above or using only two sutures for the apposition of the prepared tubal segments, as first reported by Dubuisson and Swolin. In this technique, the first suture (4/0 Vicryl) approximates the mesosalpinx immediately beneath the two segments of tube, and the second (6/0 Vicryl) the tube at 12-o’clock position. The second suture incorporates the serosa and muscularis of the two segments of tube. There are several recent reports in the literature on this technique. There are also publications reporting on the laparoscopic use of a truly microsurgical, two-layer anastomosis technique. One of these is a large series by Yoon and colleagues, from Korea, which includes 202 cases.

The major published series report live birth rates between 40% and 80% after microsurgical tubotubal anastomosis for reversal of sterilization (Table 21.4). The ectopic gestation rates are usually low.

The factors that affect the outcome of such procedures are multiple and include the following: the type of prior sterilization, the site of anastomosis, and the length of the reconstructed tube or tubes, which are interrelated factors; the presence of single versus double reconstructed oviducts; the status of the tubes (presence or absence of disease); the extent and nature of adhesions and the presence of other pelvic disease; the age of the patient; the status of other fertility parameters, especially that of the male partner; last, but not least, the surgical technique used. Therefore, the outcome depends on the degree of rigor in selection criteria and the quality of the surgical technique. This is also corroborated by recent reports on sterilization reversal, which include two large series from Korea (Table 21.4). In our experience, in the absence of a male factor, the two most important parameters that predict outcome are the age of the female partner and the length of the reconstructed tube. A reconstructed tubal length of less than 4 cm adversely affects outcome; this likely reflects the loss of ampullary length and consequent loss of oviductal oocyte retention.

Tubotubal anastomosis by laparoscopic access to reconstruct a previous tubal sterilization or a prior segmental excision for tubal pregnancy is being performed in several centers. Whereas some investigators obtain satisfactory outcomes with this approach, others report significantly inferior results in comparison with open access. This is largely due to modification of the recognized microsurgical technique to make the laparoscopic procedure simpler to perform.

The first report on laparoscopic tubotubal anastomosis was a case report; instead of microsurgical suturing for the apposition of the tubal segments, they used a biologic glue over a stent. Pregnancy outcome was not reported. Early reports on tubotubal anastomosis were on small series, performed with simplified techniques, and although most of the cases were simpler forms of sterilization reversal, the results were relatively poor.

Most surgeons who attempted tubotubal anastomosis by laparoscopic access using the microsurgical technique described earlier found that operating times are prolonged. Many attempted to simplify the technique by using glue as described above or using only two sutures for the apposition of the prepared tubal segments, as first reported by Dubuisson and Swolin. In this technique, the first suture (4/0 Vicryl) approximates the mesosalpinx immediately beneath the two segments of tube, and the second (6/0 Vicryl) the tube at 12-o’clock position. The second suture incorporates the serosa and muscularis of the two segments of tube. There are several recent reports in the literature on this technique. There are also publications reporting on the laparoscopic use of a truly microsurgical, two-layer anastomosis technique. One of these is a large series by Yoon and colleagues, from Korea, which includes 202 cases.

The major published series report live birth rates between 40% and 80% after microsurgical tubotubal anastomosis for reversal of sterilization (Table 21.4). The ectopic gestation rates are usually low.

The factors that affect the outcome of such procedures are multiple and include the following: the type of prior sterilization, the site of anastomosis, and the length of the reconstructed tube or tubes, which are interrelated factors; the presence of single versus double reconstructed oviducts; the status of the tubes (presence or absence of disease); the extent and nature of adhesions and the presence of other pelvic disease; the age of the patient; the status of other fertility parameters, especially that of the male partner; last, but not least, the surgical technique used. Therefore, the outcome depends on the degree of rigor in selection criteria and the quality of the surgical technique. This is also corroborated by recent reports on sterilization reversal, which include two large series from Korea (Table 21.4). In our experience, in the absence of a male factor, the two most important parameters that predict outcome are the age of the female partner and the length of the reconstructed tube. A reconstructed tubal length of less than 4 cm adversely affects outcome; this likely reflects the loss of ampullary length and consequent loss of oviductal oocyte retention.

Tubotubal anastomosis by laparoscopic access to reconstruct a previous tubal sterilization or a prior segmental excision for tubal pregnancy is being performed in several centers. Whereas some investigators obtain satisfactory outcomes with this approach, others report significantly inferior results in comparison with open access. This is largely due to modification of the recognized microsurgical technique to make the laparoscopic procedure simpler to perform.

The first report on laparoscopic tubotubal anastomosis was a case report; instead of microsurgical suturing for the apposition of the tubal segments, they used a biologic glue over a stent. Pregnancy outcome was not reported. Early reports on tubotubal anastomosis were on small series, performed with simplified techniques, and although most of the cases were simpler forms of sterilization reversal, the results were relatively poor.

Most surgeons who attempted tubotubal anastomosis by laparoscopic access using the microsurgical technique described earlier found that operating times are prolonged. Many attempted to simplify the technique by using glue as described above or using only two sutures for the apposition of the prepared tubal segments, as first reported by Dubuisson and Swolin. In this technique, the first suture (4/0 Vicryl) approximates the mesosalpinx immediately beneath the two segments of tube, and the second (6/0 Vicryl) the tube at 12-o’clock position. The second suture incorporates the serosa and muscularis of the two segments of tube. There are several recent reports in the literature on this technique. There are also publications reporting on the laparoscopic use of a truly microsurgical, two-layer anastomosis technique. One of these is a large series by Yoon and colleagues, from Korea, which includes 202 cases. Fifteen of these were lost to follow-up, and one had no partner. The remaining 186 were monitored for a minimum of 12 months. One hundred fifty-four achieved intrauterine pregnancy, a rate of 77% if we consider, as most series do, the 15 cases lost to follow-up as failures. Ninety-eight were delivered of healthy infants, 25 pregnancies ended in abortion, and 31 patients had ongoing pregnancies at the time of the survey. If all 31 ongoing pregnancies would have resulted in a live birth, the live birth rate in this series would have been 64%. There
were five cases of ectopic pregnancy. These results are not too
dissimilar to those achieved by open access, which supports the
premise that what is important is the technique used and not
the mode of access. Cha and colleagues, also from Korea, fur-
ther support this assumption. In their study, they compare the
fertility outcome in 81 women who had microsurgical rever-
sal of sterilization, 37 by laparoscopic and 44 by open access.
The outcomes, as well as the intrauterine and tubal pregnancy
rates, were similar in both groups (Table 21.4).
Attempts to develop simple techniques that would yield
equivalent results by laparoscopic access continue to be made.
A recent study reports the use of the following laparoscopic
technique for tubal anastomosis: Once the tubal ends to be
anastomosed were prepared, a splint was inserted into the
proximal tube through a “guiding catheter” inserted vaginally.
The splint was then introduced into the distal portion of the
tube through the fimbriated end. The distal portion was aligned
with the proximal segment over the splint. The seromuscularis
of the two segments was fixed at the 3- and 9-o’clock positions
using microclips of 3-mm size. Subsequently, fibrin glue was
applied “on the anastomosis surface.” The splint was taped ex-
teriorly to the Foley catheter and removed 4 hours after the end
of the procedure. Although they report similar results for both
the laparoscopic group and a control group (selected from pa-
tients whose procedure was performed through a Pfannenstiel
incision), it is surprising that in the control group the cumula-
tive rate of ongoing pregnancy at 3 years was only 52% and in
the laparoscopic group only 45%. This is despite the fact that

### TABLE 21.4
RESULTS OF MICROSURGICAL TUBOTUBAL ANASTOMOSIS FOR REVERSAL
OF STERILIZATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigators</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Intrauterine pregnancies</th>
<th>Live births</th>
<th>Ectopic pregnancies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACCESS BY LAPAROTOMY</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gomel</td>
<td>1974</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gomel</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winston</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gomel</td>
<td>1983b</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>93 (78.8%)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeCherney et al.</td>
<td>1983</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>72 (58.1%)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schlussler et al.</td>
<td>1983</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>44 (37%)</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siller and Cohen</td>
<td>1984</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>31 (64.6%)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henderson</td>
<td>1984</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>51 (53.3%)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paterson</td>
<td>1985</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>87 (59.2%)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spivak et al.</td>
<td>1986</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>39 (47%)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boeckx et al.</td>
<td>1986</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock et al.</td>
<td>1987</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>49 (61.3%)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xue and Fa</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>95 (81.2%)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Putman et al.</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>53 (64%)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teVelde et al.</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>156</td>
<td>157 (63.7%)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim JD et al.</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>387</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>295 (76.2%)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim SH et al.</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>1,118</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>106 (92.7%)</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cha et al.</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiegnerick et al.</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **ACCESS BY LAPAROSCOPY** |
| Dubuisson et al.     | 1998 | 32       | 17                       | 13 (40.6%)  | NS                 |
| Bissonette et al.    | 1999 | 102      | 64                       | 49 (50.5%)  | 5                  |
| Yossef et al.        | 1999 | 202      | 154                      | 98 (48.5%)  | 5                  |
| Metler et al.        | 2001 | 28       | 15                       | 15 (55.6%)  | 2                  |
| Cha et al.           | 2001 | 37       | 28                       | NS          | 1                  |
| Ribeiro et al.       | 2003 | 26       | 13                       | NS          | 0                  |
| Wiegnerick et al.    | 2005 | 41       | 15                       | NS          | 1                  |

NS, not stated.

---

*Resurvey of 1980 series; follow-up period more than 18 months.
Follow-up period more than 18 months.
Follow-up period more than 4 years.
Follow-up period more than 1 year.
Follow-up period more than 3.5 years.
Follow-up period more than 2 years. There were eight ongoing pregnancies in addition to the live births.
Follow-up period more than 5 years. There were 31 ongoing pregnancies in addition to the live births.
Tubal anastomosis performed with single-suture technique.
Tubal anastomosis performed by using two-layer microsurgical technique.
There were 31 ongoing pregnancies in addition to the live births.
A screening laparoscopy was performed, and only those having a distal tubal segment of 4 cm and a proximal segment of 3 cm were included.
Comparative study with cases performed with open access.
in the latter group, more than 90% of the sterilizations had been performed by clips or silastic rings, and their average age was only 34.9 years.

Robotic-assisted tubal anastomosis has been explored by several groups. The largest series reported a similar pregnancy rate for robotically assisted surgery as compared to mini laparotomy; however, the cost and surgical time for robotically assisted tubal anastomosis was greater.

Using metaanalysis, Watson and colleagues examined the number of randomized controlled trials and the use of historical control groups. However, as expected, the use of magnification during sterilization reversal as well as during adhesiolysis and salpingostomy led to higher pregnancy and lower ectopic rates.

Microsurgical robotic-assisted reversal of sterilization produces excellent results that are principally dependent on the status and the length of the reconstructed tube. All of the published series report a varying but usually low pregnancy ratio for robotically assisted surgery as compared to mini laparotomy, however the cost and surgical time for robotically assisted tubal anastomosis was greater.

The selection of treatment must be individualized according to the investigative findings, the wishes of the couple, and the results achieved by the center in the latter group, more than 90% of the sterilizations had been performed by clips or silastic rings, and their average age was only 34.9 years.

Robotic-assisted tubal anastomosis has been explored by several groups. The largest series reported a similar pregnancy rate for robotically assisted surgery as compared to mini laparotomy; however, the cost and surgical time for robotically assisted tubal anastomosis was greater.

Using metaanalysis, Watson and colleagues examined the number of randomized controlled trials and the use of historical control groups. However, as expected, the use of magnification during sterilization reversal as well as during adhesiolysis and salpingostomy led to higher pregnancy and lower ectopic rates.

Microsurgical robotic-assisted reversal of sterilization produces excellent results that are principally dependent on the status and the length of the reconstructed tube. All of the published series report a varying but usually low pregnancy ratio for robotically assisted surgery as compared to mini laparotomy, however the cost and surgical time for robotically assisted tubal anastomosis was greater.

Robotic-assisted tubal anastomosis has been explored by several groups. The largest series reported a similar pregnancy rate for robotically assisted surgery as compared to mini laparotomy; however, the cost and surgical time for robotically assisted tubal anastomosis was greater.

Using metaanalysis, Watson and colleagues examined the number of randomized controlled trials and the use of historical control groups. However, as expected, the use of magnification during sterilization reversal as well as during adhesiolysis and salpingostomy led to higher pregnancy and lower ectopic rates.

Microsurgical robotic-assisted reversal of sterilization produces excellent results that are principally dependent on the status and the length of the reconstructed tube. All of the published series report a varying but usually low pregnancy ratio for robotically assisted surgery as compared to mini laparotomy, however the cost and surgical time for robotically assisted tubal anastomosis was greater.

Robotic-assisted tubal anastomosis has been explored by several groups. The largest series reported a similar pregnancy rate for robotically assisted surgery as compared to mini laparotomy; however, the cost and surgical time for robotically assisted tubal anastomosis was greater.

Using metaanalysis, Watson and colleagues examined the number of randomized controlled trials and the use of historical control groups. However, as expected, the use of magnification during sterilization reversal as well as during adhesiolysis and salpingostomy led to higher pregnancy and lower ectopic rates.

Microsurgical robotic-assisted reversal of sterilization produces excellent results that are principally dependent on the status and the length of the reconstructed tube. All of the published series report a varying but usually low pregnancy ratio for robotically assisted surgery as compared to mini laparotomy, however the cost and surgical time for robotically assisted tubal anastomosis was greater.

Robotic-assisted tubal anastomosis has been explored by several groups. The largest series reported a similar pregnancy rate for robotically assisted surgery as compared to mini laparotomy; however, the cost and surgical time for robotically assisted tubal anastomosis was greater.

Using metaanalysis, Watson and colleagues examined the number of randomized controlled trials and the use of historical control groups. However, as expected, the use of magnification during sterilization reversal as well as during adhesiolysis and salpingostomy led to higher pregnancy and lower ectopic rates.
tying this initial suture would make placement of the subsequent sutures difficult if not impossible. In such cases, the subsequent sutures are placed with use of a continuous strand of suture, as described earlier (Fig. 21.30). This approach facilitates suture placement and prevents the individual sutures from becoming tangled. Three additional sutures, placed at cardinal points, are usually sufficient to join the inner layer. If the cornual crater is deep and the placement of sutures is difficult, this task can be facilitated by making a coronal incision on the uterus, above the cornual crater. The edges of this incision must be approximated at the end of the procedure.

If the distance between the two segments of tube is significant or if there is undue tension, it is necessary to hold the distal tubal segment close to the intramural segment while tying the sutures. Alternatively, a single no. 7-0 Vicryl suture is passed through the mesosalpinx below the cut end of the distal segment of tube and then through the border of the uterus immediately beneath the cornual crater. The suture is tied first. Then the loop between each succeeding suture is divided and tied in turn. After approximation of the first layer, the seromuscularis of the uterus is joined to the serosa of the tube with no. 8-0 sutures. The defect under the tube is closed by approximating the mesosalpinx to the lateral edge of the uterus (Fig. 21.30F, G).

Compared with tubouterine implantation, microsurgical tubocornual anastomosis offers several advantages: it largely maintains the integrity of the uterine cornua; preserves a longer tube; obviates the need for a cesarean section, except for obstetric reasons; and yields better results.
Results of Tubocornual Anastomosis

Microsurgical tubocornual anastomosis for the treatment of occlusive cornual disease yields fairly good results in centers experienced with this procedure. The published series report live birth rates between 33% and 56% and ectopic pregnancy rates between 5% and 7% (Table 21.5). This table makes it clearly evident that there has been a paucity of reports regarding this procedure for more than a decade.

Rare Procedures and Technically Difficult Cases

Rare circumstances may be encountered that are amenable to microsurgical correction. Some of these circumstances are discussed in this section.

The technical difficulty of a procedure must be differentiated from the prognosis that the procedure offers. Furthermore, difficulty is a relative term because what is common-place work for some may be difficult or even impossible for others to achieve. From the patient's standpoint, what is important is the prognosis—the yield associated with the surgical procedure. Furthermore, the prognosis is not necessarily inversely proportional to the difficulty of the procedure. For example, microsurgical tubocornual anastomosis to treat occlusive cornual lesions is one of the technically more difficult reconstructive tubal operations. However, centers experienced in this procedure achieve excellent results. An even more technically difficult operation is tuboovarian transposition.

Tuboovarian Transposition

In the case of a unicornuate uterus without an ipsilateral tube and ovary, the contralateral tube and ovary, if present, may be transposed while preserving their vascular pedicle. We performed such a procedure in a woman with a single left unicornuate uterus whose ipsilateral tube and ovary were removed subsequent to a left tubal pregnancy. On the right side, placed high on the pelvic sidewall, were an ovary and a short oviduct, composed of infundibulum and ampulla (Fig. 21.31A).

The ovary was mobilized further to achieve the proper spatial relation with the fimbrial extremity of the tube (Fig. 21.31D). In the third postoperative cycle, the patient was successful in achieving an intrauterine pregnancy, which resulted in a normal live birth. She has since had two more children.

Correction of Bipolar Tubal Disease

The results associated with surgical correction of bipolar (both proximal and distal) tubal occlusion are dismal. A report from the Mayo Clinic included 31 such patients: bipolar tubal occlusion of both tubes (n = 13) or their only remaining tube (n = 5); bilateral distal and unilateral proximal occlusion (n = 7); and bilateral proximal and unilateral distal occlusion (n = 6). Despite a mean follow-up period of more than 3 years, pregnancies occurred in only three patients. Furthermore, two of these were ectopic, and one was a spontaneous abortion.

Anastomosis of Contralateral Tubal Segments

A patient may have a healthy proximal segment of tube on one side, whereas on the opposite side, an ampullary–infundibular segment exists. In such a circumstance, microsurgical reconstruction of one functional tube can be achieved by anastomosis of the contralateral tubal segments behind the uterus, maintaining the physiologic relation between the tubal infundibulum and ovary. In the presence of both ovaries, the uterovarian ligaments are first approximated with interrupted, nonabsorbable no. 4-0 or 5-0 nylon sutures. This brings the ovaries together and helps reduce tension in achieving the subsequent tubal anastomosis (Fig. 21.32). Successful delivery after such a procedure has been reported.

Approximation of the Fimbriated End of the Oviduct to the Contralateral Ovary

When a single ovary exists on the side opposite the patient's only tube, simple approximation of the fimbriated extremity of the tube to the ovary may be possible. The ovary is mobilized, and the mesovarium is fixed to the posterior surface of the uterus with nonabsorbable sutures. The contralateral oviduct is mobilized, and its mesosalpinx is sutured to the posterior aspect of the uterus. The nonabsorbable sutures are placed on the mesosalpinx about 1 cm from the tube. This will effectively place the infundibulum in close proximity to the ovary. Alternatively, the ovary can be transposed to the contralateral side with its vascular pedicle kept intact.

Iterative Reconstructive Surgery

Except in rare circumstances, there are no data to support the undertaking of an iterative surgical procedure when a prior reconstructive operation has failed.

Rare exceptions include cases of tubotubal anastomosis that failed for purely technical reasons, in which sufficient lengths of healthy tube is available for reconstruction. In such instances,
Figure 21.30. Microsurgical tubal cornual anastomosis for proximal tubal disease. A: The tube is transected at the uterotubal function (UTF). Commencing at the UTF, serial cuts are made on the isthmus until patent and normal tube is identified. B: The intramural tube is dissected electrosurgically by using a microelectrode, from the surrounding uterine muscle, 1 to 2 mm at a time, and (C and D) transected until patent and normal tube is reached. E: The first anastomotic suture of the inner musculoepithelial layer is placed at the 6-o’clock position. F: After the opposition of the inner layer, the seromuscularis of the uterus is joined to the serosa of the tube. G: The mesosalpinx is joined to the lateral aspect of the uterus.
### TABLE 21.5

RESULTS OF MICROSURGICAL TUBOCORNUAL ANASTOMOSIS FOR OCCLUSIVE PROXIMAL TUBAL DISEASE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigators</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Intrauterine pregnancies</th>
<th>Live births</th>
<th>Ectopic pregnancies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gomel</td>
<td>1977</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>7 (53.8%)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gomel</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>20 (52.6%)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winston</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>16 (32.7%)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McComb</td>
<td>1986</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>14 (53.8%)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donnez and Casanas-Roux</td>
<td>1986</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>36 (45.9%)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gillett and Herbison</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>18 (56.3%)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomazevic et al.</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>27 (45.8%)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awartani and McComb</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Of the 32 operated patients who did not deliver within 2 years after surgery, 21 were treated with 66 cycles of in vitro fertilization, resulting in live births for 12.

**FIGURE 21.31.** Microsurgical tuboovarian transposition. (From: Gomel V, McComb P. Microsurgical transposition of the human fallopian tube and ovary with subsequent pregnancy. Fertil Steril 1985;43:804, with permission.)
an iterative microsurgical anastomosis may be undertaken if tubal cannulation fails to restore patency. Tubal cannulation, performed at the time of the postoperative control HSG that demonstrates an obstruction at the anastomosis site, may prove beneficial in a small percentage of cases by breaking down synechiae or dislodging debris that may be present at this site. Iterative surgery yields a modest success rate if the initial procedure was performed with the use of conventional techniques. However, the success rate of iterative procedures is disappointing when they are undertaken after a failed microsurgical intervention.

Most of the available data on iterative surgery concern salpingostomy. Of the 119 such cases reported in the literature, 18 (15.2%) achieved live births, six had spontaneous abortions, and seven (5.9%) had ectopic gestations. All of these 119 patients had their first procedure performed by conventional techniques and their second intervention performed by microsurgery.

The first report on laparoscopic salpingostomy by Gomel (1997) included, except for one case, iterative procedures on patients who had previously undergone surgery with conventional techniques and their second intervention performed by microsurgery. The conception rate after iterative microsurgical fertility-promoting procedures is significantly lower than that obtained with primary microsurgical interventions. Thie and colleagues reported a conception rate of 51% after various primary microsurgical procedures in 161 patients. This rate was only 18% at 3-year follow-up in a similar group of 21 patients who had microsurgery after a failed primary operation performed by conventional techniques.

The preceding data strongly suggest that iterative surgery may be indicated in selected, rare instances and that most of these patients may be better served with IVF.

Observations on Current Practice

The enormous progress in IVF and ART in the past 20 years has been accompanied with the industrialization of this technology and its services all over the world. In parallel fashion, there has been a significant decline in the practice and teaching of reconstructive surgery. There is a paucity of publications on this subject. IVF is offered now, as a primary treatment option, in most cases of tubal factor infertility. These changes have occurred despite the greater acceptance of laparoscopic access to perform many of the reconstructive tubal operations and the use of minilaparotomy incision for more complex anastomotic procedures, which represents a major progress in gynecologic surgery. These changes have occurred despite the satisfactory results yielded by reconstructive surgery in appropriately selected cases and despite the fact that surgery offers the couple the opportunity to attempt a pregnancy over a long period of time and to conceive more than once.

The evidence suggests that surgery should retain its place in the treatment of tubal infertility. Preservation of the place of surgery will require a concerted effort on the part of the teaching institutions. Surgery and ART are complementary approaches that can be used singly or in combination to improve the outlook of couples suffering from tubal infertility. In the preface of the book Microsurgery in Female Infertility, published in early 1983, Gomel wrote:

This manuscript has been completed during a time of rapid change and expansion with the understanding that it represents not an end point but merely an accounting at a given point in time. Further developments are also occurring in the area of IVF and embryo transfer (IVF & ET), which will undoubtedly produce improved results. Nonetheless, I do not consider the techniques of microsurgery on the one hand and IVF & ET on the other as competitive; on the contrary, I see them as complementary, enabling us to achieve a greater success rate among those patients presenting with complex fertility problems.

This statement is still valid today.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- In most instances, tubal infertility can be managed through surgery and/or ART. Each approach has unique advantages and disadvantages and can be used in isolation or in combination to improve the outlook of couples suffering from tubal infertility.
- Periodic adhesions, coexisting with other types of tubal disease or in isolation, can affect fertility by encapsulating the tube preventing ovum pickup or by distorting the spatial relation between the tube and ovary. Open or preferably
In select cases of proximal tubal occlusion, selective salpingostomy for fimbrial phimosis and salpingostomy for distal tubal occlusion results in the accumulation of fluid within the tube, which is called hydrosalpinx. Hydrosalpinx is a condition that can affect the results of IVF treatment. They should be removed, proximally occluded, or drained surgically through the creation of a neosalpingostomy before IVF.

Intrauterine pregnancies rates of approximately 50% to 60% is best treated by microsurgical tubocornual anastomosis.

Thoughtful surgical technique minimizing tissue damage is the hallmark of fertility-promoting tubal reconstructive surgery and is independent of the route of access but dependent on the skill and dedication of the surgeon.

Bibliography


Reconstructive Tubal Surgery


Singh V, Li, TC, Cooke BI. An analysis of factors influencing the outcome of 232 consecutive tubal microsurgery cases. BJOG 1995;102:428.


CHAPTER 22 ■ ENDOMETRIOSIS

JOHN S. HESLA AND JOHN A. ROCK

DEFINITIONS

Adenomyoma—A manifestation of adenomyosis characterized as localized, encapsulated disease of the uterine wall, as compared with the more common diffuse pattern of extension of endometrial glands and stroma in the myometrium.

Adenomyosis—Heterotopic endometrial glands and stroma located deep within the myometrium, with glandular extension below the endometrial-myometrial interface of at least 2.5 mm.

American Society for Reproductive Medicine (ASRM) Classification of Endometriosis—A scoring system to quantify the location and extent of endometriosis with a scalar rather than numeric terminology. This documentation has been proposed to allow direct comparison of patient responses to medical and surgical treatments and to identify factors predictive of disease outcome.

Atypical peritoneal implants of endometriosis—Lesions of varying appearance, including vesicles, flat plaques, raised blebs, polyposid structures, areas of fibrosis and adhesion, formation, and peritoneal defects. May be clear, yellow, brown, blue, or black in color, as compared with the readily recognized red or gray implants.

Cancer antigen-125 (CA-125)—A high-molecular-weight glycoprotein expressed on the cell surface of some derivatives of embryonic coelomic epithelium. CA-125 is often elevated in cases of mild-severe endometriosis, as well as other conditions, including acute pelvic inflammatory disease, adenomyosis, uterine leiomyoma, menorrhagia, pregnancy, epithelial ovarian cancer, pancreatitis, and chronic liver disease.

Endometrioma—A solitary, nonneoplastic mass containing endometrial tissue and blood.

Endometriosis—The presence and growth of functioning endometrial tissue containing glandular and stromal elements in places other than the uterus that often results in severe pain and infertility.

Hydrodissection—Forceful injection of physiologic irrigant through a small defect created in the surfaces to be separated, such as the peritoneum from the retroperitoneal tissue. This may aid in establishment of the plane of dissection.

Presacral neurectomy—Division of the superior hypogastric plexus, useful as an adjunctive procedure to eliminate the uterine component of dysmenorrhea. Proposed by John Sampson as a mechanism for the origin of endometriosis in many women.

Uterine nerve ablation—Division of the uterovaginal ligaments at a point approximately 1.5 cm distal to the cervix to interrupt many sensory nerve fibers of the cervix and uterine corpus. Has been proposed to alleviate severe dysmenorrhea.

Uterine suspension—Surgical technique of elevation of the adnexa to reduce adhesion formation at denuded peritoneal surfaces of the posterior cul-de-sac, uterine serosa, and broad ligament.

Endometriosis is a clinical and pathologic entity initially described by von Rokitansky in 1860 that is characterized by the presence of tissue resembling functioning endometrial glands and stroma outside the uterine cavity. These ectopic implants can be located throughout the pelvic cavity, including the ovaries, uterine ligaments, rectovaginal septum, parietal peritoneum, intestinal serosa, and appendix. Less common sites of involvement include the cervix, hernial sacs, the umbilicus, laparotomy and episiotomy scars, and the pleural and pericardial cavities (Fig. 22.1).

Although endometriosis has been extensively investigated over the past century, it remains an enigmatic disease process. The association between endometriosis and infertility is still undefined, and there are scant data to support the many hormonal and surgical therapies that have been proposed. In addition, the often subtle and varied appearances of endometriosis can make recognition and surgical staging difficult, thereby casting doubt on the utility of the classification systems that have been developed. Nevertheless, the findings of well-designed clinical trials and recent studies that have elucidated the pathogenesis of endometriosis have enabled a more rational approach to the medical and surgical management of this disease.

PREVALENCE

The estimated prevalence of endometriosis among population groups varies depending on the presenting symptoms. One to seven percent of asymptomatic women undergoing tubal ligation are diagnosed with the disease at laparoscopy; this range may approximate the prevalence in the general population. Among women with pelvic pain, the prevalence of endometriosis ranges from about 5% to 21%, and the disease has been diagnosed in 40% to 52% of women with severe dysmenorrhea. Cramer and colleagues, in a multicenter study, diagnosed endometriosis in 17% of women with primary infertility, and in other series the prevalence varied from about 9% to 30%, Verkauf prospectively identified endometriosis in 38.5% of infertile women and 5.2% of fertile women. Other studies have confirmed the odds that infertile women are seven to 10 times more likely to have endometriosis than their fertile counterparts. However, any postmenarchal woman is at risk, because endometriotic implants have been identified in postmenopausal women, in women with primary amenorrhea secondary to mullerian anomalies, and in 69.6% of teenagers who underwent diagnostic laparoscopy for chronic pelvic pain.
Several investigators have reported the possibility of a familial tendency to endometriosis. No studies have confirmed a human lymphocyte antigen linkage for the disease, a polygenic, multifactorial mode of inheritance has been suggested. Simpson and colleagues reported a 6.9% occurrence rate in first-degree female relatives, which compared with 1% for the non-blood-related control group.

**HISTOGENESIS**

The mechanism by which endometriosis develops is unknown, although there has been much discussion as to its origin (Table 22.1). A complete understanding of the histogenesis of the aberrant endometrial cells has been compromised because of the variations of disease presentation. Four major theories have been proposed:

1. The reflux and direct implantation theory suggests that viable endometrial cells reflux through the fallopian tubes during menstruation and implant on surrounding pelvic structures.
2. The coelomic metaplasia theory suggests that the multipotential cells of the coelomic epithelium may be stimulated to transform into endometrial-like cells.
3. The vascular dissemination theory suggests that endometrial cells enter the uterine vasculature or lymphatic system at menstruation and are transported to distant sites.
4. The autoimmune disease theory suggests that endometriosis is a disorder of immune surveillance that allows ectopic endometrial implants to grow.

**Reflex and Direct Implantation Theory**

John Sampson first postulated that endometriosis arose from retrograde flow of fragments of endometrial tissue through the oviducts and into the peritoneal cavity. Much evidence validates this theory. The anatomical distribution of endometriosis as noted at laparoscopy is consistent with a reflux pattern of development; the most common sites of disease in the infertile woman are the ovary and uterosacral ligament, followed by the posterior uterus, posterior cul-de-sac, and posterior broad ligament. Endometriosis developed in monkeys when the uterus was surgically inverted to cause menstruation to occur intraperitoneally. Exposure of abraded peritoneum to endometrial cells has resulted in the growth of endometriotic implants in rabbits and rats. Endometriosis has developed in laparotomy, episiotomy, and cesarean section scars after...
surgical entrance into the endometrial cavity, and anomalies of the Mullerian tract are associated with an increased occurrence of endometriosis. Endometriosis is a common finding in women with stenosis of the external cervical os (Barbieri, 1998). Epidemiologic data suggest that women who menstruate more frequently, more heavily, or for a longer duration have an increased likelihood of disease development.

Peritoneal implants of endometriosis and the presence of endometriomas are more common on the left side of the pelvis as compared with the right (Vercellini et al., 2004). The position of the sigmoid colon creates a sequestered macroenvironment around the left adnexa, which facilitates implantation of endometrial cells regurgitated through the left tube. The large intestine does not provide the right hemipelvis with this anatomical shelter, because the ecameciises more cranial in position.

Focal endometriosis has been identified in 16% to 63% of proximal tubal segments after cautery or Pomeroy tubal sterilization, perhaps as a consequence of recurrent bathing of the healing terminal area with menstrual products. Nevertheless, bloody peritoneal fluid has been observed in 90% of women with patent fallopian tubes undergoing laparoscopy during the perimenstrual time period, a figure much greater than the estimated 2% to 5% prevalence of symptomatic endometriomas in women of reproductive age. Additionally, peritoneal implants have been identified in women who had a prior tubal ligation procedure and were undergoing laparoscopy for the evaluation of pelvic pain. Hence, other factors evidently are present to promote the ectopic implantation.

Coelomic Metaplasia Theory

The germinal epithelium of the ovary, endometrium, and peritoneum all originate from the same totipotent coelomic epithelium. The metaplasia theory postulates that these totipotential cells are transformed by repeated exposure to hormonal or infectious stimuli. This may explain the development of endometriomas in unusual locations and in the odd cases of male patients in whom endometriosis develops after orchectomy, orchietomy, or prolonged treatment with estrogen.

Reports of endometriomas in women with primary amenorrhea and an absence of functioning uterine endometrium and of endometriosis identified in mature teratomas also lend support to the metaplasia theory.

Vascular Dissemination Theory

Endometrial cells can be transported to extrauterine sites by blood vessels or the lymphatic system or by contamination of the pelvis or abdominal wall incision if the uterine cavity is surgically entered. Retroperitoneal endometriosis is hypothesized to arise from lymph vascular spread; 29% of patients with pelvic endometriosis documented on autopsy had pelvic lymph nodes that contained endometriosis. Theories of vascular dissemination help explain how endometriosis can develop in the lung or pericardium.

Autoimmune Disease Theory

Alterations in cellular immunity can facilitate the successful implantation of translocated endometrial cells. Compared with control subjects, monkeys with spontaneous endometriosis had both a lowered cell-mediated response to autologous endometrial tissue, as determined by skin testing, and a decreased in vitro blastogenesis response. Similar studies performed in women demonstrated that lymphocytes obtained from control patients were significantly more efficient in cytolyis of isolated endometrial stromal cells than were lymphocytes obtained from patients with endometriosis. This decreased cytotoxic response to endometrial cells may be due to a defect in natural killer cell activity, such as a decreased lytic effect toward stroma that allows immunologic escape of endometriotic fragments. In addition, there may be an increased resistance of endometrium in women with endometriosis to natural killer cytotoxicity.

Promoting Factors

Clinical and laboratory studies support the concept that endometriosis is an estrogen-dependent condition. Estradiol concentrations greater than approximately 60 pg/mL have been identified as necessary for proliferation of endometriotic lesions. Nevertheless, estrogen and progesterone receptors are found in much lower concentrations in endometriotic tissue than in normal endometrium; such endometriotic tissue also frequently fails to show cyclic variations of development in response to hormonal changes. Early data from primate studies suggested that endometriosis required no steroidal supplementation to become initially established, but later studies demonstrated that chronic exposure to ovarian steroids is necessary for the survival of these experimentally induced endometrial plaques.

Growth factors can originate from the peritoneal environment to stimulate endometrial development. Platelet-derived growth factor, a macrophage secretory product, enhanced endometrial stromal cell proliferation in a dose-dependent manner. Similarly, macrophage-conditioned media promoted mouse endometrial stromal cell proliferation in vitro, and this activation was enhanced with the addition of estrogen. Increased concentrations of macrophage-derived growth factors, including vascular endothelial growth factor, have been identified in the peritoneal fluid of women with endometriosis. This suggests that changes in the vascular permeability and angiogenesis play an important role in the pathophysiology of this disease.

Molecular alterations in steroidogenic enzyme function have been implicated in the pathogenesis of endometriosis. Endometrial tissue from patients with endometriosis expresses aromatase P-450, whereas endometrium from control women without identifiable endometriosis does not. The presence of aromatase within endometriosis results in higher local production of estrogen necessary to support the growth and metabolic activity of the lesion.

Menstrual effluent contains factors that induce alterations in the peritoneal mesothelium, facilitating adhesion of endometrial cells. Attachment of endometrial cells is enhanced by induction of adhesion molecules and their receptors and the overexpression of matrix metalloproteinases and plasminogen activators. These factors ensure local destruction of the extra cellular matrix. Suppression of matrix metalloproteinase production by progesterone decreased ectopic implantation of endometrium in the nude mouse, implicating these proteases in the pathogenesis of endometriosis.

In summary, no single theory explains all cases of endometriosis, although the direct implantation mechanism seems the likely cause for most disease locations. Immunologic factors, inducing substances, or other mediators may explain the development of endometriomas in more distant sites.
NATURAL HISTORY

The natural history of endometriosis is not clearly understood. The disease appears to progress in most untreated patients, although spontaneous regression can occur in as many as 58% of milder cases. Surgical and medical therapies may promote a temporal regression but may not effectively eliminate microscopic, retroperitoneal, and hormonally resistant disease. Dziewulski and Cohen described persistent disease in 15% of patients treated with danazol, and Henzl and associates noted a progression of disease during the course of treatment in 4% to 8% of patients receiving danazol or an analog of gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH). When conservative surgery was combined with danazol or GnRH agonist therapy, the overall recurrence rate at 36 months was between 13.5% and 33%.

The effect of pregnancy on the clinical course of endometriosis is uncertain. Although Sampson proposed that pregnancy induces involution of implants, other authors recently described a variable response of endometriosis to pregnancy. It is possible that endometriosis becomes temporarily suppressed during pregnancy. McArthur and Ulfelder analyzed the clinical effect of pregnancy on endometriosis in 24 patients. They found that the behavior of endometriosis during the gravid state was extremely variable and that the regression of disease appeared to be due to decreased tissue responsiveness to hormonal stimulation rather than to actual necrosis of the lesions. More patients in their series experienced disease persistence than permanent regression. Monkey studies have confirmed these findings; the response of endometrial implants to pregnancy varied from total regression to significant progression. Approximately 2% to 4% of early postmenopausal women suffer from endometriosis. These cases are usually associated with exogenous intake of estrogens or tamoxifen. Nevertheless, there are reports of symptomatic endometriosis in women older than 60 years of age who have not received steroid replacement therapy. Such cases presumably are secondary to the responsiveness of the residual lesions to low levels of estrogens that arise from peripheral conversion of ovarian and adrenal androgens.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Gross Appearance

Signs of endometriosis may be evident on physical examination. Endometriosis can form tender nodules on the uterus or ovaries, or hemorrhagic streaks that are readily palpable. It may infiltrate the deepest portion of the pouch of Douglas and cause pain with defecation and, rarely, cyclic rectal bleeding. Lesions of endometriosis have been identified in the umbilicus, in the vulva, and in epistaxis scars. Complete uterine obstruction has been reported. This can be temporarily reversed with the administration of GnRH agonists, progestogens, and danazol. Diaphragmatic involvement can lead to chronic, recurrent pneumothorax at the time of menstruation. Lesions have been identified in the upper and lower extremities, the pericardium, and the lung.

The gross appearance of endometriosis is extremely variable. On entering the abdomen, the surgeon may find a small, adherent nodule on one or both sides of the pelvis, usually attached to the posterior cul-de-sac and posterior surface of the uterus. Frequently, release of ovarian adhesions to mobilize the adnexa results in an egress of chocolate-colored or dark red fluid that is highly suggestive of endometriosis. Examination of the ovary may disclose a cyst that is rarely larger than 10 cm and has a dark, hemorrhagic lining. Endometromas develop over a time span of a few months as a result of extensive intra-cystic hemorrhage. Reddish blue, fibrous areas that represent small islands of endometriosis may be present on the ovarian cortex. Peritoneal implants vary in appearance from black, puckered lesions surrounded by a variable extent of reactive mesothelium to red polypoid material, to clear vesicles. Other appearances include yellow-brown peritoneal discoloration, white plaques, or scarring. The strong inflammatory stimulus of superficial lesions of endometriosis may promote fibrosis and invagination of adjacent peritoneal surfaces.

The fallopian tube is usually nonobstructed and free of gross disease, although peritoneal adhesions can extend to adjacent structures, particularly in patients with extensive disease. Deeply infiltrating endometriotic nodules extend more than 5 mm beneath the peritoneum and may involve the ureteral ligaments, bladder, ureters, or vagina. The depth of invasion has been correlated with pain symptomatology. Endometrial invasion of the rectal or sigmoidal wall can simulate malignancy or produce complete obstruction.

Microscopic Appearance

The essential diagnostic criterion is the presence of endometrial tissue, both stroma and glandular elements. This aberrant tissue resembles the uterine mucosa both histologically and physiologically. Secretory change and decidualization are seen in response to hormone influences in the luteal phase, and estrogen stimulates proliferation of the ectopic implants. Nevertheless, these functional changes are less uniform for implants than for the uterine mucosa.

The ultrastructural features of endometriosis are consistent with an incomplete response to the hormonal milieu. Endometriotic implants contain lower concentrations of progesterone and estrogen receptors than do corresponding normal endometrium, so the histologic response to progesterone is less profound. Gould and colleagues reported that the nucleus of endometriotic stromal cells had a marked degree of estrogen binding throughout the menstrual cycle, whereas stromal binding sites in the uterine endometrium were present only during the proliferative phase and not the secretory phase of the cycle. The differing responses of the two tissue types to steroid hormones were reflected by the modulation of estrogen binding and changes in glandular histology. Estrogen receptors did not undergo downregulation during the luteal phase of the cycle in endometriotic tissue, despite an increase in endogenous progesterone concentration. Alterations in the quantity, activation, or function of the progesterone receptor may be responsible for this lack of change in estradiol receptors, the abnormal response of the ectopic endometrium to progesterone, and the failure of hormonal therapy in some patients.

Because of the pressure of retained blood in the cyst cavities of endometriomas, a large concentration of endotheial leukocytes heavily laden with hemosiderin (pseudoxanthoma cells) may be found, and the glandular lining may be nearly absent and replaced by reactive connective tissue elements. Biopsy may fail to yield histologic proof of the endometrial glands and stroma in about one third of all cases of typical clinical endometriosis, even if many tissue sections are analyzed. The “chocolate cyst” description of the ovary is used synonymously with endometriotic cyst or endometrioma. Nevertheless, other types of ovarian cysts may have a similar fluid content, including the hemorrhagic follicle, corpus luteum, or...
HISTOLOGY OF TUMORS ARISING IN ENDOMETRIOSIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Histology</th>
<th>Numbers</th>
<th>Incidence (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Endometrioid carcinoma</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>46.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>20.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenosquamous carcinoma</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear cell carcinoma</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcoma, including mixed mesodermal tumor</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>11.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serous cystadenocarcinoma</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squamous cell carcinoma</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous cystadenocarcinoma</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed germ cell tumor and adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Totals</strong></td>
<td><strong>207</strong></td>
<td><strong>100</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Two patients had two different histologic patterns.


Clinical Characteristics

The clinical features of endometriosis are varied, and the presentation depends on the site of growth and the severity of disease. The classic triad of dysmenorrhea, dyspareunia, and infertility has been described as characteristic of the disease (Table 22.3). Nevertheless, patients with extensive endometriosis may be clinically symptom free, and women with only minimal involvement may manifest disabling pelvic pain. Dysmenorrhea is a common symptom that most likely is associated with endometriosis if it develops after age 20 years, is progressive, and is not well relieved by nonsteroidal antiinflammatory agents or oral contraceptives. Spasmodic pain beginning before the onset of menstrual bleeding is another common symptom of patients with endometriosis. When the rectovaginal septum or uterosacral region is involved, the pain is often referred to the rectum or lower sacral and coccygeal regions because of premenstrual and menstrual swelling of ectopic implants. Dyschezia and constipation may be present. Dyspareunia is common, especially in cases of uterosacral or vaginal infiltration, fixed retroversion of the uterus, or ovarian fixation by adhesions. Again, there is no absolute correlation between the amount of visible endometriosis as seen at surgery and the extent of symptoms; minor disease involvement may result in severe pain, whereas massive areas of superficial endometriosis may cause no discomfort.

Other presenting symptoms can include signs of urinary tract involvement, such as hematuria or ureteral obstruction, unusual abdominal or adrenal masses, cyclic scintia, catamenial pneumothorax or hemoptysis, and swollen and painful scars. Premenstrual spotting can occur for 3 to 7 days before the start of menses; this is a poorly recognized but relatively consistent sign of endometriosis. An endometrioma can leak, causing considerable pain, or it can rupture and produce a clinical picture much like that seen with a ruptured ectopic pregnancy or acute appendicitis. Nearly 10% of patients with
had more, yet smaller, follicles and lower preovulatory estradiol. Coworkers reported that women with minimal endometriosis showed advanced disease, many investigators have attempted to identify specific possible mechanisms by which endometriosis causes infertility. Endometriosis presents with acute symptoms that require exploration for diagnosis and treatment. Approximately 20% to 40% of women with endometriosis are infertile. When extensive pelvic scarring or large endometriomas are present in the patient with endometriosis, the associated infertility can be clearly attributed to anatomic distortion. However, the pathophysiology of infertility in patients with less advanced disease is more controversial. Endometriotic implants within the fallopian tube or ovary may promote a local inflammatory response that has a direct, deleterious effect on tubal function (Table 22.4). Oocyte pickup by the fallopian tube may be prevented despite the normal process of oocyte maturation and ovulation. Endometriosis and especially adenomyosis is associated with impeded hyperperistalsis and dysperistalsis uterotubal transport capacity. Chronic salpingitis was detected in 29 of 87 (33%) fallopian tubes of patients undergoing laparotomy for ovarian endometriosis; tubal obstruction was demonstrated in only one of these cases, although adhesions were present in 24%. Endometriosis has been identified in the resected segments of fallopian tubes in women undergoing tubal-cornual anastomosis for proximal tubal obstruction when there was no evidence of implants elsewhere in the pelvis. Others have reported a correlation between tubal endometriosis and chronic salpingitis in similar cases, although this finding has not been uniform. Altered folliculogenesis or ovulation has been described in endometriotic patients who have undergone serial sonogram studies. An abnormal follicular growth rate and total growth period may disturb the normal synchronization of oocyte maturation, uterine receptivity, and ovulation. Tummon and coworkers reported that women with minimal endometriosis had more, yet smaller, follicles and lower preovulatory estradiol levels at the time of midcycle luteinizing hormone (LH) surge. Luteinized unruptured follicle syndrome, a condition of normal ovulatory hormone secretion and luteinization of the follicle without the expected occurrence of ovulation, has been reported to be more common in patients with endometriosis. Mio and colleagues performed transvaginal ultrasound at least every other day from cycle day 8 through the third day after human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) administration on 47 patients with endometriosis, predominantly minimal and mild, and 28 control patients with male factor infertility. LUF syndrome was diagnosed in 20 of 81 (24.7%) monitored cycles in endometriosis patients and in only 3 of 44 (6.8%) monitored cycles in control patients, a difference that achieved statistical significance. Schenken and associates also noted an increased rate of LUF and associated luteal phase deficiency in monkeys with surgically induced moderate to severe endometriosis. An absence of sonographic evidence of midcycle follicular collapse in patients with mild endometriosis has ranged from 4% to 35% in the literature. Luteal phase function has been evaluated by endometrial biopsy and peripheral progesterone concentrations. There is insufficient evidence to conclusively link endometriosis with a deficiency of corpus luteum activity, although some studies have suggested the existence of a shortened luteal phase, delayed increase in progesterone secretion after ovulation, decreased progesterone secretion in the late luteal phase, and lowered serum estradiol levels during the early follicular phase. The effect of endometriosis on fertilization and preimplantation development is widely debated. Peritoneal fluid from patients with endometriosis had a deleterious effect on sperm-oocyte interaction in homologous mouse and hamster fertilization assays. In vitro studies involving human zona pellucida confirmed an adverse effect of peritoneal fluid on sperm binding in this patient population, although others reported that peritoneal fluid from women with low-stage endometriosis had no detrimental effect on sperm motility characteristics. Peritoneal fluid from women with moderate and severe endometriosis caused declines in sperm motility and velocity. Exposure of two-cell mouse embryos to the peritoneal fluid or serum of patients with endometriosis has resulted in a decreased rate of cleavage and development to the blastocyst and hatching stages as compared with control nondiagnostic specimens. However, this association was not verified by similar studies of mouse embryo development and apoptosis. Integrins are ubiquitous cell adhesion molecules that undergo dynamic alterations during the normal menstrual cycle in the human endometrium. The α5β3 vitronectin receptor integrin is normally expressed in endometrium during the peri-implantation period; such expression may be lost in women with mild endometriosis, which may affect uterine receptivity. A high frequency of spontaneous abortions in infertile women with endometriosis has been reported, although the relation was questioned because of potential control group bias. Naples and coworkers found that patients with endometriosis who refused treatment had the same abortion rate before and after diagnosis (26% and 25.5%). Studies of the last decade with appropriate control groups have demonstrated no substantial increase in the incidence of spontaneous abortion in women with endometriosis.

**Mechanisms Influencing Symptoms**

Because of the uncertain mechanisms causing infertility and pelvic pain in patients with minimal and mild endometriosis, many investigators have attempted to identify specific


endometriosis present with acute symptoms that require exploration for diagnosis and treatment. Approximately 20% to 40% of women with endometriosis are infertile. When extensive pelvic scarring or large endometriomas are present in the patient with endometriosis, the associated infertility can be clearly attributed to anatomic distortion. However, the pathophysiology of infertility in patients with less advanced disease is more controversial. Endometriotic implants within the fallopian tube or ovary may promote a local inflammatory response that has a direct, deleterious effect on tubal function (Table 22.4). Oocyte pickup by the fallopian tube may be prevented despite the normal process of oocyte maturation and ovulation. Endometriosis and especially adenomyosis is associated with impeded hyperperistalsis and dysperistalsis uterotubal transport capacity. Chronic salpingitis was detected in 29 of 87 (33%) fallopian tubes of patients undergoing laparotomy for ovarian endometriosis; tubal obstruction was demonstrated in only one of these cases, although adhesions were present in 24%. Endometriosis has been identified in the resected segments of fallopian tubes in women undergoing tubal-cornual anastomosis for proximal tubal obstruction when there was no evidence of implants elsewhere in the pelvis. Others have reported a correlation between tubal endometriosis and chronic salpingitis in similar cases, although this finding has not been uniform. Altered folliculogenesis or ovulation has been described in endometriotic patients who have undergone serial sonogram studies. An abnormal follicular growth rate and total growth period may disturb the normal synchronization of oocyte maturation, uterine receptivity, and ovulation. Tummon and coworkers reported that women with minimal endometriosis had more, yet smaller, follicles and lower preovulatory estradiol

**Mechanisms Influencing Symptoms**

Because of the uncertain mechanisms causing infertility and pelvic pain in patients with minimal and mild endometriosis, many investigators have attempted to identify specific

**Possible mechanisms by which endometriosis causes infertility**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mechanism</th>
<th>Possible Mechanisms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical interference</td>
<td>Pelvic adhesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic salpingitis</td>
<td>Altered tubal motility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distortion of tuboovarian relations</td>
<td>Impaired oocyte pickup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alterations in peritoneal fluid</td>
<td>Enhanced phagocytosis of sperm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased concentration of prostaglandins</td>
<td>Increased number of activated macrophages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased production of cytokines</td>
<td>Abnormal systemic immune system response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased prevalence of autoantibodies</td>
<td>Increased cell-mediated gamete injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antinidometral antibody production</td>
<td>Defensive folliculogenesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hormonal or ovariatory dysfunction</td>
<td>Luteinized unruptured follicle syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperprolactinemia</td>
<td>Hyperprolactinemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luteal phase deficiency</td>
<td>Luteal phase deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fertilization or implantation failure</td>
<td>Fertilization or implantation failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early spontaneous abortion</td>
<td>Early spontaneous abortion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

alterations in the peritoneal environment that would explain these symptoms. Significant increases or decreases in peritoneal fluid volume that are due to increased production by the ovaries, altered mesothelial permeability, or increases in the colloid osmotic pressure have been hypothesized to inhibit ovum capture by the fallopian tube or to adversely affect tubal transport. Koninckx and associates reported elevations in peritoneal fluid fluid in patients with mild and moderate endometriosis. The quantity of fluid was comparable to that in control subjects during the remainder of the follicular phase. These authors described reduced volumes in the early luteal phase, which directly contrasts with findings reported by Osk and colleagues. Rock and associates evaluated patients during cycle days 8 through 12 and measured no difference in fluid volumes in patients with endometriosis compared with that in control subjects. Similar findings were noted by Rezaei and associates. Hence, it appears unlikely that fluid volume alone plays a role in the establishment of infertility.

Peritoneal fluid from patients with minimal and mild endometriosis has been shown to increase macrophage proliferation in vitro. In addition, several studies have described increases in total macrophage number in the peritoneal fluid of patients with endometriosis. Hill and coworkers measured significant elevations in total leukocytes, macrophages, helper T cells, lymphocytes, and natural killer cells in women with stages I and II endometriosis. Activated macrophages may affect the reproductive process by altering sperm motility, fibrin ovum capture, sperm-oocyte interaction, and early embryonic growth. Increased sperm phagocytosis by macrophages has been demonstrated by in vivo animal and in vitro human studies. Sugianami and Yano have demonstrated the presence of an ovum capture inhibitor in peritoneal fluid from patients with endometriosis, which reduces fibrinial activity for ovum capture in vitro. This molecule may prevent contact between the fibrinial cells and cumulus-oophorus.

Prostaglandins, interleukins, and other substances produced by macrophages may be harmful to reproduction. Falah and colleagues demonstrated that interleukin-1 was present in the peritoneal fluid of almost all patients with endometriosis, but not in the fertile control group. Interleukins have been shown to adversely affect mouse embryo growth in vitro. In addition, interleukin-1 stimulates fibroblast proliferation, collagen deposition, and fibrinogen formation; hence, elevated concentrations of such cytokines may account for the development of fibrosis and adhesions in advanced stages of endometriosis. Interleukin-6 secretion in vitro is upregulated in ectopic and eutopic endometrial stromal cells from women with endometriosis. Nevertheless, not all studies have confirmed the existence of a difference in interleukin activity between endometriosis patients and control groups. Decreased plasmaglandin activator activity in endometriotic implants may also be a cause for increased adhesion formation.

Bleeding from ectopic endometrial implants may promote the formation of free oxygen radicals. The iron in hemoglobin may be the catalyst of free radical reactions. Free radicals may damage proteins, carbohydrates, nucleotides, and lipids, resulting in tissue damage and de novo adhesions. Peritoneal fluid from patients with endometriosis has been hypothesized to interfere with ovulation, to alter tubal motility such that the embryos may arrive in the uterus at a suboptimal time for implantation, or to diminish corpus luteum function. Drake and associates measured the metabolites PGI2, 6-kET, and thromboxane A2 in peritoneal fluid and noted a 10-fold increase in these levels in patients with endometriosis. Ylikorkala and colleagues confirmed these observations, although the increase in prostanooids metabolites in the patients with endometriosis was less than twice that of the controls. When cycle stage was experimentally controlled, Rock and coworkers, Rezaei and associates, and others failed to demonstrate a significant change in prostaglandin levels in peritoneal fluid from patients with endometriosis as compared with control groups. In addition, prostaglandin concentrations did not vary between the follicular and luteal phase in either endometriotic patients or controls. Variations in collection of samples during the menstrual cycle, selection of control groups, and collection techniques have compromised the interpretation of data regarding the relative importance of prostanooid content in peritoneal fluid in the studies that have been published on this topic.

Alterations in the systemic immune response of endometriosis patients may influence fecundity. Cellular and humoral abnormalities have been reported in the peripheral blood and peritoneal fluid of women with endometriosis. Translocated endometrial cells may implant only in patients with an inherent defect in cell-mediated immunity. Functional changes in monocytes and macrophages, natural killer cells, cytotoxic T lymphocytes, and B cells suggest decreased surveillance, recognition, and destruction of misplaced endometrial cells and possible facilitation of their implantation. The endometrial proteins of menstrual fluid may be recognized by foreign to the host and trigger an autoimmune response. This host reaction can be variable, thus explaining why some women with a weak autoimmune response and varying extent of disease can conceive with no difficulty. Other investigators have confirmed a high prevalence of autoantibodies against endometrial and ovarian tissues in the sera and cervical and vaginal secretions of women with endometriosis.

Non-specific polyclonal B-cell activation has been postulated to exist in endometriosis, but there is a lack of substantive data to demonstrate that this association contributes significantly to endometriosis-associated subfertility. Dioxin, a pollutant that is known to decrease cell-mediated cytotoxicity by reducing the number of helper T cells, has been suggested as a causative factor in the high incidence of endometriosis in developed countries. Heilier and associates documented an increase in dioxin-like compounds in the serum of women with peritoneal endometriosis and deep endometriotic (adenomyotic) nodules. Moreover, a dose-dependent relationship existed between dioxin exposure and the subsequent development and severity of endometriosis in the rhesus monkey after a latent period of more than 5 years.

Nevertheless, other studies have suggested that endometriosis may not promote immunologic alterations in the pelvis. In a retrospective analysis of the cell count and volume of peritoneal fluid in 135 infertile women with endometriosis, Haney and colleagues found a negative correlation between total cell numbers and extent of disease and no significant correlation between fluid volume and extent of disease. Similarly, in the rabbit model of endometriosis, there was no difference in peritoneal fluid volume, macrophage numbers, or macrophage activation in treated versus control animals.

Hence, the exact cause-and-effect relation between endometriosis and infertility in the absence of a distortion in pelvic anatomy remains unknown. In a recent study using an adhesion-free rabbit model of endometriosis, peritoneal implants did not adversely affect the number of corpora lutea, the mean recovery rate of implantation, tubal transport, embryonic development and cleavage, or nidation index. Similarly, Mahmoud and Templeton were unable to detect differences in hormonal patterns of the menstrual cycle, follicular growth, preovulatory peritoneal fluid volume and sex steroid concentration, rate of LH, oocyte maturation, fertilization rate, or...
cleavage rate between patients with minimal and mild endometriosis and control women.

Little is known about the mechanisms by which endometriosis induces pain symptoms. Dyspareunia may be related to stimulation of pain fibers by stretching of scarred, inelastic tissue or by direct pressure on nodules of endometriosis embedded in fibrotic tissue. Endometriosis implants secrete inflammatory substances such as prostaglandins, cytokines, and growth factors that initiate the sequence of events that result in the development of pain. Moreover, the extravasated debris and blood from endometriotic implants may stimulate an inflammatory reaction within the peritoneal cavity with production of the aforementioned substances.

**DIAGNOSIS**

**Symptoms**

Dysmenorrhea, dyspareunia, and pelvic, back, and rectal pain—the more common symptoms of endometriosis—have been assumed to be caused by endometrial implants. However, the development of such symptoms is not diagnostic of the disease state. In one random survey of women in the general population, more than 60% reported dyspareunia at some point in their lives, and 33% had persistent discomfort. The prevalence of laparoscopically diagnosed endometriosis in patients with chronic pelvic pain has ranged from 4% to 52% in published series. The age of peak diagnosis of endometriosis based on presenting symptom is pelvic pain, age 15 to 24 years; infertility, age 25 to 34 years; and dysfunctional uterine bleeding, age 35 to 44 years (Leibson et al.).

Some authorities have suggested that the symptoms may be dependent on the location of the implants, the presence of adhesions, distortion of ovarian anatomy by endometriosis, and involvement of other organs, such as the ureter or rectum. However, Fedele and colleagues found no significant association between the American Fertility Society (AFS; now known as the American Society for Reproductive Medicine) classification of disease stage and the presence and severity of dysmenorrhea, pelvic pain, and dyspareunia in a prospective study of 160 women. The pain profiles of the patients with ovarian lesions were similar to those of the patients with peritoneal or ovarian and peritoneal disease. Conversely, in a later study by the same group, ovarian endometriomas were the only lesions significantly associated with severe dysmenorrhea and pelvic pain in infertile women.

Koninckx and coworkers demonstrated that the presence of pelvic pain did not correlate with the total area of endometriosis, type of lesion, or volume of disease. The only significant discriminator proved to be the depth of infiltration; endometriotic lesions greater than 1 cm in depth were associated with severe dysmenorrhea and pelvic pain in infertile women.

Pain symptoms generally correlate with fluctuations in steroid hormone concentrations. In response to cyclic stimulation by ovarian estradiol and progesterone, endometriotic lesions undergo epithelial and stromal proliferation, variable secretory changes, stromal pseudodecidual reaction, and periodic regression in a manner more disorganized than, yet similar to, that of normal endometrium. Surgical castration and ovarian hormonal suppressive therapy result in diminution of pain in most patients.

**Physical Findings**

Bimanual pelvic examination may reveal tender uterosacral ligaments, cul-de-sac nodularity, induration of the rectovaginal septum, fixed retroversion of the uterus, adnexal masses, and generalized or localized pelvic tenderness. The adherent tube and ovary may constitute a tender, irregular mass that is similar in characteristics to the mass palpated in cases of chronic salpingitis-oophoritis. Uterosacral nodules occasionally reach 1 cm or more in size. Lesions implanted in the retrocervical area or rectovaginal wall are frequently more easily felt than seen and can be missed if the physical examination is omitted.
false-positive results because of the neovascularity of benign
dimensional sonography and CA-125, but this yields many
creases the sensitivity and negative predictive values of two-
tion of resistance indices in the vessels of adnexal masses in-
not reliable as a screening test. Doppler sonographic evalua-
tive to identify lesser stages of endometriosis and is therefore
studies, however, suggest that CA-125 is not sufficiently sensi-
dometriotic cysts and deep endometriosis. The results of most
14 (PP14) have been related specifically to the presence of en-
antigen.

A perceptible, painful swelling of the implant before and at
menstruation remains a classic and reliable clinical sign of ac-
tive rectovaginal or retrocervical endometriosis.
Cancer antigen-125 (CA-125), a high-molecular-weight gly-
coprotein expressed on the cell surface of some derivatives
of embryonic coelomic epithelium, is often elevated toward the
end of the luteal phase and during menstruation in pa-
tients with AFS stages II to IV endometriosis. Barberi and col-
leagues reported that a value higher than 35 U/mL had a posi-
tive predictive value of 0.58 and a negative predictive value of
0.96 in establishing the presence of endometriosis. Many other
conditions have been associated with an elevated CA-125 con-
centration, including acute pelvic inflammatory disease, ade-
omyosis, uterine leiomyoma, menstruation, pregnancy, ep-
ithelial ovarian cancer, pancreatitis, and chronic liver disease.
Pittaway reported that 80% of women with pelvic pain and en-
dometriosis had a CA-125 titer greater than 16 U/mL, whereas
Pittaway reported that 80% of women with pelvic pain and en-
dometriosis had a CA-125 titer greater than 16 U/mL, whereas
only 6% of patients with pelvic pain and without endometrio-
sis had an increased serum concentration of this cell-surface
antigen.
Increased concentrations of CA-125 and placental protein
14 (PP14) have been related specifically to the presence of en-
dometriotic cysts and deep endometriosis. The results of most
studies, however, suggest that CA-125 is not sufficiently sensi-
tive to identify lesser stages of endometriosis and is therefore
not reliable as a screening test. Doppler sonographic evalua-
tion of resistance indices in the vessels of adnexal masses in-
creases the sensitivity and negative predictive values of two-
dimensional sonography and CA-125, but this yields many
false-positive results because of the neovascularity of bengi
tumors. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) may be helpful in assessing deep pelvic and extrapelvic endometriosis (Table 22.5).

**Visual Findings**

The patient with unexplained lower abdominal pain or a pre-
sentation suggesting endometriosis requires laparoscopy for
definitive diagnosis. Ultrasonography and other noninvasive
procedures cannot provide the specific information needed to
diagnose or classify the extent or severity of disease. For
proper laparoscopic evaluation, a double puncture technique
is essential. The ancillary probe or forceps placed through the
lower abdominal sheath permits mobilization of the tubes and
ovaries. A methodical regimented approach should be used to
thoroughly inspect the lateral side walls, all ovarian sur-
taces, both sides of the broad ligaments, the bladder and bowel
serosa, and the inferior aspects of the cul-de-sac. Uterine ma-
nipulation with a cannula fixed to the cervix facilitates eval-
uation of the uterosacral ligaments and rectal serosa. Photog-
raphy and video recording are useful for documentation of
findings.
Awareness of the wide range of visual appearances of en-
dometriosis is necessary for accurate diagnosis and appropri-
sate surgical therapy of the disease. Although darkly pigmented
lesions are readily recognizable and are considered a classic
presentation of endometriosis, less discernible yet common
forms of implants were described as early as the 1920s, when
Sampson noted “red raspberries, purple raspberries, blueber-
ries, blebs, and peritoneal pockets.” The black or blue pack-
ered “powder-burn” implant is a late consequence of cyclic
growth and regression of the lesion, to the point that bleeding
and hemosiderin staining of the tissue have occurred. Biopsy
of such areas reveals inactive endometrial glands and fibrous
stroma.
Distinctive morphologic variations include vesicles, flat
plaques, raised lesions, polyposid structures, areas of fibrosis
and adhesion formation, and peritoneal defects (Table 22.6).
Yellow, brown, blue, or black coloration is proportional to the
amount of hemosiderin deposition. Red polyoid lesions share
the closest histologic characteristics with native endometrium
and are thought to have the greatest metabolic activity, as is sug-
gested by their high concentrations of prostaglandin metaboli-
tes. Biopsy of unpigmented implants (i.e., implants that are
the same color as adjacent peritoneum) may reveal active en-
dometriotic glands and stroma. White lesions are predom-
antly fibromuscular scarring with scattered glandular and
stromal elements, and brown lesions are mainly hemosiderin
deposits. Peritoneal defects and subovarian adhesions contain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Table 22.5</strong></th>
<th>ACCURACY OF MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGING FOR THE DIAGNOSIS OF ADENOMYOTIC ENDOMETRIOSIS ACCORDING TO LOCATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Location</strong></td>
<td><strong>Sensitivity (%)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterosacral ligaments</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectovaginal</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectocele</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vagina</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Table 22.6</strong></th>
<th>HISTOLOGIC CONFIRMATION OF LESIONS CATEGORIZED BY APPEARANCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Confirmation by appearance (%)</strong></td>
<td><strong>Black</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investigators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jensen and Russell, 1986</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stripling et al., 1988</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martin et al., 1989</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
endometriosis in 40% to 70% of cases. Because other peritoneal lesions share morphologic features similar to those of endometriosis, the differential diagnosis is broad and includes old suture locations, epithelial malignancies, hemangiomia, inflammatory reaction to infection or oil-based hysterosalpinogram dye, and carbon deposition from laser surgery. Rec-tovaginal endometrotic lesions consist of smooth muscle with a loose fibrous stroma and variable hemosiderin deposits. They share similar characteristics to adenomyomas.

Small endometrotic lesions become more visible during the premenstrual and menstrual phases of the cycle, because during this time microfoci of peritoneal disease become congested with blood and debris. In addition, vascular dilatation, superficial hemorrhage, and ecchymosis formation cause accentuation of the more typical features of endometriosis. Performance of laparoscopy at a time when ovarian steroideogenesis is suppressed by medications such as GnRH analogs or progestogens may lead to inaccuracies in the assessment of extent of disease. Jansen and Russell reported the presence of nonpigmented lesions in 38% of their 202 patients with biopsy-proven endometriosis; 15% had only nonpigmented implants. Most areas of pigmented endometriosis are surrounded by nonpigmented endometriosis. These subtle lesions may represent the first stage of development of peritoneal disease. Recognition of nonpigmented endometriosis may be enhanced by "painting" the peritoneum with the patient's blood or by filling the pelvis with irrigation fluid and submerging the laparoscope to appreciate the three-dimensional configuration of clear lesions. Subtle lesions are likely to originate from microscopic glands; they appear and disappear like blebs on the peritoneal surface. With progressive fibrosis, these implants become the classic pigmented, scarred lesions, and finally, when fibrosis replaces the stroma, they appear as white, inactive disease.

The ability to detect subtle lesions of endometriosis increases with the experience of the surgeon and is reinforced by histologic confirmation. Although depth perception is impaired when the monocular lens of the laparoscope is used to view the pelvic cavity, the magnification ability of this lens when closely approximated to the peritoneum may allow identification of subtle surface irregularities present in occult disease. Magnification up to 10× power can be obtained with the laparoscope, depending on the working distance. Microscopic implants of endometriosis not visible even with 10× magnification have been documented by scanning electron microscopy in peritoneal biopsies of patients with unexplained infertility who had no evidence of disease at the time of laparoscopy. A scanning electron microscopic study of samples of supposedly normal tissue from endometriosis patients has documented the presence of endometriotic foci in 25% of cases. Lesions as small as 200 μm have been identified through this technique. Hence, surgical treatment of all visible disease is more accurately described as cytoreductive rather than ablative.

An ovarian endometriotic cyst is usually formed by an inversion of the ovarian cortex. The frontal surface of the ovary in the proximities to folium is the most common site for the invagi-nation process to occur. Adhesions are common from the ovary to the fossa ovarica or to the posterior leaf of the parametrium. Recognition of deep ovarian endometriosis is necessary for correct surgical staging. Small endometromas were diagnosed in 48% of infertile women with mildly enlarged ovaries (3.5 to 5 cm in diameter) when the ovaries were punctured with a 16-gauge needle. The ovarian surfaces were without gross disease in 20% of cases. Preoperative sono graphic evaluation is a useful screening test for the presence of small endometrotic cysts; their identification may affect the disease categorization to which the patient is assigned. Sonographic patterns may indicate purely cystic features, cystic features with few septations or minimal debris, complex combinations of cystic and solid elements, and largely solid features. Most recently, fat-saturated MRI has been shown to be an acceptable tool for detecting endometromas larger than 4 mm in diameter. Deep ovarian endometriosis is frequently associated with the presence of intestinal or more extensive pelvic disease.

Vercellini and colleagues studied the visual diagnostic parameters of ovarian endometromas at laparotomy in 245 women with ovarian cysts. The gross characteristics that established the diagnosis included a size smaller than 12 cm in diameter; adhesions to the pelvic sidewall, to the posterior broad ligament, or to both; the presence of endometrotic les-sions; superficial endometriosis with adjacent puckering on the surface of the ovary; and tarry, thick, chocolate-colored fluid content. These criteria yielded a specificity of 97%, a sensitivity of 95%, and an accuracy of 96%.

An adnexal mass in a patient with known pelvic endometriosis cannot be assumed to be an endometriotic cyst of the ovary. Ovarian malignancy must remain in the differential diagnosis; the size of the mass has been correlated with malignancy. In a study of 180 women, 1% of masses smaller than 5 cm, 11% of masses between 5 and 10 cm, and 72% of masses larger than 10 cm were malignant. Most of these malignant tu-mors were adenocarcinoma.

The rules that apply to the management of all women in whom an adnexal mass develops also apply to patients with endometriosis with an adnexal mass. Among women of reproductive age, unilateral adnexal masses that are cystic and unilocular with regular borders on ultrasound examination are likely to be benign, whereas masses with solid areas, septa, papillations, or irregular borders have a greater likelihood of being malignant. Endometromas vary in their appearance but usually have regular borders. As endometriosis enlarges, these internal echoes unless fresh hemorrhage is present. Sensitivity and specificity of transvaginal ultrasound have been reported by Eskenazi and colleagues to be 84% to 100% and 90% to 100%, respectively.

The depth of peritoneal infiltration by endometriosis cannot be evaluated by inspection alone. Deep endometriosis, which is almost exclusively localized to the posterior cul-de-sac and the urovesical ligaments, is better detected by palpation and becomes even more apparent during excision. Deep endometriosis has been recognized to become smaller with increasing depth, although in some women, the largest volume is hidden under an adhesion involving the bowel or is buried in the rectovaginal septum. Diagnosis is enhanced if clinical exam-iinations are performed during menstruation in women with chronic pelvic pain, severe dysmenorrhea, or deep dyspareunia. In most cases, a nodule is more palpable at this time.

Koninckx and Martin have described three types of infiltrat-ing endometriosis. Type I is characterized by a large pelvic area of typical or subtle lesions surrounded by white scarlike tissue. During excision, deep disease becomes obvious and grows progressively smaller with deeper sectioning of tissue (like a cone). Type II is formed by retraction of the bowel and is recognized clinically as a small classic lesion associated with retraction. In some women, no implant is visible, but retraction is associ-ated with the retraction. Excision usually reveals the presence of a nodule. Type III is nodular endometriosis of the recto-
CLASSIFICATIONS

Many endometriosis classification systems have been introduced to allow direct comparison of patient responses to medical and surgical treatments and to identify factors predictive of disease outcome. No system has yet been devised that is entirely satisfactory. AFS (renamed the American Society for Reproductive Medicine) organized a panel of experts in 1979 to develop a classification system that might serve as a basis for evaluating various therapies. The committee devised an innovative scheme based on the natural progression of the disease. Three anatomic areas—the peritoneum, ovary, and fallopian tube—were examined for the presence of endometriosis or adhesions, with allowances made for unilateral involvement. However, the system was not weighted for depth of infiltration of peritoneal implants. A point system instead assigned values to each area of disease involvement based on the presumption that implant area and adhesion characteristics were most often associated with disease prognosis. The stage of disease was determined by the cumulative score of the assigned points. This classification system was criticized for its arbitrary division of endometriosis into categories that did not necessarily reflect the true relative risk of disease sequelae, pain, and infertility.

The AFS classification was revised in 1985 to provide a more standard assessment of endometriosis for correlation of surgical treatment with distribution and severity of implants (Table 22.7). The point range of mild disease was expanded, and greater weight was given to deep endometriosis, dense adhesions, and cul-de-sac obliteration by adhesive disease. Although the revised staging system appropriately acknowledges the importance of adhesive disease and endometriomas, most women with extensive peritoneal disease in the absence of ovarian involvement, particularly deeply invasive implants, receive a very low score on laparoscopic inspection of the lesion.

This revised AFS classification has been widely used by investigators to categorize disease states. Nevertheless, direct comparison of treatment outcome is compromised by inconsistencies in the application of the staging criteria and by the great variations in medical and surgical therapeutic options being applied in the management of endometriosis. Evaluation of the extent of disease by laparoscopy may be limited by a lack of recognition of atypical implants, particularly if the patient is hypoestrogenic as a result of recent discontinuation of medical therapy for endometriosis. Furthermore, the divisions between stages of endometriosis remained arbitrary, the point score for ovarian involvement was weighted too heavily, and the classification scheme did not address disease involving the fallopian tubes, intestines, or urinary tract. Also, there were no parameters to indicate the present activity and state of evolution of the disease.

The Endometriosis Classification Subcommittee of the American Society for Reproductive Medicine (ASRM) released new recommendations in 1996 for the documentation of the extent and location of disease. One concern over the reproducibility of the scoring system was directed at the variability in assessing ovarian endometriosis and cul-de-sac obliteration. The subcommittee indicated that an endometriotic cyst should be confirmed by histology or by the presence of the following features: (i) cyst diameter less than 12 cm; (ii) adhesion to pelvic organs.

### Table 22.7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endometriosis</th>
<th>&lt;1 cm</th>
<th>1–3 cm</th>
<th>&gt;3 cm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Peritoneum</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superficial</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ovary</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right superficial</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right deep</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left superficial</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left deep</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Posterior</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cul-de-Sac</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partial</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adhesions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;1/3 Enclosure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/3–2/3 Enclosure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;2/3 Enclosure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ovary</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right filmy</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right dense</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left filmy</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left dense</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tube</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right filmy</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right dense</td>
<td>4*</td>
<td>8*</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left filmy</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left dense</td>
<td>4*</td>
<td>8*</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\*Determination of the stage of endometrial involvement is based on a weighted point system. The following categories have been established: stage I (minimal disease) 1–5 points; stage II (mild disease) 6–15 points; stage III (moderate disease) 16–40 points; stage IV (severe disease) >40 points.

If the fimbriated end of the fallopian tub is completely enclosed, change the point assignment to 16.
and sequelae. The potential benefits of cytoreductive therapeutic treatment of minimal or mild endometriosis in the patients bearing lesions that may be inhibiting ovulation or tubal function. Nevertheless, patients who have pelvic pain or dysmenorrhea in association with typical endometriotic lesions as compared with normal endometrium. Limited knowledge of the specific pathophysiologic alterations by which endometriosis can cause these symptoms has so far prevented any precise categorization of disease based on response to conventional therapies for these symptoms.

**THERAPIES**

Although women with endometriosis can present with a range of symptoms, therapy is usually initiated for the correction of pain, infertility, or a persistent pelvic mass. Pain and infertility may be present concurrently, whereas, many women with endometriosis-associated infertility have relatively little or no discomfort. Treatment options vary depending on the clinical history and findings at the time of surgery.

**Expectant Management**

Treatment of mild and moderate endometriosis with hormonal preparations may not offer any advantage over expectant management in promoting conception. In studies by Seeholz and colleagues, Hull and associates, and Telimaa, patients assigned to expectant management conceived either earlier than the medically treated group, and the cumulative pregnancy rate was not higher for women receiving progesterone or danazol. This lack of enhancement of fecundity may be related to the lower number of estrogen, progesterone, and androgen receptors in endometriotic lesions as compared with normal endometrium. Nevertheless, patients who have pelvic pain or dysmenorrhea and minimal or mild disease do benefit from hormonal therapy. The age of the patient and the duration of her infertility are important factors to consider in determining the appropriate therapy for the symptomatic individual. Laparoscopic laser ablation of milder stages of endometriosis appears to lessen the interval to conception. Although the cumulative pregnancy rate may not be greater than that of women managed expectantly, surgical therapy for more advanced disease results in a higher pregnancy rate than does expectant management or hormonal treatment, partly because of correction of mechanical factors that may be inhibiting ovulation or tubal function. There is no direct evidence to support the contention that surgical treatment of minimal or mild endometriosis in the asymptomatic patient will inhibit progression and sequelae. The potential benefits of cytoreductive therapy must be weighed against the risk of adhesion formation through surgical devitalization of peritoneal surfaces.

**Medical Treatment**

Mild pain symptoms associated with endometriosis may be effectively treated with nonsteroidal antiinflammatory oral contraceptives (Fig. 22.3). Additional endocrinologic therapies include progestogens, GnRH agonists, and danazol. These agents have similar degrees of efficacy in the relief of pain symptoms; side effects vary depending on their mechanism of action. At restoration of ovulation and of physiological levels of estrogen, both estrogenic and progestational endometrium resume metabolic activity. Therefore, medical therapy is symptomatic rather than curative, and most patients experience pain relapse at suspension of treatment.

**Progestogens**

By inhibiting the pituitary release of LH, progestogens suppress ovarian steroidogenesis and promote endometrial glandular atrophy, apoptosis, and extensive decidual transformation of the stroma.

Progestogens oppose the growth-promoting effects of estrogen on the endometrial tissue by altering the clearance of the nuclear estrogen receptor and inducing 17β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase, which converts estradiol to the weaker estrone. Moreover, by eliminating cyclic bleeding and suppressing uterine contractility, progestogens prevent reflex menstruation, a potential stimulus for continued endometriosis development. Progestogens may prevent implantation and growth of regurgitated endometrium by inhibiting the expression of matrix metalloproteinases and plasminogen activators. Moreover, progestogens have antiinflammatory properties.

Luciano and colleagues administered medroxyprogesterone acetate, 30 mg daily for 4 months, to symptomatic women with moderate to severe endometriosis. Improvement of pain, pelvic nodularity, and tenderness on examination occurred in 80% of patients. Twenty percent of women experienced breaks through bleeding, and an additional 10% reported persistent cyclic bleeding. Minor weight gain, edema, and increased irritability were other described side effects, which were generally well tolerated. A lower daily dose of 30 mg may provide equivalent relief of symptoms. Berggren and Theorell administered this dose to patients for 6 months and found a similar improvement in quality-of-life scores as that achieved with the GnRH agonist nafarelin. Compared with the cost of GnRH agonists and danazol, which are the other commonly prescribed agents, the low cost of the medroxyprogesterone acetate is a notable advantage.

Norethindrone acetate has been shown to be effective in achieving amenorrhea and controlling disease symptoms. When used to treat moderate or severe pelvic pain after unsuccessful conservative surgery for symptomatic rectovaginal endometriosis, a dose of 3.5 mg per day for 12 months resulted in a 73% satisfaction rate (33/45). Vercellini and colleagues (2005) reported a substantial reduction in dysmenorrhea, deep dyspareunia, nonmenstrual pelvic pain, and dyschezia scores. Low-dose norethindrone acetate could be considered an effective, tolerable, and inexpensive first-choice medical alternative to repeat surgery in those with recurrent pain.

A similar response rate can be obtained with megestrol acetate. Doses of 40 mg per day for up to 24 months resulted in significant relief of dysmenorrhea, noncyclic pelvic pain, and dyspareunia in 86% of subjects. Parenteral depot medroxyprogesterone acetate has also been used to produce long periods of amenorrhea and elicit...
direct progestational changes of the endometrial tissue. A regimen of 150 mg intramuscularly every 3 months for 1 year has been used to manage endometriosis patients with moderate to severe pelvic pain. Twenty-nine of 40 subjects (72.5%) were satisfied with their pain relief after 1 year of therapy. An alternative regimen is 104 mg subcutaneously every 3 months. Frequent breakthrough bleeding can be troublesome to correct. The rate of recurrence of symptomatic endometriosis after progestogen therapy appears to be related to the length of follow-up. Riva and colleagues reported an 18% rate after an average of 11 months, whereas Bloshassi and Boyce described a 42% recurrence rate during a 2-year interval after discontinuation of medication.

Cyclic administration of low-dose oral contraceptive pills may result in relief of pelvic pain, particularly cramping associated with menstruation. This line of therapy should be considered for the woman with mild symptoms who is not attempting to conceive. Long-term continuous oral contraceptive use has been proposed for women with symptomatic endometriosis and menstruation-related pain who have failed a cyclic pill regimen. With such a regimen, the endometrium remains thin on sonogram studies, and endometriotic plaques subjected to a progestin-dominant pill are less active, usually less painful, and will undergo apoptosis. Low-dose (20 to 35 mg ethinyl estradiol) combination oral contraceptives may be given daily for 6 to 9 months without break to relieve pain or more severe dysmenorrhea. The dose may be increased to two or more tablets per day for several days to alleviate episodes of breakthrough bleeding. Eighty percent (40/50) were satisfied or very satisfied with continuous use of an oral contraceptive containing ethinyl estradiol (0.02 mg) and desogestrel (0.15 mg) for 2 years, and 96% experienced pain relief, although spotting and breakthrough bleeding were frequent side effects (Vercellini et al., 2003).
The levonorgestrel intrauterine device (IUD) has proven effective in relieving pelvic pain symptoms caused by peritoneal and rectovaginal endometriosis and in reducing the risk of recurrence of dysmenorrhea after conservative surgery. In a study by Lockhart and colleagues, an improvement in symptoms was observed in 96% throughout the 36 months of use, with only 11% experiencing pain symptoms at 18 months. The progestogen released by the IUD creates a hypoestrogenic, antiestrogenic, and antiprogestational action on endometrial implants and creates a hypoestrogenic state and increases bone mineral density over baseline. The clinical trials described a concomitant increase in low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol; the alteration in the ratio of HDL to LDL cholest erol may be an unacceptable risk to some patients. Because danazol is metabolized by the liver, modest elevations in serum glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase and serum glutamate pyruvate transaminase may arise. Reported idiosyncratic drug reactions include gastrointestinal disturbances, weakness, dizziness, skin rash, headaches, and muscle cramps. Both positive and negative effects occur in as many as 85% of patients, and at least 10% of women receiving danazol discontinue pharmacologic treatment because the adverse effects are intolerable. Combining danazol therapy with aerobic exercise appears to reduce the incidence of many of these adverse effects. Preliminary data from trials using danazol vaginal rings suggest that this route of administration may result in symptomatic improvement of pain while avoiding the androgenic side effects of the oral administration.

Because of the potential androgenic action of this hormone on the developing fetus, the patient must not be pregnant when initiating therapy. Barrier contraception has been recommended for the entire course of treatment to eliminate the possibility of conception, although high doses of danazol usually cause anovulation.

The amenorrhea induced by danazol has been found to benefit patients with dysmenorrhea, dyspareunia, and cyclic pelvic pain associated with endometriosis. Young and Blackmore reviewed the effects of different dosages of danazol with respect to relief of symptoms in 452 patients. At a dose of 800 mg, 95% of patients noted relief of dysmenorrhea, and 89% reported relief of pelvic pain. At a dose of 400 mg, posttherapeutic relief was reduced by 10%. Moore and associates reported that pain associated with minimal and moderate pelvic endometriosis appeared to respond well to doses of danazol of 400 mg or less per day, whereas severe endometriosis was best treated with doses greater than 400 mg per day. A 6-year prospective study that evaluated the effectiveness of danazol at two doses (400 mg and 800 mg) in carefully classified patients concluded that there was no difference in side effects between the two doses and that gross resolutions of disease at second-look laparoscopy were similar. However, ovarian endometriosis greater than 1 cm did not respond as well to either dose of danazol as did peritoneal or ovarian disease less than 1 cm.

Recurrent of symptoms within 4 to 12 months of discontinuation of danazol therapy approached 50% in most studies. Poles and Hammond found that pain recurred in 38% of patients after a mean of 8.9 months; active disease was found within 1 year in 51% of women. Lower daily doses of medication or courses of treatment less than 4 months in duration may result in a shorter symptom-free interval. Clinical trials designed to assess the efficacy of medical therapy for minimal, mild, and moderately severe stages of disease refute the notion that danazol may enhance conception. Furthermore, conception is delayed while the patient is receiving danazol.

Gonadotropin-Releasing Hormone Agonists

GnRH agonists are available for use in the treatment of estrogen-dependent diseases such as endometriosis. Some of the more frequently studied analogs include leuprolide, nafarelin, buserelin, and goserelin. Alteration of the amino acid at position 6 and ethylamine replacement of the C-terminal amino acid of the native decapptide hormone results in a GnRH agonist with increased resistance to lysosomal degradation. Pituitary receptor binding is enhanced, resulting in a decline in the number of receptors available for further occupancy. Continued administration of the GnRH agonist leads to a desensitization of the pituitary gonadotropin receptor and a reversible downregulation of the pituitary-ovarian axis. Ovarian estrogen secretion may reach castrate levels.

The initial response to GnRH agonist administration is a markedly increased secretion of pituitary stores of follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and LH. If therapy is begun in the follicular phase of the menstrual cycle, the developing follicle may respond to the flare in circulating gonadotropin levels with a rapid increase in estradiol production. Estradiol levels may...
therapy are related to hypoestrogenism. Hot flashes are com-
derived from trials that do categorize response based on stage
liminary pregnancy rates, which range from 0% to 60%, are
fertility is difficult to assess because of a lack of an expectant
3 months after a treatment-free interval of 6 months or more.
ضردة in mean pain scores and essentially no change in compact bone
density in most patients when nafarelin was readministered for
in the rat model. A maximal effect was measured after 4 weeks
excretion and radiologic evidence of loss of bone mineral
density. CEDars and co-workers reported a diminution in the
side effects mentioned earlier when medroxyprogesterone ac-
etate was administered at a dose of 20 to 30 mg per day
during the 6-month course of agonist therapy; however, la-
paroscopic evaluation after completion of therapy failed to re-
veal any improvement or suppression of active endometrio-
sis with the combination regimen, and the regimen failed to
significantly reduce symptoms of the disease. Dyspareunia
Response to therapy may be dependent on route of adminis-
tration. Donnez and colleagues reported that buserelin admin-
istration by a long-acting subcutaneous implant led to a greater
reduction in endometriosis score, mitotic index, and endome-
trial stromal cell infiltration compared to an intranasal form. This
may have been due to a greater consistency in hormonal release
by the injected preparation.

As occurs with danazol and progestogen regimens, symp-
toms recur at variable periods after discontinuation of GnRH
analog therapy. Subjective return of pain occurred in 57% of
patients within 6 months of discontinuing leuprolide, although
37% with moderate or severe pelvic pain at baseline were still
improved at 1 year. Fransson and colleagues noted a lasting
and significant amelioration of dysmenorrhea and dyspareu-
nya 6 months after completion of treatment; however, scores
for chronic pelvic pain had nearly reached their pretreatment
level once this time had elapsed. Patients with a higher disease
stage at the onset are more likely to experience recurrence and
to experience it earlier than patients with minimal disease. One
treatment option for such patients may be a second 3-month
course of GnRH analog. Hentil reported a significant decrease
in mean pain scores and essentially no change in compact bone
density in most patients when nafarelin was readministered for
3 months after a treatment-free interval of 6 months or more.

The effect of GnRH analog on endometriosis-associated in-
Fertility is difficult to assess because of a lack of an expectant
management control group in most clinical studies. The pre-
liminary pregnancy rates, which range from 0% to 60%, are
defined from trials that do categorize response based on stage
of disease.

Most of the side effects associated with GnRH analog therapy
are related to hypoestrogenism. Hot flashes are com-
mon and can lead to sleep disturbances and chronic fatigue
in extreme cases. Vaginal dryness, superficial dyspareunia,
headaches, and depression have been reported. In general, these
adverse effects are better tolerated than those experienced with
danazol use. In addition, there are no undesirable changes in
HDL, LDL, or total cholesterol throughout the prolonged pe-
riod of hypoestrogenism induced by GnRH analog, unlike the
change accompanying GnRH agonist therapy. A decline in trabecular bone mineral content and an increase in
urinary calcium excretion to menopausal levels occur dur-
ing the course of GnRH analog therapy in about two thirds of
patients. Quantitated computed tomographic studies con-
sistently show significant loss of trabecular bone of the ver-
tebrae and hip with GnRH analog exposure. Restoration of
normal estrogen production after cessation of therapy appears
to at least partially reverse these bone changes. In a study of
the GnRH agonist goserelin, an 8.2% decline in density of the
lumbar spine was measured after completion of 6 months of
treatment; this improved to a mean loss of 3.4% at 6 months
postcessation. Others found no significant change from base-
line after a 6-month course of GnRH analog when bone density
was assessed 6 months after treatment.

Concomitant administration of a progestogen during the
course of GnRH analog therapy has been examined to ame-
liorate vasomotor symptoms and retard both urinary calcium
excretion and radiologic evidence of loss of bone mineral
density. CEDars and co-workers reported a diminution in the
side effects mentioned earlier when medroxyprogesterone ac-
etate was administered at a dose of 20 to 30 mg per day
during the 6-month course of agonist therapy; however, la-
paroscopic evaluation after completion of therapy failed to re-
veal any improvement or suppression of active endometrio-
sis with the combination regimen, and the regimen failed to
significantly reduce symptoms of the disease. Dyspareunia
Response to therapy may be dependent on route of adminis-
tration. Donnez and colleagues reported that buserelin admin-
istration by a long-acting subcutaneous implant led to a greater
reduction in endometriosis score, mitotic index, and endome-
trial stromal cell infiltration compared to an intranasal form. This
may have been due to a greater consistency in hormonal release
by the injected preparation.

As occurs with danazol and progestogen regimens, symp-
toms recur at variable periods after discontinuation of GnRH
analog therapy. Subjective return of pain occurred in 57% of
patients within 6 months of discontinuing leuprolide, although
37% with moderate or severe pelvic pain at baseline were still
improved at 1 year. Fransson and colleagues noted a lasting
and significant amelioration of dysmenorrhea and dyspareu-
nya 6 months after completion of treatment; however, scores
for chronic pelvic pain had nearly reached their pretreatment
level once this time had elapsed. Patients with a higher disease
stage at the onset are more likely to experience recurrence and
to experience it earlier than patients with minimal disease. One
treatment option for such patients may be a second 3-month
course of GnRH analog. Hentil reported a significant decrease
in mean pain scores and essentially no change in compact bone
density in most patients when nafarelin was readministered for
3 months after a treatment-free interval of 6 months or more.

The effect of GnRH analog on endometriosis-associated in-
Fertility is difficult to assess because of a lack of an expectant
management control group in most clinical studies. The pre-
liminary pregnancy rates, which range from 0% to 60%, are
defined from trials that do categorize response based on stage
of disease.

Most of the side effects associated with GnRH analog therapy
are related to hypoestrogenism. Hot flashes are com-
mon and can lead to sleep disturbances and chronic fatigue
in extreme cases. Vaginal dryness, superficial dyspareunia,
headaches, and depression have been reported. In general, these
adverse effects are better tolerated than those experienced with
danazol use. In addition, there are no undesirable changes in
HDL, LDL, or total cholesterol throughout the prolonged pe-
riod of hypoestrogenism induced by GnRH analog, unlike the
change accompanying GnRH agonist therapy. A decline in trabecular bone mineral content and an increase in
urinary calcium excretion to menopausal levels occur dur-
ing the course of GnRH analog therapy in about two thirds of
patients. Quantitated computed tomographic studies con-
sistently show significant loss of trabecular bone of the ver-
tebrae and hip with GnRH analog exposure. Restoration of
normal estrogen production after cessation of therapy appears
to at least partially reverse these bone changes. In a study of
the GnRH agonist goserelin, an 8.2% decline in density of the
lumbar spine was measured after completion of 6 months of
treatment; this improved to a mean loss of 3.4% at 6 months
postcessation. Others found no significant change from base-
line after a 6-month course of GnRH analog when bone density
was assessed 6 months after treatment.

Concomitant administration of a progestogen during the
course of GnRH analog therapy has been examined to ame-
liorate vasomotor symptoms and retard both urinary calcium
excretion and radiologic evidence of loss of bone mineral
density. CEDars and co-workers reported a diminution in the
side effects mentioned earlier when medroxyprogesterone ac-
etate was administered at a dose of 20 to 30 mg per day
during the 6-month course of agonist therapy; however, la-
paroscopic evaluation after completion of therapy failed to re-
veal any improvement or suppression of active endometrio-
sis with the combination regimen, and the regimen failed to
significantly reduce symptoms of the disease. Dyspareunia
Response to therapy may be dependent on route of adminis-
tration. Donnez and colleagues reported that buserelin admin-
istration by a long-acting subcutaneous implant led to a greater
reduction in endometriosis score, mitotic index, and endome-
trial stromal cell infiltration compared to an intranasal form. This
may have been due to a greater consistency in hormonal release
by the injected preparation.

As occurs with danazol and progestogen regimens, symp-
toms recur at variable periods after discontinuation of GnRH
analog therapy. Subjective return of pain occurred in 57% of
patients within 6 months of discontinuing leuprolide, although
37% with moderate or severe pelvic pain at baseline were still
improved at 1 year. Fransson and colleagues noted a lasting
and significant amelioration of dysmenorrhea and dyspareu-
nya 6 months after completion of treatment; however, scores
for chronic pelvic pain had nearly reached their pretreatment
level once this time had elapsed. Patients with a higher disease
stage at the onset are more likely to experience recurrence and
to experience it earlier than patients with minimal disease. One
treatment option for such patients may be a second 3-month
course of GnRH analog. Hentil reported a significant decrease
in mean pain scores and essentially no change in compact bone
density in most patients when nafarelin was readministered for
3 months after a treatment-free interval of 6 months or more.

The effect of GnRH analog on endometriosis-associated in-
Fertility is difficult to assess because of a lack of an expectant
management control group in most clinical studies. The pre-
liminary pregnancy rates, which range from 0% to 60%, are
defined from trials that do categorize response based on stage
of disease.

Most of the side effects associated with GnRH analog therapy
are related to hypoestrogenism. Hot flashes are com-
Conservative Surgery

Surgery is indicated for correction of pain, infertility, or other symptoms in patients with extensive pelvic endometriosis, or when hormonal manipulation fails to adequately diminish pain symptoms in women with lesser stages of disease. Surgery is successful in relieving pain in a very high percentage of cases and offers a better prognosis for pregnancy than does endocrine therapy in many cases of advanced disease.

The surgeon who has mastered the specialized techniques of operative laparoscopy can treat a wide range of pathologic findings at the time of diagnosis. Therapeutic planning depends on many factors, including the age of the patient, her desire for fertility or pain relief, the duration and intensity of her symptoms, the extent of disease, and previous treatments that have been undertaken. Preoperative rectoscopy-sigmoidoscopy and intravenous pyelography are recommended in patients with symptoms suggestive of deeply invasive endometriosis of the posterior cul-de-sac and rectovaginal septum. MRI may also be helpful in predicting the extension of disease (Table 22.5).

The decision of whether to perform surgical resection of endometriosis through the laparoscope or open abdomen is not entirely dependent on the stage of disease encountered. Laparoscopy can be considered for all cases unless there is difficulty in establishing the appropriate tissue planes of dissection or unless improved access is necessary for traumatic manipulation of the involved organs. Specific endoscopic procedures include ablation of endometriotic implants, adhesiolyysis, ovarian cystectomy, oophorectomy, and salpingectomy. Although the results and complications are similar, the cost savings with respect to decreased hospital expenses and loss of work time favor laparoscopy over laparotomy when other factors regarding risks and outcome are equal. Laparoscopy provides superior visualization of the posterior cul-de-sac and allows a high degree of magnification of peritoneal surfaces, which aids in the identification of subtle disease.

Conservative resection of disease by laparotomy is most valuable in cases of extensive, dense pelvic adhesions or endometriosis greater than 5 cm in diameter. In addition, deep involvement of the rectovaginal septum with fibrotic extension into the perirectal fossa, invasion of the bowel muscularis, and endometriotic infiltration in the region of the uterine vessels and ureter are generally best approached through the open abdomen for all but advanced endoscopic surgeons. The objective of the laparotomy procedure is complete excision of all endometriotic and associated adhesive disease to restore normal functional anatomy of the reproductive tract. The usual surgical approach is through a transverse suprapubic incision. The Maylard incision provides adequate exposure for presacral neurectomy and reconstructive surgery of ovarian endometriomas of almost any size.

Principles of Microsurgery

Microsurgical technique, or the philosophy of gentle manipulation of tissue in an attempt to avoid trauma, is the major tenet of pelvic reconstruction. The inflammation, trauma, coagulation, and foreign materials associated with conventional microsurgical technique lead to tissue ischemia and adhesion formation because of local failure of the intrinsic peritoneal fibrinolytic system. Adhesion formation can be reduced by the application of loupes magnification or use of the operating microscope, reconstruction with fine, nonreactive sutures, precise hemostasis, and frequent irrigation of tissues with warmed lactated Ringer solution. Nevertheless, there are no definitive data to suggest that use of the particularly costly ancillary laser and the operating microscope has appreciably improved the reproductive prognosis in the surgical management of endometriosis through laparotomy. The magnification provided by laparoscopy in a closed surgical field matches these microsurgical principles.

Several basic techniques are available for the endoscopic ablation of endometriosis, including excision, coagulation, and vaporization. Coagulation can be achieved by monopolar or bipolar cautery, thermocoagulation, or, in some circumstances, laser, depending on the wavelength of energy applied. The extent of tissue penetration in electrocautery is related to the power and type of current, the duration of application, and the size of the electrode. Less tissue damage is achieved with bipolar than with monopolar cautery. The carbon dioxide (CO₂) laser is more precise than the fiber lasers, although CO₂ laser energy is strongly absorbed by water molecules and is rendered ineffective in the presence of blood. Metaculosa technique that maintains serosal integrity may reduce the incidence of de novo adhesion formation.

Sites of Conservative Surgery

Peritoneum. Small lesions of superficial peritoneal endometriosis less than 5 mm in diameter are easily treated with laser or bipolar coagulation while under a constant stream of irrigation. Deep lesions or more extensive peritoneal disease must be excised with a tissue margin of at least 2 to 4 mm, because, as noted previously, microscopic lesions are commonly present in tissue adjacent to visible implants (Figs. 22.4, A). Ablation of deep disease by monopolar microdiathermy or CO₂ laser vaporization rather than excision of the disease may result in inadequate resection and a greater amount of ischemic damage to the tissue, heightening the propensity toward adhesion formation. Immobilizing adhesions can be merely divided during the preparatory phase of the procedure; precise excision is more easily accomplished after the involved organs are freed. Before dissection of the pelvic sidewall, the ureter must be identified and isolated; it is frequently displaced from its normal location by endometriotic adhesive disease. A Lucite, Teflon, or laparoscopic titanium probe can be used to isolate adhesions and protect adjacent structures during separation of the tissue planes. Suture placement can lead to foreign body reaction, tissue anoxia, and fibrosis and should therefore be avoided. Covering hemostatic, deperitonealized surfaces with an absorbable, oxidized, regenerated cellulose barrier (Interceed) significantly reduces the incidence, extent, and severity of postsurgical pelvic adhesions, even in patients with severe endometriosis. Alternatively, application of the Gore-Tex surgical membrane has been shown to result in a statistical reduction in adhesion score; this barrier can be removed at the time of a second-look laparoscopic procedure if its presence would impair tubovarian function.

Estimations of the depth of endometrial implants at the time of laparoscopic resection relate well with histologic measurements. Superficial implants can be destroyed by bipolar cauterization; however, 25% of patients have lesions greater than 5 mm in depth. Deep (<5 mm) and juxtadeep (<10 mm) lesions represent an active form of the disease and occur almost exclusively in patients who report pain. The superficial action of nonvaporizing modalities such as bipolar or thermal coagulation is
not sufficient for deep disease. The diagnosis of retroperitoneal endometriosis is suggested by preoperative digital rectovaginal palpation and laparoscopic blunt probe palpation. The depth of infiltration of deep lesions appears to correlate poorly with the visible surface area of involvement. The laparoscopic treatment of deep disease is often complicated by the proximity of implants to vital structures such as the ureter, bladder, and vessels (Table 22.8).

Laparoscopic forceps are used to elevate and isolate the tissue to be excised. Instruments should be placed with care, because surgical manipulation of tissue that will not be resected may result in de novo adhesion formation. The diseased peritoneum may also be separated from underlying tissue by the technique of hydrolaparoscopy, which forcefully injects physiologic irrigant retroperitoneally through a small defect created in the peritoneum (Fig. 22.5). This retroperitoneal placement of fluid acts to dissipate CO2 laser energy and, in so doing, promotes safer dissection or vaporization of the peritoneal surface.

Coagulation or vaporization of disease in the ovarian fossa or near the uterosacral ligament should be undertaken only after clear identification of the ureter. Uterine manipulation with a Valtchev retractor may be used while treating lesions of the posterior cul-de-sac.

It is difficult to evaluate the depth of tissue damage with electrocauterization; however, laser vaporization allows visualization of the three-dimensional boundaries of every lesion. The laser beam should be applied until the bubbling of retroperitoneal areolar tissue is noted. The zone of thermal necrosis is minimal with the CO2 laser, particularly when applied in the superpulse mode. In the region of the ureter, urinary bladder, colon, or large blood vessels, a single or repeat pulse mode of 0.05 to 0.1 second allows a depth of penetration of 100 to 200 μm. Irrigation of the pelvis washes off debris and carbon deposition and better exposes the base of the site of laser impact. A 2- to 4-mm clear margin is desired around each lesion treated. Excision of the involved peritoneum is superior to vaporization of implants when the extent of tissue penetration cannot be recognized.

Dissection of retroperitoneal disease can be facilitated by placing a bougie probe in the rectum and a sponge forceps in the vagina (Fig. 22.6). Traction in either direction opens the rectovaginal and perirectal spaces. Initial dissection of the
Endometriosis

Table 22.8
SUGGESTED SURGICAL PROCEDURE ACCORDING TO CLASSIFICATION OF DEEPLY INFILTRATING ENDOMETRIOSIS (DIE)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIE classification</th>
<th>Operative procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A: Anterior DIE</td>
<td>Laparoscopic partial cystectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1: Bladder</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P: Posterior DIE</td>
<td>Laparoscopic resection of USL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1: Uterosacral ligament</td>
<td>Laparoscopically assisted vaginal resection of DIE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2: Vagina</td>
<td>infiltrating the posterior fornix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3: Intestine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solely intestinal location</td>
<td>Intestinal resection by laparoscopy or by laparotomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without vaginal infiltration (V−)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With vaginal infiltration (V+)</td>
<td>Laparoscopically assisted vaginal intestinal resection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple intestinal location</td>
<td>or exeresis by laparotomy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

USL = uterosacral ligament.


Electrosurgery should be avoided when extensive dissection is performed because it may be associated with widespread thermal damage and difficulty in recognizing tissue planes. Superficial invasion of the muscularis of bowel or bladder can be treated with laser vaporization or endocoagulation because of the precision and lack of penetration of these energy sources. Anterior cul-de-sac treatment should be accompanied by continuous bladder drainage.

Tubal endometriosis may distort the normal anatomic relationship of the distal tube to the ovary and in severe cases may cause complete fimbrial obstruction. Short pulses of CO₂ laser may be used to vaporize lesions while minimizing thermal damage. Endoscopic adhesiolysis of the distal tube may be accomplished with fine scissors or careful application of...

laser. Unipolar electrocautery should not be used on this tissue.

Defects in the parietal peritoneal surface are frequently associated with endometriosis and are most commonly found in the posterior cul-de-sac region. These defects should be explored and ablated even if they appear grossly normal because of the frequency of microscopic disease.

Ovary. Superficial endometriosis of the ovary usually presents as small, dark, punctate lesions located on and immediately beneath the cortical surface. This disease can be readily treated with laser or bipolar forceps under constant irrigation. Occasionally, however, the small, visible lesion may be merely the tip of a large endometrical cyst. If there is any doubt, the implant should be excised and the ovary explored to determine the extent of disease. Care should be taken to minimize thermal injury to surrounding ovarian tissue. This is particularly important near the fimbria ovarica, because postoperative adhesion formation could compromise distal tubal function. Inability to elevate the ovary is usually a sign of adhesions and endometriotic implants of the interlateral surface of the ovary and the peritoneum of the ovarian fossa. Excising the fibrotic pelvic sidewall and/or uterosacral ligament lesions to which the ovary was attached will reduce disease recurrence.

Reconstruction by laparotomy. Extensive ovarian endometriosis is often associated with peri ovarian and peritubal adhesions. These adhesions may become apparent while manipulating the ovary to visualize the lateral surface adjacent to the broad ligament. Filmy adhesions are elevated with delicate tissue forceps and can be resected with fine-needle cautery, a scalpel, or the laser. Care must be taken to maintain the integrity of the ovarian capsule. After the appropriate adhesiolysis is accomplished, the posterior cul-de-sac is packed with moist, lint-free packs, and a silicon surgical platform can be placed to stabilize the adnexa. The ovary should be carefully examined for extent of disease involvement before creation of the initial incision. Peritoneal spillage of the contents of the endometrioma can be avoided by placement of a lint-free pack around the platform.

The cortical incision should be made in a way that will preserve the normal anatomic relations of the ovary with the uteroovarian ligament and fimbria ovarica (Fig. 22.8). This is best accomplished by making a shallow longitudinal incision over the endometrioma with the monopolar microneedle.
FIGURE 22.7. A: Deep laparoscopic dissection of the rectovaginal space, in combination with colpotomy, for the excision of a large endometriotic nodule of the rectovaginal septum. B: Initial laparoscopic dissection of nodule. C: Completion of dissection by way of colpotomy incision. D: Vaginal suture placement to reapproximate the rectovaginal septal defect.

Endometriosis

The ovary is reconstructed by placing one or two pursestring sutures of 4-0 or 5-0 polyglactin, polyglycolic acid, or polidioxanone to eliminate the dead space and maximize hemostasis. This may be followed by placement of a running subcortical 5-0 suture of the same delayed-absorbable material (Fig. 22.8), if necessary. In some circumstances, less tissue distortion can be achieved by placing a deep layer of interrupted mattress sutures followed by additional layers of running sutures (Fig. 22.8). Suture on or extruding through the surface should be strictly avoided because of its adhesiogenic properties.

After the ovary has been carefully approximated, the posterior surfaces of the uterus and broad ligament are inspected for hemostasis wherever the ovary was previously adhered. Micro bipolar cauterization may be necessary. Placement of an adhesion barrier is useful in separating raw peritoneal surfaces during the healing process.

Endoscopic therapy of ovarian endometriosis. Surgical treatment of endometriosis less than 4 to 5 cm in diameter can be accomplished with relative ease. However, endoscopic resection of larger lesions may be compromised by the presence of dense, cohesive adhesions and by difficulties removing the entire cyst wall because of the inability to find the plane of attachment of the fibrotic endometrioma to the ovarian cortex.

The endometrioma can be excised in an intact or ruptured state during the laparoscopic procedure. In either case, the technique is initiated by longitudinally incising the cortex overlying the cyst after achieving full mobilization of the ovary by adhesiolysis. The incision is generally made along the inferior pole on the opposite side to the hilus in such a manner as to preserve the apposition of healthy ovarian tissue to the fimbria. The cyst contents are immediately drained with the suction cannula, and the cavity is irrigated and inspected for papillary structures or other suspicious features. Often, the cyst ruptures during dissection of adhesions that bind the ovary to the pelvic sidewall. Under this circumstance, the plane of dissection between the cyst wall and the ovarian cortex can be established after identifying the site of rupture. The opening can be extended with the use of the needle electrode or laser.
FIGURE 22.8. Excision of ovarian endometrioma through laparotomy. A: The ovarian cortex is gently incised so that the endometrial cyst is not entered. The incision is made along the longitudinal axis of the ovary. B: The endometrioma is then peeled out with the blunt knife handle. C and D: The ovarian defect is closed with two layers of pursestring sutures of 4-0 or 5-0 absorbable, nonreactive material. E: In the case of a deep defect, a more superficial running suture may be necessary before the cortical edges are approximated with 3-0 nonreactive, delayed-absorbable sutures.

With larger endometriomas, the normal ovarian cortex is stabilized with atraumatic forceps, and the cyst wall is grasped with biopsy forceps and stripped from the bed of normal ovarian tissue (Fig. 22.9). The dissection may be facilitated by removing a small circular rim of tissue around the adhesion site to begin the stripping procedure in a clearer field, where the endometrioma wall is less adhered to healthy ovarian tissue (Muzii et al., 2005). Judicious use of the needle electrode or hydrodissection may facilitate separation of the tissue planes. Remaining fragments of the cyst wall should be vaporized with laser or fulgurated by electrocautery. Hemostasis can be achieved with bipolar cautery. An alternative technique involves sharp and blunt dissection to remove the cyst in an intact state. Hydrodissection is particularly useful with this approach. The cyst contents are carefully drained in a plastic laparoscopy pouch to facilitate clean removal from the peritoneal cavity. Very small endometriomas less than 1 to 2 cm in size may be effectively treated by electrocoagulation of the mucosal lining. Because carbon dioxide laser is absorbed by fluid, complete ablation of the cyst wall with this energy source may be compromised in an environment rich in blood and hemosiderin.

The ovarian defect is usually left to heal spontaneously. Ischemia associated with suture placement can provoke adhesion formation after laparoscopic ovarian reconstruction. Low-power continuous carbon dioxide laser or bipolar coagulation can be applied to the inside wall of the redundant ovarian capsule to cause an inversion of the incised cortex. Most authors have reported excellent results with this no-suture technique. Under the rare circumstances of persistent bleeding or poor apposition of ovarian tissue, the cortex may be reapproriuminated with sutures. If fine absorbable suture is used, the knot should be placed internally to minimize the possibility of it becoming a nidus for adhesion formation. The high incidence of adhesion formation after surgery for endometriosis, particularly at the site of the ovary or where dense adhesions were divided, underscores the importance of optimizing surgical techniques to potentially reduce adhesion formation. Extensive cauterization of ovarian tissue can lead to a rise in FSH levels postoperatively and should be avoided. Post-surgical ovarian failure after laparoscopic excision of bilateral endometriomas is a rare but possible complication. There were three cases of premature ovarian failure among 126 patients who underwent laparoscopic excision of bilateral endometriomas in a recent series by Busacca and colleagues.
FIGURE 22.9. Laparoscopic ovarian cystectomy after fenestration of the cyst. A: The cut edges of the ovarian cortex and cyst wall are held and teased apart. B: The cyst wall can be stripped off by twisting it around the grasping forceps. Hydrodissection may be helpful. C: Large defects can be closed with laparoscopic suturing. Most incisions are left to heal by second intention.

Endometriosis corresponding to a rate of 2.4%. This may be caused by irreversible trauma to ovarian vasculature by electrocoagulation, excessive removal of ovarian tissue, and an autoimmune reaction caused by a severe, local inflammatory process.

Fayez and Vogel prospectively evaluated four laparoscopic methods for the treatment of endometriomas. Patients were treated postoperatively with danazol and underwent a second-look laparoscopy 8 weeks after their initial surgery. Complete excision with scissors successfully eliminated recurrence of the cysts, but adnexal adhesions had developed postoperatively in all cases. Mere incision and drainage of the cyst contents, followed by stripping or CO₂ laser vaporization of the lining, resulted in adhesion formation in only 23% to 37% of cases, but endometrioma cysts recurred in 21% to 22%. Other authors have used the potassium-titanyl-phosphate (KTP) laser to photocoagulate or remove the cyst lining of large endometriomas and have reported a very low rate of recurrence at 6 months after the procedure.

In a prospective study by Beretta and colleagues, patients were randomly allocated at the time of laparoscopy to undergo either cystectomy or drainage of the endometrioma and bipolar coagulation of the inner lining. No preoperative or postoperative adjunctive medical therapies were administered. The excision technique resulted in a lower 24-month cumulative recurrence rate of dysmenorrhea, deep dyspareunia, and non-menstrual pelvic pain. The median interval between the operation and the recurrence of moderate to severe pelvic pain was longer in the cystectomy group (19 months) versus the drainage and coagulation group (9.5 months). In addition, the 24-month cumulative pregnancy rate was statistically significantly higher in the former group than in the latter group (66.7% versus 23.5%, respectively).

In a recent prospective, randomized clinical trial by Alborzi and associates, the rate of recurrence of pelvic pain and dysmenorrhea over a 2-year postoperative period was significantly less for those who underwent cystectomy (15.8%) as compared
with those undergoing fenestration and coagulation (56.7%). Moreover, the rate of reoperation was 5.8% in the former group and 22.5% in the latter group. The cumulative pregnancy rate was significantly higher in the cystectomy group (59.4%) than in fenestration/coagulation group (23.3%) at 1-year follow-up.

If there is evidence of functional destruction of the ovary or if the patient has chronic, incapacitating pelvic pain secondary to ovarian endometriosis and does not plan to become pregnant in the future, appropriate therapy may consist of oophorectomy. The infundibulopelvic and uteroovarian ligaments can be ligated with an endoloop ligature, bipolar coagulation, the harmonic scalpel, or surgical staples before excision of the structure. The ovary is retrieved by morcellation, mini-laparotomy, or posterior colpotomy. This type of surgery must be performed carefully when adnexal adhesions are present to avoid ovarian remnant syndrome.

Intestines. Intestinal involvement has been estimated to occur in 3% to 15% of women with endometriosis and in up to 50% of patients with severe disease. The most common areas of intestinal involvement are the rectum and rectosigmoid colon, followed by the sigmoid colon, cecum, terminal ileum, proximal colon, and appendix. The incidence of appendiceal endometriosis has been estimated at approximately 0.8% of all appendectomies; 3% to 5% of patients with endometriosis have appendiceal involvement.

Symptoms that should arouse suspicion of colonic involvement include constipation alternating with diarrhea, rectal pain, tenesmus, dyspareunia, and dysmenorrhea. Cyclic rectal bleeding is seen in as many as one third of women with rectosigmoid involvement, but the mucosa is rarely invaded. Small intestine disease accounts for up to 16% of gastrointestinal involvement and most often involves the terminal ileum. The most common symptom associated with disease in this location is midabdominal cramping pain. Ten percent of small bowel involvement presents with obstruction requiring surgery. The more common large bowel disease results in clinical obstruction in only 1% of cases.

The differential diagnosis of intestinal endometriosis includes primary carcinoma, metastatic carcinoma, diverticulitis, inflammatory bowel disease, irritable bowel syndrome, pelvic inflammatory disease, radiation colitis, and ischemic stricture. Endometrial adenocarcinomas have been reported in the colon and rectum but are exceedingly rare in comparison with the relatively large numbers of patients with colorectal endometriosis. Preoperative or intraoperative rigid sigmoidoscopy may be helpful in ruling out primary colorectal malignancy. An intact mucosa effectively rules out primary colorectal malignancy. The greatest chance of diagnosing colorectal endometriosis occurs when the examination is performed at the time of menopause. Although endometriosis rarely invades the intestinal mucosa, mucosal distortion is possible secondary to fibrosis of the submucosa.

Pelvic and rectal pain is the major symptom that leads to colorectal resection in patients with advanced endometriosis. Bowel resection should be undertaken in the symptomatic patient or when there is a suspicion of malignancy; however, the frequency of such indications is small. In a series authored by Prystowsky and colleagues of 1,573 consecutive patients, only 11 women (0.7%) required bowel resection. Resection is usually undertaken for lesions producing partial or complete obstruction because most of these lesions are fibrotic and unresponsive to hormonal manipulation. Recommended approaches for less extensive lesions include CO2 laser vaporization of superficial serosal disease of the rectum or large intestine, excision without entering the mucosa, and oophorectomy or hormonal suppression. A harmonic scalpel may be used laparoscopically to shave an endometriotic nodule in the perirectal fascia. Although oophorectomy can cause regression of the endometrial nodule, large implants of the bowel can scar and ultimately lead to obstruction. The use of electrocautery or fiber lasers should be avoided because of their greater risk of causing transmural thermal damage.

A full mechanical and antibiotic bowel preparation is carried out preoperatively. In cases of large lesions that encroach on the mucosa, full-thickness excision of involved bowel can be undertaken either by disk excision of small, isolated lesions or by segmental resection for larger lesions. The anastomosis can be hand sewn with a continuous single layer of absorbable monofilament suture or created with surgical staples; however, patients with cul-de-sac disease must be in the lithotomy position to allow transanal placement of the stapler. These procedures have been performed by or with the assistance of general surgeons.

Appendectomy should be considered when there is physical evidence of peritonitis, when implants are large and active, when associated adhesive disease to adjacent bowel may result in partial or complete angulation and obstruction, or when the benign nature of the lesion is in doubt. Spontaneous perforation of the appendix that is due to endometriotic involvement is very rare. The technique of incidental endoscopic appendectomy is similar to that performed through laparotomy, although the stump need not be buried in the cecum. The tip of the appendix is grasped and elevated. The appendicular vessels are bipolar cauterized or occluded with surgical clips near the base of the appendix before being excised. Two loop ligatures are placed immediately next to each other at the base, and a third endoloop is then secured approximately 5 mm distal to the first two. The appendix can be transected between the second and third ligature and placed in a surgical pouch for safe retrieval from the abdominal cavity. Judicious application of bipolar cautery at the stump sterilizes the raw surface of the pedicle without causing damage to the adjacent cecum.

Coronado and colleagues reported a complete relief of pelvic symptoms in 49% and an improvement in 39% of patients who underwent full-thickness resection of the colon. Thirty-nine patients in the series achieved a term pregnancy. In a later series by the same colorectal surgeons of 130 patients who underwent aggressive, conservative surgical management for advanced disease, the operative procedures performed included low anterior resection with anastomosis to the extraperitoneal rectum (n = 109), sigmoid resection (n = 10), disk excision of the rectum (n = 7), discectomy resection (n = 2), and small bowel resection (n = 2). Twenty-four of 49 patients (49%) who attempted to conceive delivered a viable child.

Urinary Tract. Endometriosis involving the urinary tract is relatively rare. The spectrum of disease severity varies from incidental findings at laparoscopy, laparotomy, or cystoscopy to more significantly associated hematuria, flank pain, hydronephrosis, and ureteral obstruction. Bladder and ureteral involvement represent 83% and 15% of cases, respectively. Cystoscopy and intravenous urographic studies are helpful in documenting the extent of disease. Vesical endometriosis can be treated by hormonal suppressive therapy or partial cystectomy. These nodular lesions develop within the muscularis and...
are typically seen with partial or complete obliteration of the anterior cul-de-sac. Conservative surgical treatment of bladder endometriosis is effective in ensuring long-term relief in most cases of endometriosis affecting the vesical dome, whereas success, and discorrientions involving the nodule may lie too deep for detection of any color change through the skin. If the nodule is superficial, cyclic bleeding or ulceration may be apparent.

In most instances, incisional endometriomas have followed surgical procedures that violated the uterine cavity and allowed the endometrium to be transplanted. Wespi and Krähenbühl suggested that the frequency might approach 5% among patients having cesarean section or hysterectomy. Metroploysy and myomectomy also increase the risk of incisional endometriosis. Indeed, endometriosis has been reported along the needle tracts after amniocentesis or saline injection for abortion. Careful flushing and irrigation of the abdomen and of the incision during closure should minimize the chance of contamination when incision into the uterine cavity is required. Episiotomy scars and cervical and vaginal lacerations also serve as implantation sites after delivery. The chance is significantly increased when postpartum curettage is performed. Pauil and Tedeschi reported 15 instances in 2,208 deliveries when curettage was carried out and no instances in 33,800 deliveries without curettage.

Management, usually best accomplished by local excision, is both diagnostic and curative. Various hormonal regimens may be appropriate if it is imperative to avoid surgery. However, malignancy can occur in each area of ectopic endometriosis, and histologic confirmation of the tentative diagnosis is recommended.

Thorax. Thoracic endometriosis is an uncommon disease with varying clinical presentations. The diagnosis is almost always established on clinical grounds. In a report of 65 cases of thoracic endometriosis (Foster et al.), pleural and lung parenchymal disease presented with different clinical features. Ninety-three percent of women with pleural disease developed pain with right-sided pneumothorax or pleural effusion. Because numerous right diaphragmatic defects were noted in patients with pleural involvement, pleural implants are believed to be secondary to tubal regurgitation and transport of endometrial tissue through the diaphragmatic defects. Other symptoms may include upper quadrant abdominal pain or referred pain to the shoulder. Disease involving the lung parenchyma produces hemothorax rather than the pleuritic symptoms. Previous pelvic surgery was more common among women who had parenchymal endometriosis; however, pelvic endometriosis was found more often in those with pleural disease.

Catamenial pneumothorax or hemothorax should alert the physician to the possibility of thoracic endometriosis. The chest roentgenogram is usually of little value in diagnosing this disease; however, cytology, aspiration biopsy, and pneumoscopy may be useful. Massive effusion and bleeding can occur, but this presentation is more commonly associated with a malignancy. GnRH agonist or surgical treatment may be effective in the symptomatic patient. Surgical pleural abrasion may be superior to hormonal treatment in the long-term management of pneumothorax.

Adjuvante Procedures of Conservative Surgery

Uterine Suspension. Uterine suspension techniques have been devised to reduce adhesion formation at denuded peritoneal surfaces of the posterior cul-de-sac, uterine serosa, and broad ligament. Elevation of the adnexa may prevent adhesion formation of the ovary or fallopian tube at a site where existing adhesions have been excised. This procedure may be particularly useful in the case of a posterior or retroflexed uterus. It is indicated in selected cases of dyspareunia after resection of posterior cul-de-sac endometriosis. There is no evidence to suggest that uterine suspension is detrimental to subsequent pregnancies, although it is of unproven efficacy in enhancing fertility or as an adjunct in the treatment of endometriosis-associated pelvic pain. The modified Gilliam procedure offers certain advantages over other uterine suspensions because of its maintenance of normal anatomic relations. Shortening the round ligament through the internal inguinal ring eliminates the opening that is made lateral to the point of the ligament’s attachment to the abdominal wall in the Olshausen suspension procedure. When a modified Gilliam suspension is performed via laparotomy, the uterus is elevated, and a 2-0 absorbable suture is placed around each round ligament about 3 to 4 cm from its insertion into the uterus (Fig. 22.10). The edge of the rectus fascia is grasped by a Kelly clamp. The rectus fascia is separated from the underlying musculature with blunt dissection. A long Kelly clamp is inserted between the fascia and muscle to the level of the inguinal ring while displacing the peritoneum superiorly. The clamp is inserted through the ring and along the round ligament by gently opening and closing the instrument. The insertion is facilitated by placing traction on the suture to stabilize the peritoneum. The peritoneum overlying the ligament is then incised at a point adjacent to the suture, and the suture is grasped by the Kelly clamp. By withdrawing the clamp, the round ligament is brought through the internal ring and outside of the peritoneal cavity; it can then be sutured to the rectus sheath with 2-0 interrupted delayed-absorbable sutures. These sutures must be placed through the round ligament without
FIGURE 22.10. Modified Gilliam suspension. A: A chromic suture is placed around the round ligament about 3 to 4 cm from the uterine cornu. B: The rectus fascia is grasped with Kocher clamps and separated from the belly of the rectus muscle bluntly with the index finger or knife handle. C: The parietal peritoneum is grasped with Kelly forceps. A long Kelly forceps is introduced through the internal inguinal ring as it passes over the belly of the rectus. D: The Kelly clamp is brought through the internal inguinal ring and along the round ligament to a point adjacent to the chromic stay suture. A knife is used to open the peritoneum. The ends of the chromic suture are grasped by the Kelly clamp. E: As traction is applied to the suture, a knuckle of the round ligament passes through the internal ring. F: Three sutures of 2-0 delayed-absorbable or silk suture are placed, fixing the ligament to the rectus fascia in a manner that will not interrupt the blood supply.
Presacral Neurectomy. Presacral neurectomy, or division of the superior hypogastric plexus, is useful as an adjunctive procedure to eliminate the uterine component of dysmenorrhea that results from endometriosis. Sixty percent to 85% of patients with secondary dysmenorrhea experience complete relief of symptoms. There is no evidence that presacral neuroectomy enhances fertility.

A significantly greater relief of midline pelvic pain is achieved when endometriosis resection is combined with presacral neurectomy compared with conservative resection alone. In a study by Jaden and colleagues, all 17 patients undergoing presacral neurectomy noted a complete resolution of midline pelvic pain. The desired outcome is to be achieved when endometriosis resection is combined with presacral neurectomy via laparotomy in 50 women with chronic pelvic pain, endometriosis, and pelvic inflammatory disease increased total postoperative pain relief from 25% to 75%, although only a small number of patients were included in this laparotomy series. Lee and coworkers performed presacral neurectomy via laparotomy in 50 women with chronic pelvic pain. Dysmenorrhea resolved in 73% of these patients, and further improvement was achieved during 77%. Two 0 absorbable or silk sutures are placed around the proximal and distal aspects of a 5-cm segment of the plexus and are loosely tied. The tonsil clamp is introduced medially next to the promontory for about 5 cm to the third or fourth sacral vertebra and cranially to just below the bifurcation of the aorta. The margin of the posterior peritoneum can be drawn upward and outward by a stay suture or an Allis clamp. A Kimura sponge is then used to dissect the areolar tissue and associated nerve fibers off the posterior aspect of the peritoneal flap. The right ureter is readily visible and can be retracted laterally, and the areolar tissue is dissected from it without disturbing its blood supply. The common iliac artery, which lies just below the ureter, is freed superiorly from the adjacent tissue. A right-angle clamp or Babcock forceps can be introduced medially next to the promontory to elevate the sheath and allow blunt dissection underneath it. Care must be taken to avoid the middle sacral vessels that may be left intact on the surface of the promontory. Injury to the middle sacral vein can result in significant blood loss. Hemorrhage is controlled with cautery, suture ligations, hot packs, hypogastric vessel ligation, use of an absorbable gelatin sponge (Gelfoam) or microfibrilar collagen (Avitene), or packing with bone wax.

The areolar tissue is taken off the left flap of peritoneum until the superior hemorrhoidal vessels are exposed. These vessels should remain on the presacral nerve bundle to be left intact on the surface of the promontory. Injury to the mesentery of the sigmoid on the left. The presacral nerve is isolated by developing the avascular space between the presacral nerve and right internal iliac artery down to the periosteum. The preserving the uterosacral ligaments were resected in half of the subjects in this study, but this did not seem to affect the overall rate of pain relief. In a randomized clinical trial of women with chronic pelvic pain, endometriosis, and pelvic inflammatory disease increased total postoperative pain relief from 25% to 75%, although only a small number of patients were included in this laparotomy series. Lee and coworkers performed presacral neurectomy via laparotomy in 50 women with chronic pelvic pain. Dysmenorrhea resolved in 73% of the cases, dyspareunia in 75%. Two 0 absorbable or silk sutures are placed around the proximal and distal aspects of a 5-cm segment of the plexus and are loosely tied. The tonsil clamp is introduced medially next to the promontory for about 5 cm to the third or fourth sacral vertebra and cranially to just below the bifurcation of the aorta. The margin of the posterior peritoneum can be drawn upward and outward by a stay suture or an Allis clamp. A Kimura sponge is then used to dissect the areolar tissue and associated nerve fibers off the posterior aspect of the peritoneal flap. The right ureter is readily visible and can be retracted laterally, and the areolar tissue is dissected from it without disturbing its blood supply. The common iliac artery, which lies just below the ureter, is freed superiorly from the adjacent tissue. A right-angle clamp or Babcock forceps can be introduced medially next to the promontory to elevate the sheath and allow blunt dissection underneath it. Care must be taken to avoid the middle sacral vessels that may be left intact on the surface of the promontory. Injury to the middle sacral vein can result in significant blood loss. Hemorrhage is controlled with cautery, suture ligations, hot packs, hypogastric vessel ligation, use of an absorbable gelatin sponge (Gelfoam) or microfibrilar collagen (Avitene), or packing with bone wax. The areolar tissue is taken off the left flap of peritoneum until the superior hemorrhoidal vessels are exposed. These vessels should remain on the presacral nerve bundle to be left intact on the surface of the promontory. Injury to the mesentery of the sigmoid on the left. The presacral nerve is isolated by developing the avascular space between the presacral nerve and right internal iliac artery down to the periosteum. The preserving the uterosacral ligaments were resected in half of the subjects in this study, but this did not seem to affect the overall rate of pain relief. In a randomized clinical trial of women with chronic pelvic pain, endometriosis, and pelvic inflammatory disease increased total postoperative pain relief from 25% to 75%, although only a small number of patients were included in this laparotomy series. Lee and coworkers performed presacral neurectomy via laparotomy in 50 women with chronic pelvic pain. Dysmenorrhea resolved in 73% of the cases, dyspareunia in 75%. Two 0 absorbable or silk sutures are placed around the proximal and distal aspects of a 5-cm segment of the plexus and are loosely tied. The tonsil clamp is introduced medially next to the promontory for about 5 cm to the third or fourth sacral vertebra and cranially to just below the bifurcation of the aorta. The margin of the posterior peritoneum can be drawn upward and outward by a stay suture or an Allis clamp. A Kimura sponge is then used to dissect the areolar tissue and associated nerve fibers off the posterior aspect of the peritoneal flap. The right ureter is readily visible and can be retracted laterally, and the areolar tissue is dissected from it without disturbing its blood supply. The common iliac artery, which lies just below the ureter, is freed superiorly from the adjacent tissue. A right-angle clamp or Babcock forceps can be introduced medially next to the promontory to elevate the sheath and allow blunt dissection underneath it. Care must be taken to avoid the middle sacral vessels that may be left intact on the surface of the promontory. Injury to the middle sacral vein can result in significant blood loss. Hemorrhage is controlled with cautery, suture ligations, hot packs, hypogastric vessel ligation, use of an absorbable gelatin sponge (Gelfoam) or microfibrilar collagen (Avitene), or packing with bone wax.
FIGURE 22.11. Presacral neurectomy. A: Location of incision in relation to anatomic landmarks. A Maylard incision can also be used in some cases. The descending colon is displaced superiorly and to the left for good exposure of the left margin of the hypogastric plexus. B: A Kimner sponge is used to dissect the areolar tissue medially and off the posterior aspect of the peritoneal flap. The right ureter can be identified easily. C: The areolar nerve-bearing tissue is dissected from the peritoneum on the left side, exposing the left internal iliac vessels and superior hemorrhoidal vessels. D: The plexus is isolated and elevated off the sacral promontory. A segment of plexus about 5 cm in length is isolated with 2-0 silk sutures. E: The plexus is excised. Note relation between pedicles of the nerve bundle and adjacent structures.
moderate to severe endometriosis and pelvic pain undergoing conservative surgical therapy, Candiani and colleagues reported a recurrence of midline menstrual pain in 23% of women who underwent presacral neuroectomy versus a 42% recurrence in those who did not. This difference reached the limit of statistical significance \( p = 0.06 \).

In an uncontrolled laparoscopic study by Nezhat and associates, 50 women were subjected to vaporization of endometriosis and presacral neuroectomy, the symptoms of pelvic pain, dysmenorrhea, and dyspareunia were reduced by more than 50% in 74, 61, and 55 patients, respectively, over the 1-year follow-up period. The stage of endometriosis did not correlate with the degree of pain improvement achieved. More recently, in a prospective, randomized, double-blind, controlled trial, Zullo and colleagues reported that the performance of laparoscopic presacral neuroectomy improved the cure rate in women treated with conservative laparoscopic surgery for severe dysmenorrhea caused by endometriosis as compared with those who underwent mere ablation of endometriosis (85.7% vs. 57.1% at 12 months, \( p < 0.05 \)).

Two common side effects of the presacral neuroectomy procedure have been observed. Constipation may require laxatives or stool softeners for a period of 3 to 4 months. The vaginal dryness that develops in as many as 10% to 15% of patients is transient and usually resolves within 6 months. Difficulty with micturition is an infrequent complication that rarely lasts for more than 1 or 2 months. A painless first stage of labor has been reported in women who have undergone presacral neuroectomy.

**Uterine Nerve Ablation.** The technique of uterosacral neuroectomy was initially described by Ruggi in 1899. Later popularized by Doyle, it has since been adapted for performance during laparoscopy as a procedure for lysis of dysmenorrhea. Sympathetic fibers T10 to L1 are contained within the inferior hypogastric plexus and course along the inferior vena cava and sacrum to enter the uterus through the nerves of the uterosacral ligaments and accompanying uterine arteries. The parasympathetic components of the paracervical nerves originate from S1 through S3 or S4, travel within the nervi erigentes, and emerge in the lateral pelvis to form the Frankenhäuser ganglia lateral to the cervix. Division of the uterosacral ligaments at a point approximately 1.5 cm distal to the cervix should interrupt most sensory nerve fibers of the cervix and uterine corpus.

In general, uterine nerve ablation by laser is preferable to electrocautery because it is less likely to cause undesirable thermal damage. The course of the ureters and adjacent vasculature should be noted before commencement of dissection. The uterosacral ligaments are exposed by manipulating the uterine canal anteflex to the corpus and by applying pressure to the posterior cervix with an ancillary laparoscopic probe.

The initial incision is made on the medial aspect of the liga ment at its junction with the uterus. A second incision is made just lateral to the uterosacral ligament and medial to the ureter. The ligament is then grasped with forceps and stretched toward the sidewall. The CO₂ laser is used to vaporize a 2- to 5-cm area of each ligament to a depth of approximately 1 cm. This division should be centered approximately 1.5 cm distal to the cervix. The posterior aspect of the cervix between the insertions of the uterosacral ligaments may be superficially vaporized to interrupt the sensory fibers crossing to the contralateral side. Because extension of the beam too far lateral or posterior can result in considerable bleeding, the surgeon should have immediate access to bipolar cautery, endocooling, or hemostatic clips. Fiber lasers such as the KTP/532 offer the advantages of increased hemostasis and lack of carbon plume, compared with the CO₂ instrument. If bipolar diathermy is used to fulgurate the uterosacral ligament, laparoscopic scissors are used to excise the segment of ligament in question.

Early retrospective and often uncontrolled clinical trials suggested that the laparoscopic uterosacral neuroectomy technique might be efficacious. Feste reported significant improvement in the symptoms of primary dysmenorrhea associated with endometriosis in 71% of a series of 42 patients. In a similar series of 100 patients by Donnez and Nisolle, 50% experienced complete relief, 41% had mild to moderate relief, and 9% described no relief. Using the carbon dioxide laser, Davis observed a considerable improvement in dysmenorrhea in 135 of 146 women (92%) with endometriosis and an improvement in dyspareunia in 103 of 109 women (94%) with endometriosis who underwent uterine nerve ablation and vaporization of endometriosis. This therapeutic benefit did not seem to differ among revised ASRM classification stages of endometriosis.

Lichten and Bombard published a randomized, prospective, double-blind study of laparoscopic uterosacral nerve ablation for the treatment of severe or incapacitating dysmenorrhea unresponsive to oral contraceptives and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory agents. None of the control patients noted improvement, whereas 9 of 11 in the treated group had almost complete relief at 3 months, and 5 of 11 described complete relief from dysmenorrhea 1 year after surgery. Patients with endometriosis were not included in this small series.

Surgical resection of pelvic endometrial implants may be all that is necessary to alleviate discomfort in most endometriosis patients. In a double-blind, randomized controlled laparoscopic trial, Johnson and colleagues found that uterine nerve ablation was effective in reducing dysmenorrhea in the absence of endometriosis, but the addition of this procedure to the surgical treatment of endometriosis was not associated with a significant difference in any pain outcomes. Similarly, Vercellini and colleagues could not demonstrate the efficacy of this procedure.

Uterine nerve ablation by laparotomy fell from favor because it was revived as an endoscopic technique. The potential neurological, intestinal, orthopedic, and psychological components of pain should be considered before subjecting the patient to a procedure that, although now performed endoscopically, carries some surgical risk, and whose effectiveness has been questioned because of the small number of cases evaluated. Complications associated with transection of the uterosacral ligaments include ureteral damage, bowel damage, and postoperative hemorrhage, which, if undetected, may result in death. Uterine prolapse has recently been described as a potential long-term side effect of the procedure.

**Second-Look Laparoscopy**

Second-look laparoscopy has been suggested as an appropriate procedure for additional lysis of pelvic adhesions in patients who have undergone a laparotomy or a laparoscopy for the resection of endometriosis. If scheduled 8 days to 6 weeks after the initial dissection, second-look laparoscopy allows separation of de novo adhesions that are dynamic in nature from those that are stable.

In addition, laparoscopy after pelvic reconstructive surgery provides an opportunity to assess future prognosis for fertility.

Early second-look laparoscopy after endoscopic treatment of endometriomas has revealed a recurrence rate of de novo endometriomas of 15% to 20%. Equally significant are the nearly 20% incidence of de novo adhesion formation and the 40% to 82% recurrence rate of dense adhesions. Second-look laparoscopy
Surgical Outcomes

No classification scheme for endometriosis provides an accurate correlation between extent of disease and pregnancy rate. Nevertheless, point categorization through the revised ASRM classification does provide a framework in which to report outcomes of therapy.

Fertility

In a review of the surgical outcome expected through laparoscopic therapy for minimal and mild endometriosis, the crude pregnancy rate following cautery or laser ablation of implants was 54% to 58% (Cook and Rock). Life-table analysis showed similar conception rates following laparoscopy and laparotomy to excise minimal or mild stages of endometriosis. Hence the performance of a laparotomy is not warranted for lesser stages of disease.

Treatment of mild endometriosis via laparoscopic excision or electocauterization resulted in similar reproductive outcomes in a retrospective study by Tulandi and Al-Took. The total pregnancy rate was 53.3% in the excision group and 37.1% in the electrosurgical group. The mean interval between surgery and conception was 10.7 months in the electroygery group and 13.3 months in the excision group. Excision of tissue may result in more complete removal of infiltrating endometriomas, which should be of particular benefit to patients with deep nodules.

The stage of disease as categorized by the modified ASRM classification of endometriosis did not predict subsequent reproductive performance in a 2006 study by Vercellini and colleagues. Five hundred and thirty-seven infertile women with endometriosis undergoing first-line conservative laparoscopic surgery were followed for a mean of 32 months postoperatively. The cumulative probability of pregnancy at 3 years following laparoscopy was 47% (91% at stage I, 45% at stage II, 46% at stage III, and 44% at stage IV). Log-rank test, [chi]^2 = 1.50, P = 0.68.

Expectant management of mild to moderate endometriosis after diagnosis by laparoscopy yields a crude pregnancy rate of about 50%, which has brought into question whether surgical therapy of lesser stages of disease actually enhances fertility. In a retrospective study comparing the efficacy of electrosurgical treatment of endometriosis with the efficacy of expectant management in minimal and mild endometriosis-associated infertility, Tulandi and Mochohar reported that the cumulative probability of conception was significantly higher among patients treated surgically. Moreover, metaanalysis of the two randomized prospective trials showed that laparoscopic electrosurgery or laser to resect or ablate stage I-II endometriosis implants and adhesions resulted in a significantly higher fecundity rate as compared with the control group undergoing expectant management. The largest trial (Marcoux et al., 1997) clearly supported this outcome, with an increased chance of pregnancy (odds ratio OR 2.03, 95% confidence interval [CI] 1.28–3.24) and ongoing pregnancy rate after 20 weeks (OR 1.95, 95% CI 1.18–3.22) (Fig. 22.12), but the smaller trial (Parazzini, 1999) did not show benefit (pregnancy OR 0.76, 95% CI 0.31–1.88, live birth OR 0.83, 95% CI 0.32–2.28). When the ongoing pregnancy and live birth rates from these two studies were combined, there was a statistically significant increase with surgery (OR 1.64, 95% CI 1.05–2.57) (Jacobson et al.). The findings suggest that for every 12 patients having stage I or II endometriosis diagnosed at laparoscopy, there will be one additional successful pregnancy if ablation or excision of visible endometriosis is performed, compared with no treatment.

Operative treatment of moderate or severe disease does offer a greater likelihood of conception than does expectant management, in part because of correction of mechanical factors such as adhesions. The overall crude pregnancy rate reported by various studies of conservative laparotomy for endometriosis that stratified reproductive results by disease severity was 38%, with a monthly fecundity rate averaging 1.4% to 1.5% (Cook and Rock). Laparoscopic treatment of severe endometriosis offered a mean crude pregnancy rate of 47.6% in a small compilation of series. Hence, expert laser laparoscopy has reported results that appear to be as good as those obtained through the open abdomen, although there are inadequate data for direct comparison of outcomes of the two surgical modalities, and the correct identification and classification of disease may vary between laparotomy and laparoscopic groups. Life-table analysis demonstrated that pregnancy is most likely to occur during the first 36 months after surgery. Furthermore, the duration of infertility and, perhaps, patient age may have a greater impact on cumulative pregnancy rates than the actual stage (revised ASRM stages I through IV) of the disease.

Pain

In a prospective, randomized double-blind, controlled trial of laser laparoscopy in the treatment of pelvic pain associated with minimal to moderate endometriosis, Sutton and associates found that 82.5% of the laser-treated women reported symptom improvement at 6 months as compared with 22.6% of those treated expectantly. Symptom relief continued at 1 year in 90% of those who initially responded. Moreover, in a more recent randomized, blinded, crossover study, 80% percent of patients who underwent excisional surgery had symptomatic improvement as compared with 30% of the placebo group (Abbott et al., 2004).

The technique of surgically treating lesser stages of endometriosis may not significantly influence pain relief, as long as the surgeon is aware of the depth of extension of the lesions. In a recent randomized study by Wright and colleagues, both excision and ablation of mild endometriosis produced good symptomatic relief and reduction of pelvic tenderness (67%).
Long-term improvement in quality of life can be achieved with laparoscopic excision of endometriosis. In a prospective, observational cohort study of 176 women with chronic pelvic pain with surgically diagnosed endometriosis, pain scores were highly significantly reduced at 2 to 5 years following resection in the categories of dysmenorrhea, dyspareunia, nonmenstrual pain, and dyschezia. The chance of requiring further surgery was significantly reduced at 2 to 5 years. The primary laparoscopic stripping procedure was associated with a lower reoperation rate than that of fenestration. In a study of patients who underwent conservative laparoscopic excision of endometriosis by sharp dissection, Rock and colleagues have shown that 13.5% of patients initially treated with conservative surgery required subsequent operations. Wheeler and Malinak noted a cumulative recurrence rate of 13.5% and 40.3%, respectively. Nezhat and associates noted moderate to complete relief of pain in 162 of 175 women; however, some patients in this series had several surgical interventions. Preliminary analysis of the surgical results in 250 women in whom deep endometriosis had been excised with CO2 laser showed a cure rate of pelvic pain in 70% and a recurrence rate of less than 3% over a 3-year follow-up period. Verrelli and colleagues (2006) reported that conservative surgery for rectovaginal endometriosis in infertile women did increase the pain-free survival time, although it did not modify the reproductive prognosis over expectant management. The recurrence rate of clinically detectable endometriosis is higher when the depth of infiltration is greater than 5 mm at the time of initial surgery, no matter the site of the lesion. Persistence of dysmenorrhea and nonmenstrual pain after optimal endometriosis surgery may indicate adenomyosis. In a recent study by Parker and colleagues, chronic pelvic pain was significantly more likely to persist with uterine junctional zone thickness greater than 11 mm on preoperative MRI.

Recurrent Surgery

Rock and colleagues have shown that 13.5% of patients initially treated with conservative surgery required subsequent operative procedures. Wheeler and Malinak noted a cumulative recurrence rate at 3 and 5 years after conservative surgery of 13.5% and 40.3%, respectively. Neither the initial staging nor the ability to conceive after the initial surgery greatly affected the women’s outcomes. Redwine reported a cumulative recurrence rate of 19% at 5 years after conservative laparoscopic excision of endometriosis by sharp dissection. Laparoscopic excision of ovarian endometriomas by the stripping technique is associated with a lower reoperation rate than that of fenestration. In a study of patients who underwent laparoscopic cystectomy of ovarian endometriomas of greater than 3 cm in diameter, Busacca and colleagues reported a cumulative rate of alastronomographic recurrence of 11.7% over 48 months.

A second cytoreductive procedure may benefit some infertile women who have undergone surgery in the past if assisted reproductive technologies are not pursued. A cumulative pregnancy rate of 32.4% or 35.8 months was achieved by Fedele and colleagues (2006) after a second conservative laparoscopic stripping procedure for recurrent endometriomas. The recurrence of pain (17.4%) was similar to that experienced after the primary laparoscopic stripping procedure. However, if the initial surgery fails to restore fertility in patients with stage III or stage IV endometriosis, in vitro fertilization (IVF) may be more beneficial than reoperation for those who are otherwise asymptomatic. Pagidas and colleagues compared the outcomes of a second operation for stage III or IV endometriosis-related infertility versus proceeding directly to IVF. The cumulative pregnancy rate 9 months after surgery was 24.4%, compared with a pregnancy rate of 33.4% after one trial of IVF and a cumulative pregnancy rate of 69.6% after two trials of IVF.

Combination Medical and Surgical Treatment

Preoperative and postoperative medical therapies have been proposed as treatment for endometriosis. Endometriosis can be treated with medical or surgical therapies. However, some patients require a combination of both. Medical therapy includes gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) agonists, which reduce estrogen levels and thereby reduce the size of endometriosis implants, making them less recognizable after short-term drug therapy. In a controlled clinical trial by Muiii et al., a 3-month course of GnRH agonist treatment before laparoscopy for endometriosis excision failed to result in a reduction in operative time or recurrence rate of disease during a 1-year follow-up period. There are no substantive data to justify hormonal treatments before surgery to improve the success of surgery.

Initiation of postoperative medical therapy may inhibit the activity of any residual disease, suppress ovulation, and decrease the possibility of adverse effects of peritoneal spillage of disease at the time of resection. Postoperative medical therapy has a serious drawback, however; the patient is unable to attempt conception for several months. Andrews and Larsen have noted that the best chance for postsurgical conception occurs during the first 6 months after conservative surgery by laparotomy. Thus, suppressing ovulation during that critical period may be counterproductive. Treatment with a GnRH agonist after surgery does not improve fertility as compared with expectant management (Busacca et al.).

Contemporary management of women with endometriosis-associated pelvic pain involves both surgical and long-term medical therapy. When cytoreductive laparoscopy is followed by a 6-month course of GnRH analog, there is a significant delay in the return of endometriosis symptoms requiring further treatment. In a randomized, prospective study, Hornstein and colleagues found that this interval was more than 24 months in those receiving nafarelin versus 11.7 months in the placebo group. A shorter duration of hormonal therapy during the postoperative period may be inadequate in reducing recurrence risk. A 3-month course of nafarelin following surgical therapy of stage III and IV endometriosis was ineffective in reducing pain scores as compared with placebo. Postoperative administration of low-dose, cyclic oral contraceptives for 6 months delayed the recurrence of pain symptoms and endometriomas at 12 months, but no significant differences were detected at 24 months or 36 months following laparoscopic excision.

Hysterectomy

The number and rate of hysterectomies performed for endometriosis increased steadily from the 1960s to the 1980s, more so than for other diagnoses. The reported rate for 1982 to 1984 was more than double the rate for 1965 to 1967, although the exact reasons for the increase remain uncertain. Although statistically significant increases for hysterectomy rates were observed from 1994 through 1998, the increase was limited, and the curve remained nearly flat. Endometriosis was the primary indication for 28.8% of white women and 9.7% of black women undergoing hysterectomy in the United States.
are poor that it ever will occur. Techniques in assisted re-
surgical resection of endometriosis or within 1 year of repair
If spontaneous conception is not achieved within 3 years of
reduce this risk.
are at increased risk of recurrent pain and an 8.1 times greater risk of reoperation
tubal obstruction associated with endometriosis, the odds
surgical resection of endometriosis or pelvic inflammatory disease. Most hysterectomies for en-
do not necessarily lead to decreased pregnancy rates.
468 Surgery for Fertility
from 1994 to 1999. Because of concern over the risk of recur-
ence even after definitive surgical therapy, bilateral oophorec-
tomy was performed at the time of hysterectomy in 52% of
women 44 years of age or younger and in 81% of women 45
years of age or older.
Successful surgery offers prompt, complete, and long-term
relief of pain from endometriosis more often than do the var-
ious available medical regimens. Most hysterectomies for en-
dometriosis are performed by the abdominal route; in selected
cases, laparoscopy may allow lysis of complicating adhesions
or large implants, thus allowing safe vaginal hysterectomy. When the posterior cul-de-sac is obliterated and extensive fi-
brosis is present deep in the pelvis, subtotal hysterectomy may
be indicated.
The recurrence of cyclic pain associated with endometrio-
sis after hysterectomy with preservation of normal ovaries has
been estimated at 3% to 7%. Nevertheless, in a study of 138
women who underwent hysterectomy with the diagnosis of en-
dometriosis at the Johns Hopkins Hospital, ovarian conserva-
tion was associated with a 6.1 times greater risk of development
of recurrent pain and an 8.1 times greater risk of reoperation
as compared with oophorectomy at the time of hysterectomy.
Laparoscopic resection of invasive peritoneal and intestinal dis-
ease that persists after castration may result in an improvement
in pain symptoms. Hysterectomy does not improve symptoms
in 25% of cases of chronic pelvic pain when the uterus is be-
lieved to be the source of the pain.
Minute, hormonally active ovarian fragments may be de-
tected in women with symptomatic endometriosis, even af-
ter total abdominal hysterecomy and bilateral salpingo-
oophorectomy. This ovarian remnant syndrome is the result of
incomplete excision of cortical tissue at the time of eutopmic surgery for endometriosis or pelvic inflammatory disease. Most ovarian remnants are in an asymptomatic state, and they are
often densely adhered to pelvic sidewall structures, including
the ureter, hypogastric vessels, and bladder base. Complete sur-
gical removal may be difficult.
Estrogen replacement therapy after total hysterectomy and
bilateral oophorectomy is associated with less than a 15% rate
of recurrence of endometriosis. A cause-and-effect relation be-
tween estrogen replacement and malignancy in endometriosis
has not been established, suggesting that progestational agents
need not be prescribed together with estrogens after hysterec-
tomy for a diagnosis of endometriosis. However, administering
both progestin and estrogen may be theoretically beneficial if the disease was incompletely resected or deeply invasive, con-
tained atypical epithelial changes, or is recurrent. Women who
begin estrogen replacement therapy immediately after total
abdominal hysterecomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy are
at no greater risk of recurrent pain than those who delay
estrogen therapy for more than 6 weeks postoperatively.
Women with endometriosis was shown by Modugno and
colleagues to be at increased risk of developing ovarian can-
cer (OR 1.32; 95% CI 1.06-1.65). Hysterectomy and the use of
oral contraceptives for greater than 10 years substantially
reduce this risk.
ENDOMETRIOSIS AND ASSISTED REPRODUCTIVE TECHNOLOGIES
If spontaneous conception is not achieved within 3 years of
surgical resection of endometriosis or within 1 year of repair
of tubal obstruction associated with endometriosis, the odds
are poor that it will ever occur. Techniques in assisted repro-
duction have been widely used during the past two decades
for the management of endometriosis-associated infertility un-
responsive to cytoreductive surgical or hormonal therapy. IVF
removes gametes and zygotes from a potentially harmful en-
vironment and may bypass pelvic adhesions associated with
endometriosis. Endometriosis is the sole identifiable cause of
infertility in 25% to 35% of women undergoing IVF/embryo
transfer.
The impact of endometriosis on the outcome of IVF has
been controversial. Several studies have noted that the re-
sponses to gonadotropic stimulation, the numbers of proov-
tory oocytes, the fertilization and cleavage rates, and the clin-
cal pregnancy rates associated with stage I and stage II en-
dometriosis have been equivalent to rates associated with tubal
disease and unexplained infertility. Kuvaasari et al. reported
that there was a significantly lower pregnancy rate and embryo
implantation rate per fresh embryo transfer after pooled cycles
(1-4) among women with stage III/IV endometriosis (22.6%) com-
pared with stage III (40%) or tubal infertility (36.6%). How-
ever, when adjusted for confounding variables, Barnhart and
colleagues in 2002 found that there was a significantly
negative association between endometriosis of all stages and
IVF outcome. This metaanalysis pooled data from 22 nonran-
domized studies regarding IVF success rates in patients
with endometriosis versus control patients without endometriosis
and with tubal infertility. Most of these series included small
numbers of subjects. The authors concluded that there was a
34% reduction in pregnancy rate after IVF in patients with
endometriosis and that the success was even poorer when the
staging of endometriosis was higher. Subsequent studies have
disputed these findings.
Poor IVF outcome in severe endometriosis may be related
to oocyte or embryo factors rather than decreased uterine
receivability. Diaz and colleagues found that a history of severe
endometriosis in recipients of donor oocytes had no ef-
flect on embryo implantation rates or clinical pregnancy rates
as compared with recipients who did not have a history of
endometriosis.
In general, women with endometriosis have a lower ovar-
ian response to gonadotropin stimulation. One reason for this
response may be previous ovarian resection. Studies recruit-
ing women with a history of surgical excision of a symptomatic
endometrioma and comparing subsequent ovarian responsive-
ness to gonadotropin stimulation in the affected and contralat-
eral intact gonad indicate that excision of endometriomas is
associated with a quantitative damage to ovarian follicular re-
sertion. However, this lower oocyte yield following surgery has
not necessarily led to decreased pregnancy rates.
Recent retrospective studies have suggested that routine la-
parscopic cystectomy for endometriomas before commencing
an IVF cycle does not improve IVF outcomes. Aside from a
lower peak estradiol level on the day of hCG administration
and a higher total gonadotropin dose administered to women
previously operated on for an endometrioma, no significant dif-
fereuces were found between the resected endometrioma group
and the intact endometrioma group among the different vari-
bles analyzed (Garcia-Velasco et al.). Pre-IVF excision of ovar-
ian endometriomas in symptomatic women did not impair nor
enhance IVF or intracytoplasmic sperm injection success rates.
Another recent retrospective study indicated that women
with a history of past or current endometriomas had fewer
oocytes retrieved during IVF than tubal factor controls, but
the fertilization rate, embryo quality, or pregnancy outcome
was not affected (Suzuki et al.).
Tinkanen and Kujansuu studied the effects of operative
treatment of recurrent ovarian endometriosis on the pregnancy
randomized controlled trial suggested that the reproductive outcome in women with endometriosis undergoing IVF is improved in all stages of disease, and particularly in patients with moderate-severe endometriosis, after prolonged (e.g., 3-month) down-regulation with GnRH agonist before starting ovarian stimulation.

Gamete intrafallopian transfer (GIFT) may overcome impairment of sperm transport to the fallopian tube, failed ovum capture, or abnormalities in the peritoneal environment associated with endometriosis, although the presence of any anatomic disorders of the fallopian tubes has negative prognostic significance for a successful outcome for this procedure. Hulme and colleagues performed GIFT on 46 infertile patients with minimal to moderately active endometriosis not previously treated by medical or surgical methods. The only prerequisite was patency of at least one fallopian tube. The pregnancy rate per GIFT cycle was 30.5% (18/59), which compared with a clinical pregnancy rate of 25.8% for all patients undergoing the procedure at their unit. One or more endometriomas were aspirated from the ovaries at the time of follicle aspiration in 11 patients; 4 of the 11 achieved live births with GIFT. Nevertheless, Guzick and associates, in a case-control study, found that pelvic endometriosis significantly impaired the efficacy of GIFT. Of 114 laparoscopic oocyte retrievals performed in the endometriosis group, there were 37 pregnancies (32.5%) and 25 deliveries (23.7%); of the 214 retrievals in the control group, there were 101 pregnancies (47.2%) and 76 deliveries (35.3%).

Controlled ovarian hyperstimulation (COH) with human menopausal gonadotropins or pure FSH together with intrauterine insemination (IUI) has been proposed as a method to increase cycle fecundity of patients with endometriosis, although few series have been published to date (Table 22.9). By increasing the number of oocytes released at the time of ovulation and introducing a high concentration of spermatozoa into the female reproductive tract, the chance for conception is improved, merely because of the larger number of gametes available for fertilization. In addition, subtle abnormalities of folliculogenesis, corpus luteum function, tubal motility, or sperm function may be corrected with this therapy. Cycle fecundity rates associated with COH/IUI therapy in patients with endometriosis-associated infertility have ranged from 9% to 11%, although these series did not include a nonrandomized control group. One recent prospective randomized study found

| TABLE 22.9 |
| CYCLE FECUNDITY IN WOMEN WITH STAGE I OR II ENDOMETRIOSIS, ACCORDING TO TREATMENT |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unexplained infertility</th>
<th>Endometriosis-associated infertility</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No treatment or intracervical</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insemination</td>
<td>0.03*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUI</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clomiphene</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clomiphene/IUI</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gonadotropins</td>
<td>0.04*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gonadotropins/IUI</td>
<td>0.09*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVF</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*P < .05 for treatment vs. no treatment. \( \text{IUI} \), intratractive insemination; IVF, in vitro fertilization.

From the Practice Committee of the American Society for Reproductive Medicine. Fertil Steril 2004;82 (suppl):S40, with permission.
a higher pregnancy rate with COH/IUI following at least 6 weeks of GnRH against suppression in patients with advanced stages of endometriosis. Fedele and associates reported that superovulation with timed intercourse was not associated with a better cumulative, crude pregnancy rate than expectant management in infertile women with endometriosis stages I and II, although the cycle fecundity rate was improved. However, a more recent random-ized, controlled trial of COH and IUI for infertility associated with stage I and II endometriosis demonstrated a live birth rate of 11% per cycle in the treatment group and 2% in the control group. Others reported that ovarian stimulation or induction using gonadotropins results in higher fecundity rates than no treatment, but the clinical pregnancy rate after treat-ment was still significantly lower in the endometriosis group (6.3%) than in women with unexplained infertility (11%) (Nuoja-Huttunen et al.). There was no surgical treatment of endometriosis before therapy with COH and IUI in these latter studies. In a 2006 retrospective study by Webrouck and colleagues, the clinical pregnancy rate per cycle of COH and IUI in women with minimal and a mild endometriosis who underwent laparo-scopic excision of lesions within 7 months of onset of treatment was 21% or 18.9%, respectively, which was comparable to that achieved in patients with unexplained infertility, 20.5%. The mean age of the patients with endometriosis in this study was 31 years. The cumulative live birth rate of nearly 70% within four cycles suggest that COH and IUI may be appropriate first-line therapy in patients younger than 35 who have no other infertil-ity risk factors. The clinical history must be carefully weighed when planning a sequence of therapy for the infertile patient with endometriosis. Temporary exposure to very high estradiol levels in women during COH for IVF or intrauterine insemination is not a major risk factor for endometriosis recurrence in women treated with assisted reproductive technology.

**ADENOMYOSIS**

Adenomyosis is defined as heterotopic endometrial glands and stroma located deep within the myometrium. This disease can be categorized as diffuse or local in its distribution. Diffuse adenomyosis can be relatively localized but is never encap-sulated (Fig. 22.13). The uterus itself is usually mildly en-larged, rarely to more than twice-normal size, and is generally symmetric. Cut sections of the myometrium reveal a coarse trabecular pattern of interlacing musculature and fibrous tis-sue with small islands of endometrium that are often dark and hemorrhagic. Localized, encapsulated disease of the uterine wall is termed adenomyoma, to distinguish this manifes-tation of adenomyosis from the more usual diffuse pattern. An adenomyoma is always located mainly within the wall of the uterus but may project into the uterine cavity to become further known as a submucous adenomyom.a. This encap-sulated, submucous form of adenomyosis disease resembles the leiomyoma.

The most widely accepted theory of the origin of adenomyosis is that endometrial tissue within the myometrium is of mullerian origin. Its presence in this location is the result of a direct, downward extension of the endometrium of the uterine cavity. Serial sectioning of tissue has revealed a di-rect continuity between the basalis portion of the endometrium and the endometrial islands within the areas of adenomyosis.
Adenomyosis is often an incidental pathologic finding, and approximately 35% of cases are asymptomatic. Dysmenorrhea is more likely to be reported when glandular invasion exceeds 80% or more of the myometrium. Pain can be severe, cramping, or knife-like, and may occur up to 1 week before the onset of menstrual flow. The pattern of dysmenorrhea is likely associated with bleeding episodes within the deep-lying islands of endometrium. Menorrhagia can be a consequence of the increased surface area of the enlarged uterine cavity. In addition, extensive involvement of the myometrium can interfere with the normal contractility of the uterine musculature and can lead to excessive bleeding. Nevertheless, data collected from 1,851 hysterectomies for the prospective, multicenter Collaborative Review of Sterilization study indicate that adenomyosis occurs as often in asymptomatic uteri removed for prolapse (19%) as in uteri removed for excessive bleeding (22%) or pain symptoms (15%). Uterine adenomyosis is significantly associated with pelvic endometriosis, with a prevalence of up to 90%. By impairing uterine sperm transport, adenomyosis may be a leading factor of infertility in women with endometriosis.

### Symptoms

Adenomyosis should always be suspected in a woman with dysmenorrhea and menorrhagia of increasing severity in her fourth or fifth decade, particularly if the uterus is symmetrically enlarged, firm, and tender. An exact preoperative diagnosis is often difficult to establish because dysfunctional uterine bleeding and multiple small leiomyomas can present in a similar fashion. Gambone and colleagues reported that a presumptive diagnosis of adenomyosis was verified in only 38% of hysterectomy specimens. The diagnosis can be histologically established before hysterectomy only in the rare case in which excessive myometrium is removed during curettage or a polypoid submucous adenomyoma is excised. However, hysteroscopic myometrial biopsy of the posterior uterine wall with use of a 5-mm loop electrode has been shown to effectively establish the diagnosis in women with menorrhagia.

### Pelvic Findings

The uterus may be very firm to palpation and is usually enlarged to not more than twice its normal size. As it is classically described, the adenomyotic enlargement occurs in the anteroposterior dimension, a reflection of the more prominent involvement of the posterior uterine wall. In the more common diffuse type of adenomyosis, the uterus is a symmetrically enlarged, globular structure. Encapsulated adenomyomata may cause the uterus to be irregular or asymmetric, much as it is when leiomyomata are present. At times, particularly during menstruation, the enlarged uterus is tender on examination.

### Diagnosis

Adenomyosis should always be suspected in a woman with dysmenorrhea and menorrhagia of increasing severity her fourth or fifth decade, particularly if the uterus is symmetrically enlarged, firm, and tender. An exact preoperative diagnosis is often difficult to establish because dysfunctional uterine bleeding and multiple small leiomyomas can present in a similar fashion. Gambone and colleagues reported that a presumptive diagnosis of adenomyosis was verified in only 38% of hysterectomy specimens. The diagnosis can be histologically established before hysterectomy only in the rare case in which excessive myometrium is removed during curettage or a polypoid submucous adenomyoma is excised. However, hysteroscopic myometrial biopsy of the posterior uterine wall with use of a 5-mm loop electrode has been shown to effectively establish the diagnosis in women with menorrhagia.

Hysterosalpingography of the adenomyomatous uterus with water-based media can occasionally demonstrate multiple spiculations or tuft defects leading from the uterine cavity to the myometrial wall, however, similar findings can occur in cases of vascular or lymphatic extravasation. MRI has proved to be highly accurate for distinguishing adenomyosis from leiomyoma; on T2-weighted images, adenomyosis appears as an ill-defined, relatively homogeneous, low-signal-intensity area embedded with sparse, high-intensity spots. The optimal functional zone thickness value for establishing the diagnosis of adenomyosis is 12 mm or more. Several studies have shown that the sensitivity and specificity of MRI to diagnose adenomyosis ranges from 86% to 100% in a symptomatic patient population.

Recent studies have also suggested an important role for transvaginal ultrasound in distinguishing adenomyosis from leiomyomata. By using the diagnostic criterion of the presence of unencapsulated, heterogeneous, myometrial areas within round anechoic areas 1 to 3 mm in diameter, Fedele and colleagues noted a sensitivity of 80%, a specificity of 74%, a negative predictive value of 81%, and a positive predictive value of 73%. Nevertheless, when transvaginal sonography and MRI have been prospectively compared, the latter has been significantly more accurate in correctly establishing the diagnosis.

Hormone receptor studies have documented the presence of steroid receptors in adenomyotic foci. Estrogen receptors for
Surgery is indicated for correction of pain, infertility, and less tissue damage is achieved with bipolar than with monopolar cautery. Preoperative rectoscopy sigmoidoscopy and intravenous pyelography are recommended in patients with symptoms suggestive of deeply invasive endometriosis of the posterior cul-de-sac and rectovaginal septum. Preoperative ultrasound and MRI may help to categorize the extent of ovarian involvement and location of deeply infiltrating disease. A bowel prep before surgery may facilitate optimal performance and safety of the surgical procedure, particularly when deep disease is anticipated. Interventionsal radiological techniques have been described to selectively embolize the uterine vessels in women with adenomyosis. Although short-term results of uterine artery embolization to treat adenomyosis appeared encouraging, midterm results were disappointing, with only 55% of treated patients showing clinical improvement after 2 years (Pelage et al). Preliminary trials have suggested that magnetic resonance-guided focused ultrasound surgery may be used in the future to destroy focal adenomyosis.

Hysterectomy should be considered in the severely symptomatic patient when uterine adenomyosis, MRIs, or myometrial biopsy demonstrates deep adenomyosis. Surgery is indicated for correction of pain, infertility, or other symptoms in patients with extensive pelvic endometriosis, or when hormonal manipulation fails to adequately diminish pain symptoms in women with lesser stages of disease. Preoperative rectoscopy-sigmoidoscopy and intravenous pyelography are recommended in patients with symptoms suggestive of deeply invasive endometriosis. A small circular rim of tissue around the adhesion is stabilized with atraumatic forceps, and the cyst wall is grasped with biopsy forceps and stripped from the bed of normal ovarian tissue. The dissection may be facilitated by using magnification and irrigation of tissues with warmed solution. Adhesion formation can be reduced by magnification of the surgical site, avoidance of suture unless clearly indicated, reconstruction with fine nonreactive suture, precise hemostasis, and frequent irrigation of tissues with warm solution.

Less tissue damage is achieved with bipolar than with monopolar cautery. Ablation of deep disease by monopolar microdiathermy or CO2 laser vaporization rather than excision of the disease may result in inadequate resection and a greater amount of ischemic damage to the tissue, heightening the propensity toward adhesion formation. Deep lesions or more extensive peritoneal disease must be excised with a tissue margin of at least 2 to 4 mm, because macroscopic lesions are commonly present in tissue adjacent to visible implants. Twenty-five percent of patients have lesions greater than 5 mm in depth. Coagulation or vaporization of disease in the ovarian fossa may be used if the ureter is not identified. Resection of deep posterior cul-de-sac nodules requires great endoscopic expertise. A combined laparoscopic-vaginal approach may be necessary.

Inability to elevate the ovary is usually a sign of adhesions and endometriotic implants of the inferolateral surface of the ovary and the peritoneum of the ovarian fossa. When removing an endometrioma, the cortical incision should be made in a way that will preserve the normal anatomic relations of the ovary with the uterosacral ligament and fimbria ovarica. Suture on or extruding through the surface should be avoided when possible because of its adhesogenic properties. With larger endometriomas, the normal ovarian cortex is stabilized withatraumatic forceps, and the cyst wall is grasped with biopsy forceps and stripped from the bed of normal ovarian tissue. The dissection may be facilitated by removing a small circular rim of tissue around the adhesion site to begin the stripping procedure in a clearer field, where the endometrioma wall is less adhered to healthy ovarian tissue. The rate of recurrence of pelvic pain and dysmenorrhea over a 2-year postoperative period is significantly less for those patients who are managed by cytectomy as compared with those undergoing fenestration and coagulation. Moreover, the rate of reoperation is less and the cumulative pregnancy rate is higher in the cytectomy group. Extensive cauteryization or resection of ovarian tissue can lead to a rise in FSH levels postoperatively and should be avoided.

Aggressive and complete excision of deep endometriosis is justified. The recurrence rate of clinically detectable endometriosis is higher when the depth of infiltration is greater than 5 mm at the time of initial surgery. It is not justified to remove a small amount of tissue adjacent to the site of the lesion. A second cytoreductive procedure may benefit some infertile women who have undergone surgery in the past, although assisted reproductive
Endometriosis

Bibliography


Dargie GD. Management of endometriosis, and its associated adhesions with the 


Endometriosis


Surgery for Fertility


Tinkanen H, Kujansuu E. In vitro fertilization in patients with ovarian endometriosis.

Thomas EJ, Lenton EA, Cooke ID. Follicle growth patterns and endocrinology of adenomyosis and endometriosis.

Telimaa S. Danazol and medroxyprogesterone acetate inefficacious in the treatment of adhesions.

Tulandi T, Mouchawar M. Treatment-dependent and treatment-independent response resulting in infertility.

Tummon IS, Asher LJ, Martin JS, et al. Randomized controlled trial of superovulation and laparoscopic surgery in women with minimal, mild, and moderate endometriosis.

Takahashi K, Okada S, Ozaki T, et al. Diagnosis of pelvic endometriosis by morphologic appearance and capacity to synthesize prostaglandin F.

Tamaya T, Motoyama T, Ohono Y, et al. Steroid receptor levels and histology of adenomyosis and endometriosis.

Togashi K, Ohnishi T, Nakanishi M, et al. An ovum capture inhibitor (OCI) in endometriosis peri-vaginal endometriosis and infertility:


Wheeler JM, Johnston BM, Malinak LR. The relationship of endometriosis to presumed uterine etiology.


SECTION V  ■  SURGERY FOR BENIGN GYNECOLOGIC CONDITIONS
CHAPTER 23 ■ SURGICAL CONDITIONS OF THE VULVA
IRA R. HOROWITZ, JOSEPH BUSCEMA, AND BHAGIRATH MAJMUDAR

DEFINITIONS

Bubo—Enlarged, suppurative inguinal lymph node characteristic of chancroid.

Burow's solution—A soothing aluminum sulfate solution that can be used as a soak or wet compress for inflamed or irritated skin or mucous membrane.

Cavitron Ultrasonic Surgical Aspirator (CUSA)—An electromechanical surgical instrument that is useful in soft tissue dissection. Using focused ultrasound, superficial tissue is sheared off and aspirated through the wand tip. It has been used to treat condyloma and vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia.

Donovan body—An intracytoplasmic Gram-negative, rod-shaped bacteria characteristically identified in histocytes associated with granuloma inguinale.

Fourier's gangrene—An older term for necrotizing fasciitis.

keyes biopsy instrument—A pencil-like biopsy instrument with a sharp, hollow, cylindrical tip that is rotated while pressed against the skin. It cuts a small, cylindrical biopsy, which is then elevated with tissue forceps and cut off at the base with scissors or a knife.

Necrotizing fasciitis—A severe, rapidly progressive, life-threatening infection of the subcutaneous tissue and fascia that may involve the vulva. Synergistic bacterial infection with multiple organisms, it is associated with vascular thrombosis leading to necrosis of the skin and subcutaneous tissue of fascia. It is treated with aggressive broad-spectrum antibiotic coverage and wide surgical debridement.

Silvadene cream—A 1% silver sulfadiazine cream, which is commonly used on the vulva following laser therapy or surgery to minimize the risk of cellulitis or wound infection and to sooth the postoperative wound site.

Vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia (VIN)—A preinvasive neoplastic condition of the vulva.

Vulvar vestibulitis—A painful condition of the vulva of uncertain etiology. It is characterized by (i) severe pain on vestibular touch or attempted vaginal entry, (ii) tenderness to pressure localized within the vulvar vestibule, and (iii) minimal physical findings consisting of slight erythema within the vestibule.

Word catheter—A small latex catheter with an inflatable balloon to hold it in place. It is inserted to drain a Bartholin's duct abscess.

The vulva and the adjacent perineal skin are designated the anogenital area. These tissues are derived from ectoderm and are considered separately from the vagina and cervix, which are of endodermal origin. Multifocal diseases, particularly human papillomavirus (HPV), can affect all of the aforementioned epithelia. A complete vulvar examination should, therefore, include the vulva, perineum, anal area, urethral meatus, buttocks, and thighs. It is difficult to appreciate subtle skin changes in patients with dark skin; therefore, an adequate light source is necessary.

VULVAR DERMATOSES

In 1987, the International Society for the Study of Vulvovaginal Diseases (ISSVD) revised the terminology to describe the nonneoplastic epithelial disorders of the vulva, which include psoriasis, lichen planus, lichen simplex chronicus, candidiasis, and condyloma acuminata. In their 1976 classification, the ISSVD categorized hyperplastic dystrophy with and without atypia. In the classification of 1987, squamous cell hyperplasia is without atypia, and lesions with atypia are considered vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia (VIN).

The terms kraurosis and leukoplakia have been overused in the past. In 1877, Schwimmer reported that leukoplakia on the buccal surfaces of the mouth was a premalignant lesion, and Besky later described kraurosis as an atrophic lesion similar to lichen sclerosis. Because of these early reports, every lesion on the vulva that appeared white and constricted the vaginal outlet was called Kraurosis. Moreover, conditions as varied as leukokeratosis and invasive cancer have been called leukoplakia. Other terms, such as primary senile atrophy and atrophic leukoplakia, have been used interchangeably. They are nonspecific and should be eliminated. The epidermis may be thickened and the skin markings accentuated (lichenification), but the extent of the epithelial proliferation cannot be assessed without biopsy. Usually a 3- or 4-mm Keyes punch biopsy is used to obtain a small biopsy in the office under local anesthesia (Fig. 23.1). The specimen is oriented with the epithelial surface up on a square of filter paper or Telfa before being placed in fixative. This allows correct orientation of the tissue so that a full-thickness, montagental, microscopic section can be prepared. Occasionally, experienced clinicians make a tentative diagnosis based on history and physical examination. A trial of topical therapy may be used for 6 to 8 weeks to evaluate the response; if the response is less than satisfactory or if there is any suspicion of invasive cancer, a biopsy must be done.

Although some physicians have suggested that lichen sclerosis and kraurosis have different histopathologies, their microscopic appearance is similar. A safe approach would be for surgeons to describe the anatomic appearance (i.e., whether the vulva is shrunken and constricted or thickened and leathery), leaving it up to the pathologist, who is familiar with both histology and anatomy, to define the cellular and histologic abnormalities.
FIGURE 23.1. Biopsy of the vulva. A: The skin and subcutaneous tissue is infiltrated with local anesthetic using a small needle. B: A 3- or 4-mm Keyes punch biopsy instrument is firmly pressed against the skin to be biopsied and gently rotated. C: The small core of skin and subcutaneous tissue separated by the Keyes punch is elevated by small toothed tissue forceps and trimmed off at the base with curved iris scissors. Pressure is applied to the biopsy site, and the base is cauterized with silver nitrate sticks.

Hyperkeratosis

Both chronic infections and benign tumors, most commonly condylomata acuminata, appear white because keratin absorbs moisture, which reflects light back to the observer. To avoid the ambiguous term leukoplakia, Jeffcoate, in 1966, introduced the term dystrophy into the nomenclature of benign epithelial lesions of the vulva. Predictions about the malignant potential of vulvar dystrophy vary; of all the types of dystrophy, the one most often benign is lichen sclerosus. As noted earlier, the terminology for vulvar dystrophies has been altered. Vulvar dystrophy has been classified in three categories: squamous hyperplasia, lichen sclerosus, and VIN. Typical squamous cell hyperplasia is characterized by a thickened, hyperkeratotic squamous epithelium, elongated rete pegs, and often an infiltration of the underlying tissue with chronic inflammatory cells. Typical hyperplasia in a benign form of chronic dermatitis with hyperkeratosis and acanthosis; thus, the designation "dystrophy" should be eliminated.

Depigmentation Lesions

Leukoderma and vitiligo are terms that are used interchangeably. Treatment is not required unless the symptoms of the commonly associated chronic dermatitis cannot be controlled by local medications. The hyperkeratotic lesions comprise a number of diverse entities that share a white to grayish white epithelial appearance in a moist environment. Biopsy is the only reliable criterion for accurate assessment.

Lichen Sclerosus

Lichen sclerosus is characterized by hyperkeratosis, thinning of the epidermis, loss of rete peg architecture, collagenization of the underlying tissue, and associated middermal inflammatory infiltrate (Fig. 23.2). It can occur at any age. The disease has been noted in the prepubertal child, and it occurs during the menstrual years. Nevertheless, it is seen most often in
FIGURE 23.2. Vulvar dystrophy; lichen sclerosus. A: Distorted vulva with superficial ulcerations and extensive hyperkeratosis and loss of normal architecture. B: Microscopic picture of lichen sclerosus composed of epidermal diminution, subepidermal collagenization, and middermal lymphocytic infiltrate.

the postmenopausal woman when the lesions more commonly are symptomatic, perhaps because of the additional epithelial compromise caused by atrophy. The genetic aspects of lichen sclerosus have not been clearly identified, but the finding of lesions in both mother and child has been documented.

If biopsy specimens reveal lichen sclerosus, the patient should be treated with ultrapotent corticosteroids. Many series over the past few years have shown an excellent clinical response to 0.05% clobetasol proportionate topical ointment or cream. In a series of 81 women with biopsy-proven lichen sclerosus, Lorenz and coworkers reported that 77% had complete remission of symptoms and another 18% experienced significant improvement. Patients were treated with topical application of clobetasol cream twice daily for 1 month, at bedtime for another month, and, finally, twice a week for 3 months. They continued to use the cream on an “as needed” basis once or twice a week. Many patients continue to require occasional episodic therapy for symptomatic flare-ups, but the long-term effects of these ultrapotent steroids on the vulva have not been well studied. Some experts recommend maintenance therapy with lower potency corticosteroids, such as triamcinolone or 0.1% betamethasone. Topical testosterone has been recommended in the past, but Hornstein and associates compared the results of 2% testosterone propionate with 0.05% clobetasol dipropionate; at 1 year follow-up, 80% of the clobetasol treated patients reported symptomatic improvement compared with 40% of those treated with testosterone.

Many patients with chronic vulvar dermatitis, stenosis of the outlet specifically related to lichen sclerosus, and vestibulitis have an associated constriction of the vaginal outlet with resultant dyspareunia. Local intravaginal or vulvar applications of estrogen do not improve this condition. Plastic surgery to the outlet (Fig. 23.3) may be helpful. By excising a triangular area of skin beneath the fourchette, the surgeon can undermine and evert the adjacent vaginal epithelium, incise the transverse perineal muscle and fascia, and cover the denuded area with a flap of vaginal mucosa. The procedure is simple, and the use of delayed-absorbable suture material lessens the incidence of wound breakdown, which commonly occurs when absorbable suture is used. The results of this procedure have been most satisfactory; about 95% of patients are greatly relieved of dyspareunia. Breech and Laufer have reported good results in a few patients by suturing a protective covering of oxidized regener-ated cellulose gauze (Surgicel, Johnson & Johnson, Arlington, TX) to the raw surfaces of the inner labia and clitoris after division of intracutal adhesions to prevent recurrence.

**VULVAR INTRAEPITHELIAL NEOPLASIA**

The first two cases of carcinoma in situ (CIS) of the skin were described by Bowen in 1912. Bowen also stated that although stromal invasion had not developed in patients observed over periods of 12 to 16 years, curettage and cauterization did not eliminate recurrence of the lesions.

In 1938, Woodruff and Hildebrandt reported 13 cases of VIN. They suggested that because the histology varied from one area to another in the same section, the general term *carcinoma in situ* should be used to designate the lesion. Today, the term *vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia* is commonly used, and vulvar intraepithelial lesions were originally subdivided into VIN I, corresponding to mild dysplasia; VIN II, similar to moderate
Excision of skin at vaginal margin

Skin and posterior vaginal wall

Superior transverse perineal muscle

Furthor mobilization of vaginal wall

Scar

Incision

Excision of skin at vaginal margin

FIGURE 23.3. Perineoplasty. A: The incisional line is identified. The incision must be sufficiently extensive to allow for postoperative retraction and subsequent constriction of the outlet. B: The vagina is undermined to allow for exteriorization without tension. C: The scarred skin of the fourchette is excised. The vaginal epithelium is preserved for exteriorization. The vaginal epithelium is sufficiently undermined for the margins to be approximated to the skin (D) without tension (E). Occasionally, a small incision is made into the midline of the exteriorized mucosa to allow for an adequate outlet without tension.
dysplasia; and VIN III, corresponding to severe dysplasia or CIS, similar to the classification of cervical disease. However, in 2004, the ISSVD changed the classification, eliminating the term VIN I. VIN I is thought to be secondary to viral changes and not a reproducible diagnosis. In addition to eliminating VIN I, they combined VIN II and VIN III as simply VIN, the expectation being that these lesions will be treated as high-grade preinvasive neoplasms. Jones and colleagues, in their review of 405 women with VIN, reported a decrease in the mean age of patients with VIN from 50 in 1980 to 39 in 2003. The increased prevalence of HPV infection as well as increased awareness by patients, clinicians, and pathologists has resulted in an increase in the diagnosis of VIN and, perhaps, a more common identification of these lesions in younger women.

### Symptoms

Pruritus is the predominant symptom of most vulvar disease, including cancer, yet itching was the primary symptom in only 50% of patients with in situ cancer in a series reported by Buscema and associates. Other presenting symptoms were the presence of a lump, bleeding, and pain. In a small percentage of the cases, the lesion was discovered on routine examination; but in others, the diagnosis commonly was made in patients seen during follow-up of cervical neoplasia.

### Diagnosis

The best technique for early diagnosis is careful inspection of the external genitalia—including perianal areas, thighs, and buttocks—under a bright light (Fig. 23.4). If suspicion is aroused either by history or preexisting neoplasia in the lower genital canal or by the suggestion of an abnormal configuration, magnification should be used. An experienced colposcopist can describe white lesions and areas of abnormal vasculature. As a screening procedure, however, colposcopy has not contributed to the early detection of vulvar neoplasia. The use of nuclear staining, specifically 1% toluidine blue and tetracycline fluorescence, has delineated foci of increased metabolic activity, but the false-negative and false-positive rates are high enough to make the results unpredictable.

Careful visual evaluation of the vulvar region should be directed at the focally white, hyperkeratotic areas and at the more important, slightly elevated, papillary areas of skin. Atypical pigmentation, most significantly gray-white areas that are even minimally ulcerated or slightly elevated above the surrounding skin, should be viewed with suspicion (Fig. 23.5). Biopsy provides the final diagnosis.

Multifocal areas of neoplasia that involve the external genitalia, perineum, and the epithelium of the lower genital canal are common; in fact, more than half the patients with intraepithelial disease in the lower genital tract have multifocal lesions. These lesions suggest an infectious, possibly viral origin for the neoplasia. In contrast, patients older than 60 years of age with invasive or in situ cancer more commonly have unifocal disease. When the vulva is the primary site of the lesion,
the cervix, vagina, and perianal areas are frequent sites for associ-
ated neoplastic alterations. The combination of vulvar and cer-
vical cancer makes up about 20% of all multicentric neo-
plasia in the lower genital tract.

The most pressing question about multifocal disease is whether invasive disease that develops from in situ lesions will arise in many foci or in only one focus. Only two of our patients with in situ neoplasia younger than 40 years of age have developed invasive cancer, and both cases appeared as solitary peri-
nal lesions. Because the vulva and the cervix are of different embryologic origins, the tendency to correlate the histopathol-
y of one area with that of the other may be unrewarding. For example, the full-thickness changes that signal cervical in-
traepithelial neoplasia are not as comparable when they occur on the vulva. Keratinization at the rete tips with intraepithelial pearl formation may indicate, on the other hand, a preneoplastic disease in the anogenital area anywhere.

Pathologic Diagnosis

Biopsy with a Keys punch can be performed in the office with the use of local anesthesia. Knife biopsies often are tangen-
tial and contain only the superficial layers, which results in a less than accurate histologic interpretation. Correct orientation of the tissue in the fixative is mandatory if accurate evalua-
tion of the specimen is to be rendered. Such orientation can be obtained by placing the biopsy specimen on filter paper or Telfa with the epithelial surface exposed, so that the pathol-
ologist can embed the specimen accurately. Tangential cutting may result in the erroneous diagnosis of invasive disease. Cy-
tology has not proved to be a satisfactory screening technique for the evaluation of the precursory cellular atypias in vulvar neoplasia.

The classic Bowenoid changes vary from one microscopic section to another, but typical sections show loss of polarity, hyperchomasia, anaplasia, individual cell keratinization, corps ronds, and mitotic activity on the surface (Fig. 23.6). Abnor-
mal mitosis may abound. Other gross variations include the erythroplastic lesion (erythroplasia of Queyrat) with immature cells extending from base to surface, and lesions that appear almost normal, being marked only by intraepithelial pearl for-
mation at the rete tips in a background of marked dysplasia. Papillary lesions showing changes of high-grade dysplasia were previously designated as baueronid papulosis, a term discontin-
ued by ISSVD.

Surgical Conditions of the Vulva

Treatment and Results

Although surgical excision of vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia is favored, patients typically do not require total vulvectomy. Modesit and colleagues found invasive cancer in 22% of pa-
tients with biopsies consistent with VIN III. Vulvectomy may be appro-
perate for selected patients who are elderly, particularly if they have extensive disease, or for patients with Paget dis-
case. Wide local excision usually is successful, but an attempt should be made to obtain clear margins. The adjacent loose skin of the vulva provides sufficient extra skin to cover minor defects without a skin graft and without significant deformity. The incidence of recurrence is no greater with local excision than with total vulvectomy, but it still approaches 30% to 40%. Positive margins have been indicative of an increased risk of re-
currence in some series. Unless invasive cancer is suspected in the area of the positive margins, immediate reexcision is usu-
ally not indicated, but careful follow-up is necessary because recurrence is common. Brown has suggested CO2 laser vapor-
ization around the surgical margins will decrease the risk of recurrence.

A skinning vulvectomy, in which the epidermis and underly-
ing dermis of the vulva and often the perineal area are removed and replaced by a skin graft, has been used for the treatment of extensive or multifocal vulvar in situ disease. This procedure is usually recommended in younger women with extensive lesions in an attempt to restore normal anatomy and sexual function. However, the technique requires surgery at a donor site, which produces an additional scar in a patient who usually is young. Furthermore, it imposes prolonged bed rest, near complete im-
mobilization of the lower extremities, and indwelling bladder catheterization for 5 to 6 days while the skin graft heals.

The carbon dioxide laser has been successfully used in the treatment of in situ vulvar neoplasia. This approach is of par-
ticular appeal for the younger patient with multifocal, viral proliferative disease. This subset of patients with VIN is un-
doubtedly at lower risk for occult invasion. Emphasis in ther-
apy should be directed toward preservation of maximum tissue and vulvar function. Given these considerations and the real-
ity of recurrences, laser ablation provides an effective medium. Pretreatment requirements include careful examination of the lower genital tract and the liberal use of biopsies to identify areas of possible invasion and multicentric disease. The risk of invasive cancer is greater in the older patient. The desire for cosmetic results is less, so the use of surgical excision is favored in older women.

The laser itself is directed colposcopically after examination of tissues prepared by the application of dilute acetic acid. The latter may enhance detection of minimal viral changes not read-
ily seen with the naked eye. Although benign condylomata can be adequately treated by superficial vaporization (so-called first and second plane), laser treatment of VIN must address the ex-
tension of disease into the hair follicles (pilosebaceous ducts). This mandates deeper laser vaporization beyond the squamous dermis and into the upper reticular dermis (third plane). The colposcope permits recognition of landmarks that characterize these levels. Baggish and coworkers identified skin appendage
Involvement in 36% of cases of vulvar in situ carcinoma and predicted that laser vaporization to a depth of 2.5 mm would effectively treat involved appendages in 93% of cases. Shatz and associates advocated ablation of VIN to a depth of 1 to 2 mm in nonhair and hairy skin to achieve similar success. In laser treatment of VIN, the use of appropriate power densities should be emphasized. Low-power densities lead to thermal conduction injury more than to microablative vaporization at the margins. The latter increases the risk of scarring. Power densities of greater than 750 W/cm² are recommended. However, the deeper extent of vaporization required for VIN III, particularly in hair-bearing areas of the vulva, results in considerably greater postoperative pain, a longer period of healing, and an increased risk of scarring and subsequent chronic pain and dyspareunia; therefore many experts have abandoned the use of the laser in favor of surgical excision for VIN III. Bornstein and Kaufman have proposed combining laser ablation with surgical excision in the treatment of selected patients with VIN. Laser is used particularly in areas where excision hampers preservation of anatomy, such as in the clitoral region. Laser therapy for VIN should probably be reserved for experienced laser surgeons and colposcopists.

The Ultrasonic Surgical Aspirator can assist the surgeon in ablating to depths comparable to those achieved with the CO₂ laser. The advantage of this instrument is its ability to obtain additional tissue that might identify an occult cancer. Ultrasonic Surgical Aspirator and laser ablation also may be used to treat perianal intraepithelial neoplasia. In this setting, two concerns should be kept in mind. This location appears to be associated with a greater risk for the development of invasive squamous cancer, and the likelihood of fibrosis, scarring, and stricture is heightened. As with all treatments for VIN, the potential for recurrence and the need for further follow-up must be appreciated. With ablative procedures such as laser, diligence must be exercised to exclude invasion.

Topical agents have been used in the treatment of VIN with consistent results. Most notable among these topical treatments has been 5-fluorouracil (5-FU, Efudex 5%). Efudex is not recommended by the manufacturer for this use, and they specifically recommend against its use in the vagina. The mechanism of action appears to be related to the inhibition of DNA and RNA synthesis; the latter is not specific to dysplastic or HPV-infected cells. Normal epithelium is susceptible to the agent, and a component of hypersensitivity reaction appears operative in its mode of action. For cases in which treatment is effective, denudation of the epithelium is a requisite for success. This understandably leads to localized discomfort and pain, often reported as intense burning. Treatment regimens with topical 5-FU are diverse, and no standardized administration protocol has been widely adopted. One technique is topical application on an alternate-night basis for as long as 6 weeks; patient compliance problems typically lead to earlier discontinuation. Analogous to the use of topical 5-FU, a 50% to 60% complete response rate has been reported. The hyperkeratotic VIN lesion has not proved to be as responsive to 5-FU.

In a 41-year review of 405 women, Jones and colleagues observed that more than 75% of patients treated with laser ablation or surgical resection required an additional procedure within 14 years. Fifty percent of patients with positive surgical margins required additional treatment within 5 years. In comparison with positive margins, women with negative margins had a 5% chance of requiring additional therapy. Brown and colleagues, in a small series of 33 patients, noted a decrease in recurrence with a combination of surgical excision and laser vaporization at the margins.

### Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

#### TECHNIQUE OF CONSERVATIVE (SIMPLE) VULVECTOMY

Conservative (simple) vulvectomy is recommended in many patients with widespread VIN when it may be difficult to rule out invasive cancer or Paget disease of the vulva. It may also be appropriate when preoperative biopsies suggest such sinister diseases, do not respond to medical therapy or wide local excision.

An outline of the surgical margins is made with a surgical marking pen (Fig. 23.7). The initial incision should be made at the vaginal outlet so that the surgical margins can be well demarcated and the vaginal epithelium undermining for a short distance. If the incision is begun at the lateral skin margins, bleeding can mask the area, making the incision at the outlet more difficult to define. When the first incision is made at the outlet, a small pack can be placed into the vagina to control the bleeding while the elliptic incision at the outer skin margins of the lesion is made. The skin incision usually encompasses most of the labia majora, depending on the extent of the lesion. The incision through the skin is made with a knife to avoid tissue necrosis that occurs at the skin margins when an electrosurgical instrument is used. Major vessels can be coagulated.

Major bleeding concerns may arise at the clitoris, particularly from the dorsal vein. Hemostatic sutures must be used to control the bleeding. A second point of concern is the pudendal vessels, which enter at the lower one third of the vulva close to the opening of the Bartholin duct. Branches of the pudendal vessels extend down to the anus as the inferior hemorrhiodals, and bleeding may be rather profuse in this area.

Because the lesions for which conservative vulvectomy is performed are superficial, dissection does not need to extend down to the deep fascia or to the muscles of the urogenital diaphragm. Although it is unnecessary to remove the bulbocavernous and ischiocavernous muscles, they may be difficult to avoid when the vulva is quite atrophic. Removal of some of the adipose tissue, particularly in the obese patient, allows for better approximation of the skin edges to the adjacent mucosa. The incision can be carried almost to the anal orifice; careful dissection here is important so that the external anal sphincter is not damaged. If the disease extends onto the anal mucosa or the protruding hemorrhoidal tissue, the mucosa should first be carefully dissected from the underlying external sphincter, excised with the tumor-free margins, and sutured to the perianal skin with 3–0 delayed-absorbable material. In the remaining vulva, the underlying tissues are approximated in layers with absorbable sutures, and the skin edges are approximated with interrupted absorbable sutures (Fig. 23.7). If bleeding is a problem, a small suction drain can be placed at the lower end of the incision, but it is much better to achieve meticulous hemostasis and use a firm pack against the area for 24 hours.

During closure of the perineal defect above the anal orifice and posterior vaginal introitus, the surgeon should suture the vaginal epithelium over the perineum in approximation to the anal orifice rather than suture the lateral skin edges snugly across the perineum and fourchette. Evert the vaginal mucosa allows for satisfactory cosmesis, whereas tightly approximated skin across the posterior fourchette may constrict the vaginal introitus and predispose to pain, dyspareunia, and fusuring.

When the firm packing has been removed after 24 hours, the entire area should be irrigated and cleaned. A firm pack is placed against the area for 24 hours.
FIGURE 23.7. Conservative vulvectomy for vulvar carcinoma in situ.

because it helps to keep the operative site dry and stimulates blood flow, enhancing the healing process. An indwelling urethral catheter or a suprapubic catheter is used while the suture line undergoes initial healing of the skin edges. The suprapubic catheter can be maintained for 4 to 5 days, if desired. A single dose of a cephalosporin such as Cefazolin (1g) intravenously is recommended immediately before surgery. Infrequently, a local cellulitis may develop, necessitating antibiotic therapy; extended-spectrum cephalosporins and semisynthetic penicillins have proved effective.

VULVAR RECONSTRUCTION

Procedures performed for extensive VIN 3 or Paget disease include total or partial vulvectomy, skinning vulvectomy, and multiple wide excisions. These may occasionally result in large denuded areas, creating challenges for reconstruction. With the advent of laser ablation and the Ultrasonic Surgical Aspirator, fewer procedures such as skinning vulvectomy are performed for VIN.
Reconstructive efforts for superficial excisions typically require split-thickness grafts. Such grafts are ill-suited for reconstruction after radical excision because the depth of tissue defect is too great, and poor cosmetic and functional results ensue. A buttock donor site is preferred. Perioperative antibiotics are used. Bowel preparation and slow postoperative feeding minimize contamination of the graft site.

Split-thickness skin grafts can be procured with an air-driven dermatome. The size of the vulvar defect helps to determine donor site excision. Meticulous hemostasis should be sought before application of the graft. Fine absorbable sutures are used to secure the skin edges of the graft. The donor site should be covered with an occlusive dressing, such as Opsite or Tegaderm, until significant healing occurs. A soft pressure dressing is tied over the graft site and kept in place for 5 days, accompanied by an indwelling catheter for urinary drainage.

**VULVAR PRURITUS**

The most common symptom associated with vulvar dermatoses and many other vulvar conditions is pruritus. In most cases, pruritus is a symptom of an underlying disease process, and although treatment of this annoying symptom is important, the clinician should attempt to diagnose and treat the disease that causes the symptom of pruritus.

Before any therapy for vulvar lesions caused by chronic irritation is begun, an accurate tissue diagnosis must be established. All patients should be given detailed instructions to eliminate local irritants. A history of urinary incontinence may suggest a source of chronic vulvar irritation. Associated vaginitis should be treated vigorously. Associated ablative therapy for molluscum contagiosum and condylomata acuminata. Vulvar dermatoses such as lichen sclerosus, lichen simplex chronicus, lichen planus, seborrheic dermatitis, and plasma cell vulvitis can also occur.

**Topical Agents**

Topical agents have been effective in treating vulvar pruritus and should be tried initially. When they are ineffective, often it is secondary to their inability to penetrate the thickened hyperkeratotic surface. Initially, treatment for a specific disease should be instituted. For example, topical steroids should be used for psoriasis, antifungals for candidiasis, and appropriate ablative therapy for molluscum contagiosum and condylomata acuminata. Vulvar dermatoses such as lichen sclerosus, lichen simplex chronicus, lichen planus, seborrheic dermatitis, and plasma cell vulvitis can be effectively treated with high-potency topical steroids such as betamethasone. Many of these patients also present with vulvar dysesthesia (vulvar burning) and can be treated with tricyclic medications such as amitriptyline and nortriptyline.

For historic purposes, no chapter on vulvar pruritus would be complete without mentioning alcohol injection and the Merkel procedure. Before treatment with amitriptyline became popular, patients with recalcitrant pruritus and vulvar dysesthesia were treated with local alcohol injection. The anogenital area was prepped and draped in a sterile manner after the induction of general or regional anesthesia. The region was then divided into 1-cm squares with a marking pen of brilliant green. Absolute alcohol, 0.2 mL, was then injected subcutaneously at the intersection of these lines (Fig. 23.8). Postoperatively, the...
patients were treated with cold packs and cool sitz baths for 1 week.

**Mering Procedure**

Because of the effectiveness of topical high-potency steroid creams, the Mering procedure is rarely used to treat vulvar pruritus in the United States today. It requires hospitalization and careful surgical technique (Fig. 23.9). The skin is shaved and thoroughly cleaned, and the incision is outlined with a marking pencil. The incision is made on the outer surface of the labium majus. It extends to the fascia of the urogenital diaphragm from the level of the clitoris to slightly beyond the fourchette and may continue inferiorly to the level of the anal orifice, depending on the extent of the pruritus. The nerves in the adjacent tissue are severed with a finger placed on each side, moving from the lateral aspect of the clitoris toward the midline, over the clitoris, where the fingers meet. The procedure interrupts branches of the ilioinguinal and genitofemoral nerves (Fig. 23.10). Blunt dissection extends posteriorly to the lateral side of the rectum, outside the external anal sphincter. If the perianal area is involved, blunt dissection may extend to the posterior limit of the anal orifice, where the two fingers meet behind the anus in the midline breaking up the branches of the pudendal nerve.

It is important that hemostasis be meticulously maintained. A small, flat Jackson-Pratt drain should be placed under the flap on each side. The subcutaneous tissue is approximated with absorbable sutures, and the skin is sutured with polyglycolic acid or polyglactin 910 material. The area must be packed tightly for 24 hours, and the patient should use ice packs or cool tub baths. Domeboro sitz baths (Burow’s solution) may help to relieve edema.

**VULVAR PAIN AND VULVODYNIA**

Vulvar pain is another common symptom of vulvar disease. It may be produced by a wide variety of vulvar conditions or, occasionally, primary vulvodynia without any identifiable underlying diagnosis may be encountered. The ISSVD has defined vulvodynia as “vulvar discomfort, most often described as burning pain, occurring in the absence of relevant visible findings or a specific, clinically identifiable, neurologic disorder.” The classification of vulvar pain is presented in Table 23.1.

There are many types of vulvar conditions that cause vulvar pain, including infections (candidiasis, herpes, etc.), inflammatory conditions (contact dermatitis), neoplasia (vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia, Paget disease, etc.) and neurologic conditions (herpetic neuralgia, neuroma, etc.). A careful diagnostic evaluation, usually including a biopsy of the vulva, is indicated to identify any of these lesions so that the correct therapy can be instituted. However, despite a careful and thorough workup, some patients will have vulvar pain for which an underlying diagnosis cannot be found. These patients are thus diagnosed with vulvodynia as defined above. The syndrome may be either localized to one area of the vulva or generalized, and the pain may be present all the time (unprovoked) or only when the vulva is touched or pressed (provoked). Vulvodynia involving the vulvar vestibule has been called vulvar vestibulitis or vestibulodynia. It is a clinical syndrome

![FIGURE 23.9. The Mering procedure. A: The incisions are made at the lateral margins of the labia majora, extending to the level of the clitoris superioorly and the anal orifice inferiorly. The depth of dissection is the deep fascia, to incise the adipose tissue and the nerves. B: The finger dissects the underlying tissue, breaking up the fibers of the pudendal, ilioinguinal, and genitofemoral nerves. C: The underlying tissues are carefully approximated to attain good hemostasis. A small drain should be inserted at the most dependent aspect of the incision to avoid the accumulation of blood in the operative sites.](image-url)
consisting of the following characteristics: (i) severe pain on vestibular touch or attempted vaginal entry, (ii) tenderness to pressure localized within the vulvar vestibule, and/or (iii) physical findings confined to vestibular erythema of varying degrees. This syndrome is chronic and multifactorial. Etiologies include chronic or recurrent candidiasis, HPV infections, recurrent bacterial vaginosis, trauma, chemical and surgical de-structive techniques, alterations of vaginal pH, irritants (soaps, detergents, douches, deodorants), and idiopathic causes. 

**TABLE 23.1**

INTERNATIONAL SOCIETY FOR THE STUDY OF VULVOVAGINAL DISEASES CLASSIFICATION OF VULVAR PAIN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A. Vulvar pain related to a specific disorder</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Infectious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Inflammatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Neoplastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Neurologic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| B. Vulvodynia                                |
| 1. Generalized                               |
| a. Provoked (sexual or nonsexual)           |
| b. Unprovoked (spontaneous)                 |
| c. Mixed (provoked and nonprovoked)         |
| 2. Localized (i.e., Vestibule, clitoris, vulva) |
| a. Provoked (sexual or nonsexual)           |
| b. Unprovoked (spontaneous)                 |
| c. Mixed (provoked and nonprovoked)         |

**Medical Treatment**

A careful diagnostic evaluation is essential because of the apparent multifactorial etiology of vestibulodynia. If an infectious etiology is present, it is imperative to treat it. Recombinant alpha-interferon is efficacious in treating vulvodynia with a history of condylomata acuminata or subclinical HPV. Triamcinolone acetonide 0.1% and bupivacaine can also be injected monthly. An alternative combination is methylprednisolone and lidocaine submucosal.

Chronic recurrent candidiasis is treated with prolonged oral administration of ketoconazole or fluconazole. Topical antifungal medications should be prescribed when oral antifungal medications are discontinued. In addition to being treated for the infectious etiology, all patients should be started on a course of topical steroids. Horowitz treats all patients with vulvodynia with hydrocortisone acetate 1% or 2.5% with 1% pramoxine HCl ointment (Pramosone) for 2 to 3 months. After 3 months of this therapy, the patients are placed on desoximetasone 0.25% ointment (Topicort). Only after failing topical steroids are the patients considered for surgical treatment. Oral amitriptyline is also an important part of the therapeutic regimen. Doses of 25 to 75 mg taken 3 hours before bedtime is prescribed. Patients with vulva dysesthesis or interstitial cystitis benefit most from medical therapy with amitriptyline. Oral gabapentin is also helpful in some patients. It should be started with a gradual dose escalation and tapered off when discontinued.
Surgical Treatment

Carbon dioxide laser ablation of the vestibular glands has not been shown to be optimal and has resulted in scarring and increased dyspareunia in some patients. In 1995, Reid and associates reported long-term results with the flashlamp-excited dye laser in nonresponders to medical therapy. Those with poor responses to laser vaporization were then treated with gland resection. Overall response rates were 62% to 80%, depending on the distribution of tenderness. However, long-term follow-up has been disappointing, and this approach remains controversial.

Primary surgical therapy has produced relief of symptoms in 75% to 90% of patients. This technique was initially described by Woodruff and associates in 1981 and Friedrich in 1987, and was modified by Marinoff and Turner in 1991 to include the periurethral Skene gland openings. The outer incision extends circumferentially from the periurethral glands along Hart’s line to the contralateral glands. The proximal vaginal margin is just inside the hymenal ring. This horseshoe-shaped epithelium is superficially excised and sent for histologic diagnosis. In almost all cases, the histology consists of nonspecific periglandular chronic inflammation, much less impressive than might be expected based on the severe symptoms reported. As in a perineoplasty, the vaginal mucosa is undermined and the vagina advanced to approximate edges. The wound is closed in two interrupted layers of 3-0 polyglactin 910 (Vicryl) or polyglycolic acid (Dexon) sutures (Fig. 23.12). Postoperative treatment is the same as for perineoplasty. Coitus should be avoided for 2 to 3 months after surgery.

Several of Horowitz’s patients (unpublished report) had severe levator spasm secondary to anticipation of activities associated with vulvar pain. This learned response has been treated successfully with biofeedback in several patients. Glazer and colleagues were the first to report the treatment of vulvar vestibulitis syndrome with electromyographic biofeedback of pelvic floor musculature. Seventy-eight percent (22 of 28) resumed coitus by the end of the treatment period.

VULVAR INFECTIONS

Although infections involving the vulva are treated with antibiotics rather than surgery, their appearance may resemble carcinoma in situ or even invasive cancer of the vulva. An accurate diagnosis may require cultures, viral testing, or even biopsy. Appropriate therapy is based on a correct diagnosis. Treatment of vulvar secondary to an infectious process varies depending on the infection present. Viral infections such as HPV are strongly associated with intraepithelial neoplasia and carcinoma. These lesions are discussed later in this chapter.
Minor vestibular glands

FIGURE 23.12. The minor vestibular glands exit lateral to the hymenal ring. They are very superficial and thus seldom produce definable “nodules,” even when chronically infected.

Molluscum contagiosum, a member of the pox family, requires accurate identification and resection of the umbilicated lesions with a dermal curette. These lesions are usually circular and umbilicated. Molluscum contagiosum in an adult may be an indicator of underlying human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection. Therefore, the patient’s background should be appropriately discussed.

Herpes genitalis is caused by the herpes simplex virus (HSV). Between 500,000 to 1 million new cases are diagnosed annually in the United States, a ninefold increase between 1966 and 1997. More than 25% of women are seropositive for HSV type 2. The patients with primary herpes present with high fevers, malaise, myalgias, painful vulvovaginal lesions, and inguinal adenopathy. The ulcers are small but coalesce into larger ulcers. The primary treatment of these sexually transmitted diseases is presented in Table 23.2. The three categories of HSV infection are outlined in Table 23.3.

**TABLE 23.2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Primary treatment</th>
<th>Alternate treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Herpes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First episode</td>
<td>Acyclovir 400 mg PO TID × 7-10 days</td>
<td>Acyclovir 200 mg PO 5 × day × 7-10 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppressive</td>
<td>Acyclovir 400 mg PO BID</td>
<td>Famciclovir 250 mg PO BID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Episodic</td>
<td>Acyclovir 400 mg PO TID × 5 days</td>
<td>Acyclovir 800 mg PO BID × 5 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 23.3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPES OF GENITAL HERPES SIMPLEX INFECTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Primary infection: Initial infection with either HSV-1 or HSV-2 without evidence of prior exposure to either (i.e., antibody)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Nonprimary first episode: Initial clinical episode with HSV-1 or HSV-2 in patient with prior exposure to the other viral serotype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Recurrent infection: Reactivation of latent virus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prevention (CDC)-recommended treatment regimen is doxycycline 100 mg orally twice daily for 3 weeks and until lesions have completely healed OR Ciprofloxacin 750 mg orally twice a day for at least 3 weeks and until all lesions have completely healed OR Erythromycin base 500 mg orally four times a day for at least 3 weeks and until all lesions have completely healed OR Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole: one double-strength (160 mg/800 mg) tablet orally twice a day for at least 3 weeks and until all lesions have completely healed

**Lymphogranuloma venereum (LGV)** is caused by Chlamydia trachomatis types L1, L2, and L3. LGV presents with papular or vesicular lesions on the vulva that may ulcerate. LGV lesions are usually painless and heal spontaneously. As with herpes, these patients present with headaches, myalgias, arthralgias, and inguinal adenopathy. The 2006 CDC treatment guidelines recommend doxycycline 100 mg orally twice daily for 21 days. Alternatively, the patient can be treated with erythromycin base 500 mg orally four times daily for 21 days.

**Chancroid** is caused by Haemophilus ducreyi. The chancroid lesions present as multiple papules that become pustular with a raised border and an indurated base. They can present with hidradenitis suppurativa (Table 23.5). Because the entire skin is involved, so that pressure at one point may produce exudation of purulent material from sinus tracts (Fig. 23.1A). Multiple bacterial pathogens are implicated, including *Staphylococcus*, *Aureus*, *Escherichia coli*, Porphyromonas, Prevotella and Porphyromonas spp. Bacteroides fragilis, and *Clostridium difficile*. Associated vascular thrombosis leads to skin and subcutaneous tissue necrosis. Fisher's criteria have been emphasized in the diagnosis and help to exclude clostridial infections. Brooks and Frazer isolated mixed aerobic-anaerobic flora in 68% of specimens, 10% facultative or aerobic bacteria, and 22% exclusively anaerobic organisms. Diabetes mellitus is the most common predisposing condition, although other factors, such as radiation, have been identified. The most common clinical findings are necrosis, fever, tachycardia, leukocytosis, edema, and foul odor.

Devascularization of the skin proceeds with sparing of underlying muscle and bone. Early skin changes include hemorrhagic bullous formation. Typically, the underlying fascial necrosis exceeds the boundaries of visible skin involvement. Inflammatory alterations and edema usually are present. Most patients present with fever, tachycardia, and signs of systemic toxic reaction. Prompt diagnosis is important because this disorder progresses rapidly.

Treatment combines expedient surgery, antibiotics, and maintenance of circulation and tissue oxygenation. Surgical treatment should include aggressive excision of nonviable skin, subcutaneous tissue, and avascular fascia. Extensive debridement down to and including the fascia must be performed until viable, well-vascularized tissue margins are identified. Wounds are packed, not primarily closed. High-dose broad-spectrum antibiotic coverage is administered, and associated medical conditions such as diabetes are managed aggressively. These patients are frequently very sick, and renal failure and acute adult respiratory distress syndrome commonly complicate their management. The operation for additional debridement or subsequent skin grafting is also common. Fournier's gangrene presents in a manner similar to that of necrotizing fasciitis and nonclostridial myonecrosis. Infections develop in the labia and spread to the perineum, buttocks, and abdominal wall. Treatment consists of a combination of surgery, broad-spectrum antibiotics, and hyperbaric oxygen.

**Hidradenitis Suppurativa**

An infectious process commonly demanding extensive local surgery is suppurative hidradenitis. This pustular disease begins as an infection in the apocrine sweat glands. The early manifestations often are cyclic, because the secretory activity of the apocrine glands corresponds to the progestational phase of the menstrual cycle. Consequently, in the early stages of the disease or in the chronic pruritic phase (Fox-Fordyce disease), the use of hormonal therapy, such as oral contraceptives, may help to modify the secretory activity of the glands. Once the disease is infectious involves the deeper tissues, local and systemic agents usually are ineffective. Inostrozin (Acutane) has been effective in some cases, but care must be taken in prescribing this agent because it is a powerful teratogen. Culturing exudates and treating with appropriate antibiotics may provide palliation and further delay surgery. The pusules often infect the entire area, so that pressure at one point may produce exudation of purulent material from sinus tracts (Fig. 23.1A). Multiple bacteria have been isolated from patients with hidradenitis suppurativa (Table 23.5). Because the entire anogenital area is honeycombed by the underlying infection, simple incision into a few of the pusules is useless. Extensive debridement must be performed to allow healing from the base.
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

TABLE 23.4
CDC-RECOMMENDED TREATMENT OF SYPHILIS IN ADULTS, 2006

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary and secondary syphilis</th>
<th>Recommended regimen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Benzathine penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM in a single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillin allergy (nonpregnant)</td>
<td>Doxycycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 2 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>Tetracycline 500 mg orally four times a day for 2 weeks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latent syphilis</th>
<th>Early latent syphilis (&lt;1 year)—recommended regimen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Benzathine penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM in a single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late latent syphilis (≥2 years)—recommended regimen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Benzathine penicillin G, 7.2 million units total, administered in three doses of 2.4 million units IM each, at 1-week intervals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillin allergy (nonpregnant)</td>
<td>Doxycycline 100 mg orally twice a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>Tetracycline 500 mg orally four times a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both drugs administered for 2 weeks if duration of infection known to have been &lt;1 year; otherwise, administer for 4 weeks.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neurosyphilis</th>
<th>Recommended regimen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aqueous crystalline penicillin G 18 million to 24 million units per day, administered in 3 million to 4 million units IM every 4 hours, for 10–14 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillin allergy (nonpregnant)</td>
<td>Procaine penicillin 2.4 million units IM daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUS Probenecid 500 mg orally four times a day, both for 10–14 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicilllin allergy (nonpregnant)</td>
<td>Ceftriaxone 2 G daily either IM or IV for 10–14 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syphilis during pregnancy</th>
<th>Recommended regimen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Penicillin regimen appropriate for the pregnant woman’s stage of syphilis. Some experts recommend additional therapy (e.g., a second dose of benzathine penicillin 2.4 million units IM) 1 week after the initial dose, particularly for women in the third trimester and for those who have secondary syphilis during pregnancy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillin allergy</td>
<td>A pregnant woman with a history of penicillin allergy should be treated with penicillin after desensitization.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IM, intramuscularly; IV, intravenously. 
Available at www.cdc.gov/std/treatment/2006/genital-ulcers.html.

The incision extends into the underlying fat, and the involved skin is removed in segments, leaving bridges of normal skin between the excised pustules. Loose approximation of the skin edges can be performed with polyglycolic acid or polyglactin 910 suture material; more commonly, the entire area is left open and treated locally to promote granulation (Fig. 23.13B). Results of therapy are rewarding in most cases, and skin grafting usually is unnecessary. The patient must be treated with antibiotics based on cultures obtained from the draining sinuses both before and after surgery. Radical vulvectomy is occasionally indicated for extensive disease of the vulvar, inguinal, and perineal areas, but generally simple vulvectomy is usually effective. It is imperative that a thorough histologic evaluation be performed by the pathologist. Squamous cell carcinoma has been reported to arise in diffuse perineal suppurative hidradenitis. Myocutaneous flaps or
split-thickness skin grafts can be placed in a two-stage procedure. This will allow the infections to clear before the raw vulvar surface is grafted. Wet to dry dressings are used 48 hours to 2 weeks before grafting.

Harrison and colleagues have reported a 37% recurrence rate in patients with inguinal or perineal lesions. In their series of 106 patients, Rompel and Petres experienced 17.8% complication rate with surgery and only a 2.5% recurrence in the operative field.

### TABLE 23.5

**BACTERIA INVOLVED IN HIDRADENITIS SUPPURATIVA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gram-positive organisms</th>
<th>Gram-negative organisms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Staphylococcus aureus</td>
<td>Acinetobacter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staphylococcus hominis</td>
<td>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcus milleri</td>
<td>Bacteroides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcus pyogenes</td>
<td>Fusobacterium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peptostreptococci</td>
<td>Prevotella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peptostreptococci</td>
<td>Lactobacillus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


---

**CROHN DISEASE**

Crohn disease, a chronic granulomatous inflammatory disease of the bowel, affects the vulva and perianal area in about 25% to 30% of the cases in which there is classic intestinal involvement. The draining sinuses often communicate with the vagina or the rectum, thus resulting in the formation of fistulous tracts (Fig. 23.14A). On rare occasions, the vulva may be primarily involved, even though the small and large bowel apparently are not affected or affected subsequently. Crohn disease can also present as unilateral labial hypertrophy.

Before any surgical therapy is begun, the diagnosis can be confirmed by studying the bowel or by obtaining a biopsy specimen of the affected tissues in the perineum. The presence of noncaseating granuloma without demonstrable organisms is characteristic of Crohn disease (Fig. 23.14B). Further deterioration of the tissue may result from attempts to excise a draining sinus produced by Crohn disease. Recanal incontinence can result from destruction of the anal sphincter or development of a rectovaginal fistula. Approximately 9% of rectovaginal fistulas are secondary to Crohn disease.

Immunocytochemistry of Crohn’s lesions has documented *Escherichia coli* and streptococcal antigens. In addition to short-term metronidazole, patients have responded to prolonged treatment (3–6 months) with broad-spectrum antibiotics such as ciprofloxacin. Methotrexate therapy is effective in reducing the requirement for prednisone in patients with chronically active Crohn disease. Other drugs used in the medical management of Crohn disease include 5-aminosalicylic acid, cyclosporine, azathioprine, 6-mercaptopurine, mesalamine, and infliximab (Remicade®).
In addition to pharmacotherapy, a submucosal anal pull-through procedure may bring relief. Layered surgical repair of a fistula caused by Crohn disease usually is unsuccessful, particularly without appropriate medical management. However, after appropriate medical therapy, surgical excision of the tract is usually effective (see Chapter 39). Results are difficult to predict because multiple areas of the terminal colon and small intestine may be affected, and any affected area may involve the vagina or perineum. Medical therapy should always be given during this type of surgical procedure and should be continued postoperatively for at least 2 months.

TRAUMA

Major trauma to the vulva most often occurs when young girls experience injuries as a result of sledding or bicycling accidents. Hematomas and occasionally lacerations can develop when the vaginal area forcefully comes in contact with the crossbar of a bicycle (as during a fall from a bicycle seat), or when the girl is thrown from a sled against an obstacle such as a tree or fence. Trauma also can result from sexual assault, and the gynecologist must be sensitive to this possibility even when the initial history suggests another etiology. Women or girls who are victims of sexual assault should receive testing for pregnancy and sexually transmitted diseases. These patients should be referred to counseling and encouraged to report the abuse to state officials. All minors should be reported to the state by the examining physician. Most traumatic injuries do not require surgical attention. An examination under anesthesia may be useful to adequately evaluate the extent of the injury. If surgical repair is not required, patients should be treated conservatively with activity restriction and the immediate and continued use of Burow’s solution (aluminum sulfate, calcium acetate; available as Domeboro tablets or powder) added to the sitz bath to reduce edema. Antibiotics may be used as prophylaxis against superinfection in damaged tissues. If a hematoma increases in size and extends well into the perineum or over the lower abdominal wall, incising the vulvar skin, evacuating the hematoma and ligating the bleeding vessels may reduce the period of convalescence. An alternative would be to use selective arterial embolization. Goldman and coworkers reported 30% of patients with genital trauma not associated with parturition have a urologic injury. When a hematoma produces urethral obstruction, evacuation may reduce the time an indwelling urethral catheter is needed. If the hematoma is not expanding, it should be followed conservatively. Most vulvar hematomas resolve spontaneously; surgical intervention, on the other hand, can result in significant morbidity, including infection. Frequently, a distinct bleeding site is not identified. If, however, the clot becomes secondarily infected, it requires prompt evacuation and drainage. Lacerations into the rectum or urethra should be repaired expeditiously.

CYSTS OF THE VULVA

Bartholin Duct Cysts

Obstruction of the Bartholin duct, usually near the orifice, is common. Although such obstructions can result from
FIGURE 23.15. The Word catheter (left) is inserted into the Bartholin duct cyst through a vaginal incision. The bulb is inflated with saline solution (right), and the end of the catheter is placed in the vagina.

gonococcal infection, other infections and trauma more commonly explain the occlusion. During a mediolateral episiotomy or a posterior colporrhaphy, for example, sutures can easily injure or even ligate the duct. The lining of the main cyst is transitional epithelium. The mucus-secreting glands are not affected by the obstruction but may be distorted by the infectious process. During the acute infection, which may precede the actual cyst formation, an abscess often develops with symptoms of tenderness, swelling, and erythema. Depending on the cause, secretion from the cyst may be mucous or cloudy.

Incision and drainage bring almost immediate relief to the patient and can be accomplished under local anesthesia. A small wick can be left in the cavity to maintain adequate drainage. A small incision (2 cm) is made in the cyst wall in the area of the normal duct orifice, and a culture is obtained for *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Chlamydia*, and aerobic and anaerobic bacteria. A Word catheter (Fig. 23.15) is inserted and the catheter bulb inflated with 2 to 3 mL of saline. If the catheter remains in place for 3 to 4 weeks, the tract becomes epithelialized, and the catheter can be removed. Broad-spectrum antibiotics are given before surgery.

Marsupialization seldom can be accomplished during the acute stage, but the procedure is useful for chronic or recurrent abscesses. Injection of an antibiotic into the abscess has been tried as treatment for the acute infection but has proved to be less effective than systemic antibiotic therapy.

Most Bartholin duct cysts are uninfected and asymptomatic. They are usually found during routine pelvic examinations. Patients may even be unaware of large cysts. When symptoms do occur, most patients report discomfort during coitus or pain while sitting or walking. These require marsupialization only if they are symptomatic. Table 23.6 differentiates between a Bartholin cyst and abscess.

**Technique of Marsupialization**

Drainage of a Bartholin duct cyst by marsupialization is not as technically involved as excision and eliminates many complications. The procedure makes it possible to avoid excising the gland with the cyst and to preserve the secretory function of the gland for lubrication.

Marsupialization has had limited use since the Word catheter was introduced. The catheter accomplishes the same result as surgery with minimal or no trauma. The nipple of the catheter can be inserted into the vagina. There is essentially no discomfort with the procedure, and coitus can be resumed normally. Because this procedure can be performed with local analgesia in the office setting and yields results comparable to those of marsupialization, its use should be encouraged.

The marsupialization can be performed under local, regional, or general anesthesia. A wedged-shaped, vertical incision is made in the vaginal mucosa over the center of the cyst, just outside the hymenal ring, with a 15 blade (Fig. 23.16A). The incision should be as wide as possible to enhance the postoperative patency of the stoma. After the cyst wall is opened and the cyst is drained of its contents, the lining of the cyst is everted and approximated to the vaginal mucosa with interrupted sutures of 3-0 delayed-absorbable material (Fig. 23.16B). Drains and packs are not necessary, but the patient’s postoperative care should include daily sitz baths beginning on the third or fourth postoperative day.

As a result of closure and secondary fibrosis of the orifice after marsupialization, 10% to 15% of cysts recur. Abscess formation is another occasional sequela of marsupialization.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 23.6</th>
<th>DIFFERENTIATION BETWEEN BARTHOLIN ABSCESS AND BARTHOLIN CYST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bartholin abscess</strong></td>
<td><strong>Bartholin cyst</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enlarged gland</td>
<td>Enlarged gland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erythema present in skin overlying and surrounding the gland</td>
<td>Erythema absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin overlying the gland typically warm to the touch</td>
<td>No increase in temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever present, especially with tachycardia</td>
<td>Fever absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advancing cellulitis can be present</td>
<td>Cellulitis absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacteria and WBCs are present in fluid (pus)</td>
<td>WBC count not elevated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contained within Bartholin gland</td>
<td>No bacteria or WBCs present in (serous) fluid contained within the cyst</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WBC, white blood cell.


Surgical Conditions of the Vulva 497
Technique of Excision

It is seldom necessary to excise a Bartholin duct cyst, particularly in the younger patient, unless there is induration at the base. The latter may signify deep-seated infection that is inaccessible by marsupialization. Conversely, this may represent neoplasm in the base of the gland, an issue of greater concern in the patient older than 40 years of age or in patients with coexisting Paget disease. An elliptical incision in the vaginal mucosa is made as close as possible to the site of the gland orifice with a 15 blade (Fig. 23.17). An incision on the mucosal side is preferable because an incision through the vulvar skin makes it difficult to dissect the cyst wall from the skin without incising or tearing the skin. If an opening is accidentally made through the skin, a permanent fenestration may result. Difficulty is not usually encountered during dissection of the cyst from the inner surface of the vulvar skin when the incision is made on the mucosal side. Excising a small ellipse of mucosa with the cyst allows the surgeon to have a site for traction and reduces the risk of rupturing the cyst. Because cyst formation usually is preceded by inflammation, the wall is adherent and cannot be easily enucleated with blunt dissection only. The blunt-pointed Mayo scissors serve admirably for sharp dissection of the cyst from its bed (Fig. 23.17C). The cyst can be mobilized further with the handle of the scalpel. A large cyst may develop posteriorly and may approximate the rectum. The rectal wall can easily be distinguished from the cyst by inserting a finger into the rectum during dissection.

Complete removal of the gland tissue adherent to the cyst wall is essential because residual glandular tissue may result in the formation of a tender nodule or recurrent cyst. If the margins of the cyst have become obscured, the cyst can be opened and the wall dissected from the surrounding tissue. Directly beneath the Bartholin duct is the vestibular bulb, which is composed of anastomosing venous channels. In the dissection of the gland from the vestibular bulb, additional care must be taken to avoid troublesome bleeding. To ensure permanent hemostasis, the entire cavity must be obliterated by approximating the walls with fine delayed-absorbable suture material after excision of the cyst.

Approximation of the vaginal mucosa is best accomplished with a continuous or interrupted mucosal suture of 3-0 delayed-absorbable material. Persistent bleeding from the labia or vestibular bulb may cause a postoperative hematoma of the labia, which can progress to include the mons pubis and the abdominal wall beneath the Scarpa fascia. Bed rest, ice packs, and a pressure dressing on the vulva are the methods of treatment for a hematoma; attempts to ligate the venous bleeding points are futile. Although the blood usually reabsorbs with time, sometimes evacuation and drainage are necessary. If the bleeding deep in the bed of the gland seems uncontrollable, deep mattress sutures can be placed from the skin through the bleeding bed into the vagina. The sutures should not be tied too tightly because necrosis may result, with fenestration of the vaginal outlet. A small drain should be stitched into the bed with fine absorbable sutures to avoid the accumulation of blood and serous fluid.

Hydrocele or Cyst of the Canal of Nuck

Hydrocele is an uncommon vulvar cyst. The cyst appears as a dilatation in the labium majus and adjacent labium minus and must be differentiated from a Bartholin duct cyst. Figure 23.18 shows a hydrocele. The patient underwent two procedures for drainage of a Bartholin duct cyst, but the mass recurred after each procedure.

A hydrocele is a cystic, fluid-filled hernia of the peritoneum that accompanies the round ligament and extends from the inguinal canal into the vulva. When this sac extends into the
Surgical Conditions of the Vulva

FIGURE 23.17. Excision of a Bartholin gland cyst. A: An incision is made in the mucosa over the cyst. B: Dissection is begun, using the handle of the scalpel. C: Dissection has been continued by sharp and blunt dissection. D: Dissection is almost complete. E: Intact cyst after removal.

FIGURE 23.18. A hydrocele is caused by the extension of a peritoneal sac with the round ligament from the inguinal canal into the vulva.

inguinal canal, it is known as a cyst of the canal of Nuck. On rare occasions, a loop of intestine may follow the pathway of the round ligament, forming a hernia in the vulva. When a hydrocele is treated as a Bartholin duct cyst by incision and drainage, peritoneal fluid may reaccumulate above the drainage site, and the hydrocele recurs.

Surgical treatment for a hydrocele begins with an incision into the cystic mass. The external inguinal ring is identified by inserting a finger in the cyst anteriorly to the inguinal canal. The peritoneal lining is excised from the cavity, and the external inguinal ring is closed along with the subjacent tissue in the anterior vulva. If a hernia is present, inguinal herniorrhaphy
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

500

SOLID TUMORS OF THE VULVA

The incidence of solid, benign tumors in the vulva is low; but a variety of benign tumors, including fibromas, fibromyomas, lipomas, hemangiomas, neurofibromas, and endometriomas have all been reported. These tumors can originate from any of the three germinal layers that constitute the anogenital area. One occasionally sees a solid vulvar tumor composed of benign breast tissue or a benign fibroadenoma (Fig. 23.19). Lactational changes can be seen in this tissue. Such an event is accounted for by the embryologic milk line caudally ending in the vulvar area. Degenerative changes and necrosis often occur in the larger tumors and should not be confused with malignancy. Lipomas often are mistaken for cystic lesions because of their consistency, whereas hemismas and hydroscele of the canal of Nuck must be differentiated from neoplastic growths because they require different surgical approaches.

Most solid tumors should be excised, both to ascertain the diagnosis and to relieve the patient’s discomfort. Small, pedunculated tumors can be removed by simple ligation of the stalk; the deeply situated lesions require more extensive local dissection. All nevi showing hemorrhage, sudden enlargement, and pruritus should be suspected to be melanomas and excised widely.

The boundaries of such mesodermal tumors are difficult to delineate, but most of the tumors are benign. Even recurrence does not signify malignant alteration; a fibromyoma may recur if incompletely excised, even when the original specimen had no histologic evidence of malignancy. Although a sarcoma rarely arises in the vulva, histologic studies must be carefully made because degenerating atypical multinucleated cells of a benign or reactive tissue can be mistakenly diagnosed as malignant.

As in any vulvar surgery, hemostasis is important because compression is difficult to obtain in these soft tissues. Extravasation of blood can dissect the fascial planes well out to the vulva, thigh, flanks, and abdominal wall. Closed suction drains should be used in the wounds if hemostasis is not complete.

Condyloma Acuminatum

Condyloma acuminatum is one morphologic manifestation of HPV infection in the lower genital tract. These polyloid lesions have an incubation period ranging from several weeks to 8 months; however, clinical infection usually is apparent 6 to 8 weeks after exposure. Transmission of the virus is attributed to coitus, and the process is efficient, because most sexual partners are affected subclinically if not clinically. The disease process continues increasing in prevalence. Interestingly, clinically apparent condyloma constitute only a fraction of HPV infections. Most are undetected in asymptomatic patients with no clinical findings.

Numerous HPV subtypes have been identified. HPV subtypes 6, 11, 16, 18, 31, 33, 35, 39, 45, 51, 52, 56, 58, 59, 68, and 69 account for most genital tract infections. Careful histopathologic and virologic study of vulvar lesions has demonstrated an association of HPV 6 and HPV 11 with approximately 90% of exophytic vulvar condylomata, as well as flat cervical condylomas and some low-grade cervical dysplasias. The quadrivalent vaccine provides protection against HPV subtypes 6, 11, 16, and 18. It is not effective for the treatment of already existing condyloma or HPV infections. This vaccine is further discussed in Chapter 46.

Condylomata acuminata that manifest on the vulva are frequently associated with cervical, vaginal, and anal HPV infection. Careful clinical evaluation mandates vaginal/cervical cytology and colposcopy in patients who present with vulvar warts. This is appropriate not only to exclude cervical and vaginal dysplasia but also to define the extent of condylomatous involvement and permit appropriate tailoring of regional therapy.

Condylomata acuminata are small and usually multifocal lesions. They may be accompanied by pruritic discomfort or irritation. Warts initially may be reddish brown because of parakeratosis; however, with time and exposure to local trauma, they become gray or white. The latter appears to be associated with hyperkeratosis and the generalized keratin disturbance associated with viral infection (Fig. 23.20). Unless they are traumatized, bleeding is not a typical feature. In pregnancy, however, because of marked vascular alterations,
A condyloma of the vagina and perineum can be a source of abundant bleeding if laceration occurs. Massive vulvar and perianal condylomata may occur in certain circumstances, preventing identification of the introitus and anal orifice; conditions that foster this growth potential include immunosuppression and, less frequently, pregnancy (Fig. 23.21). Those lesions that were previously called giant condyloma are now regarded as verrucous carcinoma. In the spectrum of condylomatous growths, the dividing line between condyloma and verrucous carcinoma is indistinct because of the structural benignancy of both.

Various treatment approaches are available and are characterized by their inability to eliminate the offending agent: the virus. Interferon offers a nonspecific antiviral therapy. Flu-like effects should be anticipated for at least several weeks. Efficacy has been demonstrated with this technique, although treatment is cumbersome, can be costly, and remains investigational. Its primary role has not been defined.

**Topical Therapy**

At the present time, only a variety of ablative approaches are available for management of condyloma. These should be individualized with consideration of prior treatment, volume and location of disease, the presence or absence of associated dysplasia, and other idiosyncratic patient factors. The most common approach to vulvar condylomata is the local application of 25% podophyllum resin, often prepared in benzoin. This method, although reasonably well tolerated in the office setting, often requires numerous applications. Burning discomfort ensues after sustained contact, which is necessary for efficacy. Most recommend that the agent be left in place for 6 hours before tub baths, so compliance may be problematic. Podophyllum appears to be more effective on exophytic, rather than flat, condylomata. Use is restricted to the vulva in nonpregnant patients; vaginal application may lead to undesirable absorption and neurotoxicity. An alternative is halogenated acetic acid, either bichloroacetic or trichloroacetic (TCA). Our preference is 90% TCA. This agent quickly interacts with cellular proteins, inducing a coagulative effect, and rapidly turns lesions a brilliant white. Advantages include its ability to sustain a prompt chemical effect on the condyloma, its availability for intravaginal use and use during pregnancy, and the fact that it can be rapidly neutralized with sodium bicarbonate.
which may be dissolved in water and applied as a cooling paste.

**Excision or Ablation**

Surgical excision, electrosurgical, destruction, and laser ablation are reserved for certain patients. Criteria for selection may include the following:

- **Extensive volume of condylomata exceeding what may be resolved with chemical agents**
- **Multicentric HPV infections, particularly with involvement of the vagina, urethra, or anus**
- **Failure of concerted office therapy with topical chemical agents**
- **Immunocompromised state in some hosts**

One should certainly use biopsy liberally to evaluate presumed condylomata that are refractory to topical treatment or that have an atypical appearance. This helps prevent sustained, ineffective chemical treatment of high-grade VIN, often presenting as a flat and pigmented verrucous lesion in the younger patient, and helps exclude a frank cancer with warty features. Large, sessile condylomata or those that grow rapidly, bled abnormally, or become necrotic or invasive should arouse the suspicion of malignancy.

Cryotherapy has been used on the vulva to eradicate warts. The freezing induces localized tissue necrosis. Although healing usually is satisfactory, and numbing effects induce analgesia, application is limited by delivery systems and probe-tip sizes. Larger condylomatous masses are more difficult to treat, as are vaginal lesions. Depth of apparent tissue destruction can be difficult to assess.

Electrocautery with a loop has been used effectively, particularly with massive lesions. Analgesic needs are definitely a factor in this approach. Smaller lesions may be fulgurated. Buildup of charred tissue can be removed by abrasion to identify residual warty tissue. The precision and depth of tissue injury can be problematic.

Colposcopically directed laser ablation performed by trained personnel in appropriately selected cases may afford effective treatment. Condylomatous lesions may be vaporized; starting at the center of the lesion causes the wart to collapse inward toward the beam. The level of the adjacent normal base (see Chapter 15). Clinicians are advised to use protective eyewear during vaporization to prevent possible conjunctival superinfection. Narcotics for pain management are appropriate short-term drugs. Prophylactic systemic antibiotics do not appear to be indicated. Weekly office follow-up is advised for 2 to 3 weeks to assess tissue healing, prevent undesirable areas of tissue agglutination, and allow potential early identification of recurrences, which can be managed with chemical ablation. Patients should be followed up carefully for several months after treatment to monitor for recurrences.

The Cavitron Ultrasonic Surgical Aspirator (CUSA) has also been efficacious in treating condylomata. Tissue cell damage is 25 to 30 mm, which is similar to that caused by a cold scalpel. This contrasts with electrocautery at 75 to 100 mm. The tip vibrates at 22,000 cycles per second. Tissue is fragmented and aspirated, providing a specimen for histologic evaluation. Regardless of the selected approach to therapy, all patients should be advised to have their consorts examined to lessen the risk of reexposure to lesions with a large viral burden. This theoretically helps diminish treatment failures. Patients with HIV or other types of immunosuppression need to be more closely followed up.

**Hidradenoma (Sweat Gland Tumor) of the Vulva**

A rare benign tumor of the vulva, hidradenoma, was first described by Schickle in 1902. The tumor is characterized by its intricate papillary adenomatous pattern, which may be readily mistaken for cancer.

Clinically, a hidradenoma is small, rarely more than 1 cm in diameter (Fig. 23.22A). Its consistency can range from firm to as soft as a sebaceous cyst, with which it is often confused. Most of these lesions are found in the interlabial folds, in the labia majora, or in the perineum. Because these tumors are apocrine in origin, the labia minora location is unusual. The occasional occurrence of reddish brown pulpy material on the surface results when the tumor is excited through the duct of the sweat gland.

These lesions have been carefully studied in numerous laboratories, and the complex microscopic patterns have been repeatedly stressed (Fig. 23.22B). The superficial papillary adenomatous pattern appears aggressive, but careful inspection shows that the glandular structures are lined by a single layer of well-organized cuboidal cells. In some parts of the tumor, the pink-staining secretory elements can be identified superficial to lower power densities (200 to 300 W/cm²) to superficially dem-
A hidradenoma of the vulva is illustrated in Figure 23.22. It is a benign neoplasm derived from sweat glands. The tumor typically presents as a painless, slow-growing mass. Pathologically, it is characterized by a well-differentiated, acinar pattern of glands surrounded by a myoepithelial component. 

The basal layer. Beneath the epithelium is an indefinite layer of flattened myoepithelial cells. When the clear cell variant of the myoepithelium proliferates, an ominous picture is created, yet this clear cell hidradenoma also behaves in a benign manner. Although hidradenocarcinoma occasionally does occur, a finding of distinct adenocarcinoma in the vulva should initiate a search to rule out a metastatic lesion from another primary site.

Hidradenomas are classically asymptomatic, and most lesions are discovered during a routine pelvic examination.
Granular Cell Tumors

Granular cell tumors (GCTs) were first described by Weber in 1854. It wasn’t until 1926 that Abrikossoff coined the term myoblastoma. Later, the tumor was termed granular cell schwannoma. The current nomenclature recognizes the term granular cell tumor. Although frequently benign, GCTs can present as a malignant form that is multicentric and metastatic in vital organs. Horowitz and associates reported on 20 patients presenting with GCTs of the vulva over a 31-year period at the Emory University Teaching Hospitals. Seventy percent of the patients were African American, and the mean age was 50 years. Ninety percent of the lesions were on the labia majora, with lesion size ranging from $0.4 \times 0.4 \text{ cm}$ to $7 \times 8 \times 12 \text{ cm}$. Nineteen of 20 patients were treated with a wide local excision. The twentieth patient required radical excision because of the size of the lesion. This patient eventually died of pulmonary metastasis. Only two patients presented with multiple lesions. Twelve lesions were stained for S-100. All were positive, which suggests a neural Schwann cell origin.

Sometimes the overlying pseudoepitheliomatous changes are misinterpreted as invasive cancer (Fig. 23.23). Identification is possible with recognition of the granular cells dispersed within the underlying stroma or within the tumor. In a few patients, GCT has behaved in a malignant fashion, but an appearance of a second lesion at a site outside the vulva usually indicates multiple primary lesions rather than metastasis.

Hemangioma

Hemangiomas are common vulvar lesions that usually do not require treatment. The lesions normally are small, are often multiple, and may bleed with trauma. On occasion, keratinization causes the superficial surface to appear white or gray-white (angiokeratoma). Hemangiomas should be differentiated from small varicosities, which commonly are seen in the postmenopausal patient.
Vascular supply of the vulva.

An accurate diagnosis is imperative because a malignant melanoma can be misinterpreted as a hemangioma. The abrupt appearance of any pigmented lesion demands biopsy. In 2 of 11 melanomas seen in our clinic, the lesions were diagnosed as hematoxia or angiomata, and a correct diagnosis was provided only by histologic study. Angiokeratoma, a benign tumor, is a distinct clinicopathologic entity. Aggressive angiomymyoma, although structurally benign, is known for its large size and local recurrences. Some tumors, although benign, can be massive in size and thereby pose operative problems (Fig. 23.24).

The best treatment for congenital hemangoma is careful observation. The lesions regress spontaneously in almost all cases, and attempts at excision may be mutilating. If bleeding is a problem, the troublesome vascular channels can be treated by surgical ligation or embolization.

Varicocele and Varices

Varices are common on the vulva, and the larger lesions are almost routinely unilateral. As with most varicosities, treatment depends on size and symptoms. Whereas varicoses in the scrotum arise from dilatation of the veins in the pampiniform plexus of the inguinal canal, the lesions on the vulva arise from the pudendal veins (Fig. 23.23). Careful evaluation usu-

ally demonstrates more extensive involvement of the tributaries of the hypogastric vein with varicosities of the gluteal vessels over the buttoc.

If the patient experiences discomfort from the engorgement that follows exercise or standing for long periods, ligation is indicated with excision of the segment of vulvar skin that contains the varices. Knowledge of the intricate vascular system that supplies the external genitalia is necessary to ensure that surgery will result in long-term success and will prevent recurrences. Horowitz has treated several patients using selective embolization with success.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Vulvar diseases are multiple and may be difficult to diagnose. Many inflammatory conditions clinically resemble cancer.
- Bartholin gland abscesses are usually treated with antibiotics and insertion of a Word catheter. Marsupialization or excision is rarely used today. The possibility of cancer of Bartholin gland should be considered in the postmenopausal women with a new mass involving Bartholin gland.
- Vulvodynia can be caused by infectious, inflammatory, neurologic, or neoplastic conditions of the vulva. When no underlying cause of vulvar pain can be determined, oral amitriptyline and gabapentin as well as topical steroid creams should be tried. Local injection with triamcinolone and bupivacaine can also be used. If vulvar vestibulodynia is diagnosed, an extended perineoplasty has been effective in many patients.
- Vulvar condyloma are caused by some types of HPV (90% are due to type 6 and 11). These lesions may be self-limiting and resolve spontaneously. They do not undergo malignant transformation. If numerous, large, or symptomatic, they can be successfully treated with topical podophyllin, podophyllum, or trichloroacetic acid. These lesions may also be destroyed or removed with electrosurgical desication, CUSA, CO2 laser, or simple excision. These lesions may be difficult or impossible to eradicate in immunocompromised patients.
- VIN should be diagnosed by biopsy. It may be caused by certain types of HPV, especially in younger women. If untreated, it may progress to invasive cancer. It can be treated by laser ablation, but surgical excision is usually recommended. A variety of techniques have been used, depending on the size and location of the lesion or lesions.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors want to recognize the late Dr. J. Donald Woodruff, who has been a coauthor of this chapter for several editions and who has served as a mentor to the current authors.

Bibliography


Bromfield AM, McIlroy WE. Continuum of behavioral psychosomatic and interferences for the treatment of vulvar vestibulitis. Gynecol Obstet Invest 1997;43:45.


Owen SA, Jackson AL. Examination of women with vulvar vestibulitis. J Low Genit Tract Dis 1994;8:127.

Owen SA, Jackson AL. Examination of women with vulvar vestibulitis. J Low Genit Tract Dis 1994;8:127.


imperforate hymen is called.

If canalization fails and there are no perforations, the vaginal vestibule, and it usually is torn early in the prepubertal years. If canalization of the most caudal portion of the vaginal plate does not canalize, a transverse vaginal septum is the result. Canalization of the most cephalad tip of the invaginating UGS establishes a patent hymen. The hymen usually is perforated during embryonic life to establish a connection between the lumen of the vaginal canal and the vaginal vestibule, and it usually is torn early in the prepubertal years. If canalization fails and there are no perforations, the hymen is called imperforate.

Imperforate hymen—The hymen usually is perforated during embryonic life to establish a connection between the lumen of the vaginal canal and the vaginal vestibule, and it usually is torn early in the prepubertal years. If canalization fails and there are no perforations, the hymen is called imperforate.

Pseudohermaphroditism—A condition in which the gonads are of one sex (genetically XX or XY), but in which the physical/phenotypical appearance is of the opposite sex. Genetically female individuals (chromosomes XX, thus with female gonads/ovaries) presenting with significant male secondary sex characteristics and genetically male individuals (chromosomes XY thus with male gonads/testes) presenting with significant female secondary sex characteristics.

THE VAGINA

The Imperforate Hymen and Its Complications

The hymen, the junction of the sinovaginal bulbs with the urogenital sinus (UGS), is a thin mucous membrane, sometimes cribiform in appearance, which is composed of endoderm from the UGS epithelium. The Mullerian ducts meet the sinovaginal bulbs at the most cephalad tip of the invaginating UGS. The vaginal plate elongates and canalizes to form the vagina. If the vaginal plate does not canalize, a transverse vaginal septum is the result. Canalization of the most cephalad portion of the vaginal plate at the UGS establishes a patent hymen. The hymen usually is perforated during embryonic life to establish a connection between the lumen of the vaginal canal and the vaginal vestibule, and it usually is torn early in the prepubertal years. If canalization fails and there are no perforations, the hymen is called imperforate.

Although variations in hymen development occur, complete blockage by the hymen of the vaginal orifice is rare, occurring in approximately 0.05% to 0.1% of newborn girls. In 1986, Mor and colleagues described the types of hymenal shape in the newborn infant from examination performed within the first 24 hours of life. In 53.3%, a smooth hymen with a central orifice was observed; a folded hymen with a central orifice was seen in 27%; a folded hymen with an eccentric orifice occurred in 4.5%; an anterior opening of the hymen was in 10.8%; a posterior opening was found in 0.6%. The researchers found that 3% had hymenal bands and 0.3% of the newborns had an almost imperforate hymen. Polkony and Kozin described the various configurations and anatomic details of the prepubertal hymen. In a case series of 265 children with known genital problems, three main hymenal configurations were observed: fimbriated, circumferential, and posterior rim. Interestingly, bleeding without a history of trauma was associated with hymenal bumps or breaks suggestive of trauma (31%) or with other hemorrhagic vulvar lesions (40%).

Stelling and colleagues have recently evaluated the genetic transmission of imperforate hymen and reported that the occurrence of imperforate hymen in two consecutive generations of a family is consistent with a dominant mode of transmission, either sex-linked or autosomal. It has also been reported that transmission may be recessively inherited. Taken together, they concluded that imperforate hymen is caused by mutations of several genes and emphasized the importance of evaluation of all family members of affected patients.

Symptoms

If an imperforate hymen is noticed before puberty, the condition can be treated when it is entirely asymptomatic. Cases that are recognized at birth present with a thin bulging membrane between the labia, which represents a mucocolpos. When the hymen is incised, the vagina is found to contain mucoid fluid that is the result of accumulated cervical secretion. This is caused by the stimulation of the infant’s cervical mucus glands by maternal estrogen in the presence of an intact hymen. Prenatal diagnosis of imperforate hymen and mucocolpos has been described with second-trimester antenatal sonography demonstrating a thin membrane that distended the vagina and spread the labia majora.

Although by performing a careful inspection of the external genitalia, an imperforate hymen may be diagnosed at any age, most commonly imperforate hymen is not detected until puberty, with girls presenting at age 13 to 15 years, when symptoms begin to appear but menstruation appears not to have begun. In 2005, Pousner and Spandorfer hypothesized that children with late diagnoses would be more likely to be symptomatic, undergo more diagnostic testing, and lack appropriate documentation in their medical records of adequate examinations compared with children with the diagnoses of imperforate hymen made at an earlier age. They reported a bimodal distribution of age at diagnosis with 43% (n = 10) of girls
A 57% (n = 13) at or older than age 8. Among older girls, 100% were symptomatic with abdominal pain and/or urinary symptoms. They found that in the young girls, in 90% of cases, the diagnosis was incidental. On review of the older girls’ medical records, they found that the majority lacked description of breast and pubic hair development, and almost half did not have menstrual history documented. The older group was more likely to present symptomatically and to undergo ancillary testing. They conclude that incorporating an examination of the external genitalia into routine practice of clinicians caring for children can prevent the significant delays in diagnosis of imperforate hymen, misdiagnosis, and potential morbidity associated with the latter group.

The symptoms girls present with after the onset of puberty are due to the accumulation of menstrual blood within the vaginal outlet tract. The blood of the first cycle period or two is collected in the vagina, which can hold a large volume of blood without undue stretching and with no other symptoms. This accumulated menstrual blood in the vagina is called hemato-
colpos. The patient may feel a slight fatigue and have cramping discomfort suggesting menstruation, but she has no history of any passage of menstrual blood through the vaginal outlet. Fig-
ure 24.1A shows bulging of the imperforate hymen, which may be dark in color because of occult blood showing through the stretched mucous membrane; Figure 24.1B shows extrusion of accumulated blood after the hymen is incised.

As menstruation continues to occur, however, the vagina becomes greatly overdistended, and the cervical canal also begins to dilate. Accumulation of menstrual blood in the uterine cavity, with subsequent hematometra, may occur. When the intrauterine pressure reaches a certain point, retrograde passage of blood into the tubes causes hematosalpinx. Associated or other adhesion formation within or at the fimbriated ends of the tubes may seal them, so that little or no blood enters the peritoneal cavity. In some cases, however, blood passes freely into the peritoneal cavity, forming hematoperitoneum (Fig. 24.2). A
tender mass often is palpable suprapubically, the result of uterine enlargement and upward displacement, bladder distention, or both. If hematoocolpos occurs, the irritation of the free blood may cause all the symptoms and signs of peritonitis.

The most common symptoms of vaginal overdistention are lower abdominal pain, discomfort in the pelvis, and pain in the lower back. Hematoocolpos should be included in the differential diagnosis of any girl presenting with persistent lower back pain. Irritation of the sacral plexus is believed to be the etiology of this referred pain pattern. The lower abdominal discomfort often is aggravated on defecation, and if extensive blood accumulation occurs in the vagina, constipation may result from pressure and obstruction of the underling rectum. Urination can be difficult as a result of pressure of the distended vagina, which can compress the urethra and prevent emptying of the bladder; urinary obstruction can ensue. Bladder symptoms can present as cramplike pains in the suprapubic region, along with symptoms of dysuria, frequency, and urgency. Overflow incontinence may eventually develop, and hydronephrosis is a rare complication. Girls presenting with severe dysmenorrhea and duplicate vagina and didelphys uterus should be evaluated for unilateral imperforate hymen.

Rock and colleagues followed surgery success subsequebtly to the surgical correction of imperforate hymen between 1945 and 1981 at the Johns Hopkins Hospital. Twenty-two patients of mean age 14.7 years were admitted for surgical correction of imperforate hymens. Associated anomalies, including urinary tract anomalies, were rare. Thirty patients subsequently conceived, and 10 patients were observed to have living children. Liang and colleagues in 2003 reported on the long-term postoperative evaluation of 15 patients with imperforate hymen. They conducted questionnaires and telephone interviews regarding sexuality, fertility, menstrual problems, micturition, and defecation. The mean postoperative follow-up was 8.5 years, with the mean age at diagnosis being 13.2 years. The women reported being markedly relieved of their presenting symptoms after hymenectomy. There were some who reported having irregular menstruation, and 6/15 reported dysmenorrhea. The authors reported that most patients fared well in terms of fertility and sexual function. Joki-Erkkila and colleagues in 2003 also reported on presenting and long-term fertility in women with obstructing vaginal anomalies. They identified 26 women with obstructive vaginal malformations. Sixteen had transverse obstructions: 13 underwent incision of an imperforate hymen and 3 excision of a complete transverse vaginal septum, with a mean follow-up period of 13 years. The remaining 10 had obstructive hemi-vagina and incision of a “longitudinal” vaginal septum with a mean follow-up period of 16 years. The transverse obstruction girls (imperforate hymen or transverse vaginal septum) were diagnosed within a month from their primary symptoms compared with 27 months for those with longitudinal obstruction. None with imperforate hymen required reoperation, but 2/3 with transverse vaginal septum did for vaginal constriction, and 3/10 with longitudi- nal vaginal septum had resection of their septum. All of the 10 women with longitudinal obstruction had uterine and renal malformations, whereas in those with a transverse vaginal obstruction, only 6 underwent renal-resalvation, and of these, 2 had double uteruses. Dysfunctional uterine bleeding was re- ported by 19% of those in the transverse and 40% of those in the longitudinal obstruction group; dyspareunia was reported in 30% of the transverse and none in the longitudinal; and dysmenorrhea was reported in 19% of transverse and 20% of lon- gitudinal. No endometriosis was found in women who had subse- quently had a laparotomy or laparoscopy (18/26). In the 14 who were attempting to conceive, difficulty with fertility was not diagnosed. Twenty-five (89%) out of 28 pregnancies ended in delivery, the live birth rate of the longitudinal group being 82%, and 94% in those with transverse obstruction. The au- thors concluded that accurate diagnosis, along with adequate treatment, can reduce the need for reoperations and that no specific long-term clinical gynecologic symptoms were identi- fied in these women with obstructing vaginal anomalies. The great distressfulness of the vagina probably protects the adoles- cent patient with an imperforate hymen from abnormal retro- grade menstruation, and the possible subsequent development of pelvic endometriosis with imperforate hymen as the cause is unlikely as long as the diagnosis is made reasonably early. The recent long-term follow-up studies are helpful in counseling pa- tients with respect to lack of a negative effect on fertility and pregnancy in women with correction of imperforate hymen.

**Treatment**

When an imperforate hymen is discovered before puberty, the hymenal membrane can simply be incised, preferably at the 2-, 4-, 8-, and 10-o’clock positions. The quadrants of the hymen are then excised, and the mucosal margins are approximated with fine delayed-absorbable suture (Fig. 24.3). To prevent scarring and stenosis, which could result in dyspareunia, the hymenal tissue should not be excised too close to the vaginal mucosa. If an unnecessary intrauterine instrumentation should be avoided because if hematocolpos has already developed (Fig. 24.2), there is the risk of perforating the thin, overstretched urethral wall.

No further surgical intervention is generally needed. If the uterine mass does not regress within 2 to 3 weeks, however, inspection and dilatation of the cervix should be performed to make certain that drainage from the uterus is satisfactory.

---

**Anomalies of the External Genitalia and Vagina**

**Construction of Female External Genitalia**

Sexually ambiguous external genitalia defects of the UGS are remarkable in appearance, regardless of the etiology of the anomaly. Such genitalia differ only in their degree of malformation and occupy a range of positions somewhere intermediate to the genitalia of a normal female and that of a normal male. These anomalies can be anatomically identical to each other, whether their etiologic factor is congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH), male hermaphroditism, true hermaphroditism, or some other intersex syndrome. External genitalia proceeds along the female lines except in the presence of some virilizing influence acting on the developing embryo (i.e., androgens). The conversion of testosterone to dihydrotestosterone by 5α-reductase activity occurs in the skin of the external genitalia and UGS in early gestation. Masculinization of the external genita- lia ensues in the presence of functional androgens regardless of genetic sex. In the case of female pseudohermaphroditism— XX chromosomes in the presence of a virilizing influence—the fusion of the scrotal/glabral folds may be sufficient to obscure or conceal the vagina from the outside or even to entirely suppress its formation. The urethra can be formed for varying distances or along the entire length of the phallus. Therefore, the operative procedure for reconstruction of ambiguous genitalia into feminine genitae varies in its extent depending on the severity of the cause of the intersexuality. The common goals for the female reconstruction of ambiguous genitalia include reduction of chotial size, creation of labia minora, and exterior- ization of the vagina.
Any reconstruction of the external genitalia with the objective of producing normal female appearance and function requires a full understanding of the surgical anatomy. It is essential to accurately identify the site of communication of the vagina with the UGS. In their classic paper in 1969, Hendren and Crawford recognized the variability of the communication of the vaginal insertion into the UGS. Figure 24.4 illustrates the spectrum of vaginal communication with the urethra, with Figure 24.4A representative of a low distal communication (infrasphincteric) and Figure 24.4B representative of a high proximal communication (suprasphincteric). In 95% of cases, the vaginal communication is in relation to the caudal UGS derivatives (infrasphincteric) with the vagina communicating with that portion of the UGS in a man gives rise to the membranous portion of the male urethra and that in the woman becomes the vaginal vestibule. If this usual relation is confirmed at surgery, the persistent, anomalous UGS may be excised to the vaginal communication without fear of disturbing the urinary sphincter. In less than 5% of cases, the vagina communicates high, with the portion of the UGS that becomes the prostatic urethra in the man or the entire urethra in the woman (suprasphincteric). Knowledge of the possible variants in communication of the vagina with the UGS is critical before entertaining surgical correction. Preoperatively genitography showing the relationship of the UGS, urethra, vagina, and bladder may be helpful. Contrast is injected retrogradely through the perineal meatus of the UGS. Delineation of this anatomy can be elucidated at the time of surgery with the use of endoscopy to evaluate where the vagina communicates with the UGS. In 1989, Bargy and colleagues described the anatomic lesions in the intersexual states based on clinical and anatomic observations.

One objective of the reconstruction procedure for external genitalia is to delay the procedure until the anomalous structures are of a size to permit easy identification of all structures. As observed by Azziz and coworkers, vaginal repair may be delayed until menarche, when maturity and the desire for sexual activity are usually well established. There is present debate in the need for early reconstruction for the sole purpose of cosmetics to prevent embarrassment or anxiety to the patient’s family. Crouch and Creighton have recently revisited the long-standing dictum of early surgical correction of ambiguous genitalia for intersex conditions. They report that some advocate the “one-stage” procedure in infancy, but that others advocate deferral of vaginal surgery until after puberty, especially given that many patients require further surgery at adolescence. It has been believed that the intersex child may be psychologically damaged by the “appearance” of uncorrected external genitalia if not performed at infancy, but unfortunately to date little research on this exists.

Most hermaphrodites reared as girls have a vagina or vaginal pouch, although in some instances, it is rudimentary. Only rarely is there no vagina, despite ambiguity of the external genitalia. The choice of operative procedure must conform to the observed anatomy. Thus, these choices are considered in the context of several categories based on anatomic structure of the anomaly.

When the Vagina is Present and the Vaginosinus Communication is Low. The basic operation is, in essence, a modification of one described at length by Young that was previously performed successfully by various surgeons, notably in Europe. Patients with adrenal hyperplasia usually require only reconstruction of the external genitalia. However, when exploratory laparotomy is necessary to remove contradictory sex structures in other types of intersexuality or to establish the diagnosis, reconstruction of the genitalia may be considered at the same operation.

If an operation is deemed necessary at a very young age, the structures can be so small that it is impossible to introduce a finger into the UGS, and all tissues must be grasped throughout the operation with fine delicate tissue forceps. Operating loupes...
(2.5–3) are of great benefit to the surgeon. Small bipolar forceps and microscissors are also useful. Fine 5-0 or 6-0 synthetic absorbable sutures on an atraumatic needle is used throughout the procedure.

In cases of simple labial fusion, a cutback vaginoplasty (Fig. 24.5) would be sufficient to restore “normal” female genital anatomy. In cases of low vaginal confluence with the UGS (Fig. 24.4A), reconstruction may be done either by freeing the posterior vaginal wall and suturing up to the perineal external opening (Fig. 24.6) or—if a patient has copious subcutaneous fat and difficulty exists in approximating the vagina to the perineal skin—by use of a posterior flap technique, as used by Fortunoff and coworkers (Fig. 24.7).

Initially, the UGS may be thoroughly investigated with a small McCarthy panendoscope to determine accurately the position and size of the vaginal communication. If a sound or catheter can be easily introduced into the meatus of the UGS and into the vagina, use of the endoscope may be omitted. Special care is needed not to introduce the sound into the urethra. A sound accidentally introduced into the urethra poses the danger of incising the distal urethral meatus. After the UGS is incised (to within 2 or 3 cm of the anus), the urethral orifice may be identified (Fig. 24.6A and B). A small Foley catheter may then be introduced through the urinary meatus for purposes of identification throughout the remainder of the operation. To attach the edges of the vagina to the skin, it is usually necessary to free the vagina posteriorly and laterally to secure sufficient mobilization so that these structures meet with no tension. It is unnecessary to free the vagina anteriorly, because this requires its separation from the urethra. Sufficient mobilization can ordinarily be obtained by lateral and posterior dissection. When sufficient freedom has been attained, the edges of the vagina may be secured to the skin with interrupted 5-0 sutures on an atraumatic reserve-cutting needle. In the infant, four or five sutures around the edge of the vagina are usually sufficient. The edges of the incised sinus membrane may then be sutured to the skin anteriorly (Fig. 24.6D–G). A small sponge impregnated with petroleum jelly may be introduced into the vagina to maintain its patency during the healing process. The indwelling catheter may be left in place for a few days until edema of the surrounding structures has subsided. An indwelling catheter is particularly useful in children with metabolic disorders that require accurate urine collection. A pressure dressing for 24 hours reduces the incidence of incisional hematoma.

Figure 24.7 illustrates vaginoplasty with a posterior flap as advocated by Fortunoff and is useful in cases with anticipated difficulty in bringing the vaginal orifice to the outside. Briefly, a posterior-based U-flap is drawn, with corners on either side of the perineal body near the rectum (Fig. 24.7A–C). This flap must be wide enough for tension-free anastomosis. This posterior flap is dissected in the midline and is carried out between the rectum and UGS.

Sutures are individually placed through the posterior-based flap and into the split posterior vagina. Sutures are tied after all have been placed. Because the anterior wall is not disturbed, no anterior flap is required. Finally, the phallic skin is
FIGURE 24.6. A: The external genitalia of an 18-month-old girl with congenital adrenal hyperplasia. The operation is the same, regardless of the etiology of the "virilizing" deformity. B: Beginning of the operation. Incision into the urogenital sinus. If the external meatus is large enough and the urogenital sinus will accommodate it, it is sometimes possible to introduce a catheter into the bladder through the urethra and introduce a sound into the vagina beside this. When the structures are large enough, this maneuver greatly facilitates the operative procedure by ensuring their identification. C: Lateral view showing the relations among the various structures. D: Situation after incision of the urogenital sinus. E: With the glass catheter in the bladder, the posterior vaginal wall is freed to make it possible to bring it to the skin edge without undue tension. F: The operative situation after the edges of the vagina are sutured to the skin and after the edges of the mucous membrane of the urogenital sinus are also sutured to the skin along the line of incision. G: Lateral view at the completion of the operation.

FIGURE 24.7. A posterior flap technique for when there is difficulty bringing the vaginal orifice to the outside.
FIGURE 24.8. Clitoral reduction via the clitoral flap technique. A: The initial incision. B: The flap must be as wide as possible at the base to preserve the circulation for the glans. The glans cannot be preserved completely because the blood supply will be insufficient to maintain it. It must be as thin a shell of the glans as possible. C: The shaft of the phallus has been removed. D: There has been some closure of the space from which the corpora were removed. E: The flap has been sutured into place.

FIGURE 24.9. Dorsal approach to subtotal resection of the corpora. The nerve supply to the glans is preserved with its neurovascular supply intact along Buck's fascia and the dorsal tunic of the gland. This approach is theoretically desirable and can be recommended for suitable cases.

In 1999, Baskin and colleagues described the anatomic studies of the human clitoris. As in the human penis, the nerves in the clitoris form an extensive network surrounding the tunica of the corporeal body with a nerve-free zone at the 12-o’clock position. The normal clitoris has corporeal bodies that are smaller but analogous to those of the penis. The surgeon should be mindful of their function if extensive resection is considered with care to preserve the dorsal aspect of the glans.

In 1999, Baskin and colleagues described the anatomic studies of the human clitoris. As in the human penis, the nerves in the clitoris form an extensive network surrounding the tunica of the corporeal body with a nerve-free zone at the 12-o’clock position. The normal clitoris has corporeal bodies that are smaller but analogous to those of the penis. The surgeon should be mindful of their function if extensive resection is considered with care to preserve the dorsal aspect of the glans.
corpora, yet the cavernous erectile tissue is excised. Figure 24.10 illustrates this surgical management; additionally, the phallus is degloved, and this skin is used to create the labia minora. An incision is made around the corona of the phallus and continued inferiorly around the urethral meatus. Preservation of this meatal plate improves cosmesis and increases blood supply to the glans. The neurovascular bundle is identified, with lateral incisions into the tunica of the corpora along the phallus from the glans backward proximal to the corporal bifurcation. The cavernous erectile tissue is dissected from the
inferior aspect of the dorsal tunic and excised, and the proxi-
mal and dorsal corpora are suture ligated. The glans is secured
to the inferior aspect of the pubis or to the corporal stumps.

In a pilot study of six women in 2003, Crouch and col-
leagues reported on genital sensation after feminizing genito-
plasty for women with CAH. These women were assessed for
thermal, vibratory, and light-touch sensory thresholds in the cli-
toris and vagina using a genitosensory analyzer and von Frey
filaments. Highly abnormal results for sensation in the clitoris
were found in the six women studied. In three who had an
introitus capable of admitting a vaginal probe, the vaginal sen-
sory data was considered normal. Given an abnormal clitoral
sensation and normal vaginal sensation, the authors hypoth-
thesize that the abnormal clitoral findings may result from the
surgical reconstruction rather than an effect of CAH. A self-
administered sexual function assessment revealed that these
women had sexual difficulties, particularly in the areas of in-
frequency of intercourse and anorgasmia. The authors voiced
their concerns with the stated superiority of modern surgery.
They stated that the vascularity of the glans remains vulnera-
ble and that the risk of damage to the neurovascular bundles is
inherent in any technique that entails their separation from the
corporeal tissue. They concluded that even after seemingly suc-
cessful clitoral reduction, the sensory function is significantly
impaired, and this should be taken into consideration during
counseling. Larger studies are presently under way to further
evaluate these findings.

When the Vaginal Orifice is Obscured. As mentioned previ-
ously, preoperative identification and catheterization or sound-
ing of the vaginal orifice is key to the performance of a
successful, one-stage procedure. When the vagina cannot be
located by sounding, it sometimes can be seen by endoscopy.
When sounding and vision both fail, an attempt before surgery
to introduce a small (no. 4 or 5) ureteral catheter into the
vagina by blindly probing through the endoscope along the
posterior wall of the UGS may assist in the identification of
the vagina. Sometimes this catheter finds the orifice. If so, it
may be left within the vagina as a guide during surgical ex-
posure of the area (Fig. 24.11). If the vaginal orifice cannot
be located, a planned two-stage operation is indicated. The
objective of the first stage would be to obtain cosmically

![Figure 24.11](image-url)
satisfactory female genitalia by reducing the clitoris and partially excising the UGS without exteriorizing the vagina. During the planned second stage, exteriorization of the vagina can be performed. The second stage should be postponed until identification of the vaginal orifice by sounding becomes possible. This may require waiting for puberty for estrogenization of the area. If dilators are needed for patency postoperatively, this surgery should be delayed until the girl is sufficiently mature for their appropriate use. This will maximize the success of the reoperation.

When the Vaginosinus Communication is Blocked. Rarely does the vagina not communicate with the UGS. The vagina with the UGS is homologous with the hymenal area, and the hymen rarely is imperforate in an otherwise normal woman. For such a circumstance, we have found it helpful to pass a uterine sound downward through the fundus via hysterotomy into the vagina, thus forming a protrusion on the perineum. With such a guide, the edges of the vaginal epithelium can be located and sutured to the skin (Fig. 24.12). Until the uterus enlarges somewhat from its infantile state, the cavity is not large enough to accommodate even a uterine sound. Therefore, if such an operation is contemplated, it should not be done until there is a palpable enlargement of the uterus at the onset of puberty. Evaluation of uterine volume sonographically as a predictor of uterine size adequacy may be helpful.

When the Vaginosinus Communication is High. Hendren has been especially interested in patients whose vaginosinus communication involves the proximal urethra (suprasphincteric). He has advocated an operation that disconnects the vagina from the urethra and repositions the vaginal orifice in the perineum, the “pull-through” vaginoplasty. In his hands, this procedure seems to have been satisfactory for some patients. The procedure requires positioning the new vaginal orifice in the perineum (Fig. 24.13). The vast majority of patients with ambiguous external genitalia and a vagina have a vaginosinus communication well distal to the proximal urethra (infra sphincteric), and consideration of the procedure advocated by Hendren is not necessary. In patients in whom the vagina enters the UGS proximal to the external sphincter, the pull-through vaginoplasty of Hendren and Crawford or the method described by Passerini-Glazel can be used to prevent incontinence. Hendren and Crawford's vaginal pull-through remains the basis for reconstruction today. Modification to this procedure has evolved in an attempt to decrease the complexity and decrease the tendency of an isolated vagina toward stenosis. Rink and coworkers have favored a one-stage procedure using a perineal prone approach with no division of the rectum.

Results of Revision of External Genitalia. Among 28 patients with adrenogenital syndrome and good follow-up treated at the Johns Hopkins Hospital, 22 (87.6%) needed further vaginal reconstructive surgery to achieve an adequate vaginal size.

FIGURE 24.12. A situation in which the vaginal orifice is imperforate. B: A uterine sound has been passed through the fundus into the vagina. C: The tip of the sound can be palpated in the perineum. D: The completed procedure.
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

A perineal pull-through vaginoplasty according to Hendren. A: Sagittal view in diagram of high supra-sphincteric vaginal communication to the urogenital sinus. A small Foley catheter is placed in the vagina to aid in its manipulation and localization. B: The location of the initial incision in relation to the balloon in the vagina.

FIGURE 24.13. A perineal pull-through vaginoplasty according to Hendren. A: Sagittal view in diagram of high supra-sphincteric vaginal communication to the urogenital sinus. A small Foley catheter is placed in the vagina to aid in its manipulation and localization. B: The location of the initial incision in relation to the balloon in the vagina.

to allow comfortable intercourse. Of the 22 patients, five had undergone more than one surgical attempt at reconstruction. The mean age of patients undergoing repeat procedures was 7.1 years. The mean age at first surgery for the whole group was 23.6 months. Vaginal reconstructive surgery was performed on 18 of these patients and was successful in 13 (72%) of the procedures. It generally is recommended that exterozization of the vagina be postponed until near puberty, when feminization occurs and the young woman is sufficiently mature to comply with a postoperative dilatation program. The results of exterozization performed during infancy must be followed up carefully for evidence of narrowing. In 1997, Costa and colleagues evaluated the vaginal size and sexual activity after different techniques of feminization of external genitalia in patients with pseudohermaphrodisism. In their series of patients, all who underwent clitoroplasty reported orgasms, and 29% of the patients who had clitoridectomy reported no orgasms. Fifty percent of the patients who submitted to neovaginoplasty reported pain or bleeding during sexual intercourse. Satisfactory sexual intercourse was reported by 87% after vaginal dilation with acrylic molds.

In 2000, Krege and colleagues reported on the long-term follow-up of female patients with CAH from 21-hydroxylase deficiency, with special emphasis on the results of vaginoplasty. They reported that the main problem during the long-term follow-up was intravaginal stenosis, with all those affected—9 of 23 (36%)—having undergone a single-stage procedure early in life to correct ambiguous genitalia (mean age, 4.7 years; range, 2 to 9 years). The authors suggested that vaginoplasty should be undertaken at the beginning of puberty, because higher estrogen levels may prevent stenosis and dilatation may be performed. In addition, 16 patients answered questionnaires that included psychological profile, and the researchers found that 14 had problems with their overall body image. Patients with correction of vaginal stenosis were particularly anxious about sexual intercourse and had problems with orgasm. Creighton and colleagues in 2001 retrospectively evaluated the cosmetic and anatomical outcomes of 44 adolescent patients who had undergone feminizing surgery for ambiguous genitalia during their childhood. The authors reported that cosmetic results were judged as poor in 18 (41%) and that 43/44 (98%) required further treatment to the genitalia for cosmetic, tampon use, or intercourse. Of the genitoplasties planned as one-stage procedures, 23/26 (89%) required further major surgery.

Davies and colleagues in 2005 reported on urinary symptoms in adult women with CAH. The authors reported on 19 women with CAH, of whom 16 had childhood feminizing genital surgery, and compared them with age-matched women without CAH. The Bristol Female Lower Urinary Tract Symptoms (BFLUTS) questionnaire was given to all the women. Sixty-eight percent of the women with CAH reported urge incontinence compared with 16% of controls (p = 0.003). Stress incontinence was present in 47% of CAH and 26% of the controls. Nine of the CAH women reported that their urinary symptoms had an adverse effect on their lives, whereas only one of the controls did (p = 0.008). The authors concluded that women with CAH are more likely to have urinary symptoms than controls. It is important to emphasize that it is not known whether these results are associated with the surgical procedures that the women underwent or an effect of CAH itself. For counseling purposes, this information is important because in two thirds of these CAH women, urinary symptoms persisted.

Historically, it has been assumed that psychosocial development of infants with intersex disorders is mostly due to rearing
Surgical Conditions of the Vagina and Urethra

rather than being intrinsic. Over the past decade, the role of testosterone imprinting of the fetal brain has been studied to evaluate the role of this hormone in determining male sexual orientation. Studies in the 1990s of girls with CAH have confirmed that such children engage in more rough-and-tumble play than their affected peers and that difficulties with adjustment to their assigned sex may exist. Nonetheless, few studies have been conducted to address the social, psychological, and sexual outcomes for affected adolescents and adults, although it appears that most function in the normal range and are well adjusted. The majority of girls appear not to overtly demonstrate sexual identity problems.

Ozbey and coauthors reported on the experience of sex (re)assignment in genotypic female (46XX) patients with CAH when complicated by delayed presentation and inadvertent assignment. They reported on 70 patients with CAH who between 1983 and 2002 were counseled for sex assignment. They evaluated age at diagnosis and operation, the degree of virilization, parental consanguinity, and the sex preference of the families as factors determining sex (re)assignment decision-making.

Forty-nine of seventy were reared as girls and 21 were reared as “boys.” Of these 21 “boys,” only nine could be reassigned as girls (mean age 7.9 months), and the other 12, with mean age at presentation of 55.8 months, were reared as “boys” in compliance with the parents’ and the study group’s decision. These “boys” underwent appropriate masculinizing reconstructive surgery. They concluded that age of presentation was crucial for the ability to correctly assign the sex of patients with CAH.
Secondary Operations. A secondary operation on the vaginal outlet may be required. This is generally the case if the basic operation is deliberately accomplished in two stages, whatever the reason. A secondary operation may be indicated, for example, when an infant’s vaginal orifice is not readily identifiable, yet it seems desirable to construct cosmetically acceptable female genitalia at a very early age. Care should be taken when considering the appropriate age for performing a clitoroplasty. Some have recommended that this can be done in the newborn and that the vagina may be exteriorized at puberty as a secondary operation. Alizai and colleagues reported on the outcome of feminizing genitoplasty in 14 postpubertal girls (mean age 13.1 years) with CAH. These girls were assessed under anesthesia by a pediatric urologist, plastic/reconstructive surgeon, and gynecologist. Thirteen of fourteen had previously undergone feminizing genitoplasty in early childhood. The authors reported that the outcome of clitoral surgery was unsatisfactory (clitoral atrophy or prominent glans) in six of the girls. Additional vaginal surgery was necessary for normal comfortable intercourse in 13 of the girls. In the girls with a history of vaginal reconstruction in infancy, fibrosis and scarring were prominent. The authors concluded that these results were disappointing, even in the girls who had their surgery performed by specialist surgeons. The authors highlighted the importance of late follow-up and the challenges in the prevailing assumption that total correction can be achieved with a single-stage operation in infancy. When the complete operation is attempted at an early age, the vagina is sometimes not satisfactorily exteriorized. Vaginal stenosis may require reconstruction at the time of puberty (Fig. 24.14). In this circumstance, there usually has
been a failure to carry the midline incision far enough posteriorly, and a second procedure is required to complete the first one by continuing the midline incision far enough posteriorly. In other cases, contraction at the vaginal outlet may occur even if the operation is adequately performed. A minor revision of the vaginal orifice is required to enlarge the vaginal orifice by making an incision in the midline and closing it at 90 degrees to the original axis of the incision (Fig. 24.15). In some instances, it may be necessary to create flaps to enlarge the vaginal orifice (Fig. 24.16).

FIGURE 24.15. A: Repeated operation on the vaginal outlet when the operation was not completed at the first procedure. B: The posterior incision. C: The vagina is exposed. D: The closure.

FIGURE 24.16. Labial cutaneous flap. A: An incision is made through the labia skin and subcutaneous fat. B: The flap is rotated into the perineotomy incision. C: The flap is sutured in place by interrupted 3–0 delayed-absorbable sutures. This may be repeated on the other side if required.
It should be emphasized that simple exteriorization of the lower vaginal tract can be combined with cosmetic correction of virilized external genitalia in infancy, but in most cases, it is best to defer definitive reconstruction of the intermediate or high vagina until after puberty.

**Bladder Exstrophy**

Exstrophy of the bladder is a rare congenital anomaly occurring in live births in a 1:25,000 to 1:40,000 ratio. There is a male predominance over females in a ratio of about 2:1. Classic bladder exstrophy is characterized by (i) absence of the lower anterior abdominal wall, (ii) absence of the anterior wall of the bladder so that the posterior bladder wall and the ureteric orifices are exposed, (iii) a poorly defined bladder neck and urethra, and (iv) wide separation of the pubic symphysis. A genital abnormality typically present in girls with bladder exstrophy is anterior displacement and narrowing of the vagina (Fig. 24.17) and separation of the clitoris into two distinct bodies (Fig. 24.18).

Bladder exstrophy, cloacal exstrophy, and epispadias are variants of the exstrophy epispadias complex. These defects have been attributed to failure of the normal process of ingrowth of mesoderm and the consequent lack of reinforcement of the cloacal membrane. The normal cloacal membrane is bilaminar and occupies the caudal end of the germinal disc. An ingrowth of mesenchyme between the ectodermal and endodermal layers of the cloacal membrane forms the lower abdominal wall musculature and the pelvic bones. After mesenchymal ingrowth occurs, descent of the urorectal septum divides the cloacal membrane into the bladder anteriorly and the rectum posteriorly. The urorectal septum eventually meets with the posterior remnant of the cloacal membrane, which perforates to form the anal and UGS openings. The paired genital tubercles migrate medially and fuse in the midline anterior to the cloacal membrane before perforation. Without its normal support from mesenchymal derivatives, the cloacal membrane is subject to premature rupture. Depending on the extent of the infraumbilical defect and the stage of development when rupture occurs, bladder exstrophy, cloacal exstrophy, or epispadias develops (Fig. 24.19).

**Treatment.** Our understanding of appropriate urologic management of bladder exstrophy has evolved greatly over the past few decades, and improved management has markedly increased the life expectancy and quality of life of patients with this anomaly. Historical methods of treatment involved bladder excision and a urinary diversion procedure such as ureterosigmoidostomy. These techniques are complicated by serious sequelae, including pyelonephritis, hyperchloremic acidosis, rectal incontinence, ureteral obstruction, and later development of malignancy.

Modern urologic management of bladder exstrophy relies on a staged approach to functional bladder closure. The initial procedure consists of primary bladder closure with or without iliac osteotomies to aid closure of the pelvic ring and growth and improvement of bladder capacity. The second-stage procedures usually involve bladder neck reconstruction to improve continence and bilateral ureteral reimplantations to prevent reflux. Both failures and primary reconstruction have also been performed using continent urostomy techniques, such as the Mainz II pouch. Mingin and coworkers and Gerharz and colleagues have reported their success using this technique.

The prognosis using modern-day procedures is good. Although deficiency of the pelvic floor and a predisposition for pelvic organ prolapse are not unusual with bladder exstrophy, the condition of bladder exstrophy itself can often be corrected.
and associated genital anomalies can be managed to allow comfortable sexual activity and possibly even pregnancy.

The adjunctive procedures that may be important with surgical correction of bladder exstrophy are those that address the correction of anterior displacement and narrowing of the vagina, and separation of the clitoris into two distinct bodies that are so typically associated with bladder exstrophy.

The procedure for correcting the external genitalia has evolved from one that was first described by Howard Jones Jr. in 1973. Particular emphasis is placed on attainment of an adequate vaginal diameter without further predisposing to subsequent prolapse. The first step is vertical incision into the posterior raphe of what resembles fused scrotolabial folds; next, Allis clamps are placed laterally for traction. Fine-needle point electrosurgery is then used to further open the incision, with special care taken not to take this incision too far posteriorly. The lateral portions of the incision are secured with 3-0 nonreactive absorbable sutures for further traction. The posterior vaginal edges are undermined to allow their mobilization to the exterior. The vaginal mucosa is then approximated to the perineal surface with interrupted and figure-of-eight sutures, incorporating the superficial perineal muscles into the closure. In the more posterior portion of the closure, 2-0 nonreactive absorbable suture is used, because this is the area of greatest tension. At completion, there is a significant increase in the diameter of the vagina, and the vaginal orifice usually accommodates two fingers.

Postoperative active dilatation therapy has recently been advocated. Experience with management of ambiguous genitalia has shown a decrease in the incidence of postoperative vaginal stenosis if dilatation therapy is employed during the constrictive phase (the first 6 weeks) of healing. For this reason, following reconstruction of the external genitalia and exteriorization of the vagina, appropriately sized Lucite dilators are used once or twice a day for this 6-week period or until healing is complete.

Reapproximation of the bifid clitoris (Fig. 24.20) is primarily cosmetic and is not always performed. The technique involves excising a diamond-shaped area of skin and subcutaneous tissue between the clitoral bodies. The medial aspect of each side of the clitoris is then denuded and undermined to allow a central reapproximation with a side-to-side closure.

Adjunctive Treatments. Stanton mentioned that perineotomy was performed in six patients with bladder exstrophy in which the labia and clitoris were reapproximated by a Z-plasty technique. Still others have described rather extraordinary efforts to restore the mons pubis and female escutcheon with skin flaps of hair-bearing areas. These latter reports, however, fail to mention correction of the vaginal anomaly.

Other series have described a wide range of both genital and extragenital abnormalities in association with bladder exstrophy. Stanton reviewed 70 patients with bladder exstrophy and observed an increased incidence of various müllerian
anomalies. Eleven patients were also observed to have associated rectal prolapse. Blakely and Mills observed various extra-genital abnormalities in their series, including rectal prolapse, imperforate anus, exophthalmos, renal agenesis, and spina bifida.

Results. Jones reviewed the records of all female patients diagnosed with bladder extrophy at Johns Hopkins Hospital over a 20-year time span. Of 18 patients with adequately described external genitalia, 13 had small, anteriorly displaced vaginal orifices, and the remaining five patients had vaginal orifices of normal size and location. Therefore, although demonstrating phenomena very typical of bladder extrophy, all female patients do not demonstrate the defect of narrowing of the vagina. Damario and colleagues have recently updated the Hopkins series, documenting continuing excellent long-term results.

Several series have reviewed subsequent pregnancy outcomes in patients with bladder extrophy. Clementson extensively reviewed the literature in 1958 and found 45 patients who underwent 64 pregnancies. A very high incidence of uterine prolapse was observed both before and after pregnancy. In addition, there was a higher incidence of premature labor and malpresentations (24%). Kruloff and colleagues also reported a high incidence of uterine prolapse related to pregnancy, which occurred in 6 of 7 women. Burbige and coworkers reported on 14 pregnancies in patients with a history of bladder extrophy. Uterine prolapse occurred in 7 of 11 patients, all of whom had undergone a previous urinary diversion procedure.

The mode of delivery in patients with prior urinary diversion procedures has primarily been spontaneous vaginal delivery. The increased incidence of premature labor and malpresentation, however, has warranted an increased rate of cesarean sections for obstetric indications. In patients with a prior bladder reconstruction, most surgeons advocate an elective cesarean section to eliminate stress on the pelvic floor and to avoid trauma to the delicate urinary sphincter mechanism.

Management of Uterine Prolapse with Bladder Extrophy. Several mechanisms have been proposed to explain the high incidence of uterine prolapse in patients with bladder extrophy. These mechanisms include (i) a deficiency of the pelvic floor that is due to the wide separation of the pubic symphysis, (ii) an inherent deficiency of the cardinal ligament complex, and (iii) the abnormal axis and short length of the vagina. Because wide separation of the pubic symphyses results in an enlarged genital hiatus and deficiency of the pelvic floor, it is possible that iliac ostotomies may be helpful in detaining pelvic organ prolapse by closer approximation of the levator ani and puborectal muscles. Although Gearhart and Jeffs suggest that iliac ostotomies may not be necessary if primary bladder closure is performed in the first 72 hours of life, perhaps the procedure should be given increased consideration in female patients who present such a high risk for uterine prolapse later in life.

It appears important not to extend the midline perineal incision too far posteriorly in revision of the genitalia in these patients. As the incision proceeds posteriorly, the midline septum thickens to approximately 2 cm. At this point, the levator ani muscles may be severed, further enlarging the genital hiatus. It is prudent, therefore, to be more conservative; postoperative dilator therapy may aid in achieving further vaginal diameter if needed.

A case referred to us illustrated this point. A 16-year-old nulliparous patient with bladder extrophy and a history of staged bladder reconstruction underwent revision of the external genitalia. A large posterior incision into the perineal body left a gaping introitus, and uterine prolapse had occurred several months after this procedure. Our initial approach was to reconstruct the perineal body to help contain the uterus and improve support to the pelvic floor. This reconstruction has been successful, without further prolapse 3 years after the procedure. Blakely and Mills, who observed uterine prolapse occurring very soon after enlargement of the vaginal introitus, reported a similar case.

Management of uterine prolapse associated with bladder extrophy may be difficult. The patient frequently desires preservation of her childbearing capacity. Sacrospinous fixation of the cervix may be considered, although an abnormally short vagina may produce difficulty in obtaining the suspension without significant suture bridges. An abdominal sacro-cervicopexy may also be considered. DeWeese and coworkers described this approach in 1980. They suspended the uterus to the sacrum using Ivalon suture in a patient with procidentia following repair of bladder extrophy.

FIGURE 24.20. Schematic depiction of procedure to reaproximate the clitoris. A vulvovaginoplasty has already been performed to exteriorize the vagina. A: A diamond-shaped piece of skin and subcutaneous tissue between the clitoral bodies is excised. B: The clitoral bod-
ies are then undermined and mobilized to the center for a side-to-side reaproximation.
The high historical incidence of uterine prolapse and the potential difficulties managing this problem highlight the need for the reconstructive surgeon to give extra thought and care to revision of the external genitalia in women with bladder extrophy. Appropriate reconstruction may actually accelerate genital prolapse. In addition, elective cesarean section may be the most judicious mode of delivery for limiting traumatic insults to the pelvic floor that could further increase the propensity for prolapse. Ricci and coworkers evaluated 17 patients (13 children, 2 young adults) with bladder extrophy for latex allergy. Twelve shared latex sensitization, with five demonstrating symptoms. The multiple operative and cystoscope procedures performed on this group of patients has resulted in significant latex exposure and sensitization similar to that seen in health care workers.

Carcinoma of the Vagina
Carcinoma of the vagina is uncommon, occurring in less than 2% of patients with gynecologic malignancies. The average age at presentation is 60 years. Vaginal carcinoma is most frequently secondary to metastases from tumors of the cervix and vulva rather than originating in the vagina. Lesions that encroach on the outer vagina from the vulva must be separated from lesions that originate in the vaginal canal to be considered a vaginal primary.

The International Federation of Obstetrics and Gynecology (FIGO) has agreed on the following exclusionary criteria for the classification of vaginal cancer:

1. A vaginal growth extending to the portio of the cervix and reaching the area of the external os should always be considered a carcinoma of the cervix.
2. A vulvar growth that has extended to the vagina should be classified as carcinoma of the vulva.
3. A vaginal growth that is limited to the urethra should be classified separately as carcinoma of the urethra.

Clinicians now satisfy the staging criteria for the diagnosis of primary carcinoma of the vagina by showing a histologically negative cervix, urethra, vulva, and endometrium.

The criteria for the definition of primary carcinoma of the vagina were established after many clinicians reported the recurrence of vaginal lesions after treatment of carcinoma in situ of the cervix. Tumors recur in 1% to 6% of cases. Today, extension of carcinoma in situ and invasive carcinoma of the cervix to the vaginal fornices or upper vagina can be easily identified with the use of colposcopy.

The clinical stages of carcinoma of the vagina agreed on by FIGO are listed in Table 24.1. In 1973, Perez and coworkers proposed that stage II be divided into stage IIA and IIB to provide a more accurate definition of the extent of the lesion. In the proposed modified FIGO classification, stage IIA includes subvaginal infiltration not extending into the parametrial regions, whereas stage IIB includes parametrial or paravaginal infiltration not extending to the pelvic wall. This classification has not been accepted by FIGO. Creasman and colleagues queried the National Cancer Data Base (NCDB), a central registry of health care workers.

The most common histologic type of primary vaginal tumor is squamous carcinoma, which accounts for 84% to 90% of all vaginal cancers (Table 24.2). Adenocarcinoma, including endometrioid adenocarcinoma (EA), is the next most common type, representing about 4% to 9% of vaginal cancers. Sarcomas, including leiomyosarcoma and sarcoma botryoides, account for 2% to 3% of vaginal lesions, and melanomas account for 1% to 2% of malignant neoplasms of the vagina. Rare tumors, such as endometrial stromal tumors or neoplasms originating in embryologic urothelial remnants, may form a transitional cell neoplasm that involves the vagina.

Squamous carcinoma of the vagina is discovered in 10% to 15% of cases after the finding of squamous cancer in other parts of the lower genital tract, such as the vulva or cervix. This has led to the theory of multicentric origin of squamous cancer
ties. have anatomic cervical, vaginal, and urinary tract abnormali-
ness, however, are exposed in utero 25% of women exposed in utero
development of the vagina. The effect of the DES drug provided an
greatly increased our understanding of the embryologic devel-
were exposed to DES. Fortunately, the incidence of vaginal adenocarcinoma in these young women has been quite low, ranging from 0.14 to 1.6 in 1,000 exposed women. More than 500 documented cases have been reported to the DES registry to date. Observations of the development of vaginal adenosis and adenocarcinoma in teenage girls whose mothers were given DES before the 1st week of pregnancy brought new insights to the study of squamous tumor cells in the lower genital tract and greatly increased our understanding of the embryologic develop-
T A B L E  24.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Frequency (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Squamous carcinoma</td>
<td>85–90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma (including DES-related)</td>
<td>4–9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcoma</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melanoma</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DES, diethylstilbestrol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

in the lower genital tract. Woodruff and Parmley and others emphasize this correlation and have recommended that patients with squamous cancer in one area be categorized as high risk for the development of squamous carcinoma in other sites of the lower genital tract. A viral etiology, such as the human papillomavirus, is most likely responsible for these findings. Carcinoma may arise in the neovagina lined with a split-
depth thickness skin graft from the buttock or lateral thigh. Canti-
oma of the neovagina is a rare cancer; only nine cases have been reported. The primary carcinoma seems to be related to the transplanted tissue. In three cases, adenocarcinoma was as-
associated with the use of a large or small bowel intestinal graft for vagnal reconstruction. Five cases of squamous cell cancer arising from the graft have been documented. The trans-
planted epithelium in the vagina may be exposed to an undet-
tified carcinogen or mutagen, as has been documented with the vulva, and can undergo malignant transformation in this envi-
ronment. These observations underscore the need for regular pelvic examinations after operative vaginoplasty with either a bowel graft or a split-thickness skin graft. DES, a nonsteroidal estrogenic hormone thought to enhance embryo implantation and placental development, was intro-
duced into clinical obstetrics in 1944 in Boston and became popular and widely used during the next two decades. Women with a history of previous spontaneous abortions or other risk factors for early pregnancy loss of multiple gestations were given DES. It is known now that DES use during the first trimester of pregnancy may cause vaginal neoplasia. It was not until the late 1960s, however—when a cluster of cases of ade-
nocarcinoma appeared in young women younger than age 25 years (all offspring of DES-treated women)—that Herbst and colleagues connected the result with the unusual cause.

The DES-associated adenocarcinoma originally was thought to arise from mesonephric remnants in the vagina, and the disease consequently was mislabeled as a clear cell carcinoma. However, electron microscopic analysis of the ultrastructure of both the adenocarcinoma and the vaginal adenosis allowed Fenoglio and colleagues to clearly define these lesions as composed of columnar epithelium, similar in all respects to endocervical epithelium, and of paramesonephric (mullerian) origin. The colposcopic studies of Stall and Mattingly and of others confirm these observations. Vaginal adenosis has been found by colposcopic examin-
tion to occur in 34% to 90% of exposed offspring and vaginal adenocarcinoma in 50%. Although the hypothesis is not proven, there is a strong possibility that the benign vaginal lesion is the cell of origin for vaginal adenocarcinoma. The risk of development of clear cell adenocarcinoma in an exposed woman between birth and age 34 is 1 in 1,000.

Etiology

During embryologic development, the vagina is formed from the columnar epithelium of the mullerian ducts and UGS. The tissue then transforms into squamous epithelium, so that the vaginal and cervical epithelium have a common embryologic origin. Squamous metaplasia within the vaginal adenosis has been observed with a colposcope, and transformation of the metaplastic tissue also has been demonstrated in the develop-
ment of intraepithelial neoplasia. Although many agents have been postulated as carcinogenic factors, none have been posi-
demonstrated. It is quite possible that squamous car-
cinoma arises from the effects of an oncogenic agent on the transformation zone within the foci of vaginal adenosis. The studies now being done on the effects of DES may find some interesting causative factors that influence vaginal carcinomas.

Carcinoma of the vagina also may share a common causative denominator with cervical carcinoma. Because slightly more than 50% of the cases occur in the posterior wall of the upper third of the vagina, which is the end point of vaginal coitus, vaginal carcinoma should be generally induced. As with cervical carcinoma, primary carcinoma of the vagina usually occurs in sexually active women. Except for the cases of adenocarcinoma in young women exposed to DES, squamous carcinoma of the vagina is unquestionably associated with sex-
ual activity. As with cervical intraepithelial neoplasia and car-
cinoma, the human papillomavirus is probably responsible for the majority of vaginal carcinomas.

Site of Lesion

Plentl and Friedman found that 51% of vaginal carcinoma le-
sions occur in the upper third of the vagina, 30% in the lower third, and 19% in the middle third. In the lower third, lesions most often occur in the anterior wall, whereas in the upper third, lesions most often appear in the posterior vaginal wall. Although the location is observed on diagnosis, the precise site of origin is difficult to pinpoint because the tumors usually have spread to various parts of the vagina by that time.

Pathways of Spread

The lymphatic drainage of the vagina takes place through dif-
ferent pathways. The upper third drains by way of the cervi-
cal lymphatics, the lower third passes by way of the vaginal lymphatics, and the middle third communicates with both the upper and the lower lymphatic channels. The vaginal vault and the anterior wall of the upper vagina drain to the inter-
iliac pelvic lymph nodes, where they communicate with the
external iliac, the hypogastric, and the common iliac nodes. The lymphatic drainage of the posterior vagina communicates directly with the deep pelvic nodes, including the inferior gluteal, sacral, and rectal nodes.

Because the major pathways of lymphatic drainage are to the superior and inferior gluteal muscles and the common iliac lymph nodes, the potential for extrapelvic spread of vaginal carcinoma is great. When extrapelvic spread occurs, prognosis usually is poor. The primary site of origin of the tumor is an important indicator of lymph node metastases, whether the tumor will metastasize to the inguinal-femoral chain or to the deep pelvic lymph nodes. When the disease involves the lower third of the vagina, 6% to 7% of patients have metastases to the inguinal-femoral lymph nodes.

Diagnosis

In general, invasive carcinoma of the vagina appears as either a raised exophytic lesion or an ulcerative, depressed lesion in the vaginal wall. Biopsy can be performed on both types of lesions easily, and diagnosis can be established without difficulty. Vaginal cytology usually is positive if an adequate cell sample is obtained from the exfoliated lesion, although, as often happens with cervical carcinoma, many cases of false-negative cytology occur even when an invasive lesion is present. Colposcopy, Lugol solution, or both can be used to demarcate the areas for biopsy, although iodine staining usually is unnecessary if the lesion is clearly visible.

Identifying vaginal carcinoma at an early stage can be a major problem because the first lesions appear within the epithelial cells, frequently indistinguishable from the remainder of the vaginal epithelium. Only by colposcopic examination or with iodine staining can alterations in the surface epithelium of the vagina be identified. Lugol and associates have achieved an accuracy of 88% to 90% in detecting dysplastic lesions in DES-exposed patients with adenosis, but their technique requires separate, four-quadrant vaginal smears from the walls of the vagina to increase the sensitivity of the Papanicolaou smear. The use of colposcopy combined with the advantage of iodine staining of the vagina to reveal occult lesions that may be associated with adenosis. Staff and Mattingly reported an accuracy of 96% in detecting abnormal epithelial lesions of the vagina in DES-exposed women by careful examination and colposcopy.

Because the vaginal speculum can obscure surface lesions and delay early diagnosis, the instrument should be rotated during the examination so that the entire canal can be inspected. With iodine staining, the clinician can detect multifocal lesions, but the entire vagina also should be cytologically tested. A thorough colposcopic examination can be used to detect vaginal carcinoma if the clinician has that expertise.

Treatment

Primary vaginal carcinoma is treated either with surgery or with radiotherapy. The choice of treatment depends on three factors: the site of the lesion, the location of the tumor in the vagina, and the clinical stage of the disease.

Stage 0 Lesions. Easiest to treat by far is vaginal intraepithelial neoplasia III (VAIN III), and it offers the most hopeful prognosis. Either surgery or radiotherapy can be used, depending on the location of the lesion. If the disease is located in the upper vagina and the margins of the disease are distinct, a partial vaginectomy, with or without hysterectomy, is a practical and successful method of treatment.

Surgical Conditions of the Vagina and Urethra

The carbon dioxide laser has proved to be a simple, effective means of treating noninvasive vaginal carcinoma. Laser therapy offers conservative treatment for both focal and multifocal lesions without impairment of normal coital function. Because there is a risk of residual disease in 10% of laser-treated patients, careful colposcopic and cytologic follow-up are critical. Histologic study is difficult after the carbon dioxide laser vaporizes the treated lesion, so the diagnosis of recurrence may be made by the ultrasonic surgical aspirator, the tip of which vibrates 23,000 times per second, fragmenting and aspirating the tissue in contact with it. This technique permits histologic evaluation of the collected tissue fragments. The operative site also heals faster secondary to decreased thermal damage. Robinson and colleagues reported their experience in treating 46 patients with VAIN. Sixty-six percent (29) of those initially treated with ultrasonic surgical aspiration did not have recurrence. Fifty-two percent of patients treated for recurrent disease (17) did not experience a recurrence. The mean duration of follow-up was 21 months.

Noninvasive methods such as administration of 5-fluorouracil vaginal cream have also proved efficacious in treating VAIN.

Radiation therapy is rarely used to treat VAIN. However, radiation is an excellent modality for suspected invasion when the medical risk for further evaluation by surgery is too great. A vaginal cylinder, such as the Bloedorn applicator, can be used for radiotherapeutic treatment to deliver 70 Gy to the vaginal surface over a period of about 72 hours. If the lesion is confined to the vaginal fornices, vaginal colpostats can be used to deliver a similar dosage. Lesions in the lower third of the vagina may be treated by partial vaginectomy or by intravaginal irradiation using a variety of brachytherapy techniques.

Stage I Lesions. Surgery, radiation, or both are the primary modalities for treating vaginal carcinomas. Lesions in the vaginal fornix can be treated with a radical Wertheim hysterectomy, partial vaginectomy, and bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy. Treatment for this lesion is similar to that for invasive cervical carcinoma. If pelvic lymph nodes are histologically positive or if paraaortic lymph nodes look suspicious, a paraaortic lymphadenectomy should be performed. If the lymph nodes are histologically positive for carcinoma, pelvic radiation with or without paraaortic radiation should be administered. As with cervical carcinoma, the size of the lesion is prognostic of our ability to adequately treat these patients with primary surgery. Large lesions not permitting clear surgical margins (e.g., proximity to the bladder or rectum) should be treated with primary radiation therapy. Radical surgery also may require the replacement of the upper vagina with a split-thickness skin graft to reestablish normal vaginal length for a sexually active woman. Irradiation therapy is an alternative treatment for this stage of disease.

The radical Wertheim hysterectomy has been quite successful in treating stage I adenocarcinoma in young women who were exposed to DES in utero. More than 75% of patients are cured. Magrina and associates treated a patient with stage I disease at their institution with laparoscopic radical parametrectomy and pelvic and aortic lymphadenectomy. The role of laparoscopy in the treatment of vaginal carcinoma will continue to expand. Although its role in paraaortic lymphadenectomy may be debated, laparoscopy to excise the pelvic and paraaortic nodes before radiation may be beneficial to patients with advanced disease.

Sentinel Node Detection. Sentinel node detection in vaginal carcinoma has not gained universal acceptance. Gynecologic...
tumor—such as cervical and vulvar—have been much more amenable to sentinel node detection and biopsy. Van Dam and colleagues used 99mTc-labeled nanocolloids in primary and recurrent vaginal carcinomas. Nodes were identified laparoscopically and resected. Three of four patients had nodes identified through sentinel node detection.

Radiation therapy is the preferable treatment for large proximal lesions or middle or distal vaginal tumors. A combination of teletherapy (external beam) and interstitial or intracavitary therapy is used.

Stage II and Stage III Lesions. More extensive lesions of the vagina pose an extremely difficult therapeutic problem for the gynecologist. Because the levator ani muscles of the pelvic diaphragm surround the vagina, penetration of the lateral wall of the vagina by the invasive tumor frequently is associated with fixation of the disease to the adjacent pelvic musculature. Even radical surgery cannot effectively control the disease when it extends beyond the confines of the vagina into the paravaginal tissues. Instead, the major method of treatment for stage II and stage III lesions is radiotherapy.

When stage II lesions involve the anterior or posterior wall of the vaginal septum, an anterior or posterior exenteration with pelvic node dissection may be required. When the disease includes the lower third of the vagina, a groin dissection is necessary also. Because surgery must be so extensive, its usefulness is limited when the disease affects the paravaginal region (stage IIb) or the lateral vaginal wall (stage III).

Stage IV Lesions. When advanced lesions involve only the bladder or the rectum, exenteration may be required to control the disease effectively. Unfortunately, pelvic exenteration, either anterior or posterior, can be used only when there is no other extension of the disease, and it is rare for the bladder and rectum to be involved without involvement of the adjacent paravaginal tissues. If the patient is not an acceptable surgical risk for exenteration, external beam megavoltage irradiation therapy followed by intravaginal or interstitial irradiation can be used to control the local disease and to offer palliation. If the tumor does not respond after 5,000 cGy of irradiation treatment to the whole pelvis, an exenteration may be required to control the disease in properly selected patients. Exenteration is also recommended for central recurrences without lymph node metastasis.

Advanced/Recurrent Disease. Pelvic exenteration is the best treatment for patients who have failed primary irradiation therapy of vaginal carcinoma. As with cervical carcinoma, it is imperative that the recurrences be central and nodes radiographically negative. Before performing the exenteration, pelvic and paraaortic nodes are sent for frozen section. Depending on the age of the patient, continent urinary diversions, neovaginal, and primary end-to-end colon anastomosis are performed when possible. Berek and colleagues reported on their 45-year pelvic exenteration experience at UCLA. Survival for cervical/vaginal cancers was 73% at 1 year, 57% at 3 years, and 34% at 5 years (Fig. 24.21). Positive margins had a deleterious effect on survival (Fig. 24.22).

Irradiation Therapy

Irradiation treatment of vaginal carcinoma is easily divided between lesions in the upper and middle thirds and the lower third of the vagina.


Upper and Middle Thirds of the Vagina. Because the lymphatic drainage of the upper and middle vagina extends through the hypogastric and pelvic nodes, full pelvic irradiation is necessary. Treatment usually includes a combination of techniques. External beam megavoltage therapy using 4,500 to 5,000 cGy focused on the midplane of the pelvis is used to treat the full pelvis and to encompass the vagina. A vaginal implant of

absence of tumor in the groin nodes is a poor prognostic sign, suggesting that the deep pelvic nodes also may be involved in about 6% to 7% of cases. Because the incidence of vaginal cancer is so low, the exact frequency of pelvic node involvement is not known. One report indicates that about 6% of 300 women with stage II vaginal disease had evidence of pelvic node involvement by X-ray, and another report indicates that the incidence probably occurs more frequently than it is diagnosed; however, the condition has not been well recognized by the medical profession. Despite the many documented cases of urethral diverticuloma, the female urethra develops from the caudal end of the UGS after it separates from the vaginal canal between the 8th and 12th week of embryologic life. Because the vagina and urethra are so closely integrated, the urethra shares many common disease processes and anatomic defects with the vagina. Bacteria in the lower genital tract frequently colonize in the outer urethra, harbor in the paraurethral glands, and enter the bladder to produce acute infections. A bacterial infection in the lower genital tract may not become clinically manifest for several years, until a Skene duct cyst or a urethral diverticulum develops.

Estrogen deficiency causes atrophic changes of the vaginal mucosa and can have a similar effect on the urethral mucosa. Thinning of the epithelium and irritation of the sensory nerve fibers can cause urinary frequency and dysuria. Prolapse at the external meatus also may result from atrophic changes of the urethra.

**Table 24.3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>1/6 (69%)</td>
<td>35/18 (85%)</td>
<td>6/18 (83%)</td>
<td>39/59 (85%)</td>
<td>80 (75%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>19/39 (68%)</td>
<td>97/39 (78%)</td>
<td>31/39 (64%)</td>
<td>60/39 (47%)</td>
<td>95 (45%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIb</td>
<td>20/39 (65%)</td>
<td>39/39 (100%)</td>
<td>39/39 (100%)</td>
<td>60/39 (47%)</td>
<td>95 (45%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>11/11 (63%)</td>
<td>5/39 (13%)</td>
<td>21/39 (53%)</td>
<td>18 (33%)</td>
<td>45 (30%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>12/39 (31%)</td>
<td>7/39 (18%)</td>
<td>20/39 (52%)</td>
<td>8 (13%)</td>
<td>62 (19%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I–IV</td>
<td>61/61 (46%)</td>
<td>84/84 (52%)</td>
<td>119/119 (53%)</td>
<td>162 (40%)</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


d Not included in the figures are 15 patients of the total patient group of 134 who were stage 0.

e Data from Pecorelli S, ed. FIGO annual report on the results of treatment in gynecological cancer. Int J Gynecol Obstet 2003;83:27.
whenever an article reporting on urethral diverticulum appears in the literature, there is a coincident upsurge in the number of cases diagnosed. According to the National Hospital Discharge Survey Data Base (1978–1998), 27,000 inpatient procedures were performed for the repair of urethral diverticula in the United States over a 19-year period. The surgical treatment is three times as high in African American women. Moreover, the rate of inpatient surgery is declining.

**Etiology**

In 1941, Parmenter suggested several congenital factors that could develop into a urethral diverticulum, including Gartner duct, a faulty union of primal folds, cell nets, and wolffian ducts or vaginal cysts that rupture into the urethra. Additional possible causes include trauma at childbirth, surgical trauma, urethral stone, urethral stricture, and infection of the urethral glands.

Of the many possible causes of urethral diverticula that have been considered, none have been proved. Two of the most probable causes are Gonococcus meningitis infection (although gonococci are seldom cultured) and infection of the suburethral tissue by vaginal flora. Huffman’s experiments support the notion that a suburethral infection can develop into an abscess that becomes lined with epithelium. Huffman demonstrated periurethral openings by constructing wax models of infected tissue by vaginal flora. Huffman’s experiments support the notion that a suburethral infection can develop into an abscess that becomes lined with epithelium. Huffman demonstrated periurethral openings by constructing wax models of infected tissue by vaginal flora.

**Symptoms**

Dysuria, urgency, frequency, and hematuria occurred together in 85% to 90% of 12 cases reviewed by Peters and Vaughn. Other frequently occurring symptoms are a lump in the vagina caused by protrusion of the diverticulum sac into the vagina, dyspareunia (intermittent discharge from the urethra), and pain on walking. Pyuria and cystitis also occur, depending on the location of the diverticular orifice. If the opening is sufficiently close to the outer end of the urethra, there may be no leakage of purulent exudate back into the bladder, which may explain the absence of symptoms of cystitis in 5% of cases. If the diverticulum is located in the posterior urethra near the urethrovaginal junction, stress urinary incontinence may be a significant symptom. In a review of 70 cases from the Johns Hopkins Hospital, Ginsberg and Genadry found that 17% of the diverticula were located in the proximal (outer) urethra, 43% in the midurethra, and 31% in the distal (posterior) urethra; in the remaining cases, the site was not specifically identified.

Not only are urinary tract symptoms the most common clinical expression of the urethral lesion, but a history of recurrent refractory cystitis is a clue that a diverticulum is the source of the infection.

**Diagnosis**

Urethral diverticula usually are small, varying from 3 mm to 3 cm in diameter. Some of the larger sacs cover the entire length of the urethra. On palpation of a suburethral mass, tenderness commonly is found. Pressure on the mass may cause the escape of urine or exudate from the urethral orifice. An examination of the floor of the urethra through the water cystoscope while suburethral pressure is being applied reveals an opening in 50% to 70% of cases. The pressure may force contents of the diverticulum into the urethra while it is being viewed. Some of the openings are extremely small and may be missed. Inflammatory swelling can result in edema of the orifice, which makes visualization difficult or impossible.

The diagnosis of urethral diverticulum is firmly established by means of positive-pressure urethrography (PPUG). A special catheter is used to block the urethra at both ends and to fill it and the diverticulum under pressure with water-soluble contrast medium (Figs. 24.23–24.25). If the urethral orifice to the diverticulum is quite large, a voiding cystourethrogram


together with a positive pelvic film may demonstrate the diverticulum. Although not as sensitive as PPUG, VCUG (voiding cystourethrography) may assist in identifying a urethral diverticulum. Wang and Wang compared VCUG and PPUG in evaluating 120 women. Twenty of 120 women demonstrated diverticulum. Thirteen were positive on PPUG and 10 with VCUG. If the surgeon’s suspicion is high for urethral diverticulum, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) should be considered if both the PPUG and VCUG studies are negative.

More recently, Chou and associates have suggested that a new method, virtual computerized tomography urethroscopy, increases the accuracy of diagnoses. The diverticulum orifice is less likely to be missed, especially when an inflammatory process or obstructed orifice exists. Gerrard and colleagues have suggested that transvaginal ultrasound is effective for evaluating patients with suspected urethral diverticulum. The technique is accurate, low cost, and readily available and should be considered as an initial screening technique for women when one suspects a urethral diverticulum. Computerized tomography and MRI have better defined diverticular anatomy. Neitlich and colleagues have suggested MRI to be more sensitive than double balloon urethrography. These techniques should be considered after other conventional methods have not defined the diverticulum.

Occasionally a diverticulum occurs with no clinical evidence of inflammation. If the diverticulum is diagnosed during a careful pelvic examination, and if the patient is completely asymptomatic except for a previous history of urinary tract problems, surgery is not necessary. With a complication rate of 15% to 20%, diverticulectomy should not be considered a quick and easy procedure. Removal of an asymptomatic urethral diverticulum may create more problems than it prevents, particularly if the sac is small or located in the floor of the posterior urethra. Only if a patient experiences acute or recurrent symptoms should urethral surgery be performed. Leng and McGuire classify urethral diverticulum as true versus pseudodiverticulum (Table 24.5).

**Treatment**

A diverticulum that requires treatment must be completely excised before the defect in the urethra can be closed. Failure to remove the entire diverticulum results only in recurrence of the problem. Many techniques have been used to identify the anatomic boundaries of the diverticulum. One popular method is to pass a sound into the diverticulum through the urethral orifice. Another method is to distend the diverticulum by injecting it with fibrinogen and thrombin mixed in a syringe to form a firm fibrin clot. However, direct anatomic dissection of the diverticulum from the paraurethral fascia and vaginal wall without visual enhancement of the anatomic boundaries offers a better success rate. The smooth covering of a diverticulum protruding into the vagina can be easily distinguished from the rugal folds of the vaginal mucosa.

If the wall of the diverticulum is left unopened until the dissection has reached the base of the diverticulum sac, its neck can be visualized directly while it is removed. Inadvertent removal of a portion of the urethral floor along the base of the diverticulum is too common an error; if the mucosa is closed with too much tension, a urethral stricture or a postoperative fistula may result.

**Excision and Layered Closure.** A midline incision is made through the vaginal mucosa, which is then separated from the wall of the diverticulum (Fig. 24.26A). The wall of the
diverticulum also is dissected from the paraurethral fascia in as wide a circumference as can be developed. The diverticulum is opened and the interior of the cavity is inspected. If the orifice of the diverticulum is large, the opening of the urethra can easily be seen, especially if a catheter has been placed in the urethra and bladder (Fig. 24.26B). The rest of the thin, friable mucosa of the diverticulum is separated from the vaginal mucosa and fascia before the neck of the diverticulum is trimmed near the urethral orifice. The lining of the diverticulum is friable because of inflammatory changes and the thin layer fragments during the dissection. Meticulous sharp dissection is required to separate the lining completely from the vagina and from the floor of the urethra. We repeat, in caution, that the neck of the diverticulum should be carefully resected to avoid eversion and to prevent the removal of mucosa from the urethral floor.

The urethral defect is closed with 3-0 delayed-absorbable sutures interrupted so that the edges can be inverted (Fig. 24.26C). After the interrupted sutures are tied, the paraurethral fascia is closed in a double-layer “vest-over-pants” technique in which the top layer of fascia is sutured beneath the opposite and overlapping fascia and fastened to the urethral wall on that opposite side. The top layer of fascia is then sutured at its edge to the underlying fascial layer. The fascial margins are sutured by more durable 2-0 delayed-absorbable sutures (Fig. 24.26D and E), and the vaginal mucosa finally is trimmed and closed, also with interrupted 2-0 delayed-absorbable sutures. Faerber as well as Leng and McGuire have advocated diverticulectomy and placement of pubovaginal slings. Faerber uses the sling for intrinsic sphincter deficiency, whereas Leng and McGuire have recommended fascial slings to close the defect if it is too large for reinforcement.

The bladder is filled with 300 mL of distilled water, and a suprapubic Silastic catheter is inserted and left in place until the morning of the fifth postoperative day. A suprapubic catheter is used in preference to a urethral catheter for three major reasons: to avoid trauma to the operative site, to avoid the necessity for transurethral catheterization during attempts to initiate voiding, and to avoid the discomfort of a urethral catheter. On the fifth day after surgery, the patient should attempt to void with the three-way stopcock of the suprapubic catheter closed to allow the bladder to fill.

Urethrotomy. Urethrotomy has been used by Edwards and Beebe and by Kropp to treat diverticula. Splitting the floor of the urethra from the meatus down its full length to the site of the orifice of the diverticulum allows the sac to be well visualized during excision. As a rule, however, cases of urethral

---

**TABLE 24.5**

**URETHRAL DIVERTICULUM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>True Diverticulum</th>
<th>Pseudodiverticulum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No prior urethral surgery</td>
<td>History of urethral surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic recurring symptoms of urgency, dysuria, dyspareunia, dribbling</td>
<td>Relatively few voiding symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic lower urinary tract infections</td>
<td>Cystoscopy demonstrates broad-mouthed ostium to diverticulum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrow-necked ostium not readily apparent on radiography or cystoscopy</td>
<td>More likely to have stress incontinence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FIGURE 24.26. Suburethral diverticulum. A: A midline vaginal incision is made over the diverticulum. B: The diverticulum is dissected from the vaginal mucosa and surrounding fascia. Freed diverticulum is excised from the floor of the urethra, avoiding removal of an excessive amount of the urethral wall. C: The urethra is closed with interrupted 3-0 delayed-absorbable sutures placed through the muscularis and mucosa to ensure mucosa-to-mucosa approximation. The paraurethral fascia is mobilized with sharp dissection from the vaginal mucosa. D: The paraurethral fascia is plicated beneath the urethral incision, using the vest-over-pants technique. The inner layer of fascia is sutured to the undersurface of the outer layer using horizontal mattress sutures of 2-0 delayed-absorbable material. The inset is a cross-sectional view of suture placement. E: Completion of vest-over-pants plication of paraurethral fascia over the floor of the urethra. The free margin of the outer fascia is sutured to the inner fascial layer. The inset is a cross-sectional view of suture placement.
diverticula can be successfully repaired without such an extensive incision that requires the floor of the urethra to heal along its entire length. Healing is particularly a problem if there has been recent infection in the diverticulum.

Marsupialization. In 1970, Spence and Duckett recommended marsupialization of the diverticulum to prevent recurrence, to minimize operating time, and to reduce blood loss. This procedure has been endorsed by Lichtman and Robertson and by Ginsberg and Genadry. Stress urinary incontinence has not been reported as a complication, but only, we suspect, because marsupialization is not used to treat lesions in the posterior urethra near the bladder base. Marsupialization is a useful procedure when diverticula occur in the outer third of the urethra, where a permanent opening in the outer floor of the urethra would not adversely influence intraurethral pressure.

Complications of Diverticulectomy

Complications arise in about 20% of cases treated for diverticula of the urethra. Urethral stricture can occur when too much urethral mucosa is removed, but strictures usually can be resolved by urethral dilatations. Urethral fistula, a serious and troublesome complication of diverticulectomy, occurs in about 5% of treated patients.

Postoperative fistulas frequently develop when acute or subacute infection in the walls of the diverticulum causes the urethral mucosa to become friable; the urinary incontinence that develops from urethral fistulas is far more troublesome than the initial symptoms of the diverticulum. Closure of a urethral fistula is difficult because the blood supply to the floor of the urethra is delicate, and scarring and infection often develop with repeated efforts to close the urethra. A fistula in the outer part of the urethra may be asymptomatic and may not need to be repaired, but there normally are reports with an outer fistula of spraying of urine when voiding.

Urethral Prolapse

Although there have been few recent reports of urethral prolapse, nearly 400 cases have been published in the English literature since 1732. More than half these cases occurred in infants and children; the remainder occurred in elderly patients.

Urethral prolapse is characterized by a sliding outward of the urethral mucosa around the entire urethral meatus. The urethra may become cyanotic, edematous, and infarcted (Fig. 24.27). Symptoms vary greatly. Prolapse may cause no discomfort, in which case it is detected only by bloody discharge of congested tissues that are breaking down, but more often there are reports of severe and continuous pain, urinary frequency, and tenesmus. Occasionally, in a small child, tissue reaction and edema of the outer urethra produces urinary retention rather than the more usual urinary frequency. Urethral prolapse is thought to be the result of poor development of or atrophic changes in the collagen and elastic tissues of the submucosa. In infants, prolapse usually follows a severe coughing or crying spell. In some older patients, too, prolapse has followed paroxysms of coughing. In older patients, diminished tone and elasticity of tissue alone may be sufficient to cause some cases of urethral prolapse.

Treatment of urethral prolapse may be palliative or surgical. Hot, moist compresses provide temporary comfort. A small mass of tissue can be reduced, but recurrence is common.

Surgical Techniques

Several surgical procedures have been suggested, including the one advocated by Kelly and Burnam, in which the prolapsed mucosa is excised by a circular incision (Fig. 24.28A). The cut edges are then sutured with 3-0 delayed-absorbable suture.
material, avoiding an excessive number of stitches, which can result in stricture of the urethral meatus (Fig. 24.28B). In most cases, this circumcision technique has proved to be the preferred method of correction.

Cryosurgery also has been used to treat urethral prolapse. The method is extremely effective in producing complete annular necrosis and healing of the prolapsed tissue (Fig. 24.29).

The cryosurgery procedure can be performed without anesthesia, although for a young child, a local anesthetic is advisable. A suprapubic Silastic catheter is inserted and is left in postoperatively to permit bladder drainage until complete, spontaneous voiding can occur. The catheter also helps to prevent postoperative trauma at the suture line around the meatus.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Incorporating an exam of the external genitalia into routine practice of clinicians caring for children can prevent delays in diagnosing imperforate hymen, misdiagnosis, and potential morbidity. To prevent scarring, stenosis, and subsequent dyspareunia in women with imperforate hymen, the hymenal tissue should not be excised too close to the vaginal mucosa.

- Sexually ambiguous external genitalia defects of the UGS are remarkably constant in appearance regardless of the etiology and differ only in degree of malformation, ranging somewhere intermediate to that of a normal girl and that of a normal boy. Thus, operative procedure for reconstruction of ambiguous genitalia into feminine genitalia does not vary in its essential elements.

- The common goals for the female reconstruction of ambiguous genitalia include reduction of clitoral size, creation of labia minora, and exteriorization of the vagina. Any reconstruction of the external genitalia with the objective of producing normal female appearance and function requires a full understanding of the surgical anatomy.

- It is essential to accurately identify the site of communication of the vagina with the UGS in female reconstruction of ambiguous genitalia. Knowledge of the possible variants in communication of the vagina with the UGS is critical before entertaining surgical correction.

- One objective of the reconstruction procedure for external genitalia is to delay the procedure until the anomalous structures are of a size to permit easy identification of all structures. Repair may be delayed until menarche, when maturity and the desire for sexual activity are usually well established.

- Surgical efforts of clitoral reduction focus on concealment, plication, resection, and reduction, with an attempt to provide a normal cosmesis without sacrificing sensation or vascularity of the glans. Even after seemingly successful clitoral reduction, the sensory function is significantly impaired, and this should be taken into consideration during counseling.

- Preoperative identification and catheterization or sounding of the vaginal orifice is key to the performance of a successful, one-stage procedure.

- It generally is recommended that exteriorization of the vagina be postponed until near puberty because higher estrogen levels may prevent stenosis, and sufficiently maturity in the patient is needed to comply with a postoperative dilatation program.

- When the complete operation is attempted at an early age, the vagina is sometimes not satisfactorily exteriorized. It should be emphasized that simple exteriorization of the lower vaginal tract can be combined with cosmetic correction of virilized external genitalia in infancy, but in most cases, it is best to defer definitive reconstruction of the intermediate or high vagina until after puberty.
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

Bibliography


Davis BL, Robinson DG. Diverticula of the female urethra: assay of 120 cases. J Urol 1975;113:45.


Fritscher-Dinges, Moritz GR. Carcinoma in situ of the vagina: a study and review. Gynecol Oncol 1976;43:534.


Surgical Conditions of the Vagina and Urthra


Nuri D, Halton BS, Stanczak NR, et al. Radiotherapy of primary vaginal carcino-


Oster H, Dandshahler F, Raskoff HJ, et al. Gender assignment in female con-


Posner JC, Spandorfer PR. Early detection of imperforate hymen prevents mor-


Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

Reiner WR. Sex assignment in the neonate with intersex or inadequate genitalia. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 1997;151:1044.


CHAPTER 25 ■ SURGERY FOR ANOMALIES OF THE MÜLLERIAN DUCTS
JOHN A. ROCK AND LESLEY L. BREECH

DEFINITIONS
Hematometra—The distension of the uterus with blood or menstrual fluid.
Hematometrocolpos—The distension of the uterus and vagina with blood or menstrual fluid; because the vaginal wall is more distensible, the vagina will preferentially fill before the uterus.
Hydrocolpos—The distension of the vagina with fluid; often seen in infants with complex reproductive anomalies.
Metroplasty—Uterine reconstructive procedure.
Uterine anlagen—An underdeveloped uterine structure that is a remnant of a single embryologic mullerian duct.

Maldevelopment of the mullerian ducts occurs in a variety of forms, and each anomaly is distinctive. Nevertheless, some generalizations can be made. Classifications of vaginal anomalies based on certain anatomic findings are useful in organizing the type of malformation, but there usually are exceptions to each rule. Thus, what appears, after a preliminary diagnostic evaluation, to be an apparently isolated vaginal malformation may be found later to be associated with a uterine or renal anomaly. A comprehensive preoperative evaluation of patients with suspected malformations of the mullerian ducts is essential, but a clear understanding of the particular anomaly may not be established until the time of surgical correction. Reproductive surgeons must therefore be equally skilled in both uterine and vaginal reconstruction.

The patient with a uterovaginal anomaly often relies entirely on her physician to clarify the reproductive consequences associated with her diagnosis. The physician can help to allay her anxieties by making a prompt evaluation and giving a full and accurate description of the reproductive implications or the obstetric consequences of her particular uterovaginal anomaly.

CLASSIFICATION OF UTEROVAGINAL ANOMALIES
Classifications of uterovaginal anomalies originally were organized on the basis of clinical findings. Our improved understanding of the embryologic development of most uterovaginal anomalies has enabled categorization on this basis. The 1988 American Fertility Society (AFS) classification of mullerian anomalies (Table 25.1) offers an alternative based on the degree of failure of normal uterine development. Anomalies are grouped according to similarities of clinical manifestations, treatment, and prognosis for fetal salvage. The AFS classification system is weighted primarily toward disorders of lateral fusion and does not include associated vaginal anomalies, although the scheme does allow the user to describe anomalies involving the vagina, tubes, and urinary tract as associated malformations.

No classification of mullerian maldevelopment can focus entirely on the uterus, however. The vagina is often involved, and sometimes the tubes are involved as well. This discussion follows a suggested modification of the AFS classification of uterovaginal anomalies (Table 25.2) that comprises four groups based on embryologic considerations.

Class I: Dysgenesis of the Mullerian Ducts
Dysgenesis of the mullerian ducts, which includes agenesis of the uterus and vagina (the Mayer-Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser syndrome), is an impairment of the reproductive system characterized by no reproductive potential other than that achieved by in vitro fertilization in a host uterus.

Class II: Disorders of Vertical Fusion of the Mullerian Ducts
Disorders of vertical fusion can be considered to represent faults in the junction between the down-growing mullerian ducts (mullerian tubercle) and the up-growing derivative of the urogenital sinus. Typically, these disorders are characterized by an atretic portion of vagina that can be quite thick, extending through more than half the distance of the vagina, or it can be quite thin and limited to a small obstructing membrane.

Regardless of the length of the septum, a disorder of vertical fusion should be regarded as a transverse vaginal septum and classified as either obstructed or unobstructed. The so-called partial vaginal agenesis with uterus and cervix present is probably a misnomer for a large segment of atretic vagina. Cervical agenesis or dysgenesis is also included in the group of disorders of vertical fusion.

Class III: Disorders of Lateral Fusion of the Mullerian Ducts
Disorders of lateral fusion of the two mullerian ducts can be symmetric-unobstructed, as with the double vagina, or asymmetric-obstructed, as with unilateral vaginal obstruction. Obstructions associated with disorders of lateral fusion are particularly noteworthy in that they are observed clinically only as unilateral obstructions that almost invariably are associated with absence of the ipsilateral kidney. Bilateral obstruction is

539
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

### TABLE 25.1

**AMERICAN FERTILITY SOCIETY CLASSIFICATION OF MÜLLERIAN ANOMALIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification Anomaly</th>
<th>Anomaly</th>
<th>Class I. Segmental, mülleron agenesis–hypoplasia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Vaginal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Cervical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Fundal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Tubal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. Combined anomalies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class II. Unicorneate</td>
<td>A. Communicating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Noncommunicating</td>
<td>C. No cavity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. No horn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class III. Didelphys</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class IV. Bicornuate</td>
<td>A. Complete (division down to internal os)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Partial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class V. Septate</td>
<td>A. Complete (septum to internal os)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Partial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class VI. Arcuate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class VII. Diethylstilbestrol related</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The classification allows the user to indicate the malformation type and provides additional findings to describe associated variations involving the vagina, cervix, tubes (right, left), and kidneys (right, left).*


thought to be associated with bilateral kidney agenesis and subsequent nonviability of the developing embryo.

The three varieties of asymmetric obstruction with ipsilateral renal agenesis are as follows:

1. Unicornuate uterus with a noncommunicating horn that contains menstruating endometrium
2. Unilateral obstruction of a cavity of a double uterus
3. Unilateral vaginal obstruction

The five groups of symmetric-unobstructed disorders of lateral fusion are as follows:

1. The didelphic uterus
2. The septate uterus
3. The bicornuate uterus
4. The T-shaped uterine cavity, which may be hypoplastic and irregular, and which is associated with diethylstilbestrol (DES) exposure or utero
5. The unicornuate uterus with or without a rudimentary horn

The first three groups are types of double uteri; differentiation between a septate uterus (second group) and a bicornuate uterus (third group) requires visualization of the fundus. The septum within the septate uterus is complete or partial. When the septum is complete, there inevitably are two cavities of a longitudinal vaginal septum that can extend to the introitus or partially down the vagina. The bicornuate uterus also can have a partial or almost complete separation of the uterine cavities. The term arcuate uterus is used primarily by radiologists to refer to a slight septum in the uterine fundus that forms no clear separation of the uterine cavities. This type of uterus is usually included in the category of partial septate uterus.

### TABLE 25.2

**AMERICAN FERTILITY SOCIETY CLASSIFICATION OF UTEROVAGINAL ANOMALIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification Anomaly</th>
<th>Anomaly</th>
<th>Class I. Dysgenesis of the müllerian ducts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Transverse vaginal septum</td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Obstructed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Obstructed</td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Unobstructed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Cervical agenesis or dysgenesis</td>
<td></td>
<td>B. Cervical agenesis or dysgenesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class II. Disorders of vertical fusion of the müllerian ducts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Asymmetric-obstructed disorder of uterus or vagina usually associated with ipsilateral renal agenesis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Unicornuate uterus with a noncommunicating rudimentary anlage or horn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Unilateral obstruction of a cavity of a double uterus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Unilateral vaginal obstruction associated with double uterus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Symmetric-unobstructed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Didelphic uterus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Complete</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Partial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Septate uterus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Complete</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Partial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Bicornuate uterus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Complete</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Partial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. T-shaped uterine cavity (diethylstilbestrol related)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Unicornuate uterus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. With a rudimentary horn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Without endometrial cavity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) Communicating</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) Noncommunicating</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Without endometrial cavity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) Without a rudimentary horn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

they eventually meet in the midline and become fused together. Ducts continue to grow in a medial and caudal direction until coelomic opening. The lumina extend gradually to the caudal elongate, a lumen appears in the cranial part, beginning at each ducts forms a solid bud. Each bud penetrates the mesenchyme proper below. It is lined by an internal layer of vaginal epithelium and an external layer of epithelium derived from the urogenital sinus (both of endodermal origin), with mesoderm between the two. It is not derived from the mullerian ducts.

Surgery for Anomalies of the Mullerian Ducts

Class IV: Unusual Configurations of Vertical-Lateral Fusion Defects

This final category includes combinations of urovaginal anomalies and other disorders. Unusual urovaginal configurations have been described that do not fit a particular category, and vertical and lateral fusion disorders can coexist. Unusual configurations of vertical-lateral fusion defects can be seen with abnormalities of the lower urinary tract. Singh and coworkers have described a patient who was noted to have a persistent hymen and a longitudinal vaginal septum with a double urethra and bladder and left renal agenesis.

Obstructive lesions require immediate attention to relieve retrograde flow of trapped mucus and menstrual blood and increasing pressure on surrounding organs and structures. When no obstruction is present, attention may not be required immediately, but it will always be required eventually to establish or improve reproductive or coital function.

EMBRYOLOGY

The reproductive organs in the female (and in the male) consist of external genitalia, gonads, and an internal duct system between the two. These three components originate embryologically from different primordia and in close association with the urinary system and hanggut. Thus, the developmental history is complex (Figs. 25.1 and 25.2). Even in the 3.5- to 4-mm embryo, it is possible to recognize the bilateral thickening of the coelomic epithelium known as the gonadal ridges medial to the mesonephros (primitive kidney) in the dorsum of the coelomic cavity. At about the sixth week of gestation, in the 17- to 20-mm embryo, the gonad can be distinguished as either a testis or an ovary.

In the female, the labia minora and majora develop from the labioscrotal folds, which are ectodermal in origin. The phalic portion of the urogenital sinus gives rise to the urethra. The mullerian (paramesonephric) duct system is stimulated to develop preferentially over the Wolffian (mesonephric) duct system, which regresses in early female fetal life. The cranial parts of the Wolffian ducts persist and attain complete development to result of condensation of stromal cells at a specific site around the urogenital sinus. The caudal parts can persist as Gartner’s ducts. The mullerian ducts persist and attain complete development to form the fallopian tubes, the uterine corpus and cervix, and a portion of the vagina.

Origin of the Mullerian Ducts

About 37 days after fertilization, the mullerian ducts first appear lateral to each Wolffian duct as invaginations of the dorsal coelomic epithelium. The site of origin of the invaginations remains open and ultimately forms the fimbriated ends of the fallopian tubes. At their point of origin, each of the mullerian ducts forms a solid bud. Each bud penetrates the mesenchyme lateral and parallel to each Wolffian duct. As the solid buds elongate, a lumen appears in the cranial part, beginning at each coelomic opening. The lumina extend gradually to the caudal growing tips of the ducts.

The cranial end of each mullerian duct crosses the ventral aspect of the Wolffian duct. The paired mullerian ducts continue to grow in a medial and caudal direction until they eventually meet in the midline and become fused together.

Development of the Vagina

The vagina is formed from the lower end of the urovaginal canal, which developed from the mullerian ducts and the urogenital sinus (Fig. 23.2). The point of contact between the two is the mullerian tubercle. A solid vaginal cord results from proliferation of the cells at the caudal tip of the fused mullerian ducts. The cord gradually elongates to meet the bilateral endodermal evaginations (sinovaginal bulbs) from the posterior aspect of the urogenital sinus below. These sinovaginal bulbs extend cranially to fuse with the caudal end of the vaginal cord, forming the vaginal plate. Subsequent canalization of the vaginal cord occurs, followed by epithelialization with cells derived mostly from endoderm of the urogenital sinus. Recent proposals hold that only the upper one third of the vagina is formed from the mullerian ducts and that the lower vagina develops from the vaginal plate of the urogenital sinus. Recent studies also suggest that the vaginal canal is actually open and connected to a patent uterus and tubes, even in early embryonic life, and that the vagina does not form and later become canalized from an epithelial cord of squamous cells growing upward from the urogenital sinus. Most investigators now suggest that the vagina develops under the influence of the mullerian ducts and estrogenic stimulation. There is agreement that the vagina is a composite formed partly from the mullerian ducts and partly from the urogenital sinus.

At about the 20th week, the cervix takes form as a result of condensation of stromal cells at a specific site around the fused mullerian ducts. The mesenchyme surrounding the mullerian ducts becomes condensed early in embryonic development and eventually forms the musculature of the female genital tract. The hymen is the embryologic septum between the sinusovaginal bulbs above and the urogenital sinus proper below. It is lined by an internal layer of vaginal epithelium and an external layer of epithelium derived from the urogenital sinus (both of endodermal origin), with mesoderm between the two. It is not derived from the mullerian ducts.
FIGURE 25.1. Diagrammatic representation of the development of the female reproductive organs and structures in early embryogenesis. A: At the 18- to 20-somite stage (fourth week), the gonadal ridges have not yet begun to form. B: In the 3.5- to 4-mm embryo (fifth week), the gonadal ridges can be recognized as thickenings of the coelomic cavity just medial to the mesonephric tubules. (Gonadal differentiation into either testis or ovary does not occur until the sixth week of development.) The allantoenteric diverticulum is joined caudally to the dilated cloaca. C and D: The genital tubercle and labial folds form in the region just anterior to the cloaca. The cloaca later drains into the ventral urogenital sinus and the dorsal rectum. The development of the urinary system closely parallels that of the reproductive system. The nonfunctioning pronephric tubules shown in (A) develop to form the mesonephric ducts shown in (B) and (C). The permanent kidneys eventually develop from the metanephric tissue, and the urinary collecting system develops from the mesonephric ducts. The paramesonephric (müllerian) ducts are apparent by the 12- to 14-mm stage (D). (Their subsequent development is illustrated in Figure 25.2.)
Further development of the paramesonephric (müllerian) ducts and the urogenital sinus. A: Early development of the paramesonephric ducts. The cranial ends of the paramesonephric ducts develop first. These ends remain open to form the fimbriated ends of the fallopian tubes. The paramesonephric ducts grow caudally and cross the mesonephric ducts ventrally. B: Eventually, they fuse together to form the uterovaginal canal. C: Further caudal development brings this structure into contact with the wall of the urogenital sinus, producing the müllerian tubercle. The caudal ends of the fused paramesonephric ducts form the uterine corpus and cervix. Together with the urogenital sinus, they also form the vagina. The cranial point of fusion of the paramesonephric ducts marks the location of the future uterine fundus. The fallopian tubes form from the unfused cranial parts of the paramesonephric (müllerian) ducts. The proliferation of the lining of the uterovaginal canal above the upward growth of the sinovaginal bulb from below (D) forms the vaginal plate (E), which later becomes canalized to leave an open vaginal canal. Thus, the vagina is of composite origin. The mesonephric ducts in the female degenerate but can persist into adult life as Gartner’s ducts.
Anomalies in Organogenesis of the Vagina

Abnormalities in the organogenesis of the vagina are easily understood: if there is failure of development of the müllerian ducts at any time between their origin from the coelomic epithelium at 5 weeks of embryonic age and their fusion with the urogenital sinus at 8 weeks, the sinovaginal bulbs will fail to proliferate from the urogenital sinus, and the uterus and vagina will fail to develop. Congenital absence of the uterus and vagina, known as the Mayer-Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser syndrome, is the most common clinical example of this anomaly.

Transverse Vaginal Septum

A transverse vaginal septum can develop at any location in the vagina but is more common in the upper vagina at the point of junction between the vaginal plate and the caudal end of the fused müllerian ducts. This defect presumably is caused by failure of absorption of the tissue that separates the two or by failure of complete fusion of the two embryologic components of the vagina. A large segment of vagina can be atretic. In past reviews, this has been termed partial vaginal agenesis with a uterine present. Elucidation of the cause of a high transverse vaginal septum is more difficult. A local abnormality of the vaginal mesoderm or failure of canalization of the epithelial vaginal plate can provide the answer, but why the abnormality should occur at this particular site is not evident. The proportion of the vagina originating from the urogenital sinus can at times be considerably more than one fifth, and a high transverse vaginal septum thus may represent the junction of an abnormally long urogenital sinus contribution and a short müllerian portion. Alternatively, the high transverse septum could be the sequela of a local infection of the septum at the end of the vagina. Septa in other areas of the vagina are unexplained by this theory, which has not gained widespread acceptance.

Disorders of Ineffective Suppression of Müllerian Ducts

When abnormal gonadal development is caused by ineffective suppression of the müllerian ducts, ambiguous external genitalia frequently are accompanied by a small rudimentary uterus or a partially developed vagina. Additionally, when there is a genetic loss of cytoplasmic receptor proteins within androgenic target cells, such as occurs in the androgen insensitivity syndrome (formerly called testicular feminization syndrome), the vagina is incompletely developed because the existing male gonads suppress the development of the müllerian ducts. Because these genetically male patients are seen clinically as phenotypic XY females without a completely formed vagina, it is important that a vagina be surgically constructed so that these patients may have satisfactory sexual function in their female gender role.

Congenital rectovaginal fistula, imperforate (covered) anus, hypospadias, and other anatomic variants of cloacal dysgenesis also can occur. These anomalies can be associated with maldevelopment of the müllerian and mesonephric duct derivatives.

Müllerian Duct Abnormalities

Abnormalities in the formation or fusion of the müllerian ducts can result in a variety of anomalies of the uterus and vagina: single, multiple, combined, or separate. Just as the entirely separate origin of the ovaries from the gonadal ridges accounts for the frequent association of uterovaginal anomalies with ovarian abnormalities (see Chapter 25), so do the close developmental relationships of the müllerian and wolffian ducts explain the frequency with which anomalies of the female genital system and urinary tract are associated. Failure of development of a müllerian duct is likewise associated with failure of development of a ureteric bud from the caudal end of the wolffian duct. Thus, the entire kidney can be absent on the side ipsilateral to the agenesis of a müllerian duct.

Depending on the timing of the teratogenic influence, renal units can be absent, fused, or in unusual locations in the pelvis. Ureters can be duplicated or can open in unusual places, such as the vagina or uterus. Jones and Rock have pointed out that failure of lateral fusion of the müllerian ducts with unilateral obstruction is associated consistently with absence of the kidney on the side with obstruction. Bilateral obstruction has not been observed clinically, presumably because it would be associated with bilateral renal agenesis, a condition that would not allow the embryo to develop. According to Thompson and Lynn, 40% of female patients with congenital absence of the kidney are found to have associated genital anomalies.

Much investigation has been undertaken to determine a genetic relationship in the development of disorders of the müllerian ducts. Familial aggregates of the most common disorders of the müllerian differentiation are best explained on the basis of polygenic or multifactorial inheritance. No information exists on the number and chromosomal location of responsible genes. Single mutant genes are responsible for the McKusick-Kaufman syndrome and the hand-foot-genital syndrome. Hand-foot-genital syndrome is a rare, dominantly inherited condition that affects both the dystal limbs and the genitalia. A nonsense mutation of the HOXA13 gene has been identified in several families. HOX gene mutations have been reported in several families with multiple müllerian abnormalities. To date, involvement of the Y chromosome in the pathogenesis of müllerian anomalies has not been considered. The 2004 report by Plevrakis and colleagues suggests the possible role of testis-specific protein 1-Y gene in patients with uni- or bilateral gonadal agenesis and uterovaginal dysgenesis. Timmreck and colleagues narrowed the genetic considerations by noting that in an evaluation of 40 women with developmental abnormalities of the uterus and vagina and 12 normal controls, no mutations of the WNT7A gene—a gene associated with murine Müllerian duct development—were found. Reproductive abnormalities involving the uterus and vagina may also be associated with other more complex malformation syndromes, in which the molecular basis of many of the syndromes remains unknown.

CONGENITAL ABSENCE OF THE MULLERIAN DUCTS

The disorders of müllerian agenesis include congenital absence of the vagina and uterus. Often referred to in the literature simply as congenital absence of the vagina (vaginal agenesis), this condition is more accurately labeled aplasia (or dysplasia) of the müllerian ducts because the lower vagina generally is normal, but the middle and upper two thirds are missing. Depending on the absence of the uterus, rudimentary uterine primordia are found that are comparable to each other in size and appearance. Tubes and ovaries in patients with congenital absence of the
mullerian ducts generally are normal. The syndrome, usually referred to as the Mayer-Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser (MRKH) syndrome, is associated with a heterogeneous group of disorders that have a variety of genetic, endocrine, and metabolic manifestations and associated anomalies of other body systems.

Characteristics of Women with Müllerian Agenesis

- Congenital absence of the uterus and vagina (small rudimentary uterine bulbs are usually present with rudimentary fallopian tubes)
- Normal ovarian function, including ovulation
- Sex of rearing: female
- Phenotypic sex: female (normal development of breasts, body proportions, hair distribution, and external genitalia)
- Genetic sex: female (46,XX karyotype)
- Frequent association of other congenital anomalies (skeletal, urologic, and especially renal)

Partial agenesis of the vagina with the uterus present and a transverse vaginal septum both are categorized as disorders of vertical fusion. These two disorders have a low incidence of associated urinary tract anomalies, another circumstance that sets them apart from the MRKH syndrome.

Realdus Columbus first described congenital absence of the vagina in 1559. In 1829, Mayer described congenital absence of the vagina as one of the abnormalities found in stillborn infants with multiple birth defects. Rokitansky in 1838 and Küster in 1910 described an entity in which the vagina was absent, a small bipartite uterus was present, the ovaries were normal, and anomalies of other organ systems (renal and skeletal) were frequently observed. Hauser and associates emphasized the spectrum of associated anomalies. Pinsky suggested that congenital absence of the vagina is part of a symptom complex and not a true syndrome. Over the years, the disorder has come to be known as the Mayer-Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser syndrome, the Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser syndrome, or simply the Rokitansky syndrome (Fig. 25.3). Counsellor found that the condition occurred once in 4,000 female admissions to the Mayo Clinic. Evans estimated that vaginal agenesis occurred once in 10,388 female births in Michigan from 1953 to 1957.
Individuals with an absent vagina and the classic MRKH syndrome usually are first seen by a gynecologist at age 14 to 15 years, when the absence of menses causes concern. Such young women have a normal complement of chromosomes (46,XX) and usually have normal ovaries and secondary sex characteristics, including external genitalia. Menstruation does not appear at the usual age because the uterus is absent, but ovulation occurs regularly. There are some exceptions to the rule of normal ovaries. For example, polycystic ovaries and gonadal dysgenesis have been reported in patients with congenital absence of the vagina. Plevraki and colleagues reinforced the importance of consideration of such conditions, as one of the six women with MRKH evaluated over a 12-month period demonstrated hypergonadotropic hypogonadism that was due to the bilateral absence of gonadal tissue. Additionally, nested polymerase chain reaction demonstrated the presence of testis-specific protein 1-Y-linked (TSPY) gene in two women.

**Etiologic Factors**

An exclusively genetic etiology cannot be ascribed to vaginal agenesis because almost all patients have a normal karyotype (46,XX) and because the discordance of vaginal agenesis in three sets of monozygotic twins has been reported. The occurrence of complete vaginal agenesis in sisters with a 46,XX karyotype suggests an autosomal mode of inheritance for these patients. Shokeir investigated the families of 13 unrelated females with aplasia of müllerian duct derivatives. Similarly affected females were found in 10 families. Usually there was an affected female paternal relative, suggesting female-limited autosomal dominant inheritance of a mutant gene transmitted by male relatives.

Other investigators point to the variety of associated anomalies as support for the etiologic concept of variable expression of a genetic defect possibly precipitated by teratogenic exposure between the 37th and the 41st gestational day, the time during which the vagina is formed. Knab has suggested five possible etiologic factors of the MRKH syndrome:

1. Inappropriate production of müllerian regressive factor in the female embryonic gonad
2. Regional absence or deficiency of estrogen receptors limited to the lower müllerian duct
3. Arrest of müllerian duct development by a teratogenic agent
4. Mesenchymal inductive defect
5. Sporadic gene mutation

Knab believes that the teratogenic and the mutant gene etiologies are the most probable.

**Anomalies Associated with Müllerian Agenesis**

Many patients with müllerian agenesis have associated anomalies of the upper müllerian duct system together with associated anomalies of other organ systems. By gentle rectal examination, the physician can feel an absence of the midline müllerian structure that should represent the uterus. The physician instead feels a smooth band (possibly a remnant of the uterosacral ligaments) that extends from one side of the pelvis to the other. In MRKH syndrome, the uterus is represented by bilateral rudimentary uterine bulbs that vary in size, are not usually palpable, are connected to small fallopian tubes, and are located on the lateral pelvic side wall adjacent to normal ovaries. Depending on their size, these rudimentary uterine bulbs may or may not contain a cavity lined by endometrial tissue (Fig. 25.4). If present, the endometrial tissue can appear immature or, rarely, can show evidence of cyclic response to ovarian hormones. The endometrial cavity does not communicate often with the peritoneal cavity because the tube may not be patent at the point of junction between the tube and the rudimentary uterine bulb. In rare instances, however, active endometrium can exist within the uterine anlagen and the endometrial cavity, enabling communication with the peritoneal cavity through patent fallopian tubes. Reports have described several patients with functioning endometrial tissue in one or both rudimentary uterine bulbs (Fig. 25.4B). The patient can develop a large hematometra because of cyclic accumulation of trapped blood. Cyclic abdominal pain is relieved by excision of the active uterine anlagen. A patient with MRKH syndrome was reported who had a 4-cm endometrioma removed from the left ovary by laparotomy at the time of operation to create a vagina. Myomas have been reported in association with MRKH syndrome. Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

**FIGURE 25.4.** Patients with congenital absence of the vagina can show variation in the development of the upper müllerian ducts. A: Bilateral rudimentary uterine bulbs without endometrium. B: Bilateral rudimentary uterine bulbs containing a cavity lined with functioning endometrial tissue. Cross-sectional view shows presence of menstrual blood.
known to form in the muscular wall, and mild dysmenorrhea has been attributed to their presence. A small myoma has been found, in addition to the tube and ovary, in the inguinal canal and in the inguinal hernia sac.

Chakravarty and colleagues and Singh and Devi have demonstrated that the rudimentary bulbs have the potential for function. These authors used these rudimentary uterine bulbs to reconstruct a midline uterus. The reconstructed uterus was then connected to a newly constructed vagina. A surprising number of patients who have undergone this procedure have experienced cyclic menstruation, although recurrent stenosis and obstruction of the rudimentary horns are the most common results of such efforts. The authors of this chapter have had no experience with this technique and question its usefulness. However, these rudimentary uterine bulbs usually are insignificant structures that cause no problems.

Associated Urologic and Renal Anomalies

Fore and associates reported that 47% of patients in whom evaluation of the urinary tract was performed had associated urologic anomalies. In other studies, approximately one third of patients with complete vaginal agenesis were found to have significant urinary anomalies, including unilateral renal agenesis, unilateral or bilateral pelvic kidney, horseshoe kidney, hydroureter, hydronephrosis, and a variety of patterns of ureteral duplication. A significant number of patients with partial vaginal agenesis also have associated urinary tract anomalies.

Associated Skeletal and Other Anomalies

Associated skeletal anomalies have been recognized since congenital absence of the vagina was first described. In a review of 574 reported cases, Griffin and associates found a 12% incidence of skeletal abnormalities. Most of these abnormalities involve the spine (wedge vertebrae, fusions, rudimentary vertebral bodies, and supernumerary vertebrae), but the limbs and ribs also can be involved. Other anomalies include syndactyly, absence of a digit, congenital heart disease, and inguinal hernias, although the latter are more often present in patients with androgen insensitivity syndrome than in patients with MRKH syndrome (Fig. 25.3). Consideration of cardiac anomalies is also important, as Pittock and colleagues reported a substantial incidence of cardiac defects (16%) when reviewing a group of 25 patients with MRKH syndrome (Fig. 25.3). These authors used these rudimentary uterine bulbs to reconstruct a midline uterus. The reconstructed uterus was then connected to a newly constructed vagina. A surprising number of patients who have undergone this procedure have experienced cyclic menstruation, although recurrent stenosis and obstruction of the rudimentary horns are the most common results of such efforts. The authors of this chapter have had no experience with this technique and question its usefulness. However, these rudimentary uterine bulbs usually are insignificant structures that cause no problems.

Psychological Preparation of the Patient

Insufficient attention has been given to the psychological aspects of this problem. The patient with congenital absence of the vagina cannot be made into a whole person simply by creating a perineal pouch for intercourse. Establishment of sexual function is only one concern and may be the easiest problem to correct. Evans reported that 15% of his patients have real psychiatric difficulty. He and David and associates suggest that psychiatric help should be initiated before the operation. Wensborg and ter Kuile described the effect of a group program on women with Rokitansky syndrome. The authors held group sessions conducted by a gynecologist, a female social worker, and a woman with Rokitansky syndrome. Seventeen patients participated. Three women had elected not to create a vagina, six women created a vagina by dilatation or sexual activity, and eight women had undergone a vaginoplasty. Indices of psychological distress were measured before the program, at initiation of the program, and at the last group session. The results demonstrated that women with Rokitansky syndrome felt less anxious, less depressed, and less sensitive to interpersonal contact after participation in the semistructured program. These data support the value of group interaction in patients with Rokitansky syndrome.

Learning about this anomaly, especially at a young age, is a shock and is accompanied by diminished self-esteem. Such patients can be encouraged by having their gynecologist offer appropriate surgery to establish coital function. The gynecologist can point out that, functionally, the patient will be like thousands of young women who have had a hysterectomy because of serious pelvic disease and who have satisfied their desire to be a parent through adoption or gestational surrogacy.

When counseling patients at the time of diagnosis, gestational surrogacy should definitely be included in the discussion. Until recently, the literature had provided only sparse evidence regarding the use of this modality in this population. Reski and colleagues confirmed the use of gestational surrogacy in a small population. The treatment cycles resulted in six clinical pregnancies (42.9% pregnancy rate per embryo transfer and 54.5% per oocyte retrieval) and three live births (21.4% per embryo transfer, 27.3% per retrieval, and 50% per patient). Several authors have reported on the genetic offspring of patients with vaginal agenesis. Petrozza and colleagues reported a retrospective study in 1997, describing a large number of patients who have received this treatment.
number of treatment cycles for patients with Rokitansky syn-
drome. The authors attempted to determine an inheritance pat-
tern of the syndrome through a questionnaire sent to all centers
performing surrogacy treatment in the United States. A total
of 162 in vitro fertilization/surrogacy treatment cycles were re-
viewed for 58 patients with congenital agenesis of the uterus
and vagina. The treatment resulted in 34 live births (17 girls,
17 boys). One child had a nonspecific middle ear defect and
hearing loss. The authors concluded that congenital absence of
the uterus and vagina is not commonly inherited in a dom-
inant fashion. These findings suggest inheritance of this dis-
order in children of affected mothers is likely via a polygenic
mechanism.

Patient Cooperation
Regardless of which operative technique is chosen, the patient
must cooperate if the operation is to be successful. When a
McIndoe operation is performed, patients must understand
the need to wear a form continuously for several months and
intermittently for several years until the vagina is no longer
subject to constriction and until regular intercourse is taking
place. The operation should not be performed until prepara-
tory interviews determine that the patient understands her es-
sential role in its success. This is especially important when
the patient is a young teenager. The single most important
factor in determining the success of vaginoplasty is the psy-
chosocial adjustment of the patient to her congenital vaginal
anomaly.

Laboratory and Diagnostic Testing
A complete chromosomal analysis should be performed in all
patients. If there is a suspicion of ovarian dysgenesis, andro-
gen insensitivity syndrome, or some alteration of the clas-
sic MRKH syndrome, then a consideration of additional SRY
analysis should be entertained to assess the possible presence
of any Y chromosome. An intravenous pyelogram should be
done preoperatively. This also provides an adequate survey for
anomalies of the spine. If a pelvic mass is present, then ad-
ditional special studies, including ultrasonography, should be
performed to differentiate between hematometra, hematocol-
pos, endometrial and other ovarian cysts, and pelvic kidney. In
some centers, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), combined
with a magnetic resonance urogram, may facilitate the evalu-
ation of the reproductive, urologic, and skeletal systems with
one radiographic study.

Evaluation of Cyclic Pain
Some patients without a pelvic mass report cyclic pain. This
pain can be ovulatory or possibly a result of dysmenorrhea
originating in well-developed rudimentary uterine bulbs. The
physician can differentiate between the two by asking the pa-
tient to keep a basal body temperature chart and to mark the
days when pelvic pain is present. Occasionally there is a ques-
tion about whether a patient has congenital absence of the
vagina or an imperforate hymen with cryptomenorrhea. The
diagnosis is clarified before operative intervention by using ra-
diographic imaging. Pelvic ultrasonography can often detect
hematocolpos or an obstructed uterine anlagen distended with
menstrual blood. An MRI can differentiate the two diagnoses,
if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 25.3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>CLASSIFICATION OF METHODS TO FORM A NEW VAGINA</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nonsurgical (intermittent pressure on the perineum)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active dilatation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive dilatation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without use of abdominal contents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without cavity dissection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vulvovaginoplasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant pressure (Vecchietti)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No attempt to line cavity (now unacceptable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lining cavity with grafts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split-thickness skin grafts (McIndoe operation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derma grafts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amnion homografts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lining cavity with flaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musculocutaneous flaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fasciocutaneous flaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subcutaneous pedicled skin flaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labial skin flaps (can be created with tissue expander)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penoplasty (transsexualism)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With use of abdominal contents (cavity lining with)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peritoneum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free intestinal graft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedicled intestine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| METHODS OF CREATING A VAGINA |

There is no unanimity of opinion regarding the correct ap-
proach to the problem of vaginal agenesis (Table 25.3). With
the development of the Ingram method for vaginal dilatation,
fewer patients require surgical vaginoplasty. The role of tis-
sue expanders in vaginoplasty has been reviewed by Patil and
Hixon. Labial expansion with an expander having a capacity
of 250 mL provides a flap 10 cm long and 8 cm wide with a
4-cm projection. Thus, well-vascularized flaps can be available
to provide an outlet for stenosis-free vaginoplasty. This ap-
proach has been suggested to maximize the success of surgical
vaginoplasty. A review of the methods devised for the forma-
tion of a vagina follows. The editors of this book have found
the modified McIndoe technique to give the most consistently
satisfactory results.

Nonsurgical Methods
In 1938, Frank described a method of creating an artificial
vagina without operation. In 1940, he reported remarkably
satisfactory results in eight patients treated with this method.
His follow-up study showed that a vagina formed in this man-
ner remained permanent in depth and caliber, even in patients
who neglected dilatation for more than 1 year. It has been em-
phasized that the pelvic floor itself is embryologically deficient
in some patients. Indeed, the ease with which some patients
are able to create a vagina with intercourse alone or with other
intermittent pressure techniques can be explained on this basis.
Five patients were reported to have developed enterocoeles, one
after cecostomy, three after a Williams vulvovaginoplasty,
and three after a McIndoe operation. This complication can
develop when the vaginal mucosa is brought in close proximity to the pelvic peritoneum, but a relative embryologic weakness or an absence of endopelvic fascia can also contribute to this complication. Rock, Reeves, and associates at the Johns Hopkins Hospital reported that an initial trial of vaginal dilatation was successful in 9 of 21 patients. Prompted by the rewarding results of Broadbent and Woolf, Ingram has described a passive dilatation technique of creating a new vagina. Instructing his patients in the insertion of dilators (Fig. 25.5) specially designed for use with a bicycle seat stool, Ingram was able to produce satisfactory vaginal depth and coital function in 10 of 12 cases of vaginal agenesis and 32 of 40 cases of various types of stenosis.

The patient is shown how to sit on a racing type bicycle seat that is placed on a stool 24 inches above the floor. She is instructed to sit leaning slightly forward with the dilator in place for at least 2 hours per day at intervals of 15 to 30 minutes. Follow-up is usually at monthly intervals, and the patient can expect to graduate to the next size larger dilator about every month. An attempt at sexual intercourse may be suggested after the use of the largest dilator for 1 or 2 months. Continued dilatation is recommended if intercourse is infrequent. In our experience, functional success rates are outstanding. Rock and Roberts reported the largest series of vaginal agenesis patients who used the Ingram method of dilatation to create a neovagina. The records of 51 patients with müllerian agenesis were reviewed. 37 patients attempted vaginal dilatation and 14 young women underwent a surgical intervention. Functional success was defined as satisfactorily achieving intercourse or accepting the largest dilator without discomfort in the clinic visit. All patients were followed up for at least 2 years and for an average of 9.25 years. Functional success was achieved in 91.9% of those who attempted dilatation (Table 25.4). Thus, passive dilatation should be suggested as an initial therapy for vaginal creation. If dilatation is unsuccessful, operative vaginoplasty is indicated.

### Table 25.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Totals</th>
<th>Percent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Successful dilatation</td>
<td>34/37</td>
<td>91.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failed dilatation</td>
<td>3/37</td>
<td>8.1%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*p < 0.001.


## Surgical Methods

During the past 3 decades, experience has proved the Abbe-Wharton-McIndoe procedure (more popularly called the McIndoe operation) for dealing with complete absence of a vagina to be generally superior to others in most cases. In special circumstances, alternative methods of creation of a neovagina may be indicated.

### Historical Development of Surgical Procedures

In 1907, Baldwin used a double loop of ileum to line a space dissected between the rectum and bladder, leaving the mesentery connected to the bowel. The continuity of the intestinal tract was reestablished by an end-to-end anastomosis. He reported that the new vagina was absolutely normal in every way. In 1910, Popaw constructed a vagina using a portion of the rectum that was moved anteriorly. This operation was modified by Schubert in 1911. The rectum was severed above the anal sphincter and moved anteriorly to serve as the vagina. The sigmoid was sutured to the anus to reestablish the continuity of the intestinal tract. Both operations had soberingly high morbidity and mortality rates, and their popularity declined. Today, segments of sigmoid are used most often to create a vaginal pouch or extend vaginal length in patients who have lost vaginal function as a result of extensive surgery or irradiation for...
pelvic malignancy. Some patients who are treated for multiple
genitourinary or gastrointestinal abnormalities may be treated
with a bowel vaginoplasty during a combined procedure.

Less formidable procedures involving dissection of a space
between the bladder and rectum and lining of this space with
flaps of skin from the labia or inner thighs also were tried.
Marked scarring resulted, and hair usually grew in the vagina.
Extensive plastic procedures to construct a vagina are no longer
necessary or desirable and have been discarded in favor of safer
procedures unless there is the problem of maintaining a vagi-
nal canal after an extensive exenterative operation for pelvic
malignancy. In this case, the physician may want to consider
using the gracilis myocutaneous flap technique described by
McCraw and associates in 1976.

The Abbe-Wharton-McIndoe Operation

The operation most popular today for creating a new vagina
began with simple surgical attempts to create a space between
the bladder and the rectum. These early attempts were often
made in patients with cryptomenorrhea. However, such a space
usually would constrict because the surgeon would fail to rec-
ognize the importance of prolonged continuous dilatation
until the constructive phase of healing was complete.

At the Johns Hopkins Hospital in 1938, Wharton combined
an adequate dissection of the vaginal space with continuous di-
latation by a balsa form that was covered with a thin rubber
sheath and was left in the space. He did not use a split-thickness
skin graft. Instead, he based his operation on the principle
that the vaginal epithelium has remarkable powers of prolif-
eration and in a relatively short time will cover the raw surface.
Recalling that a similar process occurs in the fetus when the ep-
ithelium of the sinovaginal bulbs and the urogenital sinus form
the upper portion. In Counseller's 1948 report from the Mayo
Clinic, it was stated that the disadvantages of persistent
eral years, the vault of the vagina remains without epithelial
covering. Coital bleeding and leukorrhea result from the per-

1. Dissection of an adequate space between the rectum and the
   bladder
2. Inlay split-thickness skin grafting
3. The cardinal principle of continuous and prolonged dilata-
   tion during the contractile phase of healing

Other tissues such as amnion and peritoneum have been
used to line the new vaginal space, but they have not had sub-
stantial success. However, Tancer and associates reported good
results with human amnion. Karnofsky and associates stated
that a more physiologic result was achieved with an amnion
graft than with a skin graft. Nevertheless, concerns about the
transmission of human immunodeficiency virus with human
amnion now limit this option.

Technique of Abbe-Wharton-McIndoe Operation

Taking the graft. After a careful pelvic examination is per-
formed under anesthesia to verify previous findings, the patient
is positioned for taking a skin graft from the buttocks. For cos-
cmetic reasons, the graft should not be taken from the thigh or
hip unless for some reason it cannot be obtained from the but-
tocks. Patients may be asked to sunbathe in a brief bathing suit
before coming to the hospital so that its outline can be seen; an
attempt should be made to take the graft from both buttocks
within these borders. The quality of the graft determines to a
great extent the success of the operation. We have found the
Padgett electrodermatome to be the most satisfactory instru-
ment for taking the graft. With relatively little experience and
practice, the gynecologic surgeon can successfully cut a graft
of controlled width and thickness (Fig. 25.6). The instrument
is set and checked for taking a graft approximately 0.018 inch
thick and 8 to 9 cm wide. The total graft length should be 16
to 20 cm. If the entire graft cannot be taken from one buttock,
then a graft 8 to 10 cm long is needed from each buttock.

The skin of the donor site is prepared with an antiseptic
solution (povidone-iodine), which is then thoroughly washed
away. The skin is then lubricated with mineral oil as assistants
work to stretch the skin tight. Considerable pressure should
be applied uniformly across the dermatome blade. The thick-
ness of the graft must be determined accurately. A graft that is
little too thick is better than one that is a little too thin. There
should be no breaks in the continuity of the graft. The graft is
placed between two layers of moist gauze and the donor sites
are dressed. The donor site is soaked with a dilute solution of
epinephrine for hemostasis, and a sterile dressing is applied.
A pressure dressing is then placed over the site. This dressing
is removed on the seventh postoperative day. The ster-
ile dressing dries in place over the donor site and ultimately
should be no breaks in the continuity of the graft. The graft is
placed between two layers of moist gauze and the donor sites
are dressed. The donor site is soaked with a dilute solution of
epinephrine for hemostasis, and a sterile dressing is applied.
A pressure dressing is then placed over the site. This dressing
is removed on the seventh postoperative day. The ster-
ile dressing dries in place over the donor site and ultimately
will fall off by itself. Moistened areas on the dressing can be
dried with cool air. If there is separation and evidence of some
superficial infection, then merbromin can be applied to these
areas.

FIGURE 25.6. Section of split-thickness skin grafts. Grafts should be
uniform in thickness. The Padgett dermatome is set to take a
graft approximately 0.018 inch thick. A graft that is slightly thick is
better than a thin graft.
Creating the neovaginal space. The patient is placed in the lithotomy position, and a transverse incision is made through the mucosa of the vaginal vestibule (Fig. 25.7A). The space between the urethra and bladder anteriorly and the rectum posteriorly is dissected until the undersurface of the peritoneum is reached. This step may be safer with a catheter in the urethra and sometimes a finger in the rectum to guide the dissection in the proper plane. After incising the mucosa of the vaginal vestibule transversely, the physician often is able to create a channel on each side of a median raphe (Fig. 25.7B), starting with blunt dissection and then dilating each channel with Hegar dilators or with finger dissection. In some instances, it may be necessary to develop the neovaginal space by dissecting laterally and bringing the fingers toward the midline. The median raphe is then divided, thus joining the two channels. This maneuver is helpful in dissecting an adequate space without causing injury to surrounding structures.

To avoid subsequent narrowing of the vagina at the level of the urogenital diaphragm, it may be helpful to incise the margin of the pubococcygeus bilaterally along the midportion of the medial margin (Fig. 25.7C). Although useful in all circumstances, incision of the pubococcygeus muscle is more important in cases of androgen insensitivity syndrome with android pelvis, in which the levator muscles are more taut against the pelvic diaphragm, than in cases of gynecoid pelvis. Incision of the pubococcygeus muscle causes no difficulty with fecal incontinence, significantly improves the ease with which the vaginal form can be inserted into the canal in the postoperative period, and has eliminated the problem of contracture of the upper vagina caused by a poorly applied form. The dissection should be carried as high as possible without entering the peritoneal cavity and without cleaning away all tissue beneath the peritoneum. A split-thickness skin graft will not take well when applied against a base of thin peritoneum. All bleeders should...
be ligated by clamping and tying them with very fine sutures. It is essential that the vaginal cavity be dry to prevent bleeding beneath the graft. Bleeding causes the graft to separate from its bed, resulting in the inevitable failure of the graft to implant in that area and in local graft necrosis.

Preparing the vaginal form. Early skin grafts were formed over balsa, which has the advantages of being an inexpensive, easily available, light wood that can be sterilized without difficulty. It also can be whittled easily in the operating room to a proper shape to fit the new vaginal space. However, uneven pressure from the form can cause a skin graft to slough in places, and pressure spots are associated with an increased risk of fistula formation. The Counseller-Flor modification of the McIndoe technique (Fig. 25.8) uses, instead of the rigid balsa form, a foam rubber mold shaped for the vaginal cavity from a foam rubber block and covered with a condom. The foam rubber is gas sterilized in blocks measuring approximately $10 \times 10 \times 20$ cm. The block is shaped with scissors to approximately twice the desired size, compressed into a condom.

![FIGURE 25.8. Counseller-Flor modification of the McIndoe technique. A: A form is cut from a foam rubber block. B: A condom is placed over the form. C: The form is compressed and placed into the vagina. D: Air is allowed to expand the foam rubber, which accommodates to the neovaginal space. The condom is closed and the form removed. A second condom is placed over the form (E) and tied securely (F). G: The graft is then sewn over the form with interrupted 5-0 nonreactive sutures. H: The undersurfaces of the sutured edges of the graft are exteriorized. The vaginal form is ready for insertion into the neovagina.](image-url)
and placed into the neovagina (Fig. 25.8A through C). The form is left in place for 20 to 30 seconds with the condom open to allow the foam rubber to expand and conform to the neovaginal space (Fig. 25.8D). The condom is then closed, and the form is withdrawn. The external end is tied with 2-0 silk, and an additional condom is placed over the form and tied securely (Fig. 25.8E and F).

Sawing the graft over the vaginal form. The skin graft is then placed over the form and its undersurface exteriorized and sewn over the form with interrupted vertical mattress 5-0 nonreactive sutures (Fig. 25.8G and H). Where the graft is approximated, the undersurfaces of the sutured edges are also exteriorized.

The graft should not be “mashed” to make it stretch farther, and the edges of the graft should be approximated meticulously around the form without gaps. Granulation tissue develops at any place where the form is not covered with skin. Contraction usually occurs where granulation tissue forms. After the form has been placed in the neovaginal space, the edges of the graft are sutured to the skin edge with 3-0 nonreactive absorbable sutures, with sufficient space left between sutures for drainage to occur. The physician must be careful not to have the form so large that it causes undue pressure on the urethra or rectum. A balsa form should have a groove to accommodate the urethra. With a foam rubber form, this is unnecessary. A supapubic silicone catheter is placed in the bladder for drainage. If the labia are of sufficient length, then the form can be held in place by suturing the labia together with two or three nonreactive sutures.

Replacing a new form. After 7 to 10 days, the form is removed and the vaginal cavity is irrigated with warm saline solution and inspected. This is usually performed with mild sedation and without an anesthetic. The cavity should be inspected carefully to determine whether the graft has taken satisfactorily in all areas of the new vagina. Any undue pressure by the form should be noted and corrected. It is especially important that there not be too much pressure superiorly against the peritoneum of the cul-de-sac. Such a constant upward pressure could result in weakness with subsequent enterocoele formation. The new vaginal cavity must be inspected frequently to detect and to prevent pressure necrosis of the skin graft.

The patient is given instructions on daily removal and reinsertion of the form and is taught how to administer a low-pressure douche of clear warm water. She is advised to remove the form at the time of urination and defecation, but otherwise to wear it continuously for 6 weeks. A neoprene form, which is much easier to remove and keep clean than a foam rubber form, is substituted for the original form in 6 weeks. A new form is molded with a sterile sheet cover (condom) to fit the size of the vaginal canal. The patient is instructed to use the form during the night for the following 12 months. If there has been no change in the caliber of the vagina by that time, then it is unlikely to occur later, and insertion of the form at night can be done intermittently until coitus is a frequent occurrence. However, if there is the slightest difficulty in inserting the form, then the patient should be advised to use the form continuously again. Most patients are able to maintain the form in place simply by wearing tighter underclothes and a perineal pad. Douches are advisable during residual vaginal healing and discharge.

Results and Complications. Results with the McIndoe operation have improved over the years. Recently reported percentages of satisfactory results have ranged from 80% to 100%.

The serious complications formerly associated with the McIndoe operation have been significantly reduced by improvements in technique and greater experience. Serious complications do still occur, however, including a 4% postoperative fistula rate (urethrovaginal, vesicovaginal, and rectovaginal), postoperative infection, and intraoperative and postoperative hemorrhage. Failure of graft take is also still reported as an occasional complication. Failure of graft take often leads to the development of granulation tissue, which might require reoperation, curettage of the granulation tissue down to a healthy base, and even regrafting. Minor granulation can be treated with silver nitrate application. The functional result is more important than the anatomic result in evaluating the success of this operation. Although a vagina of only 4 cm is adequate for some couples, in most instances a vagina smaller than 4 cm causes major problems.

The postoperative results have improved significantly since the balsa vaginal form was replaced by the foam rubber form. Between 1950 and 1989, the McIndoe operation was performed on 94 patients at the Johns Hopkins Hospital. During these 39 years, 83% of the 94 patients had a 100% take of the graft; in only three cases was there a significant area over which the graft failed.

Urethrovaginal fistula has become even more infrequent since the introduction of the suprapubic catheter and the foam rubber form. The catheter is removed when the patient is voiding well and has no residual urine. In general, the patient is able to void without difficulty within the first few days of the procedure. Prophylactic broad-spectrum antibiotics started within 12 hours of surgery and continued for 7 days are of definite value in reducing the incidence of graft failures from infection in the operative site.

Because of the excellent results obtained after a modified McIndoe vaginoplasty, this procedure is recommended as a procedure of choice for women unable or unwilling to obtain a neovagina with dilatation methods. Women with a flat perineum with no dimple or pouch have no alternative other than the McIndoe vaginoplasty to obtain a neovagina for comfortable sexual relations.

Desirability of the modified McIndoe procedure may be increased by the use of alternative graft harvest sites to conceal possible aesthetic concerns of the buttock site, as proposed by Hückel and colleagues. The authors proposed the use of split skin harvesting from the scalp because thin (0.25-mm) split skin grafts do not seem to hamper hair growth at the donor site nor lead to hair growth at the recipient site. Because alopecia has been reported as a complication associated with technical errors, more experience is necessary before advocating the scalp as a potential graft harvest site.

It is important that a McIndoe operation be performed correctly the first time. If the vagina becomes constricted because of granulation tissue formation, injury to adjacent structures, or failure to use the form properly, then subsequent attempts to create a satisfactory vagina are more difficult. The first operation has the best chance of success.

One, like many other surgeons, modified the McIndoe procedure by describing an X-type perineal incision and the use of a perforated vaginal mold during the postoperative period. He postulated that this incision minimized stricture at the vaginal introitus and provided greater ease of dissection of the vaginal cavity. He reinforced that the overall procedure is simple with a generally uneventful postoperative course. Complications included infection, failure of skin graft take, urinary incontinence, partial graft loss, and vaginal stricture. All were treated satisfactorily except the patient with stress urinary incontinence.
Despite any minor modifications of the McIndoe vaginoplasty, the essential components of dissection of an adequate space, split-thickness skin grafting, and continuous dilatation during the contractile phase of healing remain unchanged. Recent reviews continue to support the safety and efficacy of the procedure. Hougaard and Villadsen reported 26 patients who underwent vaginoplasty, 18 of whom had Rokitansky syndrome. The median age at the time of the procedure was 19 years (range = 15–13 years) following surgical intervention with a McIndoe procedure. Ninety-seven percent of patients had a neovaginal length of at least 5 cm. An indwelling bladder catheter is used. The presence of a neovaginal length of at least 5 cm is as follows (Fig. 25.9). A horseshoe-shaped incision is made in the vulva to extend across the perineum and up the medial side of the labia to the level of the external urethral meatus. The surgery is performed in two stages. The first stage involves mobilization, the inner skin margins are sutured together with several interrupted sutures, and the second stage involves suturing the outer skin margins. Failure of the suture line to heal by primary intention results in a large area of granulation tissue and most likely an unsatisfactory result. Williams believes that if the urethral meatus is patulous, a vaginoplasty should not be performed because the urethra might be stretched further by coitus. He suggests that varying deficiencies in muscular and fascial tissue can explain why some patients with uterovaginal agenesis are able to develop a satisfactory vaginal canal with simple intermittent pressure and by Creatsas. The technique of vaginoplasty described by Williams is as follows (Fig. 25.9). A horseshoe-shaped incision is made in the vulva to extend across the perineum and up the medial side of the labia to the level of the external urethral meatus. The success of the operation depends on the appropriateness of the neovaginal length, the amount of skin excised, or 80% were sexually active at the time of evaluation. The most frequent difficulty reported was vaginal dryness and lack of lubrication with sexual intercourse. Ninety percent of the patients expressed satisfaction that sexual ability was acceptable. This experience also supports the role of the McIndoe vaginoplasty in providing young women with vaginal agenesis long-term satisfactorily and minimal disabilities.

**Development of malignancies.** Several case reports exist of malignant disease developing in a vagina created by various techniques; these reports were reviewed by Galligo and colleagues, as well as others. The authors reported a patient who was initially treated for intraepithelial malignancy by total vaginectomy combined with a split-thickness skin graft vaginoplasty to reconstruct a functional vagina. The authors noted a lesion in her vaginal apex 7 years later. These findings suggest that epithelium transplanted to the vagina can assume the oncogenic potential of the lower reproductive tract. The evidence supports a risk of neoplastic change in both skin and bowel grafts, with a reported average interval from vaginoplasty to diagnosis on the order of 19 years. Epithelium transplanted to the vagina will assume the oncogenic potential of the lower reproductive tract. The evidence supports a plan for surveillance and counseling. One regarding transmission risk for virally related dysplastic change in the lower genital tract is also extremely important for any patients undergoing neovaginoplasty.
separations or bleeding with intercourse were reported; however, these complications did occur in 20% of the patients who underwent the Williams vaginoplasty (10 young women). An assessment of sexual satisfaction was performed on the entire population; 94.4% of patients described her sexual life as satisfactory. Deligeoroglou and colleagues in Greece published supportive data regarding the Creatsas modification by describing both anatomic and functional success of 116 adolescents who underwent the procedure over a 15-year period. The physical exam findings were documented; however, the follow-up period was not clearly addressed.

The Williams vulvovaginoplasty is a useful operation and should certainly be considered the operation of choice for patients needing a follow-up to an unsatisfactory McIndoe operation or a supplement to a small vagina resulting from extensive surgery or radiation therapy. It remains an option for the rare patient with a solitary kidney low in the pelvis who does not have room for dissection of an adequate vaginal space.

**Alternative Techniques**

Schätz and colleagues reported three patients who underwent the George modification of the Wharton-Sheares neovaginoplasty technique. Wharton combined an adequate dissection of the vaginal space with continuous dilatation by a balsa form that was covered with a thin rubber sheath and was left in the space. His operation was based on the principle that the vaginal epithelium will proliferate and, in a relatively short time, will cover the raw surface. This modification of an already simple procedure may provide an alternative in areas where multidisciplinary, reconstructive pelvic surgery teams are not available. Because the procedure includes the mere dilatation of the bilateral Mullerian ducts and lining of the superior aspect with peritoneum, it eliminates some of the more complex aspects of the other surgical options. However, with a mean follow-up period reported as only 12 months (range of 2–23 months), reported long-term complications associated with the Wharton method (persistent granulation tissue, coital bleeding, leukorrhea, and scarring of the upper portion) cannot be fully evaluated. Longer follow-up and a larger patient experience are both necessary to consider if this procedure should an option for patients with MRKH.

Moyotoma and colleagues described 10 patients who were diagnosed with vaginal agenesis and were treated with oxidative regenerated cellulose fabric (Interceed). Operative time (<30 minutes) and postoperative hospitalization (2 days) were significantly shorter than that for a traditional skin graft. Vaginal depth was 8 to 10 cm, and no significant operative...
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

Complications were reported. At the time of publication, patients had only been followed for 6 months; however, vaginal intercourse was already reported as easy and successful. Several authors, including Adamyan and Soong, and Templeman and colleagues, have described the laparoscopic use of the peritoneum to create a neovagina in patients with vaginal agenesis. Adamyan and Soong reported a group of 45 patients without complications. The most common postoperative problem involved the formation of granulation tissue at the vaginal vault. Templeman and colleagues described the laparoscopic mobilization of peritoneum for the creation of a neovagina in only one patient. The peritoneum was grasped through a perineal dissection and sutured to the introitus. A pursestring closure was placed at the apex. Stenting of the neovagina was continued for 3 months postoperatively followed by rigid dilation use. At 9-month follow-up evaluation, an 8- by 2-cm vagina was described, with squamous epithelialization present. Both groups describe the technique as safe and effective, producing a neovagina with apical granulation tissue as the only complication.

Guasnis and colleagues reported an assessment of sexual activity via a self-report questionnaire after the laparoscopic Davydov procedure. The Female Sexual Function Index (FSFI), a validated measure in the vaginal reconstruction population, was administered to both 28 women who underwent a laparoscopic Davydov procedure and 28 age-matched controls. The anatomical result was judged to be satisfactory (>6 cm) in 26 of 28 patients with a mean vaginal length of 7.2 ± 1.5 cm. No statistical difference was found between the subjects and the controls in all six domains of the FSFI, however, the authors note that 6 of the 25 (24%) operative subjects who completed the entire FSFI had a poor FSFI result. Of note, the areas of greatest concern were in the areas of lubrication and pain.

The Vecchietti operation was first described in 1965 by Giuseppe Vecchietti. He subsequently reported his cumulative 14-year experience in 1979 and 1980. Voronius and colleagues reviewed the use of the technique and described a laparoscopic modification that uses cystoscopy to confirm bladder integrity. The Vecchietti procedure is a surgical technique for the treatment of vaginal agenesis that constructs a dilatation-type neovagina in 7 to 9 days. The procedure uses specialized equipment including a traction device, a ligature carrier, and an acrylshaped olive. The process is in two steps, with essential operative and postoperative components. The operative phase involves positioning the olive at the perineum and the traction sutures extraperitoneally. Classically performed through a Pfannenstiel incision, the ligature carrier introduces the suture into a newly dissected vesicorectal space. The olive is threaded with suture at the perineum, and the suture is reintroduced at the abdomen. The suture is then guided through the peritoneal parietal layer in a subperiosteal fashion and advanced along the sidewall. The traction device, which provides constant traction on the olive, is positioned on the abdomen. During the postoperative invagination phase, the neovagina is created by applying constant traction to the olive. The procedure reportedly occurs at a rate of 1.0 to 1.5 cm per day, developing a 10- to 12-cm vagina in 7 to 9 days. Patients are instructed on the use of a vaginal obturator to be used as an outpatient. Borruto reported on Vecchietti's personal series of vaginal agenesis patients, comprising 522 consecutive patients. The surgical complications included one bladder perforation and one rectal puncture that required suture repair. In 1995, Laffarque and others described a laparoscopic intervention, creating a neovagina in three patients without dissection of the vesicorectal space. At completion of the procedure, cystoscopy was used to confirm bladder integrity. Some experts believe that the theoretical risk of bladder or rectal perforation without the dissection of the vesicorectal space is unacceptable high. Fedele and colleagues modified the approach to use a combined laparoscopic-ultrasonographic technique. The ultrasound assists in identifying the space of connective tissue between the bladder and rectum. The operating time for this modified procedure was only 40 minutes. After 10 days, the patient engaged in sexual intercourse. One-month evaluation confirmed a 12-cm vaginal length. Long-term follow-up outcomes are not available.

Sexuality after the laparoscopic Vecchietti procedure is poorly documented. Fedele and colleagues provide the only report, describing 50 of 52 cases (96%) with a vaginal length greater than 7 centimeters. All patients succeeded in having vaginal intercourse, 49 (82.6%) had a stable sexual relationship, and 49 (94.2%) were globally satisfied with their sexual life.

Bowel vaginoplasty is a well-known alternative for creation of a neovagina. The Ruge procedure and others are characterized by the formation of a neovagina using sigmoid colon grafts. Advocates propose that scar formation and vaginal stenosis occur less often than with other procedures; however, the disadvantage is the necessity of an abdominal laparotomy. Ota and colleagues reported on a modified Ruge procedure. Mesenteric dissection and sigmoid resection were performed laparoscopically. A 3.5-cm incision was used for appropriate bowel suturing. The segment of sigmoid colon was mobilized and brought to the introitus. The serosal layer of the pediculate end was stabilized to pelvic peritoneum. The patient remained hospitalized for 14 days. The benefit of this modification is certainly the accomplishment of a difficult surgical procedure endoscopically. Other advantages include the functional, ample vaginal length (12 cm) without postoperative dilation. Disadvantages include the extended postoperative hospitalization period and the small number of patients evaluated.

Reported surgical outcomes by authors such as Hensle and colleagues and Communal and associates report the role of sigmoid neovaginoplasty, especially in patients with MRKH. Until recently, long-term data regarding sexual function had not been available. Parsons and colleagues retrospectively reviewed 28 cases at a mean of 6.2 years after sigmoid vaginoplasty. Seventy-nine percent of patients were reportedly “very satisfied” with sexual function, and 21% were “comfortable” with the outcome. Communal and colleagues administered the FSFI to 11 patients after creation of a sigmoid neovagina. The mean score of the 8 women who were attempting intercourse was reported to be “satisfied” with sexual function, and 21% were “comfortable” with the outcome. Communal and colleagues administered the FSFI to 11 patients after creation of a sigmoid neovagina. The mean score of the 8 women who were attempting intercourse was reported to be “satisfied” with sexual function, and 21% were “comfortable” with the outcome. Communal and colleagues administered the FSFI to 11 patients after creation of a sigmoid neovagina.
Forty-two of the patients were reported to have MRKH. Eight patients underwent ileovaginoplasty; two patients were then subsequently treated with a colonic neovagina. The follow-up period varied from 18 months to 24 years with a mean of 8.8 years. Outcomes were evaluated both by a retrospective chart review and the female sexual dysfunction questionnaire (FSQI) described as an Institutional Review Board–approved, validated questionnaire. Of the 16 patients who responded, 31 were sexually active. Seventy-eight percent of the entire group of patients, including additional diagnoses precipitating neo-vaginoplasty, reported sexual desire, 33% sexual arousal, 78% sexual satisfaction. Also, 56% reported frequent orgasms, 22% occasional orgasms, and 22% no orgasms. Thirty-two patients (89%) reported adequate lubrication for sexual activity; 38 patients used home douching, and 20 required pads for mucus production.

Pratt, and by McCraw and associates.

The fluid undoubtedly comes from endocervical glands and müllerian glandular epithelium in the upper vagina that have been stimulated by the placental transfer of maternal estrogen. Continued fluid collection in infants, even after the first year, has been reported; thus, the possibility of a fistula between the upper vagina and the urinary tract should be considered. The distended upper vagina creates a large pelvic and lower abdominal mass that can displace the bladder anteriorly, displace the ureters laterally with hydroureter and hydronephrosis, compress the rectum with associated obstruction and even intestinal obstruction, and limit diaphragmatic excursion to indirectly compress the vena cava and produce cardiorespiratory failure. Fatalities have been reported. The hydrocolpos develops along the axis of the upper vagina and therefore may not necessarily cause the outlet or perineum to bulge when there is compression of the mass from above. After careful preoperative radiologic and endoscopic investigations of the infant, the septum should be removed through a perineal approach.
required in later years to allow satisfactory menstruation and coitus.

A hematocolpos may not develop until puberty. Symptoms include cyclic lower abdominal pain, no visible menstrual discharge, and gradual development of a central lower abdominal and pelvic mass. Sometimes a small tract opens in the septum, some menstrual blood escapes periodically, and symptoms are variable. A septum large enough to allow pregnancy to occur can still cause dystocia during labor. Cyclic hematuria may be present if a communication between the bladder and upper vagina exists. The pelvic organs of a woman with a transverse vaginal septum are shown in Figure 25.11. The woman developed severe cyclic pain at the time of onset of menstruation, but there was no external bleeding until menstrual blood finally began to flow through the small sinus. Pelvic examination revealed a cervix and a normal-sized corpus. The ovaries were palpable but adherent, probably because of organized blood from hematosalpinx and hematoperitoneum. Remarkably, the woman had little dysmenorrhea after beginning to menstruate externally. Coitus was fairly satisfactory before surgical correction, but the shortness of the vagina was something of a handicap. The obstructing membrane was excised, and an anastomosis of the upper and lower vagina was performed.

The findings of 26 patients with complete transverse vaginal septum reported from the Johns Hopkins Hospital by Rock, Zacur, and colleagues have shown that associated congenital anomalies include urinary tract anomalies, coarctation of the aorta, atrial septal defect, and malformations of the lumbar spine. Vaginal patency and coital function were successfully established in all patients, and 7 of 19 patients attempting pregnancy eventually had children. The incidence of endometriosis and spontaneous abortion was high. A lower pregnancy rate and more extensive endometriosis were present when the transverse septum was located high in the vagina, suggesting that retrograde flow through the uterus and fallopian tubes occurs earlier in these patients. More extensive dissection between the bladder and rectum was required to identify the upper vagina when the septum was thick and high. Exploratory laparotomy was necessary in five patients to guide a probe through the uterine fundus and cervix and to assist in locating a high hematocolpos.

**Surgical Technique for a Transverse Vaginal Septum**

A transverse incision is made through the vault of the short vagina (Fig. 25.11A). A probe is introduced through the septum after a portion of the barrier has been separated by sharp and blunt dissection. The physician usually finds some areolar tissue in dissecting the space between the vagina and the rectum. Palpation of a urethral catheter anteriorly and insertion of a double-gloved finger along the anterior wall of the rectum posteriorly provides the proper surgical guidelines so that the bladder and rectum can be avoided during this blind procedure. After the dissection is continued for a short distance, the cervix can usually be palpated, and continuity can be established with the upper segment of the vagina (Fig. 25.11B and C). The lateral margins of the excised septum are extended widely by sharp knife dissection to avoid postoperative stricture formation. The edges of the upper and the lower vaginal
Surgery for Anomalies of the Mullerian Ducts

Dimple
Sinus tract opening
Incision
Normal cervix
Catheter in urethra
Cervix inside pocket
Completed vagina

FIGURE 25.11. Surgical correction of transverse vaginal septum. A: The upper end of a short vagina. The small sinus tract opening, through which the patient menstruated, is shown. The line of incision is drawn through the mucous membrane between the vaginal dimple and the sinus. B: Areolar tissue is dissected through to the pocket of mucosa that covered the cervix. The mucosa is incised. C: An anastomosis is made between the lower vagina and the upper vagina. D: Completed vagina. It is slightly shorter than normal but of normal caliber.

Mucosa are undermined and mobilized enough to permit anastomosis with the use of interrupted delayed-absorbable sutures (Fig. 25.11C). Figure 25.11D shows the completed anastomosis with a vagina that is of normal caliber but has a length slightly shorter than average. A soft foam rubber vaginal form covered with a sterile latex sheath can be placed in the vagina and removed in 10 days for evaluation of the healing process. The form can be worn for 4 to 6 weeks until complete healing has occurred. After this, coitus is permitted. If the patient is not sexually active, then vaginal dilatation may be necessary to maintain established patency. Alternatively, a silicone elastomer (Silastic) vaginal form can be inserted at night until the constrictive phase of healing is complete.

High Transverse Vaginal Septum. If the length of the obstructing transverse vaginal septum is such that reanastomosis of the upper and lower vagina is impossible, as is the case with a high transverse vaginal septum, in which a significant portion of vagina is atretic, then a space is created between the rectum and bladder to permit identification of the obstructed vagina (Fig. 25.12). The mass that has resulted from accumulated menstrual blood must be distinguished from the bladder anteriorly and the rectum posteriorly, a process that is facilitated by the mass itself. When differentiation is impossible, however, exploratory laparotomy can be performed. During this procedure, a probe is passed through the fundus of the uterus to tent out the vaginal septum and enable the surgeon to excise it from below and resect it safely.

In most surgical procedures to remove the high transverse vaginal septum, the obstructing membrane can be readily identified (Fig. 25.13), after which the operator can probe the mass with an aspirating needle to identify old menstrual blood. The upper vagina is then opened and the septum excised. Because
Correction of an atretic vagina. 

A: A large portion of atretic vagina is palpated with two fingers. Once the vaginal space is developed, it may be necessary to open the abdomen via laparotomy and pass a probe through to the uterine fundus (B) to tent out the septum, which may then be safely excised. 

C: An acrylic resin (Lucite) form is then placed into the vagina and secured with rubber straps.

The distance between the septum and the upper vagina is too great to permit an anastomosis, an indwelling acrylic resin (Lucite) form, consisting of a bulbous end and a channel through which menstrual blood can drain, is placed into the vagina and anchored with a retaining harness. The bulbous end of the form, in most instances, is retained in the upper vagina and should be left in place for 4 to 6 months while epithelialization is accomplished. After its removal, vaginal dilatation should be practiced on a daily basis for 2 to 4 months to prevent contracture of the space. It is essential to the success of the operation that the new space not become constricted; to avoid constriction, the form must be worn for many months during the contractive phase of healing. As an alternative to the Lucite form, the physician can consider using a split-thickness graft to bridge the gap. The graft is usually sutured in situ in the vagina rather than sutured to a form. An ingenious but rather complicated Z-plasty method of bridging the gap has been described by Garcia and by Musset. A simpler flap method was described by Brenner and associates.

A transverse vaginal septum diagnosed after the onset of puberty presents numerous problems. Often, a large segment of the vagina is absent, making anastomosis of the upper and lower segments difficult. Furthermore, postoperative vaginal dilatation is necessary to prevent stenosis at the anastomosis site. Poor compliance with dilatation in a poorly motivated pubertal patient is always a concern. However, rarely is the surgeon able to delay vaginoplasty until the patient is more mature because of increasingly severe cyclic abdominal pain caused by the hematocolpos. Thus, a difficult vaginoplasty can have less than optimal results.

Hurst and Rock have described an alternative approach to maximize surgical resection and anastomosis in women with a high transverse vaginal septum. Aspiration of the hematocolpos under ultrasound guidance was necessary to relieve the acute pain and delay surgery. Continuous oral contraceptives were used to delay recurrence of hematocolpos. Most important, vaginal dilatation was used to lengthen the lower vaginal segment to facilitate resection and anastomosis. In all three patients, the approach was successful.

**Congenital Absence or Dysgenesis of the Cervix**

Agenesis or atresia of the cervix (AFS class IB) is a relatively infrequent müllerian anomaly. When this anomaly does occur, it is often in association with absence of a portion or all of the vagina. In many cases of cervical agenesis or atresia, retention of menstrual blood initiates symptoms of cyclic lower abdominal pain without menstrual flow, causing the patient to seek gynecologic evaluation and care. In past times, diagnosis was suspected on the basis of a history and physical findings but was not proved until the time of surgery. Today, diagnosis of cervical agenesis or atresia is still usually difficult before operation, but the possibility of making a correct diagnosis before surgery does exist, with the help of modern diagnostic tools. Early diagnosis offers significant advantages in patient care, the most important of which is effective presurgical planning and preparation.
FIGURE 25.13. A high transverse vaginal septum. A: The neovaginal space is dissected, revealing a high obstructing vaginal membrane. B: This can be palpated with the middle finger. C: A needle is then placed into the mass. D: The incision is made with a sharp knife, and considerable bleeding can occur. E: The septum is excised. F: The septum is removed. G: After the septum is removed, the wall of the septum is oversewn with interrupted sutures of 2-0 chromic catgut. H: Because the distance between the septum and the upper vagina is too great to allow anastomosis, an acrylic resin (Lucite) form is placed in the vagina so that epithelialization can occur over the form while vaginal patency is maintained. The form, in place, is fitted with a plastic retainer. Rubber straps can be placed through the retainer and attached to a waist belt to allow constant upper pressure so that the form is retained in the upper vagina. Modification of this method includes a small adapter to allow drainage through the acrylic resin (Lucite) form, preventing the accumulation of old blood and mucus in the upper vagina. (From Rock J. Anomalous development of the vagina. *Semin Reprod Endocrinol* 1986;4:24, with permission.)
562 Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

FIGURE 25.14. A: High transverse vaginal septum demonstrating a small hematocolpos and hematometra. Upper to lower vaginal anastomosis at this stage can result in stenosis at the anastomosed site. B: Vaginal depth is increased with passive dilatation using progressively larger dilators. C: A primary upper to lower vaginal anastomosis can be performed easily after dilatation.

Diagnosis of Cervical Dysgenesis
Patients with congenital absence of the cervix present a diagnostic challenge. Patients with cervical aplasia with a functioning midline uterine corpus have aplasia of the lower two thirds of the vagina with an upper vaginal pouch. Similarly, some patients have a considerable atretic segment of vagina and an upper vaginal pouch with a properly developed uterine cervix and corpus above. Differentiation of these two müllerian anomalies is essential. Ultrasonography may be helpful. Valdes and associates have reported the use of preoperative ultrasonography in the evaluation of two patients with atresia of the vagina and cervix. MRI has been found to be helpful in confirming this diagnosis, as reported by Markham and associates. The lower uterine segment and cervical tissue can be carefully examined (Fig. 25.15). With cervical dysgenesis, there is no vaginal dilatation with the accumulation of blood, as seen with a high transverse vaginal septum. Both ultrasonography and MRI are most helpful when they are correlated with the findings of a careful pelvic examination under anesthesia.

Anatomic Variations of Congenital Cervical Anomalies
Two basic categories of cervical anomalies have been observed in several configurations. Patients exhibiting the first type,
cervical aplasia, lack a uterine cervix (Fig. 25.16A), and the lower uterine segment narrows to terminate in a peritoneal sleeve at a point well above the normal communication with the vaginal apex. The second type, cervical dysgenesis, can be described as four subtypes:

1. Cervical body consisting of a fibrous band of variable length and diameter (endocervical glands may be noted on pathologic examination) (Fig. 25.16B)
2. Intact cervical body with obstruction of the cervical os (the cervix is usually well formed, but a portion of the endocervical lumen is obliterated) (Fig. 25.16C)
3. Stricture of the midportion of the cervix (which is hypoplastic with a bulbous tip and no identifiable cervical lumen) (Fig. 25.16D)
4. Fragmentation of the cervix (with portions that can be palpated below the fundus and that are not connected to the lower uterine segment) (Fig. 25.16E)

Associated anomalies of the urinary tract are rare, but they do occur. Variable portions of the vagina can be atretic. Cervical obstruction is most often associated with a vagina of normal length.

Treatment

When both the vagina and cervix are absent and a functioning uterine corpus is present, it is difficult to obtain a satisfactory fistulous tract through which menstruation can occur. Many methods have been tried, most of them involving creation of a passage through the dense fibrous tissue between the uterine cavity and the vagina and placement of a stent to keep the tract open. Occasional successes in maintaining an open passageway and normal cyclic menstruation have been reported, but endocervical glands do not develop, and there is no way to compensate for the absence of the cervical mucus, which plays an important role in sperm transport. Even though cyclic ovulatory periods can be achieved in a few patients, pregnancy is unlikely. Eventually the uterovaginal tract closes from constriction by fibrous tissue. Endometriosis can develop along the tract. Endometriosis also can develop in ovaries and other pelvic sites because of retrograde menstruation. Recurrent and severe pelvic infection is a common problem and may require total hysterectomy and removal of both ovaries. As in vitro fertilization procedures began to offer the possibility for a host uterus to carry a pregnancy to term, procedures to establish a fistulous tract were abandoned. Nevertheless, Cukier and associates in 1986 reported treating a patient with congenital absence of the cervix by construction of a splint that extended into the neocervical canal such that a split-thickness skin graft could actually be placed within the endocervical canal. This patient has continued to menstruate without difficulty, although pregnancy has not been accomplished.

Many authors have recommended hysterectomy as an initial procedure for a patient with a functioning uterine corpus and congenital absence of the cervix and vagina. A hysterectomy eliminates much needless suffering from associated problems such as cryptomenorrhea, sepsis, endometriosis, and multiple operations. If the hysterectomy is performed soon enough, before the problems become great, it may be possible to conserve the ovaries and their useful functions. The reconstructive surgeon should be prepared to perform a vaginoplasty with use of a split-thickness graft if hysterectomy is performed, particularly if there has been a vaginal dissection. If the neovaginal space is allowed to close and scar, then future operations to develop an adequate neovagina are associated with increased risks of graft failure and f gaze formation.

Despite the overall poor results from reconstruction for congenital absence of both the cervix and the vagina, clinical experience suggests that cannulization procedures can be worthwhile for a few carefully selected cases with adequate stroma to allow a cervicovaginal anastomosis. If a long segment of cervix is fibrous cord, a cervical grafting technique may be required. If a fragmented cervix is noted, then hysterectomy is usually warranted. Those few patients who have achieved a pregnancy after cervical reconstruction have had a well-formed cervical body.

Anecdotal case reports occasionally appear in the literature confirming the necessity of palpable cervical tissue. Lettere described the development of a cervicovaginal tract in an adolescent patient with a core of cervical tissue. The tract remained patent for menstrual flow for 2 years; however, pregnancy had not yet been attempted. Data published by the senior author regarding the long-term follow-up of 21 patients with abnormal cervical development support the success of cannulization in only selected patients with sufficient rudimentary cervical tissue. All of the patients with fragmentation of the cervix (n = 4) eventually underwent hysterectomy. Only those patients with a well-formed cervical body, with at least a palpable cord or only distal obstruction, achieved successful surgical outcomes (4/7 patients). Only one patient, with distal obstruction, treated with can nu lization using a full-thickness skin graft, achieved pregnancy.

Others have reported the anastomosis of a well-developed distal vagina to a substantial midline uterine body. Cregg and colleagues described the use of the laparoscope for this procedure; however, Deffarges and associates examined the outcomes of 18 patients after open uterovaginal anastomosis. Twenty-two percent of patients required additional surgery. Eighty-three percent of the cases were associated with upper genital tract complications. Six spontaneous pregnancies were also reported in four of the patients. Despite the small potential for pregnancy, it is imperative to realize the potential for complications, including sepsis and even death as a result of ascending infection.
FIGURE 25.16. Congenital cervical anomalies. A: The fundus of the uterus is noted without a cervix. B: The cervical body consists of a fibrous band of variable length and diameter that can contain endocervical glands. C: The cervical body is intact with obstruction of the cervical os. Variable portions of the cervical lumen are obliterated. D: Stricture of the midportion of the cervix, which is hypoplastic with a bulbous tip. No cervical lumen is identified. E: Cervical fragmentation in which portions of the cervix are noted with no connection to the uterine body. Hypoplasia of the uterine cavity can be associated with cervical cord fragmentation.
The surgical approach for the rare opportunity for cervical cannulation remains a challenge. Several additional factors may also influence the surgical outcome: the size of the created channel, the duration of stenting of the channel, the presence of rudimentary endocervical glands in the region of the created channel, the presence of a native vagina adjacent to the created channel, or the number of menses allowed to flow through the stent. Because the surgical approach for cervical cannulation is based only on several case reports, there is truly limited data regarding safety and efficacy to share with patients and families. A frank discussion with both the patient and her family regarding the potential risks and morbidity is imperative. Even reportedly successful attempts have involved multiple surgical interventions, such as a reported cervicocolpomy with bladder mucosa described by Bugmann and colleagues; the 12-year-old patient had to undergo at least one previously failed attempt at reconstruction before the reported successful procedure. Very young adolescents may be subjected to multiple surgical procedures without good evidence of success.

**DISORDERS OF LATERAL FUSION**

Failures of lateral fusion of the two mullerian ducts cause vaginal anomalies that are grouped as obstructed or unobstructed.

**The Unobstructed Double Uterus (Bicornuate, Septate, or Didelphic Uterus)**

Complete failure of medial fusion of the two mullerian ducts can result in complete duplication of the vagina, cervix, and uterus. Partial failure of fusion can result in a single vagina with a single or duplicate cervix and complete or partial duplication of the uterine corpus. A failure of absorption of the uterine septum between the two fused mullerian ducts causes the septum to persist inside the uterus to a variable extent while the external appearance remains that of a single uterus. The septum can be so complete that it divides both the uterine cavity and endocervical canal into two equal or unequal components. More often, incomplete disappearance of the septum leaves only the upper uterine cavities divided. Each of these and a variety of other forms of double uteri have their own individual features of clinical significance. When no obstruction is present, surgical reconstruction is performed primarily because of difficulties with reproduction.

Some aspects of lateral fusion disorders remain controversial because information is still inaccurate or incomplete. Many reports are based on small samples of selected patients, patients who have been diagnosed as having one anomaly or another based on incomplete data, and patients who have received unification operations without preliminary studies to rule out other causes of reproductive difficulty. A comparison of results from one series to the next is difficult because authors have used different classifications based on a variety of embryologic, anatomic, physiologic, functional, and radiologic considerations. Unknown numbers of uterine anomalies may have escaped detection because reproductive performance is generally acceptable and gynecologic difficulties do not necessarily occur.

The mullerian ducts undergo multiple steps in development, including caudal, medial growth followed by fusion and later resorption of the remaining septum. Apoptosis has been proposed as a mechanism by which the septum regresses. Bcl-2, a protein involved in regulating apoptosis, was found to be absent from the septa of several uteri. The absence of this critical protein may play a pivotal role in the persistence of the septum and lateral fusion disorders.

**Historical Development of Surgical Procedures**

Ruge, in 1882, first reported excision of a uterine septum in a woman who had suffered two pregnancy losses. The woman subsequently carried a pregnancy to term. Paul Strassmann of Berlin and later Erwin Strassmann, his son, were strong advocates of uterine unification operations. The studies of Jones and Jones have contributed greatly to modern understanding of the management of uterine anomalies. Their studies began with a report in 1953 of a series that was started in 1936. Updates have been published from time to time. Wheelless, Rock, Andrews, and others have joined in these reports.

**Diagnosis of Uterine Anomalies**

If a uterine anomaly is associated with obstruction of menstrual flow, then it causes symptoms that will come to the attention of the gynecologist shortly after menarche. Unobstructed uterine anomalies are diagnosed later in a variety of circumstances. Young girls may notice difficulty in using tampons or later difficulty in coitus if a longitudinal vaginal septum is present. This can lead to the diagnosis of an associated uterine anomaly. A patient with an anomalous upper urinary tract on intravenous pyelogram may be found to have a uterine anomaly on gynecologic evaluation. A uterine anomaly is occasionally found when a patient reports dysmenorrhea or menorrhagia or when a dilatation and curettage (D&C) is performed for abortion or some other indication. A palpable mass may be a uterine anomaly but should be confirmed as such by ultrasonography, hysteroscopy, or laparoscopy. Woolfer and colleagues recently described the use of three-dimensional ultrasonography in screening for congenital uterine anomalies. During an investigation of the correlation of uterine anomalies with obstetric complications, the authors assessed the potential value of three-dimensional ultrasonography for screening. More than 100 women with uterine anomalies were identified. Seventy-two arcuate uteri, 29 septate, and five bicornuate uteri were described. The authors emphasized how the three-dimensional ultrasound may overcome the limitations of conventional two-dimensional ultrasonography in providing a coronal view of the uterus, thus differentiating between arcuate, bicornuate, and septate uteri. This technique remains investigational. Semmens has pointed out that the diagnosis of a uterine anomaly can also be made from observation of an abnormal uterine contour during pregnancy, either in the antepartum period or at the time of abdominal or vaginal delivery. The abnormal contour is caused by a combination of fetal malpresentation and an anomalous uterus. An anomalous uterus can also be diagnosed when a pregnancy occurs despite the presence of an intrauterine contraceptive device. Persistent postmenopausal bleeding despite recent D&C can lead to a diagnosis of an anomalous uterus. Sometimes the diagnosis is made as an incidental finding at laparotomy. However, most uterine anomalies are diagnosed after hysterosalpingography to evaluate infertility or reproductive loss, usually from repeated spontaneous abortion.

**Uterine Anomalies and Reproductive History**

Although some uterine anomalies can cause infertility, most patients with uterine anomalies are able to conceive without difficulty. There is no question that uterine anomalies can be associated with perfectly normal reproductive performance. Overall, however, the incidences of spontaneous abortion,
premature birth, fetal loss, malpresentation, and cesarean section are clearly increased when a uterine anomaly is present. It is impossible to predict which patients with uterine anomalies will have these problems.

**Etiology of Reproductive Failure**

The etiology of reproductive failure in patients with uterine anomalies remains unclear. Mahgoub believes that the presence of a uterine septum can lead to abortion because of diminished intrauterine space for fetal growth or because of implantation of the blastocyst on a poorly vascularized septum. Minos and associates have attached importance to the inadequacy of vascularization of the uterine septum. Associated cervical incompetence, luteal phase insufficiency, and distortion of the uterine milieu have all been implicated in the etiology of increased reproductive failure. However, it has been reported that the chance for a liveborn child increases with each pregnancy loss. It is unknown whether this apparent “conditioning” of the uterus is due to better vascularization, better myometrial stretching and accommodation, or some other factor.

A medical history of three or more episodes of spontaneous abortion or premature labor merits hysterosalpingography to determine whether structural abnormalities of the uterus are present. An abnormality is found in about 10% of such cases. Among chronic early second-trimester aborters, the incidence may be higher. The etiology of spontaneous abortion is complex, and a complete workup should be done even if an anomalous uterus has been found. A careful history should include detailed discussions of each previous pregnancy loss and inquiry into DES exposure or other drug or chemical toxicity, specific medical illnesses, and exposure to contagious diseases. A family history should emphasize reproductive failures among family members of both the patient and the husband. Specific medical diseases such as thyroid disease, diabetes mellitus, renal disease, and systemic lupus erythematosus should be ruled out. The possibility of infection by such agents as Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Chlamydia, Mycoplasma, Ureaplasma, and Listeria should be considered. Chromosome analyses should be done. Abnormalities in aborted tissue are found in more than 50% of spontaneous abortions, and abnormalities appear in up to one fourth of couples with a history of habitual abortion. Identifying such couples makes it possible to offer genetic counseling for subsequent pregnancies. Uterine leiomyomas, especially lower uterine segment and submucous leiomyomas, can cause spontaneous abortion. Basal body temperature charts, serum progesterone determinations, and endometrial biopsies timed in the luteal phase help determine the presence of luteal phase deficiency. The cervix should be studied for incompetence.

Couples with multiple etiologies for reproductive loss should have all other problems corrected before metroplasty is considered. Indeed, correcting other factors first may correct the problem of reproductive loss without metroplasty. In 1977, Rock and Jones reported on seven patients who had anomalies of uterine development and extrauterine factors in the etiology of their reproductive failure. These patients had already had 16 pregnancies, 5 (29%) of which resulted in a liveborn child. After therapy to correct the extrauterine factor, the success rate increased to 71%. Stoot and Mastboom reported an impressive increase in reproductive performance among uterine anomaly patients by simple improvement of abnormal carbohydrate metabolism.

Hysterographic Studies

Proper technique during the performance of hysterosalpingography to diagnose uterine anomalies is important. The hystero-gram must be taken at right angles to the axis of the uterus for a true assessment of the deformity to be made. The study is best done under fluoroscopy. A septate uterus cannot be distinguished from a bicornuate uterus by hystrogram alone (Fig. 23.17). The external uterine configuration also cannot usually be determined by pelvic examination alone, but some idea of the configuration can be obtained by ultrasonography. McDonagh and Tho have suggested the use of double-contour pelvic pneumoperitoneum-hystergographic studies for precise identification of müllerian malformations. Of course, laparoscopy is even more certain. If the uterine corpus has not been previously visualized, the physician must be prepared to correct either anomaly (i.e., obstructed or unobstructed), depending on the findings at laparotomy.

Additional Testing

A complete investigation should also include an assessment of tubal patency and an intravenous pyelogram. A variety of upper urinary tract anomalies are seen, including absence of one kidney, horseshoe kidney, pelvic kidney, duplication of the collecting system, and ectopically located ureteral orifices. The lower urinary tract (bladder and urethra) is much less often anomalous.

The Double Uterus and Obstetric Outcome

The percentage of full-term pregnancies with various types of double uterus in an unselected series of women who have not been operated on is unknown. For all types combined, it is probably approximately 23%. In patients selected for operation, it probably increases from approximately 5% to 10% to approximately 80% to 90%. Because patients with uterine anomalies who have relatively normal obstetric histories cannot be identified, there is confusion in the literature about which anomalies are more often associated with obstetric difficulties and which are relatively benign in their effect. Special diagnostic procedures to detect uterine anomalies are not usually performed before pregnancy is desired. A didelphys is the exception. This anomaly can be diagnosed easily on routine pelvic examination by identification of two complete cervices and perhaps also a longitudinal vaginal septum. A study by Heinonen in Finland of 182 women with uterine anomalies indicated that pregnancies in the separate uterus had a better fetal survival rate (86%) than they did in the complete bicornuate uterus (50%) or in the unicornuate uterus (40%). These findings differ from prevailing opinions that the septate uterus is associated with the highest reproductive loss, as proposed by Jones and Jones. A recent report by Woerther and associates supports Jones and Jones’s opinions by noting that women with a septate uterus had a significantly higher proportion of first trimester loss than women with a normal uterus.

In 1968, Capraro and colleagues reported on 85 patients with uterine anomalies seen between 1962 and 1966. One uterine anomaly was seen for every 645 admissions (0.145%). Metroplasty was considered necessary in only 14 (16%) of these 85 cases. According to Jones and Jones, only one third of patients with a double uterus have important reproductive problems, in most instances, the presence of a double uterus is not in itself an indication for metroplasty.

In 1985, Jewelewicz and coworkers estimated the spontaneous abortion rate to be 33.8% in women with a bicornuate uterus.
FIGURE 25.17. A: A hysterogram of a double uterus. A bicornuate uterus (B) and a septate uterus (C) are types of double uteri. Visualization of the fundus is required to determine the type of uterus.

uterus, 22.2% in those with a septate uterus, and 34.6% in those with a unicornuate uterus. More recently, Ludmir and associates reported that high-risk obstetric intervention did not significantly increase the fetal survival rate for uncorrected uterine anomalies. Capraro and associates found a preoperative fetal salvage rate of 33.3% for the septate uterus, 10% for the bicornuate uterus, and 0% for the didelphic uterus. Postoperatively, the fetal salvage rate was 100% for the bicornuate uterus, 80% for the septate uterus, and 66% for the didelphic uterus. The report gives the improved salvage figures, compared with several previous studies, after abdominal metroplasty.

Ravasia and colleagues described the incidence of uterine rupture in a cohort of women with müllerian duct anomalies who attempted vaginal birth after cesarean delivery (VBAC). Of the 1,813 patients who attempted VBAC between 1992 and 1997, only 25 patients with known müllerian duct anomalies attempted a trial of labor. This included 14 patients with a bicornuate uterus, five with a septate uterus, four with a unicornuate uterus, and two with uterine didelphys. Uterine rupture was diagnosed in two patients with müllerian anomalies. The authors proposed several mechanisms for the greater incidence of uterine rupture in this population: abnormal development of the lower uterine segment, previous scar similar to a vertical or classic incision, and the possibility of abnormal traction on the uterine scar during labor.

The Didelphic Uterus. A didelphic uterus with two hemicorpora is easily diagnosed because all patients have two hemiscervices visible on speculum examination, and most, if not all, have a longitudinal sagittal vaginal septum. In the series reported by Heinoenen and associates, all 21 patients with a didelphic uterus had a vaginal septum. Conversely, a patient with a longitudinal vaginal septum usually has a didelphic uterus. The indication for uterine unification is related to the role of this anomaly as an etiologic factor in reproductive loss. Of all the uterine anomalies (except arcuate uterus), the didelphic uterus is associated with the best possibility of a successful pregnancy. However, there is still some increase in perinatal mortality, pre-mature birth, breech presentation, and cesarean section for delivery. Heinonen and associates reported a fetal survival rate of 64% without metroplasty. Musich and Behrman stated that the didelphic uterus offers the best chance for a successful pregnancy (57%) and should not be considered an appropriate indication for metroplasty. However, W. S. Jones considered the didelphic uterus to give the worst obstetric outcome. In the opinion of the editors of this book, a unification operation for a didelphic uterus is not often indicated, and the results may be disappointing, especially when an attempt is made to unify the cervix. Not only is this procedure technically difficult in a complete didelphic anomaly, but it can also result in cervical incompetence or cervical stenosis.

The Septate Uterus. Most patients who are evaluated for repeated abortion and who are found to have a uterine anomaly have a septate uterus. A few have other anomalies, mostly the bicornuate uterus. Proctor and Haney’s review of women with recurrent first-trimester pregnancy loss reinforce the role of the septate uterus in repeated pregnancy loss. Of 35 women reviewed with a divided uterine cavity on hysterosalpingogram, all women were found through diagnostic hysteroscopy and laparoscopy to have a septate uterus. In our experience, fetal survival rates are higher after septate uterus repair than after other repairs. In 1977, Rock and Jones reported on 43 patients with septate uterus selected for Jones metroplasty at the Johns Hopkins Hospital. Of these 43 patients, 95% became
pregnant postoperatively, 73% carried to term, and 77% delivered a liveborn child. Similarly, hysteroscopic metroplasty for the septate uterus provides a substantial improvement in obstetric outcome. Data obtained from retrospective studies suggest that hysteroscopic metroplasty is associated with favorable outcomes, with a pregnancy rate of approximately 80% and a miscarriage rate of only approximately 13%. Recent prospective observational studies reported similar findings. Fabbe and Gomel reported the reproductive outcome of 61 patients; however, the patients had unexplained infertility and nearly 15% were also treated with cervical cerclage. Litta and colleagues also reported an 83.3% term delivery rate in their population of women with a septate uterus who underwent hysteroscopic metroplasty. Parton and colleagues described 16 women with a complete uterine septum. The preoperative pregnancy loss rate was 81%. Eleven of the fourteen septa treated with a hysteroscopic approach were successfully removed. The remaining three unsuccessful hysteroscopic procedures and two additional patients were treated using the Tompkins metroplasty. Postoperatively, 9 women conceived after hysteroscopic surgery, and twin live births occurred in 9 of 12 (75%) conceptions. The most controversial area remains the resection of the cervical portion of the septum. Parsanezhad and colleagues reported a multicenter, randomized controlled trial regarding the management of the cervical septum. Surgical issues, complications, and pregnancy outcomes were compared. Operating times, distending media deficits, and perioperative complications were all substantially better in the cervical septum resection group. The reproductive outcomes were similar; however, the cesarean section rate was higher in the group in which the cervical septum was spared. The histologic features of the septum in this abnormal uterus have been described. Dahi-rashkafi and colleagues noted less connective tissue in uterine septa. Poor decidualization and placentation were suggested as a cause.

Finally, the AFS class VA uterus (a double cervix and uterine cavity with a single fundus) can result from a rotation abnormality during the descent of the Müllerian ducts. Among the reported cases of the septate uterus, the incidence of the complete septum involving the cervix varies from 4% to 29%. If the dextrorotating Müllerian ducts overrotate, the senior author theories that the septum fails to absorb after fusion of the ducts (J. A. Rock, personal observations, 1991). In virtually every patient with a complete septate uterus, the left cervix is higher than the right. In one patient, one cervix has been noted above the other (Fig. 25.18). This rotation abnormality may be a factor associated with lack of absorption of the uterine septum in these patients.

Uterine Anomalies and Menstrual Difficulties
Dysmenorrhea and abnormal and heavy menstrual bleeding have been reported to occur more frequently with any form of congenital vaginal septum. Traditionally, the septate uterus has been unified with either the Jones or the Tompkins procedure. Clinical reports by Chernovak and Neuwirth; by Daly, Walters, and colleagues; by DeCherney and associates; and by Israel and March have favorably compared hysteroscopic or resectoscopic incision of a uterine septum with the more traditional transabdominal approach. Term pregnancy rates after these procedures have approached 80% to 85%. Several attempts may be necessary to incise a wide septum, although the septum usually can be incised completely at the first operation.

Transcervical Lysis of the Uterine Septum. Abdominal metroplasty for transfundal incision or for excision of the septum associated with the septate uterus generally has been abandoned. With hysteroscopic scissors, the procedure can be abandoned. With hysteroscopic scissors, the procedure can be
tedious, especially with a large, broad septum. Although the hysteroscope and scissors are still used for cutting the septum, the resectoscope has been found to be comparable. The optics are excellent, and the septum can be electrosurgically incised with little difficulty. Laser-assisted procedures have also been described.

Before transcervical lysis of a uterine septum, a gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonist may be given for 2 months to reduce the amount of endometrium that can obscure the surgeon’s view during the procedure. Many authors do not consider routine preoperative preparation of the endometrium essential and may only use medications in procedures involving exceptionally wide septa or complete septa that involve the lower one third of the uterine cavity or the cervical canal. If medical preparation is not used, surgical intervention should be scheduled during the early proliferative phase of the cycle to avoid bleeding and impaired visualization from a vascular endometrium associated with the secretory phase. Transcervical lysis is usually performed in conjunction with laparoscopy under general endotracheal anesthesia. The uterine cavity is distended with dextran 70 (Hyskon) by way of the resectoscope, which is inserted into the cervix. The septum is then electrosurgically incised by advancing the cutting loupes, using the trigger mechanism of the resectoscope. The uterine septum is incised until the tubal ostia are visualized and there is no appreciable evidence of the septum. The procedure is performed under simultaneous laparoscopy to limit the risks of uterine perforation.

After transcervical lysis of a uterine septum, a 2-month delay before attempting pregnancy is suggested to allow complete resorption of the septum. Delivery may be vaginal. The Jones procedure is used to repair a septate uterus when a particularly broad septum cannot be easily incised with the resectoscope. The Strassmann procedure is used for unification of a bicornuate uterus. The safety and efficacy of hysteroscopic resection of the uterine septum in patients with a class VA septate uterus has been demonstrated by the senior author. Historically, case reports, such as that of Hundley and colleagues, were the only source of information about this interesting variant; however, one of the largest populations of patients with a complete septum was reported in 1999 by Roberts and Rock. The patients underwent hysteroscopic metroplasty with preservation of the cervical portion of the septum. With the exception of one case for 5 days after surgery to limit the risks of infection. If excessive bleeding occurs after the procedure, a Foley catheter should be placed in the uterine cavity for tamponade and removed in 4 to 6 hours. Hormonal therapy is the most commonly used postoperative treatment regimen. The aim of the treatment is the promotion of rapid epithelialization. Dabir rashrafi and colleagues reported that estrogen therapy did not appear to demonstrate a benefit. Further evidence is necessary before dismissing the current trend of postoperative estrogen therapy.

Transcervical lysis also can be performed to repair a complete septate uterus (i.e., a single fundus with two cavities and two cervices). In this instance, a Foley catheter is inserted into one cervix and indigo carmine is injected into the cavity. The other cavity is distended with dextran 70 (Hyskon) by way of the resectoscope. The septum is electrosurgically incised at a point above the internal cervical os until the Foley catheter is visualized. The septum is then incised in a superior direction until the tubal ostium is visualized and there is no appreciable septum (Fig. 25.19).

FIGURE 25.19. Resectoscopic metroplasty. At A, a Foley catheter is placed in one cavity of a complete septate uterus (American Fertility Society class VA uterus). The resectoscope is inserted in the opposite cavity, and the septum is incised until the Foley is visualized. The septum can be easily incised with the resectoscope until both internal os are visible. B: A septate uterus with a single cervix. The septum can be incised with the straight loupes of the resectoscope.
of pulmonary edema, no significant intraoperative or postoperative complications were reported. Postoperative hysteroscopy revealed only minor fundal septal remnants without clinical significance.

The Modified Jones Metroplasty. In the modified Jones unification operation (Fig. 25.20), the abdomen is generally opened through a transverse incision. If only the unification operation is planned, then a Pfannenstiel incision is permissible. The pelvic viscera are inspected. The septate uterus may demonstrate a median raphe across the fundus, but it is surprising how often the corpus looks normal. To facilitate manipulation, a traction suture of heavy silk is placed through the top of the septum. This suture is removed from the site when the septum is excised.

No attempt is made to stain the uterine cavity with methylene blue. Normal unstained endometrial tissue can be easily differentiated from the myometrium.

There are essentially two methods to control bleeding during this procedure. In the first, a tourniquet is applied at the junction of the lower uterine segment and cervix by inserting a 0.5-inch Penrose drain through an avascular space in the broad ligaments just lateral to the uterine vessels on each side. The tourniquet is placed around the lower uterine segment and is tied anterior to the uterus. Because the uterine corpus receives a significant blood supply through the ovarian arteries, tourniquets should also be tied around the infundibulopelvic ligaments on each side, using the same hole in the broad ligament. All tourniquets must be tied tightly enough to occlude both the arterial supply to and the venous drainage from the uterus. If only the venous drainage is occluded, then the corpus becomes engorged and congested, and bleeding is increased. If the arterial supply is occluded, then the uterus blanches, and the bleeding is minimal. A sterile Doppler can be used to establish disappearance of uterine artery pulsations. Hypotensive anesthetic techniques used in conjunction with the tourniquets allow a uterine unification operation to be accomplished with negligible blood loss.

The alternative method for hemostasis uses up to 20 units of vasoressin that is diluted in 20 mL of saline and injected
into the anterior and posterior walls of the uterus before the incision is made.

The uterine septum should be surgically excised as a wedge (Fig. 25.20D). The incisions begin at the fundus of the uterus. The approach to the endometrial cavity should be handled carefully so that it is not transected (Fig. 25.20E). The original incisions at the top of the fundus are usually within 1 cm—and sometimes even less—of the insertion of the fallopian tubes. If the incision is directed toward the apex of the wedge, however, there seems to be little danger of transecting the tube across its interstitial transit in the myometrium.

After the wedge has been removed, the uterus is closed in three layers with interrupted stitches; 2-0 nonreactive suture on anatraumatic tapered needle is convenient. Two sizes of needles are needed: a half-inch needle for the inner and intermediate layers and a large needle (three fourths half-round) for the outer muscular layer. The inner layer of stitches must include about one third of the thickness of the myometrium, because the endometrium alone is too delicate to hold a suture and will be cut through. The inner sutures should be placed through the endometrium and the myometrium in such a way that the knot is tied within the endometrial cavity (Fig. 25.20G–H). While the suture is being tied, the two lateral halves of the uterus should be pressed together both manually and with the guy sutures to relieve tension on the suture line and to reduce the possibility of cutting through. These sutures are placed alternately, first anterior and then posterior. After the first few stitches are placed and before the first layer is completed, the second layer can be started to reduce tension.

As the operation proceeds, the third layer of stitches is begun in the serosa both anteriorly and posteriorly (Fig. 25.20I–K). Finer, nonreactive suture material can be used to approximate the serosal edges of the uterus more precisely to prevent adhesion formation to the suture line (Fig. 25.20K–L). By the
The Wedge Metroplasty Versus The Tompkins Procedure. The technique of modified Jones metroplasty is a compromise between the classic Jones metroplasty and the Tompkins metroplasty. In the Tompkins operation, a single median incision divides the uterine corpus and septum in half. The incision is carried inferiorty until the endometrial cavity is reached. Each lateral septal half is then incised to within 1 cm of the tubes. No septal tissue is removed. The myometrium is reapproximated, taking care not to place sutures too close to the interstitial portion of the tubes. Proponents of the Tompkins technique suggest that their operation is simpler than the classic Jones procedure, that it conserves all myometrial tissue and leaves the uterotubal junction in a more normal and lateral position, and that it provides opportunities to heal, a delay of 4 to 6 months in attempting pregnancy is advised after abdominal metroplasty.

The Strassmann Metroplasty. The Strassmann procedure is not easily adapted to the septate uterus, but it is the procedure of choice for unification of the two endometrial cavities of an externally divided uterus, both bicornuate and didelphic (Fig. 25.21). A bicornuate uterus cannot be repaired through a transcervical incision because perforation will result. When there has been failure of fusion of the two Mullerian ducts, inspection of the pelvic cavity often reveals a broad peritoneal band that lies in the middle between the two lateral hemisepas. This rectoceleical incision is attached anteriorly to the bladder, folds over this rectoceleical incision, extends posteriorly through the cul-de-sac, and ends with its attachment to the anterior wall of the sigmoid and rectum. It is not invariably present, but when it is, its potential significance in the etiology of the anomaly, possibly by preventing the two Mullerian ducts from joining, must be considered. This rectocervical ligament must be removed before a unification procedure can be performed (Fig. 25.21A).

For hemostasis, touch-various are used in a manner similar to that described for the modified Jones procedure. The two uterine cornua are incised on their median sides in their longitudinal axes, deeply enough to expose the uterine cavities (Fig. 25.21B). Superiorly, the incision must not be too close to the interstitial portion of the fallopian tubes. Inferiorly, the incision is carried far enough to join the two sides into a single endocervical canal. If it appears that a deeper incision will compromise the competence of the cervix, then a double cervical canal can be left. If the cervix is already duplex, then it should not be joined. As the incision in the myometrium releases the internal stresses in the walls of the hemi-corpus, each one everts and is perfectly positioned for apposition, almost as if the original cervical os will result. To allow the uterine incision the best possible opportunity to heal, a delay of 4 to 6 months in attempting pregnancy is advised after abdominal metroplasty.
FIGURE 25.21. The Strassmann metroplasty with modification. A: If a rectovesical ligament is found, it should be removed. B: An incision is made on the medial side of each hemicorpus and carried deep enough to enter the uterine cavity. The edges of the myometrium will evert to face the opposite side. C and D: The myometrium is approximated by use of interrupted vertical figure-of-eight 3–0 polyglycolic acid sutures. One should avoid placing sutures too close to the interstitial portion of the fallopian tubes. E: A continuous 5–0 polyglycolic acid subserosal suture is used as a final layer. Tourniquets are removed, and defects in the broad ligament are closed.
Attempts to unify a double cervix or a septate cervix also are not recommended because of the possibility of causing cervical incompetence. However, a double or septate cervix can adversely affect the outcome of delivery if vaginal delivery is attempted, and delivery should be by cesarean section if it appears that the cervix will cause dystocia.

**Mode of Delivery after Metroplasty**

The scar formed in the myometrium after unification is as strong as, if not stronger than, the scar formed after cesarean section. The biologic conditions under which healing occurs are entirely different in these two situations. Endometriosis is a common complication after cesarean section but is not a complication of uterine unification. Of 71 known pregnancies in Strasman's collected series reported in 1952, 61 were delivered vaginally. There were no cases of uterine rupture during pregnancy or delivery. Losits and colleagues reported the reproductive outcome of 22 women who underwent the Strasman metroplasty for a bicornuate uterus; 88% achieved pregnancies that ended with the delivery of a viable infant. All were delivered by cesarean section without evidence of scar rupture. Despite evidence that the uterine scar heals securely after unification operations, our policy is to recommend delivery by elective cesarean section in all patients who have undergone abdominal metroplasty. Patients can deliver vaginally after a metroplasty by hysteroscope or resectoscope.

**Diethylstilbestrol-Related Uterine Anomalies**

Exposure of the female fetus to DES can cause significant anomalous development of the uterus, as reported by Kaufman and associates and by Haney and colleagues. The T-shaped uterus is the variant most commonly seen. It is associated with an increased rate of spontaneous abortions, preterm deliveries, and ectopic pregnancies.

Nagel and Malo determined the feasibility of correcting the uterine malformations seen in DES-exposed women by incising constriction rings and septa. Their goal was to incise the irregular uterine walls until the cavity assumed a smooth, straight line from the lower uterine cavity to the uterine tubal ostium. Their results suggested that metroplasty can decrease pregnancy loss but does not enhance fertility. The editors of this book suggest that the rare patient can benefit from a uterine reconstructive procedure, but that most will not. Surgeons may never develop a large series to document efficacy of surgical outcomes because patients with this anomaly will eventually age beyond reproductive years, and some latitude is required in cases that might possibly benefit from metroplasty.

DES-exposed patients must be monitored closely for evidence of dilatation and effacement of the cervix early in pregnancy. Cervical cerclage may be indicated in some patients.

**Uncinuate Uterus**

A uncinuate uterus can be present alone or with a rudimentary horn or bulb on the opposite side. In a series reported by Heinonen and associates, 11 of 13 patients with a uncinuate uterus had a rudimentary horn, and two did not. The rudimentary anlage (uterine muscle bundle or bulb) can communicate directly with the uncinuate uterus. In some instances, there is no cavity within the anlage, or there is no rudimentary horn. Most rudimentary horns are noncommunicating (90% according to O'Leary and O'Leary). The two sides may be connected by a fibromuscular band, or there may be no connection and no communication between the two uterine cavities. Fedele and associates have found sonography useful in determining the presence of not only a rudimentary horn but also a cavity within.

**Associated Anomalies**

Urinary tract anomalies are often associated with a uncinuate horn. On the side opposite the horn, there may be a horseshoe or a pelvic kidney, or the kidney may be hypoplastic or absent. This is especially true if there is associated Mullerian duct obstruction. When all Mullerian duct derivatives and the kidney are absent on one side, this implies failure of development of the entire urogenital ridge, including the genital ridge where the ovary forms. In addition, the ovary may be malpositioned (Fig. 25.22). Rock, Parmley, and associates reported a unilateral ovary located above the pelvic brim in four cases of uterine anomalies. The orifice of the Mullerian duct develops at about the level of the fourth thoracic vertebra (T4) in the embryo. The tip subsequently migrates along the course of the Mullerian duct into the pelvis. The orifice of the duct or the fimbriated end of the tube comes to lie in the pelvis as a result of differential growth of the fetus. The subsequent differential growth is retarded so that the portion of the urogenital ridge that gives rise to both the gonad and tube does not displace into the pelvis. Malpositions of the ovary and tube are the result.

**Reproductive Performance**

According to Heinonen and associates, the uncinuate uterus carries the poorest fetal survival rate (40%) of all uterine anomalies. In 1957, Jones reported similar findings. The abnormal shape, the insufficient muscular mass of the uterus, and the reduced uterine volume and inability to expand may explain the poor obstetric outcome.

Moutos and colleagues compared the reproductive performance of the uncinuate uterus with that of the didelphic uterus. Twenty of the 29 women with a uncinuate uterus produced a total of 40 pregnancies, whereas 13 women with a didelphic uterus produced a total of 28 pregnancies. The percentages of pregnancies resulting in preterm delivery, term delivery, and living children were similar in both groups. The authors concluded that reproductive performance of the uncinuate uterus was not different from that of the didelphic uterus, that it is uncommon for either malformation to be a primary cause of infertility, and that there is insufficient information to support recommendation of placement of a cervical cerclage in the absence of cervical incompetence. Thus, there is no evidence that uterine reconstruction should be performed for patients with a uncinuate (or a didelphic) uterus.

Because most cases of uncinuate uteri have a noncommunicating rudimentary uterine horn on the opposite side, there is danger of pregnancy in the rudimentary horn from transperitoneal migration of sperm or ovum from the opposite side. According to Holdren and Hare, approximately 350 cases of pregnancy in a rudimentary horn have been reported since the original case report by Mauritsen in 1669. O’Leary and O’Leary found the corpus luteum on the side contralateral to the rudimentary horn containing a pregnancy in 8% of cases. Signs and symptoms of an ectopic pregnancy develop with eventual rupture of the horn if the pregnancy is not detected early. Rupture through the wall of the vascular rudimentary horn is associated with sudden and severe intraperitoneal hemorrhage and shock. Death can occur in a few minutes. It is surprising that the current mortality rate has decreased to 5%.

Very little, if anything, can be done to improve the reproductive performance of patients with a uncinuate uterus. The physician should observe closely for cervical incompetence and...
perform cerclage as indicated. Andrews and Jones have suggested that removal of the rudimentary uterine horn may improve the chances of a successful pregnancy, but the experience is too small to support a definite recommendation. Cases of asymmetric development of the unicornuate uterus with an opposing rudimentary uterine horn are not amenable to unification.

**Longitudinal Vaginal Septum**

Failure of fusion of the lower müllerian ducts that form the vagina can result in a vagina with a longitudinal septum. The septum can be partial or complete. Young patients have difficulty using tampons. In cases of didelphys uterus with a longitudinal vaginal septum, one uterine hemicorpus is usually better developed than the other. If intercourse consistently occurs on the vaginal side connected to the uterine hemicorpus that is less well developed, then infertility or repeated abortion could result. For these reasons, the septum should be removed (when the patient is not pregnant) unless there is a contraindication. This can usually be accomplished easily with reasonable precautions against injury to the urethra, bladder, and rectum.

Haddad and colleagues reported their experience over a 24-year period with management of the longitudinal vaginal septum. The retrospective review of 202 patient charts described a complete septum (extending from cervix to introitus) in 45.6% of patients, high partial in 36.1%, and a medium or low partial, involving only the distal vagina, in 18.3%. Uterine malformations were noted in 87.8% of cases. The frequency of uterine malformations was 99.4% in cases of complete or partial high septum and 30.3% in cases of partial medium or low septum. The most common malformation was class VA complete septate uterus in 59.5% of malformations, followed by class III didelphys uterus (24.3%) and class VB partial septate uterus (15%). Section or resection was performed in 201 cases. Bladder injury in one patient was the only reported complication.

As highlighted by the high prevalence of associated uterine malformations in this review, management should always include an assessment of uterine anatomy.

**Asymmetric Obstruction of the Uterus or Vagina**

**Unicornuate Uterus and Noncommunicating Uterine Anlagen Containing Functional Endometrium**

If one müllerian duct develops normally while the opposite müllerian duct fails to develop or develops incompletely, then a relatively normal unicornuate uterus is found on one side and the cervix, musculature, uterine cavity, endometrium, fallopian tube, blood supply, and ligamentous attachments are...
absent or hypoplastic to a varying degree on the other side. Obstruction to menstruation can also occur to varying degrees on the improperly developed side. For example, if a rudimentary uterine horn does not communicate externally but does have an endometrium-lined uterine cavity, then clear symptoms of obstructed menstruation may begin soon after menarche, and severe dysmenorrhea will be present. Cryptomenorrhea can be overlooked as the diagnosis because there is cyclic menstruation from the opposite side. It is important to make the diagnosis as soon as possible, because if the lumen of the tube communicates with the endometrial cavity of the rudimentary uterus, then retrograde menstruation and pelvic endometriosis...
will develop, and reproductive potential can be destroyed. During the operation illustrated in Figure 25.23, which was performed to remove an obstructed rudimentary uterine horn, the fallopian tube was obstructed, and retrograde menstruation was impossible. Occasionally, the fallopian tube connected to the rudimentary uterine horn may not be patent because of incomplete development. Multiple case reports regarding the laparoscopic resection of obstructed uterine anlagen have supported the use of multiple techniques (stapling, bipolar or monopolar cautery, and the harmonic scalpel). Fedele and colleagues reported a series of 10 patients who have done well; however, the follow-up was only reported out to 6 months postprocedure. The authors strongly recommend the removal of the associated fallopian tube to minimize the risk of an ectopic pregnancy.

Unilateral Obstruction of a Cavity of a Double Uterus

Another example of a rare obstructed lateral fusion problem is the complete septum between two uterine cavities illustrated in Figure 25.24. One cavity communicated with a cervix and the other did not. This could represent an example of unilateral failure of cervical development. The patient reported incapacitating dysmenorrhea that appeared shortly after the menarche and lasted 5 days. A tense, cystic mass was palpable in the right half of the pelvis. The operation, described originally by Jones in the second edition of this book, consisted of making an incision through the anterior wall of the cystic right portion of the uterus. It was found to contain old menstrual blood. The entire septum was excised, and the uterus was reconstructed by anastomosis of the two cavities. A continuous lockstitch was reinforced by interrupted myometrial sutures, and the plastic reconstruction of the uterus was completed by a third layer of interrupted sutures uniting myometrium and serosa. Steinkampf and colleagues reported a similar case in a 17-year-old girl with progressive pelvic pain. The authors described an accessory noncommunicating uterine cavity, which they treated by excision at laparotomy.

Sanders and colleagues described several cases in which the role of interventional radiology was crucial in the management of obstructive anomalies. The report described the drainage of a noncommunicating right uterine cavity distended with blood in a unicornuate uterus in a 14-year-old patient. Adequate access was established by using ultrasound-guided

FIGURE 25.24. A: A double uterus seen at operation. Hematometra in the right uterine cavity (inset), which does not communicate with the other cavity or the cervical canal.
FIGURE 25.24. (Continued) B: The septum of the double uterus has been excised and anastomosis is performed to unite the two cavities. C: Anastomosis is completed. The small incision in the left uterine cavity was made before the septum was removed for the purpose of orientation.

Double Uterus with Obstructed Hemivagina and Ipsilateral Renal Agenesis

The unique clinical syndrome consisting of a double uterus, obstruction of the vagina (unilateral, partial, or complete), and ipsilateral renal agenesis is rare. The renal agenesis (mesonephric involution) on the side of the obstructed vagina associated with a double uterus and double cervix is suggestive of an embryologic arrest at 8 weeks of pregnancy that simultaneously affects the Mullerian and metanephric ducts. The exact cause is unknown.

Diagnostic Groups

Clinical symptoms vary depending on the uterovaginal relations in individual cases, but the syndrome can be described generally in three groups. Group 1 patients have complete unilateral vaginal obstruction without uterine communication, resulting in a paravaginal mass and symptoms of severe dysmenorrhea and lower abdominal pain. Menses are regular. Group 2 patients have an incomplete unilateral vaginal obstruction.
Bicornuate uterus
Cervical orifices
Vaginal septum
Vagina
Hematocolpos
Hematosalpinx

Figure 25.25. A double uterus with unilateral complete vaginal obstruction and ipsilateral renal agenesis. Magnetic resonance imaging reveals the left hematocolpos, both uteri, and absence of the left kidney on the side of the vaginal obstruction.

without uterine communication. The presenting symptoms are lower abdominal pain, severe dysmenorrhea, excessive foul mucopurulent discharge, and, in some instances, intermenstrual bleeding. Group 3 patients have complete vaginal obstruction with a laterally communicating double uterus. They have a paravaginal mass, lower abdominal pain, and dysmenorrhea. Menses are regular. A 10-year review of patients with this anomaly was published by Phupong and colleagues. Most patients presented with dysmenorrhea (73%) or a pelvic or paravaginal mass (71%). The right uterus and vagina were affected in 63.5% of patients.

Because menses in patients with this syndrome are rarely irregular, the possibility of this syndrome as a diagnosis can easily be overlooked. A careful pelvic examination is necessary to make the correct diagnosis. MRI can identify the obstructed vagina, double uterus, and absence of a kidney on the side of the obstruction (Fig. 25.25), but it may not be helpful if there is incomplete vaginal obstruction or a uterine communication.

Complete unilateral vaginal obstruction (group 1) can go unrecognized for a number of years after the onset of menses. The vagina is quite distensible and can accommodate a large amount of accumulated blood in the obstructed side. There is sufficient absorption of menstrual blood between periods so that each subsequent flow can add to the increments of accumulated blood without pain. Nevertheless, once retrograde menstruation occurs, endometriosis invariably is the result.

Surgical Treatment
Careful excision of the vaginal septum is the treatment of choice for a unilateral vaginal obstruction. Prophylactic antibiotics should be administered before surgery. After opening the vaginal pouch, the surgeon should use suction and lavage to remove the pooled blood and mucus. Phupong and colleagues' review also confirms the successful use of this primary therapy in 84.3% of patients. Haddad and colleagues reported a similar experience in a report describing patient management over a 27-year period. Excision of the vaginal septum was successful in 88% of patients, with complete excision in one procedure in 92% of those patients. In cases of pyocolpos or hematocolpos, distention and stretching of the septal tissue may increase the risk of inadequate resection and possible postoperative stenosis; the authors found the use of a two-step graduated resection advantageous to ensure adequate resection. A limited resection (3 cm) was performed to allow adequate drainage, followed by a return to the operating room in approximately 1 month to remove any remaining septum.

Because the obstructing septum is usually thick, removal can be difficult. Clamps should be used to isolate a generous vaginal pedicle while the suture is being tied in place to prevent slippage of tissue. Such pedicles generally retract during healing, and formation of a vaginal stenosis is avoided. In most instances, surgery is restricted to excision of the septum, and abdominal exploration is unnecessary. Uterine reconstruction is not indicated for cases of lateral communication of the uterine horns. Some authors have reported the use of hysterectomy in patients with a high, thick-walled obstruction, massive ovarian involvement, endometriosis, or adenomyosis; however, this is generally not recommended in young patients.

Reproductive Performance
Reproductive performance for patients with this disorder is usually consistent with that of patients with a double uterus unless the delay in diagnosis and resection of the obstructing septum has been sufficient to destroy tubal function or to cause the development of endometriosis. Haddad and colleagues'
review was notable for a predominance of pregnancies (80%) in the contralateral endometrial cavity.

**UNUSUAL CONFIGURATIONS OF VERTICAL-LATERAL FUSION DEFECTS**

Unusual configurations of both vertical and lateral fusion defects may occur simultaneously. Figure 25.26 depicts the radiographic evaluation (MRI) of a young woman in whom cryptomenorrhea developed above a transverse vaginal septum. The MRI study depicted the hematocolpos also suggests the longitudinal vaginal septum. Incision, drainage, and resection of the transverse vaginal septum allowed appropriate evaluation of the more proximal müllerian anatomy. The artist’s depiction in Figure 25.26 demonstrates the unusual constellation of a didelphys uterus with an intravaginal communication of the cavities and a longitudinal vaginal septum. This type of atypical combination occurs frequently enough to emphasize the importance of proper delineation of individual anatomy preoperatively for proper surgical preparation.

Müllerian duct anomalies can occur in association with a variety of other problems. For example, Stanton reported that in a series of 70 patients with bladder exstrophy, 30 (43%) had reproductive tract abnormalities. He suggested that the true figures were actually higher. Müllerian abnormalities included absence of the vagina; septate vagina; unicornuate, bicornuate, and didelphic uterus; and absent uterus. Fewer müllerian anomalies are seen with epispadias. Jones investigated anomalies of the external genitalia and vagina in 30 patients with bladder exstrophy seen at the Johns Hopkins Hospital and suggested operative techniques for correction of these anomalies. Techniques for the management of other gynecologic and obstetric problems (especially uterine prolapse) also have been discussed by Weed and McKee and by Blakeley and Mills. A number of other rare combinations of congenital malformations of the vagina and perineum have been found in association with uterine anomalies. Their surgical correction, especially in children, is reported by Hendren and Donaldson and by others. Several authors have considered the uterovaginal anomalies that occur in association with multiple other gastrointestinal and genitourinary abnormalities. Goh and colleagues described an infant girl with complete duplication of the bladder, urethra, uterus, and vagina associated with a urogenital sinus and an anterior ectopic anus. Gastol and colleagues and Magalhaes and associates also described children with complete duplication of the bladder, urethra, vagina, and anus. These complex anomalies include significantly more defects than lateral fusion concerns in the müllerian ducts. These cases emphasize the variable anatomy in this rare group of anomalies and that a substantial effort should be placed on defining anatomy before surgical exploration and management. Sheldon and colleagues reviewed 13 consecutive cases of vaginal reconstruction in pediatric patients with müllerian duct anomalies. These cases emphasize the variable anatomy in this rare group of anomalies and that a substantial effort should be placed on defining anatomy before surgical exploration and management. Sheldon and colleagues reviewed 13 consecutive cases of vaginal reconstruction in pediatric patients with müllerian duct anomalies. The review emphasized several important principles involved in the surgical management: (i) all anticipated perineal reconstruction should be performed in a single stage, (ii) urethral catheterization has an important role, (iii) urinary reconstruction is often intimately involved in the vaginal reconstruction, (iv) avoidance of overlapping suture lines is essential for optimal healing, (v) maximum growth potential of the neovagina should be considered, and (vi) meticulous follow-up of proper routine dilatation of the neovagina should be expected. Coordinated reconstruction of all organ systems is especially important in these complex cases.

Müllerian duct anomalies are seen with the McKusick-Kaufman syndrome, an autosomal recessive disorder. Other clinical findings reported with this syndrome include hydrometrocolpos, postaxial polydactyly, syndactyly, congenital heart disease, intrauterine displacement of the urethral meatus, and anorectal anomalies. In 1982, Jabs and colleagues added an unusual case to the few cases previously reported in the literature.
Müllerian duct anomalies may also affect the development of the fallopian tube. Although extremely rare, episodes of unilateral or bilateral absence of the fallopian tube have been reported. Of the less than 10 cases in the literature, Eustace reported two of the described cases. He hypothesized that compromise of the local blood supply to the caudal aspect of the müllerian duct was a more likely cause than a fusion disorder. This situation could affect fallopian tube development to a variable extent with even some effect on ovarian development.

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- Vaginal dilation should be the first line of treatment for creation of a neovagina in patients with müllerian agenesis.
- The gynecologic literature continues to support the role of the Michod neovaginoplasty as a safe and effective procedure for surgical creation of a neovagina, when necessary.
- Appropriate preoperative evaluation of reproductive and pelvic anatomy remains a critical step before a patient is taken to the operating room for treatment of any müllerian anomaly.
- In patients with müllerian agenesis, removal of uterine lumen that contains endometrium and have the potential to cause obstruction and subsequent pelvic pain should be strongly considered.
- Hysteroscopic metroplasty is a successful, minimally invasive technique for removal of a uterine septum.
- Resection of a uterine septum has been shown to improve pregnancy success in patients with a history of recurrent pregnancy loss.
- Strassman metroplasty should be considered in select women with a bicornate uterus who have experienced recurrent pregnancy loss or preterm delivery.
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions


McShane PM, Reilly RJ, Schiff I. Pregnancy outcomes following Tompkins operation for congenital absence of the vagina. Hum Reprod 1999;14:1532.


McKusick VA. Transverse vaginal septum (hydrometrocolpos). Birth 1984;51:93.


Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions


CHAPTER 26 ■ NORMAL AND ABNORMAL UTERINE BLEEDING
WILLIAM J. BUTLER AND DAVID E. CARNOVALE

DEFINITIONS

Amenorrhea—The absence of menstrual bleeding for more than 6 months.

Breakthrough bleeding—Intermenstrual bleeding that occurs despite the use of exogenous hormones.

Dysfunctional uterine bleeding (DUB)—Abnormal uterine bleeding occurring in the absence of identifiable pathology. It is often subdivided into ovulatory DUB and anovulatory DUB. DUB is a diagnosis of exclusion.

Dysmenorrhea—Painful menstruation.

Interval bleeding—Bleeding between menstrual cycles.

Menorrhagia—Prolonged menstrual bleeding that is excessive in amount, duration, or both that occurs at regular intervals.

Menometrorrhagia—Menstrual bleeding occurring at irregular intervals that is normal in amount and may or may not be prolonged.

Oligomenorrhea—A menstrual cycle interval of more than 37 days.

Polymenorrhea—A menstrual cycle interval of less than 21 days.

Postmenopausal bleeding—Uterine bleeding occurring more than 12 months after the last menstrual period of a menopausal woman.

Reproductive capability in a young woman begins at the point of menarche, which is the beginning of cyclic uterine bleeding in the anatomically and physiologically normal female. Menarche marks the beginning of an important stage in a young woman’s physical reproductive maturation and development. Even before the onset of this entirely natural but potentially disturbing function, a young woman’s early psychological reactions to menstruation, and probably also her lifelong view, can be influenced by the accuracy of her information and the degree of empathy with which this knowledge has been conveyed to her.

Many women, perhaps appropriately, conclude that any departure from their personal menstrual experience is abnormal, and they will seek treatment for these departures. Conversely, some women accept or perhaps ignore even significant variations in their menstrual function, sometimes to the extent that serious health impairment occurs (e.g., severe iron-deficiency anemia).

Clinical experience has led to empiric definitions of variations in menstrual pattern that constitute abnormal uterine bleeding. Various terms are in general use to facilitate description and record keeping regarding patterns of uterine bleeding. We define above some of the terms used in this discussion.

Current medical therapies are quite effective in the management of most of the disturbances of menstrual function that occur in the absence of infection, gestation, or uterine tumor. The success of these therapies depends on a complete understanding of normal menstrual physiology and of the effects of the various agents available for treatment. New surgical diagnostic and therapeutic technologies are becoming available to aid in the management of patients who fail to respond to conventional endocrine manipulation by medical therapies.

NORMAL MENSTRUAL PHYSIOLOGY

Menstruation is the physiologic shedding of the endometrium associated with uterine bleeding that occurs at monthly intervals from menarche to menopause. In the years between these two physiologic landmarks, menstruation will occur 400 to 500 times in the average woman. According to the classical theory of the physiology of menstruation, it is the superficial functional layer of the endometrium that is shed during menstruation, and regeneration proceeds from the remaining intact basalis. Recent work in humans has confirmed the presence of endometrial stem cells, which most likely are located in niches within the basalis layer. Additionally, it appears that these progenitor cells are hormonally independent. The proliferative potential of these cells is maintained in the noncycling state as demonstrated by their ability to regenerate endometrium in postmenopausal women given hormone replacement therapy.

The amazing regenerating properties of the endometrium and its ability to support and nourish a fertilized ovum is an extremely complex system that appears to involve numerous endocrine, paracrine, and autocrine interactions. At the endometrial level, all three inhibin subunits are expressed in the human. It is believed that these dimeric glycoproteins may be involved in endometrial maturation, such as angiogenesis, decidualization, and tissue remodeling. Epidermal growth factors (EGF) are extremely important in human embryo genesis, development, and proliferation differentiation. Human endometrial cells have been shown to express all four EGF receptors and two ligands amphiregulin (AF) and transforming growth factor alpha (TGF-α). Other substances with known angiogenic properties, such as leptin and erythropoietin, have also been shown to be expressed along with their receptors by human endometrium.

This process of monthly shedding and regeneration can occur as often as it does without producing permanent tissue damage possibly because most of the functional endometrium is conserved during menses and because the metamorphosis from proliferative to secretory endometria is controlled not only by processes of cell desquamation and repopulation but also by...
dynamic and interactive processes of the endocrinologic and reproductive systems involving many organs. Any interruption of these normal but quite complex cyclic processes can lead to irregularities in endometrial breakdown and to dysfunctional uterine bleeding (DUB).

ENDOCRINOLOGY

The endometrium is an endocrine organ that responds to circulating blood levels of estrogen and progesterone. These two steroids alone are sufficient to induce growth and maturation of an endometrium that can support blastocyst implantation, as has been demonstrated by their sequential administration to patients with ovarian failure to prepare for the transfer of donated embryos. Estradiol (E$_2$) production by the developing follicle stimulates metabolic activity in the endometrium. E$_2$ has multiple effects that are mediated through binding to estrogen receptors. There are two estrogen receptors: alpha and beta. The estrogen receptors are members of a hormone receptor family that includes not only the other steroid receptors but also receptors for vitamin D and thyroid hormone. All receptors in this family have three domains. The regulatory domain at the amino acid terminal binds regulatory protein factors. The hormone-binding domain on the carboxy terminal, with its contiguous hinge region, undergoes conformational changes when a steroid hormone binds to it, allowing DNA binding. The DNA-binding domain binds to the hormone-responsive elements in the target gene. The conformation of the DNA-binding domain consists of the highly conserved zinc finger structures that interact with complementary patterns in the DNA.

Steroid hormones have relatively low molecular weights and are rapidly transported into cells by passive diffusion. Binding of a steroid hormone to the intranuclear receptors transforms the hormone receptor complex to allow DNA binding to specific hormone response elements and initiates subsequent transcription. Both estrogen and progesterone receptor complexes bind to their response elements as dimers. After gene activation, the hormone receptor complex undergoes processing with dissociation and loss of activity.

Transcription of target genes with mRNA synthesis leads to translation with synthesis of proteins on ribosomes in the endometrium. The biologic effects of E$_2$ are mediated through this protein synthesis.

Estrogen and Progesterone Receptor Induction

One important function of estrogen is the induction of synthesis of its own and other steroid hormone receptors, called replenishment. Estrogen receptors reach a maximum concentration in the middle-to-late proliferative phase of the menstrual cycle. Progesterone receptors are also induced, and their concentration peaks in the late proliferative phase. Progesterone then blocks the estrogen replenishment mechanism, possibly by accelerating receptor turnover and inhibiting E$_2$-induced gene transcription. Enough progesterone receptors persist through the luteal phase, however, to maintain endometrial responsiveness and induction of decidualization.

Estrogen and Progesterone Target Genes

Target genes of the E$_2$ receptor complex code for the synthesis of numerous proteins, including structural proteins, enzymes, and growth factors. The relative roles played by the alpha and beta estrogen receptors in the endometrium have yet to be completely elucidated. The net effect of estrogenic stimulation is to induce DNA synthesis and mitotic activity with proliferation of the endometrial glands and stroma. The result is cessation of menstrual flow and an increase in the thickness of the endometrium. Progesterone also has multiple biologic effects mediated through its receptors. It actively inhibits synthesis of both its own receptors and estrogen receptors, although sufficient progesterone receptors remain throughout the luteal phase of the cycle to mediate maturation and secretory differentiation of the endometrium. The net effect is to antagonize estrogenic metabolic activity with suppression of DNA synthesis in endometrial cells, which results in dynamic inhibition of cell mitosis. Progesterone is also responsible for the active induction of synthesis of various cytoplasmic enzymes, the secretion of proteins such as prolactin-dependent and progesterone-dependent endometrial peptide from decidualized stromal cells, and the stabilization of lysosomes, all of which may play an important role in the onset of menstruation.

Histology and Physiology

The postmenstrual endometrium that remains after collapse and partial shedding during menstruation consists of a thin but stable layer of basal cells and the dense irregular remnants of the stromal cell-derived stratum spongiosum. The glands are narrow and lined by low cuboidal epithelial cells with few mitoses. The glandular stromal cells are small and spindly with little cytoplasm or mitotic activity. Protein synthesis and secretory activity are minimal. It is on this substrate of basal and stromal cells that estrogen induces a proliferative response.

Early Proliferative Phase

Mitic activity results in growth and pseudoproliferation of the glandular epithelial cells. With development and elongation of the glands, the epithelial cells assume a more columnar shape, with secretory granules in the cytoplasm, and glycogen begins to collect in the basal vacuoles. Arteriolar vessels grow up into the endometrium as part of the general proliferative response. The stromal cells also proliferate and expand from a dense compact state to an expanded matrix by transient edema. The combined effects of proliferation and expansion cause the endometrium to grow in this phase to a thickness of 3 to 5 mm. The increased mitotic activity that results in proliferation is mediated by way of estrogen induction of various peptide growth factors. Epidermal growth factor and insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1) are two potent mitogens with synthesis that is stimulated by estrogen in endometrial epithelial and stromal cells. Endothelin-1 is a vasoactive peptide with mitogenic activity; its synthesis is induced by both estrogen and growth factors, and its metabolism is enhanced by progesterone. Endothelin-1 may play a role in proliferation and in menstruation. The various peptides that are secreted from stromal and epithelial cells to form the extracellular matrix of the endometrium can be either induced or suppressed by both estrogen and progesterone. Fibronectin, for example, is suppressed by progesterone, whereas several integrin subtypes are stimulated by progesterone. These peptides may have a functional role in proliferation, differentiation, and embryo implantation.
Angiogenesis allows both repair of the endometrium after menstruation and supports cellular proliferation for regrowth during the follicular phase. It is supported and promoted by multiple growth factors. An important role is played by vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF). VEGF mRNA expression is induced by E2 and increases from the early proliferative phase through the secretory phase (Torry and Torry). VEGF is produced by the glandular epithelial cells, although some stromal expression is evident in the secretory phase. The increased expression throughout the cycle supports a possible role of VEGF in expansion and coiling of the spiral arteries. Changes in VEGF expression have been detected in women with abnormal uterine bleeding, supporting a possible role in the pathogenesis of menorrhagia [Koooy et al.].

E2 induces several enzymes [alkaline phosphatase, Su-reductase, and possibly phospholipase A2]. Phospholipase A2, which releases arachidonic acid from phospholipid esters, controls the rate-limiting step in prostaglandin synthesis. E1 also stimulates cyclooxygenase synthesis of prostaglandin F2α (PGF2α) and prostaglandin E2 (PGE2), both of which have a role in menstrual function. PGE2 has vasodilator and muscle contraction effects. PGF2α is generally a vasodilator but can also cause contractions in uterine smooth muscle. Alterations in the relative levels of PGF2α and PGE2 are known to change menstrual bleeding patterns.

Late Proliferative Phase

Ovulation with corpus luteum formation and significant progesterone secretion leads to secretory transformation in the late proliferative-phase endometrium. Progesterone inhibits both estrogen and progesterone receptor synthesis and inhibits DNA synthesis and mitosis. This inhibition process is accompanied by predecidual development of RNA-filled channels between the nucleoli and nuclear membranes that are responsible for the progesterone-induced active synthesis of cytoplasmic enzymes during the secretory phase of the cycle.

The Secretory Phase

The cytoplasmic enzymes 17β- and 20α-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (HSD) are induced by progesterone and modulate steroid activity. The enzyme 17β-HSD catalyzes the conversion of E2 to the relatively weaker estrogen estrone, which, when sulfated by estrogen sulfotransferase, can no longer bind to estrogen receptors. The enzyme 20α-HSD alters progesterone receptor binding and activity. Cytoplasmic lytic enzymes such as acid phosphatase are also induced by progesterone but are kept inactive within Golgi-derived lysosomes, the membranes of which are stabilized by progesterone. IGF II is synthesized locally by the endometrial cells and possibly also from leukocytes. The release of lysosomal enzymes from activated leukocytes may be involved in the initiation of menstruation.

Late Secretory Phase

Progesterone has also been induced to produce the activity of metalloendopeptidase, which degrades the endothelin-1 propeptide. Withdrawal of progesterone can lead to increased endothelin-1 activity with vasospasm and initiation of menstrual bleeding. Several investigators have described increased levels of protease inhibitors, such as α1-antitrypsin and antithrombin III, in secretory-phase uterine fluid, which may also be involved in the mechanism of menstrual bleeding.

The Luteal Phase

Morphologically, secretory transformation of the endometrium results in coiling of the spiral arteries, the deeper spongiosum. The spongiosum has a loose edematous matrix that is the consequence of increased capillary permeability, mediated possibly by prostaglandins. The predecidual, late secretory-phase stromal cells produce several metabolically active substances, as previously described, and are infiltrated by migratory leukocytes. The release of lysozyme enzymes from endometrial cells and possibly also from leukocytes may be involved in the regulation of menstruation.

Menstruation

Menstruation is controlled by many complex, interrelated, and incompletely understood factors. Normal menstruation results from progesterone withdrawal from the estrogen-primed endometrium. Changes that occur in the endometrium during menstruation were described by Markle by observation of endometrial tissue transplanted to the anterior chamber of the eyes of rhesus monkeys. Markle described cyclic changes in endometrial vascularity and the development of coiled vessels supplying the superficial two thirds of the endometrium. The endometrium of the follicular phase is compact, with relatively underdeveloped vasculature. Progesterone converts this endometrium into a thick, edematous, secretory lining that is glycogen enriched and prepares the metabolically active stroma and glands with an increased vasculature to receive and nourish a fertilized ovum. If implantation does not occur, estrogen and progesterone levels fall, prostaglandin synthesis occurs, and lysosomal membranes rupture, causing constriction of the spiral arterioles, ischemic necrosis, and sloughing of the endometrial superficial to the basal layer. Lysosomal release and ischemic necrosis has been believed to be the main mechanism for normal menstrual bleeding for many years. However, the difficulty in detecting cell necrosis during menstruation and viability of menstrual fragments has raised a number of questions about this theory. Current data support the “metalloproteinase theory” as the mechanism leading to menstrual tissue breakdown and shedding. Matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs), lytic enzymes in conjunction with activated endometrial stromal granulocytes, macrophages, and mast cells together are now thought by most investigators to cause menstruation. It is believed that tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases (TIMPs) remain constant throughout the menstrual cycle. Before menstruation, production and activation of MMPs increases in an environment of stable amounts of TIMPs, leading to an altered MMPs/TIMPs ratio, resulting in tissue breakdown. Estrogen and progesterone, along with cytokines, appear to play a significant role in the regulation and expression of the MMPs. High levels of progesterone are
believed to inhibit MMP production and activity. This would explain endometrial tissue breakdown that occurs coincident with dropping progesterone levels from an involuting corpus luteum.

In the second part of the menstrual phase, mitotic activity resumes, and epithelial regeneration begins. This process occurs even while menstrual bleeding continues. Horizontal growth from stem cells of the glands present in niches within the basalis layer continues the regenerative process. New blood capillaries are formed by the stimulating effect vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and thymidine phosphorylase (TP) secreted by both epithelial and stromal cells. Continuous processes of stem cell activity is ensured by high telomerase activity.

This process begins in the premenstrual phase of the cycle with cessation of synthesis and impregnation of ground substance and supporting tissues by lytic enzymes released from lysosomes, which causes loss of fluids and compression of the endometrium, tonic contractions of spiral arteries with reduction of blood flow to the tissues, loss of stromal edema, and kinking of the coiled spiral arteries caused by the reduction in endometrial thickness.

A generalized state of ischemia develops in the superficial layers of endometrium, and bleeding into the stroma begins. Acid phosphatase and prosta-glandins substances released from autolyzed cells, together with increased endothelin-1 activity, cause more intense vasoconstriction of spiral arteries, and devitalized tissues finally slough as small hemorrhages in the stroma coalesce. According to Fehley, coagulation factors are decreased in normal menstrual discharge. Fibrogenin is absent, plasminogen is converted to plasmin by released peptidases, and the amount of plasmin inhibitor is decreased. Menstrual blood generally does not clot, but it can form red blood cell aggregates with mucoid substances, mucoproteins, and glycogen as it collects in the vagina. These red cell aggregates may appear to be blood clots, but they contain no fibrin. In the presence of very heavy flow, however, clotting can occur.

According to classical theory, during menstruation the superficial compacta and the intermediate stratum spongiosum layers of the endometrium are shed, leaving only the basalis layer intact. New endometrium is regenerated from the basalis. Regeneration of new capillaries from the basalis has been observed by Markee, and restoration of the endometrial circulation has been correlated with the cessation of menstrual bleeding. Blood loss from the process of normal menstruation is limited by recovery of tone in the myometrium and endometrial vasculature, cessation of cellular autolysis, eventual clotting over the endometrial surface, and eventual active regeneration of glands, stroma, and vessels in the basalis layer in response to rising estrogen levels in the new cycle. The retained basalis endometrium is protected from destruction by lysosomal enzymes by a mucinous carbohydrate coat that covers the free surfaces of endometrial cells. This mechanism for retention of some endometrium during menstruation may explain the lack of permanent damage during the months of menstruation.

Endometrial regression during menstruation is described by classical theory as the result of four processes: autophagia, heterophagia, extravasation of secretory products, and elimination of fluids with some, but not complete, shedding of tissue. Autophagia and heterophagia are the kindred processes of intracellular lytic digestion of debris in vacuoles and of extracellular lytic digestion of debris taken up by phagosomes. Both processes result in damaged tissue to allow regeneration of normal endometrial cells. With fluid loss and secretion, the functionalis (the remaining functional basalis) regresses to a resting state, ready to regenerate in the next cycle. These two processes can only partially explain the observation that initial endometrial regeneration occurs in the absence of estrogen. This initial lack of estrogen dependence can also be secondary to the lesser proliferative response required after regression, compared with complete endometrial shedding. Much work remains to be done to define the complex processes involved in menstruation.

Given the complexities and varieties of possible alterations of the systems that control menstruation, it is not surprising that abnormal uterine bleeding should occur even in the absence of obvious disease. Prolonged estrogen stimulation can result in endometrium that outgrows its blood supply and has asynchronous development of endometrial glands, stroma, and blood vessels. Any failure of progesterone production can also profoundly affect endometrial glands, stroma, and blood vessels. Abnormal synthesis of acid mucopolysaccharides can result in the release of excessive amounts of hydrolytic enzymes into the stroma. Lysosome release from endometrial glands, influenced by plasma progesterone levels, can affect menstrual flow. The endometrium and myometrium of patients with menorrhagia produce altered types of prosta-glandins. Smith and associates have shown that the amount of menstrual flow is influenced by a change in the endometrial conversion of prosta-glandin endoperoxide from PGE2 to PGF2, and that women with menorrhagia synthesize mainly the vasodilator PGE2 in the endometrium.

Menstruation has three clinical characteristics: the menstrual interval or cycle length, and an amount of flow. The mean cycle length is 28 to 29 days, although a menstrual interval of 21 to 37 days can be considered normal. A menstrual interval shorter than 21 days is defined as oligomenorrhea. A menstrual interval longer than 37 days is defined as oligomenorrhea. Amenorrhea is the absence of menses for 6 months or longer. The menstrual interval can vary from month to month by several days. Regularity of the menstrual cycle is more important than exact approximation to the 28-day mean menstrual interval. Variation in the length of the menstrual interval in regular ovulatory cycles usually occurs in the preovulatory (proliferative) phase of the cycle and is more frequent among postmenarchal teenagers and in women approaching menopause.

A duration of flow of 7 days or less is considered normal. A patient bleeding beyond 7 days enters the intermenstrual phase of the cycle, which is defined as metrorrhagia. Regardless of the length of the menstrual flow, 70% of the blood loss usually occurs by the second day and 90% by the third day. The mean menstrual blood loss for a normal period is about 40 mL. A total blood loss of 20 to 80 mL, representing 10 to 35 mg iron, has long been accepted as within the normal range. Menstrual blood loss of 80 mL or less was established as the upper limit of normal, as this is the 95th percentile in healthy women with normal iron stores measured in a population of Swedish women in the 1960s. Clinically, the use of such a statistical cutoff for a value that is not likely to be measured and is likely to vary among populations depending on diet, health, and genetics is very limited. Additionally, it has recently been shown that the 80 mL value has neither the sensitivity or specificity for disease, compromised iron status, or adverse impact of periods. The determination of the normalcy of menstrual bleeding amount is better addressed in the context of the particular
Normal and Abnormal Uterine Bleeding

DYSFUNCTIONAL UTERINE BLEEDING

DUB is a symptom complex that includes any condition of abnormal uterine bleeding in the absence of pregnancy, neoplasia, infection, or other intrauterine lesion. Such bleeding is most often the result of endocrinologic dysfunction that inhibits normal ovulation.

Chronic Anovulation and Dysfunctional Uterine Bleeding

The state of chronic anovulation is the result of unopposed estrogen stimulation of the endometrium with consequent irregular breakthrough and bleeding. Chronic anovulation syndrome is a “wastebasket” diagnosis for multiple endocrine etiologies. Hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism, hyperprolactinemia, hormone-producing ovarian tumors, and Cushing disease are all endocrine syndromes that can induce anovulation, but they are not, therefore, true DUB patients by strict definition.

Diagnostic Imaging Techniques

Diagnostic vaginal ultrasound can be particularly useful in cases of ovulatory abnormal uterine bleeding. A nonrandomized study of 45 otherwise unselected patients with abnormal uterine bleeding demonstrated anatomic pathology in 31% by vaginal ultrasound compared with 9% by clinical examination. Pathologic findings included leiomyoma uteri, polyps, and abnormal endometrial architecture. If these data are confirmed by later studies, the implication is that true DUB in ovulatory patients may be even more rare than the currently accepted figure of 15% to 20%. Endovaginal ultrasound is also of particular value in cases of perimenopausal and postmenopausal abnormal bleeding, which will be discussed later (Fig. 26.1). Saline infusion sonography (SIS) is a technique to improve visualization of the endometrial cavity during transvaginal ultrasonography. The technique involves a pelvic examination with placement of an open-sided bivalve speculum. The cervix is prepared with antisecretonic solution, and a small catheter is inserted through the cervical os for instillation of sterile saline. A number of catheters are available both with and without small balloons, which are useful in the case of a parsus cervix. The speculum is then removed, and the endometrial cavity is descended with sterile saline during transvaginal ultrasonography. Deutsch and colleagues compared the accuracy of saline infusion sonography with transvaginal sonography, hysteroscopy, and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). In 108 patients with abnormal uterine bleeding, pain, endometriosis, or myomas,
SIS had an overall sensitivity comparable to the gold standard of hysteroscopy and better than either MRI or transvaginal sonography. MRI had the highest sensitivity for submucous myomas, but a relatively low sensitivity for other intrauterine pathology, such as polyps. As SIS is a less invasive procedure than a surgical technique, such as hysteroscopy, and is much less expensive than MRI, it should be the procedure of choice for imaging of the endometrial cavity in patients with abnormal uterine bleeding.

Proper evaluation of abnormal bleeding in the ovulatory patient demands assessment for other less common causes of bleeding. According to Claessens and Cowell, bleeding dyscrasias are particularly common in perimenarchal patients, up to 19% of whom have a primary coagulation disorder, such as idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura or von Willebrand disease. An ad hoc consensus conference that met in May 2004 concluded that underlying hemostatic disorders were a more common cause of menorrhagia in adult women than has been currently recognized (Munrow and Lukes). The most common of these coagulopathies is von Willebrand disease. The incidence of von Willebrand disease in the general population has been estimated at 0.8% to 1.3%. The consensus conference calculated, by review of the literature, an incidence of 13.2% (range 11.2%–15.5%) in healthy women with menorrhagia. Conversely, women with von Willebrand disease report menorrhagia in 78% to 93% of patients. Other inherited disorders of hemostasis are relatively rare. Other disorders of platelet number and function have variable effects on menstrual bleeding, depending on their severity. Treatment of abnormal uterine bleeding secondary to coagulopathy may involve medical management with tranexamic acid, desmopressin acetate (DDAVP), hormonal therapy, or a progesterin-containing intrauterine device (IUD). Endometrial ablation is also appropriate in these patients.

Hemorrhagic diatheses can occur with leukemia, with chemotherapy treatment, or as secondary to oral anticoagulant therapy or ingestion of foods or drugs that inhibit platelet aggregation. Infection has been shown to cause abnormal uterine bleeding. Mobiluncus species identified in cases of abnormal bleeding respond to oral metronidazole therapy. Chlamydia has been implicated in abnormal bleeding, particularly with concurrent use of oral contraceptives. Menorrhagia has been described as an early symptom in patients with subclinical hypothyroidism before diagnosis of overt disease. Thyroid replacement in a normal physiologic dosage will resolve the abnormal bleeding.
Arteriovenous malformation is a very rare cause of ovulatory bleeding. In a report by Fleming and colleagues, only two cases were diagnosed before definitive surgery; the diagnosis was by pelvic angiography.

The reported association between tubal ligation and new onset of abnormal uterine bleeding should also be noted. Although numerous anecdotal reports exist, no underlying pathologic changes in anatomy or hormone production have ever been documented. Long-term follow-up studies do not confirm an increased incidence of abnormal bleeding in these patients but do implicate biased patient perception. Patients who discontinue oral contraceptive use after tubal ligation have heavier and more painful bleeding, whereas patients who have intrauterine devices removed after sterilization have improved menstrual symptomatology.

Pathophysiology

As stated earlier, the most common etiology for DUB is estrogen withdrawal or estrogen breakthrough bleeding in an anovulatory patient. In the absence of progesterone exposure to cause inhibition of DNA synthesis and mitosis, the estrogenic proliferative response causes stromal cell growth to exceed the structural integrity of its stromal matrix, and the endometrium breaks down with irregular bleeding. Unopposed estrogen results in vascular endometrial tissue with relatively scant stroma, giving glands a back-to-back appearance. The endometrium is fragile and undergoes repetitive spontaneous breakdown. In the absence of normal control mechanisms to limit menstrual blood loss, bleeding can be prolonged and excessive.

Other contributing factors are the lack of coordinated vasoconstriction and the release of lytic enzymes, which occurs in a normal progesterone-stimulated endometrium. The absence of progesterone stimulation of metalloendopeptidase increases endothelin-1 activity, which contributes to vasospasm. Lysosomal enzymes inappropriately released in the absence of progesterone stimulation of the lysosomal membrane further contribute to structural breakdown.

Many questions still remain about the mechanisms responsible for all cases of DUB. Although the above makes sense in certain circumstances, it does not explain clinical scenarios such as bleeding unresponsive to hormonal manipulation after structural lesions have been ruled out. The same lytic enzymes, MMPs, and their inhibitors involved in normal menstrual bleeding have been found to have aberrant locally restricted expression, activation, and uncontrolled activity in the endometrial tissue biopsy specimens from women with metrorrhagia.

Hemostasis in a bleeding endometrium depends both on coagulation, with thrombus formation forming plugs in superficial blood vessels, and on vasoconstriction of spiral arterioles; generalized endometrial collapse with compression of bleeding vessels can also contribute. The lack of coordinated vasoconstriction and the irregular structural collapse lead to irregular and often heavy bleeding. The amount of bleeding correlates directly with the level of estrogen stimulation. The chronic high estrogen milieu seen in cases of obesity and chronic anovulation, and in perimenarchal and perimenopausal patients, cause the greatest amount of DUB blood loss.

Unopposed estrogen stimulation can, over time, induce a hyperplastic response in the proliferating endometrium (Fig. 26.2A). Such hyperplasia can eventually develop the cytologic changes associated with neoplasia: atypical adenomatous hyperplasia or even low-grade adenocarcinoma. Such cellular transformation takes time, as much as 10 to 20 years; a young patient with DUB has a low risk of hyperplasia or neoplasia and generally does not require endometrial sampling. The perimenopausal patient has a substantially higher risk, however, and sampling is mandated.

Making the Differential Diagnosis

DUB occurs most frequently at the extremes of menstrual life, but it can develop at any intervening time. The characteristics of DUB are variable, from infrequent heavy flow (oligomenorrhea) to almost continuous spotting or bleeding. The age at onset and duration of irregularity can provide important
clues to etiology. Anovulation is common in the perimenopausal woman. More than 50% of cycles are anovulatory in the first 2 years after menopause. Complications of pregnancy are also common in this age group and must be ruled out before initiation of treatment for DUB. New sensitive radiocommunooassays for the beta subunit of human chorionic gonadotropin are accurate for evaluating the possibility of pregnancy without invasively confirming it as these assays are not foetal specifically. Anovulatory bleeding is common with polycystic ovarian disease, with functional cysts of the ovary, and perhaps in some cases of luteal phase deficiency. The patient workup for abnormal uterine bleeding should include a complete history and physical examination. Pelvic examination may disclose an abnormal mass, evidence of genital trauma or laceration, or a fibroid uterus. Laboratory studies should include thyroid function tests and the evaluation of levels of human chorionic gonadotropin, FSH, LH, prolactin, and serum androgens, if indicated. A significant increase in dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate indicates a need to screen for nonclassical adrenal hyperplasia. A serum progesterone level measurement is useful for assessment of ovulatory status. A complete blood count with platelet and coagulation studies is appropriate, and a bleeding time may be indicated to assess platelet function. As mentioned earlier, endovaginal ultrason and SN are valuable adjuncts to pelvic examination. They are particularly informative for assessment of intruterine or extraterine pregnancies and pelvic masses detected on examination. Occasionally, they may also reveal anatomic pathology not detected by other means (Fig. 26.1). Invasive tissue-sampling procedures include endometrial sampling and D&C. A D&C is preferable in the perimenopausal or postmenopausal patient and may also be indicated when there is clinical suspicion of an abnormal pregnancy. A D&C is relatively contraindicated in the adolescent. Hysterosalpingography and hysteroscopy also have potential benefit and will be reviewed later in this chapter.

**Treatment**

Because most patients with DUB have an underlying etiology of chronic anovulation with unopposed estrogen stimulation of the endometrium, medical treatment with progestational compounds is the mainstay of therapy. Precise amounts can differ depending on the patient's age, but adequate progestin stimulation of the endometrium will usually decrease uterine bleeding. Submucous leiomyomata and endometrial polyps can be present in older women but are not a problem in the differential diagnosis of adolescents. Excessive anovulatory bleeding is common with polycystic ovarian disease, with functional cysts of the ovary, and perhaps in some cases of luteal phase deficiency. The patient workup for abnormal uterine bleeding should include a complete history and physical examination. Pelvic examination may disclose an abnormal mass, evidence of genital trauma or laceration, or a fibroid uterus. Laboratory studies should include thyroid function tests and the evaluation of levels of human chorionic gonadotropin, FSH, LH, prolactin, and serum androgens, if indicated. A significant increase in dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate indicates a need to screen for nonclassical adrenal hyperplasia. A serum progesterone level measurement is useful for assessment of ovulatory status. A complete blood count with platelet and coagulation studies is appropriate, and a bleeding time may be indicated to assess platelet function. As mentioned earlier, endovaginal ultrason and SN are valuable adjuncts to pelvic examination. They are particularly informative for assessment of intruterine or extraterine pregnancies and pelvic masses detected on examination. Occasionally, they may also reveal anatomic pathology not detected by other means (Fig. 26.1). Invasive tissue-sampling procedures include endometrial sampling and D&C. A D&C is preferable in the perimenopausal or postmenopausal patient and may also be indicated when there is clinical suspicion of an abnormal pregnancy. A D&C is relatively contraindicated in the adolescent. Hysterosalpingography and hysteroscopy also have potential benefit and will be reviewed later in this chapter.
Failure to withdraw could signify pregnancy, development of a hypoestrogenic state, or, rarely, induction of ovulation by progestin stimulation of the estrogen-primed patient. In such a case of endogenous progesterone production, the menopause can be delayed 2 weeks. A word of caution: This regimen is not contraceptive.

An alternative method for delivery of a progestin to control DUB in patients using a progestin-impregnated IUD. Numerous studies have demonstrated significant reductions in menstrual blood loss in patients using the progestin-impregnated IUD. Xiao and colleagues showed reductions of more than 80% at up to 16 months. Irwin and associates performed a randomized trial of 44 women with menorrhagia, comparing a levonorgestrel IUD with cyclic progestin therapy. The IUD group had blood loss reduced by 90%, along with higher patient satisfaction, compliance, and continuation. A comparison of endometrial resection with the levonorgestrel IUD showed highly significant decreases in menstrual blood loss with both treatment arms (Kauaruma et al.). The incidence of complications was similar in both groups, and 3-year follow-up rates were similar. Seventeen percent of the resection group required follow-up surgery. Other studies have shown a significant cost benefit to use of the levonorgestrel IUD compared with surgical management of abnormal uterine bleeding, including hysterectomy. As noted earlier, the levonorgestrel IUD has also shown to be effective in controlling menorrhagia in patients with hemostatic disorders such as von Willebrand disease.

Chronic unopposed estrogen can produce a very lush endometrium that can bleed heavily during progestin withdrawal. Speroff and colleagues recommend treatment using combination oral contraceptives in a step-down regimen. Two to four pills are given daily, one every 6 to 12 hours, for 5 to 7 days for effective control of bleeding. This will usually control acute bleeding within 24 to 48 hours, allowing time to complete the diagnostic evaluation. Withdrawal of medication will result in a heavy bleed. On the fifth day of this bleed, a low-dose cyclic oral contraceptive is started and repeated for three cycles to allow orderly renaturation of the provisional proliferative endometrium. Alternatively, the dosage of combination pills can be tapered (four times a day, then three times a day, then two times a day) over 3 to 6 days and then continued at one pill every day. Combination oral contraceptives induce atrophy of the endometrium because the chronic estrogen–progestin exposure suppresses pituitary gonadotropins and inhibits endogenous steroidogenesis. They are useful for long-term management of DUB in patients without contraindications and have the added benefit of pregnancy prevention. Particularly in perimenarcheal patients, heavy prolonged bleeding can denude the basal endometrium and make it unresponsive to progestins. Curetage for control of hemorrhage is contraindicated because of a high risk of development of intrauterine synchiaria (Asherman syndrome) if the basalis is curetted. High-dose intravenous estrogen (conjugated estrogens 25 mg every 4 hours until bleeding abates) will give acute control by proliferative repair of the endometrium and by direct effects on coagulation, including increased fibrinogen and platelet aggregation. Megestrol 20 mg twice daily is also an excellent method for obtaining acute control of abnormal uterine bleeding without the side effects of intravenous estrogen treatment. It will be effective in any situation other than one in which the entire endometrium has sloughed, leaving only basalis. A progestin alone or oral contraceptive in combination with a progestin can then be used to induce orderly withdrawal bleeding.

Hysterectomy of patients who fail to respond to hormonal therapy may reveal previously missed pathology, such as a submucous myoma or polyp. These diagnoses are particularly common in patients with ovulatory dysfunctional bleeding. If a diagnostic curettage has not been previously performed, one can be performed in conjunction with the hysteroscopy, both for diagnosis and for temporary therapy. If atypical hyperplasia has been identified and preservation of fertility is desired, more aggressive progestin therapy is recommended. Medroxyprogesterone acetate, 30 mg in local instillation, may be given as a single dose or divided dosage for 3 months should be monitored by repeat endometrial sampling to assess the efficiency of the medical treatment (Fig. 26.2B). If atypical hyperplasia persists, very high-dose progestin protocols can be tried, but hysterectomy must be considered.

Menorrhagia can be reduced when prostaglandin E2 and progestins are synthesized are decreased by nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medications. These drugs inhibit the cyclooxygenase enzyme necessary for endometrial production of prostaglandin under estrogen stimulation and thus alter the relative production of the proaggregation vasoconstrictor thromboxane A2 and the antiaggregation vasodilator prostacyclin. Pathology studies have confirmed that this improves both platelet aggregation and vasoconstriction. Fraser and colleagues (1991) demonstrated these compounds to be most effective when given in therapeutic dosages for 7 to 10 days before the expected onset of the next menstrual period in ovulatory DUB patients, but they are commonly started with the onset of menses and continued throughout the bleeding episode with good success.

For coagulation disorders, 1-desamino-8-arginine vasopressin (also known as desmopressin, or simply DDAVP) increases coagulation factor VIII with a therapeutic effect lasting about 6 hours. It is best administered intravenously, 0.3 µg/kg in 50 mL saline over 15 to 30 minutes, but can be used intranasally. Antifibrinolytic agents such as tranexamic acid and traxanamic acid can decrease blood loss up to 50%, but their significant central nervous system and gastrointestinal side effects and the purported risk of intracranial arterial thrombosis have traditionally limited their applicability. New data do not support a significant thrombotic risk, and tranexamic acid is widely available in Europe for use in menorrhagia. Ergot derivatives are ineffective for treatment of menorrhagia.

Local delivery of progestational agents is an important advance in the treatment of abnormal uterine bleeding. Numerous studies have demonstrated significant reductions in menstrual blood loss in patients using the progestin-impregnated IUD. Numerous studies have demonstrated significant reductions in menstrual blood loss in patients using the progestin-impregnated IUD. Xiao and colleagues showed reductions of more than 80% at up to 16 months. Irwin and associates performed a randomized trial of 44 women with menorrhagia, comparing a levonorgestrel IUD with cyclic progestin therapy. The IUD group had blood loss reduced by 90%, along with higher patient satisfaction, compliance, and continuation. A comparison of endometrial resection with the levonorgestrel IUD showed highly significant decreases in menstrual blood loss with both treatment arms (Kauaruma et al.). The incidence of complications was similar in both groups, and 3-year follow-up rates were similar. Seventeen percent of the resection group required follow-up surgery. Other studies have shown a significant cost benefit to use of the levonorgestrel IUD compared with surgical management of abnormal uterine bleeding, including hysterectomy. As noted earlier, the levonorgestrel IUD has also shown to be effective in controlling menorrhagia in patients with hemostatic disorders such as von Willebrand disease.

Ergot derivatives are ineffective for treatment of menorrhagia. Local delivery of progestational agents is an important advance in the treatment of abnormal uterine bleeding. Numerous studies have demonstrated significant reductions in menstrual blood loss in patients using the progestin-impregnated IUD. Numerous studies have demonstrated significant reductions in menstrual blood loss in patients using the progestin-impregnated IUD. Xiao and colleagues showed reductions of more than 80% at up to 16 months. Irwin and associates performed a randomized trial of 44 women with menorrhagia, comparing a levonorgestrel IUD with cyclic progestin therapy. The IUD group had blood loss reduced by 90%, along with higher patient satisfaction, compliance, and continuation. A comparison of endometrial resection with the levonorgestrel IUD showed highly significant decreases in menstrual blood loss with both treatment arms (Kauaruma et al.). The incidence of complications was similar in both groups, and 3-year follow-up rates were similar. Seventeen percent of the resection group required follow-up surgery. Other studies have shown a significant cost benefit to use of the levonorgestrel IUD compared with surgical management of abnormal uterine bleeding, including hysterectomy. As noted earlier, the levonorgestrel IUD has also shown to be effective in controlling menorrhagia in patients with hemostatic disorders such as von Willebrand disease.

Ergot derivatives are ineffective for treatment of menorrhagia. Local delivery of progestational agents is an important advance in the treatment of abnormal uterine bleeding. Numerous studies have demonstrated significant reductions in menstrual blood loss in patients using the progestin-impregnated IUD. Numerous studies have demonstrated significant reductions in menstrual blood loss in patients using the progestin-impregnated IUD. Xiao and colleagues showed reductions of more than 80% at up to 16 months. Irwin and associates performed a randomized trial of 44 women with menorrhagia, comparing a levonorgestrel IUD with cyclic progestin therapy. The IUD group had blood loss reduced by 90%, along with higher patient satisfaction, compliance, and continuation. A comparison of endometrial resection with the levonorgestrel IUD showed highly significant decreases in menstrual blood loss with both treatment arms (Kauaruma et al.). The incidence of complications was similar in both groups, and 3-year follow-up rates were similar. Seventeen percent of the resection group required follow-up surgery. Other studies have shown a significant cost benefit to use of the levonorgestrel IUD compared with surgical management of abnormal uterine bleeding, including hysterectomy. As noted earlier, the levonorgestrel IUD has also shown to be effective in controlling menorrhagia in patients with hemostatic disorders such as von Willebrand disease.

Ergot derivatives are ineffective for treatment of menorrhagia. Local delivery of progestational agents is an important advance in the treatment of abnormal uterine bleeding. Numerous studies have demonstrated significant reductions in menstrual blood loss in patients using the progestin-impregnated IUD. Numerous studies have demonstrated significant reductions in menstrual blood loss in patients using the progestin-impregnated IUD. Xiao and colleagues showed reductions of more than 80% at up to 16 months. Irwin and associates performed a randomized trial of 44 women with menorrhagia, comparing a levonorgestrel IUD with cyclic progestin therapy. The IUD group had blood loss reduced by 90%, along with higher patient satisfaction, compliance, and continuation. A comparison of endometrial resection with the levonorgestrel IUD showed highly significant decreases in menstrual blood loss with both treatment arms (Kauaruma et al.). The incidence of complications was similar in both groups, and 3-year follow-up rates were similar. Seventeen percent of the resection group required follow-up surgery. Other studies have shown a significant cost benefit to use of the levonorgestrel IUD compared with surgical management of abnormal uterine bleeding, including hysterectomy. As noted earlier, the levonorgestrel IUD has also shown to be effective in controlling menorrhagia in patients with hemostatic disorders such as von Willebrand disease.

Ergot derivatives are ineffective for treatment of menorrhagia. Local delivery of progestational agents is an important advance in the treatment of abnormal uterine bleeding. Numerous studies have demonstrated significant reductions in menstrual blood loss in patients using the progestin-impregnated IUD. Numerous studies have demonstrated significant reductions in menstrual blood loss in patients using the progestin-impregnated IUD. Xiao and colleagues showed reductions of more than 80% at up to 16 months. Irwin and associates performed a randomized trial of 44 women with menorrhagia, comparing a levonorgestrel IUD with cyclic progestin therapy. The IUD group had blood loss reduced by 90%, along with higher patient satisfaction, compliance, and continuation. A comparison of endometrial resection with the levonorgestrel IUD showed highly significant decreases in menstrual blood loss with both treatment arms (Kauaruma et al.). The incidence of complications was similar in both groups, and 3-year follow-up rates were similar. Seventeen percent of the resection group required follow-up surgery. Other studies have shown a significant cost benefit to use of the levonorgestrel IUD compared with surgical management of abnormal uterine bleeding, including hysterectomy. As noted earlier, the levonorgestrel IUD has also shown to be effective in controlling menorrhagia in patients with hemostatic disorders such as von Willebrand disease.
Ablation or destruction of the endometrium has been advocated for treatment of chronic abnormal bleeding unresponsive to medical management in the presence of a normal endometrial cavity and the absence of submucous leiomyomata, endometrial hyperplasia, or neoplasia. Although there has been significant disagreement regarding the appropriate indications for this procedure, it has been widely applied with varying success. The original methods included use of hysteroscopy with the Nd:YAG laser, electrosurgical roller-ball cauterization, or endometrial resection using a loop electrode. These hysteroscopic surgical techniques require special training. More recently, new techniques have been described to ablate the endometrial cavity without the requirement for hysteroscopy. These include thermal balloon ablation, direct instillation of heated saline, cryoablation with a cryoprobe, microwave endometrial ablation, and use of radiofrequency electromagnetic energy (Corson et al.; O’Connor and Magos; Rutherford et al.; Sharp et al.; Singer et al.; Winberg et al.). Success rates reported with the various techniques have ranged from 60% to 95% of patients achieving either hypomenorrhea or amenorrhea. Pretreatment with danazol, GnRH analogs, or suction curettage to thin the endometrium appears to improve long-term success rates (Brooks; Donnez et al.). Seeras and Gilliland reported resumption of menstruation in 44% of women after ablation if they had not received preoperative endometrial suppression.

A number of comparison studies have looked at success rates of the various techniques to determine relative efficacy, complication rates, and relative cost. Meyer and colleagues compared roller-ball ablation with thermal balloon ablation in a prospective, randomized trial. A greater percentage of women in the roller-ball group (27.2%) were amenorrheic at their 12-month follow-up than were women in the uterine balloon group (15.2%). The rates of hypomenorrhea plus amenorrhea were not significantly different (balloon, 80.2%; roller ball, 84.3%). Overall patient satisfaction was equivalent. The complication rate was 3.2% in the hysteroscopic roller-ball group with no significant intraoperative complications in the thermal balloon group. A comparison of thermal balloon ablation with the progesterin-containing IUD showed similar results as far as overall satisfaction; however, bleeding scores were lower and amenorrhea rates higher in the IUD group (Busfield et al.). Corson, with follow-up by Goldrath, performed a prospective randomized trial of endometrial ablation using the Hydro ThermAblator (HTA; Boston Scientific Corporation, Natick, MA, USA) versus roller ball (Figs. 26.3 and 26.4). This system uses heated saline flowing free under low pressure to ablate the endometrium under hysteroscopic guidance. Success rates for both groups were comparable at 3 years with amenorrhea rates of 53% for HTA and 46% for roller ball, and overall satisfaction rates of 98% and 97%, respectively. There were no significant differences in complication rates or repeat surgical procedures.

The Novasure system (Cytyc Corporation, Palo Alto, CA, USA) uses radiofrequency current through a mesh electrode that conforms to the endometrial cavity to ablate the endometrium. Tissue desiccation is rapid compared with thermal devices and requires no pretreatment of the endometrium. The overall success rate of 88.3% and amenorrhea rate of
was done. though in most cases, no direct endometrial cavity assessment was attributed to the possible presence of intrauterine synechiae, although overall patient satisfaction rates were equivalent. Difficulty of surgery and mean fluid deficit were both described as greater in the resection group. Comparison of endometrial ablation with laser versus endometrial resection showed equivalent amenorrhea rates of approximately 45%, with overall patient satisfaction rates of 90% (Battacharya et al.).

Operative hysteroscopic techniques require specialized training, and complications, although relatively infrequent, can be significant. A multinational survey in The Netherlands reported an overall complication rate for hysterectomy of 0.28% (Janssen et al.). Diagnostic hysteroscopy had a significantly lower complication rate than that of operative hysteroscopy (0.13% vs. 0.95%). The most frequent surgical complication was perforation (0.2%). Reported complication rates for hysteroscopic ablation procedures are significantly higher. O’Connor and Magos followed 25 women for up to 5 years after endometrial resection. They reported a 6% incidence of intraoperative complications and a 3% incidence of postoperative complications. They also reported a 1.5% complication rate in patients who required a repeat ablative procedure. The “Misterette” survey from the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists recorded endometrial resection complications rates of 7.2% but only 4% for roller-ball and laser ablations (Overton et al.). A prospective trial of thermal balloon versus roller-ball ablation reported intraoperative complications in 3.2% of the roller-ball patients but no significant intraoperative complications in the thermal balloon patients (Meyer et al.). Reported complications include uterine perforation with hemorrhage, laser or electrosurgical damage to the bowel, excessive absorption of distending medium with fluid overload, hynapertasia and pulmonary edema, and persistence of bleeding requiring repeat ablation or hysterecopy. The reported complication rates do compare favorably with reported morbidity rates for women undergoing hysterecopy, which range from 7% to 15% (Summitt et al.).

There is concern regarding the potential outcome of pregnancies conceived after endometrial ablation. A literature review by Koo et al. reports a miscarriage rate of 21.7%, a preterm rate of 26.1%, and a perinatal mortality rate of 11.8%. Of those pregnancies that continued beyond 20 weeks, 35.3% resulted in a miscarriage or stillbirth. These outcomes were attributed to the possible presence of intrauterine synchiea, although in most cases, no direct endometrial cavity assessment was done.

Another concern has been possible obliteration of warning signs heralding the development of endometrial carcinoma, with subsequent delay in diagnosis. Endometrial ablation procedures usually result in a narrowed tubular uterine cavity without the obliteration seen in Asherman syndrome, but are rarely expected to result in total ablation of all endometrial tissue. Several cases of postablation endometrial carcinoma have now been reported (Brooks-Carter et al., Copperman et al.). The cost of endometrial ablation does compare favorably with that of hysterecopy, with hysterecopy reported as 58% more expensive when all costs, including lost work time, are considered (Vilos et al.).

D&G is both diagnostic and therapeutic. Removal of the structurally fragile bleeding endometrium allows restoration of normal hemostatic events, with regeneration of the integrity of the endometrium and restoration of the normal proliferative response. If the patient fails to respond to medical therapy, repeated curettage, or even endometrial ablation, then more definitive therapy, such as hysterectomy, should be considered, taking into account the age of the patient and her desire for future childbearing. It has been estimated that 2 million women in the United States are seen annually with reports of excessive uterine bleeding, and about $50,000 undergo hysterectomy, which accounts for 20% to 30% of all hysterectomies performed.

In general, the ovulatory type of bleeding has the poorest response to replacement hormonal therapy and the highest incidence of recurrence. Although hysterectomy can be considered an admission of therapeutic defeat, it is frequently an expedient method of resolving this refractory and recurrent type of DUB. When bleeding persists after repeated curettage and cyclic hormonal therapy, hysterecopy may be required. If other conditions are present that should be corrected surgically, such as a relaxed vaginal outlet, rectocele, cystocele, or uterine descensus, we recommend vaginal hysterectomy with support of the vaginal vault and repair of the vaginal wall relaxation. When hysterectomy is indicated in premenopausal women younger than 50 years of age, normal ovarian tissue is conserved. In a patient younger than 30 years of age, radical surgical treatment should be strongly avoided; one can almost always control uterine bleeding by repeated curettage or by increasing amounts of cyclic hormone therapy. Today, the availability and use of estrogen and progesterone have changed the need for hysterectomy to treat DUB. Hysterecopy is not indicated in young women but may be indicated in older women when hormonal therapy and repeated curettage have failed.

Blood transfusions are seldom required when DUB is associated with anemia, but they may be given if the anemia is so severe that symptoms are present. Oral iron therapy should be started at the first sign of heavy menstruation to prevent depletion of iron stores, and it should be given for 3 to 6 months after normal hemoglobin and hematocrit levels have been restored in patients with iron-deficiency anemia.

**PERIMENOPAUSAL AND POSTMENOPAUSAL BLEEDING**

When uterine bleeding occurs more than 12 months after the last regular menstrual period, it is defined as postmenopausal bleeding. For a period varying from months to years before menopause, the individual patient may experience irregular patterns of bleeding. Often the first sign is a shortening of the menstrual interval secondary to premature elevation in FSH, followed by intermittent periods of amenorrhea.
altering with heavy bleeding consistent with oligoovulation or anovulation. With this clinical picture, special consideration must be given to ruling out a neoplastic process as the source of the bleeding. The first diagnostic consideration is to ensure that the bleeding originates from the uterus. In elderly women especially, bleeding from the urethra or rectum may be reported as vaginal bleeding. Vaginal or cervical lesions causing the bleeding should be diagnosed readily with careful inspection or biopsy. Cancers of the vagina or cervix or cervical polyps can also be readily diagnosed and appropriate treatment rendered.

When the source of the bleeding is determined to be the uterine cavity, sampling of the endometrium for pathology examination is usually considered to be mandatory. Although D&C continues to be a commonly performed procedure for both its diagnostic and therapeutic benefits, office endometrial biopsy can often expedite appropriate evaluation and therapy. Many instruments have been devised for the sampling of endometrial tissue and evaluation of the endometrial cavity. The standard instrument used for many years has been the Novak curet. Although this curet was initially devised to obtain a sample of the endometrium by suction and aspiration, it is most commonly used as a miniature curet that contains a serrated edge surrounding its biopsy aperture. The curet is about 5 mm in diameter and can usually be passed without dilatation through a small cervical canal, even in nulliparous women. Occasionally, the postmenopausal cervical canal is stenotic and difficult to penetrate. Because of the discomfort associated with passage of the Novak curet, newer plastic curets have been developed. These have a smaller diameter (3 mm), are flexible, and are often better tolerated by patients. They can be difficult to pass through a truly stenotic cervix because of their pliability. Often there is an accompanying syringe that attaches and develops effective vacuum pressure to improve the size of the sample obtained (Fig. 26.5). A four-quadrant endometrial biopsy with passes along the anterior and posterior and both lateral walls of the endometrial cavity is recommended for diagnosis of abnormal bleeding. Another potentially useful device not requiring a syringe to develop negative pressure is a disposable plastic tube with a 3.1-mm outer diameter, an aspiration port, and solid plastic obturator at its tip. The obturator fits so closely that its slow withdrawal from the uterine cavity causes sufficient suction to obtain an adequate endometrial specimen in most cases (Fig. 26.6). However, the endometrial surface area sampled is small (5%) and can easily miss polyps, submucous myomas, and endometrial carcinoma that occupies only a small portion of the endometrial cavity (Guido et al.). Because of the small aperture of this device and its almost total reliance on suction to obtain a specimen, the architecture of the obtained biopsy may be somewhat distorted.

Vacuum suction curettage has gained some popularity as an office procedure for endometrial sampling that does not require general anesthesia. A small metal or plastic cannula with an outside diameter of 3 mm that has a slightly curved tip and an opening on the concave surface for easier insertion through a small endocervical canal is connected to a plastic collection chamber, which in newer models is a large syringe rather than the old pumps or faucets. Several studies have compared the results of suction curettage with those of regular curettage under anesthesia in the same patient. Cohen and colleagues...
studied 98 patients; in 93, they found identical histologic patterns with both methods. In five patients, there was no correlation between the results of the two techniques, and none of these had cancer. At the Medical University of South Carolina, Luttz and colleagues found suction curettage to be 98% accurate in evaluating high-risk women with abnormal bleeding for endometrial malignant disease.

These new agents, or no cervical dilatation and permit almost painless endometrial sampling. A quick-acting, nonsteroidal antinflammatory drug (e.g., 320 mg naproxen sodium, administered 15 to 30 minutes before curettage provides satisfactory anesthesia for most patients. If dilatation of the cervix is required, paracervical block anesthesia can be initiated by injecting 4 to 5 ml of 1% lidocaine at the 3-o’clock and 9-o’clock positions in the paracervical tissues, exercising care to avoid intravascular injection. The principal value of an endometrial biopsy is that it provides a firm diagnosis. Under anesthesia has been avoided if the removed tissue contains adenocarcinoma. If the cause of postmenopausal bleeding is not identified in a screening endometrial biopsy, however, then a standard curettage is obligatory. In office biopsies of the endometria of more than 20,000 patients of all ages, Hofmenseh detected 273 cases of endometrial carcinoma, 32 of which (14.2%) were totally asymptomatic. The endometrial carcinoma detection rate was 1.76% of the total group of 23,202 patients. Hofmeister’s routine office endometrial biopsies using a modification of the Novak and Randall curet provide one of the largest clinical experiences of this instrument to date. Unfortunately, only patients who had continued uterine bleeding or who demonstrated an atypical pattern in the office biopsy were subjected to a complete curettage. Therefore, the true-negative and false-negative rate for the Novak type of curet in the detection of endometrial cancer has not been documented accurately. In a series of 100 patients, summarized by Cohen and colleagues, the accuracy of detection of endometrial cancer by endometrial curettage varied from 76% to 92%. However, a thorough endometrial curettage under anesthesia is also not infallible in the detection of endometrial cancer. Bettiocchi and colleagues evaluated the diagnostic accuracy of endometrial curettage in 397 patients. D&C failed to detect intrauterine pathology in 62.5% of patients, including four cases of complex hyperplasia and five cases of endometrial adenocarcinoma as well as many endometrial polyps and submucous myomas. Vaginal ultrasound has been investigated as a screening tool in patients with postmenopausal bleeding. The average thickness of the postmenopausal endometrial stripe has been reported as 2.3 ± 1.8 mm, with a range of 0 to 10 mm, in a series of 300 asymptomatic women. Twenty-two had endometrial stripes of 3 mm or larger, and all had benign pathology. In a series of 51 cases of postmenopausal bleeding, Naar and colleagues reported that if the endometrial thickness was less than 3 mm, the pathology would show either inactive or no endometrial tissue. Karlsson and associates reported on 1,168 women with postmenopausal bleeding. Patients with an endometrial echo of less than 4 mm had a sensitivity of 96% and a specificity of 68% for detecting endometrial pathology. If a 5-mm cutoff was used, two endometrial carcinomas would have been missed. In another study by Gull and colleagues, 198 women screened for postmenopausal bleeding had an endometrial thickness of 5 mm or greater. Endometrial sampling diagnosed 36 primary endometrial cancers, one metastatic breast cancer, and three cases of atypical endometrial hyperplasia. Of the 5-mm cutoff was used, two endometrial carcinomas would have been missed. In another study by Gull and colleagues, 198 women screened for postmenopausal bleeding had an endometrial thickness of 5 mm or greater. Endometrial sampling diagnosed 36 primary endometrial cancers, one metastatic breast cancer, and three cases of atypical endometrial hyperplasia. Of the patients older than 40 years of age in the absence of specific contraindications, such as hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and smoking. They provide excellent cycle control with a monthly withdrawal bleed and suppression of the endometrium. Oral
contraceptives can be continued until an FSH level greater than 40 IU/L during the week of placebo pills confirms ovarian failure. Standard postmenopausal hormone replacement can then be used. A sequential program of 12 days of progesterin, 5 to 10 mg medroxyprogesterone acetate, or 5 mg norethindrone acetate on a monthly basis is an alternative and is continued until failure of withdrawal bleeding occurs, indicating the need for further hormone replacement. Recent studies indicate that perimenopausal patients are relatively hypoestrogenic and can be at risk for accelerated bone loss before the actual onset of menopause, some clinicians recommend concurrent estrogen replacement even in the perimenopausal patient.

Endometrial hyperplasia requires more aggressive progesterone treatment. Atypical adenomatous endometrial hyperplasia is considered by most to be the equivalent of an intraepithelial malignancy, and hysterectomy is often advised. Management of several types of endometrial hyperplasia other than atypical adenomatous hyperplasia can generally be accomplished by monthly administration of a progestin such as medroxyprogesterone acetate, 10 mg per day for 12 days, or norethindrone acetate, 3 mg per day for 12 days. Another endometrial biopsy should be obtained within 3 to 6 months to assess for resolution of the hyperplasia. A more aggressive hormonal regimen uses continuous high-dose progestin for 3 to 6 months (i.e., megestrol, 20 to 160 mg per day).

Any of the regimens currently in use for postmenopausal hormonal replacement therapy can cause uterine bleeding. Unopposed estrogen is no longer recommended for postmenopausal hormonal replacement in the case of an intact uterus because hyperplasia develops in 18% to 32% of cases and because unopposed estrogen has an up to sevenfold increased risk of endometrial carcinoma. Cyclic estrogen-progestin regimens significantly decrease this risk to less than 1% to 3.5% during 10 to 12 days of progestin. There are numerous dosage regimens for the use of conjugated estrogens, 0.625 to 1.25 mg, micronized E2, 1 to 2 mg, esterified estrogens, 0.625 to 1.25 mg, and E2 patches. Although estrogen replacement therapy can cause uterine bleeding. Continuous estrogen and low-dose progestin replacement therapy (i.e., conjugated estrogen, 0.625 mg, and medroxyprogesterone acetate, 2.5 mg) are commonly accompanied by irregular bleeding patterns for at least 4 to 6 months after initiation of the regimen. They are used with the anticipation that over months of use, the proportion of women becoming completely amenorrheic will increase, and for most women, the long-term benefits with these regimens will outweigh those of the conventional cyclic regimen, in which most women bleed regularly at the conclusion of the progestin phase of the cycle for at least 6 to 24 months. As a general rule, just as intermenstrual bleeding during the regular menstruating years dictates investigation and management, so do patterns of postmenopausal bleeding not following an anticipated schedule require investigation and management. Thus, the most important point about postmenopausal bleeding is its frequent association with gynecologic malignancy, particularly endometrial carcinoma. Although the incidence of malignancy to explain postmenopausal bleeding has decreased in recent decades, diagnostic efforts must carefully consider and rule out possible malignancy by use of appropriate diagnostic procedures, especially careful pelvic examination and uterine curettage. An endometrial biopsy is helpful for the diagnosis of suspected endometrial carcinoma only if the biopsy is positive. The definitive method for obtaining adequate histology for diagnosis is D&C.

**DILATATION OF THE CERVIX**

Recamier invented the curet in 1943. Since then, dilatation of the cervix with curettage of the endometrial cavity has become the second most frequently performed gynecologic procedure in the United States. Curettage is used to diagnose uterine malignancy, to complete an incomplete or missed abortion, to evaluate the causes of infertility, to relieve dysmenorrhea, and to control DUB. Improved medical therapies for DUB and dysmenorrhea have made dilatation of the cervix and curettage of the uterus less necessary for these two problems, especially in young women.

Dilatation of the cervix is performed as a preliminary step to curettage of the uterine cavity. As a therapeutic measure, it is used for acquired or congenital cervical stenosis, for dysmenorrhea, for introduction of intracervical and intrauterine radium or cesium, occasionally for insertion of an intrauterine contraceptive device, or for allowing drainage of the uterine cavity in the presence of pyometra, as well as a part of other operations on the cervix.

Most indications for cervical dilatation are obvious. In connection with primary dysmenorrhea, however, there is room for controversy. It is a recognized fact that many cases of primary dysmenorrhea are not cured by cervical dilatation. Because of frequent failures, some gynecologists have almost abandoned it as a therapeutic technique. We do not subscribe totally to this pessimistic point of view. Unfortunately, in most instances, it is impossible to detect those cases of dysmenorrhea that will be relieved by cervical dilatation. Often the operation must be performed as a therapeutic test, but it is fortunately such a minor procedure that its performance is justified on that basis.

In nulliparous women in whom pain is greatest just before or during the early part of the menstrual flow, there is a possibility of relief from the pain by cervical dilatation. The result is unpredictable, however, and we advise permitting the patient to decide whether menstrual pain is sufficiently severe to justify an operation that is of limited or possibly no benefit.

Ibuprofen, naproxen sodium, and mefenamic acid have proved to be so effective in the management of dysmenorrhea that a thorough trial of these agents is indicated. It is now evident that endometriosis can occur much earlier than was once believed; dysmenorrhea unrelied by these nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs or oral contraceptives should be considered an indication for laparoscopy.

**Postmenopausal Cervical Stenosis**

In cases of postmenopausal cervical stenosis, pyometra may be discovered by uterine sounding. The pus should be cultured for anaerobic and aerobic organisms, and the cervix should be dilated. A short, soft, rubber or plastic tube can be sutured in place to keep the cervical canal open while the uterine cavity is draining. Although antibiotics may not be strictly necessary in all cases, fever and pelvic pain and tenderness herald the onset of spreading pelvic infection.
Curetting a pyometra can produce parametritis or wider pelvic cellulitis. Because the risk of perforation, with the potential for development of serious peritonitis, is increased during curettage, it should be delayed until adequate drainage has occurred (3 to 10 days, depending on the magnitude of the pyometra), and antibiotic therapy should be used. Curettage is mandatory to exclude the endocervical or endometrial malignancies frequently associated with pyometra.

**Technique of Cervical Dilatation**

The patient is placed on the table in the lithotomy position. A careful pelvic examination locates the position of the uterine corpus, and the vagina and the perineum are cleaned with the usual vaginal preparation of povidone-iodine (Betadine). The cervix is grasped with a four-pronged tenaculum (Fig. 26.7A) and gently drawn toward the vaginal outlet. I favor the straight Jacobs clamp, especially when difficult dilatation is anticipated or encountered. It is much less likely to cause cervical laceration than is the single-tooth tenaculum. A sound (Fig. 26.7B) is passed carefully through the cervical canal into the uterine cavity to avoid creating a false passage. Resistance is greatest at the internal cervical os. Occasionally, a fine silver probe is needed for finding the proper passage if the canal is stenotic. Passing the uterine sound provides confirmatory information about the position of the uterus, the length of the uterine cavity, and the angulation between the cervical canal and the uterine cavity. The degree of stenosis of the cervical canal can be detected in this manner. Sounding the uterus is contraindicated in the presence of a pregnancy because of the increased risk of perforating the soft myometrium.

The cervical canal is dilated with a small Hegar dilator (Fig. 26.8). The uterine wall can be perforated by improper passage of the dilator; the cause usually is lack of knowledge or disregard of the position of the uterus. When acute anteflexion is present, the dilator can perforate posteriorly (Fig. 26.9). When retrodisplacement exists, the perforation usually occurs anteriorly (Fig. 26.10). These two complications can be avoided by sounding the uterine cavity before dilating the cervix and by following the direction of the endocervical canal and uterine cavity indicated by the sound. The dilator rarely perforates the fundus except when there is an atrophic postmenopausal uterus or when an invasive tumor or pregnancy has softened the uterine wall. After either the 3- or 4-mm Hegar dilator is passed, successively larger ones are used. For ordinary curettage, dilatation to 8 or 9 mm suffices. When the dilatation is for dysmenorrhea, we prefer to carry the dilatation up to 10 mm. Be aware of concerns that excessive dilatation can be associated with an incompetent cervix in a subsequent pregnancy. If cervical dilatation is difficult, half-size Hegar dilators with incremental diameters of 0.5 mm are useful (Fig. 26.8).
FIGURE 26.9. Perforation of the acutely anteflexed uterus. The uterus was thought to be in retroposition, and the Hegar dilator was erroneously directed posteriorly.

The Hank-Bradley dilator has the shape and contour of the Hegar dilator but has a more tapered shank (Fig. 26.11), with the advantage of a hollow center, which prevents any piston effect that might force air into the uterine cavity during progressive dilatation of the cervix. The positive pressure created within the uterine cavity by passing a Hegar dilator can cause blood, endometrium, fragments of neoplastic tissue, or infected material to be forced into the fallopian tubes or peritoneal cavity. Beyth and colleagues have demonstrated that significant numbers of patients have endometrial tissue in their peritoneal fluid after curettage, and there is a possibility of reflux of endometrial carcinoma cells into the peritoneal cavity with forceful dilatation of a postmenopausal cervix harboring endometrial carcinoma. In the small postmenopausal uterus, however, it is quite easy for the tip of the Hank-Bradley dilator to perforate the uterine fundus when one is attempting to achieve the maximum dilating effect from the widest portion of the instrument.

The Hank-Bradley dilator is used more commonly during curettage for an incomplete abortion because it permits the release of blood through the dilator while the cervix is being dilated. When dilatation is for removal of placental tissue, dilatation up to no. 19 or 20 Hank-Bradley (the equivalent of a 9- or 10-mm Hegar dilator) is often necessary to permit the introduction of a large blunt curet and placental forceps. The cervix is most resistant to dilatation at about 8 mm. Cervical injury is a potential problem when the cervix is forcefully dilated to a larger diameter. The cervical tenaculum can lacerate the cervix, or the internal cervical os can be damaged. Tapered Pratt dilators require less force than blunt Hegar dilators.

The incidence of cervical incompetence can be related to the degree of cervical dilatation. Insertion of laminaria into the cervical canal several hours before cervical dilatation can make the procedure less difficult and traumatic, as suggested by Manabe and Manabe.

CURETTAGE OF THE UTERUS

Indications and Contraindications

It is important that D&C be performed for the proper indications, be performed correctly to obtain the most useful information, and be performed safely. A curetage performed properly and with aseptic technique involves little risk, but if precautions are disregarded, complications and even death can result.

The chief purpose of curettage of the uterus is the removal of endometrial or endocervical tissue for histologic study of cases of abnormal uterine bleeding. Although classical curettage of the uterus continues to be a useful procedure, new practices...
and instrumentation permit the procurement of endometrium as a screening diagnostic test under many circumstances. Appropriate use of such procedures can reduce significantly the need for operating room curettage. Careful pelvic examination under relaxation anesthesia has been an important adjunctive diagnostic aid to conventional D&C, but the precision and availability of ultrasound and other imaging techniques have brought them to the forefront of importance in diagnosis.

**Outpatient Curettage**

Over the years, there have been efforts to lower the cost of D&C by making it an outpatient procedure. In 1957, Vermeer and associates presented a series of 10,000 minor gynecologic operations performed on an outpatient basis on the gynecologic service at the Johns Hopkins Hospital. The results were more than satisfactory. These women were usually operated on under general anesthesia and were discharged after recovery from anesthesia. D&C was the operation most frequently performed. The success and safety of such a program depend, of course, on the careful selection of patients and the willingness of the practitioner to admit a patient for observation should complications occur. Today, D&C is often performed satisfactorily on an outpatient basis or in an ambulatory surgery center. Reports by Sandmire and Austin and by Martin and Rast are among many that record favorable experiences with this procedure.

As mentioned earlier, endometrial sampling today is often performed by biopsy, suction, or D&C as an office procedure. Although these relatively easy outpatient techniques for evaluating endometrium histology can often provide a correct diagnosis, they do not fulfill the requirement of a thorough curettage for absolute determination of the etiology of uterine bleeding. One can have total confidence in the biopsy or office curettage findings only if they show frank adenocarcinoma. If the histology of the office procedures is negative, one cannot rule out this serious condition. Even in the most experienced hands, endometrial carcinoma can be quite elusive. A further note of caution is that none of the office endometrial sampling methods can ensure the removal of an endometrial polyp. Therefore, endometrial carcinoma in a polyp could be missed, as could a polyp that is a source of benign bleeding. Office sampling techniques are used only as screening procedures; if the results are negative, a more thorough D&C under general anesthesia is indicated. Office hysteroscopy can sometimes be an alternative to D&C to identify missed pathologies, such as a polyp or a submucous myoma, or to allow directed biopsy of a suspicious endometrium.

Indications for obtaining endometrial histology by one or more of the aforementioned methods include the following:

- Abnormal bleeding at any premenopausal age, especially when not corrected promptly by medical management, in women older than 35 years of age, or if a submucous myoma is suspected (include hysteroscopy or hysterosalpingography)
- Postmenopausal bleeding of any amount, regardless of a finding of atrophic vaginitis, polyp, or uterine curettage
- Prehysterectomy in the postmenopausal woman to exclude endocervical or endometrial carcinoma
- Postmenopausal vaginal surgery without hysterectomy

When office procedures fail to establish the diagnosis, it is preferable to use a general anesthetic during D&C. The procedure is more comfortable for the patient and easier to perform with the patient fully relaxed, and most patients will opt for a general anesthetic for this procedure. A D&C, under general anesthesia also provides an ideal opportunity for thorough examination of the pelvic organs. Before the examination, the bladder should be empty and the cervix should have been given and expelled. The pelvic examination should be performed after the anterior abdominal wall is relaxed from the anesthesia and before the patient is draped. Occasionally, new and important pelvic findings will be discovered. In a study of 2,666 women requiring curettage, McKlin and colleagues found unanticipated adnexal masses in 30 women during pelvic examination under anesthesia before D&C. Twenty-eight masses were benign, and two were malignant. When women who are serious medical risks require curettage for postmenopausal bleeding, the operation is performed without anesthesia other than hypodermic or intravenous administration of a sedative combined with paracervical nerve block.

A single curettage will not remove all of the surface endometrium completely from the uterine cavity. Repeated studies have demonstrated the inability of a thorough curettage to remove more than 50% to 60% of the endometrium when the procedure has been performed by experienced gynecologists immediately before a planned hysterectomy. Stock and Kanbour, from McGee Hospital in Pittsburgh, observed that in 60% of hysterectomy specimens studied, less than 50% of the endometrial surface had been removed by a prehysterectomy curettage. They also found 26 cases of endometrial carcinoma that had been classified as clinically normal-appearing tissue on prehysterectomy curettage; six of these carcinomas were reported as benign on frozen section. These facts and other similar experiences indicate that it is difficult to be certain of the histology of the endometrium by gross examination of the curetted. If the symptoms warrant a curettage, then the endometrium deserves a full histologic diagnosis.

Curettage is also performed for bleeding from a cervical stump and is frequently performed as part of a cervical conization to rule out extension of cervical carcinoma into the endometrium. Helmkamp and associates found no evidence of endometrial abnormalities in any of 114 curettage specimens removed at the time of 114 cervical conizations. These investigators recommend that curettage at the time of cervical conization should not be performed routinely but should be performed selectively in postmenopausal and perimenopausal patients when the cytology smear shows abnormal glandular cells or when an intrauterine abnormality is suspected.

The chief contraindication to curettage is infection. Acute endometritis and salpingitis are conditions under which curettage should be avoided. If curettage is necessary for removal of infected placental tissue, it should be preceded by a period of parenteral antibiotic therapy adequate to achieve therapeutic tissue levels of antibiotics. Endometriums associated with retained products of conception will remain unresolved until the infected necrotic material is cast off spontaneously or until it is removed by the curet. Curettage is also contraindicated when pyometra is present.

**Technique of Curettage of the Uterus**

After the patient is anesthetized and placed in the lithotomy position, the bladder is emptied with a catheter. The pelvic organs are examined thoroughly before the patient is prepped and draped. The procedure includes a bimanual recto-abdominal examination. The examination under anesthesia is one of the most informative features of this operation because it can provide anatomic details of the reproductive tract that are

---

Normal and Abnormal Uterine Bleeding 601

December 27, 2007 9:24

[Printer: rock-hr]
unrecognizable without anesthesia. The vagina and perineum are cleaned with the usual technique.

Fractional curettage is an attempt to remove tissue samples from the endocervical canal apart from tissue removed from the endometrial cavity. The cervical canal should be curetted before dilatation of the cervical canal and curettage of the endometrial cavity. The special shape of the small Gusberg curet makes it particularly useful for curettling the endocervix. Differential curettage of the endocervix, separate from the endometrium, is important for diagnosis of endometrial carcinoma that may have extended to the endocervix. All cases of perimenopausal bleeding should be fractionally curetted; this procedure is too often neglected. If the endocervical curettage is not performed, a second fractional curettage is required to determine the anatomic boundaries of endometrial carcinoma. The value of fractional curettage has been questioned, but Chen and Lee and others have emphasized the importance of cervical stromal invasion, rather than the finding of tumor tissue, as the crucial criterion in endocervical curettage affecting staging and prognosis.

The uterine cavity is then sounded to determine its size and to confirm the position determined from examination under anesthesia. The cervical canal is dilated with the Hegar or Hank-Bradley dilator. A dilatation to 8 or 9 mm by a Hegar dilator is sufficient for the usual diagnostic curettage. A gauze is placed in the posterior vaginal fornix along the posterior retractor so that the blood and the endometrium removed from the uterus can fall on it (Fig. 26.12). Before the curettage is performed, the uterine cavity is explored for endometrial polyps by use of a narrow stone forceps (Fig. 26.13). This forceps can be opened and closed as the tip of the forceps is moved systematically across the dome of the uterus and the anterior and posterior walls. An endometrial polyp can be easily missed with an ordinary curet, and unnecessary hysterectomies have been performed because of supposed persistent or recurrent dysfunctional bleeding after a curettage (Fig. 26.14). If polyp forceps are routinely used, such operations can be avoided. It is easier to identify and remove an endometrial polyp if the uterine cavity is explored with the stone forceps before the uterus is curetted. In a 28-month period during which forceps were used routinely at the Johns Hopkins Hospital, Josey found that endometrial polyp was diagnosed 130 times. In 83 of these cases, the polyp was removed by forceps. Although the sessile form of a submucous myoma is diagnosed easily by noting an irregularity of the uterine wall with the curet, the pedunculated variety, like the endometrial polyp, can escape detection because of its narrow stalk. Often, such a leiomyoma can be grasped with the polyp forceps. A uterine septum can also be detected with the forceps. Alternatively, hysteroscopy can be used to evaluate the cavity before curettage.

A small-sized or medium-sized, malleable, bluntly serrated curet (Fig. 26.15) is then introduced into the uterus, and the entire uterine cavity is systematically curetted. The anterior, lateral, and posterior walls are scraped gently but firmly, and finally, the top of the cavity is scraped with a side-to-side movement (Fig. 26.16). The handle of the curet should never be held against the palm of the hand. Instead, it should be held gently, as one would hold a pencil. The instrument is held loosely as it is inserted for the full distance. Pressure is then exerted...
against the uterine wall as the curet is drawn in an outward direction. Because the instrument is malleable, its curvature can be changed to conform to the contour of the uterine cavity. A uterine "cry," vibrations felt in the hand holding the curet, is often used as a sign that adequate tissue has been removed.

The unclotted blood is absorbed quickly by the gauze sponge, leaving the relatively clean endometrium to be placed in a prepared container with appropriate fixative. Again, the curettings should never be mashed or scraped but should be picked carefully from the sponge with a smooth-tip forceps and placed immediately in the fixative. The curettings should be examined carefully at this time for fatty tissue or other unusual tissue. Fragments of hyperplastic endometrium sometimes appear tan or yellow.

When curettage is performed as a curative measure for removal of placental tissue, a large, blunt, smooth curet is used to lessen the possibilities of perforation and endometrial sclerosis. The larger and softer the uterus, the larger the curet should be and the more care one should exercise to avoid these complications. When large masses of placental tissue are present, ovum forceps are most useful when used in conjunction with the curet. High vacuum suction is now used almost routinely for placental tissue removal.

Routine blind biopsy of the cervix is usually unrewarding if a negative cytologic smear has been obtained and there is no suspicious cervical lesion. We no longer do a blind biopsy of the cervix at the time of curettage unless an abnormal lesion is present. If a patient’s recent cytologic results are normal and she has a profuse, recurrent, mucous discharge associated with cervicitis and nabothian cysts, cervical cauterization or laser vaporization can be done at the time of curettage, but biopsy confirmation to exclude occult malignancy should be obtained.

Complications of Cervical Dilatation and Uterine Curettage

If the position and the consistency of the uterus are carefully observed on bimanual examination under anesthesia before curettage is begun, perforation will rarely occur. When the position of the uterus is not known to the operator, perforation occurs with remarkable ease. Special care should be exercised with a uterus that is acutely anteverted or retroverted. With cervical stenosis, pregnancy, or intrauterine malignancy, perforation is more likely. The postmenopausal atrophic uterus can be perforated with only slight force applied to the uterine sound or the curet. Perforation is discovered when the sound or the curet fails to encounter resistance where it normally should, as judged by the palpated size of the uterus. Abdominal ultrasound visualization of the uterus, cervix, and endocervical canal, which may require a distended bladder, can be useful in guiding the passage of either a dilator or a curette through the endocervical canal into the endometrial cavity.
Perforation by the uterine sound or cervical dilator causes less damage than perforation by the sharp curet or suction cannula. Sharp curettage for legally induced abortion has a major complication rate that is two to three times higher than that for suction curettage, according to Grimes and Cates. The two principal dangers of uterine perforation are bleeding and trauma to the abdominal viscera. Lateral perforation through the uterine vessels is especially dangerous from the standpoint of intraperitoneal hemorrhage and broad ligament hematoma formation. Damage can occur to the bowel, omentum, mesentery, ureter, and fallopian tube. Perforation of the anterior or posterior wall of the uterus by a small curet in performing a diagnostic curettage is usually not a serious accident. However, it is usually necessary to discontinuous curettage. One must watch carefully for signs of hemorrhage or infection. If signs of hemorrhage develop, the abdomen should be opened and the uterine wound sutured. If signs of infection occur, broad-spectrum antibiotics should be given. If a pelvic abscess develops, the abscess should be drained if possible. Serious hemorrhage or infection occurs only rarely. When serious damage from perforation is suspected, laparoscopy can be performed to assess the extent of the damage and the needed repair. According to MacKenzie and Bibby, complications occurred in 1.7% of cases of D&C. McElin and colleagues reported that 0.5% of cases had postoperative febrile morbidity after D&C. Uterine perforation occurred in 0.63% of cases.

Perforation by the uterine sound or cervical dilator causes less damage than perforation by the sharp curet or suction cannula. Sharp curettage for legally induced abortion has a major complication rate that is two to three times higher than that for suction curettage, according to Grimes and Cates. The two principal dangers of uterine perforation are bleeding and trauma to the abdominal viscera. Lateral perforation through the uterine vessels is especially dangerous from the standpoint of intraperitoneal hemorrhage and broad ligament hematoma formation. Damage can occur to the bowel, omentum, mesentery, ureter, and fallopian tube. Perforation of the anterior or posterior wall of the uterus by a small curet in performing a diagnostic curettage is usually not a serious accident. However, it is usually necessary to discontinuous curettage. One must watch carefully for signs of hemorrhage or infection. If signs of hemorrhage develop, the abdomen should be opened and the uterine wound sutured. If signs of infection occur, broad-spectrum antibiotics should be given. If a pelvic abscess develops, the abscess should be drained if possible. Serious hemorrhage or infection occurs only rarely. When serious damage from perforation is suspected, laparoscopy can be performed to assess the extent of the damage and the needed repair. According to MacKenzie and Bibby, complications occurred in 1.7% of cases of D&C. McElin and colleagues reported that 0.5% of cases had postoperative febrile morbidity after D&C. Uterine perforation occurred in 0.63% of cases.

Perforation of the anterior or posterior wall of the uterus by a small curet can be managed conservatively with antibiotics and serial hematocrit determination for 24 to 48 hours. If there is no evidence of continued bleeding or developing infection, the patient can be discharged. During laparoscopy, if there is any evidence of intestinal injury or any suspicion of such injury, or if bleeding is significant, then laparotomy is mandatory. Unfortunately, bowel injury by high-vacuum suction may require bowel resection and anastomosis.

Perforation of a pregnant uterus is a more serious complication than is perforation of the nonpregnant uterus. First, there is the requirement that all remaining pregnancy tissue be completely removed to prevent sepsis. To accomplish this blindly when there is a defect in the uterine wall is unsafe. Second, the pregnant uterus is a much more vascular organ than is the nonpregnant uterus, and intraperitoneal bleeding can be profuse without significant external bleeding. Third, it often is difficult to be certain when the perforation occurred. If a high-vacuum suction curettage has passed through the myometrium and the vacuum has been activated, major bowel injury can be present.

These considerations have led to the following protocol for D&C of the pregnant uterus:

1. Never activate the vacuum suction if there is any question about the safe location of the curet within the uterine cavity.

2. Laparoscope any pregnant uterus that is possibly perforated. With the laparoscope in place, a second operator can evacuate remaining placental tissue while the laparoscopist monitors safety. Many perforations in which no other visceral damage has occurred are fundal. If laparoscopic observation confirms that bleeding is minimal, the perforation can be managed conservatively with antibiotics and serial hematocrit determination for 24 to 48 hours. If there is no evidence of continued bleeding or developing infection, the patient can be discharged.

3. During laparoscopy, if there is any evidence of intestinal injury or any suspicion of such injury, or if bleeding is significant, then laparotomy is mandatory. Unfortunately, bowel injury by high-vacuum suction may require bowel resection and anastomosis.

Figure 26.17 shows a uterus removed immediately after a perforation because of intraperitoneal bleeding. Word analyzed 70 accidental uterine perforations. Among these, an unplanned hysterectomy was performed on seven unprepared patients. In none of these cases did the intraperitoneal findings indicate the need for hysterectomy. In fact, hysterectomy compounded the surgical error. Fifty-five patients were treated conservatively, and only one developed a complication, in the form of a pelvic abscess that was drained by colpotomy. Forty-one of the 70 perforations occurred in postmenopausal women.

When a large, boggy, postabortion or puerperal uterus is perforated by a large curet or placental forceps in removing placental tissue, there is more danger of hemorrhage, infection, or injury to bowel. The treatment protocols and the procedures...
Normal and Abnormal Uterine Bleeding

FIGURE 26.17. Result of uterine perforation. Specimen removed directly after perforation.

for these serious complications are discussed elsewhere in this textbook.

Asherman syndrome is a pathologic condition of intrauterine adhesions that can cause secondary amenorrhea, other menstrual irregularities, infertility, or recurrent abortion. Numerous investigators have shown a strong association between puerperal D&C and the formation of synechiae that can partially or completely obliterate the endometrial cavity. No incidence figures are available because no prospective studies have been performed, but factors other than pregnancy that increase the risk of endometrial sclerosis after D&C are infection, scant endometrium that exposes the basalis to trauma, and a hypoestrogenic state. Rarely, significant synechiae are seen in the absence of an antecedent curettage. Cases have been reported after severe endometritis, tuberculosis, myomectomy, and cesarean section. Diagnosis is made by clinical history, hysterosalpingography, or hysteroscopy. Therapy requires lysis of adhesions by repeat curettage or, preferably, by hysteroscopic scissors or KTP laser.

Patency of the uterine cavity is maintained with an intrauterine device or balloon catheter, and endometrial regeneration is stimulated by oral estrogen therapy. The prognosis with significant adhesions is poor. Only 40% of patients will become pregnant, and about half of these will undergo spontaneous abortion or premature delivery. Consideration should be given to the risks of adhesions that might be missed on endometrial sampling.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Although hysteroscopy is the gold standard for evaluating endometrial cavity pathology, saline infusion sonography (SIS) has comparable sensitivity and is less invasive and less expensive.
- historic data showed higher amenorrhea rates with endometrial ablation using endomyometrial resection. However, newer techniques of hydrothermal ablation, radiofrequency current, and microwaves have comparable amenorrhea rates. Hydrothermal ablation has the advantage of visualization of the endometrial cavity, radiofrequency ablation does not require endometrial pretreatment, and microwave endometrial ablation has been reported to be successful in the presence of small submucous myomata.
- Endometrial sampling can be done by Pipelle, four quadrant endometrial biopsy, or formal dilatation and curettage (D&C). All of these techniques can miss significant lesions, and the concurrent use of vaginal ultrasonography or SIS will improve sensitivity.
- Hysteroscopy is a valuable adjunct to D&C, particularly in the patient at higher risk for focal endometrial pathology that might be missed on endometrial sampling.
- Abdominal ultrasound guidance may reduce the risk of complications such as perforation during difficult cervical D&C, such as in the stenotic postmenopausal patient or in the case of a large uterus.

Bibliography

Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions


Brooks PG, Seldon MF. Endometrial ablation in women with abnormal uterine bleeding taking retropubic or transvaginal endometrial ablation. BJOG 1985;92:578.


Novak E. A section curett can apparatus and endometrial biopsy. JAMA 1935;105:1087.


Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions


CHAPTER 27 ■ TUBAL STERILIZATION
HERBERT B. PETERSON, AMY E. POLLACK, AND JEFFREY S. WARSHA

DEFINITIONS

Air embolism—Potential complication of laparoscopic abdominal insufflation with the Veress needle, associated with “vapour lock” of the right ventricle, which occludes blood flow and results in cardiovascular collapse. A “cog wheel” murmur can sometimes be heard.

Bipolar coagulation—Method of tubal occlusion usually performed via laparoscopy that causes electrocoagulation of the tube when current is applied by grasping forceps; one jaw of the forceps is an active electrode, and the other is a return electrode. There is less chance for unintended thermal injury than with unipolar coagulation, and the chance of unintended thermal injury by capacitive coupling is virtually eliminated. However, less widespread thermal destruction of the tube increases the chance for sterilization failure relative to unipolar coagulation unless the surgeon uses techniques that maximize the likelihood of adequate tubal coagulation.

Capacitive coupling—Unintended consequence of laparoscopic use of unipolar coagulation, which under certain conditions can result in a charge being transferred to the operative laparoscope or conductive laparoscopic sheath. Subsequent occult transferral of this charge to intestines can lead to thermal injury and subsequent infectious morbidity or mortality.

Cumulative failure rates—Contrary to previous beliefs, tubal sterilization failures are not isolated to a narrow window of time after the procedure, but rather increase cumulatively with each passing year following sterilization. Younger women, who are more fecund at sterilization and for years after, have higher failure rates initially and over time.

Irving method—Method of partial salpingectomy that buries the end of the proximal tubal stump in the myometrium of the uterus, in an attempt to reduce the rate of posttubal ligation syndrome. Theoretically may be reduced by leaving a proximal tubal stump of 2 cm and by minimizing ligature-induced necrosis at the site of tubal interruption.

Luteal phase pregnancy—Refers to pregnancies that occurred before sterilization but were detected after sterilization. Such pregnancies may be erroneously attributed to sterilization “failure.”

Open laparoscopy—Laparoscopic procedure begun without prior insufflation by directly visualizing, elevating, and incising the layers of the abdominal wall near the umbilicus. Has the benefit of reducing vascular injuries and, potentially, bowel injuries associated with blind direct Veress needle and trocar insertion.

Parkland method—Method of partial salpingectomy that involves ligation of the tube in two places, followed by excision of the intervening segment of tube. Achieves immediate separation of severed tubal ends.

Pomeroy method—Method of partial salpingectomy that involves ligation, followed by excision, of a loop of tube. No attempt to bury the severed ends of tube.

Poststerilization regret—Regret after the decision to undergo surgical sterilization can be related to several factors, including preexisting patient characteristics, subsequent changes in the patient’s situations or attitudes, and dissatisfaction resulting from adverse side effects caused or perceived to be caused by the procedure. Studies have identified young age at tubal sterilization as a risk factor for later regret.

Posttubal ligation syndrome—Refers to the historic perception that menstrual disturbances could result from tubal sterilization. This term is outdated, as substantial evidence against such a syndrome now exists. Women who undergo sterilization are no more likely than their nonsterilized counterparts to experience a syndrome of menstrual abnormalities.

Silicone rubber banding—Method of tubal occlusion usually performed via laparoscopy in which a silicone rubber band is applied to the isthmic portion of the tube. The technique is most effective when the tube has normal anatomy and the operator is experienced with the technique of application. These methods inflict the narrowest zone of tubal damage and are more likely than other methods to achieve absolute sterilization. This term is outdated, as substantial evidence against such a syndrome now exists. Women who undergo sterilization are no more likely than their nonsterilized counterparts to experience a syndrome of menstrual abnormalities.

Sterilization timing—Sterilization can be performed in relation to pregnancy (following vaginal delivery, cesarean section, or abortion) or remote from pregnancy (interval sterilization).

Tubal clips—Methods of tubal occlusion usually performed via laparoscopy in which a Filshie or Hulka clip is applied to the isthmic portion of the tube. The technique is most effective when the tube has normal anatomy and the operator is experienced with the technique of application. These methods inflict the narrowest zone of tubal damage (3–5 mm), affording a greater chance of sterilization reversal when compared with other methods.

Tuboperitoneal fistula—Poststerilization communication of the proximal tubal stump with the peritoneal cavity, which can result in sterilization failure, including ectopic gestation. Theoretically may be reduced by leaving a proximal tubal stump of 2 cm and by minimizing ligature-induced necrosis at the site of tubal interruption.

Uchida method—Method of partial salpingectomy that buries the end of the proximal tubal stump within the leaves of the mesosalpinx in an attempt to reduce the rate of tuboperitoneal fistula.

Unipolar coagulation—Method of tubal occlusion usually performed via laparoscopy that causes electrocoagulation of the tube when current is applied by grasping forceps; both jaws of the forceps serve as an active electrode. The high effectiveness rates observed with this method are
In proposing the concept of tubal sterilization in 1842, James Blundell suggested the following:

"...the operator...ought to remove a portion, say one line, of the Fallopian tube, right and left, so as to intercept its caliber—the larger blood vessels being avoided. More divisions of the tube might be sufficient to produce sterility, but the further removal of a portion of the tube appears to be quite practice. I recommend this precaution, therefore, as an improvement of the operation."

Samuel Smith Lungren of Toledo, Ohio, is credited with having performed the first tubal sterilization in 1880, after having performed a cesarean section for a woman whose previous child was also born by cesarean section because of a contracted pelvis. During the second cesarean section, Lungren intended to remove the woman's ovaries to prevent future pregnancy, but instead decided that “the risk would be lessened and the same result would be accomplished by tying both Fallopian tubes with strong silk ligatures about one inch from the uterus.” At the time of Lungren’s successful tubal sterilization, laparotomy was a life-threatening procedure; thus, the performance of tubal sterilization at the time of cesarean section to prevent future pregnancy was potentially lifesaving. In 1919, Madlener reported on 85 tubal sterilizations performed at the time of laparotomy for other reasons, including cesarean section; three of the 85 women died postoperatively from infection. Because of the extreme risks, performing a laparotomy for the sole purpose of tubal sterilization remained an unpopular idea until the mid-20th century. Indeed, when three deaths were reported from 1950 to 1959 among 1,022 women who had postpartum Pomeroy sterilization, the investigators concluded that the risk for sterilization was comparable to that for multiparity and that “sterilization because of great multiparity alone cannot be justified on medical grounds” (Prystowsky and Eastman).

In addition to concerns about safety, the early history of tubal sterilization included debate about the appropriateness of tubal sterilization for fertility control. At the 21st Annual Meeting of the American Gynecological Society in 1886, participants debated a woman’s right to undergo surgical sterilization. During this debate, Edward P. Davis said, “I hold it [sterilization] to be the right of a woman who is in a condition to which natural delivery is impossible...” H.J. Garrigue objected by saying,

“...we must leave that to Nature or to God... I do not think that the woman has a right of that kind... The mere fact that she does not want to have more children should not decide the question.” (Speert)

The availability and acceptability of tubal sterilization as a method of fertility control remained limited until the mid-20th century, and, accordingly, tubal sterilization remained uncommon in the United States and around the world until the 1960s. In the 1970s, the worldwide popularity of tubal sterilization increased dramatically. Between 1970 and 1980, the estimated number of tubal sterilizations increased markedly in Europe, China, India, other parts of Asia, and Latin America. In the United States, the number of tubal sterilizations increased nearly fourfold—from about 200,000 in 1970 to about 700,000 in 1977. Among the factors affecting this increase were the availability and acceptability of two new surgical approaches—minilaparotomy and laparoscopy. In contrast to laparotomy for sterilization, these approaches were safer, allowed for surgery without hospitalization, reduced recovery time, and gave a better cosmetic result. Minilaparotomy has been used in many developing countries, and laparoscopy has been used in many developed countries, as well as in the United States.

Minilaparotomy for interval sterilization (i.e., sterilization at a time unrelated to pregnancy) requires a 2.5- to 3.0-cm suprapubic incision. The technique was first described by Anderson (1937) and later described by Power and Barnes (1941). The use of laparoscopy in Europe was encouraged by the work of Palmer (France), Steptoe (Britain), and Frangenheim (Germany), and use of the technique rapidly gained popularity in the 1970s, particularly in Europe and the United States.

In the United States, the increased use of tubal sterilization in the 1970s occurred concurrently with the widespread availability and acceptability of laparoscopy. In 1970, less than 1% of sterilizations were performed with a laparoscope, but by 1973, more than one third of the 550,000 women who had tubal sterilization had the procedure performed laparoscopically. This transition was associated with a marked reduction in length of hospital stay for tubal sterilization—from 6.5 nights in 1970 to 4 nights in the years 1975 to 1978. By 1987, one third of tubal sterilizations in the United States required no overnight hospital stay, and 79% of these were performed by way of laparoscopy. Sterilization is now the method of family planning most commonly used in the world. In 1995, about 223 million couples used sterilization (of themselves or their spouses) for contraception; 180 million were women using tubal sterilization and 43 million were men using vasectomy.

Thus, the developing world accounts for most of the use of sterilization. Nearly half of all users are in China, and more than one fourth are in India. Vasectomy accounts for only a small percentage of sterilization procedures in developing countries except for China, India, and South Korea. In nearly all countries, the prevalence of tubal sterilization exceeds that of vasectomy. Worldwide, the ratio of female-to-male sterilization is 4 to 1.

In the United States, more than 3 million tubal sterilizations were performed in 1994–1996. Approximately one-half were postpartum procedures; of these, 58% were performed after vaginal delivery and 42% were concurrent with cesarean section. Of the approximately one-half of tubal sterilizations performed as interval procedures, 96% were performed on an outpatient basis. Among interval sterilizations, laparoscopy was used as the surgical approach in 89% of procedures performed in outpatient settings and 53% of those performed in inpatient settings.

In the United States, sterilization has also become the most commonly used method of contraception among married couples. The proportion of couples who used contraception that chose sterilization more than doubled from 1973 (16%) to 2002 (36%). Most of this increase was in female sterilization—from 3% in 1973 to 27% in 2002; there was little to no increase in male sterilization over this period (8% in 1973 and 9% in 2002). Among U.S. women using contraception in 2002, 10% 25 to 29 years old, 15% to 34 years old, 25% to 39 years old, and 35% to 44 years old had undergone tubal sterilization.
TIMING OF STERILIZATION

Tubal sterilization can be performed at the time of cesarean section, shortly after delivery or induced abortion, or at a time unrelated to pregnancy. About one half of tubal sterilizations in the United States are performed at a time unrelated to pregnancy. The timing of tubal sterilization can influence the choice of anesthetic, surgical approach, and method of tubal occlusion. For example, most sterilizations performed concurrently with cesarean section require no separate anesthesia and involve partial salpingectomy as the method of tubal occlusion. Most tubal sterilizations performed after vaginal delivery are done by minilaparotomy with subumbilical incisions and partial salpingectomy. Tubal sterilization not associated with birth usually is performed by laparoscopy (with use of coagulation, silicone rubber band application, or clip application) or minilaparotomy (with use of partial salpingectomy).

PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION

The candidate for sterilization should be extensively counseled. The intended permanence of the procedure, alternatives to sterilization, and risks of surgery should be discussed. For couples desiring sterilization, no such discussion is complete without consideration of vasectomy as an alternative. Women also should be made aware that sterilization failure can occur and that the relative likelihood of ectopic pregnancy is increased when sterilization failure does occur.

The workup of women who are to undergo tubal sterilization includes a history and physical examination and a laboratory evaluation, as indicated. Consideration should be given to whether the woman might be pregnant at the time of sterilization, and pregnancy testing should be ordered as necessary.

A careful gynecologic history and examination also are necessary before sterilization. Women with gynecologic disease or symptoms may require additional diagnostic or therapeutic measures. Some ultimately may be better served by other surgical procedures, either instead of or in addition to sterilization. For example, some women with enlarged and symptomatic uterine leiomyomata and women with symptomatic pelvic relaxation may benefit more from hysterectomy than from tubal sterilization. Others, such as women with abnormal cervical cytology, need careful evaluation before a decision can be made about preventing or treating invasive cervical cancer.

ANESTHESIA

Complications of general anesthesia are the leading cause of death attributed to sterilization in the United States. The risks inherent in general anesthesia are exacerbated by its use postpartum and during laparoscopy. The special requirements of general anesthesia for laparoscopy have been well described.

Except for the use of conduction anesthesia postpartum, general anesthesia is the technique most often used for female sterilization in the United States. A 1988 survey of members of the American Association of Gynecologic Laparoscopists revealed that the number of providers of tubal sterilization who used local anesthesia for laparoscopic sterilization had increased from 4% in the 1982 survey to 7%. Worldwide, more than 75% of tubal sterilization procedures are performed under local anesthesia. A discussion of the technology and regimen for administering general or conduction anesthesia is beyond the scope of this chapter. Instead, we focus on local anesthesia because of its increasing use in outpatient settings for many types of surgery.

Sterilization by laparoscopy or minilaparotomy can be performed safely under local anesthesia. The patient avoids the risks associated with general anesthesia, spends less time sedated or anesthetized, and has a more rapid recovery. Nausea and vomiting are less likely to occur, and the patient is awake to report symptoms that can indicate the occurrence of a complication. Television technology has made it possible for the patient to observe the procedure if she desires. Furthermore, the overall expense of the procedure is reduced compared with procedures done under general anesthesia.

In the United States, the overall morbidity rate for female sterilization is so low that it is difficult to obtain a sample large enough to demonstrate a comparative safety advantage for local versus general anesthesia. One U.S. study randomly assigned 100 women to either local or general anesthesia for laparoscopic sterilization. Serious or life-threatening events did not occur in either group. However, women who had general anesthesia were more likely to have intraoperative hypotension, hypertension, or tachycardia, which suggests that these women were hemodynamically less stable and may have been at increased risk for cardiovascular complications. In another study, 125 women were randomly allocated to the use of local or general anesthesia for laparoscopic sterilization. Women who had general anesthesia were more likely to develop hypotension; hypertension was more common in the local anesthesia group. No women in either group had tachycardia.

Operating under local anesthesia incurs several possible disadvantages. The patient’s anxiety may be increased; therefore, the surgeon must use a decisive and gentle surgical technique while talking with the patient to the patient may feel a lack of control; thus, the physician must have a thorough understanding of the use of sedative and analgesic drugs. Although obesity can complicate the use of local anesthesia, several studies indicate that local anesthesia can be used successfully for obese women. Women with a history of multiple abdominal or pelvic surgical procedures or peritonitis may need additional anesthesia if the procedure is difficult or prolonged. Additional anesthesia also may be required during minilaparotomy if the abdominal incision needs to be extended. One U.S.-based retrospective study reviewed 2,827 outpatient laparoscopic sterilizations performed under local anesthesia and mild sedation from 1980 to 1988. The mean operating time was 10.0 ± 5.1 minutes, and the mean anesthesia time was 23.3 ± 6.9 minutes. The hospital cost to the patient was reduced 65% to 85%. Another U.S. study reported on 358 minilaparotomies for interval sterilization performed under local anesthesia. The average operating time was 21 minutes, and no complications were reported.

In both series, the local anesthetics were 0.5% bupivacaine hydrochloride used alone or in combination with lidocaine. In one series, midazolam hydrochloride and fentanyl citrate were used for mild intravenous sedation; in the other series, meperidine hydrochloride and diazepam were used. For local infiltration and paracervical block, agents of intermediate intrinsic potency (defined as the minimum concentration required to produce a block within 5 to 10 minutes), such as lidocaine or mepipvacaine, have been found suitable. Both are amides with good stability and low toxicity. Onset of analgesic effects is rapid, even when a low concentration of medication is used, and the duration of effect is sufficient for the procedure but not prolonged (about 1.5 hours when the medication is given in plain solution). Bupivacaine, a more potent

Tubal Sterilization
SURGICAL APPROACH

Minilaparotomy

The minilaparotomy approach to tubal occlusion can be used in the interval or postpartum period. Although interval sterilization by minilaparotomy is the sterilization procedure most frequently performed in many countries, it is not a common procedure in the United States. Minilaparotomy in the United States often is used preferentially among women considered to be at increased risk for laparoscopy.

Interval minilaparotomy is performed with use of a 2- to 3-cm midline vertical or transverse suprapubic incision. In patients with an enlarged uterus resulting from uterine leiomyomata or other benign conditions, the minilaparotomy incision should be made at the level of the uterine fundus to ensure access to the fallopian tubes and to allow visualization of the fundus and movement along the uterus. The fallopian tube is identified first by the fimbriated end, and then the midpoint of the fallopian tube is grasped with a small Babcock clamp and elevated through the abdominal incision. Tubal occlusion most often is performed by use of the modified Pomeroy or Parkland technique. However, clips or rings can be applied through the minilaparotomy incision with modified instruments originally developed for use through the operating laparoscope.

Postpartum minilaparotomy is performed in a manner similar to that of interval minilaparotomy. It is ideally performed before the onset of postpartum uterine involution while the uterine fundus is high in the abdomen (within 48 hours of delivery). A 2- to 3-cm subumbilical vertical or semicircular incision is made in the midline where the abdominal wall is thin. Because of the proximity of the enlarged uterus to the incision, access to the fallopian tubes is easier than it is with an interval approach. A uterine manipulator is unnecessary when minilaparotomy is performed in the postpartum period.

Laparoscopy

The magic is in the magician, not in the wand... Entering the abdomen is the most dangerous part of the laparoscopic procedure. (Hulka and Reich)

The laparoscopic instrumentation, including laparoscope, light cables and light source, insufflator and tubing, and video camera and television, if used, should be set up and tested for proper functioning before any incisions are made. If a Veress needle is to be used, it is good practice to attach it to the insufflation tubing and test that gas flows freely through it. High line pressures (3 mm Hg or higher) during low-flow insufflation (1 L/min) through a Veress needle that has yet to be inserted into the abdominal cavity suggest that the needle has some occlusion. Checking for occlusion before inserting the needle can avoid the multiple attempts at needle placement that might occur in the belief that incorrect placement, rather than needle occlusion, is the cause of resistance to flow. It is convenient, while waiting for surgery, to have the end of the laparoscope bathing in warm sterile fluid to prevent it from fogging when it is inserted into the abdominal cavity.

A no. 11 scalpel blade is used to make a single vertical incision in the lower rim of the umbilicus. This must be done carefully because the aorta can lie just a few centimeters beneath the abdominal wall, particularly in a thin patient. The abdominal wall is lifted away from the aorta by pinching the skin beneath the umbilicus between thumb and index finger. The umbilicus is elevated with one hand while the surgeon’s other hand makes the controlled incision.

A Veress needle is disconnected from the insufflation tubing before insertion. The stopcock on the needle then is placed in the open position, and the spring action of the needle is tested for smooth operation. Elevating the abdominal wall and using the Veress needle with the stopcock open allows air to rush into the previously gas-free abdominal cavity when the end of the needle penetrates the peritoneal layer. The in-rushing air, if heard, is one of the first indicators that successful abdominal entry has occurred. Outflow of blood likewise can serve as an immediate indicator of vessel injury. Allowing air to rush in also can cause the bowel to fall away from the abdominal wall.

The terminal aorta is palpated, even in a moderately obese patient, through the abdominal wall in the midline, just above or at the umbilicus. The pulsations of the aorta are lost in the midline just beneath the umbilicus, corresponding to the sacral hollow. The aorta bifurcates at the level of L4, which corresponds to the umbilicus. This is a more constant landmark for bifurcation of the aorta than the umbilicus. The Veress needle is placed through the umbilical incision and is directed at an angle toward the sacral hollow or uterine fundus (to avoid the aorta) and in the midline (to avoid the iliac vessels). Elevating the abdominal wall during this process increases the distance between the Veress needle and major vessels. While placing the Veress needle, the surgeon should hold the needle like a dart, being careful not to impede the action of the spring mechanism. Resistance at the tip of the needle causes the blunt cannula inside the needle to be pushed back, and the spring mechanism at the hub of the needle extends. When resistance at the tip of the advancing needle is lost, as occurs with successful penetration of the peritoneal cavity, the blunt cannula inside the needle advances back out to the tip, and the spring mechanism at the hub of the needle snaps back in. Observing the spring mechanism for this snap can serve as a sign to test for successful placement. Often there are two snaps—the first when the fascia is penetrated and the second with peritoneal penetration. Continuing to advance the needle tip much beyond the point of penetration of the parietal peritoneum risks placing the needle tip between loops of bowel or under the omental apron, both of which can cause resistance to flow and can result in reinsertion of the needle. Continued advancement of the Veress needle also risks vascular injury. The needle tip should not be moved laterally once the tip is inserted in the abdomen; any simple vascular puncture could be transformed into a major laceration if the needle tip is moved from side to side. Once abdominal penetration is made with the Veress needle, the needle should be stabilized carefully until safety checks have been completed. The needle should not be moved, and a laparotomy should be performed immediately if major vascular injury is suspected.
The distance between skin and fascia can increase with increasing patient obesity. A given angle of entry of the Veress needle that successfully penetrates the peritoneal cavity in a thin patient might fall far short of the peritoneum in an obese patient. To bring the peritoneal cavity within the physical length of the Veress needle, it is often necessary to pursue entry with a trajectory closer to the vertical. However, this also directs the Veress needle toward the aorta and therefore should be attempted only by experienced surgeons, and with extreme care. Alternatively, open laparoscopy can be performed.

Several safety checks for correct intraabdominal placement can be performed while the Veress needle is held steady. The insufflation of 5 to 10 mL of sterile saline through the needle, followed immediately by aspiration, can be helpful. The fluid should meet little resistance, and, more important, scant fluid should return on respiration. Resorption of fluid suggests that the needle tip is in a small enclosed space that does not allow immediate dispersion of the instilled fluid. Resorption of essentially fluid or bloody fluid suggests bowel or vascular penetration, respectively. Simple penetration of the bowel with a Veress needle does not mandate immediate exploratory laparotomy. Depending on the setting and the skill level of the surgeon, remerit of the needle or open laparoscopy, followed by laparoscopic visualization of the intestine, can be pursued.

A second safety check consists of attaching a filled 10-mL syringe to the hub of the Veress needle and then removing the plunger. Elevation of the abdominal wall at this point should cause an increased negative intraperitoneal pressure, which allows the fluid in the syringe to drain passively into the abdominal cavity through an open stopcock. Alternatively, a drop of saline (drip test) can be placed on the hub of the Veress needle, and, with the stopcock open, elevation of the abdominal wall should result in the drop flowing downward freely.

Once these safety checks are performed, insufflation is begun at 1 L/min or less. Initial insufflation pressures often are 5 mm Hg or less in thin patients and, even with correct needle placement, can be 10 mm Hg or more in obese patients. An intraabdominal pressure greater than 15 mm Hg during insufflation generally is avoided to prevent respiratory compromise and decreased venous return secondary to vena caval compression. Abdominal distention increases the distance between the abdominal wall and major pelvic vessels, and this increases the safety buffer when the trocar is inserted. However, the abdomen should not be distended so that it is difficult to manually elevate it for trocar insertion.

During insufflation, a shift from dullness to tympany with percussion over the liver is indicative of pneumoperitoneum formation. It is also prudent for the surgeon to pay attention to the electrocardiogram rhythm during insufflation, because the sudden appearance of premature ventricular contractions can be an indicator of intravascular insufflation. Sudden vascular collapse, during insufflation can be caused by a gas embolism into the right side of the heart, and at times this life-threatening event can be signaled by a new “cog wheel” or “mill wheel” murmur. Rapidly tilting the patient into Trendelenburg position and onto her left side and advancing a Swan-Ganz catheter into the right heart for aspiration can be life-saving.

Once insufflation is complete, the Veress needle is removed, and the umbilical incision is widened to accommodate the trocar and sleeve. An incision that is too large can result in leakage of gas around the sleeve. An incision that is too small can restrict access. The trocar should be checked before insertion to ensure that it is sharp; a dull trocar potentially is dangerous because it requires increased force for abdominal entry. The trocar is grasped as shown in Figure 27.1. The middle finger serves as a stopper, preventing the forward momentum following fascial puncture from carrying the trocar deep into the pelvis. The precautions for insertion of the Veress needle pertain even more to insertion of the trocar; the abdominal wall is elevated, and the trocar is directed toward the hollow of the sacrum or the uterine fundus, and a midline trajectory is followed.

Open laparoscopy is performed without previous creation of a pneumoperitoneum. The skin beneath the umbilicus is incised sufficiently with a scalpel in either a vertical or transverse direction to adequately visualize the underlying fascia. The skin is released, and the fascia is grasped and elevated. The fascia is then incised in the midline, and the opening is stretched with a hemostat or incised to a length just sufficient to visualize the underlying peritoneum, which in turn is elevated and incised. Each angle of the fascial incision is sutured with a no. 0 absorbable stitch but not tied. The Hasson blunt cannula and sleeve are then placed through the opening of the peritoneum. The blunt cannula then is removed, and the abdomen is insufflated through the port found on the sleeve.

**FIGURE 27.1.** Trocar entry. When inserting the trocar through the abdominal wall, the trocar is “palmed” in the surgeon’s dominant hand, with the extended middle finger serving as a stopper to deep abdominal penetration. If the surgeon’s hand is too small to accomplish this, open laparoscopy should be considered.

**METHOD OF TUBAL OCCLUSION**

All tubal sterilization methods rely on correct identification of the fallopian tube for success. With any of the methods, the tube should be followed out to its fimbriated end to confirm that the correct structure has been identified. Theoretically, the risk of tuboperitoneal fistula formation can be reduced by preserving a proximal tubal segment 1 to 2 cm in length. It is possible that the proximal tubal stump serves as a distensible reservoir for the small amount of uterine fluid that is normally forced through the interstitial portion of
the tube by uterine contractions. The capacitance of the proximal stump might serve to dissipate the fluid pressure emanating from the uterus. Otherwise, this direct fluid pressure on the cut end of the tube might prevent complete closure of the tubal lumen during the healing process.

**Irving Procedure**

In 1924, and later, in 1950, Irving reported on his method of achieving tubal sterilization. He attempted to reduce the risk of tuboperitoneal fistulae by extensively dissecting the ligated ends of the tubes and burying the proximal tubal segment. Although the extra dissection in this technique likely enhances effectiveness, it also carries the potential for greater blood loss, as well as increases the difficulty of performing the technique through a minilaparotomy incision. The procedure also takes slightly longer to perform than simpler methods.

The Irving technique is accomplished by first using a hemostat or scissors to create a window in the mesosalpinx just beneath the tube, about 4 cm from the uterotubal junction (Fig. 27.2A). Then the tube is twice ligated (no. 1 chromic) and divided between the ties at this location. The free ends of the proximal stump ligature are held long. A 1-cm incision is made in the serosa of the posterior uterine wall near the uterotubal junction. A hemostat, or similar pointed instrument, is then used to bluntly deepen the incision, creating a pocket in the uterine musculature about 1 to 2 cm deep (Fig. 27.2B). The two free ends of the proximal stump ligature, previously held long, are then individually threaded onto a curved needle and brought deep into the myometrial tunnel and out through the uterine serosa (Fig. 27.2C). Traction on the sutures then draws the ligated proximal stump deep into the myometrial tunnel, and tying the free sutures fix the tube in this buried location (Fig. 27.2D). Often this can be accomplished without incising the mesosalpinx, but if extra mobilization of the proximal stump is needed, or if the proximal stump mesosalpinx appears in danger of being torn when traction is applied, then the mesosalpinx under the proximal tubal segment can be incised partly back toward the uterus. The serosal opening of the myometrial tunnel is then plicated closed around the tube with use of a fine absorbable suture, but great care should be exercised to avoid compromising the tube as it enters the tunnel. Strangulation or damage to the tube with this stitch could cause necrosis and fistula formation in the extramyometrial portion of the proximal tube. No treatment of the distal tubal stump is necessary, but some surgeons choose to bury that segment in the mesosalpinx.

**Modified Pomeroy Procedure**

Bishop and Nelms, colleagues of Pomeroy, reported on the Pomeroy technique for tubal occlusion in 1930. They
careful to point out the importance of using absorbable suture as opposed to permanent suture.

In this method, the tube is grasped in its midportion, usually with a smallatraumatic clamp such as the Babcock, and a loop of tube is elevated (Fig. 27.3A). The base of the loop is ligated with no. 1 plain catgut, leaving a 2- to 3-cm proximal stump of isthmus, and the sutures are held long. A 2- to 3-cm portion of tube in the ligated loop is transected and removed with scissors (Fig. 27.3B). Bishop and Nelms, in the original report on this method, pointed out that ligation was performed with a double strand of absorbable chromic catgut suture to allow the cut tubal ends to quickly separate after surgery. It was their belief that this would allow the ends to naturally fibrose and peritonealize without fistulization or communication. This also is the rationale for the common modification of the Pomeroy technique, in which the original chromic suture is replaced by plain catgut because of the more rapid degradation of the latter. Surgeons have a tendency to strenuously tighten the catgut ligature around the tube (as though the tighter the ligature, the better the occlusion), but this appears to go against the very principles of the procedure. This tightening can result in greater strangulation and necrosis of the adjoining tubal segments, potentially increasing the risk of fistula formation and greater strangulation and necrosis of the adjoining tubal segments. The Pomeroy method minimizes bleeding by compressing and sealing the vascular mesosalpinx before tubal transection.

When a Pomeroy ligature is performed through a minilaparotomy incision, the ligature sutures are held while the tube is reinset in the peritoneal cavity before they can be adequately examined and before hemostasis can be ensured. After examination is complete, the sutures are cut, and the tubal stumps are allowed to retract into the abdomen.

The Pomeroy method minimizes bleeding by compressing and sealing the vascular mesosalpinx before tubal transection. It is not unusual when performing tubal sterilization at the time of cesarean section to find the mesosalpinx greatly engorged with distended veins. Elevation of the uterus through the abdominal incision often facilitates tubal occlusion by allowing the vessels to drain and decompress. It is important when replacing the uterus into the peritoneal cavity to lead with one adnexa at a time while protecting the tubal ligation site on that side. Otherwise, when the uterus is replaced, a tight fit can cause the adnexa to be squeezed against the incision, with resultant avulsion of the ligature and postoperative bleeding.

The Pomeroy method is performed as a laparoscopic interval procedure. In this technique, a laparoscope with an operating channel is placed through the umbilical port, and a 5-mm midline suprapubic cannula is introduced under direct vision. A plain gut Roeder loop (endoscopic slip knot) is introduced through the 5-mm port. A grasper is introduced through the operative channel of the laparoscope, advanced through the suture loop, and the appropriate portion of tube is grasped and retracted back through the loop. The slip knot of the loop is then tightened, ligating a knuckle of the tube. Scissors are then introduced through the operative scope, and the suture is cut. With use of a grasper through the 5-mm port, the loop of tube is held on tension while the scissors are used through the operative channel to transect the tube above the ligature. When the procedure is complete and the tubal segment has been resected, the grasper is used through the operative channel to hold the specimen while the operative scope and grasper are removed together through the abdominal incision.
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

umbilical sleeve. In contrast to most other methods of laparo-
sscopic sterilization, this technique has the advantage of pro-
ducing a surgical specimen for evaluation.

Uchida Method

Originally reported on in 1961, and reported on in revised form
in 1975, the Uchida method, like the Irving procedure before
it, recognized the role of fistula formation in tubal sterilization
failures and included steps to prevent this complication.

This method begins by having the surgeon grasp the tube in
its midportion, about 6 to 7 cm from the uterotubal junction.
A 1:1,000 epinephrine in saline solution is injected subsero-
sally, creating a bleb over the tube that is then incised (Fig.
27.4A). The muscular tube, which often can be seen springing
up through the serosal incision, then is divided between two
hemostats. The serosa over the proximal tubal segment is dis-
sected bluntly toward the uterus, exposing about 5 cm of the
proximal tubal segment (Fig. 27.4B). The tube then is ligated
with no. 0 chromic suture near the uterotubal junction, and
this 5-cm segment of exposed tube is resected. The shortened
proximal stump is allowed to retract into the mesosalpinx (Fig.
27.4C). The serosa around the opening in the mesosalpinx is
sutured in a pursestring fashion with a fine absorbable stitch.
Simultaneous ligation of the distal tube and gathering of the
mesosalpinx around the distal stump are accomplished when
the pursestring suture is tied (Fig. 27.4D). This step also fixes
the distal stump in a position open to the peritoneal cavity while
burying the proximal stump within the leaves of the meso-
salpinx.

Uchida added fimbriectomy to the procedure in 1975 to en-
hance effectiveness. Some surgeons omit this step, and in addi-
tion excise only 1 to 2 cm of tube (rather than the recommended
5 cm) to permit future tubal anastomosis.

Parkland Method

In this method, made popular during the 1960s at Parkland
Memorial Hospital, the tube is grasped in its midportion with
a Babcock clamp, and a hemostat or scissors is used to create

---

**FIGURE 27.4.** Uchida method. A: An injection of vasoconstricting solution is given beneath the serosa
of the tube about 6 cm from the uterotubal junction. The serosa is then incised (dashed line). B: The
antimesenteric edge of the mesosalpinx is pulled back toward the uterus, exposing about 5 cm of the tube.
C: The tube is ligated proximally and cut, and the tied stump is allowed to retract into the mesosalpinx.
The hemostat on the distal stump remains attached to facilitate exteriorization of this portion of the tube.
D: The mesosalpinx is closed. A pursestring stitch of the mesosalpinx around the exteriorized tubal stump
secures it in a position open to the abdomen, whereas the ligated proximal stump is buried within the
mesosalpinx. Once the pursestring suture is tied, the hemostat can be removed.
Tubal Sterilization

A window in an avascular area of the mesosalpinx just beneath the isthmic portion of the tube (Fig. 27.5A). The window is stretched to about 2.5 cm in length by opening the hemostat. Two ligatures of no. 0 chromic material are passed through the window, and the tube is ligated proximally and distally, leaving a 2-cm proximal stump of isthmic tube (Fig. 27.5B). The intervening segment of tube between the ties then is resected (Fig. 27.5C). In contrast to the Pomeroy method, in which the resected portions of the tubes are ligated together and later separate when the suture weakens, immediate separation of the tubal ends is accomplished with the Parkland method. Care should be taken to avoid undue traction on the ligatures while resecting the tubal segments, because this could result in tearing of the mesosalpinx and excessive bleeding.

Unipolar Coagulation

Unipolar coagulation was the first method of laparoscopic tubal occlusion to achieve widespread use. However, reports of electrical complications, particularly thermal bowel injury, resulted in a significant decline in this method’s popularity as soon as alternative methods of laparoscopic tubal occlusion became available in the mid-1970s. In unipolar coagulation, a specially designed insulated grasping forceps is introduced through the operating channel of the laparoscope or independently through a 5-mm second puncture port. As a safety precaution, attachment of the electric cable to the grasping forceps should be delayed until the surgeon is ready to coagulate the fallopian tube.

With unipolar coagulation, as much as 3 to 5 cm of tube can be destroyed with a single burn, with occult damage occurring beyond the visual zone of desiccation. For this reason, the isthmic–ampullary portion of the tube should be carefully identified and grasped about 5 cm from the uterus to preserve some length of proximal tube. The jaws of the grasping forceps should completely encircle the fallopian tube and include a portion of the mesosalpinx as well. The tube should be elevated away from adjacent structures, such as bowel and bladder, before current is applied for about 5 seconds. If a second burn is required, it should be applied to the proximal rather than the distal portion of the tube. The current should be turned off before the tube is released and the grasping forceps are retracted into the laparoscope. Both jaws of the grasping forceps serve as active electrodes and will burn any structure they touch while current is applied.

The thermal injuries to abdominal viscera that are seen with unipolar coagulation are, in some cases, likely attributable to the phenomenon of capacitive coupling. The current flowing down the unipolar probe creates an electromagnetic field that can transfer an electric charge to any conductor surrounding the probe. The greater the voltage being used with the probe, the greater this capacitive effect. In the case of laparoscopic unipolar coagulation for sterilization, the conductor...
surrounding the insulated unipolar probe is the operative laparoscope itself. As long as the operative laparoscope is safely grounded (usually by contact with a metal trocar sleeve that, in turn, is in contact with the abdominal wall over a large surface area), then the capacitive charge that builds up on the scope discharges when and wherever any portion of that instrument touches the patient’s tissues. Depending on the surface area of contact, the discharging current from the scope into the patient’s tissues has either a high current density (small contact surface) or a low current density (large contact surface), resulting in either a large thermal effect or a minimal thermal effect, respectively. In the case of contact with bowel, this thermal effect easily can result in delayed necrosis and peritonitis. If the unipolar probe is brought into the abdomen by way of a second puncture trocar sheath, then it is the sheath itself that is capacitively charged (if it is made of a conducting material). If the contact on the trocar sheath is prevented from grounding through the abdominal wall (as could occur if a plastic collar with threads is being used around the trocar sleeve), then any bowel or other grounded tissue touching the trocar sleeve again has capacitive current flowing into it.

If thermal injury to the intestine is noticed during the laparoscopic procedure, then it is important to recognize that the injury can extend well beyond the visibly damaged area. Small burns of the bowel serosa may not require repair, but hospitalization for 5 to 7 days is recommended so the patient can be observed for delayed peritonitis. A laparotomy is required if peritonitis occurs. A large area of superficial thermal bowel injury, or one that is thought to extend beyond the serosa, requires resection of that portion of intestine with a 5-cm margin on either side of the lesion. Owing to the damaged area can result in stitches being placed in bowel that appears healthy virtually but in reality is destined to necrose from occult thermal or electrical injury.

Bipolar Coagulation

The use of bipolar coagulation for tubal sterilization was reported by Roux and Cloutier in 1974. With bipolar coagulation, current flows from one jaw of the grasper to the other, requiring only the intervening tissue of the patient within the jaws of the instrument to complete the circuit. This eliminates the need for a distant ground plate. Compared with unipolar coagulation, which uses the patient’s body to complete the circuit, bipolar coagulation applies current in a more discrete manner (1.5- to 3-cm zone of thermal injury) and with an increased element of safety. Capacitive coupling does not occur with bipolar forceps because the field effects from the equal but opposite currents that flow in both directions along the shaft of the instrument cancel out one another.

Once the fallopian tube is carefully identified, it is grasped in the distal isthmic section with the bipolar forceps in such a way that the tube is completely encircled, including a portion of the mesosalpinx (Fig. 27.6). The tube then is elevated away from any adjacent structures, and current is applied. Two additional contiguous areas similarly are coagulated to ensure at least a 3-cm area of desiccation. As with unipolar coagulation, an effort should be made to leave the proximal 2 cm of tube undisturbed to reduce the risk of tuboperitoneal fistula formation.

The visual end points of tubal blanching and swelling noted with bipolar coagulation cannot be used to ensure destruction of the endosalpinx. Desiccation of the outer one third of the fallopian tube can occur without desiccation of the inner one third. The use of an optical flow meter has been recommended to evaluate cessation of current flow through the tube as an end point. Presumably, when complete desiccation occurs, there will be no further electrolytes in solution to carry current through the dehydrated tissue. Soderstrom and coworkers have demonstrated that complete desiccation of the fallopian tube with bipolar systems is more likely when a cutting waveform, as opposed to a coagulation or blended waveform, is used and when the power output is at least 25 W against a 100-V load.

Silicone Rubber Bands

High complication rates with the use of unipolar coagulation led to the pursuit of safer, nonthermal methods that could be applied laparoscopically. The first of these methods to gain popularity was the silicone rubber band, developed by Yoon and coworkers in the early 1970s.

The band is introduced with a specially designed endoscopic applicator that can be delivered either through the operating channel of a laparoscope or a separate second puncture port. The band is first stretched over the distal end of the applicator, which closes both arms of the tongs around the channel of a laparoscope or a separate second puncture port. The band is first stretched over the distal end of the applicator barrel (immediately before use to avoid extended deformation of the band). A transcervical uterine manipulator can be used to help achieve proper exposure. After the device is introduced into the abdominal cavity, grasping tongs are extended from within the applicator barrel. One of the tongs is used to gently hook and elevate the isthmic portion of the tube about 3 cm from the uterus. The tongs then are retracted into the applicator, which closes both arms of the tongs around the grasped tube while pulling the hoop of tube up into the barrel (Fig. 27.7). The surgeon must take care in ensuring that the tube is completely encircled by the tongs as they are retracted into the applicator. Failure to do this can result in a band that is only tangentially applied to the tube (failing to occlude its lumen) or applied only to the mesosalpinx.

It is important to avoid excessive traction on the tube during retraction of the tongs. The surgeon should slowly advance the entire applicator toward the tube while gradually retracting the tongs and tube up into the applicator. Failure to do this...
FIGURE 27.7. Silicone band method. The isthmic portion of the tube is retracted into the applicator barrel using grasping tongs, which should completely surround the tube. The applicator barrel is advanced toward the tube during this retraction process to avoid excessive traction on the tube and its mesentery.

can result in mesosalpingeal hemorrhage and tubal laceration. Once the loop is fully retracted into the device, the band is slid off the applicator barrel and onto the base of the loop. About 1.5 to 2 cm of tube is contained in the constricted loop. After devascularization, this portion of tube becomes anoxic and resorbs over time. Eventually, the band no longer encircles any tube, and later it is often found in the mesosalpinx. Apart from the 2-cm loop of encircled tube, very little destruction is caused by the band, and 2 mm lateral to the area of constriction of the tube is relatively undisturbed.

It is difficult to apply a band to edematous or thickened fallopian tubes successfully. Tubal adhesions can reduce the mobility of the tube and preclude pulling an adequate loop of tube into the applicator. Additional rings can be applied to the cut edges if transection of the mesosalpinx or tube with accompanying hemorrhage occurs. Bipolar or unipolar coagulation can be used if this is unsuccessful.

Spring Clip

The use of a spring clip for tubal sterilization was reported by Hulka and colleagues in 1973. The introducer for the clip can be delivered into the abdomen through the operative channel of the laparoscope or a second puncture cannula (Fig. 27.8). Because the clip must be applied exactly perpendicular to the long axis of the fallopian tube, it is helpful at times to use the two-puncture method—placing the tube on stretch by use of a transcervical uterine manipulator and a grasping forceps inserted through the operating channel of the laparoscope, and introducing the applicator through the second puncture port. The clip is held in a cradle by the applicator and can be closed and opened on the tube multiple times until an acceptable application is achieved. At this point, further pressure on the thumb device of the applicator drives the spring mechanism over the jaws of the clip, locking it closed. If improper application is determined at this point, the clip cannot be removed, and another clip has to be placed. To be effective, the clip must be applied to the isthmic portion of the tube, about 2 cm from the uterus and exactly at right angles to the long axis of the tube. It must be applied fully advanced over the tube, with the hinge of the clip pressing against the tube and with the tips of the jaws of the clip extending beyond the tube onto the mesosalpinx, creating a characteristic fold in the mesosalpinx when the clip is closed. The tube is not elevated when applying the clip, in contrast to the techniques used in coagulation and band application.

The clip, like the silicone rubber band, is most likely to be successful when applied to a normal tube. Tubal distortion, thickening, and adhesions make correct application difficult and often impossible.

A considerable advantage to the clip method of sterilization is that only 3 mm of tube is compressed by the clip, and minimal collateral damage occurs in the adjacent tissue. As a result, anastomosis procedures after clip sterilization often are highly successful.

Filshie Clip

The Filshie clip was first introduced in Europe in 1975, and the hinged Mark VI model was approved for use in the United States by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 1996. The device has titanium jaws lined with silicone rubber and is used with specially designed applicators that are available in both single- and double-puncture versions for use with laparoscopy or minilaparotomy. The Filshie clip has a hinge on one end and a small curve on the other and is designed to be placed on the isthmic portion of the fallopian tube approximately 1 to 2 cm from the cornuca (Fig. 27.9).

To be effective, the jaws of this clip, as with the spring clip, must include the entire circumference of the tube. Only one properly applied clip needs to be applied to each fallopian tube. Once the tube is occluded, both the tube and the silicone rubber lining of the clip are compressed. Over time, about 3 to 5 mm of the compressed tissue undergoes avascular necrosis, and the compressed silicone rubber expands. Eventually, placal attenuation and fibrosis of the adjacent tubal segments occurs, and the clips are peritonealized.
FIGURE 27.9. Filshie clip method. The clip is applied to the midisth- 
mus (about 1 to 2 cm from the cornua) with the lower jaw of the clip
being visible in the mesosalpinx to assure that the entire circumference
of the tube is included.

The clip is placed into the applicator, and the applicator and
clip then are introduced through the cannula with the jaws of the clip
in place to manipulate the fallopian tube into proper position. The clip may close prematurely if too
much pressure is placed on the handle of the applicator. The
lower jaw of the clip, with its small curve at the tip, should
be seen through the mesosalpinx to assure that the clip in-
cludes the entire circumference of the isthmic portion of the
tube before the clip is applied. Because of the clip’s hinge and
the silicone lining of the jaws, the tubes can be manipulated
and released several times for better positioning of the clip.
Gentle pressure is placed on the applicator handle once desired
placement is obtained, which causes the upper jaw of the clip
to flatten and lock under the curved tip of the lower jaw. The
clip should be closed slowly to avoid transection of the fallop-
ian tube, which is more likely with edematous tubes. A clip can
be placed on each transected end if transection occurs. Many
surgeons recommend the use of a double-puncture technique
to assure proper placement.

Essure\textsuperscript{TM}

The Essure\textsuperscript{TM} microinsert was approved by the FDA for use as
an interval tubal sterilization device in late 2002. The device is
inserted transcervically via hysteroscopy and thus avoids both
entry into the abdominal cavity and the need for general or
regional anesthesia. It is available as part of a disposable system
that includes the microinsert, a delivery system, and a split
introducer. The microinsert is comprised of a stainless steel
inner coil, a nickel titanium alloy outer coil, and a layer of
polyethylene terephthalate (PET) fibers around the inner coil.
The microinserts are 4 cm in length and 0.8 mm in diameter before
release from the insertion catheter; following release, it expands
to 1.5 to 2.0 mm in diameter as it attaches to the fallopian tube
(Fig. 27.10).

The Essure\textsuperscript{TM} microinsert can be placed in an outpatient or
office surgery setting using a paracervical block with or with-
out intravenous sedation. Using a sterile standard 5-mm hys-
teroscope with a minimum 5 French operating channel and a 12-
to 30-degree angled lens, the uterine cavity is distended ade-
quately with 2 to 3 L of warmed physiologic saline to al-
low accurate identification of both tubal ostia. The procedure
should be terminated if both tubal ostia are not accessible and
considered likely to be patent. The manufacturer’s package in-
sert recommends that the risk of hypervolemia be reduced by
immediately terminating the procedure if the fluid deficit of the
physiologic saline distension medium exceeds 1500 cc and by
limiting the time of the hysteroscopic procedure to a maximum
of 20 minutes.

The Essure\textsuperscript{TM} microinsert is designed to be placed in the fal-
lopian tube across the uterotubal junction where the tube exits
the uterine wall but with 5 to 10 mm (the equivalent of 3–8
coils) still trailing into the uterus. This is achieved by insert-
ing the delivery catheter with the microinsert into the proximal
tubal lumen to the level indicated by the black position marker
on the catheter. When the device is correctly placed, the deliv-
ery catheter is withdrawn, and the delivery wire is separated
from the microinsert. The trailing end of the coils aids in an-
choring the device to decrease the risk of expulsion. The device
is also anchored as it expands in the tube at placement, but
occlusion is not considered adequate without tissue ingrowth
from the tubal wall into the coils that occurs as a result of
an inflammatory and fibrotic response to the PET fibers in the
inner coil. A hysterosalpingogram (HSG) must be performed
3 months postinsertion to assure complete bilateral tubal oc-
cclusion. Alternate contraception should be used until occlusion
is documented.

FIGURE 27.10. Essure method. The Essure microinsert is designed to
be placed in the fallopian tube across the uterotubal junction where
the tube exits the uterine wall but with 5 to 10 mm (the equivalent of
3–8 coils) still trailing into the uterus.
IMMEDIATE COMPLICATIONS

Mortality

In early studies, 14% of microinsert attempts failed on one or both sides, with the first attempt using the braided catheter. Although the rate of failed attempts was reduced as training improved, the insertion failure rate remained considerable at 10%. A newly designed coil catheter system has replaced the original one; initial tests suggest an improved rate of successful single-attempt bilateral placements, but these encouraging findings require confirmation in the general population.

The Essure™ microinsert is indicated, as for other methods of sterilization, only for women who are certain about their desire to terminate future fertility. The microinserts are not removable, and several coils project into the uterine cavity, making it extra fertilization less feasible. Thus, this method has less potential for a desired subsequent pregnancy than laparoscopic or minilaparotomy tubal sterilization should regret occur.

Women with a known hypersensitivity to nickel should not have the Essure™ microinsert inserted because the outer coil is made of nickel-titanium alloy.

In an international study of 41,834 sterilizations performed from 1971 to 1979 in 28 countries, the estimated case-fatality rate was 13.4 per 100,000 interval tubal sterilization procedures, 3.3 per 100,000 postabortion sterilization procedures, and 43.4 per 100,000 sterilizations after vaginal delivery. At least some of the differences in case-fatality rates between interval tubal sterilization and sterilization associated with pregnancy were likely attributable to complications of pregnancy termination or delivery rather than tubal sterilization per se.

The potential health impact of tubal sterilization in countries that have a high rate of maternal mortality can be assessed by analyzing sterilization-attributable deaths in Bangladesh. In the first of two epidemiologic investigations, 24 deaths were attributed to tubal sterilization in two geographic areas; the case-fatality rate was 19 deaths per 100,000 tubal sterilizations. In the second investigation, 19 deaths were identified nationwide, for a case-fatality rate of 12.4 deaths per 100,000 procedures. Anesthesia overdose, tetanus, and hemorrhage were the leading causes of death in both investigations. On the basis of an estimated maternal mortality rate of 570 per 100,000 live births, more than 1,000 maternal deaths for each 100,000 tubal sterilizations performed would have been averted during the reproductive years of the cohort.

In the United States, deaths attributable to tubal sterilization are rare. Based on an assessment of tubal sterilizations performed in U.S. hospitals in 1979 and 1980, the estimated case-fatality rate for tubal sterilization is one to two per 100,000 procedures. Complications of general anesthesia are the leading cause of sterilization-attributable death. In a survey of deaths attributable to tubal sterilization in the United States from 1977 to 1981, 29 deaths were identified; 11 followed complications of general anesthesia, seven were caused by sepsis, four were caused by hemorrhage, three were caused by myocardial infarction, and four were related to other causes.

At least some of these deaths are preventable. Safer use of unipolar coagulation or alternative methods of tubal occlusion reduces the risk of thermal bowel injury. Three of the four deaths attributable to hemorrhage occurred after major vessel laceration during abdominal entry for laparoscopy. Safer insertion of the Veress needle and trocar or use of alternative techniques, such as open laparoscopy or minilaparotomy, should reduce the risk of such laceration.

Morbidity

Morbidity attributable to tubal sterilization is uncommon but not rare. The risks for and type of morbidity vary somewhat by surgical approach and method of tubal occlusion. Direct comparisons of minilaparotomy and laparoscopy for tubal sterilization are limited, but studies suggest several differences. In a nonrandomized study in 23 countries, 7,033 women who had silicone rubber band application by way of laparoscopy were compared with 3,033 women who had silicone rubber band application by minilaparotomy and 5,081 women who had modified Pomeroy ligation by minilaparotomy. The surgical complication rates were 2.04%, 1.45%, and 0.79% for the three groups, respectively. In a smaller but randomized study in eight centers, 791 women who had modified Pomeroy occlusion by minilaparotomy were compared with 819 women who had occlusion from electrocoagulation (technique not specified) by way of laparoscopy. Major complications occurred in 1.5% of the women in the minilaparotomy group and 0.9% of the women in the laparoscopy group. Minor complications, which are more common, occurred in 11.6% of women in the former group and 6.0% in the latter group.

In a U.S. multicenter, collaborative study, major complications were more common among women who had minilaparotomy (3.5%) than among those who had interval laparoscopic sterilization (1.6%). However, women in the study were not randomly assigned to groups, and the sterilization procedures were performed in institutions where most interval tubal sterilizations were done by way of laparoscopy. Thus, minilaparotomy sterilizations may have been performed selectively for women at increased risk for complications.

Although the overall complication rates are similar for minilaparotomy and laparoscopy, the types of complications appear to vary. Complications of minilaparotomy usually are not serious and typically include minor wound infection, longer operating time, slightly longer postoperative convalescence, and greater postoperative pain. Laparoscopic complications are more likely to include rare but life-threatening hemorrhage and vascus perforations during abdominal entry, and thermal bowel injury during electrocoagulation. A study of 100,000 laparoscopies in France suggests that major vessel laceration occurs in three of 10,000 procedures. In a study conducted in the United Kingdom, major vessel laceration occurred in nine of 10,000 laparoscopies.

Some of the most serious complications of both interval minilaparotomy and laparoscopy occur during abdominal entry. Bladder laceration during suprapubic minilaparotomy can occur, but usually it is recognized during surgery and is repaired easily. Major vessel and bowel laceration during needle or trocar insertion for laparoscopy are more difficult to recognize or repair, and delayed treatment of these injuries can be fatal. Metritis is required to reduce the risks of abdominal entry. Comparative studies of open versus conventional laparoscopy are limited and have shown no significant advantage in reducing the risk of life-threatening complications, but use of open laparoscopy should markedly reduce the risk of major vessel laceration and should reduce, to a lesser extent, the risk of bowel injury.
laceration. The use of open laparoscopy can be particularly advantageous for women known or strongly suspected to have multiple abdominal or pelvic adhesions. However, even open laparoscopy can result in bowel injury if the bowel is adherent to the anterior abdominal wall.

The method of tubal occlusion chosen influences the risk for and type of complications during laparoscopy. Thermal bowel injury, thermal bowel adhesions, and thermal bowel injury during coagulation, but it can occur during the latter if the bowel is grasped and coagulated. Transsection of the fallopian tube can occur with any technique, particularly when an attempt is made to mobilize the fallopian tube in the presence of thick peritubal adhesions. Tubal transection is most likely to occur when silicone rubber bands are used, but any resultant bleeding usually can be managed by the application of a second ring or by the use of coagulation.

DETERMINANTS OF COMPLICATIONS

Sterilization, a multicenter, prospective, cohort study, 10,685 women undergoing tubal sterilization in medical centers in nine U.S. cities from 1978 to 1987 were followed for up to 8 to 14 years (20%). The pregnancies that occurred in the tenth year (20%) through tenth years after sterilization (61%) than in the first 3 years (20%). The proportion of pregnancies that were ectopic was three times greater in the fourth through tenth years after sterilization (61%) than in the first 3 years (20%). The pregnancies that occurred in the tenth year after unilateral and bipolar coagulation, silicone rubber band application, and spring clip application were all ectopic. All but one (an ovarian pregnancy after bipolar coagulation) of the 47 ectopic pregnancies identified in the study were tubal pregnancies. The index of suspicion for ectopic pregnancy should be high when pregnancy is suspected after tubal sterilization. Pregnancy should be confirmed by use of a highly sensitive pregnancy test as soon as feasible.

A woman’s individual risk for ectopic pregnancy can be considered in both absolute and relative terms. Her absolute risk is determined by the likelihood that the sterilization procedure can fail to prevent pregnancy and the likelihood that a resulting ectopic pregnancy will be ectopic. Risk is also relative to the risk for ectopic pregnancy that a woman had before tubal sterilization. Depending on the method of contraception used before sterilization, some women may be at greater risk for ectopic pregnancy after sterilization. In a report from a case-control study in Seattle, both postpartum sterilization and interval sterilization were associated with a lower risk of ectopic pregnancy than was use of no contraception. However, women who had interval tubal sterilization had a higher risk of ectopic pregnancy than did women who were using oral contraceptives or barrier methods of contraception. For example, the risk of ectopic pregnancy was similar between women who had postpartum tubal sterilization and those who used oral contraceptives or barrier contraception.
Menstrual Changes

After nearly a half century of debate, questions regarding the existence of a posttubal ligation syndrome of menstrual abnormalities appear to be largely resolved. Questions arose initially when Williams and colleagues reported in 1951 that sterilized women had a higher-than-expected occurrence of menorrhagia and metrorrhagia. Studies in the 1970s appeared to support the existence of a poststerilization syndrome, but most of those studies had major methodologic shortcomings, including failure to account for factors other than sterilization per se that might have influenced poststerilization menstrual changes. One such factor was the use of oral contraceptives; in the United States, as many as 30% of women may use oral contraceptives immediately after tubal sterilization. A commonality of these women have menstrual changes after sterilization attributable solely to cessation of oral contraceptive use. Although one well-controlled study (Shain et al., 1989) in the 1980s identified poststerilization menstrual changes, nearly all other studies reported in the 1980s that controlled for factors such as cessation of oral contraceptive use found little or no evidence of a poststerilization syndrome at 1 to 2 years after sterilization.

Until the 1990s, questions remained about whether menstrual changes attributable to sterilization may occur several years after the procedure. Two U.S. multicenter, prospective, cohort studies argue strongly for a long-term risk. In the first, reported in 1993, 500 women were evaluated at 6 to 10 months and 3 to 4.5 years after sterilization. When women who were taking oral contraceptives were excluded, no significant differences in seven menstrual parameters were found between sterilized women and two groups of nonsterilized women.

In the second, reported in 2000, 9,514 sterilized women enrolled in the U.S. Collaborative Review of Sterilization were compared with 5,737 women whose husbands underwent vasectomy. All women were asked the same questions about six menstrual parameters before tubal sterilization or the husband's vasectomy and again at annual follow-up interviews for up to 5 years. The sterilized women were no more likely than the nonsterilized women to report changes in intermenstrual bleeding or cycle length. The sterilized women were more likely than the nonsterilized women to have decreases in the number of days of bleeding and the amount of bleeding and menstrual pain; they were also more likely to have an increase in cycle irregularity. When the risk of menstrual abnormalities was evaluated by method of tubal occlusion, there were no significant differences between the women sterilized by any of six methods and the women whose husbands underwent vasectomy in amount or duration of menstrual bleeding, intermenstrual bleeding, or menstrual pain. Women undergoing three methods of sterilization (silicone rubber band application, interval partial salpingectomy, and thermo coagulation) were more likely than nonsterilized women to have an increase in cycle irregularity, whereas women undergoing two other methods (unipolar and bipolar coagulation) were more likely to have decreases in cycle irregularity. This latter observation suggests strongly that the differences between sterilized and nonsterilized women in the likelihood of cycle irregularity and other menstrual features were attributable to chance or unmeasured differences between the study groups. Finally, sterilized women were compared with nonsterilized women for risk of endometriosis consisting of persistent increases in either amount of bleeding, days of bleeding, or intermenstrual bleeding; no significant differences were identified.

Although sterilization procedures have been hypothesized to adversely affect ovarian function, laboratory studies have identified no consistent abnormalities that reflect ovarian dysfunction. Further, the biological plausibility of such an occurrence is uncertain. The tubal branch of the uterine artery, which often is occluded during sterilization, connects with the ovarian branch of the uterine artery; thus, interrupting the tubal branch could affect the blood supply to the ovary. However, blood also is supplied to the ovary by the ovarian artery, which branches directly off the aorta and is remote from the site of tubal occlusion. The possibility has been raised that tubal occlusion could damage the ovary by acutely increasing pressure in the uterine ovarian arterial loop. However, as noted, neither laboratory nor epidemiologic studies find changes consistent with acute injury to the ovary, and there is now strong evidence against the occurrence of sterilization-attributable menstrual abnormalities within 5 years of the procedure. Some women who have two groups of nonsterilized women.
latter group is considered to have an opposing syndrome. Although menstrual abnormalities are common among sterilized women, they also are common among nonsterilized women of similar ages. The balance of the evidence to date suggests strongly that sterilized women are no more likely than comparable nonsterilized women to have menstrual abnormalities.

**Hysterectomy**

Tubal sterilization and hysterectomy are common procedures in the United States, and any relation between the two has important consequences. Tubal sterilization could increase the risk for hysterectomy by increasing either the reality or the perception that a poststerilization syndrome occurs. As noted, the evidence against such a syndrome is now strong; thus, it should not be an indication for hysterectomy. Alternatively, the fact that a woman has had tubal sterilization could affect decision making about further surgery. At least three studies suggest that this effect can occur. Cohen studied 4,374 women 25 to 44 years old who had tubal sterilization in 1974 while enrolled in a universal health insurance plan in Canada. Women 25 to 29 years old at the time of sterilization were 1.6 times more likely than nonsterilized women to have a hysterectomy at a later time. However, women 30 years or older at the time of sterilization were no more likely than nonsterilized women to have a hysterectomy subsequently. Goldhaber and colleagues, who studied 39,302 women sterilized from 1971 to 1984, found that women sterilized at 20 to 24 years old were 2.4 times more likely than nonsterilized women to have a hysterectomy subsequently. For other sterilized women, the risk for hysterectomy steadily decreased with increasing age; women sterilized at 40 to 49 years old had no increased risk. Stengachis and associates studied 7,414 women sterilized from 1968 to 1983 and found that women sterilized at 20 to 29 years old were 3.4 times more likely than nonsterilized women to subsequently have a hysterectomy. Women sterilized at 30 years old or older had no increased risk for hysterectomy.

The fact that the increased risk for hysterectomy was concentrated among women sterilized at a young age in the noted studies suggests that any increased risk for hysterectomy after tubal sterilization is not biologic in etiology but attributable to other factors, such as removal of fertility preservation as a factor in decision making. In the U.S. Collaborative Review of Sterilization, women sterilized at 34 years old and younger were four to five times more likely to undergo hysterectomy than women the same age whose husbands underwent vasectomy. However, women sterilized at 35 years old and older were also four to five times more likely to undergo hysterectomy than women whose husbands underwent vasectomy, suggesting that fertility preservation does not explain all differences in decision making between sterilized and nonsterilized women.

In the U.S. Collaborative Review of Sterilization, the cumulative probability of undergoing hysterectomy within 14 years after sterilization was 17%. Although women with gynecologic disorders at the time of sterilization were at greater risk of hysterectomy, most women who reported gynecologic disorders at sterilization did not undergo hysterectomy within the follow-up period. For example, women who reported having a history of endometriosis at sterilization were more likely to undergo hysterectomy than women without a history of endometriosis; the probability of women reporting endometriosis under- going hysterectomy within 14 years was 35%, versus 15% for women without endometriosis. Similarly, women who reported having a history of uterine leiomyomata at sterilization were more likely to undergo hysterectomy than women without a history of leiomyomata; the 14-year cumulative probability of hysterectomy among women reporting leiomyomata was 27% versus 14% for women without leiomyomata.

**Regret**

The decision to undergo sterilization is serious to both men and women because the intent is to permanently terminate fertility. Although microsurgical methods of reversal are available, these methods require special skill, the procedures are complicated and lengthy, the costs are high, and none of the methods guarantees success. Findings from studies of poststerilization regret provide useful information for presterilization counseling. Sterilization regret is a complex condition that is often causally linked to unpredictable life events. The risk factors for regret described here should not be used as reasons for restricting access to sterilization. Instead, they should be used to identify persons who may need extended counseling. Presterilization counseling has been shown to correlate with poststerilization satisfaction.

Poststerilization regret can arise from several factors, including preexisting patient characteristics, subsequent changes in the patient's social situations or attitudes, and dissatisfaction resulting from adverse side effects caused or perceived to be caused by the procedure. Estimates of the prevalence of sterilization regret vary widely by measure of indication of regret and geographic region. During the last two decades, U.S.-based studies have reported rates of poststerilization regret ranging from 0.9% to 26.0%. The wide range reflects, in part, differences in study design and questions asked of respondents. In general, the likelihood of a woman expressing regret after sterilization appears to be increased from 1% at 7 years and 13% at 14 years. The 5-year cumulative probability of regret following tubal sterilization (7%) was similar to that for women whose husbands underwent vasectomy (6%).

In the 1982 National Survey of Family Growth, about 10% of women who had been sterilized reported that they would have the sterilization reversed if it were safe to do so. In the U.S. Collaborative Review of Sterilization, 14% of sterilized women reported that they had sought information about tubal reanastomosis at least once within 14 years of sterilization; only 1% actually obtained a reversal. At least five studies have identified young age at sterilization as the strongest predictor of later regret of sterilization. In the U.S. Collaborative Review of Sterilization, young age at sterilization also was a strong predictor of regret, regardless of parity or marital status. After adjusting for other risk factors, women 30 years of age or younger at sterilization were about twice as likely as older women to express regret within 14 years of sterilization. Similarly, the cumulative probability of expressing regret within 14 years was 20% for women 30 years old or younger versus 6% for women older than 30 years at sterilization. Likewise, the 14-year cumulative probability of requesting information about reversal was 49%; among women sterilized at 18 to 24 years old and, after adjustment for other risk factors, women 18 to 24 years old were almost four times as likely as women 30 years old or older to request information about reversal. Although low parity has been identified as a risk factor for regret in some studies, it was not an independent risk factor in other studies after control for factors such as young age at the time of sterilization.
Review of Sterilization also found that women identifying tubal substantial conflict with their husbands or partners before sterilization were more than three times as likely to regret their decision and more that five times as likely to request sterilization reversal.

Timing of the procedure in relation to pregnancy has been reported as a risk factor for regret. Several studies found that women who had tubal sterilization concurrent with cesarean section or following vaginal delivery or abortion were more likely to regret sterilization, but studies have been inconsistent in this regard. In the U.S. Collaborative Review of Sterilization, the 14-year cumulative probability of regret was nearly identical for women whose sterilizations were concurrent with cesarean section (16%), after vaginal delivery (18%), and within 1 year of pregnancy (18%). The probability of regret decreased with time since the birth of the youngest child; women with 8 or more years since the birth of the youngest child had a probability of only 5%, a rate similar to that for women with no previous births (6%).

In summary, indicators of regret can vary significantly by cultural and individual circumstances. Most studies have found that age younger than 30 years is an independent risk factor for regret. The presterilization counseling for women in this age group should place special emphasis on the risk for regret. Other risk factors, such as time in relation to an obstetric event, ambivalence, or unstable life circumstances, should be assessed with each patient on an individual basis.

### Sexual Function

In the U.S. Collaborative Review of Sterilization, approximately 80% of women undergoing interval sterilization reported a moderate sexual interest or pleasure in the first 2 years after the procedure. Of women reporting a consistent change, women were 10 and 15 times more likely to report positive changes in sexual interest or pleasure than negative ones.

### Cancer

Although there is no evidence that tubal sterilization increases the risk for cancer at any site, studies are inconsistent regarding a possible reduction in risk of breast cancer after sterilization. One large prospective study by the American Cancer Society found that tubal sterilization reduced the risk of breast cancer mortality but only among women sterilized before 1973. It is unclear whether women who were sterilized had rates of screening mammography similar to those of non-sterilized women; thus, women who underwent tubal sterilization may have had greater access to screening services. A retrospective cohort study using data from the Ontario Cancer Registry found a reduced risk of breast cancer incidence among sterilized women, but that study was unable to control for potentially confounding variables. Two population-based case-control studies supported by NIH that did control for confounding found no effect of sterilization on breast cancer risk. Thus, at this point, it is unclear whether there is any biologic relationship between tubal sterilization and reduction in risk of subsequent breast cancer.

Several studies have identified a reduced risk of ovarian cancer among women whose sterizations were concurrent with cesarean section after tubal sterilization. Hankinson and colleagues reported no consistent change in either sexual interest or pleasure with each patient on an individual basis.

### VASECTOMY AS A SURGICAL ALTERNATIVE

Some couples who have chosen surgical sterilization for permanent contraception have difficulty in deciding whether vasectomy or tubal sterilization is most appropriate. Although numerous individual- or couple-related concerns can influence the decision, many couples include considerations about safety and effectiveness in their decision making. To assist such couples, we provide a brief overview of the health effects of vasectomy.

In regard to immediate surgical complications, vasectomy is a remarkably safe procedure. Serious morbidity and death are extremely rare. Fairly minor complications, such as scrotal swelling, ecchymosis, and pain, occur in up to 50% of men who have a vasectomy, but these symptoms usually resolve spontaneously within 1 to 2 weeks. Vasectomy generally has been performed through two incisions in the scrotum, one overlying each vas. Hematoma formation usually occurs in about 2% of such procedures; infections usually occur in less than 2%. In 1985, a new vasectomy technique was introduced, referred to as no-scalpel vasectomy. It reduced the already low-rate of minor complications. In most reports, the rate of hematoma formation with no-scalpel vasectomy are less than 1%. Unlike tubal sterilization, vasectomy is not immediately effective. Three months are required to flush the vas of viable sperm. This should be confirmed by a postvasectomy semen analysis at 3 months or more after the procedure.

In 1978, questions about the long-term health effects of vasectomy were raised when an increased risk for atherosclerosis was found among monkeys that had had a vasectomy. At least nine subsequent epidemiologic studies in men found no such increased risk, and later findings in monkeys did not support an increased risk. Thus, vasectomy does not affect the risk for subsequent cardiovascular disease. These studies also provided strong evidence that vasectomy does not increase overall mortality. More recently, questions were raised about the risk of prostate cancer after vasectomy. A 1998 metaanalysis of 14 observational studies concluded that the evidence for an association between vasectomy and prostate cancer was of low quality because of biases that overestimate the effect of vasectomy, and that any association is likely not a causal one. Subsequently, a large population-based study in New Zealand found no relation between vasectomy and risk of prostate cancer. Thus, the evidence to date argues strongly against any causal relationship.

Questions remain regarding a potential syndrome of postvasectomy pain. The purported syndrome has been variously defined as chronic testicular, epidydymal, or scrotal pain, and the proposed causes include epidydymal congestion, nerve entrapment, and sperm granulomas. Although a few small, uncontrolled surveys found rates of such pain as high as 2% to 15%, the largest and best study found the incidence of epidymitis-orchitis more than 12 months after vasectomy.
to be 24.7 per 10,000 person-years versus 13.6 per 10,000 person-years among men who did not undergo vasectomy. Although uncertainties remain, it is likely that a small percentage of men will indeed experience chronic pain after vasectomy. It appears, based on limited information, that many such men will respond to conservative measures and that surgical management, including vasectomy reversal, may help others.

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- Preprocedure assessment and counseling are essential elements in a successful sterilization procedure. Counseling regarding failure rates, risks, and risk factors for later regret should be performed. Preprocedure cytologic screening and day-of-surgery pregnancy testing are encouraged if indicated.

- General anesthesia is the leading cause of death of tubal sterilizations in the United States. Although tubal sterilizations can usually be performed safely under local anesthesia, general anesthesia is used more often in the United States. One of the reasons that vasectomy is safer than tubal sterilization is that general anesthesia is rarely required.

- A major portion of morbidity and mortality associated with laparoscopic methods of sterilization is related to entry into the abdominal cavity. Open laparoscopy can reduce the incidence of major vascular injury at entry. In closed laparoscopy technique, meticulous attention to details of entry can help reduce injury.

- Safety measures with insertion of the Veress needle include directing it in the midline, toward the hollow of the sacrum or uterine fundus, and away from the major vessels, while simultaneously elevating the abdominal wall away from the dorsal vascular structures. The aortic bifurcation occurs at the level of the summits of the iliac crests and should be avoided. The Veress needle should be inserted with the port open and held in a manner to avoid occluding the spring mechanism of the inner safety obturator. Infiltration followed by aspiration of 5 to 10 cc of sterile fluid through the port can help identify malposition of the tip of the needle. Negative intraperitoneal pressure induced by elevation of the abdominal wall can be used in a variety of fluid tests at the hub of the Veress needle to confirm proper needle placement (e.g., drip test). Return of blood through the Veress needle should prompt immediate laparotomy, and the Veress needle should be left in place until the site of injury is identified, as is also the case with trocar/sleeve insertion. Insufflation should proceed at a rate no greater than 1 L/min, and the starting insufflation pressure should be less than 10 mm Hg. Intravascular insufflation can manifest as an irregular heart rhythm, “cog wheel” heart murmur, and then result in vascular collapse. Immediate Trendelenberg and left lateral positioning can be lifesaving. Insufflation to greater than 15 mm Hg pressure should be attempted with only the greatest of care and with close monitoring of possible compromise of cardiac venous return and respiratory function. When inserting the umbilical or accessory trocar, “palming” the trocar with the surgeon’s middle finger along the shaft of the instrument can serve as a safety stopper to sudden uncontrolled deep advancement of the sharp trocar tip when fascial bursting pressure is finally exceeded. Accessory trocars, if used, should be advanced under direct visualization.

- With all the techniques of tubal sterilization, success is dependent on correct identification of the tube, and hasty tubal identification, without taking the time to follow the tubes out to their fimbriated ends (or not distorted by adhesions), can result in procedural failure.

- Nearly all the techniques of tubal sterilization involve the isthmic portion of the fallopian tube, which is the narrowest and most uniform caliber portion of the extramural tube. However, it is suggested that 2 cm of the isthmic portion of the tube be left at the cornu, proximal to the site of tubal interruption, to theoretically reduce the incidence of tuboperitoneal fistula. Aggressive overstringing of ligatures, just as avoided in surgical technique elsewhere in the body, should likewise be avoided at time of tubal interruption, as strangulation and necrosis of the tube can lead to fistulization and failure rather than success. Ligatures applied during partial salpingectomy methods of sterilization (e.g., Pomeroy, Parkland) at the time of cesarean delivery are at risk of dislodge- ment by shearing forces when the uterus is restrung into the abdominal cavity at the end of the procedure. Care should be exerted to protect the ligated areas as one and then the other adnexa is replaced into the abdomen.

- Laparoscopic unilateral coagulation of the fallopian tube is one of the most successful methods of sterilization, likely attributed to the approximately 3-cm zone of thermal destruction that results. However, the risk for thermal injuries is also highest with this method, unless the safe application of unipolar energy at laparoscopy and the concept of capacitive coupling is understood by the surgeon. Greater tubal destruction and sterilization success with this method go hand in hand with least likelihood that reversal could ever be achieved.

- Laparoscopic bipolar coagulation creates a smaller zone of thermal injury (approximately 0.5 cm) than unipolar and is also not likely to result in indirect thermal injury by capacitive coupling. Three contiguous burns over a 3-cm length of tube, beginning approximately 3 cm from the cornu and moving toward the fimbriated end, is recommended. Also recommended is use of the cutting waveform, delivering at least 25 W of bipolar energy (continuous waveform by default) and the use of an optical flow meter to estimate when coagulation (and flow of current) is complete.

- Silastic band application requires familiarity with the applicator and the tendency of its grasping tongs to transect the fallopian tube when trying to retract a knuckle of tube into the hollow applicator cannula. Tethered or thickened tubes are at greatest risk of transaction and should be avoided. A complete encirclement of the tube by the grasping tongs is necessary if a partial or tangential application of the ligating band is to be avoided.

- Hulka and Fishe clips are reliable methods of tubal interruption but require strict adherence to surgical technique to be successful. Application at right angles to the tube, 2 cm from the uterus, without excessive tubal elevation, and with the tips of the clips advanced onto the mesosalpinx are the key points of the application. Clips are associated with minimal tubal destruction (3 mm) and are therefore the most amenable to tubal reversal.

- Essure microinserts are placed transcervically via hysteroscopy. Care should be taken to identify both tubal ostia and to insert the device into the proximal lumen to the level marked on the catheter. Hypervolemia should be avoided, and a follow-up HSG must be performed at 3 months postinsertion. Alternate contraception should be used until occlusion is documented.


Calle EE, Rodriguez C, Walker KA, et al. Tubal sterilization and risk of breast 

Bishop E, Nelms WF. A simple method of tubal sterilization. 


Haylor B. From the National Institutes of Health: Does vasectomy cause prostate cancer? JAMA 1999;281:10.


Kjer JF, Krendel LB. Exports sterlplication subsequent to laparoscopic sterilization. 

Koeman JW, Gomes DS,Stormschen M, et al. Long-term follow-up of laparo- 


Koomey JD. Peritoneoscopy. 

Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions


Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.

Nirapathpongporn A, Huber DH, Krieger JN. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's College Hospital. Fertil Steril 1995;64:431.
DEFINITIONS

Accessory ovary—An additional ovarian mass close to the normally placed ovary and connected to it by the uteroovarian or infundibulopelvic ligament.

Fimbria ovarica—The structure attaching the infundibulum of the fallopian tube to the distal pole of the ovary. It is vitally important to the fimbrial ovum capture mechanism.

Gore-Tex surgical membrane—A permanent, nonporous material of expanded polytetrafluoroethylene. It may be used as a peritoneal substitute to prevent adhesions.

Interceed—An absorbable material consisting of oxidized regenerated cellulose. It functions as a temporary barrier to prevent adherence of serosal surfaces and has demonstrated efficacy in the peritoneal cavity.

Malpositioned ovary—An ovary located above the pelvic brim because of a lack of normal descent into the pelvis. It may be elongated, but it remains attached to the uterus by the uteroovarian ligament and to the fallopian tube by the fimbria ovarica.

Ovarian cortex—The outer layer of the ovary consisting of an outer zone, which is mainly collagenous (tunica albuginea), and an inner zone, which is less fibrous and more cellular and contains the germ cells (primordial follicles).

Ovarian medulla—The inner region surrounding the hilum of the ovary. It contains no follicles, only blood vessels and the remnants of the tubular structures that are homologous to the male testis (rete testis).

Ovarian remnant—Persistent ovarian tissue unintentionally left behind following oophorectomy.

Paradoxic oophorectomy—A concept suggesting that removing an ovary on the side of unilateral obstruction or absence of a fallopian tube may improve fertility. Removal of one ovary supposedly promotes repeated ovulations from the ovary opposite the remaining patent fallopian tube.

Residual ovary—Symptomatic ovarian tissue following removal of the ovary.

Supernumerary ovary—An additional ovary that has no direct or ligamentous connection with a normally placed ovary. It is located at some distance from the normally placed ovaries.

Tumor markers—Substances identified in higher than normal amounts in blood, urine, or body tissues of patients with specific malignancies. They are produced directly by the tumor or as a response to the presence of cancer, i.e., indirect marker.

Tunica albuginea—Condensed ovarian stroma that forms a fibrous capsule.

Management of benign disease of the ovary continues to unfold with new and challenging clinical alternatives. Progress has occurred with regard to ovarian reconstruction. The population is living longer, and cancer survivors are increasing exponentially. All of this leads us to focus on enhancing our understanding of preservation of ovarian function, determining treatment related to decreased adhesion formation, and addressing a host of other aspects related to ovarian activity.

It has been established that the ovaries and fallopian tubes are sensitive to ischemia from surgical trauma; adhesions may develop as a result; and the normal anatomic relationship between fallopian tubes, ovaries, and uterus may be altered. Knowledge regarding anatomy and embryology of the ovaries and other reproductive organs complemented by mastery of the principles and skills of microsurgery are the prerequisites for excellent results following ovarian reconstructive surgery. Embryology and anatomy are addressed in this chapter with emphasis on the importance of the anatomic relations of the ovary to other pelvic organs in the section on the evaluation and management of an adnexal mass. State-of-the-art surgical procedures—both via minimally invasive as well as laparotomic approaches and techniques devised for the reconstruction of the ovary—for restoration of normal pelvic anatomy are presented in the context of specific pathology or other abnormal conditions that require surgical intervention. This chapter also focuses on pediatric and adolescent surgical procedures that are performed when ovarian pathology is identified.

EMBRYOLOGY

The reproductive system is derived from mesoderm. The primordium of the urogenital ridge, it is divided into two segments. One is the nephrogenic ridge, i.e., metanephric derivatives, the renal system; the other is the gonadal ridge for development of the reproductive tract. Gonads are a reflection of three origins: mesothelium, mesenchyme, and primordial germ cells. The paramesonephros gives rise to the fallopian tubes and the uterus. Two gonadal ridges arise early in gestation (4 to 5 weeks) in the developing embryo as thickening on the medial aspect of the coelomic cavity adjacent to the mesonephros. These gonadal outgrowths are composed of coelomic epithelium and underlying mesenchyme projecting into the future peritoneal cavity. The epithelial and mesenchymal cells of the gonadal primordia are of mesodermal origin (large, spherical ovoid germ cells that originate extragonadally in the wall of the yolk sac and migrate to the developing gonads). Until the 6th week of gestation, the gonads of the two sexes remain morphologically indistinguishable. The presumptive ovaries remain undifferentiated until the onset of meiosis at the end of the first trimester. The ovarian cortex is a single germinal epithelium.
The mechanisms responsible for gonadal sex differentiation are largely unknown. Investigators have theorized the presence of a testicular determining factor (H-Y cell-surface antigen) on the short arm of the Y chromosome that is elaborated by a specific gene. Meiosis-inducing and -preventing substances, both of which are produced by cells derived from mesonephric structures adjacent to the gonad, are the agents of regulation of ovarian and testicular germ cell differentiation. The balance between these two substances varies between the two sexes and at different stages of development. The meiosis-inducing substance predominates in the fetal ovary. Maternal ovarian hormone production is not required for differentiation of the germ cells or, apparently, for later development of the fetal reproductive tract. Various ultrastructural studies have shown no specific changes in fetal granulosa cells that can be definitely associated with steroid hormone secretion such as is identified in the fetal Leydig cells. Thecal cells play an essential role in steroid synthesis in the adult ovary, but they do not appear until later in gestation and even then retain a relatively undifferentiated appearance. Fetal pituitary gonadotropin production begins as early as 10 weeks’ gestation and reaches peak levels at midgestation. Gonadotropins have a major influence on follicular development in the adult ovary, but evidence for a follicular determination in the fetus is lacking.

**GENE EXPRESSION**

Specific follicular cell receptors bind growth factors, which are locally synthesized with the ultimate effect of intracellular signaling and protein kinase activation. This activity affects transcription of targeted genes. Gene expression is involved in follicle development, ovulation, and corpus luteum and corpus albicans formation. Transcription factors include protooncogenes, C-myc, and CCAAT/enhancer binding protein.

**FEMALE FETAL DEVELOPMENT**

The ovarian surface cortex, during the early prefollicular stage, is characterized by germ cells and graafian follicles organized in cords and sheets, but the cortex lacks specific conformation. The final distinctive change to occur in the fetal ovary is the onset of meiosis at the 11th or 12th week of gestation. Meiosis is preceded by differentiation of primitive germ cells into actively dividing mitotic cells called oogonia. The mitotic divisions of the oogonia are associated with complete separation at telophase, leaving the daughter cells connected by intracellular bridges. After a series of mitotic divisions, there is progressive entry of cells into meiosis, beginning in the innermost cortex and gradually extending to the periphery. These cells passing through the various stages of the first meiotic prophase are then designated oocytes. By late gestation, all surviving oocytes have advanced to the diplophase stage. Further differentiation of the oocyte is arrested at this stage and does not resume until ovulation begins at menarche, about 12 years later. Follicular formation begins at 18 to 20 weeks’ gestation and continues throughout the remaining weeks of fetal development. All the surviving oocytes are surrounded by adjacent granulosa cells; oocyte and follicular growth are well established by the late fetal and early neonatal period. The constant degeneration and loss of oocytes before their incorporation into the follicles reduces their numbers to only 1 to 2 million (follicles) in the newborn ovary.

**ANATOMY**

The dimensions of the adult ovary vary from individual to individual but average 3 to 5 cm in length, 2 to 3 cm in width, and 1 to 2 cm in diameter, with a weight of 3 to 8g. The ovarian capsule is smooth in childhood, but its surface becomes pitted from follicular maturation and atresia.

The size, shape, and position of the ovary in the pelvis are somewhat variable, and both the consistency and the follicular changes taking place within the ovary vary with stage of the menstrual cycle. The ovary typically is anchored to the side wall of the pelvis in the shallow peritoneal fossa of Waldrein formed between the angle of proximity of the ovary to the ureter. This knowledge is important before dissecting the ovary off the pelvic side wall.

The ovary is connected to the uterus by the uteroovarian ligament, to the posterior aspect of the broad ligament by the mesovarium ligament, and to the lateral pelvic sidewall by the infundibulopelvic ligament (Fig. 28.1). The mesovarium ligament attaches to the mesentery of the ovary. The other two ligaments are attached at the hilum of the ovary. The ovary migrates downward from high in the abdomen during embryonic life. The infundibulum of the fallopian tube extends onto the ovary and is attached to it at its most distal pole by the fimbria ovarica. The relation of the ovary to the fimbria ovarica and to the uteroovarian ligament is crucial, and they should be carefully maintained during ovarian reconstruction.

During embryogenesis, the ovary may assume an unusual appearance (i.e., it may be septate) or assume an unusual position (Fig. 28.2). An accessory ovary (Fig. 28.2A) usually is close to or is connected to a normally placed ovary. An accessory ovary also may be attached to the adjacent, broad, uteroovarian or infundibulopelvic ligaments. Unlike the accessory ovary, a supernumerary ovary (Fig. 28.2B) must have an independent embryologic origin. It may develop from a primordium such as arrested migrating gonadocytes. A supernumerary ovary consists of typical ovarian tissue but has no direct or ligamentous connection with a normally placed ovary. A supernumerary ovary is thus a true third ovary that has independent function and is located at a point that is distant to a normally placed ovary. Ovarian malposition (Fig. 28.2C) also may occur when the ovary fails to descend into the pelvis to assume its normal position. In ovarian malposition, the ovary is attached as it should be to the uterus by the uteroovarian ligament and to the fallopian tube by the fimbria ovarica, but it may lie adjacent to the liver or spleen. The ovary is elongated and may measure up to 15 cm in length. The fallopian tube attaching to such a malpositioned ovary may be 20 to 26 cm in length, almost twice its normal length.

The normal ovary has a surface covering composed of a single layer of flattened, germinal epithelial cells. This layer is contiguous at the ovarian hilum, with the peritoneal epithelium...
FIGURE 28.1. Normal anatomy of the ovary. A: Anatomic relations of the uterus, tube, and ovary. B: The infundibulum of the oviduct extends onto the ovary and is attached at its most distal pole (ovarian fimbria). The mesovarian is the mesentery of the ovary. Each ovary is attached at the hilum.

of the posterior leaf of the broad ligament. Beneath the germi-
nal epithelium is a second layer of condensed ovarian stroma
that forms a fibrous capsule, i.e., the tunica albuginea. The
area through which the vessels and nerves enter and exit is
called the hilum of the ovary. Immediately around the hilum
and extending into the substance of the ovary is an area known
as the medulla, which is covered by the cortex. The medulla is
composed of fibrous tissue unlike the condensed stroma of the
ovarian cortex. The medulla contains no follicles; it has only
blood vessels and the remnants of the tubular structure that
would have developed into a testis (i.e., the rete ovarii) had the
fetus been male.

The ovarian artery arises on each side of the abdominal
aorta just below the renal arteries. The artery descends from the
aorta and crosses the ureter obliquely to enter the infundibu-
lopelvic ligament on its course to the ovary. When it reaches
the broad ligament, the ovarian artery branches to supply the
fallopian tube and ovary before it finally anastomoses directly
with the uterine artery to form a continuous arcade in the broad
ligament. The ovarian veins are situated mainly in the meso-
salpinx, where they give rise to the pampiniform plexus. At the
outer end of the broad ligament, this plexus coalesces to form
a single, large ovarian vein. The ovarian veins accompany the
ovarian artery to terminate in the inferior vena cava on the
right and the renal vein on the left.

The lymphatic vessels of the ovary drain in three directions.
The main group accompanies the ovarian vessels in the in-
fundibulopelvic ligament and eventually reaches the periaortic
nodes in the vicinity of the kidney. Other lymphatic channels
communicate with channels of the opposite ovary by crossing
the fundus of the uterus through the ovarian ligament. Some
channels drain through the ovarian and round ligaments into
the superficial inguinal lymph nodes in the groin. The ovary is
supplied by both motor and sensory parasympathetic and sym-
pathetic nerves, which accompany the ovarian vessels from the
abdomen as they pass into the infundibulopelvic ligament to
reach the hilum of the ovary. The segmented nerves supply the
ovary from T10 and T11.

**ADNEXAL MASS**

The uterine adnexa (gynecologic origin) consist of the ovaries,
the fallopian tubes, and the uterine ligaments. Although ad-
nexal pathology often involves one of these structures, contigu-
ous tissue of nongynecologic origin also may be involved. The
bimanual examination is the most practical method of screen-
ing for an adnexal mass. When such a mass is found, its initial
characteristics should be carefully described so that any subse-
quent change can be appreciated and the nature of the mass can
be better ascertained. The description should include location,
size (in centimeters), consistency, shape, mobility, tenderness,
bilaterality, and associated findings (e.g., fever, ascites).

Adjunctive diagnostic techniques such as sonography, mag-
netic resonance imaging (MRI), and computed tomography
(CT) may help delineate the nature of adnexal enlargement.
Pelvic ultrasonography, especially three dimensional, is an ac-
curate means of determining the location, size, extent, and con-
sistency of pelvic masses and is also useful for detecting obstruc-
tive uterine leiomyomas, and malignancy. Other more specialized
diagnostic procedures also may be necessary for the evalua-
tion of an adnexal mass (Table 28.1).

CT scanning has been particularly useful in gynecologic on-
ology because it helps define the extent of paracervical and
parametral involvement and allows a reasonable determina-
tion of the resectability of malignant neoplasms. MRI has sur-
passed CT in the precision of measurement of adnexal masses.
MRI also allows a clear definition of the relationship of adja-
cent organs.

In a study conducted by Timmerman and coworkers, assess-
ment was made of the use of both ultrasound and circulating
levels of CA-125 antigen. Multivariate logistic regression anal-
ysis algorithms were used to distinguish benign adnexal masses
from a malignant process. Transvaginal ultrasonography with
color Doppler imaging was recorded in the 191 patients eval-
uated, ages 18 to 93 years. Of interest, 26.7% of the cohort of
patients studied had malignant tumors. The authors believed
that regression analysis could be used to accurately discrimi-
nate malignant from benign adnexal masses preoperatively.

An intriguing aspect of ultrasound assessment is the predic-
tion of malignancy in adnexal masses using an artificial neural
network. Taylor and colleagues reported generating a neural
network algorithm that enabled computing of a probability of
malignancy score for preoperative discrimination between
malignant and benign adnexal masses. A retrospective anal-
ysis that included training in artificial neural network assess-
ing transvaginal B-mode ultrasonography and color Doppler
imaging was determined. The variables that were put into the
artificial neural network included age, menopausal status, max-
imum diameter of the neoplasm, tumor volume, and papillary
projections. The results identified four primary variables that
were most effective in distinguishing benign versus malignant
processes. These variables included age, time-average maxi-
mum velocity, papillary projection score, and maximum tumor
diameter. The authors concluded that artificial neural networks
are a useful clinical parameter to distinguish benign from ma-
lignant ovarian masses.

Surgical intervention ultimately may be necessary to de-
terminate the nature of the adnexal mass. Minimally invasive
surgery is useful to exclude benign ovarian or nonovarian neo-
plasms. Indications for visualization of an adnexal mass with
surgery is useful to exclude benign ovarian or nonovarian neo-
plasms. Indications for visualization of an adnexal mass with

**TABLE 28.1**

**SPECIAL DIAGNOSTIC PROCEDURES FOR THE EVALUATION OF AN ADNEXAL MASS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonoperative Noninvasive</th>
<th>Abdominal and pelvic radiography</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonoperative Invasive</td>
<td>Excretory urography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gastrointestinal series with small bowel follow-through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Computed tomography scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Magnetic resonance imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>β-hCG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonoperative Noninvasive</td>
<td>CA-125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cytocentrifuge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pelvic arteriography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operative Noninvasive</td>
<td>Abdominal and pelvic examination under anesthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operative Invasive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cystoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laparoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exploratory posterior colpotomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exploratory laparotomy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CT scanning has been particularly useful in gynecologic on-
ology because it helps define the extent of paracervical and
parametral involvement and allows a reasonable determina-
tion of the resectability of malignant neoplasms. MRI has sur-

**CT** scanning has been particularly useful in gynecologic on-
ology because it helps define the extent of paracervical and
parametral involvement and allows a reasonable determina-
tion of the resectability of malignant neoplasms. MRI has sur-

**TABLE 28.1**

**SPECIAL DIAGNOSTIC PROCEDURES FOR THE EVALUATION OF AN ADNEXAL MASS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonoperative Noninvasive</th>
<th>Abdominal and pelvic radiography</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonoperative Invasive</td>
<td>Excretory urography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gastrointestinal series with small bowel follow-through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Computed tomography scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Magnetic resonance imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>β-hCG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonoperative Noninvasive</td>
<td>CA-125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cytocentrifuge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operative Noninvasive</td>
<td>Pelvic arteriography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abdominal and pelvic examination under anesthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operative Invasive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cystoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laparoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exploratory posterior colpotomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exploratory laparotomy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CT scanning has been particularly useful in gynecologic on-
ology because it helps define the extent of paracervical and
parametral involvement and allows a reasonable determina-
tion of the resectability of malignant neoplasms. MRI has sur-

**TABLE 28.1**

**SPECIAL DIAGNOSTIC PROCEDURES FOR THE EVALUATION OF AN ADNEXAL MASS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonoperative Noninvasive</th>
<th>Abdominal and pelvic radiography</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonoperative Invasive</td>
<td>Excretory urography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gastrointestinal series with small bowel follow-through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Computed tomography scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Magnetic resonance imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>β-hCG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonoperative Noninvasive</td>
<td>CA-125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cytocentrifuge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operative Noninvasive</td>
<td>Pelvic arteriography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abdominal and pelvic examination under anesthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operative Invasive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cystoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laparoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exploratory posterior colpotomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exploratory laparotomy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CT scanning has been particularly useful in gynecologic on-
ology because it helps define the extent of paracervical and
parametral involvement and allows a reasonable determina-
tion of the resectability of malignant neoplasms. MRI has sur-

**TABLE 28.1**

**SPECIAL DIAGNOSTIC PROCEDURES FOR THE EVALUATION OF AN ADNEXAL MASS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonoperative Noninvasive</th>
<th>Abdominal and pelvic radiography</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonoperative Invasive</td>
<td>Excretory urography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gastrointestinal series with small bowel follow-through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Computed tomography scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Magnetic resonance imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>β-hCG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonoperative Noninvasive</td>
<td>CA-125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cytocentrifuge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operative Noninvasive</td>
<td>Pelvic arteriography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abdominal and pelvic examination under anesthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operative Invasive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cystoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laparoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exploratory posterior colpotomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exploratory laparotomy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Any solid mass first developing after menopause
Failure to discover the nature of the mass (e.g., leiomyoma) with radiologic or sonographic imaging techniques

One of the major goals of the evaluation of the adnexal mass is to rule out malignancy. There is an age-dependent risk for a malignant adnexal mass. The incidence of malignant neoplasm increases significantly after age 50 years. Increased size of the adnexal mass is associated with an increased risk of malignancy.

Granberg and colleagues found that less than 1% of masses smaller than 5 cm were malignant, less than 11% of masses 5 to 10 cm were malignant, and 72% of masses larger than 10 cm were malignant. Sassone and associates, in an evaluation of women of all ages (mean age, 41 years) by transvaginal sonography, found that 3% of masses smaller than 5 cm and 7% of masses 5 to 10 cm were malignant; the incidence of malignancy for masses larger than 10 cm was 13%.

Endometriosis is a common cause of an adnexal mass. An endometrial cyst of the ovary may develop into an endometrioma. Leakage of blood from the cyst may cause peritoneal irritation, pelvic adhesions, and pelvic organ fixation.

Tuboovarian inflammatory complex usually is the result of incompletely treated or unresolved subacute, chronic pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) in the walled-off area surrounding the pelvic structure. Uterine leiomyomata cause nodularity and consequent irregular conformation of the uterus. The uterus may become enlarged and may present as an abdominal mass. The inability to distinguish a leiomyoma from an ovarian tumor on pelvic examination is an indication for further diagnostic evaluation.

Adnexal enlargement may be the result of carcinoma of the rectum, appendix, or bladder. Patients present with a variety of symptoms according to the organ involved. A complete and thorough evaluation is necessary to delineate the etiology of a neoplasm.

An adnexal mass may be noted in cases of acute abdomen. The differential diagnosis should include adnexal torsion, ruptured hemorrhagic cyst, degenerating leiomyomata, ectopic pregnancy, unruptured tuboovarian abscess, acute appendicitis with or without abscess formation, and diverticular disease of the sigmoid colon. A careful history, pelvic examination, and appropriate imaging studies often allow a prompt diagnosis.

Although every adnexal mass requires individual evaluation and management, it is possible to make a number of useful general recommendations. Expectant management is justified only when an asymptomatic physiologic cyst is suspected. Most cysts greater than 6 cm in diameter require a thorough evaluation. Imaging techniques are invaluable for characterizing the nature of the adnexal enlargement, but these procedures do not replace a careful medical history and thorough physical and pelvic examination.

ADNEXAL MALIGN DURING PREGNANCY

The incidence of adnexal mass in pregnancy requiring surgical intervention has been reported to occur in 1 in 81 to 2,500 pregnancies. When an adnexal mass is noted incidentally on ultrasound during pregnancy, the majority of small, simple cysts do not pose a risk to the pregnancy. Furthermore, most large or sonographically complex masses spontaneously resolve, as reported by Bernhard and colleagues. This study evaluated 18,391 ultrasound studies done in an obstetric population for which 412 women were identified with an adnexal mass. The incidence of adnexal masses was 2.3% in the pregnant population evaluated. In addition, the rate of torsion of the adnexal mass was 1%, and the rate of malignancy was also reported as 1%.

Before operative intervention, a complete assessment of the fetus—including ultrasound to rule out a lethal anomaly and to document cardiac activity—is in order. The optimal time for elective surgery is during the second trimester. The patient should be informed of the increased risk of preterm labor and delivery. The patient should be placed in the left lateral tilt position to avoid inferior vena cava compression and associated uteroplacental insufficiency. Postoperatively, the fetus should be placed on continuous fetal heart rate monitoring.

The most effective approach in management of adnexal masses during pregnancy remains a point of controversy (i.e., laparoscopy versus laparotomy). In a series of 88 pregnant women who underwent 93 surgical procedures for suspected adnexal pathology, laparoscopy was performed during the first trimester in 39 patients. The remaining 54 patients underwent laparotomy, 25 during the first trimester and 29 during the second trimester. Neither intraoperative nor postoperative intrauterine complications were reported in the series. Five of 39 women undergoing the first-trimester surgery had a spontaneous abortion. Neither intraoperative nor postoperative intrauterine complications were reported in the series. Five of 39 women undergoing the first-trimester surgery had a spontaneous abortion. Neither intraoperative nor postoperative intrauterine complications were reported in the series.

ULTRASOUND

Ultrasound is useful in predicting malignancy (Table 28.2): Characteristic features of benign versus malignant neoplasms have been reported. Collated data from studies of ultrasound accuracy in the prediction of malignancy have an average positive predictive value of 74% and an average sensitivity of 88% (Table 28.3).

Weiner and coworkers have used transvaginal color flow imaging before exploratory surgery to study the impedance to blood flow in women with an adnexal mass. Intramural blood vessels consistently demonstrated low impedance to flow with

TABLE 28.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Benign Pattern</strong></td>
<td>Simple cyst without internal echoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Simple cyst with scattered echoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polycystic echos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polycystic echos with thin septum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sessile or polypoid smooth mural echos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Central dense round echos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thin or thick multiple linear echos with dense part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Malignant Pattern</strong></td>
<td>Cystic echos with papillary or indented mural part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Polycystic echos with irregular thick septum and solid part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Solid pattern (&lt;50%) heterogeneous component with irregular cystic part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Completely solid with homogenous component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Low impedance to flow (color Doppler)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
disease. Many (tumor markers) are not specific for a particular patient with malignancy, especially in the early stages of the benign conditions. Tumor markers are not elevated in every case, are not unique to malignant processes and can be elevated with the tumor per se or as a response to the presence of cancer. They are produced by normal amounts in blood, urine, or body tissues of patients with specific malignancies. The tumor marker is produced by the tumor itself and can be elevated with specific malignancies. The tumor marker is produced by the tumor per se or as a response to the presence of cancer. They are produced by normal amounts in blood, urine, or body tissues of patients with specific malignancies. The tumor marker is produced by the tumor itself and can be elevated with specific malignancies.

The pelvic (adnexal) mass may be of gynecologic or nongynecologic origin (Table 28.5). Specific clinical findings are helpful in differentiating a malignant from a benign neoplasm. The clinical findings listed in Tables 28.3 through 28.6 are often helpful in differentiating a malignant from a benign neoplasm. All ovarian neoplasms larger than 6 cm in diameter with a solid component should undergo investigation. The postmenopausal ovary is usually small and nonpalpable. Enlargement of the postmenopausal ovary requires immediate investigation. Symptoms of ovarian neoplasms usually depend on their size, rate of growth, and position in the pelvis or abdomen. Symptoms may include vague lower abdominal fullness or pressure discomfort. Larger masses rise out of the true pelvis and may cause abdominal enlargement with varicosities and edema of the lower extremities. Most ovarian neoplasms are asymptomatic until they enlarge or involve adjacent organs and structures.

**TABLE 28.3**

**ULTRASOUND ACCURACY IN PREDICTION OF MALIGNANCY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Patients (n)</th>
<th>Malignancy prevalence</th>
<th>Positive predictive value (%)</th>
<th>Negative predictive value (%)</th>
<th>Sensitivity (%)</th>
<th>Specificity (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kobayashi 1976</td>
<td>406</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meire et al. 1978</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hussell 1980</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hermann et al. 1987</td>
<td>241</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finkler et al. 1988</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benacerraf et al. 1990</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granberg et al. 1989</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>21.5</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nassone et al. 1991</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A pulsatility index less than 1:16 in women with malignant tumors. The sensitivity and specificity of the preoperative pulsatility index in detecting malignant ovarian tumors were 94% and 97%, respectively. Kurjak and colleagues found that vessels with a low-resistance index near the center of the mass or within papules or septa were highly correlated with malignancy. Therefore, transvaginal color flow imaging may be a useful clinical tool in the preoperative evaluation of ovarian masses.

Doppler resistance index has been used as a “vascular” scoring system. Color Doppler ultrasonography appears to be a reliable method in presurgically evaluating ovarian neoplasms. Transvaginal color Doppler sonography has identified the following parameters as useful in determining malignant versus benign ovarian masses: number of vessels detected in each tumor, tumor vessel location (central versus peripheral), peak systolic velocity, lowest resistance index, mean resistance index, and pulsatility index. Color Doppler signals were detected in 100% of malignant masses and 73% of benign masses, with the difference being statistically significant as reported by Alcazar and associates. Tumor vessel location appears to be central in virtually all malignant masses. Overall, the investigator operating characteristic curves generated can be used to predict malignant processes. The lowest resistance index was associated with the majority of malignant tumors.

Three-dimensional ultrasonographic technology has been used to evaluate adnexal masses. Images are dissected in XYZ planes and can be focused especially on areas suggestive of malignancy. Three-dimensional ultrasound facilitates real-time analysis of acquired image data and allows reassessment of the findings at the time of the original ultrasound. Three-dimensional transvaginal ultrasonographic technology appears to enhance and facilitate morphologic assessment of benign as well as malignant ovarian masses.

**TUMOR MARKERS**

Tumor markers are substances that are identified in higher than normal amounts in blood, urine, or body tissues of patients with specific malignancies. The tumor marker is produced by the tumor per se or as a response to the presence of cancer. They are not unique to malignant processes and can be elevated with benign conditions. Tumor markers are not elevated in every patient with malignancy, especially in the early stages of the disease. Many (tumor markers) are not specific for a particular type of cancer; therefore, there are limitations to the use of tumor markers.

CA-125 is a tumor-associated antigen to an antibody expressed by about 80% of patients with epithelial ovarian cancer. It can be increased by nongynecologic malignancies with involvement of the pleura or peritoneum and by benign conditions that result in ascites. Because of the many medical diagnoses that give false-positive CA-125 results, CA-125 cannot be used for general population screening for ovarian cancer in either premenopausal or postmenopausal women. However, in menopausal women who present with a pelvic mass, CA-125 can help differentiate benign from malignant masses.

Because menopausal women have fewer gynecologic diseases that give false elevation of CA-125, the test is more sensitive and specific in this age group. Several authors have demonstrated that a panel of assays can improve both sensitivity and specificity in the detection of ovarian malignancies. For example, Soper and associates demonstrated 100% specificity and predictive value for CA-125 with TAG 72 or CA-15-3. Table 28.4 provides specific markers and their clinical application.

The clinical findings listed in Tables 28.3 through 28.6 are often helpful in differentiating a malignant from a benign neoplasm. All ovarian neoplasms larger than 6 cm in diameter with a solid component should undergo investigation. The postmenopausal ovary is usually small and nonpalpable. Enlargement of the postmenopausal ovary requires immediate investigation. Symptoms of ovarian neoplasms usually depend on their size, rate of growth, and position in the pelvis or abdomen. Symptoms may include vague lower abdominal fullness or pressure discomfort. Larger masses rise out of the true pelvis and may cause abdominal enlargement with varicosities and edema of the lower extremities. Most ovarian neoplasms are asymptomatic until they enlarge or involve adjacent organs and structures.

**LAPAROSCOPIC MANAGEMENT OF AN OVARIAN MASS**

The pelvic (adnexal) mass may be of gynecologic or nongynecologic origin (Table 28.5). Specific clinical findings are helpful in differentiating a malignant from a benign neoplasm (Table 28.6). It is important to establish whether the mass is of ovarian origin and to understand that a mass causing an ovary to enlarge to >6 cm in diameter should be considered potentially malignant until proven otherwise. The most common ovarian mass is the physiologic ovarian cyst, which is caused by failure
TABLE 28.4

TUMOR MARKERS—ADNEXAL MASSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marker</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CA-125</td>
<td>80% nonmucinous ovarian carcinomas have elevation of CA-125. Decreasing levels generally indicate response to therapy. Used to identify recurrences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEA</td>
<td>Primary use is to monitor recurrence of colon cancer. Oncocytic antigen-45 complex glycoprotein, 20,000 d associated with plasma membrane of tumor cells. Increased with ovarian cancer and with melanoma, breast, pancreatic, stomach, cervical, bladder, kidney, thyroid, and liver cancers. Inflammatory bowel disease and smoking elevates CEA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cMyc</td>
<td>Amplified in 30%–50% of ovarian tumors. The protein is simultaneously overexpressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cMycRA</td>
<td>Associated with aneuploidy in ovarian malignant cell progression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRCA-1</td>
<td>Associated with mutations of breast tumor–related antigen. BRCA-1 tumor suppressor gene has been identified; 63% risk of developing ovarian cancer with positive BRCA-1 gene.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 28.5

CLASSIFICATION OF THE ADNEXAL MASS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gynecologic origin</th>
<th>Nongynecologic origin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nonneoplastic</td>
<td>Nonneoplastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovarian</td>
<td>Appendiceal abscess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physiologic cysts</td>
<td>Diverticulosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follicular</td>
<td>Adhesions of bowel and omentum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpus luteum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theca-lutein cyst</td>
<td>Peritoneal cyst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luteoma of pregnancy</td>
<td>Feces in rectosigmoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polycystic ovaries</td>
<td>Urine in bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflammatory cysts</td>
<td>Pelvic kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urachal cyst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonovarian</td>
<td>Anterior sacral meningocoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ectopic pregnancy</td>
<td>Neoplastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital anomalies</td>
<td>Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embryonic remnants</td>
<td>Sigmoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubal</td>
<td>Cecum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pevsalspinx</td>
<td>Appendix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrosalspinx</td>
<td>Retropertitoneal neoplasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder</td>
<td>Prenatal teratoma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapted from Hall DJ, Hurt WG. The adnexal mass. J Fam Pract 1982;14(133), with permission.

of a follicle to rupture or to regress. Physiologic ovarian cysts normally are <6 cm in diameter, smooth, mobile, and slightly tender to palpation. They usually contain straw-colored fluid and may be associated with menstrual irregularity. Physiologic ovarian cysts smaller than 6 cm usually regress by absorption of the fluid or spontaneous rupture. The premenopausal patient may be managed conservatively over two menstrual cycles. If regression fails to occur over two periods of observation or if enlargement is noted, reassessment is indicated.

Oral contraceptives have been suggested as an alternative treatment for functional cysts. The combination-type oral contraceptives send negative feedback to the pituitary gland to decrease gonadotropin stimulation of the ovary, which causes regression of the cyst. Steinkampf and colleagues noted that the rate of disappearance of functional ovarian cysts was not affected by estrogen-progestin treatment; nevertheless, a patient taking oral contraceptives with an adnexal mass should be thoroughly investigated.

Failure of the corpus luteum to regress (in the nonpregnant patient) may cause development of a corpus luteum cyst. The size of the corpus luteum cyst varies according to the amount of blood contained within the cyst. A large corpus luteum may rupture and cause intraperitoneal hemorrhage. Amenorrhea or irregular uterine bleeding may accompany the development of a corpus luteum cyst. A sensitive pregnancy test, ultrasonography, and laparoscopy can be used to differentiate an ectopic pregnancy from a persistent corpus luteum.

A theca-lutein cyst, which may be associated with gestational trophoblastic disease or pregnancy, is the result of luteinization of the ovary by human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG). Many of these cysts are bilateral and multicystic. A reduction in hCG levels usually leads to their spontaneous regression.

TABLE 28.6

CLINICAL FINDINGS SUGGESTING BENIGN OR MALIGNANT ADNEXAL MASS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Benign</th>
<th>Malignant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unilateral</td>
<td>Bilateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic</td>
<td>Solid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile</td>
<td>Fixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smooth</td>
<td>Irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No ascites</td>
<td>Ascites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow growth</td>
<td>Rapid growth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young patient</td>
<td>Older patient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Polycystic ovarian disease (PCOD) is associated with bilaterally enlarged ovaries with a smooth surface. The ovaries contain multiple follicular cysts; many patients are obese and hypertensive and have accompanying anovulation (see Ovarian Surgery for Polycystic Ovarian Disease).

Congenital anomalies of the Müllerian system and vestigial remnants of the wolffian system are of gynecologic, if not strictly ovarian, origin. Müllerian anomalies should be considered in the differential diagnosis of an adnexal mass. Uterine anomalies often are associated with cyclic pain from degeneration of ovarian remnant to surrounding structures.

Ovarian remnant syndrome follows attempted oophorectomy. Minke and associates demonstrated that devascularization of ovarian tissue can occur with reimplanting on intact or abraded peritoneal surfaces, where it may resume endocrine function. Thus, the authors suggest that great care should be exercised to remove all ovarian tissue, particularly when oophorectomy is performed through the laparoscope.

Ultrasonography remains a valuable tool in establishing the diagnosis of ovarian remnant syndrome. The use of both transabdominal sonography and transvaginal sonography with use of color Doppler identification of the mass acquires information with respect to both arterial and venous flow. This facilitates identification of ovarian tissue. With respect to diagnosis, use of gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) agonist stimulation test allows identification of the presence of functioning ovarian tissue in association with ovarian remnant syndrome. Associated chronic pelvic pain frequently responds to suppressive therapy. Initially, the gonadotropin flare results in increased production of estradiol and allows confirmation of the diagnosis. As treatment is continued, the GnRH agonist often proves efficacious in relief of pelvic pain.

Symmonds and Petit identified three major factors that may complicate the initial surgery and make it difficult or impossible for the surgeon to ascertain whether all ovarian tissue has been removed: increased pelvic vascularity, which renders hemostasis difficult; adhesions, which distort the anatomy and make dissection difficult; and neoplasms, which also distort the anatomy. The most common preexisting disease is endometriosis, followed in frequency by pelvic inflammatory disease. Patients with ovarian remnant syndrome often present with both pelvic pain and a mass. The quality of the pain varies, often cyclically, and ranges from a sensation of pressure or dull aching to a severe stabbing pain.

The clinical diagnosis of ovarian remnant syndrome can be difficult. A finding of premenopausal levels of follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) may facilitate the diagnosis. Sonography (especially vaginal) may be of some value, and a CT scan or MRI may be useful for defining the physical relation of the ovarian remnant to surrounding structures.

The treatment of choice is adequate excision of the ovarian remnant with removal of contiguous adherent tissue such as pelvic peritoneum, bowel serosa, the underlying involved ligament, and alveolar and vascular tissues (Fig. 28.3). Excision of ovarian tissue may require a retroperitoneal dissection to define the relation of the ureter to the bowel and ovary. Special care should be taken to carefully define all anatomic relations before extirpation of the remnant.

Magtibay and colleagues addressed the surgical management of patients with ovarian remnant syndrome at the Mayo Clinic. All operations for residual ovarian syndrome were performed by laparotomy. Of 138 patients who underwent a wide dissection and removal of the remnant, a moderate risk of bowel, bladder, or ureteral injury was noted; however, 90% of patients had complete resolution or marked improvement of symptoms after surgery.

The laparoscopic excision of ovarian remnant ovaries is feasible. A laparoscopic retroperitoneal approach that allows dissection of the course of the ureters with coagulation and dissection of the infundibulopelvic ligament and the uterine vessels can be accomplished. Surgeons with appropriate laparoscopic skills can consider this surgical approach. There is potential for ureteral injury as well as cystotomy and bowel injury.

RESIDUAL OVARY

Based on the clinical circumstance, the gynecologic surgeon should consider the value of ovarian conservation at the time of hysterectomy for benign disease. Some authors have noted the incidence of malignant neoplasm in retained ovaries as a reason for prophylactic oophorectomy, and others have noted the presence of “residual ovary syndrome,” characterized by either recurrent pelvic pain or a persistent pelvic mass (Fig. 28.4). However, Funt followed up 992 patients after conservation of one or both ovaries at the time of hysterectomy and reported that none developed ovarian malignancy, and only 1.4% required subsequent surgical intervention for adnexal pathology. The benefits of preserved ovarian function thus appear to substantially outweigh the risk of subsequent ovarian pathology requiring further surgery. Before surgery, the gynecologic surgeon should discuss the various risks and benefits of castration and should encourage the patient to participate in any decision concerning the fate of her ovaries.

GnRH agonists have been used to assess response of residual ovaries with chronic pelvic pain followed by surgical intervention to remove the residual ovarian tissue. Resolution of pelvic pain in six treated patients occurred with the analog (GnRH agonist) and persisted with surgical extirpation of the ovarian tissue. Suppression of ovarian function by GnRH agonists allows differentiation of pelvic pain caused by residual ovarian tissue from other sources and thus should be a prerequisite to surgical intervention.

In a retrospective report of 20 years’ experience with residual ovary syndrome in which 2,561 hysterectomies were performed, the incidence of residual ovary syndrome was 2.85%. Thus, 1 in 35 women who undergo hysterectomy with ovarian preservation become symptomatic—that is, they experience pelvic pain often with the presence of a benign cyst. Patients should be counseled preoperatively with respect to the potential for residual ovary syndrome when the initial surgical intervention is anticipated. In addition to chronic pelvic pain, a pelvic mass and dyspareunia include the “cluster of symptoms” that can occur in patients who have undergone previous hysterectomy.
A Not infrequently, the ovarian remnant may adhere to the bowel and the pelvic sidewall peritoneum. B The ureter must be visualized and its relation to the bowel and ovarian remnant established. This may require development of the pararectal and rectovaginal spaces.

FIGURE 28.3. A: Not infrequently, the ovarian remnant may adhere to the bowel and the pelvic sidewall peritoneum. B: The ureter must be visualized and its relation to the bowel and ovarian remnant established. This may require development of the pararectal and rectovaginal spaces.

ADNEXAL TORSION

Torsion of the adnexa is an infrequent cause of pain in the lower abdomen. However, torsion is a common gynecologic surgical emergency, with a prevalence of 2.7%. Treatment of adnexal torsion is considered an emergency because peritonitis and death can result. Any portion of the adnexa (tube or ovary) may undergo torsion. It may occur in neoplastic ovaries or as a consequence of hyperstimulation.

The clinical findings of torsion are nonspecific. For this reason, delay in diagnosis and surgical intervention is common. The classic presentation is the acute onset of abdominal pain with clinical evidence of peritonitis and an adnexal mass. However, according to Bayer and Wiskind, the presenting findings in most patients are nonspecific and unimpressive. Torsion is more likely to occur during ovulation or as a premenstrual event associated with increased pelvic congestion; the authors found no correlation between the phase of the cycle and the onset of the symptoms.

Historically, the adnexa usually were removed because some authors suggested that untwisting the adnexa could increase
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

The risk of thromboembolism. This has not been well substantiated. There is growing evidence that unwinding the involved adnexa to observe for tissue reperfusion and viability is safe. Nevertheless, a significant delay in surgical intervention may result in irreversible necrosis, requiring removal of the tube, ovary, or both.

The minimally invasive surgical management of adnexal torsion has been increasing in efficacy. Mage and colleagues found that unwinding the adnexa was possible in most patients in their series, and no further intervention was required. Likewise, Shalev and Pelleg demonstrated that laparoscopic detorsion of the adnexa is safe and reliable as a primary treatment of this condition. Thus, the weight of evidence warrants conservation of the adnexa, if there is evidence of reperfusion and if significant delay has not resulted in irreversible tissue necrosis. In most instances, detorsion may be accomplished through the laparoscope.

SURGERY OF THE OVARIAN SURFACE

Surgery to remove adhesions or endometriosis from the ovarian surface is not unusual and primarily accomplished via laparoscopy. De novo adhesions or adhesions between the medial surface of the ovary and the broad ligament may be filmy and vascular (Fig. 28.5A), and may be excised by fine electrocautery or vaporized with the use of a laser (Fig. 28.5B). More extensive adhesions that completely cover the ovarian surface may be thick and avascular (Fig. 28.5C and D). The plane of dissection between the broad ligament or pelvic sidewall and the adherent ovarian surface must be developed with care so as not to remove or damage the peritoneum while excising the adhesion (Fig. 28.3D). Multiple, small adhesions distributed over the ovarian surface, once coagulated, can be gently removed from the ovary without trauma to the ovarian cortex.

If the lateral aspect of the ovary is densely adherent to the broad ligament, it may be necessary to dissect the ovary free. Some cases require that a large area of the sidewall or the broad ligament be denuded; reperitonealization can be accomplished with 7-0 fine, nonreactive suture material.

Small endometrial implants can be fulgurated or vaporized. The resulting small ovarian defect usually does not require closure. Care should be taken to ensure that the endometriosis is superficial and that the implant is not actually the tip of a large endometrioma within the substance of the ovary.

RECONSTRUCTION OF THE OVARY

Before ovarian reconstruction is begun, it is important that proper mobilization of the ovary be accomplished for reestablishment of normal anatomic relations. Once complete

FIGURE 28.5. Ovarian adhesions. A: Filmy adhesions between the medial aspect of the ovary and the pelvic sidewall. B: These may be removed with laser or fine electrocautery with use of a quartz or glass rod, respectively, as a backstop. C: The ovary may be enveloped by adhesions. D: Care should be taken to tent up the adhesions so that the peritoneum is not damaged or incised.
The approach to resection of an ovarian cyst should be planned so as to minimize adhesion formation. The incidence of de novo adhesion formation appears to be decreased when the initial approach is through laparoscopy. The Operative Laparoscopy Study Group assessed the issue of frequency and severity of adhesion reformation and of de novo adhesions after operative laparoscopy. In a multicenter collaborative approach that included early second-look intervention, 68 patients underwent operative laparoscopic procedures, including adhesiolyis as well as ovarian cysectomy. The scoring of adhesions noted during the second-look laparoscopy occurred at nine sites (each ovary, each fallopian tube, omentum, cul-de-sac, pelvic sidewall, and large and small bowel). The study concluded that adhesion reformation is a frequent occurrence and that de novo adhesion formation occurred less frequently after initial operative laparoscopy.

A number of agents have been advocated for preventing adhesions, including oxidized regenerated cellulose [Interceed (TC7), Johnson & Johnson Medical, Arlington, TX], which is an absorbable barrier that promotes reepithelialization of the affected area. Pagidas and Tulandi compared Interceed with Ringer lactate solution for adhesion prevention. Ringer lactate solution was as effective as Interceed in decreasing adhesion formation. Haney and colleagues compared oxidized regenerated cellulose with expanded polytetrafluoroethylene (Goretex surgical membrane). The results indicated that expanded polytetrafluoroethylene was associated with fewer post-surgical adhesions. Other agents include sodium hyaluronate carboxymethyl cellulose (Seprafilm).

Functional Ovarian Cysts

Physiologic cyst enlargement of the ovary may occur as a sequela of failure of either follicular rupture or corpus luteum regression. The latter is termed Halban syndrome. The former has been associated with luteinized unruptured follicle syndrome, in which “intraovarian ovulation” is thought to occur; this is a diagnosis usually established with ultrasound. In general, functional ovarian cysts regress spontaneously; however, they may persist and become symptomatic, reaching dimensions of several centimeters. The most important aspect of ovarian cysts is observation, because most such cysts are self-limited. The cyst, however, may prove to be a source of continued pelvic pain or may adhere to the posterior broad ligament, producing persistent symptoms. The potential for adnexal torsion always exists with an ovarian cyst.

RESECTION OF BENIGN CYSTS

Surgical intervention often is initiated with a laparoscopic approach, which permits evaluation of any neoplastic ovarian cyst. The cyst lining is stripped from the remaining “normal ovary,” and ovarian reconstruction takes place. In several series of laparoscopic management of ovarian cysts, a simple follicular or luteal cyst was identified in most patients evaluated for pelvic pain. In a series by Kleppinger, 31 of 64 ovarian cysts were noted to fall into this category.

Surgical Techniques

Laparotomy

An elliptic incision is made through the thin ovarian cortex of a benign cyst (Fig. 28.6). The end of the knife handle is then inserted and a plane developed over the cyst wall. Alternatively, fine-needle electrocautery can be used to develop a plane, and microsurgical scissors can be used to separate the cyst wall from the ovarian cortex. Low-power magnification (i.e., surgical loupes) often assists the surgeon in identifying the correct plane between the cyst wall and the ovarian parenchyma. After the cyst wall has been completely separated from its adherent attachments to the thin ovarian cortex, it can be shelled out without rupture. However, even with the gentlest technique, rupture can occur because of the friability of the cyst wall. Before the cyst is shelled out, it is important to pack the cul-de-sac with moist, lint-free pads so that, if rupture does occur, spillage does not contaminate the pelvic cavity. After the cyst has been removed, the dead space can be obliterated with a pursestring suture of fine gauge 7-0 nonreactive material. Alternatively, 5-0 nonreactive vertical mattress sutures or figure-of-eight, or both, can be placed to approximate the lateral walls of the ovary. The ovarian surface is then neatly reapproximated with subcortical running suture of 7-0 fine-gauge nonreactive material. If the cyst is quite friable, it may be necessary to place interrupted 7-0 sutures to achieve adequate approximation. Some authors advocate leaving the ovary open after cysectomy. To date, there have been no controlled trials evaluating postoperative adhesion formation when the incised ovarian surface is or is not reapproximated.

In some instances, there is excessive redundant thin cortex, which may present a special problem in ovarian reconstruction. The amount of cortex removed depends on the position of the cyst as well as its overall size. Careful assessment of the ovary is necessary before the initial incision is made. The incision in the ovarian cortex facilitates symmetric reconstruction. The redundant cortex can be removed and the dead space obliterated with an internal closure, with care taken that suture material does not penetrate the ovarian cortex. This prevents ischemia and adhesion formation. The infolding technique recommended by Kistner and Patton may result in anatomic distortion and puckering of the ovarian cortex. The “baseball” closure allows careful approximation of cortical edges when redundancy is noted (Fig. 28.7).

Concern over ovarian surgery via laparotomy has been reported. In an older reference of 36 young women operated on for an ovarian cyst, 45% were noted subsequently to be infertile. The author, Van der Watt, conveyed the importance of not interfering with functional cysts in “normal ovaries.”
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

Dissection of cyst from ovary

FIGURE 28.6. Resection of benign cyst. A: Thin-walled ovarian cyst. B: An incision is made through the cortex. C: A plane is developed by the use of blunt dissection. The inner ovarian stroma may be approximated with a pursestring suture of 5–0 nonreactive material. D: The ovarian cortex is approximated with 7–0 nonreactive suture material.

because resulting adhesion formation could compromise fertility. It was advocated that benign ovarian cysts should not be removed at the time of surgery for other indications unless they are sufficiently large to interfere with tubal function or cause discomfort to the patient.

Minimally Invasive Surgery

Specific skill levels reflecting both the degree of operator expertise and appropriate instrumentation provide clinicians with four levels of training. Level I stands for equipment needs and potential surgical procedures for basic operative laparoscopy, including such entities as diagnostic laparoscopy, tubal sterilization, lysis of filmy adhesions, and biopsy. Level II reflects the clinician's ability to perform linear salpingostomy for ectopic pregnancy, salpingectomy, lysis of vascular adhesions, and elimination of endometriotic implants. Level III includes the ability to perform salpingo-oophorectomy, lysis of extensive adhesions (including bowel adhesions), ovarian cystectomy, appendectomy, myomectomy, laparoscopic-assisted hysterectomy, and neosalpingostomy, as well as the ability to treat tuboovarian abscess and uterine suspension. Level IV includes bowel resection, anastomosis, pelvic lymphadenectomy, presacral neurectomy, tubal reanastomosis, and excision of deep, infiltrating vaginal, paravaginal, and rectal endometrioses.

A number of principles should be followed as surgeons proceed with the correction of pelvic abnormalities that are
Surgery for Benign Disease of the Ovary

amenable to a laparoscopic approach. The first is to restore normal anatomy. Once the ovary is stabilized, ideally with an atraumatic forceps, an appropriately planned ovarian incision can be made to correct the pathology encountered. Every effort should be made not to spill the contents.

Large amounts of irrigation solution should be used. In some instances, the cyst wall can be stripped (Fig. 28.8), electrocoagulated, or vaporized. The ovarian incision can then be either left open to heal by primary intention or reapproximated with sutures with either extracorporeal or intracorporeal suturing techniques. When this procedure is completed, the pelvis is irrigated with large amounts of irrigation solution (Ringer lactate), and the patient is taken out of the Trendelenburg position to facilitate removal of any blood products that remain in the peritoneal cavity.

One alternative to suturing is to reapproximate incised segments of ovarian cortex with the use of bipolar coagulation to provide coaptation of the incised segment of the ovary. There is continued debate regarding the use of adhesion prevention materials.

A number of potential pitfalls continue to be of concern in the laparoscopic approach to ovarian lesions. These have been addressed by Seltzer and colleagues and include the following:

- The potential for disruption of an ovarian malignancy
- Whether observation-recommended surgical intervention would be the most feasible alternative
- Potential for increased duration of the surgical procedure if done endoscopically
- Total cost
- Potential for incomplete resection of an ovarian lesion laparoscopically

One can view laparoscopic approach to the adnexal mass based on age. Specifically, in the pediatric patient, problems such as torsion, hemorrhagic cysts, benign neoplasm (e.g., teratomas), as well as oophorectomy have been reportedly addressed via the laparoscope. One advantage over laparotomy is the ability to better visualize the entire lower abdomen and pelvis, including the opposite ovary. In the adult, depending on the clinical circumstance, cyst aspiration, cystectomy, or oophorectomy can be accomplished laparoscopically.

Predictors of clinical outcomes in the laparoscopic management of adnexal mass has been addressed by Havrilesky and coauthors. The authors noted that adnexal mass thought to be benign preoperatively were successfully managed laparoscopically in three fourths of the patients. Adverse events were attributable to concurrent hysterectomy rather than removal of the adnexal mass. Malignancy occurred in 2.6%, and laparoscopic management was not associated with adverse outcomes.

Concern is expressed for an ovarian neoplasm subsequently noted to be malignant. In a countrywide survey in Austria, Wenzl and colleagues reported on 54,198 laparoscopies; 16,601 were performed for adnexal masses, and 108 cases of ovarian tumors were subsequently found to be malignant. Of the 108 cases, 20 were managed laparoscopically, 22 by immediate laparotomy, and the rest by delayed laparotomy (3 to 1,415 days). The authors concluded that laparoscopic surgery with the finding of an ovarian malignancy is rare: 0.65% of all endoscopic surgical procedures. If a malignancy is identified, laparotomy is recommended for optimal staging and treatment.

The extent of damage to ovarian reserve associated with laparoscopic excision of endometriomas was studied by Ragni and coauthors. A reduced number of dominate follicles, oocytes, embryos, and high-quality embryos was observed in the operated gonad. Fertilization rate and rate of good-quality

FIGURE 28.8. Removal of a small ovarian endometrial cyst through the laparoscope. A: After incision of the ovarian cortex, the contents of the endometrioma are removed with suction and irrigation. B: The plane between the ovary and the cyst wall is developed by using traction and twisting the forceps clockwise. C: The endometrial cyst wall is grasped with forceps. D: The cyst wall separates from the ovarian tissue by use of a twisting motion. The ovarian defect may be left open to heal by secondary intention or may be closed with vertical mattress sutures. E: The cyst wall is removed.
Oligoamenorrhea
Clinical and or biochemical evidence for hyperandrogenemia, allowing normalization of the luteinizing level of 17 alpha-hydroxyprogesterone, dehydroepiandrosterone, androstenedione, and testosterone, as well as a transitory decrease in estradiol. This reduction in the steroidogenesis of androgens, allowing normalization of the luteinizing hormone (LH): follicle stimulating hormone (LH-FSH) ratio, results in the resumption of ovulatory cycles. Ovarian renin-angiotensin activity is enhanced with PCO. This system—renin-angiotensin—remains unaltered following ovarian electrocautery (i.e., ovarian drilling), even though serum levels of LH, testosterone, and androstenedione decline.

Sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG) concentrations following electrocautery with PCO have been evaluated. Whereas there were significant decreases in serum androgens and gonadotropins, the concentration of SHBG increased in the serum. Gjonnaess has reported that there is no change with respect to dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEAS) with ovarian drilling. This is indicative of neural alteration in the pituitary-adrenal axis in comparison to the pituitary-ovarian axis.

A more recent consensus (2007) regarding PCOS focused on treatment. The results noted better pregnancy rates with use of clomiphene citrate or clomiphene citrate plus the insulin sensitizer metformin in comparison to metformin alone. They also felt that there is a role for ovarian drilling.

There is some debate as to the amount of ovarian mass that should be removed at the time of wedge resection. Halbe and coworkers attempted to clarify this question by removing different amounts of ovarian cortex and medulla from a random selection of patients with polycystic ovarian disease. Thirty-eight of 62 patients were interested in conception. The 38 patients were divided into three groups, the first of which underwent removal of not more than one fifth of the original ovarian size. The second group had one third of the ovarian mass removed, and the third group had one half to three fourths of the original ovarian size reduced. The resumption of ovulatory cycles was recorded at 53%, 71%, and 91%, respectively.

The authors concluded that the best ovulatory rate and the best pregnancy rate resulted after removal of at least half of the ovarian medulla.

OVARIAN SURGERY FOR POLYCYSTIC OVARIAN DISEASE

Signs and symptoms of polycystic ovarian (PCO) syndrome begin at puberty. PCO is a sign, not a diagnosis. In a consensus meeting held in Rotterdam, the American Society for Reproductive Medicine and the European Society for Human Reproduction and Embryology agreed that two of the following criteria must be met once other endocrinopathies have been ruled out (i.e., Cushing, adrenal hyperplasia):
- Oligoamenorrhea
- Clinical and or biochemical evidence for hyperandrogenemia
- Polycystic-appearing ovaries on ultrasound

The polycystic ovary may result from a virilizing ovarian or adrenal neoplasm or from congenital adrenal hyperplasia, or it may result from suboptimal hypothalamic-pituitary function at puberty. The exact mechanism for the development of ovulatory failure has been attributed to androgen overproduction and its effect on the hypothalamic-pituitary ovarian axis. Stein and Leventhal, during the period 1902 to 1935, noted that a group of women had evidence for what is currently called polycystic ovaries at the time of laparotomy. Specifically, in 1935, Stein and Leventhal reported seven patients with the hallmark of PCO.

The histologic findings in a polycystic ovary cover a broad spectrum, ranging from the originally described typical “Stein-Leventhal” type of polycystic ovary with a large number of follicular cysts and few atretic cysts in which there is marked stromal hyperplasia and hyperthecosis, to a smaller ovary with a few follicular cysts and atretic follicles. The polycystic ovary may exhibit microscopic islands of luteinized thecal cells, i.e., hyperthecosis, scattered in the stroma, but usually there is a thickened, fibrosed tunica with a large number of cystic follicles beneath this thickened capsule.

There are several hypotheses regarding the mechanism by which ovarian drilling (wedge resection) of the polycystic ovary resolves ovulatory failure. The theory stating that the fibrous capsule acts as a mechanical barrier to the ovulatory follicle has been refuted. Evidence against this theory consists of the observation that if one ovary is removed, ovulation occurs from the other ovary. In addition, the use of clomiphene citrate results in ovulation through an intact capsule. Some have stated that neonatal androgens may cause an abnormal hypothalamic-pituitary axis, resulting in abnormal gonadotropin production. This theory is not widely accepted. Neonatal androgen treatment in rats is associated with masculinization of the hypothalamus and with ovulatory failure with polycystic ovaries.

The most popular theory explaining how ovarian drilling results in the resumption of ovulatory cycles notes that the removal of androgen-secreting stroma and theca reduces the amount of abnormal steroid production in the ovary. After wedge resection, there is usually a decrease in the mean level of 17a-hydroxyprogesterone, dehydroepiandrosterone, androstenedione, and testosterone, as well as a transitory decrease in estradiol. This reduction in the steroidogenesis of androgens, allowing normalization of the luteinizing hormone (LH): follicle stimulating hormone (LH-FSH) ratio, Antidiabetic agents have been advocated to reduce insulin resistance with PCO. Metformin has been shown to decrease insulin levels with resultant diminishing of circulating androgens. Hirsutism often improves. Metformin may enhance the efficacy of clomiphene and gonadotropin therapy with PCO. Metformin may also promote weight loss. Baseline and periodic liver function tests are recommended. Metformin is contraindicated with renal or hepatic disease. Patients have shown a response at dosages of 500 mg three times per day.

Surgical Technique of Laparoscopic Treatment of Polycystic Ovaries

The laparoscopic approach incorporates the use of monopolar cautery with a needlepoint applicator or bipolar cautery to

| Indications
---|

The introduction of clomiphene citrate and the oral antihyperglycemic drug and insulin sensitizer metformin has changed the management of PCOS in patients who desire pregnancy. Depending on the clinical circumstance, the conception rate with clomiphene citrate has been reported at 50% to 60%. The incidence of post-clomiphene citrate birth defects (3.1%) is not increased over commonly quoted rates for populations at large. Some patients may not want to accept the risks of multiple births or hyperstimulation with pure FSH or FSH and LH ovulation induction. The need for wedge resection of the polycystic ovary is much lower with the development of the newer reproductive technologies. Antidiabetic agents have been advocated to reduce insulin resistance with PCO. Metformin has been shown to decrease insulin levels with resultant diminishing of circulating androgens. Hirsutism often improves. Metformin may enhance the efficacy of clomiphene and gonadotropin therapy with PCO. Metformin may also promote weight loss. Baseline and periodic liver function tests are recommended. Metformin is contraindicated with renal or hepatic disease. Patients have shown a response at dosages of 500 mg three times per day.

Surgical Technique of Laparoscopic Treatment of Polycystic Ovaries

The laparoscopic approach incorporates the use of monopolar cautery with a needlepoint applicator or bipolar cautery to

laser drilling of ovary for surgical treatment of polycystic ovarian disease (Fig. 28.9). Care should be exercised to avoid the hilum because bleeding could result if it is penetrated. It is important to achieve hemostasis over the drilled areas.

The ovarian drilling technique includes a 5-mm second puncture placed suprapubically, through which suction irrigation or grasping of tissues can be performed. All visible subcapsular follicles are vaporized, and a 2- to 4-mm-diameter crater is made randomly in the ovarian stroma. Hemostasis is accomplished with bipolar forceps.

Ovarian coagulation can be accomplished with unipolar punch biopsy forceps or a needle electrode. The power setting is 20 to 30 W in a cutting mode. The cortex is usually penetrated at 10 to 15 sites for a depth of 3 to 5 mm. Caution is exercised to minimize thermal damage. Smaller ovaries may require fewer cauteryization sites.

There are no randomized controlled studies addressing the efficacy of the laparoscopic approach to ovarian drilling. Twenty-seven studies were evaluated by Donesky and Adashi and involved a total of 729 patients. The ovulation rate was 84.2%, and the pregnancy rate was 55.7%. These authors emphasized that well-designed studies are needed in this area, which would encompass the PCO population proposed for laparoscopic drilling. This cohort of patients would require a well-documented clinical and biochemical finding of PCO, documented long-standing infertility (2 years or more), evidence for failure of clomiphene citrate, absence of correction of other infertility factors, randomization into a treatment group, and standardized documented follow-up, with particular attention to postovulatory patterns.

Complications

The major concern is that of adhesion formation after either wedge resection or laparoscopic drilling. Taaffe and associates noted extensive peritubular and periovarian adhesions in a small series (seven) of patients who did not conceive after bilateral wedge resection or laparoscopic drilling. This cohort of patients would require a well-documented clinical and biochemical finding of PCO, documented long-standing infertility (2 years or more), evidence for failure of clomiphene citrate, absence of correction of other infertility factors, randomization into a treatment group, and standardized documented follow-up, with particular attention to postovulatory patterns.

PARADOXICAL OOPHORECTOMY

Paradoxical oophorectomy is the removal of severely pathologic adnexa to improve fertility in patients with strictly unilateral tubal disease. Consideration of removal of the contralateral ovary when there is single tubal patency (i.e., paradoxical oophorectomy) has perhaps taken on a new perspective with the advent of assisted reproductive technology (ART). From a historical point of view, it has been advocated that a patient with one functional tube would benefit from paradoxical oophorectomy, thus ensuring that ovulation would occur repeatedly on the appropriate side. Scott and coworkers reported a series of 24 patients with unilateral tubal patency diagnosed by retrograde injection at laparotomy. Contralateral oophorectomy or salpingo-oophorectomy was performed on all patients, and 16 women subsequently had 21 pregnancies, for a pregnancy rate of 67%. The authors suggested that the frequency with which transperitoneal migration occurs may be a factor. Hallet noted that one in five tubal ectopic pregnancies has a corpus luteum. On the contralateral side, Jansen noted an intrauterine pregnancy rate of 18.7% (n = 91), contrasted with bilateral salpingostomy for hydrosalpinges in the presence of only one ovary wherein the pregnancy rate was 43.8% (n = 16). With unilateral salpingostomy or bilateral division of adhesions, pregnancy rates were comparable to those after bilateral salpingolysis. The mean surgery-pregnancy interval was longer after unilateral salpingostomy (104 weeks) than after bilateral salpingolysis (45 weeks). The author suggested that salpingo-oophorectomy may be preferable to salpingostomy for unilateral hydrosalpinx.

Perhaps the major concern is for the patient who presents with tubal ectopic gestation in which the opposite (i.e., normal-appearing) adnexa appears to be unaffected. The paradoxical salpingo-oophorectomy approach has been advocated with this circumstance by Scott and coworkers. It has been advocated to wait at least 2 years after diagnostic laparoscopy reveals extensive unilateral disease before proceeding with paradoxical oophorectomy.

Randomized, carefully controlled clinical trials are necessary to further evaluate the efficacy of paradoxical oophorectomy. The risks and benefits must be carefully considered both preoperatively and intraoperatively, especially if the patient is a candidate for ART. There is clear evidence that increased numbers of ova can be recovered when both ovaries are in situ. Increased pregnancy success after superovulation is a reflection of the number of ovaries (one versus two)—the total number of follicles available for stimulation.

Laparoscopic Oophorectomy

The general principles of laparoscopic oophorectomy include placing the patient in the Trendelenburg position, with appropriate planning of ports for the proposed procedure, and planning for removal of the affected adnexa. Pelvic washings and the use of frozen section may be germane to the task at hand. After restoration of normal anatomy and adhesiolysis as indicated, the adnexa are gently placed on stretch. They are
approached from either the infundibulopelvic ligament or the insertion of the round ligament. Regardless of the approach chosen, identification of the ureter is of paramount importance. The infundibulopelvic ligament is identified and coagulated. The broad ligament is incised, beginning at the round ligament, and further dissection is performed with an irrigation dissection probe into the retroperitoneal space. Every effort must be made to completely remove all ovarian tissue to prevent ovarian remnant syndrome.

### Tissue Removal

Once the adnexa have been completely freed, if benign disease is extremely likely, desiccation of the tissue and thus segmental removal is appropriate. However, if there is concern for the pathology, use of an endoscopic pouch is appropriate. In this circumstance, every effort is made to remove the ovary intact. Careful inspection of the operative site and a check for any bleeding are recommended. In addition, the end-point pressure of CO₂ insufflation should be reduced with suctioning of some of the CO₂ to check for any tamponade effect. As with all laparoscopic procedures, the patient should be monitored carefully after surgery for any signs of intraperitoneal bleeding.

### FERTILITY PRESERVATION WITH CANCER

As response to both medical and surgical therapies continue to result in increasing numbers of survivors, gynecologic surgeons must be kept abreast of current thinking in this field. Cryopreservation of ovarian tissue, nonfertilized, immature germ cells in oocytes, has received increased attention including in prepubertal girls. Medical agents, including letrozole and tamoxifen, have been used as ovarian stimulants for cryopreservation in women with breast cancer. Tamoxifen resulted in two to five times higher embryo yield than natural cycle in vitro fertilization (IVF). The best prognosis for fertility appears to preserve gametes before initiation of chemotherapy for cancer. Ovarian transplantation with subsequent embryo generation has been reported after restoration of ovarian function by heterotopic transplantation. Ovarian transplantation remains an experimental technique at this point in time. Ovarian cortical tissue strip retrieval is amenable to a laparoscopic approach. Autologous, orthotopic transplantation after cryopreservation has been successfully used to restore fertility. Ovarian tissue banking and autografting of ovarian cortex are promising therapies for patients with ovarian failure. Kim and coauthors have reported similar recommendations. Bisharah and Tulandi have recommended transsection of the ovarian ligament and transposition of the ovaries without affecting the fallopian tubes. This is associated with positioning of the ovaries laterally and anteriorly at the level of the anterior superior iliac spines (Fig. 28.10).

Cytotoxic drugs are classified as follows:

- **High risk:** Cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide, chloroethylnitrosourea, busulfan, procarbazine, and chlorambucil
- **Moderate risk:** Cisplatin, carboplatin, and doxorubicin
- **Low risk:** Vincristine, methotrexate, Daunomycin, bleomycin, melphalan, procarbazine, and vinblastine

Attempts have been made to assess ovarian function and “ovarian reserve.” This has included evaluation of ovarian volume; serum inhibin B, secreted by antral developing follicles; and antimüllerian hormone, a glycoprotein expressed in fetal tissue and preantral and small antral follicles, but in the adult, when levels are lowered (i.e., in cancer survivors), the ovarian reserve is decreased.

One alternative to oophorexy is oocyte retrieval, fertilization, and cryopreservation—i.e., ART/IVF. Preserving unfertilized oocytes remains an area of research as prognosis for fertility overall is poor.

A number of factors may affect fertility. Factors that may adversely affect uterine function. It is estimated that the sensitivity of oocytes to radiation is an LD50 of 2 Gy (the lethal dose required to eliminate 50% of the oocytes).

Fertility outcome following ovarian transposition and pelvic irradiation for pelvic cancer has been addressed in a total of 37 consecutive cases by Morice and colleagues. Patients were treated for clear cell adenocarcinoma of the vagina or cervix, ovarian dysgerminoma, and sarcoma. The pregnancy rate was 15% (4/27) in patients attempting pregnancy with clear cell ovarian disease.

Lemevel and coworkers reported laparoscopic transposition in a patient being treated for Hodgkin disease before receiving radiotherapy. The ovaries were laparoscopically suspended out of the field of radiation. Iatrogenic menopause did not occur in the four patients for which this was reported. Other authors have reported similar recommendations. Bisharah and Tulandi have recommended transsection of the ovarian ligament and transposition of the ovaries without affecting the fallopian tubes. This is associated with positioning of the ovaries laterally and anteriorly at the level of the anterior superior iliac spines (Fig. 28.10).

### OVARIAN TRANSPOSITION BEFORE RADIOTHERAPY

Lemevel and coworkers reported laparoscopic transposition in a patient being treated for Hodgkin disease before receiving radiotherapy. The ovaries were laparoscopically suspended out of the field of radiation. Iatrogenic menopause did not occur in the four patients for which this was reported. Other authors have reported similar recommendations. Bisharah and Tulandi have recommended transsection of the ovarian ligament and transposition of the ovaries without affecting the fallopian tubes. This is associated with positioning of the ovaries laterally and anteriorly at the level of the anterior superior iliac spines (Fig. 28.10).

Gonads are sensitive to irradiation. Whole-body, abdominal, or pelvic irradiation can cause ovarian damage and adversely affect uterine function. It is estimated that the sensitivity of oocytes to radiation is an LD50 of 2 Gy (the lethal dose required to eliminate 50% of the oocytes).

Cytotoxic drugs are classified as follows:

- **High risk:** Cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide, chloroethylnitrosourea, busulfan, procarbazine, and chlorambucil
- **Moderate risk:** Cisplatin, carboplatin, and doxorubicin
- **Low risk:** Vincristine, methotrexate, Daunomycin, bleomycin, melphalan, procarbazine, and vinblastine

Attempts have been made to assess ovarian function and “ovarian reserve.” This has included evaluation of ovarian volume; serum inhibin B, secreted by antral developing follicles; and antimüllerian hormone, a glycoprotein expressed in fetal tissue and preantral and small antral follicles, but in the adult, when levels are lowered (i.e., in cancer survivors), the ovarian reserve is decreased.

One alternative to oophorexy is oocyte retrieval, fertilization, and cryopreservation—i.e., ART/IVF. Preserving unfertilized oocytes remains an area of research as prognosis for fertility overall is poor.

Fertility outcome following ovarian transposition and pelvic irradiation for pelvic cancer has been addressed in a total of 37 consecutive cases by Morice and colleagues. Patients were treated for clear cell adenocarcinoma of the vagina or cervix, ovarian dysgerminoma, and sarcoma. The pregnancy rate was 15% (4/27) in patients attempting pregnancy with clear cell ovarian disease.

Lemevel and coworkers reported laparoscopic transposition in a patient being treated for Hodgkin disease before receiving radiotherapy. The ovaries were laparoscopically suspended out of the field of radiation. Iatrogenic menopause did not occur in the four patients for which this was reported. Other authors have reported similar recommendations. Bisharah and Tulandi have recommended transsection of the ovarian ligament and transposition of the ovaries without affecting the fallopian tubes. This is associated with positioning of the ovaries laterally and anteriorly at the level of the anterior superior iliac spines (Fig. 28.10).

Gonads are sensitive to irradiation. Whole-body, abdominal, or pelvic irradiation can cause ovarian damage and adversely affect uterine function. It is estimated that the sensitivity of oocytes to radiation is an LD50 of 2 Gy (the lethal dose required to eliminate 50% of the oocytes).

Cytotoxic drugs are classified as follows:

- **High risk:** Cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide, chloroethylnitrosourea, busulfan, procarbazine, and chlorambucil
- **Moderate risk:** Cisplatin, carboplatin, and doxorubicin
- **Low risk:** Vincristine, methotrexate, Daunomycin, bleomycin, melphalan, procarbazine, and vinblastine

Attempts have been made to assess ovarian function and “ovarian reserve.” This has included evaluation of ovarian volume; serum inhibin B, secreted by antral developing follicles; and antimüllerian hormone, a glycoprotein expressed in fetal tissue and preantral and small antral follicles, but in the adult, when levels are lowered (i.e., in cancer survivors), the ovarian reserve is decreased.

One alternative to oophorexy is oocyte retrieval, fertilization, and cryopreservation—i.e., ART/IVF. Preserving unfertilized oocytes remains an area of research as prognosis for fertility overall is poor.

Fertility outcome following ovarian transposition and pelvic irradiation for pelvic cancer has been addressed in a total of 37 consecutive cases by Morice and colleagues. Patients were treated for clear cell adenocarcinoma of the vagina or cervix, ovarian dysgerminoma, and sarcoma. The pregnancy rate was 15% (4/27) in patients attempting pregnancy with clear cell ovarian disease.
OVARIAN CYSTS IN NEONATE AND PREPUBERTAL CHILD

In a retrospective study of 65 fetal ovarian cysts noted by ultrasonography, 37% were located on the left, 36% were on the right, and 7% were bilateral. In 17 patients, intervention was required after delivery because of persistence and/or enlargement. The histologic results included follicular cysts in 12 cases, a lymphangioma, and one teratoma; the remaining were amenable to aspiration. The authors, Mittermayer and colleagues, conclude that lack of regression requires intervention in the neonatal period. Ovarian cysts in the neonate ≥ 5 cm in diameter have an increased chance of torsion.

Ovarian surgery in the premenarchal girl has been evaluated in a study from the University of Michigan in 52 patients, 50% of whom were less than 1 year and 31% between 1 and 8 years old. The most common presentation was abdominal/pelvic mass (n = 24), and the postoperative diagnoses included torsion in 18 and malignancy in 5 patients. Histopathologic evaluation included hemorrhagic infarction, dysgerminomatous growth, simple cysts, teratoma, theca lutein cyst, fibroma, neorhabdostroma, germ cell tumor, gonadoblastoma, and metastatic Wilms tumor.

LAPAROSCOPIC OVARIAN SURGERY IN THE PEDIATRIC OR ADOLESCENT PATIENT

A number of gynecologic problems from the neonatal period through adolescence can be addressed laparoscopically. Entities such as ovarian torsion, acute PID (diagnosis and treatment complementing antimicrobial therapy), torsion, and benign neoplasms must be considered in this age group. In addition, gonadectomy for problems such as male pseudohermaphroditism is amenable to the laparoscopic approach.

Follicular cysts appear to be of particular concern in both the pediatric and adolescent patient because they present with abdominal pain. An abdominal or pelvic mass can be identified on physical examination. The clinician must always keep in mind the importance of appropriate preoperative assessment (with the use of ultrasound and other clinical parameters) in deciding which patients are candidates for operative intervention. Depending on the clinical circumstance, a conservative approach in this age group is advocated; appropriate concern must be given (especially in the pediatric patient) to the potential for malignancy with ovarian masses, particularly if a solid component is identified.

The literature attests to operative intervention of ovarian cysts that appear to be nonfunctional. One of these was reported in a 1.5-month-old infant in whom ultrasound showed evidence of an ovarian mass. At laparotomy, the mass proved to be consistent with right ovarian torsion and necrosis, and it required adnexitomy. In one other reported case, a follicular-appearing cyst seen on ultrasound was associated with rapidly progressive virilization and a markedly elevated plasma testosterone level (289 ng/dL); histologic evaluation identified a granulosa cell tumor with mild luteinization.

The feasibility of adnexal tissue resection continues to be controversial. In two case reports, laparoscopic puncture and aspiration of a malignant ovarian cyst was performed. Preoperative ultrasound indicated that the involved adnexal mass had a benign nature. Cytologically negative fluid was obtained from the aspirate. Eight weeks after operation, extensive disseminated ovarian carcinoma was noted at laparotomy.

Endoscopic surgery continues to broaden its horizon with expansion into laparoscopic surgical care beginning with the neonate. The use of 2-mm laparoscopes with the addition of 2- to 3-mm instrumentation has facilitated the diagnostic and therapeutic aspects of laparoscopy in this age group. Miniaturized video camera systems are necessary when one uses the 2-mm laparoscopic telescope. When a decision is made to proceed with laparoscopy in a neonate or infant, general endotracheal anesthesia is used. Ideally, prophylactic antibiotics are administered preoperatively. The stomach is emptied with a suction catheter when the patient is asleep, and the bladder is emptied by use of the Credé maneuver. The abdominal wall is thinner and more elastic in the child than in the adolescent or adult. One must take this into consideration when introducing instrumentation, because it may be easier to insufflate in the subcutaneous space of the child than in the subcutaneous space of an adult. A Veress needle can be used with insufflation of carbon dioxide at 0.5 L/min. In infants, the end point of peritoneal distending pressure should be set at 6 to 8 mm Hg; in the pediatric patient, 6 to 10 mm Hg; in the older child or adolescent, 10 to 12 mm Hg.

After surgery, the trocar sites can be sutured in children, whereas in neonates and infants, the use of Steri-Strips (3M, St. Paul, MN) or other wound-closure bandages is usually adequate for reapproximation of the incised skin edges. Waldschmidt and Schier reported a series of 136 laparoscopic surgical procedures in neonates and infants. The most frequent indications were lysis of adhesions, abdominal cysts and neoplasms, gonadectomy, appendectomy, and cholecystectomy. A 1,400 g premature infant was the only one in the series who suffered a complication (hemia at the incision site). Thus, adnexal pathology in this age group appears to be amenable to a laparoscopic approach.

Procedures such as transposition of an ovary before radiotherapy, bilateral gonadal excision in a male pseudohermaphrodite (i.e., Y-bearing chromosomal analysis), adnexal torsion, suspected salpingitis, and endometriosis all have been identified in this age group. The authors concluded that because the morbidity is low and recovery is likely, the laparoscopic approach should be considered.

Although certain procedures in the child do not differ significantly from those in the adult, the early diagnosis of ovarian pathology (e.g., adnexal torsion) can result in a significant advantage in terms of managing the patient and preserving ovarian tissue.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Minimally invasive surgery can be used to evaluate and manage ovarian masses ≥ 6 cm and adnexal masses ≥ 10 cm.
Before operative intervention in a pregnant patient with a symptomatic adnexal mass, complete assessment of the fetus—including ultrasound to rule out any fetal anomalies—is recommended. The optimal time for elective intervention is during the second trimester. The patient should be informed regarding preterm labor and delivery. The surgical procedure ideally is performed in the left lateral decubitus position.

Transvaginal color Doppler sonographic assessment of ovarian malignant masses includes number of vessels detected, location of tumor vessels (central vs. peripheral), determined nation of peak systolic velocity, low-resistance index, mean-resistance index, and low pulsatility index.

The major goal of the evaluation of a pelvic mass is to rule out malignancy. All ovarian neoplasms >6 cm with a solid component should undergo a thorough evaluation to try to rule out cancer.

In management of ovarian remnant syndrome, treatment of choice is adequate excision of the remnant ovarian tissue and contiguous adherent tissues, i.e., pelvic peritoneum, bowel serosa, and underlying involved alveolar and/or vasculat tissues. Retroperitoneal dissection may be required.

### Bibliography


Gurtoveni B. Late endocrine effects of electrolysis in women with polycystic ovary syndrome. Fertil Steril 1999;72(4):793.

Gustafsson P. Gore-Tex surgical membrane (Interceed [TC7]) is superior to oxidized-regenerated cellulose (Interceed [TC7]) but not expanded polytetrafluoroethylene (Gore-Tex surgical membrane). Fertil Steril 1995;63:257.


Grantoveni B. Late endocrine effects of electrolysis in women with polycystic ovary syndrome. Fertil Steril 1999;72(4):793.


CHAPTER 29 ■ PERSISTENT OR CHRONIC PELVIC PAIN
JOHN F. STEEGE

DEFINITIONS

Alldynia—Pain resulting from a nonnoxious stimulus.

Hyperalgesia—Painful sensation of abnormal severity following noxious stimulation.

Neuropathic pain—Pain persisting after healing of disease or trauma-induced tissue damage.

Neuroplasticity—The malleability of central pain perception mechanisms in response to chronic pain states.

Nociceptor—A nerve receptor for pain.

Chronic pelvic pain (CPP) is defined as pain present either intermittently or continuously for 6 months or more. Although much work remains to be done concerning the epidemiology of the disorder, preliminary surveys suggest that it may affect 5% to 15% of women at some time in their lives, predominately during their reproductive years. The gynecologist confronts this problem on a regular basis. Many organic and functional disorders of the reproductive, gastrointestinal, urinary tract, and musculoskeletal systems may contribute nociceptive stimuli to the problem. Dysfunction or organic disease in one organ system may induce nociception in an adjacent system in the manner of “cross-talk.” In addition, by dysregulation of neurologic pathways, pain can become an illness in itself when it lasts longer than 4 to 6 months. This chapter reviews the common structural and functional components of CPP, describes the criteria for a chronic pain syndrome (CPS), and offers a theoretical model to explain the evolution of chronic pain over time.

Many pain disorders are deemed “chronic” by virtue of their duration—that is, 6 months or longer. In practice, this usually connotes decreased function (perhaps even disability) as well as progressive behavioral and affective changes. Although this definition is useful as a benchmark, some victims of chronic pain may develop these characteristics sooner than 6 months into the problem, and others may endure severe pain for years while remaining surprisingly functional and well adjusted. As suggested later, it is therefore perhaps useful to use additional behavioral and psychometric criteria to the chronologic definition of “chronic” to focus diagnostic and treatment efforts.

HISTORY

Over the past 50 years, the study of CPP has gone through significant changes in approach. Investigations undertaken before the development of laparoscopy focused on correlations between pelvic pain and psychologic distress. This approach was prompted by the fact that the two most common organic contributors to CPP—endometriosis and adhesions—can be difficult to diagnose by history and physical examination alone. In the absence of palpable pathology, the gynecologist of the 1950s and 1960s was understandably reluctant to subject a patient to laparotomy to investigate pain. During this era, the prevailing cartesian theory of pain perception suggested that pain should be somewhat proportional to the degree of tissue damage found. (If the pathology was not big enough to palpate, it was seldom operated on.) Although this was sufficient to explain most acute pain, the cartesian model fails to explain the majority of chronic pain disorders, in gynecology as well as other areas of medicine. The gate control theory, promulgated by Melzack and Wall in 1965, allowed integration of physical and psychologic parameters, and explained how chronic pain can be quite different from acute pain. The model also suggests that information flows in two directions regarding pain: (i) nociceptive signals from peripheral tissue ascend through the spinal cord to higher centers, and (ii) central centers can modulate, via descending signals altering spinal cord neurotransmitter and interneuron activity, the transmission of these nociceptive signals from the periphery. Deterioration of these regulatory processes were thought to potentially account for development of chronic pain states by allowing too many peripheral signals through the spinal cord “gates.”

While these changes in pain theory were stimulating the field of pain research, gynecologists were busy developing laparoscopy. Previously cherished myths soon fell by the wayside: for example, endometriosis is seldom found in adolescents or African Americans. With these observations came the hope that laparoscopic and medical treatment of this pathology would fix CPP. Reports of CPP from that era focused on “laparoscopy-negative” patients; indeed, some pelvic pain clinics required a negative laparoscopy as an entry criterion, implying that if some pathology were found, it must be a “real” cause for pain. Subsequent experience has shown that even though treatment of laparoscopically diagnosed pathology is often helpful, the clinical reality is more complex:

1. In many instances, the organic pathology found at laparoscopy may be incidental and not related to the pain.
2. In those with pathology that does contribute to nociception, the pain experienced by the patient may be the sum of this contribution plus signals from some or all of the disorders listed in Table 29.1.

Consider the research of the 1980s that documented a distressingly high prevalence of physical and sexual abuse. Epidemiologic surveys of community samples revealed that as many as 25% to 50% of adult women reported having experienced sexual abuse during childhood. Studies of women attending pelvic pain clinics, especially those based in psychiatric settings, showed that up to 60% of these women had been abused. These observations led to the speculation that the experience of abuse may make a person more vulnerable to the
When nociception has been emanating from one organ system ing end of peripheral nociceptive stimuli for prolonged periods. have become pain generators as a result of being on the receiv-or the result of sensitization of spinal cord interneurons that understood (e.g., the mechanism of pain from endometriosis) but it may also be the result of nociceptive mechanisms not yet for the patient, as well as past or present emotional trauma, found. This may reflect the emotional meaning of the problem whose pain responses seem out of proportion to the pathology (hyperalgesia). Every practicing gynecologist has seen patients lodynia), as well as exaggerated responses to painful stimuli to the neurophysiologic behavior of the central nervous system includes the notion of neuroplasticity, among other elements. The matrix theory, described by Melzack, is an expansion that in-quate to explain clinical manifestations of pain. The neuro-activity theory, described by Melzack, is an expansion that in-cludes the notion of neuroplasticity, among other elements. The concept of neuroplasticity suggests that experience can change the neurophysiologic behavior of the central nervous system in a manner that influences the subsequent processing of no-ceptive stimuli. It may explain the apparent development of pain responses to stimuli usually thought of as nonpainful (al-odynia), as well as exaggerated responses to painful stimuli (hyperalgesia). Every practicing gynecologist has seen patients whose pain responses seem out of proportion to the pathology found. This may reflect the emotional meaning of the problem for the patient, as well as past or present emotional trauma, but it may also be the result of nociceptive mechanisms not yet understood (e.g., the mechanism of pain from endometriosis) or the result of sensitization of spinal cord interneurons that have become pain generators as a result of being on the receiv-ing end of peripheral nociceptive stimuli for prolonged periods. When nociception has been emanating from one organ system for a period of time, adjacent organs may join the chorus. A common example is the finding that pain from endometriosis and bladder symptoms coexist more than one might expect. Vulvar vestibulitis overlaps with interstitial cystitis in a simi-lar manner. On occasion, one is confronted with the unfortu-nate patient with multiple somatosensory disorders—e.g., she might have IBS, endometriosis, interstitial cystitis, fibromyal-gia, chronic fatigue syndrome, etc., all at the same time. Such observations have led some investigators to pursue potential genetic variations in central neurotransmitter networks that might predispose to the development of multiple such disor-ders. The above is the negative side of neuroplasticity. The posi-tive side of the neuroplasticity concept is that, perhaps, given enough time and the right treatment, even seemingly intractable chronic pain problems may ameliorate to the point of allow-ing substantially improved function. This chapter reviews the various organic, psychologic, and physiologic factors that con-tribute to CPP, outlines methods of evaluation, gives sugges-tions for treatment, and finishes with a discussion of an inte-grated model of the development of CPP.

**TABLE 29.1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSSIBLE CAUSES OF PELVIC PAIN IN LAPAROSCOPY-NEGATIVE PATIENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constipation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irritable bowel syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflammatory bowel disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diverticulitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary syneude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intestinal syneude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musculoskeletal or Neurologic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic floor tension myalgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priapismth syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerve entrapment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venaal hernia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectus tendon strain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myofascial pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rect or pelvic postural changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gynecologic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic vascular congestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical stenosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*From Stowe JF, Jones AL, Somkuti SG. Chronic pelvis pain: toward an integrative model. Obstet Gynecol Surv. 1993;48:93, with permission.*

A recent review summarized laparoscopic findings from 2,615 patients in 13 studies (nine retrospective, six prospective). En-dometriosis was found in 2% to 51% of patients, suggesting that referral biases lead to very skewed samples. Clearly, not ev-ery woman with pain has endometriosis, not does every woman with endometriosis have pain, although women with the dis-ease had pain more often than those without it. A number of previous studies of CPP either described only patients with-out organic laparoscopic findings or stratified patients accord-ing to the presence or absence of physical pathology. The de-scription of atypical (nonpigmented) endometriosis by Jansen and Russell in 1986 calls these classifications into question. Laparoscopy studies published before that time reported that 11% of women with CPP had endometriosis, whereas three similarly conducted studies published since 1986 reported a 41% prevalence of endometriosis in women undergoing lap-aroscopy for CPP. The pre-1986 literature on pelvic pain must be reevaluated with this information in mind. Many studies may have included women with endometriosis in the anatom-ically normal group, thus generating erroneous conclusions about the entirely psychogenic nature of their pain. The first symptom of significant endometriosis is often in-creased dysmenorrhea alone, but other pain often develops, and its duration and severity often progress as the disease ad-ances, to the point that it can be present almost constantly. Again, the severity of the pain correlates poorly with the amount of diffuse periendometrial disease, but may vary more di-rectly with deep infiltrative cul-de-sac disease. Fear of wors-ened pain, impaired fertility, or recurrent disease after treat-ment can increase pain levels. Of the many women we perform laparoscopy for recurrent pain following complete hysterectomy and adnexectomy for endometriosis, only a small minority (3% to 5%) proved to have recurrent dis-ease. Most cases of postoperative pain have been attributable to a combination of postoperative adhesions, fear of recurrent disease, and functional problems such as levator spasm and IBS.
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

When endometriosis is strongly suspected, and initial treatment with oral contraceptives has failed, diagnostic laparoscopy should be the next step. One widely discussed study (Ling et al. 1999) concluded that a careful clinical history and physical examination can predict the presence of endometriosis in about 80% of cases. However, this was done in the setting of a strict research protocol; the diagnostic sensitivity of this approach in general clinical practice is likely much lower. Unfortunately, the study is often misinterpreted as implying that reliance on pain following GnRH treatment is also specific, i.e., makes the diagnosis of endometriosis. Careful reading of the data reveals that this is not the case: the frequency of relief following GnRH treatment was the same in women with and without endometriosis. In addition, pain sensitivity is known to increase perimenstrually even in women without gynecologic pain problems. This may mean that nociceptive from pain disorders outside the reproductive tract may also improve when menstrual cyclicity is eliminated. For example, symptoms from IBS have been shown to be reduced in women taking a GnRH agonist. Hence, although failure to relieve pain with a GnRH agonist would appear to strongly support the notion that the reproductive organs are not involved, relief of pain with these medications does not prove that they are to blame.

Pelvic Adhesions

Pelvic relaxation usually leads to reports of heaviness, pressure, dropping sensations, or aching. In attempting to hold in prolapsing organs, the patient may be tending the levator plate and contributing to tenderness during daily activities and intercourse. Fear of (or actual) loss of urinary control during coitus can add to the discomfort by impairing physiologic sexual response.

Excess mobility of the pelvic organs (universal joint or Allen-Masters syndrome) attributed to childbirth or other traumatic causes of ligament (especially broad ligament) tears in uterine supports has been implicated in CPP. Such highly subjective physical examination findings are difficult to document rigorously, and because surgery has been the traditional primary treatment, controlled studies of the association of pain with ligamentous tears have not been possible.

Uterine retroversion is another controversial potential etiology for CPP, particularly in the form of deep dyspareunia. Uncontrolled clinical series of uterine suspension procedures for pelvic pain suggest that the most frequent scenario involves a combination of uterine retroversion (most often innocent by itself) with new intrinsic uterine pathology (e.g., adenomyosis, myomas) or nearby cul-de-sac or adnexal pathology (e.g., endometriosis, adhesions, ovary prolapsed into the cul-de-sac). On occasion, these anatomic circumstances, combined with a new partner of more generous penile dimensions, produce new deep dyspareunia.

Generally speaking, uterine suspension procedures have earned a mixed reputation at best, as many versions yield short-term benefit at best. A recently developed laparoscopic procedure uses permanent suture that is woven through almost the entire length of the round ligament on each side. As support is dependent on the suture and less on shortening an intrinsically weak round ligament, maintenance of postoperative relief appears to be better and may even persist following pregnancy in some cases.

Pelvic Congestion

Overfilling (congestion) of the pelvic venous system has been implicated as a cause of dull chronic aching pain that usually is worse at the end of the day after prolonged standing, premenstrually, and after cotonus not accompanied by orgasm. The pain is occasionally unilateral, is usually present in multiparous women, and is likely due to anatomic causes, at least in part. The high comorbidity with psychologic distress indicates that psychophysologic factors may also contribute. Medroxyprogesterone can help (by eliminating the menstrual cycle), but the best long-term results have followed psychotherapy in conjunction with this medication. In any case, good radiologic studies in women who are awake during the procedure have documented increased pelvic venous diameter in those affected. Veins cannot be reliably evaluated during laparoscopy because of confounding effects such as position and fluid load.

Pelvic Support

Although problems with pelvic relaxation are common in women in their sixth or seventh decade of life, most patients at pain clinics are in their third or fourth decade. The implication is that cases of pain associated with pelvic support problems constitute the minority of pelvic pain problems.

Residual Ovary

When the uterus has been removed, with or without removal of one ovary, the remaining ovary or ovaries can become symptomatic in 1% to 4% of women. In many instances, benign functional ovarian cysts can form and can be transiently symptomatic. Pain from the ovary can be increased by confinement of the ovary within postoperative adhesions, rupture or leakage of a cyst prompting additional adhesion formation, or attachment of the ovary to the sigmoid colon or vaginal apex by postoperative adhesions. In the case of attachment to the vaginal apex, deep dyspareunia can result when the vaginal apex is struck. When this pain causes diminished sexual response, loss of the normal vaginal apex expansion and elongation that is part of sexual response can leave the ovary or ovaries closer to the introitus, thus aggravating the deep dyspareunia.
Ovarian Remnant

A more difficult situation can develop if a small fragment of ovarian tissue is left behind during attempted oophorectomy. In most instances, this happens when extensive pelvic adhesive disease or endometriosis made the dissection difficult. Within 1 to 3 years of the attempted oophorectomy, continued follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) stimulation will result in growth of the ovarian fragment, often producing an intermittently symptomatic pelvic mass located along the course of the ovarian vascular supply. This problem is uncommon, but not rare, as implied by early case series. The prevalence of asymptomatic ovarian remnants is unknown. As in the case of the residual ovary, the remnant can produce dyspareunia if it is located close to the vaginal apex.

Vaginal Apex Pain

Following hysterectomy, pain may persist or recur because of intrinsic sensitivity of the vaginal apex. Although the cuff may appear to have healed perfectly well, gentle examination with a cotton-tipped applicator may reveal focal sensitivity of moderate to severe degree, often located in one lateral fornix or the other, and often replicating the reported pain of dyspareunia. When this is not done, the unwary examiner may then, noting pain upon traditional bimanual examination, mistakenly conclude that the source of nociception lies cephalad, for example, in a remaining ovary, pelvic scarring, or bowel adhesions.

The diagnosis may be confirmed by noting elimination of the pain following injection of local anesthesia. The pain appears to be neuropathic in nature, by virtue of the typical descriptors used (burning, stinging, sharp), and by virtue of the treatments that seem to be of benefit to some patients (overnight applications of 5% lidocaine ointment, low doses of nortriptyline, and medications such as gabapentin, lamotrigine, and Lamictal). Surgical revision of the vaginal apex, often done laparoscopically, may give good initial relief in about two thirds of patients, but pain tends to recur to a degree over the subsequent 2 to 3 years.

Musculoskeletal Problems

Musculoskeletal changes can become involved with CPP; either as the primary problem or as a secondary reaction to the pelvic pain. Dysmenorrhea can be referred to the midline of the low back, especially when the uterus is retroverted. Pain can also be referred to the midline of the low back in the presence of cul-de-sac endometriosis. An ovary fixed to the pelvic sidewall can refer pain to the ischiolateral low back and lower quadrant.

The muscular problem that most often produces pelvic pain is pelvic floor muscle spasm. Pain referable to the levator plate can be present as a primary myofascial trigger point and can persist after transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) or coitus. Slocumb has advanced the theory that myofascial trigger points account for a large fraction of CPP. In my experience, abdominal wall components may be the primary cause for pain in some cases, but are more often a later reaction to the long duration of pain from some other source. Rester and Gambone reported that 14% of 122 laparoscopy-negative women had myofascial pain probably related to a previous surgical incision.

Persistent or Chronic Pelvic Pain 651

Myofascial Pain

Focal lower quadrant abdominal wall pain can be produced by entrapment of the genitofemoral and ilioinguinal nerves, as described by Applegate. Such entrapment appears most often after Pfannenstiel abdominal incisions. Slocumb has advanced the theory that myofascial trigger points account for a large fraction of CPP. In my experience, abdominal wall components may be the primary cause for pain in some cases, but are more often a later reaction to the long duration of pain from some other source. Rester and Gambone reported that 14% of 122 laparoscopy-negative women had myofascial pain probably related to a previous surgical incision.

Medical Comorbidity

The cause of chronic lower abdominal or pelvic pain often involves nongynecologic systems (Table 29.1). A careful history and physical examination returns the patient to gynecologic disorders, are perhaps second in terms of prevalence. The urethral syndrome (frequency, urgency, and dysuria in the absence of bacteriuria), interstitial cystitis, and bladder spasms are all accompanied by significant anxiety and depression symptoms. The symptoms of these three disorders are very similar to those in a population of gynecologic CPP patients. Structured questionnaires (e.g., the Pain, Urgency, Frequency [PUF] scale) help detect symptoms possibly emanating from the bladder, but in some patients, a “positive” score can be achieved on the basis of other components of pelvic pain alone, without specific bladder symptoms, hence making this measure perhaps too sensitive, and hence insufficiently specific. A history (whether pain occurs during micturition, daily activities, or coitus) does not always reveal the involved system, but careful pelvic examination with stepwise gentle palpation of the urethra, bladder base, and bladder may help the physician identify from the patient’s response the site of the pain she is experiencing.

Many patients do not experience the problems described here in pure form, but rather in varying degrees of intensity,
with varying contributions to an individual's total discomfort. Indeed, we suspect that shared innervation of pelvic organs may often lead to sub syndromal symptoms in an organ system that neighbors one with organic pathology. Such patients may have a multifaceted somatosensory disorder, as opposed to being the unfortunate victim of multiple unrelated organ-specific disease processes. Close attention to such nuances of detail is warranted both in clinical management and in published reports.

**PSYCHOLOGIC FACTORS**

**Personality**

The links between chronic pain and individual psychology and personality style have been sought after and discussed in the psychiatric literature for many years. Some early reports implied that women who reported CPP had a high prevalence of feminine identity problems related to conflicts about adult sexuality, psychiatric disturbance characterized by mixed character disorder with predominant schizoid features, high neuroticism, and unsatisfactory relationships. Although these initial studies were an important beginning, the high prevalence of psychopathology in some reported samples did not seem applicable to significant numbers of CPP patients seen in practice. The findings are difficult to interpret, partly because there is a lack of clarity concerning the operational definition of CPP that was used. Bases in patient selection and interviewer information, inadequate control groups, and the absence of diagnostic laparoscopy also contribute to the confusion. Despite these shortcomings, it seems apparent that disorders of personality, especially borderline personality, are overrepresented both in the general population of severe chronic pain patients and in the population of pelvic pain patients. In primary care, such patients usually are seen less often. In any case, a label of personality disorder should not be applied indiscriminately to every angry patient by her frustrated physician. People who have difficulties maintaining satisfactory relationships and function in life, even when these difficulties are caused in part by sub syndromal personality problems, can be more vulnerable to nociceptive signals from tissue damaged by endometriosis, infection, or surgery. Unmet dependency needs may lead them to seek external solutions such as medications and further surgery, rather than to rely on their own impaired coping skills.

**Depression**

Focusing specifically on a CPP sample that had been evaluated by diagnostic laparoscopy, Walker and associates found that women with CPP (with and without positive laparoscopic findings) met criteria for lifetime major depression, current major depression, lifetime substance abuse, adult sexual dysfunction, and somatization more often than did control subjects. Stout and Steege found that 39% of 294 women seeking evaluation at a pelvic pain clinic scored in the depressed range (greater than 16) on the Center for Epidemiologic Studies Depression Scale at the time of their initial visit. Slomcumb and colleagues reported that patients with an abdominal pelvic pain syndrome scored higher as a group on scales of anxiety, depression, anger, hostility, and somatization on the Hopkins Symptom Checklist; however, 56% of the total sample scored within the normal range on all scales.

Because no study of CPP has assessed its association with depression over time, no statement can be made as to whether depressive symptoms are a predisposing factor leading to, or a reaction to, the pain condition. There seem to be two distinct groups of CPP patients: one in which pain and depression are common final presentations reached by a number of pathways and another in which depression develops in reaction to pain, as is the case with many other acute and chronic medical diseases.

**History of Sexual Abuse**

Women seeking treatment for CPP have a high prevalence of sexual trauma in their personal histories. In Reiter's study of 106 women with CPP, 48% had a history of major psychosocial trauma (molestation, incest, or rape) compared with 6.5% of 92 pain-free control subjects presenting for annual routine gynecologic examination (p < .001). The high prevalence of reports of psychosexual trauma elicited from pelvic pain patients supports the hypothesis that pelvic pain is specifically and psychodynamically related to sexual abuse. However, Rajkin and colleagues did not find a higher prevalence of childhood or adult sexual abuse in a group of women with CPP compared with women with chronic pain in other locations, although women with CPP reported a higher incidence of childhood or adult sexual abuse in a group of women with CPP compared with women with chronic pain in other locations, although women with CPP reported a higher incidence of childhood sexual abuse. These findings argue against a unique relation between sexual abuse and CPP and suggest that abusive experiences promote the chronicity of many different painful conditions. Morrison also reported an association between sexual abuse and a wide variety of pathologic conditions. Jamieason and Steege, in a survey of 581 women seen in primary care practices, found that 28% of women reported having been sexually abused as children and 26% as adults. In this study, those abused only in childhood did not have an increased prevalence of CPP or other pain disorders, whereas those who had suffered abuse both as children and adults did.

When such a history is documented, the clinician and patient together must judge whether the feelings surrounding these events are intense enough to intrude upon the present. If so, psychotherapeutic help may be indicated. If not, although the memories may be painful, further emotional work on this area may not be beneficial. The treatment literature on the sequelae of abuse (and their treatment) is disappointing, especially when the abuse occurred in the distant past. In either case, it is difficult to judge whether these events are directly relevant to the present pain and hence demand attention, or whether they contribute to a psychologically vulnerable substrate acted upon by subsequent physical and emotional events. In these circumstances, it may be worthwhile to suggest further mental health evaluation as an exploratory measure, being careful not to imply that the patient is being referred because the physician is certain that the abuse is related to the development of the pain.

**Sexual Dysfunction**

In clinical practice, women presenting with CPP often report a high incidence of marital distress and sexual dysfunction, particularly dyspareunia. Stout and Steege found that 56% of 220 married women scored in the maritaly distressed range (less than 100) on the Locke-Wallace Marital Adjustment Scale at the time of initial visit. A high level of marital distress has also been reported in other chronic pain patients and their spouses. Although some women report satisfactory sexual functioning before the onset of pain symptoms, others appear to have
long-standing impairments in sexual response. In our experience, sexual difficulties are often the problem that makes a person seek help for her pain.

**DIAGNOSTIC STRATEGIES**

**Recognizing a Chronic Pain Syndrome**

Many women can experience pain for longer than 6 months without becoming debilitated; although their pain is chronic, such women are not described as having a CPS. The following are the common clinical hallmarks of true CPSs:

1. **Duration of 6 months or longer**
2. **Incomplete relief by most previous treatments**
3. **Significantly impaired physical function at home or at work**
4. **Signs of depression (sleep disturbance, weight loss, loss of appetite)**
5. **Pain out of proportion to pathology**
6. **Altered family roles**

Of the signs of depression, sleep disturbances are usually the first to appear. Careful questioning is needed to distinguish the patient's self-esteem and progressively reduce her family's interactions with her to little more than checking on her pain. Over time, this covertly reinforces the symptom of pain and imparts it unintended value as a major means of maintaining communication within the family.

**Simultaneous Medical and Psychosocial Evaluation**

When the aforementioned markers of CPS are present, one should surrender the need to immediately discover how much of the pain problem is physical and how much is psychologic. Rather than guess, it is useful to ask two separate questions: Is there a physical disease that requires medical or surgical treatment? Is there an emotional or psychological distress that requires treatment?

It is useful to directly state that the precise connection between these two cannot be measured; this can help diminish the patient's fear that she will be told “it's all in her head.” The patient can then be more open to sharing her personal and emotional concerns. If this statement is made early in the evaluation, before all physical evaluations have been carried out, the patient is likely to be less defensive. At this stage, a mental health consultant has a better chance of developing rapport with the patient and will be more helpful collaborator when needed.

**History Taking**

The site, duration, pattern during activities, relation to position changes, and association with bodily functions are all important elements of pain. For example, pain that is focal and positional is more often associated with adhesive disease; pain that is absent in the morning but worsens progressively during the day may be associated with pelvic congestion or pelvic floor muscle dysfunction. The patterns of pain associated with endometriosis are discussed earlier.

The chronology of the pain is critical. As CPS develops, pain can be present over a progressively larger area despite stable organic pathology. Interpreting this as the breakdown or wearing out of physiologic systems that deal with pain signals has some biologic validity and may make sense to the patient.

From a cognitive perspective, it is invaluable to discern the patient's and her family's ideas about the causes of and future for her pain. Fears of cancer can be discovered even if this diagnosis was never even remotely considered by the clinician. Less dramatic, but equally powerful, attributions of cause can emerge, such as pelvic infection that is due to sexual acts remote in time, arguments with a spouse, divine retribution, and so forth.

**Physical Examination**

The exam begins with single finger palpation of the abdominal wall, with and without having the patient flex the rectus muscles. A positive Carnett sign (persistent increase in tenderness when palpation is done in the presence of abdominal wall flexion) implies at least a contribution to the pain from abdominal wall myofascial sources. On occasion, gentle fingertip palpation of the abdominal wall can detect such trigger points in the musculature.

Pelvic exam then begins with external review of the vulva and vestibule. Gentle palpation with a cotton swab can detect areas of sensitivity compatible with vestibulitis in the introitus or trigger points higher in the vagina.

Guiding a patient through contraction-relaxation sequences of the abdominal, thigh, and vaginal introital muscles can reduce the discomfort of the examination and can indicate the patient's degree of control over muscle tension. Single-digit palpation of the levator plate, perineum, and obturator muscles can elicit tenderness compatible with the label of pelvic floor myalgia. This condition is often present as a sequel to some other pelvic pain, but it can become a problem in itself. Discomfort is usually felt as pelvic pressure and radiation pain to the sacrum, near the insertions of the levator plate muscles.

Single-digit palpation should also be used to discover areas of tenderness in the cervix, uterus, and adnexa as well. Premature addition of the abdominal hand to the exam adds nociceptive signals from abdominal wall myofascial components that may lead the examiner to overattribute pain to the viscera. Finally, the abdominal hand is added to assess size, shape, and mobility of pelvic structures. Adnexal thickening and mobility, pelvic relaxation, coccygeal tenderness, and focal pain that reproduce dyspareunia should be noted.

**Laboratory Tests**

**Imaging Studies**

In the case of CPS, it has already been established that intensity of pain does not correlate well with extent of organic pathology. It follows that if the physical examination is relatively benign and is not severely limited by body habitus, extensive imaging usually adds little to the database needed before laparoscopy is performed. This is especially true in the case of organ-specific studies (intravenous pyelography, barium enema, colonoscopy) in the absence of symptoms or signs pointing to a specific organ.
system (e.g., blood in the stools). If the patient has had multiple previous surgeries, high-resolution studies such as MRI and computed tomography scans are often misleading because of postoperative artifact. “Cystic masses” seen on such studies often prove to be nothing more than pockets of adhesions or peritoneal inclusion cysts.

Blood Studies
Relatively few hematologic or chemical measures are of use in diagnosing CPP. An elevated leukocyte count and erythrocyte sedimentation rate may make the clinician suspect chronic pelvic inflammation. However, even when cervical cultures are negative for the most common sexually transmitted diseases. The cancer antigen-125 test is positive in advanced endometriosis but is not sufficiently sensitive to detect early-stage disease or reliably monitor its response to treatment. If any remnant ovarian tissue is present, FSH and estradiol levels remain in premenopausal ranges in almost all instances. Replacement estrogen therapy should be withdrawn 3 weeks before these levels are measured.

Anesthetic Blocks
Injection of small volumes of a local anesthetic, 1 to 5 ml of 1% lidocaine or 0.5% bupivacaine, blocks pain from either an entrapped segmental nerve (e.g., ilioinguinal) or an abdominal wall trigger point. In the latter case, such blocks can be therapeutic as well as diagnostic. Many anesthesia pain clinicians administer epidural or spinal anesthetics to distinguish pain arising from peripheral organs from pain that has become completely central in origin.

In some instances, it is useful to attempt transvaginal blocks with the same local anesthetics for vaginal apex pain, as discussed above. Local blocks can be therapeutic as well as diagnostic. A series of three or four blocks administered 1 to 2 weeks apart may give relief for months to years in some instances. In most cases, a history and careful routine physical examination distinguishes central from lateral sources of pelvic pain. When this discrimination is difficult, it may be useful to administer a transvaginal uterosacral block (blocking most uterine innervation) and then repeat the pelvic examination. When this relieves the pain, the pain can be assumed to arise from the uterus, but if the pain is not relieved, one cannot distinguish a failed block from pain of nonuterine origin.

Psychologic Tests and Interviews
To distinguish physical from psychogenic causes for pain, many studies of CPP have used traditional psychologic instruments that were developed to measure general psychopathology or personality factors. In some studies, more abnormalities are detected in women without physical pathology at laparoscopy. In other papers, women with organic disease who have had pain for a long time appear equally distressed in their questionnaire responses. These psychometric instruments generally have little face value for chronic pain patients, and their use often confirms the physician’s fears that the health care provider thinks she is “crazy” or that the pain is “all in her head.” Once again, the question of whether the emotional distress identified by these instruments is an antecedent to or a consequence of persistent pain remains unanswered. A more complete review of the psychometric instruments that have been used to study CPP is presented elsewhere.

Psychometric tests are most useful when they are interpreted by a psychologist who has interviewed the patient, and they serve best as a means to better understand the patient’s strengths and weaknesses, rather than as a means to decide who needs surgery.

Laparoscopy
Great strides have been made in operative laparoscopy in the past two decades. New techniques and new terminology (e.g., pelviscopy) imply new “magic” to the physician and public alike. Laparoscopy should be liberally performed for diagnostic purposes, and ablation/excision of endometriosis and lysis of adhesions are no doubt useful procedures. However, the premature surgical procedure errs in the notion that pain is “hardwired” to pelvic pathology. The available evidence clearly argues against this. When a CPS is clinically evident, results of laparoscopic treatment alone, despite comparable pathology, are much less impressive. For a patient with the clinical markers of CPS listed earlier, the complete workup as described should be performed before laparoscopy.

In some puzzling cases, we have performed laparoscopy under local anesthesia to “pain map” the pelvis. A 2-mm laparoscope and a small suprapubic probe are placed with the use of short-acting intravenous analgesia (remifentanil) and local lidocaine 1%. Having been oriented to the procedure beforehand, as each organ is touched, she is asked (i) “Does this give you the pain you get?” and (ii) “Please rate the pain.” She responds with a number picked from a scale of 1 to 10, with 10 signifying the “worst pain you could imagine.” This technique may make it possible to determine whether visualized pathology is causing nociceptive signals or to discriminate visceral from somatic pain. It is possible in some cases to block the superior hypogastric plexus during pain mapping to better predict benefit from presacral neuroectomy. In this approach, mapping is done before and after injecting 10 ml of 1% lidocaine just underneath the peritoneum over the sacrum, using a 7-inch, 22-gauge spinal needle.

MANAGEMENT
Physicians use specific treatments in chronic pain depending on the model of pain perception that they follow. The surgically oriented gynecologist often tacitly follows the cartesian model, attempting to eliminate organic tissue damage to diminish pain proportionately. The behaviorist, cognitive therapist, and insight-oriented psychotherapist use approaches consistent with each one’s basic therapeutic orientation, whereas advocates of the gate control theory use medications and other treatments that make sense based on that theory. The following represents an eclectic treatment approach. The treatment literature is considerably sparser than is the literature exploring the etiology of CPP.

General Principles
A complete evaluation of CPS often reveals a number of contributing factors, such as bladder irritability, irregular bowel function, poor posture, and emotional and relationship stresses, in addition to laparoscopically visualized pathology. Treating each component sequentially is common practice but often ends in frustration because each treatment addresses only
a part of the problem. Simultaneous treatments often begin with disquieting multiple drug therapy but allow better relief. Close follow-up at regularly scheduled visits allows gradual tapering of medications over time. Planned visits also provide support and a coping mechanism for the patient. When the patient is essentially required to feel worse to be seen again, the pain may be tacitly reinforced.

**Medication Use**

**Analgesics**

Advocates of the operant conditioning model suggest that analgesics be taken continuously, in a non-pain-contingent fashion. This eliminates the need to demonstrate pain behaviors or voice pain symptoms to justify the use of medication, thus eliminating the tendency of medication to act as a reinforcer of pain behaviors. This approach is benign enough when relatively nontoxic and nonaddicting medications such as acetaminophen are used, but it presents potential hazards when drugs such as the following are used: nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs; gastric irritation, renal damage); aspirin or NSAIDs in combination with the milder narcotics, such as codeine, oxycodeone, and pentazocine (constipation, sedation, habituation); and pure narcotics (addiction, diminished analgesic potency over time). When well tolerated, all three types of drugs can serve well in appropriate patients (without histories of substance abuse). Indeed, contrary to common perception, there is support for the notion that chronic low-dose opiate therapy may allow good return of function without adverse side effects in those who have failed intensive pain clinic treatments.

**Antidepressants**

This class of drugs, particularly the tricyclic antidepressants, can potentiate the effects of analgesics in CPS, even when given at doses less than those usually used in the treatment of depression. Agents such as fluoxetine (Prozac) show promise and have a low level of side effects. Few controlled trials of antidepressants have been carried out in CPP patients.

**Anxiolytics**

Anxiolytic drugs are certainly widely prescribed by gynecologists, although it is uncertain how often they are given for pain. In one study, alprazolam, a trazodobenzodiazepine with mixed anxiolytic and antidepressant effects, had a surprising degree of analgesic effect in moderate to high doses in patients with chronic pain of malignant origin and concomitant mood changes or anxiety. These patients were already receiving narcotics, which may suggest that alprazolam potentiates the analgesic effect of narcotics. Their role in conjunction with non-narcotic analgesics is uncertain, and the addiction potential is obvious.

**Other Medications**

Nonanalgesic and nonpsychotropic drugs also have potential roles in the treatment of specific pelvic conditions. For example, medroxyprogesterone acetate treatment sufficient to suppress ovarian function may reduce the diameter of engorged pelvic veins and thus reduce the discomfort of pelvic congestion. However, the longest-lasting relief was observed when psychotherapy was used as well. The use of GnRH agonists has been recommended to distinguish gynecologic from nongynecologic sources of pain; however, these agents also relieve the symptoms of IBS, probably by reducing serum relaxin levels. When the differential diagnosis includes ovarian remnant syndrome, residual ovary syndrome, or any other disorder influenced by the menstrual cycle, the impact of GnRH agonists on pelvic pain must be interpreted with caution in anyone with symptoms at all compatible with bowel dysfunction. In addition, pain threshold has been shown to be lower premenstrually, even in asymptomatic patients. The impact of the menstrual cycle itself in chronic pain patients has not been well explored, but it seems likely that it may impart some cyclicity even to conditions unrelated to the reproductive tract. Cyclicity of symptoms must therefore be interpreted with caution, and the obliteration of symptoms or of their cyclicity by pharmacologically obliterating the menstrual cycle does not demonstrate a gynecologic cause. To address the most common clinical circumstance: relieving pain with a GnRH agonist does not prove that the pain is due to endometriosis, nor does it prove that pain comes from the reproductive tract, as discussed above.

**Surgery**

Two basic surgical approaches have been used to treat CPP: removing pelvic organs and treating visible disease while leaving the pelvic organs in place. Only the former approach has been evaluated for efficacy to any degree.

In the United States, about 12% of hysterectomies are performed with pelvic pain as the primary indication. An additional 6.1% are performed for endometriosis or adenomyosis, and 5.1% are performed for pelvic inflammatory disease; no doubt many in these two categories also involve symptoms of pain. In about one third of hysterectomies performed for pain, no pathology is found. Despite the frequency of unrevealed pathology, no as an indication for this procedure, data regarding efficacy are surprisingly sparse. One report notes relief in 78% of women after hysterectomy for pelvic pain of uterine etiology (women with adnexal or other pelvic disease were excluded). However, the presence or absence of uterine pathology (adenomyosis or leiomyomata) had no bearing on whether pain was relieved. It cannot be determined from the report (Table 29.1) whether failure to obtain relief was due to the presence of other pelvic conditions, postoperative adhesion formation, or psychologic reasons. Symptom substitution was not evaluated in the report. Relief of pain by removal of the normal uterus is even more puzzling; apparently this was not accounted for by concomitant procedures performed for deficient pelvic support. Some of these cases may have involved pelvic congestion or perhaps other mechanisms even less well understood. A 22% failure rate emphasizes the need for careful preoperative evaluation of all potentially contributing factors, both physical and emotional.

According to two recent reports, hysterectomy performed in primary care settings was very effective for the treatment of CPP. In a prospective observational study of private practices in Maine, Carlson and associates reported that at a 1-year follow-up, satisfaction with the outcome of surgical treatment was much higher than satisfaction with the outcome of medical therapy. However, about one third of women improved substantially on medical therapy, and perhaps women were more likely to undergo operation when organic pathology was demonstrable. In the Maryland Women’s Health Study, 1,299 women were interviewed at length before hysterectomy for pelvic pain, bowel dysfunction and at 3, 6, 12, and 24 months after surgery. In more than 90% of cases, the procedure was well tolerated and did not result in postoperative depression or a decline in
sexual functioning. In the subset of women with pain as the primary indication for surgery, relief of pain occurred in more than 80%, indicating that the clinicians involved generally used good judgment and technique. In general, women with preop-

erative depression or sexual dysfunction did not fare as well as their less symptomatic counterparts, although even when hys-
terectomy is performed in women with both depression and chronic pelvic pain, slightly more than 80% are improved emo-
tionally and in terms of pain at 2-year follow-up.

Adnexal and other intrapelvic diseases, usually endometri-
sis or adhesions that are due to either postoperative changes or chronic pelvic inflammatory disease, have been treated by both laparotomy and laparoscopy. Use of the CO2 laser during lap-
arotomies does not improve the results of standard infertility surgical techniques as evaluated by second-look laparoscopy and by pregnancy rate.

Laparoscopy is probably superior to laparotomy for treat-
ing adhesive disease. In the rabbit model, infliction of injuries with the laser by way of laparotomy resulted in adhesion for-
mation, but no adhesions formed when identical damage was caused by laparoscopy. In the rabbit and the human, adhesio-
lysis is more effective with laparoscopy than with laparotomy. However, none of the large clinical trials of laparoscopic adhe-
siolysis evaluate the effects of the procedures on pain. Although second-look verification of effective adhesiolysis is lacking, results of several studies on the treatment of pelvic adhesions for the relief of pain are encouraging. Even when treated by laparotomy, with the use of infertility techniques, 28 of 42 (65%) patients reported cure or improvement of pain. In a sample of mostly primary care patients, 84% of 65 patients had relief of pain after laser laparoscopic adhesiolysis with follow-up intervals of 1 to 5 years. In Sutton’s large series, 85% had pain relief at 1 year. Streege and Stout reported that 13 of 20 (65%) patients who had laparoscopic laser adhesiolysis had good relief of pain at a follow-up of 6 to 12 months after surgery. However, if a CPS was present, only 4 of 10 (40%) patients with equivalent adhesive disease obtained relief. The greater the emotional and behavioral dis-

ability, the greater the chance for combined medical, surgical, and mental health management.

Several studies support an association between pelvic pain and endometriosis, although a strict quantitative relationship is lacking. In terms of surgical treatment of pain from en-
dometriosis, laser ablation results in relief of pain in about 60% of women at 1 year follow-up, compared with 96% treated by laparoscopic excision of the disease. A randomized trial comparing these two methods has not been done. The benefits of surgical excision may be prolonged by subsequent medi-
cal therapy. Numerous studies have been done of postsurgi-
cal treatment with hormonal medications. Oral contraceptives, Danocrine, progestins, and GnRH agonists (with or without add-back estrogen/progestin) have all been shown to be effec-
tive. Although the GnRH agonists have become perhaps the most widely used of these, definitive evidence for their superior-
ity is lacking. The more economical and less physiologically in-
trusive approach would seem to favor sex steroids over GnRH agonists. Most troublesome in reviewing all of these studies is the observation that dyspareunia is the symptom that is most refractory to treatment, testifying to its multifactorial nature.

Presacral neurectomy, as an adjunct to surgical excision of endometriosis, has been evaluated for its effect on pelvic pain. In a retrospective sample of 71 women undergoing con-

servative resection of endometriosis by way of laparotomy, 35 (50%) who also had presacral neurectomy enjoyed signifi-

antly greater improvement in both dysmenorrhea and dys-
pareunia, with 75% to 95% obtaining improvement. Two sub-
sequent retrospective reports noted that similar percentages (about 75%) of women obtained pain relief after endometriosis-
surgery that included presacral neurectomy, compared with about 25% who obtained relief without neurectomy.

Two studies on the treatment of presacral neurectomy as adjunctive therapy along with conservative resection for stage III–IV endometriosis reached different conclusions about the additive value of presacral neurectomy. Tjaden and associates performed conservative resection by way of laparotomy and randomized eight women to receive or not receive presacral neurectomy. All the neurectomized women improved dramati-
cally, whereas the others did not. The institutional review board mandated stopping the study because statistical significance had been reached. The authors then reported an open clinical-
sical series in which 13 of 17 women improved substantially af-
ter conservative resection with presacral neurectomy. Candas and colleagues reached a different conclusion after randomiz-
ing 71 women to receive or not receive presacral neurectomy along with conservative resection of advanced endometrio-
sis. They found that central dysmenorrhea improved slightly more in neurectomized women, but daily pain and dyspareu-
nia were not improved by adding presacral neurectomy to the procedure. The literature is therefore inconclusive regarding the value of the neurectomy procedure.

Laparoscopic treatment of even severe endometriosis has a growing number of advocates. Again, the focus has been on fertility rates, but one prospective report notes prolonged pain relief in two thirds of patients. The ability to perform pre-
sacral neurectomy by way of laparoscopy should not provoke wide adoption of the procedure without careful consideration of these data.

An ovarian remnant should be removed if it is persistently symptomatic despite all reasonable attempts at medical sup-
pression and if a menopause is desired in the patient’s near future. Whether performed by laparoscopy or laparotomy, the dissection should be detailed and should include all the peri-
toneum surrounding the mass. The ureter and pelvic sidewall vessels should be exposed and carefully freed from the speci-
men. When a GnRH agonist has been used preoperatively for symptom control or to distinguish the relative contributions made by the remnant and other pelvic pathology, such as ad-
hesions, the remnant tissue may become so small as to make it difficult to identify. Hence, if a palpable (or ultrasonically visible) mass disappears after GnRH agonist treatment, it may be wise to allow time for it to regrow before pursuing surgical excision. When the remnant is small, some surgeons have stim-
ulated the remnant with clomiphene citrate to make it easier to find.

Finally, the peritoneal windows syndrome must be men-
tioned. Openings in the peritoneum covering the posterior broad ligament and the cul-de-sac of Douglas, or peritoneal “windows,” have been noted since the 1950s and were associ-
ated with endometriosis by Chatman. Excision and closure of the windows have been anecdotally reported, but the value of these operations in treating pain associated with the disease remains to be demonstrated. It is my practice to excise the peri-
toneal involved with the window, but not to stitch the area closed. Microscopic endometriosis is found in many cases.

Alternative Treatments

Biofeedback, transcutaneous electric nerve stimulation units, relaxation training, and individual and couples counseling all have their appropriate roles in individual cases, but none is so clearly applicable or effective that its automatic use is
supported in cases of CPP. In keeping with the approach outlined in the earlier discussion of medications, problems requiring counseling should be addressed but should be treated as issues separate from the discussion of appropriate surgical approaches. Cause-and-effect relations are difficult to demonstrate even in retrospect when psychologic assistance works.

Management Overview

The most effective clinical approach requires simultaneous treatment of as many factors as possible: anatomic, muscularkeletal, functional bowel and bladder, psychologic, and so forth. Patient and physician must contract for the long term and work from a rehabilitation perspective, rather than hope that the latest single addition to the treatment will prove to be the answer. The physician, to prevent frustration and feelings of defeat, must often play the role of helping to manage and relieve the pain while helping to maximize function, even when pain persists. To the surgically trained gynecologist who prefers a clear-cut single answer to a clinical problem, this can be the most difficult part of dealing with the problem of CPP.

THE EVOLUTION OF A CHRONIC PAIN SYNDROME

As is apparent from this discussion, CPP is a heterogeneous problem, not a single diagnosis, and no single etiologic hypothesis is clearly supported. Most of the hypotheses reviewed here have some credible evidence supporting them; none have been sufficiently validated.

Some patients appear to have a pure version of one or the other of the syndromes described, whereas many others present with several or many simultaneously. Psychologic and neurologic mechanisms are proposed here to explain how the evolution of chronic pain may occur, regardless of the particular tissue damage or functional disorder that may first have provided nociceptive stimuli. We suggest the following elements (Fig. 29.1): biologic events sufficient to initiate nociception, alterations of lifestyles and relations over time, recruitment of neighboring organ systems, anxiety and affective disorders, and a circular interaction (vicious cycle) among these elements.

Biologic Events Sufficient to Initiate Nociception

Sexually transmitted diseases, endometriosis, recurrent bladder and vaginal infections, primary or secondary functional dyspareunia, alterations of bowel habit, muscular dysfunction, pelvic congestion, and gynecologic or other abdominal surgeries (Table 29.1) may contribute individually or in combination.

Alteration of Lifestyle and Relations

Physical activities at home and recreational pursuits can suffer. Believing that rest usually helps in the treatment of most causes of acute pain, the patient may assume that the same applies to chronic pain and may thus restrict herself more than actual discomfort dictates. Family members start to regard the patient as sick and leave her out of many activities, thus reducing her roles within the family structure. With time, concern for and discussion of her pain can become the family’s major pattern of communication with the pain victim. If sexual intimacy has been the major means of emotional sharing and smoothing over of differences, and if this intimacy is reduced, then the altered pattern of interactions may take hold more quickly.

Anxiety and Affective Disorders

Depression can occur as a cumulative result of the disability suffered, or the pain can bring on an episode of depression in a patient already biologically vulnerable. The observation most relevant here is that pain patients with a family history of depression can derive the most benefit from tricyclic antidepressants.

The Vicious Cycle

Diminished activity, altered family roles and social supports, anxiety, and affective disturbances can influence nociception by a variety of central pathways, ultimately altering spinal cord “gating” of nociceptive signals. Cognitions about the pain can play an additional role.

Several important modifying influences can be present in addition to these major pathways (Fig. 29.2). Incest and other forms of sexual abuse have attracted the most attention as possible forerunners of CPP. However, CPP is clearly not a unique or specific sequel to sexual abuse, and a large proportion of CPP patients have not been abused in this manner. Victims of sexual abuse have many negative emotional sequelae; pain problems often occur after abuse, but they are not necessarily directly caused by the abuse.

Sexual abuse perpetrated by a family member is a clear indication of a psychologically detrimental environment of rearing that might have led to disturbances in character and personality.
An integrative model for chronic pelvic pain, including elements of gate control theory, cognitive-behavioral theory, and the operant conditioning model.

development perhaps equal in importance to the terrible trauma of the abuse itself. Learning more about the factors that can mitigate the impact of sexual abuse in general will facilitate our understanding of the psychologic vulnerabilities that can make a particular person more susceptible to development of CPP or other chronic pain disorders.

A genetic predisposition to depression also allows the vicious cycle to become easily established and strengthened over time. Antidepressant medications play an important role in the overall therapeutic plan in such cases. A relatively new area of research in pain is dealing with possible genetically determined variations in central neurotransmitter processes that may predispose to the development of pain syndromes.

Several authors have suggested that the concept of perceived control best explains the development of affective changes accompanying chronic pain, regardless of the location of the pain.

The individual who sees herself as having little control over the physical and emotional events affecting her may be most vulnerable to development of a CPP. It may be reasonable to consider this variable as a culmination of the effects of affective change, activity, family roles, sexual dysfunction, and previous victimization experiences.

The longer that pain has been a part of the person's life, and the more psychologic vulnerabilities she carries forward to the present, the less likely it is that any treatment of the tissue damage itself will be effective in relieving pain and restoring physical and emotional function. However, as treatment studies show, the organic contribution to chronic pain can seldom be dismissed entirely. The more difficult task is the selection of an efficient and cost-effective combination of treatment approaches aimed at the most important factors acting in the present.

Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

Integrative Model for Chronic Pelvic Pain

- **Tissue injury**
- **Functional disorder**
- **Genetic predisposition**
- **Neurotic response**
- **Psychosomatic components**

![Integrative Model for Chronic Pelvic Pain](image)

**FIGURE 29.** An integrative model for chronic pelvic pain, including elements of gate control theory, cognitive-behavioral theory, and the operant conditioning model.

Bibliography


CHAPTER 30 ■ PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE
MARK G. MARTENS

DEFINITIONS

Bacterial vaginosis (BV)—A vaginal condition demonstrated by a replacement of the normal lactobacillus predominant vaginal flora with a mixture of facultative and obligate anaerobes, mycoplasma, and other species, resulting in a malodorous discharge. The presence of Gardnerella vaginalis without symptoms is not synonymous with BV.

Colpostomy—Incision into and through the vaginal epithelium into a cavity (often abscess or pelvic/abdominal cavity).

Pelvic morbidity—Temperature equal to or greater than 100.4 °F or 38 °C on two separate occasions (greater than 4 hours apart), starting 24 hours after the initiating event.

Fever—Temperature equal to or greater than 99.6 °F or 37.5 °C.

Lower genital tract infection (LGTI)—An alternative term used to describe infection limited to the cervix and/or vulva and vagina.

Mollicutes—Class of organisms that includes Chlamydia, Mycoplasma, Ureaplasma, and other species.

Outpatient therapy—Previously synonymous with oral therapy; however, the term now includes oral, ambulatory intravenous, or intermittent injectable therapies.

Parenteral therapy—Usually denotes intravenous (antibiotic) therapy, but not necessarily given while hospitalized.

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)—A general term used to refer to infection and inflammation of the upper genital tract in women.

Pneumonia—A massive infiltration of inflammatory cells into infected soft tissue resulting not in an abscess, but a “woody induration” sensation upon examination/palpation.

Prevotella—Newly named genus that now includes several species formerly called Bacteroides (e.g., Bacteroides fragilis).

Salpingitis—Infection/inflammation of one or both of the fallopian tubes (often incorrectly used as an equivalent to all PID).

Tuboovarian abscess (TOA)—A term used to describe an abscess incorporating the fallopian tube and ovary.

Upper genital tract infection (UGTI)—A more descriptive term used alternatively to PID.

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) is one of the most serious infections facing women today. According to Velebil and colleagues, it is the most common gynecologic reason for hospitalization and emergency department visits in the United States each year. Untreated or unsuccessfully treated women may suffer life-threatening consequences, and even adequately treated women are at much higher risk for potentially serious sequelae. PID is a spectrum of diseases initially involving the cervix, uterus, and fallopian tubes. Acute PID, the acute clinical syndrome, is most often attributed to an ascending spread of microorganisms from the vagina and endocervix to the endometrium, fallopian tubes, and contiguous structures. The terms acute PID and acute salpingitis are often used interchangeably, but PID is not limited to tubal infection only. A more descriptive term to differentiate the severity and extent of various forms of PID was introduced by Hemsell and colleagues: upper genital tract infection (UGTI). This is differentiated from lower genital tract infection (LGTI) because response to treatment appears to be different in these two entities. PID was previously categorized as inpatient or outpatient treatment groups, which sometimes did not accurately reflect the severity of illness.

Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) have been reported at epidemic proportions in the United States, with the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimating 19 million new infections each year. The incidence of chlamydia infections increased almost 6%, with 929,000 cases reported and 2.8 million new cases suspected annually. Gonorrhea incidence has decreased 70% since 1975, but is still estimated to occur in more than 60,000 women each year in the United States. For women, acute PID is the most common and important complication of STDs. Bell and Holmes in the 1980s estimated that 1 million women a year were treated for acute salpingitis in the United States, but recent estimates by Sutton and colleagues estimated a decrease in cases of PID to less than 800,000 per year and a 68% decrease in hospitalized PID from 1995 to 2001. About 230,000 to 300,000 women are hospitalized each year with a diagnosis of salpingitis or PID. The disease generates nearly 2.5 million visits to physicians, and an estimated 150,000 surgical procedures are performed for complications every year. According to Sutton and colleagues, the direct and indirect costs of PID and its sequelae now total $2 billion and $10 billion in the United States, respectively. In terms of overall incidence, acute PID occurs in about 1% to 2% of young, sexually active women each year. PID is the most common serious bacterial infection in women age 16 to 25 years, and the resultant morbidity exceeds that produced by all other infections combined for this age group.

ETIOLOGY

Within certain geographic areas or populations, Neisseria gonorrhoeae is a common cause of PID; however, most cases of acute PID are the result of a polymicrobial infection caused by organisms ascending from the vagina and cervix to infect the lining of the endometrium and fallopian tube. Approximately 85% of cases are natural, nonantigenic occurring infections in sexually active women of reproductive age. The remaining 15% of infections occur after procedures that break the cervical mucous barrier, such as placement of an intrauterine device (IUD), endometrial biopsy, or uterine curettage, which allow vaginal flora to infect the upper genital tract.
In the United States, non-tuberculous acute PID was traditionally separated into gonococcal and nongonococcal disease, depending on the isolation of N. gonorrhoeae from the endocervix. A variety of organisms can be isolated from the endocervix; therefore, it is difficult to determine which of these organisms cause PID and which are normal cervicovaginal flora and only present as colonizers in the upper genital tract at time of infection. Whether these organisms are prob-ably more indicative of the causative organisms, they are often difficult to obtain without suspecting endocervical contamination during the diagnostic procedure. Bacterial organisms cultured directly from tubal fluid may commonly include N. gonorrhoeae, Chlamydia trachomatis, endogenous aerobic and anaerobic bacteria, and genital Mycoplasma species. Laparoscopic studies have demonstrated a correlation of no more than 50% between endocervical and tubal cultures, but the presence of N. gonorrhoeae is usually considered an important causative factor. However, endocervical gonorrhea does not necessarily indicate its sole pathogenic nature in all cases. Direct fallopian tube cultures have demonstrated that tubal infections are often polymicrobial. The type and number of species vary depending on the stage of the disease. Gonorrhea, for example, is often cultured from the cervix during the first 24 to 48 hours of the disease but is often absent later. Similarly, fewer organisms are cultured late in the disease, and anaerobic bacteria such as Prevotella, Bacteroides, Peptococcus, and Peptostreptococcus appear to predominate. Whether these anaerobes play a causative role or increase in number and frequency as a result of the inflammatory response is uncertain. Sweet has summarized the literature by stating that in approximately one third of women with PID, N. gonorrhoeae is the only organism recovered by direct tubal or cul-de-sac culture. One third have a culture positive for N. gonorrhoeae plus a mixture of endogenous aerobic and anaerobic bacteria, such as retaining one third have only aerobic and anaerobic organisms. Chow and colleagues and Monif and colleagues have postulated that the gonococcus may initiate acute PID and produce tissue damage. This damage changes the local environment, which in turn allows anaerobic and aerobic organisms from the vaginal and cervical flora to invade the upper genital tract. Both Eichenbach and Sweet have suggested that not all PID follows gonococcal infection and that aerobic flora may also have a polymicrobial etiology.

According to Sweet and Gibbs, about 20% of all women with salpingitis have tubal cultures positive for C. trachomatis. N. gonorrhoeae and C. trachomatis are found in the same individual 25% to 40% of the time. Scandinavian studies by Eilard and coworkers have reported the recovery of C. trachomatis from the cervix in 22% to 47% of women with acute PID. C. trachomatis by itself produces a mild form of salpingitis with an insidious onset. In contrast to gonorrhea, Chlamydia can remain in the fallopian tubes for months or years after initial colonization of the upper genital tract. Svensson and colleagues found that women with C. trachomatis infection at laparoscopy had the most severe fallopian tube involvement, probably because of its clinically silent or minimally symptomatic nature, which results in difficult or delayed diagnosis and therefore delayed or absent treatment. The two major sequelae of acute PID are tubal infertility and ectopic pregnancy. These have been strongly associated with prior chlamydial infection as a consequence of intratubal and peritubal adhesions.

Although C. trachomatis is generally believed to be one of the more common causes of PID, along with N. gonorrhoeae, its etiologic role is very different. N. gonorrhoeae is a Gram-negative diplococcus with rapid growth that is due to a rapid cycle of about 20 to 40 minutes to divide. This results in a logarithmic increase in the number of organisms once N. gonorrhoeae reaches an area such as the endometrium or fallopian tube, where growth is relatively unimpeded. This rapid increase in the number of Gram-negative bacteria usually results in a rapid and intense inflammatory response by the woman’s host defenses. The response to this rapid bacterial growth is proliferation and aggregation of white blood cells and their inflammatory mediators. Mycoplasma, Gardnerella, Mycoplasma hominis, and Ureaplasma urealyticum have also been suggested as causal agents in acute salpingitis by Ness and colleagues (2005). However, although success was evident with short-term follow-up, long-term follow-up demonstrated that treatment of C. trachomatis was necessary. PID regimens without Chlamydia coverage resulted in an increased incidence of long-term complications such as abscesses and chronic pelvic pain, with resultant increased surgical intervention. Therefore, modern treatment of PID includes C. trachomatis coverage, even though this organism may not be the cause of the acute symptoms.

Nongonococcal infections are believed to be the result of acute bacterial infections or possibly a preceding or previously treated C. trachomatis UCT. This is confirmed by the high incidence of Chlamydia antibodies in patients with acute PID, ectopic pregnancy, and infertility.

In addition to N. gonorrhoeae, Chlamydia, and aerobic and anaerobic bacteria, other microorganisms have been implicated as etiologic agents in acute salpingitis. Bacterial vaginosis-related organisms such as Gardnerella, Mycoplasma hominis, and Ureaplasma urealyticum have also been suggested as causal agents in acute salpingitis by Ness and colleagues (2005). However, their role remains controversial, and this study contradicts in a study from the previous group of investigators. Cervical cultures positive for both M. hominis and U. urealyticum have been recovered from women with PID. However, the rate of isolation can be as high as 75%, which
is not statistically different from that of women who are sex-
ually active but without PID (baseline rate of about 50%), as
found by Lemeke and Losel. However, evidence is recently
accumulating that Mycoplasma genitalium may play a role in
PID, with Ross of Great Britain calling for the development of
reliable tests for its identification and susceptibility.

RISK FACTORS

Several factors that predispose to the development of acute
PID have been identified. Risk factors are important consid-
erations in both the clinical management and prevention of
UGTIs. There is a strong correlation between exposure to STDs
and PID. In the United States, recent studies have confirmed
this association with thevey of N. gonorrhoeae and C. trachomatis in about 50% of patients hospitalized with acute
PID. Age at first intercourse, frequency of intercourse, number
of sexual partners, and marital status are all associated with
the frequency of exposure to STDS and thus are associated with
PID. Women with multiple partners have an increased
risk (four to six times normal) for development of acute sal-
ingitis, compared with women who have monogamous sex-
ual relations. Recently, Ness and colleagues have demonstrated
the validity of a Chlamydia risk factor scoring system for the
prediction of 74% of PID. Significant factors included age at
first sex, cervicitis, history of PID, family income, smoking, me-
droxyprogesterone use, and sex with menes.

The incidence of acute PID decreases with advancing age.
Adolescent girls are at significant risk for development of acute
salpingitis. Westrom reported that nearly 70% of women with
PID were younger than 25 years of age, 33% experienced
their first infection before the age of 19, and 75% were nul-
aripous. The risk for development of acute PID in a sexually
active adolescent female patient was 1:8, whereas the risk was
1:80 for a sexually active woman 24 years of age or older.
Several reasons have been suggested for this increased risk.
The two microorganisms most commonly considered to be
risks are Chlamydia and N. gonorrhoeae. The incidence of acute
PID was increased in about 50% of patients hospitalized with acute
PID. The pill’s ability to inhibit ovulation presumably helps from
providing a nidus for tuboovarian abscess formation.

Surgical procedures of the female genital tract also place
the patient at risk for PID. About 15% of pelvic infections
occur after procedures that break the cervical mucous barrier,
allowing for colonization of the upper genital tract. Eichen-
bach and Holmes reported that these procedures include en-
dometrial biopsy, curettage, IUD insertion, hysteroscopy, and
hysterosalpingography. The incidence of UGTI associated with
first-trimester abortions is about 1 in 200 cases. Recent practice
has emphasized the use of microorganisms associated with high
risk to attempt to decrease the incidence of intravenous acute
PID. Two randomized trials have indicated that the treatment
of bacterial vaginosis (BV) with metronidazole substantially
reduced postabortion PID (Jackson and Luton and Dunstable
Hospital).

Acute salpingitis occurring in a woman with a previous
tubal ligation was once believed to be rare. Phillips and
D’Abling reported that acute PID developed in the proximal
stump of previously ligated fallopian tubes in 1 of 450 women
hospitalized for acute salpingitis. However, many cases may be
undiagnosed because of the absence of peritoneal signs.

Prevalent acute PID is also a risk factor for future episodes
of the disease. Another acute tubal infection develops in about
25% of women who have had acute PID. The exact mechanism
for this increased susceptibility has not been determined, but
it may be loss of the natural protective mechanisms of the fal-
lopian tube lining against microorganisms. This increased risk
may be related to the sexual habits of the woman involved. Acute
salpingitis occurring in a woman with previous
PID, with Ross of Great Britain calling for the development of
reliable tests for its identification and susceptibility.

Acute PID presents with a broad spectrum of clinical symp-
toms. The differential diagnosis of acute PID includes acute
appendicitis, endometritis, torsion or rupture of an adnexal
mass, ectopic pregnancy, and IUGTIs. Common clinical manifesta-
tions include lower abdominal pain, cervical motion tenderness, and adnexal tenderness
and may include fever, cervical discharge, and leukocytosis. Histor-
ically, the diagnosis of acute PID was not established unless the
patient had the triad of lower abdominal and pelvic pain, fever,
and leukocytosis.

Jacobson and Westrom have shown that all three are present
in only 15% to 30% of actual PID cases. In addition, about
50% of patients initially present with a normal temperature
and white blood cell (WBC) count. Pain in the lower abdomen
and pelvis is by far the most common symptom of acute PID.
It occurs in more than 90% of patients at initial presentation.
The pain is usually described as constant and dull and is ac-
centuated by motion and sexual activity. Generally, the pain
is of recent onset, usually less than 7 days. About 75% of pa-
tients with PID have an associated endovascular infection and
coevertent purulent vaginal discharge. Nausea and vomiting are comparable late symptoms in the course of the disease.
Normal vaginal bleeding, especially menorrhagia, or spotting,
is noted in about 40% of patients. The CDC has established the
criteria for making the diagnosis of gonorrhea based on clinical
grounds. The most recent update includes that only signs
of pelvic and abdominal pain are required for a diagnosis of PID and eliminates leukocytosis and fever as essential criteria (Table 30.1). Perihepatic inflammation and adhesions, more commonly known as the Fitz-Hugh-Curtis syndrome, develop in 1% to 10% of patients with acute PID. Signs and symptoms include right upper quadrant pain, pleuritic pain, and tenderness in the right upper quadrant when the liver is palpated. Usually the symptoms and signs of this syndrome are preceded by the clinical onset of acute PID. The condition is often mistakenly diagnosed as either acute cholecystitis or pneumonia. Fitz-Hugh-Curtis syndrome is believed to develop from vascular or transperitoneal dissemination of either N. gonorrhoeae or C. trachomatis. The majority of women with PID have either mucopurulent cervical discharge or evidence of WBC on a microscopic evaluation of vaginal fluid. If the cervical discharge appears normal and no WBCs are observed on the wet prep of vaginal fluid, the diagnosis of PID is unlikely, and alternative causes of pain should be investigated. A wet prep of vaginal fluid offers the ability to detect the presence of concomitant infections (e.g., bacterial vaginosis and trichomoniasis). The most specific criteria for diagnosing PID include the following:

- Endometrial biopsy with histopathologic evidence of endometritis
- Transvaginal sonography or magnetic resonance imaging techniques showing thickened, fluid-filled tubes with or without free pelvic fluid or tuboovarian complex, or Doppler studies suggesting pelvic infection (e.g., tubal hyperemia)
- Laparoscopic abnormalities consistent with PID

A diagnostic evaluation that includes some of these more extensive studies might be warranted in certain cases. Endometrial biopsy is warranted in women undergoing laparoscopy who do not have visual evidence of salpingitis, as some women with PID have endometritis alone.

Despite these shortcomings of early diagnosis, laparoscopic visualization of the pelvis is still the most accurate method of confirming the diagnosis of acute PID. However, it is logistically and economically impractical for all patients suspected of having acute PID to undergo diagnostic laparoscopy in the United States. Therefore, the diagnosis of most episodes of acute PID is often made on the basis of clinical history and physical examination. Although it is suggested that laparoscopy be offered to all patients with an uncertain diagnosis, it is strongly indicated for patients who are not responding to therapy in an effort to confirm the diagnosis, obtain cultures from the cul-de-sac or fallopian tubes, and drain pus if necessary. In summary, laparoscopic studies have shown the following:

1. The clinical diagnosis of acute PID may be inaccurate.
2. Acute PID is sometimes found in patients undergoing laparoscopy for other causes of pelvic pain.
3. Laparoscopy is a relatively safe method for making the visual diagnosis of the latter stages of PID, and thus assessing future fertility prognosis and planning.
4. Laparoscopy is an excellent means of obtaining cultures directly from the tube.

The appearance of the pelvic organs can vary from erythematous, indurated, edematous ovaries, to pockets of purulent material, to a large pyosalpinx or tuboovarian abscess. However, although no disease may be evident in early stages, it is imperative to render treatment to all stages to avoid long-term sequelae.
Other less invasive methods of diagnosis have been suggested for verifying a clinical diagnosis of acute PID. Endometrial biopsy is one alternative to laparoscopy. Paavonen and associates reported a 90% correlation between histologic endometritis and laparoscopically confirmed salpingitis. However, results may be delayed up to 2 to 3 days, making its clinical applicability limited. Ultrasonography is of limited value for patients with mild or moderate pelvic PID. Thus, the routine use of sonography in patients with acute salpingitis does not appear to be indicated. Ultrasound is helpful in distinguishing an adnexal mass, especially in patients who demonstrate a lack of response to antimicrobial therapy in the initial 48 to 72 hours of therapy. Sonohysterography, an ultrasonic examination using the instillation of saline to better define pelvic structures, is not indicated at this time for patients suspected of having PID because no studies have been performed to demonstrate its safety in the event that pathogens are dispersed into the upper genital tract in the process of instilling the saline. Culdocentesis, with evidence of purulent peritoneal fluid, is helpful in the diagnosis of acute PID. With acute PID, the WBC count of peritoneal fluid is greater than 30,000 cells/mL, compared with a WBC count of 1,000 cells/mL in women without peritoneal inflammation. However, other infections, such as appendicitis and diverticulitis, among others, can also cause purulent pelvic fluid and a false diagnosis of PID.

Laboratory tests can be obtained, but their results lack sufficient sensitivity and specificity to make them an important factor in establishing the diagnosis. Leukocytosis is not a reliable indicator of acute PID, nor does it accurately correlate with the severity of tubal inflammation or need for hospitalization. Less than 50% of women with acute PID have a WBC count greater than 10,000 cells/mL. Similarly, the erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), which for years was a routine laboratory test for the diagnosis of PID, is nonspecific and is a crude indicator of severity of disease. The ESR is elevated higher than 50 mm/hr in about 75% of women with laparoscopically confirmed acute salpingitis. However, 55% of women with pelvic pain and normal-appearing pelvic organs also have an elevated ESR. Plasma proteins, such as C-reactive protein and antichymotrypsin, have been studied to determine whether they help in the diagnosis of acute PID. They have been found to be more sensitive than the ESR. Other investigators have found that decreased or absent isoenzyme activity in peritoneal fluid in cases of acute PID is the best nonculture laboratory test for the disease. The major disadvantages of this test are that it requires several hours to complete and that peritoneal fluid must be obtained. Other evaluation has revealed various inflammatory cytokines to be associated with pelvic infections; however, these tests are not commercially available to a useful extent. Because most cases of UGTIs are associated with, and preceded by, lower genital tract infection, examination of the endocervix for inflammation, Gram stain, and culture for both N. gonorrhoeae and C. trachomatis are important for proper evaluation. A negative Gram-stained smear of the endocervix does not rule out upper tract infection. However, most studies have found that acute PID is rare without a concomitant increase in inflammatory cells in the vagina and the cervix.

**SEQUELAE**

**Infertility**

One fourth of all women who have had acute salpingitis experience one or more long-term sequelae. The most common is involuntary infertility, which occurs in about 20% of patients. PID ranks as one of the major causes of infertility. Before antibiotic therapy, 50% to 70% of women who had experienced UGTIs became sterile. The sequelae of infections vary from a patent oviduct, to peritubal and periovarian adhesions that may interfere with ovum pickup, to complete tubal obstruction. The infertility rate increases directly with the number of episodes of acute pelvic infection. Also, women with mild disease are seven times less likely to suffer tubal obstruction than women with severe PID.

**Ectopic Pregnancy**

The chance of ectopic pregnancy is increased 6- to 10-fold in patients with a previous episode of acute salpingitis. Pathologic studies estimate that at least 50% of ectopic pregnancies occur in fallopian tubes damaged by previous salpingitis. The mechanism for the increased rate is believed to be interference of ovum transport through the tube or entrapment of the ovum secondary to microscopic tubal damage.

**Chronic Pelvic Pain**

The chance that chronic pelvic pain will develop in a woman after acute salpingitis is four times that of control subjects without pelvic infection (20% vs. 5%). Chronic pelvic pain can be caused by a hydrosalpinx. A hydrosalpinx is presumably the end-stage development of a pyosalpinx. The pain can also be related to adhesions surrounding the ovary. All patients with chronic pelvic pain believed to be caused by acute PID should undergo laparoscopy or laparotomy to establish the cause of the chronic pain and rule out other diseases such as endometriosis, which require different treatment, or the presence of pelvic adhesions, which can often be directly resolved. A tuboovarian complex is a collection of pus within an anatomic space created by adherence to adjacent organs. The incidence of true adnexal abscess is about 10% in women with acute PID. Landers and Sweet noted a 20% rate of early treatment failure (after 48 to 72 hours) of antibiotic therapy as a result of persistent pain or enlargement of a tuboovarian abscess or complex. In addition, according to Landers and Sweet, 31% required an operation several weeks to months after their acute infections for persistent disease or pain.

**MORTALITY**

Before antibiotic therapy, the mortality rate associated with acute PID was 1%. Most of these deaths resulted from rupture of tuboovarian abscesses. Today, death associated with PID is rare, but the mortality rate can still be as high as 5% to 10% for ruptured tuboovarian abscesses, even with modern medical and operative therapy. This is mostly the result of subsequent development of adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), a condition often associated with serious infection or delayed treatment.

**TREATMENT**

The therapeutic goals in the management of acute PID include both elimination of the acute infection and symptoms and prevention of long-term sequelae such as infertility, ectopic pregnancy, chronic pelvic pain, and the residue of
Pelvic Inflammatory Disease

Infection. Antibiotic treatment should be started as soon as cultures have been obtained and diagnosis is confirmed or strongly suspected. Treatment is based on the consensus that PID is polymicrobial in cause. Empirical antibiotic protocols should cover a wide range of bacteria, including *N. gonorrhoeae*, *C. trachomatis*, anaerobic rods and cocci, Gram-negative aerobic rods, Gram-positive aerobes, and *Mycoplasma* species. Despite general agreement that broad-spectrum therapy is appropriate, questions persist regarding optimal therapeutic regimens. Controversy has arisen over the issue of outpatient treatment with oral antibiotics versus inpatient treatment with parenteral antibiotics. There are no data available to evaluate the efficacy of hospital versus ambulatory management of acute PID. In the United States, three of four women with acute pelvic infection are treated as outpatients for their disease. In Scandinavia, which has a different health care system, most women are treated as inpatients. In 2006, the CDC published recommended treatment guidelines for outpatient management of acute PID (Table 30.2). Some of the treatment regimens are:

**TABLE 30.2**

**CDC-RECOMMENDED TREATMENT REGIMENS FOR ORAL THERAPY OF ACUTE PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regimen A</th>
<th>Regimen B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Levofloxacin 500 mg orally once daily for 14 days&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; OR</td>
<td>Ceftriaxone 250 mg IM in a single dose PLUS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Ofloxacin 400 mg orally once daily for 14 days<sup>a</sup> WITH OR WITHOUT | Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Cefoxitin 2 g IM in a single dose and probenecid, 1 g orally administered concurrently in a single dose PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Cefoxitin 2 g IM in a single dose and probenecid, 1 g orally administered concurrently in a single dose PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS Doxycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 14 days WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg orally twice a day for 14 days OR Other parenteral third-generation cephalosporin (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime), PLUS

<sup>a</sup>Quinolones should not be used in persons with a history of recent foreign travel or partners’ travel, infections acquired in California or Hawaii, or in other areas with increased QRNG (quinolone-resistant *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*) prevalence.
Surgical emergencies (such as appendicitis) cannot be ruled out. Patients with serious illness, patients with nausea and vomiting, patients who are unable to follow or tolerate outpatient therapy, and patients with a previously failed outpatient regimen also should be hospitalized and given parenteral antibiotics. A recent trial by Ness and colleagues investigating the outcomes in patients randomized to inpatient or outpatient did not find differences in short-term outcomes, but difficulties in patient selection and randomization may not permit these results to be applicable to all PID patients.

The 2006 CDC guidelines for inpatient treatment of acute PID describe two regimens (Table 30.4). Regimen A is a combination of oral or parenteral doxycycline plus intravenous cefoxitin or cefotetan. Other broad-spectrum cephalosporins can be substituted, such as ceftriaxone (Claforan) or cefotaxime (Claforan). All of these agents are effective against penicillinase-producing N. gonorrhoeae, Peptostreptococcus, and other anaerobic species, as well as E. coli and other aerobic (facultative) species. Ceftriaxone is recommended by the CDC; however, its poor anaerobic activity and lack of trials do not make it an acceptable alternative for several investigators. Doxycycline can be given intravenously if the patient is unable to tolerate oral therapy, but it must be infused very slowly to prevent pain and sclerosis of the vein. Oral doxycycline has been demonstrated to be equally effective because of the slow growth cycle of Chlamydia and the requirement of prolonged treatment. A recent study by Viberga and colleagues investigating the microbiology of IUD-related infection found an increased recovery of Peptostreptococcus species, which generally are covered by both cephalosporin and clindamycin. A possible disadvantage of the cephalosporin-doxycycline combination is that these two antibiotics may be less than ideal for anaerobic infections or for a pelvic abscess.

Regimen B is a combination of clindamycin and an aminoglycoside (gentamicin). This combination provides excellent activity against anaerobes, Gram-negative aerobes, and Gram-positive aerobes. Historically, it has been the preferred regimen for patients with an abscess, IUD-related infections, or pelvic infections after a diagnostic or operative procedure. However, there are few data to prove that it is significantly more effective than the cephalosporin regimens. A possible disadvantage of regimen B is that it may not provide optimal activity against C. trachomatis and N. gonorrhoeae. Clindamycin in high doses (900 mg in 8 hours) has good activity against Chlamydia, and in vitro studies by Martens and colleagues have demonstrated effectiveness against 90% of C. trachomatis strains. Doxycycline is believed to be the most effective chlamydial agent according to in vitro testing and is often used for at least 7 days to complete treatment when the patient is switched from parenteral to posthospitalization therapy. Also, the CDC recommends treatment of once-daily dosing for gentamicin is not based on any data on PID patients and should be used only if indicated for renal considerations.

Each regimen stresses two concepts: the polymicrobial etiology of acute pelvic infection and the necessity of protecting against C. trachomatis and N. gonorrhoeae. With both protocols, the CDC recommends a minimum of at least 24 hours of intravenous treatment after clinical improvement. Both protocols also require completion of a 14-day course of oral antibiotics (doxycycline or clindamycin) to eradicate slow-growing organisms such as C. trachomatis.

Alternative inpatient parenteral regimens are included in the 2006 CDC PID guidelines (Table 30.4). The CDC recommends the β-lactamase inhibitor combination ampicillin-sulbactam (Unasyn), but piperacillin-tazobactam has been demonstrated by Hensell and colleagues, Sweet and colleagues, and others based on the controversial premise that it may be adequate to cover just a few of the major etiologic agents (N. gonorrhoeae and C. trachomatis) involved in acute salpingitis. As a result, studies have documented a 10% to 20% treatment failure rate for women receiving oral antibiotics as outpatients compared with a 5% to 10% failure rate for women without an abscess receiving intravenous antibiotics as inpatients, where broader coverage is used. The inclusion of the quinolone arm, ofloxacin, and levofloxacin in the outpatient treatment regimen does permit broader oral coverage of probable pathogens, but this still may not be adequate for serious disease. It is important to reevaluate patients within 48 to 72 hours of initiating outpatient therapy to determine the response of the disease. If a poor response has been obtained, the patient should be hospitalized with parenteral antibiotics and possible laparoscopic evaluation in the hope of preventing or limiting the sequelae of PID.

Every woman with acute PID should be hospitalized for the first few days for parenteral antibiotic treatment. Because this may not be practical because of limited economic or physical facility resources, the clinician who diagnoses acute salpingitis in the office or emergency department is faced with the question of which patient to hospitalize. Indications for the hospitalization of patients with acute salpingitis are also defined by the CDC in the 2006 guidelines (Table 30.3). In the past, the CDC has suggested that all adolescents with salpingitis be hospitalized because of their high noncompliance rate and to optimize treatment to prevent damage to the reproductive tract, which could affect future fertility and result in chronic pelvic pain. Recently, Kelly and colleagues found a high incidence and recurrence in adolescents, perhaps related to poor compliance. However, the CDC’s new policy is to use the same criteria for hospitalization as for older women. This recommendation is not agreed upon by all infectious disease groups because of the seriousness of inadequately treated PID in the younger, often noncompliant population.

Another indication for hospitalization is the presence of an abscess or pelvic abscess. Outpatient therapy may not provide adequate antibiotic levels high enough to penetrate an abscess, and these should be inadequately treated PID in the younger, often noncompliant women. This recommendation is not agreed upon by all infectious disease groups because of the seriousness of inadequately treated PID in the younger, often noncompliant population.

Indicated for hospitalization is the presence of an abscess or pelvic abscess. Outpatient therapy may not provide antibiotic levels high enough to penetrate an abscess, and rupture of the abscess may have serious consequences. Women in whom the definitive diagnosis of acute PID is in question should also be hospitalized, and additional diagnostic measures should be instituted. As previously stated, at least 10% of all patients have other serious diagnoses, such as acute appendicitis, ectopic pregnancy, or adnexal torsion, and these should be included.

The following criteria for hospitalization are suggested:

- Surgical emergencies (such as appendicitis) cannot be excluded.
- The patient is pregnant.
- The patient does not respond clinically to oral antibiotics.
- The patient is unable to follow or tolerate an outpatient regimen.
- The patient has severe illness, nausea and vomiting, or high fever.
- The patient has a tuboovarian abscess.

### TABLE 30.3

**CRITERIA FOR HOSPITALIZATION OF PATIENTS WITH ACUTE PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Surgical emergencies (such as appendicitis) cannot be excluded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The patient is pregnant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The patient does not respond clinically to oral antibiotics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The patient is unable to follow or tolerate an outpatient regimen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The patient has severe illness, nausea and vomiting, or high fever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The patient has a tuboovarian abscess.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 30.4

CDC-RECOMMENDED TREATMENT REGIMENS FOR PARENTERAL THERAPY OF ACUTE PELVIC
INFLAMMATORY DISEASE

| Regimen A | Cefotetan 2 g IV every 12 hours  
OR  
Cefoxitin 2 g IV every 6 hours  
PLUS  
Doxycycline 100 mg orally or IV every 12 hours  
Because of pain associated with infusion, doxycycline should be administered orally when possible, even when the patient is hospitalized. Both oral and IV administration of doxycycline provide similar bioavailability. Parenteral therapy may be discontinued 24 hours after a patient improves clinically, and oral therapy with doxycycline (100 mg twice a day) should continue to complete 14 days of therapy. When tuboovarian abscess is present, many health care providers use clindamycin or metronidazole with doxycycline for continued therapy rather than doxycycline alone, because it provides more effective anaerobic coverage. Clinical data are limited regarding the use of other second- or third-generation cephalosporins (e.g., ceftizoxime, cefotaxime, and ceftriaxone), which also may be effective therapy for PID and may replace cefotetan or cefoxitin. However, these cephalosporins are less active than cefotetan or cefoxitin against anaerobic bacteria. |
|---|---|
| Regimen B | Clindamycin 900 mg IV every 8 hours  
PLUS  
Gentamicin loading dose IV or IM (2 mg/kg of body weight) followed by a maintenance dose (1.5 mg/kg) every 8 hours. Single daily dosing may be substituted. Although use of a single daily dose of gentamicin has not been evaluated for the treatment of PID, it is efficacious in other analogous situations. Parenteral therapy can be discontinued 24 hours after a patient improves clinically; continuing oral therapy should consist of doxycycline 100 mg orally twice a day or clindamycin 450 mg orally four times a day to complete a total of 14 days of therapy. When tuboovarian abscess is present, many health care providers use clindamycin for continued therapy rather than doxycycline, because clindamycin provides more effective anaerobic coverage. |
| Alternative Parenteral Regimens | Limited data support the use of other parenteral regimens, but the following three regimens have been investigated in at least one clinical trial, and they have broad-spectrum coverage. Levofloxacin 500 mg IV once daily WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg IV every 8 hours  
OR  
Ofloxacin 400 mg IV every 12 hours WITH OR WITHOUT Metronidazole 500 mg IV every 8 hours  
OR  
Ampicillin/sulbactam 3 g IV every 6 hours  
PLUS  
Doxycycline 100 mg orally or IV every 12 hours  
IV ofloxacin has been investigated as a single agent; however, because of concerns regarding its spectrum, metronidazole may be included in the regimen. Levofloxacin is as effective as ofloxacin and may be substituted; its single daily dosing makes it advantageous from a compliance perspective. One trial demonstrated high short-term clinical cure rates with azithromycin, either alone for 1 week (at least one IV dose, followed by oral therapy) or with a 12-day course or metronidazole. Ampicillin/sulbactam plus doxycycline is effective coverage against C. trachomatis, N. gonorrhoeae, and anaerobes and for patients who have tuboovarian abscesses. |

CDC, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; IM, intramuscularly; IV, intravenously; PID, pelvic inflammatory disease.

*Quinolones should not be used in persons with a history of recent foreign travel or partners’ travel, infections acquired in California or Hawaii, or in other areas with increased QNIG (quinolone-resistant Neisseria gonorrhoeae) prevalence.

Pelvic Inflammatory Disease to have excellent in vitro and in vivo activity against PID and its pathogens.

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

Male sex partners of women with PID should be examined and treated if they had sexual contact with the patient during the 60 days preceding the patient’s onset of symptoms. Evaluation and treatment is imperative because of the risk for reinfection of the patient and the strong likelihood of urethral gonococcal or chlamydial infection in the sex partner. Male partners of women who have PID caused by C. trachomatis and/or N. gonorrhoeae often are asymptomatic. Management of acute PID should include treatment of the male partner and education for the prevention of reinfection, including the use of proper contraception. The importance of treating sexual partners cannot be overstressed. Eschenbach
reported that 23% of gonococcal PID patients were readmitted to the hospital within 10 weeks of the initial treatment. A study of gonococcal PID noted that 13% of male partners screened were asymptomatic urethral carriers and that even higher rates for C. trachomatis were present. These partners should be treated with one of the regimens for uncomplicated gonorrhoeae and chlamydial infection (i.e., ceftriaxone, 125 mg intramuscularly, followed by oral doxycycline, 100 mg twice a day for 7 days, oral azithromycin in 1 g or ofloxacin 300 mg b.i.d. for 7 days orally). Women with acute PID often return to the same social situations they were in before treatment. It is hoped that treating sexual partners and educating patients with regard to contra-prophylaxis would decrease the incidence of recurrent infections and affect the often poor prognosis for future fertility.

HIV INFECTION

Differences in the clinical manifestations of PID between human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected women and HIV-negative women have not been well delineated. In early observational studies, HIV-infected women with PID were more likely to require surgical intervention. In recent, more comprehensive observational and controlled studies, HIV-infected women with PID had similar symptoms when compared with uninfected controls. They were more likely to have a tuboovarian abscess, but responded equally to standard parenteral and oral antibiotic regimens when compared with HIV-negative women. The microbiologic findings for HIV-positive and HIV-negative women were similar, except for (a) higher rates of concurrent M. hominis, candida, streptococci, and HPV infections and (b) HPV-related cytologic abnormalities among those with HIV infection. Whether the management of immunodeficient HIV-infected women with PID requires more aggressive interventions (e.g., hospitalization or parenteral antimicrobial regimens) had not been determined.

SURGICAL MANAGEMENT

Laparotomy should generally be reserved for patients with surgical emergencies such as ruptured abscesses or definitive treatment of failed medical management. Laparoscopy, however, is an underused but usually helpful procedure for diagnosis, prognosis, and possible treatment of PID. Laparoscopic evaluation should be considered in all patients with a differential diagnosis of PID and without laparoscopic surgery contraindications.

Laparoscopy is important not only to diagnose PID but also to rule out surgical emergencies, such as appendicitis and ruptured abscesses. It also prevents inappropriate management of patients with noninfectious problems, such as endometriosis. These patients need additional surgical and medical management, not antibiotic therapy and delayed diagnosis. In addition, evaluation of the extent of the inflammatory process in confirmed PID is helpful in establishing a prognosis and further management plan if initial treatment fails. Patients with evidence of current or previous abscesses have a higher failure rate with antibiotic therapy. Also, treatment of unilateral abscesses may necessitate surgical management to avoid the spread of the infection to the other tube and ovary.

 Cultures obtained from the peritubal region or from the peritoneal cavity can also be helpful in identifying organisms resistant to initial management. This has become increasingly important in light of the increasing rate of clindamycin-resistant anaerobes and the elimination of metronidazole from the CDC-recommended inpatient guidelines. Laparoscopic management of PID that appears helpful includes copious drainage of the pelvis with normal saline or preferably Ringer solution. Antibiotic inclusion in the lavage fluid has not been demonstrated to be helpful to date. Laparoscopic manipulation or drainage of documented pelvic abscesses has been attempted by several investigators.

Henry-Suchet and associates reported the successful use of laparoscopy to diagnose and drain tuboovarian abscesses in 50 women. Adhesions were lysed, and the abscesses were drained through the laparoscope. All patients received intravenous antibiotics. Forty-five of the 50 (90%) patients were cured. Rech and McGlynn had a similar experience in 25 women with pelvic abscesses treated laparoscopically. Four of seven women desiring pregnancy conceived, and two women had unplanned pregnancies. However, the diagnosis of abscesses is not uniform in these studies. Also, it is of concern that similar results will not necessarily be demonstrated in less experienced hands. Anatomically, drainage of abscesses within the pelvic cavity by laparoscopy will not drain the entire abscess contents out of the pelvic cavity, and despite how extensive the lavage or laparoscopic removal is, pus and bacteria will be spilled and exposed to the pelvic cavity. This is contrary to the natural defense mechanism of the body of isolating and containing the inflammation-causing organisms within an abscess. Therefore, laparoscopic drainage of pelvic abscesses should be undertaken only by experienced laparoscopic surgeons and with the patient's full understanding of all other options.

Laparotomy with extensive pelvic surgery was often recommended in the past, before the development of broad-spectrum antibiotics. If a patient has been hospitalized on several occasions for acute exacerbation of PID with bilateral tuboovarian abscesses to the point where the future management increases significantly, definitively, definitive surgical intervention may be indicated. The operation should be done when the infection is quiescent, if possible. The surgery may still be difficult, but there will be fewer complications than when patients are operated on in the acute phase of the infection. The timing of the operative intervention is important. There should be complete absorption of the inflammatory exudate surrounding the focus of the infection, as seen radiologically. Bimanual pelvic examination should be possible without producing a marked or persistent febrile response. It has been suggested that definitive surgery be delayed for 2 to 3 months after the recent exacerbation for more complete resolution of the infection. Ideally, the patient should have a normal ESR, WBC, and hematocrit, and relatively nontender pelvic organs, except possibly with motion. Kaplan and associates recommended more aggressive management in patients who exhibit either no clinical response or only partial response after 24 to 72 hours. Their approach included a total abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral salpingooophorectomy and was thought to reduce the protracted period of intensive medical therapy in a group of patients who would eventually require surgery. They noted that conservative management of their cases usually resulted in protracted periods of intensive care and repeated hospital admissions, and rarely in subsequent pregnancies. However, the early surgical intervention described above was associated with six incidences of injury to the bowel and additional postoperative complications. Unfortunately, patients with acute pelvic abscess are frequently young, and future childbearing is often desired, even though it may be impossible without identifying organisms resistant to initial management. Conservation of ovarian function for these young women is an important benefit of medical management. Some differences in the percentage of patients responding
to conservative management in different studies and different geographic locations might be explained by differences in the predominant microorganisms causing the infection at these locations and their sensitivity to the antibiotics used.

Older studies of the management of patients with pelvic abscess, which emphasized the early use of surgery, are no longer pertinent, because modern antibiotic drugs were not available then. Collins and Jansen in 1959 had an early failure rate of 10% for conservative medical therapy. However, 11% of their 178 patients required later surgery, which corresponds to a late failure rate of 6.5%. Ginsburg and associates reviewed cases of 160 patients treated for tuboovarian abscess during the years 1969 to 1979. The early failure rate with broad-spectrum antibiotics was 31%, whereas the late failure rate was an additional 21%. Thus, with an average follow-up period of 23.5 months, 48% did not require later surgery. Subsequent reports by Hager and colleagues and by Landers and Sweet support conservative management.

When conservative management fails and a pelvic abscess is noted dissecting the rectovaginal septum, drainage by way of colpotomy may be possible.

POSTERIOR COLPOTOMY

In a classic article, Wharton described various techniques of vaginal drainage of pelvic abscess. Today, posterior colpotomy is done to evacuate pus and to establish drainage from a pelvic abscess that presents in the cul-de-sac.

There are three requirements for colpotomy drainage of a pelvic abscess:

1. The abscess must be midline or nearly so.
2. The abscess should be adherent to the cul-de-sac peritoneum and should dissect the rectovaginal septum to assure the surgeon that the drainage will be extraperitoneal and that pus will not be disseminated transperitoneally.
3. The abscess should be cystic or fluctuant to ensure adequate drainage.

Occasionally, a cul-de-sac abscess can be successfully drained without dissecting the septum. However, the serosal surface of the abscess should be adherent to the cul-de-sac peritoneum. Ultrasonography may be helpful in locating the pockets of pus.

After adequate anesthesia, the patient is placed in the lithotomy position. It is essential that a thorough examination of the pelvis be performed under anesthesia so that the operator knows the size and position of the mass that is to be drained.

After preparation and draping in the dorsal lithotomy position, the posterior lip of the cervix is grasped with a tenaculum and drawn down and forward. The vaginal mucosa of the posterior vaginal fornix is incised just below the reflection of the vaginal mucosa onto the cervix, and the transverse incision is widened with a pair of long scissors (Fig. 30.1A). The incision must be large enough to allow adequate exploration and drainage of the abscess cavity with the index finger. The cul-de-sac peritoneum and abscess wall are punctured with a long Kelly clamp (Fig. 30.1B). As the abscess wall is perforated, there is a definite sensation of puncturing a cystic cavity. If blood or pus is present, this is soon seen in the upper vagina. The jaws of the clamp are spread, and the flow of liquid from the cul-de-sac is increased. A sample of the purulent exudate is sent to the pathology laboratory for appropriate culture and sensitivity. Collection of the specimen anaerobically with a capped syringe with rapid transport to the laboratory allows the more fastidious flora to be defined. A direct smear for Gram stain is also made from the pus and examined for predominating organisms.

There may be more than one compartment in an abscess cavity (Fig. 30.2). It is desirable to insert an index finger in the cavity and explore. Fibrous adhesions within the cavity can be gently broken. If another abscess wall is felt, it can often be cautiously and safely punctured under the guidance of a finger. Exploration and manipulation should be done carefully to avoid intraperitoneal rupture of the abscess or perforation of the bowel. To allow adequate drainage, the vaginal incision should be at least 2 cm wide. If pus has been obtained, one or two drains are inserted into the abscess cavity and anchored with fine absorbable suture to permit easy removal. Penrose or closed suction drainage systems can be used. These are left for several days or longer. Wharton has emphasized the importance of prolonged drainage. A suture or two may be required to control bleeding from the vaginal mucosa. However, if a mushroom (Malecot) catheter is used for drainage, it should

![FIGURE 30.1: Posterior colpotomy.](image-url)
FIGURE 30.2. Pus may be contained within the tuboovarian abscess and within other pockets in the pelvic cavity.

Experience with percutaneous drainage of intraabdominal and pelvic abscesses under ultrasonographic or computed tomographic (CT) guidance has been reported by Olak and associates, and by others. Worthen and Gunning used percutaneous catheter drainage of 11 abscesses in nine patients and achieved a cure rate of 77%. Two patients required surgical intervention subsequently. In 19 patients, simple percutaneous aspiration of 23 abscesses was successful, with a 94% cure rate. The attempt at aspiration failed in seven patients (Fig. 30.3). The Grady Memorial Hospital experience, as reported by Tyrrel and associates, is similar. CT-guided percutaneous drainage in eight patients with tuboovarian abscess resulted in recovery without surgery in seven. One patient had marked clinical improvement but still required a posterior colpotomy. No complications occurred. Loy and associates have reported that the simultaneous use of real-time pelvic ultrasonography can facilitate transvaginal drainage of a pelvic abscess. If patients do not respond to intravenous antibiotics and percutaneous drainage or aspiration, surgical intervention is required.

The long-term effects of pus and organisms released into the pelvis from the puncture site are unknown. However, short-term success rates are good, and surgical drainage of acute abscess is a basic principle. Therefore, needle drainage can be considered with proper patient selection and appropriate informed consent, which includes other management options. If exploratory laparotomy is necessary, the patient can be positioned in Allen universal stirrups. A lower abdominal transverse Maylard incision is ideal because it affords good exposure to the lateral adnexal pelvic organs and pelvic side walls. Pelvic adhesions should be released, and the bowel should be packed off before the pelvic dissection commences. During the dissection, free pus is often spilled, and the upper abdomen should be isolated from this, if possible. When a ruptured abscess is encountered, the exudate is collected and sent immediately to the laboratory for Gram stain, anaerobic and aerobic cultures, and antimicrobial sensitivity studies. The easiest way to obtain the material for anaerobic culture is simply to collect

FIGURE 30.3. Transabdominal needle aspiration of a pelvic abscess under guidance of computed tomography. Drainage tube is also placed.
it in an airtight syringe and to submit a small piece of the abscess wall in an airtight container. The easiest place to begin the dissection is in the round ligament, which is the most consistently available and identifiable landmark. Following the round ligament medially always leads to the uterine corpus. Variations in the usual technique for the operation may be required because of extensive disease, dense adhesions, indurated and edema- tous tissue, and distorted anatomy. For example, it is sometimes convenient to perform the central dissection first (i.e., a subtotal hysterectomy). This allows more space and adequate exposure to perform the required adnexal surgery. Tuboovarian inflammatory masses may be found densely adherent in the cul-de-sac to the uterus, to the posterior surface of the broad ligament, and to the lateral pelvic sidewall. There is risk of injury to the ureters, sigmoid, rectum, and small intestines. The method of dissection used depends on the nature of the adhe- sions. Soft, fresh adhesions can be broken gently and easily with finger dissection. Dense fibrotic adhesions must be carefully dis- sected and cut with scissors. The dissection can be especially difficult and risky if pelvic tissues are intensely indurated, as in ligamentous pelvic cellulitis. If the infundibulopelvic ligament can be clamped, cut, and securely ligated, one can gain access to the lateral retroperitoneal space and identify the ureter. This facilit- ates a safe dissection of the abscess wall away from the ureter. In cases with extensive disease involving one or both adnexa, the use of preoperative ureteral catheterization may be helpful in identifying the location of the pelvic ureters. With tuboovarian abscesses, the anatomic limits of the ovary may be difficult to define. If the ovary is to be removed, it should be removed com- pletely to prevent subsequent development of ovarian remnant syndrome.

When both adnexa must be removed, a hysterectomy should be entertained if extensive uterine involvement is suspected. In some cases, only subtotal hysterectomy is feasible. However, if the lower uterine segment can be visualized, the cervix can usually be excised after removal of the adnexa and the uter- ine corpus. The operative field should be copiously irrigated. The vaginal vault should be left open for drainage. A Penrose drain may be inserted and then removed several days later. Sus- pension of the vaginal vault and repositioning of the pelvis are accomplished in the usual manner, if possible. A routine closure of the abdominal incision is performed. Jackson-Pratt suction drains are often placed above the fascia and brought out through a separate incision.

Because the patient has been placed in the Allen universal stirrups for laparotomy, ureteral integrity can be confirmed as discussed elsewhere. Five milliliters of indigo carmine is given intravenously, and a cystoscopy is placed in the bladder. Blue dye can then be seen flowing from each ureteral orifice.

In the past, it was standard practice to do a bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy in almost all patients who had a lap- arotomy for acute pelvic abscess. This practice was based on the belief that the disease is almost always severe in both adnexa. Recent studies have suggested that as many as 25% to 50% of patients will have a relatively normal tube and ovary on one side. This may be especially true of patients whose infection is associated with IUD use. Golde and associates reported that 33 of 153 patients (44%) with tuboovarian abscesses confirmed at operation had unilateral abscesses; 20 were using an IUD. The studies of Lunders, and Swart, Hager and Majnudajad, and Ginsburg and coworkers also found a higher percentage of unilat- eral adnexal disease than was previously reported. In light of the recent findings, subtotal adnexectomy may be possible in some patients. We have no hesitation in leaving a relatively nor- mal tube and ovary at the time of hysterectomy with removal of the opposite adnexa for acute pelvic abscess. When the uterus is removed and the continuity between the conserved tube and the lower genital tract is interrupted, there is little risk of a new infection. If a strictly unilateral pelvic abscess is found at lap- arotomy, removal of the affected tube and ovary only, leaving in the uterus and the opposite adnexa, is acceptable in a patient who wishes to preserve fertility. However, in vitro fertilization techniques may be required to accomplish pregnancy. Such a patient does have a risk of recurrent tuboovarian abscess. It is especially important that her sexual partner be examined and receive treatment when indicated.

In recent years there have been advances in reproductive technology that allow infertile patients to conceive and carry pregnancies to term under the most extraordinary circum- stances. It has been possible, for example, to accomplish a suc- cessful pregnancy in a woman who has a uterus but no ovaries by instillation of a donated fertilized ovum into a suitably pre- pared uterus. Such a sophisticated procedure is not available to a large number of patients. However, in light of the recent find- ings of the risk of estrogen plus progesterone treatment from the Women’s Health Initiative Study, the option of leaving in the uterus when bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy is to be per- formed should be discussed with the patient, especially if she is young and nulliparous.

In summary, patients with an acute pelvic abscess should be hospitalized for treatment with parenteral broad-spectrum antibiotics. Surgery is indicated if the diagnosis is uncertain, if intraperitoneal rupture is diagnosed or suspected, or if the patient fails to respond to medical management.

RUPTURED PELVIC ABSCESS

A tuboovarian or pelvic abscess can rupture spontaneously into the rectum or sigmoid colon usually occurs in a patient whose abscess is too high to drain with a posterior colpotomy. In other words, although the ab- sess is fluctuant and midline, it is not yet dissecting the recto- vaginal septum. While waiting for the abscess to come down, a sudden unexpected improvement in the patient’s condition usu- ally occurs. A posterior colpotomy is not needed and, indeed, is contraindicated because doing so could cause a rectovaginal fistula to form.

Spontaneous drainage through the rectum or sigmoid colon usually occurs in a patient whose abscess is too high to drain with a posterior colpotomy. In other words, although the ab- sess is fluctuant and midline, it is not yet dissecting the recto- vaginal septum. While waiting for the abscess to come down, a sudden unexpected improvement in the patient’s condition usu- ally occurs. A posterior colpotomy is not needed and, indeed, is contraindicated because doing so could cause a rectovaginal fistula to form.

Spontaneous drainage through the bladder is rare. It occurs most commonly in elderly women with chronic abscesses de- veloping from ruptured sigmoid diverticula. Only rarely does a chronic tuboovarian or pelvic abscess rupture and drain through the bladder, causing secondary infection of the bladder. When the abscess is removed with laparotomy, a defect in the bladder wall is noted. The emaciated tissue around the defect should be removed and the defect closed with 3–0 delayed- absorbable suture in two layers. A Foley catheter can be left in place for 10 to 14 days while healing of the bladder wall takes place.

Of all the complications that can result from PID, intraab- dominal rupture of a tuboovarian abscess is the most life- threatening. Mortality from this complication is due to septic shock and the complications of generalized peritonitis, and the
mortality rate can approach up to 10% in patients with warm shock. Abscesses can rupture spontaneously, after bimanual examination or accidental trauma. Bacteriologic study of the contents of the abscess has historically been unrewarding; a specific organism has been isolated in less than 50% of cases. The gonococcus is rarely identified in a pelvic abscess. Careful aerobic and anaerobic cultures often demonstrate the presence of a mixed infection that includes anaerobic organisms. McNamara and Moid reviewed the results of three separate studies that documented 34 positive isolates of anaerobes in 30 patients with a pelvic abscess. Landers and Sweet have also confirmed similar findings in their series.

Diagnosis of Ruptured Tuboovarian Abscess

The major clinical symptom of ruptured tuboovarian abscess is acute, progressive pelvic pain that is usually so severe that the patient can accurately identify the time and place of its occurrence. In a classic series from the Johns Hopkins Hospital reported by Vermeeren and Te Linde, the average age of patients with a ruptured tuboovarian abscess was 33 years, which is at least 10 years older than the average age of patients with acute PID. About 2% of these patients are postmenopausal. To our knowledge, only two cases of ruptured tuboovarian abscess in a pregnant patient have been reported. Often, there is a history of recurrent attacks of PID, with a sudden increase in the severity and extent of abdominal pain during a recent exacerbation of infection. On examination, the patient appears seriously ill and dehydrated, with rapid, shallow respirations. The abdomen is distended and quiet, with diminished or absent bowel sounds. Signs of generalized peritonitis, direct and indirect tenderness, muscle rigidity, and shifting dulness may be noted. A pelvic mass is palpable in more than 50% of cases. Tachycardia is common. Shock can be present or can develop while the patient is under observation. It is due to accumulation of fluids in peripheral tissues and later failure of compensatory mechanisms. The patient’s temperature is usually greater than 101°F, but it can also be normal and even subnormal late in the course. The leukocyte count is likely to be more than 15,000, but it also can be normal. Severe leukopenia is an ominous sign. A culdocentesis is a valuable diagnostic aid and was positive for purulent material in 70% of the cases in the McCaig and Sellmann series. An abdominal radiograph usually shows a paralytic ileus, sometimes evidence of free fluid in the peritoneal cavity, and atelectasis in the lung bases. A CT scan of the pelvis and abdomen is most helpful and will usually confirm the pelvic abscess with free purulent fluid in the upper abdomen. It may also suggest an alternative diagnosis such as a ruptured appendix or acute cholecystitis. Drainage of a pelvic abscess can also be done percutaneously under CT scan or ultrasound guidance.

Treatment of Ruptured Tuboovarian Abscess

The longer the delay in the operative treatment of ruptured tuboovarian abscess, the greater the primary mortality rate. In the series by Vermeeren and Te Linde from the Johns Hopkins Hospital, death occurred less than 90 hours after the time of rupture in 88% of fatal cases, both operative and nonoperative. As time passes after rupture of a tuboovarian abscess, septic peritonitis becomes more severe and generalized. The passage of time allows the development of septic shock from greater absorption of bacteria and bacterial endotoxins, and secretion of great quantities of fluid into the peritoneal cavity across inflamed peritoneal surfaces. Fluid shifts from the intravascular compartment to interstitial spaces as a result of the increased vascular permeability of the inflamed peritoneal membrane. This leads to hypovolemia, decreased cardiac output, decreased central venous pressure, hypotension, vasoconstriction, increased peripheral resistance, decreased tissue perfusion, metabolic acidosis, ARDS, decreased renal glomerular perfusion and filtration with decreased urine flow, severe hypoxemia, multiple organ system failure, and death. The prompt diagnosis and treatment of intraperitoneal rupture of a tuboovarian abscess is essential to minimize the risk of mortality of generalized peritonitis.

The treatment of patients with ruptured tuboovarian abscess can be divided into three phases: preoperative, operative, and postoperative.

Preoperative Phase

Surgery should be undertaken after rapid but adequate preoperative preparation. The patient should be typed and cross-matched with 2 to 4 units of packed red blood cells. Monitoring of central venous pressure is essential for proper evaluation of the hemodynamics of this condition because many patients are dehydrated, in shock, and anemic. Swan-Ganz catheter placement may be preferable because it allows pulmonary capillary wedge pressure and pulmonary artery pressure determinations that are helpful in assessing the adequacy of fluid replacement and in detecting fluid overload. Variable amounts of fluid, sometimes tremendous amounts, are lost into the peritoneal cavity and intestinal tract because of peritonitis. Emergency blood chemistry determinations (e.g., serum electrolytes, creatinine, glucose, bilirubin, and alkaline phosphatase) are obtained, and intravenous fluids, preferably Ringer lactate, are started immediately. Crystalloid solutions for fluid volume resuscitation are preferred for most patients with septic peritonitis. It may be advantageous to use partial colloid resuscitation in some patients with evidence of cardiovascular dysfunction because a smaller total volume is required. An excess of intravenous crystalloid solution may result in fluid overload. Vigorous broad-spectrum intravenous antibiotic therapy should be instituted. An indwelling urethral catheter is used to monitor fluid intake with hourly urine output. Combating shock is a primary concern throughout treatment. Clinical assessment of respiratory function should be made. A distended tender abdomen may cause rapid, shallow respirations and use of accessory muscles for ventilation. Arterial blood gases may indicate mild hypoxemia, in which case oxygen should be administered. If anemia is severe, blood transfusion should be started before surgery. When the patient has been properly prepared, immediate surgery should be undertaken. The results of treatment are better if major metabolic and hemodynamic problems are corrected before operation, but one cannot waste time in treating a critically ill patient with septic peritonitis.

Operative Phase

The anesthetic of choice depends on the preference and experience of the anesthesiologist and the medical condition of the patient. The operation should be performed as rapidly as possible. Because speed as well as access to the upper abdomen may be required, a lower midline incision should be used. It can be quickly extended above the umbilicus if necessary.

Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions
The patient should not be put in the Trendelenburg position until the abdomen is packed off, and no more of a dependent position should be used than is needed to prevent further dissemination of pus into the upper abdomen. When the abdomen is opened, any odor that is present should be noted. An unpleasant, putrid odor is indicative of infection with anaerobic organisms. Pus from the abdomen should be collected carefully for culture and for Gram stain, and be promptly transported to the laboratory. Organisms grown should be tested for sensitivity to various antibiotics.

The operation of choice is removal of the free pus, together with the abscess, the uterus, the tubes, and usually the ovaries. Only occasionally is it possible to leave an ovary in a patient with a ruptured pelvic abscess. If rupture has occurred from a strictly unilateral tuboovarian abscess, with a relatively normal tube and ovary on the opposite side, a unilateral salpingo-oophorectomy can be performed, especially if the patient is young. However, the risk of a recurrent abscess in the opposite tube and ovary is high if the uterus is also left in place. When the uterus is removed along with the tuboovarian abscess, the risk of recurrent abscesses in the opposite adnexa is reduced. When hysterectomy is performed, usually a total hysterectomy can be done. However, even in the best surgical hands, a subtotal hysterectomy is faster than a total one and is sometimes justified. It is probable that the mortality rate would be increased if total hysterectomies were always performed. Although we believe firmly in total hysterectomy, we do not believe in performing it when the danger of total hysterectomy exceeds the danger from a retained cervix. Except in the young patient, it is often better to remove the corpus than to perform a unilateral adnexectomy alone. Furthermore, the opposite adnexa is significantly involved in most patients, and subsequent operation by the surgeon if conservation of one side is practiced, as was required in 35% of Pedowitz and Bloomfield’s cases. This is contrary to what has been described earlier in the surgical treatment of an unruptured abscess, because the risk of incomplete eradication of the immediate infection in an acutely ill patient with rupture, peritonitis, and possibly septic shock is much higher. Therefore, definitive surgical treatment is usually recommended in severely ill patients with ruptured abscesses.

The technical performance of the procedure may be difficult, but is similar to that described earlier for laparotomy followed by failed colpotomy drainage or suspected rupture. Anatomy is distorted, dependable landmarks are obscured, and tissues are thick, edematous, friable, and inflamed. Loops of densely adherent intestine must be separated carefully to avoid injury. Injury to the serosa of distended bowel occurs commonly and often requires repair. Any entry into the lumen of the bowel must be recognized and repaired. Retroperitoneal planes of dissection can be used to advantage in identifying the ureters and removing inflammatory adnexal masses. Otherwise, it is likely that fragments of ovary will be left behind, which can subsequently cause signs and symptoms of the ovarian remnant syndrome. As much of the remaining abcess wall as possible should be removed without causing unnecessary additional bleeding. Borders of the abscess wall can be left adherent to the pelvic sidewall and cul-de-sac. Oozing of blood from all dissected tissue has been likened to “cinder bed burning” and is difficult to control.

The upper abdomen should be carefully explored for collections of pus in the subphrenic and subhepatic regions. If an upper abdominal abscess is found, it may be necessary to place a closed suction drain into the abscess cavity through the upper abdominal wall.

Before the incision is closed, the abdominal cavity should be irrigated with copious quantities of warm sterile saline to remove remaining bacteria and debris. There is always some fear of dissemination of the infection by copious irrigation. However, this disadvantage is far outweighed by the benefit of diluting and removing bacteria and necrotic debris. We do not add antiseptics or antibiotics to the irrigating solution. If hemostasis is poor or if considerable necrotic material is left behind, there may be some benefit from peritoneal drainage with closed suction catheters. Closed suction drains can be placed through a separate stab wound in the abdominal wall, through the cul-de-sac, or through the vaginal vault when a total hysterectomy has been done, but the drainage of free peritoneal exudate in the upper abdomen is of no therapeutic value.

The abdominal incision is closed with a Smead-Jones technique or with a continuous suture taking large bites of tissue. A monofilament suture of polypropylene or nylon should be used. Retention sutures can be placed but are not usually necessary. The incision should be irrigated with warm saline. When there has been gross contamination of the incision, the subcutaneous fat and skin should be left open and packed lightly with gauze soaked in an antibiotic or dilute acetic acid solution. The wound is repacked daily and inspected. In 4 to 5 days, if the tissues are healthy, the incision is closed secondarily with sutures. Alternatively, the edges can be drawn together with sterile adhesive strips.

Postoperative Phase

Postoperative care should consider shock, infection, ileus, and fluid imbalances. Complications of the late postoperative period include pelvic and abdominal abscesses, intestinal obstruction, intestinal fistulas, incontinence with or without fecal soiling, incisional dehiscence, pulmonary embolus, continued sepsis, and disseminated intravascular coagulation. Serious medical diseases such as uncontrolled diabetes or renal or pulmonary failure are contraindications to surgery. Postoperative ileus is a very important feature of postoperative care. A dynamic ileus persists postoperatively for a variable period and is
interested in pregnancy, the uterus and fallopian tubes can be
the uterus and both tubes can also be removed. If the patient is
served. If both ovaries are involved, they should be removed.
and start antibiotic therapy. At operation, only the affected
arotomy after a brief but intense effort to stabilize the patient
supportive care is indicated. A failure to respond or deteriora-
with antibiotics for both anaerobic and aerobic organisms plus
is similar to the management of patients with acute tuboovar-
is usually obvious.
patient appears gravely ill, and the need for immediate surgery
direct and rebound tenderness, ileus, and sometimes shock. The
as in ruptured tuboovarian abscess, with abdominal distention,
and CT can be helpful in identifying an abscess cavity. If an
IUD use, appendicitis, or systemic infection) may be uncovered
an event predisposing to primary ovarian abscess (e.g., surgery,
pathologic lesions found at operation but also to the patient’s
abdomen open. Consideration must be given not only to the
in one of the lower abdominal quadrants; repeated exacerba-
reproductive system. A primary ovarian abscess, on the other hand,
the abscess wall is composed of fallopian tube and ovarian
is usually unilateral. However, its occurrence
primary ovarian abscesses occur because bac-
teria present around the ovary gain access to the parenchyma
through a break in the ovarian capsule. This can occur natu-
ally by ovulation or it can be broken by a surgical procedure.
Bacteria come from the fallopian tube, from the vagina dur-
ing or after hysterec-
omy, from intrauterine infection associ-
ated with an IUD, or from appendicitis, diverticulitis, or any
other condition that is associated with peritonitis. A primary
ovarian abscess is usually unilateral. However, its occurrence
simultaneously in both ovaries and during pregnancy seems
to be associated with the occurrence of generalized or lymphatic spread,
or both. Primary ovarian abscess has been reported secondary
to infections at distant sites (tonsillitis, typhoid, parotitis, and
tuberculosis).
Diagnosis of an unruptured primary ovarian abscess can be
difficult because of the variable clinical presentation. Lower
abdominal pain and fever are usually present. Lower abdomi-
nal and pelvic tenderness and an adnexal mass may be present,
but the pelvic examination is sometimes not helpful. Although
an event predisposing to primary ovarian abscess (e.g., surgery,
IUD use, appendicitis, or systemic infection) may be uncovered
in the history, the event is sometimes remote. Ultrasonography
and CT can be helpful in identifying an abscess cavity. If an
ovarian abscess ruptures, the clinical picture is much the same
as in ruptured tuboovarian abscess, with abdominal distention,
direct and rebound tenderness, ileus, and sometimes shock. The
patient appears gravely ill, and the need for immediate surgery
is usually obvious.
The management of patients with primary ovarian abscess
is similar to the management of patients with acute tuboovar-
ian abscess. If the abscess is not ruptured, medical management
with antibiotics for both anaerobic and aerobic organisms plus
supportive care is indicated. A failure to respond or deteriora-
tion in the patient’s condition suggests alteration in antibiotic
coverage or possible exploratory surgery, or both, to remove
the abscess. Ruptured ovarian abscess requires immediate lapar-
aotomy after a brief but intense effort to stabilize the patient
and start antibiotic therapy. At operation, only the affected
ovary need be removed. The tubes and the uterus can be con-
served. If both ovaries are involved, they should be removed.
For a patient who is not interested in conception in the future,
the uterus and both tubes can also be removed. If the patient
is interested in pregnancy, the uterus and fallopian tubes can be
left in place for possible implantation of a donated egg in the
future.

**SURGERY FOR CHRONIC PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE**

Although the gonococcus may be responsible for initiating
acute salpingitis, which is short-lived, the residual chronic sal-
ingitis is usually due to secondary invaders, both aerobic and
anaerobic, or perhaps to an initial infection with C. trachoma-
tis. As a result of the initial infection or from subsequent sec-
onder exacerbations, the fimbria can become occluded and
the tubes bound to the ovaries with adhesions. In addition, the
bowel can become adherent to the broad ligament and the ad-
nexal structures, and the fascia and loose connective tissue of
the broad ligament can be converted into an indurated, brawny
structure typical of ligneous induration. This can extend to in-
clude tissues beneath the peritoneum on the lateral pelvic side-
wall, where ligneous pelvic cellulitis can cause ureteral obstruc-
tion. If the chronic infection persists, serious effusion from the
inflammatory process within the endosalpinx produces a hy-
drosalpinx that can ignite periodically with secondary subacute pelvic infection or can progress to produce a pyosalpinx and tuboovarian abscess. If the subacute infection is left untreated
or is treated inadequately, spontaneous intraabdominal rup-
ture or leakage of an old tuboovarian abscess can occur. In a
review of this subject, Heaton and Ledger identified this prob-
lem principally in premenopausal women, with only 1.7% of
patients with a tuboovarian abscess being postmenopausal.
The signs and symptoms of chronic PID that most often re-
quire surgical treatment include severe, persistent, progressive pelvic pain, usually bilateral, although occasionally localized
in one of the lower abdominal quadrants; repeated exacerba-
tions of PID requiring multiple hospitalizations and recurrent
medical treatment; progressive enlargement of a tuboovarian
inflammatory mass, especially if it cannot be distinguished from
a neoplastic tumor of the ovary; severe dyspareunia related to
the chronic pelvic infection; and bilateral ureteral obstruction
from ligneous cellulitis. It was formerly accepted that a his-
tory of previous colpomytomy for drainage of a pelvic abscess
was sufficient reason in itself to justify definitive abdominal surgery later for removal of the uterus and adnexa. We have
seen several patients who have become pregnant after posterior
colpomytomy for drainage of a cul-de-sac abscess and who have
remained relatively free of symptoms for long periods. Today,
previous posterior colpomytomy for pelvic abscess drainage is not
a sufficient indication by itself for definitive abdominal surgery.

**Selection of Operation**
The final decision regarding the proper operation for the sur-
urgical management of chronic PID is usually made with the
abdomen open. Consideration must be given not only to the
pathologic lesions found at operation but also to the patient’s
age, parity, desire for children, previous history of pelvic dis-
ease, and other associated pelvic disease and symptoms. Be-
cause a knowledge of all these is essential to the best surgical
judgment, the operator should be thoroughly familiar with the
patient, her history, and her desires.
In the surgical management of chronic PID, the question
of removal or retention of the ovary at the time of hysterec-
tomy and salpingectomy has been left open to conjecture and
individual surgical opinion in most instances. This question

---

674 Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions
Pelvic Inflammatory Disease

was the subject of a study by Weiner and Wallach of the ovarian histology in ovaries removed from patients with PID. In 40 consecutive women who underwent oophorectomy during surgical treatment of PID, nearly 50% of the removed ovaries were free of inflammatory disease and demonstrated normal follicular activity. The study concluded that ovarian histology was usually normal among patients who gave no history of dysfunctional uterine bleeding. Therefore, the menstrual history of such patients should be helpful in the decision regarding ovarian conservation or ablation. Kirtley and Benigno have reviewed our experience with ovarian conservation at the time of surgery for PID. In this series, 98 (82%) patients who required surgery had a total abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy. In 22 patients (18%), either part or all of an ovary was retained. Of the 22 patients, 15 were available for follow-up hormonal assays. The mean follow-up time was 38 months. Cyclic ovarian function was confirmed in all but two patients. No patient suffered a complication as a result of adnexal conservation. We believe that normal ovarian tissue should be conserved at the time of definitive surgery for PID. The release of peritubal adhesions in mild chronic PID is indicated occasionally in women in whom future childbearing is desired, as long as the tubes can be shown to be patent, usually by transluminal chromotubation after the lower uterine isthmus is occluded by a Ziegler clamp. This type of procedure provides the most rewarding pregnancy rate of all types of tubal reconstructive surgery. More often, one tube is hopelessly closed and the opposite tube is patent after release of adhesions. In such a case, unilateral salpingectomy may be required if reconstructive surgery is not possible. Many other procedures are available in the treatment of this disease, including salpingo-oophorectomy with or without hysterectomy (Figs. 30.4 and 30.5).

In most instances of surgery for chronic PID, total abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy are necessary to remove the primary tubal pathology because of inflammatory damage of both tubes and ovaries. Total abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (Fig. 30.6) have been performed for severe actinomycosis infection. If the uterus is removed and an ovary is preserved, it may be preferable to leave the entire adnexa in place in the absence of active tubal infection rather than compromise the venous drainage or the arterial blood supply to the ovary with subsequent cystic changes that may require an additional operative procedure later. Once the continuity of the tubal lumen from the uterine cavity is broken, the chronically inflamed tube does not usually produce subsequent symptoms, as shown by Falk in his series of cases with interstitial tubal resection. A small hydrosalpinx on the same side as the normal ovary can also be left in place so that ovarian blood supply is not disturbed during an attempt to remove the tube. When it is considered advisable to remove both adnexa because of the extent of the tuboovarian disease, a total hysterectomy may also be considered unless the uterus is hopelessly encased in pelvic scar tissue and densely adherent to the pelvic viscera. In the optimum case, especially in a young woman who wishes to establish or maintain the possibility of future fertility, conservative surgery may be desirable, with the hope that pregnancy can be accomplished through in vitro fertilization techniques. In this situation, the uterus and one adnexa should be conserved, and the ovary should be positioned in the pelvis so an ovum can be harvested later through the laparoscope or through the vagina. As mentioned earlier, if the patient wishes,
the uterus can be left in place even though both tubes and ovaries have been removed.

**Salpingectomy for Chronic Salpingitis**

At the time of surgery for the treatment of chronic PID, every effort should be made to retain uninvolved organs. Unilateral salpingectomy should be considered when the oviduct is hopelessly destroyed by the disease process and presents as a large hydrosalpinx.

Once the abdomen has been opened and the extent of disease evaluated, the adhesions binding the tube are cut, and the tube is freed. It is held by a Kelly clamp placed on the mesosalpinx just beneath the fimbriated end. The mesosalpinx is then clamped and cut, with a succession of small bites taken as close to the tube as possible (Fig. 30.7A). Removal of a chronic hydrosalpinx can also be done laparoscopically.

Keeping the operative trauma as far as possible from the ovary that is to be retained lessens the danger of impairing its blood supply. Experience has shown that the ovary whose tube has been removed is more apt to become cystic than the ovary whose tube has been left undisturbed. Therefore, it seems logical to interfere as little as possible with the blood supply of the ovary by hugging the tube closely when excising it.

The tube is excised at the uterine cornu in a wedge-shaped manner, as indicated in Figure 30.7B. A wide, figure-of-eight 2-0 delayed-absorbable suture is placed in the cornu before the wedge is excised and is tightened as the interstitial portion of the tube is removed. If there is palpable extension of the inflammation at the uterine cornu (so-called salpingitis isthmica nodosa), the wedge may be large.

The wound in the uterus is closed with one or more 2-0 delayed-absorbable figure-of-eight sutures (Fig. 30.7B). The vessels in the mesosalpinx are ligated with transfixion 3-0 delayed-absorbable sutures. The advantage of the transfixed suture is that it does not slip off the tissue when tied as the clamp is withdrawn (Fig. 30.7C).

A mattress suture of 3-0 delayed-absorbable material is used to bring the broad and round ligaments over the cornual wound (Fig. 30.7D). This suture passes just beneath the round ligament, so that the ligament is not strangulated when the suture is drawn tight. When this suture is tied, the cornual wound is covered with the broad ligament, and the uterus is suspended to some extent in a manner similar to that used in the Coffey suspension. Usually, a second mattress or interrupted suture is necessary to cover the mesosalpinx completely, as shown in Figure 30.7E.

**Salpingo-oophorectomy for Chronic Salpingitis**

As in salpingectomy, the abdomen is entered through a transverse Maylard incision. The chronic tuboovarian inflammatory mass is first dissected free, and the infundibulopelvic ligament is identified. It is doubly clamped with Ochsner clamps, and a third clamp is applied to control back-bleeding (Fig. 30.8A). The uterine end must be identified before the infundibulopelvic ligament is clamped, cut, and ligated.

After the infundibulopelvic ligament is cut and ligated, the remainder of the broad ligament attachment of the tube and the ovary is clamped, cut, and ligated. The uterine end of the tube and the ovarian ligament are excised from the uterus in a wedge-shaped manner. The ascending uterine vessels are ligated just below the cornual wound, and the cornual incision is closed with a 2-0 delayed-absorbable figure-of-eight suture (Fig. 30.8B).

The infundibulopelvic ligament is doubly ligated with 2-0 delayed-absorbable sutures, and the vessels in the broad ligament are ligated with 3-0 delayed-absorbable sutures. The cornual wound is peritonized, and the uterus is suspended to some degree by bringing the round and the broad ligaments over the uterine cornu with a mattress suture of 2-0 delayed-absorbable material, as shown in Figure 30.8C. An attempt should be made to remove the tuboovarian inflammatory complex completely. If a fragment of ovary is left attached to the lateral pelvic peritoneum or the broad ligament, the ovarian remnant syndrome may develop later. To prevent this, a retroperitoneal approach may be required.

Identification of the Ureter

Identification of the course of the ureter in a pelvis in which the anatomy has become obliterated as a result of PID is one of the most important techniques for the gynecologic surgeon. In the surgical treatment of this disease, one may find a tuboovarian inflammatory mass that is located between the leaves of the broad ligament and extends to the lateral pelvic wall. It is not uncommon for the ligatured induration of the thickened parietal peritoneum to obscure completely the location and course of the pelvic ureter so that dissection of the diseased adnexa produces a surgical risk to the urinary tract, requiring great technical skill to avoid ureteral injury. Knowledge of the normal anatomic location of the pelvic ureters is essential so that these vital structures can be identified before an attempt is made to remove the adnexal masses. Division of the round ligament allows access to the lateral pelvic wall beneath the peritoneum. After the round ligament is divided, the peritoneum is incised inferiorly toward the internal cervical os and superiorly just lateral to the infundibulopelvic ligament. The peritoneum is easily reflected medially away from the pelvic sidewall with finger dissection, and the ureter is identified. It remains attached to the peritoneum. If there is difficulty with this procedure, the ureter can usually be identified as it crosses over the common iliac artery just above its bifurcation, and it can be traced downward. Such patients may have a preoperative ureteral catheterization when there is clinical evidence of large, adherent adnexal masses. However, if such an anatomic problem is encountered at the time of laparotomy, an incision can be made in the dome of the bladder that allows the passage of ureteral catheters. If the patient has been positioned in the Allen universal stirrups for operation, intraoperative cystoscopy with passage of ureteral stents is easily accomplished. At the end of the operation, 5 mL of indigo carmine is given intravenously. With a cystoscope in the bladder, the dye can be seen eflusing from both ureteral orifices, confirming that the ureters have not been injured or compromised.

**PELVIC TUBERCULOSIS**

Tuberculosis of the upper genital tract is a rare disease in the United States. However, it is a frequent cause of chronic PID and infertility in other parts of the world. For various reasons, the incidence of tuberculosis is again increasing in the United States. Therefore, cases of tuberculosis-associated PID may also become more evident. It should always be considered in the differential diagnosis of pelvic pain in immigrants, especially those who have had a previous history of tuberculosis.
Salpingectomy: A. Meso-
salpinx is clamped with multiple Kelly clamps and cut. Dotted lines indicate cor-
nual excision, which is elective. B: Cor-
nual wound is closed with 2-0 delayed-
absorbable suture. C: Mesosalpinx vessels
are transfixed. D: Mattress suture is placed
to cover operative area. E: Round liga-
ment and broad ligament cover operative
area.

FIGURE 30.7. Salpingectomy. A: Meso-
salpinx is clamped with multiple Kelly clamps and cut. Dotted lines indicate cor-
nual excision, which is elective. B: Cor-
nual wound is closed with 2-0 delayed-
absorbable suture. C: Mesosalpinx vessels
are transfixed. D: Mattress suture is placed
to cover operative area. E: Round liga-
ment and broad ligament cover operative
area.
from Asia, the Middle East, and Latin America, and in patients with HIV. Pelvic tuberculosis is produced primarily by either *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* or *Mycobacterium bovis*. The primary site of infection for tuberculosis is usually the lung, with lymphatic spread from the Ghon complex to regional lymph nodes at the hilum-usually occurring within 1 to 2 years. More rapid dissemination is due to hematogenous spread, which results in miliary disease often within the first year. The fallopian tubes are the predominant site of pelvic tuberculosis, but the bacilli also spread to the endometrium and occasionally the ovaries.

No location in the body is immune to the development of metastatic foci of infection. Tuberculosis of the bone, meninges, kidney, epididymis, fallopian tubes, and other sites can develop. At some sites of miliary spread, the lesions can remain quiescent for long periods before reactivation and further spread of the disease. Direct extension from one organ or system to an adjacent organ or system can also occur. Organs of the female reproductive tract are usually infected by hematogenous miliary spread from a primary pulmonary lesion, by hematogenous spread from a secondary miliary site, by lymphatic spread from a primary pulmonary site to intestinal lymph nodes and then to the pelvis, or by direct extension from adjacent abdominal organs (small intestines, appendix, rectum, bladder) that are the site of tuberculous infection. Fistulas between the intestinal tract and the fallopian tubes have been reported with pelvic tuberculosis.

A venereal transmission of the disease has been reported, with primary genital infection in the woman occurring after coitus with a sexual partner who had tuberculosis of the genitourinary tract. According to Sutherland and MacFarlane, it is not possible to prove conclusively that genitourinary tuberculosis in the man can be transmitted to the woman through sexual intercourse. Because it has been shown that *M. tuberculosis* is present in the sperm of men with urogenital tuberculosis, the possibility of transmission to the pelvic organs of the woman through intercourse must be accepted. Sutherland presents five cases in which sexual transmission of genitourinary tuberculosis from man to woman presumably occurred. However, of 128 husbands of women with genital tuberculosis, only five (3.9%) were found to have active genitourinary tuberculosis. When tuberculosis of the vulva, vagina, and cervix is present without evidence of tuberculous elsewhere in the body, venereal transmission should be suspected.
Pathology of Pelvic Tuberculosis

Both fallopian tubes are involved in almost all patients with pelvic tuberculosis. About one half of patients with tuberculous salpingitis have tuberculous endometritis. Tuberculosis of the cervix is present in 3% of cases. The vagina and vulva are rarely involved. At operation, one may find evidence of generalized tuberculous peritonitis with small, grayish white tubercles covering all peritoneal surfaces of the abdominal and pelvic organs. The mucosa of the fallopian tubes may not be involved in generalized serosal tuberculous infection. At a later stage of infection, tuberculous salpingitis may grossly resemble other forms of PID involving the adnexa. Unless tubercles are seen, the diagnosis may not be apparent until microscopic sections are examined by the pathologist. A large pyosalpinx may contain the caseous material of a tuberculous infection but may also contain the purulent exudate of a secondary infection with other common organisms. Tubercles form in the lining of the tube. Some have caseation at the center, with giant cells and epithelioid cells. A proliferation of the mucosal lining of the fallopian tube may resemble a primary tubal carcinoma microscopically and may be confusing to the pathologist.

Tuberculous peritonitis is commonly associated with tuberculous of the pelvis. Clinically, tuberculous peritonitis can be divided into two groups. In “wet” peritonitis there is an outpouring of straw-colored fluid into the peritoneal cavity, producing ascites. The peritoneum of the parietal wall and viscerum are covered with innumerable small tubercles (Fig. 30.9). The tubes, in addition to being covered with miliary tubercles on the serosal surface, are usually slightly enlarged and distended. In contrast to other forms of salpingitis, the fimbriae may be patent. Within the tubal wall and tubal mucosa, the histology is typical of tuberculosis, with tubercle formation, multinucleated giant cells, and epithelioid reaction (Fig. 30.10). In advanced cases, frank caseation is present. This pattern is usually associated with hematogenous spread of the tuberculous organism to the peritoneal surfaces and the pelvic organs.

Another type of tuberculous peritonitis encountered in women is the “dry” or adhesive type. Bowel adheres to bowel by innumerable dense adhesions that blend with the musculature. The muscle of the bowel is often invaded to some degree by the tuberculous process. Separation of these adhesions is extremely difficult surgically, and accidental injury to the bowel is common. The pelvic organs show evidence of tuberculous
salpingitis with enlargement of the tubes and occasionally pyosalpinges and even tuboovarian abscess formation.

Tuberculous involvement of the myometrium is rare. Tuberculous endometritis, however, is common, occurring in 60% to 70% of women with pelvic tuberculosis. Microscopically, tubercles are seen scattered throughout the endometrium, but they may be scanty. Tubercles are often seen in the endometrium removed by curettage in the premenstrual phase and are usually located in the endometrium adjacent to the tubal ostia. Apparently, the uterine cavity is protected from advanced tuberculous infection by the cyclic shedding of endometrial tissue in the reproductive years. Even in advanced pelvic tuberculosis, evidence of caseation, fibrosis, and calcification are rarely seen in the uterine cavity. Occasionally, the endometrial cavity is obliterated by extensive adhesions. Total destruction of the endometrium can result in amenorrhea. Tuberculous pyometra can also develop, especially in postmenopausal women with an occluded internal cervical os.

Tuberculous lesions of the cervix are rare. They can be either ulcerative or exophytic and can resemble a primary cervical malignancy or granuloma inguinale of the cervix. When there is a tuberculous lesion of the cervix, the cervical biopsy often reveals tubercles.

A tuberculous infection of the ovary usually involves only the surface of the ovary and represents simply an extension of infection from the peritoneal cavity and the adjacent fallopian tubes. The infection is usually limited to a peri-ovarian abscess. Tuberculous caseation can be found within the ovarian parenchyma, although this is uncommon. Presumably, it occurs as a result of hematogenous spread to the ovarian parenchyma rather than by direct extension through the ovarian capsule. However, a breach in the ovary caused by ovulation may also allow the tubercular bacilli to gain access to the ovarian parenchyma. The ovaries are involved in about 25% of cases of pelvic tuberculosis.

It is uncommon for tuberculosis to involve the vulva and vagina. It is seen in only 2% of patients with pelvic tuberculosis. The gross appearance may be ulcerative with multiple sinuses, it may be hypertrophic with elephantiasis, or it may be similar to that of carcinoma.

Throughout the pelvic organs, the microscopic picture is similar, with tubercles of granulomatous inflammation, Langhans' giant cells, epithelioid cells, and central caseation associated with chronic inflammation. With special stains, acid-fast bacilli can be demonstrated on careful microscopic examination of the tubercles.

FIGURE 30.8. (Continued) C: The infundibulopelvic ligament and the rest of the broad ligament vessels have been ligated. The cornual wound is covered with the round and the broad ligament using a mattress suture of 2-0 delayed-absorbable material.
Clinical Features of Pelvic Tuberculosis

Pelvic tuberculosis occurs most often in patients between the ages of 20 and 40 years. The age of patients with gynecologic tuberculosis has changed in recent years; the proportion of patients older than 40 years of age is now much higher than it was in the past. Falk and associates found that the incidence of pelvic tuberculosis in postmenopausal Swedish women is increasing. This was also the opinion of Sutherland, who reported an investigation from Glasgow in which 26 of 701 patients (3.7%) with proven gynecologic tuberculosis were postmenopausal.

The most common clinical symptoms of pelvic tuberculosis include pelvic pain, general malaise, menstrual irregularity, and infertility. Brown and associates found that menstrual irregularity occurred in nearly 50% of patients, whereas amenorrhea or oligomenorrhea was present in 27%. A low-grade fever that on occasion can produce a fulminating septic course is noted in most cases of active or subacute disease. The failure of fever to subside with high doses of broad-spectrum antibiotics is a classic feature of pelvic tuberculosis. A clinical course that is refractory to antibiotic therapy for the usual PID should alert the clinician to the possibility of tuberculosis.

Among patients with pulmonary tuberculosis, the incidence of pelvic tuberculosis generally varies between 10% and 20%. Falk and associates noted that 38% of women with genital tuberculosis had previously had tuberculosis in other organs, usually the lungs. Often, the patient’s clinical course is that of a chronic indolent illness.
Diagnosis of Pelvic Tuberculosis

The clinical symptoms and signs of pelvic tuberculosis should direct the clinician to the diagnosis. However, the disease is so uncommon that it is seldom encountered in the gynecologist’s usual practice; therefore, the clinical index of suspicion is generally low. In many cases, the clinical presentation is obscure and the diagnosis is delayed. Howard Kelly once said that when competent gynecologists disagree about the diagnosis of an obscure pelvic condition, it usually is diagnosed as either an “old ectopic pregnancy or pelvic tuberculosis.”

When the diagnosis of pelvic tuberculosis cannot be made in other ways, laparoscopy has been used. Because numerous adhesions may be present, making the introduction of the trocar hazardous, we believe that laparoscopy should be used with particular care. If possible, biopsy specimens of tubal fimbriae or other suspicious areas should be examined histologically or cultured to confirm the diagnosis. In addition to disclosing numerous adhesions, laparoscopy may reveal widespread military tubercles involving the omentum and peritoneal surfaces. Multiple peritoneal tumors, unrecognized masses may be seen. Microscopic examination of peritoneal fluid shows a predominance of lymphocytes.

Vaginal cytology is of limited value in diagnosing tuberculosis. The cytologist must be familiar with the morphology of epithelial cells in the vaginal smear. Only in cases of tuberculosis of the cervix may cytology be helpful. Patients with pelvic tuberculosis should also have an examination and special diagnostic procedures to rule out tuberculosis infections in the upper genital tract. Chest radiograph, tuberculin skin test, pelvic ultrasonography, intravenous pyelogram, and urine, gastric, and aseptic cultures for M. tuberculosis should be done. In some patients, exploratory laparotomy is needed to make the diagnosis.

Treatment of Pelvic Tuberculosis

Before the advent of antituberculous drug therapy, surgery was often used in the treatment of pelvic tuberculosis. Primary surgical treatment was technically difficult, sometimes ineffective, and associated with a high rate of fistula formation and severe, sometimes fatal, postoperative infections. The most common symptom is infertility, and the second most common symptom is lower abdominal and pelvic pain. More than two thirds of the cases are diagnosed at the time of laparotomy performed for some other indication or at the time of investigation for infertility or abnormal uterine bleeding. The most common symptom is infertility, and the second most common symptom is lower abdominal and pelvic pain. Some patients are completely asymptomatic and are found to have pelvic tuberculosis during examination for other disorders such as infertility. A dilatation and curettage or endometrial biopsy is diagnostic in some cases, especially if performed in the late premenstrual phase of the menstrual cycle. In addition to standard microscopic sections, the specimen can be examined by fluorescent antibody technique. Acid-fast staining of tissue or culture of menstrual blood is effective in detecting the organism in only about 10% of cases, according to Overbeck. The menstrual blood can be collected in a cervical cap. The culture or maceration can be repeated many times before a positive result is obtained. Acid-fast stains of tissue suspected of tuberculous infection are important to confirm the diagnosis. Because some acid-fast bacilli are not tuberculous bacilli, it is important to obtain a positive culture whenever possible. A negative evaluation of the endometrium does not rule out pelvic tuberculosis, because the disease can be present in the fallopian tubes without tuberculous endometritis in 30% to 40% of cases.

On pelvic examination, bilateral adnexal tenderness is the rule. The tenderness is usually less marked than with acute gonococcal or streptococcal infections. Occasionally, a large tuberculous tuboovarian abscess is palpated on pelvic examination and even felt through the abdominal wall. The classic doughy feel of the broad ligament suggests a tuberculous inflammation and even felt through the abdominal wall. The classic tender feel of the broad ligament, adherent bowel, and some ascitic fluid. On occasion, cul-de-sac nodules representing tubercles on the serosal surfaces of pelvic organs can be felt. The clinical detection of tubercles in the strongest evidence obtainable in favor of pelvic tuberculosis. It was present in one fifth of the cases reported by Brown and associates. However, other causes of tuberculous peritonitis must be considered, including ovarian carcinoma and cirrhosis of the liver. In differentiating tuberculous salpingitis from neisserial infections, the finding of a virginal outlet in the fallopian tubes without tuberculous endometritis in 30% to 40% of cases from acute gonococcal or streptococcal infections. Occasionally, a large tuberculous tuboovarian abscess is palpated on pelvic examination and even felt through the abdominal wall. The classic tenderness of the broad ligament, adherent bowel, and some ascitic fluid. On occasion, cul-de-sac nodules representing tubercles on the serosal surfaces of pelvic organs can be felt. The clinical detection of tubercles in the strongest evidence obtainable in favor of pelvic tuberculosis. It was present in one fifth of the cases reported by Brown and associates. However, other causes of tuberculous peritonitis must be considered, including ovarian carcinoma and cirrhosis of the liver. In differentiating tuberculous salpingitis from neisserial infections, the finding of a virginal outlet in the fallopian tubes without tuberculous endometritis in 30% to 40% of cases.
TABLE 30.5

REGIMEN OPTIONS FOR THE INITIAL TREATMENT OF TUBERCULOSIS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option 1</th>
<th>Option 2</th>
<th>Option 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Administer daily INH, RIF, and PZA for 8 wk, followed by 16 wk of INH and RIF daily or 2–3 times/wk.</td>
<td>Administer daily INH, RIF, PZA, and SM or EMB for 2 wk, then administer the same drugs 2 times/wk for 6 wk (by DOT). Next, administer INH and RIF 2 times/wk for 16 wk (by DOT).</td>
<td>Treat by DOT, 3 times/wk with RIF, PZA, and EMB or SM for 6 mo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a In areas where the INH resistance rate is not documented as less than 4%, EMB or SM should be added to the initial regimen until susceptibility to INH and RIF is demonstrated. Continue treatment for at least 6 mo, and 3 mo beyond culture conversion. Consult a tuberculosis medical expert if the patient is symptomatic or smear or culture positive after 3 mo.</td>
<td>b Consult a tuberculosis medical expert if the patient is symptomatic or smear or culture positive after 3 mo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INH, isoniazid; RIF, rifampin; PZA, pyrazinamide; EMB, ethambutol hydrochloride; SM, streptomycin sulfate; DOT, directly observed therapy.

a All regimens administered two times a week or three times a week should be monitored by DOT for the duration of therapy.

b The strongest evidence from clinical trials is the effectiveness of all four drugs administered for the full 6 months. There is weaker evidence that SM can be discontinued after 4 months if the isolate is susceptible to all drugs. The evidence for stopping PZA before the end of 6 months is equivocal for the three-times-a-week regimen, and there is no evidence on the effectiveness of this regimen with EMB for less than full 6 months.

Surgical specimens. The experience of Sutherland suggests, however, that the results of treatment may be improved with newer drugs. The patients under treatment must be followed up closely for evidence of regression or remission of the pelvic tuberculosis. Only about 50% of patients with genital tuberculosis have the disease in the endometrial cavity; therefore, repeat endometrial biopses and culture of menstrual egress provides only limited diagnostic information. The progress of the disease can be monitored closely by evaluating the size of adnexal masses with pelvic examinations and ultrasonography, as well as tracking the ESR, WBC count, and temperature response. Prolonged follow-up is probably indicated in all cases, because recurrence of the tuberculosis lesion 5 years and even later after the end of drug treatment has occasionally been found.

Surgery in the management of patients with pelvic tuberculosis should be reserved for specific indications, as outlined by Schaefer and by Sutherland. In general, surgery is reserved for those patients who have failed to respond to an adequate trial of medical therapy. Our indications for the surgical treatment of pelvic tuberculosis include the following:

1. Persistence or enlargement of an adnexal mass after 4 to 6 months of antituberculous antibiotic therapy. The rare possibility of an ovarian tumor must always be considered, even though pelvic tuberculosis is also present. In a 1980 report by Sutherland, the persistence or development of substantial pelvic masses was the indication for surgery in 36 of 91 women with proven tuberculosis of the genital tract treated by surgery. Pelvic ultrasonography should be useful in following the response of adnexal masses to treatment.

2. Persistence of pelvic pain or recurrence of pelvic pain while on medical therapy. In Sutherland’s report, 40 of 94 patients were operated on because of pain.

TABLE 30.6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isoniazid</td>
<td>5 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Max 300 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rifampin</td>
<td>10 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Max 600 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrazinamide</td>
<td>15–30 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Max 2 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethambutol hydrochloride</td>
<td>5–25 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Max 2.5 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptomycin sulfate</td>
<td>15 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Max 1 g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Primary unresponsiveness of the tuberculous infection to antibiotic therapy, as shown by persistent spiking temperature, leukocytosis, elevated ESR, and evidence on biopsy of continued endometrial infection. Of the 91 women in Sutherland’s report, 10 were operated on because of persistence of endometrial tuberculosis.

4. Difficulty in obtaining patient cooperation for continued long-term therapy. In these cases, we are accustomed to giving a brief course of streptomycin, 0.5 g every 12 hours intramuscularly for 1 week before surgery, to perform definitive surgery, and then we give 0.5 g every 24 hours in the postoperative period for 2 weeks. A persistent effort should be made to obtain the patient’s cooperation for continued antituberculous therapy postoperatively. It is advisable to continue treatment for a year or longer. Isoniazid and rifampin should be used if possible. A common reason for failure of treatment is a tendency for the physician to discontinue drugs after only a few months because the patient appears well.

The preferred surgical treatment includes total abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy. The nature of this inflammatory disease may make this operative procedure technically difficult, with an increased risk of injury to bowel and bladder. Consequently, in the event of a frozen pelvis from pelvic tuberculosis, it is occasionally necessary to perform only a subtotal abdominal hysterectomy and adnexectomy.

Adhesions, which are invariably present and usually widespread, may make the dissection more difficult and injury more likely. However, it is usually possible to do this operation without a high incidence of bowel fistulas and other significant complications. Sutherland reported the results of surgery in 62 cases while antituberculous therapy was administered. There were no deaths, no fistulas, and few late complications.

For young patients who are eager to attempt future childbearing, conservative adnexectomy should be carried out only if it is possible to do so after the extent of the adnexal disease is carefully evaluated and is found to be minimal. It is unusual for the surgeon to be committed to a specific operative procedure before the time of surgery, because conservative pelvic surgery for tuberculosis may constitute poor surgical judgment once the operative findings are known. The patient should be forewarned that conservative surgery will be performed only if the disease is minimal and such surgery is considered medically advisable.

Conservation of an ovary at the time of operation for pelvic tuberculosis is occasionally possible if the ovary is involved only on its surface. However, if one finds gross evidence of ovarian enlargement or other gross evidence of infection deep in the ovarian parenchyma, the ovary should be removed. Bi-section of ovaries to assess the presence of disease deep in the ovarian parenchyma is not advisable.

Reactivation of silent pelvic tuberculosis after tubal reconstructive surgery has been reported by Ballon and associates and by others. We believe that reconstructive tubal surgery has no place in the management of patients whose infertility is the result of bilateral tubal obstruction from tuberculous salpingitis.

**Pregnancy after Pelvic Tuberculosis**

It is evident from the literature, including the studies of both Schaeffer and Sutherland, that only about 5% of patients with genital tuberculosis are carriers of an active pregnancy (who only 2% carry a pregnancy to term. It is also evident that in the presence of tuberculous tuboovarian abscesses, pregnancy is extremely rare, and conservative surgery for the purpose of preserving fertility is unwarranted. Only when there is minimal pelvic disease without adnexal masses should conservative surgery be considered.

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- Laparoscopy should be discussed with all patients suspected of pelvic inflammatory disease to confirm the diagnosis and to rule out other surgical emergencies such as appendicitis, ectopic pregnancy, or ruptured abscess. However, patients at high risk for complications or with contraindications to laparoscopy can be started on antimicrobial therapy and followed for 24 to 48 hours for a response. With the advent of very effective antimicrobial therapy, strong consideration should be given for surgical exploration if the patient fails initial therapy or symptomatology changes suggesting an alternative diagnosis. If laparoscopy is not selected as initial management, an endometrial sampling for detection of inflammatory cells and bacterial culture is usually helpful.

- Sonohysterography is contraindicated in patients suspected of having PID. Culdocentesis with the finding of purulent peritoneal fluid may indicate PID, but does not rule out appendicitis or diverticulitis.

- Posterior colpotomy requires midline abscess, an abscess that is adherent to cul-de-sac peritoneum and dissects the rectovaginal septum, and a cystic or fluctuant abscess.

- Hysterectomy is no longer absolutely necessary if salpingo-oophorectomy is needed for treatment of tuboovarian abscesses. Coupure irrigation with lactated Ringer is essential if an abscess has ruptured or pus is present in the abdomen. Antibiotic irrigation has not demonstrated additional benefit or risk. If hysterectomy is necessary after bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, the vaginal vault should be left open for drainage (with or without a Penrose drain).

- Swan-Ganz catheter placement is helpful in monitoring central venous pressure in patients undergoing surgery for ruptured tuboovarian abscess.

**Bibliography**


Fughi V. Acute gonococcal peritonitis of the right upper quadrant in women. JAMA 1974;194:10214.


CHAPTER 31 LEIOMYOMATA UTERI AND MYOMECTOMY

LESLEY L. BREECH AND JOHN A. ROCK

DEFINITIONS

Intravenous leiomyomatosis—Smooth muscle tumor that consists of polypoid intravascular projections into the veins of the parametrium and broad ligaments.

Leiomyomatosis peritonealis disseminata—A benign reparative process in which fibroblasts replace soft peritoneal decidua on subperitoneal surfaces of the uterus and other pelvic and abdominal viscera resulting in nodules with a pseudoleiomyomatous pattern.

Menorrhagia—Prolonged (>7 days) or heavy (>80 mL) menstrual bleeding occurring at regular intervals.

Menometrorrhagia—Prolonged (>7 days) episodes of menstrual bleeding occurring at irregular intervals.

Submucosal—Present within the uterine myometrium just below the basal layer of the endometrial lining.

Subserosal—Present within the uterine myometrium just below the serosal or peritoneal covering of the uterus.

Leiomyomata are the most common tumors of the uterus and the female pelvis. This chapter discusses the pathologic and clinical features of uterine leiomyomata, the choice of treatment, and the indications and techniques for myomectomy.

Hysterectomy is sometimes required for the management of leiomyomata. It is also performed for many other indications, but leiomyomata uteri is the most common indication for hysterectomy. Refer to Chapter 32 for a complete discussion of hysterectomy.

Advances in gynecologic surgery just 100 years ago finally brought this common and sometimes fatal disease of women under reasonable control. Before the 20th century, no effective treatment was available. Uterine leiomyomata often grew to enormous size and caused great suffering from bleeding, pain, and emaciation (Fig. 31.1). Death from this benign disease was not uncommon. Progress in gynecologic surgery and anesthesia finally allowed the safe removal of these tumors by skilled gynecologic surgeons.

No one played a more important role in this endeavor than Drs. Kelly and Cullen. Working together at the Johns Hopkins Hospital, they gradually developed surgical techniques that were successful in preventing and controlling intraoperative hemorrhage. Several illustrations from their magnificent treatise, Myomata of the Uterus, published in 1907, are included in this chapter. In the preface, Cullen wrote:

It was my good fortune to come to Baltimore in 1891, shortly after the hospital opened. At that time many cases of myoma were considered inoperable, and even when hysterectomy was undertaken it was only in the cases in which a stout rubber ligature could be temporarily tied around the cervix and when, as happened in some cases, this ligature slipped, alarming hemorrhage followed. Then came the systematic controlling of each of the cardinal vessels, later the bisection, and finally the transverse severance of the cervix as a preliminary feature of the operation in exceptionally difficult cases, until at present a myomatous uterus that cannot be removed is almost unheard of. I have watched the gradual simplification of the surgical procedures with the greatest interest. Many American surgeons have had much to do with the wonderful advance in this direction, but I know of no other man, either here or abroad, who has done as much toward this advancement as Howard A. Kelly.

The mortality rate for 4,373 operations performed for uterine leiomyomata at the Johns Hopkins Hospital between 1889 and 1906 was 5.75%; it was less than 1% for 238 operations performed between 1906 and 1909. In 53 patients, no operation was attempted because of refusal or the patient’s weakened condition. Among these patients, 21 deaths occurred in the hospital. Death from uterine leiomyomata is a rare occurrence today. The almost total elimination of mortality caused by this tumor represents a major milestone in the health care of women.

During the past century, hysterectomy and myomectomy by the traditional and classic techniques have been the main treatment for women with uterine leiomyomata and significant symptoms, and they continue to be so today. Each year in the United States, more than 200,000 hysterectomies are performed with uterine leiomyomata as the primary indication. However, this traditional management will change in the future for several reasons:

1. Concern regarding the increasing costs of health care has focused on the need to use effective but less expensive methods of management of uterine leiomyomata.

2. Advances in surgical technology now allow certain patients to be treated with new, minimally invasive techniques, including laparoscopic hysterectomy, laparoscopic-assisted vaginal hysterectomy, laparoscopic myomectomy, laparoscopic myoma coagulation (mynalysis), and hysteroscopic resection of submucous myomata. Under proper circumstances, these procedures can be safe, effective, and less costly, but more time is needed before they will be available to a greater number of patients in need.

3. Interest in nonsurgical management also appears to be increasing with more data available regarding minimally invasive procedures, including uterine artery embolization. This procedure has emerged from an investigational realm to common clinical practice. As more long-term data become available, outcomes and prognosis are becoming more clearly defined.

4. A medical approach to the management of patients with leiomyomata is now available. Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) analogs, administered for 3 to 6 months, cause most uterine leiomyomata to shrink. However, the...
myomata regain their original size several months after the GnRH analog is discontinued. This medical regimen has been useful as an adjunct to surgical management. Women who become symptomatic with leiomyomata just before menopause can be treated temporarily with GnRH analogs and can possibly avoid surgical therapy.

5. Uterine leiomyomata are a major public health and women's health care problem. Society has a legitimate reason for interest and concern and has questioned the advisability of hysterectomy for the management of most cases of uterine leiomyomata. Many women insist on the preservation of uterine function for future childbearing, and sometimes even when future childbearing is not desired or not likely to occur. There will probably be a greater emphasis on expectant management, medical management, minimally invasive surgical procedures, and conservational management of uterine leiomyomata in the future.

In the future, the traditional and classic techniques of hysterectomy and myomectomy will be required less often for patients with symptomatic leiomyomata. At present, however, these operations are still appropriate in many situations.

ETIOLOGY, PATHOLOGY, AND GROWTH CHARACTERISTICS OF UTERINE LEIOMYOMATA

A leiomyoma is a benign tumor composed mainly of smooth muscle cells but containing varying amounts of fibrous connective tissue. The tumor is well circumscribed but not encapsulated. Various terms are used to refer to the tumor, such as fibromyoma, myofibroma, leiomyofibroma, fibroleiomyoma, myoma, fibroma, and fibroid. The latter designation is the one most commonly used, but it is the least accurate and acceptable. The term leiomyoma is a reasonably accurate one that emphasizes the origin of this tumor from smooth muscle cells and the predominance of the smooth muscle component. The tissue culture work of Miller and Ludovici suggested an origin from smooth muscle cells. The studies of Townsend and associates suggest a unicellular origin for leiomyomata. Leiomyomata are the most common tumors of the uterus and female pelvis. It is impossible to determine their true incidence accurately, although the frequently quoted incidence of 50% found at postmortem examinations seems reasonable. Leiomyomata are responsible for about one third of all hospital admissions to gynecology services. It is well recognized that the incidence is much higher in black women than in white. In a careful study of leiomyomata among women in Augusta, Georgia, Torpin and associates found the incidence among black women to be three and one third times that among white women. There is no explanation for this racial difference. Leiomyomata also are larger and occur at a younger age in black women. In our experience, a large degenerating intramural leiomyoma was removed from a 1-year-old black girl; the tumor had enlarged the uterus to the level of the umbilicus. In black women, leiomyomata are not uncommon before 30 years of age. However, they are uncommon in any women before 20 years of age. Patients with uterine leiomyomata often have a positive family history of uterine leiomyomata. This suggests the presence of a gene encoding for their development.

About 40% to 50% of leiomyomas show karyotypically detectable chromosomal abnormalities that are both nonrandom and tumor specific. Identified chromosomal abnormalities include t(12;14)(q15;q23–24), del(7)(q22q32), rearrangements involving 6p21, 10q, trisomy 12, and deletions of 8q. Interestingly, a recent study of 217 myomas found a positive correlation between the presence of a cytogenetic abnormality and the anatomic location of the myoma. In this study by Brosens and colleagues, submucous myomas were consistently shown to have fewer cytogenetic abnormalities when compared with intramural and subserous lesions (12% vs. 35% and 29%, respectively). An increased prevalence in certain races, twin studies indicating higher correlation with hysterectomy in monzygotic twins, and increased incidence in first-degree relatives all seem to support an inherited predisposition. The true genetic contribution to the development of uterine leiomyomata remains to be defined.

Most of the data concerning the incidence of uterine leiomyomata are based on gross examination of the uterus, routine pathology reports, or the clinical diagnosis of uterine leiomyomata. Cramer and Patel subjected 100 uteri to gross serial sectioning at 2-mm intervals. They found 649 leiomyomata, roughly threefold the number identified by routine pathologic examination. Admittedly, some were only a few millimeters in diameter, but all were grossly visible. In 48 uteri with no
mention of leiomyoma in the routine report, 27 were found to have small tumors. The incidence of leiomyoma was the same in premenopausal and postmenopausal uteri, although the average number of leiomyoma and the average size of the largest leiomyoma were greater in the premenopausal women. This work has important implications for future epidemiologic studies. It also suggests that it is almost never possible to sur-
gically remove all leiomyomas when a myomectomy is per-
formed.

The growth of leiomyoma is dependent on estrogen pro-
duction. The tumors thrive during the years of greatest ovarian ac-

tivity. Continuous estrogen secretion, especially when unun-
terupted, between pregnancy and lactation, is thought to be the most

important underlying risk factor in the development of my-

omata. After menopause, with regression of ovarian estrogen secre-
cion, growth of leiomyomata usually ceases. Actual re-
gression in the tumor size may occur. There are rare instances,

however, of postmenopausal growth of benign leiomyomata,
suggesting the possibility of postmenopausal estrogen produc-
tion either in the ovary or elsewhere. Postmenopausal ovarian
cortical stromal hyperplasia may be associated with an increase in
estrogen secretion by the ovary. The postmenopausal ovarian
stroma in a variety of presumably inactive ovarian tumors, in-
cluding mucinous cysts and Brenner tumors, can also produce
estrogen. When a central pelvic tumor presumed to be uterine
leiomyomata enlarges after menopause, one should think of
the possibility of malignant change in the leiomyoma itself or in
the adjacent myometrium, or of the growth of a new pelvic
tumor of extratrigonal origin.

Older nulliparous women have an increased risk of develop-
ing leiomyomata. However, in multiparous women, the rel-
vative risk decreases with each pregnancy. A woman who has
had five term pregnancies has only one fifth the risk of a nulli-
parity woman of the same age without leiomymata. The risk is reduced
in women who smoke and is increased in obese women; this is possibly related to the conversion of androgens to estrogen by
fat aromatase.

The observation that leiomyomata may show significant en-
largement during pregnancy provides further clinical evidence of
the relation of estrogen and progestrone to the growth of these
tumors. However, a better blood supply during preg-
nancy might also encourage their growth. In a prospective
ultrasonographic study of 29 pregnant patients with uterine
leiomyomata, Ahammer and associates found no evidence of en-
largement of the myomata in 78%. Lew-Toaff and colleagues also confirmed that some leiomyomata do enlarge during preg-
nancy in response to estrogen and progestrone.

In the initial two decades following the introduction of oral
contraceptives containing high-dose estrogen, there was a striking
increase in the occurrence of large leiomyomata among young
women of all racial backgrounds who took these pills. Although the growth of uterine leiomyomata is not invariably stimu-
lated, oral contraceptives containing high-dose estrogen should not be prescribed for women with these tumors. Oral
contraceptives with low-dose estrogen are less likely to stim-
lulate growth. According to Parazzini and associates, there is no significant relation between the occurrence or growth of
leiomyomata and the newer oral contraceptives that contain
much smaller amounts of estrogens and progestins, and some
believe that the risk of developing myomata is reduced with
these low-dose pills.

Scientific investigators have been intrigued by the obser-
vation that leiomyoma develop during the reproductive years, sometimes grow during pregnancy, and regress after
menopause. Nelson, Lipshutz, and others have produced mul-
tiple leiomyoma artificially on the serosal surface of the
uterus and other peritoneal surfaces in guinea pigs given pro-
longed estrogen injections. Spellacy and coworkers found that
levels of plasma estradiol were the same in patients with and
without leiomyomata. However, Wilson and associates found
a significantly higher concentration of estrogen receptors in
leiomyomata than in myometrium. Farber and colleagues re-
ported that these tumors had a 20% more estradiol (17β)
milligram of cytoplasmic protein than does the normal my-
ometrium of the same organ. This observation was not uni-
formly true for all leiomyoma, suggesting that different cel-
lular components with a leiomyoma may be associated with different biologic activity. Onuba and coworkers found the
concentration of estradiol to be significantly higher in leiomy-
omata than in normal myometrium, especially in the prolif-
erative phase of the menstrual cycle. Soules and McCarty re-
ported that leiomyomata had more estrogen receptors than did
normal uterine tissues in the first phase (days 1 through 9)
and in the second phase (days 10 through 18) of the men-
strual cycle. Gabb and Stone found that the ability to con-
vert estradiol to estrone was similar in leiomyomata and
myometrium. However, Follaw and associates found the con-
version of estradiol into estrone to be significantly lower in
leiomyomata than in myometrium. This difference in con-
version rate could result in a relative accumulation ofestro-
gen in a leiomyoma, causing a hyperestrogenic state within
the tumor and surrounding tissues. The enzyme 17β-hydroxy
dehydrogenase accelerates the conversion of estradiol to es-
trone. Leiomyomata have a low concentration of 17β-hydroxy
dehydrogenase, which results in a relative accumulation of
estradiol in leiomyomatous tissue. These findings may explain the
myometrial hypertrophy that is invariably present with
leiomyomata.

Other abnormalities in endocrine function have also been
suggested. Ylikorkala and colleagues found that pituitary func-
tion may be abnormal in women with leiomyomata. Patients
with leiomyomata had a low follicle-stimulating hormone level
and a diminished follicle-stimulating hormone response to pi-

tuitary GnRH. There was an exaggerated prolactin response to thyrotropin-releasing hormone. Spellacy and colleagues found
that the peak levels of human growth hormone reached dur-
ing a hypoglycemic test were twice as high in patients with
leiomyomata as in the control group. Reddy and Rose sug-
gested the possibility that 5α-reduced androgens may play a
role in the pathophysiology of uterine leiomyomata, because a
significant increase in 5α-reductase has been found in leiomy-
omata tissue as compared with myometrium and endometrium.

Influenced by the experimental investigations of Lipschutz and
associates, Goodman in 1946 treated patients with uterine
leiomyomata with progesterone and noted a decrease in tu-
mor size in all patients. However, Segaloff and colleagues re-
ported no effect in their study. Goldracher and coworkers pro-
duced histologic evidence of extensive degenerative changes
in leiomyomata by administering high-dose progestin therapy
(medrogestone in high doses for 21 days). Filscher and asso-
ciates have reported the regression of a uterine leiomyoma after
long-term administration of a long-acting luteinizing hormone
releasing hormone agonist given to suppress ovarian estrogen
secretion. Coutinho successfully used a potent 19-norsteroid
antiestrogen-antiprogesterone to treat excessive uterine bleed-
ing in 16 patients with uterine leiomyomata. A reduction in the
size of the tumors was noted.

Although the exact etiology of uterine leiomyomata is not
known, the puzzle may be solved bit by bit by the research of
Kornay and colleagues, Wilson and coworkers, Tamaya and

Leiomyomata Uteri and Myomectomy 689
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

...and occasionally parasitic, receiving its blood supply from anastomotic vessels with the endometrium and myometrium.

The extracellular matrix of leiomyoma is composed mostly of collagen but also contains proteoglycans and fibronectin. According to Fujita, myomata contain 50% more collagen than does normal myometrium, and the ratio of collagen type I to collagen type III is increased in myomata. Fibronectin is a glycoprotein that mediates adhesion between myoma cells and extracellular matrix.

The most common change in leiomyosarcoma is hyaline degeneration. The cut surface of a hyalinized area is smooth and...
Leiomyomata Uteri and Myomectomy

FIGURE 31.2. The uterine corpus is almost completely replaced by small and large myomas in intramural, subserous, and submucous positions. Some are pedunculated. A pedunculated submucous myoma is dilating the endocervical canal. A pedunculated subserous myoma is adjacent to the left ovary and will interfere with its palpation.

homogeneous and does not show the whorl-like arrangement of the rest of the leiomyoma. Almost all leiomyomata, except the smallest, have scattered areas of hyaline degeneration. Eventually these may become liquefied and form cystic cavities filled with clear liquid or gelatinous material (Fig. 31.3). Sometimes the cystic change is so great that the leiomyoma becomes a mere shell and is truly a cystic tumor. Softness of a tumor does not necessarily indicate cystic degeneration. Fleshy leiomyomata may be equally soft.

FIGURE 31.3. Multiple leiomyomata are present. A large subserous myoma has undergone partial cystic degeneration.

Over time, with continued diminished blood supply and ischemic necrosis of tissue, calcium phosphates and carbonates are deposited in myomata. Their presence is evidence of a continuum of degenerative changes. The calcium may be deposited in varying amounts. If it is deposited at the periphery of the tumor, the leiomyoma may resemble a calcified cyst. Other calcified leiomyomata may show an irregular or diffuse distribution throughout with a honeycomb or mulberry appearance. When the degenerative change is advanced, the leiomyoma may become solidly calcified. Such calcified tumors have been called “wombstones.” Calcified leiomyomata are seen most often in elderly women, in black women, and in women who have pedunculated subserous tumors. They are easily seen radiographically (Fig. 31.4).

Leiomyomata may undergo changes as a result of infection. Submucous leiomyomata are most commonly infected when they protrude into the uterine cavity, or especially into the vagina (Fig. 31.5). The pedunculated submucous leiomyoma thins out the endometrium as it grows inward, and eventually the surface becomes ulcerated and infected (Fig. 31.6). An intramural leiomyoma in an involuting puerperal uterus can also become infected when endometritis is present. Microscopic abscesses can be found, and gross abscesses occasionally occur, particularly if the leiomyoma descends as low as the cervical canal. Such infections are usually streptococcal and may be virulent. Bacteroides fragilis infections also occur. Perimetritis, peritonitis, and even septicemia may result.

Necrosis of a leiomyoma is caused by interference with its blood supply. Occasionally a pedunculated subserous leiomyoma twists, and if an operation is not done immediately, infarction results. Necrosis sometimes occurs in the center of a large tumor simply as a result of poor circulation. Necrotic leiomyomata are dark and hemorrhagic in the interior. Eventually the tissue breaks down completely. So-called red or carneous degeneration is seen occasionally, especially in association with pregnancy. This condition is thought to result from poor circulation of blood through a rapidly growing tumor. Thrombosis and extravasation of blood into the myoma tissue are responsible for the reddish discoloration (Fig. 31.7).

A subserous and especially a subserous pedunculated myoma may gradually outgrow its blood supply (Fig. 31.8). To keep the myoma tissue from undergoing complete ischemic...
FIGURE 31.4. An abdominal radiograph shows typical calcification in a leiomyoma.

FIGURE 31.5. A large submucous pedunculated myoma has dilated the cervix and is now located in the vagina. Its pedicle is attached inside the uterine cavity. Morcellation of the myoma performed transvaginally allows clamping and ligation of the pedicle.

FIGURE 31.6. Pedunculated submucous myoma showing necrosis and ulceration.
Leiomyomata Uteri and Myomectomy

FIGURE 31.7. Degenerating leiomyoma showing carneous discoloration caused by thrombosis and extravasation of blood into the myoma tissue. A Dalkon shield can be seen in the endometrial cavity. See color version of figure.

FIGURE 31.8. A subserous pedunculated myoma receives tenuous blood supply through its uterine pedicle. Such a myoma may wander in the upper abdomen and eventually receive its blood supply from other sources. It may also twist on its pedicle and undergo infarction.

necrosis, the omentum becomes adherent to the peritoneal surface of a pedunculated subserous myoma and provides whatever blood supply is needed. Eventually, the pedicle may disappear or twist, and the myoma will become completely free from the uterus, wander in the upper abdomen, and receive its “parasitic” blood supply from the omentum and other sources. On occasion, fat occurs in leiomyomata as true fatty degeneration. The cut surface may have a yellowish discoloration. Infrequently, a deposit of true fat may form a fibrolipoma; however, the presence of fat in a leiomyoma is rare. Indeed, if fat is seen grossly or microscopically in a curettage specimen, one should not assume that it represents fatty degeneration of a leiomyoma. One should assume that the uterus has been perforated and that fragments of fat have been curetted from the mesentery or omentum.

The most important, but rare, change in a leiomyoma is sarcomatous degeneration. There is much variation in the reported incidence of sarcoma in leiomyomata. The incidence given by Novak is 0.7%. However, a review of 13,000 myomata by Montague and associates at the Johns Hopkins Hospital revealed 38 cases of malignant change, the incidence of sarcoma thus being 0.29%. Corscaden and Singh indicated by their study that the true incidence of sarcoma developing within uterine leiomyomata is no higher than 0.13% and is probably as low as 0.04%. It should be remembered that because most women with uterine leiomyomata do not undergo surgical removal, the true incidence of sarcoma in leiomyomata is probably much lower than 1 per 1,000 (0.1%).

After hysterectomy in 1,429 patients with presumed benign leiomyomata, the histologic diagnosis of leiomyosarcoma was made in seven (0.49%), according to a study by Leibsohn and coworkers. There was no evidence of malignancy in the endometrial sampling of any of these seven patients, and the diagnosis was suspected intraoperatively in only three. Uterine weights ranged from 120 to 1,100 g. In a woman between 41 and 50 years of age with presumed symptomatic leiomyomata, there is a 1 in 112 chance of a leiomyosarcoma being present, according to these authors. This information has important implications in the consideration of conservative or delayed treatment for these women. Parker and associates found that the total incidence of uterine sarcomas (leiomyosarcoma, endometrial stromal sarcoma, and mixed mesodermal tumor) among patients operated on for presumed benign uterine leiomyoma is lower (0.23%) than the 0.49% reported by Leibsohn and coworkers.

The difficulty in defining the true incidence of sarcomatous change is understandable if one is familiar with the histology of leiomyomata. Abundantly cellular leiomyomata are relatively common, and at first glance they suggest sarcoma; however, they lack a significant number of mitotic figures, and patients from whom such tumors are removed all remain well. Misinterpretation of the histologic picture of this type of cellular leiomyoma undoubtedly accounts for the increased incidence of leiomyosarcoma reported by some. When cutting into leiomyomata in the operating room, the surgeon finds that sarcomatous areas have a somewhat characteristic appearance, although the histologic diagnosis certainly cannot be made by gross examination. A sarcoma is likely to occur in a rather large leiomyoma and toward the center of the tumor, where the blood supply is poorest. Instead of being firm fibrous tissue that grates when scraped with a knife blade, the tissue is soft and homogenous, and is described as resembling raw pork. Later, as necrosis of the malignant tissue occurs, it becomes more friable and hemorrhagic.

It has been difficult to understand uterine leiomyosarcoma because pathologists do not agree on the criteria necessary for
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

There is a lower level of mitotic activity. Although combination therapy (surgery plus radiation therapy or chemotherapy) may not be indicated for a patient with an epithelioid leiomyoma, follow-up should be considered essential, as emphasized by Klunder and colleagues.

An unusual benign form of leiomyomatous uteri, intravenous leiomyomatosis, was first recognized at the turn of the 20th century and has been reported sporadically since then. By 1982, about 50 cases had been reported, according to Bahary and coworkers. Probably at least that many have been reported since. Marshall and Morris presented the first detailed report of this entity in the American literature in 1959. The characteristic feature of this peculiar smooth muscle tumor is the extension of the polyposid intravascular projections into the veins of the parametrium and broad ligaments. Although there may be some difficulty in distinguishing such lesions from low-grade sarcoma, they are distinctly different histologically from stromatous uteri because the intravenous plugs are mainly smooth muscle in origin. In 1966, Edwards and Peacock collected 32 cases of intravenous leiomyomatosis, including two cases of their own, and reviewed the clinical experience with this condition. In approximately 50% of the cases, the intravenous tumor was confined to the parametrium; in 75%, it extended no further than the veins of the broad ligament. The observations of Edwards and Peacock suggest that the severity of intravenous extensions is probably incapable of independent parasitic existence and remain dormant after removal of the uterus. However, the cases presented by Bahary and associates tend to refute this idea. Total surgical excision of the tumor should be attempted for successful therapy. Some patients have survived for many years after incomplete resection of the tumor. A review of 14 cases of this rare uterine tumor from the file of the Armed Forces Institute of Pathology has been reported by Norris and Parmley. In this series, incomplete resection had a recurrence; the recurrent tumor was excised surgically, and the patients were alive and free of disease 3 and 5 years after operation. The authors concluded that this tumor behaves clinically like a benign neoplasm, although its wormlike extensions may involve uterine, vaginal, ovarian, and iliac veins. The uterine veins in the broad ligaments are the most common sites of extension. The mitotic index is quite low, with the most active lesions showing only one mitosis per 10 high-power fields. The material from the Armed Forces Institute of Pathology provides histologic evidence consistent with both theories of origin of intravenous leiomyomatosis, namely, that it may be the result of unusual vascular invasion from a leiomyoma or may arise de novo from the wall of veins within the myometrium.

Extension of benign leiomyomatosis up the vena cava and into the right atrium has been reported in several cases, with a fatal outcome in some. Before 1994, approximately 27 cases of intravenous leiomyomatosis extending to the heart were reported. Several recent cases requiring open-heart surgery to remove the intracardiac tumor thrombosis have been successful and without recurrence. All reported cases occurred in women. Tierney and colleagues reported that substantial quantities of cytoplasmic estradiol and progesterone receptors were found in the right atrial tumor removed from a patient with intravenous leiomyomatosis. Their patient was treated with the antiestrogen tamoxifen because of residual tumor in the vena cava that could be estrogen dependent. Irey and Norris have presented evidence that female reproductive steroids can produce initial proliferation of veins in patients with intravenous leiomyomatosis. The 30 patients with leiomyoma and leiomyosarcomas of the vena cava reviewed by Wray and Dawkins, 80% were female. Both intravenous leiomyomatosis and benign metastasizing

diagnosis. Some pathologists rely on the mitotic count. All tumors with less than five mitotic figures per 10 high-power fields are considered benign. All tumors with more than 10 mitotic figures per 10 high-power fields are called malignant. Those in between can be called smooth muscle tumors of uncertain malignant potential.

Other pathologists believe the mitotic count may have some significance but choose to rely instead on the presence of nuclear hyperchromatism, nuclear pleomorphism, or giant cells and other bizarre cell forms to make the diagnosis. Cascadden and Singh believe that no combination of histologic features is reliable and that only smooth muscle tumors that metastasize or recur are definitively malignant. They believe that all of these features should be taken into consideration for diagnosis and prognosis. When the tumor is confined to the uterus, both mitotic grade and histologic grade are important in the diagnosis and prognosis. A poor prognosis is associated with high mitotic counts and extremely atypical and anaplastic cytologic features. Bell and colleagues at Stanford University Medical Center assessed a variety of histopathologic features of 213 problematic smooth muscle neoplasms for which there were at least 2 years of clinical follow-up data. From the wide variety of light-microscopic features assessed, the important predictors that emerged were mitotic index, the degree of cytologic atypia, and the presence or absence of coagulative tumor cell necrosis. Previously, the mitotic index was relied on exclusively to determine whether a uterine smooth muscle tumor was benign or malignant, but currently an approach is used that incorporates additional histopathologic features. A normal chromosome complement (46,XX) was observed by Meloni and coworkers in about 50% of leiomyoma cases. About 50% showed clonal abnormalities, such as those of chromosomes 1, 7, and 13, and tel(12;14). Interstitial deletions of chromosomes 12, 13, and 17 are most often involved, suggesting that this abnormality may be of primary importance in the cellular proliferation of leiomyomatosa. A relation between more aggressive histology and chromosomal abnormalities was also suggested.

Tumors that show obvious evidence of blood vessel invasion or spread to contiguous organs are rarely cured. The extent of the disease at the time of initial diagnosis is of even greater significance. In other words, when the diagnosis is suspected for the first time by the pathologist when he examines routine sections from a uterine leiomyoma, the patient almost always survives. However, if the diagnosis is made preoperatively by the gynecologist or is suspected during the operative procedure because of invasion of surrounding organs, the prognosis is grave.

An unusual atypical smooth muscle tumor was first described in the stomach by Martin and associates in 1960. Variously called bizarre leiomyoma, leiomyoblastoma, clear-cell leiomyoma, and pleomorphic tumorlet, these atypical smooth muscle tumors probably all belong together. The term epithelioid leiomyoma was adopted by the World Health Organization. Kurman and Norris have proposed that this term be used for all atypical leiomyomas. Histologically, the characteristic feature is the mixture of rounded polygonal cells and multinucleated giant cells present in epithelioid, clear-cell and pleomorphic patterns. Clinically, in the uterus most of these tumors are benign. They may rarely exhibit malignant potential. Malignancy is difficult to predict from histologic criteria because some metastases occurred from tumors that demonstrated very few mitoses. Kurman and Norris believe that epithelioid leiomyomas having more than five mitotic figures per 10 high-power fields should be called epithelioid leiomyosarcoma and that the term epithelioid leiomyoma should be applied when
Leiomyoma uteri and myomectomy

Leiomyoma have been reported to metastasize to the lung. As suggested by Banner and coworkers, by Hoosmann and associates, and by Evans and colleagues, oophorectomy may be indicated in patients with these conditions, again because of the possibility that these tumors may be estrogen dependent or that estrogens may have the ability to stimulate their development, whether in a uterine or extraperitoneal condition. Whether or not tumors develop is not known, but it is possible that these tumors may be estrogen dependent or that estrogens may have the ability to stimulate their development, whether in a uterine or extraperitoneal condition.

The possibility of metastases from a histologically benign uterine leiomyoma has been discussed by Ide1son and Davids and by Clark and Reed. When such a case occurs, it is usually settled by finding a sarcomatous component in the leiomyoma. However, multiple cases have now been reported in which a benign uterine leiomyoma metastasized. Ide1son and Davids’ case showed metastases to the aortic lymph nodes. The patient reported by Cramer and associates had metastatic tumor to the omentum, ovary, peri-aortic lymph node, and lung. In each location, the histology and estrogen receptor content of the tumor resembled those of a benign leiomyoma. The recommended treatment consists of surgical removal with castration and little or no estrogen replacement.

Leiomyomatosis peritonealis disseminata is sometimes confused with intravenous leiomyomatosis. However, only subperitoneal surfaces of the uterus and other pelvic and abdominal viscera are involved with leiomyomatosis peritonealis disseminata, and invasion of the lumen of blood vessels does not occur. Only about 15 cases have been reported, according to the literature. All occurred in patients in the reproductive years who often had large uterine leiomyomata and were usually pregnant or taking oral contraceptives. The condition is likely to be confused with a disseminated intraabdominal malignancy, but it is entirely benign histologically and clinically. Parmley and associates have noted the histologic similarities between this peritoneal lesion and the decidual change of the mesothelium in the pelvis, and they propose that the condition represents a benign reparative process in which fibroblasts replace soft peritoneal decidualia. They suggest that this fibrocystic reaction occurs during pregnancy and especially in the postpartum period, resulting in nodules with a pseudoleiomyomatous pattern. Similar findings have been noted in patients with endometriosis treated with prolonged Enovid therapy. These conditions are pertinent when surgery, especially myomectomy, is contemplated.

According to Vollhoven and associates, the vascularization of leiomyoma was studied by Vasserman and colleagues, and the findings were presented to the World Congress of Gynecology and Obstetrics in 1988. Using femoral arteriography, selective intraoperative angiography, radiography, and injection of surgical specimens, these investigators showed that leiomyomata have a rich vascular supply, including blood lakes within tumors. They found more than one nutrient vessel per myoma. Venous channels were predominantly peripheral, whereas the arterial supply was both internal and peripheral. Farrer-Brown and coworkers, using radiologic methods, demonstrated that myomata in various locations within the myometrium can cause congestion and dilatation of endometrial venous plexuses by obstructing venous return. These obstructions can result in ectasia of endometrial and myometrial veins (Fig. 31.9). The degree of vascularity of leiomyomata was also studied by Karsen and Persson. Vascularity varied from many, to few, to no intrinsic vessels demonstrable. Generally, the sum of the width and number of the uterine arteries increases with the size of the uterus, but the diameter of the two sides sometimes differs markedly. A rich vascularization was found in 22 of 34 uteri with leiomyomata, but with increasing size there is a tendency to less vascularity. In none of five cases with very large (20 cm or more) leiomyomata uteri was the vascularity rich. The intrinsic vessels were few in two cases and absent in three cases.

CLINICAL FEATURES OF UTERINE LEIOMYOMATA

Asymptomatic Leiomyomata

Most leiomyomata are asymptomatic. Untold numbers of such symptomless leiomyomata are removed surgically by either hysterectomy or myomectomy when they would have been better left undisturbed. The incidence of malignancy in leiomyomata is less than 0.1%, which is lower than the operative mortality rate of hysterectomy in the average hospital; therefore, unless there is some reason to suspect malignant change, the risk of the operation for asymptomatic leiomyomata may exceed the danger of malignancy. A history of rapid growth, however, particularly postmenopausal growth, does indicate removal, even when the tumor produces no symptoms. Signs of rapid enlargement are important in all patients but are even more ominous in older patients. In younger patients, the most common reason for rapid enlargement of a uterus with...
leiomyomata is pregnancy. If pregnancy can be ruled out, a leiomyosarcoma may be suspected but is rarely found.

Small leiomyomata that are asymptomatic need only to be observed from time to time, with pelvic examinations perhaps every 6 to 12 months and pelvic ultrasonography when indicated. In the beginning, frequent examination may be indicated to determine the growth rate. Such tumors may remain remarkably constant in size for years. If small leiomyomata are discovered late in menopausal life, it is unusual for symptoms to appear or for surgical treatment to be required. Larger tumors can also be watched safely, but if a policy of watchful waiting is adopted, one should be very sure of the nature of the tumors. If there is uncertainty of the uterine or ovarian origin of a tumor, as may well be the case when the tumor fills the whole pelvis or when a pedunculated tumor is felt in the adnexal region (Fig. 31.10), special diagnostic procedures may be indicated. Pelvic examination by an experienced gynecologist can usually clear up the uncertainty. In difficult cases, an examination under anesthesia may be necessary. Laparoscopy may be of great value in determining the nature of an adnexal mass. Before invasive techniques are used, however, noninvasive diagnostic evaluation should be performed. These include radiographic studies of the abdomen and pelvis, ultrasonography (US), and computed tomography (CT). The characteristic calcification in a leiomyoma may be seen on radiographs. The US and CT features of uterine leiomyomata have been well described. However, mistakes in the interpretation can still be made. Tada and associates reported that 5% of patients given the diagnosis of uterine leiomyomata by CT actually had an ovarian tumor at operation. Therefore, if uncertainty about the diagnosis persists, laparoscopy or laparotomy should still be performed.

When large asymptomatic leiomyomata occur in premenopausal women who have had their families or in whom
future childbearing is not important, a recommendation for removal may be made. It is impossible to predict which patients will become symptomatic in the remaining years before menopause. However, such tumors, with additional years to grow, are likely to require surgical removal eventually. Therefore, it is better to remove them when the patient is a good operative risk and when conservation of normal ovaries with a good blood supply can be easily accomplished. Such tumors should usually be 12 to 14 weeks in gestational size or larger. Depending on a variety of factors, either myomectomy or hysterectomy can be recommended to the patient. GnRH agonists may be useful in women approaching menopause to control symptoms or asymptomatic uterine myoma growth until menopause. The regrowth of tumors after the cessation of treatment limits the usefulness of these agents, however. Nakamura and Yoshimura reported their experience with GnRH agonists in the treatment of uterine leiomyoma in perimenopausal women. One third of patients reached menopause after 16 weeks of treatment, thus avoiding the need for surgery.

Reiter and colleagues studied 93 consecutive patients undergoing hysterectomy for leiomyomata. When the uterus was larger than 12 weeks’ gestational size, there was no increased incidence of surgical complications compared with women with smaller uterus. On the basis of this small series, the authors concluded that hysterectomy need not be recommended to women with large asymptomatic uterine leiomyomata to avoid a possible increased risk of surgical complications.

There is no uniform size of an asymptomatic leiomyoma-tous uterus that can be used as an indication for hysterectomy or myomectomy. When size is the only significant indication for surgery in an asymptomatic patient, the location of the tumors is more important than the total uterine mass. When the leiomyomata are located in the cornual area or in the lateral wall of the uterus and obscure the anatomy of the adnexa and broad ligament, the risk of error in the early recognition of an ovarian tumor is greater. In such cases, one must carefully weigh the advantages and disadvantages of the conservative approach to the management of uterine leiomyomata. When adnexal tumors are present, it is critical that the origin of these tumors be confirmed. The diagnostic studies mentioned earlier should be performed to establish clearly that the tumors are of uterine origin before a decision is made to follow up the patient rather than operate. It is unacceptable to wait to see whether an adnexal tumor enlarges before identifying the site of origin of the mass as either uterine or ovarian. Ovarian carcinoma remains the most lethal disease of the female reproductive tract and the most difficult to diagnose early. Every diagnostic and therapeutic effort must be made to avoid errors in the clinical evaluation of pelvic neoplasms (Fig. 31.10). In women who are approaching menopause, relatively large uterine leiomyomata can be kept under observation with the knowledge that after menopause they will not increase in size and may actually regress somewhat. Still, one must be certain that the entire central pelvic mass is a leiomyomatous uterus. Patient management is largely dependent on knowledge of the exact location and size of leiomyomas. Imaging modalities play an important role in determining patient management, especially when differentiating a benign leiomyoma from other pathologic conditions that may require different therapies.

Uterine size as an indication for surgical intervention in women with leiomyomata has been thoughtfully discussed by Friedman and Haas. These authors point out that many gynecologists advocate surgical removal of leiomyomata when the uterus reaches 12 weeks’ gestational size or greater, regardless of the presence or absence of significant symptoms. Historical reasons given for surgical intervention include the following:

- The inability to accurately assess the ovaries by examination
- The possible malignancy of the pelvic mass
- The potential for compromise of adjacent organ function if the mass continues to enlarge
- The greater risk of surgical complications if the mass grows to a larger size
- The potential for better fertility if myomectomy is performed when the uterus is smaller
- The possibility of continued growth of uterine leiomyomata if hormone replacement therapy is given after menopause

Friedman and Haas find very little in the literature to support these indications for surgical intervention and believe the availability of modern high-resolution US and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) allows for expectant management in many patients with large asymptomatic uterine leiomyomata. They prefer to give primary consideration to the presence and severity of myoma-related symptoms in deciding whether surgical intervention is indicated. We believe that such a course of expectant management is appropriate only when there is relative certainty regarding the benign nature of the central pelvic mass and all of its components, and when it is possible to get the patient to return for periodic assessment of gynecologic symptoms and findings on pelvic examination. Repeat MRI may also be required occasionally. If one elects to observe a patient with a relatively large asymptomatic uterine leiomyoma, it is a good rule to obtain an excretory urogram or renal ultrasound. Everett and Sturgis showed many years ago that ureteral compression at the pelvic brim may occur so that hydronephrosis and hydroptosis develop (Fig. 31.11). It is usually the symmetrically enlarged
uterus with intramural leiomyomata that extends near or above the umbilicus and rests on the pelvic brim that compresses the ureters, in the same way as a symmetrically enlarged gravid uterus. The process is usually slow and painless even when moderate to severe hydronephrosis has occurred. Pyelographic evidence of kidney damage may be the determining factor in a decision to operate on a patient with an entirely asymptomatic leiomyoma. The irregularly and asymmetrically enlarged uterus with subserous tumors usually does not produce pressure on the ureters.

After menopause, asymptomatic leiomyomata generally should be left undisturbed. Again, the gynecologist must be absolutely certain that an ovarian neoplasm can be ruled out. In the postmenopausal years, shrinkage of myomata and the myometrium occurs. However, the myometrial shrinkage may be disproportionately greater than the myoma shrinkage. Therefore, a myoma in an intramural location before menopause may become a submucous myoma after menopause and then become symptomatic for the first time, usually with postmenopausal bleeding.

In menopausal women, the appearance of even the slightest trace of vaginal bleeding should make one suspect cervical or endometrial malignancy or the possibility of sarcomatous change in the leiomyoma (Figs. 31.12 and 31.13). Careful pelvic examination, Pap test, and evaluation of the cervix by colposcopy or biopsy, pelvic US, fractional curettage, and perhaps hysteroscopy should be done. If the bleeding remains unexplained and the presence of atrophic vaginitis or the use of exogenous estrogens has been excluded, the leiomyomatous uterus should be removed because of the risk of sarcomatous change.

Transabdominal and endovaginal US are the standard imaging modalities for the detection of leiomyomas. Pelvic US by transvaginal and transabdominal techniques is most useful because of good patient tolerance, relatively low cost, availability, and accuracy when performed by well-trained and experienced ultrasonographers (Fig. 31.14). Ultrasonography is the most cost-effective screening mechanism for uterine masses suggestive of myomas. Sonographic criteria for diagnosis have been well described. Generally, abdominal US is unable to detect myomas less than 2 cm in diameter. Endovaginal probes have allowed for improved visualization of both the uterus and adnexa. With higher frequencies, sensitivity in the detection of small myomas has substantially increased. In a series evaluated by Fedele and colleagues using endovaginal ultrasound before hysterectomy, submucous leiomyomas were identified with a sensitivity of 100%. Difficulties may arise, however, if myomas are small or pedunculated, patients are obese, or the uterus is retroverted.

Transvaginal fluid-enhanced vaginal probe sonography (sonohysterography) is a useful technique to assess myomata that distort the endometrial cavity. This technique has little to no complications and is generally well tolerated with only mild cramping described by patients. The limitation of detection of leiomyomas with this modality is 0.5 cm diameter. In a study by Hoetzinger, the majority of intrauterine myomata (14 of 16, or 88%) were detected by sonohysterography. Ultrasound transducing catheters have been suggested as a potential tool.
to supplement abdominal and endovaginal sonography. Three-dimensional data display has recently undergone development and application in sonography; however, the role in evaluation and management of leiomyoma remains unclear (Fig. 31.9).

There is no technique that reliably identifies a leiomyoma. Plain abdominal or pelvic radiographs and hysterosalpingography are older, standard techniques that are still useful in assessing uterine size, calcification in myomata, and uterine filling defects caused by submucous myomata, and tubal pathology. These techniques, combined with US, are the most useful for assessing patients with a central pelvic mass thought to be a leiomyomatous uterus. CA-125 levels may be elevated in women with uterine leiomyomata, but the levels are generally lower than those in patients with ovarian cancer.

Symptomatic Leiomyomata

Less than 50% of patients with uterine leiomyomata have symptoms. Symptoms may be single or multiple and depend on the location, size, and number of tumors present. A clinical and pathologic study of 298 patients with uterine leiomyomata by Perkash and Arjoon revealed no significant relation between the presenting symptoms and the presence of degenerative changes in the tumors. Some form of degeneration was demonstrated in 65.5% of the specimens, with hyaline degeneration accounting for 83% of all types of degeneration. Hyaline degeneration produces no characteristic symptoms. Symptoms, especially pain and fever, may be present in some patients with red degeneration of a leiomyoma during pregnancy, with torsion and infarction of a subserous pedunculated leiomyoma, or with an infected leiomyoma. A discussion of the signs and symptoms caused by uterine leiomyomata follows.

Abnormal Bleeding

It is surprising but not unusual that even patients with large uterine leiomyomata may have a history of normal menstruation. Such patients should be questioned carefully about recent slight increases in the amount, duration, and frequency of menstruation. Some patients with a history of normal menstruation are found to have iron-deficiency anemia from a gradual increase in menstrual blood loss that even the patient has not recognized. If a case of uterine leiomyomata is to be followed, the patient should be asked to monitor her menstrual blood loss carefully and be given instructions to keep a menstrual calendar and monthly record of the number of pads or tampons used each day. A more objective measurement of the amount of menstrual blood loss using the method of Hallberg and Nilsson may be helpful in doubtful cases. Iron depletion may not be evident by laboratory determination unless one performs an iron stain on a uterine curettage specimen. In the early months of increased menstrual blood loss, the hemoglobin and hematocrit values are normal. Heavy menstruation does not cause anemia until iron stores are first depleted.

Abnormal bleeding occurs in about one third of patients with symptomatic uterine leiomyomata and commonly indicates that treatment is necessary. The menstrual flow is usually heavy (menorrhagia), but it can also be prolonged (metrorrhagia) or both heavy and prolonged (menometrorrhagia). Abnormal bleeding may be associated with submucous, intramural, and subserous tumors, but there is a distinct clinical impression that bleeding myomata are associated with the presence of submucous tumors. The submucous leiomyoma bleeds freely at menstruation and may also bleed between periods as a result of passive congestion, necrosis, and ulceration of the endometrial surface over the tumor and ulceration of the contralateral uterine surface. If the submucous myoma is pedunculated, there is usually a constant, thin, blood-tined discharge in addition to the menorrhagia. An intramural tumor that is just beginning to encroach on the uterine cavity can also be responsible for menorrhagia. Intramural leiomyomata near the serosal surface and pedunculated subserous tumors can also be associated with abnormal bleeding. When bleeding is also present with leiomyomata, however, one should search for some other lesion to account for it. The mere presence of leiomyomata in a woman who has abnormal uterine bleeding is not proof that the leiomyomata are causing the bleeding. This fact is important, particularly when there is intermenstrual bleeding. When a patient with leiomyomata has intermenstrual bleeding, it is a rule in our practice to examine and study the cervix carefully with special diagnostic procedures and to sample and evaluate the uterine cavity before we proceed with treatment of the leiomyomata. If an endometrial or cervical malignancy is detected, the treatment of the leiomyomata may need to be altered.

There are several mechanisms by which leiomyomata can cause abnormal bleeding, although a single specific mechanism may not be apparent in a particular patient. According to Sehgal and Haskins, the surface area of the endometrial cavity in a normal uterus is 15 cm². The surface area of the endometrial cavity in the presence of leiomyomata may exceed 200 cm². These authors demonstrated a correlation between the severity of the bleeding and the area of endometrial surface. In addition to an increased surface area from which to bleed, the endometrium may demonstrate local hyperestrogenism in areas immediately adjacent to submucous tumors, and endometrial hyperplasia and endometrial polyps are commonly found.

Degligdish and Loewenthal noted a broad spectrum of histologic abnormalities in the endometrium associated with leiomyomata, ranging from atrophy to hyperplasia. Thinning and ulceration of the endometrial surface may be present over large submucous tumors; smaller ones may show slight thinning without ulceration. The presence of leiomyomata may interfere with myometrial contractility as well as contractility of the spiral arterioles in the basalis portion of the endometrium. Miller and Ludovics suggested that annulation and dysfunctional uterine bleeding are more common in the presence of uterine leiomyomata.

Sampson in 1913 was the first to study the blood supply of uterine leiomyomata and its effect on uterine bleeding. More recent studies have been performed by Faulkner and by Farrer-Brown and associates. The most prominent and important change is the presence of endometrial venule ectasia. Tumors that are strategically located in the myometrium may cause obstruction and proximal congestion of veins in the myometrium and endometrium. Thrombosis and sludging of these large dilated venous channels within the endometrium produce heavy bleeding (Fig. 31.15).

Makarainen and Yliorkinkela have presented evidence that further supports the concept that prostanoids play a role in primary menorrhagia. They found that the production of 6-keto-prostaglandin F₁α (6-keto-PGF₁α), a metabolite of prostacyclin (PGI₂), and thromboxane B₂ (TXB₂), a metabolite of thromboxane A₂ (TXA₂), was normal with menorrhagic endometrium. However, the balance between TXA₂ and PGI₂ shifted to a relative TXA₂ deficiency and was negatively related to blood loss in patients with menorrhagia. Although ibuprofen decreased the blood loss in patients with primary menorrhagia, it failed to reduce myoma-associated menorrhagia. The authors suggest that uterine factors other than prostanoids are more important in causing menorrhagia associated with uterine leiomyomata.
In most cases, when bleeding occurs postmenopausally and leiomyomata are discovered on bimanual examination, the bleeding is due to some other factor, such as cervical or endometrial abnormalities, atrophic vaginitis, or exogenous estrogen, and the leiomyomata are purely incidental. Occasionally, however, the postmenopausal leiomyoma can be responsible for the bleeding. As stated earlier, leiomyomata that do not bleed during the menstrual life of the patient have been found to migrate to a submucous position in later years. This occurs because after menopause the myometrium atrophies and the uterine wall becomes thinner. Leiomyomata also shrink somewhat, but not as much as the surrounding myometrium. Thus, a leiomyoma that was intramural before menopause may work itself into a submucous position after menopause, become ulcerated, and bleed. Postmenopausal growth of uterine leiomyomata may indicate malignant change, especially if associated with postmenopausal bleeding. We have rarely observed postmenopausal growth in a leiomyoma without finding malignancy in the tumor; whenever there is enlargement of the leiomyoma after menopause, one should seriously consider the possibility of sarcomatous change and remove the leiomyoma.

Patients with heavy menstuation and uterine leiomyomata should be evaluated for the presence of submucous myomata. Even patients without palpable evidence of uterine leiomyomata may indicate malignant change, especially if associated with postmenopausal bleeding. We have rarely observed postmenopausal growth in a leiomyoma without finding malignancy in the tumor; whenever there is enlargement of the leiomyoma after menopause, one should seriously consider the possibility of sarcomatous change and remove the leiomyoma.

Pressure

Evidence of pressure on nearby pelvic viscera may be an indication for treatment. The urinary bladder suffers most often from such pressure, giving rise to urgency and frequency of urination and sometimes even urinary incontinence (Fig. 31.16). Although this symptom is common with large leiomyomata, one frequently finds the pelvis filled with leiomyomata when there is no urinary frequency. Occasionally, acute retention of urine or overflow incontinence results from a leiomyoma and necessitates surgical intervention. These effects can occur as a result of rapid interior growth of the leiomyoma with compression of the urethra and bladder neck against the pubic bone. More often, a tumor the size of a 3-month pregnancy may become incarcerated in the cul-de-sac, wedging the cervix forward against the urethra and obstructing the flow of urine through the urethra. A large pedunculated submucous tumor may fill and distend the vagina and press the urethra against the symphysis, causing urinary retention.

As pointed out by Mattingly, one can expect to encounter women who have uterine leiomyomata of significant size and in addition have protrusion of the bladder base and posterior urethra through a widened levator muscle hiatus and a weakened urogenital diaphragm. Both conditions are relatively common. In addition to the usual symptoms produced by the

isotonic saline is slowly injected into the uterine cavity. According to these investigators, this technique provided the most accurate evaluation of the size of submucous myomata, intracavitary and intramural growth, and location within the uterine cavity, with sensitivity, specificity, and predictive values of 100%.

Pressure

Evidence of pressure on nearby pelvic viscera may be an indication for treatment. The urinary bladder suffers most often from such pressure, giving rise to urgency and frequency of urination and sometimes even urinary incontinence (Fig. 31.16). Although this symptom is common with large leiomyomata, one frequently finds the pelvis filled with leiomyomata when there is no urinary frequency. Occasionally, acute retention of urine or overflow incontinence results from a leiomyoma and necessitates surgical intervention. These effects can occur as a result of rapid interior growth of the leiomyoma with compression of the urethra and bladder neck against the pubic bone. More often, a tumor the size of a 3-month pregnancy may become incarcerated in the cul-de-sac, wedging the cervix forward against the urethra and obstructing the flow of urine through the urethra. A large pedunculated submucous tumor may fill and distend the vagina and press the urethra against the symphysis, causing urinary retention.

As pointed out by Mattingly, one can expect to encounter women who have uterine leiomyomata of significant size and in addition have protrusion of the bladder base and posterior urethra through a widened levator muscle hiatus and a weakened urogenital diaphragm. Both conditions are relatively common. In addition to the usual symptoms produced by the
leiomyomata, socially disabling stress urinary incontinence may be present. When the anterior wall of the uterus is greatly distorted by the presence of these tumors, pressure against the bladder can cause urinary frequency. If anatomic pressure equalization incontinence is also present, it may be aggravated by the increased intravesical pressure caused by the leiomyoma. However, the presence of anatomic stress urinary incontinence has no etiologic relation to the uterine enlargement caused by the leiomyomata.

Silent ureteral obstruction from pressure against the pelvic brim is an uncommon complication of uterine enlargement caused by multiple large leiomyomata. Such an asymptomatic anatomic change occurs more often with a symmetrically enlarged leiomyomatosus uterus that becomes large enough to fill the pelvis and compress the ureter against the pelvic sidewalls (Fig. 31.11). Although an infrequent complication, the obstruction can occur in either ureter, depending on the location of the uterine tumors. If there has been no infection or parenchymal damage to the kidney, this anatomic alteration is completely reversible with removal of the uterus and relief of the pressure against the ureter. However, if urinary tract obstruction from leiomyomata has been neglected, ureteric may result. Removal of the tumor and relief of obstruction are necessary to restore kidney function. Chronic bladder neck obstruction from uterine leiomyomata can be so severe as to cause a remarkable increase in the thickness of the bladder wall and enlargement of the bladder resembling that seen in men with urethral obstruction from prostatic enlargement. Indeed, in these neglected cases, the bladder may fill the entire lower abdominal wall so that an incision above the umbilicus is required to enter the peritoneal cavity to remove the tumor without injury to the bladder.

The bowel is less apt to show symptoms from pressure than is the bladder, but constipation can be caused and aggravated by pressure of leiomyomata against the rectum. The small intestines can become entwined with subserous pedunculated tumors, causing intermittent intestinal obstruction.

Pain
Abdominal and pelvic pain or discomfort, a feeling of heaviness in the pelvis, and pressure in the back are present in about one third of patients with symptomatic uterine leiomyomata and may be an appropriate reason for intervention. There are several causes of pain with leiomyomata. However, the usual cause of pain is degeneration of these tumors does not produce symptoms. In rare instances, pedunculated subserous leiomyomata twist and give rise to a clinical picture of acute abdominal pain, much like that seen with a torsed ovarian tumor. These pedunculated tumors, or one may recommend removal of the tumors if the abdominal distortion is of such a magnitude as to be embarrassing to the patient.

Abdominal Distortion
Distortion of the normal abdominal wall contour because of large tumors may justify their removal. Tumors of such size often give rise to other symptoms also, so there is ample reason for surgical interference. However, when no other symptoms are present, one may recommend removal of the tumors if the abdominal distortion is of such a magnitude as to be embarrassing to the patient.

Rapid Growth
Evidence of rapid growth of uterine leiomyomata, as observed by the same examiner over time or as confirmed by US, is an indication for surgical intervention. Such rapid growth in a premenopausal patient is only rarely due to sarcoma. Parker and others reviewed the medical records of 1,332 women admitted for surgical management of uterine leiomyomas. They actually found no correlation between rapid growth and the presence of uterine sarcoma. It may be due to pregnancy or to the use of oral contraceptives containing large amounts of estrogens. In the latter case, these drugs should be discontinued and an alternative method of contraception prescribed. In the postmenopausal patient, however, growth of a uterine leiomyoma is highly suggestive of a malignancy. The malignancy may be a sarcomatous change in the leiomyoma itself, a sarcoma or carcinoma in the endometrium causing uterine enlargement, or an ovarian neoplasm whose estrogen secretion is stimulating enlargement of the leiomyoma or whose growth may be mistaken for rapid enlargement of uterine leiomyomata. Although malignancy is not invariably found, the chances in its favor are so great that one must proceed on the assumption that it exists and should perform dilatation and curettage followed by removal of the enlarged uterus.

Rapid growth of a leiomyomatous uterus is difficult to define in exact terms. Buttram and Reiter have arbitrarily defined it as a gain of 6 weeks or more in gestational size within a year or less. Although this definition could apply in premenopausal women, it might be disastrous to wait for this amount of growth in a postmenopausal woman. It is important to have a definite method of documenting uterine size at periodic intervals. Repeated sounding of the uterine cavity may be of some benefit, although leiomyomatous growth is not always accompanied by concomitant enlargement of the uterine cavity. It is important to document the size of specific leiomyomata or the total uterine size in terms of centimeters or grams of uterine weight rather than in terms of gestational size of the uterus, although the latter method has become quite popular. Changes in a patient’s weight can make evaluation of growth more difficult. Ultrasoundography is a much more objective way of establishing the size of a uterine leiomyoma in the beginning and, when indicated, of evaluating its rate of growth. There is a need for more information about the natural growth patterns of myomata before and after menopause.

Although leiomyomata can increase dramatically in size during pregnancy, usually there is no appreciable growth. Winer-Muram and coworkers studied 99 pregnant women with uterine leiomyomata documented by US examination. In 81 of the patients, there was no demonstrable increase in the size of the leiomyomata. In six patients, there was an increase in size of up to 4 cm. Those myomata that increase in size during

---

Leiomyomata Uteri and Myomectomy 701
pregnancy will decrease in size a few weeks after the pregnancy is over.

**Spontaneous Abortion and Other Pregnancy-Related Problems**

Uterine leiomyomata are associated with a significantly increased risk of spontaneous abortion. In a collected series of patients undergoing myomectomy, Buttram and Reiter reported that 41% had spontaneous abortions. This rate was reduced to 19% after myomectomy. Seoud and colleagues did not demonstrate that in vitro fertilization live birth rates were improved by myomectomy; however, the authors did note a 50% spontaneous abortion rate in patients with leiomyomata compared with 34% after myomectomy. Various mechanisms have been proposed to explain the occurrence of spontaneous abortion from uteri with leiomyomata. These include disturbances in uterine blood flow, alterations in blood supply to the endometrium, uterine irritability, rapid growth or degeneration of leiomyomata during pregnancy, difficulty in enlargement of the uterine cavity to accommodate for the growth of the fetus and placenta, and interference with proper implantation and placental growth by poorly developed endometrium or by subjacent leiomyomata. Implantation in a thin, poorly vascularized endometrium over a submucous leiomyoma is doomed to failure, because proper growth and development of the embryo and placenta are impossible (Fig. 31.17). Matsunaga and Shiota found a twofold increase in the number of malformed embryos recovered from patients with uterine leiomyomata having artificial termination of pregnancy.

Uterine leiomyomata may also be associated with other obstetrical concerns, including premature delivery, stillbirth, and interstitial pregnancy, as in the case reported by Starks. In a retrospective population-based study by Shiejer and colleagues, obstetrical outcomes appeared to be compromised by uterine leiomyoma. Compared with controls, women with myomata during pregnancy had an increase in intrauterine growth restriction (6.8% vs. 1.9%), placental abruption (2.8% vs. 0.7%), abnormal presentation (16.9% vs. 2.4%), cesarean section rate (57.7% vs. 10.8%), premature rupture of membranes (9.6% vs. 5.5%), and likelihood to receive a blood transfusion (4.4% vs. 1.4%). All of these outcomes were statistically significant ($p < 0.001$). Muram and associates have followed patients with leiomyomata through pregnancy with US. When a leiomyoma was in close proximity to the placental site, an increased incidence of pregnancy-related complications was seen. These were mainly bleeding complications, but pain, premature delivery, and postpartum hemorrhage also occurred. Exacoustos and Rosati reviewed the US scans of 12,708 pregnant patients. Four hundred ninety-two patients had myomata. A statistically significant increased incidence of threatened abortion, threatened preterm delivery, abruptio placentae, and pelvic pain was observed in patients with myomata. Abruptio placentae was particularly evident in women with myoma volumes greater than 200 cm$^3$, submucosal location, or superimposition of the placenta. The authors suggest that US findings make it possible to identify women at risk for myoma-related complications of pregnancy. Factors responsible for spontaneous abortion in patients without uterine leiomyomata may also be responsible for spontaneous abortion in patients with leiomyomata.

Occasionally, pregnancy causes a remarkable growth of leiomyomata in the same way that the myometrium undergoes hypertrophy in pregnancy. Red or carneous degeneration of leiomyomata during pregnancy is associated with pain, tenderness over the tumor, low-grade fever, and leukocytosis. Management should be expectant with analgesic medications and bed rest. If premature uterine contractions occur, tocolytics may be given. Pain usually subsides within a few days. Operation is not indicated unless it is necessary to rule out other problems that require surgery for relief, because differentiation from appendicitis, placental abruption, torsed adnexa, and other problems may be difficult. After delivery, leiomyomata involute and generally return to their prepregnancy size by the third postpartum month.

Torsion with infarction of subserous pedunculated leiomyoma is more common in pregnancy. A leiomyoma may interfere with labor and delivery by causing an abnormal presentation, by causing dysfunctional labor, or by obstructing the pelvis. A submucous leiomyoma in the lower uterine segment may entrap the placenta, necessitating manual removal. Indeed, furious postpartum hemorrhage can result if a submucous leiomyoma is disturbed at delivery or during exploration of the uterine cavity. Immediate hysterectomy may be necessary to control the bleeding.

**FIGURE 31.17.** When the placenta is implanted over a myoma in the uterine wall, the blood supply to the fetus may be tenuous.
Most patients with uterine leiomyomata have no difficulty conceiving and carry their pregnancies to term without complications. The only problem encountered may be a difficulty in estimating gestational age from uterine size because of the presence of leiomyomata.

Infertility

When asymptomatic leiomyomata are discovered in young women, the question of how these tumors relate to fertility and pregnancy usually arises. A number of factors may be responsible for infertility in a patient with uterine leiomyomata. Amenorrhea cycles may occur more commonly. There may be interference with sperm transport caused by distortion and an increased surface area within the uterine cavity, impingement of leiomyomata on the endocervical canal or interstitial portion of the fallopian tube, or interference with prostaglandin-induced uterine contractions, which are thought to enhance sperm migration. Endometrial changes (atrophy, ulceration, focal hyperplasia, and polyps), vascular alterations (venous congestion, venule ectasia, impaired blood flow), and enlargement of the uterine cavity may be present. Because uterine leiomyomata occur in later reproductive years, relatively greater difficulty accomplishing conception can be expected in older couples.

The finding of small leiomyomata in sterile women is not an indication for immediate myomectomy. Quite often, an infertile patient with uterine leiomyomata is found to have some other cause of infertility. Tubal inflammatory disease with associated pelvic adhesions is especially common in patients with uterine leiomyomata. Both marital partners should have a complete infertility investigation, and the leiomyomata should be disregarded for a while. The ultimate decision regarding disposal of the tumors depends on their size and location. Usually, small subserous leiomyomata are not considered a factor in infertility. Even if the woman fails to become pregnant, removal of small subserous leiomyomata is not justified. When leiomyomata are intramural or submucous and of significant size, they may well be factors causing the infertility, and a myomectomy may be rewarded with a subsequent pregnancy.

When an unsuspected asymptomatic leiomyomatous uterus of significant size is found in a woman who is planning to become pregnant in the future, great tact is required in describing the problem to the patient. The best surgical and obstetric judgment is needed to make a proper recommendation. Should the patient be discouraged from attempting pregnancy because of the risk of complications may be increased? Should a myomectomy be advised before pregnancy is attempted, with the knowledge that postmyomectomy adhesions may cause infertility? Such questions cannot be answered in a stereotypical manner. Each case presents its own problems, and the answers depend on the patient’s age, her general physical health, her pelvic findings, and, most important, her own desires. All must be considered before a final recommendation can be made. In general terms, under these circumstances, an attempt to become pregnant will be rewarded with a satisfactory outcome in most cases. If pregnancy does not occur or is not successful, a myomectomy may be advised, but one must keep in mind that all causes of infertility, spontaneous abortion, and other pregnancy-related problems must also be investigated in patients with uterine leiomyomata. Uterine leiomyomata represent an infrequent cause of infertility.

Eldar-Geva and colleagues performed a retrospective review of the treatment outcome of 106 assisted reproductive technology cycles in 88 patients with uterine myomata (subserosal, intramuscular without cavity distortion, and submucosal). Patients underwent controlled ovarian hyperstimulation and advanced reproductive technology. Not surprisingly, pregnancy (30.1%) and implantation (15.7%) rates were significantly lower in women with submucosal myomas; however, both pregnancy (16.4%) and implantation (6.4%) rates were also significantly lower in women with intramural myomas. In some advanced assisted reproductive technology patients, this information may influence the decision for surgical intervention regardless of menstrual pattern.

A review of information about infertility and uterine leiomyomata was published by Wallach and Vo, by Vercellini and colleagues, and by Verkauf.

Miscellaneous Signs and Symptoms

A variety of other unusual problems may be associated with uterine leiomyomata and may require treatment. Ascites and uterine inversion have already been mentioned. Sudden intraperitoneal hemorrhage can result from rupture of a dilated vein beneath the serosal surface of a subserous leiomyoma. Although leiomyomata are more often associated with iron-deficiency anemia from chronic uterine blood loss, occasionally patients present with polycythemia. Islands of extramedullary erythropoiesis have been found in leiomyomata. Arteriovenous shunts within the tumors have been found and may be etiologically important in polycythemia. If the tumor obstructs the ureters and causes back pressure on the renal parenchyma, erythropoiesis can be stimulated. Weiss and coworkers and other investigators have found marked erythropoietin activity within uterine leiomyomata. The polycythemia in these cases is cured by hysterectomy.

**CHOICE OF TREATMENT FOR UTERINE LEIOMYOMATA**

Six hundred fifty thousand hysterectomies are performed annually in the United States. Approximately 33% are performed with uterine leiomyomata as the primary indication. Nearly 35,000 myomectomies were reportedly performed annually in 2001, and it is believed that this number is increasing substantially. There are no statistics to indicate the number of hysteroscopic and laparoscopic myomectomies performed each year. Effective medical therapies are available to use as adjuncts to surgical treatment. Additional radiologic procedures may also be desirable in patients who may not be suitable surgical candidates. However, surgery is the preferred method of therapy in many circumstances.

Hysterectomy (abdominal, vaginal, and laparoscopic assisted) is discussed in Chapters 32A, 8, and C. In this chapter, surgical techniques that allow conservation of uterine function are discussed, as are medical therapies that can be used as adjuncts to surgical therapy.

**Medical Management of Uterine Leiomyomatosis**

Most (70%–80%) uterine leiomyomata are asymptomatic and are discovered incidentally during a routine pelvic examination. Such patients require an explanation and reassurance and reexamination at periodic intervals. An initial baseline pelvic US examination or MRI study may be indicated for comparison with future examinations and to evaluate the adnexa if the ovaries cannot be felt on pelvic examination. An experienced pelvic examiner can be fairly certain that a central pelvic mass is a leiomyomatous uterus. However, pelvic US examinations
and repeat pelvic examinations can add to the certainty of the diagnosis. If the diagnosis remains doubtful, however, visual-
ization of the mass, usually by laparoscopy, may be indicated. Patients with an asymptomatic central pelvic mass should be followed up with periodic pelvic examination only when the mass is benign, usually a leiomyomatous uterus. Otherwise, expectant management is not appropriate.

Effective treatment that is likely to result in the permanent cure of uterine leiomyomata is not yet available. Surgical excision by a variety of techniques remains the most effective and widely used method of management for patients with significant symptoms. Medical therapies are available as an adjunct to, or in place of, surgical treatment or as a temporary substitute for definitive surgical treatment. The role of radiologic intervention continues to expand with the development of more effective and less invasive techniques. Among these radiologic approaches is interstitial brachytherapy with radioactive sources (HIFU).

Hormonal therapy for the management of uterine leiomy-
omata has been the subject of investigation for many years. There is no support for the use of danazol or progesterin in the treatment of patients who have continued uterine bleeding. Cyclic administration of progesterin (e.g., medroxyprogesterone acetate) may decrease uterine bleeding and may result in a decrease in the size of the myoma. However, the success rate has been disappointing, and the therapy is variable and unpredictable.

According to the analyses by these investigators, 4% of pa-
tients had an increase in uterine volume ranging from 0.1% to 25%; 24% had decreases in uterine volume ranging from 0.1% to 25%; 51% had decreases in uterine volume ranging from 25.1% to 50%; and 21% had decreases in uterine volume greater than 50%. No factors were found to predict the degree of uterine shrinkage. There were negative correlations with body weight, pretreatment uterine volume, age, height, and serum estradiol concentration.

It is commonly thought that GnRH analogs affect leiomy-
omata by reducing vascularity and the individual cell size within the tumor. The biochemical changes in leiomyomata ob-
tained from women treated with the GnRH agonist leuprolide acetate depot for 3 months were studied by Friedman and colleagues.

The concentrations of amino acids contained in collagen were significantly greater in uterine myomata from treated pa-
tients than in myomata from placebo-treated controls. These investiga-
tors suggest that the reduction in uterine myoma vol-
ume associated with GnRH agonist therapy is due primarily to alterations in the extracellular matrix rather than to a reduction in the number of cells in the myoma. Di Lieto and colleagues evaluated the clinical response, immunohistochemical expression of the angiogenic growth factors βFGF, VEGF, and PDGF, and vascular changes in uterine leiomyomata from women treated with GnRH agonist. They demonstrated that the GnRH agonist therapy caused a reduction in the synthesis of the three considered growth factors in leiomyomatous cells (βFGF, VEGF, and PDGF). The total number of vessels and angiogenic vessels was also decreased after treatment with leuprolide acetate for 3 months.

Many studies have been performed to investigate the treatment of patients with uterine leiomyomata with GnRH analogs. GnRH analogs bind to GnRH receptors, resulting in a biphasic response: a temporary increase in the levels of go-

and steroid mRNAs. The total number of vessels and angiogenic vessels was also decreased after treatment with leuprolide acetate for 3 months.

Because uterine leiomyomas are hormone-sensitive neo-

plasms that can be stimulated to grow by estrogen, some clinicians have been reluctant to prescribe oral contraceptive pills in patients with leiomyomata. However, Friedman and Thomas and others have demonstrated conclusively that oral contraceptives containing 30 to 35 mg of ethinyl estradiol do not cause uterine leiomyomata to increase in size. Therefore, low-dose contraceptives can be used to manage menorrhagia in patients with uterine leiomyomata. Friedman and Thomas demonstrated a significant decrease in the mean duration of menstrual flow and a significant increase in hematocrit values in response to low-dose oral contraceptives in patients with uterine leiomyomata.

When myoma-associated menorrhagia is more severe, GnRH agonist and iron treatment may be more effective than oral contraceptives. In about two thirds of patients, GnRH agonist treatment induces amenorrhea. Most of the remain-
ing patients experience very light, irregular vaginal bleeding or spotting, according to Friedman. A combination of men-

strual suppression and iron therapy allows correction of iron deficien-
cy and iron-deficiency anemia during a 6-month treatment

period. Ovulatory menstrual cycles resume 3 to 24 weeks after the last depot GnRH agonist injection. Stovall and associates reported that a GnRH agonist plus iron was more effective than iron alone in treating anemia in women with uterine leiomyomata. With such effective treatment now available, there is rarely a need to use blood transfusions to cor-
rect anemia caused by myoma-associated menorrhagia. Only

lary bone density of 1% per month occurs in women treated for 6 months. Some of this bone loss may be permanent, but some is reversibly

and repeat pelvic examinations can add to the certainty of the diagnosis. If the diagnosis remains doubtful, however, visual-
ization of the mass, usually by laparoscopy, may be indicated. Patients with an asymptomatic central pelvic mass should be followed up with periodic pelvic examination only when the mass is benign, usually a leiomyomatous uterus. Otherwise, expectant management is not appropriate.

Effective treatment that is likely to result in the permanent cure of uterine leiomyomata is not yet available. Surgical excision by a variety of techniques remains the most effective and widely used method of management for patients with significant symptoms. Medical therapies are available as an adjunct to, or in place of, surgical treatment or as a temporary substitute for definitive surgical treatment. The role of radiologic intervention continues to expand with the development of more effective and less invasive techniques. Among these radiologic approaches is interstitial brachytherapy with radioactive sources (HIFU).

Hormonal therapy for the management of uterine leiomy-
omata has been the subject of investigation for many years. There is no support for the use of danazol or progesterin in the treatment of patients who have continued uterine bleeding. Cyclic administration of progesterin (e.g., medroxyprogesterone acetate) may decrease uterine bleeding and may result in a decrease in the size of the myoma. However, the success rate has been disappointing, and the therapy is variable and unpredictable.

According to the analyses by these investigators, 4% of pa-
tients had an increase in uterine volume ranging from 0.1% to 25%; 24% had decreases in uterine volume ranging from 0.1% to 25%; 51% had decreases in uterine volume ranging from 25.1% to 50%; and 21% had decreases in uterine volume greater than 50%. No factors were found to predict the degree of uterine shrinkage. There were negative correlations with body weight, pretreatment uterine volume, age, height, and serum estradiol concentration.

It is commonly thought that GnRH analogs affect leiomy-
omata by reducing vascularity and the individual cell size within the tumor. The biochemical changes in leiomyomata ob-
tained from women treated with the GnRH agonist leuprolide acetate depot for 3 months were studied by Friedman and colleagues.

The concentrations of amino acids contained in collagen were significantly greater in uterine myomata from treated pa-
tients than in myomata from placebo-treated controls. These investiga-
tors suggest that the reduction in uterine myoma vol-
ume associated with GnRH agonist therapy is due primarily to alterations in the extracellular matrix rather than to a reduction in the number of cells in the myoma. Di Lieto and colleagues evaluated the clinical response, immunohistochemical expression of the angiogenic growth factors βFGF, VEGF, and PDGF, and vascular changes in uterine leiomyomata from women treated with GnRH agonist. They demonstrated that the GnRH agonist therapy caused a reduction in the synthesis of the three considered growth factors in leiomyomatous cells (βFGF, VEGF, and PDGF). The total number of vessels and angiogenic vessels was also decreased after treatment with leuprolide acetate for 3 months.

Because uterine leiomyomas are hormone-sensitive neo-

plasms that can be stimulated to grow by estrogen, some clinicians have been reluctant to prescribe oral contraceptive pills in patients with leiomyomata. However, Friedman and Thomas and others have demonstrated conclusively that oral contraceptives containing 30 to 35 mg of ethinyl estradiol do not cause uterine leiomyomata to increase in size. Therefore, low-dose contraceptives can be used to manage menorrhagia in patients with uterine leiomyomata. Friedman and Thomas demonstrated a significant decrease in the mean duration of menstrual flow and a significant increase in hematocrit values in response to low-dose oral contraceptives in patients with uterine leiomyomata.

When myoma-associated menorrhagia is more severe, GnRH agonist and iron treatment may be more effective than oral contraceptives. In about two thirds of patients, GnRH agonist treatment induces amenorrhea. Most of the remain-
ing patients experience very light, irregular vaginal bleeding or spotting, according to Friedman. A combination of men-

strual suppression and iron therapy allows correction of iron deficien-
cy and iron-deficiency anemia during a 6-month treatment

period. Ovulatory menstrual cycles resume 3 to 24 weeks after the last depot GnRH agonist injection. Stovall and associates reported that a GnRH agonist plus iron was more effective than iron alone in treating anemia in women with uterine leiomyomata. With such effective treatment now available, there is rarely a need to use blood transfusions to cor-
rect anemia caused by myoma-associated menorrhagia. Only
infected (Figs. 31.5 and 31.6).

cles is difficult to maintain, the myoma becomes necrotic and
omata can be delivered gradually through a markedly dilated
cervix dilates. Even very large submucous pedunculated my-
tomy on a patient with a submucous pedunculated myoma.

additional data, these and other questions can be answered.
by treatment with GnRH analogs without myomectomy. With
are approaching menopause to be managed medically through
will define its use more exactly. For example, it may be pos-
be remains to be seen. Additional information and experience
uterine leiomyomata is an emerging issue. How valuable it will
consistent with previously published studies, as well.

GnRH agonist treatment alone should not be given for pe-
riods longer than 6 months. A prolonged hypotensive state
is undesirable for a number of reasons, the most important be-
ing the loss of trabecular bone. If there are circumstances that
require that GnRH treatment be extended beyond 6 months, con-
ideration should be given to adding low-dose steroies after
3 months of GnRH therapy. The usual postmenopausal
estrogen-progestin replacement regimen can be prescribed
without interfering with the reduction in uterine volume an-
ticipated. Loss of trabecular bone may not be as great. By
adding estrogen-progestin replacement to GnRH agonist ther-
apy, the adverse effects of a prolonged hypotensive state
may be prevented, and treatment with GnRH agonists may be
prolonged. Friedman and colleagues treated 51 premenopausal
women with large, symptomatic myomata with leuprolide ac-
etate depot for 104 weeks. After the first 12 weeks, 0.75 mg of
estrioprate plus 0.7 mg of norethandrene were added on days
1 through 14 each month. Menorrhagia and other symptoms of
uterine leiomymata were controlled successfully. Hemoglobin
and hematocrit levels increased. Symptoms of hypotensive
(hot flashes, vaginal dryness) were decreased significantly. Bone
density decreased in the first 12 weeks, but only a small addi-
tional decrease occurred between weeks 12 and 52.

The use of GnRH analogs in the medical management of
uterine leiomyomata is an emerging issue. How valuable it will
be remains to be seen. Additional information and experience
will define its use more exactly. For example, it may be pos-
sible for patients with symptomatic uterine leiomyomata who
are approaching menopause to be managed medically through
menopause without having a hysterectomy. It may be possible
to improve fertility in some patients with uterine leiomyomata
by treatment with GnRH analogs without myomectomy. With
additional data, these and other questions can be answered.

Vaginal Myomectomy

In 1845, after performed the first successful vaginal myome-
tomy for a patient with a submucous pedunculated myoma.

When a submucous myoma becomes pedunculated within
the uterine cavity, there is a natural tendency for the uterus to
try to expel it through the endocervical canal. Eventually, the
cervix dilates. Even very large submucous pedunculated my-
omata can be delivered through a markedly dilated cervix.
Because adequate blood circulation through a long pedi-
cle is difficult to maintain, the myoma becomes necrotic and
infected (Figs. 31.3 and 31.6).

Patients report cramping lower abdominal pain; pressure
and heaviness in the pelvis; a thin, bloody, foul discharge; diffi-
culty with urination; and other symptoms. Episodes of profuse
vaginal hemorrhage can occur. Such large submucous myomata
may resemble a fetal head.

After satisfactory preoperative preparation, including
broad-spectrum antibiotics and correction of anemia, vagi-
nal myomectomy should be performed. Vercellini and colleagues
performed a multicenter, prospective, randomized, controlled study to as-
ter the treatment course showed that ab-
dominal hysterectomy was no longer indicated in 23 of 33
(47%) patients. No appreciable difference was found between
the groups in postoperative complications. These findings are
consistent with previously published studies, as well.

GnRH agonist treatment alone should not be given for pe-
riods longer than 6 months. A prolonged hypotensive state
is undesirable for a number of reasons, the most important be-
ing the loss of trabecular bone. If there are circumstances that
require that GnRH treatment be extended beyond 6 months, con-
ideration should be given to adding low-dose steroies after
3 months of GnRH therapy. The usual postmenopausal
estrogen-progestin replacement regimen can be prescribed
without interfering with the reduction in uterine volume an-
ticipated. Loss of trabecular bone may not be as great. By
adding estrogen-progestin replacement to GnRH agonist ther-
apy, the adverse effects of a prolonged hypotensive state
may be prevented, and treatment with GnRH agonists may be
prolonged. Friedman and colleagues treated 51 premenopausal
women with large, symptomatic myomata with leuprolide ac-
etate depot for 104 weeks. After the first 12 weeks, 0.75 mg of
estrioprate plus 0.7 mg of norethandrene were added on days
1 through 14 each month. Menorrhagia and other symptoms of
uterine leiomymata were controlled successfully. Hemoglobin
and hematocrit levels increased. Symptoms of hypotensive
(hot flashes, vaginal dryness) were decreased significantly. Bone
density decreased in the first 12 weeks, but only a small addi-
tional decrease occurred between weeks 12 and 52.

The use of GnRH analogs in the medical management of
uterine leiomyomata is an emerging issue. How valuable it will
be remains to be seen. Additional information and experience
will define its use more exactly. For example, it may be pos-
sible for patients with symptomatic uterine leiomyomata who
are approaching menopause to be managed medically through
menopause without having a hysterectomy. It may be possible
to improve fertility in some patients with uterine leiomyomata
by treatment with GnRH analogs without myomectomy. With
additional data, these and other questions can be answered.

Vaginal Myomectomy

In 1845, after performed the first successful vaginal myome-
tomy for a patient with a submucous pedunculated myoma.

When a submucous myoma becomes pedunculated within
the uterine cavity, there is a natural tendency for the uterus to
try to expel it through the endocervical canal. Eventually, the
cervix dilates. Even very large submucous pedunculated my-
omata can be delivered through a markedly dilated cervix.
Because adequate blood circulation through a long pedi-
cle is difficult to maintain, the myoma becomes necrotic and
infected (Figs. 31.3 and 31.6).
FIGURE 31.18. Transvaginal removal of a pedunculated submucous myoma that presents itself at the external cervical os. A: Sagittal view of uterus, demonstrating the location of the myoma originating on the posterior wall of the fundus just above the cervix. B: A transverse incision made anteriorly through the vaginal mucosa at the cervicovaginal junction. C: After the bladder is advanced bluntly, the cervix is incised anteriorly in the midline. D: The myoma and its pedicle are exposed, and the pedicle is suture ligated for hemostasis. E: After the myoma is excised, the cervix is reapproximated with interrupted 0-0 absorbable, nonreactive sutures. F: The overlying vaginal mucosa is sutured with interrupted 3-0 absorbable sutures.
Hysteroscopic Resection of Submucous Myomata

Hysteroscopic resection of submucous myomata was first reported by Neuworth and Amin in 1976 and was reported again by Neuworth in 1978. A uterine resectorcope was used. In 1981, Goldfash and associates used "photocoagulation" of the endometrium with the neodymium-doped yttrium-aluminum-garnet (Nd:YAG) laser to treat patients with menorrhagia. Many subsequent reports by Derman and associates, Donnez and colleagues, Goldenberg and coworkers, Corson, Indman, Halle, Baggish and associates, Wamsteker and colleagues, and others have confirmed the advantages of hysteroscopic treatment of menorrhagia in women with and without submucous leiomyomata. The menorrhagia associated with submucous myomata can sometimes be managed with oral contraceptives as long as the bleeding is not too severe. A favorable response can also be expected with GnRH analogs, but the menorrhagia usually reappears when the treatment is discontinued. Friedman has reported on cases of severe menorrhagia with resultant anemia requiring transfusions in women with submucous leiomyomata treated with leuprolide acetate. Both oral contraceptives and GnRH analogs are counterproductive in women who are seeking relief from infertility. The uterine cavity can be curedtted several times, but the benefit of this procedure is temporary at best.

When hysteroscopic resection of submucous myomata is performed, menorrhagia can be controlled in more than 90% of patients. According to Indman, the mean number of pads used during the heaviest day of menses decreased from 17.8 before treatment to 6.8 after treatment in women undergoing myomectomy only, and from 21.4 to 1.7 pads per day in women whose treatment also included endometrial ablation. Dymenorrhea was also reduced significantly; Forty-eight of 51 women (94%) with uterine leiomyomata who were seen with menorrhagia were able to avoid major gynecologic surgery for up to 3 years of follow-up. In the report of 156 patients by Derman and associates, 91.3% of patients received 2 months of intramuscular GnRH analog therapy. Perioperative results were recorded followed by a 24-month follow-up period when recurrent symptoms, myoma recurrence, and the need for repeat surgery were collected. Surgical time for the pretreated group was significantly longer than that of the untreated patients. Although GnRH analog pretreatment may be beneficial in improving anemia in some patients, Campo and colleagues did not demonstrate any improvement in short- or long-term outcomes.

When submucous myomata extend deeply into the myometrium, it may not be possible to perform a complete resection for obvious technical reasons. However, it should be possible to remove most irregularities in the uterine cavity and to restore the contour of the cavity to almost normal in most cases. According to Wamsteker and colleagues, hysteroscopic resection of submucous myomata with more than 50% intramural extension should be performed only in selected cases. Repeat procedures may be needed in cases of initial incomplete resection.

To avoid the possibility of inadvertent uterine perforation or to allow its prompt diagnosis if it occurs, hysteroscopic resection is usually performed under laparoscopic guidance. However, as reported by Sullivan and cowokers, laparoscopy may be insufficient to evaluate fully the possible sequelae of uterine perforation. Laparotomy may be necessary to assess the pelvic viscera fully. Lettieri and Kramer were able to safely substitute intraoperative transabdominal ultrasonographic guidance for laparoscopy. In their opinion, operative hysteroscopy with intraoperative ultrasonographic guidance provide an accurate and precise method to monitor intrauterine surgery, and it can be used to enhance the performance of hysteroscopic myomectomy and endometrial resection. Intraperitoneal US guidance provided sufficient details of the relation between the hysteroscope and the myoma and uterine walls to gauge the depth of resection and prevent uterine perforation.

The success and safety of the procedure depend on the experience and skill of the operating surgeon. During hysteroscopic resection, vascular spaces are opened in the endometrium and myometrium. Large volumes of fluid are instilled into the uterine cavity. Fluid balance must be monitored carefully.
by the surgeon and the anesthesiologist to avoid fluid overload.

All tissue must be submitted for pathologic examination. Among 92 patients undergoing hysteroscopic resection in the series reported by Corson and Brooks, two cases of leiomyosarcoma were diagnosed. Leiomyosarcoma is said to be more common in submucous leiomyomata than in intramural or subserous leiomyomata.

As time passes after hysteroscopic resection of submucous myomata, the possibility of recurrent problems increases because of regrowth of myomata. However, this is no more likely to occur than it is with standard abdominal myomectomy. The experience of many investigators has demonstrated that hysteroscopic management of menorrhagia in patients with submucous leiomyomata is a reasonable alternative to classic surgical hysterectomy or myomectomy. Hysteroscopic resection of a small submucous myoma is illustrated in Figure 31.19. Details of the indications, technique, complications, and results of hysteroscopic resection are also provided in Chapter 18.

**Laparoscopic Myomectomy**

When abdominal myomectomy is indicated, the laparoscopic approach can be offered as an alternative to the standard "open" abdominal myomectomy in selected patients. However, this procedure is appropriate in very few patients for several reasons. First, myomectomy is indicated in infertility patients only if there is significant distortion of the uterine wall or endometrial cavity or if there is obstruction or distortion of the fallopian tubes by myomata. Second, myomectomy is indicated in patients who wish to retain their uterus only if the myomata are significantly symptomatic. In both circumstances, the myomata are likely to be multiple and large, and laparoscopic myomectomy should only be considered if the uterine repair is comparable, or superior, to the uterine closure of an abdominal myomectomy.

There are limitations to laparoscopic myomectomy, and these are mostly technical. Myomata in certain locations are difficult to remove. When myomata are large or multiple, or both, operative time and blood loss may be unacceptable. When myomata are embedded deeply in the myometrium, proper repair of the uterine wall may be difficult or impossible, and uterine rupture may occur in a subsequent pregnancy. Retrieval of the resected myomata from the peritoneal cavity can also pose problems. Large myomata must be morcellated into smaller pieces for retrieval. Retrieval through the posterior vaginal fornix or through the abdominal wall requires separate additional incisions, which somewhat defeats the idea of a minimally invasive procedure. Only very skillful laparoscopists should attempt extensive myomectomy through the laparoscope. According to Mais and colleagues, operation time for myomectomy was significantly longer for laparoscopy than for laparotomy when more than four myomata had to be removed and the largest myoma was greater than 6 cm. Dubuisson and coworkers also reinforce the difficulty of the technique by reporting conversion to laparotomy at a rate of 7.5% (93.7% due to operative difficulties) and a complication rate of 3.8%. These authors echo similar intraoperative concerns: (i) the location of the hysterotomy, (ii) the type of hysterotomy, (iii) the uterine suture, and (iv) removal of the myoma. In addition, they report that one third of patients developed adhesions at the uterine scar.

Several technical innovations have been developed to facilitate laparoscopic myomectomy. Electrosurgical and laser techniques are used in ingenious ways. Special traction devices, including corkscrews of various sizes, are required. The operator must be able to provide hemostasis using monopolar...
cutting current and bipolar forces. The role of the Harmonic Scalpel has also expanded for clean dissection and the potential for less blood loss. Aquadissection can be used to establish planes for dissection between myoma and the surrounding myometrium. Special techniques of approximating myometrium with larger curved needles are used with either intracorporeal or extracorporeal suturing, depending on the surgeon’s expertise. Knowledge of available laparoscopic instrumentation is essential to maximize surgical outcome. Autologous blood donation with intraoperative transfusion when necessary reduces the risk of homologous transfusion. Larger myoma can be removed vaginally with morcellation through a subvaginal or suprapubic incision. In cases of myoma of extreme size, Pelosi and colleagues proposed the use of hand-assisted laparoscopy to avoid a laparotomy. This technique allows the insertion of a hand into the abdomen to assist in dissection. This is accomplished through a glove-sized incision at laparoscopy while preserving the peritoneum. A cylindrical serrated morcellator can also be used to convert smaller myoma to small strips of tissue, which can then be removed abdominally through the trocar sleeve or through a mini-laparotomy incision. Retrieval of all bits and pieces of myoma tissue from the peritoneal cavity can be a tedious challenge. Hirai and colleagues from Japan described a microwave coagulator and electromechanical tissue borer to minimize invasion of the myometrium and abdominal wall. The proposed advantage of this technique is that by morcellating the tissue before removal from the uterus, less myometrial trauma is sustained. Horizontal and perpendicular blades at the tip rotate and hollow out the myoma, allowing large myomas to be removed through a small uterine incision. The authors described the use in five patients with four of five having myomas weighing less than 170 g. The blood loss and operating time were not significantly different with this unconventional abdominal procedure. Long-term data regarding myometrial strength over time and pregnancy outcomes are not yet available. More experience with this procedure is necessary to determine its role in myomectomy.

Another technical innovation called myolysis has been described by Goldfarb and is based on earlier experience in Europe. Either Nd:YAG laser or bipolar needles are used laparoscopically to penetrate the myoma at multiple sites at a 90°-degree angle to the uterus. In response to treatment, the myoma ultimately atrophies. The technique is based on the theory that the coagulating effects of lasers or the bipolar needle can necrose myometrial stroma, denature protein, destroy vasculature, and result in substantial shrinkage of myomas when deprived of their blood supply. Goldfarb advised treatment with GnRH agonists before surgery. The ideal candidates for myolysis are perimenopausal women who have symptomatic leiomyomas measuring 3 to 10 cm or uterine size less than 14 weeks’ gestation. Goldfarb combines myolysis with endometrial ablation in patients with symptomatic myomas with persistent uterine bleeding. The addition of myolysis to endometrial ablation increased the rate of postoperative amenorrhea from 36.5% to 57% and second procedures, including hysterectomy, were reduced from 38% to 12.5%. Goldfarb described significant adhesions at follow-up laparoscopy in patients treated with the Nd:YAG laser technique because of excessive serosal injury from multiple punctures. A circumferential technique was later developed to destroy vasculature instead of the myoma-tous tissue. The devascularized myoma becomes cyanotic, loses viability, and fibrosis. Phillips performed an additional diagnostic laparoscopy to evaluate adhesions associated with previously performed myolysis. Mean adhesion score was only 1.15 ± 0.6 on a scale of 10.

Zreik and colleagues at Yale University modified the myolysis procedure to include cryoetechnology to “freeze” uterine leiomyomas. The technique, cryomyolysis, was described in a prospective pilot study of 14 patients. All patients were pre-treated with GnRH agonist therapy for 3 months. Thirteen of the 14 endoscopic procedures were performed by laparoscopy and the remaining one by hysteroscopic visualization. Cryo-probe placement was achieved and freezing was performed at an internal probe temperature of –180°C until the ice ball encompassed the entire fibroid or reached maximum size. A thaw cycle was then performed, followed by one more freeze-thaw cycle. A hollow track remained within the frozen myoma after removal of the cryoprobes. All myomas were resected uterine and myoma size. The uterus enlarged by 22% after discontinuation of the GnRH therapy. Myoma volume decreased by 6% over 4 months postoperatively, with some patients having a decrease of more than 50%. Four of six women who underwent second-look office laparoscopy had adhesion formation at freezing sites. The authors attributed risk and severity of adhesion formation to the number of punctures with the cryoprobe. The role of this therapy in conservative treatment of uterine myomatla remains to be defined.

Hysteroscopic myomectomy and endometrial resection can be performed simultaneously if submucous myoma are present. In more than 300 myolysis procedures, the authors reported minimal morbidity with a 30% to 50% reduction in myoma size beyond the reduction achieved with GnRH agonist treatment. No regrowth occurred after several years of follow-up, even after estrogen replacement therapy. Bipolar coagulation myolysis may be less likely to cause damage to the uterine serosa and less likely to cause adhesion formation postoperatively. According to Goldfarb, “As a same-day procedure, myoma coagulation appears to be an extremely safe alternative to hysterectomy, allowing the patient to avoid major surgery and its subsequent recovery time, while providing an alternative solution for patients with symptomatic leiomyomas.”

Nizhat and coworkers used a combination of laparoscopy and minilaparotomy to perform myomectomy in 57 women with uteri at 8 to 26 weeks in gestational size. In this laparoscopically assisted myomectomy procedure, the myomata were removed and the uterus repaired through the minilaparotomy incision. It was technically less difficult than laparoscopic myomectomy and allowed better closure of the uterine defects. This technique may be preferable in the case of large myomas in that it is easier to achieve conventional multilayer suturing and easier to extract myomas.

A significant disadvantage of myomectomy is the risk of postoperative pelvic adhesions. The adhesions may adversely affect fertility, give rise to pain, and increase the risk of ectopic pregnancy or even intestinal obstruction. Several studies have demonstrated that the risk of postoperative adhesions decreases when a laparoscopic approach is used in lieu of an open abdominal approach. Literature review demonstrates that the average rate of postoperative adhesions after laparoscopic myomectomy is 41% versus more than 90% after a myomectomy via laparotomy. Dubuisson and colleagues assessed adhesion formation after laparoscopic myomectomy in a prospective manner. Forty-five patients underwent a second look after laparoscopic myomectomy. Seventy-two sites were evaluated. The overall rate of postoperative adhesions was 35.6% per patient. The rate of adhesions per myomectomy site was 16.7%. The rate of adhesions on the adnexa was 24.4%. Associations with the occurrence of adhesions included an additional surgical procedure carried out at the same time, the existence of adhesions before the operation, and posterior location of the myoma. Several factors may increase the risk of...
postoperative adhesion formation owing to a laparoscopic myomectomy. Recognition of these factors may be helpful in limiting adhesion formation.

The use of uterine suture appears to increase the risk of uterine adhesions. In some studies, the frequency doubled after suturing. The suture induces local tissue ischemia with inflammatory changes, which slow the healing process and increase the formation of adhesions. Contradictory data have been published regarding adhesion formation and the use of bipolar coagulation during a laparoscopic procedure.

The location of the myoma also affects adhesion formation. Adhesions are more likely to form when the myomectomy site is located on the posterior uterine wall. During laparoscopy, a uterine incision must be made over each individual myoma. With laparotomy, a single anterior uterine incision may be used for myomectomy, even when posterior myomas are present.

The prior existence of pelvic adhesions significantly increases the risk of postoperative adnexal adhesions, but has not been shown to affect adhesions at the myomectomy site. Two prospective, randomized controlled studies have evaluated the efficacy of adhesion barriers during laparoscopic myomectomy, and both found intervention to be beneficial. Mais and colleagues evaluated the efficacy of oxidized regenerated cellulose, Interceed, on adhesion formation in a prospective, randomized study of 50 women after laparoscopic myomectomy. Interceed was placed over all incisions and suture material with a 1 cm margin, and the barrier was then moistened with saline. During the second-look laparoscopy, 60% of the Interceed group was free of adhesions compared with only 12% of patients in the control group. Interceed appeared to substantially reduce, but not prevent, adhesions after laparoscopic myomectomy. Pellicano and collaborators showed that hyaluronic acid gel reduced adhesions after laparoscopic myomectomy in a prospective randomized study of 36 infertile women. During second look, 72% of patients were adhesion-free, with hyaluronic acid gel treatment versus an adhesion-free barrier such as Interceed. While these studies suggest that laparoscopic myomectomy may be a viable option for women with leiomyomas and infertility. The best prognosis is for young women with otherwise unexplained infertility and myomas that distort the endometrial cavity. Pregnancy rates and spontaneous abortion rates are comparable to abdominal myomectomy. Data is present.

Multiple published studies (Seracchioli et al., Bullietti et al., Stringer et al., and Campo et al.) suggest that laparoscopic myomectomy may be a viable option for women with leiomyomas and infertility. The best prognosis is for young women with otherwise unexplained infertility and myomas that distort the endometrial cavity. Pregnancy rates and spontaneous abortion rates are comparable to abdominal myomectomy. Data is present.

The preoperative hysterosalpingogram is important in predicting fertility. When performed at the same time multiple myomectomy is done. Indeed, tubal reconstruction may not always be necessary to establish tubal patency. In a report by LeV-Toaf and associates, nonfilling of the fallopian tubes was present on the preoperative hysterosalpingogram unilaterally in two patients and bilaterally in another two. In all four patients, tubal patency was shown after myomectomy. In the experience of these authors, hysterosalpingography before myomectomy can assist the gynecologic surgeon in planning the surgical approach by showing the presence, size, and location of submucosal leiomyoma and concomitant tubal disease.

Imaging modalities such as transabdominal, transvaginal US and MRI play an important role in the management of patients with leiomyomatosis, especially those patients who are being prepared for myomectomy. As explained by Mayer and Shipilov, US is the preferred method for screening and initial evaluation of the pelvis. In many cases, it is the only imaging study necessary. There are special cases for which US cannot provide all the diagnostic information required. In a study by Schwartz and colleagues, US results were inconclusive in 20% of cases and did not yield a definitive diagnosis in 59% of cases. MRI was more definitive in all cases (Fig. 31.20). The preoperative diagnosis of submucous leiomyoma by MRI may allow hysterectomy without delay and avoid abdominal myomectomy in some cases. Differentiation between uterine leiomyoma and adenomyosis is more accurate with MRI and thus avoids the need for laparoscopy or laparotomy in some cases (Fig. 31.21). MRI studies can differentiate between uterine leiomyomas, diffuse and localized adenomyosis, and diffuse leiomyomatosis. MRI is the most accurate imaging technique for the detection and localization of leiomyomas (Fig. 31.22). Hricak and coworkers were able to identify accurately by MRI all subserosal (9 of 9), all intramural (23 of 30), and 9 of 11 submucosal leiomyomas. Leiomymatosis as small as 0.3 cm can be detected. Various degrees of cellularity, degeneration, necrosis, and calcification can be identified by MRI, and abnormalities can be suspected. MRI provides imaging planes that are not available on transabdominal or transvaginal US, a feature that permits better visualization of the more lateral and posterior uterus.

Abdominal Myomectomy

The first successful abdominal myomectomy was performed in the United States by the Attle brothers, Washington and John, in 1844.

The first abdominal multiple myomectomy was performed by W. Alexander of Liverpool in 1893. In the early part of the 20th century, the technique of abdominal myomectomy was refined by many notable gynecologic surgeons, including Kelly, Cullen, Mayo, Rubin, Bonney, and others. The procedure did not gain popularity until the middle of the 20th century. The incidence of postoperative intestinal obstruction from adhesions, was considered to be too high. Advances in surgical techniques to control intraoperative bleeding during myomectomy, along with advances in anesthesia, blood transfusion therapy, and GnRH analogs, have made myomectomy a safe alternative to hysterectomy in women with symptomatic leiomyomatosis. The number of myomectomies performed in the United States is decreasing.

Because myomectomy is rarely an emergency, time is available to prepare the patient for surgery. It is important that she be properly informed of the reasons myomectomy has been recommended. She should understand the nature of the procedure so she can know what to expect and what is expected of her. It is especially important that she be informed of the possibility that intraoperative findings may contraindicate myomectomy and that require that hysterectomy be performed instead. For example, myomectomy may not be technically feasible if diffuse leiomyomatosis is found. The technical challenge of removing a large cervical myoma can also preclude myomectomy.

A preoperative hysterosalpingogram may indicate distorsion of the fallopian tubes or uterine cavity, findings that are important in planning the technique of myomectomy. An assessment of fallopian tube patency is helpful in predicting fertility. If the tubes are occluded, however, myomectomy is not necessarily contraindicated. According to Seoud and associates, myomectomy does not interfere with in vitro fertilization performance in relation to overall and ongoing pregnancy rates. The patient whose tubes are occluded should understand that fertility may not be established by myomectomy, and assisted reproductive technologies may still be required after myomectomy.

Tubal reconstruction procedures are uniformly unrewarding when performed at the same time multiple myomectomy is done. Indeed, tubal reconstruction may not always be necessary to establish tubal patency. In a report by LeV-Toaf and associates, nonfilling of the fallopian tubes was present on the preoperative hysterosalpingogram unilaterally in two patients and bilaterally in another two. In all four patients, tubal patency was shown after myomectomy. In the experience of these authors, hysterosalpingography before myomectomy can assist the gynecologic surgeon in planning the surgical approach by showing the presence, size, and location of submucosal leiomyoma and concomitant tubal disease.

...
areas of the pelvis. MRI is the most accurate method for preoperative localization of leiomyomata and surgical planning for myomectomy. Given the greater costs of MRI, it should be used judiciously. However, as noted by Mayer and Shipilov, the effective cost differential between MRI and US is decreasing.

As discussed by Winkind and Thompson, one of the most serious risks of surgical bleeding during myomectomy is the risk associated with homologous blood transfusion. The first rule in reducing or eliminating the need for transfusion is to bring the patient to the operating room with the highest possible hemoglobin and hematocrit level. About 30% of myomectomy patients have associated menorrhagia. These small repeated menstrual hemorrhages deplete the body’s iron stores over time and eventually result in iron-deficiency anemia of various degrees of severity. Patients scheduled for myomectomy benefit from oral iron supplementation. In a study by Thompson, the liberal use of oral iron therapy preoperatively was shown to decrease the number of blood transfusions on the gynecologic surgical service at the Johns Hopkins Hospital. A blood
transfusion is seldom necessary to correct iron-deficiency anemia in a gynecologic patient. Blood transfusions should generally be reserved for patients with hypovolemic shock or agranulocytosis, as anemia is most often corrected by oral iron supplementation.

Occasionally, patients with a myomatous uterus have iron-deficiency anemia. Iron deficiency in these circumstances is often caused by heavy or too continuous menstrual bleeding that is too heavy, or too continuous to allow a response to oral iron therapy. In this situation, it may be beneficial to induce amenorrhea with hormonal therapy to allow the anemia to be corrected more expeditiously. Amenorrhea can be induced with progesterone, such as medroxyprogesterone acetate, with danazol, or with GnRH agonists. Several studies have demonstrated that gonadotropin releasing hormone (GnRH) analogs decrease menstrual blood loss in patients with leiomyomata treated preoperatively for 8 to 24 weeks with GnRH analogs compared with matched control groups. Friedman and colleagues also found a significant increase in serum iron and total iron-binding capacity in a study group treated with the GnRH agonist leuprolide acetate. In some patients, oral iron was also given. In an evaluation of 265 patients, GnRH agonists plus iron were more effective than iron alone in treating the anemia of patients with uterine leiomyomata, according to Stovall and coworkers. In a double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicenter study, Friedman and associates reported a resolution of menorrhagia in 97% of uterine leiomyomata patients treated with GnRH agonists.

Preoperative treatment with GnRH analogs can actually reduce the operative blood loss during myomectomy, according to studies by Friedman and colleagues, Andrekoy and coworkers, Moghissi, and others. In a prospective, randomized study of 30 patients undergoing hysterectomy for symptomatic leiomyomata, Stovall and colleagues found a significant decrease in operative blood loss and intraoperative blood transfusions in patients treated with GnRH agonists who received 2 months of leuprolide acetate treatment preoperatively and matched control subjects. An elegant study by Friedman and associates demonstrated a significant decrease in operative blood loss during myomectomy between patients with pretreatment uterine volumes greater than 600 cm³ who were treated with depot leuprolide acetate for 12 weeks preoperatively and a matched control group. However, there was no significant difference in blood loss between the two groups when patients with smaller uterine volumes (150 to 600 cm³) were included in the analysis. It has been suggested that the hypotensive environment caused by GnRH analog therapy reduces the postoperative blood transfusion requirements of the uterus. How- ever, even in patients not treated with GnRH agonists, blood flow has been observed to be lower in myoma and adjacent tissue.

Intraoperative autotransfusion and normovolemic hemodilution are also discussed. These techniques of reducing or avoiding the risk of homologous blood transfusion are discussed in detail by Wiskind and Thompson.

Perioperative antimicrobial prophylaxis is indicated with myomectomy. It is preferable to perform the operation in the follicular phase of the menstrual cycle. This avoids the chance of encountering an unknown or unsuspected pregnancy and reduces the problems encountered when a fresh corpus luteum is inadvertently traumatized.

After induction of anesthesia, the patient is placed in Allen universal position, the bladder is emptied, and a careful pelvic examination, including a rectovaginal-abdominal bimanual examination, is performed under anesthesia. Preparation and draping are done to allow access to the vagina and cervix in case it is necessary to place an instrument through the cervix and into the endometrial cavity during the procedure. Cervical dilatation should be done to facilitate postoperative drainage from the endometrial cavity, especially for cases in which the endometrial cavity has been entered during the myomectomy.

Many of the general principles of pelvic surgery are applicable to myomectomy. Perhaps the most important of these is optimum exposure at the operative site. This is accomplished primarily by an incision that is long enough to be wide enough to allow proper retraction, good lighting, and able assistants. Although a Pfannenstiel incision is considered adequate for myomectomy on a small uterus, we prefer the Maylard incision for larger uteri, even those that exceed a size equivalent to a 12-week pregnancy. A Maylard incision provides excellent exposure throughout the pelvis. Because it is a transverse incision, it is stronger and provides better cosmesis than a vertical midline incision. A Bockwoldt retractor optimizes exposure of the operative site. A Pfannenstiel incision can be used for removal of a small solitary myoma.

The importance of adequate exposure cannot be overemphasized. With proper exposure, operative time can be shortened and surgical bleeding can be more easily identified and controlled. Limited exposure may lengthen operative time, increase the risk of inadvertent injury to other pelvic structures, and force abandonment of a myomectomy in favor of a hysterectomy in especially difficult cases.

After the peritoneal cavity is entered, the abdomen is explored as usual. Adhesions in the pelvis must be carefully released or excised so that the intestines can be placed in the upper abdomen and held there with packs. The operation is performed according to microsurgical techniques and principles. For example, the laparotomy packs that are used to hold the intestines in the upper abdomen are placed in plastic bags to reduce the microscopic trauma to peritoneal surfaces caused by regular laparotomy packs. It is important to keep the myomatomy packs available. Several laparotomy packs in plastic bags can be used to fill the cul-de-sac, thus elevating and stabilizing the uterus for easier access. Visualization of the operative site can be improved by the liberal use of suction to remove blood from the field. Suction should be used instead of sponges because it allows for a more accurate determination of blood loss and is less traumatic to tissues.

The operative field is kept moist and free of clots with a solution of lactated Ringer solution containing heparin. Very fine instruments and sutures are used when possible, and tissue is handled gently to avoid unnecessary trauma to serosal surfaces. Traumatic instrumentation (e.g., uterine elevators with teeth, Kocher clamps, or any instrument on the uterine serosa) must be avoided. Sutures on serosal surfaces should be of a fine nonreactive material. Running suture lines are preferable to avoid extra knot volume, which may contribute to adhesion formation. If pelvic adhesions develop after myomectomy, future fertility may be adversely affected. Performing the operation in a way that minimizes adhesion formation greatly improves the possibility of a successful result.

At this point in the operative procedure, one should pause and evaluate the size, location, and number of myomata present. Special note should be made of their proximity to the endocervical canal, uterine vessels, and fallopian tubes. One must decide if myomectomy is still feasible, how the leiomyomata will be removed (and in what sequence), and how the uterus will be reconstructed.

The conservation of uterine function with myomectomy requires control of bleeding. Several techniques of controlling bleeding are used. A uterine draping is used to allow access to the vagina and cervix in case it is necessary to place an instrument through the cervix and into the endometrial cavity during the procedure. The importance of adequate exposure cannot be overemphasized. With proper exposure, operative time can be shortened and surgical bleeding can be more easily identified and controlled. Limited exposure may lengthen operative time, increase the risk of inadvertent injury to other pelvic structures, and force abandonment of a myomectomy in favor of a hysterectomy in especially difficult cases.

After the peritoneal cavity is entered, the abdomen is explored as usual. Adhesions in the pelvis must be carefully released or excised so that the intestines can be placed in the upper abdomen and held there with packs. The operation is performed according to microsurgical techniques and principles. For example, the laparotomy packs that are used to hold the intestines in the upper abdomen are placed in plastic bags to reduce the microscopic trauma to peritoneal surfaces caused by regular laparotomy packs. It is important to keep the myomatomy packs available. Several laparotomy packs in plastic bags can be used to fill the cul-de-sac, thus elevating and stabilizing the uterus for easier access. Visualization of the operative site can be improved by the liberal use of suction to remove blood from the field. Suction should be used instead of sponges because it allows for a more accurate determination of blood loss and is less traumatic to tissues.

The operative field is kept moist and free of clots with a solution of lactated Ringer solution containing heparin. Very fine instruments and sutures are used when possible, and tissue is handled gently to avoid unnecessary trauma to serosal surfaces. Traumatic instrumentation (e.g., uterine elevators with teeth, Kocher clamps, or any instrument on the uterine serosa) must be avoided. Sutures on serosal surfaces should be of a fine nonreactive material. Running suture lines are preferable to avoid extra knot volume, which may contribute to adhesion formation. If pelvic adhesions develop after myomectomy, future fertility may be adversely affected. Performing the operation in a way that minimizes adhesion formation greatly improves the possibility of a successful result.

At this point in the operative procedure, one should pause and evaluate the size, location, and number of myomata present. Special note should be made of their proximity to the endocervical canal, uterine vessels, and fallopian tubes. One must decide if myomectomy is still feasible, how the leiomyomata will be removed (and in what sequence), and how the uterus will be reconstructed.

The conservation of uterine function with myomectomy requires control of bleeding. Several techniques of controlling bleeding are used. A uterine draping is used to allow access to the vagina and cervix in case it is necessary to place an instrument through the cervix and into the endometrial cavity during the procedure.
Removing multiple myomata embedded deeply in a vascular myometrium can result in considerable blood loss. Proper application of special techniques to limit blood loss can allow multiple myomectomies even in uteri up to 20 weeks' pregnancy size if satisfactory reconstruction is possible.

Controlled hypotensive anesthesia has become a useful adjunct to decrease surgical bleeding in selected patients. The method of operative field bleeding with hypotensive anesthesia is the reduction of venous tone. This can be accomplished by specific vasoconstricting agents—such as nitroglycerin or sodium nitroprusside, epidual or spinal anesthesia, some inhalation anesthetic agents, and ganglionic blockade—tightly and uniformly around the bowel loops and mesentery encircling the cervix and occluding the uterine vessels during myomectomy. Rubber-shod clamps applied to the broad ligament, myomectomy. Rubber-shod clamps applied to the broad ligament, and the two ends of the tube are then threaded through the holes in the broad ligament. The effect usually lasts for 30 minutes.

As the tourniquets are being placed, controlled hypotension is induced by the anesthesiologist. Before the tourniquets are tightened, the location of the uterine arterial blood flow is identified with a sterile Doptone. When everything is in readiness and the plan of operation has been selected by the surgical team, the tourniquets are snugly tightened and tightened progressively until the uterine arterial flow is no longer audible with the Doppler (Fig. 31.23B). It is very important that the arterial blood flow be occluded. If the venous flow is occluded while the arterial flow remains intact, blood loss could actually be increased with the tourniquets. The mean blood pressure should be reduced to the target hypotensive level (about 60 mm Hg) before the tourniquets are tightened. The higher the blood pressure, the tighter the tourniquets must be to occlude the uterine circulation.

With the combination of properly applied tourniquets and controlled hypotensive anesthesia, the entire circulation to the uterus can be occluded. The myometrium can then be performed in a bloodless field, greatly facilitating complete removal of all tumors and blood pressure. It is critical to control hemorrhage and provide a bloodless operative field. One of the earliest methods was simply to have an assistant grasp the broad ligaments firmly with each hand during myomectomy to impede venous drainage from the lower extremities and pelvis by gravity and may further reduce the blood pressure at the operative site.

Induced hypotension is contraindicated in patients with cerebrovascular disease, myocardial ischemia, peripheral vascular disease, severe renal or hepatic disease, and hypovolemia. None of these contraindications is seen very often in myomectomy patients. An anesthesiologist experienced with the technique is an essential requirement. The decision to use hypotension should be made jointly by the surgeon and the anesthesiologist. It is essential that the blood pressure be returned to normal before closure of the incision to ensure that adequate surgical hemostasis has been established.

Early proponents of myomectomy focused on methods to temporarily occlude uterine blood flow to control hemorrhage and provide a bloodless operative field. One of the earliest methods was simply to have an assistant grasp the broad ligaments firmly with each hand during myomectomy to impede blood flow through the uterine vessels. In the 1920s, Victor Bonney introduced a specially designed clamp that was placed around the uterine vessels and the round ligaments. The ovarian vessels were occluded with ring forceps. Using this technique, he was able on one occasion to remove more than 200 myomata from a single uterus. Rubin, in 1938, was the first to use an elastic rubber tourniquet through the broad ligament, encircling the cervix and occluding the uterine vessels during myomectomy. Rubber-shod clamps applied to the broad ligaments have also been used to occlude the uterine vessels and control bleeding.

Gynecologic surgeons do not often have the opportunity to use tourniquets to control bleeding; however, a myometrium is particularly suited to their use. We prefer to use tourniquets fashioned in the manner of a Rumel-type tourniquet, which is used by vascular, thoracic, and trauma surgeons to occlude the uterine vessels. A 3-French pediatric feeding tube is looped around the upper cervix through the holes in the broad ligament, and the two ends of the tube are then threaded through a 4-inch length of 33-French Malecot catheter and held with a clamp. A loop tourniquet can then be placed around each intramural or intravenous tumor through the same holes in the broad ligaments (Fig. 31.23A).

As the tourniquets are being placed, controlled hypotension is induced by the anesthesiologist staff. Before the tourniquets are tightened, the location of the uterine arterial blood flow is identified with a sterile Doptone. When everything is in readiness and the plan of operation has been selected by the surgical team, the tourniquets are snugly tightened and tightened progressively until the uterine arterial flow is no longer audible with the Doppler (Fig. 31.23B). It is very important that the arterial blood flow be occluded. If the venous flow is occluded while the arterial flow remains intact, blood loss could actually be increased with the tourniquets. The mean blood pressure should be reduced to the target hypotensive level (about 60 mm Hg) before the tourniquets are tightened. The higher the blood pressure, the tighter the tourniquets must be to occlude the uterine circulation.

With the combination of properly applied tourniquets and controlled hypotensive anesthesia, the entire circulation to the uterus can be occluded. The myometrium can then be performed in a bloodless field, greatly facilitating complete removal of all tumors and blood pressure. It is critical to control hemorrhage and provide a bloodless operative field. One of the earliest methods was simply to have an assistant grasp the broad ligaments firmly with each hand during myomectomy to impede venous drainage from the lower extremities and pelvis by gravity and may further reduce the blood pressure at the operative site.

Induced hypotension is contraindicated in patients with cerebrovascular disease, myocardial ischemia, peripheral vascular disease, severe renal or hepatic disease, and hypovolemia. None of these contraindications is seen very often in myomectomy patients. An anesthesiologist experienced with the technique is an essential requirement. The decision to use hypotension should be made jointly by the surgeon and the anesthesiologist. It is essential that the blood pressure be returned to normal before closure of the incision to ensure that adequate surgical hemostasis has been established.

Early proponents of myomectomy focused on methods to temporarily occlude uterine blood flow to control hemorrhage and provide a bloodless operative field. One of the earliest methods was simply to have an assistant grasp the broad ligaments firmly with each hand during myomectomy to impede blood flow through the uterine vessels. In the 1920s, Victor Bonney introduced a specially designed clamp that was placed around the uterine vessels and the round ligaments. The ovarian vessels were occluded with ring forceps. Using this technique, he was able on one occasion to remove more than 200 myomata from a single uterus. Rubin, in 1938, was the first to use an elastic rubber tourniquet through the broad ligament, encircling the cervix and occluding the uterine vessels during myomectomy. Rubber-shod clamps applied to the broad ligaments have also been used to occlude the uterine vessels and control bleeding.

Gynecologic surgeons do not often have the opportunity to use tourniquets to control bleeding; however, a myometrium is particularly suited to their use. We prefer to use tourniquets fashioned in the manner of a Rumel-type tourniquet, which is used by vascular, thoracic, and trauma surgeons to occlude major vessels. Initially, a small hole is made in an avascular space in the broad ligament on either side of the uterine isthmus just lateral to the uterine vessels. A 3-French pediatric feeding tube is looped around the upper cervix through the holes in the broad ligament, and the two ends of the tube are then threaded through a 4-inch length of 33-French Malecot catheter and held with a clamp. A loop tourniquet can then be placed around each intramural or intravenous tumor through the same holes in the broad ligaments (Fig. 31.23A).

As the tourniquets are being placed, controlled hypotension is induced by the anesthesiologist staff. Before the tourniquets are tightened, the location of the uterine arterial blood flow is identified with a sterile Doptone. When everything is in readiness and the plan of operation has been selected by the surgical team, the tourniquets are snugly tightened and tightened progressively until the uterine arterial flow is no longer audible with the Doppler (Fig. 31.23B). It is very important that the arterial blood flow be occluded. If the venous flow is occluded while the arterial flow remains intact, blood loss could actually be increased with the tourniquets. The mean blood pressure should be reduced to the target hypotensive level (about 60 mm Hg) before the tourniquets are tightened. The higher the blood pressure, the tighter the tourniquets must be to occlude the uterine circulation.

With the combination of properly applied tourniquets and controlled hypotensive anesthesia, the entire circulation to the uterus can be occluded. The myometrium can then be performed in a bloodless field, greatly facilitating complete removal of all tumors and blood pressure. It is critical to control hemorrhage and provide a bloodless operative field. One of the earliest methods was simply to have an assistant grasp the broad ligaments firmly with each hand during myomectomy to impede venous drainage from the lower extremities and pelvis by gravity and may further reduce the blood pressure at the operative site.

Induced hypotension is contraindicated in patients with cerebrovascular disease, myocardial ischemia, peripheral vascular disease, severe renal or hepatic disease, and hypovolemia. None of these contraindications is seen very often in myomectomy patients. An anesthesiologist experienced with the technique is an essential requirement. The decision to use hypotension should be made jointly by the surgeon and the anesthesiologist. It is essential that the blood pressure be returned to normal before closure of the incision to ensure that adequate surgical hemostasis has been established.
Dillon reported that with the use of vasopressin, 72% of pa-
tients requiring myomectomy did not need blood replacement
compared with control subjects. Frederick and coworkers
noted significantly less blood loss compared with an untreated
group. Ginsberg and associates compared vasopressin with
mechanical vascular occlusion and found that there were no
demonstrable differences in blood loss, morbidity, or trans-
fusion requirements between the two techniques. A favorable
experience with vasopressin has also been reported by Semm
and Mettler.

The weight of evidence in current clinical investigation in-
dicates that vasopressin is as effective as mechanical vascular
occlusion in controlling blood loss with myomectomy. Nev-
ertheless, careful dissection around myomata and prompt su-
turing with exertion of direct pressure to bleeding vessels by
the operative assistant are necessary to minimize blood loss.
Care should be taken to avoid injecting the solution directly
into a vascular channel, and no more than 30 mL per patient
is recommended because of potential side effects. Vasopressin
should not be used in patients with vascular disease, especially
disease of the coronary arteries. Inadvertent intravascular in-
jection can cause anginal pain; larger doses can cause myocardial
infarction. Water intoxication can also occur as a result of the
antidiuretic effect of vasopressin. This effect is potentiated in
patients taking tricyclic antidepressants.

Although late postoperative bleeding does occur with the
use of vasopressin, it is not a common complication. Arterial
bleeding masked by vasopressin still requires suture ligation.
Because of the short half-life of vasopressin, the hemostatic
effect is observed only for 20 to 30 minutes and should be over
before the incisional closure is started. However, some do claim
that vasopressin simply delays bleeding, gives a false sense of
security, and is not particularly effective for larger myomata
and very extensive myomectomies.

For a variety of reasons, epinephrine as a vasoconstrictive
agent is not recommended for use in gynecologic surgery.
Since its introduction into clinical practice in 1972, the CO₂ laser has been touted as a tool that increases surgical precision and decreases bleeding, tissue injury, and adhesion formation. The laser can be used to make a single uterine incision through which multiple myomata are removed. An elliptical incision can also be made around the base of larger myomata to facilitate their removal. Myomata less than 1 cm in diameter can be vaporized directly with the laser, which destroys tissue by vaporizing cellular water. Despite the favorable results reported by Weather, Reynaek, and Corenthal, McLaughlin, and Starks, we believe that there is no clear advantage in using the CO₂ laser for abdominal myomectomy, especially considering the added cost to the patient.

Although the methods described earlier to control bleeding during myomectomy are helpful, they cannot substitute for good surgical techniques. Adherence to basic principles is essential for good results. Perhaps the most important of these is careful planning of the uterine incisions. Only a minimal number of incisions should be made. If possible, removal of all myomata should be accomplished through a single incision in the anterior uterine corpus, and in the midline when feasible to avoid the vascular areas of the uterus and broad ligaments laterally. Even intramural leiomyoma in the posterior uterine wall can be removed through anterior incisions. Incisions in the posterior uterine wall may be necessary, however, if posterior subserous tumors are being removed. If posterior uterine incisions are made, adhesions are more likely to develop and will likely involve the tubes and ovaries as well.

As many tumors as possible should be removed through a single incision. Methods of removing myomata through a single anterior incision have been described by Bonney. The linear or elliptic incision should usually be over the largest myoma. It should be carried through the superficial myometrium directly into the underlying myoma. The myoma is then grasped with a double-tooth tenaculum or a large Lahey thyroid clamp for traction. The plane of cleavage between the myoma and the surrounding myometrium is easily identified. Sometimes in patients who have been treated with GnRH analogs, the plane of cleavage may seem less distinct. Sharp dissection with the scalpel or Metzenbaum scissors, or blunt dissection with the finger or knife handle, is required to enucleate the myoma from its bed. Sometimes the myoma is larger than expected. It may then be necessary to enlarge the incision or to remove the tumor by morcellation. Other adjacent tumors should be removed through the same incision. Any entry in the endometrial cavity should be noted, and a special attempt should be made to close it with sutures placed in the underlying supporting myometrium. Examples of the step-by-step planning and performance of a multiple myomectomy are illustrated in Figures 31.26 and 31.27.

The muscle fibers and blood vessels surrounding a myoma are compressed by its growth. This compression of surrounding tissue forms a pseudocapsule around the myoma. No large blood vessels enter the myoma, and there is no vascular pedicle. If the dissection can be carried out between the myoma and the pseudocapsule, blood loss can be minimized. If blood vessels are cut or left on the surface of the myoma, it usually means that the dissection has been carried out in an improper plane. Dissection in the proper plane may be more difficult if the patient received GnRH analog therapy preoperatively.

Several ingenious techniques for removing leiomyomata and for repairing defects have been described. For example,
The sequence of steps in a multiple myomectomy is shown in these illustrations. A: Through a transverse Maylard incision, tourniquets are placed to occlude the uterine and ovarian artery flow. Through a single incision in the anterior myometrium, a large anterior myoma is removed first. All other myomas are removed through this incision. B: A smaller intramural myoma is removed through the same incision. C: To avoid making a separate incision in the posterior uterine wall, a large posterior myoma is removed through the uterine cavity. After an incision has been made through the anterior endometrium, an incision is made in the posterior endometrium directly over the posterior myoma. D: The myoma in the posterior uterine wall is dissected from its bed and removed through the uterine cavity. An incision in the posterior uterine serosa is thus avoided. (Continued)

Bonney’s hood can be used to remove a large leiomyoma in the uterine fundus. The myoma is first exposed through an elliptic incision made transversely across the anterior fundus, taking care to avoid the interstitial portion of the fallopian tube on each side (Fig. 31.28A and B). After the primary tumor is removed (Fig. 31.28C), other leiomyomata can also be removed through the same incision. Excess myometrium can be trimmed away (Fig. 31.28D). Interrupted sutures obliterate the dead space, approximate the myometrium, and accomplish satisfactory hemostasis. The sutures are placed in such a way that the posterior flap of myometrium is folded over the anterior uterine wall and sutured in place, thus fashioning Bonney’s hood (Fig. 31.28D).

Meticulous closure of defects from the enucleated myomatosa is essential to maintain hemostasis postoperatively, but this should be deferred until all the tumors are removed. Hypertrophy of the normal myometrium is always present with uterine leiomyomata. Some of this hypertrophied myometrium is
considered excess and can be trimmed to facilitate a more normal reconstruction of the uterus. Involution of the myometrial hypertrophy is expected to occur in the first few months after myomectomy. Therefore, only a small amount of normal myometrial tissue should be removed. In reconstructing the uterus, the surgeon should refer to fixed points such as the attachments of the round ligaments and fallopian tubes on each side of the corpus. Symmetric reconstruction is preferred but is not always possible. The myoma beds are usually closed with interrupted figure-of-eight or mattress 2-0 delayed-absorbable sutures. Large defects can be closed initially with a pursestring suture to obliterate the dead space. Several layers of sutures may be required. One must be careful to avoid occlusion of the uterine vessels, the endocervical canal, or the interstitial portion of the fallopian tubes. Transfundal or transcervical chromotubation to test fallopian tube patency after uterine reconstruction is complete is not usually possible because of leakage of the dye through the myometrial incisions.

In closing a myomectomy incision, the security of the closure comes from sutures placed in the myometrium. If possible, these sutures and knots must not be exposed. In Figure 31.26E and F, several techniques of closing myometrial defects are illustrated. The serosal edge of the uterine incision should be carefully approximated with a continuous 5-0 or 4-0 delayed-absorbable “baseball” stitch. The tourniquets are removed, the hypotensive anesthesia is reversed, and the uterus is carefully inspected for evidence of bleeding. Additional sutures are sometimes required. If a
Multiple rows of interrupted sutures obliterate bed of myoma

Finger side in the enucleation of myoma from myometrium

Serosal suture

FIGURE 31.27. (Continued) C: By incising progressively deeper into the myoma, the surgeon can identify and bluntly dissect the plane between myoma capsule and myometrium. D: Sharp dissection may be necessary to separate the myoma from its capsule at its base. E: After the removal of as many myomas as possible, the remaining cavity is obliterated and hemostasis secured. F: Multiple rows of non-reactive interrupted absorbable suture material are used to close the cavity. G: When the “dead space” has been obliterated, the serosa is closed with a continuous “baseball” suture of 5-0 or 6-0 nonreactive absorbable material. H: This type of closure approximates the serosal edges.

uterine suspension is needed, a modified Coffey or modified Gilliam technique along with uterosacral ligament plication is used. Adhesion prevention can also be achieved by the use of absorbable or nonabsorbable barriers. The absorbable barrier Inderseal (oxidized regenerated cellulose) can be placed over the uterine corpus to protect the tubes and ovaries from denuded peritoneal surfaces and uterine incision. Alternatively, a non-absorbable barrier, Gore-Tex (polytetrafluoroethylene surgical membrane), can be sutured over the uterine incisions with 7-0 absorbable minimal reactive sutures. The use of Gore-Tex has been associated with a reduction in new adhesion formation. Diamond and the Seprafilm Adhesion Study Group assessed the efficacy of Seprafilm (HAL-F) Barriersorbable Membrane (sodium hyaluronate and carboxymethylcellulose) in reducing the incidence, severity, extent, and area of uterine adhesions after myomectomy. This prospective, randomized, blinded, multicenter study involved an independent gynecologic surgeon’s review of each patient’s second-look laparoscopy. One hundred and twenty-seven women undergoing uterine myomectomy with at least one posterior uterine incision were randomized to treatment with Seprafilm or no treatment at the completion of the myomectomy. All indices, including incidence, severity, and extent of adhesions, were decreased in the treatment group. This suggests that newer barriers may also have a role in adhesion prevention. Free grafts of peritoneum or omentum should not be used to cover uterine incisions.
Leiomyomata Uteri and Myomectomy

In a randomized controlled trial, Imai found fewer adhesions with GnRH analogue pretreatment compared with no treatment after both laparoscopic and abdominal myomectomy. The utility of GnRH analogues in reducing adhesions has also been demonstrated in other clinical and animal studies. Second-look laparoscopy may be indicated in patients with multiple incisions or in those with posteriorly located incisions adjacent to the adnexa. Early adhesions can be easily lysed, and an additional barrier membrane can be placed. The clinical role of second-look laparoscopy, outside of research, is not well defined, and conflicting studies can be found in the literature regarding the efficacy of this procedure.

A comprehensive review of methods to prevent adhesion formation in gynecologic surgery has been published by Damario and Rock and by diZerega.

Results of Myomectomy

An extensive multiple myomectomy is a major operation with the potential for a higher morbidity than that found with hysterectomy. The major immediate postoperative complications after myomectomy are febrile morbidity and intraperitoneal bleeding.

Postoperative febrile morbidity may be related to extensive tissue trauma or to infection for a variety of reasons. Perioperative antibiotics are routinely given, but antibiotics are not usually continued beyond the day of operation. Any evidence of infection in the recovery period should be treated vigorously and promptly because infection in the operative site may be adhesiogenic and may have devastating effects on future fertility. Unfortunately, subclinical infection in the operative site may not be recognized and therefore may not be treated, but it can also have adverse effects on fertility because of de novo adhesion formation. For these reasons, meticulous and sterile surgical technique during myomectomy must be impeccable.

Intraperitoneal bleeding after myomectomy is usually due to failure to achieve hemostasis of the myometrial vessels during closure of the myoma beds and uterine incisions. Although we do use a heparin solution (5,000 U of heparin per 1,000 mL of lactated Ringer solution) for irrigation during myomectomy,
There is no evidence to suggest that this contributes to occult intraperitoneal bleeding. The diagnosis of intraperitoneal bleeding in the postoperative patient may be difficult. The vital signs can remain stable for several hours before rapidly deteriorating. Peritoneal signs are often subtle and may be masked by incisional pain and analgesic medications. In addition, the peritoneal cavity has an enormous capacity for accommodating occult blood loss. Indeed, as much as 3,000 mL of blood can be shed into the peritoneal cavity with only a 1-cm increase in the abdominal radius.

Therefore, patients must be carefully monitored for the first 24 hours postoperatively. Vital signs should be checked every 15 minutes for the first 2 hours after surgery, then every 30 minutes until stable. Subsequently, they are monitored every 2 to 4 hours for the first 24 hours postoperatively. A hematocrit is usually performed 6 hours after the operation is completed and again on the first postoperative morning. It can also be performed whenever there is a suspicion of intraperitoneal bleeding, anemia, or hypovolemia. Any sign of restlessness, tachycardia, or tachypnea may be an indication of blood loss, especially when associated with hypotension.

When occult postoperative intraperitoneal bleeding is suspected, peritoneal lavage can be a valuable diagnostic tool. If the lavage solution yields a red blood cell count of 100,000/mm³, intraperitoneal bleeding is likely and reexploration is indicated. Across several centers, tachycardia, or tachypnea may be an indication of blood loss, especially when associated with hypotension. When occult postoperative intraperitoneal bleeding is suspected, peritoneal lavage can be a valuable diagnostic tool.

Indeed, as much as 3,000 mL of blood can be shed into the peritoneal cavity with only a 1-cm increase in the abdominal radius. Therefore, patients must be carefully monitored for the first 24 hours postoperatively. Vital signs should be checked every 15 minutes for the first 2 hours after surgery, then every 30 minutes until stable. Subsequently, they are monitored every 2 to 4 hours for the first 24 hours postoperatively. A hematocrit is usually performed 6 hours after the operation is completed and again on the first postoperative morning. It can also be performed whenever there is a suspicion of intraperitoneal bleeding, anemia, or hypovolemia. Any sign of restlessness, tachycardia, or tachypnea may be an indication of blood loss, especially when associated with hypotension.

When occult postoperative intraperitoneal bleeding is suspected, peritoneal lavage can be a valuable diagnostic tool. If the lavage solution yields a red blood cell count of 100,000/mm³, intraperitoneal bleeding is likely and reexploration is indicated without delay. Lavage is unnecessary when the diagnosis of intraperitoneal bleeding is unequivocal and associated with definite hypovolemia. In this situation, immediate return to the operating room for reexploration is indicated.

Postoperative bleeding after myomectomy can be devastat- ing. Intraoperative control of bleeding during an extensive multiple myomectomy often requires that the uterine blood flow be managed with tourniquets, clamps, or the local injection of vasoconstrictive agents. However, the demonstration of adequate surgical hemostasis in the uterus cannot be made until the uterine circulation has been fully restored. A suspicious attention to this principle intraoperatively prevents postmyomectomy bleeding in almost all cases.

Reports by Smith and Uhlir, Rosenfeld, and LaMorte and associates indicate that the morbidity of myomectomy is no greater than the morbidity of hysterectomy. Verkauf reviewed current published reports and found that the operative risk of myomectomy does not exceed that of hysterectomy. One case of disseminated intravascular coagulation, hemolytic anemia, and acute renal failure associated with extensive multiple myomectomy was reported by Sacks and Horne.

Myomectomy has an excellent record in reducing heavy menstruation in patients reporting menorrhagia. In more than 80% of patients, menorrhagia is cured or significantly improved. Pelvic pain and discomfort and dysmenorrhea can also be relieved, but the results are not as dramatic because leiomyomata are often associated with other gynecologic diseases (e.g., endometriosis and pelvic inflammatory disease) that can also cause pelvic pain.

The impact of abdominal myomectomy on infertility is difficult to assess. Other factors besides leiomyomata may be present to a varying degree. The extent to which the uterine cavity or the fallopian tubes are distorted also varies. The percentage of patients in each series who wish to conceive after myomectomy is not the same. There is also considerable variation in the surgical technique and skill of the gynecologic surgeons. Reported controlled studies are lacking. These and other factors make it difficult to assess the impact of abdominal myomectomy on infertility.

There are a number of published reports regarding women who experience recurrent pregnancy wastage or prior infertility with another cause and who undergo myomectomy. According to Verkauf’s review, conception occurs in more than half of such women who were not previously pregnant. A comprehensive review of 23 studies by Vercellini and colleagues regarding leiomyomata and reproduction reported an overall conception rate of 57% after myomectomy among prospective studies. Among women with otherwise unexplained infertility, the conception rate was 61% after myomectomy. The conception rate is approximately 53% to 70% after myomectomy for submucous myomas and 38% to 65% after myomectomy with intramural or subserosal leiomyomata. The conception rate among women older than age 35 may not be as good. Also, the postmyomectomy conception rate may be lower when the uterus is greater than 12 weeks’ gestational size and when more than four myomata are removed. When abdominal myomectomy includes removal of submucous myomata, Garcia and Turek report that 53% of patients attempting to establish a pregnancy conceive. Both Li and colleagues and Vercellini and coworkers published retrospective reviews supporting excellent conception and pregnancy rates following abdominal myomectomies. Vercellini’s work suggests that certainly age at the time of the procedure is important, as it was one of three independent variables (age, duration of infertility before surgery, and the presence of other infertility factors) associated with postoperative cumulative conception rate.

Buttram and Reiter reviewed 1,914 cases of myomectomy and compared preoperative and postoperative abortion rates. The reduction in abortion rate after myomectomy from 41% to 19% suggests improvement in reproductive salvage through the use of this procedure. According to Verkauf’s review, 69.2% of women with previous recurrent pregnancy wastage conceived after myomectomy and a 50% reduction in fetal loss.

An ultrasonographic study of uterine remodeling after conservative myomectomy was reported by Beyth and associates. There was a gradual decrease in uterine volume in all patients during the 6 months after myomectomy, with the most remarkable decrease occurring in the first 2 to 3 months. Presumably, this represents an involution of myometrial hypertrophy and postoperative healing of uterine incisions. We recommend that all patients use local methods of contraception (diaphragm, condoms, and spermicidal jelly or foam) for at least 3 months to avoid conception until the myometomy incisions are healed.

An ultrasonographic study of uterine remodeling after conservative myomectomy was reported by Beyth and associates. There was a gradual decrease in uterine volume in all patients during the 6 months after myomectomy, with the most remarkable decrease occurring in the first 2 to 3 months. Presumably, this represents an involution of myometrial hypertrophy and postoperative healing of uterine incisions. We recommend that all patients use local methods of contraception (diaphragm, condoms, and spermicidal jelly or foam) for at least 3 months to avoid conception until the myometomy incisions are healed.

Finally, there is the matter of recurrence of myomata after myomectomy. In Verkauf’s review, leiomyomata recurred in 7.5% of patients, and 6.8% required reoperation. Most recurrences appeared more than 3 years after myomectomy, thus allowing sufficient time for conception to occur before recurrence. Friedman and associates investigated a concern that GnRH agonist-induced myoma shrinkage would make some small intramural and submucosal tumors “invisible” at myomectomy, causing early recurrence of leiomyomata once gonadal suppression ceased and estrogen production returned. In their study, there was no difference in myoma recurrence between women pretreated with GnRH agonists (67%) and those treated with placebo (58%) 27 to 38 months after myomectomy. Their myoma recurrence rate of 61% is much higher than that previously reported in combined myomectomy series. The authors believe that this discrepancy is most likely due to the use of high-resolution US to diagnose small myomata that would otherwise be missed on bimanual examination. Rossetti and associates reported on their long-term experience with 84 nonrandomized patients undergoing laparoscopic myomectomy plus 84 nonrandomized patients...
and found similar recurrence rates, 23% and 27% respectively, between the laparoscopic and abdominal myomectomy, with most recurrences seen within 24 months of surgery.

Mattai and colleagues reported that after GnRH analog treatment, the US outline of some myomata was lost or obscured. Such myomata are probably more difficult to identify and remove with myomectomy and may be more likely to reappear when GnRH analog treatment is discontinued after myomectomy.

**Embolotherapy**

With current technology progressing toward less invasive therapies, the minimally invasive procedure of uterine artery embolization (UAE) is gaining popularity. This procedure can potentially obviate the need for surgical procedures in patients who suffer from symptomatic leiomyomata.

In the female genital tract, embolotherapy for control of hemorrhage from malignancy was first reported in the late 1970s. In 1980, Fais and colleagues described successful embolization for postpartum hemorrhage. Many more reports followed in the mid-1980s. In the early 1990s, Ravina and coworkers began using embolotherapy as a preoperative maneuver to decrease intraoperative blood loss during surgery for myomata. The protocol generally included embolization about 24 hours before the surgery; however, some occurred a few days or weeks before surgery. Such an improvement in symptoms occurred that many surgeries were canceled altogether. This serendipitous discovery led to the performance of UAE as a primary procedure. UAE for leiomyomata was first performed in the United States by Goodwin and colleagues in 1995. Since then, several large series have been reported, and experience continues to grow.

UAE is appropriate for patients with symptomatic leiomyomata and a preference for treatment other than surgical treatment. Clinical findings, therapeutic goals, and overall medical conditions factor into the decision making. Several concerns have developed in treating patients who may desire future conception. Hypotheses include reduced fertility as a consequence of injury to the uterus or ovaries, placental insufficiency resulting from inadequate blood flow through the uterus, or uterine rupture during pregnancy from UAE-induced myoma necrosis. A limited number of deliveries have been reported after UAE for uterine myomas. However, embolization therapy appears to increase the risk of preterm delivery and malpresentation compared with laparoscopic myomectomy, and there is a trend toward higher spontaneous abortions and postpartum hemorrhage with UAE. Ameorrhea has been reported in 1% to 2% of patients after UAE; however, some authors have attributed this to the coincidental onset of menopause.

Contraindications to this procedure include pregnancy, active pelvic infection, severe contrast medium allergy, arterial/venous malformations, desire for future pregnancy, a strong suspicion of adenomyosis or pedunculated leiomyoma, and undiagnosed pelvic mass. The technique is generally preceded by preprocedural testing, and patients are pretreated with intravenous antibiotics. Many perform preliminary arteriographic mapping of the pelvis. A review by Hutchins and Worthington-Kirsch provides an excellent description of the procedure.

The technical success rate is consistently reported in the 96% to 98% range with experienced teams. Eighty percent to 90% of embolized patients have reported improvements in menorrheagia, bulk-related symptoms, or both. Reduction in overall uterine volume peaks at more than 60% by 6 to 9 months after the procedure because of the gradual nature of the process. Individual myomas show average volume reductions of 60% to 65%.

The Fibroid Registry for Outcomes Data (FIBROID) was established by the Society of Interventional Radiology and includes 23 core sites and 50 to 60 other participating sites. This clinical registry has enrolled more than 3,300 patients in an effort to obtain rapid and reliable data regarding patient outcomes. Based on 30-day and 1 year data, near 90% of patients responded favorably to UAE. Recurrence of symptoms and repeat procedures occur in about 10% of patients by 3 years.

Worthington-Kirsch, a leading member of the steering committee, estimates that by 5 years postprocedure, as many as 20% of patients will have another procedure. Approximately 1,300 to 1,500 patients continue to provide annual data through self-reported questionnaires, permitting continued long-term follow-up of the UAE procedure.

Forty percent of patients develop a syndrome of fever and malaise in the first 10 to 14 days after UAE. This is also associated with leukocytosis. This entity is well described as postembolization syndrome. It is typically self-limited and resolves in 3 to 5 days, and rarely requires treatment except antibiotics. Other complications include those that may be attributed to the angiographic component and target or nontarget organ embolization. Gyn infections, groin bleeding or hematoma, contrast-induced renal damage, and vascular damage may be attributed to the angiographic component. Uterine infection or perforation, sexual dysfunction, and myoma sloughing may be attributed to the target organ effects. Reported nontarget organ embolization complications include ovarian sequelae, sciatic nerve effects, and gluteal muscle pain. Current experience confirms a major complication rate of less than 1%.

### BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Women with symptomatic or problematic uterine leiomyomata should be considered candidates for surgical or radioactive intervention.
- Management options, including medical, radiologic, and surgical, should be discussed with patients, emphasizing risks and benefits of each option.
- Careful preoperative evaluation for women who undergo surgical treatment of leiomyomata should include anatomic evaluation to determine the extent, location, and size of leiomyomata.
- In patients with infertility, myomectomy—performed by either an abdominal or laparoscopic approach—should only be performed after complete evaluation of other potential causes of infertility.
- Adhesion barriers are advantageous in reducing adhesions during both abdominal and laparoscopic myomectomy.
- Pregnancy rates and outcomes after laparoscopic myomectomy compare favorably with those after abdominal myomectomy.
- Meticulous repair of the uterine myometrium is essential for patients desiring pregnancy after a myomectomy.
- Hysteroscopic myomectomy is an effective surgical alternative to relieve symptoms associated with submucosal myomata.
- Current information regarding uterine artery embolization (UAE) is promising, but patients should be made aware that limited long-term data are available regarding outcomes, especially relating to fertility and pregnancy.
Bibliography
Leiomyomata Uteri and Myometrium
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions


Pelosi MA, Pelosi MA, Eim J. Hand assisted laparoscopy for megamyomectomy. 


726 Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

CHAPTER 32A ■ ABDOMINAL HYSTERECTOMY
HOWARD W. JONES III

DEFINITIONS

Incidental oophorectomy—When clinically normal ovaries are removed at the time of a hysterectomy. This is an older term. Prophylactic oophorectomy is now preferred.

Prophylactic oophorectomy—The preferred term for removing clinically normal ovaries at the time of hysterectomy. This terminology emphasizes the risk reduction of ovarian and possibly breast cancer as a result of oophorectomy.

Supracervical hysterectomy—Also referred to as a subtotal hysterectomy. This operation removes the uterine fundus, transecting the upper portion of the cervix below the level of the uterine vessels. The cervix is left in situ.

Trendelenburg position—With the patient on the operating table in the supine position, the head is lowered below the level of the pelvis.

Hysterectomy is the most common operation performed by the gynecologist, and it is the second most common major surgical procedure done in the United States. Only cesarean section is more common. There are many indications for hysterectomy, and the uterus can be removed using any of a variety of techniques and approaches, including abdominal, vaginal, or laparoscopic. In most cases, a total hysterectomy with removal of the uterine corpus and cervix is done; but in recent years, there has been a resurgence in the popularity of supracervical hysterectomy. The ovaries and tubes may or may not be removed along with the uterus, depending on the patient’s age and a variety of other factors. The gynecologic surgeon should be not only technically adept at these various procedures, but also should use history, physical examination, and discussion with the patient to match the surgical procedure to the patient to obtain the most satisfactory outcome.

The three sections of this chapter discuss abdominal, vaginal, and laparoscopic hysterectomy.

HISTORY

The history of hysterectomy is long and varied. Although significant advances in the technique of hysterectomy did not occur until the 19th century, earlier attempts are known. Some references to hysterectomy even date to the 5th century B.C., in the time of Hippocrates. The earliest attempts at removal of the uterus were made vaginally for indications of uterine prolapse or uterine inversion. By the 16th century, a number of hysterectomies already had been done in Europe, including Italy, Germany, and Spain. In 1660, Schenck of Grabenberg cataloged 26 cases of vaginal hysterectomy.

Vaginal hysterectomies were done sporadically through the 17th and 18th centuries. In 1819, Winsberg presented a paper to the Vienna Royal Academy of Medicine recommending vaginal hysterectomy for uterine cancer. Three years later, the German surgeon Langenbeck successfully performed a vaginal hysterectomy for uterine cancer. The first vaginal hysterectomy performed in the United States was in 1829 by John Collins Warren at Harvard University; however, the patient expired on the fourth postoperative day. Three years following Warren’s attempt, Herman and Werneburg in Pittsburgh successfully performed a vaginal hysterectomy for uterine cancer. By the late 19th century, techniques for vaginal hysterectomy were systematically studied and developed by Czerny, Billroth, Mikulicz, Schroeder, Kocher, Teuffel, and Spencer Wells.

The earliest abdominal hysterectomy attempts usually involved uterine leiomyomas that had been misdiagnosed as ovarian cysts. In the early 19th century, laparotomy for ovarian cysts still was considered dangerous, despite initial successes by McDowell in the United States and Emiliani in Europe in 1815. Abdominal hysterectomy for any reason was considered impossible to accomplish successfully. Many of the earliest myomectomies involved pedunculated tumors. Washington L. Atlee of Lancaster, Pennsylvania, performed the first successful abdominal myomectomy in 1844; although in a series of 125 surgeries, he did not attempt to remove the uterus.

The first reported abdominal hysterectomy was attempted by Langenbeck in 1825. The 7-minute operation for advanced cervical cancer resulted in the patient’s demise several hours later. Abdominal surgery was commonly complicated by postoperative hemorrhage that was often lethal. In the mid-19th century, an English surgeon, A. M. Heath from Manchester, was the first to ligate the uterine arteries, but it would be nearly 50 years before his technique became common practice.

Successful surgery depends on control of bleeding, infection, and pain. Ligatures were known to be used to clamp bleeding vessels as early as 1090, and artery forceps were invented in the mid-16th century by Ambroise Paré. However, information regarding the pathophysiology of hemorrhage, shock, and blood transfusions was not available until the 20th century. The importance of infection control was first recognized by Austrian Ignaz Semmelweis in his work with childbed fever. His 1840s work was furthered by Joseph Lister in the 1860s, and aided by notable discoveries by Louis Pasteur and Robert Koch. American Crawford W. Long first used ether as anesthesia in 1842, and Scotsman Sir James Y. Simpson initiated use of chloroform in his obstetric practice.

It was not until 1864 that the Frenchman Koeberle introduced his method of securing the large vascular pedicle of the lower uterus with his tool, the serrenoeud. This ligature en masse around the lower uterus with the corpus amputated above was the usual technique of controlling bleeding with hysterectomy in the earliest years. The stump thus formed was

727
such a large mass of tissue that it could not always be safely re-
turned to the peritoneal cavity owing to risk of intraperitoneal bleeding; often the stump was fixed extraperitoneally in the incision so that it could be clamped later if necessary.

W.A. Freund of Germany further refined hysterectomy tech-
niques in 1878 using anesthesia, antisepsic technique, Tren-
delenburg position, and ligature around ligaments and major vessels. The bladder was dissected from the uterus, and the cardinal and uterosacral ligaments were detached; the pelvic peritoneum then was closed. Late in the 19th century, further refinements were made to abdominal hysterectomy techniques by the surgeons of the Johns Hopkins Hospital, where they reduced their mortality to 5.9%.

In the early decades of the 20th century, hysterectomy be-
came more commonly used as treatment for gynecologic dis-
ease and symptoms. Gynecology as a specialty was develop-
ing, and little else but surgery was available to gynecologists to help their patients. Major discoveries and concepts of re-
productive organ physiology and pathology were just begin-
ing. As surgery became safer, gynecologists concentrated on developing newer surgical procedures. Estrogen and progester-
tone were not discovered until the late 1920s and early 1930s.

As gynecology matured as a specialty, knowledge of repro-
ductive organ function and disease became more complete. Spe-
cial and more accurate diagnostic techniques were developed, and effective nonsurgical methods of therapy were discovered. In the modern practice of gynecology, appropriate use of this knowledge and advanced modern diagnostic technologies al-
low more correct choices of treatment for complicated medical diseases. With proper use of blood transfusions and antibiotics, and with improvements in anesthetic techniques, a hystere-
tomy can be done safely by the skillful gynecologic surgeon. Mortality from hysterectomy in most medical centers is one to two per 1,000. It is not unusual to report no mortalities in a series of several thousand hysterectomies for benign dis-
ease. With the use of prophylactic antibiotics, infectious mor-
bidity has greatly decreased, and overall morbidity rates have been greatly reduced as a result of improved techniques and training.

TABLE 32A.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Abdominal (%)</th>
<th>Vaginal (%)</th>
<th>Laparoscopic (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>USA, nationwide</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA, California</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA, Minnesota</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hysterectomy is a very common surgical procedure. In the United States, more than half a million women undergo hys-
terectomy each year, and it is estimated that by age 65, one third of women in this country will have had their uterus sur-
gically removed. Annual medical costs related to hysterectomy exceed $5 billion in the United States. However, there are signifi-
ant variations in hysterectomy rates within the United States and throughout the world. In a study from the Kaiser health care plan in California, Jacobson and colleagues reported an over-
all hysterectomy rate of 3.4 per 1,000 women older than age 20 in 2003. This is similar but somewhat lower than the rate of 4.7 per 1,000 women reported from Olmsted County, Minnesota, from 1995 to 2002. In a nationwide sample, Far-
quhar and Steiner reported an overall hysterectomy rate of 5.6 per 1,000 women in the United States in 1997. In Western Australia, Spilbury and colleagues recently reported an age-
standardized rate of 4.8 per 1,000 women. In Italy, Mattaria has reported a rate of 3.7, and a very low rate of 1.2 per 1,000 eligible women was reported from Norway.

This variation in rates from one location to another is due to several factors, including patient expectations and availability of medical care. But it is primarily related to the training and

practice patterns of the local gynecologic surgeons. In some re-
as, abnormal uterine bleeding may be managed primarily by hormonal therapy, whereas in other locations, hysterectomy may be quickly recommended. Alternatives to hysterectomy have decreased the rate of hysterectomy in recent years. Sys-
temic hormonal therapies have been effective for managing menorrhagia; recently, a progestational intrauterine system has been shown to be similarly effective. Intrauterine thermal bal-
loons, microwave, and electrical instruments are all effective outpatient techniques for endometrial ablation as an alterna-
tive to hysterectomy for symptomatic uterine bleeding. Leiomy-
omas can now be treated with transcervical hysteroscopic re-
section and also by transcatheter uterine artery embolization. These new management techniques, together with an overall desire to decrease the use of major surgery, have decreased the use of hysterectomy in recent years.

In addition, today’s gynecologic surgeon has several tech-
niques for hysterectomy from which to choose. Although ab-
dominal hysterectomy is still the most commonly used ap-
proach, there has been a definite increase in the use of both vaginal and laparoscopic hysterectomy in recent years. Table 32A.1 shows the frequency of the various techniques in recent reports from around the world. For the first time, this edition of the hysterectomy chapter is subdivided into sections on abdom-
inal, vaginal, and laparoscopic hysterectomy. In this section, we will concentrate on the abdominal approach to hysterectomy.
CHOICE OF APPROACH: ABDOMINAL, VAGINAL, OR LAPAROSCOPIC

Today, there are many different approaches to hysterectomy. The uterus can be removed via the abdominal route, transvaginally, or laparoscopically. Combinations of several techniques can be selected, such as a laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy. Although abdominal hysterectomy continues to be the most common approach used worldwide, there is good evidence from multiple randomized, prospective trials that vaginal hysterectomy is associated with fewer complications, a shorter hospital stay, a more rapid recovery, and lower overall costs (Table 32A.3). In addition, Kovac and others have shown that most patients who require hysterectomy can have it performed vaginally. Who, then, is a proper candidate for an abdominal hysterectomy? Most patients with gynecologic malignancy are still operated on with an abdominal incision. Although this will undoubtedly continue to be true for women with ovarian cancer, who frequently have extensive pelvic and upper abdominal metastases, laparoscopic techniques and more recently robotic surgical techniques are being used more and more frequently in women with endometrial and cervical cancer.

Another indication for abdominal hysterectomy is a large uterus that prevents safe and reasonable vaginal hysterectomy. This is obviously very dependent on the skills and experience of the surgeon, because there are various techniques that allow a very large benign uterus to be removed from below. Nevertheless, most gynecologists would agree that a uterus larger than 12 weeks' gestational size is a reasonable size to qualify for an abdominal approach. The shape and size of the pelvic outlet are also key factors; although the degree of prolapse is not an absolute factor, patients with limited uterine prolapse are

---

**Table 32A.2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication for hysterectomy</th>
<th>Abdominal hysterectomy</th>
<th>Vaginal hysterectomy</th>
<th>Laparoscopically assisted hysterectomy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abnormal bleeding</td>
<td>530</td>
<td>839</td>
<td>839</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leiomyoma</td>
<td>216 g</td>
<td>113 g</td>
<td>129 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenomyosis</td>
<td>82 min</td>
<td>63 min</td>
<td>102 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endometriosis</td>
<td>5.35%</td>
<td>5.19%</td>
<td>6.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic organ prolapse</td>
<td>9.1%</td>
<td>3.2%</td>
<td>2.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic inflammatory disease</td>
<td>2.5%</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic pelvic pain</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
<td>0.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy-related conditions</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>1,184</td>
<td>530</td>
<td>839</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 32A.3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics of hysterectomy by different approaches</th>
<th>Abdominal</th>
<th>Vaginal</th>
<th>Laparoscopically assisted vaginal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of patients</td>
<td>1,184</td>
<td>530</td>
<td>839</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine weight (average)</td>
<td>216 g</td>
<td>113 g</td>
<td>129 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operative time (average)</td>
<td>82 min</td>
<td>63 min</td>
<td>102 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood loss&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; (average)</td>
<td>5.35%</td>
<td>5.19%</td>
<td>6.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever 101°F</td>
<td>9.1%</td>
<td>3.2%</td>
<td>2.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfused</td>
<td>2.5%</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowel, bladder or ureteral injury</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
<td>0.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital stay</td>
<td>60 h</td>
<td>40 h</td>
<td>40 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital charges</td>
<td>$6,532</td>
<td>$5,879</td>
<td>$6,431</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> Blood loss is percent change in preoperative versus postoperative hematocrit.
more difficult to do transvaginally. Cervical fibroids or cervical enlargement for any reason may compromise vaginal exposure and make it difficult to place clamps laterally.

An unknown adnexal mass, extensive pelvic endometriosis, or adhesions from prior surgery or pelvic infection may also be an indication for an open abdominal approach including a hysterectomy. In some cases, a diagnostic laparoscopy will clarify the ureteral and bladder injury so that laparoscopic supracervical hysterectomy has been associated with an increased risk of bladder dysfunction after the cervix has been removed. Much has been written about this in the lay press, and the diagnosis and reason for the approach selected should be thoroughly explained and discussed with the patient and any appropriate family or friends. In rare cases, the final decision concerning the type of hysterectomy will depend on the findings of the exam under anesthesia or the findings at laparoscopy. In those cases, all the “what ifs...” should be carefully reviewed with the patient before the surgery and the family kept informed as decisions are made during surgery.

Subtotal Versus Total Hysterectomy for Benign Conditions

In the United States, and throughout most of the world, the hysterectomy—whether done transvaginally or through an abdominal incision—usually includes removal of the cervix. Over the past 50 years, subtotal or supracervical hysterectomy has come to be viewed as a suboptimal procedure reserved for those instances when concern over blood loss or anatomic distortion dictates limiting the extent of dissection. Recently, there have been some concerns about a reduced quality of orgasmic function and bladder dysfunction after the cervix has been removed. Much has been written about this in the lay media, and there are undoubtedly some women who develop problems after hysterectomy. However, several recent prospective, randomized studies in the United States and abroad have shown no difference in sexual satisfaction, bowel or bladder dysfunction, and vaginal prolapse after simple total hysterectomy compared with supracervical hysterectomy for benign disease. My own clinical experience over 30 years also confirms this impression.

Nonetheless, the routine practice of removing the cervix at the time of hysterectomy for benign disease is now being challenged as many traditional surgical procedures are being modified to accommodate minimally invasive techniques. A new technique of total laparoscopic hysterectomy (as initially described by Semm) involves coring out the endocervical tissue—usually enable the gynecologist to decide on the most appropriate type of hysterectomy. The diagnosis and reason for the approach selected should be thoroughly explained and discussed with the patient and any appropriate family or friends. In rare cases, the final decision concerning the type of hysterectomy will depend on the findings of the exam under anesthesia or the findings at laparoscopy. In those cases, all the “what ifs...” should be carefully reviewed with the patient before the surgery and the family kept informed as decisions are made during surgery.

Management of Normal Ovaries

Should normal ovaries be removed at the time of hysterectomy for benign disease? The term prophylactic oophorectomy is preferred when referring to the removal of clinical normal ovaries at the time of hysterectomy. The use of incidental oophorectomy is not recommended because it suggests that an oophorectomy is done without planning or consideration and has no consequences. There is no doubt that bilateral oophorectomy reduces the risk of ovarian cancer and the need for future surgery for benign conditions of the ovaries. However, the ovaries continue to produce low levels of androgens even after the menopause; and although the benefits, if any, of this hormone production are unknown, the psychological effect of oophorectomy on some women is significant.

Prophylactic oophorectomy is done in 50% to 66% of women aged 40 to 65 who undergo hysterectomy in the United States. Averette and Nguyen have estimated that 1,000 of the approximately 24,000 new cases of ovarian cancer in the United States would be prevented if prophylactic bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy was done at the time of hysterectomy on all women older than age 40.

Clearly, there are some significant potential benefits to oophorectomy at the time of any pelvic surgery in women with a known BRCA-1 or BRCA-2 gene mutation, a strong family history of ovarian or breast cancer, or women of Eastern European Jewish heritage. In a follow-up study of 1,200 women who underwent hysterectomy with at least one ovary retained, Plockinger and Kolb found that new pathology in the remaining ovary led to reoperation in approximately 4% of the patients. Older data supports this rate of reoperation for problems related to ovaries left behind at operation.

Interestingly, an analysis of the Cancer and Steroid Hormone Study by Irwin and colleagues from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), including women 20 to 54 years old, found a 40% reduction in the risk of ovarian cancer in women who had a hysterectomy even with ovarian conservation, unilateral or bilateral. The protection was still present 10 years after surgery (RR = 0.6), but disappeared after two decades. The reason(s) for this risk reduction is unknown, but may be related to the opportunity to examine the ovaries at the time of hysterectomy with removal of those that are abnormal and conservation of those that are grossly normal. Other possible mechanisms include reduction in ovarian blood flow and stenodogenesis after hysterectomy, a higher frequency of previous oral contraceptive use among women who undergo hysterectomy, and protection of ovaries from transstubal migration of potential vaginal carcinogens.

Four case control studies that found a lower risk of ovarian cancer among women who had a history of previous hysterectomy with ovarian conservation have been analyzed by Weiss and Harlow. The authors felt the reduction in ovarian cancer risk was explained by incidental screening for visible ovarian malignancy at the time of hysterectomy in those women in whom the ovaries are not removed. Those women with grossly normal ovaries have a reduced risk of developing symptomatic ovarian cancer over the next few years.
Recent studies also have clearly shown a decrease in the risk of breast cancer in women who have undergone bilateral oophorectomy. This is of particular importance in women from families with a history of ovarian or breast cancer and those with known BRCA gene mutations. In a series of 377 women with BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutations who were enrolled prospectively and followed up for 8 to 13 years, Kauf and associates reported a 4% incidence of breast cancer among the 69 women who underwent prophylactic oophorectomy compared with a 13% incidence among those who elected follow-up surveillance only. In a similar retrospective review of 259 women compared with matched controls, the risk of breast cancer was reduced by 50% in the women who had bilateral oophorectomy. In both series, the risk of peritoneal or ovarian cancer was decreased by 95%.

New studies have examined the operative morbidity of adding oophorectomy at the time of abdominal hysterectomy. There is a slight theoretical risk of ligation or obstruction of the ureter at the time of ligation of the ovarian vessels, but this risk should be very minimal in women with truly normal ovaries who are undergoing abdominal hysterectomy for benign disease. The long-term consequences of the loss of minimal androgen production by the postmenopausal ovary is unknown, but the benefits of hormonal production by the normal premenopausal ovary are significant. Prevention of osteoporosis, urogenital atrophy, skin changes, and possible prevention of arteriosclerotic vascular disease are but some of the known benefits of ovarian estrogens. Clearly, removal of the normal ovaries in a premenopausal woman mandates hormone replacement therapy to prevent these undesirable side effects of the hypoestrogenic state.

However, in a study of 165 premenopausal women who were prescribed estrogen replacement therapy following bilateral oophorectomy, Castelo-Branco and colleagues found that only one third continued their medication for 3 years. Fear of cancer was the most common reason for discontinuation. The anticipated protection from osteoporosis and other consequences of premature menopause that result from oophorectomy may not be effectively prevented by oral hormone replacement therapy to prevent these undesirable side effects of the hypoestrogenic state.

PREOPERATIVE COUNSELING

The gynecologist needs to talk with the patient while trying to decide whether a hysterectomy is indicated. Fortunately for the patient and the gynecologist, time for talking is available in almost every situation. The patient is not in an emergency. Unfortunately, the time may not be used properly. In a survey of 10 women who underwent hysterectomy, Neelam and Taylor found that there is an urgent need for patient education on the physical, psychological, and sexual aspects of hysterectomy. Often, the need for hysterectomy is obvious. There is a complete prolapse, or a large and symptomatic leiomyomatous uterus, or a pelvic mass. Under these and other obvious circumstances, the patient should be told that a hysterectomy is recommended and why. The indication for surgery should be explained clearly and in such a way that the patient can understand. Treatment alternatives should be mentioned, and the reason to prefer hysterectomy should be explained. Alternative techniques for hysterectomy should be discussed, and the reasons for recommending one approach over another should be explained. The risks, benefits, and side effects, specifically including the possibility of transfusion, must be reviewed, but in such a way that the patient is not unduly alarmed. Then the patient and the physician should spend the time necessary to discuss any questions that the patient may have. Additionally, the patient should be encouraged to discuss details about the operation, how long it will take, the recuperation period in the hospital and at home, whether ovarian function should be conserved, and possible hormone replacement therapy. Patient information pamphlets and videos also are useful for preoperative education. The expectations of the patient and her family are very important in her postoperative view of the success (or failure) of the operation.

Because the uterus is the main organ associated with reproduction, it is an important part of a woman's self-image. In some cultures, a woman's sexuality and reproductive potential are viewed as important parts of her value or status in her family or society as a whole. For these reasons, it is absolutely necessary for the gynecologic surgeon to understand and help patients cope with the emotional turmoil that may accompany hysterectomy. For some women who have had their children and need a hysterectomy for prolonged heavy bleeding and cramping associated with uterine fibroids or those with a diagnosis of endometrial cancer, the indications are clear, the benefits are obvious, and the loss of reproductive capacity often is not of great concern. The emotional stress of hysterectomy on these women is usually minimal, and psychological adjustment often is rapid and complete. However, the young woman needing a hysterectomy for cervical cancer or a ruptured corneal pregnancy may have considerable difficulty adjusting to the loss of her uterus. Even the 32-year-old woman with three children and severe uterovaginal prolapse may not be comfortable able with the idea of hysterectomy. The gynecologist must be sensitive to these possible concerns and anxiety. Even when the patient does not express any emotional distress, the gynecologist can provide an opening for the patient to discuss her feelings by statements such as, “Most studies have shown no change in sexuality and sexual function after hysterectomy, but I know many patients have concerns about this. Do you have any questions?” The support of the patient's husband or partner and her family and friends are very useful elements to prevent and manage depression and the emotional stress of hysterectomy. The wise surgeon includes members of this support group in preoperative discussions and encourages them to ask questions or express opinions that actually may be questions or opinions of the patient that she is hesitant to express.
The psychological aspects of pelvic surgery are extensively reviewed in Chapter 3.

## PREPARATION FOR HYSTERECTOMY

A complete history and physical examination is indicated before any operative procedure. This evaluation is detailed in Chapter 8, but a few points deserve emphasis. Although it is important to have a complete understanding of the patient's medical condition, it is important to have a recent Pap test to rule out cervical neoplasia. A pregnancy test in reproductive-age women is recommended before surgery. Preoperative chest x-rays are no longer routinely recommended, but may be indicated in women with a history of cardiorespiratory disease or malignancy. An intravenous pyelogram or computed tomography scan of the abdomen and pelvis may be useful in women with uterine or extraterine pelvic masses, but these are not indicated routinely.

Although the value of a bowel preparation before simple hysterectomy has been questioned in recent years, we prefer to have the colon evacuated before pelvic surgery to facilitate exposure and reduce trauma to the bowel caused by retraction and packing. We recommend a clear liquid diet on the day before surgery, and 250 cc of oral magnesium citrate exposure and reduce trauma to the bowel caused by retraction and packing. We recommend a clear liquid diet on the day before surgery, and 250 cc of oral magnesium citrate the evening before surgery. In the morning of surgery, the patient should be instructed not to shave the operative site with an electric clipper or even scissors rather than shaved. The patient should be instructed not to shave the operative site before surgery because it has been shown to increase the risk of wound infection and cellulitis.

Several modifications are described in the following.

### Surgical Site Infection Risk

Surgical site infection risk is decreased by routine use of prophylactic intravenous antibiotics given immediately before induction of anesthesia. First- or second-generation cephalosporins, such as cefazolin or cefoxitin, are commonly used. Recommended antibiotic regimens are shown in Table 32A.4. Prospective, randomized trials have shown a significant reduction in the risk of febrile morbidity and infection in both abdominal and vaginal hysterectomy. Studies have shown no benefit of continuing antibiotics postoperatively, although a second dose of antibiotics generally should be given during hysterectomy procedures that last longer than 3 hours. Some have suggested that bacterial vaginosis increases the risk of postoperative infections after vaginal hysterectomy, but preoperative evaluation and treatment remains controversial. Although povidone-iodine douches and antibiotic scrubs before surgery have been widely used in the past, no added benefit is apparent when perioperative intravenous antibiotics are employed.

### Antibiotic Dosage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibiotic</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
<th>Half-life</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cefazolin</td>
<td>1–2 g IV</td>
<td>1.2–2.3 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefoxitin</td>
<td>1–2 g IV</td>
<td>2.8–4.6 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metronidazole</td>
<td>1 g IV OR</td>
<td>6–14 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentamicin</td>
<td>15 mg/kg IV or 500 mg OR</td>
<td>2–3 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clindamycin</td>
<td>900 mg IV</td>
<td>2.5 h</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 32A.4** RECOMMENDED PROPHYLACTIC ANTIBIOTIC REGIMENS FOR HYSTERECTOMY

Previous editions of Te Linde's text have described gradually evolving modifications of Edward H. Richardson's technique for abdominal hysterectomy with which thousands of gynecologic surgeons have been trained over the years. The operative technique was first published in 1929, and because Te Linde felt it was a classic, he quoted it word-for-word in the fourth edition of this textbook with two added "modifications." This was the edition on my bedside table when I was a resident. I have had the good fortune to operate with many fine surgeons, including E. Stewart Taylor and Felix Rutledge, and have been challenged by many young residents over the years. These experiences have been further enhanced by discussions of surgical technique with gynecologists from around the world, who have suggested changes or ideas that I have tried and sometimes incorporated into my basic technique for abdominal hysterectomy. Although it is important to learn a basic technique for standard abdominal hysterectomy, every surgeon should be interested in observing new and different techniques or modifications to be tried from time to time when appropriate. As a resident, you should try all of the different techniques used by the different attending physicians, always asking why this clamp is used, that suture or needle is selected, or why the cuff is left open or closed. Having tried many different ideas, each gynecologic surgeon gradually evolves her or his own basic techniques that feel comfortable, work for him or her, and make sense. Because each patient is unique, it is also useful to have experience with different techniques and various modifications of the basic operation so that when the occasion calls for it, an alternative technique that is more suitable for the particular situation can be employed. Our basic technique for abdominal hysterectomy and several modifications are described in the following.

### TOTAL ABDOMINAL HYSTERECTOMY: SURGICAL TECHNIQUE

PREPARATION FOR HYSTERECTOMY

A complete history and physical examination is indicated before any operative procedure. This evaluation is detailed in Chapter 8, but a few points deserve emphasis. Although it is important to have a complete understanding of the patient's medical condition, it is important to have a recent Pap test to rule out cervical neoplasia. A pregnancy test in reproductive-age women is recommended before surgery. Preoperative chest x-rays are no longer routinely recommended, but may be indicated in women with a history of cardiorespiratory disease or malignancy. An intravenous pyelogram or computed tomography scan of the abdomen and pelvis may be useful in women with uterine or extraterine pelvic masses, but these are not indicated routinely.

Although the value of a bowel preparation before simple hysterectomy has been questioned in recent years, we prefer to have the colon evacuated before pelvic surgery to facilitate exposure and reduce trauma to the bowel caused by retraction and packing. We recommend a clear liquid diet on the day before surgery, and 250 cc of oral magnesium citrate the evening before surgery. In the morning of surgery, the patient should be instructed not to shave the operative site with an electric clipper or even scissors rather than shaved. The patient should be instructed not to shave the operative site before surgery because it has been shown to increase the risk of wound infection and cellulitis.
On the day of surgery, the surgeon always attempts to see the patient and her family and supporters before she is brought into the operating room. Although surgery may be routine to the gynecologist, major surgery is often a once-in-a-lifetime, frightening experience for the patient. The calm reassurance of the surgeon and the professional and caring nature of the entire operative team is very helpful to the patient and her family at this point. The amount of attention she should have on the patient and her surgery. A certain amount of relaxed chatter about someone’s birthday or hospital gossip is reasonable, but the patient should feel that the concentration of the surgical team is focused on the surgery at hand. Remarks about other patients or how a surgeon had to stay up all night are, a difficult patient in labor are not appropriate. An equipment problem or technical difficulties that affect the operation certainly should be discussed with the surgeon before starting the procedure; however, it is inappropriate to talk about these in front of the patient. Remarks such as, “The table is broken and won’t go down” or “We weren’t able to get your favorite retractor today” may not affect the performance of the operation, but such statements just before a patient is ready to be anesthetized may raise serious doubts as to whether the operative team is optimally prepared for this operation and may raise uncomfortable questions later if complications or unexpected results occur.

**Positioning**

The patient is brought into the operating room and placed in the supine position on the operating table. It is nice to place a warm blanket on the bed immediately before the patient’s arrival and to cover the patient with a blanket from the warmer when she is positioned because most operating rooms are somewhat cool and the patient is only lightly clothed.

When the patient has been anesthetized, a careful examination under anesthesia is done. At this point, the surgeon should concentrate on potential problems affecting resectability. Is there nodulation from endometriosis in the cul-de-sac that may make dissection of the rectum off of the posterior cervix difficult? Is the myoma in the broad ligament really wedged into the pelvic sidewall or does it move freely with the uterus? The mobility and descent of the uterus under anesthesia is particularly important when a vaginal hysterectomy is being considered. These potential problems and possible solutions should be considered and possibly discussed with the operative team while the surgeon scours.

The vagina and perineum are prepped with antiseptic solutions and a Foley catheter is inserted. I prefer to position the patient supine on the operative table with a soft pillow under her knees to provide gentle flexion. The patient’s legs provide a table on which instruments can be placed. Some surgeons prefer the patient to be positioned in the low Allen starups with her legs slightly apart. This allows an assistant to stand between the legs and have ready access to the vagina for examination or manipulation, or the urethra for cystoscopy.

The abdomen then is prepped from the anterior thighs to the xiphoid, and sterile drapes are applied. In most instances, abdominal hysterectomy for benign disease can be done through a low transverse incision; most gynecologists prefer a Pfannenstiel incision, which is cosmetically appealing and strong. If more exposure is required, a Cherney or Maylard incision can be used. But for now, a midline incision is preferred for the patient and her surgery. A certain amount of relaxed chatter about someone’s birthday or hospital gossip is reasonable, but the patient should feel that the concentration of the surgical team is focused on the surgery at hand. Remarks about other patients or how a surgeon had to stay up all night are, a difficult patient in labor are not appropriate. An equipment problem or technical difficulties that affect the operation certainly should be discussed with the surgeon before starting the procedure; however, it is inappropriate to talk about these in front of the patient. Remarks such as, “The table is broken and won’t go down” or “We weren’t able to get your favorite retractor today” may not affect the performance of the operation, but such statements just before a patient is ready to be anesthetized may raise serious doubts as to whether the operative team is optimally prepared for this operation and may raise uncomfortable questions later if complications or unexpected results occur.

**Hysterectomy**

When the bowel has been packed away and exposure to the pelvis is satisfactory, the round ligaments and uteroovarian ligaments are grasped on each side with a Kocher clamp, elevating the uterus out of the pelvis. In some cases of extensive inflammatory disease, endometriosis, malignancy, or very large fibroids, uterine mobility is limited, but in most benign conditions, uterine mobility is satisfactory. The operator is generally on the patient’s left side so that the right-handed surgeon can use her or his dominant hand to extend down into the pelvis. The first assistant is on the opposite side. The uterus is retracted to the patient’s left side, and the right round ligament is stretched taunt. A 0 delayed absorbable suture is placed under the round ligament approximately halfway between the uterus and the pelvic sidewall (Fig. 32A.1). The small artery of Sampson runs just under the round ligament and, in many cases, transvaginally this allows the surgeon to easily visualize the artery and be sure that the suture is passed under it so that the artery will be ligated. A second suture is placed appropriately 1 cm medial to the first suture; these two sutures are now tied simultaneously by the surgeon and first assistant. Clamping the round ligament is an extra step that is rarely necessary.

With traction on these sutures, the round ligament is held taunt and divided with Metzenbaum scissors between the two suture ligatures. This opens the retroperitoneal space, which is almost always a free space for blunt dissection, even in the patient with extensive tumor, inflammatory disease, or endometriosis. If the ovaries are to be removed at the time of hysterectomy, the generally is done if malignant disease is present or exposure to the upper abdomen may be required. The choice of abdominal incision is discussed in Chapter 14.
the anterior cervix does not need to be divided at this time because exposure of this area is not yet required and bleeding may be encountered. With the index finger and the tip of the suction or the back of a tissue forceps, the surgeon gently divides the loose areolar tissue of the retroperitoneum, identifying the external iliac artery on the medial surface of the psoas muscle. In most cases, the artery can be identified very easily, and blunt dissection is used to extend the exposure superiorly to the level of the bifurcation of the common iliac artery. The ureter always crosses the pelvic brim at this location and should be identified easily on the inside of the medial leaf of the peritoneum at this point. The internal iliac or hypogastric artery dives into the pelvis at this location parallel to the ureter, and it should be identified also. This retroperitoneal exploration may seem awkward at first, but with practice, the external and internal iliac arteries and ureter can be visualized easily in 10 to 20 seconds.

If the ovary is to be removed, a hole in the peritoneum between the ureter and the ovarian vessels superior to the ovary can be made under direct vision. We use a fairly fine sharp-pointed 9-inch clamp that can be passed gently through the peritoneum from lateral to medial against and between two fingers, supporting the medial side of the peritoneum. Alternatively, the peritoneum may be divided sharply or with the electrosurgical blade. We prefer to use a fairly delicate tonsil clamp on the infundibulopelvic ligament because it reminds us to isolate the vessels and take a fairly small pedicle. If there is significant inflammation or edema, a larger clamp, such as a Heaney clamp, may be used on the infundibulopelvic ligament pedicle (Fig. 32A.2). A second back clamp then is placed distally and the ovarian vessels divided between the two clamps. This pedicle then is ligated with a free-tie, and then a second transfixion suture ligature is placed for safety between the free-tie and the clamp. Zero-gauge delayed absorbable sutures and ties are used throughout. The suture ligature is placed distal to the free-tie so that if the needle happens to puncture one of the ovarian vessels, the vessel has already been ligated by the more proximal free-tie. The back clamp is ligated with a single free-tie, and the posterior peritoneum then is torn or cut above the ureter toward the back of the uterus, mobilizing the ovary, which is then tied to the clamp on the right side of the uterus to keep it from flopping around and obscuring the operative field. The sutures on the round ligaments and infundibulopelvic ligament then are cut. The procedure is repeated on the patient’s left side.

If the ovary and tube are to be left in situ at the time of hysterectomy, a window in the peritoneum beneath the fallopian tube between the uterus and ovary is made sharply or bluntly, and a heavy clamp—such as a Heaney, Kocher, or similar clamp—is used to clamp the uterovarian pedicle (Fig. 32A.3, see page 736). The round ligament should not be included in this clamp. The clamp that was initially placed on the round ligament and fallopian tube just lateral to the ureterine fundus at the beginning of the procedure serves as the back clamp for this pedicle. The tube and uterovarian ligament are divided and the pedicle ligated as previously noted with a free-tie followed by a suture ligature. The ovary and tube may be left in the posterior pelvis if exposure is adequate or gently packed in the paracolic gutter, with care being taken to ensure that the blood supply is not compromised.

The next step is the dissection of the bladder from the anterior cervix. At this point, the peritoneum is divided just...
FIGURE 32A.2. A: The infundibulopelvic ligament is doubly clamped, and the ovarian vessels are cut between the clamps. Care is taken to be sure the ureter is clear as the clamps are applied. B: The proximal pedicle is ligated with a free tie followed by a transfixion suture ligature.
FIGURE 32A.3. When the ovary is to be conserved, a peritoneal window is made above the ureter and the tube and uteroovarian ligament are clamped. This pedicle is divided and doubly ligated.

FIGURE 32A.4. The bladder is mobilized inferiorly by sharp dissection away from the cervix. To avoid unnecessary bleeding, this step may be done in stages as necessary.
Abdominal Hysterectomy

FIGURE 32A.5. The bladder and, if necessary, the rectum can be gently advanced with blunt dissection. The depth of this dissection can be checked by squeezing the anterior and posterior fingers together below the cervix. (From: Richardson EH. A simplified technique for abdominal panhysterectomy. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1929;48:248, with permission.)

uterus is pulled sharply to the patient’s right side, and the surgeon gently dissects the loose fatty tissue adjacent to the lateral lower uterine segment on the left. The uterine artery is usually found immediately adjacent to the uterus at the level of the internal cervical os. In most patients, the uterine artery is easily exposed by holding the tissue laterally and gently “raking” with the Metzenbaum scissors slightly opened from medial to lateral. “Skeletonizing” the uterine artery and vein allows them to be clamped more accurately, with less adjacent tissue, and a smaller vascular pedicle, which allows more precise and more secure ligation. However, good surgical judgment should be used so that excessive attempts to isolate the vessels do not produce unnecessary bleeding. When the vessels are exposed, a fairly heavy, slightly curved clamp then is used to clamp the vessels just adjacent to the uterus (Fig. 32A.6B). We prefer to use a Heaney, Zeppelin, or Masterson clamp for these pedicles. The tip of the clamp should be around the vessels, and the clamp should come across the pedicle as close to a right angle as possible, rather than at the diagonal, so that the least amount of tissue will be incorporated in the pedicle. The tip of the clamp should not include too much cervical or uterine tissue because this makes application of subsequent clamps more difficult. A second clamp can be placed above the first for added safety, if desired, and a third or back clamp used to prevent annoying back bleeding from the uterus after the vessels have been cut.

If exposure is satisfactory after a single clamp has been placed on the left uterine artery and vein, we skeletonize the uterine vessels on the patient’s right side and place a clamp on these vessels as well. If the uterus is small, no back clamp is required because the four major vessels supplying the uterus have now been clamped or ligated. Next, the uterine vessels are cut with scissors or a knife and the pedicle doubly ligated with 0 delayed absorbable sutures. We prefer to use a small taper-point needle (CT-2, Ethicon) for these pedicles because we feel that large needles are more difficult to place in the small confines of the deep pelvis. If a back clamp has been used, it is now ligated and removed so that the field is not obscured by an excessive number of clamps.

Hemostasis should be good at this point. If not, any bleeding should be controlled. The bladder is again checked to ensure it is well below the cervix. If the rectum needs to be dissected from the posterior cervix, this should be done now. This is usually not necessary for a simple abdominal hysterectomy for benign disease. The peritoneum of the posterior cul-de-sac between the uterosacral ligaments can be divided easily, and blunt dissection of the posterior vaginal wall from the anterior rectum usually is easy, although the rectosigmoid occasionally may be densely adherent to the posterior uterine segment or cervix by endometriosis or pelvic inflammatory disease. If the bladder and/or rectum is too densely adherent and there is concern that further attempts at dissection may damage them or cause troublesome bleeding, a supracervical hysterectomy should be considered.

Once the bladder anteriorly and the rectum posteriorly have been freed from the cervix, the uterus is placed on tension, exposing the deeper portions of the broad ligament and pulling the lower uterine segment away from the uterine. A medium-width malleable retractor may be useful to retract the bladder anteriorly; if necessary, a wide malleable retractor in the posterior cul-de-sac will provide deep exposure posteriorly. In most cases, a series of straight Heaney or Zeppelin clamps can now be used to successfully clamp the remaining portion of the broad ligament (Fig. 32A.7). The tips of these clamps should be placed on the lateral portion of the cervix, and the upper portion of the jaw should lie immediately adjacent to the previous pedicle. As the clamp is gently squeezed closed, the tip slides off of the firm cervix, finally closing snugly against the lateral wall of the muscular cervix. By staying close to the cervix in this way, the risk of damaging the ureter, which is not too far away laterally, is minimized. The pedicle then is cut with heavy scissors or a knife. A millimeter or two of tissue may be left...
medial to the clamp as insurance, but this is not necessary. The tip of the transfixion suture needle is placed at the lateral tip of the clamp jaw if the pedicle is longer than 1 cm, we recommend using a Heaney suture ligature so that the upper end of the pedicle is secondarily transfixed to prevent it from slipping out of the ligature. While good exposure is maintained, one or two pedicles are tied on each side, and then the procedure is repeated on the opposite side until the level of the cervical-vaginal junction has been reached. Once again, the bladder and rectum are checked and advanced if necessary to be sure that they are well clear and the anterior and posterior vaginal walls exposed.

Sharply angled large Zeppelin clamps are used to clamp across the vagina below the cervix. These clamps include the base of the cardinal ligaments laterally, the uterosacral ligament posteriorly, and the vaginal wall anteriorly and posteriorly. A clamp is applied from each side; in most cases, the tips of these clamps meet in the middle just below the cervix (Fig. 32A.8). A knife or heavy, sharply angled Jorgenson scissors is used to divide the vagina above these clamps and below the cervix. The uterus is removed and placed in a pan on the back table for later examination. A single figure-of-eight suture is placed between the tips of the two clamps to close the midportion of the vagina. The ends of this suture are held initially and not tied. A Heaney suture ligature is placed on each of the lateral clamps with the second bite going through the uterosacral ligament posteriorly. Inclusion of the uterosacral and cardinal ligaments in this pedicle provides excellent support of the vaginal apex. When these lateral sutures have been tied, the figure-of-eight suture in the middle then is tied also. The lateral sutures are cut and the figure-of-eight in the middle of the cuff is held to provide traction on the vaginal apex. With this closed cuff technique, the vagina is never exposed, which reduces contamination of the pelvis. However, there may be instances, such as a large cervical myoma, when there is a very deep vaginal fornix, and a closed technique would remove too much vagina. Entry into the vagina with the electrosurgical blade and then carefully opening the vagina circumferentially under direct vision is an option in such cases. As the vagina is opened, the full-thickness vaginal edges are grasped with Kocher clamps as the dissection proceeds. We generally close the vaginal cuff with a series of figure-of-eight stitches of 0 delayed absorbable suture, taking care to incorporate the uterosacral and cardinal ligaments into the cuff for support. We have not run the vaginal wall with a locking stitch for hemostasis and left the cuff open for drainage (closing the pelvic peritoneum over the open cuff) since the advent of prophylactic antibiotics for hysterectomy many years ago.

In the classic Richardson technique, the peritoneum over the posterior cervix is divided, the peritoneum is dissected off the cul-de-sac, and the rectovaginal septum is entered to reflect the rectum posteriorly. In our experience, this has not been necessary in the vast majority of patients with benign disease. In contrast to the anterior bladder dissection, this posterior peritoneum is much more adherent. There is usually some bleeding associated with this dissection, making it both bloody and time-consuming. With the Richardson technique, the uterosacral ligaments also are clamped separately and subsequently attached to the vaginal cuff for support. In the technique described above, this is accomplished in a single step.
Abdominal Hysterectomy 739

FIGURE 32A.7. After the uterine artery and vein have been ligated, the remaining lower portion of the broad ligament is clamped with a series of straight clamps. The tips are placed on the edge of the cervix and the back of the jaw immediately adjacent to the previous pedicle.

Closure

After the pelvis has been copiously irrigated with warm saline, the pedicles are inspected carefully to be sure that hemostasis is present. Electrocautery or suture ligatures with 3-0 absorbable sutures on fine needles are used to control small bleeders. The location of the ureters, bladder, and major vessels should be known when placing these sutures. Common sites of ureteral injury during abdominal hysterectomy include the infundibu-
lopelvic ligament where the ovarian vessels are ligated; the area of the uterine artery ligation and the bladder base. Distorted anatomy associated with fibroids, endometriosis and malignancy is a signal for special care to avoid ureteral injury. The pelvis is not reperitonealized, but the rectosigmoid colon is gently laid over the vaginal cuff to cover this raw surface and minimize the risk of adhesions. The packs and retractor are removed, the abdomen checked again for hemostasis, and the omentum placed anteriorly to minimize the risk of small bowel adhesions to the abdominal incision. The anterior peritoneum is closed with delayed absorbable suture, although some surgeons today feel that it is unnecessary to close the abdominal peritoneum. The fascial closure should be commensurate with the patient's risk of infection and hernia. Generally, a running monofilament delayed absorbably suture such as PDS (Ethicon) on a large, curved, tapered needle (CT-1, Ethicon) can be used. If there is a significant risk of dehiscence secondary to infection, obesity, or other medical problems, interrupted sutures or a mass closure technique may be used. Closure techniques are illustrated in Chapter 14. Because patients are often discharged by the third or fourth postoperative day, we generally prefer to close the skin with a subcuticular absorbable suture, which eliminates the necessity for a return to the office for suture or staple removal.

After the patient has been taken to the recovery room, the surgeon should speak with the family, preferably face to face, to assure them that the patient is doing well and to review the operative findings with them. We also strongly recommend that the surgeon ask the circulating nurse to contact the family about once an hour to update them on the progress of the operation during the surgical procedure. This especially is helpful if there were any unknown questions going into the operation (Did the ovaries look normal? Was the endometriosis involving the ureter?). A brief operative note must be immediately recorded in the patient's chart describing the procedure, blood loss, fluid replacement and if any packs or drains were left in the patient. Postoperative orders are written. A careful operative note should be dictated with emphasis on any unusual findings or variations from standard techniques.

SUBTOTAL ABDOMINAL HYSTERECTOMY

The technique of subtotal or supracervical abdominal hysterectomy is similar to the technique for abdominal hysterectomy.

FIGURE 32.8A. A: After checking to be sure the bladder and rectum are clean, the vagina is cross-clamped with long, sharply curved Zeppelin clamps just below the cervix (dotted line). The vagina is divided just above the clamps with a knife or angled scissors. B: The vaginal cuff is closed with a figure-of-eight in the middle and Heaney suture ligatures on the angles, including the uterosacral and cardinal ligaments for support.
A shallow V-shaped incision is used both anteriorly and posteriorly until the uterine fundus is excised. The "coagulate" mode of the electrosurgical unit is used, and hemostasis usually is excellent. Several generous figure-of-eight sutures on a large needle then are used to close the upper endocervix in a hemostatic fashion. The top of the cervix is checked for bleeding, and the bladder peritoneum may be used to cover this cervical stump to minimize the risk of adhesions.

**POSTOPERATIVE CARE**

Although routine postoperative care is thoroughly reviewed in Chapter 9, there are several facets that should be emphasized following hysterectomy. Several studies over the past few years have indicated that early feeding after hysterectomy is safe and actually results in earlier discharge. In many cases, patients are able to tolerate solid food on the first postoperative day following abdominal hysterectomy. The surgeon should nevertheless take into account the amount of dissection and bowel trauma that occurred during the operative procedure and be conservative with the diet orders if a postoperative ileus is anticipated. Patients and their caregivers always should be cautioned not to eat or drink if they feel nauseous or are vomiting. Having a bowel movement or even the passage of flatus are no longer requirements for hospital discharge as long as the patient has normal, active bowel sounds, is tolerating solid food, and is not distended.

Most patients have a Foley catheter for bladder drainage overnight following abdominal hysterectomy, although Richardson and many gynecologic surgeons have shown it is possible to avoid this in most patients with the help of a good, enthusiastic nursing staff. In most situations, however, a catheter is inserted before hysterectomy and removed on the first postoperative day. In patients with bladder injury or continuous epidural for postoperative pain relief, more prolonged catheter drainage may be indicated.

The length of postoperative hospitalization has decreased dramatically in the last 20 years. Although it was common in the past for women to remain in the hospital for 7 to 10 days after abdominal hysterectomy, most patients are now discharged home in 3 or 4 days. This trend toward a shorter hospital stay requires better patient education and a reasonable home environment to which the patient can be safely and
comfortably discharged. The surgeon must also carefully evaluate the patient before discharge and resist pressure from insurance companies and hospital administrators when the patient’s condition indicates that she is not suitable for an early discharge. The patient and her family must be instructed on proper care. Can she take a bath? Can she go up and down the stairs? Can she pick up her grandchild? How soon can she drive a car? A printed set of instructions for home care as well as answers to frequently asked questions are good ideas. Liberal use of home visiting nurses is also recommended, especially in older or more debilitated patients or in those whose home situation may be less than ideal.

COMPPLICATIONS

Complications from hysterectomy can be diagnosed intraoperatively or postoperatively. In a thorough review, Harris found an overall complication rate of up to 50% associated with abdominal hysterectomy, but serious complications requiring reoperation or long-term disability are relatively uncommon. Reoperation rates of 4% to 4.3% have been reported by Gimbine and associates and Browne and Frazer. The most common complications include infection, hemorrhage, and injuries to adjacent organs (Table 32A.5). Prevention and management of hemorrhage, infection, and operative injury complications are extensively discussed in several chapters of this text. Good surgical training, proper patient selection, knowledge of the anatomy, and good surgical judgment—which includes knowing your personal skills and limits—are all keys to minimizing complications.

Several factors have been consistently shown to be associated with an increased risk of complications related to hysterectomy. These are increasing age, medical illness, obesity, and malignancy. These conditions are beyond the control of the gynecologic surgeon, but they should be considered in the risk/benefit ratio when considering surgery, and every effort should be made to have the patient in the best possible condition at the time of surgery.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Hysterectomy is one of the most common major operations performed in the United States. The most common indications are uterine leiomyoma, endometriosis, abnormal uterine bleeding, and malignancy. There are many techniques to perform a hysterectomy, including abdominal, vaginal, laparoscopic and laparoscopically assisted, total, and subtotal. Before surgery, the surgeon should discuss the indications, other management options, choice of surgical approach, risks and potential complications of surgery, and expected outcomes with the patient and her supporters, and obtain a fully informed operative consent.

- Numerous prospective randomized studies have shown that total abdominal hysterectomy results in the same or better postoperative sexual function, urinary tract and bowel function, and pelvic support as does supracervical hysterectomy.

- Prophylactic antibiotics administered within 1 hour before the initial incision significantly reduces the risk of a surgical site infection. There is no advantage to continuing antibiotics after surgery in an uninfected patient.

- The surgeon and the surgical team should be completely focused on the operation. Thoughtful preoperative preparation, careful surgical technique, well-reasoned judgment intraoperatively, and attentive postoperative care by a well-trained and interactive team will result in the best outcomes. Good communication between all members of the team is of great importance.

- We have found that the surgical techniques described in this chapter has been highly effective, but each surgeon should be familiar with a number of variations of standard hysterectomy technique and use appropriate variations that might suit the anatomy or pathology of a specific patient.

---

**TABLE 32A.5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complication</th>
<th>Abdominal</th>
<th>Vaginal</th>
<th>Laparoscopically assisted vaginal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bleeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemorrhage</td>
<td>1%–2%</td>
<td>1%–3%</td>
<td>1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfusion</td>
<td>2%–12%</td>
<td>2%–8.3%</td>
<td>1.58%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unexplained fever</td>
<td>10%–20%</td>
<td>5%–8%</td>
<td>2.14%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operative site</td>
<td>6.6%–24.7%</td>
<td>3.9%–10%</td>
<td>0.54%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wound</td>
<td>4%–8%</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>3.2%–10%</td>
<td>3.9%–10%</td>
<td>1.27%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary tract</td>
<td>1.1%–5%</td>
<td>1.7%–5%</td>
<td>0.81%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia</td>
<td>0.4%–2.6%</td>
<td>0.29%–2%</td>
<td>0.11%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injuries</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder</td>
<td>1%–2%</td>
<td>0.5%–1.5%</td>
<td>1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowel</td>
<td>0.1%–1%</td>
<td>0.1%–0.8%</td>
<td>0.1%–1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterus</td>
<td>0.1%–0.5%</td>
<td>0.05%–0.1%</td>
<td>0.19%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vesicovaginal fistula</td>
<td>0.1%–0.2%</td>
<td>0.1%–0.2%</td>
<td>0.22%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trocar injuries</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Patient Neefus MS, Taylor ME. Educational needs of hysterectomy patients.


Miyazawa K. Technique for total abdominal hysterectomy: historical and clinical review.

Matteson KA, Peipert JF, Hirway P, et al. Factors associated with increased charges for hysterectomy.


Raju K. A randomized prospective study of laparoscopic vaginal hysterectomy versus abdominal hysterectomy each with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy.


Kovac SR. Clinical opinion: guidelines for hysterectomy.


Londe V. Treatment of large uterine fibroids.


CHAPTER 32B ■ VAGINAL HYSTERECTOMY

S. ROBERT KOVAC

DEFINITIONS

Endopelvic fascia—The layer of visceral endopelvic tissue surrounding the bladder, vagina, and rectum.

Enteroceles—Formed from a separation of the rectovaginal fascia from the pubocervical fascia. Indeed, enteroceles are pelvic hernias that descend through the posterior vaginal fornix. The most common location for an enterocele is the posterior superior vaginal segment.

Intramyometrial coring—A surgical technique for removal of a large uterus during vaginal hysterectomy. After the uterine vessels have been divided, the myometrium can be circumferentially incised with a scalpel placed parallel to the long axis of the uterus and beneath the serosal covering of the uterus. In effect, coring converts a spherical structure into an elongated rod shape, enhancing the surgeon’s ability to facilitate uterine removal.

McCall culdoplasty—The most commonly employed technique to close the posterior vaginal cuff.

The technique of operating through the vagina is a prerogative of the gynecologic surgeon. Vaginal surgery is an essential prerequisite in the cultural and surgical training of a qualified gynecologist. However, in the United States, the most common operation gynecologists perform is hysterectomy, which is predominately done abdominally.

Vaginal hysterectomy is the signature operation of the gynecologic profession. Ample evidence shows that the vaginal approach results in lower morbidity, less pain, more rapid recovery, more rapid return to normal activities, consumption of fewer health care dollars and resources, and a host of other benefits. A gynecologic surgeon should have the ability to perform both abdominal and vaginal hysterectomies. However, vaginal hysterectomy is, and should remain, the hallmark of gynecologic extirpative hysterectomy surgery and surgical excellence. Vaginal hysterectomy is the “gold standard” for the surgical removal of the uterus. At minimum, a gynecologic surgeon should perform at least 25% of his/her benign hysterectomies by the vaginal route.

INDICATIONS

With the advent of evidence-based research and outcomes studies, several randomized controlled trials have documented the advantages of the vaginal approach to hysterectomy. A recent Cochrane review concluded that vaginal hysterectomy, rather than abdominal, should be performed whenever technically feasible to reduce complications, shorten hospital stays, and accelerate the patient’s return to normal activities. Despite these results, these studies have not stimulated a change in physician practice patterns, which should be expected from this type of objective evidence. Several investigators have addressed the reasons for the continued dominance of the abdominal route for hysterectomy. Johns and colleagues suggested that the route of hysterectomy is usually determined by the skill, experience, and preference of the operating gynecologist. Few other parameters matter. Dorsey and associates stated that the hysterectomy patient is best served by a surgeon who selects the route with which he or she is most comfortable.

Suggesting that the feasibility of performing vaginal hysterectomy may restrict its implementation has always been a concern, especially for surgeons who prefer to use abdominal or laparoscopic techniques. The intent of developing hysterectomy guidelines was to identify when abdominal hysterectomy is truly mandated (Fig. 32B.1). Using these guidelines, expert gynecologic surgeons have achieved vaginal hysterectomy rates in excess of 90%, in contrast to the overall U.S. average of 30%, which includes laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy.

Vaginal hysterectomy has usually been indicated for women with uterine or pelvic prolapse, and traditional indications for abdominal hysterectomy have included an enlarged uterus, prior pelvic surgery, malignancy, and extravesical disease, such as endometriosis or pelvic inflammatory disease. We now know that successful vaginal hysterectomy can be done in most of these patients; however, special techniques, such as uterine coring or bivalving, are often helpful, and laparoscopic lymphadenectomy may be required in women with cervical or endometrial cancer. Laparoscopy may also be useful to evaluate an adnexal mass more carefully or the extent of endometriosis before completing the surgery with a vaginal hysterectomy and oophorectomy. Laparoscopy may also be used as an aid to reassure and give confidence to the young vaginal surgeon that extensive adhesions do not exist and the anatomy is relatively normal so that vaginal hysterectomy can be accomplished. With increasing confidence and skill that comes from experience, there are very few patients with indications for hysterectomy in whom the procedure cannot be performed vaginally.

PREOPERATIVE PREPARATION

If the surgeon is concerned about unintentionally injuring the rectum, it is important that he or she have the patient cleanse the rectum with an electrolyte purgative such as GoLYTELY, NuLYTELY, or CoLyte the evening before surgery. If this concern does not exist, a Fleet’s enema is adequate if it is given the evening before surgery. Bowel cleansing evacuates solid stool from the rectum, reduces the bacterial load of the intestinal tract, and reduces the incidence of postoperative enteritis and constipation.

A single-dose antibiotic as a prophylactic measure, usually a first-generation cephalosporin, should be given within 1 hour before the operation is started. Prophylactic antibiotics have been documented to reduce the risk of postoperative infections. It has been the author’s practice during the past 20 years to check the vaginal pH before prepping the patient. If the pH is not normal (3.8–4.2), the normal vaginal ecosystem has been
Vaginal Hysterectomy

Indicated for Benign Disease

This flow chart not appropriate for decision support

Laparoscopic Examination

Pathology Appears Confined to the Uterus

Vaginal Hysterectomy

Operative Laparoscopy

Abdominal Hysterectomy


altered. A vaginal pH in the range of 5.0 or greater suggests the potential for bacterial vaginosis and the likelihood that the facultative bacteria normally present in the vagina at concentrations of $10^4$ have reached concentrations of $10^8$. This strongly suggests that the vagina is infected before the start of the operation. These patients may not be protected by routine prophylactic antibiotics but may benefit from postoperative therapeutic antibiotics. In such patients, we usually administer 500 mg of metronidazole orally twice daily from the second to the seventh postoperative day. This practice has reduced my postoperative infection rate following vaginal hysterectomy from 9% from 1970 to 1986 to less than 1% from 1987 to present.

Gynecologists have long believed that a Betadine solution used as a preoperative vaginal scrub will remove most potential pathogens in the vagina, but this has recently been questioned. I prefer to prep all patients with 70% ethanol, even in the vagina, and use a self-adherent surgical drape that covers the rectum and conveniently keeps pubic hair and the labia from interfering with the operative field. Shaving of the pubic hair is unnecessary, and shaved patients are more uncomfortable postoperatively. Additionally, the author has always been averse to suturing the labia to the inner thighs.

Copious lavage of the vaginal vault before, during, and after vaginal hysterectomy may also help to prevent postoperative infections by removing bacteria adherent to the vaginal epithelium. Lavage is not used as frequently in the vaginal approach as it should be. Lavage with a lighted irrigation and suction instrument combined can also be used to accomplish this goal.

The type of stirrups used for the lithotomy position is solely at the discretion of the surgeon. No matter what type is used, careful attention is required to protect vulnerable vascular, bony, and neurologic points in the lower extremities. The author prefers the candy cane–type stirrups. The patient should be positioned with the buttocks at the end of the surgical table or just beyond. The table is placed at a zero horizontal position without Trendelenburg. In this manner, the surgeon can look directly into the vagina without having to look over the weighted speculum. Final positioning of the patient should protect the patient, allowing the surgeon to operate comfortably, and provide adequate room for surgical assistants to be effective. Assistants need to stand inside the stirrups to see the operative field to both observe and learn the operation. Pneumatic stockings are also recommended.

OPERATIVE TECHNIQUE

It is valuable to perform an examination under anesthesia before initiating the operation to reconfirm the preoperative exam. Undetected pathology may be appreciated during an
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

anesthetized exam along with a more complete assessment of the subtleties of the patient's anatomy. Placement of a tenaculum for applying traction on the cervix can document the degree of descensus. If more descensus is desired, strong traction on the cervix with vigorous massage of the uterosacral ligaments, especially the left uterosacral ligament, for approximately 30 seconds results in a further descensus of the cervix of approximately 2 to 3 cm.

Although some surgeons prefer to stand during vaginal hysterectomy, my preference is to sit. However, to make the assistants comfortable during the operation, the surgeon's chair is raised so the assistants do not need to bend over but can stand straight during the entire procedure. This surgeon prefers to operate with an instrument tray on his lap, which makes it easier to select the desired instruments during the operation. The number of instruments used during vaginal surgery should be kept at a minimum to prevent instruments from obscuring the surgeon's vision. This author believes that the number of instruments used during any gynecologic operation is inversely proportional to the skill of the surgeon, whereas the quality of instruments is directly proportional. These concepts are especially true in vaginal surgery.

Catheterization of the bladder before the initiation of vaginal hysterectomy is usually at the preference of the surgeon. Sometimes it is easier to identify unintentional cystotomy when the bladder has some urine in it. If the bladder is distended, catheterization of the bladder may improve the visibility within this restricted operative space. Some surgeons prefer to instill a dilute solution of indigo carmine or methylene blue before initiating the operation to ensure recognition of an unanticipated operative injury to the bladder. If a cystotomy occurs, it is best to complete the vaginal hysterectomy before proceeding with repair of the bladder. In many cases, the cystotomy may make the bladder easier to dissect because now the location of the bladder is clear and the correct planes more easily visualized. Sometimes a finger in the bladder may also facilitate a difficult dissection. The bladder must be mobilized adequately around the operative injury so that the surgeon can completely evaluate the extent of the cystotomy and be certain that the repair is completed without excess tension on the injured site.

The initial vaginal incision should be made at the border of the vaginal rugae through the full thickness of the vagina (Fig. 32B.2). Unfortunately, it has been taught that the circumscibing incision should be made on the cervix to preserve vaginal length and avoid unintentional entry into the bladder. This is incorrect, because decreased vaginal rugae mark the point where the vagina truly begins. In addition, an incision at the point where the vagina begins appropriately places the mucosal incision closer to the point of entry into the posterior and anterior peritoneum (Fig. 32B.3). An incision in this location allows the surgeon to avoid dissection of the connective tissues between the vagina and the peritoneum, reducing blood loss, because this dissection frequently involves transection of several cervical branches of the uterine artery. Thus, bleeding will be less when the incision is made where the rugae begin or cease to exist.

Julian reported on the benefit of infiltrating the vaginal wall with a mixture of 1:200,000 epinephrine diluted in normal saline to control small blood vessel bleeding from the vagina. Rarely does oozing from the vaginal mucosa result in significant blood loss when the incision is made where the vaginal rugae start. If oozing from the incised edges of the vagina becomes a problem, it is easy to control with electrocautery. At the beginning of the operation, when the cervix is still within the vagina, it is often difficult to perform a circumscibing incision around the cervix with a scalpel or electrocautery.
instrument because it is difficult to maintain either device perpendicular to the circumscribing vaginal incision. This is not a concern when the cervix protrudes from the vagina. However, when the cervix cannot be brought out of the vagina with traction, the initial incision should be made on the anterior vaginal wall from approximately the 10- to 2-o’clock position and on the posterior vaginal wall between the 8- and 4-o’clock positions. These incisions provide adequate space for the subsequent entry into the posterior and anterior peritoneum (Fig. 32B.4A,B).

After completing the vaginal incisions, the cervical tenaculum is replaced on the posterior lip of the cervix with taut traction of the cervix achieved by elevating the tenaculum anteriorly. If the posterior incision in the vagina is placed at the appropriate level where rugae are not present and at the point where the uterosacral ligaments join the cervix, the posterior cul-de-sac and peritoneum can readily be identified with tissue forceps. This is done by putting the subvaginal tissue and accompanying peritoneum on stretch as the peritoneum bulges outward toward the surgeon (Fig. 32B.3). This cannot be overstated. Entry into the posterior peritoneum is best accomplished by an incision directly above the tissue forceps that grasps the outward U-shaped bulge of the peritoneal fold (Fig. 32B.6). If the incision is placed closer to the cervix in an attempt to prevent injury to the rectum, the dissection often proceeds into the posterior cervical stroma. Unfortunately, an incision placed nearer to the cervix frequently results in a retroperitoneal dissection, which pushes the peritoneum superiorly and posteriorly, obscuring identification of the peritoneum. Should this occur, the posterior lip of the cervix and vagina can be cut in a vertical direction that exposes the peritoneum at a higher level so it can be recognized and entered directly. This is a cervicocolpotomy (Fig. 32B.7).

The peritoneum is opened with curved scissors, and a long-bladed Steiner Auvard weighted speculum is introduced into the peritoneal cavity. Examination of the cul-de-sac can provide further pathology—such as endometriosis, leiomyomata, or adrenal pathology—that may be encountered later in the operation. Identification of the uterosacral ligaments by palpation can be accomplished during examination of the cul-de-sac through the posterior colpotomy incision. Transection of the uterosacral ligaments is the single most important step in successfully completing a vaginal hysterectomy. It is unnecessary to tag the posterior peritoneum to the vagina, as the edges of the peritoneum do not separate far from its edges. Oozing of blood from this space between the vagina and peritoneum may occur, but placement of a weighted speculum into the posterior peritoneal cavity will compress most bleeding points between the cut edges of the vagina and the peritoneum.

The cervix should then be retracted downward and inferiorly, and the anterior subvaginal tissue, including the supravaginal septum and the bladder, picked up with tissue forceps and elevated in the midline. The supravaginal septum is part of the pericervical ring and is identified and incised using curved scissors with the tips pointing downward. The handles are not

![Anterior incision site, 10 to 2 o'clock](image1)

![Posterior incision site, 8 to 4 o'clock](image2)

**FIGURE 32B.4.** A: When cervix remains within the vagina when traction is applied with a tenaculum, the anterior full-thickness vaginal incision need only to be performed between 10 and 2 o’clock. B: Initial full-thickness vaginal incision need only to be performed between the 8- and 4-o’clock position. Note this incision is placed posteriorly where the vaginal rugae begin and where the uterosacral ligaments attach to the cervix. (From Kovac SR, Zimmerman CW, eds. Advances in reconstructive vaginal surgery. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006:106.)
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

FIGURE 32B.5. With traction on the cervix anteriorly, the posterior peritoneal fold is grasped with tissue forceps, and the peritoneum is entered by incising with scissors the peritoneal fold directly above the tissue forceps. (From Kovac SR, Zimmerman CW, eds. Advances in reconstructive vaginal surgery. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006:107.)

The peritoneum is grasped and entered above the tissue forceps by a 1-cm opening with the scissors. The shining surface of the peritoneum is recognized, and this opening is further stretched by spreading of the scissors into this space to allow insertion of the right-angle retractor into the anterior cul-de-sac.


FIGURE 32B.7. Cervical colpotomy for entry into the posterior peritoneum. Posterior cervix is grasped with Allis clamps approximately at 4- and 8-o’clock positions. The cervix is incised starting at the 6-o’clock position and incising the cervix and posterior wall of the uterus until the posterior peritoneum is entered. Once the peritoneum is entered, a weighted speculum is placed into the posterior peritoneal cavity. (From Kovac SR, Zimmerman CW, eds. Advances in reconstructive vaginal surgery. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006:108.)
Elevating subvaginal tissue exposing supravaginal septum

FIGURE 32B.8. Entry into the anterior peritoneum involves incising the supravaginal septum to gain entry into the vesicouterine space. Once the vesicouterine space has been entered, the space is developed by spreading the dissecting scissors for placement of a retractor to elevate the bladder. (From Kovac SR, Zimmerman CW, eds. Advances in reconstructive vaginal surgery. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006:109.)

Peritoneum Vesicouterine space Supravaginal septum


which remains in this position and elevates the bladder throughout the entire operation. This does not increase the risk of operative injury to the bladder if the surgeon has properly dissected into the vesicouterine space and retracts the bladder superiorly. The anterior peritoneal fold should always be opened under direct vision. Where the tissue forceps actually grasp the fold will determine the best place to enter the peritoneum (Fig. 32B.11A,B).

Because of the surgeon's desire to avoid injury to the bladder, there is the tendency to dissect as far as possible from the bladder. Thus, this may cause him or her to cut into the connective tissue capsule of the cervix, with further retroperitoneal dissection within the connective tissue stroma of the anterior cervix. Similar to the posterior dissection, this is more likely when the initial incision into the vagina is made too close to the cervix. Further dissection beneath the peritoneum covering of the anterior uterine segment results in failure to enter the anatomic plane, the vesicouterine space between the bladder and uterus. Failure to identify this correct tissue plane and/or a lack of caution results in either further retroperitoneal dissection or unintentional bladder penetration. If an injury to the bladder results, it will occur well above the trigone of the bladder and not near the ureteral orifices. This injury is simple to repair after the uterus has been removed. Unintentional operative cystotomy is a risk of any vaginal hysterectomy with any technique. The overall incidence of operative cystotomy while performing and teaching this technique has resulted in an acceptable cystotomy rate of 1.2% with vaginal hysterectomies.

The use of a sponge on the surgeon's finger to push the supravaginal septum and the vesicouterine space superiorly to
entry into the anterior peritoneum. Peritoneal fold
exposure is significant and makes the peritoneal identification/
the resulting descent of the uterus, increases visibility. This ex-
brosis plane becomes indistinguishable from the supravagi-
ligaments can be accomplished. The uterosacral and car-
anterior peritoneum should always be opened under direct vision,
never blindly, as unintentional entry into the bladder frequently
expose the anterior peritoneum is frequently taught. This could
be considered as more of a technique of *accomplish force* (i.e.,
to accomplish with force) than a surgical dissection, as the
Bladder from the peritoneal fold (Fig. 32B.12).

After both the posterior and anterior peritoneum are suc-
cessfully entered, detachment of the uterus from its support-
entry process less troublesome. Indeed, the uterine artery can
also be divided before peritoneal entry, allowing even greater
exposure.

The exact location of the ureter during abdominal, laparo-
coscopic, and vaginal hysterectomy is always a concern. Nichols
and Randall suggested that the risk of ureteral injury during a
vaginal hysterectomy is greater because the ureters may be
pulled downward and medially by the uterine artery. By study-
ing the surgical anatomy of the ureter during vaginal hysterec-
tomy, it was found that the ureteric artery is not the primary
factor drawing the ureter closer to the uterus. Instead, traction
on the cardinal ligament is the chief factor affecting movement
of the ureter, which suggests there is a margin of safety dur-
ing each step of a vaginal hysterectomy. This was confirmed
by magnetic resonance imaging studies with a brass tenaculum
placed on the cervix in a resting state and under traction. When
traction was applied to the cervix, the ureter's position was dis-
placed upward and lateral to the position of the ureter at rest
(Fig. 32B.13A,B). This movement confirmed radiographically
that the ureters were displaced further laterally and superiorly
from the cervix to a position of surgical safety. When bladder
traction was used, this effect was more pronounced. During
surgical identification of the ureter at the time of radical vagi-
ral hysterectomy, it can be observed that once the uterosacral
and cardinal ligaments complex has been cut, the ureter actually
moves out of harm's way. If the ureters have not been dissected
and identified before the cutting of uterosacral and cardinal
ligaments, it is difficult to dissect and visualize them vaginally
once the ligaments have been cut. Thus, it is evident that the
uterosacral and cardinal ligaments, not the uterine artery, play
a major role in determining the ureter's position during vagi-
nal hysterectomy. Once these ligaments have been divided, the
ureter will retract out of harm's way (Fig. 32B.13A,B).

When possible, I attempt to enter both the posterior and
anterior peritoneum before clamping the uterosacral and car-
dinal ligaments. Placement of a retractor under the bladder also
elevates the ureter out of the operative field (Fig. 32B.15A, B). It is recommended that once the retractor is placed under the bladder, it should not be removed during any stage of the vaginal hysterectomy. It was clearly demonstrated in the study of ureteral movement during vaginal hysterectomy that when forceful traction was applied to the uterus during vaginal hysterecomy with no retraction of the bladder, the uterine was pulled medially and potentially placed in harm’s way.

If the vaginal mucosa has not been completely circumscoped, once the anterior and posterior peritoneum have been entered, the vaginal incision should be completed by connecting the previous anterior and posterior incisions before the supportive ligaments of the uterus can be clamped. The uterosacral ligaments are clamped with the tip of the clamp, including the lower portion of the cardinal ligaments. The posterior tip of each clamp should be placed within the peritoneal cavity and the anterior tip around the ligament superiorly. The Kovac vaginal hysterectomy clamp (Marina Medical, Hollywood, FL) has less pelvic curve than the Hancey clamp, longer jaws, and two rat-tooth projections within the jaws to prevent slippage of tissue within the clamp (Fig. 32B.16A–C). Rotating the handles of the clamp laterally and superiorly facilitates suturing at the tip of the clamp. This brings the tip of the clamp into full view and exposes a triangular area beneath the clamp for easier retrieval of the needle. I do not believe it is necessary to double clamp each uterine supportive or vascular structures. Each uterosacral ligament is secured by a transfixation suture to the posterior lateral surface of the vagina and is tied behind the clamp at about the 4- and 8-o’clock positions. Lateral traction on this suture provides the best exposure to the remaining structures within the broad ligament. This replaces the need for lateral retractors into the vagina, which only expose the lateral vagina and not the broad ligament (Fig. 32B.17). Clamping and tagging the uterosacral ligaments separately allows for their identification, later use in cuff repair, and, if desired, a McCall’s culdoplasty at the end of the procedure. The uterosacral ligament pedicle is the only one that needs to be tagged during a vaginal hysterectomy.

After making sure the tips of the clamps are within the posterior peritoneal cavity, the cardinal ligaments are clamped. The anterior peritoneum should not be pulled into this clamp at this point of the operation. Bringing the peritoneal edges together serves to seal off the broad ligament by effectively preventing bleeding from the vascular plexus located within the leaves of the broad ligament. Because the anterior peritoneum usually begins at the level of the uterine vessels, there may not be enough stretchable peritoneum to bring both the anterior and posterior peritoneal surfaces together at the level of the cardinal ligaments. Therefore, to be certain that the surgeon can seal both leaves of the broad ligament together with the uterine artery, it is best to avoid any attempt to bring the peritoneal edges together when the uterosacral or cardinal ligament are clamped (Fig. 32B.18). A simple suture ligature first at the tip and then around the end of the clamp is usually sufficient for hemostasis of the cardinal ligament without the need for transfusion (Fig. 32B.19). This suture ligature is not tagged or held.

At this point, the uterine arteries should become visible on each side of the uterus. They are clamped with one good clamp at a time. This clamp is placed parallel to the uterus as the tip of the clamp secures the uterine artery as it bifurcates into ascending and descending branches (Fig. 32B.19). As traction is placed on the uterus when the artery is cut, there is a definite sensation that the uterus descends; this signifies that the entire uterine artery has been transected, including the ascending and descending branches. If descent of the uterus is not noted, often an additional portion of the uterine artery remains and intially be taken with another clamp. A single transfixation is all that is required if only the uterine artery is within the clamp. Limiting the tissue within the clamp to the vascular bundle helps to make the pedicle manageable and the suture ligature more secure. Many surgeons try to include middle portions of the broad ligament with the uterine artery because they feel a need to place clamps on the remaining portions of the broad ligament as they proceed up on each side of the uterus. Most gynecologic surgeons are comfortable with performing a vaginal hysterectomy to the point of ligating the uterine artery. Beyond this point, many gynecologists wonder if the uterus can be removed vaginally. This is the result of an ungrounded belief that continued clamping up each side of the remaining broad ligament is required for successful uterine removal. This is a puzzling idea, because when performing an abdominal hysterectomy, the upper portions of the broad ligament above the uterine vessels are sharply dissected, and no clamps are used. When the vaginal surgeon continues to place clamps above the uterine artery, the space to place each clamp becomes more restrictive, and placing sutures around these clamps becomes more difficult. This problem often spurs comments by surgeons that vaginal hysterectomy is a difficult operation because of restrictive access and visibility. Clamping and suturing of the broad ligament above the uterine artery
is unnecessary because there are only occasional significant blood vessels within the leaves of the broad ligament. There is no need to place clamps above the uterine artery until the round ligaments, fallopian tubes, and utero-ovarian pedicles are reached. Attempts to clamp and ligate the avascular tissue above the uterine vessels have been the major stumbling blocks for transvaginal removal of the uterus by inexperienced surgeons.

If the uterus is small and the uterine artery has been secured, the next step in uterine removal is to deliver the fundus through either the anterior or posterior colpotomy. When the uterus is small and mobile, simple traction may result in delivery of the uterus without the need for “flipping it.” In an attempt to deliver the uterus (regardless of the size) closer to the surgeon and out of the vagina when downward traction and flipping of the fundus do not appear possible, the surgeon may use the alternate technique of intramyometrial coring, instead of resorting to clamps placed on the upper portions of the broad ligament. This technique was introduced by Lash in 1941 and reintroduced in 1986 for removal of large uterus. In this simple technique, the myometrium can be circumferentially incised with a scalpel placed parallel to the long axis of

---

**FIGURE 32B.14.** A: Transection of the uterosacral ligament returns this structure back to its original position. B: After both uterosacral and cardinal ligaments have been transected, ureters are displaced upward and lateral out of harm’s way. (From Kovac SR, Zimmerman CW, eds: Advances in reconstructive vaginal surgery. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006:113.)
Vaginal Hysterectomy

FIGURE 32B.15. A, B: Note elevation of the ureters out of harm’s way with upward traction on the bladder during vaginal hysterectomy. (From Kovac SR, Zimmerman CW, eds. Advances in reconstructive vaginal surgery. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006:114.)

the uterus and beneath the serosal covering of the uterus (Fig. 32B.20A,B). This removes a core inside the uterus without violating the integrity of the endometrial cavity. To facilitate the coring incision, strong traction on the uterus is necessary.

The Lash or coring incision reduces the size of the uterus by decreasing its width, thereby increasing its length, similar to a baby’s head as it becomes molded during childbirth. In effect, coring converts a spherical structure into an elongated rod shape, enhancing the surgeon’s ability to facilitate transvaginal removal of a wide uterine fundus (Fig. 32B.21A–C). This is a surprisingly bloodless maneuver once the uterine arteries have been secured. Strong traction is placed on the uterus during the coring, which restricts blood flow from the ovarian pedicles.

During the coring procedure, the uterus will begin to descend through the vagina, allowing the surgeon to visualize the cornual portion of the uterus and exposing the utero-ovarian ligament, round ligament, and fallopian tube. Once these structures become visible, the surgeon is assured that the uterus can be removed vaginally. Some surgeons prefer bivalving the uterus, but this can be more cumbersome, as it requires the surgeon to deal with two pieces of the uterus. Once the upper pedicles are visualized, they can either be clamped individually with two clamps or together with one. Depending on the surgeon’s preference and experience, a suture placed around the tip of the clamp and tied or transfixed behind is appropriate. This suture is tagged to provide traction on the pedicle and expose the ovary for evaluation or removal, but the ovary should not be removed at this time.

Once the uterus has been removed, it is appropriate to evaluate each pedicle to determine whether bleeding persists. If the ovaries are removed before it is adequately determined that all pedicles are hemostatic, the surgeon may spend considerable operative time finding the source of such bleeding, as it frequently appears to be from a higher point but may actually be from one of the uterine pedicles. Each pedicle can be evaluated by starting at the 12-o’clock position within the peritoneal cavity and proceeding in a clockwise manner. The use of a 4 x 4 sponge folded longitudinally on sponge forceps is most helpful. If brisk bleeding is noted, most often it can be found by


placing traction on the upper pedicle tags and looking between the uteroovarian and uterine artery pedicles. Bleeding from this area is usually a result of the anastomosis of vessels between the ovarian and uterine artery. Because this is the most frequent site of this type of bleeding, the surgeon should direct his or her search to this area first. Placement of a clamp at the site of bleeding followed by a suture around the clamp or placement of a figure-of-eight suture passed through the vagina into the peritoneum from outward to inward will rapidly control this bleeding (Fig. 32B.22).

If no bleeding points are discovered from any pedicle, the posterior vaginal mucosa will most likely be the source of bleeding. Posterior cuff bleeding may sometimes be rather brisk from the separation of the vagina and the peritoneal edge. It is always more brisk in patients younger than 40 years of age. Before proceeding with any concurrent procedure, it is best to control blood loss from this area with electrosurgery or a running-absorbable suture, starting from the left uterosacral ligament tag to the right uterosacral ligament tag. Once this is complete, further examination of the peritoneal cavity should reveal complete hemostasis from all potential bleeding sites.

If only the removal of the uterus has been agreed on by the surgeon and the patient, support of the vaginal apex becomes the next most important decision. If an oophorectomy is planned in conjunction with the hysterectomy, it should be performed at this point.

### VAGINAL OOPHORECTOMY

There appears to be some reluctance to combine vaginal hysterectomy with oophorectomy because vaginal oophorectomy is thought to be a risky and difficult procedure. Two factors seem to foster this perception: (i) fear of restricted access to the ovaries and (ii) inadequate visibility of the adnexa during conventional vaginal surgery.

To obtain objective evidence regarding these perceptions, a prospective study was designed by Baden and Walker to determine whether there is adequate visibility and accessibility for transvaginal oophorectomy in most patients undergoing vaginal hysterectomy. After the uterus was removed, accessibility of the ovaries for transvaginal removal was assessed by stretching the infundibulopelvic ligament, placing traction on the suture tag used to ligate the uteroovarian ligament, round ligament, and fallopian tube and grading the position of the ovaries in relation to the long axis of the vagina. The degree of ovarian descent and visibility was graded with a system used to grade pelvic organ prolapse (Fig. 32B.23) (Table 32B.1). The grade corresponded to the minimal degree of descent of either ovary.

To determine what grade would be considered accessible and visible for transvaginal oophorectomy by most gynecologic surgeons, the experience of other surgical specialties was considered. For example, the distance from the hymenal ring to the ischial spine is approximately 8 cm. In dentistry, the distance from the front teeth to the last molar is 6 cm; in otolaryngology, the distance from the front teeth to the tonsil for tonsillectomy is 10 cm. Therefore, it was postulated that any ovary grade 1 or higher should be visible and accessible for transvaginal removal by most gynecologic surgeons. Of the 875 patients between 29 and 69 years of age who were evaluated for ovarian descent after hysterectomy, 92.9% had ovarian mobility to at least the midportion of the vagina (grade II). In another 4.6%, the ovary could be pulled down outside the hymenal ring (grade II). Only 2.5% of these patients had very little ovarian mobility, which would have made vaginal oophorectomy very difficult (2.4% grade I and 0.1% grade 0). Although this study provided objective evidence that the ovaries may be more visible and accessible for transvaginal removal than previously perceived, there
may be times that the ovary may be inaccessible for transvaginal removal as a result of adhesive disease, endometriosis, suspected significant pathology, or other conditions. However, the ovary should not be considered as completely inaccessible at the start of any vaginal hysterectomy. Smale and colleagues, Davies and associates, and Sheth have reported that planned vaginal salpingo-oophorectomy is successful in 94% to 97% of women undergoing vaginal hysterectomy. The routine use of the laparoscope to perform an oophorectomy before a vaginal hysterectomy has been heralded as safe and comfortable, and has become commonplace. “To be sure we can get the ovaries” is a phrase too often heard worldwide to justify the use of
FIGURE 32B.21. A: The cervix has been circumscribed through the full thickness of the vagina around the cervix, the posterior and anterior peritoneum entered, and the uterosacral and cardinal ligaments secured. B: After ligation of the uterine arteries, an incision is made in a circumferential fashion parallel to the endometrial cavity and into the outer superficial myometrium in the same plane. Constant traction on the tenaculum while coring assists in developing the proper plane. C: Continued coring and traction reduces the size of the uterus by exteriorizing the inside of the uterus with an intact endometrial cavity through the introitus. Intramural myomas are sometimes transected during the coring process. (From Kovac SR. Intramyometrial coring as an adjunct to vaginal hysterectomy. Obstet Gynecol 1986;78:131.)
FIGURE 32B.22. Most common source of bleeding after removal of the uterus is the anastomosis between uterine and ovarian arteries. Suture placed through the lateral vagina into the lateral peritoneum in a figure-of-eight fashion and tied resolves most, if not all, bleeding from this area. (From Kovac SR, Zimmerman CW, eds. Advances in reconstructive vaginal surgery. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006:120.)

abdominal, laparoscopically assisted, or laparoscopic hysterectomy. For too many years, it was believed that the ovaries were inaccessible because they are "too high" for transvaginal removal. This has erroneously guided the selection of abdominal or laparoscopic hysterectomy.

Good surgical practice dictates that objective determination of the visibility and accessibility of the ovaries be the primary criteria for selecting a particular route of oophorectomy. Thus, if the ovaries are found to be inaccessible at the time of vaginal hysterectomy, ovarian removal can be performed with the laparoscope or by a simple laparotomy once the initial operation is complete. The correct paradigm substantiated by clinical evidence is to first attempt ovarian removal transvaginally. If that is not possible, the surgeon should proceed with laparoscopy or laparotomy after completion of a vaginal hysterectomy for removal of the adnexa.

Surgical Technique of Vaginal Oophorectomy

Vaginal salpingo-oophorectomy may be accomplished in the following manner. Downward traction is applied to the suture ligating the uteroovarian ligament, round ligament, and fallopian tube. The end of the fallopian tube is directed toward the ovary with tissue forceps; a long, sharply angled clamp is placed between the round ligament, the uteroovarian ligament, and tube across the infundibulopelvic ligament; and the tube and ovary are excised. A suture is placed approximately 2 cm from the tip of the clamp, and a single throw tie is tightened around the tip, which usually secures the ovarian artery. The suture is then placed behind the clamp for suture transfixation and firmly tied with several throws. As the suture is tied, the surgeon can appreciate the security of this suture around the infundibulopelvic pedicle. Alternatively, some surgeons have used an Endoloop (Ethicon Endosurgery, Cincinnati, OH) to secure the infundibulopelvic pedicle.

An alternative method of salpingo-oophorectomy is the three-step technique described by Zimmerman. This technique mimics the same maneuvers that are used to remove the adnexa abdominally. After removal of the uterus, the utero-ovarian pedicle is held with a clamp, and the handle is rotated laterally. This maneuver exposes the round ligament that can be clamped, transected, and ligated. Division of the round ligament gives the surgeon access to the retroperitoneal space between the leaves of the broad ligament. Division of this space makes it possible to isolate, clamp, and ligate the mesovarium.
After division of the mesovarium, the only remaining tissue connected to the adnexa is the infundibulopelvic ligament. This ligament can be clamped and suture ligated or secured with an Endoloop (Fig. 32B.24). Division of the adnexectomy into three manageable steps increases surgical control and decreases the likelihood of a complication during suture application. Transection of the round ligament and mesovarium as separate pedicles significantly increases descent of the adnexa, resulting in increased visibility of the infundibulopelvic ligament.

**CLOSURE AND SUPPORT OF THE VAGINAL CUFF**

Closure of the peritoneum with vaginal hysterectomy is frequently described as necessary by some surgeons. I have not routinely closed the peritoneum for the past 25 years and have never regretted this sometimes dangerous exercise that results in no benefit to the patient. Leaving the peritoneum open should expose any immediate postoperative bleeding.

The remaining part of the vaginal hysterectomy is to support the vaginal cuff so that an enterocele or vaginal vault prolapse does not occur in later years. Compensation for the connective tissue defect created by the removal of the cervix is best accomplished at the time of hysterectomy. Failure to adequately compensate for the cervical defect may expose the patient to an increased risk for posthysterectomy vaginal vault prolapse. Enterocele repair and suspension of the prolapsed posthysterectomy vagina are among the most technically demanding of all pelvic surgery procedures. Closure of the cervical defect along with reestablishment of the suspensory axis of the vagina by incorporating the uterosacral ligaments into the cuff are effective prophylaxis reducing the risk of future prolapse.

The incidence of enterocele after hysterectomy can range between 0.1% and 16%. Nichols and Randall described a technique of excising excess peritoneum in the cul-de-sac to prevent future development of an anterior enterocele. Because this technique only removes excess peritoneum and does not address the cause of an enterocele after hysterectomy, subsequent enterocele formation has not been prevented because no musculofascial defect has been corrected or reinforced.

Several other methods to repair the posterior vaginal cuff for prolapse prophylaxis have been described. These procedures emphasize the use of the uterosacral ligaments in any repair. Inclusion of the uterosacral ligaments in cuff repair is very important because of their role as the primary suspensory elements in the vaginal vault. Connecting the uterosacrals to the cuff reestablishes the suspensory axis of the vagina and should be considered during all hysterectomies. The most commonly employed technique to close the posterior vaginal cuff is the McCall culdoplasty. This technique is thought to obliterate the cul-de-sac while it suspends the posterior superior vagina and its fascial attachments to the uterosacral ligaments, bringing these supporting ligaments together in the midline (Fig. 32B.25). This technique was a marked improvement over previous beliefs that the only thing necessary after the uterus was removed was to close the vagina. This resulted in a high incidence of vaginal vault prolapse and associated enterocele formation. I routinely performed the McCall culdoplasty after all
vaginal hysterectomies for many years to prevent future vaginal vault prolapse and enterocele formation. Recent advancements in pelvic reconstructive techniques, as well as an understanding of the cause of enteroceles, has brought us to a new method of preventing enteroceles and vault prolapse at the time of hysterectomy, especially with those patients who have a rectocele. Rectoceles result from an apical separation of the rectovaginal fascia from the uterosacral ligaments. This distal apical displacement allows rectoceles and enteroceles to develop contiguously through the same fascial defect. In our experience, enteroceles are routinely associated with rectoceles, which may not have been identified during the vaginal hysterectomy. This suggests that failure to identify and manage the presence of an enterocele at the time of vaginal hysterectomy might be the cause of the increased incidence of enterocele formation discovered in later years.

It is further recognized that enteroceles form as a result of the separation of the rectovaginal fascia from the pubocervical fascia (Fig. 32B.26). As a result of hysterectomy and removal of the cervix, there is an iatrogenic separation of the rectovaginal septum and the fibers that normally connect this structure to the anterior vaginal fascia through the connective tissue that forms the pericervical ring. This separation widens the cul-de-sac and separates the fascial attachments from the posterior vaginal wall and the rectovaginal fascia, thus allowing the peritoneum, with its intraabdominal structures, to protrude through this weakness with any increases in intraabdominal pressure. Vaginal vault prolapse and enterocele formation differ by anatomy. The upper vagina can be well supported even though an enterocele exists, and vice versa. An enterocele (DeLancey level II of vagina) descends through the weakened floor and fascia of the posterior vaginal segment. Vault prolapse of the upper vagina can be well supported, even though an enterocele is identified, management of the vaginal cuff is performed by placing mesh or graft attached anteriorly to the pubocervical fascia and to the rectovaginal fascia posteriorly, which closes the space vacated by the absence of the cervix. The difference between the shorter anterior pubocervical fascia and the longer posterior rectovaginal fascia is resolved with the mesh or graft (Fig. 32B.27). The lateral end of the mesh/graft is attached to the uterosacral ligament at its insertion into the sacral periosseum, a vaginal sacral colpocpy (Fig. 32B.28). The presence of a rectocele requires the posterior vaginal wall be opened in the midline up to the level of the newly formed cul-de-sac. The defect from separation of the rectovaginal fascia from the uterosacral ligaments is identified. If an enterocele sac is identified, opening of the sac with high ligation of the sac is unnecessary, as the mesothelial lining of the peritoneal sac has little supportive value. The sac is simply pushed upward as a 7 × 10-cm piece of small intestine submucosa (MS) graft (Cosk; Spencer, IN) and is used to reattach the separation of the rectovaginal fascia from the pericervical ring. The central portion of the graft is reattached to the pericervical ring with permanent sutures, as permanent sutures attach the proximal lateral portion of the graft to the uterosacral ligaments or sacrospinous ligaments. The central reattachment of the graft to the pericervical ring corrects the enterocele, as the lateral sutures to the uterosacral or sacrospinous ligaments support the upper vagina to prevent future vault prolapse. The distal end of the graft is

![Surgical Techniques](Fig. 32B.26. Separation of the pubocervical and rectovaginal fascia with enterocele formation. From Kovac SR., Zimmerman CW, eds. Advances in reconstructive vaginal surgery. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:124.)
attached to the perineal body. Thus, a new rectovaginal fascia is created, correcting the enterocele and rectocele with its proximal attachment to the pericervical ring and its distal attachment to the perineal body.

The objective in closing the vaginal epithelium is to approximate the cut edges of the vagina together in a smooth line with as little irregularity as possible. This technique will aid in preventing postoperative granulation tissue from forming at the site of vaginal closure. Others have suggested that the vagina should be closed vertically to preserve vaginal length. Cruikshank and Pickles demonstrated that vaginal length depended on the support of the vaginal cuff, not any specific method of epithelial closure. They concluded that as long as there is good vault support, vaginal length is not affected by the orientation of the vaginal mucosal closure. Vertical closure places the scar at the top of the vagina, which may cause hypesthesia during coitus, requiring subsequent scar revision. The author prefers to close the vagina in a transverse direction. If the cuff has been adequately supported, the transverse closure is positioned toward the anterior vagina wall, leaving more depth to the posterior vaginal wall for accommodation with coitus.

Some investigators have recommended that the vaginal cuff be left open or a drain placed within the vaginal (closure) incision to reduce the morbidity of vaginal cuff cellulitis or abscess formation. With the widespread use of prophylactic antibiotics, there is no longer any need for those techniques. In addition, leaving the cuff open may lead to an increased incidence of enterocele formation and vaginal vault prolapse.

The decision to place packing into the vagina postoperatively is a religious one. A vaginal pack need not be used after vaginal hysterectomy unless concomitant pelvic reconstructive surgery is performed. Complete hemostasis should be achieved after vaginal hysterectomy. Significant postoperative bleeding can rarely occur from a vascular pedicle. If that does occur, it is important to become aware of this problem as soon as possible; vaginal packing will only delay this diagnosis and not prevent the problem. It is important to be aware of postoperative bleeding sooner rather than later while the patient is still hemodynamically stable, so a pelvic arteriogram may be performed early in the course of such bleeding. The arteriogram may demonstrate the bleeding site and allow arterial occlusion, thus preventing the need for laparotomy.

For some, it is not a routine practice to insert an indwelling transurethral catheter following the removal of a normal-size uterus. Removal of enlarged uterus may cause occasional transient injury to the bladder and transient postoperative voiding problems; therefore, in such patients, bladder drainage is usually suggested, at least overnight.

For 30 years, I have recommended routine cystoscopy following vaginal hysterectomy. Before cystoscopy, 5 cc of indigo carmine is administered intravenously by the anesthesiologist. The strong efflux of blue dye through each ureteral orifice following vaginal hysterectomy. Before cystoscopy, 5 cc of indigo carmine is administered intravenously by the anesthesiologist. The strong efflux of blue dye through each ureteral orifice following vaginal hysterectomy. Before cystoscopy, 5 cc of indigo carmine is administered intravenously by the anesthesiologist. The strong efflux of blue dye through each ureteral orifice following vaginal hysterectomy. Before cystoscopy, 5 cc of indigo carmine is administered intravenously by the anesthesiologist.
Randomized controlled trials have demonstrated that women treated by vaginal hysterectomy experience lower morbidity, less pain, more rapid recovery, and a more rapid return to normal activities compared with abdominal or laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy. They also consume fewer health care dollars and resources.

Using guidelines to determine the route of hysterectomy adopted by the National Guideline Clearinghouse, it is feasible to perform 90% of hysterectomies for benign disease indications via the vaginal route.

Following the National Guideline Clearinghouse guidelines for selecting the route of hysterectomy, even for a resident training environment, has been shown to decrease the number of abdominal hysterectomies.

To minimize bladder and rectal injuries, the anterior and following the National Guideline Clearinghouse guidelines for selecting the route of hysterectomy, even for a resident training environment, has been shown to decrease the number of abdominal hysterectomies.

The risk of ureteral injury can be minimized by retracting the only vascular pedicle above the uterine vessels contains the round ligament, utero-ovarian ligament, and fallopian tube. These structures can generally be clamped in a single pedicle.

Transvaginal removal of the ovaries at the time of vaginal hysterectomy should be technologically feasible in more than 90% of patients.

Following vaginal hysterectomy, the presence of pre-existing pelvic support defects should be carefully evaluated and repaired if present. The vaginal vault should always be resuspended to the uterosacral ligaments.

Bibliography


CHAPTER 32C ■ LAPAROSCOPIC HYSTERECTOMY

FRED M. HOWARD

DEFINITIONS

Laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy (LAVH)—Vaginal hysterectomy that is assisted by laparoscopy; the laparoscopic procedures may include adnexectomy and the superior portions of the hysterectomy, but not ligation of the uterine vessels. Laparoscopic subtotal hysterectomy (LSH)—Hysterectomy that is performed completely by laparoscopy; however, the uterine corpus is amputated from the cervix at the level of the isthmus, and the cervical stump will remain in situ. Total laparoscopic hysterectomy (TLH)—Abdominal hysterectomy that is performed completely by laparoscopy with no vaginal component. The vaginal cuff is closed via the laparoscope. Vaginally assisted laparoscopic hysterectomy (VALH)—Hysterectomy that is performed mostly laparoscopically, including ligation of the uterine vessels. The vaginal portion consists of only the vaginal incision and repair.

There are three major subdivisions of total hysterectomies that involve the use of laparoscopy: laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy (LAVH), vaginally assisted laparoscopic hysterectomy (VALH), and total laparoscopic hysterectomy (TLH). LAVH is a vaginal hysterectomy that is assisted by laparoscopy; the laparoscopic procedures may include adnexectomy and the superior portions of the hysterectomy, but not ligation of the uterine vessels (Fig. 32C.1). Indications for LAVH are known or suspected diseases that preclude a vaginal hysterectomy without assistance laparoscopically; i.e., laparoscopy is used to convert an abdominal hysterectomy into a vaginal hysterectomy. An example might be a patient with extensive peritoneal endometriosis that is not amenable to excision vaginally. In such a case, laparoscopy might be used to excise all of the extrauterine endometriosis, and then a vaginal hysterectomy would be performed. VALH is a hysterectomy that is performed mostly laparoscopically, including ligation of the uterine vessels, and the vaginal portion consists of only the vaginal incision and repair. For research purposes, laparoscopic hysterectomies can be more specifically classified (Table 32C.1), but these classifications have minimal usefulness in clinical practice.

HISTORY

Operative laparoscopy was introduced to gynecological practice by Rusul Palmer, from France, in the late 1930s and early 1960s. Palmer described the use of laparoscopy for adhesiolysis, cyst aspiration, ovarian biopsies, electrocautery of endometriosis, and tubal sterilization. Patrick Steptoe, from England, and Hans Frangenheim, from Germany, both of whom studied with Palmer, helped to widely popularize operative laparoscopy in Europe. Melvin Cohen is credited with introducing operative laparoscopy to the United States in 1966, after he returned from visits with Palmer and Steptoe. Initially in the United States, operative laparoscopy consisted primarily of tubal sterilization; its applications grew rapidly to treatment of adenexal disease, ectopic pregnancy, adhesive disease, and endometriosis. Reich and associates published the first case of LAH in 1969, performing it for the treatment of a patient with endometriosis and leiomyomata. Since that original description, laparoscopy has increased remarkably as a surgical approach to hysterectomy worldwide. From 1990 to 1997, the proportion of hysterectomies performed laparoscopically in the United States increased by 30-fold, from 0.3 to 9.9% (Table 32C.2). Unfortunately, this increase appeared to be the result of laparoscopic assistance of vaginal hysterectomies rather than conversion of abdominal hysterectomies to laparoscopic or vaginal hysterectomies.

INDICATIONS

The indications for hysterectomy already have been discussed in this chapter. The choice of surgical approach—vaginal, laparoscopic, or abdominal—is determined by the technical feasibility of the various procedures.
FIGURE 32C.1. Illustration of laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy (LAVH). With a LAVH, all or none of the superior portion of the hysterectomy, down to but not including ligation of the uterine vessels, may be performed laparoscopically, as illustrated by the darkly shaded portions of the diagram. The colpotomy and ligation of the uterine vessels are performed transvaginally with a LAVH, as illustrated by the lightly shaded portions of the diagram.

FIGURE 32C.2. Illustration of vaginally assisted laparoscopic hysterectomy (VALH). With a VALH, the superior portion of the hysterectomy down to ligation of the uterine vessels is performed laparoscopically, as illustrated by the darkly shaded portion of the diagram. The colpotomy is performed transvaginally with a VALH, as illustrated by the lightly shaded portion of the diagram.

FIGURE 32C.3. Illustration of total laparoscopic hysterectomy (TLH). With a TLH, the hysterectomy is performed completely laparoscopically, as illustrated by the darkly shaded portion of the diagram. None of the surgery is performed transvaginally with a TLH.

FIGURE 32C.4. Illustration of laparoscopic supracervical hysterectomy (LSH). With an LSH, the hysterectomy is performed completely laparoscopically down to the level of the internal cervical os, as illustrated by the darkly shaded portion of the diagram. The cervix is not removed, and none of the surgery is performed transvaginally with an LSH.
32C.3. Operative times averaged 30 minutes longer for LAVH, indicative of vaginal hysterectomy. The groups were similar in their ability to perform LAVH in most women who had concomitant hysterectomy (TAH). LAVH was successfully performed in 31 of 34 patients, with the LAVH group (26 of 34; \( p = .018 \)). Postoperative recovery was significantly faster with LAVH, with shorter hospital stays (2.1 versus 4.1) and fewer convalescent days (28 versus 38).

Another multicenter study from Italy of LAVH compared with TAH enrolled 116 women who were not candidates for total vaginal hysterectomy (TVH). In this trial, there was no difference in operative time between LAVH and TAH, and none of the LAVH cases required conversion to laparotomy (Ta

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Laparoscopic procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Diagnostic laparoscopy only; no laparoscopic procedure before vaginal hysterectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Laparoscopic adhesiolysis or excision of endometriosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>One or both adnexa freed laparoscopically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Bladder dissected from uterus laparoscopically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Uterine arteries transected laparoscopically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Anterior or posterior colpocleisis or entire uterus freed laparoscopically</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Another multi-institutional study of VALH-bilateral salpingo-ophorectomy (BSO) versus TAH-BSO reported by Raju and Auld showed similar results. This was a randomized trial involving 80 women, but obese women and women with uteri greater than 14 weeks' gestational size were excluded from this study. Two (5%) of the LAVH-BSO patients were converted to laparotomy because of bleeding. Although operative time was significantly longer with LAVH-BSO, hospital stay and recovery time were significantly reduced with LAVH-BSO (Table 32C.5).
### Table 32C.3

OUTCOMES OF A U.S. MULTICENTER RANDOMIZED CLINICAL TRIAL COMPARING TOTAL ABDOMINAL HYSTERECTOMY (TAH) AND LAPAROSCOPICALLY ASSISTED VAGINAL HYSTERECTOMY (LA VH)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>TAH (N = 31)</th>
<th>LA VH</th>
<th>P value significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operative time (min)</td>
<td>146.0 ± 69.9 (52–325)</td>
<td>179.8 ± 38.4 (80–470)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated blood loss (mL)</td>
<td>660.5 ± 610 (100–3,000)</td>
<td>568 ± 394 (50–1,600)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine weight (g)</td>
<td>383.9 ± 227.5 (70–934)</td>
<td>336.8 ± 276.0 (54–1,500)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative hematocrit</td>
<td>29.3 ± 4.3 (21.3–36.8)</td>
<td>29.3 ± 4.8 (19.7–37.5)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital days</td>
<td>4.1 ± 1.6 (2–9)</td>
<td>2.1 ± 1.3 (1–6)</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convalescent days</td>
<td>38.0 ± 10.8 (15–133)</td>
<td>28.0 ± 13.5 (9–70)</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital charges (U.S. dollars)</td>
<td>6,974 ± 2,843 (3,183–16,086)</td>
<td>8,161 ± 3,600 (3,600–23,591)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intramuscular opioids day of surgery</td>
<td>30 (97%)</td>
<td>26 (76%)</td>
<td>0.018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intraoperative complications</td>
<td>2 (6%)</td>
<td>3 (9%)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative complications</td>
<td>8 (26%)</td>
<td>2 (6%)</td>
<td>0.039</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any complication</td>
<td>10 (32%)</td>
<td>5 (15%)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NS, not significant.


### Table 32C.4

OUTCOMES OF AN ITALIAN MULTICENTER RANDOMIZED CLINICAL TRIAL COMPARING TOTAL ABDOMINAL HYSTERECTOMY (TAH) AND LAPAROSCOPICALLY ASSISTED VAGINAL HYSTERECTOMY (LA VH)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>TAH (N = 58)</th>
<th>LA VH</th>
<th>P value significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operative time (min)</td>
<td>91.8 ± 26.4</td>
<td>91.1 ± 30.2</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine weight (g)</td>
<td>352.3 ± 163.9</td>
<td>326.4 ± 125.8</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated blood loss (mL)</td>
<td>353.9 ± 245.6</td>
<td>264.7 ± 194.4</td>
<td>&lt;0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decrease of hemoglobin g/100 (mL)</td>
<td>1.55 ± 1.07</td>
<td>1.09 ± 0.97</td>
<td>&lt;0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative hospital days</td>
<td>5.9 ± 2.3</td>
<td>4.0 ± 1.2</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative pain level, day 1</td>
<td>6.3 ± 1.6</td>
<td>5.2 ± 2.6</td>
<td>&lt;0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative pain level, day 2</td>
<td>4.4 ± 1.9</td>
<td>2.3 ± 2.3</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative pain level, day 3</td>
<td>2.8 ± 2.1</td>
<td>1.3 ± 1.6</td>
<td>&lt;0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intramuscular opioids day of surgery</td>
<td>30 (97%)</td>
<td>26 (76%)</td>
<td>0.018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intraoperative complications</td>
<td>2 (6%)</td>
<td>3 (9%)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative complications</td>
<td>8 (26%)</td>
<td>2 (6%)</td>
<td>0.039</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any complication</td>
<td>10 (32%)</td>
<td>5 (15%)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NS, not significant.

Laparoscopic Hysterectomy 767

### TABLE 32C.5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>TAH-BSO (N = 40)</th>
<th>LA VH BSO (N = 40)</th>
<th>P value</th>
<th>significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operative time (min)</td>
<td>57 (25–151)</td>
<td>100 (61–180)</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated blood loss (mL)</td>
<td>220 (50–200)</td>
<td>260 (70–700)</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative decrease in hemoglobin (g/L)</td>
<td>1.54 (0.5–3.2)</td>
<td>1.82 (0.1–4.8)</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital days</td>
<td>6 (3–13)</td>
<td>3.5 (1–6)</td>
<td>&lt;0.0001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of postoperative analgesia</td>
<td>13.3 (2–38)</td>
<td>6.6 (0–23)</td>
<td>&lt;0.0001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return to work (days)</td>
<td>21 (7–35)</td>
<td>42 (21–67)</td>
<td>&lt;0.0001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any complication</td>
<td>1 (2.5%)</td>
<td>0 (15%)</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NS, not significant.


Another clinical trial of VALH versus TAH was published by Falcone and colleagues and randomized 48 patients (Table 32C.8). One patient (4%) in this study required conversion from VALH to laparotomy because of bleeding. There was one intraoperative complication in the VALH group: a small bowel laceration that did not require a laparotomy for repair. There were no intraoperative complications in the TAH group. Again, results were similar to the previously reviewed trials, with no significant differences in blood loss (based on hematocrit), transfusion rates, or postoperative complications. Hospital stays were shorter and postoperative pain was decreased with VALH. Patients who had VALH returned to work sooner than patients who had TAH.

### Total Laparoscopic Hysterectomy versus Total Abdominal Hysterectomy

Perino and associates published a randomized trial of TLH versus TAH in 102 women (Table 32C.9). Uterine size was...
### TABLE 32C.7
OUTCOMES OF A SINGLE CENTER RANDOMIZED CLINICAL TRIAL COMPARING TOTAL ABDOMINAL HYSTERECTOMY (TAH), VAGINALLY ASSISTED LAPAROSCOPIC HYSTERECTOMY (VALH), AND TOTAL VAGINAL HYSTERECTOMY (TVH) IN WOMEN WITH UTERI WEIGHING MORE THAN 450 GRAMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>TAH (N = 30)</th>
<th>VALH (N = 30)</th>
<th>TVH (N = 30)</th>
<th>P value significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operative time (min)</td>
<td>98 ± 16 (85–150)</td>
<td>109 ± 22 (85–175)</td>
<td>93 ± 15 (40–120)</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated blood loss</td>
<td>293 ± 182 (50–750)</td>
<td>343 ± 218 (50–950)</td>
<td>215 ± 134 (50–560)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital stay</td>
<td>5.0 (4–8)</td>
<td>4.7 (4–7)</td>
<td>4.7 (3–7)</td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return to work</td>
<td>41 ± 10 (26–65)</td>
<td>30 ± 16 (17–42)</td>
<td>29 ± 11 (17–50)</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any complication</td>
<td>9 (30%)</td>
<td>6 (20%)</td>
<td>5 (17%)</td>
<td>&lt;0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Febrile morbidity/infection</td>
<td>8 (27%)</td>
<td>1 (3%)</td>
<td>4 (13%)</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfusion</td>
<td>1 (3%)</td>
<td>5 (17%)</td>
<td>1 (3%)</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### TABLE 32C.8
OUTCOMES OF A SINGLE CENTER RANDOMIZED CLINICAL TRIAL COMPARING TOTAL ABDOMINAL HYSTERECTOMY (TAH) AND VAGINALLY ASSISTED LAPAROSCOPIC HYSTERECTOMY (VALH)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>TAH (N = 21)</th>
<th>VALH (N = 23)</th>
<th>P value significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Surgery time (min)</td>
<td>130 (97–155)</td>
<td>180 (139–225)</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated blood loss</td>
<td>230 (130–100)</td>
<td>430 (250–700)</td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative hematocrit</td>
<td>31.2 ± 3.2 (21–36)</td>
<td>29.2 ± 4.5 (21–36)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients transfused</td>
<td>4 (17%)</td>
<td>3 (14%)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine weight (g)</td>
<td>309 (178–616)</td>
<td>370 (195–561)</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any postoperative complication</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of hospital stay (days)</td>
<td>2.5 (1.3–2.5)</td>
<td>1.5 (1.0–2.3)</td>
<td>0.038</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of use of patient controlled analgesia (hours)</td>
<td>36.7 (26.2–45.0)</td>
<td>22.1 (13.9–23.5)</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NS, not significant.

Laparoscopic Hysterectomy

The major arguments for subtotal hysterectomy are decreased risk of urinary tract injuries and decreased risk of infection. Randomized trials have been published comparing abdominal subtotal and total hysterectomies, but they provide no evidence of compelling advantages of one procedure over the other. These trials have found no advantage of subtotal hysterectomy on bladder function, vaginal vault prolapse, or sexual satisfaction.

Data from a Danish randomized trial of abdominal subtotal versus total hysterectomies showed a significantly lower proportion of women were incontinent 1 year after total abdominal hysterectomy than after subtotal abdominal hysterectomy (STAH) (9% vs. 18%, respectively; 21% were incontinent preoperatively in each group). At 1 year, there were no statistically significant differences in quality of life, constipation, prolapse of the vaginal or cervical stump, satisfaction with sexual life, or pelvic pain. Vaginal bleeding was present in none of the TAH patients, but was present in 20% of the STAH patients. Operative time was shorter by about 15 minutes with STAH, and median blood loss was 150 mL less. Perioperative and postoperative complications were not different.

A U.S. randomized trial of TAH versus STAH showed no statistically significant differences in procedure time, estimated blood loss, febrile morbidity, urinary tract infections, urinary tract injuries, blood transfusions, return of bladder function, or length of hospital stay. Two-year outcomes for relief of pelvic pain, back pain, pelvic or bladder pressure, prolapse, urinary urgency, incomplete urinary emptying, urinary stress incontinence, or urinary urge incontinence were not different between the two groups. Cyclic bleeding was reported in only 7% of the STAH patients in this study.

A British randomized trial showed that TAH was associated with a statistically significantly longer duration of surgery (12 minutes longer), greater blood loss (100 mL more), more febrile morbidity (19% vs. 6%), and a longer hospital stay.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TLH (N = 51)</th>
<th>TAH (N = 51)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operative time (min)</td>
<td>104 ± 27</td>
<td>88 ± 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine weight (g)</td>
<td>368 ± 125</td>
<td>389 ± 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated blood loss (mL)</td>
<td>140 ± 42</td>
<td>406 ± 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decrease of hemoglobin (g/100 mL)</td>
<td>0.4 ± 0.2</td>
<td>1.6 ± 0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative stay (days)</td>
<td>2.4 ± 0.3</td>
<td>6.2 ± 1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain level, day 1</td>
<td>4.1 ± 1.2</td>
<td>6.9 ± 1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain level, day 2</td>
<td>2.3 ± 1.6</td>
<td>5.4 ± 1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain level, day 3</td>
<td>1.0 ± 0.7</td>
<td>3.1 ± 0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complications</td>
<td>1 ± 0.6</td>
<td>6 ± 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NS, not significant.
Surgery for Benign Gynecologic Conditions

### TABLE 32C.10

OUTCOMES OF A RANDOMIZED CLINICAL TRIAL COMPARING TOTAL ABDOMINAL HYSTERECTOMY (TAH) AND TOTAL LAPAROSCOPIC HYSTERECTOMY (TLH) FOR PATIENTS WITH UTERI GREATER THAN 14 WEEKS’ GESTATIONAL SIZE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>TAH (N = 62)</th>
<th>LA VH/LTH (N = 60)</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operative time (min)</td>
<td>89 ± 29</td>
<td>95 ± 32</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine weight (g)</td>
<td>429 ± 125</td>
<td>412 ± 175</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated blood loss (mL)</td>
<td>377 ± 225</td>
<td>312 ± 182</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decrease of hemoglobin (g/100 mL)</td>
<td>2.3 ± 1.8</td>
<td>1.8 ± 1.1</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of transfusions</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative febrile morbidity</td>
<td>18 (29%)</td>
<td>8 (13%)</td>
<td>&lt;0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital stay (hours)</td>
<td>122 ± 42</td>
<td>76 ± 11</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wound infections</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Days of convalescence</td>
<td>36 ± 12</td>
<td>22 ± 11</td>
<td>&lt;0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complications</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NS, not significant.


(1 day longer) than was STAH. At 12 months after subtotal hysterectomy, 7% of the women had cyclical vaginal bleeding in this study. There were no differences in bladder function, bowel function, or sexual function between the two groups.

There are no randomized trials, only observational studies, comparing LSH to TLH or LAVH. Results of four such studies are summarized in Table 32C.11. On average, LSH is slightly faster, with slightly less blood loss and shorter hospital stays than LAVH or TLH.

### SURGICAL TECHNIQUE

#### Laparoscopically Assisted Vaginal Hysterectomy

After general anesthesia is induced, the patient is placed in low lithotomy position using Allen-type stirrups. Modern stirrups that allow the legs to be repositioned to full dorsal lithotomy position without the removal of sterile drapes greatly facilitate LAVH. An examination under anesthesia is done with particular attention to evaluation of the pelvic and vaginal dimensions to confirm that the vaginal part of the procedure can be readily performed. Generally the bituberous diameter should be 9 cm or more, the pubic arch 90 degrees or more, and the vaginal apex should be greater than two fingerbreadths (about 4 cm). Although a mobile uterus that descends with traction facilitates the procedure, the vaginal portion of an LAVH can be done as long as the uterine vessels are accessible to clamping and ligature vaginally.

I prefer to position the patient’s arms at her side, padding them as necessary and being sure not to hyperextend the elbows or externally rotate the arms. Many anesthesiologists oppose this placement because it makes the intravenous site less easily accessible. If the arms are placed on arm boards, they must be positioned to allow adequate surgical access without hyperextension of the shoulders, to avoid axillary injury. Shoulder braces should generally be avoided; if they are used, adequate padding is important to avoid injury. It is wise for the surgeon to personally supervise positioning of the patient.

After the patient is positioned, the abdomen, perineum, and vagina are prepared and draped. A Foley catheter should be placed. I often prefer a three-way catheter so that sterile infant formula can be instilled into the bladder to aid bladder dissection if it is done laparoscopically. A tenaculum is placed on the cervix, and an intrauterine manipulating device is inserted so that the uterus can be manipulated during the laparoscopy. As an alternative, a laparoscopic tenaculum can be used to manipulate the uterus rather than intrauterine manipulator.

### TABLE 32C.11

COMPARISONS OF LAPAROSCOPIC SUBTOTAL HYSTERECTOMIES (LSH) WITH LAPAROSCOPICALLY ASSISTED VAGINAL (LAVH) OR TOTAL LAPAROSCOPIC HYSTERECTOMIES (TLH) FROM FOUR DIFFERENT OBSERVATIONAL STUDIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>OR Time</th>
<th>OR Time</th>
<th>EBL</th>
<th>EBL</th>
<th>Hospital Stay</th>
<th>Hospital Stay</th>
<th>Cervical Bleeding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>El-Mowafi et al.</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>149</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>1–2 d</td>
<td>1–2 d</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyons</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>37 h</td>
<td>18 h</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richards and Simpkins</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>179</td>
<td>46 h</td>
<td>34 h</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lalonde and Daniell</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>41 h</td>
<td>26 h</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OR, operating room; EBL, estimated blood loss.
Usually an umbilical incision is made to allow insertion of a Veress needle or direct insertion of a laparoscopic trocar. If the patient has had a prior laparotomy, however, either a left upper quadrant insertion or an open laparoscopic umbilical insertion is preferred. The abdomen is inflated and distended with carbon dioxide, and the laparoscope is introduced (see Chapter 17). The pelvis should be thoroughly inspected, and the placement of operative trocars should be dictated by the patient's anatomy and pathology. If there is no pathology that requires laparoscopic surgery, no other trocars are needed, and a vaginal hysterectomy can be performed. If laparoscopic surgery is to be done, then two lateral trocars are inserted. Although traditionally these lateral trocars are placed in the lower quadrants, often a more superior placement allows better adnexal and vascular pedicle access. It is crucial that the operative trocars be placed under direct visualization and lateral to the inferior epigastric vessels. The inferior epigastric vessels can almost always be identified and avoided (Fig. 32C.5). If there is extensive pelvic pathology that will require extensive laparoscopic surgery, I prefer to place a fourth trocar ≥6 cm superior to the lower lateral cannula on the primary surgeon’s side of the patient (Fig. 32C.6). This allows the primary surgeon to operate with both hands while the assistant can retract with a third instrument (the camera used the fourth port). This greatly facilitates difficult procedures. Although many laparoscopic surgeons add the fourth port suprapubically in the midline, I find this site is not as useful for extensive procedures.

After all extrauterine and extraovarian pathology has been surgically addressed, attention is turned to the hysterectomy. The ligaments and vessels of the pelvis can be coagulated and cut in a number of ways. Although some surgeons use clampless suturing to ligate the ligaments and vessels, most find this slow and cumbersome. The majority of laparoscopic gynecologic surgeons use one of the devices specifically designed for laparoscopic surgery. Bipolar forceps to coagulate and scissors to cut vascular pedicles are inexpensive and readily available. Newer technologies using bipolar electrical energy with feedback control to consistently seal vessels represent an improvement over traditional bipolar forceps. Most of these devices have a built-in cutting blade that speeds the procedure. Trade name examples are Valleylab Ligasure Sealer/Cutter™ and Gyrus PK Cutting Forceps™, both of which are available as 5-mm instruments. Another available technology uses ultrasonic energy to seal and cut tissue and vessels. An example of this type device is the Ethicon Harmonic Scalpel™. Mechanical energy may also be used with stapler-cutter devices. Examples are Tyco Endo-GIA™ and Ethicon Endopath ETS™. Clips may also be used. It is important with all of these techniques that tension on vascular pedicles be minimized during coagulation to allow proper vessel sealing.

Usually an LAVH starts the same way as a TAH. The uterus is deviated to one side with the uterine manipulator, and the round ligament on the opposite side is coagulated and cut. The peritoneum of the anterior broad ligament is then dissected and cut in an inferior-medial direction to the midline bladder reflection to start the bladder dissection. If the ovary is to be removed, the peritoneum is also divided cephalad toward the infundibulopelvic ligament. The retroperitoneal space can be opened gently with traction on both sides to allow identification of the ureter either transected before or retroperitoneally. If the ovary is to be removed, then the ureter is identified at the pelvic brim. This is usually easy on the right side, but may be more difficult on the left because of the sigmoid colon. The ovary or fallopian tube is grasped from the contralateral side to expose the infundibulopelvic ligament, and the ovarian artery and vein are ligated and cut. This should be done under full visualization to ensure that the ureter and iliac vessels are far from the surgical site. The coagulation and ligation are then carried anteriorly to join the previously ligated area of the round ligament, again ensuring that the ureter is in direct view. These procedures then are repeated on the opposite side. The bladder plane can then be sharply dissected if desired, or this can be done transvaginally.

If the ovaries are not to be removed, the proximal fallopian tubes are coagulated and cut several centimeters from the uterus, followed by transection of the uteroovarian ligaments close to the uterus. Often the uteroovarian ligaments are best coagulated and cut from the contralateral cannula site. At this point, the laparoscopic procedure is completed, and the remainder of the operation is done vaginally, exactly as one would perform a standard vaginal hysterectomy. Because the infundibulopelvic ligaments and round ligaments have already been divided via the laparoscope, once the uterine vessels have been ligated from below, there is only minimal fatty, relatively avascular, parametrical tissue to be divided...
before the uterus can be removed. Once the vaginal hysterectomy has been completed and the vagina closed, the laparoscope can be used to check the pelvis for hemostasis before removing the laparoscopic cannulas and closing the laparoscopic incisions.

**Vaginally Assisted Laparoscopic Hysterectomy**

With VALH, the uterine vessels are coagulated and cut laparoscopically. After completion of the laparoscopic procedures described for LAVH, the bladder is adequately mobilized to allow exposure of the uterine artery and venous return. I find that filling the bladder with 100 to 200 mL of infant formula aids the accurate visualization and mobilization of the bladder. Then the uterine vessels are skeletonized by opening the anterior and posterior leaflets of the broad ligament. Once this is done, the vessels can be coagulated and cut close to the uterus and well away from the ureters. Moving the uterus laterally and elevating it slightly also aids in protecting the ureters. I find that staplers tend to pull tissue medially at this level, so I prefer not to use them for the uterine vessels.

The legs are then elevated to full dorsal lithotomy, and the colpotomy is performed transvaginally, followed by ligation and cutting the uterosacral ligaments. This allows removal of the uterus, followed by closure of the vagina and the laparoscopic incisions.

**Total Laparoscopic Hysterectomy**

To perform a TLH, the surgeon continues laparoscopically after the completion of the transabdominal location of the bladder by performing anterior and posterior colpotomies. I prefer performing the anterior colpotomy first because subsequent antversion of the uterus to perform the posterior colpotomy occludes the anterior incision and helps maintain a pneumoperitoneum. The colpotomy incisions can be made with laparoscopic scissors, but most laparoscopic scissors are too delicate to readily cut the thick vaginal tissue. Also, bleeding from the vagina is an issue with this technique. I prefer the use of an ultrasonic device, but electrosurgical incision works well, too. Maintaining hemostasis is important to allow adequate visualization. This is especially important as the colpotomy is completed at the lateral vaginal apices, where the ascending vaginal arteries and veins may lead to significant bleeding.

The colpotomy is greatly aided by a colpotomy device and by a vaginal occluding device to maintain the pneumoperitoneum. I find the KOH Colpotomy Device (KOH Cup, Devices from Endocare Inc., Santa Barbara, Calif.) particularly helpful. This system works well with a RUMI™ Uterine Manipulator. When the KOH Cup is fitted properly, it allows excision of the uterus without detaching the uterosacral ligaments from the upper vagina. Using the device requires some practice. The vaginal balloon is placed onto the shaft of the RUMI manipulator, and then the disposable tip to the RUMI uterine manipulator is attached. I use a sponge forceps to grasp the rim of the KOH cup and push it into the vagina to cover the cervix. A tenaculum is used to grasp the anterior lip of the cervix through the fenestration of the KOH cup, and then the RUMI uterine manipulator is inserted through the cervix to and into the KOH cup. When it is time to make the anterior colpotomy, the grip of the RUMI uterine manipulator is rotated counterclockwise and pushed cephalad. This clearly shows the area of the anterior vagina to be incised. The pneumo-occluder balloon is inflated with 60 to 100 cc of saline just before the colpotomy incision is made. It is important that the bladder has been dissected anteriorly to expose 1 to 2 cm of vagina. The RUMI uterine manipulator is then rotated clockwise to anterior the uterus and expose the posterior rim of the KOH cup and direct the site for the posterior colpotomy. Completion of the colpotomy laterally is guided by the KOH cup by moving the uterine manipulator to expose the right and left vaginal fornices. Once the uterus is detached, it may be pulled into the vagina and left there to maintain the pneumoperitoneum while the vagina is closed with interrupted sutures placed laparoscopically.

An example of another technique for aiding in the colpotomy and maintenance of pneumoperitoneum is the McCartney tube (Tyco Healthcare, Inc., Sydney, Australia), which is a disposable silicone tube with a diameter of 45 mm or 35 mm. The vaginal end of the tube is open and is inserted transvaginally to stretch the cervicovaginal junction and aid in identifying the vaginal fornices. The outer end of the tube is covered by a cap containing 5- and 10-mm valves and maintains the pneumoperitoneum when the colpotomy is made. After the uterus is detached, it can be pulled into the tube while the vaginal apex is closed, or the tube can be removed to allow removal of the uterus. Either the uterus can be left in the vagina or the tube replaced to maintain the pneumoperitoneum while the vagina is closed.

It is possible to perform TLH without such devices. Numerous techniques have been described, but an inexpensive technique consists of removing the uterine manipulator when preparing to do the colpotomy (the tenaculum is left on the cervix). A laparoscopic tenaculum is used to move the uterus and expose the vaginal fornices and allow exposure for the colpotomy. Placing a Deaver retractor into the appropriate area of the vaginal fornix may also identify the sites for the anterior and posterior colpotomies. Either a wet towel or wet laparotomy sponge is placed in the vagina to maintain the pneumoperitoneum while the colpotomy is completed. As previously described, once the uterus is detached, it can be placed in the vagina to maintain the pneumoperitoneum while vaginal apex closure is performed.

**Laparoscopic Subtotal Hysterectomy**

LSH consists of much the same procedure as described for VALH—that is, the uterine arteries are laparoscopically isolated and occluded with a bipolar electricity or ultrasonic vessel sealing device, clips, staples, or sutures. After the uterine vessels are secured, the uterine corpus is amputated from the cervix at the level of the isthmus. Although it may be possible to do this without dissecting the bladder from the lower uterine segment and cervix, realistically, in most cases, some dissection of the bladder is necessary to assure adequate occlusion of the uterine vessels and amputation at the level of the isthmus of the uterus. Many surgeons electrosedicate or excise the epithelium of the cervical canal to decrease the risk of persistent menses postoperatively.

A major advantage of LSH is that when a subtotal abdominal hysterectomy is used, the uterine corpus is amputated from the abdominal cavity. Although this can be done by morcellating the uterus through a posterior colpotomy incision, by extension of the umbilical incision, or using a minimally invasive incision with a hand-assist device, the availability of electromechanical morcellators avoids the need to make additional or larger incisions. Such devices allow relatively rapid removal of the uterine corpus, although large uteri will add significant time to the duration of the procedure.
POSTOPERATIVE CARE

Postoperative care is thoroughly reviewed in Chapter 9. Only aspects specific to laparoscopic hysterectomy will be reviewed in this section.

A diet of the patient’s choice may be started immediately after laparoscopic hysterectomy. This has been shown to be safe and allow for same-day or next-day discharge. This recommendation may need to be amended in cases of extensive enterolysis or other tissue dissection or if procedures are performed in addition to the hysterectomy.

A Foley catheter for bladder drainage may be left overnight for patient comfort or convenience, but this is not essential, and the catheter may be removed immediately postoperatively unless there has been bladder injury or extensive dissection.

Limitations on physical activity after laparoscopic hysterectomy are minimal, and most are common sense. Wound infections are uncommon, but keeping the laparoscopic incisions clean and dry for 10 to 14 days seems important. Protection of the vaginal incision is similar to that recommended with total hysterectomy by any technique. In particular, intercourse is best avoided for at least 6 weeks. Otherwise, many women may return to full physical activity within 2 weeks postoperatively after laparoscopic hysterectomy.

COMPLICATIONS

Complications occur with laparoscopic hysterectomy with a frequency similar to that of other surgical approaches to hysterectomy. The common complications—infection, hemorrhage, and injuries to adjacent organs—are the same types as with abdominal or vaginal hysterectomies. Postoperative incisional complications are less common than with abdominal hysterectomy, but laparoscopic hysterectomies may have complications specifically related to insertion of the trocars. These complications and their management are thoroughly discussed in Chapter 17.

Bibliography


SECTION VI ■ SURGERY FOR OBSTETRICS
Chapter 33 ■ Management of Abortion

Melissa J. Kottke and Mimi Ziemann

Definitions

Abortion—Termination of a pregnancy, whether spontaneous or induced.

Cerclage—A purse-string suture placed around the cervix to treat or prevent premature cervical dilation without labor.

Dilation and curettage—Dilation of the cervix followed by suction or sharp curettage to remove intrauterine contents.

Dilation and evacuation—Termination of pregnancy by wide cervical dilation and evacuation of fetal parts with forceps.

Fetal death—In utero death of fetus after 20 weeks.

Incomplete abortion—Partial expulsion of fetal tissue with open cervical os and products of conception remaining in the uterus.

Induced abortion—Medical or surgical termination of pregnancy.

Manual vacuum aspiration—Uterine evacuation performed with suction generated by a hand-held syringe.

Medical abortion—Use of medications including misoprostol, mifepristone, and methotrexate to terminate a pregnancy.

Spontaneous abortion—Spontaneous expulsion of an embryo or fetus weighing less than 500 g or before 20 weeks’ gestation.

Threatened abortion—Vaginal bleeding early in pregnancy with a closed cervix and a potentially viable fetus.

The management of abortion remains a principal focus of gynecology. Several million spontaneous abortions occur annually, and more than 1 million induced abortions are performed each year in the United States. Induced abortion is one of the most frequently performed operations in gynecology and one of the most thoroughly studied. This chapter summarizes the medical and surgical management of abortion. It reviews the incidence, risk factors, and treatment of spontaneous, illegal, and legal abortion. Readers should keep in mind that abortion technology is rapidly evolving, and new protocols may supplant those described here.

Spontaneous Abortion

Incidence

The World Health Organization (WHO) defines spontaneous abortion as expulsion of an embryo or fetus that weighs 500 g or less. Alternative definitions support a 20-week gestational age limit. The true incidence of spontaneous abortion is uncertain because of the difficulty in recognizing early conceptions and losses. When Edmonds and colleagues monitored urine β-human chorionic gonadotropin (β-hCG) in a cohort of volunteers attempting to conceive, 62% of conceptuses died before 12 weeks’ gestation. Most (92%) of these losses occurred before the woman was aware of the pregnancy. A similar study by Wilcox and associates monitored daily urinary β-hCG. They found that 31% of pregnancies resulted in spontaneous abortion after implantation. Approximately 70% of these—therefore, 22% of all losses—were not yet clinically identified. Wang and colleagues published further data in 2003; 8% of all conceptions in their study were recognized pregnancies followed by spontaneous loss. Twenty-six percent of all conceptions in that study were losses before knowledge of the pregnancy.

Overall, reported spontaneous abortion rates in recognized pregnancies are 10% to 20%. The vast majority—approximately 80%—of spontaneous abortions occur before 12 weeks’ gestation. The average gestational age for spontaneous abortion of a recognized pregnancy is 9 weeks. However, consideration must be given to the large numbers of losses before detection of pregnancy. From a biological perspective, early pregnancy loss is a common outcome in human reproduction.

Risk Factors

Spontaneous abortion has several important risk factors. Demographic details provide some important nonmodifiable risk factors. The risk increases with advancing maternal age, particularly for women older than 35 years. In a large study published by Nybo Anderson and colleagues, the rates of miscarriage increased with maternal age. Women aged 20 to 30 years, 35 years, 40 years, and 45 years saw a 9% to 17%, 20%, 40%, and 80% miscarriage rate, respectively. Previous studies reported an increase from 12% at ages less than 20 to 24% at age 40. Likewise, the risk increases with advancing paternal age. Race also plays a role. At each stage of pregnancy, women of minority races in the United States have higher rates than do white women. Independent of the effect of age, the risk of spontaneous abortion changes with previous pregnancy history. Increasing rates of miscarriage are seen with increasing gravidity in some studies. In addition, a history of one or more spontaneous abortions increases the risk of recurrence. This effect is seen at all gestational ages. The risk of spontaneous abortion has been reported to increase with each documented miscarriage in one study, increasing from 20% after one miscarriage to 43% after three or more. Alternatively, the risk for spontaneous abortion...
is lower for a woman who has never had pregnancy or whose last pregnancy was successful. The length of the interval between pregnancies appears to have little impact.

Maternal substance use has been evaluated as a possible risk factor for spontaneous abortion. Smoking may increase the risk of spontaneous abortion. Because smoking is not teratogenic, its effect on spontaneous abortion rates may be via abortion of normal conceptuses. This may be secondary to a vasoconstrictive effect of smoking. In one study, the risk of miscarriage doubled; in other studies, the increase in risk was slight. Recent studies have not confirmed this increased risk. Alcohol consumption is associated with spontaneous abortion as a result of teratogenicity. The effect of alcohol on miscarriage rate appear to be greatest for those whose alcohol consumption is greater. Additionally, the risk appears to be greater with increased intake in the earlier gestational ages. Alcohol consumption as a teratogen has a dose-dependent effect and can result in mental retardation, microcephaly, intrauterine growth retardation, renal, and cardiac defects. Caffeine intake has been evaluated in many studies regarding spontaneous abortion. Several studies have supported an increased risk for spontaneous abortion in women who drank greater than 500 mg—or the equivalence of 5 cups—of coffee per day. However, a recent systematic review by Sognirello and McLachlan indicates that there is insufficient evidence supporting a causal relationship.

Maternal health history and certain diagnoses may lead to increased risk for spontaneous abortion. Women with poorly controlled diabetes have higher levels of pregnancy loss as well as congenital anomalies. There is ongoing research about the effects of thyroid dysfunction on miscarriage. Women with a known hypercoagulable state, including antiphospholipid antibody syndrome, are at increased risk for spontaneous abortion as well as its recurrence.

The presence of congenital anomalies can lead to spontaneous abortion as well. Uterine synechiae, or Asherman syndrome, may permit insufficient surface area to support a pregnancy and lead to miscarriage. Uterine septae and abnormalities of müllerian fusion can also result in spontaneous abortion if the pregnancy implants on the septum and outgrows its blood supply. Although no effect is seen in the first trimester, the incidence of abortion after 13 weeks’ gestation may be 20% to 4.5%. This does not hold true, however, for women older than age 35 or those with a history of recurrent pregnancy loss. This will be examined in detail later in this chapter.

Fever in early pregnancy may lead to spontaneous abortion. In one study, rates of spontaneous abortion of euploid conceptuses increased twofold to threefold if fever had preceded the abortion. Alternatively, a second study found no association between febrile episodes and miscarriage. Infection with Chlamydia trachomatis, mycoplasmas, or other organisms does not appear to influence spontaneous abortion.

### Biologic Role

Spontaneous abortion serves primarily as a quality-control mechanism. The frequency of chromosomal abnormalities in aborted conceptuses is high, ranging from 30% to 61%. In decreasing order of frequency, the most common abnormalities are trisomy, sex chromosome monosomy, and triploidy. To earlier the gestation at gestation at which abortion, the higher is the frequency of chromosomal anomaly. Almost all anomalies, including some that would not appear to handicap survival (such as cleft lip), increase the likelihood of spontaneous abortion.
of tissue and demonstration of a potentially viable fetus, has been watchful waiting. Reliably predicting fetal outcomes in such situations is not yet possible, and serial examinations may be necessary to determine viability of a pregnancy that is not actively being passed.

Distinguishing between incomplete (characterized by progressive cervical dilation without complete expulsion of products of conception) or complete abortion is often difficult. The woman’s description of tissue may not be helpful, and not all women are aware that they should save expelled tissue for the physician’s inspection. Likewise, dilation of the cervix, size of the uterus, and presence or absence of bleeding may not indicate whether the abortion is complete or incomplete. Ultrasonography, however, often provides information about the completeness of abortion.

Medical or Surgical Intervention

For women with incomplete abortion and for those with threatened abortion in whom the pregnancy has been judged nonviable, several options are available. Patient preferences should generally determine the management as long as there is hemodynamic stability and absence of infection. One option is to await spontaneous expulsion of the pregnancy. A randomized, controlled trial by Nielsen and Håhlin compared expectant versus surgical management of spontaneous abortion. Most women randomized to expectant management (79%) had completed abortions within 3 days; other outcomes were similar, except for more infections in the group having curettage. An observational study by Lause et al. in 2002 followed nearly 1,100 women with spontaneous abortions expectantly for 4 weeks and found spontaneous resolution in 81%. However, they noted a significantly longer time, approximately 2 weeks, between diagnosis and passage of the pregnancy. They also categorized patients by sonographic criteria, finding that 91% of incomplete abortions resolved spontaneously compared with 66% of anembryonic pregnancies. If choosing expectant management, a woman deserves counseling that several days or weeks may pass before resolution and that medical or surgical intervention may ultimately be necessary. Additionally, women with a diagnosis of anembryonic pregnancy may be counseled that their success rates may be lower with expectant management.

Another option is to expedite the expulsion and still avoid surgery by giving oral or vaginal misoprostol. A randomized controlled trial by Chung et al. found that this medical management was safer than surgical evacuation, although half of those receiving misoprostol subsequently required suction curettage. Several studies have been performed looking at various doses and routes of administration of misoprostol. When misoprostol (600–800 μg) was given vaginally and a 300-μg dose; later abortions mandate an 84% completion rate by day 8 when 800 μg of misoprostol was given vaginally and repeated at 48 hours if passage had not yet occurred. This study reported similar complication rates between the two groups. They also found that 83% of the woman would recommend the medical treatment to others.

However, many women faced with the disappointing diagnosis of a failed pregnancy prefer prompt surgical evacuation. If suction curettage is elected, two other decisions must be made: where the curettage is to occur and by what technique. The choice between outpatient curettage in the physician’s office and curettage in an emergency room may depend on the time of day and equipment available. For uncomplicated cases, curettage in an operating room adds to the costs and inconvenience yet offers no medical benefits over outpatient curettage. The choice of evacuation technique depends on the state of the cervix, gestational age, and availability of equipment. Suction curettage is a fast and safe procedure in the first trimester. Practitioners may choose between an electric suction device attached to a rigid or flexible curette or a flexible Karman cannula with syringe as a source of suction. The Karman cannula is portable, inexpensive, and convenient for outpatient use. Both methods are discussed in further detail later in this chapter.

According to a recent metaanalysis, there is insufficient evidence to prescribe one of the above management plans in any given clinical situation. Surgical management is more likely to result in completion than medical management, and medical management is more likely to result in completion than expectant management, but the inverse is true of costs incurred. Patient satisfaction can be seen with any of these management plans. Certainly in the face of severe anemia, hemodynamic instability, or infection, surgical evacuation should be performed. Without these, patient preference should be strongly considered.

Complications and Considerations

Attentive gynecologic care has reduced the risk of complications. Nevertheless, women continue to die from spontaneous abortions. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention identified 62 maternal deaths from spontaneous abortion in the United States between 1983 and 1991. This represented a case-fatality rate of 0.7 deaths per 100,000 spontaneous abortions. In 2002, there were two maternal deaths that were due to spontaneous abortion. Infection, hemorrhage, and embolism were the leading causes of death. The mortality risk increased with gestational age; women who were older and of minority races also were at increased risk of death.

Spontaneous abortion is a potentially sensitizing event for Rh-negative women. Rates of use of Rh immunoglobulin (RhIG) after spontaneous abortion are significantly lower than after induced abortion. RhIG candidates at 12 weeks’ gestation or earlier should receive a 300-μg dose; later abortions mandate a 300-μg dose.

The profound grief that frequently accompanies spontaneous abortion often receives insufficient attention. Women and men experience the stages of grief. Guilt may be a difficult stage to resolve without help, and counseling plays an important role.

Fetal Death

Definitions

Physicians often categorize fetal death by gestational age and length of retention of the dead fetus. Death before the 20th week of gestation, or at less than 500 g, is spontaneous abortion; thereafter, it is an antepartum fetal death. If a dead fetus remains in the uterus for 8 or more weeks, then the term becomes missed abortion. However, many use this term to refer to any failed pregnancy that is not promptly expelled. These diagnostic categories all should be viewed as variations of a single obstetric entity: a nonviable or failed pregnancy.
Incidence

Fetal death is uncommon after the first trimester. The 2003 data from the U.S. National Center for Health Statistics shows a fetal death rate of 6.23 per 1,000 live births. The incidence of fetal demise decreases with increasing gestational age. In 2003, greater than 50% of fetal deaths occurred between 20–27 weeks, with over one-third occurring between 20–23 weeks.

Management

Data on the natural history of fetal death are scarce. The uterus expels most dead fetuses within 3 weeks of death. The gestational age, however, influences the probability of expulsion within a given interval. The more remote from term, the longer is the time required.

After confirmation of fetal death, the next, and perhaps most important, step is to counsel the parents. Helping the couple to grieve appropriately can minimize psychological sequelae from this often devastating loss. After these initial steps, subsequent clinical management is largely discretionary. The risk of coagulation defects within 5 weeks of fetal death is minimal, as is the risk of infection, provided the membranes are intact. The emotional burden of carrying a dead fetus, however, often for weeks, can compound the misery experienced by the parents. Thus, although either watchful waiting or uterine evacuation is appropriate, most women opt for intervention.

Two approaches to evacuation exist: surgery or labor induction. The choice between surgery and labor induction should reflect the skill and experience of the physician, the size of the fetus and uterus, the availability of equipment and drugs, and the preference of the woman. Before uterine evacuation by surgery or induction, the physician should confirm that the woman's coagulation system is intact.

Suction curettage is a safe and easy way to evacuate early pregnancies; however, if the pregnancy is more advanced, dilation and evacuation (D&E), accurate determination of fetal size by ultrasonography is helpful. Both procedures will be detailed later in this chapter. If the patient declines surgical evacuation or if the physician chooses not to perform a D&E procedure, then labor induction can be accomplished in several ways. These include use of misoprostol, vaginal prostaglandin E2 suppositories, high-dose oxytocin, or intrauterine balloon catheters. Intraamniotic hypertonic abortifacients are inappropriate in this setting, as their use may cause extension of decidual plate hemorrhage and coagulation defects within 5 weeks of fetal death is minimal, as is the risk of infection, provided the membranes are intact. The emotional burden of carrying a dead fetus, however, often for weeks, can compound the misery experienced by the parents. Thus, although either watchful waiting or uterine evacuation is appropriate, most women opt for intervention.

Two approaches to evacuation exist: surgery or labor induction. The choice between surgery and labor induction should reflect the skill and experience of the physician, the size of the fetus and uterus, the availability of equipment and drugs, and the preference of the woman. Before uterine evacuation by surgery or induction, the physician should confirm that the woman's coagulation system is intact.

Suction curettage is a safe and easy way to evacuate early pregnancies; however, if the pregnancy is more advanced, dilation and evacuation (D&E), accurate determination of fetal size by ultrasonography is helpful. Both procedures will be detailed later in this chapter. If the patient declines surgical evacuation or if the physician chooses not to perform a D&E procedure, then labor induction can be accomplished in several ways. These include use of misoprostol, vaginal prostaglandin E2 suppositories, high-dose oxytocin, or intrauterine balloon catheters. Intraamniotic hypertonic abortifacients are inappropriate in the setting of fetal death. Instillation of hypertonic saline may be hazardous because of rapid uptake into the woman’s circulation owing to altered membrane permeability.

Complications

Fetal death carries risks of both morbidity and mortality for the woman. The risks of coagulation disorders and infection have received the most attention, yet recent data on their incidence are lacking. The risk of maternal death associated with fetal death is small, although no recent data are available. In the 1970s, the maternal case-fatality rate was estimated to be 4.5 deaths per 100,000 fetal deaths. The risk of maternal death from fetal death increases with maternal age. The risk for women age 35 years and older was 3.6 times that for women aged 15 to 24 years. The most frequent causes of maternal death from fetal death were uterine perforation and coagulopathy. As with all pregnancy terminations, physicians must identify all Rh-negative candidates and give them an appropriate dose of RhoG.

CERVICAL INCOMPETENCE

Incidence

Cervical incompetence is an imprecise term used to explain spontaneous abortions thought to be secondary to cervical factors. Premature cervical dilation without labor is a more descriptive term. Furthermore, it avoids the language “incompetent” which may carry with it some negative inferences for a woman who is having problematic pregnancies.

There is wide disagreement about the case definition and diagnostic criteria, making estimation of incidence difficult. The classic picture: repetitive, painless abortion midpregnancy without associated uterine contractions. Some physicians base their diagnosis on this picture, whereas others rely on tests performed on nonpregnant women. These include passage of an 8-mm Hegar dilator, traction on an intrauterine Foley catheter, or hysteroscopy. These techniques appear to have poor validity.

Significant attention has been paid in recent years to sonographic evaluation of the cervix and its role in prediction of premature cervical dilation. Serial ultrasound examination of the cervix may accurately identify a shortened cervix or funneling of amniotic membranes. It appears that identification of this entity is plagued by low sensitivity and positive predictive values, particularly in low-risk women. However, there may be a role for this evaluation in high-risk women.

The history of unexplained spontaneous abortion without labor in midpregnancy may be the most useful diagnostic criterion, yet its sensitivity and specificity remain unknown. This diagnostic impression appears in reported incidence rates. Rates range from 0.05 to 1 per 100 pregnancies. Differences in diagnosis, rather than differences in women, probably account for most of this variation. In 2000, according to the National Center for Health Statistics, 23,000 discharge summaries cited the diagnosis of cervical incompetence.

Risk Factors

The cause of premature cervical dilation without labor is unknown but may be multifactorial. Early theories about this problem focused on cervical trauma, such as conization, laceration, or excessive mechanical dilation. Data are lacking, however, to confirm or refute these. The occurrence of this condition in primigravidas suggests alternative causes. These may include associated uterine anomalies, prenatal exposure to diethylstilbestrol, or abnormal histology of the cervix. In addition, premature cervical dilation without labor may be inheritable.

Management

A variety of approaches have been used to treat premature cervical dilation without labor. The least invasive, bed rest, has been suggested as primary therapy, as well as adjunctive therapy after cerclage. This may be effective in the woman who is having problematic pregnancies.

Suction curettage is a safe and easy way to evacuate early pregnancies; however, if the pregnancy is more advanced, dilation and evacuation (D&E), accurate determination of fetal size by ultrasonography is helpful. Both procedures will be detailed later in this chapter. If the patient declines surgical evacuation or if the physician chooses not to perform a D&E procedure, then labor induction can be accomplished in several ways. These include use of misoprostol, vaginal prostaglandin E2 suppositories, high-dose oxytocin, or intrauterine balloon catheters. Intraamniotic hypertonic abortifacients are inappropriate in the setting of fetal death. Instillation of hypertonic saline may be hazardous because of rapid uptake into the woman’s circulation owing to altered membrane permeability.
in the United States, it has the appeal of exerting a mechanical effect without requiring an operation.

Surgery is the principal form of therapy for premature cervical dilatation without labor in the United States. Several types of cerclage procedures are used; the McDonald and Shirodkar are the most common. Contraindications to cerclage include rupture of membranes, uterine bleeding, uterine contractions, chorioamnionitis, cervical dilation of more than 4 cm, polyhydramnios, or known fetal anomaly.

The Shirodkar operation places a reinforcing band around the cervix beneath the mucosa at the level of the internal os (Figs. 33.1 and 33.2). Spinal or epidural anesthesia is recommended; Trendelenburg positioning and adequate retraction facilitate placement of the suture. The original operation used aneurysm needles to place a band of fascia lata around the cervix; then the knot was tied anteriorly. In recent years, many physicians have used a wide (e.g., 5-mm) Mersilene band swaged onto large atraumatic needles, with the knot tied posteriorly to avoid erosion into the bladder. The cervical canal should remain open 3 to 5 mm. After the band is tied, the band and knot can be secured with several interrupted sutures of silk or other permanent material; the incisions in the mucosa are then closed with absorbable suture, thus burying the band.

The McDonald procedure places a reinforcing purse-string suture around the proximal cervix. Unlike the Shirodkar procedure, however, the McDonald suture is not buried entirely (Fig. 33.3). Instead, several deep penetrations into the cervical stroma are made with a nonabsorbable suture, such as Mersilene. The advantages of this approach compared with the Shirodkar procedure are simplicity, ease of removal, and usefulness when the cervix is effaced or when fetal membranes are bulging. Vaginal discharge may be associated with the exposed suture material. Because the McDonald and Shirodkar procedures have been reported to have similar efficacy, the simplicity and versatility of the McDonald operation make it preferable for most patients in need of cerclage.

Opinions are divided as to whether the cerclage procedure is best performed during or between pregnancies. Studies suggest that the timing of cerclage during pregnancy influences outcome. Cerclage at about 14 weeks’ gestation appears preferable. Ideally, fetal viability must be demonstrated and major fetal anomalies ruled out sonographically if possible. If substantial dilation or bulging of fetal membranes has occurred, then the likelihood of a successful cerclage is lessened. An attempt can be made, however, to replace the protruding membranes by means of a sterile Foley catheter. Thereafter, the suture is placed and tied down, and the Foley balloon is deflated and withdrawn.

Postoperative care after cerclage for pregnant women has not been uniform. Although most investigators advise bed rest for several days, and some advocate prophylactic antibiotics, tocolytic drugs, or progesterone, the usefulness of these measures has not been established. The cerclage suture can be removed at 38 weeks’ gestation or when fetal pulmonary maturity has been confirmed; it should be removed immediately if membranes rupture or labor starts. Although some physicians leave a well-placed Shirodkar suture in place and deliver infants by cesarean, evidence supporting this course of action is limited.

Intraabdominal cerclage may be appropriate in rare instances. Indications include traumatic cervical laceration, congenital shortening of the cervix, previous failed vaginal

![FIGURE 33.1. Shirodkar cerclage operation. Left: A transverse incision through the anterior vaginal mucosa at its junction with the cervix. Right: The surgeon pushes the bladder cephalad to enable high placement of the suture.](image)
FIGURE 33.2. Shirodkar cerclage operation. Left: The encircling suture leaves the cervix with an opening of 3 to 5 mm. The surgeon anchors the suture anteriorly with fine silk. Right: Cross section with suture in place.

FIGURE 33.3. McDonald cerclage operation. A: Four bites taken at the junction of vaginal mucosa and cervix. B: A cross section of the cervix with the cerclage in place.
Cerclage, and advanced cervical effacement. This procedure places a band around the cervix at the level of the internal os in an avascular space between the branches of the uterine artery. Compared with the vaginal cerclage operations, this procedure has several important disadvantages: two abdominal operations are needed (one to place the suture, one for cesarean delivery), the surgery is performed in a highly vascular area adjacent to the ureters, and the complication rate is higher than with vaginal cerclage. Hence, this approach should be used only when vaginal cerclage has failed or is not feasible.

Consistent with the diagnostic conundrum associated with premature cervical dilation, there remains a challenge in appropriate and effective management of these patients. The largest randomized trial by the Medical Research Council/Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists included nearly 1,300 patients. The goal was to evaluate the efficacy of prophylactic cerclage placement based on historical risk factors of second-trimester abortion/preterm delivery or cerclage conization/amputation. They demonstrated a significant decrease in preterm delivery (15% in cerclage group vs. 37% in controls) in the subset of women with three previous second-trimester losses or preterm delivery only. It is estimated in this study that 25 cerclages must be placed to prevent one preterm delivery. For women occupying the stratum of three previous second-trimester deliveries without evidence of labor, a cerclage can be supported by the literature.

The CIPRACT (Cervical Incompetence Prevention Randomized Cerclage Trial) randomly assigned women with a previous preterm delivery to cerclage or bed rest. Secondary randomization occurred as both groups were followed with serial transvaginal ultrasonography. Those in the control group were further randomized if they were noted to develop cervical shortening less than 25 mm below the 10th percentile. This study was small in its subject numbers but identified significantly decreased preterm deliveries and neonatal morbidity in the cerclage group. Additionally, it provides some evidence for serial sonography and late cerclage placement for those at high risk with cervical change, a potentially surgery-sparing approach. In contrast, a large study by To and colleagues screened more than 47,000 women at 22 to 24 weeks, identifying approximately 1% of these with a very short cervix of less than 15 mm. These women were then randomized to either Shirodkar cerclage or observation. This study confirmed that women with shortened cervixes in the midtrimester are at increased risk for preterm delivery; however, they did not find a difference between the cerclage or observation group with regards to gestational age at delivery. Several other studies including systematic reviews and metaanalyses do not support cerclage placement based on ultrasonographic findings alone, especially in low-risk women. There is evidence in small studies that support placement of emergency cerclage after clinical cervical dilation has reduced reliance on instrumentation of the cervix.

The CIPRACT study was small in its subject numbers but identified significantly decreased preterm deliveries and neonatal morbidity in the cerclage group. Additionally, it provides some evidence for serial sonography and late cerclage placement for those at high risk with cervical change, a potentially surgery-sparing approach. In contrast, a large study by To and colleagues screened more than 47,000 women at 22 to 24 weeks, identifying approximately 1% of these with a very short cervix of less than 15 mm. These women were then randomized to either Shirodkar cerclage or observation. This study confirmed that women with shortened cervixes in the midtrimester are at increased risk for preterm delivery; however, they did not find a difference between the cerclage or observation group with regards to gestational age at delivery. Several other studies including systematic reviews and metaanalyses do not support cerclage placement based on ultrasonographic findings alone, especially in low-risk women. There is evidence in small studies that support placement of emergency cerclage after clinical cervical dilation has reduced reliance on instrumentation of the cervix.

Complications

Complications of cerclage range significantly in their severity. A partial inventory of reported complications includes hemorrhage; rupture of membranes; infection, including chorioamnionitis; abcess, and death; cervical dystocia; uterine rupture; vesicovaginal fistula; and fotal death. Most commonly, rupture of membranes is seen in 0.8% to 18% and chorioamnionitis is seen in 1% to 6.2% of electively placed cerclages. Complications increase as the cerclage is placed emergently, with 0% to 51% incidence of rupture of membranes and 9% to 37% chorioamnionitis.

ILLEGAL ABORTION

Incidence

Despite the availability of legal abortions, small numbers of illegal procedures continue to occur. Estimates of the incidence of illegal abortion in the United States before 1970 or legalization ranged from 200,000 to 1.2 million per year; estimates for the late 1970s ranged from 5,000 to 23,000 per year. More recent estimates are not available. However, illegal abortions occur in large numbers in developing countries, where, according to WHO estimates, 30,000 to 100,000 women continue to die of illegal abortion complications each year.

Risk Factors

Lack of access to safe, legal abortion is the most important risk factor for having an illegal procedure in the world today. Little is known about characteristics of women in the United States who may still obtain illegal abortions.

Techniques

Although a wide variety of illegal abortion methods are used around the world, two methods dominate in the United States: oral abortifacients and intrauterine instrumentation. Orally administered substances include turpentine, laundry bleach, and large doses of quinine: all unsafe. Intrauterine techniques were less common, more effective, and more dangerous; these ranged from intrauterine injection of soap or phenol disinfectants to insertion of foreign objects.

Complications

Transcervical administration of toxic substances carries a high risk of serious complications. The most frequently reported complication of illegal abortion is retained products of conception, although the incidence of such complications is unknown. In countries such as Brazil, where elective abortion is illegal, recent black-market availability of misoprostol has led to important improvements in abortion safety, because misoprostol has reduced reliance on instrumentation of the cervix. The number of illegal abortion deaths in the United States declined dramatically during the 1970s. During the 1975 to 1979 interval, women in both extremes of the reproductive age span had higher death rates from illegal abortion than did other women. The racial discrepancy in death rate is more striking: The mortality rate for black and Hispanic women is more than 10 times greater than for white women. As with morbidity, the likelihood of mortality is strongly related to the abortion technique. Of the 17 illegal abortion deaths from 1975 to 1979, only one followed ingestion of an abortifacient (pennyroyal oil). The other deaths were related to intrauterine techniques, ranging from infection of cleaning solutions to insertion of foreign bodies (e.g., catheters, cotton swabs, thermometers, and coat hangers). Sepsis (10 cases) and air embolism (three cases) accounted for most of these deaths.
Management of Septic Abortion

Most women with septic abortion respond rapidly to uterine evacuation plus broad-spectrum antibiotics. Before beginning treatment, intrauterine and blood cultures should be obtained. An upright radiograph of the abdomen may identify a residual foreign body, gas bubbles in the uterus, or free air under the diaphragm; these findings direct management.

Antibiotic administration should begin in the emergency department. Coverage should include Gram-positive, Gram-negative, and anaerobic bacteria. Ideally, in a case of septic abortion, the patient should go directly from the emergency department to the operating room. Peak serum levels of antibiotics will be present within an hour of their administration. Further delay of uterine evacuation is unwarranted and can compromise recovery. Prompt elimination of the necrotic infected tissue is critical. Tissue obtained during curettage should quickly go for microbiologic cultures. The yield of organisms, especially anaerobes, is often higher from a tissue specimen than from a swab inserted into the uterus.

Subsequent management is governed by the response of the woman and by microbiologic findings. All women with septic abortions should be closely observed after surgery, with special attention to vital signs and urine output, to detect incipient shock. Prompt aggressive therapy is essential if septic shock develops. Administration of glucocorticoids is not helpful in shock. Prompt aggressive therapy is essential if septic shock develops. Administration of glucocorticoids is not helpful in this setting.

Postabortal sepsis from Clostridium perfringens has become rare. When this infection occurs, however, it can be catastrophic. In the absence of hemolysis, C. perfringens bacteremia can be managed by curettage and antibiotics. In the presence of hemolysis, hysterectomy and more aggressive medical therapy are indicated.

LEGAL ABORTION

Incidence

Legal abortion is one of the most frequently performed operations in the United States. In 2000, 1.3 million induced abortions were reported. The national abortion ratio was 245 abortions per 1,000 women age 15 to 44 years. Stated alternatively, about one in four recognized pregnancies ends in abortion. The numbers of abortion, associated with lack of access to services. Most (59%) abortions took place at 8 weeks’ gestation or earlier; 88% occurred at 12 weeks’ gestation or earlier. Only 4.3% of all procedures were done between 16 and 20 weeks gestation and 1.4% at more than 21 weeks. Before 1995, provision of very early (<6 weeks gestational age) abortions was rare. In 1999, these procedures accounted for 22% of all abortions. Most abortions take place safely in freestanding clinics (93%) and physician’s offices (2%). In-hospital procedures (5%) are necessary when women have a higher risk of medical or surgical complications.

Preoperative Considerations

In a recent large study, the reasons most often cited by women for choosing abortion were that having a baby would interfere with her education, work, or ability to care for her other dependents. A majority (73%) could not afford a baby, and almost half were having relationship problems and did not want to be single mothers. Preoperative counseling should include a nonjudgmental discussion of all alternatives available, including continuing the pregnancy and adoption. Abortion procedures are reviewed and compared, including the risks, benefits, and expected experience with each method.

Legal Considerations

It is important for physicians to know the legal restrictions to abortion in their state. State regulations include waiting periods, counseling requirements, parental involvement for minors, and insurance regulations.

Preoperative Medical Evaluation

The preoperative evaluation should include counseling, informed consent, a brief history, and a limited physical examination. The history taking should focus only on relevant data, such as gynecologic problems (e.g., leiomyomas) or medical problems (e.g., cardiac disease, asthma, or drug sensitivities) that might influence the course of the operation. Physical examination should include the heart, lungs, abdomen, and pelvis. Although ultrasonography is not necessary on a routine basis, it is useful if the size, shape, or position of the uterus is unclear. A large survey of abortion providers in the United States reported that 66% of clinics do use ultrasound routinely before first-trimester surgical abortion. In contrast, ultrasonography is a routine component of early medical abortions, which requires accurate dating of the gestation. Routine laboratory tests include the hematocrit (or hemoglobin) and Rh type. Many physicians perform a urine pregnancy test on all patients requesting abortion. Screening for chlamydia and gonorrhea need not be routine, but should be targeted. If bacterial vaginosis is detected preoperatively, it should be treated.

Techniques

All methods of abortion fall into two broad categories: surgical and medical. Surgical evacuation includes suction curettage (vacuum aspiration by electric or manual vacuum source), sharp curettage, D&E (defined as transcervical evacuation at 13 menstrual weeks’ gestation or later), hysterotomy, and hysterectomy. Medical abortifacients in the United States include uterotonic drugs, such as prostaglandins and oxytocin, the aniprostaglandin mifepristone, and intrauterine instillation of hypertonic agents, such as saline or urea. Early medical abortion has also begun to play a significant role in provision of abortion, accounting for 6% of procedures in 2001. In addition to several adjutants, such as cervical preparation with misoprostol or osmotoc dilators, have an important role in abortion practice.
Suction Curettage

Sharp curettage is an obsolete abortion method, supplanted by suction curettage, which usually involves dilation of the cervix, followed by vacuum aspiration at 12 weeks’ gestation or earlier. Menstrual regulation, menstrual extraction, and minisuction are euphemisms for early suction curettage. The more recent term, encompassing this early “regulation” as well as later procedures done by manual vacuum with syringe, is manual vacuum aspiration (MVA). This technique uses a plastic cannula as small as 3 mm in diameter, with a self-locking syringe (50–60 cc) as a source of suction (Fig. 33.4). The largest series using MVA in early pregnancy reported a 99% success rate on nearly 2,400 abortions done at less than 6 weeks’ gestation. MVA has been shown to be as safe and effective as electric vacuum through 10 weeks’ of gestation. For early MVA procedures, dilation is often unnecessary. Consequently, anesthesia may not be necessary, although analgesia can ease the cramping that occurs toward the end of the evacuation. After insertion of the appropriate cannula, the physician attaches the syringe and releases the pinch valve to begin the suctioning. Blood and tissue flow into the syringe. Alternatively, some physicians connect the cannula to the syringe before insertion. The abortion involves rotary and in-and-out cannula movement until the gritty feel of the endometrium occurs. Bubbles appear in the syringe. The physician should not remove the cannula from the uterus while a vacuum exists in the syringe, because the endocervical canal should not be aspirated; likewise, the physician should not advance the plunger of the syringe while the cannula is connected and is within the uterus. Air embolism can result. The syringe and cannula are disposable, although some physicians clean and disinfect the syringe and use it multiple times.

If local anesthesia is to be used alone, no preoperative fasting is necessary, but if conscious sedation is a possibility, the patient should fast for at least 6 hours before the procedure. Similarly, if conscious sedation is used, the patient should be instructed to bring someone with her to escort her home. She should empty her bladder before being placed in the dorsal lithotomy position; catheterization is unnecessary. An anesthetic is applied to the cervix and vagina (e.g., povidone-iodine or chlorhexidine). Routine sterile precautions (e.g., drapes, caps, masks, and gowns) are unnecessary. The physician should use a “no-touch” technique: He or she wears sterile gloves and does not touch those ends and portions of the sterile instruments inserted into the uterus. Use of local anesthesia predominates in the United States. Although local anesthesia does not completely relieve discomfort, it is less expensive and safer than general anesthesia. It is a good general rule, when performing abortions under local anesthesia, to use slow, controlled movements. A support person who can talk to the patient also helps alleviate anxiety and discomfort.

Preoperative Cervical Dilation

Osmotic dilators help to prepare the cervix for curettage abortions (Fig. 33.5). Laminaria are hygroscopic sticks of seaweed that dilate the cervix over several hours. The mode of action is not well understood, but the principal mechanism appears to be desiccation of the cervix. This drying can alter the ratio of collagen to ground substance, thus changing collagen cross-linkages. Alternatively, laminaria can alter the elaboration, release, or degradation of uterine prostaglandins. Laminaria cause the cervix to dilate the areas not in physical contact with the laminaria; whatever the mechanism, it is more complex than mere passive stretching, as used to be thought.

One synthetic osmotic dilator is currently marketed in the United States. Lamicel is a cylinder of polyvinyl alcohol sponge impregnated with magnesium sulfate. It works within several hours and has the advantage of uniform size (either 5- or 3-mm diameter), assured sterility, and easy insertion and removal. Unlike laminaria, the Lamicel device does not assume a rigid hourglass shape that hinders removal.

Osmotic dilators are convenient in an outpatient setting. Placement of laminaria or Lamicel for 3 to 4 hours before abortion frequently dilates the cervix sufficiently for abortion. Women can be sent home with laminaria in place overnight, allowing for maximal dilation. Compared with use of metal dilators, use of laminaria dramatically reduces the risk of cervical
Injury, requiring suturing and of uterine perforation. This protection against trauma can be especially important for young teenagers with immature cervixes who are at increased risk for cervical injury. Disadvantages include the cost, inconvenience, and occasional cramping involved.

Alternatively, preoperative preparation of the cervix with misoprostol can facilitate abortion. Misoprostol, a prostaglandin, softens the cervix and increases its resiliency. Administration 1 hour before was recently found not to be effective. Disadvantages of cervical preparation with misoprostol include the delay required, spotting and cramping, and occasional abortion in the waiting room. Recent data show an inferior effect of same-day misoprostol for preoperative cervical ripening in second-trimester procedures as compared with inferior effect of same-day misoprostol for preoperative cervical ripening in second-trimester procedures as compared with the use of laminaria administered the day before the procedure.

**Paracervical Anesthesia**

Paracervical block, the physician should use the smallest volume of the lowest concentration of local anesthetic. Local anesthetics vary in their toxicity; for example, chloroprocaine is substantially less toxic than lidocaine. With lidocaine, a 0.5% concentration is safer than a 1% solution and is equally effective. The total dose of lidocaine should not exceed 2 mg/kg or 300 mg, whichever is less. Maximum is approximately 20 cc of 1% lidocaine or 0.25% bupivacaine for a 50-kg woman, or 10 cc being typically sufficient. Alternatively, use of local anesthetic with vasoconstrictor (e.g., epinephrine 1:200,000) slows systemic absorption of anesthetic and allows a larger total dose, although the epinephrine has additional risks and side effects. Some physicians buffer the lidocaine solution with sodium bicarbonate to decrease burning. Vasovagal episodes occur rarely and can be treated with atropine.

Paracervical anesthesia affords excellent anesthesia regardless of the site of injection. Approaches include infiltration of the cervix at the 12-o'clock position (for application of the tenaculum), then injection at four sites (at the 3-, 5-, 7-, and 9-o'clock positions) or two sites (at the 3- and 9-o'clock positions) at the junction of cervix and vagina. Submucosal injection precludes inadvertent intravascular injection. Slow injection is less painful than rapid injection. Suction curettage requires few instruments. It is useful to have an ultrasound machine available in case one is not able to enter the uterus or suction adequate tissue. Most physicians prefer to use a bivalve speculum. A speculum with standard-length blades, however, prevents the cervix from being drawn toward the introitus during the procedure and makes the operation more difficult. The commercially available Moore modifications of the Graves speculum, which has 1-inch shorter blades of standard width, is excellent. Some physicians prefer anatraumatic tenaculum. Alternatively, having an extra single-toothed tenaculum can sometimes be helpful. If difficulty during dilation occurs, the physician can place the second tenaculum on the posterior cervix to stabilize it. Sounding before the procedure should not be done; there is no need to know where the fundus is at the start of the procedure, and it increases the risk of perforation. If the direction of the cervical canal is in question, then the physician can gently probe with a small dilator. Pratt dilators are preferable to Hegar dilators for abortion because they require less force to dilate the cervix. A useful modification of the Pratt dilators is the Denniston dilator; this is similar to the Pratt dilator but is plastic. Hence, it is light, slightly flexible, and inexpensive, yet it is capable of being autoclaved. Other instruments required for suction curettage include the vacuum machine, hose, swivel handle, and a cannula. Some physicians use a sharp curette to check for completeness at the end of the operation. Use of small (e.g., 8-mm-diameter) Karman-type double-port cannulas provides the same gritty sensation as a metal curette.

**FIGURE 33.6.** Traction on cervix during dilation. Top: Tenaculum placed vertically on the anterior lip. Bottom: Tenaculum placed vertically on the posterior lip for a retroverted uterus. Note posterior direction of dilator.
procedure often need to be at an angle, with the intrauterine tip of the instrument pointing upward. If the instrument was inserted straight back in a patient like this, there would be an increased risk for posterior perforation.

Gentleness is the key to safe cervical dilation. Dilution should allow insertion and rotation of the desired cannula. Pratt dilators are measured in French units, or mm of circumference. Hence, to determine the diameter, the physician needs to divide by π, or approximately 3. For example, to insert an 8-mm cannula, dilation with Pratt dilators to 25F allows for free rotation. The physician should hold the dilator between the thumb and index finger to limit the force applied. In addition, the other fingers can remain extended to prevent plunging forward in case of sudden loss of resistance. Dilution need not start with the smallest dilator on the set; starting with a larger size (e.g., 13F instead of 1F) may reduce the risk of perforating the uterus or creating a false channel.

If more than two fingers of force are necessary during dilation, the physician should stop and reassess the situation, rather than risk injuring the cervix. One option is to use a smaller cannula than originally planned. Alternatively, the physician can pack the cervix with one or more osmotic dilators, interrupt the procedure, then complete the operation several hours later, by which time adequate dilation will have been achieved. Another treatment option is to administer oral or vaginal misoprostol and complete the procedure in several hours. Performance of the procedure in two stages is far preferable to forceful dilation.

After adequate dilation, the physician inserts the cannula. In general, the diameter of the cannula in millimeters should be about one less than the weeks of gestation from last menses. For example, an 8-mm cannula is adequate for evacuating a pregnancy of 9 weeks’ gestation. Skilled physicians often prefer to use even smaller cannulas than this guideline suggests; the physician must weigh the advantage of needing less dilation against the potential disadvantages of longer operating time and an increased risk of incomplete abortion.

The most frequently used cannulas in the United States are clear plastic, with a slight angulation (Fig. 33.7). The physician should insert the cannula into the lower uterine segment. The physician then turns on the suction machine and aspires the uterus with the cannula (Fig. 33.8). One of the principles of abortion technique is to start working in the lower uterine segment. The fundal contents of the uterus are brought down by suction and the involution of the uterus as it empties. When bubbles appear in the cannula and the interior of the cavity feels empty, some physicians use a sharp curette to confirm the completeness of evacuation. The flexible plastic cannula (Fig. 33.7) suctions opposite sides of the cavity simultaneously and provides a distinct gritty sensation when the evacuation is complete. The operation is not finished until the physician or another trained observer has examined the aspirated tissue. This is to confirm the presence of fetal tissue, which usually excludes the possibility of an ectopic pregnancy. Since 1972, more than 20 women in the United States have died from ectopic pregnancies undetected at the time of attempted suction curettage. This tissue inspection will not detect the rare twin ectopic pregnancy, commonly termed “heterotopic.”

Pregnancies of 9 weeks’ gestation and later will have recognizable fetal parts; earlier pregnancies may not. Identification of chorionic villi and membranes in these earlier pregnancies is essential. The physician rinses the aspirated tissue in a fine-mesh strainer under tap water to remove blood and clots. A glass dish is useful for examining the tissue suspended in water. For early pregnancies, white vinegar (instead of water) may facilitate the recognition of villi. Back lighting from a horizontal x-ray viewing box is especially useful (Fig. 33.9). Villi appear soft, fluffy, and feathery, with discernible fine projections; in contrast, decidua appears coarse and shaggy (Fig. 33.10). Amnion and chorion are filmy and transparent; decidua is translucent. With early pregnancies, a magnifying glass, dissecting microscope, colposcope, or standard microscope (3100) can help identify villi (Fig. 33.11). It is essential to learn the difference between the appearance of villi and decidua; this is useful in the management of early pregnancy failure as well as in distinguishing between bleeding from miscarriage from that of an ectopic pregnancy.

When the physician cannot confirm fetal tissue, he or she should reevaluate the patient, with special attention to the adnexa. Repeat aspiration (perhaps with ultrasound guidance) is often appropriate. A sensitive urine pregnancy test or a quantitative β-hCG can be helpful. Ultrasound can sometimes identify a gestational sac. Failure to identify villi in the presence of a positive pregnancy test suggests several possibilities: recent spontaneous abortion, failed attempted abortion, perforation...
FIGURE 33.9. Examination of aspirated tissue over x-ray viewing box for back lighting.

with aspiration outside the uterus, or ectopic pregnancy. The physician must carefully evaluate these possibilities.

Women with uterine anomalies, such as a bicornuate uterus, have a high risk of failed attempted abortion. Sometimes the unique anatomy makes it difficult to enter the horn with the pregnancy. One useful approach is to perform the aspiration under ultrasound guidance. If the physician can insert a bent sound into the cavity with the pregnancy, he or she can then place the bent sound inside a flexible 8-mm plastic cannula as a stent or guide. With ultrasound guidance, the physician then inserts the cannula into the cavity and removes the sound, conects the cannula adapter, and then aspirates the cavity. Another alternative is to use medical abortion. Rarely, hysteroscopy may be needed if curettage and medical abortion fail in the setting of mullerian anomalies.

Postoperative Care

Women should expect some spotting and bleeding after the procedure that improves with time and usually stops by 1 to 2 weeks. They should know to notify the physician with any signs of a complication: fever, pain, bleeding more than a period, dizziness or weakness, passage of tissue, and ongoing symptoms of pregnancy. Pregnancy symptoms that do not dissipate within 1 week or normal menses not returning within 6 weeks are reasons to return. They should have 24-hour emergency phone numbers. Any woman whose procedure did not definitively identify tissue should be actively managed to rule out ectopic pregnancy. Women may resume work the day following an abortion or when they feel up to it.

Almost all forms of contraception may be started on the day of an abortion procedure, including the placement of intrauterine devices. Commonly a postoperative visit is scheduled 2 to 3 weeks after the procedure to ensure complete abortion and rule out any complications. It has been suggested that this visit may not be necessary, as women can be trained to return for certain signs and symptoms. Many providers find this visit useful to assess contraceptive use and satisfaction, as well as to provide regular gynecologic care that may not be a routine part of the preoperative abortion care—e.g., cervical cytology. Routine β-hCG testing should not be done at this visit. After an uncomplicated procedure, β-hCG can be detected for a mean of 30 days and up to 60 days. Therefore, it is not useful for ruling out retained tissue and causes confusion when found to be positive.

Use of Oxytocic Agents

The usefulness of administering oxytocic agents during suction curettage is unclear, although administering oxytocin or ergot derivatives reduces blood loss from suction curettage performed under general anesthesia. Although statistically significant, the reduction in blood loss is clinically unimportant. Because blood loss is less with local anesthesia, oxytocic agents probably are not necessary. Although physicians commonly give ergot derivatives by mouth for several days after suction curettage, evidence of the benefit of this practice is lacking, and the drugs cause painful uterine cramping in some women.

Prophylactic Antibiotics

Induced abortion patients should receive prophylactic antibiotics. A metaanalysis of the randomized, controlled trials on this topic by Sawaya and colleagues showed decreased risk for postabortal endometritis for women deemed low and high...
risk for infection. Administration of drugs such as doxycycline to an anxious, fastiging pregnant woman before surgery can cause nausea and vomiting. Hence, the most practical approach may be to begin a short-course antibiotic with food promptly after the abortion. The choice of antibiotic and duration of therapy is unclear. However, if one administers antibiotics for more than 24 hours, prophylaxis ends and presumptive treatment of C. trachomatis is not likely. The presumptive treatment of all patients for chlamydia may be a reasonable course of action.

Medical Abortion in Early Pregnancy

The marketing of the antiprogestin mifepristone has opened a new chapter in abortion practice. Mifepristone is a derivative of norethindrone; it binds to the progestosterone receptor but does not activate it. When bound, it blocks progestosterone activity and acts to alter the decidua, allowing trophoblast separation. This alone can lead to bleeding and in vivo prostaglandin release that can cause an abortion in early pregnancy. Mifepristone alone, however, results in completed abortion 64% to 85% of the time. Therefore, the drug is generally followed by a prostaglandin analog to vastly improve the completion rates. The regimen recommended by the distributor and approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) calls for a single oral dose of mifepristone 600 mg, followed in 48 hours by misoprostol 400 μg orally, both doses given in the clinician’s office. This has been approved for use up to 49 days’ gestation. Success rates with this regimen range from 92% to 97%.

Several randomized controlled trials have investigated this regimen. Data currently support alternative dosage, route, timing, and gestational age criteria than those established by the FDA and the company guidelines. These changes result in improved efficacy and patient convenience, decreased cost, and sustained safety. Several studies have shown that 200 μg of mifepristone effect abortion at rates equivalent to 600 μg. El Rafaei and colleagues first reported this finding in 1995. This was confirmed by a study by WHO, reporting in 2000 that there was no difference in the completed abortion rate between women given 200 μg of mifepristone compared with those given 600 μg, Additional studies showed women up to 63 days’ gestation. This equivalence in dosing is secondary to nonlinear pharmacokinetics. The binding site for the mifepristone is rapidly saturated. Women given 100 μg, 200 μg, and 800 μg have a peak serum concentration of 2.0 to 2.5 μg/ml approximately 2 hours after ingestion, regardless of dosage given. Therefore, pharmacology and economics support use of 200 μg mifepristone.

Several studies have also investigated misoprostol dosing and route of administration. Vaginal dosing of misoprostol has been shown to increase bioavailability when compared with oral dosing. Furthermore, the gastrointestinal side effects of the medicine are often fewer with this route. Schaff and colleagues compared oral (400 μg and 800 μg) versus vaginal (800 μg) misoprostol following 200 μg mifepristone. They found a statistically significant higher level of completed abortion in those who received vaginal misoprostol compared with either dose of oral misoprostol (84%, 92%, and 96%, respectively). In 2003, WHO published results of a large study comparing vaginal misoprostol with oral/vaginal combinations after mifepristone administration to confirm by ultrasonography that the pregnancy has ended. An inability to follow up in the time frame specified or in the event of an emergency should preclude provision of a medical abortion. In the few percent of women who fail to abort or who have incomplete abortion, suction curettage is recommended because of the teratogenic effects of misoprostol.

Medical abortion is safe, effective, and well tolerated. With current regimens, cramping and bleeding are common, but infection and bleeding heavy enough to require transfusion are rare. Data collected from postmarketing experience since the FDA approval of mifepristone in the United States in September 2000 have demonstrated the safety. More than 460,000 women have undergone medical abortion in the United States between 2000 and mid-2005. Serious complications have included seventeen ectopic pregnancies, hemorrhage requiring blood transfusion (in -0.03%), and seven serious bacterial infections, including five deaths from Clostridium sordellii sepsis. In light of potential complications and the abortion experience occurring outside of the provider’s office, thorough counseling and patient understanding are imperative.

Before the marketing of mifepristone in the United States, physicians relied on other medical abortion regimens. One regimen included a single intramuscular injection of methotrexate, 50 mg/m² body surface area, followed 3 to 7 days later by
vaginal administration of misoprostol, 800 μg. The efficacy of the combined regimen was 90%. In a randomized, controlled trial, this regimen proved superior to the same dose of misoprostol given alone. At 49 days’ gestation or less, methotrexate and misoprostol can achieve success rates similar to those with mifepristone and misoprostol, but the process is slower with methotrexate. From 20% to 30% of women require 1 to 3 weeks to complete the abortion. On the other hand, methotrexate is much less expensive than is mifepristone. Methotrexate works as an antimitabolite; it continues to be used in the medical management of ectopic pregnancy.

Another alternative is use of misoprostol alone. Varying success rates have been reported with different doses, frequency, and routes of administration. The success rates with misoprostol alone appear lower than when misoprostol is used as an adjunct with mifepristone or methotrexate. Protocols that have achieved a high success rate with misoprostol alone have had high rates of side effects as well, including nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea.

Medical approaches may be especially useful for challenging abortions. These include patients with mullerian anomalies, large cervical leiomyomas, prior failed attempted abortion, or obesity (e.g., 150 kg and more). Should the medical regimen not effect abortion, surgical completion is made substantially easier by this preparation of the cervix.

Dilation and Evacuation

Dilation and evacuation is the generic term for suction curettage abortions at 13 weeks’ gestation or later. During the 1970s, D&E emerged as the most frequently used method for second-trimester abortions. The proportion of abortions performed by curettage techniques is inversely related to gestational age (Table 33.1). Even at gestations greater than 20 weeks, D&E remains the dominant method of abortion in the United States. In April 2007, the US Supreme Court upheld a decision to ban an abortion procedure called D&X, in which there is a surgical completion of the pregnancy. Intra-amniotic instillation of prostaglandin E₂ appears to be a viable alternative to D&E. (Fig. 33.12). For example, five laminaria placed overnight result in 1.5- to 2-cm dilation with minimal or no discomfort for most women. Use of a single Lamicel for about 4 hours produces as much dilation as do several laminaria at 14 to 16 weeks’ gestation. To achieve adequate dilation, many physicians insert osmotic dilators several hours to several days before D&E. (Fig. 33.12). For example, five laminaria placed overnight result in 1.5- to 2-cm dilation with minimal or no discomfort for most women. Use of a single Lamicel for about 4 hours produces as much dilation as do several laminaria at 14 to 16 weeks’ gestation. In the 13- to 16-week interval, vacuum alone is adequate; thereafter, forceps extraction predominates. A cannula 14 mm in diameter can evacuate pregnancies through about 16 menstrual weeks’ gestation. For later pregnancies, the cannula primarily drains amniotic fluid at the beginning of the evacuation and draws tissue into the lower uterus for forceps extraction. Specially designed forceps for D&E are far superior to standard sponge forceps. As with suction curettage, extraction should occur from the lower uterus to minimize the risks of often prefer D&E because they avoid experiencing labor. Many physicians have not been surgically trained to provide later D&E procedures. Often the choice of abortion method at this later stage depends on access to abortion services, the presence of skilled personnel, and whether the fetus needs to be intact for autopsy. Some physicians prefer to administer feticidal agents, such as digital or potassium chloride, under ultrasound guidance preoperatively. A randomized, controlled trial by Jackson and colleagues found that doing so had no operative benefit.

For D&E procedures, accurate determination of gestational age by ultrasound preoperatively is essential. Underestimation of gestational age can lead to inadequate dilation, which complicates the procedure. D&E differs from suction curettage in two principal ways: D&E requires wider cervical dilation, and physicians need forceps to evacuate more advanced pregnancies.

Dilating the cervix to a large diameter over several minutes manually can damage the cervix. Indeed, the first large study of this question revealed a higher incidence of low-birth-weight infants in subsequent desired pregnancies. Hence, D&E procedures beyond about 14 weeks’ gestation should use osmotic dilators. Patients must understand that once osmotic dilators have been inserted, the abortion needs completion. Occasionally the patient may abort just from the dilator. Rarely, a patient changes her mind about abortion after placement of an osmotic dilator. Although some women have continued their pregnancies uneventfully after removal of the devices, others have developed infections and/or aborted.

To achieve adequate dilation, many physicians insert osmotic dilators several hours to several days before D&E. (Fig. 33.12). For example, five laminaria placed overnight result in 1.5- to 2-cm dilation with minimal or no discomfort for most women. Use of a single Lamicel for about 4 hours produces as much dilation as do several laminaria at 14 to 16 weeks’ gestation. In the 13- to 16-week interval, vacuum alone is adequate; thereafter, forceps extraction predominates. A cannula 14 mm in diameter can evacuate pregnancies through about 16 menstrual weeks’ gestation. For later pregnancies, the cannula primarily drains amniotic fluid at the beginning of the evacuation and draws tissue into the lower uterus for forceps extraction. Specially designed forceps for D&E are far superior to standard sponge forceps. As with suction curettage, extraction should occur from the lower uterus to minimize the risks of

TABLE 33.1

PERCENTAGES OF REPORTED LEGAL ABORTIONS AT 13 MENSTRUAL WEEKS’ GESTATION AND GREATER, BY METHOD AND GESTATIONAL AGE, SELECTED STATES, UNITED STATES, 2002

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weeks of gestation</th>
<th>13–15</th>
<th>16–20</th>
<th>&gt;21</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type of procedure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curettage (D&amp;E)</td>
<td>99.1%</td>
<td>95.7%</td>
<td>85.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrauterine instillation</td>
<td>0.2%</td>
<td>1.7%</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical (nonsurgical)</td>
<td>0.2%</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
<td>3.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
<td>1.2%</td>
<td>9.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>100.0%</td>
<td>100.0%</td>
<td>100.0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

perforation. Some physicians use a flexible 8-mm cannula to confirm complete evacuation.

The physician must confirm completion by identifying all major fetal parts (4 extremities, spine, and calvarium). The calvarium is the component most frequently missed during the initial evacuation. Gentle exploration of the fundal and cornual areas with a large curette or forceps usually enables location and removal of the last remaining tissue. Ultrasound can be helpful. If ultrasonography is not available, the physician may be able to remove the speculum and insert one digit into the uterine cavity to locate the missing part.

If the abortion cannot be completed with ease, the physician should interrupt the procedure. A safe and simple remedy is to discontinue the operation and administer intravenous oxytocin to the woman for 2 to 3 hours in the recovery room. After the patient returns to the operating room, the physician usually finds the retained tissue at the internal os, from which it can be easily removed. No D&E abortion needs to finish in a single session; time often helps. Once membranes rupture, the uterus contracts to expel its contents.

In D&E abortions, the skill of the physician is critical. D&E abortion requires specific training that is often not routinely acquired in a U.S. ob/gyn residency. The likelihood that a physician will offer abortion services is highly correlated with whether he or she was trained in residency. The physician should study operative technique. He or she should then observe and assist skilled physicians and then perform D&E procedures only under direct supervision. Use of ultrasound guidance for residents learning D&E was associated with a dramatic lowering of the perforation rate and a reduction in operating time. The gestational age range can advance as skill grows. In summary, D&E is a specialized surgical technique that can be learned with appropriate training.

Labor Induction

Although D&E has supplanted many labor-induction abortions, the need for such abortions continues, particularly at later gestational age. In contrast to D&E, the proportion of abortions performed by labor induction increases with gestational age (Table 33.1).

Abortifacients include two broad groups: hypertonic solutions (e.g., saline or urea) and uterotonic agents (e.g., oxytocin or misoprostol). The mechanism of action of hypertonic solutions is unclear, but these agents usually result in fetal death from osmotic insult; labor then generally ensues. Uterotonic agents act directly on the myometrium to stimulate contractions. Prostaglandins available in the United States include misoprostol, prostaglandin E₂, prostaglandin E₁, prostaglandin F₂α, and mifepristone. Ashok et al. gave 800 μg misoprostol vaginally every 12 hours, with a maximum of four doses. Following 200 mg of mifepristone, Ashok et al. gave 800 μg misoprostol vaginally every 12 hours, with a maximum of four doses. This regimen resulted in 97% successful abortion with a mean induction to abortion time of 6.25 hours (in those that were successful). Of the 1,002 patients in the study, complications were seen in 11. Ten had significant bleeding, and seven required transfusion. One woman had significant hemorrhage and was found to have a myometrial tear upon laparotomy. She had received one dose of prostaglandin. Both misoprostol and misoprostol are not currently labeled for second-trimester termination.

Interest in high-dose oxytocin infusion for abortion has renewed. Oxytocin alone or rapid systemic administration of oxytocin can achieve complete abortion (80% to 90% of the time). The frequency of fever, vomiting, and diarrhea was significantly lower with oxytocin compared with prostaglandin E₂ and misoprostol. One regimen includes
oxytocin, 50 U in 500 mL of dextrose and normal saline administered intravenously over 3 hours; maintenance fluid (dextrose in normal saline) then follows for 1 hour. In stepwise fashion, the concentration of oxytocin increases by 50 U every 4 hours to a maximum of 300 U/500 mL. The investigators administered oxytocin in isotonic fluid and interrupted the oxytocin infusion every 4 hours for diuresis. With prolonged high-dose oxytocin infusion in hypotonic solutions, water intoxication and death can result.

The decision about labor induction in women with a previous uterine scar remains a difficult one for clinicians. There are reports of uterine rupture with previous cesarean delivery in both misoprostol and prostaglandin E2. Some have reported uterine rupture rates of approximately 4% in those with previous hysterotomies undergoing medical induction compared with 0.2% in those with unscarred uteri. Conversely, a case series of 100 women at 14 to 28 weeks with previous cesarean delivery undergoing induction with misoprostol reported no uterine ruptures. Further study is necessary. Women with a uterine scar require detailed counseling about the risk of rupture. If induction is chosen, it should be completed in a hospital setting where complications can be managed appropriately.

Direct cervical dilation has been investigated in its role for decreasing the induction interval. Some studies show that osmotic dilators can shorten induction-to-abortion times if placed before the initiation of induction. A study by Borgota and associates indicates that placement of osmotic dilators at the time of induction may actually prolong the induction process. Further study is needed to answer this question. If induction progress stalls, a metotrexytine can be attempted. The physician inserts a sterile Foley catheter with a 30- to 75-mL balloon into the uterus, inflates the balloon with a sterile solution (not air), and ties the catheter to 0.5-kg orthopedic traction at the foot of the bed. A liter bag of intravenous fluids hung over the foot of the bed and tied to the catheter by a string also suffices. This method has the disadvantage of placing a foreign body in the uterus.

Much of the morbidity (and mortality) associated with labor induction abortion is preventable. Women undergoing labor induction need the same meticulous, attentive obstetric care as do women in labor with childbirth. If the membranes rupture, then labor must conclude within a reasonable period. In many cases, the preferred means of concluding a slow induction abortion is D&E. Twenty-four hours is a reasonable limit for labor-induction abortions. Frequently, the cervix is open several centimeters, and D&E proceeds quickly. Similarly, active management of a retained placenta after abortion prevents morbidity. If spontaneous delivery of the placenta has not occurred after delivery, the placenta should be removed by suction curettage. Notably, misoprostol is associated with a significantly lower rate of retained placenta when compared with prostaglandin E2 or oxytocin (2% vs. 15%).

**Complications**

### Morbidity

Legal abortion in the United States is safe. Less than 1 woman in 100 develops a serious complication, and fewer than 1 in 100,000 dies as a result of the operation. This mortality rate is one tenth the rate for women who elect to continue their pregnancy.

Gestational age is one of two important determinants of the likelihood of morbidity. In Table 33.2, which lists serious
Abortion complications have three temporal categories: immediate, delayed, and late complications. Immediate complications are those that develop during or within 3 hours of the operation. Delayed complications occur more than 3 hours and up to 28 days after the procedure. Late complications develop thereafter.

### Immediate Complications

#### Hemorrhage

Reported rates of hemorrhage vary widely, reflecting both diverse definitions (100 to 1,000 mL blood loss) and imprecision in estimating volumes of blood loss. Rates of hemorrhage range from 0.03 to 4.9 per 100 abortions in large case-series reports. The best index of clinically important hemorrhage is probably the rate of blood transfusion. The rate of transfusion associated with suction curettage in a large multicenter study was 0.06 per 100 abortions. For abortions performed later in pregnancy, investigators have reported rates of 0.26 for D&E, 0.32 for urea-prostaglandin, and 1.72 for saline.

Vasopressin administered with paracervical anesthesia decreases blood loss with D&E abortion after 14 weeks' gestation. As little as 4 U (0.2 mL) mixed in with the anesthetic lowers the blood loss significantly; overall, vasopressin lowers fourfold the risk of a hemorrhage of 500 mL or more. It is important to remember to administer vasopressin when opting to administer regional or general anesthesia. In these instances, one would usually forego the paracervical block; however, use of a cervical anesthetic with vasopressin lowers risk of bleeding.

When hemorrhage occurs after suction curettage, it is most often due to uterine atony. Administration of uterotonic agents and manual compression usually resolve the problem. As with labor-related atony, methylergonovine maleate may be given (0.2 mg intramuscularly) as well as prostaglandins: carboprost 2.5–25 μg intramuscularly or misoprostol 1,000 μg per rectum. Should bleeding persist, assessment of the endometrial cavity by suction curettage should be done to rule out retained tissue. Occasionally, internal compression of the cavity by a large Foley catheter balloon or a vasopressin-soaked pack can be helpful. If these measures fail, uterine artery embolization can be done in a stable patient, with the last resort being hysterectomy.

With the increasing cohort of women who have had cesarean deliveries, the risk of encountering placenta accreta during abortion is increasing as well. In a series of more than 16,000 D&E abortions, the incidence of placenta accreta leading to hysterectomy was 4 per 10,000 cases.

#### Cervical Injury

Cervical injury encompasses a broad spectrum of trauma. The most common type is a superficial laceration caused by the tenaculum tearing off during dilation. At the other extreme are the cervicovaginal fistula and the longitudinal laceration ascending to the level of the uterine vessels. Rates of cervical injury range from 0.01 to 1.6 per 100 suction curettage abortions. In older studies, the incidence of cervical injury requiring sutures was about 1 per 100 suction curettage abortions.

Several risk factors for cervical injury during suction curettage have emerged. Among factors within the control of the physician, use of laminaria and performance of the abortion by an attending physician (rather than a resident) lower the risk significantly, whereas use of general anesthesia raises the risk significantly. Use of laminaria and performance of the abortion under local anesthesia by an attending physician together yield a 27-fold protective effect. Cervical preparation with misoprostol may confer similar benefits as laminaria, although more extensive experience will be needed to confirm this. Among factors beyond the control of the physician, a history of a prior abortion lowers the risk, and age of 17 years or younger increases the risk.

### Table 33.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gestational age (wk)</th>
<th>Rate[b]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–8</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9–10</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11–12</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13–14</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15–16</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17–20</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a For women with follow-up and without concurrent sterilization or preexisting conditions. Serious complications include temperature of 38°C or higher for 3 days or more, hemorrhage requiring blood transfusion, and any complication requiring unintended surgery (excluding curettage).

*b Per 100 abortions.

### Table 33.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Rate[c]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suction curettage</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dilatation and evacuation</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saline instillation</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostaglandin instillation</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urea-prostaglandin instillation</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a For women with follow-up and without concurrent sterilization or preexisting conditions. Serious complications include temperature of 38°C or higher for 3 days or more, hemorrhage requiring blood transfusion, and any complication requiring unintended surgery (excluding curettage).

*b Per 100 abortions.
Acute Hematomata. Also termed the postabortal syndrome, acute hematomata is an important complication of suction curettage; its cause is unknown. The incidence of this syndrome ranges from 0.1 to 1.0 per 100 suction curettage abortions, according to the available literature.

Women with this condition develop severe cramping, usually within 2 hours of the abortion. Vaginal bleeding is less than expected. The woman may be weak and sweaty, and her uterus is large and markedly tender. Treatment consists of prompt repeat curettage, usually without anesthesia or dilation. Evacuation of both liquid and clotted blood leads to rapid resolution of the symptoms. The physician can aspirate the blood with a suction cannula, a Karman cannula and syringe, or even a catheter attached to wall suction. Administration of a uterotonic after the repeat evacuation is standard. Whether routine prophylactic use of an oxytocic would reduce the incidence of acute hematomata is unknown.

Anesthesia Complications. Pain experienced during abortion relates not only to the choice of anesthesia but also to the characteristics of the patient. Young women (13 to 17 years old) and those with depression before the abortion report more pain than do other women. Local anesthesia is safer than general anesthesia for both first- and second-trimester abortions. In an Italian study, use of general anesthesia had a relative risk for all complications combined of 1.8 (95% confidence interval, 1.4 to 2.5). The largest effect occurred with hemorrhage. Similarly, use of general anesthesia for D&E abortion in the United States increases the risk of serious complications. Overall, the attributable risk related to general anesthesia is low, and many women are willing to assume incremental risks in order to have no discomfort during the operation.

Perforation. Perforation is a potentially serious, but infrequent complication of abortion. According to most reports, the incidence of perforation is about 0.2 per 100 suction curettage abortions.

Several risk factors for perforation exist. Performance of a curettage abortion by a resident rather than by an attending physician increases the risk more than fivefold; on the other hand, cervical dilation by laminaria decreases the risk about fivefold. The risk of perforation increases significantly with advancing gestational age. Multiparous women have three times the risk of nulliparous women. The use of routine ultrasonic guidance for D&E reduces the risk of perforation.

The two principal dangers of perforation are hemorrhage and damage to the abdominal contents. Lateral perforations in the cervicocervicocervical region are particularly hazardous because of the proximity of the uterine vessels. Perforations of the fundus are more likely to be innocuous. Indeed, most perforations are not suspected or detected. In a series of patients undergoing combined abortion and sterilization by laparoscopy, the investigators found a sixfold higher rate of uterine perforation than they had suspected clinically (20 versus 3 per 1,000 abortions).

Not all perforations require treatment. Many suspected or documented perforations require only observation. Perforation with a dilator or sound is unlikely to damage abdominal contents. If the perforation occurs before suction, the procedure can be completed under either ultrasound or laparoscopy guidance with extra observation after the procedure. On the other hand, perforation with a suction cannula or forceps warrants further surgery to rule out organ injury. It is recommended to administer broad-spectrum prophylactic antibiotics when perforation occurs. If the physician suspects a perforation, the procedure should stop immediately. If unmanageable hemorrhage, expanding hematoma, or injury to abdominal contents occurs, prompt laparotomy is necessary. In a stable patient, laparoscopy can be useful in documenting perforation and assessing damage; if necessary, the physician can complete the abortion under laparoscopic visualization. Any woman with severe pain within hours after the abortion should be evaluated for possible perforation with bowel injury.

Delayed Complications

Retained Tissue. Although retained tissue after abortion can pass without incident, it can also lead to hemorrhage, infection, or both. This complication occurs infrequently, however. Its incidence after suction curettage abortion is less than 1 per 100 abortions.

This complication usually manifests itself within several days of the abortion. Women present with cramping and bleeding, with or without fever. When women develop pain, bleeding, and low-grade fever after abortion, retained tissue may be present. Prompt administration of antibiotics along with outpatient suction curettage is needed. Close follow-up is necessary.

Infection. Postabortal infection can result simply from the procedure or from retained tissue. The presence of retained products warrants suction curettage. The likelihood of febrile morbidity after abortion depends on the method used. The incidence of fever of 38°C or higher for 1 or more days is usually less than 1 per 100 abortions by suction curettage. Corresponding figures for D&E are 1.5 per 100 abortions; for intrauterine prostaglandin, 6.3; and for hypertonic saline, 5.0. The organisms responsible for postabortal infection are similar to those responsible for other gynecologic infections.

A number of risk factors for infection exist. Women are at increased risk if they have untreated endocervical gonorrhea or chlamydial infection. Late abortions also increase the risk. Likewise, use of labor-induction abortion instead of D&E and use of local rather than general anesthesia for suction curettage increase the risk. Prophylactic antibiotics decrease the incidence of infection. Administration of broad-spectrum antibiotics and uterine curettage are the cornerstones of therapy.

Late Complications

Rh Sensitization. Legal abortion is a potentially important cause of Rh sensitization for women at risk. The likelihood of sensitization increases with advancing gestational age (and, hence, larger volumes of fetal erythrocytes). One study has quantified the risk of Rh sensitization from first-trimester suction curettage without RhIG prophylaxis. A total of 3.1% of women whose first pregnancy terminated by suction curettage without RhIG prophylaxis had antibodies in their second pregnancy. Subtracting 0.5% (the percentage of women estimated to have become sensitized primarily during the second pregnancy), the investigators estimated the risk of sensitization from suction curettage to be 2.6%. Thus, on a nationwide basis, the clinical impact of failure to administer RhIG to candidates after abortion may be substantial. Candidates should receive 50 μg of RhIG after abortions performed at 12 weeks’ gestation or earlier or 300 μg after abortions performed later in pregnancy.

Adverse Pregnancy Outcomes. Investigators have linked induced abortion with a broad array of adverse reproductive
outcomes, ranging from infertility to ectopic pregnancy. Most published reports, however, suffer from serious methodological shortcomings that limit their usefulness. To examine the potential association between first-trimester induced abortion and subsequent reproductive performance, epidemiologists have performed an exhaustive review and analysis of the world literature. This includes more than 150 epidemiologic studies published in 11 languages. The findings of this analysis are largely reassuring. No increase in the risk of secondary infertility and ectopic pregnancy appears, even in studies with substantial power to detect differences in rates. Midtrimester spontaneous abortion is no more common among women who have had one previous abortion than among women pregnant for the first time. Similarly, the risk of premature delivery does not increase for women having undergone induced abortion.

On the other hand, low birth weight is more frequent in first births after abortion by sharp curettage performed under general anesthesia compared with first-pregnancy births. This does not occur after other methods of abortion, such as suction curettage. The question of the effect of repeat induced abortion and second-trimester abortion remains unresolved, but repeat sharp curettage may carry increased risks. First-born infants of women who had one induced abortion have risks of morbidity and mortality similar to those of other first-born children.

Additional studies have corroborated the absence of adverse effects of induced abortion on subsequent reproduction. Outcomes studied included infertility, ectopic pregnancy, spontaneous abortion, and adverse obstetric outcomes. One unresolved issue is placenta previa. Sophisticated studies have found either no or a marginally significant increase in the risk (relative risk, 1.3; 95% confidence interval, 1.0 to 1.6), which was comparable to that with spontaneous abortion.

Induced abortion does not threaten a woman's emotional health. In contrast, the most common emotional reactions to induced abortion are a sense of relief accompanied by sadness and loss. In several studies, abortion appeared to improve the emotional well-being of women by resolving an intense personal crisis. Specifically, claims of a postabortion trauma syndrome lack scientific merit.

The putative association between induced abortion and breast cancer remains controversial. Although a number of case-control studies have found an association, this appears because of recall bias among controls. Women who are well (controls) are less likely to report prior induced abortions than are women with breast cancer (cases). This type of information bias has been documented in studies from Sweden. Two large cohort studies, which are less likely to be biased than are case-control studies, have shown either no effect or a protective effect of induced abortion on later breast cancer. No firm evidence links abortion to other cancers.

**Mortality**

Since 1972, when the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention first began nationwide surveillance of abortion deaths, the safety of abortion has improved dramatically. As shown in Figure 33.15, the overall death rate fell from 4.1 deaths per 100,000 abortions in 1972 to 0.7 in the data published for the decade between 1988-1997.

The causes of death from legal abortion have changed as well. After abortion became legal in 1973, abortion-related deaths declined because of an increase in the skill and experience of providers. When the abortion surveillance system identified procedures that increased risks, practitioners changed their procedures to increase safety. For example, this led to the decline of instillation procedures identified as riskier in the 1970s and the use of general anesthesia in the 1980s. For the last time period reported, 1988 to 1997, the main causes of death were infection and hemorrhage, which accounted for...
about half of deaths. Embolism, anesthesia, and other causes accounted for the rest.

The risk of death from legal abortion, as reported by Bartlett and colleagues, increases exponentially with increasing gestational age: The earlier the abortion, the safer the abortion (Table 33.4). The risks from 1988 to 1997 (and therefore not including mifepristone abortions) are as follows: The risk with gestational age ≤8 weeks is 1 per million, at 12 weeks is 0.4 per 100,000, at 16 to 20 is 3.4, and at ≥21 weeks is 8.9 per 100,000 procedures (76 times higher than with the earliest procedures). Given the fact that earlier abortions are safer, issues such as access to abortion are medically relevant. These include number of trained providers, cost, and gestational age limit of particular institutions.

The risk of death for women of black and other races was about twice that of white women. For women having second-trimester procedures, mortality rates for D&E were 2.5 times lower than those for instillation and other procedures, although this was not statistically significant. No statistically significant risk category was higher than 10 per 100,000.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk category</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Rate</th>
<th>Relative risk and 95% confidence interval</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age group (y)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≤9</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>1.2 (0.6–2.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20–24</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1.1 (0.6–2.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25–29</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Referent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30–34</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>1.3 (0.7–2.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥35</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.3 (0.6–2.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>Referent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>1.9 (1.0–3.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>2.1 (0.9–5.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational age (wk)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≤8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>Referent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9–10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>1.4 (0.5–4.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11–12</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>3.4 (1.2–9.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13–15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>14.7 (6.2–34.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16–20</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>29.3 (12.9–67.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥21</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>76.6 (32.5–180.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time period</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1972–1979</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>3.1 (2.4–4.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1980–1987</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1.1 (0.8–1.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1988–1997</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>Referent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**
- Number of legal abortion-related deaths.
- Rate of legal abortion deaths as number per 100,000 abortions.
- Denominators for calculating rates by parity use previous live-birth data from abortion surveillance. Deaths with unknown parity are excluded.
- Deaths with unknown gestational age are excluded.

### Best Surgical Practices

- Management of spontaneous abortion includes expectant management, medical management with misoprostol, and suction curettage. Suction can be accomplished with a hand-held syringe or an electric vacuum source. Patient preference can direct management plan in most cases.
- Diagnosis of cervical incompetence remains variable in consistency. Cerclage placement can be used in women with a history of repeated premature cervical dilation without labor. The McDonald and Shirodkar cerclages are most common, with the McDonald being technically easier to place.
- Septic abortion requires aggressive management. This includes obtaining intravenous and blood cultures, administration of broad-spectrum antibiotics, and prompt surgical evacuation of the uterus.
- Suction curettage is the most frequent method of legal abortion in the United States. Manual vacuum aspiration is increasing in use. Both may safely be done in outpatient facilities.
- Preoperative medical evaluation for elective abortion should include patient’s medical, surgical, and anesthetic history, confirmation of gestational age, and thorough counseling about all available options, including continuing pregnancy, adoption, and medical and surgical abortion. Abortion regulations vary by state and should be followed by providers.
- Cervical dilation necessary for suction curettage can be achieved with osmetic dilators, medical preparation with misoprostol, or manual dilation. If manual dilation is necessary, a variety of dilators are available. Gentle dilation is critical in preventing uterine perforation.
- The incidence of retained products of conception after suction curettage can be decreased if aspirated tissue is inspected for presence of fetal tissue or chorionic villi.

### Conclusion

Abortion is the most frequent outcome of human conception; thus, management of abortion complications is an important responsibility for physicians. Chromosomal anomalies are the single most important cause of spontaneous abortion. For women with threatened abortion, use of ultrasonography and β-hCG monitoring can help predict the outcome of the pregnancy. Evacuation of the uterus in cases of fetal death is primarily for psychological rather than medical indications; either curettage or labor induction may be appropriate. Premature cervical dilation without labor is a poorly understood cause of spontaneous abortion. There is no uniform case definition and no valid diagnostic test. Randomized clinical trials reveal modest benefit of cervical cerclage on obstetric outcomes.

Small numbers of illegal abortions continue to occur in the United States. Legally induced abortion, however, is one of the most frequently performed—and one of the safest—operations in contemporary practice. Less than 1 per 100 of those having an abortion suffers a major complication, and less than 1 per 100,000 dies from causes associated with the procedure. The marketing of mifepristone in the United States for early abortion has broadened the options available to women, and use of misoprostol for cervical preparation before curettage represents important advances in gynecology.
Prophylactic antibiotic use is indicated when instruments are introduced into the uterus, as in suction curettage, manual evacuation, aspiration, and D&E.

Medical abortion with misoprostol and misoprostol is a safe way to terminate early pregnancies. Two regimens exist: one approved by the FDA and another that reflects recent evidence in the literature. Either one, with thorough understanding of the regimen, have access to emergency care if needed, and be able to follow up to ensure completion of the procedure.

Second-trimester pregnancy terminations can be achieved by surgery with dilation and evacuation (D&E) or with medications to cause labor. D&E is generally safer and faster, often can be performed on an outpatient basis, and can be used to terminate pregnancies up to 15 weeks gestation. D&E is generally considered best when the pregnancy is larger than about 10 weeks, in order to decrease the risk of complications. Surgical complications, and Rh sensitization. Morbidity and mortality from legal abortion is very rare.

Bibliography


Coombs MD, Verheugen E. Methotrexate and misoprostol vs. misoprostol alone for a second trimester randomized control trial. JAMA 1994;272:1190.


Jackson JA, Tep $('#documentTitle').append('<div class="section">Surgery for Obstetrics</div>'); document.getElementById('documentTitle').innerHTML = 'Surgery for Obstetrics';


World Health Organization. Management of Medical Abortion 797.
CHAPTER 34 ■ ECTOPIC PREGNANCY

MARK A. DAMARIO AND JOHN A. ROCK

DEFINITIONS

Abdominal pregnancy—A pregnancy that develops in the peritoneal cavity. Most abdominal pregnancies are secondary, the result of early tubal abortion or rupture with secondary implantation of the pregnancy into the peritoneal cavity. A primary abdominal pregnancy is one that implants directly into the peritoneal cavity.

Arias-Stella reaction—A reaction in endometrial cells associated (but not exclusively) with ectopic pregnancy, showing nuclear enlargement, irregularity, and hyperchromasia with cytoplasmic vacuolization.

β-hCG assay—A quantitative determination of the serum concentration of the human chorionic gonadotropin hormone obtained using a highly sensitive immunoassay that is specific for the β-subunit of human chorionic gonadotropin. Useful in the early diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy.

Cervical pregnancy—A pregnancy developing in the cervical canal below the level of the internal os.

Culdocentesis—Aspiration of fluid from the cul-de-sac (pouch of Douglas) via a needle puncturing the vaginal wall between the uterosacral ligaments.

Dilatation and curettage—A surgical procedure in which the endometrial cavity contents are removed and submitted for histologic study. Useful in the early diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy when β-hCG assays and transvaginal ultrasonography are nondiagnostic and a nonviable pregnancy is suspected.

Ectopic pregnancy—A pregnancy that develops following implantation anywhere other than the endometrial cavity of the uterus.

Heterotopic pregnancy—Combined intrauterine and extrauterine pregnancy.

Interstitial pregnancy—A pregnancy developing in the interstitial portion of the oviduct.

Laparoscopy—A surgical technique that allows for both diagnosis and treatment of an ectopic pregnancy. Remains as the “gold standard” method of diagnosis.

Ovarian pregnancy—A pregnancy developing in the ovary. Criteria for diagnosis includes the following: (i) the ipsilateral tube is intact and clearly separate from the ovary, (ii) the gestational sac definitely occupies the normal position of the ovary, (iii) the sac is connected to the uterus by the uteroovarian ligament, and (iv) ovarian tissue is unquestionably demonstrated in the wall of the sac.

Persistent ectopic pregnancy—Continued presence of viable trophoblastic tissue after conservative surgical treatment of an unruptured ectopic pregnancy. The typical presentation includes persistence of β-hCG concentrations that do not fall appropriately following conservative surgery.

Salpingotomy—Operative opening made in the oviduct that is used to remove an unruptured tubal pregnancy for the purpose of retaining the oviduct.

Salpingectomy—Operative removal of an oviduct.

Serum progesterone assay—A quantitative determination of the serum concentration of progesterone hormone. Useful in the early diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy.

Transvaginal ultrasonography—Ultrasound imaging of the female pelvis using an endoscopic probe placed in the vagina. Useful in the early diagnosis of an ectopic pregnancy.

Tubal pregnancy—The most common type of ectopic pregnancy. May involve the ampullary, fimbrial, or isthmic portion of the oviduct.

ECTOPIC PREGNANCY

Salpingotomy was first recognized in 1693 by Busiere when he was examining the body of a prisoner executed in Paris. Gifford of England made a more complete report in 1731 that described the condition of a fertilized ovum implanted outside the uterine cavity. Ectopic pregnancy has since become recognized as one of the more serious complications of pregnancy. One of the leading causes of maternal morbidity and mortality in the United States, it still accounted for 6% of all maternal deaths from 1991 to 1999, according to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Despite significant advances in diagnosis and treatment, ectopic pregnancy remains the leading cause of maternal death in the first trimester.

Today, early diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy is possible with highly sensitive and rapid β-human chorionic gonadotropin (β-hCG) assays and the aid of advanced vaginal ultrasonographic equipment. The benefit of early diagnosis is that expectant medical therapy or conservative surgery becomes possible. Conservative management in the case of a small ectopic pregnancy that is present without rupture is usually successful when preservation of the oviduct to maintain or enhance fertility is important. Physicians should maintain a high index of suspicion for ectopic pregnancy and should be cognizant of the importance of early diagnosis and early intervention. This chapter summarizes the contemporary methods for diagnosis and treatment of ectopic pregnancy.

EPIDEMIOLOGY OF ECTOPIC PREGNANCY

Although the total number of pregnancies has declined over the past three decades, the rate of ectopic pregnancy has continued to increase in most western nations. In the United States, the incidence of ectopic pregnancy has increased from 4.5 per 1,000 pregnancies in 1970 to 19.7 per 1,000 pregnancies in 1995 (the last year for which national data are available). In Norway, an increase from 12.1 to 18.0 per 1,000 pregnancies was reported from 1976 to 1993. One contributing factor for the rising ratio of extrauterine to intrauterine pregnancies is felt to be the rising incidence of sexually transmitted diseases as well as the efficacy of modern antibiotic treatments for pelvic inflammatory disease (PID). A second factor may be the increased ability to detect the disease. Although the risk of death from ectopic
addition, Westrom found that approximately 4% of all preg-
two infections, and in 75% after three or more infections. In
bilateral tubal occlusion occurs in approximately 12.8% of pa-
oclusions, agglutination of the cilia can still occur, and synechial
After initial appropriate treatment of an infection with antibi-
are related to the increasing incidence of ectopic pregnancy.
levi and associates have demonstrated that the risk of ec-
topic pregnancy is increased in women with a primary history of
without antibiotics. After initial appropriate treatment of an infec-
the tubal lumen to cause partial tubal obstruction. Westrom has
demonstrated that trophoblastic infiltration can be predominantly
or, occasionally, mixed. It is impossible to ascertain in the op-
erating room the predominant pattern of growth of a given
women who attempted to conceive after a pelvic infection were suc-
totally occluded, and permanent sterility was the result. Women
who underwent salpingostomy for distal tubal obstruction ranges from 2%
with intrauterine pregnancies at the same stage of gestation.
were PCR positive for C. trachomatis DNA. Therefore, the in-
nutes old at the time of the study. In a subsequent study, Gerard and
found that of the patients undergoing salpingostomy for distal tubal
operative procedure on the oviduct, whether a sterilization
procedure or tubal reconstructive surgery, can cause an ectopic pregnancy. The incidence of ectopic pregnancies occurring after
neosalpingostomy for distal tubal obstruction ranges from 2% to
18% (Table 34.1). The rate of ectopic pregnancy after a microsurgical
reversal of a sterilization procedure is only about 4%, presumably because the tubal tubes have not been damaged by
prior infection.
the overall risk of an ectopic pregnancy is lowered in women
using oral contraceptives. When oral contraceptives fail, how-
ever, the risk of an ectopic pregnancy is slightly increased. This
increase is presumed secondary to the inhibitory progesterin ef-
fect on tubal motility. This hypothesis is supported by several
studies implicating progestin-only oral contraceptives in the
etiology of ectopic pregnancies.
risk that the pregnancy will be ectopic. The type of steriliza-
tion procedure and age of the patient at the time of sterilization
appear to be relevant factors. Women sterilized by bipolar tubal
coagulation before the age of 30 years had a probability of ec-
topic pregnancy that was 27 times as high as that of women of
similar age who underwent postpartum partial salpingectomy
(31.9 versus 1.2 ectopic pregnancies per 1,000 procedures).
In addition, ectopic pregnancy was often seen many years after
the sterilization procedure. The annual rates of ectopic preg-
nancy in the 4th through 10th years after sterilization were no
lower than that seen in the first 3 years.

The pathophysiology of ectopic pregnancy after elective
tubal sterilization is not clear. It is possible that a tuboperi-
toneal fistula in a previously coagulated segment of fallopian
tube may allow spermatozoa to escape and reach the oocyte.
Such fistulas have been demonstrated radiographically by Shah
and colleagues in 11% of 150 women after laparoscopic elec-
trocoagulation. Improper surgical technique (such as incom-
plete coagulation or misplacement of a mechanical device) may
also influence the sterilization failure rate and incidence of ec-
topic pregnancy, although their likelihood is presumably low.

**Assisted Reproductive Technologies**

Ectopic pregnancies are known to occur with increased fre-
quency after in vitro fertilization (IVF) and related techniques.
The Society for Assisted Reproductive Technology (SART) re-
ported that 2.1% of pregnancies established after IVF in the
United States during 2000 were ectopic. Several theories have
been proposed regarding the occurrence of ectopic implanta-
tion after transcervical intrauterine embryo transfer. Potential
factors include the possibility of direct injection of embryos
into the fallopian tube, uterine contractions provoked by the
transfer catheter that propel the embryos retrograde, position
or depth of the transfer catheter in the uterine cavity, and the
volume of transfer medium. Verhulst and colleagues reported
that tubal damage was a major risk factor. These researchers
found that the ectopic pregnancy rate after IVF was signifi-
cantly greater in patients with tubal disease (3.65% of pregnan-
cies) than in those without tubal disease (1.19% of pregnan-
cies). Strandell and associates found that a history of a previous
ectopic pregnancy and a history of a previous myomectomy
also appear to be risk factors for ectopic pregnancies following
IVF.

Tummon and coworkers reported a 2% risk of heterotopic
pregnancy in women undergoing IVF who had distorted tubal
anatomy. This is about 100 to 200 times the reported inci-
dence of combined intrauterine and extrauterine pregnancies
occurring spontaneously. These authors also found that the risk
of heterotopic pregnancy appeared to increase proportionately
with the number of embryos transferred.

**Developmental Anomalies**

Intramural polyps and tubal diverticula can block or alter tubal
transport of fertilized ova. Congenital absence of segments of
the fallopian tube with peritoneal fistulas can also predispose
to tubal pregnancy. Women exposed to diethylstilbestrol (DES)
in utero are at higher risk of ectopic pregnancy. These women
may have absent or minimal fimbriae and fallopian tubes that
are shorter and thinner than normal.

**Other Causal Factors**

Several studies have demonstrated that cigarette smoking seems
to be an independent, dose-related risk factor for ectopic pre-
gnancy. Other lifestyle factors, such as multiple sex partners and
early age at first intercourse, are associated with an increased
risk. Vaginal douching has also been associated with a slightly
increased risk of ectopic pregnancy, probably by increasing the
overall risk of pelvic infections and resultant tubal damage. A
summary of risk factors related to ectopic pregnancy is sum-
morized in Table 34.2.

**TABLE 34.1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Total pregnancy (%)</th>
<th>Pregnancy range (%)</th>
<th>Ectopic (%)</th>
<th>Ectopic range (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Salpingoscopy</td>
<td>Macrosurgery</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>35–65</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>1–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fimbrioplasty</td>
<td>Macrosurgery</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>31–69</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0–16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neosalpingostomy</td>
<td>Macrosurgery</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>36–50</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>10–18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubal anastomosis</td>
<td>Microsurgery</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>26–68</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4–11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removal of ectopic pregnancy</td>
<td>Salpingectomy</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>20–38</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>2–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Salpingostomy</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>17–44</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>0–18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Salpingostomy</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>23–83</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>0–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Microsurgery</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>33–78</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>1–6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Salpingectomy</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>38–49</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>8–17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Salpingostomy</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>39–73</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0–20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


About 95% of extrauterine implantations occur in the oviduct.
About 35% of these tubal implantations occur in the ampulla,
the most common site. Implantation in the isthmic portion ac-
counts for 20% to 25%, implantation in the infundibulum and
fimbria accounts for 17%, and implantation in the interstitial
segment (cornua) accounts for 2% to 4%. Ectopic implanta-
tions occur less often in the ovary, the cervix, and the peritoneal
cavity (Fig. 34.1).

Walters and colleagues reported that 16% of tubal preg-
nancies result from a contralateral ovulation. Transmigration

---

**SUMMARY: ECTOPIC PREGNANCY AFTER TUBAL SURGERY**

---
of the ovum in the peritoneal cavity can occur because the oviducts and ovaries may be situated close together in the cul-de-sac. Alternatively, this phenomenon could also result from transmigration of the embryo through the endometrial cavity into the opposite oviduct.

### EFFECTS OF ECTOPIC PREGNANCY ON FUTURE REPRODUCTION

Tubal pregnancy is associated with a poor prognosis for subsequent reproduction. In most cases, an extrauterine pregnancy represents an impairment of the fertilized ovum’s ability to migrate through the deep rugae of the oviduct as a result of altered tubal function. The morphologic abnormality is usually bilateral and irreversible, and can produce repeated ectopic pregnancies or permanent sterility. In a 1975 study, Shoen and Nowak concluded that about 70% of patients who have an ectopic first pregnancy are unable to produce a living child. As many as 40% of the patients who have an ectopic first pregnancy will have a repeat ectopic pregnancy, which compares with the total repeat ectopic rate of 10% to 15% for the overall population of reproductive-age women. More than half of the subsequent extrauterine pregnancies will occur within a 2-year period, and 80% will occur within 4 years of the initial ectopic pregnancy. In reviewing the experience of the Kaiser Foundation hospitals, Hallatt reported a 9.2% overall incidence of repeat ectopic pregnancies among 1,330 women who had extrauterine pregnancies. The potential reproductive capacity for a patient who has had an ectopic pregnancy therefore depends on her reproductive history. If an ectopic pregnancy was the result of her first reproductive effort, then the prognosis for future pregnancies is much worse than if the complication occurred after one or more successful pregnancies.

Mueller and associates have estimated that 92% of infertility in women who have had a tubal pregnancy results from tubal damage that is due to the tubal pregnancy itself or other factors that had predisposed to its occurrence. A history of infertility itself is a risk factor for ectopic pregnancy. A twofold increase in the risk of tubal pregnancy exists among infertile women with no evident abnormality during infertility evaluation.

### TUBAL ECTOPIC PREGNANCY

The morbidity and mortality associated with extrauterine pregnancy are directly related to the length of time required for diagnosis. In a CDC survey, two thirds of all patients who were later proven to have an ectopic pregnancy were previously seen by a physician, and either the diagnosis was deferred or the condition was incorrectly assessed. The mortality rate from an ectopic pregnancy is higher in rural areas, where patients are less likely to receive early medical care.

For a successful outcome, an ectopic pregnancy must be diagnosed early. In some clinics where the condition is treated frequently, more than 50% of cases are diagnosed and treated before tubal rupture occurs. In some cases, however, the symptoms that bring a patient to seek medical care are caused by an already leaking or ruptured ectopic pregnancy. As many as 15% of all tubal pregnancies rupture before the first missed menstrual period, particularly if a patient’s usual menstrual pattern is very irregular.

Diagnostic accuracy is often improved in repeat ectopic pregnancies. The vast majority of patients with repeat ectopic pregnancies will be diagnosed and treated before tubal rupture occurs. A difference with a repeat ectopic pregnancy is that the patient herself often raises the question of an extrauterine pregnancy. Being suspicious, the patient may seek medical care earlier and provides a more specific medical history than does a patient experiencing her first ectopic pregnancy. The result is often an earlier diagnosis and an improved chance for a successful outcome.

Some form of vaginal bleeding occurs around the expected time of menses in more than 50% of women with an ectopic pregnancy, so that many patients and their physicians are unaware that a pregnancy has occurred. The vaginal bleeding may be followed by a period of amenorrhea. Clinical symptoms of an ectopic pregnancy usually appear 6 to 10 weeks after the last normal menstrual period.

### DIAGNOSIS

#### Classic Symptoms: Pain, Bleeding, and Adnexal Mass

The classic presentation of pain and uterine bleeding with the finding of an adnexal mass has been the clinical hallmark of an extrauterine pregnancy, but even classic presentations can be misleading. Schwartz and DiPietro observed that of the

---

**TABLE 34.2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RISK FACTORS FOR ECTOPIC PREGNANCY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chronic pelvic inflammatory disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior tubal surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical sterilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of an intrauterine device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous ectopic pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diethylstilbesterol (DES) exposure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progestin-only contraceptives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assisted reproductive technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infertility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Developmental tubal anomalies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple sex partners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early age at first intercourse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cigarette smoking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal douching</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**FIGURE 34.1.** Sites and incidence of ectopic pregnancy.
 Third IS, and Fourth IS are highly purified preparations that IS has been exhausted and is no longer used. The First IRP, β unit of initially developed for use in hCG bioassays. One international reference standards used by the available commercial kits national Standards (Third or Fourth IS) are the most commonly determining the viability of pregnancy. To optimally use β reference standards for should first have a thorough understanding of the particular data in treating a patient with a problematic pregnancy, one serum as early as 7 to 8 days after ovulation, or approximately β hCG as low as 5 IU/L of serum with less than a 0.2% incidence in the past. A immunoassay for to the traditional radioimmunoassay methods commonly used automated β-hCG assays; (ii) the ability to use ultrasound to β-hCG levels is useful in de- β-subunit, on the other hand, is specific to hCG, and antibodies against the β-subunit form the basis for current immunoassays. Current commercial automated β-hCG immunoassays use enzyme fluorometry, en- zyme spectrometry, or chemiluminescence methods, as opposed to the traditional radioimmunoassay methods commonly used in the past. A immunoassay for β-hCG can detect levels of hCG as low as 1 IU/L of serum with less than a 0.2% incidence of false-negative results, β-hCG can be detected in maternal serum as early as 7 to 8 days after ovulation, or approximately the day after blastocyst implantation.

The quantification of serum β-MG levels is useful in de- termining the viability of pregnancy. To optimally use β-hCG data in treating a patient with a problematic pregnancy, one should first have a thorough understanding of the particular assay used. The World Health Organization has established ref- erence standards for β-hCG assays. The Third or Fourth Inter- national Standards (Third or Fourth IS) are the most commonly used reference standards used by the available commercial kits of today. These standards are roughly equivalent to the First International Reference Preparation (First IRP), but are quite a bit different from the Second International Standard (Second IS). The Second IS contains about 20% intact hCG and was ini- tially developed for use in hCG biosyntheses. One international unit of β-hCG based on the First IRP is equal to approximately 0.58 IU of β-hCG using the Second IS. Fortunately, the Second IS has been exhausted and is no longer used. The First IRP, Third IS, and Fourth IS are highly purified preparations that were developed to overcome the deficiencies seen in the use of a heterogeneous standard. This notwithstanding, due to the continuing variation of assay methodologies and β-hCG stan- dards, there remains considerable between-method variation in β-hCG assay results. Serum hCG concentrations increase in an exponential fash- ion in early pregnancy. During the period of gestation in which the hCG concentration is less than 10,000 IU/L (First IRP), or about 23 to 30 days postovulation, the time required for doubling of hCG levels remains constant, with a mean of 1.9 days. Kadar and colleagues reported that 87% of women with ectopic pregnancies and 15% of women with normal intrauterine pregnancies could expect to have hCG doubling times of more than 2.7 days when the hCG concentration measured less than 6,000 IU/L. The lower limits of the increase in serum hCG for viable intrauterine pregnancies have been established by Barnhart and colleagues in a large cohort study. In this study, the serial β-hCG titres of 287 women who presented with pain and/or bleeding in the first trimester and were ultimately di- agnosed with a viable intrauterine pregnancy were evaluated. For viable intrauterine gestations less than 10 weeks from last menstrual period or those with an initial β-hCG titre less than 5,000 mIU/mL, the investigators noted that the curve generated for serial hCG concentrations best fit a log-linear model. Overall, β-hCG concentrations tended to double every 2 days. The median rise of hCG after 1 day was 50% and after 2 days was 124%. The slower or minimal rise for a normal viable in- trauterine pregnancy, however, was 24% at 1 day and 53% at 2 days. Interval β-hCG determinations interpreted within the context of several values can therefore be of prognostic signifi- cance in the differentiation between normal intrauterine versus extraterine pregnancies. A normal rise in hCG production, however, does not always differentiate an ectopic from a vi- able intrauterine pregnancy. Shepherd and associates reported that, in their experience, a normal rise in hCG production, not reliably differentiate an ectopic from a viable intrauterine pregnancy in the symptomatic patient. Early ectopic pregnan- cies can initially secrete appropriate amounts of hCG because of a well-vascularized placental bed.

### Diagnostic Studies

Three major advances have made early diagnosis of exsterrau- ine pregnancy possible: (i) the development of highly sensitive and rapid β-hCG assays; (ii) the ability to use ultrasound to evaluate the uterus and the adnexa (vaginal sonography further increases the accuracy of diagnosis); and (iii) the application of laparoscopy as a diagnostic tool. Culpodocentesis or suction curettage, or both, can be useful under certain circumstances (e.g., to help establish the presence of a hemoperitoneum or a notviable intrauterine pregnancy, respectively). Other newer diagnostic methods, such as serum progesterone assays or color Doppler flow analyses, can also provide useful information.

### β-hCG Assays

The principal endocrine marker of pregnancy is human chori- onic gonadotropin (hCG), which is synthesized by the tro- phoblast. Human chorionic gonadotropin is a glycoprotein consisting of two subunits: α and β. The α subunit has signif- icant homology with other glycoprotein hormones, such as follicle-stimulating hormone, luterenizing hormone, and thyroid-stimulating hormone. The β-subunit, on the other hand, is specific to hCG, and antibodies against the β-subunit form the basis for current immunoassays. Current commercial automated β-hCG immunoassays use enzyme fluorometry, en- zyme spectrometry, or chemiluminescence methods, as opposed to the traditional radioimmunoassay methods commonly used in the past. A immunoassay for β-hCG can detect levels of hCG as low as 1 IU/L of serum with less than a 0.2% incidence of false-negative results, β-hCG can be detected in maternal serum as early as 7 to 8 days after ovulation, or approximately the day after blastocyst implantation.

The quantification of serum β-MG levels is useful in de- termining the viability of pregnancy. To optimally use β-hCG data in treating a patient with a problematic pregnancy, one should first have a thorough understanding of the particular assay used. The World Health Organization has established ref- erence standards for β-hCG assays. The Third or Fourth Inter- national Standards (Third or Fourth IS) are the most commonly used reference standards used by the available commercial kits of today. These standards are roughly equivalent to the First International Reference Preparation (First IRP), but are quite a bit different from the Second International Standard (Second IS). The Second IS contains about 20% intact hCG and was ini- tially developed for use in hCG biosyntheses. One international unit of β-hCG based on the First IRP is equal to approximately 0.58 IU of β-hCG using the Second IS. Fortunately, the Second IS has been exhausted and is no longer used. The First IRP, Third IS, and Fourth IS are highly purified preparations that were developed to overcome the deficiencies seen in the use of a heterogeneous standard. This notwithstanding, due to the continuing variation of assay methodologies and β-hCG stan- dards, there remains considerable between-method variation in β-hCG assay results. Serum hCG concentrations increase in an exponential fash- ion in early pregnancy. During the period of gestation in which the hCG concentration is less than 10,000 IU/L (First IRP), or about 23 to 30 days postovulation, the time required for doubling of hCG levels remains constant, with a mean of 1.9 days. Kadar and colleagues reported that 87% of women with ectopic pregnancies and 15% of women with normal intrauterine pregnancies could expect to have hCG doubling times of more than 2.7 days when the hCG concentration measured less than 6,000 IU/L. The lower limits of the increase in serum hCG for viable intrauterine pregnancies have been established by Barnhart and colleagues in a large cohort study. In this study, the serial β-hCG titres of 287 women who presented with pain and/or bleeding in the first trimester and were ultimately di- agnosed with a viable intrauterine pregnancy were evaluated. For viable intrauterine gestations less than 10 weeks from last menstrual period or those with an initial β-hCG titre less than 5,000 mIU/mL, the investigators noted that the curve generated for serial hCG concentrations best fit a log-linear model. Overall, β-hCG concentrations tended to double every 2 days. The median rise of hCG after 1 day was 50% and after 2 days was 124%. The slower or minimal rise for a normal viable in- trauterine pregnancy, however, was 24% at 1 day and 53% at 2 days. Interval β-hCG determinations interpreted within the context of several values can therefore be of prognostic signifi- cance in the differentiation between normal intrauterine versus extraterine pregnancies. A normal rise in hCG production, however, does not always differentiate an ectopic from a vi- able intrauterine pregnancy. Shepherd and associates reported that, in their experience, a normal rise in hCG production, not reliably differentiate an ectopic from a viable intrauterine pregnancy in the symptomatic patient. Early ectopic pregnan- cies can initially secrete appropriate amounts of hCG because of a well-vascularized placental bed.

### Serum Progesterone Assay

Serum progesterone levels reflect the production of proges- terone by the corpus luteum in early pregnancy. During the first 8 to 10 weeks of gestation, serum progesterone concentrations change little; as pregnancy fails, the levels decrease. Matthews and colleagues and reported progesterone levels in 29 patients with ectopic pregnancy using a direct radioimmunoassay that offers results within 4 hours. Patients with normal intrauterine pregnan- ncies had serum progesterone levels greater than 20 ng/mL, and all patients with ectopic pregnancies had progesterone lev- els less than 15 ng/mL. Yeko and associates proposed that all ectopic pregnancies could be potentially diagnosed at the first emergency visit with a single serum progesterone determina- tion using a discriminatory value of 15 ng/mL. Other authors, however, have demonstrated some overlap in the serum pro- gesterone concentrations in ectopic and normal intrauterine pregnancies. One large study by Gelder and colleagues reported that 98% of patients with a normal intrauterine pregnancy had progesterone levels greater than 10 ng/mL and that 98% of pa- tients with ectopic pregnancies not associated with ovulation induction had progesterone levels less than 20 ng/mL. Unfortu- nately, 31% of viable intrauterine pregnancies, 23% of abnor- mal intrauterine pregnancies, and 31% of ectopic pregnancies in this series had progesterone levels that fell between 10 and 20 ng/mL, which greatly limited the clinical usefulness of the test. Hahlin and colleagues reported that a serum progesterone
value of less than 9.4 ng/mL combined with an abnormal hCG increase had a positive predictive value of 1.0 for pathologic pregnancy. In a group of more than 1,000 first-trimester pregnant patients, the lowest serum progesterone level associated with a viable pregnancy was 5.1 ng/mL. Therefore, these investigators established the lower cutoff limit of serum progesterone levels of 3 mg/mL; patients below this threshold had a nonviable pregnancy with 100% certainty and therefore underwent curettage. Patients with serum progesterone levels greater than 2.5 mg/mL had a 97% likelihood of having a viable intrauterine pregnancy in this study.

Transvaginal Ultrasonography

Pelvic ultrasound has revolutionized the diagnostic process of ectopic pregnancy. Transvaginal ultrasonography, in particular, may identify masses in the adnexa as small as 10 mm in diameter and can provide more detail about the character of the mass than clinical exam (Fig. 34.2). At the same time, transvaginal ultrasonography can evaluate the contents of the endometrial cavity and can document the presence of a viable intrauterine pregnancy with great accuracy. In addition, transvaginal ultrasonography allows for the simultaneous assessment for the presence of free peritoneal fluid.

Transvaginal ultrasonography is usually considered superior to transabdominal ultrasonography in the diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy. Although the latter provides a broader perspective of the abdominal cavity and pelvis, transvaginal ultrasonography generally provides better resolution of the internal female genitalia. A 5-MHz transvaginal transducer allows for a deeper penetration of the pelvis than transducers of higher frequency, whereas a 7.5-MHz transvaginal transducer provides for better near-resolution at the cost of shallower penetration. On rare occasions, an ectopic pregnancy may be located beyond the reach of the transvaginal transducer and can provide more detail about the character of the mass. Techniques such as the direct imaging of the ectopic pregnancy using transvaginal ultrasonography is highly specific for ectopic pregnancy (98.9%), with a high positive predictive value (96.3%). These authors described that the direct imaging of the ectopic pregnancy using transvaginal ultrasonography allows for the simultaneous assessment for the presence of free peritoneal fluid.

Although diagnosis by transvaginal ultrasound can be quite useful, it may at times be confusing. One problem is that a pseudogestational sac that is due to a decidual cast can be mistaken for an amnionic sac. A useful differentiating feature is the “double-line” image, caused by the faint hypoechogenic decidual lining of the uterus and the hyperechogenic rim of the trophoblast surrounding the gestational sac. The double-line image can be seen as early as 5 weeks after the last menstrual period. Even in the presence of the double-line image, however, it is important to further follow the course of pregnancy and subsequently confirm a viable intrauterine pregnancy with the ascertainment of ultrasonographically imaged intrauterine cardiac motion.

Although not always seen, Frates and Laing reported that the presence of a nonscystic extravasation adrenal mass, extratubal cardiac motion, or a “tubal ring” by transvaginal ultrasonography is highly specific for ectopic pregnancy (98.9%), with a high positive predictive value (96.3%). These authors described that the direct imaging of the ectopic pregnancy using transvaginal ultrasonography allows for the simultaneous assessment for the presence of free peritoneal fluid.

Table 34.3

PREGNANCY EARLIEST SEEN WITH ULTRASONOGRAPHY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Early intrauterine pregnancy</th>
<th>Endovaginal</th>
<th>Transabdominal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gestational sac seen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational sac size</td>
<td>4.3 wk</td>
<td>4.3 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational sac age</td>
<td>4.4 wk</td>
<td>5.0 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double decidual outline</td>
<td>0.6–0.7 cm</td>
<td>1.0 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational sac size</td>
<td>4.6 wk (34 d)</td>
<td>5.0 wk (35 d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yolk sac seen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational sac size</td>
<td>0.7 cm</td>
<td>1.0 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational sac age</td>
<td>4.6 wk</td>
<td>6.0 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal pole seen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational sac size</td>
<td>0.7 cm</td>
<td>1.7 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational sac age</td>
<td>4.6 wk</td>
<td>6.0 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal heart motion seen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crown–rump length</td>
<td>0.3 cm</td>
<td>0.6 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational sac age</td>
<td>4.6 wk (34 d)</td>
<td>5.5 wk (47 d)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


FIGURE 34.2. Tubal ectopic pregnancy documented by endovaginal sonography.
The advent of color-flow Doppler technology may even further improve the accuracy of noninvasive diagnostic methods. Kurjak and colleagues reported that ectopic pregnancies are characterized by the identification of peritrophoblastic flow associated with an adnexal mass by color Doppler techniques. Kurcler and coworkers showed that color Doppler qualitative blood flow analyses of the tubal arteries can help localize the side of a tubal ectopic pregnancy. These investigators reported a between-side difference in tubal blood flow of 20% to 45%, with increased blood flow seen on the side of the ectopic pregnancy. Emerson and colleagues demonstrated that color-flow Doppler capability can help differentiate between viable intrauterine pregnancy, completed abortion, incomplete abortion, or ectopic pregnancy. Histologic endometrial changes associated with an adnexal mass identified as an ectopic pregnancy by transvaginal ultrasonography identified an ectopic pregnancy with 100% accuracy. Even using a discriminatory serum β-hCG concentration of 1,000 IU/L or higher, an empty uterus on transvaginal ultrasonography reliably detects intrauterine gestations as early as 1 week after missed menses (β-hCG > 1,350 IU/L; 5–6 weeks’ gestation), Burnhart and associates reported that with a β-hCG concentration of 1,500 IU/L or higher, an empty uterus on transvaginal ultrasonography identified an ectopic pregnancy with 100% accuracy. Even using a discriminatory serum β-hCG concentration of 1,000 IU/L, Cacciatore and associates identified an intrauterine gestation in all intrauterine pregnancies and in none of the ectopic pregnancies. Furthermore, these investigators reported that the detection of an adnexal mass in combination with an empty uterus had a sensitivity of 97%, specificity of 99%, positive predictive value of 98%, and negative predictive value of 98%, provided that serum β-hCG concentrations exceeded 1,000 IU/L. The coupling of hCG titers with transvaginal ultrasound equipment, and sonographer experience, each institution must determine their own discriminatory thresholds for the sonographic detection of an intrauterine pregnancy.

The atypical epithelial changes of the gestational endometrium in a case of tubal pregnancy were first described by Polak and Wolfe in 1924 and these changes were further expanded on by Arias-Stella in 1954 (Fig. 34.3). These comprise a highly controversial set of histologic criteria that depend, for accuracy, on the precise definition of the particular cell type involved in the morphologic change, together with ill-defined physiologic events that reportedly produce the changes. Arias-Stella and others were convinced that these histologic changes are a progressive phenomenon resulting from the exaggerated proliferative and secretory endometrial responses to the elevated hormonal levels of pregnancy. Lloyd and Fienberg disagreed, maintaining that these endometrial changes are progressive, involutorial, and are the result of declining hormonal levels. Whichever hypothesis is ultimately proven, similar endometrial changes may be seen with a normal pregnancy, spontaneous abortion, or ectopic pregnancy. Histologic endometrial criteria, therefore, seems to have limited value in the specific diagnosis of extrauterine pregnancies.

FIGURE 34.3. Arias-Stella reaction in endometrial cells associated with ectopic pregnancy, showing nuclear enlargement, irregularity, and hyperchromasia with cytoplasmic vacuolation.
Culdocentesis

Culdocentesis is a diagnostic tool for identifying the presence of intrauterine bleeding. This simple procedure of inserting an 18-gauge spinal needle attached to a 50-mL aspirating syringe into the cul-de-sac between the uterosacral ligaments (Fig. 34.4) provides immediate clinical information when unclotted blood is aspirated from the cul-de-sac. The procedure cannot be used for a definitive diagnosis, of course, because a tubal pregnancy may not have ruptured or leaked into the peritoneal cavity. In addition, a culdocentesis does not provide information concerning whether the blood is from an ectopic pregnancy or from some other cause of intraabdominal bleeding. The rupture of a corpus luteal hemorrhagic cyst, for instance, may cause a similar bleeding pattern. The availability of sensitive transvaginal ultrasonographic technology presently limits the usefulness of the culdocentesis procedure, such that it is rarely presently performed. Free intraperitoneal blood has a characteristic ultrasonographic appearance and can be seen in nearly all cases in which a significant intraperitoneal hemorrhage has occurred. In the absence of the immediate availability of transvaginal ultrasonography or in an emergency setting, however, a culdocentesis may still be of value.

Laparoscopy

Laparoscopy remains the gold standard in the detection of ectopic pregnancy, although noninvasive diagnostic methods continue to improve. In addition to permitting the diagnosis of an ectopic pregnancy, it enables surgical treatment. Laparoscopy also provides an opportunity to visualize the entire pelvis and other peritoneal organs. In particular, the condition of the unaffected fallopian tube can be assessed, as well as the presence of pelvic adhesions and endometriosis. This information may be particularly valuable for those patients interested in future fertility. The disadvantage of laparoscopy is that it is an invasive procedure that carries some risk of complications. Using standard methods, it requires general anesthesia and an operating room setting, thereby contributing to increased medical costs. Recent investigators, however, have been exploring the potential of “microlaparoscopy,” in which improved optics and smaller-diameter laparoscopes and trocars allow for a definitive diagnosis and possible treatment in the nonoperating room setting. Several authors have reported the encouraging use of microlaparoscopy in the office setting, using local rather than general anesthesia. The specific utility of microlaparoscopy, however, for the primary evaluation and treatment of ectopic pregnancy remains to be established.

Laparoscopy may be useful when an ectopic pregnancy is suspected but no signs of an ultrasonographically visualized extrauterine gestational sac is evident. This includes situations in which there is an inability to visualize an intrauterine gestational sac and serial β-hCG determinations are rising inappropriately. This also includes situations in which a D&C fails to identify products of conception. One must be careful, however, in settings in which the β-hCG determinations are very low or the gestational age is limited. In these settings, the ectopically implanted gestational mass may be so small that it is still not able to be seen at laparoscopy. The clinician and patient might therefore be falsely reassured by negative laparoscopic findings. All patients without a definitive diagnosis established at laparoscopy should continue to be followed closely.

Other Potential Diagnostic Aids

Gleicher et al. described the use of hysterosalpingography and selective salpingography in differentiating early (biochemical) intrauterine from failing intratubal gestations. A characteristic tubal opacification pattern was seen in the cases of early tubal pregnancy. Confino and coworkers reported that selective salpingography was useful in diagnosing early tubal pregnancies in some patients with equivocal clinical, laboratory, and sonographic findings. In addition, these investigators injected a single dose of methotrexate through the selective salpingography catheter after cannulation of the tubal ostia and identification of a characteristic ampullary radiolucency in seven patients. Each had subsequent complete resolution of the pregnancy without complication. Risquez and colleagues reported the successful visualization of two ectopic pregnancies by transcervical tubal cannulation and falloposcopy. The falloposcope is a microendoscopic instrument 0.5 mm in external diameter that is introduced by a 1-mm coaxial catheter. Although limited by the presence of blood in the tubal lumen, direct visualization of the ectopic pregnancies was accomplished in both cases and confirmed by concurrent laparoscopy. Other investigative teams have explored the potential of other imaging methods, such as magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), in the diagnostic workup for ectopic pregnancy. MRI might be useful if the sonographic image is inconclusive, although it is likely to be rarely needed, particularly if laparoscopy is generally considered in uncertain cases.

Summary of Diagnostic Methods for Detecting Tubal Ectopic Pregnancy

When a patient is seen with a clinical history suggestive of ectopic pregnancy, a careful examination is performed (Fig. 34.5). Quantitative serum β-hCG and rapid serum progesterone levels (if available) are obtained. If the β-hCG titre is positive, a transvaginal ultrasound is performed. If an intrauterine sac is visualized with fetal heart activity, then the diagnosis of...
intrauterine pregnancy is established. If, however, there are no intrauterine sacs or there is a questionable intrauterine sac without fetal heart activity, then the asymptomatic patient may be expectedly treated awaiting further testing. If the serum progesterone level is, with certainty, below the threshold level for viability, then an asymptomatic patient may be expectantly treated awaiting further testing. If the serum progesterone level is, with certainty, below the threshold level for viability, then a uterine curettage can be performed. The subsequent failure to find chorionic villi on curettage is very suggestive, but not diagnostic, of an ectopic pregnancy. If the serum progesterone level is more than 25 ng/mL, in the absence of ovulation induction, then there is a strong likelihood that a viable pregnancy is present. If the quantitative serum β-hCG level is above the discriminatory zone for a particular institution and no intrauterine gestational sacs are apparent using transvaginal ultrasonography, then an ectopic pregnancy is likely. The level of hCG at which an intrauterine gestational sac should be identified has been established by each institution.

When the diagnosis is uncertain and the patient is in an unstable condition, tests for serial β-hCG levels should be taken at 48-hour intervals, and the serum progesterone level should be above the discriminatory zone (≥5-10 ng/mL). If the hCG level increases more than 50% within a 48-hour period, then the patient may have a normal intrauterine pregnancy and nonsurgical care (expectant management) is indicated. If the increase in the serial hCG level is less than 50% of the original value, then a nonviable pregnancy should be suspected. Ultrasound can often then corroborate the diagnosis of an ectopic pregnancy with the demonstration of a gestational sac in the adnexa or fluid in the cul-de-sac.

Initially, a normal increase in the β-hCG level may be observed. Over time, however, the level may slowly plateau, never reaching the discriminatory zone. If a potential intrauterine pregnancy is thought to be nonviable, then a D&C can be performed. If there is any question of viability, however, laparoscopy is preferred to rule out ectopic pregnancy first. Once fetal heart motion is observed within the uterine cavity, the possibility of a tubal ectopic pregnancy is virtually excluded.
and ectopic pregnancy. Nevertheless, the overall risk of the two existing simultaneously even after a superovulation regimen is quite small.

The use of vaginal ultrasonography with improved resolution and the addition of color Doppler flow analysis will invariably define a lower discriminatory zone in the future. Both modalities appear to complement each other in attaining improved sensitivity and specificity in the diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy. Other investigative diagnostic techniques, such as selective salpingography and falloposcopy, should be considered strictly experimental.

TREATMENT FOR ECTOPIC PREGNANCY

Expectant Therapy

Before the advent of effective therapy for ectopic pregnancy, it was noted that the condition was not uniformly fatal and that some patients had spontaneous resolution of the ectopic gestation, either through spontaneous regression or tubal abortion. The natural history of ectopic pregnancy therefore suggests that a number of tubal pregnancies can resolve without treatment. In 1988, Fernandez and associates reported a spontaneous resolution of ectopic pregnancy in 64% of carefully selected patients. The mean time for resolution was 20 ± 13 days. Spontaneous resolution occurred more frequently when the initial hCG concentration was less than 1,000 mIU/mL. The authors observed that a β-hCG threshold of 1,000 mIU/mL and a hemoperitoneum of less than 50 mL with a hematosalpinx of less than 2 cm appeared to be most compatible with successful expectant management.

Subsequent large studies have demonstrated similar results with expectant therapy. Korshon and colleagues have published the largest series to date. Criteria for patient selection included decreasing β-hCG levels, an absent intrauterine pregnancy by transvaginal ultrasonography, and an adnexal mass of less than 4 cm without an embryonic heartbeat. Seventy-seven patients were diagnosed with a nonlaparoscopic algorithm by the use of serial hCG titers, serum progesterone, transvaginal ultrasonography, and a hemoperitoneum of less than 3 cm with the tubal serosa intact and no evidence of bleeding. Treatment consisted of 1.0 mg/kg MTX administered intramuscularly on postoperative days 1, 3, 5, and 7, along with 0.1 mg/kg CF administered intramuscularly on postoperative days 2, 4, 6, and 8. Twenty-one pregnancies resolved without the need for laparotomy. Two patients required blood transfusions, including one patient who required laparotomy and salpingectomy for a hemoperitoneum. In both of these cases, fetal heart activity in the adnexa was identified initially on ultrasound examination. This led the authors to suggest that MTX + CF can be safely used in selected cases of unruptured ectopic pregnancies that have not formed fetal elements that can be visualized by ultrasound.

In 1991, Stovall and colleagues reviewed the results of several series of tubal ectopic pregnancies treated with MTX + CF. Of 100 cases, 50 were diagnosed by laparoscopy, and 50 were diagnosed by a nonlaparoscopic algorithm. Complete resolution was achieved in 96 patients over a range of 14 to 92 days. In four patients, laparotomy was necessary because of tubal rupture; in one case, rupture occurred as late as 23 days after MTX administration. In five patients, cardiac activity was observed on ultrasound, and treatment was successful in four of them. Three patients experienced minor side effects. In 49 of 58 (84%) women who underwent subsequent hysterosalpingograms, tubal patency was demonstrated on the ipsilateral side. Of 56 patients desiring to conceive, 37 subsequently became pregnant; 33 of these were intrauterine pregnancies and 4 were repeat ectopic pregnancies.

Stovall and Ling further studied the efficacy and safety of a simplified regimen of single-dose systemic MTX. All patients were diagnosed with a nonlaparoscopic algorithm by the use of serial hCG titers, serum progesterone, transvaginal ultrasonography, and curettage. Patients were treated with a single dose of 30 mg/m² MTX intramuscularly if they were hemodynamically stable and the unruptured ectopic pregnancy did not exceed 3.5 cm in diameter. In the initial report, 120 patients were treated, including 14 (11.7%) with visualized cardiac activity. One hundred thirteen (94.2%) patients had complete resolution with treatment, with a mean time to resolution of 35.5 days. Four (3.3%) of the successfully treated patients required a second course of MTX on day 7. Seven (5.8%) patients required surgical management of the ectopic pregnancy, including two of the patients with cardiac activity. No major chemotherapy-related side effects were seen. Posttreatment hysterosalpingograms demonstrated tubal patency on the ipsilateral side in 51 of 62 (82.3%) patients. Of those attempting pregnancy, 79.6% subsequently became pregnant; 87.2% of these were intrauterine and 12.8% were ectopic.

Lipscomb and colleagues further reported on the expanded Memphis cohort of patients treated with single-dose MTX. They used similar inclusion criteria, with the exception of further allowing pregnancies up to 4.0 cm in diameter provided that ectopic cardiac activity was not present. In this series, 287 patients were treated with a single dose of 50 mg/m² MTX.
of 315 (90.1%) patients were successfully treated with MTX. Forty-four patients with positive ectopic cardiac activity were treated with an 87.3% success rate. Of note, however, is that approximately 20% of these patients required more than one cycle of treatment. The authors’ protocol reported that follow-

ing the MTX dosing on day 1, serum choriocarcinoma gonadotropin was measured on days 1, 4, and 7. In many patients, they noted that β-hCG levels frequently continued to rise up until day 4. If the choriocarcinoma gonadotropin levels then declined less than 15% be-
tween days 4 and 7, the MTX protocol was repeated. If the levels declined 15% or more between days 4 and 7, serum β-hCG was measured weekly until the level was less than 15 IU/L. If the choriocarcinoma gonadotropin level declined less than 15% during any subsequent week of follow-up, the MTX protocol was also then repeated. Other potentially difficult issues with single-dose MTX therapy include the management of “resolution pain” (which may occur in 20% of patients) and the prolonged time to resolution sometimes seen.

A further review of the variables related to the success of single-dose MTX in the treatment of singleton ectopic preg-
nancy has been compiled. In this review, logistic regression analysis demonstrated that the serum choriocarcinoma gonadotropin level before treatment was the only factor that contributed sig-
nificantly to the failure rate (Table 34.4). Interestingly, the size of the mass, the volume of hematomas, and the presence or absence of free peritoneal blood in the pelvis were not associated with a significant risk of treatment failure.

Use of mifepristone as an adjunct to MTX treatment for ectopic pregnancy has also been assessed in two randomized controlled trials. In the first trial, Barvani and colleagues re-

ported both treatment approaches were successful, although the time to resolution was significantly faster in the group receiving MTX and mifepristone in comparison to the MTX alone group. In the subsequent, multicenter randomized trial, Rosenberg and colleagues failed to demonstrate an overall ben-
ef

efit from the addition of mifepristone to MTX. These investi-
gators, by contrast, demonstrated a higher efficacy of MTX and mifepristone in the subgroup of patients with higher ini-
tial serum progesterone levels (≥10 ng/L). Further studies are

needed to define the role of mifepristone in combination with MTX in the treatment of ectopic pregnancy.

MTX has also been used to treat persistent ectopic preg-
nancy after conservative surgery. In these patients, persistent ectopic pregnancy results from proliferation of residual tro-

phoblastic tissue remaining after a conservative surgical proce-
dure. The trophoblast can be located within the muscular layer of the ovary or between the muscles and the serosa such that at the time of salpingotomy, only the portion of the tro-

phoblast within the tubal lumen is removed. In those patients with persistent ectopic pregnancy described in the literature, the majority have been managed by a second operation and salpingectomy. Some patients, however, have been treated with either expectant management or systemic MTX. Hoppe and colleagues have reported that of the 19 patients treated following laparoscopic salpingotomy.

All patients should therefore have a follow-up β-hCG titer 1 to 2 weeks after conservative surgery. If the titer is elevated, then serial β-hCG titers are indicated. If the titer then continues to fall, the patient can be treated expectantly. If the β-hCG level remains the same or increases, however, consideration should be given to a single dose of MTX or perhaps further surgery to remove the remaining portion of the ectopic pregnancy.

Systemic MTX is an alternative that can be used for the treatment of patients with small unruptured ectopic pregnan-
cies or patients with persistent ectopic pregnancies follow-
ing conservative surgery. Safeguards are necessary to enhance the success and minimize the toxicity of therapy. Patients should be carefully monitored with hematologic indices and liver chemistries. A history of active hepatic, renal, or peptic ulcer disease, elevated baseline liver enzyme concentrations, and thrombocytopenia or neutropenia are contraindications to therapy. Patients should avoid exposure to the sun, because photosensitivity can be a complication. Patients should refrain from sexual intercourse during therapy. Patients should also avoid folate-containing vitamins. Appropriate candidates for systemic medical therapy should also be willing to accept a small risk of tubal rupture and participate in closely monitored follow-up.

### TABLE 34.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serum choriocarcinoma gonadotropin concentration (IU/L)</th>
<th>Success rate (95% confidence interval)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;1,000</td>
<td>98 (96–100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000–1,999</td>
<td>91 (85–100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,000–4,999</td>
<td>82 (65–98)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,000–9,999</td>
<td>87 (79–98)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000–14,999</td>
<td>82 (65–98)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;15,000</td>
<td>68 (49–88)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### Medical Therapy by Local Injection

In 1987, Felchtinger and Kemeter reported the direct injec-
tion of MTX under transvaginal ultrasound guidance into an ectopic gestational sac. They instilled 10 mg of MTX and ob-
served resolution of the pregnancy within 2 weeks. Other in-
vestigators, including Kojima and colleagues, have reported the success application of local MTX administered by di-
rect injection at the time of laparoscopy. In 1993, Fernandez and colleagues reported a large series of patients who un-
derwent intratubal MTX at a dose of 1 mg/kg under transvaginal sonographic control. Eighty-three of 100 patients were success-
fully cured; however, 28 of the 83 successfully cured patients required additional MTX, which was subsequently given in-
trauterally.

Direct injection of MTX has theoretic advantages over sys-
temic treatment. The concentration of MTX at the site of im-
plantation is many times higher after local injection than af-
ter systemic administration. With less systemic distribution of the drug, a smaller therapeutic dose might be necessary and toxicity would be less. Schiff and associates, however, evalu-
ated the pharmacokinetics of MTX after local tubal injection and found that the peak serum level of MTX after local injec-
tion was not significantly lower than that of patients who were treated systemically with a similar dose of the drug. In addi-
tion, the success rates in practice appear to be unacceptably low. A review by Carson and Buster revealed that only 83% of the direct tubal injection procedures reported were success-
ful.

Several trials have been conducted evaluating other in-
tratubal agents administered for the treatment of ectopic pregnancy. Studies using prostaglandins (prostaglandin F2α, 
15-methyl-prostaglandin F2α) were discouraging because of
poor efficacy and serious adverse effects, including cardiac arrhythmia, malignant hypertension, and gastrointestinal symptoms. Other investigators have studied the use of hyperosmolar glucose, a less toxic agent, injected locally into the gestational sac of the ectopic gestation by either laparoscopy or transvaginal ultrasound-guided needle puncture. Lang and colleagues reported a 92% success rate using hyperosmolar glucose by laparoscopy, but in 1973, Stromme reported his surgical experience with 36 cases of salpingotomy to treat a patient with tubal pregnancy. In 1898, Kelly was among the first to advocate conservative surgery for tubal gestation. He recommended drainage of the pregnancy through a self-retained needle to eliminate the risk of rupture. Subsequently, and those with a specific contraindication to laparoscopy. Among recent reports of salpingotomy performed on a single remaining oviduct, an intrauterine pregnancy rate of about 50% has been achieved by several investigators, although the results are quite variable, and some reports have only a limited number of patients treated. The repeat ectopic pregnancy rate in the single-tube salpingotomy patients appears to be about 20%, a slightly higher rate than that in series of patients with both oviducts.

In general, conservative salpingotomy is the preferred treatment for patients who desire further pregnancies. For results to be optimal, the oviduct should be unruptured and without serosal invasion, and the patient should be in a surgically stable condition.

**Surgical Treatment**

**Conservative Surgical Treatment**

Conservative management of an unruptured ectopic pregnancy usually consists of one of two possible procedures: linear salpingotomy or segmental resection. A conservative surgical approach is possible when the diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy is made sufficiently early so that rupture of the oviduct has not yet occurred.

**Linear Salpingotomy.** In women who wish to preserve their fertility, conservative surgery by linear salpingotomy is considered the gold standard for the management of a distal tubal pregnancy. Recent studies have reported that the uninvolved tube may be abnormal, either grossly or subclinically, in at least 50% of cases of ectopic pregnancy. Although there have been no randomized studies comparing the fertility outcome after conservative and radical surgery for ectopic pregnancy, most of the available information suggests that the subsequent intrauterine pregnancy rate is higher after conservative surgery (linear salpingotomy).

In 1898, Kelly was among the first to advocate conservative surgery for tubal gestation. He recommended drainage of the pregnancy through the tube using a self-retained needle to eliminate the risk of rupture. Subsequently, and those with a specific contraindication to laparoscopy. Among recent reports of salpingotomy performed on a single remaining oviduct, an intrauterine pregnancy rate of about 50% has been achieved by several investigators, although the results are quite variable, and some reports have only a limited number of patients treated. The repeat ectopic pregnancy rate in the single-tube salpingotomy patients appears to be about 20%, a slightly higher rate than that in series of patients with both oviducts.

In general, conservative salpingotomy is the preferred treatment for patients who desire further pregnancies. For results to be optimal, the oviduct should be unruptured and without serosal invasion, and the patient should be in a surgically stable condition.

**Transabdominal Conservative Procedure.** The procedure for linear salpingotomy starts by exposing, elevating, and stabilizing the tube. A linear incision is then made over the distended segment of the tube (Figs. 34.6 and 34.7). The incision is extended through the antimesenteric wall until entry is made into the lumen of the distended oviduct. When gentle pressure is exerted from the opposite side of the tube, the products of gestation are gently expressed from the lumen. Because a certain amount of separation of the trophoblast has usually occurred, the conceptus generally can be easily removed from the lumen. Gentle traction by suction or by forceps teeth can be used if necessary, but care should be taken to avoid trauma to the mucosa. Any remaining fragments of the anchoring trophoblast should be removed by profuse irrigation of the lumen with warm Ringer lactate solution to prevent further damage to the mucosa.

Care must be taken to provide complete hemostasis in the tubal mucosa; failure to do so results in troublesome postoperative bleeding, which can lead to the formation of intraluminal adhesions. The small tubal vessels are easily identified while the tube is being irrigated, and diathermy or laser coagulation can be used if necessary for better resolution. An operating microscope is usually not needed.

The mucosal margins are then closed with interrupted sutures, taking care that only the serosa and muscularis are approximated and that there is no undue tension. Care should be taken also to ensure that no suture material is retained on the mucosal surface, because even a small amount can produce a secondary inflammatory reaction with subsequent adhesion formation.

**Laparoscopic Conservative Procedure.** Currently, most ectopic pregnancies are treated by laparoscopic surgery. In fact, most studies have suggested that laparoscopic surgery is superior to laparotomy in hemodynamically stable patients. Advantages of laparoscopy include lower cost, shorter hospital stay, less surgical blood loss, less analgesia requirement, and a shorter postoperative convalescence. Not all patients, however, may be suitable for laparoscopic treatment. Those include patients with an unstable hemodynamic status, those with severe pelvic adhesions, and those with a specific contraindication to laparoscopy.

The presence of a hemoperitoneum should not preclude laparoscopic treatment if the diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy is certain. Although a hemoperitoneum is not diagnostic of an ectopic pregnancy, it is often associated with other signs of an ectopic gestation such as an abnormal hCG level and uterine asymmetry. The degree of hemoperitoneum may be graded on a scale of 1 to 3, with grade 1 being a small amount of blood in the peritoneal cavity, grade 2 being a moderate amount of blood, and grade 3 being a large amount of blood. When a hemoperitoneum is present, it is important to perform a meticulous pelvic examination to rule out other causes of pelvic pain such as appendicitis, ovarian cysts, or diverticulitis. After the diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy is confirmed, the next step is to determine the location of the gestation. This can be done by transvaginal ultrasound, which allows for precise localization of the gestation and exclusion of other causes of pelvic pain. Once the location of the gestation is confirmed, the next step is to perform a graded aspiration of the gestation. This is typically performed using a 16- or 18-gauge needle inserted through the abdominal wall. The needle is advanced into the gestation and aspirated to remove as much of the gestation as possible. The amount of fluid aspirated should be recorded and compared with the estimated amount of blood present in the peritoneal cavity. If the amount of fluid aspirated is less than the estimated amount of blood, it is likely that additional blood is present elsewhere in the peritoneal cavity. In this case, a more thorough exploration of the peritoneal cavity is necessary to rule out other causes of pelvic pain. After the graded aspiration of the gestation, the next step is to perform a laparoscopic evaluation of the oviducts. This can be done by inserting a laparoscope into the abdominal cavity and visualizing the oviducts. The oviducts should be inspected for any evidence of tubal pregnancy, such as a mass or an area of abnormal color. If a tubal pregnancy is present, it can be removed using electrocautery or mechanical instruments. If a tubal pregnancy is not present, the oviducts should be evaluated for any signs of abnormality, such as scarring or inflammation. If any abnormalities are found, the peritoneum should be examined for signs of adhesions. If adhesions are present, they should be released using electrocautery or mechanical instruments. If no abnormalities are found, the laparoscopic evaluation of the oviducts is complete.

In general, conservative salpingotomy is the preferred treatment for patients who desire further pregnancies. For results to be optimal, the oviduct should be unruptured and without serosal invasion, and the patient should be in a surgically stable condition.

**Transabdominal Conservative Procedure.** The procedure for linear salpingotomy starts by exposing, elevating, and stabilizing the tube. A linear incision is then made over the distended segment of the tube (Figs. 34.6 and 34.7). The incision is extended through the antimesenteric wall until entry is made into the lumen of the distended oviduct. When gentle pressure is exerted from the opposite side of the tube, the products of gestation are gently expressed from the lumen. Because a certain amount of separation of the trophoblast has usually occurred, the conceptus generally can be easily removed from the lumen. Gentle traction by suction or by forceps teeth can be used if necessary, but care should be taken to avoid trauma to the mucosa. Any remaining fragments of the anchoring trophoblast should be removed by profuse irrigation of the lumen with warm Ringer lactate solution to prevent further damage to the mucosa.

Care must be taken to provide complete hemostasis in the tubal mucosa; failure to do so results in troublesome postoperative bleeding, which can lead to the formation of intraluminal adhesions. The small tubal vessels are easily identified while the tube is being irrigated, and diathermy or laser coagulation can be used if necessary for better resolution. An operating microscope is usually not needed.

The mucosal margins are then closed with interrupted sutures, taking care that only the serosa and muscularis are approximated and that there is no undue tension. Care should be taken also to ensure that no suture material is retained on the mucosal surface, because even a small amount can produce a secondary inflammatory reaction with subsequent adhesion formation.

**Laparoscopic Conservative Procedure.** Currently, most ectopic pregnancies are treated by laparoscopic surgery. In fact, most studies have suggested that laparoscopic surgery is superior to laparotomy in hemodynamically stable patients. Advantages of laparoscopy include lower cost, shorter hospital stay, less surgical blood loss, less analgesia requirement, and a shorter postoperative convalescence. Not all patients, however, may be suitable for laparoscopic treatment. Those include patients with an unstable hemodynamic status, those with severe pelvic adhesions, and those with a specific contraindication to laparoscopy. The presence of a hemoperitoneum should not preclude laparoscopic treatment if the diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy is certain. Although a hemoperitoneum is not diagnostic of an ectopic pregnancy, it is often associated with other signs of an ectopic gestation such as an abnormal hCG level and uterine asymmetry. The degree of hemoperitoneum may be graded on a scale of 1 to 3, with grade 1 being a small amount of blood in the peritoneal cavity, grade 2 being a moderate amount of blood, and grade 3 being a large amount of blood. When a hemoperitoneum is present, it is important to perform a meticulous pelvic examination to rule out other causes of pelvic pain such as appendicitis, ovarian cysts, or diverticulitis. After the diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy is confirmed, the next step is to determine the location of the gestation. This can be done by transvaginal ultrasound, which allows for precise localization of the gestation and exclusion of other causes of pelvic pain. Once the location of the gestation is confirmed, the next step is to perform a graded aspiration of the gestation. This is typically performed using a 16- or 18-gauge needle inserted through the abdominal wall. The needle is advanced into the gestation and aspirated to remove as much of the gestation as possible. The amount of fluid aspirated should be recorded and compared with the estimated amount of blood present in the peritoneal cavity. If the amount of fluid aspirated is less than the estimated amount of blood, it is likely that additional blood is present elsewhere in the peritoneal cavity. In this case, a more thorough exploration of the peritoneal cavity is necessary to rule out other causes of pelvic pain. After the graded aspiration of the gestation, the next step is to perform a laparoscopic evaluation of the oviducts. This can be done by inserting a laparoscope into the abdominal cavity and visualizing the oviducts. The oviducts should be inspected for any evidence of tubal pregnancy, such as a mass or an area of abnormal color. If a tubal pregnancy is present, it can be removed using electrocautery or mechanical instruments. If a tubal pregnancy is not present, the oviducts should be evaluated for any signs of abnormality, such as scarring or inflammation. If any abnormalities are found, the peritoneum should be examined for signs of adhesions. If adhesions are present, they should be released using electrocautery or mechanical instruments. If no abnormalities are found, the laparoscopic evaluation of the oviducts is complete.
allow manipulation of the fallopian tube (Fig. 34.8). Using a 22-gauge injection needle inserted either directly through the abdominal wall or through a 5-mm portal, a dilute solution of vasopressin (prepared by mixing 20 U of vasopressin with 100 mL of physiologic saline) is injected into the tubal wall at the area of maximal bulge. This step is crucial and allows for minimal bleeding and the precise removal of the ectopic pregnancy without damaging the surrounding mucosa. Either laser, unipolar needle electrocautery, or scissors can than be used to make the salpingotomy incision. It is important to make the incision along the antimesenteric wall of the tube in the area of maximal distension and large enough to allow for complete extrusion of the products of conception without difficulty. It is also important to keep the fallopian tube taut. If the products of conception do not spontaneously extrude following completion of the incision, either hydrodissection or gentle tubal compression with a blunt probe or suction irrigator will usually work. The tissue is then placed in an endoscopic bag and removed from the abdominal cavity. Special care is taken to remove all of the placental tissue as it is known that persistent peritoneal implants of trophoblastic tissue following laparoscopic salpingotomy may occur. After the tissue is removed, the tube is irrigated carefully and checked for hemostasis. The tube is then either left to heal by secondary intention or sutured, with secondary intention being appropriate for most cases. A laparoscopic salpingotomy study by Fujishita and colleagues failed to demonstrate any benefit from suturing over the nonsuturing technique.

The results of salpingotomy are very similar, whether performed by either laparotomy or laparoscopy. Yao and Tulandi reported that among the 811 patients attempting to conceive after the laparotomy approach, the intrauterine pregnancy rate was 61.4%, and the recurrent ectopic pregnancy rate was 15.4%. Similarly, of the 703 patients attempting to conceive following laparoscopy, 61.0% had an intrauterine pregnancy, and 15.5% had a repeat ectopic pregnancy.

Persistent Tubal Ectopic Gestation. Persistent trophoblastic tissue can remain after linear salpingotomy. Although there can be an initial decrease in the β-hCG level after surgery, the level can then slowly rise, ultimately resulting in symptoms. For this reason, it is recommended to obtain weekly β-hCG measurements after linear salpingotomy. Yao and Tulandi reported that persistent ectopic pregnancy was encountered in 8.3% of patients treated by laparoscopic salpingotomy and in 3.9% of patients treated by a similar procedure at laparotomy.
The incidence of persistent ectopic pregnancy following laparoscopy, however, was quite variable, ranging from 3.5% to 20.0%. Pouly and colleagues achieved a relatively low 3.5% incidence of recurrent ectopic pregnancy in the largest series of patients treated to date by laparoscopic salpingotomy. Indeed, in many current practices, the incidence of persistent ectopic pregnancy appears to be low. There is a tendency for persistent trophoblastic tissue to be found in the proximal portion of the tube; therefore, special attention to this area is important. The use of hydrodissection to flush out the gestational products rather than removal of trophoblastic tissue piecemeal with forceps is recommended. One must, however, never assume that the chance for persistent trophoblast is entirely mitigated by the characteristics and ease of the procedure.

Risk factors for persistent ectopic pregnancy include small ectopic pregnancies (<2 cm diameter), early therapy (<42 days from last menstrual period), and high concentrations of $\beta$-hCG (>3,000 IU/L by the Third IS) preoperatively. In high-risk cases, a single dose of MTX (1 mg/kg) can be administered postoperatively for prophylaxis. Graczykowski and Mishell demonstrated that the rate of persistent ectopic pregnancy was reduced to a rate of 1.9% using MTX prophylaxis in comparison with a rate of 14.5% among controls. Spandorfer and associates suggested that the postoperative day 1 serum $\beta$-hCG concentration can be used as a predictor of persistent ectopic pregnancy. They reported that a day 1 serum $\beta$-hCG decrease of <50% from preoperative levels may be predictive of persistent ectopic pregnancy. If day 1 serum $\beta$-hCG concentrations decreased >50% of the preoperative value, there was more than an 85% probability that a persistent ectopic pregnancy would not occur.

Options for treatment of persistent ectopic pregnancy include reoperation and medical therapy. The choice of treatment can also include expectant therapy if the patient is asymptomatic and $\beta$-hCG levels are not rapidly increasing. MTX appears to be particularly effective in the setting of
persistent ectopic pregnancy following linear salpingotomy. In the largest series reported to date, all 19 patients with persistent ectopic pregnancies were successfully treated with a single intramuscular dose of systemic MTX (50 mg/m²). The patient’s reproductive prognosis does not appear to be particularly lessened following a persistent ectopic pregnancy. In a review of 50 cases, Seifer and colleagues reported that after 36 months of follow-up, there were 19 (59%) intrauterine pregnancies and no recurrent ectopic pregnancies in 32 such women attempting to conceive.

FIGURE 34.8. Laparoscopic salpingostomy for ectopic pregnancy. A: An incision is made with the fine monopolar diathermy needle along the antimesenteric border of the oviduct. B: The trophoblastic mass is removed with forceps. C: The lumen is allowed to heal by secondary intention.
Because of the chance for persistent ectopic pregnancies to present relatively late following initial appropriate decreases in β-hCG concentrations, it is recommended to obtain weekly β-hCG measurements until they return to the normal range.

**Segmental Resection.** The optimal surgical approach to the isthmic ectopic pregnancy remains controversial. Three conservative operations have been described: segmental resection of the involved portion of oviduct with primary microsurgical anastomosis, segmental resection with reanastomosis at a later operation, and linear salpingectomy. In Sweden, Svolin initially advocated for segmental resection in 1967. Subsequently, other surgeons, including Stangl and Gomel as well as DeCherney and Boyers, have found segmental resection to be preferable to salpingectomy in most cases of isthmic pregnancy. In the isthmus, the tubal lumen is narrower and the muscularis is thicker than in the ampulla. Thus, the isthmus is more predisposed to severe postoperative damage, and the rate of proximal tubal obstruction seems to be higher following linear salpingectomy.

With segmental resection and end-to-end reanastomosis, the implantation site is removed so that it cannot be involved in a subsequent tubal pregnancy. A more normal architecture for the oviduct is consequently achieved. The anatomic restoration is a time-consuming process requiring special expertise and extensive microsurgical experience; it should not be undertaken by an inexperienced surgeon. Extensive hemoperitoneum places a patient in serious jeopardy of cardiopulmonary crises. In reality, the benefits of removal of the contralateral ovary are outweighed by the consideration that any future oophorectomy would then mean castration. The high success rate of IVF is a postoperative deep venous thrombosis.

Some earlier reports advocated for the combined use of a prophylactic oophorectomy with salpingectomy. Theoretically, removal of the ipsilateral ovary would cause the other ovary to ovulate more frequently, perhaps favoring future pregnancies. In reality, the benefits of removal of the contralateral ovary are outweighed by the consideration that any future oophorectomy would then mean castration. The high success rate of IVF is a further incentive to maintain functioning of both ovaries.

As stated earlier, most patients with an ectopic pregnancy currently are candidates for laparoscopic surgery. Radical surgical procedures, such as salpingectomy, are also easily adapted to laparoscopic surgery. Of course, certain patients remain noncandidates for laparoscopic surgery, including those with unstable hemodynamic status or severe pelvic adhesions. The latter patients are still best treated by laparotomy.

At laparotomy, total salpingectomy with partial cornual resection has been criticized for providing a residual sinus tract that allows development of a subsequent interstitial pregnancy. This problem may not lie in the procedure per se, but rather the surgeon's performance of the procedure. Complete peritonealization of the cornual incision and advancement of the round and broad ligaments over the uterine cornua (the modified Coffey technique of uterine suspension) should provide complete protection from recurrent interstitial pregnancy (Fig. 34.10). A too-vigorous resection of the uterine cornua can also cause problems. A residual myometrial defect can cause uterine rupture, interstitial recanalization, or placental encroachment during a subsequent intrauterine pregnancy and should be avoided by making certain that the interstitial resection includes less than one third the thickness of the cornual portion of the myometrium.

Dubuisson and colleagues reported the first large series of patients treated by total salpingectomy at laparoscopy for ampullary ectopic pregnancies. They used a three-puncture laparoscopic technique. They thermocoagulated the tubal isthmus, mesosalpinx, and tubal-ovarian ligament, followed by excision with hook scissors. The tube was subsequently removed with polyp forceps through one of the suprapubic punctures. They reported no immediate complications in 98 patients successfully treated at laparoscopy, although one patient experienced a postoperative deep venous thrombosis. Two patients initially intended for laparoscopy, however, required laparotomy either because of severe pelvic adhesions or significant...
intraperitoneal blood. In a later report, Dubuisson and associates advised opening the tube first to aspirate the trophoblast in cases in which the tube is large to more easily remove the tissue through a 12-mm trocar.

**Technique of Salpingectomy at Laparotomy.** A suprapubic Pfannenstiel or low midline vertical abdominal incision is used, and the distended tube is elevated. The mesosalpinx is clamped with a succession of Kelly clamps as close to the tube as possible (Fig. 34.10A). The tube is then excised by cutting a small myometrial wedge at the uterine cornu (Fig. 34.10B). Care should be taken to avoid a deep incision into the myometrium. A figure-of-eight mattress suture of no. 0 delayed-absorbable material is used to close the myometrium at the site of the wedge resection. The mesosalpinx is closed with interrupted ligatures of no. 2-0 delayed-absorbable suture. Complete hemostasis is essential to avoid a hematoma of the broad ligament.

The fundus is held forward and the round and broad ligaments are sutured over the uterine cornu (Fig. 34.10C). This procedure, the modified Coffey suspension, accomplishes complete peritonealization. Mattress sutures anchor the broad ligament to the uterus. The no. 0 delayed-absorbable suture first penetrates the broad ligament from its anterior surface, just below the round ligament, at a distance of 2 to 3 cm from the cornu. The next “bite” is taken into the fundus of the uterus, a little posterior and superior to the uterine incision. The suture is then placed through the posterior aspect of the broad ligament, about 1 cm lateral to the previous suture. When this suture is tied, the cornual incision and the mesosalpinx are covered with mesothelium (Fig. 34.10D). If there is excessive tension on this suture, or if peritonealization is incomplete, then supporting sutures can be placed in the myometrium and the round ligament to ensure that the peritonealization suture will remain in place.

**Technique of Salpingectomy at Laparoscopy.** Several methods have been successfully used for laparoscopic salpingectomy, including endoscopic stapling devices, endocoagulation, bipolar cautery, and pre-tied endoscopic ligatures. Following placement of laparoscopic trocar ports (usually three puncture technique), irrigation of the pelvis, and the evacuation of all blood clots, the involved tube is then grasped with a toothed grasper. One method then includes cauterizing the tubal-ovarian ligament first with bipolar forceps, followed by transection with scissors (Fig. 34.11) or the blade of a coagulation-cutting tool.
FIGURE 34.10. (Continued) B: The mesosalpinx has been completely clamped and cut. The dashed line indicates the line of excision of the tube at the cornu. Inset shows the superficial wedge resection of the interstitial portion of the tube and the suture of the cornu. C: The method of placing a mattress suture for peritonealization is shown with anchoring of the medial portion of the broad ligament to the uterus, a little posterior and superior to the uterine incision. D: Peritonealization is completed by tying the mattress suture, which brings the broad and the round ligaments over the uterine cornua.

FIGURE 34.11. Techniques of laparoscopic salpingectomy using bipolar cautery and excision.
of interstitial pregnancies may manifest later ( timor-Tritsch and colleagues established transvaginal ultrasound criteria for interstitial pregnancy. These criteria include:

1. An empty uterine cavity,
2. A chorionic sac seen separately and >1 cm from the most lateral edge of the uterine cavity,
3. A thick myometrial layer surrounding the chorionic sac.

All of these parameters were relatively specific (88% to 93%), but lacked high sensitivity (only about 40%) for the diagnosis of interstitial pregnancy. Other investigators have described an “interstitial line sign.” This sign refers to the visualization of an echogenic line extending from the endometrial cavity into the cornual region and abutting the interstitial mass or gestational sac. Ackerman and associates reported that the “interstitial line sign” was 80% sensitive and 98% specific for the diagnosis of interstitial pregnancy.

Often the difference between an interstitial pregnancy and an angular pregnancy is subtle. In addition, it may be easy to confuse an angular pregnancy with a pregnancy in a septated or bicornuate uterus. Because ultrasound cannot always confirm the position of the pregnancy, laparoscopy may be required to confirm the diagnosis. In cases of massive intraabdominal bleeding, an immediate laparotomy should be performed.

**Treatment for Interstitial Pregnancy**

The choice of treatment for an interstitial (cornual) pregnancy depends on the extent of trauma that has occurred in the uterine wall and on the interest of the patient in preserving her
childbearing function. Systemic MTX has been used in a limited number of patients with unruptured interstitial pregnancies. Tanaka and coworkers reported the first successful treatment of an interstitial pregnancy with systemic MTX. Since this report, according to Lau and Tulandi, there have been 40 additional published cases of interstitial pregnancies treated with the use of systemic or local MTX, or a combination of both. An overall success rate of 83% was reported.

If an interstitial pregnancy is observed when it is still small, it might be excised using conservative laparoscopic techniques. In their review, Lau and Tulandi noted 22 successful cases of laparoscopic treatment of interstitial pregnancy. Techniques used varied from cornuostomy with careful extraction of the products of conception to a more formal cornual resection. In only one case was bleeding severe enough to require a transfusion. Hemostatic methods have included ligation of the ascending branches of the uterine vessels, intracorporeal and extracorporeal suturing, and surgical stapling. Although the immediate efficacy of laparoscopic conservative procedures for interstitial pregnancy is high, the risk of uterine rupture in a subsequent pregnancy is unknown. Uterine rupture can occur at the site of a previous interstitial pregnancy. Patients treated by conservative laparoscopic techniques should therefore be carefully counseled about this risk. The risk of uterine rupture also emphasizes the importance of proper suturing of the uterine cornu during conservative surgical treatment of an interstitial pregnancy.

For many surgeons, cornual resection and repair of the defect by laparotomy remains the standard conservative surgical procedure for interstitial pregnancy. Provided that uterine rupture has not occurred, this is technically feasible in most cases. Unfortunately, in many cases in which uterine rupture has occurred or a very large interstitial pregnancy is present, a hysterectomy may be required. Hysterectomy remains the treatment of choice for pregnancies advanced to such a stage that repair of the cornu would be technically difficult and medically hazardous.

**Excision of Interstitial Pregnancy by Cornual Resection and Salpingectomy**

Whenever possible, the ovary should be saved. A cornual resection and salpingectomy is performed by first ligating the ascending uterine vessels where they approach the cornu (Fig. 34.12A). Each is ligated separately with a figure-of-eight suture. One may also consider the use of a dilute solution of vasopressin (prepared with mixing 20 U of vasopressin with 30 mL of physiologic saline) injected in the intended myometrial incisional line to further optimize intraoperative hemostasis. The interstitial pregnancy is excised in a V-shaped manner, and the myometrium is approximated with a figure-of-eight closure using no. 0 delayed-absorbable suture (Fig. 34.12B). The remainder of the fallopian tube is excised. If it becomes necessary, the round ligament can be cut and resutured to the cornu and the uterine serosa by use of interrupted sutures (Fig. 34.12C). The round and broad ligaments are brought over the incision with mattress sutures (the modified Coffey suspension) (Fig. 34.12D), and additional interrupted sutures of no. 2-0 or no. 3-0 delayed-absorbable material can be used to secure the serosa of the round ligament to the serosa of the uterus to maintain the operative site in a permanent retroperitoneal position.

**OVARIAN ECTOPIC PREGNANCY**

Because IUDs protect the endometrium and, to a lesser extent, the proximal oviducts from implantation, it was expected that when IUDs were introduced, future reports of extrauterine pregnancies might show an increased rate of ovarian

---

**FIGURE 34.12. Salpingo-oophor-rectomy with excision of interstitial pregnancy.** A: The dotted line denotes line of excision. B: Tube, ovary, and the cornual pregnancy have been excised. Myometrium is being approximated with figure-of-eight sutures of no. 0 delayed-absorbable suture. Note that the uterine vessels have been ligated separately. C: The round ligament, which was cut, is being resutured to the cornu. The ovarian vessels have been ligated, and the broad ligament has been closed with a continuous lockstitch. Serosa of the uterine wound is closed with a simple continuous stitch. D: The cornual wound is covered with the round and broad ligaments.
involvement. Data from the Cooperative Statistical Program of the Population Council show that 1 of every 9 ectopic pregnancies among IUD users, 4.3% are extraterine.

There are several reviews in the English literature on the subject of primary ovarian pregnancy. Boronow and associates summarized 62 cases in a review of the literature between 1950 and 1973. Campbell and associates reported an additional 10 new cases in 1974. Crimes and associates summarized the major reviews through 1980 and added 18 previously unreported cases of primary ovarian pregnancy from the records of six hospitals. Their combined data from this review, the hospital cases, and four other recent reports totaled 34 cases of primary ovarian pregnancy among 236,983 deliveries, a rate of 1 ovarian pregnancy in 7,000 deliveries.

In an intrafollicular ovarian pregnancy, the second stage of meiosis, ovum capacitation, and fertilization each occur within the follicle. Only 15% of cases of ovarian pregnancy are intrafollicular in origin. In an intrafollicular pregnancy, a well-preserved corpus luteum can be identified in the wall of the gestational sac. Four other criteria presented by Spiegelberg for identifying an intrafollicular pregnancy are that the tube, including the fimbria ovarica, is intact and is clearly separate from the ovary; that the gestational sac definitely occupies the normal position of the ovary; that the sac is connected to the uterus by the uteroovarian ligament; and that ovarian tissue is unquestionably demonstrated in the wall of the sac.

Diagnosis of Ovarian Pregnancy

Early diagnosis of an ovarian pregnancy, of all the diagnoses relating to extraterine gestations, is perhaps the most difficult. As stated previously, the classic symptoms of a tubal gestation are abdominal pain, amenorrhea, and bleeding; however, persistent pelvic pain alone, a symptom not always easily related to its cause, is the most frequent clinical manifestation of an ovarian gestation. Although an adnexal mass is palpable in as many as 60% of ovarian pregnancies, the mass is frequently confused with a leaking corpus luteum hematoma. All of the test criteria used for diagnosing a tubal pregnancy are helpful in diagnosing a primary ovarian pregnancy. In particular, the highly sensitive β-hCG immunoassay is effective for identifying the presence of low hCG levels. The test can confirm the presence of a gestational process, but knowing the β-hCG level does not help to precisely locate the gestation. Incomplete spontaneous abortion with a leaking corpus luteum hematoma, one of the most common complications of pregnancy, mimics an ovarian pregnancy. In such cases, a D&C will often show the remnants of trophoblastic villi responsible for the low levels of β-hCG.

A tubal pregnancy can easily be ruled out with laparoscopy, but an ovarian pregnancy is sometimes difficult to differentiate from a leaking corpus luteum hematoma by gross appearance. Ultrasonography can be helpful, but only in advanced ovarian pregnancies will the ultrasound image show a discrete gestational sac, therefore confirming an ovarian pregnancy. Critical evaluation of all of the diagnostic studies, particularly the sensitive β-hCG immunoassay and vaginal ultrasonography, is necessary in making the diagnosis. When the β-hCG is positive, ultrasonography shows no intrauterine gestational sac, and free blood exists in the peritoneal cavity, a laparoscopy should be performed to confirm or refute a diagnosis of suspected ovarian pregnancy.

Treatment for Ovarian Pregnancy

Raziel and Golan, as well as Chelmow and colleagues, reported cases in which an intact ovarian pregnancy was diagnosed by laparoscopy and systemic MTX treatment was successful. In many cases, an ovarian pregnancy is diagnosed after a significant hemoperitoneum has occurred and medical therapy is contraindicated. An ovarian pregnancy is easily confused with a leaking corpus luteum hematoma. For this reason, a safe approach is to proceed with localized surgical resection of the bleeding mass with conservation of the ovary, if possible. Unless the diagnosis is made late, the ovary can usually be preserved. In 1997, Seimera and colleagues reported successful laparoscopic treatment of ovarian pregnancy in eight patients over a 12-year time span. Einenkel and associates even reported the successful conservative resection of an ovarian pregnancy in a patient with ovarian hyperstimulation. The concomitant increased ovarian size, fragility, and vascularity presented an additional surgical challenge for these authors, although the use of intraoperative ultrasound greatly facilitated the precise localization of the ectopic pregnancy within the ovary. Only rarely is the hemorrhage so profuse that oophorectomy is required to control bleeding. Even if the last trophoblastic villi cannot be removed in the ovarian resection, the ovary should be preserved. Any remaining trophoblastic tissue will usually degenerate rapidly or respond to postoperative MTX therapy and therefore should produce no long-standing clinical problem.

ABDOMINAL ECTOPIC PREGNANCY

An abdominal pregnancy is perhaps both the rarest and the most serious type of extraterine gestation. Reports of the frequency of abdominal pregnancy vary, ranging from 1 in 3,771 deliveries to greater than 1 in 10,200 deliveries. Stafford and Ragan reported an incidence of 1 abdominal pregnancy in 7,269 deliveries, a figure that is representative of the reports in the literature. Abdominal pregnancies are classified as primary or secondary. Most are secondary, the result of early tubal abortion or rupture with secondary implantation of the pregnancy into the peritoneal cavity. To be considered a primary abdominal pregnancy, the pregnancy must meet the three criteria defined by Studdiford in 1942:

1. Both tubes and ovaries must be in normal condition with no evidence of recent or remote injury.
2. No evidence of uterotubal fistula should be found.
3. The pregnancy must be related exclusively to the peritoneal surface and be early enough to eliminate the possibility that it is a secondary implantation following a primary implantation in the tube.

Secondary abdominal pregnancy occurs when a tubal gestation attaches itself to other visera as the enlarging placenta spreads through the wall of the tube or is aborted through the fimbriated end. The placenta probably retains some tubal attachment, which supplies blood for the gestation to continue developing in the new peritoneal site. Rare types of secondary abdominal pregnancies have occurred after spontaneous separation of an old cesarean section scar, after uterine perforation during a therapeutic or elective abortion, and after subtotal or total hysterectomy.
Diagnosis of Abdominal Pregnancy

Early diagnosis of an abdominal pregnancy is difficult but critical, because a catastrophic hemorrhage can result from separation of the placenta later in pregnancy. A history of recurrent abdominal discomfort, fetal movement beneath the abdominal wall, and the presence of fetal movements high in the upper abdomen should alert the clinician to the possibility of an abdominal implantation. Other clinical clues include cessation of fetal movement, vomiting late in pregnancy, fetal malposition, a closed and uneffaced cervix, or the failure of oxytocin to stimulate the gestation.

Confirmation of the diagnosis requires demonstration of the fetus outside the uterine cavity. In their review of 199 cases, Costa and colleagues reported that only in 68 cases (40.2%) was a mass adjacent to or distinct from the uterus found. The radiologic finding of fetal small parts in the lateral position overlapping the maternal spine was first noted by Weinberg and Sherritt in 1956; this finding is a fairly reliable sign of an abdominal pregnancy. A radiologic examination of the abdomen, including anterior, posterior, and lateral views, is also helpful in defining malposition of the fetus, which is most often discovered to be in the transverse position. Ultrasound, however, is the most effective method for diagnosing an abdominal pregnancy. Ultrasound can usually identify an abdominal gestation as separate from the nonpregnant uterus. Ultrasonography can be expected to have high diagnostic accuracy in most cases. In those cases in which ultrasonography is equivocal, MRI may be useful.

The maternal mortality risk from abdominal pregnancy in the United States is 7.7 times greater than the maternal mortality risk from tubal ectopic pregnancy and 90 times greater than that with intrauterine pregnancy. Reported maternal mortality rates in the literature have varied in the past from 4% to 29%. Maternal morbidity can also be substantial, with high incidences of pelvic abscess, peritonitis, and sepsis caused by retained placental remnants. Rare instances of massive rectal bleeding or rectal passage of fetal bones secondary to the formation of a colo-intestinal fistula have also been reported. Fetal mortality is notoriously high, ranging from 75% to 95% of all cases.

Management of Advanced Abdominal Pregnancy

Recent techniques of fetal monitoring serve as diagnostic adjuncts to the management of the advanced abdominal pregnancy. Fetal assessment—including repeated ultrasonography to measure biparietal diameter, nonstress testing, monitoring of fetal movements, and biophysical profiles—can provide clinical evidence of fetal viability and fetal welfare. Despite the use of these diagnostic tools, fetal death occurred in all of the 15 cases of abdominal pregnancy reported by Martin and associates. Clark and Jones reported a fetal salvage rate of only 11.4% in a study of 35 advanced abdominal pregnancies.

One of the major factors in fetal survival is the condition of the fetal membranes. If the membranes rupture, the fetus usually dies from respiratory distress in the peritoneal cavity within a short time of the rupture. When the volume of amniotic fluid is significantly decreased or absent, the incidence of fetal demise increases significantly, pressure deformities occur, and pulmonary hypoplasia precludes the possibility of delivering a viable fetus. In situations in which the pregnancy is advanced and there is sufficient volume of amniotic fluid, there exists a reasonable possibility of a good fetal outcome. In rare instances, there may be justification for postponement of surgery to allow for further fetal maturity and a better perinatal prognosis.

Preoperative preparation of a patient with an advanced abdominal pregnancy should include an adequate supply of compatible blood and blood products and appropriate intravenous infusion lines that can deliver large amounts of fluid quickly. The use of a cell-saver or MAST (Military Antishock Trousers) suit has been reported in management of patients experiencing massive hemorrhage and shock. A surgical team should be standing by that is capable of handling the possible bowel, vascular, or genitourinary complications that may arise.

Following incision into the amniotic sac and delivery of the fetus, the management of the placenta still remains a controversial issue. Most clinicians believe the best treatment is to clamp the cord, to leave the placenta in situ, and to close the abdomen, but to allow retroperitoneal drainage if possible. The placenta can be removed after complete cessation of function is demonstrated by quantitative β-hCG titers. The placenta should be removed during laparotomy only if it is accessible and if its removal can be accomplished without excessive blood loss. In case of doubt, the placenta should be left in place. Thompson has reported leaving the placenta in the peritoneal cavity for a period of 13 years without physical harm to the patient. MTX has been used occasionally to hasten trophoblastic degeneration, but it leads to the accelerated accumulation of necrotic placental tissue, which may become infected. For this reason, it is currently felt best not to administer MTX in this clinical setting.

CERVICAL ECTOPIC PREGNANCY

The cervix is a rare but hazardous site for placental implantation because the trophoblast can penetrate through the cervical wall and into the uterine blood supply. Cervical gestations have, until recently, received little attention in the literature, but increased awareness of the condition has resulted in a number of recent reports.

The following three criteria for the diagnosis of cervical pregnancy were established by Rubin in 1911:

1. Cervical glands must be opposite the placental attachment.
2. Placental attachment to the cervix must be situated below the entrance of the uterine vessels or below the peritoneal reflection of the anterior and posterior surfaces of the uterus.
3. Fetal elements must be absent from the corpus uteri.

Because strict anatomical and histological criteria necessitate a hysterectomy for a complete study of the entire uterus, Paalman and McElhin proposed five more clinically practical criteria for the diagnosis of this condition:

1. Uterine bleeding without cramping pain following a period of amenorrhea
2. A soft, enlarged cervix equal to or larger than the fundus (the “hourglass” uterus)
3. Products of conception entirely confined within and firmly attached to the endocervix
4. A closed internal cervical os
5. A partially opened external cervical os

The incidence of this rare entity varies. The Mayo Clinic reported 1 in 16,000 pregnancies. The highest incidence, 1 in 1,000 pregnancies, was reported from Japan. The high incidence of elective abortion in Japan is probably a factor in the higher rates. Dilatation and curettage (D&C) seems to be
FIGURE 34.13. Differential diagnosis of cervical pregnancy. A: In the cervical phase of uterine abortion, the placenta is mainly within the expanded cervix, and the external and internal os are dilated. B: In a cervical abortion (abortion into the cervix), because of stenosis of the external os, spontaneous rupture of the cervical wall can cause severe hemorrhage. C: Ragged, friable cervix seen in cervical pregnancy mimics carcinoma of the cervix. (Redrawn from Rothe DJ, Birnbaum SJ. Cervical pregnancy: diagnosis and management. Obstet Gynecol 1973;42:675.)

a predisposing factor for cervical pregnancy. Shinagawa and Nagayama noted that in 18 of 19 cases of cervical pregnancy there was a history of legal abortion. In the review by Ushakov and associates, 68.6% of patients with a cervical pregnancy had a previous uterine curettage. It has also been suggested that a previous cesarean section may play a role in the etiology of cervical pregnancy.

Cervical gestation is frequently confused with a neoplastic process because of the marked vascularity and friable appearance of the cervix. Profuse bleeding can occur if the placenta is mistaken for a tumor and a biopsy is taken. A cervical gestation also can be mistaken for a spontaneous abortion in which the products of conception were retained within the cervical canal (Fig. 34.13).

Treatment for Cervical Pregnancy

The treatment for a cervical pregnancy is surgical, and the condition often requires an abdominal hysterectomy. In selected patients, conservative evacuation of an early cervical pregnancy may be accomplished by skillful D&C, although the procedure has the potential to be complicated by profuse hemorrhage. Further preoperative preparations directed to reduce the vascularity of the uterine cervix—such as transcervical ligation of cervical branches of the uterine arteries, a Shirodkar type cerclage, angiographic uterine artery embolization, or intracervical vasopressin injection—may reduce operative morbidity. In a review by Ushakov and colleagues, of the 16 cases in which one of these methods was employed, 15 had minimal (50–200 mL) blood loss, one patient had a hemorrhage of 1,200 mL requiring transfusion, and no patient required laparotomy or hysterectomy. Among 41 cases in which D&C was performed without cervical preparation, minimal bleeding occurred in just five cases (12.2%), massive bleeding (1,200–5,000 mL) occurred in 70.7%, and hysterectomy was performed in seven cases (17.1%). Laparotomy with bilateral internal iliac artery ligation or bilateral uterine artery ligation was also required in an additional five (12.2%) of these patients. To control postevacuation bleeding, several authors, including Kuppuswamy and colleagues and Werberand associates, have described the successful use of a Foley catheter balloon to tamponade the cervical implantation site in patients who continued to have blood loss after cervical pregnancy evacuation. A 26 French Foley catheter with a 30-mL balloon is preferably used and left inflated for 0.5 to 6 days, as clinically indicated.

Medical therapy can also be considered for the primary treatment of cervical pregnancy or as an adjunct to surgical therapy through decreased vascularity of the mass. Kung and Chang reviewed the use of MTX administration for cervical ectopic pregnancy from 1983 to 1997. Among 35 cases of viable cervical ectopic pregnancies <12 weeks’ gestation, 63% of patients received either systemic MTX alone or a combination of systemic MTX with a local (intraamniotic or intracervical) injection of either MTX or potassium chloride. Among the 23 cases of nonviable cervical pregnancy <12 weeks’ gestation, 96% of women required systemic MTX alone. The ultimate success rate of uterine preservation was similar (94% for the viable pregnancy group; 91% for the nonviable pregnancy group), although the patients in the viable pregnancy group required a significantly higher number of concomitant additional surgical procedures (43% vs. 13%).

HETEROTOPIC PREGNANCY

Heterotopic pregnancy (coexistence of intra- and extraterine pregnancies) is rare. The incidence has been estimated to be about 1 in 30,000 spontaneous pregnancies. With the use of assisted reproductive technologies, the incidence is higher, as high as 0.75% to 1.5% of pregnancies.

Although the precise cause of a combined pregnancy is frequently obscure, most of the risk factors are the same as those
The benefits derived from the early diagnosis of an ectopic pregnancy. The use of ovulation-inducing agents has increased the incidence of multiple gestations and heterotopic pregnancies. Berger and Taylor reported an incidence of combined pregnancy in as many as 2 in 100 stimulated patients. The most common predisposing anatomic finding associated with heterotopic pregnancies is preexisting tubal disease.

Abdominal pain, an adnexal mass, peritoneal irritation, and an enlarged uterus together constitute the major clinical features associated with a heterotopic pregnancy. Additional diagnostic findings include the presence of two corpora lutea found at the time of laparotomy or laparoscopy, hemoperitoneum, acute abdominal pain after the termination of an intrauterine pregnancy, and the persistence of an enlarged uterus with amenorrhea after excision of an ectopic pregnancy.

As opposed to extrauterine pregnancies, which are presently diagnosed and treated electively at an early preclinical stage, heterotopic pregnancies are still mostly diagnosed after clinical signs develop. In their review, Rejansky and Schenker report that nearly half of the cases present with rupture, hemoperitoneum, and emergency intervention. This is due to the fact that serial β-hCG determinations and transvaginal ultrasonography are often not helpful in establishing an early diagnosis of heterotopic pregnancy. The majority of heterotopic pregnancies consist of a single tubal gestation combined with an intrauterine pregnancy. Rarer varieties include combined cervical-intrauterine, ovarian-intrauterine, abdominal-intrauterine, and interstitial-intrauterine pregnancies.

Treatment for Heterotopic Pregnancy

Laparoscopy has been employed with reasonable success for the diagnosis of combined tubal and intrauterine pregnancies. Louis-Sylvestre and associates reported treating 13 patients laparoscopically, 10 by salpingectomy and three by salpingostomy. Subsequently, 60% of the patients with a viable intrauterine pregnancy at the time of surgery had a favorable outcome. On the other hand, in cases in which hemodynamic instability or an interstitial-extrauterine pregnancy is present, a laparotomy is indicated. Expectant management does not seem to have a role in the care of a patient with a heterotopic pregnancy.

This is due to the fact that the specific course of the extrauterine component can not be monitored by serial β-hCG determinations. Likewise, either local or systemic MTX therapy would be contraindicated in the presence of a viable intrauterine gestation. The use of a local injection of potassium chloride into the extrauterine gestational sac, however, has been used successfully in a few cases. There are very rare cases in which extrauterine abdominal pregnancies progress simultaneously with intrauterine pregnancies to viability. In their review of the world’s literature, Rejase and associates found only 13 cases in which both pregnancies reached term and both infants were delivered and survived the neonatal period. In the absence of such rare circumstances, the outcome for intrauterine pregnancy is optimized by immediate therapy of the extrauterine pregnancy.

RH IMMUNOGLOBULIN USE AFTER ECETOPI PREGNANCY

Grimes has reported that Rh-negative mothers were recognized as the only 36% of cases. Fetomaternal hemorrhage associated with ectopic pregnancy can sensitize Rh-negative women at risk. A dose of 50 μg Rh immunoglobulin is usually sufficient to prevent Rh sensitization.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- The benefits derived from the early diagnosis of an ectopic pregnancy include the potential use of medical and conservative surgical procedures that optimize future fertility. Early diagnosis may also preclude ectopic pregnancy rupture and therefore result in lower patient morbidity and mortality.

- The astute clinician is aware of the risk factors for ectopic pregnancy, thereby increasing the level of suspicion in the appropriate clinical context. Risk factors for ectopic pregnancy include chronic inflammatory disease, prior tubal surgery, surgical sterilization, and use of an intrauterine device. Previous ectopic pregnancy, DES exposure, progestin-only contraceptives, assisted reproductive technologies, infertility, tubal developmental anomalies, multiple sex partners, early age at first intercourse, cigarette smoking, and vaginal douching.

- The classic presentation of pain and uterine bleeding with the finding of an adnexal mass is present in only 14% of patients with ectopic pregnancy. Even when present, these classic signs and symptoms are not entirely specific for ectopic pregnancy.

- Highly sensitive β-hCG assays have greatly aided in the early diagnosis of ectopic pregnancies. Serum β-hCG concentrations increase in an exponential fashion in early pregnancy. During the period of gestation in which the β-hCG concentration is less than 10,000 IU/L, the time required for doubling of β-hCG levels remains consistent, with a mean of 1.9 days. The slowest minimal β-hCG rise for a normal viable intrauterine pregnancy is 53% in 2 days. Transvaginal ultrasonographic evidence of an intrauterine pregnancy can be expected to be seen with very high sensitivity when β-hCG concentrations exceed 1,500 IU/L.

- Serum progesterone assays are useful in the early diagnosis of an ectopic pregnancy. In one large study, 98% of patients with a normal intrauterine pregnancy had progesterone levels greater than 10 ng/mL. On the other hand, 99% of patients with an ectopic pregnancy had progesterone levels less than 20 ng/mL. Diagnostic limitations of the serum progesterone assay included the fact that 31% of viable intrauterine pregnancies, 25% of abnormal intrauterine pregnancies, and 51% of ectopic pregnancies had progesterone levels between 10 and 20 ng/mL in this study. In another large trial, the lowest serum progesterone concentration associated with a viable pregnancy was 5.1 ng/mL.

- A dilatation and curettage procedure is helpful when β-hCG assays and transvaginal ultrasonography are nondiagnostic and the pregnancy is suspected. Appropriate indications include (i) a failure of β-hCG concentration rise of greater than 50% in days, (ii) a serum progesterone level less than 5 ng/mL, and (iii) a failure to visualize an intrauterine gestational sac by transvaginal ultrasonography when the β-hCG concentration exceeds 1,500 IU/L. An ectopic pregnancy is suspected after uterine curettage if choriocarcin villi are not present on frozen section or if β-hCG concentrations do not fall by at least 15% 8 to 12 hours after the procedure.

- Laparoscopy remains the gold standard for the diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy, although it still has a low rate of false-negative and false-positive outcomes.

- Systemic MTX is an alternative that can be used for the treatment of patients with unruptured tubal pregnancies or patients with persistent ectopic pregnancies.
following conservative surgery. A history of active hepatic, renal, or peptic ulcer disease; elevated liver enzyme concentrations; and thrombocytopenia or neutropenia are contraindications to MTX therapy. Appropriate candidates for systemic MTX therapy should be willing to accept a small risk of tubal rupture and participate in closely monitored follow-up.

- In women who wish to preserve their fertility, conservative surgery by linear salpingotomy is the preferred treatment of a distal unruptured tubal pregnancy. Contraindications to conservative tubal surgery include an extensive hemoperitoneum and potentially compromised cardiovascular status, a recurrent ectopic pregnancy in the same fallopian tube, an ectopic pregnancy in a severely damaged tube, and an ectopic pregnancy in a woman who has completed her family. Laser or unipolar needle electrocautery, or scissors can then be used to make the salpingotomy incision. It is important to make the incision along the antimesenteric wall of the tube in the area of maximal distention and large enough to allow for complete extrusion of the products of conception without difficulty. It is important to keep the fallopian tube taut. If the products of conception do not spontaneously extrude following completion of the incision, either hydrodissection or gentle tubal compression will usually work. The tissue is then placed in an endoscopic bag and removed from the peritoneal cavity.

After the tissue is removed, the tube is irrigated carefully and inspected for hemostasis. If hemostasis is present, the tube is then either left to heal by secondary intention or sutured with fine suture. Secondary intention is felt appropriate for most cases.

- Several methods have been successfully used for laparoscopic salpingectomy, including endoscopic stapling devices, endocauterization, bipolar cautery, as well as the application of pre-tied endoscopic ligatures. Following placement of laparoscopic trocar ports (usually three-plate technique), irrigation of the pelvis, and the evacuation of the full blood clots, the involved tube is grasped with a toothed grasper. One method then includes cauterizing the tubal-ovarian ligament, first with bipolar forces, followed by transaction with scissors or the blade of a coagulation-cutting device. The mesosalpinx is similarly cauterized and transected, taking care to stay as close as possible to the fallopian tube. The proximal tubal uterus is then cauterized and transected. Care should be taken such that excess cauteronization of the uterine cornu does not occur because of concerns about the potential of interstitial sinus tracts or diminished myometrial integrity. Alternatively, the tube can be excised distal to a no. 0 polyglycan 910 endoligature secured proximal to the ectopic implantation site. This technique works optimally if the entire mesosalpinx is first transected such that the endoligature can be placed precisely at the tubal insertion at the cornu. The specimen is then placed in an endoscopic specimen retrieval bag and removed from the peritoneal cavity. Consideration may be given to covering the proximal tubal pedicle with an absorbable adhesion prevention barrier.

- All Rh-negative patients with an ectopic pregnancy should be offered at least 50 μg of Rh immunoglobulin to prevent Rh sensitization caused by fetomaternal hemorrhage.

### Bibliography

- Cacciatore B, Stenman U, Ylostalo P. Diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy by vaginal ultrasonography in combination with a discriminatory serum hCG level of 100 mIU/mL. Hum Reprod 1991;6:581.


Surgery for Obstetrics


CHAPTER 35A ■ OBSTETRIC PROBLEMS

CORNELIA R. GRAVES

DEFINITIONS

**B-Lynch stitch**—A large mattress suture used to control postpartum hemorrhage following cesarean section delivery. A deep suture is placed vertically on the side of the uterus from 3 cm below the level of the uterine incision to 3 cm above the incision. The suture is then taken over the fundus, and a horizontal bite is taken on the posterior wall of the uterus below the level of the uterine vessels entering the myometrium on the same side as the anterior stitch. The suture is again passed over the fundus on the opposite side, and a deep suture is placed starting 3 cm above the other end of the anterior uterine incision and exiting 3 cm below the incision. This large four-corner mattress suture is then tightly tied down compressing the fundus.

Cervical insufficiency—Premature, painless dilation of the cervix leading to midtrimester delivery if not treated. The etiology of the condition is poorly understood and may be due to prior cervical trauma and/or some inherent cervical defect.

Late postpartum hemorrhage—Hemorrhage occurring more than 24 hours following delivery.

McDonald suture—Surgical treatment for cervical insufficiency. A purse-string suture of heavy caliber is placed around the cervix at the level of the internal os.

Postpartum hemorrhage—Although the clinical significance of postpartum blood loss will vary from one patient to the next, and blood loss during and after delivery is difficult to estimate accurately, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists has suggested postpartum hemorrhage be defined as blood loss of greater than 1,000 mL with a vaginal delivery or greater than 500 mL with a cesarean section or greater than 1,000 mL with a cesarean section or a 10% drop in the hematocrit.

Shirodkar suture—A thick suture or mesh band is placed submucosally around the cervix to treat cervical insufficiency.

Surgery in the pregnant patient presents several unique challenges. There is, of course, the added complexity of caring for two patients simultaneously. Illness and surgery both affect the fetus as well as the mother, and every decision to recommend surgery and when that surgery should be done requires weighing the risks and advantages to both patients. In many cases, there may be some urgency required to prevent or reduce maternal or fetal morbidity or mortality. In addition, the physiologic and anatomic changes of pregnancy may complicate diagnosis and alter the surgeon’s normal operative field so that the size of the uterus and increased vascularity of the pelvis may make it significantly more difficult to perform routine gynecologic procedures.

PHYSIOLOGIC CHANGES

There are a number of physiologic changes that occur during pregnancy. It is important for the surgeon to understand these changes because they may affect laboratory interpretation, blood product replacement, and surgical approach.

**Cardiovascular System**

Blood volume increases by 45% to 50% at term. Placental hormone production stimulates maternal erythropoiesis, increasing red cell mass by approximately 20%. This results in a functional hemodilution manifested by a physiologic anemia. Therefore, pregnancy should be considered a hypervolemic state. Maternal heart rate increases as early as 7 weeks. In late pregnancy, maternal heart rate is increased by approximately 20% over antepartum values, often resulting in mild tachycardia. The increase in blood volume and heart rate predisposes the parturient to an increased incidence of cardiac ectopy.

Systemic vascular resistance decreases by 20% but gradually increases near term. This results in a decrease in systolic and diastolic blood pressure during pregnancy, with a gradual recovery to nonpregnant values by term. As there is increased pressure in the venous system, there is decreased return from the lower extremities, resulting in dependent edema.

**Respiratory System**

In pregnancy, minute volume is increased while functional residual volume is decreased. It seems intuitive that lung volume would be decreased during pregnancy, but an increase in minute volume in association with an expansion of the anterior and posterior diameter of the chest results in increased tidal volume, thereby also increasing minute ventilation. These changes result in a compensated respiratory alkalosis. Normal Pco2 in pregnancy ranges from 28 to 35 mm Hg. Pco2 is usually greater than or equal to 100 mm Hg. Oxygen consumption and basal metabolic rate are also increased during pregnancy by approximately 20%.

These physiologic changes result in less pulmonary reserve for the acutely ill pregnant patient; therefore, this reduces the time interval from respiratory distress to respiratory failure. Because of this, early intervention for cases of respiratory challenge is mandatory.

**Gastrointestinal Tract**

During pregnancy, there is a decrease in gastrointestinal motility. This is caused by mechanical changes in the abdomen with...
the enlarging uterus and smooth muscle relaxation induced by high production of progesterone in pregnancy. Gastric empy- 
ery may be delayed for up to 8 hours; therefore, pregnant 
women should be considered to have a functionally full stom-
ach at all times. In addition, a decrease in large intestine motility 
may result in constipation severe enough to cause significant 
abdominal pain.

Coagulation Changes

Pregnancy is a hypercoagulable state. Fibrinogen is increased 
approximately 30% over baseline values. The hypercoagulable 
state of pregnancy is associated with increased risk of deep ve-
nous thrombosis and pulmonary embolus. This is particularly 
compounded when bed rest or immobilization occurs during the 
gestational period.

Renal Changes

Pregnancy increases blood flow to the renal pelvis approxi-
mately 50%. This results in an increased glomerular filtration 
rate accompanied by frequent urination. Serum creatinine is ap-
proximately 40% less than in a nonpregnant state. Therefore, a 
creatinine of 1 mg/dL during gestation should be considered 
abnormal.

Ureteral diameter increases in pregnancy secondary to com-
pression and smooth muscle relaxation. Peristalsis is delayed, 
and reflux occurs freely from the bladder into the lower ureteral 
segment. This results in an increased incidence of pyelonephri-
tis during pregnancy, making treatment of significant asym-
ptomatic bacteruria mandatory.

IMAGING TECHNIQUES

The most common imaging technique used during pregnancy is 
ultrasound. Ultrasound is considered safe and primarily is used 
for fetal assessment. In patients with abdominal pain, an ultra-
sound should be considered the first-line diagnostic test. During 
ultrasound, the presence of an intracranial pregnancy should be 
documented if possible, and evaluation of the cul-de-sac for fluid, 
the uterus for dilatation or stones, the gallbladder for the 
presence of gallstones, and the placenta for abnormalities can be 
noted.

Magnetic resonance imaging can be also safely used dur-
ing pregnancy. There is no data to suggest an increased risk 
from this modality. Magnetic resonance imaging is now used to 
diagnose fetal abnormalities, especially abnormalities of the 
central nervous system.

Although there are theoretical risks associated with ioniz-
ing radiation, fortunately, most diagnostic x-ray procedures 
are associated with minimal or no risk to the fetus. Existing 
evidence suggests that there is no increased risk of fetal con-
genital malformations, growth restriction, or abortion from x-ray procedures that expose the fetus to doses of 5 rads or 
less. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists has published guidelines regarding diagnostic imaging during pregnancy. Women should be reassured that concern about ra-
diation exposure should not prevent medically indicated diag-
nostic procedures. It cannot be stressed enough that maternal 
well-being is of the utmost importance, and appropriate di-
agnostic procedures should be obtained to facilitate a rapid 
diagnosis.

POSTPARTUM HEMORRHAGE

Postpartum hemorrhage is poorly defined by estimation of 
blood loss; therefore, it is difficult, if not impossible, to deter-
mine actual or percentage of blood loss at the time of delivery. 
Additionally, blood volume expansion is variable during preg-
nancy and can be affected by several factors including hyperpres-
sion, renal disease, maternal size, and the presence of multifetal 
gestations. The potential effects of blood loss largely depend 
on the degree of blood volume expansion. For example, the 
average blood loss from a cesarean delivery is 1,000 mL. This 
degree of blood loss is generally well tolerated by the promi-

pregnant woman. A blood loss of 500 to 750 mL, however, 
may not be tolerated in a woman with minimal volume ex-
pansion, or one who is homoconcentrated secondary to severe 
preeclampsia or eclampsia. The American College of Obstetri-
cians and Gynecologists has noted that a number of definitions 
have been used to define hemorrhage, including a blood loss 
greater than 500 mL with a vaginal delivery or greater than 
1,000 mL during a cesarean section or a drop in hematocrit of 
10% regardless of the amount of documented blood loss.

Gilstrap and Ramin have defined clinically significant hem-
orrhage as that amount of bleeding “that produces signs and 
symptoms of hemodynamic instability or that is likely to pro-
duce such if left unabated.”

Incidence and Etiology

Although the exact incidence of hemorrhage associated with 
pregnancy is unknown, it remains one of the leading causes 
of maternal mortality in this country. Kaunitz and associates 
reported that 13% of more than 2,000 maternal deaths were 
secondary to hemorrhage, and one third of these occurred post-
partum. Rochat and colleagues reported a similar incidence of 
11% of maternal deaths resulting from hemorrhage.

In a recent randomized trial in the United States, birth 
weight, labor induction and augmentation, chorioamnionitis, 
magnesium sulfate use, and previous postpartum hemorrhage 
were associated with increased risk of postpartum hemorrhage. 
A large population-based study supported these findings with 
significant risk factors identified using a multivariable analy-
sis. These risk factors are retained placenta (odds ratio [OR] 
3.5; 95% confidence interval [CI], 2.1–5.8), failure to progress 
during the second stage of labor (OR 3.4; 95% CI, 2.4–4.7), 
placenta accreta (OR 3.3; 95% CI, 1.7–6.4), lacerations (OR 
2.4; 95% CI, 2.0–2.8), instrumental delivery (OR 2.3; 95% CI, 
1.6–3.4), large-for-gestational-age newborn (OR 1.9; 95% CI, 
1.6–2.4), hypertensive disorders (OR 1.7; 95% CI, 1.2–2.1), 
induction of labor (OR 1.4; 95% CI, 1.1–1.7), and augmenta-
tion of labor with oxytocin (OR 1.4; 95% CI, 1.2–1.7).

Diagnosis and Medical Management

The most important aspects in the management of postpartum 
hemorrhage are prompt recognition of the condition and ascer-
tainment of its etiology. Recognition is no problem with exter-
nal bleeding, and such bleeding almost always can be controlled 
with medical or minor surgical means. Hypotension without 
obvious external blood loss should serve as a sign of pos-
tional internal bleeding, and virtually all such hemorrhage will 
require a major surgical procedure to arrest the hemorrhage. 
If the etiology of the hemorrhage is not determined quickly,
Other methods of uterine tamponade reported in the literature may stop the bleeding so that no further treatment is necessary. Replacement, as well as slowing bleeding enough to allow for parturial hemorrhage. Uterine packing allows time for volume replacement before surgical intervention. Maier described the use of a packing device called a Torpin packer. The device uses a plunger to place several yards of 4-inch-wide gauze into the uterine cavity. The hallmarks of medi-cal management consist of volume replacement and oxytocic agents, including intravenous oxytocin and parenteral meth-ylergonovone and prostaglandins. Volume can be maintained with crystalloid or blood or blood products. Invasive monitoring, such as with a pulmonary artery catheter, generally is not necessary and may be dangerous in the presence of a coagulopathy. Its use should be reserved for those patients who do not respond to usual and expected therapy. As a general rule, monitoring of urine output, vital signs, and oxygen saturation will be sufficient. Volume replacement generally is adequate when the blood pressure is maintained at 90 to 140 mm Hg systolic, pulse rate is less than 100 beats per minute, and urine output is at least 25 to 30 mL per hour. When a patient has required transfusion of significant amounts of packed red blood cells, transfusion of coagulation products should be performed to replace those lost in the hemorrhage. Calcium also should be re-placed in these patients because of risk of complications related to hypocalcemia in patients receiving massive transfusions. Coagulation factors should be replaced in patients who receive extensive transfusions with packed red blood cells. Fluid over-load generally can be detected with a stethoscope and an oxygen saturation monitor in conjunction with clinical signs and symptoms. Diuretics should only be used to remove excess fluid if the pa-tient becomes hypoxic related to volume overload. A medical management protocol is summarized in Table 35A.1.

**Table 35A.1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEDICAL MANAGEMENT PROTOCOL FOR POSTPARTUM HEMORRHAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large-bore intravenous line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foley catheter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxytocin, dilute solution of 20 U in 1,000 mL of normal saline or Ringer solution, given as IV infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylergonovone, 0.2 mg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-methyl PGF2α, 0.25 mg IM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 to 60 min as indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Volume Replacement</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystalloid, 3 mL/mL of estimated blood loss (maintain urine output ≥ 30 mL/h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Packed red blood cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresh frozen plasma, platelets, or cryoprecipitate, as indicated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Surgical Management**

Lower genital tract lacerations usually are best managed by suturing. The rare case of uterine rupture also is managed surgically. Other techniques to control hemorrhage include uterine and uteroovarian artery ligation, hypogastric or internal iliac artery ligation, hysterectomy, or uterine or hypogastric artery embolization.

Uterine packing, which until recently had been abandoned by most clinicians, may allow adequate time for blood and fluid replacement before surgical intervention. Maier described the use of a packing device called a Torpin packer. The device uses a plunger to place several yards of 4-inch-wide gauze into the uterine cavity and has been used successfully to control postpartum hemorrhage. Uterine packing allows time for volume replacement, as well as slowing bleeding enough to allow for surgical techniques short of hysterectomy. In many cases, it may stop the bleeding so that no further treatment is necessary. Other methods of uterine tamponade reported in the literature have included the use of a Foley catheter with a 30- to 50-cc balloon or a Sengstaken-Blakemore tube with the esophageal balloon inflated with 30 cc of normal saline.

The choice of a specific surgical technique to control bleeding depends on several factors, such as the degree of hemor-rhage, the condition of the patient, parity, and the desire for future childbearing; although probably the single most impor-tant factor is the experience of the surgeon.

**Arterial Embolization**

Angiographically directed arterial embolization has been described for the successful control of obstetric and gynecologic bleeding. Gelfoam, polyvinyl alcohol dehydrated particles, and other substances have been used for such embolizations. Pelage and associ-ates, in two separate reports, describe use of arterial embolization in patients with primary or secondary postpartum hemorrhage. Following transcatheter embolization, immediate decrease or cessation of bleeding occurred in all patients. Two patients required repeat embolization the next day with no further complications. Fourteen women were diagnosed with secondary postpartum hemorrhage after the first 24 hours fol-lowing delivery. All of these patients had complete resolution of bleeding with embolization with no further complications. Arterial embolization can be performed quickly and safely; therefore, it should be considered in patients with postpartum hemorrhage. There have been reports of successful pregnancies following embolization, which makes it an especially attractive alternative to hysterectomy in the patient who desires preser-vation of fertility.

**Uterine Artery Ligation**

Uterine artery ligation is a relatively safe procedure that can be performed by most obstetricians. It also allows for future...
childbearing. The technique consists of ligating the uterine artery and vein at the lower uterine segment 2 to 3 cm below the level of the transverse uterine incision. An absorbable ligature is placed 2 to 3 cm medial to the uterine vessels through the myometrium (to obliterate any intramyometrial ascending branches) and then lateral to the vessels through the broad ligament. It is imperative that the bladder be advanced before placement of the suture to prevent bladder injury. Because of collateral flow from the ovarian artery, some recommend that a second ligature be placed at the junction of the uteroovarian ligament and uterus. The technique of uterine artery ligation is shown in Figures 35A.1 and 35A.2.

O’Leary, in a review of 90 women who underwent uterine artery ligation (30 were for uterine atony), reported that only six (7%) procedures resulted in failure. There were no major complications from the procedure itself. In a follow-up review of 265 women who underwent uterine artery ligation, O’Leary reported a greater than 95% success rate. This technique is most useful (and successful) when hemorrhage is of a moderate degree and originates from the lower uterine segment. Such an example is bleeding from a low placental implantation site. Uterine artery ligation also can prove beneficial for lower segment extensions or lacerations, as well as for a uterine artery laceration itself. Philippe and associates reported a vaginal approach to ligation of the uterine arteries in two patients after vaginal delivery, but a larger case series would have to be performed to determine the feasibility of this approach. B-Lynch and colleagues also described five cases in which hemorrhage was controlled by placing an absorbable suture vertically from 3 cm below the uterine incision to 3 cm above the uterine incision on the right side of the uterus (Fig. 35A.3). The stitch is then taken vertically over the fundus and

FIGURE 35A.1. Uterine artery ligation. (From: Clark SC, Phelan JP. Surgical control of obstetric hemorrhage. Contemp Obstet Gynecol 1984;24:70, with permission.)

placed horizontally in the posterior uterus at the same level as the anterior suture. The suture is threaded over the left side of the uterus to place another stitch on the left from 3 cm above the uterine incision to 3 cm below the uterine incision. The long suture is tied, compressing the fundus. A large suture, such as #1 Prolene on a large needle, is used. The uterine incision is closed in the usual fashion (Fig. 35A.3C). There are several case series in the literature supporting the efficacy of the B-Lynch stitch for the treatment of uterine atony. In all series, the suture has been reported to be effective. It has been suggested that the B-Lynch be considered in all cases of severe postpartum hemorrhage before resorting to hysterectomy.

**Hypogastric Artery Ligation**

The major blood supply to the uterus and pelvis comes from the internal iliac artery, commonly called the hypogastric artery. Bilateral ligation of this artery can effectively control significant bleeding and thus prevent the need for hysterectomy and permanent sterilization. Burchell has aptly described the physiology of internal iliac artery ligation. It appears that ligation of this artery controls bleeding by converting an arterial system into a venous system, which decreases the pulse pressure by as much as 85%. This allows pressure and packing to produce clotting. Hypogastric artery ligation probably interferes little, if at all, with subsequent pregnancies. Mengert and colleagues reported successful pregnancies in five women who had undergone internal iliac artery ligation. This technique may also prove useful for controlling bleeding in patients with large hematomas of the broad ligament or for a lacerated artery that has retracted into the broad ligament. Such vessels or active bleeding sites often are difficult to identify. If the bleeding is from the hypogastric vein, ligation of the hypogastric artery decreases outgoing flow, as well as allowing exposure to the vein.

The technique of hypogastric artery ligation is illustrated in Fig. 35A.4. The peritoneum overlying the common iliac artery is opened by directly cutting on the surface of the artery. The ureter should be identified and retracted medially, if necessary. The sheath covering the internal iliac (hypogastric) artery then can be opened longitudinally. A right-angle clamp is gently passed under the artery in the lateral to medial direction with blunt dissection. Great care must be taken not to perforate the internal iliac vein, and the clamp is passed lateral to medial to avoid injury to the vein by the tip of the clamp. The ligation should be performed about 2 cm distal to the bifurcation to avoid disrupting the posterior division of the hypogastric, which can lead to ischemia and necrosis of the skin and subcutaneous tissue of the gluteus. Two nonabsorbable sutures of 2-0 silk should be used for ligation. It is important that hypogastric artery ligation be performed bilaterally to adequately decrease pressure to the uterus. Clark and associates reported on the successful control of bleeding in 8 (42%) of 19 women who underwent hypogastric artery ligation. In a review of hypogastric artery ligation from three series, Clark reported that this procedure prevented hysterectomy in about half of the cases associated with uterine atony and placenta accreta. Interestingly, in the series by Clark and associates, the success of this procedure did not appear to be related directly to the conditions for which it was performed. It must be noted, however, that the number of patients in each category is small.

Although this procedure is successful in about 50% of the cases and does not interfere with subsequent fertility, it is not technically easy to perform and requires special expertise and skill. Many obstetricians have little, if any, experience with this procedure. Moreover, potential complications of hypogastric artery ligation include laceration of the iliac vein, ligation of the external iliac artery, ureteral injury, and death.

**Hysterectomy**

Because of the lack of experience and skill with the technique of hypogastric artery ligation, many clinicians prefer to do a hysterectomy to control postpartum hemorrhage. Peripartum hysterectomy is extensively discussed later in this
chapter. Hysterectomy usually is the safest procedure and also the quickest that can be performed for refractory bleeding. For example, Clark and associates reported that patients undergoing hypogastric artery ligation who subsequently required hysterectomy had an increased incidence of cardiac arrest secondary to blood loss. The increased morbidity associated with hypogastric artery ligation followed by hysterectomy may be secondary to a delay resulting from attempted conservative management short of hysterectomy. Hypogastric artery ligation was attempted before hysterectomy 64% of the time in nulliparous women, compared with 10% of the time for multiparous patients. Lack of experience with hypogastric artery ligation adds to the overall time required to attempt the procedure and overall blood loss.

In a review of 70 women who underwent emergency hysterectomy for postpartum hemorrhage, Clark and colleagues reported that almost all required blood transfusion, and 50% had postoperative febrile morbidity. The most common indication for hysterectomy in this series was uterine atony, followed by placenta accreta. Of the 70 procedures, 60 were performed after cesarean delivery. Mean operating time was 3.1 hours, and mean blood loss was 3,375 mL.

**LATE POSTPARTUM HEMORRHAGE**

Late postpartum hemorrhage is that which occurs more than 24 hours after delivery. The etiology of such bleeding includes placental site subinvolution, infection, coagulopathy, and retained products of conception. Initial therapy for this complication is the same as for early hemorrhage. If infection is present, antibiotics should be used. Endometrial curettage may be necessary for retained placental fragments. Angiographic embolization may prove especially useful in the case of late postpartum hemorrhage. Uterine artery ligation, hypogastric artery ligation, and hysterectomy are rarely required for control of late postpartum hemorrhage.

**PERIPARTUM HYSTERECTOMY**

Horatio Storer performed the first cesarean hysterectomy in 1869. Initially, the procedure was performed only for emergency situations, but in the early 20th century, it became an accepted means of sterilization. In the modern obstetrical age, elective cesarean hysterectomy is rarely performed, except in cases of cervical neoplasia.

Peripartum hysterectomy can be performed in conjunction with a cesarean delivery (e.g., cesarean hysterectomy) or after a vaginal delivery for complications such as postpartum hemorrhage. In a recent review of a nationwide sample of deliveries from 1998 to 2003, Whiteman and colleagues estimated that the rate of peripartum hysterectomy in the United States is 0.77 per 1,000 deliveries.

Although there is little controversy regarding peripartum hysterectomy for emergency conditions, there is significant debate in modern obstetrics regarding an elective hysterectomy.
performed at the time of cesarean delivery. There has been legitimate concern about increased morbidity related to peripartum hysterectomy—including damage to the ureters, bladder, and rectum—and an increased rate of reoperation. However, Plauche has pointed out that morbidity often is associated with the conditions leading to the hysterectomy and not necessarily the procedure itself. Lower morbidities have been reported for elective cesarean hysterecomies when compared with emergency hysterecomies. However, there is inherent bias in these retrospective reviews. Emergent surgery for lifesaving maternal indications would be expected to have higher morbidities, such as blood loss and injury to surrounding structures. Castaneda and colleagues noted, in a retrospective study, that over the years the indications for peripartum hysterectomy have changed from predominately elective to almost exclusively emergencies. In their data, the average blood loss was 3,009 mL in emergent cases and 1,262 mL in nonemergent cases. They concluded that in current times, peripartum hysterectomy is almost always emergent in nature and associated with a significant blood loss. As might be expected, there are no randomized prospective studies of elective cesarean hysterectomy, and it is unlikely that such a study could ever be done given the ethical dilemma involved.

Emergency Peripartum Hysterectomy

There are several indications for emergency peripartum hysterectomy. The three most common reasons are uterine rupture, abnormal placentation, and uterine atony. Although the exact incidence of emergency peripartum hysterectomy is not known, several authors have reported widely varying rates of 0.06% to 1.5 per 1,000 deliveries. Obstetric hemorrhage secondary to a variety of etiologies is a common indication reported for peripartum emergency hysterectomy. Chestnut and associates reviewed 70 cases of emergent hysterectomy for obstetric hemorrhage and found that 60 (86%) of these procedures were performed after cesarean delivery, and 10 (14%) were performed after vaginal delivery. Uterine atony and placenta accreta accounted for almost three fourths of the cases. Other indications were uterine rupture, extension of the uterine incision, and fibroids precluding closure of the uterine incision. Other indications included broad ligament hematoma, placenta previa, and chorioamnionitis. Twenty-three of the cases in this series followed cesarean deliveries, and 15 were postpartum hysterectomies.

In another series of 117 cases of peripartum hysterectomy, Zelop and colleagues reported uterine atony accounted for 25 (21%) of the cases, and most (75% or 64%) were secondary to an abnormally adherent placenta. The rate of emergent hysterectomy increased with increasing parity, placenta previa, and history of previous cesarean section.

It is clear from the literature that abnormal adherent placenta or placenta accreta (with or without hemorrhage) is emerging as the most common condition leading to an emergency hysterectomy. In three studies from 1993 to the present, 156 (16%) of the 279 emergent peripartum hysterectomies were performed for placenta accreta. These studies are outlined in Table 35A.2. The increase in placenta accreta is related to the high rate of cesarean deliveries, which has risen in the United States from 5% in the early 1960s to 30% at the present time. A recent study of more than 60,000 deliveries at the University of Chicago by Wu et al. found that the rate of placenta accreta had increased to 3 per 1,000 deliveries in 2003. They observed that this was directly associated with the increase in cesarean section rate. Placenta previa also is significantly associated with placenta accreta. Zelop et al. reported that the risk of peripartum hysterectomy in women with placenta previa increases from 7 in 1,000 deliveries in nulliparous women to one in four deliveries in women with a history of four or more live births. Clarke and colleagues found that in the presence of a placenta previa, the risk of having placenta accreta increased from 24% in women with one prior cesarean delivery to 67% in women with 3 or more prior cesareans. Zorlu and colleagues evaluated the risk of placenta accreta in women with placenta previa increases from 7 in 1,000 deliveries in nulliparous women to one in four deliveries in women with a history of four or more live births. Clarke and colleagues found that in the presence of a placenta previa, the risk of having placenta accreta increased from 24% in women with one prior cesarean delivery to 67% in women with 3 or more prior cesareans. Zorlu and associates evaluated the risk of emergent hysterectomy in two distinct time periods. Forty-three patients underwent emergent hysterectomy between 1985 and 1989. The incidence of hysterectomy was 1 in 2,495 deliveries, and the indications for hysterectomy included uterine atony (43%), placenta accreta (25.5%), and uterine rupture (21%). Five years later, from 1990 to 1994, the incidence of hysterectomy had decreased by almost 50% to 1 in 4,228 deliveries, and the indications for hysterectomy included placenta accreta (41.7%), uterine atony (29.2%), and uterine rupture (20.8%). The authors felt the increase in placenta accreta as an indication for emergent hysterectomy most likely reflected an increase in the cesarean section rate nationwide.

### Table 35A.2

**INDICATIONS FOR EMERGENCY HYSTERECTOMY FOR OBSTETRIC HEMORRHAGE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>Clark et al., 1984</th>
<th>Bakshi et al., 2000</th>
<th>Stanco et al., 1993</th>
<th>Zelop et al., 1993</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uterine atony/placenta accreta</td>
<td>(n = 70)</td>
<td>(n = 39)</td>
<td>(n = 123)</td>
<td>(n = 117)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine atony/Placentation</td>
<td>30 (43%)</td>
<td>11 (28%)</td>
<td>44 (35.9%)</td>
<td>25 (21.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine atony/Placenta accreta</td>
<td>21 (30%)</td>
<td>20 (33%)</td>
<td>61 (49%)</td>
<td>75 (64.1%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine atony/placenta accreta</td>
<td>9 (13%)</td>
<td>5 (13%)</td>
<td>14 (11.5%)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine atony/placenta accreta</td>
<td>7 (10%)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine atony/placenta accreta</td>
<td>3 (4%)</td>
<td>2 (3%)</td>
<td>3 (2.4%)</td>
<td>17 (14.5%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Elective Cesarean Hysterectomy

Although a number of conditions have been reported as indications for elective cesarean hysterectomy, currently accepted indications are usually limited to macroscopic or invasive cervical cancer. In retrospective reviews that go back to the 1950s and 1960s, sterilization, menstrual abnormalities, and uterine fibroids are listed as indications; however, most practitioners would not consider these appropriate indications for such an invasive surgical procedure in the 21st century.

Morbidity and Mortality of Hysterectomy

The conditions leading to emergency hysterectomy also are responsible for much of the morbidity reported with the procedure. Two other important factors associated with morbidity, both of which are difficult to quantify, are training and experience (or surgical skill) of the surgeon. Chestnut and associates reported statistically significant reductions in operative time, estimated blood loss, intraoperative and total blood replacement, and length of hospital stay if the patient was in the care of an experienced surgeon. It seems reasonable, however, to conclude that morbidity and complications are higher in women undergoing emergency versus elective procedures despite the skill of the surgeon.

Zelop and associates reported 102 (87%) of the patients in their series required transfusion of blood products. Complications of three series, totaling 279 cases of emergency peripartum hysterectomy, are summarized in Table 35A.3. Maternal mortality rates in these studies varied between 0% and 4.5%. As with morbidity, mortality is better correlated with the specific complication than with the hysterectomy per se.

In a review of 80 women undergoing elective cesarean hysterectomy, McNulty reported that only five (6%) experienced febrile morbidity, and 15 (19%) received blood transfusions. Four (5%) women sustained bladder injuries, and four (5%) women developed broad ligament hematomas. Yancey and colleagues compared the outcomes in 43 women undergoing scheduled cesarean hysterectomy with those of 86 women who underwent cesarean delivery and subsequent scheduled hysterectomy. Although women in the cesarean hysterectomy group were more likely to need a blood transfusion than were women in the subsequent hysterectomy group (OR 1.4; 95% CI, 1.4–8.4), they were less likely to have other complications, such as infection (OR 0.34; 95% CI, 0.25–0.45). The overall postoperative complication rate was the same in both groups (31%). Thus, it is likely that elective cesarean hysterectomy is not associated with an increased risk of complications or morbidity compared with a cesarean delivery followed by an elective hysterectomy at a later time. However, in a healthy population, one must weigh the infectious risk of blood transfusion versus the benefit of the combined procedure. As pointed out by Baker and D’Alton, however, there is little doubt that elective cesarean hysterectomy does result in increased morbidity when compared with a cesarean delivery and a tubal ligation.

Emergency Versus Elective Hysterectomy

In two studies comparing emergency with elective peripartum hysterectomy, morbidity was greater with the emergency procedure. Estimated blood loss, number of women transfused, and operating time were all higher in the emergency group. It is important to remember that many of the patients who undergo emergent delivery already had significant blood loss and hemorrhage before the decision being made to proceed with hysterectomy.

Cesarean Hysterectomy Technique

Elective cesarean hysterectomy can be accomplished through either a midline or low transverse (Pfannenstiel) skin incision. Often, it is more prudent to use a midline skin incision in cases of placenta percreta because placental invasion can ensue. In cases of placenta previa and suspected placenta accreta, it is prudent to arrange for urologic support preoperatively. In cases of anterior placenta previa and suspected placenta accreta, it is prudent to arrange for urologic support preoperatively. In cases of suspected accreta, interventional radiology may place bilateral hysterectomy. Although women in the cesarean hysterectomy group were more likely to need a blood transfusion than were women in the subsequent hysterectomy group (OR 3.4; 95% CI, 1.4–8.4), they were less likely to have other complications, such as infection (OR 0.34; 95% CI, 0.25–0.45). The overall postoperative complication rate was the same in both groups (31%). Thus, it is likely that elective cesarean hysterectomy is not associated with an increased risk of complications or morbidity compared with a cesarean delivery followed by an elective hysterectomy at a later time. However, in a healthy population, one must weigh the infectious risk of blood transfusion versus the benefit of the combined procedure. As pointed out by Baker and D’Alton, however, there is little doubt that elective cesarean hysterectomy does result in increased morbidity when compared with a cesarean delivery and a tubal ligation.

Emergency Versus Elective Hysterectomy

In two studies comparing emergency with elective peripartum hysterectomy, morbidity was greater with the emergency procedure. Estimated blood loss, number of women transfused, and operating time were all higher in the emergency group. It is important to remember that many of the patients who undergo emergent delivery already had significant blood loss and hemorrhage before the decision being made to proceed with hysterectomy.

Cesarean Hysterectomy Technique

Elective cesarean hysterectomy can be accomplished through either a midline or low transverse (Pfannenstiel) skin incision. Often, it is more prudent to use a midline skin incision in cases of placenta percreta because placental invasion can ensue. In cases of placenta previa and suspected placenta accreta, it is prudent to arrange for urologic support preoperatively. In cases of anterior placenta previa and suspected placenta accreta, it is prudent to arrange for urologic support preoperatively. In cases of suspected accreta, interventional radiology may place bilateral hysterectomy. Although women in the cesarean hysterectomy group were more likely to need a blood transfusion than were women in the subsequent hysterectomy group (OR 3.4; 95% CI, 1.4–8.4), they were less likely to have other complications, such as infection (OR 0.34; 95% CI, 0.25–0.45). The overall postoperative complication rate was the same in both groups (31%). Thus, it is likely that elective cesarean hysterectomy is not associated with an increased risk of complications or morbidity compared with a cesarean delivery followed by an elective hysterectomy at a later time. However, in a healthy population, one must weight the infectious risk of blood transfusion versus the benefit of the combined procedure. As pointed out by Baker and D’Alton, however, there is little doubt that elective cesarean hysterectomy does result in increased morbidity when compared with a cesarean delivery and a tubal ligation.
well down before the start of the hysterectomy. This is best accomplished at the time of the cesarean delivery. The bladder should be dissected off the anterior, lower uterine segment with sharp dissection if firm adhesions are encountered. Firm adhesions often are present in patients who have undergone multiple cesarean deliveries. If bleeding is a problem, further dissection of the bladder from the lower uterine segment can be accomplished after ligation of the uterine artery.

The actual hysterectomy is begun by ligating the round ligament close to the uterus and ligating the distal stump with a 0-Vicryl suture ligature. The vesicouterine serosa, where the bladder was attached before its dissection, then is extended laterally to the severed round ligaments.

The peritoneal incision should be extended superiorly. Because the ureters are dilated in pregnancy, they should be identified quickly to avoid injury. The ureter can be seen crossing the iliac artery at the level of the bifurcation in the medial leaf of the broad ligament and is most easily identified at this location. The uteroovarian ligaments can be secured by first making a "window" through the posterior leaf of the broad ligament and then doubly clamping, cutting, and ligating the uteroovarian ligament bilaterally (Fig. 35A.5). This step is easy and uncomplicated in the nonpregnant patient; but the dilated vasculature of pregnancy requires the surgeon to carefully select a clear window and handle the tissues gently to avoid troublesome bleeding from easily torn veins. The uterine vessels are skeletonized as in the nonpuerperal hysterectomy. These vessels are large and easy to identify. Dissection is made easier with continuous upward traction of the uterus. If possible, the uterine vessels are clamped bilaterally (usually with a Heaney or Zepplin clamp); before the vessels are cut. If there is room, we prefer to place three large clamps on each side, and divide the pedicle between the first and second clamp (Fig. 35A.6). This provides two clamps on the active vessels for security and one back clamp to prevent back bleeding from the enlarged, blood-engorged uterus. The vascular pedicles are doubly ligated with 0 synthetic absorbable sutures, and we generally prefer to suture ligate the back bleeders also, so that the back camps can be removed from the field. This provides better exposure and reduces the risk of tearing the uterine tissues by excessive traction on these clamps. As with all hysterectomies, care must be exercised in identifying and avoiding the ureter. The next pedicles encountered should be the broad ligament, the base of which is the cardinal ligament. A slightly curved or a straight clamp, whichever fits the anatomy best, can be used for these ligaments. It is better to take several small pedicles instead of one large bite because an excessively large pedicle can slide out of a clamp or suture. This is especially true with the edematous tissues associated with pregnancy. Once the cardinal and uterosacral ligaments have been clamped, cut, and tied at the level of the cervix, the specimen can be removed by clamping across the vagina on each side and incising the vaginal mucosa (Fig. 35A.7). It may be difficult to identify the lower extent of the cervix, especially if the cervix is effaced. The cervix can be grasped with a thumb anteriorly, and the hand wrapping around the cervix with the fingers posteriorly. The cervix is then pinched between the thumb and middle finger as the hand slowly slides down the cervix toward the vagina. Usually, it is possible to feel the lower end of the cervix in this way. If there is any doubt, it may also be helpful to make an incision into

**FIGURE 35A.5.** A: The posterior leaf of the broad ligament adjacent to the uterus is perforated just beneath the fallopian tube, uteroovarian ligaments, and ovarian vessels. B: These are then doubly clamped close to the uterus and severed. (From: Cunningham FG, MacDonald PC, Gant NF, et al. Caesarean section and caesarean hysterectomy. In: Williams Obstetrics. 19th ed. Norwalk, CT: Appleton & Lange;1993:591, with permission.)

**FIGURE 35A.6.** A: The uterine artery and veins on either side are doubly clamped immediately adjacent to the uterus and divided. B, C: The vascular pedicles are doubly suture-ligated. (From: Cunningham FG, MacDonald PC, Gant NF, et al. Caesarean section and caesarean hysterectomy. In: Williams Obstetrics. 19th ed. Norwalk, CT: Appleton & Lange;1993:591, with permission.)
A curved clamp is swung in across the lateral vaginal fornix below the level of the cervix, and the tissue is incised medially to the point of the clamp. (From: Cunningham FG, MacDonald PC, Gant NF, et al. Caesarean section and caesarean hysterectomy. In: Williams Obstetrics. 19th ed. Norwalk, CT: Appleton & Lange;1993:591, with permission.)

After removal of the uterus and cervix, each of the angles of the lateral vaginal fornix is secured to the cardinal ligaments using the electrosurgical blade. A finger can be inserted into the vagina, and the cervix palpated directly to confirm its location. Once the specimen has been removed, the cervix should be inspected for any tissue remaining. After removal of the uterus and cervix, each of the angles of the lateral vaginal fornix is secured to the cardinal and uterosacral ligaments with a figure-of-eight or delayed absorbable suture. There is no unanimity of opinion regarding whether the vaginal cuff should be run and left open or closed. The vaginal cuff can be closed with interrupted figure-of-eight sutures. If there is continued oozing, as with a coagulopathy or in the presence of purulent fluid, then the vaginal cuff is left open to allow for adequate drainage. Hemostatic agents such as Gelfoam, with or without topical thrombin, or Surgicel can be considered. An intraperitoneal suction drain can prove helpful in monitoring patients who are at high risk of developing hematoma or abscess.

There is no consensus of opinion regarding reperitonization of the pelvis. It is not necessary in most cases. All pedicles should be closely inspected for bleeding before the abdominal incision is closed.

Subtotal Versus Total Hysterectomy

Some clinicians have a tendency to perform a subtotal or supracervical hysterectomy in most cases of emergency peripartum hysterectomy. There is a general belief that both operating time and blood loss are significantly lower with the subtotal technique. In addition, it is said that the risk of bladder or ureteral injury is less. There is no question that in the select patient who has been or is hemodynamically unstable, it may be prudent to perform a supracervical hysterectomy, especially if all bleeding has been controlled to that point. However, it is necessary to remove the cervix in cases of placenta previa or placenta accreta involving the lower uterine segment.

Despite the reputed advantages of a supracervical hysterectomy, there is evidence that performance of a complete hysterectomy with removal of the cervix adds little to either operating time or blood loss. Clark and associates reported no significant differences in mean values for blood loss and operating time in obstetric patients undergoing emergency total hysterectomy versus supracervical hysterectomy. Mean hospital stay also was not significantly different. However, the women in this study were not randomized to supracervical versus total hysterectomy. In 1998, Zorlu and associates also reported no significant difference between total and supracervical hysterectomy in operative time, blood transfusion, and mean hospital stay. It is important to separate emergency cesarean hysterectomy for hemorrhage, and so on, from elective peripartum hysterectomy for indications such as microminvase cervical cancer because the blood loss and other morbidity are generally significantly greater for the emergency procedure. A prospective, randomized study would be very helpful.

Episiotomy

An episiotomy is a surgical incision into the perineal body for the purpose of either aiding the actual delivery process or preventing tears and lacerations.

Incidence

The incidence or frequency of episiotomy varies according to parity, patient population, indication, and the health care provider practicing obstetrics. The use of episiotomy has significantly declined in recent years. In 1983, Thacker and Banta reported that about two thirds of all vaginal deliveries in the United States were associated with the performance of an episiotomy. However, more recently, Bansai and associates reported a decrease in the use of episiotomy from 86.8% to 10.4% between 1976 and 1994 at their institution. Among medical professionals, there is extreme variability in the use of episiotomy. In 2000, Robinson and associates evaluated 1,576 consecutive spontaneous vaginal deliveries and found that midwives had a lower incidence of episiotomy use (21%), followed by medical school faculty (33%). Private practice providers had the highest rate of episiotomy (55%). Other predictors of episiotomy were prolonged second stage of labor, fetal macrosomia, and epidural anesthesia. Hueston reported that nulliparity, use of forceps, or vacuum extraction also were predictors of episiotomy.

The literature is clear that the use of episiotomy, especially when associated with an operative vaginal delivery, is directly related to an increase in perineal sphincter injury. It has been suggested that given the morbidity associated with these injuries, that the combination of these two procedures be avoided, if possible.

Indications

The routine use of episiotomy with vaginal delivery has been strongly challenged. A recent Practice Bulletin from the
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists stated that the previously held ideas that episiotomy facilitated vaginal delivery, especially difficult or operative vaginal delivery, or improved neonatal outcome when expeditious delivery was indicated, are not supported by current evidence. Studies by Myles and Santolaya and Bodner-Adler and colleagues failed to show any reduction in anal sphincter damage, rectal mucocoe tears, or improved neonatal outcomes in women who underwent episiotomy.

In the past, it was thought that episiotomy prevented vaginal and perineal damage that led to subsequent pelvic relaxation. However, there is little evidence to support the premise that a "prophylactic" episiotomy prevents cystocele, rectocele, enterocele, urethral prolapse, vaginal prolapse, or stress urinary incontinence. Rockner and associates evaluated pelvic floor muscle strength using vaginal cones and found that women with episiotomies had less strength than those with spontaneous vaginal deliveries. Neural testing of the perineal muscle lature in other studies showed that the amount of denervation was associated with weight of the baby and the length of the second stage of labor, and was unrelated to episiotomy. Sleep and Grant looked at deliveries in those who restricted use of episiotomy and those who reported liberal use of episiotomy. Over 3 years of follow-up, there was little difference between the two groups in severity of incontinence or the reported incidence of incontinence. These studies indicate that episiotomy does not appear to prevent the physical/anatomic or symptomatic changes of pelvic relaxation.

In addition, there are no good data to support prophylactic episiotomy for the prevention of "trauma" to the fetus, especially the preterm fetus. Although there is no evidence that the risk of shoulder dystocia can be decreased by the use of an episiotomy, many experts feel that a generous episiotomy may help in the management of a shoulder dystocia when it presents.

In summary, current opinion does not support the routine use of episiotomy for vaginal delivery. Previous ideas that suggested episiotomy decreased the risk of perineal injury, reduced trauma of operative delivery, or improved neonatal outcome have not been supported by recent studies. An episiotomy undoubtedly provides more room for a difficult vaginal delivery. Such deliveries are inherently associated with an increased risk of fetal distress and maternal trauma. The obstetrician must individualize each patient and weigh the potential advantages of an episiotomy against the known risks of episiotomy or vaginal delivery without an episiotomy or even cesarean delivery.

### Midline Versus Mediolateral Episiotomy

There is little question that the midline perineal incision is easier to perform and repair, and is associated with less postoperative pain than the mediolateral episiotomy. In general, it is also associated with less blood loss and better anatomic results. Midline perineal incisions are used more frequently in the United States, whereas mediolateral episiotomy is used more commonly in Europe. The major disadvantage of midline episiotomy is an increased risk of third- and fourth-degree lacerations. Owen and Haush report that 20% of primigravid women with a midline episiotomy had a third- or fourth-degree laceration, compared with 9% of women with a mediolateral episiotomy and only 1%, when no episiotomy was performed. Of interest, multiparous women with a midline episiotomy had fewer third- and fourth-degree lacerations than those with a mediolateral episiotomy. Although these data appear to favor performing either a mediolateral episiotomy or no episiotomy at all, caution must be exercised when interpreting the data because this was not a randomized, prospective study, and it does not control for possible confounding factors. For example, patients who underwent episiotomy may well have had larger babies, a higher incidence of forceps assistance, or other characteristics resulting in an increased risk of laceration.

Although the mediolateral episiotomy may be associated with fewer third- and fourth-degree lacerations (at least in the primiparous patient) (Table 35A.4), there are several disadvantages to this technique. Blood loss is greater, mediolateral episiotomies are more difficult to repair, and anatomic results may be faulty. Postoperative pain also is more common and can be very troublesome. In the absence of good, prospective, randomized trials, the decision to perform a mediolateral or midline episiotomy must be based on clinical judgment and experience. A mediolateral episiotomy may provide more room for a difficult delivery with a lower risk of third- and fourth-degree laceration, but it also results in more blood loss and a greater risk of long-term dyspareunia.

### Episiotomy Repair

An episiotomy can be repaired in numerous ways. One popular method is to close the vaginal mucosa and submucosa with a continuous locking suture of 3-0 synthetic absorbable or chromonic suture or the chromic suture through the subcutaneous tissue and skin. In cases of fourth-degree lacerations, it is important to approximate the edges of the rectal mucosa with a running submucosal 3-0 or 4-0 delayed absorbable or chromonic suture through the subcutaneous tissue and skin. If the external anal sphincter is severed, it should be carefully reapproximated with several interrupted 2-0 sutures through the mucous and fibrous capsule. The technique for primary episiotomy closure is illustrated later in this chapter and is also discussed in Chapter 40.

#### TABLE 35A.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Laceration type</th>
<th>Type of episiotomy</th>
<th>Mediolateral</th>
<th>Midline</th>
<th>None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Second-degree</td>
<td>1,425 (30%)</td>
<td>26 (33%)</td>
<td>375 (14%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third-degree</td>
<td>968 (20%)</td>
<td>7 (9%)</td>
<td>52 (1%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth-degree</td>
<td>293 (6%)</td>
<td>7 (9%)</td>
<td>274 (10%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>2,688 (56%)</td>
<td>40 (5%)</td>
<td>701 (23%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Totals</td>
<td>4,822</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>2,774</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complications of Episiotomy

Extensions and Fistula Formation

The major complications of episiotomy include infection, hematoma, breakdown, and fistula formation. Probably the single most common complication is extension (i.e., third- or fourth-degree laceration). Extensions in turn can lead to incontinence of flatus and stool, rectovaginal fistula, and infection. The association of extensions with the type of episiotomy has been discussed already. In the report by Harris, 11.6% of the more than 7,000 women with midline episiotomies had a third- or fourth-degree laceration. In the women with these lacerations, 2% subsequently had poor sphincter tone, and 0.1% developed a rectovaginal fistula. Signorelli and colleagues performed a retrospective cohort study to evaluate the relationship between midline episiotomy and anal incontinence postpartum. Women with episiotomies had a higher risk of fecal incontinence 3 months and 6 months postpartum. Episiotomy tripled the risk of fecal incontinence at 3 months and 6 months postpartum and doubled the risk of flatus incontinence compared with women with spontaneous lacerations. In a prospective evaluation of 16,583 deliveries, Walsh and colleagues found that 0.56% of deliveries were complicated by third-degree lacerations. Lacerations were not prevented by episiotomy, but were associated with forceps delivery. Of the 81 patients followed, 30 had abnormal analorectal examination; 7% were incontinent of stool, and 12% were incontinent of flatus. Fistula is fortunately an uncommon complication of episiotomy. Causes include unrecognized lacerations in the rectovaginal septum at the time of episiotomy repair or infected hematoma. Risk factors for fistula formation include obesity, poor hygiene, malnutrition, anemia, history of inflammatory bowel disease, connective tissue disease, or prior exposure to radiation therapy. Half of those fistulae spontaneously heal, but repair should be considered if the patient is very symptomatic.

Dehiscence

The exact incidence of episiotomy dehiscence is unknown, but it appears to occur infrequently. In a review of 390 women with fourth-degree perineal lacerations, 18 (4.6%) experienced a dehiscence, and 11 of these were associated with infection. Several predisposing factors have been reported to be associated with episiotomy dehiscence, including infection, human papillomavirus, cigarette smoking, hematomta, or trauma. Infection is probably the most common factor. In the study by Ramin and associates, 86% of patients with midline episiotomy dehiscence and 69% of patients with mediolateral episiotomy dehiscence had evidence of infection that was based on the presence of fever or purulent discharge. Infection with human papillomavirus also has been reported by some to be associated with dehiscence. Although inadequate or “faulty” repair has been reported to be associated with dehiscence, this is a rare cause.

Early Repair of Dehiscence. In the past, it has been taught that repair of episiotomy dehiscence should be delayed for several months to allow for revascularization and healing. However, current surgical opinion supported by recent data favors early repair. Delayed repair is an inconvenience for the woman and may be associated with fecal incontinence and loss of sexual function. Delay also can increase the hospital stay, cost, and increase risk of litigation.

There are many advantages to early repair of episiotomy dehiscence. Hauth and colleagues reported on the efficacy and safety of early repair in eight women who had a dehiscence of a fourth-degree midline episiotomy. Early repair was successful in seven of the eight women. One woman developed a pinpoint rectovaginal fistula 4 days after early repair. This was fixed with a 3-cm rectal flap 4 months later.

Monberg and Hammen reported on the successful resurfacing of episiotomy breakdown in 20 women with infection, dehiscence, or both. Although four of the women had superficial resurfacing, all subsequently healed spontaneously. Hankins and associates updated the initial report by Hauth and colleagues to include 22 women with dehiscence of an initial fourth-degree repair, four with dehiscence of a third-degree repair and five with breakdown of a mediolateral repair. Initial success of early repair was achieved in 29 (94%) of 31 women. Two women with a pinpoint rectovaginal fistula were subsequently repaired with a rectal flap procedure. Of the 27 women with a follow-up of 1 year or greater, all were continent and had resumption of normal coital activity. The follow-up of the 22 women with early repair of episiotomy dehiscence revealed no complications in 18 patients. Occasional incontinence of flatus and stool, dyspareunia, dyschezia, and numbness occurred in the remaining patients. All of the symptoms resolved by 9 months, except for two patients who had persistent dyspareunia.

Ramin and coworkers reported on the early repair of 34 women with episiotomy dehiscence, most of whom were infected (Table 35A.3). These women received care from a large urban hospital serving primarily an indigent population. The timing of repair for dehiscence ranged from 3 to 13 days. Two women with initial third-degree episiotomy dehiscence had unsuccessful repairs. Thus, successful repairs were accomplished in 32 (94%) of the women. The average time from delivery to subsequent discharge after repair of the dehiscence was 15.5 days. This is similar to the time reported by Hankins and colleagues. This time probably can be shortened significantly with outpatient management of the wound and repair in ambulatory care units.

TABLE 35A.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Midline</th>
<th>Mediolateral</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total number of patients</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of delivery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spontaneous</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outlet forceps</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low forceps</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extension</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third-degree</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth-degree</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evidence of infection</td>
<td>18 (86%)</td>
<td>9 (69%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early repair failures</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

accomplished either on the ward with intravenous sedation or local anesthesia or in the operating room under regional anesthesia. All necrotic tissue and suture fragments should be removed and the wound irrigated with a diluted povidone-iodine solution or half-strength Dakin’s solution. Broad-spectrum antibiotics are indicated for overt infection or significant cellulitis. After initial debridement, the wound should be scrubbed and cleansed at least twice daily. Scrub brushes impregnated with povidone-iodine or gauze dressing pads can be used. A 1% lidocaine jelly is applied to the wound several minutes before cleansing, and analgesics should be used as necessary. The liberal use of sitz baths helps keep the wound clean.

Secondary repair of the episiotomy is not attempted until the wound is free of exudate and covered by granulation tissue. A mechanical bowel preparation with an oral electrolyte solution should be administered the evening before surgery for fourth-degree breakdowns. Prophylactic antibiotics are recommended for all repairs. One to three doses of a first-generation cephalosporin generally prove satisfactory.

The first step in the surgical repair of dehiscence is debridement of granulation tissue and dissection to ensure good tissue mobility. If the anal sphincter muscle has been severed, extensive retraction usually has occurred. It is important to identify the fibrous capsule and mobilize the muscle and capsule for successful reapproximation. If the rectal mucosa has been lacerated, it should be reapproximated as described in this chapter. In a prospective, randomized trial, Fitzpatrick and colleagues compared 55 women who underwent a sphincter overlap procedure with 57 women who underwent staple approximation repair of third-degree lacerations. In this study, there were no significant differences in anal manometry or endoanal ultrasound in the two groups. Therefore, either approach is acceptable. The rest of the closure is the same as for a secondary episiotomy repair. The secondary repair of a fourth-degree episiotomy breakdown is shown in Figures 35A.8 through 35A.11.

Postoperatively, women can be placed on a regular diet if the rectal mucosa is not involved. If the rectal mucosa is involved, a low-residue diet should be used for several days and advanced to a regular diet. Stool softeners may prove useful, but diarrhea should be avoided because of the increased likelihood of infection. Postoperative care should also include sitz baths and a heat lamp.

CERVICAL CERCLAGE

Premature dilation of the uterine cervix is a major cause of loss or delivery in midpregnancy. Although the pathophysiology of cervical insufficiency is poorly understood and the diagnosis challenging, data are ever involving regarding the management of this complex situation. The concept of cervical insufficiency, its diagnosis, and its management have been well reviewed in a Practice Bulletin issued by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Although a variety of diagnostic criteria—including prior midtrimester losses and history of cervical surgery (including loop electrode excision procedure or cone biopsy) and painless dilatation of the cervix—have been used in the past and serve as useful clinical risk factors, today ultrasound monitoring of cervical length and funneling are usually used to make a diagnosis of cervical insufficiency.
Shirodkar first described cerclage placement in 1955 as a new method to prevent habitual abortion in the second trimester. McDonald, in 1957, reported a simplified technique. The technique for the abdominal approach for cerclage was described by Benson and Durfer in 1963. Data regarding the efficacy of cerclage placement has been conflicting. The Cervical Insufficiency Prevention Randomized Cervical Trial (CIPRACT) concluded that serial ultrasounds for evaluation of cervical insufficiency with secondary intervention is a safe alternative to traditional prophylactic cerclage. Cerclage is rarely performed after 24.5 weeks' gestation because the risks of surgery are outweighed by the benefits of bed rest for a few weeks to achieve improved fetal survival. Zaveri and colleagues noted that transabdominal cerclage may be associated with a lower risk of perinatal death, but has a higher risk of intraoperative complications. Data suggest that an abdominal cerclage may be preferable in patients in whom a transvaginal cerclage has failed. The abdominal approach is also indicated in patients whose cervix has been shortened significantly by cone biopsy or other surgery. Laparoscopic transabdominal suture insertion during and before pregnancy has recently been described. Recent case reports suggest that placement of the abdominal cerclage by a laparoscopic approach is safe and may reduce maternal recovery time; however, its efficacy over the additional abdominal approach has not been examined. Studies have supported the uses of cerclage for pregnancy prolongation in singleton gestations; however, there are conflicting data about its utility in multiple gestations.

**Technique**

The modified Shirodkar and the McDonald procedure are performed using the transvaginal approach. In the *modified Shirodkar approach*, a transverse incision is made in the vaginal mucosa of the anterior cervix to allow for upward displacement of the bladder to avoid injury. A posterior incision is made in similar fashion to avoid entry into the rectum. The lateral angles of the anterior and posterior incisions are then expanded with blunt fingertip dissection of the lateral cervix (Fig. 35A.12). A 5-mm woven Mersilene tape on a large needle (Ethicon, USA) is then passed through the submucosal tunnel from anterior to posterior on both sides of the cervix. It is preferable to avoid entering the cervical canal because the tape may irritate the fetal membranes; this can be done by placing an index finger in the cervical canal as the needle is passed through the lateral cervix. The lateral cervical mucosa at 3 and 9 o'clock can also be grasped with an Allis clamp or ring forceps as shown in Figure 35A.12 to facilitate placement of the sutures. After the suture is placed on both sides of the cervix, the knot is tied in the posterior defect. The defects are then closed with 3-0 Vicryl in figure-of-eight fashion. We usually leave a whisker of the Mersilene band extending through the anterior colpotomy associated with the anterior colpotomy associated with the modified Shirodkar cerclage only increased the distance from the external os by 2.7 mm. Rust and colleagues noted that the anterior colpotomy associated with the modified Shirodkar cerclage on a large needle is placed in a purse-string fashion and tied securely (Fig. 35A.13).

Proponents of the modified Shirodkar feel that cervical dissection assists in placing a higher cerclage, but Rozenberg and associates noted that the anterior colpotomy associated with the modified Shirodkar cerclage on a large needle is placed in a purse-string fashion and tied securely (Fig. 35A.13).

The McDonald approach requires no dissection into the cervical tissues. A suture of braided Mersilene or a heavy monofilament suture (Prolene) may be placed around the cervix in purse-string fashion and tied securely (Fig. 35A.13).

Placement of the abdominal cerclage traditionally has required a low transverse abdominal incision, usually performed by Pfannenstiel technique. The vesicouterine peritoneum is incised in transverse fashion to allow for retraction of the bladder inferiorly. A suture of 5-mm Mersilene is placed through the broad ligament close to the cervical stroma with care taken to avoid the uterine vessels. The suture is then tied securely. Unlike the transvaginal cerclage, the suture cannot be removed vaginally; thus, the patient requires a cesarean delivery. This suture may be left in place until childbearing is complete.
products of conception, uterine atony, or coagulation defects. Aggressive fluid replacement and oxytocic agents are indicated while a diagnostic evaluation is undertaken. Uterine packing has recently been rediscovered as an effective way to treat hemorrhage from uterine atony.

Transcatheter arterial embolization may be very effective to control postpartum hemorrhage. Bilateral uterine artery or hypogastric artery embolization is recommended. This technique is highly effective, preserves the uterus, and does not preclude future pregnancies.

Surgical techniques for the management of peripartum hemorrhage include uterine artery ligation, hypogastric artery ligation, B-Lynch compression sutures, and hysterectomy. Emergency hysterectomy for hemorrhage is associated with a significantly increased risk of complications, including urinary tract injury and infection. It is not clear whether elective hysterectomy performed at the time of a scheduled cesarean delivery is associated with increased morbidity, but blood loss and risk of transfusion are increased, and delivery followed by hysterectomy 3 to 6 months later may be considered as an alternative.

The use of episiotomy has declined significantly in recent years. Recently, studies have not shown any benefit of episiotomy in reducing the risk of third- and fourth-degree lacerations, reducing the risk of long-term pelvic support defects, or improving neonatal outcome. Episiotomy should not be used routinely. Median episiotomy is associated with a higher risk of anal sphincter and rectal injury. Medial-lateral episiotomy is associated with increased blood loss and perhaps an increase in postpartum pain and long-term dyspareunia. Repair of episiotomy, especially if there is rectal or sphincter injury, should be done meticulously, using good surgical technique with adequate anesthesia and sterile technique.

Surgical treatment of cervical insufficiency is complicated by a poor understanding of the pathophysiology of the condition. Painless dilatation and effacement of the cervix in the second trimester, usually documented by ultrasound, is an indication for treatment. Both the McDonald and Shirodkar techniques have been used successfully. An abdominal cerclage may be considered if the cervix has been shortened or damaged by surgery or trauma.

Bibliography


Hsu YR, Wu YL. Successful management of irreparable perineal laceration and severe postpartum hemorrhage with IOC through transcervical arterial embolization technique. Asia Obstet Gynecol 1999;77:129.


CHAPTER 35B ■ OVARIAN TUMORS COMPLICATING PREGNANCY

CORNELIA R. GRAVES AND LYNN PARKER

DEFINITIONS

Aminopterin syndrome—Fetal anomalies caused by exposure to antifolate chemotherapy in the first trimester. Multiple fetal anomalies commonly include growth deficiency, craniofacial anomalies, hydrocephalus, mental retardation, and skeletal defects.

Hyperreactio luteinalis—A benign, frequently large (15–20 cm), usually bilateral ovarian enlargement caused by an increased sensitivity to human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG). These masses are composed of numerous luteinized follicular cysts and are more common in conditions in which the hCG is increased (e.g., hydatiform mole, multiple gestation). This condition is benign and will resolve spontaneously after pregnancy.

Luteoma of pregnancy—A solid, usually unilateral ovarian mass found in late pregnancy or at cesarean delivery. It may cause virilization. It is benign and resolves spontaneously after pregnancy.

Pulsatility index (PI)—An arterial waveform index that has shown to be useful in differentiating benign from malignant adnexal masses. A PI > 1.0 is almost always associated with a benign mass. A PI < 1.0 is suggestive of malignancy but can be seen in a corpus luteum cyst or an inflammatory mass.

The coexistence of an adnexal mass with pregnancy presents problems to both the clinician and the patient, the most serious being that of malignancy. This possibility must be discussed with the patient when obtaining informed consent before surgery. The therapeutic implications of possible hysterectomy with loss of the current pregnancy and loss of future fertility result in an emotionally charged environment because of the young age of the patient and the desire to preserve the ovaries.

The appropriate diagnosis of ovarian tumors complicating pregnancy depends on the use of certain windows of opportunity. These include the initial pelvic examination in the first trimester, the initial ultrasound, and careful evaluation at the time of operative intervention. A thorough pelvic examination at the time of termination of pregnancy and careful examination of the ovaries at the time of cesarean section or postpartum tubal ligation are other opportunities to evaluate the ovaries. The increasing (nearly routine) use of ultrasound examination affords an excellent opportunity for the diagnosis of coexistent ovarian pathology; it is for this reason that such an examination should always include the adnexa. The results of ultrasound, although potentially very useful in the relatively rare patient with an ovarian malignancy, may give the clinician a difficult dilemma trying to decide how to proceed when an ovarian cyst is diagnosed in pregnancy.

The increasing (nearly routine) use of ultrasound examination affords an excellent opportunity for the diagnosis of coexistent ovarian pathology; it is for this reason that such an examination should always include the adnexa. The results of ultrasound, although potentially very useful in the relatively rare patient with an ovarian malignancy, may give the clinician a difficult dilemma trying to decide how to proceed when an ovarian cyst is diagnosed in pregnancy.

Cancer complicates 1:1,000 pregnancies in the United States. The most common malignancies seen in pregnancy include malignant melanoma (1.2:1,000), Hodgkin lymphoma (1:1,000–6:000), breast cancer (1:3,000–10,000), cervical cancer (1.2:10,000), ovarian cancer (1:10,000–100,000), colorectal cancer (1:13,000), and leukemias (1:75,000–100,000).

Benign ovarian tumors complicating pregnancy are more common. The exact incidence, however, depends on whether one considers simple cysts noted on ultrasound examination (1 in 50 live births) or during pelvic examination (1 in 80 live births) or those that ultimately require laparotomy (1 in 1,000–4 in 1,500 live births). Ueda and Ukita reported 106 patients who required ovarian surgery during pregnancy. Of these patients, 29.2% had physiologic ovarian cysts, 46% were benign, and 4.7% were malignant. More recent observations have noted that adnexal masses >5 cm were observed in 0.05% of patients, with 6.8% of masses and 0.0032% of deliveries diagnosed as malignant.

Koonings and colleagues noted the incidence of ovarian tumors complicating cesarean section to be about 1 in 200 cesarean births, and Ballard observed that ovarian tumors complicated termination of pregnancy in 1 of 594 procedures. Hill and colleagues reported that ovarian cysts were diagnosed in 4.1% of second- or third-trimester ultrasounds. Most of these cysts were <3 cm and resolved spontaneously. Eighteen of the 7,996 patients had an exploratory laparotomy, which was equivalent to one surgery in 444 deliveries. All of these lesions were benign on pathologic examination.
required surgical intervention. Hogston and Lifford, in a review of 24,000 patients who received routine ultrasound, noted an incidence of cyst formation of 0.52%. All complex cysts and those > 6 cm were operated on primarily (10%). Eighty-five percent of the remaining patients who were followed conservatively showed a spontaneous resolution, with the exception of five patients who ultimately required laparotomy.

Surgery is generally postponed because of the importance of sonostructural diagnosis of adnexal masses during pregnancy. They evaluated all patients with an adnexal mass measuring 4 cm or greater noted beyond 12 weeks’ gestation. One hundred and thirty-one lesions were noted; of these, 89.3% were accurately diagnosed as benign. Of the 10.7% of patients with sonographic characteristics of malignancy, 1 of 14 (7%) of these patients had ovarian cancer, for a 0.8% malignancy rate in this study.

Doppler sonography also has been evaluated for use in complex adnexal masses in pregnancy. Wheeler and Fleischer evaluated 14 pregnant patients with complex adnexal masses. Diagnosis was made by color Doppler sonography was compared with actual histopathologic diagnosis. Three malignant and five low malignant potential tumors were correctly identified by Doppler with a sensitivity of 0.89 and a mean pulsatility index (PI) of 0.71. The mean PI for benign lesions was > 1, and the negative predictive value for PI < 1 was 0.42, indicating that some benign lesions were incorrectly classified as malignant when a PI < 1 is used as a cutoff for possibly malignant tumors. However, color Doppler appears to be highly predictive of a benign lesion when the PI is > 1.

From a treatment standpoint, the first trimester is clearly the best time to diagnose an adnexal mass complicating pregnancy. Because tumors are rarely symptomatic during this period, most such tumors are discovered by ultrasound examination (and then typically noted at cesarean section). With the increasing incidence of ultrasound examination and use of cesarean section, recent articles suggest that about only 30% of ovarian tumors complicating pregnancy are symptomatic. When symptomatic, the patient typically presents with abdominal pain, abdominal distention, and vague gastrointestinal symptoms. All these symptoms can be directly attributable to pregnancy itself; therefore, it is not surprising that most pregnant women with these symptoms are not evaluated for an ovarian tumor.

Ovarian tumors complicating pregnancy can be divided into three groups, depending on the severity of presentation.

- Those who are asymptomatic
- Those with symptoms compatible with torsion
- Those with catastrophic presentations consistent with hemorrhage, rupture, and shock

A successful outcome for both mother and fetus depends on a high index of suspicion with early diagnosis. One should consider an ovarian mass in any woman who experiences abdominal pain in pregnancy. Furthermore, torsion, rupture, infection, or hemorrhage of an ovarian tumor should be included in the differential diagnosis of any catastrophic abdominal obstetric event. This is particularly true during times of rapid change in uterine size or position (e.g., 8–16 weeks), during termination of pregnancy, during labor and delivery, or in the immediate postpartum period.

The incidence of torsion complicating an ovarian tumor in the nonpregnant state is about 2%. Torsion complicating an ovarian tumor is much higher (52%) and varies from 11% to 50%. Ueda and Ueki report a 21.8% rate of torsion in ovarian tumors in pregnancy. Other recent studies in which there is a high incidence of incidental asymptomatic tumors report much lower incidences of torsion, rupture, and dystocia. Nevertheless, it is clear that the unrecognized symptomatic ovarian tumor complicating pregnancy can become catastrophic, accompanied by hemorrhage, shock, peritonitis, or death. Wang and colleagues retrospectively evaluated 174 patients who underwent surgery for ovarian masses during pregnancy. These patients were divided into two groups: those with emergency surgery (12 patients) and those with elective surgery (142 patients). They found in the emergency surgery group that half of the surgeries occurred in the first trimester; they contributed to 75% of total fetal wastage and 87% of spontaneous fetal loss; and tumor sizes were significantly larger. In their experience, lesions with sonographic characteristics of malignancy were correctly identified with a sensitivity of 0.89 and a mean pulsatility index (PI) of 0.71. The mean PI for benign lesions was > 1, and the negative predictive value for PI < 1 was 0.42, indicating that some benign lesions were incorrectly classified as malignant when a PI < 1 is used as a cutoff for possibly malignant tumors. However, color Doppler appears to be highly predictive of a benign lesion when the PI is > 1.

Ovarian Tumors Complicating Pregnancy

Pathology

Benign neoplasms complicating pregnancy include two tumor-like conditions with which every gynecologist should be familiar. Hyperreactio luteinalis (first described by Burger in 1938 as a grossly multilocular, usually bilateral ovarian enlargement, often 15–20 cm in size) is a term used to describe numerous luteinized follicular cysts of the ovary complicating pregnancy (Fig. 35B.1). Microscopically, one notes extensive luteinization of the theca and granulosa cell layers. Bradshaw and associates suggest that the hyperandrogenicity seen in this condition is related to increased ovarian sensitivity to human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG). Therefore, it is seen in conditions in which the hCG is elevated, such as molar pregnancies, multifetal pregnancies, choriocarcinoma, and erythroblastosis fetalis. Hyperreactio luteinalis also has been associated with normal pregnancy, and, in these patients, it has not been associated with fetal virilization. These tumors spontaneously regress after delivery but may take up to 6 months to resolve. Hyperreactio luteinalis may also occur in subsequent pregnancies.

Luteoma of pregnancy is a specific benign, usually unilateral, solid lutein cell tumor of the ovary found in late pregnancy, often noted at cesarean section (Fig. 35B.2). First described by Sternberg in 1966, this tumor is grossly bossedated, soft, fleshy, yellow, or hemorrhagic. Microscopically, it exhibits an acidophilic granular cytoplasm with sparse lipid formation and a distinctive reticular pattern. It is likely the most common cause of maternal virilization during pregnancy. The etiology is unknown, but theories have included luteinized stromal cell present before pregnancy that respond to hCG or “hyper-luteinized” theca cells, granulosa cells, or a combination of the two. Fifty percent of female infants born to virilized mothers with pregnancy luteoma exhibit signs of virilization.

The most common benign neoplasm of the ovary in pregnancy is the benign cystic teratoma, which accounts for about one third of all benign ovarian tumors seen in pregnancy (Fig. 35B.3). The second most common group of ovarian tumors complicating pregnancy is that of cystadenomas. These represent about 15% of tumors (Fig. 35B.4). Endometrioma, endometriosis, cystadenofibromas, and solid, multilocular cysts, corpus luteal cysts, tubal cysts, myomas, and other miscellaneous lesions constitute the remaining types of tumors seen in pregnancy (Table 35B.1).
Malignant ovarian tumors constitute only about 1% to 2% of all adnexal masses that complicate pregnancy and require surgical exploration. The single most common malignant ovarian tumor complicating pregnancy probably is dysgerminoma. Malignant tumors of epithelial origin as a group, however, are more common; tumors of low malignant potential occur most frequently (Fig. 35B.3). Sex-cord stromal tumors are the third most common primary malignant ovarian neoplasms, representing about 17% to 20% of such tumors. Krukenberg and other metastatic tumors represent about 12% to 13% of malignant ovarian neoplasms complicating pregnancy. Whether malignant or benign, most ovarian tumors complicating pregnancy are unilateral. Karlen and associates reported 90% of dysgerminomas in pregnancy to be unilateral, and Young and colleagues reported 35 of 36 sex-cord stromal tumors to be unilateral when complicating pregnancy. Even malignant tumors of epithelial origin noted during pregnancy are unilateral in 90% of cases. The rarer germ cell tumors, such as endodermal sinus tumors, virtually always are unilateral as
The benign cystic teratoma is the most common benign neoplasm of the ovary complicating pregnancy. This tumor has undergone torsion and infarction. It is also interesting that most bilateral tumors occurring in pregnancy are not malignant; these include benign cystic teratoma, endometriosis, and hyperreactio luteinalis. The most common bilateral malignant ovarian tumors are the metastatic Krukenberg types. Somewhat less common are primary malignant tumors of epithelial origin.

Virilization secondary to an ovarian tumor sometimes complicates pregnancy (Fig. 35B.6). The classic painting titled Magdalena Ventura with Husband and Son, painted in 1631 by Ribera, documents such a problem (Fig. 35B.7). Magdalena, after having several children, became virilized at age 37, with apparent infertility thereafter. However, when she was 52, a son was born. One would speculate that she probably had an ovarian Sertoli-Leydig cell tumor. Young and colleagues have noted that although about 50% of Sertoli-Leydig cell tumors in the non-pregnant state are functional, only about 15% of those complicating pregnancy result in maternal virilization. They proposed two possible explanations for this apparent decrease in virilization. The first is that the most active of such tumors result in anovulation; therefore, women with virilizing tumors rarely become pregnant. The second is that the placenta may aromatize the tumor-produced androgens into estrogens. In any event, Sertoli-Leydig cell tumors are not the most common tumors in pregnancy associated with virilization. This distinction falls to those tumors associated with a functioning ovarian stroma.

The most common virilizing ovarian tumor that complicates pregnancy is a mucinous cystadenoma (Fig. 35B.4). Tumors of epithelial origin are the second most common benign neoplasm of the ovary complicating pregnancy. Mucinous tumors are relatively more common in pregnancy.
pregnancy is the luteoma, followed by Krukenberg tumors and mucinous epithelial tumors (Table 35B.2).

The clinical implications of virilizing tumors complicating pregnancy are somewhat different from those of such tumors in the nonpregnant state. Virilization usually occurs late in pregnancy, is of short duration, and usually is reversible. The majority of such cases, as mentioned, are secondary to luteoma; therefore, they resolve spontaneously. If sex-cord stromal or epithelial tumors are present, the ultimate outcome remains quite good. However, patients with Krukenberg lesions have a poor outcome.

Malignancies also can be metastatic to the placenta or products of conception. Although this is an uncommon occurrence, tumors that may metastasize to the placenta include malignant melanoma, leukemias and lymphomas, breast carcinoma, lung carcinoma, and some sarcomas.

THERAPY

The first successful oophorectomy for an ovarian tumor complicating pregnancy was performed in 1846 by Bund. Although the woman survived, the fetus aborted at 12 weeks' gestation.

At about the same time, J. Marion Sims was the first to successfully remove an ovarian tumor in a pregnant woman and to have both the woman and fetus survive. As late as 1906, McKerran reported a 21% maternal mortality rate and a 50% fetal mortality rate with surgical management of ovarian tumors in pregnancy.

In general, one should avoid elective surgery in the first trimester, because many lesions represent the cystic corpus luteum of pregnancy and resolve spontaneously. Therefore, ultrasound should be repeated in 6 weeks to determine if the mass is persistent before considering surgical intervention. Buttery and colleagues noted an abortion rate of about 30% in those patients operated on in the first trimester, so first-trimester procedures are high risk. Nevertheless, symptomatic, complex, bilateral, and solid tumors should be operated on immediately (Fig. 35B.8). Preoperative evaluation should be limited to careful clinical evaluation and pelvic ultrasound examination. Barium enema, computed tomography, and other such studies are best avoided. Magnetic resonance imaging can be used safely in pregnancy but has not been helpful in evaluation of adnexal masses.

Tumor markers such as CA-125 generally are not helpful in pregnancy, because they can be elevated as a result of the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 35B.1</th>
<th>PATHOLOGY OF PELVIC MASSES COMPLICATING PREGNANCY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bromley and Benacerraf n = 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermoid</td>
<td>40 8 8 48 104 (36%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endometrioma</td>
<td>15 1 2 10 28 (9.7%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functional cysts</td>
<td>14 1 0 6 21 (7.2%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystadenomas</td>
<td>13 4 10 18 45 (15.5%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubal cyst</td>
<td>9 2 0 0 11 (3.8%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibroids</td>
<td>4 0 2 0 6 (2.1%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma of the ovary</td>
<td>1 0 1 2 4 (1.4%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpus luteum</td>
<td>0 2 2 13 19 (6.6%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serous cystadenoma</td>
<td>1 0 0 0 1 (0.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endometrioma</td>
<td>1 0 0 0 1 (0.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystadenofibroma</td>
<td>2 0 0 0 2 (0.6%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrothecoma</td>
<td>1 0 0 0 1 (0.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serous</td>
<td>1 0 0 0 1 (0.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystadenofibroma</td>
<td>1 0 0 0 1 (0.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermoid/fibrothecoma</td>
<td>1 0 0 0 1 (0.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibroma</td>
<td>0 1 1 4 5 (1.7%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkov cyst</td>
<td>1 0 0 0 1 (0.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Struma ovarii</td>
<td>2 0 0 0 2 (0.6%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luteoma of pregnancy</td>
<td>1 0 1 0 2 (0.6%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinococcal cyst</td>
<td>1 0 0 0 1 (0.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysgerminoma</td>
<td>0 0 1 1 2 (0.6%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphoma</td>
<td>0 0 1 0 1 (0.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low malignant potential tumors</td>
<td>0 0 6 1 7 (2.4%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embryonal carcinoma</td>
<td>0 0 0 1 1 (0.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal ovaries</td>
<td>24 0 0 0 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ovarian Tumors Complicating Pregnancy

Other 13%
Germ cell malignancies 30%
Epithelial malignancies 40%
Sex-cord stromal tumors 17%

FIGURE 35B.5. The approximate relative frequency of the most common malignant ovarian tumors.

FIGURE 35B.6. Virilization occurring in late pregnancy secondary to a pregnancy luteoma. Note clitoral hypertrophy and hirsutism. (Courtesy of David Bercy, Little Rock, AR.)

FIGURE 35B.7. The painting by Ribera titled Magdalena Ventura with Husband and Son. The most common virilizing tumors of the ovary complicating pregnancy are those with functioning stroma. (Reprinted with permission.)

Pregnancy itself. Alpha fetoprotein is heterogenous, and the yolk sac variant can be separated by affinity chromatography to determine if the elevation is due to the yolk sac or liver variant. Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) can be produced by dysgerminomas. Except in preeclampsia, LDH levels should remain within normal limits in pregnancy.

Wang and colleagues, in their evaluation of surgical management of ovarian masses in pregnancy, found that elective surgery had a much lower rate of fetal wastage and was more likely to occur in the second trimester. Therefore, elective management of adnexal masses in pregnancy appears to be safer than awaiting symptoms or emergency intervention.

The optimum time for surgical intervention is 16 to 18 weeks. In general, the first trimester should be avoided if possible because of the naturally occurring high rate of spontaneous abortion. It is difficult to avoid the conclusion that any pregnancy loss occurring within a short time of surgery is related to the surgery, so that if it is possible to wait until the second trimester, the risk of an unrelated spontaneous abortion is decreased. Patients in whom the asymptomatic mass is noted at or near term may be considered for delivery by cesarean section with careful intraoperative evaluation of the adnexa. Vaginal delivery in this situation has been associated with torsion, rupture, and hemorrhage that can occur during labor or immediately postpartum. The size and ultrasound characteristics of
FIGURE 35B.8. Algorithm for the surgical management of ovarian tumors complicating pregnancy in the first trimester. Symptomatic, solid, bilateral, and complex lesions should be operated on when discovered.

TABLE 35B.2
Differential Diagnosis of Virilizing Ovarian Tumors Associated With Pregnancy*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Histologic diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Luteoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperreactio luteinalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex-cord disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granulosa theca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thecoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theca-lutein cyst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sertoli-Leydig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hilar cell tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hilar cell hyperplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stromal luteoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stromal hyperthecosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unclassified sex-cord stromal tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other ovarian tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Krukenberg tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous cystadenocarcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brenner tumor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The mass will help to guide the clinician’s decision concerning the best route of delivery. Caapi and colleagues described conservative management of 63 patients who had dermoid cysts ≤ 6 cm. None of these patients had an increase in size of the dermoid during pregnancy. In this study, 55 patients had normal vaginal deliveries, and none had complications related to the cyst. They also evaluated the use of ultrasound-guided cyst aspiration in patients with persistent simple cysts into the second trimester. In this study, 50% of the patients avoided surgical intervention with this procedure. Every case of an adnexal mass should be independently evaluated to determine the best management.

General anesthesia is the anesthesia of choice, although a combination of epidural and general anesthesia can be considered. One should remember that delayed gastric emptying and esophageal reflux can occur in pregnancy; therefore, appropriate precautions are necessary. One also should be aware of and prevent vena caval and aortic compression.

The next consideration is laparoscopy versus laparotomy as primary surgical management. Several case series have evaluated the safety and efficacy of laparoscopic management of adnexal masses in pregnancy. These studies have shown that laparoscopic surgery can be used without increased risk to mother or fetus. Moore and Smith evaluated 14 patients with adnexal masses treated with laparoscopy. The average gestational age was 16 weeks, with average operating time of 84 minutes. The tumors included three mucinous cystadenomas, three mature teratomas, three functional cysts, and one endometrioma. Three patients had tumors > 10 cm; the remainder were > 7 cm in size. There were no postoperative complications, except for one case of mild peritonitis that spontaneously resolved. Laparoscopy should be considered early in the second trimester if the mass is mobile, accessible, and does not have characteristics of malignancy such as ascites or calcification.

If laparotomy is the chosen surgical approach, a vertical incision is preferred, because after 16 weeks’ gestation, the ovary is an abdominal rather than pelvic structure. The incision should be placed higher than usual. Thorough gross examination of the lesion, with frozen section— as well as evaluation of the upper abdomen, omentum, and paraaortic nodes—should be performed, along with pelvic washings. The involved ovary should be sent for frozen section to establish a preliminary diagnosis. The contralateral ovary should be carefully inspected. However, biopsy or wedge resection of the contralateral ovary should be avoided if no gross evidence of involvement is present. One possible exception is if the primary tumor is a dysgerminoma, because these tumors can involve the contralateral ovary in a clinically undetectable, microscopic manner. If the patient has a malignant germ cell tumor or low malignant potential tumor, staging should be performed to include omentectomy, peritoneal biopsies, and pelvic and paraaortic lymph node biopsies on the side of the mass. If the tumor is mucinous, either cystadenoma or low malignant potential tumor, an appendectomy should be performed.

The uterus should be handled gently in any case, and frequent irrigation should be used to prevent the tissue from drying. When ovarian cystectomy is required, an interval closure with use of a 3-0 absorbable is recommended. Alternatively, one can decide to perform no closure. The traditional Buxton-type closure should be avoided.

Before the decision is made to perform oophorectomy, one must always consciously exclude hyperreactio luteinalis and luteoma of pregnancy. Furthermore, because most malignant ovarian tumors are unilateral, total abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy is rarely indicated (Fig. 35B.9). Total hysterectomy and removal of ovaries should never be performed on the basis of a frozen section diagnosis of borderline or low-grade malignancy unless the patient has clearly expressed a desire to abort this pregnancy and does not wish to preserve fertility and ovarian function.

When faced with a clearly malignant bilateral or metastatic tumor, one usually treats the patient as if she were nonpregnant, with total hysterectomy, bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, pelvic and abdominal washings, omentectomy, and pelvic and paraaortic node biopsies. Even with bilateral malignant disease, one can consider omitting hysterectomy if the uterus is not grossly involved, thus allowing preservation of the existing pregnancy, especially because platinum-based chemotherapy can safely be given during pregnancy. Although
other tumors are known to metastasize rarely to either the placent or fetus, primary ovarian tumors almost never do so. All the possible findings at surgery and possible surgical management options should be carefully discussed with the patient, and a good understanding of the planned therapy should be agreed on by all. A careful preoperative note about the discussion should be made in the patient's chart. The family should be informed of the findings and plans during the course of surgery, and consultation should be obtained if necessary. The role of progesterone to prevent labor in the postoperative period is unclear but should be considered if the surgery occurs in the first trimester. The patient should be monitored for contractions and fetal heart tones checked in the postoperative period. If contractions occur, these can be treated with hydration, sedation, indomethacin (if before 32 weeks), or standard tocolytic therapy.

**TREATMENT OUTCOME**

Conservative surgical treatment outcome for benign disease should be excellent. With malignant disease, the overall 5-year survival rate depends on stage and cell type. In a classic paper on ovarian cancer in pregnancy, Novak and associates reported a 5-year survival rate of 75% from the Johns Hopkins Hospital. In a review of 27 dysgerminomas, Karlen and associates reported a tendency toward local recurrence with conservative treatment but an overall 5-year survival rate of 90%. Young and coworkers, in a review of 36 sex-cord stromal tumors, noted a 5-year survival rate of 100%, although they cautioned that granulosa cell tumors are prone to late recurrence. However, patients with Krukenberg tumors or metastatic disease have a poor prognosis.

Fetal mortality also should be minimal with early diagnosis and appropriate surgical intervention. Although Karlen and associates reported a fetal mortality rate of 25%, two of the five deaths were secondary to hysterotomy. Young and colleagues reported three fetal deaths in 36 cases, two of which resulted from hysterectomy. Ueda and Ueki reported on 106 surgeries with a spontaneous abortion rate of 10%. Two patients desired termination of pregnancy in the second trimester owing to ovarian diagnosis, and one fetus died despite intensive efforts.

**CYTOTOXIC CHEMOTHERAPY DURING PREGNANCY**

At no time is the treatment of cancer during pregnancy more complicated than when adjunctive therapy is indicated.
Can such therapy be given safely during pregnancy? Although single-agent or combination chemotherapy may be teratogenic in the first trimester, it is now apparent that cytotoxic chemotherapy can be used safely in the second and third trimesters. Antimetabolite therapy, including both aminopterin and methotrexate, has been shown to be associated with an increased rate of congenital abnormalities. The aminopterin syndrome—which consists of cranial dysostosis, hypopituitarism, anomalies of the external ear, micrognathia, and cleft palate—has occurred in the fetuses of about 20% of patients treated in the first trimester. Staging biopsy for frozen section is indicated. If metastatic cancer is diagnosed, conservative therapy offers a good prognosis. Delivery may be delayed, and further surgery may be unnecessary.

The best time for surgery is 16 to 18 weeks. General anesthesia is recommended. Laparoscopy may be preferable if laparoscopy can be used for similar findings in a non-pregnant patient. A conservative approach is advised. Most ovarian masses in pregnancy are benign. If the lesion is unilateral and other malignancies are excluded, ovariectomy is indicated. Staging biopsies and washings are done, and final treatment plans are deferred pending a definitive pathology diagnosis. If metastatic cancer is diagnosed, debulking can be done and the pregnancy continued while the patient is started on chemotherapy. Careful consideration of all options should be discussed with the gynecologic oncologist, the maternal fetal specialist, and the patient and her family.

Best Surgical Practices

Other Issues Surrounding Malignancy

Symptom control is very important in pregnant patients with malignancy. Symptoms commonly seen in malignancy include pain, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, dyspnnea, fatigue, and depression. Oxycodone, hydrocodone, with acetaminophen can be used safely for pain. Codeine should be avoided in the first trimester because of possible fetal malformation. Opiates can be used, but the neonate should be monitored for withdrawal after delivery. For nausea, options include chlorpromazine, prochlorperazine, prednisone, metoclopramide, and ondansetron. Morphine and albuterol have been successfully used to control dyspnea in patients with malignancy. Forty percent of patients with advanced cancer have depression. Fluoxetine and other antidepressants have been used in pregnancy; the risks and the benefits should be discussed with these patients before starting them on medications.

850 Surgery for Obstetrics

Bibliography


Ovarian Tumors Complicating Pregnancy

Schneider DV, Chardles ME. Incomplete pregnancy following continuous treatment with combination chemotherapy before conception and throughout pregnancy. Cancer 1984;54:810.
SECTION VII  ■  SURGERY FOR CORRECTIONS OF
DEFECTS IN PELVIC SUPPORT AND PELVIC
FISTULAS
CHAPTER 36A ■ PELVIC ORGAN PROLAPSE: BASIC PRINCIPLES

CARL W. ZIMMERMAN

The judgment as to surgical correction should depend upon a correlation of the history and physical findings. Even marked prolapse in the absence of complaint should rarely be corrected. The patient should ask the gynecologist for relief; the gynecologist should not urge the patient to have corrective surgery if she does not feel sufficiently uncomfortable to request it.

—Richard Te Linde, 1966

DEFINITIONS

Endopelvic fascia—The deep endopelvic connective tissue located between the dependent portion of the pelvic peritoneum and the superior fascia of the pelvic diaphragm. This continuum of tissue serves to support, suspend, and separate the central pelvic organs.

Kegel exercise—Voluntary contraction of the pelvic diaphragm, primarily the puborectalis muscle, and the external anal sphincter.

Interspinous diameter—The distance between the ischial spines and the narrowest diameter in the human pelvis. The components of the deep endopelvic connective tissue suspend the cervix and pericervical ring within this plane in normal anatomy.

Pelvic diaphragm—The skeletal muscles of the pelvic floor and their parietal fasciae. These muscles cover the majority of the pelvic outlet. These muscles originate on the pelvic sidewall and insert on the sacrum, coccyx, or sacrococcygeal raphe.

Rugae—Transverse creases in the vaginal wall that signify the presence of deep endopelvic connective tissue. Conversely, the absence of rugae implies the absence of deep endopelvic connective tissue.

Urogenital hiatus—The large central opening in the pelvic diaphragm. The vagina, urethra, and anus exit the pelvis through this structure.

Uterosacral ligaments—The primary apical suspensory elements of the uterovaginal complex. They extend from the pericervical ring to the presacral peristeum and hold the cervix behind the urogenital hiatus.

Vakalba maneuver—Pressure exerted downward on the pelvic floor by fixing the respiratory diaphragm and the anterior abdominal wall.

BASIC CONCEPTS

Pelvic organ prolapse is the downward displacement of structures that are normally located at the level of or adjacent to the vaginal vault. Because these displacements are each associated with defects in integrated connective tissue structures, they may each be considered a pelvic hernia. These conditions are common and affect a progressively larger percentage of women as age advances. Whereas mortality from this condition is negligible, significant morbidity or deterioration of lifestyle may be associated with prolapse. Women in developed countries who have access to modern health care can benefit from the advances that have been made in treating prolapse. If the problem is viewed from a worldwide perspective, however, the scope of suffering is much greater. In areas of high parity and little or no access to health care, countless women suffer from problems associated with pelvic organ prolapse with no real possibility of resolution. The direct effect that these conditions have on urinary, gastrointestinal, and sexual functions can only be appreciated by those women burdened with these problems on a daily basis.

Treatment of pelvic organ prolapse and the associated symptoms constitutes a major subject in gynecology. Especially in the advanced state, management of these conditions is one of the most challenging problems a pelvic surgeon can face. Indeed, success in treating prolapse is frequently used to judge the overall skill of those surgeons. Providing permanent relief from this classic malady by restoring normal anatomy and maximum physiologic function always tests the ingenuity of gynecologists. As medical sophistication has progressed, so has the ability to understand more completely and better treat pelvic organ prolapse.

A brief review of the history of treatment of prolapse is helpful in understanding modern treatments and current concepts of these conditions. Because it was mentioned in the writings of Hippocrates and Galen, prolapse was clearly known to the ancients. Early treatments may seem quaint by today's standards. Yet some of these interventions continue to be used today. Fortunately, others have not survived. Vaginal packing, tampons, massages, and exercises were used with some success. Other patients were suspended from their feet for a period of 24 hours to treat prolapse. Rodericus A. Castro advised that prolapse should be attacked with a red hot iron as if to burn it, “when fright would cause it to recede into the vagina.” Various caustics were used, including silver nitrate, nitric acid, acid nitrate of mercury, hot metal, and sulfuric acid.

Perhaps the first real advance in treatment was the development of pessaries. These devices functioned as trusses. Their fitting and placement became a desirable skill. They continue to bring relief to a large number of women and seldom do any serious harm. They were especially popular in the middle of the 19th century. Some were held in place by waistbands. In some cases, pessaries were deliberately left in place until erosion occurred. The subsequent healing was expected to reduce the caliber of the vagina with scarification adding to support, but serious complications could occur. Reports exist of neglected pessaries being retrieved from the peritoneal cavity and bladder. Fistulae may also occur.
The earliest surgical attempts to relieve prolapse were relatively simple. These procedures included labial suturing and removing portions of the vaginal epithelium to reduce the caliber of the vagina. Although Heming operated on the anterior vaginal wall in 1831, surgery for uterovaginal prolapse was not common until the advent of anesthesia and antisepsis in the middle of the 19th century. The first vaginal hysterectomy for prolapse was performed by Samuel Chappuis of New Orleans in 1861. Many years passed before this surgical technique became common. By the beginning of the 20th century, European and American reports of hysterectomy, colpohysterectomy, cervical amputation, transposition/interposition operations (Manchester-Foley, colpotomy, vaginal platypodia, colpocleisis), vaginal fixation of the uterus to the abdominal wall, and trachelectomy for procidentia were being published. The timing of this ingenuity was certain to be consistent with the development of anesthesia and various surgical techniques in all fields of medicine.

During the 20th century, advances in understanding and treatment of prolapse have progressed at an ever-increasing rate. In 1909, George R. White of Georgia published an account of cystocele repair using a transvaginal paravaginal approach. His correct perspective on the importance of lateral vaginal support took nearly 50 years to be rediscovered by mainstream gynecologic surgeons. The paravaginal repair was not widely known and accepted at the time because it was overshadowed by the work of Howard A. Kelly of Johns Hopkins. This great and influential surgeon popularized the concept of fascial attenuation. Midline anterior and posterior plications were touted as the correct surgical approach to the problem of prolapse. The Kelly-Kennedy anterior plication and levator ani plication of the posterior vaginal wall remain as commonly performed procedures today, despite the fact that more contemporary surgical techniques described in this chapter more correctly correct the anatomic defects of pelvic prolapse and achieve better clinical results.

In the 1950s, Milton L. McCall of Louisiana developed a culdoplasty technique that emphasized the important suspensory function of the uterosacral ligaments. He believed this operation prevented enteroceles and posthysterectomy vaginal vault prolapse when it was performed at the time of hysterectomy. Currently, the repair of vaginal vault support at the time of any type of hysterectomy is considered a very important step in prevention of future prolapse. In the 1960s, Baden and Walker of Texas began to systemize a new defect-specific approach to pelvic organ prolapse repair. Page 1 of their 1992 book, Surgical Repair of Vaginal Defects, stated, “In a sense, the defect approach reverses the prior evolution toward ‘compensatory’ reparative techniques—our goal is to return all vaginal supports to their original anatomic status.” Many other surgeons have contributed to this powerful concept of pelvic reconstructive surgery. A. Cullen Richardson and associates of Georgia developed the concept of classifying anatomic defects as proximal, distal, central, and lateral. This observation and the teaching of such master surgeons as David H. Nichols of New England encouraged gynecologists to not only identify and repair each vaginal defect but to also return support attachments to their original anatomic locations.

Emphasis was focused on the hernial nature of prolapse and led to the abandonment of absorbable sutures in favor of permanent sutures in repairs. In the 1990s, pelvic anatomist John O. L. DeLancey of Georgia developed the concept of pelvic reconstructive surgery. A. Cullen Richardson, while working with Russell W. Pulsifer, developed the concept of pelvic reconstructive surgery. The authors of the various chapters of this section describe intervention and operations that gynecologic surgeons should consider when managing pelvic organ prolapse. Each of these surgeons possesses a combination of operative skill, experience, and special interest in their topics that have led to their selection. The operative techniques presented should be combined with appropriate clinical evaluation and skillful technical performance to obtain maximum benefit for the patient.

ANATOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

The normal position, support, and suspension of the uterus, vagina, bladder, and rectum rely on an interdependent system of bony, muscular, and connective tissue elements. This entire...
system is three-dimensional, and even subtle alterations in one part may lead to stresses in other parts that eventually lead to failure of normal anatomy. An understanding of normal applied pelvic anatomy is imperative in the repair of pelvic organ prolapse.

The bony pelvis has a central opening that is necessary for reproductive function. During evolutionary transition to upright bipedal posture, the potential for prolapse became more likely because of gravitational stress. In the human female, a lordosis of the lumbosacral portion of the spine places the pelvic inlet in an oblique orientation reminiscent of the pelvic posture of a quadruped. The physical result of this shift is that the posterior aspect of the pelvic inlet is approximately 60 degrees above the anterior aspect (Fig. 36A.1). This partially vertical orientation of the pelvic inlet deflects force onto the superior symphysis pubis rather than directly on the pelvic outlet and urogenital hiatus. Consequently, the pelvic outlet is partially shielded from downward stresses in the anatomically normal woman.

The muscles of the pelvic diaphragm primarily provide pelvic support. These muscles form a bason or covering of the pelvic outlet and are often grouped together as the levator ani or levator sling (Fig. 36A.2). Within this diaphragm is the urogenital hiatus, which is large enough to allow childbirth. This large central opening in the muscular pelvic floor explains why prolapse is such a significant problem. The most medial portion of the pelvic diaphragm is formed by the puborectalis, the muscular boundary of the urogenital hiatus. The obstetric axis of the pelvis passes through the urogenital hiatus medial to the puborectalis muscle. In the standing patient, the puborectalis muscle is horizontal and is palpable as a 2- to 2.5-cm band of voluntary muscle on each lateral side of the distal one third of the vagina. When well innervated and contracted, the puborectalis muscle closes the distal vagina and displaces the posterior rectum anteriorly. Forming the bulk of the pelvic diaphragm, the pubococcygeus and iliococcygeus muscles cover the posterior and lateral portions of the pelvic outlet (Fig. 36A.3). The superior insertion of the iliococcygeus muscles is an important landmark in pelvic support anatomy. These insertions are thickenings of the pelvic sidewall parietal fascia that extend from the ischial spines posteriorly to points on the pubic bone known as the pubic tubercles. These lines of insertion are known as the arcus tendineus levator ani or muscular arches (Figs. 36A.4 and 36A.5). Immediately inferior to the muscular arches are thickenings of the parietal fascia of the bellies of the iliococcygeus muscles known as the arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis (fascial arches) or white lines. These structures are
the lateral attachment points for the pubocervical fascia and proximal rectovaginal septum. The white line serves the function of midvaginal lateral support. Paravaginal and proximal pararectal defects are located immediately medial to the white line. In the standing patient, the white line is nearly horizontal; in the lithotomy position, it is nearly vertical.

During paravaginal repair, the white lines are palpable as stringlike structures between the ischial spines and the pubic arch. Another fascial thickening has been described that runs posteriorly from the white line and serves as lateral support for the distal rectovaginal septum of the posterior vagina. This structure has been named the arcus tendineus fasciae rectovaginalis (Fig. 36A.6). The lateral supports of the anterior and posterior vaginal septa merge and are not separate in the proximal half of the vagina. Superior to the muscular arch is the uppermost portion of the obturator internus muscle and the parietal obturator fascia. The obturator internus muscles qualify as pelvic muscles because they form the lateral borders of the upper portion of the pelvic basin inferior to the linea terminalis. Posterior to the iliococcygeus, the pelvic floor is covered by
the coccygeus muscle and the closely associated sacrospinous ligament. These structures pass between the ischial spine and the coccyx. The most posterior portion of the pelvis is covered by the perineum. The midline confluence of the levator muscles forms a particularly strong band of connective tissue between the coccyx and anus known as the levator plate or sacrococcygeal raphe. This plate is oriented horizontally in the standing patient. The vagina and the rectum are suspended by the endopelvic fascia directly over the levator plate. Myopathies or neuropathies cause weakness of the pubococcygeus and iliococcygeus muscles and may allow the levator plate to sag and descend permanently. This descent causes the genital hiatus to remain open as it does during defecation. This increased opening changes the normal horizontal axis of the proximal vagina to a vertical orientation and predisposes the central pelvic organs to prolapse.

The pudendal nerve is an important motor and sensory nerve of the pelvic floor and perineum. It descends through the pelvic diaphragm between the coccygeus and perineum muscles in the area posterior to the ischial spine into Alcock’s canal. Alcock’s canal is located in the ischiorectal fossa immediately adjacent to the fascia of the obturator internus muscle on the lateral wall of this space. Because of its location, the pudendal nerve is subjected to significant stretch and pressure during the descent of a fetus through the pelvis. The muscles of the pelvic diaphragm are also subjected to great pressure and stretch during labor. Magnetic resonance imaging studies have demonstrated atrophy and breaks in the levator muscles of parous women. Neuropathy of the pudendal nerve and myopathy of the levator muscles are believed to be significant contributing factors in the development of pelvic organ prolapse.

The connective tissues of the pelvis are collectively known as the endopelvic fascia. This fibroelastic connective tissue matrix contains varying amounts of smooth muscle. It supports and invests all the midline organs and structures of the pelvis. Only the ovaries and fallopian tubes lie outside this investment. At various locations, the endopelvic fascia manifests different characteristics. These forms include loose areolar tissue capable
The deep endopelvic connective tissue is of central importance in the clinically applied anatomy of the pelvis and is especially significant to the pelvic reconstructive surgeon. This structure is part of a continuum of retroperitoneal connective tissue that extends from the respiratory diaphragm in the upper abdomen to the pelvic diaphragm. Included in this continuum of structures are the mesenteries and ligaments of the upper abdomen. Anatomists debate whether the condensations of this connective tissue should be considered as true ligaments and fasciae. Part of this debate stems from the fact that some of these structures contain a significant muscular component and others serve as neurovascular conduits. Certainly, from a functional standpoint in the pelvis, they meet criteria for being so named. The endopelvic connective tissue is continuous from one part to the other. Separate portions serve different functions, take various forms, and therefore are given different names. The named structures of the deep endopelvic connective tissue include six ligaments, two septa, and one ring. Important anatomic details of these elements are summarized in the following tables.

The six pericervical ligaments form the paracolpium (Tables 36A.3, 36A.4, and 36A.5). The net effect of these structures is the suspension of the cervix in the posterior pelvis and the consequent placement of the vagina directly over the levator plate and away from direct exposure to the urogenital hiatus. In the normal anatomic position, pressure from above tends to close and away from direct exposure to the urogenital hiatus. Two septa or fasciae (Tables 36A.6 and 36A.7) are located within the deep endopelvic connective tissue. These condensations of fibroelastic connective tissue are in close contact with the vaginal epithelium and visceral fasciae of the adjacent structures of the deep endopelvic connective tissue include six ligaments, two septa, and one ring. Important anatomic details of these elements are summarized in the following tables.

The points of insertion are on the posterior and lateral supravaginal cervix at the 5-o’clock and 7-o’clock positions. The ligaments are continuous with and form part of the pericervical ring.

**Neurologic content**
- Uterosacral plexus of autonomic nerves

**Vascular content**
- Minimal

**Muscular content**
- Rectouterine muscle

**Function**
These structures are the primary proximal suspensory elements of the uterovesical complex. They hold the cervix behind the urogenital hiatus in the posterior pelvis at the level of the ischial spines with the uterus in anteflexion and the vagina suspended over the levator plate.

**Synonym**
- Rectal pillar

At their insertion into the pericervical ring, the uterosacral ligaments blend as continuous structures superiorly and laterally with the cardinal ligaments and distally with the proximal rectovaginal septum.

---

**TABLE 36A.2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pelvic organs and structures invested by visceral fasciae</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic organs and structures not invested by visceral fasciae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fallopian tubes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovaries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**TABLE 36A.3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPONENTS OF THE DEEP ENDOPELVIC CONNECTIVE TISSUE: UTEROSACRAL LIGAMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Origin</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periosteum of sacral vertebra 2, 3, and 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Insertion</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The points of insertion are on the posterior and lateral supravaginal cervix at the 5-o’clock and 7-o’clock positions. The ligaments are continuous with and form part of the pericervical ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neurologic content</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterosacral plexus of autonomic nerves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vascular content</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Muscular content</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectouterine muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Function</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These structures are the primary proximal suspensory elements of the uterovesical complex. They hold the cervix behind the urogenital hiatus in the posterior pelvis at the level of the ischial spines with the uterus in anteflexion and the vagina suspended over the levator plate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Synonym</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectal pillar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

The deep endopelvic connective tissue is of central importance in the clinically applied anatomy of the pelvis and is especially significant to the pelvic reconstructive surgeon. This structure is part of a continuum of retroperitoneal connective tissue that extends from the respiratory diaphragm in the upper abdomen to the pelvic diaphragm. Included in this continuum of structures are the mesenteries and ligaments of the upper abdomen. Anatomists debate whether the condensations of this connective tissue should be considered as true ligaments and fasciae. Part of this debate stems from the fact that some of these structures contain a significant muscular component and others serve as neurovascular conduits. Certainly, from a functional standpoint in the pelvis, they meet criteria for being so named. The endopelvic connective tissue is continuous from one part to the other. Separate portions serve different functions, take various forms, and therefore are given different names. The named structures of the deep endopelvic connective tissue include six ligaments, two septa, and one ring. Important anatomic details of these elements are summarized in the following tables.

The six pericervical ligaments form the paracolpium (Tables 36A.3, 36A.4, and 36A.5). The net effect of these structures is the suspension of the cervix in the posterior pelvis and the consequent placement of the vagina directly over the levator plate and away from direct exposure to the urogenital hiatus. In the normal anatomic position, pressure from above tends to close and away from direct exposure to the urogenital hiatus. Two septa or fasciae (Tables 36A.6 and 36A.7) are located within the deep endopelvic connective tissue. These condensations of fibroelastic connective tissue are in close contact with the vaginal epithelium and visceral fasciae of the adjacent structures of the deep endopelvic connective tissue include six ligaments, two septa, and one ring. Important anatomic details of these elements are summarized in the following tables.

The points of insertion are on the posterior and lateral supravaginal cervix at the 5-o’clock and 7-o’clock positions. The ligaments are continuous with and form part of the pericervical ring.

**Neurologic content**
- Uterosacral plexus of autonomic nerves

**Vascular content**
- Minimal

**Muscular content**
- Rectouterine muscle

**Function**
These structures are the primary proximal suspensory elements of the uterovesical complex. They hold the cervix behind the urogenital hiatus in the posterior pelvis at the level of the ischial spines with the uterus in anteflexion and the vagina suspended over the levator plate.

**Synonym**
- Rectal pillar

At their insertion into the pericervical ring, the uterosacral ligaments blend as continuous structures superiorly and laterally with the cardinal ligaments and distally with the proximal rectovaginal septum.
TABLE 36A.4

COMPONENTS OF THE DEEP ENDOPELVIC CONNECTIVE TISSUE: CARDINAL LIGAMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Insertion</th>
<th>Neurologic content</th>
<th>Vascular content</th>
<th>Muscular content</th>
<th>Urinary</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Synonyms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The hypogastric root with fibrous connections to the lateral abdominal and pelvic walls</td>
<td>The points of insertion are on the lateral supravaginal cervix at the 3-o’clock and 9-o’clock positions. This insertion is continuous with and forms part of the pericervical ring.</td>
<td>Portions of the uterosacral plexus.</td>
<td>Uterine artery and veins</td>
<td>Minimal smooth muscle content with no named component.</td>
<td>The distal ureter passes under the uterine artery within the superior portion of the cardinal ligament</td>
<td>These ligaments are the primary vascular conduits of the uterus and vagina, providing lateral stabilization to the cervix at the level of the ischial spines. They are similar in structure, content, and function to the mesenteries of the abdomen.</td>
<td>Mackenrodt’s ligament, lateral cervical ligament, and proper cervical ligament</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 36A.5

COMPONENTS OF THE DEEP ENDOPELVIC CONNECTIVE TISSUE: PUBOCERVICAL LIGAMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Insertion</th>
<th>Vascular component</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Synonyms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inferior surface of the superior pubic ramus medially and the arcus tendineus fascia pelvis laterally</td>
<td>The points of insertion are on the anterior and lateral supravaginal cervix at the 11-o’clock and 1-o’clock positions. This insertion is continuous with and forms part of the pericervical ring.</td>
<td>Artery and veins of the bladder pillar</td>
<td>These ligaments are the least well developed of the pericervical ligaments, serving as a vascular conduit and for a minimal degree of cervical stabilization.</td>
<td>Denonvilliers’ fascia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 36A.6

COMPONENTS OF THE DEEP ENDOPELVIC CONNECTIVE TISSUE: PUBOCERVICAL SEPTUM OR FASCIA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Synonyms</th>
<th>Boundaries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trapezoidal with the narrow end located distally</td>
<td>Fibroelastic connective tissue and smooth muscle</td>
<td>Anterior vaginal support, including support of the bladder</td>
<td>Vescicovaginal septum or fascia, pubovesicocervical septum or fascia</td>
<td>Distal: Pubic tubercles laterally and the pubic arch centrally fusing with the uro genital diaphragm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

is suspended over the levator plate. The normal vaginal axis is oriented posteriorly toward a point just above the center of the fourth sacral vertebra. This point is the area of the origin of the uterosacral ligaments.

The pericervical ring (Table 36A.8) is the single location where all deep endopelvic connective tissue support structures

TABLE 36A.7

COMPONENTS OF THE DEEP ENDOPELVIC CONNECTIVE TISSUE: RECTOVAGINAL SEPTUM OR FASCIA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Synonyms</th>
<th>Boundaries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trapezoidal with the narrow end located distally</td>
<td>Fibroelastic connective tissue and smooth muscle</td>
<td>Posterior vaginal support and suspension, stabilization of the rectum, and perineal suspension. The vaginal suspensory axis consists of the perineum, rectovaginal septum, pericervical ring, uterosacral ligaments, and presacral periosteum. The rectovaginal septum also guides the leading edge of a descending bowel movement into the anus.</td>
<td>Denonvilliers’ fascia</td>
<td>Distal: Fusion with the proximal perineal body at the central tendon of the perineum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 36A.8

COMPONENTS OF THE DEEP ENDOPELVIC CONNECTIVE TISSUE: PERICERVICAL RING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>Collar of connective tissue encircling the supravaginal cervix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contents</td>
<td>Fibroelastic connective tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Cervical stabilization within the interspinous diameter by connecting with all other named components of the deep endopelvic connective tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synonym</td>
<td>Supravaginal septum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connections</td>
<td>Anterior: The pericervical ring is located between the base of the bladder and the anterior cervix, where it connects with the pubocervical ligaments at the 11-o’clock and 1-o’clock positions and the proximal pubocervical septum centrally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lateral: Cardinal ligaments at the 3-o’clock and 9-o’clock positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Posterior: The pericervical ring is located between the rectum and the posterior cervix, where it connects with the uterosacral ligaments at the 5-o’clock and 7-o’clock positions and the proximal rectovaginal septum centrally.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Simply stated, the goal of the defect-specific pelvic reconstructive surgeon is the restitution of the anatomical connections of the pericervical ring. If the dissection and reconstructive efforts during such a surgery do not extend proximally to the interspinous diameter, the surgery is likely to fail. Because the cervix is located on the anterior vaginal wall, the pubocervical septum is shorter than the rectovaginal septum by a length equal to the diameter of the pericervical ring. If one carries this line of reasoning further, an inherent structural problem is present in the posthysterectomy prolapse patient. If the cervix and its surrounding support tissues are absent, no completely anatomic method to reconstruct the proximal anterior vaginal support exists. Some form of anatomic distortion (e.g., shortening of the vagina or plication) or bolstering is necessary to compensate for this defect. Likely, this dilemma is the reason that the dominant support defect in the posthysterectomy patient is most frequently in this location.

The three-dimensional structure of the endopelvic fascia has another distinguishing anatomic characteristic that is of interest to the pelvic surgeon. Outside the confines of the named condensations of this tissue are avascular potential spaces (Table 36A.9). When properly used, these spaces give the surgeon access to important support structures deep within the pelvis. Gynecologic oncologists base their surgical training around mastering the surgical manipulation of these spaces, usually from the abdominal approach. These spaces are not only available to the vaginal reconstructive surgeon, but they are also critical in identification of pelvic support landmarks.

DeLancey’s biomechanical analysis of normal uterovaginal support by the deep endopelvic connective tissue helps to unify the anatomic principles pertinent to pelvic organ prolapse (Fig. 36A.7). These concepts of support and suspension also help to define a set of goals for the reconstructive surgeon. Each goal must be satisfied for the long-term success of a prolapse surgery. DeLancey divided vaginal support into three levels (Fig. 36A.8). Proximal vaginal level I support is attributed to suspension by the ligaments of the paracolpium. Damage to level I support results in uterovaginal prolapse, posthysterectomy vaginal prolapse, and enterocele. The cause for level I support problems is necessarily at or above the level of the ischial spines. The primary load-bearing elements are the uterosacral ligaments and, to a lesser extent, the cardinal ligaments. This fact is consistent with cadaver observations made many years ago by Mengert showing that prolapse occurred only after 85% of the integrity of the paracolpium was severed. Midvaginal level II support is due to lateral attachment of the fascial septa to

In the vast majority of women who will develop pelvic organ prolapse, the process begins with their first vaginal delivery. Each subsequent vaginal delivery contributes to the likelihood that a clinically symptomatic prolapse will occur. Labor and delivery are certainly desired, necessary, and important physiologic events. Nonetheless, childbirth does have a traumatic aspect by contributing to the development of pelvic organ prolapse. Commonly, many years pass and other factors contribute to the progression of prolapse before such patients present for evaluation.

During labor, the fetal presenting part (about 95% are vertex) must overcome a significant amount of soft tissue resistance presented by the lower uterine segment and cervix, the endopelvic fascia, and the muscular pelvic floor. Because of the lordosis of the lumbar spinal spine, the obstetric axis of the pelvis is noticeably angled, differing by 90 degrees between the inlet and outlet. This right angle occurs at the level of the interspinous diameter. This diameter is the narrowest in the female human pelvis and therefore is the plane of greatest resistance of the pubocervical septum, significant downward pressure is placed on the maternal right pelvic sidewall. The fetus then usually rotates into the occiput anterior position as it encounters the interspinous diameter. This diameter is the narrowest in the female human pelvis and therefore is the plane of greatest pressure during labor and delivery. The fetal head flexes to allow passage under the pubic symphysis. The anterior sacrococcygeal curve is concave. As the fetus passes under the pubic arch, this concavity makes it necessary for the fetal head to extend to complete labor. This change in orientation places intense pressure on the posterior perineal ring. The usual result is further uterosacral stress and a transverse proximal detachment of the rectovaginal septum at its junction with the perineal ring. As extension of the head progresses, displacement of the rectovaginal septum toward the perineum results in the creation of a midu for proximal vaginal enterocele and midvaginal rectocele formation. If the rectovaginal septum is displaced far enough distally, pararectal defects form as the septum is sheared away from its lateral attachments. The process of rectovaginal detachment and displacement weakens proximal support for the perineal body and predisposes to perineal descent. Subsequent deliveries progressively contribute damage to the endopelvic fascia. During descent and extension, the fetus passes through the urogenital hiatus. During this process, pressure is transmitted to the levator muscles and the pudendal nerve. If a patient dilates completely, pushes in an attempt to deliver, and then receives a cesarean section, she may have much of the same fascial damage as a woman with a successful vaginal delivery. A nulliparous patient with prolapse would likely suffer from isolated failure of the paracolpium, with the perineal ring and fascial septa remaining intact. A major shortcoming of the profession is that the effect of labor and delivery on the female pelvis has not been more completely objectified. Only recently has the study of pudendal neuropathy and levator myopathy been brought under scientific scrutiny. Even less has been done to determine the most common overall patterns of fascial and ligament damage during parturition. The pattern described in the previous paragraph is simply the most common one encountered. Other fetial presentations would result in different patterns of damage. Any experienced prolapse surgeon recognizes the variations in pattern of herniation, leading to the adage that no two patients are exactly alike. However, knowledge of the common pattern does help the surgeon who is new to the defect-specific approach know where to look to identify fascial edges and visually discriminate between various tissues in the dissection field.

Fortunately, most women who bear children will not suffer a significant symptomatic degree of prolapse. Parturition then

ETIOLOGY AND PREVENTION

In the vast majority of women who will develop pelvic organ prolapse, the process begins with their first vaginal delivery. Each subsequent vaginal delivery contributes to the likelihood that a clinically symptomatic prolapse will occur. Labor and delivery are certainly desired, necessary, and important physiologic events. Nonetheless, childbirth does have a traumatic aspect by contributing to the development of pelvic organ prolapse. Commonly, many years pass and other factors contribute to the progression of prolapse before such patients present for evaluation.

During labor, the fetal presenting part (about 95% are vertex) must overcome a significant amount of soft tissue resistance presented by the lower uterine segment and cervix, the endopelvic fascia, and the muscular pelvic floor. Because of the lordosis of the lumbar spinal spine, the obstetric axis of the pelvis is noticeably angled, differing by 90 degrees between the inlet and outlet. This right angle occurs at the level of the interspinous diameter. This diameter is the narrowest in the female human pelvis and therefore is the plane of great resistance of the pubocervical septum, significant downward pressure is placed on the maternal right pelvic sidewall. The fetus then usually rotates into the occiput anterior position as it encounters the interspinous diameter. This diameter is the narrowest in the female human pelvis and therefore is the plane of greatest pressure during labor and delivery. The fetal head flexes to allow passage under the pubic symphysis. The anterior sacrococcygeal curvature is concave. As the fetus passes under the pubic arch, this concavity makes it necessary for the fetal head to extend to complete labor. This change in orientation places intense pressure on the posterior perineal ring. The usual result is further uterosacral stress and a transverse proximal detachment of the rectovaginal septum at its junction with the perineal ring. As extension of the head progresses, displacement of the rectovaginal septum toward the perineum results in the creation of a midu for proximal vaginal enterocele and midvaginal rectocele formation. If the rectovaginal septum is displaced far enough distally, pararectal defects form as the septum is sheared away from its lateral attachments. The process of rectovaginal detachment and displacement weakens proximal support for the perineal body and predisposes to perineal descent. Subsequent deliveries progressively contribute damage to the endopelvic fascia. During descent and extension, the fetus passes through the urogenital hiatus. During this process, pressure is transmitted to the levator muscles and the pudendal nerve. If a patient dilates completely, pushes in an attempt to deliver, and then receives a cesarean section, she may have much of the same fascial damage as a woman with a successful vaginal delivery. A nulliparous patient with prolapse would likely suffer from isolated failure of the paracolpium, with the perineal ring and fascial septa remaining intact. A major shortcoming of the profession is that the effect of labor and delivery on the female pelvis has not been more completely objectified. Only recently has the study of pudendal neuropathy and levator myopathy been brought under scientific scrutiny. Even less has been done to determine the most common overall patterns of fascial and ligament damage during parturition. The pattern described in the previous paragraph is simply the most common one encountered. Other fetial presentations would result in different patterns of damage. Any experienced prolapse surgeon recognizes the variations in pattern of herniation, leading to the adage that no two patients are exactly alike. However, knowledge of the common pattern does help the surgeon who is new to the defect-specific approach know where to look to identify fascial edges and visually discriminate between various tissues in the dissection field.

Fortunately, most women who bear children will not suffer a significant symptomatic degree of prolapse. Parturition then
is a necessary cause but not a sufficient cause for the vast majority of prolapse cases. Other factors work over time and in combination with the damage caused by childbirth to convert incipient prolapse into a clinically apparent problem.

Prolapse becomes more common with advancing age. The likely cause is general weakening of tissues, including the pelvic floor muscles. Passage of time increases the cumulative effect of these factors. Most cases of prolapse become evident after the age of menopause. Virtually all the tissues of the pelvis possess estrogen receptors, and the atrophic changes that occur in the absence of estrogen are a contributing cause for prolapse. With age and a prolonged hypogonadal state, oestrogen may develop. The kyphotic changes in the spine that result from osteoporosis displace the pelvic inlet into a more horizontal plane. This change in the pelvic floor allows the weight of the abdominal contents to act more directly on the pelvic floor and on the urogenital hiatus.

Lifestyle may contribute to prolapse. Lifting objects heavy enough to require a Valsalva maneuver or fixation of the respiratory diaphragm displaces stress directly down on the pelvic floor. This process may be aided by shoulder, back, and extremity weakness. Defecation or micturition are commonly assisted with straining. This straining ocurs when the pelvic diaphragm is intentionally relaxed. This action places substantial force on a passive pelvic floor and open urogenital hiatus several times a day. Straining has essentially the same effect as heavy lifting. Obesity, which is epidemic in the United States, directly increases the load on the pelvic floor and decreases mobility, as well as the ability to do muscle strengthening exercises.

Medical conditions and their complications may contribute to the development of prolapse. A few examples suffice to illustrate how a chronic medical condition or the treatments for medical problems may affect the pelvic floor. The natural hormone deficiency disorders, such as menopause, and obesity, both of which contribute to the tendency to prolapse. Chronic cough accompanying asthma, bronchitis, or smoking places repeated stresses on the pelvic floor. The effects of repeated or paroxysmal coughing help to convert incipient prolapse into a clinical problem. Paroxysmal coughing also has antiestrogenic properties, contributes to vascular disease, and creates a chronic hypoxic state. Corticosteroid therapy is used in many chronic medical conditions. The weakening effect of these medications on connective tissue is well known. People with constitutional connective tissue disorders have been shown to be at increased risk for prolapse. Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, for example, is characterized by generalized fascial and connective tissue weaknesses. The pelvic floor is also affected by these deficits. More subtle connective tissue weakness, such as joint hypermobility, has been suspected to increase the long-term risk for prolapse. Development of ascites may cause a rapid increase in the degree of prolapse. This list is by no means complete. Any condition that affects the physical load on the pelvic floor or the integrity of the muscular and connective tissues of the pelvis will increase the likelihood that symptomatic prolapse will develop.

Some medical conditions may reduce the tendency to develop prolapse. This is the case for any condition that causes an inflammatory reaction in the paracervical or parametral tissues with subsequent tissue fibrosis. Pelvic inflammatory disease, purperal or postabortal sepsis, endometriosis, and pelvic radiation therapy are conditions that could lead to such a circumstance. Pelvic adhesions, regardless of the cause, may be strong enough to secondarily suspend a prolapse. Large uterine leiomyomata or other pelvic masses can mechanically prevent the development and descent of prolapse.

The list of contributing causes to pelvic organ prolapse is varied. Prevention should begin early in a woman’s life and be continued into the later years. Many of the measures discussed as preventions also have a positive effect on a woman’s general health. Any discussion of pelvic organ prolapse prevention must include the obstetric management of childbirth. Vaginal delivery undoubtedly has a primary and profound effect on pelvic support anatomy. Debates have occurred for decades about the wisdom of operative vaginal deliveries, optimal length for the second stage of labor, management of macrosomia, usefulness of episiotomy, and multiple other obstetric practices. In truth, little evidence-based information exists regarding these concepts as they relate to the subsequent development of prolapse. The most likely major contributing factor is simply vaginal delivery. The pelvis is contoured so that even in a normal labor and delivery, substantial forces are applied to the endopelvic fascia, muscular floor of the pelvis, and pudendal nerves. The greatest forces generated are at the level of the interspinous diameter. This plane is the location of the singularly important perirectal ring and its junction with every other septa and ligament associated with normal vaginal support and suspension. For example, an episiotomy may shorten the second stage of labor but is unlikely to have any effect on the stresses generated in the interspinous diameter. Does prophylactic cesarean section represent the ultimate in prolapse prevention? This tactic certainly has attained popularity in some parts of the world. One might argue that if vaginal delivery is a necessary cause for prolapse, then this strategy would be preventative. This topic has generated an active and emerging debate in obstetrics and gynecology. Evidence-based resolutions to these questions are unlikely to ever be available. In my opinion, prophylactic cesarean section will never be widely applied. Replacing a desired physiologic process with a major surgery is illogical when better strategies can be developed. This is a relatively uncommon and not life threatening. However, occasional patients may present convincing arguments in favor of prophylactic cesarean section. The individual practitioner and patient must resolve the course of action in the privacy of the consultation room.

In the adult parous woman, strategies to prevent the development of prolapse center on efforts that decrease physical stress on the urogenital hiatus and the pelvic floor. Physical therapists have known for years that protection of the lower back is improved by strengthening the shoulder girdle, quadriceps muscles, and abdominal muscles, as well as the muscles of the low back. These concepts are valid for protection of the pelvic floor. A program of exercises that develops strength in all these muscle groups allows women to accomplish the activities they desire without straining or using the assistance of a Valsalva maneuver. Care must be taken to respect the urogenital hiatus so that during such training, undue stress is not repeatedly placed on the pelvic floor. Likewise, in daily activity, the proper techniques to lift, push, and pull objects should be learned and practiced. The control of obesity must be considered part of the effort to reduce the load placed on the pelvic floor. Osteoporotic spinal changes cause a gradual kyphosis, replacing the normal lumbar lordosis. The net effect is to rotate the pelvic brim into a more horizontal position. This shift places more stress on the pelvic floor. Estrogen therapy not only prevents osteoporosis but also has positive effects on the various estrogen-sensitive tissues of the pelvis. Hormone replacement therapy is complicated, controversial, and beyond the scope of this discussion. Other effective treatments for osteoporosis exist.

Pelvic floor strengthening by voluntary contraction of the muscles innervated by the pudendal nerve was popularized by...
Arnold Kegel. The associated exercises have been known by his name ever since. Many women know this term because it is used frequently in postpartum instructions. Several different strategies help to remind patients to do their Kegel exercises. One of the most effective techniques is briefly outlined below. The Kegel contraction should be confirmed during a pelvic examination to ensure that the patient understands the correct muscle to contract. Frequent patients may either perform a Valsalva maneuver or tighten the gluteus maximus muscle instead of the external anal sphincter and levator ani muscles. The proper time to Kegel is after micturition. After the bladder is emptied, the patient is instructed to lean as far forward as they comfortably allow. While leaning forward, the patient performs three or more isometric Kegel exercises by tightening the muscles until they voluntarily relax on their own. The dependent portion of a cystoscope is below the level of the internal urethral orifice. The forward tilt physically elevates the bladder floor and allows for more complete emptying. The muscular action of the Kegel contractions also aids the process of emptying. Coupling this activity with voiding habituates the patient to perform the exercises several times a day. The result is the combination of more complete emptying and a strengthened pelvic floor, both of which are advantageous for the patient. The patient may then be able to use the Kegel contraction during physical stress to prevent incontinence or to protect against the pelvic floor impact of sudden increases in abdominal pressure. If the patient knows how to use Kegel muscles that are strong and easily controlled, they become an asset in her daily life.

Splitting is particularly effective in alleviating the dysfunctional defecation related to symptomatic rectoceles. If a significant rectocele/interescele herniation is present, patients frequently experience entrapment of the leading edge of the descending bowel segment. Entrapment leads to straining, which further enhances the entrapment. Often patients in this circumstance will strain until the bowel movement fragments and allows partial defecation and descent of another segment of stool into the rectal pocket. Several trips to the toilet and a large amount of time are required to complete this process. This unfortunate problem may be avoided if the patient simply places upward pressure with her finger tips against the perineum or the area lateral to the perineum during the initial urge to defecate. Occasionally, the patient needs to place one or two fingers against the anterior vaginal wall. These maneuvers effectively reduce the rectocoele pocket, allowing the stool to evacuate while bypassing the rectocoele. This “digital defecation” or splitting technique may avoid surgery and certainly empowers the patient to be in better control of her daily activities. I encourage the use of this technique postoperatively to protect the suspended posterior vaginal segment against undue strain. This protective maneuver is particularly important while acute healing is under way. Control of chronic diseases and habits are helpful preventative strategies. Effective treatment of persistent cough may decrease incontinence and prevent progression of prolapse. Cessation of smoking certainly may be considered part of the preventative effort. Diabetic complications such as obesity, myopathy, and neuropathy may be prevented by modern management strategies.

The prevention of pelvic organ prolapse involves care of the entire body. A healthy, fit, and well-nourished patient is aware of ways to actively protect her pelvic floor is less likely to experience this potentially disabling problem. Many of the strategies outlined in this section should be part of the care of patients from their obstetric years onward. Prevention is always preferable to intervention in the operating room.

The correct management of pelvic organ prolapse depends on a careful evaluation of each patient. Only after a thorough history and physical examination is the practitioner able to develop an effective treatment plan for the individual patient. The history should begin with the patient’s perception of the problem. This information helps to determine what specific goals the patient may have. The patient might be afraid that the prolapse could rupture or that it may be caused by a malignant growth. Reassurance may suffice if such ideas are the major concern. Patients may or may not be interested in coital function, further childbearing, or simply knowing that the vagina is present if social circumstances change. Some women have grown accustomed to advanced prolapse and may describe very little inconvenience related to the herniation. These people may simply want to know if the prolapse represents any threat to their longevity. Other women are very conscious of an anatomically minor prolapse or may have pain unrelated to the prolapse. The patient may have unrealistic expectations or may be ready for intervention before the physician’s operative criteria are met. In this situation, the pelvic reconstructive surgeon needs to be honest and forthright in discussing what will or will not improve after a surgery. A careful micturition, defecation, and sexual history may be invaluable in developing a treatment plan. Patients must be placed at ease and reassured during the evaluation before a full history concerning the details of pelvic functions can be obtained. Stress, urge, and neurogenic urinary incontinence may be differentiated by history. Obviously, the evaluations and treatments differ for each of these conditions. The complex topic of urinary incontinence is covered in detail elsewhere in this book. The mechanics involved in defecation are important. Determine the number of trips to the toilet and the compensatory measures necessary to complete evacuation. Fecal incontinence is a condition that patients are notoriously reluctant to discuss. This condition may or may not be due to physical damage to the anal continence control mechanism. The patient may be continuously voiding gas, liquids, and solids. Each patient may safely be presumed to desire urinary and bowel continence. Marked variation exists in patients’ sexual goals. The practitioner should learn about these goals in a respectful and nonjudgmental way. Collecting sexual function information is an art, critical to the development of a management plan. The past surgical history helps the surgeon assess the status of the patient in general and of the pelvis in particular. Specific interest should be placed on previous attempts to correct pelvic organ prolapse. Before her visit, the patient may be asked to prepare a list of previous surgeries so that none are overlooked. The route of hysterectomy and the indications for the procedure may be helpful. If previous prolapse surgery has been performed, the physician should try to obtain the operative notes. The anatomic details, type of suture used, and other details of the operative technique may help predict problems such as the likely location of anatomic distortion (previous plications) or the location of previously placed foreign bodies (e.g., meshes). Multiple previous attempts at repair may jeopardize a combination of caution and experience to achieve a successful outcome.

The medical history should be used to determine what other medical conditions exist that would likely interact with surgery or recovery. A complete pelvic reconstructive surgery may last several hours, involve significant blood loss, and require advanced vaginal and abdominal approaches. Obviously, the patient needs the physical reserve to withstand this degree of stress. Patients with morbid obesity, limited pulmonary and
cardiac function, thromboembolic risks, entrenched tobacco addiction, or limited mobility are not ideal candidates for this type of surgery. A complete list of current medications, including herbas and over-the-counter preparations, and treating physicians is also helpful.

The proper physical examination of the prolapse patient requires that the examining physician have a working knowledge of normal pelvic anatomy. Older systems for recording physical findings related to prolapse relied on subjective terms such as mild, moderate, and severe. These terms have a limited ability to accurately describe prolapse and restrict effective communication between examiners. Two systems are currently in use that encourage a complete prolapse examination and that more objectively record anatomic detail. Each of these systems has strengths and weaknesses. The Baden-Walker Halfway System is user friendly, easy to record, and maximizes the amount of detail that can be recorded in a very brief space. Proponents of this system maintain that the essence of the prolapse examination is recorded after writing six numbers and some editorial notes. Critics note that the abbreviation of detail means that some compromises are made along the way. The second system is the Pelvic Organ Prolapse—Quantification or POP-Q system. This is a more complex system incorporating more specific detail of the physical findings. Even for those clinicians accustomed to its use, the number of measurements needed requires additional time to acquire. The beauty of this system is that, theoretically, physician-to-physician variation is minimized. The POP-Q is currently used in many academic papers on the subject of prolapse. Interested physicians should become familiar with both of these systems. More important than any system is an accurate and anatomically based assessment of the patient at the time of examination.

### Baden-Walker Halfway System

The extent of prolapse is recorded using a number (0 to 4) at each of six defined sites in the vagina. There are two sites on the anterior, superior, and posterior walls of the vagina. Table 36A.10 lists the anatomic sites and the associated symptoms. The six numbers are recorded as a measure of descent. For all sites except the perineum, the hymen is used as a fixed anatomic reference point. Zero indicates normal anatomic position for a site, whereas 4 represents maximum prolapse. Between these extremes, the intervening numbers grade descent using a halfway system as illustrated in Figure 36A.9. The examination is performed with the patient straining so that maximum descent is attained. The patient may wish to stand to demonstrate maximum descent.

The perineum is graded using the familiar perineal laceration system used in obstetrics (Fig. 36A.9). The patient is asked to hold or Kegel to evaluate the amount of muscular and fascial compensatory support. Editorial comments may include the site of dominant prolapse, location of scars, palpable puckering from previous surgery, and the type of efforts necessary to demonstrate maximum prolapse. Strength of the levator contraction may be recorded as 0 to 4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anatomic site</th>
<th>Primary symptoms</th>
<th>Secondary symptoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Urethral</td>
<td>Urinary incontinence</td>
<td>Falling out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vesical</td>
<td>Voiding difficulties</td>
<td>Falling out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine</td>
<td>Falling out</td>
<td>Heaviness and so forth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cul-de-sac</td>
<td>Pelvic pressure (standing)</td>
<td>Falling out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectal</td>
<td>True bowel pocket</td>
<td>Falling out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perineal</td>
<td>Anal incontinence</td>
<td>Too loose (gas/feces)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: 12/44/32. A dominant complete apical prolapse is noted with enterocele, significant cystocele and rectocele, and perineal attenuation to the level of the external anal sphincter. 2/4 levator strength is present. Although this type of notation encodes much information in a small space, no specific location of fascial defects is indicated.

Pelvic Organ Prolapse—Quantification System (POP-Q)

This system was developed as an effort to introduce more objectivity into the quantification of pelvic organ prolapse. For example, measurements in centimeters are used instead of subjective grades. Nine specific measurements are recorded as indicated in Figure 36A.10. Point Aa is defined as being 3 cm proximal to the external urethral meatus on the anterior vaginal wall. Point Ap is defined as being 3 cm proximal to the hymen on the posterior vaginal wall. Points Ba and Bp are defined as points of maximum prolapse excursion on the anterior and posterior vaginal walls, respectively. Measurements are recorded as negative numbers when proximal to the hymen and positive numbers when distal to the hymen. POP-Q sites C and D are identical in location to Baden-Walker sites 3 and 4 in the apical vagina. In addition, measurements of the total vaginal length, genital hiatus, and perineal body are taken. All measurements are recorded on a tic-tac-toe style grid (Fig. 36A.11). When combined with sagittal line drawings, a fairly complete picture of prolapse is attained (Fig. 36A.12). Ordinal stages of pelvic organ prolapse are then assigned from stage 0 (no prolapse) to stage V (complete prolapse) so that the outcome of cases of like magnitude may be compared.

The nine specific sites of measurement used in the Pelvic Organ Prolapse—Quantification System (POP-Q). gh, genital hiatus; pb, perineal body; tvl, total vaginal length. (From Bump RC, Mattiasson A, Bo K, et al. The standardization of terminology of female pelvic organ prolapse and pelvic floor dysfunction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1996;175:10.)

Pelvic Examination

After a general physical examination is performed, the prolapse may be evaluated. Any surgical scars on the abdomen should be correlated with the surgical history. Patients frequently forget procedures that may have an impact on the treatment plan. The physician should pay particular attention to the suprapubic region where previous incontinence procedure incisions may be located.

The pelvic examination is initiated with the patient in the lithotomy position. Hip mobility should be evaluated because adequate abduction and flexion of the thighs is required for a vaginal procedure. Thigh and buttock obesity may also be limiting factors. If exposure is limited, an extended procedure performed vaginally is not in the patient’s or surgeon’s best interest.

The labia are opened for introital inspection. Prolapse may be internal (proximal to the hymen) or external (distal to the hymen) at rest. The extent of the prolapse may change considerably if the patient is asked to strain. This difference may be especially pronounced in patients with healthy pelvic floor muscles and an undescended levator plate. These two structures may help hold a prolapse in place. The patient may give a history of a prolapse that is not apparent on examination or not as large as she describes. In such a case, the patient is examined while she is in the standing position; or she may be asked to perform the maneuvers necessary to demonstrate the full extent of the prolapse.

The dominant prolapse is considered to be the first hernia to descend or the most dependent part of a prolapse that has previously descended. Proper identification of the dominant prolapse provides key clues about where the most significant fascial damage is located. The dominant prolapse is located and replaced to examine the remainder of the vaginal vault. A large dominant prolapse often fills the urogenital hiatus and introitus, preventing incipient hernias from fully developing. Usually an anterior prolapse is easily replaced by placing a tongue blade or Ayre spatula in each anterior lateral sulcus.
If an apical transverse or lateral paravaginal defect is present, this maneuver replaces the anterior vaginal wall. If this maneuver does not reduce the hernia, a central anterior defect is likely present. A dominant posterior segment prolapse may be replaced with the posterior blade of a disjoined Sims’ speculum. A dominant superior segment prolapse may be replaced with a large cotton swab, a sponge stick, or, in advanced cases, by attaching a tenaculum to the cervix. After replacement of the dominant prolapse, the secondary sites of prolapse become more apparent. An isolated single-site prolapse is rare. The location of the cervix or hysterectomy scar helps determine the location of the dominant prolapse. Frequently displaced, either anteriorly or posteriorly, these sites are often not at the most dependent part of the prolapse. The posthysterectomy scar is commonly a transverse fibrous band that may be slightly retracted. To either side of the band are dimples in the epithelium corresponding to the location of the insertion of cardinal and uterosacral ligament remnants. Incomplete evaluation may lead to incomplete repair that results in recurrent prolapse and multiple trips to the operating room. The support structures of all vaginal segments and levels are interdependent. Complete restoration of all defects is necessary for a successful outcome.

Careful inspection of the vaginal epithelium reveals the location of rugae. The presence of these transverse folds implies that endopelvic fascia is adherent to the epithelium in that location. The lateral vaginal sulci are the location of the junction of the pubocervical and rectovaginal septa to their respective lateral arcuate attachments. The pattern of rugae and the condition of the sulci should correlate with the pattern of fascial breaks found at surgery. The vaginal epithelium should also be inspected for atrophy created by the absence of the effects of estrogen. Local or systemic administration of estrogen before surgery assists in dissection and subsequent healing. Occasionally, an external prolapse may develop pressure ulcers as a result of entrapment when the patient is sitting. These lesions must be properly evaluated to rule out malignancy.

Rectovaginal examination assists in the evaluation of the posterior and superior vaginal segments. The urogenital ligaments may be palpable immediately medial to each ischiorectal fossa, especially if the uterus is present. The uterosacral ligaments may be more easily palpated with traction placed on the cervix. Anterior displacement of the rectal examining finger toward the vagina helps to distinguish between rectocoele and enterocele. During the rectal examination, the patient is asked to strain. If an enterocele is present, it bulges down in the nonrugated vaginal epithelium proximal to the tip of the examining finger. Palpating the transversely detached proximal edge of the rectovaginal septum is possible during this maneuver. This sharp border may retract distally all the way to the perineum. Perineal descent is also evaluated at the time of rectal examination. The levator plate is immediately posterior to the rectum and should be horizontal and immovable. The perineum is evaluated last. The perineum is triangular in the sagittal plane. The base is on the rectal side, and the apex at the hymen. Perineal attenuation is very common in parous women. Apposition of the thumb of the examining hand while the index finger is in the rectum proximal to the anterior aspect of the external anal sphincter allows for evaluation of the integrity of this muscle. Voluntary contraction of the sphincter may be helpful. The S3 neurologic segment is necessary to contract this muscle and controls the ability to spread and dorsiflex the toes. If the patient cannot perform these tasks, the integrity of that neural segment is in question.

The mechanical strength of the pelvic diaphragm is directly correlated with the ability to voluntarily contract these muscles. This ability is best tested clinically with light pressure placed on the posterior vaginal wall by the examining digits. The patient may need coaching to elicit a response. This time is an excellent opportunity to instruct the patient in the importance of postvoiding Kegel exercises and perineal support (splinting) during defecation.

If muscle activity is elicited, it may be subjectively graded from 0 to 4. If no muscle activity is detected, a more formal neurologic and medical workup should be considered. Pudendal nerve motor latency studies may reveal significant neuropathies. Magnetic resonance imaging of these patients has revealed the presence of advanced muscle atrophy and muscular detachments as well. Neuropathy and myopathy erode the surgeon’s ability to correct prolapse. If the patient cannot properly move her toes and cannot contract the levator muscles, a spinal cord or central nervous system lesion must be considered.
The presence of urinary incontinence should be noted during any part of the evaluation of prolapse. In an advanced prolapse, assessment of incontinence should be conducted with the prolapse in a reduced state. A pessary or loose vaginal packing may be helpful in accomplishing this goal. Incontinence may be masked by a hypotonic bladder or reverse kinking of the urethra if a cystocele is large. Repair of a large prolapse may be followed by the appearance of urinary incontinence if the preoperative evaluation is not performed with the prolapse reduced.

When a large prolapse is present, the trigone of the bladder is often located outside the vaginal introitus. In this degree of displacement, one may deduce the location of the trigone as being directly adjacent to the location of a Foley catheter bulb. The course of the ureter in a large prolapse arcs from the superior and lateral aspect of the anterior prolapse to the area of the trigone. The ureter may often be palpated in this location. If the prolapse is chronic and advanced, hydroureter and even hydronephrosis may be present. In this circumstance, the ureters lose their cordlike consistency and are more difficult to palpate or recognize at the time of surgery. A large external prolapse makes the ureter more susceptible to surgical injury. Intraoperative placement of ureteral catheters may be helpful in such a patient. Postoperative documentation of ureteral patency is required.

A patient may present with the cervix near the level of the hymen. If no other signs of prolapse are present, the alert examiner is aware of the possibility of an elongated cervix. Sometimes surgery is not necessary in these patients. If surgery is performed, the technique of hysterectomy needs to take into consideration the elongation of the cervix. Often the para-ortic lymph nodes are enlarged in these patients.

The examiner should not underestimate the value of an examination under anesthesia to supplement information that has been gathered preoperatively. With the patient and her pelvic diaphragm relaxed, the full extent of prolapse may become more apparent. Deep structures of importance, such as the ischial spines and uterosacral ligaments, may be more easily palpated. An examination under anesthesia should be performed before initiating a prolapse surgery.

A number of ways may be used to summarize the array of clinical findings discussed in this section. My preference is to use a pelvic organ prolapse map (Figs. 36A.13 and 36A.14). Key anatomic landmarks are schematically outlined. The three-dimensional structure of the vagina is reduced to two dimensions as if the vagina were divided at the 3-o’clock and 9-o’clock positions. A Baden-Walker profile can be recorded vertically on the map with numbers placed beside the appropriate anatomic location. As seen in Figure 36A.13, fascial defects can be sketched on the map at their suspected or known location. Editorial notes regarding the prolapse can be recorded in the space provided. A POP-Q evaluation may be used as well. The pattern that is noted in Figure 36A.13 is the one most commonly seen in pelvic organ prolapse surgery; however, many variations on this theme are encountered (Fig. 36A.16). Another diagram may be drawn to indicate the exact locations of fascial defects at the time of surgery.
Pelvic Organ Prolapse: Basic Principles

Figure 36A.15. The most frequently encountered pattern of fascial damage in pelvic organ prolapse: (1) full-length right paravaginal defect; (2) transverse proximal detachment of the pubocervical septum; (3) transverse proximal detachment of the rectovaginal septum. This pattern of damage is consistent with the mechanics of a left occipitoanterior delivery. Baden-Walker vaginal support profile sites: 1, urethral; 2, vesical; 3, uterine; 4, cul-de-sac; 5, rectal; 6, perineal. PT, pubic tubercle; ATFP, arcus tendineus fascia pelvis; ATFRV, arcus tendineus fasciae rectovaginalis; IS, ischial spines; U, urethra; Cx, cervix; A, anus.

A thorough history and physical examination improves the treatment of the prolapse patient. The physical findings must be recorded in an anatomically accurate and understandable way.

Choice of Treatment

Vaginal reconstructive surgery is concerned with the return of abnormal organ relationships to a usual or normal state. There is no one site or degree of damage that must be repaired or restored; there are many and they occur in various combinations at various times of life, from different etiologic factors, varying degrees, and with varying degrees of symptoms and disability. (Nichols and Randall, 1989)

Patients with pelvic organ prolapse have highly individualized perceptions of their situation. The single most important concept in the treatment of these conditions is to understand the patient’s symptoms, concerns, and limitations related to the prolapse. Her quality of life should be of paramount concern in the decision-making process. The patient’s expectations and her ability to tolerate surgery should be expertly evaluated. The physician’s job is to educate the patient regarding options of treatment. After informed consent is given, the appropriate course of action is usually obvious to both the doctor and the patient. If the chosen course of action fails or becomes inappropriate over the course of time, the clinical evaluation and decision process can be revisited.

Nonsurgical Management

Regardless of the degree of prolapse, no surgery should be done unless the patient experiences a sufficient degree of morbidity. Most symptoms relate to quality-of-life issues. Generally, preventative measures should be the most widely applied techniques. Pelvic floor exercises, weight loss, treatment of chronic diseases, physical therapy, cessation of smoking, and estrogen therapy are all considerations in the conservative treatment of pelvic organ prolapse. These interventions have been discussed in the previous section of this chapter and should be used regardless of whether expectant management or surgical intervention is the plan. During expectant management, periodic examinations should be done to determine the status of pelvic organ support and the degree of progression. Symptoms and the ability to participate in daily activities may be reviewed to reinforce the patient’s motivation to continue preventative measures.

Pessaries are ingenious devices that have been used for a long time. They were originally the product of an age when surgery was not an option for the prolapse patient. They are available in a variety of shapes and sizes, depending on the needs of the patient. In general, the greater the degree of prolapse and the more strenuous the daily activities of the patient, the less likely it is for a pessary to be a permanent solution. As the prolapse expands, occupies the urogenital hiatus, and dilates the introitus, the pressure of the prolapse tends to expel the pessary.
A pessary may be valuable for a patient to wear to feel more comfortable during a specific activity, such as exercise. If a patient of limited activity and acute-onset advanced prolapse can be successfully fitted with a pessary, it may prevent progression and result in long-term improvement in intestinal and urinary function. Teaching patients to hold a pessary in place manually (splitting) during the process of defecation is helpful. In a patient with significant prolapse, the insertion of a pessary elevates the bladder floor and can allow for more functional and complete voiding. The utility of these devices is directly proportional to the efforts of the physician and the patient. If both parties are interested, pessaries can have a valuable place in the management of prolapse. Pessaries are more thoroughly discussed in Section F of this chapter.

### Surgical Principles and Management

The management of advanced and symptomatic prolapse is primarily surgical. In 1997, 226,000 women underwent pelvic organ prolapse surgery in the United States. This condition is one of the most common indications for major surgery. Eleven percent of all women will undergo another operation for recurrence of prolapse or a complication related to surgery. Prolapse is a high-incidence problem that commands a substantial expenditure of health care dollars. Only those patients who request relief should be considered surgical candidates. Once the decision is made to operate, quality-of-life goals need to be established. If the patient can tolerate a lengthy operation and especially if she desires costal function, a reconstructive operation should be considered. The removal of normal anatomy (form) maximizes the potential that symptoms and limitations (function) will be corrected or significantly improved. Restoration of normal anatomy automatically addresses the questions of vaginal axis, caliber, and depth. If the patient does not desire costal function, an occlusive procedure, such as colpocleisis, might be the best choice. Colpocleisis with vaginectomy has a very low failure rate, but the end does not justify the means in all patients.

Choosing the correct operation for prolapse is critical for success. The general plan for the procedures that will best correct the problems of the individual patient may be developed from details gathered during the preoperative history and pelvic examination and even the examination under anesthesia. Specific details become evident only during the intraoperative dissection. The goals of the operation are the restoration of normal form and function. Isolated areas of prolapse are uncommon. Childbirth places damaging pressure on all segments of suspension and support during the various phases of labor and delivery. Restricting an operative procedure to the repair of a single dominant or symptomatic site of prolapse simply transfers the physical stress to a different vaginal segment. An incomplete reconstruction may result in a secondary prolapse descending as a new dominant prolapse. Sometimes prolapse can return quite unpredictably. Perhaps the best known example of this phenomenon was the observation by Burch that many patients developed an enterocele after his anterior rectopexy procedure. An active search for potential and undeveloped defects should be done at the time of prolapse surgery. Site-specific repair of all segments and levels is the best insurance against failure.

The route of operation is a matter of debate. Vaginal surgery is the historical hallmark of the gynecologic surgeon. Although surgical training in vaginal techniques has eroded in recent years, a resurgence of interest in these operations is occurring. The vaginal approach requires either limited or no access to the peritoneal cavity and is surgically less stressful on the patient.

During the last three decades, a significant change has occurred in the way prolapse surgery is conceptualized and performed. Anatomically the prolapse, the reconstructive procedures have been replaced by defect-specific anatomic restorations. Several aspects of the defect-specific method favor the vaginal approach. Defect-specific defects can be best identified when the full extent of the vaginal segment to be repaired is dissected and exposed. Such dissections are only possible vaginally. The detached fascial edge of a paravaginal defect may retract across the midline to the contralateral side of the body. This retraction leaves the fascial edge in a position that is impossible to reach from the abdominal or endoscopic approach. No one questions that a paravaginal defect can be seen from the abdominal or endoscopic operative approach. A question does remain about whether the retracted fascial edge can be accessed and reattached to the white line using the abdominal or laparoscopic approach. Likewise, a proximal rectovaginal septal defect that has retracted distally to the perineum would be very difficult to find and resuspend from above. All the major support anatomic landmarks and tissues are accessible vaginally. These points include the arcus tendoecus fascia pelvis, arcus tendoecus fasciae rectovaginalis, ischial spines, ureterosacral ligaments, sacrospinous ligaments, and virtually all components of the deep endopelvic connective tissue. During childbirth, the named components of the endopelvic fascia are displaced away from the interspinous diameter. Reconstructive efforts must be centered in this diameter for a permanently successful outcome. Access to torn fascial edges is best attained by complete dissections of the vesicovaginal and rectovaginal spaces. Midvaginal lateral defects can easily be repaired by this route. Additionally, apical suspension can also be performed to complete the restoration of central pelvic organ suspension. For most primary reconstructions, the vaginal operative route is superior to any other approach. The vaginal route is used more frequently for patients with failures from previous operations. This approach is especially useful when a previous operation did not use the defect-specific approach and did not include the use of permanent sutures for critical support sites.

The discussion and opinions in the previous paragraph do not preclude the use of abdominal and laparoscopic techniques for certain problems in pelvic reconstructive surgery. Procedures to correct stress urinary incontinence are discussed extensively in Chapter 37. Anterior urethropexy approached through the prevesical space with a suprapubic incision or laparoscopic technique has some advantages when compared with a suburethral sling urethropexy. No iatrogenic paravaginal defect is necessary during anterior urethropexy, for example. Such defects are made with pubovaginal sling procedures of all types. Some intentionally created defects are larger than others. To spend time and effort to reconstruct the pubocervical fascia anatomically from white line to white line and then to destroy part of the paravaginal support intentionally to allow passage of the sling material into the prevesical space does not make good sense. The primary prevesical space approach avoids this destructive necessity. Kelly-Kennedy plications and paravaginal repairs have been shown to be ineffective as incontinence procedures. New minimally invasive sling operations represent an effective totally vaginal operation to cure stress urinary incontinence. Vaginal incontinence operations that avoid iatrogenic paravaginal damage and an abdominal or laparoscopic incision are ideal.
Pelvic Organ Prolapse: Basic Principles

The abdominal approach is useful in some cases of prolapse in which one or more previous pelvic support operations have failed. Abdominal sacral colpopexy is an option in this situation. Colpopexy may be useful in a circumstance in which considerable scar is present from previous surgery. For example, consider a patient with a previous aggressive distal plication and a proximal support failure. Significant fibrosis would be necessary to access the proximal fascial structures necessary to repair the prolapse. A rescue abdominal sacral colpopexy may more easily and effectively correct the prolapse. Occasional patients whose support has failed following a site-specific operation with permanent suture may also benefit from this operation. Abdominal/sacral colpopexy is not a site-specific operation; however, it provides substantial proximal support and protects vaginal length.

During a prolapse surgery, the surgeon may determine that adequate support or repair is not attainable through the primary approach. No harm is done in using a combined approach. If support is not satisfactory after a vaginal procedure, an abdominal sacral colpopexy can be done at that time. Conversely, a vaginal examination should be performed after an abdominal sacral colpopexy to determine if the vaginal axis, caliber, and depth have been restored to an acceptable state. The patient with proper informed consent would likely prefer a combined procedure to subsequent surgery.

Suture selection for pelvic reconstitution has changed with the realization that prolapse surgery is really a series of herniorrhaphies. No surgeon would consider performing a repair of an inguinal or ventral hernia with absorbable suture. In the days of distal plications, the use of absorbable suture was common. Today, fascial defects are repaired with permanent suture. In an attempt to compromise, some surgeons use delayed absorbable sutures. They reason that the suture material is not needed after healing has been accomplished. However, evidence exists in the hernia literature to support the use of anything other than permanent suture for these repairs. Monofilament and polyfilament sutures are acceptable. Monofilament sutures occasionally erode and cause an unpleasant whisker effect in the vagina. If erosion occurs, the suture can be removed. My choice of suture is interwoven braided polyester for fascial repairs. This suture is affordable and easily tied, has no sharp end, and infrequently causes a reaction or erosion.

All prolapse patients should be carefully evaluated for concomitant vaginal, uterine, adnexal, pelvic, or abdominal disease. Coexisting pathology may change the operative approach selected for correction of prolapse. Orthopedic problems and obesity must be factored into the decision-making process because adequate surgical access is important. Young patients with uterovaginal prolapse may request preservation of their fertility. Unless the problem is severe, these patients should be advised to complete their childbearing so that a definitive operation can be performed. Ring-type pes-saries may provide temporary relief. They permit intercourse and may be worn at the discretion of the patient during exercise or strenuous activity and on other occasions. A unilateral sacrospinous ligament fixation with the uterus in place may be beneficial and does not prohibit subsequent vaginal childbirth. Various abdominal or endoscopic uterine suspensions may also be considered. In general, retention of the uterus when a significant degree of prolapse is present compromises the long-term operative result. The cervix limits access to the structures of the paracolpium that are necessary to achieve proper proximal suspension of the vaginal vault. At the same time, removal of the cervix creates an inherent defect in the proximal anterior vaginal wall. The posthysterectomy vault prolapse is in many instances a result of this cervical defect. Care must be taken to compensate for this weakness at the time of hysterectomy. This area is the location of the pericervical ring whose proper attachments are so important to normal vaginal suspension. No totally anatomic method to close this space exists. To achieve a satisfactory result it is easier at hysterectomy than at subsequent posthysterectomy repair. Plication of the cardinal ligaments and McCall’s culdoplasty are necessary components of hysterectomy cuff repair.

Various grafts, bolsters, and synthetic meshes can be valuable tools in prolapse surgery. For example, in a posthysterectomy prolapse, a small piece of foreign material used to bolster the weak area left by the absence of the cervix may decrease the amount of anatomic distortion needed to support the apical anterior vaginal wall. These materials are useful and necessary in abdominal sacral colpopexy. The overzealous use of grafts and meshes is unnecessary and may predispose to the annoying problems of exposure and erosion. Procedures that require the use of foreign materials to compensate for absent fasciae should be viewed with suspicion. Even in an advanced prolapse, the fascia is present in most cases. Fasciae, unlike muscles, do not atrophy. They may be retracted and scarred but are available for dissection and reattachment if the surgeon is trained in the proper techniques. Bolstering of site-specific repairs is acceptable. At no time should bolsters, grafts, and meshes be used as a substitute for meticulous surgical technique. Foreign materials should be used to strengthen anatomically restorative repairs.

Complications occurred in 15.5% of prolapse surgeries performed in the United States in 1997 (Table 36A.11). The majority of these complications can be addressed in the operating room. Gynecologic surgeons have been well trained to irrigate inside the abdomen. The same principles are applicable when operating vaginally. In the operating room after the surgical prep and draping are completed, a vaginal lavage rinses the vagina of nonadherent viscus while negative suction at frequent intervals also helps to prevent infection. Irrigation as described and prophylactic antibiotics greatly help reduce the incidence of postoperative infection. A vaginal pack may help initial adherence of the vaginal epithelium to the endopelvic

Table 36A.11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Morbidity</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Percent of all surgeries*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infections</td>
<td>14,824</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bleeding complications</td>
<td>13,945</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgical injury</td>
<td>9,546</td>
<td>4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary complications</td>
<td>3,024</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular complications</td>
<td>2,407</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wound complications</td>
<td>1,368</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebrovascular complications</td>
<td>249</td>
<td>&lt;0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other complications</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>&lt;0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total morbidity</td>
<td>45,528</td>
<td>15.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pelvic organ prolapse affects a patient’s quality of life. Any principles of hernia repair should be followed in prolapse. Pelvic reconstructive surgeries should be designed to restore anatomy, physical diagnosis, reconstructive surgical techniques, and good medical care will yield the best results.

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- Pelvic organ prolapse affects a patient’s quality of life. Any decision regarding treatment of prolapse should ultimately be made with significant input from the patient.
- A careful physical examination documenting the defects in pelvic supportive structures is useful in selecting the appropriate treatment to correct the anatomic defect responsible for the patient’s symptoms and physical exam findings.
- Pelvic reconstructive surgeries should be designed to restore maximally the normal biomechanical support and suspension of the central pelvic organs. This concept is called anatomic-specific repair of pelvic support defects. Restoration of normal anatomy maximizes the potential for normal urination, intestinal, and sexual functions.
- Principles of hernia repair should be followed in prolapse surgery. Use of permanent suture is standard. Judicious use of meshes, bolsters, and grafts may be indicated; however, these products should be used to enhance rather than replace sound surgical technique.
- Complex pelvic surgery and dissection into the deep pelvic spaces require that ureteral patency be documented before leaving the operating room.

**Bibliography**

Bossey V. The role of the pelvic floor surgeon in the management of postoperative complications. BMJ 1994;308:1427.
Burke MM. Fine L. Surgery for corrections of defects in pelvic support and pelvic fistulas. P298. Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and pelvic Fistulas. The pelvis is a busy place anatomically. The deep dissections necessary for the correction of prolapse predispose the patient to injury to adjacent structures. Development of proper surgical planes helps to minimize the potential for such injuries. Vascular injuries are usually immediately apparent and can be corrected during the operation. Intestinal and urinary injuries are often more subtle. The surgeon should not conclude the operative procedure without some reassurance of the integrity of these structures. Cystoscopy is a valuable skill that should be used by the pelvic support surgeon. A high rectal examination may suffice for intestinal reassurance unless damage is suspected higher than the examination extends.
Preoperative and postoperative care is discussed elsewhere in this text. Early ambulation and thrombosis prophylaxis are particularly important in the usual prolapse patient. The patient should be at sexual pelvic rest for approximately 6 weeks. The patient may be quite anxious about sexual activity. Sexual rehabilitation may require time, reassurance, and the helpful advice of the physician. Straining to void and defecate should be minimized. The act of perineal splinting postoperatively helps to protect the perineum from downward displacement during defecation. Lifting should be restricted to those things that can be accomplished with available strength in the shoulders, back, and hips.
The care of patients with pelvic organ prolapse can be equally challenging and rewarding. Attention to the details of surgery, bowel, and urinary control may reduce pain and other symptoms.

872 Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

Bump RC. Vaginal delivery and the pelvic floor. Westport, CT: Bergin & Garvey; 1996.

873. Westport, CT: Bergin & Garvey; 1996.

872. Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

Bump RC. Vaginal delivery and the pelvic floor. Westport, CT: Bergin & Garvey; 1996.
Pelvic Organ Prolapse: Basic Principles


Turn D, DeLancy JO, Quint EE. Visibility of pelvic organ support system structures in magnetic resonance images without an endovaginal coil. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2003;188:1158.


CHAPTER 36B ▪ SITE-SPECIFIC REPAIR
OF CYSTOURETHROCELE

CARL W. ZIMMERMAN

DEFINITIONS

Arcus tendineus fascia pelvis or white line—A thickening of the parietal fascia of the pelvic sidewall along a line between the ischial spine and pubic tubercle. Along this line, the pubocervical septum attaches to the pelvic sidewall.

Cystocele—A defect within the central pubocervical septum that allows the floor of the bladder to descend. Cystoceles are normally caused by transverse apical defects in the pubocervical septum.

Paravaginal defect—A lateral defect at or near the attachment of the pubocervical septum to the arcus tendineus fascia pelvis. Paravaginal defects create a direct connection between the vesicovaginal space and the paravesical space on the affected side of the patient.

Pericervical ring—The collar of strong connective tissue surrounding the cervix. This is the central support of the vaginal apex to which the cardinal and uterosacral ligaments as well as the anterior pubocervical ligaments and fascia and posterior rectovaginal septum are attached.

Pubocervical septum—A component of the endopelvic fascia composed of fibroelastic connective tissue. This septum separates the vaginal epithelium and the bladder. Defects in the pubocervical septum are associated with anterior vaginal compartment failure.

The anterior compartment of the vagina extends from the pubic symphysis anteriorly to the posterior aspect of the cervix. The lateral boundaries are the white lines or arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis. The anterior vaginal compartment separates the bladder from the lumen of the vagina. Support of the bladder is the function of the pubocervical septum that is part of the deep endopelvic connective tissue. In the anatomically normal woman, the epithelium of the anterior vaginal wall firmly adheres to the pubocervical septum, creating rugae. Rugae are responsible for the finely ridged texture of the vaginal wall. The linear attachment of the pubocervical septum to the white line forms the anterior lateral sulci of the vagina. In the standing woman, the proximal two thirds of the anterior vaginal segment is nearly horizontal. In the lithotomy position, the anterior vaginal wall is oblique, with the apical portion inferior. The cervix and its surrounding ring and ligaments compose the proximal portion of the anterior vaginal segment. As a result, the pubocervical septum is shorter than the rectovaginal septum by the diameter of the cervix. In the absence of the cervix, an inherent defect is present that cannot be repaired in a completely reconstructive fashion. Compensating for the absence of the cervix at the time of hysterectomy is possible by using careful techniques of cuff repair. The failure to correct anatomically for the absent cervix in the posthysterectomy prolapse patient leads to many problems. The correction of the connective tissue defect left by the absence of the cervix is one of the most challenging problems in pelvic reconstructive surgery. Labor and delivery apply intense pressure to all components of vaginal support and suspension. During descent, flexion, internal rotation, and extension, specific stresses are focused on the pubocervical septum before external rotation and expulsion of the fetus. The damage that results from the passage of a baby through the obstetric axis of the pelvis is the nidus for symptomatic prolapse of the anterior vaginal segment. The named anatomic components of anterior prolapse are cystocele, urethrocele, paravaginal defects, and uterine procidentia. Prolapse may occur without childbirth; however, this clinical circumstance is the exception rather than the rule. Other etiologic factors are normally required for the development of pelvic organ prolapse. These factors include time, age, repeated pelvic stresses, and lack of estrogen.

For most of the 20th century, the assumption was made that during childbirth, gradual attenuation of the endopelvic fascial support structures occurred. Howard Kelly of Baltimore championed this concept. His influence was considerable, and, as a result, surgical repair of a cystocele with anatomically distorting midline anterior plications became the standard of care. The Kelly–Kennedy plication was used to correct the perceived attenuated and stretched support of the bladder and anterior vaginal wall. This method of prolapse correction has been shown to have an unacceptable failure rate and has not proven to be a satisfactory treatment for urinary incontinence.

This procedure is seldom used today by pelvic reconstructive surgeons.

In 1909, George White of Georgia noted that the repair of lateral anterior vaginal wall support was sufficient to correct cystocele. His observation remained largely unknown to mainstream gynecologic surgeons until the 1960s. Beginning with observations by Burch and others, the significance and importance of the lateral support of the anterior vagina began to emerge. Burch initially performed his anterior urethropexy using the white line as the ventral attachment point. He quickly abandoned the white line in favor of the more substantial Cooper's ligament. Subsequently, the importance of paravaginal defects in anterior vaginal relaxation has gradually become more and more apparent. Paravaginal defects are created when the pubocervical septum is separated laterally from the arcus tendineus fascia pelvis. A paravaginal defect is a connection between the vesovaginal space and the paravesical space. A trampoline analogy is useful in illustrating the difference between central and paravaginal defects. A central defect would result from a tear in the fabric of the trampoline. A lateral or paravaginal defect is analogous to unhooking the fabric from the side frame of the trampoline. Either defect results in a failure of the support of the trampoline. The correction of
lateral defects is now considered to be a necessary component of anterior vaginal reconstruction. In most patients, paravaginal and apical transverse defects are responsible for anterior vaginal prolapse.

A Kelly–Kennedy plication procedure bunches connective tissue in the midline. This operation actually places more stress on paravaginal defects by pulling the detached edge of the pubocervical septum farther away from the pelvic sidewall. Pelvic surgeons have learned how to identify fascial defects. To visually distinguish between the visceral fascia of the bladder wall and the pubocervical septum is possible. The bladder wall is red, distensible, and highly elastic. The pubocervical septum that is part of the deep endopelvic connective tissue is whiter in color, stands out as a separate layer, and, when closely examined, has a coarse fibrous texture. During dissection, if the surgeon irrigates with saline, the color distinction between the visceral fascia of the bladder wall and the pubocervical septum becomes even more apparent.

In the 1970s, A. Cullen Richardson and colleagues of Georgia formally described specific breaks in the deep endopelvic connective tissue (Fig. 36B.1). His observations have been confirmed by others, and these defects are described by their location and direction. For location, the terms distal, proximal, central, and lateral are used. For direction, the terms transverse and longitudinal are used. Anatomically specific terms improved the description of fascial defects. In older literature, for example, lateral defects were termed displacement cystoceles, and central defects were termed distention cystoceles.

The next major conceptual step occurred after the biomechanical observations of DeLancey (see Figs. 36A.7 and 36A.8). He recognized that each portion of the vagina relies on a different biomechanical mechanism to preserve normal anatomy. The proximal one third of the vagina is suspended by the structures of the paracolpium, primarily the uterosacral ligaments (see Fig. 36A.8). The middle one third of the vagina is supported by lateral attachments to the pelvic sidewall at the arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis. The distal one third of the anterior vagina fuses with the relatively immovable urogenital diaphragm. These concepts become very important in site-specific repairs.

Any operation that does not account for the normal attachments at all three DeLancey levels is likely to fail. Specifically, the proximal extent of the operation should extend to the inter-spinous diameter and include proximal suspension of the pubocervical septum. The lateral extent of the operation should ensure bilateral attachments of the pubocervical septum to the parietal fasciae of the pelvic sidewalls at the white lines. Each lateral attachment should include the entire length of the white line from the ischial spine to the pubic tubercle. Distally, the integrity of the connection between the pubocervical septum and the urogenital diaphragm should be assured. The only way to achieve these goals is a full-length and full-width dissection, followed by a meticulous correction of fascial defects. After the surgeon becomes practiced at detecting these separations, the reattachment becomes a relatively straightforward exercise in reconstruction.

**EVALUATION OF THE PATIENT WITH A CYSTOCELE**

Cystoceles are common in parous women, and most are asymptomatic. If they are large enough or accompanied by incontinence, the patient will seek surgical relief. Prevention and physical therapy were discussed in the previous section of this chapter. Incontinence is a major presenting symptom in women affected by pelvic support defects. Cystocele and paravaginal repair may improve the symptoms; however, these surgeries do not represent a cure for incontinence. The correction of anterior vaginal defects does play a major role in the treatment of incontinence. Cystocele and paravaginal defects should be corrected at the time of incontinence procedures to improve long-term
The normal anatomy of the pubocervical septum (see Table 36A.6) and perirectal ring (see Table 36A.8) has been described. Operative goals of anterior vaginal reconstruction are summarized in Table 36B.1. A full-length and full-width dissection of the anterior vaginal wall is necessary. If each operative goal is not satisfied, the long-term success of the surgery is jeopardized.

The patient’s legs are carefully positioned in adjustable stirrups before the surgery to avoid peripheral neuropathy, joint stress, and femoral fracture. No rotational stress should be present at the hip or knee. Ideally, the angles of the hip and knee should be 90 degrees. If extended, a line connecting the foot and knee should intersect with the contralateral shoulder. Compromises in position may be needed in patients with obesity, limitations of motion, inadequate joint mobility, or other orthopedic problems. The vaginal operative approach may not be ideal in patients whose physical limitations prevent adequate operative exposure.

The procedure begins with a lavage of the vaginal vault to remove nonadherent bacteria. Irrigation at intervals throughout the procedure serves the same purpose as irrigation during abdominoplasty. An anterior midline vaginal incision begins the surgery. If a concomitant hysterectomy is performed, the anterior midline of the vaginal cuff may be used as the starting point for the anterior vaginal wall incision. This maneuver ensures adequate proximal surgical access. In the posthysterectomy patient, the initial incision is made immediately anterior to the hysterectomy scar (Fig. 36B.2). The hysterectomy scar is usually visible as a transverse fibrous band with lateral dimples that signify the location of the remnants of the uterosacral ligaments. The midline incision is extended distally to the plane where the pubocervical septum fuses with the urogenital diaphragm. The goal of the anterior vaginal incision is to allow separation of the epithelium from the underlying deep endopelvic connective tissue (Fig. 36B.3). The plane of dissection is continued laterally in each direction to the pelvic sidewall. Separating the deep endopelvic connective tissue from the undersurface of the vaginal epithelium facilitates the dissection. This separation should begin immediately lateral to the line of incision. Once the correct dissection plane is established, the space is avascular and opens to blunt dissection (Fig. 36B.4). According to Uhlenthal, this plane of dissection is the part of the vesicovaginal space that is below the pubocervical septum. Gynecologic surgeons seldom enter the portion of the vesicovaginal space between the pubocervical septum and the visceral fascia of the bladder. Complete development of the vesicovaginal space allows access to all structures necessary for anterior vaginal reconstruction, except for the prevaginal space that is needed for urethropexy.

**TABLE 36B.1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OPERATIVE GOALS OF ANTERIOR VAGINAL RECONSTRUCTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Central:</strong> Reconstruct the pubocervical septum or repair of distention cystocoele.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proximal:</strong> Reattach the proximal pubocervical septum to the suspensory support of the paracolpium. Rebuild the perirectal ring and compensate for the defect left by the absence of the cervix (DeLancey Level I).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lateral:</strong> Reattach the pubocervical septum to the areolar tendinous fascia (white line) or paravaginal repair (DeLancey Level II).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distal:</strong> Urethropexy (DeLancey Level III).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SURGICAL TECHNIQUE**

The site-specific correction of anterior vaginal defects depends on access to all normal support structures. Complete restoration of the pubocervical septum and of the attachments of the perirectal ring is the surgical goal. The normal anatomy of the pubocervical ring is the surgical goal. The normal anatomy of the perirectal ring is the surgical goal. The normal anatomy of the perirectal ring is the surgical goal.
A dominant anterior posthysterectomy prolapse is grasped with two Allis clamps. Notice the hysterectomy scar posterior to the clamps. The initial anterior incision will be made in the crease between the clamps.

The vesicovaginal space is developed by separating the endopelvic connective tissue from the vaginal epithelium.

Demonstration of the avascular vesicovaginal space.

The arcus tendineus fascia pelvis or white line extends from the ischial spine to the pubic tubercle. In the lithotomy position, the distal end of this structure is approximately 60 degrees above the horizontal plane. The white line may be visible to the surgeon. This structure is the fascial white line, not the arcus tendineus levator ani or muscular white line. The easiest place to palpate the white line is adjacent to its terminus at the ischial spine. Once a suture is placed around the white line and is under slight tension, the entire length of the structure is often palpable. Before initiating a paravaginal repair, the ischial spines must be palpable and accessible at the proximal extent of the dissection.

After the completion of dissection, an inspection may be started for fascial defects (Fig. 36B.5). The visceral fascia of the bladder is red, muscular, and distensible. It has very little tensile strength. The pubocervical septum is whitish, fibrous, strong, and in a different plane than the underlying visceral fascia. Irrigation with saline causes the subtle color difference between the visceral fascia of the bladder and the pubocervical fascia to become more obvious. Careful inspection reveals the presence of fascial edges. These edges are not smooth but are ragged and often beveled or splayed. If the full thickness of the most obvious portion of the fascial edge is grasped with an Allis clamp, the entire length of the defect may become visible (Fig. 36B.6). The fascial edge may retract away from the pelvic sidewall and create a wide paravaginal defect. In an advanced or chronic prolapse, the fascial edge may retract to the contralateral side of the midline.

The ability to recognize fascial defects is acquired during careful dissection and observation. The exact pattern of fascial damage cannot be determined until dissection is completed in the operating room. The most common pattern of anterior fascial damage is a full-length patient right paravaginal defect and a transverse proximal separation of the pubocervical septum from the pericervical ring (see Fig. 36A.15). This pattern of fascial damage is consistent with the physical stress associated with the most common fetal presentation, left occipitoposterior...
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

FIGURE 36B.5. Initial identification of the ragged edge of the pubocervical septum. The central Allis clamp is grasping the fascial edge. The right paravaginal defect can be seen in the upper left portion of the incision.

FIGURE 36B.6. After all secondary adhesions are released, the fascial edge is much more apparent when grasped by Allis clamps. A full-length right paravaginal defect is seen with the pubocervical edge retracted to the midline of the body.

position, at the time of delivery. The effects of the dynamics of a typical labor on pelvic support anatomy are described in Section A of this chapter. A left paravaginal defect or bilateral paravaginal defects may be encountered. The key to successful repair is the ability to visually distinguish between the visceral fascia of the bladder wall and the pubocervical septum.

After all the secondary adhesions are freed, the edge of the fully mobilized pubocervical septum should precisely extend to the desired reattachment point: the fascial white line. Paravaginal sutures should connect the arcus tendineus fascia pelvis and lateral edge of the pubocervical septum. The placement of all sutures on a given side should precede tying. Commonly, between three and eight sutures are required for each paravaginal defect. Placement of the paravaginal sutures should begin proximally in the area adjacent to the ischial spine and proceed distally until the defect is completely closed (Figs. 36B.7, 36B.8, and 36B.9). If one accepts the premise that these defects are hernias, absorbable sutures have no place in their correction. Zero-gauge braided polyester is a useful suture; it is a soft and pliable product that is easily tied and not prone to erosion. Anatomic repairs restore the normal axis, caliber, and depth of the vagina and do not distort the anatomy of the vagina (Fig. 36B.10). The absence of anatomic distortion reduces the tension on the sutures and decreases the likelihood of suture erosion.

First, repair the largest lateral defect, and then check the contralateral side to see if the contralateral paravaginal attachment is intact. Checking the proximal portion of the contralateral paravaginal attachment is especially important because closure of the first lateral defect may increase the separation of the pubocervical fascia from the opposite pelvic sidewall, making the defect more apparent. After lateral reattachment has

FIGURE 36B.7. A 0-gauge interwoven braided polyester suture is placed through the right white line adjacent to the ischial spine (left-handed surgeon).
FIGURE 36B.8. The 0-gauge interwoven braided polyester suture from Fig. 36B.7 is passed through the detached edge of the pubocervical fascia to complete the most proximal paravaginal suture. The visceral fascia of the bladder wall is avoided to minimize the potential for urinary injury (left-handed surgeon).

FIGURE 36B.9. Four paravaginal sutures have been placed to completely close the right paravaginal defect. These sutures have been placed between the proximal edge of the pubocervical septum and the remnants of the hysterectomy scar to close the proximal transverse cystocele.

FIGURE 36B.10. After the sutures in Fig. 36B.9 are tied, the pubocervical septum is restored to its normal anatomic location.

FIGURE 36B.11. A 0-gauge interwoven braided polyester suture is placed in the left white line. This suture will be one of the anchor sutures for the interlocked polyester fiber graft shown in Fig. 36B.12.
been completed, central defects should be repaired. The most common central defect is a proximal transverse separation of the pubocervical fascia from the cervix or hysterectomy scar. Occasionally, a central defect may be encountered, which is in the configuration of an inverted "V" (see Fig. 36A.16). This type of central fascial defect is not commonly associated with paravaginal defects.

When all fascial defects are repaired, the pubocervical septum assumes its normal configuration with the distal end 60 degrees above the horizontal plane. The restoration of normal anatomy should always be in the mind of the site-specific surgeon. When fascial defects are properly identified, dissected, and repaired, the pubocervical fascia will be in the correct anatomic position as a hammock supporting the bladder with firm attachment to the pelvic sidewalls.

Proximal attachment of the pubocervical septum is the most difficult problem in anterior vaginal reconstruction. After paravaginal and central defects have been repaired, the transverse proximal edge of the pubocervical septum remains unattached. Normally, the proximal edge of the pubocervical septum connects with the pericervical ring, pubocervical ligaments, and the anterior portion of the cardinal ligaments. After hysterectomy, the normal proximal connections of the pubocervical septum are interrupted by removal of the cervix. No completely anatomic method exists to compensate for the absence of the cervix and to close the defect created by its absence.

If a hysterectomy is a part of the prolapse procedure, corrective measures can be taken to compensate for the absence of the cervix during the surgery. Plication of the cardinal ligaments across the midline and a McCall’s culdoplasty with a permanent suture will close the cervical defect. Following this plication, the proximal edge of the pubocervical septum is attached in a site-specific fashion to the anterior aspect of the cardinal ligaments. Careful attention to vaginal cuff support and closure is the most important part of a hysterectomy from the perspective of prolapse prevention.

In the posthysterectomy patient, the closure of the proximal anterior defect and the subsequent attachment of the proximal pubocervical septum are more difficult. The cardinal ligaments and uterosacral ligaments are key anatomic landmarks that are difficult to identify or mobilize during a posthysterectomy anterior vaginal dissection. Attachment of the pubocervical septum to the hysterectomy scar with permanent suture may provide sufficient support. The hysterectomy scar can mimic the function of the pericervical ring, especially if a concomitant vaginal suspension or colpopexy is performed during the same surgery. Placement of a bolster may be necessary when identifiable structures provide insufficient support. The surgeon may select from a variety of bolsters or mesh products for this part of the reconstruction. I generally use an acceptable biomaterial or a permanent interlocked polyester fiber mesh for this portion of the operation. No definitive evidence exists to show superiority of any specific bolster or graft. The surgeon should choose wisely and never substitute a foreign material for biomechanically sound surgical technique. I do not recommend the use of an extruded polytetrafluoroethylene graft in this area.
Site-Specific Repair of Cystourethrocele 881

The repair of anterior vaginal wall defects has undergone a largely conceptual revision. Anatomically distorting midline plications have been replaced by anatomically restoring operations that resemble herniorrhaphies. Anatomic landmarks define the extent of the components of the surgery. Permanent suture is used for support attachments. Anatomic restoration allows maximum potential for normal urinary, intestinal, and sexual function in the patient. To paraphrase the biological adage: function follows form.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Site-specific techniques should be used to restore the anatomy of a prolapsed anterior vaginal segment.
- The pubocervical septum must be dissected completely so that specific fascial defects can be identified and repaired.
- Cystoceles are typically due to apical transverse defects in the pubocervical septum. Central defects in the pubocervical septum are not common or typical.
- The pubocervical septum is shorter than the rectovaginal septum by a length equal to the diameter of the cervix. Complete restoration of the anterior vaginal segment must take into consideration the defect left by the absence of the cervix.
- A cystocele may be due to detachment of the trampoline-like pubovesicle septum from the proximal attachment to the pericervical ring, from the lateral attachments to the white line, or from its distal attachment to the pubic ramus. It can also result from a central tear in the septal fascia itself. Each and every defect must be evaluated and repaired to provide a long-term successful result.

Bibliography

White GR. Cystocele: a radical cure by suturing lateral sulci of vagina to white line of pelvic fascia. JAMA 1909; 35:707.
CHAPTER 36C ■ PARAVAGINAL DEFECT REPAIR
BOBBY SHULL AND PAUL M. YANDELL

DEFINITIONS

Arcus tendineus fascia pelvis—The white line of the pelvic sidewall. This thickening of the pelvic sidewall fascia extends from the ischial spine posteriorly to the pubic tubercle anteriorly. It is the site of lateral attachment of the pubocervical fascia.

Paravaginal defect—When the pubocervical fascia becomes detached from, or torn just medial to, its lateral attachment to the arcus tendineus fascia pelvis (white line).

Pubocervical fascia—A trapezoid-shaped fascia that provides support for the anterior vagina under the bladder. It is attached superiorly to the pericervical ring, distally to the pubic ramus, and laterally to the arcus tendineus fascia pelvis (white line).

HISTORY

In 1909, George R. White quoted Ahlfelt, who said, “the only problem in plastic gynecology left unsolved by the gynecologist of the past century [the 19th century] is that of permanent cure of cystocele.” Three years later, in 1912, White reviewed the current theories regarding the etiology of cystocele: overstretched and thinning of the vaginal wall and other supports of the bladder, which allow the bladder to descend in the form of a hernia; stretching of the firm attachment of the bladder to the uterus; and stretching of the ligamentous suspension of the bladder. He rejected each of these theories and also described his autopsy findings regarding the dissection of the anterior vaginal segment. One year before Howard Kelly's report on midline plication of the anterior segment, he discussed vaginal paravaginal repair for the management of certain types of cystocele; however, his theory and recommendation for surgical management did not gain widespread acceptance.

In 1923, Victor Bonney described the “periurethral wedge” that he found attached “to the subpubic angle, the rami of the pubes, and the edges of the levatores ani” and the association between this wedge and the mechanism of continence. Bonney suggested a retroperitoneal repair of the loosened periurethral wedge in the treatment of incontinence. In 1961, Burch reported his experience with colposuspension. He attached the paravaginal fascia to the white line of the pelvis in his first seven patients. Subsequently, he chose Cooper's ligament as the point of fixation. In the next decade, Richardson and colleagues published a “new” and controversial look at pelvic relaxation and its relationship to fascial defects.

ANATOMIC CONCEPTS AND PHYSICAL FINDINGS

Stimulated by the work of Richardson and Baden, we have found it valuable to consider that isolated defects in the anterior compartment not only do occur but must be properly identified and specifically repaired to offer the best opportunity for cure of anatomic and functional symptoms of the anterior vaginal segment. The pubocervical fascia is a trapezoid, part of which was described by Bonney more than 70 years ago. The fascia or fibromuscular tissue of the anterior vagina fuses with the perineal membrane distally, is attached to the arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis from a point just posterior to the pubic ramus to a point just anterior to the ischial spine bilaterally, and is attached to the cervix or to the vaginal cuff and base of the broad ligament and cardinal-uterosacral ligaments (Fig. 36C.1).

There are four clinically identifiable areas in which defects in this support are likely to occur:

■ Laterally, where the pubocervical fascia attaches to arcus tendineus fascia pelvis (paravaginal defect)

■ Transversely, in front of the cervix where the pubocervical fascia blends into the periurethral ring of fibromuscular tissue, or in the case of a woman who has had a hysterectomy, at the vaginal cuff (transverse defect)

■ Centrally, in the area immediately anterior to the vaginal mucosa in between the lateral margins of the pubocervical fascia (midline or central defect)

■ Distally, where the urethra perforates the urogenital diaphragm

These isolated defects may occur in combination, requiring the surgeon to identify and repair each defect individually. The clinical evaluation provides clues about the site of the fascial defect. The examination should be performed with the woman in the lithotomy position and the physician using only the posterior blade of the speculum. The patient is asked to strain or bear down maximally while the physician observes the landmarks of the anterior vagina. It is difficult to recognize an abnormal examination without having an understanding of normal. In a woman with normal support and no functional symptoms, there is minimal descent of the urethra and urethrovesical junction on straining. There are lateral sulci in the anterior vagina at the site of attachment of the pubocervical fascia to the arcus tendineus fascia pelvis that extend from the back of the pubic bone to a point just anterior to the ischial spine (Fig. 36C.2). The anterior vaginal wall is normally about a centimeter shorter than the posterior vaginal wall. There are usually rugae in the epithelium overlying the urethra and bladder.

In a woman with paravaginal loss of support, one or both lateral sulci will be lost. Observations by DeLancey have shown...
that defects occur with equal frequency on the left and right sides and are associated with hypermobility of the urethra and urethrovesical junction. When the support defect is predominantly paravesical, the support for the bladder is also poor. Loss of paravaginal support can also be detected during use of the bivalve speculum when the clinician finds that the sides of the vaginal walls collapse through the open sides of the bivalve speculum, obscuring view of the cervix or vaginal apex.

Baden and Walker have recommended the use of a curved ring forceps to elevate the lateral aspects of the anterior vagina to their normal points of attachment along the pelvic sidewall. The curved arms of the ring forceps are directed laterally and posteriorly toward the ischial spines as the patient bears down. When this lateral elevation corrects the support defect, the diagnosis of a paravaginal defect can be made (Fig. 36C.3). If the patient continues to have a bulge of tissue through the open arms of the forceps, she either has a midline loss of support or a combined midline and lateral loss of support. Imaging studies such as magnetic resonance imaging and ultrasound provide details not only about connective tissue support in the pelvis but also about muscle integrity.

Women with complete eversion of the anterior vaginal segment must, by definition, have not only paravaginal loss of support for the urethra, urethrovesical junction, and bladder but also loss of support for the transverse portion of the pubocervical fascia. The eversion may occur in association with procidentia or posthysterectomy vaginal prolapse (Fig. 36C.4). In our own practice, management of the prolapsed anterior vaginal segment is technically the most challenging dilemma because it may require correction of a complex set of problems, including urinary incontinence; incomplete bladder emptying; impaired intravaginal intercourse; symptoms of prolapse, such as pressure, fullness, and a sense of things falling out; or any combination of these. Successful management of prolapse of the anterior vagina should ultimately result in correction of the poor support, maintenance or enhancement of the ability to have intravaginal intercourse, and maintenance or enhancement of urinary continence. A particularly difficult challenge is the patient with complete eversion of the vagina. Vaginal and abdominal operations for the treatment of vaginal vault prolapse are usually successful in suspension of the vaginal cuff. However, a 1992 study found a 15% to 25% incidence of postoperative urinary incontinence and a 15% incidence of persistent or recurrent cystocele.

**OPEN RETROPUBIC TECHNIQUE**

Paravaginal defects can be surgically repaired through an open retropubic incision, through a vaginal retropubic incision, or laparoscopically. We use the open retropubic repair primarily in the treatment of women who have genuine urinary incontinence associated with paravaginal defects. The operation can
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

be performed with or without hysterectomy. If hysterectomy is performed, we prefer the intrafascial technique and incorporate the cardinal uterosacral ligaments into the angles and the pubocervical and rectovaginal fascia to minimize the occurrence of postoperative enterocoele formation. In women with a preoperative enterocoele and prior hysterectomy, we repair the enterocoele in association with the paravaginal defect repair. The paravaginal repair is performed after completion of the hysterectomy or culdoplasty. The patient’s legs are in low leg holders, and she is draped so that there is access to the abdomen as well as to the vaginal canal. A Foley catheter drains the urinary bladder. We prefer a low transverse abdominal incision made about one finger breadth cephalad to the symphysis pubis. The incision is carried to the anterior sheath of the rectus fascia, which is incised sharply. The rectus muscles are reflected laterally. The transversalis fascia is separated from the superior ramus of the pubic bone, and the space of Retzius is entered immediately medial to the superior ramus of pubis on each side. The loose areolar tissue can easily be dissected away from pubic bone by use of either the index finger or a pair of long tissue forceps. The bony landmarks in the pelvis are identified by palpation. The symphysis pubis, the midline landmark, is almost always convex. The pubic bone extends laterally and gently curves posteriorly. The next palpable landmark is the obturator neurovascular canal, which can be felt along the inferior border of the superior ramus of pubis. A set of larger veins that course between the anterior surface of the urethra and back of the pubic bone can also be the source of considerable bleeding. When they obstruct the dissection or interfere with the operative repair, they should be clipped with silver clips and divided sharply to fall out of the operative field. After the proper cleavage plane has been established, a fluffed-up 4-inch piece of gauze should be placed in the space to rest on the anterior surface of the vagina. Then a small or medium malleable ribbon retractor should be used to hold the bladder and urethra medially while the remaining landmarks are identified by direct visualization. To minimize bleeding, the bladder should never be reflected off of the anterior surface of the vagina. The vessels in the bladder generally course medially to laterally across the operative field. The vessels in the vagina generally course anteriorly to posteriorly. We dissect both the left and the right sides of the space of Retzius before beginning any of the operative repair. We find it helpful to use the long extension for the electrocautery in case it is necessary to cauterize bleeding points.
The operating surgeon stands on the patient’s side opposite to his/her dominant hand. Suturing away from the urethra and bladder to decrease the chance of urologic injury requires backhanding the sutures when sewing at the side of the table on which the surgeon is standing. We prefer to use round tapered needles and 2-0 nonabsorbable suture for the repair. A long needle driver such as is used in chest surgery allows one to reach even the deepest portion of the retro-pubic space without having a hand directly in the operative field.

Paravaginal defects can occur in one of three different ways (Fig. 36C.6):

1. The entire arcus may remain attached to the pelvic sidewall with the pubocervical fascia breaking away from the arcus (Fig. 36C.6).

FIGURE 36C.4. A: Physical findings in the standing patient who has prolapse of the anterior segment (1) as well as uterine prolapse (2). B: Posthysterectomy prolapse of the anterior vaginal segment (1), vaginal cuff (2), and enterocele (3). (From Shull BL. Clinical evaluation of women with pelvic support defects. Clin Obstet Gynecol 1993;36:939.)

FIGURE 36C.5. The key anatomic landmarks in the space of Retzius in a woman with normal findings. (From Shull BL. How I do abdominal paravaginal repair. J Pelvic Surg 1995;1:43.)
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

2. The arcus may pull away from the side of the pelvis but remain attached to the pubocervical fascia (Fig. 36C.6C). 3. The arcus may split, with a portion of it remaining attached to the sidewall and a portion tearing away but remaining attached to pubocervical fascia (Fig. 36C.6D).

In any circumstance, the goal of the operative repair is to reattach the pubocervical fascia to the arcus tendinous fascia pelvis, as well as to the fascia overlying the obturator internus muscle.

The easiest point of identification of the white line is near its insertion at the back of the pubic bone. Using a pair of tissue forceps to grasp the white line and place it on tension makes it easier to identify the remainder of the white line as it courses toward the ischial spine. The smooth white fibromuscular tissue of the pubocervical fascia is always medial to the white line. The most dependent portion of the operative field is the perivesical space adjacent to the ischial spine. Any bleeding results in the collection of blood in that space; therefore, we prefer to initiate the repair near the vaginal apex while the field is quite dry.

The nondominant hand is placed into the vaginal canal to elevate the perineal raph and perivesical tissue to its site of normal attachment along the white line. The first suture is placed near the apex of the vagina through the perivesical portion of the pubocervical fascia. When permanent sutures are used, one should avoid penetration of the vaginal epithelium. If the needle is placed at a right angle to the fibromuscular tissue, it is easier to retrieve and place it through the white line and obturator internus fascia at a point 1 to 2 cm anterior to its origin at the ischial spine. The suture is securely tied with a series of four knots and the excess trimmed. We prefer to place the next suture at the opposite end of the repair through the pubocervical fascia near the distal portion of the urethra. The needle is regrasped and placed through the white line near its origin from the back of the pubic bone. The suture is similarly secured with four knots and the excess cut. At that point, the two extreme ends of the repair have been performed (Fig. 36C.7A). The pubocervical fascia and white line stand out on relief, making it easier to determine the placement of subsequent sutures.

I prefer to place the remaining sutures sequentially beginning proximal to the apical stitch. About four to six sutures are required for each side. In some patients, the vascular supply to the vagina is so generous that it is impossible to avoid suturing through or around a vessel. When each suture is tied as placed, significant bleeding is rarely a problem. Bleeding becomes a problem, however, if a needle is placed through a vein and the needle is removed without tying the suture down. Bleeding can also be a problem if one chooses to dissect the bladder or urethra off of the anterior surface of the vagina. When the sutures have all been placed on one side, the suture line adjacent to the urethra and urethrovesical junction is about horizontal to the floor (Fig. 36C.7B). The suture line from the urethrovesical junction to the apex of the vagina angles gently posteriorly. The same sequence of sutures is repeated on the opposite side (Fig. 36C.7C). We have used this repair for hundreds of patients over 14 years and have not left a drain in the space of Retzius in a single patient.

In patients who undergo a retropubic repair only, my goal is to dismiss them on the same day the procedure is performed. In these patients, we inject the incision site with a short-acting local anesthetic agent before making the incision and with a longer-acting local anesthetic agent when the wound is closed. When the patient is fully awake and can ambulate, the indwelling Foley catheter is used to empty the bladder fully. Next, the bladder is filled retrograde with 300 mL sterile saline and the catheter is removed. The patient is allowed to void. If she voids more than 150 mL, she is dismissed without a catheter; if not, she is dismissed doing intermittent clean self-catheterization (ICSC). For the last 7 years, all our patients with retropubic repair only have been dismissed on the same day of surgery.

In patients who have more extensive surgery and are admitted overnight, the same catheter management is used the morning following surgery after the patient has breakfast. In the exceptional patient who cannot perform ICSC, either a family member is taught to perform the catheterization or the patient is dismissed with a Foley catheter to closed drainage. A few days later, the patient returns for retrograde filling and a test of bladder function.
Some surgeons who treat vaginal eversion by sacral colpopexy have begun to incorporate the paravaginal repair as a part of the total vaginal reconstruction. After completion of the sacral colpopexy, the paravaginal repair is performed as previously described. Others perform a combined Burch procedure and paravaginal repair in association with a sacral colpopexy. After the sacral colpopexy is completed, the sutures adjacent to the urethra and the urethrovesical junction are placed through the Cooper’s ligament, as is done in the modified Burch colposuspension. The perivesical

FIGURE 36C.7. A: A patient with bilateral paravaginal defects. The repair has been started on the left with sutures at the two extremes of the defect. B: The repair is complete on the left side. C: Both sides are repaired. (From Shull RL. How I do abdominal paravaginal repair. J Pelvic Surg 1995;1:43.)
loss of support is then repaired with a series of paravaginal sutures.

VAGINAL RETROPUBIC TECHNIQUE

The vaginal approach to the paravaginal repair is particularly helpful in women whose primary symptom is pelvic organ prolapse without significant urinary incontinence. The vaginal approach requires greater technical skills than does the open retropubic repair. It has a limited use for the general gynecologic surgeon. The angle of the subpubic arch is the most important factor affecting access to the retropubic space. In a woman with a subpubic arch that admits three or more finger breadths, several retractors can easily be placed in the retropubic space, making the vaginal approach technically possible. In a woman with prolapse of the anterior segment and a narrow subpubic arch, I prefer a combination approach, managing the defects that can be handled appropriately through a vaginal incision and completing the retropubic repair through a transabdominal incision.

In the vaginal approach to paravaginal repair, the following steps are used. The patient's legs are placed in high leg holders, and the bladder is drained before the initiation of the surgical procedure. All segments of the vaginal canal area are thoroughly evaluated to confirm the fascial defects. The anterior vaginal segment is examined, specifically to observe loss of lateral sulci, lack of rugation of the epithelium along the base of the bladder, and elongation of the cardinal-uterosacral ligament pedicle, and the ligament itself can be palpated as it courses posterior and medial to the ischial spine. Nonabsorbable sutures are used to initiate the culdoplasty. Regardless of the technique used for the hysterectomy, the cardinal-uterosacral ligament pedicles are clamped, divided, and tagged to be used later for support of the vaginal apices. A cross-clamp, cut, and tie technique is used to perform the hysterectomy. The cardinal-uterosacral ligament pedicles are clamped, cut, and tied to facilitate placement of subsequent sutures. A cross-clamp, cut, and tie technique is used to perform the hysterectomy. The cardinal-uterosacral ligament pedicles are clamped, cut, and tied to facilitate placement of subsequent sutures. The obliteration of the para-rectal space, making the vaginal approach technically possible. In a woman with prolapse of the anterior segment and a narrow subpubic arch, the bladder is drained before the initiation of the surgical procedure. All segments of the vaginal canal area are thoroughly evaluated to confirm the fascial defects. The anterior vaginal segment is examined, specifically to observe loss of lateral sulci, lack of rugation of the epithelium along the base of the bladder, and elongation of the cardinal-uterosacral ligament pedicle, and the ligament itself can be palpated as it courses posterior and medial to the ischial spine. Nonabsorbable sutures are used to initiate the culdoplasty. Regardless of the technique used for the hysterectomy, the cardinal-uterosacral ligament pedicles are clamped, divided, and tagged to be used later for support of the vaginal apices. A cross-clamp, cut, and tie technique is used to perform the hysterectomy. The cardina.
FIGURE 36C.9. A patient with prolapse of the anterior vagina. Marking sutures are at the urethrovesical junction and apex. The dotted line indicates the midline incision to be made. (From Shull BL, Benn SJ, Kuehl TJ. Surgical management of prolapse of the anterior vaginal segment: an analysis of support defects, operative morbidity, and anatomic outcome. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1994;171:1429.)

FIGURE 36C.10. A fiber-optic, right-angle retractor is in the retropubic space, retracting the bladder medially and providing illumination to the retropubic space. The suture is through the arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis (white line) about 2 cm ventral to the ischial spine. (From Shull BL, Benn SJ, Kuehl TJ. Surgical management of prolapse of the anterior vaginal segment: an analysis of support defects, operative morbidity, and anatomic outcome. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1994;171:1429.)

FIGURE 36C.11. A series of sutures has been placed in the arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis from a point ventral to the ischial spine to the back of the pubic bone. (From Shull BL, Benn SJ, Kuehl TJ. Surgical management of prolapse of the anterior vaginal segment: an analysis of support defects, operative morbidity, and anatomic outcome. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1994;171:1429.)

FIGURE 36C.12. The suture in the arcus tendineus fasciae pelvis near the pubic bone is also sewn into the lateral margin on the pubocervical fascia periurethrally and into the undersurface of the vaginal epithelium at the site of the marking suture at the urethrovesical junction. (From Shull BL, Benn SJ, Kuehl TJ. Surgical management of prolapse of the anterior vaginal segment: an analysis of support defects, operative morbidity, and anatomic outcome. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1994;171:1429.)
The goal of the operative repair of a paravaginal defect is to reattach the pubocervical fascia to the arcus tendineus. The patients are ambulated and fed an oral diet on the afternoon or evening of the day of surgery. The transurethral catheter management is the same as for an abdominal repair. If the patient can void spontaneously with a residual volume of less than 150 mL, no further catheterization is required. If she cannot, she is taught ICSC and is dismissed with instructions to continue ICSC until she can spontaneously void 150 mL or more and has a postvoid residual volume of 150 mL or less.

### SUMMARY

There are several ways to approach the management of paravaginal defects of the anterior compartment. In a woman with genuine urinary incontinence as a primary symptom, an open retropubic paravaginal repair may provide excellent relief. However, a valid criticism is that this procedure has not been subjected to the rigorous preoperative and postoperative urodynamic testing used for the Burch colposuspension and the Marshall-Marchetti-Krantz procedure. Reports by Richardson and associates and Shull suggest that paravaginal repair is efficacious in the management of genuine urinary incontinence in properly selected patients. Our clinical impression, documented by longitudinal follow-up of our patients, is that women with uncomplicated urinary incontinence, urethral hypermobility, a positive provoked full-bladder stress test, and lateral loss of support—as well as women with no incontinence but paravaginal defects and cystocele—are candidates for paravaginal repair. Colombo and associates performed a randomized comparison of the Burch procedure and abdominal paravaginal repair for urinary incontinence and reported that the Burch procedure was superior for the treatment of urinary incontinence. The patients who underwent a paravaginal repair resumed spontaneous voiding more quickly. However, the potential disadvantages include an opportunity for repair of isolated defects in the pubocervical fascia to the apex of the vagina, a posterior axis for the vaginal canal, and anterior support loss. In patients who have no significant urinary incontinence but who have prolapse of the anterior vaginal segment with paravaginal defects, the vaginal paravaginal repair is attractive because there is less manipulation of the bowel, avoidance of an abdominal incision, and decreased adverse effects on pulmonary function. However, the potential disadvantages include the greater technical difficulty of the repair and the unknown effects of extensive anterior dissection on bladder innervation and durability of the repair. Our clinical impression is that attention to suspension of the transverse pubocervical defect, which is present in all patients with significant paravaginal defects, is of paramount importance in decreasing the risk of recurrent anterior compartment and apical prolapse. A recent retrospective study by Morse did not find that adding vaginal paravaginal repair to midline pubocervical placation and apical support was superior in terms of anatomy or quality of life outcomes.

### BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- The goal of the operative repair of a paravaginal defect is to reattach the pubocervical fascia to the arcus tendineus...
Paravaginal Defect Repair

Using an open retropubic technique, the bony landmarks of the pelvis are identified by palpation; then tissue forceps are used to develop the space between the pelvic sidewall fascia and the bladder and urethra. Care is taken to avoid venous bleeding in this area.

After the white line and the lateral edge of the pubocervical fascia have been identified, a series of interrupted 2-0 permanent sutures are placed about 1 to 2 cm apart to reapproximate the fascial edge to the white line of the pelvic sidewall fascia.

When a transvaginal approach is used, the retropubic space is opened and cleared back to the ischial spine and the important landmarks visualized as with an anterior retropubic approach. Starting near the ischial spine, a series of sutures are placed in the white line and held with the needles in place. Then, in reverse order, starting with the most distal suture, a bite is taken in the edge of the pubocervical fascia and the undersurface of the vaginal mucosa. The process is repeated, advancing deeper into the pelvis until the highest suture is placed. The sutures are then tied, starting with the one closest to the vaginal introitus and proceeding to the vaginal apex. The vaginal mucosa is then closed in the midline.

An indwelling catheter is not used. If patients cannot void spontaneously, they are taught self-intermittent catheterization. They are given a regular diet as desired. If no other surgery has been done, they may be discharged later the same day or the next morning.

Bibliography

Korva BR. Follow-up of the pelvic bone suburethral stabilization sling operation for recurrent urinary incontinence (Korva procedure). J Urology 1999;161:146.


White GR. Cystocele. A radical cure by securing lateral sulci of vagina to white line of pelvic fascia. JAMA 1909;43:1707.

Posterior vaginal compartment (posterior compartment, posterior vaginal wall, posterior segment)

DEFINITIONS

Anal manometry—A test that uses a pressure-sensitive catheter to measure pressures generated in the anal canal and at the anal sphincter.

Defecography—A fluoroscopy study to assess anatomy by watching the patient evacuate radiopaque dye. It outlines urogenital hood, enterocele, rectoceles, and rectovaginal septum.

Endopelvic fascia—The term used to describe in general all the supporting tissues of the pelvis.

Enterocele, rectoceles—The terms historically used to describe protrusion of the vaginal apex with enteric contents or a bulge in the posterior vaginal wall, respectively.

Genital hiatus—The central opening in the pelvic floor through which passes the urethra, vagina, and rectum.

Pelvic floor dysfunction—An all-encompassing term to describe any or all of the patient's symptoms that may be related to pelvic organs. The most common symptoms in the posterior compartment will be those of a mass, the inability to begin emptying or incomplete emptying of the rectum, rectal incontinence, and discomfort or pain. No physical finding on examination is directly related to the degree of patient inconvenience.

Perineal body—A confluence of connective tissue of the bulbocavernous muscles, transverse perineal muscle, pelvic membrane, anal sphincters, and anchoring sites to the pubic rami, and ischial tuberosities that together make up a central tendinous insertion on the perineum. It is shaped like a pyramid, with the base on the perineum, and extends cephalad 2 to 5 cm to join the rectovaginal septum.

Perineal descent—A bulge in the perineum with straining to below the ischial tuberosities. The total lack of muscular attachment allows the examiner to easily pull the perineum caudally, even against voluntary resistance by the patient.

Posterior colporrhaphy—The operation that divides the epithelium of the posterior vaginal wall and sews together the underlying tissues of the posterior vaginal wall in the midline (plackets), often from the vaginal apex to the perineal body. It is the oldest common operation to repair dysfunction thought to have an anatomic cause related to the posterior vaginal wall.

Posterior vaginal compartment (posterior compartment, posterior segment)—The posterior vaginal compartment encompasses the dorsal wall of the vagina and its supporting structures and therefore extends from the uterosacral and cardinal ligament attachments of the vagina at the perineal connective tissue ring to the perineal body.

Rectovaginal septum (RVS) or fascia of Denonvilliers—The connective tissue immediately dorsal to the epithelium of the posterior vaginal wall. It is not a histologically distinct structure but rather a confluence of connective tissue that supports and attaches the posterior vaginal wall to the underlying rectum, lateral levator muscle, and perineal body.

Site-specific defect—An anatomic discontinuity in the pelvic connective tissue network that allows the pelvic surgeon to identify and repair a specific break in the connective tissue network of the pelvis.

Uterosacral ligaments—The posterior thickenings of the network of endopelvic connective tissue that extend separately from the midsacrum to the 5- and 7-o'clock positions on the posterior vaginal wall.

With improved understanding of female pelvic floor anatomy and pathophysiology has come change in the gynecologist's treatment of disorders of the posterior vaginal compartment, referred to throughout the remainder of this subchapter as posterior compartment. The current concepts used by pelvic reconstructive surgeons are well described by Carl Zimmerman in Chapter 36A. For a better understanding of this subchapter, the reader is advised to read that material before this one.

Students and practitioners interested in pelvic floor dysfunction should no longer consider patient symptoms that seem to be related to the posterior vaginal wall as being caused by a rectocele and curable with posterior colporrhaphy. Leaders in gynecologic surgery are trying to abandon the concept of rectocele and replace it with terms describing specific anatomic defects (site-specific defects).

ANATOMY IN RELATION TO PELVIC REPARATIVE SURGERY

The vagina is a hollow, pliable tube about 9 cm long anteriorly and 11 cm long posteriorly. The caudal 3 cm of the posterior vaginal wall is held in place by connective tissue attachments to the perineal body and ischiopubic rami. The midvagina attaches laterally to the connective tissue covering the medial portion of the ischial. The levator muscle covering fuses laterally to the obturator internus fascia and ultimately to the bony pelvic sidewall. The connective tissue immediately dorsal to the epithelium of the posterior vaginal wall is called the rectovaginal septum or the fascia of Denonvilliers. The rectovaginal septum is not a histologically distinct structure but rather a confluence of connective tissue that supports and attaches the posterior vaginal wall to the underlying rectum. The upper vagina attaches to the uterosacral ligaments on the posterior pericervical connective tissue ring and anterior to pubocervical connective tissue. The uterosacral ligaments

892
are mainly smooth muscle, nerves, blood vessels, and some connective tissue. In the standing position, the uterosacral ligaments are almost vertical in orientation, suspending the vagina as these ligaments fan out in the retroperitoneal space into a broad attachment bilaterally over the second, third, and fourth bony sacral segments. The cephaladmost posterior compartment is continuous with the apical vaginal compartment. The apical compartment consists of the cervix, located on the anterior vaginal wall, with its attachments to the pubocervical connective tissue anteriorly, the cardinal ligaments laterally, and the uterosacral ligaments posteriorly. The fusion of the cephalad margins of the connective tissue surrounding the cervix and upper vagina make up the pericervical connective tissue ring (Fig. 36D.1).

In posterior segment reparative surgery, the uterosacral ligaments are the major support structure. The contiguity of the connective tissue of the uterosacral ligaments with the connective tissue of the rectovaginal septum and perineal body are the suspensory mechanism holding the vagina in its normal anatomic position.

The Vaginal Axis: The Pelvic Valve Mechanism

The distal one third of the vagina in the standing individual ascends almost vertically, then angles 120 degrees dorsally in its upper two thirds. This angulation is caused by connective tissue attachments that tether the vagina over the midline levator plate. Held in this position, the vagina will not move caudally through the opening in the pelvic floor called the genital hiatus. If the connective tissue supports do not hold the vagina in this position, the genital hiatus will not be a closed valve but rather a portal for descent of the bladder, uterus, and rectum when intrapelvic/abdominal pressure increases. Current thinking hypothesizes that the pathologic changes in the position of the vagina and contiguous organs, called urogenital or genital prolapse, results from breaks, attenuation, and/or loss of function in supporting tissues and mechanisms.

Surgery can often correct pathologic anatomic changes and resultant symptoms (pelvic floor dysfunction). When surgery is selected as the treatment, the goal becomes the restoration of the anatomic relationships by either repairing connective tissue supports or by creating a compensatory support mechanism. Although a simple concept, historically, operations did not emphasize repairing an entire connective tissue network, but were incorrectly thought of as organ specific (cystocele, enterocele, rectocele, etc.). Operations were artificially thought of as reinforcing attenuated tissues surrounding organs in contact with the vagina.

In truth, the support for the pelvis is not from ligaments and fascia but a network of connective tissue that intertwines as it surrounds organs. In surgical repair of the female pelvic organ prolapse, the gynecologist uses portions of the entire network of connective tissue, trying to restore the continuity that was lost in those tissues surrounding and supporting the uterus, bladder, vagina, and rectum. The terms cystocele, rectocele, enterocele, urethrocele, and perineocele do not aid in

**FIGURE 36D.1.** The network of pelvic connective tissue. The cephalad posterior compartment is continuous with the apical vaginal compartment at the pericervical connective tissue ring. The pericervical connective tissue (PCT) ring is the area around the cervix where there is anteriorly pubocervical connective tissue, laterally the cardinal ligaments (C.L.), and posteriorly the uterosacral ligaments (USL), which fuse with the rectovaginal septum (RVS), which continues caudally to fuse with the perineal body (PB). The connective tissue network is a continuous structure. It is this network (A) that tethers and supports the vagina in its normal axis (B) over the levator ani muscle (LA).
understanding the loss of continuity of the connective tissue network. They are not site specific. For many surgeons, the gynecologic conditions traditionally referred to as enterocoele and high rectocele are two separate entities. To the experienced pelvic surgeon, they are the same anatomic defect—detachment (loss of continuity) between the rectovaginal septum and uterosacral ligaments. Later descriptions in this discussion will not describe defects or their repair as isolated phenomena, but will try to integrate what are epiphenomena.

**PATIENT SELECTION AND SURGICAL PREPARATION**

**History**

Every surgical procedure should begin, first and always, by determining who would benefit from the operation. In our experience, symptoms of posterior compartment defects include (i) a sensation of fullness or heaviness in the vagina or pelvis made worse by activities that increase intraabdominal pressure, like lifting, exercise, or standing for long periods of time; (ii) bulging mass that increases in prominence with increased activity or as the day progresses; (iii) difficulty initiating stool evacuation from the rectum and anal canal, often accompanied by splinting of stool (placing a finger in the vagina to push stool out the rectum); (iv) feeling of incomplete stool evacuation; and (v) discomfort with intercourse, generally described by the patient as feeling like an obstruction is present.

The examiner should pay special attention to the description of patient symptoms. The sensation of fullness may be accompanied by low back discomfort or pulling, but a posterior compartment defect should not be assumed to be a common cause of low back pain. Difficulty eliminating stool should not be confused with constipation or delayed intestinal transit. When a patient has a history of dry, hard stool, infrequent bowel movements, or bowel movements that alternate between constipation and diarrhea, it is unlikely that an operation will improve this patient's symptoms. Patients with stool incontinence or continuous leakage (sergeage) or fecal staining or who have difficulty recognizing when stool is present in the rectum are more likely to have a disruption of the anorectal sphincter mechanism, prolapse of the rectum, a neurologic dysfunction, an anatomic bowel lesion, poor hygiene, or impaction than an anatomic defect of the posterior compartment. The patient who splints stool by pressing on the perineum or lateral to the rectum often has a perineal support defect rather than a defect of the rectovaginal septum.

Sexual dysfunction has many causes, but seldom is it related solely to an anatomic defect of the posterior segment. Dryness, irritation, burning, or pain in the vagina with intercourse, especially at the introitus or confined to the apex, is more likely an infection, genital atrophy, pelvic pathology, or vulvodynia. Discomfort the patient describes as an obstruction to perineal penetration is the symptom produced by a bulging posterior vaginal wall from retained stool.

**Examination**

Pelvic examination can be used to diagnose most posterior compartment defects in a manner that allows the examiner to identify a site-specific defect in the continuum of the pelvic connective tissue network. Knowing the underlying anatomic defect allows the surgeon to plan surgery to repair a specific defect. Most defects can be detected during examination with the patient in the dorsolithotomy position. Some examiners recommend that the patient be examined in the standing position with the examiner kneeling on the floor. In the occasional patient in whom I have not been able to find the vaginal compartment defect in the dorsolithotomy position, I have done this—but with limited success.

When a defect cannot be identified, it has been more helpful to us for the examiner to instruct the patient to get up from the examining table, strain on the toilet, perform isometric lifting, or perform whatever maneuver she feels exacerbates her symptoms. The examiner leaves while the patient does this and returns to re-examine after the provocative maneuvers have been completed. If I still cannot find an anatomic defect, the patient leaves the clinic, performs whatever activity brings on the problem and returns for examination later in the day or on another day when symptoms or findings are most prominent.

I find the following examination sequence, a modification of that described by Ruden and Walker, essential to diagnose defects and plan treatment. The examination consists of: (i) providing retraction for exposure of the area of the vaginal compartment to be examined; (ii) asking the patient to strain; (iii) determining descending part of the vagina and degree of descent; (iv) simulating normal support using a ring forceps to reduce the defect; and (v) asking the patient to strain again with the ring forceps in place to see if this manual assistance (which simulates surgical repair) corrects the anatomic defect. In general, there are five defects, which may occur alone or in any combination, that the examiner can identify in the posterior compartment: (i) detachment of the rectovaginal septum from the uterosacral/pericervical connective tissue ring; (ii) central or lateral defects in the midvaginal portion of the rectovaginal septum; (iii) detachment of the rectovaginal septum from the perineal body; (iv) disruption of the perineal body; and (v) disruption or attenuated external anal sphincter (Fig. 36D.2).

To diagnose defects of the posterior compartment, the patient is asked to bear down, and the vaginal introitus and perineum are inspected. A bulging mass at the posterior introitus is part of a posterior compartment defect, most often above the external anal sphincter. If straining produces more than 2 cm of perineal descent or the perineum descends beyond the ischiorectal tuberosities or the anus becomes the most caudal (dependent) portion of the perineum, there is a perineal body defect (disruption of the perineal body); most often a disruption of the distal rectovaginal septum from the perineal body and/or transverse perineal muscle detachment from the central tendon of the perineum.

**Detachment of the Rectovaginal Septum**

To improve visualization, the posterior blade of a Graves speculum elevates the anterior vaginal wall. Lack of posterior vaginal wall rugae indicates the underlying connective tissue is detached from the surface epithelium. Often this lack of rugae begins at the top of an episiotomy scar.

The patient strains, and if on straining, posterior vaginal wall descent occurs, there is a posterior compartment defect. If the placement of the posterior speculum blade to the vaginal apex completely reduces the descent, it is likely that the vaginal support defect is apical, involving what has been referred to as an anterior enterocoele. This defect is a perirenal sac containing small bowel, most often adherent to the posterior bladder wall. This defect is most commonly found after a colposuspension procedure.

If the defect is still present, the ring forceps are used to support the posterior vaginal fornix toward the hollow of the...
Posterior Compartment Defects

There are five general ways to describe defects by site in the posterior compartment. They may occur alone or in any combination. All must be identified for successful reconstruction: (1) detachment of the rectovaginal septum from the uterosacral/pericervical connective tissue ring, (2) central or lateral defects in the midvaginal portion of the rectovaginal septum, (3) detachment of the rectovaginal septum from the perineal body, (4) disruption of the perineal body, and (5) disruption or attenuation of the external anal sphincter.

Sacrum. If on straining, this maneuver reduces the mass in total, the defect is a detachment of the cephalad rectovaginal septum from the uterosacral ligaments. If the mass still bulges, the speculum blade should be placed on the anterior vaginal wall to the apex and the ring forceps on the posterior vaginal wall to the apex, and both are slowly withdrawn. If slow withdrawal immediately produces a bulge that enlarges as the two instruments are withdrawn, there will be a peritoneal sac with small bowel or omentum in addition to detachment of the rectovaginal septum.

As a second maneuver, the presence of this sac can be confirmed on bimanual examination. The examiner inserts one index finger in the patient's rectum and the other index finger in the vagina. The sac can be felt to slide between the examining fingers. As a third maneuver, the rectal examining finger can be inserted as high into the rectal canal as possible, and the examiner determines whether his/her finger enters the bulge. If the mass is rectum alone; if it does not, there is a bowel-containing sac (enterocele) or the very rare entity of sigmoidocele. As mentioned before, there is no anatomic difference between a lack of support of the vaginal apex, traditionally called an enterocele, and the posterior compartment defect referred to as a high rectocele. Both defects result from the rectovaginal septum being detached at the cephalad portion of the pericervical connective tissue ring at the uterosacral ligaments.

Central and Lateral Defects in the Rectovaginal Septum

The midportion of the rectovaginal septum at the posterior cul-de-sac (pouch of Douglas) contains little connective tissue. The rectovaginal septum (thickened connective tissue), therefore, is not palpable centrally between the attachments of the uterosacral ligaments. About 4 cm from the apex, the connective tissue of the rectovaginal septum becomes palpable and extends to the introitus where the last 2 or more centimeters is contiguous with the perineal body.

Detection of tears or detachments of the rectovaginal septum may be done both in the office and at the time of surgery by the examiner placing a finger in the patient's rectum and sweeping widely from lateral to medial along the entire rectovaginal septum (Fig. 36D.3). When the examiner's finger palpatates the defect, the digit can be seen to enter the defect, lifting the posterior vaginal wall at the defect site. Lateral defects are detachments of the rectovaginal septum from the levator fascia; central defects are breaks in the rectovaginal septum. Repeating this maneuver in the operating room is essential to find and fix defects in a site specific manner.

Detachment of the Rectovaginal Septum from the Perineal Body

The examiner's index finger is gently moved upward from the external anal sphincter toward the vaginal introitus. If there
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

896

External anal sphincter

FIGURE 36D.3. Detection of tears or detachments in the rectovaginal septum can be done both in the office and at surgery. The examiner places a finger in the patient's rectum and sweeps widely from lateral to medial along the entire rectovaginal septum. The examining finger palpates the defect and can be seen to enter the defect, lifting the posterior vaginal wall. Lateral defects are detachments of the rectovaginal septum from the medial levator fascia, central defects are openings in the rectovaginal septum.

Disruption of the Perineal Body

The rectal examining finger applies traction against the rectal side of the perineum with the examiner pulling toward him/herself. If the perineum is very distensible and can be brought several centimeters caudally while offering little or no resistance when the patient is asked to tighten the perineal muscles, this is perineal descent. Palpating the perineum with the examiner's thumb against the ipsilateral index finger in the patient's rectum often shows that the only palpable structures seem to be the rectal wall and the perineal skin. In the patient with an intact perineal body, the perineal body is largely connective tissue and can be felt as a substantial pyramidal shaped body, 2 to 4 cm wide at its caudal margin and extending cephalad 2 to 5 cm between the vagina and external anal sphincter (Fig. 36D.4).

ADJUNCTIVE TESTING

When symptoms and physical findings are consistent with an anatomic defect, no adjunctive testing is needed before surgery for the patient with a posterior compartment disorder. Adjunctive testing including anal manometry, anal sphincter ultrasound, defecography, electrophysiologic studies, and colonic motility studies have all been reported in these patients in various studies. Anal manometry is used to measure the functional length of the anal canal and the sensation and pressures generated in the anal canal and anal sphincter. Manometry techniques are not standardized, and there is some debate as to what the limits of normal are. Its usefulness may be in identifying patients suspect for bowel storage diseases rather than as a routine diagnostic test.

Defecography is a fluoroscopic study done after ingestion or insertion of radiopaque contrast material. It can be used to outline the anatomy of a rectocecle or identify an occult enterocele, sigmoidocele, peritoneocele, rectal intussusception, rectal prolapse, and paradoxical contracture of the puborectalis muscle during defecation. Studies have shown that interpretation of defecography has a roughly 80% interobserver reliability. Proponents argue that defecography improves the diagnostic ability for the practitioner. There are no studies showing that defecography changes clinical outcomes by changing nonsurgical or surgical management.

Electrophysiologic studies of bowel function (electromyography and nerve conduction velocity), especially those measuring individual muscle response, have generally been abandoned by physical therapists and gastroenterologists.
because of the tests’ inability to measure clinically significant parameters. For example, the differences in pudendal nerve latency studies do not directly relate to patient symptomatology or suggest that one type of treatment or procedure is better. The study has some ability to predict the likelihood of surgical success in patients undergoing external anal sphincteroplasty. Imaging with dynamic ultrasound and magnetic resonance imaging seem to show an even greater diagnostic ability to delineate anatomy than defecography.

Ultrasound for the diagnosis of anal sphincter defects offers diagnostic help for the clinician uncertain as to whether patient symptoms relate to a sphincter defect. For a rectocele, it has the same limitation as other radiologic testing. These techniques and the management of anal incontinence are discussed in Chapter 40.

To summarize diagnosis, a competent, site-specific-directed exam allows the clinician an opportunity to assess the posterior compartment from the retroperitoneum to the perineum. Imaging and electrophysiologic testing is of limited value in a patient with an indeterminate history and confirmatory physical findings. To routinely add adjunctive diagnostic testing cannot be recommended in everyday practice. Adjunctive testing should rely on the judgment of the clinician. Most of the testing is not cost-efficient, nor has it been shown to improve long-term outcome. For the midposterior compartment (rectocele)—the most common problem the practicing gynecologist will face—defecography parameters, such as size, poor evacuation, barium trapping, and intussusception, have no prognostic value.

It should also be emphasized that an anatomic defect diagnosed either by history and examination or on imaging and physiologic testing often shows no correlation with the degree of patient symptomatology. Large anatomic defects may cause the patient no problem; small ones may be very symptomatic. It should also be stressed that it is up to the clinician to decide how much evaluation and treatment is needed. If the clinician cannot do so, consultation should be obtained. The asymptomatic posterior compartment defect needs neither testing nor treatment.

**ALTERNATIVE THERAPIES TO SURGERY**

When a posterior compartment defect has been diagnosed and the patient seeks relief from the symptoms, the clinician should have a working knowledge of how to manage those symptoms with nonsurgical alternatives. In the case of posterior compartment defects, a pessary may be tried when the symptom is thought to be secondary to a mass lesion. While no pessary is specifically designed for mass lesions in the posterior compartment, those that occupy a larger space within the vagina are most helpful in my own practice—the doughnut, inflatable tampon, and intrasutural, have no prognostic value.

It should also be emphasized that an anatomic defect diagnosed either by history and examination or on imaging and physiologic testing often shows no correlation with the degree of patient symptomatology. Large anatomic defects may cause the patient no problem; small ones may be very symptomatic. It should also be stressed that it is up to the clinician to decide how much evaluation and treatment is needed. If the clinician cannot do so, consultation should be obtained. The asymptomatic posterior compartment defect needs neither testing nor treatment.

**SURGERY FOR POSTERIOR COMPARTMENT DEFECTS**

**Preoperative Counseling**

Preoperative counseling entails explaining surgical risks, benefits, and nonsurgical alternatives to the patient. Risks from repair of apical and posterior compartment defects are usually low, but this differs by the route the surgery is performed and the defect repaired. The always-present risks of infection, bleeding, and injury to bladder or bowel vary with the surgical approach taken; whether it is laparotomy, laparoscopic, transvaginal, or transrectal; whether it is simply fixing a detached or torn septum versus a repair that may need to involve bowel resection when rectal intussusception or external prolapse of rectal mucosa is present; or whether graft materials will be necessary.

The most common symptoms reported to the gynecologist are stool retention and discomfort, and the most common defect will be a detatchment or tear of the midrectovaginal septum. A review of the literature shows that there are really very few reports of the long-term success of “rectocele” repair. Studies with a year or more follow-up show success rates of 50% to 80% for treating obstructed defecation, with most tending toward the more favorable of those figures. Failure rates seem to be highest in patients with anismus or other physiologic dysfunction before surgery. The rate of persisting dyspareunia after standard posterior colporrhaphy is quoted as 15%, a figure few share with prospective surgical candidates.

**Preoperative Preparation**

When performing an operation with even a small risk of entering large or small bowel, many surgeons prefer that the stool be evacuated from the rectum and a single dose of preoperative antibiotic be given. Evacuating the rectal vault with a preoperative phospho-soda enema or an oral osmotic agent is at the discretion of the surgeon who must consider the risk for causing bacterial contamination and subsequent infection for the surgery being performed. If antibiotics are to be given, they should be chosen as for any operation and given as a single intravenous dose with enough time between administration and the time of incision to ensure adequate serum levels. I check the vaginal pH; if elevated, I do a saline mount to check for bacterial vaginosis and treat with an appropriate regimen.

**Positioning, Lighting, and Visualization**

For transabdominal repair of the posterior compartment either by laparotomy or laparoscopy, the patient is placed in the low atrophy, lack of lubrication, or suggesting a change in sexual activity or position. Discomfort exacerbated by activity or prolonged standing can often be alleviated with a pessary. The use of a pessary before considering surgery may be a good diagnostic test to indicate how likely surgery is to help. If the pessary relieves discomfort, surgery is more likely to be beneficial. If it does not, surgery may not be the answer.

Physical therapy and biofeedback have both been shown to improve symptoms from pelvic organ prolapse, especially early stages of pelvic organ prolapse. Its greatest role may be in the treatment of paradoxical contractions of the pelvic floor with attempted defecation and anismus.
lithotomy position by most gynecologists to allow access to both the abdominal and vaginal fields. For transrectal repair, colorectal surgeons usually place the patient in a jackknife (ven-
tral lithotomy) or kneeling position (using a surgical stool) to optimize exposure to the perineum and anus. I perform nearly all posterior compartment repairs with the patient in the high
dorsolithotomy position with the feet placed in candy-cane stir-
rups. Many surgeons prefer heavily padded leg rest-type stir-
rups that do not allow for as much flexion at the hip and pro-
vide support at the calf and plantar aspect of the foot, believing that these stirrups have less chance of injury from positioning. Positioning injury has never been a problem for me in thou-
sands of vaginal repair operations. I feel that candy-cane stirrups allow better visualization and access by assistants. The opera-
tor will be seated centrally, and the assistant, either one or two, will stand or sit (their preference) on each side of the operator.

For transvaginal repair of the posterior compartment in my practice, the vaginal and abdominal fields are steriley pre-
pared. I prefer a plastic drape placed to catch fluid from the cystoscopy that will be part of nearly all our pelvic reparative surgery. The anus is left undraped so that it is accessible for in-
traoperative rectal examination to aid in defect identification and the placement of our sutures to close fascial defects. I will change the intrarectal examining glove when going from rec-
tum to vagina. Although evidence is insufficient to support or refute this technique, some habits die hard. A drape that comes with a finger cot that allows intrarectal examination during surgery without contamination of the examiner's glove is also available.

Exposure is maintained using mainly self-retaining retrac-
tors. A Martin arm is attached to the table to which is affixed a small Drayer retractor that elevates the anterior vaginal wall. A disposable plastic retractor that is a variation of the figure-
of-eight–shaped (larger half placed toward the floor) Scott and White retractor is used along with commercially available metal hooks that come attached to stretchable plastic stays that slide into grooves on the two rings of the figure-eight retractor. I use self-retaining retractors for several reasons: (i) the expo-
sure is superior to that available when using an examination; (ii) only my hands are directly in front of the wound, making it easier to see and operate; (iii) the countereversion from this retractor and the ability to move the eight stays facilitate sharp dissection, which is almost exclusively what I use during the operation; (iv) this system frees the assistant to aid in the operation and mobility to better see the operation (for learning purposes); and (v) self-
retaining retractors never complain, fall asleep, or get called to leave the emergency department or labor and delivery—also big advantages! When used correctly, this setup allows the surgeon to operate with a single scrub assistant without difficulty.

We routinely use a dilute solution of vasopressin, 10 units in 30 mL of normal saline, injected into each compartment to a volume of 8 to 10 mL. I find that this chemical tourniquet controls the minor oozing of blood that often detracts from the operation.

Operative Technique

When only the rectovaginal septum is operated on, an incision is made transversely at the junction of the perineal skin and posterior vaginal wall epithelium. If mesh is to be used, I try to lift up the vaginal epithelium without dividing it, or dividing it cephalad only far enough to include the disrupted area. If a repair is performed, the vaginal epithelium is dissected from the underlying con-
nective tissue in the relatively avascular plane just beneath the epithelium. Dissecting in this plane helps identify the layer that

will allow us to see the underlying connective tissue of the recto-
vaginal septum. Some operators try to dissect the “good stuff” from the underside of the vaginal epithelium. If the tissue that is freed by dividing the epithelium is joined side to side, it covers the true defects(s) rather than allowing the operator to identify them. The space over the rectovaginal septum is opened from the introitus, cephalad to the yellow adipose tissue of the cul-de-sac peritoneum, and the position of the vasa deferentia and the levator and obturator fascia on the pelvic sidewall.

When multiple defects are present in the rectovaginal sep-
tum, I usually correct them in the following order: (i) perineal body, (ii) midrectovaginal septum, and (iii) uterosacral liga-
ment attachments to the rectovaginal septum. To identify these intraoperatively, the operator places an index finger in the pa-
tient's rectum, and defects are identified with a combination of visualization and palpation similar to that performed during of-
fice examination (Fig. 36D.3). It is easier to identify posterior compartment defects intraoperatively with the vaginal epithel-
rium dissected free from the underlying rectovaginal septum. The operator advances the examining finger from the perineal-
vaginal junction cephalad to find detachment of the rectovagi-
nal septum at the perineal body, then sweeps laterally to me-
dially on each side of the septum from the levator-obturator junction, and finally palpates and visualizes the vaginal apex.

Once identified, these defects are closed by direct approxima-
tion of the disrupted connective tissue with interrupted su-
tures directly along the configuration of the tear. When pa-
tient tissues look healthy and seem strong, but just torn, I use 0-polyglycolic acid or polyglactin 910 suture (both de-
layed absorbable) on a CT-1 or CT-2 needle. These sutures maintain 50% tensile strength at 2 weeks; therefore, successful repair relies on a normal patient healing response. When tis-
ue healing may not be optimal, I use nonabsorbable, tig-
nergagenerated, suspected connective tissue compromise, repeat-procedure pa-
tients), I close the defects with a permanent suture, such as a coated (polybutylate or silicone), 00-braided, polyester suture on an MO-7 needle. Our needles are swaged on with controlled release, making them easy and quick to use. The CT-2 and MO-7 needles are small, tapered and heavy gauge with a 3/8 curve and fit into small spaces with the ability to penetrate dense tissues. My thinking of the use of peritoneal repair is that tissue of lesser quality may stay joined together better with a longer period of assisted approximation. Tissue suture purchases are as deeply into the connective tissue of the rectovaginal septum as possible, avoiding the rectal lumen with assistance from the rectal examining finger.

When the surgeon has a single assistant, the operator grasps each edge of the torn rectovaginal septum after identification with an Allis clamp, starting at the location where the sepa-
ration is most obvious. Marking with the Allis clamp allows the surgeon to remove the finger from the rectum when closing the defect. Once the most obvious area of the defect is brought together, the defect on either side becomes easier to see, making subsequent tissue purchases similarly easier to place.

I do not use running closures to approximate connective tissue defects. Running closure bunches up tissue and makes for a poorer “fit” that may compromise the vaginal caliper.

When closed as described above, the repair is less likely to form the palpable tissue “bridges,” often a source of complaint af-
ter traditional midline plication repairs. The reason for tissue bridging with traditional posterior colporrhaphy is that some suture purchases make as deeply into the connective tissue of the rectovaginal septum as possible, avoiding the rectal lumen with assistance from the rectal examining finger.

When multiple defects are present in the rectovaginal sep-
tum, I usually correct them in the following order: (i) perineal body, (ii) midrectovaginal septum, and (iii) uterosacral liga-
ment attachments to the rectovaginal septum. To identify these intraoperatively, the operator places an index finger in the pa-
tient's rectum, and defects are identified with a combination of visualization and palpation similar to that performed during of-
fice examination (Fig. 36D.3). It is easier to identify posterior compartment defects intraoperatively with the vaginal epithel-
rium dissected free from the underlying rectovaginal septum. The operator advances the examining finger from the perineal-
vaginal junction cephalad to find detachment of the rectovagi-
nal septum at the perineal body, then sweeps laterally to me-
dially on each side of the septum from the levator-obturator junction, and finally palpates and visualizes the vaginal apex.

Once identified, these defects are closed by direct approxima-
tion of the disrupted connective tissue with interrupted su-
tures directly along the configuration of the tear. When pa-
tient tissues look healthy and seem strong, but just torn, I use 0-polyglycolic acid or polyglactin 910 suture (both de-
layed absorbable) on a CT-1 or CT-2 needle. These sutures maintain 50% tensile strength at 2 weeks; therefore, successful repair relies on a normal patient healing response. When tis-
ue healing may not be optimal, I use nonabsorbable, tig-
nergagenerated, suspected connective tissue compromise, repeat-procedure pa-
tients), I close the defects with a permanent suture, such as a coated (polybutylate or silicone), 00-braided, polyester suture on an MO-7 needle. Our needles are swaged on with controlled release, making them easy and quick to use. The CT-2 and MO-7 needles are small, tapered and heavy gauge with a 3/8 curve and fit into small spaces with the ability to penetrate dense tissues. My thinking of the use of peritoneal repair is that tissue of lesser quality may stay joined together better with a longer period of assisted approximation. Tissue suture purchases are as deeply into the connective tissue of the rectovaginal septum as possible, avoiding the rectal lumen with assistance from the rectal examining finger.

When the surgeon has a single assistant, the operator grasps each edge of the torn rectovaginal septum after identification with an Allis clamp, starting at the location where the sepa-
ratio
The reason for tissue bridging with traditional posterior colporrhaphy is that some suture purchases include each side of the torn rectovaginal connective tissue and some do not. When “hits” and “misses” occur, bridges are produced. A: Defect that begins below the cul-de-sac. B: The result of a repair that starts too high and uses wide midline suture purchase. C: Results from narrow midline purchases. D: Site-specific repair.
defect), bridges are less likely to be formed. Tissue bridges, especially near the vaginal apex, also occur when the surgeon pulls together the lateral connective tissue at the most cephalad portion of the vagina, failing to consider that the central portion of the posterior vaginal septum ends 4 cm from the most cephalad portion of the uterosacral ligaments and upper levator fascia. If this cephalad attachment is in place, the repair is complete.

Reattachment of the Rectovaginal Septum to the Uterosacral Ligaments

Detachment of the cephalad rectovaginal septum from the uterosacral ligaments is diagnosed visually by recognizing a large protrusion at the uppermost vagina (Fig. 36D.6A). Before the vaginal epithelium is opened, the cephalad detachment can be seen as the site on the intact vaginal epithelium where the vaginal rugae end, the epithelium becomes smooth, and the bulge ends at the distal portion of the defect, indicating there is no connective tissue beneath the epithelium to tether it. This site where the detached central rectovaginal septum can be found, interestingly enough, often coincides with the cephaladmost portion of the scar from a repaired episiotomy, perhaps explaining why episiotomy prevents low rectocele formation.

Once the vaginal epithelium is opened and dissected free, the bulge becomes more prominent, and the cephalad rectovaginal septum is readily apparent at the caudalmost portion of the bulge, where its edges can be grasped (Fig. 36D.6B). Pulling the rectovaginal septum cephalad at its lateral margins with forceps simulates reattachment of the rectovaginal septum to the uterosacral ligaments and reduces the upper defect (“high rectocele”). When the sutures from the ipsilateral uterosacral ligament are placed into the corresponding side on the cephalad rectovaginal septum and tied, the bulge will be reduced in total (Fig. 36D.6C). If difficult to see, this defect can be accentuated by using the rectal examining finger to gently pull caudally from the vaginal apex. The examining finger will feel the detached upper margin of the midrectovaginal septum. Reattaching the vaginal apex to the uterosacral ligaments has been routinely recommended in every textbook description of hysterectomy for many years to avoid descent of the vaginal apex postsurgery. Yet for nearly 100 years, midline plication has been used by many gynecologists as the main operation to treat descent of any part of posterior vaginal compartment, including the apex. Because the uterosacral ligaments also support the posterior vaginal apex, repair of the posterior compartment should ensure that the rectovaginal septum is suspended. The two most common techniques for doing this at the time of transvaginal repair of the posterior compartment are the McCall culdoplasty and the uterosacral ligament suspension.

The original McCall culdoplasty, described in Chapter 37 of this text, consisted of rows of internal and external sutures. Internal sutures close the posterior cul-de-sac by approximating the cephalad portion of the uterosacral ligaments at a level high in the posterior cul-de-sac. The external sutures pass from the vaginal lumen through the epithelium of the lateral vaginal apex into the open peritoneal cavity (from hysterectomy or at the time of enterocele repair). The suture purchases then are swept laterally to incorporate the uterosacral ligament on the ipsilateral side, sewn across the peritoneum of the cul-de-sac, through the contralateral uterosacral ligament, and out through the cul-de-sac peritoneum, upper vaginal wall, and into the vaginal lumen on the contralateral side, approximating the distal uterosacral ligaments and drawing the cul-de-sac and uterosacral ligaments together.
The McCall operation has been successful as an operation for prophylaxis against enterocele formation and descent of the vaginal apex after surgery; a reparative procedure for vault prolapse, and as a rescue operation for recurrent vault prolapse after failed apical suspension surgery. Disadvantages of this operation are entrapment or kinking the ureters, difficulty identifying the uterosacral ligaments, and narrowing of the cephalad vagina.

Recently, many gynecologic surgeons have changed from the McCall culdoplasty to using the uterosacral ligaments for both primary reattachment as a prophylactic measure at the time of hysterectomy and as a reparative technique for posthysterectomy apical compartment prolapse. The most important step in uterosacral ligament suspension, and often the most challenging part of this operation, is identifying the uterosacral ligaments. Identification of the uterosacral ligaments can be done in three ways:

- When the posterior cul-de-sac peritoneum is open with the examiner’s finger in the patient’s rectum, tension applied on the ipsilateral cul-de-sac, the surgeon directly palpates the uterosacral ligament from its disrupted attachment at the vagina to near the sacrum. This technique is usually combined with palpation of the ureter against the lateral pelvic sidewall to make sure both structures are free.

- The uterosacral ligament is identified anatomically by its position just medial and deep to the ischial spine and by placing a suspension stitch just medial to the ischial spine. This method offers several disadvantages in my opinion. First, the uterosacral ligament is not clearly identified. Second, the placement of the suture at the level of the ischial spine will suspend the vaginal vault no higher than the ischial spine. Some patients’ vaginal length is well above this level, and repairing the vault in this manner causes it to droop downward. Third, a deep blind purchase with needle and suture into this tissue may offer support, much like the prespinous fascial suspension described by Meeks and colleagues, but can be placed directly into the body of the ligament at any level. The higher the placement, the farther the ligament is from the ureter. By placing the suture directly into the body of the ligament and always placing the suture from lateral to medial, the surgeon is certain the ureter, which is always lateral to the uterosacral ligament, is not harmed.

- Transrectal Identification of the Uterosacral Ligament by Palpation

I use this technique to identify the uterosacral ligament for several reasons.

- When not using mesh, the 2-0 braided polyester sutures for these stitches to maintain suture integrity for this vital support function. Delayed absorbable suture will have lost most of its tensile strength by the third postoperative week, which is about 2 months short of the time it takes to form maximum tissue strength after an operation. When not using mesh, the 2-0 braided polyester sutures are tied after the assistant grasps the corresponding site of placement on the vagina and approximates this to the uterosacral ligament it will join. This takes the tension off the suture as it is tied and serves as a check to see how the repair fits the patient. In nearly all cases, this satisfactorily elevates the vaginal cuff and closes the connection of the genital hiatus and pelvis. The anterior and posterior vaginal walls are approximately central with delayed absorbable suture. The McCall operation has been successful as an operation for prophylaxis against enterocele formation and descent of the vaginal apex after surgery; a reparative procedure for vault prolapse, and as a rescue operation for recurrent vault prolapse after failed apical suspension surgery. Disadvantages of this operation are entrapment or kinking the ureters, difficulty identifying the uterosacral ligaments, and narrowing of the cephalad vagina.

Recently, many gynecologic surgeons have changed from the McCall culdoplasty to using the uterosacral ligaments for both primary reattachment as a prophylactic measure at the time of hysterectomy and as a reparative technique for posthysterectomy apical compartment prolapse. The most important step in uterosacral ligament suspension, and often the most challenging part of this operation, is identifying the uterosacral ligaments. Identification of the uterosacral ligaments can be done in three ways:

- When the posterior cul-de-sac peritoneum is open with the examiner’s finger in the patient’s rectum, tension applied on the ipsilateral cul-de-sac, the surgeon directly palpates the uterosacral ligament from its disrupted attachment at the vagina to near the sacrum. This technique is usually combined with palpation of the ureter against the lateral pelvic sidewall to make sure both structures are free.

- The uterosacral ligament is identified anatomically by its position just medial and deep to the ischial spine and by placing a suspension stitch just medial to the ischial spine. This method offers several disadvantages in my opinion. First, the uterosacral ligament is not clearly identified. Second, the placement of the suture at the level of the ischial spine will suspend the vaginal vault no higher than the ischial spine. Some patients’ vaginal length is well above this level, and repairing the vault in this manner causes it to droop downward. Third, a deep blind purchase with needle and suture into this tissue may offer support, much like the prespinous fascial suspension described by Meeks and colleagues, but can be placed directly into the body of the ligament at any level. The higher the placement, the farther the ligament is from the ureter. By placing the suture directly into the body of the ligament and always placing the suture from lateral to medial, the surgeon is certain the ureter, which is always lateral to the uterosacral ligament, is not harmed.

- Transrectal Identification of the Uterosacral Ligament by Palpation

I use this technique to identify the uterosacral ligament for several reasons.

- With the examiner’s finger in the patient’s rectum, tension is applied toward the examiner using an Allis clamp on the ipsilateral cul-de-sac (Fig. 36D.7). The surgeon can trace by direct palpation the uterosacral ligament in almost all patients from its disrupted attachment at the vagina to near the sacrum, allowing suspension of the vagina as high as is appropriate based on the length of the vagina to be suspended.

- The uterosacral ligament has characteristic features by palpation; it is very dense, strong, mobile, about the caliber of a pencil, and tracks dorsal and medial to the lateral margin of the mid sacrum.
Detachment of the Rectovaginal Septum from the Perineal Body

The caudalmost portion of the rectovaginal septum must be reattached to the perineal body. This defect can easily be felt and seen during rectal examination. The detachment is almost always transverse and right at the level of the perineal body (Fig. 36D.8A). It is closed with interrupted sutures to approximate the two structures (Fig. 36D.8B).

Disruption of the Perineal Body (Perineal Descent Syndrome)

The posterior compartment cannot be repaired completely unless there is a perineal body to which the rectovaginal septum can be attached. I often see disruption of the perineal body presenting as a “failed rectocele repair.” The patient still has the symptom of incomplete emptying of stool and often splints the perineum or lateral to the anus to evacuate stool, rather than splinting through the vagina. On examination with the patient bearing down, there may be little or no posterior compartment descent above the vaginal introitus, but the perineum descends, and on palpation, the examiner feels nothing at the perineal body other than rectal mucosa and perineal epithelium.

This posterior compartment defect cannot be repaired by making a small V-shaped incision at the perineum and sewing the skin and superficial connective tissue together or by sewing together the insertions of the bulbocavernous muscles at the perineum. I have found that the operation performed in this manner often includes a crown stitch, which pulls together the left and right margins of the introitus and results in a ridge. The ridge at the time of intercourse acts like a speed bump and causes dyspareunia. I see this condition several times each year, occurring after perineoplasty and episiotomy repair. I would advise against the crown stitch as a technique to either reduce the caliber of the introitus or lengthen the vaginal canal.

Repair of the perineal body requires reapproximation of the structures that attach at the central tendon of the perineum: the rectovaginal septum, the lateral dorsal bulbocavernous muscle insertions, the transverse perineal muscle, and the external anal sphincter. The attachments of the perineal body to the inferior pubic rami, ischial tuberosities, and coccyx have always been intact in these patients and require no revision, only a central disruption exists.

To begin the repair, a midline incision from the posterior introitus to the external anal sphincter is made. The skin overlying the perineum is widely dissected until the remnants of the transverse perineal muscle can be seen. Wide deep purchases of these muscles and any overlying connective tissue are taken and tied to approximate these muscles. Most of the time, three to five sutures (2-0 polydioxanone) are required. With the laxity of the perineum, these muscles are generally approximated. I will imbricate these muscles with a second layer of interrupted sutures to reinforce the repair. The repair may seem “thick” at this point in the operation, but it will not be as thick at the 6 weeks examination after surgery. I will then make sure the external anal sphincter is attached to the most dorsal portion of the perineal repair with interrupted sutures and that the bulbocavernous muscles are attached at the ventral and lateral margins of the reapproximated perineal body. When this operation is done correctly, a rectovaginal examination will allow the examiner to feel the pyramid-shaped perineal body, which will now be about 5 cm long and 3 cm thick at its base.

Vaginal/Perineal Closure

It is common for the gynecologic surgeon to “trim excess vaginal epithelium,” then close the vaginal epithelium as a midline structure, but I have gotten away from this technique to closing...
the vaginal epithelium as one would a skin graft. I tack down the undersurface of the lateral margins of the detached vaginal epithelium from apex to perineum, then move medially and put in a second row. This allows the epithelium to be used to cover the repair as it fits, rather than just amputating vaginal epithelium and closing with a running midline suture. It eliminates much dead space and makes a better fit with less trimming and more reattachment of epithelium.

Authorities in the past have written that closing this dead space does not allow the vagina to physiologically “slide” one layer over another. There is no evidence to show that this “sliding” phenomenon really takes place. Certainly if one has done enough second and third operations after failed prolapse surgery, one can attest to the fact that the vaginal epithelium may be densely adherent without much movement to facilitate dissection in previously operated areas. Even in the patient who has never been operated on, the caudalmost 4 or 5 cm of the vagina seldom demonstrate a facile cleavage plane and certainly does not slide. The connective tissue from the perineal body is densely intertwined; it is not until several centimeters cephalad does it separate easily.

Densely intertwined; it is not until several centimeters cephalad does it separate easily during the dissection of the vaginal wall that it separates easily from underlying connective tissue.

Mesh Placement at the Time of Apical Posterior Compartment Repair

In my practice, the most common circumstance for using mesh in posterior compartment repair is suspending the apical compartment and reattaching the rectovaginal septum to the uterosacral ligaments. These two reattachments, traditionally referred to as repair of a posterior enterocele and repair of a high rectocele, are thought of as separate operations; but in my experience, they are the same.

In repairing these defects, a peritoneal sac containing small intestine, omentum, or sigmoid colon is often found. I isolate this sac by dissecting it free from the surrounding tissues. The sac is opened; the omentum, small bowel, or sigmoid colon is packed out of the sac into the abdominal cavity with a tail suture and the opposite long side to the caudal uterosacral suture. When tied, they close the space at the top of the apical compartment (Fig. 36D.9D). The remaining edges of the ellipse are sewn into the underlying connective tissue to make sure that the mesh lies flat. Within 2 weeks after surgery, native tissue will infiltrate the mesh, and the mesh will be firmly fixed in place.

Laparoscopy and Laparotomy in the Treatment of Posterior Compartment Defects

Transabdominal uterosacral ligament suspension is enjoying a resurgence as the gynecologic surgical community remembers what it seems to have once forgotten: Suspension of the vagina is an important part of vaginal reconstruction, especially after hysterectomy. Reattachment of the uterosacral ligaments to the vaginal vault at hysterectomy has long been described as a preventative measure against vault prolapse and enterocele formation. When the posterior cul-de-sac was considered to be deep, enterocele was prevented by sewing the posterior cul-de-sac closed with either sequential or concentric purse-string sutures placed from the caudal posterior cul-de-sac to the level of the uterosacral ligaments, incorporating peritoneum over the sacrum (Moschowitz procedure), if necessary, or by closing the cul-de-sac by sewing the posterior vaginal wall from its most caudal to most cephalad position to the rectum back to front in parallel rows (Halban culdoplasty). Little data exist measuring the success of these procedures, but they should be fundamentally sound.

Most transabdominal procedures suspend the vaginal apex, but do not deal effectively with the distal one half of the vagina or perineum. With the increasing use of laparoscopic surgery, more surgeons are repairing all compartments of the pelvic floor, including the posterior compartment with laparoscopic techniques. Sacrocollpopexy operations use main synthetic mesh grafts to suspend the vaginal apex from near the sacral promontory.

Most surgeons will use a synthetic mesh graft fashioned with a central trunk attached to anterior and posterior limbs. The anterior limb is sutured to the anterior vaginal wall dorsally...
to the freed bladder, and the posterior limb is sutured to the posterior vaginal wall where it has been freed from overlying peritoneum or rectum. The posterior mesh limb can be used to correct posterior compartment defects near the apex and generally caudally to the midvagina. Traditionally, surgeons secure each mesh limb with four to six permanent sutures from the midvagina to the vaginal apex. To correct the most caudal defects, including detachment and/or disruption of the perineal body, surgeons extend the posterior mesh limb to the perineum to perform \textit{sacrocolpopereiopexy}. In addition to being a
21-letter word, this operation is thought to hold the entire pos-
terior compartment from the perineum to the sacrum in place.

Other pelvic reparative surgeons have used a combined transabdominal sacrocoploprectomy with transvaginal repair to
place the extended posterior mesh limb. Some surgeons will
do the sacrocolpoperineopexy to the midvagina and then oper-
ate through a transvaginal approach, keeping the surgical fields
separate to fix the anterior compartment of the posterior defects.
The number of reports of sacrocolpoperineopexy is limited. Some
reports indicate that there is an increased incidence of infection with combined abdominal-perineal procedures using
mesh.

**COMPLICATIONS**

**Intraoperative Bleeding**

To prevent excess bleeding, I use several techniques. The in-
jection of a dilute solution of vasopressin, 10 units in 30 to
50 mL of normal saline, injected into the area to be dissected
immediately before the incision decreases blood loss by about
one third, helps clear the operative field of blood for about
75 minutes, and facilitates identification of planes by its hy-
drodissection effect. Although it was once thought that the use
of vasoconstrictor (chemical tourniquets) increases the like-
lihood of delayed hemorrhage and increases the incidence of
postoperative infection, several recent studies have shown the
opposite.
The use of sharp dissection, rather than blunt dissection,
allows better identification of surgical planes and the small
vessels. To control bleeding sites, I use cautery sparingly and
rely heavily on fine 3-0 and 4-0 sutures on a small caliber needle
for vessels. To control bleeding from a particular site, I often pack
the small area first with thrombin-soaked oxidized cellulose,
then a small sponge over this, and work in another area rather than
chase bleeding. Small bleeding areas will stop on their own after
this, and I save time (and blood loss) by completing the remain-
der of the operation while allowing the troublesome ooze to be
controlled by packing and thrombin.

Sometimes bleeding from the connective tissue of the recto-
vaginal septum can be most effectively controlled by using the
vaginal epithelial layer as a bolus. We do not sew directly into
the rectovaginal septum, but place sutures through the vaginal
epithelium into the septum where bleeding occurs and pass the
suture back through the vaginal epithelium. This allows the
vaginal epithelium to be tied down on top of the bleeding site,
using it as an extra tissue bolster to tamponade the bleeding.

**Injury to the Rectum**

In anticipation of injury to the rectum, many gynecologic sur-
groups will prepare the bowel or at least the distal bowel with
purgings regimens, laxatives, or enemas. Although this is com-
monly done by many gynecologic surgeons for operations in
which the incidence of rectal injury is estimated at 1% to 2% of
all cases, it is no longer a routine for obstetricians to use en-
emas before vaginal delivery, in which lacerations of the rectal
sphincter and wall are estimated to be 5% of cases.

I do not prep the bowel. I give a single preoperative antibi-
otic dose, evacuate the distal rectum digitally in the operating
room at the time of exam under anesthesia, and repair any rec-
tal injury during surgery by irrigating it, closing it in layers,
and having patients use the same stool-softening regimen as I
would for any vaginal reparative surgery. It is interesting that
the gynecologic surgeon is concerned with entering the rectum
and the colorectal surgeon with entering the vagina. Each sees
the area that is “not their own” as a contaminated area to be
avoided at all cost. Both the posterior repair and the very few rectal
complications, it shows us how tradition precludes evidence.

**Ureteral Injury**

Operations on the posterior compartment may be complicated
by ureteral injury. I do cystoscopy after the administration of
intravenous indigo carmine dye for nearly all of our vaginal
reparative surgery cases, both to teach residents how to do it
and because the literature shows some series with very high
rates of unrecognized ureteral compromise after gynecologic
surgery. In all my years of reparative surgery, I have had only
one procedure complicated by ureteral compromise, which was
resolved by removing the McCall culdoplasty sutures. How-
ever, I do feel cystoscopy is so simple and reassuring that all
gynecologists should be able to perform this safety check after
every pelvic support operative procedure.

When I cannot demonstrate flow of intravenous indigo
carmine dye from a ureter, I give a small dose of furosemide. If
unsuccessful, I have retrograde catheters passed. If a catheter
can easily be passed 10 cm up from the ureter orifices, injury is
unlikely. If the ureteral stent cannot be passed, which is seen in
about half the cases of vaginal eversion, retrograde dye studies
can be performed in the operating room and patency confirmed
radiographically.

**The Surgically Small Vagina**

During surgery, vaginal caliber and depth should be assessed af-
after each part of the procedure, whether performed on the an-
terior, apical, or posterior compartment. One of the advantages
of site-specific repair is that it seldom results in tissue bridging,
vaginal shortening, or reduction of vaginal caliber. When any
of these are encountered, there are a number of options avail-
able to the surgeon. In the case of bridging, the defect should be
rechecked to make sure that the fascial edges are approximated
along the defect. If the defect has been closed in a site-specific
manner and the vagina still contains palpable bridges, the re-
pair needs to be taken down and either redone or a graft placed
where the bridging exists. Graft material may be an autograft,
allograft, xenograft, or synthetic graft.

In taking down the repair, the operator needs to determine if
the true defect has been closed along lines of tissue breaks.
If it has not, it can be closed along these lines, and bridging
should be eliminated.

Placing a graft to alleviate bridging requires removing the
surfaces causing the bridging and identifying the edges of
the defect that is not being adequately closed; this results in
the pulling together of the tissues involved in the bridge (Fig.
36D.10A). The defect in the rectovaginal connective tissue is
measured and the graft cut to a shape slightly larger than the
defect left from bridge removal. For a small defect, I cut a full-
thickness skin graft from the thigh or buttock from skin that has
been sterilely prepared within the surgical field (Fig. 36D.10B).
In harvesting the graft, I follow Langer’s lines and choose a site
that will not be under pressure during sitting. The graft harvest
site is closed with fine absorbable suture and covered with a
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

FIGURE 36D.10. Placing a graft to alleviate bridging in the repair requires removing the sutures causing the bridging (A). If the defect is too large to close with site-specific tissue, the defect is measured and a full-thickness dermal graft cut to a shape slightly larger than the defect (B). Follow Langer’s lines, and choose a donor site that will not be under pressure during sitting. The graft harvest site is closed with fine absorbable suture and the graft sewn down, overlapping slightly the edges of the posterior compartment defect in the rectovaginal septum (C).

Using a Graft to Reinforce Posterior Compartment Repair

When native connective tissue or support structures are thought to be of insufficient strength to provide adequate repair, the decision may be to augment or reinforce the entire repair with a graft. In choosing a reparative material, I searched the literature and decided on polypropylene mesh. Since 1988, I have used polypropylene mesh as a reparative material in the posterior compartment in more than 400 cases; including anterior and apical vaginal compartment repairs, in more than 1,500 cases. Polypropylene mesh is preferred because it is readily available in many sizes, soft, easy to shape and handle, relatively inexpensive compared with other graft materials, and consistently strong. It should be realized that in many patients, polypropylene mesh undergoes 10% to 15% shrinkage after placement.

The downside of polypropylene mesh is that it exhibits erosion in 2% to 15% of patients. In my own experience, erosion is twice as likely in the posterior compartment as in the anterior or apical compartment for reasons unknown. Erosion occurs as two types. The first is a simple mesh exposure, usually consisting of small (<1 cm) area. The patient is often asymptomatic but may present with spotting, granulation tissue, pain, or discharge. The second type of erosion presents with a rejectionlike reaction, with an exaggerated inflammatory response associated with a foul-smelling discharge, sometimes pain, and, on exam, a large area of exposure (2 or more cm).

In the case of minimal mesh exposure, the small area can be trimmed in the office with no anesthetic or local anesthesia. I have used scissors and forceps, large Tischler biopsy forceps with colposcopic guidance, or the carbon dioxide laser to trim or remove small areas of erosion. The removal sites in these cases usually heal spontaneously. Mesh erosion characterized by large exposure and/or foul-smelling discharge or pain is treatable only by completely removing the mesh.
When true infection is present, which is rare, the mesh can often be removed with little or no dissection.

I have found conservative treatment with cautery, antibiotics, and/or vaginal estrogen cream to be of little value in treating either type of erosion, despite some reports in the literature. I also have patients with small areas of asymptomatic erosion who declined treatment and have had stable mesh exposure for years without problem.

Removing Redundant Cul-de-Sac

When not using mesh, if there is redundant posterior cul-de-sac after placing the 2-0 braided polyester sutures in the uterosacral ligaments and closing the peritoneum, I remove the redundant cul-de-sac. I perform a Torpin culdoplasty, excising only the redundant central portion (Fig. 36D-11A) by placing two Kocher clamps across the diamond-shaped redundancy, excising the
The surgical repair of a posterior compartment defect by a colorectal surgeon is generally transanal or transperineal with the patient in a flexed, ventral lithotomy or jackknife position, often with the patient’s knees on a shelf and the body bent forward at the waist onto the operating table. Many colorectal surgeons excise excess anal mucosa over the protruding portion of the rectum and close the resulting defect with purse-string or suture placed horizontal to plicate the rectal wall. There are some reports of closure with a stapling device. These operations are often combined with a levatorplasty, which detaches the medial portions of the levator muscles together in the midline ventral to the rectum. This ventral position is considered to be nonanatomic by many gynecologists but is used to create a compensatory defect. In colorectal surgery, the repair of a defect at the vaginal apex (enterocele) is repaired transabdominally, using a sling to support the viscera or resection of the segment of bowel that is prolapsing in the enterocele, similar to the way rectal prolapse through the anus would be repaired. A Cochrane metaanalysis concluded the transvaginal approach to repair of the posterior vaginal compartment was more effective than the transanal approach. The transanal approach also seems to be associated with a higher incidence of dyspareunia and dyschezia than the transvaginal approach. The site-specific transvaginal repair seems to have the lowest association with postprocedural dyspareunia.

Alternative Methods for Repair of Posterior Compartment Defects

Transvaginal Midline Plication of the Connective Tissue of the Posterior Compartment

Transvaginal midline plication of the connective tissue of the posterior compartment is historically known as posterior colporrhaphy. The operation was described about 50 years ago, and it is still performed today, much as it has always been done. Midline colporrhaphy is performed by dissecting the overlying vaginal epithelium from the underlying endopelvic fascia of the rectovaginal septum and sewing the endopelvic fascia together in the midline. This was the only posterior repair operation performed by gynecologists for many years and was done with relatively fine-caliber, rapidly absorbable, chromic gut suture. The results were initially reported and continue to be reported as effective in many series at reducing the midline bulging of the posterior wall. But posterior colporrhaphy does not appear to be an operation to correct obstructed or incomplete defections in more than 40% to 50% of cases in some series. It has also been associated with dyspareunia in as many as 15% of patients in some series. The technique is a central plication of the rectovaginal fascia, beginning as cephalad as possible, while avoiding the muscular layer of the vagina or rectal wall. This avoidance of the “true wall” of either organ is to prevent bunching of those tissues, which is associated with bridging of the connective tissue and resulting dyspareunia. By careful suture placement starting as cephalad as possible in the rectovaginal connective tissue, it was hypothesized that the surgeon closed only the fascial layer and left the vagina and rectum free to “slide” in loose areolar tissue during intercourse. In my experience, there is no connective tissue located at the cephalad posterior vaginal wall for several centimeters, and the posterior colporrhaphy causes bridging in most cases unless site-specific repairs are performed. Posterior colporrhaphy does not eliminate obstructive defecation because it does not anchor either the proximal or distal rectovaginal septum to the urogenital ligaments or perineal body, leaving what amounts to a reinforced wall of a still-prolapsing organ. When combined with central amputation of the “excess” vaginal wall for midline closure and continuation of a crown stitch joining the dorsalmost portions of the bulbocavernous muscles and/or the perineal skin, the approximation causes central narrowing of the vagina and a speed bump of perineal skin that partially obstructs the vaginal entrance.

Colorectal Surgeons’ Approach to the Posterior Compartment Defect

The surgical repair of a posterior compartment defect by a colorectal surgeon is generally transanal or transperineal with the patient in a flexed, ventral lithotomy or jackknife position, often with the patient’s knees on a shelf and the body bent forward at the waist onto the operating table. Many colorectal surgeons excise excess anal mucosa over the protruding portion of the rectum and close the resulting defect with purse-string or suture placed horizontal to plicate the rectal wall. There are some reports of closure with a stapling device. These operations are often combined with a levatorplasty, which detaches the medial portions of the levator muscles together in the midline ventral to the rectum. This ventral position is considered to be nonanatomic by many gynecologists but is used to create a compensatory defect. In colorectal surgery, the repair of a defect at the vaginal apex (enterocele) is repaired transabdominally, using a sling to support the viscera or resection of the segment of bowel that is prolapsing in the enterocele, similar to the way rectal prolapse through the anus would be repaired. A Cochrane metaanalysis concluded the transvaginal approach to repair of the posterior vaginal compartment was more effective than the transanal approach. The transanal approach also seems to be associated with a higher incidence of dyspareunia and dyschezia than the transvaginal approach. The site-specific transvaginal repair seems to have the lowest association with postprocedural dyspareunia.
Posterior Compartment Defects

Buttock incision sites

Mesh sutured to posterior vaginal wall

Peritoneum closed at vaginal apex

FIGURE 36D.12. A graft, most commonly polypropylene or porcine dermis, is placed over the entire posterior compartment. Introduced through small incisions 2 to 3 cm lateral and dorsal to the anus, a tunneling device is brought up through the buttocks into the ischiorectal space to a level just caudal to the ischial spine. The vaginal wall is penetrated at this point, the tunneling device is threaded with the arm of a precut mesh, and the sling arm is drawn back to the buttock. This is repeated on the opposite side. The central graft is large and can be trimmed so that it attaches to just the apex or to the entire posterior compartment below the opened epithelium. The central graft is sewn into place, and the epithelium closed over it.

then pulls on the mesh arm, and the mesh elevates whatever portion or portions of the posterior compartment to which it is attached. At this point, the mesh can be anchored to the underlying connective tissue of the posterior vaginal wall from apex to perineum and the vaginal wall trimmed and closed or just closed. The mesh arms are trimmed so that they retract back into the subcutaneous tissue of the buttock. Early reports of these large mesh repairs come from outside the United States and appear to be favorable, but long-term results are not yet available at the time of this writing, especially from surgeries done within academic centers.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- The reparative operation for the posterior compartment should be tailored to fit the needs of the patient.
- Assessing the needs of the patient begins with history and physical examination to determine symptoms and anatomic site-specific defects. Some operations may be better suited to a given patient based on symptoms and findings.
- Understanding of the anatomy and pathophysiology of pelvic organ prolapse has changed and as a result, so has the way we perform surgery to repair it. The gynecologist now in practice will have to learn new surgical techniques to provide the best care possible for patients.
- Site-specific examination of the posterior vaginal compartment from the uterosacral ligaments to the perineum is used to formulate the surgical plan. The surgeon who goes to the operating room with one operation that he/she can perform probably will not be entirely pleased with the long-term results, and neither will the patients.
- Midline plication of the posterior vaginal compartment, or the traditional posterior colporrhaphy, does not anchor either the most cephalad or distal portions of the vagina. Failure to anchor the vaginal apex leads to descent of the apex; failure to anchor the distal vagina may lead to perineal descent syndrome.
- Approximately 20% of posterior vaginal wall repairs are now being performed with augmentation by a graft, with polypropylene mesh being the most common graft material. Although not without complications (exposure, infection, pain, dyspareunia), the use of graft material in gynecologic surgery is likely to become the standard of care for repeat procedures after failed pelvic organ prolapse surgery. Each graft material has its limitations, but gynecologic surgeons will need to become familiar with at least one type of material to use.

Bibliography


Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas


Our understanding of pelvic prolapse and the treatment thereof has changed in recent years. It was formerly taught that prolapse resulted from attenuation or stretching of endopelvic fascia. Richardson and colleagues challenged this theory by introducing the concept of discrete breaks in endopelvic fascia. More recently, Richardson and colleagues described apical enterocele as a separation of pubocervical fascia from recto-vaginal fascia. This allows peritoneum of an enterocele sac to be in direct contact with vaginal epithelium. Kleeman and colleagues described the microscopic anatomy of the posterior vagina in cadavers without prolapse. Figure 36E.1 shows a microscopic horizontal section of the upper third of the vagina. Identification of all layers fails to reveal a discrete fascial layer. Despite this controversy, the theory proposed by Richardson helps our overall understanding of vaginal support.

DeLancey divided the support of the vagina into three levels. This concept is helpful in understanding normal anatomic relationships and appreciating why certain repairs may work in some patients and not in others. Level I support defects are apical defects caused by loss of support of the uterosacral ligaments, paracolpium, and pararectum; Level II: disruption of the normal lateral attachments of the midvagina; and Level III: lower vaginal defects in the perineal body or fusion of the distal urethra to the pubic bone.

Levels of support defects (according to DeLancey classification)—Level I: apical defects caused by loss of support of the uterosacral ligaments, paracolpium, and parametrium; Level II: disruption of the normal lateral attachments of the midvagina; and Level III: lower vaginal defects in the perineal body or fusion of the distal urethra to the pubic bone.

Pully stitch—Often used to attach the vaginal apex to the sacrospinous ligament. The suture is passed through the ligament (or other tissue where the final knot is to be located). One end of the suture is then passed through the vaginal apex (or other tissue that is to be approximated or “pulled” next to the first pass). The suture in the vaginal apex is tied with a half hitch. The two free ends of the suture are now tied, and as the knot is tightened down, the vaginal apex is pulled up to the sacrospinous ligament, and the two tissues are then approximated. The pulley stitch reduces the risk of cutting through the tissue as the knot is tightened.

Sacrospinous ligament—A strong ligament that runs within the coccygeus muscle from the ischial spine to the sacrum.

DEFINITIONS

EEA sizer—One of a series of metal instruments that are used primarily to evaluate the size of the end-to-end anastomosis staple instrument that is appropriate for a given patient. It is also an excellent instrument for distending and manipulating the vaginal apex from below, allowing the abdominal surgeon to easily feel the vagina and dissect against a firm surface (see Fig. 36E.14).

Many operations have been described for suspending the vaginal vault and securing the prolapsed vaginal vault in a significant number of patients. The ultimate goal of pelvic reconstructive surgery is to restore anatomy, maintain or restore visceral function, and maintain or restore normal sexual function. It is extremely important to determine preoperatively whether lower urinary tract dysfunction, sexual dysfunction, and defecatory dysfunction exist. Urinary dysfunction may be masked in patients with advanced pelvic organ prolapse by obstructing or kinking the urethra. Thus, reductive maneuvers aimed at simulating what surgery will accomplish should be used in the hope of identifying those patients who will require an antiincontinence procedure in conjunction with their pelvic reconstructive surgery. It is also important to initiate local estrogen therapy preoperatively in patients who have urogenital atrophy.

Many operations have been described for suspending the prolapsed vaginal vault. There is no general consensus on what is the best procedure. The procedure that the surgeon ultimately chooses is influenced by many factors, including the comfort and skill of the surgeon performing the operation, whether the prolapse is primary or recurrent, the patient's age, state of health, anticipated outcome, sexual activity, and overall state of the tissues. We believe it is important for the surgeon to have a variety of operative approaches available for the individual patient. We prefer to approach most cases transvaginally, reserving abdominal sacral colpopexy for patients who have failed a previous vaginal approach, have a foreshortened...
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

FIGURE 36E.1. Microscopic hematoxylin and eosin stain of the upper third of the vagina. The vaginal epithelium is at the top, and the rectal mucosa at the bottom.

FIGURE 36E.2. Levels of support. DeLancey’s biomechanical levels: level I, proximal suspension; level II, lateral attachment; level III, distal fusion. (From DeLancey JOL. Anatomic aspects of vaginal eversion after hysterectomy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1992;166:1717.)

vagina, or in whom a compensatory procedure with the insertion of mesh is necessary to obtain a long-term durable repair. We believe the vaginal approach to pelvic prolapse has the advantage of decreased operative time, decreased incidence of adhesion formation, and quicker recovery time. Obliterative procedures including partial Le Fort colpocleisis and colpectomy; colpocleisis can be used in elderly fragile patients who are no longer sexually active.

VAGINAL PROCEDURES TO SUSPEND THE VAGINAL APEX

McCall Culdoplasty

Several operations have been described and used by surgeons for vaginal vault suspension with correction of concurrent enterocele. McCall (in 1957) described his technique of surgical correction of enterocele at the time of vaginal hysterectomy. He used several nonabsorbable sutures to obliterate the enterocele (internal McCall sutures) by approximating both uterosacral ligaments and several bites of posterior peritoneum together. Delayed absorbable sutures were then inserted through the full thickness of the posterior vagina just lateral to the midline, passed through each uterosacral ligament and back out the posterior vaginal wall. Additional external sutures are placed as required by the amount of prolapse. The internal sutures are then tied, and the external sutures are tied after the vaginal cuff is closed. This simple procedure obliterates the cul-de-sac, supports the vaginal apex, and lengthens the posterior vaginal wall (Fig. 36E.3). McCall originally reported on 45 cases and stated there was no incidence of enterocele recurrence.

FIGURE 36E.3. McCall culdoplasty. Two internal sutures (permanent) and one external suture (delayed absorbable) have been placed. (From Baggish MS, Karram MM. Atlas of pelvic anatomy and gynecologic surgery. New York: Saunders, 2003.)
Several modifications of McCall’s technique have been described, most notably the modified endopelvic fascia repair, which was popularized and reported on from the Mayo Clinic. A wedge of vaginal mucosa is removed from the anterior and posterior vaginal wall. This narrows the vault when closed and allows easier access to lateral supports of the vagina (i.e., cardinal and uterosacral ligaments and perirectal fascia). The enterocele sac is then dissected free and excised at the neck. The ureters are identified by palpation bilaterally. One to three internal McCall’s sutures are placed as described above. After these sutures are placed and tagged, modified external McCall sutures are placed by passing delayed absorbable sutures through the posterior vaginal wall and peritoneum, through remnants of uterosacral and cardinal ligaments on the patient’s left. Several bites of peritoneum overlying the rectosigmoid are taken, and then the right perirectal fascia and uterosacral are incorporated into the suture. Last, the suture is passed back out through the posterior vaginal wall. The number of internal and external sutures placed depends on the size of enterocele and redundancy of the upper vagina (Figs. 36E.4 and 36E.5). A 1998 article by Webb reported on 660 women who underwent primary repair of vaginal vault prolapse. Follow-up was available on 514 of the 660 women. Eighty patients (11.5%) reported a “bulge” or “protrusion” at the time of questioning. Eighty-two percent (385 patients) responded that they were very satisfied or somewhat satisfied with the operation. The most common operative complication was laceration of bowel or rectum in 16 patients (2.3%). Four patients (0.6%) suffered ureteral complication. Three of these were from obstruction, and one developed a ureterovaginal fistula. Nine patients (1.3%) had a vault hematoma, and four (0.6%) had a cuff abscess or infection. Fifteen patients (2.2%) sexually active women reported dyspareunia.

To perform sacrospinous ligament fixation, it is imperative that the surgeon be familiar with the anatomy of the sacrospinous ligament complex and of the pararectal space. Obtaining adequate exposure can be difficult, and vascular complications, when encountered, may be life-threatening. The sacrospinous ligament is a cordlike structure that exists within the body of the coccyx muscle. The sacrospinous ligament attaches medially to the sacrum and coccyx and attaches laterally to the ischial spine. The complex is collectively called the coccygeus-sacrospinous ligament complex (CSSL). The CSSL is best identified by palpating the ischial spine and tracing the fingerlike ligamentous structure medially and posteriorly to the sacrum (Fig. 36E.6). The pudendal nerve and vessels pass directly posterior to the ischial spine. The sciatic nerve lies superior and lateral to the sacrospinous ligament. Superior to the ligament lies the inferior gluteal vessels and the hypogastric venous plexus (Fig. 36E.7). To avoid trauma to these structures, it is important to place the fixation sutures two fingers medial to the ischial spine. The apex of the vagina is grasped with two Allis clamps so the extent of the prolapse can be assessed. The vagina is then reduced to the sacrospinous ligament. Most surgeons prefer to use the sacrospinous ligament opposite their dominant hand; that is, the right-handed surgeon uses the right sacrospinous ligament, although some surgeons prefer to perform a bilateral fixation. Marking sutures can be used to identify the intended vaginal apex throughout the operation. It may be necessary to choose a different fixation point than the original vaginal cuff scar. This is best illustrated in a patient with a foreshortened anterior segment and a large enterocele. In this case, the
new fixation point would be moved to an area over the enterocele. It is equally important to access the anterior and posterior segments of the vagina and the genital hiatus. If the patient requires an anterior vaginal wall repair or an antiincontinence procedure, this should be performed in conjunction with the sacrospinous fixation.

A posterior vaginal incision is made and extended to the vaginal apex. Almost always an enterocele sac is present. The enterocele sac should be mobilized off the posterior vaginal wall up to its neck; the sac is then opened and the peritoneum excised. The defect is then closed with purse-string sutures.

The next step is entry into the perirectal space. The rectal pillar separates the rectovaginal space from the perirectal space. A window must be created through the rectal pillar, which is best accomplished by blunt dissection just lateral to the enterocele sac over the ischial spine. The window can also be created with the tips of scissors, a tonsil clamp, or a hemostat. The window should be gently enlarged to accommodate the vagina. The sacrospinous ligament can then be palpated by palpating the spine and moving the fingers dorsal and medial. It may be necessary to use blunt dissection to remove excess tissue from the CSS.

Once the window has been created and the ligament is identified, a retractor (Breisky-Navratil or Heaney) is used to displace the rectum medially. Great care must be taken to avoid raking the retractor over the anterior surface of the sacrum and causing damage to presacral nerves and vessels. When using the right sacrospinous ligament, the middle and index finger of the left hand are placed on the medial surface of the ischiial spine.

Then, under direct vision, the tip of the long-handled ligature carrier (Fig. 36E.8) penetrates the sacrospinous ligament two fingers medial to the ischial spine. There should be considerable resistance as the carrier is pushed through the body of the ligament. If no resistance is felt, then the carrier either passed in front of or around the ligament. The ligament can be grasped with an Allis clamp or Babcock to isolate the tissue away from vessels and nerves. After the suture has been passed, the fingers of the left hand are withdrawn. The sutures are then grasped with a nerve hook. A second suture is placed in a similar fashion approximately 1 cm medial to the first. If the surgeon doesn't desire a second passage, the suture can be cut in the midline, and each end of the cut loop can be paired with its respective free suture. If a good purchase of tissue has been taken, the surgeon should be able to gently move the patient with traction of the suture.

In 1987, Miyazaki described a new technique for passing a suture through the sacrospinous ligament using a specially designed ligature carrier (Miya hook) (Fig. 36E.9). The proposed advantage of this technique is that it is safer and easier because the ligature carrier penetrates the sacrospinous ligament under direct palpation and is then passed downward into the safe perirectal space.

To use the Miya hook, the right middle finger tip is placed on the sacrospinous ligament, two fingers breadth medial to the ischiial spine and just below the superior margin. The Miya hook is held closed in the left hand and slid along the palmar surface of the right hand. The point of the hook then comes to rest just beneath the tip of the right middle finger. The handles
are threaded through a free needle, sewn into the full thickness two ways for the surgeon to attach the sutures to the vagina. Once the surgeon has the two sutures through the sacrospinous ligament, the vaginal vault can then be suspended. There are several other instruments have been designed to pass the suture through the ligament. These include the Laurus needle driver and Nichols-Veronikis ligature carrier (Fig. 36E.10). A nerve hook is then used to retrieve the suture. Several other instruments have been designed to pass the suture through the ligament. These include the Laurus needle driver and Nichols-Veronikis ligature carrier (Fig. 36E.10). Once the surgeon has the two sutures through the sacrospinous ligament, the vaginal vault can then be suspended. There are two ways for the surgeon to attach the sutures to the vagina. The first is to use a pulley stitch. The free end of the suture is threaded through a free needle, sewn into the full thickness of the fibromuscular layer on the undersurface of the vagina (excluding the epithelium), and then tied by a half hitch. Traction on the free end of the suture pulls the vagina directly onto the ligament. A square knot is then used to fix the suture in place. Generally, when using this technique, permanent suture should be used.

The second technique can be used if the vagina is thin or of greater vaginal length is desired. This technique involves passing each end of the sutures through the full thickness of the vagina using 1-0 or 2-0 absorbable suture. The upper portion of the posterior vaginal wall should be closed with interrupted or running 3-0 absorbable sutures before tying the colpopexy sutures (Fig. 36E.11). If the colpopexy sutures are tied before the posterior wall is closed, the visibility of the vault is reduced, and the colpopharynx sutures are much more difficult to place.

The vagina should come into contact with the sacrospinous ligament, especially if absorbable sutures are used. A suture bridge can predispose to recurrent prolapse because a strong scar will not form before suture absorption. After the colpopexy sutures are tied, a posterior colpopharynx and perineorrhaphy is done. The vagina is then packed with moist gauze for 24 hours.

The overall results from sacrospinous fixation have been good. In 1997, Sae and Karram reviewed the literature on sacrospinous suspension, and of the 1,137 patients available for follow-up, 36 (3%) had recurrent vault prolapse. Ninety-six (8%) had anterior wall prolapse, and 25 (2%) had posterior wall prolapse. Some authors have not. Smilen and colleagues in 1998 compared patients with anterior vaginal wall defects undergoing anterior colpopexy. Many authors have conducted randomized trials evaluating sacrospinous fixation have been reported. Benson and colleagues in 1998 reported higher success rates with abdominal sacral colpopexy than sacrospinous fixation, and Maher and associates reported similar success rates. It has been our experience that this operation does distort the vagina posteriorly and leaves the anterior segment vulnerable to recurrent prolapse. Table 36E.1 reviews published results of sacrospinous ligament suspension.

Complications can occur, and the more common complications are disclosed here. It is important to do frequent rectal examinations during this procedure to make sure that no inadvertent proctotomy has occurred. If evidence of suture penetration is evident, the offending suture should be removed and replaced. Lacerations should be closed in a standard two-layer fashion. Hemorrhage can result from injury to the hypogastric veins, inferior gluteal vessels, and internal pudendal vessels. Injury can occur from overzealous dissection or inappropriate needle passage through the sacrospinous ligament. If bleeding does occur initially, pressure should be applied to the bleeding area. Continued bleeding should be addressed with suture ligations and hemoclips. Because this area is difficult to approach transabdominally, every effort should be made to control bleeding transvaginally. An improperly placed retractor or insufficient assistance can cause damage to the presacral vessels by raking the tip over the bony sacrum. Stress urinary incontinence may occur postoperatively and is probably the result of weakening of the posterior urethrovaginal junction. It is important that all patients have
adequate evaluation for potential stress incontinence. This is best done by preoperatively performing a stress test in the standing position with reduction of the prolapse.

A patient who reports severe postoperative gluteal pain that runs down the posterior surface of the affected leg most likely has a pudendal nerve injury. Sutures that are placed too close to the ischial spine risk injury to the pudendal nerves and the sciatic nerve. If the patient has evidence of nerve injury, she should immediately undergo reoperation with removal of those sutures impinging on the nerve. New colpopexy sutures should be placed either more medial on the same side, or the opposite sacrospinous ligament can be used.

In our experience, approximately 10% to 15% of patients have transient moderate to severe buttock pain on the side of the sacrospinous suspension. It is usually self-limiting and resolves by 6 weeks postoperatively. Reassurance and anti-inflammatory agents are all that are necessary.
Vaginal stenosis can occur if too much vaginal tissue is re- moved before closing the vaginal incision. An aggressive posterior repair can also cause a constriction ring. If a constriction ring is present while the patient is still under anesthesia, it should be addressed at that time. The colporrhaphy sutures can be removed or lateral-relaxing incisions can be made in the vagina.

High Uterosacral Ligament Suspension with Fibromuscular Vaginal Wall Reconstruction

In 1976, Richardson introduced a new approach to the management of enterocele and vault prolapse. The concept maintains that the endopelvic fascia that surrounds the vagina does not attenuate but breaks at specific points. The reconstruction aims to eliminate the enterocele by using principles of abdominal hernia surgery. This involves identifying the fascial defect, reducing the enterocele sac, and closing the fascial defect. In addition, the vagina is resuspended to its original level I support (the uterosacral ligaments).

Two Allis clamps are used to grasp the vaginal apex. With traction on the Allis clamps, the vaginal epithelium overlying the enterocele is incised. The enterocele sac is then dissected up to the neck of the hernia. The sac is opened, and the cul-de-sac is palpated for adhesions and any unsuspected pathology. If adhesions are present, they should be carefully taken down. The excess peritoneum is excised. A Heaney retractor or Deaver is then placed anteriorly. The abdominal contents are carefully packed away with moist laparotomy sponges. The retractor is withdrawn and then replaced so as to elevate the sponges and abdominal contents out of the pelvis, exposing the cul-de-sac (Fig. 36E.12).

Two Allis clamps are then placed where the remnants of uterosacral ligaments are believed to be, usually the 5-o’clock and 7-o’clock positions. It is sometimes necessary to trim excess vaginal mucosa to facilitate good traction on the uterosacral ligament. With tension on the Allis clamp directed outward, the pelvic sidewalls are palpated. The ischial spine is palpated transperitoneally, and an attempt is made to palpate the ureter. If the uterosacral ligament is difficult to find, the Allis clamp can be repositioned. The ureter is usually found 2 to 5 cm ventral and lateral to the ischial spine. The ureter is best found by applying pressure to the pelvic sidewall with the tip of the index or middle finger and sweeping from an anterior superior to a posterior inferior position.

Initially two or three delayed absorbable sutures are passed through the uterosacral ligament on each side around the level of the ischial spine. The distal remnants of the uterosacral ligaments are plicated across the midline with two to three permanent sutures. Tying of these sutures obliterates any redundant cul-de-sac. The previously placed delayed absorbable sutures are passed through the full thickness of the posterior vaginal wall. The sutures are then tied down, elevating the vault into the hollow of the sacrum. It is imperative to perform cystourethroscopy to evaluate ureteral integrity.

There are three reports to date on the results of high uterosacral ligament suspension. In 2000, Shull and colleagues reported on their experience with 298 patients. Thirty-five
FIGURE 36E.11. A: Bresky-Navratil retractors are used to retract the rectum medially and bladder superiorly and depress the peritoneum. B: Technique of passage of a Miya hook through the ligament. Inset: Technique of retrieval of the suture. (Continued)
Unilateral fixation of vaginal vault

Vaginal wall

To be inverted

C: Two sutures have been passed through the complex. D: Technique of fixing the vaginal apex to the coccygeus-sacrospinous ligament complex (CSSL). If a pulley stitch is performed, then permanent sutures should be used. If the sutures are passed through the vaginal epithelium and tied in the vaginal lumen, then delayed absorbable sutures should be used. E: The vagina is closed before tying the suspension sutures. F: Tied sacrospinous sutures. (From Baggish MS, Karram MM. Atlas of pelvic anatomy and gynecologic surgery. New York: Saunders; 2001.)

FIGURE 36E.11. (Continued)
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

### TABLE 36E.1

**LONG-TERM COMPLICATIONS, FOLLOW-UP, AND RECURRENCE OF PROLAPSE AFTER SACROSPINOUS LIGAMENT SUSPENSION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigation</th>
<th>Duration of follow-up</th>
<th>No. available for follow-up</th>
<th>Anterior wall</th>
<th>Posterior wall</th>
<th>Unspecified/ multiple sites</th>
<th>No. cured (%)</th>
<th>Care assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Richter and Alboch</td>
<td>1–10 yr</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>0/12</td>
<td>0/10</td>
<td>57 (70)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1981) and Richter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1982)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morley and Delancey</td>
<td>≥2 yr</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>5/5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1988)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown et al. (1989)</td>
<td>8–21 mo</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>15/100 (91)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketel and Herbertson</td>
<td></td>
<td>31</td>
<td>2/6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>25 (81)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1989)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cruikshank and Cox</td>
<td>8 mo–3.2 yr</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/5</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>40 (83)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1990)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monk et al. (1991)</td>
<td>1 mo–8.6 yr</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0/6</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>52 (83)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backer (1992)</td>
<td></td>
<td>51</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/3</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>48 (94)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heitenson (1992)</td>
<td>6 mo–5.6 yr</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>19 (86)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imparato et al. (1992)</td>
<td>2–5 yr</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>0/4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0/11</td>
<td>140 (90)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shull et al. (1992)</td>
<td></td>
<td>81</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/20</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>53 (63)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaminski et al. (1993)</td>
<td></td>
<td>23</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>20 (87)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carey and Slack (1994)</td>
<td>2 mo–1 yr</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0/16</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>46 (75)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proges and Smiles (1994)</td>
<td></td>
<td>76</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holley et al. (1995)</td>
<td>15–79 mo</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/6</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>33 (8)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peters and Christenson</td>
<td>Median = 48 mo</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>4/6</td>
<td>23 (77)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elkins et al. (1995)</td>
<td></td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12 (86)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See et al. (1997)</td>
<td>7–72 mo</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>0/16</td>
<td>3/1</td>
<td>53 (71)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocan et al. (1997)</td>
<td>4–54 mos</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/7</td>
<td>6/7</td>
<td>43 (80)</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hewson and Hon (1998)</td>
<td>8 mo–5 yr</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>6/6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5 (83)</td>
<td>Subjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>1 mo–11 yr</td>
<td>1,137</td>
<td>20/36</td>
<td>7/96</td>
<td>4/25</td>
<td>5 (83)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Subjective assessment based on telephone interview or questionnaire; objective assessment based on findings from pelvic examination.

*Cure rate applies to vaginal vault support only; does not include support defect at other site.

*Extrapolated from text.

*Includes 11 patients whose uteri were preserved.

*Includes 33 patients with anterior vaginal wall defects, three vaginal vault prolapses, and eight posterior vaginal wall relaxations.

From Sze EHM, Karram MM. Vaginal operations to correct vaginal vault prolapse: a review. Obstet Gynecol 1997;89:466.

(12%) had evidence of an anterior wall defect in the form of cystocele or urethrocele. However, 25 of these defects were noted to be only grade 1. Eleven (4%) patients subsequently developed posterior wall defects. In all, 18 patients (13%) had development of one or more support defects; however, 24 of these were grade 1 only. Two patients required another surgery for recurrent prolapse.

In 2000, Barber and colleagues reported their series of 46 patients, of whom 39 were available for long-term follow-up. Of note is that 19/26 anterior wall, 5/7 apical, and 13/21 posterior wall defects were designated as stage I. Three patients required another surgery for recurrent prolapse.

In 2001, Karram and colleagues reported on 202 patients. One hundred and sixty-eight patients were available for follow-up either by phone or office visit. Eighty-nine percent of patients indicated that they were happy or satisfied with the procedure. The reoperation rate was 5.5%. In 2006, Silva and colleagues reported on 72 patients who underwent uterosacral vault suspension. Two patients (2.8%) had stage II recurrence of apical prolapse with a mean follow-up of 5.1 years. These results are summarized in Table 36E.2.

**Complications** included hemorrhage with subsequent transfusion or bowel and bladder injury. The most common complication of this procedure, however, is ureteral injury or kinking. Karram and colleagues reported a 2.4% risk. Barber and colleagues reported an 11% risk, and Shull and colleagues reported a 4% risk. It is imperative that intraoperative cystoscopy be done to ensure ureteral patency. If ureteral spill is not observed, then the suspension sutures on that side should be cut and removed and the ureter reevaluated. Often, the suture can be replaced using a more medial placement into the uterosacral ligament complex.
**FIGURE 36E.12.** Uterosacral ligament suspension with fascial reconstruction. A: Apex of vagina is grasped with two Allis clamps. B: Enterocele has been entered and nonabsorbable sutures have been passed through the uterosacral ligaments at the level of the ischial spines. C: Sutures have been tied across midline, creating a firm ridge to which the vagina will be anchored. D: Absorbable sutures are used to suspend anterior and posterior vaginal walls with their fascia to uterosacral ligaments. E: Tying of these sutures suspends the vagina into the hollow of the sacrum and restores the continuity of the endopelvic fascia of the anterior and posterior vaginal walls. (From Walters MD, Karram MM. *Urogynecology and reconstructive pelvic surgery.* 2nd ed. St. Louis: CV Mosby; 1999.)
Iliococcygeus Fascia Suspension

In 1963, Linton described bilateral fixation of prolapsed vaginal vault to iliococcygeal fascia on three patients with inadequate uterosacral ligaments. In 1993, Shull and colleagues reported using this technique to treat 42 women. Their approach was to identify all fibromuscular vaginal wall defects preoperatively. Before iliococcygeus suspension, any anterior compartment defects are fixed. A cul-de-sac repair may be undertaken to shorten and approximate the uterosacral ligaments. Cuff suspension and posterior colporrhaphy are approached by excising a diamond-shaped section of tissue from the perineum and introitus. The vaginal epithelium is then freed from the rectum and rectovaginal fibromuscular vaginal wall, and the dissection is carried laterally to the levators and cephalad to the cuff. The iliococcygeus muscle is identified lateral to the rectum and anterior to the ischial spine. The surgeon then uses the nondominant hand to press the rectum down and medially. A suture is placed just anterior to the ischial spine. Both ends of the suture are then passed through the ipsilateral vaginal apex. The same procedure is repeated on the patient's opposite side. If delayed absorbable suture is used, it should be passed through the full thickness of the vagina. If nonabsorbable suture is used, a pulley stitch similar to that described by Shull and colleagues and by Meeks 13 years earlier to shorten and approximate the uterosacral ligaments by sewing the serosa of the sigmoid to the lateral peritoneum. The appropriate amount of graft material is cut, and sutures are placed through the graft and tied. The benefit of the EEA sizer is that penetration into the vagina is easily detected by the tactile sensation of the needle on the metal sizer. The sutures are then placed through the mesh and tied down. In 1997, Cundiff and colleagues recommended extending the mesh to the perineum. We generally extend the mesh approximately halfway down the posterior wall. We also place two to four pairs of 0 nonabsorbable suture on the anterior aspect of the vagina and attach a separate piece of mesh. This anterior mesh is sewn to the posterior mesh just proximal to the vaginal apex. Other potential configurations have also been described. A Moschowitz or Halban procedure is then done to obliterate the cul-de-sac. To expose the presacral area, the rectosigmoid is then reflected to the left. The bifurcation of the aorta is then reflected to the left. The course of the ureters and the uterine artery is then followed. The right ureter is identified and retracted laterally. The peritoneum over the sacral promontory is opened and carried down over the anterior surface of the sacrum. With the peritoneum reflected, the middle sacral artery and vein are identified. The left common iliac vein and artery are then identified. Any adhesions are then released by the surgeon's hand or with scissors. The peritoneum reflected, the middle sacral artery and vein are identified. The left common iliac vein and artery are then identified. Any adhesions are then released by the surgeon's hand or with scissors. The peritoneum is then dissected free laterally. Three to five pairs of 0 nonabsorbable suture are placed on the posterior aspect of the vagina about 1.5 to 2 cm apart. The suture incorporates the full thickness of the vaginal wall without entering the vaginal lumen. If the vagina is thin, imbricating sutures can be used to increase its thickness. The benefit of the EEA sizer is that it penetrates into the vagina is easily detected by the tactile sensation of the needle on the metal sizer. If the vagina is thin, imbricating sutures can be used to increase its thickness. The benefit of the EEA sizer is that it penetrates into the vagina is easily detected by the tactile sensation of the needle on the metal sizer.

Suspension of the vagina to the sacral promontory or into the hollow of the sacrum with an intervening mesh has been shown to be an effective treatment for vault prolapse. The patient is placed in Allen stirrups and is prepared and draped. Alternatively, the patient could be placed in the frog-leg position. Either position allows access to the vagina during the operation. We generally use an EEA sizer for manipulation, although a sponge stick may also be used. A three-way Foley catheter is used to drain the bladder. A laparotomy incision is made via a low transverse or vertical midline approach. Most laparotomy sponges are then used to pack the bowel into the upper abdomen. Any adhesions should be carefully taken down. The course of the ureters and the cul-de-sac should be identified and palpated. If the patient has a uterus, a hysterectomy should be done first and the cuff closed.

The vagina is then elevated using an EEA sizer (Fig. 36E.14). The peritoneum is then dissected off the anterior vaginal wall. The peritoneum on the posterior aspect of the vagina is incised in the midline and carried down into the cul-de-sac. The peritoneum is then dissected free laterally. Three to five pairs of 0 nonabsorbable suture are placed on the posterior aspect of the vagina about 1.5 to 2 cm apart. The suture incorporates the full thickness of the vaginal wall without entering the vaginal lumen. If the vagina is thin, imbricating sutures can be used to increase its thickness. The benefit of the EEA sizer is that it penetrates into the vagina is easily detected by the tactile sensation of the needle on the metal sizer.

The sutures are then placed through the mesh and tied down. In 1997, Cundiff and colleagues recommended extending the mesh to the perineum. We generally extend the mesh approximately halfway down the posterior wall. We also place two to four pairs of 0 nonabsorbable suture on the anterior aspect of the vagina and attach a separate piece of mesh. This anterior mesh is sewn to the posterior mesh just proximal to the vaginal apex. Other potential configurations have also been described. A Moschowitz or Halban procedure is then done to obliterate the cul-de-sac. To expose the presacral area, the rectosigmoid is then reflected to the left. The bifurcation of the aorta is palpated, and again the right ureter is identified and retracted laterally. The peritoneum over the sacral promontory is opened and carried down over the anterior surface of the sacrum. With the peritoneum reflected, the middle sacral artery and vein are identified. The left common iliac vein and artery are also prone to injury and should be identified. A subperitoneal tunnel can be created into the cul-de-sac by blunt and sharp dissection. The graft can then be placed retroperitoneally. Alternatively, the graft can be placed over the previous culdoplasty and can then be extraperitonealized by sewing the serosa of the sigmoid to the lateral peritoneum of the cul-de-sac.

SUSPEND THE VAGINA

Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

| TABLE 36E.2 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RESULTS OF UTEROSACRAL LIGAMENT SUSPENSION FOR VAGINAL VAULT PROLAPSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jenkins 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barber 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karram 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amundsen et al. 2003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FIGURE 36E.13. Ileococcygeus fascia suspension. A: With the surgeon's finger pressing the rectum downward, the right ileococcygeus fascia suture is placed. Insert: Approximate location of the ileococcygeus fascia sutures. B: Bilateral ileococcygeus fascia suspension. (From Baggish MS, Karram MM. Atlas of pelvic anatomy and gynecologic surgery. New York: Saunders; 2001.)
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

The vagina is elevated with an EEA sizer. The peritoneum over the vagina is opened, exposing the muscular portion of the vaginal wall (inset). (From Baggish MS, Karram MM. Atlas of pelvic anatomy and gynecologic surgery. New York: Saunders; 2001.)

The vagina is inspected and evaluated for any remaining defects. Usually a posterior colporrhaphy and a perineoplasty are also required. Although the exact indications for abdominal sacral colpopexy are controversial, many surgeons use it as their primary surgery for all cases of posthysterectomy vault prolapse. Because of the increased operative time and longer time to recover, we generally use the abdominal approach for young patients with advanced prolapse, patients who have previously failed a vaginal approach, have a shortened vagina, or who have other coexisting conditions that predispose to continued marked increases in intraabdominal pressure and therefore possible subsequent failure.

It has been shown by multiple investigators that abdominal sacral colpopexy is a durable and strong surgical correction for vaginal vault prolapse. Excellent results have been reported by many clinics. Benson and colleagues randomized patients with prolapse to abdominal sacral colpopexy versus bilateral sacrospinous ligament fixation. They found superior results with abdominal sacral colpopexy. The reoperation rate was 33% in the vaginal group and 16% in the abdominal group. Optimal results were obtained in only 29% of the vaginal group and 58% of the abdominal group. The time of operation was longer for the abdominal group. Lo and Wang also reported higher success rates with abdominal sacral colpopexy than sacrospinous fixation, and Maher and associates reported similar success rates.

Overall, the long-term results from sacral colpopexy have been very good. Addison and colleagues reported three recurrent prolapses after sacral colpopexy. In two patients, the synthetic mesh had separated from the vaginal wall, and in the third patient, the posterior vaginal wall ruptured distal to the attachment of the mesh. The authors believed that failures can be minimized by performing meticulous culdoplasty and securing the mesh to the culdoplasty with permanent sutures to prevent the dissection of an enterocele. They also recommended attaching the mesh to the vagina at multiple sites. Long-term follow-up is summarized in Table 36E.3.

Intraoperative complications are unusual, and injury to bowel, bladder, ureter, and infection, as with all abdominal surgery, have been described. Hemorrhage, especially from presacral vessels, can be life-threatening. Hemostasis can be difficult because damaged presacral vessels tend to retract beneath the bony surface. Sutures, hemoclips, and bone wax should be used initially. If these measures fail, then sterile thumbtacks can be employed. These stainless steel thumbtacks should be placed on the retracted bleeding vessel.

The most common long-term complication has been erosion of synthetic mesh. Kohli and colleagues in 1996 reported an incidence of 7%. Removal of the eroded mesh can be done via an abdominal or vaginal route. We have had good success removing the mesh via the vaginal route. With the patient prepped and draped, as much of the mesh as possible is exposed. The mesh is cut as high as possible and removed. The vaginal edges are then trimmed and closed in layers.

**High Uterosacral Ligament Suspension**

The vaginal approach of vaginal suspension to the uterosacral ligaments has been described. The same concept can also be used in an abdominal approach. After the abdominal wall has been opened and the bowel has been packed away, the remnants of the uterosacral ligaments are identified and tagged.
FIGURE 36E.16. Attachment of the mesh to the sacrum. Closure of the peritoneum over the mesh is shown in the inset. (From Baggish MS, Karram MM. Atlas of pelvic anatomy and gynecologic surgery. New York: Saunders, 2001.)

with suture near the ischial spine. The ureters are identified bilaterally. The enterocele is then addressed by obliteration of the cul-de-sac. The peritoneum over the vaginal apex is then opened, and the endopelvic fibromuscular vaginal wall is identified and reapproximated to form a continuous covering of endopelvic fibromuscular vaginal wall over the vaginal epithelium. Nonabsorbable sutures are then used to suspend the vagina with the now intact endopelvic fibromuscular vaginal wall to the uterosacral ligaments (Figs. 36E.17 and 36E.18).

Results for the abdominal approach to high uterosacral suspension should be similar to those for the vaginal approach.

There are, however, no long-term studies available. Complications are similar to those for the vaginal approach.

LAPAROSCOPIC APPROACH TO VAGINAL SUSPENSION

The techniques and concepts described earlier can also be approached via laparoscopy. The laparoscopic approach to the patient for positioning, port placement, and equipment is described elsewhere. The laparoscopic approach to these
TABLE 36E.3
LONG-TERM FOLLOW-UP AND RECURRENCE OF PROLAPSE AFTER ABDOMINAL SACRAL COLPOPEXY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigator</th>
<th>Duration of follow-up (mo)</th>
<th>No. available for follow-up</th>
<th>Unspecified/ multiple sites</th>
<th>No. cured (%)</th>
<th>Care assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rust et al. (1976)</td>
<td>9–40</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>12/12 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Todd (1978)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>Objective³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feldman and Birnbaum (1979)</td>
<td>1–48</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>20/21 (95)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cowan and Morgan (1980)</td>
<td>≤60</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>38/39 (97)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addison et al. (1985)</td>
<td>6–126</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>54/56 (96)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drutz and Cha (1987)</td>
<td>3–93</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>14/15 (93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angulo and Klugman (1989)</td>
<td>2–36</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>18/18 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baker et al. (1990)</td>
<td>1–45</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/4</td>
<td>51/51 (100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cowan and Morgan (1980)</td>
<td>1–48</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>20/21 (95)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addison et al. (1990)</td>
<td>6–126</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>54/56 (96)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drutz and Cha (1991)</td>
<td>3–35</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>21/23 (91)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snyder and Krantz (1991)</td>
<td>≥6</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>1/8</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>108/116 (93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timmons et al. (1992)</td>
<td>9–216</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/3</td>
<td>161/162 (99)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imparat et al. (1992)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>59/63 (94)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traiman et al. (1992)</td>
<td>6–60</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>10/11 (91)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joos (1993)</td>
<td>12–120</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>39/40 (96)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groninger et al. (1994)</td>
<td>12–240</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>45/48 (94)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Votanen et al. (1994)</td>
<td>12–96</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>23/27 (85)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valaitis and Stanton (1994)</td>
<td>3–91</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>3/3</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>38/41 (93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Van Lindert et al. (1996)</td>
<td>15–63</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>61/61 (100)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Denotes the number of patients with recurrent prolapse who underwent surgical repair/number of patients with recurrent prolapse.

³Extrapolated from text.

NA, Not available.

procedures requires patience, attention to detail, and the realization that there is a steep learning curve. It is our belief that the operation and subsequent outcomes should not be compromised for the purpose of having achieved the operation by this approach. Therefore, the surgical measures taken to achieve the underlying concepts should not be significantly altered or changed.

ABDOMINAL VERSUS VAGINAL APPROACH TO PELVIC PROLAPSE

Expert opinion differs as to the most appropriate approach to pelvic organ prolapse. There are two randomized controlled trials that evaluate the best approach to prolapse repairs. Benson and associates demonstrated the abdominal sacral colpopexy was more likely to result in an optimal outcome as compared with the vaginal approach using sacropinous fixation. The vaginal group also underwent urethral urethropexy for stress incontinence. Previous authors have shown that retroversion of the vaginal axis predisposes to recurrent anterior vaginal wall prolapse. Maher and colleagues compared abdominal sacral colpopexy to unilateral sacropinous fixation and found them to be equally effective in the treatment of posthysterectomy vault prolapse. Data from both studies suggest the vaginal route to be safer and require less operative time. It is important to note that in both studies, the authors are in fact comparing a combination of procedures, and this must be taken into account when evaluating this data. It is our opinion that no one surgical approach is appropriate for all patients. Surgeons must be adept at multiple approaches and procedures to effectively care for all patients.

ROLE OF HYSTERECTOMY IN PROLAPSE REPAIRS

Hysterectomy with repair of pelvic support defects is standard practice for most parts of the world. However, more attention has been placed on uterine preservation when undergoing surgery for prolapse repairs. This is probably due to concerns about bowel, bladder, and sexual function following removal of the uterus and the improvement of conservative measures to treat menometrorrhagia. Three studies by Maher and associates, Hefni and colleagues, and van Brummen and associates failed to show a decrease in prolapse recurrence if hysterectomy was performed. There is no evidence that suggests routine hysterectomy improves the outcome of prolapse surgery, and there...
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

OBLITERATIVE PROCEDURES

Le Fort Partial Colpocleisis

At times, a patient may be sufficiently bothered by uterovaginal or vault prolapse but they are poor candidates for major reconstructive surgery because of their overall medical condition. An obliteratorive procedure may then be a good approach for these women. A Le Fort procedure is an option if the patient has her uterus and is no longer sexually active. The rate of postoperative urinary stress incontinence has been reported to be as high as 30% after this procedure, and, because the uterus is retained, it will be difficult to evaluate any future uterine bleeding or cervical pathology. Therefore, endometrial biopsy and Papanicolaou smear must be done before surgery.

The procedure is started by placing the cervix on traction to evert the vagina. The vaginal mucosa is injected with 0.025% Marcaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine just below the epithelium. A Foley catheter with a 30-cc balloon is placed in the bladder for identification of the bladder neck. A marking pen or scalpel is used to mark out the areas that are to be denuded both anteriorly and posteriorly. The area should extend 2 cm proximal to the tip of the cervix to 4 to 5 cm below the external meatus. A mirror image on the posterior aspect of the cervix should also be marked out. The previously marked areas are removed by sharp dissection. The surgeon should leave the maximum amount of fibromuscular vaginal wall behind on the bladder and rectum. Hemostasis is an absolute must (Fig. 36E.19). The cut edges of the anterior and posterior vaginal wall are sewn together with interrupted delayed absorbable sutures. The knot should be turned into the epithelium-lined tunnels that were created bilaterally. The uterus and vaginal apex are...
Elevated vaginal apex by EES sizer
Complete obliteration of cul-de-sac with facial reconstruction

FIGURE 36E.18. Longitudinally placed nonabsorbable sutures are passed through the ridge of uterosacral ligaments, down the cul-de-sac to the edge of the rectovaginal fascia, into the vaginal vault, and finally, through the edge of pubocervical fascia. Tying of the sutures (inset) elevates the apex of the vagina to the uterosacral ligaments and reapproximates the pubocervical fascia with the rectovaginal fascia. (From Baggish MS, Karram MM. Atlas of pelvic anatomy and gynecologic surgery. New York: Saunders; 2001.)

Vaginal Vault Prolapse

Gradually turned inward. After the vagina has been inverted, the superior and inferior margins of the rectangle can be sutured. A plication of the bladder neck should be routinely performed because of the high incidence of postoperative stress incontinence. Also, because there is no real support to the repair, an aggressive perineorrhaphy should be done to narrow the introitus.

In general, about 90% of patients have relief of symptoms and have good anatomic results. Complete breakdown and recurrence can be expected in 2% to 5% of patients. Results are summarized in Table 36E.4.

Early postoperative complications include hematoma and infection. These patients typically have other medical problems that may need to be addressed. Goldman and colleagues in 1985 reported on late postoperative complications from a modified Le Fort procedure in 118 patients. Ninety percent of patients had good anatomic results, whereas 83% had relief of symptoms. Two percent to 5% had recurrence of their prolapse, 10.2% developed incontinence or worsening of their incontinence, and 1.8% had late vaginal bleeding.

Colpectomy and Colpocleisis

For patients with posthysterectomy vault prolapse who do not desire coital function and for whom operative time is to be kept
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

FIGURE 36E.19. Le Fort partial colpocleisis. A: The anterior vaginal wall has been removed, and a plication stitch is placed at the bladder neck. B: The posterior vaginal wall is removed. C and D: The cut edge of the anterior vaginal wall is sewn in the cut edge of the posterior vaginal wall in such a way that the uterus and vagina are inverted. (From Baggish MS, Karram MM. Atlas of pelvic anatomy and gynecologic surgery. New York: Saunders; 2001.)
FIGURE 36E.20. Colpectomy and complete colpocleisis. A and B: After subcutaneous infiltration with lidocaine or bupivacaine hydrochloride in 1/200,000 epinephrine solution, the vagina is circumscribed by an incision at the site of the hymen and marked into quadrants. Each quadrant is removed by sharp dissection. C: Purse-string delayed absorbable sutures are placed. The leading edge of the soft tissue is inversed by the tip of a forceps. Purse-string sutures are tied 1 before 2 and 2 before 3, with progressive inversion of the soft tissue before the tying of each suture. D: The final relationship is shown in cross section. A perineorrhaphy is also usually performed. (From Bagish MS, Karram MM. Atlas of pelvic anatomy and gynecologic surgery. New York: Saunders; 2001.)
TABLE 36E.4

LONG-TERM FOLLOW-UP AND RECURRENCE OF PROLAPSE AFTER LE FORT COLPOCLEISIS, PARTIAL COLPECTOMY, AND TOTAL COLPECTOMY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigator</th>
<th>Duration of follow up (mo)</th>
<th>No. available for follow-up</th>
<th>Anterior wall&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Posterior wall&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Unspecified/ multiple wall&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>No. cured total (%)</th>
<th>Care assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LEFORT COLPOCLEISIS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phaneuf (1935)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>17/20 (85)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adair and DaSef (1936)</td>
<td>3–36</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>35/38 (92)</td>
<td>Objective&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collins and Lock (1941)</td>
<td>1–48</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>29/31 (94)</td>
<td>Objective&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mazer and Israel (1948)</td>
<td>24–132</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>37/38 (97)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wolf (1952)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>12/13 (92)</td>
<td>Objective&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Falk and Kaufman (1955)</td>
<td>24–132</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/2</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>96/100 (96)</td>
<td>Objective&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hanson and Kretel (1969)</td>
<td>≥60</td>
<td>216</td>
<td>0/3</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>203/216 (94)</td>
<td>Subjective/ Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ridley (1972)</td>
<td>6–60</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>2/1</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>14/17 (82)</td>
<td>Subjective/ Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ubachs et al. (1973)</td>
<td>≥36</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>2/3</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>85/93 (91)</td>
<td>Objective&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durely et al. (1993)</td>
<td>4–40</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>19/20 (95)</td>
<td>Objective&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARTIAL COLPECTOMY</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Langmade and Oliver (1986)</td>
<td>12–144</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>102/102 (100)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL COLPECTOMY</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phaneuf (1935)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>5/5 (100)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adams (1951)</td>
<td>12–408</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>30/30 (100)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anderson and Dray (1960)</td>
<td>6–12</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>0/1</td>
<td>16/18 (89)</td>
<td>Objective&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ridley (1972)</td>
<td>6–60</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>41/41 (100)</td>
<td>Subjective/ Objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delancey and Morley (1997)</td>
<td>Mean = 35</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>0/0</td>
<td>32/33 (97)</td>
<td>Subjective/ Objective</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Number of patients with recurrent prolapse who underwent surgical repair/number of patients with recurrent prolapse.

<sup>b</sup>Extrapolated from text.

NA, Not available.

at a minimum, a colpectomy and colpocleisis can be done to treat the prolapse.

To perform this operation, the vaginal mucosa is completely excised from the underlying endopelvic fibromuscular vaginal wall. A series of purse-string sutures are used to invert the prolapse and endopelvic fibromuscular vaginal wall (Fig. 36E.20). Once the prolapse is reduced, a posterior colpoperineorrhaphy and levatorplasty is done. Von Pechmann and colleagues reported two cases of rectal prolapse following total colpocleisis in a total of 92 patients. The authors also reported that hysterectomy done at the time of colpectomy was associated with a statistically significant decrease in hematoctrit and increase in transfusion requirement. Results are listed in Table 36E.4.

CONCLUSION

Our understanding of the anatomy and concepts of pelvic organ prolapse and its treatments are constantly evolving. This evolution will and must continue to facilitate our understanding of the complex and varied etiologies of pelvic organ prolapse. Surgical treatments must restore both anatomic and functional derangements. This evolution will also provide insight into preventive measures for women at risk for pelvic organ prolapse and pelvic floor dysfunction. We, as pelvic surgeons, must continue to evaluate and apply new principles and techniques to established surgical dictums. There must be continued research, education, and a thoughtful, honest comparison of long-term surgical outcomes if we are going to continue to improve our care to a growing number of afflicted but active patients.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- The ultimate goal of pelvic reconstructive surgery is to restore anatomy, maintain or restore visceral function, and maintain or restore sexual function.
- The McCall culdoplasty and its various modifications are the most commonly used transvaginal techniques to suspend the vaginal apex. Approximately three delayed absorbable sutures are used to plicate the uterosacral ligaments. The Mayo Clinic technique excises a wedge of posterior and anterior vaginal wall, and any enterocele that is present, and includes both the uterosacral and cardinal ligaments for support.
For significant vaginal prolapse, the sacrospinous ligament fixation is a very useful technique. Shoulders should be very familiar with the anatomy and experienced with the procedure because injury to the pudendal nerve or vessels can cause sensory injury or life-threatening hemorrhage.

Abdominal sacral colposcopy is a very useful technique if an abdominal approach is indicated for other reasons (adnexal mass) and is preferred by some surgeons for the treatment of recurrent prolapse after a prior surgical failure. We prefer to support the vagina to this longitudinal ligament of the sacrum using synthetic mesh, which is secured to the anterior and posterior vaginal walls with 0 nonabsorbable sutures.


Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas


Pelvic organ prolapse—Downward displacement of structures that are normally located adjacent to the vaginal vault.

Pelvic Organ Prolapse Quantification (POP-Q) scale—A coring system used to quantify pelvic organ prolapse; see Chapter 36A.

Pessary—A device inserted into the vagina for correction of pelvic organ prolapse.

Splenling—A maneuver that assists with elimination of urine or feces, usually used in cases of pelvic organ prolapse.

Stress urinary incontinence—Leakage of urine with any maneuver that increases intraabdominal pressure (such as a cough or sneeze).

The surgeon who treats patients with pelvic floor defects should also be familiar with the nonsurgical management of these disorders. Although pelvic organ prolapse prevalence has been and continues to rise steadily, pessary use has previously fallen out of favor, with renewed interest having been noted only recently. Vaginal pessaries have been used for the treatment of not only genital prolapse but also urinary incontinence, uterine retroversion, cervical incompetence, and, more recently, local administration of estrogen. Various shapes and sizes allow a variety of pelvic floor defects to be adequately managed without the need for surgery. Although modern pessaries have been used for a long time with an abundance of expert opinion and case reports in the literature, rigorous investigations of these modalities is severely limited, as concluded in a recent Cochrane review. This chapter reviews the available data on pessary use for pelvic organ prolapse, some of the more commonly used pessary types and their proper fitting, subsequent follow-up, and potential complications.

By the end of the 16th century, various pessaries of brass and waxed cork were used for uterine prolapse. The late 17th century saw a considerable number of medical therapies and pharmaceutical concoctions promoted for the treatment of genital prolapse, which persisted even into the 18th century. In the mid-19th century, the American Medical Association documented 123 different pessaries. As the safety of surgical procedures has improved and concerns of adverse consequences of pessaries reported, there has been a tendency during the mid-20th century to use pessaries less often in favor of corrective surgery. Modern pessaries are primarily made of silicone, rarely of latex rubber or acrylic. These materials have completely replaced the old Bakelite and hard-rubber types used previously. Silicone is advantageous because it is inert, does not absorb secretions or odors, is flexible yet sturdy, and can be autoclaved for resterilization.

The primary indication for fitting a pessary is the nonsurgical relief of symptoms associated with pelvic organ prolapse. This ideally should be achieved without introduction or worsening of urinary incontinence and with minimization of the risk of vaginal mucosal abrasion, erosion, and bleeding. Additionally, pessaries are used for the alleviation of stress incontinence and will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 37.

Surveys demonstrate that 87% to 98% of gynecologists and/or urogynecologists prescribe pessaries in their practice. Among members of the American Urogynecologic Society (AUGS), 77% of those responding offered pessaries as first-line therapy for pelvic organ prolapse, whereas 12% offered them only to women who are not considered good surgical candidates or those who refused surgery. Among a randomly drawn survey of American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) members, 20% of gynecologists prescribed pessaries only to patients deemed poor surgical candidates. Some advocate pessaries in patients who have prolapse-related vaginal and/or cervical ulcerations and for mucosal hypertrophy. In the AUGS survey, those who described themselves as gynecologists or urologists (as opposed to urogynecologists or...
obstetrician–gynecologists) were more likely to offer pessaries only to patients who are poor surgical candidates. Those in practice for more than 20 years were found to be less likely to use pessaries as a first-line management option, preferring to limit their use to nonsurgical patients. In the ACOG members survey, physicians with a self-reported special interest in urogynecology prescribed pessaries more often than those who did not proscribe such an interest, and female physicians were more likely to prescribe pessaries than their male counterparts.

**PESSARY USAGE: PATIENT PERSPECTIVE**

Only a few recent studies have focused on the efficacy and impact on quality of life that pessaries provide for patients. A cross-sectional study in which all new patients seen in a referral practice were counseled regarding their options found that older patients were 10% more likely to choose a pessary rather than surgery as their initial management option for prolapse. Ring pessaries were used in 74% of these 73 patients, and the rest were Gellhorn pessaries. At 2-month follow-up, they found significant resolution of the symptoms of feeling a bulge, pelvic pressure, vaginal discharge, and need for splinting to void or effect a bowel movement. Urinary symptoms of stress incontinence and urge incontinence improved in 45% of patients, and voiding difficulties improved in 53%. On the other hand, de novo stress incontinence occurred in 21% of patients with a pessary. Overall, 67 of the 73 women were “very satisfied” or “somewhat satisfied” for a 92% satisfaction rate among those with a successful pessary fitting. Even using an intent-to-treat analysis, 67% of the original 100 women who were fitted for a pessary reported being satisfied. Of the patients who were sexually active before pessary use, 90% were able to continue to have sexual intercourse. Those who could not were the ones fitted with a Gellhorn rather than ring pessary.

A retrospective analysis found that women who wore a pessary for prolapse were more likely to continue than those who wore a pessary for incontinence. They also found that women who reported themselves as sexually active were more likely than those who were not sexually active to continue pessary use regardless of the indication. Age, parity, menopausal status, and previous surgical history were not found to be predictors of pessary continuation.

A small retrospective observational study suggests that 1 year following pessary use, pelvic organ prolapse did not worsen, as evaluated by Pelvic Organ Prolapse Quantification (POP-Q) measurements with Valsalva. The study found that in 4 of 19 (21%) patients, their prolapse improved, and the rest remained unchanged.

**SUCCESS AND RISK FACTORS FOR FAILURE**

In a prospective study by Wu and colleagues, among 110 women who opted for and were fitted for pessaries as first-line therapy, 81 (74%) were successfully fitted. Characteristics associated with initial failure of pessary fitting included younger age, higher parity, a history of pelvic surgery, and stress incontinence. The degree of pelvic organ prolapse did not predict failure of initial fitting, neither did hormone replacement or the adequacy of the perineal body. In this study, the initial pessary used was a ring or a ring with support in the vast majority of cases (95%), with a cube pessary used for the remaining patients. No differences were noted in efficacy between these different pessary types.

Clemens and colleagues prospectively observed 100 patients who were fitted with ring (with support) or Gellhorn pessaries, with an initial pessary fitting success rate of 94%. However, this declined to 73% when evaluated 2 weeks later. Short vaginal length (≤ 6 cm) and a wide introitus (4 finger breadths) were associated with failure of pessary fitting. The degree of prolapse, genital hiatus size, and presence of vaginal atrophy were not associated with failure. The same group followed a subset of this cohort—67 women who were satisfied at their 2-month follow-up—for a full year. At the 1-year follow-up, 43 patients (64%) continued with pessary use, whereas 16 elected surgery.

Mutone and colleagues, in a retrospective study of 407 patients, reported a lower pessary fitting success rate of 41% when evaluated 3 weeks after the initial fitting. Characteristics associated with failure in this study included prior hysterectomy or surgery for prolapse. There was no association with the type or degree of pelvic organ prolapse. In a retrospective study of 101 patients, Saluk and colleagues reported discontinuation rates using primarily the Gellhorn pessary. The following are the categories reported of the reasons for discontinuation: inconvenience or inadequate relief of symptoms (40%), difficulty in removal (23%), discomfort (13%), patient requesting surgery (13%), pessary fell out (6%), and inability to urinate (5%).

**CLINICAL EVALUATION**

The patient with pelvic floor dysfunction requires careful evaluation by history and physical examination as outlined in Chapter 16A. Important considerations are assessment of symptoms attributable to prolapse, including pelvic pressure or discomfort, a sensation that something is falling out or protruding, voiding and defecatory symptoms, and urinary incontinence. The clinical evaluation should be aimed at investigating and quantifying the specific pelvic support defects present in terms of anterior, posterior, and apical compartments. The POP-Q scale is a validated and widely accepted measure of the degree of pelvic organ prolapse and includes a measure of vaginal length. Testing for occult stress urinary incontinence by provocative maneuvers with the prolapse reduced using a femoral (or high) speculum helps identify patients who may suffer from urinary leakage associated with pessary use. This may be helpful in the counseling of such a patient and perhaps in choosing a pessary with better support of the bladder neck to prevent such an undesirable outcome.

Evaluation of the vaginal mucosa to assess estrogen status is necessary. The concern for pessary-associated erosion and ulceration in the atrophic vagina leads the vast majority of surveyed AUGS members (94%) to recommend concurrent estrogen replacement therapy in the absence of contraindications. Wu and colleagues reported that the incidence of vaginal abrasions increased as the vaginal epithelium exhibited more atrophy. Furthermore, those that experienced vaginal abrasions were more likely to discontinue pessary use. In my experience,
use of vaginal estrogen therapy is the preferred method to treat and prevent vaginal atrophy.

**TYPES OF PESSARIES**

There have been hundreds of pessaries described throughout the ages. Currently, however, fewer than 20 pessary types are used for prolapse. Some types have been further modified for the nonsurgical management of stress urinary incontinence by increasing support to the bladder neck (Fig. 36F.1).

Of responding AUGS members, 78% tailored their choice of pessary type to the specific pelvic support defect. Of the members who reported using the same pessary for all types of prolapse, the ring was the most commonly used. Most respondents (59%) considered a weak pelvic diaphragm—whereas only 44% considered a prior hysterectomy—as important in the choice of pessary, generally favoring a space-occupying rather than supportive pessary in each of these circumstances. The supportive pessaries were defined as those that were deprived by a spring mechanism (ring, Gehrung, lever-type pessaries) and thought to be supported by the symphysis pubis. The space-filling pessaries were defined as supported by the creation of suction between the pessary and the vaginal walls (e.g., cube) or by providing a diameter larger than the genital hiatus (donut, InflatoBall, Shaatz) or by both mechanisms (Gellhorn). Although these categories clearly simplify the analysis of data, such a functional classification has not been studied. It is unclear whether the mechanistic differences inferred by such a classification are indeed valid.

Surveys show that the ring pessary is the most commonly used, both among physicians who tailor their pessary choice based on the support defects present and those who use the same pessary for all types of prolapse. It is unclear whether this choice is related to perceived efficacy or issues related to ease of management, patient acceptability, the patient’s ability to remove the pessary, or other considerations.

**Ring Pessary**

The hinged spring circumference of the silicone-coated ring pessary allows for its compression in one direction, which makes for ease of insertion. These pessaries are similar in appearance to the contraceptive diaphragm and thus may be more familiar and acceptable to some patients. It is recommended that once inserted behind the symphysis pubis, the ring be turned 90 degrees because it collapses only along a single axis. The ring with support may provide additional support to a mild anterior vaginal defect and prevents the rare complication of an incarcerated herniated cervix through the open ring. The ring pessary is amenable for self-removal and insertion by the patient. It may be worn during coitus.

**Donut Pessary**

The silicone donut-shaped pessary may be used for higher degrees of prolapse. It is supported by the levator muscles and fills the upper vagina completely. It is, therefore, considered appropriate for the management of uterovaginal and vaginal vault prolapse. Insertion through the introitus is in the vertical plane, and the pessary is turned to a horizontal plane when inserted beyond the levator muscles. It tends to be difficult for patients to remove this type of pessary by themselves. Coitus is not usually possible with this type of pessary.

The InflatoBall is a variant of the donut pessary. Made out of latex rubber, it can be easily inserted and removed when deflated. When inflated by use of a manual pump, it sits above the levator plate much like the donut pessary, with the valve stem tucked in the vagina (Fig. 36F.2). Because it is made out of latex and therefore absorbs secretions and odors, the InflatoBall should be removed and cleaned every 1 to 2 nights and reininserted in the morning. This pessary’s use is contraindicated with a history of latex allergy.

**Gellhorn Pessary**

The Gellhorn pessary is useful in patients with severe degrees of uterovaginal or vaginal vault prolapse. Support derives from the base that sits above the levator plate and the stem that rests on the distal posterior vaginal vault mucoperiostum (Fig. 36F.3). An adequate perineal body is considered by some important for the effectiveness of this pessary, whereas others believe that suction from the concave base contributes to its support.
highly unlikely that patients will be able to remove and reinsert this pessary. The Gellhorn pessary does not allow comfortable coitus because of its shape.

**Shaatz Pessary**

The Shaatz has a shape similar to that of the Gellhorn but has no stem. This may facilitate coitus in some patients. Self-management of this pessary is possible.

**Cube Pessary**

The concave walls of the cube pessary create suction and adhere to the vaginal sidewalls. This characteristic results in effective support for severe uterovaginal or vaginal vault prolapse but can potentially cause ulceration and erosion of the vaginal mucosa. It is, therefore, recommended to remove this pessary nightly. This is achieved by inserting fingers between the pessary and the vaginal walls to release the suction and grasp the pessary itself (not the string) before pulling it out of the vagina.

**Gehrung Pessary**

The arch-shaped Gehrung pessary has a pliable metal frame that allows the pessary to be shaped to the patient’s dimensions. The heels of the pessary rest on the lateral aspects of the posterior vagina, with the distal arch positioned behind the symphysis pubis (Fig. 36F.4). This underutilized pessary is effective in managing anterior and mild posterior compartment defects. Its shape makes this pessary somewhat difficult to insert but also allows for intercourse.

**Lever Pessaries**

All lever pessaries in use today are modifications of the original Hodge pessary. The Smith modification is designed to fit a narrow pubic arch, whereas the Risser fits the wider pubic arch.
arch. The major function of these pessaries is the management of a retrodisplaced uterus. It has been proposed in the treatment of mild anterior and/or posterior compartment defects, as well as for cervical incompetence during pregnancy. When placing a lever pessary in a patient with uterine retrodisplacement, the uterus must be first manually anteverted. Lever pessaries can be worn during intercourse and may be self-managed.

Incontinence Pessaries

Many of the previously described pessaries have undergone additional modification to manage concurrent stress urinary incontinence. This usually involves the addition of a knob that is positioned under the urethra at the level of the bladder neck to help prevent its descent and facilitate temporary compression of the urethra with effort. These pessaries and the Introl device, which is solely designed for treatment of stress incontinence, often result in discontinuation. In a study by Alnaif and Drutz, douching or Trimo-San gel (Cooper Surgical) and does not usually result in discontinuation. If, however, such an erosion or serious abrasion is diagnosed after pessary insertion but was not present before, the erosion is probably related to pressure from the pessary.

COMPLICATIONS

Most commonly, a discharge and odor develop with continued wearing of a vaginal pessary. This is often treated with periodic douching or Trimo-San gel (Cooper Surgical) and does not usually result in discontinuation. In a study by Alnaif and Drutz, bacterial vaginosis was found four times more commonly in pessary users. Mucosal erosion and abrasions of the vagina and/or cervix are more common with cube and Gelhorn pessaries. They are
also more likely in patients who do not remove and reinsert their own pessary, as well as women with untreated vaginal atrophy. Recurrent erosions despite multiple attempts at pessary fitting with an adequately estrogenized vagina should prompt discontinuation of this mode of therapy. Pessary incarceration within the vagina with formation of vaginal adhesions has been described. Removal is facilitated by application of estrogen cream for several days.

Although rare, serious complications have been reported, mainly with the pessary that has been neglected, sometimes for many years. These complications include infections, fistulas, and even complete erosion with transmigration of the pessary into the bladder or the rectum. Herniation and incarceration of the cervix and even small bowel through neglected ring pessaries have been described. Unilateral and bilateral hydrocele with urosepsis and uremia have also been reported.

Chronic irritation associated with prolonged, uninterrupted pessary use has been associated with vaginal cancer. The literature comprises case reports that preclude the assumption of a causal relationship between pessary use and vaginal cancer. It appears to be more likely in the patient with a pessary neglected for many years and perhaps with older pessaries made of rubber. Pessaries used in practice today are primarily made of inert medical grade silicone, which may further reduce the risk of vaginal cancer.

**SUMMARY**

Although vaginal pessaries have been used throughout the millennia, their use has not been intensely studied. They remain a useful alternative either as initial management or reserved for those patients who are otherwise not candidates or do not desire surgery. This requires frank discussion with the patient regarding potential risks and benefits of all the proposed management options before she makes a decision. Pessary types may, at the discretion of the physician, be chosen for specific pelvic support defects. Although follow-up regimens may be individualized, adequate follow-up and treatment of vaginal atrophy are important to prevent the minor and major complications that can be associated with pessary use. The available evidence suggests that most patients who wish to proceed with pessary use as initial management can be successfully fitted.

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- Nonsurgical management of pelvic organ prolapse should be considered in all patients with symptomatic prolapse.
- Indications for insertion of a pelvic pessary include symptomatic prolapse, urinary incontinence, uterine retroversion, or cervical incompetence.
- When using a pessary, care should be taken to avoid worsening stress urinary incontinence after placement.
- Intent to continue vaginal intercourse does not preclude use of a pessary.
- Evaluation of the vaginal mucosa should be performed before pessary placement. Atrophic vaginitis can increase the risk of pessary complications.
- Choice of pessary is highly individualized and will be guided by the type and severity of prolapse, desire to have intercourse, and the practitioner's preference.
- Patients should be followed closely after pessary placement and should be examined at regular intervals. Patients should be asked about vaginal bleeding, malodorous discharge, pain, voiding difficulty, or symptoms of a urinary tract infection.
- At each follow-up visit, the pessary should be removed and the vagina and cervix inspected for signs of erosion or abrasion. Suspicous vaginal lesions should be biopsied.
- Common complications of long-term pessary use include discharge and mucosal irritation or abrasion. Erosions or abrasions can often be addressed by local estrogen treatment or a change in pessary type.
- Serious complications of pessary use are usually only seen in patients with neglected pessaries and can include infection, fistulas, complete erosions, or incarceration.

**Bibliography**


Benson RC. Pessaries: past and present. Paper presented at: the Postgraduate Course in Obstetrics and Gynecology; 1959; Iowa City, IA.


CHAPTER 37 ■ STRESS URINARY INCONTINENCE
ALFRED E. BENT

DEFINITIONS

Cystometrography—Tests of bladder function, including bladder sensation, capacity, and compliance. These tests may be simple clinical evaluations of bladder filling and emptying or may involve electronic measurement of bladder, urethral, and intraabdominal pressures.

Hypermobile stress incontinence—Stress incontinence caused by loss of anatomic support of the urethra and bladder base.

Intrinsic sphincter deficiency—Urinary incontinence that is due to dysfunction of the urethral sphincter mechanism.

Stress urinary incontinence—Voluntary leakage of urine from the urethra caused by increased intraabdominal pressure (coughing, straining, etc.).

Urodynamic stress incontinence—Involuntary leakage of urine during increased abdominal pressure in the absence of a detrusor contraction.

Urinary incontinence is a condition that affects 30% to 40% of older American women, with the majority afflicted with stress urinary incontinence (SUI). Conservative therapy helps a large number of these patients but cures relatively few. Surgical approaches for SUI have become more and more common, large number of these patients but cures relatively few. Surgical approaches for SUI have become more and more common, and have moved to delivery through minimally invasive surgical techniques. The purpose of this chapter is to detail the required evaluation before surgical intervention, then describe the surgical procedures used most effectively, along with the indications, results, and complications.

Stress urinary incontinence is defined by the International Continence Society as a condition defined by urodynamic observations associated with characteristic signs or symptoms. Urodynamic stress incontinence is defined as the involuntary leakage of urine during increased abdominal pressure in the absence of a detrusor contraction. Under the category of lower urinary tract symptoms, SUI is a storage disorder for which the characteristic symptom is the involuntary leakage of urine on effort or exertion, or on sneezing or coughing. The sign of SUI is the observation of involuntary leakage from the urethra synchronous with exertion or effort, such as sneezing or coughing. Current terminology refers to the condition described by both symptoms and urodynamic findings.

Stress incontinence has been divided into hypermobile stress incontinence, caused by anatomic defects, and intrinsic sphincter deficiency, with incontinence resulting from a poorly functioning urethra. This separation has become less distinct with time. SUI may include a wide spectrum of varying degrees of disruption of normal anatomy causing hypermobility or, somewhat paradoxically, scarring and fixation of these same tissues. Urethral sphincter function may be minimally altered so as not to be discernable on testing, or it may be severe. Most experts in the field are of the opinion that there is a contribution of each kind of dysfunction in most patients. The development of SUI has been attributed to a number of causes, with childbearing thought to be a dominant role in altering structural function (Table 37.1).

INITIAL EVALUATION

In 1996, the Agency for Health Care Policy and Research published its consensus guidelines for the evaluation and management of urinary incontinence. These recommendations from a panel of experts include the following: a thorough history (including voiding diary), physical examination, postvoid residual, and urinalysis.

More recently, the 3rd International Consultation on Incontinence held in Monaco (June 19–21, 2004) has published a series of management algorithms, including one for women with incontinence. The basic evaluation includes history; urinary symptom assessment, including a frequency-volume chart and questionnaire; assessment of quality of life and desire for treatment; cough stress test; urinalysis; assessment of voluntary pelvic floor contraction; and assessment of postvoid residual urine.

INITIAL MANAGEMENT

The recommendations for initial management do not require detailed testing, but treatment is based on a presumptive diagnosis of SUI. The first-line therapies commence with lifestyle interventions, which include weight reduction, smoking cessation, and dietary and fluid modification. Estrogen deficiency requires treatment followed by reassessment. Supervised pelvic floor muscle training and bladder training are recommended. The key word here is supervised. Patients will not and cannot manage the proper therapy on their own. An appropriate duration of therapy is 8 to 12 weeks before reassessment for further treatment. Vaginal support devices can be included in the treatment options, depending on availability of the product, ability of the patient to manage the product, patient acceptance, and cost. In Europe, there is drug therapy available in the form of a dual serotonin and noradrenalin reuptake inhibitor, which has well-documented efficacy in large placebo-controlled drug studies.

EVALUATION BEFORE SURGERY

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Practice Bulletin issued in 2005 describes the evaluation of patients with symptoms of SUI. In addition to a focused history and
In the patient who has symptoms that are mixed (stress and movement greater than 30 degrees from horizontal with strain)

- Q-tip test or imaging
- Residual urine determination

Consultation on Incontinence recommended urodynamics to diagnose the type of incontinence. Urethral function testing may be helpful in some patients. Guidelines for operating on bladder function, including cystometry and cystourethroscopy, function blood tests are indicated. Office evaluation of bladder function also is used as a less invasive intervention for SUI in certain patients. A comprehensive listing is provided in Table 37.3. This reflects a combination of the alteration of techniques and approaches of established and effective procedures and the introduction of newer technologies and materials. In today’s surgical practice, it is well established that performing an anterior repair or Kelly plication for the treatment of SUI is standard compared with more effective procedures. This procedure was described in the 19th century; although it remains a recognized therapy for central defect cystocele, the most current international recommendation for use in patients with stress incontinence is in women who prefer to sacrifice some chance of becoming continent for a reduced chance of complications.

More than 200 procedures have been described in the literature for the treatment of stress incontinence (Table 37.3). This reflects a combination of the alteration of techniques and approaches of established and effective procedures and the introduction of newer technologies and materials. In today’s surgical practice, it is well established that performing an anterior repair or Kelly plication for the treatment of SUI is standard compared with more effective procedures. This procedure was described in the 19th century; although it remains a recognized therapy for central defect cystocele, the most current international recommendation for use in patients with stress incontinence is in women who prefer to sacrifice some chance of becoming continent for a reduced chance of complications. Because of significant recurrence rates at even 1 and 2 years of follow-up, long-needle procedures—such as the Pey- era, Stamey, or Raz procedures—are not recommended. Currently, the two primary forms of surgery for SUI are retropubic urethropexy and sling procedures. Injection of urethral bulking agents also is used as a less invasive intervention for SUI in certain patients. A comprehensive listing is provided in Table 37.3, but the procedures presented in detail will be those in current widespread use.

**Retropubic Urethropexy**

The gold-standard surgical treatment of SUI in patients with a mobile bladder neck and normally functioning urethra has been accomplished through a retropubic approach using either

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 37.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FACTOR CONTRIBUTING TO STRESS URINARY INCONTINENCE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Factor</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Childbirth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iatrogenic: post surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic nerve injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of vascular cushion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, chronic heavy lifting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic constipation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iatrogenic: medication side effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic radiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurogenic disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenitally poor tissues:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connective tissue disorder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 37.2**

**ACOG GUIDELINES FOR PRIMARY SURGERY FOR STRESS URINARY INCONTINENCE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confirmation of indication</th>
<th>Actions before the procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Documentation of stress incontinence</td>
<td>Document normal voiding habits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify and manage transient causes of stress incontinence</td>
<td>Document normal neurological examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate stress loss and confirm low residual urine</td>
<td>Document absence of prior incontinence or radical surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documentation of stress incontinence</td>
<td>Document absence of pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counsel patient regarding alternative therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ACOG, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists.
The endopelvic fascia can then be identified (Fig. 37.2). The anatomic landmarks and points of attachment of a Foley catheter bulb, and it may be marked with hemoclips if desired. The bladder is retracted to expose the bladder. Following exposure of the bladder dome to locate the bladder neck by direct vision for exact suture placement at the bladder neck. Sutures are placed at the bladder neck and usually at least one set at the bladder neck and the second set at midurethra (Figs. 37.4 and 37.5). One or both arms of each suture are sutured into the pubocervical fascia or fibromuscular layer of the vagina. Permanent sutures are placed on either side and 2 cm lateral to the urethra into the endopelvic fascia (avoiding full thickness), one set at the bladder neck and the second set at midurethra. Permanent sutures are placed at either side of the urethra in a paraurethral location quite close to the urethra (Fig. 37.8). Bilateral permanent sutures are placed at the bladder neck and usually at least one set is placed just distal to this. These sutures are attached to the fibrocartilage of the symphysis pubis. Some surgeons open the bladder dome to locate the bladder neck by direct vision for exact suture placement at the bladder neck.

The aim of both procedures is to reestablish the intraabdominal location of the proximal urethra and urethrovesical junction, and to minimize descent of the bladder neck or urethrovesical junction, thus allowing normal pressure transmission to this crucial area during times of increased intraabdominal pressure. Cure rates for these procedures range from 83% to 90% at 1 to 5 years and greater than 70% at 10 years. These procedures can be performed in concert with an abdominal hysterectomy or alone through a retropubic approach without opening the peritoneal cavity. Minilaparotomy techniques allow incisions as small as 5 cm to accomplish the suspension.

Laparoscopic Burch urethropexy became very popular in the mid-1990s. The approach could be either intraabdominal or extraperitoneal, and numerous modifications to the original Burch procedure were described, including using only two sutures; substituting mesh; or using tacks, anchors, and other tools to elevate the bladder neck. These variations significantly lowered cure rates as compared with traditional open urethropexy. Placement of four permanent sutures identical to an open procedure, though, has yielded similar 1- and 2-year cure rates as an open Burch (93% and 89%, respectively). In a prospective randomized trial of 62 laparoscopic and 28 open Burch procedures followed by urodynamics at 1 year, the cure rates were 93% for the laparoscopic and 88% for the open group. However, the more recent introduction of tension-free tape procedures made the use of laparoscopic Burch markedly less frequent, and it is now generally performed only with other intraabdominal reconstructive surgery.

Another procedure in the category of a retropubic approach is the paravaginal defect repair, first described by White in 1909. This procedure is for correction of lateral defect cystocele and not for treatment of SUI. The paravaginal defect repair, first described by White and revealed with Richardson and Shull. However, this procedure is for correction of lateral defect cystocele and not for treatment of SUI.

### TABLE 37.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time Line of Significant Surgical Procedures for Stress Incontinence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anterior repair</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Schatzki 1970—anterior repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Kelly plication 1913—wedge of tissue to support ureterovesical junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Jungbluth Sundberg 1951–1952—bulbocavernosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sling</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• von Giordano, 1907—gracilis muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Goeckel 1910—pyramidalis muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Frangenheim 1914—abdominal wall fascia with pyramidalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Stoeckel 1917—same as Frangenheim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Price 1933—fascia lata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Aldridge 1942—rectus fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ridley 1974—description of sling in textbook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Zoodler 1961—gaas hammock synthetic sling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Paravaginal repair</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• White 1909—original description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Richardson 1981—enewal of White technique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Retropubic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Marshall-Marchetti-Krantz 1949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Burch 1968</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tanagho 1976—Burch modification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Vancavelle 1991—laparoscopic Burch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Needle suspension</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pereyra 1939</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Stamey 1973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rat 1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Gittes 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perurethral bulking</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• McGuire 1994—Contigen® injection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tension-free synthetic tape</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ulmsten and colleagues 1996—TVT (tension-free tape)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• DeLorme 2001—Transobturator tension-free tape</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When performing a Burch retropubic urethropexy, the paraurethral tissue is exposed either with a “daisy sponge” (three 4 × 4 sponges on a sponge stick) or by using a moist sponge and narrow retractor. The best instrument for this is a Miyazaki all-purpose lighted retractor. The paraurethral areas may be cleared of fat that overlies the pubocervical fascia (fibromuscular layer of the vagina). The pubocervical tissue is elevated with a vaginal finger, and the overlying rectus muscles are mobilized medially and superiorly away from the site of suture placement using a small dissecting sponge or “peanut” (Fig. 37.3). The large veins in this area are avoided, if possible, but may require control with suture, hemoclips, or cautery. The most important aspects of the development of the retro-
Stress Urinary Incontinence

Tension-free Midurethral Slings

Tension-free slings are surgical procedures using a polypropylene mesh to support the midurethra without tension, a technique first described by Ulmsten and colleagues. Long-term follow-up has been reported with cure rates of approximately 85%. The original technique uses a retropubic approach, but the transobturator approach is fast becoming the most common tension-free sling technique performed worldwide for primary SUI. The appeal of a tension-free midurethral sling is that it is an effective, minimally invasive technique using local anesthetic and intravenous sedation in a day-surgery setting.

Many products are now marketed for this type of sling (Table 37.4). Some surgeons fashion their own sling from polypropylene soft mesh and place it without the aid of specially devised needles and kits. The manufactured products have a protective plastic sheath, allowing easy movement and adjustment of the sling under the urethra (Fig. 37.9).

The anesthetic for the procedure is injected as a solution of lidocaine hydrochloride diluted to 0.25% (1/4%) strength. Because the approximate maximum safe dose is 30 mL of a 1% solution, the 0.25% (1/4%) solution will provide 120 mL. Epinephrine may be used in the mixture, and with an original concentration of 1/100,000, the dilution ends up as 1/400,000. Alternatively, bupivacaine HCl may be used for local infiltration. The maximum dose of bupivacaine is 225 mg.
FIGURE 37.3. Dissection of bladder medially to expose endopelvic fascia. The finger of the vaginal hand elevates the vagina while the instrument pushes medially against the finger.

with epinephrine and 175 mg without epinephrine. In the traditional tension-free tape, 30 mL of solution is injected suprapubically on each side to include skin and subcutaneous tissues, rectus fascia, tissue immediately adjacent to the symphysis pubis, and endopelvic fascia. Then 20 mL of the solution is placed bilaterally by a vaginal approach, extending laterally from the midline into the endopelvic fascia and under the descending pubic rami. Five to 10 mL is placed under the midurethra. A 1- to 2-cm incision is made under the midurethra. For traditional tension-free tapes, a 2 cm tunnel is made with Metzenbaum scissors at a 45-degree angle toward the descending pubic rami on each side. A rigid


FIGURE 37.6. Placement of Burch colposuspension sutures. Sutures are placed in the endopelvic fascia, then passed through Cooper’s ligament and tied.


FIGURE 37.8. Suture placement for Marshall-Marchetti-Krantz operation. Sutures are placed into the endopelvic fascia along the urethra and fixed into the periosteum or fibrocartilage along the back of the symphysis pubis.
TABLE 37.4
TENSION-FREE POLYPYPROLENE MESH PRODUCTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trade name</th>
<th>Company</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TVT</td>
<td>Gynecare (Ethicon, Inc.)</td>
<td>Somerville, NJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obturator system</td>
<td>Gynecare (Ethicon, Inc.)</td>
<td>Somerville, NJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sparc</td>
<td>AMS</td>
<td>Minneapolis, MN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uretex</td>
<td>C.R. Bard Inc.</td>
<td>Covington, GA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVS Tunneller</td>
<td>Tyco (U.S. Surgical)</td>
<td>Norwalk, CT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remeex</td>
<td>Neomedic</td>
<td>Barcelona, Spain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ObTape™</td>
<td>Mentor</td>
<td>Santa Barbara, CA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monarch</td>
<td>AMS</td>
<td>Minnetonka, MN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

catheter guide is placed in a 18 French catheter; this is placed into the urethra and directed laterally to the side on which the surgeon is working so as to deviate the bladder to the opposite side. The delivery needle with detachable handle is placed into the tunnel by an initial lateral direction, then directed toward the ipsilateral shoulder while the opposite-hand index finger guides the needle under the descending pubic ramus. The needle hugs the pubic ramus as the endopelvic fascia is penetrated, and then is advanced until the tip appears suprapubically (Fig. 37.10). The needle tip is passed just through a 5-mm skin incision, and the detachable handle is removed and placed on the needle passer for the other side. The tape is passed on the opposite side, and the handle removed. Cystoscopy is performed after each pass, or, alternatively, after both passes have been made. If there is no bladder perforation, the needles are advanced and pulled completely through the suprapubic area while viewing the bladder with the cystoscope. The needles are removed from the sling device. The sling with protective sheath is tightened over a number 8 Hegar dilator or other instrument. A clamp is positioned to grasp only the plastic sheath, and, while tension is maintained on the Hegar dilator to prevent the sling from becoming too tight, the plastic sheaths are gently pulled free from the mesh. The excess sling arms are cut flush to the skin surface. The vaginal and skin incisions are closed. The sling is not sutured to any underlying tissue, and the composition of the mesh allows tissue ingrowth to fix the sling in place. A Foley catheter is placed; or, alternatively, the patient may go to recovery without a catheter. A voiding trial is initiated in the recovery room; if the patient does not pass, she performs self-catheterization, or a Foley catheter is placed overnight. The catheter is removed by the patient the following morning, and she comes to clinic for assessment of voiding function.

The abdominal approach commences with the same vaginal dissection. A catheter guide is usually not used. The abdominal needle passer is passed through a small incision on either side of the midline just above the symphysis pubis and is guided along the back of the symphysis until it passes under the descending pubic ramus and comes into contact with the vaginal finger. It is guided into the vaginal incision similar to needle suspension procedures, such as Stamey, Raz, and Pereyra. Cystoscopy is performed to ensure the needle passers have not penetrated the bladder. The mesh is attached to the needle passers and pulled from the vaginal incision through the retropubic space to the abdominal site. The remainder of the procedure is the same as the vaginal route. Complications are similar to tension-free
FIGURE 37.10. Insertion of vaginal tension-free tape. A: Vaginal guidance of needle under descending pubic ramus along back of symphysis. B: Pressure over skin of abdomen to allow needle to penetrate abdominal skin. C: Both needles passed through retropubic space and resting on abdomen. (With permission: Klutke J, Klutke C. The promise of tension-free vaginal tape for SUI. Contemporary Urology Archive. 2000; October: Figures 4, 6, and 7.)

Vaginal tape (TVT) except for fewer described severe problems with vascular or bowel injury. Bladder perforation occurs with equal frequency.

The most serious complications after the first 500,000 cases of TVT procedures are shown in Table 37.5. There were seven deaths from that group, which included five after undiagnosed bowel perforation, one from uncontrolled bleeding in the retropubic space in a woman with a bleeding disorder, and one after a bowel perforation in which no additional information could be obtained. Major vascular injury may be prevented by using universal Allen stirrups. The insertion needle must not stray laterally. Smaller venous channels are frequently penetrated and are managed by pressure for 5 minutes or placement of a vaginal pack. Moderate bleeding may be controlled by a Foley catheter with 50 mL in the balloon to tamponade the bleeder against a pack in the vagina. Occasionally, a retropubic space hematoma will develop, but it is self-limited, and the usual treatment is observation. Bladder perforation occurs 2% to 4% of the time and is usually managed by withdrawal and reinsertion of the needle. When this occurs, a Foley catheter is recommended for 1 to 2 days, and antibiotic coverage provided. Bladder perforation may be prevented by infiltration of the dilute local anesthetic in large volume amounts, keeping the bladder empty, and directing the bladder away from the operative site with the rigid catheter guide. Bowel perforation may be prevented by imaging prospective patients who have had prior retropubic surgery and who may have bowel adherent in the cul-de-sac in close proximity to the retropubic area.

Frequent delayed complications include voiding dysfunction, urgency, and urinary tract infection (Table 37.6). About half of patients will void by the time of discharge from day surgery, and most are voiding well by the following day. There is a 2% to 5% persistent urinary retention rate, and these patients require sling revision. This is best performed in the first 4 to 6 weeks after surgery before advanced scarring around the mesh. The tape has usually migrated somewhat proximally along the urethra and needs to be exposed by sharp dissection, then loosened or cut to allow retraction of the mesh away from the underside of the urethra. Continence is maintained in most patients, and the release of the sling allows normal voiding in most cases. Urinary tract infection may be prevented by preoperative antibiotics, but there is still a 7% to 8% incidence of urinary tract infection in the first 2 months postoperatively. Urgency with some urge incontinence occurs in 10% to 12%; although time resolves a lot of this, a number of patients require medical intervention. Release or loosening of the sling may help resolve severe urgency symptoms. Mesh erosion is a delayed complication, occurring in 1% of patients, and usually is managed by excision of the exposed mesh and resuture of the vagina.

The transobturator approach (TOT) theoretically has safety factors that may make it preferable to the original TVT.
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

### TABLE 37.6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Incidence</th>
<th>N/1,000</th>
<th>Percent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minor voiding difficulty</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary tract infection</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder perforation</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postoperative urinary retention</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retropubic hematoma</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wound infection</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


A nationwide analysis of complications associated with the tension-free vaginal tape.

approach. It is placed more horizontally and should interfere with voiding even less than a TVT. Local infiltration of dilute lidocaine or Marcaine is carried out along the tracks of needle passes. There are two basic types of transobturator surgeries for stress incontinence. One is an outside-in technique, which emphasizes speed, safety, and ease of placement. The vaginal incision needs to be large enough to insert a finger to reach to the ischiopubic rami, and the thumb of the same hand grasps the outline of the rami in the genitofemoral fold between labium majus and the thigh. A point in the groin fold level with the clitoris is selected and a 5-mm incision made on each side. The needle passer is inserted perpendicularly and guided by the finger until it penetrates the obturator membrane (Fig. 37.11). The needle is then rotated under the pubic ramus, and the vaginal index finger guides it into the vaginal incision. The tightening of the sling is the same as the TVT.

The inside-out TOT starts with local infiltration of dilute anesthetic. The incision may be slightly smaller than the outside-in TOT. Scissor dissection proceeds on one side until the obturator membrane is penetrated with the scissor tips. A metal winged guide is placed into the defect in the obturator membrane. The needle passer is placed along the direction of the winged guide and then rotated while the handle is moved inferiorly to a vertical position. The needle passer exits 1 cm lateral to the groin fold about 2 cm superior to the urethral meatus and parallel to the clitoris. The tape is retrieved, and tightening follows the same pattern as with the technique described above. The same-day patient attempts to void in recovery; if unsuccessful, she uses self-catheterization or has a Foley placed overnight.

The transobturator tape does not have a retropubic passage and therefore avoids the major complications of retropitoneal vascular injury, bowel injury, and bladder perforation. Because of the horizontal placement for TOT, the incidence of postoperative voiding dysfunction is considered to be less, though no large randomized trial has definitively shown this (Fig. 37.12). There remains the possibility of damage to the obturator vessels and nerve during passage of the needle, but this can be avoided by following the procedure as described. There have been isolated reports of bladder perforation, and it may still be appropriate to carry out cystoscopy with urethral inspection at the end of the procedure, especially in women with significant prolapse. There are still the same complications of bleeding, hematoma, dysuria, urgency, and bladder infections as with TVT. Abscess formation in the ischiorectal fossa has been reported, but it is very uncommon. Occasionally, there is persisting groin pain or irritation with movement.

The tension-free sling is thought to work by forming a solid buttress under the midurethra, allowing the mobile bladder neck to descend and rotate with increased intraabdominal pressure, and compress the urethra against the sling. Most efficacy reports are in the 85% range for both TVT and TOT procedures, and this can safely be quoted to patients in preoperative discussion.

![Figure 37.11. Transobturator tension-free tape (TOT) approach.](image1)

![Figure 37.12. Comparison of retropubic and transobturator placement of TVT and TOT.](image2)
When the tension-free tape procedures are done in conjunction with other pelvic floor surgery, it does not seem to matter as to the order in which things are done. The tape can be laid in position initially and then the rest of the procedures completed and the tape tightened at the end of the case. If there is a lot of bleeding from dissection for the tape, this can cause some delay and interference with the rest of the case. The other way is to do the other procedures first and then place the tape at the end. Any anterior vaginal wall dissection should not extend closer than 2 cm to the urethral meatus, thus leaving room for the tape dissection. If a colposuspension is performed, the tape has to be placed before obliterating the anterior wall.

Suburethral Slings

The concept of placing a material under the urethra and suspending it to the abdominal tissues was introduced as early as 1907 when Giordano used gracilis muscle transposed beneath the bladder neck. Gorebell (1910) used pyramidalis muscles transposed through the space of Retzius, and first Frangenheim (1914) and then Stoeckel (1917) described using a strip of anterior abdominal fascia with the pyramidalis muscles. Price (1933) harvested fascia lata, which he passed beneath the urethra and then retroperitoneally, and attached it to the anterior rectus fascia on either side of the midline. This technique and its modifications became known as the Gorebell-Stoeckel-Frangenheim procedure, or fascia lata sling, but the named surgeons never used fascia lata. Aldridge (1942) used strips of rectus fascia from a transverse abdominal incision, passed them retroperitoneally, and secured them beneath the urethra. McGuire and Lytton (1978) described a sling procedure using rectus fascia supported by sutures extending through the space of Retzius, and first to the rectus fascia. This procedure and its modifications are referred to as a rectus sling.

The sling acts like a hammock under the bladder neck to both elevate the urethrovesical junction into an intraabdominal location and to provide partial compression of the urethra. These techniques differ from the modern tension-free procedures because the ends of the sling or suspending sutures are fixed to the rectus fascia. During periods of increased abdominal pressure, the abdominal wall moves outward and the sling is drawn upward. This compresses the urethra and increases intraurethral resistance. Variations of the sling procedure in which the ends of the sling are attached to an immovable tissue (Cooper’s ligament or bone anchors in the pubic symphysis) do not allow upward displacement of the sling and urethra during straining. In these operations, the sling is thought to create a secure platform of urethral support. Increases in intraabdominal pressure press the urethra downward against the sling, thereby compressing the urethra from both above and below. It is this compression of the urethra that is believed to lead to increases in urethral resistance and a resolution of stress incontinence. However, the potential for excess compression of the urethra also contributes to the most common complications of the sling procedure: voiding dysfunction.

The intervening 100 years have provided time for development of many materials and techniques for sling surgery. The autologous tissues have included rectus fascia, fascia lata, vagina, gracilis muscle, round ligaments, pyramidalis muscle, and rectus muscle. Because of additional operative time and morbidity to harvest autologous materials, many substitute and rectus muscle. Because of additional operative time and morbidity to harvest autologous materials, many substitute and rectus fascia is harvested at the time of repair with fascia lata composing most of the active use. Allograft fascia materials have been in use for more than 25 years but have to be harvested, processed and distributed by tissue banks regulated by the American Association of Tissue Banks. Xenograft materials are mostly porcine dermis and bovine pericardium.

Surgeons who prefer an autologous sling use either rectus fascia or fascia lata. Rectus fascia is harvested at the time of a suprapubic incision by excising a strip of rectus fascia and closing the residual defect. A 4- to 5-cm incision easily allows harvest of a fascial strip 2 cm wide and 8 to 10 cm long (Fig. 37.13). A fascial closure suture is placed beyond the harvest site on both sides and a strip of rectus fascia developed medially from each side. The graft is wrapped in saline-soaked gauze or placed in an antibiotic solution. The fascia is mobilized sharply off the underlying muscle to avoid tension in the closure. The rectus fascia is cleared of fat just above the symphysis pubis on either side to allow for fixation of the sling.

Alternatively, fascia lata may be harvested from the lateral aspect of the thigh (Fig. 37.14) using a Masson stripper or a Crawford fascial stripper. Alternatively, the fascia may be excised directly. The Masson stripper comes in 1-cm and 2-cm sizes and can remove a strip up to 3 cm in width and 20 cm long. The Crawford stripper can remove a strip 1 cm wide and 20 cm long. Harvest is accomplished with the patient supported leaning to one side and the leg positioned on a pillow (Fig. 37.15). The illiotibial fan of fascia is palpated over the lateral thigh near the knee. A vertical or transverse incision is made 2 to 3 cm above the knee over the fascia and the fascia lata cleaned with a gauze-tipped finger. Two incisions are made in the fascia, 1.5 to 2 cm apart, and the fascia lata transected 3 to 4 cm superior to its attachment into the lateral condyle of the femur. The distal 4 to 5 cm of fascia is mobilized with sharp dissection and the free end threaded into the Masson or Crawford fascial stripper and held firmly with straight Kocher clamps. The fascia is freed superiorly from attachments by passing a long forceps (handle end) over the superior and inferior surfaces of the fascia. The stripper is then advanced parallel to the fascia lata fibers, toward the greater trochanter of the hip (Fig. 37.16). The Masson stripper has an inner and outer component, and the outer...
sheath is disengaged and advanced briskly or turned over the inner portion, which severs the fascia at the uppermost area of the leg. The Crawford stripper requires a pulley action to advance a cutter at the end of the instrument to cut the fascial strip. The 1-cm-wide strip obtained with the Crawford stripper requires a second pass to get a second strip of a full-length sling is desired, and the two are sutured together, overlapping in the center 2 or 3 cm, to make that area thicker as well as wider. The open technique requires two vertical incisions separated by an intact skin area at least the size of each incision. The fascia lata is dissected free from the muscle underneath, and elevation of the skin bridge allows dissection to the higher incision. The fascia is cut 2 to 3 cm wide, and the uppermost end is severed to procure the strip. The fascial defect is not closed, but a pressure dressing is usually applied, and the skin may be closed with a subcuticular suture.

Sling length has varied in the many procedures described. A patch sling is several cm in length, but the tails of the sling do not perforate the endopelvic fascia into the retropubic space. The patch is suspended by permanent sutures and allows harvest of small amounts of tissue, but there is little in situ scar- ring and fixation of the fascial material. A full-length sling passes underneath the urethra, through the endopelvic fascia and retropubic space, all the way to the point of fixation, where it is secured with sutures. Usually the fixation point is rectus fascia. A half sling (7 cm length or more) extends into the retropubic space through the endopelvic fascia and is attached by sutures secured to the tails to suspend the material to the appropriate fixation site, usually the rectus fascia. This has become the most common sling length when using autol- ogous materials. A full-length sling extends all the way to the fixation site, rectus fascia, or Cooper's ligament, where it is attached.

The abdominal dissection is performed through a 4- to 5-cm incision (unless the patient is obese) usually placed 2 cm above the symphysis pubis, but not in the crease of the panniculus. The fascia is cleared of fat and subcutaneous tissues at sites 2 cm above the symphysis and 2 cm lateral to the midline, where the sling arms or sutures will be passed through the fascia. If an instrument is used to grasp the sling or suture tails (as opposed to a needle passer technique using Pereyra or Stamey needles), then a small 0.5- to 1-cm incision is made in the full-thickness rectus fascia. If rectus fascia has been harvested, the remaining lower margin of fascia is cleared of fat and subcutaneous tissue.

The retropubic space may be opened, especially in cases in which there has been previous retropubic surgery. If necessary, the bladder can be opened at the dome to facilitate sharp dissection of the bladder away from the sidewall of the pelvis. In this technique, a finger can be placed through the abdominal incision reaching to the level of the endopelvic fascia. The vaginal dissection commences with an inverted U or 2-cm midline incision along the anterior vaginal wall. The epithelium is dissected off the fibromuscular layer laterally until access through the endopelvic fascia is readily available beneath the descending pubic ramus. The epithelial flap may be left thick to protect against poor healing of the vaginal epithelium over the sling material. The fibromuscular layer does not need to be plicated unless extra thickness is desired under a synthetic sling or there is a central anterior vaginal wall defect. Sharp dissection to the level of the pubic ramus allows easy access to perforate the endopelvic fascia sharply or bluntly,
FIGURE 37.16. Harvesting fascia lata. With the fascial end secured by Kocher clamps, the stripper is slowly advanced parallel to the fascia lata fibers, shearing off a long strip of fascia.

FIGURE 37.17. Perforation of the endopelvic fascia to open the space of Retzius and mobilize the periurethral tissues.

FIGURE 37.18. Passage of sling material through the space of Retzius from vaginal to abdominal site. Rectus fascia partial sling with attached sutures. (With permission: Brubaker L. Suburethral sling procedures. Operative Techniques in Gynecologic Surgery 1997;2:48.)

directing the instrument or finger toward the ipsilateral shoulder (Fig. 37.17). Some surgeons do not enter the retropubic space when placing a sling. Others use a finger to guide an instrument or needle pass from the abdominal to the vaginal incision, and this is the recommended technique. The instrument is directed through the abdominal incision and directed toward the back of the symphysis pubis. A finger placed in the vaginal dissection reaches to the retropubic space to meet the advancing clamp or needle to minimize the distance of blind passage (Figs. 37.18 and 37.19). Cystoscopy ensures bladder integrity and ureteral function. The sling is sutured to the pubocervical fascia under the mid-to proximal urethra to prevent movement from the placement site. A Foley catheter bulb marks the bladder neck. Historically, the position of the sling was bladder neck and proximal urethra (Fig. 37.20). With the introduction of the tension-free tape procedures at the midurethra, a number of surgeons have also moved traditional suburethral sling placement more distally to override the midurethra. A broad-based sling is considered preferable to a narrow band of material.

The most common fixation site is rectus fascia (Fig. 37.21). The arms of the sling or suspending sutures may be secured together loosely over the rectus fascia without actually being sutured to the fascia. Cooper’s ligament can also be used to support the sling arms. Bone anchors allow alternative fixation to a solid structure, although there is no evidence that weak rectus fascia attachment is a cause of procedure failure. The sutures or sling tails are placed through the fascia and tied with 1 to 3 finger breadths between the tissues and the sutures or sling. The object is to leave the sling loose.
FIGURE 37.19. Passage of fascia lata strip through space of Retzius. Under guidance from the surgeon’s hand in the vaginal incision through the endopelvic fascia into the space of Retzius, a clamp is passed from the abdominal incision to the vaginal incision. The end of the fascia is grasped and retrieved to the abdominal site.

Bladder drainage techniques include suprapubic catheter, Foley catheter, or intermittent self-catheterization. Most often, a Foley catheter is left overnight and then removed the following day, allowing the patient the opportunity to void. Postvoid residual urine determinations are measured by bladder scan or catheterization; if voiding is not adequate, the Foley catheter may be reinserted or self-catheterization used. There is no uniform residual urine determination considered normal, but it should be less than 200 mL, with a reasonable voided amount equal to or two times greater than the residual amount.

Hospital length of stay is variable but often is only 1 day. Patients should avoid strenuous exercise and heavy lifting for 3 months. Intercourse and vaginal inserts should be avoided until there is good vaginal healing. There is no need to restrict showers or shallow tub baths.

Complications (Table 37.7) are addressed before surgery by use of preoperative antibiotics to prevent infection and use of compression stockings or heparin to prevent deep venous thrombosis (DVT). Early mobilization and use of an incentive spirometer help avoid DVT and respiratory problems. The
usual intraoperative complication of surgery is bleeding. Large veins under the descending pubic ramus may be avulsed during the vaginal portion of the procedure, and there are often vessels on the medial side of the vaginal dissection into the retropubic space. The latter ones can be isolated and cauterized or sutured, but the ones under the pubic ramus are best controlled by pressure, completion of the procedure, and placement of a vaginal pack. Large vessels of the pelvis are seldom penetrated by instruments or sling. The sling may be passed through the bladder and may have to be removed and repassed. On rare occasions, the sling or a suprapubic catheter may be placed through a portion of bowel, and recognition of this complication can be delayed. Temperature elevation is rare but may be caused by atelectasis, pneumonia, and hematoma in the early postoperative period. Cystitis, pyelonephritis, bowel injury, and wound infection are not usually obvious for a few days. Voiding function and possible bladder overdistension must be monitored carefully.

Short-term complications include continued voiding difficulty, bladder infection, and overactive bladder symptoms. A wound seroma or infection may occur at either the abdominal incision site or at the fascial harvest site. If a significant hematoma has occurred in either the abdominal incision or retropubic space, abscess formation may follow. Vaginal healing may be compromised by delayed healing of the anterior vaginal wall, oozing or bleeding from the suture sites, and failure of the incision to close properly over the sling. Long-term complications include voiding dysfunction, overactive bladder symptoms, and procedure failure. If the patient is unable to void at all, the sling may need to be incised. The occurrence of a vaginal erosion is usually a delayed event with synthetic materials, and this area of incomplete healing can be difficult to resolve.

TABLE 37.7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complication</th>
<th>Frequency (%)</th>
<th>Resolution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bleeding with vaginal dissection</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Pressure, cautery, suture, packing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retroperitoneal space bleeding</td>
<td>3–10</td>
<td>Spontaneous absorption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder perforation</td>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>Replace sling, leave catheter 2 to 3 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection—wound</td>
<td>&lt;5</td>
<td>Eventual healing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wound seroma—leg or abdomen</td>
<td>3–5</td>
<td>Closed drainage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection—urine</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>No long-term sequelae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retropubic space hematoma</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Slow resorption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retroperitoneal space abscess</td>
<td>Infrequent</td>
<td>Drainage: open vs. imaging technique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood clot (deep venous thrombosis)</td>
<td>2–10</td>
<td>Aggressive treatment, prevention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory problem</td>
<td>2–5</td>
<td>Incentive spirometer, physiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal breakdown over sling</td>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>Soaks, local irrigation, antibiotics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesh erosion</td>
<td>5–25</td>
<td>Local excision, revision, and resuture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiding dysfunction</td>
<td>2–24</td>
<td>Patience, self-catheterization, medication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstructed voiding</td>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>Sling release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De novo urge incontinence</td>
<td>3–23</td>
<td>Bladder retraining, medication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persistent urge incontinence</td>
<td>26–60</td>
<td>Bladder retraining, surgical repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary erosion</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The cure rate for sling procedures is more than 80% for all procedures, primary and repeat. Traditional suburethral sling procedures have long-term durability, effectiveness in cases with impaired urethral sphincter function or restricted mobility of the bladder neck, and applicability to primary cases with minimal risk of complications.

Periurethral Bulking Procedures

The major impetus for use of periurethral bulking in the United States came in 1993 when the U.S. Food and Drug Administration approved the use of Contigen®. This was followed in July 1994 by Medicare’s approved payment for the service based on a number of criteria. These criteria were altered in 1996 and included the presence immobility of the bladder neck, as well as a leak point pressure less than 100 cm of water. The ideal patient is one who meets the above criteria with a fixed bladder neck (Q-tip straining angle 40 degrees or less), who is medically compromised and/or elderly, and in whom an operative intervention may offer too much risk. Also, some patients prefer to use a less invasive technique. There are still little data on effectiveness of minimally invasive midurethral slings in patients who have a scarred bladder neck; although a traditional suburethral sling has a very good cure rate, it is invasive and is associated with greater risk and complications.

The ideal material is biocompatible, nonimmunologic, and hypoallergenic. It should be inexpensive and easy to inject, and it should not migrate. Materials approved for use or in studies are shown in Table 37.8. Methods of injection include periurethral, transurethral through the cystoscope, or transurethral using an injector device that fits in the urethra. The ideal setting for injection is the office or clinic. No preoperative sedation is
required. The injection is performed in a sterilized field by using no-touch technique.

**Periurethral Injection**

The patient empties her bladder and is placed in lithotomy position. Local anesthestia using 0.5 to 1.0 mL of lidocaine hydrochloride is injected 0.5 cm on either side of the urethral meatus (Fig. 37.22). Under endoscopic guidance, lidocaine 1% solution is injected parallel to the urethra in small amounts until the proximal urethra is reached and the needle or injection can be seen distending an area 1 cm distal to the bladder neck. The syringe with lidocaine is replaced with a syringe of bulking agent, and the material is injected until the entire syringe has been injected or there has been adequate effect noted with urethral bulking. The process is repeated on the opposite side, but the second side is more difficult to inject because of the distortion caused by the initial injection (Fig. 37.23).

**Transurethral Injection**

The transurethral method is best accomplished using a cystoscope with a 12-degree or 25-degree lens. The sheath has no fenestration, and the operating channel allows the passage of a disposable injection needle with a guide or a reusable needle. Alternatively, a spring-loaded mechanism is favored by some operators. The needle is prefilled with lidocaine 1% solution, the syringe with bulking material is attached, and the cystoscope with injection needle retracted is placed into the bladder. The bladder neck is identified, and the scope is withdrawn to visualize the proximal urethra. The usual injection sites are 3 and 9 o’clock, but this can be varied depending on user preference and number of injection sites selected (up to four). The injection needle is advanced into the urethra submucosa approximately 2 cm distal to the bladder neck (Fig. 37.24), and the injection of material is preceded by the small amount of local anesthetic solution. The needle is advanced 1 cm, and the bulking material is injected. The injection needle is flushed with lidocaine at the first site, and then the second site is selected.

A pressure system is required for transurethral injection of Macroplastique. Injection needles vary in diameter according to the ease of injection of the selected material. An insertion device is available for Macroplastique and for Zuidex. Transurethral injection is facilitated without

---

### TABLE 37.8

**PERIURETHRAL BULKING AGENTS IN NORTH AMERICA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trade name</th>
<th>Company</th>
<th>Approval</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contigen®</td>
<td>C R Bard Inc., Atlanta, GA</td>
<td>1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durasphere®</td>
<td>Boston Scientific, Boston, MA</td>
<td>1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon Medical Technologies Inc., St. Paul, MN</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tegress</td>
<td>C R Bard Inc., Atlanta, GA</td>
<td>2004, FDA trials ongoing&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macroplastique&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Uroplasty, Minneapolis, MN</td>
<td>Approval in Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zuidex™</td>
<td>Q-med, Uppsala, Sweden</td>
<td>FDA trial ongoing&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coaptite®</td>
<td>Genesis Medical Ltd, London, UK</td>
<td>FDA trials starting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permacte&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>TSL, Aldershot, Hampshire, UK</td>
<td>FDA trials starting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FDA, U.S. Food and Drug Administration.


visualization of the injection site. The device has four angled ports for four needles; after measurement of the urethral length, the device is inserted into the urethra to allow placement of the material at the desired submucosal depth in the mid-to-proximal urethra. The efficacy reports are still in early stages, and the more traditional injection techniques are the current recommendation.

After injection, the patient may have urethral burning that lasts for only part of a day and can be controlled with phenazopyridine (Pyridium). Antibiotics are prescribed for 1 to 2 days after injection because the rate of urinary tract infection is high. The patient attempts voiding after the injection, and she should be prepared to stay in the clinic area for 1 to 2 hours to allow the initial swelling from the injection to diminish. If the patient is unable to void or she has a high residual urine, she either needs to be instructed in self-catheterization or have a small catheter (8 to 10 French Foley) placed, using no more than 5 mL in the balloon. Patients should be called or seen the day following the injection to be sure there is no continuing problem. At follow-up, assessment is made for voiding function, urinary tract infection, and swelling at the injection site. Effectiveness is assessed, and overactive bladder symptoms are managed as appropriate.

One or two injections may be required to obtain a satisfactory result; if there is no improvement at that point, additional injections are not indicated. The success rate is generally quoted to be about 70%. Most injections last 6 months to 2 years and then have to be repeated. There is no limit to the number of injections provided that improvement occurs after each injection and lasts a reasonable period of time. There is no advantage of any particular bulking agent, and selection is usually based on operator experience, ease of injection, cost, and availability of the product.

**ARTIFICIAL URINARY SPHINCTER**

The ultimate treatment of urinary incontinence secondary to intrinsic sphincter deficiency is implantation of an artificial urinary sphincter. The device consists of a small inflatable cuff, a pump (which usually is implanted within one of the labia...
majora), and a reservoir, which is placed in the abdomen beneath the fascia (Fig. 37.25). The cuff is placed around the bladder neck and proximal urethra usually through a combined vaginal and abdominal approach. After allowing 6 weeks for healing to take place, the cuff is inflated to compress the urethra. Once inflated, the cuff maintains urethral closure until the patient needs to void. The patient deflates the cuff by squeezing the labial pump, moving fluid from the cuff into the reservoir. After voiding, the cuff automatically reinflates from the reservoir over 1 or 2 minutes and remains closed until the pump is reactivated.

There are a number of complications related to artificial urinary sphincter, including cuff erosion, infection, and device failure. The device is not indicated as a primary treatment for SUI and should only be inserted by an experienced surgical team working in an isolated and controlled operative environment.

SUMMARY

The surgical management of SUI has developed over almost 100 years. Only recently have randomized controlled trials been conducted, and new procedures are often introduced with little long-term efficacy or complication risk data. One of the problems has been the numerous modifications surgeons like to make on other procedures, thus producing yet another new approach.

More recently, instrument manufacturers have introduced a multitude of new instruments and new tape materials for the tension-free midurethral tape procedures with very little clinical data to support their safety or efficacy, much less any comparison with older, established procedures or equipment. The basic evaluation of incontinence includes history, physical examination, measurement of postvoid residual urine, and urinalysis. Preoperative assessment may include a measure of urethral mobility, 24-hour voiding diary, cough stress test, symptom questionnaire, and cystometry. Long-term data indicate the Burch colposuspension and tension-free tapes have similar cure rates. Anterior repair, needle procedures, and paravaginal repairs are not indicated for SUI.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- There are two types of SUI: hypermobility (or anatomic) and intrinsic sphincter deficiency. Most patients have elements of both causes for their incontinence but in varying degrees for each.
- Evaluation before surgery for SUI includes history, physical examination, pelvic examination, voiding diary, symptom questionnaire, residual urine determination, Q-tip test for urethral mobility, and urinalysis. If there is any concern regarding symptoms or prior procedure failure, then cystometrics and cystoscopy should be performed.
- The approach for primary SUI is a tension-free midurethral sling, Burch retropubic urethropexy, or other suburethral sling.
- The approach for recurrent SUI and a scarred bladder neck is most often a suburethral sling.
- The tension-free vaginal tape procedures have revolutionized surgery for stress incontinence, bringing it into the realm of minimally invasive day surgery. The principles for tension-free slings are to place them at the midurethra without tension. There are numerous brands, but the essence is a polypropylene mesh sling, 1 cm in width, placed by insertion needles and small incisions. Cystoscopy is recommended to assure there is no bladder injury. There are suprapubic as well as transobturator techniques without obvious proven advantages of one kind over another. The cure rates are all close to 85%. The procedures may be combined with other pelvic floor reconstructive surgery. Complications are minimal and include voiding dysfunction, overactive bladder, and mesh erosion.
- Standard suburethral slings are best performed with harvested autologous materials, either rectus fascia or fascia lata. The vaginal dissection should allow minimal blind passage from the vaginal to the abdominal site. Fixation is loosely accomplished to rectus fascia so as to avoid voiding dysfunction.
- Periurethral bulking has a place in medically compromised or elderly patients, especially for those with severe incontinence and minimal mobility of the bladder neck, i.e., Q-tip test <40 degrees straining.
Stress Urinary Incontinence

Bibliography


Stress Urinary Incontinence


Schatzka B. The pathology and treatment of displacements of the ureter. Translated from German by J Macal D. Applenton, New York, 1918.


CHAPTER 38  ☐ OPERATIVE INJURIES TO THE URETER
PAUL UNDERWOOD, JR.

DEFINITIONS

Cystotomy—Incision into the urinary bladder.

Spatulate—To incise the cut end of a tubular structure longitudinally and splay it open to allow creation of an elliptical anastomosis of greater circumference than would be possible with conventional transverse or oblique end-to-end anastomoses.

Ureteroureterostomy—Restoration of the continuity of the urinary tract by anastomosis of the upper segment of a partially destroyed ureter to a segment of ileum, the lower end of which is then implanted into the bladder.

Ureteroureterostomy—Establishment of an anastomosis between the two ureters or between two segments of the same ureter.

Ureteroneocystotomy—An operation whereby a ureter is implanted into the bladder.

Ureteral injuries have been recognized as a potential complication of gynecologic surgical procedures since the inception of our discipline. Over the years, numerous unique surgical modifications of procedures have been offered with the specific intent of decreasing the probability of ureteral injury. Despite these efforts, ureteral injury remains a very real complication of abdominal-pelvic surgery in the female patient, affecting as many as 1.79% of women taken to the operating theater for pelvic surgery, although the accepted incidence is about 0.35%. The risk depends on the procedure performed and the skill and experience of the surgeon. Therefore, it is important to the gynecologic surgeon to be cognizant of ways to minimize the occurrence of these potentially disastrous complications, as well as facile in the diagnosis and management of such an injury should it occur.

The goals of this chapter are to (a) outline the functional anatomy of the ureter and illustrate how this leads to the ureter being in harm’s way during gynecologic surgery, (b) review the unique issues surrounding ureteral injury during the performance of specific groups of gynecologic surgical procedures, and (c) summarize the basic principles of injury avoidance and, should injury occur, recognition and management.

FUNCTIONAL ANATOMY OF THE URETER

When viewed in cross section, the ureter can be divided into distinct layers: the lumen with transitional epithelium; the mucosa—the muscular layer—which is made up of longitudinal, circular, and spiral smooth muscle fibers; and the adventitia, which contains an intercommunicating network of blood vessels. The peritoneum lies over the ureter, making it a completely retroperitoneal structure (Fig. 38.1).

In normal adults, the ureter is between 25 and 30 cm in length from the renal pelvis to the trigone of the bladder. By convention, the ureter is divided into the abdominal and pelvic segments by the pelvic brim; each of these components if approximately 12 to 15 cm in length.

The abdominal ureter runs along the ventral surface of the psoas muscle and posterior to the ovarian vessels to the level of the pelvic brim. The right ureter lies slightly lateral to the inferior vena cava and descends into the pelvis over the common iliac artery at approximately the site of the latter’s bifurcation. On rare incidences, the right ureter can be over the vena cava; therefore, if one is performing a paraaortic node sampling, the ureter must be identified before removing any nodes. The left ureter runs lateral to the aorta and posterior to the inferior mesenteric artery, ovarian vessels, and colon. The left ureter mirrors the right at the pelvic brim, entering the pelvis over the bifurcation of the left common iliac artery. The left ureter often is obscured by the sigmoid colon at the pelvic brim (Fig. 38.2). There is little variance between the positions taken by the pelvic ureters. They descend into the posterior lateral pelvic lateral to the sacrum and immediately ventral to internal iliac (hypogastric) artery. The ureters then deviate medially and course medial to the internal iliac artery and its anterior branches. The ureters subsequently pass beneath the uterine artery (often referred to as uterus under the bridge). At this point, it is approximately 1.5 cm lateral to the cervix, and this is the site of entrance into the paracervical tissues. The ureters pass through this paracervical tissue often referred to as “the tunnel” of the cardinal ligament/interior bladder pillar (also referred to as the web or the tunnel of Wertheim). Once through this tunnel, the ureter travels medially and anteriorly over the vaginal fornix to enter the trigone of the bladder.

When inflammatory or adhesive changes are not present, the ureters can usually be visualized through the peritoneum from the pelvic brim to this parametrial tissue. Once the ureters have entered this tunnel, they cannot be easily seen or palpated; if identification is required, they must be mobilized out of this tissue. Although the peristaltic activity that occurs in the normal ureter may be helpful in its identification, it is not uncommon that the ureter, following any degree of trauma, will have transient paralysis. Therefore, the skill of definitely identifying the ureter is based on its anatomy, not its motion. The ureter is unique in that it has a “snap” feeling when passed between one’s fingers. This may be helpful in massively obese women with poor exposure. This “snap” will also permit one to follow the ureter to the tunnel without actually exposing it. Having defined the general anatomy of the ureter, one must appreciate
Operative Injuries to the Ureter

FIGURE 38.1. Cross-sectional (A) and sagittal (B) views of the longitudinal arteries and veins in the adventitia. These arteries and veins provide the important collateral circulation along the course of the ureter.

Adventitia
Muscularis
Ureteral Mucosa

FIGURE 38.2. A: Abdominal and pelvic portions of the ureter showing relation to aorta, psoas muscle, vena cava, and common iliac artery and vein. B: Pelvic portion of the ureter showing its course along the sidewall of the pelvis and its relation to the common iliac vessels, hypogastric vessels, uterosacral ligaments, uterine vessels, and cervix.

A
B
that there is a significant degree of interpatient variability, even in the pelvis that is free of inflammatory, infectious, neoplastic, congenital, or postsurgical changes. Direct visualization of the ureter is the only sure way to know its location in any given patient.

The ureter obtains blood supply from every vessel that it transverses (Fig. 38.3). The small vessels that nourish the ureter are interconnected by a lush network of anastomosing arcades within the adventitial sheath. It is this vigorous and multi-origin blood supply that helps to make the ureter resistant to devascularization, even when it has been stripped of the surrounding ureteral sheath. Yet, although the ureter may be relatively difficult to devascularize, such injuries can occur and are more likely to happen if one fails to remember the origin of the blood supply, as illustrated in Figure 38.3. Cephalad to the pelvic brim, the blood supply enters from the medial side; therefore, dissection and mobilization should be carried out from the lateral aspect of the ureter. The inverse is true below the pelvic brim.

### URETERAL INJURY

Thompson, in preceding editions of this text, listed six types of operative ureteral injuries, which are shown in Table 38.1. Other authors have proposed that avulsion and stretch injuries also be listed as separate types, although these two categories are included under “transaction” and “ischemia,” respectively.

### TABLE 38.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPES OF OPERATIVE URETERAL INJURIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Crushing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angulation (with secondary obstruction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ischemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All of these injuries can and do occur, although relatively infrequently, during the performance of gynecologic surgical procedures. Additionally, angulation and ischemia can be the sequelae of nonsurgical processes (e.g., broad ligament cervical myomas and radiation therapy, respectively). The specifics as to how these injuries occur and, more importantly, how they can be best avoided are discussed in subsequent sections of this chapter. Ureteral injuries most commonly occur at one of five different locales, as illustrated in Table 38.2.

### GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF PREVENTION AND MANAGEMENT

It is extremely important to be cognizant of the settings in which a ureteral injury is more likely to occur. Several common elements associated with ureteral injury are listed in Table 38.3. Among the clinical diagnoses that put the ureter at increased risk during gynecologic surgery are severe endometriosis; large fibroids, especially lower uterine broad ligament or cervical fibroids; large adenexal masses; dense adhesions; ovarian cyst adherent to peritoneum; residual ovarian syndrome; lacerations at cesarean section; and radical cancer surgery. There are no data supporting the belief that preoperative intravenous pyelogram, computed tomography, or prophylactic ureteral stint placement decreases the probability of a ureteral injury.

The most important way to prevent ureteral injury is for the surgeon to constantly and unequivocally know where the ureter is located at all times. Not only is this supported by all of the references in this chapter, but also by my personal experience. Often when we are called to assist a colleague in an operation in which a ureteral injury has occurred, it is evident that the surgeon did not know where the ureter was and, therefore, clamped, ligated, incised, or transected it. When...
Operative Injuries to the Ureter

### TABLE 38.3

**URETERAL INJURY ASSOCIATED WITH GYNECOLOGIC SURGERY: “MOST COMMONS”**

| Most common site: Pelvic brim near the infundibulopelvic ligament |
| Most common procedure: Simple abdominal hysterectomy |
| Most common type of injury: Obstruction |
| Most common “activity” leading to injury: Attempts to obtain hemostasis |
| Most common time of diagnosis: None: 50-50 split between intraoperative and postoperative |
| Most common long-term sequelae: None |

dissecting a ureter from its location, try to stay outside the adventitial sheath. This will decrease the probability of devascularization and subsequent ischemia. This cannot always be accomplished, particularly in those settings in which there is a malignancy, significant scarring and fibrosis that accompany endometriosis, or prior pelvic radiation. However, because of its rich longitudinal blood supply, the ureter usually survives. Finally, when using instruments that transmit energy to the tissues (e.g., electrocoagulation, whether monopolar or bipolar, argon beam coagulator or laser), the surgeon should know the zone of thermal injury for that instrument at that power setting. Although the mean distance of thermal damage with most of these instruments is approximately 2 mm, it may be as much as 5 mm; therefore, the use of such energy sources near the ureter has the potential for unrecognized injury and delayed necrosis.

Every obstetrician and gynecologist performing pelvic surgery must know how to enter the retroperitoneal space and identify the ureter. Starting at the round ligament, cut the peritoneum lateral to the ovarian vessels to the colon at the pelvic brim (Fig. 38.4). There is nothing one can injure or cause to bleed in this zone. Bluntly dissect the ovary and its vessels medially to enter this posterior retroperitoneal space. The large vessels and pelvic sidewall will be lateral and easily identified by palpation and visualization. The ureter will be seen adhered loosely to the medial peritoneum. It always crosses over the iliac artery at this pelvic brim just where the internal iliac artery arises. Gently caress the ureter with the sucker or pickups, and it will further identify itself with a peristaltic movement. In massively obese women with poor exposure, place your index finger in this retroperitoneal space and your thumb outside the peritoneum. The ureter can be identified by a distinct “snap” or “click” between one’s fingers. Once identified, the ureter can easily be followed by using blunt dissection with a right angle clamp all the way to the uterine artery. Between the uterine artery and bladder, it can usually be followed by the palpation and “snap” technique previously described.

### SPECIFIC HIGH-RISK PROCEDURES FOR URETERAL INJURIES

**Laparoscopy-Associated Ureteral Injuries**

Ureteral injuries at the time of laparoscopy are very uncommon, occurring in approximately 0.3% to 0.4% of all cases. Laparoscopic ureteral injuries are unique when compared with

![FIGURE 38.4. The initial step for ureteral identification is clamping and cutting of the round ligament. The loose areolar tissue is dissected and the ureter identified on the medial leaf of the broad ligament peritoneum.](image_url)
open injuries from two potentially complicating realities. First, these injuries are more likely to be the result of a thermal injury than incision, transaction, or encroachment/ligation. Second, ureteral injuries in association with laparoscopy are more likely to be diagnosed 2 to 5 days after the surgery. This delay in diagnosis decreases the probability of a successful immediate primary repair and increases the risk of a long-term complication. The ureter is most commonly injured during laparoscopic hysterectomy when the uterine vessels are stapled or electrocoagulated. Another common site of injury is when the infundibulopelvic ligament is transected. When performing laparoscopic surgery near the pelvic wall or cul-de-sac, it is imperative to know the location of the ureter. Extreme caution should be used with cautery or laser near or over the ureter. It can usually be seen and followed through the peritoneum; but when not visible, it should be identified retroperitoneally and followed down to the site of operative interest. When primary injury is recognized, laparoscopic repair can be successfully performed by an experienced laparoscopist.

**Complex Adnexectomy**

Ureteral injury at the time of complex adnexectomy is worthy of specific comment because (a) it is in this setting that the ureter is commonly injured, and (b) these injuries can be avoided by using the retroperitoneal approach as previously described.

Every obstetrical or gynecological surgeon must be able to quickly and safely enter the retroperitoneum. This surgical skill is necessary to (a) access the pelvic vessels for the purpose of establishing hemostasis and (b) use the retroperitoneum as an adhesion- and pathology-free “space” in which to operate. Access is obtained most commonly for the latter purpose. Entrance into this retroperitoneal space in the pelvis is safe, easy, and extremely useful as previously described. Once this retroperitoneal space (which continues deep into the pelvis as the pararectal space) has been developed, the ureter should be visible on the medial leaf of the broad ligament.

If an adnexal mass is adherent to the medial leaf of the broad ligament or pelvic peritoneum overlying the ureter, the ureter can safely be dissected laterally from the peritoneum. Once the ureter has been mobilized and is out of harm’s way, resection of inflamed, scarred, or fibrotic peritoneum with the overlying adherent mass can safely be performed (Fig. 38.5). There are rare instances when it is impossible to mobilize the ureter from the pathology. In this setting, the surgeon must decide whether to leave a little tumor or endometriosis on the ureter, risking subsequent obstruction, or resect a segment of ureter and repair accordingly.

**Abdominal Hysterectomy**

Ureteral injury during resection of an adnexal mass usually results from surgical trauma to the ureter between the level of the pelvic brim to the tunnel of Wertheim. When discussing ureteral injuries associated with the performance of an abdominal hysterectomy, the focus of our attention is on where the ureter enters the tunnel under the uterine artery, lateral to the uterosacral ligaments, until the ureter terminates in the bladder. When performing an abdominal hysterectomy for benign disease, there are two situations that are particularly high risk for a ureteral injury: (i) a lower uterine segment or cervical fibroid protruding into the broad ligament or (ii) bleeding from pedicles, especially at the vaginal corners.

With a broad ligament fibroid, the ureter can be anterior, lateral, or posterior to the fibroid. The clamp, cut, suture technique around the fibroid is too dangerous for injury. I prefer a myomectomy by an incision adjacent to the uterus or cervix. One can do this with no risk of ureteral injury by staying within the myometrial capsule of the fibroid. Bleeding may occur, but once the fibroid is out, bleeding is easily controlled by clamping adjacent to the uterus. In the rare case when this is impossible, the entire course of the ureter must be identified before clamping or cutting.

Bleeding from the pedicles or vaginal angle should be controlled by a “superficial” 3-0 suture. One should place the
Operative Injuries to the Ureter


suture very superficially so that it cannot be around the ureter, which is “very close” once the tissues have retracted. It is that deep suture that gets the ureter. To avoid ureteral injury, an “intrafascial hysterectomy” technique was used in the past. In this technique, a plane within the myometrium of the lower uterine segment and cervix is developed once the uterine vessels have been ligated. This technique is illustrated in Chapter 32A. It is rarely used today because it results in increased blood loss; however, it theoretically reduces the risk of injury to the distal ureter.

If one is fearful that the ureter is ligated or injured on one side, it is easy to answer the question. Find the ureter at the common iliac artery, place it on stretch, and insert a 21-gauge “butterfly” needle into its lumen—just like an IV. Inject 5 to 10 cc methylene blue stained saline directly into the lumen of the ureter. If the ureter is intact, blue stain is seen in the Foley catheter verifying an open ureter. If the ureter has a leak, blue stain will be seen in the pelvis. If the ureter enlarges and no blue stain is seen in the Foley, the ureter is ligated and needs appropriate repair. I have done this many, many times and never seen a complication secondary to it.

Cesarean Hysterectomy

I feel this special situation is worthy of comment, even though it is relatively uncommon. The location of the ureter is a frequent cause of intraoperative consultations to advanced pelvic surgeons during the course of cesarean hysterectomy, which is often bloody and where distorted anatomy is almost always present. An easy way to avoid ureteral injuries is to simply perform a supracervical hysterectomy; however, some surgeons find this a suboptimal choice. Therefore, in addition to the techniques outlined to this point, a hysterectomy incision can be extended caudally toward the cervix (Fig. 38.6). This permits the relatively easy placement of the forefinger into the endocervical canal and upper vagina, allowing tactile as well as visual guidance for the cervical-vaginal junction. With your finger in place, it is simple to identify where to place a clamp adjacent to the cervix.

Vaginal Hysterectomy

Ureteral injury during a vaginal hysterectomy is remarkably uncommon because of traction on the cervix, which pulls the uterus farther from the ureter. However, a culdoplasty frequently is part of the reconstructive phase of the procedure, and this places the ureter at risk. There are maneuvers that can be taken to minimize the probability of injuring a ureter. Palpatory ureteral identification via the vaginal approach is one useful step (Fig. 38.7). Another technique is placing an Allis clamp on the vaginal cuff in the area of the uterosacral ligament and...
Bladder Neck Suspension and Pelvic Organ Prolapse

Ureteral injury during retropubic repair most often affects the distal ureter. As Wiper and Walters have stated, this injury can occur during three distinct parts of performance of the procedure: (a) vigorous dissection of the space of Retzius and the periretreal tissues, (b) high elevation of Burch colposuspension sutures, and (c) paravaginal defect repair performed in combination with the Burch procedure. An additional way that the ureters could be injured is by excessive lateral mobilization of the bladder, which exposes the actual dorsal surface of the bladder in the vicinity of the trigone, bringing the ureter into the operative field.

There are specific steps that can be taken to avoid such injuries. Dissection into and through the space of Retzius should be done under direct visualization, remaining as close to the symphysis pubis as possible. The amount of dissection that occurs over the lateral paravaginal tissues should be kept to the minimal amount needed to guarantee accurate and appropriate placement of the sutures. Marked lateral mobilization of the bladder off of the underlying vagina potentially exposes the ureters. The urethrovesical junction must not be elevated as high as possible. Unquestionably, this can cause kinking not only of the urethra but also the ureters in certain patients.

Ureteral injury at time of surgical correction of pelvic organ prolapse is relatively common. The method of ureteral injury may result from direct ligation or, more likely, from kinking as the redundant tissues are plicated. Many surgeons who specialize in this type of surgery recommend that cystoscopy with intravenous indigo carmine be routinely performed during these procedures to check for ureteral integrity.

Radical Pelvic Surgery

Of all the groups of surgical procedures performed, those performed for the treatment of cancers affecting the female reproductive tract are the most likely to involve either intentional ureteral surgery or have the highest risk of an associated ureteral injury. It is very important to differentiate between an intentional ureteral ligation and one that is unintended or accidental. Intentional cutting of the ureter or entry into the bladder may be an integral part of performing many of the most important operative procedures in the radical pelvic surgeon’s armamentarium. The MD Anderson type IV radical hysterectomy, a total or anterior pelvic exenteration, and resection of a fixed pelvic sidewall mass that involves the ureter may require that the redundant tissues be plicated. Many surgeons who specialize in this type of surgery recommend that cystoscopy with intravenous indigo carmine be routinely performed during these procedures to check for ureteral integrity.

How common are ureteral injuries in association with radical pelvic surgery? The largest volume of data addresses ureteral injuries at time of traditional Wertheim or MD Anderson type III radical hysterectomies. Angioli and Penalver, in their excellent review combining the major modern series, reported that there is an average rate of ureteral injury of just more than 1% with a concomitant rate of bladder injury that is similar. Interestingly, as noted, these rates have been consistent over time and among different surgical groups during the last quarter century. There is a growing international experience with the performance of radical vaginal trachelectomy as fertility-sparing treatment for women with FIGO stage IA1 to IB1 cervical cancer. The cumulative English-language data demonstrate that the rate of ureteral injuries in this setting is about the same as with radical abdominal hysterectomy, although rates of bladder injury are somewhat higher. In contrast to these relatively low rates of ureteral injury, when a radical resection is performed following therapeutic radiation therapy, there is an associated risk of ureteral dysfunction of approximately 30%.

The incidence of ureteral injury at the time of a simple transvesical hysterectomy as part of the treatment of endometrial cancer is low and similar to that when hysterectomy is performed for nonmalignant disease. Ureteral injuries in association with lymph node dissections, sampling, or when performing “radical” oophorectomies are remarkably uncommon when those injuries that occur near the entrance to and through the tunnel of Wertheim are excluded from the data. The reader is referred to the appropriate chapters within this text for more details concerning ureteral injury and its prevention during surgery for gynecologic malignancies.

DIAGNOSING URETERAL INJURY

In most instances, the symptoms and findings associated with an intraoperative ureteral injury that are not appreciated at the time of surgery are subtle and may be overlooked. Signs and symptoms such as unilateral cramping, flank pain, unexplained temperature elevation, ascites, peritoneal fluid collection, and unusual delay in return of bowel function (ileus) should lead one to consider an investigation into the integrity and function of the ureter, depending on the degree of suspicion of the surgeon. From a laboratory perspective, relatively inconsequential rises in serum creatinine (as little as 0.8 mg/dL) may be related to unilateral ureteral ligation. In contrast, it is unlikely that specific urinary tract symptomatology—such as the frank draining of urine from a drain, vagina, or abdominal incision—would be ignored. In all instances, when a patient reports a watery vaginal discharge following a hysterectomy, urinary tract injury must be investigated. A ureteral fistula may be suspected if there is urine leakage from the vagina; however, a bladder or urethral fistula is more common, depending on the type of surgery. Several simple tests can differentiate between a ureteral and bladder fistula. The bladder is filled with 200 cc saline stained with 1 to 3 cc methylene blue. If blue fluid comes out of the vagina, there is a bladder injury. If the watery discharge does not stain, inject 3 cc indigo carmine intravenously. If within 5 to 10 minutes the fluid turns blue, a ureteral fistula is present. If neither procedure results in blue drainage fluid, check the creatinine level of the fluid. If it is the same as serum levels, the drainage is peritoneal fluid or lymph. If it is urine, the creatinine level will be higher. These simple, rapid tests will usually answer the problem.

If there is any significant degree of suspicion that a ureteral injury has occurred, further evaluation must be

Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

pulling upward to make the uterosacral ligament taut. With a finger inside the cuff, the uterosacral ligament should be palpated. This technique allows identification of both the ureter and the uterosacral ligament so that the culdoplasty sutures can be placed correctly and safely.

Ureteral injury at time of surgical correction of pelvic organ prolapse is relatively common. The method of ureteral injury may result from direct ligation or, more likely, from kinking as the redundant tissues are plicated. Many surgeons who specialize in this type of surgery recommend that cystoscopy with intravenous indigo carmine be routinely performed during these procedures to check for ureteral integrity.

How common are ureteral injuries in association with radical pelvic surgery? The largest volume of data addresses ureteral injuries at time of traditional Wertheim or MD Anderson type III radical hysterectomies. Angioli and Penalver, in their excellent review combining the major modern series, reported that there is an average rate of ureteral injury of just more than 1% with a concomitant rate of bladder injury that is similar. Interestingly, as noted, these rates have been consistent over time and among different surgical groups during the last quarter century. There is a growing international experience with the performance of radical vaginal trachelectomy as fertility-sparing treatment for women with FIGO stage IA1 to IB1 cervical cancer. The cumulative English-language data demonstrate that the rate of ureteral injuries in this setting is about the same as with radical abdominal hysterectomy, although rates of bladder injury are somewhat higher. In contrast to these relatively low rates of ureteral injury, when a radical resection is performed following therapeutic radiation therapy, there is an associated risk of ureteral dysfunction of approximately 30%.

The incidence of ureteral injury at the time of a simple transvesical hysterectomy as part of the treatment of endometrial cancer is low and similar to that when hysterectomy is performed for nonmalignant disease. Ureteral injuries in association with lymph node dissections, sampling, or when performing “radical” oophorectomies are remarkably uncommon when those injuries that occur near the entrance to and through the tunnel of Wertheim are excluded from the data. The reader is referred to the appropriate chapters within this text for more details concerning ureteral injury and its prevention during surgery for gynecologic malignancies.

DIAGNOSING URETERAL INJURY

In most instances, the symptoms and findings associated with an intraoperative ureteral injury that are not appreciated at the time of surgery are subtle and may be overlooked. Signs and symptoms such as unilateral cramping, flank pain, unexplained temperature elevation, ascites, peritoneal fluid collection, and unusual delay in return of bowel function (ileus) should lead one to consider an investigation into the integrity and function of the ureter, depending on the degree of suspicion of the surgeon. From a laboratory perspective, relatively inconsequential rises in serum creatinine (as little as 0.8 mg/dL) may be related to unilateral ureteral ligation. In contrast, it is unlikely that specific urinary tract symptomatology—such as the frank draining of urine from a drain, vagina, or abdominal incision—would be ignored. In all instances, when a patient reports a watery vaginal discharge following a hysterectomy, urinary tract injury must be investigated. A ureteral fistula may be suspected if there is urine leakage from the vagina; however, a bladder or urethral fistula is more common, depending on the type of surgery. Several simple tests can differentiate between a ureteral and bladder fistula. The bladder is filled with 200 cc saline stained with 1 to 3 cc methylene blue. If blue fluid comes out of the vagina, there is a bladder injury. If the watery discharge does not stain, inject 3 cc indigo carmine intravenously. If within 5 to 10 minutes the fluid turns blue, a ureteral fistula is present. If neither procedure results in blue drainage fluid, check the creatinine level of the fluid. If it is the same as serum levels, the drainage is peritoneal fluid or lymph. If it is urine, the creatinine level will be higher. These simple, rapid tests will usually answer the problem.

If there is any significant degree of suspicion that a ureteral injury has occurred, further evaluation must be
undertaken expeditiously. If there is concern of ureteral ligation, a noninvasive renal ultrasound showing hydronephrosis or hydroureter is fast, inexpensive, and accurate. In the past, these investigations began with the performance of an intravenous pyelogram. However, in the modern era, urinary tract imaging is usually done by computer tomography (CT) scan. The CT scan with contrast can give the same information regarding the integrity and function of the renal collecting system while offering the advantage of identifying urinomas, strictures, or changes in the postoperative anatomy of the surrounding structures. When the serum creatinine is elevated, intravenous contrast can cause significant renal damage, so a contrasted CT scan in contraindicated in these circumstances. A renal/proximal ureter ultrasound would be preferable in this situation.

**MANAGEMENT OF URETERAL INJURY**

It is an oversimplification to state that every specific type of ureteral injury can be managed by a specific and universally applicable way. Unique variables among patients play an important role in deciding which approach is best for a given setting. Nevertheless, general guidelines and techniques may be helpful. General recommendations for the management of ureteral injuries identified at the time of surgery are outlined in Table 38.4.

One of the most controversial issues regarding the management of ureteral injuries diagnosed in the postoperative period is how long one should wait before attempting repair. Some form of immediate intervention must be undertaken no matter what type of injury has occurred. If there is an obstruction without intraperitoneal or retroperitoneal leakage of urine, an immediate attempt at ureteral stent placement should be undertaken. It is important to appreciate that the higher the grade of obstruction, the less likely that a retrograde stent can be placed successfully. In those instances in which a retrograde stent cannot be placed, a percutaneous nephrostomy must be immediately carried out. A percutaneous nephrostomy usually cannot be done under fluoroscopic guidance by the interventional radiologist without too much difficulty. Any delay in relieving an obstruction into the bladder. If successful, larger catheters can then be passed over the guidewire. Finally, a double-J stent with one end in the bladder and the other in the real pelvis can be left in place for 6 to 8 weeks until the sutures responsible for the ureteral obstruction have dissolved. If the obstruction is too similar recommendation that a percutaneous nephrostomy be performed. Once drainage of urine has been reestablished by the nephrostomy stent, the next decision is whether surgical intervention should be undertaken. Some believe that for those women with high-grade obstructions, an attempt at surgical débridement or performance of the appropriate repair as described later in this chapter (which is unlikely to be successful) should be undertaken as soon as can be scheduled. Once the nephrostomy is functioning well, this is not an emergency; therefore, most believe that a workup to localize the site of obstruction or leakage should be completed, the patient stabilized, and any appropriate consultation obtained. If diagnosed immediately postoperatively, the best chance of healing with primary repair is reoperation within 24 to 48 hours. However, most injuries are diagnosed later, and edema, necrosis, and tissue reaction reduces the possibility of immediate successful primary repair and dictates delayed repair. By waiting several weeks, the postoperative inflammatory changes will resolve making repair easier.

In those instances in which there is no major degree of obstruction and the obstruction is not the result of a “permanent” agent (metal clip or suture), or when only a ureteral leak occurs, a period of watchful waiting may be tried in the hope of avoiding surgical intervention entirely. If there is a ureteral leak, delay is advised only if a ureteral stent can be placed that stops the leakage.

If a ureteral leak has been identified postoperatively and the leak has developed in the setting of prior pelvic radiation, then an aggressive attempt at percutaneous nephrostomy diversion should be undertaken. A period of many months should be allowed to pass before reevaluating the patient radiographically to determine whether the leak has spontaneously healed. Although it is less likely that spontaneous closure will take place, the complex and risky nature of surgical correction in the radiated pelvis demands, in the patient’s best interest, that the maximal attempt for spontaneous healing be allowed before any attempt at surgical repair. The site of ureteral repair should incorporate a functional blood supply. Therefore, the success of an ureteroureterostomy is very low. Thus, one time an ureteroureterostomy above the irradiated pelvis is indicated. Omental wrap at the anastomotic site will improve blood supply.

**Ureteral Ligation**

Complete ureteral ligation can occur, but it is much more common that the ureter will be angulated or kinked by the placement of a suture that is either within the pararectal tissue or partially placed through the ureter. If kinked, which is probably much more common than has been recognized, the first management approach would be to attempt to pass a ureteral catheter. This may be done via the classic approach from below, but in recent years, a percutaneous nephrostomy can be done by the interventional radiologist. The dilated renal pelvis, which results from the distal ureteral obstruction, often simplifies the percutaneous nephrostomy. Once the nephrostomy tube is in place, contrast can be injected to see if even a small trickle of dye gets past the obstruction into the bladder. If there is no opening, an attempt is made to pass a thin guidewire through the nephrostomy tube, down the ureter, and past the obstruction into the bladder. If successful, larger catheters can be passed over the guidewire. Finally, a (double-J) stent with one end in the bladder and the other in the real pelvis can be left in place for 6 to 8 weeks until the sutures responsible for the ureteral obstruction have dissolved. If the obstruction is too
We recommend. First, the surgeon should be assured that the resection drain (Fig 38.8). There are two major modifications that recommended method of repair. The rules regarding perforation of the ureteroureterostomy are the same as for the repair of the primary subtotal transaction: a limited number of sutures should be trimmed to an appropriate length that is neither too long and redundant or too short so that there is tension on the anastomoses. The edges of the distal ileal segment are pulled through an incision in the dome of the bladder and sutured to the bladder mucosa with 3-0 delayed absorbable sutures placed via another incision in the bladder done. A series of 2-0 delayed absorbable sutures are then used to secure the serosa of the bowel to the outside serosa and muscularis of the bladder.

We strongly favor cystotomy. Performing a ureterostomy when one is not required produces an unnecessary site for stenosis or a leak. Cystoscopy requires additional time, instrumentation, repositioning, and reparing of the patient if she has not been placed in the dorsal low-lithotomy position from the beginning of the case. Opening the dome of the bladder in an extraperitoneal (preperitoneal via the space of Retzius) fashion is easy, safe, and efficient. We prefer the use of a no. 7 French double-J ureteral stent over a guidewire. The use of a right-angle clamp to manipulate the wire makes placement quite easy. The cystotomy is closed in two layers of absorbable suture: (a) the urothelium and (b) the detrusor muscle in a running Lembert technique.

Partial Ureteral Transsection
Repair of a partial transaction (buttonhole) is probably the easiest and fastest of all the ureteral injuries to manage. Because the ureterotomy already has occurred, if it is believed a stent is needed, it can be placed up and down through the ureterotomy. If it is a small hole, a stent is not necessary. The ureter is repaired using small, absorbable interrupted sutures. Excessive suture placement should be avoided. It is uncommon that more than two or three individual sutures are needed. Unless there is distal obstruction or the ureter has been devascularized, healing is usually rapid and complete. Additional suture placement does not increase the probability of adequate watertight closure and simply increases the probability of infection, ischemia, and scar formation. A closed suction drainage should be placed at the base of the repair.

Total Transsection
Uncomplicated Upper and Middle Thirds
A transaction of the ureter in its upper or middle thirds occurs in association with the performance of a paraaortic lymph node dissection or colonic resection. When the type of injury occurs, an end-to-end ureteroureterostomy over a ureteral stent is the recommended method of repair. The rules regarding perforation of the ureteroureterostomy are the same as for the repair of the primary subtotal transaction: a limited number of sutures using small-gauge absorbable sutures are placed over a ureteral stent, and the site of the repair is drained using a closed suction drain (Fig 38.8). There are two major modifications that we recommend. First, the surgeon should be assured that the ureteroureterostomy is completely tension free. Extra length of the ureter can be obtained by either mobilizing the kidney or mobilizing the distal ureter. The latter is usually preferable. Second, we recommend that both ends (proximal and distal) of the ureteroureterostomy site be spatulated. When the spatulating incision is made, care must be taken to assure that the blood vessels running in the ureteral sheath are not transected. If this occurs, the advantages of increasing the lumen size at the site of the ureteroureterostomy are probably offset by the possibility of a devascularization injury and subsequent sloughing of the site of repair. The vessels in the ureteral adventitial sheath usually can be visualized. Of course, the spatulation should be done on opposing sides of the proximal and distal ureter so as to facilitate a watertight seal.

Complicated Upper and Middle Thirds
By convention, complicated upper- and middle-third ureteral injuries are those in which one has resected a sizable segment of the ureter, and it can not be brought together in a tension-free fashion using either proximal or distal mobilization techniques as described. Although there are really two ways to effect repair (transureteroureterostomy and ureteroureteroneocystotomy), most argue against the performance of the first technique. By definition, this places both urinary drainage systems with injuries and, therefore, at risk. For this reason, transureteroureterostomy has generally been abandoned and remains of historical interest only. Therefore, it is ureteroureteroneocystotomy, in the form of an ureteroileal interposition, that most call standard for management of such an injury.

Ureteroileal interposition is a relatively easy procedure to perform. A healthy and mobile segment of the distal ileum is identified and the vascular arcades assured to be adequate for viability. We prefer to perform this resection using linear stapling devices. The ileum is repaired with a side-to-side stapled anastomosis before the performance of the ureteral repair. Once the bowel has been reanastomosed and packed off, the proximal end of the isolated loop of ileum is opened and all metal staples excised. A ureteral-ileal end-to-side anastomosis is performed over a ureteral stent or infant feeding tube. The ureter is spatulated, and the full thickness of the ureter is pulled through a hole made in the antimesenteric wall of the ileal segment. The full-thickness ureter is splayed open inside of the ileal segment using a small-gauge suture. In addition, the seromuscular portion of the ureter is attached to the serosa of the ileal segment so that the intra-ileal anastomosis is completely tension free. Unless a “pigtail” stent is used, the stent must be fixed with a catgut suture to the bowel lumen to prevent expulsion by normal ureteral peristalsis. After the proximal ureteroureteral anastomosis is completed, the patent lumen of the proximal end of the ileal segment is closed. Either PGA staples (our preference) or a two-layer hand-sewn technique can be used. Closing the ileum with metal staples is not an acceptable option because of the potential for stone formation on the permanent foreign body that is exposed to urine. The distal end of the ileal segment is then opened and the staple line removed. The distal end of the ileal segment and ureteral stent are then inserted directly into the bladder. The outermost ileal segment should be trimmed to an appropriate length that is neither too long and redundant or too short so that there is tension on the anastomoses. Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas
FIGURE 38.8. A: The ends of the ureters are trimmed obliquely and spatulated. B: Fine delayed-absorbable sutures are used to approximate the ends of the ureter. C: The anastomosis is done over a double-J or pigtail stent. A suction catheter is placed retroperitoneally at the site of anastomosis.

(Fig. 38.9). This “ileal conduit” may be secured to the psoas muscle fascia to minimize tension on that bowel segment mesentery and potential tension on the proximal ureteroneoanastomosis that may result from the effect of gravity when the patient is in an upright position. The ureteral stent should remain in vivo for at least 6 weeks. A cystoureterogram to identify any persistent occult leaks is recommended before removing the stent.

Lower Third of Ureter

Following a ureteral transaction within 6 cm of the ureterovesical junction or at the time of any resection of the lower third of the ureter, there must be a serious concern that vascularity of the distal remaining ureteral segment has been seriously compromised. Usually, it is possible to mobilize the bladder and do a direct ureteroneocystostomy so that there is no reason to take a risk with a possibly compromised distal ureter. The standard for repair in these situations has become the ureteroneocystostomy over a ureteral stent. A psoas hitch may be necessary for the ureter to reach the bladder. As with the performance of the ileal interposition, this is not a technically difficult procedure. There is a very high probability of a successful outcome if a meticulous focus on surgical technique is maintained. The first step in performing the ureteroneocystostomy is to tie off the distal segment of the ureter that is still attached to the bladder. Because the lumen of the remaining distal ureter is not in contact with the sutures, a permanent material can be used for the ligation. If a psoas hitch is required, the entire ventral surface of the bladder is freed from its areolar attachment in the retropubic space. This facilitates mobilization of the bladder toward the proximal ureter and can be done with no functional risk for the bladder as long as the dorsal lateral blood supply is left intact. Once the bladder has been fully mobilized, a cystotomy in the bladder dome is performed. The cystotomy incision should be at 90 degrees to the direction desired to elongate the bladder. After the ureterostomy has been done, the incision is then closed at right angles to the way it was opened (the two ends of the incision are closed together as the middle of the closure and the middle of the incision becomes the end of the closure). This will elongate the bladder toward the shortened ureter helping to avoid tension on the ureteral anastomosis. The ureteroneocystostomy is performed using the same technique for anastomosis as described in the discussion of the ileal interposition procedure. The site where the ureter should be drawn into the bladder usually is self-evident. We attempt to place this attachment on the posterior aspect of the bladder dome, some distance from the trigone so as to minimize any potential stenosis or injury to the contralateral ureteral orifice. Using direct tactile and visual guidance, with the primary...
surgeon’s finger in the bladder, the ventral-lateral aspect of the bladder is attached to the psoas muscle tendon. We prefer to attach the bladder directly to the psoas tendon using two separate permanent sutures. The sutures are attached to the bladder wall without entering the bladder lumen. Therefore, the bladder is elongated toward and approximated to the psoas tendon (Fig. 38.10). Many inexperienced surgeons are amazed at the degree of elongation that can be obtained and the length of the ureterovesical gap that can be bridged if there has been a thorough bladder mobilization in the retropubic and paravesical spaces. The ureter is stented, and the bladder is closed in two layers. The site of the ureteroneocystostomy is drained. Our preference is to remove this drain within the first 2 to 3 days once we are certain that no leak has occurred. The bladder is drained for 10 days and ureteral stent left in place for 6 weeks.

**SUMMARY**

Ureteral injuries can be expected, and, although unpleasant, they are a reality in the life of the active gynecologic surgeon. The vast majority of these misadventures can be avoided by constant reflection on the location of the ureter and meticulous attention to optimal surgical technique. Should ureteral injury occur, an optimal outcome is the result of accurately diagnosing the type of injury and its location; protecting the kidney by nephrostomy, retrograde stenting, or prompt reoperation; and, finally, by correcting the ureteral injury by appropriate surgical or nonsurgical techniques.

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- The pelvic surgeon must always be aware of the location of the ureters in relation to the operative field.
- The most common sites of ureteral injuries are within the cardinal ligament where the ureter crosses under the uterine artery, in the tunnel of Wertheim, in the intramural portion of the ureter dorsal to the infundibulopelvic ligament near or at the pelvic brim, and lateral on the pelvic sidewall above the uterosacral ligament.
Abdominal hysterectomy is the most common gynecologic surgery resulting in operative injury to the ureter. The two high-risk areas for ureteral injuries during abdominal hysterectomies for benign disease are lower-uterine-segment or cervical tissues protruding into the broad ligament or bleeding from pedicles, especially at the vaginal corners.

Postoperatively signs and symptoms of ureteral injury include unilateral hematuria, flank pain, unexplained temperature elevation, ascites, retroperitoneal fluid collection, and unusual delay in return of bowel function.

A test to differentiate between bladder and ureteral fistulae is instillation of 200 cc saline stained with 1 to 3 cc methylene blue into the bladder. If blue fluid is visualized from the vagina, it is a bladder injury. If the discharge does not stain, inject IV 5 cc indigo carmine. If within 5 to 10 minutes the fluid turns blue, it is a ureteral fistula. If neither stains, the drainage may be peritoneal fluid or lymph.

Complete or partial ureteral ligation at the same time of hysterectomy results in an optimal outcome. The standard repair following ureteral transection within 6 hours consists of ureteroneocystostomy. An unusual delay in return of bowel function.

Distant anastomosis is performed by appropriate surgical or nonsurgical treatment: stenting, or prompt reoperation; and, finally, by correcting the cause of accurately diagnosing the type of injury and its location; protecting the kidney by nephrostomy, retrograde ureteral catheterization, and finally by correcting the adverse outcomes.
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas


CHAPTER 39 ■ VESICOVAGINAL FISTULA AND URETHROVAGINAL FISTULA

G. RODNEY MEEKS AND TED M. ROTH

DEFINITIONS

Interposition graft—Placement of tissue to enhance tissue bulk or vascularity in an effort to enhance success of repair.

Latzko repair—A vaginal technique for repair of a vesicovaginal fistula at the apex of the vagina that includes partial colpocleisis.

O’Conor repair—An abdominal technique for repair of vesicovaginal fistula that uses cystotomy, separation of the vagina and bladder, excision of the fistula tract, and layer closure of the bladder and vagina.

Urethrovaginal fistula—An abnormal communication between urethra and vagina.

Vesicovaginal fistula—An abnormal communication between bladder and vagina.

Although it is difficult to accurately gauge the incidence of genitourinary fistulae in the United States, the majority result from gynecologic surgery, specifically total abdominal hysterectomy, urogynecologic procedures, radiation therapy, or complications of parturition. Prolonged obstructed labor remains the most common cause of destruction of the urethra and base of the bladder in developing countries, where good medical care is limited. When a fistula becomes symptomatic depends on its cause, location, and size. Differences of opinion have developed regarding timing and route of repair; however, success of fistula repair ultimately depends on a surgeon’s experience, judgment, and appropriateness of technique.

HISTORICAL SURVEY

Vesicovaginal fistulae (VVF) have occurred since the beginning of recorded time. Professor Derry, of the medical faculty at Fonsal I University in Egypt, discovered a large VVF in the mummy of Henhenit, a lady in the court of Mentuhotep of the Eleventh Dynasty who reigned about 2050 B.C. He found the pelvis was considerably contracted in the transverse diameter, and there was a through-and-through tear of the perineum. The Kahun papyrus, which refers back to 2000 B.C. and generally is thought to contain the earliest gynecologic references, and the Eber’s papyrus, from about 1500 B.C., make no mention of VVF. The Talmud, likewise, fails to give any evidence of a VVF. The Eleventh Dynasty who reigned about 2050 B.C. He found the pelvis was considerably contracted in the transverse diameter, and there was a through-and-through tear of the perineum. The Kahun papyrus, which refers back to 2000 B.C. and generally is thought to contain the earliest gynecologic references, and the Eber’s papyrus, from about 1500 B.C., make no mention of VVF. The Talmud, likewise, fails to give any evidence of a VVF. The Talmud, likewise, fails to give any evidence of a VVF. The Kahun papyrus, which refers back to 2000 B.C. and generally is thought to contain the earliest gynecologic references, and the Eber’s papyrus, from about 1500 B.C., make no mention of VVF. The Talmud, likewise, fails to give any evidence of a VVF. The Kahun papyrus, which refers back to 2000 B.C. and generally is thought to contain the earliest gynecologic references, and the Eber’s papyrus, from about 1500 B.C., make no mention of VVF. The Talmud, likewise, fails to give any evidence of a VVF.

In 1663, Hendrik Von Rooinhuyzen published his Medico-Chirurgical Observations about the Infirmities of Women. His innovations for the management of VVF included proper exposure with a speculum, marginal denudation of the fistula, and approximation of the demuded edges with “stitching needles made of stiff swan’s quills.” No figures or postoperative results were presented. Posthumously published in 1752, Johann Fatto described the first reported cures using Von Roninhuysen’s technique.

A new era in the surgical treatment of VVF occurred in the 19th century. In 1834, de Lamballe was the first to emphasize tension-free closures. He also noted that newly acquired fistulae without evidence of induration at the edges might be cured by prolonged catheterization alone. De Lamballe also made attempts to cure VVF with pedicle flaps from labia, buttocks, and thighs. Simon of Darmstadt, a colleague of de Lamballe, suggested transverse colpocleisis in those cases that defied previous attempts at closure. Although this procedure was fraught with complications, partial colpocleisis was later espoused by Latzko to cure posthysterectomy fistulae.

In 1832, Marion Sims published his classic work, which formally established the technique of VVF repair. His contribution to this endeavor is recognized by the recent republication of his original paper. Although many of his innovations were not new, he attained greater success than anyone else, and his personality helped in bringing public attention to the treatment of women’s diseases. Although Sims’s only innovation was the use of silver wire suture, he standardized and defined the surgical principles of vesicovaginal repair that are used to this day. The ethics surrounding Sims’s seminal work have recently been reviewed. The fact that his original subjects were slaves leads to a question of ethical treatment of women who had minimal, if any, personal autonomy. It is generally believed that Sims was trying to enhance the lives of these women and was in concert with accepted mores.

As laparotomy became safer, many surgeons developed abdominal techniques for VVF repair. Trendelenburg, in 1881 to 1890, described opening the bladder suprapubically, freeing the bladder wall, and closing the defect. Masionnaire and Mackenrodt independently described separating the bladder from the vaginal mucosa and suturing each as an individual layer. These principles remain foundations for modern closure techniques.

In 1896, Kelly described a vaginal method of closing a large bladder defect. The bladder is freed away from the cervix to the level of the visceral peritoneum and closed. He also advocated the use of preoperative ureteral catheterization to minimize risk of ureteral injury, a technique first championed by Pawlik in 1882. By 1906, when Kelly described a suprapubic route for
repair of VVF, at least 12 different surgical approaches had been detailed.

In 1942, Latzko described, in detail, the principles of his transvaginal operation, based on the work by Simon, which is considered by some to be the gold standard for the surgical management of posthysterectomy VVF. Latzko reported that 29 of 31 cases of VVF treated by his method of partial colpocleisis were cured. The outcomes are impressive considering that the majority of these patients had antecedent radical abdominal hysterectomy for cervical cancer.

**ETIOLOGY/EPIDEMOIOLOGY**

The etiology of urogenital fistulae may be categorized as congenital or acquired, the latter being associated with childbirth, gynecologic surgery, malignancy, and radiation therapy. When VVF occurs in childhood, antecedent events include penetrating trauma, retained or neglected foreign bodies, and genitourinary surgery. Congenital VVFs are extremely rare, and most coexist with other congenital urinary tract abnormalities. In one small series, seven of nine were associated with other genitourinary malformations. This chapter focuses on acquired VVF.

Much of the literature consists of retrospective case series and reflects the experience of a particular surgeon or fistula center. During a 15-year period of review, 103 women with genitourinary fistulae were seen at the Mayo Clinic (of whom 280 underwent surgical repair). Of the 190 patients with vesicovaginal fistulae, gynecologic surgery was responsible for 145 (82%) of the fistulae, 19 (11%) were from obstetric procedures, 15 (7%) followed treatment for malignant disease, and 5 (3%) were from trauma. Similarly, Goodwin and Scardino found 74% of their cases to be of gynecologic origin, 14% of urologic origin, and 12% from radiation injury.

Culture and geography are reflected in the frequencies and etiologies of VVF. In England, Kelly found that 95% of the VVF occurred with nonobstetric causes. In contradistinction, obstructed labor caused 98% of the VVF in Nigeria. In developing countries, obstetric trauma remains the leading cause of VVF. Most often the inciting event is prolonged and obstructed labor, which results in pressure necrosis. Intestinal stenosis secondary to female circumcision, cephalopelvic disproportion (from inadequate pelvic dimensions associated childbearing at a very early age), an android pelvis, malnutrition, orthopedic disorders including rickets, and hydrocephalus contribute to dysstocia. Fistulae may be caused by the misuse of forceps, destructive instruments used to deliver stillborn infants, or surgical abortion. Symphysiotomy and the postpartum use of intravaginal caustic agents also have a role. A large series of VVF details 1,443 cases in northern Nigeria between 1969 and 1980. Eighty-three percent resulted from prolonged, obstructed labor, and 13% resulted from gishiri cuts, a traditional tribal practice of cutting the anterior vagina with a razor blade to treat a variety of conditions, including obstructed labor, infertility, dyspareunia, backache, and goiter. Only 1% of fistulae in this study were associated with antecedent surgery.

The need to continue to implement health education programs in underdeveloped countries has been emphasized. So serious is the problem that a National Task Force on VVF was formed in Nigeria in 1990. The purpose of the task force is to advocate for women's medical and surgical services. In this population, there can be grave social consequences of VVF, including divorce, poverty, depression, and societal isolation. Premature childbearing as a result of early adolescent marriage continues to be epidemic in Africa. In sub-Saharan Africa, nearly 50% of the women are married by age 18, many by age 15 or younger. A recent case-control study from Oguna and Ekwepe in Kano, Nigeria, found that promiscuous girls who married during early adolescence were more likely to experience VVF than those who married at an older age. Uneducated women and those married to men who were unskilled laborers were 14 times more likely to sustain a VVF than their cohorts. In contrast, Hible and Ward, in a study considering that the majority of these patients had antecedent radical abdominal hysterectomy for cervical cancer.
Many of the techniques advocated to reduce the incidence of fistulae are directed toward protecting the bladder during hysterectomy. The base of the bladder rests on the anterior lower uterine segment. Suture of 2-0 or 3-0 caliber is most commonly recommended. However, suture material that does not always correlate with the absolute dose and distribution of radiation, or with the patient's weight or age; this suggests that some women are more sensitive to radiation therapy than others. Healthy tissues of the anterior vaginal wall tolerate radiation doses as high as 8,000 rads. Fistulae may appear during the course of radiotherapy (usually from necrosis of the tumor itself) or remote from completion of therapy. Endarteritis obliterans progresses during the first 2 years and may lead to ischemic changes that result in the delayed occurrence of a fistula. In planning repair, recurrent malignancy must be excluded with biopsies of the fistula margins. Because of decreased vascularity of the adjacent tissue, healing is impaired, and techniques incorporating revascularization must be considered when planning repair of a radiation-induced fistula.

There are “fascinoma” case reports of VVF caused by vaginal foreign bodies, forgotten pessaries, direct trauma from masturbation or automobile accidents, tuberculosis, schistosomiasis, bladder calculi, endometriosis, syphilis, and lymphogranuloma venereum, as well as from idiopathic congenital causes. Approach to management cannot be generalized in these situations. Carcinoma is visualized in these situations. Isolated reports in the literature may help guide management of these unique problems.

Urethrovaginal fistulae are uncommon and usually occur after surgery for urethral diverticulum, anterior vaginal wall prolapse, or urinary incontinence, and after radiation therapy. In these cases, the most common causes include tissue ischemia, problems related to healing, or radiation necrosis. Operative vaginal delivery also is a risk factor for the development of a urethropelvic fistula. Pressure necrosis, resulting in a urethrovaginal fistula, can occur with a prolonged indwelling transurethral catheter. Urethrovaginal fistulae also may be congenital, although these are extremely rare. Vesicovaginal and vesicourethral fistulae are rare. They are usually complications of cesarean section. The clinical presentation may be similar to VVF, with urine egressing through the vagina. The examination fails to reveal a vaginal fistula, however, and rarely urine trickles down through the os. Cyclic hematuria (menouria) is common. An abdominal approach with interposition graft is favored for repair, using the techniques for VVF.

**PREVENTION**

Because the trigone overlies the upper one third of the anterior vagina, it is unlikely to be injured because dissection at this level is rarely done. The bladder injury associated with suprapubic cystotomy is rare because bladder dissection is minimal. Tancer and colleagues reported no VVF in their review of 1,000 consecutive suprapubic cystotomies. Tancer, in a review of a series of 151 ureteral fistulae, found that 91% of the fistulae occurred after gynecologic procedures. Total hysterectomy was the most common antecedent procedure (n = 110), resulting in a vault fistula. Seventy percent occurred in the absence of factors that typically place the patient at risk. Based on these VVF formations, Tancer recommended modifications on avoiding injury to the bladder during total abdominal hysterectomy. These include the use of a two-way indwelling catheter, sharp dissection to isolate the bladder, an extraperitoneal cystotomy when the dissection is difficult, retrograde filling of the bladder when injury is suspected, and repair of an overt bladder injury only after mobilization of the injured area. Retrograde filling of the bladder also may help define the border of a bladder otherwise distorted or displaced by prior surgery or a lower uterine segment biopsy.

An intravesical technique for removing the cervix at hysterectomy also may protect the bladder. The vesicocervical space must be completely developed, and the bladder must be thoroughly mobilized inferriorly and laterally. Before the cardinal ligament pedicles are developed and before the anterior vagina is incised, an inverted “T” or “V” incision is made in the pubocervical fascia. The fascia is separated from the cervix and upper anterior vagina. The exposed vaginal epithelium can be entered directly. In theory, the bladder has been mobilized from the site of entry into the vagina and is less likely to be compromised because it rests on the dissected fascia. Constant traction of the uterus cephalad and gentle caudad traction on the bladder allows placement of clamps and sutures without injuring the bladder. In a recent review of 867 women who underwent infracervical abdominal hysterectomy, there was a bladder injury incidence of 0.4%. This compares with a 1% rate of bladder injury during total abdominal hysterectomy. Because there are no prospective clinical trials comparing these techniques, conclusions are impossible.

**CYSTOTOMY AND REPAIR**

The principles and technique of repairing a cystotomy are the same regardless of the inciting event. The margins of the wound should be delineated carefully to assess the extent of injury and prevent injury to the ureters. The closure is started slightly below the poles of the defect. Closure may be accomplished with interrupted or continuous sutures. The authors prefer to leave the sutures long at the poles to help with orientation and subsequent suture placement. Choice of suture for repair of the urinary tract has been based on calcius formation. When a permanent suture penetrates the urothelium, it creates a nidus for encrustation and stone formation. Although numerous studies show that permanent sutures should be avoided, a clear choice among available absorbable suture has not evolved. Indeed, the risk of stone formation seems to be equivalent for chromic catgut, polyglaftin, polydioxanone, and polyglyconate. Polyglaftin also has been touted by its manufacturer as an option for urinary tract repair, but data to support this use is limited. Therefore, the suture of choice for VVF repair and other urinary tract surgery is physician dependent. Suture of 2-0 or 3-0 caliber is most commonly recommended. A point of contention is whether the bladder mucosa...
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

FIGURE 39.1. Closure of cystotomy associated with total abdominal hysterectomy. The bladder mucosa is closed with a continuous delayed-absorbable suture. The suture may invert the mucosa or may be through and through the mucosa. A second row of suture is placed in the musculofascial layer of the bladder to support the initial layer. The bladder peritoneum may be sutured over the operative site to protect it from postoperative pelvic cellulitis to further prevent leakage into the vagina. The edge of the bladder peritoneum also may be sutured to the anterior vaginal cuff.

should be penetrated with the suture or if the sutures should be placed so as to entropion the edges of the wound. Benefits of the former include ease of suture placement and possibly improved hemostasis of the wound edges. The possibility of stone formation secondary to foreign body reaction is a drawback to “through-and-through” suture placement. Subsequent rows of continuous or interrupted sutures are placed in the musculofascial tissues to imbricate initial layers. If cystotomy occurs at the time of laparotomy in addition to the repair, a flap of peritoneum or omentum may be mobilized for further buttressing (Fig. 39.1). A watertight closure is assured by instilling 200 cc of sterile baby’s formula or dilute methylene blue via a transurethral catheter. Ureteral patency, integrity of the bladder repair, and hemostasis may be assessed with cystoscopy. Decisions regarding postoperative drainage of cystotomies depend on the extent of the injury, factors that may delay healing, and the security of the closure. Following cystotomy at the time of vaginal hysterectomy or intraperitoneal injuries, the bladder is drained for 7 to 10 days. If the injury occurs extraperitoneally, the bladder may be drained for as little as 2 days. Before removing the catheter, some advocate obtaining a cystogram to evaluate the integrity of the bladder.

Although in theory, intraoperative recognition and repair may avert the formation of a VVF, Tancer noted more than 21% of patients formed a VVF despite immediate repair of intraoperative cystotomy at the time of hysterectomy.

CLINICAL PRESENTATION OF A FISTULA

The most common presenting feature of a VVF is continuous leakage of urine from the vagina. When VVF follows gynecologic surgery, urinary leakage is most commonly recognized in the first 10 days after operation and less commonly, between the 10th and 20th postoperative days. Rarely does incontinence develop later. In the case of posthysterectomy VVF, onset of symptoms and early diagnosis may be delayed by postoperative vaginal cuff edema. In rare cases, it may be difficult to distinguish urine loss secondary to a VVF and other forms of urinary incontinence.

The size and location of the fistula determines the degree of leakage. Patients with small fistulae may void normal amounts of urine and notice only slight position-dependent drainage.
In the case of a larger VVF, urine is encountered immediately; a speculum is inserted into the vagina to facilitate inspection. For a pelvic examination, a transurethral catheter is placed and a urinary tract fistula. With the patient in lithotomy position, tests traditionally have been performed to evaluate patients for urethrography with contrast medium. Imaging ureteral anatomy, and determining the adequacy of renal function from the cervical os. Vaginal fluid may be collected for vesicocervical fistula. Only rarely is urine seen actually coming from the vaginal apex. Small volumes of drainage may be associated with regular voiding raises the possibility of a small VVF or one that only leaks intermittently. Small fluid drainage associated with regular voiding raises the possibility of a small VVF or one that only leaks intermittently. Large vaginal encrustations are seen with fistula secondary to neglected vaginal foreign bodies. This constant leakage of urine may make the patient a social reisure; disrupt sexual relations; and lead to depression, loss of self-esteem, and insomnia. Steady incontinence of urine leads the majority of patients to use a variety of protective methods, including rubber sheets to protect bedding, diapers or rubber pants to protect clothing, and continence pad products.

Kush and associates examined the records of 12 patients who had VVF develop after total abdominal hysterectomy. Most of the patients had excessive postoperative abdominal pain, distention or paralytic ileus, or both. Hematuria and symptoms of bladder irritability were also noted in women who suffered a fistula. A prolonged, postoperative fever and increased white blood cell count occurred more often in the fistula group. The clinical features described are seen with an unrecognized bladder injury resulting in intraperitoneal extravasation of urine.

**EVALUATION OF A VESICOVAGINAL FISTULA**

Even though a diagnosis is obvious in many patients, a thorough urogynecologic investigation is mandatory, especially to rule out coexistent fistulae. In a series of 43 patients with VVF, Goodwin and Bricker found 12% to have an associated ureterovaginal fistula. Lee and associates found 10 of 53 patients (19%) with ureterovaginal fistulae also had a separate VVF. An evaluation begins with a history and physical examination facilitated by use of a speculum, good lighting, and positioning. A history of large-volume vaginal leakage with no voided urine suggests a sizable defect, whereas lesser vaginal fluid drainage associated with regular voiding raises the possibility of a small VVF or one that only leaks intermittently. Small volumes of drainage may be associated with a vesicoureterine or vesicovaginal fistula. Only rarely is urine seen actually coming from the cervical os. Vaginal fluid may be collected for measurement of urea concentration to confirm that it is urine as opposed to peritoneal fluid or ascites. Urethral and ureteral anatomy and determining the adequacy of renal function from the vaginal apex during and after voiding suggests a ureterovaginal fistula. These fistulae usually are easily distinguished. Other cases may require a retrograde catheter. In such cases, a vesicovaginal fistula is confirmed by filling the bladder with contrast medium. Dye flowing into the vagina demonstrates the fistula. Dye may be slowly rotated, partially closed, and slowly withdrawn to see if dye begins to leak into the vagina as the speculum blades are repoised. If dye is seen in the vagina, a tampon is inserted, and the patient is asked to sit up and ambulate for 15 or 20 minutes. With the patient on the examining table, if dye still stains the end adjacent to the vaginal apex, a small VVF probably is present. If the distal end of the tampon near the vaginal introitus is blue, urethral integrity may be compromised. If the tampon is wet with urine, but not blue, a ureterovaginal fistula is likely. The patient's symptoms of vaginal fluid leakage may result from leakage of urine from the ureter with pooling in the vagina and subsequent loss of this urine from the vagina when the patient changes position or moves about.

When the tampon does not stain blue with retrograde bladder filling, further dye studies may be done to demonstrate a ureterovaginal fistula. The bladder is emptied and flushed with saline, and 2 cc of sterile methylene blue or indigo carmine is injected intravenously. An alternate method is administration of phenazopyridine hydrochloride orally. One advantage of phenazopyridine is ease of administration. A second is that it stains urine an orange color, which eliminates any confusion with blue in the bladder. With either option, a fresh tampon is inserted and left in place for 15 minutes. If the new tampon is stained, a ureterovaginal fistula is probably present. The vaginal apex is inspected carefully. Leakage of dye from one side of the postoperative vaginal apex strongly suggests the ipsilateral ureter is most likely the site of the fistula, but this is not definitive. An intravenous urogram or retrograde pyelogram is indicated not only to confirm the side of involvement but also the level of the fistula.

Before any attempt at surgical repair, all patients should undergo cystourethroscopy, with careful attention paid to the bladder neck, ureteral orifices, and urethra. The exact location of the fistula in relation to the ureteral orifices, its size, and its possible underlying cause should be determined. Additional fistulous communications need to be excluded to reduce the risk of surgical failure. Larger fistulae may prohibit or cause difficulty in performing liquid-based cystoscopy. In that case, the vaginum may be packed with gauze to limit egress of fluid. Alternatively, the bladder may be allowed to fill with air and dry cystoscopy performed with the patient in a jackknife or knee-chest position. Carbon dioxide also may be used as a distention medium.

The ureteral orifices should be identified and evaluated. Urine fails to spurt through the orifice of a damaged or obstructed ureter. On rare occasions, a compromised ureter continues to spurt urine from the ureteral orifice. Ureterically ligated ureter or damaged kidney, the ureters may look atrophic, and no urine flow is seen. Attempts to pass a ureteral catheter usually fail when the tip reaches the point of obstruction. A retrograde pyelogram sometimes is needed to fully evaluate the ureter. A ureterovaginal fistula usually is visualized with hydronephrosis and hydroureter because stenosis of the ureter occurs at the site of the injury. Scarring at the edges of a VVF in the region of the ureteral orifice also may lead
to ureteral stenosis and proximal dilatation. Further discussion of the differential diagnosis of ureteral fistula is found in Chapter 39.

Although novel radiologic techniques are proving useful in other fields of medicine, their efficacy in the diagnosis of urogenital fistula does not surpass traditional methods. The use of computed tomography (CT) with intravaginal contrast has been reported with limited success. CT may be more helpful in evaluating for coexistent disease involving the upper tracts before surgical correction. Recently, color Doppler ultrasound with contrast media has been described as a diagnostic tool. Sonography was positive in 11 of 12 (92%) patients with VVF. (A jet phenomenon was demonstrated through the bladder wall, in the direction of the vagina, which was distinguishable from ureteral flow.) All patients were known to have fistulae before enrollment into these studies, and specificity of color Doppler for detection of VVF cannot be calculated. In fact, 100% were shown to have a fistula with dye tests. The benefit of color Doppler is that it is easy to learn, noninvasive, results in no radiation exposure, and can evaluate the distance from the fistula to the ureteral orifices. Abulafia and colleagues described the diagnostic use of transperineal ultrasound in a woman who was unable to undergo cystoscopy secondary to urethral obstruction. Currently available ultrasonography and CT are unlikely to replace the traditional diagnostic methods of intravenous urography, retrograde pyelograms, and cystoscopy.

Preoperative urodynamic testing is defended by some authors. Hilton argues for its use before surgical repair of urogenital fistulae to establish the presence of abnormal lower urinary tract function. In his series of the 38 patients, 47% had genuine stress incontinence, 40% showed detrusor instability, and 17% had impaired bladder compliance. The overall incidence of functional abnormality was highest in the patients with urethral or bladder neck fistulae. Most patients became continent after surgical treatment of the fistulae. Those who had urethral or bladder neck fistulae had more residual detrusor instability. Thomas and Williams argue that documenting abnormal urodynamic findings may protect the surgeon medicolegally and prepare patients for a less than perfect outcome. However, for the typical vaginal repair of a posthysterectomy VVF, de novo detrusor instability is rare.

Anatomic Considerations

Posthysterectomy fistulae are usually supratrigonal and medial to both ureteral orifices. Vaginally, this corresponds to the cuff. Fistulae from obstetric causes are typically larger, more distal, and may be associated with urethral injury. Obstetric fistulae have been classified according to their anatomic location in relation to the cervix. They may have a single channel or multiple channels. There may be a single orifice on one side that tracks to multiple orifices on the other side, although this presentation is very unusual (Fig. 39.2). Cystourethroscopy and possible hysteroscopy are absolutely indicated before surgical repair to delineate the anatomy of the fistula or fistulae.

Preoperative Care

Cystitis, vaginitis, and perineal dermatitis should be treated with the appropriate antibiotic. Acute cystitis is uncommon in conjunction with a VVF; therefore, suppressive antibiotic therapy is unnecessary unless upper tract infection is suspected. Perineal care is important and makes the patient more comfortable and tolerant of delayed closure. Frequent pad changes are required to minimize inflammation, edema, and vulvar irritation. Incontinence products are much preferred over menstrual hygiene products because incontinence products are designed for the larger volume associated with drainage of urine and the low viscosity of urine. Zinc oxide ointment or a cream containing lanolin may be especially helpful in the treatment of perineal and vulvar dermatitis. Inventive collection and drainage
systems have been described for this purpose as well. Green and Philips described using dental prosthetic techniques to create a vaginal appliance to control urinary incontinence resulting from a VVF. Another system has been fashioned by gluing a Pezzier catheter to a fitted contraceptive diaphragm with rubber cement (Fig. 39.3). This device traps urine in the vagina and diverts it to a collecting leg bag. It may be worn for the weeks or months before repair is carried out.

Every attempt should be made to divert the urinary stream to protect the perineum and allow the fistula margins to mature. In fact, fistulae <5 mm in greatest dimension may close with catheter drainage alone. In a series of urogenital fistulae referred to a tertiary unit, 7% closed without the need for surgery (Hilton, unpublished data).

Medical therapy as an adjunct to surgery also is important. In the case of the malnourished patient, healing is improved if nutrition needs are optimized and anemia corrected before surgery. Some have described the preoperative use of steroids to reduce tissue inflammation. Despite earlier reports of efficacy, no convincing evidence exists that steroid therapy improves tissue quality before closure or that repair is more likely to be successful. In theory, steroid therapy could even interfere with healing when an early repair is attempted. The authors do not use steroids as an adjunct for these reasons. Estrogen therapy may be used to improve tissue thickness and vascularity provided there are no contraindications. Hyperbaric oxygen has been described as an adjuvant to surgery for radiation-induced fistulae.

Timing of Repair

The timing of repair remains controversial. The traditional belief is to wait a minimum of 3 to 6 months after the inciting event or the last attempt at repair. The delay allows the inflammatory or necrotic fistula margins that are thought to be responsible for surgical failure to resolve and the outcome of cancer therapy to be reevaluated. This interim period of waiting is often very distressing for the patient. O’Conor has said, “A surgeon must stand firm in his conviction that an impatient patient is easier to manage than a surgical failure.” Wein and colleagues have attributed surgical failures to an inadequate delay until repair. Lee and colleagues recommended delaying surgery to increase the success rate of the first attempt at repair. Symmonds recommends generally waiting 3 to 4 months for the tissues to “clean up,” lose their edema, and obtain good vascularity and pliability. In a series from Duke University Medical Center, Berlin and colleagues had a 100% cure rate with an average time to repair of 16 weeks.

Transvaginal repair of VVF within a few weeks of diagnosis was first reported in 1960 by Collins and associates. Patients received 100 mg of cortisone three times daily for 10 to 12 days preoperatively. Of 15 patients without a history of pelvic malignancy or radiation therapy, 13 (87%) had successful repairs. Of 15 patients without a history of pelvic malignancy or radiation therapy, 13 (87%) had successful repairs. In this series, 3 of 5 (60%) patients with cervical cancer and radiation-induced fistulae had recurrences within a brief postoperative period. Eleven years later, these same authors reported a 28% failure rate in a series of patients, all of whom had a transvaginal repair and preoperative steroids within 60 days after diagnosis. The experience with steroids and early closure was again updated in 1984 as O’Quin in an abstract for the Society of Pelvic Surgeons with a series of 54 patients, 11% of whom required a second procedure for successful repair. Persky and associates, also advocates for early repair, reported a series of seven patients who all underwent successful transvesical repair using interposition grafts of peritoneum or omentum within 10 weeks of the antecedent surgery. Cruikshank also had success in 10 of 11
fistulae in his series repaired between 10 and 35 days after a hysterectomy. None of these latter series used preoperative stent therapy. Treatment should be tailored to the individual patient. If the fistula is recognized within the first 88 hours postoperatively, the tissue should be more mobile, have less inflammation, and be amenable to early repair. Fistulectomy arising later usually are considered to be secondary, inflamed, significant, and in a post-irradiation setting. An interval of 3 months from injury to repair in obstetric and surgical fistulae allows inflammation and edema to resolve. As long as 1 year may be required for improvement in the tissues in radiation-induced fistulae before repair; that is, it is difficult to determine accurately when radiation necrosis has run its course. The outcome of prolonged catheterization alone for small fistulae is unpredictable. Large fistulae may be easier to repair once the tract is allowed to scar and edema resolves. On the other hand, the delay of closure may have a significant negative impact on a patient’s quality of life.

The principles outlined for VVF repair also are applicable to urethrovaginal fistulae. Because the urethra has a minimum of redundant tissue with which to work, the tissues must be as near to normal as possible before a repair is undertaken. A delay of several months usually is recommended to allow tissues to completely heal and for inflammation to resolve.

### SURGICAL TECHNIQUE: VESICOVAGINAL FISTULA

Surgery is the mainstay of therapy for urogenital fistulae. Following the tenets of Sims, Symmonds proposed several surgical principles to improve the success rate of fistula repair: (a) wide mobilization of the vaginal epithelium to expose the bladder; (b) excision of all scar tissue, even at the risk of increasing the size of the fistula in an attempt to create a “fresh bladder injury”; (c) infiltration of the vaginal epithelium with saline or a dilution solution of epinephrine (1:200,000) may aid dissection; (d) a tension-free layered closure of the bladder and the vagina; (e) good hemostasis; and (f) bladder drainage postoperatively. These principles are the same for fistulae involving the urethra. Although most authors agree that the best chance at closure of the fistula is the primary attempt, staged procedures have been described. Unfortunately, no controlled trials of route or timing of repair are available to guide management, and the general view is for individualized management.

In most cases, the gynecologic surgeon will favor the vaginal approach, which avoids the potential morbidity associated with abdominal surgery and is believed to provide a quicker recovery and a more cosmetic result. Because it does not require a laparotomy, it is considered to be easier, safer, and more comfortable for the patient. Success rates of 98% and 100% have been reported in two of the larger series. Although an abdominopubic approach has traditionally been favored for larger fistulae, fistula located high on the posterior wall, fistula adherent to the ureters, and concurrent intraabdominal pathology, the usual postsurgical fistula is low in the bladder and easily accessible in the anterior vaginal wall. However, an attempted vaginal repair of a fistula high in an immobile vaginal vault may be limited by visibility and lead to a less than satisfactory result. The abdominal route of repair offers benefit in this circumstance.

The approach of the ureter also may require an abdominal approach to facilitate ureteral reimplantation. Laparoscopy is necessary in fistulae requiring bowel for augmentation cystoplasty. In certain circumstances, a combined vaginal and abdominal approach may be helpful. The authors have described a combined approach to the repair of a large fistula secondary to a vaginal foreign body that involved the trigone.

There is no consensus concerning the need to excise the fistulous tract. Some authors advocate its total removal, whereas others prefer to merely debride the margins, thereby avoiding an increase in the size of the defect and associated morbidity. Elkins and others believe that the vascularization of the bladder provides a ready blood supply to the repaired fistula and advocate the excision of the fistula tract and vaginal cuff scar. This step enables the surgeon to suture viable tissues in every layer to promote wound healing, obviating the need for interpositional flaps or grafts. They reported a 100% cure rate on first attempt. In their series of transvaginal repairs, Raz and associates did not excise the fistula tract in any patient and had no apparent adverse effects. Cruikshank did not excise the tract in a series of 31 patients and had a 100% cure rate. Zacharin warns that excision of the fistula scar markedly increases the risk of operative failure. Elkins and colleagues and Lawson also advised against excising the tract in large obstetric fistulae.

### APPROACH FOR VESICOVAGINAL FISTULA REPAIR

Patient positioning for greater visualization of the fistula edges is a matter of physician preference and some debate. Most prefer lithotomy position for a typical fistula at the vaginal cuff. However, Elkins and others feel that adequate visualization, especially of the proximal urethra and bladder neck, can best be achieved by the knee-chest or Lawson position. Dropping the head of the table and elevating the buttocks may further facilitate exposure. Technical difficulties encountered at surgery are likely to be avoided by optimal exposure and accessibility of the fistula rather than a change in specific instrumentation. Because the vaginal walls normally are very pliable, retraction usually is sufficient for adequate exposure of the fistula. However, a constricted vaginal introitus, scarring of the vagina, a narrow subpubic arch, or a deep and fixed vaginal vault may limit exposure. An epistomy or a Schuchardt’s incision may allow improved access to the cuff in these situations. In current practice, many surgeons hesitate to use these incisions because of the increased morbidity. However, such incisions are invaluable and should be made without hesitation if exposure and accessibility are improved. In addition, the surgery may be facilitated by the placement of stay or traction sutures at the margins of the fistula or gentle traction on a Foley or Fogarty catheter placed through the fistula. These techniques help to identify the fistula’s edges and may bring the tract closer to the surgeon. The Young prostatic retractor may be used in a similar fashion. Infiltration of the vaginal epithelium with saline or a dilution solution of epiinephrine (1:200,000) may aid dissection and decrease oozing. This latter technique is not our current practice for repair of fistulae. The two transvaginal repairs commonly performed are the flap-splitting technique and the Lawce procedure. The flap-splitting technique involves wide mobilization of the vaginal epithelium from the edges of the fistula. Following this, the bladder is closed with a submucosal line of interrupted Lambert sutures, which is followed by a second layer in the muscularis that reduces tension on the previous suture (Fig. 39-4). Trigonal defects should be repaired in a transverse direction. A vertical closure at the trigone may draw the ureters to the midline and lead to kinking or frank obstruction. This

A: Ureters have been catheterized. An incision through the vaginal epithelium is made circumferentially around the fistula. B: The vaginal epithelium is widely mobilized from the bladder. The scarred fistula tract should be excised. C: A continuous (or interrupted) delayed-absorbable suture inverts the mucosa into the bladder. D: A second suture line is placed in the muscularis layer to reinforce the first. Vaginal epithelium is trimmed and approximated.
The need for a cystogram before the vagina 24 hours postoperatively and drain the bladder with methylene blue or indigo carmine. We prefer to leave a pack in surgery by filling the bladder with 200 cc of fluid colored with be watertight. The integrity of the repair may be tested during vaginal tissue.

A pedicled flap of vaginal wall was presented recently as a which may be particularly useful in postradiation or large, traumatic fistulae. The gracilis muscle provides a bulky closure and interference with sexual function should be minimal. Furthermore, vaginal depth expands once the patient resumes intercourse.

Interposition flaps or grafts may be used in large or recurrent fistulae, those involving the urethra or bladder neck, or fistulae requiring additional bulk. Pedicle flaps bring additional blood supply, improve the lymphatic drainage, and distance suture lines. In 1928, Martius first described the use of the labial fat pad as an interposition graft. The vascular supply to the graft informs primarily from the external pudendal artery and superiorly from the external pudendal artery. In mobilizing a labial fat pad pedicle, the surgeon must preserve one of these vascular bundles (Fig. 39.6). Birkhoff and colleagues reported a 100% success rate in six patients with transvaginal repairs of VVF using the Martius technique. In a series mostly of postobstetric repairs, the success rate was 87.5% for simple VVF, 71% for complex VVF, and 80% for fistulae requiring ureteral reimplantation. Ureteral reimplantation, although it makes the operation more complicated and time-consuming, does not seem to significantly worsen the prognosis. Nesrallah and associates reported 100% success in a series of 29 women with VVF, 34% of whom had undergone at least one prior attempt at fistula closure.

Cetin and colleagues described a modification of the O’Conor technique that limits the amount of bladder dissection. A small vertical anterior cystotomy is created to facilitate exposure (Fig. 39.7). Both the bladder and vagina are closed in layers. Stay sutures are placed on either side of the incision to facilitate closure. Advantages include a reduced need for extensive dissection and the ability to tailor the graft to the patient’s anatomy and proximity to the ureteral orifices to the fistula. The repair was accomplished without the need of ureteroneocystostomy, and 90% of the women were cured.

The use of vascularized tissue grafts is helpful in assuring a successful abdominal repair. Omental flaps are excellent in this regard. In fact, one third of omental aprons may reach the deep pelvis without creating a flap. The omentum has a dual blood supply and may be mobilized based on either the right or left gastroepiploic arteries. A large omental flap allows a vagina to be constructed in the abdomen, the ability to elevate the fistula into the surgical field with a vaginal handle, and the ability to perform cystoscopy.

O’Conor and coworkers pioneered an abdominal technique that can be performed extravaginally or intraper vaginally. The bladder is biected, and the posterior wall of the bladder is widely mobilized from the vagina through the vesico vaginal space. The fistula is excised, leaving margins of viable tissue for closure. Stay sutures are placed on either side of the incision to facilitate exposure. The success rate was 87.5% for simple VVF, 71% for complex VVF, and 80% for fistulae requiring ureteral reimplantation. Ureteral reimplantation, although it makes the operation more complicated and time-consuming, does not seem to significantly worsen the prognosis. Nesrallah and associates reported 100% success in a series of 29 women with VVF, 34% of whom had undergone at least one prior attempt at fistula closure.

Cetin and colleagues described a modification of the O’Conor technique that limits the amount of bladder dissection. A small vertical anterior cystotomy is created to facilitate exposure (Fig. 39.7). Both the bladder and vagina are closed in layers. Stay sutures are placed on either side of the incision to facilitate closure. Advantages include a reduced need for extensive dissection and the ability to tailor the graft to the patient’s anatomy and proximity to the ureteral orifices to the fistula. The repair was accomplished without the need of ureteroneocystostomy, and 90% of the women were cured.

The use of vascularized tissue grafts is helpful in assuring a successful abdominal repair. Omental flaps are excellent in this regard. In fact, one third of omental aprons may reach the deep pelvis without creating a flap. The omentum has a dual blood supply and may be mobilized based on either the right or left gastroepiploic arteries. A large omental flap allows a vagina to be constructed in the abdomen, the ability to elevate the fistula into the surgical field with a vaginal handle, and the ability to perform cystoscopy.
FIGURE 39.5. Latzko technique for a closure of a simple posthysterectomy vesicovaginal fistula. A: A circumferential incision is made around the fistula. The fistula is not excised. B: The vaginal epithelium is mobilized approximately 2 cm from the fistula. C: Delayed-absorbable interrupted mattress sutures are placed parallel to the edge of the fistula tract to invert it into the bladder. D: One or two additional rows of suture approximate the muscularis fascial layer of the bladder. E: The vaginal epithelium is closed transversely with interrupted delayed-absorbable sutures.

Minimally Invasive Management

Minimally invasive approaches center on the use of endoscopy and natural orifice access. Sotelo and associates described laparoscopic repair of VVF in 15 patients who had clear malignant etiologies. All repairs with grafts (12) were successful without regard to etiology, whereas only 16 of 25 (64%) of repairs without grafts were successful. The authors concluded that transabdominal VVF repairs should be performed with an interposition flap regardless of the appearance of healthy surrounding tissues and etiology.
indications for surgical treatment. Hysterectomy was the prior surgery in 14 patients (93%). The technique involved cystoscopy, catheterization of the VVF, laparoscopic cystotomy, dissection of the vesicovaginal space, opening and excising the fistulous tract, cystotomy and colpotomy closure, and use of an interposition graft. None of the cases required conversion to laparotomy. Operative time, hospital stay, and duration of bladder drainage were comparable to open techniques. Only 1 of 14 patients (7%) had a recurrent postoperative fistula. Chibber and colleagues also reported excellent results when the O’Conor technique is performed via the laparoscopic
Excision nonviable tissue around fistula

Fingers in vagina elevate fistula into view

Fistula

Excision nonviable tissue around fistula

Stump of vagina

Excision

Mucosal suture line

Bladder filled after placing mucosal suture line to check for leakage

Vesico-vaginal fistula

A

B

C

D

E

FIGURE 39.7. Transabdominal, transvesical closure of vesicovaginal fistula. A: A longitudinal incision is placed in the bladder dome. B: The incision is extended around the fistula. The fistulous tract and its vaginal orifice are completely excised. C: Interrupted delayed-absorbable sutures are used to close the vagina in one or two layers. D: Continuous delayed-absorbable suture closes the bladder mucosa longitudinally. E: A suprapubic catheter is placed into the bladder in an extraperitoneal location. (Continued)

approach. McKay has described successful repair of VVF using transurethral suture cystorrhaphy. A 5-mm laparoscopic sleeve, for passage of the suture, is inserted alongside a 17F cystourethroscope with a 30-degree lens. Extracorporeal knot tying similar to other endoscopic suturing techniques is used.

Techniques that do not require suture have been used because of the difficulty of extracorporeal knot tying. Successful occlusion of a VVF with fibrin glue was first reported by Petterson and colleagues in 1979. Because the patient also had continuous bladder drainage for 8 weeks, some questioned the etiology of the success. Recently, Sharma and colleagues reported successful treatment of urinary tract fistulas in eight patients who underwent a single endoscopic injection of fibrin glue. Retrograde endoscopic injection of fibrin glue would appear to offer an efficacious alternative to traditional options for small defects and may avoid the morbidity of open surgery. Electrosurgical fulguration of small VVF followed by continuous drainage has been reported to be successful by Stovisky and associates and Falk and Orkin. Recently, Dogra and Nabi described the use of an endoscopic Nd:YAG laser to fulgurate a small 2- to 3-mm posthysterectomy VVF. They refer to the procedure as a “laser welding.” Whether the denuded tract closed spontaneously after the 3-week period of continuous drainage or was truly welded remains a matter of conjecture.
Urethrovaginal Fistula

Damage to the urethra that leads to loss of structural integrity is fortunately uncommon. Parturition, gynecologic surgery, pelvic radiotherapy, pelvic trauma, and sexually transmitted infections that are associated with tissue destruction are common antecedent events. Complications of surgery for urethral diverticulum, cystocele, or urethral hypermobility lead the list and account for more than 90% of urethrovaginal fistulae. Indeed, some 15% to 20% of women who have surgery to remove a suburethral diverticulum develop a fistula. The remainder is preceded by intrapartum obstetric events, especially operative vaginal delivery, pelvic radiotherapy, and traumatic disruption.

A urethrovaginal fistula may present with a variety of symptoms, but new onset urinary incontinence is almost always the trigger for diagnostic evaluation. Fistulae involving the proximal urethra and bladder neck present similarly to VVF. Midurethra fistulae may present with stress incontinence, recurrent cystitis, or no symptoms. Patients with distal fistulae may be asymptomatic or report a spraying urinary stream. The algorithm for evaluation of fistula is similar without regard to its etiology.

Most fistulae are easily seen on physical examination. However, when inspection does not reveal the fistula, additional studies are needed. A double balloon urethrogram may reveal an otherwise undemonstrated fistula by increasing pressure in the urethra and forcing fluid through the opening. Because urethrovaginal fistula may be complex and associated with injuries to bladder and ureters, the integrity of the entire urethral tract must be assessed with radiographic imaging, such as cystogram, voiding cystourethrogram, and intravenous pyelogram. The location of the fistula and its relationship to the urethrovaginal junction is assessed with cystourethroscopy. Knowing the relationship of the fistula to the bladder neck and to the point of maximum urethral pressure will help predict postoperative incontinence.

In general, the surgical principles for repair of VVF also apply to the correction of a urethrovaginal fistula. Likewise, because urethrovaginal fistulae are relatively uncommon, the surgical approach, timing of repair, and postoperative management lack standardization. The repair of a urethrovaginal fistula is more difficult than for simple VVF. Extensive urethral loss and lack of viable tissue may make conventional layered closures impractical, if not impossible. The success rate of urethrovaginal fistula repair is reported to be 73% to 100%.

Urethral reconstruction of a large defect begins by making a U-shaped flap of vaginal epithelium exposing the underside of the trigone and sphincter. The length of the flap roughly approximates the length of a normal urethra. The flap is rotated forward (Fig. 39.8). After the flap of vagina is mobilized, the vaginal incision is extended caudally 6 to 7 mm wider than the urethral defect and for a distance equal to the length of the flap. The vagina is then mobilized laterally.

The original flap is rotated so that the raw edges of the flap may be sutured to the denuded area of the urethral remnant. When this step is completed on both sides, an epithelial-lined conduit is formed that serves as a neourethra. Because the pedicles are relatively long, they are very susceptible to ischemia and subsequent necrosis. Thus, a layer of paravaginal fascia is plicated beneath the new urethra for support and additional blood supply. Two or three deep sutures are placed in the region of the sphincter and, when tied, will tighten the internal orifice. Approximation of the lateral edges of vaginal epithelium buries the newly constructed urethra and completely closes the wound.

Symmonds described another technique for urethral reconstruction in which an incision is made in the anterior vaginal wall and is extended around the margins of the urethral defect. No more than 2 mm of vaginal epithelium remains attached to
FIGURE 39.8. Reconstruction of urethra and repair of sphincter. A: A U-shaped incision is made through the vaginal epithelium. B: The flap is mobilized and rotated over the fistula. C: Three interrupted sutures of delayed-absorbable suture are placed in the sphincter region, and the tissue inverted. D: The mucosal flap is pulled downward, and the incision is extended on both sides. (Continued)
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

buttock have been advocated for especially large defects. The anterior bladder wall can be mobilized via a retropubic approach through the vagina and used to fashion a neourethra. An alternative method is to harvest patch grafts from the detrusor and to use the patch to form a tubular structure. Not enough data is available to prove that one of these techniques has a clear advantage over another. Therefore, use of these grafts is individualized to meet individual patient needs.

When using an abdominal approach, the urethra may be reconstructed using the bladder. Fernandes has reported tubularizing an anterior advancement flap of bladder to reconstruct an entire urethra. Omo-Dare has used patch grafts of bladder mucosa for urethral reconstruction after gonococcal stricture with some success. The use of a tubularized rectus abdominis muscle flap has also been described in a series of refractory urethrovaginal fistula patients, all of whom had undergone at least one unsuccessful repair incorporating a Martius graft.

A pedicle graft may be appropriate to eliminate tissue tension, fill a defect in the vagina, reestablish vascularity, and enhance cosmesis. For the most part, Martius grafts are used for this purpose. The principles are similar to when they are used for VVF.

![Figure 39.8](image-url)
FIGURE 39.9. Reconstruction of total or partial loss of the urethral floor. A: A line of incision is made along the margins of the roof of the urethra and extended to the bladder base. B: The urethral margins and fascia are mobilized from the vagina to permit tension-free approximation of the urethral mucosa. C: Urethral edges are approximated over a 12F catheter with interrupted delayed-absorbable sutures. Mobilized urethral fascia is sutured on each side of the total length of the urethra. D: The lower strand of each suture is tied beneath the urethral floor, and the upper strands of the two sutures are used to pull the fascia beneath the urethra, where they are tied. (Continued)

Urinary Diversion and Reconstructive Techniques

In irreparable or recurrent urinary tract fistulas and cloacal defects following high-dose irradiation therapy for gynecologic malignancies, urinary diversion is the last resort to achieve a socially acceptable solution. An early technique of urinary diversion was implantation of the ureters into the sigmoid colon. Kidney failure, metabolic and electrolyte disturbance, and increased risk of colon cancer at the site of ureteral anastomosis led to its disfavor. Uretersigmoid implantations are rarely performed in the United States but continue to be used in developing countries. Ureteral implantation into an isolated ileal loop...
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

FIGURE 39.9. (Continued) E: The vaginal mucosa is closed without tension. F: For additional reinforcement, a U-shaped labial fat pad can be developed along the labia, leaving a broad pedicle superiorly. The vaginal mucosa between the urethral operative site and the labial graft is resected. G: The skin margins of the labial graft are sutured to the vaginal margins. The labial defect is closed.
POSTOPERATIVE CARE

Postoperative care issues center on urinary drainage and resumption of coitus. Duration of urinary drainage and choice of transurethral or suprapubic routes are determined by the extent of scarring, character, and repair history. In general, the longer the drainage, the less likely the bladder wall is to heal adequately. An adequate time for drainage ranges from 6 to 12 weeks. Transurethral drainage is the preferred method for small fistulae, whereas suprapubic drainage is employed for large, external, and high fistulae. Drainage is continued until there is excellent healing at the repair site, and except for patients with other major surgical procedures or for those with a high incidence of surgical complications, transurethral drainage is preferred.

The role of bladder injury antecedent to fistula formation seems obvious; thus, much of the effort in preventing VVF is directed at reducing the incidence of bladder injury. However, fistulae occur after gynecologic surgery. The risk of bladder injury is substantially higher at laparotomy, especially in the presence of fistulae. The role of bladder injury antecedent to fistula formation is also the subject of much research, and it is clear that interventions designed to minimize bladder injury are essential to the prevention of fistulae. The principles of fistula surgery are well established: visualization of the tract, a tension-free watertight closure, assurance of adequate vascularization, and protection of the ureters. Modern imaging techniques are increasingly being used in novel ways in other fields, but their utility in the detection of urogenital fistulae does not surpass conventional methods for urinary fistulae. Radioimaging—including pyelogram, cystogram, and voiding cystourethrogram—is used to assess the complexity of the fistula and potential involvement of the ureters. Preoperative cystourethroscopy should be used to evaluate the anatomic relationship of the fistula.

Optimal management regarding timing of repair and surgical approach remains undecided. Laparoscopic repair of VVF is a feasible and efficacious minimally invasive alternative for its management. Minimally invasive approaches seem most appropriate for small, uncomplicated fistulae. Obstetric fistulae remain common in developing countries where access to adequate health care is limited, and fistulae in industrialized nations typically occur after gynecologic surgery.

The role of bladder injury antecedent to fistula formation seems obvious; thus, much of the effort in preventing VVF relies on protecting the bladder at the time of surgery or delivery. The risk of bladder injury is substantially higher at laparoscopic surgery and antincontinence surgery. Despite preventive measures and good surgical technique, these injuries result in a significant number of cases where bladder injury is sustained. It is therefore essential to develop and implement strategies to minimize bladder injury in these settings. The principles of fistula surgery are well established: visualization of the tract, a tension-free watertight closure, assurance of adequate vascularization, and protection of the ureters. Modern imaging techniques are increasingly being used in novel ways in other fields, but their utility in the detection of urogenital fistulae does not surpass conventional methods for urinary fistulae. Radioimaging—including pyelogram, cystogram, and voiding cystourethrogram—is used to assess the complexity of the fistula and potential involvement of the ureters. Preoperative cystourethroscopy should be used to evaluate the anatomic relationship of the fistula.
still occur. Even when cystotomy is recognized and repaired, a fistula may arise. Because fistula formation is multifactorial, defining the benefit of individual preventive strategies is virtually impossible.

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- Transvaginal repair is the preferred method of repair when available.
- Interposition grafts can be used for tissue bulk and as a source of neovascularity. They may also be used to expand the vagina when caliber or depth is compromised. They may also enhance postoperative continence.
- The abdominal approach should be reserved for situations in which access to the fistula is limited. When the abdominal approach is chosen, the O’Connor technique as modified by Cotin and associates is a technique favored by many surgeons.
- Interposition grafts can be used for tissue bulk and as a source of neovascularity. They may also be used to expand the vagina when caliber or depth is compromised. They may also enhance postoperative continence.
- The abdominal approach should be reserved for situations in which access to the fistula is limited. When the abdominal approach is chosen, the O’Connor technique as modified by Cotin and associates is a technique favored by many surgeons.
- An interposition graft of peritoneum or omentum seems to enhance overall success.

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT**

The authors wish to thank Dr. John Thompson for his enormous contribution to the previous editions of this text.

**Bibliography**

Leissner J, Black P, Filipas D, et al. Vaginal reconstruction using the bladder

Lee RA, Symmonds RE, Williams TJ. Current status of genitourinary fistula.

Pawlik C. Ueber die Operation der Blasenscheidenfisteln. Ztschr F Gerburtsh U

Ottesen M, Moller C, Kehlet H, et al. Substantial variability in postoperative

Maisonneuve JG. Clinique chirurgicale

Madjar S, Gousse A. Postirradiation vesicovaginal fistula completely resolved

Gynecologic operations and their topographic-anatomic fundamen-

Leissner J, Black P, Fisch M, et al. Colon pouch (Mainz pouch III) for continent

J R Soc Med

Am J Surg

Leach GE. Urethrovaginal fistula repair with Martius labial fat pad graft. J Urol

Mondet F, Chartier-Kastler EJ, Conort P, et al. Anatomic and functional re-

Moir JC. Vesicovaginal fistula as seen in Britain.

Miklos JR, Sobolewski C, Lucente V. Laparoscopic management of recurrent

Morita T, Tokue A. Successful endoscopic closure of radiation induced vesico-


Medlar S, Gossa A. Postirradiation vaginal fistula completely resolved

Miklos JR, Sobolewski C, Lucente V. Laparoscopic management of recurrent

Morita T, Tokue A. Successful endoscopic closure of radiation induced vesico-


Medlar S, Gossa A. Postirradiation vaginal fistula completely resolved

Miklos JR, Sobolewski C, Lucente V. Laparoscopic management of recurrent

Morita T, Tokue A. Successful endoscopic closure of radiation induced vesico-


Medlar S, Gossa A. Postirradiation vaginal fistula completely resolved

Miklos JR, Sobolewski C, Lucente V. Laparoscopic management of recurrent

Morita T, Tokue A. Successful endoscopic closure of radiation induced vesico-


Medlar S, Gossa A. Postirradiation vaginal fistula completely resolved

Miklos JR, Sobolewski C, Lucente V. Laparoscopic management of recurrent

Morita T, Tokue A. Successful endoscopic closure of radiation induced vesico-


Medlar S, Gossa A. Postirradiation vaginal fistula completely resolved

Miklos JR, Sobolewski C, Lucente V. Laparoscopic management of recurrent

Morita T, Tokue A. Successful endoscopic closure of radiation induced vesico-


Medlar S, Gossa A. Postirradiation vaginal fistula completely resolved

Miklos JR, Sobolewski C, Lucente V. Laparoscopic management of recurrent

Morita T, Tokue A. Successful endoscopic closure of radiation induced vesico-


Medlar S, Gossa A. Postirradiation vaginal fistula completely resolved

Miklos JR, Sobolewski C, Lucente V. Laparoscopic management of recurrent

Morita T, Tokue A. Successful endoscopic closure of radiation induced vesico-


Medlar S, Gossa A. Postirradiation vaginal fistula completely resolved

Miklos JR, Sobolewski C, Lucente V. Laparoscopic management of recurrent

Morita T, Tokue A. Successful endoscopic closure of radiation induced vesico-


Medlar S, Gossa A. Postirradiation vaginal fistula completely resolved

Miklos JR, Sobolewski C, Lucente V. Laparoscopic management of recurrent

Morita T, Tokue A. Successful endoscopic closure of radiation induced vesico-


Medlar S, Gossa A. Postirradiation vaginal fistula completely resolved

Miklos JR, Sobolewski C, Lucente V. Laparoscopic management of recurrent

Morita T, Tokue A. Successful endoscopic closure of radiation induced vesico-


Medlar S, Gossa A. Postirradiation vaginal fistula completely resolved

Miklos JR, Sobolewski C, Lucente V. Laparoscopic management of recurrent

Morita T, Tokue A. Successful endoscopic closure of radiation induced vesico-

CHAPTER 40 ■ ANAL INCONTINENCE AND RECTOVAGINAL FISTULAS
MICHAEL P. ARONSON AND RAYMOND A. LEE

DEFINITIONS

Anal incontinence—Involuntary loss through the anus of flatus, liquid, or solid stool that is perceived as a social or hygienic problem.

External anal sphincter—Striated muscle sphincter, under voluntary control, that is responsible for much of the squeeze pressure in the anal canal.

Extra-anal incontinence—Involuntary loss through a fistula of flatus, liquid, or solid stool.

Fecal incontinence—Involuntary loss through the anus of liquid or solid stool only; excludes flatal incontinence.

Internal anal sphincter—Thickened continuation of the circular smooth muscle layer of the bowel, under autonomic control, that is responsible for much of the resting pressure in the anal canal.

Pubococcygeus muscle—Striated muscle medial portion of the levator ani that is responsible for maintaining and increasing the anorectal angle and contributes to the squeeze pressure in the anal canal.

Puborectalis muscle—Thickened continuation of the circular smooth muscle layer of the bowel, under autonomic control, that is responsible for much of the resting pressure in the anal canal.

Puborectal fold—Epithelial lined connection between the rectosigmoid or anal canal and the vagina or perineum.

No symptom of pelvic floor dysfunction is more debilitating or has greater psychosocial impact on a woman than that of anal incontinence. The inability to control solid stool, liquid, or gas can have a devastating effect on a woman’s feelings of self-worth, sexuality, and ability to be an active social participant in her community. The evaluation and treatment of the anal incontinent patient is a challenging but rewarding task because relief of these symptoms can greatly improve the quality of a patient’s life. Because the problem of anal incontinence is multifactorial, the approach to the problem is often multidisciplinary, involving health care providers from gynecology, colorectal surgery, and gastroenterology, as well as nutrition and physical therapy. Anal incontinence is part of a spectrum of disorders of defecatory function that includes constipation, incomplete evacuation of the bowel, urgency, frequency, and painful defecation. Outcomes of treatments should be understood in terms of their impact on a patient’s symptoms and quality of life, not purely on anatomic results.

Although anal incontinence has a major impact on a patient’s quality of life, most individuals are reticent to discuss this symptom with their health care providers. Johanson and Laterry report that more than 50% of women with anal incontinence will never present to a health care provider with their problem. The prevalence of both anal and fecal incontinence is difficult to establish as there has been a lack of uniform definitions used in past studies. The 3rd International Consultation on Incontinence in Monaco in 2004 defined anal incontinence as involuntary loss of flatus, liquid, or solid stool that is perceived as a social or hygienic problem. Fecal incontinence excludes flatal incontinence and represents the loss of liquid or solid stool only. Boreham and colleagues, in a multicenter study of 457 consecutive women presenting for routine general gynecologic care, found anal incontinence in 28.4% with irritable bowel syndrome, constipation, age, and body mass index identified as significant risk factors. In a questionnaire study designed to reflect the age and sex distribution of the adult population of Germany, Giebel and associates found anal incontinence in 19.6% and fecal incontinence in 4.8% (specifically incontinence of solid stool). In a review, Macmillan and colleagues found the prevalence of fecal incontinence to be between 2% and 13% of community-dwelling adults.

There are no data regarding the incidence of anal incontinence in the community-dwelling population, but Chassagne and associates reported on an elderly, long-term-care facility population. They enrolled 1,386 individuals 60 years of age or older who did not have anal incontinence. After 10 months, 20% had developed anal incontinence. They identified five significant risk factors: history of urinary incontinence, neurologic disease, poor mobility, severe cognitive decline, and age older than 70 years.

It is well established that the presence of anal incontinence is associated with the presence of urinary incontinence as well as pelvic organ prolapse. The connective tissue and muscular and neurologic elements of the pelvic floor function in concert with the organs they support as an interdependent unit to provide multiple functions simultaneously. In a cross-sectional community-based study involving 762 randomly selected women age 50 or older, Roberts and colleagues found 15% had anal incontinence, 48% had urinary incontinence, and 9% had both. Viewed another way, 60% of those with anal incontinence had concurrent urinary incontinence. Among patients presenting to a urogynecology clinic for evaluation of urinary incontinence, a high proportion have dual incontinence, defined as concurrent urinary and anal incontinence. Lerner and associates (1999) found 28% of 409 patients in France, and Gordon and colleagues found 28% of 283 consecutive patients in Israel, had dual incontinence. Nichols and coworkers looked at 100 patients with stage II or greater pelvic organ prolapse and/or urinary incontinence. Fifty-four percent had concomitant anal incontinence, and 52% had anal sphincter defects by ultrasound. Clearly because the pelvic floor uses some common elements in maintaining support and continence of feces and urine, it follows that injury to one mechanism could simultaneously affect the other.

An important development has been the beginning of an understanding of the relationship of vaginal birth to the problem
of anal incontinence. In a review, Sultan and associates noted a reported 6.6% to 14% prevalence of anal incontinence in vaginally parous women. In a more recent prospective study of 949 consecutive women delivering vaginally, Eason and colleagues found at 3 months postpartum that 26% percent had anal incontinence and 3% had fecal incontinence. As tools for treatment of this problem have limited success, it becomes apparent that future research should focus on the prevention of childbirth injuries that can contribute to anal incontinence.

In this chapter, we examine the anal continence mechanism in an effort to understand how damage may be sustained. Particular emphasis is placed on the effect of childbirth on the anatomic and neurologic aspects of that mechanism. We then review the evaluation of the anally incontinent patient as well as medical and surgical treatment options. Finally, we consider the etiology, evaluation, and techniques for surgical repair of extraanal incontinence of feces through a rectovaginal fistula.

ANAL CONTINENCE MECHANISM

Normal anal continence requires the coordinated control of the multiple synergistic elements summarized in Table 40.1. An anatomically and neurologically intact anal sphincter complex is necessary to keep the anal canal closed effectively. Intact reflex arcs and anorectal sensation are necessary for the individual to perceive rectal filling and discriminate the nature of rectal contents. Intact motor enervation is essential so that the sphincter mechanism can respond appropriately to the increased need for anal closure such as during straining or coughing. The puborectalis muscle must be capable of reflexive contraction at the moment of need to increase that angle and move rectal contents. The anal sphincter complex and the rectal mucosa must be capable of reflexive contraction at the moment of need to increase that angle and move rectal contents off the sphincter complex into a capacious and distensible rectal reservoir. Lastly, gastro-intestinal considerations such as colonic motility and stool consistency need to be reasonable for maintenance of continence. The complete interrelated mechanisms of defection and anal control are more easily visualized once the principal elements of the anatomy related to continence are delineated.

Anatomy of the Anal Canal and Related Structures

The anal and rectal regions of the lower colon share a common embryologic origin: the posterior portion of the endoderm of the cloaca. During the development of these regions, the terminal end of the alimentary canal is surrounded by muscular sphincters of somatic origin. Thus, the anorectal region is composed of both visceral and somatic components. The visceral components include the rectum, internal anal sphincter, and lining of the upper part of the anal canal. The voluntary or somatic components are the epithelium of the lower part of the anal canal as well as the striated muscles of the floor and the external anal sphincter. The rectal mucosa consists of mucous-secreting columnar goblet cells, which invaginate to form tubular glands. The mucosa is surrounded by a muscularis mucosa and an inner circular layer of smooth muscle. This circular smooth muscle layer thicken distally to become the internal anal sphincter. An outer longitudinal layer of smooth muscle transitions distally into fibrous fascicles that travel between the internal and external anal sphincter and insert into the perianal skin, thus anchoring the sphincter complex and creating the puckering effect seen on clinical examination.

The anal canal in the female is approximately 2.5 to 4 cm in length and normally remains completely collapsed because of the tonic contractions of the sphincters. Posterior to the anal canal is the coccyx, from which it is separated by intervening fibrofatty tissue. The levator ani muscles are posterior to the canal until it opens onto the perineal skin. The levator muscles also separate the lateral boundary of the anal canal from the ischiorectal fossa, through which pass the important nerves, lymphatics, and blood supply of the terminal rectum, anal canal, and perineum. The canal is fused anteriorly with the lower portion of the rectovaginal septum and perineal body (Fig. 40.1).

The lining of the anal canal is nonuniform. The proximal 1 cm is lined by rectal-type columnar mucosa, followed by modified or stratified columnar epithelium for about 1.5 cm. The distal half of the anal canal is lined by squamous epithelium, which is richly supplied by branches of the inferior hemorrhoidal nerves and is exquisitely sensitive. The anal mucosa, like the rectum, is also surrounded by the inner circular layer of smooth muscle, which is in turn surrounded by the outer longitudinal layer. The main blood supply to the rectum and anal canal is from branches of the superior and inferior hemorrhoidal arteries.

The anatomic sphincter mechanism of the anal canal has been a matter of controversy since first described by Galen almost 2,000 years ago. It is most often thought of as consisting of three separate anatomic structures: the internal anal sphincter, the external anal sphincter, and the action of the most medial portion of the levator ani, the puborectalis muscle (Fig. 40.2).

The circular smooth muscle layer of the rectal wall, which is under autonomic control, thickness at the proximal anal canal to form the internal anal sphincter. It can be identified on dissection or at the time of third- or fourth-degree obstetric laceration repair as a thick, fibrous, white layer between the anal mucosa and the external anal sphincter. The internal sphincter accounts for about 70% of the resting tone of the anal canal and is innervated by the autonomic nervous system, providing continuous involuntary muscle tone. The remainder of the resting tone of the anal canal is thought to be provided by the slow twitch fibers of the external sphincter and the hemorrhoidal complexes.

The portions of the anatomic continence mechanism that are under voluntary control are the striated muscles of the external anal sphincter complex and the medial puborectalis portion of the pubococcygeus muscle, which courses behind the rectum in a slinglike fashion. Unlike most other striated muscles, the external anal sphincter and the puborectalis muscle

| TABLE 40.1 |
| MECHANISMS OF ANAL CONTINENCE |

| Anatomic Anal sphincter mechanisms |
| Puborectalis sling/anorectal angle |
| Neurologic Intact pudendal innervation |
| Anorectal reflex and sensory mechanisms |
| Functional Stool volume and consistency |
| Colonic transit time |
| Rectal capacity, distensibility and tone |

MECHANISMS OF ANAL CONTINENCE

The portions of the anatomic continence mechanism that are under voluntary control are the striated muscles of the external anal sphincter complex and the medial puborectalis portion of the pubococcygeus muscle, which courses behind the rectum in a slinglike fashion. Unlike most other striated muscles, the external anal sphincter and the puborectalis muscle...
Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

maintain a constant muscular tone that is directly proportional to the volume of rectal contents. The tone of the puborectalis muscle wrapping around posterior to the junction of the rectum and the anal canal produces what is called the anorectal angle. The fibers of pubococcygeus that do not wrap around go on to form the fibrous anococcygeal raphe, often referred to as the levator plate, which inserts onto the last two segments of the coccyx. Willful contraction of structurally and neurologically intact puborectalis and pubococcygeus muscles, along with the rest of the levator sling, can increase the anorectal angle and support the levator plate and the rectal reservoir above it in a horizontal axis to aid in maintenance of continence.

The external anal sphincter complex is thought by different anatomists to be composed of one, two, or three parts. Most anatomists agree, however, that the entire external anal sphincter complex is enervated by perineal branches of the pudendal nerves emanating from S2–4. Although some authors refer to a three-part sphincter as having superficial, medial, and deep portions (Fig. 40.2), clinically the entire external sphincter responds to the same enervation and functions as a single
Anal Incontinence and Rectovaginal Fistulas

Squeeze pressure
Resting pressure
Rectal pressure

**FIGURE 40.3.** Anal manometry demonstrating pressures in the anal canal. Rectal pressure reflects intraabdominal baseline pressure recorded in the rectal reservoir. Resting pressure essentially reflects the effect of the involuntary, smooth-muscle internal anal sphincter. Squeeze pressure largely reflects the transient contractile effort of the voluntary, striated external anal sphincter.

The subcutaneous part of the external sphincter is small and inserts in the perianal skin. The superficial part is more substantial and is attached posteriorly through the anococcygeal raphe to the coccyx. The deep portion is intimately related to the puborectalis muscle posteriorly, where its fibers loop around the anorectal junction. The external anal sphincter and puborectalis muscle are responsible for most of the voluntary squeeze pressure that is exerted in the anal canal (Fig. 40.3).

To review, the puborectalis muscle originates from the pubic bone on either side of the midline, passes behind the vagina and rectum, and fuses posteriorly behind the anorectal junction to form a U-shaped sling around the rectum. Some fibers interdigitate with the walls of the anal canal (Fig. 40.4). The constant resting tone of the puborectalis muscle pulls the anorectal junction anteriorly to create an approximately 90-degree angle between the rectum and anal canal, thereby maintaining anorectal continence of solid stool by closing the rectal inlet. Both the puborectalis muscle and the external anal sphincter contain a majority of type I (slow-twitch) muscle fibers that are ideally suited to maintaining constant tone over time. Each muscle also contains a smaller portion of type II (fast-twitch) fibers, which allow them to respond quickly during sudden increases in intraabdominal pressure. The external anal sphincter is enervated by branches of the pudendal nerve (S2–4). The puborectalis muscle is enervated directly by the S3–4 pelvic nerves, as well as possibly by collateral branches of the pudendal nerve.

Classically, the female anal sphincter complex has been thought of as forming a broad band of tissue posteriorly but narrowing to a small tubular bundle of tissue anteriorly within the perineal body. In the past, the internal sphincter has most often been portrayed as a minor structure. These concepts came from many centuries of anatomic study of cadavers augmented by observations in the delivery room, at the time of third- and fourth-degree laceration repairs, of the transected ends of the anterior portion retracted into round holes in the perineal body. In the recent past, it has become possible to view this anatomy undisturbed in living, continent, nulliparous subjects with magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). In an early MRI study, Aronson and colleagues found the shape of the combined internal and external anal sphincter complex to be nearly cylindrical as it encircles the anal canal. Measured in the midline, the anterior portion of the anal sphincter complex appeared as a broad band of tissue, not a narrow tube. In this study, 54% of the anterior thickness was smooth muscle of the internal anal sphincter. Subsequent studies, including the cadaver studies of DeLancey et al. (1997), found a similar shape with a substantial contribution from the internal anal sphincter. This substantial anterior anal sphincter length and thickness, as well as the contribution from the internal sphincter, is important to keep in mind during primary repair of obstetric lacerations as well as in surgical

**FIGURE 40.4.** Function of the anal sphincter and puborectalis muscle. A: At rest, the constant tone of the puborectalis muscle pulls the anorectal junction anteriorly to create an approximately 90-degree angle between the rectum and anal canal, closing the rectal inlet and maintaining continence of solid stool. At moments of need, this muscle can be contracted further, increasing the angle and supporting the stool bolus over the levator plate. B: During defecation, the puborectalis muscle relaxes, opening the rectal inlet, while intestinal peristalsis and the voluntary increase in intraabdominal pressure move stool into the anal canal. The anorectal angle is decreased and the stool bolus is lined up over the anal canal.
correction of anal incontinence secondary to a chronic perineal laceration.

The tone of the levator ani muscle is stabilized by the skeletal muscles of the anterior compartment of the urogenital diaphragm, and by the bulbocavernosus and transverse perineum muscles, which have a common insertion into the central perineal body between the anus and vaginal introitus. The perineal body is an important anatomic structure that is closely associated with the external anal sphincter and anal canal, and includes the insertion of two components of the transverse perineal muscles: a superficial and a deep muscle layer, both composed of striated muscle. The central raphé of the perineal body serves as a pivot point giving rise to the transverse perineal muscle, the terminal end of the bulbocavernosus muscles, the external anal sphincter, and, to an extent, the medial aspect of the levator ani or the puborectalis muscle (Fig. 40.1). Trauma or separation of the perineal raphé causes relaxation of the perineal body, which is attached to the external anal sphincter. The resulting alteration of attachment may contribute to loss of control of both liquid stool and gas.

**Physiology of Anal Continence**

Anal continence is dependent on the complex interaction of many physiologic and anatomic factors. Often the focus is on the anatomic and neurologic aspects of continence that obstetricians see damaged in the labor room and attempt to repair. However, many factors essential to continence are actually quite distant from the pelvic floor. They can include problems with stool volume and consistency, colonic transit time, rectal capacity, and rectal distensibility. For example, a severe malabsorption syndrome delivering massive quantities of stool of a liquid consistency that is difficult to manage can overwhelm even a normally adequate continence mechanism. The rectum also needs to be capacious and distensible to serve as a storage vessel so that the timing of defecation may be consciously deferred. A patient with a radiation-damaged and fibrotic rectum may lose that capacity. An individual must also possess adequate mental faculties to recognize the need for evacuation, as well as sufficient mobility to transfer to an appropriate location for willful defecation to remain continent. Although the relative importance of these factors has not been defined, it seems clear that for the normal patient with a normal consistency for willful defecation to remain continent. This theory has been questioned. Defecography studies have not confirmed the relationship of the anorectal angle to anal continence, just as the surgical restoration of the normal anorectal junction angle with a Parks postanal repair, or retrorectal levatorplasty, has not been consistently associated with the return of continence.

For defecation to occur, the puborectalis muscle must voluntarily relax while intestinal peristalsis and a voluntary increase in intraabdominal pressure allow the stool to move downward into the anal canal (Figs. 40.4B and 40.5B). Of note is when denervation of the pelvic floor musculature occurs, the muscles relax, lining up the rectum onto the fattyubic sphincter complex just as during an act of normal defecation. This relationship is unfavorable to continence and may contribute to incontinence, especially in patients with compromised sphincter function.

The internal and external sphincters maintain continence below the level of the puborectalis muscle. As discussed, they are particularly important in the control of liquid stool and gas. At rest, the anal canal is kept closed by the baseline tone of the internal sphincter and the constant tonic activity of the external sphincter. When stool enters the rectum, the rectum accommodates or relaxes, allowing it to hold stool until defecation is socially convenient. Stool in the rectum also triggers relaxation of the internal anal sphincter by the involuntary rectoanal inhibitory reflex before defecation is perceived (Fig. 40.6). This reflex relaxation of the internal sphincter allows the bolus to enter the proximal anal canal where discrimination of the solid, liquid, or gaseous nature of the bolus by the sensory-rich upper anal canal occurs. Subsequently, rectal distension and the presence of stool in the anal canal are consciously perceived. This leads to voluntary contraction or relaxation of the pelvic floor muscles to maintain continence or permit defecation, respectively. These two sensory mechanisms—awareness of the degree of rectal distention and the ability to discriminate the nature of intestinal contents—are crucial to maintenance of continence.

As rectal filling continues, the internal sphincter contracts once again to facilitate anal closure. If defecation or passage
Anal Incontinence and Rectovaginal Fistulas

FIGURE 40.5. A: Lateral defecography of normal continent patient deferring defecation by contracting puborectalis sling, increasing anorectal angle, and exerting squeeze pressure in anal canal. Note how barium bolus is supported over levator plate and away from the fatigable anal sphincter complex. B: Lateral defecography of normal continent patient willfully defecating by relaxing puborectalis sling, decreasing anorectal angle, and decreasing pressure in the anal canal. Note how barium bolus becomes lined up over anal canal.

of gas is inconvenient, the external sphincter and puborectals muscle can be firmly contracted. This helps force rectal contents back into a capacious and distensible rectal reservoir supported over the levator plate. Striated muscle, such as the external sphincter and puborectals, can only be contracted maximally for approximately 1 minute; by the end of 3 minutes, most of the force of contraction is diminished (Fig. 40.7). Injury to the internal sphincter that results in loss of tonicity of the anal canal may permit the involuntary passage of liquid stool and gas. Such an injury is particularly noticeable when the urge to defecate is persistent from a bolus of fecal material in the terminal rectum and when the voluntary contraction of the external sphincter and puborectalis muscle wanes.

FIGURE 40.6. Rectoanal inhibitory reflex. Arrival of stool in the rectum triggers reflex relaxation of the internal anal sphincter, allowing the bolus to enter the proximal anal canal, where discrimination of the solid, liquid, or gaseous nature of the bolus by the sensory-rich upper anal canal occurs.

CAUSES OF ANAL INCONTINENCE

The Effects of Vaginal Birth

Although numerous causes of anal incontinence are summarized in, a major factor is obstetric injury to the pelvic floor in healthy adult women. Vaginal birth may compromise the continence mechanism by direct anatomic injury to the anal sphincters, puborectalis sling, perineal muscles, and perineal fascia. DeLancey and associates (2003) and Dietz and Lanzarone demonstrate—in MRI and ultrasound studies, respectively—significant damage to the puborectalis sling associated with vaginal birth. Kearney and colleagues show an association of these defects with use of forceps (odds ratio [OR] 14.7), anal sphincter rupture (OR 8.1), and use of episiotomy (OR 3.1). Nerve injury may occur in some women as well and play a significant role. These injuries, either separately or in combination, can lead to some degree of anal incontinence. Other risk factors have been also defined. In a study of identical twin sisters, Abramov and associates identify age, menopause, obesity, parity, and stress urinary incontinence as major associated risk factors for anal incontinence.

Third- or fourth-degree obstetrical laceration of the anal sphincter complex is highly associated with subsequent development of anal incontinence. In a population-based, retrospective study at more than 2 million vaginal deliveries, Handa and coworkers found an anal sphincter laceration rate of 5.85% when preterm births, breech deliveries, stillbirths, and multiple gestations were excluded. Numerous case control studies report 6% to 44% of patients, after obstetric injury to the anal sphincter, have some degree of anal incontinence despite immediate surgical repair. Sultan and colleagues (1993) prospectively studied 20 consecutive pregnant women with multiple
modalities and found that although none of the nulliparas entering the study had a sphincter defect before delivery, 35% of primiparous women and 44% of multiparous women who delivered vaginally had an internal and/or external anal sphincter defect present postpartum. They found that anal incontinence in their study population was significantly associated with the presence of a sphincter defect. In a study of 808 vaginally delivered women in Sweden, Zetterstrom and associates found sphincter tears detected at delivery to be associated with nulliparity (OR 9.8), midline episiotomy (OR 5.5), fundal pressure (OR 4.6), postmaturity (OR 2.5), and increased fetal weight (OR 1.3). Of their subjects with primarily repaired sphincters, 54% reported at least “mild” anal incontinence at 5 months, and 41% still had symptoms at 9 months postpartum. In a 10-year follow-up of anal sphincter injuries, Fornell and associates found that subjective and objective anal function after injury deteriorates further over time and with subsequent deliveries. However, Nygaard and colleagues found, in a 30-year retrospective cohort study, that differences in anal incontinence between women with sphincter rupture, those with episiotomy and no rupture, and those who had cesarean delivery decrease with time from delivery to the point of equivalence.

The use of midline episiotomy is associated with anal sphincter rupture. Shiono and associates, using data from the Collaborative Perinatal Project, reported that midline episiotomy was associated with statistically significant 4.2-fold and 12.8-fold increases in the risk of third- and fourth-degree lacerations among primiparous and multiparous women, respectively. Studies by Green and Soohoo, Wilcox and

---

**TABLE 40.2**

**CAUSES OF ANAL INCONTINENCE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abnormal Pelvic Floor</th>
<th>Normal Pelvic Floor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Congenital anorectal malformations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstetric injury</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third- of fourth-degree perineal lacerations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Episiotomy breakdown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forecops delivery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operative procedures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colpopimenorrhaphy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaginotomy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficult hysterectomy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colpotomy drainage of pelvic abscess</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excision of Bartholin gland</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemorrhoidectomy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impalement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic fracture</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign body</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anal intercourse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infectious bowel disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crohn disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuberculosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granulomatous venereal disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ulcerative colitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diverticulitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perianal abscess</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma of the cervix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma of the vagina</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma of the vulva</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma of the rectum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic floor denervation (idiopathic neurogenic incontinence)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal delivery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic straining at stool</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aging</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Diarrheal states**

**Infectious diarrhea**

**Inflammatory bowel disease**

**Short-gut syndrome**

**Laxative abuse**

**Radiation enteritis**

**Overflow**

**Impaction**

**Encopresis**

**Rectal neoplasms**

**Neurologic conditions**

**Congenital anomalies (i.e., myelomeningocele)**

**Multiple sclerosis**

**Dementia, stroke, tabs dorsalis**

**Neuropathy (i.e., diabetes)**

**Neoplasms of brain, spinal cord, cauda equina**

**Injuries to brain, spinal cord, cauda equina**

**Subsidence of peristaltic wave**

**Continence is maintained**

**Rectal compliance**

**Rectal sensation**

**Internal sphincter relaxation**

**External sphincter and puborectalis contraction**

**Muscle fatigue (40–60 sec.)**

**Rectal distension**

**FIGURE 40.7. Algorithm for anal continence mechanism.**
incontinence (0% vs. 24%), fecal urgency (3.7% vs. 32%), and sphincter with separate repair of the internal sphincter when recently, Fernando and colleagues, in a randomized controlled internal anal sphincter regardless of type of primary repair. Most subjects had a residual full-thickness defect present in their ex-

sphincter defects in study subjects versus controls. Forty percent of their study population demonstrated unsatisfactory outcomes. Poen and colleagues reported on long-term clinical and functional results of standard primary repair of third-degree lacerations. They found significantly diminished squeeze pressures and increased first sensation anal canal of continent subjects. With increasing age, the inter-

ural decline with aging in resting and squeeze pressures in the

nence is now understood to be neurogenic anal inconti-

Other Causes

A promoter of anal incontinence over time is the fact that the normal process of aging results in decreased efficiency of the anal sphincter complex. Hasdem and associates showed a nat-

ural decline with aging in resting and squeeze pressures in the anal canal of continent subjects. With increasing age, the internal sphincter generates a lower resting pressure, and the pro-

portion of fibrous tissue increases. The squeeze pressure able to be exerted by the external sphincter suffers a natural decline as well. Increasing age also is associated with prolonged pu-

dendal nerve terminal motor latencies (PNTMLs) and elevated rectal and anal sensory thresholds. Because of this, many pa-

tients with damaged continence mechanisms may be able to compensate for a period of time, but they go on to decom-

pensate secondary to these age-related changes and become incontinent.

Functional problems of the bowel, such as constipation or diarrhea, can result in incontinence. Chronic constipation with its repeated straining at stool can cause stretch-induced injury to pudendal enervation. Overall, the most common cause of anal incontinence in the elderly, particularly those who are in-

stitutionalized, is fecal impaction. Fecal impaction may cause, rather than prevent, lacerations. Mediolateral episiotomy is associated with third- or fourth-degree lacerations, 47 (92%) were caused by obstetric trauma. Even meticulously repaired lacerations will occasionally com-

pletely break down. This leaves the patient with an open cloacal deformity. Anal incontinence usually is a problem for these pa-

tients until the tissues are healed sufficiently to allow secondary repair. Repairs that appear on the surface to have healed satis-

factorily may have some internal persistent structural defects, such as partial separation of the sphincter muscle fibers, re-

vealed by ultrasound. The clinical significance of these small defects is not clear.

Another potential cause of persistent incontinence, even af-

ter successful anatomic repair of the anal sphincter, is dener-

vation injury to the sphincter muscles. Snooks and colleagues (1984) demonstrated that there is physiologic evidence of den-

ervation of the sphincter in 80% of patients with anal inconti-

nence and an obstetric tear. In women who did not sustain any injury to the external sphincter during delivery, 42% had evi-

dence of denervation. These denervation injuries were strongly associated with a prolonged second stage of labor, forceps de-

livery, and a large fetus, suggesting that the mode of injury of the pelvic nerves may be from stretching of the nerves dur-

ing descent of the pelvic floor, from ischemic injury, or from direct compression of the nerves. Most of these individuals re-

enervate their pelvic floor over the first 6 months postpartum with improvement in their anal function. However, many do not gain full neurologic function. At present, there is no way to predict who will sustain damage or who will regain function. Much of what used to be termed “idiopathic” anal inconti-

nence is now understood to be neurogenic anal incontinence.

anal canal of continent subjects. With increasing age, the inter-

nal decline with aging in resting and squeeze pressures in the

sphincter laceration, Hammerer-Doak and col-

leagues found significantly decreased resting and squeeze pres-

sures in study subjects versus controls. Forty percent of study subjects were found to have sphincter defects present on ultra-

sound despite primary repair, and a trend toward continued ano-

rectal dysfunction was found in the laceration group.

The idea of a different repair using an overlapping tech-

nique for the external anal sphincter with a separate repair of the internal anal sphincter is the subject of some research interest at present. Sultan et al. (1999) published an initial ex-

perience with such a repair in 32 patients performed by two experienced surgeons with the patient moved to a well-lit oper-

ating room and given adequate anesthesia and antibiotics. At follow-up, all had apparent healing, 8% encountered inconti-

nence of flatus, 15% had persistent external sphincter defects on ultrasound, and 44% had persistent internal sphincter de-

fects. Fitzpatrick and associates prospectively randomized 132 primiparas who suffered a third-degree laceration to overlap-

ping versus approximation repair. At 3 months, they found no statistically significant difference in incontinence scores, anal manometry, or endoanal ultrasound. Interestingly, 66% of all subjects had a clinically significant thickness defect present in their ex-

ternal anal sphincter regardless of type of primary repair. Most recently, Fernando and colleagues, in a randomized controlled trial (1999) found unacceptably poor repair of the external anal sphincter with separate repair of the internal sphincter when needed was associated with a significantly lower rate of fecal incontinence (0% vs. 24%), fecal urgency (3.7% vs. 32%), and perineal pain (0% vs. 20%) compared with an end-to-end ap-

proach. In general, most of these studies imply that results of obstetric sphincteric rupture repair may be improved by op-

timizing standard surgical considerations, including lighting, exposure, adequate anesthesia, use of antibiotics, and proper aseptic surgical technique.

On occasion, the rectal mucosal portion of a repair will break down, which can result in rectovaginal fistula. In Hibbard’s series of 24 rectovaginal fistulae and 27 chronic per-

anal lacerations, 47 (92%) were caused by obstetric trauma. Even meticulously repaired lacerations will occasionally com-

pletely break down. This leaves the patient with an open cloacal deformity. Anal incontinence usually is a problem for these pa-

tients until the tissues are healed sufficiently to allow secondary repair. Repairs that appear on the surface to have healed satis-

factorily may have some internal persistent structural defects, such as partial separation of the sphincter muscle fibers, re-

vealed by ultrasound. The clinical significance of these small defects is not clear.

Another potential cause of persistent incontinence, even af-

ter successful anatomic repair of the anal sphincter, is dener-

vation injury to the sphincter muscles. Snooks and colleagues (1984) demonstrated that there is physiologic evidence of den-

ervation of the sphincter in 80% of patients with anal inconti-

nence and an obstetric tear. In women who did not sustain any injury to the external sphincter during delivery, 42% had evi-

dence of denervation. These denervation injuries were strongly associated with a prolonged second stage of labor, forceps de-

livery, and a large fetus, suggesting that the mode of injury of the pelvic nerves may be from stretching of the nerves dur-

ing descent of the pelvic floor, from ischemic injury, or from direct compression of the nerves. Most of these individuals re-

enervate their pelvic floor over the first 6 months postpartum with improvement in their anal function. However, many do not gain full neurologic function. At present, there is no way to predict who will sustain damage or who will regain function. Much of what used to be termed “idiopathic” anal inconti-

nence is now understood to be neurogenic anal incontinence.

A diarrheal state can result in anal incontinence even in a pa-


tient with normal anorectal function, owing to the presence of large quantities of liquid stool that may overwhelm a normally
functional mechanism. Neurologic disorders affecting sphincter control also may result in anal incontinence. Usually, the neurologic defect is widespread, and anal incontinence is but one manifestation.

Traumatic injury, more often a side-straddle injury in young girls, may result in simple or extensive laceration of the perineum. The extent of the injury may be difficult to determine because a patent, febrile, which may indicate chronic hemorrhage and hematoma formation. Examination under anesthesia is advisable so that appropriate repair can be made, looking carefully for lacerations of the anal sphincter and rectum as well as other structures. Hematoma dissection above the levator muscles must be ruled out with pelvic ultrasound and with careful rectovaginal examination under anesthesia. Above the levator muscles, there is nothing to impede the progression of a hematoma until the diaphragm is reached.

Rectal trauma from operative procedures can affect rectal capacity and compromise anal continence or perhaps lead to extramal incontinence through a rectovaginal fistula. Entry into the rectum may occur during posterior colporrhaphy, especially when the anterior rectal wall and posterior vaginal skin are closely adherent with little, if any, intervening connective tissue. Such an enteroctomy should be repaired transversely if longitudinal closure would compromise rectal capacity. A difficult hysterectomy, either abdominal or vaginal, may result in injury to the rectum, especially when dissection behind the cervix is difficult because of dense adhesions, induration tissue from infection, or involvement of the cul-de-sac and anterior rectal wall with endometritis. If the rectal defect does not heal properly or is not closed properly, a high recto-vaginal fistula may develop through the newly closed vaginal apex. Partial excision of anal sphincter and other muscles involved in maintaining anal continence may be required in such cases. Other causes of anal incontinence, as reported by Berek and others, include laceration of the anal sphincter, anal trauma, and radiation injury. Isolated cases have been reported by Berek and others. Injury to the anterior rectal wall may occur during hemorhoidectomy, excision of a Bartholin’s gland, or colotomy for pelvic abscess drainage. Forty to sixty percent of patients with rectal or rectal mucosal prolapse also have some degree of anal incontinence. Although this was originally thought to be secondary to a dilatation effect on the internal anal sphincter, there is often evidence of associated neurovascular damage to the external anal sphincter muscles as well. This has been confirmed by studies demonstrating prolonged PNTMLs in these patients. These individuals may present with a patulous anal sphincter, passive stretching of the puborectalis muscles, and a long history of straining with constipation. The tissue prolapse may be related to prolapsing internal hemorrhoidal tissue, rectal mucosa, or complete (full-thickness) rectal prolapse. Questions such as the frequency of occurrence of the prolapse, association with activity or defecation, estimated distance of the prolapsed tissue from the anus, spontaneous or manual reducibility, and history of incarceration may be helpful in better defining the type of problem. Patients may have relatively occult prolapse of tissue, which can manifest as mucous or brownish staining in the underwear with occasional blood.

On physical examination, it is important to note the following:

Malignant tumors may erode through the tissues between the vagina and the rectum. When a patient with tumor involvement of the rectovaginal wall receives radiation, sloughing of the tumor may result in a rectovaginal fistula. Radiation also may cause a rectovaginal fistula through a retained cervix. Rarely, anal incontinence may be congenital, as seen in one of 5,000 newborn girls who have an imperforate anus with associated fecal incontinence through a congenital rectovaginal or rectoenteric fistula. Total rectal agenesis is rare. Paul and Lloyd reported hindgut duplication with a congenital rectovaginal fistula; however, most anal incontinence is acquired. Finally, although anal incontinence may be termed idiopathic in about 10% of women, the mechanism of incontinence in these women is usually secondary to pelvic floor denervation. In summary, although an intact and functional anal sphincter complex and puborectalis sling are important in the maintenance of anal continence, it must be remembered that a variety of other factors are involved, including intact anorectal sensation and reflexes, rectal capacity and distensibility, reasonable colonic transit time, appropriate stool volume and consistency, and adequate patient mental function and mobility.

**EVALUATION OF ANAL INCONTINENCE**

A careful history and physical examination are vital to eliciting the presence of, delineating the cause of, and guiding the
Patients are reticent to discuss problems of anal incontinence. A survey of 666 patients in a general genecologic outpatient clinic in Switzerland by Faltin and colleagues found that 5.6% had anal incontinence. Of those individuals, only 20% had ever reported this symptom to a health care provider. For this reason, patients should always be asked during a history about specific symptoms of anal incontinence in a nonthreatening way that helps them overcome feelings of embarrassment and invites discussion.

Once a history of defecatory dysfunction is elicited, the examiner should attempt to differentiate true incontinence from other conditions. A symptom diary can be useful both for diagnosis as well as monitoring progress during treatment. Perianal leakage of material other than stool can occur because of prolapsing hemorrhoids, anorectal neoplasms, or sexual or anorectal surgery, number of vaginal deliveries, a history of prolapsed hemorrhoids, anorectal neoplasms, or sexual or anorectal surgery, number of vaginal deliveries, a history of prolonged labor, use of forceps, and significant perineal laceration. (Anal incontinence is rarely the presenting symptom in patients with spinal cord lesions.) Pelvic examination should include a neurologic examination to identify occult neurologic disease. Patients are reticent to discuss problems of anal incontinence. A symptom diary can be useful both for diagnosis as well as monitoring progress during treatment. Perianal leakage of material other than stool can occur because of prolapsing hemorrhoids, anorectal neoplasms, or sexual or anorectal surgery, number of vaginal deliveries, a history of prolonged labor, use of forceps, and significant perineal laceration.

Physical examination should include a general screening neurologic examination to identify occult neurologic disease. (Anal incontinence is rarely the presentating symptom in patients with spinal cord lesions.) Pelvic examination should include a careful inspection of the posterior vaginal wall, perineum, anal sphincter, anal canal, and rectum, including assessment of the patient’s function as well as anatomic. A patulous anus indicates a major loss of sphincter function and can be associated with rectal prolapse. Most obstetric injuries are associated with an anterior segmental defect in the external anal sphincter and may appear as the loss of the perineal body, loss of the corrugated appearance surrounding the anus, or attenuation of the rectovaginal septum. In some instances. In more subtle cases in which the perineal body appears intact but the external sphincter is actually separated, there may be only the dimples of the laterally retracted ends of the anal sphincter muscles apparent. This produces a “divertail” appearance, as described by Toogood and Delaney, in which the normal radial distribution of the anal erases is absent anteriorly but is present laterally and inferiorly. If there is a question as to the presence of a segmental defect, endosonral or transperineal ultrasound can be useful in delineating the anatomy. Next, a screening examination to increase our understanding of anorectal anatomy and function; however, their precise clinical role still remains somewhat unclear. Many of the above studies are most useful in patients with idiopathic anal incontinence or persistent incontinence after a failed surgical repair.

Once the diagnosis is in doubt, the ability to retain an enema argues for the presence of a small fistula orifice. When the fistula is small, it may be localized by the presence of feces in the vagina or by the posterior vaginal walls. The vaginal opening of a fistula may be localized by the presence of fecal material on the perineal skin or by the dark red rectal mucosa seen protruding at the fistulous opening. As the rectum is distended with air by a syringe attached to the Foley catheter with a 10-mL balloon is inserted into the anus while the posterior vaginal wall is painted with a concentrated solution of soap and water, or, alternatively, the vagina can be filled with water. As the rectum is distended with air by a syringe attached to the Foley catheter, the vaginal orifice of the fistula may be localized by the presence of bubbles forming at the fistula site. A small probe may then be passed along the fistula tract. Alternatively, when a rectovaginal fistula is suspected but cannot be identified, radiologic studies such as a vaginogram or fistulogram may identify a fistulous tract. These studies are superior to barium enema for identifying a fistula because they use a thin, water-soluble atmosphere instead of thick barium solution. As such, although fistulae occasionally may be identified by barium enema, the intraluminal pressure of the bowel often is inadequate to force the barium solution.
through a small fistula opening. In addition, the presence of barium in the lower bowel may obscure a fistula tract.

When a rectovaginal fistula is diagnosed, it is important to complete a thorough assessment of the anal sphincter and pelvic floor as well because these patients may have multiple defects. If not properly evaluated preoperatively, the patient may undergo successful repair of her fistula only to become anally incontinent postoperatively. Her compromised sphincter function may have been adequate preoperatively when excess pressure was bypassing the sphincter through the fistula. After her fistula is repaired and the full force of rectal contents is delivered to the sphincter complex, there may not be enough sphincter function to maintain continence. A full treatment of rectovaginal fistula management appears later in this chapter.

A thorough digital rectal examination should be performed. Any rectal mass must be noted and the stool consistency assessed. A gross assessment of the patient’s resting and squeeze pressures within the anal canal and her ability to contract her levator ani muscles should be included. Anal sphincter tone should be evaluated with the patient at rest and during sphincter contraction. An anterior sphincter defect may be easily detectable as the loss of the palpable muscular ring within the perineal body. Even in the absence of external anal sphincter muscle anteriorly, a scarified band of tissue can remain that completes the contractile ring and helps the patient maintain continence. Next, the anorectal axis can be assessed. On rectal examination, the puborectalis muscle is palpable posteriorly at the junction between the rectum and the anal canal. By directing the examining finger posteriorly, the angle between the anus and rectum can be estimated and should approximate 90 degrees in a normal woman. More important, when the patient is asked to squeeze the sphincter, the puborectalis muscle should pull the examiner’s finger anteriorly toward the pubic bone.

The cause of anal incontinence can be identified in most cases by using these guidelines for careful evaluation of the perineum, posterior vaginal wall, pelvic floor muscles, external anal sphincter, and rectum. In the young parous patient, obstetric injury to the anterior anal sphincter complex is most often apparent on physical examination. One exception is the integrity of the internal anal sphincter. It cannot be assessed adequately by physical examination alone, but can be determined by radiologic and physiologic tests. A defect of the internal sphincter can be assumed, however, if there is significant thinning of the rectovaginal septum. In many of these cases, both the internal and external anal sphincters are injured. Certainly, the patient with a cloacal deformity by definition has a segmental defect of both sphincters. From a practical and technical viewpoint, the internal anal sphincter cannot be repaired unless the external sphincter also is repaired. Surgery is rarely effective for an isolated defect of the internal sphincter. When surgical repair of the external anal sphincter is indicated, however, one should consider repairing defects in the internal sphincter as well.

Testing

Clearly, many patients will have a diagnosis and be ready to proceed to treatment after their history and physical examination. For others, the picture will be less clear. There may be questions about a particular patient that thoughtful use of testing can answer. Is a segmental defect present at the internal or external anal sphincter? What is the functional status within the anal canal? Is rectal sensation normal? Is the eversion to the striated musculature of the continent mechanism intact? How does the patient actually defecate: Are rectoceles, enteroceles, or sigmoidoceles interfering? Is intussusception involved? Judicious use of testing based on the information needed to arrive at an accurate diagnosis and to plan successful treatment can be important.

Anal Imaging

Endoanal, transvaginal, and transperineal ultrasound techniques have made it simple and relatively inexpensive to identify defects in both the internal and external anal sphincters. These defects can go clinically unrecognized, but may be amenable to surgical repair. Endoanal endosonography is one radiologic technique for assessing posttraumatic defects of the internal and external anal sphincters. High-resolution images of the separate sphincter muscles are obtained using a rotating endprobe, and anatomic defects can be identified as a loss of continuity of the muscle rings (Fig. 40.8). Several studies have found that anal endosonography correlates well with needle EMG mapping of sphincter defects, manometric mapping of sphincter defects, and intraoperative findings. Ultrasound is less time-consuming than EMG or manometry and much more comfortable for the patient. Other studies have established that transvaginal ultrasound is equally efficacious to endoanal ultrasound in identifying sphincter defects. Peschers and colleagues described normal sphincter and puborectalis anatomy as well as defects in both the internal and external sphincters using coaxial ultrasonography: a conventional 3-MHz convex transducer placed on the perineum. Ultrasound currently is the study of choice for establishing the presence or absence of a segmental anal sphincter defect. The approach chosen—endoanal,

![FIGURE 40.8. Endoanal ultrasound image of an anally incontinent patient with a segmental external anal sphincter defect. Probe, endoanal ultrasound probe; M, anal mucosa; IAS, internal anal sphincter; EAS, external anal sphincter; defect, segmental defect of external anal sphincter. (Photograph courtesy of Justin A. Maykel, MD.)](Image)
Anal manometry provides information regarding function, sensation, compliance, and the presence of intact reflexes within the anal canal and distal rectum. The first part of this test is essentially a pressure profile of the anal canal, providing information on the functional status of the internal and external anal sphincters. Some computer-based, multichannel manometry equipment can provide graphic cross-sectional analysis of the anal canal to help detect the presence of segmental sphincter defects.

The test usually is performed with the patient in the left lateral decubitus position without any special bowel preparation. There are many different protocols for performing anal manometry. Most commonly, a fluid-filled pressure catheter with radial side ports located 90 degrees apart circumferentially is connected to pressure transducers, and a recording device is used to measure the anal canal pressures during rest and during voluntary contraction of the anal sphincter (Fig. 40.9). These pressures may be recorded either as the pressure catheter is slowly pulled through the anal canal—a station pull-through technique—or at static points along the anal canal as the pressure catheter is pulled out in certain increments, usually every 0.5 cm. The average pressure measured at rest in the anal canal to help detect the presence of segmental sphincter defects is the resting pressure, and the highest pressure recorded along the anal canal with the patient at rest is the maximum resting pressure. The increase in pressure over the basal canal pressure initiated by voluntary contraction of the anal sphincter is the squeeze pressure, and the highest such increment is the maximum squeeze pressure. The resting anal canal length is measured from the point at which the anal sphincter pressure continuously exceeds the average intrarectal pressure by 4 mm Hg. The squeeze response is a reflection of the internal anal sphincter function, whereas the squeeze pressure reflects the strength of the external anal sphincter voluntary contraction (Fig. 40.3).

A second part of anal manometry testing is the evaluation of rectal sensation. A balloon is placed in the rectum and incrementally distended. The minimum perceived volume, the volume causing the urge to defecate, and the maximum tolerable volume are recorded. Measurements of pressures within the balloon allow the calculation of rectal compliance. The presence of a reflex rectal contraction after a bolus of air is introduced into the balloon, followed by the return to normal baseline pressures as the rectum accommodates, is noted. Most healthy patients have a minimal perceived volume of about 30 cc and a maximum tolerable volume of about 300 to 350 cc, although this can be highly variable. When the rectal capacity is 200 cc, however, procitosis is often found.

“Normal” range for maximum resting pressure is 40 to 80 cmH2O and for maximum squeeze pressure is 100 to 200 cmH2O; however, there is tremendous overlap in values between patients who are continent and those who are incontinent. As a group, incontinent patients have lower values on anal manometry testing than continent patients, although there is no discriminatory level that can be used to predict incontinence. It has been suggested that patients with a maximum resting pressure of <20 cmH2O and a maximum squeeze pressure of >40 cmH2O are unlikely to be continent. Sentovich and colleagues found decreased resting and squeeze pressures in 97% of patients with a history of anal sphincter injury. Poon and associates found significantly decreased maximum squeeze pressures and also found first sensation of filling to be significantly increased in 40 subjects who had third-degree lacerations primarily repaired with controls. They also found that 35 (88% percent) of these subjects still had sphincter defects present on endoanal ultrasound despite apparently successful healing of their repair. Gearhart and colleagues were unable to demonstrate any single preoperative manometric parameter that was predictive of outcome following sphincteroplasty.

FIGURE 40.9. Anal manometry perfusion catheter. An open-tipped perfusion catheter with radial side ports located every 0.5 cm (arrows) records anorectal pressures. Distention of the balloon at the end of the catheter is used to determine rectal sensory thresholds and to elicit the rectoanal inhibitory reflex.
Pelvic Floor Electromyography

Pelvic floor EMG evaluates the pelvic floor muscles for evidence of nerve injury. The smallest functional neuromuscular unit is the motor unit, and injury to nerves or muscles produces characteristic changes recorded in the motor unit action potentials. Conventional needle EMG involves placing a small needle with a recording electrode into the muscle being studied. The firing pattern of the motor units is assessed as the needle is being inserted, during spontaneous muscle activity, and during maximum voluntary contraction of the muscle. The characteristics of the recordings can then be evaluated. Single-fiber EMG allows the recording of action potentials from individual muscle fibers of a motor unit. When nerve injury occurs, there is often denervation but with a change in fiber density. The denervation is more diffuse and results in less effective muscle contraction than the original active reinnervation. When these studies indicate nerve reinnervation, therefore, it reflects prior nerve damage that has healed. Needle EMG studies also can be used to map specific anatomic defects of the external anal sphincter but, as stated previously, this function currently is more often fulfilled by ultrasound studies.

Nerve conduction velocities, which are the actual speed of conduction of the action potential along the nerve, are another measure of nerve function. The nerve conduction velocity can be calculated by measuring the nerve latency, which is the delay between the stimulation of the nerve at a specific point and the response in the target muscle supplied by the nerve. Standardized latencies for most peripheral nerves have been established. Evaluation of PNTML, as developed by Snooks and colleagues, is of interest in patients with anal incontinence. The pudendal nerve is stimulated as courses behind the ischial spine into Alcock’s canal, and the time is measured until a response is detected in the external anal sphincter. Prolonged PNTMLs indicate nerve damage; however, this test only reflects the conduction time of the healthiest axon remaining in a nerve. Therefore, normal PNTMLs do not confirm a lack of damage to the whole nerve. The only test that can conduct a response normally. Cheong and colleagues found pudendal neuropathy in 16% (21 bilateral, 15 unilateral) of 223 patients (174 women) presenting with anal incontinence. Osterberg and associates found a correlation between fiber density and clinical and manometric variables in 72 continent patients (63 women), but failed to find a correlation with PNTML. Vaccaro and coworkers found pudendal neuropathy to be an age-related phenomenon in patients with anal incontinence and constipation. A finding of prolonged PNTML may be of clinical significance; however, normal PNTMLs do not exclude the possibility of neurologic damage. Although PNTML testing is in use by many centers, it may lack sensitivity and specificity for detection of external anal sphincter weakness caused by pudendal nerve damage. The American Gastroenterological Association’s (AGA) medical position statement on anorectal testing techniques states that “although interesting from a research point of view, the clinical usefulness of this test is controversial. … The PNTML cannot be recommended for evaluation of patients with anal incontinence.”

Although suggestion of neurologic injury may be identified by careful physical examination, neither ultrasound nor anatomic manometry is helpful in identifying neuropathic patients. Identification of such patients is important. In the presence of neurologic damage, patients are less likely to have a good functional response to operations designed to restore anal incontinence, even when the anatomic result appears completely successful. Knowledge of a patient’s pelvic floor neurologic status can be particularly useful for counseling her on what to expect after surgical repair. Although the presence of pudendal neuropathy implies a poorer prognosis for the potential sphincteroplasty patient, it does not mean that many such patients could not derive significant improvement in their continence. Chen and colleagues found in a small group of patients undergoing sphincteroplasty that, based on continence scores, the one patient with no neuropathy had an excellent result; of seven patients with unilateral pudendal neuropathy, 70% had a good to excellent result and 30% had a fair to poor result; whereas in four patients with bilateral neuropathy, half had a good to excellent result and the other half scored fair to poor.

Defecography

Defecography is a radiologic evaluation of the lower gastrointestinal tract. It was used initially in the evaluation of patients with defecation disorders; but more recently, it has been used as part of the evaluation of anal incontinence. The rectum of the patient is filled with a barium-oatmeal or potato starch paste mixed to a consistency to approximate semisolid stool. The patient then is seated on a special commode chair and asked to defecate during fluoroscopy. Lateral radiographs usually are taken before, during, and after evacuation of the rectum (Fig. 40.3). Alternatively, cinedefecography can be performed, which is a videotaped dynamic fluoroscopic study.

The anorectal angle can be observed, as can the effect of willful contraction of the puborectalis muscle on this angle. It also provides information about rectal emptying and the mobility of the rectal wall. Anatomic abnormalities of the gastrointestinal tract not previously identified, such as intussusception, rectal prolapse, and rectal ulcers, can be detected by defecography. Now it is possible to perform a response in the study known as the anorectal angle measurement. The anorectal angle measurement is more often fulfilled by ultrasound studies. The anorectal angle can be observed, as can the effect of willful contraction of the puborectalis muscle on this angle. It also provides information about rectal emptying and the mobility of the rectal wall. Anatomic abnormalities of the gastrointestinal tract not previously identified, such as intussusception, rectal prolapse, and rectal ulcers, can be detected by defecography. Now it is possible to perform anorectal angle measurement.
sphincter weakness and predict response to biofeedback train-
ing; (e) rectal and anal sensory testing; and (f) testing of rectal
compliance. Procedures of possible value for an individual pa-
tient might include (a) surface EMG for evaluation of sphincter
function and evacuation proctography or (b) cine-dfecography,
when rectal prolapse is suspected. Testing procedures that are
counterintuitive for the clinical evaluation of anal incontinence
are the use of PNTML testing for an assessment of the presense
of pudendal nerve function and (b) MRI, because of its expense.

NONSURGICAL THERAPY OF
ANAL INCONTINENCE

The goal of nonsurgical therapies is to minimize the threat to
continence from intestinal contents by managing stool consis-
tency and maximizing the patient's remaining levator ani and
sphincter function. Because surgical therapy has less than per-
fected outcomes, strong consideration should be given to try-
ing to optimize a patient's function before the decision for
surgery is made. Dietary manipulations and pharmacologic
agents may reduce flatus and liquid stools, and pelvic floor
exercises, biofeedback therapy, and electrical stimulation facil-
itate optimization of anal sphincter and levator ani function.

To reduce the challenge to the sphincter mechanism, all condi-
tions producing diarrheal states, such as inflammatory bowel
disease and malabsorption syndromes, should be treated di-
rectly. For constipated patients, a high-fiber diet and the addi-
tion of an osmotic laxative (e.g., sorbitol) may produce soft,
formed stools that are more easily managed by a compromised
sphincter mechanism. For patients with diarrhea, a low-residue diet
to reduce stool bulk and constipating agents such as loperamide or diphenoxylate with atropine are often
helpful. Patients should avoid foods that cause intestinal hyper-
motility as well as carbonated beverages and foods that tend
to produce flatulence. Many patients learn on their own that consti-
pation helps them with continence and maintain themselves in
a constipated state for many years before presenting to a health
care practitioner. Santoro and associates studied amitriptyline
for both its ability to slow colonic transit time resulting in a
fatter stool that is passed less frequently, as well as improve
pressure dynamics in the rectal reservoir. They found signific-
ant improvement in symptoms as well as manometric param-
eters in the study group. In some patients, a system of planned
defecation with the use of glycerol suppositories or a daily tap
water enema may leave the rectum clean between evacuations
and decrease incontinence episodes. Pelvic floor rehabilitation through physiotherapy with
biofeedback, pelvic floor exercises, and electrical stimulation
may help improve anal sphincter and pelvic floor function.
These techniques are particularly helpful in patients with mild
pelvic floor denervation to maximize the strength and function
of the sphincter mechanism and levator sling. Rehabilitation
techniques may be useful as an initial conservative measure in
patients with recent obstetric trauma and evidence of pelvic
floor nerve injury. Some reenervation tends to occur over the
first 6 months postpartum in these patients. Those who are
not able to willfully contract their pelvic floor muscles imme-
diately postpartum because of transient nerve injury may best
benefit from electrical stimulation techniques. Pelvic floor re-
habilitation may be useful preoperatively to try to maximize
the outcome of a subsequent surgical repair. Patients who are
improved but not totally continent after surgical repair also
may benefit from these techniques to restore their margin of
continence.

Pelvic floor exercises, similar to the Kegel exercises per-
formed to improve urinary incontinence and pelvic support,
may improve the functioning tone of the external anal sphinc-
ter. Biofeedback therapy using an anal balloon or plug electrode
can facilitate the proper muscle contraction by measuring the
strength of the sphincter contraction with (a) the use of bio-
feedback to the patient with a visual demonstration of muscle function. Biofeed-
back therapy also has the advantage of being able to train pa-
tients to perceive decreasing volumes of air in the rectum and
to coordinate this with the contraction of the external anal sphincter. Biofeedback therapy has been reported to improve
anal incontinence in 50% to 90% of patients treated, with
most studies showing improvement in about 80% of patients.
Some effects of biofeedback training may be long lasting in re-
lation to anal incontinence. Eack and associates studied anal
incontinent patients treated with biofeedback versus controls
almost 10 years after treatment ended. They did not find
a lasting difference in prevalence of anal incontinence, but did
find a significant difference in severity of incontinence mea-
sured in number and frequency of incontinent episodes. The
success of biofeedback therapy seems primarily dependent on
the improvement in rectal sensation; manometric studies have
not consistently shown an increase in sphincter pressures af-

ter therapy. Suitable candidates for biofeedback therapy must
have some degree of rectal sensation and be able to contract
the anal sphincter voluntarily.

Transanal electrical stimulation can be used as an adjunct
to pelvic floor exercises in patients who are unable to contract
their pelvic floor muscles or who are unsuccessful with biofeed-
back therapy alone. An anal probe connected to a neuromus-
cular stimulation unit delivers a preset voltage to the external
anal sphincter to induce contraction of the striated sphincter
muscles. This technique causes minimal patient discomfort and
has been associated with a significant increase in the maximum
squeeze pressure following therapy, with subsequent improve-
ment in partial anal incontinence. It has not been successful in
patients with major incontinence of solid stool. Transanal elec-
trical stimulation also is unlikely to be successful in patients
with a severely denervated anal sphincter because of the degree
of irreparable end-organ damage.

SURGICAL THERAPY FOR ANAL
INCONTINENCE

Surgical procedures for anal incontinence are measured by
their impact on an individual's symptoms and quality of life.
 Cure (i.e., total continence of solid, liquid, and gas) is rarely
achieved. Papers that discuss surgical results for anal inconti-

ence procedures most often use significant improvement on an
incontinence scoring system scale as their criterion for success.

Most patients with anal incontinence who see an
obstetrician-gynecologist present with a specific anatomic de-
fect resulting from obstetric or postoperative trauma. These
patients suffer from a long-standing disruption of the perineal
body and anterior anal sphincter complex often called a chronic
perineal laceration (Fig. 40.10). Approaches to the surgical re-
pair of this problem are discussed at length in this chapter.

Treatment of patients with idiopathic, neurogenic, or recur-
rent incontinence without an anatomic defect requires a
specialized care and more advanced procedures. These patients
are most often referred to a colorectal surgeon or proctologist
with a special interest in this area. Although a full discussion of
In most cases of chronic perineal laceration with long-standing disruption of the anterior anal sphincter complex, classic symptoms include the progressive loss of control of gas and feces with a mean follow-up of 3 years. Setti Carraro and associates studied 34 postanal repair patients with a mean follow-up of 6.2 years. They found that only 9 (26%) had continence of solid and liquids and 5 of the 9 still leaked flatus. Recognizing that improvement may be a significant goal, it is important to note that 28 of the 34 subjects assessed their outcome as improved, with the remainder relating no change.

A total pelvic floor repair operation has been proposed that involves a postanal repair, a plication of the levator muscles anterior to the rectum, and a sphincteroplasty. This operation was studied by Deen and colleagues (1993) in a prospective, randomized trial. A total pelvic repair was compared with anterior levator plication plus sphincteroplasty alone as well as with postanal repair alone. They found at 6 and 24 months a significantly better outcome for the total pelvic repair than for either of the other two procedures.

**Chronic Perineal Laceration**

In most cases of chronic perineal laceration with long-standing disruption of the anterior anal sphincter complex, classic symptoms include the progressive loss of control of gas and feces from the anus. The severity of symptoms generally varies with the degree of perineal laceration and sphincter loss. If the puborectalis muscle is left intact and is well innervated and functional, it can provide sufficient muscular contraction to permit control of feces when the patient is constipated or when the stool is of normal consistency. Such patients quickly learn this and maintain a constipated state to decrease their symptoms. If the entire perineal body is disrupted, including the internal and external anal sphincters, and the posterior vaginal wall heals directly to the anterior rectal wall above the hymenal ring, then the patient is said to have a cloacal deformity. The concept was to plicate the levator ani together behind the anorectal junction to increase the anorectal angle and augment what was proposed as a "flap valve" mechanism for continence involving the levator plate. Since that time, the idea of a flap valve mechanism has been discredited. Keighley studied 105 patients who underwent this operation. With a follow-up of at least 6 months, he found that two-thirds had regained continence. Long-term results of the postanal repair have been disappointing. Matsuoka and colleagues found postanal repair successful in 7 of 20 (35%) patients based on a significant decrease in incontinence scores after a mean follow-up of 3 years. Regardless of which surgical approach is chosen, a preoperative mechanical bowel preparation is important. An oral bowel preparation should be given the evening before surgery is scheduled. If such a preparation is given the day of surgery, the patient may still be releasing stool during the operation. Although the patient may be given three doses of oral erythromycin, 500 mg, and neomycin, 1 g, the day before surgery, this may not be necessary in all patients.
To avoid 2 months of uncomfortable symptoms, some surgeons have advocated an earlier repair. The results of early repair of an external sphincter and rectal mucosal laceration or dehiscence were first reported in 1986 by Hauth and associates. Each patient was seen within 10 days of delivery with dehiscence of a repaired fourth-degree laceration. Patients underwent preoperative mechanical bowel preparation on admission, prophylactic antibiotics, and debridement appropriate to the extent of superficial infection and necrosis, and preoperative intravenous antibiotic therapy. A range of 1 to 6 days elapsed to allow preparation of the wound area before a layered closure was performed. The bowel was rested for 10 days after the repair. Seven of eight cases were successfully repaired, with complete healing, normal external sphincter function, and no dyspareunia. Similar good results with early repair of dehiscence of fourth-degree episiotomy in 22 patients were reported by Hankins and colleagues. The average hospital stay for debridement, intravenous antibiotic therapy, and repair was 15 days. Two patients developed postoperative rectovaginal fistula after early repair. Secondary repair in both cases was successful. Good results of early repair of dehiscence after mediolateral episiotomies, as opposed to midline episiotomies, have been reported by Monberg and Hammen.

A number of techniques have been described over the past 100 years for reconstruction of a complete chronic perineal laceration, including (a) the layered method of repair, the Warren flap procedure, and the Noble-Mengert-Fish operation. Today, some form of layered method of repair is performed most often. The internal rectal mucosa is intact and the injury is largely limited to the anal sphincter complex and perineal body, repair consists of anal sphincteroplasty with extensive perineorrhaphy. If the injury extends into the anal canal and involves the anorectal mucosa, this approach would essentially recreate a fresh fourth-degree perineal laceration, which would then be repaired in a standard layered fashion. Therefore, the initial layer of such a repair would include a suture line in the anorectal mucosa. This was a major disadvantage to the layered approach in these patients in the preantibiotic era. Today this does not represent a significant problem, although infectious complications do occur.

The Warren flap method, first described in 1882, avoids a mucosal incision in the anus, provides a pedicle graft of vaginal mucosa for enlargement of the perineal skin, and provides a more cosmetic result to the perineal body. However, the Warren technique offers no particular improvement in the correction of the muscular defect that produced the anal incontinence. The main advantage of the procedure is that a suture line is not created in the anal mucosa. With the Warren technique, the vaginal mucosa is turned backward and used as the new portion of the anterior wall at the end of the anal canal. The anal sphincter is then reaproximated over the inner portion of the vaginal flap, which remains attached to the anal mucosa. The Warren flap procedure is still used, although less frequently than when first described.

The Noble operation, or anal pull-through procedure, as it is more commonly called, also avoids creating a suture line in the anal mucosa. The procedure was described originally in 1902 by Noble, but received little attention until described again independently by Mengert and Fish in 1955. Noble’s original claims for the operation in the surgical era before the availability of antibiotics, blood banks, and modern advances in general anesthesia included (a) elimination of the danger of infection or fecal matter from the rectum in the surgical wound, (b) avoidance of the tediousness of dissecting a vaginal flap, (c) minimal blood loss, and (d) uniformly good results. The most important advantage was the absence of a suture line in the anterior rectal wall. Although performed much less frequently than a layered approach today, interest in this operation remains, particularly for the treatment of rectovaginal fistula. Veronikas and associates reported a 94% anatomic success rate and 77% excellent functional success rate in 34 patients treated with this operation for primary and persistent rectovaginal fistula.

Regardless of which approach is taken to repair a chronic perineal laceration in the patient with anal incontinence, it is the sphincteroplasty itself that is the keystone to the repair. Below we discuss techniques of anal sphincteroplasty as well as approaches to overall repair of a chronic perineal laceration.

The surgeon should keep in mind that the anal sphincteroplasty may be the most important part of the overall repair, especially when transanal incontinence is part of the indication for the operation.

**Anal Incontinence and Rectovaginal Fistulas**

Anal sphincter complex is a surgical challenge to repair because both the internal and external sphincters have a constant tone that begins pulling against the healing area almost immediately. Functional results from this surgery are far from perfect. The overlapping repair was proposed for the external anal sphincter in the hopes that the scarified ends of the torn sphincter would bolster support for the reparative sutures and not allow them to pull through, resulting in a better anatomic result and, in the hope, better functional results. The advantage in terms of outcome seems to favor the overlapping approach over the end-to-end approximation method; however, more data clearly are needed. Many studies of these operations are difficult to evaluate because the criteria for what constitutes success or cure often are poorly defined. Total continence of solid stool, liquid, and gas is not often achieved. Again, improvement in continence and quality of life may represent the best outcome measure.

Blaisdell, in an older report, and Arnaud and associates more recently, reported success rates of approximately 60% using the end-to-end approach. Using the overlapping technique, Stitzer and Thomson reported a 74% success rate in 27 women, most of whom had obstetric sphincter injuries. The continence rates after anal sphincteroplasty appear to diminish with time. Rothbarth and colleagues reported on 39 patients who had obstetric injuries and underwent overlapping sphincteroplasty. Their success rates were 77%, 67%, and 62% at 3, 9, and 12 months, respectively.

Three long-term follow-up studies of the degree and quality of continence after overlapping sphincteroplasties reflect the difficulty of the task at hand. Malouf and associates studied patients with a minimum of 5 years follow-up (median 77 months) and found that 23 of 46 patients (50%) had a successful outcome defined as no further surgery and episodes of urge fecal incontinence occurring once a month or less. Of the 23 patients judged to have a successful outcome, 15 had passive soiling, 17 had fecal urgency, 19 were incontinent of solid and liquid stool, and none were fully continent of stool and flatus. Halverson and Hull found in patients with a median follow-up of...
of more than 5 years that 54% were continent of solid or liquid stool, and 14% remained totally continent. Gutter-ree and colleagues reported on 130 patients with a median follow-up of 10 years. Sixty-one percent continued to have incontinence or required further surgery. Eight patients were totally continent.

The success rates for anal sphincter repair in patients with concurrent pudendal neuropathy are much lower than for those with intact enervation. Gilliland and colleagues looked at a large group of patients who had undergone an overlapping sphincteroplasty with a median follow-up of 2.4 years. They found that 62% of 59 patients with normal pudendal function had a successful outcome, compared with only 17% of the 12 patients with unilateral or bilateral prolonged PNTMs. Karoui and associates found success rates to deteriorate with time and reported that poor results also were associated with the presence of an internal sphincter defect.

The importance of the internal anal sphincter to continence is a subject of recent interest. It has long been known that this structure contributes most of the resting tone in the anal canal and helps to maintain our day-to-day continence. Pur-poseful lateral disruption of the internal sphincter to aid with anal fissure healing has been shown to be associated with the development of at least transient incontinence. Vaizey and as-sociates have identified primary degeneration of the internal sphincter as an independent cause of passive anal incontinence in some women with normal neurologic function and no obstetric trauma. It follows that repair of a disrupted internal sphincter should contribute to continence.

Little attention has been paid in the past to repair of the internal sphincter either at the time of initial obstetric injury or at the time of reconstruction of a long-standing injury. Repair of this smooth muscle structure that is tonically contracting against a closed lumen is a major challenge in the healing phase because it is to actually accomplish in the operating room. Preliminary reports regarding this repair are mixed. Abous-Zed reported on eight patients (two women) who had their ultra-sonically established internal sphincter defects repaired end to end with 2-0 polyglycolic acid sutures. At a median follow-up of 15 months, all were improved, and two achieved full continence. On the other hand, Leros and associates (1997) reported on five patients with persistent incontinence after surgery that affected the internal sphincter. Three patients felt improved, but none were fully continent. All had persistent defects on ultra-sound postoperatively. Three had improvement of their resting pressure, but only one was in the normal range. In a random-ized trial addressing internal sphincter repair during topical pelvic floor repair for anal incontinence, Deen and colleagues (1995) showed no differences in resting and squeeze pressures or in symptom relief.

Layered Method of Repair of Chronic Perineal Laceration

A transverse or crescent perineal incision is used at the junction of the posterior vaginal wall and anal mucosa. The lateral margins of the incision are extended to the region of the peri- neal dimple created by the retracted external sphincter, and a midline incision is made along the lower half of the posterior vaginal wall (Fig. 40.11A). The edges of the vaginal and rectal mucosa are grasped sepa-rately with Allis clamps, and the anterior rectal wall is sepa-rated in the midline from the posterior vaginal wall with careful scissors dissection. The dissection is carried laterally by sharp dissection to the region of the external anal sphincter. The in-ternal anal sphincter, which is the thickened distal conden-sation of the circular smooth muscle layer of the rectum, can be seen between the external anal sphincter and the anorec-tal mucosa as an area of white fibrous tissue (Fig. 40.11B). Meticulous hemostasis and wide mobilization to allow closure without tension are crucial.

A fibrous scar that is retracted lateral to the wall of the anal canal (Fig. 40.11B) often identifies the external sphincter. The exact anatomic margins of the external sphincter frequently are difficult to ascertain. A nerve stimulator can be used to iden-tify contractile skeletal muscle. Alternatively, the Allis clamps containing the ends of the external sphincter can be brought together in the midline and a circumferential sphincter test ed for by inserting a double-glove index finger into the rectum. If necessary, the clamps should be readjusted to incorporate more of the retracted muscle bundles until the constricted effect of the reaproximated sphincter can be demonstrated.

All scar tissue is excised from the margins of the anorec-tal mucosa, and the defect in the anal mucosa is closed using a continuous or interrupted suture of 3-0 delayed-absorbable material. A running suture may have the advantage of distrib-uting tension along the entire suture line and helping prevent a gap in the closure that could occur from ischemia if an inter rupted suture is tied too tight. A submucosally placed suture is ideal. Sometimes this tissue is quite friable, and a full-thickness suturing of the mucosa is the safest method.

After the mucosal margins are approximated, a second sup-porting layer inverts the internal mucosal suture line. This layer often has been thought of as the external anal “perirectal fascia,” but in fact it is the thickened downward continuation of the circular smooth muscle layer of the rectum that is the internal anal sphincter. This appearance of a thick mucosa layer between the anorectal mucosal closure and the external anal sphincter (Fig. 40.11C). Care should be taken in reapproxi-mating this layer over a length of 3 to 5 cm as this muscle is responsible for most of the resting pressure in what is nor-mally a 4-cm high-pressure zone in the anal canal. This layer also serves to umbricate and isolate the mucosal layer and take tension off of it to help it heal and seal against infection.

In an approximation-type external anal sphincteroplasty, the external anal sphincter ends are completely trimmed of scar tissue and united in the midline with interrupted 0 or 2-0 delayed-absorbable sutures. Although some surgeons pre fer a permanent suture, such as a braided silicone-treated polyester, a delayed-absorbable monofilament suture such as poliglecaprone has the advantage of maintaining excellent ten-sile strength for an extended period while avoiding the presence of a permanent foreign body. This becomes particularly impor-tant in the event of wound infection. Four or five sutures are used to approximate the sphincter muscle. These can be placed 1 cm apart, full thickness, with the nondominant index fin ger in the anal canal to aid in acquiring excellent purchase on both ends while assuring no penetration of the anal canal itself.

In an overlapping approach to the external anal sphincter, the scarified ends of the sphincter are important to the repair it-self and are left in place. The concept of the overlapping sphinc-teroplasty is to use the scarred ends of the torn sphincter to help hold the sutures that reconstitute the circumferential sphincter. The ends are widely mobilized with the scar tissue left on. Care should be taken to not dissect beyond the 3- and 9-o’clock posi-tion because the pudendal enervation to the sphincter enters lateral to the external sphincter. Then is brought together over...
FIGURE 40.11. Layered closure of a chronic complete perineal laceration with overlapping sphincteroplasty. A: A transverse incision is made at the junction of the vaginal and rectal mucosa and extended up the midline of the posterior vaginal wall. B: The rectal wall has been separated from the posterior vaginal wall with careful sharp dissection. The ends of the external sphincter have been identified and grasped with Allis clamps. The internal anal sphincter can be seen between the external anal sphincter and the anorectal mucosa as an area of white fibrous tissue. C: The defect in the anal mucosa has been closed with a continuous 3-0 delayed-absorbable suture. The internal anal sphincter then is reapproximated over a length of 3 to 5 cm. This layer also serves to imbricate and isolate the mucosal layer and take tension off of it to help it heal and seal against infection. D: The ends of the external anal sphincter are widely mobilized with the scar tissue left on. Care should be taken not to dissect beyond the 3- and 9-o’clock position as that is where the pudendal innervation to the sphincter enters laterally. The external sphincter then is brought together over the repaired internal sphincter with two rows of two horizontal mattress sutures of delayed-absorbable or permanent suture material. E: After the external sphincter has been repaired, the genital hiatus is narrowed by bringing the puborectalis muscles closer together with interrupted delayed-absorbable sutures placed in the fascia overlying them. F: The bulbocavernosus and superficial transverse perinei muscles have been reattached to the perineal body, and the vaginal mucosa was closed with a continuous locking stitch of 3-0 delayed-absorbable suture that was continued subcuticularly to approximate the perineal skin.
the repaired internal sphincter with two rows of two horizontal mattress sutures of delayed-absorbable or permanent suture material (Fig. 40.11D). An important part of the perineal reconstruction is the restoration of a narrower genital hiatus by bringing the puborectalis muscles closer together. One must remember that the arms of the puborectalis muscle do not normally come in contact with each other between the rectum and the vagina. Overzealous plication of the puborectalis muscle can constrict the vaginal introitus and create posterior tissue banding that can lead to dyspareunia. Dissection should be carried out laterally to the fascia overlying the medial border of the puborectalis muscles, and this fascia should be brought together by a series of interrupted, delayed-absorbable sutures. Each suture should be held tightly and the vagina tested before tying to assure that posterior bands are not formed. If it is, that suture should be removed and another placed. Extending this procedure to the midportion of the vagina can produce excellent anatomic support for the underlying anal canal and rectum (Fig. 40.11E).

Further support and elevation of the perineal body are provided by bringing together the disrupted ends of the superficial transverse perineal muscles and the bulbocavernous muscles. These muscles normally insert on the perineal body and play a part in pelvic floor support. They should be included in perineal reconstruction, including obstetric repair, to restabilize and support the perineal body. After this step, the redundant vaginal mucosa is excised, and the remaining mucosa is approximated in the midline with a continuous 2-0 or 3-0 delayed-absorbable suture. This is followed by a subcuticular closure of the perineal skin (Fig. 40.11F).

In 1937, Miller and Brown proposed making a paradoxic incision in the inferior portion of the anal sphincter at the 5- or 7-o’clock position to relax the tension on the anterior suture line in patients undergoing sphincter repair. The procedure disrupts both the internal and external sphincters and is not without physiologic risk, such as poor healing and scarring of the sphincter with the potential for postoperative anal incontinence of gas and liquid feces. For these reasons, paradoxic incisions are not widely used at the present time. Nevan and Pemberton studied a similar procedure and reported that although lateral internal sphincterotomy done for treatment of a chronic anal fissure led to fissure healing in 96% of 487 patients, anal incontinence was persistent in a small subgroup. Although most of this incontinence was minor and transient, the incontinence was persistent in a small subgroup.

Incomplete perineal repair. Interrupted plication stitches of 2-0 delayed-absorbable sutures are used to advance the fascia and shorten the muscle fibers of the perineal body, which strengthens the external sphincter as well. The margins of the vaginal mucosa and graft are approximated in the midline by a continuous locking stitch of 3-0 delayed-absorbable suture. The tip end of the vaginal mucosal flap should not be trimmed too closely, even though it protrudes somewhat from the repaired perineal body. It retracts as healing occurs (Fig. 40.12E).

### Noble Procedure for Complete Perineal Laceration

The torn perineum, anal, and rectal tissue in patients with a complete perineal laceration form a “butterfly” appearance across the perineum (Fig. 40.13A). The “wings” of the butterfly are the lateral perineal dimples of the retracted ends of the external anal sphincter. The initial incision is outlined around the margins of this area following the margin of the anal mucosa along the anatomic defect in the rectovaginal septum. The perineal skin is left attached and held with Allis clamps to facilitate later dissection of the retracted ends of the external sphincter. A small margin of vaginal mucosa is also left attached to the anal wall for traction because the anal mucosa is so friable. Atraumatic clamps are placed along the margin of the anal canal, and sharp dissection is used to carefully separate the anal wall from the overlying vaginal mucosa. The external anal sphincter remnants should be sharply mobilized and separated from the underlying anal wall (Fig. 40.13B). The vaginal mucosa is widely mobilized from the anal canal and lower rectal wall laterally to the underlying levator muscles and proximally into the middle or upper one third. Adequate mobilization of the anterior anorectal wall allows it to be pulled outside the vagina, which will avoid the formation of an anal orifice without difficulty, thus avoiding su- tures in the anorectal canal.

Once the ends of the external anal sphincter are mobilized to meet in the midline with traction on the Allis clamps, the overlying skin previously left attached is excised, and the suture lines are approximated end to end in the midline (Fig. 40.13C). Alternatively, one could perform an overlapping plication sphincteroplasty as previously described (Fig. 40.11D,E). Several of these sphincteroplasty sutures also should include the muscular layers of the anterior rectal wall to prevent it from retracting inward and to avoid tension on the suture line between the advanced anterior anorectal wall and the perineal skin. The genital hiatus should be narrowed by bringing the puborectalis muscles closer together as previously described (Fig. 40.11D,E). The transverse perineal muscles and the inferior margins of the bulbocavernous muscles then are

### Warren Flap Operation for Complete Third-Degree Tear

An inverted V-shaped incision is made in the posterior vaginal mucosa, outlining the flap that is to be turned down. The lower ends of the incision should be just lateral to the dimples caused by retracted sphincter ends (Fig. 40.12A). The length of the flap should measure a minimum of 3 cm to provide sufficient vaginal mucosa to be incorporated into the anal canal and cover the reconstructed perineal body. Taking care to avoid injuring the bowel wall, the surgeon dissects the flap of mucosa free from the top downward (Fig. 40.12B), stopping short of the margin between the vaginal and anal mucosa. If this margin is perforated, then the blood supply to the mucosal flap is compromised, thereby nullifying the advantage of the flap technique. The properly demar- cated flap allows the areas overlying the sphincter ends to be denuded. The flap is grasped with two mucosal Allis clamps and is turned down to hang over the anus. The external anal sphincter ends are then dissected free, using Allis clamps for traction. An approximation or overlapping-type external anal sphincteroplasty then is performed (Fig. 40.12C). Although an approximation-type sphincteroplasty is pictured, an overlapping procedure as described above could be incorporated into this procedure (Fig. 40.11D,E). The fascia overlying the anodermal aspect of the puborectalis muscles is identified, and this tissue is brought together with a series of interrupted sutures for reinforcement in the manner described for the layered technique, using 0 or 2-0 delayed-absorbable sutures (Fig. 40.12D). Each suture should be tested before tying to assure that the caliber of the vagina is not compromised.

Closure of the vaginal mucosa is carried out as in an ordinary perineal repair. Interrupted plication stitches of 2-0 delayed-absorbable suture are used to advance the fascia and shorten the muscle fibers of the perineal body, which strengthens the external sphincter as well. The margins of the vaginal mucosa and graft are approximated in the midline by a continuous locking stitch of 3-0 delayed-absorbable suture. The tip end of the vaginal mucosal flap should not be trimmed too closely, even though it protrudes somewhat from the repaired perineal body. It retracts as healing occurs (Fig. 40.12E).

---

**Surgery for Corrections of Defects in Pelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas**

---

The perineum is left attached and held with Allis clamps to facilitate later dissection of the retracted ends of the external sphincter. A small margin of vaginal mucosa is also left attached to the anal wall for traction because the anal mucosa is so friable. Atraumatic clamps are placed along the margin of the anal canal, and sharp dissection is used to carefully separate the anal wall from the overlying vaginal mucosa. The external anal sphincter remnants should be sharply mobilized and separated from the underlying anal wall (Fig. 40.13B). The vaginal mucosa is widely mobilized from the anal canal and lower rectal wall laterally to the underlying levator muscles and proximally into the middle or upper one third. Adequate mobilization of the anterior anorectal wall allows it to be pulled outside the vagina, which will avoid the formation of an anal orifice without difficulty, thus avoiding su- tures in the anorectal canal.

Once the ends of the external anal sphincter are mobilized to meet in the midline with traction on the Allis clamps, the overlying skin previously left attached is excised, and the suture lines are approximated end to end in the midline (Fig. 40.13C). Alternatively, one could perform an overlapping plication sphincteroplasty as previously described (Fig. 40.11D,E). Several of these sphincteroplasty sutures also should include the muscular layers of the anterior rectal wall to prevent it from retracting inward and to avoid tension on the suture line between the advanced anterior anorectal wall and the perineal skin. The genital hiatus should be narrowed by bringing the puborectalis muscles closer together as previously described (Fig. 40.11D,E). The transverse perineal muscles and the inferior margins of the bulbocavernous muscles then are
FIGURE 40.12. Warren flap operation for complete perineal laceration. A: The line of incision outlines the flap of vaginal mucosa. B: The flap is dissected free and turned back. C: The flap is retracted downward. The ends of the sphincter are delivered and are either sutured end to end as pictured or with an overlapping technique as described. D: The external sphincter has been repaired, and the puborectalis muscles are then brought closer together taking care not to create a posterior band of tissue. E: The vaginal incision is closed with a continuous locking stitch that is continued subcuticularly over the perineum. The margins of the vaginal mucosal flap are reapproximated, further reconstituting and supporting the perineal body.

The vaginal mucosa is trimmed, if necessary, and the margins of the posterior vaginal wall are approximated with a continuous locking stitch of 3-0 delayed-absorbable suture. The continuous suture closing the posterior vaginal mucosa is carried over the perineal body as a subcuticular stitch, and the perianal skin then is approximated at the midline. The mobilized anterior wall of the anal canal is drawn outside the reconstructed anal orifice and sutured without tension to the perianal skin (Fig. 40.13E). The excess anal mucosa is trimmed. Care should be taken to remove as little of the distal anal canal as possible because this tissue contains the internal anal sphincter. Vertical mattress sutures of 3-0 delayed-absorbable suture are used to approximate the broad surface of the anal submucosa to the perianal skin. Any residual separation of the margins of the anal mucosa and perianal skin can be approximated with interrupted sutures.

Muscle Transposition, Artificial Sphincters, Diversion, and Other Procedures

The following advanced procedures are largely reserved for patients with difficult anal incontinence problems or multiple operative failures. Muscle transposition procedures exist...
FIGURE 40.13. The Noble operation for complete perineal laceration. A: A “butterfly-shaped” scar is noted across the perineum, where there are torn perineal, anal, and rectal tissues. The ends of the external anal sphincter can be recognized by lateral perineal dimpling. B: The anterior rectal wall is mobilized extensively from the posterior vaginal wall to allow it to be pulled down without tension. The wings of the butterfly are left attached to facilitate dissection of the retracted ends of the sphincter. C: Ends of the anal sphincter are trimmed and sutured together and to the pararectal fascia of the advanced anterior rectal wall. Several delayed-absorbable sutures are used. D: The levator muscles and pararectal fascia are brought closer together in the midline. (Continued)
in which the gracilis muscle, sartorius muscle, or gluteus muscle are swung as flaps to encircle the anal canal. Dynamic muscle plasty procedures involve stimulation of this muscle with an intramuscular neuromuscular stimulator to induce it to contract around the anal canal and occlude it continuously. When the patient wishes to defecate, the pulse generator can be turned off by a magnet. Once defecation is complete, the stimulator can be turned on again by the magnet. In a series of 20 patients reported by Hallan and associates, 12 have a functioning neoanal sphincter. Madoff and colleagues (1999) reported that frequency for 8 to 10 weeks until the transformation from a fast-twitch to a slow-twitch muscle has been achieved. At this point, the frequency of stimulation is increased so that the muscle contracts around the anal canal and occludes it continuously.

There are several classification systems for rectovaginal fistulae. We have favored that of low (vaginal opening near the posterior fourchette), mid (from the level of the cervix to just posterior to the posterior fourchette), and high (the fistula is in the area of the posterior fornix).

**Etiology**

Although there are many different causes of rectovaginal fistulae (Table 40.3), numerous series report that obstetric trauma is the cause for the majority of them. Rectovaginal fistulae usually arise as a complication of a repaired fourth-degree perineal tear. Venkatesh and colleagues reported that even though this sequence of events may be the most common, only 0.1% of vaginal deliveries result in fistula formation. Risk factors for development of a rectovaginal fistula in association with vaginal deliveries include prolonged labor, difficult forceps delivery, shoulder dystocia, and a midline episiotomy.

A rectovaginal fistula may develop as a result of direct surgical injury to the rectum or vagina, ischemia, or postoperative infection. Other less common causes include blunt instrumentation or penetrating trauma caused by an accident.
Occasionally, rectovaginal fistulae follow an infectious process such as a perianal abscess or an infected Bartholin duct cyst abscess. The most common cause of high rectovaginal fistulae is repeated bouts of diverticulitis with abscess formation followed by development of a sigmoidovesical fistula or a combined sigmoidovesicovaginal fistula. Inflammatory bowel disease such as ulcerative colitis or Crohn disease may result in complex rectovaginal fistulae. Crohn disease is a transmural condition that often results in a rectovaginal fistula.

Radiation is a relatively infrequent cause of fistula formation, usually beginning as a proctitis with ulceration and fistula formation followed by a stricture. Fistulae may occur several years after completion of radiation therapy. Primary or metastatic disease in surrounding organs (rectum, cervix, uterus, or vagina) may result in rectovaginal fistulae. Because congenital rectovaginal fistulae is usually managed at a young age and is associated with other anomalies, it is usually not managed by the gynecologic surgeon.

### Clinical Evaluation

The most common symptoms are the passage of flatus and stool into the vagina. The severity of these symptoms may be affected by the size of the fistula and its number. There is usually a foul-smelling vaginal discharge with periodic, uncontrolled escape of gas. Occasionally, the fistula may develop immediately. More commonly, it appears 7 to 10 days after delivery. The breakdown of a primary repair, inadequate repair, or infection at the primary site may explain this delayed presentation. Because of the unpredictable condition and the desire to have more children, the patient may not seek medical attention for some time. Diarrhea, rectal bleeding, mucus discharge, and abdominal pain are caused by the underlying status of the bowel and do not result from the fistula per se. The history frequently suggests the underlying cause of the fistula and may greatly influence the timing and route of repair. On physical examination, the location, size, and number of openings can be identified. The route of the fistula may be outlined by the passage of a thin probe from the vagina through the fistulous tract into the anal or rectal canal. Placing an examining finger in the rectum aids in this process. Contractions of the pubococcygeal and external anal sphincter should be evaluated for competency. The perineal body is examined, and the tissues about the fistula are delineated to gain more insight into the cause of the underlying fistula. A proctosigmoidoscopic examination usually is done to ensure that the mucosa of the intestinal tract is normal.

In patients with a history compatible with a fistula but in whom no fistula opening can be identified, a simple office examination can be helpful. With the patient in a slight Trendelenburg position with a size 20 Foley urinary catheter, a 5-ml balloon is placed in the anal canal. Air is instilled through the catheter while the water-filled or soap-covered vagina is observed for any escape of air bubbles originating from the anal canal. Contrast studies are necessary to define the sigmoidovesical fistula or fistulae associated with primary bowel disease.

### Surgical Management

Numerous operative procedures have been described for repair of rectovaginal fistula, including transvaginal, transanal, and abdominal approaches. Gynecologists usually use a transvaginal approach, whereas colon and rectal surgeons prefer the transanal technique. The determining factors to be considered include the cause of the fistula, its location and accessibility, and the status of the anal sphincter.

The most typical rectovaginal fistula is one following disruption of a primary repair of a fourth-degree laceration. It typically occurs low along the rectovaginal septum just inside the external anal sphincter. Generally, it presents 6 to 10 days after the initial repair with passage of air or stool through the vagina. Venkatesh and colleagues report that approximately 50% of these small fistulae may heal without operative intervention during the first 6 to 8 weeks postpartum.

### Early Repair

As previously mentioned, Hankins and colleagues described early repair of carefully selected rectovaginal fistulae and episiotomy breakdowns using a technique of early return to the operating room for debridement followed by daily cleaning of the wound area. After a 6- to 7-day interval, their patients were returned to the operating room for surgical repair of the fistula. With this approach, successful healing occurred in 90% of their patients. We prefer to wait 8 to 12 weeks to allow the surrounding inflammation to resolve before surgical intervention. Preoperative mechanical bowel preparation should be given. On the morning of operation, tap water enemas can be given until clear.

Appropriate treatment of a rectovaginal fistula requires consideration of the cause and location of the fistula and the condition of the involved tissues. For fistulae located in the lower portion of the anal canal, we prefer to use the lithotomy position to carry out the operative repair. For fistulae at the very apex of the vagina, an abdominal approach generally is required.

### Low Rectovaginal Fistula: Technique of Repair

A transvaginal technique for small rectovaginal fistula repair involves a circular incision about the fistulous opening (Fig. 40.14). With traction on the vaginal wall and countertraction applied to the edge of the fistulous tract, the vagina is separated from the underlying rectal wall with sharp dissection, and this proceeds circumferentially (Fig. 40.15). This wide mobilization permits later approximation of the fresh injury free of tension.
FIGURE 40.14. Small rectovaginal fistula with proposed line of initial incision.

Once the vaginal walls are mobilized from the underlying rectum, the entire fistulous tract is excised to include a small rim of the rectal mucosa (Fig. 40.16), converting the fistula to a fresh injury. With the surgeon’s nondominant index finger lifting and supporting the anterior rectal wall, the initial sutures are placed extramucosally, including a portion of the muscularis and submucosa, with 3-0 delayed-absorbable sutures (Fig. 40.17). We frequently place all sutures throughout the length of the fistula, after which they are individually tied in the order in which they were placed. The initial suture line begins and is extended a full 3 to 8 mm above and below the site of the fistulous tract to assure complete closure. A second layer

FIGURE 40.15. Incision of vaginal wall, mobilizing posterior vagina from underlying anterior anal canal.

FIGURE 40.16. Excision of fistulous tract.

FIGURE 40.17. Extramucosal placement of sutures in wall of anterior anal canal.
Surgery for Corrections of Defects inPelvic Support and Pelvic Fistulas

FIGURE 40.18. A: Inversion of initial suture line with approximation of muscularis of the anal canal. This thickened smooth muscle layer is the internal anal sphincter. B: Side view representing closure of the first and second layers in the anal canal.

(Fig. 40.18) begins 5 mm above the previously closed suture line and extends 5 mm distal to the fistulous closure, inverting the initial suture line into the rectum, and no sutures are located within the rectal lumen.

Once the wall of the rectum is reconstructed, the lower portions of the puborectalis muscle and the external anal sphincter are approximated to add a third layer in the closure (Fig. 40.19A), which helps to reconstitute the anterior rectal wall. Care should be taken that approximation is not carried so far superiorly that it results in a transverse bar across the posterior vaginal wall, which may lead to dyspareunia. Once the muscular walls are approximated, the vaginal wall is approximated with 3-0 delayed-absorbable sutures, accurately placed so as to promote primary apposition of the fresh edge of the vaginal wall (Fig. 40.19B).

Occasionally, the fistulous tract is so close to the external anal sphincter that closure is difficult. In this situation, the bridge of skin, sphincter, and perineal body can be divided,
FIGURE 40.21. Mobilization of posterior vagina off anterior anal canal with conversion of rectovaginal fistula to fourth-degree injury.

and the fistula is thus essentially converted to a fourth-degree tear (Fig. 40.20). The fistulous tract is excised, and the posterior vaginal wall is mobilized from the anterior anal wall (Fig. 40.21). The anal canal is then reconstructed with interrupted or running fine delayed-absorbable sutures approximating the mucosa of the anal canal. This initial suture line then is inverted with a second layer of interrupted fine delayed-absorbable sutures approximating the retracted tissues of the internal anal sphincter, resulting in reconstruction of the anal canal (Fig. 40.22). The retracted ends of the external anal sphincter are approximated in the midline in an end-to-end fashion with fine delayed-absorbable sutures (Fig. 40.23). This results in a snug closure that is resistant to the passage of the surgeon’s little finger. Alternatively, at this point one could perform an overlapping sphincteroplasty as described earlier (Fig. 40.11D,E). The perineal body is reconstructed in such a

FIGURE 40.22. Two-layer reconstruction of anal canal.

FIGURE 40.23. Reanastomosis of retracted external anal sphincter with surgeon’s left index finger in the anal canal.

FIGURE 40.24. Reconstructed perineal body with subcuticular approximation of skin of perineum.
fashion that there is significant support to the reconstructed anal sphincter, and yet entrance to the vagina is not compromised (Fig. 40.24).

Considerable experience exists with the transanal flap approach to rectovaginal fistulae involving the lower portion of the rectovaginal septum. Rothenberger and colleagues reported on a technique that uses an endorectal flap consisting of mucosa, submucosa, and circular muscle fibers. The flap is twice as wide at the base as it is at the apex. They achieved successful repair in 32 of 35 patients with rectovaginal fistulae. Hoexter and associates reported a similar high rate of fistula healing and improvement in anal continence, emphasizing several points for successful repair via endorectal flap: (a) elevating the rectal flap for at least 4 cm to the fistula, (b) excising the fistulous tract, (c) leaving the vaginal wound open for drainage, and (d) using an elliptic flap to avoid devascularization of the flap apex. Others have reported a high degree of efficacy of the endorectal flap for achieving both fistula healing and repair of any associated anal sphincter disruptions.

**Repair of Radiation-Induced Fistula**

Less commonly, a sizable rectovaginal fistula is located high in the posterior vaginal wall, frequently associated with a degree of stricture of the adjacent rectum and significant perirectal fibrosis and scarring. When this occurs, it is almost always after radiation therapy. Successful closure of the fistula requires aggressive excision of the surrounding tissues damaged by radiation. In selected patients, the fistula is best managed with a primary resection and anastomosis of the rectosigmoid through a lower midline incision. However, successful closure can be accomplished vaginally by means of a pedicled bulbocavernous muscle with an overlying labial fat pad (Martius procedure).

Figure 40.25 depicts the usual location of the fistula, high in the posterior vaginal wall. Figure 40.26 outlines the potential sites from which the pedicled bulbocavernous Martius-type flap is obtained. Initially, an incision is made in the vagina to separate the scarred vagina from the underlying anterior wall of the rectum circumferentially. The edge of the scarred vaginal epithelium adjacent to the edge of the rectal mucosa is excised in anticipation of this being the site of the initial suture line approximating the squamous epithelium from the vulvar flap to the rectum in order to fill the defect in the rectum. With a Mayo scissors, a subcutaneous tunnel is made from the labium majus to the fistula under the labium and vaginal mucosa (Fig. 40.27). The free end of the muscle is guided through the subcutaneous tunnel with a single absorbable suture placed along its edge to assist in passage through the tunnel. The
Proposed sites to harvest skin and subcutaneous tissue in preparation to fill hole of rectovaginal fistula.

The rectal defect is such that it cannot be closed primarily. Thus, the edge of the squamous epithelium from the vulvar graft is sutured to the edge of the rectal mucosa with 4-0 delayed-absorbable sutures. Occasionally, a Schuchardt incision is required in the vagina to obtain adequate exposure for the dissection.

The pedicled graft is used to close the fistulous defect, beginning at the 3-o'clock position, in a synchronous fashion such that the entire edge of the fistulous tract is in immediate proximity to the edge of the skin from the vulva (Fig. 40.28). Once in place, the muscle and subcutaneous tissue of the graft are sutured to the surrounding connective tissue.

To provide coverage for the exposed Martius flap, which has been inserted as a plug into the rectum, a similar pedicled graft is developed from the patient’s right side; this is placed so that the skin of the vulva is approximated to the skin of the vagina (Fig. 40.29). The edges are placed such that there is no exposed source for granulation tissue (Fig. 40.30).

A small suction catheter is placed between the two pedicled grafts and brought out through a stab wound lateral to the perineal incision. The vulvar incision is closed in layers, the skin approximated with fine interrupted delayed-absorbable suture.

Sigmoidovaginal Fistula: Sigmoid Resection with Sigmoidorectostomy

Fistulae between the sigmoid colon and vagina occur infrequently, but the overwhelming majority result from diverticulitis of the sigmoid colon (Fig. 40.31) in a patient who has previously had a hysterectomy. Generally, the sequence of events consists of the patient experiencing repeated bouts of acute diverticulitis that finally result in perforation of a diverticulum and abscess formation with a fistulous tract communicating to the vagina. Passage of fecal material or gas through the vagina in the absence of a rectal communication should lead one to suspect a fistula arising from the sigmoid colon or small intestine. A proctoscopic examination should be done, although often it is impossible to visualize the fistulous orifice because of narrowing or fixation resulting from the inflammatory condition. Surgical intervention is indicated for a sigmoidovaginal fistula that is large enough to permit the passage of fecal material. In a few selected patients, a colostomy may be the only treatment, or the fistula may be divided and the sigmoidal defect closed with or without a temporary colostomy. In the overwhelming majority of patients, we prefer a sigmoid resection with primary anastomosis and closure of the opening into the vagina. The need for a temporary protective colostomy is determined on an individual basis.

Hartmann Procedure

Under some circumstances, the infected, inflammatory process is such that the sigmoid mass may be excised, but a primary anastomosis is ill advised. It may be more appropriate to excise the diseased colon, close the fistula in the vagina, leaving the defunctionalized rectal stump in the pelvis for later reanastomosis (Fig. 40.32). Omentum and a suction drain are usually placed over the stump. The distal end of the descending colon is brought out as a colostomy, which is matured at that time. Later, usually after 2 to 3 months, reoperation can be done through the previous incision. Placement of a gauze pack in the vagina and an EEA sizer in the anal stump will help to identify these structures. Once identified, the descending colon is freed from the splenic flexure in a sufficient fashion to permit the primary descending colorectostomy in a noninfected field as a closing step in this two-stage procedure.
FIGURE 40.27. Mobilization of bulbocavernous muscle with overlying fat pad.

FIGURE 40.28. Suture fixation of pedicled skin to rectal mucosa.
FIGURE 40.29. Approximation of the skin of the vulvar flap to the skin of the vaginal wall.

FIGURE 40.30. Reconstructed perineum in completed repair of fistula.

FIGURE 40.32. A: Separate closures of top of vagina and remnant of rectum. B: Matured colostomy and oversewn site of sigmoidovaginal fistula.
The management of the anally incontinent patient is a complex undertaking whether that incontinence is transanal or extrarectal. Preoperative evaluation of the anally incontinent patient is the most important part of any surgical therapy before a decision for surgery is made. Consideration should be given to extensive use of nonsurgical management. Judicious use of preoperative testing can aid in identifying patients most likely to achieve benefit from surgery. Because surgical results in anally incontinent patients are less predictable, it is important to give careful consideration to preoperative counseling regarding expectations and possible outcomes is crucial for the ultimate satisfaction of the patient. Surgery for anal incontinence and rectovaginal fistula repair requires thorough surgical planning, careful attention to detail, and a meticulous operative technique to provide the patient with optimal results.

SUMMARY

The management of the anally incontinent patient is a complex undertaking whether that incontinence is transanal or extrarectal through a rectovaginal fistula. Care must be taken in the assessment and diagnosis of these patients with testing judiciously used where it will provide clinically useful information. Because surgical results in anally incontinent patients are less predictable, it is important to give careful consideration to preoperative counseling regarding expectations and possible outcomes is crucial for the ultimate satisfaction of the patient. Surgery for anal incontinence and rectovaginal fistula repair requires thorough surgical planning, careful attention to detail, and a meticulous operative technique to provide the patient with optimal results.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

Preoperative evaluation of the anally incontinent patient should include a careful assessment of her symptoms and their impact on her quality of life.

Bibliography


Green JS, Sooko L. Factors associated with neal incontinence in spontaneous de- tention. Obstet Gynecol 1987;75;513.


Hilliard LF. Surgical management of rectovaginal fistula and complete perineal tears. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1980;135;139.


Rock JA, Woodriff JD. Surgical correction of a rectovaginal fistula.


Sandridge DA, Thorp JM. Vaginal endosonography in the assessment of the anal and urethral sphincters: role in anal and urethral surgery.


SECTION VIII ■ RELATED SURGERY
Fibrocystic lesions—the outline of which is displayed on x-ray. a fine plastic tube placed into the ductal opening of the nipple, of becoming invasive and spreading to other tissues. spread beyond the basement membrane but have the potential lecition of carcinomas of the lactiferous ducts that have not Ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS) film. low needle, usually 8- to 14-gauge. A histologic sample is specimen of tissue for microscopic analysis through a hol- Core biopsy—Procedure that involves obtaining a cylindrical specimen of tissue for microscopic analysis through a hol- needle, usually 8- to 14-gauge. A histologic sample is obtained rather than a cytologic sample as with fine-needle aspiration. Cooper’s ligaments—Fibrous septa connecting the skin to the underlying pectoralis fascia. Involvement in a carcinomatous process may lead to contraction of the ligament and result in dimpling of the overlying skin. Cystosarcoma phyllodes—Rare, usually slow-growing circum- scibed or infiltrating fibroepithelial breast tumor that resem- bles a fibroadenoma but may be partly cystic. The stroma is cellular and resembles a fibrosarcoma. The tumor is usually benign, but occasionally may be malignant and metastasize. Cytologic evaluation—Evaluation of a cellular sample for mi- crosopic evaluation to determine the presence or absence of a cancerous condition. Diagnostic mammogram—Imaging in a women with symp- toms, which may include a mammogram, sonogram, and/or examination by a radiologist. Digital mammography—An imaging technique that stores an x-ray image as a computer image rather than on the usual x-ray film. Ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS)—Histologically variable col- lection of carcinomas of the lactiferous ducts that have not spread beyond the basement membrane but have the potential of becoming invasive and spreading to other tissues. Ductogram (galactogram)—A test used in the evaluation of nipple discharge in which a radioopaque dye is instilled through a fine plastic tube placed into the ductal opening of the nipple, the outline of which is displayed on x-ray. Fibrocystic lesions—Refers to a broad spectrum of heteroge- neous benign histopathologic changes in the breast associated with stromal fibrosis and with variable degrees of intraductal epithelial hyperplasia and sclerosing adenosis. Fine-needle aspiration—Process of obtaining a specimen of cells and tissue for microscopic examination by applying suc- tion through a fine needle (usually 21- to 23-gauge) attached to a syringe. May be therapeutic in drainage of a fluid-filled cyst. Ultrasound guidance may be helpful but is not necessary. A cytologic sample is obtained rather than a histologic sample as through a core biopsy or excisional biopsy. Sometimes called fine-needle aspiration biopsy. Genetic counseling—Guidance provided by a medical professional typically to individuals with an increased risk of harboring genes that may increase their risk for developing cancer or producing an offspring having a genetic disorder. Includes providing information and advice concerning the prob- ability of disease, diagnostic testing, and available options/ treatments. Hormone receptor assay—Evaluation of a breast tumor to determine if it is likely to be affected by/responsive to hor- mones (generally estrogen, progesterone, and human epidermal growth factor 2 [HER2]). Immunohistochemistry (immunocytochemistry)—Use of antibo- dies to detect specific chemical antigens in cells or tissue samples evaluated under the microscope. Intraductal papilloma—Generally benign breast mass that is usually microscopic but may grow to 2 to 3 mm in diameter. The lesion may present with spontaneous unilateral bloody nipple discharge. Lobular carcinoma in situ—Early type of breast cancer devel- oping within the lobules that does not penetrate through the basement membrane. Lumpectomy—Surgical excision of a margin of normal breast tissue (preferably 1–2 cm) surrounding a breast carcinoma usu- ally less than 4 cm in diameter. Often a component of breast-conserving therapy, which may also include removal of axillary lymph nodes and radiation therapy. Macrocalcifications—Large, coarse calcium deposits that are often caused by noncancerous processes/conditions, such as aging of the breast arteries, old injuries, or inflammation. Com- mon in women older than the age of 50. Mammo- lography—Special imaging examination of the breasts using x-ray. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)—A noninvasive imaging technique that generates computerized images of internal body tissues and is based on nuclear magnetic resonance of atoms within the body induced by the application of radio waves. A large magnet polarizes hydrogen atoms in the tissues and then monitors the summation of the spinning energies within living cells.
Breast Diseases: Benign and Malignant

IBMROLOGY

The breasts, or mammary glands, begin embryologic differentiation in the fifth or sixth week of fetal development. Two central bands of thickened ectoderm (known as mammary ridges or “milk lines”) develop and extend from the area of the future axilla at the base of the forelimb to the future inguinal region of the hind limb (Fig. 41.1). With normal regression of the ridges (which occurs shortly after the sixth week of fetal development), only one gland persists on each side, at the level of the thorax. This process is similar in both sexes. Accessory mammary glands (polymastia) or accessory nipples (polythelia) may result along the original mammary ridge with failure of normal regression. This minor congenital anomaly may occur in both sexes with an estimated frequency of about 1%.

Ingrowth of the remaining ectoderm into the underlying mesenchyme initiates the development of the primary and secondary bud of the mammary gland. Canalization of these

Mastectomy—Surgical removal of all or part of the breast tissue; may be associated with removal of lymph nodes and muscles. Microcalcifications—Tiny specks of calcium in the breast that may appear alone or in clusters. To judge the likelihood of malignant change, a radiologist uses the shape and appearance of the clusters on mammography. Specks of deodorant may be mistaken for calcifications and thus should not be used before a mammogram.

Modified radical mastectomy—Removal of the breast tissue and only the fascia over the pectoral muscles. Montgomery glands/subareolar—Accessory glands located at the periphery of the areola. They are intermediate glands in between sebaceous glands and true mammary glands, and thus may secrete milk.

Paget disease—Rare breast carcinoma often mistaken for eczema, dermatitis, or mastitis of the nipple. May or may not be associated with an underlying mass lesion.

Partial or segmental mastectomy—A type of surgery that removes only the part of the breast in which the cancer is located and a margin of normal breast tissue surrounding the tumor.

Polymastia—More than two breasts.

Polythelia—More than two nipples.

Positron emission tomography—Highly specialized imaging technique using short-lived radioactive substances with formation of tomographic images by computer analysis of photons detected from annihilation of positrons emitted by radionuclides incorporated into biochemical substances. The scanner uses integrated x-ray and computing equipment.

Prophylactic mastectomy—Procedure performed before any evidence of cancer is found for the purpose of preventing cancer.

Quadrantectomy—Partial mastectomy in which the quarter of the breast that contains a tumor is removed.

Radical mastectomy—En bloc removal of the breast tissue; associated skin, nipple, areola, axillary lymph nodes; and the underlying pectoral muscle and minor muscles.

Screening mammography—Breast imaging based on guidelines to detect cancer early in symptomatic women.

Sentinel lymph node biopsy—Currently considered conventional treatment in certain categories of breast cancer patients for initial evaluation of the axilla. The surgeon uses either blue dye and/or a radioisotope tracer injected into the tumor site at the time of surgery. The first (sentinel) node that picks up the dye is removed and biopsied. If the node is cancer-free, further lymph node evaluation is terminated.

Simple mastectomy—Removal of the breast tissue and associated skin, nipple, and areola, but without removing the underlying muscle or fascial tissue. May be used as a prophylactic procedure. Also called total mastectomy.

Stereotactic needle biopsy—Use of mammogram images taken at two angles to map the exact location of a (usually nonpalpable) mass by computers. The patient lies face down on a table with the breast hanging through an aperture in the table.

Subcutaneous mastectomy—Excision of breast tissue by undermining the skin, thus preserving the cosmetic appearance and form of the nipple, areola, and skin. Appears to have been abandoned as a procedure for prophylactic mastectomy.

Thermography—Imaging technique in which cutaneous temperatures of the breast or infrared radiation from the breast are measured through electronic detectors to diagnose breast disorders.

TNM staging—A system of clinicopathologic evaluation of tumors based on the extent of tumor involvement in the primary site (T), lymph nodes (N), and metastasis (M).

TRAM flap—Muscle flap procedure using the transverse rectus abdominis muscle as a method of breast reconstruction.

Triple test—Not an actual test, but a correlation of the results of the breast physical examination, mammogram, and tissue sampling technique to determine the malignant potential of a lesion. If all agree that the lesion is benign, there is a high likelihood of correlation with a benign result.

Ultrasound (sonography)—Imaging technique that uses high-frequency sound-wave transmission through tissues to outline organs. No radiation is used.

The specialty of obstetrics and gynecology is devoted to the health care of women throughout their lifetime. Concerns about breast health are common to women from puberty to menopause, therefore obstetrician/gynecologists are becoming increasingly involved in not only the detection of breast masses but also the diagnosis, evaluation, and treatment of such lesions. Although the etiology of most breast symptoms is a benign disorder, the fear of cancer is often the motivating factor for women seeking attention. Breast cancer remains the most common cancer in women, with the American Cancer Society (ACS) estimating more than 211,000 cases in the United States in 2005. Although mortality from breast cancer is decreasing, cancer of the breast remains second only to lung cancer in cancer deaths in women, making it an especially dreadful adversary. Advances in treatment modalities, genetic predisposition, and chemoprevention have thrust breast health issues into the forefront of the media and medical technology. The zeal to achieve the ideal cure or prevention strategy persists unabated in the medical profession and remains an ongoing challenge. A thorough understanding of the diagnosis and management of breast disease, as well as an appreciation of contemporary treatment options, are essential for the practicing gynecologist.

The purpose of this chapter is to review breast embryology, anatomy, and pathology and to examine strategies for the diagnostic, management, and treatment of breast conditions. The role of the women's health clinician in breast cancer detection, therapy, assessment of risk factors, genetic testing, and chemoprevention is also discussed. The woman in whom breast cancer develops requires a multidisciplinary team. The gynecologist must be a knowledgeable participant in her treatment plan.
epithelial cords (under the influence of placental sex steroids) during the third trimester marks the development of the lactiferous ductal system. Proliferation of basal mesenchymal cells and smooth muscle development initiates transformation into the fully formed nipple. Failure of elevation of the nipple above the skin level occurs in 2% to 4% of the population, resulting in inverted nipples.

Anatomy

The breast, or mammary gland, is a highly modified sudoriferous gland situated between two layers of superficial fascia on the pectoralis major, serratus anterior, and external oblique muscles. It is bordered by the second rib superiorly, the sternum medially, the sixth intercostal space inferiorly, and the midaxillary line laterally. It is composed of several lobes, with the greatest volume of glandular tissue located in the upper outer quadrant. Fibrous septa, called suspensory or Cooper’s ligaments, interdigitate between the parenchymal tissues to connect the two fascial planes. The ligaments permit mobility of the breast on the anterior thoracic wall while also providing structural support (Fig. 41.2).

The breast lobes are arranged in a radial pattern and contain many lobules. Each lobule consists of 10 to 100 alveoli or tubuloacinar secretory units (Fig. 41.3). Breast cancer is thought to originate in these units, also called terminal duct lobular units. Each lobe terminates in a lactiferous duct, which opens onto the nipple. Beneath the areola, each lactiferous duct features a dilated portion called the lactiferous sinus. Inspissation of material in the lactiferous sinus may account for galactoceles.
Breast Diseases: Benign and Malignant

FIGURE 41.3. Internal structure of the breast. The breast is a large apocrine gland. The secretory parenchyma is composed of lobules containing acini, fat, and fibrous tissue. The ducts drain centrally toward large lacunae located directly beneath the nipple. These act as reservoirs until they receive the impetus for ejection.

The epidermis of the nipple and areola is highly pigmented. Additional increased pigmentation and size of the nipple–areolar complex is noted in pregnancy. The areola contains many sweat, sebaceous, and accessory glands. During pregnancy, accessory glands called Montgomery tubercles become prominent.

The breast tissue is well supplied by an extensive arterial and venous system. The anterior perforating branches of the internal thoracic (internal mammary) artery supplies the medial and central aspect of the breast. The upper outer quadrant is supplied by the lateral thoracic artery, a branch of the axillary artery. The two vessels combined provide the major blood supply to the nipple. Other vessels supplying the breast include the anterior and lateral branches of the intercostals, other branches of the axillary artery (including the pectoral branch of the thoracoacromial artery), and the subcapsular and thoracodorsal arteries.

Venous and lymphatic drainage of the breast follows the course of the superficial and deeper arteries. Principal venous drainage goes to the internal thoracic vein medially, to the axillary vein superolaterally, and by way of the intercostal veins to the vertebral and azygous veins posteriorly. This drainage pathway accounts for the frequent sites of metastases, as breast cancer enters the venous system and metastasizes to the lungs by way of the axillary or intercostal veins or to thoracic, abdominal, and pelvic organs by way of the vertebral vein. Similarly, the primary lymph node drainage is initially into the axillary region, but additional drainage can precede to the infracavicular and mediastinal (parasternal) areas, thus suggesting the need to extend the routine breast examination to the bony borders to ensure adequate coverage of these potential cancer-bearing areas. The lymphatic plexus has deep and superficial drainage pathways. Lymphatic drainage from the deep lesions is directed toward the axilla and the axillary nodes, although all breast quadrants contribute lymph to the medial parasternal lymph nodes. This lymphatic plexus is divided into levels based on their relation to the pectoralis minor muscle. Level I nodes are located lateral to the muscle, and level III nodes are located medially. Level II nodes are located deep or posterior to the pectoralis minor muscle (Fig. 41.4).

LIFE CYCLE CHANGES

The development and physiologic functioning of the breast is orchestrated by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland and the ovaries. This development is a lifelong process that begins in utero. Transient enlargement of the breast bud and associated milklike nipple secretion (“witches milk”) may occur in both newborn girls and boys as a result of placental transfer of maternal hormones (primarily estrogen). The fluid secretion may appear for a week postpartum, but subsequent involution of the tissue results by the third or fourth week postpartum. Breast development occurs during thelarche, which signifies the beginning of puberty. This stage typically begins between 9 and 10 years of age, but may begin as early as 8 years in some girls, with ethnic and environmental factors accounting for the variation. Before the transformation that occurs at puberty, the function and histology of the human breast is identical in boys and girls. However, at puberty in girls, the rudimentary male ductal system develops as a consequence of estrogen stimulation, and the lobular-alveolar system develops in response to progesterone secretion. The first
visible manifestation of this hormonal response is a symmetric palpable enlargement beneath the nipple. 

Menstruation, pregnancy, and menopause are additional sentinel events in the cycle of breast development. Before the onset of menstruation, breast transformation begins with ductal branching and proliferation of interductal stroma. With each menstrual cycle, ductal proliferation occurs under the influence of estrogen. Proliferation of the terminal duct structure and increased mitotic activity in the basal epithelial cells occur in the secretory phase under the influence of progesterone. Stromal proliferation and edema, in response to the hormonal milieu, accounts for the sense of fullness or tenderness experienced premenstrually. The decrease in hormones that occurs with menstruation signals disappearance of stromal edema, desquamation of epithelial cells, atrophy of intralobular connective tissue, and overall shrinkage in the size of the ducts.

Further maturation of the breast occurs with pregnancy. Significant development of glandular tissues and decrease in the surrounding stroma portends reversal of the stromal glandular relation seen before this stage. After pregnancy, these changes regress but do not return completely to their prepregnancy state. Menopause heralds a further reduction and shrinkage of the ducts, gland buds, and surrounding stroma.

Lactation

Hormonal and structural changes, which prime the breast for future milk production, occur during pregnancy. As previously occurred during puberty, increased estrogen and progesterone secretion in early pregnancy results in ductal development and maturation as well as enlargement of lobular size. During the latter half of pregnancy, glandular epithelium is transformed into secretory epithelium in response to insulin, thyroxine, growth hormone, and corticosteroids. Human placental lactogen and prolactin also play critical roles in breast development during pregnancy. Paradoxically, despite considerable increases in prolactin, its functioning is inhibited at the alveolar level by progesterone. Thus, lactation (the process of mature milk secretion) does not occur until the rapid decline of estrogen and progesterone that occurs with delivery, although colostrum leakage may be seen in the second half of pregnancy.

Stimulation of the afferent neural arc suppresses prolactin inhibitory factor (PIF), allowing release of prolactin-releasing factor (PRF) and further elevation of the prolactin concentration. Breast suckling stimulates the neural arc, as do auditory (infant crying) and visual stimuli. PIF is thought to be dopamine, and PRF is thought to be thyroid-releasing hormone or thyrotropin-releasing hormone. Additionally, stimulation of the neural arc triggers release of oxytocin by involving the paraventricular and supraoptic nuclei of the hypothalamus. Oxytocin release from the posterior pituitary induces contraction of the myoepithelial cells surrounding the nipple ducts, resulting in milk ejection or letdown. Continued suckling induces additional prolactin secretion and replenishment of the milk supply; however, this can be modified by psychological stress, pain, or fatigue, resulting in a decreased milk output. Discontinuation of suckling results in increased levels of PIF, which inhibit prolactin production. Ultimately, lactation ceases, with resultant decrease in size of the alveoli.
Breast Diseases: Benign and Malignant

Table 41.1 lists the basic anatomic structures and the most commonly associated pathologic abnormalities. A brief review of pathology of the breast follows.

### Congenital Anomalies

Congenital abnormalities affecting the breast anlage include amastia, hypertrophy, asymmetry, and congenital inversion of the nipples. Additionally, supernumerary nipples or breasts may be seen—the result of persistence of epidermal thickenings along the milk line.

### Inflammation

Acute mastitis or breast abscesses may develop during nursing or with other dermatologic conditions of the nipples. The breast is vulnerable to bacterial infection from tears or fissures in the nipples. The offending bacterium in puerperal mastitis is most commonly *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Streptococcus*. Treatment includes continued emptying of breast milk, either through nursing or pumping, and use of warm or cold compresses. The most effective broad-spectrum antibiotics are dicloxacillin or a first-generation cephalosporin for 10 days. For those with penicillin allergies, erythromycin may be substituted.

Nonpuerperal mastitis is often associated with a sticky, multicolored discharge and is noted in individuals who are immunocompromised (e.g., diabetic patients), people who have undergone radiation treatment, and those who have an autoimmune disorder. Purulent discharges generally respond to antibiotics, but an abscess requires incision and drainage for complete resolution.

Duct ectasia is characterized by dilation of the ducts, inspissation of breast secretions, and marked periductal and interstitial chronic granulomatous inflammatory reaction. It is often associated with a multicolored, sticky, spontaneous, bilateral nipple discharge coming from multiple ducts. It is most commonly seen in women in the fifth or sixth decade of life; however, the etiology is unknown. Periductal inflammation may result in nipple inversion, areolar thickening, and a breast mass that can mimic a cancer or nonpuerperal abscess. This condition is discussed further under the section on nipple discharge.

Galactocele occurs as a result of overdistention of lactiferous ducts with resultant inspissation of milk. It usually presents as a firm nontender mass in the outer quadrants of the breast, away from the areolar margin.

### Fibrocystic Changes

Fibrocystic change (FCC) of the breast is the most frequently encountered benign breast disorder. It occurs most often in reproductive women between the ages of 30 and 50 years. It also occurs in approximately 10% of women younger than 21 years of age; therefore, breast symptoms in adolescence must not be ignored. Fibrocystic condition does not increase the risk of developing breast cancer, but it does often make the physical examination of the patient more difficult (Fig. 41.5).

In 85% to 90% of cases of significant FCC, breast discomfort is the leading symptom. Women often present with a history of bilateral, menstrually related, painful, tender, and nodular breasts, most often localized to the upper outer quadrants. Typically, the pain is most severe just before menses as a result of the normal physiologic stromal edema and ductal dilation.

The breast is normally an inhomogeneous appendage with uneven distribution of adipose and fibrous tissue. It is estimated that at least 50% of women have palpably irregular breasts. This “normal” anatomic asymmetry leads to physiologic inhomogeneity, irregularity, or lumpiness in some women. Nodularity, particularly as it waxes and wanes during the menstrual

---

**Table 41.1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anatomic structures</th>
<th>Lesions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nipple and areola</td>
<td>Nipple adenoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactiferous ducts</td>
<td>Duct ectasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal ductal lobular unit</td>
<td>Intralobular papilloma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Subareolar abscess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cysts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sclerosing adenosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Small ductal papilloma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Atypical hyperplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lobular stroma</td>
<td>Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibroadenoma</td>
<td>Fibroadenoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proliferates tumor</td>
<td>Fibroadenoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat necrosis</td>
<td>Fibroadenoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipoma</td>
<td>Fibroadenoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrous tumor</td>
<td>Fibroadenoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcoma</td>
<td>Fibroadenoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibromatosis</td>
<td>Fibroadenoma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


---

**FIGURE 41.5.** Histologic section of fibrocystic changes with cyst formation and at right lower corner apocrine metaplasia (H&E ×120). (Courtesy of Taalat Tadros, MD, Emory University, School of Medicine, Atlanta, Ga.)
cycle, is a physiologic process. This nodularity and irregularity is often mistaken for a dominant breast mass. Evaluation of FCC, thus, creates a difficult dilemma for physicians. Providers must carefully decide whether their findings represent a dominant mass or an exaggeration of normal breast tissue associated with the “nodularity” of FCC.

Dominant masses may represent a variety of benign and malignant processes, including fibroadenomas, macromas, prominent areas of FCC, fat necrosis, abscesses, or carcinoma. Dominant masses are distinguished by their persistence throughout the menstrual cycle and palpable difference on examination from the surrounding breast parenchyma. Often, evaluation of the contralateral breast assists in determination of whether an anatomic variation is a mass or normal breast tissue. However, any concern should be referred for evaluation, or a repeat examination may be performed after a menstrual cycle to detect persistence. A delay of 1 to 2 months in a reproductive age woman is acceptable; however, a shorter-term follow-up is preferable in a menopausal woman because of the higher frequency of breast cancer in this age group. Breast masses are often easier to appreciate in postmenopausal women because of atrophy of the surrounding nodular glandular elements. A positive mammogram is helpful. Conversely, a negative mammogram does not obviate the need to evaluate a mass by fine-needle aspiration (FNA) or a histologic method of biopsy as there is a 10% to 15% false-negative rate for mammography.

Fibrocystic change is a term proposed by the ACS. The terminology encompasses several histopathologic categories, including macrocyst formation, hyperplasia of ductal epithelium, apocrine metaplasia, papillomatosis, duct ectasia, sclerosing adenosis, and stromal fibrosis, thus leading to significant confusion. Reporting criteria for pathologists may include all or adenosis, and stromal fibrosis, thus leading to significant confusion. Reporting criteria for pathologists may include all or any combination of these terms.

Benign Tumors
Most women discover their own breast masses by chance or by periodic self-breast examination. Two thirds of the masses found during a woman’s reproductive years are benign and include cystic changes, fibroadenomas, and papillomas. However, 50% of the palpable masses in perimenopausal women and the majority of lesions in postmenopausal patients are malignant. Once a lesion has been characterized as a mass or a dominant mass must be differentiated from a cancerous process. A delay of 1 to 2 months in a reproductive age woman is acceptable; however, a shorter-term follow-up is preferable in a menopausal woman because of the higher frequency of breast cancer in this age group. Breast masses are often easier to appreciate in postmenopausal women because of atrophy of the surrounding nodular glandular elements. A positive mammogram is helpful. Conversely, a negative mammogram does not obviate the need to evaluate a mass by fine-needle aspiration (FNA) or a histologic method of biopsy as there is a 10% to 15% false-negative rate for mammography.

Fibrocystic change is a term proposed by the ACS. The terminology encompasses several histopathologic categories, including macrocyst formation, hyperplasia of ductal epithelium, apocrine metaplasia, papillomatosis, duct ectasia, sclerosing adenosis, and stromal fibrosis, thus leading to significant confusion. Reporting criteria for pathologists may include all or any combination of these terms.

Conversely, mild hyperplasia (which may also be included in the FCC categorization) does not increase a patient’s risk of breast cancer development. Practitioners should attempt to describe exactly what they are feeling rather than use the undefined FCC term in the clinical arena. This term is not clinically meaningful in that it designates a heterogeneous group of processes, some pathologic and some physiologic. Treatment options for FCC-induced mastalgia are discussed later. Table 41.2 summarizes the various FCCs and their relative risks of breast cancer.

Table 41.2: Breast Lesions and Relative Risk of Developing Invasive Breast Carcinoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathologic lesions</th>
<th>Relative risk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nonproliferative breast changes</td>
<td>No increased risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrocystic changes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atypical lobular hyperplasia</td>
<td>20–40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lobular carcinoma in situ</td>
<td>4.0–5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ductal carcinoma in situ (low grade)</td>
<td>8–10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Multiple, and may be associated with a green-brown nipple discharge (although a thorough evaluation of the nipple discharge should occur despite the presumption of its origin). Of course, any dominant mass must be differentiated from a cancerous process. Fibroadenomas are the most common benign tumors of the female breast and represent the most common breast tumor in women younger than 25 years of age. These tumors are often clinically painless, well circumscribed, and freely movable with a rounded configuration. They are usually rubbery or firm, but when calcified, they may present as a stony hard mass. Multiple fibroadenomas may develop simultaneously or successively in one or both breasts in 10% to 15% of cases. Growth of the fibrous stromal and glandular tissue is thought to be the result of an unopposed estrogenic influence on susceptible tissue, aberrations of normal breast development, or the product of hyperplastic processes, rather than a true neoplasm. These tumors often contain estrogen receptors; hence, they may fluctuate in size with the menstrual cycle or increase in size during pregnancy. They routinely involute with menopause. They are uncommonly associated with carcinoma, but, rarely, in situ lobular or ductal carcinomas arise in or involve fibroadenomas (Fig. 41.6). Fibroadenomas infrequently grow to be very large (10–15 cm in diameter). These are called giant fibroadenomas, although most are excised at 2 to 4 cm. When morphologic changes such as leaflike clefts and “slits” are present, these fibroadenomas are called phyllodes tumors (formerly known as...
Breast Diseases: Benign and Malignant

FIGURE 41.6. Histologic section of fibroadenoma with cellular stroma (in a pericanalicular pattern), ducts maintain patency (H&E ×240) (Courtesy of Taalat Tadros, MD, Emory University, School of Medicine, Atlanta, GA.)

FIGURE 41.7. Benign tumors. A: A circumscribed breast tumor from a young patient illustrates fibroadenoma. A mixture of benign epithelial and stromal components is seen. B: Phyllodes tumor of the breast showing a pattern superficially similar to that of (A). It is distinguished by its leaflike pattern of stromal growth in cystic spaces. The stroma is also markedly cellular. This tumor, although structurally benign, is capable of recurrence. (Courtesy of Bhagirath Majmudar, MD, Emory University School of Medicine, Atlanta, GA.)

as cystosarcoma phyllodes). These can be benign or malignant lesions. Histologic examination reveals that these lesions have a more cellular stroma, rarely display a prominent pericanalicular growth pattern, and tend to occur in an older age group (Fig. 41.7).

Management of fibroadenomas is varied. The key to management in all clinical situations is individualization. In women younger than 25 years who have fibroadenomas diagnosed by concurred physical examination, sonography, and FNA (“modified” triple test), the risk of missing breast cancer is 1 in 429 to 1 in 700. This risk remains very low in women younger than 35 years who also have the battery of tests. Fibroadenomas do not regress spontaneously and tend to enlarge with time. Because of the low probability of cancer, conservation is particularly acceptable in women younger than age 25 years if the fibroadenoma is small, not increasing in size, or is not psychologically disturbing. Mammography is an integral part of the evaluation in women older than 30 years (or younger depending on risk factors and clinical suspicion). Lesions greater than 2 to 3 cm should probably be evaluated for excision.

Some authors promote excision of all fibroadenomas, regardless of histology. Clearly, if the FNA cytology reveals atypia or hyperplasia, excisional biopsy should be performed. Small, asymptomatic, mammographically detected fibroadenomas proven by FNA or core biopsy may be watched depending on clinical duration and patient risk factors. Although fibroadenomas may be suspected on the basis of their clinical presentation, a final diagnosis cannot be made without histologic or cytologic confirmation.

Intraductal papilloma and breast cancer are discussed later in this chapter.

COMMON BREAST SYMPTOMS

Mastalgia

Pain is a common and enigmatic condition experienced by 70% of women younger than 55 years and accounting for nearly 50% of breast related visits to the physician’s office. Research into the treatment of breast pain is difficult to interpret as a result of the heterogeneous nature of the pain, the fact that symptoms generally resolve spontaneously within a short time, and because typically, one fifth of patients respond to placebo. Because of the subjective nature of the problem and difficulty in quantification, it was often ignored as a psychoneurotic disorder, although nearly 10% of breast cancer patients have pain as the initial presenting symptom (yet breast pain alone is rarely a presenting symptom of cancer). The histopathologic correlation and optimal treatment of mastalgia are still inadequately defined.

Breast pain may be divided into cyclic, noncyclic, and extramammary categories. A careful history should include the use of pain charts (particularly in patients with persistent or recalcitrant symptoms), documenting exactly when pain occurs during the month and the exact nature of the discomfort. The Cardiff Breast Pain Chart, visual analog scales, and the McGill Pain Questionnaire are frequently used to quantify pain. In addition, a thorough physical examination and radiologic procedures (when appropriate) can assist in distinguishing these three groups. Delineation is important as presenting symptoms, spontaneous remission rates, and likelihood of response to treatment differs for these categories.
Cyclic breast pain usually starts during the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle and may crescendo until the onset of menses, when it disappears. Conversely, some pain may be present at low levels during the entire cycle with premenstrual intensification of symptoms. Cyclic mastalgia typically involves bilateral upper quadrants of the breast diffusely, but may be more severe in one breast than the other and is often attributed to FCG. Therefore, although there is some evidence that this could be related to a decreased progesterone:estrogen ratio during the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle, increased levels of saturated fats, reduced proportions of essential fatty acids, or an unusually high reactive state in the body’s regulation of normal cyclic prolactin release. Because so many women experience asymmetric discomfort, it is unlikely that the sole basis of the monthly pain is hormonal or dietary.

Although mastalgia may be the presenting symptom, most patients are concerned with the possibility of cancer. Therefore, for the majority of patients without a dominant mass, reassurance is often sufficient without the need for medical intervention. Appropriate assessment should be performed, which may include examination, sonography, mammography (depending on age and risk factors), pregnancy testing, and/or frequent follow-up.

Those with severe and protracted symptoms that blanket everyday life and interfere with normal enjoyment and disrupting daily routine, merit treatment. One study showed that mastalgia hampers sexual activity in 48% of women, physical recreation in 37%, social endeavors in 12%, sleep in 10%, and work/school activity in 6%. Thus, breast pain affects not only the individual sufferer but the patient's family and society at large.

Numerous nonpharmacologic methods have been proposed, which include massage, exercise, relaxation training, acupuncture, increasing soy or iodine intake, decreasing methylxanthine intake (coffee, tea, chocolate, cola beverages), promoting weight loss (low-fat diet), and taking diuretics (on the hypothesis that fluid retention is the basis of the problem), but scientific support for these methods is lacking or inconsistent. However, given the well-documented health benefits of caffeine avoidance and weight loss, as well as its low cost, few side effects, health care practitioners may want to suggest these measures, especially in those with symptomatic disease and moderate to high intake of caffeine. Anecdotal evidence exists for the use of gingster tea, vitamin A, vitamin B complex, and a supportive brassiere, but the extent of which these methods are effective is unclear, and placebo-controlled trials have not confirmed these results. Depending on severity, acetaminophen or nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) may be helpful. Additionally, topical NSAIDs have shown some effectiveness.

Several hormonal methods for treatment of cyclic breast pain have been advocated. No regimen is 100% effective, and some have a significant placebo response rate. Currently, danazol, an antigonadotropin, is considered the most efficacious (response rates near 75%–92%) and is the only medication approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for this purpose. However, nearly 30% of patients experience the adrenergic side effects of hirsutism, deepening voice, and amenorrhea, thereby limiting its widespread acceptance. Thus, it is not routinely recommended as a first-line therapy and should be reserved for patients whose pain is strongly affecting their life. This prospective trial, with eventual tapering to lower dose or alternate-day administration. Many patients may not experience relief until 400 mg/day is given. Recommendations on the length of treatment vary from 2 to 6 months. Upon discontinuation, the dose should be tapered to prevent rapid withdrawal. As with all hormonal medication, discontinuation may cause resumption of symptoms.

Because doses less than 400 mg/day do not ensure inhibition of ovulation, an effective method of mechanical/barrier contraception (as it may interfere with oral contraception) should be given to avert possible teratogenic effects of the drug. If the drug phase-only used (200 mg/day) is an alternative treatment regimen that appears to be highly effective for the relief of premenstrual mastalgia. This regimen is associated with few side effects, but further study is necessary to ascertain whether such a regimen avoids potential adverse effects on lipid status. Bromocriptine (Parlodol, Sandoz) is an ergotalkaloid that acts as a dopaminergic agonist on the hypothalamic-pituitary axis and has been effective for mastalgia in 40% to 88% of patients. The dosage of bromocriptine is similar to that discussed earlier in the section on nipple discharge. However, one third of patients experience side effects, and 30% relapse once treatment is discontinued. Side effects may be minimized with use of an incremental dosing regimen, with stepwise increases during a period of 2 weeks. Medication is usually discontinued after 2 months to review symptoms.

Evening primrose oil (EPO) (gamma-linolenic acid) is advocated by many as initial therapy for breast pain. At 3 to 4 g/day, EPO has been noted to have an overall useful response rate of 44% to 97% in some groups of women. Side effects were found in 2% to 12%, but all were insignificant. Yet a randomized, double-blind trial comparing EPO and fish oil showed no difference in response rate; thus, data are conflicting. Gamma-linolenic acid is a precursor of the unsaturated fatty acids and is essential for the production of beneficial prostaglandins in the body. Several hypotheses have been espoused to explain the effects, including modification of prostaglandins. These have include fluidity technical, changes in associated receptors, changes in the inositol cycle, or diminishing response of the breasts to cyclic hormone activity. Yet, the delayed effectiveness (4 months) and the potential gastrointestinal and abortifacient side effects suggest caution in its use, especially in women desiring pregnancy. Most physicians must be cognizant that herbal agents and nutritional supplements are not standardized or monitored for adulteration, and potential interaction with other medications must be considered. Oral contraceptive pills (OCPs) may be a good option for patients seeking birth control in addition to relief of breast symptoms. Earlier studies (which used pills containing significantly higher progestrone contents) indicate that mastalgia was suppressed in 70% to 90% of patients who used the medication for 3 to 6 months. Maximum effects were noted after 2 years of use, but significant decreases in symptoms were noted after 1 year of use. Symptoms recur in up to 40% of patients when the high-dose OCP is discontinued. There is limited research on the effectiveness of the new low-dose formulations of OCPs in the treatment of mastalgia. However, in a recent study by Leonardi, 60% of patients with chronic mastalgia showed a reduction or improvement in symptoms while taking a low-dose formulation for 3 months. This study did not have a placebo group for comparison. The effectiveness appears to be due to the reduced ovarian estradiol production and the alteration of breast estrogen receptors caused by the progestin component of the pill. Although the older formulations appear to have some benefit, the new low-dose estrogen, patches, and the phased estrogen and progesterone dosage medications should be evaluated in a prospective trial to determine effectiveness in the treatment of severe mastalgia. Topical, oral, and parenteral progestogens have also been studied for treatment of breast pain with variable results.
Tamoxifen (20 mg/day) has also been successful in the treatment of mastalgia. It has been heralded as the most effective and least toxic agent for the treatment of severe chronic breast pain. In one study comparing tamoxifen, danazol, and placebo, tamoxifen had the greatest pain relief score, with nearly 75% of those receiving tamoxifen having significant pain relief compared with 65% with danazol and 38% with placebo. Twelve months after treatment, 37% of the danazol-treated patients and none of the placebo-treated patients. Lower dosages (10 mg/day) appear to have significantly fewer side effects and to be as effective in pain control as the higher dosages (20 mg/day). The metabolic effects on bone, mineral metabolism, and lipid profile were insignificant after 3 months of treatment. The effectiveness appears to be due to a reduction in nuclear volume and mitotic activity of the epithelium even when administered only in the luteal phase. However, lack of evidence of the long-term consequences of treatment (particularly deep venous thrombosis and endometrial adenocarcinoma) portends caution in implementation of its use in benign breast disease. Toremifene citrate, a new member of the family of selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs), has been shown to have a better safety profile than tamoxifen, as well as efficacy in treatment of mastalgia in a double-blind, randomized, placebo controlled study. Adverse events were similar to that in the placebo group, except vaginal discharge was increased in this short-term study.

Vitamin E at dosages of 600 to 1,200 international units (IU)/day has been associated with a 41% response rate. However, lower dosages have usually been recommended. The mechanism of action is unknown but is proposed to include its potential to alter steroidal hormone production (dehydroepiandrosterone or progesterone), to correct abnormal serum lipid distribution, and to function as an antioxidant (which appears to neutralize free radicals, thereby preventing cell damage and subsequent malignant transformation). Data are inconsistent regarding vitamin E and cardiovascular risk. Recent epidemiologic data indicate an inverse association between cardiovascular risk and vitamin E intake, but other studies indicate benefit for vitamin E in prevention of heart disease, cancer, and dementia. Two randomized controlled trials in women older than 45 years (using 600 IU/every other day) and in elderly patients with cardiovascular disease or diabetes (using 400 IU/day) have shown no benefit in prevention of major cardiovascular events or cancer. Germane to this discussion was the discovery that vitamin E slightly increased the risk of heart failure (5.8% compared with 4.2% hospitalizations for heart failure) at a dosage of 400 IU/day in elderly patients with chronic disease. Thus, researchers are now recommending that vitamin E doses be limited to less than 400 IU/day. Although myocardial infarction prevention is likely not a role for vitamin E, there is strong evidence from other studies that moderately high doses may have other important health roles, including delaying the onset of macular degeneration (a major cause of early blindness) and boosting the immune system in the elderly. Moreover, it is currently being studied by the National Institutes of Health (NIH) in 35,000 men in the Selenium and Vitamin E Cancer Prevention Trial (SELECT) for the prevention of prostate cancer at dosages of 400 IU.

Danazol is an androgen antagonist that moderately high doses may have other important health roles, including its potential to alter steroidal hormone production (dehydroepiandrosterone or progesterone), to correct abnormal serum lipid distribution, and to function as an antioxidant (which appears to neutralize free radicals, thereby preventing cell damage and subsequent malignant transformation). Data are inconsistent regarding vitamin E and cardiovascular risk. Recent epidemiologic data indicate an inverse association between cardiovascular risk and vitamin E intake, but other studies indicate benefit for vitamin E in prevention of heart disease, cancer, and dementia. Two randomized controlled trials in women older than 45 years (using 600 IU/every other day) and in elderly patients with cardiovascular disease or diabetes (using 400 IU/day) have shown no benefit in prevention of major cardiovascular events or cancer. Germane to this discussion was the discovery that vitamin E slightly increased the risk of heart failure (5.8% compared with 4.2% hospitalizations for heart failure) at a dosage of 400 IU/day in elderly patients with chronic disease. Thus, researchers are now recommending that vitamin E doses be limited to less than 400 IU/day. Although myocardial infarction prevention is likely not a role for vitamin E, there is strong evidence from other studies that moderately high doses may have other important health roles, including delaying the onset of macular degeneration (a major cause of early blindness) and boosting the immune system in the elderly. Moreover, it is currently being studied by the National Institutes of Health (NIH) in 35,000 men in the Selenium and Vitamin E Cancer Prevention Trial (SELECT) for the prevention of prostate cancer at dosages of 400 IU.

Danazol is an androgen antagonist that moderately high doses may have other important health roles, including its potential to alter steroidal hormone production (dehydroepiandrosterone or progesterone), to correct abnormal serum lipid distribution, and to function as an antioxidant (which appears to neutralize free radicals, thereby preventing cell damage and subsequent malignant transformation). Data are inconsistent regarding vitamin E and cardiovascular risk. Recent epidemiologic data indicate an inverse association between cardiovascular risk and vitamin E intake, but other studies indicate benefit for vitamin E in prevention of heart disease, cancer, and dementia. Two randomized controlled trials in women older than 45 years (using 600 IU/every other day) and in elderly patients with cardiovascular disease or diabetes (using 400 IU/day) have shown no benefit in prevention of major cardiovascular events or cancer. Germane to this discussion was the discovery that vitamin E slightly increased the risk of heart failure (5.8% compared with 4.2% hospitalizations for heart failure) at a dosage of 400 IU/day in elderly patients with chronic disease. Thus, researchers are now recommending that vitamin E doses be limited to less than 400 IU/day. Although myocardial infarction prevention is likely not a role for vitamin E, there is strong evidence from other studies that moderately high doses may have other important health roles, including delaying the onset of macular degeneration (a major cause of early blindness) and boosting the immune system in the elderly. Moreover, it is currently being studied by the National Institutes of Health (NIH) in 35,000 men in the Selenium and Vitamin E Cancer Prevention Trial (SELECT) for the prevention of prostate cancer at dosages of 400 IU.

Danazol is an androgen antagonist that moderately high doses may have other important health roles, including its potential to alter steroidal hormone production (dehydroepiandrosterone or progesterone), to correct abnormal serum lipid distribution, and to function as an antioxidant (which appears to neutralize free radicals, thereby preventing cell damage and subsequent malignant transformation). Data are inconsistent regarding vitamin E and cardiovascular risk. Recent epidemiologic data indicate an inverse association between cardiovascular risk and vitamin E intake, but other studies indicate benefit for vitamin E in prevention of heart disease, cancer, and dementia. Two randomized controlled trials in women older than 45 years (using 600 IU/every other day) and in elderly patients with cardiovascular disease or diabetes (using 400 IU/day) have shown no benefit in prevention of major cardiovascular events or cancer. Germane to this discussion was the discovery that vitamin E slightly increased the risk of heart failure (5.8% compared with 4.2% hospitalizations for heart failure) at a dosage of 400 IU/day in elderly patients with chronic disease. Thus, researchers are now recommending that vitamin E doses be limited to less than 400 IU/day. Although myocardial infarction prevention is likely not a role for vitamin E, there is strong evidence from other studies that moderately high doses may have other important health roles, including delaying the onset of macular degeneration (a major cause of early blindness) and boosting the immune system in the elderly. Moreover, it is currently being studied by the National Institutes of Health (NIH) in 35,000 men in the Selenium and Vitamin E Cancer Prevention Trial (SELECT) for the prevention of prostate cancer at dosages of 400 IU.

Danazol is an androgen antagonist that moderately high doses may have other important health roles, including its potential to alter steroidal hormone production (dehydroepiandrosterone or progesterone), to correct abnormal serum lipid distribution, and to function as an antioxidant (which appears to neutralize free radicals, thereby preventing cell damage and subsequent malignant transformation). Data are inconsistent regarding vitamin E and cardiovascular risk. Recent epidemiologic data indicate an inverse association between cardiovascular risk and vitamin E intake, but other studies indicate benefit for vitamin E in prevention of heart disease, cancer, and dementia. Two randomized controlled trials in women older than 45 years (using 600 IU/every other day) and in elderly patients with cardiovascular disease or diabetes (using 400 IU/day) have shown no benefit in prevention of major cardiovascular events or cancer. Germane to this discussion was the discovery that vitamin E slightly increased the risk of heart failure (5.8% compared with 4.2% hospitalizations for heart failure) at a dosage of 400 IU/day in elderly patients with chronic disease. Thus, researchers are now recommending that vitamin E doses be limited to less than 400 IU/day. Although myocardial infarction prevention is likely not a role for vitamin E, there is strong evidence from other studies that moderately high doses may have other important health roles, including delaying the onset of macular degeneration (a major cause of early blindness) and boosting the immune system in the elderly. Moreover, it is currently being studied by the National Institutes of Health (NIH) in 35,000 men in the Selenium and Vitamin E Cancer Prevention Trial (SELECT) for the prevention of prostate cancer at dosages of 400 IU.
Nipple Discharge

Any breast symptom has the potential for creating an enormous amount of anxiety for patients. Nipple discharge is the third most common reason for women to consult their physicians regarding a breast problem and is responsible for 7% of breast operations. Reports of nipple discharge not only account for 3% to 6% of office visits for women with breast symptoms, but also occur in 10% to 50% of women with benign breast disease and in 10% to 13% of women with breast cancer. Almost one half of women in their reproductive years can manually express one or more drops of nonpathologic liquid from the breast; conversely, spontaneous discharge from the nipples is uncommon. The practice of squeezing the nipple either during breast self-examination (BSE), clinical breast examination (CBE), or sexual and physical activity can elicit fluid from women of all ages and is thus divisive. This outcome is the basis for suggesting that one should not attempt to elicit nipple discharge during an examination of an asymptomatic patient because pathologic discharge is likely to occur spontaneously without nipple manipulation. However, if nipple discharge is a symptom, the breast examination must include “milking” of the breast toward the nipple to delineate the exact ductal source of the problem.

Galactorrhea

Secretions from the breast may be divided into milky (galactorrhea) and nonmilky discharge with physiologic and pathologic etiologies in each category. Other investigators classify secretion from the nipples according to color, cellularity, and biology. Galactorrhea, which is the nonprofuse secretory secretion of breast milk, must be separated from other types of nipple discharge. This may be done by viewing a sample, under low-power magnification, for multiple fat droplets of various sizes. If the secretion does not contain fat droplets, it is not (by definition) galactorrhea and must be evaluated by other criteria. Galactorrhea usually results in bilateral nipple discharge from multiple ducts and is unassociated with a mass. On the contrary, pathologic sources of nipple discharge may be characterized by unilateral discharge from a single duct with an associated mass in some cases. Also, nipple discharge in women older than 30 years is of concern. Pathologic sources of galactorrhea include medications, hypothalamic lesions or dysfunction, thyroid disorders, Forbes-Albright syndrome, chest lesion (chest trauma, burns, herpes zoster, lung cancer), renal disease, pituitary prolactin-secreting tumors, and nonpituitary prolactin-producing tumors (lung, kidney, craniopharyngioma).

Although many hormones are involved in normal lactation and galactorrhea, prolactin is the most significant. Prolactin was isolated in 1971 and is secreted by the anterior pituitary, the chorion of pregnancy, and by decidual and endometrial tissue. Prolactin (like luteinizing hormone) is secreted in a pulsatile fashion throughout the day with a circadian rhythm. Normal values generally range between 0 and 20 ng/mL.

The most common cause of physiologic nipple discharge is pregnancy, when prolactin values increase to 100 to 200 ng/mL as early as the 10th week of gestation. Lactation does not occur until after delivery because the peripheral action of prolactin is inhibited by estrogen and progesterone. During the process of suckling, prolactin increases to 300 to 600 ng/mL. After 6 months postpartum, there is no longer an increase from baseline associated with suckling. Therefore, amenorrhea, galactorrhea, or hyperprolactinemia more than 6 months after delivery is not physiologic. Any duration of galactorrhea demands evaluation in a nulliparous woman and, if at least 12 months have elapsed since the last pregnancy or weaning, in a parous woman.

The differential diagnosis of galactorrhea (excluding physiologic lactation) is a complex clinical challenge resulting from multiple factors involved in the control of prolactin release. A thorough and detailed history and physical examination are necessary to discern the cause. Prolactin itself, PIP, and PRPs are the major substances involved in prolactin homeostasis. Thus, the pathologic cause of nipple discharge can be easily comprehended with an awareness of the release—inhibition pathway.

To be significant, a discharge should be spontaneous, persistent, and nonlactational. The most common source of galactorrhea is consumed medication; thus, a thorough review of the patient’s medication list is an essential element of the initial evaluation. Tranquilizers and antidepressant medications block the dopamine receptor, whereas amphetamines, such as reserpine and methylphenidate (Ritalin), inhibit the synthesis of dopamine. Opiates (including heroin), amphetamines, marijuana, phenoxybenzamine, and anesthesia suppress dopamine levels.
Breast Diseases: Benign and Malignant

Nonmilky Nipple Discharge

Nonmilky nipple discharge is often divided into bloody and nonbloody categories (with physical and pathologic causes in each). Tests such as hemoccult or urine dipstick may be helpful to discover occult blood in the secreted fluid, but results should be scrutinized in the face of severe inflammation, which may lead to false-positive results. Additionally, although breast cancer may be associated with a watery or serous discharge; hence, nipple discharge in postpartum women who use the medication. However, its use in women who are not recently pregnant or lactating continues to be recommended. Treatment begins with 1.25 mg orally twice daily and is increased to 2.5 mg orally twice daily once the patient is able to tolerate the side effects. Primary care providers should be made aware of any government, manufacturer, or health advocate updates on the use of this drug.

Nonmilky Nipple Discharge

Nonmilky nipple discharge is often divided into bloody and nonbloody categories (with physical and pathologic causes in each). Tests such as hemoccult or urine dipstick may be helpful to discover occult blood in the secreted fluid, but results should be scrutinized in the face of severe inflammation, which may lead to false-positive results. Additionally, although breast cancer may be associated with a watery or serous discharge; hence, nipple discharge in postpartum women who use the medication. However, its use in women who are not recently pregnant or lactating continues to be recommended. Treatment begins with 1.25 mg orally twice daily and is increased to 2.5 mg orally twice daily once the patient is able to tolerate the side effects. Primary care providers should be made aware of any government, manufacturer, or health advocate updates on the use of this drug.

Nonmilky Nipple Discharge

Nonmilky nipple discharge is often divided into bloody and nonbloody categories (with physical and pathologic causes in each). Tests such as hemoccult or urine dipstick may be helpful to discover occult blood in the secreted fluid, but results should be scrutinized in the face of severe inflammation, which may lead to false-positive results. Additionally, although breast cancer may be associated with a watery or serous discharge; hence, nipple discharge in postpartum women who use the medication. However, its use in women who are not recently pregnant or lactating continues to be recommended. Treatment begins with 1.25 mg orally twice daily and is increased to 2.5 mg orally twice daily once the patient is able to tolerate the side effects. Primary care providers should be made aware of any government, manufacturer, or health advocate updates on the use of this drug.

Nonmilky Nipple Discharge

Nonmilky nipple discharge is often divided into bloody and nonbloody categories (with physical and pathologic causes in each). Tests such as hemoccult or urine dipstick may be helpful to discover occult blood in the secreted fluid, but results should be scrutinized in the face of severe inflammation, which may lead to false-positive results. Additionally, although breast cancer may be associated with a watery or serous discharge; hence, nipple discharge in postpartum women who use the medication. However, its use in women who are not recently pregnant or lactating continues to be recommended. Treatment begins with 1.25 mg orally twice daily and is increased to 2.5 mg orally twice daily once the patient is able to tolerate the side effects. Primary care providers should be made aware of any government, manufacturer, or health advocate updates on the use of this drug.

Nonmilky Nipple Discharge

Nonmilky nipple discharge is often divided into bloody and nonbloody categories (with physical and pathologic causes in each). Tests such as hemoccult or urine dipstick may be helpful to discover occult blood in the secreted fluid, but results should be scrutinized in the face of severe inflammation, which may lead to false-positive results. Additionally, although breast cancer may be associated with a watery or serous discharge; hence, nipple discharge in postpartum women who use the medication. However, its use in women who are not recently pregnant or lactating continues to be recommended. Treatment begins with 1.25 mg orally twice daily and is increased to 2.5 mg orally twice daily once the patient is able to tolerate the side effects. Primary care providers should be made aware of any government, manufacturer, or health advocate updates on the use of this drug.
of nipple discharge rests on its frequency of association with cancer or precancerous mastopathy. Bloody nipple discharge may be seen during the third trimester of pregnancy and while breast feeding is becoming established. It typically subsides within 2 months. Evaluation with cytology is often unproductive. However, discharge lasting more than 2 months, associated with a mass, deriving from a specific ductal source, or having a distinct color or consistency, may be elicited immediately after pregnancy in the absence of significant breast pathology. The phenomenon is likely due to the development of delicate, easily traumatized capillary networks within the ducts. If a breast mass is not found by physical examination or sonography, regular follow-up should be continued because the condition usually disappears shortly after delivery. If a mass is present, FNA or CNB should be performed.

Physical examination, mammography, or galactography and sonography may be used to delineate the exact nature, location, and extent of the lesion preoperatively. Galactography involves cannulation of the discharge-producing duct with a small catheter or needle and injection of a water-soluble contrast agent in the duct. Ductal-oriented sonography uses modern high-resolution techniques to visualize the mammary ducts in detail. These procedures may be complementary in that cases of ducal abnormalities have been missed by sonography yet visualized by galactography. However, researchers caution that modern galactography has a high false-negative rate, so it does not reliably exclude intraductal pathology and is, therefore, not a substitute for surgery in patients with pathologic discharge. Ultrasound may be used in pregnancy to delineate a mass. However, if there is a high suspicion for cancer, a shielded mammogram should be ordered.

Fiberoptic ductoscopy is an emerging technique allowing direct visualization of the ductal system of the breast through nipple orifice exploration. When this procedure was applied to women with nipple discharge, an 83% positive predictive value was noted. The positive predictive value was increased to 86% with the addition of ductal washings to obtain exfoliated cells for evaluation at the time of the ductoscopy. MRI has also been shown to be of diagnostic value, but it is not as informative as regular galactography. Both modalities may offer safe alternatives for identification of malignancy. However, subsequent breast surgery in the treatment of nipple discharge may be required. If imaging studies were unable to preoperatively identify the specific ductal source of nipple discharge, surgical exploration may be required. Skin hooks are used to lift the skin flaps for easier visualization and exploration. The affected duct is identified, and excised. Hemostasis and closure techniques are similar.

Physical examination, mammaryography, or galactography and sonography may be used to delineate the exact nature, location, and extent of the lesion preoperatively. Galactography involves cannulation of the discharge-producing duct with a small catheter or needle and injection of a water-soluble contrast agent in the duct. Ductal-oriented sonography uses modern high-resolution techniques to visualize the mammary ducts in detail. These procedures may be complementary in that cases of ductal abnormalities have been missed by sonography yet visualized by galactography. However, researchers caution that modern galactography has a high false-negative rate, so it does not reliably exclude intraductal pathology and is, therefore, not a substitute for surgery in patients with pathologic discharge. Ultrasound may be used in pregnancy to delineate a mass. However, if there is a high suspicion for cancer, a shielded mammogram should be ordered.

Fiberoptic ductoscopy is an emerging technique allowing direct visualization of the ductal system of the breast through nipple orifice exploration. When this procedure was applied to women with nipple discharge, an 83% positive predictive value was noted. The positive predictive value was increased to 86% with the addition of ductal washings to obtain exfoliated cells for evaluation at the time of the ductoscopy. MRI has also been shown to be of diagnostic value, but it is not as informative as regular galactography. Both modalities may offer safe alternatives for identification of malignancy. However, subsequent breast surgery in the treatment of nipple discharge may be required. Skin hooks are used to lift the skin flaps for easier visualization and exploration. The affected duct is identified, and excised. Hemostasis and closure techniques are similar.

1042 Related Surgery

method of collecting ductal epithelial cells for cytologic evaluation currently under investigation at several institutions. In a clinical trial of 507 high-risk women, cells collected through ductal lavage were shown to detect the presence of precancerous and cancerous changes in 20% of the women. The presence of these changes correlated with a fivefold to 18-fold increase in the risk of developing breast cancer, depending on family history and the patient’s risk determined by the Gail model. However, sensitivity in detection of invasive and in situ breast carcinoma is low and thus the initial fervor over this procedure is waning except when used for pretreatment analysis. Ductal lavage may not only be a helpful adjunct to determine which high-risk women require closer, more active management, but it may also be used to track cell status in particular ducts over time. Additionally, proteomic analysis of ductal lavage fluid may provide answers regarding tumor markers or patient response to treatments.

Breast cancer is known to develop over time and to present nearly 6 years before earliest detection on mammography. Availability of this technique is termed to provide practitioners with a tool to detect precancerous and cancerous breast cells before they become palpable cancers that can be imaged, thus allowing closer surveillance, surgical intervention, or chemoprevention. Investigational protocol eligibility often includes (i) women with a prior history of breast cancer; (ii) women at high risk for development of breast cancer as defined by Gail Index score, family history, BRCA mutation, or atypical hyperplasia; and (iii) those with persistent or bloody nipple discharge. Incorporation of ductal lavage into an examination of nipple discharge should not replace other standard evaluations. In studies combining CBE, mammography, MRI, and ductal lavage, ductal lavage was noted to detect atypia in an individual with a normal MRI and mammogram. However, additional research is needed to determine the role, sensitivity, and specificity of this method. Additionally, the significance of detection of high-risk lesions in decreasing breast cancer morbidity must be ascertained.

Ductal lavage involves placing a special suction cup over the nipple and applying negative pressure to collect the nipple aspirate fluid (NAF) (Fig. 41.9). A microcatheter is then inserted through the nipple orifice, into the identified fluid-yielding ducts. After saline injection, the ductal fluid is withdrawn and sent for cytologic analysis. In preliminary trials, 79% of subjects yielded NAF, although this rate may be influenced by race and age. In women older than 50 years, African American, Mexican American, and Asian women typically yielded less NAF. The phase of the menstrual cycle, a history of pregnancy, or use of OCPS did not significantly affect the availability of NAF. Hormone replacement therapy (HRT) in postmenopausal women tended to increase the amount of NAF obtained.

**DIAGNOSIS**

Breast cancer accounts for 30% of all cancers in women and 15% of deaths from cancer. Although more than 40% of cases of breast cancer are continuing to decline, incidence rates among certain subgroups (Asian Pacific Islander women) are increasing. Gynecologists are in a crucial position for coordination of ongoing medical care for patients with breast problems. Breast symptoms are appropriately detected by a breast-oriented, physical examination, cytology studies, and imaging techniques. If the diagnosis is in doubt, open surgical biopsy provides the definitive histologic diagnosis.
Breast Diseases: Benign and Malignant

History

A thorough history is a vital aspect of the initial evaluation. However, breast cancer cannot be excluded by any single fact within the patient’s history; rather, the history focuses attention on additional information. The practitioner should obtain detailed information about the patient’s symptom and other pertinent related positive and negative symptoms. The information necessary to assess breast health includes age, menstrual, gynecologic, sexual, reproductive, and lactation history, and any family history of breast or ovarian disorders (including age at onset/diagnosis). Because of recent advances in genetic etiologies, be sure to include cancer assessment of the maternal and paternal family history. In addition, a total body review of systems (e.g., headache, blurred vision for macroadenomas) should be focused on the patient’s symptom. Of vital importance are the following:

- Menopause status
- Timing and specific nature of symptoms
- Cyclic changes
- Onset, duration, and growth pattern of any masses
- Presence of pain
- Attempted and successful relief measures
- Alleviating and aggravating factors
- Use of HRT or OCPs
- Presence or absence of risk factors for breast cancer

All previous breast diagnostic and surgical procedures should be documented. Past medical and surgical history, as well as current medications and social history (including smoking, alcohol, and educational level), should also be reviewed.

Because most breast symptoms in reproductive-aged women are due to a benign cause, reassurance may be an important aspect in reducing anxiety. However, the practitioner should notify the patient of any concerns regarding the history and examination to ensure that the patient understands the significance of follow-up and does not misconstrue the practitioner’s reassurance to mean the diagnostic workup is completed.

Self-Breast Examination

Mammography remains the gold standard for early detection of breast carcinoma, but this technique is not 100% effective. CBE and BSE are important facets of a breast screening program. Controversy exists regarding the utility of routine BSE for increasing the rate of breast cancer detection. Studies yield conflicting results. The research has been hampered by differing BSE education strategies, schedules of performance, and control groups. Although the results are often incongruous, some authors have found a 34% reduction in nodal involvement and increased survival in women performing BSE compared with women who do not. In addition, 70% to 90% of masses are first detected by the women themselves. In a randomized trial in Russia, more cancers were found in the instruction group than in the control group (RR 1.24, 95% CI 1.09–1.41), whereas this was not the case in Shanghai. Conversely, a study from Shanghai of more than 250,000 women, who were randomized to no instruction or to intensive BSE instruction, failed to demonstrate any difference in the number of cancers detected or in the stage or size at which they were found (RR 0.97, 95% CI 0.88–1.06). No reduction in mortality was seen, but more than twice as many benign lesions were found in the
self-examination group. Yet, these trials review BSE instruction, not the practice of BSE, as this information could not be reliably obtained from self-report. Accordingly, promotion of BSE as a single screening method is often not recommended. These findings require assessment, but to negate BSE as an important component of overall personal health care seems inappropriate if there is any possibility that it will affect the survival rate in women. In breast disease, wherein early detection is so clearly related to improved survival, the value of these relatively simple, economical, and minimally inconvenient techniques cannot be overemphasized. With this in mind, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) and the ACS continue to recommend BSE be performed monthly beginning at age 20.

Clearly, discussion of BSE must include the benefits and limitations for the individual patient incorporating personal risk factors. Effective instruction of patients in the technique of BSE incorporates description of the procedure while the patient views the health care provider's performance of the examination. Additionally, having the patient reiterate her understanding of what has been taught and then demonstrating her mastery of the technique using manufactured breast models further solidifies compliance. The patient should understand the significance of breast inspection in various positions as well as the utility of breast palpation in the standing as well as supine positions. The circular method of breast palpation is routinely the easiest to master, although for patients with pendulous breasts, positional changes to ensure positioning of the breast tissue on the chest wall must be emphasized. The best time to perform the examination is usually the week after the menses, although menopausal women should pick a convenient time of the month, such as their birth date or the first of each month. After hysterectomy, patients with continued estrogenic support for the ovaries should observe for breast fullness or tenderness. Breast examination should then be performed 7 to 10 days after maximal breast symptoms.

Clinical Breast Examination

As with BSE, the utility of routine CBE in asymptomatic women has been questioned. Query into its reliability and efficacy has been propagated; however, there is greater scientific support for CBE. The Canadian Health Insurance Plan noted a 70% reduction in mortality from breast cancer as a result of physical examination. Although inferior to mammography, CBE has a sensitivity of 57% to 70% in detecting breast cancer. In addition, the ACS recommends annual CBE of women age 40 years and older and CBE every 3 years for women ages 20 to 39. Strategies to improve a practitioner's ability to detect a mass include increasing the time devoted to the examination, using a technique with variable degrees of pressure, and developing a systematic, consistent search mode. The size of the lesion, of course, is also correlated with the practitioner's ability to detect the mass.

To capture any benefit from early detection, CBE should be a routine part of the examination of gynecologic and obstetric patients. Obstetrician/gynecologists should not abdicate their responsibilities by relying on previous examinations performed by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by other specialists. The practitioner must also be concerned with protecting himself or herself from future lawsuits that are by
Breast Diseases: Benign and Malignant

FIGURE 41.10. (1) Examination of the breasts begins with inspection. The patient is disrobed to the waist and comfortably seated facing the examiner. Asymmetry, prominent veins, and skin changes may be signs of disease. (2) The patient raises her arms above her head, thereby altering the position of the breasts. Immobility or abnormal cutaneous attachments may become evident. (3) Inward pressure on the hips tenses the pectoralis major muscle. Abnormal attachments to its overlying fascia and skin can produce retraction or dimpling of the skin. (4) Supraclavicular lymph nodes are examined by palpation. (5) The deltopectoral triangle is palpated for evidence of infraclavicular nodal enlargement. (6) Each axilla is examined for nodal enlargement. Proper placement of the examiner’s hands and of the patient’s arm is important. (7) Thorough palpatory examination of the entire breast for masses is performed with the patient in the supine position. A fine rotational movement of the hands is useful to appreciate the consistency of the underlying tissues. The examiner should check for nipple discharge by compressing the ducts in a clockwise manner toward the nipple. (From Scott JR, Diltsa PJ, Hammond CB, et al. Danforth’s obstetrics and gynecology, 7th ed. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott, 1994:700.)
A nipple discharge. Each quadrant of the breast is "milked" and impede any discharge from coming to the surface. Using squeezing the nipple may actually obstruct the ductal orifice relate this information to the practitioner, particularly if they symptoms. Patients often have such symptoms but forget to excessive breast manipulation can lead to a nipple discharge. Many practitioners use two hands to perform the breast examination, although a thorough and systematic use of a single hand is satisfactory. Use of the two-handed method uses the second hand to follow behind in the same pattern as the initial hand, thus providing dual evaluations of each area. The Mammocare method of breast examination uses a single hand for palpation in the vertical-strip pattern. If the patient presents with breast symptoms, it is advisable to palpate the unaffected breast first to develop a “tactile baseline” with which to compare the involved breast and prevent omission of lesions in the unaffected breast. Palpation should extend beyond the actual breast tissue to encompass the supraclevicular and infraclevicular lymph nodes, the area adjacent to the sternum, approximately 1 to 2 cm below the inframammary ridge, and the axillary tail of Spence. The examination encompasses these areas to ensure nodal involvement is discernible. Routine evaluation of the nipple for nipple discharge is controversial, and some authors do not recommend this as a routine portion of the breast examination in women without symptoms. It is well known that excessive breast manipulation can lead to a nipple discharge. If one does exclude this as a routine part of the examination, a detailed history should be obtained to rule out any nipple symptoms. Patients often have such symptoms but forget to relate this information to the practitioner, particularly if they have experienced the symptoms for an extended period of time. Squeezing the nipple may actually obstruct the ductal orifice and impede any discharge from coming to the surface. Using a milking technique improves the examiner’s ability to elicit a nipple discharge. Each quadrant of the breast is “milked" by sliding the fingers from the outer quadrant in a clockwise fashion toward the nipple and documenting the location of any fluid accumulation.

Regardless of the pattern of breast examination used, the importance of using a consistent and methodical pattern of evaluation and allowing sufficient time for a thorough assessment should not be underemphasized as factors that increase detection capabilities. As stated, the evidence supporting the value of CBE as a method of reducing breast cancer mortality is limited and mostly inferential, as there is no definitive prospective randomized controlled trial evidence from which to draw conclusions. Thus, current recommendations rely on existing evidence and expert opinion.

In this increasingly litigious society, breast assessment demands careful documentation of the history, examination, and disposition of the case. A clear and legible note should record all findings from the breast examination noting texture, size, consistency, and a detailed description (including diagrams) of abnormal and suspicious features, as well as the plan of action for follow-up. Although positive or abnormal findings are very important, it is important to list negative findings in the medical record as well.

**Mammography**

The etiology of breast cancer remains an enigma; therefore, the major opportunity to alter the natural course of the disease is provided by diagnosing the disease at an early stage, when the prognosis for cure is excellent. Mammography is the most effective screening method for detection of nonpalpable and minimally invasive breast cancer. Studies assessing the value of mammography as a screening tool in the detection of breast cancer are inconsistent. Although estimates vary, it has been suggested that a lesion must be 1.0 to 2.0 cm before it may be palpated. A breast carcinoma grows for 6 to 8 years before reaching a diameter of 1 cm. In slightly less than another year, the carcinoma reaches 2 cm in diameter. It is estimated that, on the average, a mammogram detects a breast cancer 2 years before it is palpable.

Routinely, a false-negative rate of 10% to 15% is quoted; therefore, a normal mammographic examination does not rule out the presence of breast cancer (Table 41.3). Thus, a palpable mass requires further evaluation despite a “negative” mammographic examination. Dense parenchymal tissue is the principal cause of false-negative mammograms. Other sources of error include misjudging a well-circumscribed carcinoma for a benign mass, misconstruing malignant calcifications for benign aberrations, not recognizing the indirect signs of malignancy such as asymmetry, and faulty radiographic technique.
Guidelines promulgated by the American College of Radiology Mammography Accreditation Program have significantly reduced this latter problem. In some studies, HRT reduced the sensitivity of mammographic screening and may undermine the capacity of population-based mammographic screening programs to achieve their potential mortality benefit. For instance, in one research paper, among women who were diagnosed with cancer in the 2-year mammography screening interval, HRT users were more likely to have a false-negative result than nonusers (OR, 1.60; 95% CI, 1.04–2.21). However, among women who did not have cancer diagnosed in the interval, HRT users were more likely to have a false-positive result (adjusted OR, 1.12; CI, 1.05–1.19).

It is important to forewarn patients that adequate breast compression is essential to improved radiographic technique and to deliver a high-quality mammogram. Compression holds the breast motionless, decreasing artifact; separates tissues to disclose small lesions; improves image quality by decreasing radiation scatter; and reduces the radiation dose by decreasing breast thickness. Widespread use of this imaging test, in conjunction with improved treatment, may be responsible for the recent decline in number of deaths from breast cancer. Not only does mammographic imaging enable the detection of nonpalpable breast cancer, but early detection also permits breast conservation surgery (BCS).

Detection Demonstration Project, sponsored by the ACS and the National Cancer Institute (NCI), indicates an even lower average midbreast dose of 0.08 rads. To put radiation risk in perspective, data presented by the National Council on Radiation Protection illustrate that mammographic examination of the breast motionless, decreasing artifact; separates tissues to disclose small lesions; improves image quality by decreasing radiation scatter; and reduces the radiation dose by decreasing breast thickness. Widespread use of this imaging test, in conjunction with improved treatment, may be responsible for the recent decline in number of deaths from breast cancer. Not only does mammographic imaging enable the detection of nonpalpable breast cancer, but early detection also permits breast conservation surgery (BCS).

TABLE 41.3

REASONS FOR FALSE-NEGATIVE MAMMOGRAMS

- Failure to image the region of interest
- Poor image quality
- Errors of perception
- Breast cancer indistinguishable from normal breast tissue

Mammography serves multiple purposes in the evaluation of women’s breast health. It is important to forewarn patients that adequate breast compression is essential to improved radiographic technique and to deliver a high-quality mammogram. Compression holds the breast motionless, decreasing artifact; separates tissues to disclose small lesions; improves image quality by decreasing radiation scatter; and reduces the radiation dose by decreasing breast thickness. Widespread use of this imaging test, in conjunction with improved treatment, may be responsible for the recent decline in number of deaths from breast cancer. Not only does mammographic imaging enable the detection of nonpalpable breast cancer, but early detection also permits breast conservation surgery (BCS).

In detection of breast cancer, there are several mammographic characteristics of malignancy, which include the presence of a mass, architectural distortion, asymmetrical density, and microcalcifications. Malignant lesions generally display more of these pathognomonic mammographic appearances than do benign lesions, but benign lesions may have similar features. Calcification in the breast can be benign or malignant. Round, smooth calcium deposits of uniform size generally tend to be associated with benign processes, whereas branching and polymorphic calcifications suggest the possibility of malignancy. The presence of clusters of microcalcifications in a small geographic area is also a suspicious finding. Microcalcifications play an important role in the early detection of breast cancer. However, calcifications occur in fewer than half of nonpalpable cases, and fewer than half of these calcified lesions demonstrate the classic appearances suggestive of malignancy. The calcifications of FCCs often mimic those of malignancy, leading to unavoidable false-positive mammograms. Calcificlike deposits in the skin secondary to tattoos, deodorants, ointments, or sebaceous gland secretions can also be mistaken for malignancy. Therefore, clustered microcalcifications are a sensitive but not a specific sign of malignancy.

The radiation risks associated with x-ray mammography are considered negligible. Contemporary ionizing radiation units, specifically designed for breast imaging, use the most advanced technology to obtain images of the highest quality with a considerable decrease in radiation dose to probably less than 0.2 to 0.3 rads (2–3 cGy). Information from the Breast Cancer Detection Demonstration Project, sponsored by the ACS and the National Cancer Institute (NCI), indicates an even lower average midbreast dose of 0.08 rads. To put radiation risk in perspective, data presented by the National Council on Radiation Protection illustrate that mammographic examination of the breast motionless, decreasing artifact; separates tissues to disclose small lesions; improves image quality by decreasing radiation scatter; and reduces the radiation dose by decreasing breast thickness. Widespread use of this imaging test, in conjunction with improved treatment, may be responsible for the recent decline in number of deaths from breast cancer. Not only does mammographic imaging enable the detection of nonpalpable breast cancer, but early detection also permits breast conservation surgery (BCS).
100,000 women at age 45 years would theoretically result in the eventual loss of one life.

Screening Guidelines

Mammography has been shown in randomized trials to reduce breast cancer mortality by as much as 23%. Survival from breast cancer is influenced by tumor size, degree of invasion, and lymph node status at the time of diagnosis. The advantage of early detection and diagnosis is reduced mortality because of smaller-sized cancers, more localized lesions with a lower percent of positive nodes, and increased feasibility of RCS. Clearly this fundamental tenet accentuates the importance of compliance with radiologic screening programs and knowledge of guidelines.

Women who have less than a high school education, who are a minority, who are uninsured, who do not speak English as their primary language, and who are socioeconomically disadvantaged are less likely to report having had a mammogram. According to data from the National Health Interview Survey, fewer than 60% of women age 50 years and older and 45% of women age 70 years and older reported having had a mammogram in the preceding 1 to 2 years. Only 38% of women aged 50 years and older with low income and 42% of those with less than a high school education had a recent mammogram. Clearly, efforts to increase screening should specifically target older women and socioeconomically disadvantaged women, who are at the highest risk for underutilization of mammograms.

Randomized controlled trials (RCTs) have demonstrated a decreased mortality rate in women who received mammography at age 50 to 69. However, a metaanalysis by Olsen and Gotzsche demonstrated no reduction of breast cancer mortality when incorporating only two of the existing RCTs of screening mammographies—indicating that the then additional five trials had serious methodological flaws and excluded their results. Yet, a review specifically of the Health Insurance Plan of Greater New York (HIP) screening trials and both Canadian National Breast Screening Studies (CNBSS1 and CNBSS2) documented improved mortality in screen-detected cancers compared with those detected symptomatically. In the HIP trial, 76% of screen-detected cancers were stage I, compared with 51% of interval/incident cancers (cancers detected within less than 1 year or more than 1 year after the last negative screen) and 49% of cancers in the control (no screening mammography). Those unscreened and women who failed to attend their screenings had the highest percentage of stage II/IV cancers (34% and 22%, respectively). Likewise, in the CNBSS 1, 55% of screen-detected cancers, 40% of interval/incident cancers, and 47% of cancers in the control group were stage I. In CNBSS 2, 62% of screen-detected cancers, 44% of interval/incident cancers, and 47% of cancers in the control group were stage I. Although adjusted for lead-time bias, tumor sizes were smaller in the screening groups, and there were significantly higher proportions of negative lymph nodes among women with screen-detected cancers. The survival advantage seems to arise from the mammogram’s tendency to detect less aggressive, more slow-growing, and thus less biologically lethal tumors than those discovered symptomatically. However, despite this benefit, fewer than 40%, even among this age group of women, had had a mammogram in the past year.

The controversy regarding screening in women younger than 50 years of age is multifaceted. Reduction of mortality rates as a result of screening is a subject of debate, the cost-effectiveness when compared with that in older women is unknown, and, finally, the frequency of screening intervals has become a point of disagreement among the committees that issue imaging guidelines. Authors have argued that mammograms performed in women younger than 50 years are not useful because younger women have more radiographically dense breast tissue that obscures abnormalities (Fig. 41.13). Some investigators have advocated yearly mammograms for all women 40 to 49 years old because breast cancer is often more aggressive and faster growing in younger women. The benefit of mammography in women age 40 to 49 years is less clear than for those age 50 and older. However, with mounting years of follow-up, evidence of a benefit for women in their 40s has increased, and studies show that regular mammograms reduce the death rate from breast cancer in this age group by about 17% to 23%. However, some trials with significant numbers still fail to show benefit in this age group. Nevertheless, NCI and the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force recommend screening with mammography beginning at age 40 in women of average risk for breast cancer. ACOG and the ACS continue to recommend offering screening mammography for women 40 to 49 years of age and annually for women older than 50 years. (Tables 41.4 and 41.5). Women who are at higher-than-average risk of breast cancer should seek expert medical advice about earlier screening and the frequency of screening (Table 41.6).

Although there are insufficient data regarding women age...
TABLE 41.4

AMERICAN COLLEGE OF OBSTETRICS AND GYNECOLOGY: BREAST CANCER SCREENING GUIDELINES, 2000

| Average Risk (asymptomatic) | Age 20–39 | BSE—monthly | CBE—yearly | Age 40–49 | BSE—monthly | CBE—yearly | Mammography every 1–2 years
|-----------------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|-----------|-------------|------------|---------------------
|                             | Age 50 and over | BSE—monthly | CBE—yearly | Mammography—yearly |

*Unless mammographic or physical findings suggest more frequent evaluation.
BSE, breast self-examination; CBE, clinical breast examination.

TABLE 41.5

AMERICAN CANCER SOCIETY GUIDELINES FOR EARLY BREAST CANCER DETECTION, 2003

| Average Risk (asymptomatic) | Age 20–40 | BSE—monthly (optional) | CBE every 1–3 years | Age older than 40 | BSE—monthly (optional) | CBE annual or biannual | Mammography annually
|-----------------------------|-----------|------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------

TABLE 41.6

BREAST CANCER SURVEILLANCE FOR WOMEN WITH BRCA1 AND BRCA2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age 18–20</th>
<th>BSE—monthly</th>
<th>Beginning between 20 and 35 years</th>
<th>Mammography annually</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Beginning between 25 and 35 years</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Many exciting developments are occurring in breast imaging. Although mammography still remains the gold standard for breast cancer screening and diagnosis, it often cannot differentiate benign from malignant disease and is less accurate in patients with dense glandular breasts, with diffuse involvement of the breast with tumor, and in those taking HRT. Ten percent to 20% of breast cancers detectable by physical examination are not visible radiographically. Furthermore, of the women who are referred for biopsy based on mammographic findings, only 20% to 40% of lesions actually prove to be malignant. Clearly, there is room for improvement in both breast cancer detection and lesion characterization.

Digital mammography (DM) is a rapidly evolving technology offering improved efficiency of absorption of x-ray photons, as well as greater contrast resolution, especially in dense breast tissue. Systems are based on the absorption of x-rays by a phosphor material with subsequent conversion of the absorbed energy to electronic charge. The charge signal is then digitized and stored as a matrix in computer memory to represent the image.

The recently reported DMIST trial (Digital Mammographic Imaging Screening Trial) evaluated 49,528 asymptomatic women in the United States and Canada with both digital and film mammography. The overall diagnostic accuracy of digital and film mammography was similar for screen detection of breast cancer, but DM was more accurate in women younger than age 50 years, women with radiographically dense breasts, and pre- or perimenopausal women. Additional data indicate digital systems may be superior to conventional film-screen mammography in detection of microcalcifications which are the earliest evidence of minimal breast cancer. Other studies have shown inferior sensitivity of DM compared with conventional film screen mammography but significantly lowered recall rates.

DM offers further technologic advancements. Computer-aided diagnosis (CAD) is the detection of a potential abnormality by means of computer analysis of the mammogram; that is, a second reading by a computer. Information of this kind can be supplied to radiologists to help improve their diagnostic performance. Several investigators have demonstrated improved radiologist performance in lesion detection and characterization when a CAD system is used. The CAD enhancement of radiologist performance in lesion detection and characterization.

Digital mammography (DM) appears highly promising; however, further clinical studies are needed to evaluate the relative efficacy of different CAD methods. Moreover, the medicolegal status of CAD is uncertain at present and needs to be clarified.

Because digital images can be readily transmitted electronically for remote interpretation and consultation, DM holds the promise of telemammography. DM also allows for stereoradiography or stereomammography, in which two images of the breast are taken at slightly different angles and later “fused” to provide greater perception of the relative depths of structures within the image. Additionally, DM can be used to combine several single images into a three-dimensional image called tomosynthesis. Both techniques have been proposed as solutions to the problem of false-negative conventional...
screen-film mammography due to masking from overlying structures, particularly in very dense breast tissue. During tomosynthesis, multiple images are acquired as the x-ray tube rotates in an arc above the breast and detector. By manipulating the digital image, any plane in the breast can be easily displayed. Preliminary data have shown breast tomosynthesis to be equivalent or superior to conventional diagnostic mammography in small numbers of women. Ultimately such systems may substantially improve diagnostic accuracy. A multicenter validation study is planned.

Dual-energy mammography is another technology that becomes practical once the image is digitized. This technique provides another approach to the problem of overlapping breast tissue masking lesion detection. With this method, two exposures of the breast are made at substantially different x-ray spectra. Weighted subtraction of one image from the other provides additional information about breast tissue composition. Specifically, it may render calcifications more obvious in dense breast tissue.

DM offers other benefits, including diagnostic signs that are identical for interpretation of screen-film mammography and DM, which could facilitate the transition from one system to the other. Another variation, mammography, may be helpful in identifying drug-resistant tumors before therapy. Although DM may reduce some costs by eliminating film and film-processing chemicals, decreasing film storage space, and reducing film library staff, immediate cost savings are unlikely. Substantial capital equipment costs are necessary in that the DM systems cost four to five times that of conventional mammography units.

Major technical challenges remain, and further clinical studies are necessary to determine the actual clinical value of this modality as a probable adjunct to conventional mammography, particularly in the area of dense breast tissue. Moreover, measuring cost-effectiveness of this evolving technology and the effect of the density of the tissue. The cyst shows the typical characteristics of transmission, homogeneous internal features without “debris,” and smooth margins. The compressibility of the cyst can be seen in the second ultrasound screen.

Unfortunately, breast ultrasound in its current state is extremely inefficient in detecting malignancy and is thus not suitable as a method of breast cancer screening (Fig. 41.16). In one study, only 44% of the mammographically detected nonpalpable lesions and 37% of the cancers could be visualized by high-frequency ultrasound. Ultrasound also has a low capacity for detecting small lesions or small aggregate groups of calcifications, which may be evidence of early breast carcinoma. However, newer sonographic techniques of spatial compound imaging, tissue harmonics imaging, and three-dimensional imaging in breast disorders do not appear to offer improved accuracy or diagnostic value over current methods. Because breast cancer control can be achieved only by early diagnosis of minimal breast cancer, diagnostic ultrasound can be a helpful aid to screening mammography.

Ultrasound imaging of the breast has been an extremely valuable addition to the breast-imaging armamentarium. Ultrasound is currently used to assist in differentiation of benign and malignant lesions, to distinguish cystic from solid masses (95% accuracy, 96.9% sensitivity, and 98.4% specificity), and to guide aspirations and biopsies in mammographically detected nonpalpable lesions, thus likely preventing unnecessary open biopsies (Fig. 41.14). Moreover, this technique is useful in intraoperative surgical margin evaluation and staging of breast cancer. The rate of inadequate samples in ultrasound-guided FNA was 0% for malignant lesions and 28.4% for benign (95% accuracy, 96.9% sensitivity, and 98.4% specificity), and to guide aspirations and biopsies in mammographically detected nonpalpable lesions (95% accuracy, 96.9% sensitivity, and 98.4% specificity), and to guide aspirations and biopsies in mammographically detected nonpalpable lesions, thus likely preventing unnecessary open biopsies (Fig. 41.14). Moreover, this technique is useful in intraoperative surgical margin evaluation and staging of breast cancer. The rate of inadequate samples in ultrasound-guided FNA was 0% for malignant lesions and 28.4% for benign (95% accuracy, 96.9% sensitivity, and 98.4% specificity), and to guide aspirations and biopsies in mammographically detected nonpalpable lesions.

In younger women, sonography has evolved into a highly specialized imaging technique useful as primary imaging modality in this population, as well as in pregnant and lactating women. An ultrasonically detected cyst in a young woman may allow deference of mammography and prevent unnecessary x-ray exposure. However, a normal sonogram at any age should not prevent further evaluation of an abnormal physical finding. Conversely, if a nonpalpable solid mass is detected by sonography but is not clearly seen on a mammogram, biopsy or needle localization must be performed during real-time sono graphic imaging (Fig. 41.15). The benefits of this diagnostic technique include the absence of radiation, noninvasive technique, lack of morbidity, and ease of repeated examinations.

Unfortunately, breast ultrasound in its current state is extremely inefficient in detecting malignancy and is thus not suitable as a method of breast cancer screening (Fig. 41.16). In one study, only 44% of the mammographically detected nonpalpable lesions and 37% of the cancers could be visualized by high-frequency ultrasound. Ultrasound also has a low capacity for detecting small lesions or small aggregate groups of calcifications, which may be evidence of early breast carcinoma. However, newer sonographic techniques of spatial compound imaging, tissue harmonics imaging, and three-dimensional imaging in breast disorders do not appear to offer improved accuracy or diagnostic value over current methods. Because breast cancer control can be achieved only by early diagnosis of minimal breast cancer, diagnostic ultrasound can be a helpful aid to screening mammography.

In younger women, sonography has evolved into a highly specialized imaging technique useful as primary imaging modality in this population, as well as in pregnant and lactating women. An ultrasonically detected cyst in a young woman may allow deference of mammography and prevent unnecessary x-ray exposure. However, a normal sonogram at any age should not prevent further evaluation of an abnormal physical finding. Conversely, if a nonpalpable solid mass is detected by sonography but is not clearly seen on a mammogram, biopsy or needle localization must be performed during real-time sono graphic imaging (Fig. 41.15). The benefits of this diagnostic technique include the absence of radiation, noninvasive technique, lack of morbidity, and ease of repeated examinations.

Unfortunately, breast ultrasound in its current state is extremely inefficient in detecting malignancy and is thus not suitable as a method of breast cancer screening (Fig. 41.16). In one study, only 44% of the mammographically detected nonpalpable lesions and 37% of the cancers could be visualized by high-frequency ultrasound. Ultrasound also has a low capacity for detecting small lesions or small aggregate groups of calcifications, which may be evidence of early breast carcinoma. However, newer sonographic techniques of spatial compound imaging, tissue harmonics imaging, and three-dimensional imaging in breast disorders do not appear to offer improved accuracy or diagnostic value over current methods. Because breast cancer control can be achieved only by early diagnosis of minimal breast cancer, diagnostic ultrasound can be a helpful aid to screening mammography.
of development is incapable of accomplishing this task. However, there is renewed interest in evaluating ultrasound as a potential adjunctive screening tool in women with radiographically dense breasts when the detection benefit of supplemental sonography increased with increasing grades of breast density. Moreover, some authors consider ultrasound significantly better than mammography for detecting invasive breast cancer, especially in certain subpopulations. False-positives appear to be increased; thus, minimizing unnecessary patient anxiety and costs are critical goals of any new screening procedure. Authors caution use of screening sonography only for practitioners experienced in breast sonography, with comprehensive discussion with the patient to consider the risk of a false-positive examination and understanding that early detection may or may not be of benefit to her if a cancer is found. As an RCT with mortality as an end point may be unethical, weighing potential risks and benefits with each patient is vital.

Blood flow in malignant breast lesions is considerably increased because of vascular proliferation. Doppler flow ultrasonography can detect increased blood flow and has the potential to distinguish benign from malignant lesions. As a rule, malignant lesions produce Doppler signals of higher frequency and amplitude during continuous flow through diastole. Presently, Doppler flow analysis is not sensitive enough to be used as a tool for distinguishing malignant from benign tissue, but it offers potential for advancement in the field.

### Magnetic Resonance Imaging

MRI is emerging as perhaps the most promising imaging modality as an adjunct for breast cancer detection to date (Fig. 41.17). Interventional MRI machines have produced unique opportunities for image-guided surgery. MRI has excellent sensitivity in demonstrating invasive breast cancer that is both mammographically and clinically occult, especially in dense breast tissue, but it has a low specificity (ranging from only 37% to 97%). Moreover, its sensitivity in noninvasive lesions, such as ductal carcinoma in situ, has been reported as low as 40%, possibly secondary to more variable angiogenesis in these lesions. Nevertheless, contrast-enhanced MRI may be useful in monitoring chemotherapeutic responses in breast cancer, in the preoperative evaluation of patients being considered for BCS, and intraoperatively to define the margins of the lesion and ensure complete excision. Published results, although from studies with relatively small numbers of patients and small numbers of cancers, have shown robust data for screening women at high risk for breast cancer based on genetic mutation or strong family history of breast cancer. The Magnetic Resonance Imaging for Breast Screening (MARIBS) researchers reported MRI to be nearly twice as sensitive as mammography for detecting breast cancers in this subgroup of patients. In total, MRI detected 77% of cancers, and mammography detected 40%. Combined, the two methods produced a sensitivity of 94%, yet 25% of cancers in younger women and 10% in older women were missed. Studies combining MRI with mammography, ultrasound, and CBE have also shown improved detection of cancers with MRI (77% vs. 36%, 33%, and 9.1%, respectively). Combined, the modalities had a sensitivity of 93% versus 45% for mammography and CBE combined.

This imaging modality has considerable benefits, including absence of ionizing radiation and lack of known radiobiologic hazards, but it is time-consuming and expensive, and it lacks sufficient resolution for the identification of small lesions. It is also especially deficient in detecting the aggregates of small calcifications that may be evidence of early carcinoma, and it possesses significant overlap in contrast enhancement kinetic and morphologic features of benign and malignant lesions, which severely limits its usefulness as a screening method. MRI, though, seems to be the most accurate method for detection of breast implant integrity. Although MRI screening appears to be feasible in the high-risk populations, further clinical investigation is needed to address the issue of cost-effectiveness and to define the technical requirements for optimal imaging, interpretation criteria, and clinical indications for which MRI should be used as an adjunct to conventional imaging methods.

### Positron Emission Tomography

Onologic breast imaging using positron emission tomography (PET) scanning is a noninvasive nuclear medicine imaging modality rapidly gaining acceptance. Fluorodeoxyglucose is the most commonly used agent, which is a short-lived...
FNA or fine-needle aspiration biopsy was first reported by Martin and Ellis at Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center in 1930 and is now an established diagnostic method in evaluation of palpable breast lesions. In response to the increasing frequency with which women are consulting their obstetrician-gynecologists about concerns related to their breasts, the American Board of Obstetrics and Gynecology (ABOG) has promulgated specific educational requirements for resident training in the various aspects of diagnosing and treating breast disease. Technical proficiency in this procedure is essential for the proper evaluation, treatment, and further definition of a palpable lesion.

FNA is recognized as highly accurate and cost-effective when used in conjunction with clinical examination and imaging as part of the triple test. The “triple test” consists of tissue sampling, mammography, and CBE. If all components of the triple test are benign-negative, the chance of breast cancer is low (0.7%). Yet, if each aspect is suggestive of cancer, the risk of breast cancer is very high (99%). Alone, FNA is relatively accurate but has a false-negative rate as high as 20%. The false-negative rate is highest in detection of lobular carcinoma and carcinoma in situ. However, FNA has a sensitivity of 96% and specificity of 98% (similar to core biopsy), as well as a 99% positive predictive value and 94% negative predictive value and an overall efficacy of 97%.

FNA provides a cytologic rather than histologic sample for review. Thus, limitations include inability to distinguish invasive from in situ carcinoma. Use of FNA or core needle biopsy as the initial diagnostic testing remains controversial and is left to the clinician. However, FNA has multiple advantages (Table 41.7) over excisional biopsy and is helpful in confirming the clinical impression of both benign and malignant breast disease. Nevertheless, a negative cytologic report, as with a negative mammographic report, must not be relied on to rule out malignancy in a clinically suspicious lesion and thus should not preclude further evaluation. Any clinically suspicious mass in a patient with negative FNA findings requires additional evaluation, including core biopsy or excisional biopsy, or other methods of detection should be performed. If breast cancer or a specific benign condition (e.g., apocrine metaplasia or fibroadenoma) is not detected by FNA (or is inconsistent with the triple test), core biopsy or excisional biopsy is warranted. A positive finding of malignant cells eliminates further evaluation and allows early selection of appropriate therapy before further surgical intervention. When cyst aspiration is performed, the fluid may be discarded if it is clear (transparent and not bloody) and the mass disappears. If the cyst aspirate is bloody or the mass does not disappear, the patient should be considered a candidate for excisional biopsy. Additionally, if the cyst recurs after aspiration, excisional biopsy is warranted.

The recommendations of the National Cancer Institute Consensus Conference include use of FNA for sufficiently defined palpable breast masses of clinical or patient concern, persistent or suspicious masses in patients with increased family risk factors, evaluation of nonpalpable mammographically suspicious breast lesions, or low risk for malignancy lesions when recommended follow-up with imaging is not feasible or accepted by the patient. FNA should not be used for investigation of microcalcifications but may be used under ultrasound or stereotactic guidance to investigate densities presumed to be nonmalignant. Doubtful densities are best assessed by core biopsy.

FNA is an easily mastered technique, but the adequacy of specimens is improved with experience and training (Fig. 41.18). Procedure risks include infection, bleeding, and bruising at the site. Because the chest wall is immediately beneath the site, pneumothorax has been listed as a potential complication. The small size of the needle and the mass is stabilized over a rib during the procedure significantly decreases this complication.

After the procedure is explained to the patient and consent has been obtained, the skin is cleansed. The lesion is identified and stabilized, preferably over a rib, between the fingers of the nondominant hand (Fig. 41.19). The instrument table should be prepared for easy access because the nondominant hand should not be removed (once it has been placed alongside the mass) until the procedure is completed (Table 41.8). Stabilization of the hand throughout the procedure prevents frequent “loss” of the mass and repeated attempts to locate the targeted structure.

If anesthesia is desired, a small wheal is placed in the skin over the mass, assuring excess local anesthesia does not obscure the mass. A 21- to 23-gauge needle with a clear hub attached to a 10- to 20-ml syringe is then inserted into the central portion of the mass. Increasing the needle gauge does not necessarily increase the sample size. In fact, the larger the needle, the more blood aspirated, and the greater the likelihood of hematoma formation. A pistol-grip holder may also be used, as the mechanics of hand motion are often easier with the holder. Mastery of both techniques (with the holder and without) is recommended because not all institutions have this equipment. If a holder is not used, two fingers are placed under the piston of the syringe, and the thumb is used against the body of the syringe to pull the piston toward the hub, applying negative pressure. With use of the holder, the grips of the holder are pulled together to apply negative pressure.

### TABLE 41.7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADVANTAGES OF FINE-NEEDLE ASPIRATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outpatient procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimal discomfort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anesthesia not required (though often used)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negligible complication rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both diagnostic and therapeutic for breast cysts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low false-negative rate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The lesion is sampled by moving the needle up and down within the mass several times. Several passes should be made into every portion of the mass to prevent false-negative samples. If the lesion is cystic, liquid material is seen in the hub of the needle and possibly the body of the syringe. With a solid mass, one may not see evidence of cellular material in the hub.

After complete sampling along each axis of the mass, suction is released and the needle is removed from the lesion. Releasing the suction before removing the needle is a critical aspect of this procedure. Continued negative pressure upon removing the needle (without release of suction) results in aspiration of the specimen into the body of the syringe, from which it is difficult to retrieve. Once the needle is removed, pressure is applied to the puncture site (by an assistant or the patient). Significant bleeding from the site of the needle puncture is often characteristic of carcinoma or an inflammatory lesion, although benign conditions and bleeding diathesis may also result in this complication. The patient usually does not require any dressing or bandage on completion of the procedure.

The material should be expelled onto a glass slide (frosted ends facing up toward the practitioner) with the needle bevel facing down to prevent scatter of the specimen (Figs. 41.20–41.23). To release additional sample, the needle is detached, air is drawn into the syringe, the needle is reattached, and further expulsive efforts are accomplished. The “detach, draw air, and reattach” portion is repeated until all the cellular material has been expelled.

Complete aspiration of a cystic mass should always be attempted because at follow-up it will be difficult to determine whether the fluid has reaccumulated or is a remnant from the prior procedure. This becomes important, because reaccumulated fluid in a cyst should be referred for excisional biopsy (Table 41.9).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 41.8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>EQUIPMENT FOR FINE-NEEDLE ASPIRATION</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fine-needle aspiration gun or 10- to 20-cc syringe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21- to 23-gauge needle with clear hub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringe holder (if desired)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear frosted-end glass slides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol/Betadine pads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixative (if desired)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gauze pads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhesive bandage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toluidine blue if immediate microscopic examination desired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local anesthesia if desired</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cells air dry quickly, so it is crucial that immediate fixation with 95% ethanol or a spray fixative occur after smearing. The examiner must provide the cytopathologist with an accurate clinical history, including age, clinical examination, and whether the patient is pregnant or lactating, because this information is crucial in interpretation of the sample. Figures 41.24 through 41.26 demonstrate examples of FNA cytology. With adequate sampling, HER2/neu, estrogen, and progesterone receptor status may be determined. FNA can produce bleeding into the breast tissue and a hematoma formation beneath the surface, which can complicate mammographic interpretation. For this reason, mammograms (and probably ultrasounds) should be performed either before the FNA procedure or at least 2 weeks afterward.

Random periareolar fine-needle aspiration (RFNA), a modification of FNA, has been espoused as a risk assessment technique to determine an individual’s risk for development of breast cancer and as a tool to measure response to preventive measures. It has also been shown to be effective in evaluating breast lesions for high-risk tumor markers. Trials are under way comparing RFNA and ductal lavage; however, there are currently insufficient data to recommend either method as an independent screening modality or in combination with screening mammography.

Core Needle Breast Biopsy

It is estimated that approximately 1 million breast biopsies are performed yearly to diagnose approximately 200,000 breast cancers. Percutaneous core needle biopsy (CNB) may spare many of these women the need for more deforming, invasive, and expensive surgical procedures. With this procedure, a histopathologic diagnosis may be obtained compared with cytologic evaluation with FNA. Studies indicate a high degree of accuracy (98% positive predictive value and 80% negative predictive value), sensitivity of 89%, and specificity of 100% in confirming malignant invasion. False-negative results may occur, but false-positive results are rare except with radial scars. Increasing the number of core specimens by taking samples...
Technique of fine-needle aspiration—slide preparation. The slide is fixed as rapidly as possible to avoid air drying. Usu-
ally, two to three slides can be made from one fine-needle aspiration attempt. The technique chosen for slide preparation depends on the desire of the pathologist from several locations in the lesion may increase the representa-
tiveness of the specimens.

CNB may be performed under tactile, stereotactic, or ultra-
sound guidance. Less tissue is removed during CNB compared
with excisional biopsy, resulting in no deformity in the breast and minimal to no scarring on subsequent mammograms. An-
other advantage is the ability to distinguish between invasive
and intraductal carcinoma (unlike FNA). Because special train-
ing is not required to interpret the histologic material obtained
from CNB, this obviates the need for the special skills of a cy-
topathologist needed for FNA. One disadvantage of CNB is
that local anesthesia is needed because of the large size of the
needle (generally 8- to 18-gauge).

This biopsy procedure is often used in the assessment of
BL-RADS category 4 lesions (Table 41.10). If core biopsy of
a category 4 lesion yields a benign diagnosis concordant with
the imaging characteristics, the woman is usually spared the
diagnostic surgical biopsy. Although most often performed
for nonpalpable lesions, percutaneous imaging-guided core
biopsy can also be helpful in the evaluation of palpable breast
masses, particularly for those that are deep, mobile, or vaguely
palpable.

Stereotactic CNB requires dedicated equipment but may be
helpful in evaluating suspicious mammographic findings, par-
ticularly in nonpalpable lesions. Ultrasound-guided CNB has
several advantages, including real-time visualization of the nee-
dle, lack of ionizing radiation, accessibility to all parts of the
breast and axilla, multipurpose use of equipment, and lower
cost. However, it is limited in detection of lesions less than 1
cm and has decreased sensitivity in detection of microcalcifica-
tions. Vacuum-assisted and MammoToMte devices may improve
tissue sampling by obtaining larger and more intact samples.

The choice depends on several factors, including equipment
availability, lesion visibility and accessibility, and preferences
of the radiologist and the patient.

After administration of local anesthesia, the area is cleaned.

As the core needle is introduced into the mass, the tissue in-
side the core of the needle is cut from the surrounding tissue
as the outer sheath is advanced. After removal of the sheath
and core needle, a pressure dressing is applied. This proce-
dure may obviate the need for needle localization surgical
biopsy, and studies indicate similar sensitivity and lower cost.
The histologic core specimen may be used to determine hor-
monal receptor status and to study other tumor markers using
immunohistochemistry.

**TABLE 41.9**

REQUIRES OPEN BIOPSY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bloody or serosanguineous fluid on aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure of mass to disappear on fluid aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recurrence of cyst after aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nipple eczema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin edema and erythema suspicious of inflammatory breast carcinoma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Open Surgical Biopsy

Open surgical biopsy includes excisional and incisional tech-
niques. Incisional biopsy is a diagnostic procedure reserved for
masses that are too large to be completely excised. There are
currently few indications for the use of incisional biopsy be-
cause FNA and CNB usually provide sufficient tissue to make
diagnosis with less morbidity and lower cost. Conversely, ex-
cisional biopsy refers to the removal of all gross evidence of
disease, usually with a small rim of normal breast tissue, and
is the definitive procedure for some benign breast masses. Ex-
cisional biopsy is usually an outpatient procedure performed
under local anesthesia with intravenous sedation as needed.

Some authors recommend beginning the procedure by
marking the incisional site with the patient in the sitting po-

tion. Conversely, others recommend locating the lesion with the
patient in the same position in which the surgery is to be
performed. This marking should be performed before injec-
tion of any anesthetic because the anesthetic may obliterate
the outlines of the mass. Circumareolar incisions are the most
ideal cosmetically and heal well. They are attempted for most
benign masses despite having to tunnel a short distance to reach
the lesion. This should not be done with suspected malignant
lesions to prevent the spread of tumor cells along the tunnel,
thus prohibiting breast-conserving therapy in the future. On the
other hand, Langer or curvilinear lines (following the anatomic
skin lines) may be used depending on the location of the lesion.
Langer’s lines may be defined by gently pinching the skin over
the mass and noting the outline. Radial incisions are made over
the axilla and inframammary portions of the breast but are ill-
advised in the upper portions of the breast because of possi-
ble contracture and asymmetric cosmetic result. It is important
FIGURE 41.24. Fine-needle aspiration of ductal carcinoma. A: Smears are cellular with loosely cohesive cells arranged in a malignant cluster. Cells demonstrate clumping of chromatin and irregular nucleoli (Papanicolaou stain ×240). B: Single malignant cells with absence of myoepithelial cells are viewed using Diff-Quik stain (×400). Diff-Quik stains are air dried, thus the chromatin pattern is less demonstrative. (Courtesy of Taalat Tadros, MD, Emory University, School of Medicine, Atlanta, GA.)

FIGURE 41.25. Fine-needle aspiration of medullary carcinoma. The smears are cellular. A: Loosely syncytial malignant aggregates (Papanicolaou stain ×240). B: Single malignant cells with benign lymphoid cells noted in the background (Diff-Quik ×400). (Courtesy of Taalat Tadros, MD, Emory University, School of Medicine, Atlanta, GA.)

FIGURE 41.26. Fine-needle aspiration of fibrocystic change. A: View of uniform ductal cells in right upper quadrant with honeycomb pattern. Characteristic adherent bipolar naked nuclei of myoepithelial cells are noted. Stripped nuclei are seen in the background (Papanicolaou stain ×240). B: A flat sheet of apocrine cells are seen in this view. Cells have abundant granular cytoplasm, and the nuclei have prominent nucleoli (Papanicolaou stain ×240). (Courtesy of Taalat Tadros, MD, Emory University, School of Medicine, Atlanta, GA.)
used only
cision is performed with sharp dissection. Cautery should be
mass may be gently grasped with suture for traction while ex-
ing excision more difficult, or to prevent tumor seeding. The
so as to prevent cutting the tumor into smaller pieces, thus mak-
skin hooks. Instruments that will crush the tissue are never used
achieve better exposure. Blunt dissection increases adhesions
through the skin and subcutaneous tissue to the lesion (Fig.
The incision is made with a no. 15 knife blade and carried
the anesthetic has worn off, resulting in unsightly hematomas).
permits immediate visualization of blood loss, which helps in
obtaining adequate hemostasis (rather than oozing later when
surgical site and deeply around the mass. In
small masses may be obscured, however, by the use of
large amounts of local anesthesia. The absence of epinephrine
permits immediate visualization of blood loss, which helps in
obtaining adequate hemostasis (rather than oozing later when
the anesthetic has worn off, resulting in unsightly hematomas).
The incision is made with a no. 15 knife blade and carried
through the skin and subcutaneous tissue to the lesion (Fig.
sharp dissection is used to develop the skin flaps to
achieve better exposure. Blunt dissection increases adhesions
and inflammation. The edges of the incision are retracted with
skin hooks. Instruments that will crush the tissue are never used
so as to prevent cutting the tumor into smaller pieces, thus mak-
ing excision more difficult, or to prevent tumor seeding. The
mass may be gently grasped with suture for traction while exci-
sion is performed with sharp dissection. Cautery should be
used only for hemostasis, not for excision of the mass, because
heat may distort estrogen and progesterone receptor evaluation
and margin delineation. If malignancy is suspected, the biopsy
specimen should include a margin of normal tissue around the
mass. Furthermore, estrogen and progesterone receptor sta-
rus and human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 protein
(HER2/neu) evaluation is critical. Ideally, the pathology de-
partment should receive the specimen on ice, because room
temperature (heat) can damage the estrogen and progesterone
receptors.
Closure of the defect left by the excised mass (dead space) is
discouraged because of the increased risk of infection from su-
ture placement and the potential for skin distortion. If a large
defect is obtained, a minimum number of sutures should be used,
and drainage of the site bears additional significance. A
subcuticular closure with 4-0 or 5-0 absorbable material us-
ing Steri-Strips is generally performed. Alternatively, nonab-
sorbable suture can be used and removed 1 or 2 weeks post-
operatively. To prevent hematoma formation, a snugly placed
elastic dressing is applied for 24 to 48 hours. A bra should then
be worn continuously for 3 to 7 days to minimize the risk of
bleeding and discomfort. The patient should avoid heavy lifting
with the affected arm and strenuous activity for 3 to 7 days.
Needle localization excisional biopsy is performed for sus-
picious nonpalpable abnormalities seen on mammography. In
the radiology suite, under local anesthesia, the lesion is iden-
tified by fluoroscopy, and a needle is placed near it. A hooked
wire is inserted through the needle and located just beneath
the lesion. After the needle is removed, the wire is stabilized
on the skin, and the patient is transported to the operat-
ing suite for surgical excision. Incisions similar to those used
for excisional biopsy are made, and the suspected abnormal-
ity and the wire are excised. Radiographic studies are per-
formed on the specimen to ensure that the lesion originally
noted on mammography has been excised in its entirety. This
procedure can be done under local anesthesia in an outpa-
tient setting. The complications are similar to those of exci-
sional biopsies, including bleeding, hematoma formation, and
infection (cellulitis, abscess). Improvements in CNB (either
stereotactic or ultrasound-guided) has made this procedure less
necessary.

Breast Imaging Reporting and Data System (BI-RADS)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category assessment</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Follow-up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>Routine (annual)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Benign</td>
<td>Short interval follow-up at 6 months for ipsilateral breast, followed by both breasts at 1, 2, 3 years after initial mammogram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Probable benign</td>
<td>Biopsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Suspicious for malignancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Highly suggestive of malignancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BREAST CANCER

The risk of breast cancer has reached epidemic proportions, affecting one in eight women who live to the age of 85 years. Its incidence is more that two times that of all female pelvic cancers combined, and it is probably the most feared disease by women today. The increasing lifetime risk for development of breast cancer may be attributed to early detection of prevalent cases, primarily because of the increased use of mammographic screening, and lower mortality that is due to causes other than breast cancer. A millennium of scientific inquiry, theoretical investigation, and systematic experimentation has only now begun to provide the medical profession with prevention strategies for women at high risk.

Thus, breast cancer remains a leading cause of cancer-related mortality, with estimates that more than 40,000 women will die of this disease. Men are not immune; 1,500 new cases of male breast cancer were expected to be diagnosed in 2005. There is good news, though, in that the incidence rates appear to have leveled off in the 1990s after increasing about 4% per year in the 1980s. Additionally, mortality rates have declined since 1992, with the largest decreases noted in younger women (both black and white).

Epidemiology of Breast Cancer

The etiology of breast cancer is multifactorial and, although numerous risk factors have been identified, they only account for 21% of the risk of breast cancer in women age 30 to
Related Surgery

FIGURE 41.27. Technique of excisional biopsy. A: For cosmetic reasons, circumareolar incisions are preferable when the lesion is thought to be within 2 or 3 cm of the areola. Not more than one half of the areolar margin should be incised. A curved incision parallel to the areola is made over lesions further out from the center. When malignant disease is strongly suspected, the surgeon should attempt to avoid the probable path of the subsequent mastectomy incision. B: An intradermal wheal is raised along the path of the proposed incision using 1% lidocaine and a hypodermic (no. 25) needle. From the wheal, deeper injections of anesthetic are made around the circumference of the lesion and beneath it. C: The incision is carried down through the dense subcutaneous tissue and into the lobule containing the lesion. Self-retaining retractors are helpful when an assistant is not available. D: If the lesion is small or easily mobilized, it should be sharply dissected and excised with a thin margin of adjacent tissue. E: The lobular defect is sutured with fine absorbable suture material if the closure places no tension on the overlying skin. Bleeding is controlled with absorbable ligatures or electrocoagulation. Absolute hemostasis is essential. F: The skin is closed with interrupted 4-0 or 5-0 silk or nylon sutures. Drainage is seldom necessary. A pressure dressing for 24 to 48 hours is desirable if a significant amount of dead space has been left behind.

54 years and only 29% in women age 55 to 84 years. Furthermore, nearly three fourths of women with breast cancer have no identifiable risk factors other than sex and age; thus, all women should be considered at risk. Previously identified risk factors for breast cancer include increasing age, nulliparity, delayed childbirth (childbirth before age 18 years portends one third the risk of breast cancer than in a woman delivering at age 35 years), personal or family history of breast cancer, benign proliferative breast disease, obesity in postmenopausal women, a long menstrual history (menarche before age 12 and late menopause), and higher education and socioeconomic status. Lactation has been shown in observational studies to decrease the risk of breast cancer. Other factors—such as fat intake, previous abortions, smoking, prior placental weight, and alcohol intake—have all been suggested to contribute to breast cancer risks, but the associations either show no effect or remain inconclusive, inconsistent, and controversial.

Family History

Family history is the most widely recognized breast cancer risk factor. First-degree female relatives of women with breast carcinoma have two to three times the general population risk of developing the disease. The risk increases even more if the affected relative was premenopausal with bilateral breast disease on diagnosis (eightfold increased risk) compared with a postmenopausal affected relative with only unilateral disease (onethird to twofold increased risk). Centers for Disease
30% to 60%. It is estimated, based on data from families linked to 90%, whereas the risk of ovarian cancer was approximately breast cancer in families with BRCA1 was approximately 80% breast cancer.

p53 mutations, Hras, ataxia-telangiectasia, and as yet unde-served for research settings and is not yet suited for wide-scale ing must be made after a thorough and informed discussion and employment discrimination—the decision to undergo test-ing up a quandary for women at risk for inherited forms of available DNA-based carrier detection became available, open-ethic Breast cancer incidence and mortality rates vary among racial and ethnic groups. For all ages combined, white women are more likely to develop breast cancer, yet African-American women are more likely to die of breast cancer. Native Ameri-cans have the lowest incidence of breast cancer, nearly one third the risk of white women. In addition, Native American and Asian women have approximately one third the mortality of African-American women. Although Hispanic women appear to have a lower incidence of breast cancer (compared with Cau-casian women), some studies have shown a greater proportion of this ethnic group to be less than 50 years of age at diagno-sis, to present with larger tumors, and to have a greater likeli-hood of being estrogen receptor (ER) negative (when compared with Caucasian women). Individuals of Ashkenazi Jewish an-cesty have a higher likelihood of harboring one of the founder mutations of BRCA1 and -2 when combined with other risk fac-tors.

Genetic Predisposition and Hereditary Breast Cancer

The past decade has witnessed an explosion of knowledge in the field of cancer genetics and inherited susceptibility to cancer syndromes. It has been estimated that approximately 5% to 10% of breast cancers are inherited in an autosomal dom-inant pattern. Breast cancer susceptibility genes, BRCA1 and BRCA2, were discovered in the early 1990s and mapped to chromosome 17q and 13q, respectively. In 1996, commercially available DNA-based carrier detection became available, open-ing up a quandary for women at risk for inherited forms of breast cancer. Because these tests are expensive, often diffi-cult to interpret, and documented to have a significant psych-ologic impact for both positive and negative test results— as well as placing healthy individuals at risk for insurance and employment discrimination—the decision to undergo test-ing must be made after a thorough and informed discussion between the physician and the patient. Thus, testing is re-served for research settings and is not yet suited for wide-scale screening.

The only currently known BRCA genes are BRCA1 and BRCA2, thus the discussion herein is based only on these muta-tions. There are more than 1,000 different mutations in BRCA1 and -2. BRCA1 mutation is believed to account for nearly half of all inherited breast cancer cases and nearly 90% of the hered-ity ovarian cancer cases. Similarly, BRCA2 mutations are re-sponsible for approximately 10% of familial breast cancer and 5% to 10% of familial ovarian cancer. Li-Fraumeni syndrome, p53 mutations, Hras, ataxia-telangiectasia, and as yet unde-tected genes appear to account for the other cases of inherited breast cancer.

Initial studies suggest that the lifetime risk of developing breast cancer in families with BRCA1 was approximately 80% to 90%, whereas the risk of ovarian cancer was approximately 30% to 60%. It is estimated, based on data from families linked to BRCA1, that 50% of female mutation carriers will develop breast cancer by age 50 years (compared with 1.7% in the general population) and 85% by age 70 years (compared with 11% in the general population at age 70 years). Pedigree analysis in BRCA2 carriers has identified a similar risk of development of female breast cancer to that seen with BRCA1 mutations. However, the risk of ovarian cancer for carriers of BRCA2 mutations is only 10%. Based on these data, the overall lifetime risk of developing breast or ovarian cancer is nearly 100%. Population-based studies (versus studies based on spe-cific families), however, suggest that the actual overall lifetime cancer risk of mutation carriers is closer to 36% for breast cancer and 16% for ovarian cancer. It is unclear whether these inconsistent results are related to the populations tested, to the size of the studies, or, perhaps, to differences in penetrance between different mutations. Further longitudinal studies may resolve this question.

BRCA mutation carriers not only have an increased overall risk of developing cancer, but commonly have a younger age at onset and a greater probability of second tumors. Accordingly, although the inherited mutations account for only 3% to 10% of all breast cancers, they account for nearly 25% of breast cancer cases diagnosed before the age of 30.

Not only are the BRCA genes associated with increased risk of female malignancies, they have also been shown to be a marker for hereditary cancer syndromes in men. Male breast cancer is much more common in BRCA2 families than in the general population. Five to fifteen percent of male breast can-cer is associated with BRCA2 mutations, with recent data in-dicating an association with BRCA1 mutations as well. Male carriers of BRCA2 mutations have a 6% lifetime risk for the de-velopment of breast cancer compared with 0.1% in the general population.

In addition, other malignancies are increased in BRCA2 carriers, such as laryngeal, prostate, gallbladder, stomach, melanoma, primary peritoneal, and pancreatic cancer. Hence, the BRCA mutation may be transferred to a woman through a male relative. However, a male carrier of a BRCA1 mutation is much more likely to be cancer free than is a woman who car-rries the same mutation. And, although a family history of breast cancer places a mutation carrier at increased risk not only for breast cancer but also for ovarian cancer, her brother will be at similarly increased risk for prostate cancer. It is therefore im-portant to elicit a history of all related malignancies, not just a family history of breast and ovarian cancer. Patients are often unaware that the risk of transmission of a BRCA mutation is equally high from the paternal side and do not volunteer infor-mation about cancers from that side. Episodites of malignancies from both sides of the families must be elicited, including age at onset, bilaterality, and history of multiple primary cancers in an individual in the family.

BRCA1 and BRCA2 are believed to tumor suppressor genes. Inactivation of tumor suppressor genes is almost a uni-versal step in the development of a wide range of cancers in humans and experimental animals. In individuals who are not genetically at increased risk for cancer, environmental muta-genesis with time can result in inactivation of both gene copies. In individuals who have inherited a mutation in one of these tumor suppressor genes, the probability of acquiring additional mutations to produce cancer is significantly increased.

Histologic differences in the hereditary breast cancers com-pared with the sporadic cancers may account for the earlier pre-sentation of cancer in mutation carriers. It has been reported that BRCA1-associated breast cancers are characterized by higher-grade medullary features, overexpression of p53, aneu-ploidy, and high proliferation index relative to sporadic breast
cancers. Essinger and colleagues noted that 19% of BRCA1 cancers were of the mediulary variety, as compared with none in the sporadic cases, suggesting that mediulary cancer alone may be an indication for susceptibility testing. Additionally, BRCA1-associated cancers are ER negative 65% to 80% of the time, compared with a rate of 25% to 35% in sporadic cancers. In contrast, the excess of ER-negative tumors is not demonstrated in the BRCA2-associated cancers. Moreover, the clinicopathologic characteristics of BRCA2-associated cancers are similar to sporadic breast cancers with the suggestion of higher grades. However, a number of studies have found no differences between prognosis in BRCA-associated cancers and sporadic cancers. Thus, the issue remains unresolved and suggests the need for longitudinal studies to ferret out this needed information.

The frequency of a BRCA1 mutation in the general population is estimated to be 1 in 500 to 1 in 1,000 (with BRCA2 mutations occurring somewhat less), although it appears to be higher in certain ethnic groups, such as Ashkenazi Jews, in whom it is estimated to be 1%. In the Ashkenazi Jewish population (of eastern or central European origin), three different founder mutations have been identified: 185delAG and 5382insC in BRCA1 and 6174delT in BRCA2. Estimates indicate that 1 in 40 Ashkenazi individuals carry one of these founder mutations, and they are responsible for 25% of the early-onset breast cancer in this population. Current investigations indicate the estimated gene frequency in the general population may be artificially high because of ascertainment bias in the initial studies of high-risk families.

Testing for BRCA1 and BRCA2

Our knowledge regarding BRCA mutations is far from complete, and many incongruencies form the basis of our present information. The decision to proceed with genetic testing for BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutations is complex. Considerable caution must be used in counseling patients because definitive data are limited. Therefore, genetic counseling is an essential element of breast cancer susceptibility testing. The ability to reassure those with negative tests is limited by the possible existence of other—as yet undiscovered—genes. Nonpenetrance of the gene may make pedigree interpretation difficult in that absence of cancer in a parent cannot necessarily be interpreted to mean that the children are not at risk. A history of multiple affected first-degree relatives, bilateral disease, early or premenopausal age at onset, male breast cancer, and a family history of both ovarian and breast cancer increases the probability of having an inherited predisposition to breast cancer.

It is preferable to test an affected family member to document the particular familial BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation. A negative result in the proband is most meaningful in a situation in which the family member has previously tested positive. In the absence of the detectable mutation in the proband, the patient may be reassured that she does not have the high risk of cancer seen in her family. She should be counseled, however, that she still has a baseline risk of cancer seen in the general population (one in eight for women who live to age 85 years) and that she should continue usual care, such as mammography and breast examination. On the other hand, if the family member with cancer has not or cannot be tested, the interpretation of the result is more problematic. Either (i) a BRCA mutation is present but was not detected by the test (possibly because of the testing modality or polymorphisms); (ii) a BRCA mutation is present in the family but was not inherited by the proband; (iii) there is no BRCA mutation, but another gene mutation exists (as yet unidentified or related to a regulatory gene); or (iv) the proband does not have inherited breast cancer predisposition, nor do other family members. In the last case, again, the woman still has a risk equal to the general population for sporadic forms of breast cancer. One study showed that one third of mutations detected involved deletions that are not currently detectable. Moreover, the summary, present techniques do not identify all disease-causing mutations, and patients need to be informed of the limitations of the present technology.

Hormonal Replacement Therapy

No issue related to breast cancer risk has been fraught with as much controversy as has the use of exogenous hormones. The extensive research conducted to answer this question has expanded the debate rather than resolved it. Currently, nearly 42 million American women are postmenopausal, and this number is predicted to increase to 62 million by 2020. Before the Women's Health Initiative study, nearly 40% of postmenopausal women in the United States used HRT; thus, the association of breast cancer with the use of HRT received considerable attention in the medical and lay press.

Initial case control studies did not find an increased risk of breast cancer associated with the use of HRT, but these studies were limited by statistical power and methodological problems. A review of the epidemiologic studies on postmenopausal hormone therapy and the risk of breast cancer also failed to provide definitive evidence regarding this issue because results are inconsistent. The Nurses Health Study (69,586 participants) and the Collaborative Group on Hormonal Factors in Breast Cancer refute previous data and indicate that current users of HRT have a relative risk of 1.33 of developing breast cancer but note no increased risk with past use. The sheer number of participants warrants giving great credibility to these findings. In addition, four subsequent metaanalyses note a slight increased risk in long-term users of HRT (>15 years), although here also there are conflicting results, affected by dosage and duration of HRT use. In contrast, the Four State Case Control Study and the Iowa Women's Health Study showed no change in the risk of breast cancer diagnosis with long-term current use. Note that metaanalyses have the same flaws in methodology and bias as the initial epidemiologic studies on which they are based. Pooling several groups of data does not remove this problem; thus, this information should be viewed with caution. Nevertheless, the trend propels one to consider these findings when making recommendations to patients.

The Women's Health Initiative was a randomized primary prevention trial and persists as pivotal study of this decade. There were 16,608 postmenopausal women aged 50 to 79 with intact uterus at baseline recruited. After slightly more than 5 years of follow-up, the risk of coronary heart disease (CHD) (nonfatal myocardial infarction and CHD death) increased by 29%, breast cancer by 26%, and stroke by 41%, and the risk of pulmonary embolism doubled. Conversely, the risks of hip fractures and colorectal cancer were decreased by more than 30%. Absolute excess risks per 10,000 person years attributable to estrogen plus progestin were seven more CHD events, eight more strokes, eight more pulmonary embolisms, and eight more invasive breast cancers, whereas absolute risk reductions per 10,000 person years were six fewer colorectal cancers and five fewer hip fractures. Based on this
information, the combined arm of the study was halted; how-
ever, the estrogen-only arm continued, showing no increased risk of breast cancer. Recalling these data is difficult. Many have criticized this study, as the age of initiation of HRT use was greater than generally used, body mass index (BMI) stratifi-
cation showed greater risk in obese women, and more than half of the women had other risk factors for cardiac disease, includ-
ing smoking, diabetes, hypertension, hypercholesterolemia, or prior coronary event. Many have speculated that because the study closed after an average 5 years of follow-up, possibly the detected breast cancers were present before patient accrual into the study. Detailed discussions with patients regarding this information is overall reassuring.

On the other hand, additional data are being compiled showing benefits to HRT when breast cancer is diagnosed. Survival data indicate that the risk of mortality from breast cancer was decreased among women who were using HRT at the time of diagnosis compared with age-matched nonusers. HRT user-associated cancers were more likely to be less ad-
vanced clinically and more likely to be ER positive. Possibly this information supports the idea that the increased risk of breast cancer diagnosis among users of HRT may result from detection bias, wherein participants were more likely to see a physician regularly and have regular breast examination and mammography.

In summary, studies occurring over the preceding 25 years contain conflicting information regarding HRT use in post-
menopausal women. Sufficient evidence exists to indicate an increased risk of breast cancer associated with postmenopausal estrogen use. Patients must consider this possibility in their in-
formed decision making. In addition, the role these agents may play in the development of cancers in genetically predisposed women has to be evaluated. Although HRT use can improve the overall health of women with a genetic risk, it should not be initiated solely for the purpose of prevention of CHD events and should be used for the shortest duration possible for ame-
lioration of menopausal symptoms.

**Oral Contraceptive Medications**

OCPs are used by nearly 11 million women worldwide and are the second most popular contraceptive method available (surpassed only by female sterilization). Since its approval by the FDA in 1960, OCPs have become one of the most exten-
sively studied medications ever prescribed. Recent studies re-
lating OCPs to breast cancer have yielded conflicting results, thus the issue continues to be controversial. Interestingly, OCPs have been shown to decrease the risk of ovarian cancer. This creates a quandary for their use in BRCA mutation carriers, who are at increased risk for both breast and ovarian cancer.

Case control studies, including the Cancer and Steroid Horm-
One Study, initially showed no overall association between OCP use and the development of breast cancer. However, the enrollees were not representative of the current OCP user who is younger, uses OCPs for longer duration, and delays initial versus subsequent pregnancies. Reanalysis of the data shows a correlation between certain subgroups and an increased risk of development of breast cancer, specifically among women using OCPs before their first full-term pregnancy, women age 25 to 34, and long-term users. By age 50 years, the cumulative risk is the same in users and nonusers, and there is no evidence of increased overall breast cancer risk, even with prolonged dura-
tion of use. Although incongruous, it may be that estrogen in OCPs stimulates breast cancer, promotes its growth, and makes it detectable, so that it is more likely to be diagnosed while the OCP user is younger, yet without conferring an increase in over-
all lifetime risk. Another possibility is that the increased risk seen in these analyses represents detection bias—that is, women taking OCPs are more likely to have breast examinations and thus are more likely to have the diagnosis made while they are younger. Furthermore, the Nurses Health Study, a prospective cohort study of more than 100,000 female nurses in the United States, showed no increased risk of breast cancer or breast can-
cer mortality in past users of OCPs. In a metaanalysis of 54 studies, a relative risk of 1.24 was associated with current use of OCPs (p = 0.001). The risk was elevated for 10 years after use of oral contraceptives was discontinued but was not influ-
ce the general history of breast cancer, which contrasts with the 2000 study mentioned below. In many of these studies, the increased risk was noted only in women taking OCPs before 1975 when formulations were likely to contain higher dosages of estrogen and progestrogens than that in OCPs today.

Studies specifically of women at high risk for breast can-
cer have also generated contradictory results. In women with a family history of breast cancer and OCP use, a 1989 study by Mutry (with more than 4,500 women) showed no association with subsequent development of breast cancer. Conversely, a study published in 2000 involving 426 families (3,300 women with a positive family history for breast or ovarian cancer) revealed a threefold increased risk of development of breast can-
cer in those with a family history compared with those with-
out such history who also used OCPs. However, other authors believe the strength of the study and indicate they would con-
tinue to support use of low-dose formulations in women with a family history of breast cancer unless the cancer history was compelling.

Additionally, Narod and colleagues showed that OCP use may provide a reduction in the risk of ovarian cancer specifi-
cally in women harboring BRCA1 and -2 mutations. Marckbanks and associates showed that neither use of OCPs nor the initiation of OCP use at a young age was associated with an increased risk of breast cancer in women with a family history of breast cancer.

The purported associations must be placed in perspective, though. It is evident that case control studies have inferior methodological strength compared with the gold standard of RCTs. The conclusions may be imprecise because of the low numbers of participants in some studies. Also, studies have not included current low-dose formulations in wide-scale, but have been based on previous high-dose OCPs, which clearly may confer higher risk. Finally, studies often include women with a family history of both ovarian and breast cancer, whereas there is evidence that OCPs actually decrease the risk of ovarian and endometrial cancer in the general population.

Overall, it appears that long-term use of OCPs is associ-
ated with a modest increase in the risk of early-onset breast cancer in the general population and a decrease in the risk of ovarian cancer (at least 50% reduction in an unselected pop-
ulation of women). As patients carrying the BRCA1 gene have a 50% to 80% lifetime risk of developing breast cancer and a 25% to 45% lifetime risk of ovarian cancer, OCP use may create a quandary. Narod and associates found an increased risk of early-onset breast cancer among BRCA1 mutation car-
ers who first used OCPs before 1975, who used them before age 30, or who used them for 5 or more years. OCP use did not appear to be associated with the risk of breast cancer in BRCA2 carriers, although data for this group were limited. However, the same authors also found a reduced risk of ovarian cancer in both BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers. The author suggests that OCP use after age 30 is not likely to increase the risk of breast cancer among BRCA1 carriers.
Mammographic Breast Density

Assessing the impact of breast density on breast cancer risk is hampered by data comparisons derived by applying differing mammographic screening intervals and by improvements in radiographic technology that may hinder our ability to accurately analyze and generalize the information. Nonetheless, women with greater mammographic density have been reported to have a four- to sixfold increased risk of breast cancer. This relationship has also been shown in differing ethnic groups. Increased density impairs the detection of breast masses, increases interval cancers, and produces false-positive recalls with the associated patient psychological stress and elevated costs of care. The likelihood of dense breasts increases with nulliparity, older age at first birth, and current use of postmenopausal hormone therapy (about 23% of women taking combined HRT have increased density in their breast tissue) and decreases with advancing age and increasing body weight. The correlation with nulliparity supports the assertion that early pregnancy produces structural change in the breast tissue that persists throughout life and is associated with resistance to proliferation.

Moreover, hormonal agents associated with increased breast cancer risk (estrogen and progesterin) likewise increase breast density, whereas hormonal agents that decrease risk (tamoxifen and raloxifene) likewise decrease breast density. The breast is rapidly responsive either to initiation or discontinuation of hormones, with increases in mammographic density noted largely within the first year and decrease in density occurring in as little as 2 weeks after withdrawal. In postmenopausal women on HRT (especially continuous combined as opposed to sequential regimens), many studies have indicated a 5% to 20% decreased mammographic sensitivity in hormone users with dense breasts. Yet current evidence does not explain whether the increased density associated with hormone therapy specifically changes an individual's risk of breast cancer development. In an effort to influence a woman's risk of developing breast cancer, anticancer, breast cancer, and ovarian cancer. As these women are at risk for breast and ovarian cancer, incorporating their information into the ROCA (risk of ovarian cancer algorithm) model may be helpful, with initial studies showing specificity of 99% and positive predictive value of 19%. Counseling must stress that these figures are estimates and not absolute risks, and thus balance the magnitude of risk for the individual patient.

Breast Cancer Risk Reduction

Several algorithms have been developed to estimate a woman's risk of developing breast cancer, with the best known of these being the Gail and Claus models. The Gail Model Risk Assessment Tool (Fig. 41.28) incorporates the patient's race, current age, age at menarche and first live birth, number of first-degree relatives with breast cancer, number of previous breast biopsies, and histology (as modified) results in generating an estimate of breast cancer risk. Limitations of this model include inclusion of only first-degree relatives, lack of information on the age at menarche or Ashkanazi Jewish background and lack of inclusion of a history of ovarian cancer. Conversely, the Claus model, using fewer categories, incorporates maternal and paternal breast cancer family history, first- and second-degree relatives, and the relative's age at cancer diagnosis. Although helpful in diagnosing, models are often inappropriate to the proband. In particular, the Gail model cannot be used for women younger than 35 years of age and is less accurate in women who do not obtain annual mammograms. Moreover, studies have shown that the Gail model underestimates risk in women with a personal history of breast cancer and those who are BRCA positive. Concordance of the two models is only fair, but only the Gail model has been clinically validated.

The BRCAPRO model developed by Parmigiani and colleagues, provides estimates of the likelihood of harboring the BRCA mutation. This model incorporates information regarding relatives diagnosed with early-onset breast cancer, male breast cancer, and ovarian cancer. As these women are at risk for breast and ovarian cancer, incorporating their information into the ROCA (risk of ovarian cancer algorithm) model may be helpful, with initial studies showing specificity of 99% and positive predictive value of 19%. Counseling must stress that these figures are estimates and not absolute risks, and thus balance the magnitude of risk for the individual patient.

Increased Surveillance

In a consensus statement by the Cancer Genetics Study Consortium (CGSC), it is recommended that carriers of BRCA mutations have vigilant surveillance through monthly self-examination beginning in early adulthood (18–21 years), annual or semiannual CBE, and annual mammography starting at age 25 to 30 years. The benefit of close follow-up alone for women at increased risk of breast cancer include increased cancer surveillance, chemoprevention, lifestyle modifications, and prophylactic (or risk-reducing) surgeries (mastectomy and/or oophorectomy).

Risk reduction options in women at increased risk for breast cancer include increased cancer surveillance, chemoprevention, lifestyle modifications, and prophylactic (or risk-reducing) surgeries (mastectomy and/or oophorectomy).

Increased Surveillance

In a consensus statement by the Cancer Genetics Study Consortium (CGSC), it is recommended that carriers of BRCA mutations have vigilant surveillance through monthly self-examination beginning in early adulthood (18–21 years), annual or semiannual CBE, and annual mammography starting at age 25 to 30 years. The benefit of close follow-up alone for women at increased risk of breast cancer include increased cancer surveillance, chemoprevention, lifestyle modifications, and prophylactic (or risk-reducing) surgeries (mastectomy and/or oophorectomy).

Increased Surveillance

In a consensus statement by the Cancer Genetics Study Consortium (CGSC), it is recommended that carriers of BRCA mutations have vigilant surveillance through monthly self-examination beginning in early adulthood (18–21 years), annual or semiannual CBE, and annual mammography starting at age 25 to 30 years. The benefit of close follow-up alone for women at increased risk of breast cancer include increased cancer surveillance, chemoprevention, lifestyle modifications, and prophylactic (or risk-reducing) surgeries (mastectomy and/or oophorectomy).
the current screening modalities of CA125 and transvaginal ultrasonography can be effectively used for widespread disease screening; these currently available screening tests may be applicable to patients at risk for hereditary ovarian cancer syndromes with appropriate counseling.

Chemoprevention

Chemoprevention became an option for risk reduction based on information from the Breast Cancer Prevention Trial (BCPT), which was launched in 1992. This clinical trial (NSABP P-1) randomized 13,207 healthy women at increased risk for breast cancer (based on Family History) to either placebo or tamoxifen 20 mg/day. The short-term risk of invasive breast cancer was reduced by 43% and that of noninvasive cancer reduced by 37%, particularly in women with a history of atypical hyperplasia (p<0.00001). Tamoxifen significantly reduced the rate of ER-positive tumors but had no effect on ER-negative tumors. However, as anticipated from the experience of women taking tamoxifen for breast cancer treatment, the drug was associated with an increased risk of thromboembolic disease, endometrial cancer, and cataracts. However, a decreased rate of fractures was noted. The earlier results of this trial prompted approval of tamoxifen by the FDA for use in the reduction of breast cancer incidence in 1998, despite two other negative trials from Europe. Several factors may account for the discrepancy, including dissimilar inclusion criteria, the length of treatment, and the length of follow-up.

The International Breast Intervention Study (IBIS I) closely replicated the findings of the BCPT. In this trial, nearly 7,200 women aged 35 to 70 were randomized to receive tamoxifen or placebo. Women enrolled had a fourfold increased risk of breast cancer compared with the general population, in most cases based on family history. A 32% reduction was noted in the group receiving tamoxifen. It is unclear how effective tamoxifen is in reducing breast cancer risk in women with hereditary breast cancer. Because the majority of cancers in BRCA1 mutation carriers are ER negative, one would not expect tamoxifen to be effective. However, BRCA2 carriers often have ER-positive tumors and thus are more likely to be responsive to tamoxifen chemoprophylaxis. Conversely, bilateral oophorectomy (which also affects the estrogenic effects on breast and endometrial tissue and estrogenic effects on bone, lipid metabolism, and blood clotting. Raloxifene binds to estrogen receptors to competitively block estrogen-induced DNA transcription in the breast and endometrium. Because raloxifene does not increase the risk of endometrial cancer as seen with tamoxifen, it is particularly attractive as a preventive strategy in reducing the incidence of breast cancer. Raloxifene is being studied in the second NSABP prevention trial, the STAR (Study of Tamoxifen and Raloxifene) trial. This trial enrolled 6,139 postmenopausal women at increased risk for breast cancer (based on Family History) in the first year. The study is designed to determine whether raloxifene (60 mg/day) is as effective as tamoxifen in reducing breast cancer risk. The results of this trial should be available in 2006. Results from the multicenter, randomized, double-blind Multiple Outcomes of Raloxifene Evaluation (MORE) trial revealed a 76% decreased risk of breast cancer among postmenopausal women with osteoporosis during 3 years of treatment with raloxifene; however, no objective tumor response was noted in patients with metastatic breast cancer in a phase II clinical trial. The trial was not accrued with breast cancer as a primary end point; thus, additional information is necessary to determine the possible benefits of this SERM over tamoxifen.

Many clinical trials are ongoing to determine additional effective options in the arena of chemoprevention. Based on benefits over tamoxifen noted in early breast cancer patients, aromatase inhibitors are being reviewed. Moreover, interest in using suppressants of prostaglandin synthesis has been stimulated by epidemiological observations that the use of aspirin and other NSAIDs is associated with a reduced incidence of breast cancer by nearly 30%. In preclinical models, COX-2 inhibitors reduced the incidence and growth of ER-positive tumors. Moreover, an additive effect with aromatase inhibitors in preventing tumor growth was also seen. NSAIDs function through inhibition of the cyclooxygenase enzyme (COX). The COX-2 enzyme is induced in both in situ and invasive breast cancers resulting in overexpression. COX-2 catalyzes the conversion of arachidonic acid to prostaglandin E2. This prostaglandin in turn up-regulates a number of intracellular growth pathways, resulting in increased angiogenesis, induction of aromatase activity, cell growth, and division. It is postulated that inhibition of COX-2 may have a general anti-cancer effect via decreased blood vessel formation, decreased cell growth, and enhanced apoptosis, as has been seen in mammary carcinogenesis in rats. It remains to be seen if these findings can be extrapolated to humans, possibly resulting in modulation of a critical step in the initiation and promotion as well as progression of breast cancer. Moreover, the finding of a fourfold increased risk of breast cancer reduction, however, are recent concerns regarding cardiovascular risks associated with this class of medications. Two randomized trials have yielded conflicting results. Born out of the premise that much of the gastrointestinal toxicity appeared to be related to COX-2 (which predominates in the gastric mucosa and yields protective prostaglandins), pharmaceutical efforts were redirected toward development of a COX-2 inhibitor as an antiinflammatory agent without gastrointestinal toxicity. The Vioxx Gastrointestinal Outcomes Research Study (VIGOR: 8,076 patients) showed the relative risk of developing a cardiovascular event was nearly twofold greater in the COX-2 inhibitor rofecoxib compared with naproxen. The Celecoxib Long-term Arthritis Safety Study (CLASS; 8,059 patients) revealed no significant difference in cardiovascular event rates between celecoxib and NSAIDs. Of note, the annualized myocardial infarction rates for COX-2 inhibitors in both trials were significantly higher than that in the placebo group of a recent metaanalysis of prevention trials. Additional data reported at the European Congress on Rheumatology about a cohort of 651,000 adult patients featuring nearly 2.4 million patient years of follow-up support the notion that non-COX-2 inhibitor NSAIDs may have equivalent effectiveness in causing myocardial infarction as compared with COX-2 inhibitors (except rofecoxib, which has a higher rate than other noncoxibs). Thus, the available data raise a cautionary flag about the risk of cardiovascular events with COX-2 inhibitors and have prompted a black box warning by the FDA. Many ongoing prevention trials involving COX-2 inhibitors have consequently been placed on hold, and additional trials may have difficulty accruing additional patients. Accordingly, additional trials using COX-2 inhibitors may be difficult to attain, although further analysis of prospective data is needed to
characterize the magnitude of cardiovascular risk and breast cancer risk reduction. Trials such as PRECISION (Prospective Randomized Evaluation of C efcoxib Integrated Safety vs. Ibuprofen or Naproxen) was recently opened to evaluate this issue with the anticipated accrual of 20,000 patients. Results are expected in 2009.

Lipophilic statins (atorvastatin, simvastatin, lovastatin), which more readily permeate cell and nuclear membranes (which in theory should enhance full expression of the statins’ pleiotropic benefits), have been shown to reduce the likelihood of developing ER-negative breast cancer. Mouse studies, which laid the groundwork for these studies, also showed that lipophilic statins conferred protection against ER-negative murine breast carcinoma. Based on these encouraging results and the statins’ remarkably good safety profile, studies are developing to review these statins’ role in breast cancer prevention.

**Lifestyle Modification**

Although heredity may be the strongest risk for development of breast and ovarian cancer syndromes, reproductive risk factors may be modifiable. Early age of first live birth and increased parity appear to lower the risk of breast cancer development. Use of fertility drugs and ovulation induction may need to be reevaluated. OCP use appears to increase the risk of breast cancer but decreases the risk of ovarian cancer. Modification of diet, alcohol consumption, exercise, or lactation is unlikely to have profound alterations, especially on genetically determined breast cancer risk. There are few prospective, randomized controlled trials that directly address breast cancer risk modification in women with hereditary breast cancer syndromes.

**Prophylactic Surgeries**

Prophylactic oophorectomy and mastectomy are attempts to remove at-risk healthy tissue before the onset of cancer. However, neither approach removes all the risk. Furthermore, there are a number of traditional risk factors that play a role in the onset of carcinogenesis, but for BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers, these remain unknown.

Even though these women’s greatest concern may be breast cancer, gynecologists should advise that they are also at risk for ovarian cancer and can substantially reduce risk by undergoing risk-reduction surgery. Analysis of case control data from women with a BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers, these remain unknown. Initially, subcutaneous mastectomy was performed wherein breast tissue is removed with preservation of the nipple-areolar complex; however, subsequent cases of breast cancer development were noted. This procedure has been largely abandoned because only 90% to 95% of the breast parenchyma is removed. Residual ductal tissue remains adherent to the undersurface of the nipple-areolar complex, and nipple sensation is not preserved. Conversely, simple or total mastectomy (skin-sparing removal of the breast tissue) has supplanted the subcutaneous procedure, because the cosmetic result after this procedure is excellent. Total mastectomy reduces the amount of breast tissue remaining postoperatively; however, cases of breast cancer after this procedure have been reported.

Although there is limited data regarding the efficacy of prophylactic surgery, statistical models suggest that certain women at high risk for development of breast or ovarian cancer may gain 2.9 to 5.3 years of life expectancy by undergoing prophylactic mastectomies as well as 0.3 to 1.7 years in life expectancy with prophylactic oophorectomy. To place this gain in perspective, studies of mammography in normal risk women have life expectancy gains of less than 0.7 years. Whereas prophylactic surgery is not a panacea for women with a genetic predisposition for cancer, identification of the women at high risk and counseling of her options is an important aspect of her care. Prophylactic surgery may be a reasonable approach for women at substantially high risk for breast cancer who are willing to accept its irreversible consequence.

### Related Surgery

Partly as a result of widespread adherence to mammographic screening, breast cancer is being detected at earlier stages.
TABLE 41.11
STAGING FOR BREAST CARCINOMA

DEFINITIONS:
PRIMARY TUMOR (T)
Definitions for classifying the primary tumor (T) are the same for clinical and for pathologic classification. If the measurement is made by physical examination, the examiner will use the major headings (T1, T2, or T3). If other measurements, such as mammographic or pathologic measurements are used, the subsets of T1 can be used. Tumors should be measured to the nearest 0.1 cm increment.

T1 Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension
T1mic Microinvasion 0.1 cm or less in greatest dimension
T1a Tumor more than 0.1 cm but not more than 0.5 cm in greatest dimension
T1b More than 0.5 cm but not more than 1 cm in greatest dimension
T1c More than 1 cm but not more than 2 cm in greatest dimension
T2 Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
T3 Tumor more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
T4 Tumor of any size with direct extension to (a) chest wall or (b) skin, only as described below
T4a Extension to chest wall, not including pectoralis muscle
T4b Edema (including peau d’orange) or ulceration of the skin of breast, or satellite skin nodules confined to the same breast
T4c Both T4a and T4b
T4d Inflammatory carcinoma

Nearly 64% of white women and 53% of African-American women are presenting with localized disease. A critical aspect of breast cancer treatment is full knowledge of the extent of disease and microscopic features that contribute to the determination of the stage of disease, assist in the estimation of the risk of recurrence, and yield information predictive of tumor response. Breast cancer is staged clinically according to tumor size, regional lymph node involvement, and distant metastasis (TNM classification) (Table 41.11). The American Joint Committee on Cancer staging was modified in 2003 to incorporate a reclassification of nodal status by the number of involved lymph nodes and use of sentinel lymph node biopsy, distinguishing between micrometastases and isolated tumor cells on the basis of size and histologic evidence of malignant activity and change in staging if clavicular or internal mammary nodes are involved. These changes dramatically affect stage-specific survival.

Complete staging includes a thorough history, physical examination, bilateral mammography (ultrasound as necessary), pretreatment chest radiograph, and routine blood studies,
### TABLE 41.11

**REGIONAL LYMPH NODES (N)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical</th>
<th>Pathologic (pN)a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>pNX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>pN0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>pN0(i−)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>pN0(i+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2a</td>
<td>pN0(mol−)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2b</td>
<td>pN0(mol+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>pN0(i−)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3a</td>
<td>pN0(i+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3b</td>
<td>pN0(mol−)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3c</td>
<td>pN0(mol+)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Clinical:**
- Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed (e.g., previously removed)
- No regional lymph node metastasis
- Metastases to movable ipsilateral axillary lymph node(s)
- Metastases in ipsilateral axillary lymph nodes fixed or matted, or in clinically apparent* ipsilateral internal mammary nodes in the absence of clinically evident axillary lymph node metastasis
- Metastasis in ipsilateral axillary lymph nodes fixed to one another (matted) or to other structures
- Metastasis only in clinically apparent* ipsilateral internal mammary nodes and in the absence of clinically evident axillary lymph node metastasis
- Metastasis in ipsilateral infracavicular lymph node(s) with or without axillary lymph node involvement, or in clinically apparent* ipsilateral internal mammary lymph node(s) and in the presence of clinically evident axillary lymph node metastasis, or metastasis in ipsilateral supraclavicular lymph node(s) with or without axillary or internal mammary lymph node involvement
- Metastasis in ipsilateral infraclavicular lymph node(s)
- Metastasis in ipsilateral internal mammary lymph node(s) and axillary lymph node(s)
- Metastasis in ipsilateral supraclavicular lymph node(s)

**Pathologic (pN)a:**
- Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed (e.g., previously removed, or not removed for pathologic study)
- No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, no additional examination for isolated tumor cells (ITC)
- No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, negative IHC
- No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, positive IHC, no IHC cluster greater than 0.2 mm
- No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, negative molecular findings (RT•PCR)b

*Clinically apparent is defined as detected by imaging studies (excluding lymphoscintigraphy) or by clinical examination or grossly visible pathologically.

**Isolated tumor cells (ITC):**
- Defined as single tumor cells or small cell clusters not greater than 0.2 mm, usually detected only by immunohistochemical (IHC) or molecular methods but which may be verified on H&E stains. ITCs do not usually show evidence of malignant activity, e.g., proliferation or stromal reaction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isolated tumor cells (ITC)</th>
<th>Regional lymph node metastasis histologically, negative IHC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pN0(i−)</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, negative IHC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0(i+)</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, positive IHC, no IHC cluster greater than 0.2 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN0(mol−)</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, negative molecular findings (RT•PCR)b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Including hematologic and liver panels, pathology slides should be reviewed, and of course ER, PR, and HER2 status should be determined. Breast MRI may be considered for BCS for preoperative evaluation of the extent of disease and detection of mammographically occult disease in the breast; however, decision making should include tissue sampling of suspicious areas. Routine bone scan is not cost-effective in that only 0.6% of asymptomatic patients have a positive bone scan. However, bone scans may be helpful if patients experience localized symptoms, elevated alkaline phosphatase, or otherwise are at increased risk for metastasis. In addition, abdominal imaging is optional in early-stage disease but may be helpful if elevated alkaline phosphatase, abnormal liver function tests, or advanced disease (stage III or above) is present. Mammography is essential to adequate staging, even in the most obvious cases. Synchronous cancer is present in 4% to 5% of patients, and multicentric disease may be discovered in the involved breast. Furthermore, the clinical nodal status is often incorrect, with a false-positive and false-negative rate of approximately 25%. The pathologic stage of the primary lesion...
Breast Diseases: Benign and Malignant

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 41.11</th>
<th>STAGING FOR BREAST CARCINOMA (Continued)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>pN0(mol)</strong></td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis histologically, positive molecular findings (RT-PCR)(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pN1</strong></td>
<td>Metastasis in 1 to 3 axillary lymph nodes, and/or in internal mammary nodes with microscopic disease detected by sentinel lymph node dissection but not clinically apparent** (\text{if} \ n = 0 \ (sn))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pN2</strong></td>
<td>Metastasis in 4 to 9 axillary lymph nodes, or in clinically apparent* internal mammary lymph nodes in the absence of axillary lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pN3</strong></td>
<td>Metastasis in 10 or more axillary lymph nodes, or in clinically apparent* internal mammary lymph nodes in the presence of 1 or more positive axillary lymph nodes; or in more than 3 axillary lymph nodes with clinically negative microscopic metastasis in internal mammary lymph nodes; or in ipsilateral suprachlavicular lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(\text{RT-PCR: reverse transcriptase/polymerase chain reaction.}\)

*Classification is based on axillary lymph node dissection with or without sentinel lymph node dissection. Classification based solely on sentinel lymph node dissection without subsequent axillary lymph node dissection is designated \((sn)\) for "sentinel node," e.g., \(\text{pN0(i+) (sn)}.\)

**RT-PCR: reverse transcriptase/polymerase chain reaction.

| **pN1a** | Metastasis in 1 to 3 axillary lymph nodes |
| **pN1b** | Metastasis in internal mammary nodes with microscopic disease detected by sentinel lymph node dissection but not clinically apparent** |
| **pN1c** | Metastasis in 1 to 3 axillary lymph nodes and in internal mammary lymph nodes with microscopic disease detected by sentinel lymph node dissection but not clinically apparent** (If associated with greater than 3 positive axillary lymph nodes, the internal mammary nodes are classified as pN3b to reflect increased tumor burden) |
| **pN2a** | Metastasis in 4 to 9 axillary lymph nodes (at least one tumor deposit greater than 0.2 mm) |
| **pN2b** | Metastasis in clinically apparent* internal mammary lymph nodes in the absence of axillary lymph node metastasis |
| **pN3a** | Metastasis in 10 or more axillary lymph nodes, or in intracavicular lymph nodes, or in clinically apparent* ipsilateral internal mammary lymph nodes in the presence of 1 or more positive axillary lymph nodes; or in more than 3 axillary lymph nodes with clinically negative microscopic metastasis in internal mammary lymph nodes; or in ipsilateral suprachlavicular lymph nodes |
| **pN3b** | Metastasis in clinically apparent* ipsilateral internal mammary lymph nodes in the presence of 1 or more positive axillary lymph nodes; or in more than 3 axillary lymph nodes and in internal mammary lymph nodes with microscopic disease detected by sentinel lymph node dissection but not clinically apparent** |
| **pN3c** | Metastasis in ipsilateral suprachlavicular lymph nodes |

*Clinically apparent is defined as detected by imaging studies (excluding lymphoscintigraphy) or by clinical examination.

*Not clinically apparent is defined as not detected by imaging studies (excluding lymphoscintigraphy) or by clinical examination.

---

Based on histologic examination at the time of surgery is the main determinant of actuarial survival of the patient. Staging is reflective of 5-year survival rates. The 5-year survival rate for localized breast cancer has increased from 72% in the 1940s to nearly 98%. If the cancer has spread regionally, however, the survival rate is 81%. There is a significant decrease in survival to 26% for women with distant spread. African-American women have a lower overall 5-year survival rate compared with Caucasian women (76.7% vs. 90.3%), This is surmised to be reflective of fewer presenting with early-stage disease or premature termination of chemotherapy. A better understanding of the determinants of suboptimal
### TABLE 41.11

STAGING FOR BREAST CARCINOMA (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DISTANT METASTASIS (M)</th>
<th>MX</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MX</td>
<td>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STAGE GROUPING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*TI includes T1mic.

Stage designation may be changed if post-surgical imaging studies reveal the presence of distant metastasis, provided that the studies are carried out within 4 months of diagnosis in the absence of disease progression and provided that the patient has not received neoadjuvant therapy.

treatment may lead to interventions that can reduce racial disparities and improve breast cancer outcomes for all women (Fig. 41.29).

Pathology

Cancers of the mammary gland comprise a histologically heterogeneous group of tumors. More than 90% of breast cancers arise with the ducts. Infiltrating or invasive ductal carcinoma (IDC) is by far the most common histologic pattern of breast cancer seen, constituting 68% of cases (Fig. 41.30). Infiltrating lobular carcinoma (ILC) is the second most frequent cancer of the breast at 6.3% incidence. Other histologic subtypes include medullary carcinoma (2.8%), mucinous adenocarcinoma (2.2%), comedocarcinoma (1.4%), and Paget disease (1.1%). Papillary carcinoma, tubular adenocarcinoma, and inflammatory carcinoma each have an incidence of less than 1%. Inflammatory carcinoma is by far the most aggressive of the histologic types and has the poorest 5-year rate of 18%.

Terminology, however, has been confusing in that nearly three fourths of infiltrating carcinomas of the breast have been included in the imprecise category of infiltrating ductal or adenocarcinoma, not otherwise specified. Much of the terminology of breast cancer is divided into lobular and ductal, based principally on historical perspectives. Initially, early classifications used the term lobular to refer to lobular carcinoma in situ, and those without a lobular pattern were referred to as ductal; hence, the term ductal has no specific meaning. In fact, the majority of breast cancers originate in the terminal duct lobular unit, but these terms have impelling familiarity and are thus the basis of much of the scientific literature. Some authors promote the histologic classification that recognized special types of mammary carcinoma defined in terms of specific histologic criteria (lobular, tubular, medullary, and...
mucinous carcinomas). Because of its familiarity and to judge against current literature, the earlier terminology is used herein.

IDC accounts for the majority of breast cancers. These lesions usually present as stony hard masses resulting from the density of the fibrous tissue stroma. Tumors on average are approximately 2 cm and rarely exceed 4 to 5 cm. These are more often detected by mammography because of their increased frequency of calcifications compared with ILC. Additionally, this variant commonly metastasizes to the axillary lymph nodes.

Fleshy tumors are characteristic of medullary carcinoma, which can measure up to 5 to 10 cm in diameter. The histopathologic appearance exhibits a predominance of syncytial cells, lymphocytic infiltrate, and a lack of microglandular structure (Fig. 41.31). As a group, these tumors tend to have a better prognosis than the other IDC variants.

Colloid carcinoma appears as a large, slow-growing, gelatinous mass usually found in older women. Pathologic review of the specimen reveals large lakes of mucin and isolated tumor groupings (Fig. 41.32).

Paget disease is another form of IDC that originates in the excretory ducts of the breast. Involvement of the nipple-areolar complex may result in a firm consistency of the nipple, inflammation, ulceration, edema, and “weeping” of the skin. Characteristic Paget cells appear in the epidermis as large anaplastic cells surrounded by a clear halo. Paget may present solely with skin changes and the absence of an underlying mass. Thus, any nipple rash or skin changes that do not resolve with symptomatic treatment in a few weeks should be evaluated with dermatologic punch biopsy.

Finally, ILC arises from the terminal ductules of the breast and tends to be multifocal within the same breast as well as frequently bilateral. Involvement of the contralateral breast occurs in 20% of cases. Histologically, loosely, dispersed single-cell columns form strands of infiltrating tumor cells (Fig. 41.33).

In situ or noninvasive histologic variants of breast cancer also exist. Coincident with the widespread use of screening...
mammography, there has been a shift in the stage at presentation of breast cancer toward earlier-stage disease, particularly for ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS) (Fig. 41.34). Data from Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) shows nearly 300% change in incidence of DCIS in women age 50 years and older and greater than 100% increase in the incidence of stage I disease in the same group. The percentage of change was more pronounced in African-American women than in white women. DCIS is a nonobligatory precursor to IDC with variable rates of progression, depending on histology, size, and margin status. DCIS refers to lesions with proliferation of malignant cells within the ductal system of the breast but without invasion of the stromal tissue (basement membrane). This category represents 20% of all newly diagnosed breast cancers with a 20-year survival rate of 97%. In at least 90% of patients, the diagnosis is made with mammography. Only about 10% of patients have a palpable mass. Because of the controversy as to the potential for progression of DCIS to IDC, optimal management is one of the biggest challenges in breast disease faced by clinicians. Although DCIS is a preinvasive form of breast cancer and is not life threatening, treatment options may include lumpectomy, mastectomy, radiotherapy, and/or tamoxifen. Current treatment modalities may be overly aggressive because many cases of DCIS may not recur or progress to invasive cancer. Conservative contemporary treatments include lumpectomy with breast irradiation, generally excluding axillary lymph node dissection. Evidence is accumulating that DCIS <2 cm may not require irradiation. However, sentinel lymph node biopsy may be useful in evaluating large or high-grade lesions because of the increased risk of undetected micrometastasis. Historically, multicentricity was used to justify mastectomy for DCIS. In the literature, estimates of multicentricity in DCIS range widely, from 2% to 78% depending on the definition and mode of detection. Until we are better able to identify those patients at low risk for progression, it is unlikely that current treatment will change. Genomics holds great promise in this regard, yet prospective studies with long-term follow-up will be needed before treatment can be personalized for individual subsets.

Lobular carcinoma in situ (LCIS) refers to proliferation of cells within the breast lobules. LCIS is considered a predictive marker of future cancer rather than a cancer precursor. It is usually found incidentally by microscopy at the time of breast biopsy performed for another indication and does not present characteristic clinical or mammographic findings. It is typically multicentric and has a sevenfold to 10-fold increased risk of subsequent invasive breast cancer, which is typically ductal carcinoma. Studies of women with LCIS managed with biopsy alone demonstrate a risk of cancer development of approximately 1% per year.

Breast cancer may present with a firm consistency, fixed position (lack of mobility), dimpling or retraction of the overlying skin, nipple retraction, and irregular shape. Peau d’orange skin changes are associated with obstruction of the lymphatics and associated edema. This characteristic feature is not always associated with breast cancer and may be seen with mastitis. IDC frequently metastasizes to bone, lung, liver, or brain, whereas ILC more often metastasizes to meningeal serosal surfaces. On the other hand, inflammatory cancer causes extensive swelling, redness, and tenderness, which is often mistaken for a hematoma or abscess.

In general, breast cancer is slightly more common in the left breast than in the right. In most women, the left breast is slightly larger than the right. The upper outer quadrant is
The first recorded operative treatment for breast cancer was in the Greco-Roman period 220 B.C. by a Greek physician named Leonides. A century ago, William Halsted published his first paper on the radical mastectomy for the control of breast cancer. This procedure was very extensive, including removal of the breast tissue en bloc, pectoralis muscles, and axillary lymph nodes to achieve superior local and regional control of disease in that day. It remained the gold standard until the 1970s, when the trend in surgery for breast cancer has been to use more limited procedures. Taking into account comorbidities and the patient’s preferences, treatment may involve lumpectomy (local removal of the tumor); mastectomy (surgical removal of all the breast tissue); sentinel lymph node biopsy and/or axillary lymphadenectomy; radiation therapy; chemotherapy; or hormone therapy based on the stage and histology of the tumor, completeness of removal (i.e., status of the margins of the surgical specimen), and prognostic factors, including lymph node involvement, tumor size and grade, hormone receptor status, HER2-neu status, and S-phase fraction.

Currently, long-term updates of original prospective clinical trials have confirmed that BCS, which includes lumpectomy, postoperative radiation therapy, and surgical axillary staging (when appropriate), is the appropriate primary therapy for most women with stage I and II breast cancer. The largest of the BCS trials, NSABP B-06, reviewed women over 15 years and proved the equivalence of the treatments. Other studies have shown congruent results demonstrating no statistically significant differences between rates of local and regional recurrences, distant metastasis, and overall survival between mastectomy and BCS with early-stage disease. Tumor recurrence is 40% with BCS but is decreased to 10% with the addition of radiation therapy, which is similar to treatment with modified radical mastectomy. The appropriate candidate for mastectomy is primarily the patient in whom it is evident that BCS will not control the primary tumor. Cosmetic factors are important, but the primary concern is adequate removal of the primary tumor with pathologically negative margins. One other concern with respect to BCS is the necessity for radiation therapy and continued intense surveillance. For this reason, patients with certain medical conditions, such as active or preexisting collagen vascular disease, may not be candidates for BCS, because these patients have been shown to have poor tolerance to radiation in the breast and chest wall areas (Tables 41.12 and 41.13). Complete axillary dissection continues to assume a position of diminishing importance in the treatment of breast carcinoma but remains controversial. As the role for systemic therapy even in patients with negative nodes expands, some investigators have stated that not all patients require an axillary dissection, but 30% of patients with no palpable lymph nodes (clinically negative axilla) have been found to have histologically positive lymph nodes. Because axillary nodal status is the best established indicator of their risk for systemic relapse, the potential of the more limited sentinel lymph node evaluation is evident (discussed below).

For patients with negative axillary involvement, the tumor size and histologic grade are the most useful prognostic factors. Among patients with invasive tumors of less than 1 cm in greatest diameter, the 5-year disease-free survival rate is more than 90%. Expression of the estrogen receptor or the progesterone receptor is associated with a better prognosis, primarily attributable to the responsiveness of these tumors to antihormone therapies, for example, tamoxifen and aromatase inhibitors. HER2 amplification has been associated with a poor prognosis; however, the role of HER2-neu as a prognostic factor remains controversial. The role of HER2 as a predictor of response to chemotherapy is discussed in the section on tumor-specific therapies. There is no clear evidence to suggest that women with breast cancer associated with a BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation should be managed differently from those with sporadic cancers. BCS remains the standard of care for women with early-stage sporadic breast cancer and is routinely offered to mutation carriers who have been diagnosed with breast cancer; BRCA mutation carriers are at increased risk for contralateral breast cancers; this risk may be as high as 60%. Thus, questions exist regarding optimal surgical management. Researchers question whether these patients may benefit from an ipsilateral mastectomy on the affected breast and contralateral prophylactic mastectomy on the unaffected breast. Thus, advance knowledge of one’s BRCA status may be important in determining surgical options.

**Surgical Techniques**

**TABLE 41.12**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ABSOLUTE CONTRAINDICATIONS TO BREAST CONSERVATION SURGERY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prior moderate- or high-dose radiation therapy to the breast/chest wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy (as required radiation therapy is contraindicated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse suspicious or malignant-appearing microcalcifications on mammography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multicentric/widespread disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive pathologic margin (reexcision may be an option)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ablative procedures can be performed in the office or ambulatory surgical setting and may offer patients an alternative to surgical excision. Ablative techniques were initially used on metastatic hepatic tumors with success; thus, similar technology is now being applied to the treatment of breast disease. Ablative therapy uses radiofrequency, cryoablation, laser, microwave, and focused ultrasound in clinical protocols as a minimally invasive treatment modality for small malignant and benign breast tumors. Data are available that demonstrate...
variable success in tissue destruction using different modalities. Long-term follow up data regarding local effects on the breast tissue or recurrence rates of cancer are not available, and local breast changes may pose a diagnostic dilemma in future trials to distinguish recurrent cancer from scar or fat necrosis.

Sentinel Lymph Node Biopsy

The status of axillary nodes is one of the most well-established prognostic indicators for systemic relapse used to select patient subgroups for adjuvant chemotherapy. Patients with involvement of the lymph nodes have a 60% to 70% risk for relapse within 5 years, whereas 70% to 80% of patients with negative nodes are cured by local therapy. Yet currently, there is no evidence that axillary lymph node dissection (ALND) improves survival, thus diminishing its importance. ALND, however, is an effective staging procedure and may be essential for local control of disease in the axilla. In general, the standard treatment of the axilla involves level I and level II axillary lymph nodes. This is extended to level III only if gross disease is apparent for treatment of stages I, IIA, and IIB cancer.

The prior standard of care for surgical management of invasive disease was complete excision of the tumor by either mastectomy or lumpectomy followed by ALND. Based on information gathered from treatment of melanomas, it was established that the first lymph node (the sentinel node) to receive drainage from the primary tumor can be used to predict the presence or absence of tumor in the remainder of the lymph nodes. Published and unpublished results in breast carcinoma surgery support the same concept for axillary node breast metastases. Intraoperative lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymph node biopsy (SLNB) has emerged as an alternative to routine ALND in clinically node-negative early breast cancer and represents a major new opportunity obviating the need for more invasive surgical management of many tumors. Lymphatic mapping with selective lymphadenectomy is an attractive approach in breast cancer patients because it may lead to a substantial reduction in the need for axillary node dissection without compromising survival and regional control and without loss of prognostic staging information, thus translating into a significant reduction in patient morbidity and medical expenses. SLNB is highly accurate and sensitive in patients with small tumors, and no false-negative SLNB has been reported for a breast cancer smaller than 1.0 to 1.5 cm, resulting in a negative predictive value of 100%. In the future, axillary dissection might be avoided in patients who have no metastatic involvement of the sentinel lymph node; however, if the sentinel lymph node cannot be identified or is positive for metastasis, a formal ALND should be performed (or in some cases, axillary radiation therapy administered).

The surgeon can use two techniques to find the node. The technique of intraoperative sentinel lymph node mapping was pioneered by Giuliano and is performed using a blue dye injected peritumorally, which stains the lymphatic duct (Fig. 41.35). After 5 minutes, blue dye can be visualized traversing afferent lymphatics and collecting in a sentinel lymph node through an axillary incision at the tumor site. There is a 93.5% success rate in identifying an axillary node as the sentinel node. The false-negative rate has been 0%. Alternatively,
a lymph node-seeking radioactive tracer ($^{99m}$Tc) migrates from the tumor site (when injected into the breast parenchyma) to the sentinel node and enables its retrieval with the use of a gamma detection probe. Blue dye and lymphoscintigraphy are complementary techniques, and optimal localization is achieved when the two methods are used together. Several authors have achieved greater than 95% success rate and quote a sensitivity of 98% for sentinel node localization.

Other variations of the procedure have been espoused, including the addition of ultrasound to the protocol and endoscopic axillary node dissection in conjunction with BCS. RT should begin as soon as the wounds of surgery are healed and may be given concurrently with certain chemotherapy regimens. It is generally agreed that the breast should be treated with 180 to 200 cGy/day for 4.5 to 5.5 weeks for a total of 4,500 to 5,000 cGy. This course can be supplemented by a boost of 1,000 to 1,600 cGy over 1 to 2 weeks, although this is controversial. A total dose in excess of 5,000 cGy results in fibrosis, retraction, and an unacceptable cosmetic result. Consequently, conventional postoperative whole breast irradiation (WBI) increases the length and complexity of breast cancer treatment and can be inconvenient or prohibitive for patients who are elderly, working, or lack access to a radiation therapy facility. The vast majority of ipsilateral breast cancer recurrences are located within the tumor bed and adjacent breast tissue; therefore, the need for elective irradiation of the whole breast is uncertain, and partial breast irradiation is a biologically plausible concept. Novel approaches to RT are being explored to reduce the volume of tissues irradiated and decrease the time required for delivery. Partial breast irradiation (PBI) may improve the documented underutilization of BCS by allowing RT to be completed in 4 or 5 days, rather than 6 to 7 weeks, eliminating the acute and chronic toxicities associated with WBI, improving cosmesis, and conferring societal economic benefits. This accelerated course of treatment can also eliminate concerns about the sequencing of adjuvant radiation and chemotherapy. A matched-pair analysis has demonstrated comparable outcomes for women treated with PBI or WBI. Sev- eral phase III clinical trials evaluating these issues are ongoing worldwide. Criteria currently include women with breast cancers up to 3 cm and DCIS using 10 fractions over 5 days. Before PBI can be routinely incorporated into clinical practice, appropriate patient selection, optimal fractionation schedules, and PBI techniques must be determined, as well as establish- ment of long-term efficacy, rates of locoregional recurrence, survival rates, cosmesis, and patient satisfaction. Options for PBI currently include intrasternal catheter brachytherapy and balloon-based intracavitary brachytherapy (MammoSite, Al- pharate, GA). Additional trials are focusing on intraoperative radiation therapy, three-dimensional conformal RT, and other novel techniques.

Radiation

The role of radiation therapy (RT) in breast cancer treatment has been more clearly defined in the last 2 decades. RT may be applied to invasive or noninvasive disease. It is a standard component of BCS and has been shown to be of benefit post- mastectomy in patients with large tumor burdens or more than four positive lymph nodes.

Recent results from an Intergroup study found lower rates of recurrence in the radiation arm but no differences in survival or disease-free survival in a group of women with early-stage breast cancer older than age 70 when randomized to receive whole breast irradiation plus tamoxifen or tamoxifen alone. Thus, women older than 70 with early-stage ER-positive disease and negative lymph nodes may be treated without breast irradiation in conjunction with BCS. RT should begin as soon as the wounds of surgery are healed and may be given concurrently with certain chemotherapy regimens. It is generally agreed that the breast should be treated with 180 to 200 cGy/day for 4.5 to 5.5 weeks for a total of 4,500 to 5,000 cGy. This course can be supplemented by a boost of 1,000 to 1,600 cGy over 1 to 2 weeks, although this is controversial. A total dose in excess of 5,000 cGy results in fibrosis, retraction, and an unacceptable cosmetic result. Consequently, conventional postoperative whole breast irradiation (WBI) increases the length and complexity of breast cancer treatment and can be inconvenient or prohibitive for patients who are elderly, working, or lack access to a radiation therapy facility. The vast majority of ipsilateral breast cancer recurrences are located within the tumor bed and adjacent breast tissue; therefore, the need for elective irradiation of the whole breast is uncertain, and partial breast irradiation is a biologically plausible concept. Novel approaches to RT are being explored to reduce the volume of tissues irradiated and decrease the time required for delivery. Partial breast irradiation (PBI) may improve the documented underutilization of BCS by allowing RT to be completed in 4 or 5 days, rather than 6 to 7 weeks, eliminating the acute and chronic toxicities associated with WBI, improving cosmesis, and conferring societal economic benefits. This accelerated course of treatment can also eliminate concerns about the sequencing of adjuvant radiation and chemotherapy. A matched-pair analysis has demonstrated comparable outcomes for women treated with PBI or WBI. Several phase III clinical trials evaluating these issues are ongoing worldwide. Criteria currently include women with breast cancers up to 3 cm and DCIS using 10 fractions over 5 days. Before PBI can be routinely incorporated into clinical practice, appropriate patient selection, optimal fractionation schedules, and PBI techniques must be determined, as well as establishment of long-term efficacy, rates of locoregional recurrence, survival rates, cosmesis, and patient satisfaction. Options for PBI currently include intrasternal catheter brachytherapy and balloon-based intracavitary brachytherapy (MammoSite, Alpharate, GA). Additional trials are focusing on intraoperative radiation therapy, three-dimensional conformal RT, and other novel techniques.

Radiation is also useful in the palliative treatment of bone pain in advanced metastatic disease. Complications of radia- tion therapy include fatigue and development of dry skin, erythema or tanning, edema, and muscle stiffness within the tissues encompassed by the RT field. After completion of the irradiation treatment, most patients recover their nor- mal skin color and texture within a few weeks, but edema can take much longer to resolve. Late complications from RT are unusual, including a very low incidence of rib fracture, radia- tion pneumonitis, brachyphlebopathy, and pericarditis in cases of left-sided lesions. In the overwhelming majority of cases, a return to normal is the rule.

Systemic Therapy

Therapeutic options for patients with noninvasive or invasive breast cancer are complex and varied. Use of additional sys- temic therapy is based on the patient’s likelihood of recurrence and predicted response to hormonal or chemotherapy. This can be estimated with use of an online model, ADJUVANTON- LINE!. In addition, newer molecular techniques, including pro- toxic and genomic analysis, are being developed that may add greater specificity to treatment decisions.

Cytotoxic Chemotherapy

Neoadjuvant (preoperative) chemotherapy is increasingly used, presumably associated with eradication of micrometastatic dis- ease, and has shown comparable efficacy compared with post- operative (adjuvant) chemotherapy in the NSABP B-18 trial demonstrating similar disease-free and overall survival rates in patients with stage I and II operable breast cancer. In this trial, use of standard chemotherapy regimens including doxorubicin (Adriamycin) and cyclophosphamide (AC) demonstrated success in decreasing the tumor size, thus permitting less extensive surgical options. The addition of four cycles of docetaxel signifi- cantly increased clinical and pathologic response rates for operable breast cancer. Neoadjuvant therapy may also be used in large (≤3 cm) and locally advanced breast cancer (T1, T2, T3, N2) to increase the likelihood of successful BCS.

A number of combination chemotherapy regimens are appropriate to consider when adjuvant cytotoxic chemother- apy is warranted. These regimens include 5-fluorouracil, doxor- ubicin, and cyclophosphamide (FAC/CAF) or cyclophos- phamide, epirubicin, and fluorouracil (CEF); doxorubicin or epirubicin and cyclophosphamide (AC/EC); AC (or dose dense ATC). Differing combinations of the above regimens have also been studied with success. Recent studies document sub- stantial improvement in outcome with the incorporation of trastuzumab in the adjuvant setting of HER2/neu overexpres- sion (discussed below). Omitting cyclophosphamide from any combination obviates the long-term risk for acute leukemia and substantially reduces the severity of alopecia and myelosup- pression; thus, it is a better tolerated regimen. Fifty percent to 80% of women have an objective response to FAC, and 40% to 60% have an objective response to CMF (cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, and fluorouracil). Studies of CMF chemotherapy versus no chemotherapy have shown disease-free and over- all survival advantages with CMF chemotherapy. Regimens containing anthracyclines (doxorubicin or epirubicin) were
superior to CMF in the Early Breast Cancer Trialists’ Collaborative Group overview. These chemotherapy regimens may cause short-term complications, including nausea, vomiting, myelosuppression, alopecia, and weight gain. Use of anthracycline-based chemotherapy has the long-term risks of chemotherapy-induced ovarian ablation (70%), cardiac dysfunction, premature menopause, and secondary malignancies. Node-negative patients may benefit from the addition of paclitaxel to the AC regimen; therefore, until other studies are analyzed, treating node-positive patients with four cycles of AC (or CAF) followed by four cycles of paclitaxel is reasonable.

Common toxicities include nausea, vomiting, alopecia, fatigue, mucositis, weight gain, premature menopause, neutropathy (taxanes), and myalgias (taxanes). Less common toxicities include febrile neutropenia (common with TAC), thrombosis, hemorrhagic complications, cardiomyopathy (anthracyclines), and secondary leukemia.

Adjuvant therapy has also been proven to have added benefit for node-negative patients with breast cancer. Zambetti and colleagues found adjuvant chemotherapies increase disease-free survival in 85% of patients compared with 42% of untreated control subjects. Similar values have been verified in other studies. The goal is to determine which node-negative patients are at high risk for recurrence to avoid further unnecessary treatment in patients already cured of their disease.

Several prognostic factors are currently used to predict risk of relapse or death from breast cancer. The strongest are patient age, conoid, the number of involved lymph nodes, tumor diameter, grade, and receptor status. Other less well-established prognostic factors include S-phase fraction (an indicator of proliferative capacity), HER2/neu overexpression, histology, nuclear grade, and DNA aneuploidy. The innovative technique of DNA microarray is poised to revolutionize the treatment of breast cancer. Subclassification systems of breast cancer subtypes have been developed by gene expression profile. In retrospective analysis, these subtypes have shown differing relapse-free and overall survival, thus permitting both prognostic and predictive functions. Additionally, a multigene assay using reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction on RNA isolated from paraffin-embedded tissue was able to identify prognostic subsets and to predict responsiveness to both tamoxifen and CMF or methotrexate/5-fluorouracil/leucovorin chemotherapy.

Thus, node-negative women with moderately or poorly differentiated invasive tumors of larger than 1 cm and negative hormone receptors should be offered chemotherapy. Because the risk for node-negative patients with well-differentiated tumors of less than 1 cm in size is 10% or less, adjuvant chemotherapy is not recommended. In addition to chemotherapies, patients who are premenopausal (or younger than 50 years of age) with negative nodes and ER-positive tumors should be considered for a 5-year course of tamoxifen because even in node-negative patients, 30% of patients have a relapse in 5 years. The treatment of postmenopausal patients with negative nodes and hormone receptor-positive tumors is evolving. Randomized clinical trials showed that chemotherapy plus tamoxifen yields better survival rates than tamoxifen alone, but the absolute benefit is small and the use of chemotherapy in this setting should be individualized. Recent data on trends in breast cancer treatment indicates an increasing proportion of women receiving both chemotherapy and tamoxifen with ER-positive tumors and positive lymph node status as recommended by evidence-based guidelines from the National Breast Cancer. However, use of concurrent therapy remained relatively low among women aged 65 and older, who were more likely to receive tamoxifen only. The international consensus panel recommends hormonal therapy as the treatment of choice for ER-positive women with limited disease regardless of menopausal status, tumor size, or axillary involvement, especially for patients who are asymptomatic or are of advanced age. Hormone receptor status determines the likelihood that a patient will respond to hormonal therapy, with 75% to 80% of patients with estrogen receptor/progesterone receptor–positive tumors showing an objective response. Even patients with ER-negative and HER2/neu–positive tumors had a 10% objective response rate.

**Hormonal Therapy**

Breast cancers are often exquisitely sensitive to endocrine manipulation, thus laying the foundation for the success of antiestrogens in the fight against cancer. Endocrine therapies have been a critical factor in the dramatic decline in mortality from this disease in both the United Kingdom and the United States. Since the introduction of tamoxifen in the 1970s, endocrine therapy for breast cancer has enjoyed a remarkable renaissance with the generation of data touting the benefits of aromatase inhibitors in hormone responsive breast cancer treatment as well.

**Selective Estrogen Receptor Modulators**

Tamoxifen citrate has been shown to be of immense significance in the battle against breast cancer. Tamoxifen has demonstrated benefit when used alone or in combination with chemotherapy in the treatment of advanced breast cancer and has proven efficacy in reducing tumor recurrence, prolonging disease-free survival, and lowering the incidence of contralateral second primary breast cancer by nearly 40% when administered as postoperative adjuvant therapy in stages I and II disease. The improved effectiveness of tamoxifen in this setting prompted its use in the preventive setting in the NSABP P-1 and BCPT trials (discussed earlier under “Chemoprevention”). Although relatively well tolerated compared with cytotoxic chemotherapy, tamoxifen is beset with side effects, particularly hot flashes (30%), vaginal discharge, vaginal bleeding, endometrial cancer, and thromboembolic events. However, it has been suggested that for every endometrial cancer death, 80 breast cancer deaths have been averted with the use of tamoxifen.

SERMs were first evaluated in the 1960s as nonsteroidal antiestrogens. This group of drugs showed potent antifertility activity in rats, but paradoxically proved to be an inducer of ovulation in subfertile women. Tamoxifen is a SERM that remains a vital part of the regimen for ovulation induction. Further studies was commenced based on the compound’s multifaceted actions on different types of receptors. Ancillary studies in this group of drugs focused on treatments for advanced breast cancer; however, only tamoxifen was investigated further because of its high potency, efficacy, and modest side effects.

The strategic application of these medications was first noted in long-term adjuvant treatment of node-positive and node-negative, ER-positive breast cancers. Tamoxifen decreases the serum levels of total cholesterol by 13% and those of low-density lipoprotein cholesterol by 19%. Therefore, tamoxifen has the added benefit of maintaining bone density and reducing the risk of myocardial infarction in postmenopausal women. Thus, despite known benefits of aromatase inhibitors, tamoxifen may remain the standard in patients with osteopenia or osteoporosis.

Several new SERMs are under investigation.Raloxifene has shown benefit for breast cancer prevention in postmenopausal women with osteoporosis; clinical trials are ongoing. Farenolone (Fareston) has shown efficacy similar to...
tamoxifen and may be a reasonable first-line alternative. Because of substantial cross-resistance between toremifene and tamoxifen, there is no role in patients who have tumors resis-
tant to tamoxifen. Drolidoxifene and idoxifene have had mini-
mal evaluation but show binding affinity to ER-positive breast cancers and response rates of 0% to 70%.

Aromatase Inhibitors
Aromatase inhibitors (AIs)—generally anastrozole, letrozole, and exemestane—have made an exciting contribution to the management of hormone-responsive breast cancer. A plethora of studies has shown the superiority of AIs over tamoxifen in postmenopausal patients with ER-positive tumors. Current therapy in these patients may include tamoxifen for 5 years, AI for 5 years, combination of tamoxifen and AI for 5 years, and addition of AI for 5 years at the end of the tamoxifen treatment.

AIs function through inhibition of aromatization, thus blocking the enzyme that catalyzes the final and rate-limiting step in the synthesis of estrogens. Currently, studies are noting benefit primarily in postmenopausal women in whom produc-
tion of aromatase in nonovarian tissues in the periphery (such as adipose tissue, adrenal gland, and muscle) are the dominant sources of estrogen. Now in their third generation, AIs (specifi-
cally anastrozole) have proven superior to tamoxifen in a RCT (ATAC—Arimidex, tamoxifen, alone or in combination trial) of treatment of 9,366 postmenopausal women with localized breast cancer with respect to disease-free survival, time to re-
currence, incidence of contralateral breast primary tumors as first events, and a number of important tolerability parame-
ters. Additionally, fewer patient withdrawals from the study occurred with anastrozole than with tamoxifen as anastrozole was associated with fewer side effects than tamoxifen, partic-
ularly in relation to hot flashes, vaginal bleeding, endometrial cancer, and vagemal discharge. Yet arthralgias and fractures were increased.

Anastrozole now offers a choice for postmenopausal patients with hormone-responsive tumors, although longer follow-up will enable a more definitive benefit/risk assessment. Further-
more, AIs are being studied in premenopausal patients and in the chemoprevention setting.

An additional RCT comparing letrozole to placebo in 5,187 postmenopausal women with hormone-sensitive early-stage breast cancer after 5 years with tamoxifen showed improved disease-free survival and decreased recurrences in the letrozole group compared with placebo. Before this finding, there was no additional standard treatment after the tamoxifen therapy to prevent recurrences. A recent update of the trial indicates substantial clinical benefit even following a 1- to 5-year hia-
sus after 5 years of adjuvant tamoxifen in disease-free survival, distant disease-free survival, and overall survival. Furthermore, switching to anastrozole or exemestane in the middle of the standard 5-year tamoxifen treatment has also shown improved disease-free survival over continuation of tamoxifen. Thus, women’s health practitioners must become knowledgeable re-
garding current patterns of breast cancer treatment and have a thorough discussion with their medical oncologists, thereby referring women appropriately (who may have missed or been reluctant to continue oncologic care but still follow for gy-
ecologic care) for additional care. Researchers are following these women to ascertain long-term effects on bones and lipids.

Current evidence is inconclusive regarding the use of bisphos-
phonates to prevent or for loss in patients taking AIs, although studies are under way to evaluate this possibility.

Letrozole has also shown effectiveness in ovulation induc-
tion and is one of the only safe options for breast cancer patients wishing to undergo in vitro fertilization and ovarian stimula-
tion to freeze embryos before their cancer therapy. Although the product’s label has always stated a contraindication in pre-
menopausal women because of “the potential for maternal and fetal toxicity,” many intraterrorine mammary sthenm inons have replaced the standard clomiphene citrate with letrozole because of its superior pregnancy success rates and ability to decrease gonadotropin requirements. However, a small, un-
published Canadian study presented at the conjoint annual meeting of the American Society for Reproductive Medicine and the Canadian Fertility and Andrology Society warned that the drug may be associated with congenital anomalies, which prompted the pharmaceutical company to send letters to health care professionals regarding this information. However, many fertility experts suggest caution in interpreting the results, as a higher-than-normal dose of letrozole was used (5 mg rather than 2.5 mg) and may portend the dubious consequences.

Additional Treatments
Ovarian ablation has been shown to reduce the risk of tu-
mor recurrence and death in women younger than 50 years, at least in the absence of adjuvant chemotherapy. The combi-
nation of oophorectomy and chemotherapy was as effective as either treatment alone in premenopausal women, but the inva-
sive nature of surgical feminine castration has limited its use in the United States. In addition, tamoxifen is effective in pre-
menopausal women, and no randomized trial has shown the superiority of oophorectomy over tamoxifen.

Luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone analogs are an al-
ternative to oophorectomy. These agents induce a “chemi-
cal castration” and are effective for premenopausal patients with metastatic breast cancer, and have been shown to improve the overall response in women with tumors with high levels of the HER2 protein when adminis-
terated. These tumors tend to grow faster and are gener-
ally more likely to recur than tumors that do not produce HER2. Trastuzumab (Herceptin) is an FDA-approved mono-
clonal immunoglobulin G1 antibody that inhibits human ep-
dermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) with high affinity for the HER2/neu receptor and has been shown to be a po-
tent weapon against the recurrence of cancer cells that amplify HER2. Trastuzumab significantly inhibits the growth of breast tumors with high levels of the HER2 protein when adminis-
terated alone or in combination with paclitaxel or carboplatin and has been shown to improve the overall response in women with metastatic breast cancer. A recent clinical trial evaluated these tumors using doxorubicin, cyclophosphamide followed by paclitaxel versus doxorubicin, cyclophosphamide followed by paclitaxel and estramustine. Those patients receiving trastuzumab in combination with standard combination chemotherapy had a 32% statistically
significant reduction in disease recurrence and 33% reduction in mortality compared with patients treated with chemother-
apy alone. Overexpression of this gene product also predicts resistance to tamoxifen therapy. Currently, trastuzumab pro-
longs survival in metastatic breast cancer patients whose tu-
mors overexpress the HER2/neu protein. Its effect on ovarian cancer is investigational at present.

Trastuzumab has side effects, apart from cardiac toxicity in patients concurrently receiving anthracyclines. Thus, careful cardiac monitoring is required in these patients to detect reduction in left ventricular ejection fraction as congestive heart failure rates ranged from 0.5% to 4.1% in sev-
eral trials. It is thus reasonable for trastuzumab to become a treatment option in early or metastatic breast cancer. Sev-
eral institutions routinely incorporate HER2/neu status test-
ing into the assessment of all patients with invasive breast dis-
ease. Additional approaches are being investigated as possible therapeutic strategies targeting HER2, including growth in-
hibitory antibodies, which can be used alone or in combination with standard chemotherapeutics; receptor inhibitors, devel-
oped to block receptor activity because phosphorylation is the key event leading to activation and initiation of the signaling pathway; and active immunotherapy, because the HER2 on-
crop protein is immunogenic in some breast carcinoma patients. Unanswered questions include the appropriate duration and dose of therapy, and whether cardiotoxicity is reversible, espe-
cially if doxorubicin is not used.

CARE FOR BREAST CANCER SURVIVORS

Follow-Up

The risk of recurrent disease in the contralateral breast is estimated at 10% for patients with in situ carcinoma and 5% to 10% with invasive cancer. In addition, patients receiving definitive treatment for breast cancer have a 16% risk at 3 years of developing a second primary site of cancer, including the contralateral breast, ovaries, endometrium, and large intest-
tine. Thus, recommended breast cancer surveillance guidelines include a thorough history and physical examination every 3 to 6 months for 5 years, every 6 to 12 months for 2 years, then an-
ually. A review of systems should elicit symptoms in the breast and at those sites where recurrences frequently occur, such as nodal disease, lung, bone, liver, adrenal gland, and ovary. A focused history should include information on weight loss, local or distant skin changes (radiation effects or breast skin changes—spinalateral and contralateral), mental status changes, headache or sensory deficits, pleuritic chest pain, shortness of breath, bone pain, changes in bowel function and melena or blood in the stool, and abnormal rectal or vaginal secretions. Physical examination should incorporate an evaluation of the remaining breast tissue and lymph node-bearing areas, range of motion of the upper extremity, and increasing arm girth, which may indicate onset of lymphedema or axillary recurrence. Ex-
aminations of the chest and abdomen are performed to search for evidence of pleural effusions or hepatomegaly. A mamo-
gram, pelvic examination, and Pap test should be performed annually. Routine radiological studies (bone scan, CT, chest x-
ray) or laboratory testing (liver function tests, complete blood count, tumor markers) is recommended except based on symptomatology in that no survival advantage is conferred by detecting asymptomatic disease; however, institutional policies may differ. Many surgeons continue to recommend yearly com-
plete blood counts and chemistry panels as well as chest radio-
graph despite evidence of specificity in detection of metastatic disease. One series indicated less than 18% specificity for rou-
tine testing.

Those with initial advanced disease should have regularly scheduled visits at 3-month intervals for their lifetime. Others recommend visits every 3 months for 3 to 5 years, then every 6 months thereafter for patients with advanced disease.

Women with DCIS require physical examination every 6 months for 3 years and then annually, as well as yearly diag-

nostic mammography.

Hormone Replacement Therapy

As more breast cancers are detected at an earlier stage, result-
ing in increased survival, there is a wealth of attention directed toward use of HRT in breast cancer survivors. Many authors sanction use of HRT for menopausal breast cancer survivors who are disease-free and have symptomatic estrogen deficiency, especially after the first 2 years when the risk of recurrence is decreased. Furthermore, patients with localized nodal-negative breast cancers who are at low risk for recurrent disease may be excellent candidates for long-term replacement. ACOG rec-
ommends HRT use with a treatment plan that includes dietary control, exercise, smoking cessation, reduction of alcohol con-
sumption, and weight reduction when appropriate. Women with unexplained vaginal bleeding, acute vascular thrombosis, or significant liver function impairment would remain ineligible for use. All women should be carefully and completely coun-
seled regarding the potential, albeit unproven, risks of disease recurrence.

Gabapentin has also been shown in a randomized double-
blind placebo-controlled trial of 420 women to control hot flashes in cancer patients at 900 mg/day, demonstrating greater reduction in the posttreatment hot flash severity score compared with placebo and lower doses of gabapentin (Neu-
rontin). Gabapentin is approved for the treatment of epilptic seizures but often used for treatment of migraine headaches, restless legs syndrome, and bipolar disorder. Additionally, ven-
lafaxine appears to be an effective treatment for hot flashes.

Pregnancy after Treatment for Breast Cancer

Although oncologists generally caution patients to avoid preg-
nancy until 2 years after completing treatment for breast can-
cer, several investigators have not shown any adverse effects or decreased survival for women who become pregnant after can-
cer therapy. Moreover, although lactation is decreased in the treated breast, radiation therapy appears to have no effect on the contralateral breast. Increased rates of stillbirth, preterm birth, and low birth weight portend a suboptimal intrauterine environment, but the infants are otherwise unaffected.

BREAST CANCER AND PREGNANCY

Breast cancer is estimated to occur in 1 in 3,000 to 1 in 10,000 and have an incidence of 0.2% to 3.8% of pregnan-
cies. Pregnancy-associated breast cancer is defined as that oc-
curring during pregnancy or within 1 year after delivery. Breast cancer diagnosed in pregnancy has an overall inferior prog-
nosis as it tends to be diagnosed at a more advanced stage;
The evaluation, diagnosis, and treatment of a breast mass in a pregnant patient is unchanged from their nonpregnant counterparts. The conventional diagnostic modalities may be performed—including FNA, ultrasonography, CNB under local anesthesia, or excisional biopsy under local or general anesthesia—without adverse sequela. However, additional false-negative FNA results may occur as a function of the increased cellularity and frequent mitoses that can occur normally during gestation. Core biopsies are more accurate, but milk fistulas—a complication seen in surgical biopsies—have been reported. The finding of a thickness or a possible mass usually requires a short interval follow-up and examination because of the effect of the required adjunctive radiation on the fetus. The survival risk to the mother prompted by delaying radiation therapy until after delivery is not known. In the first trimester, particularly during fetal organogenesis, both irradiation and chemotherapy—especially with folate antagonists—are contraindicated. There are scattered case reports of normal, well babies both in all of these treatment circumstances, but the risks to the fetus are significant. Concerns continue to be raised about the future neurologic development and potential subsequent increased risk for childhood cancers among these newborns exposed to radiation; reliable long-term data are unavailable. Thus individualized counseling should be provided in a compassionate, caring forum considering the patients psychosocial situation, anxieties, and future expectations. If the diagnosis is made during the third trimester, the patient may elect to be observed until delivery, when prompt treatment as pregnancy advances could actually be obscured by the normal changes in pregnancy and represent an ongoing developing breast carcinoma. For this reason, ultrasound may be used to evaluate an area that is “negative” on examination but was previously thought to harbor a mass lesion. Breast ultrasonography during pregnancy is safe and helpful in differentiating between cystic and solid masses. However, ultrasound is less specific in distinguishing benign solid masses from malignant masses. Conversely, MRI has been used in pregnancy and seems safe for fetuses because it does not expose them to ionizing radiation, although the safety committee indicates that the safety during pregnancy has not been proven. Recent reports on its use for fetal imaging in prenatal diagnosis contain limited follow-up of the infants, but no untoward effects have been reported. MRI may be particularly useful for the diagnosis of confirmation of bone, liver, or even brain metastases in the staging of patients, although head CT scans with abdominal shielding yield only small amounts of fetal exposure.

Any dominant mass should be evaluated as it would be in the nonpregnant patient to prevent diagnostic delay. Screening mammmography may be deferred to limit fetal exposure but should be obtained without hesitation if the lesion requires additional evaluation. Radiation exposure to the fetus during mammography is estimated at less than 10 mrad, depending on the gestational age, with increasing dose as the gravid fundus grows closer to the targeted breast tissue. The risk for teratogenicity in subsequent fetal development may discourage the institution of therapy for cancer in pregnant women; however, established surgical and adjunctive therapies should be undertaken. Therapeutic termination does not appear to affect the survival in early-stage breast carcinoma and is therefore not advocated. Indeed, the possibility of a detrimental effect on survival has been suggested. Modified radical mastectomy is the optimal treatment for local management of stage I and II. BCS is contraindicated in the first and second trimester because of the effect of the required adjunctive radiation on the fetus. The survival risk to the mother prompted by delaying radiation therapy until after delivery is not known. In the first trimester, particularly during fetal organogenesis, both irradiation and chemotherapy—especially with folate antagonists—are contraindicated. There are scattered case reports of normal, well babies both in all of these treatment circumstances, but the risks to the fetus are significant. Concerns continue to be raised about the future neurologic development and potential subsequent increased risk for childhood cancers among these newborns exposed to radiation; reliable long-term data are unavailable. Thus individualized counseling should be provided in a compassionate, caring forum considering the patients psychosocial situation, anxieties, and future expectations.

If the diagnosis is made during the third trimester, the patient may elect to be observed until delivery, when prompt treatment as pregnancy advances could actually be obscured by the normal changes in pregnancy and represent an ongoing developing breast carcinoma. For this reason, ultrasound may be used to evaluate an area that is “negative” on examination but was previously thought to harbor a mass lesion. Breast ultrasonography during pregnancy is safe and helpful in differentiating between cystic and solid masses. However, ultrasound is less specific in distinguishing benign solid masses from malignant masses. Conversely, MRI has been used in pregnancy and seems safe for fetuses because it does not expose them to ionizing radiation, although the safety committee indicates that the safety during pregnancy has not been proven. Recent reports on its use for fetal imaging in prenatal diagnosis contain limited follow-up of the infants, but no untoward effects have been reported. MRI may be particularly useful for the diagnosis of confirmation of bone, liver, or even brain metastases in the staging of patients, although head CT scans with abdominal shielding yield only small amounts of fetal exposure.

Any dominant mass should be evaluated as it would be in the nonpregnant patient to prevent diagnostic delay. Screening mammography may be deferred to limit fetal exposure but should be obtained without hesitation if the lesion requires additional evaluation. Radiation exposure to the fetus during mammography is estimated at less than 10 mrad, depending on the gestational age, with increasing dose as the gravid fundus grows closer to the targeted breast tissue. The risk for teratogenicity in subsequent fetal development may discourage the institution of therapy for cancer in pregnant women; however, established surgical and adjunctive therapies should be undertaken. Therapeutic termination does not appear to affect the survival in early-stage breast carcinoma and is therefore not advocated. Indeed, the possibility of a detrimental effect on survival has been suggested. Modified radical mastectomy is the optimal treatment for local management of stage I and II. BCS is contraindicated in the first and second trimester because of the effect of the required adjunctive radiation on the fetus. The survival risk to the mother prompted by delaying radiation therapy until after delivery is not known. In the first trimester, particularly during fetal organogenesis, both irradiation and chemotherapy—especially with folate antagonists—are contraindicated. There are scattered case reports of normal, well babies both in all of these treatment circumstances, but the risks to the fetus are significant. Concerns continue to be raised about the future neurologic development and potential subsequent increased risk for childhood cancers among these newborns exposed to radiation; reliable long-term data are unavailable. Thus individualized counseling should be provided in a compassionate, caring forum considering the patients psychosocial situation, anxieties, and future expectations.

If the diagnosis is made during the third trimester, the patient may elect to be observed until delivery, when prompt treatment as pregnancy advances could actually be obscured by the normal changes in pregnancy and represent an ongoing developing breast carcinoma. For this reason, ultrasound may be used to evaluate an area that is “negative” on examination but was previously thought to harbor a mass lesion. Breast ultrasonography during pregnancy is safe and helpful in differentiating between cystic and solid masses. However, ultrasound is less specific in distinguishing benign solid masses from malignant masses. Conversely, MRI has been used in pregnancy and seems safe for fetuses because it does not expose them to ionizing radiation, although the safety committee indicates that the safety during pregnancy has not been proven. Recent reports on its use for fetal imaging in prenatal diagnosis contain limited follow-up of the infants, but no untoward effects have been reported. MRI may be particularly useful for the diagnosis of confirmation of bone, liver, or even brain metastases in the staging of patients, although head CT scans with abdominal shielding yield only small amounts of fetal exposure.

Any dominant mass should be evaluated as it would be in the nonpregnant patient to prevent diagnostic delay. Screening mammography may be deferred to limit fetal exposure but should be obtained without hesitation if the lesion requires additional evaluation. Radiation exposure to the fetus during mammography is estimated at less than 10 mrad, depending on the gestational age, with increasing dose as the gravid fundus grows closer to the targeted breast tissue. The risk for teratogenicity in subsequent fetal development may discourage the institution of therapy for cancer in pregnant women; however, established surgical and adjunctive therapies should be undertaken. Therapeutic termination does not appear to affect the survival in early-stage breast carcinoma and is therefore not advocated. Indeed, the possibility of a detrimental effect on survival has been suggested. Modified radical mastectomy is the optimal treatment for local management of stage I and II. BCS is contraindicated in the first and second trimester because of the effect of the required adjunctive radiation on the fetus. The survival risk to the mother prompted by delaying radiation therapy until after delivery is not known. In the first trimester, particularly during fetal organogenesis, both irradiation and chemotherapy—especially with folate antagonists—are contraindicated. There are scattered case reports of normal, well babies both in all of these treatment circumstances, but the risks to the fetus are significant. Concerns continue to be raised about the future neurologic development and potential subsequent increased risk for childhood cancers among these newborns exposed to radiation; reliable long-term data are unavailable. Thus individualized counseling should be provided in a compassionate, caring forum considering the patients psychosocial situation, anxieties, and future expectations.
dysfunction). Chemotherapy administration during the first trimester is associated with an increased incidence of stillbirths and congenital malformations. The risk of fetal malformation when chemotherapy is instituted in the first trimester is 12% compared with no increased risk with chemotherapeutic administration in the second and third trimester.

Staging procedures for breast cancer are often considered inappropriate in the gravid patient, but there are no contraindications for chest radiography performed with abdominal and pelvic shielding. In late pregnancy, the fetal shield may obscure the lower lung parenchyma; however, exposing the third-trimester fetus to chest radiography presents no great concern. Alkaline phosphatase is elevated in normal pregnancy, making its use in evaluation of bone metastasis ineflectual. Conventional radiography, excluding the pelvis and abdomen (e.g., skull and long bones), can be performed. No adequate substitute for bone scanning exists, although articles have promoted certain modifications of the bone-scanning technique for pregnant patients. Because the incidence of bone metastasis is very low in stage I and II disease, bone scanning can usually be avoided. On the other hand, in clinical stage III disease, in which the possibility of bone metastasis is increased, treatment methods differ and may weigh in favor of provision of the test.

Whereas other human malignancies—including melanoma, hematopoietic malignancies, hepatoma, and chorio- carcinoma—have been reported to cause fetal metastases, breast cancer has not. On the contrary, placental metastases from breast cancer and other solid tumors have been reported. Because half of these patients did not have visible lesions, microscopic examination of the placenta is warranted.

Rarely, breast fibroadenomas may infarct during pregnancy. These cases warrant close microscopic review because they may mimic carcinomas.

**RISK MANAGEMENT AND PROFESSIONAL LIABILITY**

Associated with the increased involvement in evaluation of diseases of the breast comes attached potential liability. Although medicolegal concerns for abortion providers are minimal, instances of abortion, including therapeutic abortion, must be cognizant of the legal environment. The special challenge of these cases derives from the emotionally charged nature of the cancer diagnosis, combined with high expectations in the current capability of breast cancer screening and treatment outcomes. In this litigious society, nearly 80% of board-certified obstetricians/gynecologists in the United States have been sued for alleged malpractice. The most recent ACOG Professional Liability survey listed failure to diagnose breast cancer as the second leading primary allegation in claims against gynecologists (second only to surgical injury). Specifically, failure to diagnose breast cancer accounted for 33% of these claims, with failure to diagnose cervical (7.4%) and ovarian cancers (7.3%) running a far second and third. According to the Physician's Insurers Association of America, failure to diagnose cancer is the second most expensive condition to indemnify with an average payment of $212,896.

Health care providers encounter a wide variety of legal issues with regard to patients with breast disorders, including liability for alleged misdiagnosis, delayed diagnosis of breast cancer, failure to obtain informed consent, and improper treatment of breast disease. Controversial issues related to medical malpractice often affect the care of breast disorders. For example, many state legislatures have mandated informed consent requirements for those treating patients with breast cancer. Finally, legislation and litigation regarding insurance coverage for mammography screening, managed care policies, and new breast cancer treatments are becoming increasingly common. The idea that physicians would not be brought into suits against Health Maintenance Organizations (HMO) and pharmaceutical companies has drastically changed, with more private doctors becoming involved in lawsuits against corporate entities.

Analysis of the paid malpractice claims revealed women who were relatively young for the diagnosis of breast cancer (60% were younger than 50 years of age) and a high occurrence of false-negative mammogram results (nearly 80% of the claims had negative orequivocal mammogram results) were overrepresented. The average length of diagnostic delay was 14 months, with the average malpractice award or settlement increasing with longer periods of delay. The average indemnity payment increased by 36%. Interestingly, radiologists have surpassed gynecologists as the most frequently sued practitioner for delayed diagnosis, accounting for 24% of claims (gynecologists accounted for 23%). Specifically, this is a significant change from the previous study, wherein gynecologists accounted for 38% of the claims and radiologists for 11%. In 1995, family practitioners accounted for 17%, surgical specialties for 14%, internal medicine for 4%, and pathologists for 2%.

Historically, U.S. jurisdictions used a “but for” test to establish legal, or proximate, causation. Causation in legal terminology signifies that the practitioner’s action (e.g., delayed diagnosis) must have an association with the resultant injury (development of breast cancer) that is sufficiently close to hold the practitioner liable for damages. Under the “but for” test, malpractice damages are not awarded unless a better outcome was probable, better than even, or more likely than not, absent the actions of the practitioner. Under this test, only actions that possibly or with a likelihood of 50% or greater result in the alleged injury are deemed sufficient to make the practitioner liable for damages.

Historically, the “but for” standard was the most frequently used test of causation; however, this standard has been replaced in most states by causation theories that allow recovery in circumstances in which the probability that the negligent action led to patient injury is less than 50%. For instance, the “substantial factor” test permits recovery when the negligent behavior is a substantial factor in producing injury, even if the plaintiff’s chance at a better outcome absent the actions of the practitioner was less than 50-50. A distinct, but related, alternative causation standard is the “loss of a chance” theory. Many states have adopted this theory as a standard. In those jurisdictions, a physician may be held liable for actions that deny the patient some chance or prospect of a better outcome. For instance, a delayed diagnosis that reduced a patient’s chance of survival from 39% to 24% would preclude a verdict in favor of the physician in a “loss of a chance” state. Recovery would not be possible in a jurisdiction that followed the traditional “but for” causation analysis, in which, as in this scenario, there was less than a probable impact on outcome. Hence, the particular causation standard that a jurisdiction follows can have an enormous impact on the outcome of a medical malpractice liability case.

Medical malpractice cases based on delayed diagnosis are usually barred after the statute of limitations has run except under the Continuance Treatment Doctrine. Here the statute of limitations is tolled until the end of a course of treatment when the course of treatment, which includes the wrongful acts or omissions, has run continuously and is related to the same original condition or symptom. The purpose of the doctrine to
“maintain the physician-patient relationship in the belief that the most efficacious medical care will be obtained when the attending physician remains on a case from onset to cure.” It is essential to establish a course of treatment with respect to the condition that gives rise to the lawsuit for this doctrine to apply. Accordingly, “Where the physician and patient reasonably intend the patient’s uninterrupted reliance upon the physicians’ observations, diagnosis, and treatment of the patient’s condition will determine the patient’s progress,” the requirements of the continuous treatment doctrine are satisfied.

Hereditary cancer litigation may evolve into the new frontier of medical litigation. Allegations include failure to diagnose, failure to consult, the failure to inform other family members (one must be cognizant of Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act [HIPAA] considerations), and failure to offer testing. This has already occurred in obstetrics with Tay-Sachs testing. Physicians should familiarize themselves with risk assessment models or refer patients when susceptibility testing is deemed appropriate. Counseling must stress these figures are estimates and not absolute risks, and thus balance the magnitude of risk for the individual patient. Clinicians must also become familiar with the eligibility criteria for breast cancer susceptibility gene testing, the principles of genetic counseling, options available to those at high risk, and follow-up of patients at high risk.

As proffered by one expert, “The price of skill in the diagnosis of breast carcinoma is a kind of eternal vigilance based upon an awareness that any indication of disease in the breast may be due to carcinoma.” The most common reason underlying delay in diagnosis was physical examination findings that did not impress the physician (35%). Other reasons included failure to follow up in a timely fashion (31%), negative/misread mammogram (11%/12%), communication failure (11%), and poor clinical examination (10%). Because mammography has a 15% to 20% false-negative rate, the practitioner should not rely on a “negative” mammogram in the face of a dominant lesion or suspicious examination. However, because mammography may not detect neoplastic changes in the breast until the cancer has been developing for 6 years, some lesions will not be seen on mammography in retrospect, some should be considered as subthreshold, and some are appropriately classified as missed.

The significance of medicolegal issues in the arena of breast cancer compels practitioners to develop risk-management techniques that incorporate policies for reducing malpractice liability risk. The old adage “Good medicine is good law” is apropos as the guiding principles for care of women with breast disorders, which must be grounded in medical science and sound clinical judgment. Patient education and effective communication are key components of good clinical care and effective risk management. Inadequate or lack of informed consent is a pervasive issue in allegations against obstetricians and gynecologists. Physicians have been sued despite “successful” breast cancer surgery for breaching the physician’s duty in failing to obtain informed consent. Additionally, one should not undereemphasize significant diagnostic or therapeutic uncertainty in critical clinical decisions while maintaining an optimistic tenor in the doctor-patient relationship. This prevents the patient from misconstruing the importance or timeliness of returning for follow-up examinations, repeat diagnostic tests, or other procedures. The clinician should allow the patient to participate in the decision-making process.

“the best defense is an adequate record. For women with breast symptoms, the medical record should include a description and diagram of findings from the history and physical examination that will allow effective comparison during follow-up examinations. The chart notation “breasts okay” or “breasts normal” is not adequate chart documentation for a woman who presents with breast symptoms. The use of a printed encounter form designed specifically for breast symptoms may facilitate suitable chart documentation. Documentation of a dominant mass, which may be measured or diagrammed, requires evaluation and resolution. Practitioners should make a record of each visit and any changes that occurred in the interval from the previous checkup. The results of any diagnostic tests should be documented, including patient notification and discussion. Clinicians should also record the rationale and factors of importance in their decision making in the medical record. If, ultimately, the patient’s clinical course is unfavorable, prior documentation of the clinical reasoning may prove that the action taken was appropriate in light of the information available at the time.

The desired follow-up visits in women with breast symptoms should be explicit and clear. Scheduled appointment dates are preferable to patient-initiated (“PRN”) follow-up. Continuity of care for breast symptoms must be carefully ensured, even when other medical problems or referred specialists become interposed. An extra effort to dispatch reminder telephone calls and letters are appropriate for patients with particularly suspicious clinical presentations who do not follow up for appointments. If a referral is made, follow-up is necessary to ensure the patient has seen the appropriate consultant, and a copy of their recommendations should be made a part of the chart.

**CONCLUSION**

The epidemic of breast cancer represents a significant public health problem affecting a large number of women. As obstetricians/gynecologists continue to care for women and expand their primary care function, we must remain knowledgeable of the changes in the field of breast disease. Advanced technology has improved the ability to define risk status and identify women with genetic predisposition to breast cancer development. Increased access to and use of screening mammography have been instrumental in decreasing the mortality rate associated with breast cancer by identifying earlier stage disease. Although changes in mammographic screening have occurred, a consensus on the evaluation of women younger than 50 years is controversial. Further radiologic technology in the arena of DM may provide an alternative or adjunct to current conventional screen film, especially in subpopulations of women such as those with dense breasts and/or perimenopausal status. Although the impact of OCPs and HRT on the risk of breast cancer continues to be debated, the information must be used to provide informed consent for patients while continuing to keep an eye on the horizon for supplementary information. Medicoegal concerns will continue to hover, but an accurate assessment and attention to testing and follow-up will decrease the delayed diagnosis in the future. Ultimately, reaching all segments of the population with comprehensive prevention, early detection, and treatment services could reduce cancer incidence and mortality even when the technology is still evolving.

Continued monitoring and preparation in ensuring uniformly high standards of care is an important aspect of future national policy goals.
BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Lumpectomy plus irradiation has been shown in RCT to be equally efficacious as modified radical mastectomy for treatment of stage I and II disease.
- Iatrogenic pneumothorax is a potentially dangerous, although rare, complication of FNA, which may be reduced by stabilizing the lesion over a rib before needle insertion.
- Positioning of the patient at the margin of the exam table for an FNA is helpful to improve access to breast structures.
- Care must be taken in performing CNB to avoid advancing the cutting needle beyond the suspect mass, lest the contiguous normal breast or chest wall be injured or implanted with malignant cells.
- Vacuum-assisted CNB technique using a 11-gauge needle is becoming the method of choice for stereotactic and ultrasound biopsies with placement of a radiopaque clip.
- Risk-reducing breast procedures include total mastectomy (involving the nipple/areola complex and the biopsy site) and the nipple/areola complex, skin-sparing mastectomy (resection of the nipple/areola complex and the biopsy site, and removal of the breast parenchyma), and subcu-

naneous mastectomy (removal of most of the breast tissue with preservation of the nipple/areola complex). Breast can-
cers have been noted after subcutaneous mastectomy, but additional studies are needed.
- Masses within 2 cm of the areolar margin may be best dissected through a circumareolar incision at the areolar margin.
- The most cosmetically acceptable scars result from incisions that follow the contour of Langer’s lines.
- Closure of mastectomy incisions with decreased tension is improved by undermining the attached skin flaps 3 to 4 cm.
- It is best to keep biopsy incisions within the boundaries of “potential” incisions for future mastectomy or wide local excision should those therapies be required for definitive treatment.
- Use of tissue expanders has become the predominant means of breast reconstruction in patients who have not had extensive skin removal.
- Risk-reducing salpingo-oophorectomy should include complete removal of the ovaries and fallopian tubes with serial sectioning by the pathologist.

Bibliography

Abriata, A., Simon, A. Breast fine needle aspiration biopsy: providing recommenda-
Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. Screening for breast cancer: recom-
American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gy-
Barrios, R., Dalai, D., Reamers, R.A., et al. Meta-analysis; high dosage vita-
Barra, P., Kan, E.E., Inova, T., et al. Evaluation of preoperative chemotherapy using PIT with Eustace-Ohkohdou-Doh-galas to predict the patho-
Barton, S.G., Blue, J., Judik, K., et al. Ultrasound is now better than mammo-
Barnes, D.B., Byrson, E.J., Gaddy-Brooks, D.F., et al. BRCA1/2 validation, sensi-
Bozzuto, F., Ruhetting, A., Patrignani, M., et al. Switching to anastrozole ver-
The Breast International Group (BIG) 1-98 Collaborative Group. A comparison of 
Cuzick J, Forbes J, Edwards R, et al. First results from the IBIS 1: a randomized preven-
Domchek SM, Eisen EA, Calzone K, et al. Application of breast cancer risk pre-
Early Breast Cancer Trialists Collaborative Group. Effects of chemotherapy and 
Edwards BK, Brown ML, Wingo PA, et al. Annual report to the nation on the 
Freer, T.W., Utmar, M.R. Scanning mammography with computer-aided detec-
Gong, C., Song, S., Ju, W., et al. A double blind randomized controlled trial of 
Goss PE, Ingle, JN, Martin, S., et al. A randomized trial of tamoxifen in post-
Goss PE, Ingle, JN, Martin, S., et al. Randomized trials of tamoxifen following 
Gottschall, P.C., Older, O. Is screening for breast cancer with mammography justi-
Harmatz, AR, Davis, RL, Kassan, AR, et al. Breast magnetic resonance image screening and usual care in women at high genetic risk for breast car-


DEFINITIONS

Appendicitis—Inflammation of the appendix, usually initiated by obstruction of the appendiceal lumen and subsequent production of frank pus. Obstruction may be caused by hyperplasia of lymphoid follicles in response to systemic infectious disease, by bacterial enterocolitis, by a fecolith, by a tumor or other invasive process, or by a foreign body.

Incidental appendectomy—Prophylactic removal of the normal-appearing appendix during surgery for another condition.

McBurney’s point—Located at the junction of the middle and lateral thirds of a line drawn from the umbilicus to right anterolateral spine.

Oburator sign—Increased pain in the right lower abdomen when passively flexing the hip.

Psoas sign—Increased pain as the right leg is extended when passively flexing the hip.

Rovsing sign—Pain in the right lower quadrant when pressure is applied to the left lower quadrant.

Appendectomy is the most common surgical procedure performed on an emergency basis and the most common cause of abdominal pain requiring surgery. The differential diagnosis of lower abdominal pain not only includes acute appendicitis, but many gynecologic problems, such as pelvic inflammatory disease, ectopic pregnancy, ovarian torsion, and ruptured ovarian cyst. Therefore, the differential diagnosis of lower abdominal pain is one of the most common and difficult diagnoses that the gynecologist is called on to make. It is a serious undertaking and one in which a mistake could be fatal.

Individuals have a 7% lifetime risk of developing appendicitis. In the United States, reports show that approximately 300,000 operations are done per year, with the greatest incidence in the second and third decade of life. Although the overall mortality rate with appropriate and timely treatment is much less than 1%, it remains approximately 3% to 5% in the elderly. The higher mortality and morbidity rate in the elderly is caused by the increased difficulty in diagnosing appendicitis in older people, which leads to a higher rate of perforation. The incidence of perforation in patients ranges from 17% to 40%, with a median of 20%. The perforation rate in the elderly patient is significantly higher, with rates as high as 60% to 70% reported. Several factors contribute to this, including significant delay in seeking care, nonspecificity of the presenting symptoms and signs, diminished febrile response, and fewer abnormal laboratory parameters, such as the white blood cell count. Although the mortality rate for acute appendicitis is less than 0.1%, the mortality rate for gangrenous appendicitis is about 0.6%, and the mortality rate for perforated appendix is 5%. Death usually is the result of uncontrollable sepsis with generalized peritonitis, intraabdominal abscesses, intestinal obstruction, pyelonephritis, and Gram-negative septicemia. The overall morbidity rate is about 15% to 20% in most reports of appendicitis, with wound infection from a gangrenous or perforated appendix being the most common complication. Preoperative antibiotic therapy has greatly improved the morbidity rate, but perforation of the appendix is not prevented by antibiotics. Nor has the incidence of perforation decreased in recent years. Acute inflammation of the appendix commonly extends to the right adnexa (Fig. 42.1) and can involve the left as well when a large periappendical abscess develops in the pelvis. When the appendix ruptures, bilateral tubal abscesses commonly occur that may result in sterility or tubal pregnancy as a sequela. Incidental appendectomy at the time of other pelvic surgery remains controversial, but proponents argue that appendectomy simplifies the differential diagnosis of lower abdominal pain and prevents the possibility of a ruptured appendix in the future. This controversy is discussed later in the chapter.

HISTORY

The first known surgical removal of the appendix occurred in December 1735 when Claudius Amyand operated on an 11-year-old boy with a longstanding scrotal hernia and fecal fistula. He found a perforated appendix in the hernia sac and removed it. The fistula closed, and the boy recovered. The first known successful appendectomy for acute appendicitis was performed in 1880 by Lawson Tait, the renowned British abdominal and gynecologic surgeon who was also the first to operate successfully on a patient with a ruptured tubal pregnancy.

The recognition of appendicitis as a significant problem necessitating surgical removal was described by Fitz in 1886 and McBurney in 1889. Fitz described the sequence of appendiceal inflammation, perforation, abscess formation, and peritonitis.

In 1905, Kelly and Hurdon coauthored a beautifully illustrated book titled The Vermiform Appendix and Its Diseases. The book is unexcelled in its definition of the pathology, clinical manifestations, and natural history of appendicitis and its complications. There have been numerous reviews through the years since that time.

ANATOMY AND FUNCTION OF THE APPENDIX

The base of the appendix arises from the inferior wall of the cecum about 2.5 cm from the ileocecal valve. The taeniae coli of the cecum form the outer longitudinal muscle of the...
appendix and, therefore, can be followed inferorly to help locate an appendix that is hidden. The appendical tip is found most commonly in a retrocecal position (65% of cases). Signs and symptoms of appendicitis may vary depending on the location of the appendix. The main blood supply to the appendix, the appendicular artery, is a branch of the ileocolic artery and is located in the mesoappendix. The base of the appendix is supplied by a branch of the posterior cecal artery.

The appendiceal wall is composed of smooth muscle; the narrow lumen is lined by colonic mucosa. A large number of submucosal lymphoid follicles are found in the appendix in teenagers and young adults. This number declines rapidly after 30 years of age. These lymphoid follicles function in the gut-associated lymphoid tissue secretory globulin immune system, but their function is not indispensable in the secretory immune system of the gut.

Anatomists have questioned the purpose of the appendix since its initial description. Leonardo da Vinci considered the appendix to serve and protect the cecum from rupture by too great an accumulation of “superfluous wind” because it had the ability to dilate and contract. Current belief is that the appendix is a vestigial organ with no function in humans. The appendix is absent in carnivores such as the dog, wolf, tiger, and lion. In herbivores, a long and well-developed cecum is noted. In omnivores, which include apes and humans, a portion of the cecum is smaller in diameter with a prominent lymphoid aggregation susceptible to inflammation or atrophy. The preserve of lymphoid aggregation has led to the hypothesis that the appendix has a role in immune surveillance of the gut. Others postulate an exocrine function to assist in the digestion of plants. In a 24-hour period, the adult human appendix produces a maximum of 2 mL of fluid containing mucin, amylase, and proteolytic enzymes. It is unlikely that this volume aids substantially in digestion. A pressure gradient normally exists along the long axis and prohibits the entrance of food or other intestinal contents into the lumen of the appendix.

**ACUTE APPENDICITIS**

Acute appendicitis is initiated by an obstruction of the appendiceal lumen. The obstruction can be caused by hyperplasia of lymphoid follicles of the appendix as part of a generalized response of lymphoid tissue to a systemic infectious disease, by bacterial enterocolitis, or by a fecalith, a foreign body, or intestinal parasites in the appendiceal lumen. An increase in intraluminal pressure distal to the obstruction from increased mucus secretion is followed by an increase in bacteria and, finally, the production of frank pus. The appendix becomes swollen, and the appendiceal wall becomes edematous from obstruction of lymphatic and venous drainage. Ulceration of the mucosa allows invasion of the wall by bacteria. Further progression causes venous thrombosis and obstruction of blood flow through the appendiceal artery. Because this is an end artery, no collateral circulation is available to prevent ischemic necrosis and gangrene with eventual rupture of the wall. Escape of bacteria through the perforation causes peritonitis. Unless necrosis of the base of the appendix occurs, continued fecal contamination of the peritoneal cavity is prevented by the initial blockage of the appendiceal lumen. The infection in the right lower quadrant can be walled off efficiently in young, healthy patients. In women, this abscess usually involves the right adnexal organs to some extent. Generalized peritonitis may ensue in advanced age or in the presence of reduced host resistance from other illnesses or immunosuppression. A correlation between the clinical course and pathologic progress of appendicitis is illustrated in Figure 42.2.

**Diagnosis of Acute Appendicitis**

The diagnosis of acute appendicitis is based primarily on history and physical examination, although today computed

In infants and children, the diagnosis is also more difficult, and the incidence of appendicular perforation higher. Improvement in the results for these two age groups depends on a higher index of suspicion and a lower threshold for intervention, which inevitably results in the removal of a larger number of normal appendices. Improved diagnosis with ultrasound and CT scanning may decrease the incidence of appendicular rupture and also the frequency of exploratory laparotomy for what turns out to be a normal appendix. However, removal of a normal appendix in a symptomatic patient who is thought to have appendicitis, a potentially lethal disease, should not be considered an unnecessary operation. The number of elderly patients and children who die of appendicitis because of failure to operate early enough when the diagnosis is in doubt is much higher than the number of patients who die from a complication following removal of a normal appendix. The morbidity of negative laparoscopy or laparotomy is minimal and is much more acceptable than the significantly higher morbidity of a perforated appendix. Unfortunately, after 60 years of age, about 50% of patients are found to have a ruptured appendix when the operation is finally done. The mortality rate in these patients is 5%; however, this represents more than 50% of all deaths from appendicitis.

Twelve to forty-eight hours usually elapse from the onset of symptoms until the patient consults his physician. On physical examination, patients with appendicitis classically have tenderness to direct palpation, rebound tenderness, and muscle guarding in the right lower quadrant. Clinical and laboratory findings are not as helpful in making the diagnosis. In 1% to 2% of children and elderly patients, peritonitis with small bowel obstruction may be present. Tumors of the colon, not appendicitis, may be the cause of symptoms that resemble appendicitis.

However, removal of a normal appendix in a symptomatic patient who is thought to have appendicitis, a potentially lethal disease, should not be considered an unnecessary operation. The number of elderly patients and children who die of appendicitis because of failure to operate early enough when the diagnosis is in doubt is much higher than the number of patients who die from a complication following removal of a normal appendix. The morbidity of negative laparoscopy or laparotomy is minimal and is much more acceptable than the significantly higher morbidity of a perforated appendix. Unfortunately, after 60 years of age, about 50% of patients are found to have a ruptured appendix when the operation is finally done. The mortality rate in these patients is 5%; however, this represents more than 50% of all deaths from appendicitis.
Inflamed appendiceal serosa is in contact with the parietal peritoneum, often at McBurney’s point, which is located at the junction of the middle and lateral thirds of a line drawn from the umbilicus to the right anterosuperior spine. The Rovsing sign (pain in the right lower quadrant when pressure is applied in the left lower quadrant) as well as psoas and obturator muscle signs may be positive. A positive psoas sign is increased pain in the right lower abdomen when passively flexing the right hip and knee and internally rotating the leg at the hip, indicating irritation of the obturator muscle. Rectal and pelvic examinations always should be done and often reveal tenderness high on the right side of the pelvis. Pelvic inflammatory disease is almost always associated with bilateral adnexal tenderness. A pelvic mass from an inflamed appendix sometimes can be felt on pelvic examination. A tender, unilateral adnexal mass also may be found in a patient with ovarian torsion, but ultrasound should help make the diagnosis. As the disease progresses to gangrene and appendiceal perforation, the sensitivity of ultrasound in the diagnosis of appendicitis increases with diffuse tenderness, guarding, distention, ileus, dehydration, tachycardia, and spiking fever. All these signs may be less apparent in the elderly. Several studies over the past few decades have evaluated the clinical presentation of patients with acute appendicitis. A summary of the common history and physical findings is shown in Table 42.1.

### Laboratory and Radiology Diagnosis

Minimal investigation is required when the history and physical examination are definitive. About two thirds of patients with appendicitis have an elevated white blood cell (WBC) count of greater than 10,000 WBC/mL. However, an elevated WBC is not specific for appendicitis, as the cells may be leukopenic or neutropenic in appendicitis. A summary of the common history and physical findings is shown in Table 42.1.

### Table 42.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>LR+ (95% CI)</th>
<th>LR− (95% CI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Right lower quadrant pain</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.53</td>
<td>7.31 (8.46)</td>
<td>0–0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rigidity</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>3.76 (2.96–4.78)</td>
<td>0.82 (0.79–0.85)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migration</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>3.18 (2.41–4.21)</td>
<td>0.50 (0.42–0.59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain before vomiting</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>2.76 (1.94–3.94)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psoas sign</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>2.38 (1.21–4.67)</td>
<td>0.90 (0.83–0.98)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>1.94 (1.63–2.32)</td>
<td>0.38 (0.51–0.67)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebound tenderness test</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>1.10–6.30</td>
<td>0–0.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guarding</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>1.65–1.78</td>
<td>0–0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No similar pain previously</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>1.50 (1.36–1.66)</td>
<td>0.32 (0.246–0.424)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectal tenderness</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.83–5.34</td>
<td>0.36–1.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anorexia</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>1.27 (1.16–1.38)</td>
<td>0.64 (0.54–0.75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nausea</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>0.69–1.20</td>
<td>0.70–0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.92 (0.82–1.04)</td>
<td>1.12 (0.95–1.33)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LR, likelihood ratio; CI, confidence interval.

Source: Wagner JM, McKinney WP, Carpenter JL. Does this patient have appendicitis? JAMA 1996;276:1589, with permission.
psos shadow may be noted and represents late appendicitis with retroperitoneal inflammation. A perforated or gangrenous appendix may exhibit extrabdominal gas on radiographs, but this occurs in only 1% of cases. A sentinel loop ileus or a soft-tissue mass with or without gas bubbles also may be seen in advanced cases.

Barium contrast studies remain a simple, safe, and readily available test that may be helpful. However, ultrasound and CT examinations now are preferred. A barium study assures luminal patency of the appendix, colonic wall for mass effects or secondary effects of appendicitis, and right colonic or terminal ileal mucosal disease that may simulate appendicitis. When the barium contrast fills the appendix, a diagnosis of acute appendicitis is very unlikely but not impossible. Up to 10% to 20% of normal appendices do not fill during a barium study. Laparoscopy can be both diagnostic and therapeutic for acute appendicitis. Some have advocated diagnostic laparoscopy in all women presenting with symptoms associated with acute appendicitis to reduce unnecessary appendectomy while also examining for gynecologic pathologies. The diagnostic error of presumed appendicitis in young, adult women in the reproductive years is 35% to 50%. According to Leape and Romanofsky, and Deutech and associates, about one third of patients who underwent laparoscopy for suspected appendicitis did not have appendicitis.

Because there is no single diagnostic test for acute appendicitis that is accurate and applicable to the general population, most physicians agree with Levine and associates that a decrease in the number of negative explorations is most likely to be achieved by sound clinical judgment supplemented by basic laboratory and radiologic studies. Using this standard classical approach assiduously, these authors reported negative laparotomy in only 7.4% of 282 patients with a preoperative diagnosis of suspected appendicitis. Most patients with the classic pattern of migratory abdominal pain, direct and rebound tenderness in the right lower abdominal quadrant, and increased metamyelocytes in the peripheral blood smear require prompt operation. However, when there is an atypical presentation in a young adult women, close in-hospital observation may be indicated to allow progression of the clinical picture and complete the radiologic workup. Simultaneous evaluation by the general surgeon and gynecologist is also of benefit in improving diagnostic accuracy.

Laparoscopy may be indicated in problem patients. In almost all circumstances, a laparoscopy with negative findings is preferred to expectantly watching the appendix rupture or pelvic inflammatory disease progress untreated. An unnecessary delay increases the likelihood of perforation, increasing morbidity and mortality. In the younger patient, it also increases the risk of pelvic adhesions, infertility, and chronic pain. When surgery is performed within 24 hours of the onset of symptoms, less than 20% of appendices are perforated, compared with more than 70% when operation is delayed more than 48 hours after symptoms began. A delay in diagnosis in pregnant patients has especially devastating effects on the outcome. A proper evaluation of clinical presentation allows the index of suspicion to be set at the proper level so that a threshold for intervention can be reached before the appendix ruptures. According to Condon and Tellford,

The removal of a normal appendix in appropriate clinical circumstances never constitutes an unnecessary appendectomy. A policy of active surgical intervention on the basis of minimal clinical suspicion has been demonstrated to reduce both the morbidity and mortality of appendicitis. Watching and waiting, however careful it may be, runs the risk of increasing both morbidity and mortality.
There is general agreement that the treatment of acute appendicitis is appendectomy. Clinical experience and numerous reports on mortality clearly show the advantage of early operation. The current operative mortality without perforation is essentially nil, and only 3% of patients have postoperative complications. After perforation, the overall mortality rate is less than 5%, but more than 30% of patients have postoperative complications. These statistics have improved with the use of antibiotics and earlier intervention.

The patient with acute appendicitis should not be rushed to the operating room without adequate hydration and antibiotic treatment. Most surgeons use short-course (≤24 hours) antimicrobial prophylaxis. One common combination is cefazolin and metronidazole to cover Gram-negative, positive, and anaerobic bacteria. Recent studies have recommended monotherapy with a second-generation, broad-spectrum cephalosporin such as cefotetan for patients undergoing surgery. Antibiotics have been shown to be effective in reducing the incidence of postoperative wound infections if started preoperatively. Antibiotics can be discontinued immediately following surgery if the appendix is not gangrenous or perforated. However, if the appendix has ruptured, many surgeons switch to triple antibiotic therapy including ampicillin, metronidazole, and gentamicin to encompass a wide spectrum of enteric bacteria. Intravenous antibiotic therapy should be continued until the patient is well on the way to recovery, which is usually 3 to 5 days.

Postoperatively, if the appendix is not ruptured, the patient usually is discharged within 24 hours. However, if the appendix was ruptured or gangrenous, supportive treatment is continued in the ill patient. Food and fluid by mouth are restricted. Nasogastric suction is rarely used today. Wound infection is the most common complication after appendectomy. Other more serious complications include pelvic, subphrenic, and intraabdominal abscess; fecal fistula; peritonitis; pylonephritis; and sometimes intestinal obstruction. Septicemia, pneumonia, septic shock, renal failure, and pulmonary edema can lead to death in the most advanced or neglected cases. It is relatively safe to remove the appendix in virtually any patient. However, if there are significant medical contraindications to surgery in a non-toxic patient with a clear diagnosis of an appendiceal abscess, a nonoperative approach can be considered. If a distinct mass in the right iliac fossa is palpated and the patient has no systemic manifestations, the patient is kept nil per os (NPO) while intravenous fluids and broad-spectrum antibiotics are given to cover enteric organisms. The patient should be kept under close observation with the pulse closely followed because tachycardia is one of the first signs of sepsis. Other clinical parameters to follow include change in pain quality, white blood cell counts, differential counts, and serial radiologic evaluations, including ultrasound and/or CT. Failure to respond to therapy after 24 to 48 hours indicates that operative intervention should be reconsidered. Patients with well-formed perineal abscesses can undergo CT-guided placement of pigtail drainage catheters to help resolve the abscess more rapidly, rather than depending on the abscess to drain internally into the cecum. If the abscess is palpable, it is usually large and should be drained. Limitations of percutaneous drainage include the inaccessibility of multiloculated abscesses, inaccessible location, and possible need for anesthesia. Periapendical abscesses usually resolve in 10 to 14 days without appendectomy or drainage. Most surgeons wait 6 to 12 weeks after nonoperative therapy to perform an interval appendectomy. Technical difficulties during interval appendectomy may be minimal but can be extreme, depending on the nature of the initial abscess.

Laparoscopic Technique

Since it was first described by Semm in 1983, laparoscopic appendectomy has gained acceptance as both a diagnostic and treatment method for acute appendicitis. Many studies have demonstrated that a videolaparoscopic approach to acute appendicitis is safe and effective for the experienced endoscopist. The laparoscopic approach offers many potential advantages, including less surgical tissue trauma, a better postoperative course, the ability to explore the entire abdominal cavity, assessment for the presence of associated pathologies, better cosmetic results, and a rapid return to normal activity. The ability to completely evaluate the pelvis and the entire peritoneal cavity when a healthy appendix is found is extremely important for the gynecologist in light of the other conditions that mimic appendicitis in women, such as adnexitis, endometriosis, ovarian cysts, ectopic pregnancies, and even cholecystitis.

Removing a normal appendix during laparoscopic evaluation for suspected acute appendicitis can be performed with no added morbidity or increased length of hospitalization as compared with diagnostic laparoscopy. Initially, there were some concerns about an increased risk of intraabdominal abscess formation following laparoscopic surgery for acute appendicitis, possibly secondary to peritoneal insufflation spreading local infection throughout the abdominal cavity and the carbon dioxide pneumoperitoneum creating a favorable environment for the survival of virulent anaerobic bacteria. However, many studies comparing open versus laparoscopic appendectomies have shown a lower morbidity rate with laparoscopy. The laparoscopic approach offers the advantage of shorter hospitalization and less morbidity, with a lower rate of abdominal wall infection. There is no significant difference in the rate of abscess formation in patients with perforated appendicitis. The interval until the patient may return to work is shortened and postoperative pain is decreased with the laparoscopic approach, and the quality of life appears to improve faster than with the traditional open approach is used. Obese patients may benefit substantially from the laparoscopic approach as it obviates the problems of a large incision, strong retraction, prolonged surgery, and wound infection that are associated with open surgery in the obese.

The disadvantages of the laparoscopic approach have been longer duration of surgery and higher costs. However, the length of surgery has been significantly reduced with improved surgical skills and experience. Also, the immediate cost difference appears to be diminished with the use of reusable laparoscopic equipment, and when the more rapid return to work and other activities is included, the laparoscopic approach turns out to be extremely cost-effective. It is increasingly recommended as the procedure of choice for the diagnosis and treatment of suspected acute appendicitis.

The operation is conducted under general anesthesia with endotracheal intubation and muscle relaxation to allow controlled ventilation after the patient has been positioned in the modified dorsal lithotomy position with low stirrups. The position of the patient may be adjusted by Trendelenburg tilt or tipping the table to the left to optimize visualization of the pelvis and better exposure to the structures on the right side of the pelvis and the right iliac fossa. The stomach and bladder are decompressed to minimize risk of injury during trocar insertion.
FIGURE 42.5. Laparoscopic appendectomy technique. A: The appendix is elevated with atraumatic forceps, and a pretied suture loop is placed around the distal end to provide traction. B: The mesoappendix is divided using cautery. Clips or the harmonic scalpel also can be used. C: The skeletonized base of the appendix is then crushed with forceps to empty its contents, and three ligatures are placed around the base. D: The appendix is divided, leaving two absorbable ligatures on the stump.

and allow optimal visualization of the operative field. Initially, an open or closed laparoscopic trocar insertion technique is used to place a 5- or 10-mm laparoscope. After viewing the location of the appendix, the accessory trocars can be placed in several different ways, again depending on the preference of the surgeon and anatomy of the appendix. We prefer placing the accessory trocars in the right and left lower quadrants and then one in the midline two finger breadths above the symphysis pubis. This places the trocars in positions familiar to the gynecologist and results in cosmetically appealing incisions. Atraumatic forceps are used through the lower right trocar to secure the tip of the appendix. If the appendix is markedly swollen, a pretied surgical loop can be placed at the tip and used for traction (Fig. 42.5). The appendix is elevated and retracted toward the pelvis, keeping the mesoappendix stretched. Adhesions can be separated from the appendix with sharp or blunt dissection. Dense and vascular adhesions require bipolar cautery, the harmonic scalpel, or clips. The appendix is skeletonized and isolated from the mesoappendix with bipolar cautery. (Metal clips, unipolar cautery, and the harmonic shears also may be used.) Special attention should be given to the appendicular artery that is located near the base of the appendix. The base of the appendix is secured by various methods: (a) three metal clips or three Endoloops with transection between them so that two ligatures remain at the base of the appendix, (b) the use of bipolar coagulation and resection, (c) the use of mechanical cutting and stapling devices, and (d) the use of endoloops with which self-locking extracorporeal slip-knots or normal surgical knots are made. Mechanical suturing devices can be used offering a secure and technically easy method, but this is an expensive option. We prefer the Endoloop technique using no. 1 chromic sutures. After isolating the appendix, two chronic Endoloop ties are placed securely at the base of the appendix. The area distal to the ties is then milked, and the third Endoloop is placed 2 to 4 mm from the other ties. The appendix can be excised with scissors or harmonic scalpel and removed through the larger trocar under direct visualization. The appendix can be placed in an endobag or surgical glove when there is the possibility of rupture. Some advocate cauterizing the stump; however, this can cause necrosis of the cecum at the site of the ligature on the appendicular stump and result in a subsequent cecal fistula. Care should be taken to remove the entire appendix because appendicitis is cleared off the base of the appendix until the three taenia on the cecum can be identified clearly. Stump invagination is not necessary and not performed routinely by this author because of the reasons...
Common incisions for appendectomy. The classic McBurney’s point, at the junction of the middle and lateral thirds of a line drawn from the umbilicus to the right anterior superior iliac spine, does not universally mark the tip of the appendix. In general, an inferior incision below the area of maximal tenderness helps in rotating the cecum into the wound. The McBurney incision is the classical oblique appendectomy incision through McBurney’s point to the lateral edge of the rectus sheath; it can be extended into the lateral rectus sheath, if necessary. It is quite cosmetically acceptable when healed (Fig. 42.6). Alternatively, a skin line or transverse incision placed 1 to 2 cm medial to the anterosuperior iliac spine can be used. Both incisions generally are performed with a muscle-splitting technique through all layers lateral to the rectus abdominis muscle as an entrance into the abdomen is gained. A low, horizontal skin incision also can be used and is possibly more cosmetically. The incision is continued through the superficial fascia until the external oblique muscle is exposed. The fibers of the aponeurosis are opened sharply, and the muscle fibers are bluntly separated, as are the fibers of the internal oblique and transverse abdominis muscles. The peritoneum is incised, and cultures can be obtained. The cecum is mobilized into the wound, and the appendix is mobilized as adhesions are bluntly and/or sharply dissected. The base of the appendix always lies at the confluence of the taeniae. When the appendix is mobile, the mesoappendix can be grasped near the tip of the appendix with a Kelly clamp and the appendiceal stump is then doubly ligated with 2-0 absorbable suture. The appendiceal stump is then dropped into a small basin to avoid contamination. The peritoneal cavity is then closed. If the appendix is inflamed. An abscess can form in the cecum on barium enema leading to diagnostic confusion. Copious irrigation with saline or antibiotic solution should be performed in cases of perforated appendicitis, but delayed primary closure is routine in cases of ruptured appendicitis. Skin mattress sutures can be placed and left untied until the third to fifth postoperative day. If the wound is clean, the skin sutures are tied and adhesive strips placed. If the wound is not healthy, it should not be closed but packed with wet to dry dressings and allowed to granulate from the previously discussed. If the surgeon desires to bury the stump, it is performed in a fashion similar to the open technique using no. 0 chromic catgut suture and one extracorporeal knot. Careful irrigation and suction is performed after removal of the appendix.

Open Technique

The standard management of appendicitis has been open appendectomy by way of a limited right lower quadrant incision. The surgeon should note the point of maximal tenderness before anesthesia and attempt to palpate masses after anesthesia. McBurney’s point, at the junction of the middle and lateral thirds of a line drawn from the umbilicus to the right anterosuperior iliac spine, does not universally mark the tip of the appendix. In general, an inferior incision below the area of maximal tenderness helps in rotating the cecum into the wound. The McBurney incision is the classical oblique appendectomy incision through McBurney’s point to the lateral edge of the rectus sheath; it can be extended into the lateral rectus sheath, if necessary. It is quite cosmetically acceptable when healed (Fig. 42.6). Alternatively, a skin incision placed 1 to 2 cm medial to the anterosuperior iliac spine can be used. Both incisions generally are performed with a muscle-splitting technique through all layers lateral to the rectus abdominis muscle as an entrance into the abdomen is gained. A low, horizontal skin incision also can be used and is possibly more cosmetically. The incision is continued through the superficial fascia until the external oblique muscle is exposed. The fibers of the aponeurosis are opened sharply, and the muscle fibers are bluntly separated, as are the fibers of the internal oblique and transverse abdominis muscles. The peritoneum is incised, and cultures can be obtained. The cecum is mobilized into the wound, and the appendix is mobilized as adhesions are bluntly and/or sharply dissected. The base of the appendix always lies at the confluence of the taeniae. When the appendix is mobile, the mesoappendix can be grasped near the tip of the appendix with a Kelly clamp and the appendiceal stump is then doubly ligated with 2-0 absorbable suture. The appendiceal stump is then dropped into a small basin to avoid contamination. The peritoneal cavity is then closed.
FIGURE 42.7. Technique of open appendectomy. A: The appendix is elevated by a Babcock clamp, and the mesoappendix is ligated. Alternatively, small clamps may be used to clamp, cut, and tie the mesoappendix. B: The operative field is isolated with gauze packs, and the appendix is cross-clamped and divided between the two closely placed clamps. C: The stump of the appendix is ligated with a 2.0 absorbable ligature. D: The stump is usually cauterized and covered with the adjacent mesoappendix.

APPENDICITIS IN PREGNANCY

In 1898, Hancock reported the first case of appendicitis complicating pregnancy. Appendectomy is the most common nonobstetric operative intervention in the pregnant patient. The reported incidence of appendicitis in pregnancy varies from 1 in 355 to 1 in 11,479 deliveries. If ectopic pregnancy is excluded, appendicitis is responsible for about 75% of all cases of an acute abdomen during pregnancy. The incidence of acute appendicitis does not seem to be increased during pregnancy above that of the nonpregnant state, but the diagnosis often is delayed. Acute appendicitis occurs more often during the second trimester (50%) than during the first (10%) or third trimester (35%). Five percent of cases occur during labor or in puerperium. Although pregnancy does not appear to increase the incidence of appendicitis, it does increase the difficulty of diagnosis. This is because many abdominal symptoms are considered "normal" during pregnancy. Added to this are the anatomic changes in the location of the appendix. Bier and associates showed by repeat roentgenographic studies...
throughout pregnancy and the puerperium that the appendix rotated in a counterclockwise direction, with the tip displaced near the right kidney at term. The base of the appendix under-went upward and outward displacement after the third month, caused by the enlarging uterus, and reached the level of the iliac crest at the end of the sixth month. After the seventh month of pregnancy, in 88% of their cases, the appendix was found above the iliac crest. However, in interpreting these findings in relation to abdominal pain and tenderness, one must remember that in dealing with an abnormal appendix in which previous attacks of appendicitis may have occurred, adhesions can fix it in a low position and do not permit its upward displacement.

Ultrasound may be particularly useful in the diagnosis in pregnancy; but as noted, it may not be located in its normal, nonpregnant, right lower quadrant location. The most impor-tant step for the clinician is to consider the diagnosis of appen-dicitis in pregnancy.

The incidence of gangrenous and perforated appendix has been reported to be twice as high in pregnant patients as in women who are not pregnant and is highest in advanced preg-nancy. In a pregnant patient, the omentum may not be able to reach the site of infection and perform its walling off func-tion efficiently. If rupture is followed by abscess formation, the uterus is always a part of the abscess wall because of its prox-imity. Generalized peritonitis without abscess is more common in advanced pregnancy and is a serious threat to the expectant mother and her unborn child. The speed of onset and spread of peritonitis in pregnant patients can be insidious and strikingly rapid. The patient can become seriously ill and appear mor-tally ill within 24 hours. Peritonitis increases uterine irritability and the risk of preterm labor. Premature labor and delivery are the most serious fetal risks with up to 30% fetal mortality re-port against abortion if perforation occurs. Maternal complications include wound infections, pelvic abscess, peritonitis, and pulmonary complications.

**Treatment of Appendicitis in Pregnancy**

Immediate operation is the treatment for acute appendicitis in pregnancy, regardless of the duration of pregnancy. Precoopera-tive measures to improve the patient’s condition should be brief and intensive. Although antibiotics may not be needed in sim-ple acute appendicitis, antibiotic therapy should be initiated 30 minutes before surgery so that an adequate level can be present in the tissues when the incision is made. When a gangrenous or perforated appendix is found, antibiotics with broad-spectrum bacterial coverage should be continued or ini-tiated immediately in both the pregnant and nonpregnant pa-tient. One may choose to give cefoxitin and metronidazole. In the more serious cases, triple antibiotic therapy with ampicillin, gentamicin, and clindamycin should be used.

In this inflammatory environment, some suggest the use of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, such as indomethacin or ibuprofen, for tocolysis. Intravenous magnesium sulfate also can be used. Although the use of tocolytic agents to combat premature labor might seem reasonable, they should be used only in patients who are hemodynamically stable because they can increase pulmonary edema. As pointed out by deVeciana and associates, injurious fluid management and tocolytic use can greatly increase the risk of pulmonary complications with a significant morbidity and even mortality associated with appendicitis in those days led Fischer in 1909 and Goldspohn in 1911 to endorse incidental appendectomy during other abdominal operations. However, the risk of morbidity and mortality have been substantially reduced in the past 50 years, and presently the use of incidental appendectomy at the time of gynecologic surgery is controversial. The decision to select the

Delay in operating also can stem from concern about what harm the operation will do to the pregnancy, with the conse-quent desire to operate only when acute appendicitis is defi-nitely present. Such a delay only increases the risk of perfo-ration with its attendant problems for both mother and fetus. Proper removal of a normal appendix found at operation for suspected appendicitis rarely is associated with preterm labor, so the benefits clearly outweigh the minimal risks.

The anesthetic should be planned and administered to avoid hypotension and hypoxia. If the pregnancy is 3 months or less in duration, the appendix can be removed through the usual gridiron McBurney or Rockey-Davis incision. The more ad-vanced the pregnancy, the higher the risk will be the incision. If a midline incision is not used, it is important to center the in-cision over the point of maximum tenderness, which usually means using a high transverse muscle-cutting or a right para-median incision. Tilting the patient to her left side minimizes displacement and handling of the uterus and relieves the com-pression of the vena cava by the gravid uterus. The appendec-toomy should be done as quickly andatraumatically as possible, and the patient should be given intensive antibiotic therapy. In the case of appendiceal rupture with or without frank abscess formation, the patient should be treated immediately, in the same way as in the nonpregnant state, with the understanding that premature labor usually occurs as a result of the infec-tion. Cesarean section should not be performed at that time of appendectomy with or without rupture to avoid infection in the newborn and postoperative endometritis and parametritis. Cesarean section in the third-trimester patient with appendici-tis is indicated only for strict obstetric reasons. Some authors have advised that a cesarean section hysterectomy be performed to control the spread of infection into the uterus and broad ligaments.

Laparoscopic management of appendicitis now has been de-scribed with good results. The open laparoscopic technique is used, and all reports have shown success during all trimesters without complications. Some argue that the laparoscopic ap-proach exposes the fetus to excessive risks from trocar place-ment and CO₂ insufflation. Others, however, note that laparo-scopic expands the ability to explore the abdomen with less uterine manipulation and offers an increased ability for irri-gation. Further, it increases the speed of appendectomy, and results in relatively small incisions compared with the open technique.
appendix during routine gynecologic procedures depends on the risk:benefit ratio. It is estimated that at 60 years of age, about 125 incidental appendectomies need to be performed to prevent one case of appendicitis, 250 to prevent one ruptured appendix, and 5,000 to prevent one death. These benefits are greater in younger women in whom acute appendicitis is more common.

There are potential risks of the surgery. These include bleeding and hematoma formation, adhesion formation with subsequent intestinal obstruction, blowout of the appendiceal stump with abscess or fecal fistula or both, and others. However, in a careful review of the literature, Snyder and Selanders concluded that there was no statistically significant increase in morbidity or mortality when incidental appendectomy is performed at the time of routine abdominal hysterectomy, salpingectomy, tubal ligation, or cesarean section. Good judgment must be exercised and good technique used in performance of the procedure, and circumstances should be favorable, including satisfactory condition of the patient during the operation, satisfactory tolerance of the anesthesia, and easy exposure of the appendix. If the patient has lost a great deal of blood or the operation has been unusually prolonged, appendectomy should be performed only when significant pathology of the appendix is found. Incidental appendectomy should not be performed in the presence of bowel obstruction or when severe postoperative ileus is likely.

One of the main advantages of incidental appendectomy is to eliminate the appendix from consideration when a patient presents subsequently with perplexing pelvic or abdominal pain. In addition to preventing appendicitis in future years, incidental appendectomy offers the advantage of removing unsuspected pathology. In a retrospective study of 260 women with pelvic or right iliac fossa pain, Lynch and coworkers reported that 90% of the women who had appendectomy in addition to hysterectomy, oophorectomy, or other gynecologic surgery reported relief of symptoms, compared with only 49% in the group who did not have an appendectomy. Quite probably all these appendices did not look grossly normal, and this was not a prospective, randomized study; however, a significant incidence of "chronic obstructive appendicitis," endometriosis, and granuloma were found on microscopic examination of the removed appendices. Among the pathologic findings in clinically normal-appearing appendixes are acute, subacute, and chronic appendicitis, carcinoid tumors, and endometriosis. Others have reported that about 10% of incidental appendectomy specimens show significant pathology. The incidence obviously depends on the definition of "incidental" and how carefully the appendix is examined by the pathologist.

Ectopic pregnancy and endometriosis have been reported in association with appendicitis. Panganiban and Corning reported that 4 of 31 patients with endometriosis of the appendix had symptoms of appendicitis. The appendix is a common site of involvement in patients with pelvic endometriosis, although endometriosis is rarely confined only to the appendix. Pittaway found endometriosis in 13% of appendixes removed from patients with pelvic endometriosis at the Johns Hopkins Hospital. In 38% of these women, the appendix was grossly normal when histologic evidence of endometriosis was found. The author concluded from the study that (a) appendectomy is warranted in patients who are not interested in having children and are undergoing definitive surgery for endometriosis, and (b) appendectomy should be done when the appendix is abnormal, even in patients with endometriosis who are undergoing surgery to restore fertility.

Appendicitis is the most common site for carcinoid tumors, with an incidence of 0.031% of all appendixes removed. Almost all appendiceal carcinoids are benign. It is rare for the carcinoid syndrome to be present. In Waters’ series of 830 patients in whom elective appendectomy was performed, six appendiceal carcinoid tumors were suspected or diagnosed on gross surgical appearance.

In summary, there are three main reasons to perform incidental appendectomy:

1. To reduce the risk of future mortality and morbidity from appendicitis, including possible infertility after a perforated appendix.
2. To eliminate undiagnosed incidental pathology in the appendix.
3. To eliminate the appendix from diagnostic consideration when the patient has abdominal or pelvic symptoms in the immediate postoperative period and in future years.

The incidence of appendicitis decreases with increasing age. The risk is greatest in girls 15 to 19 years old, and 70% of acute appendicitis occurs in patients younger than age 30. However, the rate of perforation increases with advancing age; in women older than age 65, perforation occurs about 50% of the time. Using life table analysis, Snyder and Selanders estimated that for girls 15 to 19 years old, 1,000 incidental appendectomies would prevent 52 cases of appendicitis, 5 of which would be ruptured. For women 35 to 39 years old, 24 cases of appendicitis would be prevented by 1,000 incidental appendectomies; for patients 60 to 64 years old, only 8 cases of acute appendicitis would be prevented, but 4 of these would rupture before diagnosis.

Studies show that incidental appendectomy is far more commonly done in women, probably because they more often have abdominal or pelvic surgical procedures, such as hysterectomy, oophorectomy, or cholecystectomy. It is also more commonly done in women 35 to 55 years old, probably for the same reason.

In a careful analysis of the potential cost savings of incidental appendectomy, Wang and Sax evaluated the impact of laparoscopy and managed care on this question. They reasoned that many of the primary procedures performed at the time of incidental appendectomy were now done via the laparoscope (laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy and laparoscopic cholecystectomy). Taking into account long-term risk of appendicitis and complication, as well as various fee schedules and other surgical costs, they calculated that laparoscopic incidental appendectomy was not cost-effective at any age. Because there is very minimal cost associated with slightly increased operating time and a few sutures, with open appendectomy there are more cost savings for women younger than 30 years when incidental appendectomy is done as part of an open abdominal procedure. With the frequent changes in managed care plans and strong pressure to minimize costs, they felt there was no incentive to spend money today for incidental appendectomy with the hope of saving money in the future (decreased risk of appendicitis at a later time).

Analyzing the various factors, it is easy to see why incidental appendectomy remains controversial. Many experts have suggested that it is most appropriate for women younger than 30 or 35 years, especially if they have a history of pelvic pain, pelvic inflammatory disease, or endometriosis. Because of the low risk of appendicitis, many experts do not recommend incidental appendectomy for women older than 30 years. In women between ages 35 and 59 who are undergoing gynecologic surgery, the status of the abdomen and pelvis, diagnosis, overall condition of the patient, and appearance of the appendix and surrounding structures all should be taken into account when deciding on the advisability of incidental appendectomy. The possibility of appendectomy should be discussed with the patient during
Appendicitis is the most common cause of acute abdominal pain requiring surgery, with a 7% lifetime risk. The mortality rate of appendicitis is 0.1%, which increases to 5% with perforation. There is an elevated mortality rate of 5% to 15% in the elderly population, mainly because of the difficulty in diagnosing the condition in this group. The morbidity rate of appendicitis, which is mainly due to infection, is 15% to 20% but has been greatly improved with the use of perioperative antibiotics.

Acute appendicitis is diagnosed primarily on physical examination, and 50% of patients present with the classic sequence of anorexia, nausea, and vomiting. Other potential findings include tenderness at McBurney’s point, a positive Psoas sign, a positive psoas sign, and a positive obturator sign. A pelvic exam should always be performed to rule out gynecologic causes. Ultrasound and computed tomography have assisted in more accurate diagnosis and thus have contributed to decreased rates of rupture and exploratory laparotomy.

The standard treatment for acute appendicitis is appendectomy, and the operative mortality without perforation is close to zero. Preoperative use of broad-spectrum antibiotics is important in preventing associated morbidity, and continuation of the regimen postoperatively should be considered in cases of appendiceal rupture. Common complications of appendectomy include wound infection, abscess or fistula formation, ileus, phlegmon, peritonitis, pneumothorax, and intestinal obstruction.

Standard management of appendicitis has been with open laparotomy per variations of a right lower quadrant incision. Alternatively, laparoscopy is an option. When performed by an experienced surgeon, the latter offers many potential advantages, including decreased surgical morbidity. Laparoscopic assessment of the peritoneal cavity may prove especially useful for the gynecologist, as many other abdominopelvic conditions can mimic appendicitis.

Appendectomy is the most common nonobstetrical operative intervention in the pregnant patient and occurs most frequently in the second trimester. Diagnosis, which may be improved through ultrasonography, can be more challenging as a result of displacement of the appendix by the gravid uterus. The incidence of perforation and its repercussions, including an increased risk of preterm labor, is twice as high in pregnancy. Immediate operation is the treatment, regard less of duration of the pregnancy.

Incidental appendectomy refers to the prophylactic removal of the normal-appearing appendix during surgery for another condition. The appropriateness of this procedure is widely debated and should be judged on a case-by-case basis.

Bibliography

Fitz RH. Perforating inflammation of the vermiform appendix, with special reference to early diagnosis and treatment. Trans Acad Am Philos 1861;1:137.
Jackson R, calculating of the normal-appearing appendix during surgery for another condition. The appropriateness of this procedure is widely debated and should be judged on a case-by-case basis.
CHAPTER 43 ■ INTESTINAL TRACT IN GYNECOLOGIC SURGERY

KELLY L. MOLPUS

DEFINITIONS

Abdominal hernia—Defect in the fascia through which peritoneum-encased visceras may protrude.

Adhesion—Intrapertitoneal scar tissue that connects opposing peritoneal and/or serosal surfaces.

Anastomosis—Surgical communication created between two segments of the gastrointestinal tract.

Anastomotic bursting pressure—Experimental measure of the magnitude of intraluminal pressure required to disrupt the bowel wall at the site of anastomosis.

Antimesenteric edge—Anatomical edge along the intestine opposite to where the mesentery is attached.

Bacterial translocation—In the setting of intestinal obstruction, the process whereby enteric bacteria traverse the damaged bowel wall to seed the peritoneal cavity.

Bezoar—Concretion formed within the alimentary canal due to impaction of indigestible substances.

Blind loop syndrome—Progressive symptomatic dilation of a nonfunctioning bowel segment, such as may occur when a large segment of cecum persists distal to an ileoascending anastomosis.

Bowel prep—Preoperative cleansing of the intestinal tract with cathartics to reduce enteric volume and antibiotics to decrease colonic flora.

Bridge—Apparatus secured between the abdominal wall and exteriorized bowel loop to provide support until tissue healing secures the stoma in place.

Cheatle slit—A longitudinal full-thickness incision made in the antimesenteric bowel wall to increase the diameter of the anastomosis.

Closed loop obstruction—Isolated segment of bowel with diminished influx and efflux of enteric content at risk for distention and perforation.

Closed techniques—Generalized term to include methods of gastrointestinal anastomosis in which the lumens of the involved segments are not exposed.

Colocolostomy—Communication and/or surgical anastomosis between two segments of the large intestine.

Colostomy—Segment of large bowel exteriorized through the abdominal wall to divert fecal output.

Crohn's disease—An inflammatory process of uncertain etiology that adversely affects the colon and intermittent segments of small intestine (regional enteritis) and manifests clinically as recurrent diarrhea, intestinal cramping, and weight loss.

Dehiscence—Postoperative wound separation that most commonly involves the skin and subcutaneous tissue (superficial or incomplete) or, less commonly, the fascia (deep or complete).

EndoGIA—General term for endoscopic stapling instrument used during laparoscopic gastrointestinal procedures.

End-to-end (EEA) stapler—Surgical stapling instrument designed to join the ends of two bowel segments of similar diameter.

Enteral nutrition—Use of the gut to provide nutrition.

Enterenterostomy—Communication and/or surgical anastomosis between two segments of small intestine.

Enteroenteral therapist—Nurse with specialized training in ostomy-related issues, who is an invaluable resource in providing perioperative counseling, education, and clinical care.

Enterotomy—Full-thickness opening in the small bowel wall.

Evisceration—An acute full-thickness wound disruption through which abdominal contents extrude.

Fistula—Abnormal communication between two organ systems that have no inherent anatomical connection (i.e., enteroenteric, rectovaginal, vesicovaginal, or entero vesical fistula).

Gastrocolic ligament—Intraabdominal fibroadipose tissue that arises from the greater curvature of the stomach and fuses with the greater omentum along the transverse colon.

Gastrointestinal anastomosis (GIA) stapler—General term for surgical stapling instrument used during open gastrointestinal procedures.

Gastrostomy—Artificial opening in the stomach for the purpose of decompression, nutrition, or anastomosis.

Greater omentum—Intraabdominal fibroadipose tissue that arises from the inferior surface of the transverse colon.

Haustra—Widely spaced, transverse, partially encircling folds within the wall of the colon.

Ileocele valve—Functional communication between the terminal ileum and cecum that facilitates forward motility of digestive contents.

Ileoceleonic anastomosis—Surgical communication established between the ileum and colon.

Ileostomy—Segment of ileum exteriorized through the abdominal wall to divert enteric output.

Ileus—Mechanical dysfunction in which the normal antegrade gastrointestinal peristalsis is temporarily disrupted.

Ileococcal valve—Functional communication between the terminal ileum and cecum that facilitates forward motility of digestive contents.

Incarceration—Extrusion of a hernia sac that becomes edematous, entrapped, and at risk for vascular compromise (strangulation).

Inferior mesenteric artery—Major artery arising from the abdominal aorta that supplies the left colon via left colic and sigmoid arteries.
Related Surgery

Inflammatory bowel disease—A general descriptive term referring to any inflammatory condition of the intestines, including Crohn’s disease and ulcerative colitis.

Intestinal adaptation—Subsequent to small bowel resection, compensatory mechanisms whereby the absorptive capacity and surface area of the remaining small intestine increase over time.

Jejunostomy—Artificial opening in the jejunum for the purpose of decompression, nutrition, or anastomosis.

Loop ileostomy, loop colostomy—Intact segment of ileum, or nonresectoretroperitonealized large bowel, which is exteriorized and opened to divert the digestive output.

Mucosal barrier of the gut—Protective layer of the intestinal wall that establishes vascular communication from the cecum to the rectum and gives off numerous terminal vasa recta.

Maturation of the stoma—Process of opening the exteriorized intestine and suturing the everted bowel edge to the skin of the abdominal wall.

Mesenteric border—Anatomical edge along the intestine where blood supply is derived via the attached mesentery.

Mesentry—Dual layer of peritoneum and fibroadipose tissue, attached to the posterior abdominal wall, which carries the arteriovenous and lymphatic structures to and from the intestines.

Nasogastric decompression—Use of a tube passed through the nose into the stomach for the purpose of re- lieving gastric pressure or decompressing the intestines. Nasogastric decompression may be used for decompression, nutrition, or anastomosis.

Neovascularization—Process whereby blood and oxygen delivery to tissue is increased via the proliferation of new blood vessels.

Ogilvie’s syndrome—Acute colonic pseudo-obstruction resulting from dysfunction of colonic peristalsis that may be clinically indistinguishable from a large bowel obstruction.

Omental flap—Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Open techniques—Generalized term to include methods of gastrointestinal anastomosis in which the lumens of the involved segments are exposed.

Ostomy—Any artificial opening in the gastrointestinal tract.

Parenteral nutrition—Use of an alternative route to the gut for provision of nutrition (i.e., intravenous infusion).

Perforation—Spontaneous full-thickness defect in the gastrointestinal tract with resultant intraabdominal efflux of bacteria and digestive content.

Peristalsis—Normal antegrade movement of digestive content via rhythmic circular contractions and relaxations of the intestinal wall musculature.

Plieae circulares (valvae conniventes)—Numerous closely spaced, transverse, encircling folds within the wall of the small intestine.

Short bowel syndrome—Insufficient nutrient absorption to meet the body’s metabolic requirements as a result of extensive intestinal resection and/or inadequate function of intact bowel.

Small bowel obstruction—Partial or complete imped- ance to the antegrade movement of enteric content through the small bowel that is due to extrinsic or intrinsic compromise of the lumen.

Stoma—Terminal segment of intestine that is exteriorized and secured to the abdominal wall, through which digestive output is diverted.

Stoma appliance—Fitted wafer adherent to the skin surrounding the stoma that serves as an attachment site for the collection bag.

Structure—Circumferential narrowing of the intestinal lumen.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.

Surgical rotation of the infracolic omentum to a specific area to increase blood supply to that area.
and broad-spectrum antibiotic coverage for anaerobes, Gram-negative rods, and enterococci. Diagnostic computed tomography (CT) scan clarifies whether a periconic abscess is present, and CT-directed drainage of an abscess expedites recovery and avoids surgical exploration in most cases. Nasogastric decompresion is necessary in the setting of obstruction. If obstructive symptoms persist, percutaneous abscess drainage is warranted. If bowel perforation results in generalized peritonitis, consideration is given to diverting colostomy, with extensive irrigation and drainage of the peritoneal cavity.

Appendicitis
Perhaps one of the most frequently encountered diagnostic dilemmas is that of acute appendicitis versus PID. Appendicitis is most frequently seen during the second and third decades of life, which coincides with that of reproductive-aged women at risk for PID. Whereas cervical motion tenderness is helpful in the diagnosis of PID and right-sided pain on rectal examination is helpful in the diagnosis of appendicitis, neither is pathognomonic. Peritoneal irritation from any source can be elicited by manipulation of the pelvic organs, so that manual manipulation of the cervix elicits an intensely painful response (cervical motion tenderness) in women with either PID or appendicitis. Similarly, rectal examination may elicit pain in a woman who has PID. Acute appendicitis may be overlooked by clinicians who assume the ailment is PID after finding cervical motion tenderness.

Progressive anorexia and lateralization of pain (vague periumbilical discomfort that intensifies over time while gravitating toward McBurney's point) raise suspicion for appendicitis. A history of prior PID, multiple sex partners, recent acquisition of a new sex partner, recent menses, and physical findings of a purulent vaginal discharge suggest PID. Radiographic studies may be needed to clarify the diagnosis because acute appendicitis is a surgical emergency; PID, however, is usually treated with broad-spectrum antibiotics and supportive care. Spiral CT scan has gained acceptance as an accurate determinant of the appendiceal anatomy. Contrast-enhanced CT imaging is also invaluable in the diagnosis of pelvic abscess. Bilateral pelvic abscesses are more characteristics of PID than an appendiceal process.

Meckel's Diverticulum
Meckel's diverticulum represents a residual portion of the vitelline (yolk) duct and is present in 1% of women. Diverticula average 3 cm in length and are located along the antimesenteric border of the ileum within 2 feet of the ileocecal valve. They are lined by ileal-type mucosa, but at least one in five cases has ectopic gastric mucosa. Meckel's diverticulum is present in 1% of women. Diverticula may not localize in the right lower quadrant.

Most complications from Meckel's diverticula are during early childhood, and the likelihood of problems significantly decreases with advancing age. Accordingly, most surgeons believe routine resection of an asymptomatic Meckel's diverticulum in adulthood is unnecessary. Some recommend prophylactic resection if encountered during surgery, because morbidity associated with resection is low. It is generally agreed, however, that resection should be undertaken if the individual has previously been symptomatic, if the diverticulum is unusually long or has a narrow neck, or if thickening at the tip suggests ectopic gastric mucosa. Resection is accomplished by excising the base of the diverticulum with circular closure of the entero- tomy. Care is taken to avoid unnecessary resection of bowel wall to prevent luminal narrowing. Alternatively, transection may be completed via an automated stapler secured across the diverticular base.

Volvulus
Sigmoid volvulus is an acute malrotation that presents with sudden onset of intense pain, similar to that of ovarian torsion. Volvulus is generally accompanied by obstipation, abdominal pain, and distention. Nausea and vomiting may occur. Volvulus is most commonly seen after the age of 60 years; however, cases in young individuals have been reported. Flat-plate abdominal radiographic features are that of a markedly dilated, gas-filled sigmoid colon. Barium enema shows a tapered obstruction at the rectosigmoid junction with a typical bird's beak deformity. Sigmoid volvulus can usually be corrected nonoperatively with sigmoidoscopy or cautious barium enema. If volvulus is discovered at the time of surgery, initial management consists of untwisting the loop of bowel and observing for viability. Resection is infrequently necessary and should be reserved for devitalized bowel. Cecal volvulus is rare and tends to occur in the elderly population. This too is best managed by derotation, and resection is reserved for nonviability.

Pelvic Malignancies
Colorectal carcinomas may be difficult to distinguish from other pelvic malignancies. Advanced colorectal carcinoma may invade the vagina and/or bladder, producing symptoms suggestive of a gynecologic or urologic problem. Advanced ovarian, cervical, and endometrial cancers may also invade the bowel leading to rectal bleeding. Resultant inflammation, tissue necrosis, and abscess formation contribute to the diagnostic dilemma. Historical information, thorough physical examination, colonoscopy or barium enema, cystoscopy, CT scan, and tissue biopsy can clarify the origin of pelvic malignancies in most cases.

Inflammatory Bowel Disease
Inflammatory bowel disease includes Crohn's disease (regional enteritis) and ulcerative colitis. Crohn's disease is an inflammatory process of uncertain etiology that usually involves the small bowel. It most frequently occurs in young adults with symptoms of onset during the late teens, but may occur at any age. Those affected have intermittent diarrhea, intestinal cramping, and weight loss. The extent of intestinal symptoms generally enables the clinician to distinguish inflammatory bowel disease from PID. Clinical findings, such as a functional ovarian cyst, may lead to overdiagnosis of a gynecologic disorder and result in unnecessary surgery. Gynecologic surgery is best avoided if possible in Crohn's patients because of the high risk of intestinal complications, even if the bowel is uninvolved.

Medical management is the mainstay of treatment because there is a high recurrence rate that follows surgical resection. Therapy consists of bowel rest, total parenteral nutrition, and antiinflammatory medication such as sulfasalazine and...
corticosteroids. Surgery is reserved for patients whose disease is complicated by obstruction, perforation, fistula, or hemorrhage. Affected areas of the small intestine may be interspersed by normal segments of bowel. The appearance of Crohn's intestine is thickened walls with dull, purple-red discoloration, inflammatory exudate, and adherent mesenteric fat. If surgical resection is necessary, only the involved segments of bowel are removed. Management of women with inflammatory bowel disease should be left to specialists in the field.

Because of the high rate of anastomotic dehiscence follow- ing resections for Crohn's disease, some surgeons advocate stricturoplasty as an alternative to resection. Stricturoplasty is accomplished by opening the bowel longitudinally and closing transversely, creating a wider lumen. The appendix is eventually affected by Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis in 25% and 50% of cases, respectively. Prophylactic appendectomy may be considered if the terminal ileum and cecum are not involved by active disease at the time of exploration. Fistulas (i.e., enterocutaneous, enterovaginal, enteroxovaginal) are frequently associated with inflammatory bowel disease and its surgical management. Surgical correction is reserved for problematic fistulas that fail to respond to extended medical management. The intestinal defect, as the source of fistulous drainage, must be corrected for any chance of successful resolution. Ulcerative colitis is a chronic illness of uncertain etiology characterized by ulcerative lesions of the colon and rectum. Clinical symptoms are pain, bleeding, and diarrhea. Additional manifestations are weight loss, anemia, mucosal crypt abscesses, inflammatory pseudopolyps, and low serum protein. Ulcerative colitis is infrequently complicated by toxic megacolon, peritonitis, and colon cancer.

Hemorrhoids

It has been said of hemorrhoids that few human afflictions cause greater distress without posing threat to life. Hemor rhoids are dilated perianal and rectal veins. Chronic pressure causes distention and loss of resistance in the venous wall, resulting in varicos. The collection of blood further draws fluids into the dilated perianal skin. Internal hemorrhoids protrude into the rectal lumen and cause painless bleeding, which may be severe. Larger internal hemorrhoids can protrude through the anus, resulting in pain, itching, and burning. Spasms of the external sphincter may constrict the hemorrhoid, resulting in stran gulation, necrosis, and extreme discomfort. This process is recognized clinically as thrombosed hemorrhoids, which are not actually thrombosed vessels but rather perianal hematomas. An understanding of the Bartholin's gland anatomy helps delineate a Bartholin's abscess from hemorrhoidal inflammation. Recognition of inflammatory exudate, and adherent mesenteric fat. If surgical resection is necessary, only the involved segments of bowel are removed. Management of women with inflammatory bowel disease should be left to specialists in the field.

Because of the high rate of anastomotic dehiscence follow- ing resections for Crohn's disease, some surgeons advocate stricturoplasty as an alternative to resection. Stricturoplasty is accomplished by opening the bowel longitudinally and closing transversely, creating a wider lumen. The appendix is eventually affected by Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis in 25% and 50% of cases, respectively. Prophylactic appendectomy may be considered if the terminal ileum and cecum are not involved by active disease at the time of exploration. Fistulas (i.e., enterocutaneous, enterovaginal, enteroxovaginal) are frequently associated with inflammatory bowel disease and its surgical management. Surgical correction is reserved for problematic fistulas that fail to respond to extended medical management. The intestinal defect, as the source of fistulous drainage, must be corrected for any chance of successful resolution. Ulcerative colitis is a chronic illness of uncertain etiology characterized by ulcerative lesions of the colon and rectum. Clinical symptoms are pain, bleeding, and diarrhea. Additional manifestations are weight loss, anemia, mucosal crypt abscesses, inflammatory pseudopolyps, and low serum protein. Ulcerative colitis is infrequently complicated by toxic megacolon, peritonitis, and colon cancer.

Hemorrhoids

Preoperative Bowel Prep

The objectives of preoperative bowel prep are to reduce enteric volume and bacterial load. Potential benefits include better operative handling and exposure, reduced infectious complications, and enhanced anastomotic healing. Efficient mechanical bowel prep does eliminate stool and gas from the colon, thus improving exposure and making it easier to pack the bowel out of the operative field. Mechanical cleansing also allows for better visibility during intraoperative colonoscopy, if needed. Various bowel preps have been proposed and used, including oral antibiotics, with or without parenteral antibiotics. In the past, such agents as castor oil, senna, bisacodyl, and magnesium citrate were used, but frequently resulted in inadequate bowel cleansing. Large volumes of isotonic solution and osmotic agents such as mannitol were more effective in bowel preparation; however, the prohibitive side effects included electrolyte and fluid abnormalities, nausea, vomiting, and abdominal distention. Newer mechanical preparations usually consist of either polyethylene glycol or sodium phosphate. Polyethylene gly col is an effective, osmotically balanced solution that causes fewer electrolyte and fluid abnormalities. The major disadvan tage is that 4 L must be consumed. Many patients are unable to complete this prep because of the large volume and the resultant gastrointestinal symptoms. Sodium phosphate has the advantage of being an effective cathartic while only requiring
90 cc of oral liquid. In randomized clinical trials comparing polyethylene glycol with sodium phosphate, patients who took sodium phosphate had significantly less abdominal discomfort. Sodium phosphate provided a significantly better prep for colonoscopy. This trend was also observed in surgical patients, although not statistically significant. Polyethylene glycol and sodium phosphate should be used cautiously in debilitated patients and those with cirrhosis, renal impairment, electrolyte abnormalities, or ascites. They should not be used in patients with renal failure, congenital megacolon, bowel obstruction, or congestive heart failure.

Nonabsorbable or minimally absorbed oral antibiotics have traditionally been used in bowel preparation to reduce the intraluminal colonic flora. It is presumed that reduction in the bacterial load causes less peritoneal contamination and complications if the bowel is opened during surgery. Following colorectal surgery, cultures from wound infections and complications if the bowel is opened during surgery. Following infections. Metronidazole with either erythromycin or compared with no oral antibiotic has been noted to reduce postoperative infections. Metronidazole with either erythromycin or neomycin has also been effectively used. There are no data to support that one regimen is superior to another.

The literature is inconclusive as to whether bowel prep consistently reduces operative morbidity. There are few randomized trials comparing mechanical bowel preparation with no preparation. The utility of bowel prep is called into question with collective retrospective data from trauma surgeries involving colon injury and from emergent colorectal surgery for bowel obstruction. A review of 2,964 unprepared patients who underwent primary repair of colon injury reported an anastomotic leak rate of only 2.3%. Some studies have suggested that bowel prep may actually increase the risk of intraoperative spillage and anastomotic leak. A metaanalysis of seven randomized clinical trials, including 1,297 patients, showed a leak rate of 5.6% in patients given a bowel prep compared with 2.8% in those with no prep ($p = 0.03$).

Despite lack of consistent evidence supporting reduced morbidity, there is a general consensus regarding the potential benefit, such that the majority of gynecologic oncologists, surgical oncologists, and colorectal surgeons continue to recommend preoperative bowel prep. In selected patients, the bowel prep regimen that we prefer is summarized in Table 43.1.

### Positioning the Patient

Examination under anesthesia facilitates evaluation of anatomy and may clarify the likelihood of intestinal involvement by disease. Low dorsal lithotomy position is used if there is an expectation of possible resected anastomosis. Proper positioning reduces the risk of injury. The anesthetized patient is placed with her hips at the end of the table and buttocks extending several centimeters beyond the table end. Padding is secured below the coccyx to avoid pressure point injury. Careful positioning ensures the thighs are slightly flexed and the weight of the legs is distributed evenly, with

![Image](675x561)

---

**TABLE 43.1 BOWEL PREPARATION FOR SURGERY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of Day</th>
<th>Instructions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:00 A.M.</td>
<td>Only clear liquid foods today. Clear liquid foods would include beef or chicken broth, plain Jell-O, hot tea, Popsicles, 7-Up, or clear fruit juices. Do not eat or drink any milk products. Do not eat or drink anything you cannot see through. Do not drink any alcoholic beverages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00 A.M.</td>
<td>Take one Reglan 10-mg pill. This will help keep your stomach from being upset by the other medicines. You may repeat this every 4 hours if needed for nausea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00 A.M.</td>
<td>(1) Drink ½ of the 3-ounce bottle of Fleet Phospho-Soda. This is a strong laxative and will cause you to have diarrhea. (2) Take one of each of the antibiotic pills, Neomycin and Flagyl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00 P.M.</td>
<td>Take one Reglan 10-mg pill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00 P.M.</td>
<td>(1) Drink the second ½ of the bottle of Fleet Phospho-Soda. (2) Take the second dose of each of the antibiotic pills, Neomycin and Flagyl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00 P.M.</td>
<td>Take one Reglan 10-mg pill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00 P.M.</td>
<td>Take the third dose of each of the antibiotic pills, Neomycin and Flagyl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00 midnight</td>
<td>No eating, drinking, or smoking between now and surgery.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We understand this bowel prep may be difficult for you. However, we strongly encourage you to follow all of these steps as outlined. Proper bowel prep may help maximize your effective healing and minimize your chance of problems after surgery. If you have any questions about these instructions, please call our office.
Inadvertent tissue injury is less likely with adhesiolysis close to the bowel wall than with cutting through the center of dense adhesions. Controlled traction and countertraction facilitates isolation and dissection, but excessive force is avoided. With dense adhesive bands, excessive force may literally tear a hole in the bowel wall, which may go unrecognized during surgery.

### Intestinal Injury in Open Gynecologic Surgery

Enterotomy refers to a full-thickness opening in the bowel wall such that the lumen is entered. Enterotomy may be an incidental occurrence during dissection or an intentional surgical maneuver during gastrointestinal surgery. Inadvertent enterotomies are best avoided by cautious entry into the peritoneal cavity and meticulous dissection of adhesions.

Adequate visualization and access are necessary for safe adhesiolysis. Ongoing visual and manual bowel inspection is advisable to ensure there is no compromise to wall integrity. If an inadvertent enterotomy occurs, the affected bowel must be mobilized from surrounding tissues to allow adequate exposure and a tension-free repair. Although it is generally best to repair an enterotomy immediately, if the dissection is particularly difficult, it is advisable to finish the dissection so the extent of injuries can be assessed and the best plan for repair of any and all injuries can be accomplished. The initial impression of a single enterotomy can be incorrect. Mobilization of tissues from the surrounding area may demonstrate multiple enterotomies within a single bowel segment or involvement of more than one loop of bowel (Fig. 43.2).

If an enterotomy is not immediately repaired, it should be marked with a suture of 3-0 silk tied loosely with the tails left long for easy identification. Eventual suture repair should be accomplished in a transverse direction to avoid excessive narrowing of the lumen. This is most important in the small bowel. Staple repair is also acceptable if luminal diameter is not compromised. If multiple enterotomies occur within a localized segment of small bowel, the best plan may be to resect the damaged segment rather than individually repair three or four injuries. Resection of an affected bowel segment may also be necessary if greater than 50% of the circumference is injured, if irregular edges preclude repair, if the blood supply is compromised, or if repair would result in excessive luminal narrowing.

In general, small bowel injury with intraperitoneal contamination by enteric content is associated with less morbidity than a similar occurrence in the large bowel. Historically, large bowel injury (colotomy) with gross intraperitoneal contamination has been managed by diverting colostomy, with delayed surgical repair and colostomy closure after several months. Collective clinical experience from scheduled procedures and trauma surgeries has demonstrated that immediate repair without colostomy is associated with acceptably low morbidity. Suture and staple closure techniques, as well as segmental resection with anastomosis, have been successfully used. Furthermore, some studies suggest that immediate recognition and repair of intestinal injury is associated with less morbidity than the diversion techniques previously thought to be mandatory. Aggressive peritoneal irrigation and administration of intravenous broad-spectrum antibiotics reduce bacterial count. Peritoneal drains should not be placed in the immediate vicinity of an anastomosis, because this can actually impede healing. However, there may be therapeutic benefit from suction drains in dependent regions, such as the pelvis and paracolic gutters, which prevent accumulation of fluid. A diverting colostomy is indicated when a full-thickness colonic injury occurs in those who have undergone irradiation, who are profoundly

---

**Related Surgery**

no pressure points from the stirrups. Lithotomy position also allows access for intraoperative pelvic examination and provides easy exposure to assess bladder or rectal integrity after pelvic dissection. Additionally, a surgeon can be positioned between the stirrups to elevate the vaginal apex or assist with a rectal examination, or to enable dissection in the paraaortic and upper abdominal areas.

### INTRAOPERATIVE CONSIDERATIONS

#### Lysis of Adhesions

Intraperitoneal adhesions are fibrous bands of scar tissue that connect opposing peritoneal and/or serosal surfaces. Adhesions may be associated with prior surgical procedures, trauma, irradiation, infection, bleeding, or chemical irritants. Prior abdominal or pelvic surgery is the most frequently noted predisposing factor. After surgery, desiccated tissue surfaces in direct opposition are those at greatest risk for adhesion formation. History alone is not predictive in that certain individuals have adhesions without identifiable predisposing factors. Others have a predilection for an exaggerated healing response and excessive adhesion formation.

Adhesiolysis may be necessary to mobilize the bowel, expose the surgical field, and circumvent obstruction. Constricting adhesive bands require transaction. It is best to start with translucent adhesive bands that can be sharply lysed without difficulty. As adhesions become more dense, efforts are made to isolate a window such that an index finger and thumb can be placed behind and in front of the adhesions, respectively. Gentle blunt tissue dissection by rubbing the index finger and thumb back and forth helps to identify translucent adhesive bands that can be sharply lysed. There is often a recognizable white line between adhesions and their peritoneal attachment, which identifies a safe tissue plane for dissection (Fig. 43.1). Another plane ideal for sharp dissection is one followed in close parallel proximity to a recognizable structure, such as along a loop of small bowel.

**FIGURE 43.1.** Traction-countertraction gives good exposure of an abdominal adhesion, which is lysed with scissors.
malnourished, or whose condition is unstable from shock or sepsis.

**Intestinal Injury during Endoscopic Procedures**

Historically, most intestinal injuries in gynecologic surgery have occurred during open abdominal procedures. Exponential growth in the number of laparoscopic cases, however, has shifted the spectrum of risk. Gastrointestinal injury during laparoscopy most commonly occurs during initial peritoneal entry. Injury can occur from use of a scalpel, insufflating needle, trocar, or blunt dissection. Use of the open (Hasson) technique does not prevent bowel injuries. Good clinical judgment is necessary to determine which patients are appropriate candidates for laparoscopy. Previous surgeries, inflammatory conditions, and prior irradiation increase risk of injury from enteric adhesions, which fix intestine to the abdominal wall. Oxygenating the patient via bag-mask in preparation for intubation can displace the stomach below the level of the umbilicus, placing it at risk for injury. Nasogastric decompression before introduction of a Veress needle or trocar reduces this risk. In the presence of enteric adhesions, the laparoscopic trocar can be inadvertently placed into the stomach, transverse colon, or small intestine. Perforation is suspected by nonvisualization of intraperitoneal structures, identification of intraluminal tissue, and reflux of enteric content. If perforation occurs, it is prudent to leave the trocar in position, as it is much easier to recognize injuries using the trocar as a guide to the affected anatomy (Fig. 43.3). If the extent of injury cannot be determined, or the necessary repair cannot be accomplished via laparoscopy, then a laparotomy should be performed.

Cautery or sharp dissection can result in enterotomy, which commonly occurs during adhesiolysis. The skill and comfort level of the laparoscopic surgeon determines whether the defect can be successfully repaired via endoscopy or whether laparotomy is required. The most serious laparoscopic intestinal injuries are those that go unrecognized at the time of surgery. Thermal injury from electrocautery or laser can have a potentially disastrous outcome. With electrosurgical injury, a progressive zone of tissue destruction extends well beyond the area of thermal contact, resulting in tissue necrosis and perforation 72 to 96 hours after surgery. Perforation may be signaled by high fever, leukocytosis, nausea, vomiting, and a generalized ill appearance. Signs of peritonitis are present on examination. Flat-plate x-rays may be of limited benefit in the early postoperative period, because intraperitoneal air can persist for 7 days following surgery. CT scan using water-soluble contrast is better suited for this evaluation and should demonstrate extravasation of contrast material into the peritoneal cavity with possible abscess formation.

If perforation is suspected or confirmed, urgent exploration is warranted. Hypovolemia, electrolyte abnormalities, and anemia should be aggressively corrected. Broad-spectrum antibiotics are administered, and nasogastric decompression is performed as the patient is prepared for surgery. At surgery, aggressive irrigation is necessary to enhance visibility. Copious enteric exudate causes a profound inflammatory response and generalized matting together of intraperitoneal content. Inspection of the small bowel is initiated at the ileocecal junction and is continued proximally in a hand-over-hand fashion. Careful examination of the bowel and mesentery is continued to the ligament of Treitz, followed by thorough inspection of the large intestine. The stomach and proximal small bowel are also inspected. In contrast to sharp enterotomy, which can be repaired primarily, significant thermal injury is best corrected by resection of affected bowel. At the very least, a wide margin of bowel wall is removed beyond any visible thermal injury. Because of enteric contamination, other necrotic tissues, such as fulgurated endometriotic implants, are at high risk for abscess formation and should be excised.

**Intestinal Injury during Uterine Curettage and Other Gynecologic Procedures**

It is estimated that most uterine perforations go unrecognized; therefore, injury to pelvic viscera may also go unrecognized. If fundal perforation occurs during sharp or suction curettage, intestine and mesentery can be drawn into the uterine cavity by the curette. Evisceration as a consequence most commonly occurs during dilatation and curettage of the gravid uterus. Tactile feedback may suggest products of conception, when in fact prolapsed abdominal viscera are being curetted (Fig. 43.4). Recognition of this injury warrants immediate surgical exploration. With the abdomen open, the bowel is retracted by gentle traction from above. The surgical objectives are to control hemorrhage from the uterine injury thoroughly inspect the bowel, repair injuries, and complete the uterine...
Evacuation. In women of reproductive age, hysterectomy is avoided unless uterine preservation poses a significant threat to her health.

Intestinal injury has been associated with a vast array of other gynecologic procedures, including those generally considered to be minor outpatient surgeries. For example, rectal lacerations and thermal injuries have occurred during cervical conization and loop electrosurgical excision procedure, respectively. Intestinal perforations and obstructions have resulted from placement of tension-free vaginal tape. A variety of pelvic reconstructive grafts have reportedly eroded into the small or large bowel, and intestinal perforations have resulted from extraterine migration of an intrauterine contraceptive device. Accordingly, the gynecologic surgeon should be cognizant of possible intestinal ramifications of his/her operative endeavors.

**Radiation Injury**

Radiation therapy for gynecologic cancers can cause intestinal injuries that require surgical correction. Also, damage from prior irradiation contributes to complications during other surgical procedures. The intestinal tract is adversely affected by radiation during treatment and soon thereafter (acute injury) and/or remote from treatment (late injury). The acute phase is associated with small bowel irritability, cramping, and diarrhea, with onset generally 2 to 3 weeks after initiation of therapy. Injury to the large bowel manifests acutely as pseudomembranous colitis, with resultant pain, tenesmus, frequent bowel movements, and bleeding. Low-residue diet, antispasmodics, and antiinflammatories are helpful in uncomplicated cases. In more severe cases, debilitating symptoms can adversely affect lifestyle. Intestinal adhesions, fibrosis, obstruction, perforation, abscess, and fistulae are potential late complications.
Surgery in previously irradiated patients warrants special attention and is best performed by those experienced in this regard. Whenever possible, the surgical incision is made in a location beyond the radiation field. Extensive lysis of adhesions is best avoided, and dissection should be confined to the minimum area necessary to complete the surgical objectives. If obstruction occurs, consideration is given to intestinal bypass as opposed to extensive mobilization. Resection is avoided unless the anastomosis can be completed with non-irradiated bowel segments. This objective is often theoretical, because damaged bowel may appear normal and yet have significant microscopic endarteritis and vasculature obliteration. The characteristic pale, thickened bowel wall, telangiectatic vessels, and strictured lumen need not be present to indicate significant radiation injury. If resection is unavoidable, the surgery can be reinforced by wrapping the anastomosis with omentum, which elicits support of exogenous blood supply.

A vesicovaginal or rectovaginal fistula may develop if there is extensive damage to the intervening tissue. The time course of fistula occurrence is usually between 6 and 24 months after therapy, but it may present years after irradiation. The mechanism of late radiation injuries is believed to be oblitative vascular injury with compromised blood flow and tissue necrosis. Postradiation rectovaginal fistulae are complex problems that rarely heal with simple excision, mobilization, and closure, such that they are probably best corrected using a three-staged approach. First, a diverting ileostomy or colostomy is performed to redirect the colonic content, reduce bacterial infiltration, and allow resolution of inflammation. Several months later, the objectives of the second surgery are complete resection of the fistulous tract and surrounding damaged tissue plus neovascularization via an omental flap or myocutaneous graft. The goal of the eventual third surgery is to reverse the diverting ostomy to reestablish normal intestinal continuity.

POSTOPERATIVE CONSIDERATIONS

Nasogastric Decompression

Some surgeons use routine postoperative nasogastric decompression to reduce nausea, vomiting, and abdominal distention and to enable healing of bowel anastomoses. These prophylactic objectives differ from the therapeutic goals of nasogastric decompression used to alleviate symptoms and expedite recovery from an existing ileus or small bowel obstruction. The literature, however, does not support routine postoperative use. Nasogastric tubes increase patient discomfort and increase the occurrence of sinus infections and epistaxis. A meta-analysis of selective versus routine nasogastric decompression after elective laparotomy included 26 trials and 3,964 patients. Routine postoperative decompression was associated with an increased incidence of pneumonia, atelectasis, and fever. Abdominal distention and vomiting were increased in selectively treated patients who did not have nasogastric tubes, and eventual tube insertion was required in 5% to 7% of patients in this group. Nasogastric tube reinsertion was required in 2% of routinely decompressed patients. There was no significant difference in the occurrence of wound infections, wound dehiscence, or anastomotic leaks. The authors of this analysis concluded that through the selective use of nasogastric decompression, only 1 in 20 patients require a nasogastric tube.

Acute Gastric Distention

Acute gastric distention results from inhibition of gastric peristalsis. Postoperative gastric distention more commonly occurs after surgical manipulation in the vicinity of the stomach. Patients at increased risk are those who are diabetic, elderly, or medically debilitated. Short-term postoperative nasogastric decompression can prevent and manage this problem in those who are at high risk for aspiration. Stimulatory agents such as metoclopramide may expedite gastric emptying in the nonobstructed patient.

Ileus

Postoperative ileus is a mechanical dysfunction in which the normal anterograde gastrointestinal peristalsis is disrupted.

Early Postoperative Feeding

There is a wide spectrum of practice patterns among surgeons regarding postoperative diet. For many decades, the conventional approach has been to wait for auscultation of bowel sounds before providing clear liquids and to wait for the occurrence of flatus before giving solid food. Inpatient managed care pressures and successful outpatient recovery following laparoscopic procedures have challenged clinicians to reevaluate traditional postoperative feeding regimens. Current trends are toward much more aggressive early postoperative feeding, even in the setting of bowel resection and anastomosis. Some randomized clinical trials have shown early feeding to be associated with increased frequency of nausea and vomiting, whereas others have shown no difference. The overall rates of ileus, anastomotic complications, and times required for return of bowel function are generally comparable. Early postoperative feeding, however, has not consistently resulted in shorter average length of hospital stay.

Supplemental Nutrition

Perioperative nutritional support is indicated in patients who have been without nutrition for more than 7 days, in patients who are malnourished (weight loss exceeds 15% of usual weight), and when expected duration of recovery is longer than 10 days. Total parenteral nutrition (TPN) has extended the lives of numerous surgical patients and enabled the resumption of normal lifestyle in many. Long-term parenteral nutrition, however, has morbidity that is not insignificant. The need for indwelling central venous access puts patients at risk for catheter sepsis and other catheter-related complications. Metabolic derangements and pancreatic or hepatic dysfunction are common. Intestinal mucosal atrophy results from nonuse in patients who are reliant solely on parenteral nutrition.

Use of the gut for nutrition is advisable whenever possible. The advantages of enteral tube feeding over TPN include no requirement for venous access, enhanced intestinal lymphatic function, reversal of mucosal atrophy, decreased risk of bacterial translocation, and stimulation of intestinal adaptation. Adaptation is the process whereby the villous height and crypt depth increase, with gradual bowel dilation and lengthening, resulting in increased absorptive surface area. Enteral feeding is not indicated in patients with a nonfunctional intestinal tract or intestinal obstruction, or in those at high risk for aspiration.
Ileus may involve any segment of the digestive tract, including the stomach, small bowel, or colon. In fact, ileus is most frequently a large bowel dysfunction in that the colon is generally the last segment in the gastrointestinal tract to regain function after pelvic surgery. Postoperatively, the stomach and small intestine usually resume activity within 8 hours. At times, active small bowel peristalsis is noted at the conclusion of even complex abdominal procedures. In contrast, the colon may take 48 to 72 hours to regain function. Colonic dysfunction generally resolves from proximal to distal, such that rectosigmoid activity is the last to return.

Factors that predispose to ileus or worsen the severity of ileus include dehydration, electrolyte abnormalities, diabetes, chronic laxative use, bowel manipulation during surgery, extensive retroperitoneal dissection, general anesthetic agents, narcotic analgesics, immobility, urinary or gastrointestinal leak, peritonitis, abscess, and hematomata. Some degree of adynamic ileus results from all intrabdominal procedures. With return of bowel function, peristaltic pains are often severe, such that many patients describe them as being worse than surgical pain. Normal recovery of bowel function is evident by gradual increase in appetite, tolerance of oral nutrition, and flatus.

Delay in bowel function, worsening gas pains, nausea, and vomiting are suggestive of a clinically significant ileus. Physical examination confirms abdominal distention with diffuse discomfort, hypoactive bowel sounds, and tympanic percussion. Correction of contributing factors and supportive care are the cornerstones of management. Therapeutic interventions include bowel rest, intravenous hydration, correction of electrolytes (i.e., potassium, sodium, and magnesium), physical activity, and judicious use of narcotic analgesia. If good bowel sounds for 24 hours or more suggest that colonic dysfunction is a predominant underlying factor, colonic stimulation (e.g., docusate sodium suppository or enema) may be helpful. Patients with vomiting, those not responding to supportive measures, and those with evidence of gastric or small bowel dilatations on x-ray study benefit from nasogastric decompression. Decompression is generally continued until flatus ensues and abdominal distention resolves.

Adynamic ileus must be distinguished from a mechanical small bowel obstruction. If the patient has not passed flatus within 4 to 5 days or does not respond to conservative measures, then the possibility of a mechanical small bowel obstruction should be considered. Early in the disease process, radiographs may provide little assistance in clarifying the diagnosis because the changes of postoperative ileus and early obstruction are similar. However, after 3 to 5 days, plain abdominal radiographs with supine, upright, and/or lateral recumbent views will help distinguish ileus from mechanical small bowel obstruction. The typical radiographic pattern of an ileus is that of intermittent air found throughout the gastrointestinal tract, including the colon and rectum. Upright views may show air-fluid levels within the small bowel and stomach, and, on occasion, the transverse colon (Fig. 43.5). In contrast, radiographic characteristics of mechanical small bowel obstruction include proximal distended loops with a paucity or absence of gas in the colon. The dilated small bowel loops with air-fluid levels may follow a stair-step pattern from the right lower quadrant to the left upper quadrant in parallel with the anatomic base of the small bowel mesentery.

With intermittent or partial small bowel obstruction, some gas is seen in the colon. Conversely, if the obstruction is in the proximal small bowel, there may be no distended loops at all. Radiographic studies can at times clarify the type of obstruction (partial vs. complete), and the location of obstruction (stomach vs. small bowel vs. colon). If the diagnosis remains unclear, a water-soluble contrasted CT scan or gastrointestinal study with small bowel follow-through can clarify the situation and localize the point of obstruction if present. Contrast material may also stimulate peristalsis and has been reportedly therapeutic in some cases of paralytic ileus.

Small Bowel Obstruction

Intraperitoneal adhesions are the most common etiology of intestinal obstruction. Malignancies and hernias are also frequent extrinsic causes. An estimated 85% of all small bowel obstructions are secondary to one of these three conditions. Intramural causes include tumors, polyps, gallstones, and bezoars. Obstructive intramural strictures can complicate irradiation or inflammatory bowel disease.

Early postoperative obstruction deserves a trial of nonsurgical management. Nasogastric decompression, supportive care, and correction of underlying contributing factors are as described for adynamic ileus. Supine position with legs flexed helps relax rectus abdominis muscles to facilitate examination. Early in the course of obstruction, there may be minimal to absent distention. Proximal obstruction may also manifest with minimal abdominal distention. High-pitched bowel sounds with metallic tones and rushes are suggestive of an obstructive process. Hypoactive or absent bowel sounds are more suggestive of paralytic ileus. Hypoactive bowel sounds may also occur with intestinal fatigue from long-standing obstruction, closed loop obstruction, or pseudo-obstruction. Fewer than half of obstructed patients manifest the classic triad of rebound tenderness, guarding, and rigidity. Also, the physical findings of focal tenderness and guarding are neither sensitive nor specific in confirming underlying obstruction or ischemia.

The duration of asymptomatic intervals between peristaltic pains may suggest the level of obstruction. Peristaltic waves tend to be 3 to 5 minutes apart in high obstruction, whereas in distal obstruction, 10 to 15 minutes may lapse between episodes. On flat-plate abdominal x-ray, small bowel distended by gas outlines the valvulae conniventes (plicate circularis), which traverse the entire diameter of the dilated bowel lumen.
FIGURE 43.6. Computed tomography scan of small bowel obstruction; air-fluid levels in dilated small bowel.

Valvulae conniventes are closely spaced and may appear to interdigitate. In contrast, distended colon highlights the haustra, which partially traverse the bowel lumen and are spaced more widely apart. The central abdomen is occupied by distended small bowel loops, whereas the abdominal periphery houses the colon. In the decompressed patient, character of gastric aspirate suggests the potential anatomic site of obstruction. Gastric outlet obstruction produces clear gastric secretions. Bilious output is suggestive of obstruction in the proximal to mid small bowel, or a colonic obstruction with a competent ileocecal valve. Feculent drainage is characteristic of a distal small bowel obstruction or colonic obstruction with an incompetent ileocecal valve.

Intestinal obstruction leads to an accumulation of intraluminal fluid and gas with distention proximal to the occlusion (Fig. 43.6). It is estimated that more than 70% of air in the gastrointestinal tract is from swallowing. Accordingly, distention is significantly worsened by swallowed air. With progressing distention comes tension and venous compression. Arterial inflow continues, resulting in blood accumulation within the bowel wall and lumen. Protein-rich fluid exudes from the capillaries, adding to tissue edema. Malabsorption combined with intestinal secretion further exacerbates intraluminal fluid collection. In the setting of complete obstruction, up to 7 to 8 L of fluid can accumulate, including 50% of plasma volume and 30% of circulating blood volume. Mucosal integrity is disrupted, and enteric bacteria traverse the defective bowel wall, seeding the peritoneum. If the process goes uncorrected, intestinal viability is irreversibly damaged as tissue necrosis ensues.

If a decision is made for operative intervention, preparation concentrates on correction of hypovolemia, anemia, and electrolyte imbalances. Broad-spectrum antibiotics may suppress bacterial translocation and delay intestinal ischemia. Upon exploration, the point of obstruction is identified and corrected. All necrotic bowel must be resected. It is not always possible, however, to discern the viability of bowel in the setting of obstruction. Visible characteristics—such as tissue color, extent of edema, and peristalsis—are not consistently reliable. Active bleeding from the cut bowel edge is a more accurate indicator. Intraoperative Doppler testing of the antimesenteric border should provide characteristic arterial pulsations. Absent Doppler sounds do not necessarily indicate inadequate arterial blood flow. In this setting, viability can be confirmed by intravenous 10% fluorescein (15 mg/kg), followed in 30 minutes by Wood’s lamp illumination. Observation of bowel wall fluorescence suggests adequate blood flow to support anastomotic healing. Bowel segments that are less than 2 cm in length with no fluorescence can be preserved, but should not be included in the anastomoses. Larger areas of nonfluorescence suggest ischemia and likely require resection.

Large Bowel Obstruction

The vast majority of large bowel obstructions are due to malignancy or inflammatory conditions. This is in contrast to small bowel obstructions, for which adhesions are the principal etiology. The gynecologic surgeon may encounter large bowel obstruction from a primary colon or a gynecologic malignancy, ulcerative colitis, diverticular disease, pelvic abscess, or radiation injury. The onset of most colonic obstructions is insidious because of gradual luminal narrowing, which manifests clinically as decreased caliber stools, constipation, and bloating. Progressive obstruction leads to obstipation, abdominal distention, colicky pain, nausea, and vomiting. Radiographic studies reveal a dilated colon proximal to the point of obstruction (Fig. 43.7). If the ileocecal valve is incompetent, the distention extends proximally into the small bowel, as evidenced by dilated bowel loops with air-fluid levels. A more serious closed loop obstruction occurs when the ileocecal valve is competent. The cecum is commonly involved; as cecal dilation exceeds 10 to 12 cm, the risk of perforation increases significantly. Preoperative endoscopy or water-soluble contrast study can clarify the etiology and location of obstruction. Barium enema should not be performed in the setting of acute obstruction or suspected perforation to avoid barium peritonitis. If necessary, any viable segment of large bowel proximal to the point of obstruction can be exteriorized as a colostomy.

Ogilvie Syndrome

Ogilvie syndrome (acute colonic pseudoobstruction) is a dysfunction of colonic peristalsis. Clinical presentation may be...
indistinguishable from a large bowel obstruction. The mecha-
nism of colonic pseudoobstruction is theorized to be an im-
balance between the proximal and distal colonic innervation.
Parasympathetic innervation from the vagus nerve supplies
the colon proximal to the splenic flexure. In contrast, the left
colon receives parasympathetic innervation from the sacral
plexus (S2–S4). Most commonly, only the right colon is di-
lated. Ogilvie syndrome is seen more commonly in elderly
and debilitated patients and in those who are on narcotics and
phosphatase or tricyclic antidepressants. Supportive care in-
cludes hydration, correction of electrolyte abnormalities, and
gastrointestinal decompensation (nasogastric tube, rectal tube).
Sequential radiographs are used to monitor cecal dilation to
assess the risk of perforation. Endoscopic decompensation or
tube cecostomy are preferred alternatives to exploration, be-
cause surgical morbidity is significant. If necessary, intraop-
erative colonic decompensation can be accomplished using an
18-gauge needle passed obliquely through the taenia coli and
attached to suction. Decompression facilitates exteriorization
of the bowel for diverting colostomy, if necessary.

Fistulae

Postoperative intestinal fistulae are an especially challenging
problem for patients and clinicians. An enterocutaneous or
enterovaginal fistula may be difficult to confirm, even when
clinical findings are strongly suggestive of a fistulous commu-
nication. The high-pressure bowel defect may be small with
only intermittent drainage, thus obscuring localization. Oral
administration of charcoal or of bright blue or carmine red
dye confirms the diagnosis if characteristic color change is ob-
served in the effluent. Clarification of the fistulous tract can be
aided by an intraluminal contrast material introduced tran-
cutaneously, and the pattern of flow is evaluated radiographically.
Excessive force during injection is avoided to prevent dislodg-
ment of the bowel from its adherence to the abdominal or
vaginal wall.

Nonoperative management of fistulas in selected cases
has gained wide acceptance. The fundamentals of conservative
management include correction of underlying inflammatory
processes and electrolyte abnormalities, nutritional support,
and maintenance of adequate hydration. The more proximal
the fistula, the greater the potential for physiologic derange-
ments, and the less likely the fistula is to close spontaneously
without a fistulectomy. Gastric, duodenal, and proximal
jejunal fistulae can cause potentially fatal physiologic dis-
turbances and thus require prompt intervention. Distal ileal
or colonic fistulae are generally well tolerated and tend to close
spontaneously if predisposing factors are circumvented. There
must be no abscess, peritonitis, distal bowel obstruction, or for-
eginous body within the fistulous tract. Prior irradiation is likely
associated with suture tearing through the tissue and is sus-
pected in the setting of copious serous or serosanguineous drainage
from the abdominal wound. The incision is explored with a sterile
swab or gloved finger to assess for fascial defects. A small de-
fect (1 to 2 cm) in an otherwise intact fascia with no associated
bowel extrusion may be reaproximated with an interrupted
fascial suture. Larger fascial defects and all defects with bowel
perforation (evisceration) require immediate surgical attention.
Evisceration and abdominal wall injuries are discussed in
Chapter 43. Evisceration is an acute full-thickness wound disruption
through which abdominal contents extrude and most com-
monly includes loops of distal small bowel and omentum. Evi-
sceration is rare following laparoscopic procedures but should
be suspected with a palpable or visible hernia defect and
serosanguineous fluid drainage. Concomitant problems may
include abnormal bowel function, nausea, vomiting, or evi-
dence of bowel incarceration. CT and ultrasound imaging are
useful if the diagnosis is uncertain. In preparing the eviscerated
patient for surgery, she is kept in supine position, and the ex-
posed bowel is covered with towels moistened by sterile saline
or povidone-iodine solution. If accomplished without difficulty,
eviscerated organs should be cautiously replaced back into the
abdomen. The protective towels can be secured using a sterile
plastic drape and reinforced with an abdominal binder. Broad-
spectrum antibiotics are administered, and steps are taken to
establish a clear fluid and electrolyte abnormalities. Sedatives and anal-
gesics can reduce intraperitoneal pressure. Intraoperatively, all
layers of the wound are inspected for infection, and devital-
ized abdominal wall tissue is sharply debried. The bowel and
mesentery are inspected for injury, viability, hemostasis, and
obstruction. The peritoneal contents are copiously suctioned.
Bowel resection is generally not necessary, but it may be re-
quired if obstruction or ischemia is present.

Vaginal Evisceration

Protrusion of viscera through the vagina (Fig. 43.8) has been
reported in association with surgery, enterocoele, trauma, Val-
salva maneuver, cystus, radiation, and foreign bodies. Small
bowel and mesentery are most commonly involved, but evis-
ceration may also include large bowel and omentum. Approx-
imately two thirds of reported cases have occurred in patients
with a history of prior surgery for pelvic relaxation or in the
setting of symptomatic enterocoele. Prior hysterectomy is a fac-
tor in only half of reported cases. This distressing situation
tends to occur outside of the hospital setting, and bacterial
contamination is inevitable. Severe abdominal pain may indi-
cate mesenteric compromise. Surgical preparation is similar to
that for an abdominal evisceration, but in contrast, it is best to
resect preoperative attempts at replacing the bowel through the
vagina. Surgical management should be via exploratory la-
poratomy. During exploration, the eviscerated contents are
placed into the peritoneal cavity with a combination of gen-
tile traction from above and guidance from below. Copious
intrapерitoneal irrigation and broad-spectrum antibiotics are
used. Careful inspection of the bowel and mesentery are necessary to identify and repair injuries and to ensure viability. Severely damaged or obstructed bowel requires resection.

**Short Bowel Syndrome**

Short bowel syndrome (SBS) results from loss of significant bowel length or inadequate function of normal-length bowel. The net result is insufficient nutrient absorption necessary to meet the body’s metabolic requirements. Causes include extensive surgical resection, regional enteritis (Crohn’s disease), and radiation injury. An increasingly frequent etiology of SBS is reexploration subsequent to prior abdominal procedures. Extensive bowel resection is most often necessary as a result of postoperative adhesions or volvulus. In a 20-year review from the University of Nebraska Medical Center, 25% of adult SBS cases were attributed to secondary surgeries. Initial operations included colectomy, hysterectomy, appendectomy, gastric bypass, and others, with hysterectomy being the second-most-common predisposing procedure.

In women, the average length of small bowel is approximately 600 cm (range 350–700 cm). Some authors define SBS as having less than 200 cm of functional small intestine. In general, 50% of the small bowel can be resected without long-term impairment of nutritional status, as long as there is normal function in the remainder of the bowel. Severe nutritional deficiencies will likely result with loss of two thirds to three fourths of the small intestine. Malabsorption manifests as diarrhea, dehydration, weight loss, metabolic derangements, nutrient deficits, low serum protein, and anemia (iron, folate, and B12).

Therapy for SBS begins with preemptive planning. A concerted effort is made to preserve as much small bowel and colon as possible at the time of any surgical resection. Preemptive strategies include steps taken to prevent adhesions, to avoid technical errors, and to act expediously on potentially ischemic bowel. After undergoing an intestinal resection, the remaining small bowel has adaptation capacity that
than are the specific techniques or materials used (Table 43.2).

General Principles

Intestinal anastomosis should:

- Be tension free
- Avoid intraperitoneal spill of gastrointestinal content
- Incorporate healthy tissue in the proximal and distal segments
- Preserve adequate lumen
- Be hemostatic and watertight/airtight
- Be completed under optimal surgical exposure
- Preserve maximum amount of normal bowel
- Invert the tissue edges
- Incorporate the submucosa, which is the strongest layer
- Include bowel segments of the same diameter
- Be performed in an infection-free tissue bed
- Not be done with an interrupted obstruction or fistula

Broad categories for consideration include whether to use open or closed technique and whether to use hand-sewn or staple closure. Anastomotic communication can be established via an end-to-end, side-to-side, or end-to-end alignment. Hand-sewn closure may be effectively accomplished using one or two layers of absorbable or permanent suture via continuous or interrupted methods. Additionally, specific suturing techniques (i.e., Lembert, Connell) can be selected (Fig. 43.9).

Staple anastomoses have largely replaced hand-sewn techniques. Technical ease and equivalent to superior results are among the potential advantages of stapling methods (Table 43.3). Recent advances in stapling instruments and techniques have been vital to the exponential growth in laparoscopic surgery. Essentially any procedure described in this text as an open technique can be accomplished endoscopically by the advanced laparoscopic surgeon. An overview of selected surgical procedures in this chapter includes hand-sewn and staple techniques, with a focus on modern surgical stapling. A more expansive discussion of hand-sewn maneuvers is found in the seventh edition of Te Linde's Operative Gynecology.

Familiarity with open and closed anastomotic techniques provides the surgeon with a choice of repairs and facilitates intraoperative decision making. Open techniques (bowel lumens exposed) have gradually replaced closed techniques (lumens occluded) in most circumstances. Morbidity associated with open techniques is acceptably low. The extent of intraperitoneal spill can generally be controlled with aggressive preoperative bowel prep and atraumatic bowel clamps. Closed techniques are potentially advantageous in reducing complications from unprepped bowel and with anastomosis involving the colon.

Anastomosis at the anastomotic margins begins within the first 72 hours of surgery if not impeded by infection or inflammation. The most important strength layer of the bowel wall is the submucosa, which must be incorporated into any anastomosis. Collagen is believed to be the single most important contributor to submucosal strength. The maximum anastomotic bursting pressure reflects the pressure required to disrupt an anastomosis and has been used experimentally to assess the strength of healing. The bursting pressure of an anastomosis increases rapidly during the early postoperative period. Sixty percent of the surrounding bowel wall strength is reached by postoperative day 3 to 4, and pressure tolerated by the anastomotic site approximates 100% of that tolerated by intact bowel wall by postoperative day 7. The ideal suture material should provide maximum strength during the

Hernias

Ventral or incisional hernias occur subsequent to 1% of gynecologic surgeries. Abdominal viscera are encased by a peritoneal lining. Abdominal wall defects are frequently present in the setting of gynecologic surgeries. Abdominal viscera are encased by a peritoneal lining. Abdominal wall defects are frequently present in the setting of gynecologic surgeries. Hernias tend to describe an insidious onset of abdominal fullness or pressure and often notice a focal area of distention. Symptoms generally worsen with prolonged standing and physical activity, and lessen at rest. Hernias that reduce spontaneously and those easily reduced manually can be managed nonoperatively. Any suspicion of bowel obstruction, incarceration, or strangulation, or necrosis requires immediate surgical evaluation. The surgical objectives are to isolate and resect the hernia sac, reduce the sac contents, lyse pertinent adhesions, and inspect the viscera to ensure gastrointestinal integrity. Reoperation may be necessary to alleviate intestinal obstruction or remove severely damaged bowel. Before closure, steps are taken to acquire hemostasis, control infection, excise preexisting scar tissue, and mobilize the abdominal wall to enable a tension-free fascial approximation.

OPERATIVE TECHNIQUES

General Principles

Numerous variations exist on bowel resection and anastomotic techniques. Discussed in this text are some of the more commonly used methods, instruments, and materials. This review is by no means exhaustive, given the vast array of reported options on this theme. Strict adherence to the fundamental principles described above is more important to successful healing than are the specific techniques or materials used (Table 43.2).
lag phase of wound healing with minimal tissue reaction and inflammation. Although the perfect suture material is yet to be identified, modern monofilament and coated braided sutures represent progress toward this goal.

Double-layer intestinal closures have long been touted as more secure than single-layer closures. The traditional anastomosis includes a running inner layer of 3-0 chromic cat gut (absorbable) and an interrupted outer layer of 3-0 silk (nonabsorbable). Extensive clinical evidence, however, suggests single-layer closure to be equivalent and may offer some advantages over double-layer anastomosis. Comparative animal studies have demonstrated more rapid vascularization and mucosal healing, and greater early anastomotic strength associated with single-layer repair. Double-layer closures, along with traditional sutures such as cat gut and silk, are associated with greater inflammation, reduced microvascular growth, and less blood flow across the anastomosis. A single-layer reapproximation generally causes less narrowing of the intestinal lumen and can be accomplished in less time. When done properly, all hand-sewn techniques result in an inverted suture line.

### TABLE 43.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STAPLE TECHNIQUES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Advantages</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Better blood flow and oxygen delivery across the anastomotic line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less operative time required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform staple placement an inherent design of surgical staplers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less luminal narrowing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technically easier to learn and perform in most cases</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Either continuous or interrupted closures can be used for intestinal anastomosis. Continuous technique is rapid and has the potential advantage of a more even tension distribution along the suture line. In comparing running versus interrupted closure, animal studies have also shown reduced tissue oxygen tension, impaired collagen synthesis, and increased anastomotic complications using running closure. To date, however, randomized clinical trials are lacking, and retrospective studies show no consistent benefit of one technique over the other. Clinical and subclinical anastomotic leak rates, associated morbidity, and length of hospitalization are generally equivalent, even for high-risk patients (e.g., patients with prior radiation therapy, malnutrition, or carcinomatosis).

### SURGERY ON THE SMALL INTESTINE

#### Blood Supply to the Small Intestine

The small bowel receives its arterial blood supply from the superior mesenteric artery (SMA), which arises from the ventral surface of the abdominal aorta (Fig. 43.10). In addition to the small bowel, the SMA also gives rise to the middle and right colic arteries, which supply those regions of the colon. The most proximal small bowel is supported by the common inferior pancreaticoduodenal artery from the SMA, arising from the left side of the SMA is a series of jejunal and ileal arteries that branch to form anastomotic arcades. Primary arcades terminate directly into the small bowel via vasa recta or extend to form secondary, tertiary, and quaternary arcades that eventually give rise to terminal vasa recta. Avascular spaces between the vasa recta are known as windows of Deaver. In general, up to 8 cm of small intestine can remain viable distal to the closest vasa recta because of intramural vascular communications.

The ileocolic artery arises from the right side of the SMA and traverses the base of the mesentery to form a loop anastomosis with the SMA in the region of the terminal ileum. This loop encircles an area devoid of vessels known as the avascular space of Treves. The arterial blood supply to the distal ileum is considered tenuous because of a decreased number of
FIGURE 43.10. Intestinal blood supply: superior mesenteric artery. The peritoneum is in part stripped off. Observe the following: (1) The superior mesenteric artery, which ends by anastomosing with the ileal branch of the ileocolic artery. (2) Its branches: from its left side, (a) 12 or more jejunal and ileal branches. These anastomose to form arcades from which vasa recta pass to the small gut. From its right side, (b) the middle colic, the descends, and commonly, but not here, an independent right colic artery. These anastomose to form a marginal artery (labeled in Fig. 43.14) from which vasa recta pass to the large gut. (c) The two inferior pancreaticoduodenal arteries (not in view) arise from the main artery either directly or in conjunction with the first jejunal branch. (3) Taeniae coli, sacculations, and appendices epiploicae distinguish the large gut from the smooth-walled small gut.

vasa recta from only primary vascular arcades. Because of the uncertain vascular status in this area, it is recommended that 10 cm of terminal ileum also be removed during cecal resection to improve the anastomotic blood supply.

Small Bowel Resection

It is important to resect only the length of bowel necessary to adequately address the disease process, thereby sparing as much normal intestine as possible. For benign disease, bowel transection sites are located just proximal and distal to the abnormal segment. Most laparotomy pads are positioned to isolate the surgical field from the remaining peritoneal contents. At the proposed transaction sites, blunt dissection is used to make a small opening through the avascular mesenteric window adjacent to the bowel wall. The staple cartridge half of the gastrointestinal anastomotic (GIA) stapler is passed through the proximal mesenteric defect, perpendicular to the axis of the bowel. The anvil half is placed across the bowel and aligned with the cartridge. This effectively occludes the bowel as the GIA stapler is closed. Proper positioning is confirmed, and the stapler is fired by steady forward motion on the pusher-bar knife assembly. Upon release of the assembly and opening of the GIA handles, two double-staggered staple lines are noted with the intervening bowel transected. The
FIGURE 43.11. Small bowel resection with side-to-side (functional end-to-end) staple anastomosis. A: The two halves of the gastrointestinal anastomotic (GIA) stapler are passed through the mesenteric window and secured across the bowel. B: The GIA stapler has been fired proximal and distal to the abnormal bowel. Staggered double staple lines are noted to occlude each segment. Extent of mesenteric resection is tailored to the case-specific disease process. (Continued)

same steps are carried out at the distal site for transection (Fig. 43.11).

For benign disease, the mesenteric resection can be carried out in close proximity to the bowel, with no need to remove an intervening wedge. The objective is to preserve as much intact mesenteric blood supply as possible. The peritoneum overlying the mesentery is opened with cautery. Visual inspection and transillumination help to identify mesenteric vessels, which are clamped, cut, and suture-ligated using 2-0 silk ligatures. Division of the mesentery completes the resection. In preparation for anastomosis, tissue attachments are cleared 5 mm from both stapled bowel edges to avoid incorporation of mesenteric fat.

**Staple Anastomosis**

Staple end-to-end anastomosis in the small bowel is rarely used because of excess narrowing of the lumen. More favorable are the staple side-to-side anastomotic techniques that are functionally likened to an end-to-end anastomosis. Staple end-to-end techniques are more aptly used to create an anastomosis between two segments of large bowel following transverse colectomy or rectosigmoid resection.

**Side-to-Side (Functional End-to-End) Staple Anastomosis**

The side-to-side functional end-to-end staple techniques have gained wide acceptance because of the technical ease, availability of reliable instruments, and capacity to join bowel lumens of different diameters. Following resection, the occluded bowel ends are juxtaposed with the antimesenteric edges aligned in parallel along a distance of approximately 8 cm. This alignment is secured by a seromuscular 3-0 silk suture placed at the proximal end. Mayo scissors are used to excise a full-thickness oblique segment from the antimesenteric corner of each staple-occluded bowel segment. The anvil half of the GIA stapler and the cartridge half are inserted into each enterotomy (Fig. 43.11). The stapler is secured into position by closing the lock lever such that the antimesenteric borders are aligned. Proper positioning is confirmed, and the instrument is fired by sliding the pusher-bar knife assembly forward, and then returning it to the neutral position. This maneuver delivers two double-staggered staple rows and cuts the intervening bowel walls. The GIA instrument is disengaged and removed. The resultant enteroteroenterostomy is inspected to ensure patency, viability, and hemostasis.

The open bowel edges are grasped with Allis clamps, and a linear thoracoabdominal (TA) stapler is placed across the common lumen, ensuring that full-thickness bowel wall is circumferentially elevated above the staple line. After releasing the safety, the TA stapler is fired via steady closing grip on the handles. Excess tissue above the edge of the stapler is excised, and the instrument is released. Luminal capacity is evaluated by transmural palpation between the thumb and index finger, moving in a circular motion to outline the two layers of bowel wall (in contrast to the four palpable layers proximal to the common lumen). Oversewing the staple line is unnecessary unless there is concern regarding the anastomotic integrity. An open variation of this technique is such that after resection, the ends of the in situ bowel are not occluded. Atraumatic bowel clamps, protective moist laparotomy pads, irrigation, and povidone-iodine-soaked gauze reduce enteric contamination. The antimesenteric borders are aligned and secured as described above. The anvil half of the GIA stapler is introduced through one open bowel lumen, and the cartridge half is introduced through the other. The GIA stapler is locked and fired along the antimesenteric borders, and the TA stapler is used to close the resultant common enterotomy. These staple techniques are also ideal for joining bowel segments of discordant diameters (i.e., ilocolonic anastomosis). The ileum and colon are aligned and secured in parallel along their antimesenteric borders. An enterotomy and colotomy are made
FIGURE 43.11. (Continued) C: Full-thickness corners are sharply excised from the antimesenteric end of each bowel segment. The anvil and cartridge halves of the GIA stapler are inserted into each enterotomy. D: An open variation of this technique is such that the bowel segments are not occluded, and the GIA anvil and cartridge are introduced through each open lumen. E: Using either closed or open techniques, the GIA stapler is locked into position along the antimesenteric borders and fired by forward motion on the pusher-bar knife assembly. F: Firing the GIA stapler establishes a common enterotomy. G: The thoracoabdominal (TA) stapler is used to secure the open ends. Full-thickness bowel wall is circumferentially elevated above the staple line before firing. H: Shown is the resultant side-to-side functional end-to-end anastomosis. The mesenteric defect is closed with interrupted 3-0 silk sutures.

through which the anvil and cartridge halves of the GIA stapler are placed to initiate the anastomosis as described earlier. Proper alignment minimizes the residual large bowel segment that extends beyond the anastomosis, which is at risk for nonfunction and progressive symptomatic dilation (blind loop syndrome).

Side-to-Side Staple Anastomosis
Side-to-side techniques are less commonly used than they once were and have largely been replaced by end-to-end or functional end-to-end anastomoses. Nevertheless, side-to-side techniques are an effective means of reanastomosis, and they can be used to bypass an obstructed intestinal segment. Either hand-sewn or staple closure may be used. The antimesenteric borders are aligned, and the bowel segments are overlapped along 8 cm and secured into position such that the stapled bowel edges are at opposite ends of this alignment. Subsequent steps taken for the staple method are as previously described.

End-to-End Hand-Sewn Double-Layer Anastomosis
In performing an end-to-end anastomosis, it is desirable to have adequate and equivalent lumens in both the proximal and distal segments. The diameter of any lumen can be increased
Intestinal Tract in Gynecologic Surgery

FIGURE 43.12. End-to-end hand-sewn double-layer small bowel anastomosis. A: The bowel segments are aligned end-to-end and secured by stay sutures placed midway between the mesenteric and antimesenteric borders. Each luminal diameter is increased via a linear incision along the antimesenteric border (Cheatle slit). B: The inner running layer is started on the mesenteric (posterior) bowel edges. A double-arm needle facilitates bidirectional sewing as the closure continues around the corners onto the antimesenteric (anterior) edges. C: The anterior inner layer is completed in a continuous over-and-over or Connell suture (shown). D: The bowel is rotated 180 degrees to expose the posterior wall. Interrupted seromuscular 3-0 silk sutures are placed to finish the posterior outer layer. E: The bowel is rotated back into its normal alignment, and the anterior outer layer is closed with interrupted silk Lembert sutures. The mesenteric defect is reaproximated, and the adequacy of the lumen is assessed. Inset: Conventional inner layer inverting technique.

by transecting the bowel obliquely or via linear incision along the antimesenteric border (Cheatle slit). Atraumatic linen-shod or rubber-shod intestinal clamps are placed across the proximal and distal bowel to decrease intestinal spill. The bowel segments and mesenteries are aligned and secured by 3-0 silk seromuscular sutures placed midway between the mesenteric and antimesenteric borders. The traditional two-layer anastomosis includes a running inner layer of 3-0 chromic catgut and an outer layer of interrupted 3-0 silk sutures (Fig. 43.12).

The inner layer is closed first, starting on the mesenteric (posterior) bowel edges and continuing the closure around to incorporate the antimesenteric (anterior) edges. This is best accomplished with a double-arm needle, sewing in both directions. Suturing begins on the mucosal side, passing from in to out, and then out to in, bringing the inverted bowel edges together. Full-thickness tissue bites are initiated approximately 3 mm from the edge and advanced approximately 3 mm between throws. After circumferential closure, the knot is tied toward the lumen, and the bowel is rotated 180 degrees to expose the posterior wall. Rotation is facilitated by passing one stay suture through the mesenteric defect, with sustained counterclockwise rotational traction on both stay sutures. Interrupted seromuscular 3-0 silk sutures are placed to complete the mesenteric (posterior) outer layer. The bowel is rotated back 180 degrees into its normal anatomic position, and the anterior outer layer is lastly closed with interrupted silk Lembert sutures. If the bowel cannot be rotated, the mesenteric (posterior) outer segment must be sewn first.
Side-to-Side Hand-Sewn Anastomosis

For hand-sewn technique, 5 cm-length parallel linear enterotomies are made along the antimesenteric borders of each bowel segment. Elevation of the anterior bowel wall with gastrointestinal forceps during incision will reduce the likelihood of posterior wall injury. A row of interrupted 3-0 silk sutures are placed in Lembert fashion to join the posterior outer edges of the enterotomies. A running absorbable 3-0 suture is then used on the posterior inner layer sewing toward the surgeon and continuing around to the anterior edges of the enterotomies. The two suture ends are tied together across the anastomosis. The final anterior outer layer is placed using interrupted seromuscular sutures of 3-0 silk in Lembert fashion. Stay sutures are secured or removed, and the anastomosis is checked for integrity.

As a modification to the aforementioned procedure, the initial posterior layer of interrupted 3-0 silk Lembert sutures are placed before performing the enterotomies (Fig. 43.13). Silk sutures are placed such that the knots are secured on the outside. Parallel enterotomies are made approximately 4 mm above and below the edges of the suture line. The remaining steps in the anastomosis are completed as described previously.

Blood Supply to the Large Intestine

The SMA arises from the abdominal aorta and gives rise to the ileocolic, right colic, and middle colic arteries, which supply the right and transverse portions of the colon. The inferior mesenteric artery (IMA) also arises from the abdominal aorta and gives off the left colic and sigmoid branches, which supply the descending and sigmoid colon. Each of these major vessels divides into numerous smaller branches, forming an anastomotic arcade that communicates from the cecum to the rectum via the marginal artery of Drummond. The marginal artery gives off numerous terminal vasa recta that directly supply the colon (Fig. 43.14). Arterial perfusion is thus preserved to any segment of the colon as long as the marginal artery is not disrupted. The marginal artery, however, is absent at the hepatic or splenic flexure in 1% to 2% of the population. This anatomic inconsistency most often affects the left side, such
that colon resection in this area should include removal of the splenic flexure. Again noted is the tenuous ileocolic blood supply, such that if the cecum is resected, 10 cm of terminal ileum should also be removed. The rectum derives its oxygenation from the IMA via the superior rectal artery and from the hypogastric artery via the middle and inferior rectal arteries. An elaborate anastomotic lattice with other pelvic vessels encircles the rectum and anus.

Large Bowel Resection

The principles important in large bowel resection and anastomosis are essentially the same as those described previously for the small bowel. Segmental colon resection in gynecologic surgery is most commonly necessary because of malignancy or radiation injury. The gynecologic surgeon may also encounter benign conditions that require resection, such as severe endometriosis, diverticular disease, extensive adhesions, or non-reparable colonic injury. Large bowel resection for benign gynecologic conditions does not require segmental wedge resection of the mesentery. The integrity of the marginal artery is protected when the mesentery is transected close to the bowel wall through the vasa recta.

Mobilization of the Colon

The majority of large bowel resections require some degree of mobilization to ensure a tension-free anastomosis. The general objectives of colon mobilization are to gain retroperitoneal access and transect avascular attachments from the splenic and/or hepatic flexures. If needed, additional mobility is acquired via transecting the gastrocolic ligament and infracolic omentum if necessary. Also, the inferior mesenteric artery can usually be sacrificed without significant compromise because of the rich vascular network surrounding the rectum. Mobilization can be carried out before or after the segmental colon resection, depending on the clinical situation. To free the right colon, retroperitoneal dissection is initiated at the base of the cecum and continued lateral and parallel to the ascending colon along the white line of Toldt. This
Related Surgery

is aided by medial traction on the ascending colon. The hepa-
tocystocolic ligament is transected as dissection is carried into
Morison’s pouch and along the proximal transverse colon. Mo-
bilization of the left colon is initiated at the most distal site of
retroperitonealized sigmoid colon, which is usually located at
the pelvic brim. With medial retraction on the bowel, a peri-
toneal incision is made lateral and parallel to the descending
colon. Dissection is continued around the splenic flexure as the
lienocolic and phrenicocolic ligaments are transected. Exces-
sive traction is avoided to prevent splenic capsule injury. The
left lateral portion of the gastroscolic ligament is divided to ac-
cess the lesser omental sac. This ligament can be completely
transected along the transverse colon by dividing the anteri-
oral vessels. If necessary, division of the gastroscolic ligament
is accomplished along the greater curvature of the stomach by
dividing the gastrotroplic and short gastric vessels.

End-to-End Staple Anastomosis

Transverse colon resection is used as an illustrative example
of this technique. After completing the resection and mobili-
zaion of the left and right colon, the proximal and distal bowel
edges are brought into close opposition. Their mesenteries are
aligned, and seromuscular 3-0 silk sutures are placed, dividing
the bowel circumference into equal one-third segments. The
mesenteric (posterior) segment of the anastomosis is completed
first. Bowel rotation of 180 degrees is facilitated by counter-
tickness bowel walls into the noncutting TA stapler. The sta-
pler is positioned such that the staple line extends just beyond
the lateral edge of both stay sutures. Steady closing grip se-
cures the device into position. After confirming proper placement,
the safety latch is released, and firm closure of the handles fires the
staple line. Excess tissue is sharply excised, and the stapler is
released (Fig. 43.13).

The bowel is rotated back 180 degrees to its normal
anatomic alignment. The two remaining equal segmental
staples are stapled from the serosal side in similar fashion. Alterna-
tively, if the bowel is not easily rotated, the mesenteric (poste-
rior) segment can be stapled first from the mucosal side. The re-
maning segments are closed from the serosal side as described
earlier. Slight overlap of adjoining staple lines ensures complete
_closure without hindering anastomotic healing. Aderacy of the
lumen, integrity of repair, and hemostasis are confirmed
before closing the mesenteric defect.

Sigmoid Resection

The appropriate site for sigmoid transection is identified prox-
imal to the area of diseased bowel. A small mesenteric opening
is made adjacent to the colon, through which the GIA cartridge
is introduced. The GIA anvil is placed across the bowel, and
the stapler is secured and fired, resulting in a transected sigmoid
with occluded proximal and distal segments. Most laparotomy
wetls are used to pack the proximal segment above the surgi-
cal field. The mesenteric peritoneum is opened adjacent to the
bowel, and the incision is continued parallel to the sigmoid as
the mesenteric transitions from a medial to a posterior insertion
(Fig. 43.16). Moist laparotomy towels are used to pack the prox-
imal segment above the surgical field. The mesentery is divided
with cautery and sharp dissec-
tion. Blunt retroperitoneal dissection between the medial ureter
and lateral hypogastric vessel exposes the perirectal space. En-
try into the retrorectal space is aided by lifting the transected
sigmoid. Retrorectal dissection is carried out to release the rec-
tum from its attachments along the sacrum. Care is taken to
avoid laceration of the presacral veins. The uterosacral liga-
ments are transected to gain exposure toward the distal rectum as
the ureters are retracted laterally with a handheld malleable
retractor. The rectal stalks are secured by dividing and ligating
the posterior portion of the cardinal ligaments.

The extent of required dissection depends on the location
and severity of disease. For nonmalignant pathology, dissection
beyond the pelvic peritoneal reflection and levator ani is rarely
necessary and may actually disrupt the blood supply. When
normal rectum has been isolated below the diseased segment,
the rectosigmoid resection can be completed. Pericolonic tis-
sue attachments are cleared to expose smooth bowel wall. The
Newly described stapled anastomosis incorporates only the rectum. The stapler is locked into posi-
tion, checked for proper alignment, and fired by firm closure of the handles. Occluding clamps are placed across the bowel just
above the staple line, and sharp dissection is used to transect
the rectum and complete the resection.

The number of total laparoscopic sigmoid resections and
hand-assisted laparoscopic sigmoid resections has increased
significantly in recent years. Reports of clinical experience to
date suggest comparable morbidity in comparison to open pro-
cedures, and endoscopic resection may offer the advantage of
more rapid postoperative recovery. Timing of surgery is also
an important factor to consider. For example, in patients with
a history of diverticular disease, the morbidity associated with
elective sigmoid resection is reportedly less than with resection
during an acute bout of diverticulitis.

Rectosigmoid End-to-End Staple Anastomosis

Before anastomosis, the descending colon is laid in the pelvis
to ensure the colon and rectum can be approximated without
tension. Redundant laxity of the colon should be observed.
Any resistance or tension indicates the need for additional
mobilization. The descending colonic lumen is occluded via
an atraumatic clamp, and the staple line is sharply excised.
The appropriate diameter end-to-end anastomosis (EEA) stap-
pler is selected based on the largest EEA obturator that can
be placed into the lumen without undue stretch on the bowel
wall. One milligram (one ampule) of intravenous glucagon
causes relaxation of the muscularis and allows more accurate
sizing.

Various designs of the EEA stapler exist, but generally
the proximal portion consists of an anvil with a spike. An auto-
purse string or hand-sewn purse string is placed circumferen-
tially around the open end of the descending colon. The anvil
is positioned within the lumen, and the purse string is secured
around the base of the spike, the tip of which is directed to-
ward the rectal stump. The anus is digitally dilated, and the
lubricated shaft of the EEA stapler is introduced into the anal
canal. The shaft is visually and manually guided to the apex
of the rectal stump. Clockwise rotation of the central wing nut
advances the sharp trocar to pierce the apex of the rectal stump.
The trocar is removed, leaving the hollow center shaft of the
EEA in place through the rectum. The anvil spike from the descen-
ding colon is guided into the hollow center shaft of the
EEA. The bowel remains within the hollow center shaft of the
rectal stump until it locks into place (Fig. 43.17). The central
wing nut is further rotated clockwise until the indicator line
End-to-end colon staple anastomosis. A: The colon segments are aligned end-to-end, and 3-0 silk sutures are placed to divide the bowel circumference into equal one-third segments. Inset: The mesenteric (posterior) bowel edges are joined first. The bowel is rotated 180 degrees counterclockwise. This is done by passing stay suture (y) through the mesenteric defect, with continued counterclockwise rotational traction on sutures (z) and (y). B: The thoracoabdominal (TA) stapler is used to close the posterior segments. Full-thickness bowel walls are lifted above the staple line with Allis clamps. C: After firing the stapler, excess tissue is sharply excised. The bowel is then rotated 180 degrees clockwise into its normal alignment. (Continued)

is readily visible in the indicator window. This rotation draws the rectum and sigmoid colon into direct opposition. Normal anatomic alignment of the mesentery is confirmed. The safety is released, and steady, firm closure of the handles fires the instrument. The handles are released, and the central wing nut is rotated counterclockwise two complete turns. A gentle rocking motion back and forth frees the instrument tip from the anastomosis, as the EEA shaft is slowly withdrawn from the rectum.

The anastomotic integrity is confirmed by a series of checks. First, the staple line is visually and manually inspected. Second, the EEA instrument is inspected for two complete 360-degree tissue rings. This confirms circumferential stapling and resection of both the colonic and rectal segments. Third, the pelvis is filled with sterile crystalloid, and a rigid sigmoidoscope is used to insufflate the bowel. Manual occlusion of the proximal sigmoid ensures adequate testing pressure across the anastomosis. The anastomosis is observed while underwater, looking for air bubbles that would indicate an anastomotic leak (Fig. 43.18). Rigid sigmoidoscopy also allows direct internal inspection of the staple line. If any of these methods suggest an incomplete anastomosis, the area in question is reinforced with interrupted 3-0 silk sutures, and the integrity is retested. Care is taken to avoid vascular compromise as the mesenteric defect is closed with interrupted sutures.

Postanastomotic morbidity and symptoms are largely related to the amount of residual rectum at the time of repair. Patients with a high colorectal anastomosis (11 cm or more
related surgery have relatively low morbidity and excellent functional results. Those who have undergone a low anastomosis (between 7 and 11 cm) have intermediate levels of morbidity, but generally have satisfactory functional results after several months of physiologic adaptation. In contrast, patients with a very low colorectal anastomosis [less than 7 cm from the anal verge] are at highest risk for complications, including anastomotic leak. These patients are also more likely to have chronic symptoms of gastrointestinal frequency, urgency, and incontinence. The sigmoid J-pouch for rectosigmoid anastomosis provides a reservoir that may decrease the frequency of stools and reduce the incidence of incontinence (Fig. 43.19). Accordingly, the J-pouch is considered if resection leaves less than 7 cm of rectum and if the colon is redundant enough to

FIGURE 43.15. (Continued) D: The two remaining one-third segments are closed with the TA stapler in similar fashion. E: The end-to-end repair is complete. Stay sutures are secured or removed, and the anastomosis is evaluated for integrity. Alternative method: F: If the bowel cannot be effectively rotated, the mesenteric (posterior) one-third segment is closed first, using the TA-stapler applied to the mucosal surfaces. G: Excessive tissue is sharply excised. The two remaining one-third segments are closed from the serosal surfaces as described.
FIGURE 43.16. Sigmoid resection. A: An appropriate site for sigmoid transection is identified proximal to the area of diseased bowel. The amount of mesentery removed depends on the disease process. For most gynecologic conditions, an extensive mesenteric resection is not necessary. B: The gastrointestinal anastomosis stapler is used to divide the sigmoid colon. Sigmoid mesentery is transected by clamping, cutting, and securing the vessels with suture ligatures. C: The rectovaginal, retrorectal, and perirectal spaces are opened. Dissection is carried out until normal rectum is isolated below the diseased segment. The thoracoabdominal stapler is fired to occlude the rectum, which is then sharply excised to complete the resection.
FIGURE 43.17. End-to-end rectosigmoid staple anastomosis. A: A purse-string suture holds the anvil and spike within the sigmoid lumen. The end-to-end anastomosis (EEA) stapler is inserted transanally. Clockwise rotation of the central wing nut advances the sharp trocar to pierce the apex of the rectal stump. In this illustration, the trocar has been removed, and the hollow center shaft of the EEA remains in place. B: The spike and hollow center shaft are locked into position. Further rotation of the EEA central wing nut brings the sigmoid and rectum into direct opposition. The stapler is fired to deliver dual circular staple rows, as the knife transects the central tissue core to complete the anastomosis.

allow tension-free pouch construction. Postoperatively, some patients have a sense of incomplete evacuation and require suppositories or enemas.

Anastomotic leak is more common in colorectal anastomoses than in colon-to-colon anastomoses, in part because the rectum has no serosa. In ovarian cancer surgery, the estimated incidence of clinically significant anastomotic leak is 3% to 5%. Traditionally, a temporary diverting colostomy or ileostomy has been used to protect the distal colonic anastomosis. Clinical studies do not support the notion that routine protective intestinal diversion reduces the risk of anastomotic breakdown. Diversion of fecal contents, however, may reduce the severity of infectious complications if a leak occurs.

Selective intestinal diversion may be of benefit in cases of very low rectal anastomosis, prior radiation, unprepared bowel, and abscess or hematoma in the perianastomotic region.

End-to-Side Staple Anastomosis

End-to-side anastomotic techniques are advantageous for intestinal closure when the anorectal region is not readily accessible (e.g., supine position) or when access is not necessary to complete the closure (e.g., ileocolonic or high rectosigmoid anastomosis). A high rectosigmoid repair is used for illustrative purposes. Following sigmoid resection, a small colotomy
FIGURE 43.18. Testing the anastomotic integrity. The pelvis is filled with sterile crystalloid. The descending colon is manually occluded as air is insufflated via a rigid sigmoidoscope to create pressure across the anastomosis. Holding the anastomosis under water, it is examined for air bubbles that would suggest an anastomotic leak.

is made 3 to 4 cm from the end of the descending colon. The EEA instrument is introduced through the open lumen, and the hollow center shaft is advanced through the colotomy. The instrument is positioned such that the tip of the EEA rests perpendicular to bowel wall. A purse-string suture is used to secure the anvil spike within the rectal lumen. The end of the rectum is brought into close proximity with the side of the descending colon as the anvil spike is secured into the EEA hollow center shaft. Clockwise rotation of the central wing nut brings the bowel edges into direct opposition. Rotation is continued until adequate closure is confirmed via the indicator window. The stapler is fired by closing the instrument grips. Counter-clockwise rotation of the wing nut, followed by a subtle back-and-forth rocking motion, frees the instrument from the staple line. The open end of the descending colon is repaired using the TA stapler as previously described, and the integrity of the anastomosis is assessed.

End-to-End Hand-Sewn Single-Layer Colon Anastomosis

Before the common availability of surgical staplers, intestinal anastomoses were accomplished using hand-sewn techniques. Suture is still preferred over staple repair by some surgeons. Anastomosis can be accomplished using a single layer of delayed absorbable monofilament suture (small or large intestine) or nonabsorbable suture for large bowel (i.e., 4-0 polypropylene). The continuous closure has been proven efficacious in colon-to-colon repair and is used for this illustration. The bowel segments and mesenteric edges are aligned and secured with stay sutures. Suturing begins on the mesenteric (posterior) mucosal edges and is facilitated by a double-arm needle. The running stitch is carried out such that the needle enters near the transected mucosal edge and passes obliquely through the bowel wall to exit the serosa approximately 5 mm from the edge. The needle is passed through the adjoining segment in the same oblique fashion. Sequential tissue bites are placed 2 to 3 mm apart. This effectively inverts the bowel wall as the running suture is secured (Fig. 43.20). Bidirectional suturing is continued around the corners onto the antimesenteric (anterior) surfaces, which are closed from the serosal side. The Gambee single-layer technique is an equally effective method

FIGURE 43.19. Rectal J-pouch coloproctostomy.
that results in end-to-end opposition of bowel edges without puckering the mucosa.

The interrupted single-layer anastomosis has generally been done as a closed technique designed to minimize intraoperative spill of enteric content. This closed technique is infrequently used today, but still plays a role in selected cases of unprepared bowel, especially those involving the colon. A pair of atraumatic clamps is placed across the lumen at both the proximal and distal sites for resection. The bowel is sharply transected between these paired clamps, and the mesenteric resection is completed as previously described. All bowel lumens remain occluded by a surgical clamp. The cut edges are held in close proximity with their respective mesenteries aligned. Interrupted 3-0 silk Lembert sutures are passed full thickness through the bowel wall, being placed approximately 3 mm apart until they encompass the entire circumference. Some surgeons prefer to exclude the mucosa, because this adds no strength and may contribute to local tissue ischemia. Gentle traction and countertraction are applied along the untied sutures to guide the opposing bowel edges together. As the clamps are slowly removed, the sutures are tied. Patency of the lumen is assessed, and any insecure anastomotic areas are reinforced with additional sutures.

Colostomy

A colostomy should include tension-free bowel with uncompromised blood supply. The colon remains viable only about 2 cm beyond the closest intact vasa recta. The abdominal wall aperture must be generous enough to allow easy passage of the bowel with its intact mesentery, because even mild constriction may result in venous congestion, tissue edema, and necrosis. In gynecologic surgery, temporary colonic diversion may be necessary because of severe radiation injury (proctosigmoiditis), distal obstruction, perforation, or fistula. Permanent colostomy may be required if the rectum has been completely resected or is unacceptable for anastomosis. A diverting colostomy can also provide emergent decompression in the setting of complete large bowel obstruction at risk for perforation.

Perioperative Considerations

Preoperative consultation with an enterostomal therapist is very important in the perioperative planning and care. Counseling sessions, reading materials, support groups, and contact with other ostomy patients provide educational and emotional benefit. In nonemergent cases, the stoma appliance can be worn preoperatively to determine appropriate positioning and clarify postoperative expectations. The stoma should be located in an area that is easily seen and reached by the patient (Fig. 43.21). The tentative stoma site is marked preoperatively with indelible ink. As a general guide, a line is drawn connecting the anterior-superior iliac spine to the umbilicus, and the colostomy is exteriorized through the rectus muscles at some point along this line. Placement is avoided within skin folds, surgical scars, and the umbilicus because the appliance will not seal securely with these skin irregularities.

Postoperatively, the enterostomal therapist can assist in teaching the patient independent ostomy care. Daily inspection is important to ensure tissue viability, adequate function,
and nonretraction of the stoma. If tissue viability is in question, closer investigation under bright light is warranted. Insertion of a glass test tube or syringe with penlight transillumination allows for an easy bedside inspection of the internal bowel wall. If tissue viability remains uncertain, an anoscope or sigmoidoscope can be used. Focal ischemia is suggested if the mucosa is gray or dusky in appearance. Tissue necrosis distal to the skin edge may be safely observed and reevaluated after tissue sloughing has occurred. Surgical correction is generally unnecessary in this setting. Deeper and more extensive necrosis indicates compromised blood flow and the need for colostomy revision. Excessive retraction, stricture, or peristomal herniation may also require surgical correction. Some patients with an end sigmoid or descending colostomy prefer irrigation management over a collection appliance. Motivation, capacity for self-care, and relatively normal preoperative bowel function are requisite. Irrigation is started early in the postoperative period and is continued on a daily basis thereafter. The eventual goal is fecal continence between irrigations. Irrigation can also help reduce stoma odor and flatus, which can be further suppressed with a charcoal-based stoma cap. Some patients will develop predictable evacuation patterns which can be further suppressed with a charcoal-based stoma cap. Some patients with an end sigmoid or descending colostomy prefer irrigation management over a collection appliance. Motivation, capacity for self-care, and relatively normal preoperative bowel function are requisite. Irrigation is started early in the postoperative period and is continued on a daily basis thereafter. The eventual goal is fecal continence between irrigations. Irrigation can also help reduce stoma odor and flatus, which can be further suppressed with a charcoal-based stoma cap. Some patients will develop predictable evacuation patterns such that irrigation is eventually not required. Others will be satisfied with the security of a continuous appliance.

**End Colostomy Technique**

Efforts are made to create the stoma at the site marked on the abdominal wall preoperatively. The bowel selected for use should be adequately mobilized so the distal end can be brought beyond the abdominal wall by several centimeters. To fashion the abdominal wall aperture, a 3-cm diameter circle is drawn on the skin at the marked site. Symmetry is aided by a circular guide such as the flat, round end of a 60-cc syringe plunger. Dissection is carried through the skin and subcutaneous tissue to the level of the rectus fascia. A core of subcutaneous adipose tissue is not necessarily removed. Cruciate incisions are made in the anterior rectus sheath, with each incision being approximately 4 cm in length. The rectus muscle fibers are bluntly separated until the posterior rectus sheath and peritoneum are reached, through which similar cruciate incisions are made. When separating the rectus abdominis muscle, care is taken to avoid injury of the inferior epigastric vessels. All layers of the abdominal aperture are manually dilated and should easily admit three fingers without stricture.

A Babcock clamp is inserted through the aperture to grasp the colon for exteriorization. The bowel is brought through the abdominal wall, such that the occluded end rests easily above the skin surface without tension. Large epiploic appendices can be removed with electrocautery if needed to ease exteriorization. Tissue viability is assessed to ensure uncompromised blood flow. Interrupted 3-0 silk seromuscular sutures are fixed to the posterior and anterior rectus sheaths to secure the alignment and reduce the chance of retraction or herniation. The lateral paracolic gutter is obliterated to prevent small bowel herniation. Maturation of the stoma is deferred until after the abdomen is closed. Any remaining surgical objectives are completed, and the peritoneal cavity is irrigated and checked for hemostasis. The intraperitoneal and extraperitoneal bowel is again inspected before closing the surgical wound. After closure, the incision is protected with collodion or sterile towels. The exteriorized colon is opened, and the cut edges are observed for bleeding to ensure viability. Excessive bowel is trimmed such that approximately 2 to 3 cm remain above the skin surface. If viability is questionable, the edges are trimmed further until adequate blood flow is confirmed.

The stoma is matured using interrupted delayed absorbable sutures (3-0 polyglycolic acid). Stitches are initiated at the skin surface and carried in and out through the seromuscular bowel wall approximately 2 cm from the distal end and then full thickness through the cut bowel edge (Fig. 43.22). Sutures are placed circumferentially at about 5-mm intervals. As the sutures are tied, the everted bowel wall is folded back on itself. The result is a slightly protruding stoma that enables a better appliance fit and is less prone to retraction. In patients with a thick abdominal wall, it may not be possible to evert the stoma. In this scenario, a stoma flush with the skin surface is matured by securing the skin to full-thickness bowel edge using interrupted sutures. The appliance is fashioned and secured intraoperatively.

**Diverting Loop Colostomy**

A loop colostomy is technically less difficult to create and/or reverse than an end colostomy. This is a good technique when a temporary diverting colostomy is needed, and it can often be accomplished through a single incision. Readily mobile transverse or sigmoid colostomy is preferred. As a general rule, the loop colostomy is fashioned from the most distal site along the bowel.
FIGURE 43.22. End colostomy. Technique for creating a bowel stoma that is elevated from the skin surface. This everted stoma is developed by excising a 3-cm circumferential segment of abdominal wall (A), anchoring the skin margin with the adjacent wall of the exteriorized bowel (B), and approximating the mucosal edge of the bowel to the skin (C). The cross-sectional view demonstrates how the bowel wall is anchored to the skin margin to prevent retraction (D).

that can be effectively used. Factors to consider are that the transverse colon is generally outside of the previous surgical or radiation field and the transverse colon has a lower bacterial count than the more distal colon. Alternatively, use of the sigmoid preserves a greater length of intact bowel. The traditional loop colostomy is described for illustrative purposes and uses the transverse colon with the stoma created in the left upper quadrant.

In comparison to an end colostomy, a larger aperture is required to bring two full segments of colon and intervening mesentery through the abdominal wall. A stoma site is selected overlying the rectus muscle, which avoids skin folds, surgical scars, and the umbilicus. A transverse incision is carried down through the anterior rectus fascia. Two evenly spaced, perpendicular fascial incisions can be used to increase the diameter of this aperture. The rectus muscle fibers are bluntly separated, and the posterior rectus sheath and peritoneum are incised in a manner similar to that of the anterior fascia. The opening is manually dilated and should easily admit four fingers without stricture.

The transverse colon is identified by the presence of teniae and the omental attachment. Once isolated, the bowel is lowered in a hand-over-hand fashion until the most distal yet readily mobile segment is brought through the abdominal wall. Lifting the loop is simplified by using a half-inch diameter Penrose drain passed under the intestine. A bridge device is also passed through the adjacent mesenteric window and positioned onto the skin, thereby supporting the bowel loop above the skin surface. Fascial supporting sutures are generally not necessary as the normal healing process scars the stoma into position. Any extra length of the abdominal incision is closed. The stoma is matured by a sharp longitudinal incision through the teniae that is extended to within 1.0 cm of the skin edge at both ends. The stoma edges are everted and secured with interrupted skin to full-thickness bowel sutures using 3-0 delayed absorbable material (Fig. 43.23).

The traditional Hollister bridge frequently precludes a secure appliance fit. A number of various supporting devices have been used effectively. We prefer a supporting bridge fashioned from a 20-French thoracostomy tube. A segment of about 20 cm length is cut and passed through the mesenteric window underneath the bowel. The ends are brought together over the bowel and sutured together to form a loop. This method requires no skin sutures, does not interfere with application of
the collecting bag, and permits secure adherence between the stomach wafer and skin. After adequate healing (10 to 14 days), the bridge is easily removed by cutting the suture to open the loop and withdraw the tube.

Variations of the loop colostomy include the double-barrel colostomy, in which the bowel is transected and both stomas are matured. An end colostomy with mucous fistula is used in the setting of distal obstruction, because the decompression provided by the mucous fistula avoids a closed loop obstruction. When the mucous fistula is placed immediately adjacent to the end colostomy, it is known as an end loop or terminal loop colostomy.

### GASTRIC PROCEDURE

#### Open Gastrostomy

A gastrostomy tube avoids prolonged nasogastric intubation when long-term gastric decompression is needed. This access route can also be used for enteral hydration, nutrition, and medication administration in patients who have an intact intestinal tract. Gastrostomy is avoided in obtunded patients and those with massive ascites, esophageal varices, coagulopathy, or extensive tumor that precludes tension-free placement. Other potential gastrostomy complications include bleeding balloon tension against the undersurface of the abdominal wall, which can lead to intraperitoneal leakage of gastric content with resultant abscess and/or peritonitis. Surgical exploration is necessary if the leak cannot be corrected by increasing balloon tension against the undersurface of the abdominal wall. Other potential gastrostomy complications include bleeding, tube malfunction, skin irritation, infection, and migration through the pylorus or gastroesophageal junction.

A gastrostomy tube avoids prolonged nasogastric intubation when long-term gastric decompression is needed. This access route can also be used for enteral hydration, nutrition, and medication administration in patients who have an intact intestinal tract. Gastrostomy is avoided in obtunded patients and those with massive ascites, esophageal varices, coagulopathy, or extensive tumor that precludes tension-free placement. Other potential gastrostomy complications include bleeding balloon tension against the undersurface of the abdominal wall, which can lead to intraperitoneal leakage of gastric content with resultant abscess and/or peritonitis. Surgical exploration is necessary if the leak cannot be corrected by increasing balloon tension against the undersurface of the abdominal wall. Other potential gastrostomy complications include bleeding, tube malfunction, skin irritation, infection, and migration through the pylorus or gastroesophageal junction.

#### Open Gastrostomy

A gastrostomy tube avoids prolonged nasogastric intubation when long-term gastric decompression is needed. This access route can also be used for enteral hydration, nutrition, and medication administration in patients who have an intact intestinal tract. Gastrostomy is avoided in obtunded patients and those with massive ascites, esophageal varices, coagulopathy, or extensive tumor that precludes tension-free placement. Other potential gastrostomy complications include bleeding balloon tension against the undersurface of the abdominal wall, which can lead to intraperitoneal leakage of gastric content with resultant abscess and/or peritonitis. Surgical exploration is necessary if the leak cannot be corrected by increasing balloon tension against the undersurface of the abdominal wall. Other potential gastrostomy complications include bleeding, tube malfunction, skin irritation, infection, and migration through the pylorus or gastroesophageal junction.

#### Open Gastrostomy

A gastrostomy tube avoids prolonged nasogastric intubation when long-term gastric decompression is needed. This access route can also be used for enteral hydration, nutrition, and medication administration in patients who have an intact intestinal tract. Gastrostomy is avoided in obtunded patients and those with massive ascites, esophageal varices, coagulopathy, or extensive tumor that precludes tension-free placement. Other potential gastrostomy complications include bleeding balloon tension against the undersurface of the abdominal wall, which can lead to intraperitoneal leakage of gastric content with resultant abscess and/or peritonitis. Surgical exploration is necessary if the leak cannot be corrected by increasing balloon tension against the undersurface of the abdominal wall. Other potential gastrostomy complications include bleeding, tube malfunction, skin irritation, infection, and migration through the pylorus or gastroesophageal junction.

#### Open Gastrostomy

A gastrostomy tube avoids prolonged nasogastric intubation when long-term gastric decompression is needed. This access route can also be used for enteral hydration, nutrition, and medication administration in patients who have an intact intestinal tract. Gastrostomy is avoided in obtunded patients and those with massive ascites, esophageal varices, coagulopathy, or extensive tumor that precludes tension-free placement. Other potential gastrostomy complications include bleeding balloon tension against the undersurface of the abdominal wall, which can lead to intraperitoneal leakage of gastric content with resultant abscess and/or peritonitis. Surgical exploration is necessary if the leak cannot be corrected by increasing balloon tension against the undersurface of the abdominal wall. Other potential gastrostomy complications include bleeding, tube malfunction, skin irritation, infection, and migration through the pylorus or gastroesophageal junction.

#### Open Gastrostomy

A gastrostomy tube avoids prolonged nasogastric intubation when long-term gastric decompression is needed. This access route can also be used for enteral hydration, nutrition, and medication administration in patients who have an intact intestinal tract. Gastrostomy is avoided in obtunded patients and those with massive ascites, esophageal varices, coagulopathy, or extensive tumor that precludes tension-free placement. Other potential gastrostomy complications include bleeding balloon tension against the undersurface of the abdominal wall, which can lead to intraperitoneal leakage of gastric content with resultant abscess and/or peritonitis. Surgical exploration is necessary if the leak cannot be corrected by increasing balloon tension against the undersurface of the abdominal wall. Other potential gastrostomy complications include bleeding, tube malfunction, skin irritation, infection, and migration through the pylorus or gastroesophageal junction.
Endoscopic Gastric Procedures

Percutaneous procedures are currently available for patients in need of gastrostomy who are not undergoing laparotomy. Percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG) and percutaneous endoscopic jejunostomy (PEJ) are performed under local anesthesia with intravenous sedation. The PEG tube is placed via endoscopic gastric insufflation and transillumination to guide percutaneous needle and guide wire placement through the abdominal wall. An introducer is passed transcutaneously into the stomach over the guide wire. The introducer is withdrawn, leaving a sheath through which the gastrostomy tube is inserted. As the sheath is peeled away, traction on the tube draws the flange and stomach wall into direct contact with the abdominal wall. Another external flange or fixation suture is used to secure the apparatus into position. Using similar endoscopic techniques, a jejunostomy tube can be guided through the pylorus and duodenum, into the jejunum.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- The gynecologic surgeon should have a basic understanding of the anatomy and physiology of the intestinal tract and should possess the fundamental skills necessary to recognize and correct common conditions affecting the digestive system.
- Peritoneal irritation from any source can be elicited by manipulation of the pelvic organs, such that manual manipulation of the cervix can create an intensely painful response (cervical motion tenderness) in women with either PID or appendicitis.
- Medical management is the cornerstone of treatment for inflammatory bowel disease (Crohn’s disease and ulcerative colitis), as intestinal surgery is reserved for obstruction, perforation, fistula, or hemorrhage. Elective gynecologic surgery is best avoided in patients with Crohn’s disease or ulcerative colitis because of the high risk of intestinal complications.
- In previously irradiated patients, elective surgical procedures within the radiation field should not be attempted.
- The objectives of prophylactic bowel prep are to reduce enteric volume and bacterial load. The literature, however, is inconclusive regarding the effectiveness of prophylactic bowel prep in reducing infectious complications and facilitating anastomotic healing.
- Prior gynecologic surgery is the most frequently noted pre-disposing factor to intra-peritoneal adhesions, with other risk factors being trauma, irradiation, infection, bleeding, and chemical irritants. An estimated 85% of all small bowel obstructions are secondary to intra-peritoneal adhesions, malignancies, or hernias, with the most common etiology being adhesions.
- The vast majority of large bowel obstructions are caused by malignancies or inflammatory conditions. In the setting of a large bowel obstruction, the risk of perforation increases significantly as the cecum is dilated beyond 10 to 12 cm. Barium enema should not be performed in the setting of acute colonic obstruction or suspected perforation to avoid barium peritonitis.
- If intestinal perforation occurs during introduction of a laparoscopic needle or trocar, it is prudent to leave the instrument in position to guide identification of the affected anatomy. Thermal injury from electrocautery or laser results in a progressive zone of tissue destruction that extends well beyond the area of thermal contact, resulting in tissue necrosis and perforation 72 to 96 hours after surgery. In contrast to sharp enterotomy, which can be repaired primarily, significant thermal injury is best corrected by resection of the affected bowel segment.
- Enterotomies are best avoided by cautious entry into the peritoneal cavity and meticulous dissection of adhesions. If an inadvertent enterotomy occurs, the affected bowel is mobilized from surrounding tissues to allow adequate exposure and a tension-free repair. Resection of an affected bowel segment may be necessary if the blood supply is compromised, if greater than 50% of the circumference is injured, or if irregular edges preclude reaproximation, or if repair would result in excessive luminal narrowing. Immediate repair of a large obstruction is necessary to prevent enterocolitis and sepsis.
bowel injury is associated with acceptably low morbidity and does not usually require a diverting colostomy. A diverting colostomy is indicated when a full-thickness colonic injury occurs in someone who has previously been irradiated, or who is profoundly malnourished, or who is unstable from shock or sepsis.

- Peritoneal drains should not be placed in the immediate vicinity of an anastomosis as this can impede healing.

- Current trends are toward much more aggressive early postoperative feeding, even in the setting of bowel resection and anastomosis. Use of the gut for nutrition is advisable whenever possible. Perioperative nutritional support is indicated in patients who have not been fed for more than 7 days before surgery, in those who are malnourished (weight loss exceeds 15% of usual weight), and in those whose expected duration of recovery is longer than 10 days.

- Therapeutic nasogastric decompression is indicated in symptomatic patients with an ileus who are perpetually nauseated, markedly distended, actively vomiting, and/or who are not responding to supportive measures. Decompression is generally continued until consistent flatus ensues and abdominal distention resolves. The typical radiographic pattern of an ileus is that of air-fluid levels in the stomach and small bowel with intermittent air throughout the entire gastrointestinal tract. In contrast to an ileus, radiographic characteristics of mechanical small bowel obstruction include proximal distended bowel loops with a paucity or absence of gas in the colon.

- Fewer than half of obstructed patients manifest the classic triad of rebound tenderness, guarding, and rigidity. If no complicating factors persist, approximately two thirds of distal intestinal fistulae are expected to heal within 6 weeks from nonoperative management. The more proximal the fistula, the greater the potential for physiologic rearrangement, and the less likely the chance of spontaneous closure. The fundamentals of conservative fistula management include correction of electrolyte abnormalities, resolution of underlying inflammatory processes, maintenance of adequate hydration, and nutritional support.

- Short bowel syndrome occurs when there is insufficient nutrient absorption to meet the body’s metabolic requirements because of extensive bowel resection or inadequate function of normal-length bowel. In general, 50% of the small bowel (300 cm on average) can be resected without long-term impairment of nutritional status, as long as there is normal function in the remainder of the intestine. For approximately 24 months after an intestinal resection, the remaining small bowel undergoes adaptation to increase the functional surface area via increasing villous height and crypt depth, and through gradual dilation and lengthening of the bowel.

- Strict adherence to the fundamental principles of anastomosis is more important to successful healing than are the specific techniques or materials used. Open anastomotic techniques (bowel lumens exposed) have gradually replaced closed techniques (lumens occluded) in most circumstances because of technical ease and acceptably low morbidity. The most important strength layer of the bowel wall is the submucosa, which must be incorporated into any anastomosis. Sixty percent of the bowel wall strength is reached by postoperative day 3 to 4, and pressure tolerated by the anastomotic site approximates 100% of that tolerated by intact bowel wall as of postoperative day 7. Clinical evidence suggests that single-layer anastomosis is equivalent to double-layer closure and may provide some advantages.

- In general, as much as 8 cm of small intestine can remain viable despite the loss of anastomotic vascular communications. It is recommended that ~10 cm of terminal ileum be removed during right colon resection because of the tenuous blood supply of the distal ileum. It is important to resect only the length of bowel necessary to adequately address the disease process. The diameter of any lumen can be increased by transecting the bowel obliquely or via linear incision along the antimesenteric border (Cheylet slit).

- Arterial perfusion can generally be preserved to any segment of the colon as long as the marginal artery of Drummond is not disrupted. The integrity of the marginal artery is protected when the mesentery is transected close to the bowel wall through the vasa recta. The marginal artery is absent at the hepatic flexure, or more commonly the splenic flexure, in 1% to 2% of the population. Colon resection near the splenic flexure should include removal of the flexure due to the arterial inconsistency in that region. The superior mesenteric artery (SMA) can be sacrificed during rectosigmoid resection, without significant compromise, because of collateral circulation from the middle and inferior rectal arteries. The colon remains viable when the close to the cecum, above the vasa recta. Subsequent to a rectosigmoid resection, morbidity is inversely related to the length of intact rectum at the time of repair.

- Preoperative consultation with an enterostomal therapist enhances surgical planning, patient education, and postoperative care. As a general guide, a line is drawn connecting the anterior-superior iliac spine to the umbilicus, and the colostomy is exteriorized through the rectus muscles at the anterior-superior iliac spine to the umbilicus, and the colostomy is exteriorized through the rectus muscles at this point along this line. The stoma is secured in an area that is easily seen and reached by the patient, and placement is avoided within skin folds, surgical scars, or the umbilicus.

- A loop colostomy is technically less difficult to create and/or to reverse than an end colostomy and can often be accomplished through a single incision. An end colostomy is more satisfactory from a long-term-care standpoint because it is generally smaller, easier to fit with an appliance, and usually more distal, resulting in formed stools. Maturation of the stoma is deferred until after the abdomen is closed.
Related Surgery


CHAPTER 44  ■ NONGYNECOLOGIC CONDITIONS ENCOUNTERED BY THE GYNECOLOGIC SURGEON

JAMES R. DOLAN AND MICHAEL D. MOEN

DEFINITIONS

Air contrast barium enema—Sometimes called a “double-contrast” barium enema. The colon is filled with barium, and x-ray films are taken. The barium is then allowed to empty, leaving a thin film on the internal bowel wall. The colon is filled with air, making the colonic mucosa more easily seen. This is especially useful for diagnosis of polyps and inflammatory bowel disease.

Carcinomembryonic antigen (CEA)—A glycoprotein tumor marker that is elevated in the serum of many patients with colorectal cancer. It may also be elevated in patients with lung cancer. It is often elevated in patients who smoke cigarettes.

Hartmann procedure—The colon is divided or resected and an end colostomy is brought up. The distal colonic stump is stapled or sewn closed and left as is in the pelvis.

Methyl methacrylate—Cement used to anchor orthopedic screws or implants to bony structures. Excess cement may form a hard mass adjacent to the site of application, and this new mass may create a diagnostic dilemma.

Protrusio acetabuli—Inward protrusion of the femoral head through the inner wall of the acetabulum. This may be palpated as a hard pelvic wall mass. This condition can occur with rheumatoid arthritis, osteomalacia, Marfan syndrome, and other conditions.

Women of all ages look to their gynecologist to diagnose and treat problems that arise within the pelvis. Because the pelvis contains multiple organ systems, it is possible the gynecologic surgeon will unexpectedly encounter a nongynecologic condition. It is extremely important, therefore, that the gynecologic surgeon be aware of the various conditions that may be present in the pelvis and search for them preoperatively.

Preoperative evaluation should include lower gastrointestinal (GI) radiologic studies. The gynecologic surgeon should be aware that radiologic studies of the colon can be in error from 10% of the time in cooperative and well-prepared patients to as often as 50% in uncooperative or improperly prepared patients. A large number of colon lesions are missed on radiologic examination because they are not reliable in symptomatic patients. Approximately 50% of patients with documented colorectal cancer have a negative fecal hemoccult test. This is consistent with the intermittent bleeding patterns of these tumors and, if negative, may give the physician a false sense of security.

Preoperative evaluation should include lower gastrointestinal radiologic studies and possibly a colonoscopic examination, especially in patients with gastrointestinal symptoms. The gynecologic surgeon should be aware that radiologic studies of the colon are not reliable in symptomatic patients, but this may not be the true situation. Line drawings and representative computed tomography scanning (CT scans) depict various intestinal disorders that may seem to be an inflammatory or neoplastic disorder of the tube or ovary or both, but this may not be the true situation.

Preoperative evaluation should include lower gastrointestinal radiologic studies and possibly a colonoscopic examination, especially in patients with gastrointestinal symptoms. The gynecologic surgeon should be aware that radiologic studies of the colon are not reliable in symptomatic patients, but this may not be the true situation. Line drawings and representative computed tomography scanning (CT scans) depict various intestinal disorders that may seem to be an inflammatory or neoplastic disorder of the tube or ovary or both, but this may not be the true situation.

Preoperative evaluation should include lower gastrointestinal radiologic studies and possibly a colonoscopic examination, especially in patients with gastrointestinal symptoms. The gynecologic surgeon should be aware that radiologic studies of the colon are not reliable in symptomatic patients, but this may not be the true situation. Line drawings and representative computed tomography scanning (CT scans) depict various intestinal disorders that may seem to be an inflammatory or neoplastic disorder of the tube or ovary or both, but this may not be the true situation.

Even if the air-contrast barium enema is performed, a conscientious gynecologist should carefully and critically review the films with the radiologist before surgery is undertaken.

To ensure that the colon is properly prepared, the patient should be given instructions on how to clean the colon before the radiologic studies. On the day before the test, a regular breakfast is advised, but only clear liquids for lunch and dinner. Although cathartics and cleansing enemas are acceptable, the colon is best prepared by using an isotonic lavage solution (such as GoLYTELY or Colyte), which washes the colon clean.
Related Surgery

A

FIGURE 44.1. Appendiceal abscess. A: On bimanual examination, this abscess is felt to be slightly higher in the pelvis but can be mistaken for an adnexal condition. B: Computed tomography (CT) image shows inhomogeneous abscess (arrows) in the right side of the pelvis. Hemoclip artifact is also present. (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)

In addition to being an invaluable aid in the detection of colon cancer and diverticulitis, the barium enema may detect appendicitis or an appendiceal abscess. Additionally, CT studies may be of tremendous benefit in delineating small bowel, colon, cecal, or appendiceal pathology. Figures 44.6 through 44.9 are examples of colonic pathology diagnosed by barium enema and CT studies.

Laparoscopy can be used to distinguish gynecologic disease and ileitis from appendicitis. If the diagnosis of appendicitis is made, laparoscopic appendectomy using ligatures or stapling devices can be performed.

Although the value of digital rectal examination and sigmoidoscopy in detecting lesions of the rectum and sigmoid cannot be overemphasized, the changing distribution of colon cancer makes colonoscopy more important in the diagnostic workup. Cohn and Nance have noted that the incidence of left-sided colon and rectal cancer in their 1950–1954 series was 78.6%, and right-sided colon and rectal cancer was 21.4%. In their 1975–1979 series, the incidence of left colon and rectal cancer had dropped to 68.4%, and the incidence of right-sided colon cancers had increased to 31.6%. McCallion and colleagues reported an increase in proximal colon cancers from 23.3% in 1970 to 36.7% between 1990 and 1997. If symptoms suggest colon pathology, even if the barium enema is reported normal, colonoscopy is indicated.

Unusual small bowel lesions may present as a pelvic mass; thus, small-bowel barium-contrast radiologic studies and CT scans often are helpful. CT scans are particularly useful in delineating mesenteric cysts (Fig. 44.10), volvulus of the small bowel, small bowel intussusception (Fig. 44.11), and Crohn’s disease of the ileum (Fig. 44.12), any one of which may prolapse into the pelvis and be mistaken for gynecologic pathology. Gastrointestinal stromal tumors (previously termed leiomyomas or
FIGURE 44.2. Cecal carcinoma. A: A cecal carcinoma en-croaching on the right adnexa can be mistaken for an ad-nexal condition. B: CT image shows a large neoplasm (ar-rows) extending from the cecum. C: CT image through the opacified urinary bladder shows invasions by the cecal neo-plasm (arrows). (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)
leiomiosarcomas) may occur in the small bowel and present as a solid pelvic mass, which easily could be mistaken for a pedunculated uterine leiomyoma. These tumors appear as solid masses adjacent to normal bowel on CT scan.

Urologic Tumors

Urinary conditions that occur concomitant with or mimicking gynecologic disease include pelvic kidney, carcinoma of the distal ureter, tumors of the bladder wall, hemangopericytoma posterior to the bladder, and bladder cancers (Fig. 44.13). Figure 44.14 is a CT scan of a large urachal cyst. A routine urinalysis that reveals hematuria should alert the gynecologist to the possibility of urinary tract disease. A urine culture should be obtained; if an infection is present, the hematuria should clear after a course of antibiotic therapy. For those patients without infection or with persistent hematuria following antibiotic therapy, a cystoscopy and radiologic imaging of the upper urinary tract (intravenous pyelogram, CT scan, or renal ultrasound) are warranted.

A CT scan of the urinary tract before laparotomy in a patient with a pelvic mass may be helpful in diagnosing nongynecologic conditions. It establishes the function of the kidneys and determines the presence of a pelvic kidney or a partially obstructed distal ureter. When performing a bimanual examination, bear in mind that a large tumor of the distal ureter may be confused with an intraligamentous leiomyoma. Bladder tumors or bladder stones should be palpable anterior to the cervix and uterine fundus, and will not move with the uterus, as does an anterior uterine fibroid. Cystoscopy and retrograde pyelography are indicated in patients in whom suspicion of urinary tract disease is high and in patients who are allergic to the intravenous contrast media used for excretory urography and CT studies.

Retroperitoneal Tumors

Although gastrointestinal tract disease is the most frequent pathology mistaken for gynecologic disease, retroperitoneal
FIGURE 44.4. Sigmoid diverticulitis with abscess. A: This is easily confused with a left adnexal pathologic condition. B: CT image low in pelvis shows sigmoid diverticula (arrow) with infiltration of adjacent fat. C: CT image at a higher level shows sigmoid diverticula (arrow) and a small sinus tract (straight arrow) leading to an abscess (A), which contains fluid and gas. The abscess is inseparable from the uterus (U). B, bladder; R, rectum. (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, Ill.)
FIGURE 44.5. Rectosigmoid carcinoma. A: This tumor may encroach on the left adnexa and be mistaken for gynecologic disease. B: CT image shows a large sigmoid carcinoma (arrow) containing a necrotic tumor and gas centrally. (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)

FIGURE 44.6. Infected mucocele of the appendix. CT image shows a mucocele (arrow), which has a thin rim of calcification and indent the cecum (C). (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)
tumors occur often enough within the pelvis that the gynecologic surgeon must keep such tumors in mind, especially when dealing with vague or unusual pelvic symptoms and physical findings. Beck reported on seven collected series of retroperitoneal tumors and noted that the major symptoms include abdominal pain, abdominal mass or swelling, and weight loss or anorexia, or both. The symptoms depend on the location of the tumor in the retroperitoneal space. Retroperitoneal tumors in the pelvis may become manifest earlier than those in the abdomen because the bony confines of the pelvis cause pressure on adjacent organs earlier than in the upper abdomen. Sarcomas of the pelvic or buttocks muscles or bone will usually present with hip pain and leg edema.

Abnormal findings noted on an excretory urogram and on upper and lower gastrointestinal x-ray studies may be secondary to extrinsic involvement rather than intrinsic pathology. The most reliable tools for diagnosing retroperitoneal tumors are CT scanning and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).

FIGURE 44.7. Appendicitis with pouch of Douglas abscess. CT image shows a large abscess (A) between the rectum (R) and the bladder (B). (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)

FIGURE 44.8. Non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma of the terminal ileum. A: Barium enema shows irregular narrowing of the terminal ileum (arrows) and displacement of adjacent bowel loops. B: CT image shows thickening of the wall of the terminal ileum (arrows). (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)
FIGURE 44.9. Ulcerative colitis with sigmoid carcinoma. CT image shows circumferential sigmoid tumor (arrows), which indents the bladder (B). (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)

FIGURE 44.10. Mesenteric cyst (lymphangioma). CT image shows the water density cyst (C), which is indented by the psoas muscle (M). (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)

FIGURE 44.11. Small bowel polyp with ileoileal intussusception. CT image shows intussusceptum (M) with associated mesenteric fat (arrow). The intussusceptum is encircled by contrast material within the intussusceptions. (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)
FIGURE 44.12. Crohn’s disease with pelvic abscess. CT image shows an inhomogeneous lesion (arrows) displacing the opacified intestine. This abscess cannot be differentiated from a phlegmon. (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)

FIGURE 44.13. Urinary bladder carcinoma. Intravenous urogram shows inferior displacement of the bladder because of a cystocele. The bladder tumor produces a lobulated filling defect (arrows). (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)

FIGURE 44.14. CT image of a large midline mass in a 25-year-old patient that on final pathology was a necrotic benign urachal cyst. (Courtesy of J. Dolan, Park Ridge, IL.)
FIGURE 44.15. Necrotic retroperitoneal teratoma. CT image shows a large septate mass (M), which contains fluid and gas. Opacified intestine is draped around the lesion. (Courtesy of R. Benjoya, Libertyville, IL.)

Figures 44.15 through 44.17 demonstrate CT and MRI images of retroperitoneal pathology.

If the tumor is a lymphoma, a careful history may elicit reports of fever, night sweats, pruritus, and weight loss. On physical examination, patients with a lymphoma may have skin nodules, enlarged lymph nodes, liver and spleen enlargement, and areas of joint or bone tenderness. On pelvic examination, large external iliac lymph nodes may be mistaken for an adnexal mass, but careful examination will often reveal that these firm, smooth masses bulge outward from the pelvic sidewall, where they are firmly fixed and the uterus remains viable. There is no nodular tumor or inflammatory induration in the cul-de-sac. Figure 44.18 illustrates a CT image of a patient with an ileocecal lymphoma and mesenteric adenopathy. A biopsy of a peripheral lymph node or skin nodule may establish the diagnosis of lymphoma and allow enough tissue for proper characterization of the correct subtype. Additionally, a core needle biopsy of the bone marrow can be helpful as a staging procedure for the lymphoma. Staging and response to therapy of lymphomas is currently performed with positron emission tomography scans and CT.

There are rare neurogenic tumors that can arise in the pelvis in addition to very rare anterior meningoceles and arachnoid cysts (Figs. 44.19 and 44.20). The most common are those that arise from the nerve sheath of the obturator or sacral nerve complex, which are the neurofibromas (often associated with von Recklinghausen disease) and the neurilemmomas. Tumors may develop from the sympathetic nervous system of the pelvis and include ganglioneuroma, sympathicoblastoma, and neuroblastoma. As with the lymphomas noted above, a firmly fixed mass bulging outward from the pelvic sidewall is often palpable on pelvic examination.
Soft-tissue sarcomas may occur anywhere in the retroperitoneal space. According to Adam and associates, these tumors are diagnosed most easily by CT scan, but ultrasonography, arteriography, and venography may be useful. Figure 44.21 demonstrates an intravenous urogram of a large pelvic neurofibroma with sarcomatous degeneration. Figure 44.22 demonstrates a CT scan of a large neurofibrosarcoma in the right sciatic notch in a 25-year-old patient with von Recklinghausen disease.

Lewis and colleagues reported on 500 patients with retroperitoneal sarcomas and found the most common were liposarcomas and leiomyosarcomas. Survival was inversely related to tumor size, and complete surgical resection with a tumor-free margin offered the best survival.

Orthopedic Disorders

Disorders that may arise from the bony pelvis include those that are congenital, iatrogenic, metabolic, or septic, as well as fractures and tumors. The congenital or developmental abnormalities include anterior sacral meningocele (discussed above), spondylolisthesis, and sacrococcygeal teratomas. Spondylolisthesis is a slow, forward displacement of the lumbar spine over
the sacrum. The degree of slip usually is not severe enough to cause significant impairment. If the entire fifth lumbar vertebra is displaced forward of the sacrum (spondylolisthesis), severe narrowing of the anteroposterior diameter of the pelvis and displacement of the pelvic viscera are noted. Pelvic examination is significantly abnormal. A pelvic radiograph or CT defines the problem.

Sacrococcygeal teratomas usually are diagnosed by age 2 or 3, but occasionally the dermoid forms are not discovered until early adulthood. These anomalies are four times more common in women, and malignant forms are more common in adults. Such lesions usually can be defined by ultrasonography and CT (Fig. 44.23).

Total hip arthroplasty has become commonplace since it was introduced in the 1960s. In some earlier cases, the inner wall of the acetabulum was penetrated, allowing the cement (methyl methacrylate) to flow into the pelvis to improve fixation. The cement produces a bony, hard mass fixed to the pelvic wall that varies in size, shape, and convolution. If such a mass is encountered on pelvic examination, it may well represent a challenging diagnostic problem. Patients with prior total hip arthroplasty may develop an intrapelvic protrusion of the acetabular cup caused by trauma or weakness of the inner wall. This protrusion may be seen as a mass fixed to the pelvic sidewall, causing confusion and difficulty with diagnosis. Only a high degree of suspicion can alert the examining gynecologist that the hard, nodular fixed pelvic mass is, indeed, a cementing substance that should not be disturbed.

Certain metabolic disorders of the skeletal system can cause gradual development of pelvic deformities that may be confusing on pelvic examination. With bone deficiency, sometimes there is inward protrusion of the femoral head through the inner acetabular wall (protrusio acetabuli). Other causes of protrusio acetabuli include Marfan syndrome, Paget disease of the bone, rheumatoid arthritis, and osteomalacia.

Fungal, parasitic, and pyogenic affections of the bony pelvis can cause the development of soft tissue masses that may be difficult to diagnose. Most of these cases present as acute, painful infectious processes, but some develop as subacute or chronic pyogenic infections. Pelvic examination may cause severe
discomfort and produce findings suggestive of a deep fullness or masses on either pelvic sidewall. Sometimes such infections present as a presacral abscess. There usually is an associated tenderness over the sacroiliac joints and both buttocks.

A rather common cause of intrapelvic distortion is a residual bony deformity resulting from a pelvic fracture. These are often the result of an automobile accident or other major trauma. Radiologic examination of the pelvis reveals the cause of the unusual findings.

Primary bone tumors that involve the pelvis are quite rare except for those on the anterior sacrum. The sacrum is the primary site of more than 50% of chordomas (malignant) and 6% of giant cell tumors (benign). These tumors usually may be discovered on pelvic or rectal examination. Urinary frequency and constipation are common presenting symptoms. Radiographic studies of the pelvis usually are sufficient for diagnosis, and a technetium 99 bone scan may demonstrate bone destruction not apparent on the radiographic films. MRI gives far better detail to delineate bone and nerve involvement.

FIGURE 44.21. Neurofibromatosis with pelvic sarcoma. Intravenous urogram shows the distal right ureter displaced by a soft-tissue mass within the pelvis. (There is a ventriculoperitoneal shunt extending to the right upper quadrant.) (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)

Vascular Considerations

Two significant vascular lesions of the pelvis are iliac aneurysms and arteriovenous fistulas. Isolated iliac aneurysms are rare, but many patients with abdominal aortic aneurysms have associated iliac aneurysms. They are more common on the common iliac and hypogastric arteries and very rare on the external iliac artery. Most iliac aneurysms remain asymptomatic until rupture unless they impinge on adjacent structures. Diagnosis of iliac artery aneurysms is difficult, but ultrasonography and CT scanning occasionally detect these vascular conditions. Figure 44.24A shows a barium enema with extrinsic pressure on the colon by the iliac aneurysm. Figure 44.24B demonstrates an iliac arterial aneurysm on CT scan. Contrast angiography is necessary to formulate the therapeutic plan.

Pelvic arteriography is a valuable part of preoperative evaluation of unusual pelvic tumors or findings. Although pelvic arteriography is not often necessary, it helps to delineate a highly vascular tumor. Hasty exploration without knowledge of the source of the blood supply of the tumor could lead to uncontrollable hemorrhage.

Aneurysms that are symptomatic because of local factors or because of distal emboli should be carefully evaluated. Growing aneurysms should almost always be resected. Internal iliac aneurysms are usually not resected but are treated by simple ligation.

Metastatic Lesions to the Pelvis

The ovary is a frequent recipient of metastases from numerous primary sites. In comparison with the ovary, solitary extragenital metastases to the fallopian tubes or uterus are rare. Although statistics vary, probably 5% to 10% of all ovarian tumors are metastatic in origin. The most common metastases to the ovary are from the colon, stomach, breast, and the uterus.
FIGURE 44.23. Presacral teratoma. CT image shows a soft tissue mass (M), which deforms the sacrum and displaces the rectum (R) anteriorly. (Courtesy of K. Baliga, Rockford, IL.)

FIGURE 44.24. Iliac artery aneurysm. A: Barium enema shows extrinsic filling defect (arrows) of the rectosigmoid. B: CT image shows an iliac artery aneurysm (A), which contains a clot. Adjacent bowel is displaced. (Courtesy of T. Demos, Maywood, IL.)
The functional ovary seems particularly prone to extragenital metastatic disease. The possibility of an extragenital primary cancer with metastases to one or both ovaries should always be considered and can usually be ruled out by a careful preoperative history, physical examination, and appropriate imaging. When the ovarian metastases are from the gastrointestinal tract, they are almost always bilateral. When the ovarian metastases are from gastrointestinal cancer, both ovaries usually become symmetrically enlarged while retaining their shape and capsular integrity.

**Nonsurgical Acute Abdomen**

There are a number of nonsurgical causes of acute abdominal pain that may be mistaken for a gynecologic problem. Sickle cell anemia is one of these conditions. Such patients may have attacks of bone and joint pain, but also may suffer abdominal pain. The major disabilities suffered by patients with sickle cell anemia are related to painful vasoocclusive crises and occlusion of the microvasculature by the sickling phenomenon. Precipitating factors are infection, hypoxia, dehydration, and acidosis. A careful history and laboratory testing for sickle cells and hemoglobin S usually establish the diagnosis. Recurrent attacks of abdominal pain occur with acute porphyria. This disease is an autosomal dominant condition and is most common in women in the third and fourth decades of life. Abdominal tenderness is much less than would be expected, considering the severity of pain. Activation of the disease is related to factors such as medications, infections, low-calorie diets, and steroid hormones. Fever and leukocytosis may be present, and abdominal radiologic studies show distended loops of bowel. Diagnosis is made by a history of similar attacks and by the quantitative detection of excessive porphobilinogen and aminolevulinate in a 24-hour urine collection.

Other nonsurgical causes of abdominal pain include familial Mediterranean fever, lower-lobe pneumonia, rectus sheath hematomata (frequently preceded by a paroxysm of coughing), pseudonephritis, and acute viral gastroenteritis.

**PREOPERATIVE PREPARATION**

Preparation of the patient for pelvic surgery begins with the establishment of an accurate diagnosis as possible. Because an absolute diagnosis is not always possible, the extent of the surgery is difficult and sometimes impossible to determine. Thus, when major pelvic surgery is anticipated, it is imperative that the patient (and often the family) be as well informed as possible. If the patient understands that bowel or bladder resection may be needed, requiring a colostomy, ileostomy, or urinary conduit, she will be much better prepared to cope with the surgical complications. Preoperative consultation with other surgical subspecialists may be necessary. If consultation is likely, it is very appropriate for the patient to meet these specialists before the contemplated surgery.

**Preoperative Bowel Preparation**

If there is a possibility that a portion of the colon will be opened or resected, bowel preparation should be carried out. We prefer a combined mechanical and antibiotic bowel preparation. The most commonly used bowel prep is an isotonic lavage solution such as GoLYTELY or Colyte. The patient may have a light lunch of a high-protein, low-residue diet and clear liquid dinner the day before surgery. To achieve sufficient cleansing of the colon, approximately 4 L of solution must be ingested over a 4-hour period. We usually have the patient begin the Colyte at around noon the day before surgery and ask that they drink 8 to 16 ounces every 10 to 15 minutes. Most surgeons also use a combination of oral antibiotics, erythromycin base (1 g) and neomycin (1 g) at 1 a.m., 2 a.m., and 11 a.m. the day before the operation. Additionally, broad-spectrum intravenous antibiotics are given preoperatively and may be continued after surgery if there is gross contamination or if an infectious process is encountered.

**Additional Preoperative Preparation**

If the patient is nutritionally depleted because of extrinsic or intrinsic bowel obstruction or dysfuction, preoperative nutritional support is indicated, usually by instituting total parenteral nutrition. Dehydrated patients undergoing bowel preparation should be given intravenous fluids and appropriate electrolytes for 16 to 24 hours before major pelvic surgery. This is particularly important in the older patient. Prior bleeding problems must be investigated. Patients on broad-spectrum antibiotics and those with multiple or prolonged bowel prep for imaging studies, colonoscopy, or surgery may have a prolonged prothrombin time secondary to depressed vitamin K absorption. Such patients usually respond well to vitamin K in doses of 10 mg/day for 2 days preoperatively. Some medications, such as aspirin and coumarin, may be forgotten by the patient, and the physician should ask specifically about recent use of these medications.

Patients receiving chronic corticosteroids will need additional corticosteroids during surgery. Postoperatively, the corticosteroids are tapered down over 4 to 5 days to their usual maintenance dose.

Patients with cardiopulmonary problems should have maximum pulmonary preparation. Smoking should be stopped several days before surgery. If possible, pulmonary toilet with chest physiotherapy and incentive spirometry can begin when preoperative workup takes place. Preoperative consultation with anesthesiologists, pulmonologists, and cardiologists may be appropriate for the elderly patient and patients with multiple concomitant severe medical problems.

**INTRAOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF NONGYNECOLOGIC PELVIC DISORDERS**

After a thorough history and physical examination and a meticulous diagnostic laboratory workup, most nongynecologic conditions should have been diagnosed, or at least highly suspected, before laparotomy. However, situations may still arise that are outside the purview of the gynecologic surgeon, and intraoperative consultation is indicated.

Once the abdomen has been opened, a thorough evaluation of the upper abdomen and the pelvis is necessary. If the upper abdomen is normal, the upper abdominal contents should be packed away with laparotomy pads and the patient placed in...
Related Surgery

Trendelenburg position. Next, the pelvic findings are assessed and the problem analyzed, with the tissues being put in as near an anatomically normal position as possible. If dense adhesions are present, these should be lysed by sharp dissection. If the disease involves the uterus or fallopian tubes and ovaries with extension into the surrounding organs, the appropriate surgery to remove the diseased organs should be undertaken. Depending on the pathology, this may be within the gynecologist’s expertise; if not, another surgical specialist should be consulted.

If the findings are not gynecologic in nature, then a determination of the problem is essential. The most common nongynecologic condition encountered is disease of the gastrointestinal tract, including colon cancer and a diverticular abscess. If the colon and small bowel are normal, the gynecologic surgeon must consider retroperitoneal tumors or pathology of the distal ureter or urinary bladder. If the patient has had an adequate bowel preparation and has been apprised of the various possibilities (i.e., colostomy, bowel resection, urinary diversion, excessive blood loss, and possibly prolonged hospital stay), then definitive surgery should be carried out. If these precautions have not been taken preoperatively, the abdomen should be closed; the surgeon must explain to the patient and family the diagnosis and plans for further management, including consultation and referral.

Gastrointestinal Disease

Appendicitis

Appendicitis frequently involves gynecologic conditions in the differential diagnosis. It is discussed in Chapter 42.

Diverticulitis

The usual therapy for diverticulitis is medical. Most patients with acute diverticulitis should be hospitalized for bowel rest, intravenous fluids, and broad-spectrum antibiotics. Repeated attacks of diverticulitis in the same area generally require surgical resection. Severe attacks with acute peritoneal signs, fistula formation, suspected abscess, or perforation require intravenous antibiotics directed against Gram-negative anaerobic bacteria, followed by surgical drainage or resection.

In operating on a patient for what was presumed to be recurring attacks of pelvic inflammatory disease or an ovarian mass, the gynecologist may find a portion of the rectosigmoid colon involved with diverticulitis. If the colon has been preoperatively prepared and cleansed, the patient may undergo elective resection of the involved segment of colon and a primary anastomosis with a very low operative risk. On the other hand, if there is acute inflammation with evidence of perforation, fistula, obstruction, or bleeding, the diseased colon must be mobilized and resected. The proximal colon is brought out as an end colostomy, and the distal rectal segment is closed (Hartmann procedure). The colon may be reanastomosed 2 to 3 months after recovery.

Cancer of the Colon and Rectum

Cancer of the colon is predominantly a disease of older people, but it can occur at any age. It is important to remember that the incidence of right-sided colon cancer is steadily increasing. Radical surgical removal of the primary lesion is the only acceptable curative therapy. If a colon cancer is found unexpectedly in the bowel, has had both mechanical and antibiotic preparation, an appropriate resection should be carried out by a surgeon experienced in colorectal surgery. A carcinoembryonic (CEA) blood sample should be obtained. This is helpful when follow-up CEA levels are obtained. If the patient has not had suitable bowel preparation, or if a surgeon experienced in colorectal surgery is not available, the first (‘‘furrowing’’) closed and definitive surgery performed at a later date. The resection includes the entire segment of the involved portion of the colon and its associated lymphovascular pedicle up to the level of its takeoff from the aorta for left colon lesions or to the mesenteric vessels for right colon lesions. Primary resection and anastomosis of right colon lesions may be carried out even in the absence of prior bowel preparation with a very low incidence of postoperative infection.

Crohn’s Disease

Crohn’s disease (regional enteritis) is a chronic inflammatory disorder of the gastrointestinal tract of unknown cause. Because it usually involves the terminal ileum and proximal colon, it may easily be mistaken by history and pelvic examination as an inflammatory process of the appendix, fallopian tube, or ovary. The most common symptom is right lower quadrant pain that usually is associated with fever, diarrhea without blood, weight loss, fatigability, and a tender, palpable abdominal mass. The disease most commonly has its onset in the young, but there appears to be an increased incidence in people after age 60. The complications of the disease are often local, resulting from intestinal inflammation and involvement of adjacent viscera. Intestinal obstruction, fistula formation, right ureteral obstruction and hydro nephrosis, malabsorption, anorexia, and intestinal perforation with abscess formation are all possible manifestations and complications of this disease. Endoscopic examination of the colon and radiologic studies of the bowel are most important in establishing the diagnosis of inflammatory bowel disease. At laparotomy, the finding of thickened mesentery with growth of mesenteric fat (“fat wrapping”) around the circumference of leathery fibrotic bowel is almost always pathognomonic of Crohn’s disease. Intraoperative management of incidentally discovered Crohn’s disease depends on the indication for operation and the experience of the surgeon. Patients explored for pelvic inflammatory disease who are found to have perforated Crohn’s disease need resection, possibly including an ileostomy. Like complicated diverticular disease, these resections can be quite challenging and hazardous for the occasional surgeon. Patients explored for a mass and found to have diseased terminal ileum without perforation may be resected in some cases (if there is evidence of proximal obstruction), or the patient may be closed and further examinations carried out. Most patients with small-bowel disease can have endoscopic biopsies to confirm the diagnosis and then be managed medically. Surgery is held in reserve until complications (stricture, obstruction, abscess) develop. Current surgical management of Crohn’s disease involves very conservative resections, preserving bowel length to avoid short-bowel syndrome, caused by repeated resections of progressively involved bowel. Crohn’s disease is not cured surgically and recurs in more than 75% of patients with ileosacral Crohn’s disease, the most common site of the disease. Bypass procedures for obstructing Crohn’s disease are of historical interest only; current surgical treatment involves resection or structuroplasty.

Metastatic Carcinoma of the Ovaries

Metastatic carcinoma to the endometrium or fallopian tube from distant sites may occur, but this is relatively rare and does not present a surgical dilemma to the gynecologist. The
uterus, tubes, and ovaries are removed, and the presence of metastatic lesions most often is discovered in the pathology laboratory.

The ovaries, on the other hand, are a frequent site of metastases from cancer originating in many different organs, including the breast, stomach, pancreas, and colon. It has been reported by Israel and colleagues and by Webb and coworkers that young women are more prone to metastatic carcinoma than to primary ovarian cancer and that one half of all women with ovarian metastases are premenopausal.

In most situational ovarian metastases can be regarded as a local manifestation of generalized carcinomatosis, and extensive resection is not indicated. Ovarian metastases from the colon may have a better prognosis if aggressive resection is undertaken, providing all gross tumor can be exenpted. Morrow and associates have reported that the most important determinants of survival in patients with metastatic ovarian disease from colorectal cancer was whether the patient could be surgically rendered free of gross disease. In their series, the mean survival rate for patients rendered free of gross disease was 48 months, compared with 8 months for all other patients. Thus, significant palliation is achieved by removing large tumor masses in and around the ovaries. Aggressive resection seems justified if such a lesion is encountered by the gynecologic surgeon, particularly if the metastases represents a late recurrence of colon cancer.

Urologic Disease

The most common retroperitoneal urologic mass to be encountered is a pelvic or horseshoe kidney. It is important to realize that pelvic and horseshoe kidneys have an arterial supply that courses much more anteriorly than the normal kidney, and their collecting system lies anteriorly as well, exposing both to risk of injury. An attempt should be made to identify a renal pelvis or ureter if the retroperitoneal mass appears to be a kidney. Aspiration with a 22-gauge needle may reveal the presence of urine within the mass. Excretory urography can be performed during surgery by intravenously injecting 50 to 100 mL of contrast material and taking a 10- to 20-minute supine film. An alternative is to inject 3 to 10 mL of indigo carmine intravenously and obtain an aspirate from the suspected renal pelvis 5 to 10 minutes later. The presence of blue or green urine confirms that the mass is a functioning kidney. One cannot rely on palpation of the ipsilateral or contralateral side to ascertain that a kidney is present. According to Schuster, “palpating the kidney” was done in about half of the reported cases of removal of a solitary pelvic kidney, and the surgeon thought a normal kidney was present in its usual proper position. If the surgeon unwittingly attempts to remove a pelvic kidney, bleeding will become profuse as the “tumor mass” is entered. If the tumor mass is recognized as a kidney, the injured kidney usually can be repaired. Packing the wound will stop some of the small bleeders and around the ovaries. Aggressive resection seems justified if such a lesion is encountered by the gynecologic surgeon, particularly if the metastases represents a late recurrence of colon cancer.

Retroperitoneal Tumors

Although retroperitoneal tumors are relatively rare, the pelvic surgeon should be prepared to deal with them. Primary retroperitoneal tumors arise from retroperitoneal tissue that does not represent growth from another body organ in the retroperitoneum. Ackerman has compiled and classified a lengthy list of all the possible retroperitoneal tumors. There is virtually no retroperitoneal tumor that should be resected if found unexpectedly at the time of operation for other pelvic disease. Retroperitoneal sarcomas, teratomas, sacral chordomas, and anterior meningoceles all need careful resection imaging and very specialized surgical techniques. Anterior meningoceles are best treated by neurosurgeons via a posterior transsacral laminectomy. Anterior meningoceles all need careful preresection planning of the involved portion of the bladder wall and small bowel. Hemangiopericytomas posterior to the bladder require total resection of the tumor mass.

Summary

A thorough history, a physical examination, and appropriate laboratory and imaging procedures usually detect unsuspected pathology before laparotomy. Even if a thorough workup suggests gynecologic pathology, bowel preparation and a thorough discussion with the patient of problems that may be encountered will prevent many otherwise difficult, if not impossible situations. Because gastrointestinal disease most often is the unexpected pathology, the gynecologist should be aware of the coret management of these disorders. Urinary tract pathology and retroperitoneal tumors should also be familiar to the gynecologic surgeon. Surgical management of retroperitoneal tumors requires a thorough knowledge of the retroperitoneal space and typically requires consultation with appropriate specialists if successful surgery is to be achieved.

Best Surgical Practices

The pelvic surgeon must give careful consideration to the broad differential diagnosis of possible gynecologic causes of a pelvic mass. Particular attention to the
gastrointestinal tract is extremely important since the gas-
trointestinal tract is the most common nongynecologic
source of a pelvic mass.
■ When the diagnosis of a pelvic mass is uncertain, thorough
evaluation of the gastrointestinal-tract and urologic systems
before surgery using modern imaging techniques and en-
doscopy to further delineate normal from abnormal struc-
ture is often necessary.
■ Thorough bowel preparation and consideration of cyst-
toscopy with ureteral stent placement is helpful if there is
a high degree of suspicion of potential secondary or possi-
bly primary involvement of these organ systems.
■ Intraoperative evaluation should entail complete and thor-
ough assessment of the entire abdominal cavity, including
the upper abdomen as well as the pelvis. The choice of
the operative incision should also be predicated on the likeli-
hood for need of exposure or access to the upper abdomen.
■ Judicious use of nongynecologic surgical consultations is ad-
vised whenever the preoperative assessment or the intraop-
erative evaluation determines that the pelvic mass is nongyn-
ocologic in origin.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Special thanks and acknowledgment to our mentor, John H.
Isaacs, M.D.

Bibliography
SECTION IX • GYNECOLOGIC ONCOLOGY
CHAPTER 45 MALIGNANCIES OF THE VULVA
MITCHEL S. HOFFMAN

DEFINITIONS
Lymphoscintigraphy—A nuclear medicine study examining the distribution of uptake of radiocolloid (injected percutaneously) into the lymphatic system.
Modified radical vulvectomy—Radical removal of the portion of the vulva containing the tumor with approximately a 2-cm margin.
Radical vulvectomy—Removal of the vulvar soft tissue. The lateral borders are the labiocutaneous folds. The anterior border is located in the mons pubis. The posterior border is across the perineal body. The medial borders are within the vestibule.
Sentinel lymph node—The concept of a sentinel lymph node in the context of malignancy relies on the presumption that this lymph node(s) is the initial site of metastatic disease and that the histology of the sentinel lymph node reflects the histology of the rest of the lymph nodes in the basin.
Superficial inguinal lymphadenectomy—Removal of the inguinal lymph nodes superficial to the cribriform fascia, mainly associated with the great saphenous and superficial epigastric veins.

Carcinoma of the vulva is an uncommon malignancy accounting for 0.5% of all female cancers in the United States and 2% of all female genital malignancies. It is predominantly a disease of older women. In this country as a whole, the steady increase in life expectancy has brought carcinoma of the vulva into a place of more importance among gynecologic malignancies. The predominant histologic type is squamous cell carcinoma, which accounts for about 90% of the tumors in most series. This malignancy metastasizes primarily through the lymphatic system in an orderly manner through the superficial inguinal, deep inguinal, and pelvic lymph nodes. During the first half of the 20th century, the absolute 5-year survival rate for carcinoma of the vulva was 15%. During the first 19th and early 20th centuries, principles of surgical oncology were developed and put into clinical practice. The application of these surgical principles to the treatment of vulvar cancer resulted in a significant improvement in survival. The survival of patients with invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva is dependent on a number of histopathologic factors, but it most closely relates to the pathologic status of the inguinal lymph nodes. Until the early 1980s, patients with invasive carcinoma of the vulva were routinely treated with radical vulvectomy and bilateral inguinoscrotal and pelvic lymphadenectomy. Accumulation of data on vulvar cancer during the mid- to late-20th century led to earlier diagnosis and a better understanding of the nature and modes of spread of this disease. Especially over the past 2 decades, treatment of this malignancy has undergone a number of significant modifications that are applicable to most patients.

This chapter first reviews the epidemiology, clinical characteristics, staging, and prognostic factors for invasive carcinoma of the vulva. The broad spectrum of treatment of this disease is then reviewed with an emphasis on the surgical treatment. Finally, histologic variants of vulvar malignancy and their treatment are discussed individually.

EPIDEMIOLOGY
Invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva is typically a disease of postmenopausal women, with a median age at diagnosis of about 65 years. However, the age range is wide, and some data suggest an increasing incidence in younger women. This has been attributed to some extent to the human papillomavirus. Human papillomavirus does not appear to play a significant role in the epidemiology of invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva in older women, who frequently have concomitant lichen sclerosis (Fig. 45.3).

The other sexually transmitted factors that have been epidemiologically associated with vulvar cancer are the granulomatous venereal diseases, especially in countries where these are prevalent.

Vulvar carcinoma in situ (Fig. 45.2A–B), like cervical carcinoma in situ, is considered a precursor to invasive disease, although the risk of progression appears to be lower. There are no substantial long-term natural history studies of untreated patients. Although Jones and Rowan found in seven of eight women with untreated vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia (VIN) that invasive cancer developed within 8 years, three other studies found progression rates of 5% to 16%. In a recent systematic review of 3,322 published patients, 8 of 88 untreated women with VIN 3 progressed to invasive cancer in 12 to 96 months. Occult invasion has been discovered in 16% to 22% of patients undergoing excision of VIN 3 (although it was only 3.2% in the systematic review). The risk for invasive cancer may be greater with perianal location, increased age, immunosuppression, and previous radiotherapy. Vulvar carcinoma in situ tends to be multifocal with a lower risk of invasive cancer in younger women, but it tends to be unifocal with a higher risk of invasive disease in older women. Most patients with VIN 3 should be treated, and long-term follow-up is mandatory. Although progression of VIN from grade 1 to grade 2 and grade 3 has been demonstrated, in the absence of atypical changes, other vulvar epithelial abnormalities do not appear to have significant precancerous potential. Patients who have cervical neoplasia are at increased risk for developing vulvar neoplasia, and vice versa. This so-called field phenomenon should heighten the physician’s surveillance for the development of other lesions once a lower genital tract neoplasm occurs.

1151
Hypertension and diabetes mellitus are common in patients with invasive vulvar cancer, but this may simply be related to the elderly population affected. The associations of vulvar cancer with obesity and cigarette smoking are also unclear.

There does not appear to be any significant association with parity or race. One group that does appear to be at increased risk for the development of invasive vulvar cancer is chronically immunosuppressed women.

**CLINICAL PRESENTATION**

The most common initial symptom of vulvar cancer is pruritus vulvae, which may be of long duration. Vulvar pain, discharge, and bleeding are less commonly reported. The patient often becomes aware of a lesion on her vulva; but despite the superficial nature of the lesion, delay in seeking medical help is common. Physician delay has also been commonly reported, often related to prolonged medical treatment before a biopsy is done. These findings underscore the need for patient and physician education with regard to the early diagnosis of carcinoma of the vulva and the importance of having a biopsy diagnosis before treating vulvar lesions. Biopsy of the vulva is a simple procedure that can be performed in the physician’s office (see Chapter 23).

Invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva involves the labia majora in about two thirds of patients. The remaining tumors involve the clitoris, labia minora or posterior fourchette, and perineum. These cancers can be exophytic, ulcerating, or flat (Figs. 45.3–45.5).

**FIGURE 45.1.** Vulvar cancer arising in a background of lichen sclerosus.

**FIGURE 45.2.** A and B. Carcinoma in situ of the vulva.
FIGURE 45.3. Exophytic vulvar cancer.

FIGURE 45.4. Ulcerating vulvar cancer.

FIGURE 45.5. Flat vulvar cancer.

HISTOLOGY

Squamous cell carcinoma accounts for about 90% of the invasive vulvar malignancies in most large series. Melanoma is the second most common histologic type, accounting for 5% to 10% of vulvar cancers. Some of the less common vulvar malignancies include Bartholin carcinoma (with most of these being adenocarcinoma or squamous carcinoma), basal cell carcinoma, verrucous carcinoma, adenocarcinoma, invasive Paget disease, and sarcomas. This chapter mainly deals with invasive squamous cell carcinoma, followed by a discussion of the less common vulvar malignancies.

ROUTES OF SPREAD

Squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva can spread by local extension to involve the vagina, urethra, anus, or pubic bone. Metastasis from the primary site can occur by the lymphatic or the vascular system, but, by far, the most common is the lymphatic route. The lymphatics of the labia communicate to the inguinal lymph nodes. The lymphatics of the perianal area drain in a similar manner, but lesions that extensively involve the anus or rectovaginal septum can drain directly into the pelvic lymph nodes. Although there are channels that interconnect the clitoris to the deep pelvic nodes, it appears that they are of minimal clinical significance. The lymphatics of
the vulva are numerous and tend to cross the midline. The regional lymph nodes include the superficial inguinal lymph nodes, the deep inguinal femoral lymph nodes, and the pelvic lymph nodes (external iliac, obturator, internal iliac, and common iliac lymph nodes). The superficial inguinal lymph nodes are the primary nodal group of the vulva and are located around the saphenous, superficial epigastric, and superficial circumflex iliac veins. These lymph nodes drain through the cribriform fascia to the femoral lymph nodes, which are mainly located medial to the femoral vein. Draining from here is under the inguinal ligament into the pelvic lymph nodes. The pelvic lymph nodes are virtually never positive in the absence of inguinoscrotal lymph node metastases. Overall, 20% to 40% of all patients with invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva have lymph node metastases.

STAGING

In 1979, the International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) approved a clinical classification for invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva (Table 45.1). This was based on an analysis of tumor (T) by size and location; node (N) status by palpation; distant metastases (M) as assessed by general and pelvic examination; evaluation of the bladder or rectum, or both; and radiologic investigation. Most patients with invasive carcinoma of the vulva are treated surgically, and it was recognized through a number of studies that there are substantial discrepancies between the clinical assessment and it was recognized through a number of studies that there are substantial discrepancies between the clinical assessment of the inguinal lymph node status and the surgical pathologic findings. In 1988, FIGO approved a surgical staging system (Table 45.2). This system is based on well-established surgical-pathologic prognostic criteria. In 1995, stage I was divided into A and B based on a depth of invasion less or greater than 1 mm.

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS

Invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva has a relatively low propensity for distant metastases. Recurrences tend to be local or regional, and even unremitting disease tends to remain locoregional for long periods of time. The dominant prognostic factor in this disease is the status of the inguinoscrotal lymph nodes. Further definition of prognosis includes evaluation of a number of factors relating to the regional lymph nodes. In addition, several prognostic factors related to the primary tumor have been delineated. These primary tumor characteristics have been correlated with the likelihood of regional nodal involvement and/or risk of local recurrence.

Primary tumor factors that appear to have prognostic importance include depth of invasion or tumor thickness, tumor diameter, tumor differentiation, lymph-vascular space involvement, and margin status. Tumor involvement of the distal urethra, vagina, or perineum is also an adverse prognostic factor. Of less clear importance are cytologic grading, the local immunologic response to the tumor, tumor volume, tumor growth pattern, location, ulceration, amount of keratin, the presence of associated vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia or vulvar dystrophy, p53 overexpression, DNA ploidy, and proliferation index. Sedlis and colleagues reported on a Gynecologic Oncology Group (GOG) study of 272 patients with lesions less than or equal to 5 mm in tumor thickness. They found that histologic grade, capillarylike space involvement, tumor thickness, and clitoral or perineal location were all significant predictors of groin node metastases. A subsequent GOG study reported by Homesley and associates on 188 evaluable patients with invasive carcinoma found lymph-vascular space involvement, GOG tumor differentiation, age, and tumor thickness to be significant independent risk factors for groin node metastases. A few of the primary tumor characteristics, such as tumor diameter and lymph-vascular space involvement, may be significant independent predictors of survival. Other factors may be predictive of an increased risk of local recurrence, including margin status, larger tumor size, and deep invasion.

A few histologic variants have been described that have been associated with a favorable prognosis, including verrucous
carcinoma (discussed later), warty carcinoma, carcinoma in situ with early stromal invasion, and keratoacanthoma.

The status of the groin nodes is clearly the most important prognostic factor for patients with invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva. The overall 5-year survival rate for all treated patients is about 60%, with a corrected 5-year survival rate of about 70%. In the GOG study previously mentioned, 65.5% of the patients had negative groin nodes and 34.5% had positive nodes; this is consistent with my own experience and with other reports in the literature. In the GOG report, the survival rate was 90.9% for patients with negative lymph nodes and 57.7% for patients with positive lymph nodes, again consistent with the other reports in the literature. When the pelvic lymph nodes are known to be positive, the survival rate decreases to about 20%.

Further definition of prognosis is achieved by examining a number of variables related to the lymph node metastases; the most significant of these is the number of nodes involved. Other factors that have been reported to be prognostically significant include bilateral involvement, extracapsular extension, clinical nodal status, size of the metastatic deposit inside the lymph node, percentage of nodal replacement, nodal immune response, and location of the metastasis within the lymph node. Several studies have shown that when only one lymph node is involved, survival is still quite good; it decreases drastically with metastases to three or more nodes or with bilateral nodal involvement. In the 1991 GOG report, the relative survival rate was 75.2% when one or two nodes were involved and decreased to 36.1% when three or more nodes were involved. The survival rate was 70.7% with unilateral involvement versus 25.4% with bilateral involvement. On the basis of limited data from a few studies, it appears that large nodal diameter, extensive nodal replacement, and especially extracapsular extension of a lymph node metastasis are adverse prognostic factors. In a report by Origoni and colleagues in 1992 that was based on 53 vulvar cancer patients with groin node metastases, the survival rate varied from 90.9% when the diameter of the metastasis was less than 5 mm to 20% when it was larger than 15 mm, and from 85.7% to 25% when the metastases were intracapsular and extracapsular, respectively. Especially important are the data from the 19 patients in that study with a single positive node. For these patients, the 5-year cancer-related survival rate was 90% when the metastasis diameter was less than 5 mm versus 37.5% when it was 15 mm, and 85.7% when the metastasis was intracapsular versus 20% when it was extracapsular. Results from a study by Paladini and associates were similar; they reported that patients with intracapsular metastases tended to have recurrence at distant sites, whereas patients with extracapsular nodal disease were more likely to have local or groin recurrence. Both of the previously mentioned studies also revealed that a lack of active immune response within the lymph node metastasis was an adverse prognostic factor. A 1995 study from the Netherlands (van der Velden and colleagues) found a predominantly distant failure pattern in a subgroup of patients with extranodal spread, multiple positive lymph nodes, and lymph node replaced greater than 50% by tumor. Hoffman and coworkers studied 48 patients with groin node metastases and reported prognostic significance for the size and number of the nodal metastases, but they found that the immune response and the location of the metastasis within the lymph node were much less important. Groin nodes that are both clinically and surgically positive may also portend a worse prognosis, which is probably a reflection of the factors mentioned earlier.

**TREATMENT OF INVASIVE SQUAMOUS CELL CARCINOMA OF THE VULVA**

Invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva is a heterogeneous group of tumors requiring considerable flexibility in the approaches to treatment. Dating back to the favorable reports of Tussing in 1940 and Way in 1948, radical vulvectomy with bilateral inguinal lymphadenectomy performed by en bloc excision became the standard therapy applied to most patients with carcinoma of the vulva. This operation involves radical removal of the entire vulva, the mons pubis, the inguinofemoral lymph nodes, and often the pelvic lymph nodes. A large surgical defect is created that is generally closed under tension with a high subsequent breakdown rate and marked disfigurement.
FIGURE 45.7. Closure of en bloc radical vulvectomy with bilateral inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy. Foley catheter and vaginal stent are in place.

of the genital area (Fig. 45.7). Important concerns with this approach for the treatment of vulvar cancer have led to a number of modifications, especially over the past 25 years (Fig. 45.8). Some of these concerns include the high rate and the severity of wound complications and the psychosexual effects of radical removal of the vulvar tissues. Other potential problems related to the en-bloc radical resection include urinary or fecal incontinence and vaginal relaxation, the overtreatment of early cancer, the inadequate treatment of more advanced disease, and the lack of attention directed specifically at the local vulvar lesion to ensure an adequate margin of resection. What I wish to emphasize in this section are some treatment recommendations based on my own experience as well as current literature on the subject.

Regional Nodal Management

It should be kept in mind that certain vulvar cancers, by virtue of their anatomic extent, may have access to lymphatics that bypass the groins. These include tumors that extensively involve the anus (particularly the anal canal or its surrounding tissue), the rectovaginal septum, the vagina above the lower third, and the proximal urethra.

Separate Incisions

Although reported earlier by Kehler, Taussig, Byron and associates, and Ballon and Lamb, it was only after later reports by Hacker and colleagues, DiSaia and associates, and others that separate incisions for the vulvar and inguinal phases of the operation came into increasing use (Fig. 45.8B). This was the most important modification of the classic en bloc excision. The separation of incisions results in a significant reduction in wound morbidity. Importantly, the separation allows for increased flexibility in the modification of the two aspects of the operation (regional and local). The report by Hacker and colleagues in 1981 consisted of 100 patients in whom three separate incisions were used to perform the bilateral inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy and radical vulvectomy, leaving a bridge of tissue between the incisions and sparing the mons pubis. Major groin wound breakdown occurred in 14 patients, which was a considerable reduction from the 50% or higher groin wound breakdown rate generally seen with the en bloc excision. In this report, there were no isolated recurrences in the groin or the inguinal skin bridge. There were two recurrences in the inguinal skin bridge associated with other recurrence sites, both patients originally had positive inguinal lymph nodes. In addition to these two patients, there have been other isolated reports of inguinal skin bridge recurrence. However, this still appears to be a rare event. Some authors believe that in the presence of advanced disease or grossly positive inguinal lymph nodes, an en bloc excision of the tumor and the lymph nodes is still the best approach. En bloc excision is certainly warranted at times to obtain an adequate resection of the malignancy.

Unilateral Groin Lymphadenectomy

Removing the inguinal lymph nodes only on the side of a unilateral vulvar tumor has been another modification of surgical treatment that has been used for selected patients (Fig. 45.8C). In 1981, Iversen reported on 53 women with unilateral tumors and lymph node metastases. Eighty-three percent of these patients had only one positive ipsilateral node, 15% had bilateral positive nodes, and one patient had contralateral positive lymph nodes only. Other retrospective studies have confirmed these results. It has been the opinion of a number of authors that capillary or lymphatic space involvement by tumor may increase the risk of contralateral nodal metastases. Patients with tumors approaching the midline or involving more medial structures (perineum, clitoral hood or clitoris, vagina, and labia minora) are at increased risk for contralateral lymph node metastases. The issue of unilateral groin lymphadenectomy was studied to some extent in 1992 by Stehman and associates in a GOG study. Briefly, patients with early disease and negative ipsilateral superficial inguinal lymph nodes were treated with ipsilateral superficial inguinal lymphadenectomy and a modified radical vulvectomy. A few patients in this study did have a bilateral inguinal lymphadenectomy because of midline involvement. A total of 121 patients were in the study, and 3 experienced contralateral inguinal lymph node recurrences. The vulvar lesions of these 3 patients ranged from 0.6 to 2.5 mm in depth of invasion, and all were poorly differentiated. Although lesion location was not given for these three cases,
a large percentage of patients included in this study had lesions approaching the midline, as defined by involvement of the labia minora. Tumors with capillary or lymphatic space involvement were excluded from this study. The role of unilateral inguinal lymphadenectomy in the management of invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva requires further evaluation; at present, it appears to be a reasonable approach in a patient with a well-lateralized early tumor that is well differentiated, with no capillary or lymphatic space involvement, and with negative ipsilateral inguinal lymph nodes.

**Superficial Inguinal Lymphadenectomy**

A more limited resection of the inguinal lymph nodes in the management of superficially invasive vulvar cancer was reported by DiSaia and coworkers in 1979. The dissection they described is aimed at removal of the superficial lymph nodes above the crural/fascia, mainly associated with the great saphenous and superficial epigastric veins. These lymph nodes are sent for frozen section analysis. If results are positive, a complete bilateral inguinalfemoral lymphadenectomy is performed. In the 1979 study, DiSaia and colleagues also reported 79 cases of invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva treated with radical vulvectomy and bilateral inguinal lymphadenectomy. In these cases, it was noted that the deep femoral lymph nodes were never positive in the absence of positive superficial inguinal lymph nodes. The purpose of this modification is to reduce the morbidity of the inguinal lymphadenectomy. The dissection is less radical and resulted in only one groin breakdown in the 18 patients in the series of DiSaia and associates. The series was updated in 1989 and reported no groin recurrences in 50 patients, 42 of whom had been followed for a median of 36 months. The previously mentioned GOG study specifically studied the issue of superficial inguinal lymphadenectomy in patients with early carcinoma of the vulva. The study group included clinical stage I patients with tumor invasion of 5 mm or less and no capillary or lymphatic space involvement. A modified radical vulvectomy and ipsilateral
superficial inguinal lymphadenectomy were performed, and 121 patients were evaluable. These were compared with a historical control group in the GOG registry who had undergone radical vulvectomy with bilateral inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy. Nine patients in this study, or 7.3%, experienced groin recurrences versus no recurrence in the control group. Six of the groin recurrences were in the ipsilateral groin, and five of the nine patients died of the recurrent vulvar cancer. The interpretation from this study was that superficial inguinal lymphadenectomy may not be adequate treatment even for early vulvar carcinoma. However, in a number of patients in this study, the tumors approached the midline; there is evidence that more medial tumors may have direct drainage to the deep inguinal lymph nodes. Another area of concern in this study is the high percentage of poorly differentiated tumors—almost twice as many as in the control group. Six of the nine groin recurrences in this study were from the poorly differentiated tumors. Whether poorly differentiated tumors are more likely to metastasize to deep inguinal or contralateral inguinal lymph nodes deserves further study. Subsequent additional retrospective data from large cancer centers also report a 5% to 10% incidence of groin relapse in patients with negative nodes from superficial inguinal lymphadenectomy.

Factors requiring further study with respect to the efficacy of superficial inguinal lymphadenectomy appear to be tumor grade, depth of invasion, the presence of capillary or lymphatic space involvement, and tumor location. The patients should be those generally at low risk for lymph node metastases with a tumor confined to the labia majora. Until further information is available on this approach, extending dissection to include removal of lymph nodes medial to the femoral vein should be considered in most patients.

Sentinel Lymph Node Identification

A large number of reports have been published over the past 15 years on sentinel lymph node detection. The concept relies on the presumption that the sentinel lymph node is the initial site of metastatic disease and that the histology of the sentinel lymph node reflects the histology of the rest of the lymph nodes in the basin. Lymphatic mapping is considered by many authorities to be the standard of care in the United States for the surgical treatment of patients with clinically early-stage melanoma and breast cancer.

With lymphatic mapping, the pathologist has only a few lymph nodes to examine, allowing a more detailed examination. Techniques such as serial sectioning, immunohistochemical staining, and reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction analysis can be applied, increasing the sensitivity of the examination and allowing the detection of micrometastases. Sentinel lymph node detection is currently accomplished using two methods of lymphatic mapping: blue dye and radiocolloid. One to 2 milliliters of isosulfan blue dye (Lymphazurin) is injected superficially around the periphery of the primary tumor, and the blue-dyed lymphatic channels are followed. An incision is made over the anticipated location, and the dyed lymph node or nodes are removed. Alternatively, the periphery of the tumor is injected with 400 mCi of technetium-labeled sulfur colloid 2 to 4 hours before surgery. A preoperative technetium scan is done, which may be helpful in confirming lymph node uptake, localization of target lymph nodes, unilateral versus bilateral lymphatic drainage, and identification of the unusual case of predominant drainage to pelvic lymph nodes (Fig. 45.9A–B). An intraoperative gamma counter is used to identify one or more sentinel lymph nodes (Fig. 45.10). The removed lymph nodes are checked with the gamma counter, and complete removal is assured when the radioactivity in the inguinal area returns to background levels. In practice, the two techniques are complementary.

When using the combined technique for vulvar cancer patients, lymphatic mapping is nearly always successful in identifying sentinel lymph nodes (Fig. 45.11). Further, the false negative rate (based on standard pathology) is very low. A formal lymph node dissection is reserved for those cases in which the sentinel node is positive or has not been successfully identified.

Experience with lymphatic mapping of vulvar cancer patients has increased substantially over the past 10 years. The technique is promising as a method to substantially reduce the morbidity of inguinal lymphadenectomy. Another
Intraoperative use of the gamma probe to identify sentinel inguinal lymph nodes. An important benefit may be more reliable clearance of at-risk lymph nodes. Injection of radiocolloid is best done 2 to 4 hours before surgery, but this is painful. Many unanswered questions remain, including who the best candidates are for the technique, the role of frozen section, the role of immunohistochemistry, the role of lymphoscintigraphy, the reliability of an isolated lymphoscintigraphy-directed unilateral negative sentinel node with a midline lesion, the role of ultrasound, management of a patient with a microscopically positive sentinel lymph node, the incidence of "skip" metastases, the reliability of lymphatic mapping after prior excisional biopsy, and the optimal lymphatic mapping methodology for vulvar cancer patients.

"Blue" lymph node found with the help of the gamma probe. Pelvic Lymph Nodes During the late 1970s and early 1980s, several studies were published showing that carcinoma of the vulva metastasizes to the inguinofemoral lymph nodes before spreading to the pelvic lymph nodes. Extension of the groin lymphadenectomy to include removal of the pelvic lymph nodes continued to be performed in selected patients with positive inguinofemoral lymph nodes. A number of studies also showed that the 5-year survival rate of vulvar cancer patients with positive pelvic lymph nodes is less than 20%. A 1986 study by the GOG directed by Homesley compared pelvic lymph node dissection with groin and pelvic radiotherapy in patients with positive inguinofemoral lymph nodes. The study included 114 patients and showed no difference in morbidity between the two treatment arms and a better 2-year survival rate in the radiotherapy group (68% versus 54%). The improved survival was seen in those patients with suspicious or grossly positive lymph nodes or those with more than one positive groin lymph node. There was no evidence that groin radiation therapy was beneficial to those patients with occult metastases and only one positive groin node. Review of the pattern of recurrence in that study suggested that adjuvant radiation was more effective largely because groin recurrences were reduced. A recent report described laparoscopic pelvic lymphadenectomy as a method to potentially avoid pelvic radiotherapy in patients with positive groin lymph nodes. The value of removing positive pelvic lymph nodes before radiotherapy is unknown. In a patient with obvious inguinal lymph node metastases who is otherwise suitable for surgical resection, consideration may be given to extending the dissection and removing enlarged pelvic lymph nodes. Preoperative CT may help with such a decision (Fig. 45.6).

Primary Inguinal Radiotherapy The use of elective radiotherapy to the groins in the place of bilateral inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy offers the potential for avoiding operative morbidity. The method is believed to be appropriate only in the absence of clinically suspicious lymph nodes. Frischbier and Thomsen reported on this method for the
treatment of 118 patients and reported a 70% survival rate for the N0, N1 group. Henderson and colleagues used the method for 91 N0, N1 patients with minimum morbidity. In that series, there were no groin recurrences in the radiotherapy field and two outside the field. In addition, there are extensive supportive data on elective nodal radiation for other sites, including the cervix, endometrium, vulva (pelvic), and head and neck. This issue was later addressed in another GOG study by Stehman and coworkers in 1992 in which there was a randomization of patients with nonsuspicious groin lymph nodes to radical vulvectomy plus bilateral inguinal lymphadenectomy, or radical vulvectomy plus radiation therapy to the groins bilaterally. This study was closed early because of a high incidence of recurrence in the irradiated groins and reduced survival (in the first 49 evaluable patients, there were five groin recurrences in the irradiated patients and no groin failures in the operated group). Upon review, however, it was believed that the radiation program used in the study may not have provided an adequate dose to the depth where the lymph nodes were located. The role of elective primary groin radiotherapy in the management of invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva, therefore, remains unclear.

Omitting Groin Dissection for Superficial Disease

Extensive data support the contention that a subset of early vulvar carcinomas (carefully studied pathologically) can be identified that have an extremely low risk of nodal involvement. In another GOG study reported by Sedlis and associates, a subgroup (63 of 272) of patients with early disease was identified as having a zero incidence of lymph node metastases. This subset included nonmidline tumors with no capillary or lymphatic space involvement that were well differentiated or were grade 2 and limited to 2 mm in thickness. Other factors that have been considered for the purpose of identifying a low-risk group include tumor volume (which does not appear to have received further attention since Wilkinson's report in 1985), tumors that are largely carcinoma in situ with very early stromal invasion and with a pushing rather than an infiltrative pattern, tumor diameter, squamous cell type, the presence of an inflammatory response, and tumor ploidy.

There seems to be general agreement that the patients for whom it would be most reasonable to omit the lymphadenectomy are those with tumor invasion less than or equal to 1 mm. The risk of lymph node metastases in this group of patients is about 1% (Table 45.3). Based on this, FIGO stage I was divided into stages IA and IB. As reported in the literature, three of five patients with nodal disease or nodal recurrence in association with tumor invasion less than or equal to 1 mm had poorly differentiated cancers (Table 45.4). Thus, certain high-risk patients with superficially invasive tumors should still undergo a groin node dissection. These include women with suspicious lymph nodes, poorly differentiated tumors, tumors with capillary or lymphatic space involvement, and perhaps those with multiple foci or broad areas of invasion, or anaplasia. Meanwhile, it is important to remember that in the report by Sedlis and colleagues on 272 patients with invasion of 3 mm or less, the groin nodes were positive in approximately 20%.

**Modifications in Management of the Vulvar Phase of Treatment**

The main type of morbidity relating to a radical vulvectomy is subsequent sexual dysfunction and a sense of disfigurement. In some cases, there may also be compromised function of the anus or urethra. Additional types of morbidity are encountered in the treatment of locally advanced tumors because of the extensive therapy required. In a 1979 study, DiSaia and colleagues reported complete preservation of sexual function in 17 of 18 patients who underwent local excision for

---

**Table 45.3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigator</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Positive nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wilkinson, 1985</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hacker et al., 1984</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parker et al., 1973</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magrina et al., 1979</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steyrk et al., 1989</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sedlis et al., 1987</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ross and Ehrmann, 1987</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kelley et al., 1992</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stehman et al., 1992</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magrina et al., 2000</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTALS</strong></td>
<td><strong>324</strong></td>
<td><strong>3 (1%)</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Table 45.4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigator</th>
<th>Patient age (y)</th>
<th>Tumor size (cm)</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Tumor depth (mm)</th>
<th>Capillary or lymphatic space involvement</th>
<th>Months</th>
<th>Status (mo of follow-up)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sedlis et al., 1987</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>4&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atamde and Hoogerland, 1989</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>AWD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>van der Velden et al., 1992</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>DOD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kelley et al., 1992</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>A (27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stehman et al., 1992</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>A (35)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NA, not available; AWD, alive with disease; DOD, died of disease; A, alive.

<sup>a</sup>Month to diagnosis of nodal disease.

<sup>b</sup>Gynecologic Oncology Group grading system.
early invasive tumors. They also reported that preservation of
the mons pubis as well as the major portion of the superior
aspect of the vulva resulted in an appreciably more satisfac-
tory cosmetic result. There is little additional information in
the literature on sexual function as it relates to modifications
of radical vulvectomy. It seems reasonable to assume, how-
ever, that the sparing of as much normal vulvar tissue as pos-
sible is less likely to produce sexual dysfunction and a sense
of disfigurement than is radical vulvectomy. Modified radical
vulvectomy is an ambiguously defined operation that generally
refers to radical removal of the portion of the vulva containing
the tumor (Fig. 45.12). Recommendations have included 1- to
3-cm skin margins for the treatment of well-localized, unifocal
lesions.

The chief concerns with a modified radical vulvectomy are
the possibility of an increased risk of local recurrence and later
an increased risk of a second primary vulvar cancer. Multicen-
tricity has been reported to occur in 20% to 28% of invasive
squamous cell carcinomas of the vulva (Fig. 45.13). Ross and
Ehrmann reported 15 of 64 stage I patients as having micro-
scopic multifocal disease and 3 of 64 patients with grossly mul-
tifocal disease. There may be an ongoing occult process within
the vulva of patients with vulvar carcinoma, and biochemi-
cal abnormalities have been demonstrated in normal-appearing
epithelium adjacent to malignancy. In the report by Ross and
Ehrmann, occult microscopic multifocal disease appeared in
the immediate vicinity of the grossly evident tumor as surface
noncontiguity of the primary lesion. Occult microscopic dis-

Malignancies of the Vulva
1161

FIGURE 45.12. Modified radical vulvectomy. A: Anterior hemivulvec-
tomy. B: Right hemivulvectomy with clitoral sparing. C: Posterior hemivul-
vectomy.
modified radical vulvectomy, the local recurrence rates were 2.2% and 4.4%, respectively. Several additional studies have reported excellent local control with a modified radical vulvec-
tomy (Tables 45.5 and 45.6). In another GOG study, Stehman and colleagues analyzed recurrences following modified radi-
cal hemivulvectomy. The mean time to “relapse” on the vulva was 43.4 months, and 11 of 18 patients had recurrence on the contralateral side from the primary lesion. A study by de Hullu and associates also reported a significant number of late recurrences following modified radical vulvectomy. From these results, it is apparent that women undergoing a modified vulvar operation for cancer are at high risk for later development of a new primary vulvar tumor and should have long-term close follow-up.

It appears reasonable to conclude that a modified radical vulvectomy is efficacious treatment for well-localized invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva. Attention should be fo-
cused on obtaining a 2-cm skin margin around the tumor while sparing as much vulvar tissue beyond this as possible. Most pa-
tients with squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva are candidates for a modified radical vulvectomy performed separately from the groin lymphadenectomy. A few patients, however, by virtue of disease extent, require a radical vulvectomy. Whatever the vulvar phase of the operation is called, the aim should be to excise the tumor with a 2-cm margin.

![FIGURE 45.13. Multifocal carcinoma of the vulva.](image)

**TABLE 45.5**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>patients</th>
<th>Local recurrence</th>
<th>Minimum follow-up (mo)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DiSaia et al., 1979</td>
<td>18 0 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hacker et al., 1984</td>
<td>28 1 (4%) 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burrell et al., 1988</td>
<td>28 9 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berman et al., 1989</td>
<td>50 4 (8%) 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sutton et al., 1991</td>
<td>56 7 (12%) 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stehman et al., 1992</td>
<td>121 10 (8%) 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoffman et al., 1992</td>
<td>45 1 (2%) 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lin et al., 1992</td>
<td>12 2 (13%) 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrews et al., 1994</td>
<td>28 2 (7%) 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burke et al., 1995</td>
<td>76 9 (12%) NA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de Hullu et al., 2002</td>
<td>85 7 (8%) NA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTALS</td>
<td>547 43 (8%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NA, not available.

**Partial Urethral Resection**

Because of tumor proximity, it is occasionally necessary to re-
move a portion of the urethra to obtain an adequate resection of a vulvar carcinoma (Fig. 45.14A–C). Although several authors have stated that removal of the outer urethra does not result in significant problems with incontinence, there are no substan-
tial confirming data. In one small study, Reid and colleagues did find urinary incontinence to be a problem after resection of the distal urethra or even an excision close to the urethra. If a portion of the urethra is resected, a Foley catheter should be left in place (carefully taped to the leg) for about 1 week postop-
eratively to facilitate healing and splint the urethra. A surgical antiincontinence procedure should also be strongly considered at the time of resection, especially if there is any preoperative stress urinary incontinence or if more than 1 cm of the urethra has to be removed. Alternatively, consideration can be given to treating these patients preoperatively with radiotherapy.

**Vulvar Cancer with Perianal Involvement**

There is scant literature concerning the local management of vulvar cancer with perianal involvement (Figs. 45.5 and 45.15). However, we have noted that about one third of our patients who are referred for vulvar cancer have lesions with perianal or anal involvement. The chief problems in the management of vulvar cancer with perianal involvement are the need for radical resection and the relatively high risk of local recurrence. The role of adjuvant therapy is not clear, although some authors have suggested that adjuvant therapy may be beneficial in selected cases.

**TABLE 45.6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>patients</th>
<th>Recurrence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Modified radical vulvectomy</td>
<td>263 35 (13%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radical vulvectomy</td>
<td>343 39 (11%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Data from Hacker et al., 1984; Stehman et al., 1992; Hoffman et al., 1992; and de Hullu et al., 2002.
patients with these tumors are the difficulty in obtaining ade-
quate surgical margins on the resection while attempting to pre-
save anal sphincter function, and deciding on which patients
would be better treated either with a more radical excision and
colostomy or with preoperative radiotherapy (Fig. 45.16). In
our experience with vulvar carcinoma, partial resection of the
external anal sphincter in combination with radical local resec-
tion of perineal tissue is associated with a significant rate of sub-
sequent fecal incontinence. Careful sphincter reapproximation
and levator muscle plication are done in an effort to minimize
incontinence. Other important measures include good bowel
preparation preoperatively, prophylactic antibiotics, and care-
ful postoperative bowel management. In addition, we have had
good results with the use of cutaneous rhomboid flaps in the
reconstruction of the perineum and perianal area. These flaps
allow for reconstruction of a perineal body, they bring tissue
with a good blood supply into the area that promotes healing,
and they allow closure of the wound without tension on the
anus. As with urethral involvement, an option for these patients
is preoperative radiotherapy.

**LOCALLY ADVANCED DISEASE**

About 30% to 40% of vulvar cancers have FIGO (clinical)
stage III or IV disease. Although surgical staging was intro-
duced by FIGO in 1988 and hard data on this system are still
in relatively short supply, a review of our own patients sug-
gests that this percentage probably still holds. We have consid-
ered carcinoma of the vulva to be locally advanced when the
primary or recurring tumor cannot be locally managed by a radical vulvar resection (Fig. 45.17A–C). Current approaches to the treatment of locally advanced vulvar cancer include ultraradical surgery, radiotherapy, or a combination of treatment modalities. This section reviews the current approaches to the treatment of locally advanced vulvar cancer.

**Ultraradical Surgery**

Ultraradical surgery has been used for patients with clinically resectable vulvar lesions and has generally consisted of a radical vulvar operation extended to include the anorectum and/or the lower urinary tract. This has included resection of bone in a few reports (Fig. 45.18). Inguinofemoral and pelvic lymphadenectomies are usually performed as well (Fig. 45.19).

In some cases, resection can be limited to partial removal of the urethra, anus, or anterior rectal wall. Subsequent incontinence may occur, but this can be prevented to some degree by reconstructive efforts. Reid and associates reported problems with urinary incontinence in 4 of 4 patients who underwent resection of 1 to 1.5 cm of the distal urethra and in 2 of 14 patients who underwent resection within 1 cm of the urethra for carcinoma of the vulva. The value of urethral reconstruction in this setting is uncertain, but it would seem worthwhile. Three recent studies have reported preservation of anal continence after partial sphincter resection and reconstruction for posteriorly located carcinoma of the vulva.

The cumulative literature from 1970 to 2006 includes 163 vulvar cancer “exenteration” patients (Table 45.7). The postoperative mortality rate ranges from 0% to 20%, with a mean of about 4%. The cumulative disease-free survival rate for these patients is 46%. In those series that have included an analysis, the survival has correlated well with the status of the regional lymph nodes. Most studies have not differentiated inguinal and pelvic lymph nodes. There have been very few survivors with positive nodes, either in our series or elsewhere. Although not well addressed in the literature, there is also significant physical and psychological morbidity resulting from these operations as a result of the extensive nature of the surgery and the need for a permanent colostomy and/or urostomy. It appears that the use of a combination of treatment modalities avoids the need for such extensive surgery in many of these patients (see later text). Likely in large part related to this, utilization of the “ultraradical” surgical approach for primary management of locally advanced vulvar cancer appears to have markedly decreased over the past decade. It may be reasonable to confine the use of ultraradical surgery to highly selected patients with...
FIGURE 45.17. A: Locally advanced vulvar carcinoma. The lesion extensively involved the anus and lower rectovaginal septum but was mobile. There was no suspicious adenopathy. B: Large and locally extensive vulvar cancer. C: Vulvar cancer extensively involving perineum and anus.

clearly respectable lesions who have negative—or perhaps one or two microscopically positive—regional lymph nodes. It may be the only option for a patient who has previously received radiotherapy to the region (Fig. 45.20).

Radiotherapy

The role of primary radiotherapy as the sole method of treatment for carcinoma of the vulva remains unclear, but may be the only option available when the patient presents with unresectable disease. The literature concerning the use of radiotherapy for this disease consists of retrospective studies with small numbers of patients (many of whom were medically infirm or had locally advanced disease) who were treated with a variety of radiotherapy techniques (Table 45.8). Overall, this information is difficult to interpret. The older literature is discouraging in terms of both low cure rates and vulvar skin intolerance.
Contemporary literature with use of high-energy radiotherapy with its relative skin-sparing effects as well as the use of modern radiotherapy techniques has been more encouraging. Whether normal bladder and bowel function is preserved with this type of treatment is difficult to determine.

The optimal techniques for radiotherapeutic treatment of carcinoma of the vulva have not been well defined. In the more recent literature, teletherapy has been administered to the whole pelvis, including the vulva and the groins, at a dose of 45 to 55 Gy. It is not uncommon for patients to require treatment interruption because of vulvitis. The treatment regimen has been modified in some studies, with only brachytherapy or palliative treatment used. A few studies have described the use of a direct perineal portal. We reported a series of 10 patients with locally advanced vulvovaginal malignancy treated mainly with teletherapy followed by interstitial needles (Fig. 45.21) to the local tumor bed for a tumor dose of 70 to 90 Gy. The therapy was highly morbid, with six patients developing severe radionecrosis (Fig. 45.22). Treatment fields, the role of interstitial radiotherapy, the overall dose, and the integration of combination treatment with chemotherapy or surgery, or both, are among the issues to be studied. Preliminary results suggest that radiotherapy (possibly combined with chemotherapy) followed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigator</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Postoperative mortality</th>
<th>Disease-free survivors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rutledge et al., 1970</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10 (3 yr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thornton and Flanagan, 1973</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4 (7 mo–9.5 yr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaplan and Kaufman, 1975</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4 (3 yr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Krupp et al., 1975</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3 (1.3–13 yr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adams and Daly, 1979</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3 (10–41 mo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beneke et al., 1979</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1 (&gt;3 yr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phillips et al., 1981</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3 (52–153 mos)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavanagh and Shepherd, 1982</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5 (&gt;3 yr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King et al., 1989</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3 (9 mo–18 yr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hopkins and Morley, 1992</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10 (5 yr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gomshaw et al., 1991</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>15 (4–136 mos)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miller and Morris, 1992</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>9 (5 yr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoffman et al., 1993</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6 (30–84 mos)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miller et al., 1995</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7 (70% primary, 38% recurrent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTALS</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>7 (4.3%)</td>
<td>76 (46%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
by a more limited resection is more efficacious than radiotherapy alone. These treatment methods are discussed in the next two sections.

### Preoperative Radiotherapy

From the work of Boronow and others, data confirm that megavoltage radiotherapy can cause marked regression of even locally advanced vulvar carcinoma to the point to which a more limited resection can be undertaken (often with an improved resection margin) with sparing of organ function and improved quality of life. In an update of his study in 1987, Boronow reported that, of 48 bladders and 48 rectums at risk, one bladder and two rectums were lost because of local failure, and one bladder and one rectum were lost because of radiation injury. The report did not mention other types of bladder or bowel morbidity. Of 40 patients who underwent vulvectomy, 17 contained no identifiable residual cancer. There were no reported problems with wound healing. Similar results have been reported in other studies. In these studies, survival with locally advanced disease so far has been comparable to that with ultraradical surgery. Again, the optimal radiotherapeutic techniques for such treatment are not well defined. Boronow’s group generally used a combination of external beam radiation and intracavitary brachytherapy, delivering a mean vaginal surface maximum dose of 86.26 Gy. His group and others have also used preoperative external beam therapy only, generally delivering a dose of about 50 Gy to the whole pelvis, including the vulva and groins. Surgery has generally been performed 2 to 6 weeks after completion of radiotherapy. Boronow and associates reported 42.5% of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigator and Technique</th>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Dose (Gy)</th>
<th>L/R control (%)</th>
<th>Follow-up (yr)</th>
<th>Serious complication rate (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frischbier and Thomas, 1971</td>
<td>III-II</td>
<td>45–54</td>
<td>23/33 (70)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backstrom et al., 1972</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>52–69</td>
<td>7/19 (36)</td>
<td>5 NA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helgason et al., 1972</td>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>15–38</td>
<td>16/29 (55)</td>
<td>2–5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuipers, 1975</td>
<td>II-IV</td>
<td>60–80</td>
<td>3/11 (27)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prempree and Amorosman, 1984</td>
<td>ORTH</td>
<td>I-IV</td>
<td>45–85</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Carlino et al., 1984      | Betatron + implant | III-IV Recurrence | 40–50             | 2/12 (17)     | 2–11
| Fairey et al., 1985       | 60Co, t-Ces | I-II Local recurrence | 50–35     | 5/6 (30)      | >3 22
| Pao et al., 1988          | Mng    | III-IIV   | 7.5–78         | 2/5 (40)      | 4 25
| Slevin and Poutrin, 1989  | Mng ± Mng | I-IV Recurrence | 45–55            | 2/3 (40)      | NA 5
| Hoffman et al., 1990      | Mng + Ir I | III-IIV, Recurrence | 44–90             | 8/10 (80)     | 1–4 60
| Perez et al., 1993        | Mng ± Ir I | I-IV, Recurrence | 50–70            | 9/10 (90)     | 25
| Tewari et al., 1999       | Mng + Ir I | III-IV, Recurrence | 24–35a           | 11/11 (100)    | 0.75–6.5 18

L/R, local/regional; MeV, million electron volts; E, electrons; 60Co, cobalt-60; ORTH, orthovoltage; RI, radium implant; t-Ces, teletherapy cesium; IrI, iridium implant; Meg, megavoltage; NE, not given; NA, not available.

*aInterstitial dose only.*
vulvectomy specimens and Hacker and colleagues reported 4 of 7 (57%) vulvectomy specimens to be negative for residual tumor.

Chemoradiotherapy

As with preoperative radiotherapy, combined chemoradiotherapy with or without resection has been used increasingly over the past 25 years with promising results in squamous cell carcinomas of several different primary sites. This approach has been particularly successful in the treatment of squamous cell carcinoma of the anus. This type of carcinoma may be somewhat analogous to carcinoma of the vulva in terms of location and, in some instances, preservation of the anus. Although the cumulative data on this type of treatment for carcinoma of the vulva is quite limited, the results are promising.

The most commonly used chemotherapeutic agents are 5-fluorouracil, mitomycin-C, and cisplatin. Chemotherapy has been combined with external radiotherapy administered in a manner similar to that described in the previous sections. Most data have been accumulated over the past 20 years with the use of regimens similar to those used at other sites. Results suggest a high rate of local control for locally advanced or recurrent disease (Table 45.10). However, an increase in the degree of local morbidity is seen with this type of therapy. Most of these patients develop a moderate amount of mucositis in the vulvovaginal area (Fig. 45.23). This leads to dysuria and generalized pelvic and perineal discomfort. An indwelling catheter (suprapubic in some cases) and the use of various perianal and rectal preparations help ease the discomfort, although treatment interruption is necessary at times. The GOG investigated the use of chemoradiotherapy for the treatment of advanced squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva. Results from this study are included in Table 45.10 and confirm those reported by the other investigators.

Neoadjuvant Chemotherapy

A large number of pilot studies in the recent literature have reported on the use of neoadjuvant chemotherapy (NACT)

<p>| TABLE 45.9 |
| PREOPERATIVE RADIOTHERAPY FOR CARCINOMA OF THE VULVA |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigator</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Survival rate (%)</th>
<th>Survival</th>
<th>Severe complications (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boronow et al., 1987</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>III, IV, Recurrent</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>4–168 mo</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acosta et al., 1978</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>II–III</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>2 mo–8 yr</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jafari and Magalotti, 1981</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>II–III</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>4–5 yr</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hacker et al., 1984</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>62.5</td>
<td>15 mo–10 yr</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carlini et al., 1984</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>II–III</td>
<td>66.6</td>
<td>15 mo</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fairey et al., 1985</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>I–IV</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>13 mo–3 yr</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pan et al., 1998</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>I, III</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1–2 yr</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ronshuis et al., 1990</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>III, IV</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>12–72 mo</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTALS</td>
<td>105</td>
<td></td>
<td>69</td>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NA, not available.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigator</th>
<th>Radiotherapy (Gy)</th>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Chemotherapy</th>
<th>Surgery</th>
<th>Proportion of patients with local control (%</th>
<th>Severe complications (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kalra et al., 1981</td>
<td>60Co (30)</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>RV, GND</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iversen, 1982</td>
<td>Meg (30–40)</td>
<td>Inoperable</td>
<td>Bleo</td>
<td>2 RV, GND</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nort et al., 1983</td>
<td>Meg (34–58)</td>
<td>III, IV</td>
<td>Cisplatin (DDP)</td>
<td>RV, GND</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levin et al., 1986</td>
<td>Meg (18–45)</td>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evans et al., 1988</td>
<td>Meg (20–64 ± 1)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Met-C, 5FU</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>4/4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thomas et al., 1989</td>
<td>Meg (40-64)</td>
<td>1.3–9 cm</td>
<td>SFU ± Mit-C</td>
<td>LE</td>
<td>5/5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whitaker et al., 1990</td>
<td>Meg (25–45)</td>
<td>III, IV</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>RV</td>
<td>3/3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carson et al., 1990</td>
<td>Meg (45–50)</td>
<td>III, IV</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>LE</td>
<td>4/4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Podczaski et al., 1990</td>
<td>Meg (51 ± H)</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>RV</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berik et al., 1991</td>
<td>Meg (44–54)</td>
<td>III, IV</td>
<td>DDP, SFU</td>
<td>RV</td>
<td>3/3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russell et al., 1992</td>
<td>Meg (46–78)</td>
<td>III, IV</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>LE</td>
<td>4/4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schnietzen et al., 1993</td>
<td>Meg (9–45)</td>
<td>4–5 cm</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>RV</td>
<td>4/4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koh et al., 1993</td>
<td>Meg (34–70)</td>
<td>III, IV</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>LE</td>
<td>9/9</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sebag-Montefiore et al., 1994</td>
<td>Meg (45–50)</td>
<td>III, IV</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>LE</td>
<td>8/8</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whalen et al., 1995</td>
<td>Meg (45–50 ± 1)</td>
<td>II, III</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>LE</td>
<td>14/19</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eifel et al., 1995</td>
<td>Meg (40–50)</td>
<td>Recurrent-T4N3</td>
<td>DDP, SFU</td>
<td>6 LE</td>
<td>4/4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lupi et al., 1996</td>
<td>Meg (NG)</td>
<td>II, III</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>LE, GND</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landoni et al., 1996</td>
<td>Meg (54)</td>
<td>II, III, IV</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>LE, GND</td>
<td>39/39</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cunningham et al., 1997</td>
<td>Meg (50–65)</td>
<td>III, IV</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>4/4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moore et al., 1998</td>
<td>Meg (41–50)</td>
<td>III, IV</td>
<td>DDP, SFU</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>24/24</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Montana et al., 2000</td>
<td>Meg (47)</td>
<td>N2/N3 nodes</td>
<td>DDP, SFU</td>
<td>LE, GND</td>
<td>34/34</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muliyani et al., 2004</td>
<td>Meg (45–62)</td>
<td>T3, T3N1</td>
<td>Mit-C, 5FU</td>
<td>LE</td>
<td>5/5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

60Co, cobalt-60; Mit-C, mitomycin-C; SFU, 5-fluorouracil; Bleo, bleomycin; DDP, cisplatin; RV, radical vulvectomy; GND, inguinal lymphadenectomy; Meg, megavoltage; RV, radical vulvectomy; LE, local excision; PE, posterior exenteration; H, hyperthermia; I, implant; NA, not given; NG, not available.

1988 staging.
1992 staging.

In cervical cancer, the planned course of chemotherapy has been followed by surgery, radiotherapy, or both. Reported response rates have been high, and preliminary results with NACT followed by radical surgery are somewhat encouraging.

In 1993, Benedetti-Panici and colleagues reported the results of a pilot study using NACT followed by surgery in patients with locally advanced carcinoma of the vulva. Twenty-one patients with FIGO stage IVA (clinical) were treated. Chemotherapy consisted of cisplatin, 100 mg/m² intravenously on day 1; bleomycin, 15 mg intravenously on days 1 and 8; and methotrexate, 300 mg/m² intravenously plus citrovorum factor rescue dose on day 8, repeated every 21 days for two to three cycles. A partial response was observed in the primary tumor in two patients, and progression of disease was seen in two other patients. Eleven complete and three partial responses...
FIGURE 45.23. Desquamative vulvitis and mucositis during chemoradiotherapy.

were noted in the patients with nodal disease. On pathologic examination of the 19 patients undergoing resection, 15 had inguinal lymph node metastases and 9 of these had pelvis lymph node metastases. Local control was achieved in 12 of 21 (57%) of the patients (3 to 37 months), and the 3-year corrected survival rate was 24%.

The study just discussed does not suggest any benefit of NACT over the previously described treatment approaches, and the authors of that report subsequently have used the chemoradiotherapeutic approach. Two European cooperative studies used bleomycin, methotrexate, and CCNU and reported similar results.

Treatment of Locally Advanced Disease: Summary

Ultraradical surgery appears to be a reasonable treatment option for selected patients with locally advanced but resectable carcinoma of the vulva, especially in the absence of nodal metastases. The role of radiotherapy in the treatment of this malignancy is still being defined. In our experience, teletherapy combined with interstitial needles for locally advanced carcinoma of the vulva appears to be effective but associated with extensive morbidity. With the use of more modern treatment techniques and better definition of the optimal delivery of radiotherapy to the vulva, the role of this modality has been expanded. A modified course of radiotherapy used in combination with other treatment modalities appears to be more efficacious than radiotherapy alone in the treatment of this disease. Combined treatment modalities for this disease present an important form of management. Especially in patients with locally unresectable disease, initial treatment with external radiation therapy possibly combined with chemotherapy appears to be the most reasonable approach. With the use of radiosurgical techniques and perhaps random biopsies, an additional treatment course could be planned. Careful planning of how much surgery may be necessary or how much volume needs additional radiation therapy may contribute to an overall decrease in morbidity in these patients.

Management of the regional lymph nodes in the context of combined treatment modalities has been variable and, by necessity, highly individualized.

The management of locally advanced vulvar cancer continues to evolve as reports of small series of these patients accumulate. Considering the relative paucity of data and the rarity and heterogeneity of these tumors, no clear-cut management guidelines can be constructed. It seems reasonable to individualize the management of these patients, carefully considering all of the various treatment modalities available.

RECURRENT SQUAMOUS CELL CARCINOMA OF THE VULVA

About 15% to 40% of patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva develop recurrence after treatment. As discussed previously, the incidence of recurrence is influenced by a number of factors, including the original stage of the disease, the depth of invasion, and the regional lymph node status. About 70% of recurrences have a local component, and 55% to 90% of these are isolated local recurrences (Fig. 45.24A-B). This is more likely to occur in the patient with negative lymph nodes at initial treatment. For patients with recurrent squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva, recurrence site is the strongest predictor of outcome. Only with an isolated local recurrence is there a reasonable expectation of successful salvage therapy (Table 45.11).

The presence of inguinal nodal metastases, especially when multiple, bilateral, or extranodal, predisposes the patient to recurrence within the groin or pelvis and systemically. The prognosis for a patient with regional or systemic recurrence is poor. Regional recurrences do not lend themselves well to salvage resection, radiotherapy is not very effective against grossly recurrent disease, and there is no effective systemic therapy. A small percentage of patients with groin recurrence can be salvaged with resection followed by radiotherapy.

Certain factors predispose the patient to develop local recurrence, including a close resection margin (less than 1 cm), deep invasion, and a large tumor size. When a patient develops

an isolated local recurrence, the reported salvage rate ranges from 40% to 80%. Treatment depends on the individual situation. When feasible, radical resection is performed. Otherwise, the best approach is probably preoperative radiotherapy with or without chemotherapy followed by resection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigator</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Local recurrence only (%)</th>
<th>Groin (± local)</th>
<th>Pelvis (± local)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buchler et al., 1979</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>13/18 (72)</td>
<td>0/7</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Podratz et al., 1982</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>15/30 (50)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simonson, 1984</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>11/29 (38)</td>
<td>1/12</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prempree and Amornmarn, 1984</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>6/12 (50)</td>
<td>2/5</td>
<td>0/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hopkins et al., 1990</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>19/24 (79)</td>
<td>0/10</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolmans et al., 1992</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>9/17 (53)</td>
<td>2/12</td>
<td>1/11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piura et al., 1993</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>24/39 (61)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stelmans et al., 1996</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>13/21 (62)</td>
<td>0/12</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maggino et al., 2000</td>
<td>187</td>
<td>56/94 (60)</td>
<td>8/33</td>
<td>0/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTALS</td>
<td>519</td>
<td>166/284 (58)</td>
<td>13/91</td>
<td>2/27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NA, not available.
*All patients treated with radiotherapy only.

Operative Techniques

Radical Vulvectomy with Bilateral Inguinofemoral Lymphadenectomy

The patient is placed in the “ski position” in adjustable stirrups so that the legs can be elevated to high lithotomy during the perineal phase of the operation.

The radical vulvectomy with bilateral inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy is ideally performed with the use of two teams, and dissection of each groin is performed simultaneously. A crescent-shaped incision is made starting about 2 to 4 cm medial and about 2 cm caudal to the anterior superior iliac spine (Fig. 45.25). The incision gradually curves downward.
just above the superior border of the inguinal ligament medi-
ally to the inguinal ring or about 2 cm below and 2 cm medial


to the pubic tubercle. Unless there is a large cutaneous lesion or
palpably suspicious nodes, the mons pubis is spared, and sep-


arate incisions with a skin bridge are made as illustrated. For
anterior lesions, such as those involving the clitoris, a portion
of the mons pubis is included in the resection and the lymph-


adenectomy on one or both sides may be done en bloc with
the radical vulvectomy as illustrated in Figure 45.8A. From the
lateral points, caudal incisions are carried medially so as to ex-
cise a strip of skin (optional) 2 to 4 cm in width. Excising an
ellipse of skin may reduce the likelihood of skin necrosis and
facilitate more complete dissection of the groin. This incision
is designed to extend from just below the fossa ovalis (this can
generally be identified clinically as the area just medial to the
femoral pulsation in the groin) to the top of the labioscrotal
fold above a point just medial to the external inguinal ring. In
the presence of grossly positive inguinal lymph nodes, a wider
resection of both the groin skin and fat is necessary to help
ensure adequate tumor clearance. The separate groin skin inci-
sion may also be done vertically (with the leg), centered across
the fossa ovalis and about halfway between the femoral artery
and pubic tubercle.

Leaving a layer of subcutaneous tissue with the skin, the su-


perior incision is undermined so that the lymph node-bearing
adipose tissue above the inguinal ligament and around the su-


uperficial circumflex iliac, as well as the superficial epigastric
vessels, are included with the resection. These vessels are lig-
ated as they are encountered. The superior dissection over the
groin area is carried down to the superior border of the in-

guinal ligament. The midline aspect of the superior flap can be
mobilized off the pubic bone and rectus fascia at this point to
facilitate later closure of the wound without tension. Dissection
of the block of inguinal tissue is carried inferiorly off of the in-


guinal ligament. The lateral corner is dissected medially off of
the sartorius fascia (Fig. 45.26). The inferior flap of the lower
incision is also mobilized, especially medially, and the saph-


enos vein is identified as it enters the region of the femoral
triangle (Figs. 45.27-45.29). Accessory saphenous veins can
also be seen entering this area. The long saphenous vein is
isolated and ligated with a free-tie and a transfixion ligature of
2-0 polyglactin (Vicryl). The vein with its surrounding block of
lymph node-bearing tissue is dissected superficially off of the sar-
torius and adductor fascia. Dissection of the block of inguinal
tissue is continued from the three sides toward the fossa ovalis.
As this area is approached, the overlying cribriform fascia is
recognized, and the femoral artery pulsation can be palpated
in the lateral aspect. En bloc dissection continues and includes
the contents of the fossa ovalis (Fig. 45.30). The area under the
fascia lateral to the femoral artery should be left undisturbed.
There are no lymph nodes of consequence here, and
avoidance of this area prevents injury to the femoral nerve and
possibly reduces subsequent lymphedema. Rather, resection of
the cribriform fascia begins over the area of femoral pulsation,
exposing the underlying femoral vessels. A few small branches
of the femoral nerve are sacrificed during this dissection. The
sheath of the femoral artery is incised along its anteromedial
aspect from somewhere between the base of the fossa ovalis
and the apex of the femoral triangle to its emergence from
under the inguinal ligament. Branches, such as the external pu-
dendral artery, are ligated as they are encountered. There is no
purpose in dissecting under the artery or between the femoral
artery and vein. Rather, the dissection that has been performed
over the top of the artery is continued over the top of the vein,
mobilizing the specimen to the medial aspect of the femoral
vein. During this process, the saphenofemoral venous junction
is identified, ligated with a 2-0 silk free-tie followed by a suture
ligature for security, and transected, thus removing several cen-
timeters of the saphenous vein with the specimen (Figs. 45.31
and 45.32).

An alternative method, as long as there are no adher-
ent suspicious lymph nodes, is to dissect the saphenous vein
free of the specimen so that it can be preserved, poten-
tially reducing the risk of subsequent leg edema. Complete


FIGURE 45.26. Corner of groin specimen dissected
up medially off sartorius muscle. Lateral portion of
fossa ovalis and cribriform fascia are exposed.
dissection of the space medial to the vein is important because this is where most of the femoral groin nodes are located. The specimen is freed from the femoral vein medially, from the inguinal ligament superiorly, and from the underlying pectineal fascia. Dissection is continued toward and off of the adductor longus fascia until the labiocutaneous fold is reached.

To protect the femoral vessels in the event of subsequent wound breakdown, the sartorius muscle can be transposed over them at this point. Alternatively, the vessels can be covered by a variety of other materials or simple approximation of musculofascial tissues. To accomplish sartorius transposition, the muscle is divided with cautery at its tendinous attachment to the anterior superior iliac spine. The proximal end of the muscle is then mobilized and transposed so that it covers the femoral vessels. It is sutured at this location to the inguinal ligament and pectineal fascia with 0 polyglactin (Fig. 45.33). We have largely discontinued the practice of transposing the sartorius flesh.
muscles because of the improved healing of these wounds and less radical dissection.

If a superficial inguinal lymphadenectomy has been chosen (also generally done through separate incisions), the same general dissection is done except that the cribriform fascia and underlying femoral lymph node-bearing tissue are left intact (Figs. 45.34 and 45.35). All lymph nodes around the saphenofemoral junction should be included, and any prominent deeper lymph nodes medial to the femoral vein should be removed. In the absence of clinical suspicion, the only lymph nodes of concern deep to the cribriform fascia are those medial to the femoral vein. There is unlikely to be a significant increase in morbidity by extending the dissection to include removal of these femoral lymph nodes. There is not an apparent major distinction between this dissection and a contemporary formal inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy.

If a prominent femoral lymph node can be identified at the most superior aspect of the dissection in the space just medial to the femoral vein (Cloquet node or node of Rosenmüller), this can be used as a sentinel lymph node when deciding on the risk of pelvic lymph node metastases. When such a lymph node is positive, a search should be made for further nodes above this by carrying the dissection up the femoral ring under the inguinal ligament.

A pelvic lymphadenectomy, when chosen, is done immediately after completion of the groin dissection. The pelvic lymphadenectomy is performed in a retroperitoneal manner through the same groin incision, which can be extended...
FIGURE 45.33. Transposed sartorius muscle.

laterally and superiorly (in a “J” or vertical manner), if necessary. About 2 cm above and parallel to the inguinal ligament, an incision is made through the external oblique, internal oblique, and transversalis musculofascial layers (Fig. 45.36). The retroperitoneal space is then opened bluntly, mobilizing the peritoneum and ureter medially. It is necessary to ligate and transect the inferior epigastric vessels and round ligament to fully develop this space. A self-retaining retractor or handheld retractors can be used for adequate exposure of the retroperitoneal space. The pararectal and paravesical spaces are opened bluntly, fully exposing the iliac vessels and obturator fossa. All (or suspicious) lymph node–bearing tissue from the external iliac and internal iliac vessels and the superficial obturator fossa is removed. Separate pelvic Jackson-Pratt drains can be placed at the discretion of the surgeon. The incised musculofascial tissues are closed in a single layer with no. 1 synthetic, absorbable, monofilament sutures. Special attention is paid to closure of the internal inguinal ring with 2-0 silk sutures. The wounds are irrigated, and hemostasis is secured. When performed through separate incisions, the groin wounds are closed at this point.

Soft, active suction drains are placed in each groin and are brought out through separate stab wounds superolaterally. The groin wound may be approximated with a large mass closure using no. 2 polypropylene vertical mattress retention sutures (Fig. 45.37A). Three to five sutures are placed on each side. Each suture starts several centimeters from the edge of the superior flap, with a bite then taken of the underlying inguinal ligament. This is designed to close the dead space under the superior flap. Under the inferior flap, a bite of sartorius, adductor, or pectinealis fascia is taken (with care taken to avoid injury to the femoral vessels and nerve), followed by placement of the suture from inside to out through the inferior flap several centimeters from the edge. Again, this is designed to close the dead space of the inferior flap and, once pulled together, to close the dead space of the midline wound. Going back from inferior to superior, a small bite of each skin edge is then taken, which is designed to approximate these edges. The sutures are not tied until all have been placed. The sutures are tied somewhat loosely, with only enough tension to bring the wound together (Fig. 45.37A). The skin is further closed with stainless steel staples (Fig. 45.37C). When there has been less extensive dissection, the groin wound may be closed with 2-0 polyglycolic acid suture, approximating first the dead space with interrupted sutures and then the skin with vertical mattress or subcuticular sutures. En bloc groin incisions are closed in an identical manner, but this is delayed until completion of the entire resection. With separate incisions, the medial aspects of the groin wounds are under much less tension and are easily closed because of preservation of the inguinal skin bridge.

Separation of the groin and vulvar wounds and especially closure without tension are the factors thought to be largely responsible for the reduced wound complications seen with the three-incision technique.

After completion of the inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy, attention is turned to the radical vulvectomy. The surgeon may elect to change the position of the legs to high lithotomy;
FIGURE 45.35. Completed superficial inguinal lymphadenectomy.

“high-low” Allen-Brown stirrups are useful for this purpose (for a difficult perineal dissection, high lithotomy with sling stirrups is preferred). With en bloc resection, the inguinal specimens are mobilized toward the vulva as just described (Fig. 45.38). From the point of completion of the inferior inguinal dissections, incisions are continued down along the labioscral folds on each side and across the perineum, where they meet. A medial mucosal incision is made along the introitus extending through the anterior vestibule and around the urethral meatus.

When radical vulvectomy is performed through a separate vulvar incision, the same labioscral, posterior, and mucosal incisions are used and the same vulvar tissue is excised (Fig. 45.39). The superior incision extends from the top of the labioscral folds as an inverted V, with the point above the base of the clitoris. As previously discussed, a variable amount of superior tissue (i.e., mons pubis) is removed, depending on the location and size of the lesion.

The radical vulvectomy incisions may be modified somewhat depending on the location and extent of the tumor and the condition of the remaining vulvar skin. The surgeon should attempt to attain at least a 2-cm margin of normal-appearing skin or mucosa around the tumor. To accomplish this, it may be necessary to excise a portion of vagina, anus, or distal urethra. For an anterior lesion, it is reasonable to spare the perineal body; but for a posterior lesion, it is important to incorporate radical resection of this area. For a lesion (especially superficial) in proximity to the urethral meatus or anus, it is reasonable to limit the margin of resection to 1 cm (but not less) to preserve these structures and their function.

The labioscral incisions are extended to the lateral margins of the deep fascia of the urogenital diaphragm (Fig. 45.40). The internal pudendal vessels are ligated as they are encountered entering the vulva at about the 4 o’clock and 8 o’clock positions. Superiorly, the specimen is dissected off the pubic peristomeum and adductor fascia. The vascular base of the clitoris is clamped and transected, and a transfixion suture ligature is placed (Fig. 45.41). If deemed necessary, the attachment of the ischiocavernous muscles can also be transected at this level. Dissection of the superior portion of the vulva off of the pubic bone and adductor fascia is completed and joined, in the midline, to the transvestibular mucosal incision above the urethra. Inferiorly, a variable portion of the perineum (and in some cases the anus) is dissected upward and cephalad toward the vaginal incision (Fig. 45.42). Care is taken as the vaginal incision is approached above the perineum to avoid injury to the anal canal. Using the index finger or a large Kelly clamp, the surgeon separates the vaginal tube bluntly from the underlying soft tissue cephalad to the vestibular structures. The mucosal incision is then completed, separating the vagina (with the urethra) from the specimen. This dissection can be facilitated by splitting the specimen in the midline anteriorly or posteriorly. The remainder of the dissection off the underlying deep fascia of the urogenital diaphragm is completed. Clamps and transfixion suture ligatures of no. 0 or 2-0 polyglactin are used during transection of the tissue along the side of the vaginal tube in the region of the vestibular bulbs (Fig. 45.43). After removal of the specimen, the wounds are copiously irrigated with antibiotic solution, and hemostasis is secured (Fig. 45.44). After en bloc resection, the superior abdominal wall flap and the groin and vulvar thigh flaps are further mobilized.
FIGURE 45.37. A: Large block closure of groin wounds (separate in this case) with vertical mattress retention sutures. Note drains in place. B: The groin closure sutures are tied somewhat loosely. C: Groin closure completed with stainless steel skin staples.

as necessary to achieve closure of the wounds without tension. Any ischemic-appearing skin is excised. It is very useful, especially if there is an element of vaginal relaxation, to mobilize the lower vagina to facilitate wound closure. Any pelvic relaxation defects (i.e., cystocele, rectocele, loss of the posterior urethrovesical angle) are repaired at this time. To the extent that it is necessary or possible, the perineal body is also reinforced or reconstructed at this time.

The vulvar wound and the perineal area are closed with vertical mattress 2-0 delayed-absorbable sutures (Fig. 45.45). Depending on the amount of tissue that has been removed, the superior portion of an en bloc wound may be difficult to close. When done through a separate incision, closure of the vulvar wound is under much less tension, again because of preservation of the inguinial skin bridges. Careful attention must be paid to closure of the periurethral area. The urethra should be secured on a straight course without tension. A hood of skin above the urethra is also avoided because this can obstruct the path of the urinary stream and cause spraying.

As previously discussed, it is reasonable in most patients to manage the vulvar lesion locally with a modified radical vulvectomy. This operation consists of radical removal of the portion of the vulva containing the tumor. It is performed with the techniques described earlier except that the excision is basically limited to removal of that particular part of the vulva. The lateral and deep tumor margins are not compromised by this operation. After the surgeon carefully demarcates a 2-cm radius of normal skin or mucosa around the tumor, an encompassing incision is designed that will readily close and be as cosmetically acceptable as possible (Figs. 45.12, 45.46, and 45.47).

Postoperative Care. After closure, silver sulfadiazine (Silvadene, Hoechst Marion Roussel) cream is applied to the
FIGURE 45.38. Bilateral inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy is complete. Planned incisions for the en bloc radical vulvectomy are shown.

FIGURE 45.39. Bilateral inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy through separate incisions is completed, and wounds are closed. Separate incisions for radical vulvectomy are marked.

FIGURE 45.40. Labioscrotal incisions extended to the deep fascia of the urogenital diaphragm.

FIGURE 45.41. Dissection proceeds dorsally off of the pubic bone. The vascular base of the clitoris clamped, followed by transection and ligature.
FIGURE 45.42. Perineal body and posterior vulvar tissues are dissected away from the anus.

FIGURE 45.43. The vascular vestibular tissue along the sides of the vaginal tube is clamped. Transection and suture ligation follow.

FIGURE 45.44. Radical vulvectomy resection is completed.

FIGURE 45.45. Closure of the vulvar wound is completed.
FIGURE 45.46. Radical hemivulvectomy.

perineal wound, and a light dressing is placed. In the recovery room, ice is applied to the vulvar wound, and this is continued off and on for 48 to 72 hours. On postoperative day 3 or 4, the patient is started on a regimen of cleansing the vulvar wound with a showerhead, followed immediately by complete drying of the area with a blow dryer using cool air. This is done three times a day and as needed (i.e., after a liquid bowel movement) and is continued until the wounds are healed. If moisture in the wound is a problem despite this regimen, other useful measures include placing a roll of gauze between the legs and against the wound between washings, increasing the frequency of washings, not wearing an undergarment, and applying a heat lamp to the area three times a day between washings. All of these efforts are aimed at keeping this normally warm and moist area clean and dry, which reduces the risk of infection and promotes healing. Intermittently leaving the legs slightly apart to air (the immodest position) is also beneficial. The patient should also avoid sitting on the healing wound.

If the vulvar wound is left open, postoperative management is the same except that silver sulfadiazine cream is applied after each showerhead, blow drying until there is good granulation tissue formation. In addition, these women are seen more frequently in the office to ensure good wound care and healing.

FIGURE 45.47. Closure of hemivulvectomy wound.
Reconstructive Techniques for the Vulva and Groin

After radical resection for carcinoma of the vulva, the wounds can generally be closed primarily. This is greatly facilitated when the incisions are modified somewhat (as with sparing of the mons pubis), and especially when separate incisions are used. When an extensive resection is necessary, it may not be possible to close the wound primarily, or at least not without considerable tension. This is often the case after resection of a recurrent tumor, where previous radical surgery has already left a paucity of tissue. If the area was treated previously with radiotherapy, then closure may be difficult because of the lack of elasticity of the fibrotic tissue and because of radiation-induced healing impairment. Under these various circumstances, closure of the incisions and healing can be facilitated by a variety of reconstructive procedures. Other potential benefits of such reconstruction include maintenance of anal, urethral, and sexual function and a more cosmetically acceptable result. However, leaving the wound open is sometimes the best option, and healing by secondary intention is usually quite satisfactory.

Closure of groin and vulvar wounds using reconstructive techniques involves moving a block of expendable tissue (with its blood supply intact) from some nearby site into the deficient area. The mobilized block of tissue is commonly referred to as a flap. Flaps are classified according to what layers of tissue they include and according to their blood supply. The types of flaps that have been useful in reconstruction of the vulva and groin are full-thickness skin (random and arterial based), fasciocutaneous, and myocutaneous flaps. Some flaps remain completely attached at their base and are rotated into the defect, whereas others are partially separated from the base and are transposed as an island of tissue.

A full-thickness skin flap involves rotating an adjacent block of skin with its underlying subcutaneous tissue into the defect. The flap is mobilized from the donor site but remains attached at its base; through this base travels the arterial and venous circulation. The blood supply of the flap may be random, or it may depend on a specifically planned arterial source. A random flap relies on the many small musculocutaneous perforating vessels that are retained through the base. For this reason, the subcutaneous layer must be kept thick, and the length of the flap should be greater than the width of the base (1.0 to 1.5 times greater). This is the type of flap most commonly used for reconstruction of a radical vaultectomy wound. The main disadvantage of such flaps is that they are less reliable in patients with impaired wound healing ability, such as those with diabetes, heavy tobacco users, those with vascular disease, and patients who have previously received radiation therapy to the region.

A few specific arterial-based full-thickness skin flaps, sometimes called axial flaps, have been used for reconstruction in vulvar cancer patients. Arterial sources of these flaps have included the internal pudendal, circumflex iliac, superficial circumflex iliac, superficial inferior epigastric, superficial branch of the deep femoral, and superficial external iliac arteries. With some of these arterial flaps, the deep fascia must be carefully mobilized with the subcutaneous tissue to maintain an adequate blood supply. The main advantage of an arterial flap, because of the good arterial blood supply, is that it can be considerably longer than a random flap. However, arterial flaps are technically more difficult to construct and have a low margin for error in terms of compromising blood supply. As previously mentioned, some full-thickness skin flaps are designed to include the deep fascia taken off the underlying muscle. These are known as fasciocutaneous flaps, and they are more reliable than random cutaneous flaps because the preserved fascial layer provides additional musclecutaneous perforators along its length. A fasciocutaneous flap can also be relatively long and is transposable as an island of tissue. Some fasciocutaneous flaps have a designated arterial blood supply. Locally useful fasciocutaneous flaps include the pudendal thigh, superior medial thigh, inferior gluteal, and groin flaps.

A myocutaneous flap makes use of an expendable muscle with its intact overlying fascia and cutaneous tissue. The use of these flaps for vulvovaginal reconstruction began after the 1976 report by McCraw and colleagues. A substantial blood supply is preserved through a narrow pedicle connected to the muscle, which allows the flap to be transposed as an island with a wide arc of rotation. Another advantage of a myocutaneous flap is the capacity to bring cutaneous perforators as a blood supply separate and independent from that of the operative site. This makes these flaps particularly valuable in the reconstruction of heavily radiated tissues. These flaps are also somewhat bulky and have the ability to fill a large tissue defect. The main disadvantage of myocutaneous flaps is that they are technically demanding, and the survival ability of some of these flaps is somewhat tenuous.

The difficulties resulting from a large wound created by extensive radical vulvectomy with bilateral inguinalfemoral lymphadenectomy were previously discussed. Reconstruction of these wounds with bilateral tensor fascia latae (TFL) myocutaneous flaps has been reported. The TFL originates from the anterior superior iliac spine. It inserts into the fascia lata and is supplied by the lateral femoral circumflex artery. The base is just lateral to the groin wound, into which the flap is directly rotated. The flaps are easily made long enough to reach and close the often large area created by resection of the mons pubis and anterior vulva. A TFL myocutaneous flap is also useful for reconstruction of the groin after extensive resection for recurrent disease (Fig. 45.48).

The rectus abdominis myocutaneous flap, based on the inferior epigastric artery, is also useful for reconstruction of a large groin defect. The block of tissue based on this muscle is taken from the abdominal wall, and the muscle is divided at the superior border of the flap. The island of cutaneous tissue is completely mobilized with its blood supply attached to the muscle, and this is further mobilized inferiorly. Thus allows the island flap to rotate down easily into the groin (or vulva) through a generous subcutaneous tunnel. The rectus abdominis myocutaneous flap is also suitable for the reconstruction of large vulvar wounds (Fig. 45.49).
tissues. Such a resection removes the entire perineal body as well as portions of the superficial muscles and leaves a large defect that is difficult to close (Fig. 45.50). Poor healing of this area may significantly compromise both anal and coital function. The use of flaps for such a defect allows closure without tension and brings tissue with a good blood supply into the area, which promotes healing and helps recreate a perineal body. Preventing tension on the anal apparatus helps promote healing of its associated reconstructed musculature and helps preserve its function. Reconstruction of a perineal body separates the vagina from fecal contamination and helps create a smooth and less scarred platform for intercourse. For reconstruction of such defects, we prefer to use local, full-thickness rhomboid skin flaps (Figs. 45.51–45.54). Closure of a larger defect involving the perineal or perianal and vulvar areas may be better accomplished with gluteal thigh fasciocutaneous, gluteus maximus myocutaneous, or gracilis myocutaneous flaps.

Closure of a heavily radiated wound should be accomplished with a block of relatively unradiated tissue, the blood supply to which is unlikely to have been significantly compromised by the prior treatment. In general, myocutaneous flaps are better for this purpose.
FIGURE 45.51. Planning rhomboid flap. Defect is divided into two rhomboids. Configuration and measurement of the flap are based on this rhomboid defect, as shown. Numbers and letters indicate proposed location of flap in reconstructed site.

FIGURE 45.52. Bilateral rhomboid flaps are developed.

FIGURE 45.53. Posterior closure is accomplished with the rotated flaps.

FIGURE 45.54. Healed rhomboid flaps. See color version of figure.

POSTOPERATIVE ADJUVANT THERAPY

This section deals with adjuvant therapy following radical or modified radical vulvectomy with inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy. The role of adjuvant therapy in the management of locally advanced vulvar cancer is discussed elsewhere in this chapter. Other than with locally advanced disease, preoperative adjuvant therapy has generally not been used or recommended.

Postoperatively, the only adjuvant therapy that appears to be of value is radiotherapy (+/- chemotherapy). This can consist of radiotherapy to the local area of primary tumor resection, to the groins, to the pelvic nodal areas, or to all three.
Postoperative radiotherapy administered to the remaining vulvar tissues is rarely indicated, but should be considered when an extensive tumor has been resected with positive or close margins that cannot be readily excised further. As discussed later, this type of therapy may be particularly indicated in some Bartholin cancers because they are sometimes difficult to resect widely as a result of their deep-seated location.

Postoperative adjuvant radiotherapy has been used primarily in patients with metastases to the groin lymph nodes. Substantial data now exist regarding the prognosis and recurrence pattern in these patients. Because vulvar cancer has a recurrence pattern that tends to remain largely locoregional, its use for patients at high risk of recurrence is rational. There are further data to substantiate the benefit of radiotherapy in this setting. When a patient has metastases limited to microscopic involvement of one or perhaps two unilateral groin lymph nodes, the incidence of groin recurrence and pelvic lymph node metastases is very low, the overall prognosis is still reasonably good, and the benefit of postoperative radiotherapy is not great. If, however, there is gross replacement or extracapsular involvement of a lymph node, or involvement of three or more lymph nodes, the risk of groin recurrence and pelvic nodal metastases is substantial and the benefit of adjuvant postoperative radiotherapy is much more evident. In the GOG study previously discussed, the value of adjunctive radiation therapy was in the reduction of groin recurrences. When such treatment is anticipated, placement of metal clips to localize metastatic sites may aid the radiation oncologist in treatment planning. Postoperative adjuvant chemotherapy, either alone or in combination with radiotherapy, has not been extensively studied, but it is unlikely to be of substantial benefit with use of the currently available agents.

**Mortality and Morbidity of Radical Vulvar Surgery**

Even though most patients affected by invasive carcinoma of the vulva are elderly, radical vulvar surgery is generally well tolerated. This is attributed to the external nature of the operation, as well as to the intensive perioperative care that the patients receive. However, 2% to 4% of patients die in the first 4 weeks postoperatively, usually from cardiovascular or pulmonary complications. In addition, early groin wound complications are common, and long-term sexual dysfunction has generally been the rule. Treatment modifications over the past 3 decades undoubtedly have reduced the incidence and severity of these problems.

**Short-Term Complications**

In published series of large numbers of patients undergoing en bloc radical vulvectomy with bilateral inguinal/ femoral lymphadenectomy, a high percentage (overall about 50%) of significant wound breakdown in the inguinal sites has been reported (Fig. 45.55). Extensive undermining of skin, fluid collections in the wound, and infection are all contributing factors, but the main problem is the considerable tension placed on these wounds during closure. Suggested but unproven methods of prevention include prophylactic antibiotics, attempts to ligate lymphatic vessels, and prophylactic suction drainage. Modifying the resection by preserving the mons pubis, minimizing undermining of skin, leaving a layer of fat with the skin, and excising any dark or dusky skin at the end of the operation reduce groin wound complications. With more extensive resection, plastic reconstruction (such as with TFL flaps) is also likely to be helpful. However, the single most effective method of reducing groin wound complications. With more extensive resection, plastic reconstruction (such as with TFL flaps) is also likely to be helpful. However, the single most effective method of reducing groin wound breakdown (to around 20%) has been the use of separate incisions, as previously discussed. Management of groin wound breakdown is similar to that of other wounds, with debridement and wet-to-dry dressings. During debridement, the surgeon must be cognizant of the femoral vessels. If infection has completely cleared, the wound is clean, and the tissues are pliable, secondary closure may be attempted.

About 10% to 20% of patients develop a clinically evident fluid collection (seroma or lymphocyst) in the groin. When such fluid collections are small and asymptomatic, they should be left alone. The most commonly recommended treatment has been repeated aspirations until resolution. When there is
Late Complications

After groin node dissection, it is not uncommon for a patient to develop some degree of lower extremity edema. It is most often transient or mild, but persists chronically as a significant problem in about 10% of patients. Factors that have been implicated as contributing to this complication include the performance of a pelvic lymphadenectomy, groin radiotherapy, major groin wound breakdown, postoperative lower extremity lymphangitis, sartorius muscle transposition, and preoperative pelvic lymphangiography. Suggested methods for reducing this problem include limiting the groin dissection to the sentinel lymph nodes when feasible, confining femoral lymphadenectomy to the medial side of the femoral vein, preserving the fascia lata, and avoiding vessel skeletonization, postoperative femoral vessel rupture is now exceedingly rare.

Patients who have undergone radical vulvectomy with bilateral inguinalfemoral lymphadenectomy are at high risk for thromboembolic complications because most are elderly and have coexisting medical problems, malignancy, and femoral vein trauma, and have undergone prolonged surgery and prolonged bed rest. If prophylaxis fails, then treatment is promptly begun with heparin.

Rarely, a rectovaginal fistula develops days to weeks after radical vulvectomy. Prevention of this complication is based on preoperative evacuation of the colon, careful surgical dissection of this area, and prompt recognition of rectal entry. Surgical repair of the fistula is carried out once the area has healed and regained its elasticity.

Osteitis pubis and osteomyelitis are rare complications that may not become symptomatic until several weeks after radical vulvectomy. The patient reports pain over the pubic bone and difficulty with ambulation, which may become chronic and debilitating. This complication is more likely to develop if the periosteum is traumatized, although this is not always avoidable. Extensive use of the cautery on the periosteum should be avoided. The mainstay of treatment is bed rest and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs. Even more rarely, frank osteomyelitis of the pubic bone develops. This is a serious condition that requires debridement and drainage of the bone, along with prolonged antibiotic therapy.

In the past, large series of patients undergoing en bloc radical vulvectomy with bilateral inguinalfemoral lymphadenectomy reported a 1% to 2% incidence of severe postoperative hemorrhage from femoral vessel rupture. This was related to the extensive wound breakdown that occurred in a high percentage of these patients, with associated infection and necrosis involving the exposed and denuded femoral vessel walls. Coverage of the vessels by transposition of the sartorius muscle largely prevented this complication. With the use of separate incisions as well as other techniques that have reduced groin wound breakdown, and with avoidance of vessel skeletonization, postoperative femoral vessel rupture is now exceedingly rare.

Patients who have undergone radical vulvectomy with bilateral inguinalfemoral lymphadenectomy are at high risk for thromboembolic complications because most are elderly and have coexisting medical problems, malignancy, and femoral vein trauma, and have undergone prolonged surgery and prolonged bed rest. If prophylaxis fails, then treatment is promptly begun with heparin.

Rarely, a rectovaginal fistula develops days to weeks after radical vulvectomy. Prevention of this complication is based on preoperative evacuation of the colon, careful surgical dissection of this area, and prompt recognition of rectal entry. Surgical repair of the fistula is carried out once the area has healed and regained its elasticity.
develop lymphangitis, which presents with fever, pain, and redness of the involved extremity. This condition is treated promptly with an intravenous antibiotic that covers streptococci.

A few good studies on sexual dysfunction after radical vulvectomy have been published. Generally, the capacity for intercourse remains. However, patients experience a marked sense of disfigurement and a reduction in genital sensitivity. Dyspareunia can occur as a result of stenosis or scar tissue (Fig. 45.57A–B), and these problems may be surgically treatable. Some patients remain orgasmic. There is evidence to suggest that a modified radical vulvectomy, especially with preservation of the anterior vulvar structures, helps maintain sexual function. It does seem reasonable to assume that sparing as much normal vulvar tissue as possible is less likely to produce sexual dysfunction and a sense of disfigurement than is radical resection.

During follow-up of radical vulvectomy patients, it is not uncommon to discover pelvic relaxation (cystocele or rectocele) (Fig. 45.58). This may be related to resection of the perineal body with the attendant loss of its support functions, or it may simply be a result of aging. If the patient’s medical condition and extent of cancer surgery permit, any stress urinary incontinence or defects in vaginal support should be repaired at the time of radical vulvectomy because they are likely to worsen subsequently.

Spraying or misdirection of the urinary stream is related to poor alignment of the urethra, a hood of periclitoral tissue obstructing the path of the urinary stream (Fig. 45.57), or asymmetry created by a hemivulvectomy. Digital manipulation or the use of an applied collection or directing device is useful, but in some cases minor surgical revision is necessary.

Rarely, after inguino-femoral lymphadenectomy, a femoral or inguinal hernia develops. When a hernia or any apparent weakness of the femoral or inguinal canal is noted at the time of surgery, it should be repaired at that time. Avoiding incision of the inguinal ligament is also important in the prevention of this complication.

Follow-Up

Following completion of treatment for vulvar cancer, long-term follow-up is warranted. It is reasonable to examine these women at least every 6 months for the first 5 years and annually thereafter. Some women are at higher risk for recurrence or have ongoing problems, and more frequent office visits may be warranted.

Follow-up is directed at early detection of recurrence (or later, a new primary vulvar tumor), identification and management of treatment-related complications, and surveillance for associated malignancies.

As previously discussed, it is only with local recurrence of vulvar cancer that there is a reasonable expectation for effective salvage treatment. Approximately 10% to 15% of women treated for vulvar cancer will develop an isolated local recurrence or a subsequent new primary vulvar tumor, well more than half of whom receive effective salvage therapy. During follow-up visits, attention is directed at careful inspection and palpation of the vulvovaginal area and groins. Annual cervical or vaginal cuff cytology is also recommended. Patients are encouraged to do self-examinations and promptly report new symptoms or lesions.
VULVAR MELANOMA

Melanoma is the second most common histologic type of malignancy of the vulva, but still accounts for only 5% to 10% of vulvar cancers (Fig. 45.59). This lesion occurs predominantly in white women in the seventh decade, and although the vulva covers only 1% to 2% of the body surface, vulvar melanoma accounts for 3% to 5% of malignant melanomas in women. The most common presenting symptoms are bleeding, a lump or changing mole, and pruritus or irritation. In a small percentage of patients, there is a family history of melanoma.

Melanoma of the vulva is uncommon, so most of the literature on the subject consists of retrospective studies of small numbers of patients. For this reason, the behavior of this tumor is difficult to define, and a rationale for treatment continues to evolve. However, it seems clear that the pattern of regional metastases is the same as that for squamous cell carcinoma; the behavior of the tumor is predicted best by a microstaging system. Importantly, the behavior of vulvar melanoma appears to be very similar to that of cutaneous melanomas in general.

Based on information that has accumulated over the past 3 decades, the treatment of vulvar melanoma is individualized based on clinical-pathologic factors, including microstaging, and modeled using experience derived from cutaneous melanomas in general.

What Do We Know about Cutaneous Melanoma?

Important areas of information that can be extrapolated from the general melanoma literature include individualization of management based primarily on microstaging, determination of what constitutes an adequate margin of resection, and definition of which groups of patients might benefit from an elective regional lymph node dissection.

Clark's classification had been used extensively for the microstaging of melanomas, with division into five levels of invasion (Fig. 45.60). Subsequently, Breslow's classification—based on millimeters of invasion from the upper granular layer of the epidermis to the deepest point of invasion—has become widely used. According to this method, tumor confined to a depth of 0.76 mm or less is generally within the epidermis and behaves as carcinoma in situ. Invasion of 0.76 to 1.49 mm is considered superficial; 1.5 to 4 mm, intermediate; and greater than 4 mm, deep. Some tumors can be quite superficial in measurement and yet be deep melanomas according to Clark's classification.

Over the past 3 decades, the independent prognostic factors in cutaneous melanoma have been well defined. For the
Table 45.12

TNM Staging System of the American Joint Committee on Cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pT</th>
<th>Primary tumor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pTX</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pTis</td>
<td>Melanoma in situ (Clark level I) (atypical melanocytic hyperplasia, severe melanocytic dysplasia, not an invasive malignant lesion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT1</td>
<td>Tumor 1 mm or less in thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT1a</td>
<td>Clark level II or III, without ulceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT1b</td>
<td>Clark level IV or V, or with ulceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT2</td>
<td>Tumor more than 1 mm but not more than 2 mm in thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT2a</td>
<td>Without ulceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT2b</td>
<td>With ulceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT3</td>
<td>Tumor more than 2 mm but not more than 4 mm in thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT3a</td>
<td>Without ulceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT3b</td>
<td>With ulceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT4</td>
<td>Tumor more than 4 mm in thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT4a</td>
<td>Without ulceration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pT4b</td>
<td>With ulceration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pN</th>
<th>Regional lymph nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pN0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Histologic examination of a regional lymphadenectomy specimen ordinarily includes six or more lymph nodes. If the lymph nodes are negative, but the number ordinarily examined is not met, classify as pN0. Classification based solely on sentinel node biopsy without subsequent axillary lymph node dissection is designated (sn) for sentinel node, e.g., pN1 (sn).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pN1</th>
<th>Metastasis in one regional lymph node</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pN1a</td>
<td>Only microscopic metastasis (clinically occult)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN1b</td>
<td>Macroscopic metastasis (clinically apparent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN2</td>
<td>Metastasis in two or three regional lymph nodes or in a lymph node(s) of a lymph node(s) of the primary lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Satellites are tumor nests or nodules (macroscopic or microscopic) within 2 cm of the primary tumor. In-transit metastasis involves skin or subcutaneous tissue more than 2 cm from the primary tumor but not beyond the regional lymph nodes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M</th>
<th>Distant metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MX</td>
<td>Distant metastasis cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1a</td>
<td>Skin, subcutaneous tissue, or lymph node(s) beyond the regional lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1b</td>
<td>Lung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1c</td>
<td>Other sites, or any site with elevated serum lactate dehydrogenase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Primary tumor, these include tumor thickness and ulceration. Clinical or microscopic satellites around the primary tumor are considered to be in-transit lymphatic metastases. The dominant regional prognostic factors include the number or percentage of metastatic lymph nodes, macroscopic versus microscopic metastases, and the presence of clinical or macroscopic satellites around a primary tumor. In patients with distant metastases, the site of metastases, the number of metastatic sites, and an elevated serum lactate dehydrogenase level are most predictive of poor survival. Based on the results of several large studies resulting in this more precise delineation of prognostic factors, the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) revised the melanoma staging system in 2002 (Table 45.12). The available literature suggests that adequate local treatment for a superficial cutaneous melanoma (less than 1.5 mm in thickness) consists of obtaining a 1-cm margin of skin and subcutaneous tissue. Current data support 2- to 3-cm margins for melanomas of intermediate thickness (1.5–4 mm). A study by the Intergroup Melanoma Trial supports a 2-cm margin for intermediate-thickness melanomas. Exclusion of underlying
fascia continues to be controversial. The local management of deep (greater than 4 mm) melanomas is less clear. The risk of metastatic disease in these patients is high, which lessens the impact of local therapy.

It is generally agreed that melanomas less than 0.76 mm in thickness are associated with a very low risk of lymph node metastases, and elective regional lymph node dissection is not indicated in this group. However, recent evidence suggests that subsets of these patients with adverse prognostic factors should be offered sentinel lymph node biopsy. Patients with melanomas greater than 4 mm in thickness have a high risk of both regional and systemic metastases, and they are less likely to benefit from elective lymph node dissection. There is significant controversy, however, about the benefit of prophylactic lymphadenectomy in patients with intermediate-thickness melanomas. The results of some retrospective studies have shown a beneficial effect of elective lymph node dissection on the survival of these patients. Two prospective studies, one from the Mayo Clinic and one multiinstitutional study directed by the World Health Organization, did not show any significant effect of elective lymph node dissection on survival. However, problems cited with these two studies have included the small numbers of intermediate-thickness melanomas and an imbalance of prognostic factors. In an Intergroup Melanoma Trial, patients with melanomas 1 to 4 mm thick on the trunk or proximal extremities were randomized to wide local excision or elective lymph node dissection versus wide local excision only. Overall survival was not significantly different. However, two subsets of patients had a significantly better overall 5-year survival rate with elective lymph node dissection. These subsets included patients age 60 years or younger and patients with a tumor thickness of 1.1 to 2.0 mm.

Intraoperative lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymph node biopsy were discussed earlier. Detection of occult melanoma cells by a more detailed examination of the sentinel nodes does correlate with recurrence and overall survival, and the information is potentially useful in the decision regarding adjuvant therapy. Since these techniques have come into more widespread use, recommendations regarding elective lymph node dissection are being reconsidered.

What Do We Know about Vulvar Melanoma?

As pointed out by Chung and colleagues, Clark’s microstaging system for melanoma may be less suitable for vulvar tumors because of the lack of a well-defined papillary dermis in much of the vulvar skin and its virtual absence in the mucosal areas. Chung and associates proposed an alternative microstaging system [Fig. 45.60], which combines aspects of the Clark and Breslow systems. Because of the large percentage of vulvar melanomas that arise from or include mucosal membranes, caution is warranted in extrapolating data from squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva and from cutaneous melanoma in general. However, many of the tumors only superficially extend onto mucosal surfaces; until further data are available, it does appear reasonable to consider the available data on cutaneous melanoma and the data on squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva when managing a vulvar melanoma. Factors besides depth of invasion that seem to have an impact on the incidence of nodal metastases and survival include the AJCC stage, the presence of satellite lesions, tumor ulceration, central tumor location, tumor size, and capillary or lymphatic space involvement. The presence of any metastases indicates systemic disease is usually present in women with a depth of invasion greater than 4 mm. In melanomas with depth of invasion between 0.75 and 4 mm, the data are unclear, and many experts continue to recommend regional lymphadenectomy in these patients. As with issues surrounding local tumor management, there is a small amount of literature supporting some of these concepts with site-specific vulvar melanoma data, including the possible benefit from elective lymph node dissection and removal of clinically positive lymph nodes. The overall incidence of lymph node metastases in vulvar melanoma patients is reported to be around 30%. As with squamous cell
Bartholin gland carcinoma. See color version of figure.

**Results**

Overall, about one third of vulvar melanoma patients survive 5 years. This rate is lower than that reported for patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva and with cutaneous melanoma in general. The worse prognosis has been attributed to an older age and a large percentage of deeply invasive and generally more advanced tumors at the time of diagnosis. According to several reports, survival of vulvar melanoma patients does correlate closely with depth of invasion. Other factors include the worse prognosis associated with mucosal melanomas in general and the difficulty in obtaining an adequate resection for the more centrally located tumors. Local recurrence is a common problem after removal of vulvar melanoma and tends to occur on the medial margin of resection. Local recurrence is reported to occur in about one third of patients, and the prognosis for these women is poor. Local tumor control and survival are reduced with more central and deeply invasive tumors. The presence of lymph node metastases also carries a poor prognosis, which has been correlated with the extent and number of lymph nodes involved. When the inguinal lymph nodes are positive, the reported survival rate is in the range of 10% to 31%. Vulvar melanoma has a propensity for late recurrence, and 3-year survival may not be an accurate predictor of cure in these patients.

**BARTHOLIN GLAND CARCINOMA**

A malignancy can arise from the Bartholin gland or duct, with most of the cancers being adenocarcinoma or squamous cell carcinoma. Other much rarer histologic types include transitional cell carcinoma, mixed carcinoma, and sarcoma. Bartholin carcinoma accounts for only 1% to 2% of vulvar malignancies, and, in some cases, a Bartholin origin is not clearcut. Several criteria have been described to define a primary Bartholin malignancy, including anatomic position consistent with a Bartholin tumor, intact overlying skin, areas of apparent transition from normal to neoplastic elements, involvement of areas of the Bartholin gland with an origin histologically compatible with the gland, and no evidence of any other primary cancer. Although some of these criteria may not be met in an individual case, the tumor should at least be in a location consistent with a Bartholin tumor. As with the other rare types of vulvar malignancy, the available information on Bartholin malignancy is derived from retrospective studies of small series of patients.

**Diagnosis**

Bartholin carcinoma should be suspected when a tumor is noted in the region of the Bartholin gland, particularly in a woman older than 40 years of age (Fig. 45.61). The average age at diagnosis is about 50 years, but there is a wide age range. Many studies report a significant delay in diagnosis, attributed both to the deep-seated location of the tumor and to frequent misdiagnosis and treatment as a Bartholin abscess. When a woman presents with a Bartholin mass, biopsy or excision should be considered if she is older than 40 years of age (Fig. 45.61). The average age at diagnosis is about 50 years, but there is a wide age range. Many studies report a significant delay in diagnosis, attributed both to the deep-seated location of the tumor and to frequent misdiagnosis and treatment as a Bartholin abscess. When a woman presents with a Bartholin mass, biopsy or excision should be considered if she is older than 40 years of age (Fig. 45.61).
At the time of diagnosis, inguinal lymph node metastases are present in about half of patients with a Bartholin carcinoma. This propensity for lymphatic spread has been attributed to the frequent delay in diagnosis and the more advanced local extent of these tumors. The pattern of lymphatic spread is the same as that for other vulvar malignancies, primarily to the ipsilateral inguinalfemoral lymph nodes. There are not enough data on wholesale tumor size to provide an accurate estimate of the risk of metastases to the contralateral groin nodes. As with other vulvar cancers, if positive nodes are found, dissection of the opposite groin or radiotherapy to the inguinal and pelvic nodal basins, or both, may be warranted. Inguinal lymphadenectomy in these patients appears to be both prognostically and therapeutically valuable. Local, regional, and distant recurrences are common with Bartholin malignancies, and overall survival rate is lower than that for carcinoma of the vulva in general. Copeland and associates reported on a series of 36 patients with this cancer. The local recurrence rate was 2 of 12 (17%) for patients treated with hemivulvectomy (with or without radiotherapy) and 5 of 24 (21%) for patients treated with radical vulvectomy. The behavior of this rare malignancy appears to be different from that of other Bartholin and vulvar cancers and to be similar to that of adenoid cystic carcinomas arising from other sites, such as the salivary gland. These vulvar tumors have a high local recurrence rate and a propensity for hematogenous metastases. Approximately 20% develop isolated liver metastases. Both local recurrences and metastases can be slowly progressive over a period of years but are not very responsive to radiotherapy or chemotherapy. In view of the difficulty in obtaining adequate surgical margins with Bartholin malignancies in general, and the high local recurrence rate and uncertain sensitivity to radiotherapy with adenoid cystic carcinoma in particular, a concerted effort to obtain at least 2-cm margins should be made when resecting this tumor. Postoperative adjuvant radiotherapy for close or positive margins did appear to be of possible benefit in another 1986 report by Copeland and colleagues and in the report by Rosenberg and associates. From the scant information available, inguinal lymph node metastases occur less frequently with this tumor and have all been ipsilateral. The prognostic and therapeutic value of lymphadenectomy in these patients remains to be defined. The role of adjuvant postoperative chemotherapy for this malignancy also deserves further study.

**Basal Cell Carcinoma**

Although basal cell carcinoma is the most common malignancy of the skin, basal cell carcinoma of the vulva is a rarely reported tumor. Approximately 250 cases have been reported in the literature, and basal cell carcinoma constitutes 2% to 3% of vulvar cancers. The cause is unknown, but there is frequently a history of chronic vulvar irritation. This lesion shares many features with vulvar squamous cell carcinoma. The average age of patients at diagnosis is 65 years, and there is a predilection for white women. Common symptoms include chronic pruritus vulvae and the presence of a mass. Authors have repeatedly reported a delay in diagnosis. Most basal cell carcinomas occur on the labia majora and, less commonly, on the labia minora, urethral meatus, and prepuce of the clitoris. The gross appearance is variable. Tumor size has ranged from 0.2 to 13 cm in greatest diameter, averaging 1.5 to 2 cm. There are also reports of multifocal lesions. As many as 29% of patients with vulvar basal cell carcinoma have a history of other primary cancers. These other cancers have infrequently included coexistent melanoma or squamous cell carcinoma. Keratinization and mature squamous differentiation are commonly found in basal cell carcinomas and do not alter the prognosis. These lesions must be carefully distinguished from the rarer basosquamous carcinoma, which contains a malignant squamous component. This has been estimated to occur in 3% to 5% of basal cell carcinomas. Careful histologic evaluation of the biopsy material is necessary to rule out a malignant squamous component. With the exception of very large lesions, this is best accomplished by excisional biopsy.

One of the subtypes of basal cell carcinoma, adenoid basal cell carcinoma, must be differentiated from the more aggressive adenoid cystic carcinoma arising in a Bartholin gland or in the skin of the vulva. Merino and colleagues have suggested clinical and histologic criteria for this distinction. In 1977, Safai and Good reviewed the literature and found 109 cases of basal cell carcinoma of the skin with metastases. These are rare cases, with an incidence of less than 0.1%. Basosquamous carcinoma of the skin, including the vulva, is a more aggressive neoplasm, with the squamous component metastasizing. Basal cell carcinoma of the vulva is also an indolent, locally invasive lesion that rarely metastasizes. There are only ten well-documented cases of metastatic basal cell carcinoma of the vulva in the literature. Nine of these 10 have been lymphatic metastases. When a patient with basal cell carcinoma has suspicious inguinal lymph nodes, these lymph nodes probably should be removed, especially if the vulvar tumor is large or locally advanced. If the inguinal lymph nodes are not suspicious, they can be removed if they become suspicious during follow-up.

**Malignancies of the Vulva**

**Treatment**

Most authorities agree that the treatment of choice for vulvar basal cell carcinoma is wide local excision including a generous amount of underlying subcutaneous tissue. For a multifocal lesion, complete vulvectomy may be appropriate. If a malignant squamous component is present, however, then treatment is the same as that for invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva as outlined above. There is little information available on the use of radiotherapy or chemotherapy in the treatment of primary or metastatic basal cell carcinoma of the vulva, but there is one report of a locally advanced lesion that had a complete response to radiotherapy. Close follow-up is essential, because the local recurrence rate has been reported to be 10% to 21.5%.

**Prognosis**

The overall prognosis for patients with vulvar basal cell carcinoma is difficult to ascertain. In a review by Brenn and colleagues, there was a 5-year survival rate of about 64%. However, they were unable to find documentation for a single death directly related to recurrent or residual basal cell carcinoma. Rather, they attributed the deaths to old age, attrition, and overseas therapy.
The prognosis for the rare metastatic basal cell carcinoma of the vulva is even more difficult to predict. Sworn and coworkers concluded that the prognosis is similar to that for basal cell carcinoma at other skin sites. With basal cell carcinoma elsewhere on the skin, the mean survival after discovery of metastatic disease has been reported to be 10 to 14 months. However, Conway and Hugo reported prolonged survival if only regional lymph nodes are involved.

**SARCOMA OF THE VULVA**

Primary sarcoma constitutes 1% to 3% of all vulvar malignancies. The literature consists of case reports and small series of patients, often with very limited follow-up. In addition, this is a heterogeneous group because of the variety of histologic types and their associated differences in behavior. Hence, the natural history and appropriate treatment of these tumors have not been well defined.

**Leiomyosarcoma**

The most common histologic type of primary vulvar sarcoma is leiomyosarcoma. Most of these patients are in the age range of 40 to 50 years, but a few are younger (one patient was 17). At least three cases of pregnant women with leiomyosarcoma have been reported. According to the descriptions, most patients present with an enlarging mass in the labia majora or Bartholin region (Fig. 45.62A–B). Like tumors at other sites, smooth-muscle tumors of the vulva appear to have a range of appearances and behavior, from benign to malignant. Tavassoli and Norris reported 32 smooth-muscle tumors of the vulva and attempted to delineate the histologic features that might relate to prognosis. They believed that their analysis was impeded by small numbers of patients in subgroups and by varied adequacy of excision. According to their results, prognosis was best predicted by three main determinants (size, tumor contour, and mitotic activity). Neoplasms greater than 5 cm that have infiltrating margins and five or more mitotic figures per 10 high-power fields are likely to recur unless controlled by total excision. It was also determined that lesions larger than 5 cm with infiltrative margins and prominent mitotic activity have a more aggressive behavior as the number of mitotic figures increases. The significance of mitotic activity could not be fully evaluated because of the small number of cases with intermediate grades of mitotic activity and because of other factors. The degree of cellular atypism did not correlate well with the mitotic activity or with recurrence. In 1996, Nielsen and colleagues proposed similar prognostic criteria but included cytologic atypia. In keeping with a range of behaviors, according to the available reports, vulvar leiomyosarcomas may do...
well with adequate excision, may follow a slowly progressive course, or may rapidly progress to fatal. Local recurrences are common, and several authors have recommended early radical excision of these tumors to improve treatment results. As with the other genital tract sarcomas, there is a propensity for hematogenous metastases that may develop early. From the few studies reporting long-term follow-up, it appears that only about half of these patients have inguinal lymph nodes that are visible on clinical examination. In a fit patient with a high-risk but apparently localized tumor, inguinal lymphadenectomy seems reasonable. Radiotherapy has been used in only a few cases with mixed results. Postoperative adjuvant radiotherapy to the pelvis (including the peritoneum) may be worthwhile in selected cases to improve local control. As with other genital tract leiomyosarcomas, chemotherapy has been of limited palliative benefit.

Six cases of myxoid leiomyosarcoma of the vulva have been reported. All were managed by local resection. Three experienced local recurrence that responded well to repeat excision. From available follow-up, five of the six remained alive without evidence of active cancer at 25 to 83 months.

Other Sarcomas

According to our review, 14 cases of dermatofibrosarcoma protuberans (DFSP) of the vulva have been reported. These patients ranged in age from 47 to 87 years and presented with a tumor characteristic of DFSP at other sites. The tumors range in maximum diameter from 1 to 8 cm and are multinodular, firm, seemingly well-circumscribed masses. The mass is reportedly mobile but fixed to the overlying skin from which it originated. The clinical impression of a mobile, well-circumscribed mass is apparent, and MRI and surgical margins. Intraoperative frozen section analysis of margins has also been recommended. Despite this tendency for local recurrence, DFSP behaves like a low-grade sarcoma that rarely metastasizes. In the absence of suspicious lymph nodes, a lymphadenectomy is not warranted. Hematogenous metastases may be seen after multiple local recurrences. Local radiotherapy has not been useful for these tumors, but may be of benefit as adjuvant postoperative treatment for a close resection margin. With adequate resection, the overall prognosis for DFSP of the vulva should be good. Two cases of a fibrosarcoma arising in a vulvar DFSP have been reported, but the clinical behavior and prognosis for such tumors appear to be the same as those for DFSP of other sites.

Six cases of malignant fibrous histiocytoma of the vulva have been reported. The age range of these patients is 38 to 79 years. Five of the six tumors were on the labia majora, and the sixth was vulvovaginal. Based on these few reports and the more extensive literature on malignant fibrous histiocytoma at other sites, recommended treatment includes radical excision of the tumor with an inguinal lymphadenectomy. Adjuvant radiotherapy and chemotherapy may have a role, and the one vulvovaginal tumor reported was without evidence of recurrence 6 years after sequential chemotherapy and radiotherapy. We found five reports of pure fibrosarcoma of the vulva. Two of these patients died with disseminated disease at 3 weeks and 16 months after diagnosis, and one patient had inguinal lymph node metastases but was without evidence of recurrence at 48 months. According to the general literature on fibrosarcomas, the malignant potential varies depending on the origin and the histologic pattern (cellularity, mitotic activity). Three of the four reported patients who were treated developed local recurrences (two of them repetitive). This is in agreement with the general behavior reported for these tumors. Again, the importance of wide excision at the time of primary treatment is emphasized. Fibrosarcoma is reported to only rarely metastasize to lymph nodes; however, as previously pointed out, one of the five described cases did have an isolated lymphatic metastasis.

Nineteen primary epithelioid sarcomas of the vulva have been reported. Nine of the women were 31 years of age or younger, and five of the lesions arose on the labium majus. Seven of the patients developed repetitive local recurrences (generally in the form of multiple subcutaneous nodules) and coincident or subsequent hematogenous or lymphatic metastases, or both, and died over the course of months to years. This tumor apparently penetrates along soft tissue planes, and there is reported difficulty in delineating tumor extent. Radical excision with wide, clear margins seems to be the most reasonable initial treatment. Regional lymphadenectomy should be considered on an individual basis.

A few malignant rhabdoid tumors of the vulva have also been reported. There is apparent difficulty distinguishing this malignancy histologically from epithelioid sarcoma. Both tumors present similarly as a benign-appearing labial mass in young women. Malignant rhabdoid tumors may follow an even more aggressive course.

Although sarcomas constitute only a small percentage of vulvar malignancies in general, they account for most vulvar cancers in children and young women. Overall, pediatric vulvovaginal rhabdomyosarcoma has a good prognosis and greatly reduced treatment morbidity because of the efficacy of combined treatment modalities (especially chemotherapy and brachytherapy). Rhabdomyosarcoma arising in older women and other histologic variants of rhabdomyosarcoma may not be so amenable to therapy.

At least 100 cases of aggressive angiosarcoma involving the female pelvis or perineum, or both, have been described, and at least 14 of these primarily involved the vulva. It is an unusual tumor derived from fibroblasts or myofibroblasts with nuclei that have no atypical features or mitotic activity. The tumor appears to be locally invasive and spreads by direct extension only. Local recurrences are common, although there have been no reported deaths attributable to this tumor. The mainstay of treatment is wide excision both primarily and for recurrences. Response to gonadotropin-releasing hormone has been reported.

Isolated reports of a variety of other types of sarcomas arising in the vulva have been published. Treatment of these various sarcomas must be individualized according to the specific tumor available, the potential aggressiveness of the malignancy as suggested by the pathologist, and the individual situation.

**PAGET DISEASE OF THE VULVA**

Paget disease is classified, according to location, as mammary or extramammary disease. The original lesion described by...
Paget is a skin (nipple and areola) lesion related to an underlying invasive ductal adenocarcinoma. Extramammary Paget disease most commonly involves the anogenital region, appearing as a patchy, redish, and whitish, velvety, and exzematous lesion (Fig. 45.63). Patients with Paget disease of the vulva are usually white, postmenopausal women who report localized itching and burning.

Paget disease of the vulva is of apocrine origin and is confined to the epithelium in most cases. However, invasive disease is present in about 15% to 25% of cases, either as a result of direct invasion through the basement membrane or, less commonly, because of the presence of an underlying apocrine gland adenocarcinoma. Histologically, intraepithelial Paget disease appears as large, pale cells, often in nests at the tips of the rete ridges (Figs. 45.64 and 45.65). The cells are often seen infiltrating upward in the epithelium, which is hyperkeratotic. The Paget cells can be located within any of the skin adnexa.

Vulvar Paget disease occurs with other malignancies in about 25% of patients; the most common of these is breast carcinoma. Other commonly associated malignancies are basal cell, rectal, and genitourinary carcinomas. When Paget disease involves the anus, there is a very high incidence of coexisting rectal cancer. Part of the preoperative workup should be directed at screening for these malignancies. Wilkinson and Brown proposed a classification of vulvar Paget disease as primary or secondary (involvement of the vulvar skin by a noncutaneous internal neoplasm). They subclassified primary disease according to the presence of invasive cancer and subclassified secondary disease according to tumor origin. They report that secondary vulvar Paget disease is always intraepithelial.

When a patient is diagnosed with Paget disease of the vulva, the lesion is usually nodular and palpated to detect areas suspicious for invasive cancer. If the disease clinically appears to be intraepithelial, a wide local excision is performed, including a small amount of subcutaneous tissue. A well-known characteristic of intraepithelial Paget disease is histologic extension far beyond that which is clinically apparent. Intraoperative assessment of margins with frozen sections may be helpful (Fig. 45.63B–D). Other methods that have been reported to be useful in ensuring clear margins include preoperative biopsies, Mohs micrographic surgery, and fluorescence dye with ultraviolet light. Colposcopy and toluidine blue staining are not helpful, according to Friedrich and colleagues. An experimental technique reported to be potentially useful in evaluating histologically negative margins is the application of a panel of monoclonal antibodies that may detect occult Paget disease, and many of the reports of such spread have shown histologic evidence of nests of squamous cell carcinoma invading the stroma beneath the tumor. Some authors have suggested that if areas of distinct invasion are found beneath a verrucous lesion, the behavior may be more aggressive, and treatment should be more radical. Inflammatory enlargement of the inguinal lymph nodes has been a frequently reported finding with verrucous carcinoma of the vulva.

Verrucous carcinoma of the vulva is excision with free margins. How the disease clinically appears to be intraepithelial, a wide local excision is performed, including a small amount of subcutaneous tissue. A well-known characteristic of intraepithelial Paget disease is histologic extension far beyond that which is clinically apparent. Intraoperative assessment of margins with frozen sections may be helpful (Fig. 45.63B–D). Other methods that have been reported to be useful in ensuring clear margins include preoperative biopsies, Mohs micrographic surgery, and fluorescence dye with ultraviolet light. Colposcopy and toluidine blue staining are not helpful, according to Friedrich and colleagues. An experimental technique reported to be potentially useful in evaluating histologically negative margins is the application of a panel of monoclonal antibodies that may detect occult Paget cells.

When intraepithelial Paget disease extends far beyond that which is clinically apparent, very extensive excision is necessary to obtain clear margins. Primary closure of vulvar wounds is desirable, but may not be possible. Reported means of dealing with such cases include skin grafting and laser vaporization of the occult disease (guided by peripheral biopsies). There are a few reports of Paget disease recurring within a skin graft.

Topical 5-fluorouracil or bichloracetic acid, administered either preoperatively or postoperatively, has also been used to treat the clinically negative disease. If it appears that excision of persistently positive margins may prevent primary closure, it is not unreasonable to close the wound and follow the patient closely.

After excision of intraepithelial Paget disease of the vulva, local recurrence develops in about one third of patients (Fig. 45.66). This tends to take the form of multiple recurrences over a prolonged period of time. In some studies, recurrence risk has been correlated with excisional margin status, but it also has been pointed out that the initial disease in some cases is multifocal. Of particular concern are a few reports of patients whose recurrent lesions eventually became invasive. Whether such instances are preventable by diligently eradicating the full histologic extent of the disease is not known.

When vulvar Paget disease is found to contain an invasive component, the treatment is radical surgery, as for squamous cell carcinoma. Overall, these patients have a high incidence of inguinal lymph node metastases with an associated poor prognosis. The role of adjuvant therapy in these patients is unclear.

Management of recurrent intraepithelial Paget disease of the vulva is similar to that of the primary lesion, with excision of at least the clinically evident disease.

Verrucous carcinoma of the vulva is a rare variant of squamous cell carcinoma, with about 30 cases reported in the literature. This tumor was first described in the oral cavity by Ackerman in 1948 and most commonly occurs in the oral cavity, larynx, and anogenital region. The mean age of the women diagnosed with this malignancy of the vulva is about 30 years. The reported tumors have ranged from 1 to 10 cm in maximum diameter and appear as a slow-growing, cauliflower-like tumor (Fig. 45.67). Characteristically, verrucous cancers have well-demarcated borders that are pushing rather than infiltrating. Verrucous carcinoma can be confused with condyloma; when an apparent condyloma (especially when large and in an older woman) does not respond to the usual conservative measures, it should be excised. About one third of patients with vulvar verrucous carcinoma have a history of genital warts, and human papillomavirus (HPV) has been detected in some lesions, the most common type being HPV-6.

The diagnosis of verrucous carcinoma requires a large (preferably excisional) biopsy that must include the base of the lesion. Verrucous carcinoma is rarely associated with metastatic disease, and many of the reports of such spread have shown histologic evidence of nests of squamous cell carcinoma invading the stroma beneath the tumor. Some authors have suggested that if areas of distinct invasion are found beneath a verrucous lesion, the behavior may be more aggressive, and treatment should be more radical. Inflammatory enlargement of the inguinal lymph nodes has been a frequently reported finding with verrucous carcinoma of the vulva.

It is generally agreed that the main treatment of verrucous carcinoma of the vulva is excision with free margins. How radical this resection should be is unclear, but local recurrences have not been uncommon (Fig. 45.68). Local lesions have had a good initial response to radiation therapy but a high rate of subsequent recurrence and about a 30% incidence of anaplastic transformation with associated aggressive behavior. The few reported cases of metastatic verrucous carcinoma of the genital tract have followed radiotherapy. However, many
FIGURE 45.63. A: Paget disease of the vulva. Reddish, eczematous, excoriated (from scratching) skin over the right anterior vulva. B: Outline for preliminary excision of margin in quadrants (skin within the two parallel lines will be removed as four separate strips, marked according to the clock). C: Strip of skin being excised from lower lateral quadrant. D: Margin strip is excised circumferentially. Lesion is excised while the surgeon waits for the frozen-section results.
tumors have been successfully treated with a combination of surgery and radiotherapy; when a tumor is locally advanced, this seems to be a reasonable treatment. Inguinal lymphadenectomy may be indicated in patients with large tumors, in patients with persistence or recurrence of disease, especially after radiotherapy, and in patients with infiltrating cancer beyond very early invasion below the verrucous tumor. Biopsy specimens may be obtained of enlarged lymph nodes thought to be inflammatory.

Verrucous carcinoma of the vulva has been associated with second malignant tumors, most commonly of the cervix, breast, and anogenital skin. Although verrucous carcinoma of the genital tract is a slow-growing tumor that rarely metastasizes, a 1988 review by Andersen and Sorensen reported that 26.1% of the patients with this type of carcinoma had died of disease.

**MERKEL CELL CARCINOMA OF THE VULVA**

Merkel cell cancers are small-cell (neuroendocrine) tumors of the skin that occur most commonly in sun-exposed areas (head, neck, and extremities) and behave in an aggressive manner. This malignancy was first described in 1972 by Toker, and about 500 cases have been reported since. At least 11 cases of vulvar origin have been reported. The ages of these
10 patients ranged from 28 to 74 years, and the tumors occurred in all regions of the vulva (three in the Bartholin gland). When originating from the vulva, Merkel cell carcinoma has behaved in a highly aggressive manner (even more so than Merkel cell tumors in general), with nine patients having regional lymph node metastases. At least seven had distant metastases and died within 2.5 years of diagnosis. Surgery and radiotherapy appear to be of value for local control only, and as yet no effective systemic treatment exists. As in the treatment of small-cell carcinoma of the lung, etoposide and cisplatin have been used for a few cases of Merkel cell carcinoma, with good responses. Three of the vulvar cases were treated with this regimen. Two progressed, and one had a partial response of very short duration.

**SUPERNUMERARY MAMMARY ADENOCARCINOMA**

Ectopic breast tissue in the vulva is very rare, but at least nine cases of mammary-type adenocarcinoma arising in the vulva have been reported. These patients ranged in age from 49 to 71 years, and five of the nine presented with an asymptomatic vulvar nodule. Only one of the patients had evidence of primary breast cancer, but rather than representing metastatic disease, the vulvar lesion appeared to be primary from ectopic tissue. The diagnosis of vulvar mammary adenocarcinoma is based primarily on the histologic pattern of the vulvar tumor. Other criteria can include the finding of adjacent normal mammary glandular elements (one case of adjacent in situ malignancy), the presence of estrogen or progesterone receptor positivity, positivity for common breast markers, and ruling out an origin from skin appendages.

One of the nine patients died of disease without treatment 1 month after diagnosis. The patient with coexistent primary
Gynecologic Oncology

breast carcinoma died of widespread metastatic (including cerebral) disease 22 months after the diagnosis. One patient had 2 of 10 positive ipsilateral inguinal lymph nodes and was placed on tamoxifen postoperatively; this patient remained without evidence of recurrence at 1 year. A fourth patient had extensive nodal metastases at the time of diagnosis, subsequently developed distant metastases, and died of disease 27 months after diagnosis despite chemotherapy. A fifth patient had 4 of 11 positive ipsilateral inguinal lymph nodes and was placed on tamoxifen postoperatively. After 2 years of disease-free survival, the patient stopped taking the tamoxifen and presented 4 months later with bony metastases. After radiotherapy and resection of tamoxifen, she was disease-free at 1 year of follow-up. A sixth patient had microscopic involvement in 1 of 14 ipsilateral lymph nodes. She received adjuvant chemother-apy with a plan for subsequent radiotherapy and tamoxifen. Follow-up was not available for the other three patients, but two of the three had undergone an inguinal lymphadenectomy, and in both cases there were positive lymph nodes.

Beyond surgical treatment, such a rare patient might be considered for adjuvant therapy (especially with metastatic disease) such as radiotherapy, tamoxifen (if estrogen receptor-positive), or chemotherapy.

OTHER REPORTED VULVAR MALIGNANCIES

There are scattered reports of a variety of adenocarcinomas arising in the vulva other than those previously discussed. Most of these have arisen from recognizable adenomatous sources, such as adnexal structures and endometriomas. There are five reports of malignancy arising in the vulva from isolated foci of extravascular endometriosis; four were clear-cell adenocarcinomas, and the fifth was an endometrial stromal sarcoma. There are also rare reports of vulvar sebaceous carcinoma, apocrine gland carcinoma, mucinous carcinoma, lymphoma, and a peripheral primitive neuroectodermal tumor.

At least four endodermal sinus tumors of the vulva have been reported. The ages of these patients were 22 months, 2 years, 15 years, and 26 years, and all four presented with a painless vulvar mass. Three of the four patients died of metastatic disease 6, 11, and 23 months after diagnosis. The 2-year-old patient remains without evidence of recurrence 5.5 years after local excision.

A variety of metastatic lesions to the vulva have been documented, most commonly from the gynecologic tract. Non-gynecologic metastatic disease to the vulva is rare, with isolated reports of primary sites such as the urinary tract, colorectum, skin (melanoma), non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma, lung and breast.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

Prognostic Factors
— The dominant prognostic factor for invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva is the status of the inguinofemoral lymph nodes.
— Primary tumor factors that appear to have prognostic importance include ulceration or tumor thickness, tumor diameter, tumor differentiation, lymph-vascular space involvement, and margin status.

Pretreatment Investigation
— A biopsy confirming the presence of invasive cancer is necessary before any therapy. Because of the frequent advanced age and coexisting medical problems typical of women with vulvar cancer, a thorough preoperative evaluation by internal medicine and anesthesiology consultants should be considered. Sophisticated radiologic evaluation is only of potential benefit in the presence of locoregionally advanced disease.

Treatment of Invasive Squamous Cell Carcinoma of the Vulva
— Unilateral groin lymphadenectomy. Limiting inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy to the ipsilateral side appears to be a reasonable approach in a patient with a well-lateralized early tumor that is well differentiated, with no lymph-vascular space involvement, and without positive ipsilateral inguinal lymph nodes.
— Superficial inguinal lymphadenectomy. In patients with early invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva, removal of the lymph nodes superficial to the cribiform fascia may result in a lower incidence of wound complications and subsequent lymphedema. The approach has been widely used in recent years, but there is some concern that the risk of groin recurrences is higher than standard inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy.
— Sentinel lymph node identification. Preliminary results suggest that lymphatic mapping with a combination of isosulfan blue dye and technetium-labeled sulfur colloid followed by sentinel lymph node dissection is applicable to a large percentage of women with early invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva. However, many questions require further investigation to better define the usefulness of the sentinel lymph node approach in women with vulvar cancer.
— Pelvic lymph nodes. Pelvic lymphadenectomy is not indicated in most patients with vulvar cancer. Pelvic radiation therapy is usually administered in patients with positive groin nodes, but surgical resection of enlarged pelvic nodes may be considered.

Locally Advanced Vulvar Cancer
— About 30% to 40% of vulvar cancers are locally advanced. Current approaches to the treatment of locally advanced vulvar cancer include ultraradical surgery, radiotherapy, or a combination of treatment modalities.

Recurrent Squamous Cell Carcinoma of the Vulva
— About 15% to 45% of patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva develop recurrence after treatment. Only with an isolated local recurrence is there reasonable expectation of successful salvage therapy (preferably resection).

Reconstructive Techniques for the Vulva and Groin
— When an extensive resection of a vulvar malignancy or a groin node metastasis is necessary, it may not be possible to close the wound primarily. Under these circumstances, closure of the incision and healing can be facilitated by a variety of reconstructive procedures. Leaving the wound open is another reasonable option.

Uncommon Histologic Types
— Melanoma, basal-cell carcinoma, cancers of the Bartholin gland, invasive Paget disease, and other uncommon or rare vulvar tumors are often managed differently from squamous cell carcinoma. A biopsy of the lesion should identify these lesions to allow special treatment planning.
Bibliography


Cullen RH, Mangioglia KA, Gaudenzio N. Non-gynecologic metastases to the vulva. Arch Gynecol Obstet 1988;240:73.


Daly JW, Million RR. Radical vulvectomy combined with elective node irradiation for early squamous carcinomas of the vulva: the treatment of choice for stage I and II (T1–2, N0–1, M0) disease. Gynecol Oncol 1994;53:53.


Malfetano J, Piver MS, Tsukada Y. Stage III and IV squamous cell carcinomas of the vulva: a multicenter CTF study. Gynecol Oncol 1993;49:120.


Singhal RM, Narayana A. Malignant melanoma of the vulva: response to radiotherapy.


CHAPTER 46 ■ CERVICAL CANCER
PRECURSORS AND THEIR MANAGEMENT
HOWARD W. JONES III

DEFINITIONS

The Bethesda System (TBS)—Another classification system that was introduced in 1991 for grading cytologic abnormalities. It has also been used for histologic diagnoses. Low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (LSIL) = mild dysplasia/human papillomavirus changes. High-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (HSIL) = moderate/severe dysplasia or carcinoma in situ.

Carcinoma in situ—A histopathologic diagnosis involving severe epithelial atypia. In the cervix, the full thickness of the cervical epithelium is atypical, but the basement membrane remains intact. Despite the confusing name, the lesion is not a cancer. It does not metastasize.

Cervical cytology—a diagnostic technique that involves microscopic examination of individual cells or cell clusters scraped, brushed, or washed from the surface of the cervix and stained with Papanicolaou’s stain. The nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio is used to diagnose the degree of cervical abnormality presently. It is a common screening test for cervical cancer.

Cervical dysplasia—Dysplasia is a pathologic term to indicate noninvasive epithelial atypia that involves various degrees of the cervical epithelium. By convention, in mild dysplasia, the nuclear atypia, mitoses, and cellular irregularity involved the lower one-third of the squamous epithelium. When the atypia involves the middle third, the diagnosis is moderate dysplasia; in severe dysplasia, the upper one-third of the epithelial layer is involved. A full-thickness change is called carcinoma in situ.

Cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN)—A cytologic and histologic classification of preinvasive cervical atypias or neoplastic changes. In general, CIN 1 = mild dysplasia, CIN 2 = moderate dysplasia, and CIN 3 = severe dysplasia/carcinoma in situ.

Colposcopy—A diagnostic technique in which the examiner visualizes the cervix and other areas of the lower genital tract with a low-power (3–15×) binocular scope. The surface contour, vascular pattern, and staining pattern with dilute acetic acid and Lugol’s iodine allow the experienced colposcopist to diagnose the severity and extent of cervical abnormality and to select a location for biopsy confirmation.

LEEP—Leuk electrosurgical excision procedure; also called a LLETZ (large loop excision of the transformation zone). A thin wire electrosurgical loop electrode of 1 to 2.5 cm in diameter is used to excise the transformation zone under local anesthesia.

Squamosocolumnar junction—The junction between the squamous and columnar epithelium on the cervix. Although it is found in the area of the external cervical os in most women during the reproductive years, it is a dynamic, ever-changing location.

Terminology—A colposcopic term for the area of cellular change that is observed adjacent to the squamo-columnar junction.

Although cellular atypia adjacent to invasive squamous cell cancers of the cervix has long been recognized, it was not until the 1950s that carcinoma in situ of the cervix was characterized and its preinvasive potential became accepted. In their 1952 publication, Galvin, Jones, and Te Linde described their observations of the natural history of carcinoma in situ. Their report confirmed and advanced previous studies by Thomas Cullen and Pemberton and Smith. The concept of a clearly identifiable preinvasive neoplastic change in the cervical epithelium represented a major breakthrough in an understanding of the development and natural history of cervical cancer. However, it was the parallel development of cervical cytology that provided a technique that made this concept clinically useful. Because these preinvasive epithelial changes are asymptomatic and essentially unrecognizable on gross inspection or palpation, the concept of a preinvasive lesion was not particularly useful to the clinician until it was shown such lesions could be diagnosed by cervical cytology. The introduction of practical cytology by Papanicolaou and Traut in 1943 and its later widespread adaptation into clinical practice represented the second major development in cervical cancer prevention. These developments have been further assisted by the use of colposcopy, which allows the clinician to visually identify these preinvasive lesions on the cervix, determine their extent, and select a site for biopsy confirmation. Once the extent and severity of the lesion have been evaluated and invasive cancer has been ruled out, these preinvasive epithelial changes can usually be treated with simple, inexpensive conservative techniques with preservation of fertility. These developments have led to a dramatic 70% reduction in cervical cancer deaths in the United States over the past 50 years. In addition, the intense study of these preinvasive cervical epithelial changes has enabled us to understand the mechanisms of the development of cervical cancer and the role of human papillomavirus.

This chapter discusses the cytologic, histologic, and molecular changes that occur in the cervix as cervical cancer develops and how these preinvasive lesions can be diagnosed and treated.

TERMINOLOGY

Although carcinoma in situ became well recognized as a full-thickness epithelial change without stromal invasion, the terminology and clinical significance of adjacent,
less-than-full-thickness atypia was uncertain. In 1956, Reagan and Hamon introduced the term dysplasia to designate these cervical epithelial abnormalities that were characterized by cyto-
logic atypia, increased mitotic activity, and loss of polarity. If these biased changes involved only the basal one third of the epithelium, they were referred to as mild dysplasia. Changes extending into the middle third of the cervical epithelium were called moderate dysplasia, and when more than two thirds of the epithelium was involved, the lesion was designated severe dysplasia. At its first international meeting in 1961, the International Congress on Exfoliative Cytology accepted the following definition: “Only those cases should be classified as carcinoma in situ, or which, in the absence of invasion, show as surface lining epithelium in which, throughout its whole thick-
ness, no differentiation takes place. The process may involve the lining of the cervical glands without thereby creating a new group. It is recognized that the cells of the uppermost layers may show some slight flattening.” At this same meeting, dys-
plasia was defined as “all other disturbances of differentia-
tion of the squamous epithelium of surface and glands. They may be characterized as of high or low degrees, terms that are preferable to ‘suspicious’ and ‘non-suspicious’ as the proposed terms describe the histological appearance and do not express an opinion.” It generally was assumed that these lesions repre-
sented a spectrum of disease and that the more severe abnor-
malities were more likely to progress to invasive cancer and to do so in a shorter period of time. However, it was not un-
til the studies of Barron and Richart and later of Naeuil and colleagues that the natural history of these premalignant lesions became well understood.

The original cytologic classification introduced by Papani-
colaou was a four- or five-step “class” designation, in which “class 1” was normal or benign and “class 5” was suspicious of malignancy. This terminology was replaced gradually by the histologic terms of mild, moderate, or severe dysplasia and carcinoma in situ, although various modifications were formally or informally introduced and adopted in the United States and throughout the world. One of the most important values of an accurately defined and widely accepted terminol-
ogy is that it allows investigators and clinicians to accurately observe and classify the natural history of a disease or lesion and the effect of various treatments on the outcome and to communicate these findings to others. Over time, it became clear that histopathologists and cytopathologists could not accu-
curately and reproducibly differentiate between severe dyspla-
sia and carcinoma in situ. In addition, clinicians managed these two lesions in a similar fashion. Therefore, in 1976, Richart proposed the terminology of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN), which combined the categories of severe dysplasia and carcinoma in situ into the term CIN 3; Cervical intraepithe-
lial neoplasia, grade 1 (CIN 1) was essentially the same as mild dysplasia, and CIN 2 was similar to moderate dysplasia. But CIN 3 combined severe dysplasia and carcinoma in situ, thus simplifying the classification from four categories to three (Table 46.1). This practical terminology was favored by clin-
icians and widely adopted throughout the world. It has been used for both cytologic and histologic diagnoses.

However, as the role of human papillomavirus (HPV) in cervical neoplasia became more evident and the difficulties of intraobserver variation with a lack of reproducibility of cy-
tologic diagnoses became better accepted, another change in terminology was undertaken. At a series of conferences held at the National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Maryland, The Bethesda System was introduced and first published in 1991 and subsequently updated and revised in 2001 (Table 46.2). These conferences clarified a number of ill defined or previ-
ously undefined problems with cytologic diagnoses, such as what constituted an adequate specimen for accurate interpreta-
tion. It tried to eliminate the term atypia, which had become in-
creasingly used to designate a wide range of nonspecific changes that were clinically confusing. The Bethesda System combined HPV cytopathologic effects, often referred to as koilocytoto-
sis, with mild dysplasia or CIN 1 into a category called low-
grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (LSIL). More significant lesions—including moderate and severe dysplasia and carci-
oma in situ, or CIN 2 and 3—were combined into high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (HSIL). Pap tests with “cellul-
ar abnormalities that are more marked than those attributable to reactive changes but that quantitatively or qualitatively fall short of a definitive diagnosis of squamous intraepithelial le-
ison” are placed in a category called atypical squamous cells (ASC). These specimens may be further categorized as of unde-
termined significance (ASC-US) or cannot exclude high grade (ASC-H). This latter category, together with more specific diag-
nostic terminology for glandular abnormalities, were new ad-
ditions in the 2001 revision of the Bethesda System. Although the Bethesda System terminology for reporting the results of cervical cytology has been almost universally accepted in the United States and is used in many other countries, other ter-
minality and definitions are used in Great Britain, Germany, Australia, and other countries, which creates some difficulty in publishing and understanding scientific studies from different countries.

In the United States, a typical laboratory that processes cer-
vical cytology from an average, generally low-risk population reports epithelial cell abnormalities in about 3% to 6% of pa-
tients. Usually one half to two thirds of these abnormalities are ASC (1%/4%), whereas 1%/2% are LSIL and 0.3% to 1.0% are HSIL diagnoses, with occasional glandular cell abnormali-
ties. The ratio of ASC to SIL diagnoses should be between 2:1 and 3:1 for most cytology laboratories.

The Bethesda System was designed and published to be used for cytologic diagnoses; however, it has been applied increas-
ingly to histologic or tissue diagnoses. This is advantageous in that it provides uniform terminology for both cytology and cervical biopsies. However, by combining moderate dysplasia, severe dysplasia, and carcinoma in situ, it lacks the imagined specificity that is occasionally helpful in clinical management decisions. The word imagined is used intentionally because many studies have shown that there is a significant lack of reproducibility in the diagnoses of various grades of dyspla-
sia and even carcinoma in situ. There is no clear dividing line between the different cytologic or histologic grades of cervi-
cal epithelial atypias, lesions, or neoplasias, and the diagnosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 46.1</th>
<th>THE CHANGING TERMINOLOGY OF CERVICAL CYTOLOGY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dysplasia</td>
<td>CIN Bethesda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mild</td>
<td>Grade 1 Low-grade SIL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Grade 2 High-grade SIL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>Grade 3 High-grade SIL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
<td>Grade 3 High-grade SIL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The Bethesda System classification of low-grade SIL includes both CIN 1 and HPV change; SIL, squamous intraepithelial lesion; CIN, cervical intraepithelial neoplasia; HPV, human papillomavirus.
TABLE 46.2

THE BETHESDA SYSTEM OF CYTOLOGIC CLASSIFICATION

The 2001 Bethesda System (Abridged)

SPECIMEN ADEQUACY

Satisfactory for evaluation (note presence/absence of endocervical/transformation zone component)

Unsatisfactory for evaluation: . . . (specify reason)

Specimen rejected/not processed (specify reason)

Specimen processed and examined, but unsatisfactory for evaluation of epithelial abnormality because of (specify reason)

GENERAL CATEGORIZATION (OPTIONAL)

Negative for intrap epithelial lesion or malignancy

Epithelial cell abnormality

Other

INTERPRETATION/RESULT

Negative for Intrap epithelial Lesion or Malignancy

Organisms

Trichomonas vaginalis

Fungal organisms morphologically consistent with Candida species

Shift in flora suggestive of bacterial vaginosis

Bacteria morphologically consistent with Actinomycetes species

Cellular changes consistent with herpes simplex virus

Other nonneoplastic findings (Optional to report; list not comprehensive)

Reactive cellular changes associated with inflammation (includes typical repair), radiation, intrauterine contraceptive device

Glandular cells status posthysterectomy

Atrophy

Epithelial Cell Abnormalities

Squamous cell

Atypical squamous cells (ASC)

Of undetermined significance (ASC-US)

Cannot exclude high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (HSIL) (ASC-H)

Low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (LSIL)

Encompassing human papillomavirus/mild dysplasia/ cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) 1

High-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (HSIL)

Encompassing moderate and severe dysplasia, carcinoma in situ, CIN 2 and CIN 3

Squamous cell carcinoma

Glandular cell

Atypical glandular cells (AGC) (specify endocervical, endometrial, or not otherwise specified)

Endocervical adenocarcinoma in situ (AIS)

Adenocarcinoma

Other (List not comprehensive)

Endometrial cells in a woman ≥40 years of age

AUTOMATED REVIEW AND ANCILLARY TESTING (INCLUDE AS APPROPRIATE)

EDUCATIONAL NOTES AND SUGGESTIONS (OPTIONAL)

on the Papanicolaou or biopsy report is a general impression, not a precise predictor of the benign or malignant behavior of the cervical epithelium sampled. Nevertheless, many clinicians would favor conservative follow-up only in an 18-year-old with CIN 2 or moderate dysplasia, but a diagnosis of CIN 3 or severe dysplasia would make the same clinicians favor treatment. Both diagnoses fit into the HSIL category, and this creates a problem of possible overtreatment or overevaluation for some patients with a cytologic or histologic diagnosis of HSIL. The clinician’s desire for a precise cytologic or histologic diagnosis that accurately predicts the likelihood of a given lesion to progress to invasive cancer cannot be satisfied by even the most experienced and expert pathologist. However, molecular markers, including HPV and P-16 testing, provide hope for more specific clinical predictors in the future.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

In 1842, Ragoni-Stern noted that cervical cancer was found in married women, but was virtually absent in celibate groups such as Catholic nuns. This observation was one of the earliest epidemiologic studies of any cancer. Others noted that cervical cancer was almost never found in virgin women and that a woman’s risk of developing cervical cancer was directly related to the number of male sex partners she had had. Subsequent epidemiologic studies reported that early age at first sexual intercourse, low socioeconomic status, cigarette smoking, and early age at first pregnancy increased a woman’s risk of cervical neoplasia. More recently, it became obvious that immunosuppression from any cause, including infection with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), substantially increased a woman’s risk of cervical neoplasia. Oral contraceptive use has been reported to increase a woman’s risk of cervical cancer as well, but the odds ratios are relatively low, and it is difficult to control for confounding factors.

Many of these epidemiologic studies have shown a pattern of cervical cancer that is typical for a sexually transmitted infection. For this reason, investigators focused on etiologic agents that might be passed by intimate sexual contact. Virtually every sexually transmitted agent has been studied for its relation to cervical neoplasia, including Chlamydia, gonorrhea, Chel- nera, Mycoplasma, Trichomonas, and herpes simplex virus (HSV).

As the epidemiologists studied the lifestyle characteristics of women with cervical cancer and cytopathologists described the microscopic morphologic transition of the cervical epithelium, clinicians were observing certain abnormalities on the cervix in patients with the preinvasive changes of cervical dysplasia. First popularized by Hinselmann in Germany, the colposcope is a magnifying instrument used to examine the cervix. With the colposcope, vascular changes and other epithelial patterns were recognized and correlated with the cytologic and histologic changes that were being described. These early neoplastic changes were most prominent adjacent to the squamocolumnar junction (SC), and this area was called the transformation zone. With time, colposcopic patterns associated with the developing stages of dysplasia and early invasive cancer were identified and described by Mestwerdt, Wespi, Kolstad, Stoff, Bargarth, Cuzenx, Coppesson, and others. In 1974, Stoll and Mattingly brilliantly synthesized these observations and the work of the epidemiologists and proposed a theory of the development of cervical cancer (Fig. 46.1). They did not know the identity of the environmental carcinogen that they presumed was sexually transmitted, but they proposed a framework that has been enormously useful for the clinician.
In 1976, Meisels and Fortin—and in 1977, Purola and Savia—reported finding HPV in the nuclei of dysplastic squamous epithelial cells, particularly those that had koilocytotic features. These observations were confirmed by a number of other investigators, and it was suggested by zur Hausen that this virus might be important etiologically in cervical carcinogenesis. Using electron microscopy and antibodies to the HPV capsid protein, several investigators identified viral particles or HPV-related antigens in CIN. They were particularly prevalent in low-grade lesions and became less frequently observed in cells associated with higher-grade lesions. These observations strongly implicated HPV as a possible etiologic agent in cervical neoplasia and led to an explosion of molecular and clinical studies of HPV and its related lesions.

**HUMAN PAPILLOMAVIRUSES**

Human papillomaviruses are members of a large family of viruses known as the *Papovaviridae*. This includes another oncogenic DNA virus, the simian virus 40 (SV40), as well as the polyomavirus. All the viruses in this group are DNA tumor viruses. Although they have dissimilar DNA base-pair sequences and dissimilar capsular antigens, they appear to produce neoplasms through similar mechanisms. The papillomaviruses have a tightly coiled, circular, double-stranded DNA molecule about 8,000 base pairs in length. The complete virion consists of a DNA core and a surrounding protein capsid that measures about 45 to 55 nm in diameter. The capsid has an icosahedral shape. Papillomaviruses are found throughout the animal kingdom and infect not only humans but cattle, rabbits, dogs, deer, monkeys, and birds. The viruses are highly species specific. Cross-infections between species have not been reported. Unlike many viruses that infect humans and that are classified by their surface antigens, the papillomaviruses are classified according to their DNA base-pair sequence. The degree of relatedness is determined by the degree of hybridization homology.

Although in animals papillomaviruses can infect both epithelial cells and fibroblasts, the human papillomavirus is an exclusively epitheliotropic virus that produces alterations in the supporting structures solely as a secondary effect related to infection of the epithelium. HPV infects virtually all surface epithelia, including the skin and mucous membranes. The infected epithelium is characterized by epithelial proliferation at the infected site, by various degrees of epithelial thickening, and by papillomatosis.

At least 100 HPV types have been identified; about 25 of these affect the male and female anogenital tract. The most prevalent anogenital HPVs can be divided into three groups that are predictive of their ability to produce neoplasia (Table 46.3). Low-risk HPV types are commonly associated with...
cellular changes described as CIN 1, but they rarely, if ever, are associated with high-grade dysplasia or invasive cancer. They may also be associated with condyloma. HPV types 6 and 11 are responsible for approximately 90% of all benign genital warts (condyloma) seen in the United States. On the other hand, the anogenital HPV types with a high oncogenic risk are types 16, 18, 31, 33, 35, 39, 45, 51, 52, 56, 38, 59, and 68. HPV types with a low oncogenic risk are represented in high-grade lesions. The group with a low oncogenic risk or no oncogenic risk includes HPV types 6, 11, 42, 43, and 44. HPV types 16 and 18 are very-high-risk cervical cancer viruses.

Recent epidemiologic studies from all parts of the world have shown that almost all women with CIN lesions and invasive cancers contain HPV DNA. In addition, the covariables that have traditionally been associated with a high risk of developing cervical neoplasia are also highly correlated with the presence of HPV DNA. In a relatively large study of women attending a university health clinic, it was found that HPV DNA positivity was strongly correlated with an increasing number of sexual partners; the prevalence of HPV infection in women with 10 or more lifetime sexual partners was 69%, compared with 21% in women with only a single sexual partner. In studies by Schiffman and colleagues, it was reported that women who are HPV DNA positive have a relative risk of 40% of having an abnormal Papanicalous smear. He also reported that the attributable risk of HPV in such populations is greater than 90%. The only other covariable that was a significant contributor to risk was cigarette smoking. He also noted that “relative risks and attributable risks of this strength and consistency are so rare that the statistical association of HPV and cervical neoplasia is beyond question” and that “the epidemiological data support a central, causal role for genital HPV infection in the etiology of cervical neoplasia.”

The papillomavirus infects only epithelium. In the cervix, the viral genome of HPV can be divided into three regions: the upstream regulatory region (URR), the early region, and the late region (Fig. 46-2). The URR is a noncoding region that has as its major functions the regulation of viral replication and the transcription of downstream sequences in the early region. The early and the late region both contain a series of open reading frames (ORFs), linear sequences that lack stop codons and hence are potentially transcribable into proteins. The early region encodes proteins that are important in the early life cycle of the virus and interact with the cellular genome to program the host cell to produce new viral RNA. The late region, as the name implies, encodes for capsid proteins that surround the DNA core to produce the infectious unit: the complete virion.

In patients whose lesions progress from a low-grade CIN to a high-grade CIN, the progression is accompanied by alterations in the virus-host interaction. These interactions appear to be critical to the transformation of normal epithelial cells to neoplastic cells. The key alteration seems to be the integration of the viral DNA into host chromosomes. Because the episomal (nonchromosomal) virus is found in latently infected individuals, the productive infection is in a circular form and because the DNA in the host chromosomes is linear, a change in the physical state of the virus must take place before viral DNA can be integrated into the host chromosome. What initiates this change and the mechanism by which it occurs is not yet understood, but the circular strand of viral DNA is opened and the linear DNA can be spliced into the host DNA. It can then use the protein production apparatus of the transformed host cell.

The viral genome of HPV can be divided into three regions: the upstream regulatory region (URR), the early region, and the late region. In the early region, the viral genome begins to replicate independent of the host cell cycle, and large numbers of complete virions are produced. This is referred to as a productive viral infection. In a productively infected epithelium, viral replication takes place principally in intermediate and superficial cells, with the greatest number of viral particles found in the terminally differentiated epithelium. The control of viral replication is determined by the early genes, but as the epithelial cells mature and become differentiated, cell-derived, differentiation-specific transcriptional factors are produced by the host epithelial cells, and capsid proteins are synthesized to surround the viral DNA. These latent or productive viral infections may be clinically unrecognized or may be associated with genital warts, but they do not result in neoplastic transformation of the infected epithelial cells.

Human Papillomavirus Genome and the Mechanism of Carcinogenesis

The HPV genome has been very well studied and is relevant to this chapter because the molecular mechanisms involved have allowed scientists and clinicians to understand the process of malignant transformation and thus develop diagnostic tests and prophylactic vaccines to screen for and, if necessary, prevent cervical cancer.

The papillomavirus infects only epithelium. In the cervix, viral access also occurs via microtrauma to the thin, immature basal- and parabasal-type cells. When a mitotically active epithelial cell is infected, the virus may remain in the cell in a latent form in which a low number of about 100 copies of the viral genome are produced. This is termed a latent infection. Latent infections can be detected only by molecular techniques such as HPV DNA hybridization. Patients who are latently infected cannot be identified clinically as having an HPV infection. Because latently infected individuals shed virus intermittently and in a nonpredictable fashion, there is substantial variation in HPV DNA detection in women screened sequentially over time. In most women with an initial HPV infection, the infection clears spontaneously as a result of normal immunologic host defense mechanisms. In some individuals, however, for reasons that are not well understood, the latent papillomavirus begins to replicate independently of the host cell cycle, and large numbers of complete virions are produced. This is referred to as a productive viral infection. In a productively infected epithelium, viral replication takes place principally in intermediate and superficial cells, with the greatest number of viral particles found in the terminally differentiated epithelium. The control of viral replication is determined by the early genes, but as the epithelial cells mature and become differentiated, cell-derived, differentiation-specific transcriptional factors are produced by the host epithelial cells, and capsid proteins are synthesized to surround the viral DNA. These latent or productive viral infections may be clinically unrecognized or may be associated with genital warts, but they do not result in neoplastic transformation of the infected epithelial cells.

The HPV genome has been very well studied and is relevant to this chapter because the molecular mechanisms involved have allowed scientists and clinicians to understand the process of malignant transformation and thus develop diagnostic tests and prophylactic vaccines to screen for and, if necessary, prevent cervical cancer.

The papillomavirus infects only epithelium. In the cervix, viral access also occurs via microtrauma to the thin, immature basal- and parabasal-type cells. When a mitotically active epithelial cell is infected, the virus may remain in the cell in a latent form in which a low number of about 100 copies of the viral genome are produced. This is termed a latent infection. Latent infections can be detected only by molecular techniques such as HPV DNA hybridization. Patients who are latently infected cannot be identified clinically as having an HPV infection. Because latently infected individuals shed virus intermittently and in a nonpredictable fashion, there is substantial variation in HPV DNA detection in women screened sequentially over time. In most women with an initial HPV infection, the infection clears spontaneously as a result of normal immunologic host defense mechanisms. In some individuals, however, for reasons that are not well understood, the latent papillomavirus begins to replicate independently of the host cell cycle, and large numbers of complete virions are produced. This is referred to as a productive viral infection. In a productively infected epithelium, viral replication takes place principally in intermediate and superficial cells, with the greatest number of viral particles found in the terminally differentiated epithelium. The control of viral replication is determined by the early genes, but as the epithelial cells mature and become differentiated, cell-derived, differentiation-specific transcriptional factors are produced by the host epithelial cells, and capsid proteins are synthesized to surround the viral DNA. These latent or productive viral infections may be clinically unrecognized or may be associated with genital warts, but they do not result in neoplastic transformation of the infected epithelial cells.

The HPV genome has been very well studied and is relevant to this chapter because the molecular mechanisms involved have allowed scientists and clinicians to understand the process of malignant transformation and thus develop diagnostic tests and prophylactic vaccines to screen for and, if necessary, prevent cervical cancer.

The papillomavirus infects only epithelium. In the cervix, viral access also occurs via microtrauma to the thin, immature basal- and parabasal-type cells. When a mitotically active epithelial cell is infected, the virus may remain in the cell in a latent form in which a low number of about 100 copies of the viral genome are produced. This is termed a latent infection. Latent infections can be detected only by molecular techniques such as HPV DNA hybridization. Patients who are latently infected cannot be identified clinically as having an HPV infection. Because latently infected individuals shed virus intermittently and in a nonpredictable fashion, there is substantial variation in HPV DNA detection in women screened sequentially over time. In most women with an initial HPV infection, the infection clears spontaneously as a result of normal immunologic host defense mechanisms. In some individuals, however, for reasons that are not well understood, the latent papillomavirus begins to replicate independently of the host cell cycle, and large numbers of complete virions are produced. This is referred to as a productive viral infection. In a productively infected epithelium, viral replication takes place principally in intermediate and superficial cells, with the greatest number of viral particles found in the terminally differentiated epithelium. The control of viral replication is determined by the early genes, but as the epithelial cells mature and become differentiated, cell-derived, differentiation-specific transcriptional factors are produced by the host epithelial cells, and capsid proteins are synthesized to surround the viral DNA. These latent or productive viral infections may be clinically unrecognized or may be associated with genital warts, but they do not result in neoplastic transformation of the infected epithelial cells.
protein binds to the RBP protein, which in turn triggers E2F transcription factor, which leads to the production of proteins required for cellular DNA synthesis. By this mechanism, the virus takes over control of the infected epithelial cell and uses its synthetic mechanism to produce new viral DNA and viral proteins. This out-of-sequence initiation of new (viral) DNA synthesis by the HPV E2 protein would ordinarily lead to activation of epithelial cell p53 protein, an important protector of the normal cell cycle. In such circumstances, p53 would initiate the process of apoptosis leading to death of the epithelial cell, thus halting the hijacked DNA synthetic mechanism. However, the HPV E6 protein targets p53 for proteolytic degradation, allowing oncogenic HPV types to bypass this key cellular control mechanism.

The late-region ORFs, designated L1 and L2, are transcribed late in the replication cycle and encode for major and minor capsid proteins. The L1-encoded protein predominates in the capsid, is highly conserved among papillomaviruses, and is similar in all HPV types. On the other hand, the L2-encoded protein is highly variable between different HPV types and largely accounts for the differences in antigenicity from one HPV type to another. The current prophylactic HPV vaccines are targeted against these HPV capsid proteins and thus are HPV-type specific. All the proteins that are transcribed in the late region appear to be regulated by cell-derived transcriptional proteins that are produced only by squamous epithelial cells undergoing terminal maturation. The quantity of L1 and L2-encoded capsid proteins is highly correlated with terminal maturation of the epithelium. Well-differentiated HPV-induced lesions, such as condylomata, are generally rich in L1- and L2-encoded proteins, whereas high-grade CIN lesions, which tend to be highly undifferentiated, contain only small quantities of capsid proteins.

Since the importance of HPV in the etiology of cervical neoplasia has become more certain, various investigators have suggested that a vaccine against papillomavirus might prevent infection and perhaps even eliminate the virus in already infected individuals. This idea of immunization against HPV type 16 was tested in a clinical trial by Koutsky and colleagues, who prospectively randomized almost 2,400 young women who tested negative for HPV type 16 infection, immunized half with three doses of viruslike particle vaccine, and treated the other half with placebo. The patients were then followed up for a median of 17 months, and the risk of developing a persistent HPV type 16 infection was 3.8 per 100 women-years in the placebo group compared with 0 in the vaccinated patients (p > 0.001). CIN developed in nine women in the placebo group, whereas there was no instance of CIN among the vaccinated women.

### Natural History of Human Papillomavirus Infections

For centuries, clinicians have speculated that cervical cancer was caused by some infectious agent transmitted by intimate sexual contact. We have seen how many investigators have shown that this agent is HPV. But although it is true that all women with cervical cancer have been infected with HPV, most women with an HPV infection do not develop cervical cancer. Infections with HPV are very common in young sexually active women throughout the world. In a study of 60 college women, Brown and associates found that 28% were infected with HPV at the time they entered college. These women were closely followed and tested at frequent intervals. Four years later, when they left college, 40% tested positive for HPV. However, the interval examinations showed that most women cleared their infection and later became positive again following exposure to a new boyfriend. Overall, 82% of these women tested positive for HPV, and 77% tested positive for high-risk oncogenic HPV during the 5 years of the study. In other studies of young women, similar results have been found, and it appears that most women clear their infections within 12 months or so. On average, about 50% of women who test positive for HPV will test negative at 6 months, about 70% will be negative at 12 months, and by 24 months, only 8% to 20% remain positive. It seems as if the highly oncogenic types 16 and 18 are more slowly cleared than the less oncogenic HPV types.

It has been observed that women with transient HPV infection have a much lower risk of developing high-grade CIN. Although women with transient infections may develop cervical abnormalities that result in abnormal Pap tests and even colposcopic abnormalities, these are usually low-grade lesions and often clear spontaneously. Approximately 50% of women with a diagnosis of CIN 1 will resolve their lesions over 2 years without any active therapy. Women with highly oncogenic HPV types are more likely to have persistent infections, and they are at increased risk to develop high-grade CIN. In an analysis of HPV screening data of more than 20,000 women in the Portland, Oregon, area, Khan and colleagues found that women who had a negative Pap test and tested negative for any HPV had a less than 1% risk of developing CIN 3 within 10 years of follow-up. This contrasted sharply with women who had a negative Pap but who tested positive for HPV 16 on study entry; they had a 17.3% risk of developing CIN 3 or greater during the next 10 years. The risk of CIN 3 was 11.8%; for those who tested positive for other HPV types, the risk was even lower. At least half of these women develop high-grade CIN within 24 months, so the rate of progression may be relatively rapid in some patients.

The patient's immune system clearly plays an important and yet poorly understood role in the clearance or progression of
HPV. Women with impaired immunocompetence, such as those infected with HIV, and women who are immunosuppressed by various medications or chronic disease have a higher rate and, perhaps, more rapid progression of CIN that may make it more difficult to achieve a long-term cure.

Human Papillomavirus Vaccine

The immunogenicity of the virus and the development of antibodies with clearance of detectable virus in many women suggested the possibility of developing a vaccine against HPV. Prophylactic vaccines against HPV-16 and -18 and -6 and -11 have been clinically tested and are highly effective in HPV-naïve women. These have been introduced and are available in many countries, including the United States. Very few serious adverse side effects have been noted. However, it must be remembered that the current vaccines are effective only for preventing cancer and high-grade CIN related to HPV-16 or -18. Although these two viral types cause approximately 70% of all cervical cancer, several other viral types (31, 33, 45, and others) are responsible for almost a third of cervical cancer. In addition, women who have already been exposed to HPV-16 or -18 will not be protected by the vaccine. Continued cervical cancer screening will certainly be required for the foreseeable future.

SCREENING FOR CERVICAL NEOPLASIA

Cervical Cytology

After the introduction of cervical cytology for cervical cancer screening more than 50 years ago, multiple screening programs from all parts of the world have reported decreased rates of invasive cervical cancer and decreased death rates from a malignancy that had previously been the number-one worldwide cause of cancer deaths in women. Yet, even today, cervical cancer remains one of the leading causes of death for women in developing nations where Papanicolaou smear screening programs are nonexistent. The cervical screening program in the Province of British Columbia, Canada, is one of many examples of how effective cervical cytology screening can be. Since the implementation of a population-based Papanicolaou smear screening program in 1949, the incidence rate of invasive cervical cancer has decreased from more than 30 per 100,000 women to less than 5, and the mortality rate has decreased from 12 to about 3 per 100,000 (Fig. 46.3). These excellent results have been obtained through a combination of a population-based program with a central registry that notifies women every 3 years that their screening visit is due and follows up to be sure they do not default (a “call and recall” system); an excellent central cytology laboratory with well-trained clinicians to obtain the smears; and a network of colposcopy follow-up clinics where women with abnormal results are evaluated and treated. The program is well organized, with quality control built in at every level, and funding for this preventive health service and any follow-up or treatment required is universally provided to all residents of the province. All of these elements are required to achieve excellent results from a screening program.

Despite the effectiveness of cervical screening programs, there are several limitations of Papanicolaou smear screening. A single Pap smear has a sensitivity of only about 30% to 60%. This means that a single test will not detect a cervical lesion in many women. However, the slow progression of CIN before the development of an invasive cancer provides the opportunity for multiple screening cytologies over a period of years. So even with limited sensitivity, if three consecutive tests are negative, there is less than a 1% chance that the patient will have a high-grade cervical abnormality.

A false-negative Papanicolaou smear may result from either screening or interpretation problems. Screening problems include lesions that do not shed cells or that are not sampled by the clinician. Often, the diagnostic cells are not transferred from the spatula or collection device to the glass slide. Rarely, the slide preparation or staining is unsatisfactory. In other patients, problems with interpretation include failure to identify abnormal cells or misinterpretation of cells that are diagnosed as reactive or metaplastic when a dysplastic lesion exists. Various studies have shown that women who are diagnosed with invasive cervical cancer after a reportedly “negative” Papanicolaou smear must often have abnormal cells on review of their slides. The diagnostic cells may be few in number or obscured by blood or inflammatory changes. It is unfortunate that litigation over the “missed diagnosis” of cervical neoplasia is such a common problem for cytology laboratories in the United States. The threat of a lawsuit may cause cytologists and cytopathologists to “overcall” a diagnosis and the gynecologist to recommend colposcopy and possibly cervical biopsy in a patient with any hint of abnormality. This not only increases the anxiety and morbidity associated with cervical cancer screening, but it also increases the costs.

Liquid-Based, Thin-Layer Cytology

To decrease the false-negative rates of cervical cytology, attempts have been made to improve both specimen collection and quality and to reduce errors of interpretation. Over the past several years, several liquid-based techniques have been approved by the Food and Drug Administration in the United States. These techniques differ from the conventional method of Papanicolaou smear collection in several ways. Once the clinician
obtains a scraping of the SCJ and transformation zone area of the exocervix, the spatula and brush are dipped and agitated in a small bottle of fixative solution to elute the cells rather than being smeared on a glass slide. This bottle is then labeled and sent to the cytology laboratory rather than sending a slide. Once in the lab, a machine prepares a slide containing about 40,000 representative epithelial cells in a thin layer. The slide is then stained with the Papanicolaou stain and reviewed by the cytologists and cytopathologist. Several studies have shown that more diagnostic cervical cells are collected by this liquid-based technique and that the slides prepared from this sample provide a “cleaner” appearance with less clumping, blood, and inflammatory cells. This results in a decrease of artifacts. The use of thin-layer, liquid-based cytology reduces the rate of false-negative results from both screening and interpretation errors.

Computer-Assisted Diagnosis

It has long been believed that optical scanning by computer could be used for Papanicolaou smear interpretation, but differences in staining and the overlap of cells has made practical evaluation of high-risk slides identified by the computer on primary screening difficult for cytotechnologists, who could concentrate on the diagnostic evaluation of high-risk slides identified by the computer. Several studies have been approved by the Food and Drug Administration. Although the initial cost of these technology costs more money than the conventional Papanicolaou smear, but theoretical analysis suggests that these costs are balanced by the possibility of less frequent screening intervals made possible by a more sensitive test. Liquid-based cytology reduces the rate of false-negative results from both screening and interpretation errors.

Visual Inspection

Although colposcopy has been used for cervical cancer screening in some areas of Europe and South America, it is time-consuming, it requires well-trained clinicians, and it is expensive in most countries. However, simple visual inspection of the cervix after application of acetic acid has been effectively used in resource-poor settings for cervical cancer screening. Areas of cervical dysplasia turn white after application of acetic acid, and inspection of the cervix using handheld 3× magnifying lenses can identify many CIN lesions. This technique, commonly referred to as VIA (visual inspection with acetic acid), has been effectively used in areas of Africa, India, and China. Nurses or even health care technicians can be trained to use the technique and do biopsies or refer women with suspicious lesions for more extensive evaluation. Although VIA is not as specific as cytology, it is almost as sensitive and does not require several visits or the considerable infrastructure needed by cytologic screening.

Human Papillomavirus Testing

With the knowledge that significant cervical neoplasia is always associated with HPV, it has been suggested that HPV testing could be used to screen women for cervical neoplasia. HPV testing in the past has been inaccurate, and the complex laboratory techniques were not conducive to large-volume clinical work. However, with the advent of new generation hybrid capture techniques, these problems seem to have been solved. Current technology uses DNA hybridization and quantification by a chemiluminescence reaction to identify the presence of any of 13 different, high-risk HPV subtypes. Indeed, HPV testing was demonstrated to be more sensitive than traditional Pap smear or liquid-based cytology in a study by Schiffman and colleagues. In a trial of 1,119 high-risk women in Costa Rica, HPV testing demonstrated an 88% sensitivity to detect high-grade lesions compared with a Papanicolaou test sensitivity of 77.7%. Twelve percent of the women screened were HPV positive and were referred for colposcopy as compared with a 6.9% referral rate with Papanicolaou smear screening. In a similar trial from South Africa, Wright and colleagues instructed patients on self-collection of vaginal samples and were able to detect high-risk HPV DNA in 66% of the patients with high-grade lesions. This was almost identical to the 68% pickup rate of abnormal cytology collected at the time of a pelvic examination by a clinician. High-risk HPV was detected in 84% of the specimens obtained by the clinician during a pelvic examination. However, in high-risk, sexually active populations, many women with a subclinical HPV infection clear the virus without ever developing cervical neoplasia. In the South African trial, 13% of the women who tested positive for HPV had no identifiable cervical lesion. Nevertheless, HPV testing is easy to perform and is a relatively inexpensive test that can be automated in the laboratory and requires no interpretation (a problem with the Papanicolaou test). These advantages must be weighed against its lack of specificity for high-grade lesions; however, it may be of particular benefit in resource-poor settings where cytology laboratories are not available. Many studies from various parts of the world have confirmed the excellent sensitivity of HPV screening for cervical cancer, but its lack of specificity compared with cytology remains a problem.

Several approaches have been suggested to improve the specificity of HPV testing. Because the prevalence of HPV infection in most populations decreases dramatically after age 30 or 35, it has been suggested that HPV screening would be more specific for cervical neoplasia in women. Indeed, when Cuzick and associates screened a series of 10,358 women older than age 30, they found a sensitivity of 97.1% and a specificity of 93.3% for detecting CIN 2 or worse. Only 7.5% required referral for colposcopy. Even better specificity and improved sensitivity can be achieved by combining HPV testing with cervical cytology. Several large studies from Europe, America, Africa, and China were reviewed by Wright and associates in 2004. They found that the combination of HPV testing plus cytology produced a sensitivity of more than 95% for detecting CIN 2 or greater in most studies. Even more important, when colposcopy was added to HPV testing, the specificity was better than 90% in most studies. Both sensitivity and specificity were better with the combination of the two tests than with either one alone. The
problem with this, of course, is the cost. Theoretical analysis indicates that in the United States, if HPV testing and cervical cytology were done in women older than age 30, and if both tests were done only every 3 years if they were both negative or both positive, would be more sensitive and less expensive than conventional Pap smears every year or liquid-based cytology every other year. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists recognized this in their 2003 Cervical Cytology Screening Practice Bulletin. Management of women with a normal Pap but who test positive for high-risk HPV is still somewhat controversial, but it is probably reasonable to rescreen them again in 6 to 12 months.

**EVALUATION OF ABNORMAL CYTOLOGY**

Following the announcement of the 2001 Bethesda System terminology for reporting the results of cervical cytology, the American Society of Colposcopy and Cervical Pathology sponsored a 3-day consensus conference to develop management guidelines. These guidelines were revised at another Consensus Conference held in 2006. The guidelines, which are evidence based and carefully crafted to include almost all situations, were published by Wright and colleagues in 2007. It is important for the clinician to distinguish between cytologic or Papanicolaou smear diagnosis and biopsy or histologic diagnosis. In this subsection, the evaluation of cytologic abnormalities are discussed; in the following subsection, the management of patients with biopsy-proven abnormalities is presented. In both sections, high-grade abnormalities are discussed first because they are the least controversial and most important. Treatment rarely is initiated based on the results of cervical cytology alone. The Papanicolaou smear result, colposcopic impression, and biopsy diagnosis should all be in general agreement, although it is common that they vary slightly on the grade of abnormality.

**High-Grade Squamous Intraepithelial Lesions**

Approximately 0.5% of all Papanicolaou smears are diagnosed as HSIL (Fig. 46.4). When these patients are evaluated, more than 70% will have biopsy-proven moderate dysplasia (CIN 2) or worse, and 1% to 2% will have an invasive cancer. Because high-grade abnormalities may progress to invasive cancer or, indeed, be associated with an already existing invasive cancer, women with an HSIL cytologic diagnosis should be referred for colposcopic evaluation.

In many cases, biopsy confirmation of the lesion will be done by loop electrode excision procedure (LEEP) of the whole transformation zone, which serves as both a diagnostic and a treatment procedure. This is particularly important in large, high-grade lesions because the colposcopic diagnosis of microinvasive cancer is difficult. Unless excision and histologic study of the whole transformation zone is done, microinvasive cancer may be missed.

If a woman with an HSIL Papanicolaou smear does not have a high-grade lesion identified on colposcopy of the cervix and upper vagina, an endocervical curettage (ECC) should be done. If the origin of the HSIL Papanicolaou finding is still not identified, the clinician should request a review of the cytology, ECC, and any cervical biopsies. If the cytopathologist still believes that a high-grade lesion exists that has not been identified by biopsy, then the cervix and vagina should be reexamined and a LEEP or cone biopsy done, especially if the SCJ cannot be visualized. Consultation with an expert colposcopist should be considered.

**Low-Grade Squamous Intraepithelial Lesion**

Of all Pap smears diagnoses, about 1.5% to 2.0% are LSIL. Between 15% and 30% of these women have moderate dysplasia or worse, and 1 to 2 per 1,000 have invasive cancer (Fig. 46.5). Although the risk of a significant lesion is lower in these women, referral for colposcopic evaluation is still recommended.

There are many treatment options for women with mild dysplasia (CIN 1) on colposcopically directed biopsy. But...
because of the wide possibility of diagnosis in women with an LSIL Pap. Papainicolau finding, colposcopic evaluation and biopsy confirmation of the diagnosis is indicated. In a patient with no visible lesion on the exocervix and vagina to explain the abnormal Pap test, an ECC may be useful.

When no lesion to explain the LSIL Papainicolau finding can be found, the evaluation can be repeated in 4 to 6 months, a LEEP can be done, or consultation with a more experienced colposcopist can be requested. In postmenopausal women, atrophy can cause minor cellular atypia, which can produce an LSIL Papainicolau finding, so treatment with topical estrogen for 2 months may be helpful before repeating the cytologic study. HPV testing in these patients may be helpful.

**Atypical Squamous Cells**

A diagnosis of ASC is the most common abnormal Papainicolau diagnosis, occurring in 2.5% to 5.0% of all Papainicolau smears. Careful evaluation of women with an ASC-US diagnosis will identify 5% to 10% with a biopsy diagnosis of high-grade CIN. Although the incidence of CIN 3 may be low in women who are initially diagnosed with an ASC-US Pap, because of the large number of women who have ASC-US diagnoses, the total number with a final diagnosis of CIN 3 is large. In a review of 46,000 Pap, Kinney and associates reported 39% of the women with a final diagnosis of CIN 3 initially presented with an ASC-US Pap, more than the 31% who presented with an HSIL Pap. Although the risk of a high-grade cervical lesion is low in patients with an ASC-US Pap, because the number of patients in this category is so large, there are a significant number who will need further evaluation and treatment. Even so, immediate referral to colposcopy for all these patients is not cost-effective because there are so many women with no significant cervical abnormalities. A second option is to bring these patients back for repeat Pap testing in 4 to 6 months. This can lead to a delay in diagnosis, and it is not unusual for 20% or more of these individuals to be lost to follow-up, producing an even greater delay.

The third management option for women with an ASC-US Pap finding is triage by HPV testing. Several large prospective studies have demonstrated the effectiveness of this approach. In a National Cancer Institute–sponsored randomized trial, Schiffman and colleagues randomized a group of 4,500 women with ASC-US Papainicolau findings to immediate colposcopy, follow-up every 6 months until two consecutive ASC-US Pap, or HPV triage. All women were eventually colposcoped and treated by LEEP at 24 months if they had not already been diagnosed and treated for CIN earlier. In this study, HPV testing identified 95% of the patients with CIN 3 or greater and required colposcopy in only 53% of the patients. The follow-up arm was able to identify only 85% of the patients with a high-grade lesion and referred 60% for colposcopy. Even though the immediate colposcopy group should diagnose almost 100% of the CIN 3 lesions, it is very expensive in the United States, where colposcopy charges are three to four times greater than an HPV test. In locations where the cost of colposcopy is relatively less than HPV testing, immediate referral for colposcopy may be a more cost-effective management option.

Patients with a Papainicolau diagnosis of ASC-H should be referred for colposcopy because they have a 15% to 35% risk of having moderate dysplasia or worse. Even if colposcopic evaluation, including an ECC, is negative, these patients need to be followed up carefully. HPV testing for triage in these patients is not cost-effective and not recommended; 65% to 85% of such patients test positive for high-risk HPV.

**Glandular Abnormalities**

In the 2001 Bethesda System, there are four categories under the classification of glandular cell abnormalities. These include atypical glandular cells (AGC), atypical glandular cells–favor neoplastic, endocervical adenocarcinoma or its precursor, adenocarcinoma. The cytologist should state if possible whether the glandular cells are endocervical, endometrial, or not otherwise specified. Although it may be helpful for the clinician in the future, the experience with the different categories is still limited, and it remains to be proven whether cytology can reliably differentiate between glandular dysplasia and AIS—and, indeed, between AIS and invasive adenocarcinoma.

Therefore, all patients with abnormal glandular cells on Pap test should be referred for further evaluation. Follow-up studies show that 35% to 50% of these patients have a lesion and that most actually have squamous not glandular CIN (Fig. 46.6). A few have endocervical glandular dysplasia or AIS, and a few have endometrial hyperplasia or adenocarcinoma. Endocervical glandular neoplasia is also HPV related so that it is often accompanied by a squamous dysplasia. For this reason, the diagnosis of moderate squamous dysplasia on the exocervix in a woman with an AGC Papainicolau smear does not rule out an accompanying glandular lesion. The workup should be continued to rule out the possibility of a glandular abnormality. The association of HPV, especially type 18, suggests that HPV testing might also serve as a useful triage step in the evaluation of women with AGC findings, but this concept has not yet been proven clinically.

Evaluation of the patient with an AGC Papainicolau finding usually involves a colposcopic examination and an ECC, whether or not the SCJ can be visualized. An endometrial biopsy is indicated in women older than age 35 or in women with abnormal bleeding. If the ECC is positive for a glandular abnormality, a cone biopsy is indicated. Even though some experts are able to adequately excise endocervical glandular lesions with a LEEP specimen, we find that a LEEP often
Abnormal Papanicolaou Diagnosis in Pregnancy

The pregnant woman with an abnormal Papanicolaou finding generally is evaluated by colposcopic examination and directed biopsy if a high-grade lesion is suspected. The goal of evaluation of the pregnant patient with CIN is to rule out invasive cancer. CIN is not treated in pregnancy but is followed up until the postpartum period, when the patient is reevaluated and managed as indicated by the biopsy results and her social situation. During pregnancy, most clinicians do a cervical biopsy to confirm the diagnosis only if a high-grade lesion is suspected, although some recommend a confirming biopsy in all patients with a colposcopically visible lesion. The pregnant cervix is very vascular, especially in the last trimester, so a biopsy may bleed profusely, and cervical trauma can initiate uterine contractions. An ECC is contraindicated in pregnancy. Rarely, a cone biopsy is required in pregnancy to rule out invasive cancer when colposcopy with directed biopsy does not eliminate that possibility. This can be a difficult and potentially bloody procedure and should be undertaken by an experienced gynecologist only after all other avenues to rule out invasion have been exhausted.

Colposcopy

Clinicians have observed that the earliest and most severe epithelial changes on the cervix occur adjacent to the SCJ on the cervix. Anatomic studies have shown that the location of the SCJ is not fixed and changes during a woman's life. Under the influence of the vaginal pH, columnar cells on the exocervix are transformed into squamous cells by a process called metaplasia. There are three times in a woman's life that metaplasia is particularly active: during embryologic development of the vagina and cervix, at puberty, and after the first pregnancy. During puberty and after pregnancy, the columnar epithelium of the endocervix is everted out onto the exocervix or portion of the cervix, and metaplasia is stimulated. The columnar cells, starting with the epithelium on the tips of the glandular papillae, are changed into squamous epithelium. This process can be observed with the colposcope. The area of active metaplasia just lateral to the SCJ where this metaplastic change occurs is called the transformation zone—columnar epithelium is transformed into metaplastic squamous epithelium (Fig. 46.2). This epithelium can be recognized as a circumferential, pale white, translucent ring around the SCJ. These metaplastic cells are very active and are especially susceptible to HPV infection. As described earlier, certain oncogenic HPV types may infect and transform these epithelial cells, and the resulting increased mitotic activity and DNA density can be identified as white epithelium following application of 3% to 5% acetic acid to the cervix. As CIN develops, vascular changes occur, and these may be recognized as punctuation or mosaic. If the lesion progresses, bizarre vascular changes can be seen. These atypical vessels have grossly abnormal architecture and are colposcopic hallmarks of invasive cancer.

A standard colposcopic examination involves careful inspection of the cervix with both low- and high-power magnification after application of normal saline and then 3% to 5% acetic acid. After examination with the standard white light, a green filter may be used on the light source to increase the contrast of the red blood vessels and help clarify any vascular changes present. Lugol’s iodine solution may also be used to stain the cervix to clarify areas of dysplasia, metaplasia, or columnar epithelium.

To evaluate the cervix for abnormal squamous epithelium, all of the squamous epithelium needs to be examined. Therefore, for the examination to be adequate or satisfactory, the entire SCJ must be visualized. Once the adequacy of the examination has been evaluated, a careful systematic evaluation of the cervix and upper vagina is performed, concentrating on the transformation zone adjacent to the SCJ. Areas of white epithelium, punctuation, and mosaics are noted. The severity of any lesions seen are graded based on the whiteness of the epithelium, the intercapillary distance in vascular lesions, the sharpness of the lesion border, and the surface contour (flat, ulcerated, or raised). The staining characteristics of the lesion with Lugol’s iodine has also been used to grade CIN.

Once a lesion has been identified, the most severely abnormal area or areas are selected, and a colposcopically directed biopsy is done. Although experienced colposcopists can often accurately grade the cervical dysplasia based on examination alone, a histologic diagnosis based on one or more cervical biopsies is the gold standard for determining the final diagnosis of the cervical lesion.

These general guidelines should be helpful in most cases, but there are many special situations—including the evaluation of adolescents and postmenopausal patients—in which alternative management plans may be more suitable. More extensive management guidelines are available on the American Society for Colposcopy and Cervical Pathology Web site, www.ascp.org, where the most recent guidelines are available.
updated set of management guidelines arrived at by a Consensus Conference sponsored by the American Society for Colposcopy and Cervical Pathology is available online at www.asccp.org. The preceding sections on the natural history of the transformation zone and CIN need to be applied to the specific patient and the various management options reviewed to select the best plan for that patient. In many cases, the patient’s personal preference may tip the balance in the decision to treat or follow a lesion. Insurance coverage, school vacations, and equipment availability may also influence the choice or timing of treatment.

CIN 1—Mild Dysplasia

Reviews by Oster and, more recently, Nsouvo and colleagues have shown that during 12 to 24 months of follow-up, regression occurs with no treatment in about 30% of women with a cervical biopsy showing CIN 1 (Table 46.4). Current management guidelines for the management of biopsy-confirmed CIN 1 strongly recommend conservative follow-up with no therapeutic intervention. Although good data do not exist, larger lesions and lesions that have persisted for a longer time are probably less likely to regress spontaneously. Because the treatment options are the same and chance of complete cure approaches 100% for CIN 1, 2, or 3, the consequences of progression within the grades of CIN are minimal. It is therefore reasonable to manage a patient with CIN 1 by observation alone. Prolonged follow-up of CIN 1 (Fig. 46.7) without biopsy confirmation is not recommended because cytology and colposcopy are not sufficiently accurate to confidently rule out a more severe lesion. The only two risks to this approach are that invasive cancer already exists and has been missed on the diagnostic evaluation of this patient or that the patient becomes lost to follow-up and does not reappear until her condition has progressed to invasive cancer. These risks are minimal, but should be considered for each patient at each visit. In almost all series in which women with low-grade cervical abnormalities have been followed up with no treatment, invasive cancer has eventually been diagnosed in a few patients even under the careful follow-up protocol of a clinical study.

For this reason and because treatment is relatively easy with limited patient inconvenience, side effects, complications, and costs, CIN 1 lesions in women who have completed their families, who have three- or four-quadrant lesions, or who have had a lesion for 12 months or longer may be considered for treatment. These low-grade abnormalities have cure rates of 90% or better with LEEP, cryotherapy, or CO2 laser vaporization. Cryotherapy may result in less cervical destruction and be associated with a slightly lower risk of pregnancy complications than excisional techniques. Traditional cold-knife cone biopsy is probably associated with more morbidity and cost than is warranted by a diagnosis of CIN 1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patients Regress</th>
<th>Progress to CIN 3</th>
<th>Progress to invasive cancer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CIN 1 4,504</td>
<td>57%</td>
<td>32% 11% 1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIN 2 2,247</td>
<td>43%</td>
<td>35% 22% 5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIN 3 767</td>
<td>32%</td>
<td>&gt;56% 0.12%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NATURAL HISTORY OF CIN: LITERATURE REVIEW

Although patients with “atypical metaplasia” or chronic cervicitis have been treated with cautery or cryotherapy in the past, these are not generally indications for treatment under modern guidelines.

CIN 2 or 3—Moderate or Severe Dysplasia, Carcinoma In Situ

Patients with a biopsy diagnosis of CIN 2 or 3 (Fig. 46.8) have a less than 50% chance of regression and a significant chance of progression to carcinoma in situ, so treatment is usually recommended. Adolescents, pregnant women, and women who previously have been treated for CIN should probably be followed up conservatively without treatment. There is an increasing tendency for conservative follow-up alone in young women with CIN 2 lesions.

Although treatment of these lesions can be successful using either ablative or excisional techniques, high-grade lesions bordering on invasive cancer are best managed by excision, which provides a tissue specimen for examination by the pathologist. In several large series of LEEP specimens, a few invasive cancers that had been unsuspected were diagnosed on histopathologic examination of the excised transformation zone. Cryotherapy or laser vaporization of undiagnosed invasive cancer could result in progression, resulting in a deeply invasive cancer that remains untreated for several months or even several years. In the past and in some limited resource settings, ablative therapy has been or still continues to be used successfully in women with high-grade lesions, but the risk of undiagnosed invasive lesions makes this approach less than ideal.

A cold-knife cone biopsy in the operating room under anesthesia is indicated when cytology, colposcopy, or directed punch biopsy suggests superficially invasive cancer. Negative margins and a large specimen in one piece that can be well oriented are essential for an accurate and complete diagnosis of
FIGURE 46.8. Histologic section of high-grade cervical intraepithelial neoplasia. This lesion has some features of low-grade cervical intraepithelial neoplasia but also contains abnormal mitotic figures—a diagnostic feature of an aneuploid, high-grade, human papillomavirus–related lesion.

microinvasive cervical cancer (Fig. 46.9). A final diagnosis of microinvasive cervical cancer cannot be made on punch biopsy or ECC. It is necessary to examine tissue on all sides of the microinvasive focus to be sure more deeply invasive disease does not exist adjacent to the focal area sampled by punch biopsy or ECC. If a grossly visible lesion on the cervix is seen, a simple punch biopsy may confirm the diagnosis of invasive cancer. A cone biopsy is not needed in these patients.

Adenocarcinoma In Situ or Glandular Dysplasia

These diagnoses also require a cone or large biopsy of the endocervical epithelium and stroma with negative margins for diagnosis. An ECC or punch biopsy is inadequate to rule out a more extensive, possibly invasive, lesion. These lesions may be multifocal. As previously noted, most experts favor cold-knife cone biopsy for the evaluation of glandular lesions.

The standard of care for AIS of the cervix in the United States is still simple hysterectomy, although there is growing acceptance of cone biopsy alone for these patients. If cone biopsy is used as definitive management of AIS, the margins should be negative, and enough sections of the specimen need to have been studied to be confident that an early invasive adenocarcinoma does not coexist. Glandular dysplasia can also be managed by cone biopsy if the margins are clear, but there are few data on this subject.

Treatment Techniques

In general, treatment techniques can be divided into ablative and excisional. Destructive methods such as cryotherapy, CO\textsubscript{2} laser ablation, and electrocautery rely on an accurate colposcopically directed biopsy diagnosis because no tissue specimen is provided by the treatment procedure. On the other hand, punch biopsy, LEEP, and cone biopsy all provide a specimen, so these techniques are both diagnostic and therapeutic.

Punch Biopsy as Therapy

In most developed countries, women are highly screened and invasive cancers are uncommon, particularly in younger age groups. High-grade CIN is relatively uncommon, and most lesions that are detected are low-grade CINs found as incident cases. Because most of the cases of CIN are low-grade lesions that have developed between screening visits, the lesions tend to be small, to be located at the SCJ, and to occur in younger, often nulliparous women. For patients with a single, focal lesion, simple removal of the lesion with one or two punch biopsies may result in a cure. In the patient with a focal lesion, this approach may be worth a try. Theoretically, the entire transformation zone should be destroyed or removed, but in some patients, these small biopsies clear the abnormalities. The inflammatory healing response to the cervical biopsy may stimulate a response in the tissue surrounding the biopsy, resulting in improvement of adjacent areas. Whether these women would have cleared the lesion even without a biopsy can be debated.

Cryotherapy

Cryosurgery is a destructive technique that was introduced to gynecologists in the late 1960s to treat CIN. The cryosurgical instruments use nitrous oxide or carbon dioxide as a refrigerant to lower the temperature of the tissue below -22°C and to produce cell death by intracellular and extracellular water crystallization. The refrigerant is applied to the cervix with a cryoprobe, which is placed in contact with the cervical epithelium. As the gas is circulated through the cryoprobe, it withdraws heat from the cervix until freezing temperatures occur. The cervix and cryoprobe generally reach a steady state after about 3 minutes of freezing, at which time the amount of heat brought to the cervix by the vascular supply balances the amount of heat withdrawn from the cervix by the evaporating cryogenic gas.

Tens of thousands of patients have been treated with cryotherapy, which has proved to be a predictable, reliable treatment technique with limited side effects and morbidity. Cryotherapy is used principally in patients whose lesions are confined to the exocervix because the depth of cryodestruction seldom exceeds 5 mm. The cure rates are dependent on the size of the lesion. They generally average about 90% for lesions...
causing the cells to explode. The CO2 laser can be used to print and a high-power density. This concentration of energy concentrated to a small spot where it produces a small foot-

directed biopsies and ECC. This laser is an instrument that

The CO2 laser is another useful treatment modality for the

In many patients, the SCJ will not be visible after the cervix has

cervical extensions may lead to a high rate of cervical stenosis.

important, however, that the flat or shallow cone cryoprobe be

In Cure rates between the two approaches.

whether a single freeze-thaw cycle or a double freeze-thaw cycle

fluences lesional size and distribution. Opinions differ as to

because cryoprobes that have deep endo-

The most important end point in cryotherapy is that the ice

LEEP introduces the United Kingdom by Prendeville as large loop excision of the transformation zone (LLETZ). The technique uses a modification of a small electrosurgical wire loop biopsy instrument originally developed by Carter in France. LEEP was introduced in North America in the early 1990s and, as in Europe, rapidly became the procedure of choice for the management of CIN. It is usually done under local anesthesia as an outpatient or clinic procedure.

Although low-grade lesions can readily be treated with cryotherapy, many gynecologists choose LEEP excision instead because of its ease of use, its limited morbidity, and the fact that it provides a specimen. Caution is advised in choosing LEEP for small lesions in women who have only small areas of CIN in a small, nuliparous cervix because it is possible to produce irre-

LEEP takes advantage of the properties of modern, solid-

Because LEEP is easy to learn, easy to teach, and easy to ap-

LEEP should be removed with use of an excisional, rather

than ablative, procedure.

LEEP takes advantage of the properties of modern, solid-

state, electrosurgical generators coupled with loop electrodes

areas of CIN (Fig. 46.10). It is also possible to electrocoagulate
tissue with a 3-mm ball electrode. LEEP is used under colpo-

scope control and has the advantage of being a diagnostic and

therapeutic procedure at the same time. The fact that a tissue

specimen is provided makes the procedure particularly useful in ruling out early invasive cancer and in identifying unsuspected AIS. Many authors have reported that 0.4% to 0.6% of cases diagnosed as CIN by colposcopy, punch biopsies, and ICC in fact have invasive cancer or AIS in the LEEP specimen.

Because LEEP is easy to learn, easy to teach, and easy to ap-

LEEP can be used to treat patients with high-grade CIN without

the disadvantages and great cost of cold-knife conization. The

major advantage of LEEP over conventional cold-knife coniza-
tion is that the procedure can be performed under colposcopic

control and the margins can be examined colposcopically af-

fter the initial excisions are completed. This gives the operator

the opportunity to reexcise additional tissue if it is found col-

poscopically that residual CIN remains. For LEEP to be used

effectively, the extent of excision and the choice of electrodes

must be tailored to the size and distribution of the lesion (Fig.

46.11). If the lesion is present on both the portio and the canal,
a “cowboy hat” or “top hat” combined endocervical-portio

excision is appropriate. The first pass removes the excervical

lesion with a wide, shallower, second pass of the smaller
code excises the endocervical canal. The use of ex-

tremely large electrodes may lead to inadvertent cervical am-

putations and significant reproductive and obstetric morbidity.
FIGURE 46.10. Loop electrosurgical excision procedure. Endoscopic loop is passed through a Lugol-stained cervix from right to left. Note cut surface of cervical stroma from the 12-o’clock to the 6-o’clock position. Also note lack of charring so commonly seen with laser ablation.

The complications of LEEP are similar to those of cone biopsy or laser ablation of cervical dysplasia. Significant bleeding at the time of cervical LEEP is uncommon but can occur, and the surgical team and the clinic need to be prepared and equipped for such a situation. Hemorrhage requiring special techniques to control is more common if a larger loop is used, if epinephrine or some vasoconstrictive agent is not injected in the cervix locally, or if the vagina is accidentally lacerated with the electrode. The first step in controlling hemorrhage is the same as for any surgical bleeding: Apply direct pressure to stop the bleeding. This can be done with a large cotton-tipped swab or a gauze or cotton balls grasped in the tip of a ring forceps. After the blood is cleared away and the cervix visualized, the swab is carefully rolled off the bleeding site and the ball electrocautery used to vigorously coagulate the bleeder. More pressure is applied for 2 minutes or so, and the cautery reapplied, if necessary. Sometimes an additional injection of epinephrine will be helpful. Bleeding from the cervix can also be temporally controlled by clamping the cervical lip with a ring forceps. If these simple techniques do not work, the situation should be completely reevaluated. Is the patient stable and comfortable? Does she need a paracervical block? Should we start an intravenous line? Do we need suction to evacuate the blood? Do I have adequate assistance, adequate exposure, adequate lighting? Can this be controlled in an outpatient setting, or should the cervix be packed and the patient transported to a hospital?

With a paracervical block, more local anesthesia in the cervix, and/or systemic sedation, a large figure-of-eight hemostatic suture in the cervix will usually control the bleeding. For those situations, the clinic should be equipped with a long 12-inch needle holder and long 12-inch tissue forceps with teeth. We use a 0-gauge delayed absorbable suture on a 1-inch curved, taper-point needle. An emergency tray with this equipment should always be available in an outpatient area where cervical biopsies and LEEP are done. Suction equipment and equipment to start an intravenous line should also be available.

Infection in the cervix or an ascending endometritis, parametritis, or salpingitis can occasionally be seen following LEEP, but they are rare and usually represent a flare-up of an already existing subclinical infection. Long-term complications include cervical incompetence and cervical stenosis, which are relatively uncommon but can have serious implications.

Although cervical incompetence leading to premature cervical dilation and delivery in subsequent pregnancies has been a well-known complication of traditional cold-knife cone biopsy for many years, it was not until the large metaanalysis of

FIGURE 46.11. Diagram of approach to loop excision of small portio lesion, which can be removed by a single pass (A) of the 2-cm × 7-mm exoloop. B: Note the shallow dish configuration of the removed tissue. After the excervical excision is completed, the canal is recolposcoped after additional acetic acid is applied. If residual disease is found in the canal, it can be removed by a second pass with a smaller loop (C). (From Wright TC, Richart RM, Ferenczy A. Electrosurgery for HPV-related diseases of the anogenital tract. New York: ArthurVision; 1992.)
Kyrgian and colleagues that the risk of LEEP was well accepted. In this analysis of 27 studies that examined pregnancy outcomes after excisional cone biopsy by cold knife, LEEP, or laser, the authors concluded that all excisional techniques resulted in a roughly doubled rate of prematurity delivery. Patients treated with a LEEP greater than 1 cm deep had a higher incidence of prematurity. There was no increase in neonatal morbidity or mortality in women who underwent a large excisional cone following study from Denmark, Nohr and colleagues found a 3.5% incidence of preterm birth (>37 weeks) among untreated women compared with 6.6% for women after a LEEP. The problem is somewhat confounded by another large epidemiologic study of 5,548 births in Australia by Brumsted and colleagues. These authors noted that women with cervical dysplasia had a higher incidence of prematurity than the general population. But even within the cohort of women with dysplasia, those who had an excisional treatment had a 1.23-fold increased risk of a premature birth. However, when adjustments were made for other associated risks—such as prior spontaneous abortions, illicit drug use during pregnancy, and another major medical condition—excisional procedures were no longer associated with an increased risk of prematurity. These studies suggest that for a variety of reasons, women who undergo LEEP or cone are at an increased risk to deliver prematurely with subsequent pregnancies, but that serious neonatal complications are not increased.

The overall “cure” rate of LEEP is about 95%, but the incidence of persistent disease is related to the anatomy of the lesion. Lesions that involve the exocervix, no matter how severe, are easily visualized and can usually be excised successfully under direct vision. However, lesions that extend into the endocervical canal are more difficult because the upper extent of the lesion may not be easily seen, and it is more difficult to control the depth of excision. However, even with a histologically involved margin, immediate excision is not necessary (unless possible invasive cancer might be present). Healing of the cone bed and the electrosurgical injury of the margin often results in destruction of a minimal rim of residual epithelium. Thus, the lesion is removed in its entirety with use of the loop electrode. The patient does not have to undergo cervical biopsies and an ECC.

The advantages to this approach are that the procedure is done in one office visit, thus reducing patient anxiety by eliminating the need to wait for a diagnosis to be rendered and to then return for additional treatment. If used appropriately, it may save time and money. The disadvantage to this approach is that the colposcopic appearance of squamous metaplasia, repair, or other minor changes may mimic CIN, leading to inappropriate treatment. For see-and-treat to be used effectively and appropriately, the colposcopist must be certain that the colposcopic changes that are seen are sufficiently characteristic that a diagnosis of an HPV-related high-grade CIN lesion can be assured. Under these circumstances, see and treat may be the procedure of choice. If used appropriately, it may save time and money. The disadvantages to this approach are that the cone should be placed high on the anterior lip away from the anticipated line of excision. Sometimes two tenaculum are better, or the lateral stay sutures described above may be used if the cervix is large or the vagina is small. We prefer a pointed no. 11 scalpel blade, but a large no. 10 blade or a smaller no. 13 is the sharpened knife. The disadvantage to this approach is that the cervix is large and, thus, the term cold knife was introduced to differentiate these two procedures. A more or less cone-shaped biopsy can be excised from the cervix using a sharply focused laser beam or an electrosurgical wire as a scalpel. The laser is very expensive and requires considerable operator experience to be used effectively. The electrosurgical wire is quite effective and hemostatic. Both techniques often result in some thermal artifact, which may make interpretation of the surgical margins difficult.

Cervical Cone biopsy is generally planned to be both diagnostic and therapeutic, and the technique is widely understood and practiced. We recommend cone biopsy for endocervical glandular lesions and for suspected microinvasion because accurate diagnosis of these lesions requires a large, deep tissue specimen with negative margins. A large cold-knife cone biopsy is also recommended for treatment of persistent or recurrent CIN after failure of LEEP or ablation. The cone usually is performed in an operating room under anesthetic; thus, it is expensive.

The size and shape of the cone specimen to be excised will vary depending on the location of the cervical lesion and the size of the patient’s cervix. Although most glandular lesions are located within a few millimeters of the SCJ, a cone biopsy for a glandular abnormality needs to go deep into the cervix to include most of the length of the cervical canal. On the other hand, a clearly visible lesion on the exocervix in a 28-year-old woman with a Pap test, biopsy, or colposcopic exam showing possible microinvasion needs a wide—but not so deep—cone. Colposcopic examination and Lugol’s stain will help the surgeon determine the size and location of the lesion to be excised. After a careful examination under anesthesia, a gentle vaginal prep is done. The cervix should not be scrubbed too vigorously or the surface epithelium containing the intraepithelial lesion will be wiped away.

To decrease blood loss, the cervix is injected with a vasoconstrictive agent. We usually use a commercially available mixture of local anesthetic (lidoceaine) with 1:100,000 epinephrine. Acute hypertension can be caused by this drug, and its use should be considered and discussed with the anesthesiologist. Approximately 1.5 cc is injected directly into the cervix, where the incision will be made at 12, 2, 6, 8, 10, and 12 o’clock. This is a total of 9 to 10 cc, and it should cause some “ballooning” and blanching of the cervix. Although deep lateral sutures in the side of the cervix at 3 and 9 o'clock have been said to decrease blood loss by ligating the descending branch of the uterine artery, there is no evidence that this reduces bleeding with a cone biopsy.

The cervix is then retracted with Lugol’s solution to outline the lesion, and a scalpel is used to cut the cone. The cervix can be stabilized with a tenaculum placed high on the anterior lip or a posterior lip away from the anticipated line of excision. Sometimes two tenaculum are better, or the lateral stay sutures described above may be used if the cervix is large or the vagina is small. We prefer a pointed no. 11 scalpel blade, but a large no. 10 blade or smaller no. 13 is the preferred choice. Some experts will use a bare electrosurgical wire or thin pointed electrosurgical blade. Still others have used a sharply fo-cused laser beam to cut the cone biopsy. Each technique can be used with good success. As the cone is cut, it is...
retracted to the opposite side to provide visibility at the base of the incision. If possible, the cone should be symmetrical around the endocervical canal with the apex in the canal. It is desirable to remove the specimen intact as one piece and mark it with a suture at 10 or 6 o'clock so that the pathologist can orient any positive margins or foci of invasive cancer.

There are several ways to manage the cone bed once the specimen has been removed. If bleeding is minimal, bleeders may be cauterized and the cone bed left open to granulate. This may result in a visible SCJ more frequently than if the bed is sutured. If there is more bleeding, the bleeders may be cauterized as before; but the cone bed can be closed with a running locked suture placed from just lateral to the cone edge to deep in the cervical stroma by the canal. This is run circumferentially around the cervix—often called a “baseball stick,” because it is similar to the strong stitches used to sew the leather cover on a baseball. This is the most hemostatic way to close the cone bed. Finally, there is the classic Sturmdoff suture illustrated in Figure 46.12. The anterior and posterior cervical mucosa are pulled in to cover the cone defect. This is the most aesthetically pleasing closure, but in many cases, the SCJ cannot be seen after the cervix is healed.

The complications of cold-knife cone biopsy are similar but perhaps somewhat more common than those with LEEP because the specimen is larger. Significant bleeding may occur in the first 24 hours or 10 to 21 days after surgery when the sutures dissolve. Five to 10% of patients will require reevaluation, packing, or suturing after cold-knife cone biopsy, and occasional patients will require a transfusion. Cervical stenosis occurs in about 3% of patients. This is more common if the patient is not having monthly menstrual periods. This risk of premature labor and delivery caused by an excisional cone biopsy has already been discussed in the section on LEEP. The size of the cone is related to the risk of premature labor. The larger the cone, the greater the risk.

As with LEEP, the success of cone biopsy in the treatment of CIN is directly related to the incidence of positive margins. Persistence or recurrence of CIN after cold-knife cone biopsy is usually quoted at 5% to 10%; but as smaller lesions that do not extend into the canal are done by the simpler, less expensive LEEP, lesions with a higher risk of failure are left to be treated by cold-knife cone biopsy.

![Figure 46.12. A: Mattress suture is placed as in Sturmdoff tracheloplasty. B: Method of action of suture in drawing the flap into the canal. C: The lower flap has been pulled into position. D: Anterior and posterior flaps have been drawn into the canal. Lateral mucosa wounds are being sutured.](image)
The identification of a preinvasive lesion that precedes the development of cervical cancer has greatly reduced the incidence of cervical cancer worldwide. It is now well established that cells adjacent to the squamo-columnar junction of the cervix become infected by HPV, which may produce a malignant transformation. These transformed cells may eventually progress through various degrees of dysplasia or cervical intraepithelial neoplasia to invasive cervical cancer. The viral subtype, the immunologic competence of the patient, and various associated events or activities such as cigarette smoking all influence the risk of progression to invasive cancer.

Effective screening for cervical cancer and its precursor lesions has been done in many areas of the world using cervical cytology. With an organized system of testing every 3 to 5 years and with good diagnostic follow-up and treatment, cervical cancer death rates have been reduced by more than 70%. Visual inspection using acetic acid (VIA) and HPV testing have been introduced in recent years and are also effective screening techniques in certain circumstances.

Following identification of a significant abnormality (LSIL or ASC-US/HPV positive in the U.S.) by screening techniques, the patient is evaluated by colposcopy and directed biopsy to determine the actual diagnosis and extent of disease. At least 50% of women with a diagnosis of mild dysplasia will resolve spontaneously within 2 years. Therefore, conservative follow-up is recommended for most patients with biopsy-confirmed low-grade lesions. In young women and women in whom future fertility is important, conservative management may be considered in high-grade lesions. As a general rule, a biopsy diagnosis of CIN 3 or severe dysplasia indicates a cervical lesion that should be treated. Excisional techniques such as loop electrosurgical excision procedure (LEEP) is recommended in high-grade lesions because excision provides histologic confirmation that invasive cancer is not present.

Traditional cold-knife cone biopsy of the cervix should be used for patients who might have microinvasive cancer or those with a glandular lesion. Cone biopsy under general anesthesia provides a large, deep specimen that can be well oriented and has a better chance of a clear margin. Many different treatment techniques are available for cervical dysplasia. In general, ablative or destructive techniques such as cryotherapy or laser ablation are less injurious to the cervix and have a lower risk of cervical incompetence in future pregnancies. Excisional techniques such as LEEP provide a specimen for histologic confirmation of the diagnosis. The severity and size of the lesion—together with the desire for future pregnancy and the training of the surgeon and availability of the equipment—all help to guide the choice of treatment technique.

### Bibliography

- Brown DR, Shew ML, Qadadri B, et al. Evaluation of screening tests and diagnostic procedures that allow the clinician to screen for, diagnose, and treat these precursor lesions has greatly reduced the incidence of cervical cancer worldwide.
- CLS.
Gynecologic Oncology


Kinder Jr HC, Castle PE, Cox JT. Achievements and limitations of cervical cy


CANCER OF THE CERVIX

DEFINITIONS

FIGO staging—The International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) has defined staging of gynecologic cancers for more than 50 years. The cancer stage defines the extent of disease at diagnosis before treatment. FIGO staging is used worldwide to compare clinical experience and results of treatment.

Lymph-vascular space invasion (LVSI)—Small endothelial-lined vessels within the cervical stroma may be either lymphatic vessels or small capillaries. On histologic examination of a surgical specimen, tumor cells or clusters of tumor cells are sometimes seen in these vessels. Tumor invasion or involvement of these lymph-vascular spaces is generally believed to increase the risk of nodal metastases and worsen prognosis.

Parametrium—Connective tissue lateral to the cervix and uterus within the broad ligament.

Pararectal space—The avascular space in the posterior-lateral pelvis. It is bounded medially by the rectum, laterally by the pelvic wall, posteriorly by the presacral fascia, and anteriorly by the broad ligament and cardinal ligament.

Paravaginal space—The avascular space in the anterior-lateral pelvis bounded by bladder mediad, the pelvic sidewall laterally and anteriorly, and the broad ligament and cardinal ligament posteriorly.

SEER Database—The Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results Database is managed by the United States National Cancer Institute. It collects data from population-based tumor registries around the country that represent a cross section of 23% of the population.

Sentinel lymph node—The sentinel node is the first node involved in lymphatic metastases from the primary cancer. The sentinel node concept holds that lymph node metastasis occurs in an orderly, stepwise progression so that if the first or sentinel node is negative, then no other nodes are involved with metastatic cancer. Because cervical cancer is a midline tumor that may spread to either side and perhaps by more than one lymphatic pathway, it has not yet been proven whether the concept of the sentinel lymph node is applicable in this cancer.

In the first half of the 20th century, more women died from cervical cancer in the United States than from any other cancer. With the introduction of the Papnicolaou (Pap) smear in the 1940s, the early detection and treatment of preinvasive disease became possible. Consequently, both the incidence and mortality rates that are due to invasive cervical cancer in the United States declined approximately 75% by the end of the 20th century. The American Cancer Society estimates that in 2007, approximately 11,000 women will be diagnosed with cervical cancer. This represents a 13% decrease compared with the 13,000 estimated cases diagnosed in 2002. It is also estimated that 3,700 women will succumb to the disease in 2006 as compared with 4,100 in 2002. Based on these figures, cervical cancer currently ranks as the third most common female genital tract malignancy in the United States (behind uterine corpus and ovarian cancer) and the third most common cause of gynecologic cancer death.

Worldwide, however, more than 370,000 cases are diagnosed annually, leading to approximately 190,000 deaths. This makes cervical cancer not only the most common gynecologic malignancy, but also the third most frequently diagnosed cancer in women (behind breast and colorectal cancer). In general terms, the disease is much more common in developing countries. Overall, 78% of cases occur in these areas. In developing countries, cervical cancer accounts for 15% of female malignancies, carrying a lifetime risk of about 3%. In contrast, in developed countries, cervical cancer accounts for only 0.4% of female malignancies, with a lifetime risk of 1.1%. The highest incidence rates are observed in Latin America, the Caribbean, sub-Saharan Africa, and Southern and Southeast Asia. In developed countries, the incidence rates generally are low, with age-standardized rates less than 14 per 100,000.

This geographical disparity is felt to be related to the presence or absence of effective screening programs, because epidemiologic and biologic studies have not shown significant differences in tumor biology in countries with high rates of cervical cancer.

STAGING OF CERVICAL CANCER

In 1937, the Health Organization of the League of Nations adopted a clinical classification system for cervical cancer. Cervical cancer was the first cancer to be so classified. In 1950, this classification was modified to include preinvasive (in situ) cervical cancer, which was designated stage 0. New recommendations for the clinical classification of carcinoma of the cervix were adopted by the General Assembly of the International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) in 1961, and several other modifications have been made since then. The general use of this classification abroad and in the United States has been extremely helpful in reporting and comparing results of various modalities of therapy. Descriptions of the clinical stages in carcinoma of the cervix uteri as updated by FIGO in 1995 appear in Table 47.1. Although the TNM (tumor, regional nodes, and metastasis) staging system is included for completeness, most clinicians use the FIGO staging.

Stages II, III, and IV have remained essentially unchanged through the various modifications (Fig. 47.1). The major redefinition and refinements have occurred in stage I disease. Microinvasive (stage IA) carcinoma has been subdivided into stage IA1 and IA2 based on the depth of cervical stromal invasion by carcinoma. Stage IB has been subdivided into stage IB1 and IB2 based on the size of the clinical lesion.
TABLE 47.1
STAGING OF CARCINOMA OF THE CERVIX UTERI (FIGO, 1995)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary tumour (T)</th>
<th>FIGO classification</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Primary tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ, intraepithelial carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Cervical carcinoma confined to cervix (extension to the corpus should be disregarded)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>Invasive carcinoma, diagnosed microscopically only. All gross lesions, even with superficial invasion, are stage IB cancers. Invasion is limited to measured stromal invasion with maximum depth of 5 mm and maximum width of 7 mm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a1</td>
<td>IA1</td>
<td>Minimal microscopically evident stromal invasion. Measured stromal invasion with maximum depth of 3 mm and maximum width of 7 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a2</td>
<td>IA2</td>
<td>Measured stromal invasion with depth from 3B5 mm and maximum width of 7 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>Clinical lesions confined to the cervix or preclinical lesions of stage IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b1</td>
<td>IB1</td>
<td>Clinical lesions no &gt;4 cm in size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b2</td>
<td>IB2</td>
<td>Clinical lesions &gt;4 cm in size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>Cervical carcinoma invades beyond the cervix or preclinical lesions greater than stage IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>No obvious parametrial invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>Obvious parametrial invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>Extends to the pelvic wall or involves lower third of the vagina or causes hydronephrosis or nonfunctioning kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>Tumor involves the lower third of the vagina. No extension to the pelvic wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Tumor extends to the pelvic wall or causes hydronephrosis or nonfunctioning kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Carcinoma extends beyond the true pelvis or has clinically involved the mucosa of the bladder or rectum. A bulous edema as such does not permit a case to be allotted to stage IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>IV A</td>
<td>Spread of the growth to adjacent organs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>IV B</td>
<td>Spread to distant organs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The depth of invasion should not be more than 5 mm taken from the base of the epithelium, either surface or glandular, from which it originates. Vascular space involvement, either venous or lymphatic, should not alter the staging. FIGO, International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics; TNM, tumor, regional nodes, and metastasis.

HISTOPATHOLOGY

The principal histologic type of invasive cervical cancer, occurring in about 80% to 90% of cases, is the squamous (epidermoid) lesion. In 1923, Martzloff classified these squamous tumors into three main histologic subtypes and grades. Grade 1 tumors contain well-differentiated spinal cells, keratin, and squamous pearls (Fig. 47.2A). Grade 2 tumors, the most common, are predominantly composed of transitional cells of the large-cell nonkeratinizing type (Fig. 47.2B). Grade 3 tumors, the least common, are poorly differentiated small-basal-cell-type tumors (Fig. 47.2C). The classification of Martzloff did not prove to be clinically useful, mainly because biopsies taken from different areas of the same tumor often show different degrees of differentiation and different predominant cell types. Martzloff’s work did stimulate Broders, Wentz and Reagan, and others to continue to categorize the histologic types and degree of differentiation of squamous cell cervical tumors, and to study their clinical behavior and response to treatment. The histologic classification of squamous cell tumor types introduced in 1939 by Wentz and Reagan sometimes is used in pathology reports. However, Willen and coworkers were unable to confirm a predictive value for survival from the Wentz-Reagan classification. Similarly, most recent studies, including those by the Gynecologic Oncology Group (GOG), have shown the use of grading of squamous carcinomas to be of little predictive value.

A rare form of squamous cell cancer of the cervix is a verrucous carcinoma. It is a very well-differentiated squamous cell carcinoma with extensive keratinization that usually presents as a large bulky tumor of the cervix and often is confused with giant condylomas, such as those seen on the vulva. There is a sharp line between the tumor and underlying cervical stroma. Verrucous carcinoma has been shown to be associated with human papillomavirus (HPV) infection. Although metastatic disease is rare, this tumor has been said to become more virulent if treated with irradiation. Goldberger and coworkers reported an unusually aggressive verrucous carcinoma of the cervix. According to deJesus and coworkers, at least 49 cases of this tumor have been reported in the female genital tract, sometimes as verrucous carcinoma and sometimes as squamous papillary tumor.

Adenocarcinomas of the cervix are becoming more common, especially in younger women. In a review of the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Cancer Incidence Public-Use database from 1973 to 1996, Smith and colleagues reported that although the age-adjusted incidence rates per 100,000 for all invasive cervical cancers and squamous cell cancers decreased by 37% and 42%, respectively, the rates for
FIGURE 47.1. FIGO classification of carcinoma of the cervix. A: Stage IB: Carcinoma confined to the cervix, exophytic. B: Stage IB: Carcinoma is confined to the cervix, “cauliflower” lesion. C: Bulky stage IIA lesion with involvement of the vaginal fornix. D: Stage IIA: Carcinoma extends into the upper vagina or fornix. (Continued)
FIGURE 47.1. (Continued) E: Stage IIB: Carcinoma extends into the parametrium but does not extend to pelvic wall. F: Stage IIIA: Carcinoma involves the anterior vaginal wall, extending to the lower third. G: Stage IIIB: the parametrium is infiltrated, and the carcinoma extends to the pelvic wall. H: Stage IVA: the bladder base or rectum is involved.

Adenocarcinoma of the cervix actually increased 29% during the study period. These results suggest that current screening practices may be insufficient in detecting a significant proportion of adenocarcinoma precursor lesions. About one half of cervical adenocarcinomas are exophytic, usually polypoid, or papillary; others diffusely enlarge or ulcerate the cervix. Approximately 13% of patients have no visible lesion because the carcinoma is within the endocervical canal. Even without visible signs or symptoms, the lesion may infiltrate deeply into the cervix. Drescher and colleagues reported a higher frequency of uterine corpus invasion, nodal metastasis, and ascites in 26 patients with cervical adenocarcinoma compared with 139 cases of squamous cell carcinoma. More recent studies have reached contradictory conclusions regarding the prognostic significance of this histology.

In addition to pure (endocervical) adenocarcinoma (Fig. 47.3), cervical adenocarcinomas can exhibit a variety of patterns and can be composed of diverse cell types. Other histologic patterns include adenoma malignum, endometrioid, clear-cell, serous, and mesonephric. Different histologic patterns and cell types often appear in the same cervical tumor. Because mixtures are common, the designation of tumor type is based on the predominant component. If a second type composes 20% or more of the tumor, the lesion is designated as a mixed-cell type. Not infrequently, an adenocarcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma coexist in the same tumor, and these lesions are referred to as adenosquamous carcinomas. The so-called glassy cell adenocarcinoma of the cervix is rare and considered a variant of poorly differentiated adenosquamous carcinoma. It is known to be especially aggressive, with frequent early distant metastasis. Clear-cell adenocarcinoma of the cervix can occur in the presence or absence of intrauterine exposure to diethylstilbestrol. Saigo and coworkers found that the endometrioid pattern was associated with a more favorable prognosis than
FIGURE 47.2. A: Grade 1: Well-differentiated squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix. High-power view of spinal cell type. The tumor cells contain abundant keratin that forms epithelial pearls. B: Grade 2: Moderately differentiated squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix, transitional cell type. The tumor cells are characterized by a moderate amount of cytoplasm but are without pearl formation. Extensive pleomorphism and mitosis are evident. The tumor is frequently classified as being of large-cell, nonkeratinizing type. C: Grade 3: Poorly differentiated squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix, fat spindle or basal cell type. The tumor cells have little cytoplasm, numerous mitoses, and no keratin or epithelial pearls.

any other histologic type of cervical adenocarcinoma; however, other authors believe that the subpatterns have no prognostic significance.

The early classifications of squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix proposed by Martzloff and others divided these tumors into three categories: keratinizing squamous cell carcinoma, large-cell nonkeratinizing squamous cell carcinoma, and small-cell carcinoma. Over the years, however, it became apparent that the group designated as small-cell carcinoma was composed of a heterogeneous group of tumors, many of which displayed neuroendocrine differentiation. Recent changes in the nomenclature have led to the subdivision of these neuroendocrine tumors into typical carcinoid, atypical carcinoid, large-cell neuroendocrine carcinoma, and small-cell carcinoma. Typical carcinoid and atypical carcinoid tumors are rare in the cervix; therefore, their clinical and
Adenocarcinoma of the cervix.

Pathologic features have not been well characterized. Large-cell neuroendocrine and small-cell carcinomas are highly aggressive neoplasms, with a propensity to metastasize early and widely. Usual methods of therapy are not effective for these histologic types.

Various cervical sarcomas have been described by Rotmensch and coworkers. These tumors constitute less than 0.5% of all cervical cancers and include adenosarcomas, leiomyosarcomas, carcinosarcomas, and rhabdomyosarcomas. It is extremely rare for a lymphoma to develop primarily in the cervix, but lymphoma in the cervix is more likely to represent evidence of generalized lymphomatous disease.

**CLINICAL PRESENTATION**

Invasive cervical cancer is more likely than its intraepithelial precursors to cause symptoms such as abnormal vaginal bleeding (menorrhagia, metrorrhagia, postcoital bleeding, or postmenopausal bleeding). Many patients have a profuse and often malodorous discharge, especially when the disease is advanced. Thus, any patient with abnormal vaginal bleeding or discharge should have a complete pelvic examination, including a speculum examination with visualization of the cervix. Failure to examine the cervix in a patient with abnormal vaginal bleeding or discharge could result in failure to diagnose cervical cancer.

**Pain** is not a common symptom in patients with cervical cancer unless the disease is advanced. In more advanced stages, patients may report bladder and rectal symptoms. When the disease involves lumbosacral and sciatic nerve roots and the lateral pelvic sidewall, chronic boring pelvic bone pain radiating down the leg can be excruciating and indicative of advanced disease. Edema of the lower extremities likewise indicates tumor obstruction of lymphatic and/or venous drainage. Ascites is uncommon in cervical cancer.

Unfortunately, the physician cannot rely on the presence of symptoms to lead to a diagnosis of early carcinoma of the cervix. Many women remain without symptoms for many months. It is known that one third of patients with advanced stage III and IV disease have had symptoms for less than 3 months. The only way to diagnose cervical cancer in the earliest possible stages is to routinely apply special diagnostic procedures to large groups of women with and without gynecologic symptoms. This means screening the adult female population with Pap smears.

Invasive cervical lesions can be exophytic, infiltrative, ulcerative, or occult. The size of the visible lesion on the cervix may not correlate well with the extent or depth of invasion (Fig. 47.4).

An everted exophytic carcinomatous growth may be friable. Bits of tissue may break off on the examining fingers. On inspection, the friable exophytic cancer shows a rough, granular bleeding surface that can be sloughing and infected, with a foul-smelling discharge.

**FIGURE 47.3.** Adenocarcinoma of the cervix.

**FIGURE 47.4.** Squamous cell carcinoma, cervix uteri, FIGO stage IA.
A tumor that develops beneath the mucosa of the exocervix and infiltrates the cervical stroma usually causes cervical enlargement. The surface of the cervix may feel smooth, but the cervical consistency to palpation is firm or nodular. It is characteristic of cervical cancers that develop in the endocervical canal to cause cervical enlargement and a firm cervical consistency before breaking through the mucosa of the exocervix to cause a lesion. This also is characteristic of many cervical cancers that develop in postmenopausal women. In fact, it is possible, although uncommon, for a cervical cancer that is developing high in the endocervical canal to invade the parametrial tissue and even obstruct the ureters before causing a visible cervical lesion. An ulcerative lesion can look like a fairly clean punched-out ulcer, but more commonly it is an irregular crater with a necrotic bleeding base and a foul-smelling discharge.

Any grossly visible lesion of the cervix should be considered suspicious for cancer, and biopsy should be performed. Good visualization with a speculum and adequate illumination are essential. A Pap smear should be taken even though it can be less accurate in the presence of a grossly visible cervical lesion. Colposcopic examination is neither needed nor particularly effective for a gross cervical lesion, but can be helpful when there is a small surface lesion to identify the most abnormal area for directed biopsies. The primary benefit of colposcopy is in visualizing noninvasive, precursor, or minimally invasive lesions that cannot be visualized without magnification.

Cervical biopsy techniques are discussed in Chapter 46. Biopsies can be undertaken with any of a number of special instruments: the Kevorkian, Young, or Gaylor biopsy forceps are particularly functional for taking an adequate biopsy specimen. It is important to obtain a specimen where frank stromal invasion can be demonstrated, not from the exophytic portion where no benign stroma is present. Surgical conization under anesthesia is unnecessary when a gross cervical lesion is present. Surgical conization under anesthesia is unnecessary when a gross cervical lesion is present. Surgical conization under anesthesia is unnecessary when a gross cervical lesion is present. Surgical conization under anesthesia is unnecessary when a gross cervical lesion is present. Surgical conization under anesthesia is unnecessary when a gross cervical lesion is present. Surgical conization under anesthesia is unnecessary when a gross cervical lesion is present. Surgical conization under anesthesia is unnecessary when a gross cervical lesion is present.
lesions by 10% to 20%. Lesions that involve the corpus also were found to have a twofold greater incidence of distant metastases when compared with lesions without corpus extension. Similar observations have been reported by Prempree and coworkers from 82 cases of stage I and II disease with endometrial extension. The absolute 5-year cure rates of 68% for stage I and 62% for stage II disease with endometrial extension reflects the higher risk of metastases: 20% for stage I cases and 24% for stage II cases. Such reports must be studied with consideration of the difficulty of establishing a diagnosis of endometrial extension by using microscopic study of endometrial curettage specimens. Frequently, the curettage specimen is contaminated by the cervical tumor, making it difficult to be certain about endometrial extension. Treatment planning is not altered by such observations, nor is a fractional curettage recommended as part of pretreatment evaluation.

Lymph node metastases, either regional (pelvic) or to higher-level (common iliac and paraaortic) lymph nodes, have proved to be one of the most reliable prognostic factors for patients with cervical cancer (Fig. 47.6). The frequency of metastases to pelvic lymph nodes is about 0% to 0.5% for patients with stage IA1; 7% to 9% for stage IA2; 12% to 20% for stage IB; 20% to 38% for stage IIA; 16% to 36% for stage IIB; 35% for stage III; and 50% for stage IV. Preoperative detection of positive pelvic lymph nodes is unreliable, even with newer radiologic imaging techniques. Detection of positive lymph nodes is more accurately determined when lymphadenectomy is used in preoperative staging or treatment. Although Kolstad showed that when intraoperative lymphography is used, 13% to 25% more patients with stage IB disease are found to have positive regional lymph nodes, this technique is rarely used outside the research setting.

When patients with stage IB cervical cancer are primarily treated with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy, the 5-year cure rate is about 90% if there are no lymph node metastases. However, if metastatic disease to lymph nodes is detected, the 5-year cure rate falls to about 65% to 80%. The number of positive nodes also influences prognosis. In a review of the literature before the current standard of postoperative concurrent chemoradiation therapy, Hoskins reported an 83% survival rate for patients with stage IB and IIA disease who had negative lymph nodes at the time of radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy. The survival rate decreased to 57% in patients with one to two positive nodes and 31% in those with greater than three positive nodes.

Metastatic disease to paraaortic lymph nodes occurs in 4% to 7% of patients with stage I disease, 15% to 20% with stage II disease, 25% to 30% with stage III disease, and 30% to 50% with stage IV disease. Most studies confirm that metastasis to paraaortic nodes occurs more frequently when positive pelvic nodes also are present. The rarity of patients found to have positive paraaortic nodes when pelvic nodes are negative raises the question: How well sampled and/or sectioned were the pelvic nodes? Even with extended-field radiation therapy, the 5-year survival rate for patients with metastases to the paraaortic nodes is only about 25% to 35%.

Histologic tumor grade has been reported to affect prognosis. Early studies by Chung and coworkers and van Nagell and colleagues demonstrated a poorer prognosis among patients with poorly differentiated tumors. However, more recent studies by Zaino and GOG have shown the grading of squamous tumors to be of little predictive value in cervical carcinoma. Shingleton and Orr reviewed nine publications that reported on 3,764 patients with predominantly squamous cell carcinoma. Twenty-eight different factors were evaluated for prognostic significance. On multivariate analysis, tumor volume, lymph node metastasis, parametrial invasion, and LVSI were found to be significant independent prognostic factors, but patient age and tumor grade were not.

On the other hand, tumor differentiation may have a significant prognostic role in adenocarcinoma of the cervix. Shingleton and Orr also reviewed eight studies containing 577 patients with adenocarcinoma of the cervix. As with squamous cell carcinoma, the strongest independent prognostic variables were tumor size and nodal metastasis. However, unlike with squamous cell carcinoma, tumor grade appeared to have prognostic significance.

Several investigators, including Swan and Roddick, Wheless and Graham, and Julian and coworkers, have drawn attention to the fact that when there is a mixture of
adenocarcinomatous and squamous elements—so-called adenocarcinoma-in-situ tumors—tends to be poor and the incidence of pelvic lymph node metastases is high. Histologic combinations should be considered when comparing the prognoses of adenocarcinoma and squamous cancers of the cervix. The literature is mixed on the overall issue of whether adenocarcinoma in general and adenocarcinoma-in-situ tumors in particular are more virulent and less curable than their squamous counterparts. Stehman and colleagues performed a multivariate analysis of prognostic variables for 626 patients with locally advanced cervical carcinoma treated with radiation therapy on three GOG protocols. Histologic cell type was not found to be a significant prognostic factor. A national pattern of care and evaluation study of the American College of Surgeons also failed to report statistically significant 5-year survival rates for squamous and adenocarcinoma, regardless of type of therapy chosen.

In a GOG prospective study of 645 patients with stage IB squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix treated with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy, Delgado and colleagues identified three independent risk factors in relation to disease-free survival: the depth of invasion, the size of the tumor, and LVSI. The disease-free interval was 89% for those patients without LVSI compared with 77% for those found to have LVSI. Although not all studies have found LVSI to be an independent prognostic factor, as stated, in a review of nine studies (including the study by Delgado et al.) containing 3,761 patients, Shingleton and Orr found LVSI to be a significant independent prognostic factor on multivariate analysis. The incidence of LVSI in early-stage lesions varies widely, depending on multiple factors, including the number of sections of the cervix prepared, the depth of stromal invasion, and the interest of the examining pathologist.

Observations from Austria and Germany indicate that there is considerable variation in the frequency with which LVSI is recognized by the pathologist. In a combined study of more than 1,000 patients at three different reference centers (Graz, Munich, and Erlangen), Burghardt and associates reported the frequency with which LVSI was identified ranged from 9% in Munich, where only blood vessel involvement was so classified, to 43% in Graz, where it was classified as capillarylike space involvement. At the third center, Erlangen, the corresponding value was intermediate at 23%. Such variations in histopathologic criteria may well contribute to some of the controversy that exists regarding the prognostic significance of LVSI.

To this point, this discussion of prognostic factors has included only anatomic and morphologic factors. Peipert and associates emphasize that cancer, including cervical cancer, has both form and function. Accordingly, other clinical variables, such as patient’s symptoms, symptom severity, and comorbidity, affect the survival rate of patients with invasive cervical cancer. Unless these variables are suitably included, prognostic estimates based on morphology alone are imprecise, and therapeutic evaluations can be misleading. According to Rutledge and associates, there is no consistent effect of age on survival rate in patients treated for cervical cancer. Younger patients with early-stage disease seemed to survive longer than older patients, but the tendency reversed when disease was advanced.

PRETREATMENT EVALUATION

When a diagnosis of invasive cervical cancer has been established histologically, the clinician should perform an evaluation of all pelvic organs to determine whether the tumor is confined to the cervix or has extended to the adjacent vagina, parametrium, endometrial cavity, bladder, ureters, or rectum. According to the FIGO guidelines for clinical staging, diagnostic studies may include intravenous urography (IVU), cystoscopic examination of the bladder and urethra, a proctosigmoidoscopic study, a barium enema (BE), and in the case of early-stage disease, a colposcopic study of the vagina and the vaginal fornices. Colposcopic findings may be used for assigning a stage to the tumor (for instance, FIGO stage IIA), but the results must be confirmed by biopsy. Chest radiographs and electrocardiographic studies are used to determine hypercalcemic disease, particularly in the older patient. Pulmonary function studies can be important, especially for evaluating patients who are candidates for extensive surgery.

When studies detect ureteral obstruction, a tumor is classified as a stage IB lesion, regardless of the size of the primary lesion. Ureteral obstruction, either hydronephrosis or nonfunction of the kidney, is well established as an indicator of poor prognosis, as recognized in the FIGO classification. Retrograde pyelography can be performed after the ureteral obstruction is located for further evaluation; however, it is not routinely recommended. Kidney function studies such as serum creatinine and creatinine clearance provide important baseline information before treatment; complete urinalysis is useful for detecting the presence of albumin or white and red blood cells and renal tubular casts.

In women with bulky or advanced-stage tumors, the bladder mucosa also should be inspected cystoscopically for possible bullous edema, which indicates lymphatic obstruction within the bladder wall. Evidence of tumor in the bladder must be confirmed by biopsy before the lesion can be classified as stage IV A. Rectal mucosal lesions also require a biopsy via proctosigmoidoscopy, because they can be related to an inflammatory process rather than to the cervical tumor.

A pelvic examination must be performed as part of the staging process, and it may be necessary to have the patient completely relaxed by general anesthesia. In as many as 20% of patients, the initial clinical classification of the disease based on office evaluation has been proven to be incorrect based on findings at the time of pelvic examination under anesthesia. Such an examination can reveal a more advanced stage of the disease than was originally found; additional biopsies (if indicated) or fractional curettage can be done as well as colposcopy, cystoscopy, and proctosigmoidoscopy. In today’s health care climate however, the cost of a separate examination under anesthesia may need to be reserved for only the most problematic cases.

Pretreatment pedal lymphangiography has been used in the past to detect pelvic and paraaortic lymph node metastases, but the procedure is tedious and associated with many false-negative and -positive findings. When compared with lymphadenectomy, positive lymphangiograms have an accuracy rate of less than 75% and a false-negative rate as high as 50%. Furthermore, a lymphangiogram only detects metastatic lesions when the parenchyma of the lymph node has become distorted, by which time the lesions are macroscopic. The procedure thus is not recommended for routine use in the pretreatment evaluation of cervical cancer patients.

Surgical experience from pelvic lymphadenectomy has confirmed an error rate of 15% to 25% in the clinical staging of patients with stage IB or II lesions. In 10% to 30% of cases with stage II or III tumors, in addition to positive findings of occult pelvic lymph nodes, other metastases may be found in the paraaortic nodes. Unfortunately, pelvic examinations and clinical staging as defined by FIGO cannot detect such metastases. Consequently, there is a growing body of literature showing...
the superiority of cross-sectional imaging (computed tomography [CT] and magnetic resonance imaging [MRI]) over clinical staging in delineating the extent of disease in patients with cervical cancer. As stated earlier, official FIGO guidelines do not incorporate the use of either CT or MRI findings into the staging of cervical cancer. This is due to FIGO guidelines that staging methods should be universally available so that staging can be a standardized means of communication between different institutions worldwide. However, as knowledge of prognostic factors and the value of cross-sectional imaging have accumulated, its use in treatment planning has increased despite the lack of change in the official FIGO clinical staging guidelines.

FIGO Patterns of Care Study conducted between 1978 and 1988, Montana et al. reported a decrease in the use of IVU (86% to 42%) and BE (38% to 32%) in the staging of cervical cancer patients. During the same time period, the use of CT scan increased from 6% to 70%. In another Patterns of Care Study in the United States recently reported by Amendola and colleagues, the use of lymphangiography, IVU, and BE had fallen to 1% in the pretreatment evaluation of patients with clinical FIGO stage IB1 or greater cervical cancer who were scheduled for surgery.

The greatest value of CT scan in the pretreatment evaluation of patients with cervical cancer is in the assessment of advanced disease (stage IB2 and greater) and in the detection and biopsy of suspected lymph node metastases. The treatment plan for patients with locally advanced disease must be modified if retroperitoneal lymph node involvement and/or distant metastases are discovered. A metaanalysis by Schmeler et al. reported a positive predictive value of 61% for CT scan in the pretreatment evaluation of nodal disease in cervical cancer. Moreover, in experienced hands, fine-needle aspiration of retroperitoneal nodes with CT scan guidance has an accuracy rate of 80% to 95%. When the aspiration study unequivocally shows malignant cells, a surgical biopsy need not be performed. This information is most valuable in patients who have metastasis to the paraaortic nodes, because these patients would need the pelvic radiation fields extended to incorporate the involved region if there is no other evidence of distant metastasis.

**SURGICAL TREATMENT OF EARLY-STAGE CERVICAL CANCER**

Based on the pretreatment evaluation of the patient, including the prognostic factors of tumor size, clinical stage of the disease, and risk of pelvic node metastases, a treatment schema can be developed for invasive cervical cancer as shown in Table 47.3. Almost all patients are treated with either primary surgery or primary radiation therapy with concurrent chemotherapy. Some patients are appropriately treated with combinations of all three. The standard management of patients with early cervical carcinoma is surgical removal of the cervix. The extent of resection of the surrounding tissue depends on the size of the lesion and the depth of cervical stromal invasion.

**Stage IA1 Disease**

The exact definition of early-stage cervical cancer has been debated for several decades. This is illustrated by the fact that FIGO changed the definition of early-stage cervical cancer at least five times from 1960 to 1995. In 1985, FIGO defined stage IA cervical cancer as that which invaded the cervical stroma to a maximal depth of 5 mm with no greater than 7 mm of horizontal spread. In 1995, FIGO made its most recent revision in the cervical cancer staging system. After an extensive evaluation of the data in the literature, as well as seeking advice from specialty societies and individuals worldwide, FIGO changed the definition of stage IA1 disease to lesions that invaded the cervical stroma ≤ 3 mm in depth and ≤ 7 mm in width. Stage IA2 includes patients with > 3 mm but < 5 mm invasion and ≤ 7 mm lateral extent.

### TABLE 47.3

**GENERAL TREATMENT SCHEMA FOR INVASIVE CERVICAL CARCINOMA***

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease stage</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA1</td>
<td>Simple hysterectomy, abdominal or vaginal, or cervical conization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA2, IB1, and nonbulky IBa</td>
<td>Radical (class III) hysterectomy or trachelectomy, bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy with postoperative irradiation in patients with or without concurrent chemotherapy in selected high-risk patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB2 and bulky IBa</td>
<td>Full external and intracavitary pelvic irradiation with concurrent chemotherapy (± extrafascial hysterectomy) or radical abdominal hysterectomy and pelvic (+ paraaortic lymphadenectomy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB3 to IVA</td>
<td>Full external and intracavitary pelvic irradiation with concurrent chemotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
<td>Palliative chemotherapy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For individual patients, recommendations for treatment can vary, depending on the clinical circumstances.

Some authorities recommend modified (class II) radical hysterectomy, bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy for stage IA2 disease.

Refer to Figure 47.5.

In highly selected cases.

Some authorities recommend simple hysterectomy in addition to castration/chemotherapy for stage IB2 and bulky stage IA disease.

A patient with a stage IVA lesion that extends only in the anterior or posterior direction may be a candidate for pelvic exenteration.

Diagnosis

Microinvasive carcinoma cannot be diagnosed from a punch biopsy because adjacent areas may contain more advanced tumor; conization is required for definitive diagnosis in this situation. The accuracy of the diagnosis depends on the adequacy of the cone and the adequacy of the pathologic examination of the cone. The entire cone should be blocked so that an adequate number of histologic sections can be taken from each block. If the diagnosis is still not certain, more sections should be made. Although some experts can obtain a large tissue specimen with negative margins using loop electrosurgical excision techniques for a satisfactory diagnosis of microinvasive cancer, a traditional cold-knife cone biopsy in the operating
Treat that patients who have squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix have virtually a 100% cure rate when treated with simple hysterectomy or conization alone. However, for patients treated by conization alone, both the internal conization margin and the postconization endocervical curettage must be negative for cancer and dysplasia, because the risk of residual invasive cancer is significantly increased if either the margin or the curettage is positive. The choice of therapy should be influenced by the patient’s desire to maintain fertility. Although LVSI generally is considered to be an adverse prognostic factor in cervical cancer, its prognostic significance in stage IA1 disease is uncertain. Because of this uncertainty, some clinicians suggested that the presence of LVSI in stage IA1 disease might be more appropriately treated with radical hysterectomy or radiation therapy. Recurrence in the vaginal vault usually is the result of failing to accurately define the extent of the lesion and the presence of involvement of adjacent vaginal mucosa. This usually can be prevented with a careful colposcopic examination before hysterectomy. If vaginal fomices are involved, partial vaginectomy is easier to perform with hysterectomy if the operation is done vaginally (Fig. 47.7). Alternatively, if the woman is not a good surgical candidate, radiation therapy (usually in the form of brachytherapy alone) can be selected.

Cancer of the Cervix

In 1996, the National Institutes of Health (NIH) invited an international panel of experts to develop a consensus conference statement on cervical cancer. After an extensive literature review and presentation of the scientific evidence, they concluded that patients with microinvasive adenocarcinoma of the cervix with ≤3 mm stromal invasion and negative conization margins have virtually a 100% cure rate when treated with simple hysterectomy or conization alone. However, for patients treated by conization alone, both the internal conization margin and the postconization endocervical curettage must be negative for cancer and dysplasia, because the risk of residual invasive cancer is significantly increased if either the margin or the curettage is positive. The choice of therapy should be influenced by the patient’s desire to maintain fertility. Although LVSI generally is considered to be an adverse prognostic factor in cervical cancer, its prognostic significance in stage IA1 disease is uncertain. Because of this uncertainty, some clinicians suggested that the presence of LVSI in stage IA1 disease might be more appropriately treated with radical hysterectomy or radiation therapy. Recurrence in the vaginal vault usually is the result of failing to accurately define the extent of the lesion and the presence of involvement of adjacent vaginal mucosa. This usually can be prevented with a careful colposcopic examination before hysterectomy. If vaginal fomices are involved, partial vaginectomy is easier to perform with hysterectomy if the operation is done vaginally (Fig. 47.7). Alternatively, if the woman is not a good surgical candidate, radiation therapy (usually in the form of brachytherapy alone) can be selected.

Increased infection morbidity has been reported with intracavitary irradiation of a recently coned cervix. The cervix must be allowed to heal completely before intracavitary irradiation. The survival rates for microinvasive disease (all treatments) should reach 98% to 99% if patients are adequately studied and properly treated.

Contrary to its squamous cell counterpart, the currently favored treatment for early invasive adenocarcinomas of the cervix is radical surgery or radiation therapy. Only a few studies of microinvasive adenocarcinoma of the cervix have been done. Webb and colleagues recently reviewed the SEER Public-Use Database to identify 131 cases of cervical adenocarcinoma with 3 mm or less stromal invasion. Fifty patients had a radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymph node dissection, and none were found to have lymph node metastasis. Furthermore, there were no deaths among the 54 patients treated with simple hysterectomy alone. Others have reported a 0% rate of lymph node metastasis with depths of stromal invasion of up to 3 and 12 mm. However, bilateral pelvic lymph node metastases have been reported with as little as 2.5 mm of stromal invasion. Furthermore, Elliott and associates reported a case of lymph node metastasis with cervical adenocarcinoma with <1 mm invasion and a second case of recurrence and death after radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy in a patient with 1.8 mm of stromal invasion. More information is needed before sound recommendations regarding conservative treatment options for microinvasive adenocarcinoma can be made.

Hysterectomy after Conization

To evaluate the extent of an early lesion, cervical conization occasionally is required. If simple extrasacral hysterectomy is subsequently chosen as the definitive surgical treatment, the operation should be done within 48 hours of the conization or delayed until the cervix has healed, usually about 4 to 6 weeks later. If the hysterectomy is done after 48 hours and before the cervix has healed, the risk of serious postoperative infectious morbidity is increased. However, a radical abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy can be done at almost any time after cervical conization, even before the cervix is completely healed, without increasing the risk of serious postoperative infectious morbidity. The reason for this difference is not clear, but may be related to the fact that irradiated and possibly infected paracervical and parametrial tissue is actually removed when a radical hysterectomy is done.

Stages IA2, IB1, and Nonbulky (≤4 cm) IIA Disease

The recommended treatment by the NIH Consensus Conference for patients with stage IA2 disease is primary radical or modified radical hysterectomy with bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy or primary radiation therapy because the risk of nodal metastases is 4% to 10% in these patients. Again, the diagnosis of both stage IA1 and IA2 disease should be based on microscopic examination of removed tissue, preferably a conization or large-loop excision specimen, which must include the entire lesion. For stage IA2 disease, the depth of invasion should not be more than 3 mm taken from the base of the epithelium, either surface or glandular, from which it originates.

The second dimension, the horizontal spread, must be accurately defined by the postconization endocervical curettage. For stage IA2 disease, the depth of invasion must be accurately defined by the postconization endocervical curettage. For stage IA2 disease, the depth of invasion must be accurately defined by the postconization endocervical curettage.
7 mm. Vascular space involvement, either venous or lymphatic, should not alter the staging but should be specifically recorded. The remaining stage I cases should be allotted to stage IB. All grossly visible lesions are defined as stage IB.

For stage IA2 disease, standard treatment is class III radical hysterectomy with bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy; however, some authors recommend a class II modified radical hysterectomy (Fig. 47.8). The class II hysterectomy removes the medial half of the cardinal and uterosacral ligaments, ligating the uterine artery at the ureter. This more conservative operation has been used by some authors in the past 3 decades to excise small primary tumors while reducing the partial bladder denervation associated with the complete excision of the cardinal and uterosacral ligaments required for a class III hysterectomy. Five-year survival rates of 97% to 98% have been reported for patients with small cervical lesions treated with class II hysterectomy. The role of the class II modified radical hysterectomy was recently evaluated in a randomized, prospective study reported by Landoni and colleagues. Two hundred forty-three patients with FIGO stages IB and IIA were randomized to either class II or III hysterectomy. The recurrence-free and overall survivals were similar between the two groups. Patients treated with type II radical hysterectomy had a statistically significant reduction in operative time and postoperative morbidity, particularly bladder dysfunction. However, given the relatively high care rate for early cervical cancer treated by radical hysterectomy, larger trials are necessary to prove equivalence in survival between the two types of hysterectomy. As stated by Rose, larger trials are required before we can accept these results as the new standard of care. The estimated extent of tissue resection in surgical procedures for early cervical cancer is summarized in Table 47.4.

### Table 47.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tissue</th>
<th>Cervical conization</th>
<th>Total abdominal/vaginal hysterectomy</th>
<th>Modified radical hysterectomy</th>
<th>Radical abdominal hysterectomy</th>
<th>Radical vaginal trachelectomy</th>
<th>Radical vaginal hysterectomy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cervix uteri</td>
<td>Partially removed</td>
<td>Completely removed</td>
<td>Completely removed</td>
<td>Completely removed</td>
<td>Majority removed</td>
<td>Completely removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpus uteri</td>
<td>Preserved</td>
<td>Completely removed</td>
<td>Completely removed</td>
<td>Completely removed</td>
<td>Preserved</td>
<td>Completely removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovaries and tubes</td>
<td>Preserved</td>
<td>Preserved</td>
<td>Removed at level of uterus</td>
<td>Removed at level of uterus</td>
<td>Partially removed</td>
<td>Removed at level of uterus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parametria and paracolpos</td>
<td>Preserved</td>
<td>Ligated at level of cervical internal os of uterus</td>
<td>Ligated at origin from hypo-gastric vessels</td>
<td>Divided near rectum</td>
<td>Partially removed</td>
<td>Divided near rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine vessels</td>
<td>Preserved</td>
<td>Ligated at uterus</td>
<td>Divided midway to rectum ≤2 cm removed</td>
<td>Divided midway to rectum ≤2 cm removed</td>
<td>Partially removed</td>
<td>Divided midway to rectum ≥2 cm removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterosacral ligaments</td>
<td>Preserved</td>
<td>None removed</td>
<td>None removed</td>
<td>None removed</td>
<td>None removed</td>
<td>None removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal cuff</td>
<td>Preserved</td>
<td>None removed</td>
<td>None removed</td>
<td>None removed</td>
<td>None removed</td>
<td>None removed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
developed the vaginal radical hysterectomy), Okabayashi, and others, radical surgery was fraught with significant operative morbidity and mortality. The introduction of radium brought irradiation to the forefront of primary treatment for carcinoma of the cervix for the next several decades. In the United States, Joe V. Meigs reintroduced radical hysterectomy as the treatment of choice, publishing a series of 344 cases in 1945. Until formalization of training fellowships in gynecologic oncology in the early 1970s, many outstanding gynecologic surgeons in the United States (Parsons, Ulfelder, Loren, and many others) made important contributions and modifications in the surgical approach that have markedly decreased complications while preserving the cure rate. Today, proficient performance of the radical hysterectomy is the benchmark of the gynecologic oncology surgeon.

**Patient Selection for Radical Hysterectomy**

Simple hysterectomy is not adequate treatment for stage IB cervical cancer. In 1945, Jones and Jones reported a 5-year survival rate of only 41.6% in patients who had been treated for stage I cervical cancer with simple hysterectomy only. Such poor results also have been reported by Schmidt and others. When more than FIGO stage IA1 invasive cervical cancer is a surprise finding in a simple hysterectomy specimen, adjuvant therapy—usually radiation therapy with or without chemotherapy—should be given postoperatively. Suggested indications for radical abdominal hysterectomy are summarized in Table 47.5.

Although radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy occasionally are used to treat patients with adenocarcinoma of the endometrium with involvement of the cervical stroma (stage IB) and, rarely, patients who have a small cervical cancer that persists or recurs in the cervix after primary radiation therapy, in this chapter emphasis is given to the use of the operation as primary treatment for invasive cervical cancer.

**Table 47.5**

**INDICATION FOR RADICAL ABDOMINAL HYSTERECTOMY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>Extent of disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Invasive cervical cancer</td>
<td>Stage IA1 with lymphovascular invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage IA2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage IB1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage IB2 (selected)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invasive vaginal cancer</td>
<td>Stage I A (selected)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage I B (limited to upper one third of vagina, usually involving posterior vaginal fornix)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endometrial carcinoma</td>
<td>Clinical stage IB (gross cervical invasion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persistent or recurrent cervical cancer</td>
<td>Clinically limited to cervix or proximal vaginal fornix</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Patients with bulky stage IB disease (currently FIGO stage IB2) have traditionally been treated with radical hysterectomy and bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy or primary radiation therapy with equivalent survivals. However, patients with these larger lesions treated surgically have a very high risk of having lymph node metastasis or close resection margins, which are often reasons for postoperative pelvic radiation treatment. Landoni and colleagues performed a randomized trial of radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy versus pelvic radiation therapy for stage IB to IIA cervical cancer. Patients randomized to the surgery arm who had pathologic risk factors, such as lymph node metastasis, received adjuvant radiation therapy. Of the 55 patients with tumors > 4 cm, 46 (84%) required postoperative irradiation. The disease-free and overall survival for these patients treated with surgery and radiation therapy was the same as that for patients with bulky tumors treated with radiation therapy alone; however, the combination therapy significantly increased morbidity. Subsequently, a randomized trial performed by the GOG has demonstrated the benefit of the addition of cisplatin chemotherapy to pelvic radiation followed by extracervical hysterectomy in this group of patients. Therefore, many experts feel that patients with FIGO stage IB2 and bulky RA cervical cancer are best treated with concomitant cisplatin chemotherapy and radiation therapy followed by extracervical hysterectomy.

In this country, patients with stage IB invasive cervical cancer usually are excluded from primary treatment with surgery. They are usually treated with concomitant radiation therapy and chemotherapy.

The clinical significance of parametral involvement dates from the early studies of Kundrat and Sampson. Kundrat, working in Wertheim’s clinic, studied more than 21,000 serial microscopic sections of the parametrium, finding that the parametrium of one or both sides was involved in 44 of 80 patients. In a similar study at the Johns Hopkins Hospital, Sampson pointed out that the parametrium could feel indurated and yet shows no evidence of cancer. Also, the parametrium can feel normal and yet contain cancer. Sampson emphasized that only by the microscope can the surgeon exclude cancer involvement of the parametrium. More recently, Inoue and Okumura found parametrial extension in 7% of stage IB patients and in only 34% of stage IB patients. Burghardt and Pickel found true parametrial involvement in only 19% of stage IB patients, Matsumura and coworkers found no parametrial cancer in 58% of stage IB patients. These studies were based on careful examination of microscopic sections and reemphasize the difficulty of being certain about parametral extension from pelvis examination alone, emphasizing the shortcomings of a clinical staging system. Inoue and Okumura studied 628 operative specimens from patients treated with radical hysterectomy and lymphadenectomy and found that parametrial extension is an important factor in the number of positive lymph nodes found and in patient survival. If there is suspicion of spread into the parametrial tissues by examination, CT scan, or MRI scan, it is reasonable to offer radiation therapy with concomitant chemotherapy as primary treatment (despite the fact that the official FIGO stage should remain unchanged).

The major point to be emphasized is that the gynecologic surgeon should not attempt to treat a patient with a large cervical tumor with primary radical surgery unless there is reasonable assurance that the operation will result in the complete removal of the central tumor with an adequate margin of tumor-free tissue around it. The surgeon should not operate on patients with the idea that radiation therapy with or without chemotherapy can be used postoperatively to eliminate residual fragments of tumor tissue left behind after incomplete
Squamous cell carcinoma, clear-cell cancer, and undifferentiated adenocarcinoma have a poorer prognosis, regardless of the method of treatment chosen, and therefore are often considered for adjuvant radiation therapy and/or chemotherapy after primary surgery.

Patients considered for radical hysterectomy must be acceptable candidates for an operation and free of serious medical problems that contraindicate extensive surgery. In former years, some institutions limited radical surgery as primary treatment to premenopausal women so that ovarian function might be conserved. As experience has accumulated, it has become apparent that the operation is also well tolerated by older women. In a study of 45 women aged 65 years and older with cervical cancer, Fuchtnner and associates concluded that age alone should not be a contraindication to extensive hysterectomy in the elderly patient with American Society of Anesthesiologists physical status I to III. Kinney and coworkers reported their experience with the Wertheim operation in a geriatric population. Thirty-eight selected women between 65 and 89 years of age (median age, 69 years) were compared with 320 patients younger than age 65. The survival rates were almost identical in the two groups. Perioperative morbidity was minimally increased in the geriatric group. Cohn and colleagues recently reported their results with radical hysterectomy for cervical cancer in 46 obese women. The median body mass index was 36 kg/m² and the median weight was 95 kg. Nine patients (20%) experienced postoperative morbidity, mostly related to wound complications. No patient developed a fistula. Massi and associates have reported that the Schauta-Amreich vaginal hysterectomy can be used as an alternative to the radical abdominal hysterectomy in the presence of obesity or elevated surgical risks.

Studies by Shingleton and Levant compared outcomes after radical hysterectomy for cervical cancer in obese versus nonobese women. They found that survival was not compromised and the incidence of serious complications was not increased in obese patients. However, in obese women, the authors reported that the operative technique is more difficult, the procedure lasts longer, and the surgery is associated with greater blood loss. Cohn and colleagues recently reported their results with radical hysterectomy for cervical cancer in 46 obese women. The median body mass index was 36 kg/m² and the median weight was 95 kg. Nine patients (20%) experienced postoperative morbidity, mostly related to wound complications. No patient developed a fistula. Massi and associates have reported that the Schauta-Amreich vaginal hysterectomy can be used as an alternative to the radical abdominal hysterectomy in the presence of obesity or elevated surgical risks.

According to Shingleton, primary treatment with radical surgery paradoxically also can be riskier in very thin patients because of a higher incidence of fistula. It is speculated that easy exposure and lack of excess fatty tissue in these patients may result in removing essential vasculature around the ureters and bladder, resulting in ischemic necrosis. A thin patient has less fat around the pelvic vessels and in the lymph fields; thus, the surgeon should be satisfied to remove less tissue in an operation that will still be adequate in a thin patient.

The management of the pregnant patient diagnosed with invasive cervical carcinoma is perplexing. First, a decision must be made to either save the pregnancy or treat the cancer. Pregnancy is not a contraindication to primary treatment of stage IB or IA carcinoma of the cervix with radical surgery (Fig. 47.9). In 1974, Sall and coworkers reported on 29 patients with stage IB carcinoma of the cervix in pregnancy treated with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy. At the time of publication, 28 patients were alive and well, and 23 patients had been followed for more than 5 years. There were no
Advantages of Radical Surgery as Primary Treatment for Invasive Cervical Cancer

The most important considerations in choosing a method of therapy for any cancer are, first, the effectiveness of the treatment in curing the disease and, second, mortality and morbidity rates associated with the treatment plan. For the indications listed previously, the cure rates of primary radiation therapy and primary surgical therapy are about equal. The modern mortality rates also are about equal. Both modalities of therapy have a list of complications unique to each that seem about equal. There are, however, important major and minor advantages of primary radical surgery over irradiation for early-stage disease, some of which are discussed in the following sections.

Accurate Evaluation of Extent of Disease

The findings at operation and from careful pathologic examination of the surgical specimen can be immensely helpful in selecting high-risk patients for adjuvant postoperative radiation therapy, chemotherapy, or both. Most patients with FIGO stages IA2, IB1, and not bulky IA disease are not found to have high-risk factors and thus are spared the potential morbidity associated with whole pelvic radiation therapy. Furthermore, the findings at operation and careful pathologic examination of the surgical specimen can be helpful in determining prognosis and in identifying patients at greatest risk for persistence or recurrence of disease. Such high-risk patients may require additional therapy.

In addition to an accurate assessment of the extent of the cervical cancer, primary surgical treatment allows for discovery of other intraabdominal incidental conditions and diseases entirely unrelated to the cancer. Ovarian malignancies, pelvic tuberculosis, sigmoid diverticulitis, cholelithiasis, and other diseases and conditions may be encountered at the time of operation.

Preservation of Ovarian Function

When primary radiation therapy with or without chemotherapy is used to treat invasive cervical cancer in premenopausal women, premature loss of ovarian function is an unfortunate and inevitable result. When primary surgery is used instead, the function of normal ovaries can be conserved. Sutton and associates analyzed the incidence of ovarian metastasis for 991 patients with stage IB carcinoma of the cervix treated with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy on a prospective GOG protocol. Ovarian spread was found in 4 of 770 patients (0.5%) with squamous cell carcinoma and in 2 of 121 patients (1.7%) with adenocarcinoma. The difference was not statistically significant. All six patients with ovarian metastases had other evidence of extracervical disease. This study confirmed that ovarian metastasis is rare in patients with stage IB cervical cancer and extremely rare in the absence of other evidence of extracervical disease.

Although the incidence of ovarian metastasis is slightly higher in women with adenocarcinoma of the cervix as compared with squamous cell carcinoma, ovarian conservation should still be considered, especially in young women. Brand and Berek reported no ovarian metastases in more than 60 patients with adenocarcinoma of the cervix treated with radical surgery. Angel and coworkers found no ovarian metastases in 41 patients with adenocarcinoma of the cervix who underwent oophorectomy. Greer and coworkers treated 55 patients with stage IB adenocarcinoma of the cervix with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy. Ninety-one percent had ovarian preservation, and there was no evidence that this contributed to tumor recurrence. Hopkins and coworkers found that the best cumulative 5-year survival rate (93%) with cervical adenocarcinoma was in patients treated by radical hysterectomy without bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy and concluded that “ovarian conservation seems to be an acceptable alternative to bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy” in young patients.

Some authors have advocated transposing the ovaries into the paracolic gutters at the time of radical hysterectomy in premenopausal women to protect the ovaries from radiation damage. Ovarian function must be conserved. Sutton and associates analyzed the incidence of ovarian metastasis for 991 patients with stage IB carcinoma of the cervix treated with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy on a prospective protocol. Ovarian spread was found in 4 of 770 patients (0.5%) with squamous cell carcinoma and in 2 of 121 patients (1.7%) with adenocarcinoma. The difference was not statistically significant. All six patients with ovarian metastases had other evidence of extracervical disease. Some authors have advocated transposing the ovaries into the paracolic gutters at the time of radical hysterectomy in premenopausal women to protect the ovaries from radiation damage. Ovarian function must be conserved. Sutton and associates analyzed the incidence of ovarian metastasis for 991 patients with stage IB carcinoma of the cervix treated with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy on a prospective protocol. Ovarian spread was found in 4 of 770 patients (0.5%) with squamous cell carcinoma and in 2 of 121 patients (1.7%) with adenocarcinoma. The difference was not statistically significant. All six patients with ovarian metastases had other evidence of extracervical disease.

When primary radiation therapy with or without chemotherapy is used to treat invasive cervical cancer in premenopausal women, premature loss of ovarian function is an unfortunate and inevitable result. When primary surgery is used instead, the function of normal ovaries can be conserved. Sutton and associates analyzed the incidence of ovarian metastasis for 991 patients with stage IB carcinoma of the cervix treated with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy on a prospective GOG protocol. Ovarian spread was found in 4 of 770 patients (0.5%) with squamous cell carcinoma and in 2 of 121 patients (1.7%) with adenocarcinoma. The difference was not statistically significant. All six patients with ovarian metastases had other evidence of extracervical disease. This study confirmed that ovarian metastasis is rare in patients with stage IB cervical cancer and extremely rare in the absence of other evidence of extracervical disease. Although the incidence of ovarian metastasis is slightly higher in women with adenocarcinoma of the cervix as compared with squamous cell carcinoma, ovarian conservation should still be considered, especially in young women. Brand and Berek reported no ovarian metastases in more than 60 patients with adenocarcinoma of the cervix who underwent oophorectomy. Greer and coworkers treated 55 patients with stage IB adenocarcinoma of the cervix with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy. Ninety-one percent had ovarian preservation, and there was no evidence that this contributed to tumor recurrence. Hopkins and coworkers found that the best cumulative 5-year survival rate (93%) with cervical adenocarcinoma was in patients treated by radical hysterectomy without bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy and concluded that “ovarian conservation seems to be an acceptable alternative to bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy” in young patients.

Some authors have advocated transposing the ovaries into the paracolic gutters at the time of radical hysterectomy in premenopausal women to protect the ovaries from radiation damage. Ovarian function must be conserved. Sutton and associates analyzed the incidence of ovarian metastasis for 991 patients with stage IB carcinoma of the cervix treated with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy on a prospective protocol. Ovarian spread was found in 4 of 770 patients (0.5%) with squamous cell carcinoma and in 2 of 121 patients (1.7%) with adenocarcinoma. The difference was not statistically significant. All six patients with ovarian metastases had other evidence of extracervical disease. Some authors have advocated transposing the ovaries into the paracolic gutters at the time of radical hysterectomy in premenopausal women to protect the ovaries from radiation damage. Ovarian function must be conserved. Sutton and associates analyzed the incidence of ovarian metastasis for 991 patients with stage IB carcinoma of the cervix treated with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy on a prospective protocol. Ovarian spread was found in 4 of 770 patients (0.5%) with squamous cell carcinoma and in 2 of 121 patients (1.7%) with adenocarcinoma. The difference was not statistically significant. All six patients with ovarian metastases had other evidence of extracervical disease.
impossible. This is especially true of those inferior gluteal nodes can possibly be involved with metastatic tumor is technically eradication at best in that removal of all pelvic lymph nodes that pointed out that pelvic lymphadenectomy is an incomplete op-

eration that included lymphadenectomy. Furthermore, they nary fistulas), a lower operative mortality rate, and a cure patients had fewer postoperative complications (especially uri-

nary fistulas), a lower operative mortality rate, and a cure rates in patients who have undergone radical abdominal hy-
terectomy and bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy are unusual. These points are especially important when selecting a method of primary treatment for young women.

Psychological Benefits

There are probably important psychological benefits of pri-
mary treatment with radical surgery compared with radiation therapy. Most patients prefer to have the tumor removed and are especially encouraged when the surgeon can report that “the cancer is out” and that no evidence of metastatic dis-

case was found at operation. Radiation therapy carries an un-
fortunate connotation in some patients who feel that it is the treatment of last resort, that the treatments are actually “cook-
ing” the tissues in the pelvis, that the tumor is still there (albeit treated), or that irradiation can cause other cancers. All gyneco-


logic surgeons have heard the disappointment patients express when they are told that they cannot be treated with an opera-
tion. Some patients continue to request an operation even after they have completed radiation therapy.

Justification for Pelvic Lymphadenectomy

Histologically, there was competition between gynecologic sur-
gons who advocated radical vaginal hysterectomy without lymphadenectomy and those who advocated radical abdom-
inal hysterectomy with lymphadenectomy. The advocates of extensive vaginal hysterectomy without lymphadenectomy (the Schauta-Amreich-Navratil operation) argued that their pa-
tients had fewer postoperative complications (especially uri-
nary fistulas), a lower operative mortality rate, and a cure rate that was almost equal to that achieved by an abdominal operation that included lymphadenectomy. Furthermore, they pointed out that pelvic lymph node involvement at best in that removal of all pelvic lymph nodes that can possibly be involved with metastatic tumor is technically impossible. This is especially true of those inferior gluteal nodes that are located in the region of the ischial spine, as pointed out by Reifenstuhl. However, even Navratil stated in 1961 that “indications for the Schauta operation must take the lymph node problem into account.” Later he performed extraperi-
toneal pelvic lymphadenectomy with the Schauta operation in all cases of stage I and II that were locally advanced, as did Mitra.

In recent years, the operative mortality and complication rates in patients who have undergone radical abdominal hys-
terectomy and bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy have signifi-
cantly decreased. Operative mortality and fistulas occur in <1% and about 2% of patients, respectively. Therefore, one 


pted disadvantage of radical hysterectomy (high mortal-

ity) has essentially been removed, and the surgeon can concen-
trate on the question of whether lymphadenectomy adds any-
thing to the possibility of cure. If a pelvic lymphadenectomy is not done in patients who have a radical hysterectomy for cer-
vical cancer, at least 15% to 20% of patients (those with posi-
tive nodes) will be inadequately treated for their disease (unless perhaps all patients receive postoperative pelvic irradiation). In our judgment, it is better to do a pelvic lymphadenectomy in all patients and then give postoperative radiation therapy selec-
tively than to avoid a lymphadenectomy and give postoperative radiation therapy to all patients.

It is the opinion of some that pelvic lymphadenectomy is of no value in those 80% to 90% of patients who have nega-
tive lymph nodes. We disagree with this view. We believe that lymphadenectomy is helpful in achieving an adequate central dissection around the cervical tumor, the most important part of the operation. This is especially true of that part of the lym-
phadenectomy that involves removal of tissue from around the hypogastric vessels, from the obturator fossa, and from the lower presacral region. Admittedly, dissection of lymph nodes from the common iliac vessels and from the paraaortic region does not add to the completeness of the central dissection.

Removal of these and other nodes, however, is helpful in prognosis and in identifying patients at greater risk for persistent disease who might receive adjuvant postoperative radiation therapy to the pelvis and perhaps to extended fields about the aorta. Al-

though we seldom dissect and remove the highest paraaortic lymph nodes, we do remove the lower paraaortic nodes around and just above the aortic bifurcation. If pelvic lymph nodes in-

olved with tumor are found during the operation, a concerted effort is made to do a more complete paraaortic dissection. Although it is possible for paraaortic nodes to be directly in-

volved without involvement of pelvic nodes, this is extremely rare. For the group of patients who usually would be chosen for treatment with primary radical surgery, routine extensive paraaortic lymph node dissection would not result in a thera-

peutic benefit very often. Podczaski and coworkers found posi-

itive paraaortic lymph nodes in 7 of 52 patients (13.4%) with stage IB and IIA disease. Twenty-eight of the 52 patients, how-

ever, had bulky tumors > 5 cm in greatest diameter. Currently, such patients are considered by many gynecologic oncologists not to be appropriate candidates for treatment with primary radical surgery. Patsner and coworkers performed paraaortic lymph node sampling in patients with small (tumor < 3 cm) stage IB cervical tumor. Only 2 of the 125 patients who under-

went radical hysterectomy, bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy, and paraaortic node sampling had metastases to the paraaor-

tic nodes. No patient had gross paraaortic nodal involvement, and both patients with microscopic paraaortic nodal metas-
tases had grossly positive pelvic nodal involvement. Therefore, investigators recommended that paraaortic sampling in patients with small stage IB cervical tumors be restricted to patients with suspicious or positive pelvic or paraaortic nodes. The
right common iliac arteries at the fourth lumbar vertebra the vertebral column, where it bifurcates into the left and the tic hiatus of the diaphragm at the lower border of the last the internal iliac) arteries and veins and their various branches the common iliac, external iliac, and hypogastric (also known as lymphadenectomy, the major operative dissection includes the frequently incorporated into the operative field of the pelvic Although the lower portions of the aorta and vena cava are frequently incorporated into the operative field of the pelvic lymphadenectomy, the major operative dissection includes the common iliac, external iliac, and hypogastric (also known as the internal iliac) arteries and veins and their various branches and tributaries. The abdominal aorta emerges through the aortic hiatus of the diaphragm at the lower border of the last thoracic vertebra and descends along the ventral surface of the vertebral column, where it bifurcates into the left and right common iliac arteries at the fourth lumbar vertebra (Fig. 47.10). This is an important anatomic landmark because the bifurcation at L4 lies directly beneath the umbilicus in most cases. Therefore, an abdominal midline incision that provides surgical exposure to the lower aorta needs to be extended somewhat above the umbilicus. The right common iliac artery crosses the upper portion of the left common iliac vein at the aortic bifurcation. This segment of the venous drainage of the left side of the pelvis joins with the right common iliac vein to form the vena cava, which lies directly along the right side of the aorta and on the right lateral side of the bodies of the lumbar vertebrae in its retroperitoneal course through the abdomen.

Both common iliac arteries continue along the medial border of the psoas muscle to the pelvic brim, where they divide into external iliac and hypogastric vessels. As shown in Fig. 47.10, this important vascular division marks the site where the ureters enter the pelvis from the abdomen, usually overlying the terminal end of the common iliac artery on the left and commonly crossing the actual bifurcation of the artery on the right. Both external iliac arteries pass beneath the inguinal ligament to proceed into the leg as the femoral artery. The external iliac artery makes no direct vascular contribution to the pelvis, although there is a fairly constant arterial branch to the ureter from the midpoint of the common iliac artery.

The external iliac vein emerges from beneath the inguinal ligament, where it courses along the lateral pelvic brim on the medial side of the artery until it reaches the proximal segment. Here, the vein passes directly beneath the artery at the bifurcation of the common iliac artery and then passes along the lateral side of the upper half of the artery. It then joins the left common iliac vein to become the inferior vena cava at the fifth lumbar vertebra. In dissecting the lymph nodes along the external iliac vessels, these anatomic landmarks are important to avoid trauma to the wall of the vein as it deviates from the medial to the lateral side of the arterial tree.

The hypogastric artery provides the major blood supply to the pelvic viscera. For descriptive purposes, it is conveniently divided into an anterior and a posterior division. The important branches of the hypogastric artery are shown in Figs. 47.11 and 47.12. A fairly constant arterial branch to the ureter arises from the hypogastric artery near the common iliac bifurcation. This vessel passes medially to the ureter and should be preserved, if possible, during the dissection of the hypogastric vessels. The posterior division of the hypogastric artery continues beneath the coccygeus muscle through the ischiorectal fossa, where it becomes the internal pudendal artery to supply the perineum and vulva.

The major blood supply to the pelvic viscera is derived from the anterior division of the hypogastric artery. Figure 47.11 shows the anterior division, which gives off the uterine artery before continuing along the posterolateral pelvic wall to supply the superior and inferior vesical branches to the bladder. The anterior division then continues as the obliterated umbilical artery as it passes cephalad along the inferior surface of the rectus muscle to the umbilicus. In dissecting along the hypogastric artery in a caudal direction, the uterine artery is the first vessel encountered; it emanates from the medial side of the vessel. Passing more inferiorly and medially is the middle hemorrhoidal artery, which supplies a major segment of the rectum and communicates with the superior hemorrhoidal (from the inferior mesenteric) and the inferior hemorrhoidal (from the internal pudendal) arteries. The hypogastric vein and its tributaries course along the pelvic floor and medial side of the artery to drain the pelvis in close relation to the arterial blood supply. Its extensive anatomic variations and its location along the pelvic sidewall

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 47.6</th>
<th>Squamous Cell Carcinoma of the Cervix: Dose–Tumor–Volume Relation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumor volume (cm)</td>
<td>Dose (Gy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;2</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2–4</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4–6</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6–8</td>
<td>75–89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8–10</td>
<td>80–100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Average radiation dose required to obtain 90% control in area treated.


Arterial and Venous Anatomy

Although the lower portions of the aorta and vena cava are anatomic variations and its location along the pelvic sidewall

pertinent pelvic anatomy

Arterial and Venous Anatomy

Although the lower portions of the aorta and vena cava are frequently incorporated into the operative field of the pelvic lymphadenectomy, the major operative dissection includes the common iliac, external iliac, and hypogastric (also known as the internal iliac) arteries and veins and their various branches and tributaries. The abdominal aorta emerges through the aortic hiatus of the diaphragm at the lower border of the last thoracic vertebra and descends along the ventral surface of the vertebral column, where it bifurcates into the left and right common iliac arteries at the fourth lumbar vertebra
and floor place these tortuous, thin-walled veins in a precarious and vulnerable position for trauma during deep dissection of the pelvis. As shown in Fig. 47.12, the delicate tributaries of the trunk of the hypogastric vein extend into sacral foramina and pass beneath nerve fibers and muscles within the pelvis, so that their identity during the dissection of the pelvis frequently is obscured. The continuation of the hypogastric vein, in association with the artery, beneath the coccygeus muscle is a frequent site of bleeding when dissection is undertaken along the pelvic floor. When this occurs, it is difficult to identify the vessel because it retracts beneath the margins of the muscle.

The profuse collateral blood supply to the ureter is an important anatomic safeguard that protects its pelvic segment from ischemic necrosis as a result of radical hysterectomy (Fig. 47.13). The ureter has the advantage of a multiple-source blood supply. This favorable collateral circulation permits interruption of small arteries and veins deep in the pelvis during extensive dissection of the base of the broad ligament without producing a significant incidence of ischemic necrosis and fistula formation. The freely anastomosing arterial and venous network that courses along the longitudinal surface of the ureter in its adventitial layer is supplied in its superior segment by branches from the renal and ovarian arteries. The middle segment of the ureter derives its blood supply directly from aortic branches and from a vessel from the common iliac artery. As the ureter enters the pelvis and courses along the lateral pelvic wall, it receives arterial branches from the uterine, vaginal, middle hemorrhoidal, and vesical arteries. As it approaches the trigone of the bladder, it has a rich arteriovenous collateral circulation from the arterial branches to the vagina and base of the bladder. Protection of this important vascular network is important for the integrity of the terminal ureter during extensive dissection of the cardinal ligament. Preservation of the lateral aspect of the posterior segment of the

FIGURE 47.10. Abdominal and pelvic anatomy, showing the anatomic relations of the aorta, vena cava, iliac vessels, and ureters. Note the arteriovenous crossing of the right common iliac artery and the left iliac vein.
vesicouterine ligament has been recommended to ensure adequate vascularity to the terminal segment of the ureter, but we have encountered no difficulty in removing this tissue and have no hesitation in doing so to enhance the adequacy of the central dissection.

### Lymphatic Anatomy

The lymphatic drainage of the pelvis follows the course of the arterial and venous blood supply. Although there are multiple variations in the lymphatic anatomy of the pelvis, in general, lateral, superior, medial, and inferior lymph nodes and communicating lymphatic channels surround the common iliac, external iliac, and hypogastric vessels. One of the important pathways of the pelvic nodes and thin-walled lymphatics that drain the upper vagina, cervix, and uterus courses along the posterior aspect of the endopelvic fascia. Here, the pelvic nodes pass through the uterosacral ligament area and terminate in lymph nodes along the lateral aspect of the sacrum. These nodes communicate freely with lymphatic channels from the bifurcation of the common iliac artery near the lateral sacral andischiosacral fossae. These can be difficult nodes to resect because they are closely attached to the thin-walled tributaries...

The most direct lymphatic drainage of the cervix and upper vagina is through the lateral parametrium (cardinal ligament) to the hypogastric and obturator lymphatics. Because of the presence of obscure obturator veins and multiple venous tributaries from the hypogastric vein along the pelvic floor, the obturator dissection can be associated with troublesome venous bleeding. Injury also can occur to the obturator nerve, which arises from the anterior division of the second, third, and fourth lumbar nerves; enters the pelvis through the psoas muscle; and runs along the lateral pelvic wall in the obturator fossa to exit the pelvis through the obturator foramen along with the obturator vessels. It is a motor nerve to the adductor muscles of the thigh and is the only motor nerve that arises from the lumbar plexus without innervating any of the pelvic structures. Damage to the obturator nerve produces not only motor impairment to the adductor muscles but also sensory loss along the medial aspect of the thigh (Fig. 47.14). Deep dissection posterior to the obturator nerve can be complicated by bleeding from the tributaries of the hypogastric and obturator veins so that dissection in this area, if necessary, must be done with great care, using clips on the small vessels and compression for troublesome venous bleeding.

Reiffenstuhl, in his classic study of the lymphatics of the female genital organs, describes effluent lymph channels from the cervix to the interilute lymph nodes, the lateral and medial external iliac lymph nodes, the sacral lymph nodes, the subcutaneous lymph nodes, the aortic lymph nodes, the superior gluteal lymph nodes, the inferior gluteal lymph nodes, and the rectal lymph nodes. Of these, the inferior gluteal nodes are not technically possible to remove with the standard approach. This is because the nodes lie around the ischial spine in proximity to the inferior gluteal artery and pudendal artery and nerve. An imposing network of veins also surrounds the inferior gluteal nodes. They are thin walled, easy to damage, difficult to expose, and difficult to control when damaged. Reiffenstuhl’s concepts of the lymphatic drainage of the cervix are partially shown in Fig. 47.15.

FIGURE 47.13. Blood supply of the ureter showing multiple sources of collateral arterial circulation.
**Sentinel lymph node studies** in women with cervical cancer are also adding to our knowledge of the lymphatic drainage in vivo, and identification of sentinel lymph nodes with blue dye and technecium injections is feasible with very low morbidity. These sentinel lymph nodes can be submitted for ultrastaging with immunohistochemistry staining and may help in the post-operative management of cases. Further evaluation is needed to see if sentinel lymph node identification can potentially replace complete pelvic lymphadenectomy. This might reduce the total operative time as well as some perioperative complications and long-term complications, such as the risk of postoperative leg lymphedema, which is occasionally seen in patients undergoing pelvic lymphadenectomy.

**CONCEPT OF RADICAL ABDOMINAL HYSTERECTOMY AND BILATERAL PELVIC LYMPHADENECTOMY**

There are several variations of hysterectomy used in the management of cervical carcinoma. The description of the five

---

**FIGURE 47.14.** Obturator nerve (L2 through L4): motor and sensory innervation.

**FIGURE 47.15.** The regional lymph node stations of the uterine cervix. Channels 8, 9, and 10 (indicated by especially heavy lines) lead to those regional lymph node stations most frequently reached by the efferent lymph vessels of the cervix. Nonetheless, it is necessary to remember that carcinoma cells also can reach the pelvic lymph nodes by way of channels 1 through 7, without previous interruption, to (1) rectal, (2) subaortic (promontorial), (3) aortic, (4) medial common iliac, (5) lateral common iliac, (6) lateral external iliac, (7) sacral, (8) superior gluteal, (9) anterior iliac, and (10) internal iliac lymph nodes. (From: Reiffenstuhl G. The lymphatics of the female genital organs. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott, 1964, with permission.)
classes of hysterectomy by Piver and colleagues has found general acceptance. The first three classes are used in the primary treatment of cervical carcinoma, whereas the last two classes are generally reserved for patients with recurrent disease. The class I hysterectomy is a simple extrafascial total hysterectomy. It is used as primary treatment for stage IA1 disease and after concurrent chemotherapy and radiation therapy for stage IB2 and bulky stage IA cervical carcinoma. The class II hysterectomy (Fig. 47.8), also known as a modified radical hysterectomy, removes a more generous vaginal cuff, ligates the ureter on the medial side of the ureter (but does not dissect the ureter from the vesicouterine ligament), and removes the inner one third to one half of the cardinal ligament. As previously stated, some authors recommend the performance of the class II hysterectomy for stage IA2 cervical carcinoma. The class III operation is the classic Meigs procedure, with removal of all of the parametrium and paravaginal tissue in addition to the pelvic lymph nodes (Fig. 47.8). A more extensive procedure is performed in the class IV radical hysterectomy, in which the ureter is completely dissected from the cardinal and vesicoureteric ligaments, the superior vesical artery is sacrificed, and three fourths of the vagina is removed as well as the uterus and parametria, along with a complete lymphadenectomy. A far more extensive procedure is done with the class V radical hysterectomy, in which the terminal ureter or a segment of the bladder or rectum is removed along with the uterus, parametria, adnexa, and pelvic lymph nodes.

Although many techniques emphasize a more or less extensive dissection in one phase of the operation or another, the management of the parametria and the dissection of the pelvic lymph nodes appear relatively uniform. Because the most serious complication of this procedure is related to uterine fistulas and stenosis, many modifications have been undertaken to ensure an adequate blood supply to the terminal ureter. We agree that the terminal ureter must have a good blood supply and believe that this can be accomplished without jeopardizing the adequacy of the central dissection. The classic radical hysterectomy with wide resection of the parametrium, dissection of the terminal ureter from the vesicoureteric ligament, and wide resection of the uterosacral ligaments, upper 2 to 1 cm of vagina, and paravaginal tissues, along with a thorough pelvic lymphadenectomy, constitute the traditional procedure that is used in our institution.

The major focus of the operation is the adequacy of the central dissection. The central cervical tumor must be removed with an adequate margin of uninvolved normal tissue around it. This is the most crucial point in the success of the operation and has been emphasized by many of the famous pelvic surgeons of former years, especially Parsons and Navratil. The central dissection can be facilitated by developing the pelvic spaces and using proper planes for dissection. Correct dissection along natural rather than artificial connective tissue planes and correct development of the pelvic spaces (paravesical, pararectal, vesicocervical, and rectovaginal) avoid unnecessary injury to pelvic vessels, keep blood loss to a minimum, and facilitate an adequate central dissection (Fig. 47.16). The central dissection also is facilitated by a complete removal of the contents of the obturator fossa (except the obturator nerve) so that branches of the hypogastric artery and vein in the cardinal ligament are clearly visible and can be dissected away from their attachments to the lateral pelvic sidewall.

The importance of an adequate central dissection also was emphasized by Gazdar and coworkers. By studying surgical specimens processed according to the giant-section technique of Burghardt and Pickel, parametrial lymph nodes were found in 281 (78%) of the 359 surgical specimens from radical hysterectomies. Metastases to parametrical nodes were found in 63 (22.5%) of these 280 specimens. The lymphatic drainage from the cervix to the pelvic lymph nodes runs through the parametrium, and deposits of tumor often are found there. An adequate central dissection must include removal of a wide margin of parametrial tissue around the central tumor and total removal of the parametria from the bladder, the rectum, and the lateral pelvic wall because positive lymph nodes can be found in the lateral as well as medial parametrium.

When a large vaginal cuff must be removed because of a bulky cervical tumor or involvement of adjacent vaginal mucosa, starting the operation from below may facilitate the central dissection. Sometimes, a large lesion is excised and fulgurated transvaginally. The formation of the vaginal cuff is done in a manner similar to that in the Schauta-Amreich procedure. The vaginal incision is made around the entire circumference of the vagina, mobilizing the vaginal cuff from paravaginal tissue, space, and rectovaginal space from below may be easier than from above.

Superior to the midcommon iliac arteries and in the paraaortic region, lymph nodes are sampled in selected patients (usually stage IB1 and IA2). A special effort is made to remove any nodes that look or feel suspicious. The paraaortic lymph nodes

![Figure 47.16](image-url)
then are sent for frozen section analysis. Approximately 5% to 10% of stage IB patients have paraaortic lymph node metastases. Metastasis to the paraaortic lymph nodes is considered by many gynecologic oncologists as a contraindication to radical hysterectomy. These patients are currently being treated with extended-field radiation therapy with concurrent chemotherapy.

**RADICAL ABDOMINAL HYSTERECTOMY SURGICAL TECHNIQUE**

**Preoperative Evaluation and Preparation**

After the initial history and physical examination have indicated the possibility of primary treatment with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy, the usual preoperative evaluation common before any extensive operation is indicated. We also recommend a chest x-ray to screen for cardiac or pulmonary disease as well as the very low risk of pulmonary metastases.

Contrary to the frequent practice of doing all possible tests on every patient, it is our practice to be selective and to do only those tests and procedures that are expected to yield useful information. It is not necessary (and indeed may be inappropriate) to subject every patient to a long list of preoperative procedures that are expensive and exhausting and have little, if any, expectation of providing useful information. Indeed, it is most unfortunate when a test or procedure yields questionable or suspicious findings that require one or more additional studies that, after delay, discomfort, and expense turn out to be negative or even perhaps nondiagnostic. Good judgment from an experienced clinician is usually the most helpful.

A young, healthy patient with a small cervical lesion requires an admission history and physical examination, chest radiograph and routine laboratory studies, and anesthesia consultation. If the patient is older, has medical complications, or has a larger or undifferentiated cervical lesion, the preoperative workup and preparation may be more involved and thorough. Although an intravenous pyelogram provides good visualization of the course and number of ureters, if radiologic evaluation of the abdomen and pelvis is being considered, most surgeons obtain a CT scan of the abdomen and pelvis, which also shows the course and number of ureters and also may provide additional information about nodal or other metastases. However, because of the uncertainty of enlarged nodes on CT scan, patients with clinical stage IB1 disease and enlarged pelvic nodes on CT scan would not make us cancel the surgical approach in favor of radiation therapy.

Larger lesions or those more likely to have metastases may be investigated by pelvic and abdominal CT scan or magnetic resonance scans, but we have rarely found those to be helpful in women with small cervical cancers. They may be most helpful when the clinician is undecided regarding whether primary surgery or radiation is the best management option—a clean, normal study may be reassuring that primary surgery is the way to go, whereas suspicious, enlarged nodes in a woman with a 4-cm cervical lesion helps make the decision to recommend radiation. Likewise, cystoscopy or proctoscopy are rarely indicated or helpful in the preoperative evaluation of early-stage cervical cancer. As much as possible should be done on an outpatient basis before admission to the hospital.

**Bowel Preparation**

In our institution, patients are asked to start a liquid diet 24 hours before surgery. They also are given a mechanical bowel preparation and sometimes oral antibiotics if significant peri- toneal adhesions are anticipated or there is a history of previous pelvic surgery or radiation. An intestinal tube for suction is not necessary.

**Positioning and Incision**

Multiple approaches to performing a radical abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy have been described. The traditional transperitoneal approach has been used in our institution for many years with satisfactory results. The transverse Maylard or Chenney incisions are used by some, whereas others prefer midline incisions. Orr and Scribner have reported shorter hospital stays when a Pfannenstiel incision is used. Currie has presented and published a film using a transverse cosmetic incision with vertical fascial entry for selected patients.

After anesthesia is induced, some surgeons prefer that the patient be placed comfortably in stirrups with the buttocks brought to the edge of the “broken” table. Pneumatic compression devices are placed on both lower extremities and the knees are separated about 90 degrees. The thighs are elevated only 15 to 20 degrees relative to the abdomen. Care is taken to avoid pressure on the peroneal nerves in the legs. Propo nents of this position claim several advantages. There is less strain on the patient’s lumbarosacral spine when the thighs are slightly flexed. This is especially important for patients with lumbarosacral back problems. It is possible to have a second assistant stand at the foot of the table between the patient’s legs. His or her participation in the operation is greatly facilitated by being closer to the operative field. Finally, in this position, the urethral orifice, vaginal introitus, and anal orifice are all available for instrumentation in case this is necessary to clarify anatomy.

After the patient is positioned on the operating table, a careful rectovaginal-abdominal pelvic examination is done. This can be followed by cystoscopy or proctosigmoidoscopy if desired. It may be necessary to shave a small amount of the escutcheon, but vulvar hair is not shaved completely. The skin is prepared from the rib margin to the midthigh, with special attention given to the umbilicus, perineum, and vagina. The patient is draped, a transurethral Foley catheter is inserted into the bladder, and the operation is begun.

When operating abdominally, the exposure achieved depends on the choice of incision, the method of retracting, the placement and intensity of overhead lights, and the participation of willing and skilled assistants. Suction should be available to keep the field as dry as possible and is preferred over sponges for two reasons. First, sponges are more traumatic to delicate serosal surfaces and other tissues. Second, a determination of the amount of blood lost can be more accurate if the largest percentage has been suctioned from the operative field into a calibrated bottle and measured.

It usually is possible (and always desirable) to keep the number of clamps in the operative field to an absolute minimum. If the field is cluttered with clamps, the operator cannot see well to operate. There is an unfortunate tendency for gynecologic surgeons to use instruments that are too short. Pediatric clamps, tissue forceps, dissecting scissors, needle holders, and all other instruments must be longer when operating deep in the pelvis and when operating on obese patients. The handles of the instruments must come all the way out and above the level of the base of the table.
Evaluation at Laparotomy

As stated, the operation is initiated through a low transverse (Maylard, Cherney, Pfannenstiel) or a low midline incision. In most patients, the umbilicus identifies the location of the bifurcation of the aorta; therefore, extension of the incision about 2 to 3 cm above the umbilicus is recommended for adequate exposure of this area if a low midline incision is used. The midline incision is protected by a moist pack beneath each arm of the self-retaining retractor to avoid excessive compression of the epigastric vessels that course beneath the rectus muscles. In case of a lengthy operative procedure, the mechanical retractors are released at periodic intervals to improve circulation through the abdominal musculature. The bladder is decompressed by an indwelling catheter throughout the procedure to facilitate exposure and maintain an accurate record of urine output.

Before initiating the pelvic procedure, the abdominal viscera and parietal peritoneum of the abdominal cavity are evaluated meticulously for possible evidence of metastatic tumor. The superior and inferior surfaces of the liver are carefully palpated, as is the region of the celiac plexus. The undersurface of the diaphragm is particularly vulnerable to metastases, especially the right hemidiaphragm, where the paraaortic lymphatics pass from the abdominal cavity into the mediastinum. The mesentry of the large and small bowel and the serosal surface of the bowel along with the omentum should be examined carefully for evidence of metastatic tumor. The kidneys are examined and the retroperitoneal space along the aorta and vena cava is palpated assiduously because these are the major sites of extrapelvic spread of cervical cancer. It is well known that 15% or more of paraaortic node metastases are occult; therefore, even the most unsuspecting node should be removed and evaluated histologically by frozen-section study for possible metastatic tumor. Therefore, it is our practice to sample any paraaortic or paraaortic node that is identifiable before initiating the procedure and send it for frozen section analysis. If there is histopathologic evidence of unsuspected, metastatic tumor in a paraaortic lymph node, we generally do not proceed with a radical hysterectomy and the operation is abandoned. These patients are currently being treated with concurrent chemother-apy and extended-field radiation therapy.

Peritoneal washings for cytologic examination usually are not obtained because the yield is low and the prognostic significance is undetermined.

At this point in the procedure, any adhesions in the pelvis are lysed, and the intestines are placed in the upper abdomen and held there with moist packs. A suitable self-retaining retractor can be used. If Bookwalter, Turner-Warwick, or Balfour retractors are used in a lower midline incision, care must be taken to avoid compression of the femoral nerves by the lateral blades.

Evaluation of the extent of the pelvic tumor is carried out at this time by examining the course of the lymphatic drainage of the pelvis, which is carefully palpated along the pelvic vessels. When enlarged or clinically suspicious nodes are found, they are removed and immediately sent for frozen-section study while further evaluation of the pelvis is undertaken. The paravesical and pararectal spaces are important anatomic landmarks. When developed, they provide an opportunity for thorough exploration of the pararectal and paravesical spaces (Fig. 47.16). Tumor can extend into the base of the broad ligament without detection of anatomic evidence of disease before operation. This step, therefore, is a safeguard in determining the possible extension of tumor beyond the cervix and into the immediate paracervical tissues. When there is evidence of extracervical disease, we may abandon the surgical procedure unless there is clear evidence that the disease can be removed cleanly. In either case, full pelvic irradiation is indicated. Certainly, the lateral pelvic wall must be free of tumor. When the central tumor is clearly resectable, we do not hesitate to complete the operation, even if there is evidence of metastatic disease in the pelvic lymph nodes.

A decision must be made about conservation or removal of the tubes and ovaries before the pelvic planes and spaces are developed. If normal ovaries are conserved in premenopausal patients, the tubes usually are left behind. If the round ligaments are clamped, cut, and ligated, the uterosacral ligaments and medial fallopian tubes are clamped and doubly ligated. The infundibulopelvic ligaments are carefully mobilized, and the adnexal organs are packed out of the operative field with the intestines.

Development of Paravesical Space

The anterior leaf of the broad ligament forms the roof of the paravesical space and blends with the bladder peritoneum medially and the parietal peritoneum laterally. This deep fossa beneath the peritoneal covering is composed of loose connective tissue and fat. It occupies the area between the bladder and the retroperitoneum medially, the pelvic sidewall and obturator muscle forming the lateral boundaries. The superior boundary is formed by the cardinal ligament, whereas the floor is composed of the levator ani muscle. After clamping and ligating the round ligament about midway along its course, the anterior leaf of the broad ligament is opened in an inferior direction, passing well into the pelvis before diverting the incision medially to reflect the bladder peritoneum from the lower uterine segment (Fig. 47.17A). The paravesical space can be entered without difficulty with gentle digital pressure, making certain that the dissection is initiated between the external iliac vein laterally and the obliterated hypogastric artery (lateral umbilical ligament) medially. The dissection is carried all the way down to the levator ani muscle (Fig. 47.17B). There are no major blood vessels in this potential space, although occasionally an aberrant obturator vessel emerges from the inferior epigastric artery and courses along the posterior aspect of the pubic bone to the obturator space. With gentle digital dissection, the pelvic floor can be palpated and the posterior aspect of the space can be identified, including the anterior margin of the cardinal ligament.

Development of Pararectal Space

The pararectal space lies beneath the pelvic peritoneum and extends between the cardinal ligament laterally and the uterosacral ligament medially. It can be entered by extending the incision in the anterior leaf of the broad ligament in a cephalic direction along the lateral margin of the infundibulopelvic ligament (Fig. 47.18A). By retracting the infundibulopelvic ligament and displacing the uterus medially, the uterosacral ligament is placed on a stretch, and the pararectal space is widened. Dissection of this space is much more precarious than that of the paravesical space. Unskilled dissection in this area frequently is associated with troublesome bleeding.

The medial border of the fossa is bounded by the uterosacral ligament and rectum, and the lateral border is formed superiority by the peritoneum of the pelvis and inferiorly by the levator
A FIGURE 47.17. A: Opening the anterior leaf of the broad ligament after ligation of the right round ligament and infundibulopelvic ligament. (Continued)

The sacrum forms the posterior margin of the space, and the ureter is attached to the peritoneum along the roof of the space before entering the medial aspect of the cardinal ligament. The hypogastric artery and vein are located in the deeper aspect of the pararectal space along the levator ani muscle. The cardinal ligament forms the caudal and lateral borders of this important area. Entry into the pararectal space must be made cautiously (Fig. 47.18A) with medial displacement of the ureter and its attached peritoneum. A point between the ureter, which is attached to the medial leaf of peritoneum, and the hypogastric artery is selected. Blunt dissection should be used in this area, and careful handling of tissue is imperative to avoid unnecessary damage to small veins deep in this fossa. When the examining finger reaches the pelvic floor and levator ani muscle, the fossa narrows, and care must be taken to avoid damage to the lateral sacral and hemorrhoidal vessels. The dissection is carried vertically downward for a short distance. The further development of the space then changes to an inferior and caudad direction lateral to the rectum. If the development of the space is difficult, it should be delayed until a later time in the operation. When the paravesical and pararectal spaces have been dissected (Fig. 47.18B), the pelvic floor and cardinal ligament easily can be identified and palpated. In the absence of demonstrable tumor extension, the case is
considered operable, and the lymph node dissection is initiated at this time.

**Pelvic Lymphadenectomy**

Dissection of the lymphatic tissue along the iliac vessels can begin in the region of the bifurcation of the common iliac artery and extend superiority to the bifurcation of the aorta and inferiorly to the inguinal ligament and deep circumflex iliac vein, or it can begin at another point along the course of the iliac vessels. The opening of the posterior peritoneal leaf of the broad ligament must be extended to the area of the pelvic brim, where the ureter is easily identified as it enters the pelvis at the bifurcation of the common iliac artery. This dissection is made easier if the infundibulopelvic ligament has been ligated and divided; however, the ligament and ovarian vessels can be retracted medially if the adnexa are preserved. The ovary and tube also can be detached from the uterine corpus and gently tucked beneath the retractor above. In dissecting the presacral area in the angle of the bifurcation of the aorta, care must be taken to avoid bleeding from the middle sacral vessels as well as from the proximal part of the left external iliac vein, which courses through this retroperitoneal space. It is best to occlude the middle sacral vessels with smaller vascular clips as they are identified, and if traumatized, the venous bleeding can be controlled with positive pressure against the sacrum and with vascular clips. The lymphatic tissue along the common iliac vessels...
FIGURE 47.18. A: Extending the incision in the anterior leaf of the broad ligament in a cephalic direction along the lateral margin of the right infundibulopelvic ligament. B: Paravesical and pararectal fossae, with intervening base of broad ligament attached to pelvic floor and lateral pelvic wall.

is removed by sharp dissection with the points of the Metzenbaum scissors directed upward, while special care is taken to avoid trauma to the ureter (Fig. 47.19). The ureter is reflected medially during the dissection of the common iliac vessels and left attached to the parietal peritoneum to maintain its blood supply.

It is important to remove the loose areolar tissue and fascial sheath from the iliac vessels; however, to avoid trauma to the intima or wall of the vessels (particularly the veins), the surgeon should not attempt to skeletonize the pelvic vessels to the point of producing a pearl-white vascular tree. If there is tumor in the adventitia of the vessel wall, the patient probably will
not be cured by this procedure; consequently, such compulsive surgical efforts produce far more complications than benefits. It is important to rotate the vessels medially and laterally with a vein retractor during the dissection of the common and external iliac trunks to obtain the posterior lymphatic chain behind the vessels along the psoas muscle. The genitofemoral nerve, which is seen lateral to the external iliac vessels, should be preserved, if possible, because damage to this peripheral nerve occasionally produces postoperative discomfort in the groin and medial aspect of the thigh.

The external iliac vessels are carefully dissected down to the point where the deep circumflex iliac vein crosses over the external iliac artery. At this point, care must be taken to avoid injury to the inferior epigastric artery and vein, which arise from the anterior and medial side of the iliac vessels and course along the anterior peritoneum onto the lower abdominal wall. The surgeon also must be cognizant of the anomalous obturator artery and vein, which can arise from the lower portion of the external iliac or inferior epigastric vessels and course over the pelvic sidewall into the obturator space. If accidentally traumatized, they should be ligated at their point of origin from the artery or vein. To avoid bleeding in the obturator space, these vessels are frequently occluded with small vascular clips as they pass through the obturator space, regardless of their origin. Clips also can be used to occlude the lymphatic channels coming into the pelvis from the leg.

The obturator space is entered by reflecting the external iliac vessels medially away from the psoas muscle and freeing the areolar tissue that lies directly between these vessels and the lateral pelvic wall (Fig. 47.20A), usually with blunt dissection. Once the space has been entered and the adjacent tissue cleared from the external iliac vessels, the artery and vein are released and gently retracted laterally with a vein retractor, and the obturator space is clearly exposed. The lymphatic and areolar tissue are dissected from the obturator space to the region of the pelvic floor, with particular care taken to avoid trauma to the obturator nerve and vessels (Fig. 47.20B). The dissection is continued by removing all of the nodes below the bifurcation of the iliac vessels, including the hypogastric nodes and the nodes in the obturator fossa. A lymph node may be encountered in

FIGURE 47.19. Pelvic lymphadenectomy with dissection of right common iliac vessels and their branches, including the external iliac and hypogastric arteries and veins. Note attachment of ureter to parietal peritoneum. The genitofemoral nerve courses along the psoas muscle.
the angle formed by the external iliac and hypogastric arteries and must be carefully dissected out, avoiding trauma to the adjacent hypogastric vein.

Retraction of the common iliac artery and vein medially exposes a group of lymph nodes that should be removed carefully. These lymph nodes are the lateral common iliac nodes. There is danger of venous bleeding in this area. When this area has been cleared, the surgeon can see the obturator nerve entering the obturator fossa through the body of the psoas muscle. The nerve roots of the lumbosacral plexus also are exposed. Particular care must be exercised in the dissection of the lateral sacral and sacroiliac plexus, just medial to the hypogastric artery and vein, near their origin. The rich arcade of small arteries and veins increases the risk of bleeding in this area. When the vessels retract into the sacral foramen, control of bleeding becomes difficult.

The obturator artery can be identified as it courses along the lateral pelvic wall adjacent to the obturator nerve. The nerve, artery, and vein advance toward the obturator foramen, through which they leave the pelvis. Care must be taken to avoid trauma to all of the structures, particularly the obturator veins, which have a rich anastomotic network against the

**FIGURE 47.20.** A: Entry into obturator space by medial reflection of external iliac vessels. B: Dissection of obturator fossa, demonstrating obturator nerve with areolar tissue attached superiorly to external iliac vessels.
lateral pelvic wall and communicate freely with the adjacent hypogastric veins. It is best to ligate or clip the obturator vesical veins from the collateral circulation. In the event that excessive bleeding occurs on one side of the pelvis, dissection can continue on the opposite side in the interim after pressure packing.

### Dissection of Hypogastric Artery, Uterine Artery, Bladder, and Ureter

The hypogastric artery is dissected with identification of the visceral branches of the anterior trunk, which include the uterine; superior, middle, and inferior vesical; and middle hemorrhoidal arteries. The anterior division of the hypogastric artery continues along the paravesical fossa to become the obliterated lateral umbilical ligament beneath the anterior abdominal wall. The hypogastric artery is damaged, it can be ligated without serious compromise to the blood supply of the bladder. At this point, we ligate the ureter artery at its origin from the hypogastric artery. Some authors believe that a more adequate central dissection is achieved by ligating the anterior division of the hypogastric artery just distal to the point of origin of its posterior division rather than ligating the uterine artery individually. Whichever vessel is chosen, after double ligating, the distal branches traversing the cardinal ligament are removed with the specimen. No attempt is made to remove the hypogastric vein. The other, adjacent veins should be ligated to avoid brisk bleeding in this area. The bladder then is reflected off the lower uterine segment by incising the bladder peritoneum from its attachment to the uterus. The fascial adhesions of the base of the bladder are released from the cervix and upper vagina by electrocautery or sharp scissors dissection, and the vesicovaginal space is developed inferiorly and laterally. The ureter tunnels between the anterior fascial bundles of the base of the broad ligament, commonly called the vesicouterine ligament. This fascial tunnel is carefully opened by sliding the Metzenbaum scissors or an Adson right-angle clamp, with concave surface pointed upward, along the anterior and medial surface of the ureter and by gently spreading the blades, as shown in Fig. 47.21A. The ureteric, artery, and vein course along the fascial roof of this ligament. As shown in Fig. 47.21B, the anterior sheath of the vesicouterine ligament is opened by doubly clamping and incising this tissue. Each of the fascial bundles is suture ligated for control of bleeding, and the ureter is dissected free of its attachment to the posterior leaf of the vesicouterine ligament. As with the pelvic veins, care must be taken to prevent damage to the adventitia and muscular wall of the ureter, which contain nutrient vessels from the collateral circulation. In the event that the blood supply to the ureter is compromised by thrombosis or trauma to the veins, fistula formation is a serious and frequent complication. The ureter is gently retracted with an umbilical tape or urethral retractor. If forceps are used to handle the ureter, they should gently grasp only the adventitia.

### Dissection of Cardinal Ligament

The base of the broad ligament (the cardinal ligament) can then be excised from its attachment at the lateral pelvic wall. The technique of clamping and ligating the vascular cardinal liga-
FIGURE 47.21. A: Metzenbaum scissors inserted above the ureter in the vesicouterine ligament or ureteral tunnel of the broad ligament. Note ligated uterine artery in anterior fascial sheath of tunnel. B: Roof of tunnel is opened between clamps.

has been shortened by about 2 to 3 cm, is well supported by its attachments to the levator ani muscles and urogenital diaphragm and mainly by the effects of postoperative fibrosis during the healing phase.

At the end of the procedure, some surgeons place suction catheters in the obturator fossae and along the lateral pelvic walls and bring them out through stab wounds in the lower abdomen. After the abdomen is closed, these catheters are connected to intermittent, low-suction drainage units. Traditionally, these drains were thought to be effective in preventing pelvic infection and fistula and lymphocyst formation. However, recent retrospective and prospective studies have demonstrated that the incidence of these complications is minimal and the same whether or not drains are used. Therefore, many gynecologic oncologists no longer use pelvic drains.

No attempt is made to suspend the ureters to the hypogastric artery, as suggested by Green and coworkers, or to place the terminal ureter on the inside of the peritoneal surface, as recommended by Novak. Furthermore, there appears to be no benefit to repertonizing the pelvis as described by Symmonds and Pratt.

If the tubes and ovaries are to be transposed out of the pelvis, a tunnel is dissected beneath the peritoneum laterally and superiorly toward each lateral gutter. An incision in the peritoneum is made as high as possible at the top of the tunnel. The adnexal structures are guided through the tunnel and through the incision at the top of the tunnel, making absolutely certain that the ovarian vessels in the infundibulopelvic ligament are not twisted. Permanent suture material is used to suture the tuboovarian pedicle as high as possible to the peritoneum and underlying muscle. Two large metal clips also are placed across
FIGURE 47.22. A: Clamping and incision of lateral portion of cardinal ligament adjacent to the lateral pelvic wall. B: Excised ligament showing pelvic floor and levator muscles. Dissected obturator nerve is seen in obturator space.

the pedicle to identify later the location of the ovaries with an abdominal radiograph. This ovarian suspension is done when there is a reasonable chance that a patient will need postoperative pelvic irradiation (Figs. 47.26 and 47.27). In most operations, however, the tubes and ovaries can be left in their natural positions in the pelvis.

FERTILITY-SPARING RADICAL ABDOMINAL TRACHELECTOMY

Historically, the recommended surgical treatment for a stage IA2–IB1 cervical cancer is a total radical hysterectomy and
pelvic lymphadenectomy. This operation is very effective at treating early-stage cervical cancer; however, infertility is one of the serious and inevitable consequences of treatment. Partial radical organ resection has been accepted in many solid tumors, such as partial gastrectomy, nephrectomy, pneumonectomy, and colectomy to treat malignancies affecting these organs. In gynecologic oncology, partial organ resection with radical abdominal or vaginal trachelectomy and pelvic lymph node dissection are relatively new techniques used in women with early cervical cancer who wish to retain fertility (Table 47.7). This operation and technique are to be distinguished from the radical abdominal trachelectomy, which is commonly used for resection of cervical stump malignancy following a previous supracervical hysterectomy in the setting in which fertility preservation is not an issue.

**Technique**

A laparotomy and a bilateral complete pelvic lymphadenectomy are performed in a similar manner to patients undergoing a radical abdominal hysterectomy. The limits of nodal
FIGURE 47.24. Dissection and retraction of bladder and terminal ureter from vagina and excision of the paravaginal fascia from the lateral pelvic wall.

FIGURE 47.25. After clamping and ligating paravaginal tissue laterally, an incision is made in the vagina several centimeters below the cervix.
**FIGURE 47.26.** If the ovaries are to be suspended, a tunnel can be made under the peritoneum and the cecum on the right. The tube and ovary are guided through the tunnel to the new position in the right colic gutter above the pelvis.

**FIGURE 47.27.** A similar procedure can be performed on the left. The ovarian vessels should not be twisted. Metal clips are placed on the pedicles to allow later identification with abdominal radiograph.
TABLE 47.7
SUMMARY OF SERIES DESCRIBING PELVIC AND/OR AORTIC LYMPH NODE DISSECTION WITH FERTILITY-SPARING RADICAL ABDOMINAL TRACHELECTOMY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Age (years)</th>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>EBL (mL)</th>
<th>Complications</th>
<th>Live births</th>
<th>Recurrence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smith et al. 1997</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rodriguez et al. 2001</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>26.3</td>
<td>IA1–IA2</td>
<td>417</td>
<td>1 abscess</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Del Priore et al. 2004</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>IB1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palfalvi 2003</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>IB1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ungar et al. 2005</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>30.5</td>
<td>IA2–IB2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu-Rustum et al. 2005</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>IB1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ungar et al. 2006</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>30.7</td>
<td>IA1–IB2</td>
<td>636</td>
<td>4.8% amenorrhea</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cibula et al. 2005</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>IB1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 bladder atony</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rodier et al. 2005</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>IB1</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>1 needed completion hysterectomy for positive margin</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu-Rustum et al. 2006</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>IB1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*EBL, estimated blood loss.
*a Some patients may be reported more than once.
*b Mean when calculated.

dissection are the deep circumflex iliac vein caudally and the proximal common iliac artery cephalad. Any suspicious lymph nodes were sent for frozen-section analysis. It was our intent to abandon a fertility-sparing approach if positive lymph nodes were identified. Sentinel lymph node biopsy followed by a complete pelvic lymphadenectomy is also a reasonable option and may allow for pathologic ultrastaging of these sentinel nodes. The removal of paraaortic nodes is also considered for lesions stage IB1 or greater.

The intent of the radical abdominal trachelectomy was to resect the cervix, upper 1 to 2 cm of the vagina, parametrium, and paracolpos in a similar manner to a type III radical abdominal hysterectomy but sparing the uterine fundus or corpus (Figs. 47.28 and 47.29).

The procedure is begun by developing the paravesical and pararectal spaces and dissecting the bladder caudal to the midvagina. The round ligaments are divided, and large Kelly clamps are placed on the medial round ligaments to manipulate the uterus. Care is taken not to destroy the cornu or the uteroovarian pedicles. The infundibulopelvic ligaments with ovarian blood supply are kept intact. Care is also taken not to injure the fallopian tubes or disrupt the uteroovarian ligament.

The uterine vessels are then ligated and divided at their origin from the hypogastric vessels. The parametria and paracolpos with uterine vessels are mobilized medially with the specimen, and a complete ureterolysis is performed similar to a type III radical abdominal hysterectomy. The posterior cul de sac peritoneum is incised and the uterosacral ligament divided; similarly, the parametria and paracolpos are divided. Using a vaginal cylinder (Apple Medical Corporation; Marlborough, MA), the desired length of vaginectomy is performed, and the specimen is completely separated from the vagina and placed in the midpelvis, keeping its attachment to the uteroovarian ligaments.

The lower uterine segment is then estimated, and clamps are placed at the level of the internal os (Fig. 47.30). Using a knife, the radical trachelectomy is completed by separating the fundus from the sefthmus or upper endocervix at approximately 5 mm below the level of the internal os, if possible (Figs. 47.31 and 47.32).

The uterine fundus with preserved attachments to the uteroovarian ligaments, placed in the superior part of the pelvis, and the specimen, consisting of radical trachelectomy and parametria with suture marking the vaginal cuff at

**FIGURE 47.28.** Diagrammatic representation of the tissue renewed at radical abdominal trachelectomy.
FIGURE 47.29. The intent of the radical abdominal trachelectomy is to resect the cervix, upper 1 to 2 cm of the vagina, parametrium, and paracolpos in a similar manner to a type III radical abdominal hysterectomy but sparing the uterine corpus.

12 o’clock, is sent for frozen-section evaluation of its endocervical margin. The uterine fundus is inspected and curettage of the endometrial cavity is performed as well as a shave disc margin on the remaining cervical tissue, which is sent for frozen-section analysis (Fig. 47.33). This is performed to ensure that the reconstructed uterus to vagina is disease free. A frozen-section analysis is also obtained on the distal vaginal margin, if clinically indicated.

If all frozen sections tested are benign and at least a 5-mm clear margin is obtained on the endocervical edge, a permanent cerclage with no. 0 Ethibond (knot tied posteriorly) may be placed before the reconstruction (Fig. 47.34). A cerclage was placed in three cases in this series. The uterus is then reattached to the upper vagina with six to eight no. 2–0 absorbable sutures (Figs. 47.35–47.37). No drains are placed. Standard antibiotic prophylaxis and routine postoperative care is prescribed.

An alternative approach would be to separate the fundus from the cervix before the colpotomy, pack the fundus with the intact uteroovarian blood supply in the upper pelvis, place retraction clamps on the cervix, and perform the radical trachelectomy. The role of cystourethroscopy with bilateral temporary ureteral catheterization is optional.

LAPAROSCOPICALLY ASSISTED RADICAL VAGINAL HYSTERECTOMY (SCHAUTA)

History

The “extended” hysterectomy performed vaginally for the treatment of cervical cancer was invented by Schauta in Austria in 1901. A few years earlier, in 1898, also in Austria, Wertheim had reported on the abdominal extended hysterectomy. The
mortality and morbidity of the Wertheim method was initially much higher, but it had the advantage of including a pelvic lymphadenectomy, which is now appreciated as an important and necessary part of the procedure. Because the initial Schauta operation did not include the lymph node assessment, it gradually became less popular. In 1959, Mitra combined the Schauta operation with a retroperitoneal approach for the pelvic lymphadenectomy. This was a clever idea, but it did not gain a lot of acceptance because it necessitated bilateral flank incisions. More recently, in 1987, Dargent revived the Schauta operation by combining it with laparoscopic surgery, allowing thorough and complete pelvic lymphadenectomy. The Schauta operation preceded by a laparoscopic pelvic lymphadenectomy is thus a perfect example of the recent trend toward minimally invasive surgery in gynecologic oncology.

**Technique**

**Laparoscopic Part of the Surgery**

Pelvic Lymphadenectomy. The procedure begins with a complete laparoscopic pelvic lymphadenectomy using a 4-trocar technique as detailed in the laparoscopic surgical staging section below. In the future, if sentinel lymph node mapping proves acceptable to gynecologic oncologists, the extent of the lymphadenectomy may be further minimized to the removal of only the sentinel nodes.

Division of the Uterine Artery. Caudally to the crossing point of the uterine artery, an opening is created bluntly just under the superior vesical artery, which is then retracted laterally in such a way that the uterine vessels lie between the two openings created. Once the uterine artery is divided, the stump can be retracted medially and freed gently from the ureter. This will facilitate the dissection of the uterine artery vaginally. Of note, several collaterals of the uterine artery are frequently encountered and should be clipped, excised, or cauterized individually to avoid bleeding. The vaginal branch of the uterine artery is also frequently seen appearing under the excised uterine artery. It can be divided now or later during the vaginal excision of the parametrial tissue. Lastly, the uterine veins are usually located under the artery and again should be managed individually. On occasion, uterine veins cross over the ureter and can be the source of bleeding during the vaginal part of the surgery.

**Vaginal Part of the Surgery**

The vaginal part of the surgery can be divided into five steps: (i) vaginal cuff preparation, (ii) anterior phase (opening of the vesicouterine space and paravesical space, and mobilization and dissection of the ureter), (iii) posterior phase (opening of the cul-de-sac and pararectal space and excision of the parametrium), (iv) lateral phase (excision of the parametrium), and (v) excision of the specimen and closure.

Vaginal Cuff Preparation. Because the radical vaginal hysterectomy is primarily offered to women with cervical lesions less than 3 cm, it is rarely necessary to remove more than 1 cm of vaginal mucosa. A rim of vaginal mucosa is delineated circumferentially clockwise around the cervix with six to eight straight Kocher clamps placed at regular intervals, about 1 cm below the cervix (Fig. 47.38).

To reduce bleeding from the edges of the vaginal mucosa, a 10- to 20-cc solution of xylocaine 1% mixed with epihinephrine 1:100,000 is injected between each Kocher clamp, then a circumferential incision is made with the scalpel just above the Kocher clamp (Fig. 47.39). The anterior and posterior edges of the vaginal mucosa are grasped with four to six Chrobak clamps to completely cover the cervix.
Anterior Phase (Described for the Patient’s Right Side)

Opening of the vesicouterine space. While pulling the specimen slightly downward with the Chrobak clamps, a single-tooth forceps is used to hold and retract the anterior vaginal mucosa, which usually creates a triangular fold indicating where to cut (Fig. 47.40). The vesicouterine space is opened with Metzenbaum scissors held perpendicular to the cervix in the midline to avoid bleeding from the bladder pillars laterally. The space is further defined and stretched by gentle dissection with the index finger. Care is taken not to enter the anterior peritoneum as in a simple vaginal hysterectomy as it makes identification of the bladder base and ureters more difficult. If entered correctly, the space should be avascular, and the anterior surface of the endocervix and isthmus should be easily identified without resistance. If a resistance is felt, it usually means that the plane of dissection is either too posterior and that the surgeon is digging into the endocervix, or too anterior, which carries a risk of damage to the bladder. For that reason, the bladder base should be carefully delineated. In patients who have had a recent conization, there may be substantial fibrous and scarring between the cervix and the bladder base. The opening of the vesicouterine space may be particularly difficult in those cases. In such situations, a metal bladder catheter introduced into the urethra may be used to locate the bladder base and facilitate its mobilization. Once clearly identified, the vesicouterine space is stretched upward with a narrow Deaver retractor, showing the intact peritoneum (Fig. 47.41).

Reconstruction of the uterine corpus to upper vagina after the cerclage is placed.
FIGURE 47.36. The uterine fundus is reattached to the vaginal apex with six to eight interrupted no. 2-0 absorbable sutures.

Opening of the paravesical space. To open the right paravesical space, the Chrobak clamps are slightly pulled toward the patient’s right side. Straight Kocher clamps are placed onto the vaginal mucosa at 11 and 9 o’clock and stretched out (this is where the 12 o’clock mark made earlier is useful). This maneuver defines a triangle formed by the bladder pillars, the vaginal mucosa, and the Chrobak clamps. An areolar opening is seen just medial and slightly anterior to the 9 o’clock clamp, indicating where to enter to define the paravesical space. The space is blindly entered by opening and closing Metzenbaum scissors, with the tips pointing upward and outward in an oblique axis. If entered correctly, the space should be avascular and the scissors should slide inside easily. Once entered, the space is widened by rotating the scissors under the pubic bone in a semicircular, rotating motion to the patient’s left side. A small Breisky retractor is then placed in the space. This step is unquestionably the most “scary” part of the procedure as it is a blind maneuver. Having defined the paravesical space laparoscopically facilitates the entry of the scissors.

Identification and mobilization of the ureter. To palpate the ureter, the Chrobak clamps are pulled to the left of the patient, and the surgeon’s right index finger is placed in the vesicouterine space while a Breisky retractor (or the back of the scissors) is placed in the right paravesical space. By pulling down and “rubbing” the finger against the Breisky retractor, the “click” of the ureter rolling under the finger should be heard and felt. This maneuver orients the surgeon as to the location of the ureter in relation to the bladder pillars. Next, with the Breisky retractor placed in the right paravesical space and the narrow Deaver retractor placed in the vesicouterine space, the bladder pillars are clearly identified. The knee of the ureter is normally located on the lateral aspect of the bladder pillars (Fig. 47.42).

Once the ureter has been precisely located by palpation, the bladder pillars are excised midway between the bladder base and the endocervix. (Bipolar scissors are useful to decrease bleeding from the bladder pillars.) With the scissors, the medial and lateral pillars of the bladder pillars should be separated first before cutting (Fig. 47.43). The most proximal fibers of the pillars can then be excised, and normally, the knee of the ureter should appear anteriorly. At that point, a Babcock clamp is extremely useful to grab the ureter to allow a good traction on it and to constantly keep it under direct visualization. Once the ureter is clearly identified, the medial and lateral bladder pillars

FIGURE 47.37. The reconstructed fundus with remaining blood supply from the intact uteroovarian ligaments: uterine serosa without evidence of fundal ischemia.

FIGURE 47.38. A vaginal cuff is prepared to remove about 1 to 2 cm of vaginal mucosa.
are safely excised. If the ureter is not seen unequivocally, it should be palpated again to relocate its position before cutting the pillars.

Dissection of the ureter. Once the ureter is clearly identified and placed under traction with a Babcock clamp, it is possible to dissect the ureter. (It is easier if part of the unroofing has been done laparoscopically.) The uterine vessels are usually seen just under the knee of the ureter (Fig. 47.44). With a Kelly clamp, the vessels are pulled down from under the ureter, while at the same time, Metzenbaum scissors are used to free the filmy attachments and allow mobilization of the ureter upward. The uterine artery can be drawn completely into the operative field along with the clips (if they have been used laparoscopically to divide the uterine artery).

Posterior Phase (Described for the Patient’s Right Side) Opening of the cul-de-sac. Chrobak clamps are sharply angulated anteriorly and the posterior cul-de-sac is opened using Metzenbaum scissors as for a simple vaginal hysterectomy. Once entered, the space is stretched laterally to allow placement of a retractor.

Opening of the pararectal space and excision of the uterosacral ligaments. Using Metzenbaum scissors, the pararectal space is defined by opening a space just lateral to the peritoneal folds of the uterosacral ligaments. The medial or rectouterine fibers of the uterosacral ligaments are separated and excised.

Excision of the paracolpos. To complete the posterior phase preparation, the paracolpos is excised. The paracolpos is in fact the inferior border of the parametrium. With the Chrobak clamps rotated to the left, the paracolpos is clamped just medial to the vaginal mucosa, excised, and ligated.

Lateral Phase (Excision of the Parametrium). Before clamping the parametrium, the paravesical space and the ureter should be relocated. The space is verified by palpation with the finger, and a Brescia retractor is replaced in the paravesical space. The ureter should be readily visible and placed under traction with a Babcock clamp. While the Chrobak clamps are pulled and rotated to the patient’s left side, a curved Heaney clamp is placed proximally on the parametrium, then a second clamp is placed higher and more lateral to obtain wider parametrium. The second Heaney clamp should be placed at the contact of the knee of the ureter, which can be further dissected if needed (Fig. 47.45). The parametrial tissue is excised and ligated. Once completed on the other side, the uterus can now be tilted backward and should only be held by the ovarian ligaments (if the adnexae are preserved) or by residual peritoneal attachments. These can be clamped, excised, and ligated. The specimen is removed (Fig. 47.46).

Closure. In general, an attempt is made to include the anterior and posterior pelvic peritoneum along with the vaginal mucosa. Interrupted figures-of-eight of Vicryl 2–0 sutures are used for the closure, starting with the lateral angles. No drains are left in place except for the Foley catheter.
Results

Over the last 2 decades, data have been accumulating in the literature to indicate that the laparoscopically assisted radical vaginal hysterectomy is a safe procedure, with an overall low morbidity rate. Several studies—including those of Jackson and associates, Malur and colleagues, Nam and coworkers, Renaud and associates, Roy and colleagues, and Steed and coworkers—compared laparotomy (LAP) versus laparoscopically assisted vaginal (LAV) route. In general, the data suggest that the operative time is longer for the LAV group, but blood loss, transfusion rate, and hospital stay are significantly lower. The lymph node yield is similar between the two groups. Malur even reported a higher lymph node count in the LAV group. Intraoperative complication rate appears to be higher in the LAV group, probably related in part to the initial learning curve. In the study by Steed and coworkers, most of the complications were related to bladder and ureteral injuries. However, postoperative complications, such as wound infection and bleeding, tend to be higher in the LAP group. Jackson and associates reported the incidence of bladder and bowel dysfunction to be less in the LAV group, whereas Steed and coworkers found the opposite. Renaud and associates reported that the conversion rate to laparotomy is low. Importantly, there does not appear to be a statistically significant difference in recurrence rate and overall survival, suggesting that the radicality of the vaginal approach is adequate. However, Nam and coworkers noted a higher recurrence rate in the LAV group in patients with larger tumor volume and concluded that the vaginal approach should be restricted to patients with small tumor (<2 cm).

For larger-sized lesions, Possover and colleagues and Querleu have described a technique to provide extended radicality comparable to that of a type III radical hysterectomy with the idea that it may reduce long-term lateropelvic recurrences. However, the more radical the hysterectomy, the more side effects there are on the bladder and bowel function. In recent years, attention has been paid to this matter, and laparoscopic nerve-sparing surgical techniques have been developed by Querleu and associates to reduce these side effects. However, this extensive paracervical and parametrial dissection is of limited value in patients with small lesions (measuring <2 cm), as the risk of lateropelvic recurrence is low.

LAPAROSCOPICALLY-ASSISTED RADICAL VAGINAL TRACHELECTOMY (DARGENT PROCEDURE)

History

In 1987, Dargent proposed a modification of the Schauta-Amreich radical vaginal hysterectomy to preserve the body of the uterus and thus the reproductive function. The procedure, the radical vaginal trachelectomy, today known as the Dargent procedure, implies the removal of the cervix along with the proximal portion of the parametrium and is preceded by a complete laparoscopic pelvic lymph node dissection. After
FIGURE 47.43. The ureter is localized by opening the bladder pillars.

nearly 2 decades, the accumulating experience worldwide summarized by Plante and coworkers suggests that the oncologic outcomes with this conservative procedure are comparable to those obtained following a radical hysterectomy for similarly sized lesions. Obstetrical outcomes are also very encouraging. Indications

Eligibility criteria for this conservative procedure were initially proposed by Roy and Plante in 1998 and, for the most part, have remained unchanged thus far.

1. Desire to preserve fertility
2. No clinical evidence of impaired fertility (relative contraindication)
3. Lesion size lesser or equal to 2.5 cm
4. FIGO stage IA1 with presence of vascular space invasion, IA2 and IB1
5. Squamous cell or adenocarcinoma
6. No involvement of the upper endocervical canal as determined by colposcopy or MRI
7. No metastasis to regional lymph nodes

The procedure can be offered to women older than age 40, understanding that the fertility potential is obviously reduced, or to women who already have children, as they may wish to have other children in the future. Sonoda and colleagues reviewed the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center experience over the course of 10 years and noted that 43% of their patients who underwent a radical hysterectomy for early-stage cervical cancer were younger than 40 years old, of those, 48% would have met the eligibility criteria for a radical trachelectomy. Therefore, a substantial proportion of young women with cervical cancer are potential candidates for this fertility-preservation alternative.

Technique

Eligibility criteria for this conservative procedure were initially proposed by Roy and Plante in 1998 and, for the most part, have remained unchanged thus far.

1. Desire to preserve fertility
2. No clinical evidence of impaired fertility (relative contraindication)
3. Lesion size lesser or equal to 2.5 cm
4. FIGO stage IA1 with presence of vascular space invasion, IA2 and IB1
5. Squamous cell or adenocarcinoma
6. No involvement of the upper endocervical canal as determined by colposcopy or MRI
7. No metastasis to regional lymph nodes

The procedure can be offered to women older than age 40, understanding that the fertility potential is obviously reduced, or to women who already have children, as they may wish to have other children in the future. Sonoda and colleagues reviewed the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center experience over the course of 10 years and noted that 43% of their patients who underwent a radical hysterectomy for early-stage cervical cancer were younger than 40 years old, of those, 48% would have met the eligibility criteria for a radical trachelectomy. Therefore, a substantial proportion of young women with cervical cancer are potential candidates for this fertility-preservation alternative.

The laparoscopic part of the procedure is identical to that of the Schauta except that the uterine arteries are obviously not excised. The first three steps of the vaginal part of the surgery are also identical to the Schauta operation (vaginal cuff preparation, anterior phase, and posterior phase). The initial part of the lateral phase—i.e., excision of the parametrium—is also identical; however, only the descending branch of the uterine artery is excised. The excision of the trachelectomy specimen and closure also differ from the Schauta operation and will be detailed here.

Lateral Phase (Described for the Patient’s Left Side)

Ligation of the Cervicovaginal Artery. As opposed to the Schauta operation, in which the uterine artery is clamped at its origin, pulled down, and unroofed from under the ureter, the cross of the uterine artery is actually preserved in the case of a trachelectomy to maintain optimal vascularization of the uterus in the event of a future pregnancy. Therefore, only the cervicovaginal or descending branch of the uterine artery is excised. So, after precise localization of the isthmus and the cross of the uterine artery, the cervicovaginal artery is clamped with
a right-angle clamp placed at 90 degrees and directly applied to the isthmus (Fig. 47.47); then it is sectioned and ligated.

Excision of the Specimen and Closure. The uterine isthmus and endocervix are precisely located by palpating the uterus anteriorly and posteriorly. The cervix is amputated with a scalpel held perpendicular to the specimen about 1 cm distal to the isthmus (Fig. 47.48). As the specimen is excised, the cervical os appears gradually, and the anterior lip can be grasped with a straight Kocher clamp. Care is taken not to angulate the scalpel to avoid removing too much cervix posteriorly. The specimen is completely excised in one piece to facilitate the pathological evaluation of the margins.

Ideally, the specimen should be at least 1 to 2 cm wide, with 1 cm of vaginal mucosa and 1 to 2 cm of parametrium (Fig. 47.49A-B). When there is no clinical evidence of residual tumor, a frozen-section analysis is not performed. The specimen is kept intact for final analysis and will be processed as a cone specimen. However, in patients with a visible lesion, the trachelectomy specimen is sent for immediate frozen-section analysis to assess the level of the tumor in relation to the endocervical resection margin. At least 8 to 10 mm of tumor-free tissue should be obtained between the level of the tumor and the endocervical resection margin; otherwise, additional endocervix should be removed or the trachelectomy should be completed by a radical vaginal hysterectomy (Schauta). It is thus extremely important to ask the pathologist to do a frozen-section analysis of the cervix with a section made longitudinally from the ectocervix to the endocervix to evaluate the distance between the most cephalad edge of the tumor and the endocervical resection margin. A permanent cerclage is placed at the level of the isthmus using a nonresorbable Prolene or Ethibond 0 suture starting posteriorly at 6 o’clock to have the knot lying posteriorly. The sutures should not be placed too deeply into the cervical stroma, as the cerclage can eventually erode into the endocervical canal and be expelled. When tying the
FIGURE 47.48. Section of the cervix 1 cm below the isthmus. The endocervical canal is visible (arrow).

A cerclage knot, a uterine probe can be placed in the cervical os to avoid tightening the knot too much, as this may cause cervical stenosis (Fig. 47.50).

The Dargent procedure is completed by reapproximating the edges of the vaginal mucosa to the new exocervix. This is accomplished with interrupted figures-of-eight sutures of 2-0 Vicryl. It is easier to begin with the sutures at 12 and 6 o'clock first. The lateral sutures are then placed separately to include the anterior and posterior vaginal mucosa only. Although easy to do, the closure of the vaginal mucosa is an extremely important step of the procedure, and care should be taken not to bury the cervical opening into folds of redundant vaginal mucosa.

FIGURE 47.49. A and B: The specimen with its parametrium. The superior endocervical canal is shown (arrow).

FIGURE 47.50. A cerclage is put in place and ligated posteriorly with a dilator (arrow) in the cervical canal.
mucosa (Fig. 47.51). The new exocervix should remain accessible for monitoring with colposcopic examination and cytology.

At the end of the trachelectomy procedure, laparoscopy is performed to verify hemostasis in the pelvis and the integrity of the pelvic structures. No drains or packings are left.

**Oncologic Outcome**

Data are accumulating worldwide indicating that the oncologic outcome following the radical trachelectomy is comparable to the outcome following a radical hysterectomy for similar-size lesions. Indeed, several large series totaling more than 600 cases consistently report a recurrence rate of less than 4% and a death rate of less than 2% (Table 47.8). Plante and colleagues have noted that the size of the lesion (≥2 cm) and the presence of LVSI seem to be the most important risk factors for recurrences. The recent work of Hertel and coworkers also suggests that adenocarcinomas may carry a higher risk of recurrence.

Morice and associates have noted unusual sites of recurrences, such as in the vesicovaginal septum and in the bladder, which suggests that very meticulous surgical technique should be observed to avoid entering the wrong planes of dissection and potentially disseminating tumor cells at the time of the procedure. Piketty recently reported a recurrence in the ovary in a patient with an adenocarcinoma. Only two recurrences have been reported so far on the residual cervix itself. The first one was reported by Bali and occurred nearly 7 years following the initial surgery. It is unclear whether it truly represents a recurrence or a new primary. The other one was reported by Rader and coworkers; it occurred 6 months postabdominal trachelectomy and was picked up on routine Pap smear. A radical hysterectomy was performed and disclosed a 3-mm recurrence (or persistence) in the cervix. One had a 3.8-cm lesion, and she recurred within 4 months of the surgery with a 6-cm lesion; the other had a 5-cm glassy-cell adenocarcinoma and recurred 14 months after surgery. Strict selection criteria are extremely important to lower the risks of recurrences. Further experience will determine if the abdominal radical trachelectomy is safe in bulky lesions. Another alternative for patients with larger lesions is the use of neoadjuvant chemotherapy to reduce the size of the tumor followed by a fertility-preserving radical trachelectomy. Plante and coworkers have recently published their preliminary experience with three cases. All have had a complete pathologic response to the chemotherapy with no residual cancer in the surgical specimen. Obviously, this approach is currently experimental but has potential merits and deserves further investigation.

Shepherd recommends regular follow-up posttrachelectomies, including a colposcopic examination, cytology, and rectovaginal examination every 3 to 4 months for the first 2 to 3 years, every 6 months for the next 2 years, and yearly thereafter. Unfortunately, colposcopy and cytologies are frequently unsatisfactory after trachelectomy because the squamous columnar junction is often not visualized and the cytology frequently contains only squamous cells. Conversely, atypical glandular cells from the lower uterine segment are commonly picked up on the smear and misinterpreted as suspicious for recurrence. Singh and coworkers have reported their experience with nearly 200 smears posttrachelectomy and concluded that a high proportion of the smears were unsatisfactory; 2% of the smears were reported as suspicious and in fact represented atypical endometrial cells, but two patients recurred and retrospectively had abnormal smears long before the recurrence was diagnosed. Reports of cytology posttrachelectomy should thus be interpreted with caution. Shepherd and coworkers recommend the use of an endocervical cytobrush for the cytology and an MRI at 6, 12, and 24 months postsurgery. The superb work by Sahdev and associates emphasizes the fact that radiologists interpreting those MRIs should be very well aware of the anatomical

**TABLE 47.8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Recurrences</th>
<th>Deaths</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plante and Roy</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>2 (2.0%)†</td>
<td>1 (1.0%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covens and Steed</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>7 (5.8%)‡</td>
<td>4 (3.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shepherd et al.</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>3 (2.7%)§</td>
<td>2 (1.8%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hertel et al.</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>4 (4.0%)‡</td>
<td>2 (2.0%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dargent and Muthett</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>4 (4.2%)‡</td>
<td>3 (3.1%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ungar et al.†</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>2 (2.2%)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>619</td>
<td>22 (3.5%)‡</td>
<td>12 (1.9%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Excluding one case of neuroendocrine tumor.

†Abdominal radical trachelectomy.

FIGURE 47.51. Suturing the vaginal mucosa to the cervical stroma. A clamp (arrow) is indicating the endocervical canal.
changes post-trachelectomy, as some of the changes may be mis-interpreted as cancer recurrences.

**Obstetric Outcome**

The collected data on obstetric outcome are also very promising. As can be seen in Table 47.9, there have been more than 220 pregnancies reported from the same group of investigators. In general, the rate of first-trimester miscarriage does seem to be higher than in the general population, but approximately 16%. It is interesting to note that even though women undergoing radical trachelectomy procedure do so to preserve their fertility, there is a surprising 4% rate of elective pregnancy termination. The rate of second-trimester losses is higher than in the general population (18%). Overall, 66% to 75% of all pregnancies reach the third trimester. Of those, approximately 15% will end with significant prematurity at less than 32 weeks of gestation. Luckily, less than 10% will deliver before 28 weeks, when most of the severe neonatal morbidities and mortalities occur. Of note, multiple pregnancies appear to be at a particularly high risk of severe prematurity post-trachelectomy, and this should be taken into consideration when discussing in vitro fertilization in patients with infertility. Overall, 85% of the pregnancies reaching the third trimester will evolve normally beyond 32 weeks, and the majority will actually deliver at term (>37 weeks of gestation). The work of Klemm and colleagues suggests that there is no evidence that birth weight of newborns delivered from women who had a trachelectomy is lower. They showed that the vascular flow to the uterine artery before and after vaginal trachelectomy is well preserved.

The etiology of the second-trimester losses and the preterm deliveries is thought to be either mechanical and/or infectious. Indeed, the short cervix probably does not offer as much support to the lower uterine segment. As the uterus enlarges and gets heavier, the cervix is more likely to dilate prematurely. However, the main etiology is felt to be infectious. Indeed, the shortened cervix after the trachelectomy procedure seems to prevent the formation of an efficacious mucus plug. The mucus plug is thought to play an important role as a physiological barrier between the vaginal flora and the membranes to prevent ascending infections. Hence, the subclinical chorioamnionitis is thought to be responsible for the premature rupture of membranes and premature labor. Plante and associates have proposed some guidelines for the follow-up of these high-risk pregnancies. A consultation with a specialist in fetal-maternal medicine is recommended. The value of prophylactic antibiotic coverage—as well as steroid injections to accelerate fetal lung maturity near term—is unclear, although Shephard and colleagues strongly recommend it. The work of Berghella and coworkers has shown that serial transvaginal ultrasound is the best modality for the follow-up of cervical length in the general obstetric population and has been used in the follow-up of pregnant women post-trachelectomy. If the pregnancy evolves normally, delivery is planned at 38 to 39 weeks of gestation. Because of the permanent cerclage, women should be delivered by elective cesarean section.

Outcomes of pregnancy following an abdominal trachelectomy also appear promising. Although the numbers are smaller, Ungar and coworkers have reported 10 pregnancies so far, with results comparable to pregnancies after the vaginal approach. There was a concern that ligating the uterine arteries at the time of the procedure might have an impact on the vascularization of the uterus and potentially lead to intrauterine growth retardation. So far, the data seem reassuring in that regard.

**Conclusion**

Based on the collected data available thus far, the radical trachelectomy procedure truly offers a valuable alternative to young women with small, early-stage cervical cancer who wish to preserve their fertility potential. Oncologic outcomes are comparable to standard radical hysterectomy for similar-size lesions, and the complication rate is low. Pregnancies are definitely possible after this procedure, and overall obstetric outcome is good despite the rate of second-trimester loss and premature delivery. In the last 2 to 3 decades, there has been a tremendous shift toward minimally invasive surgical techniques in gynecologic oncology. Laparoscopic and radical vaginal surgeries have revolutionized the surgical management of cervical cancer. The radical trachelectomy procedure (Dargent operation) has also been shown to be effective for the treatment of cervical cancer in women who wish to preserve their fertility potential.

**Table 47.9:** Obstetrical Outcome Post–Radical Trachelectomy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Pregnancy</th>
<th>T-1 miscarriage</th>
<th>TAB</th>
<th>T-2 miscarriage</th>
<th>T-3 delivery</th>
<th>Delivery &lt;32 wks</th>
<th>Delivery &gt;32 wks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plante and Roy</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>10 (16%)</td>
<td>3 (4%)</td>
<td>2 (5%)</td>
<td>44 (75%)</td>
<td>3 (7%)</td>
<td>41 (93%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dargent and Mathevet</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>31 (18%)</td>
<td>3 (5%)</td>
<td>8 (14%)</td>
<td>34 (61%)</td>
<td>5 (13%)</td>
<td>29 (85%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shepherd et al.</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>15 (29%)</td>
<td>2 (4%)</td>
<td>7 (13%)</td>
<td>28 (54%)</td>
<td>7 (25%)</td>
<td>21 (75%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covens and Bernardini</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>8 (16%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3 (7%)</td>
<td>34 (77%)</td>
<td>6 (18%)</td>
<td>28 (82%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hered et al.</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>1 (7%)</td>
<td>2 (14%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>11 (78%)</td>
<td>3 (27%)</td>
<td>8 (73%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ungar et al.†</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4 (40%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6 (60%)</td>
<td>1 (17%)</td>
<td>5 (83%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>49 (20%)</td>
<td>10 (4%)</td>
<td>20 (8%)</td>
<td>157 (66%)</td>
<td>23 (13%)</td>
<td>132 (55%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*T-1: first trimester; T-2: second trimester; T-3: third trimester.

†TAB, therapeutic abortions.

Includes two ectopic.

Includes six sets of twins.

Personal communication, April 2006.

Abdominal radical trachelectomy.
is unquestionably the most important surgical development in the treatment of early-stage cervical cancer in the last century.

**LAPAROSCOPIC RADICAL HYSTERECTOMY WITH PELVIC AND AORTIC LYMPHADENECTOMY**

Laparoscopic radical hysterectomy with pelvic and aortic lymph node dissection was first reported by Nezhat in 1992. This technically challenging procedure initially was received with caution by gynecologic oncologists who have used the abdominal radical hysterectomy as the traditional approach for decades. So far, no randomized trials are available for comparing these two surgical approaches; however, more than 150 patients have been reported with encouraging results. So far, the largest series reported has been by Spirtos and associates, who described 78 consecutive patients, all with early cervical cancer and a Quetelet body mass index <35, who underwent the procedure. In all, 94% of the procedures were completed laparoscopically with an average operative time of 205 minutes and an average blood loss of 225 mL, with only one patient (1.3%) requiring transfusion. There was one ureterovaginal fistula documented. The average lymph node count was 34, with 11.5% of patients having positive lymph nodes. Three patients (3.8%) had close or positive surgical margins, and 5.1% recurred with a minimum of 3-year follow-up. Table 47.10 summarizes reports on laparoscopic radical hysterectomy with pelvic and aortic lymphadenectomy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>PLN</th>
<th>ORT (min)</th>
<th>EBL (mL)</th>
<th>LOS (days)</th>
<th>Complications</th>
<th>Recurrences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nezhat et al. 1992, 1993</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>30–250</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sedlacek et al. 1994, 1995</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>420</td>
<td>334</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>1 VVF, 1 ureteral injury</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ting 1994</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>330–480</td>
<td>150–500</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osterenski 1996</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2–4</td>
<td>1 hydronephrosis</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spirtos et al. 1996</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>18.3</td>
<td>253</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim and Moon 1998</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>619</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hsieh et al. 1998</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>1 distant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spirtos 2002</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>23.8</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>1.3% transfusion, 3 cystostomies, 1 UVF, 1 DVT</td>
<td>8 (10.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lee 2002</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>428</td>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>2 transfusion</td>
<td>None at 1 year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lin 2003</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obemair 2003</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3 vascular, 1 nerve, 1 fistula</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pomel 2003</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>258</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 bladder fistula, 1 ureteral stenosis</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu-Rustum 2003</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>371</td>
<td>301</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>1 bladder fistula, 1 ureter stenosis, 2 conversion, 1 fever</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gil-Moreno 2005</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>19.1</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N, number of patients; PLN, mean pelvic lymph nodes; ORT, mean operating room time; EBL, mean estimated blood loss; LOS, mean hospital stay; VVF, vesicovaginal fistula; UVF, ureterovaginal fistula; DVT, deep venous thrombosis.

Some patients may be reported more than once.
manipulation is optional. The pelvic and aortic lymphadenectomy is performed as described in the preceding. Pelvic drains usually are not necessary, and a suprapubic catheter is optional.

## LAPAROSCOPIC SURGICAL STAGING

Currently available clinical staging methods and imaging studies are not completely accurate in the detection of pelvic and aortic lymph node metastasis from cervical cancer, and pathologic evaluation of retroperitoneal lymph nodes remains the gold standard for establishing metastasis. In addition, identifying retroperitoneal nodal metastasis may alter the overall therapeutic approach and affect the patient's prognosis. Laparoscopic surgical staging with pelvic and aortic lymph node dissection for cervical cancer was initially reported by Querleu in France. Since this initial report, many investigators have adopted the laparoscopic pretreatment surgical approach and continue to modify the technical details of the procedure. It is well established at this point that transperitoneal or extraperitoneal laparoscopic pelvic and aortic lymph node dissection for cervical cancer, in experienced hands, is feasible, yields similar results as the open approach, and is associated with low morbidity. Furthermore, this approach may provide valuable information that is not available using clinical staging techniques. Computed tomography was able to detect retroperitoneal nodal metastasis in only 17% to 57% of cervical cancer patients staged laparoscopically. Table 47.11 summarizes selected reports on laparoscopic pelvic and aortic lymph node dissection in the management of stage I to IV cervical cancer.

### Laparoscopic Surgical Staging Technique

The technique of laparoscopic surgical staging continues to evolve as experience with this minimally invasive approach increases. There are two main approaches: the transperitoneal approach and the extraperitoneal approach (popularized by Querleu and Dargent from France). For the transperitoneal approach, four laparoscopic trocars usually are needed (Fig. 47.32): 10-mm trocars in the umbilical and suprapubic regions and 5-mm trocars just medial to the iliac crest on each side. For the aortic nodal dissection, the laparoscope is placed in the suprapubic region, and the monitors are moved cephalad. For the pelvic lymphadenectomy, the laparoscope is placed in the umbilical region, and the monitors are placed caudal. A variety of endoscopic tools may be used with similar results. The selection usually is based on the surgeon's preference and experience. Both monopolar and bipolar currents are available, and a wide variety of endoscopic dissecting instruments, clip appliers, and specimen retrieval devices are available. The 10-mm argon beam coagulator (ABC, Conmed, Utica, NY) is ideal in this setting. It works both as a dissector and a coagulator. A retroperitoneal nodal dissection may be satisfactorily completed in the majority of cases with the aid of a tissue grasper and an endoscopic clip applier. The right aortic nodal tissue is approached via a retroperitoneal incision over the right common iliac artery. The right ureter and ovarian vessels are identified, and the nodal tissue over the iliac vessels is retracted. The left aortic nodal tissue may be approached via the same incision. The inferior mesenteric artery, left ureter, and venae cavae are retracted. The remaining parametria and paracolpos are resected with the ABC and staples. The specimen is removed vaginally with a single tooth tenaculum, and the vaginal cuff is closed laparoscopically with endoscopic sutures of the endostitch. The placement of ureteral catheters or stents to facilitate ureteric manipulation is optional.

### Table 47.11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>PLN (% +)</th>
<th>PAN (% +)</th>
<th>ORT HD</th>
<th>Complications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Querleu 1991</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>IB–IIB</td>
<td>8.7 (12.8%)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Childers 1993</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>IB–IVA</td>
<td>31.4 (both) (33.3%)</td>
<td>(6.2%)</td>
<td>75–175</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fowler 1993</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>23.5 (16.7%)</td>
<td>6.5 (0%)</td>
<td>373 With laparotomy</td>
<td>7.4 With laparotomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Su 1995</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recio 1996</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>IB2</td>
<td>18 (25%)</td>
<td>7 (0%)</td>
<td>176</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chu 1997</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>IA2–IIB</td>
<td>26.7 (12.8%)</td>
<td>8 (55.7%)</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possover 1998</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>IB–IIB</td>
<td>4.3 (15.1%)</td>
<td>6.8 (7.7%)</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vidalurreta 1999</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>IB2–IV</td>
<td>18.3 (45.2%)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schlaerth 1999</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>IA–IIIA</td>
<td>32.1</td>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Querleu 2000</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>≥IB2</td>
<td>With common iliac</td>
<td>20.7 (32%)</td>
<td>126</td>
<td>1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algasssen 2000</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>IA1–IVB</td>
<td>21–24.3</td>
<td>5.1–10.6</td>
<td>Aortic: 35–73</td>
<td>Pelvic: 61–70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Reports 497</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>I–IV</td>
<td>9–32 (24%–25%)</td>
<td>6–21 (19%–20%)</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1–2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HD, mean hospital stay in days; n, number of patients; ORT, mean operating room time in minutes; PAN, mean aortic lymph nodes; PLN, mean pelvic lymph nodes.
PATHOLOGIC EXAMINATION OF THE OPERATIVE SPECIMEN

Considerable useful information about the extent of the disease can be obtained by a careful pathologic examination of the operative specimen. This is helpful in determining prognosis but is also absolutely essential to the identification of patients at greater risk for persistent disease so that additional therapy and close surveillance can be provided. Even though the operator may be fatigued at the end of the operation, he or she should consider accompanying the specimen to the pathology laboratory, where it can be examined with the pathologist before it is placed in fixative and sectioned. Another alternative is to call the pathologist to the operation room for a joint examination of the specimen while the surgical incisions are being closed. The gynecologic surgeon then can point to worrisome parts of the specimen; such information assists the pathologist in taking sections. Critical margins of dissection can be pointed out and stained with India ink so that they can be seen on microscopic slides. The primary cervical tumor should be measured as accurately as possible so that at least an estimate of its size and volume can be recorded. Numerous microscopic sections of the cervix with adjacent vaginal cuff, lower uterine segment, and paravaginal, paracervical, and parametrial tissue should be examined to show the cell type, degree of differentiation, depth of stromal invasion, and presence or absence of invasion of lymphatic and vascular spaces. It is important to know not only the depth of invasion but also the thickness of the uninvolved fibromuscular stroma of the cervix, as pointed out by Kishi and coworkers. These authors found that the nodal metastasis and 5-year cancer death rates were 7% and 8%, respectively, in patients with uninvolved fibromuscular stroma thickness > 3 mm, and 37% and 26%, respectively, in patients with the thickness < 3 mm. Furthermore, GOG has demonstrated that the percentage of invasion of tumor into the cervical stroma is an independent prognostic factor and is used to help determine the need for postoperative adjuvant treatment.

Unfortunately, the exquisite giant-section technique of pathologic examination used by Burghardt and coworkers is not available in any U.S. pathology laboratory. These authors measured ratio of tumor size to the size of the cervix. The incidence of lymph node involvement increased with tumor size, reaching a maximum of 68.3% in the group with a ratio from 70% to 80% of cervical anatomic involvement. Surprisingly, direct spread into the parametrium seldom was found, even when large tumors were found to occupy the entire cervix. This finding is contrary to that of Bleker and coworkers, who found 16.8% unrecognized parametrial tumor involvement in patients with stage IB and IIA lesions. The 5-year survival rate fell with parametrial involvement.

Through examination of the lymphadenectomy specimens must be done. Tumor metastasis to lymph nodes affects patient survival adversely and is an indication for postoperative adjuvant therapy. In patients with positive nodes, the pathologic examination should report whether the metastatic disease is microscopic or macroscopic, single or multiple, unilateral or bilateral. The location of lymph nodes positive for tumor also should be reported because the prognosis is especially poor in patients with positive common iliac or paraaortic nodes. The usual standard technique of pathologic examination of lymphadenectomy specimens involves removal of visible and palpable nodes from fatty tissue, with bisection of each node for microscopic examination. This standard technique may not be adequate for an accurate assessment of lymph node metastases. A significant increase in positive findings can be obtained if special pathologic examination techniques are used, as demonstrated by To and coworkers, Ahrens and Tschoke, and Wilkinson and Huisse. With their technique of dissection of lymph nodes at multiple levels before paraffin embedding, To and coworkers showed that 9% of patients originally reported to have negative nodes actually had positive nodes.

An accurate assessment of the extent of disease by a careful pathologic examination of the operative specimen is imperative in deciding whether additional treatment is needed. Indeed, it is such an important component in the surgical management of patients with cervical cancer that these patients should be operated on only in hospitals where such expert specimen evaluation is available.
Studies have demonstrated that the bladder initially can be hypertonic, with decreased bladder capacity, increased resting pressure, and increased residual urine volume. Many patients have difficulty initiating micturition and experience a loss of sensation of bladder fullness. Using sensitive urodynamic instrumentation, Scott and coworkers found a variety of abnormalities, including obstructive voiding patterns, immediate and delayed loss of compliance, sensory losses, and genuine stress incontinence. Some patients had complete absence of bladder contractions during voiding. Although these findings are quite compelling, Lind and associates recently reported normal preoperative urodynamic findings in only 17% of 210 patients with cervical cancer scheduled to undergo radical hysterectomy.

Mundy and Sasaki and coworkers have suggested that the posterior part of the cardinal ligament (pars nervosa) contains the major part of the parasympathetic and sympathetic nerve supply to the bladder and urethra and that its removal is responsible for postoperative bladder dysfunction. Sasaki and coworkers demonstrated that removal of the anterior cardinal ligament (pars vasculosa) with preservation of the pars nervosa reduces the incidence of postoperative bladder dysfunction. The work of Kadar and coworkers and that of Asmussen and Ulmsten suggests that the nerve supply to the bladder and urethra can be spared without compromising the necessary extensive dissection and tissue removal around the central disease, thus sparing many patients the loss of urethrovescical function. Kuswara and colleagues recently reported a decrease in bladder dysfunction by using a technique of intraoperative electrical stimulation to identify and preserve the vesical nerve branches. These nerve-sparing modifications have not been widely adopted by gynecologic oncologists in the United States because of a concern that this same cardinal ligament tissue also carries lymphatic channels draining the cervix and should be removed in a complete central dissection. However, Trombo and colleagues report the Netherlands, have reported no increase in recurrence or decreased survival in a series of patients treated with nerve-sparing radical hysterectomy.

Techniques of managing the postoperative bladder have varied widely. Duration of catheter drainage, suprapubic versus transurethral drainage, the value of self-catheterization, and the value of cystometric studies have all been debated as described by Bandy and coworkers. These authors also found that patients receiving postoperative adjunctive pelvic radiation had significantly more contracted and unstable bladders than patients treated with surgery alone. Proper management of the bladder in the first several weeks after operation is essential to avoid overdistention. The duration of postoperative bladder catheterization has decreased in recent years. Chamberlin and investigators reported a contemporary median indwelling catheter duration of 6 days compared with 30 days in historical controls with no increase in complication rates.

Although some clinicians leave an indwelling catheter or suprapubic tube in place 2 to 3 weeks, we prefer continuous transurethral catheter drainage until the patient is ready for discharge, which is usually about 4 to 7 days after surgery. Early postoperative intravenous pyelography (IVP) in the absence of intraoperative urinary tract injury or clinical symptoms suggestive of injury is not indicated; moreover, an abnormal early IVP is not predictive of subsequent urinary tract dysfunction. When the patient is ready for discharge, the catheter is removed, and postvoid residuals are checked with a bladder scan or cystometric measurement. Continuous transurethral catheterization also can be used. If the postvoid residual volume is below 50 to 75 mL and the volume of urine spontaneously voided is greater than the postvoid residual, then the patient is allowed to leave the hospital without an indwelling catheter. She must be thoroughly schooled in the importance of not allowing her bladder to become overdistended. Allowing the bladder to overdistend, especially in the early postoperative recovery period, can result in a flaccid bladder from stretching and decomposition of the detrusor muscle, prolongation of bladder dysfunction with high residual urine volumes, and the likelihood of urinary infections. Patients who have unacceptable postvoid residuals are best managed with prolonged indwelling catheter drainage for several weeks before attempting removal. If a serious episode of overdistention of the bladder ever occurs, continuous indwelling catheter drainage should be reinstituted, sometimes for several weeks, with the hope that permanent impairment of bladder function can be avoided. Urinary tract infections can occur in conjunction with bladder dysfunction and should be looked for with periodic urinalysis and culture and treated with appropriate antibiotics. Patients should be encouraged to maintain a urine output above 2,000 mL per day to avoid urinary tract infection.

In most patients, a satisfactory voiding pattern can be established within several months. Urodynamic studies, however, can show some evidence of slight and persistent chronic bladder dysfunction for several years. Fraser stated that 20% of his patients continued to report changes in bladder sensation as long as 5 to 15 years after operation. In many patients who have had properly performed radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy, it is inevitable that bladder function will never be completely normal again. With proper postoperative bladder care and rehabilitation, however, function should be satisfactory in most patients at the end of the first year. According to Fishman and coworkers, 35% of patients continued to express unhappiness at the extent and effect of their postoperative urinary dysfunction.

Vesicovaginal Fistula

In the absence of prior pelvic irradiation, bladder ischemia and vesicovaginal fistula are infrequent complications of this procedure. Vesicovaginal fistulas occur in less than 1% of patients (Table 47.12). Nearly one third of urinary tract fistulas following surgery heal spontaneously, as compared with none if adjuvant radiation therapy is given. The management of vesicovaginal fistulas is discussed in Chapter 39.

Urètre

Clark, working at the Johns Hopkins Hospital, published one of the first descriptions of radical hysterectomy for cervical cancer in 1895. Sampson, working in the same institution during the same time, recognized that injury to the ureter was the most serious problem associated with primary radical surgery for this disease. His publications on ureteral anatomy and blood supply and the relation between the ureter and gynecologic disease are classic and pertinent today. Devascularization and ischemic necrosis of the wall of the terminal ureter has proved to be one of the more serious complications of this operation. Wertheim found this complication to be one of the more serious sequelae. In Menge's clinic, there was a 12.5% incidence of bladder dysfunction with 4% incidence of ureterovaginal fistulas and 4% incidence of ureteral stricture.

For many years, gynecologic surgeons have attempted to lower the rate of ureteral complications with special techniques. Novak, from Yugoslavia, reduced the incidence of ureteral fistulas to 2% after primary radical surgery by placing
the dissected pelvic ureter on the inside (peritoneal surface) of the pelvic peritoneum and by preserving the lateral mesentery to the terminal ureter. Green and coworkers suggested that the terminal ureter should be lifted out of the accumulated fluid in the retroperitoneal space by suturing it to the obliterated hypogastric artery. Ohkawa developed a procedure that attempted to elevate and isolate the ureter from the infected retroperitoneal fluid and also to develop a new blood supply to the terminal ureter by placing it in a peritoneal envelope from the pelvic brim to the bladder. Blythe and coworkers compared this technique with simple retroperitoneal suction drainage first advised by Symmonds and Pratt. They found that ureteral obstruction and ureterovaginal fistulas occurred twice as often and that the operative time was extended 45 minutes to 1 hour with the Ohkawa technique. More recently, Patsner and others have recommended the routine use of the omental J-flap (omentopexy) at the conclusion of radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy as an effective means of minimizing urinary tract fistulas.

Given a normal unirradiated ureter, we believe that the incidence of ureteral fistulas and permanent stenosis can be kept below 1% with meticulous intraoperative management of the ureter by a technically skillful operator who can prevent vascular trauma to the periureteral sheath and injury to the muscularis of the ureter.

Some temporary postoperative changes in ureteral function are an almost inevitable result of radical hysterectomy, as pointed out by Gal and Buchsbaum. Using special static and cinefluoroscopic IVP techniques, these authors found ureteral dilation in 87% of patients in the first week after surgery. In most cases, by 6 weeks after surgery, the dilation had regressed and the pyelograms had returned to normal. Peristalsis was altered in the distal ureter, which appeared as a rigid conduit during the first postoperative week. Peristalsis had returned 1 month later. These changes may explain the increased frequency of urinary tract infections after radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy as an effective means of minimizing urinary tract fistulas.

Table 47.12 shows the frequency of urinary fistulas in a collected series of 7,473 nonirradiated patients treated by radical abdominal hysterectomy as compiled by Shingleton and Orr. The management of ureterovaginal fistulas is discussed in Chapter 39.

### TABLE 47.12

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigators</th>
<th>Number of patients</th>
<th>Ureteral fistula (%)</th>
<th>Vesical fistula (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kaser et al., 1973</td>
<td>717</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Park et al., 1973</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoskins et al., 1976</td>
<td>224</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morley and Seski, 1976</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saul et al., 1979</td>
<td>349</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Webb and Symmonds, 1979</td>
<td>423</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benedet et al., 1980</td>
<td>241</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Langley et al., 1980</td>
<td>284</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lerner et al., 1980</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bostoffe et al., 1981</td>
<td>479</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powell et al., 1981</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zander et al., 1981</td>
<td>1,092</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginsch et al., 1984</td>
<td>1,187</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shingleton, 1985</td>
<td>444</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ariman et al., 1987</td>
<td>153</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larson et al., 1987</td>
<td>233</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ralph et al., 1988</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lee et al., 1989</td>
<td>954</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenter et al., 1989</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burghardt et al., 1989</td>
<td>325</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moscici et al., 1993</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>7,473</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NS, no sample.


### Retropertitoneal Spaces

Traditionally, a closed system of constant suction was placed in the retropertitoneal spaces on each side at the end of the procedure. These drains were thought to be effective for reducing the risk of pelvic infection, fistula, and lymphocyst formation. However, recent retrospective and prospective studies have demonstrated that the incidence of these complications is not decreased in patients who have retropertitoneal drains placed compared with those who do not. Furthermore, the drains may actually increase infectious complications.
Therefore, we do not routinely place drains in the retroperitoneal spaces. Whether drains are placed or not, a small percentage of patients develop lymphoceles. A lymphocoele becomes obvious by symptoms and examination in the weeks after radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy. It may be small and asymptomatic. Most patients with large lymphoceles report lower abdominal discomfort on the lateral pelvic side-wall, where silent thrombosis is common. Prolonged immobilization of the lower extremities during a lengthy operative procedure is responsible for intraoperative venous stasis and clot formation. There is evidence to document that postoperative thrombosis of the lower extremity is a result of the surgical procedure in more than 50% of cases. The prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of venous thromboembolic events is extensively discussed in Chapter 9.

Infection
Historically, patients were treated with antibiotics only if postoperative infection occurred. However, antibiotic prophylaxis has been associated with decreased febrile morbidity and decreased rates of serious infections in women undergoing radical abdominal hysterectomy. Furthermore, Orr and colleagues have demonstrated that a single dose of prophylactic antibiotic is as effective as a multiple-dose regimen and lessens patient exposure and cost. Thus, the prophylactic use of broad-spectrum antibiotics with both aerobic and anaerobic coverage has proved to be a useful addition to the surgical armamentarium.

We initiate single-agent broad-spectrum antibiotic coverage immediately before surgery. The administration of the drug is timed to allow adequate distribution before incision. During an extended operation, if the antibiotic given has a short half-life, a second dose is administered.

When secondary infection occurs despite the use of prophylactic antibiotics, the appropriate cultures are obtained, and bacteria-specific antibiotic therapy is chosen.

Venous Thrombosis and Pulmonary Embolus
Patients who undergo radical pelvic surgery fulfill the components of Virchow’s triad and are at high risk for the development of venous thrombosis of the lower extremities and thromboembolic phenomena. Factors such as postoperative alteration of blood coagulation, trauma to the vein wall, and venous stasis are recognizable features of this type of surgery. In particular, pelvic lymphadenectomy invariably produces some trauma to the vein wall during the mobilization of the vessel and resection of the adherent lymphatic tissue. One of the biologic effects of radical surgery is the occurrence of local tissue necrosis during healing. This results in the release of tissue thromboplastin into the circulation, which contributes to thrombosis. The clotting mechanism (acceleration of the clotting mechanism) is also seen behind the valves of the veins of the lower extremities, where silent thrombosis is common. Prolonged immobilization of the lower extremities during a lengthy operative procedure is responsible for intraoperative venous stasis and clot formation. There is evidence to document that postoperative thrombosis of the lower extremity is a result of the surgical procedure in more than 50% of cases. The prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of venous thromboembolic events is extensively discussed in Chapter 9.

Efforts to decrease the frequency of this complication initially used prophylactic low-dose heparin, 5,000 U subcutaneously, three times daily, beginning 2 hours before surgery, and given every 8 hours thereafter for the subsequent 5 postoperative days. By using perioperative heparin alone, the incidence of deep vein thrombosis in a study by Kakkar and associates was decreased from 24.6% in the untreated control group to 7.7% in the heparin-treated group of surgical cases. More impressive was the observation in a subsequent study by the same investigators that 16 patients in the control group, as compared with only 2 patients in the heparin-treated group, were found on autopsy study to have died of acute, massive pulmonary embolism.

We use intermittent pneumatic calf compression beginning in the operating room and continuing whenever the patient is in bed until she is discharged. These compression boots are used not only in our patients undergoing radical hysterectomy but in all our patients undergoing major gynecologic surgical procedures. In very high-risk patients, we add prophylactic low-molecular-weight heparin. Approximately 3% to 5% of patients with occult venous thrombosis of the lower extremities develop pulmonary emboli. Unfortunately, more than half of the cases of fatal pulmonary embolism occur in patients without evident venous thrombosis and without any clinical evidence of this complication before the acute pulmonary catastrophe. When evidence of venous thrombosis of the lower extremities is verified, full anticoagulation therapy is required for prevention of pulmonary embolism. However, the decision about how soon after radical surgery it is safe to fully anticoagulate a patient may be very difficult. In the rare case that a pulmonary embolus occurs after full anticoagulation has been achieved, it is necessary to prevent further migration of clot to the lung by either inferior vena cava ligation or the use of an intracaval teflon valve. These complications are rare, but the sinister effects of thromboembolism must be carefully evaluated on a daily basis, and a high index of suspicion needs to be maintained in this high-risk group of patients.

Hemorrhage
Intraoperative and postoperative pelvic hemorrhages also are discussed in Chapter 19.

Intraoperative Bleeding
Despite the surgeon’s adequate technical skills and careful dissection, serious hemorrhage can suddenly appear, especially during retroperitoneal dissections on the lateral pelvic sidewalls and around the sacrum. When it happens, it is hoped that the operative field will not be cluttered with clamps; exposure, lighting, and suction will be adequate; the patient’s condition will be stable; and anesthesia will be sufficient to maintain good relaxation. If the bleeding vessel cannot be clamped quickly, the simplest and most effective method of controlling the
hemostasis. In contrast to arterial bleeding, hemorrhage from the pelvic vein has been severely traumatized and has retracted out. The bleeding has been established, in the meantime dissecting is advisable to keep pressure on the vein until full control of the site of bleeding for a similar length of time. In these cases, it is important to use compression of the pelvic floor veins by identifying the site of the lacerated vein. In these circumstances, paraaortic areas are frequent sites of venous bleeding. Therefore, careful positioning of patients in stirrups prevent most nerve injury. Fortunately, most nerve injuries are not associated with serious or permanent disability.

Postoperative Hemorrhage
This condition is a rare complication of radical pelvic surgery. Because all of the blood supply to the pelvis has been skeletonized as part of the operative procedure, it is exceedingly rare for secondary hemorrhage to occur unless there has been uncontrolled bleeding at the completion of the operation. In these cases, the pelvis usually is packed with multiple gauze packs, with one end exteriorized through the open vagina. Tamponade of the pelvis by means of an umbrella or parachute gauze pack and external ring (see Chapter 19) has been advocated by some when there is persistent venous oozing in the pelvis at the completion of the operation. Pelvic packs should be advanced within 24 to 48 hours and removed shortly thereafter to avoid ascending infection from the vagina. In certain cases of postoperative hemorrhage, selective embolization by invasive radiographic techniques can prevent reoperation.

Neuropathies
Nerve injury with radical hysterectomy was reviewed by Hoffman and coworkers, who reported its infrequent occurrence. The most important injuries are to the femoral, obturator, peroneal, sciatic, genitofemoral, ilioinguinal, iliohypogastric, lateral femoral cutaneous, and pudendal nerves. Awareness of the anatomic location of these nerves in the operative field, careful surgical technique in dissection and securing hemostasis, careful placement of self-retaining retractors, and careful positioning of patients in stirrups prevent most nerve injuries. Fortunately, most nerve injuries are not associated with serious or permanent disability.

Rectum
Although much less frequent than bladder dysfunction, both acute and chronic rectal dysfunction may occur following radical hysterectomy. The rectal dysfunction is characterized by difficulty with defecation and loss of defecation urge. Barnes and associates reported that postoperative anorectal manometry studies were abnormal in all patients studied, suggesting disruption of the spinal reflex arcs controlling rectal emptying, possibly secondary to partial denervation of the rectum. Dietary fiber modifications and rectal stimulation with suppositories over several weeks or months are effective in addressing these problems.
ADJUVANT THERAPY IN CONJUNCTION WITH RADICAL SURGERY

Postoperative Pelvic Irradiation

External-beam radiation therapy is used in the postoperative period as an adjunct to radical abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy in selected cases. It is given selectively to patients considered to be at high risk for persistent disease based on operative findings and careful study of the surgical specimens. Previously, if only one or two lymph nodes show micrometastases, postoperative irradiation may not be given. However, when several nodes are involved, the risk of persistent disease is greater, and postoperative irradiation is usually given; it can be extended as high as T12 if proximal common iliac or paraaortic nodes are involved with metastatic disease. However, nodal metastasis is not the only risk factor for recurrence, and other local tumor-related factors may be indicators of high-risk tumors that may warrant adjuvant radiation therapy.

Sedlis and associates—in a GOG randomized trial of pelvic radiation therapy versus no further therapy in selected patients with stage IB carcinoma of the cervix with negative lymph nodes after radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy—evaluated the benefits and risk of adjuvant pelvic radiation therapy aimed at reducing recurrence in this group of patients. In this study, 277 eligible patients were entered with at least two of the following tumor-related risk factors: greater than one third stromal invasion, cervical lymphatic space involvement, or large clinical tumor dimension. Table 47.13 summarizes the eligibility criteria: Of the 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment. Twenty-one (15%) in 277 patients, 137 were randomized to pelvic radiation therapy and 140 to no further treatment.

Performance of the regimen should be undertaken only with understanding of the toxicities encountered. The data from this randomized trial and the Sedlis trial currently provide practical guidelines for eligibility of patients for adjuvant chemoradiation following primary radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy.

TABLE 47.13

ELIGIBILITY CRITERIA FOR RADIATION THERAPY AFTER RADICAL HYSTERECTOMY IN NODE-NEGATIVE PATIENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLVI</th>
<th>Stromal invasion</th>
<th>Tumor size (cm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>Deep one third</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>Middle one third</td>
<td>≥2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>Superficial one third</td>
<td>≥5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>−</td>
<td>Middle or deep one third</td>
<td>≥4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Postoperative Extended-Field Irradiation or Chemoradiation

In selected cases, with multiple positive pelvic nodes, metastases to common iliac nodes, or aortic nodal metastasis, patients are treated with pelvic and extended-field radiation to include the paraaortic lymph chain. To numerous previous studies can be added two studies from Japan that describe the results of paraaortic nodal irradiation in the treatment of cervical cancer. Inoue and Morita (1988) administered extended-field radiation after extensive surgery to 76 patients with paraaortic nodal metastases. Two patients developed severe intestinal complications that required reoperation. Postoperative extended-field irradiation improved the survival rate of patients with four or more positive nodes from 39% to 69%, as well as the survival rate of patients with unresectable nodes from 0% to 44%. The authors concluded that postoperative extended-field irradiation can control the distant spread by way of lymphatic routes and can increase the survival time of patients. In addition, 86 patients with cervical cancer were treated with paraaortic nodal irradiation by Horii and coworkers (1988). None of the patients developed severe complications from the treatment. Based on their selection criteria for paraaortic nodal irradiation, the authors found a statistically significant improvement in the prognosis for the treated group. In 1987, Jones reported on a collected series of 332 patients with paraaortic lymph node metastases who received extended-field radiation. Twenty-six percent were long-term survivors. Although it is true that most patients with positive paraaortic lymph nodes die of their disease (probably because systemic disease is already present), it is also clear that some patients are curable with extended-field radiation or chemoradiation, especially if all the nodes are involved with only microscopic disease. The surgeon must anticipate a 10% incidence of enteric complications even with doses limited to 5,000 cGy. Again, microscopic metastasis is more likely to be eradicated by a dose of 45 Gy of radiation that can be tolerated by the patient. Patients with paraaortic nodes that contain a large volume of tumor are not likely to be cured, even with a dose of paraaortic radiation that exceeds 5,000 cGy, unless the bulky nodes are excised before the irradiation.

Extended-field chemoradiation also may be used. The GOG reported on a multicenter trial of chemoradiation therapy to evaluate the feasibility of extended-field radiation therapy with 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) and cisplatin, and to determine the progression-free interval, overall survival, and recurrence sites in patients with biopsy-confirmed paraaortic paraaortic lymph node metastases from cervical carcinoma. In all, 86 evaluable stage I to IV patients with aortic metastases were reported. Radiation therapy doses were 4,500 cGy to paraaortic nodes, and concomitant chemotherapy consisted of 5-FU 1,000 mg/m2 per day for 96 hours and cisplatin 50 mg/m2 in weeks 1 and 5. Initial sites of recurrence were pelvic alone, 20.9%; distant metastases only, 31.4%; and pelvic plus distant metastases, 19.5%. The 3-year overall and progression-free survival rates were 39% and 34%, respectively, for the entire group. Overall survival was stage I, 50%; stage II, 39%; and stage III/IVA, 38%.

GOG grade 3 and 4 acute toxicity was gastrointestinal (18.6%) and hematologic (15.1%). Late morbidity actuarial risk of 14% at 4 years was primarily involved rectal damage. The authors concluded that extended-field radiation therapy with 5-FU and cisplatin chemotherapy was feasible in a multicenter clinical trial, that a progression-free survival of 33% at 3 years suggests that a proportion of patients achieve control of advanced pelvic disease, and that not all patients with paraaortic metastases have systemic disease. This points to the importance of assessment and treatment of paraaortic metastases.

Adjuvant Postoperative Chemotherapy

Few studies of adjuvant chemotherapy following radical hysterectomy have been done. Wertheim et al. from Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center (MSKCC) in 1985 reported on a pilot study of adjuvant chemotherapy with cisplatin and bleomycin after radical hysterectomy in patients with cervical cancer at high risk for recurrence after radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy. The continuous disease-free survival rate for the 32 evaluable patients was 84% at a median follow-up time of 28 months. In addition, the complications of this treatment program were not significantly greater than those observed in prior studies using the combination of surgery and adjuvant radiation therapy without chemotherapy. When compared with the results from historical controls in a large series of similar patients at the same institution, the results in this pilot study were encouraging and appeared to justify a randomized prospective clinical trial.

Two randomized trials have attempted to clarify the role of adjuvant postoperative chemotherapy. In 1992, Tattersall and colleagues reported a randomized trial comparing standard pelvic radiation therapy versus three cycles of combination chemotherapy with cisplatin, vinblastine, and bleomycin followed by pelvic radiation therapy. No difference in disease-free or overall survival emerged between the two treatment groups. Relapse was more common in patients with nonsquamous tumors (44%) and in those with metastases in several pelvic lymph nodes.

In 1996, Curtin et al. from MSKCC reported on a prospective multicenter randomized phase III trial of adjuvant chemotherapy versus chemoradiotherapy in patients at high risk for recurrence. The continuous disease-free survival rate for the 32 evaluable patients was 84% at a median follow-up time of 28 months. In addition, the complications of this treatment program were not significantly greater than those observed in prior studies using the combination of surgery and adjuvant radiation therapy without chemotherapy. When compared with the results from historical controls in a large series of similar patients at the same institution, the results in this pilot study were encouraging and appeared to justify a randomized prospective clinical trial.

Adjuvant Postoperative Chemotherapy

Few studies of adjuvant chemotherapy following radical hysterectomy have been done. Wertheim et al. from Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center (MSKCC) in 1985 reported on a pilot study of adjuvant chemotherapy with cisplatin and bleomycin after radical hysterectomy in patients with cervical cancer at high risk for recurrence after radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy. The continuous disease-free survival rate for the 32 evaluable patients was 84% at a median follow-up time of 28 months. In addition, the complications of this treatment program were not significantly greater than those observed in prior studies using the combination of surgery and adjuvant radiation therapy without chemotherapy. When compared with the results from historical controls in a large series of similar patients at the same institution, the results in this pilot study were encouraging and appeared to justify a randomized prospective clinical trial.

Two randomized trials have attempted to clarify the role of adjuvant postoperative chemotherapy. In 1992, Tattersall and colleagues reported a randomized trial comparing standard pelvic radiation therapy versus three cycles of combination chemotherapy with cisplatin, vinblastine, and bleomycin followed by pelvic radiation therapy. No difference in disease-free or overall survival emerged between the two treatment groups. Relapse was more common in patients with nonsquamous tumors (44%) and in those with metastases in several pelvic lymph nodes.

In 1996, Curtin et al. from MSKCC reported on a prospective multicenter randomized phase III trial of adjuvant chemoradiotherapy versus chemoradiotherapy in patients at high risk for recurrence. The continuous disease-free survival rate for the 32 evaluable patients was 84% at a median follow-up time of 28 months. In addition, the complications of this treatment program were not significantly greater than those observed in prior studies using the combination of surgery and adjuvant radiation therapy without chemotherapy. When compared with the results from historical controls in a large series of similar patients at the same institution, the results in this pilot study were encouraging and appeared to justify a randomized prospective clinical trial.
FOLLOW-UP AFTER RADICAL SURGERY FOR CERVICAL CANCER

Despite carefully planned and executed radical surgery for early-stage cervical cancer, 5% to 20% of patients in various series show evidence of recurrent or persistent tumor. About half occur in the first year after treatment. Almost all occur within the first 3 years. Few occur later. Recurrences many years later are extremely rare after primary surgical treatment and are more likely to be seen in patients treated with primary radiation therapy.

Persistent or recurrent disease after primary radical surgery may represent incomplete resection of the central tumor underdetected at operation or by the pathologist’s examination of the surgical specimen. Microscopic metastatic involvement of lymph nodes may be undetected by incomplete pathologic examination or none of these nodes may be left behind by incomplete lymphadenectomy. Viable tumor cells in small numbers may escape by way of lymphatics or vascular channels to distant sites and overcome host resistance. Probably in as many as 10% of patients with persistent disease, recurrence may result from continued growth of unrecognized intraperitoneal spread of tumor.

After the immediate postoperative recovery is completed, patients are scheduled for regular follow-up examinations, which vary depending on circumstances. Patients who are at greater risk for recurrence should be followed especially closely at frequent intervals. These usually are the same patients who have been given postoperative therapy, including patients with metastatic disease in lymph nodes and/or parametria, close surgical margins, large-volume cervical tumors, deep cervical stromal invasion, and lymphatic and/or vascular channel involvement. The frequency of examination varies somewhat from patient to patient. Most patients are seen every 3 months during the first 3 years after primary treatment, every 6 months during the fourth and fifth years, and every 6 months to 1 year thereafter. Patients are instructed to report any new or persistent symptoms (e.g., vaginal bleeding or discharge, leg swelling, discomfort in the pelvis, disconfort or swelling in the legs, difficulty with urination or defecation, enlarged neck or groin nodes) at any time they appear. Krebs and coworkers, however, reported that 25% of their patients did not have symptoms when persistent disease was diagnosed. In the study reported by Larson and coworkers, 37% did not have symptoms.

A follow-up examination should include palpation of the neck for enlarged lymph nodes, abdominal and pelvis examination, and a speculum and bimanual rectovaginal pelvic examination or these nodes may be left behind by incomplete lymphadenectomy. Viable tumor cells in small numbers may escape by way of lymphatics or vascular channels to distant sites and overcome host resistance. Probably in as many as 10% of patients with persistent disease, recurrence may result from continued growth of unrecognized intraperitoneal spread of tumor.

After the immediate postoperative recovery is completed, patients are scheduled for regular follow-up examinations, which vary depending on circumstances. Patients who are at greater risk for recurrence should be followed especially closely at frequent intervals. These usually are the same patients who have been given postoperative therapy, including patients with metastatic disease in lymph nodes and/or parametria, close surgical margins, large-volume cervical tumors, deep cervical stromal invasion, and lymphatic and/or vascular channel involvement. The frequency of examination varies somewhat from patient to patient. Most patients are seen every 3 months during the first 3 years after primary treatment, every 6 months during the fourth and fifth years, and every 6 months to 1 year thereafter. Patients are instructed to report any new or persistent symptoms (e.g., vaginal bleeding or discharge, leg swelling, discomfort in the pelvis, disconfort or swelling in the legs, difficulty with urination or defecation, enlarged neck or groin nodes) at any time they appear. Krebs and coworkers, however, reported that 25% of their patients did not have symptoms when persistent disease was diagnosed. In the study reported by Larson and coworkers, 37% did not have symptoms.

A follow-up examination should include palpation of the neck for enlarged lymph nodes, abdominal and pelvis examination, and a speculum and bimanual rectovaginal pelvic examination or these nodes may be left behind by incomplete lymphadenectomy. Viable tumor cells in small numbers may escape by way of lymphatics or vascular channels to distant sites and overcome host resistance. Probably in as many as 10% of patients with persistent disease, recurrence may result from continued growth of unrecognized intraperitoneal spread of tumor.

After the immediate postoperative recovery is completed, patients are scheduled for regular follow-up examinations, which vary depending on circumstances. Patients who are at greater risk for recurrence should be followed especially closely at frequent intervals. These usually are the same patients who have been given postoperative therapy, including patients with metastatic disease in lymph nodes and/or parametria, close surgical margins, large-volume cervical tumors, deep cervical stromal invasion, and lymphatic and/or vascular channel involvement. The frequency of examination varies somewhat from patient to patient. Most patients are seen every 3 months during the first 3 years after primary treatment, every 6 months during the fourth and fifth years, and every 6 months to 1 year thereafter. Patients are instructed to report any new or persistent symptoms (e.g., vaginal bleeding or discharge, leg swelling, discomfort in the pelvis, disconfort or swelling in the legs, difficulty with urination or defecation, enlarged neck or groin nodes) at any time they appear. Krebs and coworkers, however, reported that 25% of their patients did not have symptoms when persistent disease was diagnosed. In the study reported by Larson and coworkers, 37% did not have symptoms.

A follow-up examination should include palpation of the neck for enlarged lymph nodes, abdominal and pelvis examination, and a speculum and bimanual rectovaginal pelvic examination or these nodes may be left behind by incomplete lymphadenectomy. Viable tumor cells in small numbers may escape by way of lymphatics or vascular channels to distant sites and overcome host resistance. Probably in as many as 10% of patients with persistent disease, recurrence may result from continued growth of unrecognized intraperitoneal spread of tumor.

After the immediate postoperative recovery is completed, patients are scheduled for regular follow-up examinations, which vary depending on circumstances. Patients who are at greater risk for recurrence should be followed especially closely at frequent intervals. These usually are the same patients who have been given postoperative therapy, including patients with metastatic disease in lymph nodes and/or parametria, close surgical margins, large-volume cervical tumors, deep cervical stromal invasion, and lymphatic and/or vascular channel involvement. The frequency of examination varies somewhat from patient to patient. Most patients are seen every 3 months during the first 3 years after primary treatment, every 6 months during the fourth and fifth years, and every 6 months to 1 year thereafter. Patients are instructed to report any new or persistent symptoms (e.g., vaginal bleeding or discharge, leg swelling, discomfort in the pelvis, disconfort or swelling in the legs, difficulty with urination or defecation, enlarged neck or groin nodes) at any time they appear. Krebs and coworkers, however, reported that 25% of their patients did not have symptoms when persistent disease was diagnosed. In the study reported by Larson and coworkers, 37% did not have symptoms.

A follow-up examination should include palpation of the neck for enlarged lymph nodes, abdominal and pelvis examination, and a speculum and bimanual rectovaginal pelvic examination or these nodes may be left behind by incomplete lymphadenectomy. Viable tumor cells in small numbers may escape by way of lymphatics or vascular channels to distant sites and overcome host resistance. Probably in as many as 10% of patients with persistent disease, recurrence may result from continued growth of unrecognized intraperitoneal spread of tumor.

After the immediate postoperative recovery is completed, patients are scheduled for regular follow-up examinations, which vary depending on circumstances. Patients who are at greater risk for recurrence should be followed especially closely at frequent intervals. These usually are the same patients who have been given postoperative therapy, including patients with metastatic disease in lymph nodes and/or parametria, close surgical margins, large-volume cervical tumors, deep cervical stromal invasion, and lymphatic and/or vascular channel involvement. The frequency of examination varies somewhat from patient to patient. Most patients are seen every 3 months during the first 3 years after primary treatment, every 6 months during the fourth and fifth years, and every 6 months to 1 year thereafter. Patients are instructed to report any new or persistent symptoms (e.g., vaginal bleeding or discharge, leg swelling, discomfort in the pelvis, disconfort or swelling in the legs, difficulty with urination or defecation, enlarged neck or groin nodes) at any time they appear. Krebs and coworkers, however, reported that 25% of their patients did not have symptoms when persistent disease was diagnosed. In the study reported by Larson and coworkers, 37% did not have symptoms.
tissue. A squamous cell carcinoma antigen radioimmunoassay kit, developed by Abbott Laboratories (Abbott Park, Illinois), has been tested, but the role of this antigen in the follow-up of patients with cervical carcinoma is yet to be determined.

Although the early detection of persistence is the primary purpose of and justification for follow-up visits, assessment of urinary tract function also is important. Particular attention should be paid to detecting and alleviating a satisfactory voiding pattern. Urinary tract infection should be diagnosed and treated promptly. If uterine stenosis impairs renal function, early intervention can be successful in avoiding nephrectomy. This is more likely to be seen in patients who receive a combination of radical surgery and irradiation as primary treatment.

Rehabilitation of sexual function after surgical therapy for cervical cancer usually is easily done by the patient and her partner but is more difficult if the vagina and paravaginal tissues have received heavy doses of radiation or if the patient has lost ovarian function as a result of treatment. The gynecologic surgeon should inquire about sexual problems and should give advice and permission when needed. Counseling, including instruction in the technique of alternative means of sexual gratification, may be needed. If ovarian function has been lost as a result of treatment, estrogen replacement therapy should be provided, even though symptoms of hypogonadism are not present. If normal ovaries were conserved, their function should be monitored with periodic follicle-stimulating hormone and estradiol levels so that estrogen replacement can be discussed when ovaries cease functioning in future years. There may be other contraindications to estrogen replacement therapy in patients treated for cervical cancer, but a history of treatment for cervical cancer is not one of them.

And finally, patients who have been treated for cervical cancer are at greater risk for developing other primary cancers at different sites, especially if the treatment included irradiation. Detection of other primary cancers should be part of posttreatment follow-up. This subject has been studied by Hoffman and coworkers, Buchler, and others. Axelrod and coworkers reported that 3.9% of patients with invasive cervical cancer had second primaries. In 1987, Arneson and Kao reported that 61 new primary cancers were detected among 718 patients with invasive cervical cancer who had been studied from 1955 to 1979.

### RADIATION THERAPY

Although radical hysterectomy is generally recommended for women with early-stage cervical cancer who can tolerate the surgery, women with Stage IB or more advanced disease are usually treated with radiation therapy. Radiation is also appropriate for women who are poor surgical candidates because of medical conditions or age.

Ionizing radiation can destroy tumor and cure cancer effectively. Radiation therapy for cervical cancer is usually delivered by two techniques. Intracavitary therapy or brachytherapy is administered by placing a radioactive element—such as radium, cesium, or iridium—in close contact with the tumor. This produces a very effective, high-dose local treatment, but the dose rate delivered falls off very sharply as the distance away from the radioactive source increases. This is called “the inverse square law.” The radiation dose delivered to a given point is equal to 1 divided by the square of the distance away from the radiation source (dose = 1/distance^2). Because of the rapid decrease in the dose, it is necessary to treat potential pelvic lymph node metastases and large primary cervical cancer with external beam radiation. This type of radiation was originally produced by modified diagnostic x-ray machines, but now special high-energy linear accelerators or betatrons are used. These machines are capable of delivering a uniform dose of radiation across the whole pelvis or even an extended field to include the paraaortic lymph nodes.

The use of radiation for the treatment of cervical cancer followed very shortly after the discovery of radium by Marie and Pierre Curie. Beginning in 1903, several methods of intracavitary therapy were developed, including the Stockholm technique from the Radiumhemmet; the Paris technique, designed at the Curie Foundation; and the Manchester technique from England. The Stockholm radium technique consisted of high-intensity central irradiation, repeated two or three times within 3 weeks, whereas the Paris technique used low-intensity central irradiation, continuously delivered over 1 week. The Manchester technique, derived from the Paris method, used low-dosage rates that required at least two separate intracavitary insertions of radiation sources. Other radioactive elements, including cesium and iridium, have replaced radium in central brachytherapy for cervical cancer.

The traditional brachytherapy systems for cervical cancer have been low-dose-rate systems delivering 0.4 to 2 Gy per hour, and typical implants have been of 24- to 72-hour durations. More recently, high-dose-rate systems have been employed capable of delivering dose rates of more than 0.2 Gy per minute, thereby allowing treatments of only a few minutes’ duration and adaptable to the outpatient—rather than the inpatient—setting. A comparison of 5-year survival rates of the two systems by clinical stage documents the usefulness of the newer system (Table 47.14).

With the establishment of the roentgen as a defined unit of radiation exposure (Stockholm, 1921), it became possible to measure the quantity of x-ray radiation delivered to the tissues. Although many clinicians are most familiar with the dosing measured in rads, modern therapy is calculated in grays (Gy) [1 Gy = 100 rads, 1 centigray (1 cGy) = 1 rad]. High-energy, external-beam radiation sources, ranging to 25 MeV for the betatron and linear accelerator, have significantly reduced the complication rates after radiation therapy and have improved the cure rates. An intracavitary pelvic dosage derived from the gamma rays of radium or cesium is complementary to the megavoltage external-beam irradiation to ensure tumoricidal dosages to the cervix, broad ligaments, and lateral pelvic walls. Extended fields of external radiation can deliver therapy to common iliac and aortic nodal tissues.

The balance between enough radiation to destroy the tumor and too much radiation (which results in damage to adjacent normal tissues such as the bladder, vagina, or rectum) is sometimes difficult to achieve. It requires using the correct combination of brachytherapy with external radiation therapy. Treatment planning has been enormously improved in recent years because of the integration of imaging techniques (such as CT scanners) with computer programs that can calculate the dose to the tumor volume and adjacent normal tissues, which helps the radiation oncologist maximize the tumor dose while minimizing the damage to nearby organs.

Survival rates of irradiation and primary surgery can be compared by analyzing the reports from patients treated for stage I cervical cancer. Patients treated by irradiation have an average 5-year survival rate essentially identical to the survival rate for those who undergo radical hysterectomy (Table 47.15).

In the United States, radical hysterectomy generally is recommended for women with stage IA2 and IB1 cervical cancer who are good operative risks, especially if they are...
demonstrated an equal cure rate with primary radical surgery and the potential to retain fertility in carefully selected patients. Microscopic approaches are promising, with comparable cure rates and 5-year cure rates for stage IB1 carcinoma of the cervix are more than 90%. Newer laparoscopic approaches are promising, with comparable cure rates and the potential to retain fertility in carefully selected patients.

Radical vaginal trachelectomy has proven safe and effective for premenopausal women with larger tumors and those who are at risk for surgical complications generally are referred for radiation therapy.

**SUMMARY**

Many improvements have been made in the operative technique of the radical hysterectomy and lymphadenectomy since its original description. The incidence of complications after this procedure has decreased during the past 75 years, and the survival rates have increased. The operation has achieved its peak of clinical usefulness during this period and is now considered to be the principal method of treatment of early invasive carcinoma of the cervix. Among the better surgical institutions, the meticulous execution of this operative procedure has reduced the incidence of complications to an acceptable and infrequent occurrence. In medical centers in which the operation is performed well, the 5-year cure rate for stage IB1 carcinoma of the cervix is more than 90%. Newer laparoscopic approaches are promising, with comparable cure rates and the potential to retain fertility in carefully selected patients. Radical vaginal trachelectomy has proven safe and effective for selected patients with small tumors who wish to preserve their fertility.

Comparative studies with primary radiation therapy have demonstrated an equal cure rate with primary radical surgery in the treatment of early-stage disease. However, the complications of irradiation are far more difficult to manage than are those of primary surgery. In young women, when preservation of ovarian function is important, primary surgery is a preferable choice of treatment.

The major limiting factor in the long-term surgical cure of cervical cancer is related to the spread of the disease at the time of initiation of treatment. Historically, in cases in which pelvic lymph nodes were positive for metastatic tumor, the 5-year cure rate was reduced to about 60%. However, numerous recently reported prospective, randomized trials have demonstrated the benefit of concurrent chemotherapy and radiation therapy in various settings. In the management of high-risk patients after radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy, including those with positive nodes, the reported 4-year disease-free survival is 80%.

It is important to understand that it is the individual surgical expertise that offers the highest cure rate and lowest incidence of complications to the patient with invasive carcinoma of the cervix. One of the greatest errors in clinical judgment made by the gynecologist who attempts a radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymph node dissection without adequate surgical training and experience. Unless the pelvic surgeon is performing this type of surgery regularly in a well-staffed medical center with trained assistants, he or she would be well advised to refer the patient to an established cancer center. From the patient's point of view, the initial treatment, whether primary surgery or irradiation, provides the best chance for long-term cure of this disease. It would be to her advantage to have the treatment conducted in the most expert hands because secondary treatment for recurrent disease offers only limited potential long-term cure.

The gynecologic surgeon who becomes thoroughly familiar with the pathology and natural history of cervical cancer, who appreciates the history of the development of radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy as primary treatment of the disease, and who then thoroughly masters the technical details of performing the operation can feel enormous pride in his or her achievement because there is no greater challenge in gynecologic surgery and no greater personal satisfaction than that which comes to those who are able to perform the operation correctly and save a woman from the intense suffering and undignified death that cervical cancer can cause.
Invasive cancer of the cervix is predominantly of squamous histology. Adenocarcinoma is increasingly common and now accounts for up to 20% of the lesions in some series. Adenocarcinoma, clear-cell, and small-cell neuroendocrine histology are seen infrequently. Tumor grade is not prognostically significant.

Although most women with early-stage cancer are asymptomatic, patients with larger tumors may have vaginal discharge, vaginal bleeding (postcoital, tampon), and eventually pelvic or low-back or hip pain. Leg edema and ureteral obstruction are signs of advanced disease.

A careful and thorough staging workup should be done after a diagnosis is made. This evaluation of the extent of disease is very important for treatment planning and prognosis. FIGO staging should be used, but the metastatic workup should not be limited by FIGO's restrictive guidelines.

Patients with microinvasion (stage IA1) are generally treated with cone biopsy or simple hysterectomy. Patients with stage IA2 disease should be treated by radical hysterectomy with pelvic lymphadenectomy. Most of these patients can be adequately treated by a modified radical hysterectomy (class II), but women with larger tumors and lymph-vascular space involvement may benefit from a traditional (class III) radical hysterectomy.

In the United States, most women with stage IB1 and stage IA2 cervical cancer are treated with radical surgery. Women with larger, higher-stage tumors are usually treated with radiation therapy plus adjuvant chemotherapy. Women who are poor surgical risks are also usually treated with radiation ± chemotherapy. The main advantage of surgery compared with radiation is the preservation of ovarian function, which is most advantageous in younger patients. There is also less risk of upper vaginal stenosis and dyspareunia following surgery. Bladder and rectal dysfunction and, rarely, fistulas occur with both surgery and radiation. Surgical complications tend to occur in the perioperative period, whereas complications and side effects from radiation are often delayed and long lasting.

Radical surgery for cervical cancer requires training, experience, and good ancillary support. This means well-trained operating room personnel, surgical assistants, and anesthesiastaff—as well as adequate radiology, intensive care, and consulting physicians—need to be a regular part of the patient care team.

In a radical hysterectomy for stage IB cervical cancer, we do not routinely do a paraaortic lymphadenectomy, but any palpable nodes are removed and sent for frozen section. The surgical procedure is abandoned if aortic lymph node metastases are identified.

Radical hysterectomy for cervical cancer can be done using the classic abdominal approach, a vaginal approach (Schauta), or a total laparoscopic approach. There are advantages and disadvantages to each of these techniques, but overall survival appears to be similar. The basic technique is the same.

In recent years, a fertility-sparing radical trachelectomy with laparoscopic lymphadenectomy has been described by Dargent. Women with stage IA and early IB1 tumors who wish to preserve fertility have been treated successfully, and the cure rates appear to be comparable to more radical surgery. More than 200 successful pregnancies following Dargent's operation have been reported.
Childers JM, Hatch K, Surwit EA. The role of laparoscopic lymphadenectomy.

Chen MD, Spirtos NM, Lim PC. Laparoscopic radical hysterectomy.

Bonney V. The results of 500 cases of Wertheim’s operation for carcinoma of the cervix.

Broders AC. The grading of carcinoma.


Clark JG. A more radical method of performing hysterectomy for cancer of the cervix.


Blythe JG, Hodel KA, Wahl TP. A comparison between peritoneal sheathing of the ureters (Ohkawa technique) and retroperitoneal pelvic suction drainage in the prevention of ureteral damage during radical abdominal hysterectomy.

Bonney V. The results of 500 cases of Wertheim’s operation for carcinoma of the cervix. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1941;44:434.


Broders AC. The grading of carcinoma. Minn Med 1925;8:726.


Chin MD, Myers NM, Lee PC. Laparoscopic radical hysterectomy. JCMJ Gynecol Oncol 2001;1:110.

Choi DS. Laparoscopy in gynecologic malignancies. Oncology (Huntington) 1993;17(16):775.


Crassan WT. New gynecologic cancer staging [editorial]. Gynecol Oncol 1993;51:117.


Creasman WT. New gynecologic cancer staging [editorial]. Gynecol Oncol 1993;51:117.

Creasman WT. New gynecologic cancer staging [editorial]. Gynecol Oncol 1993;51:117.


Wagner HC, Tobias JB, Postema S et al. Tumor diameter and volume assessed by magnetic resonance imaging in the prediction of outcome for invasive cervical cancer. Gynecol Oncol 2003;82:474.


Werther E. Zuir frag die radikolaparoscopie besti intephosphor: Arch Gynakol 1905;61:127.


CHAPTER 48 ■ ENDOMETRIAL CANCER

MARTA ANN CRISPENS

DEFINITIONS

Endometrial cancer staging—Consists of pelvic peritoneal washings, hysterectomy, bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, pelvic and paraaortic lymph node dissection, performed either by laparotomy or by laparoscopy. Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer syndrome (HNPCC)—A hereditary cancer syndrome caused by inactivation of one of several DNA-mismatch repair genes. Patients are at increased risk of colon, endometrial, ovarian, uterine, or small bowel cancers. The lifetime risk of endometrial cancer in women with HNPCC is 40% to 60%. In approximately half of women with HNPCC, the endometrial cancer will occur before the colon cancer.

Type I endometrial cancer—Endometrial cancers that are typically of endometrioid pathology, low grade, and diagnosed at early stage and that have an excellent prognosis. These tumors are typically associated with exposure to unopposed estrogen. They account for approximately 90% of endometrial cancers.

Type II endometrial cancer—Endometrial cancers that are typically high grade and often of papillary serous or clear-cell pathology. They tend to be diagnosed at a later stage, but have a poor prognosis even if diagnosed at an early stage. The management of endometrial cancer has changed significantly over the last 40 to 50 years. During the 1970s, endometrial cancer was clinically staged. Patients with early-stage disease were treated with preoperative packing of the endometrial cavity with radiation sources, Heyman's capsules, and followed by hysterectomy. In 1988, the International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) approved a surgical staging system for endometrial cancer. This acknowledged the shift to surgery as primary therapy with pelvic radiotherapy being used postoperatively as adjuvant therapy for women at increased risk for recurrence. The last decade has seen a gradual move away from the use of adjuvant pelvic radiotherapy in patients who have been fully surgically staged. Laparoscopic surgery is becoming more important in the treatment of this disease.

The Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program of the National Cancer Institute tracks cancer incidence and mortality in the United States. SEER uses a three-tier staging system encompassing localized disease, which is limited to the organ in which the tumor arose; regional disease, which has spread beyond the primary site to nearby organs, tissues, or lymph nodes; and distant disease, which has spread from the primary site to distant organs or tissues. According to SEER data for the years 1993 to 1995, FIGO evaluated the outcomes of 6,260 patients worldwide, of whom 5,694 patients had surgical staging data available. Of these, 3,996 (70%) were stage I, 709 (12%) were stage II, 758 (13%) were stage III, and 231 (4%) were stage IV. The overall 5-year survival for all patients with endometrial cancer was 76.6%. Among surgically staged patients, 5-year survival was 87.4% for patients with stage I disease, 76.3% for patients with stage II disease, 56.6% for patients with stage III disease, and 17.8% for patients with stage IV disease.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

According to American Cancer Society (ACS) estimates, endometrial cancer remains the most common of the gynecologic malignancies in the United States, with 41,200 new cases anticipated in 2006. This makes it the fourth most common cancer occurring in women, behind only breast, lung, and colorectal cancer. It is estimated that there will be 7,350 deaths resulting from endometrial cancer in 2006. That most women with newly diagnosed endometrial cancer can expect a good prognosis is due to the fact that endometrial cancer is usually diagnosed at an early stage, when it is readily treatable with surgery alone. However, there remain a few patients with endometrial cancer who present with high-risk histologic subtypes or advanced-stage disease, in whom the prognosis is more guarded. The current FIGO staging system for endometrial cancer is shown in Table 48.1.

For the years 1993 to 1995, FIGO evaluated the outcomes of 6,260 patients worldwide, of whom 5,694 patients had surgical staging data available. Of these, 3,996 (70%) were stage I, 709 (12%) were stage II, 758 (13%) were stage III, and 231 (4%) were stage IV. The overall 5-year survival for all patients with endometrial cancer was 76.6%. Among surgically staged patients, 5-year survival was 87.4% for patients with stage I disease, 76.3% for patients with stage II disease, 56.6% for patients with stage III disease, and 17.8% for patients with stage IV disease.

The Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program of the National Cancer Institute tracks cancer incidence and mortality in the United States. SEER uses a three-tier staging system encompassing localized disease, which is limited to the organ in which the tumor arose; regional disease, which has spread beyond the primary site to nearby organs, tissues, or lymph nodes; and distant disease, which has spread from the primary site to distant organs or tissues. According to SEER data for the years 1993 to 2002 in the United States, 71% of patients had localized disease, 16% of patients had regional disease, 8% of patients had distant disease, and 4% of patients were unstaged. Overall 5-year survival for patients with localized disease was 96%, for patients with regional disease was 86%, for patients with distant disease was 26%, and for patients with unstaged disease was 57%.

In the United States, there is a significant disparity in the survival of African American women as compared with white women with endometrial cancer. According to SEER data, for the years 1994 to 2003, the age-adjusted total U.S. mortality rate from cancers of the uterus was approximately 7 per 100,000 for African American women, but only about 4 per 100,000 for white women. A number of explanations have been proposed for this racial disparity. Some have proposed...
that it is due to limited access to care for African American women. Others have suggested that there is an increased incidence of high-risk histologic subtypes and potential adverse molecular features among African American women as compared with white women.

In a review of data from the National Cancer Data Base from 1988 to 1994 by Hicks and colleagues, endometrial cancer was diagnosed in 32,107 non-Hispanic white and 3,226 African American women. Despite a lower incidence of endometrial cancer among African American women as compared with white women, African American women had a higher mortality rate. For the years 1988 to 1989, the 5-year overall relative survival rate for African American women in this study was 55%, as compared with 86% for white women. Among African American women, the tumors were generally diagnosed at later stage, were higher grade, and were more likely to be of an aggressive histologic subtype. The authors found that African American women were treated less often at every stage and were less frequently treated surgically than white women. This study strongly suggested that the poorer outcomes of African American women with endometrial cancer were due to racial disparities in treatment.

A subsequent review by Randall and Armstrong also demonstrated that African American women had a higher risk of death from endometrial cancer and were less likely to be treated surgically than white women. Even when controlling for tumor and sociodemographic factors, African American women had a hazard ratio for death from endometrial cancer of 1.8.

Other authors have suggested that the difference in survival between African American and white women is, in part, due to differences in tumor biology. Clifford and associates evaluated the incidence of overexpression of p53, a genetic alteration associated with the more aggressive type II endometrial cancers, in women with stage I endometrial adenocarcinoma. They found that p53 overexpression was three times more common among African American women than in white women. Schimp and coworkers have recently confirmed an increased incidence of p53 overexpression among African American women as compared with white women. Although they found that this correlated with an increased rate of type II endometrial cancers among African American women, they saw no difference in survival between African American and white women when adjusting for tumor type. Finally, in a study performed at the Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Institute, the gene expression profiles of endometrial cancers from African American and white women were compared. The two groups were matched for stage, grade, and histologic subtype. These investigators found no statistically significant difference in the gene expression profiles between these two groups.

The Gynecologic Oncology Group (GOG) has performed a retrospective analysis comparing the outcomes of 169 African American women to 982 white women with stage III, IV, or recurrent endometrial cancer being treated on one of four clinical trials. These trials evaluated the use of various chemotherapy regimens in the treatment of advanced stage or recurrent endometrial cancer. African American women were more likely than white women to have papillary serous histology, stage IV disease, and higher tumor grade. Even though the two groups of patients received similar treatment, survival among African American women was worse, suggesting some contribution of socioeconomic, biologic, or cultural factors in the poorer outcomes of these women. These data taken together suggest that there are both biologic and sociologic issues involved in the survival disparity noted between African American and white women with endometrial cancer.

### RISK FACTORS

There are no clear risk factors for type II endometrial cancers. Type I endometrial cancers are usually related to exposure to unopposed estrogen, whether exogenous or endogenous. Risk factors for type I tumors are summarized in Table 48.2.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIGO STAGING OF CARCINOMA OF THE CORPUS UTERI, 1988</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Histopathology: degree of differentiation**
- Grade 1: 5% or less of a solid growth pattern
- Grade 2: 6%–50% of a solid growth pattern
- Grade 3: More than 50% of a solid growth pattern

**Notable nuclear atypia, inappropriate for the architectural grade, raises the grade of a grade 1 or grade 2 tumor by 1.**

Uterine papillary serous carcinomas and clear-cell carcinomas of the endometrium are always high grade tumors, by definition.

**FIGO**, International Federation of Obstetrics and Gynecology.
Endometrial cancer incidence increases with age, until about 70 years, when rates begin to decline. Living in North America or Northern Europe and higher levels of income and education are associated with an increased risk of endometrial cancer. Endometrial cancer incidence is higher among whites than among African Americans, as already discussed.

Reproductive factors can be associated with an increased risk of endometrial cancer. Endometrial cancer risk is increased in women who are nulliparous, infertile, or have menstrual irregularities. Early onset of menarche or late age at menopause is also associated with an increased risk of endometrial cancer.

Estrogen replacement therapy is clearly associated with an increased risk of endometrial cancer. Several studies have shown either a statistically significant decrease or a nonstatistically significant trend toward a decrease in endometrial cancer risk among users of estrogen. This effect may be due to alterations in estrogen metabolism, a reduction in body weight among smokers, or an earlier age at menopause among smokers. However, smoking cannot be recommended as a chemopreventive measure for endometrial cancer.

Of the following are associated with an increased risk of endometrial cancer: higher socioeconomic status, residence in North America or Northern Europe, and higher levels of income and education. There is no increased risk of endometrial cancer associated with the use of aromatase inhibitors.

The ovaries may be a source of unopposed estrogen in women with anovulatory disorders, such as polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS). In a retrospective study of 128 patients with endometrial cancer, Pillay and colleagues found that among women younger than 50 years old, PCOS was significantly more prevalent among women with endometrial cancer than among normal controls. They observed no relationship between PCOS and endometrial cancer in postmenopausal women. Premenopausal women with PCOS should be counseled on the risk of endometrial cancer and the importance of hormonal therapy to maintain regular menstrual cycles. The optimal regimen of progesterin treatment is unknown. Estrogen-producing tumors, such as granulosa cell tumors of the ovary, may be another source of endogenous, unopposed estrogen.

Obesity is associated with an increased risk of endometrial cancer. Obesity increases circulating estrogens that are due to peripheral conversion of adrenal androgens to estrogens by the aromatase enzyme in adipocytes. Obesity also causes a decrease in serum sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG) levels, leading to an increase in the amount of estrogen available to bind to its receptor. Diabetes has been found to be a risk factor for endometrial cancer independent of obesity. The exact mechanism is unknown but may be due to increased estrogen levels in diabetic women, hyperinsulinemia, or elevated levels of insulinlike growth factor-1 (IGF-I).

Conversely, factors that decrease exposure to unopposed estrogens decrease the risk of endometrial cancer. The Cancer and Steroid Hormone Study demonstrated that 12 months of oral contraceptive use decreased the risk of endometrial cancer by 40% and that the effect persisted for at least 15 years after the cessation of use. Smoking also decreases the risk of endometrial cancer. The exact mechanism is unknown. It may be due to alterations in estrogen metabolism, a reduction in body weight among smokers, or an earlier age at menopause among smokers. However, smoking cannot be recommended as a chemopreventive measure for endometrial cancer.

A number of studies have suggested a protective effect of intrauterine device (IUD) use on the risk of endometrial cancer. A large case-control study of 2,418 women in Shanghai, China, demonstrated an approximately 50% reduction in the risk of endometrial cancer among women who had ever used an IUD. Several other studies have shown either a statistically significant decrease or a nonstatistically significant trend toward a decrease in endometrial cancer risk among users of nonmedicated plastic or copper IUDs. The effect of progestin-containing IUDs is unknown.

Some phytoestrogens, weakly estrogenic compounds found in plants, may also decrease the risk of endometrial cancer. These compounds include the isoflavones, which are found in soybeans, and the lignans, which are found in whole grains, seeds, and dried fruit. There are likely multiple mechanisms by which this effect may occur. First, these compounds stimulate the production of SHBG. Estrogen in the circulation that is bound to SHBG is not available to bind to cellular estrogen receptors, resulting in a decrease in the amount of bioavailable estrogen in the circulation. Phytoestrogens also directly bind to the estrogen receptor, which blocks the binding of other estrogens. Phytoestrogens have such a weak estrogenic effect that this binding effectively decreases the growth and proliferation of estrogen-dependent cells. Finally, phytoestrogens may inhibit the aromatase enzyme in adipose tissue. A study by
Goodman and colleagues found that greater consumption of tofu with or without other soy products was associated with a 30% reduction in endometrial cancer risk. Another retrospective, case-control trial found that consumption of isoflavones and lignans was inversely associated with the risk of endometrial cancer.

More generally, a high-fat diet is associated with an increased risk of endometrial cancer. Conversely, diets rich in fruits and vegetables are associated with a decreased risk of endometrial cancer. Some studies have suggested that exercise may reduce the risk of endometrial cancer, even after controlling for the effects of body mass index and caloric intake.

Endometrial cancer is one of the components of the hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer syndrome (HNPCC). The lifetime risk of endometrial cancer in women with HNPCC is 40% to 60%. This syndrome is caused by inactivation of one of several genes involved in DNA-mismatch repair. A family history of colon, endometrial, ovarian, uterine, or small bowel malignancy should prompt the clinician to consider referral of the patient for genetic counseling and possible genetic testing. Patients with HNPCC may consider chemoprevention with oral contraceptives, increased surveillance with serial endometrial biopsies or transvaginal pelvic ultrasounds, or risk-reducing surgery with hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy.

### PROGNOSTIC FEATURES

The prognostic features for endometrial cancer have been well defined (Table 48.3). These include race, FIGO stage, depth of myometrial invasion, cervical or adnexal involvement, positive pelvic washings, metastasis to pelvic or paraaortic lymph nodes, histologic subtype, tumor grade, presence of lymph-vascular space invasion, and DNA aneuploidy. Of these factors, FIGO stage is the most important. For women with stage I endometrial cancers, prognosis depends primarily on tumor grade, histologic subtype, and depth of myometrial invasion.

Although positive pelvic peritoneal washings result in upstaging of patients to stage IB, the presence of positive pelvic peritoneal washings in the absence of other sites of metastasis probably does not have any adverse prognostic significance. Kasamatsu and colleagues found that in 280 women with surgically staged endometrial cancer, the presence of positive peritoneal cytology alone did not affect patient outcome. Instead, positive peritoneal cytology probably acts only to worsen the adverse prognosis of patients with other sites of metastatic disease. Thus, many patients with positive peritoneal cytology as their only site of metastatic disease do not receive additional treatment postoperatively.

### TABLE 48.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Race</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FIGO stage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depth of myometrial invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor gradea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histologic subtype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adnexal involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive pelvic washings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastases to the pelvic or paraaortic lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymph-vascular space invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA aneuploidy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aDenotes prognostic features that are most important in patients with endometrial cancers confined to the uterus.

### SCREENING FOR ENDOMETRIAL CANCER

The 2006 ACS guidelines for the early detection of cancer recommend that for average-risk, asymptomatic individuals, endometrial cancer screening should consist of education of women at the time of menopause regarding the risks and symptoms of endometrial cancer. Women should be strongly encouraged to report any unexpected bleeding or spotting to their physicians. Likewise, routine screening of asymptomatic women for endometrial cancer or its precursors is not recommended by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG).

Even women at mildly increased risk for endometrial cancer because of a history of unopposed estrogen therapy, tamoxifen use, late menopause, nulliparity, infertility, anovulation, obesity, diabetes, or hypertension do not benefit from routine screening for endometrial cancer, beyond the reporting of symptoms. The ACS recommends that women at high risk for endometrial cancer, such as women known or at substantial risk to be a carrier of an HNPCC mutation, should begin annual testing for endometrial cancer, usually with an endometrial biopsy, at the age of 35. However, this recommendation is based on expert opinion. There is no scientific evidence that this approach will result in earlier diagnosis or improved outcomes for these women.

Rijcken and associates reported on a screening program using annual transvaginal pelvic ultrasonography in 41 women who had known mismatch repair gene mutations or who were members of high-risk families. Seventeen of 179 transvaginal ultrasonograms were abnormal, leading to the performance of an endometrial biopsy. Three patients were found to have complex endometrial hyperplasia with atypia. One patient with stage IB, grade 2 endometrioid endometrial adenocarcinoma was diagnosed when the patient presented with interval reports of vaginal bleeding 8 months after having a normal ultrasound. In another trial, transvaginal pelvic ultrasound was offered to women with or at risk of having HNPCC. Results were available from 269 women with a total of 825.7 years of risk. Two cases of endometrial cancer were diagnosed, but neither was detected by surveillance scanning. Both patients developed abnormal bleeding and were found to have early-stage endometrial cancers. The findings of these two studies emphasize the importance of patient report and prompt physician evaluation of abnormal uterine bleeding for the early diagnosis of endometrial cancer, particularly in high-risk patients.

### EVALUATION OF THE SYMPTOMATIC PATIENT

Abnormal uterine bleeding is the most common presenting symptom of endometrial cancer. In a review of the pathologic findings among women with postmenopausal bleeding, Gredmark and colleagues found that the risk of adenomatous...
endometrial hyperplasia or cancer in a woman with postmenopausal bleeding is approximately 18%. The risk of malignancy increased with increasing age, with the peak incidence of endometrial cancer occurring in women between 65 and 69 years of age. The most common cause of postmenopausal bleeding was endometrial atrophy, which was identified in 50% of the patients. All patients with postmenopausal bleeding should undergo evaluation for possible endometrial cancer.

Endometrial cancer can also occur in premenopausal women and may present with heavy or irregular vaginal bleeding. Any women age 35 or older with abnormal bleeding should have uterine sampling performed. Young women with risk factors for endometrial cancer, such as obesity or anovulation, should also undergo endometrial sampling. A 25-year-old woman who experienced menarche at age 12, is obese, and has polycystic ovarian syndrome will already have experienced more than 10 years of exposure to unopposed estrogen.

There are multiple options for the evaluation of a woman with postmenopausal bleeding. One approach is to perform an office endometrial biopsy. This is typically accomplished with a Pipelle instrument, which is a disposable plastic catheter that can be placed through the cervix into the endometrial cavity for the aspiration of endometrial cells. Its use may occasionally require the placement of a single-toothed tenaculum on the cervix for countertraction or gentle cervical dilatation.

In a metaanalysis comparing endometrial sampling techniques, the Pipelle was found to be the most accurate. Among postmenopausal women, the sensitivity for detection of atypical endometrial hyperplasia was 81% and for the detection of endometrial cancer was 99.6%. The sensitivity of the device for the detection of endometrial cancer among premenopausal women was 91%. The specificity of the Pipelle device for the diagnosis of endometrial hyperplasia or malignancy was 98%. From 0 to 54% of patients will have failure of endometrial sampling. Farrell and coworkers have reported a 20% incidence of uterine pathology after an “insufficient” endometrial biopsy, with 3% of these patients having malignancy.

Another option for the evaluation of postmenopausal bleeding is transvaginal pelvic ultrasound to evaluate the endometrial stripe thickness. Gupta and associates in a metaanalysis found that among postmenopausal women with an endometrial stripe thickness of 5 mm or less, the risk of endometrial pathology was approximately 2%. These patients can be observed. If the patient has an endometrial stripe thickness of greater than 5 mm, she should undergo endometrial sampling.

Dilation and curettage (D&C) in the operating room has been considered the gold standard for endometrial sampling. However, even D&C fails to sample the entire endometrial cavity. Stock and Kanbour performed prehysterectomy D&Cs and found that in approximately 60% of patients, less than half of the endometrium had been sampled. There are limited data regarding the sensitivity and specificity of D&C for the diagnosis of endometrial hyperplasia and malignancy. However, studies have suggested that D&C may have a false-negative rate of as much as 10%. Thus, women with persistent postmenopausal bleeding despite a negative prior workup should undergo reevaluation.

Authors differ as to whether the addition of hysteroscopy improves the accuracy of D&C in the detection of endometrial neoplasia. Hysteroscopy may aid in the identification of occult uterine pathology, such as polyps or submucous myomas, and in the identification of small, focal lesions. Patients with endometrial cancer who undergo hysteroscopy may be more likely to have positive pelvic peritoneal washings than those who do not undergo hysteroscopy. There is currently no evidence that this results in decreased survival.

The most clinically and cost-effective sequence or combination of tests for the evaluation of postmenopausal bleeding has not been defined. Clark and colleagues performed a decision analysis comparing twelve different strategies for the evaluation of postmenopausal bleeding. They found that initial evaluation with either an office endometrial biopsy or a transvaginal pelvic ultrasound, with a normal endometrial stripe thickness being defined as 4 mm or less, was the most cost-effective strategy.

Based on a review of the literature, Moodley and Roberts recommended that transvaginal pelvic ultrasound should be the first step in the evaluation of postmenopausal bleeding, with an endometrial stripe thickness of less than 4 mm being defined as normal. They recommended office endometrial biopsy for those patients with an endometrial stripe thickness of less than 4 mm who were at high risk for endometrial cancer or who had persistent bleeding and for all patients with an endometrial stripe thickness greater than or equal to 4 mm. D&C was reserved for patients in whom office endometrial biopsy could not be successfully performed or resulted in an inadequate sample (Fig. 48.1).

ENDOMETRIAL HYPERPLASIA

Complex atypical hyperplasia of the endometrium is a premalignant condition. Kurman and coworkers found that 29% of patients with complex atypical hyperplasia who went untreated progressed to cancer. Treatment usually consists of hysterectomy with or without bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy. For young women who wish to retain their fertility or patients with comorbid conditions precluding surgery, treatment with systemic progestin or a progestin-containing IUD can be considered. This approach requires close follow-up and appropriate counseling of the patient regarding the risks. A more thorough sampling of the endometrium by D&C will identify endometrial cancer in approximately 42% of patients with a biopsy diagnosis of complex atypical endometrial hyperplasia.
Further, there are case reports describing progression to metastatic disease in patients with complex atypical hyperplasia being treated with progestin.

**SURGICAL STAGING AND TREATMENT**

**Rationale**

Endometrial cancer is surgically staged and treated. The procedure includes thorough exploration of the peritoneal contents, pelvic washings, hysterectomy, bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, and bilateral pelvic and paraaortic lymph node dissection. Laparotomy has been the principle surgical approach to hysterectomy and staging for endometrial cancer. As will be discussed in more detail later in this chapter, the last 10 years have seen the increasing use of laparoscopy for endometrial cancer surgery. Because laparoscopic hysterectomy and lymph node dissection techniques are discussed in detail elsewhere in this textbook, the discussion below will focus on open techniques.

Type I endometrial cancers have three main patterns of spread: by direct extension, to regional lymph nodes, and hematogenously. The most common mechanism of spread for type I endometrial cancer is by direct extension, invading into the myometrium or by extension to the adjacent cervix. Hematogenous metastasis tends to occur late in the course of the disease. Type II endometrial cancers, particularly uterine papillary serous carcinomas, may also metastasize within the peritoneal cavity, similar to ovarian carcinomas.

Endometrial carcinoma spreads through three separate lymphatic pathways: Paracervical and parametrial lymphatics drain to the pelvic lymph nodes, ovarian lymphatics drain to the paraaortic lymph nodes, and round ligament lymphatics drain to the inguinal lymph nodes (Fig. 48.2). The lymphatic drainage of the uterine fundus and cervix directs most of the metastases to the pelvic lymph nodes. Although the paraaortic lymph nodes may be primary metastatic sites via spread through the infundibulopelvic ligament lymphatics, it is rare for an endometrial cancer patient to have isolated paraaortic lymph node metastases without concomitant pelvic lymph node metastases. Boronow and colleagues found that the incidence of isolated paraaortic lymph node metastases was only 1.5%.

GOG performed a large, prospective evaluation of the prognostic features associated with lymph node metastases in patients with apparent early-stage endometrial cancers. The presence of these features define a population of patients with endometrial cancers of intermediate risk, who have an approximately 15% to 20% chance of recurrence. This group included patients with grade 3 tumors with invasion of the inner one third of the myometrium, grade 2 or 3 tumors with invasion of the middle one third of the myometrium, cancer of any grade with invasion of the outer one third of the myometrium, presence of lymph-vascular space invasion, and/or extension to the cervix. Until recently, these patients were often treated with postoperative adjuvant pelvic radiotherapy. Although radiotherapy reduces the risk of pelvic recurrence, it has not been shown to improve survival in these patients.

In the past, the need for surgical staging with pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy was determined based on pre- and intraoperative assessment of tumor grade and depth of invasion, as these are the factors most predictive of the risk of lymph node metastasis. Recently, there has been a shift toward the routine staging of the majority of patients with endometrial cancer. This has occurred for two reasons. First, pre- and intraoperative assessment of tumor stage and grade has been demonstrated to be inaccurate. Second, routine performance of lymphadenectomy in patients with early-stage endometrial cancer has been shown to improve survival. Patients with negative pelvic and paraaortic lymph nodes may be able to avoid pelvic radiotherapy and its attendant morbidity.

Many authors have demonstrated the inaccuracy of pre- and intraoperative evaluation of the stage and grade of endometrial cancers. Eltabakh and colleagues performed a retrospective analysis of 182 women with endometrial cancer who had a preoperative endometrial biopsy showing grade 1 disease. Among these patients, 30% had grade 2 or 3 tumors on final pathology, and 12.6% had stage III or IV disease diagnosed at surgery.

In a retrospective series of 153 patients, Frumovitz and associates have reported on the poor sensitivity and specificity of preoperative endometrial biopsies showing grade 1 disease. Among these patients, 30% had grade 2 or 3 tumors on final pathology, and 12.6% had stage III or IV disease diagnosed at surgery.
had no pelvic lymph nodes sampled. Patients undergoing multiple-site lymph node sampling had a survival of approximately 85%, whereas patients in whom pelvic lymph nodes were not sampled had a survival of approximately 6.5%, a statistically significant difference ($p = 0.002$). This survival advantage for patients with multiple-site lymph node sampling persisted even in a subgroup analysis of patients treated with postoperative pelvic radiotherapy.

The impact of routine surgical staging on the treatment of 181 women with a preoperative diagnosis of grade I endometrioid adenocarcinoma of the endometrium was evaluated by Ben-Shachar and coworkers. Surgical staging was performed in 65% of cases and was omitted only when the disease was apparently confined to the endometrium and the surgical risk was high. High-risk uterine features—including greater than one half myometrial invasion, grade 3 tumors, high-risk histologic variants, and/or cervical extension—were identified in 26% of patients. Lymph node metastases were identified in 3.9% of patients. Overall, the findings of the surgical staging procedure significantly affected postoperative treatment decisions in 29% of patients. This includes 12% of patients who were determined to need adjuvant therapy and 17% of patients who were able to forego external-beam whole-pelvic radiotherapy or chemotherapy. The incidence of severe surgical complications in the surgically staged group was 3.2%.

Pelvic and paraaortic lymph node sampling in patients with endometrial cancer is not associated with a significant increase in surgical morbidity. Homerley and colleagues compared the outcomes of 196 patients undergoing hysterectomy with pelvic and paraaortic lymph node sampling for endometrial cancer with those of 104 patients who underwent hysterectomy alone. They found an increased operative time and higher blood loss among women undergoing lymph node dissection, but no difference in overall complication rates. Other complications were found to be primarily related to other factors, such as patient age and weight. Chuang and associates reported a series of 295 patients with endometrial cancer, 193 (65%) of whom had lymph node sampling performed. They noted two intraoperative injuries (one ureteral transection and one major venous laceration) that apparently were repaired without sequelae. They believed that the information gained from the dissection greatly outweighed the operative risk.

Certain medical problems may alter the safety of the pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy. In patients with medical comorbidities, the small added time and blood loss required to perform bilateral pelvic and paraaortic lymph node sampling may be prohibitive. Additionally, in very obese patients, exposure may be compromised. No attempt at lymph node removal should be undertaken if adequate exposure is not possible.

### Preoperative Assessment and Preparation

As noted above, many patients with endometrial cancer may be older and have multiple medical comorbidities. Thus, preoperative preparation is important. All patients should have a thorough history and physical examination. The history should assess the length and severity of the patient’s bleeding or other presenting symptoms. It should also assess for symptoms of metastatic disease, such as abdominal or pelvic pain, changes in bowel or bladder function, lower extremity pain or swelling, abdominal bloating, early satiety, shortness of breath, or cough. Previous medical history and symptoms suggestive of occult cardiopulmonary disease or other medical illnesses should be ascertained. Careful attention should be paid to the family history, as endometrial cancer may develop before colon cancer in 50% of women with HNPCC.

The physical examination should focus on assessment for supraclavicular and inguinal lymphadenopathy, abdominal distension or fluid wave suggestive of ascites, abdominal masses, and lower extremity edema. On pelvic examination, close attention should be paid to possible vaginal or cervical extension of disease. Uterine size and mobility, the presence of adnexal masses, parametrical extension, and cul-de-sac nodularity should be assessed.

Basic laboratory evaluation should include a hematocrit and type and screen. CA-125 testing is not indicated, except in patients with uterine papillary serous carcinoma. A chest x-ray should be performed both to rule out lung metastases and evaluate for concurrent pulmonary disease. An electrocardiogram will be needed in most patients for preoperative assessment for potential cardiac disease. Extensive preoperative radiographic assessment for metastatic disease with computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), or positron emission tomography (PET) is not indicated, unless the history or physical examination is suggestive of distant disease. This would be most likely to occur in patients with uterine papillary serous or clear-cell carcinomas. Other preoperative testing should be performed as dictated by the patient’s history and physical findings, and may include complete blood count, electrolytes, and assessment of hepatic and renal function. For patients with multiple medical comorbidities, preoperative cardiac, pulmonary, or other medical consultation may be necessary. In such patients, preoperative consultation with the anesthesiologist may also be of benefit.

Once a patient has completed her preoperative evaluation and has been cleared for surgery, she should be counseled regarding her options for therapy, including surgical therapy; primary pelvic radiotherapy, which is usually reserved for patients who are not good candidates for surgery; and no therapy. Patients should be thoroughly counseled on the indications, risks, and benefits of surgery; that there is no guarantee as to outcome; and that further therapy in the form of additional surgery, chemotherapy, or radiotherapy may be necessary. The patient and her family should be given the opportunity to have all of their questions answered. Written informed consent should be signed.
Preoperative preparation of the patient who is to undergo lymphadenectomy should include a mechanical bowel prepara-
tion to decompress the small bowel. Standard preoperative antibiotic prophylaxis for hysterectomy should be used, typ-
ically with cefazolin 1 to 2 g intravenously given 30 minutes before incision. Metronidazole can be used in patients with a
history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin.

The anterior abdominal wall is then incised using a large Richardson retractor. The omentum is
assisted to elevate the anterior abdominal wall at the apex of the incision using a large Richardson retractor. The omentum is
brought into the field and carefully examined for metastatic

The upper abdominal contents—including the ante-

The peritoneal cavity is carefully explored
Next, the

Preoperative preparation of the patient who is to undergo lymphadenectomy should include a mechanical bowel prepa-
ration to decompress the small bowel. Standard preoperative antibiotic prophylaxis for hysterectomy should be used, typ-
ically with cefazolin 1 to 2 g intravenously given 30 minutes before incision. Metronidazole can be used in patients with a
history of immediate hypersensitivity reaction to penicillin.

The anterior abdominal wall is then incised using a large Richardson retractor. The omentum is
assisted to elevate the anterior abdominal wall at the apex of the incision using a large Richardson retractor. The omentum is
brought into the field and carefully examined for metastatic

The upper abdominal contents—including the ante-

The peritoneal cavity is carefully explored
Next, the
retracted anteriorly with a vein retractor. Blunt dissection is crossed over the external iliac artery. The external iliac vein is tally along the superior vesical artery. The inferior margin of iliac vein, and anterior to the hypogastric artery, extending dis- and medial to the external iliac artery, medial to the external node–bearing tissues in the pelvis. This should include the tis- pararectal space is opened by bluntly dissecting between the pubic ramus, staying lateral to the superior vesical artery. The space can be opened by bluntly dissecting the bladder off the opposite side of the dissection. The peritoneum should be incised to be sure that there has been no injury to the surrounding tissue–figure-of-eight sutures. The pelvis is copiously irrigated, and the vagina is tied. Any remaining open vagina is closed with sutured with Heaney sutures, and the suture in the middle of the vagina and to decrease bleeding. The lateral pedicles are vaginal apex between the two clamps and held, to decrease curved scissors. A figure-of-eight suture is placed through the fallopian tubes, and bilateral ovaries—is now amputated with this is best done with a curved Haney clamp.

the ligaments can be clamped, cut, and ligated separately. Often, to the last pedicle so as not clamp the ureter. The uterosacral ligaments can be clamped, cut, and ligated separately. Often, this is best done with a curved Haney clamp.

When the cervicovaginal junction is reached, either a right- angled Zeppelin clamp or a curved Heaney clamp, depending on the size of the cervix and vagina, is used to clamp across the upper vagina from either side, approximately 1 cm below the uterine cervix. This is performed in addition to any bilateral fallopian tubes, and bilateral ovaries—is now amputated with curved scissors. A figure-of-eight suture is placed through the vaginal apex between the two clamps and held, to decrease contamination of the peritoneal cavity with the contents of the vagina and to decrease bleeding. The lateral pedicles are sutured with Heaney sutures, and the suture in the middle of the vagina is tied. Any remaining open vagina is closed with figure-of-eight sutures. The pelvis is copiously irrigated, and hemostasis is assured. The pelvis should be carefully examined to be sure that there has been no injury to the surrounding pelvic organs, particularly the bladder, rectum, and ureters.

Attention can now be turned to the pelvic and paraaortic lymph node dissection. The bowel will need to be packed to the op- postive side of the dissection. The peritoneum should be incised superio- rly along the white line of Toldt. The colon can then be mobilized bluntly anteriorly and medially. The paravesical space can be opened by bluntly dissecting the bladder off the pubic ramus, staying lateral to the superior vesical artery. The pararectal space is opened by bluntly dissecting between the ureter and hypogastric artery.

The colon and ureter can be retracted with a large Deaver retractor, which should be oriented toward the contralateral shoulder. Sharp dissection with Metzenbaum scissors with hemoclips for hemostasis can be used to excise the fatty, lymph node–bearing tissues in the pelvis. This should include the tis- sues anterior and medial to the common iliac artery, anterior and medial to the external iliac artery, medial to the external iliac vein, and anterior to the hypogastric artery, extending dis- talls along the superior hypogastric plexus. The inferior margin of the dissection is the point at which the circumflex iliac vein crosses over the external iliac artery. The external iliac vein is retractored anteriorly with a vein retractor. Blunt dissection is performed within the obturator space to reveal the course of the obturator nerve. The lymph nodes anterior to the obturator nerve are removed.

The left paraaortic lymph node dissection is extended from the level of the bifurcation of the common iliac artery superiority along the lateral aspect of the aorta. Care must be taken not to extend the dissection too far posteriorly, where the lum- bar arteries arise from the aorta. On the right, the paraaortic lymph node dissection is performed superiority, along the ante- rior surface of the superior vena cava. Small, perforating vessels are numerous on both sides, so careful hemostasis as the dis- section proceeds is important. Because paraaortic lymph node metastases from the uterus usually present direct extension from pelvic lymph node metastasis, it is usually necessary to ex- tend the dissection only to the level of the inferior mesenteric artery.

Special Situations

Uterine papillary serous carcinomas behave in a manner sim- ilar to ovarian cancers, demonstrating spread within the peri- toneal cavity even when the primary tumor is confined to the endometrium. Goff and associates evaluated the patterns of spread in patients with noninvasive uterine papillary serous car- cinomas and found that with complete surgical staging, 36% of patients were found to have lymph node metastases and 43% of patients were found to have intraperitoneal metastases. Chan and coworkers found that 25% of patients with noninvasive uterine papillary serous carcinomas had occult omen- tal disease. Thus, staging of patients with uterine papillary serous carcinoma should include hysterectomy with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, peritoneal washings and biopsies, bi- lateral pelvic and paraaortic lymph node dissection, and omen- tectomy, as is typically performed for ovarian cancer.

For patients with stage IB endometrial cancers with a bulky cervix, there is a risk of parametrial extension, as for primary cervical carcinomas. Further, it can sometimes be difficult to distinguish between a primary cervical adenocarcinoma with extension to the cervix versus a primary cervical ade- nocarcinoma that may extend into the lower uterine segment or above. These patients may be treated similarly to cervical cancer patients with a radical hysterectomy and pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy. Five-year survival rates of 90% to 94% have been reported for this treatment strategy.

The alternative is to treat these patients with preopera- tive external beam whole-pelvic radiotherapy and intracavi- try brachytherapy followed by completion hysterectomy with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy. Completion hysterectomy is nec- essary, as radiotherapy is not as effective in treating disease in the uterine corpus as in the uterine cervix. Reisanger and col- leagues reported a 5-year actuarial survival of 82% in patients with endometrial histology treated with this strategy. Patients with high-risk histologic subtypes had only a 38% 5-year actu- arial survival, with a high incidence of recurrence in the upper abdomen.

In patients with stage III or IV endometrial cancers, tumor debulking may be of benefit. Goff and associates reported on 47 patients with stage IV endometrial cancer. Overall median survival for these patients was 12 months. Among those pa- tients who underwent successful cytoreduction, overall median survival was 18 months as compared with 8 months among pa- tients who did not undergo cytoreduction. Similar survival ben- efits have been reported in a series of 55 patients with stage IV endometrial cancer, overall median survival was 31 months for those whose disease could be optimally cytoreduced to less than
or equal to 2 cm residual disease, 12 months for those whose disease was suboptimally cytoreduced, and 3 months for those whose disease was uncontrollable \( p < 0.001 \). Lamber and colleagues also evaluated the efficacy and safety of cytoreductive surgery in patients with stage III and IV endometrial cancer. They excluded patients with uterine papillary serous carcinomas and clear-cell carcinomas. They found that optimal cytoreduction was greater than or equal to 95% in 51% of patients and only 6.7 months for patients with minimal residual disease was possible in 72% of their patients. Overall median survival was 17.8 months for patients undergoing optimal cytoreduction and only 6.7 months for patients who could not be optimally cytoreduced \( p = 0.001 \). Further, they observed that the proportion of patients having major postoperative complications was actually higher among those who were suboptimally cytoreduced as compared with those who were not, 37.5% versus 7.25%, respectively \( p = 0.005 \). Brostow and coworkers evaluated the survival benefit of lymph node debulking among patients with stage IIIC endometrial cancer. All patients had macroscopic spread to pelvic lymph nodes, and approximately 50% had microscopic involvement of the paraaortic lymph nodes. Disease-specific survival was 37.5 months among patients whose involved lymph nodes could be completely resected as compared with 8.8 months among patients whose involved lymph nodes could not be completely resected \( p = 0.006 \).

Role of Laparoscopy

Multiple surgeons have published data demonstrating the feasibility of laparoscopic staging and treatment of endometrial cancer. These studies consistently demonstrate that the laparoscopic approach is associated with significantly decreased blood loss and shorter hospital stays when compared with open laparotomy. Postoperative complication rates of patients undergoing laparoscopy are typically reported as comparable to or lower than those of patients undergoing laparotomy. The overall cost of laparoscopy has been shown to be equal to or lower than that for laparotomy. Although laparoscopy is associated with increased equipment costs, this is balanced by the increased hospital costs of patients undergoing laparotomy. Short-term quality of life has been shown to be improved in patients undergoing laparoscopy, with decreased need for pain medications postoperatively and faster return to work.

Despite the apparent benefits of laparoscopy, gynecologic oncologists in the United States have been slow to embrace this surgical approach. In fact, most of the United States data regarding the use of laparoscopy for the treatment of endometrial cancer comes from a very limited number of surgeons and centers, who have developed special expertise in this technique. For these individuals, operative times are only slightly longer than for laparotomy, and rates of conversion to laparotomy are comparable to or lower than those of patients undergoing laparotomy. The surgeon must choose the approach that allows him or her to best care for the patient with the least risk of complications. Although for certain surgeons this may be laparoscopy, there are many surgeons for whom laparotomy remains the best and safest approach. On the other hand, it is incumbent on all surgeons to continue to advance our skills throughout our surgical careers so that we may provide the most effective and safest surgical management for our patients.

Radiation Therapy

At the present time, radiation therapy is rarely used as the primary or sole treatment modality for women with endometrial cancer. The goal of postoperative radiotherapy in patients with endometrial cancer is to treat the pelvic lymph node beds with external-beam whole-pelvic radiotherapy and upper vagina with vaginal vault brachytherapy. This has been demonstrated to decrease the risk of local recurrence, but not to improve survival. With the increasing use of surgical staging with pelvic and paraaortic lymph node dissection, the use of adjuvant pelvic radiotherapy has decreased.

Patients with low-risk endometrial cancer, stage IA or IB, grade 1 or 2, require no additional treatment postoperatively. The PORTEC trial was a randomized trial of postoperative radiotherapy versus observation in 714 patients with stage IB, grade 2 or 3 and IC, grade 1 or 2 endometrial cancer who had undergone hysterectomy and bilateral oophorectomy. These patients had not undergone lymph node dissection. At 10 years, the pelvic failure rate was 5% in the patients who received pelvic radiotherapy and 14% among
controls (p < 0.0001). However, there was no statistically sig- nificant difference in survival, with an overall survival of 66% among patients who received pelvic radiotherapy and 73% among controls (p = 0.09).

Straughn and colleagues performed a retrospective review of 613 patients with stage I/endometrial cancer who had under- gone comprehensive surgical staging. Among 325 patients with stage IB disease, 121 (38%) patients received pelvic radiation therapy. Fif- teen (5%) of these patients recurred. All nine local recurrences were salvaged. There were 77 patients with stage IC disease, of whom 53 (69%) did not receive pelvic radiotherapy. Four (8%) patients recurred, and three of them were salvaged. For all stage I patients, the 5-year disease-free survival was 93% and overall survival was 98%. These authors concluded that pelvic radiotherapy is not needed in patients who have under- gone comprehensive surgical staging because of the low risk of recurrence and high salvage rate with subsequent therapy.

In a follow-up to this study, Straughn and colleagues sub- sequently evaluated an expanded cohort of 220 patients with stage IC endometrial cancer. Ninety-nine (45%) patients were treated with radiation therapy—either external beam whole pelvic, vaginal cuff brachytherapy, or both—and 121 (55%) patients were observed. There was no statistically significant difference in the recurrence rate between the two groups. The overall 5-year survival was 92% for the patients who received radiotherapy and 90% for those who were observed. There was noted to be an improved 5-year disease-free survival of 93% among the radiated patients as compared with 75% among those who were observed. The overall salvage rate for patients who recurred was 64%.

In a separate report from the PORTEC trial, there were 99 evaluable patients with stage IC, grade 3 endometrial cancers. All of these patients were treated with pelvic radiotherapy. The 5-year disease-free survival for this group was 58%, which is sig- nificantly lower than that found by Straughn and colleagues among patients with stage IC disease. It is important to re- member that patients in the PORTEC trial did not undergo pelvic and paraaortic lymph node dissection. The difference in survival noted is likely largely due to upstaging of patients with microscopic lymph node metastases in the Straughn se- ries. However, it is important to note that the use of pelvic radiotherapy in the PORTEC trial did not salvage these un- staged patients, again suggesting a therapeutic role for pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy. Because of the higher risk of recurrence among patients with stage IC disease, particularly those with grade 3 disease, these patients are often considered for adjuvant postoperative radiotherapy, even after complete surgical staging.

Pelvic radiotherapy does carry a significant risk of compli- cations. Among the randomized patients in the PORTEC trial, 5-year complication rates were 17% in the radiated patients and 9% in the controls, with all severe complications (3%) occurring in the radiated group.

Patients with pelvic and/or paraaortic lymph node meta- statics are usually treated with postoperative radiotherapy di- rected to the involved nodal basins. Nelson and associates reported a 5-year disease-free survival rate of 72% for pa- tients with pelvic lymph node metastases treated with pelvic or whole-abdominal radiotherapy. Rose and coworkers demon- strated improved survival for patients with paraaortic lymph node metastases who were treated with paraaortic radiother- apy as compared with those who were not treated with paraaar- tic irradiation.

The optimum postoperative treatment for patients with uterine papillary serous carcinoma remains controversial. Both whole-abdominal radiotherapy and platinum-based chemotherapy have been used. The prognosis for this disease is poor, and adjuvant therapy is often recommended, even for patients with early-stage disease.

Patients stage I or II endometrial cancers who are not surgically candidates because of medical comorbidities are sometimes treated with primary pelvic radiotherapy. In a review of the ex- perience at Yale from 1973 to 1992, 4.3% of all patients with stage I or II endometrial cancer were defined medically inop- erable and treated with pelvic radiotherapy alone. The 5-year disease-specific survival rate for inoperable patients with stage I disease was 80%, which was significantly less than that for operable patients at 98%. Notably, the overall 5-year survival of medically inoperable patients was only 30%, as compared with 88% for operable patients, demonstrating that many of these patients succumb to their intercurrent medical illnesses. Another treatment option for selected medically ill patients is vaginal hysterectomy.

SYSTEMIC THERAPY

Patients with advanced or recurrent endometrial cancer are of- ten treated with cytotoxic chemotherapy. A recent GOG trial has demonstrated that for patients with stage III or IV endome- trial cancer, chemotherapy with doxorubicin and cisplatin is su- perior to whole-abdominal radiotherapy. Another GOG trial has demonstrated the superiority of doxorubicin, cisplatin, and paclitaxel (TAP) with filgrastim support over doxorubicin and cisplatin. This multiagent regimen was associated with sig- nificant toxicity, including thrombocytopenia, gastrointestinal problems, and neurotoxicity. A current GOG trial compares this regimen with the less toxic combination of carboplatin and paclitaxel.

Hormonal therapy is also an option for patients with advanced-stage disease. Both progestins and tamoxifen have been used. A recent study by Fiorica and coworkers demon- strated a median overall survival of 14 months in patients with advanced endometrial cancer treated with an alternating regi- men of megestrol acetate and tamoxifen. Hormonal therapy tends to work best in patients with grade 1 endometrioid ade- nocarcinomas, which express estrogen and progesterone re- ceptors. Progestational therapy is sometimes used as fertility- conserving surgery in young patients with complex endometrial hyperplasia with atypia or grade 1 endometrial cancers. Close monitoring is required to assure patients are having an appro- priate response. The major side effect of hormonal therapy is thromboembolic disease.

INCIDENTAL DIAGNOSIS OF ENDOMETRIAL CANCER AT HYSTERECTOMY

For patients who undergo hysterectomy and have the unex- pected diagnosis of endometrial cancer, there are three options: observation, reoperation for staging, or pelvic radiotherapy. Treatment decisions need to be individualized and will depend on the risk of nodal or extratumor spread, which may be esti- mated from the tumor grade, depth of invasion, and evidence of lymphadenopathy on CT of the abdomen and pelvis. The patient’s medical status and her willingness to undergo fur- ther surgery or radiotherapy must also be taken into account. Consultation with a gynecologic oncologist should be strongly considered.
The appropriate follow-up for any malignancy is dependent on the pattern of recurrence. This will differ somewhat for type I and type II endometrial cancers. Adders and associates evaluated 779 patients with recurrent endometrial cancer seen at the Norwegian Radium Hospital between 1960 and 1976. Local recurrence was observed in 50%, distant recurrence was observed in 29%, and both local and distant recurrence was observed in 21%. Patients who had received postoperative pelvic radiotherapy were much less likely to recur than those who did not. One third of patients were diagnosed with recurrence within 1 year after the completion of therapy, and two thirds of patients were diagnosed with recurrence within 3 years. There is no single accepted follow-up strategy for patients with endometrial cancer. Physicians have often recommended routine follow-up visits at 3- to 6-month intervals with vaginal cytology at each visit and an annual chest radiograph. Recent studies by multiple groups have demonstrated that this surveillance protocol is neither clinically nor cost effective. These studies demonstrate that 60% to 75% of patients will be symptomatic at the time of recurrence. Most patients with curable recurrences had vaginal bleeding from a vaginal lesion. Curable asymptomatic recurrences were uncommonly detected by routine screening.

Cooper and associates reported that among women with endometrial cancer, 430 Pap tests were required to detect one asymptomatic vaginal recurrence at an additional cost of $15,142 per asymptomatic recurrence detected. Berchuck and colleagues found that the salvage rate for patients with vaginal recurrences diagnosed by vaginal cytology alone was no different than that for women with a visible lesion. They also observed that no patient with an isolated pulmonary recurrence diagnosed by chest radiograph was salvaged. In a similar study from Canada by Shumsky and coworkers, no isolated vaginal recurrence was diagnosed by Pap test alone. Similar to the Duke study, no patients with an isolated pulmonary metastasis diagnosed by chest x-ray was cured.

Despite the limited ability of routine follow-up to improve the outcomes of women with recurrent endometrial cancer, both patients and their physicians continue to favor some form of posttreatment surveillance. As emphasized by Berchuck and colleagues, continuing to be followed for some period of time by her oncologist and having a normal periodic exam likely provides some psychological reassurance to the patient. The focus should be on detection of vaginal recurrences, because most of these patients can be salvaged.

Effective therapy is typically not available for patients who recur at distant sites. Given these observations, routine surveillance for patients with endometrial cancer should include education of patients regarding the symptoms of recurrence, particularly vaginal bleeding, abdominal pain, or back pain, leg swelling, abdominal bloating, cough, or shortness of breath. Symptomatic patients should be instructed to report promptly for evaluation. The recent ACOG Practice Bulletin on the management of endometrial cancer suggests that women with endometrial cancer be seen in follow-up every 3 to 4 months for 2 to 3 years, then every 6 months. Berchuck and colleagues recommend biannual follow-up visits. Most authors agree that patients can return to routine annual well-woman care after 5 years. Each visit should include a thorough review of systems to evaluate for symptoms of recurrence and a focused physical exam, including lymph node survey, abdominal examination, and pelvic examination with speculum exam, bimanual exam, and rectovaginal exam. Routine surveillance with Pap testing and chest radiographs cannot currently be recommended. Other studies should be obtained as dictated by the findings of the patient’s history and physical examination.

Certain groups may require modifications of this follow-up scheme. For example, patients with uterine papillary serous carcinoma are often followed with serial CA-125 determinations, similarly to patients with ovarian cancer. They are much more likely than patients with endometrial cancers to recur with peritoneal carcinomatosis. Patients who have been treated with radiation and/or chemotherapy may need more intensive follow-up to monitor them for long-term complications of their therapy. Again, there are no data to suggest that more intensive follow-up results in improved salvage rates.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

As with all malignancies, the future will see increasing use of molecular staging to identify patients at risk for recurrence. This should allow for greater individualization of therapy. COG is currently conducting a molecular staging study in endometrial cancer. Laparoscopic and robotic surgical techniques will continue to evolve. Complete lymphadenectomy may decrease in importance if sentinel lymph node techniques can be developed, as in melanoma and breast cancer. Chemotherapy is likely to play an increasing role in the therapy of advanced-stage and recurrent disease.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Given that patients with endometrial cancer are often older and have multiple medical comorbidities, preoperative preparation is important. The preoperative history and physical examination should assess both the nature of the patient’s presenting symptom and for occult cardiopulmonary and other medical illnesses. For patients with multiple medical comorbidities, preoperative cardiac, pulmonary, and anesthesiology consultation should be considered. Extensive preoperative assessment for metastatic disease with CT, MRI, or PET is unnecessary.

- When beginning the hysterectomy, the bilateral uterine cornua are grasped with long Kelly or similar clamps, occluding the fallopian tubes. This allows manipulation of the uterus while preventing efflux of malignant cells via the tubes during the course of the hysterectomy. To avoid contaminating the pelvis with malignant cells from the uterus, a tenaculum, Leahy, or other perforating clamp should not be placed on the uterine fundus.

- In clamping the uterine artery and cardinal ligament pedicles, the clamp should be placed just against the cervix and not “rolled off” the cervix. The practicing of rolling the clamp off the cervix may cause the lateral cervix to be caught in the clamp, with risk of leaving residual cervix (and tumor) behind.

- Pre- and intraoperative assessment of tumor stage and grade have been shown to be inaccurate. Pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy has been shown to have a therapeutic effect in patients with endometrial cancer. The results of full staging may change treatment in almost one third of patients. Thus, routine pelvic and paraaortic lymph node dissection should be considered for most patients with endometrial cancer. The use of postoperative,
Laparoscopic hysterectomy and staging has been shown to be feasible for patients with endometrial cancer. Studies evaluating the oncologic outcomes of patients with stage I endometrial endometrial adenocarcinoma at high-risk of recurrence by DIA plex, myometrial invasion, and vascular invasion. Gynecol Oncol 1992;45:233.


Dove Ed, Kals B, Dolf S, et al. The outcome of endometrial carci-

oma surveillance by ultrasound scan in women at risk of hormonal non-


Grumblin S, Winkler M, Karlsson I, et al. Endometrial strip thickness as measured by endovaginal ultrasonography for identifying endometrial abnor-


Hecht D, Mutter GL. Molecular and pathologic aspects of endometrial carcinoma. *Gynecol Oncol* 2006;94:570.


Hubacher D, Grasso DA. Nonoperative benefits of intravenous de-


CHAPTER 49 ■ OVARIAN CANCER: ETIOLOGY, SCREENING, AND SURGERY

JOHN R. VAN NAGELL JR. AND DAVID M. GERSHENSON

DEFINITIONS

BRCA 1 gene—A tumor suppressor gene located on the long (q) arm of chromosome 17. Germline mutations in this gene are responsible for 80% to 90% of hereditary ovarian cancers.

BRCA 2 gene—A tumor suppressor gene located on the long (q) arm of chromosome 13. Germline mutations in this gene are responsible for 15% of hereditary cancers.

Genetic penetrance—The frequency with which patients with a known genetic abnormality demonstrate a pheno-
typic abnormality.

Hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndrome (HBOC)—A syndrome characterized by multiple cases of early-onset (<50 years of age) breast and ovarian cancers. It is the most common of the familial ovarian cancer syndromes, making up 75% to 90% of all hereditary ovarian cancers.

Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer syndrome (HNPCC) or Lynch II syndrome—A syndrome characterized by early-onset (<50 years of age) proximal colon cancer associated with cancers of the ovary and endometrium. It is caused by a mutation in one of several mismatch repair, most commonly MLH1 and MSH2. It makes up approximately 5% to 10% of all hereditary ovarian cancers.

Hereditary site-specific ovarian cancer syndrome (HSSOC)—A syndrome characterized by multiple cases of early-onset (<50 years of age) ovarian cancer. It makes up approximately 5% of all hereditary ovarian cancers.

Intrapertioneal chemotherapy—Cytotoxic chemotherapy given intraperitoneally rather than intravenously. This is usually given via an intraperitoneal catheter in patients who have undergone optimal cytoreductive surgery.

Neoadjuvant chemotherapy—Chemotherapy given before definitive surgery to chemically debulk cancer with the intention of making future surgical efforts more successful and less complicated. Usually, several cycles of chemotherapy are given to women with advanced ovarian cancer who are poor surgical candidates because of their medical condition or perhaps the extent of disease. At the start of therapy, surgical debulking is planned if there is a response to chemotherapy, although surgery may not occur if the patient does not respond to chemotherapy or her medical condition fails to improve.

Optimal cytoreduction—Survival is related to the volume of residual cancer after initial surgery. It is preferable to remove as much tumor as possible. The definition of op-
timal cytoreduction has continued to change over the years and currently means surgical debulking so that the largest residual tumor mass is less than 1.0 or even 0.5 cm in di-
ameter.

Ovarian tumor morphology indexing—A quantitative analysis relating tumor morphology from sonographically generated images to risk of malignancy.

Proteomics—Analysis of the expression, localization, function, and interaction of the proteins expressed by the genetic material of an organism.

Ovarian cancer is the leading cause of death from gynecologic malignancies in the United States. In 2006, more than 20,000 new cases of ovarian cancer was detected and more than 13,000 women would die from the disease. The lifetime risk for ovarian cancer in American women without a family history of the disease is 1 in 70 (1.4%). Because early ovarian cancer produces few specific symptoms, most women present with advanced-stage disease, for which the cost of treatment is high and the prognosis poor. Approximately 90% of malignant ovarian tumors in adults are of epithelial origin followed by sex cord–stromal tumors (6%) and germ-cell tumors (3%). Good surgery is a blend of good judgment and sound surgical tech-
nique. Much of this chapter is devoted to the natural history and results of various surgical and other treatment approaches for ovarian cancer. This background information provides the surgeon with the basis for clinical decision making concerning patient selection, choice of the right operation, and postop-
ervative treatment recommendations. The operative techniques involved in surgery for ovarian cancer are illustrated in many of the other chapters in this text.

INCIDENCE AND RISK FACTORS

The incidence of ovarian cancer is highest in Sweden (19.6/100,000) and the United States (15.4/100,000), and lowest in Japan (10.1/100,000). In the United States, ovarian cancer incidence rates are highest in Caucasian women, inter-
mediate in African American women, and lowest in Native American women.

Factors associated with an increase in ovarian cancer risk are age, nulliparity, and a family history of the disease. Ovarian cancer is rare before the age of 40, increases steadily thereafter, and peeks at ages 65 to 75. Parity is the most important non-

genetic factor affecting risk for ovarian cancer (Table 49.1).

Incidence of ovarian cancer is the leading cause of death from gynecologic malignancies in the United States. In 2006, more than 20,000 new cases of ovarian cancer was detected and more than 13,000 women would die from the disease. The lifetime risk for ovarian cancer in American women without a family history of the disease is 1 in 70 (1.4%). Because early ovarian cancer produces few specific symptoms, most women present with advanced-stage disease, for which the cost of treatment is high and the prognosis poor. Approximately 90% of malignant ovarian tumors in adults are of epithelial origin followed by sex cord–stromal tumors (6%) and germ-cell tumors (3%). Good surgery is a blend of good judgment and sound surgical tech-
nique. Much of this chapter is devoted to the natural history and results of various surgical and other treatment approaches for ovarian cancer. This background information provides the surgeon with the basis for clinical decision making concerning patient selection, choice of the right operation, and postop-
ervative treatment recommendations. The operative techniques involved in surgery for ovarian cancer are illustrated in many of the other chapters in this text.

The incidence of ovarian cancer is highest in Sweden (19.6/100,000) and the United States (15.4/100,000), and lowest in Japan (10.1/100,000). In the United States, ovarian cancer incidence rates are highest in Caucasian women, inter-
mediate in African American women, and lowest in Native American women.

Factors associated with an increase in ovarian cancer risk are age, nulliparity, and a family history of the disease. Ovarian cancer is rare before the age of 40, increases steadily thereafter, and peeks at ages 65 to 75. Parity is the most important non-

genetic factor affecting risk for ovarian cancer (Table 49.1).
According to this theory, risk for epithelial ovarian cancer is related directly to the number of uninterrupted ovulatory cycles. With ovulation, the surface epithelium is ruptured and then undergoes rapid proliferation and repair. At the time of ovulation, there is invagination of the surface epithelium into the underlying stroma forming inclusion cysts. The epithelium lining these inclusion cysts then undergoes neoplastic transformation under the influence of oncogenic factors. The observation that early age of menarche and late menopause are associated with an increase in ovarian cancer risk is consistent with this theory, because both increase the number of ovulatory cycles.

A second theory of ovarian carcinogenesis is the retrograde menstruation hypothesis. According to this hypothesis, retrograde transportation of carcinogens from the uterus and lower genital tract through the fallopian tube to the ovary occurs at the time of menstruation. The protective effect of oral contraceptives is consistent with this hypothesis, because their use has been associated with a reduction in menstrual blood loss and therefore with decreased retrograde menstruation. Conversely, the observed increase in ovarian cancer risk associated with hormone replacement therapy (Table 49.1) may be mediated through the periods of abnormal uterine bleeding that occur with many hormonal regimens. This hypothesis is also supported by the known decrease in ovarian cancer risk in women who have undergone tubal ligation or hysterectomy, because these procedures prevent the ascent of potential oncogenic factors from the lower genital tract to the ovary.

A final hypothesis concerning the genesis of ovarian cancer is that exposure of ovarian epithelium to persistently high levels of pituitary gonadotropins results in neoplastic transformation. Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) has been shown to promote the growth of epithelial ovarian cancer cells in vitro, and this effect can be blocked by luteinizing hormone (LH). A corollary to this hypothesis is that elevated circulating gonadotropin levels promote estrogen biosynthesis in the ovarian stroma, which, in turn, causes abnormal proliferation of the adjacent epithelium. Breast-feeding, which has been reported to lower the risk of ovarian cancer, is associated with reduced serum concentrations of LH and estradiol. Pregnancy and the use of oral contraceptives presumably lower the risk of ovarian cancer by inhibiting prenatal secretion of gonadotropins. This theory also receives support from the observed increased risk of ovarian cancer in women taking fertility drugs because these drugs stimulate ovulation by increasing levels of FSH, particularly in the follicular phase of the cycle.

Perhaps the most important risk factor for epithelial ovarian cancer is a family history of the disease. The estimated odds ratio for the development of ovarian cancer in a woman with one first-degree relative who has ovarian cancer is 3.1 (95% CI = 2.1–4.5). This risk increases even further (OR 4.6 CI = 1.1–18.4) in a woman with two or more primary or secondary relatives who have ovarian cancer. These odds ratios translate to a lifetime risk for ovarian cancer of approximately 5% in a woman with one first-degree relative who has the disease and 7% in a woman with two or more relatives with the disease. It should be mentioned, however, that familial ovarian cancers make up a relatively small proportion of total ovarian cancer cases. Only 5% to 10% of ovarian cancer patients report having a positive family history of the disease.

Three familial ovarian cancer syndromes have been described: hereditary breast–ovarian cancer syndrome (HBOC), hereditary site-specific ovarian cancer syndrome (HSSOC), and the hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer syndrome (HNPCC). HBOC, the most common of the familial syndromes, is characterized by multiple cases of early-onset (<50 years of age) breast and ovarian cancers. This syndrome accounts for 75% to 90% of all hereditary ovarian cancer cases. HSSOC is manifested only by an increase in cases of early-onset ovarian cancer and makes up about 5% of hereditary ovarian cancers. Women with HSSOC are often younger and more commonly have tumors with serous histology than women with sporadic ovarian cancer. HNPCC, or Lynch syndrome type II, is characterized by a predominance of early-onset proximal colon cancer in association with cancers of the endometrium and ovary. HNPCC is often confirmed by a mutation in one of several mismatch-repair genes, in particular MLH1, MSH2, and MSH6. The estimated lifetime risk of ovarian cancer in women with HNPCC...
is 10% to 12%. These three familial ovarian cancer syndromes are inherited by autosomal dominant transmission through ei-
ther maternal or paternal lineage. Therefore, the children of an affected parent have a 50% risk of inheriting the genetic abnor-
mality. Germline mutations in the BRCA1 or BRCA2 gene appear to account for most hereditary ovarian cancers. BRCA1 was
identified in 1994 and is located on the long (q) arm of chro-
omosome 13. BRCA1 is thought to be a tumor suppressor, because
the normal copy of BRCA1 is always deleted in ovarian cancers
that arise in women who inherit a mutant BRCA1 gene. It is
estimated that germline mutations in BRCA1 are responsible for
80% to 90% of hereditary ovarian cancers. BRCA2 was
identified in 1995 and is located on the long (q) arm of chro-
mosome 13. In a recent report from the Breast Cancer Linkage
Consortium, BRCA1 mutations were identified in 81% of ovar-
ian cancer families, whereas BRCA2 mutations were detected
in 14% of those families. Penetrance is variable (range 10%–
50%) from one individual to another, and it is estimated that
the lifetime risk of ovarian cancer is approximately 39% in
BRCA1 carriers and 11% in BRCA2 carriers.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Although most reports indicate that patients with early-stage ovarian cancer have few symptoms, a recent national survey of
1,723 ovarian cancer patients provides evidence that many of
these patients actually had symptoms that they or their primary
healthcare providers ignored. The most common symptoms of pa-
tients with stage I or II ovarian cancer were abdominal bloating
or pain, indigestion, urinary frequency, and constipation. Be-
cause the majority of these patients had nonspecific symptoms, patients were unaware that they could be associated with ovarian cancer. As a result, 22% of patients ignored their symptoms entirely, and 30% reported that the wrong diagnosis was made. A pelvic examination was performed in only two thirds of patients, and 45% had a delay in diagnosis of more than 3 months. Patients with advanced disease commonly reported abdomi-
nal swelling, fatigue, and weight loss. In a subsequent study, four target symptoms were significantly more common in ovar-
ian cancer patients before diagnosis than in age-matched con-
trol patients. These symptoms included abdominal pain (fre-
quency 30%, OR 6.0), abdominal swelling (frequency 16.5%,
OR 30), gastrointestinal symptoms (frequency 8.5%, OR 2.3),
and pelvic pain (frequency 5.4%, OR 4.3). These observations emphasize the need for patient and physician education con-
cerning the possible relationship of rather nonspecific abdomi-
nal symptoms to ovarian cancer. A high index of suspicion, coupled with pelvic ultrasound and CA-125 testing, may lead
to the earlier diagnosis of ovarian cancer in selected patients
with these symptoms. Although vaginal bleeding is not commonly associated with ovarian cancer, it may be present in patients with metastatic involvement of the uterus. Likewise, endometrial hyperplasia and abnormal uterine bleeding can be caused by excess estrogen production from ovarian tumors. The frequency of endometrial hyperplasia from metastatic ovarian cancer is more common on the right side and is usually associated with dullness to percussion and decreased bowel sounds. Finally, any patient with a clinically detected pelvic tumor on pelvic examination should undergo careful palpation of both groins to rule out inguinal lymphadenopathy secondary to metastatic disease.

EARLY DETECTION

It is now well documented that pelvic examination is inaccurate in assessing ovarian size, particularly in women who are post-
menopausal or overweight. Most patients with ovarian cancer present with advanced disease, when survival is limited. As a
result, there has been little improvement in overall prognosis of patients with ovarian cancer over the past 2 decades. According
to data from the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) program database, the ovarian cancer mortality rate has decreased only from 9.3/100,000 in 1989 to 9.0/100,000 in 2002. Recent efforts to increase early detection of ovarian cancer have focused on screening asymptomatic women to de-
tect ovarian cancer when it is still curable.

For screening to be effective, a disease should have (a) a major cause of mortality, (b) a reasonably high prevalence in the screened population, (c) a preclinical phase detectable by the screening test, and (d) be amenable to therapy, such that the survival rate of patients with early-stage disease is significantly higher than that of patients with advanced disease.

Ovarian cancer fulfills many of the prerequisites of a disease that should benefit from screening. First, it is a major cause of mortality in our population. As has been previously mentioned, more than 15,000 patients would die of ovarian cancer in the United States in 2006, making it the fourth most common cause of cancer death in American women. Although the prevalence of ovarian cancer in the general population is not high, it is more common in older women. According to SEER data, the incidence of ovarian cancer is age related and varies from ap-
proximately 20/100,000 in women from 40 to 50 years of age
to 50/100,000 in women 60 to 70 years. It is even higher in women with a family history of the disease.

Knowledge concerning the duration of the preclinical phase of ovarian cancer is limited at best. Histologic transition from benign to borderline or malignant epithelium has been identified by light and electron microscopy in ovarian mu-
cinous and serous cystadenocarcinomas. Likewise, transition from endometriosis to endometrioid ovarian carcinoma has been
documented. These studies suggest that with time, cer-
tain benign ovarian tumors may undergo malignant trans-
formation. Unfortunately, the frequency with which neoplas-
tic transformation occurs in these tumors is unknown and is probably rare. Theoretically, the identification and removal of premalignant ovarian tumors, particularly in postmenopausal women, should decrease the subsequent occurrence of ovarian cancer.

Finally, there is little doubt that early-stage ovarian cancer is significantly more curable than late-stage disease. The 5-year survival of patients with stage I epithelial ovarian cancer is 85% to 90%, despite optimal surgery and combination chemotherapy. It has been estimated that if the 25% of ovarian cancer patients currently diagnosed with stage I tumors could be increased to 75% through early detection, the number of women dying from this disease could be halved.

The statistical definitions used in ovarian cancer screening are illustrated in Table 49.2. Characteristics of an optimal screening test include high sensitivity, high specificity, high posi-
tive predictive value (PPV), and high negative predictive value (NPV). In addition, the test should be easy to perform, time
efficient, and well accepted by patients. An effective screening test should (a) decrease stage at detection, (b) decrease case-
specific mortality, and (c) cause a statistically significant reduc-
tion in site-specific cancer mortality in the screened population.
TABLE 49.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Screen Findings</th>
<th>Statistics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive (TP)</td>
<td>Ovarian cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>False positive (FP)</td>
<td>No ovarian cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>True negative (TN)</td>
<td>Absence of ovarian cancer for 1 year, confirmed by annual screening examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>False negative (FN)</td>
<td>Ovarian cancer within 1 year of normal screen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sensitivity = (TP/TP + FN)
Specificity = (TN/TN + FP)
Positive Predictive Value (PPV) = TP/TP + FP
Negative Predictive Value (NPV) = TN/TN + FN

Finally, the screening test should be cost-effective, such that its use would reduce the overall cost of health care in the screened population.

At present, the two most effective screening methods for ovarian cancer are transvaginal sonography (TVS) and serum CA-125. TVS is usually performed using a standard ultrasound unit with a 5.0-MHz vaginal transducer. A complete screening examination takes 5 to 10 minutes and is painless. Each ovary is measured in three dimensions, and ovarian volume is calculated using the prolate ellipsoid formula (L × H × W × 0.523). An ovarian volume >20 cm³ in premenopausal women or >10 cm³ in postmenopausal women is defined as abnormal. In addition, any solid or papillary projection from the tumor wall is considered abnormal.

A study evaluating ovarian cancer screening using TVS as the initial screening test was initiated at the University of Kentucky Medical Center in 1987. The current screening algorithm used at this center is illustrated in Figure 49.1. A woman with an abnormal screen is scheduled to have a repeat sono-gram in 4 to 6 weeks. A woman with a persisting ovarian tumor at the time of the second screen is scheduled to have a serum CA-125 determination, tumor morphology indexing, color Doppler sonography, and proteomics. Following these studies, laparoscopic tumor removal is recommended. At the time of laparoscopy, the ovarian tumor is placed in an endocatch bag intraabdominally and removed through a midline subumbilical incision (Fig. 49.2). After removal, frozen section histologic examination is performed on all areas suspicious for malignancy. Patients with ovarian cancer on frozen section or patients with obvious metastatic disease at laparoscopy underwent surgical tumor removal. Forty-four of these patients were found to have primary ovarian cancer. Thirty-six (82%) had stage I or II disease, and all were cured after conventional therapy. The 5-year survival of patients with epithelial ovarian cancer detected by screening was 77%, which was significantly higher than that of patients who were not screened. Annual TVS screening was found to decrease stage at detection and reduce case-specific ovarian cancer mortality. The sensitivity of TVS was 0.850, and the specificity was 0.988. However, the PPV of TVS screening in detecting ovarian cancer was only 13.8%. Therefore, approximately eight benign ovarian tumors were removed for every ovarian cancer detected. Additional tests that can increase the PPV of TVS must be developed. One of the adjuvant methods capable of increasing the PPV of TVS screening is morphology indexing. Morphologic characteristics of ovarian tumors are related directly to the risk of malignancy. Unilocular cystic tumors are usually benign, whereas complex ovarian tumors with solid or papillary components are more often malignant. The addition of morphology indexing to TVS
in postmenopausal women has been reported to increase the PPV of sonographic screening.

CA-125 is an antigenic determinant on a high-molecular-weight glycoprotein recognized by a monoclonal antibody, OC-125. Despite repeated attempts, the gene encoding this molecule has not yet been cloned. CA-125 is expressed by epithelial ovarian cancers and is present in highest concentrations on the tumor cell surface. Although serum levels of this marker are elevated (>35 μg/mL) in as high as 80% of patients with advanced ovarian cancer, they are elevated in only 25% to 50% of patients with clinically detected stage I ovarian cancers. Likewise, serum CA-125 is elevated in patients with a number of benign ovarian conditions, such as endometriomas, inflammatory disease of the ovaries, and serous cystadenomas. Finally, this marker has been reported to be increased in a number of nongynecologic cancers, including cancers of the pancreas, breast, colon, and lung. Because many of the benign conditions producing elevated serum marker levels occur in younger women, the specificity of serum CA-125 is highest in postmenopausal women.

The efficacy of serum CA-125 as a screening method for ovarian cancer was evaluated in 22,000 asymptomatic postmenopausal women in England. Forty-one women (0.2%) had elevated (>30 μg/mL) serum CA-125 levels and underwent surgery. Eleven of these patients had ovarian cancer, but seven had advanced disease (stage III or IV). Eight additional patients developed ovarian cancer despite having a normal serum CA-125. A single serum CA-125 determination in this trial had a sensitivity of 58%, a specificity of 98.5%, and a PPV of 2%. When serum CA-125 was used as the initial screening method, early-stage cancers were missed, and stage at detection was not decreased appreciably. Subsequent studies have indicated that a rising trend in serum CA-125 levels over time is more predictive of ovarian cancer than a single elevated marker determination. Nevertheless, the lack of sensitivity of serum CA-125 in detecting early-stage ovarian cancer and its inability to lower stage at detection has limited its value as a screening method.

The challenge for future ovarian cancer detection trials is to combine TVS with serum markers and morphology indexing in an algorithm that improves the sensitivity, specificity, and
When an ovarian tumor has been identified, it is important to establish its risk of malignancy to properly inform the patient and to plan the most appropriate surgical approach. Approximately 10% to 15% of ovarian tumors in premenopausal women, and 40% of ovarian tumors in postmenopausal women, are malignant. Tumor characteristics associated with malignancy include bilaterality, solid composition, fixation in the pelvis on bimanual examination, and increased size (>10 cm diameter). Interestingly, extremely large ovarian tumors are often benign mucinous or serious cystadenomas. Sonographically determined tumor morphology, serum markers, and color Doppler assessment of tumor vascularity also have been used to predict risk of malignancy. A number of studies have concluded that sonographically generated tumor morphology can be used to differentiate benign from malignant ovarian tumors, particularly in postmenopausal women. Unilocular cystic tumors less than 5 cm in diameter have been shown to have an extremely low risk of malignancy, whereas complex ovarian tumors with solid or papillary projections from the cyst wall have a higher risk of malignancy. Bailey and colleagues, for example, reported no cases of malignancy in 256 unilocular cystic ovarian tumors <10 cm in diameter and recommended that these lesions should be followed with periodic TVS rather than proceeding with operative intervention. Conversely, 7 of 135 complex ovarian tumors <10 cm in diameter were malignant. In a subsequent study, more than 3,000 postmenopausal women with unilocular ovarian cysts <10 cm in diameter were followed with TVS at 6-month intervals for an average of 6 years. Approximately 70% of these cysts resolved spontaneously, and no patient developed ovarian cancer. Using this reasoning, morphology indexes have been developed relating risk of malignancy to specific morphologic findings. The morphology index (MI) presently used in the University of Kentucky Ovarian Cancer Screening Trial was published initially by Ueland and colleagues and is illustrated in Figure 49.3. Both morphologic complexity and tumor volume, as calculated by the prolate ellipsoid formula, were related directly to the risk of malignancy. A point scale was constructed within each category, with total points per evaluation varying from 0 to 10. Risk of malignancy was assessed preoperatively in 442 ovarian tumors using this index. Morphologic abnormalities were easy to categorize, and interobserver variation was minimal. Risk of malignancy varied from 0.3% in ovarian tumors with a MI of <5 to 84% in tumors with a MI ≥8. Using a MI ≥5 as indicative of malignancy, the following statistical parameters were observed: sensitivity 0.981, specificity 0.808, PPV 0.409, and NPV 0.997. Therefore, morphologic indexing is a relatively accurate and cost-effective method to predict risk of malignancy in an ovarian tumor.

Serum biomarker levels have also been used both independently and in conjunction with sonographic findings as a means to differentiate benign from malignant ovarian tumors. Alcazar and colleagues obtained serum CA-125 values on 94 patients with suspicious adnexal masses confirmed sonographically. A serum CA-125 value >35 μ/mL was designated as abnormal. Using this criterion, an elevated serum CA-125 in a postmenopausal woman with a sonographically confirmed ovarian tumor had a PPV for malignancy of 80%. The sensitivity and specificity of an elevated serum CA-125 were highest in postmenopausal women. In patients with an elevated serum CA-125, the presence of abnormal ovarian morphology significantly increased the risk of ovarian malignancy. Recent data suggest that serial biomarker levels may be more effective than a single threshold value in distinguishing benign from malignant ovarian tumors. Generally, serum CA-125 values rise over time in patients with ovarian cancer, whereas they remain stable or decrease in patients with benign ovarian tumors. Using a risk calculation based on progressively rising serum CA-125 levels, Skates and colleagues were able to increase the sensitivity of ovarian cancer detection from 62% to 86%. Therefore, serial CA-125 determinations at 2- to 4-week intervals can be helpful in determining risk of malignancy in a sonographically confirmed ovarian tumor.

The use of color flow Doppler as a method to assess risk of malignancy in ovarian tumors is based on observed differences in resistance to blood flow between vessels supplying normal ovarian tissue and those associated with ovarian neoplasia. With tumor angiogenesis, there is an increase in the number and tortuosity of vessels. These vessels lack muscular intima and generally have low impedance to flow. Transvaginal
In Doppler velocimetry, the flow velocity waveform obtained from a target vessel is evaluated according to standard parameters, pulsatility index (PI), and resistive index (RI). PI is calculated according to the formula: $PI = S - D/A$, where $S$ is the maximum Doppler shift frequency, $D$ is the minimum Doppler shift frequency, and $A$ is the mean Doppler shift frequency during the cardiac cycle. RI is calculated according to the formula: $RI = S - D/S$. A PI of $< 0.5$ and an RI of $< 0.4$ are indicative of low impedance to flow and a high risk of malignancy. Using these criteria, Weiner and colleagues reported that vessels supplying ovarian malignancies had an abnormally low PI in 16 of 17 cases. In contrast, the PI of vessels supplying benign ovarian tumors was normal ($\geq 1.0$) in 35 of 36 cases. Other studies have confirmed that the mean PI and RI are lower in malignant and borderline ovarian tumors than in benign ovarian tumors. However, the overlap in values is such that preoperative color Doppler cannot be used as a reliable preoperative indicator of malignancy.

More recently, contrast-enhanced, three-dimensional power Doppler sonography has been shown to improve the visualization and diagnostic evaluation of tumor vascularity in complex adnexal masses. Intravascular contrast agents are used to enhance depiction of tumor vessels by providing a stronger Doppler signal. Image software systems are used to calculate the total power Doppler intensity for a designated region within each tumor. Preliminary studies suggest that this technology can be used to discriminate benign from malignant ovarian tumors. However, these methods are time-consuming and require sophisticated ultrasound equipment and sonographer skill. At present, Doppler flow studies are used as adjunctive tests in ovarian tumors suspected of being malignant on the basis of morphologic criteria or for serum marker patterns.

Proteomic profiling of serum using mass spectrometry (surface-enhanced laser desorption and ionization) also has been proposed as a method to differentiate benign from malignant ovarian tumors. Basically, a population of proteins can be separated and analyzed to identify unique chemical mass and net electrical charge of the individual proteins. The discriminating proteomic pattern formed by a subset of proteins is defined by peak amplitude at key mass/charge positions along the spectrum. In 2002, Pericon and associates, using this technology, reported a proteomic pattern that could discriminate ovarian cancer patients from normal controls or patients with benign gynecologic disease. Included in the ovarian cancer cases were 15 patients with stage I disease. Unfortunately, these initial results have proven difficult to reproduce, and several investigators have concluded that further work needs to be done before proteomic profiling can provide reproducible data from which to identify ovarian cancer.

Perhaps the most clinically valuable study concerning the differentiation of benign and malignant ovarian tumors was reported by Roman and colleagues. These investigators performed a prospective trial to evaluate the efficacy of pelvic examination, tumor markers, transvaginal gray scale sonography, and Doppler flow sonography in predicting ovarian malignancy. These tests were performed on 226 consecutive women before operative removal of an ovarian tumor. Positive findings included fixed or irregular consistency on pelvic examination, tumor markers, transvaginal gray scale sonography, and color Doppler. If all four criteria were positive, the risk of malignancy was 83%. In contrast, if all indicators were negative, 100% of postmenopausal women had benign ovarian tumors. Logistic regression analysis revealed that sonographically determined ovarian morphology and serum CA-125 were the most significant predictors of malignancy in the ovarian tumors of postmenopausal women. Spectral Doppler analysis of PI and RI did not improve diagnostic accuracy because of the overlap in values obtained between benign and malignant ovarian tumors.

Using morphologic indexing and serum markers, it is now possible to assess risk in an ovarian mass and to plan accordingly. A recent analysis of national data has indicated that the highest survival of women with ovarian cancer occurred when a gynecologic oncologist was involved in their care. Therefore, patients with a high risk of ovarian malignancy on preoperative evaluation can be referred directly to a gynecologic oncologist.

**PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION**

Before operative intervention, each patient should undergo a thorough evaluation designed to determine the anatomic location, size, and morphology of the ovarian tumor, as well as possible sites of metastases. In addition, her general medical condition and ability to undergo a major surgical procedure should be established. All patients should undergo routine hematologic and biochemical testing. A chest x-ray provides valuable information concerning cardiac size, as well as the presence of pulmonary metastases or a pleural effusion. An electrocardiogram is indicated in all women older than age 40 or in a patient with specific signs or symptoms of cardiac disease.

As previously mentioned, TVS is the most accurate test in assessing ovarian tumor size and morphology. In selected patients with large ovarian tumors, it may be necessary to perform abdominal sonography as well as vaginal sonography to determine the full extent of the tumor. TVS is also valuable in identifying intrauterine tumor or occult ascites. A patient with an ovarian tumor and vaginal bleeding should undergo further evaluation to rule out coexisting endometrial cancer or a primary uterine cancer with spread to the ovaries. In patients with an ovarian tumor confirmed by TVS, pelvic/abdominal computed tomography (CT) scanning with contrast may identify ureteral obstruction, retroperitoneal lymphadenopathy, omental disease, and peritoneal metastases. In a patient with ascites but no ovarian tumor, liver function studies should be performed to exclude cirrhosis or liver disease. Rarely, the presence of right heart failure and hepatic congestion will cause ascites. Although paracentesis is contraindicated in a patient with an ovarian tumor confirmed on sonography, it may be useful in a patient who presents with ascites and no evidence of an ovarian abnormality. The characteristics of malignant cells present in ascitic fluid may help identify the primary site of intraabdominal malignancy.

Common sites of nongynecologic cancer that spreads to the ovary include gastric malignancy, colonic carcinoma, and breast carcinoma. A careful history of physical examinations should arouse suspicion of other possible primary malignancies. Any such possibilities should be evaluated with appropriate ongoing studies and diagnostic evaluation, possibly including colonoscopy, upper gastrointestinal endoscopy, and/or mammography. A biopsy of a suspicious finding or easily accessible lymph node may clarify the diagnosis.

Finally, serum markers should be obtained according to the age and clinical findings of each patient (Table 49.3). Serum CA-125 and CEA often are elevated in patients with epithelial ovarian cancer, whereas serum alpha-fetoprotein, human chorionic gonadotropin, or lactate dehydrogenase are more
TABLE 49.3
SERUM MARKERS IN OVARIAN CANCER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumor histology</th>
<th>Serum marker</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Epithelial ovarian cancer</td>
<td>CA-125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous cystadenocarcinoma</td>
<td>CEA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endodermal sinus tumor</td>
<td>AFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embryonal cell carcinoma</td>
<td>hCG, AFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choriocarcinoma</td>
<td>hCG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysgerminoma</td>
<td>LDH-1, LDH-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granulosa cell tumor</td>
<td>Inhibin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AFP, alpha-fetoprotein; CEA, carcinoembryonic antigen; hCG, human chorionic gonadotropin; LDH, lactate dehydrogenase.

Commonly increased in younger women with germ-cell ovarian malignancies. Serum inhibin is the most reliable marker in patients with ovarian granulosa cell tumors. The specific marker associated with each type of ovarian cancer is illustrated in Table 49.3. It is important to obtain a baseline serum marker value before surgery so that it can be used to monitor response to therapy.

FIGURE 49.4. Patterns of spread of ovarian cancer.

PATTERNS OF SPREAD

Ovarian cancer spreads by (a) direct extension and exfoliation of tumor cells into the peritoneal cavity, (b) lymphatic metastases to regional and paraaortic lymph nodes, and (c) hematogenous dissemination (Fig. 49.4). The specific pattern of spread depends on the stage, cell type, and histologic differentiation of the tumor.

The earliest method of spread in epithelial ovarian cancer is by exfoliation of tumor cells from the ovarian surface. These cells migrate with the circulation of peritoneal fluid along the surfaces of the pelvic and mesenteric peritoneum. They also are carried cephalad in the paracolic spaces to the omentum and undersurface of the diaphragm. Spread to the right lung occurs through the transdiaphragmatic lymphatics in the right hemidiaphragm, often producing a right pleural effusion. Surface spread to the bowel and bladder is a common finding in advanced-stage ovarian cancer, but involvement of the bowel lumen or bladder mucosa is rare.

Lymphatic drainage from the ovary follows two pathways. The first involves lateral spread through the broad ligament to the pelvic lymph nodes. In patients with advanced-stage disease, there may be retrograde dissemination via the lymphatics of this pathway to the round ligament to the inguinal lymph
nodes. The second pathway of efferent lymphatic drainage follows the ovarian vein to the paracaval and paraaortic lymph nodes. Metastatic spread of ovarian cancer to lymph nodes is well documented even in early-stage disease (Table 49.4) and confirms that there may be separate pathways of dissemination to the pelvic and paraaortic lymph nodes. Caos and coworkers, for example, reported that 14 of 96 patients (15%) with disease visibly confined to one ovary had microscopic lymph node metastases. All 14 patients with nodal spread had poorly differentiated tumors. Isolated ipsilateral lymph node metastases occurred in five patients, and isolated contralateral lymph node metastases occurred in three patients. Pelvic lymph nodes were involved in six patients, paraaortic lymph nodes in five patients, and both in three patients. As expected, the frequency of lymph node metastases is related to stage of disease, cell type, and histologic differentiation of the tumor. Chen and Lee, for example, reported that the frequency of pelvic lymph node metastases increased from 9% in patients with clinically apparent stage I ovarian cancer to 35% in patients with stage IV disease. Similarly, the frequency of paraaortic lymph node involvement increased from 18% in patients with clinically apparent stage I disease to 67% in patients with stage IV disease. These findings are similar to those of Burghardt and colleagues, who noted lymph node metastases in 74% of patients with stage III or IV ovarian cancer. The incidence of lymph node metastases increased from 20% in well-differentiated ovarian cancers to 63% in poorly differentiated tumors and was higher in serious ovarian malignancies than in mucinous or endometrioid cancers.

Hematogenous spread of ovarian cancer to the parenchyma of the liver or lung is fortunately quite rare (<5%) at the time of initial diagnosis, but may occur, particularly in poorly differentiated tumors that become refractory to combination chemotherapy.

EXAMINATION OF OVARIAN TUMOR SPECIMENS AND HISTOLOGIC CLASSIFICATION

Ovarian tumor specimens should be described, fixed, and sectioned according to the guidelines established by the College of American Pathologists (CAP). Tumor should be classified histologically according to the World Health Organization classification and nomenclature of ovarian tumors (Table 49.5). Although there are numerous grading systems for ovarian cancers that use both architectural and nuclear features, it is recommended that four grades be used, with grade 4 (undifferentiated) applied to tumors with minimal or no differentiation. Recommendations concerning the use of special staining techniques or flow cytometry in establishing the correct histologic diagnosis of ovarian tumors are made in the CAP report. Immunohistochemical staining of ovarian tumors for cytokeratin 7 (CK7) and cytokeratin 20 (CK20) is helpful in differentiating primary mucinous ovarian carcinoma from colorectal adenocarcinoma that has metastasized to the ovary. Colorectal adenocarcinomas usually stain positively for CK20 and negatively for CK7. In contrast, ovarian carcinomas usually stain negatively for CK20 and positively for CK7.

### TABLE 49.4
LYMPH NODAL METASTASES IN PATIENTS WITH CLINICALLY APPARENT STAGE I EPITHELIAL OVARIAN CANCER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Pelvic lymph node metastases</th>
<th>Para-aortic lymph node metastases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Onda et al. (1996)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>6 (18%)</td>
<td>5 (13%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caruso et al. (1997)</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>1 (4%)</td>
<td>0 (0%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burghardt et al. (1991)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>3 (15%)</td>
<td>1 (5%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solas et al. (1997)</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>1 (2%)</td>
<td>1 (2%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chen and Lee (1983)</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1 (9%)</td>
<td>1 (9%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li et al. (2000)</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>9 (10%)</td>
<td>8 (9%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>21 (9%)</td>
<td>17 (7%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Patterns of Care in Ovarian Cancer Surgery

All patients with suspected ovarian cancer should be referred to a gynecologic oncologist for evaluation and possible surgery. Unfortunately, in both Europe and the United States (where most of the outcomes studies have been conducted), too high a proportion of women with ovarian cancer are receiving substandard care. In a Norwegian study, Tingstad and colleagues found that in advanced-stage ovarian cancer, patients who underwent primary surgery at teaching hospitals had significantly improved survival time compared with controls who underwent primary surgery at nonteaching hospitals. Two regional-based studies—one from Utah and the other from Maryland—have also indicated that a significant proportion of women with ovarian cancer are not receiving optimal treatment. Cancer and associates found that less than 50% of women with ovarian cancer are receiving substandard care. In a Norwegian study, Tingstad and colleagues found that in advanced-stage ovarian cancer, patients who underwent primary surgery at teaching hospitals had significantly improved survival time compared with controls who underwent primary surgery at nonteaching hospitals. Two regional-based studies—one from Utah and the other from Maryland—have also indicated that a significant proportion of women with ovarian cancer are not receiving optimal treatment. Cancer and associates found that less than 50% of women with ovarian cancer are receiving substandard care. In a Norwegian study, Tingstad and colleagues found that in advanced-stage ovarian cancer, patients who underwent primary surgery at teaching hospitals had significantly improved survival time compared with controls who underwent primary surgery at nonteaching hospitals. Two regional-based studies—one from Utah and the other from Maryland—have also indicated that a significant proportion of women with ovarian cancer are not receiving optimal treatment.
## TABLE 49.5
WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION HISTOLOGICAL CLASSIFICATION OF OVARIAN TUMORS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surface epithelial-stromal tumors</th>
<th>Squamous cell tumors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Serous tumors</td>
<td>Squamous cell carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant</td>
<td>Epidermoid cyst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Mixed epithelial tumors (specify components)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borderline tumor</td>
<td>Malignant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillary cystic tumor</td>
<td>Borderline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface papillary tumor</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenofibroma, cystadenofibroma</td>
<td>Undifferentiated and unclassified tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign</td>
<td>Undifferentiated carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystadenoma</td>
<td>Adenocarcinoma, not otherwise specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface papilloma</td>
<td>Sex cord-stromal tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenofibroma and cystadenofibroma</td>
<td>Granulosa-stromal cell tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous tumors</td>
<td>Granulosa cell tumor group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant</td>
<td>Adult granulosa cell tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Juvenile granulosa cell tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borderline tumor</td>
<td>Thecoma-fibroma group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intestinal type</td>
<td>Thecoma, not otherwise specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endocervicallike</td>
<td>Typical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign</td>
<td>Luteinized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystadenoma</td>
<td>Fibroma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenofibroma and cystadenofibroma</td>
<td>Cellular fibroma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous cystic tumor with pseudomyxoma peritonei</td>
<td>Fibrosarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endometrioid tumors, including variants with squamous differentiation</td>
<td>Stromal tumor with mixed sex cord elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant</td>
<td>Sclerosing stromal tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma, not otherwise specified</td>
<td>Signet-ring stromal tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinofibroma (malignant adenofibroma)</td>
<td>Unclassified (fibrothecoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borderline tumor</td>
<td>Sex cord-stromal cell tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic tumor</td>
<td>Sertoli-Leydig cell tumor group (androblastomas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenofibroma and cystadenofibroma</td>
<td>Well differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign</td>
<td>Of intermediate differentiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystadenoma</td>
<td>Variant with heterologous elements (specify type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenofibroma and cystadenofibroma</td>
<td>Poorly differentiated (sarcomatoid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear-cell tumors</td>
<td>Variant with heterologous elements (specify type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant</td>
<td>Reinforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Variant with heterologous elements (specify type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinofibroma (malignant adenofibroma)</td>
<td>Sertoli cell tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borderline tumor</td>
<td>Stromal-Leiomyosarcoma cell tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic tumor</td>
<td>Sex cord-stromal tumors of mixed or unclassified cell types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenofibroma and cystadenofibroma</td>
<td>Sex cord tumor with annular tubules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign</td>
<td>Gynandroblastoma (specify components)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystadenoma</td>
<td>Sex cord-stromal tumor, unclassified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenofibroma and cystadenofibroma</td>
<td>Steroid cell tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transitional cell tumors</td>
<td>Stromal luteoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant</td>
<td>Leydig cell tumor group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Hilus cell tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinofibroma (malignant adenofibroma)</td>
<td>Leydig cell tumor, nonhilar type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic tumor</td>
<td>Leydig cell tumor, nonhilar type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenofibroma and cystadenofibroma</td>
<td>Leydig cell tumor, not otherwise specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign</td>
<td>Steroid cell tumor, not otherwise specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystadenofibroma</td>
<td>Well differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenofibroma and cystadenofibroma</td>
<td>Malignant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germ-cell tumors</td>
<td>Germ-cell tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primitive germ-cell tumors</td>
<td>Polyembryoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysgerminoma</td>
<td>Polyembryoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yolk sac tumor</td>
<td>Polyembryoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polysaccharid vitelline tumor</td>
<td>Polyembryoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glandular variant</td>
<td>Polyembryoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatoid variant</td>
<td>Polyembryoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embryonal carcinoma</td>
<td>Polyembryoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyembryoma</td>
<td>Polyembryoma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 49.5
CONTINUED

| Nongestational choriocarcinoma |
| Mixed germ-cell tumor (specify components) |
| Biphasic or triphasic teratoma |
| Immature teratoma |
| Mature teratoma |
| Solid |
| Cystic |
| Dermoid cyst |
| Teratoma (homunculus) |
| Monodermal teratoma and somatic-type tumors associated with |
| dermoid cysts |
| Thyroid tumor group |
| Struma ovarii |
| Benign |
| Malignant (specify type) |
| Carcinosarcoma group |
| In situ |
| Tubular |
| Macular |
| Strumal carcinoma |
| Mixed |
| Neuroendocrine tumor group |
| Ependymoma |
| Primitive neuroectodermal tumor |
| Medulloepithelioma |
| Glioblastoma multiforme |
| Others |
| Carcinoma group |
| Squamous cell carcinoma |
| Adenocarcinoma |
| Others |
| Melanocytic group |
| Malignant melanoma |
| Spindle cell melanoma |
| Sarcoma group (specify type) |
| Sebaceous tumor group |
| Sebaceous adenoma |
| Sebaceous carcinoma |
| Primary-type tumor group |
| Retinal anlage tumor group |
| Others |

Germ-cell sex cord–stromal tumors
Gonadoblastoma
Variant with malignant germ-cell tumor
Mixed germ-cell sex cord–stromal tumor
Variant with malignant germ-cell tumor
Tumors of the rete ovarii
Adenocarcinoma
Adenoma
Cystadenoma
Cystadenolymphoma
Miscellaneous tumors
Small-cell carcinoma, hypercalcemic type
Small-cell carcinoma, pulmonary type
Large-cell neuroendocrine carcinoma
Hepatoid carcinoma
Primary ovarian mesothelioma
Wilms tumor
Gestational choriocarcinoma
Hydatidiform mole
Adenoid cystic carcinoma
Basal cell tumor
Ovarian wolffian tumor
Parangangioma
Mesothelioma
Soft tissue tumors not specific to the ovary
Others
Tumefactive conditions
Luteoma of pregnancy
Stromal hyperthecosis
Stromal hyperplasia
Fibromatosis
Massive ovarian edema
Others
Lymphoid and hematopoietic tumors
Malignant lymphoma (specify type)
Leukemia (specify type)
Plasmacytoma
Secondary tumors

advanced-stage disease, aggressive cytoreductive procedures, such as intestinal resection and diaphragmatic debulking, were lower in low-volume hospitals. The totality of this information clearly underscores the need for improvement in patterns of referral.

Early-Stage Ovarian Cancer

Comprehensive Surgical Staging

Ovarian cancer is staged according to the International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) Staging System (Table 49.6) and is based on a thorough surgical evaluation of the primary ovarian tumor and its potential sites of metastatic spread (Table 49.7). Should preoperative evaluation suggest an area of extraabdominal or intrahepatic metastasis, fine needle aspiration or needle biopsy of this location should be performed. Because ovarian cancer frequently spreads to upper abdominal structures, a vertical midline abdominal incision is recommended. This incision should be extended high enough to remove the primary ovarian tumor and to evaluate the stomach, omentum, liver, and undersurface of the diaphragm. Rupture of a cystic ovarian malignancy is associated with a poorer prognosis, so the incision should be sufficient to allow excision of the primary tumor with its capsule intact. Once the abdomen has been opened, the following steps should be performed for adequate surgical staging:

1. The volume of ascitic fluid should be recorded, and a minimum of 25 mL should be sent for cytologic evaluation.

2. In the absence of ascites, separate saline washings should be obtained from the (a) pelvic cul-de-sac, (b) right paracolic space, (c) left paracolic space, and (d) undersurface of each hemidiaphragm. Approximately 100 mL of saline should
TABLE 49.6
FIGO STAGE GROUPING FOR PRIMARY CARCINOMA OF THE OVARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>Growth limited to the ovaries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA</td>
<td>Growth limited to one ovary; no ascites. No tumor on the external surface; capsule intact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IB</td>
<td>Growth limited to both ovaries; no ascites. No tumor on the external surface; capsule intact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IC*</td>
<td>Tumor either stage IA or IB but with tumor on the surface of one or both ovaries or with capsule ruptured or with ascites present containing malignant cells or with positive peritoneal washings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>Growth involving one or both ovaries with pelvic extension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>Extension and/or metastases to the uterus and/or tubes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>Extension to other pelvic tissues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIC*</td>
<td>Tumor either stage IIA or IIB but with tumor on the surface of one or both ovaries or with capsule(s) ruptured or with ascites present containing malignant cells or with positive peritoneal washings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>Tumor involving one or both ovaries with peritoneal implants outside the pelvis and/or positive retroperitoneal or inguinal nodes. Superficial liver metastasis equals stage III. Tumor is limited to the true pelvis but with histologically verified malignant extension to small bowel or omentum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>Tumor grossly limited to the true pelvis with negative nodes but with histologically confirmed microscopic seeding of abdominal peritoneal surfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>Tumor of one or both ovaries with histologically confirmed implants of abdominal peritoneal surfaces, none exceeding 2 cm in diameter. Nodes negative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>Abdominal implants &gt;2 cm in diameter and/or positive retroperitoneal or inguinal nodes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Growth involving one or both ovaries with distant metastasis. If pleural effusion is present, there must be positive cytologic test results to allot a case to stage IV.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*FIGO, International Federation of Obstetrics and Gynecology.

To evaluate the impact on prognosis of the different criteria for allotting cases to stage IC or IIC, it would be of value to know whether rupture of the capsule was spontaneous or caused by the surgeon and whether the source of malignant cells detected was peritoneal washings or ascites.

TABLE 49.7
SURGICAL STAGING OF APPARENT EARLY-STAGE OVARIAN CANCER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vertical midline incision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evacuation of ascites or multiple cytologic washings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete abdominal inspection and palpation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resection of ovaries, fallopian tubes, and uterus*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omentectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random peritoneal biopsies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retroperitoneal lymph node sampling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Exceptions may be made in selected patients who wish to preserve fertility.

be instilled in each of these areas, recovered, and sent for cytologic evaluation.

3. The ovarian tumor should be inspected, with particular attention to the presence of papillary excrescences on the surface or rupture of the capsule. The contralateral ovary and uterus should be examined for the presence of metastatic tumor. The pathways of ovarian tumor should be removed and sent for frozen-section examination. Removal of the opposite ovary and/or uterus are dependent on several factors and are discussed on the following pages.

4. Careful inspection and palpation of the peritoneal surfaces and intraabdominal viscera should be performed. This evaluation should be approached in a systematic fashion, beginning with the peritoneum of the cul-de-sac and small bowel mesentry. Inspection should continue with the ascending colon, liver, omentum, undersurface of the right and left hemidiaphragms, and stomach. Finally, the transverse colon, spleen, descending colon, and bladder peritoneum should be evaluated.

5. All areas suspicious for malignancy should be biopsied. In the absence of visible disease, biopsies should be taken of the cul-de-sac peritoneum, bladder peritoneum, both lateral pelvic walls, paracolic peritoneum bilaterally, and undersurface of the right hemidiaphragm. An infracolic omental biopsy should be performed in patients with epithelial ovarian cancer and an omental wedge biopsy taken in patients with germ-cell or stromal tumors. Appendectomy should be performed in all patients with mucinous epithelial cancers involving the ovary. Primary appendiceal cancers, although rare, commonly spread to the ovaries and usually require right hemicolectomy as part of initial surgical staging.
6. As has been mentioned, ovarian cancer commonly spreads to both pelvic and paraaortic lymph nodes. Some patients with early-stage ovarian cancer have paraaortic lymph node metastases in the absence of pelvic lymph node spread. Therefore, these lymph node groups should be sampled separately in all patients. It is important that sampling include lymph nodes on the opposite side of the primary ovarian tumor, because isolated contralateral spread has been reported. For this reason, it should be emphasized that operative findings present at staging laparotomy must be carefully documented. Prognosis is related to the site and volume of metastatic tumor spread, as well as the amount of residual disease remaining after surgical debulking. Important data concerning the location and size of tumor metastases are often lost if the details concerning operative staging are not recorded.

7. Fertility-Sparing Surgery

Although the majority of ovarian malignancies occur in older women for whom bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy and hysterectomy are standard treatment, a significant subset of patients is young and can be managed more conservatively (Table 49.8). Conservative management is used here to denote surgery that preserves reproductive potential without compromising curability. With some exceptions, such a strategy may be applicable for women younger than 40 years who wish to bear children.

When contemplating surgery on a young patient with a suspected ovarian malignancy, it is important to discuss with her all possible operative findings and procedures and the long-term implications of the various options. If the patient is a child, the parents need to clearly understand this information. In most instances, young patients have their initial surgery done outside major university hospitals or cancer centers. Common errors in surgical management include incomplete surgical staging and unnecessary bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy. In addition, some patients are mismanaged because of an error in the pathologic diagnosis of a rare ovarian neoplasm.

The optimal candidate for conservative surgical management is a young patient who has stage IA disease. If, on initial inspection, the suspected cancer is confined to one ovary, then unilateral salpingo-oophorectomy is appropriate. If the mass is thought to be benign, then ovarian cystectomy may be preferable. The specimen should be sent for frozen section examination. If malignancy is diagnosed, then appropriate staging biopsies should be performed, as discussed. If the contralateral ovary appears normal, it is recommended that it not be biopsied to avoid potential infertility caused by peritoneal adhesions or ovarian failure.

One should not rely too heavily on frozen section examination in making the decision to perform a hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy. If the histologic diagnosis is in question, it is always preferable to wait for permanent section results for a young patient, even if this requires a repeat surgery. The advent of in vitro fertilization technology should also have an impact on intraoperative management. Convention has dictated that if a bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy is necessary, a hysterectomy should also be performed. However, current technology for donor oocyte transfer and hormonal support allows a woman without ovaries to sustain a normal intrauterine pregnancy. Similarly, if the uterus and one ovary are resected because of tumor involvement, current techniques allow retrieval of oocytes from the patient’s remaining ovary, in vitro fertilization with sperm from her male partner, and implantation of the embryo into a surrogate’s uterus. Therefore, traditional guidelines concerning surgical management of ovarian cancer may no longer be applicable in selected young patients.

Approximately 50% to 70% of malignant germ cell tumors are stage I. Except for dysgerminoma, in which the incidence of bilaterality is 10% to 15%, bilateral ovarian tumors are exceedingly rare. Such a finding almost always signifies advanced disease with metastatic spread from one ovary to the other or a mixed germ-cell tumor with a dysgerminoma component. Benign cystic teratoma is associated with malignant germ-cell tumors in 5% to 10% of cases and may occur in one or both ovaries. Therefore, unilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, preserving the contralateral ovary and uterus—combined with surgical staging—can be performed in most patients with these neoplasms, even with advanced-stage disease. If the contralateral ovary is enlarged, most likely it represents a benign cystic teratoma that can be managed with an ovarian cystectomy only. With the exception of stage IA pure dysgerminoma or stage IA, grade 1 immature teratoma, these patients require postoperative chemotherapy consisting of the combination of bleomycin, etoposide, and cisplatin (BEP). Several series have documented normal reproductive function in at least 80% of patients as well as pregnancies following fertility-sparing surgery and chemotherapy.

In the past few years, some investigators have advocated the practice of surgery alone for other categories of malignant germ-cell tumors, including stage IA, grade 2 and 3 immature teratomas, and stage IA yolk sac tumors. Such an approach, however, should be taken with caution; many experts would still consider it experimental. Nevertheless, there is a trend toward careful observation following surgery alone for most patients with stage I malignant ovarian germ-cell tumors. The Children’s Oncology Group is currently conducting a clinical trial that includes postoperative surveillance for patients with stage I disease. Chemotherapy is initiated only for serum tumor marker elevation.

Most sex cord-stromal tumors are confined to the ovary. Stage I accounts for >50% (in some series as high as 100%) of granulosa cell tumors. More than 90% of Sertoli-Leydig cell tumors are stage IA. Bilaterality occurs in <5% of cases with either tumor type. Therefore, optimal surgical management of most patients with stromal tumors consists of unilateral adnexectomy combined with appropriate surgical staging. Endometrial biopsy or curettage also should be performed in any young patient whose uterus is preserved because 5% to 15% of patients with granulosa cell tumors develop endometrial cancer or hyperplasia. Postoperative therapy may be indicated for patients with metastatic disease or for selected patients with stage I disease (e.g., poorly differentiated Sertoli-Leydig cell tumor or granulosa cell tumor with rupture). The most commonly used regimens in this setting include either BEP or the combination of paclitaxel and carboplatin.

### Table 49.8

**CRITERIA FOR POTENTIAL FERTILITY-SPARING SURGERY IN OVARIAN CANCER PATIENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient desires of preserving fertility</th>
<th>Patient and family consent and agree to close follow-up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specific situations</td>
<td>No evidence of dysgenetic gonads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any unilateral malignant germ-cell tumor</td>
<td>Any unilateral yolk sac tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any unilateral sex cord-stromal tumor</td>
<td>Any unilateral borderline tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA invasive epithelial tumor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ovarian Cancer: Etiology, Screening, and Surgery

1319
of borderline or low malignant potential

surgery, and nine patients required subsequent hysterectomy

Schilder and associates reported 52 patients with stage I without chemotherapy. In a multi-institutional retrospective review, lowing treatment with fertility-sparing surgery with or without chemotherapy. In a multi-institutional retrospective review, Schilder and associates reported 52 patients with stage I invasive epithelial ovarian cancer treated with fertility-sparing surgery; 20 patients received adjuvant chemotherapy. Five patients developed recurrence 8 to 78 months after primary surgery, and nine patients required subsequent hysterectomy and contralateral oophorectomy for benign disease. Seventeen patients had 26 term deliveries and 3 spontaneous abortions.

Risk Assessment

To begin making decisions about which patients might benefit from postoperative or adjuvant therapy, one must categorize them based on risk of relapse. The risk of relapse is approximately 1% for patients with stage I borderline ovarian tumors; thus, adjuvant therapy is not recommended.

For women with stage IA or IB sex cord-stromal tumors, no adjuvant therapy is recommended because of the low risk of relapse. For those with stage IC disease, however, the level of risk remains uncertain; some studies suggest that tumor rupture or the presence of ascites is prognostic, whereas others do not.

All patients with early-stage malignant ovarian germ-cell tumors, except those with stage IA dysgerminoma or stage IA, grade 1 immature teratoma, require postoperative chemother-apy. As noted, there is some controversy about whether patients with stage IA yolk sac tumor or stage IA, grade 1 or 2 immature teratoma require adjuvant chemotherapy. Most experts in the United States favor treatment for such patients until such time as more information is available.

For patients with early-stage epithelial ovarian cancer, most experts currently accept a classification system of low and high risk (Table 49.9). Within the stage I category, histologic grade is the most powerful predictor of outcome. Patients with well-differentiated or grade 1 tumors have an excellent prognosis, with a 5-year survival rate of more than 90%. On the other hand, the 5-year survival rates for patients with grade 2 or 3 tumors are approximately 75% to 80% and 50% to 60%, respectively. Other factors that have been found to have prognostic significance include large-volume ascites, dense adherence, and clear-cell histology. Although older studies suggested that capsular rupture or excretences may be associated with a worsened prognosis, more recent studies have found no independent influence of these factors on prognosis. However, the issue of the influence of tumor rupture on prognosis remains controversial.

Therefore, low-risk early-stage epithelial ovarian cancer includes patients with the following factors: (a) stage IA or IB (in- tact capsule, no tumor excretences, and no malignant ascites or negative peritoneal cytology) and (b) grade 1 or 2 disease. The standard treatment for this group of patients is surgery alone, and the 5-year survival is at least 93%. A controversy about whether grade 2 belongs in the low- or high-risk category remains unresolved; it is compounded by the lack of uniformity of grading systems.

**Table 49.9**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EARLY-STAGE EPITHELIAL OVARIAN CANCER RISK GROUPS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Low risk</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IA or IB, grade 1 and 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor on external surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruptured capsule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascites or positive peritoneal washing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All stage II</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ovarian Cancer: Etiology, Screening, and Surgery

1321

High-risk early-stage epithelial ovarian cancer includes those patients with the following factors: (a) stages IC (ruptured capsule), tumor excurrences, positive peritoneal cytology, or malignant ascites to IL, (b) grade 3 disease, or (c) clear-cell histology. In some classification systems, dense adherence is also included in the high-risk category; however, in the view of many experts, this designation is simply a surrogate for stage II disease. This high-risk subset is thought to have a relapse risk in the range of 40% to 50% and is the focus of adjuvant therapy trials.

Persistent problems with incomplete surgical staging and interobserver variability in assigning histologic grade lead one to the realization that more objective and reliable methods would be desirable for assessment of risk in early-stage ovarian cancer. Currently, there is no universally accepted prognostic molecular biomarker. There are, however, reports of several putative or potential biomarkers. Among these are DNA ploidy, computerized morphometry, Ki-67, p53, and HER-2/neu. Although none of the markers studied yet qualifies as prognostic, as technology advances, future studies will most certainly identify reliable biomarkers. Because there is no universal histologic grading system for epithelial ovarian cancer, investigators at M.D. Anderson Cancer Center recently reported a two-tier grading system for invasive serous carcinomas that emphasizes nuclear atypia rather than architecture, with mitotic count as a secondary feature. There is mounting evidence, both from genomic/molecular studies and clinical reports, supporting this low-grade/high-grade model.

Adjuvant Treatment

For patients with malignant ovarian germ-cell tumors who require adjuvant treatment, standard postoperative therapy consists of a three- versus six-cycle BEP regimen. For patients with high-risk early-stage sex cord-stromal tumors (stage IC or II), there is no standard postoperative treatment. The most commonly used regimens include the BEP combination or the combination of paclitaxel and carboplatin.

Platinum-based chemotherapy has emerged as the standard treatment for patients with early-stage epithelial ovarian cancer. The optimal regimen and duration of therapy remains elusive. Bolis et al. reported the results of two multicenter trials conducted by the Gruppo Italiano Collaborativo in Oncologia Ginecologica. A total of 271 patients were included in these two trials. Trial 1 compared single-agent cisplatin with observation in patients with stage IA and IB, grade 2 or 3. Trial 2 compared single-agent cisplatin with intraperitoneal chromic phosphate in patients with stages IA, grade 2, IB, grade 2, and IC, disease. In both trials, although the cisplatin groups had a better disease-free survival rate, overall survival was not significantly different compared with the other arm. One possible explanation for these findings is that patients in the nonchemotherapy arm crossed over to cisplatin at time of relapse.

The Gynecologic Oncology Group (GOG) reported a randomized trial of cisplatin plus cyclophosphamide for three cycles versus intraperitoneal chromic phosphate in patients with high-risk early-stage ovarian cancer. With 204 evaluable patients randomized, suboptimal resection rates were 77% for the chemotherapy arm and 66% for the P32 arm. After adjusting for stage and histologic grade, the group receiving chemotherapy had a 29% decrement in estimated relapse. Chemotherapy was recommended as standard adjuvant therapy for this subset of patients. Cohen et al. reported on two cycles of paclitaxel/carboplatin and the late bowel toxicity associated with P32. In a subsequent GOG trial, Bell and colleagues compared three versus six cycles of paclitaxel/carboplatin for patients with high-risk early-stage epithelial ovarian cancer. Although the recurrence rate associated with six cycles was 24% lower, the study was powered for a 50% or greater reduction in recurrence rate for six cycles. In addition, there was no difference in overall survival between the arms. In a recently completed GOG trial for early-stage disease, all patients initially received three cycles of paclitaxel/carboplatin and then were randomized between observation and 26 weekly doses of paclitaxel.

Results of this trial are not yet available.

Two large European cooperative group trials in early-stage ovarian cancer were combined for analysis. Both the International Collaborative Ovarian Neoplasm 1 (ICON1) trial and the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer Collaborators—Adjuvant ChemoTherapy in Ovarian Neoplasm (EORTC-ACTION) trial randomized patients with early-stage epithelial ovarian cancer following surgery to observation versus platinum-based chemotherapy. Both overall survival and recurrence-free survival at 5 years were superior in the chemotherapy arm (82% vs. 74% and 76% vs. 65%, respectively).

Advanced-Stage Ovarian Cancer

Primary Cytoselective Surgery

Cytoreductive or debulking surgery refers to a surgical procedure for which the goal is to reduce the amount of tumor as much as possible in a patient with metastatic ovarian cancer. Early studies suggested a relationship between the completeness of the surgery or the amount of residual tumor and survival. In a landmark paper, Griffiths demonstrated an inverse relationship between residual tumor diameter and survival; patients having residual disease less than 1.5 cm in diameter had a significantly improved survival compared with patients with bulky residual disease. Subsequent reports confirmed these findings. As our philosophy about cytoreductive surgery has evolved over the last 2 decades, optimal debulking has come to denote minimal residual disease less than or equal to 1.0 to 2.0 cm in greatest diameter; suboptimal debulking denotes bulky residual disease greater than 1.0 to 2.0 cm in diameter. Defining the extent of residual disease when dealing with tumor plaques on the peritoneal surfaces remains problematic. Furthermore, there is most certainly a lack of precision in measuring residual disease.

Cytoreductive surgery, of course, must be considered not in a vacuum but rather in the context of responsiveness of residual tumor to postoperative therapies. Both radiotherapy and chemotherapy trials have shown a higher response rate in patients with minimal residual disease. These observations are supported by basic studies that suggest that larger tumor masses have poorly perfused anoxic areas that are not accessible to cytotoxic agents. Furthermore, larger tumors may have a greater proportion of cells in the resting phase. These nonproliferating cells may be less sensitive to cytotoxic agents. Skipper espoused the fractional cell kill hypothesis, stating that the ability of chemotherapeutic agents to eradicate cancer cells depends on both the dose intensity and the biodistribution of the drug. The goal is to design a delivery system that delivers the drug and the other pharmaceuticals directly to the cancer cells present. A given dose of drug kills a constant fraction of cells with each exposure. However, certain factors—such as cell repair mechanisms, tumor heterogeneity, the fraction of cells in G0 phase, and the development of drug resistance—serve to counteract this process. Coleman and Goldman have shown that tumor cells have an intrinsic spontaneous mutation rate; larger tumors that go untreated for an extended period theoretically have a greater probability of containing cell populations...
followed. After evacuation of ascites, if present, and inspection of the abdomen, the initial steps outlined under surgical staging are carried out. Resection of pelvic tumor. If the omentum is adherent to the pelvic peritoneum of the anterior abdominal wall, the pelvic structures, or loops of small intestine, it should be dissected from these structures. Once the omentum is mobilized and lifted cephalad, a dissection plane is developed between it and the serosa of the transverse colon, extending the dissection laterally in both directions (Fig. 49.5A). If the supracolic omentum is heavily involved with tumor and densely adherent to the transverse colon, it also may be necessary to establish a plane between the greater curvature of the stomach and the omentum by ligating the right and left gastroepiploic arteries and entering into a plane between the greater curvature of the stomach and the individual gastric branches (Fig. 49.5B). Entrance into the lesser sac allows traction on the greater curvature of the stomach and facilitates exposure and transection of the gastric branches of the gastroepiploic arch. Occasionally, omental tumors may also involve the spleen or splenic hilum, necessitating splenectomy (see “Splenectomy”).

Resection of pelvic tumor. Any adhesions of small intestine or omentum to the pelvic structures should be lysed. A self-retaining retractor then may be inserted and the bowel packed for adequate exposure. If normal pelvic spaces and planes are obliterated by tumor, then the retroperitoneal approach is preferred (Fig. 49.6). The lateral pelvic peritoneum is incised, and the incision is carried cephalad and caudad. As part of this maneuver, the round ligament is identified and ligated as well. The retroperitoneal space is thus entered and the small residual tumor masses may still contain drug-resistant cells that preclude ultimate cure.

Several reports have described the accomplishment of optimal cytoreductive surgery in a high percentage of patients. The morbidity and mortality associated with cytoreductive surgery also have been analyzed. These studies generally reflect an operative mortality rate of less than 2%, a mean operating time of 3 to 5 hours, and a mean blood loss of approximately 300 to 1,500 mL. There is a wide range of postoperative complications, the most common of which are infection, hemorrhage (at times requiring reexploration), prolonged ileus, and cardiopulmonary problems. The primary question concerning the efficacy of primary cytoreductive surgery is whether improved survival is related more to the biology of the tumor or to the skill and aggressiveness of the surgeon. In other words, are those tumors that can be debulked optimally also tumors that are less invasive, less infiltrative, and more indolent? Earlier studies do not suggest that this is the case. All demonstrated that patients who required extensive surgery to achieve minimal residual disease and those who had minimal disease at the outset had similar survival rates. More recent studies, however, suggest that patients with de novo minimal disease have a superior prognosis to those who are debulked to minimal disease, supporting the prognostic influence of substage categories within the stage III classification. Unfortunately, there are no randomized studies to resolve important issues in this area. Moreover, prospects for such studies are not good because of several factors, including deeply established biases, the multiplicity of associated prognostic factors, and the highly individualized nature of each procedure. In the meantime, the efficacy of cytoreductive surgery remains controversial. Better information will be required ultimately to define its role.

Studies indicate that optimal cytoreductive surgery may confer a survival advantage, even for patients with stage IV ovarian cancer. Four large retrospective reports noted that patients with stage IV disease who were optimally cytoreduced had a statistically superior survival to patients who were suboptimally cytoreduced (Table 49.10).

### Table 49.10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First author Year</th>
<th>Surgical result</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Optimal</th>
<th>Median survival</th>
<th>p</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Curtin 1997</td>
<td>Optimal (≤ 2 cm)</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>43%</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suboptimal</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liu 1997</td>
<td>Optimal (≤ 2 cm)</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suboptimal</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Munkarah 1997</td>
<td>Optimal (≤ 2 cm)</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>34%</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suboptimal</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bristow 1999</td>
<td>Optimal (≤ 1 cm)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>0.0004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suboptimal</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EFFECT OF DEBULKING ON SURVIVAL IN STAGE IV OVARIAN CANCER

Exploration. The patient is placed in either the supine or semilithotomy or ski position, depending on the likelihood of a rectosigmoid resection. A vertical midline incision is employed for adequate exposure. If normal pelvic spaces and planes are obliterated by tumor, then the retroperitoneal approach is preferred (Fig. 49.6). The lateral pelvic peritoneum is incised, and the incision is carried cephalad and caudad. As part of this maneuver, the round ligament is identified and ligated as well. The retroperitoneal space is thus entered and palpation, the size of the primary tumors(s) and size and extent of metastatic deposits should be noted.

During this initial phase of the operation, the surgeon must make an assessment of the feasibility of cytoreductive surgery. In a typical patient with advanced disease, the omentum may be totally replaced by tumor, and the pelvis may be filled with tumor, making it difficult or impossible for the surgeon to distinguish normal pelvic structures. Findings that may initially dissuade the surgeon from proceeding with aggressive tumor resection include extensive parenchymal hepatic involvement, massive diaphragmatic involvement, extensive infiltration of the small intestinal mesentery, or bulky nodal disease high in the paraaortic chain. On the other hand, even if minimal residual disease cannot be achieved, debulking of omental and pelvic masses may relieve production of ascites, reduce pressure on adjacent organs, and allow the patient increased comfort, at least temporarily. Moreover, intestinal resection still may be indicated for relief of impending or true obstruction.

Omentectomy. It is our preference to perform an omentectomy before focusing on the pelvis if the omentum is largely or completely replaced by tumor. If the omental tumor is adherent to the parietal peritoneum of the anterior abdominal wall, the pelvic structures, or loops of small intestine, it should be dissected from these structures. Once the omentum is mobilized and lifted cephalad, a dissection plane is developed between it and the serosa of the transverse colon, extending the dissection laterally in both directions (Fig. 49.5A). If the supracolic omentum is heavily involved with tumor and densely adherent to the transverse colon, it also may be necessary to establish a plane between the greater curvature of the stomach and the omentum by ligating the right and left gastroepiploic arteries and the individual gastric branches (Fig. 49.5B). Entry into the lesser sac allows traction on the greater curvature of the stomach and facilitates exposure and transection of the gastric branches of the gastroepiploic arch. Occasionally, omental tumor may also involve the spleen or splenic hilum, necessitating splenectomy (see “Splenectomy”).

Decisions regarding the extent of cytoreductive surgery are made based on the presence and extent of metastatic disease. The surgical approach is tailored to the individual patient's needs and situation. The goal is to achieve minimal residual disease, supporting the prognostic influence of suboptimally cytoreduced patients. Studies indicate that optimal cytoreductive surgery may confer a survival advantage, even for patients with stage IV ovarian cancer. Four large retrospective reports noted that patients with stage IV disease who were optimally cytoreduced had a statistically superior survival to patients who were suboptimally cytoreduced (Table 49.10).

Numerous factors contribute to the morbidity and mortality associated with cytoreductive surgery. These include cardiopulmonary problems, the most common of which are infection, hemorrhage (at times requiring reexploration), prolonged ileus, and cardiopulmonary problems. The primary question concerning the efficacy of primary cytoreductive surgery is whether improved survival is related more to the biology of the tumor or to the skill and aggressiveness of the surgeon. In other words, are those tumors that can be debulked optimally also tumors that are less invasive, less infiltrative, and more indolent? Earlier studies do not suggest that this is the case. All demonstrated that patients who required extensive surgery to achieve minimal residual disease and those who had minimal disease at the outset had similar survival rates. More recent studies, however, suggest that patients with de novo minimal disease have a superior prognosis to those who are debulked to minimal disease, supporting the prognostic influence of substage categories within the stage III classification. Unfortunately, there are no randomized studies to resolve important issues in this area. Moreover, prospects for such studies are not good because of several factors, including deeply established biases, the multiplicity of associated prognostic factors, and the highly individualized nature of each procedure. In the meantime, the efficacy of cytoreductive surgery remains controversial. Better information will be required ultimately to define its role.

Studies indicate that optimal cytoreductive surgery may confer a survival advantage, even for patients with stage IV ovarian cancer. Four large retrospective reports noted that patients with stage IV disease who were optimally cytoreduced had a statistically superior survival to patients who were suboptimally cytoreduced (Table 49.10).

### Table 49.10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First author Year</th>
<th>Surgical result</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Optimal</th>
<th>Median survival</th>
<th>p</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Curtin 1997</td>
<td>Optimal (≤ 2 cm)</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>43%</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suboptimal</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liu 1997</td>
<td>Optimal (≤ 2 cm)</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suboptimal</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Munkarah 1997</td>
<td>Optimal (≤ 2 cm)</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>34%</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suboptimal</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bristow 1999</td>
<td>Optimal (≤ 1 cm)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>0.0004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suboptimal</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ovarian Cancer: Etiology, Screening, and Surgery


FIGURE 49.6. Retroperitoneal approach with lateral peritoneum incised, demonstrating the proximity of the left ovarian tumor to major pelvic vessels, the ureter, and the rectum.
Resection of Rectosigmoid Colon. A rectosigmoid resection may be performed in approximately 10% of patients during primary debulking (Fig. 49.8). The decision to perform this procedure depends on several factors, including the presence or absence of rectosigmoid obstruction, the amount of tumor infiltration of the lower colon and its contiguity with the ovarian tumor(s), and the probability that such a procedure will render the patient “optimally debulked.” Occasionally, a patient will limit the surgeon’s intraoperative decision-making ability by refusing to consent to possible colostomy. In our experience, resection of the rectosigmoid colon almost always can be accomplished with consequent minimal residual disease in the pelvis; the limiting factor in achieving optimal cytoreduction, however, may be unresectable bulky residual tumor in the upper abdomen or retroperitoneum. In such cases, palliative resection in the absence of obstruction is not recommended. If a rectosigmoid colon resection is performed, in most cases the colon can be reanastomosed using either a suture technique or the end-to-end anastomosis (EEA) stapler. For patients who undergo a reanastomosis, a protective hepatic flexure transverse loop colostomy or loop ileostomy protects the anastomosis for those who have received pelvic radiotherapy, those with unprepared colon, or those whose anastomosis is judged to be suboptimal. Occasionally, a colostomy with a Hartmann’s pouch is necessary.

In 1984, Berek and colleagues reported their experience with 35 patients who underwent a rectosigmoid resection for ovarian cancer, 22 during primary debulking and 13 at secondary debulking. Twenty-four patients underwent a reanastomosis, and 11 had a colostomy without reanastomosis. Seventy-five percent of patients who underwent a reanastomosis did not require a protective colostomy. Optimal cytoreduction (residual tumor <1.5 cm in diameter) was accomplished in 94% of patients undergoing primary surgery and 57% undergoing secondary surgery. Although major morbidity occurred in seven patients (20%), it was temporary in all except one, who developed an anastomotic stricture. There were no postoperative anastomotic leaks or pelvic abscesses.
Soper and associates described 40 women who underwent rectosigmoid colon resection during cytoreductive surgery, 21 (53%) as part of a primary procedure and 19 (47%) as part of a secondary procedure. Residual disease was less than 1 cm in 54% of patients. A permanent colostomy was avoided in 78% of patients. Twenty-five percent of patients experienced major morbidity, including one patient who developed an anas- tomotic dehiscence and pelvic peritonitis necessitating re-exploration and colostomy. One patient (1%) died in the immediate postoperative period. Despite aggressive surgical resection and postoperative therapy, the median survival for the entire group was only 14.5 months. More recent studies have also confirmed the clinical observa- tion that even bloc resection of the rectosigmoid colon during ovarian cancer surgery does result in a high rate of optimal or complete cytoreduction with acceptable morbidity.

Small Intestinal Resection. Although the small intestine is a common site of metastasis, both to the serosa and the mesen- tery, extensive tumor involvement is an uncommon finding at primary surgery. If the small intestine is extensively involved with tumor, it is usually in the terminal ileum. Occasionally, small intestinal obstruction, either partial or complete, is present at diagnosis. As noted, complete surgical staging in- cludes careful examination of the entire length of the small intestine from the ligament of Treitz to the cecum. If, on explora- tion, loops of small intestine are adherent to the pelvic tumor, omental tumor, or other loops of intestine, then these adhesions should be lysed. Indications for small intestinal re- section include obstruction or impending obstruction by tumor infiltrating the serosa and muscularis of a segment or a non- obstructing extensive lesion of the small intestine for which resec- tion would result in minimal residual disease.

If the lesion involves the very terminal portion of the ileum, as is usually the case, or if a portion of the ileum is adherent to the pelvis or cecum, then ileocolic resection, or resection of the ascending colon adjacent to the small intestine may be neces- sary. Care should be taken to avoid the presence of tumor at the points of reanastomosis. The reanastomosis may be per- formed using either the suture or the stapling technique. In our experience and in the literature, small intestinal resection is indi- cated in approximately 5% to 10% of primary operations for ovarian cancer.

Resection of the Urinary Tract. Indications for ureteral resec- tion or partial cystectomy are uncommon during cytoreductive surgery. If ureteral obstruction is noted preoperatively, it is al- most always a result of ureteral compression rather than tumor infiltration. Although adherence of the ureter(s) to masses of ovarian cancer is not an unusual finding, the surgeon can al- most always separate the ureter from the tumor using sharp dissection. If the distal ureter is resected as part of cytoreduc- tive surgery, it usually can be reimplanted into the bladder. More commonly, the ureter may be injured during the course of debulking surgery. Depending on the site of injury, a pri- mary reanastomosis, transureteroureterostomy, or ureteroneo- cystotomy may be indicated. In a report by Berek and as- sociates, 16 of 848 patients (2%) underwent partial ureteral resection. Five patients had transureteroureterostomy, two had reanastomosis, and four had urinary diversion. Twelve of the operations were part of primary cytoreductive surgery, and four were part of secondary surgery. Nine of these 16 patients had evidence of ureteral obstruction on preoperative intravenous pyelograms.

On the other hand, tumor involvement of the peritoneum overlying the urinary bladder is not an uncommon finding dur- ing primary cytoreductive surgery. Occasionally, a partial cy- stectomy may be necessary to achieve optimal cytoreduction. In the series of Berek and associates, eight patients had a partial cystectomy for advanced ovarian cancer. Reconstruction ne- cessitated ureteral reimplantation in two patients and an ileal conduit in one patient. If a partial cystotomy is indicated, we prefer a simple closure with two layers of chromic catgut su- ture, the inner layer as a continuous running suture and the outer layer as interrupted sutures.

In our experience, tumor involvement of the bladder mucosa with ovarian cancer at initial diagno- sis, such patients usually report hematuria in association with obvious massive disease. The definitive diagnosis can be made easily by preoperative cystoscopy.

Splenectomy. Splenectomy is indicated occasionally during pri- mary cytoreductive surgery (Fig. 49.9). Various series report the incidence of splenectomy during primary cytoreductive surgery in 5% to 11% of cases of advanced ovarian cancer. In addition, the indications for splenectomy and the procedure itself have been described in case reports. Most commonly, the hilum of the spleen is involved with ovarian cancer in association with extensive omental involvement. Rarely, isolated splenic caps- ular involvement or even splenic parenchymal involvement may be found. In addition to tumor debulking, splenectomy also may be indicated during cytoreductive surgery because of a traction injury with avulsion of the splenic capsule during omentectomy or mobilization of the splenic flexure of the colon in association with descending colostomy or reanastomosis af- ter rectosigmoid colon resection. If a splenic capsular involvement occurs or access to the lesser sac is limited by the distribution of tumor, the surgeon may prefer to first mobilize the spleen by dividing its peritoneal attachments while compressing the splenic vessels, and then ligate the splenic vessels using a pos- terior approach. The spleen is rotated anteriorly and medially in this technique.

The methods of performing splenectomy during cytoreduc- tive surgery may vary depending on the circumstances. Under controlled conditions (no uncontrolled hemorrhage), the sur- geon may prefer to incise the gastrospenic ligament, gain access to the lesser sac, and identify and ligate the splenic vessels as they run along the superior border of the pancreas. The spleen can then be mobilized by transecting its attachments to the colon, the left kidney, and the diaphragm. If hemorrhage is oc- curring or access to the lesser sac is limited by the distribution of tumor, the surgeon may prefer to first mobilize the spleen by dividing its peritoneal attachments while compressing the splenic vessels, and then ligate the splenic vessels using a pos- terior approach. The spleen is rotated anteriorly and medially in this technique.

Complications associated with splenectomy include hem- orrheage, infection, thromboembolic phenomena, left-sided at- electasis or pneumonia, injury to the tail of the pancreas (with resultant pancreatic pseudocyst), or injury to the stomach (with resultant gastric fistula). Because of the risk of severe infection following splenectomy, the patient should receive perioperative antibiotic coverage and should be vaccinated with polyvalent pneumococcal, quadrivalent meningococcal, and hemophilus influenzae vaccines. We also prefer to insert a drain in the splenic bed postoperatively to diagnose early postoperative hemorrhage and reduce the infection rate.
Resection of Diaphragmatic Tumor. Several reports have described experience with resection of diaphragmatic metastatic deposits in patients with advanced ovarian cancer (Fig. 49.10). To gain access to the diaphragmatic surfaces, the abdominal incision is extended to just below the xiphoid process, and the liver is mobilized by transecting the entire falciform ligament and the coronary and triangular ligaments. After it is adequately exposed, the diaphragmatic tumor may be resected by stripping the peritoneum from the diaphragmatic muscle using sharp dissection with either Metzenbaum scissors or electrocautery. Alternative techniques of debulking in this area are discussed in the following. The anesthesiologist should be notified if the pleural cavity is entered. Defects in the diaphragm may be closed with interrupted sutures. If a large defect cannot be closed primarily or can be closed only under tension, then the defect may be closed using synthetic mesh. If the
pleural cavity is entered, then a thoracostomy tube should be placed.

Possible complications associated with resection of diaphragmatic tumor include pneumothorax, hemorrhage from the phrenic arteries, infection, injury to the pericardial sac, and injury to such structures as the lung, the vena cava, or the phrenic nerves.

Whether aggressive resection of diaphragmatic metastases with associated potential complications is justified is unclear. Montz and coworkers reported that 13 of 14 patients with diaphragmatic tumor could be optimally debulked. The size of resected specimens ranged from $12 \times 7$ cm to $17 \times 11$ cm. Kapnick and colleagues found that tumors that penetrated the entire thickness of the diaphragm to involve the pleura were greater than or equal to 5.0 cm in diameter. Patients with tumors that penetrated the diaphragm had a median survival time of 8 months compared with a median survival time of 26 months for those patients without full-thickness diaphragmatic penetration by the tumor. Therefore, the assessment of the benefit of this procedure must await further studies.

In a review of the Mayo Clinic experience, Aletti and associates found that for the subgroup of 181 patients with ovarian cancer metastatic to the diaphragm, those who underwent diaphragm surgery had improved 5-year overall survival compared with those who did not (53% vs. 15%). In another recent study of 262 patients with stages IIIC to IV epithelial ovarian cancer, Eisenhauer and colleagues found that patients requiring extensive upper abdominal procedures to achieve optimal debulking demonstrated a similar initial response, progression-free survival, and overall survival to patients optimally debulked by standard surgical techniques.

Resection of Retroperitoneal Lymph Nodes. The initial retroperitoneal approach for cytoreductive surgery exposes the node-bearing areas. Lymph nodes are sampled as part of the staging technique, and every effort is extended to remove suspicious retroperitoneal nodes when the peritoneal cavity has been cleared of disease (Fig. 49.11). The benefit of radical resection of extensive retroperitoneal lymph node metastases also remains unclear. Burghardt and associates compared the survival of 70 patients with stage III ovarian cancer who had undergone radical pelvic lymphadenectomy with 40 patients with the same stage of disease treated without lymphadenectomy. The actuarial 5-year survival was superior for the former group: 51% versus 13%, respectively. In the reports of Wu and colleagues and Burghardt and associates, the role of pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy at initial surgery for ovarian cancer is discussed, but there is no particular discussion of debulking of grossly enlarged retroperitoneal nodes. Benedetti-Panici and coworkers reported the findings of a prospective study on the feasibility and morbidity of radical paraaortic and pelvic lymphadenectomy in patients with gynecologic malignancies. They observed acceptable morbidity—principally hemorrhage, lymphocyst formation, and deep venous thrombosis—and no operative mortality. Scarabelli et al retrospectively evaluated the potential benefit on survival of systematic pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy during both primary and secondary cytoreductive surgery in patients with stage IIB or IV ovarian cancer. The previously untreated patients who underwent systematic lymphadenectomy had a significantly improved survival. The authors appropriately recommended a prospective randomized study to determine the efficacy of such an approach.

For patients with malignant germ-cell tumors, especially dysgerminoma, the advantages of debulking metastatic retroperitoneal nodes are even less apparent, because these tumors are generally much more sensitive to chemotherapy than are other ovarian tumors.

Until further information becomes available, it is probably reasonable to consider debulking enlarged retroperitoneal nodes if peritoneal metastases can be cytoreduced optimally, if there is no fixation to blood vessels, and if the surgeon believes that the procedure can be successfully accomplished without undue risk.

**FIGURE 49.11.** Retroperitoneal dissection of paraaortic lymph nodes involved with metastatic ovarian cancer.
Currently, the issue of systematic aortic and pelvic lymphadenectomy has come more to the forefront. Eisenkop and Spjut reported on 106 patients with stage IIC to IV epithelial ovarian cancer who underwent a retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy at the time of primary cytoreductive surgery. Sixty-six percent had positive lymph nodes. Five were microscopically positive, and 64 were macroscopically positive, of which 63% were positive by palpation, 16 (26%) were positive by inspection, and 26 (43%) were positive by dissection. In the other hand, there were 39 patients with negative or only microscopically positive nodes, and 13 of these patients (39%) were thought to have clinically positive nodes by the operating surgeon. The authors concluded that a significant proportion of patients had macroscopically positive lymph nodes that were detectable only after a dissection was in progress, and clinical impression of lymph node status was unreliable.

Morice and colleagues reported on 276 women with epithelial ovarian cancer who underwent systematic bilateral pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy. The overall frequency of lymph node involvement was 44%. Pelvic and paraaortic lymph nodes were involved 30% and 40% of the time, respectively. In patients with apparent stage Ia, Ib, and IC disease, the rates of nodal involvement were 13%, 33%, and 38%, respectively. And, in their report of a large randomized clinical trial (N = 427 patients) comparing systematic pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy versus resection of bulky lymph node nodes only, Benedetti-Panici and colleagues found that systematic lymphadenectomy improves progression-free survival but not overall survival in women with optimally cytoreduced advanced ovarian cancer.

Additional Techniques for Cytoreductive Surgery. In the last few years, several reports have described techniques for debulking: the argon beam coagulator, the Cavitron ultrasonic surgical aspirator (CUSA), and various types of laser therapy. The argon beam coagulator is an electrosurgical device that conducts current to tissue in a beam of inert argon gas. Brond and Pearman reported the use of the argon beam coagulator for debulking in seven patients with advanced ovarian cancer. Areas treated using this device included the diaphragm, stomach, duodenum, small intestine, colon, liver capsule, peritoneum, bladder and ureters, vaginal apex and parametrium, iliac vessels, and abdominal wall. Four of the patients had no gross residual tumor, and three had residual masses of less than or equal to 2 to 3 mm in diameter. Brastow and Monteau reported the use of the argon beam coagulator to facilitate cytoreduction in 31 patients and concluded that it is a useful adjunct to standard techniques and appears to significantly increase the feasibility of achieving optimal cytoreduction.

There have been several reports of the use of the CUSA for cytoreductive surgery. The CUSA combines tissue fragmentation, irrigation, and aspiration while dissecting tumor from blood vessels without injuring them. Adelson and associates described cytoreduction of tumors to less than 0.5 cm in 9 of 10 patients. The authors particularly noted that intestinal resections were avoided because of the use of the CUSA. Deppe et al reported on 11 patients who underwent optimal debulking using the CUSA. In other reports, the same authors described the utility of the CUSA in debulking diaphragmatic metastases and retroperitoneal lymph nodes. In the latter report, the authors were able to optimally resect extensive paraaortic and pelvic lymph node masses in five of six patients with advanced ovarian cancer. Two patients sustained lacerations of the inferior vena cava during the procedure.

Use of the neodymium-yttrium-aluminum-garnet (Nd-YAG) laser for the resection of intraabdominal tumors has been reported. Other reports of laser therapy for metastatic deposits of ovarian cancer undoubtedly will follow during the next few years.

The benefit of any of these new techniques for cytoreductive surgery remains unproved. Further studies will be necessary to elucidate their proper role.

Role of Laparoscopy in the Clinical Management of Ovarian Cancer

At present, the role of laparoscopy in the management of ovarian cancer is evolving. There are several clinical settings in which the potential for this surgical modality has been investigated: (a) primary surgery for early-stage ovarian cancer; (b) restaging of unstageable ovarian cancer; (c) primary cytoreductive surgery for advanced-stage ovarian cancer; (d) assessment of resectability; (e) intraperitoneal catheter placement; (f) second-look surgery; and (g) secondary cytoreductive surgery.

Chi and colleagues compared 20 patients who underwent cytoreductive surgery via a laparoscopic approach with 30 patients who underwent surgical staging via laparotomy for ovarian or fallopian tube cancers. They found no differences in body mass index, omental specimen size, and number of resected lymph nodes. The estimated blood loss and hospital stay were lower for laparoscopy patients, but operating time was longer. LeBlanc and associates performed laparoscopic restaging in 53 patients—42 early after initial surgery for ovarian or fallopian tube cancer and 11 for second-look surgery after primary chemotherapy. Of the 42 early restaging procedures, 41 were completed successfully. An average of 20 paraaortic and paraaortic lymph nodes and 14 pelvic lymph nodes were removed in these procedures. Complications included a hematoma from an inferior epigastric artery injury and two lymphocysts. Eight patients were upstaged: two patients to stage IIa, two patients to stage IIIa, and four patients to stage IIB. In addition, Lecour and coworkers found no difference in survival between patients who underwent surgical staging for stage I epithelial ovarian cancer by either laparoscopy, laparotomy, or laparoscopy converted to laparotomy.

For patients with apparent advanced-stage ovarian cancer, laparoscopic evaluation has been investigated in the context of assessment of resectability. Two recent studies have described this approach. Fagotti and colleagues employed laparoscopy in 64 patients with suspected advanced ovarian cancer before laparotomy for primary cytoreduction. The overall accuracy rate of laparoscopy in predicting optimal cytoreduction was 90%. In a study by Angioli and associates, 87 patients with suspected advanced ovarian cancer underwent diagnostic laparoscopy; of the 53 (61%) patients who were judged to be operable, 96% were optimally debulked.

The major concern regarding the use of laparoscopic surgery in the management of ovarian cancer is the spread of the cancer, particularly port site metastasizes. Ramirez and coworkers estimated the rate of port site metastasis in patients undergoing laparoscopy for gynecologic malignancies as 1% to 2%. Vergote and colleagues reported 173 patients with advanced ovarian cancer who underwent diagnostic laparoscopy. Seventy-one patients underwent complete excision of port sites at the time of primary cytoreductive surgery. Thirty (17%) patients subsequently developed port site metastases. However, only 8 (5%) of these were clinically diagnosed, whereas 22 (31%) were diagnosed on pathologic examination of resected
port sites. All of the port-site metastases resolved during primary chemotherapy, and prognosis was not worsened by this finding.

Therefore, the role of laparoscopy is evolving. At present, the most useful settings for this approach appear to be primary surgery for apparent early-stage disease, restaging of apparent early-stage disease that is unstaged before referral, and assessment of residual or recurrent disease to determine whether primary cytoreductive surgery or neoadjuvant chemotherapy and interval debulking is preferable.

Primary Chemotherapy for Advanced Ovarian Cancer

For patients with advanced-stage malignant ovarian germ-cell tumors, the standard regimen is identical to that for patients with early-stage disease who require chemotherapy—the BEP regimen. The optimal number of cycles remains unknown, but for these patients with a potentially greater tumor burden than those with early-stage disease, four to six cycles may be required in some instances. Generally, administering two cycles following normalization of serum tumor markers may be a reasonable guide, although there are no definitive studies to support this practice.

For patients with advanced-stage sex cord-stromal tumors, platinum-based combination chemotherapy is generally recommended. As noted, the BEP combination regimen or the combination of paclitaxel/carboplatin are the most popular regimens in the United States.

For advanced-stage epithelial ovarian cancer, the combination of cisplatin and cyclophosphamide was the standard postoperative regimen throughout most of the 1980s and until the mid-1990s. Subsequently, based on encouraging results of phase II studies of paclitaxel in patients with refractory ovarian cancer, GOG initiated a randomized trial comparing the standard regimen of cyclophosphamide/cisplatin with the combination of paclitaxel/cisplatin in patients with suboptimally debulked advanced epithelial ovarian cancer. The findings of this study revealed a significant outcome advantage for the paclitaxel/cisplatin regimen in terms of progression-free survival and overall survival. A subsequent similar study conducted by a European consortium confirmed the results of the GOG study. Subsequently, based on the results of a GOG phase I trial, GOG initiated a randomized study comparing paclitaxel/cisplatin with paclitaxel/carboplatin. In the latter regimen, paclitaxel was administered over 3 rather than 24 hours, as in the previous GOG study. Recent data from that study suggest that the paclitaxel/cisplatin regimen is equally efficacious and has a superior toxicity profile compared with the paclitaxel/cisplatin regimen. A study conducted by a German consortium (AGO) demonstrated similar results. Thus, because of its superior therapeutic index, the paclitaxel/cisplatin regimen has become the standard postoperative treatment for patients with advanced epithelial ovarian cancer.

Two other studies, however, have somewhat confused the issue. GOG reported the results of a phase III randomized study in which the 24-hour infusion paclitaxel and cisplatin regimen was compared with single-agent paclitaxel and single-agent cisplatin. Response with single-agent paclitaxel was significantly inferior, but overall survival was identical for all three arms of the study, probably because of significant crossover of patients on monotherapy to the other single agent. In another study conducted by the British Medical Research Council, the paclitaxel/carboplatin regimen was compared with a nonpaclitaxel regimen (either single-agent carboplatin or a combination of cyclophosphamide/doxorubicin/cisplatin). There was no difference in outcome between the two treatment arms with a relatively short follow-up time. However, approximately 20% of the patients in this trial had early-stage disease.

Vasey and colleagues conducted a phase III trial of doxorubicin/cisplatin versus paclitaxel/carboplatin as first-line chemotherapy for stage IC to IV epithelial ovarian cancer and peritoneal cancer. A total of 1,077 patients were enrolled in the study. Although there were no differences in progression-free survival or overall survival between the two groups, the doxorubicin/cisplatin regimen was associated with significantly less neurotoxicity but more myelotoxicity. GOG recently reported the preliminary results of their latest phase III trial in advanced ovarian cancer. This was a five-arm study that introduced three new drugs into first-line therapy as either three-drug combinations or sequential doublets, including liposomal doxorubicin, topotecan, and gemcitabine. The results indicated that no regimen demonstrated superiority to the control arm of paclitaxel/carboplatin.

Intraperitoneal chemotherapy also has been studied as primary treatment for patients with optimally cytoreduced advanced epithelial ovarian cancer. With the recent publication of GOG #172, three GOG studies have now demonstrated the benefits of intraperitoneal chemotherapy over intravenous chemotherapy in the treatment of this subgroup. In an intergroup study, the first such trial, 652 patients with less than 2 cm residual disease were randomized to receive intravenous cisplatin/cyclophosphamide versus intraperitoneal cisplatin plus intravenous cyclophosphamide. The median survival was significantly longer in the group receiving intraperitoneal cisplatin (49 months) than in the group receiving intravenous cisplatin (41 months). In addition, toxicity was worse in the intravenous group. The second GOG intraperitoneal study used intravenous versus intraperitoneal cisplatin as part of initial therapy. Patients on the intraperitoneal arm received an initial two cycles of moderate-dose systemic carboplatin. The results of that study showed a significant improvement in progression-free survival for the intraperitoneal arm but only a borderline effect on overall survival. Because of significant design flaws associated with each of these GOG studies, the role of intraperitoneal chemotherapy in the management of advanced ovarian cancer remains unclear.

In the most definitive trial to date, Armstrong and associates conducted a phase III trial comparing intravenous paclitaxel plus cisplatin versus intravenous paclitaxel and intraperitoneal cisplatin, with intraperitoneal paclitaxel on day 8. The median overall survival was significantly better for the intraperitoneal chemotherapy arm: 66 versus 50 months (p = 0.03). However, short-term quality of life and toxicity—principally fatigue, hematologic, gastrointestinal, metabolic, and neurological—were significantly worse in the intraperitoneal arm. Furthermore, only 42% of patients in the intraperitoneal chemotherapy arm were able to complete all six cycles of planned treatment. Nevertheless, this study has generated much renewed enthusiasm for the intraperitoneal chemotherapy approach, as well as controversy.

An article detailing the intraperitoneal catheter complications in the recent GOG trial was also published. Of the 119 patients in the intraperitoneal chemotherapy arm who were not able to complete six cycles of treatment, 34% discontinued therapy because of catheter-related issues, and 25% continued for noncatheter-related reasons. There also appeared to be an association between sigmoid resection and inability to initiate intraperitoneal chemotherapy.
Neoadjuvant Chemotherapy and Interval Cytoreductive Surgery

Over the past two decades, the concept of neoadjuvant chemotherapy followed by interval debulking (as a primary cytoreductive procedure after a few cycles of chemotherapy) has emerged. This approach began to be reported in the late 1970s for certain subsets of patients: those who were referred to an oncologist after a surgical or nonsurgical biopsy or patients who initially were poor surgical candidates because of a debilitated state related to massive effusions or comorbid conditions. However, this approach was proposed as an alternative for all patients with advanced epithelial ovarian cancer or for certain subsets, such as those predicted to be suboptimally resected. The potential advantage of such an approach is to operate on a patient with an improved nutritional status, a smaller tumor burden, and superior perioperative risk.

Although several studies have explored the concept of a surrogate marker of resectability of advanced ovarian cancer, as evidenced by the outcome of bulky residual disease, this issue remains unresolved. If accurate, such a strategy could potentially avoid a suboptimal debulking with the associated morbidity. The principal focus has been on preoperative serum CA-125 or CT appearance of disease. Unfortunately, to date, neither has been accurate enough to be incorporated into standard care. Diagnostic laparoscopy has also been investigated as a tool for assessing resectability; this approach may ultimately prove to be the most practical and accurate method, but further study is indicated.

A number of retrospective series have reported the feasibility of neoadjuvant chemotherapy and interval debulking. Clinical observations from these reports indicate the following: (a) a high proportion (70%–80%) of patients treated with neoadjuvant chemotherapy have partial or complete responses before interval surgery; (b) a high proportion of patients so treated, possibly higher than with primary cytoreductive surgery, are optimally debulked with minimal residual disease; and (c) the surgical morbidity may be reduced compared with that associated with primary cytoreductive surgery. An European cooperative group is currently studying this approach in a randomized clinical trial. It is hoped that the results of this trial will elucidate the role of neoadjuvant chemotherapy and interval cytoreductive surgery.

SECONDARY SURGERY

Second-Look Laparotomy

Second-look laparotomy for evaluation of disease status following treatment for cancer of the colon was proposed initially by Wilgrensteen and associates in 1948. Beginning in the early 1960s, second-look laparotomy was used extensively in the management of ovarian cancer. The procedure continued to gain popularity as more ovarian cancer patients were treated with chemotherapy and fewer received radiontherapy. Since the mid-1980s, however, there has been increasing skepticism about the benefits of this procedure. Currently, second-look surgery is not part of the routine management of patients with any histologic type of ovarian cancer. Although it remains the most common method of assessing disease status at completion of primary chemotherapy, no study has demonstrated a survival benefit associated with the procedure. In addition to the lack of demonstrated survival benefit, second-look surgery is still not that precise; approximately 50% of patients with negative findings ultimately relapse. However, second-look surgery is still occasionally used if it is part of a clinical trial or if the findings would make a patient eligible for a subsequent clinical trial.

Most experts agree that the term second-look surgery should be restricted to an operation performed on a patient with no clinical evidence of persistent tumor for the purpose of determining disease status after a planned interval of treatment with chemotherapy. The term should not be applied to a surgical procedure performed in patients with clinical evidence of persistent or progressive disease for the primary purpose of debulking or treatment of complications of the disease.

The operative technique of second-look laparotomy has been well described. It is essentially identical to a staging laparotomy, as discussed previously. An adequate vertical midline abdominal incision is made. On entering the abdomen, cytologic washings from the pelvis, bilateral paracolic gutters, and subdiaphragmatic areas are obtained, and the entire contents of the peritoneal cavity are inspected and palpated. If obvious macroscopic tumor is present, then the procedure usually is limited. However, the extent of disease should be carefully determined, and a few biopsies should be taken for documentation of persistent disease (frozen as well as permanent section). If no obvious macroscopic disease is noted, then random biopsy specimens are taken routinely from the peritoneal surfaces, including the cul-de-sac, vesicouterine reflection, bilateral pelvic walls, bilateral paracolic gutters, and surfaces of the diaphragm. Omental biopsies and biopsies of the retroperitoneal lymph nodes also are performed. Lysis of adhesions is not uncommon in the process of performing these biopsies. Sites of previously documented tumor and adhesions should be carefully evaluated and generously sampled. An adequate procedure consists of a minimum of 20 to 30 biopsy specimens.

Of course, laparoscopy rather than laparotomy is an alternative for patients who undergo second-look surgery. Obvious advantages include better visualization of peritoneal surfaces as well as more rapid recovery and significantly reduced time in hospital. Both the “open” and “closed” techniques have been reported.

Findings at second-look surgery are classified as negative (grossly and pathologically negative), macroscopically positive (grossly negative, pathologically positive), and macroscopically positive (grossly and pathologically positive). The clinical variables most consistently associated with findings at second-look surgery and survival afterward are histologic grade, amount of residual disease, and FIGO stage. Patients with minimal residual disease and early-stage disease have a greater probability of having negative findings at second-look laparotomy than do those with bulky residual disease or advanced-stage disease. Other variables found to correlate with second-look findings and subsequent survival in some of these studies are histologic type, type of chemotherapy, amount of disease found at the initial surgery, age, performance status, and peritoneal cytology status.

Findings in approximately 30% to 50% of patients with advanced ovarian cancer (and a smaller percentage of those with early-stage disease) will be macroscopically positive at second-look surgery. Approximately 20% of patients with advanced ovarian cancer who undergo second-look surgery have microscopically positive findings. Negative second-look surgery findings are noted in approximately 30% to 50% of patients with advanced ovarian cancer undergoing this procedure.

There is limited information in the literature regarding second-look surgery in patients with malignant germ-cell tumors and virtually no meaningful information about patients...
with sex cord–stromal tumors. In a review of the experience with second-look laparotomy in patients with malignant germ-cell tumors at M.D. Anderson Cancer Center, findings were negative in 52 of 53 such patients. One patient with negative findings subsequently experienced a relapse and died. Thirteen patients had biopsy-proven evidence of mature teratoma—so-called chemotherapeutic retroconversion—at second-look laparotomy; treatment was discontinued in all patients, and none developed a recurrence. Based on these observations, our group recommended limitation on the use of second-look laparotomy in this patient population as much as possible. Williams et al. reported the GOG experience, in which 117 patients with malignant germ-cell tumors underwent second-look laparotomy after treatment with platinum-based chemotherapy. Based on their findings, the authors concluded that patients with either completely resected tumor or advanced-stage incompletely resected tumor that does not contain elements of teratoma rarely, if ever, benefit from second-look laparotomy. They did recommend second-look surgery for patients with incompletely resected tumor that contains teratoma. However, a significant proportion of this latter subset of patients had clinically detectable tumor before second-look surgery. The procedure is not recommended for those patients with initially detectable levels of serum tumor markers, especially those with early-stage disease. Some patients with advanced disease, particularly those with initially undetectable serum tumor markers, continue to undergo second-look laparotomy. The issue of second-look surgery for patients with incompletely resected tumor that does not contain elements of teratoma remains unresolved. As better therapies are developed and refined, the procedure will inevitably become obsolete, except in unusual situations.

### Secondary Cytoreductive Surgery

The term secondary cytoreductive surgery has no universal definition. It may denote cytoreductive surgery performed in one of several different settings: (a) in patients who are partial responders or nonresponders to primary chemotherapy, (b) in patients who have developed recurrent disease after receiving primary chemotherapy and experience a prolonged disease-free interval off therapy (≥6 months), (c) in patients who undergo a suboptimal debulking initially followed by three cycles of chemotherapy (so-called interval debulking), and, (d) in patients who have persistent macroscopic tumor at second-look laparotomy.

Tumors in these subgroups of ovarian cancer patients may have very different natural histories, principally defined by whether they are platinum resistant or platinum sensitive. For example, patients whose tumor progresses during first-line chemotherapy, whether progression is noted clinically or at second-look laparotomy, are defined as platinum resistant. Patients who have not yet received chemotherapy or are partial responders to chemotherapy (whether the response noted clinically or at second-look surgery) or who have developed recurrent disease after a prolonged interval off therapy may well be platinum sensitive. These subgroups may have very different survival rates based on their responsiveness to second-line chemotherapy after secondary cytoreductive surgery. Therefore, it is extremely important for studies designed to assess the impact of these various secondary procedures on survival rates to carefully define their study populations. Because of the lack of prospective randomized studies in this area, it is difficult if not impossible to draw any firm conclusions about the influence of secondary debulking in these settings. However, the principal setting for secondary cytoreductive surgery is for platinum-sensitive recurrent disease.

### Secondary Cytoreductive Surgery for Recurrent Disease

Several retrospective studies have shown an improved survival for patients secondarily cytoreduced to small residual disease compared with patients who were not optimally cytoreduced. Optimal candidates for such a procedure appear to be those who are platinum sensitive. The longer the interval between completion of primary chemotherapy and the time of recurrence, the better the outcome. Results of published studies on secondary cytoreduction for recurrent ovarian cancer are summarized in Table 49.11. Clearly, the true value of debulking

#### Table 49.11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Median survival (months)</th>
<th>Significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Morris et al., 1988</td>
<td>≤2 cm: 17, ≥2 cm: 13</td>
<td>p = 0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None, 1992</td>
<td>None: 14, ≤2 cm: 12, ≥2 cm: 4</td>
<td>p = 0.004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segna et al., 1993</td>
<td>≤2 cm: 61, &gt;2 cm: 39</td>
<td>p = 0.0001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viareghello et al., 1995</td>
<td>≤0.5 cm: 14, &gt;0.5 cm: 24</td>
<td>p &lt; 0.0001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaducci et al., 2000</td>
<td>Microscopic: 87, 1 cm: 17</td>
<td>p = 0.007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None, 2002</td>
<td>Microscopic: 13, 1 cm: 6</td>
<td>p = 0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None, 2004</td>
<td>≤1 cm: 30, &gt;1 cm: 10</td>
<td>p &lt; 0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zang et al., 2004</td>
<td>None: 11, ≤1 cm: 61</td>
<td>p &lt; 0.0001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pfister et al., 2005</td>
<td>Microscopic: 133, &gt;1 cm: 79</td>
<td>p &lt; 0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gungor et al., 2005</td>
<td>Microscopic: 34, &gt;0.5 cm: 79</td>
<td>p &lt; 0.0001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi et al., 2006</td>
<td>None: 133, ≤1 cm: 69</td>
<td>p &lt; 0.0001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NR, not reported.
Gynecologic Oncology

surgery for recurrent ovarian cancer can be assessed only by a prospective randomized study. GOG is in the process of planning such a study in the near future.

Chi and colleagues recently analyzed their experience with 155 consecutive patients undergoing secondary cytoreductive surgery for platinum-sensitive recurrent epithelial ovarian cancer. They confirmed previous observations that the longer the disease-free interval, the longer the survival time after secondary cytoreduction (30 months for disease-free interval of 6–12 months, 39 months for disease-free interval of 13–30 months, and 51 months for disease-free interval greater than 30 months). For patients who had residual disease less than or equal to 0.5 cm, the median survival was 56 months compared with a median survival of 27 months for those patients with residual disease greater than 0.5 cm. The authors further devised a set of recommendations for selection of candidates for secondary cytoreductive surgery based on the disease-free interval, the number of recurrence sites, and evidence of carcinomatosis.

Secondary Attempt at Cytoreductive Surgery after Suboptimal Debulking

The term interval cytoreduction has been used to describe two distinct entities: (a) a true secondary cytoreduction performed after primary cytoreduction that is suboptimal (with bulky residual disease remaining) and three cycles of chemotherapy, or (b) cytoreduction after a biopsy performed at surgery (by laparoscopy or laparotomy), fine needle aspiration, or percutaneous biopsy (usually > 0.5 cm). The latter is really neoadjuvant chemotherapy followed by primary cytoreduction. These two entities have been confused and used interchangeably in the literature. Several reports described secondary cytoreductive surgery as interval debulking after a suboptimal primary surgery and a few cycles of chemotherapy. Van der Burg and associates reported the findings of a large prospective randomized trial in which 278 patients with less than 1 cm residual tumor after primary cytoreductive surgery were enrolled. After three cycles of cisplatin cyclophosphamide chemotherapy, patients were randomized to receive either secondary cytoreductive surgery followed by three more cycles of chemotherapy or three more cycles of chemotherapy alone. Of the 140 patients randomized to the interval cytoreduction arm, 65% still had bulky tumor at the time of this secondary surgery. About 45% of these patients were able to be cytoreduced optimally. Both progression-free survival and overall survival were modestly improved in the interval cytoreduction group. GOG subsequently conducted a study with an identical study design in an effort to replicate the results of this European trial; however, the combination of paclitaxel/cisplatin was used rather than cyclophosphamide/cisplatin. Contrary to the findings of the European study, the addition of secondary cytoreductive surgery to postoperative chemotherapy did not improve either progression-free survival or overall survival. The explanation for the disparate results may lie in the less aggressive initial cytoreductive attempt with resultant larger residual tumor volumes by the European investigators. Based on these findings, this approach is not currently recommended.

MANAGEMENT OF INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION

Approximately 23% of ovarian cancer patients develop intestinal obstruction in the terminal phase of their illness. One of the major dilemmas facing the gynecologic oncologist is whether to operate on a patient with refractory ovarian cancer and an intestinal obstruction. Although current information provides some guidelines, the decisions concerning the wisdom of surgical intervention and intraoperative management are based more on the art of the discipline and experience of the surgeon than on scientific criteria.

Signs and symptoms of intestinal obstruction resulting from ovarian cancer include nausea and vomiting, abdominal cramping, abdominal distention, and progressive constipation. In patients who have only partial obstruction, these symptoms and findings may be episodic and more subtle. Plain films of the abdomen may support the diagnosis. Dilatation of the small intestine and air fluid levels suggest involvement of the small bowel. Dilatation of the colon may characterize large bowel obstruction. In patients with early, partial obstruction, the radiographic findings may be nonspecific.

Although intestinal obstruction in patients with ovarian cancer may be caused by adhesions, progressive tumor usually is the inciting factor. Of course, if the patient has received abdominopelvic radiotherapy, obstruction that is due to adhesions should be considered. In our experience, and that of others, however, most cases of intestinal obstruction in ovarian cancer patients who have received prior radiotherapy are related primarily to tumor progression.

The site(s) of the obstruction may be solitary or multiple. In 5% to 10% of patients, there is simultaneous obstruction of the small and large bowel. Colon obstruction usually occurs in the area of the sigmoid colon because of growth of pelvic tumor and resultant extrinsic compression; occasionally there may be obstruction of more proximal segments. Small bowel obstruction is usually the result of adherence of loops of bowel by mesenteric or serosal tumor implants. Once the appropriate evaluation is completed and the diagnosis of intestinal obstruction is made, the gynecologist should outline a plan of management. Many factors influence this decision, including age, the nutritional status and general condition of the patient, the amount of tumor present, the presence or absence of ascites, the options for postoperative salvage therapy, the attitude of the physician, and the wishes of the patient and her family. The decision of whether to operate or manage the patient nonoperatively is colored by the fact that surgery for patients with refractory ovarian cancer is associated with significant morbidity and mortality; the obstruction cannot be relieved in almost 20% of those undergoing surgery, and postoperative survival is disappointing. In reported series, the serious complication rate has ranged from 28% to 49%, and the operative mortality rate is in the range of 12% to 16%. The median survival rate for patients who have undergone surgery is in the range of 3 to 5 months.

Although some investigators have used projected survival (usually > 2 months) as a parameter to decide on type of management, such an indicator is too unpredictable. Krebs and Goplerud devised a scoring system for selection of patients for surgery that included patient age, nutritional status, amount of palpable tumor, presence of ascites, previous chemotheraphy, and previous radiotherapy. Outcome seemed to correlate with the prognostic score. Clarke-Pearson and colleagues confirmed the influence of disease status, ascites, and nutritional status.

For initial management of a patient with small bowel obstruction, we prefer the insertion of a nasogastric tube rather than a long tube (Cantor, Miller-Abbott, or Denius) for intestinal decompression. After extensive experience with both, we have found no advantage from the latter. Furthermore, long tubes are associated with considerably greater discomfort.
Long intestinal tubes seem to have the greatest success rate in patients with postoperative adhesions but are fairly ineffective in relieving obstruction resulting from cancer. In the study of Krebs and Coplerud, only 10% of patients had their obstruction relieved by tube decompression. In patients for whom no surgery is planned, we have extensively used the technique of percutaneous gastrostomy since 1984. This procedure has resulted in excellent palliation for terminal-stage ovarian cancer patients, avoiding the discomfort of the nasogastric tube and allowing the patient to be easily cared for at home in most cases. With such a device, the patient may even continue to eat, although the nutritional benefit is essentially nil.

Optimal preoperative preparation is desirable if a patient is judged to be a suitable candidate for surgical intervention. For patients with complete colonic obstruction or perforation of the small or large intestine, a surgical emergency exists unless the patient is in such poor condition that such an intervention is not feasible. In emergency cases, the patient should be stabilized with intravenous fluids and antibiotics before surgery. Emergency surgery is rarely indicated for patients with a small intestinal obstruction. It is preferable to optimize the patient’s condition with nasogastric tube decompression and rehydration. In addition, a barium enema is usually indicated to rule out a coexisting colonic obstruction. If the patient is malnourished, then intravenous hyperalimentation may be indicated preoperatively. Ample information suggests that hyperalimentation places the patient in an anabolic state and reduces the incidence of postoperative morbidity; however, its effect on long-term survival is unclear.

Colonic obstruction usually is treated by performing a colostomy. The selection of the site of colostomy depends on the area of obstruction and the ability to find an adequate bowel segment free of cancer. Most commonly, a transverse loop colostomy is indicated because of the presence of a descending colon or sigmoid colon obstruction. There is increasing experience with the use of colonic stents as a substitute for colostomy. Patient selection is key, because erosion of the colonic wall with perforation is a risk.

A number of options are available for small bowel obstruction, depending on the operative findings. Most commonly, there are multiple sites of obstruction in the terminal ileum, in which case a de-ascending colon bypass or de-transverse colon bypass is preferable. In such situations, it is usually both wise and inappropriate to attempt resection and reanastomosis. If, on the other hand, there is an isolated area of obstruction, then a resection and reanastomosis may be indicated. The anastomosis may be either hand sewn using a two-layer technique or approximated with surgical staplers. We generally prefer the latter because of the time-saving aspect. Frequently, there may be extensive tumor with multiple areas of obstruction, making both bypass and resection impossible. A tube gastrostomy is indicated in such a situation, if possible. Procedures such as these are among the most demanding because of the meticulous, often tedious dissection required. Enterotomies are not uncommon and should be repaired as soon as they are identified. Complications of small intestinal procedures include wound infection, intraperitoneal abscess, sepsis, pneumonia, “blind loop syndrome,” and enterocontaneous fistula.

**BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES**

- In the United States, more than 22,000 new cases of ovarian cancer are detected annually, and more than 16,000 women will die of the disease. The lifetime risk of ovarian cancer for a woman in the United States is 1/70. This risk increases to 5% in a woman with one first-degree relative who has ovarian cancer and to 7% if she has two or more relatives with the disease.
- There are three hereditary familial ovarian cancer syndromes: the hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndrome (HBOC), the hereditary site-specific ovarian cancer syndrome (HSSOC), and the hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer syndrome (HNPCC).
- Pelvic examination is inaccurate in assessing ovarian size and morphology, particularly in postmenopausal women and in women who are overweight.
- In a research study, ovarian cancer screening, using a combination of transvaginal sonography and serum biomarkers, results in a decrease in stage at detection and an increase in case-specific survival. However, it is not effective in detecting ovarian cancer in patients whose ovarian volume is normal. With present technology, ovarian cancer screening is not sensitive or specific enough to recommend general population screening. Screening of high-risk women should be individualized.
- Numerous studies have shown improved survival in both early- and advanced-stage ovarian cancer when the initial surgery has been done by a gynecologic oncologist. A careful evaluation of an adnexal mass using transvaginal ultrasound, serum CA-125, and, occasionally, supplemented by other imaging studies will usually identify the patient with a high risk of malignancy who should be referred for surgery by a gynecologic oncologist.
- Surgery for ovarian cancer includes both careful staging to document the extent of the disease and resection or debulking of the tumor. Careful attention to accurate and comprehensive staging is most important in early-stage disease, for which postoperative therapy decisions may depend on the staging findings and histopathologic diagnosis. In patients with advanced disease, maximum surgical debulking to less than 1 cm diameter of residual disease should be the goal.
- In some young women with ovarian cancer, fertility-sparing surgery is possible. In a woman with a lesion apparently confirmed to a single ovary (or rarely both ovaries) who desires future pregnancy, ovarian and uterine conservation should be discussed preoperatively. At surgery, a unilateral oophorectomy and careful staging should be done, but the opposite ovary is not biopsied if it appears normal. If the diagnosis or staging findings are uncertain, it is best to close and await a final review of the permanent sections on the staging studies. Reoperation is preferable to unecessary radicality in a young woman in whom fertility is a concern.
- In women with advanced ovarian cancer, optimal cytoreduction to less than 1 cm residual disease—or even smaller—has clearly been shown to confer a survival advantage. This is true even in patients with stage IV disease. The techniques required to perform radical cytoreduction in ovarian cancer patients and the judgment to know when it is appropriate is a combination of skill and experience and is usually done by gynecologic oncologists operating in hospital with good teams of anesthesiologists, consultants, and critical care experts.
- Laparoscopic surgery for ovarian cancer is currently under investigation. Its role is uncertain at the present time.
- Postoperative chemotherapy is usually required for patients with ovarian cancer; in some cases, chemotherapy may be given before any definitive surgery. This is an important part of the management of ovarian cancer, but it is not addressed in this surgical textbook.
Bibliography


Einhorn N, Sjovak K, Knapp RC, et al. Prospective evaluations of serum CA-


DePriest P, Shenson D, Fried A, et al. Evaluation of CA-125 levels in differenti-

DePriest DP, Banks ER, Powell DE, et al. Endometrioid carcinoma of the ovary

Deppe G, Zbella EA, Skogerson K, et al. The rare indication for splenec-

Deppe G, Malviya VK, Malone JM, et al. Debulking of pelvic and paraaortic

Dark GG, Bower M, Newlands ES, et al. Surveillance policy for stage I ovarian


Fiorica JV, Hoffman MS, LaPolla JP, et al. The management of diaphragmatic

Ford D, Easton DF. The genetics of breast and ovarian cancer.

Copeland L, Silva E, Gershenson D, et al. The significance of mullerian inclu-

Fathalla MF. Incessant ovulation: a factor in ovarian neoplasia? [letter].

Cook LS, Kamb ML, Weiss NS. Perineal powder exposure and risk of ovarian

Clayton RD, Obermair A, Hammond RG, et al. The western Australian expre-

Clayton RD, Obermair A, Hammond RG, et al. The western Australian expe-

written for it.

Grb249-3368G

Grb249-Rock-v5.cls

January 3, 2008 11:58

P1: OSO/OVY

P2: OSO/OVY

QC: OSO/OVY

T1: OSO

Printer: rock-hr

Ovarian Cancer: Etiology, Screening, and Surgery

1335

analysis of the BRCA1 and BRCA2 genes in breast cancer families. The


Friedman J, Weiss N. Second thoughts about second-look laparotomy in ad-


Friedman J, Weiss N. Second thoughts about second-look laparotomy in ad-


Gynecol Oncol 2000;79:144.


Gershenson DM. Management of early ovarian cancer: germ cell and sex cord-

Gynecol Oncol 1994;55:162.


Gershenson DM, Morem M, Burke TW, et al. Treatment of post-progression sex cord-stromal tumors of the ovary with the combination of Bevacizumab, etopo-

dride, and platinum. Gynecol Oncol 1996;67:327.


Gertz CC. Surgical resection of tumor bulk in the primary treatment of ovarian


tumor operation in ovarian cancer. Gynecol Oncol 1993;52:678.

tumor operation in ovarian cancer. Gynecol Oncol 1993;52:678.


tumor operation in ovarian cancer. Gynecol Oncol 1993;52:678.


Ovarian Cancer: Etiology, Screening, and Surgery


DEFINITIONS

Anterior pelvic exenteration—Similar to a total exenteration, except the rectum is left intact. This procedure may be used for anterior pelvic recurrences, anterior vaginal cancers, or bladder or urethral tumors.

Posterior pelvic exenteration—Similar to a total exenteration, except the bladder, urethra, and distal ureters are left intact. This procedure may be suitable for posterior pelvic recurrences or some rectal lesions.

Total pelvic exenteration—Surgical removal of all the pelvic organs, including the uterus, cervix, tubes, ovaries, vagina, bladder, urethra, and distal rectum and anus. In most cases, a pelvic and paraaortic lymphadenectomy are also done.

Triad of trouble—Sometimes called the terrible triad, these signs and symptoms are usually indicators of pelvic sidewall involvement with tumor. The triad is composed of (i) unilateral ureteral obstruction, (ii) sciatic nerve pain, and (iii) unilateral leg edema.

Wet colostomy—An old practice of placing the ureters into the bowel just before it exits the abdomen via a colostomy. The urine and feces are passed via a single abdominal stoma. This technique was abandoned because of frequent pyelonephritis, electrolyte abnormalities, and very unpleasant stoma discharge.

It has been more than 50 years since Brunschwig introduced surgical exenteration as an option to control cancers within the pelvic organs. Initially, significant morbidity and mortality rates ranging from 50% to 70% were encountered. These rates have decreased dramatically, allowing the survival rate for those treated to increase substantially. The results of ultraradical pelvic surgery have been enhanced by a number of advances.

Improved surgical techniques and training have decreased operative time and blood loss and limited the extent of disfigurement. Perioperative morbidity has been reduced through the control of infection and the use of blood component therapy, improved anesthetic techniques, parenteral nutrition, and intensive care facilities managed by expert medical teams. Although pelvic exenteration is a formidable procedure, the 5-year survival rate is greater than 50% for appropriately targeted women (Table 50.1). Exenteration has become the treatment of choice for certain types of advanced or recurrent tumors of the pelvis, and it provides another chance at survival for women in whom primary therapy has failed.

Careful patient selection using a thorough and detailed approach to preoperative assessment is essential. Strict guidelines regarding the indications and contraindications for operability must be met. The adaptive ability of patients who survive is dramatic given the magnitude of anatomic and physiologic change associated with exenteration. However, those who die of their disease despite this heroic surgical effort commonly experience intractable pain from intestinal obstruction or distant metastases.

Many modifications of the Brunschwig procedure have been instituted since its introduction in 1948. The most significant modification was introduced in 1950 when Bricker developed and reported his classic ileal conduit technique. This technique provided an isolated conduit for urinary diversion, which became a replacement option for the traditional “wet colostomies” or ureterosigmoidostomy in which both stool and urine exited from a solitary stoma. The separation of urinary and fecal streams represented a huge advance in terms of reducing complication rates from infection. Despite the requirement for two stomas, this technique also achieved greater patient acceptance. Other more recent advances—such as continent urinary diversion, the use of automatic stapling devices for the gastrointestinal portion of the procedure, pelvic floor coverage, vaginal reconstruction, and low rectal anastomosis—also have improved the overall results and rehabilitation of patients.

Total pelvic exenteration encompasses removal of the genital organs (vagina, uterus, fallopian tubes, and ovaries) as well as the bladder and rectum. An isolated segment of bowel is used to construct a replacement urinary reservoir. A segment of small or large bowel or a combination of both may be considered. Modifications of the pelvic exenterative procedure include either an anterior or posterior exenteration or a total exenteration with a low rectal anastomosis. Patients whose cancer is confined to the anterior pelvic structures are candidates for anterior exenteration, which removes the bladder and genital organs while leaving the gastrointestinal system intact. In this situation, a urinary conduit is developed from an isolated segment of bowel into which the ureters are anastomosed. For tumors limited to posterior structures, posterior exenteration can be used to remove the genital organs and rectum, allowing preservation of the urinary system. In selected patients who undergo a total pelvic exenteration, a low rectal anastomosis can be accomplished if the lower 6 to 10 cm of rectum is preserved. The end-to-end anastomosis (EEA) stapling device designed for this purpose is used to reconstruct the rectum low in the pelvis. Low anastomosis often requires a protective colostomy because the anastomosis has been constructed in an irradiated field. The colostomy can be reversed at a later date, eliminating one of the patient’s stomas.

INDICATIONS AND CONTRAINDICATIONS

The decision-making process begins when the physician first sees the patient and takes her history. An initial diagnostic evaluation is obtained. If the patient appears to be a candidate for a pelvic exenterative procedure, she is referred to a gynecologic oncologist who is experienced in the evaluation and treatment of such patients. The best outcomes are achieved in patients who have centrally recurrent squamous cell carcinoma of the
Pelvic Exenteration

### Table 50.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Operative mortality (%)</th>
<th>5-year survival (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parsons and Friendell (1964)</td>
<td>112 14 21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brunschwig (1965)</td>
<td>535 16 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rutledge and Bums (1965)</td>
<td>108 17 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kueflew et al. (1967)</td>
<td>207 8 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symmonds et al. (1968)</td>
<td>118 12 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keicham et al. (1970)</td>
<td>162 7 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brunschwig (1970)</td>
<td>225 8 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symmonds et al. (1973)</td>
<td>198 8 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rutledge et al. (1977)</td>
<td>296 13 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Averette et al. (1984)</td>
<td>92 24 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morley et al. (1989)</td>
<td>100 2 63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shingleton et al. (1989)</td>
<td>143 6 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berkle et al. (2003)</td>
<td>75 4 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 50.2

| Effect of Pelvic Lymph Node Metastasis on Survival After Pelvic Exenteration |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Negative nodes              | Positive nodes              | Negative nodes              |
| Report                      | No. patients | 5-year survival (%) | No. patients | 5-year survival (%) |
| Barber and Jones (1971)     | 166          | 17               | 97           | 5               |
| Creasman and Rutledge (1974)| 29           | 27               | 14           | 14              |
| Symmonds et al. (1975)      | 139          | 39               | 59           | 13              |
| Averette et al. (1984)      | 92           | —                | 6            | 0               |
| Morley et al. (1989)        | 87           | 70               | 13           | 0               |
| Shingleton et al. (1989)    | 106          | —                | 10           | 10              |

venous pyelogram demonstrating ureteral obstruction, (b) sciatic nerve distribution of pain suggesting neural sheath involve-
ment at or near the lateral pelvic wall, and (c) lower-extremity edema, implying venous or lymphatic compromise of the iliac vessels. If none or one of these features were present, explo-
ration to determine resectability was recommended. If two or more of these abnormalities were present, the patient’s disease was considered unresectable. If there is any doubt whether the lesion can be resected, the patient should undergo exploratory surgery, because exenteration is often the patient’s last oppor-
tunity for curative therapy.

Several diagnostic techniques can aid in assessing resectability in a patient who is believed to have central pelvic disease on clinical grounds. Evaluation of resectability is important from both a technical and psychological standpoint. A preop-
erative study that demonstrates the presence of unresectable disease helps to avoid not only the morbidity of exploratory laparotomy, but also its attendant false hope for cure. There is a tremendous negative psychological impact on the patient when she is prepared preoperatively for the exenterative proce-
dure only to be told postoperatively that she had an inoperable lesion.

Computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imag-
aging (MRI) can be most beneficial in assessing the presence of lateral pelvic wall invasion and unsuspected liver metastases as well as in further evaluation of the retroperitoneal lymph nodes. MRI is especially useful in locating tumor invasion at the pelvic wall.

Exenteration under anesthesia with transvaginal Tru-Cut
needle biopsy can be used to evaluate a palpable pelvic mass at the lateral pelvic wall. These biopsies can differentiate between recurrent neoplasm and postirradiation fibrosis when thick-
ened tissue is encountered throughout the pelvis. Fine-needle aspiration (FNA) of suspicious regional lymph nodes under CT scan guidance can be helpful in confirming unresectable metastases. McDonald and coworkers reported that FNA had an 85% accuracy rate in identifying positive nodes. Because the 5-year survival rate drops to 0% to 14% when the pelvic lymph nodes are positive, pelvic exenteration is unwarranted, and exploratory surgery is not recommended (Table 50.2). It
must be remembered that a negative biopsy does not guarantee that cancer is not present, but merely that no cancer was identified at the focal point of the needle tip.

The final diagnostic decision concerning the operability of disease is made when the patient is examined under anesthesia and as the exploratory laparotomy is performed. Fixation of the tumor in the pelvis caused by recurrent disease extending to the pelvic sidewall, penetration of the tumor into the peritoneal cavity with dissemination of cells intraabdominally, and extrapelvic involvement of regional lymph nodes, omentum, liver, and other structures are all contraindications to the performance of pelvic exenteration with curative intent. These components of the procedure should be delayed until resectability is confirmed. Incomplete resection with positive margins or metastatic disease is not curative and subjects the patient to an extended and difficult postoperative recovery without a realistic chance of long-term survival.

Pelvic exenteration is a relatively therapeutic option for relatively few women with recurrent cancer. About one third of recurrences appear to be central pelvic failure by clinical examination. Of these, one half are excluded from surgical therapy when diagnostic studies reveal unresectable disease. About one half of women who undergo exploration for exenteration are found to have inoperable disease, and the procedure is aborted. Of those who undergo resection by exenteration, about one half obtain long-term survival and apparent cure (Fig. 50.1).

Pelvic exenteration is not considered a treatment of choice for primary disease except in a limited number of patients with carcinoma of the vulva and in selected patients with nonsynergologic lesions that involve the bladder, urethra, or colon. In the past, stage IVA carcinoma of the cervix involving the bladder or rectum was treated in this manner; however, the results were not considered superior to those achieved by full-course pelvic radiotherapy. Exenteration has been abandoned as primary therapy for this lesion since Rutledge and Burns treated stage IV lesions with radiation therapy and showed an acceptable 28% survival rate. The same concept exists in regard to primary carcinoma of the vagina, for which radiation therapy is the preferred initial treatment. Current chemoradiation protocols with or without conservative surgery appear to provide results equivalent or superior to those obtained with exenteration for advanced tumors of the cervix, vulva, and vagina. Consequently, primary exenteration has become a rare operation.

Disease-free interval—the time from primary diagnosis to recurrence—is highly predictive of survival following exenteration. In all series, there is a direct relation between time from primary treatment to time of recurrence and survival: 5-year survival rate of greater than 90% has been reported when the disease-free interval was greater than 10 years, compared with a survival rate less than 50% when this interval was 1 year or less.

Pelvic exenteration occasionally may be indicated to manage severely damaged irradiated tissue in the pelvis. Many patients with radiation necrosis experience intractable pain, copious amounts of foul-smelling discharge, and both urinary and rectal fistulas from tissue necrosis. In many cases, symptoms can be relieved with urinary and/or bowel diversion procedures alone. Palliative exenteration should be considered only in extreme cases in which more conservative approaches have failed.

Traditionally, the presence of recurrent or persistent adenocarcinoma of the female pelvic organs was a relative contraindication to exenterative therapy. These glandular lesions are more likely to disseminate through the hematologic or lymphatic routes and bypass the traditional, more orderly mode of spread seen with squamous tumors. However, small recent series suggest that exenteration can provide curative therapy for 30% to 50% of women with isolated central recurrence of adenocarcinoma of the endocervix and endometrium (Table 50.3). A diligent search for unresectable metastases must be performed before and during the operation. High tumor grade and short disease-free interval are correlated with decreasing chance of survival. Locally advanced or recurrent pelvic sarcoma, although rare, occasionally may be managed by pelvic exenteration.

Age, religious orientation, obesity, and medical and psychological alterations must be evaluated as potential contraindications to exenteration. Although life expectancy beyond 70 years for women who undergo this procedure steadily diminishes, this factor alone is not an absolute deterrent to this procedure. A number of patients older than 70 years have been treated successfully with return to fully functional status. Religious orientation is seldom a contraindication; however, the high likelihood of blood replacement requires that the patient be willing to accept transfusion of blood and blood products.
Pelvic Exenteration

### Preoperative Preparation

The initial planning for pelvic exenteration begins in the outpatient office. A full discussion is undertaken with the patient before definitive surgery is planned. The complete operation—including the removal of the bladder, vagina, and rectum and the possible necessity of two ostomies—is fully outlined. Occasionally, patients cannot psychologically adjust to the concept of the operation and refuse further evaluation. Such decisions should be honored, and ongoing supportive care of the patient should be offered. For the patient who can psychologically commit to the removal of her pelvic viscera, a further discussion is undertaken to assess her desire for vaginal reconstruction, creation of a continent urinary diversion, and, potentially, low rectal reanastomosis.

Patients are admitted the day before surgery for bowel preparation and intravenous hydration and to be marked by the stomal therapist for ostomy placement. Arterial blood gas analysis is obtained routinely. For patients whose oxygen saturation is adequate, pulmonary function testing is not routinely performed. A central venous catheter should be placed during anesthetic induction to provide appropriate vascular access. Preoperative total parenteral nutrition is not used routinely unless the patient has a nutritional deficit. Intravenous prophylactic antibiotics are given on call to the operating room, and the patient is shaved just before surgery. Venous prophylactic antibiotics are given on call to the operating room, and the patient is shaved just before surgery. Intravenous prophylactic antibiotics are given on call to the operating room, and the patient is shaved just before surgery.

The patient is positioned for surgery using Allen stirrups. This position allows simultaneous access to the abdominal and perineal areas for bimanual assessment of the lesion intraoperatively and to facilitate the “double team” approach to operating transabdominally and transvaginally simultaneously. A two-team approach should be considered in all cases to shorten anesthetic time, reduce blood loss, and minimize fatigue of the surgical team. Rotation of members of the operative team in and out of the operating room allows for rest and refreshment and minimizes the chance of fatigue-related operator errors during the critical reconstructive phase of the operation.

### Intraoperative Exploration

The abdomen is opened using a vertical midline incision. Although a transverse incision allows greater pelvic exposure and facilitates the lateral pelvic wall assessment, it limits the upper abdominal evaluation, aortic node dissection, and creation of continent urinary diversion (Fig. 50.2). On entry into the peritoneal cavity, the surgeon should carefully palpate all organs, surfaces, and lymph node areas. The liver is examined for evidence of metastatic disease. Cytologic washings and ascitic fluid, if present, can be recovered and sent for immediate cytologic analysis. Any areas that appear abnormal on the preoperative diagnostic studies are examined. Any questionable areas are biopsied and samples sent for frozen-section analysis. Abnormal nodal findings are similarly analyzed, with a specific focus on the pelvic, high common iliac, and paraaortic lymph nodes. Frozen-section support by a pathologist experienced in the evaluation and diagnosis of gynecologic cancers and eradicated tissue changes is absolutely essential.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>No. of patients</th>
<th>Morbidity (%)</th>
<th>5-year survival (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phillips et al. (1981)</td>
<td>Vulva</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavanagh and Shepherd (1982)</td>
<td>Vulva</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hopkins and Mozley (1992)</td>
<td>Vulva</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miller et al. (1995)</td>
<td>Vulva</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morris et al. (1996)</td>
<td>Endometrium</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barakat et al. (1999)</td>
<td>Endometrium</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Obesity is a relative contraindication to surgery. Most patients with recurrent cancer of the cervix have a protracted disease course and are rarely overweight. These patients present technical problems that further complicate an already difficult procedure, and they must be evaluated individually. Stomal construction can be difficult in these patients, operating time is prolonged, infection rates are increased, and pulmonary function may be compromised during the postoperative period.

Medical condition and psychological state are important factors in deciding whether some patients should undergo operation. Surgical risks must be weighed against the benefit of the procedure. The patient’s willingness to actively participate in her recovery and her ability to adapt psychologically are key components to the success of resection. In most settings where exenteration is offered, there is no favorable alternative therapy. The patient must clearly understand the implications of her decision to seek or refuse exenteration. Although small, the risk of perioperative mortality with this operation is definite. Complications of some type are seen in 30% to 50% of cases.

The preoperative medical and anesthetic assessments of the cardiorespiratory, renal, and nutritional status of the patient must be thorough. Consultants with expertise in these areas must be available during the perioperative period. All patients require close surveillance in an intensive care unit postoperatively. Patients must also be psychologically prepared for the significant alterations in their excretory systems and their sexual function. These patients often benefit from counseling by an enterostomal therapist, psychologist, or psychiatrist before the operation. The consultant’s aid in preparing the patient may be as important as the surgery itself. An informal discussion with another patient who has satisfactorily adjusted to the alterations of exenteration frequently is beneficial and should be considered.

The surgeon who undertakes pelvic exenterative therapy has responsibilities beyond the performance of surgery. The surgeon must consider the quality of life remaining for the patient if it is not.
FIGURE 50.2. Use of the low lithotomy position and Allen stirrups allows three operating surgeons to have direct visual access to the abdominal cavity. This position also provides access for a second team to perform the perineal portion of the resection and the vaginal reconstruction while the upper team creates the urinary conduit and colostomy.

Paraortic lymph node dissection is performed by initially incising the peritoneum over the lower aorta (Fig. 50.3) or right common iliac vessels. The area is carefully evaluated by visual and tactile examination. The lymph node dissection is begun at or just below the bifurcation of the aorta and proceeds cephalad. The lymphatic tissue is carefully freed from the aorta; hemoclips are used to ligate the small perforating vessels. Using gentle upward traction and sharp dissection, the surgeon can isolate the nodes to about the level of the inferior mesenteric artery. The uppermost pedicle is tied or ligated with an appropriate hemoclip. A similar dissection is performed over the anterior wall of the inferior vena cava to obtain lymph nodes located on the right side of the aorta. Squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix spreads in a stepwise manner; thus, extensive paraaortic node dissection to the level of the renal artery is not necessary. If the lower paraaortic tissue is negative for metastatic disease, none is found at a higher level. The high common iliac and pelvic lymph nodes are dissected similarly and evaluated. Dissection to the level of the renal vessels should be performed in patients with adenocarcinoma of the cervix or endometrium whose tumors have a less predictable pattern of lymphatic spread.

When this evaluation is completed and there are no contraindications to proceeding, the round ligaments are divided and the pararectal and paravesical spaces are opened. The paravesical space is developed by bluntly sweeping the bladder away from the pubic symphysis in the space of Retzius and continuing the dissection laterally, sweeping the bladder medially off the pelvic sidewall until the fibrovascular pedicles are encountered at the 4- and 8-o’clock positions. These fibrovascular pedicles, commonly referred to as “the web,” contain the uterine artery and vein, the ureter, the base of the broad ligament extending from the upper vagina and cervix to the pelvic sidewall, and the superior hemorrhoidal vessels. One pelvic sidewall at a time should be evaluated. The round ligament is ligated and divided, and the peritoneum is incised over the iliopectineus muscle. This exposes the pararectal space, which is developed by bluntly freeing the medial leaf of the peritoneum with the attached ureter from its areolar attachment to the pelvic sidewall structures. When the pararectal space is fully developed, the fibrovascular pedicle can be palpated between the operator’s thumb and index finger, allowing for evaluation of the pelvic sidewall. Any nodular or suspicious area in this region is biopsied and frozen section is obtained (Fig. 50.4). At this early stage in the operation, the mass of neoplasm should be movable. Free spaces should be present between the neoplasm and the pelvic sidewalls in both the paravesical and pararectal spaces. If the tumor mass is not freely movable, lateral invasion is likely, and a more extensive evaluation of resectability should be undertaken. Biopsy of the cardinal ligaments or lateral tumor spread at the pelvic sidewall should be taken for frozen section.

At this point in the operation, the patient has not been committed to an exenteration because neither the bowel nor the ureter has been transected. Once disease resectability has been confirmed and the decision to perform an exenteration is made, the specific type of procedure—total, posterior, or...
Pelvic Exenteration

Figure 50.4. The pararectal and paravesical spaces have been developed. Thickened or suggestive areas of tumor extension to the sidewalls are sampled for frozen section analysis. The uterine artery is divided at its origin from the internal iliac and is tied with 2-0 silk.

Retention of the Specimen

An en bloc dissection of the pelvic tissue is undertaken by clamping and dividing the web of tissue at the pelvic sidewalls. Large pedicle clamps are used to clamp the tissue and control the bleeding from this area. The tissue is divided and ligated with suture, using either suture ligatures or large hemostatic clips. We prefer to clamp, divide, and ligate the uterine artery at the top of the web lateral to the ureter separately, allowing the dissection to continue along the pelvic sidewall. The ureters are freed from the medial leaf of the peritoneum with sharp dissection, clipped with large hemoclips, and transected as distally as possible. The proximal ureters distend during the remainder of this part of the procedure, facilitating their later anastomosis into the urinary conduit.

The sigmoid colon is divided using the gastrointestinal anastomotic (GIA) stapler. Before this division, small epiploic vessels are divided and tied. A free space is developed in the bowel mesentery just beneath the bowel wall. This allows introduction of either a bowel clamp or the staple. The peritoneum overlying the mesentery is incised, exposing the vessels to the sigmoid colon. These are cross-clamped and tied. Transillumination of the vascular arcade leading to the bowel allows for preservation of the major blood supply, which consists of the sigmoidal and superior hemorrhoidal arteries arising from the inferior mesenteric artery, the middle hemorrhoidal arteries coming bilaterally from the hypogastric vessels, and the inferior hemorrhoidal vessels from the pudendal arteries. The sigmoidal artery usually is preserved, whereas the superior hemorrhoidal vessel is ligated.

When the sigmoid colon is divided and the superior hemorrhoidal vessel is clamped and divided, the sigmoid is detached from the sacrum, and a free space becomes apparent (Fig. 50.5). This is an avascular plane, and the dissection should be directed toward the colon and away from the sacrum. Using blunt dissection, the colon can be freed posteriorly to the levator ani muscles that compromise the lateral pelvic diaphragm. Care must be taken not to damage the sacral veins when dissecting the colon free in this area. If these sacral veins are torn, the resulting hemorrhage is often difficult to control. Attempts to clamp and ligate the sacral vessels are uniformly unsuccessful. Fine, absorbable figure-of-eight sutures or packing with the use of absorbable hemostatic substances may be more beneficial in these instances. Sterile thumbtacks placed directly into the sacrum also can be used to control this bleeding. The middle hemorrhoidal vessels are clamped, further freeing the pelvic specimen. These pedicles, entering from the 4- and 8-o'clock positions, are ligated with suture (Fig. 50.6).

As the pelvic diaphragm is approached abdominally, the second surgical team begins the perineal phase of the operation. The incision around the urethra, vagina, and rectum is outlined, and the dissection proceeds cephalad toward the pelvic diaphragm from below. These muscles are transected circumferentially, and the specimen is removed in toto through the pelvis. The pelvis is copiously irrigated, and hemostasis is achieved. The perineum is supported by approximating the levator muscles with absorbable sutures. If a bilateral myocutaneous graft is to be used for vaginal reconstruction, the second team begins “harvesting” the grafts while the team operating in the abdomen begins construction of the urinary conduit.
Conduit Formation

We prefer either the continent urinary reservoir or the ileal conduit. About 15 cm of the terminal ileum is selected as the urinary conduit; it is divided with the GIA stapler. It is important to carefully estimate the length of the conduit segment. If the conduit is too short, stomal retraction and stenosis follows. An excessively long conduit can lead to stone formation or metabolic complications from fluid and electrolyte absorption across the bowel mucosa. In the obese patient, measurements for the conduit should be taken during the preoperative planning phase. In general, the conduit length should be 15 cm plus the thickness of the anterior abdominal wall when the patient is in the supine or standing position to account for the thickness of the patient's pannus. Alternatively, a segment of

FIGURE 50.5. Ureters have been tied and divided. The colon has been isolated and divided with the gastrointestinal anastomotic stapler. The superior hemorrhoidal vessels have been clamped and divided previously. The colon is swept free by gentle blunt dissection from the sacrum. Similarly, the bladder is swept free from the symphysis pubis (arrows).

FIGURE 50.6. The fibrovascular pedicle (the "web") is progressively clamped and divided down to the pelvic floor. The perineal dissection is simultaneously performed with isolation and removal of the pelvic mass in toto.
The ileal conduit is created by isolating a 15- to 20-cm segment of ileum as needed for the conduit. If there is significant radiation injury to the bowel in the pelvis, a transverse colon conduit can be constructed.

The ureters are further freed along their routes using blunt and sharp dissection. Care should be taken to select an area of the ureter for anastomosis that is relatively free of radiation damage. The left ureter should be freed superiorly and tunneled through an avascular window in the bowel mesentery to reach the isolated segment of ileum. After an appropriate site is selected to ensure a tension-free anastomosis, the ureters are sutured to the bowel segment (Fig. 50.7). This site usually is 2 to 3 cm from the proximal end of the conduit. The site is opened sharply for about 1 cm. Some surgeons choose not to use stents; however, we routinely place a Silastic pediatric feeding tube through the lumen of the bowel and through the selected anastomotic site into the ureter. The stent is sutured to the bowel with fine absorbable suture passing through the bowel wall and the feeding tube. The ureter is then spatulated to the bowel with fine absorbable suture passing through the mucosa of the ureter to the antimesenteric border for a distance of about 4 to 5 mm. A full-thickness mucosa-to-mucosa anastomosis of the ureter to the bowel is performed using fine interrupted absorbable sutures. The feeding tube is then sutured to the bowel segment (Fig. 50.7). This site usually is 2 to 3 cm from the proximal end of the conduit. The site is selected to ensure a tension-free anastomosis, the ureters are sutured to the bowel segment (Fig. 50.7). This site usually is 2 to 3 cm from the proximal end of the conduit. The site is opened sharply for about 1 cm. Some surgeons choose not to use stents; however, we routinely place a Silastic pediatric feeding tube through the lumen of the bowel and through the selected anastomotic site into the ureter. The stent is sutured to the bowel with fine absorbable suture passing through the bowel wall and the feeding tube. The ureter is then spatulated for a distance of about 4 to 5 mm. A full-thickness mucosa-to-mucosa anastomosis of the ureter to the antimesenteric border of the isolated segment of bowel is then performed using fine (3-0 or 4-0) absorbable suture. Six to ten interrupted sutures are used for the anastomosis. The ureter is anchored with long-acting absorbable suture to the underside of the conduit about 2 cm from the anastomosis to further reduce tension on the anastomosis. When the conduit is completed, the distal end is brought through the preselected site on the abdominal wall and, once positioned, is sutured to the peritoneum for stability. A “rosebud” stoma is fashioned to allow for ease of care and application of the urinary appliance. The proximal end of the conduit can be anchored to the sacral peritoneum to stabilize the unit.

The sigmoid colon may be used. If a colostomy is to be done, this saves a small bowel anastomosis because an isolated segment of ileum is not needed for the conduit. If there is significant radiation injury to the bowel in the pelvis, a transverse colon conduit can be constructed.

The ureters are further freed along their routes using blunt and sharp dissection. Care should be taken to select an area of the ureter for anastomosis that is relatively free of radiation damage. The left ureter should be freed superiorly and tunneled through an avascular window in the bowel mesentery to reach the isolated segment of ileum. After an appropriate site is selected to ensure a tension-free anastomosis, the ureters are sutured to the bowel segment (Fig. 50.7). This site usually is 2 to 3 cm from the proximal end of the conduit. The site is opened sharply for about 1 cm. Some surgeons choose not to use stents; however, we routinely place a Silastic pediatric feeding tube through the lumen of the bowel and through the selected anastomotic site into the ureter. The stent is sutured to the bowel with fine absorbable suture passing through the bowel wall and the feeding tube. The ureter is then spatulated for a distance of about 4 to 5 mm. A full-thickness mucosa-to-mucosa anastomosis of the ureter to the antimesenteric border of the isolated segment of bowel is then performed using fine (3-0 or 4-0) absorbable suture. Six to ten interrupted sutures are used for the anastomosis. The ureter is anchored with long-acting absorbable suture to the underside of the conduit about 2 cm from the anastomosis to further reduce tension on the anastomosis. When the conduit is completed, the distal end is brought through the preselected site on the abdominal wall and, once positioned, is sutured to the peritoneum for stability. A “rosebud” stoma is fashioned to allow for ease of care and application of the urinary appliance. The proximal end of the conduit can be anchored to the sacral peritoneum to stabilize the unit.

The continent urinary conduit has gained increasing acceptance and now provides a legitimate alternative to the ileal conduit. This modification of the urinary diversion procedure requires serial catheterization but eliminates the need for an external appliance. Construction of the continent conduit is more complex but is a preferred option for appropriate patients.

The continent conduit is formed from the right colon and the proximal portion of the transverse colon as well as a distal part of the terminal ileum. The details of this technique are provided in Chapter 51. Once the continent urinary conduit has been developed, the terminal ileum is brought through the abdominal wall. This site should be preselected, and care must be taken to bring the terminal ileum straight through the layers of the abdominal wall so that catheterization is not impeded postoperatively. A kink or turn in the ileum may cause the patient to have difficulty with catheterization. Ureteral stents are placed at the time of ureteral implantation; these are brought through separate stab incisions in both the cecum and the abdominal wall. A Foley or 14 F red Robinson catheter is placed through the stoma, and the conduit drains dependently for about 10 to 20 days.

For all urinary diversions, an intravenous pyelogram or loopogram is obtained about 10 to 14 days postoperatively. If there is no urinary leakage, the ureteral stents can be removed. The patient is instructed on methods of appliance application (ileal conduit) or self-catheterization and irrigation (continent conduit).

The sites for urinary and fecal stomas, which are selected preoperatively by the stomal therapist, are marked on the abdomen using scratch marks or sterile methylene blue injections before the patient is draped. The urinary conduit is brought through the abdominal wall in the right lower quadrant, midway between the umbilicus and the anterior superior iliac spines, where a flat skin surface is available for attachment of the prosthesis. The sigmoid colostomy site is located in the left lower quadrant.

The abdominal wall aperture is prepared by removing a round segment, 2 to 3 cm in diameter, through its entire thickness to the level of the fascia. Skin, subcutaneous fat, and external oblique fascia must all be excised so that the flow of urine from the conduit is not obstructed. The urinary conduit is brought through the abdominal wall, and the serosa of the bowel is sutured to the peritoneum. The bowel mucosa is everted, creating a raised “rosebud” stoma, which projects over the abdominal wall. The stoma is fashioned with interrupted sutures of 3-0 delayed-absorbable suture, which passes initially through the dermis at the skin edge, then through the serosa and musculature of the adjacent bowel wall, and finally through the free margin of the bowel mucosa. When the sutures are tied, the mucosa is everted over the serosa of the bowel to produce a raised stoma that directs the urine away from the skin surface, thus reducing the chance for stricture and skin irritation.
FIGURE 50.8. Technique for creating a bowel stoma that is elevated from the skin surface. This “rosebud” stoma is developed by excising a 3-cm circumferential segment of abdominal wall (A), anchoring the skin margin with the adjacent wall of the exteriorized bowel (B), and approximating the mucosal edge of the bowel to the skin (C). The cross-sectional view demonstrates how the bowel wall is anchored to the skin margin to prevent retraction (D).

Application of the urinary stoma bag also is facilitated by the raised opening.

The fecal stream is diverted through the left abdominal wall in a similar manner (Fig. 50.8). The free end of the sigmoid colon is brought through the abdominal wall to the skin through the previously marked site. If anatomically feasible, the colostomy bud should be placed below the waistline so that the colostomy bag is not constantly pulled on by the waistband of the patient’s clothing. Stoma construction is accomplished as described in the preceding.

Pelvic Floor Coverage

Attention is then directed to the pelvic floor. If vaginal reconstruction has been done using myocutaneous flaps, these effectively fill the pelvis and bring in new blood supply. Coverage of this raw surface enhances hemostasis and minimizes the risks of bowel adhesions and subsequent obstruction. If no vaginal reconstruction is done, an omental J-flap is used for this purpose with satisfactory results. The omental attachment to the greater curvature of the stomach is isolated, transected, and ligated (Fig. 50.9). Hemostasis must be meticulous. The operator must preserve the blood supply from the left gastroepiploic artery as the major blood supply to the omentum. The omental flap can be laid into the pelvic basin as a carpet and sutured in place with absorbable interrupted sutures. The omental coverage of the pelvic floor provides “new” blood supply to the surgical site and enhances healing. Some type of pelvic floor support should be provided to minimize the possibility of vaginal evisceration. Usually, this can be accomplished by suturing the remnants of the levator muscles together in the midline.

Anterior Exenteration

Anterior exenteration is a modification of total exenteration that leaves the rectosigmoid colon and posterior vagina intact. After the ureters are isolated and divided, the rectum must be taken down from the posterior vagina. This is accomplished by incising the peritoneum along the rectovaginal peritoneal reflection. When this free space has been entered, the rectum can be bluntly dissected from the upper portion of the posterior vagina. It is freed laterally from the uterosacral ligament.
Pelvic Exenteration 1349

FIGURE 50.9. An omental “J-flap” can be developed by separating the right-sided portion of the omentum from the stomach and transverse colon. This pedicle then is positioned over the pelvic defect and loosely sutured in place.

uterosacral ligaments are clamped, divided, and ligated with sutures as close to the sacrum as possible. The procedure is carried down the pelvic sidewalls, similar to the procedure for total exenteration. Great care is taken to ensure that the rectum and its blood supply are not damaged. When the perineal phase is performed, the vagina is entered in its midportion and dissection connected into the upper portion of the rectovaginal septum. An ileal conduit is constructed as described. Alternatively, a continent reservoir can be created. A single gracilis myocutaneous flap can be used to replace the anterior vaginal wall.

Posterior Exenteration

Posterior exenteration is most often used for vulvar cancer and is also a modification of total exenteration. In this procedure, the uterovesical peritoneum is incised and the bladder is freed, using sharp and blunt dissection, from the cervix and vagina. After the uterine artery is ligated, the ureter must be dissected free down to the bladder. This is performed in a manner similar to that used for a radical hysterectomy. This allows for visualization of the ureter and frees it from the vagina. The web can be divided in a manner similar to that used for total exenteration. The ureter and bladder are preserved under direct visualization of these structures. The perineal phase retains the anterior vagina adjacent to the base of the bladder in the lowermost portion of the pelvis. The upper and posterior vagina are resected along with the rectosigmoid colon. An end sigmoid colostomy is created. A single gracilis myocutaneous flap can be used to replace the posterior vaginal wall and fill the surgical defect (Fig. 50.10). This is particularly useful because bladder prolapse is common following loss of the posterior support structures.

Total Exenteration with Low Rectal Resealostomosis

The lower 6 to 10 cm of rectum may be preserved in selected patients undergoing total pelvic exenteration. This depends on the location of the recurrent tumor. When this lower portion of the rectum is preserved, the sigmoid colon can be brought down and anastomosed to the rectal stump. This is greatly facilitated by use of the EEA stapler. In these patients, the colon has been previously divided using a GIA stapler proximally across the sigmoid and a TA-50 or reticulating stapler across the rectum. The staple line is cut off the sigmoid, and a running suture of 2-0 nylon or Prolene, starting on the outside, is placed on the open end of the sigmoid colon. The anvil of the EEA stapler is placed in the sigmoid, and the purse string is tied. The EEA stapler is introduced through the rectum and centered so that the spike can be advanced through or just above the staple line. The spike is removed, and the stem of the anvil is inserted. When the stapler is properly oriented, the two ends of the bowel are approximated, and the stapler is fired. When the stapler is removed, a “doughnut” of tissue from each end of the bowel should be present in the removed EEA stapler. The anastomosis is reinforced with interrupted sutures. A temporary diverting colostomy usually is necessary if the patient has been previously irradiated. Bowel continuity can be restored via colostomy closure in 3 to 6 months. This technique is illustrated in Chapter 43.
FIGURE 50.10. A single gracilis myocutaneous flap can be used for reconstruction when anterior or posterior exenteration is performed. The single flap can be harvested from either thigh, rotated into position, and sutured to the remaining vagina.

Gynecologic Oncology

VAGINAL RECONSTRUCTION

Split-Thickness Skin Graft Vaginoplasty

The skin graft is taken from the buttocks or the posterior thigh as a split-thickness graft 10 to 15 cm in length at about 0.013 to 0.017 of an inch in thickness, using the air-powered dermatome. A vaginal stent is selected from commercially available supplies or fashioned from a foam obturator, the graft is sewn together over the obturator, and the visible end is sutured to the introitus. This technique is illustrated in Chapter 51. The patient is confined to bed for 3 days, and ambulation is allowed on the fourth or fifth day. The obturator is removed for the first time on about the fifth day, but may be left in place for up to 10 days. The patient leaves the obturator in place continuously for 4 to 6 months, removing it for cleaning and vaginal irrigation every day or so. It is worn at night for another 4 to 6 months to minimize the risk of stricture of the skin graft. The obturator can be fashioned inexpensively by shaping a piece of foam rubber and covering it with a condom. The patient can attempt intercourse about 6 weeks after surgery. Skin grafts can provide an excellent result for vaginal reconstruction. Beemer and coworkers reported that 90% of their patients achieved satisfactory coitus.

Myocutaneous Gracilis Graft

The myocutaneous gracilis graft also can be used for creation of a neovagina. Some surgeons use the rectus abdominis myocutaneous graft to construct the neovagina. However, I believe that its abdominal donor site complicates stoma placement and so use the gracilis as our procedure of choice. Construction at the time of initial exenteration surgery is required. The advantages include immediate reconstruction of the vagina, and the tissue mass itself helps to fill the pelvic defect as well as introduce a new blood supply to the area. An obturator is not required to maintain patency. When this approach is chosen, it is best to have a second operating team harvest the grafts and construct the neovagina while the primary surgical team completes the urinary diversion. Myocutaneous grafts are constructed by obtaining bilateral full-thickness muscle, adipose, and skin flaps. The initial incision is made in an elliptical manner along a line extending from the superior aspect of the symphysis pubis to the medial condyle of the femur. The overlying skin is sutured to the skin paddle. The muscle is mobilized toward the symphysis. The perforating vessels on the underside of the muscle are about 10 cm from the symphysis and should be dissected with the myocutaneous unit. When the muscle and overlying skin are fully mobilized, they are brought through a subcutaneous tunnel to the perineal defect. The posterior edges of the grafts from both sides are sutured together with absorbable interrupted sutures, followed by a similar approximation of the anterior edges. This graft is introduced (or inserted) into the pelvic cavity and sutured to the sacral periosteum or levator remnants with long-acting absorbable sutures. The opening to the new vaginal tube is sutured to the introitus with interrupted absorbable sutures (Fig. 50.11). The leg incisions are closed with skin staples. Jackson-Pratt drains are placed in the bed of each harvest site as well as in close proximity to the graft in the pelvis.

Postoperative Care

Patients are routinely admitted to the intensive care unit on completion of a pelvic exenteration. The continued oozing from the operative site with sequestration of fluids in the extravascular spaces causes significant fluid shifts; therefore, central venous pressure monitoring is essential. When left heart function and pulmonary function are adequate, a Swan-Ganz catheter is not routinely used. When ureteral stents are used, there is little chance of conduit obstruction from mucous plugging, and the urine output should accurately reflect kidney function. During the initial 24 hours after surgery, volume usually is replaced with crystalloid and blood products.
Electrolytes and coagulation studies must be closely monitored, as well as calcium and magnesium levels. By the second to fourth postoperative day, the patient usually is ready to leave the intensive care unit. Hyperalimentation, which is started on the first postoperative day, is continued until the patient begins to have spontaneous bowel function. Intravenous antibiotics are continued for about 5 days. If vaginal reconstruction has not been performed or the perineum has not closed, the pelvic packing is changed daily after being left in place for the first 3 to 5 postoperative days.

Complications

The incidence of postoperative complications following pelvic exenteration is significant; complications occur in 30% to 50% of patients undergoing this procedure. The most common major complications after this operation primarily involve the urinary or gastrointestinal tracts and their reconstructions. Other complications include bleeding, infection, thromboembolism, and, some time later, stoma problems, such as stenosis, prolapse, and hernia.

The occurrence of ureteral stricture and urinary leakage at the ureterointestinal anastomotic site has significantly decreased with current techniques. Ureteral stricture, especially if ureteral obstruction coexists, must be corrected surgically without delay or a percutaneous nephrostomy done to preserve renal function. Most anastomotic leaks heal spontaneously without requiring surgical repair. Renal calculus formation does occur but can be reduced by avoiding exposed staple lines and permanent sutures in the conduit.

Intestinal obstruction occurs both as an early and a late complication of exenteration and continues to be a serious problem in 10% to 15% of cases. The incidence of this complication has been reduced by use of the omental J-flap to cover the raw pelvic surface at the level of the pelvic diaphragm. Most paralytic ileus problems seen in the postoperative period can be treated conservatively with traditional nasogastric decompression. Enteral fistulas are seen uncommonly but are more common when omental flap or vaginal reconstruction is not used. These fistulas may heal spontaneously with bowel rest and hyperalimentation.

Septicemia, which often originates as a urinary tract infection, usually responds to antibiotic therapy. Thromboembolic disease has become a less frequent postoperative complication since the use of low-dose heparin or XCDs began, even in the presence of a large demuded pelvic vault and exposed vessels. For wound and pelvic abscesses, CT-guided drainage, if feasible, is preferred to laparotomy.

The operative mortality rate related to pelvic exenterative surgery has improved dramatically since the 1970s. Earlier series reported a peroperative mortality rate ranging from 7% to 17%. In modern series, the reported mortality rate is less than 5% (Table 50.1).

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

■ Pelvic exenteration is a technically challenging surgical procedure; but just as important, the postoperative care of these patients is extremely difficult from both a medical and psychological aspect. This operation and the care of these patients should be undertaken only by a well-trained and experienced team of specialists in a hospital staffed and equipped to manage the complex problems associated with the multiple organ systems involved in the ultraradical surgery, recovery, and rehabilitation.

■ The main indication for pelvic exenteration is centrally recurrent cervical cancer after failure of primary radiation therapy. Occasionally, patients with vulvar, vaginal, or uterine cancer—and some patients with urologic or rectal cancer—may also be candidates. Women with cancer extending to the pelvic sidewall precluding a clear resection margin or those with metastatic disease are not candidates for exenteration. Occasionally, a patient with only anterior or posterior tumor involvement will be a suitable candidate for an anterior or posterior rather than the usual total pelvic exenteration.

■ A very complete preoperative evaluation is necessary with all appropriate imaging studies to evaluate resectability. In addition, the patient must be evaluated medically and psychologically to be sure she can tolerate this extensive surgery
and will be able to deal with the stoma and altered body image postoperatively.

■ Two or even three surgical teams may be used to reduce surgeon fatigue and operative time. There are three somewhat different phases of the surgical procedure that naturally lend themselves to the assignment of different surgical teams: (i) the pelvic extirpative part; (ii) the perineal and vaginal extirpative part and, where indicated, the vaginal reconstruction; and (iii) the construction of the urinary and colonic diversions.

■ The initial phase of the operation is to evaluate the patient for resectability. Are there intraabdominal metastases? Positive washings? Pelvic or paraaortic lymph node metastases? Does the tumor extend to the pelvic walls?

■ The choice of the urinary diversion is complex. There are several options, including an ileal or colon conduit or various modifications of a continent urinary pouch. The final decision will be based on the patient's desire and ability to manage a continent pouch or a conduit, as well as the patient's anatomy, prior treatment, and the preference and experience of the surgical team.

■ Vaginal reconstruction is another area in which there is considerable choice. In some women, vaginal reconstruction is not desired. In other patients, reconstruction of a functional vagina is an important psychological asset in their recovery. Various techniques, including gracilis myocutaneous flaps, transverse rectus abdominis myocutaneous (TRAM) flaps, and split-thickness skin grafts, have been used. I prefer the gracilis myocutaneous flap, which also brings additional tissue and blood supply into the previously radiated, empty pelvis. It can be constructed at the same time the urinary diversion is being done so that the operative time is not increased.

■ In many cases, the postoperative recovery phase is as challenging as the surgical procedure. An experienced team of intensive care experts is needed to manage the many immediate and delayed complications that we encounter in these patients. Long-term follow-up is important.

### Bibliography


Brook J, Appleman A. What are the indications and results of pelvic exenteration? JAMA 1963;189:278.


Crossman WT, Rutledge FN. Is positive pelvic lymphadenectomy a contraindication to radical surgery in recurrent cervical cancer? Gynecol Oncol 1974;2:482.


Vera MI. Quality of life following pelvic exenteration. Gynecol Oncol 1988;33:279.
CHAPTER 51  ■  SURGICAL RECONSTRUCTION OF THE PELVIS IN GYNECOLOGIC CANCER PATIENTS

Luis E. Mendez and Manuel Penalver

DEFINITIONS

Gluteal thigh flap—This flap is based on the gluteal muscle and the overlying skin. The vascular supply is mainly from the superior gluteal artery. It is first sutured to the sacral promontory posteriorly, and pelvic walls laterally to form a pelvic lid.

Rectus abdominis myocutaneous flap—A flap based on the rectus abdominis muscle and overlying skin. The muscle belly is supplied by minor vascular pedicles from the superior epigastric artery. It is first sutured to the sacral promontory posteriorly, and pelvic walls laterally to form a pelvic lid.

Omental J-flap—A technique for revascularizing the pelvis after exenteration. The omentum is detached from the greater curvature of the stomach and brought down as a flap based on the left (or occasionally right) gastroepiploic artery. It is first sutured to the sacral promontory posteriorly, the public symphysis anteriorly, and pelvic walls laterally to form a pelvic lid.

Sigmoid neovagina—Use of an isolated sigmoid segment to construct a vagina after total pelvic exenteration. The omentum is detached from the superior epigastric artery and is taken from the supraumbilical portion of the laparotomy incision (vertically oriented). A unilateral rectus abdominus myocutaneous (RAM) flap is usually sufficient to repair large vulvar defects or create an adequate-sized neovagina. The horizontal diameter of the skin should be at least 10 to 12 cm wide to make a vagina that is about 4 cm in diameter.

Gluteal thigh flap—This flap is based on the gluteal muscle and the overlying skin. The vascular supply is mainly from the superior gluteal artery. It is first sutured to the sacral promontory posteriorly, and pelvic walls laterally to form a pelvic lid.

VAGINAL RECONSTRUCTION

Vaginal reconstruction has become a regular option presented to patients undergoing radical pelvic procedures. Vaginitectomy, whether simple or radical, can be a primary procedure or a part of a more extirpative procedure, such as a pelvic exenteration. In addition, nonsurgical techniques such as radiation therapy can produce severe fibrosis or stenosis with the result of an essentially nonfunctional vagina.

With the advent of improved perioperative care and survival for radically resected patients, thoughts must extend to afford- ing the patient acceptable sexual options. The loss of sexual gratification and function may be a devastating consequence to a woman even in the presence of a surgical cure. The oncologist has no way of knowing unless specific questions are pre- sented to the patient as part of the routine preoperative history. The possibility of restoring a functional vagina may provide a woman with a tremendous source of psychological motivation in approaching her cancer therapy. It may alleviate some of the fears that she has toward her future psychosexual well-being as well as the domestic relationship with her partner. Physical sexual function, even though attempted, is never always successful. Depending on the procedure chosen and the commitment of the patient to maintain the neovagina, success rates of 80% are considered reasonable.

Besides its beneficial effects on psychosexual factors, recon- struction of the vagina after total pelvic exenteration has been shown to have a beneficial effect on wound healing, preven- tion of enteropelvic fistulae, and absence or pelvic collection formation. The insertion of nonirradiated tissue in the previ- ously radiated pelvis obliterates a great deal of dead space and provides a healthy vascular pedicle in an area with borderline blood supply resulting from extensive pelvic irradiation and radical resection.
Description of a neovagina using skin grafts attached to the colon posteriorly and bladder anteriorly supported by vaginal forms and stents was popularized by McIndoe and Banister as early as 1938. Techniques were also modified to use portions of the remaining viscera after less radical operations to fashion a neovagina. However, with the advent of ultraradical pelvic operations and the theory of en bloc resections to improve survival, it was evident that new efforts in reconstruction were needed. Classic reconstructive techniques that simply use skin grafts, as in the McIndoe procedure, are insufficient, because the supportive fasciae, rectum, bladder, and even pelvic floor have usually been extirpated.

Today there are various techniques to reconstruct the vagina. Some techniques, such as the pudendal thigh flap or the gluteal thigh flap, can be used for neovaginal construction. These are addressed in the section on vulvar reconstruction, where they are more commonly used. This section discusses the omental J-flap with skin graft, sigmoid neovagina, gracilis myocutaneous flap (GMF), and rectus abdominis flap.

**Techniques for Vaginal Reconstruction**

**Gracilis Myocutaneous Flap**

In the past, the GMF has been the workhorse of neovaginal reconstruction in patients who have had radical resections. The GMF was introduced by McGraw and colleagues in 1976 and had the immediate impact of decreasing perioperative morbidity and providing a potential for restoring coital function. The GMF is a versatile flap and has also been used for neovaginal and neovulvar reconstructions. However, it has not been without its problems. Initially, the GMF had rates of flap necrosis and prolapse as high as 65%. Techniques to anchor the neovagina and the trend to use smaller flaps have reduced this rate significantly to 13% to 37%. Infection is a problem and can complicate up to 37% of cases, but infection responds well to antibiotic therapy and local debridement if needed. Sexual adjustment has lagged and is reported to be significantly impaired in these women for various reasons, including the appearance of large inner thigh scars.

The GMF operation is begun with the patient in the dorsal supine position. The hips are abducted 45 degrees and flexed 30 degrees for exposure of the vulva, the knees are extended, and the feet are placed in gynecologic stirrups. This extended-knee position provides maximum visualization of the gracilis muscle and the overlying cutaneous skin.

The approximate upper limit for flap viability is 8 x 20 cm (Fig. 51.1). After determining the length and width of flap needed, the gracilis muscle is palpated from its origin on the pubic ramus to its insertion on the medial aspect of the knee. The extension of the knee aids in the palpation of the gracilis muscle and reduces the possibility of mistaking the sartorius muscle for the gracilis muscle. A line is drawn along the length of the gracilis muscle, and the skin island is marked carefully because only a 2- to 3-cm length of skin from the muscle edge will be supported (Fig. 51.2). The vascular supply is mainly based on the medial circumflex artery proximally. The distal muscle belly is supplied by minor vascular pedicles from the superficial femoral artery that can be sacrificed. Innervation is from the obturator nerve branches, resulting in a sensate flap.

An incision is made through the skin and subcutaneous tissue distally along the anterior border of the flap, down to the adductor longus fascia. It is extended along the line of the skin, outlining the paddle-shaped flap. Distally, at the edge of the flap, the gracilis is transected. We prefer to secure the muscle belly to the dermis with 3-0 synthetic absorbable suture to avoid shearing the flap. The vascular pedicle of the gracilis muscle is invested by the fascial layer that separates the adductor longus and adductor magnus muscles (Figs. 51.3 and 51.4). The surgical approach to the gracilis neurovascular bundle is made by reflecting the fascia to the adductor longus muscle. When the fascia is reflected, the adductor longus, adductor brevis, and the gracilis muscles are identified, exposing the vascular bundle of the gracilis muscle about 7 to 10 cm from the pubis. The gracilis muscle is isolated and divided at its origin on the pubic bone. The gracilis vascular pedicle is located by sterile Doppler ultrasound. Repeated use of sterile Doppler ultrasonography confirms the location of the blood supply to the muscle and ensures its protection. When the flaps from both legs have been adequately dissected and are ready for rotation, 1 to 3 g of intravenous fluorescein is administered. The flaps are exposed to an ultraviolet Wood’s light in a darkened room.
Nonviable areas of the flaps are demonstrated by their failure to fluoresce, and these areas are excised (Fig. 51.4). Each flap is rotated into position (or tunneled under a skin bridge if no vulvar defect is present) and either secured to cover one half of a vulvar defect or sutured together, tubularized, and inserted into the pelvic cavity to form the neovagina (Figs. 51.2, 51.5, and 51.6).

The remaining subcutaneous tissue of the defect is sutured to the subcutaneous tissue of the flap with interrupted 3-0 synthetic absorbable sutures if a vulvar defect is present. Otherwise, the flaps are tubularized and inserted into the empty pelvic cavity. Closed suction drains should be used at the harvest sites and the skin closed primarily. Sexual activity can commence after 6 to 8 weeks of recovery.

FIGURE 51.2. A mobilized gracilis myocutaneous flap. Note the 8 x 20-cm dimension and the critical muscle landmarks. (From: Gallup D, Talledo O. Surgical atlas of gynecologic oncology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders;1994:235, with permission.)

FIGURE 51.3. Gracilis myocutaneous flap. Doppler ultrasonography is used to confirm the neurovascular bundle emerging from the adductor longus (Al) and adductor magnus (Am) muscles. G, gracilis muscle.
Flap fluorescence
Nonfluorescing tissue
Wood light
FIGURE 51.4. The Wood light focuses on a myocutaneous flap perfused with fluorescein dye. The avascular portion of the flap can be identified and excised.

Omental J-Flap with Split-Thickness Skin Graft
By modifying the omental flap that is normally used to close off the pelvic inlet after exenteration (Fig. 51.7A), with or without low coloprostectomy, the surgeon can create an omental cylinder, providing anterior, posterior, and lateral walls for the neovagina. When the cylinder is sutured to the introitus and lined with a skin graft (split or preferably full thickness) and expanded in the postoperative period by a soft rubber vaginal form, a satisfactory functional neovagina can be created (Fig. 51.7B–D). The works of Morley and DeLancey as well as Wheless have shown that a split-thickness skin graft for the neovagina may no longer be needed. Full-thickness skin grafts work well for all neovaginal reconstructions. The full-thickness skin graft survives equally well as the split-thickness graft but has reduced the tendency to contract postoperatively compared with the split-thickness skin graft.

In Figure 51.7C, the skin graft is laid out on a vaginal form. The form is fashioned from foam rubber and stuffed into a contraceptive latex condom. The split-thickness skin graft is folded over the vaginal form, and the edges of the graft are

FIGURE 51.5. A: Bilateral myocutaneous flaps rotated into place. B: Completed neovulva.

FIGURE 51.6. Completed myocutaneous flap, 8 weeks postoperatively.
Coloproctostomy
Split thickness
graft
Foam
Condom
Omental
"J" flap
neovagina

FIGURE 51.7. A: Drawing of the sagittal view of the pelvis after total exenteration. The colon has been reanastomosed to the rectum. The omentum has been taken off the stomach and brought into the pelvis as a J-flap for closing the pelvic inlet. The distal omentum of the J-flap is available for rolling into a cylinder, thus creating the walls of the neovagina. B: The distal omentum is rolled into a cylinder to be lined with a split-thickness skin graft. C: A foam rubber vaginal mold is covered with a condom. The split-thickness skin graft is sutured over the mold. D: Drawing of a sagittal view of the omental flap neovagina, lined with a split-thickness skin graft fashioned over a foam rubber vaginal mold covered with a condom.

sutured with a running 4-0 synthetic absorbable suture. The completed operation is shown in Figure 51.7D.

In Figure 51.7D, a sagittal section shows a patient who has undergone a total pelvic exenteration. The rectal stump was retained, and the descending colon was mobilized and brought down into the pelvis for a very low (below 6 cm) coloproctostomy. The omentum has been detached from the greater curvature of the stomach and brought down as a flap based on the left gastroepiploic artery. It is first sutured to the sacral promontory posteriorly, the pubic symphysis anteriorly, and pelvic walls laterally to form a pelvic lid. In patients who have insufficient omentum to form both the pelvic flap lid and walls of the neovagina, the omentum making the pelvic lid can be supplemented by the use of a sheet of synthetic, absorbable mesh.

The omentum, innervated by the vagus nerve, forms the wall of the neovagina. Normally, tugging or pulling on the omentum does not produce a sensation of pleasure that is associated with sexual intercourse; however, about 40% of the patients who have undergone this operation report that they experience sexual orgasm. Another possible physiologic change is the development of estrogen hormone receptors in the skin graft. The graft, taken from the skin on the buttocks or thigh, normally has no demonstrable hormone receptors. Once the skin
is placed in the neovagina, the graft eventually becomes almost indistinguishable from normal vaginal mucosa on histologic examination. After the development of estrogen receptors, the maturation index from cells of the graft can be influenced by the administration of systemic estrogen similar to normal vaginal mucosa.

If construction of the neovagina is performed immediately following total pelvic exenteration, it is important to ensure that hemostasis in the pelvis is complete before applying the skin graft. If hemostasis is uncertain, the omental pocket for the neovagina should be packed with gauze. When hemostasis is secure and serous drainage has stopped, the packing can be removed and the graft can be taken and applied to a vaginal form and placed in the omental pocket.

After the skin graft is inserted, the neovagina must remain dilated with a vaginal form until healing is complete. For a period of 6 months thereafter, a soft Silastic vaginal form should be worn at all times except during intercourse and douching. After 6 months, the vaginal form is worn only at night if the patient is not sexually active.

Studies have demonstrated that this type of reconstruction works well and has minimal morbidity. Kusiak and Rosenblum have reported a series of 20 patients in whom all grafts have taken, and there has been no postoperative morbidity as a result of the neovagina. Up to 80% of patients have reported satisfactory vaginal function.

**Sigmoid Neovagina**

A third procedure that can be used to fashion a neovagina uses the distal sigmoid colon. As early as 1955, Alexandrov reported on the use of a colon segment to create a new vagina. An impressive 89% success rate was reported. Kindermann subsequently published his experience with this technique for construction of neovaginas, also with good results.

The cardinal feature for use of an isolated segment of rectosigmoid colon is the integrity of the vascular supply of the colon via the superior hemorrhoidal artery (Fig. 51.8). Unlike secretions of the small bowel, the secretions of an isolated (10- to 12-cm) segment of sigmoid colon are not copious. Thus, the inconvenience to the patient of a copious vaginal discharge from the neovagina is reduced. An additional anatomic advantage of the rectosigmoid colon over the use of isolated segments of small bowel is the unique anatomic feature of the marginal artery of the colon. This allows the surgeon to reverse the peristaltic direction of the colon to obtain greater mobility by transecting the mesentery medial to the marginal artery. The superior hemorrhoidal artery provides the appropriate vascular supply to the colon segment. The sigmoid neovagina must prolapse through the introitus.

![Diagram of Sigmoid Neovagina](image-url)
Superior hemorrhoidal artery

Proximal end anastomosed to vaginal stump

Proximal end protrudes approximately 3 cm

Distal end

FIGURE 51.9. Prolapsed colon sutured to the vaginal introitus.
be, a synthetic mesh can be used to eliminate tension on the closures. Closed suction drains can be used if indicated. The vaginal form is removed from 5 to 7 days postsurgically, and the patient can attempt intercourse after 6 weeks. The RAM family of myocutaneous flaps is becoming the procedure of choice for vulvovaginal reconstructive procedures in gynecologic oncology. Long-term sequelae of RAM flaps are few, and prolapse is greatly reduced. Carlson and colleagues reported on a pilot series in 1993 with 100% flap viability. Data are now available on longer-term follow-up of these patients. The authors published a 78% satisfaction rate of patients who underwent RAM reconstructions after pelvic exenteration.
Researchers at Duke University also found a 62% coitus rate 12 months after reconstruction in a similar cohort. Nonetheless, reports exist of squamous carcinomas of RAM neovaginas and perioperative complications, demanding that the utmost care be taken in developing this type of flap and in selecting the appropriate patient who will benefit from this extensive reconstructive procedure.

VULVAR RECONSTRUCTION

In the 1940s, the work of Taussig and Way demonstrated the efficacy of en bloc removal of the vulva, mons pubis, and inguinal lymph nodes from the anterior iliac spine to the adductor canal in patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva. By using a more extensive dissection, pelvic surgeons have removed more tissue and thereby enhanced the probability of increased survival. This type of radical excision, however, has been complicated by problems associated with closure of large wounds—that is, difficulties involving postoperative necrosis of the suture line over the mons pubis and the inguinal and lateral vulvar skin (Fig. 51.14). Attempts have been made to redesign the incisions for radical vulvectomy to allow for adequate surgical margins and, at the same time, provide better primary healing of the incision with reduced necrosis. This includes the use of “separate incisions” to approach the primary tumor and the inguinosfemoral lymph nodes. Nonetheless, resection of the primary tumor can result in defects necessitating extensive plastic reconstruction. Although these modifications of the original Way incision have allowed some improvement in the incidence of necrosis and pelvic contraction, many patients have had significant wound breakdown, requiring a split-thickness skin graft to cover the area that has become necrotic during the postoperative period. The hospital stay of these patients has been prolonged, awaiting acceptable healing of the wound. In addition, patients have developed severe perineal contractures with significant distortion of the bladder neck and urethra, resulting in incontinence of urine, perineal pain, pressure, and, in some cases, difficulty walking.

The ideal method of perineal reconstruction after a radical resection of the vulva should provide an immediate anatomic restoration and primary healing at the time of tumor resection. The neovulva should have as many of the anatomic characteristics of the original vulva as possible. The donor tissue ideally should be expendable from the donor site and transferable with minimal patient morbidity. Most radical vulvectomy operations can be closed primarily. Others can be closed with the assistance of the Z-plasty pedicle flaps advocated by Julian and Woodruff (Fig. 51.14) and by the other techniques described below. There are occasional perineal resections, however, that are so extensive that none of the cited techniques is adequate for primary closure. In these patients, myocutaneous flap is a means of primary closure. Efforts to reconstruct a radically resected vulva have been ongoing for decades. Many different techniques have been introduced, and each has a particular risk/benefit profile. With the refinement of surgical therapies for vulvar carcinoma, emphasis has shifted to the use of fasciocutaneous and local flaps for reconstruction. Nonetheless, in certain cases, the volume resected can only be reconstructed with a myocutaneous flap. This section describes split-thickness skin grafts, Z-plasty closures, the SURE Closure, V-Y advancement flaps, and the pudendal thigh flap. The gracilis and RAM flaps are discussed in the section on vaginal reconstruction. The myocutaneous flaps, however, continue to be the mainstay for vulvar reconstruction of very large defects.

Techniques for Vulvar Reconstruction

Split-Thickness Skin Graft

The use of the split-thickness skin graft for reconstruction of the vulva is not extensively described here. Most radical vulvar procedures resect deep to the perineal fascia, requiring a reconstruction that needs to provide greater thickness than that of a simple graft. However, in the case of an extensive simple or “skinning” vulvectomy, this technique alone can be adequate. The procedure for harvesting a graft is available in standard surgical texts. In brief, it involves taking a 0.35-mm (12/1,000 inch) split-thickness skin graft from an acceptable donor site with a dermatome and applying the split-thickness graft to the denuded area of the vulva. The margin of the graft is sutured to the margin of the defect with fine sutures, and a moist stent pack is used to ensure that the split-thickness skin graft is adequately pressed against the wound. Small pockets of serum can be aspirated by needle to allow the graft to lie flat over the denuded area. We have found the use of meshed grafts to be of particular value in large wounds in which the potential for infection and subgraft seroma collection can be significant. The small defects in the mesh allow adequate drainage of the wound while epithelialization takes place. The physiologic and
logistic advantages of covering large, open wounds are well
documented and are preferable to the long and costly process
of granulation. Immobilization of the graft is an important key
to success of the transplant.

**Z-Plasty Full-Thickness Pedicle Flap**

In cases in which primary closure of the vulvar wound cannot
be performed without tension, the use of a pedicle flap, as ad-
vocated by Julian and Woodruff, has proven efficacious (Fig.
51.14). The flap is relatively easy to perform but must be well
designed before making the actual incision for the flap. Partic-
ular attention should be given to the width of the base of the
flap to ensure an adequate blood supply to the distal points of
the flap. A general rule to follow is that 2 cm of base should
be present for each 1 cm of length of the flap. After measuring
the defect and translating these measurements into the appro-
priate size of flap needed, the future flap is marked along the
designated lines with a surgical marker before the incisions are
made. The incision should be full thickness, including epider-
imis, dermis, and subcutaneous fat, down to the fascia. The flap
is rotated into position and sutured to the midline of the per-
ineum without tension. Generally, it is difficult to rotate the flap
beyond the midperineal line. If additional tissue is needed to
close the contralateral vulvar defect, a flap is elevated from the
opposite side and similarly sutured in the midline. The flap is
sutured to the underlying fascia, covering the pubic rami, and
to the incision line on the opposite side. Preferably, 3-0 syn-
thetic absorbable suture is used. The suture in the skin margin
should be fine synthetic monofilament suture, such as nylon or
fine delayed absorbable suture. The medial margin of the flap
is sutured to the margin of the vaginal mucosa with interrupted
2-0 synthetic absorbable sutures. A soft Silastic closed suction
drain is placed under the flap, sutured into place, and placed to
low suction. The remaining skin adjacent to the flap is brought
into position to close the donor site and is sutured with a
subcutaneous row of interrupted 3-0 synthetic absorbable sutures and 4-0 nylon sutures in the skin. The cardinal feature of successful healing of these flaps is positioning without tension. If they are under tension, separation occurs.

Modification of full-thickness pedicled flaps includes the gluteal thigh flap, which can incorporate a much larger skin paddle, depending on the inferior gluteal artery, and can range up to 8 × 20 cm. It should not be performed in a patient with a previous bilateral hypogastric artery ligation because compromise may occur.

**Mechanical Skin Stretcher (SURE Closure)**

A technique for closure of skin defects or to obtain a full-thickness skin graft for neovagina construction from donor site on the body is the mechanical skin stretcher (SURE Closure, Life Medical Sciences, Inc.) (Fig. 51.15). The skin, because of its viscoelastic properties, can be stretched significantly. (For example, the abdominal skin of a woman who is 40 weeks pregnant is significantly stretched.) Through the extensive work of Hirshowitz and Lindenbaum and through the mechanical engineering of the Life Medical Sciences, Inc., it is possible to stretch skin in about 1 hour in the operating room to cover most defects (Fig. 51.16). This device can have a significant role in pelvic surgery.

Large abdominal wall defects and certain vulvar defects may be closed without rotational flaps and split-thickness skin grafts. The application of the skin-stretching device to each margin of the large open abdominal defect allows stretching of the skin in about 1 hour in the operating room to cover most defects (Fig. 51.16). This device can have a significant role in pelvic surgery.

Large abdominal wall defects and certain vulvar defects may be closed without rotational flaps and split-thickness skin grafts. The application of the skin-stretching device to each margin of the large open abdominal defect allows stretching of the skin in about 1 hour in the operating room to cover most defects (Fig. 51.16). This device can have a significant role in pelvic surgery.

**V-Y Advancement Flap**

A simple sliding design for a skin flap that is dependent on random perfusion of perforating musculocutaneous arteries can reconstruct even moderately large vulvar defects. The upper inner thigh is the usual donor site for vulvar defects. Circulation to that area has been reported distally via a rich suprafascial plexus from gracilis and adductor musculocutaneous perforators and proximally from the external pudendal. Bilateral triangles can be drawn while the patient is in the dorsal lithotomy position. The incision is carried down to include subcutaneous fat. After mobilization, the flap is “slid” toward the defect and secured to the remaining vaginal mucosa or to each other, if needed. The original “V” incision is then closed as a “Y” (Fig. 51.17). With a good blood supply and adequate mobilization, the incidence of wound dehiscence is small. Closed suction drains should be placed and left for 7 to 10 days. Ambulation may begin after 3 days. In the interim, prophylactic antibiotics and thromboprophylaxis should be administered, as with most moderately extensive vulvar flaps.

The V-Y flap can be used for even larger reconstructions, as described by Tateo and associates, by transecting the gracilis toward the insertion and making it a type of sliding musculocutaneous flap after mobilization.

**Gracilis and Rectus Abdominis Myocutaneous Flaps**

The gracilis and RAM flaps are extremely versatile flaps, as described in the section on vaginal reconstruction. The same principles hold true for vulvar reconstruction in terms of elevating, rotating, and securing these flaps. The principal difference is that unilateral gracilis flaps can be used, depending on the vulvar defect, and no tubularization is necessary. Similar breakdown rates are seen with vulvar reconstruction as with vaginal reconstruction. We believe that the RAM flap continues to be a superior flap for all myocutaneous vulvovaginal reconstructions.

**OPERATIONS TO PRESERVE URINARY CONTINENCE**

Fecal and urinary diversions have been an essential part of total pelvic exenteration surgery. The early pioneer work of Brunschwig in total pelvic exenteration surgery used
FIGURE 51.16. A: Photograph of an open abdominal wound to be closed with a skin stretcher instrument. B: Midline skin closed without tension. The transverse incision is stretched with the instrument before it is sutured.

ureterosigmoidostomy for urinary diversion (a “wet colostomy”). Reflux of fecal contaminated urine resulted in unacceptable rates of pyelonephritis and secondary renal deterioration. In 1950, Bricker introduced the isolated ileal loop urinary diversion. Later, the colonic loop modification was preferred by some operators. These two techniques have been the preferred techniques for urinary diversion for more than 40 years. Long-term follow-up of patients with isolated intestinal loop urinary diversion, however, has revealed a high incidence of ureteral stenosis and upper renal tract deterioration, especially in those patients who have had pelvic irradiation for gynecologic malignancies. In addition, negative quality-of-life issues secondary to the required urostomy bag—including its odor, reduced self-image, and reduced sexuality—make an alternative technique without a bag desirable. This section discusses the Kock pouch, which introduced the idea of a continent reservoir, and the Miami pouch, which is a newer continent ileocolonic reservoir that has become popular in gynecologic oncology. Each patient should be evaluated individually as to the type of reservoir best suited for her needs. The surgeon should consider the various types but should always perform the procedure that he or she is most comfortable with and that is best suited for the patient.

Continent Urostomy Operations

There are unique pathologic and physiologic changes in pelvic organs after irradiation for gynecologic malignancies. The same levels of perioperative irradiation are not usually required for most urologic malignancies, such as carcinoma of the prostate and bladder. The pathophysiologic changes of irradiation-induced endarteritis, resulting in ischemia and later fibrosis, are not present in urinary diversions required for congenital anomalies. In selecting a continent, nonrefluxing urostomy that meets the physiologic requirements, several features must be considered. The ureteral intestinal anastomous...
must be as free as possible from potential stricture formation that would result in hydro pneumosis and eventual upper re-
nal unit deterioration. Techniques that require the irradiated 
ureter to be buried in the muscular layers of irradiated colon to 
achieve the nonrefluxing feature of continent ureterostomy may be 
associated with a risk of stenosis and secondary hydro pneumo-
sis that is higher than acceptable. The integrity of the upper 
renal tracts remains to be evaluated in prospective, randomized 
trials between the continent ureterostomy and the ileosappend-
colonic variety of these operations. All continent ureterostomy 
procedures should have similar physiologic characteristics, includ-
ing a low pouch pressure of less than 40 cm H2O pressure, even 
at volumes greater than 500 mL. This reduces the incidence of 
ureteral reflux and reduces the incidence of reflux incontinence. Re-
flux and incontinence are reduced because, in the Kock pouch 
ureterostomy, pressures are 90 cmH2O. The use of small 
segments of irradiated large bowel in continent ureterostomies—
that is, the Indiana pouch—may lead to unacceptable levels of 
pressure. This finding needs careful study with long-term 
follow-up.

The compliance of large bowel, especially after irradiation 
therapy, is less than that of small bowel. A larger segment of de-
tubularized colon—that is, the entire ascending and proximal 
transverse colon (Miami pouch)—may overcome this problem 
and allow pressures within the pouch to remain at acceptable 
low levels. Patients could catheterize their continent pouches 
at least four times per day.

The continent ureterostomy is favored in gynecologic oncol-
ogy patients for two reasons. First, medically, the continent 
ureterostomy should help prevent contaminated urine from re-
fluxing into the kidney. This contaminated urine reflux sets up 
a chronic pyelonephritis. After a prolonged period of time, 
there could be deterioration of the upper renal units commonly 
associated with both the ureteral loop and ileal loop ileostomies. Second, quality of life is improved by elimination of the urinary bag with its atten-
dant problems of awkwardness, odor, reduced self-image, and 
reduced sexuality.

**Continent Urostomy with Ileal Reservoir (Kock Pouch)**

The Kock pouch, developed by Nils Kock in 1982, was de-
volved as a continent nonrefluxing ureterostomy. Modifications by 
Skinner improved the surgical technique and reduced the post-
operative complications of the original Kock technique. This 
alternative to ileal or colonic loop urinary diversion should be 
considered by gynecologic oncologists. Skinner and coworkers 
have shown that construction of an internal reservoir suitable 
for urinary bladder replacement must provide (a) retention of 
500 to 1,000 mL of fluid, (b) maintenance of low pressure af-
ter filling, (c) elimination of intermittent pressure spikes that 
produce reflux, (d) true continence day and night, (e) ease of 
catheterization, and (f) prevention of reflux.

The mucosa of the ileum in the wall of the pouch appears 
to adapt well to urine. The height of the villi of the ileal mu-
cosa gradually decreases, and, in time, the mucosa becomes 
neither flat, thereby proportionally reducing the absorption of 
electrolytes from the urine.

Prerequisites for constructing a continent ureterostomy include 
reasonable renal function (creatinine level < 3.0 mg/dL), an 
adequate length of small bowel so that use of 80 cm of ileum 
taken out of the digestive tract does not result in significant 
short bowel syndrome, and a patient and her surgeon who are 
prepared to understand and accept the inherent risks (in irradiated bowel, an 8%–16% incidence of malfunction of the continent valve mechanism, necessitating additional surgery). When the pouch procedure is performed in conjunction with total pelvic exenteration, resection of the pelvic organs is performed first. For the conversion of an ex-
isting ileal or colon conduit to a continent ureterostomy, all the 
intradominal adhesions of the intestine must be taken down 
and the bowel inspected for enterostomies before initiating the 
Kock pouch continent ureterostomy.

**Technique for Kock Pouch Continent Urostomies: Skinner Modification**

As seen in Figure 51.18, knowledge and understanding of the 
anatomy of the terminal ileum and ascending colon and of the 
blood supply to these structures is essential for the success of 
the operation. The terminal ileum is transected about 16 cm 
from the ileocecal junction in the area of the avascular plane of 
Treves. To ensure mobility of the pouch, an incision is carried 
up the avascular plane of Treves for 25 to 30 cm. The ileocolic 
artery must be lateral to this incision, with the branches of the 
superior mesenteric artery medial to the incision.

The pouch requires 17 cm of ileum for the efferent nipple 
valve and bowel limb, two 22-cm segments of ileum for the 
pouch itself, and one 17-cm segment of ileum for the afferent 
bowel limb and nipple valve. As seen in Figure 51.19, 5 cm 
of proximal ileum is sacrificed to allow greater mobility of the 
completed pouch. The anterior wall of the pouch is opened with 
electrocautery. The posterior wall is sutured with two layers of 
synthetic absorbable suture (Fig. 51.19A).

The nipples are constructed by intussusception of the small 
intestinal (Fig. 51.19B). Stapling the nipple intussusception with 
a TA-55 4.8-mm stapler to prevent deintussusception is a vital 
step in this procedure (Fig. 51.19C). The walls of the pouch are 
folded over and sutured in place to complete the pouch (Fig. 
51.19D). The ureters are anastomosed to the afferent bowel 
limb over Silastic stents (Fig. 51.19D). The efferent bowel limb is 
tapered and brought through a defect in the umbilicus. The 
afferent bowel limb is anchored with suture near the promon-
tory of the sacrum. The pouch itself is positioned in the pelv-
inlet. The efferent bowel is tapered to the size of a 20-French 
catheter with a gastrostominal anastomotic (GIA) stapler be-
fore it is exteriorized (Fig. 51.19F).

The efferent system of the pouch requires a 30-French Medena catheter placed through the stoma and passed through the efferent nipple into the pouch for drainage of urine and intestinal mucus (Fig. 51.19G).

During the postoperative phase, all continent ureterostomies 
are protected by an adjacent, closed-suction drain placed in the 
area of the pouch. Leakage from pouch suture lines has been 
frequent, and, if not drained, a urinoma with septic abscess 
may occur. The catheter in the efferent limb and nipple and the 
closed suction drain can be removed 3 weeks postoperatively. 
Thereafter, the patient is trained by the enteroctomal therapist 
in the technique of catheterizing the pouch. Three weeks post-
operatively, endoscopy is performed on the pouch, the Silastic 
stents are removed from the ureters, and the pouch is tested 
for reflux of urine as well as continence by filling the pouch 
with 200 mL of radioactive contrast. An abdominal radiograph 
is obtained to observe reflux into the kidney. An intravenous 
pyelogram should be obtained after removal of the ureteral 
stents for baseline assessment of the kidney. Slight pyeloluc-
tasis (grade I) is not unusual in the postoperative period. For 
the first 3 weeks postoperatively, while the stents are in place, 
the patient is placed on a broad-spectrum antibiotic regimen.

Results of this procedure have been encouraging. In highly 
irradiated bowel, there is a lower incidence of ileal or sigmoid 
necrosis compared with the Kock and Skinner series that were 
preponderantly made up of nonirradiated patients. Long-term 
evaluation of upper renal tract deterioration in patients with
ileal and colonic loops compared with upper renal tract deterioration in patients with continent urostomies awaits further study. Early results reported by Skinner indicate a protective effect on the upper renal tracts secondary to a reduction of contaminated urinary reflux and its associated subclinical chronic pyelonephritis.

**Ileocolic Continent Urostomy (Miami Pouch)**

Another procedure for continent urostomies following removal of the bladder is the use of a small portion (10–15 cm) of terminal ileum, the ascending colon, and proximal transverse colon. Earlier series of patients having a modification of this procedure—that is, the Indiana pouch—using irradiated bowel were discouraging because the amount of colon used was small (ascending colon only). The smaller segment of irradiated colon may result in higher pouch pressures and, therefore, greater ureteral reflux and incontinence. In a technique described at the University of Miami, modifications that used a larger segment of colon that included the entire ascending colon as well as the proximal portion of the transverse colon resulted in reduced pouch pressure, less reflux, and reduced incontinence (Fig. 51.20). The Miami pouch was developed by Bejany and Politano and was reported in 1988. The intention of the pouch was to improve the rate of urinary continence, allowing for both increased flexibility in reimplantation of the ureters and an adequate storage system. The alternative to the intussuscepted segment to prevent ureteral reflux was a nontunneled ureterocolonic anastomosis. Continence was achieved by reinforcing the ileocecal segment with three circumferential silk sutures, placed in a purse-string fashion, and tapering the distal segment of the ileum over a 14-French catheter. This technique created a low-pressure reservoir, high-pressure outlet to maximize continence.

The ileocolic continent urostomy (Miami pouch) does not require the intussusception of bowel to create the continent mechanism for the efferent system. A combination of the intact ileocecal valve, as well as reduction in the diameter of the lumen of the terminal ileum by tapering, elevates the pressure in the efferent system to about 80 to 90 cmH₂O. The pressure in the efferent system is higher than the pressure in the central pouch, which should be less than 40 cmH₂O. It is unclear whether patients who are continent after an ileocolic continent urostomy are continent secondary to an intact (competent) ileocecal valve or from the tapering of the terminal ileum. Furthermore, it is unclear which ureterocolic technique is the best for achieving a nonrefluxing anastomosis of the ureters to the colon. Further data are required to determine whether the traditional technique for achieving antireflux (i.e., embedding the ureter in the wall of the colon) prevents reflux because there is a naturally higher ureteral pressure compared with pouch pressure or because embedding the ureter in the wall of the colon elevates ureteral pressure to a level greater than the pouch. Stenosis at the ureteral anastomotic site can result in hydroureter and hydronephrosis. A benefit of the ileocolic continent urostomy technique is the elimination of the need for intussusception of the small bowel, as in the Kock pouch, to produce the continent afferent and efferent systems. Construction of an ileocolic

---

**FIGURE 51.18.** Anatomic drawing of the terminal ileum illustrating the avascular plane of Treves, the ileocolic artery, and the superior mesenteric artery. Note that the efferent system requires 17 cm of bowel, the Kock pouch requires two 22-cm segments of bowel, and the afferent system requires 17 cm of bowel. Five centimeters of intestine are resected to give additional mobility to the completed Kock pouch.
Afferent limb

Ureter

Efferent

Six blank staple positions

Excess ileum

Pouch

FIGURE 51.19. A: Drawing of Kock pouch opened. The posterior wall of the pouch is sutured with two layers of running synthetic absorbable suture. Efferent and afferent limbs are shown. B: Nipples are constructed by intussusception of the small intestine. C: The TA-55 4.8-mm stapler is used to staple the nipples at the 2- and 10-o’clock positions to prevent deintussusception. D: The completed pouch shows the efferent and afferent nipples constructed with their respective efferent and afferent bowel limbs. Strips of polyglycolic acid mesh have been inserted through the mesentery to be sutured adjacent to the intussusception to further reduce the incidence of deintussusception. The walls of the pouch are labeled B, E, A, A’, C, and C’. These letters are connected to form the pouch. E: The ureters are anastomosed to the afferent bowel limb over the Silastic stents. F: The diameter of the lumen of the terminal ileum was reduced by applying the gastrointestinal anastomotic stapler over a number 14-French catheter used as a sizer. G: The completed pouch is positioned in the pelvic inlet. The efferent system of the pouch requires a number 24-French Medena catheter placed through the stoma and passed through the efferent nipple into the pouch for drainage of urine. The stoma is exteriorized at the umbilicus.

Surgical Reconstruction of the Pelvis in Gynecologic Cancer Patients 1367
The ileocolic pouch requires a larger volume of colon. The small bowel is transected about 10 to 15 cm from the ileocecal valve. Incision is carried up the avascular plane of Treves. The transverse colon is transected to provide an equal segment of transverse colon to the right colon. Care is taken to preserve the middle colic artery.

Continent urostomy (Miami pouch) is technically simpler. It also lends itself to the use of a Polysorb (synthetic absorbable) surgical stapler for closure of the margins of the pouch walls, thereby reducing overall operative time. Finally, there is the potential decreased morbidity by sparing a large segment of small bowel absorptive function that can be seen with small bowel continent reservoirs.

Technique for Ileocolic Continent Urostomy (Miami Pouch)

The distal ileum is transected 10 to 15 cm proximal to the ileocecal valve. The cecum and the segment of ascending colon are mobilized up to the right colic flexure, and the transverse colon is transected just distal to the middle colic artery (Fig. 51.21). Continuity of the bowel is restored with an ileotransverse colon anastomosis. If an appendectomy has not been performed, it should be done during the procedure. The colon is opened with cautery along the tenia and folded onto itself to create a U-shaped intestinal plate (Fig. 51.22). The legs of the “U” are anastomosed in a side-to-side fashion with absorbable staples or interrupted absorbable sutures to form the posterior wall of the reservoir (Fig. 51.23). This detubularizes the segment of bowel and reduces the potential for high pressure in the colon segment.

The left ureter is passed through the sigmoid mesocolon before entering the reservoir, unless the sigmoid colon has been removed. A mucosal incision is made to create a sulcus in which the ureters will be anastomosed. The distal ends of the ureters...
are spatulated and, with 4-0 polyglycolic acid sutures, anastomosed to the submucosal layers of the colon. The muscular wall of the colon and the low-pressure reservoir provide the antireflux mechanism. Extraluminally, the ureteral adventitia is fixed to the bowel serosa. The ureters are stented with 7-French single-J ureteral diversion stents that are secured distal to the ureterocolonic anastomosis with absorbable sutures; alternatively, double-J indwelling catheters may be used. The nonstented ureterocolonic anastomosis has worked well for us in the colon. Incidence of reflux and obstruction has been similar to that recorded with other forms of intestinal anastomosis.

Tapering the segment of distal ileum and placing purse-string sutures at the level of the ileocecal valve helps create the continence mechanism. A 14-French rubber catheter is placed into the distal ileum. The ileum, with the rubber catheter in place, is clamped using four Babcock clamps on the mesenteric side. Allis clamps are placed on the antimesenteric border of the ileum and pulled to provide mild traction. A stapling instrument is applied to the ileum longitudinally between the Babcock and the Allis clamps to reduce the lumen diameter down to the underlying 14-French catheter (Fig. 51.24). This tapering is done to increase the pressure of this ileal segment and to provide continence by having a higher pressure than the colonic reservoir. Three purse-string sutures (0.5 cm apart) of 2-0 silk or polypropylene are placed in the seromuscular layer of the ileal segment at the level of the ileocecal valve to increase the final closure pressure and achieve urinary continence (Fig. 51.25). The tapered ileal segment is exteriorized as a stoma to the right lower quadrant of the abdomen for future self-catheterization by the patient.

The anterior wall of the reservoir is then closed with absorbable staples or suture in an interrupted fashion. The
The second procedure to maintain continence when constructing a Miami pouch is tapering of the distal ileum. The ileal segment is tapered over a 14-French catheter. Care must be taken to taper the antimesenteric side so as not to disrupt blood supply. (From: Estape R, Mendez L, et al. Urinary diversion in gynecologic oncology. Surg Clin North Am 2001;81:788, with permission.)

Reinforcing the ileocecal valve is considered essential for maintaining continence. The ileocecal junction normally acts as a valve, thus preventing reflux of colonic contents into the lumen. If a urinary reservoir becomes distended, the ileocecal valve alone may not be sufficient to prevent leakage. By tapering the segment of the distal ileum and placing purse-string sutures at the ileocecal valve, the pressure of this segment of bowel exceeds the reservoir pressure at all times, thereby resulting in full continence.

Approximately 2 weeks after surgery, a contrast study of the reservoir and an intravenous urogram are performed to evaluate for leakage, reflux, or upper tract obstruction. If the radiographs show normal findings, the ureteral stents are removed, and the patient is taught to irrigate and catheterize the pouch. Initially, the patient catheterizes the stoma every 2 to 4 hours and irrigates it four times a day. The patient gradually decreases the frequency of catheterization and irrigation if continence and/or obstruction of the catheter by mucus is not a problem. Patients describe a feeling of fullness or slight cramping in the right lower quadrant, indicating the need to empty the reservoir. The average frequency of catheterization is five to six catheterizations in 24 hours. The time needed for emptying the reservoir is about 3½ minutes. The amount of urine for each catheterization averages 365 mL (range, 250–500 mL). Urodynamic evaluation of the reservoir reveals that the basal pressure fluctuates between 10 and 20 cm of water, whereas in the tapered ileum it varies between 50 and 60 cm of water.

We have reviewed the incidence and management of the urinary complications related to the creation of the Miami pouch at the Division of Gynecologic Oncology of the University of Miami. The majority of the patients who had urinary diversion—68 of 90 (76%)—underwent pelvic exenteration for recurrent cervical cancer, and the majority of these (93.5%) were previously irradiated. The most common complications of the 90 patients evaluated were urinary tract infection/pyelonephritis (40%), ureteral stricture/obstruction (20%), difficult catheterization (18%), and pouch leakage (14%). It is now clear that most of the complications related to the urinary diversion can be safely treated conservatively. Conservative treatment was efficacious in most of the urinary complications related to the creation of the Miami pouch. In this study, ureteral strictures were encountered in 10 patients (13%). All strictures were noted at the level of the ureterocolonic anastomosis. Conservative management includes balloon dilation, stent placement, and nephrostomy placement. Conservative treatment was successful in 8 of the 10 patients. Ureteral obstruction that was caused by stone formation was treated with lithotripsy in one patient; the other required...
surgical revision because of the dimension of the stones. Another five patients presented with ureteral obstruction, four of which cases were successfully managed conservatively. The total number of patients with stones was four (52%), only one, as previously mentioned, required surgical revision. Five patients developed a fistula with the Miami pouch; three of these cases were also managed conservatively.

We have recently reported our 15-year experience performing the Miami Pouch with favorable results. There was a 40% urinary tract infection rate and a 20% ureteral structure rate; however, the rate of urinary continence in these patients was 93%

Although complications related to the creation of the Miami pouch are not infrequent, early detection and conservative management are now recommended to manage the majority of these patients safely. Conservative management should be attempted whenever possible, but surgical intervention should not be delayed when indicated. The optimal management of these complications consists of multidisciplinary approach with active participation of endoscopists, urologists, and radiologists.

In summary, the Miami Pouch continues to be an excellent choice for urinary reconstruction after radical resection for gynecologic cancer in the properly selected patient. With the advent of minimally invasive surgery being applied to radical pelvic resections and in certain cases even urinary reconstructions, we can expect the quality of life and recovery of these patients to continue to improve.

**TECHNIQUES TO RESTORE RECTAL FUNCTION**

In many gynecologic malignancies, resection of the rectosigmoid colon may be indicated to achieve optimal cure rates. In diseases ranging from primary ovarian cancer to recurrent cervical cancer, the rectosigmoid may need resection even with the aim for proper surgical management. In cases in which the anus is resected, the patient has few options except en bloc colostomy. However, efforts have been made in patients who have rectal and anus-sparing procedures to improve the technical and functional results by reanastomosis. Metastasis of ovarian cancer to the anus and lower rectum is rare. In 1954, Javert reported that the number of metastases of cervical carcinoma to the anus from the cervix was as low as 1.4 cm from the anal verge. A statistically significant difference in the number of patients having fecal frequency was noted between the group with end-to-end anastomosis versus those having construction of a rectal J-pouch reservoir. A total of 60% of those with a J-pouch reservoir had one to two bowel movements per day versus 33% of those with an end-to-end anastomosis procedure has spared many patients an undesirable end colostomy. This technique is described in Chapters 43 and 50.

The straight end-to-end colorectal anastomosis is not without its critics. Functional studies have revealed poor results with defecation disorders (leakage, urgency) in as many as 30% of patients, usually related to residual rectal length. Whereas reported in 1987 on incontinence and dysfunction in gynecologic patients undergoing very low colorectal anastomoses, an unacceptably high 70% of patients reported more than four bowel movements per day, even 2 years after surgery. Some physiologic studies seem to indicate that the incontinence is due to damage of the internal anal sphincter. Intercourse of any instrument transanally should be done with the utmost caution.

Frequency disorders, on the other hand, are a result of loss of rectal storage function. Many patients tend to improve over time, probably from an increased reservoir function of the remaining rectal stump; however, this adaptive period may last up to 2 years. For this reason, surgical options to improve functionality in patients undergoing rectosigmoid colon resection and anastomosis have been introduced with good results.

### Colonic J-Pouch Reservoir for Very Low Coloproctostomy

Patients in whom a very low anterior resection of the colon was performed were frequently left with an end sigmoid colostomy and low Hartmann pouch. Historical attempts to reestablish continuity of the fecal stream in patients requiring very low anastomosis (<5 cm from anus) of the colon to the rectum at or below the level of the levator sling met with discouraging results.

Tenesmus and fecal frequency are common side effects of very low end-to-end coloproctostomy after very low rectosigmoid resection. The creation of a rectal J-pouch reservoir, even in irradiated colon and rectum, appears to restore the rectal ampullae bulb reservoir and is an effective method of substantially decreasing these troublesome symptoms. As shown in Figure 51-27, the sigmoid colon is folded on itself with 5 to 7 cm extending into the affrent and efferent segments. A defect is opened in the bottom of the J-pouch, and the 10-cm in-line stapler with 4.8-mm staples is placed in both loops of the colon and fired. The end-to-end anastomosis (EEA) stapler is inserted through the rectum after two purse-string sutures are placed in the rectal stump and the bottom of the J-pouch. The EEA stapler is fired and the anastomosis is completed. The integrity of the anastomosis is tested by inserting a sigmoidoscope per anus, pumping air through the sigmoidoscope into the J-pouch, and observing all stapled suture lines for air leaks under saline placed into the pelvis. The problem of tenesmus and fecal frequency in very low anastomosis has been addressed by Lazorthes and coworkers in a study of 63 patients who underwent low anterior resection of the colon for rectal carcinoma. Forty of the 65 patients underwent end-to-end anastomosis at a mean distance of 2.3 cm from the anal verge, and 20 had construction of a rectal J-pouch reservoir with anastomosis to rectum at a mean distance of 1.4 cm from the anal verge. A statistically significant difference in the number of patients having fecal frequency was noted between the group with end-to-end anastomosis versus those having construction of a rectal J-pouch reservoir. A total of 60% of those with a J-pouch reservoir had one to two bowel movements per day versus 33% of those with an end-to-end...
FIGURE 51.27. A: Cutaway view of the completed rectal J-pouch is shown positioned over the anus and rectal stump with the end-to-end anastomosis stapler inserted through the anus up the rectum. The anvil of the stapler has been inserted into the pouch, and two adjacent purse-string sutures are applied and tied around the central rod. The stapler is closed and activated. B: Completed rectal J-pouch coloproctostomy.

anastomosis. Fecal frequency in these patients is due to the surgical removal of the rectal ampulla, which acts as a low-pressure pouch that does not produce tenesmus until it is full. This improvement was ascribed to a manometrically confirmed and statistically significant higher maximum pressure and tolerable fecal volume in the neorectum of those patients with a neoreservoir (J-pouch) versus those having direct end-to-end anastomosis.

This is especially true in gynecologic oncology patients with irradiated rectosigmoid colons whose compliance is reduced. Therefore, the radius of the end-to-end anastomosis is small, and, under Laplace’s law, the pressure becomes high. In the J-pouch, the radius is larger; therefore, the pressure is lower. There is little tenesmus, and fecal frequency is significantly reduced. A confirmatory study was published by Parc and colleagues, who reported on 30 patients who underwent low anterior resection and rectal J-pouch coloproctostomy. After surgery, the mean number of bowel movements in this group was 1.1 per day, and no patients reported tenesmus.

The use of this technique in patients undergoing surgery for gynecologic malignancy, particularly those whose condition has been previously treated with total pelvic irradiation and brachytherapy, has not been extensive. Some suggestion has been made that with the J-pouch there is a better blood supply, leading to a decreased incidence of anastomotic breakdown in patients with a history of pelvic radiotherapy.

The colonic J-pouch is not without complications itself. The principal shortcoming is incomplete emptying. Several studies have been directed at the limb length of the J-pouch. To minimize this problem, the consensus seems to be to construct a useful reservoir the limb length of 5 to 7 cm.

The issue of a protective colostomy or ileostomy when performing a colorectal anastomosis usually rears its ugly head at about this time. The literature at this time is unclear. Data in the colorectal literature suggest it is beneficial. However, data from our institution suggest, for patients undergoing pelvic exenteration, that the major risk factor for fistula formation or anastomotic breakdown is a history of pelvic radiotherapy, independent of the presence of a protective diversion. Indeed, 33% of previously irradiated patients will have an anastomotic breakdown (even with a proximal diversion) versus 7.5% in those with no history of radiotherapy.

In summary, colon J-pouches significantly improve the quality of life for patients, especially those patients who have irradiated bowel and in whom significant portions of the small bowel have been removed. It should be considered by all who perform gynecologic oncology surgery.

BEST SURGICAL PRACTICES

- Radical resection of pelvic malignancies or tissue injury from radiation may produce significant structural and functional pelvic or vulvar defects that need to be repaired by the gynecologic surgeon.
- Vaginal reconstruction: Gracilis myocutaneous flaps are the standard reconstruction technique for vaginal reconstruction after pelvic exenteration because they are bulky and fill the pelvic cavity with tissue and bring in new blood supply. An omental flap with a split-thickness skin graft can also be used, but this requires use of a vaginal stent or mold (for at least 6 months) to maintain patency. Rectus abdominis
flaps have also been used, but they cannot be constructed at the same time as the urinary and bowel diversions; thus, this technique prolongs the exenterative operation.

Vulvar reconstruction: In most cases, even large vulvar defects can be closed primarily because of the loosen skin of the vulva, thigh, and buttocks. The Z-plasty full-thickness pedicle flap is very useful and relatively easy to perform. The design of the flap is the most critical part of the procedure. As a rule, for every centimeter of flap length, the base must be 2 cm wide. Use of V-Y advancement flaps split-thickness skin grafts and various myocutaneous flaps may be helpful in some defects.

Urinary tract reconstruction: Although an ideal conduit provides a relatively rapid technique with few complications for bladder replacement after exenteration, continent urinary reservoirs result in a more normal quality of life for the postoperative patient. We have had considerable experience with the Miami pouch, which uses a longer segment of colon to increase the size of the reservoir and a tapered segment of distal ileum resulting in good continence rates.

Rectal reconstruction: When the anus and distal rectum can be preserved, several techniques to reestablish rectal continuity exist. The use of end-to-end stapling devices has allowed much more distal anastomoses than was possible with hand-sewn anastomoses. In some patients, the loss of rectal storage function of the healthy sigmoid colon may lead to perineal, urgency, and incontinence. A rectal Y-pouch may solve this problem in all cases of low rectal anastomosis in a previously radiated pelvis, a temporary protective colostomy should be strongly considered.

Bibliography

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

We would like to acknowledge Clifford R. Wheelless Jr., MD, for his contributions to the current and prior editions of this chapter. Dr. Wheelless is a pioneer in the field of reconstructive gynecologic surgery, and his work has continued the rich tradition of the true pelvic surgeon.


CHAPTER 2

1. A legal document reflects that an adequate informal consent process has taken place.
   a. True
   b. False

2. An ethically valid informed consent requires that it be obtained through the voluntary authorization by a patient for a medical intervention.
   a. True
   b. False

3. An adverse surgical outcome is synonymous with negligence.
   a. True
   b. False

4. The surgeon should document in the chart the alternatives to a selected procedure and indicate that they were each discussed with the patient before the procedure.
   a. True
   b. False

5. Competence of the patient is one of the core components required in the decision-making process.
   a. True
   b. False

6. An incorrect entry in a patient’s chart should be corrected by a second entry without crossing out and initialing the erroneous entry.
   a. True
   b. False

7. Standard of care refers to a level of care that is generally thought to represent the norm.
   a. True
   b. False

8. The National Practitioners Data Bank receives and makes available data regarding infraction of practice standards.
   a. True
   b. False

9. The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) establishes minimal national standards to ensure confidentiality of protected health information.
   a. True
   b. False

10. The Nuremberg Code establishes the need for voluntary consent of the patient.
    a. True
    b. False

11. Surgeons who choose to respect the wishes of a competent Jehovah’s Witness patient to refuse blood products in the face of imminent exsanguination are, in general, protected from wrongful death liability.
    a. True
    b. False

12. A durable power of attorney for health care is a legal document in which a patient designates a specific individual to make health care decisions in the setting of loss of decisional capacity.
    a. True
    b. False

CHAPTER 3

1. Select the professional who should be responsible for answering patient’s questions before she undergoes surgery:
   a. Office nurse who works with preoperative patients
   b. Ancillary personnel who has taken a course called “Preparing the Patient for Surgery”
   c. The patient’s surgeon
   d. A trusted friend who has recently had the same procedure

2. In which of the following patients is an obliterator procedure indicated?
   a. A patient who is not sexually active
   b. An octogenarian
   c. An elderly widowed or divorced patient
   d. None of the above; age should not be a determinant

3. Which of the following questions should be answered for the patient before surgery?
   a. How will surgery affect my sexuality?
   b. When can I safely resume sexual intercourse?
   c. What hormonal changes should I expect after surgery?
   d. Can I have ovarian cancer after my ovaries are surgically removed?
   e. Will I need hormone replacement therapy (HRT)?
   f. Is HRT safe?
   g. All of the above

4. What is a complete physician?
   a. A physician who has mastered and maintained his or her skills in the surgical arena
   b. One who keeps up to date by acquiring new skills
   c. One who is most well known in his community as a skilled surgeon
   d. A skilled surgeon who addresses his patient’s psychological as well as physical needs

5. Which of the following should be considered “special needs” patients who require extra attention?
   a. Teenagers
   b. Patients from another culture
   c. A depressed patient
   d. The cancer patient
   e. The senior woman
   f. All of the above

6. Shaving the perineum preoperatively is:
   a. Always indicated before vaginal surgery
   b. Always indicated before abdominal surgery
   c. Decreases postoperative infections
   d. Indicated in the older patient

1375
Questions

1. An outdated procedure that should no longer be performed routinely
2. Alleviating preoperative stress does the following:
   a. Releases endogenous opiates
   b. Has little or no effect on postoperative morbidity
   c. Has been shown to decrease the requirement for analgesics after surgery
   d. Wastes the time of the physician and personnel in the modern office

CHAPTER 4

1. The Standard of Care requires in most states in the United States that physicians must render the degree of care exercised by physicians under the same or similar circumstances in the:
   a. Community
   b. State
   c. Region
   d. Nation
2. An indirect cause-and-effect relationship must exist between the breach in the Standard of Care and the adverse outcome for malpractice to legally occur.
   a. True
   b. False
3. The ethical principles generally involved in providing adequate informed consent include:
   (1) Autonomy (2) Beneficence (3) Nonmaleficence (4) Justice
   a. 1 and 4
   b. 1 and 2
   c. 3 and 4
   d. 1, 2, 3, and 4
4. The primary purpose of a well-documented medical record is to:
   a. Protect the physician from a malpractice claim
   b. Provide adequate information to the patient’s insurance company
   c. Communicate with members of the health care team
   d. Meet hospital requirements
5. The words ______ are medicolegally correct words to be use in describing, in a progress note or an operative note, an adverse event that might have occurred during an operative procedure:
   1. Unintentionally
   2. Inadvertently
   3. Accidentally
   4. Unfortunately
   a. 1 and 4
   b. 1 and 3
   c. 2 and 4
   d. None of the above
6. When a language barrier exists between the patient and physician, the physician is relieved of the ethical requirement to provide reasonable communication in providing informed consent.
   a. True
   b. False
7. The physician is protected from being sued for malpractice for an adverse outcome when the physician’s managed care plan has denied the physician’s patient access to studies or treatments recommended by the physician.
   a. True
   b. False
8. In preparation for and during a deposition, it is generally prudent for a physician to:
   1. Be unfamiliar with the office and hospital policies so that the plaintiff’s attorney cannot question the physician about those areas
   2. Not attempt to educate his or her attorney about the medical facts of the case, because the insurance carrier would only use attorneys who are very knowledgeable about all the medical aspects of the case
   3. Always demand to be able to read and sign the deposition
   4. Be unfamiliar with the alternative forms of therapy that you might have used so that the plaintiff’s attorney is unable to question you about them
   a. 1 and 2
   b. 1 and 4
   c. 3
   d. 2 and 4
9. During a trial, it is prudent for the physician to:
   1. Attend only those sessions where he or she has to give testimony to convey to the jury lack of concern about the matter
   2. Explain in complex medical terms the facts of the case so that the jury can be impressed with his or her medical knowledge
   3. Give the best educated guess to questions of which he or she is not completely sure of the answer
   4. Dress in a manner to convey to the jury that he or she is a rich and very successful physician
   a. 1 and 3
   b. 2 and 4
   c. 2 and 3
   d. None of the above
10. The emotional stress of a malpractice case has:
    a. Been equated to the loss of a loved one
    b. Resulted in symptoms of major depression in 40% of sued physicians
    c. Resulted in 8% of sued physicians having the onset of physical ailments of which one fourth were life threatening
    d. All of the above

CHAPTER 5

1. Common electronic health record errors include which of the following?
   a. Entering and retrieving information
   b. Failure of software
   c. Communication and coordination of patient care processes
   d. Inability for physicians to learn how to navigate the programs
2. For resident education, Brazil requires which of the following?
   a. Weekends off
   b. 30 consecutive days off per year
   c. One day off in 5
   d. 10% of total work hours dedicated to educational activities
3. Regarding hospitalist programs, which of the following are true?
   a. The majority of clinical trials demonstrate decreased length of stay.
   b. These providers only work in hospitals.
   c. There are multiple models and work paradigms.
2. Choose the incorrect statement pertaining to the pudendal artery and nerve.
   a. The pudendal nerve provides only sensory innervation to the perineum.
   b. The pudendal nerve arises from the sacral plexus.
   c. The pudendal artery originates from the anterior division of the internal iliac artery.
   d. The nerve and vessels have three branches: clitoral, perineal, and inferior hemorrhoidal.
   e. The perineal branch of the pudendal artery is the largest of the three branches.

3. Choose the incorrect statement.
   a. Vulvar lymphatic channels lie medial to the labiocutaneous fold, establishing this as the lateral border of surgical resection.
   b. The clitoris never drains directly into the deep pelvic nodes.
   c. The superficial inguinal nodes lie in a T-shaped distribution 1 cm below the inguinal ligament.
   d. The deep inguinal nodes are found beneath the fascia cribrosa.
   e. Within the femoral triangle, the most medial structure is the femoral vein.

4. Choose the incorrect statement.
   a. The perineal membrane is a triangular sheet of fibromuscular tissue spanning the anterior half of the pelvic outlet.
   b. The perineal membrane attaches medially with the urethra, walls of the vagina, and the perineal body.
   c. The internal anal sphincter is indistinguishable from the external anal sphincter, and it lies just outside the external anal sphincter.
Questions

d. The levator ani muscles and their fascia are called the pelvic diaphragm.
e. The urogenital hiatus allows passage of the urethra, vagina, and rectum through the pelvic diaphragm.

5. Which of the following is a vaginal structure?
   a. Anterior and posterior columns
   b. Urethral carina
   c. Anterior and posterior fornices
   d. Lateral vaginal sulci

6. Choose the incorrect statement.
   a. The four portions of the fallopian tube from medial to lateral are the isthmus, interstitium, ampulla, and fimbriated end.
   b. The ovary connects medially to the uterus with the uteroovarian ligament.
   c. The normal ovary measures 7 cm long during reproductive life.
   d. The anterior portion of the uterine cervix is covered by squamous to columnar epithelium.

7. Choose the correct statement.
   a. The fallopian tubes are approximately 15 cm long.
   b. The muscle fibers of the uterine corpus are arranged in a complex diagonal crisscrossed pattern.
   c. The cervix is divided into two portions: the portio vaginalis and the portio supravaginalis.
   d. The distal end of the fallopian tube is attached to the ovary by the fimbria ovarica.

8. Choose the incorrect statement.
   a. The ovary attaches medially to the pelvic sidewall with the infundibulopelvic ligament, which contains the ovarian vessels.
   b. The ovary is anterior and posterior fornices.
   c. The normal ovary measures 7 cm long during reproductive life.
   d. The ovary attaches to the broad ligament through the mesovarium.
   e. Ovarian follicles, corpora lutea, and corpora albicantia are found within the ovarian cortex.

9. Choose the incorrect statement.
   a. The blood supply of the upper adnexal structures comes from the ovarian arteries that arise from the aorta below the renal arteries.
   b. The ovarian veins drain into the vena cava on the left and the renal vein on the right.
   c. The uterine artery, which usually originates from the internal iliac artery, is a branch of the main left iliac artery, may have a common origin with the internal pudendal or vaginal arteries.
   d. The uterus attaches to the base of the uterine cervix.
   e. The vagina receives blood supply from the uterine artery, vaginal artery, and the pudendal vessels.

10. Choose the incorrect statement pertaining to the ureter.
    a. The ureter descends into the pelvis after passing over the bifurcation of the internal and external iliac arteries.
    b. The ureter lies in a special connective tissue sheath within the medial leaf of the broad ligament.
    c. The ureter crosses under the uterine artery in its course through the cardinal ligament.
    d. The ureter lies approximately 3 cm from the anterolateral surface of the cervix.
    e. The ureter receives blood supply from the common iliac, internal iliac, uterine, and vesical arteries.

CHAPTER 8

1. A preoperative evaluation of a patient with an uncomplicated gynecologic history and an uncomplicated medical or surgical status should include all of the following laboratory tests EXCEPT:
   a. Electrocardiogram if older than 40 years
   b. Pregnancy test if reproductive age, sexually active, not using contraception, or if using questionably effective contraception
   c. Blood type and screen if the potential exists for a more than minimal surgical blood loss
   d. Chemistry panel
   e. Hematocrit or hemoglobin if older than 6 months

   2. During the preoperative history, herbal therapy and dietary supplements should be questioned because of their potential adverse effects on surgical outcomes. These potential adverse effects may include:
      a. Effect of anticoagulation
      b. Effect on glycemic control
      c. Blood type and screen if the potential exists for a more than minimal surgical blood loss
      d. Chemistry panel
      e. None of the above

   3. Pelvic surgery should always be preceded by a recent cyto logic study of the cervix because:
      a. A negative Papanicolaou smear always excludes the possibility of cervical, endocervical, or endometrial neoplasm.
      b. Most preclinical malignancies of the cervix demonstrate significant gross lesions indicating the need for cytologic evaluation.
      c. Patients with abnormal Papanicolaou smears showing repeated dysplasia should be evaluated by colposcopy and suspicious lesions biopsied before pelvic surgery.
      d. A sampling of cells taken from the portio of the cervix is simple, inexpensive, and is indicative of cervical and endocervical pathology.
      e. A finding of abnormal glandular cell dysplasia requires only an endocervical curettage for a complete evaluation.

   4. In regards to the planning and accomplishment of gynecologic surgery on senior patients, which of the following statements is INCORRECT?
      a. Senior gynecologic patients present with significantly greater health care problems.
      b. Senior gynecologic patients are at increased risk during surgery.
      c. Age is a relative contraindication for gynecologic surgery.
      d. With appropriate evaluation and management, the risks of gynecologic surgery on senior patients can be reduced to a level not much greater than for premenopausal patients.
      e. Age is not always an accurate indicator of organ function or malfunction.

   5. Preoperative prophylactic antibiotics are recommended in which of the following gynecologic surgical procedures?
      a. Ovarian cystectomy
      b. Cervical pregnancy
      c. Uterine myomectomy
      d. Tubal ligation
      e. Vaginal and abdominal hysterectomy

   6. Patients who are found during their preoperative examination to have bacterial vaginosis should be treated with:
      a. Oral metronidazole for 7 days
1. All of the following statements regarding preoperative patient preparation are true EXCEPT:
   a. A full bowel prep should be carried out on all gynecologic surgeries.
   b. Pelvic cleansing should be accomplished before all pelvic or abdominal surgeries.
   c. Universal precautions should be used in all gynecologic surgeries.
   d. Hepatitis B vaccination is recommended for all physicians accomplishing gynecologic surgeries.
   e. In those gynecologic surgeries in which hair removal is deemed necessary, hair clipping, rather than hair shaving, is recommended before surgery.

2. Which form of pharmacologic venous thromboembolism (VTE) prophylaxis has the lowest rate of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT)?
   a. Low molecular weight heparin
   b. Fondaparinux
   c. Dabigatran
   d. Oral anticoagulants
   e. None of the above

3. In regards to the planning and accomplishment of gynecologic surgery on senior patients, which of the following statements is INCORRECT?
   a. Senior gynecologic patients present with significantly greater health care problems.
   b. Senior gynecologic patients are at increased risk during surgery.
   c. Age is a relative contraindication for gynecologic surgery.
   d. With appropriate evaluation and management the risks of gynecologic surgery on senior patients can be reduced to a level not much greater than for premenopausal patients.
   e. Age is not always an accurate indicator of organ function or malfunctions.

4. What are the five basic pathophysiologic mechanisms that cause hypoxemic respiratory failure?

5. Preoperative prophylactic antibiotics are recommended in which of the following gynecologic surgical procedures?
   a. Ovarian cystectomy
   b. Ectopic pregnancy
   c. Uterine myomectomy
   d. Tubal ligation
   e. Vaginal and abdominal hysterectomy
Questions

6. Patients receiving prophylactic antibiotics before gynecologic surgery should be given the antibiotic:
   a. 6 hours before surgery
   b. 1-2 hours before surgery, repeated once if the surgery lasts longer than 3 hours
   c. 1-2 hours before surgery, repeated at 3 and 6 hours after the start of surgery
   d. 6 hours before surgery, repeated again 1-2 hours before surgery
   e. 6 hours before surgery, repeated every 6 hours for 2 days

7. A rectal examination, in combination with the abdominal-pelvic examination, offers all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. A more complete assessment of the broad and uterosacral ligaments
   b. A more effective assessment of the posterior bladder wall
   c. A more complete assessment of the cul-de-sac of Douglas
   d. A more effective assessment of the adnexa
   e. A more effective assessment of the anal sphincter, anal canal, and lower rectum

8. All of the preoperative management actions are suggested in the preoperative care of gynecologic patients EXCEPT:
   a. Discontinue the use of birth control pills 2 to 4 weeks before the planned gynecologic surgery
   b. Immediate preoperative examination by the gynecologic surgeon and anesthesia assessment by an individual anesthesiologist or in the anesthesia preoperative clinic
   c. Cleansing of the lower colon by a preoperative enema
   d. Use of vaginal estrogen cream in postmenopausal women undergoing vaginal surgery
   e. Use of gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonist for 2-3 months before hysteroscopic resection of submucous uterine leiomyoma

9. All of the following statements regarding preoperative patient preparation are true EXCEPT:
   a. A full bowel prep should be carried out on all gynecologic surgeries
   b. Pelvic cleansing should be accomplished before all pelvic or abdominal surgeries
   c. Universal precautions should be used in all gynecologic surgeries
   d. Hepatitis B vaccination is recommended for all physicians accomplishing gynecologic surgeries
   e. In those gynecologic surgeries in which hair removal is deemed necessary, hair clipping, rather than hair shaving, is recommended just before surgery.

CHAPTER 11

1. Closing the subcutaneous space decreases the rate of superficial wound infection.
   a. True
   b. False

2. A 40-year-old woman is diagnosed by ultrasound with a left tubalovarian complex (6 × 6 cm). An open left salpingo-oophorectomy is performed without complications. On postoperative day 2, the patient reports pain at the incision site, and her temperature is noted to be 38.1°C (100.6°F). Examination and gentle probing of the wound show purulent drainage with an intact fascia. Along with antibiotic therapy, the next appropriate step in the management of this postoperative infection is:
   a. Return to the operating room for a thorough examination of the wound and fascial plane under general anesthesia.
   b. Open the wound widely to allow drainage and debridement of necrotic tissue, then cleanse the wound thoroughly with povidone-iodine before reclosing the wound.
   c. Open the wound widely and debride necrotic tissue, then insert a Penrose drain at the infected site before reclosing the wound.
   d. Open the wound widely to allow drainage and debridement of necrotic tissue, then apply wet-to-dry packing until the wound closes by secondary intention.

CHAPTER 12

1. Adult respiratory distress syndrome is characterized by:
   a. Narrowing of the alveolar-arterial O2 gradient
   b. Supplemental oxygen usually able to maintain systemic oxygen saturation (arterial PaO2 over 65 mm Hg)
   c. Intrapulmonary shunting
   d. For platelet counts below 100,000
   e. Oliguria

2. Initial manifestations of early reversible shock include:
   a. Reduced cardiac output
   b. An increase in the systemic vascular resistance
   c. Cold, clammy skin
   d. Disorientation
   e. Oliguria

3. Platelet transfusion is indicated:
   a. For every 4 units of packed red cells transfused
   b. Whenever the platelet count falls below 50,000 µg/dL
   c. For persistent bleeding consistent with coagulopathy
   d. For platelet counts below 100,000 µg/dL before surgery
5. Which of the following characterizes dobutamine?
   a. Maximizes cerebral, coronary artery, and renal blood flow
   b. α-adrenergic effects predominate
   c. β1-adrenergic effects predominate
   d. β2-adrenergic effects predominate
   e. Inotropic and vasoconstrictive effects

6. Following an uneventful total abdominal hysterectomy for symptomatic uterine leiomyomata, a 47-year-old, otherwise healthy patient is seen on morning rounds 24 hours after surgery. The estimated operative blood loss was approximately 1,500 mL. Current vital signs reveal that she is afebrile, has a blood pressure of 110/80 (consistent with her preoperative blood pressure); she does not appear to be in distress. Orthostatics reveal a positive tilt test. Her post-op hemoglobin, checked 24 hours after surgery, is 8 mg/dL. The best management initial treatment for this patient is:
   a. Packed red blood cells (1–2 units)
   b. Crystalloid infusion (1–2 L)
   c. Collodion solution (50–100 mL 25% albumin)
   d. Control venous catheterization
   e. Observation

7. A 22-year-old G0 presents to the emergency room with symptoms of diffuse abdominal pain. She reports that she was treated last year for pelvic inflammatory disease. On admission, her temperature is 38.4°C, her blood pressure is 100/65 mm Hg, and her heart rate is 90. Orthostatics reveal minimal change in blood pressure sitting and reclining. Abdominal examination reveals diffuse tenderness without rebound or guarding, and a bimanual exam reveals a left-sided mass. Laboratory investigation reveals a negative β-hCG titer; a white blood cell count is 21,000 with 90% mature segmental neutrophils. There is a 5-cm complex adnexal mass on ultrasound and no cul-de-sac tent. Of the following, which is the most appropriate next step?
   a. Immediate exploratory laparotomy
   b. Immediate intravenous antibiotics
   c. Urine-plasma creatinine (40 mEq/L/24 hr)
   d. Fractional excretion of sodium
   e. Observation

8. Oliguric prerenal azotemia is characterized by:
   a. Hypotensive hyperchloremic metabolic alkalosis
   b. Urine-plasma creatinine (40 mEq/L/24 hr)
   c. Urine sodium excretion (20 mEq/L/24 hr)
   d. Administration of an erythropoietic stimulating agent.

9. A 46-year-old woman underwent a difficult abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy for endometriosis, and the estimated blood loss was 950 mL. Twenty-four hours later, she is anemic. Vital signs reveal a heart rate of 110 that increases to 125 on sitting, and her reclining blood pressure, 110/80 mm Hg, is 105/70 mm Hg in the sitting position. Over the past 8-hour shift, her urine output was 250 mL. These findings are most consistent with which class of shock?
   a. Class I
   b. Class II
   c. Class III
   d. Class IV
   e. Class V

10. Classically, the order of organ system loss in patients with multiorgan failure syndrome is:
    a. Lung, liver, gastrointestinal (GI), kidney
    b. Liver, lung, GI, kidney
    c. GI, kidney, liver, lung
    d. Kidney, GI, lung, liver
    e. Increased sympathetic activation causes renin release.

11. Which of the following statements characterize the mechanism of action of an intact renin-angiotensinogen system?
    a. Angiotensin I is an active polypeptide.
    b. Angiotensin II is a potent vasoconstrictor.
    c. Aldosterone along with antiadrenergic hormone promotes water and sodium excretion.
    d. Angiotensin II decreases venous return, stroke volume, and cardiac output.
    e. Inotropic and vasoconstrictive effects

12. A 58-year-old woman was admitted with fever and severe neutropenia 10 days after chemotherapy. Approximately 48 hours later, she continues to have a low-grade fever (37.9°C) and an absolute neutrophil count (ANC) of 500 mm³. She has an indwelling vascular catheter, with no appreciable erythema or discharge around the catheter site. She is asymptomatic otherwise, and physical examination is unremarkable. Blood cultures are positive for Gram-positive cocci. What is the next logical step in her care?
    a. Empiric therapy with cefepime, ceftriaxone, and imipenem
    b. Removal of the indwelling catheter
    c. Identification of etiology of the anaerobic organism before modifying antibiotic treatment
    d. Vancomycin antibiotic therapy
    e. Piperacillin-tazobactam antibiotic therapy

13. A 59-year-old patient 12 weeks after surgical staging, hysterectomy, and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy is receiving cycle 2 of carboplatin and paclitaxel chemotherapy for stage III, grade 3 endometrial adenocarcinoma. Pretreatment complete blood count (CBC) reveals a serum Hb of 8.8 and hematocrit of 27 mg%. The patient has well-controlled hypertension and diabetes. Her blood pressure and pulse are in the normal range. She is able to perform most activities of daily living but acknowledges chronic fatigue. In this clinical setting, the best first step in the management of her anemia is:
    a. Transfuse with 2 units of packed blood cells.
    b. Discontinue chemotherapy and begin pelvic radiation therapy.
    c. Initiate supplementation with oral folic acid and monthly B₁₂ injections.
    d. Administer an erythropoietin stimulating agent.
    e. Give iron supplementation.

Questions 1381
CHAPTER 14

1. Which transverse abdominal incision is a muscle-cutting incision?
   a. Pfannenstiel
   b. K"ustner
   c. Maylard
   d. Gridiron

2. The posterior rectus sheath, below the arcuate line, increases the strength of the anterior abdominal wall.
   a. True
   b. False

3. Which aponeuroses contribute to the posterior rectus sheath?
   a. External and internal obliques
   b. External oblique and transversalis
   c. Internal oblique and transversalis
   d. Transversalis and linea alba

4. If one used a Pfannenstiel incision to enter the abdomen for a gynecologic surgery, but found that the incision was inadequate for completion of that surgery, which is the best surgical option to improve visualization?
   a. Transect the rectus muscles, similarly done when performing a Maylard incision.
   b. Transect the rectus muscles at their insertion, similarly done when performing a Cherney incision.
   c. Make a vertical incision, in the midline of the abdomen, bisecting the transverse skin incision and separating the rectus muscles.
   d. Separate the anterior abdominal wall fascia from the overlying subcutaneous fat to the level of the umbilicus and make a vertical incision in the fascia, separating the rectus muscles.

5. Which of the incisions listed below is not routinely used for an extraperitoneal approach to access the retroperitoneal structures?
   a. Sunrise
   b. J-shaped incision
   c. Gridiron
   d. Maylard

6. On average, how many days postoperatively does an evisceration occur?
   a. 2
   b. 4
   c. 6
   d. 8
   e. 10

7. An inferior epigastric artery arises from which major vessel?
   a. Internal iliac artery
   b. External iliac artery
   c. Femoral artery
   d. Hypogastric artery

CHAPTER 15

1. To reduce the risk of unintentional burn when using monopolar electrosurgical devices, one should:
   a. Use an energy current with a highly interrupted sinusoidal wave pattern (COAG).
   b. Use a contemporary electrosurgical generator that uses a “floating ground” circuitry system.
   c. Use a return electrode (ground) of large contact area to ensure a low-current density.
   d. Use a higher voltage to concentrate the energy onto the intended tissue site.

2. To minimize risks of electrosurgical injury during laparoscopic surgery, all of the following practices are recommended EXCEPT:
   a. If metal laparoscopic trocars are used, a plastic insulating collar should be used.
   b. When changing from a flat-puddle electrode to a needlepoint electrode, the power should be decreased.
   c. With bipolar instruments, the CUT current should be used.
   d. An in-line ammeter should be used with bipolar instruments to insulate that coagulation of the tissue in the grasping is complete before the tissue bundle is cut.

3. While coagulating a small diameter bleeder clamped in a hemostat during an emergency laparotomy, the assistant surgeon’s hand is burned where she holds the hemostats. This was due to:
   a. Using CUT instead of COAG
   b. A small hole in the assistant’s glove
   c. Using a return electrode with a low-current density
   d. Activating the current before making contact with the clamp

4. Compared with desiccation, fulguration:
   a. Is a desirable electrosurgical modality for venous bleeding, such as oozing from a muscle
   b. Produces less necrosis and deep-tissue injury
   c. Generates an energy current that avoids “spraying” of the tissue with electricity and injury to the adjacent structures
   d. Is better for coaptive coagulation of an isolated bleeding vessel

5. When using a wire loop for a loop electrosurgical excision procedure (LEEP), all of the following are true EXCEPT:
   a. Larger loop electrodes should be used with higher power settings to provide the same tissue effects as a smaller diameter loop.
   b. Faster movement of the wire through the cervical tissue causes more thermal injury and makes it more difficult for the pathologist to interpret.
   c. The power should be applied to the loop electrode before touching the cervical tissue.
   d. During coagulation of bleeders in the cone bed, the ball electrode should not touch the tissue, allowing the sparks to arc to the surface.

CHAPTER 16

1. The following lasers can be transmitted through quartz fibers except:
   a. Nd:YAG
   b. CO2
   c. KTP
   d. Ho:YAG
2. As the orbital distance of the electron from the nucleus of an atom increases, the energy level decreases.
   a. True
   b. False

3. Q-switching a laser produces the following except:
   a. Increase in pulse time
   b. Increase in peak power
   c. Minimalization of adjacent tissue effect
   d. Cutting of tissue with lower water content
4. One joule equals 1 watt applied for 10 seconds.
   a. True
   b. False

5. Vaporization of tissue with laser occurs:
   a. Between 57°C and 100°C
   b. Above 100°C
   c. Above 100°F
   d. By conduction of the heat away from the laser impact site

6. Laser energy is unique in that it is uniform throughout the cross section diameter of the beam.
   a. True
   b. False

7. The most vulnerable organ to be damaged by laser is:
   a. Skin
   b. Eye

8. The best carbon dioxide laser backstop is:
   a. Glass
   b. Pyrex
   c. Quartz
   d. Water

CHAPTER 17

1. The most cost-effective trocar/sleeve system is which of the following?
   a. Reusable
   b. Disposable
   c. Reposable
   d. Suposable

2. The term laser is an acronym for light amplification by spontaneous emissions of radiation.
   a. True
   b. False

3. The inferior epigastric artery is a direct branch of what major blood vessel?
   a. Internal iliac artery
   b. External iliac artery
   c. Femoral artery
   d. Aorta

4. Which nerve injury is most commonly associated with placement of lateral trocars during laparoscopy?
   a. Obturator nerve
   b. Iliosinguinal nerve
   c. Sciatic nerve
   d. Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve

5. A 52-year-old woman presents to your office 1 week status post a difficult laparoscopic sacral colpopexy requiring 6 hours of surgery. A thorough history and physical exam reveal that she has an inability to dorsiflex or evert her foot. In addition, she has a loss of sensation to the lateral calf and dorsum of the foot. You find that she does have sensation in her toes and the plantar surface of her foot. Her injury is most consistent with which of the following?
   a. Injury to femoral nerve, excessive flexion of the hips with Allen stirrups
   b. Compression of the common peroneal nerve, compression by Allen stirrups
   c. Compression of the tibial nerve, compression by Allen stirrups
   d. Entrapment of pudendal nerve, sutures entrapping the nerve

6. The coagulation button on the cautery is actually an extremely “damped” or modified form of the cutting wave current.
   a. True
   b. False

7. The open technique for laparoscopy has been shown to result in a statistically significant decrease in deaths during laparoscopy when compared with the Veress needle technique.
   a. True
   b. False

CHAPTER 18

1. Choose the incorrect statement.
   a. Hysteroscopes are available with 0-degree straight on or 30-degree fore-oblique views.
   b. The telescope is composed of the eyepiece, the barrel, and the objective lens.
   c. Three types of light generators are available: tungsten, metal halide, and xenon.
   d. The tungsten light source is superior to other sources.

2. Choose the incorrect statement.
   a. The diagnostic hysteroscope is 4 to 5 mm in diameter.
   b. The operative hysteroscope is 15 mm in diameter.
   c. The operating electrodes include a ball, barrel, and cutting loop.
   d. Most resectoscopes are equipped with a 30-degree telescope.

3. Which of the following are available as accessory instruments for hysteroscopy?
   a. Grasping forceps
   b. Scissors
   c. Biopsy forceps
   d. Monopolar electrode
   e. All of the above

4. Which of the following is the distending medium of choice for office hysteroscopy?
   a. Carbon dioxide
   b. Hyskon
   c. Normal saline
   d. Glycine 1.5%

5. Which of the following should not be used with monopolar cautery?
   a. Carbon dioxide
   b. Hyskon
   c. Normal saline
   d. Glycine 1.5%
Questions

7. Because of its hypoosmolarity, while using which of the following should caution be taken when a fluid deficit of greater than or equal to 500 mL occurs?
   a. Carbon dioxide
   b. Hyskon
   c. Normal saline
   d. Glycine 1.5%

8. Choose the incorrect statement.
   a. Hysteroscopy should be performed during the luteal phase for best visualization of the endometrial cavity.
   b. Routine cervical dilatation should be avoided at the time of hysteroscopy.
   c. Uterine position should be determined by pelvic examination before beginning hysteroscopy.
   d. The hysteroscope should be advanced into the uterine cavity under direct visualization.

9. Simultaneous laparoscopy should be performed with all of the following hysteroscopic procedures EXCEPT:
   a. Metroplasty
   b. Resection of uterine synchiae
   c. Cannulation of the fallopian tube
   d. Endometrial ablation

10. Which is the most common complication of operative hysteroscopy?
    a. Infection
    b. Uterine perforation
    c. Carbon dioxide embolism
    d. Bleeding

CHAPTER 19

1. All of the following conditions increase the risk of intraoperative hemorrhage EXCEPT:
   a. Obesity
   b. Hepatitis B
   c. von Willebrand disease
   d. Pelvic malignancy

2. Which of the following is not recommended when trying to control significant bleeding in the area of the uterine artery at the time of hysteroscopy?
   a. Use large figure-of-eight sutures so the suture will not cut through the tissue.
   b. Obtain good exposure with retraction, suction, and good lighting.
   c. Control the bleeding with pressure until adequate preparations have been made to identify and control the bleeding.
   d. Do a cystoscopy or open the bladder after controlling the bleeding to be sure the ureter has not been compromised.

3. Which of the following agents or techniques are not used to control pelvic bleeding?
   a. Microfibrillar collagen
   b. Fibrin glue
   c. Thumbtacks
   d. Lamellar platelets

4. The risk of which infection is greatest with blood transfusion?
   a. Hepatitis B
   b. Hepatitis C
   c. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
   d. Human T-lymphotropic virus (HTLV)

5. Hyogastric artery ligation helps control pelvic bleeding by:
   a. Ligating the feeder vessels of the pelvic blood supply
   b. Reducing the pulse pressure
   c. Increasing pelvic thrombokinase
   d. Infarction of the uterus

6. The risk of fetal growth restriction is doubled in a pregnancy that occurs after bilateral hyogastric artery ligation.
   a. True
   b. False

7. In a 150-lb. woman (68 kg), a 15% blood loss would be approximately 680 cc.
   a. True
   b. False

8. When using hyogastric artery ligation to control pelvic hemorrhage, all of the following are true EXCEPT:
   a. The right-angle clamp should be passed from lateral to medial under the artery.
   b. The hyogastric artery should be tied but not cut.
   c. Only the posterior division of the hyogastric artery should be ligated.
   d. The hyogastric arteries should be ligated bilaterally.

9. The risk of HIV infection due to blood transfusion in the United States is currently about:
   a. 1 in 2000
   b. 1 in 20,000
   c. 1 in 200,000
   d. 1 in 2 million

10. Venous bleeding is usually more easily controlled than arterial bleeding.
    a. True
    b. False

CHAPTER 20

1. What is the best therapy for a couple reporting infertility whose only finding is painless endometriosis in the female partner?

2. In a couple found to require in vitro fertilization (IVF) because of a male factor, it is found that the female partner age 35 has six intramural fibroids, the largest of which is 4 cm in diameter. Is pre-IVF treatment needed for these fibroids?

3. In a couple reporting infertility, it is found that the male partner has a sperm count of 1.5 million with 4% normal forms by the strict morphology classification. The female partner age 31 is found to have bilateral asymptomatic hydrosalpinges 2 cm in diameter. What therapy is required?

4. A female age 27 without children is found to have Hodgkin disease requiring intensive chemotherapy. What advice can a gynecologist offer her about options for preserving future reproduction?

CHAPTER 21

1. What is the most commonly isolated organisms in patients with pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)?
   a. Escherichia coli
   b. Chlamydia trachomatis
   c. Neisseria gonorrhoeae
   d. Mycoplasma hominis
2. Which of the following is NOT a contraindication to hysterosalpingography (HSG)?
   a. Possible pregnancy
   b. Undiagnosed uterine bleeding
c. Lower genital tract infection
d. Known tubal obstruction

3. Which of the following conditions can be managed by tubal cannulation?
   a. Tubal plugs
   b. Obliterative fibrosis
c. Mild synchie
   d. Cornual spasm

4. Patients with tubal factor infertility may achieve pregnancy through reconstructive surgery and/or IVF. Which is NOT an advantage of reconstructive surgery?
   a. To use cautery during dissection to facilitate hemostasis
   b. To prevent foreign body contamination of the peritoneal cavity
c. To minimize adjacent tissue damage
d. Reduced risk of ectopic pregnancy

5. What is NOT a principle of microsurgical technique that minimizes tissue trauma?
   a. To use cautery during dissection to facilitate hemostasis
   b. To prevent foreign body contamination of the peritoneal cavity
   c. To minimize adjacent tissue damage
   d. To identify proper cleavage planes

6. Salpingostomy for cases of mild and moderate distal tubal disease is associated with excellent intrauterine pregnancy rates. What factor is considered in classifying tubal disease as mild, moderate, or severe?
   a. Proximal tubal thickness
   b. Endosalpingiosis of ampulla
c. Presence of peritubal adhesions
   d. Nature of the tubal endometrium

7. What is a predictor of intrauterine pregnancy after tubal reanastomosis for reversal of sterilization?
   a. Duration of infertility
   b. Length of reconstructed tube
c. Parity of woman
d. History of PID

CHAPTER 22

1. Which of the following have been proposed as possible mechanisms for development of endometriosis?
   a. Retrograde menstruation and direct implantation
   b. Coelomic metaplasia
   c. Vascular dissemination
d. Alterations in cellular immunity
e. All of the above

2. Choose the incorrect statement.
   a. Laparoscopy provides inferior visualization of the posterior cul-de-sac compared with laparotomy.
b. Conservative resection of endometriosis by laparotomy is most valuable in cases of extensive pelvic adhesions or endometriomas larger than 3 cm.
c. Preoperative sigmoidoscopy and intravenous pyelography (IVP) are recommended in patients with symptoms suggestive of deeply invasive endometriosis.
d. Surgery is successful in relieving pain symptoms in a high percentage of women and offers a better prognosis for pregnancy in cases of advanced disease.

3. Choose the correct statement.
   a. The classic triad associated with endometriosis includes infertility, dyspareunia, and dysmenorrhea.
b. Pain typically does not correlate to steroid hormone fluctuations.
c. Pain associated with endometriosis is only weakly associated to the depth of infiltration of the peritoneal surfaces.
d. Surgical castration does not decrease pain in most patients.

4. Choose the correct statement.
   a. The rate of recurrence of pelvic pain and dysmenorrhea is equivalent for patients whose endometriomas are managed by cytectomy as compared with those undergoing fenestration and coagulation.
b. Uterine suspension is efficacious as an adjunct in the treatment of endometriosis-associated pelvic pain.
c. Presacral neurectomy, or division of the superior hypogastric plexus, is useful as an adjunctive procedure to reduce midline pelvic pain and dysmenorrhea in women with endometriosis.
d. There is no difference in pain persistence or recurrence following laparoscopic resection or unipolar cauterization of endometriotic implants less than 1 cm in depth.

5. Which is NOT a principle of microsurgical technique that minimizes tissue trauma?
   a. To use cautery during dissection to facilitate hemostasis
   b. To prevent foreign body contamination of the peritoneal cavity
   c. To minimize adjacent tissue damage
   d. Reduced risk of ectopic pregnancy

6. What is NOT a principle of microsurgical technique that minimizes tissue trauma?
   a. To use cautery during dissection to facilitate hemostasis
   b. To prevent foreign body contamination of the peritoneal cavity
   c. To minimize adjacent tissue damage
   d. Reduced risk of ectopic pregnancy

7. What is a predictor of intrauterine pregnancy after tubal reanastomosis for reversal of sterilization?
   a. Duration of infertility
   b. Length of reconstructed tube
c. Parity of woman
d. History of PID

CHAPTER 23

1. Match the diagnosis in Column A with the clinical finding in Column B.
   A B
   1. Granuloma inguinale a. Bubos
   2. Chancroid b. Chlamydia trachomatis
c. Donovan bodies
d. Pox virus

2. Choose the incorrect statement.
   a. Ultrapotent corticosteroid ointment (Clobetasol 0.05%)
b. Topical testosterone cream (2%)
c. Partial vulvectomy
d. Total simple vulvectomy

3. A 58-year-old woman presents with the symptom of burning vulvar pain. Her exam shows an erythematous area involving the left posterior vulva, and biopsy confirms the diagnosis of Paget disease. You would recommend what therapy initially?
   a. Ultrapotent corticosteroid ointment (Clobetasol 0.05%)
b. Topical testosterone cream (2%)
c. Partial vulvectomy
d. Total simple vulvectomy

4. A 35-year-old woman has a small 1.5-cm red area on the right anterior vulva. A 4-mm Key’s punch biopsy is read as
vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia (VIN). Which of the following treatments is not appropriate?

a. CO2 laser vaporization
b. Calvertson Ultrasonic surgical aspirator (CUSA)
c. Simple vulvectomy
d. Wide local excision

CHAPTER 24

1. The hymen:
   a. Is usually imperforate during embryonic life
   b. Becomes patent when canalization of the most caudal portion of the vaginal plate at the urogenital sinus occurs
   c. Most frequently has a folded shape with an eccentric orifice in the newborn
   d. Is found to be imperforate in 1% of newborns

2. Choose the incorrect answer:
   a. Ambiguous external genitalia are remarkably constant in appearance regardless of etiology.
   b. Most patients have a high [suprasphincteric] urethral vaginal connection.
   c. Reconstruction must be timed properly to allow easy identification of all structures while preventing psycho-logic stress to the patient.
   d. Most hermaphrodites reared as girls do have a vagina or vaginal pouch.

3. Choose the incorrect answer:
   a. In the group of patients undergoing reconstruction of the external genitalia, 87% required further vaginal reconstructive surgery to allow intercourse.
   b. The most common long-term problem following reconstruction procedures is intravaginal stenosis.
   c. Vaginoplasty should be performed in infancy to prevent vaginal stenosis.
   d. In patients who underwent clitoridectomy, 29% reported no orgasms.

4. Classic bladder exstrophy is characterized by all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. Male-to-female ratio of 2:1
   b. Absence of anterior abdominal wall
   c. Absence of the posterior wall of the bladder exposing the ureteral orifices
   d. Wide separation of the pubic symphysis

5. Other possible anomalies associated with bladder exstrophy include:
   a. Bifid clitoris
   b. Rectal prolapse
   c. Imperforate anus
   d. Renal agenesis
   e. All of the above

6. Choose the incorrect statement about vaginal carcinoma.
   a. The average age at presentation is 35 years.
   b. Vaginal carcinoma must meet specific International Federation of Obstetrics and Gynecology (FIGO) criteria to be considered a primary vaginal carcinoma.
   c. Vaginal carcinoma composes less than 2% of gynecologic malignancies.
   d. Clinicians must find the urethra, cervix, and vulva to be histologically negative to diagnose primary vaginal carcinoma.

7. Choose the incorrect statement about diethylstilbestrol (DES).
   a. DES is a nonsteroidal estrogenic hormone that was used in patients with a history of recurrent pregnancy loss until 1970.
   b. The incidence of vaginal adenocarcinoma in young women exposed to DES in utero is 0.14 to 1.4 per 1,000.
   c. Seventy-five percent of women exposed to DES in utero have anatomic abnormalities.
   d. Vaginal adenosis has been found in 34% to 90% of women exposed to DES in utero.

8. Choose the incorrect answer pertaining to vaginal carcinoma.
   a. Stage 0 disease can be treated with surgery, carbon dioxide laser, or 5-fluorouracil cream.
   b. Stage 1 disease lesions can be treated with radiation therapy or total abdominal hysterectomy.
   c. Stage 2 or 3 lesions are treated with radiotherapy.
   d. Stage 4 lesions are treated with pelvic exenteration or radiotherapy.

9. Which of the following is not a possible cause of urethral diverticulum?
   a. Neisseria gonorrhoeae infection
   b. Trauma associated with childbirth
   c. Urethral stone
   d. Surgical trauma
   e. Infection of the Bartholin gland

10. Choose the incorrect answer:
    a. Dysuria, frequency, urgency, and hematuria occur in 85% to 90% of patients with urethral diverticula.
    b. Urethral diverticula frequently cause a palpable lump in the vagina.
    c. Most urethral diverticula are located in the proximal urethra.
    d. Urethral diverticula can be diagnosed with cystourethroscopy, positive pressure urethrocystography, or voiding cystourethrography.
4. Evaluation of patients with müllerian agenesis should include all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. Psychologic support
   b. Genetic evaluation
   c. Ultrasonography or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)
   d. Complete physical examination
   e. Laparoscopy

5. Which of these important issues in successful nonsurgical creation of a neovagina is true?
   a. Nonsurgical creation of a neovagina is not appropriate as a first-line approach.
   b. Greater than 90% of patients have been shown to achieve anatomic and functional success by vaginal dilation.
   c. A “buddy” support system is not helpful in achieving success with vaginal dilation.
   d. Vaginal dilation should be initiated in any age patient, even in prepubertal girls.

6. According to Sir Archibald McIndoe, the important principles in successful surgical creation of a neovagina include all EXCEPT:
   a. Dissection of an adequate space between the rectum and bladder
   b. Inlay split-thickness skin grafting
   c. Continued and prolonged dilation during the contractile phase of healing
   d. Adequate preoperative dilatation

7. Which of the following is true regarding cervical dysgenesis?
   a. Cervical agenesis is the most common müllerian anomaly.
   b. There is only one type of cervical dysgenesis.
   c. Creation of a passage between the uterus and vagina is a simple, highly successful procedure.
   d. Conservative management, with hormonal suppression of endometrial stimulation, is appropriate for young patients.

8. Lateral fusion disorders of the müllerian ducts include all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. Bicornuate uterus
   b. Septate uterus
   c. Didelphic uterus
   d. Rokitansky syndrome

9. The müllerian anomaly associated with the most reproductive success is:
   a. Septate uterus
   b. Bicornuate uterus
   c. Didelphic uterus
   d. Unicornuate uterus

10. Benefits of hysteroscopic resection of a uterine septum include all of the following EXCEPT:
    a. The potential for a vaginal delivery with future pregnancies
    b. A prolonged postoperative recovery period
    c. Similar success as an abdominal metroplasty
    d. That transcervical lysis may also be used to repair a complete septate uterus

---

CHAPTER 26

1. The most likely etiology of perimenarchal abnormal uterine bleeding is:
   a. Endometrial polyp
   b. Anovulatory bleeding

2. Acute control of heavy abnormal uterine bleeding can be accomplished by all of the following except:
   a. Oral contraceptive pills
   b. Intravenous estrogens
   c. Oral progestins
   d. Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) analog injection
   e. Dilatation and curette

3. Sonohysterography is best performed:
   a. During menstruation
   b. In the follicular phase
   c. Near ovulation
   d. In the luteal phase
   e. In anovulatory cycles

4. Hemostasis in a bleeding endometrium depends on which of the following?
   a. Thrombus plugs in superficial vessels
   b. Vasoconstriction of spiral arterioles
   c. Endometrial collapse with compression of bleeding vessels
   d. All of the above

5. A 26-year-old female patient reports menometrorrhagia unresponsive to oral contraceptive therapy. The best next step in her evaluation is:
   a. Endometrial biopsy
   b. Dilatation and curette
   c. Sonohysterography
   d. MRI of pelvis
   e. Laparoscopy

---

CHAPTER 27

1. Techniques to reduce the likelihood of complications when the Veress needle is inserted into the abdominal cavity include all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. Directing the insertion of the needle in the midline toward the hollow of the sacrum or uterine fundus
   b. Elevating the abdominal wall before insertion
   c. Inserting the needle with the port closed
   d. Infiltration and aspiration of sterile fluid through the needle after insertion
   e. Elevating the abdominal wall after insertion to demonstrate negative intraperitoneal pressure

2. Which of the following methods of laparoscopic tubal occlusion would be most appropriate for a woman with thickened fallopian tubes or dense pelvic adhesions?
   a. Bipolar coagulation
   b. Spring clip application
   c. Filshie clip application
   d. Silicone rubber band application

3. Which of the following techniques for bipolar coagulation is least helpful in reducing the likelihood of pregnancy after the procedure?
   a. Bipolar coagulation
   b. Spring clip application
   c. Filshie clip application
   d. Silicone rubber band application

4. Which of the following methods of laparoscopic tubal occlusion would be most appropriate for a woman with thickened fallopian tubes or dense pelvic adhesions?
   a. Bipolar coagulation
   b. Spring clip application
   c. Filshie clip application
   d. Silicone rubber band application

5. Which of the following techniques for bipolar coagulation is least helpful in reducing the likelihood of pregnancy after the procedure?
   a. Avoiding coagulation of the proximal 2 cm of tube
   b. Coagulation of at least three contiguous areas
   c. Direct observation of tubal blanching and swelling
   d. Use of an optical flow meter
   e. Use of the cutting waveform
4. Which of the following conditions is less common in a woman who has undergone tubal sterilization than in a woman whose partner has undergone vasectomy?  
   a. Ectopic pregnancy  
   b. Hysterectomy  
   c. Ovarian cancer  
   d. Regret that sterilization was performed

CHAPTER 28

1. Gonadal primordia are of what embryologic developmental layer?  
   a. Ectoderm  
   b. Mesoderm  
   c. Endoderm  
   d. Trophoblast  

2. Which of the following is true regarding testicular determining factor?  
   a. It is an HY cell surface antigen.  
   b. It is located on the X chromosome.  
   c. It is a growth factor.  
   d. The bipotential gonad develops into a testicle through a default pathway because of the absence of testis-determining factor (TDF).

3. Meiosis begins at what gestational age (weeks)?  
   a. 10  
   b. 12  
   c. 16  
   d. 24

4. Which of the following is correct regarding ovarian nerve supply?  
   a. It is parasympathetic only.  
   b. It is sympathetic only.  
   c. It contains both motor and sensory parasympathetic and sympathetic nerves.  
   d. It is autonomic only.  

5. Based on the Rotterdam Consensus for polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS), which of the following is true regarding PCOS?  
   a. It is a clinical diagnosis.  
   b. Criteria to establish the diagnosis include oligospermia, clinical evidence for hyperandrogenemia, and polycystic-appearing ovaries on ultrasound.  
   c. It begins in adolescence.  
   d. All of the above

CHAPTER 29

1. When a patient reports pain in response to a gentle touch, this is an example of:  
   a. Hyperalgesia  
   b. Neuropathic pain  
   c. Allodynia  
   d. Myofascial pain

2. The prevailing theory of pain perception today is:  
   a. Cartesian theory  
   b. Neuromatrix theory  
   c. Gate control theory  
   d. Neuroplasticity theory

3. Irritable bowel syndrome, interstitial cystitis, and vulvar vestibulitis may all be examples of:  
   a. Psychosomatic disorders  
   b. Neuropathic pain  
   c. Somatosensory disorders  
   d. Immune deficiency disorders

CHAPTER 30

1. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommended treatment for patients hospitalized with pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) include:  
   a. Intravenous metronidazole plus gentamicin  
   b. Intravenous clindamycin plus gentamicin  
   c. Intravenous ceftriaxone plus metronidazole  
   d. Intravenous ceftriaxone plus oral ciprofloxacin

2. A young female patient with pelvic pain without an elevated white count or a fever cannot have PID.  
   a. True  
   b. False

3. The most common bacteria isolated from pus collected from the cul-de-sac in a woman with acute salpingitis is:  
   a. Neisseria gonorrhoeae  
   b. Chlamydia trachomatis  
   c. Trichomonas vaginalis  
   d. A polymicrobial mixture of aerobes and anaerobes

4. The CDC-recommended outpatient treatment regimens for PID include:  
   a. Oral ciprofloxacin plus metronidazole  
   b. Oral clindamycin plus doxycycline  
   c. Intramuscular ceftriaxone plus oral metronidazole  
   d. Oral ofloxacin plus metronidazole

5. Laparoscopic confirmation of PID does not need to be discussed or offered if a patient has had a previous appendectomy.  
   a. True  
   b. False

CHAPTER 31

1. Typical characteristics of uterine leiomyomata include all of the following EXCEPT:  
   a. Typical locations are subserosal, submucosal, and intramural in nature.  
   b. The most common change is hyaline degeneration.  
   c. Red or carcinosarcoma is never seen during pregnancy.  
   d. A subserosal, pedunculated myoma may outgrow its blood supply.

2. Which degenerative changes are the least common?  
   a. Hyaline degeneration  
   b. Red or carcinosarcoma degeneration  
   c. Necrosis  
   d. Sarcomatous degeneration

3. Which of the following is true regarding intravenous leiomyomatosis?  
   a. The condition is quite common and may be found in as many as 50% of patients with leiomyoma.  
   b. The tumor behaves clinically as a benign entity.  
   c. The condition is often involves the only the ovarian veins.  
   d. The most common site of metastases is the brain.

4. In describing the clinical features of leiomyomata, it is important to remember that:  
   a. Most leiomyomata are asymptomatic and may not require any treatment.
b. If the uterine size is believed to be greater than 12 weeks, a hysterectomy is recommended.

c. Most women will have an increase in symptomatology after menopause.

5. Hormonal management options for patients with a myomatous uterus may include all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. Mifepristone (RU486)
   b. Danazol
   c. GnRH analogues
   d. Oral contraceptives (30 to 35 pg ethinyl estradiol)

6. Which of the following is a true statement regarding hysteroscopic resection of submucous myomata?
   a. By combining the procedure with endometrial ablation, pregnancy rates are increased.
   b. Menorrhagia is only rarely controlled.
   c. It is recommended to combine laparoscopic guidance with the hysteroscopic procedure.
   d. Success rates are not dependent on the experience or skill of the surgeon.

7. Appropriate candidates for a laparoscopic myomectomy include which of the following?
   a. A postmenopausal patient with incidentally detected myomata on an annual examination
   b. A 34-year-old woman desiring future fertility with two intramural myomas each measuring 3 cm in diameter
   c. A 34-year-old woman desiring future fertility with two submucosal myomas each measuring 3 cm in diameter
   d. A 40-year-old woman who has completed childbearing with a 20-week-size uterus with multiple myomata

8. Methods to control intraoperative blood loss during an abdominal myomectomy may include all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. Preoperative treatment with oral contraceptive pills
   b. Local injection with vasoconstrictive agents
   c. Controlled induced hypotension
   d. Use of a uterine tourniquet

9. Postoperative morbidity commonly associated with an abdominal myomectomy includes all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. Significant blood loss
   b. Intraperitoneal adhesion formation
   c. Febrile morbidity
   d. Pulmonary embolus

10. Which of the following statements is true regarding uterine artery embolization?
   a. Most patients report an improvement in menorrhagia and bulk-related symptoms.
   b. The overall success rate with an experienced team of providers is only about 25%.
   c. Less than 1% of patients develop postembolization syndrome with fever and malaise.
   d. The major complication rate approaches 50%.

CHAPTER 32A

1. Common indications for abdominal hysterectomy include all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. Endometriosis
   b. Leiomyoma
   c. Prolapse
   d. Malignancy
   e. Abnormal bleeding

   2. The most common technique for hysterectomy in the United States is:
      a. Abdominal hysterectomy
      b. Vaginal hysterectomy
      c. Laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy
      d. Total laparoscopic hysterectomy

3. Which hysterectomy technique is associated with the fewest complications and most rapid return to full activity?
   a. Abdominal hysterectomy
   b. Vaginal hysterectomy
   c. Laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy
   d. Total laparoscopic hysterectomy

4. Compared with total abdominal hysterectomy, the documented advantages of supracervical (subtotal) hysterectomy include (check all that apply):
   a. Better postoperative sexual function
   b. A lower incidence of vaginal prolapse
   c. Shorter operative time
   d. Decreased risk of postoperative stress urinary incontinence

5. Bilateral oophorectomy at the time of hysterectomy reduces the risk of breast cancer.
   a. True
   b. False

6. To minimize bleeding, the bladder is dissected off the anterior cervix after the uterine vessels are clamped and ligated.
   a. True
   b. False

7. Ureteral injury is most commonly associated with all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. Previous tubal ligation
   b. Cervical fibroid
   c. Ovarian endometrioma
   d. Bleeding from the uterine artery pedicle

8. The risk of pelvic infections following abdominal hysterectomy has been shown to be reduced by which of these procedures? (Check all that apply):
   a. Vaginal douche with Betadine the night before surgery
   b. Shaving the pubic hair in the operating room before prepping the patient
   c. Prophylactic intravenous antibiotics within 1 hour before surgery
   d. Mechanical bowel prep the night before surgery
   e. Leaving the vaginal cuff open for drainage

9. In a subtotal abdominal hysterectomy, the uterine fundus is amputated after the uterine vessels have been ligated.
   a. True
   b. False

10. The mortality rate for abdominal hysterectomy in the United States is approximately:
   a. 1/100 hysterectomies
   b. 1/10,000 hysterectomies
   c. 1/100,000 hysterectomies
   d. 1/1,000,000 hysterectomies

CHAPTER 32B

1. Patients experience lower morbidity, less pain, more rapid recovery, more rapid return to normal activities, and consumption of fewer health care dollars and resources with what hysterectomy method?
   a. Laparoscopic assisted vaginal hysterectomy (LAVH)
   b. Abdominal hysterectomy
c. Total laparoscopic hysterectomy (TLH)
d. Laparoscopic supracervical hysterectomy (LSH)
e. Vaginal hysterectomy

2. The most limiting factor in selecting the vaginal approach to hysterectomy is:
   a. Uterine size >280 g
   b. Nulliparity
   c. Iliac artery diameter (8 cm)
d. Comfort and preference with abdominal hysterectomy
   e. Previous C-section

3. Skilled vaginal surgeons have reported successful vaginal oophorectomy associated with hysterectomy what percent of the time?
   a. Less than 10%
   b. 15%–25%
   c. 50%–65%
   d. More than 90%

4. Adopting the National Guideline Clearinghouse guidelines for determining the route of hysterectomy for benign indications has increased the use of vaginal hysterectomy to what level?
   a. 10%
   b. 20%
   c. 50%
   d. 90%

5. All of the following techniques are recommended for decreasing the risk of ureteral injury during vaginal hysterectomy EXCEPT:
   a. Dividing the uterine vessels
   b. Dividing the cardinal ligament
   c. Retracting the bladder anteriorly
   d. Downward traction on the cervix

CHAPTER 32C

1. Prospective, randomized studies have shown that laparoscopic hysterectomies have which of the following significant advantages over total abdominal hysterectomy?
   a. Fewer transfusions
   b. Shorter operative time
   c. Fewer complications
   d. Shorter hospital stay

2. The difference between a laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy (LAVH) and a vaginally assisted laparoscopic hysterectomy (VALH) is:
   a. The VALH is started vaginally.
   b. The uterine vessels are secured laparoscopically in a VALH.
   c. The uterus is removed vaginally with a VALH.
   d. The tubes and ovaries cannot be removed with a VALH.

3. Studies have shown which of the following advantages for laparoscopic subtotal hysterectomy (compared with LAVH)?
   a. Shorter operative time
   b. Less postoperative urinary incontinence
   c. Better sexual satisfaction postoperatively
   d. Less vaginal prolapse postoperatively
   e. All of the above

4. Maintenance of the pneumoperitoneum after colpotomy during a total laparoscopic hysterectomy (TLH) can be accomplished by all of the following techniques EXCEPT:
   a. A McCartney tube®
   b. KOH colpotomizer system®
   c. The Vagiballoon®
   d. Moistened laparotomy sponges

5. A large cervical fibroid might be a good indication for a vaginally assisted laparoscopic hysterectomy (VALH).
   a. True
   b. False
3. Which of the following complications are not increased with elective peripartum hysterectomy?
   a. Transfusion rate
   b. Bladder injuries
   c. Operation time
   d. Rate of infection

4. At the time of cesarean delivery for placenta accreta, the placenta is not removed.
   a. True
   b. False

5. At the time of a forceps delivery, an episiotomy reduces the risk of:
   a. Rectal sphincter tear
   b. Rectal mucosal injury
   c. Fetal brain injury
   d. Hemorrhage
   e. None of the above

6. Compared with a midline episiotomy, a mediolateral episiotomy is associated with all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. An increased risk of rectal sphincter tear
   b. More blood loss
   c. A higher level of postpartum pain
   d. A decreased risk of a fourth-degree laceration
   e. A more difficult repair

7. Current thinking suggests that dehiscence of an episiotomy should be repaired within 2 weeks of occurrence.
   a. True
   b. False

CHAPTER 35B

1. The most common ovarian neoplasm in pregnancy is:
   a. Papillary serous adenocarcinoma
   b. Embryonal carcinoma
   c. Dysgerminoma
   d. Benign cystic teratoma

2. The best management of a luteoma of pregnancy found at cesarean delivery is:
   a. Unilateral oophorectomy
   b. Biopsy only, no further surgery
   c. Unilateral oophorectomy, washings, staging biopsies
   d. Bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, biopsies, hysterectomy, washings, staging biopsies

3. All of the following ovarian tumors can cause virilization in pregnancy EXCEPT:
   a. Hyperreactio luteinalis
   b. Sertoli-Leydig cell tumors
   c. Dysgerminoma
   d. Benign cystic teratoma

4. A 26-year-old patient at 19 weeks of gestation has a pelvic ultrasound showing a 6-cm left adnexal complex mass with a pulsatility index of 1.4. There are no other abnormalities. The best management plan is:
   a. Repeat the ultrasound in 4 weeks.
   b. Schedule the patient for an ultrasound-guided cyst aspiration.
   c. Schedule the patient for a diagnostic laparoscopy.
   d. Schedule the patient for laparotomy with left oophorectomy and frozen section.

5. Evaluation of an adnexal mass during pregnancy should be evaluated by which of the following tests or exams?
   a. Serum CA-125
   b. Pelvic ultrasound
   c. Abdominal and pelvic computed tomography (CT) scan
   d. Positron emission tomography (PET scan)

CHAPTER 36A

1. The pelvic diaphragm is composed of all of the following muscles EXCEPT:
   a. Iliococcygeus
   b. Puborectalis
   c. Transversus perinei
   d. Pubococcygeus

2. The primary goal of defect-specific pelvic reconstructive surgery is to identify and reattach damaged endopelvic connective tissue to what central pelvic structure?
   a. Arcus tendineus fascia pelvis
   b. Sacropinous ligament
   c. Levator plate
   d. Pericervical ring

3. Of the following factors, which is considered to be most important in the development of pelvic organ prolapse?
   a. Low estrogen levels
   b. Vaginal delivery
   c. Straining with defecation
   d. Coughing as a result of chronic lung disease

4. In both the Pelvic Organ Prolapse Quantification and Baden-Walker Halfway systems, what fixed anatomic reference point is used for measurements and grading?
   a. Ischial spine
   b. Vaginal introitus
   c. Cervix or apical vaginal vault
   d. Hymenal ring

5. Pelvic organ prolapse primarily affects:
   a. Longevity
   b. Quality of life
   c. The degree of pain a patient experiences

CHAPTER 36B

1. Anterior vaginal compartment defects include:
   a. Cystocele
   b. Paravaginal defects
   c. Urethrocele
   d. All of the above

2. Paravaginal defects create an abnormal connection between the:
   a. Vesicocervical and vesicovaginal spaces
   b. Vesicovaginal and paravesical spaces
   c. Vesicocervical and pararectal spaces
   d. Vesicocervical and presacral spaces

3. Cystoceles are caused most frequently by:
   a. A general weakening of the pubocervical joint
   b. A transverse anal defect between the pericervical ring and the pubocervical septum
   c. Pressure from uterine prolapse
   d. Failure to perform Kegel exercises

CHAPTER 36C

1. Generally, where is the easiest place to identify the arcus tendineus fascia pelvis?
   a. The ischial spine
   b. Medial to the obturator foramen
   c. A bump on the pubic area
   d. At the lateral edge of the buttock

2. Which of the following is not a common complication of peripartum hysterectomy?
   a. Transfusion rate
   b. Bladder injuries
   c. Operation time
   d. Rate of infection

3. At the time of cesarean delivery for placenta accreta, the placenta is not removed.
   a. True
   b. False

4. At the time of a forceps delivery, an episiotomy reduces the risk of:
   a. Rectal sphincter tear
   b. Rectal mucosal injury
   c. Fetal brain injury
   d. Hemorrhage
   e. None of the above

5. Current thinking suggests that dehiscence of an episiotomy should be repaired within 2 weeks of occurrence.
   a. True
   b. False

6. Compared with a midline episiotomy, a mediolateral episiotomy is associated with all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. An increased risk of rectal sphincter tear
   b. More blood loss
   c. A higher level of postpartum pain
   d. A decreased risk of a fourth-degree laceration
   e. A more difficult repair

7. Evaluation of an adnexal mass during pregnancy should be evaluated by which of the following tests or exams?
   a. Serum CA-125
   b. Pelvic ultrasound
   c. Abdominal and pelvic computed tomography (CT) scan
   d. Positron emission tomography (PET scan)
1. At the attachment to the pubocervical fascias near the pelvic sidewall
2. The bladder should not be dissected off the anterior vaginal wall during an open paravaginal defects repair because:
   a. The bladder will lose support.
   b. Troublesome bleeding may result.
   c. The bladder will be denervated.
   d. A midline defect in the anterior pelvic support will be created.
3. On examination, loss of the anterior, lateral vaginal sulcus is a sign of a paravaginal support defect.
   a. True
   b. False
4. In a vaginal repair of a paravaginal defect, sutures are:
   a. Placed individually starting near the ischial spine
   b. Absorbable to reduce the risk of infection
   c. Tied individually starting with the suture nearest the vaginal apex
   d. Placed through the sacrospinous ligament for support
5. Which of the following structures contributes to the “white line”?
   a. Fascia of the iliopsoas muscle
   b. Fascia of the puborectalis muscle
   c. Fascia of the transversus perineal muscle
   d. Fascia of the obturator internus muscle

CHAPTER 36D

1. After performing a hysterectomy, to what ligament(s) should the vaginal apex be attached to minimize the risk of vaginal vault prolapse?
   a. Round ligament
   b. Cardinal and uterosacral ligaments
   c. Uteroovarian ligament
   d. Sacrospinous ligament
2. Which one of the following structures is at risk of injury during a McCall culdoplasty?
   a. Sciatic nerve
   b. Rectum
   c. Internal iliac vein
   d. Pudendal nerve
3. Which of the following structure(s) lie posterior to the ischia spine?
   a. Pudendal nerve/vessels
   b. Sciatic nerve
   c. Hypogastric venous plexus
   d. Inferior gluteal vessels
4. One of the late complications following sacrospinous ligament fixation is:
   a. Uterine prolapse
   b. Dyspareunia
   c. Anterior vaginal wall prolapse
   d. Medial thigh pain
5. All of the following procedures are performed as part of an abdominal sacral colpopexy EXCEPT:
   a. Dissecting the peritoneum off the vagina
   b. Attaching the mesh or graft to the vagina with nonabsorbable sutures
   c. Suturing the mesh to the longitudinal ligament over the sacral promontory
   d. Suturing the round ligaments to the anterior graft with nonabsorbable sutures

CHAPTER 36E

1. Pessaries are effective in the treatment of pelvic organ prolapse and should be considered for most patients.
   a. True
   b. False
2. Which of the following patient characteristics is associated with failure of successful pessary use?
   a. Degree of pelvic organ prolapse
   b. Vaginal mucosal atrophy
   c. Wide vaginal introitus
   d. Size of the genital hiatus
3. Which of the following pessaries is compatible with normal vaginal intercourse?
   a. Gellhorn
   b. Donut
   c. Cube
   d. Ring
4. All of the following are potential complications of pessary use EXCEPT:
   a. Increased difficulty with bowel movement
   b. Vaginal erosion
   c. Vaginal cancer
   d. Incarceration of the cervix

5. What is the most common reason a woman stops using her pessary?
   a. It keeps falling out.
   b. It does not improve her symptoms
   c. It hurts.
   d. It is difficult to remove.

---

CHAPTER 37

1. The dominant structure altering cause of stress urinary incontinence is thought to be:
   a. straining at stool
   b. obesity
   c. smoking
   d. *childbearing
   e. chronic cough

2. The most common pathophysiologic cause of stress incontinence is:
   a. hypermobile bladder neck
   b. intrinsic (urethral) sphincter deficiency
   c. combined hypermobile bladder neck and low urethral closure pressure
   d. *combined bladder neck hypermobility and intrinsic sphincter deficiency
   e. combined intrinsic sphincter deficiency and low leak point pressure

3. The basic evaluation for urinary incontinence requires all but one of the following:
   a. history
   b. urinalysis
   c. urolog summary (voiding diary)
   d. residual urine determination
   e. *cystometrogram

4. The following must be completed prior to initial management of stress urinary incontinence:
   a. cystometry
   b. urine culture
   c. *basic evaluation
   d. urodynamics
   e. Q-tip test

5. What is the least effective therapy for initial conservative management of pure stress urinary incontinence?
   a. pelvic floor muscle exercises
   b. bladder drills
   c. pessary
   d. *antimuscarinic medication
   e. biofeedback

6. What test is used to rule out detrusor overactivity incontinence?
   a. pressure voiding study
   b. uroflowmetry
   c. *cystometrogram
   d. leak point pressure
   e. urethral closure pressure profile

7. Which of the following procedures is the best recommendation for a primary approach for stress urinary incontinence?
   a. paravaginal defect repair
   b. perirethral collagen injection
   c. Kelly plication with anterior repair
   d. Pereyra procedure
   e. *suburethral sling

8. What is the main difference between a tension-free tape and a suburethral sling as performed today?
   a. indication for surgery
   b. cure rate
   c. *placement at midurethra
   d. placement without tension
   e. use of cystoscopy during placement

9. The 'gold standard' surgery for surgical correction of stress urinary incontinence is:
   a. sling procedure
   b. tension-free tape
   c. *retropubic urethropexy
   d. anterior colporrhaphy
   e. needle urethropexy

---

CHAPTER 38

1. The most common site of ureteral injury during pelvic surgery is:
   a. As the ureter transverses the tunnel of Wertheim
   b. Dorsal to the infundibulopelvic ligament near or at the pelvic brim
   c. At the cardinal ligament when the ureter passes under the uterine artery
   d. In the intramural portion of the ureter
   e. *mobile bladder neck

2. The most important means to prevent ureteral injury is:
   a. Surgical knowledge of the location and anatomy the ureter
   b. Preoperative intravenous pyelogram
   c. Administration of intravenous indigo carmine during surgery
   d. Prophylactic ureteral stint placement

3. Following partial ureteral ligation, the preferred method of inserting a ureteral stint is:
   a. Ureterostomy
   b. Cystostomy
   c. Cystocele
   d. None of the above; no ureteral stint is indicated

4. The most common gynecologic surgical procedure during which the ureter is injured is:
   a. Total vaginal hysterectomy
   b. Bladder neck suspension
   c. Total abdominal hysterectomy
   d. Total laparoscopic hysterectomy
   e. None of the above; no ureteral injury is indicated

5. Uncomplicated total transection of the distal third of the ureter should be managed with:
   a. Primary repair over a ureteral stint
   b. Ureteroureterostomy
   c. Cystocele
   d. Needle urethropexy
   e. *ureteroureteral transposition over ureteral stint
CHAPTER 39

1. Factors that may contribute to the formation of vesicovaginal fistula include all of the following except:
   a. Obstructed labor
   b. Pelvic radiation
   c. Tribal “gishiri” cuts to the vagina
   d. HIV infection
   e. Hysterectomy

2. Which of the following techniques of hysterectomy is most likely to result in vesicovaginal fistula?
   a. Laparoscopic
   b. Vaginal
   c. Abdominal
   d. Supracervical

3. Prolonged indwelling Foley catheter can predispose a patient to urethrovaginal fistula.
   a. True
   b. False

4. Vesicovaginal fistula as a complication of hysterectomy is most likely to be located:
   a. In the trigone near the ureteral orifices
   b. Superior to the interureteric ridge in the posterior bladder
   c. In the bladder dome
   d. At the bladder base proximal to the urethra

5. You are evaluating a patient in your office who had a TAH secondary to large uterine fibroids performed 4 years ago by one of your former partners who has since retired. She has occasional episodes of severe dysuria followed by hematuria that resolve after a few days without treatment. You review her operative note from her TAH, which notes that she sustained an intraoperative cystotomy that was repaired by mobilization of the tissue and tension-free multilayer closure with 3-0 silk suture. Her current symptoms are most likely secondary to:
   a. Recurrent urinary tract infections
   b. Poorly healed cystotomy with chronic intermittent wound separation
   c. Stone formation
   d. An occult vesicovaginal fistula

6. You are seeing a patient in the office 3 weeks after a laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy for small uterine fibroids and irregular bleeding. She reports an intermittent, watery discharge for the past 2 weeks. Exam of the vaginal apex shows no fistula, but a small amount of clear fluid is present. You fill the bladder with a dilute indigo carmine/saline solution and note no leakage on visualization of the vaginal apex with a speculum. Your next diagnostic test would be:
   a. Cystourethroscopy
   b. Intravenous urogram
   c. Insert a tampon in the vagina and have the patient walk around for 15 minutes
   d. Test the fluid for creatinine

CHAPTER 40

1. Vaginal birth may contribute to development of anal incontinence through damage to:
   a. The puborectalis muscle sling
   b. Pelvic eversion
   c. The anal sphincter complex
   d. a and c
   e. a, b, and c

2. The use of which of the following obstetrical practices are associated with anal sphincter disruption at the time of vaginal birth?
   a. Midline episiotomy
   b. Perineal massage
   c. Forceps delivery
   d. a and c
   e. a, b, and c

3. Which of the following anatomic structures are important in the woman to maintenance of continence of fecal material?
   a. External anal sphincter
   b. Puborectalis muscle
   c. Internal anal sphincter
   d. a and c
   e. a, b, and c

4. Which of the following testing modalities is the most cost-effective, accurate, and best tolerated by anally incontinent patients being investigated for the presence of a segmental anal sphincter defect?
   a. Pudendal nerve terminal motor latency (PNTML) testing
   b. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)
   c. Anal manometry
   d. Endoanal ultrasound
   e. Defecography

5. Patients undergoing sphincteroplasty and perineal reconstruction for anal incontinence should have a reasonable expectation of total continence postoperatively.
   a. True
   b. False

CHAPTER 41

1. Can the BRCA gene be transmitted from the paternal side of the family?

2. If the BRCA gene test is negative, does the patient need additional follow up?

3. If the patient has a normal mammogram in the face of a persistent mass, is it true that she doesn’t need additional follow-up?

4. What prevention options are available to women at high risk?

5. What are the risk benefits of core needle biopsy (CNB) versus fine-needle aspiration (FNA)?

6. What risk-assessment model is most applicable in clinical practice?

7. What are the benefits of breast cancer risk assessment?

8. Stage II breast cancer includes tumors measuring 2 cm.
   a. True
   b. False

9. The majority of women with breast cancer have identifiable risk factors.
   a. True
   b. False

CHAPTER 42

1. Which of the following statements regarding the statistical nature of appendicitis is incorrect?
   a. The mortality rate of appendicitis with appropriate and timely treatment is less than 1%.
   b. Individuals have a 7% lifetime risk of developing appendicitis.
   c. With acute appendicitis, there is a 20% mean incidence
4. A 28-year-old G2P2 presents to the emergency room with right-sided abdominal pain and nausea. On exam, she is tender to palpation at McBurney’s point with voluntary guarding, and her pelvic exam elicits pain on palpation of her right adnexa without note of an obvious mass. Her temperature is 99°F, her pulse is 88, and her blood pressure is 126/74. Labs reveal a WBC count of 9,400. CT scan suggests an appendiceal abscess. Given the below options, the best treatment plan at this point is:

a. Immediately, take the patient to the operating room for an emergency exploratory laparotomy and appendectomy.

b. Start intravenous fluids and a first-generation cephalosporin antibiotic, and consent the patient for a laparoscopic appendectomy to be performed in the morning.

c. Start intravenous fluids and broad-spectrum antibiotics with enteric organism coverage, keep the patient NPO, and keep the patient under close observation for progression of her illness.

d. Send the patient home with appendicitis precautions and a 14-day course of Levaquin and metronidazole.

e. A 26-year-old with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) who has end-stage renal disease

2. Which of the following definitions regarding diagnostic signs of appendicitis is incorrect?

a. McBurney’s point: located at the junction of the middle and medial thirds of a line drawn from the umbilicus to the anterior superior iliac spine

b. Rovsing sign: pain in the right lower quadrant when pressure is applied to the left lower quadrant

c. Psoas sign: increased pain in the abdomen as the right leg is extended at the hip when the patient is in the left lateral decubitus position

d. Obturator sign: increased pain in the right lower abdomen when passively flexing the hip

e. Because the increasing girth of the gravid uterus, infection of the appendix would be more difficult to detect given the compression it experiences from the surrounding structures

3. A patient undergoing laparoscopy for removal of right-sided tuboovarian abscess

d. A patient undergoing laparoscopy for removal of right-sided tuboovarian abscess

CHAPTER 43

1. An 18-year-old nulliparous woman presents to your clinic for her annual exam. On exam there is a right adnexal mass that is about 5 × 3 cm. Ultrasonographically it is consistent with a dermoid cyst. Although without pain for the past several weeks, she has a history of right lower quadrant pain that has occurred intermittently over several years, and she has had guaiac positive stool in the past but none currently. She is taken to the operating room where she is found to have a dermoid, as expected, but is also found to have a diverticulum 9 cm in length arising from the antimesenteric border of the ileum 13 inches from the ileocecal valve. There is a slight thickening of the tip of the diverticulum, but the tissue otherwise appears totally healthy. Which of the following statements about the management of this case of Meckel’s diverticulum is true?

a. The patient’s symptoms have now resolved and the dermoid has been removed, so there is no need to remove the diverticulum, which likely will remain asymptomatic the patient’s entire life.

b. The diverticulum should be removed because the patient has a history of symptoms that it may have caused, and it has slightly atypical features.

c. The diverticulum should be removed because any time a Meckel’s diverticulum is discovered incidentally, it should be removed to prevent future complications.

d. The diverticulum should not be removed at this time, but if the patient has recurrent symptoms, she should be referred to general surgery for removal.

e. A 16-year-old alcoholic with cirrhosis

2. In which of the following patient(s) would sodium phosphate probably not be a good choice for a bowel prep?

a. A 26-year-old with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) who has end-stage renal disease

b. A 54-year-old alcoholic with cirrhosis

c. A 64-year-old with stage IIB ovarian cancer

d. A 48-year-old well services worker

e. A 35-year-old with diabetes with a hemoglobin A1C of 6.7

3. A patient undergoing a laparoscopic tubal ligation. Upon insertion of the laparoscope, intraluminal bowel mucosa is seen, as well as reflux of enteric contents. Which of the following would be the best course of action?

a. Remove the trocar, convert to an open laparotomy, and repair the injury.

b. Leave the trocar in place, convert to an open laparotomy, and repair the injury.

c. Insert another trocar to confirm that bowel injury has occurred, then attempt to repair the injury laparoscopically.

d. Withdraw and repossession trocar so that the injury is visible with the laparoscope, and then decide if laparoscopic repair is feasible.

e. A 37-year-old patient undergoing a laparoscopy for fulguration of endometriosis and is discharged the same day. Which of the following presentations would be most consistent with an electrosurgical injury that was unrecognized during surgery?

a. The patient presents to the ER 3 days postoperatively reporting nausea, vomiting, and fever.

b. The patient becomes hypotensive and tachycardic in the recovery room but responds to fluid boluses.

c. The patient presents to the ER 24 hours postoperatively with abdominal pain and fever.

d. The patient becomes hypotensive and tachycardic on the operating table.

e. A 26-year-old with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) who has end-stage renal disease
Questions

c. The patient presents to the ER on postop day one reporting worsening abdominal pain, fever, and constipation.
d. The patient calls the clinic 1 week postoperatively reporting nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea but denies fever.
e. The patient presents to clinic 1 month postoperatively reporting irregular bowel movements since surgery and continued abdominal pain.

5. Which of the following statement(s) regarding early feeding in patients who have undergone a bowel anastomosis are true?

a. The rate of ileus is significantly higher in patients who are fed before passing flatus.
b. The rate of anastomotic complications is significantly decreased by delaying feeding.
c. Return of bowel function generally occurs at the same rate regardless of early or delayed feeding.
d. Early feeding decreases the probable length of hospital stay.
e. None of the above

6. Which of the following are the three most common reasons for bowel obstruction?

a. Adhesions
b. Intestinal polyps
c. Volvulus
d. Hernias
e. Malignancy

7. A 62-year-old patient undergoes a bowel resection. Because there is only 5 cm of rectum conserved, the decision is made to create a sigmoid J-pouch. Which of the following regarding the J-pouch is true?

a. The patient is less likely to suffer from frequency, urgency, and incontinence of stool.
b. The patient is less likely to have a sense of incomplete evacuation after bowel movements.
c. Slight tension on the J-pouch will resolve over time and need not be a source of concern.
d. Enemas should be avoided in patients who have had a J-pouch created.

8. A 34-year-old patient undergoes a TAH-BSO for leiomyomata. During the surgery, the small bowel sustains a thermal injury requiring resection of 4 cm of small bowel. The remaining bowel appears healthy. Which of the following types of anastomosis should probably not be used because of the higher potential for excessive luminal narrowing?

a. End-to-end hand-sewn anastomosis
b. Side-to-side hand-sewn anastomosis
c. (True) end-to-end staple anastomosis
(d. Side-to-side staple anastomosis (functional end-to-end anastomosis)

9. A 38-year-old patient with a history of severe endometriosis who is known to have extensive adhesive disease presents to the ER with abdominal pain. Physical exam and radiologic imaging lead to the diagnosis of small bowel obstruction. During surgery, which of the following characteristics of her injured bowel indicate viability most reliably? (Choose two.)

a. Tissue color
b. Bleeding from a cut edge
c. Extent of edema
d. Peristalsis
e. Fluorescence of bowel wall under Wood's lamp 10 minutes after IV fluorescein

10. Designate whether each of the following statements is true or false.

a. Intraluminal fluid collection in a complete obstruction is unlikely to exceed 2 L.
b. Less than 20% of bowel injuries during gynecologic surgery occur during lysis of adhesions.
c. Absent bowel sounds are usually indicative of ileus.
d. Peristaltic waves causing pain every 12 minutes indicate a relatively high obstruction.
e. Sodium phosphate generally provides better bowel prep for colonoscopy than polyethylene glycol.
f. Stair-step air fluid levels from RLQ to LUQ is most consistent with adynamic ileus.
g. The tissue edges on a bowel anastomosis should be everted.
h. Colonic dysfunction following surgery usually resolves within 6 to 8 hours.

CHAPTER 44

1. How often do patients with documented colorectal cancer have a negative fecal hemoccult test?

a. 10%  
 b. 30%  
 c. 50%  
 d. 80%

2. The most common pelvic retroperitoneal mass related to the urinary tract is a:

a. Lower ureteral carcinoma  
 b. Urinoma  
 c. Pelvic kidney  
 d. Bladder diverticulum

3. Patients on broad-spectrum antibiotics and/or prolonged bowel preparations may have a prolonged prothrombin time.

a. False  
 b. True

4. Nongynecologic conditions most often seen by the gynecologist arise from what system or organ?

a. Gastrointestinal  
 b. Urinary tract  
 c. Lymphatic system  
 d. Orthopedic (muscle, bone)

5. Which is the most common neurogenic tumor that can arise in the pelvis and be mistaken as a gynecologic problem?

a. Neurofibromas  
 b. Asterocytoma  
 c. Glioblastoma  
 d. Schwannoma

6. At laparotomy, the finding of thickened mesentery with growth of mesenteric fat (“fat wrapping”) around the circumference of atheretra fibrotic bowel is pathognomonic of:

a. Crohn disease  
 b. Ulcerative colitis  
 c. Tuberculosis  
 d. Adenocarcinoma of small bowel

7. Of cancers metastatic to the ovary, which is the most common primary site?

a. Colon  
 b. Stomach  
 c. Breast  
 d. Uterus
CHAPTER 45

1. Which of the following is a recognized risk factor for vulvar malignancy?
   a. Diabetes
   b. Cigarette smoking
   c. Obesity
   d. Immunosuppression

2. You may consider omitting lymphadenectomy as part of the operative treatment for squamous cell vulvar carcinoma when:
   a. Lesion 1.5 cm diameter, less than 5 mm invasion
   b. Unilateral lesion, less than 5 mm invasion
   c. Any location, less than 1 mm invasion
   d. Unilateral lesion 1.3 cm diameter, 3 mm invasion

3. Which factor predisposes patients to develop local recurrence with squamous cell vulvar carcinoma?
   a. Midline location
   b. Enlarged inguinal nodes
   c. Close resection with margin less than 1 cm
   d. Poorly differentiated histology

4. The use of preoperative radiation therapy in patients with squamous cell vulvar carcinoma is most appropriate for:
   a. Patients with suspicious groin nodes
   b. Locally advanced disease or lesions encroaching on midline structures for which surgical removal is accompanied by significant morbidity
   c. Poorly differentiated histology type in stage 1 disease
   d. Multifocal lesions in stage 1 disease

5. When a woman has a Bartholin mass, what features would prompt you to consider biopsy or excision?
   a. Age younger than 40
   b. History of previous Bartholin abscess
   c. Failure to improve promptly with conservative therapy
   d. Negative culture
   e. Bilateral masses

6. The recurrence-free survival of patients with invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva correlates most closely with:
   a. Tumor differentiation
   b. Tumor location
   c. Radiation tumor dose
   d. Pathologic status of the inguinal lymph nodes
   e. Age of the patient

7. Which of the following histologic types of vulvar cancer has the most favorable prognosis?
   a. Squamous cell carcinoma arising from a Bartholin gland
   b. Paget disease with an underlying apocrine gland adenocarcinoma
   c. Melanoma 4 mm in thickness
   d. Basal cell carcinoma
   e. Merkel cell carcinoma

8. Which of the following histologic variants of vulvar cancer is most likely to metastasize to the inguinal lymph nodes?
   a. Verrucous carcinoma
   b. Basosquamous carcinoma
   c. Warty carcinoma
   d. Carcinoma in situ with early stromal invasion
   e. Basal cell carcinoma

CHAPTER 46

1. Human papillomavirus (HPV) is the cause of at least 99% of all cervical cancers.
   a. True
   b. False

2. Based on studies of college-aged women in the United States, what percent of young women test positive for a cervical HPV infection during a 3- to 5-year interval?
   a. 10%
   b. 25%
   c. 50%
   d. 80%
   e. 100%

3. Effective screening for cervical cancer has been reported using each of the techniques EXCEPT:
   a. Cervical cytology
   b. Visual inspection with acetic acid
   c. Lugol’s staining
   d. Colposcopy
   e. Computer-assisted cytology

4. A single Pap test, on average, would be able to pick up low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (LSIL) or worse in a screened patient what percent of the time?
   a. >95%
   b. 90%
   c. 80%
   d. 70%
   e. 50%

5. Recommended treatment for a 26-year-old woman in her first pregnancy at 24 weeks who has a colposcopically directed biopsy showing severe dysplasia at 1 o’clock is:
   a. Cryotherapy
   b. LEEP as an outpatient
   c. Cone biopsy in the operating room
   d. Cesarean section with cone biopsy at 36 weeks
   e. Follow-up with no treatment during pregnancy

6. How often will women with a biopsy diagnosis of mild cervical dysplasia resolve spontaneously with no treatment if followed for 24 months?
   a. 10%
   b. 25%
   c. 50%
   d. 75%
   e. 90% or more

7. All of the following are terms for abnormal colposcopic findings EXCEPT:
   a. Mosaic
   b. Metaplasia
   c. White epithelium
Questions

8. Which of the following is the main advantage of LEEP over cryotherapy for the treatment of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN)?
   a. It produces a specimen for histologic study.
   b. It does not require expensive equipment.
   c. It does not require general anesthesia.
   d. It has a lower risk of premature labor in future pregnancies.
   e. It requires less surgical skill and training.

9. HPV testing has been shown to be clinically effective for all of the following EXCEPT:
   a. Triage of ASC-US Paps
   b. Follow-up after LEEP
   c. Core biopsies with Pap for screening in women older than age 30
   d. Identification of which patients with mild dysplasia need treatment

10. Traditional cold-knife cone biopsy under anesthesia is recommended by experts for which of the following two scenarios?
    a. Cervical glandular lesions
    b. Grossly visible cervical lesions
    c. Lesions that extend into the canal
    d. Suspected microinvasive lesions

CHAPTER 47

1. A 3-cm cancer of the cervix with no signs of spread is probably:
   a. Stage IA2
   b. Microinvasive disease
   c. Stage IB
   d. Stage IIB

2. The most important determinant of prognosis of cervical cancer is:
   a. Depth of invasion into the cervix
   b. FIGO stage
   c. Presence of lymph node metastasis
   d. Histologic differentiation

3. The best rationale for choosing radical surgery over radiation treatment for early-stage carcinoma of the cervix is:
   a. Better survival with surgery
   b. Fewer complications
   c. Preservation of ovarian function
   d. Decreased short-term recurrence

4. Which of the following is not permitted for FIGO staging of cervical cancer?
   a. Intravenous pyelogram
   b. CT scans of abdomen and pelvis
   c. Lymphangiogram
   d. PET scan

5. Which of the avascular pelvic spaces lies immediately posterior to the cardinal ligament?
   a. Space of Retzius
   b. Pararectal space
   c. Paravesical space
   d. Rectovaginal space

6. In a classic type III radical hysterectomy, the uterine artery is ligated at which point?
   a. Its origin from the hypogastric artery
   b. Where it crosses over the ureter
   c. 1 cm lateral to the uterus
   d. As it enters the parametrial “web”

7. The most common late sequelae of radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy is:
   a. Vesicovaginal fistula
   b. Numbness of the medial thigh
   c. Leg edema
   d. Bladder dysfunction

8. The most common symptom of early cervical cancer is:
   a. Vaginal bleeding
   b. Pelvic pressure/pain
   c. Hematuria
   d. Unilateral leg edema

9. In a radical vaginal hysterectomy, which step of the procedure is performed “blindly”?
   a. Entry into the posterior cul de sac
   b. Entry into the pararectal space
   c. Entry into the paravesical space
   d. Entry into the vesicouterine space

10. Following a radical vaginal trachelectomy for cervical cancer, what percentage of pregnancies reach the third trimester?
    a. 25%–35%
    b. 45%–55%
    c. 65%–75%
    d. More than 90%

CHAPTER 48

1. All of the following increase the risk of endometrial cancer EXCEPT:
   a. Infertility
   b. Tamoxifen use
   c. Obesity
   d. Cigarette smoking
   e. Increasing age

2. A 65-year-old woman presents to your office with symptoms of vaginal spotting for the last 3 months. The next best step in her management is:
   a. Office endometrial biopsy
   b. D&C
   c. Hysterectomy
   d. Vaginal estrogen

3. A 53-year-old obese woman with diabetes and hypertension is diagnosed with grade 1 endometrioid adenocarcinoma of the endometrium. Her preoperative evaluation should include:
   a. CA-125
   b. CT of abdomen and pelvis
   c. MRI of pelvis
   d. PET scan
   e. None of the above

4. Which of the following statements regarding surgery for endometrial cancer is correct?
   a. Surgical staging for patients with uterine papillary serous carcinoma includes peritoneal washings and biopsies, pelvic and paraaortic lymph node dissection, and omentectomy.
   b. When clamping the cardinal ligaments, it is important to include the lateral cervical tissues to decrease the risk of bleeding.
c. The survival of patients treated with laparoscopic surgery is significantly shorter than that of patients who undergo laparotomy.
d. The fundus should be grasped with a tenaculum for manipulation of the uterus.
e. Debulking surgery does not improve survival in patients with advanced-stage endometrial cancer.

5. A 59-year-old woman presents for postoperative surveillance following surgery for stage IB, grade 1 endometrioid adenocarcinoma of the endometrium. Recurrent disease is most likely to be diagnosed by which of the following:
   a. History and physical examination
   b. Vaginal cytology
   c. Chest x-ray
   d. CT scan of abdomen and pelvis
   e. CA-125

CHAPTER 49

1. A 23-year-old patient is diagnosed with a stage IA malignant ovarian germ-cell tumor. Which of the following would be the standard treatment?
   a. Unilateral oophorectomy
   b. Bilateral oophorectomy and hysterectomy
   c. Bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy without hysterectomy
   d. Transvaginal pelvic ultrasound

2. A 3-year-old patient is diagnosed with stage IB serous ovarian adenocarcinoma of the endometrium. Recurrent disease is most likely to be diagnosed by which of the following:
   a. History and physical examination
   b. Cul-de-sac aspiration cytology
   c. BRCA1 genetic testing
   d. Ovarian biopsy followed by chemotherapy

3. Which of the following factors has not been shown to have prognostic significance in epithelial ovarian cancer?
   a. History of oral contraceptive use
   b. Age of menarche (15)
   c. Native American ethnicity
   d. Nulliparity

4. You are consulted intraoperatively by a colleague who has now has a 3-cm mass at the vaginal apex. Biopsy shows carcinoma of the anterior upper third of the vagina. She occurred.

5. Several large studies have found that early ovarian cancer can be detected successfully using which of the following screening techniques?
   a. Serum CA-125
   b. Cul-de-sac aspiration cytology
   c. BRCA1 genetic testing
   d. Transvaginal pelvic ultrasound

6. Which of the following tumor markers is most often elevated in patients with ovarian granulosa cell tumors?
   a. Serum inhibin
   b. CA-125
   c. AFP
   d. β-hCG

7. Which of the following findings on color flow Doppler are consistent with a benign mass (as opposed to a possible malignant mass)?
   a. Peripheral vascularity
   b. Increased diastolic blood flow
   c. Resistive index of >1
   d. Pulsatility index of 0.2

8. A 56-year-old G3P3 patient presents for her annual exam with no symptoms. She experienced menopause at the age of 51 and has no complaints. She has been on combination hormone replacement therapy. Her mother died of metastatic cancer (unknown primary) at the age of 68. She is found on exam to have a mobile, firm, nontender adnexal mass. Her bimanual and rectal exam have no other abnormal findings. An ultrasound shows a simple, unilocular cyst of the right ovary measuring 4 × 3 × 5 cm. Which of the following would be the best course of action?
   a. Check a CA-125 level, and if normal, repeat the ultrasound in 3 months to determine if any change has occurred.
   b. Assure the patient that everything looks all right and that she should return for her next annual exam in 1 year.
   c. Recommend laparoscopy with laparoscopic RSO if the ovarian cyst looks benign.
   d. Order a CT scan to reevaluate the findings seen on ultrasound.

9. What percentage of ovarian tumors in premenopausal women are malignant?
   a. >10%
   b. >10%–15%
   c. 25%–50%
   d. >75%

10. A 65-year-old G1P1A1 of Native American descent presents reporting bloating and weight loss for 6 months. Her mother is alive and well in her 80s. Her maternal aunt died of breast cancer at the age of 43. Her single pregnancy ended in spontaneous abortion at 10 weeks of gestation, and she was on birth control pills for 8 years over her life. Menarche had been at the age of 15 and menopause at the age of 51 and has no complaints. She has been on combination hormone replacement therapy. Her mother died of breast cancer at the age of 51 and has no complaints. She has been on combination hormone replacement therapy. Her mother died of breast cancer at the age of 43. Her single pregnancy ended in spontaneous abortion at 10 weeks of gestation, and she was on birth control pills for 8 years over her life. Menarche had been at the age of 15 and menopause at the age of 51.

   a. History of oral contraceptive use
   b. Age of menarche (15)
   c. Native American ethnicity
   d. Nulliparity

CHAPTER 50

1. Which of the following is not a candidate for total pelvic exenteration?
   a. A 36-year-old woman treated 1 year ago for stage IIIIB cancer of the cervix with pelvic radiation and chemother-apy who now has a vesicovaginal and a rectovaginal fistula. Biopsies, exam, and imaging studies show no evi-dence of cancer.
   b. A 65-year-old woman treated 20 months ago with pelvic radiation and chemotherapy for stage II squamous cell carcinoma of the anterior upper third of the vagina. She now has a 3-cm mass at the vaginal apex. Biopsy shows
1400 Questions

5. Use of a myocutaneous flap for vaginal reconstruction during a pelvic exenteration has all of the following advantages EXCEPT:
   a. It brings in new blood supply to the pelvis.
   b. It fills in the pelvic defect.
   c. Adequate blood supply
   d. Wound breakdown

2. Which of the following factors is not a relative contraindication to pelvic exenteration?
   a. Obesity
   b. Jehovah's Witness who will not accept blood products
   c. Inability to stress or care for herself because of mental or physical impairment
   d. Age older than 70
   c. Increased risk of recurrence

3. All of the following clinical findings suggest that a patient's tumor will be unresectable EXCEPT:
   a. Unilateral leg edema
   b. Tumor causing a vesicovaginal fistula
   c. Sciatic nerve pain
   d. Unilateral ureteral obstruction

4. During a pelvic exenteration, all of the following pelvic spaces are used EXCEPT:
   a. Pouch of Douglas
   b. Space of Retzius
   c. Paravesical space
   d. Presacral space
   e. Pararectal space

5. Use of a myocutaneous flap for vaginal reconstruction during a pelvic exenteration has all of the following advantages EXCEPT:
   a. It brings in new blood supply to the pelvis.
   b. It fills in the pelvic defect.
   c. Adequate blood supply
   d. Wound breakdown

CHAPTER 51

1. One technique for vaginal reconstruction after vaginectomy includes the omental J-flap with split-thickness skin graft (STSG). Which of the following is not considered a benefit of this technique?
   a. Psychosexual factors/satisfactory intercourse
   b. Prevention of enteroperineal fistula
   c. Abscess collection
   d. Urinary incontinence

2. Incorporating which vessel is crucial to ensuring success of the sigmoid neovagina procedure?
   a. Inferior hemorrhoidal artery
   b. Superior hemorrhoidal artery
   c. Pubendal artery
   d. Dorsal clitoral artery

3. When identifying the structure for the gracilis myocutaneous flap, which muscle can be confused for the gracilis?
   a. Adductor longus
   b. Adductor brevis
   c. Adductor magnus
   d. Sartorius

4. When performing a rectus abdominis myocutaneous (RAM) flap, what is an absolute contraindication to the procedure?
   a. Previous Maylard incision
   b. Diabetes
   c. Obesity
   d. Previous radiotherapy

5. All of the following are considered disadvantages of the traditional vulvectomy except:
   a. Perineal contractions
   b. Distortion of the bladder neck/urethra leading to incontinence
   c. Increased risk of recurrence
   d. Wound breakdown

6. To ensure adequate closure with a Z-plasty pedicle flap, each of the following should be included EXCEPT:
   a. Adequate blood supply
   b. A flap length 2 cm long and a base of 1 cm
   c. Full-thickness skin graft
   d. Rotation of the flap to the midperineal line

7. Physiologic characteristics of a continent urinary pouch are designed to prevent reflux, infection, and incontinence. Which describes the ideal situation for a continent urinary pouch?
   a. 40 cm H2O pressure, 500 mL volume
   b. 80 cm H2O pressure, 500 mL volume
   c. 80 cm H2O pressure, 1,000 mL volume
   d. 40 cm H2O, 1,000 mL volume

8. The Kock pouch is suitable for urinary bladder replacement because it possesses features necessary for maintaining continence. These include all of the following except:
   a. Maintenance of low pressure after filling
   b. Prevention of reflux
   c. Retention of 1,000 to 1,500 mL of fluid
   d. Elimination of intermittent pressure spikes (promoting reflux)

9. Variations of the original Kock procedure have been designed that do not require intussusception of the bowel. One of these is the Miami pouch. In what way is it different from the Kock procedure?
   a. The distal terminal ileum is transected proximal to the ileocecal valve.
   b. Appendectomy is performed.
   c. The ureters are anastomosed directly into the muscular wall of the colon.
   d. Reinforcing the ileocecal valve by tapering the distal segment is essential for maintaining continence.

10. Rectosigmoid colon resection (RSC) can lead to several defecation disorders, including all of the following EXCEPT:
    a. Fecal incontinence
    b. Constipation
    c. Fecal urgency
    d. Tenesmus
ANSWERS

CHAPTER 2

1. b. False  
2. a. True  
3. b. False  
4. a. True  
5. a. True  
6. b. False  
7. a. True  
8. a. True  
9. a. True  
10. a. True  
11. a. True  
12. a. True

CHAPTER 3

1. c. The patient’s surgeon  
2. d. None of the above; age should not be a determinant  
3. g. All of the above  
4. d. A skilled surgeon who addresses his patient’s psychological as well as physical needs  
5. f. All of the above  
6. c. An outdated procedure that should no longer be performed routinely  
7. a. Releases endogenous opiates and c. Has been shown to decrease the requirement for analgesics after surgery

CHAPTER 4

1. d. Nation  
2. b. False  
3. d. 1, 2, 3, and 4  
4. c. Communicate with members of the health care team  
5. d. None of the above  
6. b. False  
7. b. False  
8. c. 3

CHAPTER 5

1. a. Entering and retrieving information c. Communication and coordination of patient care processes  
2. b. 30 consecutive days off per year d. 10% of total work hours dedicated to educational activities  
3. a. The majority of clinical trials demonstrate decreased length of stay. c. There are multiple models and work paradigms.  
4. a. More effective when there is greater incentive b. More effective when the incentive applies to a larger percent of patients in the provider’s practice c. Currently being evaluated by Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS)  
6. a. Financing b. Establishing new workflows that optimize use of the HER c. Having adequate technical support d. Establishing a culture in the implementation setting that will allow for the necessary change  
7. b. Total duty hours should not exceed 80 hours when averaged over 4 weeks d. At least 10 hours of off time between worked shifts  
8. b. Gives a “B” recommendation when the data are based on limited or inconsistent scientific evidence d. Is commonly used in obstetrics and gynecology for evaluating peer-reviewed literature

CHAPTER 6

1. e. Decreased use of conservative medical management has increased the number of major surgical cases.  
2. c. All of the above  
3. c. Significantly increased ob/gyn knowledge base
CHAPTER 7

1. e. Anus
2. a. The pudendal nerve provides only sensory innervation to the perineum.
3. b. The clitoris never drains directly into the deep pelvic nodes.
4. c. The internal anal sphincter is indistinguishable from the external anal sphincter and it lies just outside the external anal sphincter.
5. e. All of the above
6. a. In a woman of reproductive age, the uterine cervix is larger than the uterine corpus.
7. d. The distal end of the fallopian tube is attached to the ovary by the fimbria ovarica.
8. c. The normal ovary measures 7 cm long during reproductive life.
9. b. The ovarian veins drain into the vena cava on the left and the renal vein on the right.
10. d. The ureter lies approximately 3 cm from the anterolateral surface of the cervix.

CHAPTER 8

1. d. Chemistry panel
2. d. All of the above
3. c. Patients with abnormal Papanicolaou smears showing repeated dysplasia should be evaluated by colposcopy and suspicious lesions biopsied before pelvic surgery.
4. c. Age is a relative contraindication for gynecologic surgery
5. e. Vaginal and abdominal hysterectomy
6. d. a, b, or c
7. b. 1–2 hours before surgery, repeated once if the surgery lasts longer than 3 hours
8. b. A more effective assessment of the posterior bladder wall
9. a. Discontinue the use of birth control pills 2 to 4 weeks before the planned gynecologic surgery
10. a. A full bowel prep should be carried out on all gynecologic surgeries.

CHAPTER 9

1. Low-molecular-weight heparin
2. 8%
3. Advanced age, obesity, intraperitoneal infections, prolonged anesthesia time, nasogastric tube placement, and a history of smoking
4. 1. Hypoventilation
2. V/Q abnormalities
3. Venous admixture
4. Diffusion limitation
5. Low inspired fraction of oxygen

CHAPTER 10

1. d. Chemistry panel
2. d. All of the above
3. c. Patients with abnormal Papanicolaou smears showing repeated dysplasia should be evaluated by colposcopy and suspicious lesions biopsied before pelvic surgery.
4. c. Age is a relative contraindication for gynecologic surgery
5. e. Vaginal and abdominal hysterectomy
6. d. a, b, or c
7. b. 1–2 hours before surgery, repeated once if the surgery lasts longer than 3 hours
8. b. A more effective assessment of the posterior bladder wall
9. a. Discontinue the use of birth control pills 2 to 4 weeks before the planned gynecologic surgery
10. a. A full bowel prep should be carried out on all gynecologic surgeries.

CHAPTER 11

1. b. False
2. d. Open the wound widely to allow drainage and debridement of necrotic tissue, then apply wet-to-dry packing until the wound closes by secondary intention.
3. a. Index finger of the left hand of the surgeon
4. a. Metronidazole
5. c. Heparin and antibiotics for total of 7 to 10 days; no need for long-term anticoagulation therapy.

CHAPTER 12

1. c. Intrapulmonary shunting. Clinically, adult respiratory distress syndrome is characterized by intrapulmonary shunting, widening of alveolar-arterial O₂ gradient, and reduced pulmonary compliance and functional residual capacity. Although supplemental oxygen is used, arterial PaO₂ typically remains less than 65 mm Hg. In patients with significant pulmonary injury, hypoxemia is progressive despite adequate oxygen supplementation, and assisted mechanical ventilation is required.
2. e. Oliguria. For both hypovolemic and septic shock, oliguria is a manifestation of early reversible shock and is also a clinical finding for patients with irreversible shock. Characteristics of late irreversible shock include a reduction in cardiac output, systemic vascular resistance, and cardiac index. Cold, clammy skin is present because of poor peripheral circulation, and disorientation or obtundation from decreased cerebral perfusion is present. In contrast, early reversible septic shock is characterized by an increase in cardiac output that is due to compensatory cardiac dilatation and sympathetic response; tachycardia is also present. Systemic vascular resistance is decreased but may be normal in the absence of hypotension. The skin is usually warm, secondary to an increase in cardiac output and peripheral vasoconstriction and to the febrile response.
3. c. For persistent bleeding consistent with coagulopathy. Platelet transfusion is indicated intraoperatively whenever there is persistent bleeding consistent with coagulopathy. In general, 1 unit of platelets will increase the platelet count by 5000 to 10,000/mL. It is recommended that when
blood loss exceeds 25% of the total intravascular volume and is ongoing, or when there is bleeding consistent with coagulopathy, packed red blood cells are indicated in a 4:1 ratio with fresh frozen plasma. There are isolated reports of satisfactory outcome in asymptomatic patients with solid tumors who did not receive platelet transfusions in the absence of bleeding, unless the counts were below 10,000/μL. Depending on the bleeding risks, currently accepted indications for preoperative and intraoperative platelet transfusions include platelet counts of less than 50,000/μL.

4. c. Inotropic and vasoconstrictive effects. Dopamine stimulates dopamine, β-adrenergic and β-adrenergic receptors. Dopamine is unique in that it stimulates these receptors in a dose-dependent fashion. At low doses (1–3 mg/kg/min), dopamine receptors are mainly affected. This results in preferential cerebral, renal, and mesenteric arterial vasodilatation. The net effect is an increase in urine output and blood flow to the brain and gastrointestinal tract without increasing the heart rate or significantly affecting blood pressure. In moderate doses (5–12 mg/kg/min), both β- and β-adrenergic receptors are affected. The effects are inotropic; that is, the effect is an increase in myocardial contractility, sinoatrial rate, impulse conduction, and cardiac output. With increased myocardial contractility, myocardial oxygen consumption is increased with no compensatory increase in coronary blood flow. In a patient with a history of coronary artery disease, this effect could lead to myocardial ischemia. At high doses (20 mg/kg/min) β-adrenergic effects predominate, resulting in severe generalized vasoconstriction, and the severity of vasoconstriction is similar to the effects of epinephrine or norepinephrine. Dopamine has little β2-adrenergic activity.

5. b. Dopamine is a direct-acting inotropic agent that stimulates β1- and β2-adrenergic receptors. Its β2-effects reduce afterload and its β1-effects increase heart rate. The major clinical distinction between Class I and Class II is generally characterized by blood loss of less than 750 mL, Class II with volume losses of 750 to 1,500 mL, and Class III with uncompensated blood or volume loss of more than 1,500 mL. Any volume loss may be associated with tachycardia, which can be a sympathomimetic response to pain or anxiety. In patients with less than 1,500 mL of volume loss, renal perfusion and urine output is typically maintained. The major clinical distinction between Class I and Class II hypovolemic shock is the presence of postural hypotension.

6. b. Crystalloid infusion (1–2 L). The most common types of shock in obstetrics and gynecology are hypovolemic and septic. A healthy, young patient who is otherwise asymptomatic and is tolerating a hemoglobin of 8 mg/dL may be managed adequately with crystalloid and oral iron as soon as she is able to begin oral feeding. Blood transfusion is not indicated in this patient at this time. Although colloids such as 5% and 25% albumin and synthetic colloid preparations have been used in the past for volume replacement, the majority of studies have found no advantage of colloids over crystalloids in this clinical setting.

When hemorrhagic shock is identified, the initial management consists of placement of a large-bore peripheral intravenous catheter and infusion of 1 to 2 L of an isotonic electrolyte solution. The rate of fluid administration is proportional to the caliber and length of the catheter; thus, placement of a central venous catheter will not improve the rate of fluid administration. Furthermore, central venous catheterization carries a risk of pneumothorax and other life-threatening complications and is unnecessary in an otherwise healthy patient.

7. c. Blood and cervical cultures. In all probability, this patient has a tuboovarian abscess. In this young, nulliparous patient, to preserve fertility, aggressive intravenous antibiotic therapy specific for genital tract pathogens (chlamydia and anaerobes) is recommended. When the diagnosis of tuboovarian abscess is suspect, antibiotic therapy in the hospitalized setting is warranted, regardless of concerns for future fertility. Before initiation of intravenous antibiotics, a pelvic examination with appropriate cultures for gonorrhoea and chlamydia should be performed. All aerobic cultures obtained in a patient who is febrile and has a significant leukocytosis. Because this patient has no evidence of a perforated viscus, plain films for free air are not indicated at this time. If the patient does not respond to antibiotic therapy, exploratory laparotomy may be indicated, but the initial management should be intravenous antibiotics after obtaining appropriate cultures.

9. c. Urine sodium excretion <30 mEq/L/24 hr; oliguric pre-renal azotemia is an early reversible injury. It is characterized by urine-plasma creatinine ratio greater than 40 mEq/L/24 hr, a urine sodium excretion of less than 20 mEq/L/24 hr, a fractional excretion of sodium less than 1%, and a high urine osmolality (>500 mOsm). Patients can have normal, increased, or reduced serum sodium, depending on volume replacement and intake. Contraction alkalosis is characteristic of prolonged diuretic use. Characteristics of acute tubular necrosis, which results from prolonged hypoperfusion and cellular damage, is typically characterized by the loss of ability to concentrate urine. Osmolality of the urine is usually less than 350 mOsm.
13. e. Give iron supplementation. Anemia is a common complication of cancer and cancer therapy. Because of alterations in tissue perfusion as well as immunological responses, significant anemia profoundly affects normal cellular and vascular physiology, impairing response to therapy and quality of life. Anemia preoperatively and postoperatively is an independent risk factor for postoperative infection, longer hospital stays, and death in noncardiac surgical patients. In several tumor models, anemia is a poor prognostic factor associated with poorer local control of disease and lower survival rates. Anemia leads to an increase in the tumor hypoxic fraction, with relative radioreistance resulting from impaired tumor oxygenation. The two most common reasons for anemia are iron deficiency and anemia of chronic disease. The patient described above is likely to have both true iron deficiency and inflammatory anemia. The best next step in the management of this patient is to determine relative iron stores; if serum ferritin levels are less than 30 nanograms per mL, iron therapy should be initiated. Although additional B12 and/or folate acid supplementation would be indicated for measurable deficits, vitamin deficiency is an uncommon cause for anemia in the adult patient with an intact gastrointestinal tract and a normal diet. Erythropoietin is the principal hematopoietic growth factor that regulates erythroid lineage proliferation and differentiation. Erythropoietin is a pleiotropic cytokine that is proangiogenic, with broad tissue-protective effects in diverse nonhematopoietic organs. Multiple trials demonstrate recombinant erythropoietin effectively reduces transfusion requirements and improves quality of life in cancer patients. However, erythropoietin does not reduce transfusion risks or correct anemia in the absence of sufficient iron stores. Therefore, administration of erythropoietin stimulating agents in conjunction with iron-vitamin supplements is indicated for patients with anemia of chronic disease and mixed anemia. Red cell transfusion is indicated for acute symptomatic anemia, especially when blood loss is ongoing, for patients with comorbid conditions in which anemia increases the risk of ischemia, and in chronic symptomatic anemia unresponsive to erythropoietin and iron therapy. The choice of therapy (chemotherapy, radiation therapy, or both) is usually predicated by the stage of disease and tumor type. Changes in treatment are usually made based on response and toxicity.

CHAPTER 13

1. c. Polyglandin 910 Rapide. The well-vascularized, rapidly healing tissues of the vagina need support for only a short period of time after injury, suggesting the need for a rapidly absorbed suture. Multiple studies are now available that show significantly less postoperative pain after repair with synthetic absorbable sutures compared with catgut sutures. This is believed to be caused by the intense inflammatory response produced by the gut sutures. Although use of longer delayed suture is also associated with less pain than catgut, the presence of suture material and knots has been associated with dyspareunia and pain after the postpartum period.

2. c. Suture pulling through fascia. Fascial dehiscence can be caused by multiple factors, including suture breakage, knot failure, and suture pulling through fascia, but the most common factor appears to be suture pulling through fascia. Wound infection may play a contributing factor in fascial dehiscence but is not a primary cause.

CHAPTER 14

1. c. Maylard
2. b. False. There is no posterior rectus sheath below the arcuate line.
3. c. Internal oblique and transversalis. The aponeuroses of the transversalis and the split aponeurosis of the internal oblique come together to form the posterior sheath of the rectus muscles above the arcuate line.
4. b. Transect the rectus muscles at their insertion, similarly done when performing a Cherney incision. Although one could use a Maylard, the risk of injury to the inferior epigastric vessels would be greater. Further, one would have to suture the muscle edges to the fascial edges to reapproximate the rectus muscle bellies. Given all of these pitfalls, the best option would be to transect the rectus muscles at their tendinous insertion into the pubic symphysis. Care must be taken to reattach the muscles to the tendon—not the periosteum of the pubic symphysis—at the completion of the procedure.
5. d. Maylard. The Maylard incision is used to enter the abdomen in a transperitoneal approach.
6. d. 8. Eviscerations usually occur from day 5 to 14 after the operation, with a mean of 8 days.
7. b. External iliac artery. The inferior epigastric artery arises from the external iliac artery. The superficial epigastric artery arises from the femoral artery. The hypogastric artery is another name for the internal iliac artery.

CHAPTER 15

1. c. Use a return electrode (ground) of large contact area to ensure a low-current density.
2. a. If metal laparoscopic trocars are used, a plastic insulating collar should be used.
3. d. Activating the current before making contact with the clamp.
4. a. Is a desirable electrosurgical modality for venous bleeding, such as oozing from a punch-out.
5. b. Faster movement of the wire through the cervical tissue causes more thermal injury and makes it more difficult for the pathologist to interpret.
3. a. Increase in pulse time
4. b. False
5. b. Above 100°C
6. b. False
7. b. Eye
8. d. Water

CHAPTER 17
1. a. Reusable
2. a. True
3. b. External iliac artery
4. b. Ilioinguinal nerve
5. b. Compression of the common peroneal nerve, compression by Allen stirrups
6. a. True
7. b. False

CHAPTER 18
1. d. The tungsten light source is superior to other sources.
2. b. The operative hysteroscope is 15 mm in diameter.
3. e. All of the above
4. a. Carbon dioxide
5. c. Normal saline
6. b. Hyskon
7. d. Glycine 1.5%
8. a. Hysteroscopy should be performed during the luteal phase for best visualization of the endometrial cavity.
9. d. Endometrial ablation
10. d. Bleeding

CHAPTER 19
1. b. Hepatitis B
2. a. Use large figure-of-eight sutures so the suture will not cut through the tissue.
3. d. Lamellar platelets
4. a. Hepatitis B
5. b. Reducing the pulse pressure
6. b. False
7. a. True
8. c. Only the posterior division of the hypogastric artery should be ligated.
9. d. 1 in 2 million
10. b. False

CHAPTER 20
1. In vitro fertilization (IVF)
2. Yes
3. IVF with intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI), salpingectomy before IVF
4. If married, cryopreservation of preembryos. If single, cryopreservation of oocytes or ovarian tissue; both procedures must be considered experimental.

CHAPTER 21
1. b. Chlamydia trachomatis
2. d. Known tubal obstruction
3. b. Obliterative fibrosis
4. d. Reduced risk of ectopic pregnancy
5. a. to use cautery during dissection to facilitate hemostasis
6. d. Nature of the tubal endoderm
7. b. Length of reconstructed tube

CHAPTER 22
1. e. All of the above
2. a. Laparoscopy provides inferior visualization of the posterior cul-de-sac compared with laparotomy.
3. a. The classic triad associated with endometriosis includes infertility, dyspareunia, and dysmenorrhea.
4. c. Presacral neurectomy, or division of the superior hypogastric plexus, is useful as an adjunctive procedure to reduce midline pelvic pain and dysmenorrhea in women with endometriosis.
5. b. The ASRM defines complete cul-de-sac obliteration as when no peritoneum is visible below the uterosacral ligaments.

CHAPTER 23
1. 1-c; 2-a; 3-d; 4-b
2. c. Partial vulvectomy
3. a. True
4. c. Simple vulvectomy

CHAPTER 24
1. b. Becomes patent when canalization of the most caudal portion of the vaginal plate at the urogenital sinus occurs
2. b. Most patients have a high (suprasphincteric) urethral vaginal connection.
3. c. Vaginoplasty should be performed in infancy to prevent vaginal stenosis.
4. c. Absence of the posterior wall of the bladder exposing the ureteral orifices
5. e. All of the above
6. a. The average age at presentation is 35 years.
7. c. Seventy-five percent of women exposed to DES in utero have anatomic abnormalities.
8. b. Stage 1 disease lesions can be treated with radiation therapy or total abdominal hysterectomy.
9. e. Infection of the Bartholin gland
10. c. Most urethral diverticula are located in the proximal urethra.

CHAPTER 25
1. b. Septate uterus
2. a. The vagina develops from both the mullerian ducts and the urogenital sinus.
1406 Answers

3. c. Impaired ovarian function
4. e. Laparoscopy
5. b. Greater than 90% patients have been shown to achieve anatomic and functional success by vaginal dilation.
6. d. Adequate preoperative dilatation
7. d. Conservative management, with hormonal suppression of endometrial stimulation, is appropriate for young patients.
8. d. Rokitansky syndrome
9. c. Didelphic uterus
10. b. A prolonged postoperative recovery period

CHAPTER 26

1. b. Anovulatory bleeding
2. d. GnRH analog injection
3. b. In the follicular phase
4. d. All of the above
5. c. Sonohysterography

CHAPTER 27

1. c. Inserting the needle with the port closed. Careful attention to safety measures will reduce the likelihood of complications with Veress needle insertion. The needle should be inserted in the midline toward the hollow of the sacrum to avoid the major vessels laterally. The anterior abdominal wall should be elevated to avoid the dorsal vascular structures. The needle should be inserted with the port open and held to avoid occlusion of the spring mechanism of the inner safety obturator. Several techniques, including infiltration and aspiration of sterile fluid through the needle, can help to identify correct placement.
2. a. Bipolar coagulation. Both types of clips and the silicone rubber band are most likely to be effective if applied to normal fallopian tubes. Dense pelvic adhesions will decrease the likelihood that the tubes can be adequately mobilized for proper application of these methods. The presence of thickened or edematous tubes decreases the likelihood that the clip or band can adequately occlude the tube and increases the likelihood of tubal transaction.
3. c. Direct observation of tubal blanching and swelling. Bipolar coagulation is highly effective with proper technique. Because thermal injury to the seromuscular layer of the tube can occur without adequate coagulation of the endosalpinx, visual end points for adequate coagulation are unreliable. The use of a cutting waveform with the power output at least 25 W against a 100-V load increase the likelihood of complete coagulation, and use of an optical flow meter assists in determining when coagulation has been adequate. Coagulation of at least three contiguous areas will enhance the likelihood that a sufficient amount of tube has been occluded, and avoiding the proximal isthmus is thought to decrease the risk of tuboperitoneal fistula formation.
4. c. Ovarian cancer. Women who undergo tubal sterilization are more likely than women whose partners undergo vasectomy to later experience an ectopic pregnancy and to undergo hysterectomy. They appear to be equally likely to experience regret after the procedure. For a reason that remains unclear, sterilized women are less likely to develop ovarian cancer than their nonsterilized counterparts.

CHAPTER 28

1. b. Mesoderm
2. a. It is an HY cell surface antigen.
3. b. 12
4. c. It contains both motor and sensory parasympathetic and sympathetic nerves.
5. d. All of the above

CHAPTER 29

1. c. Allodynia
2. b. Neuromatrix theory
3. c. Somatosensory disorders

CHAPTER 30

1. b. Intravenous clindamycin plus gentamicin
2. b. False
3. d. A polymicrobial mixture of aerobes and anaerobes
4. d. Oral ofloxacin plus metronidazole
5. b. False

CHAPTER 31

1. c. Red or carneous degeneration is never seen during pregnancy.
2. d. Sarcomatous degeneration
3. b. The tumor behaves clinically as a benign entity.
4. a. Most leiomyomata are asymptomatic and may not require any treatment.
5. b. Danazol
6. c. It is recommended to combine laparoscopic guidance with the hysteroscopic procedure.
7. b. A 34-year-old woman desiring future fertility with two intramural myomas each measuring 3 cm in diameter
8. a. Preoperative treatment with oral contraceptive pills
9. d. Pulmonary embolus
10. a. Most patients report an improvement in menorrhagia and bulk-related symptoms.

CHAPTER 32A

1. a. Prolapue
2. a. Abdominal hysterectomy
3. b. Vaginal hysterectomy
4. c. Shorter operative time
5. a. True
6. b. False
7. a. Previous tubal ligation
8. c. Prophylactic intravenous antibiotics within 1 hour before surgery
9. a. True
10. b. 1/1,000 hysterectomies

CHAPTER 32B
1. e. Vaginal hysterectomy
2. d. Nulliparity
3. d. More than 90%
4. d. 90%
5. a. Dividing the uterine vessels

CHAPTER 32C
1. d. Shorter hospital stay
2. b. The uterine vessels are secured laparoscopically in a VALH.
3. a. Shorter operative time
4. c. The Vagiballoon™
5. a. True

CHAPTER 33
1. d. All of the above. They are all appropriate management plans for the hemodynamically stable patient with incomplete abortion or missed abortion. Surgical management is more likely to result in completion than medical management, and medical management is more likely to result in completion than expectant management, but the inverse is true of costs incurred. Patient satisfaction can be seen with any of these management plans. Certainly in the face of severe anemia, hemodynamic instability, or infection, surgical evacuation should be performed. Without these, patient preference should be strongly considered.
2. b. 7 weeks. The FDA has approved mifepristone 600 mg orally followed by misoprostol orally 48 hours later up to 7 weeks for early medical abortion. Recent literature supports an alternative regimen that can be effective up to 9 weeks.
3. b. False. All abortions, spontaneous or induced, can result in Rh sensitization in an Rh-negative woman. All women with an abortion should be given anti-D immune globulin. 30 μg is sufficient before 12 weeks of gestation; 300 μg is necessary thereafter.

CHAPTER 34
1. b. Ampullary, interstitial, interstitial
2. d. All of above

CHAPTER 35A
1. b. An increase in pulmonary reserve
2. c. An increased risk of placenta accreta
3. d. Rate of infection

Answers
1407

CHAPTER 35B
1. d. Benign cystic teratoma
2. b. Biopsy only, no further surgery
3. c. Dysgerminoma
4. a. Repeat the ultrasound in 4 weeks.
5. b. Pelvic ultrasound

CHAPTER 36A
1. c. Transversus perinei
2. d. Pericervical ring
3. b. Vaginal delivery
4. d. Hymenal ring
5. b. Quality of life

CHAPTER 36B
1. d. All of the above
2. c. Vesicovaginal and paravesical spaces
3. b. A transverse apical defect between the pericervical ring and the pubocervical septum

CHAPTER 36C
1. d. The posterior aspect of the pubic bone
2. b. Troublesome bleeding may result.
3. a. True
4. a. Placed individually starting near the ischial spine
5. d. Fascia of the obturator internus muscle

CHAPTER 36D
1. a. The change to site-specific defect repair
2. d. All of the above
3. d. In recurrent cases in which native pelvic tissues are weak
4. c. Mesh exposure
5. d. It is one of the most common surgeries performed in women older than age 50 and has an unacceptably high failure rate.

CHAPTER 36E
1. b. Cardinal and uterosacral ligaments
2. b. Rectum
3. a. Pudendal nerve/vessels
4. c. Anterior vaginal wall prolapse
5. d. Suturing the round ligaments to the anterior graft with nonabsorbable sutures
CHAPTER 36F

1. a. True
2. c. Wide vaginal introitus
3. d. Ring
4. a. Increased difficulty with bowel movement
5. b. It does not improve her symptoms.

CHAPTER 37

1. d. Act to decrease intraurethral resistance
2. b. Has a retropubic passage
3. a. 85%
4. b. Q-tip straining angle of >40°
5. d. All of the above
6. d. Must perform a cystotomy to complete the procedure(s)

CHAPTER 38

1. c. At the cardinal ligament when the ureter passes under the uterine artery
2. a. Surgical knowledge of the location and anatomy the ureter
3. b. Cystotomy
4. c. Total abdominal hysterectomy
5. c. Ureteroneocystomy with psoas hitch

CHAPTER 39

1. d. HIV infection
2. a. Laparoscopic
3. a. True
4. b. Superior to the interureteric ridge in the posterior bladder
5. c. Stone formation
6. c. Insert a tampon in the vagina and have the patient walk around for 15 minutes

CHAPTER 40

1. c. a, b, and c
2. d. a and c
3. c. a, b, and c
4. d. Endoanal ultrasound
5. b. False

CHAPTER 41

1. Yes. Unlike sporadic breast cancers, which may be associated with primarily maternal family-history risk factors, BRCA can be transmitted from the paternal side of the family as well. This means that the patient may be at an increased risk to develop breast cancer in male relatives as well as other nonreproductive cancers. The carrier relative may also be unaffected with disease at the time of review.
2. Yes. As inherited breast cancer (at this point) only accounts for 5% to 10% of breast cancers, once the gene is negative, the patient still remains at risk for the other 90% to 90% of sporadic breast cancers. We also have limited knowledge of other possible sources (undiscovered genes) for hereditary susceptibility to breast cancer. Thus, the patient should have, at minimum, mammographic, self-breast, and clinical breast examination (CBE) surveillance based on her age. And if familial breast cancer remains a concern, additional scrutiny may be warranted, including increased CBE, MRI testing is also currently showing promise in high-risk women, but additional studies are ongoing.
3. No. As mammograms have a 10% to 15% false-negative rate, a negative mammogram should not deter additional evaluation. Furthermore, the increased breast density noted in younger women portends an even higher false-negative rate.
4. Currently chemoprevention, prophylactic mastectomy/ oophorectomy, lifestyle modification, and increased surveillance are risk-reducing options in women with high-risk characteristics. Decreased use of alcohol and tobacco in addition to early childbearing are options for women pursuing lifestyle modification. Initial prevention data indicating a nearly 50% reduction in breast cancer was based on tamoxifen prophylaxis. As tamoxifen has additional side effects (including but not limited to an increased risk of endometrial cancer and venous thromboembolism), raloxifene was reviewed, with promising information released in the Study of Tamoxifen and Raloxifene (STAR) trial indicating a similar risk-reduction benefit for raloxifene without the increased risk of endometrial cancer. The risk of venous thromboembolism (VTE), however, was increased, thus indicating the need for additional studies. Aromatase inhibitors are being studied in pending trials including STELLAR (Study of Letrozole and Raloxifene—accrual to begin in late 2006 or 2007) in postmenopausal women. Oral contraceptives have also been shown to decrease a woman’s risk for the development of ovarian cancer. This creates a quandary for women at increased risk for both ovarian and breast cancer.
5. CNBs provide a histologic sample rather than the cytologic sample of FNA. Thus, invasion past the basement membrane cannot (as a rule) be delineated, thereby decreasing one’s ability to differentiate carcinoma in situ (CIS) from invasive cancer. Pathologists with significant experience in cytologic interpretation, however, may narrow this gap.
6. The Gail, Claus, and BRCAPRO are the most frequently used models in clinical practice. Of these, the Gail model is the only one that has been clinically validated. The risk for young women may be underestimated in both the Gail and Claus model. BRCA mutation carriers and those with paternal family history of breast cancer are underestimated in the Gail model. Moreover, the Gail model has not been validated in minority patients. The BRCAPRO model specifically focuses on genetic mutation risk. Thus, although each model has its advantages and limitations, it appears (from studies) that the Gail model may be most applicable. Also, it is assessable on the National Cancer Institute Web site.
7. Assessing an individual’s risk for the development of breast cancer likely encourages awareness of breast cancer and breast cancer screening recommendations, provides a forum
for discussion and clarification of risk management (as women often overestimate their risk), and improves the overall quality of care as information is being released indicating differential effects of tamoxifen and breast-feeding in BRCA1 versus BRCA2 carriers. Thus, stratification is necessary to provide accurate information regarding risk reduction.

8. b. False. Tumors equal to 2 cm are considered stage I (i.e., tumor < 2 cm). Another often-missed component is that tumors measuring 5 cm are considered stage II. Only those greater than 5 cm are considered stage III.

9. b. False. Actually, the majority of women with breast cancer have no identifiable risk factor other than sex and age.

CHAPTER 42

1. d. The greatest incidence of appendicitis occurs in the third and fourth decades of life.
2. a. McBurney’s point: located at the junction of the middle and medial thirds of a line drawn from the umbilicus to right anterolateral spine
3. c. Start intravenous fluids and broad-spectrum antibiotics with enteric organism coverage, keep the patient NPO, and keep the patient under close observation for progression of her illness.
4. b. Premature labor and delivery are among most serious fetal risks, with up to 30% fetal mortality reported if perforation occurs.
5. b. A patient undergoing standard repeat cesarean section with tubal ligation

CHAPTER 43

1. b. The diverticulum should be removed because the patient has a history of symptoms that it may have caused, and it has slightly atypical features.
2. a. A 26 year old with SLE who has end-stage renal disease; b. A 54 year old alcoholic with cirrhosis; and c. A 48 year old with class II heart failure
3. a. Start intravenous fluids and broad-spectrum antibiotics with enteric organism coverage, keep the patient NPO, and keep the patient under close observation for progression of her illness.
4. b. Leave the trocar in place, convert to an open laparotomy, and repair the injury.
5. a. A patient presents to the ER 3 days postoperatively reporting nausea, vomiting, and fever.
6. c. Return of bowel function generally occurs at the same rate regardless of early or delayed feeding.
7. c. Lugol’s staining
8. a. Vaginal bleeding
9. c. Entry into the paravesical space
10. a and d. Cervical glandular lesions and suspected microinvasive lesions

CHAPTER 44

1. c. 50%
2. c. Pelvic kidney
3. b. True

CHAPTER 45

1. d. Immunosuppression
2. c. Any location, less than 1 mm invasion
3. c. Preservation of ovarian function
4. a. Intravenous pyelogram
5. b. Pararectal space
6. a. Origin from the hypogastric artery
7. d. Bladder dysfunction
8. c. Staging of the appendix
9. c. Enter into the paravesical space
10. c. 65%–75%

CHAPTER 46

1. a. True
2. d. 80%
3. c. Any location, less than 1 mm invasion
4. c. Close resection with margin less than 1 cm
5. b. Locally advanced disease or lesions encroaching on midline structures for which surgical removal is accompanied by significant morbidity
6. a. True
7. a. Basal cell carcinoma
8. b. Basosquamous carcinoma

CHAPTER 47

1. c. Stage IB
2. b. FIGO stage
3. c. Preservation of ovarian function
4. a. Intravenous pyelogram
5. b. Pararectal space
6. a. It produces a specimen for histologic study.

CHAPTER 48

1. d. Cigarette smoking
2. a. Office endometrial biopsy
3. e. None of the above
4. a. Surgical staging for patients with uterine papillary serous carcinoma includes peritoneal washings and biopsies, pelvic and paraaortic lymph node dissection, and omentectomy.

5. a. History and physical examination

CHAPTER 49

1. c. Unilateral oophorectomy followed by chemotherapy
2. b. Surgery alone
3. c. Capsular rupture
4. a. Unilateral salpingo-oophorectomy with surgical staging
5. d. Transvaginal pelvic ultrasound
6. a. Serum inhibin
7. a. Peripheral vasculature
8. a. Check a CA-125 level, and if normal, repeat the ultrasound in 3 months to determine if any change has occurred.
9. b. 10%–15%
10. d. Nulliparity

CHAPTER 50

1. d. A 56-year-old woman who was treated 15 months ago for stage IB2 squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix now has a biopsy-proven 1.0-cm recurrence in the cervix after previous pelvic radiation and chemotherapy. The mass is freely mobile. Her workup is negative except for a single 1.5-cm node in the low aortic area just above her previous radiation field. CT-guided FNA is positive for squamous cell carcinoma. There is no evidence of other metastatic disease.
2. d. Age older than 70
3. b. Tumor causing a vesicovaginal fistula
4. a. Pouch of Douglas
5. d. It is technically quick and easy to perform.

CHAPTER 51

1. d. Urinary continence
2. b. Superior hemorrhoidal artery
3. d. Sartorius
4. a. Previous Maylard incision
5. c. Increased risk of recurrence
6. b. A flap length 2 cm long and a base of 1 cm
7. b. 80 cm H2O pressure, 500 mL volume
8. c. Retention of 1,000 to 1,500 mL of fluid
9. d. Reinforcing the ileocecal valve by tapering the distal segment is essential for maintaining continence.
10. b. Constipation
Abdominal hernia, defined, 1097
Abdominal examination
Abdominal ectopic pregnancy, diagnosis and laparoscopic techniques, 325–326
incision techniques, 254–266
Abdominal distension.
Abdome-Wharton-McIndoe procedure, vaginal
Abdominal pregnancy, defined, 798
Abdominal hernia, defined, 1097
Abdominal surgery
Abdominal wall
Acute abdomen, nonsurgical etiology, 1145
Active electrode monitoring
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)
Acid-base metabolism
Acute renal failure, diuresis of
Acute gastric distention, postoperative care, 1105
Acute abdomen, defined, 1097
Abdominal surgery
laparoscopic vertical incisions, 263–266
laparoscopic techniques, 523–526
unilateral site Veres needle technique, 523–526, 526f
radical abdominal trachelectomy, cervical cancer, 526f
vaginal surgery with sacral colpopexy, 526f
vaginal approach to, 526f
vaginal vault repair, 526f
Abdominal wall
Acute abdomen, nonsurgical etiology, 1145
Active electrode monitoring
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)
Acid-base metabolism
Acute renal failure, diuresis of
Acute gastric distention, postoperative care, 1105
Acute abdomen, defined, 1097
Abdominal surgery
laparoscopic vertical incisions, 263–266
laparoscopic techniques, 523–526
unilateral site Veres needle technique, 523–526, 526f
radical abdominal trachelectomy, cervical cancer, 526f
vaginal surgery with sacral colpopexy, 526f
vaginal approach to, 526f
vaginal vault repair, 526f
Abdominal wall
Acute abdomen, nonsurgical etiology, 1145
Active electrode monitoring
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)
Acid-base metabolism
Acute renal failure, diuresis of
Acute gastric distention, postoperative care, 1105
Acute abdomen, defined, 1097
Abdominal surgery
laparoscopic vertical incisions, 263–266
laparoscopic techniques, 523–526
unilateral site Veres needle technique, 523–526, 526f
radical abdominal trachelectomy, cervical cancer, 526f
vaginal surgery with sacral colpopexy, 526f
vaginal approach to, 526f
vaginal vault repair, 526f
Abdominal wall
Acute abdomen, nonsurgical etiology, 1145
Active electrode monitoring
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)
Acid-base metabolism
Acute renal failure, diuresis of
Acute gastric distention, postoperative care, 1105
Acute abdomen, defined, 1097
Abdominal surgery
laparoscopic vertical incisions, 263–266
laparoscopic techniques, 523–526
unilateral site Veres needle technique, 523–526, 526f
radical abdominal trachelectomy, cervical cancer, 526f
vaginal surgery with sacral colpopexy, 526f
vaginal approach to, 526f
vaginal vault repair, 526f
Abdominal wall
Acute abdomen, nonsurgical etiology, 1145
Active electrode monitoring
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)
Acid-base metabolism
Acute renal failure, diuresis of
Acute gastric distention, postoperative care, 1105
Acute abdomen, defined, 1097
Abdominal surgery
laparoscopic vertical incisions, 263–266
Unilateral site Veres needle technique, 523–526, 526f
radical abdominal trachelectomy, cervical cancer, 526f
vaginal surgery with sacral colpopexy, 526f
vaginal approach to, 526f
vaginal vault repair, 526f
Aesthetic surgery, lasers for, 302, 302t
Aerobic glycolysis, septic shock and, 208–209
Advanced planning directives, ethical principles
Adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), septic
Adult learning theory, residency training programs
Adrenogenital syndrome, reconstructive procedures
Adrenergic system, anatomy, 101–103, 102f–103f
a-Adrenergic receptors, bladder anatomy, 93
Adenocarcinoma
Adenomyosis
Adenoid cystic carcinoma, Bartholin gland, 1191
Adenosquamous carcinomas, cervical cancer,
Adenosine diphosphate (ADP), platelet function
Adjuvant therapy
Adnexal structures
Alcoholics
Alzheimer disease, hormone replacement therapy
Ameloblastoma, parotid gland, 1081
American Board of Medical Specialties (ABMS),
Amenorrhea, defined, 585
Ambulation, postsurgical, history of, 9
Albumin
Aggressive angiomyxoma, vulvar malignancies,
Age-related macular degeneration, hormone
Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality
AIDS
Aminopterin syndrome, defined, 842
Amino acids, parenteral and enteral nutrition
Amniocentesis, defined, 1278
American Society for Reproductive Medicine
American Board of Surgery
American College of Radiology
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists
American Gynecologic and Obstetric Society
American Academy of Obstetrics and Gynecology
American Society for Reproductive Medicine
American Urological Association
American Osteopathic Association
American Urological Association
American Urological Association
American Urological Association
American Urological Association
American Urological Association
Antibiotics
Anterior perineum, vaginal hysterectomy and, 749
Anterior pelvic exenteration
Antacids, shock-induced ulceration and, 220
Anovulation, dysfunctional uterine bleeding and,
Ankh amulet, as uterine symbol, 26–28, 27f
Anion gap
Angiogenesis, menstrual endocrinology, 587
Anus
Antimesenteric edge, defined, 1097
Antidiuretic drugs, hyponatremia and, 175, 175t
Antidepressants, chronic pelvic pain syndrome, 655
Antibodies, shock etiopathogenesis investigations
Apocrine sweat glands, vulvar region, 82, 83f
Aorta
Anxiety
pelvic inflammatory disease management,
neutropenic fever and, 212–213
techniques, 1348–1349
defined, 1340
anatomy, 89–90, 90f
defined, 162
metabolic acidosis, 186
Ashtek mask, as uterine symbol, 26–27, 28
Atrovent, functional uterine bleeding and, 589
Antral, duct-induced ulceration and, 220
Anus colon (vaginal
anatomy, 85–90, 90f
vaginal hysterectomy and, 710
Anterior pelvic exenteration
defined, 1140
techniques, 1348–1349
Anterior pelvis, vaginal hysterectomy and, 749,
750
Aortic
Antibiotics
appraisal procedure, 1089
blood preparation and, 1101
laparotomy and use of, 785–788
nutropenic fever, 721–23
pelvic infiltration anesthesia management, 665–667, 665t
rap别的pallium abscesses, 672–674
postoperative infection treatment, 196–199, 197t,
adenoid, 29
Adams, 748
adenocarcinoma, 86
adenoma, 86
Adipesosseous, chronic pelvic pain syndromes, 635
Adenocarcinoma, hyperplasia and, 177, 178
Adenomyofibromatous drugs, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adenomyosis, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adenomyosis, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adenomyosis, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Adrenocortical edge, defined, 1097
Adenomyosis, polycystic ovary
endometrium, 4
Best surgical practices

Billing and financial records, separation from

Best possible outcome, principles of.

Definitions

Bicornuate uterus, hysteroscopic surgery, 353–355

Bethesda system (TBS)

Beneficence, principle of.

Müllerian duct system anomalies, 581

Informed consent, 6–9,

Legal definitions of, 42

Medical ethics theory concerning, 15–16

Medical malpractice, 353–355

Medical research involving humans, 42

Beneficence

Müllerian duct system anomalies, 581

Informed consent, 6–9,

Legal definitions of, 42

Medical ethics theory concerning, 15–16

Medical malpractice, 353–355

Medical research involving humans, 42

Best surgical practices

Billing and financial records, separation from

Best possible outcome, principles of.

Definitions

Bicornuate uterus, hysteroscopic surgery, 353–355

Bethesda system (TBS)

Beneficence, principle of.

Müllerian duct system anomalies, 581

Informed consent, 6–9,

Legal definitions of, 42

Medical ethics theory concerning, 15–16

Medical malpractice, 353–355

Medical research involving humans, 42

Best surgical practices

Billing and financial records, separation from

Best possible outcome, principles of.

Definitions

Bicornuate uterus, hysteroscopic surgery, 353–355

Bethesda system (TBS)
Breast Cancer Prevention Trial (BCPT), chemoprevention and, 1365–1366
Breast conservation surgery (BCS), contralateral, 1352–1356
mammography, 1351
Breast cancer, 1352
Brest disease.
Breast Cancer Prevention Trial (BCPT), cysts, 498–500, 499f
pathology, 1035–1037, 1036t–1036t
Paget disease, 1039–1040, 1040f
nipple discharge, 1040–1042
mamalgia, 1037–1040, 1040f
lesions
inflammation, 1035
galactorrhea, 1040–1041
fibrocystic changes, 1035–1036, 1035f,
Definitions, 1030–1031
congenital anomalies, 1035
Benign tumors, 1036–1037, 1036t, 1037f
anatomy, 1032, 1032f–1033f
anatomical location, 1035t
self-breast examination, 1043–1044
open surgical biopsy, 1055, 1057, 1058f
fine-needle aspiration, 1052–1054,
digital mammography, 1049–1050
1052t–1053t, 1053f–1056f, 1055t
1057t
Cervical carcinoma, 11
Consulation
Hysterectomy, 342, 344
fiballipus tube, 357, 357f
intimal injury, 1103–1104, 1103f
Cervical cancer, 1239
Cervical intraepithelial neoplasia, 1219,
Cervical neoplasias
adhesiolysis, 311–312, 312f
abdominal myomectomy, 715
endometriosis surgery, 453–456, 454f–456f,
tissue interaction, 300–301, 300f–301f
laparoscopy, 310
endometriosis and, 442, 442t
cervical neoplasias
management, 1221
Conservative vulvectomy, 486–487, 487f
Cervical cerclage, 666–667, 667t
Cervical cancer
radical supracervical hysterectomy, 1242, 1242f
radical vaginal surgery, 1271, 1271f
cervical incompetence management with, 780–782, 781f
Cervical cancer
radical supracervical hysterectomy, 1242, 1242f
radical vaginal surgery, 1271, 1271f
cervical incompetence management with, 780–782, 781f
Cervical cancer
radical supracervical hysterectomy, 1242, 1242f
radical vaginal surgery, 1271, 1271f
cervical incompetence management with, 780–782, 781f
Cervical cancer
radical supracervical hysterectomy, 1242, 1242f
radical vaginal surgery, 1271, 1271f
cervical incompetence management with, 780–782, 781f
Cervical cancer
radical supracervical hysterectomy, 1242, 1242f
radical vaginal surgery, 1271, 1271f
cervical incompetence management with, 780–782, 781f
Cervical cancer
radical supracervical hysterectomy, 1242, 1242f
radical vaginal surgery, 1271, 1271f
cervical incompetence management with, 780–782, 781f
Cervical cancer
radical supracervical hysterectomy, 1242, 1242f
radical vaginal surgery, 1271, 1271f
cervical incompetence management with, 780–782, 781f
P1: PBY/PBR
GRBT249-ind

P2: PBY/PBR

QC: PBY/PBR

T1: PBY

Printer: rock-hr

GRBT249-3368G GRBT249-Rock-v5.cls

1416

January 10, 2008

Index

Cervical cancer. (Contd. )
history of research on, 11–12
human papillomaviruses, 1211–1214, 1211t,
1213f
leiomyomata uteri, differential diagnosis, 698,
698f
management
adenocarcinoma in situ/glandular dysplasia,
1220
carbon dioxide laser, 1221
cervical conization, 1223–1225, 1224f
cervical intraepithelial neoplasia, 1218–1220,
1219f–1220f, 1219t
cryotherapy, 1220–1221
loop electrosurgical excision, 1221–1223,
1222f
punch biopsy as therapy, 1220
pretreatment evaluation, 1235–1236
prognostic factors, 1233–1235, 1233t, 1234f
radiation therapy, 1284, 1285t
screening procedures, 1214–1216
computer-assisted diagnosis, 1215
cytology, 1214
HPV testing, 1215–1216
liquid-based, thin-layer cytology, 1214–1215
visual inspection, 1215
squamous cell carcinoma, pelvic exenteration
and, 1341
surgical treatment protocols, 1236–1238, 1236t,
1237f–1238f, 1238t
fertility-sparing radical abdominal
hysterectomy, 1258–1259, 1262–1263,
1262t, 1263f–1266f
follow-up after, 1283–1284
laparoscopically assisted radical vaginal
hysterectomy, Schauta procedure,
1263–1268, 1266f–1269f
laparoscopically assisted radical vaginal
trachelectomy (Dargent procedure),
1268–1274, 1270f–1272f, 1272t–1273t
laparoscopic radical hysterectomy, pelvic and
aortic lymphadenectomy, 1274–1275, 1274t
laparoscopic surgical staging, 1275–1276,
1275t, 1276f
pelvic anatomy, 1243–1247, 1244f–1247f
postoperative complications, 1276–1280,
1278t
radical abdominal hysterectomy, 1249–1258,
1251f–1255f, 1257f–1261f
radical abdominal hysterectomy/bilateral
pelvic lymphadenectomy, 1247–1249
radical hysterectomy, 1238–1243, 1239t,
1240f, 1243t
specimen pathology, 1276
terminology, 1208–1210, 1209t–1210t
Cervical conization
cervical cancer
hysterectomy following, 1237
morbidity complications, 1237
cervical neoplasia management, 1223–1225
deﬁned, 298
postoperative pelvic hemorrhage, 393
Cervical cytology. See Cytology, cervical
Cervical dysplasia, deﬁned, 1208
Cervical ectopic pregnancy, 819–820, 820f
Cervical incompetence
complications, 782
double uterus and, 572, 574
incidence, 778
loop electrode excision procedure of transition
zone (LLETZ) and risk of, 1223
management, 779–782, 780f–781f
risk factors, 778
Cervical insufﬁciency, deﬁned, 825
Cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN). See also
Cervical cancer
atypical squamous cells, 1217
colposcopy, 1218
deﬁned, 1208
high-grade lesions, 1216, 1216f
human papillomavirus and, 1212–1213, 1213f
laser surgery

history, 303–304
results, 306
low-grade lesions, 1216–1217, 1217f
management of, 1218–1225
adenocarcinoma in situ, 1220
carbon dioxide laser, 1221
cervical conization, 1223–1225, 1224f
cryotherapy, 1220–1221
loop electrode excision, 1221–1223, 1222f
mild dysplasya (CIN 1) protocols, 1219,
1219f, 1219t
moderate/severe dysplasya (CIN 2-3)
protocols, 1219–1220, 1220f
punch biopsy as therapy, 1220
pregnancy and, 1218
screening for, 1214–1216
terminology, 1209, 1209t
Cervical pregnancy, deﬁned, 798
Cervical stenosis, vaporization conization
complication, 304–305
Cervicovaginal artery, radical vaginal
trachelectomy ligation, 1269–1270, 1270f
Cervix
anatomy, 90
congenital absence/dysgenesis, 560, 562–565,
563f–564f
diagnostic hysteroscopy, 349–351, 350f–351f
dilation, 598–600
complications, 603–605, 604f–605f
labor induction, legal abortion, 791
legal abortion, 784–785, 784f–785f
postmenopausal cervical stenosis, 598–599
technique, 599–600, 599f–600f
hysterectomy and removal of, 730
injury to, legal abortion, 792
laser surgery techniques, 304–306
combined procedures, 305
excision laser conization, 305
postoperative care, 305–306
vaporization conization, 304–305, 304t, 305f
pelvic tuberculosis and, 680
preoperative assessment of, 123, 123f
vaginal hysterectomy
colpotomy to, 747–748, 748f
incisions in, 746–747, 747f–748f
Cesarean hysterectomy
techniques for, 832–834, 833f–834f
ureteral injury, 965, 965f
Cesarean section
vaginal hysterectomy in patients with, 748–749,
749f
vesicouterine/vesicocervical ﬁstula, 975
Chancroid, vulva infection, 493
Charting protocols, medical-legal issues in
gynecology and, 19–20
Cheatle slit, deﬁned, 1097
Chemoprevention, breast cancer, 1063–1064
Chemoradiation
cervical cancer surgery and, 1281–1282, 1281t
vulvar malignancies, 1168, 1168t, 1169t, 1170f
Chemotherapy
cervical cancer surgery and, 1282
endometrial carcinoma, 1301
neutropenic fever and, 212–213
ovarian tumors
advanced ovarian cancer, 1329–1330
pregnancy and, 849–850
vulva malignancies, postoperative radiotherapy
regimens, 1183–1184
vulvar malignancy
neoadjuvant regimens, 1168–1170
radiation therapy with, 1167–1168, 1169t, 1170f
Cherney incision
abdominal surgery, 255, 257, 257f–258f
deﬁned, 246
Cherry, T. H., 12
Chlamydia trachomatis
lymphogranuloma venereum, vulva infection, 493
pelvic inﬂammatory disease, 661–662, 665–667,
665t–667t
sex partner management and communication
tubal factor infertility, 403

Chromic acid salts, catgut sutures, 230
abdominal incisions, contraindications, 254
Chromoperturbation, deﬁned, 319
Chromosomal abnormalities
leiomyomata uteri, 688–689
spontaneous abortion and role of, 777
Chronic anovulation syndrome, dysfunctional
uterine bleeding and, 589
Chronic pelvic inﬂammatory disease, diagnosis and
management, 674–676, 675f
Chronic pelvic pain
best surgical practices, 658
chronic pain syndrome, 657–658, 657f–658f
deﬁnitions, 648
diagnostic strategies, 653–654
endometriosis and, 445, 445f
history and etiology, 648–649, 649t
management, 654–657
pelvic inﬂammatory disease and, 664
psychologic factors, 652–653
tissue damage, 650–652
Chronic perineal laceration
anal incontinence and, 1008–1009, 1008f
layered repair technique, 1010–1012, 1011f
Chronic renal disease, hyponatremia, 171–173,
172f
Circulating volume restoration, shock
management, 213–216, 214t
Circumﬂex artery, anterior abdominal wall, 249,
249f–250f
Cirrhosis (liver), hyponatremia, 175
Citrovorum factor (CF), ectopic pregnancy therapy,
807–809, 808t
Clamps, surgical
avoidance of pelvic hemorrhage and, 383
classiﬁcation and properties, 238f–239f,
240–241
Clarke, Edward H., 6–7
Clearance of creatinine, renal function and, 169,
169t
Clear-cell adenocarcinoma, cervical cancer,
histopathology, 1230–1231
Clindamycin
pelvic inﬂammatory disease management,
666–667, 667t
shock therapy with, 218–219, 219t
Clinical breast examination (CBE), breast disease
diagnosis, 1044–1046, 1045f–1046f
Clinical practice guidelines (CPG), pay for
performance evaluations and, 69
Clitoris
anatomy, 83, 83f, 83t
congenital anomalies, reconstruction of,
514–516, 514f–515f
secondary operations, 520
hemivulvectomy and sparing of, 1161–1162,
1161f–1162f
lymphatic drainage, 85, 85f
Cloacal exstrophy, 522, 523f
Clomiphene citrate, polycystic ovary syndrome,
642
Closed loop obstruction, deﬁned, 1097
Closed techniques, deﬁned, 1097
Clostridium difﬁcile-induced colitis (CDIC),
antibiotic therapy, 218
Closure techniques
abdominal hysterectomy, 739–740
abdominal surgery, vertical incision closures,
261–263, 262f, 262t
incisional hernias, 272, 272f–276f, 275
posterior compartment defect surgery, 898, 899f,
900
radical abdominal hysterectomy, 1256–1258,
1261f
radical vaginal hysterectomy, cervical cancer,
1267
Smead-Jones closure technique, 229
vesicovaginal ﬁstula repair, nonsuture techniques,
985
Clotting disorders
acquired, 376
congenital

10:22


Colon cancer.

See also

Colon [173x309]
Colitis, as shock syndrome, antibiotic therapy for, [173x437]
Coelomic metaplasia theory, endometriosis, 440
Coccygeus-sacrospinous ligament complex (CSSL), [173x532]
Coagulation mechanisms [173x779]
Coagulation disorders, dysfunctional uterine hormone replacement therapy and, 36
sigmoid anatomy, 94
gynecologic surgery and preoperative in leiomyomata uteri, 690–691
absorbable sutures from, 230
tubal sterilization supracervical hysterectomy, 740, 740f
postoperative vascular complications and, 133, 134
salpingo-ovariolysis, 417, 417f–418f
electrosurgery biophysics and, 286, 286f–287f
large bowel obstruction, 1107
Digital oven, 1107
small bowel obstruction, 1106–1107, 1106f
urinary catheter, 1108, 1108f
vaginal evulsion, 1108–1109, 1109f
laparoscopic procedures, 332–334
gastrointestinal injury, 133–134
nurse injury, 532–533
trocar site hernia, 334
urinary tract injury, 354
vaginal injury, 333
Le Fort partial copocleisis, vaginal vault prolapse repair, 929, 931f
legal abortion, 791–799
scrotal hernia, 334
unintended pregnancy and, 354
ureteral injury, 335
Le Fort partial copocleisis, vaginal vault prolapse repair, 929, 931f

Index
Complications from surgery (Contd.)
cranial nerve palsy, 966-967, 967f
nerve root injury, 969-970f
nerve root injury, 959-960f
vaginal hysterectomy, 962-963f, 963f
uterine denudation, 539
uterine rupture, 974-975
wound dehiscence, 226-227, 271, 271f

Consultative procedures:
best surgical practices for, 1001-1002

Constipation, anal incontinence and, 1001–1002

Conscious sedation, laparoscopic surgery, 331–332

Congestive heart failure

Congenital adrenal hyperplasia, external genitalia anomalies, 512, 513f, 516

Confidentiality

Condyloma acuminatum, vulva, 500–501, 501f

Conceptus, defined, 398

Computer technology

Computerized physician order entry (CPOE)

Computer-aided diagnosis (CAD)

Computed tomography scanning

Cuff cellulitis

Cudocentesis, pelvic inflammatory disease

Curative operations, pelvic exenteration

Cumulative failure rate, defined, 609

Cutaneous melanoma, vulvar malignancies, defined, 1187–1189, 1187, 1189

Cutaneous melanosomes, labial fusion anomalies, 512, 512f-513f

CUT current

cystic fibrosis, 1267

cystic fibrosis, 913, 913f

Cystometry

cystoscopy

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cytokines, septic shock and, 207–210, 209f

Cytomegalovirus

Cyclin

Cyclodestructive laser, laparoscopic surgery, 1196-1198, 1196f-1198f

Cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors, chemoprevention of colorectal cancer, defined, 398

Cycle-specific 2 inhibitors, chemotherapy of breast cancer, defined, 1063–1064

Cumulative failure rate, defined, 609

Cutaneous melanoma, vulvar malignancies, defined, 1187–1189, 1187, 1189

Cutaneous melanosomes, labial fusion anomalies, 512, 512f-513f

CUT current

Cytokines

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystoscopy

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cytokines, septic shock and, 207–210, 209f

Cytomegalovirus

Cyclodestructive laser, laparoscopic surgery, 1196-1198, 1196f-1198f

Cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors, chemoprevention of colorectal cancer, defined, 398

Cycle-specific 2 inhibitors, chemotherapy of breast cancer, defined, 1063–1064

Cumulative failure rate, defined, 609

Cutaneous melanoma, vulvar malignancies, defined, 1187–1189, 1187, 1189

Cutaneous melanosomes, labial fusion anomalies, 512, 512f-513f

CUT current

Cytokines

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry

Cystosarcoma phyllodes, defined, 1030

Cystograms

Cytokeratins, ovarian tumor classification, 1315, 1316t

Cytology

Cystoscopy

Cystometry
Doppler ultrasound, postpartum venous thromboembolism diagnosis, 156
Durable power of attorney, ethical and legal principles and, 23
Dystocia, defined, 89
Dysmenorrhea, defined, 585
Dyspareunia, cervical and uterine 217t
Dysuria, papillary hyperplasia, 690
Dystocia, defined, 89
Electrosurgery, defined, 280
Electrolyte balance, defined, 357–358
Electromyography, pelvic floor, anal incontinence analysis, 637
Embolotherapy, leiomyomata uteri, 721
Embolization therapy, uterine, 722
Embryos, defined, 398
Embryology
breast disease and, 1031–1032
donor eggs, post-adnexal ablation patients, 400
Doxycycline, pro-inflammatory disease, 166
Due to the constraints of space, only the first few paragraphs of the text are shown. To access the full content, please refer to the original source.
P1: PBY/PBR
GRBT249-ind

P2: PBY/PBR

QC: PBY/PBR

T1: PBY

Printer: rock-hr

GRBT249-3368G GRBT249-Rock-v5.cls

January 10, 2008

Index

Endodermal sinus tumors
ovarian, pregnancy and, 844–845
vulvar metastases, 1198
End-of-life decision making, ethical principles and,
22–23
EndoGIA, deﬁned, 1097
Endomechanical energy, laparoscopic surgery,
322–324, 323f
Endometrial ablation
bipolar electrosurgery, 294–295, 294f
cancer following, 368
dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 590–591, 594,
594f
hysteroscopic surgery, 359–363, 361f–363f
nonhysteroscopic minimally invasive techniques,
363–365, 364f
pregnancy following, 368
submucous myomata resection and, 707–708
Endometrial biopsy, pelvic inﬂammatory disease
diagnosis, 664
Endometrial cancer, staging, deﬁned, 1291
Endometrial carcinoma
best surgical practices, 1302–1303
deﬁnitions, 1291
epidemiology, 1291–1292, 1292t
future research issues, 1302
hyperplasia, 1295–1296
incidental diagnosis during hysterectomy,
1301
postmenopausal uterine bleeding, 598
posttreatment surveillance, 1302
prognostic factors, 1294, 1294t
radiation therapy, 1300–1301
risk factors, 1292–1294, 1293t
screening techniques, 1294
surgical staging and treatment
indications for, 1286f, 1296–1300
laparoscopy, 1300
laparotomy, 1298–1299
preoperative assessment and preparation,
1297–1298
symptomatic patient evaluation, 1294–1295,
1295f
systemic therapy, 1301
Endometrial hyperplasia
dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 591, 591f
uterine bleeding and, 598
Endometrial resection, hysteroscopy, 362–363,
362f
Endometrial suction, uterine bleeding, 596f
Endometrioma
deﬁned, 438
ovarian endometriosis, 457–460, 458f–459f
Endometriosis
adenomyosis and, 470–472, 470f
adnexal masses, 633
anatomic locations, 438, 439f
appendicitis and, 1094
assisted reproductive technology and, 399,
468–470, 469t
autoimmune disease theory, 440
best surgical practices, 472–473
chronic pelvic pain with, 649–650
management of, 656
classiﬁcations, 448–449, 448t
coelomic metaplasia theory, 440
deﬁned, 438
deﬁnitions, 438
diagnosis, 445–447, 445f, 446t
gastrointestinal tract and, 1100
histogenesis, 439–440, 439t
hysterectomy for management of, 728–729, 729t
infertility mechanisms, 443, 443t
inﬁltration patterns, 446–447, 446t
laser surgery for, 313, 314t
natural history, 441
ovarian remnant syndrome, 636
pathophysiology, 441–445
clinical characteristics and symptoms,
442–445, 442t
gross appearance, 441
microscopic appearance, 441–442, 442t

posterior cul-de-sac dissection, laparoscopic
technique, 329, 329f
prevalence, 438–439
promoting factors, 440
reﬂux/direct implantation theory, 439–440
therapies, 449–468
combined medical/surgical treatment, 467
conservative surgery, 453–467
adjunctive procedures, 461–465, 462f,
464f
microsurgery principles, 453
outcomes, 466–467, 466f
recurrent surgery, 467
second-look laparoscopy, 465–466
sites for, 453–461, 454f–459f, 455t
expectant management, 449
hysterectomy, 467–468
medical treatment, 449–453
danazol, 451
gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonists,
451–453
progestogens, 449–451
treatment algorithm, 449, 450f
vascular dissemination theory, 440
visual ﬁndings, 446–447, 446t
Endometrium
anatomy, 90
biopsy, dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 596–598,
597f
cancer of, leiomyomata uteri, differential
diagnosis, 698, 698f
normal menstrual physiology, 585–588
Endomyometrial resection
dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 595
electrosurgery techniques, 293
Endopelvic fascia, 82
anatomy, 861, 861t, 862f
cystourethrocele repair, 875, 875f
deﬁned, 744, 854, 892
pelvic prolapse and, 911
retropubic urethropexy, stress urinary
incontinence, 944, 946f
Endopouch speciment removal bag, laparoscopic
tissue removal, 327, 327f
Endoscopic midchip camera, hysteroscopy with,
352, 352f
Endoscopic morcellator, laparoscopic tissue
removal, 327, 327f
Endoscopic surgery
endometriosis, ovarian, 457–460
external genitalia anomalies, surgical
reconstruction, 514–516, 515f–516f
gastric procedures, 1128
history of, 12
intestinal injury, 1103–1104, 1103f
laser techniques, 303
pediatric/adolescent patients, 645
Endothelin-1, menstrual endocrinology,
586–587
Endovaginal ultrasound, dysfunctional uterine
bleeding, 589–591, 590f
ENDOW study
physician-patient relationships in, 32
psychological aspects of gynecology and, 28
End-to-end (EEA) sizer device
abdominal sacral colpopexy, vaginal prolapse
reconstruction, 922, 924–926, 924f–926f,
927t
deﬁned, 911
End-to-end (EEA) stapler
colon surgery
anastomosis, 1118, 1121f
rectosigmoid end-to-end staple anastomosis,
1118–1120, 1122, 1122f–1123f
deﬁned, 1097
pelvic exenteration, low rectal reanastomosis,
1349
End-to-end hand-sewn anastomosis
double-layer anastomosis, small bowel resection,
1114–1115, 1115f
single-layer anastomosis, colon surgery,
1123–1124, 1124f

1421

End-to-side staple anastomosis, colon, 1122–1123
Energy systems
electrosurgery, 280, 281, 281t
laparoscopic surgery, 322–325
electrosurgery, 324–325, 324f
endomechanical energy, 322–324, 323f
laser energy, 324
ultrasonic energy, 324, 324f
EnSeal Laparoscopic Vessel Fusion System,
electrosurgery, bipolar vessel sealing, 290
Enteral nutrition, 156, 156t–157t
deﬁned, 1097
Enterocele
deﬁned, 744, 892
pelvic prolapse and, 911
posterior compartment defect, 893–894
vaginal hysterectomy, vaginal cuff closure and
support, 759–761, 759f–761f
vaginal vault prolapse, McCall culdoplasty, 913,
913f
Enteroenterostomy, deﬁned, 1097
Enterostomal therapist, deﬁned, 1097
Enterotomy
deﬁned, 1097
endoscopic procedures, 1103–1104, 1103f
gynecologic surgery and, 1102–1103, 1103f
Epidermal growth factors (EGFs)
menstrual endocrinology, 586–587
normal menstrual physiology, 585–586
Epigastric vessels
abdominal wall anatomy, 108–110, 108f–109f
anterior abdominal wall, 249, 249f–250f
Epinephrine, abdominal myomectomy and
contraindications for, 714–715
Episiotomy, 834–837
complications, 836–837, 836t, 837f–838f
incidence, 834
indications for, 834–835
midline vs. mediolateral techniques, 835t
anal incontinence and, 1000–1001
repair, 835
Epispadias, 522, 523f
Epithelialization, wound healing and, 227
Epithelial ovarian cancer, risk factors and surgical
criteria, 1320–1321, 1320t
Epithelioid leiomyomas, pathology, 694
Epithelioid leiomyosarcomas, pathology, 694
Epoetin alfa, shock-based anemia and, 216
Erectile bodies, vulva, anatomy, 83, 84f
EssureTM microinsert, tubal sterilization, 620–621,
620f
Estradiol
leiomyomata uteri risk and, 689
menstrual endocrinology, 586
Estrogen
endometrial carcinoma risk and, 1293–1294
leiomyomata uteri and production of, 689–690
Estrogen receptors
breast cancer modulation, 1075–1076
menstrual endocrinology, 586
abnormalities, 588–589
Estrogen replacement therapy (ERT). See also
Hormone replacement therapy (HRT)
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
592–593
endometriosis, hysterectomy and oophorectomy
and, 468
prophylactic oophorectomy and, 731
risks and beneﬁts of, 35–37
Ethics
abortion issue and, 23–24
advanced planning and end-of-life decision
making, 22–23
conﬁdentiality and, 21
human subjects-based research and, 21–22
Jehovah’s Witness patients and, 22
managed care and socialized medicine and,
46–47
medical theory and practice of, 15–16
of pelvic surgery, 15–25
privacy and, 20–21
in surgical training, 18

10:22


Extracardiac obstructive shock
Extra-anal incontinence
External intermittent pneumatic compression,
External iliac artery, anterior abdominal wall, 249,
External anal sphincter, defined, 994
Extended-field irradiation, cervical cancer surgery
Expert witness
Experience in surgical procedures, residents' lack
Excision laser conization, cervix, 305
Examination under anesthesia (EUA), ethical
Evisceration complications
Evidence-based medicine, 62
Evening primrose oil (EPO), mastalgia, 1038
1422 Index
defined, 203
classification and etiopathogenesis, 203–204,
fistulous tract and, 1003
defined, 994
best surgical practices, 535
anomalies, 511–512, 512f–524f, 514–525
anatomy, 82, 83f, 510–511
of endometriosis, 449
vulvar malignancies, 1164–1165, 1165f, 1166t
moderate/severe dysplasia management,
gastrointestinal surgery, 1108–1109, 1109f
defined, 246, 1097
abdominal myomectomy and, 720–721

Extracardiac obstructive shock
Extra-anal incontinence
External intermittent pneumatic compression,
External iliac artery, anterior abdominal wall, 249,
External anal sphincter, defined, 994
Extended-field irradiation, cervical cancer surgery
Expert witness
Experience in surgical procedures, residents' lack
Excision laser conization, cervix, 305
Examination under anesthesia (EUA), ethical
Evisceration complications
Evidence-based medicine, 62
Evening primrose oil (EPO), mastalgia, 1038
1422 Index
defined, 203
classification and etiopathogenesis, 203–204,
fistulous tract and, 1003
defined, 994
best surgical practices, 535
anomalies, 511–512, 512f–524f, 514–525
anatomy, 82, 83f, 510–511
of endometriosis, 449
vulvar malignancies, 1164–1165, 1165f, 1166t
moderate/severe dysplasia management,
gastrointestinal surgery, 1108–1109, 1109f
defined, 246, 1097
abdominal myomectomy and, 720–721

Extracardiac obstructive shock
Extra-anal incontinence
External intermittent pneumatic compression,
External iliac artery, anterior abdominal wall, 249,
External anal sphincter, defined, 994
Extended-field irradiation, cervical cancer surgery
Expert witness
Experience in surgical procedures, residents' lack
Excision laser conization, cervix, 305
Examination under anesthesia (EUA), ethical
Evisceration complications
Evidence-based medicine, 62
Evening primrose oil (EPO), mastalgia, 1038
1422 Index
defined, 203
classification and etiopathogenesis, 203–204,
fistulous tract and, 1003
defined, 994
best surgical practices, 535
anomalies, 511–512, 512f–524f, 514–525
anatomy, 82, 83f, 510–511
of endometriosis, 449
vulvar malignancies, 1164–1165, 1165f, 1166t
moderate/severe dysplasia management,
gastrointestinal surgery, 1108–1109, 1109f
defined, 246, 1097
abdominal myomectomy and, 720–721
P1: PBY/PBR
GRBT249-ind

P2: PBY/PBR

QC: PBY/PBR

T1: PBY

Printer: rock-hr

GRBT249-3368G GRBT249-Rock-v5.cls

1424

January 10, 2008

Index

Graft techniques and materials (Contd. )
suburethral sling procedure, stress urinary
incontinence, 951–955, 952f–954f, 955t
urethrovaginal ﬁstula repair, 987–988, 989f
vesicovaginal ﬁstula repair, 982–983, 985f–986f
Gram-negative bacteria
hidradenitis supperativa, 495t
neutropenic fever, 212–213
pelvic inﬂammatory disease, 661
septic shock and, 206–207
adult respiratory distress syndrome, 211
antibiotic therapy, 218–219, 219t
gastrointestinal failure and, 211
Gram-positive bacteria
hidradenitis supperativa, 495t
neutropenic fever, 212–213
septic shock and, 206–207
antibiotic therapy, 218–219, 219t
Granular cell tumors, vulva, 504, 504f
Granuloma inguinale, vulva infection, 492–493
Greater omentum, deﬁned, 1097
Greater vestibular gland, anatomy, 83, 83f, 83t
Gridiron (muscle-splitting) incision
abdominal surgery, 263, 264f
deﬁned, 246
Grief
deﬁned, 26
as response to surgery, 30–31
Groin dissection, vulvar malignancy
invasion levels and, 1160, 1160t
radical vulvectomy/bilateral inguinofemoral
lymphadenectomy, 1172–1181,
1172f–1180f
reconstructive surgery, 1181–1183, 1182f–1183f
Ground pads, electrosurgical generators, 284–285
Ground-referenced electrosurgical generators, 284
Growth factors, endometriosis and, 440
Growth hormone (GH), leiomyomata uteri risk
and, 689
“Guiding catheter,” tubotubal anastomosis,
428–429
Guilt, as response to surgery, 31
Gynaecia, 5
Gynecologic examination, preoperative assessment
including, 122
Gynecologic Oncology (journal), 12
Gynecologic surgery. See also Assisted reproductive
technology; Incision techniques; Laser
gynecology; Postoperative care; Preoperative
care; Wound healing
anal incompetence, 1007–1015
appendectomy incidental to, 1093–1095
cervical cancer, 1236–1238, 1236t, 1237f–1238f,
1238t
fertility-sparing radical abdominal
hysterectomy, 1258–1259, 1262–1263,
1262t, 1263f–1266f
follow-up after, 1283–1284
laparoscopically assisted radical vaginal
hysterectomy, Schauta procedure,
1263–1268, 1266f–1269f
laparoscopically assisted radical vaginal
trachelectomy (Dargent procedure),
1268–1274, 1270f–1272f, 1272t–1273t
laparoscopic radical hysterectomy, pelvic and
aortic lymphadenectomy, 1274–1275, 1274t
laparoscopic surgical staging, 1275–1276,
1275t, 1276f
pelvic anatomy, 1243–1247, 1244f–1247f
postoperative complications, 1276–1280,
1278t
radical abdominal hysterectomy, 1249–1258,
1251f–1255f, 1257f–1261f
radical abdominal hysterectomy/bilateral
pelvic lymphadenectomy, 1247–1249
radical hysterectomy, 1238–1243, 1239t,
1240f, 1243t
specimen pathology, 1276
changes in, 62–71
communication issues in, 28–29, 47–48
cystocele evaluation, 876–881, 876t, 877f–880f
data evaluation in, 70–71, 70t–71t

early principles of, 8–9
ectopic pregnancy
conservative surgery, 809–813, 810f–813f
medical therapy vs., 816
radical surgery, 813–816, 814f–815f
educational changes in, 62–64, 63f, 63t
electronic health record, 64–65
emotional responses to, 30–31
endometriosis, conservative surgery, 453–467
adjunctive procedures, 461–465, 462f, 464f
microsurgery principles, 453
outcomes, 466–467, 466f
recurrent surgery, 467
second-look laparoscopy, 465–466
sites for, 453–461, 454f–459f, 455t
gastrointestinal involvement
adhesiolysis, 1102, 1102f
injury and complications, 1102–1105
preoperative care, 1100–1101, 1101t
historical beginnings of, 3–5
hospitalist practices and, 69–70, 70t
hospital setting for, 44–45
informed consent request forms, 49, 50f–56f
managed care and socialized medicine and,
46–47
nongynecologic conditions and
best surgical practices, 1147–1148
bowel preparation with, 1145
deﬁnitions, 1131
gastrointestinal disease, 1131–1134,
1132f–1139f, 1146
intraoperative management, 1145–1147
nonsurgical acute abdomen, 1145
orthopedic disorders, 1141–1143, 1144f
ovarian metastases, 1146–1147
pelvic metastases, 1143, 1145
preoperative evaluation, 1131
preoperative preparation, 1145
retroperitoneal tumors, 1134, 1137,
1140–1141, 1140f–1143f, 1147
urologic tumors, 1134, 1139f, 1147
vascular considerations, 1143, 1144f
ofﬁce setting and, 43–44
ovarian cancer
advanced-stage cancer, 1321–1328, 1322t
early-stage cancer, 1315, 1317–1321,
1318t–1320t
fertility-sparing surgery, 1319–1320, 1319t
laparoscopy, 1328–1329
secondary cytoreductive surgery, 1331–1332,
1331t
second-look laparotomy, 1330–1331
ovarian tumors, pregnancy and, 846–849,
848f–849f
pay for performance evaluation, 66–67, 69, 69f
pelvic inﬂammatory disease
risk factors with, 662
ruptured pelvic abscess, 672–674
pelvic prolapse management, 870–872, 871t
pelvic tuberculosis, indications for, 683–684,
683t
postgraduate educational trends in, 64
professional liability and risk management in,
42–60
psychodynamics speciﬁc to, 31–33
psychological preparation for, 29–30
psychosexual rehabilitation, 33–34, 34t
quality initiatives in, 65–66, 67t–68t
rectovaginal ﬁstulae, 1016–1024
sexual cycle primer and, 34–35
spontaneous abortion evaluation and
management, 778
surgical instrumentation
clamps, 238f–239f, 240–241
dilators, 241, 241f
overview, 235–236
retractors, 239f–240f, 241
scalpels, 236–237, 236f
scissors, 237, 237f, 240
tissue forceps, 237f, 240
surgical knots, techniques and classiﬁcation,
234–235, 235f–236f

surgical needles, 233–234, 234f
surgical wounding healing, 227–228
suture materials
absorbable sutures, 230–231
facial closure sutures, 232–233, 233f
knot-pull tensile strength requirements,
229–230, 229t, 230f
nonabsorbable sutures, 231–232
training principles for, 73–79
in twentieth century, 9–12, 10f
urethrovaginal ﬁstula repair, 986–988, 987f–989f
vaginal reconstruction
Abbe-Wharton-McIndoe operation, 550–554,
550f–552f
acquired vaginal insufﬁciency, 557
historical development, 549–550
neovaginoplasty procedures, 555–557
Williams vulvovaginoplasty, 554–555, 555f
vaginal tumors, 527–529, 528f, 529t
vesicovaginal ﬁstula, technique overview, 980
wound closure methods and, 228–229
Gynecology
barriers to surgery in, 2–3
deﬁned, 2
ethical dilemmas in, 16
abortion, 23–24
history of, 2
medical-legal aspects of, 19–20
prevalence of malpractice claims in, 42–43
psychological aspects of, 26–40
in twentieth century, 9–12
Gynecology and Abdominal Surgery, 8
Gynecology (Soranus), 2

H
Haemophilus ducreyi, chancroid lesions, vulva
infection, 493
Halban syndrome, functional ovarian cysts, 639
Halsted, William S., 8–9
Halstedian technique, avoidance of pelvic
hemorrhage, 382–383
Hand-eye coordination, training programs for,
75–78
Hand-sewn anastomosis
colon, end-to-end hand-sewn single-layer
technique, 1123–1124, 1124f
small bowel
end-to-end double-layer anastomosis,
1114–1115, 1115f
side-to-side anastomosis, 1116, 1116f
Hands-on surgical training programs, 75–78
Hand washing, postsurgical infection prevention
and, 197–198, 198t
Hank-Bradley dilator
cervical dilation and curettage, 600, 600f
uterine dilation and curettage, 602
Harmonic ACE cutting and coagulating shears
laparoscopic myomectomy, 330–331, 332f
laparoscopic surgery, 324, 324f
Harmonic Scalpel, laparoscopic myomectomy, 709
Hartmann procedure
deﬁned, 1131
rectovaginal ﬁstula repair, 1021, 1024
Haustra, deﬁned, 1097
Health care proxy, ethical and legal principles and,
23
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability
Act (HIPPA), privacy issues and, 20–21
Health maintenance organizations (HMOs),
structure and function, 46–47
Health system improvement, training goals for, 73
Heaney retractor, cystourethrocele repair, 880–881,
880f
Heart, hypovolemic shock and, 210
Heat (thermal energy), deﬁned, 280
Hegar dilator
cervical dilation, 599, 599f–600f
uterine dilation and curettage, 602
Helium neon laser, tissue interaction with, 301
Hemangiomas
hysteroscopic surgery, 365, 365f
vulva, 504–505, 504f

10:22


Hemorrhoids
See also Hernias.

Hemorrhoidal complexes

Hemodynamic instability, in shock patients,

Hematosalpinx, imperforate hymen and,

Hematostasis

Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer syndrome

Heparin

Hemostatic defects, septic shock and, 207–208

Hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndrome

anal incontinence and, 1002
techniques for, 1161–1162, 1161f–1162f
recurrent vulvar malignancies, 1178–1181,
legal abortion complication, 793

Hemostasis

Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer syndrome

Hemostasis

Hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndrome

anal incontinence and, 1002
techniques for, 1161–1162, 1161f–1162f
recurrent vulvar malignancies, 1178–1181,

Hematoma

Hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndrome

anal incontinence and, 1002
techniques for, 1161–1162, 1161f–1162f
recurrent vulvar malignancies, 1178–1181,

Hemorrhoids

Hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndrome

anal incontinence and, 1002
techniques for, 1161–1162, 1161f–1162f
recurrent vulvar malignancies, 1178–1181,

Hemorrhoidectomy

Hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndrome

anal incontinence and, 1002
techniques for, 1161–1162, 1161f–1162f
recurrent vulvar malignancies, 1178–1181,

Hemorrhoids

Hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndrome

anal incontinence and, 1002
techniques for, 1161–1162, 1161f–1162f
recurrent vulvar malignancies, 1178–1181,

Hemorrhoids

Hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndrome

anal incontinence and, 1002
techniques for, 1161–1162, 1161f–1162f
recurrent vulvar malignancies, 1178–1181,
Incision techniques

Incidental appendectomy, defined, 1084

Incarceration, defined, 1097

Imperforate hymen

Impedance plethysmography, postoperative venous

Immunohistochemistry (immunocytochemistry),

Immobility, postoperative vascular complication

Image-guided ablation techniques, breast cancer

Iliac nodes, pelvic viscera, 104–105

Iliopsoas muscle, vulva anatomy, 85, 85f

Iliopectineal line, anatomy, 99, 99f

Iliohypogastric nerves

Iliococcygeus fascia suspension, vaginal prolapse

Iliococcygeal muscle

abdominal incisions, 254–266
indications and contraindications, 730–731
preoperative, defined, 113
pregnancy, 826
postsurgical infection evaluation, 196
laparoscopy, 320, 320f
anal incontinence analysis, 1004–1005, 1004f
abdominal myomectomy, 710–711, 711f
pelvic lymphadenectomy, radical abdominal
pelvic anatomy, 1243–1245, 1244f–1246f
anatomy, 103, 104f–105f, 105t
ligation of, 103, 104f–105f, 105t
pelvic anatomy, 1243–1245, 1244f–1246f
anterior abdominal wall, 250, 251f
abdominal wall anatomy, 110–111
pelvic floor anatomy, 498–499, 499f
vagina, 499–500
vulvar anatomy, 500–501, 501f
preoperative prophylactic management and, 129,
pelvic masses and, 1141–1142
pelvic inflammatory disease and, 664–665
tubal factor infertility, 403
endometriosis and, 443–445, 443t
laser procedures, 509, 510
leukemia, 1159–1160
ovarian destruction and assisted reproductive
technology for preservation of, 401
pelvic inflammatory disease and, 644
endometriosis, 399, 468–470, 469f
unilateral and bilateral salpingectomy, 550f–552f
ovarian dominance and fertility preservation, 401
pregnancy expectations and, 396–399
tubal infertility, 399–400
unilateral salpingectomy, 400
anatomy, 90–91, 91f
infundibulopelvic ligament

Infertility

Infarction

Infarction

Inflammation

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)

Infusion therapy

Infectious agents

Infection

Infertility

Infectious agents

Infectious agents

Infertility

Infertile

Infertile

Inflatable

Inflatable

Inflatable

Inflammation

Inflammation

Inflammation

Inflammation

Inflamed

Inflamed

Inflamed

Inflamed

Inflamed

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion

Infusion
Intramural-ampullary anastomosis, 425, 426f
Intraperitoneal bleeding

Intraabdominal laser surgery, 309–310, 309t

Intestinal obstruction, ovarian cancer, 1332–1333

Interval cytoreduction, advanced-stage ovarian cancer, 1332

Interval bleeding, defined, 585

Interstitial pregnancy

Interstitial needles, vulvar malignancy radiation therapy, 141–142

Interstitial compartments, water and electrolyte balance, 176–177

Interosseous diameter, defined, 854

Interposition graft

Insufflation systems

Insecurity, as response to surgery, 30

Insanity, defined, 26

Inotropic agents, shock management, 216, 217t,

Internal os (cervix), anatomy, 90

Internal oblique muscle, anterior abdominal wall, 469–470

Internal anal sphincter, defined, 994

Intermittent pneumatic compression (IPC), 208–210

Intermittent clean self-catheterization (ICSC), 886

Intermediate shock, etiopathogenesis, 206

Intercostal nerves, abdominal wall anatomy, 671–674

Integrins, endometriosis and, 443

Integration, as response to surgery, 31

Insulin therapy, shock management and, 220

Insulin control, preoperative assessment of patients with diabetes, 1041–1042

Insufflation systems

Insecurity, as response to surgery, 30

Insanity, defined, 26

Inotropic agents, shock management, 216, 217t,

Internal os (cervix), anatomy, 90

Internal oblique muscle, anterior abdominal wall, 469–470

Internal anal sphincter, defined, 994

Intermittent pneumatic compression (IPC), 208–210

Intermittent clean self-catheterization (ICSC), 886

Intermediate shock, etiopathogenesis, 206

Intercostal nerves, abdominal wall anatomy, 671–674

Integrins, endometriosis and, 443

Integration, as response to surgery, 31

Insulin therapy, shock management and, 220

Insulin control, preoperative assessment of patients with diabetes, 1041–1042

Insufflation systems

Insecurity, as response to surgery, 30

Insanity, defined, 26

Inotropic agents, shock management, 216, 217t,

Internal os (cervix), anatomy, 90

Internal oblique muscle, anterior abdominal wall, 469–470

Internal anal sphincter, defined, 994

Intermittent pneumatic compression (IPC), 208–210

Intermittent clean self-catheterization (ICSC), 886

Intermediate shock, etiopathogenesis, 206

Intercostal nerves, abdominal wall anatomy, 671–674

Integrins, endometriosis and, 443

Integration, as response to surgery, 31

Insulin therapy, shock management and, 220

Insulin control, preoperative assessment of patients with diabetes, 1041–1042

Insufflation systems

Insecurity, as response to surgery, 30

Insanity, defined, 26

Inotropic agents, shock management, 216, 217t,

Internal os (cervix), anatomy, 90

Internal oblique muscle, anterior abdominal wall, 469–470

Internal anal sphincter, defined, 994

Intermittent pneumatic compression (IPC), 208–210

Intermittent clean self-catheterization (ICSC), 886

Intermediate shock, etiopathogenesis, 206

Intercostal nerves, abdominal wall anatomy, 671–674

Integrins, endometriosis and, 443

Integration, as response to surgery, 31

Insulin therapy, shock management and, 220

Insulin control, preoperative assessment of patients with diabetes, 1041–1042

Insufflation systems

Insecurity, as response to surgery, 30

Insanity, defined, 26

Inotropic agents, shock management, 216, 217t,

Internal os (cervix), anatomy, 90

Internal oblique muscle, anterior abdominal wall, 469–470

Internal anal sphincter, defined, 994

Intermittent pneumatic compression (IPC), 208–210

Intermittent clean self-catheterization (ICSC), 886

Intermediate shock, etiopathogenesis, 206

Intercostal nerves, abdominal wall anatomy, 671–674

Integrins, endometriosis and, 443

Integration, as response to surgery, 31

Insulin therapy, shock management and, 220

Insulin control, preoperative assessment of patients with diabetes, 1041–1042

Insufflation systems

Insecurity, as response to surgery, 30

Insanity, defined, 26

Inotropic agents, shock management, 216, 217t,
Laparotomy (Cont.)

ovarian cancer, second-look procedures, 1330-1331
pelvic hemmorragh control, 132-133
pelvic inflammatory disease management, 132-133
pelvic abscess, 470-471, 470f
posterior compartment defect repair, 903-905
parietal peritonitis, 427-428, 428f
uterine nerve ablation, 394
Larger intestines. See Colon
Large loop excision of transformation zone (LLETZ), 293
successful pregnancies, 398
Laser (light amplification by the stimulated emission of radiation)
colors and wavelength, 299t
physics of, 298-299, 299t
rates of growth, 299t
submucous myomata resection, 707-708, 708f
time dependence, 300
submucous myomata and, 708
best surgical practices, 721
vs. benign leiomyomata, 691f–693f, 696f
clinical features, 695-701
abdominal bleeding, 699–700, 700f
abdominal distention, 701
asymptomatic leiomyomata, 695-699, 696f
defined, 687
interstitial pregnancy, 707-708, 708f
intrauterine contraceptive device, 783
incidence of, 794
in gynecology and, 19-20
intrauterine contraceptive device, 783
in gynecology and, 19-20
in gynecology and, 19-20
intraperitoneal neoplasm, 485-486
intrauterine contraceptive device, 491, 492f
Laparoscopic hysterectomy, defined, 825
Laparoscopic myomectomy, myolysis, 709-710
history, 298
fiber optics, 303
endoscopy, 303
endometriosis, 453–456, 454f–456f, 455t
definitions, 298
condyloma acuminatum, vulva, 502
vulvar pain/vulvodynia management, 491, 492f
vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia, 485–486
vulva, 306–307, 306f, 308f
vagina, 307–309
tissue interaction, 300–302
coils, 300–301
submucous myomata resection, 707–708, 708f
safety issues, 315–316
lower reproductive tract, 303–309
diagnosis, 565
didelphic uterus, 567
diagnosis, 565
vaginal tumors, 525–526, 526t
submucous leiomyomata and, 708
pathology of, 693–694
differential diagnosis, 699
vascularization, 695, 696f
clinical presentation, 703-707, 706f
Ligasure vascular sealing, defined, 687
Leiomyomata uteri
See also leiomyomas
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomata uteri
See also leiomyomas
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Leiomyomas.
See also leiomyomata uteri
Length of stay (LOS) statistics, hospitalist practices
Leithauser, Daniel J., 9
Leiomyosarcoma
Leiomyomas.
Index
Menorrhagia

Menopause.

See also Meningocele, retroperitoneal tumors, 1140, 1141f
Menarche, defined, 585
Melanoma, vulvar malignancies, 1187–1190,
Medullary carcinoma
Medroxyprogesterone acetate
Medicine, ethics theory and practice in, 15–16
Medications, preoperative assessment of patients
Medicare, surgical training ethics and, 18
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
Methyl methacrylate, defined, 1131
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
Methyl methacrylate, defined, 1131
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
Methyl methacrylate, defined, 1131
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
Methyl methacrylate, defined, 1131
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
Methyl methacrylate, defined, 1131
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
Methyl methacrylate, defined, 1131
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
Methyl methacrylate, defined, 1131
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
Methyl methacrylate, defined, 1131
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
Methyl methacrylate, defined, 1131
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
Methyl methacrylate, defined, 1131
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
Methyl methacrylate, defined, 1131
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
Methyl methacrylate, defined, 1131
Methotrexate (MTX)
Mifeprestone
Midtubal occlusion, tubal sterilization, 423
Microcirculatory dysfunction, septic shock and,
Microcalcifications, defined, 1031
Microadenoma, galactorrhea, 1041
Milia
Minimally invasive procedures
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
Morbidity
Morantz-Sanchez, Regina, 8
Mortality
Muscle
Murine ovarian tumors, 1343–1344
Military Antishock Trouser (MAST), abdominal
dysfunctional uterine bleeding treatment,
P1: PBY/PBR

P2: PBY/PBR

GRBT249-ind

QC: PBY/PBR

T1: PBY

Printer: rock-hr

GRBT249-3368G GRBT249-Rock-v5.cls

January 10, 2008

Index

Mucocele, appendiceal, preoperative evaluation of,
1132, 1136f
Mucocolpos, imperforate hymen, 508–510, 509f
Müllerian duct system
anomalies
classiﬁcation, 544
deﬁnitions, 539
ineffective suppression disorders, 55
congenital absence of, 544–548, 545f–546f
diethylstilbestrol exposure and anomalies of,
preoperative assessment of, 117
dysgenesis, 539
embryology and anomalies, 541–544, 542f–543f
lateral fusion disorders, 565–580
classiﬁcation, 539–540, 540t
origin, 541, 542f–543f
uterovaginal anomalies classiﬁcation, 539–541,
540t
vaginal reconstruction, 548–557, 548t
ventral-lateral fusion defects, 580–581
classiﬁcation, 540t, 541
vertical fusion disorders, 557–565
classiﬁcation, 539, 540t
Multidisciplinary procedures
gynecologic surgeons’ involvement in, 64
total parenteral nutrition protocols, 156
Multidrug-resistant pathogens, hospital-acquired
pneumonia, 144–145, 145t
Muscles
anterior abdominal wall, 247–248, 247f–248f
pelvic ﬂoor, 856, 857f
Muscle transposition techniques, anal incontinence
surgery, 1013, 1015
Musculoaponeurotic layer, anatomy, 106–107,
106f–107f
Musculophrenic artery, anterior abdominal wall,
249, 249f–250f
Musculoskeletal defects
chronic pelvic pain and, 651
preoperative assessment of, 120
Mycobacterium tuberculosis/Mycobacterium bovis,
pelvic tuberculosis and, 678
Mycoplasma hominis
bacterial vaginosis, 661–662
tubal factor infertility, 403
Mycoplasma spp., pelvic inﬂammatory disease,
661
Myocutaneous gracilis graft
deﬁned, 1353
vaginal reconstruction
pelvic exenteration, 1350, 1351f
techniques for, 1354–1356, 1354f–1356f
vulvar reconstruction, 1363
Myofascial pain, chronic pelvic pain as, 651
Myolysis, laparoscopic myomectomy, 709–710
Myomata uteri
hysteroscopic surgery, 358–359, 359f–360f
leiomyomata uteri, differential diagnosis, 698,
698f
recurrence, post-myomectomy, 720–721
Myomectomy
abdominal, 710–711, 711f, 714f–719f
laparoscopic technique, 330–331, 332f
innovations and limitations, 708–710
laser techniques, 312–313, 313f
leiomyomata uteri, vaginal myomectomy, 705,
706f, 707
multiple myomectomy, 715–719, 716f–710f
results assessment, 719–721
in vitro fertilization success rates and, 400
Myometrium
hysteroscopy and injury to, endometrial ablation,
362, 363f
pelvic tuberculosis and, 680
submucous myomata resection and, 707–708

N
Nasogastric decompression
deﬁned, 1098
postoperative care, 1105
small bowel obstruction, 1106–1107
Natural cycle In vitro fertilization, deﬁned, 398

Natural materials
absorbable sutures from, 230
nonabsorbable sutures from, 231–232
Necrosis, leiomyomata uteri, 691, 692f–693f
Necrotizing fasciitis
deﬁned, 190, 480
pathology, 194
risk factors and management of, 219
vulva infection, 493
Needle aspirate ﬂuid (NAF), breast disease, 1042,
1043f
Needle holders (surgical), 234, 235f
microsurgical techniques, 413–414, 414f
Needlepoint electrode, avoidance of pelvic
hemorrhage and, 383
Needles, surgical, 233–234, 234f
Negative outcomes of surgery, communication
about, 46
Negligence, medical malpractice and principle of, 42
Neisseria gonorrhoeae
pelvic inﬂammatory disease, 660–662, 665–667,
665t–667t
sex partner management and communication,
667–668
tubal factor infertility, 403
Neoadjuvant chemotherapy (NACT)
advanced ovarian cancer, 1330
deﬁned, 1307
vulvar malignancy, 1168–1170
Neodymium-doped yttrium aluminum garnet laser
(Nd:YAG)
deﬁned, 298
hysteroscopic laser surgery, 315
devices, 352, 353f–354f
myomata uteri, 359, 360f
hysteroscopy and, endometrial ablation,
360–361, 363f
submucous myomata resection, 707–708, 708f
tissue interaction with, 301
Neovaginoplasty, bowel vaginoplasty, 554–556
Neovascularization, deﬁned, 1098
Nerve conduction velocities, anal incontinence
analysis, 1006
Nerve injury, as laparoscopic complication,
332–333
Neuroendocrine tumors, cervical cancer,
histopathology, 1231–1232
Neuroﬁbromatosis, pelvic sarcoma, 1141, 1143f
Neurogenic dysfunction, bladder injury, cervical
cancer surgery, 1276–1277
Neurologic defects, preoperative assessment of, 120
Neuropathic pain, deﬁned, 648
Neuropathies, cervical cancer surgery, 1280
Neuroplasticity, deﬁned, 648
Neutropenic fever
deﬁned, 203
shock and, 212–213
Nichols-Veronikis ligature carrier, sacrospinous
ligament suspension, vaginal vault prolapse
correction, 915, 917f
Nipple discharge
breast disease, 1040–1042
nonmilky, 1041–1042
Nipple inversion, breast disease diagnosis,
1044–1046, 1045f–1046f
Nitric oxide, shock etiology and management
research, 222–223
Noble, Charles, 8
Noble-Mengert-Fish operation
chronic perineal laceration, 1008–1009, 1008f
complete perineal laceration repair, 1012–1013,
1014f
Nociceptor
chronic pelvic pain, 657–658, 657f–658f
deﬁned, 648
Nominal hazardous zone (NHZ), deﬁned, 298
No More Hysterectomies, 32
Nonabsorbable sutures
abdominal incisions and, 252–253, 252t
metal, 232
natural, 231–232
synthetic, 232

1433

Non-absorbable sutures, deﬁned, 226
Non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma
ileum, imaging studies of, 1132, 1137f
retroperitoneal tumors, 1140, 1141f
Nonimaging diagnostic techniques, postoperative
venous thromboembolism diagnosis, 137
Nonmaleﬁcence principle
deﬁned, 15, 42
informed consent and, 48–49
medical ethics theory concerning, 15–16
Nonsteroidal antiinﬂammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
appendicits in pregnancy and, 1093
chemoprevention of breast cancer and,
1063–1064
mastalgia, 1038
Nonsurgical gynecologic procedures, current trends
in, 74
Nonverbal communication, in physician-patient
relationship, 47–48
Norethindrone acetate, endometriosis therapy, 449,
453
Nosocomial infection, septic shock and, 206–207
Novak’s Gynecologic and Obstetric Pathology, 10
NovaSure Global Endometrial Ablation System,
294–295, 294f
Novasure system, endometrial ablation,
dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 594, 594f
Nuremberg Code, 21, 48
Nutritional requirements
shock management and, 220
total parenteral nutrition protocols, 151–153,
152t–155t
Nylon sutures, 232

O
Obese patients
abdominal surgical incisions in, 263–264, 265f
panniculectomy/abdominoplasty, 264–266,
265f–266f
cervical cancer in, radical hysterectomy, 1240
endometrial carcinoma risk in, 1293–1294
laparoscopic procedures, umbilical site Veres
needle technique, 326, 326f
pelvic exenteration contraindications in, 1343t
tubal sterilization in, laparoscopic techniques,
612–613, 613f
Oblique incision techniques, abdominal surgery,
263–266
gridiron (muscle-splitting) incision, 263, 265f
obese patients, 263–264, 265f
panniculectomy and abdominoplasty, 264–266,
266f
Rockey-Davis incision, 263
Obliterative procedures, vaginal vault prolapse
repair, 928–932
Observational learning, surgical training programs
and, 75–78
Obstetric outcomes
cervical cancer surgery, radical vaginal
trachelectomy, 1273, 1273t
double uterus and, 566–567
Obstetrics surgical techniques
best surgical practices, 838–839
cervical cerclage, 837–838, 838f
deﬁnitions, 825
episiotomy, 834–837
complications, 836–837, 836t, 837f
incidence, 834
indications for, 834–835
midline vs. mediolateral techniques, 835t
repair, 835
ethical dilemmas in, 16
imaging techniques, 826
medical-legal issues in, 19–20
peripartum hysterectomy, 830–834
cesarean hysterectomy technique, 832–834,
833f–834f
elective cesarean hysterectomy, 832
emergency procedures, 831, 831t
emergency vs. elective, 832
morbidity and mortality, 832t
subtotal vs. total, 834

10:22


Pelvic kidney, gynecologic surgery in patients with,
Pelvic hemorrhage
Pelvic hematoma, postoperative, 392–393
fertility and, 644–645
cervical cancer surgery and, 1281–1282, 1281t
tubal factor infertility, 403
tubal damage, ectopic pregnancy and, 799
risk factors, 662
ovarian remnant syndrome, 636
hysterosalpingography contraindicated with,
hysterectomy for management of, 728–729, 729t
HIV infection, 668
etiology, 660–662
definitions, 403, 660
appendicitis, differential diagnosis, 1099
transfusion risks, 379–381, 380t
preoperative coagulation assessment, 376–378,
postoperative bleeding, 389–393, 390f
normal coagulation mechanisms, 371–375
fibrinolytic impairment, 376
congenital clotting abnormalities, 375–376,
cervical cancer surgery, 1279–1280
best surgical practices, 393
avoidance strategies and principles, 382–384
strengthening techniques for, 863–864
repair, anal incontinence surgery, 1018
anatomy, 856, 856f
ruptured abscess, 671–674
posterior colpotomy management of,
reoperation, 391–393
platelet function, 372–373, 373f, 373t
plasma-clotting proteins, 374–375, 374f, 375t
hypercoagulable state, 375
fibrinolysis, 375
packing techniques, 387, 388f
iliac vessels, 387–388
aortic area, 389
anatomic difficulties, 387–389
predeposit, 382
intraoperative, 381–382
success and risk factors, 937
pessary usage, 936–937
pessary fitting, 940
pessary classification, 938–940, 938f–940f
indications for, 936
history, 936
definitions, 936
surgical repair, 902
surgical techniques, ureteral injury, 966
connective tissue and cleavage planes, 94–100
abdominal wall, 106–111
reconstructive surgery (reconstruction)
preoperative assessment of, 122–124, 123f
pelvic viscera, 88–94, 89f
pelvic spaces, 82
pelvic wall, 87–88, 99f
cell-de-uses, clamping planes, and spaces, 98–100
posterior compartment defects, 892–893, 893f
pelvic floor coverage, 1348
pelvic floor, 86–87
pelvic spaces, 82
pelvic wall, 87–88, 99f
pelvic reconstruction, 1350–1351, 1350f–1351f, 1356–1358, 1357f
anterior, 1348–1349
vaginal reconstruction, 1344–1345, 1346–1347
low rectal anastomosis, 1349, 1350f
pelvic floor coverage, 1348
prostate, 1349
preoperative preparation, 1343
renal function restoration, 1371–1372, 1372f
spasmic renal, 1345, 1346f
stone composition, 1347–1348, 1348–1349f
urinary continence preservation, 1363–1371
vaginal reconstruction, 1310–1311,
1310f–1311, 1315f–1316, 1317f
lymphatic drainage, 85–86
colorectal cancer and, 1245–1247, 1246–1247f
metastatic lesions in, 1435, 1440
nerves of, 101–103, 102f–103f
pelvic floor, 86–87
pelvic spaces, 82
pelvic wall, 87–88, 99f
cell-de-uses, clamping planes, and spaces, 98–100
pelvic reconstruction, 1350–1351
definitions, 1353
retrorectal spaces and lateral wall, 100–101
sagittal view, 856–857, 856f
Peptostreptococcus,
Perineal membrane, anatomy, 86, 86f, 97
Perineal body
Periadnexal adhesive disease
Percutaneous endoscopic jejunostomy (PEJ),
Percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG),
Peritoneal adhesions
Peritoneal compartment
Peritoneal lavage
Pelvic lymphadenectomy
cervical cancer:
justification for, 1242–1243, 1243f
operative specimen pathology, 1276
radical abdominal lymphadenectomy and,
1241–1242, 1242f
radical lymphadenectomy and, 1247–1249, 1248f
radical lymphadenectomy/para-aortic lymphadenectomy, 1274–1275, 1278t
radical vaginal hysterectomy, laparoscopic procedures, 1264
endometrial carcinoma, 1253–1256
radical lymphadenectomy, cervical cancer and,
1273–1274, 1278f
Pelvic lymph nodes, vulvar malignancy, sentinel
Peutermann, adenocarcinoma
pelvic, 1239–1241, 1239f, 1240f
pelvic lymph nodes, vulvar malignancy, sentinel
pelvic lymph nodes, vulvar malignancy, sentinel
pelvic lymph nodes, vulvar malignancy, sentinel
pelvic lymph nodes, vulvar malignancy, sentinel
pelvic lymph nodes, vulvar malignancy, sentinel
P1: PBY/PBR
GRBT249-ind

P2: PBY/PBR

QC: PBY/PBR

T1: PBY

Printer: rock-hr

GRBT249-3368G GRBT249-Rock-v5.cls

1440

January 10, 2008

Index

Reconstructive surgery
external genitalia, vaginosinus communication
anomalies, 511–517, 512f–516f
fallopian tubes
best surgical practices, 434–435
current trends in, 434
deﬁnitions, 403
investigation procedures, 403–410
falloposcopy, 408–409
function testing, 409
hysterosalpingography, 404–405,
404f–407f, 406t
laparoscopy, 409–410, 410f
radionuclide hysterosalpingography, 409
salpingoscopy, 408
selective salpingography and tubal
cannulation, 405, 408f
tubal insufﬂation, 404
iterative reconstructive surgery, 431, 434
microsurgery, 413–415
abdominal incision minilaparotomy, 415
access procedures, 415
equipment and instrumentation, 413–414,
414f
pelvic lavage, 415
preoperative preparation, 414–415
nontechnical issues, 412
techniques, 410–412
ampullary-ampullary anastomosis, 426–427
ampullary-infundibular anastomosis, 427
bipolar tubal disease, 431
contralateral tubal anastomosis, 431, 434f
ﬁmbriectomy repair, 412
ﬁmbrioplasty, 418–419, 419f
intramural-ampullary anastomosis, 425,
426f
intramural-isthmic anastomosis, 423, 425
isthmic-ampullary anastomosis, 425–426,
427f
isthmic-isthmic anastomosis, 425
oviduct ﬁmbriated end approximation, 431
salpingo-ovariolysis, 416–417, 416f–418f
salpingostomy/salpingoneostomy, 419–422,
420f, 421t, 422f
selection criteria for, 412
sterilization reversal, tubotubal anastomosis,
427–429, 428t
tubocornual anstomosis, proximal tubal
disease, 429–431, 430f–432f, 433t
tuboovarian transposistion, 431, 433f
tubotubal anastomosis, 422–429, 423f–424f
midtubal disease, 423
in vitro fertilization and embryo transfer,
410–411, 411t
tubal factor infertility, 403
ovary, 638–639
urethrovaginal ﬁstula, 989, 991
vulva and groin, 1181–1183, 1182f–1183f
vulvoplasty, 487–488
vulvovaginoplasty, Williams technique, 554–555,
555f
Record-keeping protocols, medical-legal issues in
gynecology and, 19–20
Rectal ampulla, anatomy, 94, 95f
Rectal injury, posterior compartment defect repair,
905
Rectal prolapse, anal incontinence and, 1002
Rectal reanastomosis, pelvic exenteratn, 1349
Rectoanal inhibitory reﬂex, anal incontinence,
998–999, 999f
Rectocele, 97
deﬁned, 892
posterior compartment defect, 893–894
radical vulvectomy, 1185–1186, 1186f
Rectosigmoid carcinoma, gynecologic surgery with,
1131, 1135f
Rectosigmoid colon
advanced-stage ovarian cancer, 1324–1325,
1324f
resection, 1371
Rectosigmoid end-to-end staple anastomosis,
colon, 1118–1120, 1122, 1122f–1123f

Rectouterine pouch, anatomy, 98, 99f
Rectovaginal fascia
anatomy, 96–97, 96f, 859, 860t
vaginal hysterectomy, vaginal cuff closure and
support, 760–761, 760f–761f
Rectovaginal ﬁstulae
best surgical practices, 1025
clinical evaluation, 1016
deﬁned, 994
epidemiology, 1015
etiology, 1015–1016, 1016t
physical examination, 1003–1004
surgical management, 1016–1024
early repair, 1016
Hartmann procedure, 1021, 1024f
low ﬁstula repair technique, 1016–1020,
1017f–1019f
radiation-induced ﬁstula, 1020–1021,
1020f–1023f
sigmoidovaginal ﬁstula: sigmoid resection with
sigmoidorectostomy, 1021, 1024f
Rectovaginal septum (RVS)
deﬁned, 892
posterior compartment defect
central/lateral defects, 895, 896f
detachment of, 894–895
perineal body detachment, 895–896, 901–902,
902f
uterosacral ligament reattachment, 900–901,
900f
Rectovaginal space, anatomy, 100
Rectum
anatomy, 94, 95f
cancer of, gynecologic surgery in patients with,
1146
cervical cancer surgery and injury to, 1280
pelvic exenteration and functional restoration of,
1371–1372, 1372f
preoperative assessment of, 122–124, 123f
Rectus abdominis muscle
anatomy, 107, 107f
anterior abdominal wall, 247–248, 247f–248f
myocutaneous ﬂap, vulva/groin reconstruction,
1182–1183, 1182f
Rectus abdominis myocutaneous ﬂap
deﬁned, 1353
vaginal reconstruction, 1359–1361, 1360f–1361f
vulvar reconstruction, 1363
Rectus fascia, suburethral sling procedure,
951–955, 951f–954f, 955t
Rectus sheath, abdominal wall anatomy, 108,
108f
Recurrent disease
cervical cancer, radical hysterectomy and, 1242
vaginal tumors, 528f–528–529
vulvar malignancies
modiﬁed vs. radical vulvectomy, 1160–1162,
1161f–1162f, 1162t
squamous cell carcinoma, 1170–1183, 1171t
radical vulvectomy/bilateral inguinofemoral
lymphadenectomy, 1171–1181,
1171f–1180f
Red blood cell (RBC) replacement, hypovolemic
shock etiopathogenesis and, 204–206, 205t
Reﬂux/direct implantation theory, endometriosis,
439–440
Reﬂux menstruation, deﬁned, 438
Refusal for treatment
informed consent and, 48–49
prognosis information and, 49
Regional nodal management, vulvar squamous cell
carcinoma, 1156–1158
Regression, 26
as response to surgery, 30
Relaxation training, chronic pelvic pain and,
656–657
Renal anomalies
ipsilateral renal agenesis, double uterus with
hemivaginal obstruction, 578–580, 579f
Mayer-Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser syndrome, 547
Renal failure, septic shock and, 210–211
renal replacement therapy in, 221

Renal physiology, 162, 163f
intravascular volume assessment and, 169, 169t
pregnancy, 826
sodium balance and sodium loading, 166–167,
167t
hyponatremia, 171–173, 172f
water deprivation, 166
Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, shock and
dysfunction in, 210–211
Reoperation, pelvic hemorrhage control, 391–393
Reposable, deﬁned, 319
Reproductive history and function
double uterus with hemivaginal obstruction,
579–580
ectopic pregnancy and, 801
embryology, 629–630
ovarian cancer patients, fertility-sparing surgery,
1319–1320
preoperative assessment and importance of, 118
unicornuate uterus, 574–575, 575f
uterine anomalies, 565–566
Research, on human subjects, ethics of, 21–22
Resectoscope
deﬁned, 336
hysteroscopy instrumentation, 339–340,
342f–343f
bipolar design, 340, 342, 343f–345f
endometrial ablation, 362, 362f
myomata uteri surgery, 359, 360f
submucous myomata resection, 707–708, 708f
Resectoscopic metroplasty, uterine septum
uniﬁcation, 569–570, 569f
Residency Review Committee for Obstetrics and
Gynecology
competency-based training programs, 75
surgical training principles and trends and,
73–74, 78
Resident physicians
changes in duty hours for, 62–64, 63f, 63t, 74
competences for, 73
malpractice risk and role of, 46
surgical education and training techniques,
76–78
training principles and trends for, 73–79
Residual ovary
chronic pelvic pain and, 650
deﬁned, 629
Residual ovary syndrome, 636, 637f
Resolution
as response to surgery, 31
in sexual cycle, 34
Respiratory acidosis
deﬁned, 162
management, 187–188
Respiratory alkalosis, 162
management, 188
Respiratory failure
as postoperative complication, 145–147,
146t
shock and, 211
total parenteral nutrition protocols, 156
Respiratory physiology, postoperative pulmonary
complications and, 143–144, 143t–144t
Respiratory system, pregnancy physiology, 825
Retention sutures, 229
Retractors, surgical
classiﬁcation and properties, 239f–240f, 241
paravaginal defect repair, vaginal retropubic
technique, 888–890, 888f–889f
Retrograde menstruation hypothesis, ovarian
cancer risk and, 1308
Retrograde pyelogram, vesicovaginal ﬁstula
evaluation, 977–978
Retroperitoneal lymph nodes, ovarian cancer and,
1327–1328, 1327f
Retroperitoneal spaces
advanced-stage ovarian cancer, 1323–1324,
1323f, 1324f
anatomy, 100–105
injury, cervical cancer surgery, 1278–1279
lower abdomen, anatomy, 100, 101f
vaginal hysterectomy and dissection of, 749–750

10:22


Sex in Education; or, A Fair Chance for the Girls

Sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG)
Sex assignment, congenital adrenal hyperplasia
Serum biomarkers, ovarian tumor risk assessment,
Sertoli-Leydig cell tumor, virilization and
Sigmoid neovaginoplasty
Sigmoid diverticulitis, abscess with, 1131, 1135f
Side-to-side staple anastomosis, small bowel,
See
Shirodkar surgical technique
Shaatz pessary, pelvic prolapse management, 939
Sexually transmitted disease
Sexual dysfunction, chronic pelvic pain, 652
Sexual cycle, psychological primer on, 34–35
Silent Passage, The,
Sigmoid resection, colon, techniques for, 1118,
recombinant human-activated protein C therapy,
vulvar malignancy management and, 116t,
pelvic inflammatory disease patients, partner
external genitalia anomalies, reconstructive
chronic pelvic pain, 657–658, 657f–658f
cervical cancer
fertility-sparing surgery and, 1319–1320
ectopic pregnancy diagnosis, 802–803
defined, 798
hypovolemia; Hypovolemic shock;
fluid volume deficit correction, 177–178
Sodium loss in, 172–173
Skinning vulvectomy, vulvar intraepithelial
elevated carcinoembryonic antigen, 614
Sleeve devices
Sleep deprivation, impact on physicians of, 62–64,
abdominal incisions and sutures, 253
Smoking cessation, postoperative atelectasis and,
staple anastomosis, 1113–1114, 1113f–1114f
defined, 1113
Smead-Jones closure technique
Smoking, physical effects of, xiv
Smoking, psychological effects of, 36
Smoking, familial influences on, xiv
Smoking, genetic factors in, 37
Smoking, learned behavior and, xiv
Smoking, wereld health organization and, xiv
Smoking and pregnancy, 36
Smoking, pathogenic effects on, xiv
Smoking, physiological effects of, xiv
Smoking, psychological effects of, xiv
Smoking, social influences on, xiv
Smoking, traditional treatments for, xiv
Smoking, tobacco use and, xiv
Smoking, traditional treatments for, xiv
Smoking, tobacco use and, xiv
Smoking, traditional treatments for, xiv
Smoking, tobacco use and, xiv
Smoking, traditional treatments for, xiv
Smoking, tobacco use and, xiv
Smoking, traditional treatments for, xiv
Smoking, tobacco use and, xiv
Smoking, traditional treatments for, xiv
Smoking, tobacco use and, xiv
Smoking, traditional treatments for, xiv
Smoking, tobacco use and, xiv
Index

Total parametric survival (TPS). See also Parametric survival
postoperative care, 150–156
cancer and respiratory insufficiency, 156
discrepancy of, 156
gynecologic surgery, 115
intraocular subtenon van ammun, 115–116, 115f
immunization procedures, 113
nutritional requirements, 111–113, 112–115
pawlet evaluation, 110–113, 111
patient education, 115–116
subtenon suture placement, 114–116, 115f
trans-episiotomy approach to, 115
in shock patients, 220
total pelvic exenteration, defined, 1340
touring
abdominal cesarean section, 713, 714–715
pelvic lymphadenectomy control, 385
true minerals, total parenteral nutrition protocols and, 1352
Training principles for gynecologic surgery, 71–79
compartment-based training programs, 75–79
TRAM flaps, defined, 1031
Transabdominal neural aspiration, pelvic abscess, 420–421, 421f
Transabdominal sonolucency, posterior compartment defect repair, 394–395
Transcervical electrical stimulation, anal incontinence management with, 1807
Transcervical chromophotoblation salpingostomy/salpingo-oophorectomy, 420, 428
thymic adenoma, basic principles, 422–423, 422f–424f
Transcervical fallopian tube cannulation, proximal tubal obstruction, 412
Transcervical lysis, uterine septum unification, 429–430, 429f
wedge gynecoplasty vs., 372
Translocation zone
carcinoma epithelium, 1210–1211, 1211f
loop electrode excision procedure of (LLETZ), 1212–1213, 1213f
defined, 1208
Transplacental/vaginal junction, colposcopy, 1218
TransITIONAL chromosome, pelvic inflammatory disease, ovary preservation, 673, 674, 737
Transit prolapse
autologous bladder transplantation, defined, 1371
hemoglobin blood transfusion, defined, 1371
transfusion of, 1364–1366, 1370
in shock patients, 220
Transvaginal biopsy, patient evaluation, 150–151, 150t–151t
Transvaginal lysis, uterine septum unification, 429–430, 429f
wedge gynecoplasty vs., 372
Total parenteral nutrition (TPN). See also Parenteral nutrition
postoperative care, 150–156
cancer and respiratory insufficiency, 156
discrepancy of, 156
gynecologic surgery, 115
intraocular subtenon van ammun, 115–116, 115f
immunization procedures, 113
nutritional requirements, 111–113, 112–115
pawlet evaluation, 110–113, 111
patient education, 115–116
subtenon suture placement, 114–116, 115f
trans-episiotomy approach to, 115
in shock patients, 220
Transverse electromotive force (TEM) defined, 298
Transverse incision techniques, abdominal surgery, 254–259
Cortis incision, 255, 257f, 273–274f
epiploic transverse incision, obese patients, 266–267
Komer incision, 255, 257f
Maylard incision, 257, 259f, 259f
Plumerian incision, 255, 256f
Transverse incision techniques for, 1125–1127, 1127f
Transverse vaginal muscle, 86, 88f
Transverse vaginal septum, diagnosis and reconstruction, 377–380, 386–388f
Trauma and accommodance and, 1002
rectovaginal fistula, 974–975
ruptured pelvic abscess and, 672–674
rectovaginal fistulae etiology, 1015–1016, 1016t
Transverse incision techniques, abdominal surgery, 254–259
Cortis incision, 255, 257f, 273–274f
epiploic transverse incision, obese patients, 266–267
Komer incision, 255, 257f
Maylard incision, 257, 259f, 259f
Plumerian incision, 255, 256f
Transverse incision techniques for, 1125–1127, 1127f
Transverse vaginal muscle, 86, 88f
Transverse vaginal septum, diagnosis and reconstruction, 377–380, 386–388f
Trauma and accommodance and, 1002
rectovaginal fistula, 974–975
ruptured pelvic abscess and, 672–674
rectovaginal fistulae etiology, 1015–1016, 1016t
Vaginal hysterectomy
Vaginal fornix, cesarean hysterectomy, 833–834,
Vaginal flora, postoperative infection and, 191,
Vaginal evisceration, gastrointestinal surgery,
Vaginal estrogen cream, preoperative management
Vaginal epithelium, vaginal vault support and, 911,
Vaginal delivery
Vaginal cuff
Vaginal birth after cesarean delivery (VBAC),
Vaginal apex
Vaginal preoperative preparation, 744–745
operative techniques, 745–755, 746f–755f
indications for, 729, 744, 745f
cuff closure and support, 759–761, 759f–760f
characteristics of, 729–731, 729t
best surgical techniques, 761
pelvic prolapse etiology and prevention, 862–864
anal incontinence and, 999–1001, 1000t
radical hysterectomy, cervical cancer
vertical fusion disorders, transverse vaginal
laser surgery of, 307–309
imperforate hymen and complications, 508–510,
fascia and attachments, 96–97, 96f
embrionic development of, 541, 542f–543f
anal carcinoma
classification, 526, diagnosis, 527
pathology, 525–526, 526f
laser techniques, cervix,
Vaporization conization, laser techniques, cervix,
Vaporization
Vancomycin, shock management with MRSA and,
Vasectomy, as alternative to tubal sterilization,
Vasculature, normal coagulation mechanisms, 372,
Vasopressors
Vasodilators, shock management, 216, 217t
Vasoconstrictive agents, abdominal myomectomy,
Vasectomy, as alternative to tubal sterilization,
Vasal injection
Vasectomy, as alternative to tubal sterilization,
Vasopressors
Ventral hernia, repair of, 272, 273f–276f
Ventilation/perfusion (V/Q) abnormalities, 133
Veblen, Thorstein, 8
Vasa recta, defined, 1098
Varicocele, vulva, 505, 505f
Varices, vulva, 505, 505f
Venenous system
varicose veins, 248–249, 250t
incontinence, 1095
Vasectomy, as alternative to tubal sterilization,
Vasculature, normal coagulation mechanisms, 372,
Wertheim hysterectomy, vaginal tumors, 527–529
Wet colostomy, defined, 1340
Wharton-Sheares neovaginoplasty, vaginal reconstruction, 555–556
White blood cell count, pelvic inflammatory disease diagnosis and, 662–663
White line of Toldt, defined, 1098
Williams, J. Whitridge, 10
Williams’ Obstetrics, 2
Williams vulvovaginoplasty, vaginal reconstruction, 554–555, 555f
Willobrook case study, human research and, 21
“W” incision of Regnault, technique, abdominal surgery, obese patients, 265–266, 266f
Wire electrodes, loop electrode excision procedures, 295
Wire suture
abdominal incisions and, 251–252, 252t
classification and properties, 252
Wolf, Caspar, 5
Women patients, history of, 5–8
Women surgeons, nineteenth-century history of, 7–8
Word catheter
Bartholin duct cysts, 497, 497f
defined, 490
Wound cellulitis
defined, 190
pathology, 194
Wound classification, abdominal incisions, 251–252
Wound contraction, mechanisms of, 227
Wound dehiscence complications
episiotomy, 836–837, 836f, 837f–838f
inunction and, 271, 271f
wound closure methods and, 228–229
Wound healing
closure methods, 228–229
physiology, 226–227, 251–252
primary intention
defined, 226
surgical wound, 227, 228f
secondary intention
defined, 226
surgical wound, 227–228, 228f
surgical wounding healing, 227–228
third intention, surgical wound, 228, 228f
Wound infection
abdominal surgery
chole patients, 263–264
prevention, 253–254
delayed primary closure techniques and, 268–270
pathology, 193–194, 194f
postoperative, prevention of, 196–199, 199f
Wound seroma
defined, 190
pathology, 194
W-plasty technique, vaginal reconstruction, 557
X
Xenon light generator, hysteroscopy, 337, 339f
Y
Yttrium-aluminum-garnet (YAG) laser, laparoscopy, 310–311
Z
Zepplin clamps, abdominal hysterectomy, 739, 739f
Zoledronic acid, hypercalcemia management, 185
Z-plasty full-thickness pedicle flap, vulvar reconstruction, 1362–1363
Zygote, defined, 398